583. L. 14.

A COMPLEAT

Universal HISTORY,

Of the Several

Empires, Kingdoms, States, &c.

Throughout the Known

WORLD.

Containing, an ACCOUNT of the moſt

REMARKABLE TRANSACTIONS

Of their Reſpective

Reigning Monarchs, &c.

WITH THEIR

POLITIES Eccleſiaſtical, Civil and Military:

Alſo a Deſcription of the

Arts and *Sciences*, *Trade* and *Manufactures*

OF THE

Different NATIONS:

Together with a

NATURAL HISTORY of each COUNTRY,

Wherein will be compris'd the *Vegetable*, *Animal* and *Mineral* Productions, that are Remarkably Curious, either NATURAL or ARTIFICIAL.

Adorn'd with FIGURES and correct MAPS Copy'd from the beſt GEOGRAPHERS.

By Mr. *LE STOURGEON.*

LONDON:

Printed by BENJAMIN BADDAM, in *Popping's Court* in *Fleet Street*,

MDCCXXXII.

A

Prefatory INTRODUCTION

TO THE

READER.

THE Knowledge of foreign Countries is certainly the beſt ACADEMY for the enlarging, cultivating and enriching the Minds of Men, eſpecially the younger Sort, who being generally confin'd by Education and Cuſtoms at Home, (which few ever ſurmount) and being limited to a narrow Sphere of Thought, are frequently puffed up and choak'd for want of a free Air and a large extenſive Proſpect; hence it is, that ſo many become unfit for publick Buſineſs, or even common Converſation, and thereby fruſtrate the chief End and Deſign of EDUCATION, frequently falling into many Diſorders upon every little Contradiction, and conſequently boggle at every Thing that lies out of their way of thinking.

THIS terraqueous Globe we inhabit may juſtly be compar'd to a true and perfect Mirrour, in which may be diſtinctly ſeen the delightful Phænomena of Nature, with the myſterious Arts of Government: Every Climate affording new Scenes, wherein our Readers may obſerve that the Harmony of the Univerſe conſiſts in a wonderful Variety.

THERE are indeed ſome People that amuſe themſelves with what paſſes daily before their Eyes, but are little affected with the Affairs of the remote Parts of the World, and 'tis grown a Maxim with others to reject all foreign Relations of Things for Fables; theſe value themſelves upon their Incredulity, and are ſuch ſtrict Friends to Truth, that they never acknowledge any themſelves: On the other Hand, there are Perſons that run directly counter to thoſe before recited, who chiefly enquire after Wonders, and are only ſatisfied with whatever raiſes their Admiration; they think all that is genuine and natural, muſt of courſe be flat and inſipid, and for want of being rous'd up with aſtoniſhing Adventures and continual Prodigies, drop aſleep over the beſt penn'd Relations of the moſt celebrated Hiſtorians.

THE Author of the enſuing Sheets is not inſenſible, that the politer Part of Mankind will expect ſomething therein more than has hitherto appear'd; and therefore as the Nature of the WORK requires, an uncommon Method will be taken to diſtinguiſh it from any of the Performances of this Kind: He therefore thinks it juſt and neceſſary to introduce this large Undertaking, with an Account of the Order and manner of Proceeding which will run thro' every Branch of this HISTORY; diſcarding at the ſame Time all obſolete, fictitious and romantick Accounts, as well as the many inconſiſtent and idle Relations of ſome of our modern AUTHORS, as being of an evil Tendency to HISTORY itſelf, as well as to the READERS thereof.

PREVIOUS therefore to what is above remark'd, the AUTHOR thinks fit to apprize the Publick, that he has not only ſpent great Part of his Life in ſtudying HISTORY, but has alſo gone thro' the numerous Difficulties that attend travelling into the remoteſt Parts of the World; which has certainly enabled him to juſtify or condemn what other AUTHORS have laid down as Authentick, as well as to furniſh Mankind with a Detail of the farther Improvements that have been made both Abroad and at Home, as the WORLD has encreas'd upon us both in Age and Knowledge.

ACCORDING therefore to the laudable Cuſtom of ſeveral HISTORIANS that have gone before me, I intend to begin the enſuing Piece with a Deſcription of the *Eaſtern* Nations, and travel *Weſtward* with that glorious Planet the SUN, the immenſe Fountain of Heat, Light and Fire; So that when this WORK is compleated, the judicious Reader may take a Survey of the various Dominions throughout the ſpacious Univerſe, even ſitting at home in his Cloſet, and converſe with the remoteſt Nations, without incurring any manner of Riſque or Peril which Travellers are momentarily expos'd to; wherein he may trace as it were the Footſteps of that infinite Contriver the omniſcient Architect, wherein are ſo wonderfully diſplay'd an Infinity of Characteriſticks that denominate the ſupreme Being of Beings its Almighty AUTHOR.

THIS Performance was not at firſt deſign'd to make its Appearance in Publick after this Manner, but true it is, that ſuch are the Difficulties that AUTHORS are laid under, by a Set of People who have embodied themſelves into a Community, and ſuch are their mercenary Views, that unleſs Gentlemen will give away the Fruits of their Labour, Knowledge and Learning, their WORKS muſt be inevitably loſt to Poſterity, to the irreparable Damage of the Republick of Literature: Thus much the AUTHOR has thought proper to premiſe by way of Apology for this Undertaking's coming out Weekly; wherein particular Care will be taken to render it pleaſing and agreeably entertaining to every SUBSCRIBER.

The INTRODUCTION.

THE Method propos'd ſhall be juſt and regular, and the Stile familiar, plain, and eaſy, fitted to every Capacity, and digeſted in the following Manner, *viz.*

PART I. Contains a Deſcription of the Empire of *China*, wherein *Great Tartary* will be compris'd, being united together by Conqueſt; the Kingdoms of *Japan*, *Tonquin*, *Cochin-China* and *Siam*; the *Ladrones*, *Philippine* Iſlands and *Macaſſar*, *Amboyna*; *Banda* and the *Molucta* Iſlands; with a more full Account of the barbarous Treatment the *Engliſh* met with from the *Dutch*, when they were expell'd the *Spice-Iſlands*; *Borneo*, *Java* and *Sumatra*. The large Continent of *India* deſcrib'd, with Remarks on the Oeconomy of the GREAT MOGUL; an Account of the *Engliſh* and other *European* Settlements on the *Indian Coaſts*; Likewiſe an Account of the *Diamond* Mines, their Manner of working therein, and a Table of the Value of DIAMONDS according to their ſeveral Weights: Alſo the Kingdoms of *Pegu* and *Arracan* in the Iſland of *Ceylon* deſcrib'd, being remarkably famous for the beſt CINNAMON in the World. The Empire of *Perſia*, with a conciſe hiſtorical Account of the Revolutions that have happen'd there from the Uſurpation of *Mereweis*, to the late Pacification with the *Turks* and *Muſcovites*. *Arabia*, with their Method of travelling thro' the Sandy DESERTS with their CARAVANS to *India*; the Fertility and Salubrioufneſs of *Arabia Fœlix*, and the Sterility of *Arabia Petra*: Likewiſe an Account of *Aſiatick Tartary* and the *Turkiſh* Dominions in *Aſia*, viz. *Chaldæa*, *Aſſyria*, *Meſopotamia*, *Armenia Major* and *Minor*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, or the *Holy Land*; the Curioſities and Sacred Relicks thereof amply deſcribed, *&c.*

PART II. Contains a Deſcription of the TURKISH Empire in EUROPE, wherein their capricious Government, and the late extraordinary Revolutions, the Depoſing of the GRAND SIGNIOR and other remarkable Occurrences are largely treated of; *Ægypt* deſcrib'd; the Pyramids, Catacombs, and other Curioſities ſo much remark'd by Travellers, being the Footſteps of venerable ANTIQUITY and priſtine Grandeur, with it's modern State and Condition are conſider'd: An Account of *Crim* and *Little Tartary*, *Romania*, *Greece*, the Iſlands of the *Archipelago*, and the reſt of the *Turkiſh European* and *African* Dominions. Alſo a genuine Deſcription of the *Empires*, *Kingdoms* and *States* of the remaining Part of EUROPE, with an ample Relation of their Modes of Government, what Alterations have lately happened in the ſeveral Parts thereof, and whatever elſe is remarkably Curious and worthy of Obſervation.

PART III. Contains a Deſcription of the ſeveral Parts of AFRICA, the Situations and Extent of the reſpective Kingdoms and States, the ſeveral Provinces each is divided into; the principal Rivers, Lakes, Canals and Springs; Cities, Towns, Fortifications, Factories, Palaces, Publick Buildings, Houſes and Furniture: The Genius, Temper, Stature and Complexion, Shape and Habits of the ſeveral Nations thereof; with their Entertainments, Diet, Diverſions, Feſtivals, Viſits and Ceremonies; Roads, Poſts, Manner of Travelling and Carriages: Their Manufactures, Trade, Shipping and Navigation; Husbandry, Tillage, and Nature of the Soil; Plants, Animals and Minerals; Learning, Honours, Liberal and Mechanick Arts; Language, Characters, Hiſtory and Chronology: The Prince's Courts, Prerogatives and Succeſſions; Courts of Juſtice, Magiſtrates, Laws, Cuſtoms and Puniſhments; Coins Weights and Meaſures: Religion, Temples and Superſtition: Marriages, Women, Children and Slaves; Funeral Rites, Mourning, Monuments, Tombs, *&c.*

PART IV. Contains an Account of AMERICA, as divided into Northern and Southern, the ISLANDS thereof deſcrib'd; an Account of the Diamond Mines lately diſcover'd in *Braſil*; NATURAL HISTORY and RARITIES deſcrib'd, the *Engliſh*, *French*, *Dutch* and *Spaniſh* Settlements and Trade; the Gold and Silver Mines in *Mexico*, *Peru* and *Braſil*, with their Manner of ſmelting and refining thoſe Metals: Likewiſe an Account of their Sugar Works, Tobacco Plantations, Indico Works, Cotton Trees, and dying Woods, noted Plants, Medicinal Drugs; ſtrange Animals, as Beaſts, Birds, Inſects and Fiſhes, and in ſhort, every thing elſe that is worthy the regard of an indefatigable Traveller, are amply and fully deſcrib'd in this largeſt Tract of Land. Alſo an Account of the *Engliſh South-Sea* Trade, and other curious Matters.

AS to the GEOGRAPHICAL Part of this WORK, the MAPS will be drawn from the Deſigns of the beſt and moſt approv'd GEOGRAPHERS of the Age, in which will be carefully laid down, the Latitudes, Longitudes, Diſtances and Bearings of the moſt eminent Cities and other Places of Note from each other, exactly adjuſted to a Scale of Engliſh Miles: And for the better Illuſtration of the HISTORY, the REMARKABLES will be depicted and rang'd Borderwiſe round the MAPS.

THUS, Friendly SUBSCRIBERS, I have briefly handled the deſign'd Method of treating this copious Subject, which I hope will be very ſatisfactory: I ſhall only add, that particular Care will be taken as to the Neatneſs and Correctneſs of the TYPOGRAPHICAL PART, on a good Paper and Character, and thoſe that deſire it, may have it printed on a Superfine Royal Paper at an advanc'd Price.

I am, Gentlemen, your very humble Servant,

B. LE STOURGEON.

A COM-

PREFACE.

THERE is no Sort of Writing, in which a greater Variety of uſeful Knowledge may be communicated to the Publick, than in a Work of Geography, built upon a Plan ſo extenſive as This. It includes not only what is ſtrictly to be underſtood by the Word Geography, but alſo all that comes under the Name of Hiſtory, whether Natural, Civil, Eccleſiaſtical, Literary, or Mechanical. Nor is it content with merely relating Things as they appear, but learns from the Philoſopher to reaſon on their latent Principles. It enters likewiſe on the Province of the Moraliſt and Divine, by enquiring freely concerning the Virtues and Vices, and pronouncing Sentence on the peculiar Cuſtoms, Ceremonies, and ſuperſtitious Obſervances of the People under Conſideration. It preſents alſo the moſt infallible Syſtem of Politicks that can poſſibly be drawn up, founded on the Experience of all Ages and all Nations: For as much as the ſame Cauſes ſeldom fail of producing the ſame Effects, in the Body Politick, as well as in the Natural Body.

Theſe Advantages, and many others that might be enumerated, being duly conſidered, we ſhall have no Occaſion to ſay any thing more in Behalf of the preſent Performance, than that we have endeavour'd to make it anſwer, as near as poſſible, to what we have promiſed in the Title. It muſt not be pretended, indeed, that we have done this equally in all Parts; that being a Point of Perfection, to which the moſt curious Enquirer could never yet attain, in a Work of ſuch Extent and Variety, as a Univerſal Hiſtory of the World: But if we have been copious where we could, and very exact where we could not be copious; if we have ſaid nothing but upon good Grounds, nor omitted any Thing material that was well atteſted; what can there be wanting to make This, in general, the moſt Uſeful Volume of the Kind, that is now extant?

As for the People to whom it may be thus uſeful; What Man or Woman is there, that converſes ever ſo little in the polite World, who has not often Occaſion to be ſet right in ſome of the Particulars here related? Even Geography itſelf, tho' the eaſieſt perhaps

of

of all Sciences, both to learn and retain, is yet not ſo familiar to the Generality of Readers, but that they have frequent need to refreſh their Memories as to the Situation of Places. How much more are theſe Helps wanting in other Matters, ſuch as the various Product of the Earth and Water, the numerous Rites of different Nations, the Revolutions of ſmall States, that make an inſignificant Figure in our common Hiſtories?

Every one may perceive, that we have hitherto ſpoken of thoſe Readers only, who had before informed themſelves in Matters of this Nature: And if to them ſo much Advantage and Pleaſure may accrue, from only reviving thoſe Parts of Knowledge which they had before attained; doubtleſs much more of both will be experienced, by ſuch as launch out into a new Field of Geographical and Hiſtorical Learning. To Theſe give us leave to ſay, that they may here meet with enough to ſet up upon in good Converſation, and perhaps to paſs for the beſt Hiſtorians in Company. At leaſt they will avoid that Contempt, which uſually falls on Perſons entirely ignorant of what is done out of their own Country, and before their own Time; as, comparatively ſpeaking, too many of our Countrymen are.

Give us leave to add, That the Character of being too fond of what is Foreign, which is caſt by the major Part of our Commonalty on the Nobility and Gentry of this Nation, betrays, when carried to Exceſs, too much of that Selfiſhneſs, which is the Effect only of an illiberal Education, and which a little Reading in the Hiſtories of other People uſually wears from off the Mind. Every Country hath its Advantages, as well as *England*; and 'tis not thro' Their Defects, but the falſe Taſte of the Importers, that the moſt cry'd-up Commodities are Eunuchs and Fathions.

A DE-

A MAP of INDIA, PERSIA and ARABIA With the Whole TURKISH EMPIRE In ASIA, EUROPE & AFRICA

Viz. Chaldæa, Assyria, Mesopotamia, Armenia, Natolia, Syria & *the* Holy Land *With* Greece, Hungary &c.

Adapted to the Compleat Universal History of ye WORLD

By HENRY WILSON

Author of the Compleat Sea Atlas &c.

GERMANY
PART OF POLAND
PART OF MOSCOVY
TARTARY
ITALY
VENICE
Gulf of Venice
THE BLACK SEA
Careassian Tartary
Negais Tartary
Crimea
THE CASPIAN SEA
USBECK TARTARY
GASGAR Km
GETIBER Km
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
THE LEVANT
Candia
Cyprus
PART OF AFRICA
EGYPT
STONY ARABIA
ARABIA DESERTA
ARABIA FELIX
ARABIA PETRÆA
Iraca Arabic or Chaldea
Wilderness
Earthly Paradise
Tropic of Cancer
THE RED SEA
Sea of Babelmandel
Persian Gulf
Gulf of Ormus
Part of PERSIA
PERSIA
CHUSISTAN
PARACHAGEM
CHOARASTAN
SABLUSTAN
ASTERABAT
TARBIS TAN
SIGISTAN
KERMAN
MAKERAN
ARABIAN SEA
INDIAN OCEAN
HINDOSTAN
CABULSTAN
INDIA
Cambaya
Guzarat
Orixa
BAY OF BENGAL
Bengal
Patan
Carnate
Madura
CEYLON
Maldiva Is
C. Comorin
C. Gallo
Candy
Monks Copp
Colombo
Negapatan
Tranquemil Bay
Jassinapatan
Vingapatan
Sadrapatan
Pt St George
Armegon
Bengal
Bisnagar
Golconda
Visapour
Goa
Carwar
Batticola
Mangalore
Cananore
Calecut
Tanore
Panany
Cochin
Coulan
Anjengo
Tegapatan
Padua
Cubelo
Sumtel
Pagodas
Paradise
Mecca
Medina
Babel
Bagdat
Ispahan
Herat
Candahar
Cabul
Multan
Lahor
Agra
Delly
Patna
Bengal
Surat
Bombay
Goa
Visapour
Golconda
Carnate
Madura
Candy
Colombo
Negapatan
Pt St George
Armegon
Bengal
Bisnagar
Maldiva Is
C. Comorin
C. Gallo
Socotra I
Mocha
Aden
Muscat
Ormus
Gombroon
Bassora
Aleppo
Damascus
Jerusalem
Cairo
Suez
Alexandria
Rosetta
Grand Cairo
Tripoli
Tunis
Algiers
Fez
Morocco
Sicily
Rome
Venice
Vienna
Cracow
Buda
Belgrade
Constantinople
Adrianople
Philippopoli
Naupoli
Salonica
Athens
Candia
Cyprus
Rhodes
Smyrna
Scanderoon
Tripoli
Aleppo
Damascus
Jerusalem
Gaza
Cairo
Suez
Mecca
Medina
Babel
Bagdat
Ispahan
Herat
Candahar
Cabul
Multan
Lahor
Agra
Delly
Patna
Bengal
Surat
Bombay
Goa
Visapour
Golconda
Carnate
Madura
Candy
Colombo
Negapatan
Pt St George
Armegon
Bengal
Bisnagar
Maldiva Is
C. Comorin
C. Gallo
Socotra I
Mocha
Aden
Muscat
Ormus
Gombroon
Bassora
Aleppo
Damascus
Jerusalem
Gaza

A COMPLEAT

Universal HISTORY,

Of the Several

Empires, Kingdoms, States, &c.

A

DESCRIPTION

OF THE

EMPIRE of CHINA.

PART I. CHAPI.

The Situation and Extent of this vaſt Empire deſcrib'd; The Name, Climate and Limits of the ſeveral Provinces thereof; with the chief Rivers, Canals, Lakes and Springs, that Country is ſupply'd with.

China and *Tartary* one Dominion.

CHINA, of all the Dominions of the Earth, is celebrated as well for Politeneſs and Civility, for Grandeur, for Riches and Magnificence, as for Arts and Inventions, and is united with *Great Tartary*, which together conſtitute one mighty Empire, in which is comprehended all the Eaſtern Continent of *Aſia*. The Southermoſt Part of *China* lies in the Latitude of 21 Degrees North, and the Northermoſt Part of *Tartary* ſubject (as before obſerv'd) to this Empire, lies in the Latitude of 55 Degrees North, which makes the whole Extent from North to South 34 Degrees, or 2040 *Engliſh* Miles. But if we extend it, as ſome Authors have done, to the Latitude of 60 Degrees North, and in the Iſland of *Haynam* in the South, which is 18 Degrees North Latitude, this will make 8 Degrees more, or 480 Miles, which added to the former Eſtimation of 2040 Miles, makes 2520. The Breadth from Eaſt to Weſt is judged to be above 1000 Miles in moſt Parts, and therefore the Circumference muſt be 7000 Miles and upwards.

Extent thereof.

Boundary between *China* and *Muſcovy*.

THE River *Tamour*, which lies 55 Degrees of North Latitude, was till lately the Boundary of this Empire towards *Muſcovy*; but upon a Treaty of Peace between the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, and the Emperor of *China*, the *Czar* agreed to demoliſh his Forts upon that River, and yielded up the Right of Pearl-Fiſhing in it, and of Sable-Hunting in the Country adjacent to *China*, which perhaps may have occaſion'd ſome Geographers to extend the *Chineſe* Dominions further North; but as we don't hear of any Towns or People beyond the River *Tamour*, worth mentioning, that River may properly be reckon'd the Northern Boundary: At the fore-mention'd Treaty it was alſo agreed that the River *Argun* ſhould be the Boundary of the *Chineſe* towards the Weſt, and that the Town of *Argun*, which is in the Latitude of 52, and the Longitude of 125 Eaſt from *London*, ſhould be the utmoſt Limits of the Czar's Dominions on that Side.

Name of the Country, whence derived.

CHINA or CINA, according to ſome Writers, derives its Name, from *Cin* one of their Emperors; others ſay, it is called *Tchoum-cocve* by the Inhabitants, which ſignifies in their Language the *Middle-Kingdom*, fancying themſelves ſeated in the Centre of the World: And tho' the People of *India* as well as the *Europeans* continue to call it *China*, it is to be obſerv'd that every new Family on their mounting the Throne, give their own Name to the Empire; and by that Name it is always call'd by their Subjects. *Navarette* ſays, it was call'd *Chin* by the People of *India*, from the great Produce of Silk, that Word ſignifying *Silk* in their Language. But however the Name is deriv'd, it is generally agreed that this is the ſame Country that anciently went by the Name of *Cathai*. The great *Cham* ſo much talk'd of formerly, was no other than the Emperor of *China*; and *Cambala*, where he is ſaid to reſide, was indeed the City of *Pekin*: Nor is it much to be wonder'd at, that we were formerly ſo much in the dark, having little or no Commerce with that People till within theſe 200 Years, being much about the Time the *Europeans* found a Paſſage thither by the *Cape of Good Hope*.

No other great *Cham* than the Emperor of *China*

Climate.

CHINA (diſtinct from *Tartary*) extending from the Latitude of 21, to about 42 Degrees North, have their longeſt Day in the South 13 Hours and a half, and about 15 Hours in the North. The Northern Provinces have generally a very ſevere Winter, which continues about 4 Months, *viz.* from the Beginning of *November* to the Beginning of *March*, when their Rivers and Canals are generally frozen up: In the Southern Provinces they ſee no Froſt or Snow; but, as in other Countries which lie within or near the Tropicks, they have uſually ſtormy Weather and Rains, about the Equinox, particularly in Autumn; and this is all the Winter they

they know, the reſt of the Year they enjoy a clear Sky, and an almoſt uninterrupted Serenity: Nor are their Heats ſo great, but they may eaſily be born, being abundantly aſſiſted by Grotto's and refreſhing Shades, to which they retire during the Heats of the Day: At which Time there is a profound Silence, and a general Ceſſation from all Buſineſs as if it was Midnight; the Evenings and Mornings properly conſtitute the Day in all Hot Countries; Mid-day as well as Midnight being aſſign'd for their Repoſe.

THE *Chineſe* have many Books, containing ample Deſcriptions of their Country; wherein they exactly note all that their Provinces particularly poſſeſs; what is the Extent, Quality, and Force of each; what Number of Cities they have, how many Officers and Men they have that bear Arms; the Number of Men that ſtudy the *Sciences*; who pay Tribute; with many other Particulars; which have been ſo imperfectly treated by other Writers, things, we ſcarcely could agree in the Names of the 16 Provinces, and of ſeveral Cities and Rivers, till the *French* Jeſuits came to ſettle among them, who thro' their great Application and Induſtry, have largely furniſh'd us with genuine Relations of many Particulars, we before had only confus'd and lame Deſcriptions of; from whoſe Accounts we ſhall proceed to furniſh our Readers, with what is remarkable and curious; and firſt I ſhall begin with an Account of the Names of the 16 Provinces, their Produce, Boundaries, Extent, &c.

China divided into 16 Provinces.

CHINA is generally divided into 16 Provinces, 7 Northern and 9 Southern; the firſt is *Leaotum* or *Leaotung*, which lies beyond the great Wall, and is bounded towards the Weſt by an Arm of the Sea, which divides it from *Corea* on the Eaſt, by the Mountains of *Great Tartary* on the North, and the *Kang-Sea* or Gulph of *Pekin* on the South; this Province is ſituate between 39 and 42 Degrees of North Latitude; the Capital City whereof is called *Xynam*.

Province of Leaotum.

THIS City is well and uniformly built, being ſquare and fenc'd with good brick Walls, plaiſter'd over with Porcelain, which renders it exceeding hard and ſtrong, and are commonly very broad, having the Benefit of ſeveral Towers, as well for Beauty as Defence: Its Soil, among other things, produces the Root *Ginſen*; this Root is very much eſteem'd for its ſanative Quality, it ſtrengthens and reſtores Health to the Sick, and is commonly ſold for double its Weight in Silver. Its Inhabitants are leſs civiliz'd than the reſt of *China*, but more robuſt, and fit for the Fatigues of War; its other Places of Note are *Ruheo*, and *Chincheo*, and are both ſeated on the Sea-ſide.

Province of Pekin.

2. PEKING or PEKIN, wherein is the Seat of the Emperor; is bounded by the great Wall on the North, which divides it from *Tartary*, on the South by the Province of *Honan*, on the Eaſt by the *Kang-Sea*, and on the South-Eaſt by the Province of *Xantum*, and on the Weſt by the Province of *Xanſi*; it extends from 36 to 41 Degrees of Latitude; the Capital City whereof is *Pekin*.

THIS City is the Metropolis of *China*, and the principal Reſidence of the Emperor; whoſe Court is very numerous, conſiſting of a great Number of Miniſters of State, Mandarins, Eunuchs, Prieſts and Gentry, Officers Civil and Military; with a great Number of Guards both Horſe and Foot; beſides above 120000 Families, which inhabit the Cities, Towns, &c. belonging to this Province, which contains about 130 Cities, beſides Towns and other Places of leſs Note. They are ſupply'd with Grain, as Maize, Wheat and Rice, from other Provinces, there being ſcarcely a Quantity ſufficient to furniſh Subſiſtence for ſo great a Number of Inhabitants which this Province contains, which is far more populous than any of the others.

3. THE Province of *Xanſi* is bounded on the Eaſt by *Pekin*, by the great Wall on the North, by the Province of *Honan* on the South, and the River of *Hoang* or *Yellow River*, on the Weſt, which divides it from *Xenſi*; the Capital City is *Tayven*. *Province of Xanſi.*

THIS Province hath many Mountains, by reaſon of which it is not near ſo fertile, as that of *Pekin*, neither is it ſo large, ſo populous, nor ſo pleaſant; yet with the Induſtry of the Inhabitants it produceth Corn, Rice and Maize; but that Defect is recompenc'd by the Numbers of Cattle they breed, and the great Plenty of Vineyards; inſomuch that the whole Empire is furniſh'd from hence, with pickled Grapes and dry'd Raiſins. They have likewiſe two ſorts of Mines, the one of Brimſtone the other of Stones, which are inflammable, and make very good Fuel. In the Sulphur Mines they make little Holes, which gives a ſufficient Heat to boil any thing they have occaſion for: And theſe Stones well prepar'd will keep Fire Night and Day without being ſtirred up. In this Province are about 90 Cities and great Towns, ſix of which are of conſiderable Note; as, 1. *Xanſi*. 2. *Quanchio*. 3. *Hoquan*. 4. *Tiancau*. 5. *Chenchio*. and, 6. *Suchio*. All which are well built, and very populous.

4. THE Province of *Xenſi* is bounded by the great Wall and by *Tartary* on the Weſt and North, by *Suchuen* on the South, and *Xanſi* on the Eaſt; the Capital City whereof is *Sigan*. *Province of Xenſi.*

THIS Province yields Plenty of Wheat, Maize and Barley, and but little Rice; they feed much Cattle, and their Sheep are ſhear'd thrice a Year, in Spring, Summer and Autumn; their firſt ſhearing is the beſt: It yields Musk, which is taken out of the Navel of a Beaſt of the Bigneſs a Deer, with ſeveral other Perfumes, and Plenty of Rhubarb, which they carry into *Perſia* and other Places: And it is through this Province that the Caravans travel from the Weſt. They have Gold, which they gather among the Sand of the Rivers, after it has been waſh'd down from the Mountains by the heavy Rains; they have ſeveral Mines, which they are not permitted to open. This is the Weſtermoſt of the Northern Provinces, and the largeſt of all the ſixteen; it is very populous, and is well ſtored with great Towns and Cities, as, 1. *Sigan*. 2. *Tatonfu*. 3. *Canchcu*. 4. *Suchcu*. 5. *Quitu*. 6. *Quiachcu*. With ſeveral others of leſs Note.

5. THE Province of *Honan* is bounded by *Xanſi* and *Pekin* on the North, *Xenſi* on the Weſt, and *Nankin* on the Eaſt; and lies between the Latitude of 33 and 37; the Capital City whereof is *Schaifung* or *Caifum*. *Province of Honan.*

THIS Province is very fertile, and the Climate very temperate; the freeſt from Mountains, and the fartheſt from the Sea. It produceth the beſt Fruits in the World; as well thoſe known to us in *Europe*, as others; and that in ſo great quantity, that they are ſcarce valued. It comprehendeth 7 great Cities, the chief City of which bears the Name of the Province; the other chief Places, are, 1. *Temechio*. 2. *Suntchu*. 3. *Caifun*. 4. *Chunchio*. And about 100 leſſer Ones, all well inhabited.

6. THE Province of *Nankin*, which is bounded on the North and Weſt by *Xantum* and *Honan*, on the Eaſt by the Ocean, and on the South by *Huquam* and *Chekiam*, and extends from 30 to 36 Degrees of Latitude; the great River *Kiam* runs thro' it; the Capital City is *Nankin* or *Kiamnin*. *Province of Nankin.*

THIS Province is the faireſt and richeſt, and the Inhabitants thereof are the moſt civiliz'd of all the Empire; and it was formerly the chief Reſidence of their Sovereigns, till it was remov'd from *Nankin* to *Pekin*. It hath 14 great and fair Cities, the Chief of which are, 1. *Nankin* its Metropolis. 2. *Sincu*. 3. *Kiatim*. 4. *Xambay*. 5. *Xamchu*. All which are very populous; in ſome of them about 200000 People are conſtantly employ'd in making of Callicoes: All which

which are commodiously seated on Arms of the Sea, which make several Isles. The City of *Nankin* is situated upon the River *Kiam*, that is, *the Blue River*, and upon an indifferent high Hill, so that it commands all the adjacent Plains. The Circumference of the City is 24 Miles, encompassed with a strong Stone Wall, environ'd with 130 Gates, and defended by 12 Forts.

Province of *Xintum.*

7. THE Province of *Xintum*, bounded on the North and East by the Sea, by *Pekin* on the West, and *Nankin* on the South; the chief City whereof is *Cinan.*

THIS Province lies between *Pekin* and *Nankin*, it is well watered with Rivers, which makes it very fertile, abounding with so great Plenty of Flesh, Fowl, Fish, Grain, Fruits, *&c.* that the Inhabitants of the Province, who are very numerous, cannot consume the Encrease, but are forced to furnish other Provinces; they have also great store of Silk, and other rich Commodities. It hath several great Cities, the chief of which are, *Cinan*, *Paumkeu*, *Cucoyan*, *Linceu*, &c.

Province of *Chekiam.*

8. THE Province of *Chekiam*, bounded on the North by *Nankin*, on the East by the Sea, by the Province of *Kiamsi* on the West, and *Fokien* on the South; and extends from 27 to 31 Degrees of Latitude; the Capital City whereof is *Hamcheu.*

THIS Province is esteem'd one of the best in *China.* The pleasant Rivers which run through it, and the many good Ports and Islands it hath, makes it very commodious for Trade; they Merchandize very largely in Raw Silks, and wrought Silks mix'd with Thread; also in various kinds of Stuffs, which are distributed not only to the other Provinces of *China*, but to all the World; the other Provinces not having sufficient for their own use: Of this Silk there is one sort which is reserv'd to be employed in divers curious Work, mix'd with Gold, and those are only for the use of the Emperor's Palace. This Province hath about 70 Cities, of which 6 are of considerable Note, as *Quinsay*, now call'd *Hamcheu*, once the Metropolis of *China*; 2. *Liampo*, a fair City seated on the Sea; 3. *Aucheo*, also commodiously seated on the Sea; 4. *Scaoutam* an Inland City; 5. *Checuian* also an Inland City, but fair, well built and much frequented; 6. *Sucu*, seated on the Sea, and about 25 Leagues from the City of *Nankin.*

Province of *Kiamsi.*

9. THE Province of *Kiamsi*, is bounded by *Chekiam* and *Fokien* on the East, *Huquam* on the West, *Nankin* on the North, and *Quantum* on the South; and extends from 26 to 31 Degrees of Latitude; the Chief City whereof is *Nanchan.*

THIS Province is enclos'd with Mountains, which have their Passages open to the neighbouring Provinces, and particularly on the Coast of *Canton.* On the Mountain of *Mulin*, there is a great Concourse for the Carriages of Merchandizes which are transported from *Canton* to *Nankin*; which is done by mounting the River of *Canton*, unto the Foot of the Mountain, from whence the Carriages being taken out of the Vessels, are loaden and born upon Mens Backs to the other side of the Mountain, where there is found another navigable River, which crosses this Province, till it falls into the River *Kiam*, which leads to *Nankin* and the Sea. In this Province are 12 great Cities, besides about 60 small ones; the chief City is call'd *Nanchan*, seated on a Lake; 2. *Cinlou*; 3. *Nangan*; 4. *Quanhamfu*, &c. their Inhabitants are so numerous that they are constrained to spread themselves throughout the Empire to seek their living: It is in one of the Cities of this Province that they make Porcelain or China Ware, the Water being fit to give it Perfection.

Province of *Huquam.*

10. THE Province of *Huquam* bounded by *Kiamsi* on the East, *Honan* on the North, *Quamsi* and *Quantum* on the South; the Capital City whereof is *Vuchan* or *Vuchang.*

THIS Province is so abundant in Rice, that it is able to furnish great Part of *China*, they have likewise plenty of Oil and Fish; the River *Kiam* and several other Rivers and Lakes cross it on all Sides, by which they carry their Commodities to *Nankin* and to *Quincheu*: It is very populous, containing 15 great Cities, and about 100 small ones; the chief of which are, 1. *Vuchan*; 2. *Quotechio*; 3. *Miamu*; and, 4. *Pascin.*

Province of *Suchuen.*

11. THE Province of *Suchuen* is bounded on the East by *Huquam*, on the West by the Mountains of *India*, on the North by *Xensi*, on the South by *Queycheu*; the Capital City whereof is *Chingtu.*

THIS Province is one of the least of the 16, of a lofty Situation, and pours down its Streams into the neighbouring Provinces; Here is found good store of yellow Amber, and excellent Rhubarb. Its chief Cities are 8 in Number, besides about 120 of less Note; all which are exceeding populous, the Principal whereof is *Chingtu.*

Province of *Queycheu.*

12. THE Province of *Queycheu* is bounded on the North by *Suchuen*, on the East by *Quamsi*, and by *Yunan* on the West and South; the Capital City whereof is *Queyang.*

THIS Province is full of Hills, which makes it not very fertile in Corn, Fruits, *&c.* but it hath abundance of Quicksilver, and breeds the best Horses of any Province in *China.* They have but 15 Cities, the Chief of which are *Queyang*; 2. *Tocchai*; 3. *Liamu*; 4. *Cipan*; 5. *Paukin*, *&c.* Here is also a famous Lake, call'd *Cucui-Hai*, from whence several Rivers do issue forth that water the Country.

Province of *Yunan.*

13. THE Province of *Yunan* is bounded on the East by *Queycheu* and *Quamsi*, on the West by *India*, and on the South by *Tonquin*; the Capital City whereof is *Yunan.*

THIS Province is the last on the South Coast; the Women have here the liberty to go in publick to buy and sell, which those of other Parts do not. It hath Mines which yield a kind of Amber, redder and less pure than ours; which hath some particular Virtue against Fluxes: Besides this, they transport few Commodities to other Parts; tho' there is a great deal of Gold and other Commodities produc'd here, as Agats, Rubies, Sapphires, Benjamin and Silk; they have also excellent Horses, Camels and Elephants. They have likewise several great and small Cities, the Chief of which bears the Name of the Province.

Province of *Quamsi.*

14. THE Province of *Quamsi* is bounded by *Yunan* on the West, by *Queycheu* on the North, *Quantum* on the East, and *Tonquin* and *Cochin-China* on the South.

THIS Province enjoys the same Temperament with *Canton*, yields the same Commodities, and in as great Plenty; but it is not so much frequented by Merchants, nor hath scarce any Strangers; the Reason is, because the Rivers lose and discharge themselves all in the Province, and at the City of *Canton*; which forces them to pass thro' the Hands of those of *Canton*, to barter their Goods for others. They have 10 large Cities, the Chief of which is call'd *Quamsi*, which is well built and very populous, besides about 100 smaller.

Province of *Quantum.*

15. THE Province of *Quantum* is bounded by *Quamsi* on the West, *Huquam* and *Kiamsi* on the North, *Fokien* on the East, and the Ocean on the South; the Capital City whereof is *Fochen.*

THIS Province, tho' one of the least in Extent, yet by reason of the Goodness of the Soil, and the Commodiousness of its Situation; being the first that presents it self to those of *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*, which come to *China*, abounds in Wheat, Rice and other Grain, Sugar, Gold, Precious Stones and Pearls, Quicksilver, Copper, Steel, Iron and Tin, Saltpetre, Silk, Calambuck Wood, *&c.* The Inhabitants are very civil, industrious and ingenious, but they are better at Imitation than Invention

tion; being in the firſt ſo great Maſters, that there is no Rarity or Manufacture whatſoever, that comes to their ſight, but they will exactly Pattern as well as any *Europeans*; and are very expert in all Sorts of Goldſmiths Work. In this Province are about 80 Cities ſmall and great, the Chief whereof is *Canton*.

Province of *Fokien*.

16. THE Province of *Fokien* is bounded on the Weſt by *Kiamſi*, on the South by *Quantum*, on the North by *Chekiam*, and on the Eaſt by the Ocean; the Capital City whereof is *Focheu*.

THIS Province is not near ſo fertile as the former; its Inhabitants endeavour to repair this Default by their Trade with Strangers, and principally with *Japan*, the *Philippines*, *Formoſa*, or *Fair Iſland*, which is directly oppoſite to their Coaſt. The Earth produceth Gold, Iron, Steel, Sugar, Calamba, Spices, Drugs, Quickſilver, Precious Stones, Fruits, Corn, and Cattle; alſo Silk and Cotton, of which they make divers Manufactures; they likewiſe make all ſorts of Paper: There are ſeveral Cities of Note, but its Chief are, 1. *Focheu*, ſeated on a fair River; 2. *Chinchco*, alſo commodiouſly ſeated on a River, or rather an Arm of the Sea, from whence it is diſtant about 10 Leagues; 3. *Tachco*; 4. *Huquio*; and, 5. *Chiamchiu*, which two laſt are ſeated far within Land.

Corea, *Tonquin* and *Siam* Tributary to *China*.

THE Kingdoms of *Corea*, *Tonquin* and *Siam*, are alſo Tributary to *China*: *Corea* is a Peninſula; or as ſome ſay an Iſland, being bounded on the Weſt by the Province *Leaotung* and the Gulph of *Nankin*, on the Eaſt and South by the Sea of *China*, and on the North by *Nuuh*, a Province of *Tartary*, and lies between the Latitude of 36 and 42 Degrees; the Chief City whereof is *Kinki*.

THIS being accounted by ſome a Province of *China*, occaſions our Notice of the Situation of it in this Place. As the Kingdoms of *Tonquin* and *Siam*, which lie to the Southward of *China*, have Princes of their own, they ſhall be diſtinctly treated of hereafter.

IN the 16 Provinces of *China* are reckon'd 155 Capital Cities, 1312 of the ſecond Rank, 2357 fortify'd Towns, and 10,128,789 Families.

Nieuhoff tells us, that it appear'd by the Poll-Book, which is exactly kept, there was at the Time he reſided there, upwards of 58 Millions of People in the Empire of *China*; and that this is very eaſily known, becauſe every Maſter of a Family is oblig'd under a ſevere Penalty, to hang over the Door of his Houſe a little Board, giving a particular Account of all the Souls in his Houſe; and that there is an Officer over every 10 Houſes, who examines the Truth of thoſe Accounts, and makes his Report to a ſuperior Magiſtrate thereof.

THE principal Rivers of *China* are *Kiam* or the *Blue River*, and the *Hoambo* or *Yellow River*. The *Kiam* takes its Riſe in the Province of *Yunam* upon the Borders of *India*, and runs from Weſt to Eaſt quite croſs the Empire, and thro' the Provinces of *Suchuen*, *Huquam* and *Nankin*, running a Courſe of above 1000 Miles. The *Hoambo* or *Yellow River*, has its Riſe in the Weſtern Mountains of the Province of *Suchuen*, and runs Northward along the Borders of *Tartary* beyond the great Wall, where it re-enters *China*, and then runs Southward between the Provinces of *Xanſi* and *Xenſi*, after which it paſſes Eaſtward thro' *Honam*, *Xantum* and *Nankin*, taking its Courſe above 1800 Miles, and empties itſelf into the Sea about 90 Miles North of the Mouth of the *Kiam*.

River *Kiam*

THE River *Kiam* is ſaid to be unfathomable in ſeveral Places; the *Chineſe* have a Proverb amongſt them, which is this; *the Sea* (ſay they) *hath no Bounds, and the* Kiam *hath no Bottom*. HAI YOU PIN: KIAM YOU TI. And in fact ſo it is, for in ſome Places there is none to be found; in others they ſay there is 2 or 300 Fathom Water. Nevertheleſs it has been obſerv'd, that their Pilots don't carry with them above 50 or 60 Fathom of Line at longeſt, which makes me believe their Curioſity ſeldom extends ſo far as to ſound to the Depth of 300 Fathom; and the Impoſſibility of finding the Bottom with their ordinary Plummet, is ſufficient in my Opinion to incline them to ſuch-like Hyperboles. The Navigation of this River, when ſwell'd by Torrents from the Mountains, is exceeding dangerous, and becomes ſo rapid, that many times they bear away the Iſles, with them or leſſen them very much, and ſometimes form new Ones in their Place; One cannot but admire to ſee them exchange their Places in ſuch a ſhort Time, juſt as if by diving, they had paſs'd from one Place to another; which occaſions ſuch conſiderable Alterations every Year, that the Mandarins, leaſt they ſhould be miſtaken, order them to be meaſur'd every three Years, thereby to augment or diminiſh the Impoſts and Duties according to the Condition they are found to be in.

Hoambo or *Yellow River*.

THE ſecond River of Note is call'd *Hoambo*, or *Yellow River*, it is ſo nam'd becauſe the Earth it ſweeps away with it, (eſpecially after great Rains) give it that Colour, and many other Rivers in that rainy Seaſon ſeem rather Torrents of Mud than Rivers: The Waters of *China* in general are not fit to drink till they have been boil'd, which is their principal Reaſon of drinking them hot, and infuſing *Tea* or ſome other Herbs in them to make them wholeſome as well as palatable.

THIS River hath in former Times cauſed great Deſolation in *China*, and they are ſtill forced to keep up the Waters by ſtrong Banks, which are conſtantly repair'd with great Care; notwithſtanding which the Inhabitants of the Cities thereabouts are often under Apprehenſions of being overwhelm'd. They likewiſe have been careful in the Province of *Honan*, (the Ground lying very low thereabouts) to ſurround the greateſt Part of the Cities, about a Mile from the Walls, with a Tarraſs cas'd with Turf, to prevent being ſurpris'd by Accidents and Caſualties in caſe the Bank ſhou'd be broken down; as happen'd about 80 Years ago: The Emperor endeavouring to force a Rebel to raiſe the Siege he had for a long Time laid to the City of *Honan*, caus'd one Part of the Banks to be broken down, thereby to drown the Beſiegers; but the Relief he afforded the City prov'd more fatal than the Enemy wou'd have been; the whole Province almoſt was laid under Water, together with many Cities, and Villages in Abundance; there periſh'd above 300,000 People in that Metropolis.

China is furniſh'd with many other Rivers of leſs Note, but yet more commodious for Trade and Commerce: Beſides which, there is likewiſe in every Province one grand Canal, which ſerves as a high Road, the Banks whereof are lin'd with great ſquare Stones of coarſe Marble, upon which the People walk to tow their Boats along; they are generally of a clear, deep running Water, gliding along ſoftly that it can ſcarcely be perceiv'd; from each great Canal are cut ſeveral ſmaller, which are again branch'd out again into Rivulets that generally end at ſome Town or Village. They have alſo the Convenience of a great many Bridges for the neceſſary Communication with the oppoſite Shores, conſiſting of 3, 5, and ſometimes 7 Arches, the middlemoſt being always extraordinary high, ſo that the Boats may paſs thro' without lowering or ſtriking their Maſts: The Arches are built of Marble, very well fram'd, the Supporters well fitted, and the Piles ſo ſmall that at a Diſtance they would be imagin'd to hang in the Air. Theſe are frequently met with, not being far aſunder; and the Canals being ſtrait as they uſually are, make a beautiful Proſpect, both ſtately and agreeable: The Canals diſcharge themſelves into ſome Lake or great Pond, out of which all the adjacent Country is watered: So that theſe clear and plentiful Streams, embelliſh'd

by

by ſo many fine Bridges, bounded by ſuch neat and convenient Banks, which ſerve as ſo many Cauſeways, equally diſtributed into ſuch vaſt Plains, cover'd with a numerous Multitude of Boats and Barges ſailing different Ways, and crown'd (if I may be allow'd the Expreſſion) with a prodigious Number of Cities, Towns and Villages ſeated upon the Banks whoſe Ditches are fill'd, and whoſe Streets are thereby form'd, which does at once make that Country the moſt fruitful and beautiful in the World: *Europe* we are well aſſur'd has nothing to boaſt of comparable to it.

Great Number of Boats and Barges.

China formerly overflow'd.

THE *Chineſe* ſay their Country formerly was totally overflow'd, and that by main Labour and great Induſtry they drain'd the Water by cutting it a Way thro' theſe uſeful Canals: Which if true, the Boldneſs and Induſtry of their Workmen is very much to be admir'd, who have thus made great artificial Rivers, and of a kind of a Sea, as it were, created the moſt fertile Plains in the World.

Great Canal.

AMONG all thoſe Canals in the Southern Provinces, one above the reſt is call'd the *Great Canal*, becauſe it runs thro' the whole Country from *Canton*, the Southermoſt Province of *China*, to *Pekin* the Imperial City in the North; you muſt only travel a ſhort Day's Journey by Land to croſs the Hill *Moilin* that bounds the Province of *Kiamſi*: From this Mountain iſſue two Rivers; one runs Southward to the Sea, and the other Northwards as far as the River of *Nankin*, whence by the *Yellow River*, and ſeveral Canals, you may proceed by Water even to the very Mountains of *Tartary*. In this great Tract of Land the Ground not being always Level, a Deſcent being wanted proportionable to the flowing of the Waters; to ſupply this Defect, inſtead of Sluices there are ſeveral great Water-falls, or Torrents more or leſs rapid according to the Difference of the Level, precipitated from one Canal into another: Now to cauſe the Barks to aſcend, they make uſe of a great Number of Men, who are maintain'd for that Purpoſe near the Water-falls; to draw up the Veſſels which go againſt the Stream, they have ſeveral Capſtans upon the Banks: after they have faſten'd Cables round the Veſſel, they raiſe it by little and little till they have brought it into the upper Canal, in a Condition to continue its Voyage whither it is bound: This Method of theirs is very tedious, attended with great Toil and exceeding dangerous. They would be wonderfully ſurpris'd, ſhould they behold with what Eaſineſs one Man alone, who opens and ſhuts the Gates of our Sluices, makes the longeſt and heavieſt laden Barks ſecurely to aſcend and deſcend.

Method of lifting loaded Veſſels out of one Canal into another.

IN ſome Places the Waters of two Canals have no Communication, yet for all that they make the Boats paſs from one to the other, notwithſtanding the Level of one is 15 Foot above the other: And this is the way they go to work; at the End of the Canal they have built a double *Glacis*, or ſloping Bank of Free-ſtone, which uniting at the Point extends itſelf on both Sides up to the Surface of the Water; when the Bark is in the lower Channel, they hoiſt it up by the help of the Capſtans to the Plane of the firſt *Glacis*, ſo far, till being raiſ'd to the Point, it falls back again by its own Weight along the ſecond *Glacis*, into the Water of the upper Channel, where it ſhoots away a pretty while like an Arrow out of a Bow; and they make it deſcend after the ſame manner proportionably. The ſe Barks being commonly very long and heavy laden, 'tis a Wonder they eſcape being ſplit in the middle, or being broken-back'd (as 'tis call'd among Seamen) when they are pois'd in the Air, upon the Acute Angle; for conſidering the Length of the Lever, muſt needs have a ſtrange effect upon it, yet we don't hear of any ill Accident happening thereupon.

Great Canal free from Water-falls.

WE meet with no ſuch Water-falls in the Grand Canal, becauſe the Emperor's Barks, that are as large as our Frigates, could not be rais'd by Strength of Arm, nay, and would infallibly be ſplit in the Fall: All the Difficulty conſiſts in aſcending back again upon theſe Torrents, of which I have ſpoken; yet this is what they perform ſucceſſively, tho' not without ſome Trouble and Expence.

THE Great Canal is very uſeful for the Tranſportation of Grain and Stuffs, which they fetch from the Southern Provinces to *Pekin*. There are (if we may give Credit to the *Chineſe*) a 1000 Barks, from 80 to 100 Tun, that make a Voyage once a Year, all of them freighted for the Emperor, without counting thoſe of particular Perſons, whoſe Number is infinite. When theſe prodigious Fleets ſet out, one would think they carry the Tribute of all the Kingdoms of the *Eaſt*; and that one of theſe Voyages alone was capable of ſupplying all *Tartary* with a ſufficiency to ſubſiſt ſeveral Years; yet for all that *Pekin* alone hath the Benefit of it; and it wou'd be as good as nothing, did not the Province contribute beſides to the Maintenance of the Inhabitants of that vaſt City. Their Ships for the Sea-Service are not comparable with thoſe of *Europe*, and their Skill in Navigation is very indifferent, yet upon their Rivers or Canals, they manage large Veſſels as big as Ships, by a few Hands with great Dexterity: Their Veſſels are flat-bottom'd, the Head and Stern ſquare, but the fore-part not quite ſo broad as the Stern; they have a Main-Maſt and a Fore-Maſt: The Fore-Maſt has a Yard and a ſquare Sail; their Maſts are not pieced like ours, one ſet on the Head of the other, but are only one ſingle Tree. Their Sails are made of a thick Matt, ſtrengthen'd with Laths or ſplit Cane at about two Foot diſtance: They build little Rooms or Cabins upon the Deck, from one End to the other, rais'd about ſeven or eight Foot high, neatly painted and gilt within and without, and withal very commodious, that takes off, or at leaſt very much abates the Fatigues of long Voyages. The Mandarins or great Officers frequently travel after this manner, and no where ſpend their Hours more agreeably, for here they viſit one another without that Formality and Ceremony requir'd on Shore, playing and paſſing away their Time as if they were all of one Family: Freedoms are never taken by Magiſtrates in their own Juriſdiction.

Some of the Canals very dangerous.

NOTWITHSTANDING the ſailing upon theſe Canals is in general very pleaſant, yet there are ſeveral rapid Torrents on which they ſail with the utmoſt Danger; the Veſſels being ſometimes whirl'd about with an incredible Swiftneſs for a conſiderable Time, and are at laſt daſh'd in Pieces upon the Rocks. In the Province of *Foküen*, for eight or ten Days ſailing, their Veſſels are in continual Danger of periſhing; there are ſo many Cataracts or rocky Streights, that it is hardly poſſible for the Boats to paſs thro' without being daſh'd to Pieces on one Side or other; every Day almoſt ſome Veſſel or other is wreck'd in theſe Torrents, but it often happens they ſplit near the Shore, and the Paſſengers are by that means ſaved; tho' ſometimes their Veſſels are daſh'd to Pieces and the Crews are buried in a Moment: But the Danger often proceeds from want of Hands to manage their Barks, for if inſtead of eight Men they had fifteen, all the Violence of the Streams wou'd not be able to carry them away, ſo dextrous are theſe People at ſtemming the Force of the Current. But it is common in *China*, as well as other Parts of the World, to riſque Ship and Cargo, rather than be at the Expence of a ſufficient Number of Hands to work a Ship thro' the many Difficulties that they are continually liable to.

'TIS obſervable that there is hardly a City or Village throughout the vaſt Empire, more eſpecially in the Southern Provinces, but has the Conveni-

ency of ſome navigable River, Lake, Canal or Arm of the Sea; and that there are as many People, nearly, living upon the Water as there are upon the Land: Wherever there is a Town upon the Shore, there is another of Boats upon the Water; and ſome Ports are ſo block'd up with Veſſels, that it will take up ſeveral Hours to get croſs them to Land. Theſe Veſſels are made as commodious as their Houſes; and there are many born, live and die in them: They likewiſe keep Hogs, Poultry, Dogs and other Animals on Board, in the ſame manner as if they were on Shore.

Vaſt Floats of Timber.

THERE are beſides theſe Veſſels, a great Number of Floats of Timber perpetually going up and down the Rivers and Canals, which carry whole Villages of People upon them. This Timber is cut chiefly in the Province of *Suchuen*, which adjoins for *India* on the Weſt; their Trees grow tall and ſtrait, and are fit for all ſorts of Building, eſpecially Shipping. The Emperor reſerves ſome for his private Uſe, and ſometimes ſends 300 Leagues for Trees of a prodigious Bigneſs, of which he makes Pillars for his Temples or other Publick Buildings. The Inhabitants alſo trade much in them, for having lopt off all the Branches, they tie 80 or 100 together, and faſten ſo many ſuch Rows one behind another as reach almoſt a Mile in Length, and riſe two or three Foot above the Water, upon which the People build wooden Huts or Cabins, where the Timber-Merchant, his Family and Servants lie during the whole Voyage, which is ſometimes three or four Months.

Fountains.

THERE is likewiſe to be found in *China*, ſeveral Fountains that ebb and flow as regularly as the Sea doth; whether they have a Communication with the Ocean by ſubterraneous Paſſages, or whether occaſion'd by being impregnated (in their Paſſage thro' certain Earths) by Salts and Sulphurs, and ſo may be apt to cauſe this Fermentation, is a Philoſophical Point to be diſcuſs'd by thoſe who make Nature the chief Subject of their Enquiry.

Lakes and Ponds.

SINCE I have begun to ſpeak of the different Waters of *China*, I cannot paſs over in ſilence the Lakes and Ponds that are almoſt every where to be found throughout the Provinces. Thoſe that are produced in the Winter by the Torrents from the Mountains, lay waſte the Fields, and render the Country thereabouts during Summer barren, ſandy, and full of Flints: Thoſe that ariſe from the Springs are abounding in Fiſh, and yield a conſiderable Revenue to the Emperor, by the Salt they afford; there is one of them among the reſt in the Province of *Kiangſi*, in the middle whereof appears a ſmall Iſland, where abundance of People come to divert themſelves during the exceſſive Heats. There is a natural Salt produc'd from this Spring in great Plenty, very white, and of a pleaſant Scent, which they continue to make all the Summer long, with that Succeſs, that the Salt would be ſufficient for the whole Province, if it were as ſalt as that of the Sea; nevertheleſs, they commonly make uſe of it to ſeaſon their Meat withal.

Salt ſpringing.

Water of a petrifying Quality.

In the Iſland of *Hainan*, belonging to *China*, there is a ſort of Water, whether it be a Lake or Fountain, is not certainly known, that petrifies Fiſh: Father *le Compte* ſays, he himſelf brought over Crawfiſh, that preſerv'd their Nature and Figure, and was ſo far chang'd into Stone, that the Claws and Body of them were very hard, ſolid, and little differing from Stone. But the Wonders of Nature are not ſo very ſingular to *China*, for the like petrifying Quality of Springs are to be met with in ſeveral other Parts nearer Home, nay, our own Kingdoms are not exempt therefrom.

THEIR Rivers, Canals and Lakes, are plentifully ſtor'd with great Varieties of Fiſh; many of them are of the ſame kind as thoſe we are furniſh'd with in *England*; there are alſo many other Sorts of Fiſh that we are wholly Strangers to, among which the *Golden* and *Silver Fiſh* that are found in divers Provinces, do afford particular Ornaments in the Courts and Gardens of great Perſons; they are commonly about four or five Inches in Length, and of a proportionable Thickneſs; the Male is of a moſt delicate Red from the Head to the middle of the Body, or a little farther, the reſt with the Tail is gilded, but with ſuch a glittering, exceeding that of burniſh'd Gold, that our real Gildings cannot come near it: The Female is white, its Tail and one part of its Body, looks as if it was perfectly waſh'd over with Silver; their Tails are not even and flat as that of other Fiſh, but ſhap'd ſomething like a Noſegay, thick and long, and gives a particular Grace to this pretty Animal, that ſets it off, being beſides perfectly well proportion'd. Silver and Gold Fiſh.

THOSE who breed theſe Fiſh are extraordinary careful; for they are very tender and ſenſible of the leaſt Injuries of the Air; they put them into a large Baſon, ſuch as are in Gardens, at the bottom of which they place an Earthen Pot turn'd upſide down, full of holes on the Sides, that they may retire into it in hot Weather to ſhelter themſelves from the Sun: They likewiſe ſtrew particular Herbs on the Surface of the Water that keeps always green, and maintain the Coolneſs; this Water they change two or three times a Week, yet ſo that freſh Water may be put in, according as the Baſin is emptied, which muſt never be left dry. Any great Noiſe, as that of a Cannon or Thunder, too ſtrong a Smell, or violent Motion, are prejudicial to them, and ſometimes occaſion their dying; they live almoſt upon nothing, for the earthy Parts that are mix'd with the Water, breed ſmall Worms, which ſuffice in a manner to keep them alive; tho' they ſometimes fling in little Balls of Paſte; but there is nothing better for them than a Wafer, which ſteep'd makes a Sort of a Pap, of which they are very greedy, and indeed is adapted to their natural Delicacy and Tenderneſs. In the Southern Parts of the Country they multiply exceedingly, provided Care be taken to remove their Eggs, which ſwim upon the Water, and which the Fiſh commonly eat; they place them in a particular Vaſe expos'd to the Sun, and there they preſerve them till they are hatch'd by the Heat; the Fiſh are at firſt of a black Colour, (which they ſometimes retain ever after) and are chang'd by little and little into other Colours, as Red, White, Gold and Silver, according to their different Kinds: The Gold and Silver Colour begins at the extremity of the Tail, and expands itſelf more or leſs in a particular manner. Manner of breeding them.

IN the Province of *Fokien* there is a famous Lake, the Water thereof is Green, and the *Chineſe* aſſert that it changes Iron into Copper. They have a Palace likewiſe ſeated on the Banks of the Lake not far diſtant from the former; in an Apartment of which one is laid to hear the ringing of Bells every time the Heavens threaten a Storm. And in the Province of *Quantum* there are Waters that change Colour every Year, in Summer and Winter, and in Autumn they turn blue, but of ſuch a fine blue, that it is made uſe of by the Inhabitants to dye their Stuffs with. A famous Lake.

CHAP.

CHAP II.

Containing a Deſcription of their Cities, Towns, Fortifications, Palaces, and other Publick Buildings; Houſes and Furniture.

The Imperial City.

PEKIN is the Imperial City of *China*, and principal Reſidence of the Emperor; it is called the North Court, to diſtinguiſh it from *Nankin*, the South Court, another very conſiderable City, where the Court of their Emperor was formerly kept, being the moſt commodious and beſt ſituated of the whole Empire; but the continual Incurſions of the *Tartars*, their warlike but troubleſome Neighbours, oblig'd their Monarchs to ſettle in the moſt Northerly Province, to be in a continual Readineſs to oppoſe them, with a numerous Army that they uſually kept near the Court.

Situation.

PEKIN is ſituated in 40 Degrees of North Latitude, in a very fertile Plain, and not far from the Great Wall: Its Neighbourhood to the Sea on the Eaſt, and the great Canal on the South, affords it a Communication with ſeveral fine Provinces, from which they have part of their Subſiſtence.

Extent.

THIS City, which is of an exact ſquare Form, was formerly 12 Miles in Circumference; but the *Tartars* ſettling there, forc'd the *Chineſe* to live without the Walls, where they built a new Town, which being more long than large, does with the old one make an irregular Figure: Thus *Pekin* is made up of two Cities; one is called the *Tartars*, becauſe none elſe are permitted to inhabit there; and the other the *Chineſe*, as large, but far better peopled than the firſt; they are 18 Miles in Circumference, allowing 1200 Paces to each Mile, being exactly meaſur'd by the Emperor's expreſs Command.

Exceeding Popu lous

THIS City is reckon'd to be four times as large as *Paris*, but their Houſes are but one Story high, their Streets are very wide, and the Emperor's Palace is of a vaſt Extent, containing Parks, Gardens, Canals, *&c.* They have Magazines of Rice therein, ſufficient for the Maintenance of above 200,000 Men, and large Courts fill'd with little Houſes, in which thoſe who ſtand for their Doctor's Degree are examin'd; which alone would make a large City: The Streets of this City are extremely crouded, which obliges the Quality to have a Horſeman ride before them to clear the Way; the wideſt Streets are not free from Confuſion; for at the ſight of ſo many Horſes, Mules, Camels, Waggons, Chairs, and Crouds of 100 or 200 People, who gather here and there round the Fortune-tellers, one would imagine that ſome unuſual Show had drawn the whole Country to *Pekin*.

INDEED, to outward Appearance our moſt populous Cities are Wildernеſſes in reſpect of this, eſpecially conſidering there are more Women then Men, and that among ſo vaſt a Multitude, you ſhall very ſeldom meet with any: This perhaps has made ſome People think both Cities might contain ſix or ſeven Millions of People, which is really a great Miſtake, for it is certain a Judgment can't be form'd of the Number of Inhabitants in any Place by the Crouds that are ſeen in it.

THERE are ſeveral Reaſons given for the great Multitudes of People that are met with in this City; for *firſt*, Abundance of Country People daily reſort to *Pekin* to Market, and no River coming up cloſe to the City, all Sorts of Goods are brought thither by Land Carriage, which occaſions the Streets to be fill'd with Waggons, Camels, and other Beaſts of Burthen, with their Drivers; inſomuch, that Morning and Evening the Gates are ſo throng'd, a Man muſt wait ſome Hours before he can paſs by.

Artificers work at their Employers Houſes.

Secondly, MOST Artificers in *China* work in the Houſes of their Employers; as for Example, if a Man wants a Suit of Cloaths, the Taylor comes in the Morning to his Lodging, and there works all Day, and at Night returns Home; and ſo of the reſt. Tradeſmen are here continually looking out for Buſineſs, even the Smiths carry with them their Anvil, Furnace and other Implements for their ordinary Uſe: Beſides, People of Faſhion have numerous Trains of Servants to attend them abroad, either on Horſeback or in Chairs; the Mandarins have all their Officers to wait on them in their Formalities wherever they go, ſo that they form a kind of Proceſſion: The Lords belonging to the Court, and Princes of the Blood, never are without a great Guard of Horſe, they being neceſſitated to go every Day to Court; their Equipage is ſufficiently cumberſome to the City. It is therefore evident that theſe Cuſtoms which are peculiar to *China*, muſt very much encreaſe the Throng, and therefore it is no wonder that this City, as well as others in *China*, ſeem more populous than they really are. However, 'tis computed there are no leſs than two Millions of Inhabitants in the City of *Pekin*, which is certainly more than double the Number of Inhabitants than either *Paris* or *London* is furniſh'd withal.

Shop-keepers make a fine Show

THE principal Streets in *Pekin* are built in a direct Line; the greateſt being about 120 Foot broad, and 3 Miles long, and the Shops in which they ſell their Silks and China-Ware generally take up the whole Steeet, and make an agreeable Appearance: And that which renders it more ſo, is a Cuſtom the Tradeſmen have of ſetting up a Board before their Shops, (on a little kind of Pedeſtal) above 20 Foot, long painted, varniſh'd and gilt, on which are written in large Characters, the Names of the ſeveral Commodities they ſell: Theſe kind of Pilaſters, thus plac'd on each Side of the Street, and almoſt at equal Diſtances, make a pleaſing ſhow: 'This is uſual in almoſt all the Cities of *China*, and in ſome Places they have been ſo neatly painted, that one would think they were rather deſign'd as Ornaments for a Theatre, than Signs for Tradeſmen.

Great Inconvenience from Mud and Duſt.

TWO Things, however, detract much from the Beauty of this City; the firſt is, that the Houſes are not proportionable, being neither well built, nor high enough: The ſecond is, That they are always peſter'd with Mud and Duſt. The Country, altho' ſo well regulated in every Thing elſe, is deficient in theſe Particulars: Both Winter and Summer are equally troubleſome to thoſe that walk abroad, and therefore Horſes and Chairs are much in requeſt; for the Dirt ſpoils their ſilken Boots, which they wear there; and the Duſt ſticks to their Cloaths, eſpecially if they are made of Sattin, which they have a way of oiling, to give it the more Luſtre. There is ſo much of the latter rais'd by the Multitude of Horſes, that the City is always cover'd with a Cloud of it, which gets into the Houſes, and makes its way into their Cloſets, ſo that take what Care they will, their Goods will be always cover'd with it; tho' they ſtrive as much as poſſibly they can to allay it, by continually be-ſprinkling the

Streets

Streets with Water; notwithſtanding which it is very troubleſome and unhealthy.

The Walls of Pekin.

THE Walls of this City are of ſo great a Height, that they hide the whole Town, and are proportionably thick, inſomuch that ſeveral Horſemen may ride a-breaſt upon them. They are defended by ſquare Towers about a Bow-ſhot diſtance from each other. The Ditch before them is dry, but very broad and deep. The Gates are of a prodigious Height, and at a Diſtance look very magnificent; every Gate of the Town has a Fortreſs or Redoubt, built before it of an equal Height with the Gate, which being join'd together by high Walls, form a handſome Square, large enough for 500 Men to draw up in Battalia. The Paſſage into it is by the ſide Wall between the Gate and the Fort, and not directly forward; then turning to the Right, you enter the Gate of the City, where a ſtrong Guard is always kept. The Arches or Gateways are built with Marble; but the reſt of the Walls with Brick. The *Chineſe* are very incompleat in their Fortifications; for they have no other Works beſides a Wall ſtrengthen'd by ſquare Towers, and a deep Ditch, ſometimes dry, but oftner full of running Water, with ſome Bulwarks or Baſtions, and a few ordinary Iron Guns upon their Walls; there are nine Gates in the *Tartar* City; three towards the South, and two on each of the other Sides. The *Chineſe* City is alſo wall'd round, and has ſeven Gates, and a large Suburb at every Gate.

City Gates well-guarded.

Emperor's Palace.

OF all the Buildings this mighty City conſiſts in, the Emperor's Palace is the moſt remarkable, which ſtands in the midſt of the *Tartar* City, and is of an oblong Square, about two Miles in Length and one in Breadth, defended by a good Wall. This Palace includes not only the Emperor's Houſe and Gardens, but the Apartments of his Officers, and a great Number of Artificers, who are conſtantly employ'd by the Emperor. None are permitted to lie within the innermoſt Palace but the Eunuchs: The inner Palace conſiſts of nine large Courts, the Arches thro' which one paſſes from one Court to another are very ſtately, being of an extraordinary thickneſs, and proportionable in Breadth and Height, and built with fair white Marble; and over each there is a large ſquare *Gothick* Building; but the Offices on each ſide theſe Courts are but mean: Thro' one of theſe Courts ran a ſmall Rivulet, over which were built ſeveral little Bridges of Marble, tho' whiter in Colour and of better Workmanſhip than the Arches of the Gates they paſs through: It is obſervable that the Beauties of this celebrated Palace does not conſiſt ſo much in being compos'd of ſeveral curious Pieces of Architecture, as in a prodigious Quantity of Buildings, with many Courts and Gardens adjoining, which are all regularly diſpos'd, and in the whole make up a Palace really Grand and Magnificent.

Offices but mean.

Imperial Apartments.

THE Emperor's Apartment is in the midſt of one of theſe great Courts, which is ſupported by a ſquare Baſis or ſolid Building of an extraordinary Bigneſs, whoſe Top is adorn'd with a Balluſtrade, much after our Faſhion; this ſupports another like unto it, but tapering upwards, over which are plac'd three more, ſtill loſing Bulk as they gain in Height. Upon the uppermoſt is built a large Hall, whoſe Roof being cover'd with gilt Tiles, is born by the four Walls, and as many Rows of varniſh'd Pillars, between which the Imperial Throne is ſeated. Theſe vaſt Baſes with their Balluſtrades made of white Marble, and thus diſpos'd like an Amphitheatre, makes a glorious Show, and when the Sun ſhines, appears to be cover'd with a Palace glittering with Gold; eſpecially conſidering the Situation of it in the Centre of a ſpacious Court, ſurrounded by four ſtately Rows of Building: So that were its Beauty enrich'd with the Ornaments of our Modern Architecture, and by that noble Simplicity which is ſo valued in our Buildings, it would doubtleſs be as ſumptuous as ever was rais'd by Art.

THIS Palace however is not inferior to any in the Eaſt for Richneſs and Fairneſs, for when you come to the Imperial Lodgings, there indeed, the Portico's ſupported by ſtately Pillars, the white Marble Steps, by which you aſcend to the inward Halls and Chambers of State, which are furniſh'd with the richeſt Furniture imaginable; four of which are eſteem'd the richeſt in the World; the gilt Roofs, the fine carv'd Work, Varniſh, Gilding and Painting they are adorn'd with, Marble or Porcelain Floors, and above all, the great Number of different Pieces of Architecture which they conſiſt of, dazzle the Beholder's Eye, and really look exceedingly Grand, and every way becoming the Majeſty of ſo formidable a Monarch.

Imperial Guards.

THE Guards, plac'd in the Gates and Avenues of the Palace, have no other Arms but their Scymitars, and are not ſo numerous as ſome relate; but there is a great Number of Lords and Mandarins conſtantly attending at the uſual time of Audience, when this Monarch appears in the greateſt State and Splendor imaginable. The Power and Inſolence of the Eunuchs was formerly an inſupportable Grievance to the Princes of the Empire; but the laſt Emperors of *China*, eſpecially thoſe deſcended from *Tartary*, have very much humbled them, that they make at preſent an inconſiderable Figure: The youngeſt ſerve as Pages, and the others are put to ſome of the meaneſt ſervile Offices.

Great Number of Attendants.

Great Appearance when the Emperor goes Abroad.

AT the time the Emperor makes his Appearance, which is four times a Month, he is then attended with 4 or 5000 Noblemen and Mandarins to make their Court, together with many petty Kings, who are his Vaſſals, and attend in their Turns at Court: And when he goes abroad, his Attendants are ſo numerous, that they would compoſe a good Army; *Maigaillans* has given us the Order of the Emperor's Proceſſion when he goes out of the Palace to offer Sacrifice, or perform any Publick Duty, wherein the Attendants amount to at leaſt 8000 Men, four Elephants, and ſeveral hundreds of Horſe: When he goes abroad, which is uſually to the Province of *Leaotum* or *Tartary* a hunting, a vaſt Army always attends him.

Emperor's Wives and Concubines.

THE Number of the Emperor's Wives and Concubines are not eaſily known to any one, being ſeldom ſeen by any but himſelf; they are all Maidens of Quality, which their Mandarins or Governours of the Province ſelect for their Monarch's Uſe; and as ſoon as they enter the Palace, they have no farther Correſpondence with their Friends, not even their own Fathers: This ſore'd and perpetual Solitude, (for many of them are not taken notice of by the Emperor) ſets them upon many Artifices and Intrigues to get into his Favour, and the Jealouſies they have of one another fills them with continual Suſpicions, Envy and Hate, and make them for the moſt part very miſerable. Among thoſe who are ſo happy as to gain the Approbation of their Prince; there are three choſen which bear the Title of Queens: Theſe are honour'd in a far higher Degree than the reſt, having each of them their ſeparate Lodgings, their Court, their Ladies of Honour, and other Royal Attendants.

Houſes of the Grandees.

NOTHING is wanting that can contribute to their Diverſion: Their Furniture, Cloaths and Attendance is rich and magnificent; and all their Happineſs conſiſts in pleaſing their Lord, for no Buſineſs of any Moment comes to their Knowledge; and as they do not aſſiſt the State with their Counſels, ſo neither do they diſturb it with their Ambition.

THE Houſes of their Grandees do not deſerve the Name of Palaces; they are but one Story high, as are all the reſt; tho' the great Number of Lodgings for themſelves and Servants make ſome amends for their want of Beauty and Magnificence. Not

but

but the *Chineſe* are as much in love with looking great and ſpending high, as any other Nation; but the Cuſtom of the Country, and the danger of being taken Notice of, is a very great Curb to their Inclinations.

A remarkable Story.

FATHER *Le Compte* ſays, When he was at *Pekin*, a Prince and one of the chief Mandarins, had built him a Houſe ſomewhat more loſty and ſtately than the reſt; this was imputed to him for a Crime, and thoſe whoſe Province it was, accuſed him before the Emperor, inſomuch that the Mandarin, fearful of the Event, pull'd down his Houſe while the Buſineſs was under Examination, and before it was determined.

Courts of Juſtice.

THEIR Courts of Juſtice (where they try Criminals and Cauſes) have little Advantage over the reſt: The Courts are large, the Gates lofty, embelliſh'd with Ornaments of Architecture ſomething tolerable; but the inner Halls and Offices can boaſt neither of State nor Cleanlineſs.

The Royal Obſervatory.

THE *Royal Obſervatory* at *Pekin* is very ſumptuous, and is furniſh'd with a handſome Apparatus of Inſtruments for Aſtronomical Obſervations; a Deſcription thereof tis hop'd will be acceptable to our Readers: This Obſervatory is contiguous to the Walls of this City, ſtanding about ten or twelve Foot above the Bulwark; you firſt enter a Court of a moderate Extent, in which there is a little Houſe, being the Habitation of the Perſon that looks after the Obſervatory: from thence turning to the Right, you meet with a narrow Stair-Caſe, by which you mount to the Height of a ſquare Tower; upon which there is a Platform, where their Mathematical and Aſtronomical Inſtruments are plac'd; they are large, well caſt, embelliſh'd with Repreſentations of Dragons, and very well diſpos'd to the Uſes they are deſign'd for; and were the Niceneſs of the Diviſions anſwerable to that of the Work, and Teleſcopes adapted to them according to the preſent Method with us, nothing that we have of that kind might be brought into Competition with them; of which we have the following Account.

An Armillary Sphere.

THE firſt is an Armillary Sphere ſix Foot Diameter: This is ſupported by four Dragon's Heads, whoſe Bodies after ſeveral Windings are faſten'd to the Ends of two brazen Beams, plac'd at right Angles, which ſupport the whole Weight of the Sphere. Theſe Dragons were choſen for Ornament rather than any other Animal, becauſe it is part of the Emperor's Coat of Arms; and likewiſe they imagine the Dragon is capable of influencing, or rather diſturbing the whole Frame of Nature; for theſe Reaſons moſt of their Decorations in Architecture conſiſt of Dragons, varied in abundance of odd ridiculous and unnatural Poſtures: But to proceed; four Lions of the ſame Metal, ſtand under the End of the aforeſaid Beams, whoſe Heads are rais'd higher or lower by Screws. The Circles are divided, both in their exterior and interior Surface by interſected, Lines, into 360 Degrees each, and each Degree into 60 Minutes, and the latter into Portions of 10 Seconds each, by ſmall Pins.

Horizontal Azimuth.

THE ſecond is an Equinoctial Sphere of ſix Foot Diameter; this Sphere is ſupported by a Dragon, who bears it on his Back bowed, and whoſe four Claws ſeize the four Ends of its Pedeſtal, which, as the former, has two brazen Beams, croſſing at right Angles, whoſe Ends are likewiſe born by four Lions, which ſerve to ſet it right. This Deſign is noble and well perform'd.

Equinoctial Sphere.

THE third is an Horizontal Azimuth, ſix Foot Diameter; this Inſtrument is uſeful for taking of Azimuths, being compos'd of a large Circle horizontally plac'd. The two Sights, which ſerves it for a Diameter, is moveable round the Circumference of the Rim, and carries with it a vertical Triangle, the upper Angle of which is faſten'd to a Beam rais'd perpendicular from the Center of the ſaid Horizon. Four folded Dragons bow their Heads under the inferior Limb of the Circle, to make it faſt; and two others twiſt round two ſmall Columns, mounted on either ſide Semicircularly, as high as the ſaid Beam, to which they are faſten'd, to keep the Triangle ſteady.

Quadrant.

THE fourth is a large Quadrant of ſix Foot Radius; the Limb is divided into Portions of 10 Seconds each; the Lead, which ſhews its vertical Situation, weighs a Pound, and hangs from the Centre by a very fine Braſs Wire. The *Sights* move eaſily round the Limb. A Dragon folded in ſeveral Ringlets, and wrapt up in Clouds, ſeizes on all Parts of the ſeveral Plates of the Inſtruments to faſten them, leaſt they ſhou'd ſtart out of their due Poſition. The whole Body of the Quadrant hangs in the Air, and a fix'd Axis runs thro' its Centre, round which the Quadrant turns towards any Part of the Heavens: And leaſt its great Weight ſhou'd cauſe it to ſhake, and loſe its vertical Poſition, a Beam is rais'd on each Side, ſecur'd at the bottom by a Dragon, and faſten'd to the middle Beam or Axis, by Clouds which ſeem to come out of the Air. The whole Work is ſolid and well contriv'd.

Sextant.

THE fifth is a Sextant, whoſe Radius is about eight Foot; this repreſents the ſixth Part of a great Circle, born by a Beam, the Baſis of which is concave, made faſt with Dragons, and croſs'd in the middle by a brazen Pillar, on End of which is a Machine, by the help of whoſe Wheels the Inſtrument is made eaſily moveable in any Direction. On this Engine or Machine reſts the middle of a ſmall braſs Beam, which repreſents the Radius of the Sextant, and is faſten'd to it. Its upper Part is terminated by a large Cylinder, which is the Centre, round which the Index turns, and the lower is extended above two Foot beyond the Limb, that it may be graſp'd by the Pulley which ſerves to raiſe it.

Cœleſtial Globe.

THE ſixth is a Cœleſtial Globe of ſix Foot Diameter; this Inſtrument is certainly a very fine, one and well executed. This Globe is made of Braſs exactly round and ſmooth; the Stars well grav'd, and in their true Places, and all the Circles of a proportionable Breadth and Thickneſs: It is beſides ſo well hung, that the leaſt touch moves it, and tho' it is above 2000 *l.* Weight, the leaſt Child may elevate it to any Degree. On its large concave Baſis, reſt in an oppoſite Station, four Dragons, whoſe Hair ſtanding up an end, ſupport a noble Horizon, commendable for its Breadth, its ſeveral Ornaments, and the Delicacy and niceneſs of the Work. The Meridian, in which the Pole is fix'd, reſts upon Clouds that iſſue out of the Baſis, and ſlides eaſily between them, its Motion being facilitated by hidden Wheels, and moves the whole Globe with it, to give it the requir'd Elevation. Beſides which, the Horizon, Dragons, and two Braſs Beams, which croſs at right Angles in the Centre of the Concavity of the Baſis, which ſtill remains fix'd; this facilitates the due placing of the Horizon, whether in reſpect of the natural Horizon, or in reſpect of the Globe. Theſe Inſtruments being moſt of them above 10 Foot from the Ground, have for the Aſtronomers greater Convenience, Marble Steps round them cut Amphitheatrewiſe.

THE *Chineſe* Aſtronomers make Obſervations conſtantly every Night on this Tower; they have five Mathematicians who remark what paſſes in the Heavens; one looks towards the Zenith, another to the Eaſt, and the third to the Weſt, a fourth South, and a fifth to the North, that nothing of what happens in the Heavens may eſcape their diligent Obſervation.

THEY take Notice of the Winds, the Rain, the Air, unuſual Phænomena's, ſuch as are Eclipſes, the Conjunctions or Oppoſitions of the Planets, Firey Meteors, and all that may be uſeful; this they keep a ſtrict Account of, which they bring in every

Morning to the Surveyor of the Mathematicks, to be regiſtred in his Office. If this had been always practis'd by able and careful Mathematicians, we ſhould have a great Number of curious Remarks; but beſides, that theſe Aſtronomers are very unskilful, they take little Care to improve that Science; and provided their Salary be paid as uſual, and their Income conſtant, they are in no great Concern about the Alterations and Changes which happen in the Heavens. But if theſe Phænomena's are very apparent; as when there happens an Eclipſe, or a Comet appears, they dare not be altogether ſo negligent and remiſs.

Diviſion of the City into Diſtricts, &c.

BUT to return to the City: It is divided into four Quarters or Diſtricts, and every one of theſe into leſſer Diviſions; every ten Houſes having an Officer like our Conſtable, who preſides over the other nine, and informs his Superiour if any thing extraordinary happens. If any Robbery happen in the Night, the Neighbourhood are oblig'd to make it good; and in every Family the Maſter is anſwerable for his Children and Servants. In the Night the Guards patrole in the principal Streets, and the Horſe go their Rounds upon the Walls; and if any are taken up who have not a licens'd Lanthorn, they rarely eſcape Puniſhment; for no Maſquerades or nightly Meetings are encourag'd by the *Chineſe*.

City of *Pekin*

THE City of *Pekin* ſtands upon a Plain; there are but two Hills in it, which were thrown up by Hand in the Emperor's Palace. In all the Parts of this City, there are Men and Chairs to be hired, as in *London*, and alſo Horſes; but no Coaches are us'd in this Part of the World. Their Houſes are built upon the Surface of the Ground, and are ſupported by wooden Pillars, without any Foundation: Indeed as they build but one Story high, they need a Foundation leſs; but they take up a great Extent of Ground, having ſeveral open ſquare Courts within their Walls: They have ſuch a Regard to their Privacy that no Windows are made towards the Street, or to look towards their Neighbours; and juſt before their great Gate or Portal, there ſtands a Wall or Skreen to prevent Strangers looking in upon opening the Door: When you are paſs'd the Skreen, there are little Alleys to the right and left, from whence you paſs into the ſeveral Courts which are built on all Sides. Their Entertainments are made in a ſort of Hall or Banquetting Houſe, at the Entrance of the Houſes, which have no other Ornament beſides a ſingle Order of Columns, painted and varniſh'd which ſupports the Building, and the Roofs are often open to the Tiles without a Ceiling. They have no Looking-Glaſſes, Hangings or fine Chairs; and their Beds which are one of the principal Ornaments, are ſeldom ſeen by Strangers, who are not permitted to go farther than the firſt great Hall. The Furniture of the beſt Houſes conſiſt of Cabinets, Tables, varniſh'd Skreens, China Ware, Pictures, and Pieces of white Taffaty, upon which are depicted in large Characters ſome Sentences of Morality: Neither are there any Chimneys to be ſeen in their Rooms, but they make uſe of Stoves of Charcoal to warm them in cold Weather.

Houſes.

Furniture.

THEIR Beds are indeed very fine; in Summer they have Taffaty Curtains, wrought with Flowers, in Gold, Silk and Embroidery; or elſe they have Curtains made of the fineſt Gauze, which ſerve to keep off the Flies and Gnats, but admit a free Paſſage for the Air to cool them: In Winter their Curtains are made of coarſe Sattin, with the Figures of Dragons and other Animals, *&c.* wrought in them: with Counterpanes of the ſame. They have no Feather-beds, but uſe thick Quilts, or Mattreſſes to lie on; and their Bedſteads are adorn'd with Variety of Carving and Figures.

The Great Wall

THE great Wall which ſeparates *China* from *Tartary*, except towards the Eaſt Part, where it divides the Province of *Pekin* from that of *Leaotum*; which our late Accounts informs us lies without the Wall. This is certainly a prodigious Work, in which the *Chineſe* have excell'd both Ancients and Moderns; this Wall begins in the Province of *Xenſi*, which lies in the North Weſt of *China*, in about 38 Degrees of Latitude, and is carried on over Mountains and Valleys; firſt towards the North Eaſt to the Latitude of 42, and then South Eaſterly to the Latitude of 39, and terminates between the *Kang-Sea*, between the Provinces of *Pekin* and *Leaotum*. You muſt not conceive it as a plain Wall, for it is fortify'd with Towers much like the City Walls beforemention'd; and in ſuch Places where the Paſſes might be more eaſily forc'd, they have rais'd two or three Bulwarks one behind another, which might give themſelves a mutual Defence, whoſe great Thickneſs, and the Forts which command all the Avenues, being all guarded by great Numbers of Forces, protect the *Chineſe* from all Attempts on that Side.

THE whole Courſe of it with all its Windings is about 1500 Miles, tho' in a direct Line from Weſt to Eaſt it may not be half ſo many Miles: It is almoſt all built with Brick, bound together with ſtrong Mortar, that it has not only laſted theſe ſeveral Ages, but is ſcarce the worſe. It is about 1800 Years ſince the Emperor *Chihohamti* built it, to prevent the Incurſions of the *Tartars*. This was at once one of the greateſt and maddeſt Undertakings that ever was heard of; for tho' indeed it was a prudent Caution of the *Chineſe* thus to ſecure the eaſieſt Avenues, yet it was ridiculous of them to carry this Wall to the top of ſome Precipices, on which it was impoſſible the *Tartarian* Horſe ſhould aſcend: 'Tis certainly admirable how the Materials have been conveyed and made uſe of there; and indeed it was not done without a vaſt Charge, and the loſs of many more Men then would have periſh'd by the utmoſt Fury of their Enemies. It is ſaid that during the Reigns of the *Chineſe* Emperors, this Wall was guarded by above a Million of Soldiers; but now that Part of *Tartary* belongs to *China*. They are content of manning well the worſt ſituated, but beſt fortify'd Parts of it.

SOME Relations tells us it is many Yards thick, and exceeding high; but by the Embaſſy that was ſent from *Muſcovy* to *China*, and others who have lately ſeen it, we learn that it is but 30 Foot high, and broad enough for eight People to ride a-breaſt; being generally allow'd to be about 15 Foot thick. There are no Breaches in this Wall, except in the Province of *Pekin*, North of the City of *Suven*, where, inſtead of the Walls, are very high and inacceſſible Mountains; and in that where the *Hoambo* or *Yellow River* paſſes thro' it. It is generally of equal Height upon the higheſt Hills and in the loweſt Vallies; ſo that Father *Le Compte* obſerves, when People talk of the wonderful Height of it in ſome Places, it muſt be underſtood of the Height of the Mountain on which ſuch part of the Walls ſtands.

AND for the better clearing of the Hiſtory, we hope one Digreſſion may be pardonable, which is concerning the late Revolution by which *China* and *Tartary* were both united; as we obſerv'd in the beginning of this Work; which Father *Le Compte* relates in this Manner.

Great Revolution in *China*.

" ONE of the Petty Kings of the Eaſtern *Tar-*
" *tary* (for there are not a few) whoſe Subjects, cal-
" led *Mouantcheou*, had ſettled a Trade near the
" Long Wall, having complain'd at *Pekin* of ſome
" Knaveries committed by the *Chineſe* Merchants,
" and having received no Satisfaction, reſolved to
" right himſelf, and entered the Province of *Leao-*
" *tum* with a numerous Army. The Emperor pre-
" ſently ſent ſome part of his Forces to oppoſe him,
" and the War continued ſome time, with equal
" advantage. But one *Li a Chineſe*, took that Op-
" portunity to hatch a Rebellion in the Provinces
" which were moſt remote from Court. Great

" Num-

" Number of Malecontents flock'd about him, who " having made themſelves Maſters of the greateſt " Cities, like a Torrent overflowed the whole " Country, driving all down before them.

" THE Sacred Majeſty of their Emperor could " not ſave *Pekin* from their Fury, the Rebel who " knew the beſt Forces were drawn out of it, march- " ed directly to attack it. There was indeed a " Garriſon of 17000 Men, but moſt gain'd upon by " the Practice of *Li*'s Emiſſaries; ſo that while " ſome with a pretended Zeal perſuaded the Prince " to remain in his Palace, others open'd the City " Gates to the Traitor, who ſolemnized his Entry " by a Cruel Slaughter. The unfortunate Monarch " finding himſelf betrayed, would have marched " out againſt him with 600 Guards who ſtill re- " mained with him, but at the mentioning of this " Heroick Propoſal their Hearts failed 'em, and " they ungenerouſly abandoned him. Then know- " ing no greater Evil than that of falling quick in- " to the Hands of his Enemies, he retired into a " Garden with an only Daughter he had, and ha- " ving wrote with his Blood theſe Words on the " border of his Veſt; *My Subjects have baſely forſa- " ken me, ſpend thy Rage on my Body, but ſpare my " People*, he firſt ſtabb'd the Princeſs, whoſe Tears " muſt needs have rent a Heart of Flint, and then " hang'd himſelf on a Tree; more unjuſt to his " Daughter, and cruel to himſelf, than could have " been the moſt barbarous Foe.

" THE Emperor being dead, all bowed to the " Uſurper except *Ouſanguey*, (whom the late Prince " had intruſted with the Command of the Forces he " had ſent againſt the *Tartars*,) who never would " acknowledge him, and choſe rather to pull down " his Tyranny than ignobly to accept a ſhare in it. " The new Monarch having in vain beſieged him in " the Province *Leaotum*, to engage him to ſurrender " himſelf, ſhewed him his Father loaded with " Irons, proteſting he would put him to Death in " his Sight, if he did not immediately ſubmit. But " that generous Lord, more Faithful to the Memory " of his deceaſed Prince than tender of his Father's " Life, ſuffered the Duty of that of a Subject to " prevail over that of a Son, and ſeeing that Blood " ſpilt of which his once was Part, reſolved to die, " or revenge at once his Father's and his Emperor's " Death. He made his Peace with the *Tartars*, " who having join'd him, no ſooner enabled him to " cope with his Enemy, but he marched againſt " him. But the Tyrant, whoſe Cowardize was " even greater than his Cruelty, durſt not appear " againſt thoſe two Armies. He fled to *Pekin*, " where having burned the Palace, and all that had " not periſhed at his firſt Entry, he retired into " the Province of *Xenſi*, loaded with the ſpoil " of the Empire, and the Curſe of all. He was " purſued, but in vain; for he met with ſo private " a Retirement, that all the Art of Men could ne- " ver find him out.

" IN the mean while the *Tartars* entered *Pekin*, " and ſo impoſed upon the poor *Chineſe*, that of " themſelves they begg'd their new Gueſt to take " Care of their diſtreſſed State. The others, too " Cunning not to improve ſo favourable a Hint, whe- " ther by Force or Policy, are ſince grown abſolute " Maſters of it: And here it is hard to determine, " which is moſt to be wondered at, the Courage " and Conduct of that Nation, which gave them " Succeſs in ſo Noble an Enterprize, or the Supine- " neſs or ill Management of the *Chineſe*, who thus " baſely ſubmitted to a People ſo inconſiderable for " their Number, that they would have been aſha- " med not long before to own them for their Sub- " jects. So true it is, we ought not to look on any " thing as beneath us, ſince all Temporal Grandeur " is ſubject to Change, and that nothing is Conſtant " in this World but Inconſtancy.

" THE *Tartarian* King *Tſuntc* had not the lei- " ſure to enjoy his Conqueſt; ſcarce had he ta- " ken Poſſeſſion but he died, leaving the Admini- " ſtration of the Government, and Care of his Son, " who was then but ſix Years old, to his Brother. " This Brother of his, named *Amavan*, conquered " all the Provinces which had not yet ſubmitted; " a Prince deſervedly admired, not only for his " Valour and Conduct, ever attended with Succeſs, " but alſo for his Fidelity and Moderation. For " the young Prince being come to Age, he diſchar- " ged his Truſt, and took as much Care to ſecure " him in the Empire, as he had done to Conquer it " for him.

" THIS Union of the two Nations has made " one Empire of a prodigious Extent, for tho' all " *Tartary* does not belong to *China*, yet moſt of it is " Tributary to them; inſomuch that the great and " mighty *CHAM*, to whom the *Chineſe* themſelves " paid Tribute, is dwindled away to nothing."

BUT to proceed: *Nankin*, or the South Court, (which is call'd by the *Tartars Kiammin*) was once the Seat of the Empire, till the Emperor thought fit to remove it to *Pekin*, or the North Court, to oppoſe the Incurſions of the *Tartars*. It is nevertheleſs the Metropolis of the Province of *Nankin*, and lies in the Latitude of 32 North, Longitude 137 Eaſt. It was formerly enclos'd by three Walls, the outermoſt of which was 48 Miles in Circumference: The Ruins of them look more like the Boundaries of a Province, than the Walls of a City: And altho' it has loſt much of its former Grandeur, and is leſſen'd, as well in its Buildings as Number of Inhabitants, ſince the removal of the Court to *Pekin*, notwithſtanding it is ſtill eſteem'd more Populous then *Pekin*. The Streets are well-pav'd, but not very broad; the Houſes are low but neat; the Shops are well-ſtock'd with the richeſt Silks, and all the other Manufactures in which this Country abounds. The Mandarins and Doctors retire hither when they are out of Employment, here being the moſt conſiderable Libraries; Printing and all other Arts being practis'd in this City in the greateſt Perfection; the Language alſo is more pure then in any Part of the Kingdom. This City ſtands on the River *Kiam*, one of the largeſt and deepeſt Rivers in *China*: It is about a Mile and a half broad at this Town. Here are alſo ſeveral navigable Canals, with ſtately Bridges over them, conſtantly throng'd with Veſſels going in or out of the Port, and the City is garriſon'd by 40,000 Men.

City of *Nankin*.

WITHOUT the Gates of every Town there are uſually two magnificent Towers erected, and near each Tower a Temple of Idols; beſides which there is a Temple particularly dedicated to the Genius or Guardian Angel of the Place. There are almoſt in every City Triumphal Arches built to the Honour of ſome great Men, who have been Benefactors to their Country; and Colleges or Temples Founded in Memory of their great Philoſopher *Confucius*, where his Doctrines are taught.

Towers and Publick Buildings. Triumphal Arches.

THERE are two Towers without the Gates of *Nankin*; one of them is called the *Porcelane Tower*, of an Octangular Figure, contains nine Stories, and is 200 Foot high; it is rais'd on a very ſolid Baſe of Brick-work, and ſurrounded with a Rail of unpoliſh'd Marble. There are 12 Steps all round it, by which you aſcend to the firſt Room; but there are three large Doors that open into it; and from thence you may aſcend to the ninth Story, by very narrow and incommodious Stairs; each Step being 10 Inches deep. Theſe Towers are all built alike, in the Form of a Cone, or Sugar-Loaf: between every Story there is a Pent-houſe, or Shed, all round, which is leſſen'd all the way up, as the Tower itſelf is; decreaſing in Breadth as the Height increaſes. The Wall at Bottom is at leaſt 12 Foot thick at Bottom, and eight and a half at the Top, and

A beautiful Porcelane Tower.

taſ'd

fac'd with *China* or *Porcelane* on the outside. Each Story is form'd of thick Pieces of Timber laid a-croſs, and on them a Floor; and the Ceiling of every Room is adorn'd with Paintings. The Walls of the upper Rooms have Windows, and there are Niches alſo round them, fill'd with the Images of their Gods. Above the ninth Story there is a Cupola, which riſes thirty Foot higher than the Tower; and on the Top is a very large golden Ball. This Tower has been built above 300 Years, and ſtill appears exceedingly beautiful; and is eſteem'd the beſt contriv'd and nobleſt Structure in the Eaſt.

Bells and Watches.

THEY have likewiſe in every City of *China* very large Bells, by which they diſtinguiſh the five Watches of the Night: They are hung in Towers built for that purpoſe, and begin to ſtrike them at ſeven or eight in the Evening: In the firſt Watch they ſtrike once, which they repeat a little afterwards, and ſo on till the ſecond Watch begins; then they ſtrike two, which they repeat till the third Watch begins, and ſo on. They make uſe of a Drum alſo in their Towers, in the ſame Manner.

Bells at Pekin, 120,000 weight a piece.

THERE are 7 great Bells at *Pekin*, which weigh 120000 Pounds a-piece: They are eleven Foot wide, forty Foot in Circumference on the outſide, and twelve Foot high, beſides the Ear, which is three Foot more. But tho' they exceed our Bells in Bigneſs, ours far exceed them in ſound: Their Metal nor their way of Caſting is not comparable to ours; and having wooden Clappers, they make a very dull Sound. Theſe Bells are almoſt in Form a Cylinder, near as wide at the Top as they are at Bottom, but they leſſen in thickneſs ſomewhat from the Bottom to the Top. The Metal is brittle and very ill caſt, and full of Knots.

Triumphal Arches.

THE Triumphal Arches before-mention'd, conſiſt of three great Arches built of Marble, the middle Arch is higher than the other two: They are ſupported by four Columns, ſometimes round, but oftner ſquare, made of one ſingle Stone, plac'd on an irregular Baſis. The Frize is adorn'd with Inſcriptions, beautiful Figures and Sculptures, with Knots and Flowers finely carv'd, and Birds flying as it were out of the Stone. Theſe are look'd upon as the Maſter-piece of Art. But ſome of their Triumphal Arches are ſo very indifferent, that they are not worth deſcribing.

Windows.

THE Windows of their Houſes, as has been hinted already, neither look into the Streets, nor towards their Neighbours; which obliges them to build about open Courts and Squares to receive the Light. Their Windows are not glaz'd as ours are, but inſtead of Glaſs they have Oyſter-ſhells, or other Shells of Sea-Fiſh, clean'd and ſcrap'd ſo thin, that they will admit the Light to paſs thro' them, tho' they fall ſhort of Glaſs in Tranſparency: In other Places, 'tis ſaid, they have Pieces of painted Glaſs, like Straws glew'd together, which form a Square of the Bigneſs of our largeſt Panes: And in other Places of *China*, their Windows are made of Rattan, or ſplit Cane, and are rather Lattices than Windows, eſpecially in the Southern Provinces: Theſe being much cooler than Shells or Glaſs.

Port of Canton

THE principal Ports of this Empire to which the *Europeans* trade, are, Firſt, *Canton*, the Capital of *Quamtung*, the Southermoſt Province of *China*; it lies under or very near the Tropick of *Cancer*, about fifty Miles from the Mouth of the River *Ta*; and is thought to be the beſt Harbour in *China*. It is defended on that Side next the Water by two high Walls, with Towers upon them, and two ſtrong Water Caſtles; and on the Land ſide by a good Wall, and ſeveral Caſtles. It exceeds all the Cities of *Aſia*, (we are told,) in Idol-Temples, Courts, Palaces, and other Publick Buildings: There are no leſs than thirteen magnificent Triumphal Arches, between the Water-Gate and the Palace. This City could once have vied with the greateſt, in their Shipping, Trade, Riches and Number of Inhabitants, before it was ruin'd by the *Tartars* in the late Wars.

Macao.

THERE was alſo formerly a great Trade to *Macao*, an Iſland that lies to the South of *Canton*, poſſeſs'd by the *Portugueſe*: They have a Fort and Garriſon there ſtill; but are forc'd to ſubmit to the *Chineſe*, and be obedient to their Mandarins: All the Cuſtoms alſo are paid to the Emperor, tho' the *Portugueſe* ſtill retain a Form of Government, as to their own People. The Town is built upon very uneven Ground, on the Point of a ſmall Iſland, which commands a good Road, where the Shipping is cover'd from Storms by ſeveral little Iſlands, which lie to Windward.

Emoui, or Amoy.

TO the North of *Canton* in the Province of *Fokien*, is another Port call'd *Emoui* or *Amoy*, from the Iſland that forms it. Here the biggeſt Ships may ride with Safety cloſe to the Shore; Trading has been much improv'd there of late, which has brought great Numbers of People thither. It has for its Security a Garriſon of 8 or 900 Men.

Nimpo.

NIMPO, the moſt Eaſterly Port on the Continent of *China*: This is a City of the firſt Rank, very Populous, and beautify'd with many Triumphal Arches. It is two Days Sail diſtant from *Japan*, with whom they maintain a conſiderable Trade; exporting their Silks and other rich Merchandize; in Return for which they receive Gold, Silver, Braſs, Japan Cabinets, &c.

Chuſan.

THE *Engliſh* had a Factory in the Iſland of *Chuſan*, or *Cheuxan*, about thirty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Nimpo*, at the Time of the erecting the *New Eaſt-India* Company. This Iſland lies about the Latitude of 30, and is eight or nine Leagues in Length, from Eaſt to Weſt, and four or five in Breadth: There is a good and convenient Harbour at the Weſt End, near the *Engliſh* Factory, which was built cloſe by the Shore, in a low Valley, where there are about 200 Merchants and Tradeſmen's Houſes, who come thither to trade; but their Families reſide at a Town about a Mile farther within the Land, which is ſurrounded by a fine Stone Wall, three Miles in Circuit, defended by twenty-two ſquare Towers, mounted with ſome old Iron Guns, and has a Garriſon of three or four thouſand Men.

Port of Nankin not us'd by Europeans.

THE Harbour of *Nankin* was once accounted the fineſt in *China*, becauſe of the Breadth and Depth of the River *Kiam*, which runs by the Town: But no Merchant Ships, put in there at preſent; whether the Mouth of the River be choak'd up with Sand, or whether the Government intend to divert the Trade from the Place is not certain; tho' the latter is judg'd to be the Reaſon; but certain it is, that the whole Fleet of a noted Pyrate who beſieged *Nankin*, during the late Troubles, paſs'd it without any Difficulty; it may be from hence concluded, that the Government obſerving how much the Place was expos'd to Inſults from abroad, choſe to remove the Trade to other Places that were more ſecure, that by Degrees it might grow out of Knowledge.

THE two Imperial Cities of *Pekin* and *Nankin* already deſcribed, might alone render *China* deſervedly famous; but the Capital Cities in moſt Provinces are ſo large, that each of them is worthy to be deem'd the Metropolis of an Empire. *Sigan*, the Capital City of *Xenſi* is nine Miles in Circumference: The Walls which encloſe it are exactly ſquare; the Ditches are partly dry and partly fill'd with Water; the Walls are thick and tall, as well as the ſquare Towers that defend them; the Bulwarks are very broad, and the Gates of ſome of are them very ſtately. The City is divided into two Parts by a Wall of Earth, which runs almoſt from one End to the other: The one half is inhabited by the *Tartars*, who keep the largeſt Garriſon, tho' in the other Part, where the *Chineſe* inhabit, there is a

Sigan the Metropolis of Xenſi.

good

good Body of Troops. There is ſtill to be ſeen an old Palace, the former Reſidence of the ancient Kings of the Country, who in their Times were very powerful, not only thro' the vaſt Extent of their Dominions, but alſo from the Bravery and Courage of their Subjects; for among all the *Chineſe*, there are not any better-proportion'd, or more ſtrong, ſtout and laborious than theſe. Their Houſes indeed are but low, and but indifferently built; their Furniture is not ſo neat as in the Southern Parts, their Varniſhing not ſo ſmooth, their *Porcelane* or *China* Ware ſo plenty, or their Workmen ſo ingenious.

Hamcheu. HAMCHEU, the Metropolis of the Province of *Chekiam*, is alſo one of the richeſt and greateſt in the Empire. It is twelve Miles in Circumference, and very populous, the Suburbs are very large, and the Canals crouded with an infinite Number of Boats; 'tis thought to be as well-peopled as any of the greateſt Cities in *Europe*. The Garriſon conſiſts of 10,000 Men, 3000 of which are *Chineſe*. The Water of their Canals is not clear, nor their Streets broad; but the Shops are neat, and the Merchants are reputed rich.

EASTWARD from this City, runs a River half a League broad, being near the Sea, but indeed not very conſiderable, for a little higher it is but an uſeleſs Torrent, which runs thro' abundance of Rocks: A Lake lies cloſe to it to the Weſtward, which is about two Leagues in Circumference; the Water is clear but very ſhallow; though deep enough for large flat-bottom'd Boats, which the *Chineſe* keep there, like ſo many floating Iſlands, in which their young People divert themſelves. There is an Iſland in the middle where they uſually land, having built there a Temple, and ſome Houſes for their Diverſion. This City, altho' not ſo eminent for its Buildings, is yet to be eſteem'd for its fine Situation, being one of the beſt ſituated in the Empire, its Inhabitants very numerous, its Canals very commodious, and above all, their Traffick is exceeding great, and the fineſt and richeſt Silks in the World.

Great Traffick in Silks, the richeſt in the World.

WHAT is ſurprizing in *China* is, that having paſs'd thro' one of theſe great Cities, one would ſcarce expect to meet with the like; but you are hardly out of Sight of one but you have another in view. As for Example, going along the great Canal from *Hamcheu*, you come to *Soucheu*, which is not far from it; and if you believe the Inhabitants, is twelve Miles in Circumference: It is alſo the uſual Reſidence of the Vice-Roy, and has a vaſt Trade; but is not quite ſo populous as thoſe before-mention'd, but the Suburbs and Number of Boats amazes New-Comers. Thoſe who have the Curioſity to ſpend a few Minutes on the Water-ſide, and view the Throngs of People that come to cheapen Commodities, would imagine it to be a Fair, to which the whole Empire were crowding; and the Officers there, tho' not over ſtrict, are ſo buſied in receiving the Cuſtoms, that they are oblig'd to put off a great many Traders to the next Day, who come to make their Payments. This continual Hurry in the moſt covetous Nation in the World, (one would think) ſhould occaſion frequent Quarrels; but their Government is ſo excellently manag'd, and the Mandarins Orders ſo punctually obey'd, that beſides abuſive Language, in which the *Chineſe* are very fluent, few other Injuries are ſeldom offer'd.

CHAP. III.

A Deſcription of the Character, Genius, Temper, Stature, Complexion, Shape and Habits of the Chineſe; *with their Entertainments, Diets, Diverſions, Feſtivals, Viſits and Ceremonies; Roads, Manner of Travelling and Carriages.*

Character of the *Chineſe.* THE *Chineſe* Nation from their very Original always eſteem'd themſelves ſuperior to all Mankind; like to thoſe Princes, who as ſoon as they are born almoſt, diſcover a certain natural Loftineſs, that ever diſtinguiſhes them from the Vulgar. Whether that was owing to the Barbarity of the Neighbouring Kingdoms, or their being ſuperior to their Neighbours in Point of Wiſdom, is hard to determine; but at that Time they laid down

Good Maxims. a Maxim of State among themſelves, *To have no Commerce with Foreigners and Strangers, but juſt as much as ſhould be neceſſary to receive their Homage.* Neither did they court and ſeek after theſe Badges of Sovereignty out of a Spirit of Ambition, but thereby to have an Occaſion to preſcribe the Laws and Conſtitutions of perfect Government.

SO that when any among their Tributaries fail'd to appear, they did not oblige him by open Force to ſubmit, but on the contrary had Compaſſion on him. *What do we loſe by it*, (ſay they) *if he ſtill remain barbarous? Since he is ſo averſe to Wiſdom, he needs to blame no-body but himſelf, as often as he ſhall fail in his Duty thro' Paſſion or Blindneſs.*

THIS grave Policy acquired the *Chineſe* ſo great a Reputation, that throughout all the *Indies*, all *Tartary* and *Perſia*, they were eſteem'd the Oracles of the World; and it is obſervable that the greateſt Objection the *Japoneſe* made to the Chriſtian Religion, was, that ſo wiſe a People as the *Chineſe* had not receiv'd it.

BUT this Piece of Policy that induced them to diſtinguiſh themſelves from others, which at firſt might be a profitable Maxim, degenerated into Pride. They valu'd themſelves upon being (as they thought) a choſen and elect People, that were produc'd by Heaven, and plac'd in the Centre of the Univerſe, to be Law-givers to Others; and therefore a People only capable to inſtruct, civilize, and govern Nations. Theſe lofty Thoughts inſpir'd them with a fancy'd Opinion that other Men were defective in their Underſtandings, and deform'd in their Perſons; and believ'd they were caſt into the remote Corners of the World, as the Droſs and Off-Scourings of Nature.

Europeans not allow'd equal to themſelves in Arts and Sciences.

BUT perceiving the *Europeans* well-vers'd in Arts and Sciences, they were amaz'd, and ſaid, *How could this poſſibly be, that a People ſo remote from us, ſhould be endow'd with ſuch Parts and Learning? They have never perus'd our Books; they were never model'd by our Laws, and yet they ſpeak, diſcourſe and argue as we do.* Our Workmanſhip, as Stuffs of various kinds, Clocks, Watches, and Mathematical Inſtruments, with many other Curioſities, ſurpriz'd them ſtill more; for they imagin'd that dextrous and expert Artificers were no where to be met with but in *China*. Then they began to perceive that we were not ſo barbarous as they imagin'd; and ſaid in a joking Way, *We did ſuppoſe all other People blind, and that Nature had beſtow'd Eyes upon none but the* Chineſe:

But it is not universally true, if the Europeans *do not see clearly as we do, they have at least one Eye a-piece.*

Chinese endow'd with rare Qualities.

ABATING this Pride, it must be confess'd that the *Chinese* Nation have been endow'd with rare Qualities, with a great share of Politeness, with a great deal of Sense in practising the World, with good Skill and Regularity in their Business, with much Zeal for the Publick Good, true and just Idea's of Government, with a Genius mean as to Speculative Sciences, but yet right and sure in their Morals, which they have always preserv'd conformable to Reason.

THE People principally apply'd themselves to the Education of Children in their Families; they valued Agriculture above all other Things; very Laborious even to Excess; loving and understanding Trade perfectly well. Judges and Governors of Cities affected an outside Gravity, Sobriety at their Table, Moderation in their House-keeping, and Equity in their Judgment, that gain'd the Love and Respect from all People in general. The Emperor plac'd his chief Happiness in nothing more than to procure it for his Subjects, and look'd upon himself not so much a King of a Grand State, as a Father of a numerous Family.

THIS Character of the *Chinese* is not flattering, but faithfully deduc'd from their own History, that furnishes us with a great Number of Examples of the conspicuous Wisdom that animated their Government. 'Tis true indeed, the Civil Wars, the weak or wicked Monarchs, and Foreign Dominion, have from Time to Time disturb'd this goodly Order: But whether the Fundamental Laws of the State were excellent, or that the People from their Cradles were endued with happy Dispositions, is not material; but true it is, these fatal and troublesome Intervals did not long continue; if so they were left never so little to their own disposal, they betook themselves to their former Conduct again: And we see at this very Day, in the midst of Corruption, which the Domestick Troubles and Commerce with the *Tartars* have introduc'd, some Footsteps of their ancient Probity still remaining.

Of the Manners, Customs, &c. of the Chinese in their Manners, Customs, &c.

I SHALL in the next Place draw out the Portraiture of the present State of *China*, in Relation to the Manners and Customs of the People; which shall be deciphered in a few Words, by telling you that they live there as we do in *Europe*. Avarice, Ambition and Pleasure bear a great Sway in all their Affairs: notwithstanding their boasted Politeness, and the equitable Rules they pretend to be govern'd by, they cozen and cheat in Traffick; Injustice reigns in their Sovereigns Courts, and much of the Time both of Princes and People is taken up in Amorous Intrigues. In the mean time Persons of Quality take so many Measures to conceal Vice, and their Outworks are so well guarded, that if a Stranger be not carefully instructed concerning Affairs to the Bottom, he imagines that every thing is perfectly well regulated. In these Particulars the *Chinese* resemble the *Europeans*: But their Countenance, Air, Language, Disposition, Civilities, Manners and Behaviour, are not only different from ours, but also from all other Nations in the World.

Chinese crafty in their Dealings.

WHEN they have an Interest to manage, no People know better how to insinuate themselves into the good Opinion of those they deal with, or improve an Opportunity when it offers; nor will they decline the most hazardous Undertaking, where they have any Gain in view; Trade and Commerce seems to be the Spring of all their Actions; nor do they much scruple imposing on those they deal with, of which many of them are so far from being asham'd, that they will laugh at those they have bubbled; and have so great a Propensity to Riches, that they leave no means untempted to accomplish it. A Foreigner is always in Danger of being cheated if he trust to his own Judgment, and if he employs a *Chinese* Factor, as is customary, both Factor and Merchant will sometimes combine together to deceive the Stranger.

THEY continually apply themselves to discover the Inclinations, Humours and Tempers of those they deal with, and keep up a fair Correspondence even with their greatest Enemies: However, there does not want Instances of fair Dealing, open and generous Usage, and a Fidelity not to be corrupted.

No Duelling.

THEY have no Duels among them, for all their Revenge is secretly manag'd, and they cannot only dissemble their Malice, but seem patient to an Insensibility, till they have a favourable Opportunity to strike Home. Their Great Men are perpetually engag'd in a continued Pursuit of Places of Honour and Profit, and carry on their Designs by Bribes and Presents, as is Customary in other Courts: Yet as the Laws prohibite these Practices, and refer all to the Merit of the Candidate, the most subtle and designing amongst them ever put on the greatest Appearance of Modesty and Self-Denial: But however the *Chinese* may excel in Cunning, their Courage 'tis observ'd is not very remarkable.

Stature, Shape, and Complexion and Features of the *Chinese*.

THE *Chinese* in general, are squat well-set Men, with broad Faces, black Hair, little dark-colour'd Eyes, short Noses, and thin Beards, which they wear long on the bottom of the Chin and upper Lip; but they pull the Hair off their Cheeks by the Roots with Tweezers; and till they arrive at thirty Years of Age hardly any Beard appears. Learned Men suffer the Nails of their Left Hand to grow two or three Inches longer than their Fingers, to distinguish them from Mechanicks. They like a Man that is tall and fat, a little above the common Size; and if he have a short Nose, great Ears, a little Mouth, and a long Beard, he is look'd upon as a compleat Beauty; a harsh Voice is esteem'd no mean Accomplishment, especially in a Magistrate. The Women who are kept up, and not expos'd to the Sun, are pretty fair; and excepting their little Eyes and short Noses, are in many respects equal to our *European* Beauties: But above, all their Modesty is a considerable Addition to their other Charms; they dress usually in their Hair, part of which is made up into a Roll, and fasten'd with a Bodkin; the rest is divided into Locks, which fall upon the Neck very gracefully. In the Northern Provinces they wear a sort of a Caul of thin Silk over their Hair: And in *Pekin* in cold Weather they wrap a kind of Cornet or black Hood about their Hair: The more they are confin'd the less they like Solitude: The *Chinese* Ladies dress themselves very gayly, and spend the Morning in making themselves fine, altho' it very often happens they are not seen by any one but their own Servants; their Head-dress usually consists of several Locks of Hair buckled up, interlac'd with Flowers of Gold and Silver.

Their Women.

Dress.

THE Ladies wear as Men do, a long Sattin or Cloth of Gold Veil, red, blue or green, according to their particular Fancy; the Elder Sort habit themselves in Black or Purple; they wear besides that, a kind of Surtout, the Sleeves whereof are extream wide, and so long that they would trail upon the Ground if they were not held up: But what is most remarkable is, their little Feet, in which their chief Beauty is thought to lie: They carry their Affectation in this Point to a great Height; the ancient Custom (which in the Business of the Mode constantly prevails over the most natural Idea's) oblige them to follow the Multitude, and comply with the Custom of the Country.

Chief Beauty consists in little Feet.

AS soon as ever the Girls are born, the Nurses take care to tie their Feet extream hard, to prevent their growing; Nature, that seems to be dispos'd for this Torment, does more easily yield to it than one could imagine; nay, it is not perceivable that their

Health

Health is at all impair'd thereby. Their Sattin Shoes, embroider'd with Gold, Silver and Silk are very neat, and tho' they are very little, yet they ſtudy to let them be ſeen as they walk; which they would do all Day long if they had that Liberty allow'd them. Some have thought it was an Invention of the ancient *Chineſe*, who to bring the Women under a Neceſſity of keeping within Doors, brought little Feet in Faſhion: But upon Enquiry of the *Chineſe* themſelves, they deny'd having ſo much as heard of it. "Theſe are idle Tales, "(ſays one of them ſmiling) our Fore-fathers knew "Women but too well, as we do, to believe that "in retrenching half of their Feet, they could be "depriv'd of the Power of walking, and of long-"ing to ſee the World."

Habits of Men.

THE Men's Habits (as every where elſe) are very different from Women's; they ſhave their Heads all over, except behind, where they always leave a Lock: They wear no Hat as we do, but wear continually a Bonnet or Cap, which Civility forbids pulling off: This Bonnet is varied according to the different Seaſons of the Year; that which they wear in Summer is in the Shape of a Cone, lin'd in the inſide with Sattin, and the top cover'd with a very fine Mat, much eſteem'd in this Country; there is alſo a Bunch or Tuft of red Silk that falls round about it and reaches to the Edges, ſo that when they walk this Tuft waves in the Wind, and appears very beautiful at a Diſtance.

Near Winter Caps.

IN Winter theſe Caps are made of Pluſh, turn'd up with Sable or Fox-Skin, lin'd with Sattin, and being very ſhallow, they are faſten'd under their Chins with a String; theſe Caps are very handſome, and are generally ſold for eight or ten Crowns a-piece. When the Mandarins are in their Formalities, their upper Part of the Caps hath a Diamond or ſome other Precious Stone in the Creſt, ill cut, and inchas'd in a Button of wrought Gold, very curious; others have a huge Tuft of Stuff, Agate, Chryſtal, or ſome ſuch like Materials.

Long Veſts.

THEIR Habit is long, their Veſts reach to the Ground, and folds over the Breaſt, and is button'd on the left Side with four or five Gold or Silver Buttons: The Sleeves are wide at the Shoulder, and are narrow at the Wriſt, and cover the whole Hand to their Fingers Ends: The Veſt is tied with a Silk Saſh, which hangs down to their Knees: In Summer their Necks are bare, but in Winter they cover them with a Satrin Cape ſew'd on to the Veſt, or with a Tippet of Sable or Fox-skin, about the breadth of three or four Fingers, which is faſten'd before with a Button, which is very decent, and become Horſemen wonderfully. Over their Veſts

Looſe Silk Coats over them

they wear a looſe Coat or Gown, of a blue, green, or any other Colour, with ſhort Sleeves: This is ſhorter than their Veſt; and thoſe the *Tartars* and Soldiers wear do not come lower than their Knees. When they receive Company or viſit others, they wear another looſe Coat or Gown over that, and every Garment is of different Colours: Under their

Taffaty Shirts.

Veſt both Men and Women wear a Shirt, or rather Waiſtcoats of Taffaty, which wraps over the Breaſt, and is lac'd or ty'd on the right Side, and has cloſe narrow Sleeves; they have alſo a Pair of Drawers of the ſame. In the Winter the Waiſtcoat is of Linnen, and they have Breeches or rather

Silken Trowſers.

Trowſers; for they are wide, and reach down a great part of the Leg: Theſe are made with coarſe Sattin, quilted with Cotton or Raw-Silk: The Men

Boots of Silk

wear alſo a kind of Silk Boots, quilted with Cotton an Inch thick, and Slippers beſides. The Slippers have good ſubſtantial Soles, ſtitch'd with Packthread; the Sole of the Boot is made of Silk or Linnen, and therefore cannot be worn without the Slipper. A Man of Faſhion will never be ſeen without his Boots, when any one comes to viſit him; but at other Times they wear Slippers only in their Houſes.

THEY had retain'd the ſame Faſhion in their Cloaths and Habits above 2000 Years, till the *Tartars* compell'd them to cut off their Hair, and alter their Dreſs in ſome Particulars. The *Chineſe* cannot be reconcil'd to Perriwigs, the drawing on ſtrait Stockings and Breeches; and the diſcovering ſo much Leg and Thigh as the *Europeans* do, looks very odd to them. There is notwithſtanding in all their Modes ſome real Beauty, which Nature in her Innocence has inſpir'd Mankind with, for the Neceſſity and Convenience of Life.

Tartars compell'd the *Chineſe* to alter their Dreſs.

ALTHO' Perſons of Quality obſerve exactly all the Formalities and Decencies ſuitable to their State, and never appear uncover'd in Publick, how great ſoever the Heat be, yet in Private, and among their Friends they aſſume a Freedom even to a Fault; they every now and then put off their Bonnet, Surtout, Veſt and Shirt, reſerving nothing but a ſingle Pair of Drawers of white Taffaty, or tranſparent Linnen: This is the more ſurprizing becauſe they condemn all Nakedneſs in Pictures, and are even offended that our Engravers repreſent Men with their Arms, Thighs and Shoulders uncover'd; they ſeem to be in the right to blame our Workmen in theſe Particulars; but yet they are ridiculous to blame theſe Repreſentations on Linnen or Paper, which they practiſe themſelves with ſo much Indecency in their own Perſons.

Perſons of Quality indecent among their Friends.

AS for the Vulgar, they tranſgreſs all the Bounds of Modeſty, eſpecially in the Southern Provinces; where the Watermen and others, are impudently immodeſt to the higheſt Degree; almoſt all the Artificers and inferior Tradeſmen go along the Streets with ſingle Drawers, without Caps, Stockings or Shirt, which makes them much tann'd, and of a ſwarthy Hue. In the Northern Provinces they are more reſerv'd, and the Cold compels them to be more modeſt, and keep within Bounds.

WHEN the *Chineſe* ride in bad Weather, their great Coats, Caps and Veſts are cruſted over with a ſort of Oil, which looks green when dry, and defends them from the Rain; and their Boots are made of good thick Leather.

Habit of the Miſſionaries.

THE Miſſionaries in *China* at firſt went in the Habit of the *Bonzes* or *Pagan* Prieſts; but they ſoon grew aſham'd of appearing like theſe Idol-Prieſts, and took up the Students Habit of long Gowns. But in the late Revolution of the Empire, theſe Fathers, as well as the *Chineſe*, were compell'd to go in the *Tartarian* Faſhions, and wear ſhort Veſts and Coats of Silk; tho' at home they are cloath'd in Serge, or painted Linnen.

AT their Girdles they hang their Pouch of Tobacco, their Pipe made of Braſs, their Handkerchief, the little Sticks they eat with, and their Knife; for they have no Pockets to put theſe Trinkets in.

IN Winter the Quality wear rich Furs; and others Lamb-skins, or quilted Cotton. Their Swords which are broad, they wear on the left Side, with the Point forward.

Mandarins wear Ornaments of Diſtinction on their Cloaths.

THE Mandarins have ſeveral Ornaments of Embroidery wrought upon their Cloaths, either in Gold or Silver, before and behind, which ſhews the Dignity of their Office: The Civil Magiſtrates have uſually a Bird; and the Military Officers, Dragons, Lions or Tygers wrought upon them. There are no People who affect more publick Magnificence in their Habits and Attendants than the *Chineſe* Nobility, Magiſtrates and Gentry: The Government that does not allow, but in other Matters regulates Expences, does not only approve of this, but contributes to it on ſeveral Occaſions.

State of the Mandarins when they go Abroad

WHEN Perſons of Quality receive Viſits, or make any; when they go along the Streets, or when upon their Journey, but more eſpecially at thoſe Times when they appear before the Emperor, or make their Addreſs to the Viceroys, they are attended

tended with a Train of Shew and Grandeur, that fills one with Aſtoniſhment. The Mandarins, richly habited in a gilt open Sedan, born upon the Shoulders of eight or ſixteen Perſons, accompany'd with all the Officers of that Court of Juſtice that the Mandarins preſide over; they are ſurrounded with Umbrello's and other Marks of their Dignity: There are ſome that walk before them two and two, bearing Chains, Faſces, Eſcutcheons of varniſh'd Wood, upon which may be read in large Gold Characters, all the Titles of Honour annex'd to their Places of Truſt; together with a broken Baſon upon which they beat a certain Number of Strokes, according to the Ranks they bear in the Province; they continually ſpeak loud, and compel the People to make way: Other Officers follow in the ſame Order, and ſometimes four or five Gentlemen on Horſeback bring up the Rear: There is a particular Mandarin that never appears in Publick, without a Train of three or fourſcore Domeſticks.

Officers of the Army how attended.

THE Gentlemen of the Army go commonly on Horſeback, and when they are of any conſiderable Rank, they are at the Head of a Troop of twenty-five or thirty Horſe. The Princes of the Blood at *Pekin* are preceded by four of their Officers, and follow themſelves in the middle of a Squadron that marches without any Order. In ſhort, they wear no Liveries in *China*, but the Domeſticks are habited according to the Quality of their Maſters, in black Sattin or painted Linnen: Their Horſes are neither fine, nor well manag'd, yet their Trappings and Harneſs are very rich; the Bits, Saddle and Stirrops are gilded, or elſe of Silver. Inſtead of Leather, they make Bridles of two or three Twiſts of coarſe Sattins pinkt two Fingers broad; under the Horſes Neck, at the beginning of the Breaſt-Plate, hang two great Taſſels of curious Horſe-hair, which are faſten'd to two huge Buttons of Braſs, gilded or waſh'd with Silver, hung on Rings of the ſame Metal, that a Horſe upon a March looks very Grand, altho' upon a long Journey it is cumberſome, eſpecially upon a Courſe.

NOT only Princes and Perſons of the higheſt Rank appear in Publick with a Train, but even thoſe of a meaner Quality go always on Horſeback along the Streets, or in a cloſe Sedan, follow'd by ſeveral Footmen: The *Tartarian* Ladies do often make uſe of Calaſhes with two Wheels; but they have no Coaches.

THE Grandeur of the *Chineſe* Mandarins principally diſplays it ſelf in the Journies they take by Water; the prodigious Largeneſs of their Barges, that are little interior to Ships, the Finery, Carving, Painting and Gilding of the Apartments, the great Number of Officers and Seamen that ſerve aboard, the different Badges of their Dignity every where diſplay'd, their Coats of Arms, Flags and Streamers; all this I ſay, does abundantly diſtinguiſh them from the *Europeans*, who are never ſo very gaudy in their Appearance, when they Travel.

Diet.

THE *Chineſe* are no *Epicures* in their Diet; they do not only eat all kind of Fleſh, Fiſh and Fowl as the *Europeans* do, but Horſe-Fleſh is in great Eſteem among them; nor are Dogs, Cats, Snakes, Frogs, or ſcarce any ſort of Vermin refus'd: But Rice, Roots, Pulſe, and all ſorts of Vegetables are the common Food. Broths and Soops they have alſo made either of Fleſh or Fiſh, which they mix with their Rice. Salt and Pepper are never brought to Table, the Meat being ſeaſon'd in the Dreſſing: They eat their Fleſh, boil'd, fry'd and broil'd; but it is cut into little ſquare Pieces like Dice before it comes to Table. They uſe neither Cloth, Napkins, Knives, Spoons, or Forks; but two little round Sticks of Ebony, or other Wood, ſometimes tipp'd with Silver at the Ends, with which they take up their Meat very dextrouſly; and for their Rice and Broth they hold the Cup to their Mouths, and lade it in with their little Sticks. They uſe high Chairs and Tables, contrary to all the People of the Eaſt beſides, who ſit croſs-legg'd upon the Floor. Every Perſon almoſt has a little lacquer'd Table to himſelf at an Entertainment, on which his Meat and Rice are ſet in little *China* Diſhes or Saucers, and ſometimes in Plate.

Drink.

TEA is their principal Liquor; Wine they have none, tho' the Country abounds in fine Grapes; neither do they brew Beer of Malt; yet they have ſtrong Liquors of Rice and Wheat; they never drink cold Water, it being generally bad, and unfit to drink till it is boil'd, and corrected by the Infuſion of Herbs, or mix'd with ſpirituous Liquors.

THE two principal Liquors our Seamen drink, are, *Hockſhue* and *Samſhue*: As for *Tea*, the Sailors leave that ſort of Liquor to the Natives. *Hockſhue* is the Colour of brown Beer, but very clear and ſtrong: It is ſaid to be an Infuſion of Wheat in ſcalding hot Water, and taſtes more like Mum than Beer. *Samſhue* is a Spirit diſtill'd from Rice, and either of a Pale or Reddiſh Colour; and is what ſeveral Travellers take for Wine.

Full of Ceremony at their Entertainments.

THESE People generally eat their Meat cold, tho' they drink their Liquors hot; and they uſe ſo much Ceremony at their Entertainments, that it muſt certainly very much leſſen the Pleaſure of eating and drinking. Whenever a Mouthful of Meat is taken up, or a Cup of Liquor drank, it occaſions a hundred Grimaces. There ſtands a Perſon to beat Time, that every one may handle his little Sticks, and carry their Meat to their Mouths at the ſame Time.

THEY begin their Entertainmens with drinking Wine, as it call'd, tho' in Fact it is only made from Rice. This is preſented to every one of the Gueſts at the ſame Time, in a ſmall *China* or Silver Cup; they take hold of it with both their Hands, and lift the Cup as high as their Heads, and then drink it off without ſpeaking a Word: If any of the Gueſts don't care to drink, it is neceſſary to make the Motion however, and hold the Cup to his Head as long as the reſt, and there is no Notice taken whether he drinks or not. After this a Diſh of Meat is ſerv'd up to each Table; when the Maſter of the Feaſt gives the Sign, the two Sticks are taken up and flouriſh'd, after which they put them in the Diſh, and very dextrouſly carry their Meat to their Mouths. They take as much care as poſſible that their Mouths all move together, that one may not have done before the other; for either to be beforehand, or make the reſt wait, is reckon'd a great piece of Rudeneſs, and throw all into Confuſion. When this is done, they flouriſh their little Sticks again, and having taken two or three Mouthfuls of a Diſh, the Maſter of the Houſe gives the Sign to lay down their Arms, which they do exactly in the ſame Order they find them.

None compell'd to drink againſt their Wills.

THE Liquor is next brought in again, which they drink off with the ſame Ceremony as before. They drink or rather ſip, after they have taſted a Mouthful or two of a Diſh, and ſometimes there is not leſs than twenty ſerv'd up; but the Cups are ſmall, and no Man drinks more than he has a mind to; if he only make the Motion and keep Time, as before obſerv'd, it is ſufficient. They ſit ſilent at Table oftentimes three or four Hours; and when the Maſter of the Houſe thinks every one has eaten what he has a mind to, he gives the Sign to riſe. Then they get up and take a walk in the Garden, or ſome part of the Houſe for about a quarter of of an Hour, after which they return to the Dining Room, where they find a Deſert, conſiſting of Sweetmeats and dry'd Fruits which they eat with their *Tea*.

Players brought in at the Concluſion of their Entertainments.

IN the mean Time a Company of Strollers are call'd in to act a Comedy; in doing which they are exceeding dull and noiſy, obſerving no Rules; they

they rather howl than ſing, and make very indifferent Declamations; tho' it is expected however they ſhould cry up the Performance, and admire the Wiſdom of their Anceſtors in inſtituting theſe Diverſions. Their Plays generally contain the Hiſtories of ſome of their imaginary Saints.

THEY have ſeveral Feſtivals, which they celebrate with great Pomp and Charges; the firſt three Days in the Year are ſpent in Rejoicing throughout the whole Empire; they dreſs themſelves in the beſt Manner they can, they viſit one another, they ſend Preſents to their Friends, and to all the Perſons who they are any way oblig'd to obſerve: Gaming, Feaſting and Comedies take up every Body's time. Ten or twelve Days before the Feſtival, there are abundance of little Robberies committed, becauſe they who are deſtitute of Money, furniſh themſelves by this means, being reſolv'd to have ſome at all Hazards, to ſupply them in the enſuing Diverſions.

Feaſt of Lanthorns.

THE fifteenth Day of the firſt Month is ſtill more ſolemn; this is call'd the *Feaſt of Lanthorns*, becauſe they hang them up in all the Houſes, and in all the Streets in ſo great a Number, that it is a Madneſs rather than Feſtival: There is that Day many Millions of them lighted up, they run into very great Extremes in this Ceremony, which otherwiſe might have been tolerable, as ſeveral of their Cuſtoms are; it hath generally become the moſt ſerious Delight of Perſons of Quality to comply with Extravagancies, to pleaſe or rather tickle the Humours of the People. They expoſe to view that Day Lanthorns of all Prices; ſome are ſo vaſtly rich as to coſt 2000 Crowns; and one of their Grandees in particular, retrenches every Year ſomething from his Table, from his Apparel, and from his Equipage, to appear magnificent in Lanthorns. It is not the Materials that make them ſo dear, but the Workmanſhip, which conſiſts in fine Carv'd Work, Gilding, Painting, Silk and Varniſh, which altogether make a fine a Show: As for their Bigneſs it is immenſe; there are ſome of them to be ſeen upwards of twenty-ſeven Feet in Diameter: Theſe for their Largeneſs may be deem'd Halls or Chambers; for three or four of theſe Machines would make very handſome Apartments, inſomuch that they may Eat, Sleep, receive Viſits, act Plays, and Dance in ſome of theſe Lanthorns.

Infinite Number of Lights.

TO illuminate theſe prodigious Lanthorns, they uſe an infinite Number of Wax Candles or Lamps, which at a Diſtance look very fine: There are ſeveral Shows alſo repreſented to pleaſe the common People; and there are Perſons conceal'd, who by the help of ſeveral little Machines, make the Puppets play, which are as large as Men and Women, the Actions of which are ſo natural, that even thoſe that are acquainted with the Contrivance are apt to judge them living Perſons. Beſides theſe great Lanthorns, there are abundance of a middle Size; they are commonly compos'd of ſix Sides, each of which are four Foot high, and a Foot and a half broad, finely varniſh'd and gilt: They hang it on the inſide with a Web of fine tranſparent Silk, wherein is painted Flowers, Trees, Rocks, and ſometimes human Figures. The Painting is very curious, the Colours lively, and when the Wax-Candles are lighted, the Light diffuſeth Splendor that renders the Work altogether agreeable.

Fonfires and fine Fire Works.

THIS Feaſt is alſo celebrated by Bonfires that are kindled at that time thro' all Parts of the City; they have alſo fine Fireworks, and there is no-body but lets off Squibs and Crackers. Some Authors have repreſented them as the fineſt Fireworks in the World: There is repreſented (according to them) whole Trees cover'd with Leaves and Fruit, you may there diſtinguiſh the Cherries, Raiſins, Apples and Oranges, not only by their Figures, but alſo by their particular Colour; every thing is painted to the Life, inſomuch that one would really imagine they were natural Trees illuminated, and not an Artificial Fire, on which they had beſtow'd the Figure of Trees.

Improbable Conjectures of the Origin of this Feſtival.

THE *Chineſe* are very much at a loſs to Account for the Origin of this Pompous Feſtival; it ſeems to be a very difficult Queſtion, to be rightly inform'd of the Occaſion of this Extravagance: As it is very ancient, ſo the Original is very obſcure. The Vulgar aſcribe it to an Accident that happen'd in the Family of a famous Mandarin, whoſe Daughter walking one Evening upon the Banks of a River, fell in, and was drowned; the afflicted Father with his Family ran thither, and the better to find her, cauſed a great Number of Lanthorns to be lighted: All the Inhabitants throng'd after him with Torches, they ſearch'd for her all Night to no purpoſe; and the Mandarin's only Comfort was, to ſee the Readineſs of the People, to aſſiſt him on this melancholly Occaſion; every one of them ſeem'd as if he had loſt his own Siſter, he being eſteem'd as their Father. The Year enſuing they made Fires upon the Shore, on the ſame Day; they continu'd the Ceremony every Year, and every one lighted his Lanthorn; thus by Degrees it became a Cuſtom: The *Chineſe* are pretty ſuperſtitious in that reſpect; but there is no Probability that ſuch a ſmall Loſs ſhould have ſuch a lively Influence upon a whole Empire. There are others that attribute the Occaſion of this Inſtitution to very unlikely Cauſes, which carry in them ſcarely any Appearance of Truth; but waving that, it is certainly the greateſt and moſt expenſive Feſtival they have among them, as well as the moſt ancient.

Ceremonies enjoin'd by the State.

THEIR Ceremonies are part of the Conſtitution; every Man is oblig'd to obſerve them, even Tradeſmen, Servants, Seamen, and Husbandmen have their reſpective Forms and Ceremonies appointed them, which the *Chineſe* imagine contributes much towards civilizing their People; that the uſing theſe outward Condeſcentions and ſoft Expreſſions requir'd by the Government, tend to promote Peace and Order in the State, as well as in every particular Neighbourhood; and that the ſeeming Affection they are taught to expreſs one for another, tends to produce Good-will; that the forbearing ſcurrilous, provoking Language may prevent many Quarrels, or at leaſt they will be ſoon compos'd, where no ſuch Fuel is adminiſtred, and by ſcolding in ſoft Expreſſions, their Fury does not riſe to that Height it would, if vulgar ſordid Language was allow'd of. Oaths and obſcene Diſcourſe, 'tis ſaid, is never heard of amongſt them.

Reaſon of it.

Manner of Salutation.

THE common Salutation is laying the Right Hand to your Breaſt and bowing the Head a little; when they would ſhew the greater Reſpect, they join both Hands together, and bow their whole Body pretty low: When a Perſon of ſuperior Quality is ſaluted in his Houſe, or elſewhere, the Perſon who pays his Reſpects bends one Knee to the Ground, and remains in that Poſture till the Gentleman he ſalutes takes him up, which he preſently does. It would be an Affront to ſalute a Magiſtrate when he appears in Publick, unleſs the Perſon has particular Buſineſs with him; but the People ſtand up while he is carry'd, with their Arms a-croſs, and their Eyes fix'd on the Ground.

Viſits.

FAMILIAR Friends viſit without much Ceremony; but for all others there is a Form preſcrib'd. The Perſon who makes the Viſit ſends a Servant to the Gentleman he deſigns to wait on, with a Letter fill'd with many reſpectful Expreſſions, ſuitable to the Quality of the Perſon he intends to viſit; to which he ſubſcribes his Name. The Meſſage being deliver'd, the Viſiter ſets out, and is receiv'd according to his Rank: If the Perſon he goes to ſee be much above him, the Maſter of the Houſe does not move out of his Chair; ſometimes he waits for his

Gueſt in the Hall, at other times he goes into the the Court; and if the Perſon viſited be much the Inferior, he goes out into the Street to bring in the Stranger; as ſoon as they diſcover one another, they both run and make low Bows. They ſay but little at their firſt Meeting; a Set of ſhort Compliments are preſcrib'd; the one knows what he is to ſay, and the other what he is to anſwer: At every Door they halt, where they renew their Bows and Cringes, and compliment each other to enter firſt. They uſe but two Expreſſions on this Occaſion, the one ſays *Tſin*, which is *Pray walk in*; and the other anſwers *Paucan*, *It muſt not be*. This is repeated four or five Times, and then the Stranger ſuffers himſelf to be overcome, and goes to the next Door, where the ſame Ceremony is renew'd. When the Company comes into the Room where they are to be entertain'd, they ſtand all in a Row, and bow almoſt to the Ground, for they never ſtand oppoſite to one another when they ſalute; then they kneel, after which they ſpend ſome time in offering one another the Right-hand: They proceed to bow even to the Chairs, and every one duſts them with his great Sleeve, which the Maſter accepts very thankfully: then comes the Diſpute who ſhall ſit uppermoſt; but this occaſions no manner of Diſorder, every one knowing what Place belongs to him after all this Cringing is over; and one waits for the other till the Ceremonies preſcrib'd him are perform'd.

The Form of their Compliments.

AFTER a quarter of an Hour's Grimace, they all ſeat themſelves oppoſite to each other. They are oblig'd to ſit upright without Leaning, with down-caſt Looks, their Hands ſtretch'd out on their Knees, and their Feet plac'd even; they are to look grave and compos'd, and muſt not be too talkative, and ſometimes it happens there is not a Word ſpoken beſides the Compliments preſcrib'd. When they ſpeak, it is with all the Submiſſion imaginable, and never in the firſt or ſecond Perſon; for Inſtance, inſtead of ſaying, *I am oblig'd to you for the Favour my Lord has done me*, they will ſay, *the Favour my Lord has done me, who am ſo much beneath him, has Lid his Servant under the higheſt Obligations:* And inſtead of ſaying, *I preſent you with this Curioſity which my Country produces*; they will ſay, *Permit the Servant to offer his Lord this Curioſity which his poor Country affords*: Again, *whatever comes from his Lordſhip's noble Province, is well wrought, or extraordinary fine*. They never ſay, *I or You*, but *your Servant*, or *your Scholar*, did ſuch a Thing; and *the Doctor*, or *My Lord*, ſaid this or that; and not *you* ſaid, or *you* did it, this would be reckon'd the Height of Incivility, and a manner of ſpeaking only to be us'd by Slaves.

TEA is the uſual Liquor drank upon a Viſit; and much Ceremony is us'd in taking up the Diſh, carrying it to the Mouth, and ſetting it down, or returning it to the Servant. When they take leave, they repeat much the ſame Cringes and Compliments, as they did at their Arrival. Ambaſſadors are allow'd Maſters of the Ceremonies to inſtruct them forty Days before they are admitted to their Audience, that they may commit no Blunders, and many of the *Chineſe* will be offended with Strangers if they omit to Cringe and Fawn, according to the Rules preſcrib'd them.

And after dinner is finiſh'd by a Maſter of the Ceremonies.

Ceremonies in taking Leave.

THE *Chineſe* are ſo far from pulling off their Caps when they ſalute one another, that it is reckon'd very indecent to appear before their Betters bare-headed: When a Stranger is about to take Horſe and return Home; it is attended with much Ceremony; for he won't be ſo rude to mount before the Maſter of the Houſe, and he, on the contrary, intreats his Gueſt to mount while he ſtands to wait on him: The Stranger then proteſts he will not be ſo rude, and perſiſts in his Reſolution till the Maſter of the Houſe is out of Sight; but the Stranger is no ſooner in the Saddle, than his Friend appears again, and bids him adieu, which Compliment is return'd by the other: And when the Stranger is gone a little way, a Servant is alſo diſpatch'd after him, to wiſh him a good Journey; for which the other returns him Thanks. Father *Gemelli Careri* tells us, the Gueſts leave Money enough behind them to pay the Expences the Maſter of the Houſe has been at; which, tho' he refuſes it a great while, is at length accepted. But this I meet with in no other Author, and perhaps it may amount to no more than Servants Vails with us; for few would make Viſits where they were oblig'd to pay the whole Expence of the Entertainment.

GAMING is very much practis'd by the *Chineſe*, notwithſtanding it is contrary to their Laws; and there are Inſtances of thoſe that have follow'd it ſo extravagantly, that they have play'd away their Eſtates, Wives and Children; any of which they will ſometimes hazard upon a Card, or the ſingle Caſt of a Die; for there is no degree of Extravagance to which the deſire of Lucre and Riches will not carry them. It is a Diſorder which the *Tartars* have introduc'd among them ſince they have been Maſters of *China*; they take a great deal of care to conceal their Gaming; and conſequently the Law which forbids it is always in Force, and is able to ſuppreſs any Diſorder that ſhall ariſe on that Account.

Gaming forbidden.

THE Civil Government of the *Chineſe* does not only preſide over the Towns, but extends alſo over the Highways, which they are oblig'd to keep in good Order. The Paſſages for their Water are in ſeveral Places ſenc'd in with Stone Walls, for Conveniency of travelling, over which there are a great Number of Bridges, which unite the Towns and the Fields together. Canals are alſo cut for the Water to paſs thro' all the Towns of the Southern Provinces, to make their Ditches more ſecure, and the Towns more pleaſant. In low and marſhy Ground they throw up prodigious long Banks, which keeps their Roads in thoſe Parts good; to perform which they ſpare no Coſt, cutting a Paſſage even thro' Mountains which ſtand in their way.

Civil Government takes Care of the Highways.

THE Road from *Nanquin* to *Hamtcheu* is one of the moſt extraordinary Pieces of Work that ever was ſeen; for upon the Edges of ſome Mountains, which are perpendicular and have no ſhelving, they have fix'd large Beams, upon which they have made a ſort of a Balcony without Rails, which reaches thro' ſeveral Mountains in that manner; thoſe who are not us'd to theſe ſort of Galleries, travel over them in a great deal of Pain, fearing ſome ill Accident or other. But the People of the Place are very venturſome; they have Mules us'd to theſe ſort of Roads, which travel with as little Fear or Concern over theſe ſteep and hideous Precipices as they could do on the beſt or plaineſt Heath.

Galleries which reach from one Mountain to another.

IT is hardly to be imagin'd what care they take in making the common Roads commodious for Travellers: They are near fourſcore Foot broad; the Soil thereof is light, and ſoon dry after it has left off raining. In ſome Provinces there are Cauſeways on the Right and Left Hand for Foot-Paſſengers, which are ſupported on both Sides by long Rows of Trees, and oftentimes terras'd with a Wall of eight or ten Foot high on each Side, to keep Paſſengers out of the Fields. Nevertheleſs theſe Walls have Breaks, where Roads croſs one another, and they all terminate at one great Town.

THEY have alſo ſeveral wooden Buildings, made like Triumphal Arches, ſet up in the Roads about a Mile and a half diſtant from each other, about thirty Foot high, which have three Doors, over which is wrote upon a Frize, in Characters as large as may be read at almoſt the Diſtance of a Furlong,

Buildings with Directions for travelling from one Place to another

how

how far it is from one Town to another; so that you have no need of Guides here; for you may by these Directions see what Place the Road leads to, and from whence you came; how far you have already gone, and how far you have to go. The great Care which they have taken to lay out all these Distances by the Line, makes the Account which these Inscriptions give to be pretty exact, and yet they are not equal, because the Miles in some Provinces are longer than they are in others. It has happen'd likewise that some of these Arches being ruin'd and consum'd by Decay and Time, have not been set up exactly in the same Place; but generally speaking they serve for a good Measure of the Highways, besides that they are very ornamental. At the like Distance on one Side of these Causeways there are little Forts or Redoubts of Earth cast up; on which the Emperor's Standards are erected; and near them are Lodges for Soldiers or Country Militia. These are made use of in any Insurrections that may happen, are a Security to Travellers, and forward all Dispatches that are sent by the Government. These Guards examine every body that goes armed, and they *must* produce their Pass, or they will detain them. There is that Caution us'd, that the Roads are very little infested with Robbers, notwithstanding the Numbers of necessitous People that so populous a Country must be suppos'd to contain, and the rich Booties that are perpetually to be met with upon the Road; one Reason whereof may be, that they are commonly so full of Travellers, and so well guarded, that it would be very difficult to meet with an Opportunity to commit a Robbery; but what contributes much more to this Security, is the natural Industry of the People, and the great Encouragement that is given to Diligence; their Industry is so great, that not a Foot of Land which is fit for Tillage is left unmanur'd, and their Silk Manufactures exceed all the World besides, both in Goodness and Quantity.

Safe Travelling.

Posts.

THEIR Posts were originally design'd for the Service of the Government; and it is the Duty of the Viceroys and Governors of Places, as soon as they have received the Dispatches from Court, to send them away forthwith by their Couriers to the Places where they are directed; but the Post-Masters are permitted to carry private Letters, and do it as punctually, and with less Charge than they are carry'd in *Europe*. All this is manag'd at the Emperor's sole Expence, who maintains a great Number of Horse for that Purpose.

As it is a Matter of Importance that the Emperor's Orders be speedily dispatch'd, so it is a great Part of the Mandarins Care to see that the Roads be good; and the Emperor, to keep them the more strictly to it, gives out that he intends to visit this or that Province; for the Governors of those Provinces he is to pass through spare no Cost nor Pains to repair those Roads, because it not only concerns their Fortunes, but sometimes their Lives, if this Care be omitted.

A remarkable Story.

FATHER *Le Compte* says, that as he pass'd thro' a Village in the Province of *Xensi*, the People of the Place inform'd him, that the Governor had just hang'd himself through Despair, lest he should not have Time enough to repair a Road, through which the Emperor was to pass to the Capital Town. But the Mandarin might have sav'd his Life by a little Patience; for the Emperor never went his expected Journey: But yet all the Care which the *Chinese* can use will never prevent Inconveniencies which happen to those who travel the Roads in dry Weather. The Soil of *China* is very light, and much beaten by the vast Multitudes who travel; some on foot, some on Camels, others in Litters and Calashes; so that the Roads are perfectly ground into a fine Powder: When the Dust is rais'd by Travellers, and carried about by the Winds, it is enough to blind all the Passengers that have not Masks or Veils on them. Through these Clouds you must continually make your Way, and suck in Dust instead of Air through the whole Journey. When the Weather is hot, and the Wind in one's Face, scarce any one but a Native can withstand it. The Chairs People are carried in are made of Cane, and have no Glass; the upper Part of them are usually open before, except the Womens, who must neither see or be seen abroad. A Piece of Wood goes cross from one Pole to the other, which the Chairmen lay upon their Shoulders, and do not carry the Poles in their Hands, as ours do.

Inconvenient Travelling.

Chairs describ'd.

THE *Tartars* usually ride on horseback, both in the Towns and Roads; their Saddles are made after the *Turkish* Manner, and like them they ride, with their Stirrups so short, that their Knees are almost as high as the Top of their Saddles. When they engage an Enemy, they rise up upon their Stirrups, to give the greater Force to the Stroke they make.

Tartarian Manner of Travelling.

THE greatest Part of the Goods and Merchandizes (where they have not the Convenience of Water) is carried by Porters on their Backs, who travel at a great rate; the Roads perfectly swarm with them, and there are little Houses for them to rest and bait at all along the Road-side. Upon the Canals also (as has been already observ'd) their largest Vessels are drawn by Men, even up the greatest Cataracts and Water-falls; they have not many good Horses for Draught or Burden; for which Reason the poor People are usually employ'd in those Drudgeries, and are frequently ill us'd, as we do our Beasts of Burden here.

Porters.

THEIR Chairmen will run with a Chair or Litter at the Rate of five Miles an Hour, and rests but once in ten Miles. They have a Book of Roads, printed by Authority, shewing the Ways and Distances from *Pekin* to every considerable Place in the Empire. In that Book all the Royal Ways are divided into Stages, or Days Journeys. At every Stage there is a House where the Mandarins (Governors of Towns or Provinces) are lodg'd, at the Emperor's Expence, when they go to their Commands.

Chairmen

Inns.

HERE is a Guard and all Accommodations suitable to the Quality of the Person to be receiv'd. An Express sets out a Day before the Mandarin, who carries with him an Instrument containing the Mandarin's Name and Office; to which is also affix'd his Seal; upon producing whereof, the House or Palace where he is to lodge is immediately prepar'd, and Servants, Chairs, Litters, Provision and Boats, if there be occasion, are provided, suitable to the Quality of the Officer who is expected. And other Persons as well as Mandarins, are accommodated in these Houses, who travel upon the Account of the Government, or can procure an Order for it. Expresses are here also furnish'd with Necessaries for their Journey, who, before they come near the House, beat upon a Brass Pan, which they carry at their Backs, to give notice to prepare Horses for them, that they may meet with no Delay.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

A Description of their Manufactures, Trade, Shipping and Navigation.

Manufactures. THE Chief Manufacture of this extensive Dominion, is that of Silk; which is justly valu'd and esteem'd by all Nations to be the best in the Universe. They have several excellent Manufactures peculiar to them which are very valuable among the *Europeans*; and as the Woollen Manufacture holds the first Rank with us, and therefore deem'd the Staple Commodity of *Great-Britain*; So likewise the United Empire of *China* and *Tartary*, do with the greatest Reason give the Silken Manufacture Precedence of any other Branch of Trade they are Masters of.

THE *Chinese* have considerable Quantities of Silk, which are wrought in several Provinces; but the best and finest comes from the Province of *Chekiam*, the Soil being there very proper for the cultivating of Mulberry Trees more conformable to the Worms that make it. Every body deals in it, and the Traffick of it is so very considerable, that this Province alone is able to supply all *China*, and the greatest Part of *Europe* besides.

THAT Sort which the Natives account the best is wrought in the Province of *Nankin*, from the *Chekiam* Silk; but the Silks from *Canton* are valu'd above all among Foreigners; and the Silks of this Province are also more saleable, and go off better than those of all the other Provinces of *China*. *Nankin* is the principal Rendezvous of most of the prime Workmen; and it is from this Province the Emperor furnishes himself with the Silks us'd in the Palace, and with those he makes Presents to the Lords of his Court.

THE Sort of Silk that is most common among them is call'd *Touanze*; it is like our Sattin, and is either plain, or wrought with Flowers, Birds, Trees and Houses. These Figures are not rais'd upon the ground by a mixture of Raw Silk, as our Workmen are us'd to do in *Europe*, which makes our Work not so durable; all the Silk of that is twisted, and the Flowers are distinguished only by the different Colours and Shades: When they mix Gold or Silver with it, it resembles our Brocades, or flower'd Silks, but their Gold and Silver is wrought a way that is particular to them alone; for whereas in *Europe* we draw the Gold as fine as possibly it can be twisted with the Thread, the *Chinese*, to save the Materials, content themselves with gilding or silvering over a long Leaf of Paper, which they afterwards cut into little Scrowls, wherein they wrap the Silk.

AMONGST the different Figures they represent, the Dragon is the most common; of which there are two sorts, one is call'd *Lom*, and has five Claws, which is us'd in the Emperor's Silks only; for this Dragon is the Imperial Arms, which *Fohi* the Founder of the Empire first took for himself and his Successors, above four thousand Years ago. They work another Dragon in their Silks, call'd *Mam*, with four Claws, which the Emperor *Youuam*, who reign'd almost three thousand Years ago, ordain'd that every body might wear the same; and since that time the use of it is grown common.

IN Summer they wear another kind of Silk which the *Chinese* call *Cha*; it is not so close, nor hath so good a gloss as the Taffaty made in *Europe*, but much more substantial; it is sometimes wore plain, yet most wear them powder'd with great Flowers pierc'd thro', and cut like *English* Lace. These Summer Garments are extraordinary convenient, and wonderful neat, so that all the Persons of Quality wear them: Besides, the Taffaty is not dear, a whole Piece, enough to make a long Vest and Surtout, may be purchas'd for about two Guineas.

THEY have another sort of Taffaty, which serves them for Waistcoats, Drawers and Linings, they call it *Tcheouze*; this is a very close Silk, and yet so very pliant, that press it or tumble it never so much it won't wrinkle, and they wash it like Linnen, without spoiling its Beauty much; and this they generally sell by Weight. Taffaty.

BESIDES the Gold-Tissue, and several other sorts of Silk, they make Plush, Velvet, Crape, Druggets, Serges and Tammies; but tho' Wool is very plentiful, especially in the Provinces of *Xansi* and *Xensi*, which abound in Sheep, yet they make no Cloth; our *English* Cloth is in great request among them, which is sold dearer than the richest Silks. They make Blankets of their own Wool, and a sort of Russet Cloth, of which they make Students Gowns for their Winter wear.

THEY have a great deal of Cotton Linnen, and another sort made of a Plant call'd *Co*, which is found no where but in the Province of *Fokien*, they call this Linnen *Copon*: It is a kind of creeping Shrub, whose Leaves are not much bigger than Ivy Leaves; they are round, smooth, green within, whitish, and downy on the outside; they let them grow and spread along the Fields: There are some of them which grow as thick as one's Finger, which are pliable, and cottony as its Leaves are. When it begins to dry, they put the Sheaves into Water till they are rotten, as they do Flax and Hemp; they always peel off the first Skin, which they throw away; but of the second, which is much more fine and delicate, they divide by the hand into very slender and very small Filaments, without beating or spinning it, of which they make the aforementioned Linnen: It is transparent, pretty fine, but so cool withal and light, that one would think he had nothing on his back. Cotton Linnen.

THE People of Fashion make Vests of it in Summer, and wear a loose Gown of *Cha* over it. In Spring and Autumn they wear coarse Sattin, or flower'd Silks, and the elder People wear them plain. None are permitted to wear Gold and Silver Brocades in Publick Assemblies, or on solemn Visits, but the Mandarins. The common People generally wear a coarse blue Linnen quilted with Cotton, or lin'd with Sheep-skins in the Winter: And the better sort line their Vests and Gowns with Sables, Fox or Lamb-skins: They only turn up their Sleeves, or border their Vests with Ermins, for they are very scarce in *China*.

THE Mandarins (who are often pretty thick and short) besides their Vests and Gowns, which are made of Furs, in Winter put on also another Gown over all, with the Fur outwards; which makes them very little different from Bears in Appearance; but nothing is more commonly wore than Lamb-skins with the Wool on, which is white, soft and warm, but pretty heavy and cumbersome, having at first a strong rancid Smell, which decreases by degrees; but there is nothing more genteel, nor more convenient for the Winter.

THEIR

Longitude East 103 from London. 83 93 113 125 133 143

A MAP of CHINA, JAPAN, TONQUIN, COCHIN-CHINA and SIAM With all the PHILIPINES and adjacent ISLANDS belonging to the EAST INDIES;

Adapted to the Compleat Universal History of the WORLD

By Henry Wilson

Auther of the Compleat Sea Atlas.

CHINESE TARTARY
LAND OF JESSO
Tesos Terra
Matmai
Aquata
Strait of Uriu
Park of Anthony
Gratchoroy
Iccapitt
Strait of Jesso
SEA OF COREA
Xiuthan
Yupi
Amur R.
Yalu R.
Sungaria R.
Hurka R.
Yaun R.
Kolgas R.
Lega R.
Argun
Hurka
Merghen L.
Monchen
LEOTUNG
Ruing
Jurten
Buraan ketan
Old Cities of China
Karon Hill
The Sandy Desart of Kame
Konnor L.
Kudak
Kukurek
Kukum
Kuan
Neenga
Pula
Bilgotou
Cotan
Cizgrachgaas
Ugan
Aksu
Cialis
Puncuan
Turfan
Aramuth
Camul
GASGAR Km
Cacheques
Heer yo R.
Mc Lenhuf
Kelle
Great TIBER Km
Toktokai
Orre Lake
Synun
Gold Mines
Mc Sanymocha
Simathai Lake or Black Sea
Chinese Wall
Pekin
Taton
Pamtumun
Pao tin
Tayuen
Xanfi
Chonte
Tayan
Tchana
Xenfi
Pesyttuan
Longan
Sigan
Honan
Hantecho
Tchunteu
Suchuen
Hatcheu
Tchiman
Stanyan
Fehuntuen
Quitcheu
Kiam R.
Sienchcu
Tongsrin
Tchute
Scunan
Tchunyuen
Chyntcheu
Yuchi
Cotten
Quayan
Lyrin
Huquam
Queycheu
Youcheu
Yontcheu
Quelin
Quamsi
Quangi
Youman
Chinchcu
Ngoutcheu
Canton
Tchatcheu
Chekin
Black Mts
Lechi I.
Pylastori Is.
Gulf of Kang
Chinchcu
Xantum
Kuancheu
The Bay of Nankin
Nankin
Ngankin
Nanking
Scutcheu
Haunchcu
Nankan
Yuchan
Yanchcu
Yanngan
Poyan Lake
Kiamsi
Kinboa
Chekian
Tatcheu
Quantcheu
Foutcheu
Fokien
Fucheu
Yenpin
Canteheu
Chamcheu
Amoy
Lesan I.
Hightam I.
Pormosa
Tropic of Cancer
Eestrad
Bashee Is.
C. del Engano
C. Bajador
Gulf of Cochinchina
Aynan I.
Linoato
P. Taye
Tinhosa
High Tower
Tonquin Bay
Hocheu
Macao
I. of Talen
Lyenchcu
Caccheu
Kecchio
Cachao Pr.
Kehey
Cachao or Hean
Tenhoa
Quatang
Ngeam
Cracha
Quamian
Sinuva
Cochinchina
Cachiam
P. Santon
Pulocambi
Baubon
Quinon
P. Camber
Ciampa
Chantebon
Cambodia
Siam
Mirrin
Bancock
Tenarisem
Gulf of Siam
Tsiompon
Pursat R.
Laos
Kienpeng
Lacentan
Kiangha
Lanchang
Mecon R.
Cuang lake
Cuang R.
Tonquin
Cachao Pr.
Batsac
Kecchio
Cachao or Hean
Tenhoa
Quang
Quabe
Bacan
Chele
Prom
Hamfada
Mere
Fangellan
Pegu
Martaban
Tavoareu
Cuttattan
Pitribat
Cam pampee
Pitchia
Ava
Yunnan
Tali
Hokin
Kunka R.
Younan
Chamdo
Guerguen
Tache Limbon
Conti
Chandra
Laqua R.
Cha mai La.
Cuda R.
Ariano
Kaa
Mecon R.
Rocking R.
Dameia R.
Chaul R.
Menam R.
Lee
Long
Bae
Yunnan
Youman
Quangi
Quamsi
Yuchi
Yontcheu
Quelin
Chinchcu
Ngoutcheu
Canton
Tchatcheu
Chekin
Black Mts
Lechi I.
Pylastori Is.
Gulf of Kang
Chinchcu
Xantum
Kuancheu
The Bay of Nankin
Nankin
Ngankin
Nanking
Scutcheu
Haunchcu
Nankan
Yuchan
Yanchcu
Yanngan
Poyan Lake
Kiamsi
Kinboa
Chekian
Tatcheu
Quantcheu
Foutcheu
Fokien
Fucheu
Yenpin
Canteheu
Chamcheu
Amoy
Lesan I.
Hightam I.
Pormosa
Tropic of Cancer
Eestrad
Bashee Is.
C. del Engano
C. Bajador
Gulf of Cochinchina
Aynan I.
Linoato
P. Taye
Tinhosa
High Tower
Tonquin Bay
Hocheu
Macao
I. of Talen
Lyenchcu
Caccheu
Kecchio

Two Sorts of Raw Silk.

THEIR Raw Silk is of two Sorts; one of which comes from *Quamtum*, and is the Produce of wild Silk Worms which they take in the Woods; but we are not certain that they can breed any of them in their Houſes. The Silk that is made from theſe Worms is of a grey Colour, without any Gloſs; ſo that they who are unacquainted with it take it for Linnen, notwithſtanding which it is very much valued, and ſells for a better Price than their Satin: they call it *Kien-Tcheou*; it is very durable, and tho' it is ſtrong and cloſe, yet does not fret; they waſh them as they do Linnen; and the *Chineſe* poſitively ſay that Spots will not ſpoil them, nor will Oil adhere to it. The other Silks are made from the common Worms they breed in their Houſes; they are fed with Mulberry Leaves for forty Days, and are manag'd in the ſame manner as the *Europeans* do; a particular Account of which ſhall be given hereafter.

Porcelane or *China* Ware.

THE *Porcelane* or *China* Ware is a very conſiderable Manufacture, which is exported to all Parts of the World in great Abundance: It makes a conſiderable Part of the Furniture of their Houſes; the Tables, Side-boards, and even their Kitchens are plentifully ſtock'd therewith; they have large Jars for their Liquors, and beautiful Flower-Pots for their Gardens, vaſtly large and very Ornamental: Their Architects cover their Roofs therewith, which mightily enriches their Marble Buildings.

Three Sorts of *Porcelane*.

THEY have three different Sorts of *China* Ware; one is Yellow, made of fine Earth, yet it has but a coarſe look, becauſe that Colour does not admit of ſo fine a Poliſh; it is us'd in the Emperor's Palace, Yellow being the proper Imperial Colour, and is not allow'd to other People; ſo that we may juſtly conclude, that the Emperor is worſe ſerv'd with *China*, that Sort of Imperial *Porcelane* being not ſo agreeably beautiful as the others.

Imperial *Porcelane*.

Grey *China* Ware very beautiful.

THE ſecond Sort is of a grey Colour, with abundance of ſmall irregular Lines croſſing each other, as if the Vaſe were all over ſtrip'd, or inlaid with *Moſaic* Work; it is admirably fine and curious; one cannot imagine how they form theſe Stripes, unleſs they draw them with a Pencil, which muſt be difficult to do; or perhaps when the *Porcelane* is juſt bak'd, and yet hot, it is expos'd to the cold Air, whereby it may be fill'd with numerous Cracks, or elſe they may ſteep it in warm Water, to open it in that manner on all Sides; after that is done, they lay on a Coat of Varniſh which covers theſe Inequalities, which by means of a gentle Fire into which they again put it, it is made as even and poliſh'd as before. However they manage it, theſe Sort of Veſſels have a peculiar Beauty; and I have reaſon to believe the Curious amongſt us would much value it, tho' it is very rarely brought into *Europe*.

Third Sort of *Porcelane*.

THE laſt and moſt common Sort is white, with divers Figures of Flowers, Trees, Birds, &c. which they paint in various Colours, and often of a fine blue only; this Sort Merchants principally buy up for the *Europeans*: This Ware requires four or five Properties to make it compleatly perfect; that is, the Fineneſs of the Matter of which 'tis made, the Whiteneſs, the Poliſh or Smoothneſs, the Painting and Deſign of the Figures, and laſtly, the Faſhion of the Work. The Fineneſs is diſcover'd by its Tranſparency, which may be judg'd of by the Brims, which are commonly thinner than it is elſewhere; when the Veſſel is large, it is a difficult Matter to determine the Fineneſs, without breaking a Piece out, which ſhews the Colour of the inner Part which they call the Grain. This they can (if it be fine) join together again ſo perfectly that no Crack can be diſcover'd, and this is a ſure Token of the Hardneſs and Fineneſs of the Earth it is made from. The Whiteneſs is not to be determin'd by the outſide Varniſh with which the *Porcelane* is coated, which ſhews like a Mirror; ſo that looking on it when it is near other Objects, it receives a Reflexion from them, having the Images of thoſe Objects painted thereon; and this may make a Perſon paſs a wrong Judgment on its native Whiteneſs; it muſt be carried into the open Air to be able to judge of its Beauty or Defects: Altho' this Varniſh be perfectly incorporated with the Matter, and the Coating laſts for ever, yet it tarniſhes in time, and loſes that briſk Colour it had at firſt, from whence it is to be obſerv'd, that this Tarniſh which their *Porcelane* naturally have, appears more taking and pretty, and always bears a better Price; not but the new Ones are very good, and in time will aſſume the ſame Colour.

The beauty of *China*-ware conſiſts in its being very ſmooth, White and Tranſparent

THE Smoothneſs and Poliſh (which among us is call'd Glazing) conſiſts in the Brightneſs of the Varniſh, and the Evenneſs of the Surface: The Varniſh if laid on thick, will have a Coat which will not incorporate with the Clay or Earth of which the *Porcelane* is form'd; altho' the Furnace in which they are plac'd for that Purpoſe be intenſely hot, cannot take up more than a certain determinate Quantity of the Metallick vitrify'd Particles, which as ſoon as it has aſſimilated, the earthy Parts being ſaturated, ſuffers the remains of the vitrify'd or glaſſy Subſtance to ſubſide, and conſequently the lower Parts will be irregular and rough like Hills and Vallies. When the Metalline Particles that are a Part of the Compoſition for Glazing, are judiciouſly laid on, it will be ſo equally diffus'd and embodied, that when taken out of the Furnace, the *Porcelane* is perfectly ſmooth and equal in every Part, without the leaſt Appearance of any Grain, Riſing or Depreſſion in its Superficies; tho' in large Veſſels they are rarely made without ſome of theſe Faults. There is likewiſe another Defect, which ſometimes happens from its being unequally dry when the Varniſh is laid on, the leaſt Moiſture cauſing a ſenſible Difference therein.

THE Painting is not one of the leaſt Beauties of the *Porcelane*; they make uſe of various Colours for that Purpoſe, the chief of which are red and blue; their Red is not extraordinary lively, tho' ſome of the minute rubicund Particles may perhaps fly off in the Furnace, and therefore leave the remainder flat, and diveſted of its bright Luſtre; they are not deficient of the beſt Reds that are any where to be met with, tho' the different Grounds contribute to the heightning or leſſening the Beauty of the Colours; it is alſo probable that the Colour may receive a Tarniſh from the Heat of the Furnace, which perhaps gives an Aſperity to the ſubtileſt and deepeſt Particles, which may be ſaid to be the Eſſence, or that wherein the Colour exiſts. As to their Blue, it is certainly an exquiſite Colour; however, it is pretty difficult to hit upon that exact Temperature, where it is neither too pale, deep, nor too bright: But what their Workmen chiefly aim at is, to perfect the Extremities of the Figures, that the Colour may not extend or run beyond the Pencil, and thereby give the Parts of the *Porcelane* deſign'd for a white Ground a bluiſh Caſt; for it frequently happens, if great Care be not taken to reduce the Ingredients to an impalpable Powder, and the Matter on which it is laid have not a certain Degree of Dryneſs, a certain bluiſh Liquor will flow from it, and fulley the Ground, much in the ſame manner as Paper if too moiſt will cauſe your Ink to ſpread and blot.

IT would be a conſiderable Addition to their *China*, if the Figures were better deſign'd and more regular, their Flowers pretty juſt, and their Borders neatly variegated; but as to their human Figures they are intoletably monſtrous; a Stranger would imagine the People were as horrible as their Repreſentations; for it is certainly the Cuſtom of all Nations to depict their human Figures in

ſome Sort like the Objects they deſign to repreſent; but the *Chineſe* ſeem to abominate the Practice, for in all their Draughts, either on Paper or *Porcelane*, they take Pains to reverſe Nature; and ſuch are their uſual Ornaments decorated with. The moſt regular and skilful Deſigns would be oftentimes leſs pleaſing to them than theſe Anticks.

In turning and ſhaping their Veſſels, of what Size ſoever, they are very expert and ingenious: The Figure of them is bold, well-proportion'd, and perfectly rounded; ſo that the beſt *European* Workmen, how expert ſoever, cannot poſſibly excel them; they put a great Value upon their large Vaſes for their Antiquity; not but their Artificers are as expert, and the Materials as good in kind now as they were heretofore; but we on the contrary value them becauſe they are fairer: There are ſtill very fine Services of their *China* Ware to be ſeen at ſome of the Mandarins Houſes.

The beſt of their *Porcelane* reſerv'd for the Emperor's Uſe.

The Curious *Porcelane* is very ſcarce, and they give this Reaſon for it; the Emperor has conſtituted in the Province where the Manufacture chiefly is, a particular Mandarin, whoſe care it is to make Choice of the beſt and faireſt for the Uſe of the Court; he buys them at a moderate Price, ſo that the Workmen being but indifferently paid, do not exert themſelves by doing their beſt, being unwilling to take extraordinary Pains for that which will not enrich them: But ſhould a private Perſon ſet them to work, and allow them a good Price, we ſhould ſtill be furniſh'd with as curious Pieces of Workmanſhip, as any the ancient *Chineſe* could boaſt of.

The moſt beautiful Ware made in the Province of *Quamſi*

The *China* Ware that is brought from the Province of *Fokien* does ſcarcely deſerve that Name; being both black and coarſe: But that which is moſt valu'd is made in the Province of *Quamſi*; they have the Clay from one Place, and the Water from another, becauſe it is finer and clearer; and perhaps this Water they make uſe of before any other, is impregnated with ſome particular Salts, proper to purify and refine the Clay, and be a means of cauſing the Particles to attract or cohere more intimately than they otherwiſe would do; for it is commonly obſerv'd in ſlacking of Lime, that there are ſome ſorts of Water will rather harden than ſlack it.

Matter whereof *Porcelane* is made.

There are two kinds of Earths, and as many kinds of Oils or Varniſhes us'd in the Compoſition of *Porcelane*. The firſt Earth, call'd *Kaolin*, is beſet with glittering Corpuſcles; the ſecond, call'd *Petunſa*, is a plain white, but exceedingly fine and ſoft to the Touch: The *Petunſa*'s are brought from the Quarry in the form of Bricks, having been ſo cut from the Rocks, which are very hard. The firſt Preparation of theſe Bricks, is to break and pound them firſt into a coarſe Powder with Iron Mallets; then in Mortars with Peſtles that are headed with Stone, arm'd with Iron, and wrought with the Hand or with Mills. When the Powder is render'd fine, they throw it into a large Veſſel of Water, ſtirring it briskly about with an Iron Inſtrument. After the Water has reſted a little while, they skim a white Subſtance off from the Top, of the Thickneſs of four or five Fingers; and diſpoſe of this Scum or Cream in another Veſſel of Water. Then they ſtir again the Water of the firſt Veſſel, and skim it, and this they repeat till there remain nothing but what is as coarſe as Gravel at the Bottom, which is laid by to be pounded over again.

As to the ſecond Veſſel, wherein are put the Skimmings of the firſt, when the Water is well ſettled, and become quite clear, they pour it off, and with the Sediment collected at Bottom in form of a Paſte, fill a kind of Moulds; whence, when almoſt dry, they take it out, and cut it into ſquare Pieces, which are what they properly call *Petunſa*'s; reſerving them to be mix'd with the *Kaolin* in Proportion hereafter aſſign'd. Theſe Squares are ſold by the hundred, but 'tis very rare to meet with them unadulterated, for they often mix Droſs along with them; ſo that they are commonly oblig'd to purify them e'er they can be us'd.

The ſecond Sort of Earth us'd in *Porcelane* is much ſofter than the *Petunſa* when dug out of the Quarry, yet it is this, by being mix'd with the former, that gives Strength and Firmneſs to the Work: F. *Entrecolles* obſerves that ſome *Engliſh* and *Dutch* having procur'd ſeveral *Petunſa*'s to be bought privately, upon their Attempt to make *Porcelane* at their Return into their own Country, could not ſucceed for want of taking *Kaolin* along with it. Which the *Chineſe* being appris'd of, by way of Ridicule ſaid, "That the *Europeans* were wonder-"ful People to go about to make a Body, whoſe "Fleſh was to ſuſtain itſelf without Bones." The Mountains whence the *Kaolin* is dug, are cover'd with a reddiſh Earth; the Mines are deep, and the Matter is found in Glebes or Flakes, like the Chalk in ours.

The Varniſh how made.

The Oil or Varniſh, which makes the third Ingredient, is a whitiſh liquid Subſtance drawn from the hard Stone whereof the *Petunſa*'s are form'd; that which is whiteſt, and whoſe Stains are the greeneſt, being always choſen for that Purpoſe. The manner of preparing the Oil is thus; The *Petunſa*'s being waſh'd, undergo the ſame Preparations as in making the Squares; excepting that the matter of the ſecond Veſſel is not put into Moulds, but the fineſt Part of it is taken to make and compoſe the Oil. To an hundred Weight of this Matter, they caſt a Mineral Stone call'd *Chekao*, reſembling our *Allum*: This Stone is firſt heated red hot, and thus reduc'd in a Mortar to an impalpable Powder, and ſerves to give the Oil a Conſiſtence; which however is ſtill to be kept liquid.

The Oil of Lime makes the fourth Ingredient, the Preparation whereof is much more tedious. They firſt of all diſſolve Pieces of Quick Lime, and reduce it to a Powder by ſprinkling Water on it; on this Powder they lay a Bed of dry Fern, and on the Fern another of ſlack'd Lime, and thus alternately, till they have a Pile of moderate height; which done, they ſet Fire to the Fern: the whole being conſum'd, they divide the Aſhes that remain on new Beds of dry Fern; ſetting them on Fire as before. And this they repeat five or ſix times ſucceſſively, or even more, the Oil being ſtill the better the oftner the Aſhes are burnt. They formerly us'd the Wood of a kind of a Medlar Tree; and that it was that gave the ancient *Porcelanes*, that admirable Hue, which the Moderns cannot come up to for want of that Wood. However, 'tis certain the Quality of the Fern and Lime contribute very much to the Goodneſs of the Oil.

A Quantity of this Fern and Lime are next thrown into a Veſſel of Water; and to an hundred Pound of Aſhes is added a Pound of *Chekao*, which diſſolves therein. The reſt being done after the ſame manner as in preparing the Earth of the *Petunſa*'s, the Sediment found at the Bottom of the ſecond Veſſel, and which is to be kept liquid, is what they call the Oil of Lime; which the *Chineſe* eſteem as the Soul of the former Oil, and which gives the *China* all its Luſtre. This Oil is eaſily ſophiſticated by adding Water to encreaſe the Quantity; adding at the ſame time proportionably of the ſame *Chekao*, to keep up the Conſiſtence. Ten Meaſures of Oil of *Petunſa* uſually go to one of Lime. To have the Mixture juſt, the two Oils ſhould be equally thick.

Manner of forming Veſſels, and other Works of *Porcelane*.

The firſt thing is to purify the *Petunſa* and *Kaolin*; which for the firſt is done after the manner already deſcrib'd in preparing the Squares. For the ſecond, as its Softneſs makes it diſſolve eaſily, 'tis ſufficient without breaking it, to plunge it in a Veſſel

Veſſel of Water in an open Basket. The Dregs that remain is perfectly uſeleſs.

THE Places where they work are in large Yards, built round with Sheds and other Conveniencies to ſhelter the Workmen, and Buildings for them to live in; it is almoſt inconceivable what Number of Perſons are employ'd in theſe Works; there being ſcarce a Piece of *Porcelane* but paſſes thro' above twenty Hands, e'er it comes to the Painter's Work-houſe; and above ſixty before it be brought to Perfection.

To make a juſt Mixture of *Petunſa* and *Kaolin*, Regard muſt be had to the fineneſs of the *Porcelane* to be made: For the finer *Porcelanes*, they uſe equal Quantities; four Parts of *Kaolin* to ſix of *Petunſa* for moderate ones; and never leſs than one of *Kaolin* to three of *Petunſa* for the coarſeſt.

THE hardeſt Part of the Work is the Kneading and Tewing the two Earths together; which is done in a kind of large Baſins, or Pits, well-pav'd and cemented, wherein the Workmen trample continually with their Feet, relieving one another, till the Maſs be well mix'd, grow hard, and become of the Conſiſtence required to be us'd by the Potter.

THE Earth when taken out of the Pits, is kneaded a ſecond time, but by piece-meal, and with the Hands, on large Slates for that Purpoſe; and on this Preparation, in effect, it is, that the Perfection of the Work depends; the leaſt heterogeneous Body remaining in the Matter, or the leaſt Vacuity that may be found in it being enough to ſpoil the whole. The ſmalleſt Grain of Sand, nay, ſometimes a ſingle Hair, ſhall make the *Porcelane* crack, ſplinter, run or warp.

THE *Porcelane* is faſhion'd either with the Wheel, like Earthern Ware; or in Moulds. Smooth Pieces, as Cups, Saucers, Diſhes, Bowls, Veſſels, *&c.* are made with the Wheel. The reſt, *i. e.* ſuch as are in Relievo, as Figures of Men, Animals, *&c.* are form'd in Moulds, but finiſh'd with the Chiſſel.

Large Veſſels made in two Parts.

THE large Pieces are made at twice; one half of the Piece is rais'd on the Wheel by three or four Workmen, who hold it till it has acquired its Figure; which done, they apply it to the other half, which has been form'd in the ſame manner; uniting them with *Porcelane* Earth made liquid by adding Water to it, and poliſhing the Part join'd with a kind of Iron Spatula: After the ſame manner they join the ſeveral Pieces of *Porcelane*, form'd in Moulds; and after the ſame manner they add Handles, *&c.* to the Cups and other Works form'd with the Wheel.

ALL the Work made in Moulds is finiſh'd by Hand, with ſeveral Inſtruments proper to dig, ſmooth, poliſh, and touch up the Strokes that eſcape the Mould; ſo that 'tis rather a Work of Sculpture than of Pottery. They take great Care to ſhelter all their *Porcelane* Works in general from the Cold; their natural Humidity making them liable to break when they dry unequally.

Porcelane goes thro' a great many Hands.

To make you conceive the Number of Hands each Piece of *Porcelane* goes thro', before it be fit for the Painter, I ſhall give only an Inſtance of a common Cup: The Cup begins with the Potter, who has the Management of the Wheel, where it acquires its Form, Height, and Diameter. This Operator has not above a Farthing Sterling, for a Plate furniſh'd with twenty-ſix Cups; accordingly, they go out of his Hands very imperfect, eſpecially towards the Feet, which are only unform'd Lumps of Earth, to be afterwards cut with a Chiſſel when the Cup is dry. When it comes from the Wheel, the Cup is receiv'd by a ſecond Workman, who fits it on his Baſe. A third takes it immediately from him, and applies it on a Mould, to bring it to its true Form. This Mould is on a kind of a Lathe. A fourth poliſhes the Cup with a Chiſſel, eſpecially about the Edges, and brings it to the Thinneſs neceſſary to make it tranſparent; in doing which he moiſtens it from time to time, leſt its Dryneſs ſhould make it break. When it is of a proper Thickneſs, another Workman turns it gently on the inſide; taking a deal of Care it be done equally, leſt any Cavity be form'd, or it warp. Other Workmen add ſome Ornaments in Relievo; others Impreſſions in Creux; others only Handles, as the Quality of the Cup requires. At laſt they round and hollow the Foot on the inſide with a Chiſſel; which is the Buſineſs of a particular Artiſt, who does nothing elſe.

THIS Multiplicity of Workmen, is ſo far from retarding the Work, that it is found by Experience, to go on the faſter for it, as well as to be better perform'd; each Workman by a continual Attention to the ſame thing, becoming very dextrous at it, beſides ſaving the time of changing Inſtruments, *&c.*

Painting of *Porcelane*, and the Colours us'd therein.

THE Painting Work is diſtributed among a great Number of Workmen, in the ſame Laboratory: To one it belongs to form the Colour'd Circle about the Edges of the *Porcelane*, another traces out Flowers, which another paints: This is for Waters and Mountains alone; that for Birds and other Animals, and a third for human Figures. There are *Porcelanes* made of all Colours, both with regard to the Grounds, and to the Repreſentations thereon. As to the Colours of Landskips, *&c.* ſome are ſimple; ſuch are all Blues, which are thoſe uſually ſeen in *Europe*; others are mix'd up with ſeveral Teints; others again heighten'd with Gold.

Preparation of the Colours.

THE Blue is made of *Lapis Lazuli*, prepar'd by burning it the ſpace of twenty-four Hours in a Furnace, whence it is buried up in Gravel, to the height of half a Foot; when burnt they reduce it to an impalpable Powder in *Porcelane* Mortars, not varniſh'd, and with Peſtles of the ſame Matter.

FOR the Red they uſe *Copperas*, which they call *Haoſan*; they put a Pound of this into a cover'd Crucible, in the Lid whereof is left a ſmall Aperture, thro' which this Matter upon occaſion may be ſeen. The Crucible is heated in a Reverberatory Fire, till the black Smoke ceaſe to aſcend, and a fine red one ſucceeds it. A Pound of *Copperas* yields four Ounces of Red Liquor, which is found at the Bottom of the Crucible, tho' the fineſt Part is uſually adhering to the Lid and Sides of the Crucible.

BESIDE the natural Whiteneſs of the *Porcelane*, which is ſtill heighten'd by the Oil, wherewith they cover it, they have an artificial White, ſerving for the Grounds of ſeveral Colours, and made of a tranſparent Flint, calcin'd like the *Lapis Lazuli*, and mix'd with a powder'd Ceruſs: The Proportion is an Ounce of the latter to a Pound of the former.

THIS Powder of Flints is likewiſe an Ingredient in moſt of the other Colours; *e. g.* for Green, to three Ounces of *Scoria* of beaten *Copper*, they uſe half an Ounce of Powder of Flints, and an Ounce of Ceruſs. Violet is made by adding ſome White to the Green already prepar'd; the more Green is added, the deeper is the Violet. For Yellow, they uſe ſeven Drams of the White, and three of the Copperas Red. There is alſo another Red, call'd blown Red, becauſe it is in reality apply'd by blowing, with a Pipe, one of whoſe Orifices is cover'd with a very fine Gauze. The bottom of this Tube is lightly apply'd to the Colour wherewith the Gauze is lightly ſmear'd; when blowing againſt the *Porcelane*, it becomes all ſprinkled over with little Points. This *Porcelane* is very rare, and bears a great Price.

BLACK *Porcelane*, which they call *Ouman*, has likewiſe its Beauty: This Colour has a leaden Caſt, and is uſually heighten'd with Gold. It is made of three Ounces of *Lapis Lazuli*, with ſome of the common Oil of Stones; tho' that Proportion is varied as the Colour is deſign'd to be more or leſs

deep

deep. The Black is not given the *Porcelane* till it be dry, nor muſt the Work be put to the Fire till the Colour be dry.

THE Gold is not apply'd till after the baking, and is re-bak'd in a Furnace for that Purpoſe: To apply the Gold, they break and diſſolve it in Water at the Bottom of a *Porcelane*, till a gilded Cloud ariſe on the Surface; it is us'd with Gum-Water, and to give it a Body, they add three Parts of Cerufs to thirty of Gold.

Magic *Porcelane.*

THEY have a ſort of *Porcelane* more for Curioſity than Uſe, which they call *Magic Porcelane:* The Colours thereof only appear when fill'd with ſome Liquor. Theſe are made double; the Outſide is white, and all laid out in Compartments; the Inſide is a ſolid Cup of colour'd *Porcelane*; tho' the Cup is ſometimes of Glaſs, which has a better effect than *Porcelane*. The Secret of theſe *Magic Porcelanes*, which the *Chineſe* call *Kratſim*, is almoſt loſt; yet F. *Entrecolles* has furniſh'd us with the following Account.

Manner of Painting them.

THE *Porcelane* to be painted thus muſt be very thin; and the Colours which in other *Porcelanes* are apply'd on the Outſide, are here apply'd on the Inſide: When the Colour is dry, they lay over it a light Couch of a Size made of the *Porcelane* Earth; by which means the Colour is enclos'd between two earthen *Lamina*. When the Size is dry, they throw Oil within the *Porcelane*; and when it is ſaturated therewith, they return it to the Mould and the Wheel, to render it as thin and tranſparent as poſſible. When dry, it is bak'd in the common Furnace. The Colours here us'd are always the fineſt, and the Figures painted are Fiſhes, as the moſt ſuitable to the Liquor put within them, and in which they ſeem to ſwim.

THE ſeveral kinds of *Porcelane* above-mention'd, being quite painted with their ſeveral Colours, and all the Colours dry, are to be poliſh'd, to receive the Oil or Varniſh; which is apply'd with a Pencil of very fine Feathers, moiſten'd with Water, and paſs'd lightly over, to take off even the ſmalleſt Inequalities.

Method of Varniſhing the *China* Ware.

THE Oiling or Varniſhing is the leaſt Preparation of the *Porcelane* before it be carry'd to the Furnace: This is apply'd more or leſs thick, and ſeldomer and oftner repeated, according to the Quality of the Work. For the thin fine Sort, they give two very thin Couches; to others one, but that one is equivalent to the other two. There is a great deal of Art in applying the Varniſh, that it be done both equally, and not in too great Quantity. The Couches on the Inſide are done by Aſperſion, that is, by caſting in as much Varniſh as is neceſſary: The Couches on the Outſide by Immerſion, or by plunging the Pieces in a Veſſel of Oil.

IT muſt be obſerv'd, that the Foot is not yet form'd, but continues in a meer Maſs, till the Work has been varniſh'd: 'Tis at length finiſh'd on the Wheel, and when hollow'd, a little Circle is painted in it, and ſometimes a *Chineſe* Character. This painting being dry, the Foot is varniſh'd, and the Work now carry'd to the Furnace to be bak'd.

Manner of baking *Porcelane*

OUR curious Author omits nothing; not even the Dexterity of the People who carry the *Porcelane* to the Bakehouſe. He has frequently been ſurpriz'd, he tells us, to ſee a Man paſs thro' ſeveral Streets full of People, with two long narrow Boards rang'd full of *Porcelanes* on his Shoulders; conſtantly preſerving an Equilibrium ſo accurately, as not to do any Damage to ſo frail a Commodity.

Form of the Ovens and the Matter of which they are made.

THEY have two ſorts of Ovens us'd in baking of *Porcelane*: Large ones, that are only to come to the Fire once, which is the common way; and ſmall ones for thoſe that require double baking. The large ones are two *Chineſe* Fathoms deep, and almoſt four wide. They are made of three ſorts of Earth; one whereof, yellow and common, makes the Bake; the two others are ſcarcer, and dug out of deep Mines, wherein People can work only in Winter. One of them call'd *Kaolin*, is a very ſtiff Earth; the other *Petuntſe*, is very oily.

THE Sides and Roof of the Ovens are ſo thick that one may lay the Hand on them, when the Fire is at its greateſt Height, without danger of Burning. At the top of the Vault, which is in form of a Tunnel, is a large Opening to give the Flames and Smoke vent, which riſe inceſſantly as ſoon as the Fire is once ſet to the Furnace; beſide the principal Aperture to give vent to the Flames and Smoke, which by being open'd and ſhut, ſerve to augment or diminiſh the Heat, like the Holes in the Chymiſts Furnaces call'd Regiſters. The Hearth, which takes up the whole Breadth of the Furnace, is plac'd in the Front, exactly againſt the opening of the Door, and is two or three Foot deep, and two broad; People paſſing over it on a Plank to go into the Furnace to place the *Porcelane*.

AS ſoon as the Fire is lighted, the Door is wall'd up; only leaving an Opening for the Conveyance of Wood. Laſtly, the Bottom of the Oven is cover'd with Sand, wherein part of the firſt *Porcelane* Caſes are buried. The Furnace itſelf is uſually plac'd at the extremity of a long narrow Veſtible, which ſerves inſtead of Bellows; the cold Air and Wind being by this means driven directly into the Front of each Furnace.

Diſpoſition of the *Porcelane* in the Oven.

EACH Piece of *Porcelane* of any Value is diſpos'd in the Furnace in its ſeparate Caſe: Indeed as to Tea-Diſhes, &c. the ſame Caſe ſerves for ſeveral. The Caſes are made of the ſame Earth with the Furnace: They have no Lids, but ſerve each other mutually, the bottom of a ſecond Caſe fitting into the Opening of the firſt; and thus ſucceſſively to the top of each Column. Each Coffin, which is generally of a Cylindrical Form, that the Fire may diffuſe itſelf equally to the enclos'd *Porcelanes*, has at bottom a little Bed of very fine Sand, cover'd over with the Duſt of *Kaolin*, that the Sand may not ſtick to the Work; and they take care that the *Porcelane* may not touch the Sides of the Caſe. In the large Caſes, which hold the ſmall Pieces, they leave the middle vacant, in regard the *Porcelanes* placed there would want the neceſſary heat.

THE *Porcelanes* are plac'd in Caſes to preſerve their Luſtre from the too violent Effects of the naked Fire; for 'tis to theſe thick Veils, that the Beauty, or rather the Complection of the Ware is not tarniſh'd by the heat of the Fire. As faſt as the Caſes are fill'd, they are rang'd in the Cavity of the Furnace, in Rows of Columns or Piles; thoſe in the Centre being at leaſt ſeven foot high: The Caſes at the bottom of each Pile is left empty, becauſe being partly ſunk in the Sand, the Fire has leſs effect on them; and for the ſame reaſon the uppermoſt is left empty. In this manner the Cavity of the Furnace is fill'd with Piles of *Porcelane*, excepting that part that is exactly under the large Aperture. In diſpoſing theſe Caſes, they always obſerve to place the fineſt *Porcelane* in the Centre, the coarſeſt at the Bottom, and thoſe that are high colour'd, and contain as much *Petunſe* as *Kaolin*, and wherein the worſt Oil is us'd, at the Mouth. Theſe Piles are all plac'd near one another, and are bound together at Top, at Bottom, and in the Middle, by pieces of Earth; in ſuch a manner that the Flames may have a free Paſſage among them, and inſinuate equally on all ſides; in which a great part of the Workman much depends. Another thing is, that a Furnace muſt never be fill'd with all new Coffins; but half one, half t'other; the old ones at the Bottom and Top, and the new ones in the Middle.

THEY heat the Furnace by degrees, for the ſpace of a Day and a Night; after which two Men, who relieve one another, continue to throw in little

Pieces

Pieces of Wood about a Foot long, but very ſlender.

To know when the Porcelane is bak'd enough.

To know when the *Porcelane* is ſufficiently bak'd, they open one of the leſſer Holes of the Furnace, and with a pair of Tongs take off the Lid of one of the Piles. If the Fire appear very briſk and clear, and the Piles equally inflam'd, and eſpecially if the Colours of the *Porcelanes* that are uncover'd dart forth a fine Luſtre, the Coction is ſufficient, they diſcontinue the Fire, and wall up what remain'd of the Door of the Furnace.

If the Furnace be only fill'd with ſmall Ware, they take them out twelve or fifteen Hours after the Fire is extinct: If it be fill'd with larger, they defer opening it for two or three Days; in this the modern Practice differs from the ancient, wherein the Door was not open'd till after ten Days for the large Pieces, and five for the ſmall ones.

Two Remarkables.

There are two things to be remark'd that are very ſurprizing; the one is, that there are never found any Aſhes on the Hearth of the Furnace, what Quantity of Wood ſoever is conſum'd; the other is, that the Workmen employ'd about the Furnaces aſſwage their Thirſt by frequently drinking hot *Tea*, with Salt diſſolv'd in it.

Altho' moſt of the Provinces of *China* make large Quantities of *Porcelane*, yet they continue to bear a good Price; tho' they are not ſo dear as formerly: What chiefly occaſions the Dearneſs of this Commodity, is partly owing to the Damages that often happen in their Furnaces, they having frequently both their *Porcelanes* and Coffins converted into a ſolid Maſs, occaſion'd either by exceſſive Heat, or ſome ill Qualities in the Matter; likewiſe the Ingredients they are made from grow ſcarcer as well as the Wood wherewith it is burnt: They have alſo abundance of new Patterns ſent from *Europe*, frequently very difficult to ſucceed in; which for the ſmalleſt Defects are turn'd on the Maker's Hands.

Reaſons of the Dearneſs of Porcelane.

Thus have I gone thro' the whole Proceſs of making this beautiful Ware ſo much coveted by the *Europeans*; and it is hop'd the length of the Relation will be pardon'd by our Readers; few of whom I believe, have had an Opportunity to meet with it in any Hiſtorical Pieces extant, this Manufacture having long paſs'd for a Myſtery in *Europe*; and in ſpite of all the Endeavours of the Jeſuit-Miſſionaries to penetrate into the Secret, it remain'd unknown till the Year 1712, when the Learned and Reverend Father *Entrecolles* drew the Veil, and tranſmitted the Art of making *Porcelane* in a Letter to Father *Orry*, dated *September* the firſt in the ſaid Year, which has ſince been publiſh'd in *French*; from whence this Abſtract was taken. There are ſeveral uſeful Hints, that poſſibly may be of uſe to many of our Artificers, more particularly *Potters*, *Glaſs-workers*, and *Enamellers*; for the Advantage of ſuch, as well as the Satisfaction of our Readers, this curious Subject has been ſo particularly treated.

Wax.

China is remarkable for a kind of white Wax, not made by the induſtrious Inſects, but produc'd from Trees, from whence they gather it in great Quantities, of which there is ſufficient to ſtock the whole Empire. It is collected chiefly in the Provinces of *Huquam* and *Xantum*. It is produc'd by an Inſect no bigger than a Flea, which is arm'd with a very ſharp Sting, with which they not only pierce the Bark, but the Body of the Tree itſelf. The Country People gather the Eggs of this Inſect in Spring, from whence proceed Worms, which they place at the Foot of Trees proper for them; from thence they creep up and diſperſe themſelves thro' all the Branches, and penetrate to the very Pith, converting their Nouriſhment into Wax as white as Snow, which they work out of the Holes they have made; it hangs in ſmall Cluſters about the Tree, from whence 'tis gather'd by the Country People, by whom it is melted into Cakes for the Market.

Varniſh.

That fine Varniſh which the *Chineſe* uſe about their wooden Ware, is not a Compound, but a natural Gum that diſtils from a Tree, as Roſin does: In the Lump it looks almoſt like Pitch, and is mix'd up with Oil, with which they reduce its different Conſiſtencies according to the Work it is deſign'd for. They varniſh Tables and Chairs three times over, and it is ſo tranſparent that the Grain of the Wood may be diſcern'd thro' it; but if the Matter it is laid on be requir'd to be hid, they lay on ſeveral Coats of Varniſh till it becomes perfectly opaque: When the Varniſh is dry, they paint it with Gold, Silver and various Colours, over which they ſometimes lay on a thin Coat of Varniſh, which gives it a Luſtre. This laſt Coat preſerves the Colours from tarniſhing, beſides giving the Work an additional Beauty. They paint Figures of Men, Mountains, Palaces, Hunting Pieces, Birds, Combats, and ſeveral other Figures, which makes a Baſs Relief in the Work, and renders it extreamly pleaſing and beautiful, ſo that the *Chineſe* in this particular are magnificent at a ſmall Expence. Beſides the Brightneſs and Luſtre which the Varniſh gives it, it hath a certain Property of preſerving the Wood from the Worms; no Moiſture can penetrate it, nor any ill Scent adhere to it; if they drop any Greaſe on it when they are at their Meals, if they preſently wipe it with a wet Cloth, it comes off clean without leaving any Signs thereof.

Art of Japaning.

Paper.

The Paper in *China* is made of the inner Bark of the *Bambou*, which is a large hollow-knotted Cane, which they beat, they make their Paper, ten or twelve Foot long of this beaten Cane. It is very thin and ſmooth, and after they have form'd it into Sheets, they give it a Waſh over with Varniſh, to prevent the Ink ſinking: This Paper is not ſo durable as ours; by reaſon of its being made of the Bark of a Tree, the Worms are apt to get into it; and this makes a great deal of Buſineſs for them, being oblig'd to tranſcribe their Manuſcripts, and reprint their Books in the ſpace of a few Years, to prevent their being loſt to Poſterity; there being no ancient Manuſcripts to be met with.

Indian Ink.

Their Ink is made of Lamp-black, extracted from ſeveral Materials; but the beſt Sort is from Hog's Greaſe, which they burn in their Lamps; this they mix up with Oil and Perfumes, which gives it an agreeable Smell; it is made into a Paſte, and then moulded into little oblong Cakes, with ſeveral curious little Animals and *Chineſe* Characters finely cut on the little wooden Moulds: They are dry'd, and then become fit for uſe, and are ſometimes gilt. When they write, they rub one of theſe Cakes in Water, which will eaſily diſſolve it and make it fit for uſe; it makes a fine ſhining black Ink, and has an excellent Property annex'd to it; that is, it never ſpreads beyond the Stroke of the Pen or Pencil, altho' the Paper is ſo fine that it frequently ſinks through it.

Trade and Navigation.

The *Chineſe* carry on a very great Trade with the *Europeans*, it being one of their State Maxims to encourage trading as much as poſſible, both at Home and Abroad; and as all their Political Maxims are calculated for the Peace and Plenty of their Country, they would be ſoon reduc'd to great Extremities, if their Trade ſhould once fail. It is not only the People's Care, but the Mandarins are requir'd to propagate it as much as they can: They frequently furniſh Merchants with Sums of Money to improve to the beſt Advantage. By this means *Ouſanguey*, a petty King of *Xenſi*, who brought the *Tartars* into *China*, made himſelf ſo rich and powerful, that he himſelf was able to ſupport a War for a long time againſt the Emperor.

To encreate their Commerce, Foreigners have been allow'd to come into their Ports of *China*, a thing till lately never known. Beſides, the *Chineſe* trafick in their own Bottoms to all Parts of the *In-*

Foreign Trade.

dies, where they carry Silks, *China* Ware, Phyſical Drugs, Sugars, and eſpecially Japann'd Ware, Liquors, &c. They go to *Batavia*, *Siam*, *Achim*, *Malacca*, *Japan*, and the *Manilla*'s; from which they [illegible] but a few Days ſail. From all theſe Places they bring Silver, all of which is brought from *Mexico* to the *Philippine* Iſlands, by the *Pacifick* Ocean, and is carried from thence to *Canton*, whence it is circulated thro' the whole Empire.

Home Trade.

BUT the greateſt Part of their trading lies within themſelves, they traffick from one Province to another, which like ſo many Kingdoms communicate their Riches to each other. The Province of *Huquam* ſends Rice; *Canton* Sugar; from *Chekiam* comes good Silk; from *Nankin* fine wrought Silks; *Xanſi* and *Xenſi* are rich in Iron, Horſes, Mules, Camels and Furs; *Fokien* yields Tea; *Leaotum* Drugs; and ſo of the reſt. This mutual Commerce unites the People, and fills their Cities and Towns with Plenty. Altho' they traffick ſo largely both at Home and to ſeveral Parts of the Eaſtern Continent, and the above-mention'd Iſlands, they never were known to make a Voyage to any diſtant Country. They hardly ever heard of any other Part of the World beſides *Aſia*, till the *Europeans* diſcover'd a Paſſage to the *Cape of Good Hope*; tho' we are well aſſur'd they had the Uſe of the Loadſtone and Compaſs long before us.

Shipping deſcrib'd.

THEIR Coaſting Veſſels that ply on their Rivers and Canals have been deſcrib'd already; but their Shipping are much larger; they are ſquare both at Head and Stern, ſome of which have two Maſts, and others three: Their largeſt Ships are above 1000 Tuns Burden; each Maſt is but one Piece of Timber, ſupported on each Side. Their Sails are made of Matting, ſtrengthen'd with ſplit Cane at the Diſtance of two Foot, or thereabouts, aſunder. They lower them upon the Deck, inſtead of going aloft to furl the Sails, which fold up like a Fan, there being no Yards to ſpread them, as the Shipping of all other Countries have. They carry Images of their Gods in all their Veſſels, and have Altars and Lamps burning before them; but their Idols, inſtead of cauſing Reverence, ſeem to be rather intended for the contrary, for they make very frightful Figures. The Hold of each Ship is divided into ſeveral Partitions, which are made ſo tight, that in caſe they ſhould ſpring a-leak at Sea, no other Goods can receive any Damage but thoſe that are ſtow'd in the Partition over that Leak. Theſe Partitions take up a great deal of Room, and pretty much leſſen the Freight. Theſe Cells belong to different Merchants, who by this means can come at their own Goods at any Time without unſtowing the Ship; which is certainly very convenient for them.

CHAP. V.

A Deſcription of the Nature of their Soil, their Tillage, Gardens, Huſbandry, Plants, Animals and Minerals.

Nature of the Soil.

CHINA being of a very large Extent, the Nature of the Soil is different according to its Situation, either to the Northward or Southward; their Lands, like all others, are divided into Hills and Valleys; but the Hills are ſo plain, that one would imagine they had from the Beginning of their Monarchy been wholly employ'd in making them level, and forming them into Gardens; their Manner of meliorating their Grounds being to let Water through it, which is certainly the beſt Method they could make uſe of to diſtribute it equally; otherwiſe thoſe Parts which lie higheſt would continually be dry, and the Plains have always lain under Water: For they cut their Hills into Terraſes or artificial Plains, from the Bottom to the Top, that the Water which they convey through Channels, from one Field to another, may by this Means be equally diſtributed. Theſe Terraſes are leſs and leſs as they increaſe in Height till you come to the Top; and by this Means the Soil of the higheſt Hills is render'd as fruitful as their loweſt Valleys. It is by this Contrivance they prevent the Seed from being waſh'd away with the Ground in heavy Rains, the Force of the Water being broke by theſe artificial ſpiral Windings.

Light Earth.

THUS they have as it were forc'd Nature, by making theſe artificial Plains where ſhe had rais'd Mountains. Their Mould or Vegetable Earth is generally light and porous, and ſo deep, that in many Places you may dig two or three hundred Foot before you come to any rocky or barren Earth. The Mountains of *Xenſi*, *Honam*, *Quantum*, and *Fokien*, tho' they are not fit for Tillage, do nevertheleſs abound with all manner of Timber Trees, which grow tall and ſtreight, and are us'd for all ſorts of Buildings, eſpecially Shipping.

No Art can equal the natural Beauty of their Plains; they are all cultivated, and have neither Hedge nor Ditch, nor ſcarce a Tree, ſo much they are afraid of loſing an Inch of Ground. In moſt Provinces they have Harveſts twice a-year, and between thoſe Seaſons they ſow Rice and Pulſe.

Harveſts twice a Year.

ALL the Northern and Weſtern Provinces, as *Pekin*, *Xanſi*, *Xenſi*, and *Suchuen*, produce Wheat, Barley, Millet, and Tobacco, with black and yellow Peaſe, which their Horſes are fed with, as we do with Oats. Thoſe to the South, eſpecially *Huquam*, *Nankin*, and *Chekiam*, abound in Rice, being low watery Countries. The Soil of their Ground is ſo light, that they plow with a ſingle Buffalo or Heifer: After it is plow'd, they clear the Ground of all the Weeds; this being done, if the Field be deſign'd for Rice, they let in the Water, and moiſten the Earth till it become a perfect Pulp. The Husbandmen at firſt ſow it diſorderly, like other Corn, and when it is grown about a Foot from the Ground, they pull it up by the Roots, and tranſplant it in a ſtraight Line, in ſmall Parcels, like little Wheat-Sheaves, chequerwiſe, that the Ears may ſupport each other, and the eaſier reſiſt the Wind; ſo that theſe Plains look more like ſpacious Gardens than plain Fields. They continually water their Rice Grounds till it is almoſt ripe; the Water then being dry'd up, they cut it down, and thraſh it often in the Fields where it grows. The Rice is ear'd almoſt like our bearded Barley, and grows uſually four Foot, and ſometimes two Yards high.

Corn Ground improv'd by burning.

THE Ground for Wheat and Barley is prepar'd by grubbing up the Grats and Roots, and burning all together with Straw; then having ſifted the Earth fine, they mix and ſow it with Seed in a ſtraight Line in Trenches, and not promiſcuouſly,

as

as our Husbandmen do. They uſe no Dung to meliorate the Land that is ſown with Rice, Water alone being a ſufficient Manure for that Grain; but for other Grain, they uſe all ſorts of Dung, and among the reſt Aſhes and human Excrement.

Chineſe Fruits.

THEY have moſt of the Fruits that are common with us in *Europe*; as Apples, Pears, Plumbs, Peaches, Abricots, Figs, Grapes of all kinds, and eſpecially excellent Muſcadines, Walnuts and Cheſtnuts; they have likewiſe Pomegranates, Melons, Oranges and Olives. Their Olives are different from ours; they make no Oil of them; either they will not yield any, or elſe the *Chineſe* are Strangers to the Art of making it. They have alſo ſeveral Fruits that do not grow in *Europe*; the moſt delicate they call *Letchi*, which grows in the Province of *Quamtum*. It is as big as a Nut, the Stone is long and large, and the Meat on it ſoft and wateriſh, but of a moſt delicious Taſte; there is no Fruit in *Europe* that is comparable to it. This Fruit being dry'd, turns black and wrinkled, like our Prunes; thus being preſerv'd, they are us'd in Tea, to which they give an agreeable Acid, far more pleaſant than Sugar. There is another Fruit peculiar to them, call'd *Louyen*, or *Dragon's-Eye*. The Trees that bear it are as large as our Walnut-Trees. This Fruit is exactly round, the outer Rind being ſmooth and grey, but as it ripens it grows yellowiſh. The Meat is white, foweriſh, and very full of Juice, and is fit for a Deſert, being very cool and wholeſome.

A Fruit call'd Seze.

THE *Seze* is another kind of Fruit, that grows in almoſt all Parts of *China*; there are ſeveral kinds of them: Thoſe in the Southern Provinces taſte like Sugar, and diſſolve in the Mouth. They are bigger and firmer in the Provinces of *Xanſi* and *Xenſi*, and may be eaſier preſerv'd. They have *Anana*'s or *Pine-Apples*, *Goyaves*, *Cocoa*'s, and other Fruits, for which they are indebted to the *Indies*.

Oranges firſt brought from China, Tranſplanted at Lisbon.

THEY have ſeveral ſorts of Oranges, and from hence it was the *Portugueſe* firſt brought the Fruit which are call'd *China-Oranges*; the firſt of that kind was tranſplanted from *China*: The only Tree out of which all the Stock is ſaid to be produc'd, is ſtill preſerv'd at *Lisbon*, in the Gardens of the Count de St. *Laurence*: We are indeed beholden to the Induſtry of the *Portugueſe* for that delicious Fruit; but they brought only of one Sort over: That which is moſt valu'd, and often ſent to the *Indies* as a Rarity, is no bigger than a Billiard Ball; the Rind is of a reddiſh yellow, fine, clear, and very ſmooth. Thoſe of *Canton* eſpecially are very agreeable, both to the Palate and Conſtitution. They are adminiſter'd to ſick People roaſted and ſtrew'd with Sugar, which makes an excellent Syrup, which is judg'd to be very good for diſtemper'd Lungs. Lemons, Citrons, and what the *Indians* call *Pampelmouſes*, are very common Fruits, and therefore not ſo much regarded as they are with us; but they cultivate a particular Sort of Lemon-Trees, whoſe Fruit is no bigger than a Walnut, perfectly round, green and foweriſh withal, they are very good in all kind of Ragouſts; and theſe they often plant in Boxes to adorn their Courts and Halls.

Tallow-Trees.

BUT of all the Trees that grow in *China*, that which produces Tallow is one of the greateſt Natural Rarities that is to be met with any where: It is about the Height of our Cherry-Trees; the Branches are crooked, and the Leaves are ſhap'd like a Heart, of a lively briſk red, its Bark ſmooth, the Trunk ſmooth, and pretty ſhort, and the Head round and very thick. The Fruit is incloſ'd within a Rind divided into three Segments, which open when it is ripe, and diſcover three white Kernels as big as a ſmall Nut. All the Branches are very thick of it; and this Mixture of white and red make a handſome Appearance, for thoſe Trees being planted in ſtraight Lines Chequer-wiſe, make them ſeem as if they were a Parterre of Flower-Pots at a Diſtance: But what makes this Tree valuable is the Kernel, which has all the Qualities of Tallow, both in Smell, Colour and Conſiſtency; they make it into Candles with the addition of a little Oil in the melting, to make it more pliant. If they had the Art of clarifying it as we do our Tallow here, the Candles wou'd be as good as ours; they have a rank Smell, and don't burn ſo clear as ours, which may be attributed to the Wick, which is made of a ſmall long Stick, of a dry light Wood, inſtead of a Cotton Wick which we generally uſe; this Stick is invelop'd with the Inner Part of a Ruſh, which being very porous, and therefore adapted for the Filtration of the fine Particles of the greaſy Matter, by which the Flame is ſupply'd. *Make a fine Appearance.*

Pepper Tree.

AMONG the Trees peculiar to this Country, the *Pepper-Tree* is one of conſiderable Uſe, it is like a *Walnut-Tree*, which bears a *Pepper* not much unlike the *Indian Pepper* that we make uſe of, tho' the Seeds are ſomewhat different, and are about the Bigneſs of a Pea, and of a grey Colour, with little red Streaks. When they are ripe they open of themſelves, and diſcover a little Stone as black as Jet, which caſts a ſtrong Smell very offenſive to the Head, for which reaſon they gather it by Intervals not being able to abide in the Tree any long Time. Theſe Grains being expos'd to the Sun, and the black Stones taken away, the Remainder is us'd for *Pepper*, which is not quite ſo agreeable as ours, but is however good in Sauces.

Great Plenty of Garden Stuff.

THIS Country has not its equal in the World for the abundance of Roots and Pulſe; it is almoſt the only Food of the Inhabitants, who omit no Culture to make them perfectly good. They have certainly the fineſt Kitchen-Gardens, in which they omit making fine Walks, knowing better how to husband their Ground: They have ſeveral different Herbs entirely unknown to us. Among many others, they have an Onion that is pretty remarkable, they do not Seed like ours; but towards the latter End of the Seaſon their Leaves bear ſome Filaments, in the midſt of which is a white Onion. This in time produces Leaves, and thoſe alſo a Head, and ſo on, which grow leſs and ſhorter, as they are farther from the Ground; the Dimenſions are ſo juſt, and the Proportions ſo exact, that one would think them artificially done, and it ſeems as if Nature was willing to ſhew us that even ſporting, it can exceed the Skill of the niceſt Artiſt.

A Tree call'd Outmechou bearing a kind of Nut.

AMONGST the many kinds of Trees they are furniſh'd with, there is one in particular which they call *Outmechou*, it reſembles the Sycamore; the Leaves are about eight or nine Inches in Diameter, faſten'd to a Stalk a Foot long; it is very much tufted, and laden with Cluſters of Flowers, ſo thick ſet that the Rays of the Sun cannot penetrate them: The Fruit, which is very ſmall, notwithſtanding the Tree is one of the largeſt, is produc'd after this manner. About the End of *July* or Beginning of *Auguſt* there ſprings out of the very Point of the Branches, little Bunches of Leaves different from the other, they are whiter, ſofter, and as broad, and are inſtead of Flowers; upon the Border of each of theſe Leaves grow three or four ſmall Grains, or Kernels as big as green Peaſe; that incloſe a white Subſtance, very pleaſant to the Taſte, reſembling that of an Hazel-Nut not quite ripe.

Tea.

TEA or *Teha* is a Plant that grows plentifully in this Country: It is generally found at the Foot of ſome Mountain, a Stony Soil beſt agrees with it, the Root is not much unlike the Root of a Peach-Tree, it flowers like our Wild Roſes. There are ſeveral Sizes of theſe Trees, they grow from two to an hundred Foot high. It is reckon'd but a Buſh or Shrub, tho' there may be ſome very high and large Trees, as Thorns will ſometimes grow to a great Height; So likewiſe tho' there are ſome

few

few of these that are very tall, yet they more generally grow no higher than a Rose-Tree. It is frequently planted upon little Hills, about three Foot distance from each other, and does not commonly grow wild. F. *Le Compte* says, he saw this Plant in the Province of *Fokien*, where it grew upon the side of a little Hill, and the Plant was not above five or six Foot high; that several Stalks an Inch thick a-piece were join'd together, and dividing at top into several little Branches, form'd a kind of a Cluster like Myrtle: The Trunk or Stem seem'd dry, but bore green Branches and Leaves; the Leaves were narrow, tapering to a Point, and were an Inch or Inch and a half long, and indented; that the oldest were white and brittle, and tasted bitter; the young ones were soft and smooth, reddish and transparent, and pretty sweet to the Taste.

The three Sorts of *Tea* describ'd.

Dr. *Cunningham*, F. R. S. Physician to the *English* Factory at *Chusan*, tells us, that the three sorts of Tea commonly brought to *Europe*, are all produc'd from the same Plant, and it is only owing to the Season of the Year when is gather'd, and the Soil that makes the difference; *Bohea* or *Voiij*, so call'd from some Mountains in the Province of *Fokien*, where it grows, is the very first Buds that are gather'd in the beginning of *March*, and dry'd in the Shade; the *Imperial* or *Bing-Tea* is of the second Growth in *April*; and *Singlo* or common *Green Tea*, the last, in *May* or *June*, which are both dry'd in little Pans over the Fire. The *Tea* Shrub is an Ever-green, and is in Flower from *October* to *January*. The Seed is ripe in *September* and *October* following; but for one fresh and full Seed there are a great many bad. Its Seed-Vessels are Tricapsular, each Capsula containing one Nut or Seed; but tho' there are the Vestigies of several, only one comes to Perfection.

Method of distinguishing *Tea*.

BOHEA-TEA is not much valu'd by the Natives; it is a long brown Leaf, and the Water it is infus'd in, high Colour'd: If it be good it has a fine Smell, and is all of a Colour, crisp and dry; small black Leaves and Dirt are Signs of a bad Sort: The best opens always soonest in hot Water. *Singlo* or *Green Tea*, is to be chosen also by its fine Smell and its light Colour; if any of the Leaves appear of a brownish or dark Colour, it is not good. *Imperial* or *Bing-Tea*, is still lighter than *Green-Tea*, of a pleasant Smell, but not so strong as *Singlo-Tea*: If it once lose its Crispness, it is good for little, which it will do, tho' it be never so good when bought, if Care be not taken in Packing.

Manner of Grafting.

The *Chinese* understand Grafting, tho' they perform it in a quite different manner from the *Europeans*; for instead of slitting the Stock as we do, they cut a small Slice off the Outside of the Stock and apply the Graft, which is shap'd accordingly, then they tie up all together and cover it with Straw and Dirt as we do.

Ginger.

CHINA produces likewise large Quantities of *Ginger*, which grows wild in many Places near the Sea; but is not near so good as that which is cultivated. There are two kinds of this Root, Male and Female: The Female has the smaller Leaf, and the Root is not so large as the other: Its Leaf is like that of a Reed, and not easily distinguish'd from it; they dig up the Roots about *Midsummer*, when the Leaves begin to fall; when it is fresh and moist it is not near so hot as when it is dry'd. It is a very pleasant Sweetmeat, preserv'd green, and is much eaten in this Country: It is also esteem'd very serviceable in many Distempers, especially in the Cholick and Flux.

Sugar Canes.

There are Sugar-Canes which grow in great abundance in this Country, they are chiefly produc'd in Marshy Grounds, and have Leaves resembling Reeds, they are about three Fingers thick, and full of Knots, and grow about seven or eight Foot high: A farther Description of the Canes and the Sugar produc'd from them, shall be farther describ'd in those Countries where Sugar is the chief Product.

Rattan Canes.

They have another small Reed or Cane which grows upon the *Chinese* Mountains, call'd a *Rattan* or *Japan Cane*; when dry'd ('tis said) it will produce Fire, if one Stick be rubb'd against another very briskly; and that they are us'd in some Places instead of Flints. These *Rattans* are very tough, and being twisted together they make Cordage of them; the *Javans* and *Japonese* make Cables of them; which will not so easily rot in the Water as those made of Hemp.

They have likewise another small Reed or Knotty Cane call'd the *Bambou*, the Body whereof grows to such a Bulk that they often deem it of the Number of their Trees. It thrives most in Marshy Grounds, and is by Nature both straight and tall; but they bend it in the middle while it is growing, to make Poles for their Sedans. They also frequently make Canoes or Wherries, and being a light Cane they row them along, or rather paddle them, with incredible Swiftness. They are made use of instead of Timber in their Houses and other Buildings.

They have great Woods of Mulberry-Trees, particularly in the Province of *Chekiam*, the Leaves of which is the proper Food for Silk-Worms. They cut down some of these Woods every Year, because the Silk which is produc'd by the Worms, which feed from the Leaves of the younger Shoots, is far the best for the encreasing their Nourishment; by which they are capable of making a greater Quantity of their Webs.

Cinnamon.

In the Province of *Quansi* they have a *Cinnamon*; but being not so good as that of the Growth of *Ceylon*, and the Management of both for a Market being in every respect the same, I shall therefore omit its Description here, and treat of it when the Island of *Ceylon* is describ'd.

Cloves, Nutmegs and Mace.

There grows also, as we are inform'd, Cloves, Nutmegs, and Mace in *China*; but it is in such small Quantities, that they as well as the *Europeans* are supply'd from the *Molucca Islands* with these Spices; and therefore I shall describe them when those Islands are treated of. The Drugs call'd *China-Root* and *Rhubarb*, are also the Product of this Country; and *Coco-Nut* Trees are very common. This is a very useful Plant, which affords both Meat, Drink and Cloathing; of which I shall enlarge when I treat of *India* where they chiefly abound.

Ginseng or the *Human* Plant.

But the Plant which the *Chinese* value most, is call'd *Ginseng*: This (as they say) has the Virtues of all Simples, and is the principal Ingredient in all their Prescriptions to Men of Quality, but is a little too dear for the common People. They make Infusions of both Roots and Leaves, which they often drink instead of Tea: The Dose they order to sick Persons, is the fifth Part of an Ounce; but when taken by way of Prevention, they give only the tenth of an Ounce: They slice the Root into half a Pint of Water, and boil it to the Consumption of about three fourths, and then drink it sweetened with Sugar. It may be fill'd up again, and a single Dish drank Morning and Evening is sufficient. It cannot be drank in such Quantities as they drink Tea, without having ill Effects. They gather it in the Province of *Leaotum*, and the neighbouring Mountains of *Tartary*, it grows in close thick Woods, on the Banks of Torrents, or about Rocks, at the Feet of Trees, and in the middle of all kinds of Herbs. It is call'd *Ginseng*, that is *Man-Plant*, or the *Human-Simple*, the Simple that resembles a Man. The Learned among the *Chinese* bestow abundance of pompous Titles upon it in their Writings, that sufficiently testify how much they esteem it; as the *Spiritous Simple*, the *Pure Spirit of the Earth*, the *Fat of the Sea*, the *Panacea*, and the *Remedy that dispenses Immortality*.

It is a Root as thick as half the little Finger, and as long again. It is divided into two Branches, which ſpreads like a Man's two Legs, it is inclining to a yellow Colour, and grows wrinkled when lain by; the Leaves are ſmall, and terminate in a Point; the Branches are black, the Flowers Violet, and the Stalk cover'd with Hair; this Stalk produces three Branches, and each Branch bears the Leaves by fours and fives; it grows in the Shade, in a moiſt Soil, yet ſo ſlowly, that it is a long term of Years before it comes to Perfection. It is commonly found under a Tree call'd *Kiamchu*, little differing from the Sycamore.

Ginſeng. Of all Cordials, according to the Opinion of the *Chineſe*, there are none to be compar'd to *Ginſeng*; it is ſweet, intermix'd with a Smatch of Bitterneſs: Its Effects are very great; it purifies the Blood, fortifies the Stomach, adds a Motion to a languid Pulſe, excites the natural Heat, and withal augments the radical Moiſture. Phyſicians never know how to make an End, when they deſcribe its Virtues.

Mutang, the King of Flowers. They have a Flower call'd *Mutang*, or the King of Flowers; which they greatly value, its Leaves are broader than our common *Roſes*, but it is not ſo fragrant. It is of a pale Purple Colour, ſtrip'd with white, and ſome are Red and Yellow. It grows on a Shrub like the Birch-Tree; and is planted in all their Gardens; but they abound in nothing ſo little as fine Flowers.

Our Travellers informs us of a Herb in *China*, which they call, the *Herb of a Thouſand Years*; which they would have us believe never fades, or dies.

Husbandry how encouraged. Several of the Emperors and Empreſſes of *China* have promoted Husbandry, not only by allowing it proper Encouragement, but by their own Example, eſpecially the Emperor *VEN*, who condeſcended to hold the Plow himſelf, whilſt his Empreſs planted Mulberry-Trees in the convenient Grounds about the Palace, cultivated them, and bred the Silk-Worms herſelf; which Labour of theirs, though it could not be of great Advantage to themſelves or the Publick; yet it was a Noble Inſtance of Induſtry to their Subjects; and the ſaid Empreſs herſelf was actually ſuch a Proficient, that ſhe wore no Cloaths but what ſhe made herſelf.

The Plow is an Inſtrument of ſo long ſtanding with them, that Hiſtory doth not furniſh us with any Account of the firſt Inventors of it, any further than that ſome of their greateſt Emperors, were actually ſuch Encouragers and Improvers of Husbandry, that themſelves were the firſt that found it out; and after having found that way of opening the Ground to receive the Seed; they afterwards inſtructed their Subjects in the ſowing of Rice, Wheat, Barley and ſuch other Grain, as their Seed, and Land produces; and hence it became ſo cuſtomary to th ir Emperors, and was reckon'd ſuch a Vertue in them to propogate Husbandry, that the Emperor *Haoca*, betook himſelf to Husbandry in his advanced Years, and for three Years before his Death, Plough'd and Sow'd his Ground himſelf, to induce his Subjects to follow his Induſtrious Example; and as for thoſe Parts of his Empire that were more remote from him, he ſent Perſons to them, that were well-skill'd in Husbandry, to ſhow them how to Cultivate and Improve their Ground to the beſt Advantage.

And ſo careful have ſome of their Princes been, that thoſe Improvements in Husbandry ſhould not be loſt, that they have writ Books upon Tillage, of the different Manure proper for the different Natures of the Soil; which Directions, are doubtleſs now become more familiar to the Husbandmen, and retain'd in Memory; though we are told that ſome of them uſe thoſe Books to this Day.

So great a Veneration do they pay to the Improvement of their Husbandry, and the Propagation and Encouragement of their Product and Manufactures, that every Year about the Vernal Equinox, there is a Feaſt Inſtituted, at which, (probably, becauſe it is then a Seaſon for Ploughing their Land, and Sowing their Seed) the reſpective Governors of the Provinces, Towns, *&c.* aſſemble the Inhabitants of Inferior Rank, and march in Proceſſion before them with Streamers diſplay'd, and Muſick diverting the Ear; but their Trophies were rather thoſe of *Ceres*, than *Mars*; their Plows and other Inſtruments of Husbandry being carried before them, heading the Proceſſion.

Of their Animals. The wild Elephants are but ſcarce here, though ſome are to be found; but there are ſometimes ſome of them ſent to the Emperor, as Preſents from Foreign Princes; of which he keeps Fifteen or Twenty, in ſome convenient Place as a Rarity, as the Kings of *England*, keep the Lions in the Tower of *London*.

The Horſes in *China* are but of a ordinary Size and Strength, but they are ſupply'd from *Tartary*, with thoſe that are more ſtrong and ſerviceable; there are alſo other Beaſts of Burden, as Camels, Mules and the like: And other Beaſts of Uſe for Labour, Proviſion or Cloathing, as Oxen, Cows, Buffaloes and Sheep, which laſt have very large Tails like thoſe of *Turkey*, which are of ſeveral Pounds Weight. There are alſo in the Mountainous Parts of the Country, Tygers, Wolves, Bears, and other ravenous Beaſts of Prey.

Their Hogs are Black, and have deep Bellies, reaching even to the Ground, like thoſe we ſee in *London*, ſometimes call'd *Guinea* Hogs; and although one would think the Heat of the Country would make Hogs-fleſh ſeem nauſeous, yet they are eſteem'd very good Victuals. They have great Numbers of Deer or Hares; eſpecially one particular ſort of Stag or Deer, which is found in the Weſtern Provinces of *China*, which ſome diſtinguiſh by the Name of the Odoriferous Stag or Deer, by reaſon of a Bunch or Excreſcence towards his Belly, call'd *Xe* in their Language, almoſt like a Purſe; it is a thin Skin cover'd with Hair, and within it is Musk, from the perfuming Smell of which, this Sort of Deer takes the Name or Diſtinction Odoriferous. The Fleſh of this Deer as well as of the reſt, is reckon'd by the *Chineſe* good Food; as alſo are their Geeſe, Hens and Ducks, of which they have great Plenty and very Cheap; theſe Poultery's Eggs are commonly hatch'd in Ovens or Dunghills.

Strange Serpents. There are ſeveral Sorts of Serpents and pernicious Vermin here; eſpecially Graſhoppers, who are not only very troubleſome, but prejudicial in devouring the Fruits of the Earth, in ſeveral Provinces of that Empire. But there is a Serpent here (though now common in *India*) it is call'd, *Cobra Capela*, it is of ſuch a Poiſonous Nature, that if any Perſon by Accident or Miſtake happen to eat of it, it is immediate Death without any Poſſibility of a Remedy. There are alſo other Sorts of the *Cobra Capella*, one of which is Short and of a Triangular Form, having three plain Sides or Faces, upon one of which they always lie or creep; but there is another of a Shape yet more ſurprizing, they have no Tail, but the two Ends or Extremities, are both alike for Size and Shape, to wit, each End is a Head, having Eyes, Ears, Mouth, Lips, and all the viſible Organs of Hearing, Seeing, *&c.* and yet with this Difference, that while one Head has the uſe of all its Organs of Seeing, Eating and the like; the other is void of any Senſe or Uſe of them; the Ears being ſtopp'd, the Eye-lids over the Eyes, the Lips are cloſed and grow together, ſo that with the Mouth in the live Head only, it eats to feed the other, and with the Ears and Eyes in the ſame, hears and ſees to avoid Danger, and direct the Body.

But what is yet ſtrange, (and almoſt incredible, if it had not been well aſſerted by an *Engliſh* Gentle-

man who kept one of this laſt Sort, and try'd the Experiment) theſe two Heads live and die alternately every ſix Months, at the end of which time, the live Head declines by Degrees, and in the ſame Proportion the Organs of the other Head begin to open, and to act and perform their proper Offices of Eating, Seeing, Hearing, Feeding and Directing the Body, and all the Functions that were perform'd by the other Head when capable of acting; and thus each in his turn had the Maintainance and Direction of the whole.

THEIR Rivers and Canals abound with Fiſh, and their ſport in catching them is as agreeable as the Profit; for beſides Nets and other Contrivances which they uſe, as in *England* and other Parts of *Europe*, to catch them, they train up large Fowls for Fiſhing, and bring them up to be as tractable, and as much under Command as the Hawks and Dogs are to the Sportſmen in *England*; and they are large ſtrong Birds, as large as our Herons. When they go to Fiſh with them, they have them perch'd upon the Sides of the Boat waiting for the Word of Command, which when the Fiſherman gives, they take Flight, and ſeparately look for their Prey, ſpreading themſelves ſometimes the whole breadth of the River or Lake where they are, and when one of them has ſeiz'd a Fiſh, they bring it to their Maſter in the Boat, or if the Fiſh be too big, they help one another to bring it, and when they have deliver'd their Cargo to the Maſter, they fly out for more.

WHAT Fiſhes theſe Birds catch, are ſuch as they are naturally inclined to eat; and therefore it is no more difficult to teach theſe Birds to catch thoſe Sort of Fiſh, than it is to teach a Grey-hound to catch a Hare, or a Cat to catch a Mouſe, which they have by Natural Inſtinct; all that they have to teach them, is, to reſtrain them from immediately devouring them, and to bring them to their Maſters; and in order to this they tie a ſmall String about their Necks, ſo ſlack as to ſuffer them to breathe; but yet ſo tight as to hinder them from ſwallowing their Prey, and when the Maſter thinks fit to leave off Fiſhing, he takes off the String from their Necks and lets them fiſh for themſelves.

THERE are rich Mines of Gold and Silver, but their Gold Mines are not ſuffer'd to be open'd and yet that Commodity is plenty among them, by reaſon of the great Quantities thereof waſh'd down by the Torrents from the Mountains, in the rainy Seaſons, and is ſo fine that it needs no refining. They have alſo Mines of Tin, Iron and Copper; but they have either no Lead-Mines at all, or elſe they are very ſcarce, as appears by our *Engliſh* Lead finding ſo quick a Market in ſeveral Parts of that Country. Of their Mines.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Language, Characters, Learning, Arts and Sciences, and Honours; together with the Hiſtory and Chronology of the Chineſe.

Language. THE Language of the *Chineſe* ſeems to be an Arbitrary Independent Language, as being neither derived from any other Language, nor any other being derived from it; it conſiſts more in Accents and Geſtures than in Variety of Words; for the whole Language is compriſed in in leſs than four hundred Words, (ſome ſay three hundred and thirty,) all Monoſyllables, and theſe Words have different Meanings as they are differently accented, ſo that by the ſame Word you may paſs the higheſt Compliment or give the greateſt Affront; the ſtronger or weaker Inflection of the Voice altering the Signification of the Word, ſo that by reaſon of the fewneſs of the Words they may be ſoon learned, yet by reaſon of the Multiplicity and variety of Tones or Accents, it is very difficult for even one Native to learn to expreſs himſelf in an intelligent manner to another.

THESE three hundred and thirty Words, when rank'd together in their Order, ſtand ſomething like the rows of Monoſyllables in the beginning of ſome of our School-boys Spelling-books; and as every Word hath five Keys or grand Notes to determine and govern its Accents, it may not be amiſs to repreſent it to the Underſtanding by every one of theſe Monoſyables paſſing through, and being ſounded by all the five Vowels, or a Ring of Bells paſſing through their ſeveral Changes in ringing, ſo that this Language, when ſpoken exactly, and every Word has its proper Accent, is in ſome Meaſure Muſical, and expreſſeth a real Harmony, but the Varieties of the Sounds and Tones by which the ſame Word is applied to different Meanings; and underſtood in ſuch various Senſes, is learned with very much Difficulty.

BUT theſe various Words of theirs, which we have called Monoſyllables becauſe they pronounce them as ſuch, yet they are not compoſed of Letters as our Words are, but are each of them expreſt by a Character or Hieroglyphick, for they are entirely ignorant of putting Letters together, to make Words, and thereby communicate their Minds one to another; but every Word, or at leaſt the moſt Emphatical, is expreſt by a different Character, ſo that whereas we in *England* can expreſs all our Thoughts, manage the deepeſt Arguments, and write the largeſt Volumes, only by a right and thorough Knowledge of the Shape and Sound of Four and Twenty Letters, and of the true Accents of the ſeveral Syllables compos'd of them, to make the Millions of Words therein contain'd, the *Chineſe* can uſe no more Words than they can remember different Characters, which in their Language amounts in all to Twenty-four Thouſand; but he is eſteem'd extraordinary Learned that can remember Twenty Thouſand of them; and although a Variety of Twenty Thouſand Words would be but a poor Embelliſhment to a Voluminous Hiſtory, yet even that Number of Characters of a different Shape, are ſo difficult to learn the Shapes of, and afterwards to retain in Memory, that it takes up moſt of their Time and Thought, which is aſſign'd as a reaſon why they are ſo little Proficient in other Sciences. The Words or Monoſyllables above-mention'd, as they ſpeak them, may in ſome Meaſure be communicated to us by our own Letters as *Tchun*, *Lem*, and the like; but each Word having ſo many various Accents to repreſent its different Meanings, and every one of theſe Meanings to be expreſt by a different Character, when they are to be communicated to another by Writing, occaſions a neceſſity for the numerous Characters ſpoken of above.

BUT

But yet it is in *China* as in other Countries; for in the Chief and Populous Towns the People are more Polite, and the Language more proper and intelligible, than in the Parts more remote and illiterate; as it is obſerved at *Nankin*, that the Accent is more regular and correct than in other Places, for by reaſon of the Place being more Populous, and the frequency of Converſation, they learn to pronounce their Tones and different Accents ſo ſmoothly, that although they thereby diſtinguiſh the different Meaning of the ſame Word, yet a Stranger could ſcarce perceive the difference; and what more ſoftens their Language, they never uſe an R; but they have another Sound which is ſomething troubleſome to pronounce; it is expreſt by a double Ll, and is ſounded from the bottom of the *Aſpera Arteria*, but cannot well be expreſt in Writing, and is very difficult to be pronounc'd by a Perſon that underſtands no Language but *Engliſh*; but it is a Sound much us'd in the *Welch* Language, the Word *Llan* ſignifying a Church; and ſeveral Towns in *Wales*, where there is a Church having their Names begin with *Llan*, as *Llantriſant*, a Church dedicated to three Saints; and the double Ll is an Aſpirate, and ſounds moſt like Hl, as *Llan* is ſounded *Hlan* both in the *Welch* and *Chineſe*, and the Aſpirate H before the l requires the expence of ſo much Breath, that it is very harſh and troubleſome for an *Engliſhman* to pronounce, and yet theſe Gutturals and Aſpirates, which to us are thought harſh and troubleſome, are by them thought a Grace and a Beauty to their Language, as ſuppoſing that if they did not maintain that (to us) diſagreeable Harſhneſs, their Language would degenerate into an effeminate Softneſs fit for none but Women and Children.

Their Writing.

The *Chineſe* manner of Writing is different from (I think) that of all other Nations, for beſides the *Engliſh*, *Latin* and *Greek*, and other Methods of Writing from the Left to the Right, and from the Top of the Leaf to the Bottom, and the *Hebrew*, which is alſo writ from the Top of the Leaf to the Bottom, but the Lines begun at the Right-hand and writ to the Left, the *Chineſe* differ from both, for they begin at the Top of the Leaf in the Right-hand Corner and write their Lines downwards, and ſo proceed Line after Line to the Left-hand ſide of the Leaf, ſo that our laſt Page of a Book is their Title-Page, and our firſt Page their laſt.

In Writing they uſe a Pencil inſtead of a Pen, and do not hold it ſloping as we do, but nearly perpendicular, as if they were going to prick the Paper rather than write upon it. Their Paper is ſo thin as to be almoſt Tranſparent, and will not bear Ink on both Sides without the hazard of the Letters running into one another, but if they have a mind to have it appear as if it was writ on both Sides; they fold the Paper which is ſcarce perceived by reaſon of the extraordinary thinneſs and fineneſs of their Paper. A fair Hand Writing is one of the firſt or chief Steps to Preferment, that being a chief Qualification required, in any that puts up for a Degree, and without which he is not capable of any conſiderable Preferment in the State. And hence in Writing, as well as other Improvements, the Emperor is commonly one of the moſt excellent, as not being qualify'd for ſo great a Dignity without theſe valuable Endowments of Mind, proportionable to it.

Printing.

Although Printing is now much more improved in *Europe* than in *China*, yet it was invented and practiſed there long before it was here, but continues to be perform'd there with little Improvement. Their Printing is in ſome reſpects rather like our Rolling-Preſs or Copper-Plate Printing, than our Common or Letter-Preſs; for let the Book be well or ill written or drawn, it is Printed accordingly, for their Letters or Characters which they are to Print are firſt cut or engraved in Wood, which that they may do the more exactly according to the Copy, they paſte the Leaf of Copy upon a ſmooth Board, with the written Side downwards towards the Board, and the Paper being ſo Tranſparent that they can ſee the Characters or Figures through it, they cut the Wood through the Paper, cutting away that Part of the Wood which is cover'd by the White Paper, and leaving that Part cover'd by the Figures or Characters, which done, and the remaining Paper waſh'd from the Board, there is in the Board the exact Shape of the Figures that were upon the Paper, only reverſe upon the Board, which when it comes to be printed is reverſed again, and ſo upon the printed Paper it appears the very ſame as it was upon the firſt Copy; and that is the reaſon why Authors that cannot write ſo well as they would have their Books printed, do firſt write their Copy, and then get it tranſcribed into a better Hand, or fair Characters, by a Maſter Scribe, to have it printed from a better Copy, and in a handſomer manner than they could write themſelves.

Of their Learning.

What has been reported by ſome of the great Ingenuity and Learning of the *Chineſe*, may probably have had its Riſe from their Generoſity in giving ſuch plentiful Rewards and Encouragements to the Propagators and Encouragers of ſpeculative Learning, rather than from any great Proficiency or Advances that they have made in theſe Sciences, or to the Ignorance of their Neighbours, who think every inferior Degree of Learning an Excellency, becauſe it is what they do not underſtand, rather than to any ſuperior Degree that they have really acquired and are Maſters of. They know little Natural Philoſophy, and leſs, if any thing at all, of Logick. They have but ſuperficial Notions of Geometry, what they know of it is generally compriſed under a few, and thoſe probably eaſy, Propoſitions, and ſome few Problems in Algebra. Their Arithmetick is improv'd to a ſomewhat higher Pitch, Numbers being what all Buſineſs depends upon, and without which it is impoſſible in Trade to do Juſtice between Man and Man, and yet in that they do not uſe Figures for the immediate caſting up of any Parcels of Goods, as to the Weight, Meaſure, Price, or the like, as we in *England*, or the more Southerly Parts of *Europe* do; but rather as they do in *Moſcovy*, by a ſmall Board or Frame of about Eighteen Inches long, or leſs at Pleaſure, and more than half as broad, made in an oblong Form like the Frame of a Door, but the Sides and Ends about three quarters of an Inch ſquare; then from Side to Side parallel to the Ends, there are ten or twelve ſmall Wires like the Rounds of a Ladder, upon each of which are Nine or Ten moveable Beads, by the ſhifting of which backwards or forwards with a little thing like a Penknife, made for that Purpoſe, they do without any Pen, Ink or Slate, caſt up any common Sum with incredible quickneſs, ſo far as this Method will reach, but their Arithmetick ſeldom amounts to intricate and exact Calculations.

They aſſume to themſelves the firſt Invention of Muſick, but what they are now Maſters of, when compared with that of other Nations, ſcarce deſerves the Name, ſo little Improvement have they made in it. They have long and diligently applyed themſelves to the Study of Aſtronomy; but for a long time came ſhort of moſt *European* Nations; they applied themſelves to the Obſervations of Comets, Eclipſes, Conjunctions and other Phænomena of the Heavens, but always fell ſhort of Exactneſs till the Jeſuits came amongſt them, who have rectified ſome of their Errors, and reformed their Calendar.

They are generally great Bigots to Aſtrology, as telling Fortunes, Lucky or Unlucky Days to be married, or undertake a Journey, or the like; all which they ſuppoſe and believe the Aſtrologers can fore-

foretel; and this Piece of Credulity we should impute to their Ignorance and Superstition, if we did not find a great many amongst us Christians so weak, as to believe that an Astronomer at this Day, can by his casting Figures or dealing with Familiar Spirits do the same. The *Chinese* are great Observers of Times, and have as much Faith in their Fortune-tellers and Astrologers, as in their Gods. These sort of People have the Direction and Government of all their Affairs; nor will they undertake a Journey, or any Business of Importance, without first advising with them, as to the lucky Day and Hour to begin it. These Astrologers pretend to let a Man know his future Fortune in the World, by only having the Day of his Birth, and calculating his Nativity, and let them fail never so often, as to the Truth of their Predictions, yet if they hit but once, it gives a Sanction to all the rest, and makes Atonement for all former Mistakes; but we need not go so far as *China* for Instances of this ridiculous Credulity; when we have so many both Young and Old, that suffer themselves to be drawn into a Belief that Astrologers can find stolen Goods, and foretel Things to come; and that in a reform'd Christian Nation as this is wherein we live.

Physick. They have but little Understanding in Anatomy, and consequently cannot have much Knowledge in Physick, but pretend to be very expert in knowing the Distemper, by feeling the Pulse; nor doth their Knowledge by the Pulse terminate here, for they also undertake to predict thereby how long the Disease will continue, and whether it will prove mortal; and they have wonderful Skill in this Art: But it is much easier with them to know the Disease, than to find a Remedy. They have no Apothecaries, but every Physician produces his own Ingredients, and prepares his own Remedies, which are frequently made up in Pills, but not of a purging Nature. They never let Blood, probably by reason of the excessive Heat of the Climate: But as they have a Notion that all Distempers generally proceed from the same Cause, they as frequently apply the same Cure; for they think that all Distempers are caused by a malignant corrupt Wind, which they endeavour to dissipate, by applying red hot Irons to the Place grieved. And in the Distemper called *Mordechin*, which is a violent Cholick and Vomiting, occasion'd by Indigestion or Foulness of the Stomach; they cure it by applying red hot Irons to the Soles of the Feet; but in slight Indispositions they commonly prescribe Cordials, extracted from Herbs and Roots, of which they have great Plenty, and those of different Vertues and Temperatures, as in other Countries. The Root *Ginseng* is reckon'd a very good Cordial amongst them; and the Root call'd *Pao China*, is an excellent Sudorifick, Purging the Humours and corrupted Blood. There is no Restraint or Limitation in *China*, as to the Practice of Physick: No Degree is required to be taken up, nor any Qualification required, but a little Knowledge in Physick, and a great deal of Assurance; which is the Cause, that there are so few regular and eminent Physicians there. They are seldom or never afflicted with the Sciatica, Gout or Stone, which some impute to their frequent drinking of *Tea*; but I do not find that *Tea* has that good Effect upon *English* Bodies.

The *Chinese* have learn'd from the *Europeans* to make Pistols, Watches, Glass, Granadoes or Shells for Bombs; but it is said, they had the Invention of Gun-Powder, Printing, and the use of the Mariner's Compass, long before we had in *Europe*.

As for the way of their reckoning Time, they divide the Natural Day, (as consisting of Day and Night) into twelve Hours, and begin to reckon from Midnight; one of their Hours being equal to two of ours; and their first Hour ending at our two a-Clock in the Morning, their second at our four a-Clock, &c.

There were no Clocks in *China*, till they were first carried out of *Europe* to that Country; but before that Time they had Sun-dials, which were divided into a hundred Parts in the whole Circle or Natural Day; but of late they have divided their Dials as they do their Clocks, every two Hours of ours being one of theirs, on their Dials as well as their Clocks.

They have of late been so careful in the Regulation of their Calendar; that there are above a hundred Persons employ'd by the Emperor for that Purpose, and their several Performances, sent by the respective Astronomers to the Viceroys of the different Provinces; that every Man's Performance, when compared with the rest, may contribute towards finding the Truth. They divide their Calendar by Lunar Months (reckoning a Month from New-Moon to New-Moon,) of which there are sometimes Twelve, sometimes Thirteen in a Year; because in Nineteen Years, or Two Hundred Twenty-eight Solar Months, there is Two Hundred and Thirty-five New-Moons or Lunar Months; which causeth some Variation, till once in Nineteen Years they come to near the same; and in their Almanacks or yearly Book, they insert the Eclipses of the Luminaries, and whether visible or not, in the respective Cities, for which they calculate as we do, the different Quantities of Solar Eclipses, for Places in different Latitudes; as *Paris*, *London*, *Edinburgh*, &c. but fall short of that Exactness in Calculation that the *Europeans* have attain'd; however, according to what Progress they have made in Astronomy, they calculate the Equinoxes, Solstices, and the Time of the Sun's Entrance into every intermediate Sign; as also the Planets and their Places in the Ecliptick; their Aspects, their Approximation to, Vicinity with, and Seperation from one another, or from the fixed Stars: And although their Calculations fall far short of Exactness; yet they pretend by these general Calculations, to raise particular Predictions; they believing as some People weakly do in our own Nation; that he that understands Astronomy must be an Astrologer of course; and capable of telling Fortunes: And hence they undertake to prescribe Lucky or Unlucky Times for the undertaking of any Enterprize of Moment; as the Beginning of a Journey, or Marrying, or the like; which the common People are as much bigotted to there, as in any Part of the World; but the wiser Sort there, as well as here, have got more Sense than to be imposed upon, or to be drawn into the Belief of any such Fallacies. Their Calen.

What Notions they have of Astronomical Calculation, they had first from the Jesuits; for till then they could never compose an Ephemeris or Calendar exactly; and their Method of calculating Eclipses were so general and incorrect, that they could scarce foretel about what Time an Eclipse would happen, much less determine exactly the Quantity of it; and it may probably be from their Ignorance, that we have derived the Names of our two opposite Nodes or Points, where the Moon's Orb intersects the Ecliptick, which we call the Dragon's Head, and Dragon's Tail; for they fancied, that there was a prodigious great Dragon in the Heavens, who was a declared Enemy to the Sun and Moon, and always stood ready to devour them; and therefore, when an Eclipse began they beat their Drums and Kettles, in hopes to frighten the Dæmon or Monster from his Prey; and although they have now made farther Discoveries as to the Natural Cause of Eclipses, yet they still retain the same Flavith, Fear when an Eclipse happens; insomuch, that even in so populous a City as *Pekin*, while the Astronomers are making their Observations, the Mandarins belonging to the Court of *Japon*, fall on their Knees in the Palace, and looking towards the Sun, express their Concern for him, and implore the Dragon to have compassion on the World, and not

to

to deprive them of the Light of this glorious Planet the Sun.

Preferments. But however Ignorant this Country may be ſuppoſed to be as to their Aſtronomy, and other Branches of Mathematicks, yet they have this Excellency, which it were to be wiſh'd that all other Nations would imitate; for here it is only Merit that can introduce any Man into any conſiderable Poſt, ſo that here a Man's Fortune in point of Preferment depends intirely upon his Qualifications for and Application to Buſineſs; and therefore it is the chief Care of Parents who have the Preferment of their Children in view, to give them good Education; for we do not find that a vaſt Eſtate or a great deal of Money hath any Share in the Queſtion; and as this Article which they call Education ſways ſo much, their Schools are very numerous, of which we have different Accounts: *Le Compte* tells us, the Towns are full of Schools, whilſt others that take it only upon Truſt tell us, there are no Schools at all; but the two different Accounts are eaſily reconciled, if we conſider that Families of Note take Maſters into their Houſes to teach their Children, and qualify them for Preferment, as Opportunities offer; and if every noted Family have their Children taught at Home, it is indifferent for Travellers either to ſay, *The Towns are full of Schools*, when they ſee almoſt every Houſe is a School, with a Maſter to attend it, or to ſay there are few or no Schools in Town, when they find every Perſon, eſpecially thoſe of Character and Diſtinction, taught at Home.

But wherever or by whatſoever means they acquire their Education, the immenſe Number of Characters they have to learn, before they can either underſtand another Perſon's Writing, or communicate their Thoughts to another that way, takes up ſo much time, as we have hinted before, that it muſt be ſomething more than common Induſtry that can attain it, and hence he that can Read and Write, that can underſtand what another writes to him, and can communicate his Thoughts to another by the ſame means, *i. e.* Writing, is look'd upon as one of an uncommon Genius, and is thought fit then to be preſented to an inferior Magiſtrate, and if he gets his Approbation, he is admitted a Student, in which if he ſucceeds and improves, he riſes from one Degree to another, like our Degrees of Batchelor, Maſter of Arts, and Doctor in our Univerſities.

Degrees of Honour. When they are thought capable of ſtanding Candidate for any of theſe Degrees, they are admitted to the firſt by the principal Magiſtrates of the Province; and if his Capacity therein proves him qualified for a ſecond Degree, he muſt be admitted thereto by an Examination, at which a Commiſſary from the Emperor muſt immediately aſſiſt; and if by theſe Gradations they are thought fit to be recommended to the third Degree, they muſt commence at the Imperial City of *Pekin*; and ſo juſtly is their Encouragement proportion'd to their Merit, without regard to Money, that their Charges are defray'd at the Publick Expence, leſt the Commonwealth ſhould be depriv'd of the Benefit of ſo uſeful a Subject, whoſe Uſefulneſs and Value is eſteem'd in Proportion to his Merit, and not his Riches, and the Emperor is not only the Ultimate Judge, but ſometimes examines the Candidates himſelf, it being always a Qualification previouſly neceſſary in the Emperor, to be Maſter of thoſe Branches of Learning which qualifies others for being perfect'd under him.

When the Election comes, on the Candidates are ſhut up in a room without any Books, or any more Paper than their preſent Exerciſe requires, and have Centinels placed over them, to prevent their having any Correſpondence with other Perſons; and when the Doctors are nam'd, they are preſented to the Emperor, who honours the three that he has made Choice of by ordering them Garlands of Flowers, or ſome other Marks of Favour and Diſtinction; after which ſome of them are advanced to the Royal Academy, which is a fair Step to ſome of the higher Poſts in the Eſtate; for when a Man is once commenced Doctor, he is look'd upon as in the readieſt way to Preferment; every Body endeavours to aſſiſt and oblige him; but yet this Grandeur is conditional, for ſtill their future Advancement depends upon their continued Induſtry; and if after that, they have not made the Progreſs which was expected, they are reprimanded, if not diſcarded; but thoſe that are Induſtrious are advanced in Proportion thereto; and hence it is that all Offices and Places of Truſt are fill'd with the ableſt Men, and thoſe that are beſt qualified for them.

And ſo ſtrictly is Merit made the Condition of Preferment in the State, that even Nobility itſelf is not Hereditary, much leſs any other Quality or Diſtinction. Nor does any Man enjoy any Honour but what the Office or Preferment which he has acquired by his Merit and Induſtry gives him. Their Lands are Freeholds; they have no ſupreme Lord but the Emperor, who can, without Diſtinction of Laity or Clergy, Tax all the Land as he pleaſeth. The Emperor and his Subalterns above-mention'd, are all the Magiſtrates they have; and the reſt apply themſelves to Husbandry, or other Labour; ſo that there are no idle Drones there, who under a pretence of doing Juſtice between Man and Man, maintain themſelves in Idleneſs, by living upon other People's Labour.

Hiſtory. In writing their Hiſtories, they have an excellent Method for having what is written True and Impartial; there being a certain Number of Hiſtorians choſen, whoſe Buſineſs it is, every one to regiſter the Tranſactions of his Time, every one doing the ſame, with that Induſtry and Impartiality, as if no Body was about that Work but himſelf; the Actions, Speeches, *&c.* of their Princes, being the chief Subject of Hiſtory there, as well as in other Places; together with Remarks upon other Facts, as they occur; all which are promiſcuouſly lodg'd in a Publick Office, ſet apart for that Purpoſe, and never open'd during the Life of the reigning Prince; but when he dies the Office is open'd, and the Memoirs of his Reign collected and digeſted into a Hiſtory of his Reign; and this Method muſt certainly contribute very much to the Truth of their Hiſtory and Chronology; every Author of that Collection of Memoirs, doubtleſs, emulating to excel each other, both in Truth of Fact, and Perſpicuity of Language, in Order to their being preferr'd to ſome higher Dignity, which as before obſerv'd, is always the Reward of Merit only.

Chronology. The Chronology of the ancient *Chineſe* is ſaid to bear Date long before ours; ſome ſay it is forty thouſand Years ſince the firſt Foundation of their Empire, which is above ſeven Times as long as we reckon ſince the Foundation of the World; and above five Times as long as is reckon'd by the Tradition of the *Weſtern* Churches; and when this Piece of Chronology comes to be ſtrictly examined into, we do not find that they can produce any Hiſtory, to prove the Truth of the Fact; and at the ſame Time they acknowledge, that all their Records and Hiſtories were deſtroy'd by one of their Emperors, about two thouſand Years ago; ſo that this Opinion is grounded upon bare Tradition only; and as their *Æra* is ſo improbable, and no Authority produced to ſupport it, we ſhall ſuſpend, or rather reject the Belief of it.

The beſt Authors from the Authority of the *Chineſe* Hiſtory do not compute it to be above two thouſand Years ſince the *Chineſe* Monarchy began; which could not the Time elapſed, ſince that Computation was made, will make it out that

their Empire has been eſtabliſhed ever ſince *Noah*'s Flood, or ſoon after it; in which Time the Imperial Dignity has paſt thro' twenty-two Families; and in them, thro' the Hands of two hundred and thirty-ſix Emperors; and it is not at all ſurprizing, that ſo few Reigns ſhould fill up ſo many Years, if we conſider that their Monarchy begun ſoon after the Flood; and ſome of their firſt Emperors were Cotemporary with ſome of the long-liv'd Patriarchs; and give us for Inſtance, that their firſt Founder *Fohi* reigned one hundred and fifty Years; *Chinum* one hundred and forty; *Hoamti* one hundred and eleven; and ſo decreaſing as the Age of Man decreaſed after the Flood.

What Tranſactions they pretend to have upon Record, ſo long before our Account of Time, or of the Creation itſelf, ſeems to have but little Authority, or rather none, as being contradicted by the Courſe of their own Hiſtory; where they attribute the Invention of all their Arts to ſome one or other of their Emperors; the firſt of which, you find by their own Chronology, was not above four thouſand Years ago; and it is not probable, that ſuch a Nation could ſubſiſt above thirty thouſand Years without Ploughing, Sowing, Planting, Building, Manufacture for Cloathing, and ſuch other Neceſſaries of Life. And which is more, it is evident by Calculation (the moſt undeniable Proof of Fact) that ſome of the Eclipſes, Conjunctions, &c. recorded by them, happen'd ſome hundred of Years after the Time mention'd in their Hiſtory. In ſhort they give us no Account of any Wars, till about four thouſand Years ago; any more than of Huſbandry, Building, &c. and it is very improbable that the World ſhould be ſo ignorant, and ſo paſſively contented as to live without Husbandry, Planting, Building, &c. or ſo peaceable as to live without any Quarrelling for thirty-ſix thouſand Years together, when there has been every where ſo much of it the laſt four or five thouſand Years; from whence it is evident, that either their Records and Chronology are loſt or miſtaken, or that for the Time that they reckon before the Foundation of their Monarchy, (which by their Account is thirty-ſix thouſand Years) they had a way of reckoning their Years very much different from our way of reckoning now.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Emperor's Prerogative and Stile, the Succeſſion of the Crown, Courts of Juſtice, Magiſtrates, Laws and Cuſtoms, Revenues and Forces; with the Coins, Weights and Meaſures uſed in China.

Dignity of the Emperor

THE Empire of *China* has been a Monarchy as long as it has been an Empire, which is, as before obſerv'd, above four thouſand Years; and as if he thought all earthly Princes depended on him, he aſſumes the Title of *Holy Son of Heaven, Sole Governor of the Earth, Great Father of his People*, &c. And when one Family is extinct, the ſucceeding one has a Power to give a new Name to the Empire; which continues as long as that Family enjoys the Imperial Dignity, and which if it continues long, meets with the more Difficulty to be changed into another Name by the ſucceeding Family; and hence the Emperor *Chinum*, who reign'd one hundred and forty Years, and ſucceeding Branches of his Family much longer, might probably give the Name of *China* to the Empire; which by a long Series of Time, was ſo rivetted in the Minds and Language of the People, and been ſo much ſpread in Hiſtory, that that Name could never be erazed to this Day, or perhaps never will.

They have no Notion of any Government below Monarchy; they never heard of any ſuch Thing as a State or Commonwealth, till the States of *Holland* ſent an Ambaſſador thither; who when he arrived, found the utmoſt Difficulty to make them underſtand what Sort of Government that of the *United Provinces* was, or what was meant by repreſenting the Dignity of their Government in the Plural Number, *the High and Mighty States of Holland*, till Time and further Information made it more familiar to them.

Succeſſion of the Crown

The Conſtitution of *China* is generally to have the Crown to deſcend in a Hereditary Line, but with this Limitation, that the Emperor has a Power to alter the Succeſſion, and to declare any one of his Subjects his Succeſſor, whether he be of the Royal Family or no, provided this his Choice be approv'd and confirm'd by his great Council or *Calao*, which is compos'd of Princes of the Blood, and Miniſters of State; but if they oppoſe his Choice, the Succeſſion muſt fall upon him that is deem'd the next Heir; but if the Emperor is reſolute, he ſometimes turns out, or alters his Council, till he gets one, the Majority of which are of his Sentiments, and then he carries the Succeſſion according to his own Mind. But in making, altering, or aboliſhing any Laws, he cannot do any thing without the Aſſent and Approbation of his Council, eſpecially in Matters of Religion; for when the Emperor and the *Tartars* in Council were ready to decree any thing in favour of our modern Miſſionaries, that they could in reaſon require, yet when there was a Majority of *Chineſe* oppoſed them, they were oblig'd to ſuſpend that Alteration in Religion which the Emperor propos'd, and act according to the Laws of his Country, rather than run the hazard of another Revolution.

And his Power is yet further limited; for the Emperor never acts but by the Approbation or Mediation of ſome of his ſupreme Courts, and altho' he is the richeſt in Treaſure, as well as the ſtrongeſt in Force, of any Prince in the World, yet he has not the direct Power either to apply the publick Treaſure, or to command his Forces, till his Intentions or Reſolutions be ratified by the proper Courts or Officers in Conjunction with his Authority.

But on the other hand, there is ſuch a Prerogative reſerv'd in the Emperor's hands, that none of his Superior Courts or Officers can paſs a definitive Sentence, eſpecially in Capital Caſes, and cauſe it to be put in Execution, without the Emperor's Ratification, it being abſolutely in his Power to confirm or reverſe any ſuch Sentence. His Retirements are only to give himſelf better Opportunities to conſult Affairs of State, conſider the Grievances of his Subjects, as repreſented to him in their Petitions, which by the Conſtitution of the Empire he is oblig'd to read, and then refers them to the Council, who having conſider'd the Circumſtances of the various Petitions, make their reſpective Reports to the Emperor, who finally determines all thoſe Capital Caſes himſelf, for which purpoſe he appears in Publick only four times a Month.

Of

Of all the Emperor's Titles, he values himſelf moſt upon that of *Great Father of his People*; and to addreſs him under that Denomination, is much more agreeable to him, than to call him *the Great*, *the Powerful*, &c. and according to the ſtanding Maxim of their Government, had rather be diſtinguiſh'd and applauded for his Affection to his People, than for his Authority over them, and to prevent his Subjects being impos'd upon by particular Officers or Magiſtrates, he has ſeveral Courts or Councils, which not only execute their reſpective Branches of Juſtice, but inſpect into one another, to prevent Frauds and Briberies in any one of them.

His Councils are of eight Sorts.

First, The Supreme Council, which conſiſts of Princes of the Blood only, and never aſſemble but upon extraordinary Occaſions.

Secondly, The Council call'd *Calaos*, (mention'd before) compos'd of Princes of the Blood, and great Officers; they are like our Privy Council, and conſtantly attend Affairs of State.

Thirdly, *Lipou* enquires into the Qualifications and Abilities of all Miniſters of State, Governors and Magiſtrates; and as they like or diſlike them, they make their Report to the Emperor, and according to his Orders thereupon they are either continu'd or diſplac'd.

The Fourth keeps an Account of all the Families in the Empire, and what Lands they hold, and of the Duties payable by them to the Emperor; and of this they make new Rolls every Year, and levy the Taxes and Revenues of the Crown, and preſide over the Treaſury or publick Money when ſo collected.

The Fifth has the Care of Arts and Sciences, with the Affairs of Religion, and the Rites and Ceremonies thereof.

The Sixth has the Care of the Affairs of the Army and Navy, takes Account of the Forces in the Garriſons and Fortifications, raiſeth Recruits as Occaſion requires, and repleniſheth the Magazines accordingly.

The Seventh takes Cognizance of all Appeals, eſpecially thoſe relating to Criminal Caſes.

The Eighth takes care of all the Temples, Palaces, and other publick Buildings; as alſo of the Canals, Bridges and Highways, and what other Repairs lie at the publick Charge.

Every one of theſe Courts not only perform their own Function, but are one a Check to, and dependent upon another, and often in Buſineſs of great Importance: The Concurrence of ſeveral Courts is required; as for Inſtance, the Militia is under the Care of the ſixth Court, but the fourth has the Charge of the Treaſury; and it is in vain for one of them to put a Body of Troops in Commiſſion to march, till they firſt conſult the fourth Court for Money for their Pay and Subſiſtence; and ſo in the reſt.

And beſides the Inſpection that one of thoſe Courts have into the other, the Emperor employs an immediate Inſpector into each Court, to give an Account to him of their Proceedings and Failings, if any there be; and even the Princes of the Blood are not exempted from the Cenſure and Obſervation of them; and beſides thoſe, every Viceroy, Governour, or Magiſtrate is oblig'd to tranſmit to the Court an Account of his own Adminiſtration; and if he is known to hide even his own Miſdemeanors, he is ſeverely puniſh'd for it: And yet Bribery and Corruption prevails there, as much as in any Nation in the World, and through all the Offices from the higheſt to the loweſt.

There are ſeveral Orders of Mandarins, and thoſe deputed to different Truſt and Offices, as his various Councils are, viz. ſome are Judges in Civil and Criminal Caſes, ſome attend the Affairs of the Revenue and Treaſury, others have the Command of the Militia, &c. They are Men in ſuch great Power, that though they are ſubordinate to the Viceroy, yet they have an Eye over, and are a Check upon his Actions, ſo that it would be difficult for him to be guilty of any Male-Adminiſtration, except either by Intereſt or Rewards, he firſt ſecure their Connivance, which they often do for him, that he may do the like for them again; *One good Turn deſerves another.*

But to prevent their contracting ſuch a Familiarity as may terminate in truſting mutually to a Connivance at one another's Faults, the Conſtitution orders that none enjoy the Place of a Mandarin above the ſpace of three Years, that by that Time there can be ſuch an Intimacy contracted, as can amount to this Degree of Corruption, their Time of holding the Office is expired, and a new one ſubſtituted; and to prevent this previous Acquaintance, at their Entrance into the Office, a Man is never to be put into this Poſt in his own native Province, but where he is a Stranger, and as Education and other Qualifications (excluſive of Riches and great Parentage) are the Conditions of Preferment, it often happens that Men of mean Extract, are advanced to thoſe high Poſts; and their being promoted in ſome other Province than where they were born, cauſeth more Veneration and Regard to be paid to them, than probably would in their own Province, where their mean Parentage are known.

The Mandarins have Palaces in every City built and endow'd at the Government's Charge; in them they reſide and adminiſter Juſtice: Their Salary is not above a thouſand Crowns a Year, which ſeems but a little to maintain the Grandeur in which they live, and to produce ſuch immenſe Eſtates as ſome of them acquire, and that in a few Years, which ſeems impoſſible to be done without Bribery and Extortion; which altho' the Emperor puniſheth with Severity when diſcovered, yet (notwithſtanding their Care taken to prevent their Confederacy and Connivance amongſt themſelves) they find means by Oppreſſion and irregular Practices, to extort vaſt Sums; the higher from the next lower, and they again from thoſe of an inferior Rank to them, till it is there, as in ſome other Places, the common People pay all at laſt; and theſe great Ones amaſs vaſt Riches to themſelves; and as he that is of a more tender honeſt Conſcience, is leaſt fit to be truſted with their Fraud and Connivance, ſo if he ſhould make a falſe Step, he ſhall be the firſt inform'd againſt, and caſhier'd by the reſt; not becauſe he was guilty of that one Fault, tho' that gave them the Opportunity againſt him, but becauſe he was too honeſt to be truſted with the Scene of Corruption, in which the reſt were involv'd.

It is the Cuſtom here to keep ſome of the Children of the Viceroys and ſuperior Governors at Court to qualify them for Government, and lay them in the way of Preferment; tho' ſome think it is rather to keep them as Hoſtages or Pledges of their Father's Loyalty. The buying and ſelling of Places, is by their Conſtitution abſolutely forbid, and tho' a little Money behind the Curtain may ſometimes have ſome Influence, yet it never can carry an Election to any Place, or Preferment whatſoever, for the Candidates for the meaneſt Employment, (much more thoſe for Places of Truſt and Profit) undergo ſuch ſevere Examinations, that it is impoſſible for any Perſon to be prefer'd, except he be qualified.

For the better executing of Juſtice, and managing the Government of this large Empire, every Province is a petty Empire of it ſelf, reſembling *Peking*, but all dependant upon, and holding their Authority from the Emperor, who reſerves all Capital Caſes to his own Determination: And they

altho' the ſuperior Courts have a Power to pronounce Sentence of Death upon a Criminal, yet they have no Power to execute it, till it is confirm'd by the Emperor; but the Criminal is remanded back to Priſon, and if the Emperor's final Sentence is delay'd, the Priſoner ſometimes lingers out a miſerable Life, and dies for want of Refreſhment, or common Neceſſaries.

Duty to Parents.

THE Authority of Parents, and Duty of Children, is more ſtrictly regarded there than in ſome Chriſtian Countries. It is reckon'd ſuch an odious Crime for a Son to mock a Parent, much more to lay violent Hands upon him; that is thought a Crime above the Cognizance of any, even the moſt ſuperior Court, and reſerv'd to the Determination of the Emperor himſelf; and ſo great is the Authority of the Father look'd upon to be, that if he appears and charges his Son with the Crime, that Teſtimony is thought ſufficient to prove the Guilt upon his Son without any farther Evidence, though it be a Caſe of Life and Death; and ſo ſtrict are they in the obſervance of this Duty of Obedience to Parents, that the Emperor is no more excuſed than the meaneſt of his Subjects; for they look upon him as not qualified to be an Emperor, if he pays not the due regard to his Parents if living: Inſomuch that when one of the Emperors had baniſh'd his Mother, although for ſo great a Crime as Criminial Converſation with one of his Courtiers, yet the People ſetting aſide the uſual dread of the Emperor, and being ſo affected, that he, though an Emperor, ſhould keep his Mother in Diſgrace, they crouded in their Petitions and Arguments to have her recall'd; at ſuch a Rate that weary'd him; and although he put ſeveral to Death for their Impertinence, in pretending to direct him, yet the reſt, regardleſs of the Conſequence, continued their Importunities to that Degreee, that the Emperor began to be apprehenſive, that if he cotinued thoſe Severities to his Petitioners, and did not gratify them in calling his Mother from her Exile, it might cauſe a general Revolt, and therefore he condeſcended to call her Home; ſo tenacious are the People of that great Duty to Parents, that even the Power and Greatneſs of an Emperor, was not ſuffer'd to diſpenſe with it.

Treaſon.

ONE Thing that doubtleſs tends very much to the ſuppreſſing of Treaſon and Rebellion, is, the ſevere Puniſhment inflicted upon ſuch Offenders; for the Sentence is, that they are to be cut in ten thouſand Pieces, and when the Time comes that they are to ſuffer, the Executioner ties the Criminal to a Stake, and firſt fleas his Forehead, from the top downwards to his Eyes, letting the Skin hang over his Eyes, and ſo falls to cutting and mangling the Body, as long as he thinks convenient, leaving the reſt to be torn in pieces by the Mob; and if it be but a common Act of Rebellion, the Puniſhment ends here; but if it be Treaſon or Rebellion of the higheſt Degree, the Family, and even the Children of the Offender ſuffer with him.

Murder

THEY puniſh Murder with Death, but have different Ways of inflicting that Puniſhment, as in *Europe*, yet differ in their Manner of Execution from us in *England*; for whereas we account beheading the moſt honourable Death that our Laws ſentence any Offenders to, and hanging the moſt contemptible, they behead the meaneſt Sort of their Criminals, as reckoning that the moſt ignominious Death, and ſtrangle thoſe of the Nobility or Quality that are ſentenc'd to die, as being an honourable Death, peculiar to them alone.

Adultery and Theft.

ADULTERY or Theft are not puniſh'd with Death, except complicated with Murder, or ſome great Violence, or Barbarity, committed upon the Perſon abuſed; theſe being look'd upon as Crimes of an interior Nature, are only puniſh'd with the Baſtinado, [illegible] common Puniſhm[illegible] Crimes; and is ſeveral Blows of a Cudgel on the Buttocks, as they lie on their Faces on the Ground; the Blows being more or leſs in Number, according to the Heinouſneſs of the Crime; and altho' it is not in the Power of any of the Emperors Courts to execute Sentence of Death upon any Criminal, that being the Emperor's expreſs Prerogative; yet they can execute the Sentence of the Baſtinado, which is by a Number of Blows in proportion to the Nature of the Crime, which ſometimes amounts ſo high, that the Offender expires under the Operation, or ſoon after it.

BUT if it be but a petty Crime, they commonly ſurvive the Puniſhment, which, when over, they are obliged to return Thanks to the Magiſtrate for his kind Correction, which is indeed ſometimes made much eaſier by croſſing the Executioner's Hand with a Piece of Money, which, as ſome Authors tell us, is now become ſo common to have the Puniſhment mitigated by a Bribe, that when a Man of Subſtance is to undergo the Puniſhment, there are thoſe who for a ſmall Reward will let him out, to bear it for him.

BUT for Crimes that do not incur ſuch great Penalties, or ſevere corporal Puniſhment as the Baſtinado, they have a lower Degree of Puniſhment, which may rather be called Shame than Puniſhment; ſomewhat of the Nature of the Pillory in *England*: It is a thick Board hung about the Offender's Neck, with his Crime written upon it; in which he is expoſed every Day for a longer or leſs Time, in proportion to the Nature of his Crime.

THE Priſons in the great Cities are ſo large, that they may almoſt be called Colonies rather than Priſons; for they conſiſt of Streets, Market-places, and Work-houſes: The Criminals are allow'd to work for Bread in the Day-time; by which Means they ſubſiſt more comfortably, the *Chineſe* Charity being very cold, and the Emperor's Allowance very mean. It is ſaid that in *Canton* alone there have been fifteen thouſand Priſoners at a Time or upwards.

THEY have no Lawyers, but every Man manages his own Cauſe; the Plaintiff draws up his own Caſe in Paper, and it is by proper Officers introduced to the Mandarin, who if he thinks it frivolous and vexatious, orders the Plaintiff to be ſeverely baſtinadoed for it; but if it is thought a Matter of Conſequence, it is examin'd by the proper Officer, who reports his Opinion of it to the Judge, the Defendant doubtleſs taking the ſame Steps; and if it is a Matter that comes within the Judge's Province to determine, they muſt ſubmit to his Sentence, or appeal to a higher Court: But if the Cauſe is of ſo high a Nature that it is the Emperor's ſole Prerogative to decide it, he gives the final Sentence, tho' then by the Report of the proper Officer before it was try'd, as in the Caſe of Malefactors in *London* at the *Old Bailey*, yet they are not executed till the Recorder or Deputy-Recorder make his Report to the King, Queen, or Regent, who gives the final Sentence by ſigning the Dead Warrant for ſuch of them as by the Recorder's Report are thought not fit Objects of the Mercy of the Crown'd Head; nor is it poſſible to think that there, any more than here, it can be poſſible for the Emperor to hear all, even the moſt capital Cauſes, himſelf in Perſon, but muſt determine, by the Report of thoſe Officers whom he thinks ſo faithful that he can depend upon, in Matters of ſo great Conſequence.

Receiving Ambaſſadors.

WHEN the Emperor receives a Foreign Ambaſſador, the Ceremony is perform'd with extraordinary State and Grandeur; he ſits upon a ſumptuous Throne, about three or four Foot high; his Poſture croſs-legg'd, attended with a Multitude of great Officers in their Robes, the Princes of the Blood and tributary Kings, who fall proſtrate before him; the Ambaſſador to whom he is to give

Au-

Audience being introduced and conducted by ſome of the Viceroys, or by a Number of the Mandarins, to the Throne where the Emperor is placed to receive him. The Ambaſſador delivers his Credentials to the Emperor, and makes a ſhort Speech; after which he is re-conducted to his Houſe by the ſame Way he came, by the Viceroy or Mandarins appointed by the Emperor to attend on that Occaſion.

Some time after the firſt Audience, the Ambaſſador is invited to a ſumptuous Entertainment, where the Emperor comes in richly dreſt, attended with a Guard of Halberdiers, and a Conſort of Muſick playing; where mounting the Throne, his Guards ſit croſs-legg'd beneath him, and the Muſick ceaſes: The Vice-Roy and other Miniſters of State, ſtand on each Side of the Emperor, and the Ambaſſador on the right Side of the Throne, about four Fathom from it: Being thus plac'd, the Viceroy, by the Emperor's Order, which he receives upon his Knees, brings the Ambaſſador nearer; and after the Emperor has enquir'd after his Maſter's Health, and ſome other formal Ceremonies paſt, a Table which ſtands before the Ambaſſador, furniſh'd with cold Meat Fruits and the like, cover'd up, is uncover'd, and the Ambaſſador alone at that Table, is deſir'd to eat; ſome hundreds of Lords being alſo at the Entertainment, they ſit croſs-legg'd upon Carpets, every two of them having a Table between them.

As a Token of kind Reception, the Emperor from his own Table ſends ſome Diſhes of Meat to the Ambaſſador, with a Gold Cup of Brandy, or ſome ſort of ſpirituous Liquor, his Attendants alſo partaking thereof: After which, the Ambaſſador being call'd, and ſuch Queſtions ask'd as the Emperor thinks fit, the Viceroy leads him again to his Place; where having ſat a ſmall time, he is order'd to ſtand up, and the Emperor having ſaluted him, retires to his Apartment, and leaves him with the Mandarins to be entertain'd with ſuch Diverſion as they think moſt agreeable.

Audience of Leave.

When he has his Audience of Leave, the Emperor is ſeated on his Throne, and a Herald calls aloud to the Lords of the Court, to ſtand up and bow to the Earth, which they do three Times, the Drums beating, the Bells ringing, and the Muſick playing; the Ambaſſador being plac'd at ſome Diſtance from the Throne, makes his Compliment to the Emperor, and is from thence again conducted to his Apartment.

When the Emperor goes to Sacrifice in the Temples of his Idols, he marches in a ſplendid Proceſſion, being preceded, firſt, by 24 Trumpets with golden Coronets, then as many Drums, follow'd by 24 Men with gilded Truncheons, after whom come a hundred Soldiers, with fine Halberds, and then a hundred Serjeants at Mace, who are follow'd by four hundred fine Lanthorns, and as many gilded Flambeauxs; after theſe come two hundred Lances, followed by twenty four Banners, with the Signs of the Zodiack, and fifty ſix more with the Conſtellations painted upon them; then twenty four magnificent Umbrelloes, with a Cupboard of Gold Plate, born by the Officers of the Court; and then comes the Emperor on Horſeback, gloriouſly dreſt, his Houſen and Furniture cover'd with Gold and Precious Stones, and ſhaded with gilded Umbrelloes, held over his Head by the Pages of Honour. He is follow'd by the Princes of the Blood, Viceroys, and Miniſters of State in their Robes; after whom come five hundred young Gentlemen, attended by a thouſand Footmen dreſt in Carnation Silk, work'd with Stars of Gold and Silver; and after them is carried an open Chair like a Triumphal Chariot by thirty-ſix Men, which is follow'd by another, carried by a hundred and twenty Men, large enough to ſerve for an Apartment; after theſe come two Chariots drawn by Elephants, and two more drawn by Horſes, each Chair and Chariot guarded by fifty Men; and the whole Proceſſion is cloſ'd by two thouſand Mandarins, and as many Officers of the Army in rich Dreſſes.

His Women.

The Women which the Emperor keeps, as has been already obſerv'd, are ſelected by the Viceroys and Governors, and are ſome of the *moſt* beautiful Virgins; nor is he marry'd to any of them, ſo as to be confin'd, as to a Wife, in the Senſe we underſtand Matrimony; but has Children by all or any of them promiſcuouſly: Notwithſtanding which there are three in particular call'd Queens, to whom the reſt are ſubſervient; tho' the Sons of theſe Queens have no better Chance to be a Succeſſor to the Imperial Dignity, than the meaneſt of the Ladies Children; for the moſt learned and beſt qualify'd among them are generally made Choice of, according to the Conſtitution of the Empire; the Daughters of the Queens as well as Concubines being utterly excluded; and they, by the way of Ridicule, call *Europe* the Ladies Empire, becauſe the Women are ſometimes veſted with Regal Power in that Part of the World.

The Emperor has an Arbitrary Power in chuſing and nominating his Succeſſor; and whether he chuſeth the eldeſt or youngeſt of his Sons, and whether it be the Son of a Queen, or of an inferior Concubine, all the reſt muſt entirely ſubmit. They have Palaces aſſign'd them to live in, but have no Command in the Cities of their Reſidence, nor muſt they remove from the Cities wherein they are placed, without the Leave of the reigning Emperor, tho' it be their younger Brother that reigns after the Death of the Emperor their Father; but they are maintain'd as private Gentlemen, and have their Revenues punctually paid them by the Treaſurer of the Province; and ſo paſſively ſubmiſſive are they to the Emperor's Authority, that Hiſtory ſcarce furniſheth any Inſtances of the Elder Brother's laying any Claim to the Crown by Birth-right, Intereſt or otherwiſe, after his Brother, though the youngeſt, is either in Nomination for, or Poſſeſſion of the Imperial Crown.

Eſtates.

Their Eſtates are all Free, they not holding them of any ſuperior Lord; but the Emperor has a Power to Levy what Taxes upon them he ſees fit, and as the Neceſſity of the Government Affairs require; but they have one ſtated or ordinary Tax, which is commonly about one tenth of *their* Profits, and ſeldom exceeds. But it is a Cuſtom with the Emperor to exempt one, or ſometimes more of the Provinces of the Empire from paying any Tax, and fixes this Favour upon ſuch Province or Provinces as have been viſited with bad Weather, Sickneſs or any ſuch Calamity, if there happen to be any ſuch. A great many of their Taxes ariſing from the Culture of their Land, are paid in its Produce, ſuch as Corn, Rice, Silks and other Commodities; the Taxes upon which, are computed to amount to the Value of fifty Millions of Crowns; which, with about twenty-two Millions more, makes ſeventy-two Millions of Crowns a Year; which at ſix Shillings for every Crown, amounts to twenty-one Million, ſix hundred thouſand Pound Sterling yearly; a large Sum, but it is an extenſive Empire, both to collect the Money and expend it; and except Proviſion be prodigious Cheap, or there be ſome Additional Taxes, it ſeems next to impoſſible, that they could maintain five Million of Soldiers, beſides their Civil Liſt, with only twenty-two Million Sterling yearly, or little more.

No Collectors.

They have no occaſion for Collectors of the Taxes here, for they have Inſpectors who take an Account of every Man's Family, Eſtate and Subſtance every Year, and what Taxes are due to the Crown thereupon: this Account is enroll'd and kept, and a Tranſcript of theſe Particulars in every Family is fix'd at their reſpective Doors; ſo that neither the Officer nor the Houſe-keeper can plead Ignorance; nor can the Houſe-keeper commit any Fraud, becauſe

cause if he should attempt to craze, or alter any Thing in the Transcript that is left at the Door, he will be detected, because the Original is enroll'd: And besides, every Man is oblig'd to carry in his own Taxes for the Emperor, to the Mandarins of the Towns of the third Rank, on Pain of Imprisonment, and the Baltinado; and the Mandarins pay them into the Treasurer of the Province, who first pays the Governors, Officers and Soldiers of the Province, and defrays other necessary Charges of the Government, and remits the rest to *Pekin* for the Emperor's Use.

Magazines. And lest any Part of the Empire should suffer by Famine, Sickness, or any other common Calamity, they have always three Years Provision of Rice, and other Necessaries laid up at *Pekin* in Storehouses for that Purpose.

Forces and Forts. Their standing Forces in Pay in Times of Peace, consist of five Millions of Soldiers, mostly Horse, of which above one hundred and sixty Thousand are quarter'd in *Pekin* only, arm'd with Scymeters and Lances: The Horse carry no Fire-Arms, and the Foot but few; they still chiefly using Bows and Arrows, and are not very Industrious in Military Improvements and warlike Discipline, having no foreign Enemy to fear since the Union of *China* and *Tartary*, nor scarce any Exercise at Home but to keep the Country quiet, and therefore many of them follow their Trades, and are never call'd out but at certain Times, as our Militia are. They have an Allowance of Rice and other Provisions for their Families, which, with what they can get by their Trades, is probably most of their Income, there not being much Pay to be expected, when we compare the Number of Soldiers with the yearly Revenue of the Crown. They have a tolerable good Train of Artillery in the Field, having been assisted by the Jesuits in Casting them, but the Guns upon their Walls are of little Use.

Their Coin. The current Coin of the Empire are round Pieces of ordinary Metal, like Brass, with four *Chinese* Characters on one side, which compose the Emperor's Name, and two on the reverse, expressing the Name of the City where they were coined. They do not value them by the Coin or Number of Pieces; but having a Hole in the Middle of them, they string them, and count them by strings; for a thousand Pieces are not of more Value than a Piece of Eight, or in Sterling Money eighteen of them is not worth quite a Penny.

Weights and Measures. Their Silver they formerly valued by Weight, it being cut into irregular small Pieces, and weigh'd in little Scales, which they carried about them for that Purpose, but of late they make Use of a small Silver Coin.

Their Pound Weight is divided into sixteen Ounces, as ours is, and every Ounce into ten Parts, and each of these are divided again into ten Penny-Weights; every one of which are again subdivided into ten Parts, called Grains. Their Foot is about the Length of ours, or about one hundredth Part shorter, 100 of their Feet making about 99 of ours.

CHAP VIII.

Of their Religion, Places of Worship, and Superstition.

THE *Chinese* in general worship one supreme God, but they likewise suppose that there are several inferior Deities subservient to that great Being, and to these they impute the first Invention of Arts, Mountains, Rivers, and the like; (it is to be supposed that if their Ignorance extended so far as to impute the Being of Mountains and Rivers to any of their Demy-Gods, and rank the Invention of them amongst their Arts, they deny the Original Geographical Cause of them, which is now evident to every Person that understands the Globe, and the different Elasticity of some Parts of the Surface of it, which will easily account for the Mountains and Valleys, without the Help of their Deities;) but they never encouraged Vice, or sacrificed to such impure Deities as were worshipp'd in other Nations.

There are three sorts of Religion in *China*, every one having an Eye to a God or supreme Being; the first is the *Laokunites*, or Followers of *Li-Laokun*, who lived about five hundred Years before Christ; he taught that God was a Body, and had subordinate Deities under him. His Disciples studied Magick, and pretend to a Composition, which if drank will make a Man Immortal.

The second is the Sect of *Confucius*; he was celebrated for his Morals and Philosophy; his Principle is, that God is the most pure and perfect Being, and the Fountain of all Beings, and yet so much poison'd by Superstition, that he has Temples and Images erected to him, and is now worshipp'd with profound Adoration. He instructed the People in Philosophy, and left many admirable Precepts in Morality, and the mutual Duties between Man and Man.

Idol *Fo*. But there is a third Sort the most numerous of all the three; they worship the Idol *Fo*, and style him the only God of the World. This idol was brought from *India* about two and thirty Years after the Death of our Saviour: His Priests are called the *Bonzes*; they teach Morality, and a future State of Rewards and Punishments; they hold it unlawful to drink Wine, or kill any living Creature. The Priests wisely inculcate to them how much it is their Duty to maintain them well, to build them Temples and Monasteries, and to submit to the Penance they enjoin, or in case of Neglect or Refusal, they threaten them that after Death they shall undergo the greatest Torment, or else the Soul shall be removed into some Vermine or Beast of Burden. They seduced one to believe that his Soul should pass into one of the Emperor's Post-Horses; they advised him to bear it patiently, and eat but little, and God might perhaps be prevail'd upon to remove him the next time into some Person of Quality; but the Man was so affrighted at the Thoughts of Riding Post, that his succeeding Preferment gave him little or no Satisfaction; and hearing that the Souls of Christians were not removed at that rate, he was baptized, and lived and died in that Faith; but the *Bonzes* make their Disciples believe, that they can not only determine what sort of Body, whether Beast or the like, but also what individual Body the Soul shall possess and animate after Death: For one of the Princes of the Blood having lost a Friend he loved very well, enquired of the *Bonzes* into what Body his Soul was gone; who not only told him it was gone into a Boy, but into a *Tartar*'s Boy, and described him to him, who sent for the Boy, and kept him, thinking thereby that he had again recover'd his deceas'd Friend.

Transmigration.

Voluntary Penances. They are very profuse in their voluntary Penances and Mortifications, as thinking that will atone for the Sins of the People, and that they can apply the Merit thereof where they please, but not without a mercenary View; they commonly apply their pretended Satisfaction to some that are most bountiful to their Order. Their way of afflicting themselves is sometimes by dragging heavy Iron Chains through the Street after them, fastened to their Wrists or Legs, and beat their Heads against the Stones till the

the Blood runs down, thinking by that Means to make themſelves Objects of Charity, and extort Alms from the People; ſome of them have a Chair to be carried about in that is ſo full of Nails, that he cannot ſtir without wounding himſelf, and when the bigotted People ſee the ſuperſtitious Devotee in ſuch Torment, they buy the Nails at Sixpence apiece, and have them pull'd out to give him eaſe, thinking that every Nail pull'd out with that charitable Deſign will procure ineſtimable Bleſſings on the Family that purchaſed it, and the Money is paid to the Prieſts, to build a Temple to their God *Fo*, at leaſt ſo much of it as the Prieſts are willing to ſpare, ſo that we ſee there, as well as in other Places, Prieſt-Craft prevails, and finds a Religious Cloak to hide their Covetouſneſs.

Prieſt-craft.

Image of Immortality.

Idol of Pleaſure.

THEY have an Image in Form of a monſtrous fat Man, call'd the *Image of Immortality*; he ſits croſs-legg'd, and has a huge ſwoln Belly. There is another about twenty Foot high, called the *Idol of Pleaſure*; and between theſe is another about thirty Foot high, finely gilded, with a Crown upon his Head, and richly dreſt, called the *Great King Kang*; they mightily adore him. There are abundance of leſſer Images in their Houſes, Ships, and in the Streets, as well as in their Temples, and every Family has its *Jos*, or *Houſhold God*; to whom if they pray, and do not meet the deſired Succeſs, they chaſtiſe him, ſometimes pulling him down, and dragging him about the Streets; and if while they are ſerving him ſo, they happen to obtain the Thing pray'd for, they impute it to the Puniſhment he has ſuffer'd, and ſhew ſome Remorſe, begging Pardon for their ill Uſage of him, and ſet him up in his Place and worſhip him, and then they waſh, paint and gild him, and in all reſpects reſtore him to his former Splendor and Dignity.

Houſhold Gods.

Worſhip the Sun, &c.

THEY alſo worſhip the Sun, Moon and Planets, and the Souls of their Anceſtors, or of the Authors of any notable Invention. Since *China* has been conquer'd by the *Tartars*, the Emperor is always one of that Country and Religion, which is much like the *Chineſe*; except worſhipping a living Man as God, which they call *Lama*, which ſome think to be the ſame with *Fo*, only worſhipped in a different Form. They call him *Eternal Father*; he is ſhewn in a dark Place in the Palace, illuminated with Lamps; he is dreſt in rich Robes, and ſits croſs-legg'd upon the Ground: The *Tartars* pay a great Devotion to him, and when they approach him, they fall upon the Ground and kiſs his Feet; while the preſent *Lama* is alive, the Prieſts chuſe one of themſelves, as like him as poſſible, to be ready to ſucceed him, and when the elective Deity is ſubſtituted in his room, cloath'd, and in all reſpects equipp'd as the other was, which Trick being conceal'd from the Vulgar, finding always, as they think, the ſame Perſon in the ſame Place, they believe he lives for ever: He is of ſuch Eſteem with the *Tartars*, that no King muſt be crown'd till they have made him rich Preſents, and implor'd his Bleſſing. He keeps his Court at *Baramula*, with as much Splendor as a King, but medles not with the ſecular Government. He has Prieſts under him, called alſo *Lama's*, who ſerve as Chaplains to the *Tartar* Nobility at *Pekin*. The Emperor pays a diſtinguiſhing Reſpect both to the *Lama's* and *Bonzes*, and alſo to *Confucius*, and ſacrificeth in the Heathen Temples: And yet ſome would inſinuate, that the Emperor is a Chriſtian in his Heart; but if he was, his Power is ſo abſolute that he need not be afraid to own it; and if he denies it for no other Reaſon but leſt his Subjects ſhould follow his Example, and be Chriſtians too; it is a certain Sign that he has no great reſpect for Chriſtianity.

God *Lama*.

Mahometan Religion.

THERE are great Numbers of *Mahometan* Families in *China*, that Religion having been tolerated there theſe five or ſix hundred Years, and the whole Country abounds with Idol Temples, which ſtand without the City Gates, or in ſolitary Places; where the Religious accommodate Travellers with Proviſion and Lodging. There is generally by every Temple a Tower built to the Memory of ſome great Saint or Hero; perhaps the Builder or ſome great Benefactor to the Temple, in which Towers they place Images, and alſo great Numbers of Lamps, which burn Day and Night.

Temples.

THEIR Temples are built of Timber, containing one long ſquare Room, pav'd with large Stone, and roof'd with ſhining Tiles. There is in the Province of *Pekin* a Temple one hundred and ſixty five Foot high, in which there is an Image in the Form of a Virgin, an hundred and ſix Foot and a half high: There is a great Number of Prieſts belong to each Temple, who offer Rice, Wine, and other Proviſions to the Deities of the Place, and conſult them when any come to enquire of the Succeſs or Event of any thing, or of their future Fortune. Near theſe Temples are generally Cloyſters of thoſe who, as they ſay, have abandon'd the World, and devoted themſelves to Religion; they voluntarily inflict upon themſelves ſuch Pennance as they think will be moſt acceptable to their Gods; they live an abſtemious Life, and undergo their Mortification with an incredible Reſolution.

Immortality.

THEY are very much bigotted to an Opinion that there may be means uſed to make a Perſon immortal; but there are Parties in the Opinion, as to how it is to be done; ſome ſay, it is attain'd by the drinking of a liquid Compoſition, which they make for that purpoſe; but others ſay, it is a ſtrong Faith that preſerves them alive; and altho' both Sorts die like other Men, yet they will not recant their ſilly Notion, but alledge on one ſide, that the Deceas'd had not dy'd, if his Faith had not fail'd: On the other ſide, that there was ſome Ingredient wanting, or ſome other Miſmanagment in making the Liquor, which was the Cauſe of the Perſon's Mortality.

Chriſtian Religion.

IT is generally ſaid, that the Chriſtian Religion gains ground in *China*, and that they have not leſs than two hundred Chriſtian Churches and Chappels well fill'd with Converts; tho' ſome Authors would limit their Chriſtianity to the poorer Sort only, aſſigning as one Reaſon, that the Grandees and rich Men, are covetous and over reaching, by which they acquire Eſtates, and never will be prevail'd upon to make Reſtitution, and therefore no Chriſtians; but if that were the only Proofs, I am afraid we need not go ſo far as *China* to find ſome that are not Chriſtians; but however, another indeed more undeniable Reaſon for their denying their being Chriſtians, is, their denying the very Eſſentials of it; to wit, the Doctrine of the Trinity, and the Incarnation, which doubtleſs whoſoever denies, have no Pretences to Chriſtianity.

Wives ſold or changed.

THEIR Religion will not allow that one Woman ſhould be confin'd to one Man, but that the Man has ſuch an abſolute Property in his Wife, and ſuch a Power over her, that they may ſell, change, or otherwiſe tranſfer their Wives from one to another as they pleaſe.

A Cruel Cuſtom.

THEY have a barbarous and cruel Cuſtom there, tho' it is become ſo common that it is not thought a Crime; for when Parents are in ſuch low Circumſtances, that they find themſelves unable to maintain handſomely the Children they have got, they look upon it as an Act of Piety to deprive them of their Being, rather than ſee them live in Miſery; and yet they are generally ſo tender, if that may be call'd Tenderneſs, that becauſe they cannot ſee 'em die a lingring Death, for want of the Neceſſaries of Life, much leſs butcher them with their own Hands, they turn them adrift into the Streets or Highways, to let them live or die unknown to them; and when the Miſſioners find any of theſe poor miſerable Children near expiring, they think it an exceeding Act of Piety and Charity to adminiſter Baptiſm to them before they depart this Life, which they think gives them an undeniable Title to a State of eternal Happineſs in the World to come.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Treats of their Marriages, Wives, Children, and Slaves, and the Names by which they are distinguish'd.

Marriages. THE Marriages of the *Chinese* are not contracted by the Choice or Application of the Persons concern'd, but by the mutual Agreement and Consent of the Parents, and that commonly before the contracted Parties, if I may so call them, are at Age to chuse for themselves; nor do they ever see one another, except by Accident, after the Contract is made, any more than before; nor is the Woman's Consent ever ask'd; but when the Time appointed by the Parents for the Marriage is come, the two are told of the Contract, the Woman is deliver'd up to the Man upon certain Conditions, previously agreed upon by the Parents, and no more Dispute is made by the Woman than would be made about the delivering up any thing else that was the Parents absolute Property.

In Marriage Contracts, the Man's Parents always purchase the Woman for his Son, without expecting any Dowry with her, and at that Rate, the Females seem to be the most profitable Sort of Children; and yet it will be difficult to reconcile this to some Accounts, which tell us, that next to Barrenness, the bearing of Females is deem'd so scandalous and contemptible, that if a Woman happen to have three or four Girls successively, without a Boy, she will not stick to expose or turn them away to shift for themselves, or sometimes to strangle them with her own hands; one would think it would be more humane, as well as more beneficial, to keep them for a Market against the Time that they are capable of marrying.

They have advantage of the Rich. The Consequence of their purchasing Wives with a Price, is, that Men of slender Fortunes must have the fewer Wives; and for the poorest sort they are obliged to be content with one a-peice, that being as many as they are able to purchase; and in this Case the Wives of poor Men are much more happy than the Wives of the Rich; for the poor Man's Wife has her Husband to herself, whereas the Rich are not content with one, nor perhaps some with a Hundred, if they are able purchase so many; and yet these miserable Creatures, for they cannot be called otherwise, are never permitted to see any other Man but their Lord, nor to be seen of any after they are engaged, and doubtless among so many, some (the ordinariest) have but a small share of Conversation with their Lord, while the poor Country Dame, whose Husband can purchase no more than her, has him all to herself, and can walk abroad to breathe in the open Country Air, a valuable Privilege which the poor Seraglians, the Wives of the Rich, are deprived of.

Amongst all the Wives of the Rich, she that bears the first Child has the Preference, even in the Emperor's Court, as well as elsewhere; and so great a Value do they put upon Propagation, that a Woman, though a Wife, is not thought fit to dine with her Husband's Mother, but must wait at the Table till she has a Child.

[illegible] There is one thing that seems very much to obstruct the Progress of Christianity, and the Propagation of the Gospel in that Part of the World: The Jesuit Missionaries Doctrine is, that it is impossible for a Person to be a Christian, that has more Wives than one, and that may be one great Reason, why most of their Converts are of the poorer Sort, and such as cannot purchase more Wives than one; but by this means the Success of their preaching Christianity is block'd up amongst the Rich; and it seems reasonable, for the better encouraging of the Christian Religion, that there should be a little Dispensation allow'd, at least to those who had a Number of Wives before the Gospel was preached there; for if they would turn Christians, and yet must not be baptized without turning away all their Wives but one, what would become of their Children; must they be kept with the Father, and the Mother be separated from them, or must they go along with the Mother, and lie at her Charge for a Maintenance, without any Help of the Father? 'Tis true, as Polygamy is contrary to the Rules of Christianity, those who are converted before they are married, or have more Wives than one, may confine themselves one Man to one Woman; and by this means, that Evil would be gradually remedied, and in one Age, the Multiplicity of Wives would be extinct; but to divorce Wives, without any just Cause in them for so doing, must create a great deal of Confusion in the Common-wealth.

A Woman that was one of a Mandarin's Wives, and was willing to embrace Christianity, but was told by a Jesuit that she consulted, that she must first renounce her Husband, and not continue one of the many Wives of one Man; to which she answered, A Woman's Answer to a Jesuit. "Sir, I belong to a Mandarin that bought me; if I "go out of his House, he has a Right to reclaim "me, and take me again, and inflict on me the "Punishment of a Slave; and if I could avoid his "Pursuit, whither should I fly, my Kindred who "sold me durst not harbour me, and I shall inevitably fall into the Hands of some other Person, "who will, contrary to my Inclination, engage me "in the State I seek to avoid; I must therefore re"main in the House where I am, and then, how "shall I be able to resist a brutish Fellow, who "consults only his own Lust, and will be justify'd by "the Laws and Example of the whole Empire: It "is to no Purpose to lay before him the Holiness "of Christianity, which I desire to embrace, neither "my Tears nor Entreaties, or even the most obsti"nate Resistance I can make, are able to hinder "him." Thus this poor Woman was deny'd to be initiated into Christianity, for no other Reason, but because she did not perform a Condition that was out of her power.

Marry Young. The Men in *China* marry at about Twenty Years of Age, and the Women about Twelve; an old Batchelor is look'd upon with the utmost Contempt, and it is thought very unfortunate to have no Children to mourn at their Graves; and therefore there is scarce a single Man to be seen amongst them, and some of the Richest of the common Sort have ten or a dozen Wives each; and as the Women are exceeding fruitful, and they seldom have either War or Pestilence, to carry off any Number of their Inhabitants the vast Populousness of the Country is easily accounted for.

Degrees of Kindred. They do not stand much upon degrees of Kindred in their Marriages; especially by their Mother's side but they never marry into the same Name.

The Token for the Marriage being irrevocable, is, the Bridegroom sending to her, and she accepting

ing gold and silver Bodkins, or some particular Present of Value, proportionable to her Quality, which being given and received, confirms the Contract; though still they have never seen one another; nor ever do, till the Bridegroom sends for her; but after the Tokens thus received, she cannot marry to another while he is alive: Yea, though her Spouse go out of the Kingdom, she must wait his Return, or till she has certain News of his being Dead. When the Day appointed for the Nuptials is come, there is here, as in other Parts of the World, great Rejoicing and Feasting at the fetching Home of the Bride, and frequently a splendid Cavalcade from the Wive's Father's House to the Bridegroom's, with Drums, Trumpets, Streamers and Colours, and the Musick playing; but the Bride is carried in a close Chair, because she must not be seen by any Man, though the nearest Relation; and when she is brought to the Bridegroom's Door, he stands at the Gate richly Drest to receive her and opens the Door of the Sedan himself, and this is the first Interview between them, they never having seen each other before, and therefore when it approaches, it must be expected with some Impatience on both sides, to see how each like their Bargain; and doubtless it must create strange Confusion, if either of them is deceived in the Representation made of the other, when they do not appear so amiable as was expected but let the Case be how it will though the Woman upon sight of the Man conceive never such an Aversion against him, she is obliged to stand to him; there is no redress for her, if he will accept of her; but if the Woman be not so agreeable as the Man expected, he may return her back to her Parents that Moment, only losing the Money wherewith he purchased her; but if he once receives her in form, he cannot afterwards divorce her, except for Adultery or some notorious Offence. If he takes any Concubines after he is married, they are accounted as Servants or Subordinates to the first Wife, but their Children are equally entitled to their Shares of the Man's Effects with hers: They look upon it as a great Conveniency for a Man to have many Wives; for, regardless of the Confusion which we in *England* should think would be caused by having many Wives or Concubines, they look upon it with another View, and think that among so many, if some be sullen and out of Humour, yet there is a Chance of finding some of them in Temper to have recourse to, and to converse with.

Allow'd a Gallant.

ALTHOUGH the Women after they are married are not allow'd to converse with any Man, even the nearest Relation; yet, as they are previously apprehensive of it, some of them that are not willing to be so rigidly restrain'd, have it made a Condition in their Marriage Contract to have a Gallant, who in that Case has as free Accets to her, as the Husband himself has; but this Practice is so contrary to their Constitution, that although they are allow'd this way of living by Consent, yet the Children of such Women are reckon'd illegitimate, and for ever excluded from any Place of Trust in the Government.

Be Slaves for Wives.

POOR People that have not wherewithal to purchase a Woman, will give themselves to be Slaves for a certain time, as they can agree, on Condition to have a Female Slave for a Wife; and when these pooreft Sort get more Children than they can maintain or provide Portions for, and not willing to turn them away to starve, as before mention'd, they geld them, if they are Boys, that they may be capable of Preferment in the Seraglio; and no other but those Eunuchs are allow'd to attend in the innermost Courts of the Palace, or to come near the Womens Apartments, nor is any Man, not even the Husband's Father, ever allow'd to come into the Wife's Apartment; and in such a sacred Manner do they keep up this Custom, that if a married Man has committed any Offence, for which his Father would punish him, (for it is the Father's Province to punish for small Crimes after Marriage as well as before,) yet if he can but escape to his Wife's Apartment, his Father dare not approach him to fetch him out or punish him there.

Eunuchs.

Employment

THE Women commonly employ themselves in Painting, Needlework, and other light Employments, fit for their Sex, but never meddle with Trade, buying and selling, and divert themselves with the Company of Dogs, Birds, &c. as we in *England*; and if they are not married before their Father's Death, their Brother, if they have any, are obliged to maintain them.

Diversion.

Names.

EVERY Man has three Names; first a Sir-name common to the Family, as we have in *England*; secondly, a proper Name, by which they are distinguish'd, as we are by our Christian Names; thirdly, a Name that he receives when he enters upon Business, by which his Calling is expreft, and are all three the same as we generally use to distinguish a Man by, his Christian Name, Sir-name and Trade.

THE Daughters of a Family always retain their Father's Sir-name, but have no proper Names given them, but are known by their Order of Birth; as, First, Second, Third, &c. prefix'd to their Common or Sir-name, and do not change their Names, and assume their Husband's Name at their Marriage, but retain that of their Father and Family.

CHAP. X.

Of their Funeral Rites, Tombs, Manner of Mourning, &c.

Burials.

IT is look'd upon as a Badge of Grandeur, to have their Tombs and Coffins provided in their Life-time, and such have also particular Burying-Places for themselves, to which they must be brought when they die, tho' it be at never so great a Distance: But there is a common Burying-Place without the City, where People of the ordinary Rank are buried promiscuously; but they never suffer any Person to be buried within the Walls of a Town or City, nor is any Person that dies in the Country, ever to be suffer'd to be brought into or thro' a Town or City to the Burying-Place, tho' it be on the quite contrary side of the Town.

Coffins.

THEY make their Coffins of the most durable Wood they can procure, and sometimes six or eight Inches thick, but much in the Shape of ours, and have them gilded and varnish'd in a more or less chargeable manner, according to the Dignity of the the Deceas'd or Survivors, who if they be rich will have the Ornaments of the Coffin to cost several hundred Crowns.

Funerals.

WHEN any Person of Note dies, his Son, if he has any, or if not, some of the nearest Relations, acquaint his Friends with it, and in the mean time, they wath and perfume the Corpse, and dress it in the best Cloaths he had, and place it in a Chair, where the Relations in their Order, the Wives first, the Children next, and then the Attendants prostrate themselves before the Corpse and bewail their Loss. On the third Day they put the Corpse in the Coffin,

and cover it with Silk, and place it in a large Room hung with white Linnen; in the middle of the Room is an Altar, with the Image or Picture of the Deceas'd upon it, before which the diſtant Relations again proſtrate themſelves, burning Wax Lights and Incenſe, during the Ceremony, while the Sons ſtand on one Side of the Coffin, cloath'd in coarſe white Linnen, tied about with a Cord, and on the other Side, behind a Curtain, ſits the Mother and Daughters all in ſorowful Poſtures, the Prieſts ſinging mournful Songs; there are Tables ſet, and Diſhes ſerv'd up, but no body eats till Night, and then the Prieſts ſhare it among themſelves: The Name and Quality of the Deceas'd, and an Account of his Virtues, are writ in a large Scroll of Paper and hung over the Gate. They keep them unburied a long Time. The Sons ſleep upon Matts about the Coffin for a hundred Days, during which Time they eat no Fleſh, nor drink ſtrong Liquor; they are not to come at any Entertainment, nor be concern'd in any Buſineſs for three Years, tho' in the higheſt Poſt under the Government; but this is not to be underſtood of the poorer Sort, who have no Eſtates, nor any thing but their Induſtry to depend upon.

Proceſſion at the Burial.

When the Day appointed for the Burial is come, the Relations and Friends of the Deceas'd accompany the Corpſe to the Grave, againſt which Time they prepare Images of Men, Women, and ſeveral Sorts of Beaſts, made of painted Paper, to be burnt at the Grave: They alſo carry Torches and Incenſe-Pots, to offer Incenſe to the Deceas'd; they alſo carry Pageants before the Corpſe, as Caſtles, Triumphal Chariots, *&c.* with Tables of Meats and Perfumes, the Prieſts following with Drums, Wind-Muſick, and little jingling Bells; then follows the Corpſe upon a Bier born by twenty or thirty Men under an arch'd Canopy, follow'd by the Sons on Foot, leaning on Crutches in Token of their Grief and Mortification; next come the Women in cloſe Chairs cover'd with white Silk or Linnen, and act quite contrary to an Engliſh Proverb, that *a Maid ſhould be ſeen and not heard*; for they, tho' they cannot be ſeen, make a prodigious Howling upon that Occaſion, and ſo much does their Mourning conſiſt in this howling Noiſe, that they ſometimes hire Women to howl, to make the Noiſe the greater, and the Mourning more remarkable.

Tombs

The Great Perſons chuſe to have their Sepulchres or Places of Interment in remote ſolitary Places; their Tombs are large Vaults, ſo ſtrongly arch'd that the Moiſture cannot penetrate through them, in which the Deceas'd being interr'd, they erect an Altar and place Lights upon it, their Friends and Relations coming ſometimes to proſtrate themſelves before the Altar, pouring out Wine Offerings, Meats, and burning Incenſe, bringing ſuch Pictures of Men and Animals as they carried at the Burial, thinking that theſe will be converted into the Things they repreſent, and will be uſeful to the Deceas'd in the other World.

Epitaphs.

The Virtues, great Actions, or whatever was valuable in the Deceas'd, are engrav'd in Stone or Marble, and placed in the Vault before the Altar, and from that Time that Tomb and Altar are reckon'd ſo ſacred, that it is deem'd a Crime for the Sons or Succeſſors of the Deceas'd to travel far abroad from the Shrines of their Anceſtors; which Piece of Superſtition may probably be one great Reaſon why ſo few of the *Chineſe* viſit any other Part of the World but their own; and ſo great a Value do they put upon the Memory of their Progenitors, that the great Ones erect Temples, and offer yearly Sacrifices to them. The Emperor ſacrifices to ſeven of his Anceſtors; the Tributary Kings to five, and the Mandarins to three; and the Time of Mourning for a Father or a Husband, is three Years, but a Man mourns for his Wife or Brother but one Year; and theſe Times of Mourning are ſo ſtrictly kept up to, that they are not allow'd to be diſpens'd with hardly upon any Occaſion whatſoever; only the Soldiers and Military Mandarins are not ſo ſtrictly obliged to it, and altho' their Law does not poſitively forbid it, yet it is reckon'd ſcandalous for a Woman to marry another Husband after the Firſt, even after her three Years Mourning is expired.

Time of Mourning

Honours conferr'd on the Dead

When a great Man dies that has done ſome noble Action, or been particularly uſeful, the Emperor either gives him ſome great Title, or confers ſome particular Honour upon his Memory; which he ſometimes does by writing a large Encomium in his Praiſe, and ſends ſome great Perſons with the Writing from his own Hand, to accompany the Corpſe to the Grave, with an Order to read it to the publick Congregation with great Ceremony and Solemnity, and cauſeth it afterwards to be hung up in the Vault by the Corpſe; ſometimes the Lords of the Court or Prime Miniſters do the ſame after the Emperor's Example, while others ſend rich Preſents towards the Charge of the Funeral; ſometimes the Emperor's Encomium is engrav'd in Marble and plac'd near the Corpſe, and if it is a Perſon of extraordinary Merit, the Emperor often beſtows greater Titles upon them at their Death, than ever they bore when they were alive.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Chief Harbours in China *not treated of before, and of the adjacent Iſlands ſubject to it; their Trade, Cuſtoms and Product, Imports and Exports: And concluding the whole Account of* China, *with a ſhort Deſcription of Northern* Tartary.

Canton.

CANTON is a noted Sea-Port upon the Coaſt of *China*, about ninety Leagues to the Weſtward of *Amoy*. It is the much better Port both for Conveniency and Expedition of Loading; but there is great Caution to be uſed in dealing there, for if the Merchants do not ſettle Preliminaries with the Officers of the Cuſtoms, they are ſure to be impoſed upon when they get them in their Power; but to prevent that, thoſe that know them come to an Anchor at *Macao*, an Iſland in the Entrance of the Harbour, belonging to the *Portugueze*, till the Ship be meaſured, and all the Cuſtoms and Duties be ſo well adjuſted, that there is no Room for Diſpute or Impoſition in theſe Affairs: In their Dealing, they have ſo many Ways to cheat and do wrong, by falſe Beams, falſe Weights, falſe Package, and the like, that except a Man ſee his Goods pack'd himſelf, and weigh them with his his own Scales and Weights, it is next to impoſſible to eſcape being greatly wrong'd.

Falſe Beams *&c.*

Canton deſcribe Windo

The Streets of *Canton* are narrow and well pav'd, the Houſes low, the Windows in Summer are wove Cane or Rattan, for Air, but in Winter they have inſtead of Glaſs Oyſter Shells ſcraped thin, as at *Pekin*; and fix'd in Frames in their Windows, but it affords but a dull Light: Their Silk-ſhops are neat, and make

make a handſome Show, ſtanding in the beſt Parts of the Town, and moſtly together; as their other Trades alſo do: Their Fires are of Charcoal, made in Pots or Pans, and ſet in the Middle of the Room: Their Walls are not white-waſh'd, but hung round with white Paper.

Markets. ALMOST every Street is a Market-place for Fleſh, Fiſh, Fowls, Garden-ſtuff, and the like, which is ſold Cheap; but they are not curious in Dreſſing their Fleſh-meat; they will as ſoon eat a Hog that dies in a Ditch, as one that is kill'd and dreſt by a Butcher. Their Frogs, which they account great Dainties, are black and loathſome, like our Toads, but taſte very well; they eat Rats, and a ſort of Broth made of Snakes, which has been in uſe a long Time amongſt them.

Tartars. THE *Chineſe* and *Tartars* are now ſo incorporated together by Intermarriages, that they are not to be diſtinguiſh'd from one another, either by Stature, Features, or Habit: The Common People are ſuch Gluttons, that they eat ſtatedly four Times a Day, and will at any Time leave their Work to go to Victuals; they feed much upon Rice; they ſmoak much Tobacco, but their Pipes are ſo little, and the Tobacco ſo dry, that a Pipe is ſoon ſmoak'd out.

Tobacco

Blind Beggars. THERE are abundance of blind Beggars in the Streets, which ſome impute to their eating ſo much Rice; but others rather think that it is the hot Winds that blow at ſome Seaſons, that is the Occaſion of it. Almoſt every Thing is ſold by Weight, both Meat and Liquids; in which they are ſuch exquiſite Cheats, that before they bring their Poultry to Market; they cram them with ſmall Stones and Gravel, to increaſe their Weight. They make ſo little Difference between a Hog that is kill'd by a Butcher, and one that dies of itſelf, that they will give a live Hog for one that died in a Ditch, if the dead one be the heavieſt. Hiſtories tell us of a young Gentleman who bought ſome live Hogs here for his Ship's Uſe, but they all died, and they threw them over-board, but obſerved the Perſons that he bought them of to come and take them up in their Boats, and carry them aſhore; from whence he concluded, that they had given them ſomething to kill them, and expected the Event, which afterwards happen'd, *viz.* the Death of the Hogs, and watch'd for throwing them overboard that they might get them again for their own Uſe.

Corea deſcribed. WE have already given ſome Account of the Situation of *Corea*, in the general Deſcription of *China*, Chap. I. Page 8. and it being in the ſame Climate with *China*, and a Part of it, or Tributary to it, differs little from it as to Manners and Cuſtoms. It is a fruitful Country, and produces Plenty of Wheat, Rice and other Grain: There are Gold and Silver Mines, and ſome Pearls are found in the Sea of *Corea*. They trade only with their Neighbouring Countries of *China*, on the Weſt, and *Japan* on the Eaſt of them, neither of which are far diſtant from them; there is a Diſpute amongſt Geographers, whether *Corea* be an Iſland, or upon the Main Continent of *China*; but if we conſider the Situation and Shape of it, according to the laſt and beſt Geography, that Diſpute is obviated and undeniable Probability ariſes, of its being a Part of the Continent.

Formoſa FORMOSA is a conſiderable Iſland belonging to *China*; the Middle of it lies under the Tropick of *Cancer*; it is about twenty Leagues South-Eaſt from *Amoy*, in the Province of *Fokien*, and is reckon'd four or five hundred Miles in Circumference. The *Chineſe* neglecting this Iſland till the *Tartars* conquer'd them, the *Spaniards* came from *Manilla*, an Iſland about forty or fifty Leagues to the Southward of *Formoſa*, and ſettled there; and after them the *Dutch*, who held their Poſſeſſion a long Time, notwithſtanding the Attacks of the *Chineſe*, but were at laſt expell'd; and whatſoever State the *Dutch* had form'd while they had the Iſland in Poſſeſſion, it is now reduced to an entire Subjection to the *Chineſe*, and ſubject to their Laws and Cuſtoms.

Earthquakes. THIS Iſland is ſubject to Earthquakes, which ſome impute to the Brimſtone-Mines, or Quarries, which taking fire, are reduced to a Subſtance leſs capable of ſupporting the Surface of the Earth that lies upon it. The Women Plow and Sow, and Manure the Ground, and the Men chiefly exerciſe themExerciſe ſelves in Hunting. Hence it may almoſt be ſaid, that the Women procure Bread, and the Men Fleſh: Their Houſes are low, and built with Cane. As to their Religion, they are Pagans, as the *Chi-*Religion. *neſe* are, only they have Female Prieſts, who ſacrifice Beaſts and Fruits, and are often conſulted as Oracles. The *Dutch* tell us, that the Chriſtian Religion began to prevail under their Government, but late Travellers ſay, there are few or no Chriſtians upon the Iſland.

Aynan. THE Iſland of *Aynan*, by ſome called *Hainan*, lies off of the Southermoſt Point of *China*, and about ten or fifteen Leagues from it. The Middle of this Iſland lies in Latitude 19 North; it is about a hundred Leagues, or three hundred Miles in Circumference; it is a plentiful Country, and has Gold and Silver Mines. Here is alſo a Pearl-Fiſhery, but the chief Pearl-Fiſhing being upon the *Indian* Coaſt, we ſhall enlarge upon it when we come to give a Deſcription of that Part of the World.

Imports from *China*. BESIDES Tea, mention'd Chap. V. p. 32. which is now imported from *China* in great Quantities, our Merchants bring from thence raw and wrought Silks, Vermillion, Quick-Silver, *China* Roots, Camphire, Sugar-Candy, Fans, Pictures, lacquer'd Ware, *China* Ware, called *Porcelane*, Soy, Borax, Lapis Lazuli, Galingal; and of Minerals they bring *Tutanaque*, which is a ſort of coarſe Tin; alſo Copper in Bars, like Sticks of Sealing-Wax, and ſeveral other ſorts of Merchandize are to be had there as cheap as in the Country from whence they came, and where they are firſt produced.

Gold. THEIR Merchants, and even the Magiſtrates themſelves, will privately ſell Gold to our *Engliſh* Merchants, though they are forbid by the Emperor to export it. Their current Silver is of a Fine-Silver. neſs agreeable to their Standard, as our Silver Sterling is with us; and if it is proved of that Fineneſs, it paſſeth by Weight, ſo that let the Pieces be great or little, ſo much Weight of Silver as is agreed upon for any Quantity of other Goods, anſwers the Payment, as we do with our Money by Tale. And when Payments are to be made in wrought Silver, as Tankards, Spoons, Porringers, or the like, they make an Aſſay to know whether it be Touch, or, as we call it, Standard or Sterling; and if it is, it paſſes current by Weight, without any Diſpute; but if it be baſer than Touch, there muſt be the greater Quantity of it to anſwer the ſame Value, as they and you can agree, according to the different Fineneſs or Baſeneſs of the Metal.

Exports. GOODS uſually exported from *Europe* to *China*, are Perpetuano's, Bullion-Cloth, Cloth-Raſh, and Camblets of ſeveral Colours, as blue, black, ſcarlet, violet, and faſt Colour; but they are ſo little valued, and the Duty ſo high, that except you can run them, or get them aſhore privately, they turn to little Account. Lead affords the moſt Profit of any Commodity that can be ſent from *Europe*, there being ſcarce any other ſort of Goods that *Europe* affords that is worth employing the Ship in as a Cargo; but for private Ventures they carry light Toys, as Amber-Beads, Coral, Flint-Glaſs in Cups or Bottles, Horſe-Piſtols, Sword-Blades of about fourteen Shillings a Dozen, Spectacles ſet in Horn, of ſix or eight Shillings a Dozen, good handſome Clocks and Watches, but not of a very great Price; or any of thoſe ſmall portable Toys that can be convey'd

convey'd ashore without paying the Duty, in which if you succeed, it is much better to carry them than Money, or heavy Goods; but if you pay the Duty for them, the Profit you make of them beside will not countervail the Trouble and Charge that will attend the landing them.

Northern *Tartary* described.

NORTHERN *Tartary* was anciently divided into several petty Kingdoms or Dominions, and most of their Princes yet retain the Title of King; but they are all but Substitutes to the great Emperor of *China*.

Cattle and Hunting.

THE Subsistance of these Western *Tartars* is chiefly their Cattle, and what they get by Hunting; and as their Dealing and Dependance is so much in Cattle, they are forced to live in Tents for the Conveniency of removing to another Place when their Pasture fails where they are; but the Eastern *Tartars* live in Towns, and they are neither so numerous nor so regular as in *China*, and of those many of them are now deserted for warmer Seats, and a more fruitful Soil, or by the best Families drawing up to *Pekin* where the Court is kept, in Hopes of Business or Preferment. The *Tartars* indeed set a Prince of their own over the United Empires of *China* and *Tartary*, but he keeps his Court in *China*, and his own Empire of *Tartary* is now become tributary to the Empire that he conquer'd. They are govern'd by a Military Force, and have Garrisons in all their strong Towns; but the Laws and Customs of the *Chinese* prevail and gain ground daily, though as for those who never go out of their own Country, and converse not with the *Chinese*, they in a great Measure retain their own Customs and Exercises, and are not so effeminate as those that live more Southerly; nor do they improve themselves so much in Trade, but apply chiefly to Hunting and Horsemanship, which they think much more Manly, and think it a much greater Honour to be found at the Head of an Army, than to be indulged in Chairs and Horse-Litters; and as it has been an Observation, that People of the most heroick Spirits are generally the least troubled with Jealousy, and use their Women with most Tenderness, so those *Tartars* allow their Women all innocent Liberty, and both Sexes converse together with all modest Freedom.

Not Effeminate.

Hunting.

THEY neglect the cultivating of their Land for the sake of their Hunting, thinking that the best Provision which they get by that Exercise; so that altho' they have some Wheat and other Grain, yet Flesh is much more Plenty with them and depended upon than Bread. The Country affords Abundance of good Horses, which they breed not only for Service, but for Food; Horses Flesh and Mares Milk being esteem'd delicious Food, and besides, they send many Thousands of these fine Horses to the Emperor every Year.

Ginseng.

THE famous Plant *Ginseng*, spoke of before, grows chiefly in this Country; there are ten Thousand Men employ'd yearly to gather it for the Emperor, and when he is supply'd, they are allow'd to gather for their own Use, or to sell, as they think convenient. They have Plenty of rich Furs in this Country.

Laws.

THEY do no not much observe any regular Laws but are passively obedient to the Will of their Prince, which is an absolute Law to them. They do not bury their dead as the *Chinese* do, but burn them, and it was a Custom for the Wife also to burn herself with her Husband's Body; but that Practice has been abolish'd some Time.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE *KINGDOM of* JAPAN.

CHAP. I.

Gives an Account of the Situation and Extent of this Kingdom; alſo of the Cities, Palaces, Manner of Building, and kind of Furniture.

THE Kingdom of *Japan* conſiſts of ſeveral Iſlands; the weſtermoſt part of which lies about fifty Leagues Eaſt from the Eaſt Coaſt of *Corea*; they extend from about 30 to 40 Degrees of North Latitude. The largeſt of theſe Iſlands, which alſo gives Name to the Kingdom, was called *Niphon*; but as it is now commonly known by the Name of *Japan*, we ſhall not ſpeak of it under any other Name.

Niphon now Japan.

THE next Iſland to *Japan*, both in Situation and Magnitude, is *Bongo*; it lies to the Southward of the Weſt End of *Japan*; it contains about one hundred and ſixty Leagues in Circumference: The Capital of this Iſland is called *Bongo*, after the Name of the Iſland; on the Weſt Coaſt of this Iſland is the City of *Nangaſaque*, to the Weſtward of which the *Dutch* have a Factory, upon a ſmall Iſland called *Kiſima*; which has a Communication with *Nangaſaque* by a Bridge, but the *Dutch* are ſeldom allow'd the uſe of it.

Bongo.

Tonſa.

THE next leſſer Iſland is *Tonſa* or *Tokoeſy*; it lies near *Bongo* on the Eaſt, and *Japan* on the South; it is about a hundred and twenty Leagues in Circumference; its Capital City is *Nava*, it lies towards the Eaſt End of the Iſland.

THERE are ſeveral other inconſiderable Iſlands thereabouts, ſubject to the King of *Japan*; as *Barnevel's Iſland*, *Prince's Iſland* and others; but being of ſmall Importance, they are not much taken notice of by Geographers.

Climate.

THESE Iſlands lying in about the ſame Climate with the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and rather in a more Southerly Latitude that *Italy*, it might be expected the Air ſhould be warm, or rather hot, as in thoſe Countries, and yet in the Northern Parts of *Japan* they have very cold Winters, and great Quantities of Snow; but it is accounted a very healthful Air, they having never either Plague, Gout, or Stone, but Small Pox and Fluxes are very common among them; and as the Air is healthful, ſo the Soil is fruitful, producing Plenty of Rice, Millet, Wheat, and excellent Barley, of which they have ſuch Quantities, that they tranſport it to other Places, as they alſo do their Rice.

Product

THEY have moſt Sorts of Trees, Fruits, Herbs and Beaſts, that we have in *Europe*; and of the laſt they have ſome unknown to us: They have Plenty of Fowls, wild and tame; they have ſpacious Foreſts, in which grow lofty Cedars, and the Bowels of the Earth are ſtored with Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron and Lead, but not quite ſo good as in the *Indies*, only the Silver, which is excellent good, and very plenty: They have Pearls, and though they are of a red Colour, they are ſaid to be as valuable as the white ones.

Whence Peopled.

SOME People imagine theſe Iſlands were firſt Peopled from *China*; but if we conſider their Situation with reſpect to Eaſtern *Tartary*, the ſmall Diſtance they are from it, and their Conformity to ſeveral Cuſtoms of the *Tartars*, which the *Chineſe* would never ſubmit to, till conquer'd by them, and then only by Compulſion, as burning their dead, ſhaving their Heads, &c. Theſe Things conſider'd, it is much more probable they proceeded originally from Eaſtern *Tartary*.

SOME indeed aſſign as a Reaſon for their uſing the Cuſtoms of the *Tartars*, that the *Japaneſe* were baniſh'd *China* for their Rebellion, about ſix or ſeven hundred Years ago, and that out of Revenge againſt the *Chineſe*, they with Abhorrence abandon'd all their Cuſtoms; but it is improbable that People, originally *Chineſe*, ſhould voluntarily aſſume a Cuſtom of cutting off their Hair, in which the *Chineſe* took ſo much Pride, or that they who had been uſed to ſit in Chairs, ſhould at once condemn themſelves to ſit croſs-legged upon the Ground, for no other reaſon but becauſe the *Chineſe* baniſh'd them: One would think it was Mortification enough to be baniſh'd from Home, and not voluntarily to inflict Penance upon themſelves, which was both contrary to their Inclination, and inconſiſtent with their Eaſe.

Cities.

THERE are three conſiderable Cities in the Iſland of *Japan*; the firſt and Eaſtermoſt is called *Jedo* or *Yedo*; it ſtands at the Bottom of a deep Bay, or Arm of the Sea, and is the Imperial Seat. *Jedo or Yedo*

The Palace ſtands in the Middle of the City, and is a large Square of five Miles in Compaſs; it is ſurrounded by three Walls, between which are Courts, Gardens, and Canals; the Royal Apartments and Seraglio being within the innermoſt Wall, and, by reaſon of its extraordinary Ornaments, as Carving, Gilding, and the like, appears exceeding magnificent.

THE Palaces of the Princes of the Blood and Privy-Counſellors are between the innermoſt and ſecond Walls, and between the two outermoſt Walls are the Palaces of petty Kings, who are obliged to reſide at the Court half the Year. Some Travellers report that theſe Palaces are cover'd with Gold, becauſe they appear at a Diſtance with ſuch a ſhining yellow Luſtre; but it is more probable they are cover'd with ſuch yellow glaz'd Tiles as the Emperor of *China*'s Palace is cover'd with, they looking like Plates of Gold when the Light of the Sun is reflected upon them.

WITHOUT the Palace ſtand the Houſes of the inferior Nobility, who every one endeavour to excel

each other in Sumptuousness and Magnificence of Building, as supposing the Splendor of their Palaces recommend them more to their Prince's Favour, which is another Thing in which they directly differ from the *Chinese*, who (as has been observed before) look upon a House built with more than common Grandeur to be an Insult to their Prince.

Meaco. THE next City for Magnitude is *Meaco*: This City stands upon a River or Arm of the Sea, near about or rather to the Westward of the Middle of the Island; it was formerly the Imperial Seat, when the Family of the *Dairi* was upon the Throne; and it is now the Seat of the *Triumviri*, or three principal Magistrates; the first of which is the *Dairo*, a sort of a Prince who inspects into Civil Affairs; the second is the *Cubo*, or King of *Tenza*, who has the Care of the Militia, and manages the Affairs of Peace or War. The third is the *Zazo* or *Xaco*, who is Chief in Sacred or Religious Matters. It is said this City once contain'd a hundred and eighty thousand Houses, but by reason of the Wars, is reduced to about a hundred thousand, and is about twenty or twenty one Miles in Circumference.

THE Streets of this City are large and well composed, but it is not wall'd, (being a thing little used in this Island;) but the Streets are chain'd up in the Night, and two Watchmen at each End of every Street, to prevent Fires or whatever irregular Transactions may happen in the Night.

Saccai. THERE is another City called *Saccai*, situate on the South Side of the Island, at the Entrance of the River that goes up to *Macao*; it is a large and populous City, it is defended by the Sea on one Side, and by a Wall and a Ditch on the other.

Building. THE Buildings in *Japan* are mostly of Wood for the Middling Trading People, and they are generally but one Room upon the first Floor at the first building of the House, which is afterwards divided into more or less Rooms, larger or smaller, as they have Occasion, by folding Partitions like our Screens, and moveable, that as they would enlarge any of their Rooms they need remove a Partition or two, and so let two or three Rooms into one, or if their Business or Company require it, they can remove all the Partitions, and then all the whole House is but one large Room.

THE poorest sort, or some of the inferior Tradesmen, live in Thatch'd Houses, built with Mudd Walls; but these Roofs being liable to take fire, they have commonly an Apartment built with Stone, to secure their most valuable Goods from that Danger. *Poorest*

BUT the Houses of the Nobility are made much more sumptuous, especially within, they being wainscotted with Cedar, their Floors well paved, and cover'd with fine Matts; their Ceilings are painted or gilded, and their Doors beautifully varnish'd, not only for Ornament, but to enable them to resist the Weather: They have no Glass in their Windows, as we in *Europe*; nor wove Cane, or scrap'd Oyster-shells, as in *China*; their Windows are quite open to the Weather, only defended by Shutters at Nights or other Times, when they have a Mind to secure them. *Nobility.*

THE Ground supplies the Use of Tables, Beds and Chairs to them, and the Matts spread upon it answer the End of Bedding and Table-linnen; for they have Matts spread upon the Ground, upon which they set the Victuals when they go to eat, and sit down round it upon the same Matts to eat it, or when they rest or converse together, and lie down upon the same when they go to sleep; and for other Furniture, the Common People have their Rooms hung round with Pictures, or painted Paper. Their Goods are Cabinets, Screens, *China* Ware, fine Swords, and the like, which they hang up or expose in their Rooms, as Houshold-Goods and Ornaments. *Furniture.*

THEY keep strict Watch every Night; the Gates of every Ward or Division is close shut up, and Lanthorns hung out, and it is said they are so strict in shutting up every Ward, that in case of Fire they are not suffer'd to come at one another. *Watch*

CHAP. II.

Gives an Account of the Genius and Temper of the Japanese, *their Habit, Diet, Diversion, Festivals, Musick, Salutation, Trade, Customs, Manufactures, Husbandry*, &c.

Genius and Temper. THE *Japanese* are of a good Stature, strong and active; their Complexion inclining to an Olive Colour: they are well disposed, judicious, apt to learn, of quick Apprehension, good Understanding, and sound Memories, but very subtle in their Dealings. Some indeed give them the Character of Cruel, Ambitious, Uncharitable, and the like; but was every Person to give a Description of every Country they have travell'd in, by the Usage they have met with in it, their Accounts would be different according to the different Tempers and Interests of the People they converse with; and it is generally observed, that in whatever Country, whether more or less remote, People travel, those that converse with People of the best Figure and Character there, commonly bring the best Account of the Manners of the People of that Country home; and as we see even amongst our selves that the Carriage of the rude Vulgar seldom comes up to that of the more polite Part of our Inhabitants, so we think those that travel abroad ought not to be so partial as to make the unpolish'd Behaviours of the Vulgar to be a general Specimen of the Manners and Customs of a whole Country; which consider'd, I question not but the different Account of the Manners of the *Japanese*, either brought home by different Travellers, or collected by the same Author, might be easily reconciled.

As to their Dress, they wear several Vests one upon another, as the *Chinese* do, with a loose Gown over all; they have Drawers like our Sailors Trowsers, which come down very low upon their Legs, and Slippers without Heels; they go bare-headed, though their Heads are shav'd, but use Fans and Umbrella's to defend them from the Injuries of either Heat or Rain; they wear a short Dagger in their Girdle, and a heavy broad Sword, which they carry on the Right Side, contrary to the Custom of the *English*. *Habit*

THEY do not eat much of the Flesh of any tame Beast, as Beef or Mutton, but love best what they take in Hunting; but some of them are so tender, that they will not eat any thing that had Life, and was killed for their use, nor even what is extracted or drawn from any living Creature, as Milk, Butter, Cheese, *&c.* their most common Food being Rice, Pulse, Herbs, or the like, natural Products of the Earth. *Eating*

THEIR common Drink is a Liquor made of Wheat, like the *Chinese Hocksheu*, or another sort made of *Drink*

Rice,

Rice, like their *Samſhue*; but Tea is very frequently uſed amongſt them: They uſe no Knives, Forks, or Spoons, but eat with two little round Sticks, like the *Chineſe*: Their Diverſions are very remarkable; they delight in Plays, which we in *England* are apt to ſay repreſents the Virtues, and expoſeth the Vices of the Age; but their Plays are generally ſome Part of the Hiſtory of their own Country, and acted by their Miniſters of State, and other great Men. They have alſo Shooting Matches, and other Manly Exerciſes, which ſometimes the King and Quality are pleas'd to encourage with their Preſence; and at the end of every Play or Maſquerade there is always a Noble Entertainment provided at the Charge of the Company.

Diverſions

They hold a great Feſtival every Time that they viſit the Tombs of their Anceſtors, in the Order of which they ſeem to pay a great Deference to the Number Seven, their Viſits and Offerings of Incenſe, and other Devotions, being paid to the Shrines of their deceaſed Parents every ſeventh Day for ſome Time, and more particularly every ſeventh Month, but chiefly every ſeventh Year. At theſe grand Solemnities every Houſe is illuminated, and they march at Midnight in a ſolemn Proceſſion out of the Town to the Graves of their dead Friends, where they eat, drink, and make merry for ſeveral Nights ſucceſſively; and when the Feaſt is over, they march round the Town as if in Triumph, beating upon Braſs Pans, and diſplaying their Flags, Streamers, and Banners before the Temples of their Idols, and at the Doors of great Men.

Feaſts

When a great Man makes an Entertainment, he commonly at the End of the Feaſt calls his Servants together, to ask them which of them will ſacrifice their Lives before the Gueſts for his ſake; upon which they contend who ſhall firſt rip up their own Bowels, and this is common not only at common Feaſts, but at any ſolemn Undertaking, as the laying the Foundation of a Palace or other magnificent Building, or when the Maſter dies to whom the Servant, while the Maſter was living, paid a great Veneration.

Servants ſacrifice themſelves

They keep their main Roads in good Repair, and inform the Travellers of the Diſtances of Places by Trees ſet up in the Road at every three Miles; but there are no Inns or Publick-Houſes upon the Road, but inſtead of Diverſion or Refreſhment, you find now and then upon the Road the Carcaſs of ſome of their Malefactors crucified with their Heads downwards, as a Terror to thoſe that ſee them, and to deter others from the like Offence.

Road

The Trade of *Japan* is not very extenſive; they deal with their Neighbours on both Sides *China* on the Weſt, and *Yedſo*, by ſome called *Jeſſo*, whoſe Deſcription follows in Chap. VI. on the North, till the *Dutch*, by a Piece of religious, or rather irreligious Policy, introduced themſelves into a Correſpondence with them, which was occaſion'd thus:

Trade

The *Portugueſe* Chriſtians, about the Year 1622, being charg'd with forming a Conſpiracy againſt the *Japaneſe* Conſtitution and Government, they were all deſtroy'd, and an Order iſſued out that the Subjects ſhould not have any Commerce or Dealing with any Chriſtian. The *Dutch* to engroſs the Trade with *Japan* to themſelves, denied Chriſtianity; and as a convincing Token to the *Japaneſe* of their Infidelity, they by way of Ceremony, and to convince the *Jews* of their Infidelity, trampled upon the Croſs of our Saviour, which gave the *Japaneſe* ſuch a Degree of Satisfaction, that they were permitted to have a Factory there, which continues to this Day; but the *Japaneſe* perceiving this Hypocriſy or Infidelity in the *Dutch*, (for one of them it muſt be, when a profeſt Chriſtian denies his Religion for the ſake of a Trade,) are yet ſo jealous of them, that when any *Dutch* Ship arrives, they ſend an Officer immediately aboard to take an Account of the Number of their Men; and leſt they ſhould ſail without their Knowledge, they carry aſhore their Sails, Ammunition, Guns, and Rudder, till they are ready to ſail; nor do they allow the *Dutch* Factory any Communication with the City of *Nangaſak*, but when they pleaſe, although they are only ſeparated by a River and a Wall.

Dutch Policy

Japaneſe Jealouſy of the *Dutch*

This Iſland of *Kiſma* or *Diſnia*, where the *Dutch* Factory is, is not above two Miles in Circumference, and only ſeparated from *Nangaſak* in *Japan* as above; and yet ſo great is the Jealouſy of the *Japaneſe*, that they will not ſuffer any *Dutchmen* to come from thence into the City, nor are the *Dutch* allow'd ſo much as to have a lighted Candle in their Houſes in the Night; and if the Centinel perceive any Noiſe, he alarms the Governor by blowing a Horn, and he ſends a Party to enquire ſtrictly into the Reaſon of it, which when they have found the Authors, are threatned or puniſh'd as the Governor thinks the Crime deſerves; and under this ſtrict Diſcipline the *Dutch* continue eight or nine Months in the Year in their *Dutch* Factory in the Kingdom of *Japan*.

Iſland of *Kiſma* or *Diſnia*.

And leſt the *Dutch* Ships ſhould arrive unknown to them, the Governor of *Nangaſak* placeth Centinels upon the Hills to wait the Approach of any Ship; and when any appears, they ſend an Officer off to her, and as ſoon as the Ship is anchor'd, an Expreſs is diſpatch'd to the Court, and no Goods muſt be deliver'd till the Anſwer comes; but the Officers aboard do in the mean time take an Account of the Ship's Cargo, with the Name, Age, Stature, and Office of every Man aboard, all which is regiſter'd in the *Japaneſe* Language; and when the Expreſs returns, they permit the Ship's Company to come aſhore, and they are all muſter'd before a *Japaneſe* Commiſſary, and every Perſon is called and obliged to give an Account of his Age, Quality, and Office, to find if it agrees with the Liſt the *Dutch* gave in; after which, having taken their Sails, *&c.* aſhore, as mention'd before, the *Japaneſe* Officer ſeals down the Hatches; nor can they be open'd any more without an Officer ſent directly from the Governor, to ſee what is taken out, and ſeal the Hatches again; nor are they allow'd to light a Candle aboard of the Ship any more than aſhore, nor any Ship's Company allow'd to converſe with one another.

Every *Dutch* Ship is obliged upon his Arrival to ſend a Preſent to the King at his Royal Seat at *Yeddo*; the Meſſenger who is employ'd upon this Occaſion approaching the King upon his Knees, with his Hands join'd together; and when the King has received the Preſent, the *Dutch* Officer or Meſſenger is conducted back to *Nangaſak*, under a ſtrong Guard, in the ſame Manner as he came thither.

Preſent made to the King.

While the *Dutch* Ships are there, the *Japaneſe* are not allow'd to go aboard of them, or to trade with the Sailors, only thoſe who carry Proviſions aboard, and they are not allow'd to take Ready Money for them till a Permiſſion for Trade comes from Court, and then they bring in their Accounts, and are paid, and ſix Perſons are allow'd from every Veſſel to come aſhore and trade for themſelves for four Days, either in the Iſland *Diſnia* or in the City, and when that four Days are expired, they go aboard, and ſix more are allow'd to come for four Days more, *&c.*

The *Dutch* make a particular Invoice of the Goods they buy here, with their Price, which being tranſlated into the *Japaneſe* Language, is affix'd to that Gate of *Nangaſak* that leads to the *Dutch* Factory, and then the *Dutch* have free Liberty to Trade with the Citizens of *Nangaſak* for ſix Weeks, which being expired, the Ships muſt prepare to return; the Gate of *Nangaſak* is ſhut, all Communication ſtopp'd, and the *Dutch* confined to their little Iſland again, till the next Seaſon for Trade approach: But although they are deny'd all Converſation with the *Japaneſe* after

after the Gate is ſhut, yet they are allow'd, while the Trade is open, to hire as many *Japaneſe* Girls as they pleaſe of the Lords and great Men, and take them to their own Iſland for their own Uſe or Diverſion, during the Abſence of their Fleet; nor do thoſe great Men make any Scruple of this way of Merchandizing with the *Dutch*.

Dutch hire Girls.

Dutch Exports to *Japan*.

THE *Dutch* ſend great Quantities of Raw Silk to *Japan*, as alſo wrought Silk, Cloth, Raw Hides, Deer-Skins, Wool, Linnen, Hemp, Quickſilver, Sugar, Pepper, Cloves, Musk, Camphire, and Borax, Siampan and Brazil-wood, &c. for which they receive Gold, Silver, fine Copper, Cabinets, and other *Japan* and Lacquer'd Ware. Some Authors, ſay they, carry *China* Ware to *Japan*, but it ſeems either very improbable, or that the Quantity is very ſmall, ſince, as was obſerved before, the *Japaneſe* have a Trade with *China*.

Their Cattle.

THEY have much the ſame ſorts of Cattle and Poultry that we have in *Europe*, only their Horſes are very ſmall; Rice is the principal Grain here as in *China*, and managed in much the ſame manner; it grows always in Water till it is ripe; they have good Red Wheat, but not ſo plenty as Rice: Their Husbandmen are little better than Slaves; they cultivate the Ground for their Lords and great Men, but have no Properties of their own.

Gardens.

THEY take more pains with their Gardens here than in *China*, and bring them to much greater Perfection: Where there is a Houſe of any Note, they have commonly a large Court before it, and a Garden behind beautified with fine Mounts, Walks, and Terraſſes, and adorn'd with Greens and Flowers; and as there is commonly a large Viſto from the Court-Gate through the Houſe into the Garden, the Beauty and Order of the Garden may in a great meaſure be ſeen from the Street.

Mountains.

THERE are ſeveral remarkable Mountains in *Japan*, but the higheſt and moſt remarkable is about four Leagues from *Meaco*; it is ſeen above the Clouds, and though it ſtands eighteen Leagues within the Land, it may be ſeen forty Leagues off at Sea; it is called *Figenojama*. There is another called *Juy* or *Juycan*, which vomits out Fire like *Viſuvius* or Mount *Etna*, beſides ſeven or eight other burning Mountains or Volcano's, which at certain Times caſt out great Quantities of Fire and Smoak. There are Medicinal Springs in ſeveral Places in the Kingdom of *China*.

Me... and ...Pond...

THE *Japaneſe* Varniſh and Lacquer being become ſo famous in *England* as to go by the Name of the Place, and when any Cabinet or Tea-Table is Varniſh'd with it, it is ſaid to be *Japan* or *Japan'd*, take the following Account of its Compoſition, as it was taken from the *Philoſophical Tranſactions*.

Japan Varniſh and La...

THIS Varniſh is made of Turpentine mix'd with a curious ſort of Oil which they have, and boil'd to a Conſiſtence; but the *Lac* is the Juice of a Tree, which runs out ſlowly by cutting the Tree, and they ſave it by faſtning Pots to the Tree under the Place where it is cut; it is of the Colour and Subſtance of Cream at its firſt coming out, but being expoſed to the Air, the upper Part of it turns black, and as the uppermoſt Part of it ſoon turns black, ſo the way that they uſe to make it all black is, by putting a ſmall Quantity of it into a Bowl or Platter, and ſtir it about with a Piece of ſmooth Iron for twenty or thirty Hours; it will all by being thus variouſly expoſed to the Air, become black and thickiſh; with this they mix a Quantity of the fine Aſhes of any burnt Boughs, which being well mix'd together, they lay it on with a Bruſh upon the Wood that is to be Lacquer'd; and when it is well dried in the Sun, it will be harder than the Wood itſelf that it was laid on: When it is dry, rule it with a ſmooth Stone and Water, it will be as ſmooth as Glaſs, and black without further Trouble; but if you would have Red, or any other Colour, you muſt mix the Colour in fine Powder with the Varniſh, and the ſmoother it is laid on, the more beautiful it is. When they would *Japan* (as we call it) with Gold Colour, they draw the Flowers, Figures, or Buildings with Varniſh, and when it begins to dry, lay on Leaf Gold, or for a coarſer Colour, they uſe Pinduſt, and having let it lie till it is throughly dry, rub it tenderly, and the Gold Figures or Images will remain where you drew them with the Pencil or Bruſh with the Varniſh, and all the reſt will remain a bright black Ground.

THIS Lacquer is very pernicious to the Hands and Face, and ſometimes cauſeth Swelling or Lameneſs, having an effect in ſome reſpects like that which the Compoſition of white Lead and other Ingredients have upon ſome of our Painters in *England*.

CHAP. III.

Of the Learning, Arts and Sciences of the Japaneſe, *their Government, Forces, Coins, Weights and Meaſures, Laws and Puniſhments.*

Learning.

IT is the general Character of the *Japaneſe*, that they are more inclined to Arms than Letters, and yet ſufficient Proficients in both; they have many Academies and Univerſities, but their chief Learning conſiſts generally in Reading, Writing, and underſtanding the Hiſtory of their own Country; not that they quite omit the Myſteries of Religion and Rules of Morality; and their Cabinets call'd by way of Eminency *Japan* Work, prove them to be excellent Mechanicks, eſpecially if with them and other fine Works in Wood imported from thence, we conſider their Arms, which exceed any made in *Europe*; one of their broad Swords being able to cut one of our Blades in two at one Stroke.

Their Letters.

THEY uſe the ſame Characters as the *Chineſe* do, though their Languages differ, as i. the Caſe between the *Engliſh*, *French* and *Latin*, &c. They do not uſe Figures in the Caſting up of their Accounts, but have a little Frame with parallel Wires in it, and little Beads upon them, which Beads are valued according to the Place or Wire that the Bead is in that is moved, and in that reſpect, not much unlike our *Engliſh* Way of valuing Figures, any Figure with us being removed a place towards the Left Hand, repreſenting ten times its former Value; but as this or the like Method of caſting up Sums by Beads and Wires is of the ſame Nature with what they uſe in *Muſcovy*, we ſhall more fully explain it when we come to the Deſcription of that Country.

Phyſ...

THEY do not underſtand much of Phyſick, nor ever let Blood, but have many hot Springs and Medicinal Waters, which they uſe in common Diſtempers, and if a further Preſcription is thought neceſſary, it is commonly ſalt or ſharp; they uſe Cauterizing much, and apply to ſome Nerve, as they think proper, the Powder of Artemiſia, or Mugwort, and Cotton, which they ſet on Fire; they drink cold Water when they are ill, though they drink it hot or warm when they make uſe of it as common Liquor; and when they adminiſter Phyſick, they never

never give the Sick any thing that is bitter and nauſeous, nor do they deny the Sick any thing that he deſires to Eat or Drink during his Illneſs.

Printing and Gun powder.

THEY aſſume to themſelves the Honour of thoſe great Inventions Printing and Gun-powder; but I rather think this opinion of theirs may proceed from their Ignorance in Hiſtory and Geography; for before the *Europeans* came among them, they thought there was no Land to the Weſtward of *Siam*, but thought of the Weſt Coaſt of that Kingdom as was thought of the Weſt Coaſt of *Spain* before *America* was diſcover'd, that it was the *Ne plus ultra*, and that there was no Land in the World but *Japan*, *China* and *Siam*, which had that been true, and as they had got ſome Notion of Printing, it muſt have been invented in ſome of theſe Countries, and conſequently in their own as well as either of the other; ſo neceſſary is the Knowledge of Geographical Hiſtory, not only for a Gentleman, but even for a Mechanick or Perſon of common Converſation.

Aſtrology.

THEY lay as great a Streſs upon Aſtrology here as in *China*, not caring to undertake any great Enterprize till they firſt conſult ſome of thoſe pretended Oracles, as to their Succeſs, and a proper Day to make a fortunate Beginning.

Government of *Japan*.

JAPAN, with the Iſlands adjacent, which is Part of the Kingdom, is govern'd by one Grand Monarch, who ſubſtitutes fifty or ſixty petty Kings under him, who are every one inveſted with Sovereign Power in his own Dominion; but they all depend on the Grand Monarch, who can call them to Account, puniſh, or even depoſe them at his Pleaſure. He was formerly High-Prieſt as well as King, but now there ſeems to be both a Civil and an Eccleſiaſtical State, but ſtill depending upon one another; for although there is now one that is *Dairo* or High-Prieſt, and another that is Emperor, yet the preſent High-Prieſt muſt be a Deſcendant of the former Kings, and retains the titulary State and Dignity of a King; and notwithſtanding that the Monarch poſſeſſeth the Throne, yet he is obliged to marry into the *Dairo*'s Family, and do him Homage once in three Years, with a Ceremony of acknowledging that he holds the Crown of that Family.

THE King has no particular Prime Miniſter, but he has four called principal Miniſters, and twenty eight Privy-Counſellors; four of which are ſome of the petty Kings, the reſt of which are obliged to attend at Court one half of the Year, and have Palaces at the King's Court for their Reſidence, as hinted before. The Noblemens eldeſt Sons are brought up at Court till they are capable of Preferment under the Government, though, as ſome think, it is rather to keep them as Hoſtages and Pledges of their Father's Loyalty. His Subjects are ſo numerous, that jealous of a Revolt or a Sedition, he adminiſters Oaths of Allegiance every Year, and ſends ſpies into the Country amongſt them to inſpect into their Behaviour and Diſcourſe; and further to prevent and divert them from Conſpiracies againſt him, he employs a hundred thouſand of them by turns to erect or beautify Palaces and Publick Buildings, to caſt up new Highways and Roads, and to mend and repair the old ones.

Forces.

THEY keep up a numerous Army both of Horſe and Foot, though they are ſeldom engaged in Wars abroad, nor invaded or attack'd by Enemies at home. If the Prince goes abroad, he is attended by no leſs than five or ſix thouſand of his Guards; his ſtanding Forces in times of Peace are twenty thouſand Horſe, and a hundred thouſand Foot, but when they happen to be engaged in a War, every petty Sovereign is obliged to ſend his Proportion, which increaſes the Army to thirty eight thouſand Horſe, and three hundred and ſixty eight thouſand Foot; and they being ſo little diſturbed or diverted by Foreign Enemies, and having ſuch a powerful Army at their Command, he thought himſelf able to vie with the Emperor of *China* himſelf, and to conquer his Empire; and in order to put his Vanity in Execution, he levied three hundred thouſand Men, with which he attack'd ſome of the remote Parts of *China*; and although the Emperor was ſufficiently able to guard againſt a Conqueſt, yet the *Japaneſe*, or rather *Rapparees*, brought back a good Booty.

Coins. Gold.

THE *Japaneſe* coin their Gold into two ſmall Barrs of different ſorts; one is called a *Coban*, which is not always of the ſame Value, but is worth ſixty and ſixty eight *Mas* of Silver, every *Mas* worth Sixpence Sterling; ſo that the *Coban* is worth between thirty and thirty four Shillings Sterling. The other Gold Coin is an *Ichebo*, worth fifteen or ſixteen *Mas*, or near eight Shillings Sterling.

Silver.

THEIR Silver Coin is a *Tayl*, a *Mas*, and a *Condereis*; a *Tayl* is ten *Mas*, or five Shillings Sterling; a *Mas*, as above, is Sixpence Sterling, and a *Condereis* is ten *Mas*, or five Shillings.

Weights.

THEIR Weights are the *Pecul* and the *Cattee*; the *Cattee* is near twenty one Ounces *Avoirdupoiſe*; ſome ſay but twenty and two thirds, and the *Pecul* is ten *Cattees*, or near thirteen Pounds *Avoirdupoiſe*.

Cloth Meaſure.

THEIR Cloth Meaſure is the *Tattamy*, which is about our two Yards and half a Quarter.

BUT they have a Scarcity of Gold or Silver Coin, and therefore great Dealers, or the Ships that fetch their Loading there, commonly pay for them in Silver Bullion, or Pieces of Silver of five or ten Crowns Value, or more or leſs; which without any Coin paſſeth according to its Value, and in leſſer Bargains they agree for ſo many *Tayl*, *Mas* and *Condereis* of Silver for ſuch a Quantity of Goods, as we uſe our Coins in *England* and other Places.

Laws and Puniſhments.

THE Manner of Adminiſtring and executing of Juſtice in *Japan* is quite different from that of *China*; for whereas in *China* no Sentence of Death is ever executed till ratified and confirm'd by the Emperor, here in *Japan* the Monarch reſerves no ſuch Power in his own Hands, but ſuffers not only every petty King, but every Lord of a Diſtrict and Father of a Family, to judge, condemn, and execute Delinquents and Criminals that are under his Government, and that according to his own arbitrary Will; for they have few written Laws, and no Courts of Juſtice for the Trial of Malefactors. Every Governor of a Kingdom, Lordſhip, or Family, is a Judge likewiſe in common Crimes, ſuch as a ſmall Theft, an Aſſault, Gaming or Lying, or ſuch petty Offences which are often wink'd at, or perhaps, indeed, too remiſsly puniſh'd in ſome Chriſtian Countries, are often puniſh'd with Death; and where people are found guilty of Crimes of ſo heinous a Nature as defrauding the King of his Revenue, Treaſon, or Murder, the whole Family are involved in the Puniſhment, and the Relations, Parents, and Children all ſuffer, except the Female Relations, who are ſold for Slaves.

IF a petty King offend, he is ſeldom put to Death, but baniſhed, and reduced to ſervile Employment during life. Their uſual Puniſhments for Capital Offences are Burning, Crucifying with the Head downwards, Tearing to Pieces with Horſes, and Boiling in Oyl; and when an Offender flies from Juſtice, and refuſeth to ſurrender himſelf, he is order'd to be cut in Pieces wherever he is found: When a Gentleman or a Soldier is convicted of any capital Crime, they allow him the Favour, as they call it, to die by his own Hands; for it is reckon'd very ignominious and ſcandalous there, for a Man to be ſo cowardly as to ſtand ſtill and ſuffer an Executioner to diſpatch him, if he can be allow'd the Privilege of doing it himſelf.

CHAP. IV.

Gives an Account of their Religion, Temples, and Superstition.

CHRISTIANITY was first preach'd in the Island of *Japan*, about the Year 1552, by some *Portuguese* Priests sent thither from *Mecao* by Father *Xavier*, and gain'd so much Ground that about the Year 1622 three petty Kings, many great Men, and Multitudes of the common People, profest the Christian Religion; but about the Beginning of the seventeenth Century the Cubes or Kings of *Japan* have persecuted the Christians with so much Cruelty and Severity, that the Christian Religion is now generally quite expell'd that Island, by a Decree obtain'd from the Government for that Purpose, and severely put in Execution; so that now the *Japanese* Idolaters. are great Idolaters, and worship the Heavens and Planets, with several monstrous Idols or Pagodes, or little Images made of Wood, of various and monstrous Shapes, to whom they address their Petitions, and bring rich Presents under the Name of Alms, which their Priests, like the Priests of the great *Bell*, and other Priests since that, convert to their own use, though they have a good Subsistence and a great Respect given them; but besides their worshipping the Host of Heaven, the Sun, Moon and Stars, they also worship Wild-Beasts, and the Devil himself; and as they have several Deities, so they have various Sects, and perform their Devotion different Ways; but the Gods whom they prin- Gods. cipally adore, and chiefly depend upon, are *Xaca* and *Amida*, to whom they chiefly apply in their Distress. They give no Account of the Creation of the World, but believe the Immortality of the Soul, though in a different Manner; some believing that the Soul after this Life shall enter into a future State of Rewards or Punishments, others holding the Doctrine of Transmigration of Souls, and believing that the Soul after it departs out of this Body shall pass into and animate some other, either Man, Beast, or other Animal, as was said of a Sect of the *Chinese*, Chap VIII. Page 42.

Cloisters. THERE is a great Number of Cloisters and Nunneries, where it is said their Priests and Devotees live unmarried, and abstain from Flesh *and from Women*. They inflict voluntary Penances upon themselves, and come to Confession as their Religion requires, which is done with so much Strictness, that, as the Priest makes them believe, if they conceal any thing, it is as much as the poor Sinner's Life is worth; and they find it true too, for in that Case they are cast Headlong from the top of the Rocks where their Stools of Confession are placed, to make them Examples, and oblige the rest to be sincere.

Temple. AT *Meaco* there is a stately Temple, all built of Free-stone, as long and as high as St. *Paul*'s Church was before the Fire; it has an arch'd Roof, and is supported by large strong Pillars. In this Temple is an Image or Idol of Copper, which reaches to the Roof of it; his Chair is seventy Foot high and eighty Foot broad; his Head is sufficient to contain fifteen Men, his Thumb forty Inches about, and his Body in Proportion. This Temple stands upon the Top of a Hill, and the Ascent to it has fifty Pillars of Free-Stone on each Side, at ten Paces asunder, which proves the Hill about five hundred Paces high. There is a Lanthorn on the Top of each Pillar, which so ranged, makes a very fine Show in the Night-time.

Other Temples. BUT besides this, there are no less than sixty other Temples in *Meaco*, and above three thousand gilded Idols in them; nor are their Idols confined to their Temples only, for in the Road between *Surunga* and *Jeddo* stands the Idol *Dabis*; it is made of Copper, and in the Form of a Man sitting upon his Legs, and extending his Arms, and is two and twenty Foot high; also at a Place called *Tencheda* the *Bonzes* Superstition. bring a young Virgin every new Moon to the Temple there, and having placed her before the great Image, they illuminate the Place with Golden Lamps, and then burn Perfumes, while they are doing which the Lights are immediately, and no less miraculously extinguish'd, and suddenly their God appears in Human Shape, (or rather one of the *Bonzes* in his own Shape,) and embraces, and sometimes impregnates the young Damsel, who is from that highly honoured, and is entertain'd at her coming out of the Temple with Musick and Singing, and from thence conceits herself so inspired, as to take upon her the Office of an Oracle, and answer the most difficult Questions that can be propounded to her.

NOTWITHSTANDING the great Prerogative of the Prince, yet he pays such Veneration to the *Bonzes* or Priests, that when they come to him, he rises up to salute them, and suffers them to sit in his Presence. They are such great Professors of Humility, that they preach up great Austerities, and teach Morality and Contempt of this World; but the *Romish* Priests, (perhaps unwilling that any of their Fraternity should equal them in blinding and deluding their Devotees) say they, are lewd Fellows, and do not live up to the Doctrine they preach.

SINCE the total Extirpation of the Christian Religion out of the Kingdom of *Japan*, they were so inveterate against any that profest Christianity, that they would not trade nor admit of any Correspondence with any of that Profession, of what Nation soever; so that in this Case both *Dutch* and *Portuguese* (as Christians) are like to be expell'd all Trade and Society with the *Japanese*; upon which they reflect upon and blame each other for the fatal Consequence. The *Dutch* say, that upon the Growth of Christianity in *Japan*, the *Portuguese* Clergy took Liberty to preach up the Independance of the Church, and that it was not subject to any temporal Prince, which alarm'd the King of *Japan* with a Jealousy that they had a Design to dethrone him; to prevent which, he issued out the above-mention'd Decree for the total Extirpation of such a dangerous Religion and Doctrine as he thought it was to him: But the *Portuguese* say (and not improbably, if we consider the engrossing Temper of the *Dutch* with respect to Trade) that the Emissaries of the *Dutch* gave out that the *Portuguese* and the rest of the Christians had form'd a Conspiracy to dethrone the King of *Japan*, chusing rather to have themselves expell'd all Trade and Correspondence with the *Japanese*, than that any other Christian should participate with them of the Benefit of it; and I think the Sequel will confirm the Probability of this last Conjecture; for when by reason of the King's Apprehensions of their Design to dethrone him, he made the Decree as above to extirpate Christianity out of his Dominions, the *Dutch*, who were then Sufferers in the common Calamity, as being Christians, found out a way which no Christian Nation but themselves could in Conscience submit to, to insinuate themselves into their former *Japan* Trade, and that was, since all Trade and Correspondence with Christians was forbid, the *Dutch* affirm that themselves are no Christians, and made no Scruple to give the most evident

and

and convincing Tokens of their Infidelity, denying their Saviour that bought them, that they might more freely be admitted to buy Goods of other Infidels; upon which Account they are now reſtor'd to their Trade with *Japan*, which would not be much more Advantageous to them than it was before, (as having engroſs'd it all to themſelves) if it was not for the ſevere Limitations and Reſtrictions with which they enjoy it, (as we mention'd before,) occaſion'd by the *Japaneſe* Jealouſy of them, who, tho' they are Infidels themſelves, yet have doubtleſs ſo much of what they call Religion, as to think that any Perſon or Nation ought to be abandon'd in Point of Conſcience, who would deny the Saviour he profeſt for the ſake of Trade or temporal Advantage.

When the State of Religion in *Japan* was come to this paſs, there was no living there for any that profeſt Chriſtianity, or if any perſiſt in it, they are ſlain, or ſome way tortur'd to Death, and ſometimes their whole Family, Chriſtians or not, were involv'd in the Ruin, and with ſo much Severity did they proceed, that if a Chriſtian Prieſt was found in any Houſe, the Ruin did not terminate in himſelf or Family, but the whole Neighbourhood ſuffer'd with him, for not diſcovering him, and every Perſon whom they but ſuſpected to be a Chriſtian, were obliged to ſign an Inſtrument, declaring that they were not Chriſtians, but abhorr'd their Religion, as being dangerous to all Government, and repugnant to the good Harmony of every Civil Society whatſoever.

CHAP. V.

Of the Marriages of the Japaneſe; *of their Women and Children; and of their Funeral Rites.*

Mar-riages.

The Marriages of Perſons of Figure and Diſtinction is celebrated by the *Bonzes* or Prieſts in ſome of their Temples, and before ſome of their Pagodes or Images. The two Perſons to be married hold each of them a lighted Torch in their Hand, while the *Bonze* repeats the Marriage Contract; then the Friends and Relations make Preſents to the Bride, and wiſh Happineſs to the new-married Couple; whereupon the Bride, in token of her being arrived at a married State, throws all her childiſh Toys into the Fire; after which they ſacrifice Oxen, and the like, to their Idol, which being done, they return to the Bridegroom's Houſe with the ſame Solemnity as they went to the Temple, which, when they arrive, they find richly furniſh'd and prepar'd for their Entertainment, and hold a Feaſt or Time of Rejoicing for ſeveral Days.

Concubines.

The Men have an abſolute Power over their Wives, to kill or divorce them as they think fit, and can take as many Concubines as they pleaſe, or are able to keep, but they are not allow'd to receive any Portion with their Wives and Concubines. If a Woman is taken in Adultery, ſhe is puniſh'd with Death; but it is accounted no Crime for poor People who have more Children than they can maintain, or unmarried People, who have illegitimate Children, to deſtroy their Females, but their Males are brought up and taken Care of by the Government for the Service of their Country. They waſh their new born Infants in Water, but never put ſwadling Cloaths and Blankets upon them as in *Europe*, and as they grow up, the Care of their Education is committed to the *Bonzes*.

Education.

Burial.

In *Japan* they burn their Dead, which they perform with great Ceremony: On the Day appointed for the Funeral, they cauſe a large ſquare Pile of Wood to be erected without the Town, and when the Friends and Relations of the Deceas'd are aſſembled and ready for the Funeral Proceſſion, the Women move firſt, being cloath'd in White, which is the Mourning Dreſs and Colour here, as well as in *China*, or if they be Women of Quality and Diſtinction, they do not take the Trouble of walking, but are carried in Palanquins, or Litters of Cedar: After the Women, come the Men richly dreſt, and after them follow the *Bonzes*, cloathed in Linnen, one of them carrying a lighted Torch, and he and his Brethren ſinging all the Way as they go; ſome of them alſo beat upon braſs Pans or Baſons, and others carry Baskets of Flowers to throw upon the Ground in the Way, to ſignify that the Soul is gone to Paradiſe. Several Lanthorns full of Lights, and Banners with the Names of their Idols, are carried before the Corpſe, which is ſet upright on a Sort of a Couch, cloathed in Mourning or White, his Hands joined together in a praying Poſture: Next comes the Children of the Deceas'd, the Elder carrying a lighted Torch in his Hand. The whole Proceſſion ſurrounds the Funeral Pile three Times, about which is plac'd Tables with Meat and Drink upon them; then the chief *Bonzes* begin a Hymn, and waves a lighted Torch three Times about his Head, to ſignify that the Soul is without Beginning or End, and ſo flings the lighted Torch away, which one of the Children of the Deceas'd takes up, kindles the Funeral Pile, and then they throw upon it Oil and coſtly ſweet Woods, (probably to ſtifle the offenſive Smell) till the Corpſe is burnt to Aſhes; after which, the Children or Survivors offer Incenſe, and adore the Deceas'd, as ſuppoſing that he is now become one of the heavenly Inhabitants.

The next Day they return to the Place to take Care of the Bones and Aſhes, putting them up in a gilded Urn, which they carry Home and hang up in the Houſe for ſome Time, and afterwards interr'd with great Solemnity; after the Interment, the Children at certain Times viſit their Tombs, and offer Incenſe, and pay their Devotions to their deceas'd Parents.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Land of Yedso *or* Jesso; *with an Essay grounded upon some Natural Probabilities to reconcile the different Opinions of* Geographers, *about its Contiguity to* America.

If *Japan* be an Island.

THE Land of *Jesso* lies to the Northward of *Japan*, but it is disputed by some Geographers, whether the two be one Continent, or whether *Japan* be separated from *Jesso* by a Strait or Arm of the Sea? But the latter is most probable, because the *Dutch* (who are not only a prying People, where they have any View of Advantage, but, under such Views, have been pretty adventurous after such Discoveries) tell us, that the Sea between *Japan* and *Jesso* is two Degrees or forty Leagues over, from the North Coast of *Japan* to the South Coast of *Jesso*; tho' others say, it is not so much as that; but these Opinions are easily reconcil'd if we consider that none of our Geographers, *English* or *Dutch*, mention between what two Points of one Land and the other these Distances were taken or computed; and as it is most likely that different Places of the same Strait might be of different Breadth, one Account doth not at all contradict the other, but both confirm its being a Strait, or that *Japan* and *Jesso* are separated by the Sea, and that the Sea that separates them, is called the Straits of *Sangar*.

Japan an Island.

But we have a more particular Account in Favour of this Opinion from Captain *Savis*; who says, that a *Japanese* that had been twice at *Jesso*, told him, that the *Japanese* Trade with the Inhabitants of *Jesso*, and that the People of *Jesso* are very civiliz'd, and that those of the South Part towards *Japan* understand Commerce, tho' the Inland People are more ignorant, (and indeed the same Difference may be observ'd in *England*, between those who live in Sea Ports and Trading Places, and those who live in Inland Towns and Villages, and have seldom any Conversation but with one another) he says farther, that that Trading Part of *Jesso* is supply'd from *Japan* with Cloaths and Rice, and that they make Payments in Silver and Gold Dust, (probably not having attain'd any Method of Coining,) that at their Chief Town *Matsmay* or *Matsumay*, the King of *Japan* has a Governor and Garrison, and receives his Tribute in Silver, Feathers, or fine Furs; and that the People of *Jesso* trade frequently with the North Part of *Japan*; all which proves a Correspondence between the two Lands: But he farther observes, that in their Trading together, they came over in *Vessels sew'd together with Cordage, without any Iron-work about them*; which proves, that their Communication was by Sea, and gives the strongest Reason to suppose, that *Japan* is an Island, and not a Part of the same Island or Continent with *Jesso*.

A Doubt Answer'd

Some Authors of late yet question whether *Jesso* be annex'd to *Japan*; but the only Reason they assign for this Doubt is, *because vast inaccessible Mountains interpose and hinder the Communication*; but this Reason seems to be but general, and might take place before the foregoing particular Account of their Communication by Sea was known, or much enquired into: A person who had never heard of the Straits of *Gibraltar*, might travel to the Southward in the South Parts of *Spain* so far as to leave the Mountains of *Granada* on the Left, the Land of *Andaluzia* on the Right, and see the Land of *Africa* before him, and yet, by reason of the Height of the Land on both Sides, not expect any Passage by Sea between him and *Africa*, much less such a famous Inlett as that of the Straits of *Gibraltar*: and not to go so far, several of our navigable Rivers in *England* run into the Sea between such high Lands, that in Travelling they do not appear to be Rivers till you begin to descend the Hills that bound them, and from a vast Eminency see the Ships in the River at the Bottom, which may sufficiently convince us that these vast Mountains appearing at a Distance, is no Proof of there being no navigable Rivers between them, but on the contrary, that there may be such Rivers running into that Sea, that is, between *Japan* and *Jeddo*, by which the Communication between these two Places is maintain'd, and further confirms, first, that they are not upon the same Continent, and yet secondly, that they trade together by the Help of the Sea that separates them.

If *Jesso* annex'd to *Tartary*.

Another Geographical Dispute is, or hath been, whether *Jesso* is a Part of the same Continent with *Tartary*; they that assert the Affirmative assign as a reason, that it is three hundred Leagues from the End of the *Chinese* Wall, which is at the Head of the Gulf of *Cang* or *Nankin* to the Southwest Bounds of *Jesso*; and although our late Maps do not make it quite so much, yet they make it two hundred and fifty or sixty, which it is no wonder, if in such a Place as *China* or *Japan*, where Geography has been so little improved, that they might give it out in general Terms, and call it about or near three hundred Leagues.

But admit that our Geographers have made a small Mistake in the Extent of *Tartary*, or Situation of *Jesso* (which by the way I find no Reason to believe,) this contributes nothing to a Proof of *Jesso* being annex'd to, or a part of the Continent of *Tartary*; for *Jesso* is separated from *Tartary* by some Bounds, and whether this Boundary is a Strait or narrow Sea, or else some distinct Tract of Land, it neither confirms nor contradicts the abovemention'd Extent of *Tartary*; but since all allow that *Jesso* is the next Land to the Eastward of *Tartary*, our next Business is to see how their Bounds are determined.

The Inhabitants of *Jesso* affirm, that there is a Strait or Arm of the Sea separates *Jesso* from *Tartary*; and that this is called the Strait of *Tesfoy*, in which Strait they say, are sometimes very rapid Currents, by reason of the great Confluence of Rivers into it, both from *Tartary* and *Jesso*; the largest of which is the great River *Vamour* or *Amour*, which rises above four Hundred Leagues up in *Tartary*, and in its Passage to the Eastward receives a vast Number of Rivers into it, still increasing, till at last it empties itself into the Sea, as is the general Case with all other Rivers; and as it must empty itself into the Sea, it is not likely to be in the Straits of *Tesfoy*, or if any Person should deny it, they will be at a loss to know where to fix the Place of its falling into the Sea; and if possible, more at a loss to Account for the violent Currents in the Straits of *Tesfoy* before mention'd, when the rapid Influx of this River into those Straits, which is most likely to be the Natural Cause of these Currents, is taken away.

This

THIS Opinion is further confirm'd, by an Account of ſome *Hollanders* who were Shipwreck'd upon the Coaſt of *Corea*, a Place where no Whales naturally frequent; and yet they ſay, they ſaw there a Whale with a Harping-Iron of *Gaſcony* ſtuck in her Back, which proves that ſhe muſt have come from *Spitsberg*, or ſome of the Northern Seas, where the Whales are ſtruck and taken; and if ſhe came from thence, ſhe muſt either come through the Straits of *Teſſoy*, or find a Paſſage between *Japan* and *Jeſſo*, or elſe come quite round the South End of *Japan*, and ſwim a hundred and fifty or two hundred Leagues to the Northward, the laſt of which is ſo very unlikely, that it amounts to little leſs than a Certainty of a Paſſage, either between *Japan* and *Jeſſo*, or between *Jeſſo* and *Tartary*; and conſidering what has been ſaid in this Chapter upon that Subject, it amounts to the ſtrongeſt Probability that can be gather'd from the moſt concurring Circumſtances, that the Sea has a Paſſage through both the laſt mention'd Places.

Diſcovery attempted.

Now ſuppoſing that *Jeſſo* is bounded on the Weſt by the Straits of *Teſſos*, which ſeparates it from *Tartary*; and on the South by the Straits of *Sangaar*, which divides it from *Japan*; we are next to enquire into the Eaſt Boundaries of it, the beſt Account of which that I find, we have from the *Dutch*, who in the Year 1652, undertook an Expedition in order to find out a Paſſage through the North Eaſtern Seas, by which, as a much ſhorter Way, the *Europeans* might come from the *Eaſt Indies*; and to compleat this Diſcovery, they ſent out ſome proper Perſons and Ships fit for ſuch an Undertaking, who ſailing by to the Eaſtward of *Japan*, ſail'd to the Northward, till they arrived upon the Coaſt of *Jeſſo* on the Weſt of them, and alſo preſently deſcry'd Land to the Eaſtward of them, finding themſelves in a narrow Sea, Gulf, or Strait; for they had not yet diſcover'd whether it was a Strait, by which they could ſail quite through to the Eaſtern Seas, or only a Gulf, the Bottom of which would ſtop their Progreſs, and oblige them to retreat: However, having Sea-room enough, and ſufficient Depth of Water, they ſail'd up till they came at an Iſland in the Middle of the Gulf, which they called *Staten Iſland*, and the Land to the Eaſtward of them they called *Compagne*, or *Companies Land*, that to the Weſtward of them being ſtill the Coaſt of *Jeſſo*.

Diſcovery over.

AND here they put a Period to their Diſcovery, as conſidering that the Advantage of this compendious Way of Navigation might not defray the Expence of finding it, if it was to be found; and if not the Expence was quite loſt; and beſides this, they had another Difficulty to encounter with, which they thought it next to impoſſible to ſuperſede, and that was, becauſe the Emperor of *Japan* had prohibited all the Navigation of Foreigners to *Jeſſo*, upon the Account of the vaſt Tribute he receives yearly upon the Silver Mines there; and when they found they were not allow'd to make any further Diſcoveries, they gave out that it would not conduce to their Advantage, and ſo deſiſted, and, according to their wonted Generoſity, conceal'd as much as poſſibly they could any thing that they had found out which might have been of publick Advantage.

If *Jeſſo* reach to *America*

AND here we muſt reſt contented, without knowing certainly whether *Companies Land* be ſeparated from *Jeſſo* by a Strait or Sea, or they are both one Continent, and the Place where the *Dutch* ſail'd up was only a Gulf or Inlet into it. The next Difficulty in which Geographers are not perfectly agreed is, whether *Companies Land* extend ſo far to the Eaſtward as to join to the North-Weſt Part of *America*: Some would prove the Probability of it thus:

THEY ſay that Travelling Eaſtward from the Straits of *Teſſos*, or Weſtermoſt part of *Jeſſo* to *Matzumay*, it is ſixty Days Journey, and from thence to the Eaſtermoſt Part of *Companies Land* it is ninety Days Journey, which is in all one hundred and fifty Days Journey, which at eight Leagues, or twenty four Miles a Day, amounts to one thouſand two hundred Leagues; and if this mechanical way of Meaſuring was done with ſo much Care and Exactneſs as to be depended upon, it will give us a great Inſight into the Probability or Improbability of *America* joining to *Aſia*, or will rather indeed confirm the Opinion of thoſe who not without good Reaſon aſſert it to be ſo, and will agree with our modern Geography, which lays down the Straits of *Annian*, or the Northermoſt Part of what is yet diſcover'd on the Weſt Coaſt of *America*, in about the ſame Parallel of Latitude with the Middle of the Straits of *Teſſos*, *viz.* about forty eight Degrees North, and their Difference of Longitude about ninety Degrees, which Difference of Longitude in that Parallel makes one thouſand two hundred and four Leagues, but in the Arch of a great Circle, which is the trueſt Meaſure, it makes but one thouſand one hundred and twenty nine Leagues; and therefore, although by reaſon of the Crookedneſs of their Road, with their Aſcents, Deſcents, and other Irregularities, twelve hundred Leagues in the Road would not carry them ſo far to the Eaſtward as the ſame Space in a Right-line would have done, yet it is probable that that Space travelling upon the Road might carry them as far to the Eaſtward as eleven hundred and twenty nine Leagues in a Right-line would extend, or near it, which gives Reaſon to conjecture that the South Shore of *Companies Land* makes the North Shore of the Straits of *Annian*, and that there is one continued Continent from *Jeſſo* to the North Part of *America*, except interrupted by Bays, Gulfs, Rivers, Straits, or ſuch Irregularities as commonly intervene in ſuch Caſes; and I am rather confirm'd in this Opinion, becauſe I do not find that any of *England* or any other Nation have ever found a Paſſage from the great *South Sea* or *Pacifick Ocean*, along the Coaſt of *California*, towards *Nova Zembla*, and ſo into the Northern Ocean, although we do not find that there is any Land yet diſcover'd to intercept the Paſſage; and I am the rather ſurprized that no Attempts have been made to diſcover a North Paſſage between *Jeſſo* and the Straits of *Annian*, ſince theſe Places lie in a lower Latitude than *London*, or any Part of *England*, and we ſail into above twenty Degrees greater North Latitude than thoſe Places lie in when we ſail about the North Cape to *Archangel*; ſo that whatſoever other Difficulty might attend ſuch an Attempt, it is not the Climate that can render Navigation there impracticable; but ſince no Diſcovery has been made to cotradict this Conjecture, but rather that repeated Experiments have proved by Days Journeys the Length of *Companies Land* and *Jeſſo*, theſe Probabilities give us ſufficient Room to conclude that *America* is either join'd to *Companies Land*, or only ſeparated from it by the Straits of *Annian*.

AND what further corroborates this Opinion is, that even the lateſt Geographers trace a Ridge or Tract of Mountains in Latitude ſixty and upwards, as far as the North-Eaſt Corner of *Moſcovite Tartary*, and there leave them; and inſtead of following them further, conclude, *That it is not known where that Chain of Mountains ends, or whether they are not join'd to ſome other Continent*; from whence there is great Reaſon to believe, that *that Chain of Mountains* may be a Part of the ſame Continent with *Companies Land*, and that that vaſt Tract of Land, of Breadth unknown, may extend from the Eaſt and North-Eaſt Part of *Tartary* to the Weſt and North-Weſt Part of *North America*, and our not having diſcover'd it, is no Proof that it is not ſo, ſince we have not found a way to that Part of the World, either Eaſtward about *Nova Zembla*, nor Weſtward about *North America*, nor Northward out of the great *South Sea*.

If this Communication by Land, or the Continuation of the Land from *Asia* to *America* be allow'd, there will be no Difficulty in accounting for the Peopling of the World from *Asia*, either from the first Creation, or after the Deluge; for, if according to Holy Writ all Mankind was destroy'd at the Flood, all the Human Race now or since that Time subsisting, descended from *Noah* as well as from *Adam*; but which Way soever it is reckon'd, *Asia* was the Scene and Source of both, and all the habitable World must necessarily be peopled from thence.

INDEED some late Authors seem to encourage an Opinion, that the first Inhabitants of *America* were drove from *Asia* by Stress of Weather, since it is proved above, that without a new Creation, they must come from thence; but not to mention the State of Navigation when *America* was first peopled, there must have been a Ship built on purpose for that Expedition, which, like *Noah*'s Ark, must carry Women, and all sorts of Beasts and Fowls, and the like, as well as Men, and it is very unlikely that such an Adventure should be undertaken, considering their great Incapacity at that Time for the Building of such a Vessel, and the little Encouragement they could have to attempt such an Enterprize, especially considering that they must carry along with their Passengers a Sufficiency of Provision for Man and Beast; but if we allow of this Communication by Land, so probable in it self, and never yet contradicted by any Discovery, the Difficulty vanishes of course.

Objection. BUT we find another Objection made by a late Author, which seems to be level'd against the Probability of this Communication by Land between *Asia* and *America*: It is in these words; *If all Parts of the World had a Communication with one another by Land, how comes it to pass there was no such Thing as a black Man to be found in all* America, *in so long a Tract of Time? 'Tis very reasonable to suppose some of that Complexion would have straggled thither as well as the White, if they could have found a Passage.*

Answer'd. *Answer.* IT is doubtless the Climate that alters the Complexion; and for the further Illustration of this Assertion, I would ask what Complexion was *Adam* of, and after him *Noah*, from whence all, both black and white Men and Women, descended, by lineal Succession; and whether we allow them to be black or white, or rather, if we allow them to be white, and if Complexion be absolutely hereditary, all Persons must have been white, and no such thing as a black Man or Woman to be found in the World; but we see there are black Men and Women in the World, therefore their black Complexion is occasion'd by some other Accident, which is most likely to be the Heat of the Climate where they are born; and for this we need go no further than our own temperate Zone, where we find that a Man who is generally exposed to work and sweat in the hot Sun, is much more black, or, as we call it, tann'd, than those who sweat not so much, or at all exposed to the scorching Rays of the Sun.

IF it be objected, that if a black Man and black Woman have Children, though in *England*, yet they will be black, and it is as likely that a White Man and Woman, though in *Guinea*, would have a white Child, and therefore the Climate doth not altogether govern the Complexion; it may be answer'd, that doubtless the Climate doth not immediately visibly affect a contrary Complexion, but in Process of Time, and after some Generations, and especially by Intermarriages, the black would approach near to a white, and the white degenerate into black; and the Duration of Time required for such an Alteration is a further Reason why it was *so long a Time before there was a black Man to be found in all* America, and of *America* being peopled from *Asia*, by the way of *Companies Land*; for if we should allow that no People could produce a black Generation but those who were originally so themselves, (though by the by, we have no Reason to believe that *Noah* and his Wife were of such different Complexions, though their Generations produce both,) but granting that (I say) their Blacks must come from *India*, or *Africa*, or some Place where it is the Native or Customary Colour, and as we are sure there is no Communication by Land between *Asia* and any Part of the West Coast of *America* to the Southward of the Straits of *Anian*, they must come by way of *Companies Land*, if by Land at all, and so through *America* to the Southward, before they could arrive where the Blacks now are, which being such a vast Distance must require a very long Time before they could disperse themselves so far.

BUT as I have proved that Complexions are not hereditary, because both black and white People have descended originally from the same Parents, *viz. Adam* or *Noah*, but that it is caused by the different Climates, the black Colour being confirm'd to the black People, and gradually contracted by the white, in Climates where black is the natural Colour, it will follow, that if *America* was peopled by way of *Jesso* and *Companies Land*, though from *China* or *Tartary*, or those nearer Parts of *Asia*, where the People are white, yet as in Process of Time they spread themselves through *North America*, and so to the Southward, till by degrees they came into a hotter Climate, their Colour degenerated towards a black, and by a long Continuance in that Climate, every Generation is more impregnated with the Natural Blackness of their Complexion, which there is great Reason to believe was the first Original of the Blacks now Inhabiting *America*, and would require a long Time to be brought to that Perfection.

As we proposed to begin with the Eastern Part of *China*, and so in general travel to the Westward, it may perhaps be thought a Digression to come to the Eastward, to describe the Extent of *Companies Land*; but we thought it was necessary, as it is known to be a Part of *Asia*, to give Account of the great Probability of its joining to *America*, to which, from what hath been said, there seems to be the utmost Reason to believe, since after so many Discoveries it could never be disprov'd; and as none will dispute the Contiguity of *Asia* with *Europe* and *Africa*, so if it should now be granted, or afterwards proved, that this Tract of Land, called *Companies Land*, reaches to *America* too, it may be worthy a Remark, that the Scene of Creation and Redemption too being in *Asia*, was fix'd in such a Part of the World as had a Communication by Land with all the other Parts of it; which is what cannot be said of any of the four Quarters of the World besides *Asia*, and from whence then it is no Difficulty to account for the Peopling of all the habitable World, even before Navigation was invented, or at least so much improved, as to venture to launch into the Main Ocean in quest of new Continents; and as we have join'd *Asia* to *America* now, so we shall at the Conclusion of this laborious Work join *America* to *Asia* in the same Place, and having travell'd round the Globe, shall leave off where we began, to make this our Undertaking a compleat *Universal History of the World.*

A DESCRIPTION OF THE *KINGDOM of* TONQUIN.

CHAP. I.

Gives a Deſcription of the Situation and Extent of this Kingdom; the Number of Provinces and their Bounds; as alſo of the Bay of Tonquin, *and the chief Rivers running into it; with a particular Account of the Wet and Dry Seaſons, and of the Tuffoons, and Periodical Hurricanes upon this Coaſt; from whence is deduced, as a neceſſary and evident Conſequence, the natural Cauſe of the Over-flowing of the* Nile *in* Egypt, *hitherto ſo difficult to be accounted for.*

THIS Kingdom is bounded on the Eaſt by the Province of *Canton* and Bay of *Tonquin*, and on the North by the Province of *Yunam*, both in *China*; on the South by the Bay of *Tonquin*, or Gulf of *Cochin-China*, and by the Kingdom of *Laos* on the Weſt: the Northern Part of it lies under the Tropick of *Cancer*, in twenty three Degrees and a half North Latitude; its Length is between four and five hundred Miles; its Breadth is in ſome places a hundred and fifty Miles, but irregular and very unequal.

Pro-vinces. MR. *Blome* in his Geography gives us Account of but ſeven Provinces, but Mr. *Dampier*, whom we ſhall rather adhere to, becauſe he was ſome time in the Country, tells us, there is eight Provinces, which he names and deſcribes as follows:

1. *Tenan.* 2. Eaſt Province. 3. South Province. 4. *Tenkoa.* 5. *Ngeam.* 6. Weſt Province. 7. North Province. 8. the Province of *Cachao*: Whoſe ſeveral Deſcriptions are as follows.

Tenan. THE Province of *Tenan* is bounded by *China* on the Eaſt, by *China* and Eaſt Province on the North, by South Province on the Weſt, and by the Bay of *Tonquin* on the South; it is but a ſmall Province, and produceth little of any Value except Rice.

Eaſt Pro-vince. EAST Province lies upon the Eaſtermoſt Borders of the Kingdom, between *Tenan* and North Province; it is bounded on the Weſt, or rather South-weſt, by *Cachao*, and on the South by the Bay of *Tonquin*, and on the Eaſt or North-eaſt by *Quamſi* in *China*, and on the North by North Province; it is a large Province, but low Land chiefly towards the South Parts of it, where are ſeveral Iſlands; this Province is inhabited moſtly by Fiſhermen; here is good Meadow and Paſture, and abundance of Cattle; it alſo produceth great Quantities of Rice: The chief Town of this Province is *Hean*, where the Governor reſides.

South Pro-vince. SOUTH Province is a triangular Iſland, bounded on the South by the Sea, and on the other two Sides by the Rivers *Domea* and *Rocklo*; this is alſo low Land, and produces abundance of Rice, and is fine Meadow and Paſture Ground.

Tenkoa is bounded on the Eaſt by the River *Rocklo*, on the North with Weſt Province, and with the Bay of *Tonquin* on the South; this is much of the Nature of the other Maritime Provinces, being low Land, and producing great Quantities of Rice, and the Inhabitants, as well as thoſe along the reſt of the Coaſt, driving a great Trade in Fiſhing.

Ngeam is bounded on the Eaſt by *Tenkoa*, on the South and Weſt by *Cochin-China*, and on the North by Weſt Province; this is a large Province, and as it extends to the Frontiers of *Cochin-China*, there is alſo a Body of Troops quarter'd there, conſiſting of about fifty thouſand Men, who are taken from the Southern Provinces, and paid by the Northern, becauſe the latter revolted, and therefore the Southern were thought moſt fit to be truſted with the Safety and Defence of the Kingdom, and the Northern are tax'd to pay them, as a Puniſhment for their Rebellion, and to keep them the better under Subjection: This Province abounds in good Rice, Paſturage and Cattle. *Ngeam.*

WEST Province is bounded on the South by *Ngeam*, on the Weſt by the Kingdom of *Laos*, on the North by North Province, and on the Eaſt by the Province of *Cachao*; this is a large Champion Country, a rich Soil, and abounds in Wood and Paſture Ground. Weſt Pro-vince.

NORTH Province is the largeſt of all the eight, extending over almoſt all the North Part of the Kingdom; it is bounded on the Eaſt with *China*, on the Weſt with the Kingdom of *Laos*, on the North with *China*, and on the South with Eaſt Province, *Cachao* and Weſt Province; this Province is compos'd of a great Variety of Mountains and Plains, Champion Land and Wood Land, and it is in this Province chiefly that the wild Elephants are found: This Province produceth great Quantities of Silk and Lack. North Pro-vince.

THE Province of *Cachao* is in the Heart or Middle of the Kingdom, bounded by the Eaſt, Weſt, North and South Provinces, who, it's reaſonable to think, are ſo diſtinguiſh'd with reſpect to their Situation, from *Cachao* the Capital of the Kingdom: This is an exceeding pleaſant Country, adorn'd with great Variety of Low Lands and Mountains, Champion and Wood Lands; and from a Soil of yellowiſh Earth produceth great abundance of Lack, Silk and Rice, which is not to Plenty in any other Province as in this. *Cachao.*

THE Bay of *Tonquin* is not improperly called ſo, becauſe it is the way by which Foreigners approach Bay of *Tonquin*

the

the Kingdom, but it is by ſome called the Gulf of *Cochin-China*, becauſe the Entrance of it goes in between the Coaſt of *Cochin-China* on the Weſt, or Left Hand, and the Iſland of *Aynan* on the Eaſt; and the Bottom of this Gulf, or ſo much of it as is upon the Coaſt of *Tonquin*, might moſt properly be called the Bay of *Tonquin*, as doubtleſs the Name was ſo intended, though Strangers call the whole Gulf promiſcuouſly by either Name.

Some reckon the Gulf of *Cochin-China* to begin at *Champa-Point* on the Weſt, and that that Point, and the Iſland *Aynan* makes the Entrance of the Gulf, which at that rate is about a hundred and twenty Leagues from Side to Side, but ſailing up till you have the Coaſt of *Tonquin* on the Left, and the Iſland of *Aynan* on the Right, which may properly be called the Entrance of the Bay of *Tonquin*, it is not above forty Leagues, and in the Middle of it there is forty ſix Fathom Water, and good Anchor Ground; and as we had this, and what follows relating to the Mariner's Buſineſs, from the Account of Mr. *Dampier*, who was there for ſome Time, it may not be amiſs to give the following Abſtract of it.

Dampier's Account of the Bay, Rivers and Ports of Tonquin.

There are two great Rivers come out of *Tonquin* into the Sea, at the Bottom of the Bay, but they are but one above, and ſeparate themſelves in the Country, and run into the Sea at about twenty Leagues Diſtance from each other, thereby forming the triangular Iſland called *South-Province*. The Weſtermoſt of thoſe Rivers is called *Rockbo*, it lies in twenty Degrees ſix Minutes North Latitude, and the Eaſtermoſt, which is much larger and deeper, is called *Domea* River, from a Town ſo called that ſtands upon the Banks of it; the Mouth of this River lies in twenty Degrees forty five Minutes North Latitude; there are many dangerous Shoals upon the Coaſt, between the Mouths of theſe Rivers, which ſtretch two Leagues or more into the Sea: The *European* Ships enter the Kingdom of *Tonquin* by the Eaſtermoſt River *Domea*, at the Entrance into which there is a Bar of near two Miles broad; the Channel is about two Miles over, having Sands on each Side. When Ships come hither they wait for a Pilot to conduct them in, but they will not come off except in Spring Tides: For a Mark to the Sailors for this River, there is a great high Ridge of Mountains, called the *Elephant*, which muſt be brought to bear N. W. by N. and then ſteering towards the Shore, till you come into ſix Fathom Water, you will be about two or three Miles from the Foot of the Bar, and about the ſame Diſtance from a little Iſland called *Pearl Iſland*, which will then bear N. N. E. there is good Anchoring, where you may be ſafe, and if you fire a Gun, there will a Pilot come off if the Tides anſwer.

The Bar of Domea.

In paſſing over the Bar of *Domea* there is fourteen Foot Water or more, and deeper when you are within, and ſoft ouzy Ground; the River at the Entrance is about a Mile over, and about five or ſix Leagues up in the Town of *Domea*, on the Starboard or Right Hand Side. The *Dutch* Ships that trade hither never go higher than *Domea*; but the *Engliſh* go three or four Miles higher, by which, for a little Trouble, they have two Advantages, for they are nearer to *Cachao*, from whence their Goods come, and the Tide there runs not ſo ſtrong as below. When the *Dutch* come to an Anchor at *Domea*, they are very intimate with the Natives, teaching them Gardening and other Things, in which they are ignorant, and in Return have the Uſe of their Wives, as if they were at Home; and for the *Engliſh*, or any other that go up higher, they have as great an Advantage, for when any Shipping comes up, they build a Number of Huts in the Form of a Village or ſmall Town, where the Seamen may be ſupply'd not only with Proviſion, but Women too, if the Money holds out.

But the City of *Cachao* is the chief Place of Trade, and from whence they have the Manufactures of the Country, becauſe at that City are both the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Factories. It lies about a hundred Miles up the River, but as we are now upon the River the City ſhall be deſcribed by-and-by. There is a delightful Proſpect all the Way up the River, of a large Level, a fruitful Country being generally either Meadow, Paſture, or Rice Fields; for the moſt of what we call Arable Land, as Wheat, Rye, &c. is Rice Fields with them; but there are no Trees to be ſeen, unleſs about their Villages, which are always encompaſs'd with them, except thoſe Villages which ſtand upon the Bank of a River, to which they always lie open. The Villages are very numerous, and theſe Varieties make the Country exceeding pleaſant in the dry Seaſons. *Cachao.*

About twenty Miles below *Cachao* is the Town of *Hean*, on the Eaſt Side of the River, about eighty Miles from the Sea; and it is a little below this that the two Rivers *Domea* and *Rockbo* part into two Streams. The Town of *Hean* is about eighty Miles from the Sea; and hence the Triangular Iſland called *South Province* is near eighty Miles on each Side, that is bounded by the Rivers, and ſixty Miles on that Side bounded by the Sea. The Town of *Hean* has about two thouſand Houſes, one of the Streets of which is moſtly inhabited by *Chineſe* Merchants, who formerly lived at the Capital of *Cachao*; but being too over-reaching to the Natives in their Dealing, were expell'd the Town, and there being no conſiderable Trade in any other Place, they moſt of them left the Kingdom, only ſome few ſettled at *Hean*, who are ſtill allow'd to go to *Cachao* now and then, but not to ſettle there, or reſide for any conſiderable time; but ſome of the *China* Merchants that remain at *Hean* trade to *Japan* with Silks, both raw and wrought, and moſt commonly bring back Bullion in return. *Hean.*

The Ships that come from *Siam* and *China* often come up as high as *Hean* upon the River *Domea*; but the *Engliſh* or *Dutch*, or any *European* Ship, ſeldom if ever comes up ſo high, nor does any go up higher, for the Stream runs down ſo very ſtrong, and the Tide not flowing up ſo high, they are forced to fetch the Goods down in Boats or ſmall Veſſels, which are commonly two Days in going up from *Hean* to *Cachao*, by reaſon of the rapid Current that meets them.

The Kingdom of *Tonquin* is ſituate in a very healthful Climate and very pleaſant, eſpecially in dry Weather; but the Seaſons that may be call'd Summer and Winter are diſtinguiſh'd by Wet and Dry, rather than by Hot and Cold here, as well as in other Places, between or eſpecially near the Tropicks. *Health Country*

But even here the Weather alters not all at once, but at the End of the dry Seaſon, as the wet Seaſon approacheth, there are now and then gentle Showers and Intervals of fair Weather between them, before the violent Rains come on, and towards the End of the Rains there are wet and dry Days intermix'd; and ſo the dry Weather gradually comes on, and the Rain entirely ceaſeth, and it is obſerved, the Seaſons are much alike in all Places between the Tropicks on the ſame Side of the Line, and in the ſame Latitude, except within two or three Degrees of the Equinoctial, where the Weather as well as the Wind is always uncertain and variable. But as to Heat and Cold, thoſe Places under the Tropicks, or within three or four Degrees of them, are much hotter than thoſe under the Equinoctial, and that with the greateſt Reaſon, if we conſider, firſt, under the Equinoctial the longeſt Day (and the ſhorteſt too, for they are always alike there) is but twelve Hours, and the Night the ſame; ſo that there the Earth *Always dry at ſome Seaſons. Hotter near the Tropicks.*

has

has but twelve Hours Time of the Sun's Preſence to heat, and his Abſence juſt as long to cool it; but under the Tropicks, or near them, the Day is thirteen Hours and a half long, and the Night but ten Hours and a half; ſo that here the Earth has three Hours longer Time of the Sun's Preſence to heat it, than of his Abſence to cool it; and the Sun's Heat is full as intenſe, he being perpendicular to them under the Tropick at their longeſt Day, as well as to thoſe under the Equinoctial when the Sun is there, and their Day but twelve Hours.

But, ſecondly, The Sun's Declination when near the Tropicks, alters not ſo faſt or ſo much in twenty four Hours, as when near the Equinoctial, ſo that admit a Place be within three Degrees of the Tropick of *Cancer*, viz. in the Latitude of twenty Degrees and thirty Minutes North, the Sun when his Declination is ſeventeen Degrees thirty Minutes North, is within three Degrees of their Zenith at Noon: When his Declination is twenty Degrees thirty Minutes, he is in their Zenith at Noon; and when he is in the Tropick, with twenty three Degrees thirty Minutes North Declination, he is then but three Degrees to the Northward of their Zenith at Noon; and ſo in his Receſs towards the Equinoctial, he comes (at Noon) to their Zenith again, and is not above three Degrees from it, till his Declination North be leſs than ſeventeen Degrees and a half; ſo that during all the Time that the Sun's Declination is more than ſeventeen Degrees and a half (which is from the latter End of *April* to the latter End of *July*, which is near three Months) the Sun comes every Day to their Zenith or within three Degrees of it, which continual Heat makes theſe Latitudes hotter than under the Equinoctial.

And beſides theſe general Reaſons for Places near the Tropick being ſo very hot, there is a particular Reaſon for *Tonquin* (moſt of which Kingdom lies as above, within three or four Degrees of the Tropick) being a hot Country; and that is becauſe it lies in a Bay where they have not the Benefit of the cool Breezes, that frequently blow in more open Places.

Wet Seaſons.

The heavy Rains or wet Seaſons commonly begin about the latter End of *April* or the Beginning of *May*, and continue till about the latter End of *Auguſt*; in which Time it often rains for many Hours, ſometimes ſeveral Days without Intermiſſion, and theſe ſudden heavy Rains muſt needs cauſe great Land Floods in the lower Grounds, to which thoſe Rivers deſcend that receive thoſe exceſſive Rains.

And it may not be amiſs (tho' it is a ſmall Digreſſion) to take Notice here, that if we allow theſe almoſt perpetual Rains in the Summer from *April* or *May* till *Auguſt*, in Places lying near or between the Tropicks, it will not be difficult to account for that hitherto ſurprizing Prodigy, the annual Overflowing of the River *Nile*, which, according to ſome Geographers, riſes in about fourteen or fifteen Degrees of North Latitude, which is about nine Degrees to the Southward of the Tropick of *Cancer*, and in its Courſe to the Northward, toward the *Mediterranean*, it croſſeth the ſaid Tropick, and runs into above thirty Degrees North Latitude, before it falls into the *Levant*; and as it is ſo large a River, and runs thro' the low Grounds of *Egypt*, it muſt be ſupply'd by a great Confluence of Rivers, and receive all thoſe heavy Rains that fall in or near its Paſſage, and having no Way to diſgorge itſelf till it empties itſelf into the *Mediterranean*, it is no more difficult to account for its Overflowing the low Lands of *Egypt*, in its Paſſage thro' it, (tho' a Thing look'd upon by the Ancients as ſupernatural) than it is to account for a Land Flood after a ſudden heavy Rain in *England* or elſewhere. This Conſideration makes the Overflowing of the *Nile* ſo far from being a Wonder, that it would be a much greater Wonder, and more difficult to be accounted for, if all theſe exceſſive and durable Rains that fall in the River *Nile*, and that from the adjacent Country deſcend into it, within or near the Tropick where theſe Rains fall; I ſay, it would be a much greater Wonder, how theſe Rains and prodigious Quantities of Water could be conveyd to the Sea, and yet the River *Nile* not be affected by them; nor is *Egypt* the only Place that depends upon thoſe Floods for moiſtening the Earth, (though the River *Nile* is taken Notice of in ſuch a particular Manner, of its annual Overflowing, as if it was a Property peculiar to it only;) but *Tonquin*, which we are now deſcribing, has ſuch a Dependance upon thoſe Rains, that if they happen to come later, or in leſs Quantities (for tho' they come generally alike, yet not always exactly ſo,) in that Caſe, they ſometimes have not Rain ſufficient to manure their Rice; for *Tonquin*, as well as *Egypt* and other Places, depend upon theſe annual Floods and Rains to moiſten and enrich their Ground; inſomuch, that if thoſe Rains chance to fail, they have ſcarce any Crop, and the Poor are reduc'd to a ſtarving Condition, and often forc'd to ſell ſome of their Children, to purchaſe Bread for the reſt and themſelves; but this Caſe is more frequent at *Malabar* and *Cormondel*, than at *Tonquin*.

Natural Cauſe of the Overflowing of the Nile.

About *Auguſt* or the Beginning of *September* both the Rain and Heat abates; but during the Months of *Auguſt*, *September* and *October*, are theſe violent Storms of Wind, call'd Tuffoons, which at that Time of the Year blows ſo fierce, that the *Chineſe* dare not ſtir out of their Harbours till they are over; but when that Seaſon is paſt, there is no Danger of Storms till the Seaſon returns; and while it laſts, theſe Storms are moſt violent about the New and Full Moon, and they can partly predict their Approach, they being commonly preceded by very fair Weather, little Wind, and a clear Sky; and although the Trade-Winds at that Time of the Year is South-weſt, yet when theſe ſmall ſoft Winds come on that preſage the Approach of the Tuffoons, they commonly ſhuffle about to the North, or North-Eaſt; after which, there appears a dreadful Cloud, very frightful to behold, which comes ſometimes twelve Hours before the Storm begins, but when that Cloud begins to move apace, the Storm may be ſuddenly expected: It commonly holds about twelve Hours, the Wind at North-Eaſt, blowing very hard, and attended with Thunder, Lightning, and exceſſive Rains, and when it is over, it abates on a ſudden, and falls quite calm, which continues near about an Hour, and then the Wind comes Trade at the South-Weſt, where it was before, and blows as violently from that Quarter as it did from the other. Tuffoons.

There is commonly very pleaſant, dry, and healthful Weather in *November* and *December*, and there is not much Rain in *January*, *February*, and *March*, but often thick Fogs in the Mornings, which ſometimes turn to cold drilling Rain, and a ſharp Air, eſpecially if the Wind be North-Eaſt; but in *April* the Weather is moderately dry and temperate for Heat; but tho' what is ſaid above be the general Conſtitution of the Climate, yet the Seaſons are ſometimes more or leſs cold than other, the Rains more or leſs violent, and the various Seaſons wet or dry, or the like, ſometimes begin ſooner, and ſometimes continue longer by a Fortnight, or perhaps a Month, ſome Seaſons than others.

The Lands in *Tonquin* which lie towards the Sea Coaſt, ſometimes ſuffer very much by the Rains; eſpecially if they happen unſeaſonably, or before they are provided for them; but theſe Rains improve their mountainous Land; ſo that they ſuffer more by a great Drought, than by heavy Rains, and their Poor, who are very numerous, undergo greater Hardſhips for want of Employment than for want Proviſions, if they have wherewithal to purchaſe it.

CHAP. II.

Deſcribes their Towns, Fortifications, Palaces, and other Buildings, with their Furniture; with an Account of the Genius, *Temper, Stature, Complexion and Habit of the* Tonquineſe; *alſo of their Diet, Liquor, Feſtivals, Diverſions, Roads, and Method of Travelling.*

Cachao deſcribed.

THE City of *Cachao* is the Capital of *Tonquin*; it is ſituate on the Weſt Side of the River *Domea*; it is no way defended either by Wall or Ditch, it contains about twenty thouſand Houſes, ordinary and low, built with Mud Walls and Thatch'd Roofs, but there are ſome, tho' very few of them, built with Brick, and cover'd with Tiles; their principal Streets are wide, but for want of Paving, they are very dirty in wet Weather; and what makes the City leſs pleaſant, there are ſeveral Ditches and Ponds full of black Mud, which in hot dry Weather gives a very offenſive Smell, and yet the City is generally look'd upon to be healthy.

As the Houſes are cover'd with Thatch, and ſo liable to take Fire, every Houſe has in its Yard, or ſome convenient Place, not far from the Houſe, a ſmall arch'd Brick Building like an Oven, about ſix Foot high, wherein to ſecure his moſt valuable Goods in Caſe of Fire; and beſides, the Government enjoins every Houſe-keeper to keep a Jar of Water at the Top of his Houſe, with Buckets ready to quench the Fire, in Caſe any ſhould happen, or if the Fire has prevail'd ſo much that that Means is inſufficient, the Thatch is ſo contrived in large ſquare Panes, that they can throw it all off at once, and they alſo keep Hooks to pull down a Houſe when it is on Fire; and if any Perſon neglect to keep theſe Things conſtantly in readineſs, he is puniſhed for ſuch Neglect as their Law directs.

To prevent and extinguiſh Fire

Palaces.

THERE are three Palaces in the City of *Cachao*, the firſt and handſomeſt is for their *Boua* or King, who reſides in it; it is about three Leagues in Circumference, it has a Wall about fifteen Foot high, and as much in Thickneſs, fac'd on both Sides with Brick, and within the Walls of the Palace there are Parks, Gardens and Canals, ſomething like the Palaces in *China*; beſides the inner Buildings and Apartments reſerved for the Entertainment of the King and his Courtiers.

THE other two Palaces are meanly built, one of them is the Reſidence of the *Chuua* or General; there is a large ſquare Parade before this Palace, with a Building running along one Side of it; here the Generals and Mandarins ſit to ſee the Soldiers perform their Exerciſe: There is alſo another low Building oppoſite to this, where the Train of Artillery is kept, which conſiſts of about fifty or ſixty Iron Guns, from Faulcon to Demiculverin, with two or three whole Culverins, and ſome Iron Mortars, but the Guns and Carriages are neglected, and much out of Repair.

Stables.

AT a ſmall Diſtance from this Palace there is a Stable for two hundred Elephants, kept for the War, or to carry the Generals or their Baggage; there is alſo another Stable for the keeping of about three hundred Horſes.

THE next Buildings worth Obſervation, or indeed all that are worth taking any notice of, are the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Factories: The *Engliſh* Factory are at the North End of the City fronting the River; it is a low built Houſe but ſtrong, and one of the beſt Houſes in the Town; the *Dutch* Factory join to it on the South Side, but it is not altogether ſo large.

THERE are no Cities of any Note in *Tonquin*, beſides *Cachao* and *Hean*, both upon the Banks of the River *Domea*; *Cachao* is the Capital, and higher up the River, and *Hean* is lower down, but the next Place for Trade; it contains about two thouſand Houſes, but lies open without any Defence of Wall or Ditch. They have no eſtabliſh'd Market-Towns, but meet ſometimes at one Village, ſometimes at another, and hold their Markets at them ſeverally by turns. Their common Villages conſiſt of thirty or forty Houſes each, and are pretty near to one another, all over the Country.

IT is obſervable that all thoſe Villages which ſtand in the low Champion *Grounds*, are encompaſſed by large Groves of Trees, and ſurrounded with large Motes and Banks, thrown up very high beyond the Groves, to prevent their Houſes and Gardens from being overflow'd in the wet Seaſons, for all the low Land at theſe Times lie near two or three Foot under Water, ſo that the richer ſort of People that have Boats, row from one Village to another, as Occaſion requires, and thoſe who have no Boats, go to their Knees in Water, or higher, according to the Wetneſs of the Seaſon, and when the dry Weather comes on, the Water that was in the Motes which ſurrounded their Houſes, ſerves to fill the Canals or Ditches which ſeparate their Ground.

IN the hilly and mountainous Part of the Country they have no occaſion for Ditches and Banks about their Houſes, becauſe they are in no danger of being overflow'd, and doubtleſs this more airy and dry Situation muſt be more healthy than where they are ſurrounded with Water for ſo long a Time together. The Partitions in their Houſes are only made of ſplit Cane, and their Windows are only little ſquare Holes to let in the Light, without any Glaſs or other thing in ſtead of it, to keep out the Weather. *Wind-doors.*

FOR Furniture they have Tables, Cabinets and Stools, and ſometimes a Bed or two in their inner Rooms, which, as in other Places, are of more or leſs Value, according to the Ability or Circumſtances of the Family, but every Man has a little Altar in his Houſe, with an Image and two Incenſe Pots upon it, and before that he performs his Devotions: In dry Weather they commonly dreſs their Meat in their Yards, or before their Doors, but in rainy Weather they are obliged to make uſe of ſome of their outward Rooms for a Cook-room, which not being provided with a Chimney, makes the Office of a Cook very troubl ſome and offenſive, by reaſon of the Smoak. *Furniture.*

THE *Tonquineſe*, eſpecially the better Sort and Trading Part of them, that are uſed to Converſation, are courteous and obliging to Strangers, and fair Dealers, not given to Sharping and Tricking like the *Chineſe*; but their Mandarins are proud and imperious, their Soldiers inſolent, and the vulgar Poor ſo given to Thieving, that Strangers when they are amongſt them are forced to keep a very ſtrict Watch over their Goods. *Cuſt. and Temp.*

THEY are ſaid to be both ingenious and induſtrious; they are good Mechanicks, very faithful and diligent, when employ'd as Servants, and ſubmiſſive to Superiors, even to a Fault, which makes their paſſive Temper look rather ſervile than ſubmiſſive, and to be the Effect of a mean Spirit, rather than an humble

ble one; tho' ſome impute this ſlaviſh Diſpoſition to the Tyranny of the Government under which they live: They are patient in Labour, but dejected in Sickneſs; but let their Circumſtances or Abilities be what they will, they are univerſally given to Gaming, inſomuch, that thoſe who have not Money to advance, will venture their Cloaths, rather than be diſappointed of their Game.

Gaming.

Complexion.

THE Natural and Native Complexion of the *Tonquineſe*, is a kind of Tawny, but not ſo black as the *Indians:* They are of a middle Stature, clean-limb'd; they have long black Hair, growing very thick, and hanging down upon their Shoulders; they are not ſo thick-lipp'd as ſome of the downright Blacks, but their Faces are a little flattiſh, and of an oval Form; when they are about twelve or thirteen Years old, they dye their Teeth of a black or a very dark Colour; becauſe, as ſome ſay, they are aſham'd to have white Teeth like the Brutes, but whatever has given the firſt Riſe to this Invention, I ſuppoſe many do it now who know no Reaſon for it, but that it is the Cuſtom of the Country: This Operation for dying their Teeth, takes up three or four Days, during which Time, they dare ſcarce take any Thing inwardly, by reaſon of the Compoſition which they apply to their Teeth being ſo nauſeous, or, as ſome ſay, poiſonous; but be it what it will, they muſt undergo it, or be made the Laughing-ſtock of the Country, for having white Teeth.

Habit.

THEIR Sex is not ſo diſtinguiſhable by their Habit, as their Quality is, for Men and Women are cloathed much alike; but the Habits of the Rich are much more coſtly than that of the Poor; the better Sort wear Silk, but that being common amongſt them, they never think themſelves finer than in a Suit of *Engliſh* Broad Cloth, either Red or Green, with Caps of the ſame Stuff with their Gowns; the Manner of the Dreſs of the common People is a long Gown, bound about with a Saſh; the Gown is made of Cotton Cloth dy'd of a dark Colour for Soldiers or common inferior People, only Soldiers are diſtinguiſh'd by their Gowns being ſhort, and reaching no lower than their Knees, but they have long Drawers under them, which reach down to their Mid-leg; the poor People commonly go bare-headed, except in the rainy Seaſons, and then the Fiſhermen, and others that are expos'd to the Weather, have ſtiff broad-brim'd Hats made of Reeds or Palm Leaves, and ſome of the very pooreſt Sort content themſelves with only a Doublet and a Pair of Drawers, without either Shirt, Shoes or Stockings: The better Sort have Couches or Benches, raiſed about a Foot from the Ground, and cover'd with fine Matts, and theſe go all round the Room where they make their Entertainments, and upon theſe their Friends ſit under an Alcove, having one Cuſhion under them, and another at their Backs during the Viſit, and they are upon ſuch Occaſions very ſociable and generous.

Eating.

RICE is ſo plenty with them, that they boil it and ſerve it up as their moſt common Diſh; and next to that, they eat Pork in little Bits and ſpit them together, and roaſt them; they alſo eat Beef, Fowls, Buffaloes Fleſh, and the Fleſh of Goats and domeſtick Cattle; ſuch as Horſes, Dogs, Cats and Locuſts; with all Sorts of Eggs, Fiſh, Roots and Herbs, they ſometimes cut their raw Pork ſmall, like Meat for Sauſages, and make it up in little Balls, and ſo eat it without any other dreſſing: They ſinge the Hair off their Bullocks, as ſome in *England* do with Hogs, and ſteep raw Slices of it in Vinegar for three or four Hours, and this they eat or treat a Friend with as a great Rarity: They look upon Horſe-fleſh to be as good as Beef, and the poor People will eat the Fleſh of Elephants, tho' they die a natural Death; the Trunk of the Elephant is ſo much valued, that it is often preſented to ſome Mandarin or great Man, as a delicious Diſh; they alſo eat Sea-Turtle, Crabs, Craw-Fiſh, Shrimps and Prawns; alſo Frogs is a Diſh much in Vogue with them; they have likewiſe a ſmall Fiſh like an Anchovey, which they pickle before they uſe it; they throw their ſmall Fiſh and Shrimps into a Jar of ſalted Water, made very weak, which after ſtanding a little Time, is reduc'd to a Math or Pap, which they call *Ballachaun*; and when the Compoſition has ſtood a while, they draw the Liquor off, as we do our Wort in Brewing; this Liquor they call *Neuknum*, which both the Natives, and alſo the *Europeans*, when there, eſteem very good Sauce; the poor People mix their boil'd Rice with *Ballachaun*, to give it a Reliſh, for it is ſo inſipid of it ſelf, without ſomething of that kind, that when they have no *Ballachaun*, they mix their boil'd Rice with dry'd Fiſh, or ſalted Eggs inſtead thereof, for the ſame Purpoſe.

THE People of Faſhion or Quality have generally Fleſh, Fiſh or Fowl at their Tables every Day, which is ſerved up in little Plates of lacquer'd Wood; a Number of which Plates, proportionable to the Quantity of Gueſts, or the Number of the Family, are laid on the Table; and the Meat being firſt cut into little Pieces, they eat it with their Chop-Sticks, as in *China*, and uſe no Knives, Forks, Spoons, nor Linnen at the Table.

Keep Eggs ſeveral Years.

THEY have a way of encloſing Eggs up in Balls made of Salt, Brine and Aſhes, and keep them in a earthen Pot ſtopp'd cloſe; and by this means, they will keep ſeveral Years, and are very commodious for Fiſhermen and others, that are much upon the Water, to take along with them to eat with their boil'd Rice, inſtead of the *Ballachaun*, which they cannot ſo conveniently carry abroad; and when they go to Victuals, (which amongſt the Fiſhermen when upon the Water, is boil'd Rice) they break one of their Eggs, and take about the Quantity of a Hazle Nut with every Mouthful of Rice, which ſerves inſtead of Sauce to give it a Reliſh.

Drink.

THE Liquor which they moſt commonly drink is Tea; it is ſold by the Women in the Markets, or Places of Concourſe and publick Reſort; they have alſo a Spirit call'd *Arrack*, which they ſometimes drink with their Tea, and ſometimes alone; but it has the moſt diſagreeable Taſte of any that is found in *India*, but it is look'd upon as a great Cordial, eſpecially when they have infuſed Snakes and Scorpions in it, for then they reckon it an Antidote againſt Poiſon; and none but particular Friends, or thoſe to whom they bear the greateſt Reſpect, are treated with this Sort of Dram.

Betel and *Arek*.

WHEN a Perſon happens to pay a Viſit to a Friend, the firſt Entertainment is *Betel* and *Arek*: *Betel* is a Leaf, and *Arek* is a Sort of Nut; and their Manner of eating it is, to wrap up ſeveral little Slices of the *Arek* Nut in the *Betel* Leaf, and daubing it over with *Chunam*, a Thing like Lime made into Mortar, they put the little Balls in their Mouths, and chew it as the *Engliſh* do Tobacco, and ſo much is it uſed in this Manner, that the common People keep Boxes in their Pockets, or about them, like our Tobacco Boxes, with ſeveral of theſe little Balls of *Betel* Leaves and *Arek* Nuts, made up as above, to be ready to chew upon any Occaſion, and the better Sort have commonly finer Boxes, finely gilded or lacquer'd, furniſh'd with theſe Balls, which they commonly offer to a Stranger at his firſt coming in; and there is a great Ceremony in accepting or receiving the Favour, which muſt be done with the Right Hand; it being reckon'd ill Manners either to deny it, and not receive it at all, or to receive it with the Left Hand, that Hand not being to be imploy'd finely, except in the moſt ſervile Offices; they have ſuch an Averſion to a Left-handed Man here, that he can never gain any Reſpect amongſt them, tho' he were poſſeſs'd of ever

ſo

so many the most excellent Qualifications; but setting aside this, and some other little Ceremonies and Prejudices, they are so kind to Foreigners, that after once they have contracted an Acquaintance, it is customary with them once in two or three Days to send the Foreigner a Present of *Betel*, and enquire after his Health; in Answer to which Favour, the Master expects that the Foreigner should make the Servant some grateful Return.

An Opiate. THIS Composition of *Betel* and *Arek* is reckon'd a Sort of an Opiate, but whether its sleepy Effects be peculiar to one or the other, or whether neither of them has this Effect till they are incorporated together, is uncertain; however, the Nature of it is (not only to Strangers, but to the Natives that are us'd to it) to draw People to sleep, or cast them into a pleasant Dream, which makes them delight so much in it, and besides that, they are mighty fond of the red Colour that it gives their Lips while they are chewing it, tho' the red Stuff they spit at the that Time, is very nauseous to Strangers, and of a disagreeable Smell; the better Sort of People have a Servant to attend them wheresoever they go, whose sole Business is to carry a Pot after them, to spit in when they chew *Betel*, but whether it is to save the Spittle for the Value of it, for some Use they can make of it, or to prevent their spitting such nauseous Stuff upon the Floor, to be seen by the People they converse with, and be offensive to them, we cannot determine.

Festivals. THEY have two annual Feasts, which are publickly and strictly observed, the first or chief of them is The New Year. held at the beginning of their New-Year; this Feast begins at the first New Moon after the Middle of *January*, (which is the first Day of the Year with them) which Feast continues for ten or twelve Days together, during which Time there is a general Cessation from all Business; every Body dresses in their best Cloaths, and Gaming, Drinking, and other Diversions, are so much their Exercise during this Time, that the poor People at their own Expence, or perhaps assisted by the Generosity of the Rich, will be exceeding generous upon this Occasion.

Harvest Festival. BUT another great Festival with them, is after their getting in of the first Harvest, which is celebrated with great Rejoicing upon that Occasion, the first and fifteenth Day of every Moon (by which is doubtless intended the New Moon and Full Moon) are great Holidays, in which they perform their Devotions with a more than common Zeal: At the Times of these Feasts they bring Victuals and Drink to the Sepulchres of their deceas'd Friends, with which the *Bonzes* or Priests (more cunning than superstitious upon that Account) regale themselves when the People that brought it are gone: Many of their Quality and great Men solemnize their Birth-day with feasting and rejoicing, as is common in *England*, and upon that Occasion are complemented by their Friends and Relations.

Comedies. THEY excel in the Acting of Comedies, which is one grand Part of their Entertainment at their Festivals; they are commonly acted in the Night-time, and last from Sun-set to Sun-rise, there are Victuals upon the Table all the Time the Play is acting, that all the Audience may chuse whether they will eat or hear, and amongst the Generality the former is as much if not more minded than the latter.

Other Diversions. THEY have no great opportunity for the Exercise of Hunting, the Country not being so proper for that Sport, by reason that there is little Cover for the Game, and the Frequency of Rivers and large Canals hinders the Chase; but they abound with good Fish, and hence Fishing is their chief and most profitable Diversion.

Travelling. THEIR many Rivers and Canals gives them a great Opportunity of Travelling by Water, and for that reason it is much practised; but their Highways and Bridges are in very good Repair, and though they have no publick Inns upon the Road, yet for a small Journey they can support themselves with a Box of *Betel* and *Arek*, and if they are Travelling further, they may take a little raw Meat along with them, and they are sure to find Fire and Water, and other Conveniences for dressing it, at or near the Road.

THE great Convenience of Water Carriage, makes less occasion for Carriage by Land, but yet when that is required, as when their Generals and great Men enter the Field, and their Baggage is required to be carried, this is generally perform'd by Elephants, and as they have few other Beasts of Burden, they make use of Porters for smaller Burdens, especially in the upland Country, where they have not such an opportunity for Water Carriage.

CHAP. III.

Gives an Account of their Manufactures, Trade and Navigation; as also of their Soil, Husbandry, Plants, Animals and Minerals.

Manufacture of Silk. THE Kingdom of *Tonquin* produceth abundance of Silk, of different Sorts, as Soolees, Pelongs, Hawkins, Peniascoes and Gause, the Gause and Pelongs are sometimes flower'd, and sometimes plain; together with several other sorts of Silks, of which the *English* and *Dutch* buy up great Quantities.

Lacquer'd Ware. ANOTHER great Manufacture of this Kingdom, is their Lacquer'd-Ware, which is accounted the best in the World, except that of *Japan*, which Difference is occasion'd more by the Wood, than by the Paint or Varnish, the *Japan* Wood being much better than that of *Tonquin*.

THE Lack of *Tonquin* is of the same Nature, and produced in the same Manner as that of *Japan*. (*See Chap.* II. *of our Description of the Kingdom of* Japan.) The Cabinets which they lacquer, are made of Pine-Trees, a Wood something like Fir, but not so good, and their Joiners are but indifferent Mechanicks: The Lacquer Houses are reckon'd very unwholsome, by reason of the poisonous Quality of the Ingredients there used and manufactur'd; but for that and other Particulars peculiar to the Lack, and the Method of laying it on, *&c.* we shall refer the Reader to Chap. II. of the Description of *Japan*, both the Lack and Manner of using it being much the same there and in *Tonquin*. Reference to *Japan*.

Earthen Ware. IN *Tonquin* they make great Quantities of a coarse Earthen Ware, of a grey Colour; which, besides what they use themselves, they export to the *Malayan* Countries, and other Parts of *India*: From hence also they export Turpentine, Musk, Rhubarb, Drugs and several other Sorts of Drugs; but these are not so much the Product of *Tonquin*, as of *China*, from whence they come to *Tonquin*; nor do the *Tonquinese* work any Mines of Gold, Silver, or any other Gold and Silver. Metal themselves, if they have any such Thing; but are chiefly supply'd with them from *China*, but have

have conſiderable Quantities of Silver from *Japan*: In this Country are Lignum Aloes, in the Goodneſs of which there is ſo great a Difference, that if it be cloſe and oily, a Piece as big as a Pea will perfume a Room, as much as a Piece as big as one's Fiſt that is dry; and the Price is proportionable to its Goodneſs; it being ſold from three Crowns a Pound to a Thouſand, and other Quantities in Proportion; they have alſo in this Country a Sort of Red-wood of uſe in Dying, and is ſomething like the Log-wood brought from the Bay of *Campeachy*, but it grows not quite ſo large.

Tonquin abounds in Silk, but by reaſon of the ill Conduct of the Natives, they have not the Advantage of ſelling it to the *Engliſh*, nor the *Engliſh* of buying it of them, that might be procur'd to both; for the great Lords Proprietors of the Land keep the common People ſo miſerably poor, that tho' the Silk is ready for Manufacturing, yet the labouring People are kept in ſuch a ſtarving and ſlaviſh Condition, that they cannot go to Work, for want of Money to purchaſe Materials to work with, and Stock to work on, till the Foreign Merchants advance Money to ſupply them, and ſet them to work, and then are forc'd to wait ſeveral Months till their Goods are wrought and ready: Indeed the *Dutch* who trade here, not ſticking at Conſcience where Intereſt is concern'd, have found out a Way to contract a temporary Marriage with Women of the Country, and put them in full Commiſſion to buy up Goods and Materials at the dead Seaſons, when Goods are cheapeſt, and employ the Poor when they can have no Employment from their own Grandees and Maſters, for the Reaſons abovemention'd; by this means, the *Dutch* taking advantage of their Poverty and want of Buſineſs, have not only their Work done cheaper, but have their Goods ready againſt their Ships arrive, and hence not only the *Dutch* themſelves acquire good Eſtates, by that quick Diſpatch and cheap Management in Trade, but alſo their Female Factors and Quondam Wives enrich themſelves, and ſome of them have been Matches for their greateſt Lords, when their *Dutch* Husbands have done with them and quitted them.

Ill Management.

The *Tonquineſe* have no Ships fit to encounter with a long Voyage, nor export little in their own Veſſels, except Fiſh and Rice, and ſuch common Things in a neighbouring Trade; but moſt of their Trade in Silks and other valuable Commodities is carried on by foreign Shipping, who fetch thoſe Goods away, and in their way bring Goods from other Places to *Tonquin*, as *Engliſh* Broad-Cloth, Cloth-Raſhes, Sulphur, Salt-Petre, Pepper and other Spices; alſo Lead and great Guns, of which the Long-Saker is moſt valued.

Lank Trapping.

They are fair in their Dealings, and ſtrict to their Contracts, for though the Merchants (except the *Dutch* as before obſerved) are forced to advance Money, and ſtay for their Goods, yet when the Poor get to Work, they are very induſtrious and punctual in point of Performance: The Guns and *Engliſh* Broad-Cloth may in one reſpect be reckon'd the worſt ſort of Goods to carry there, and eſpecially the Guns, becauſe the King is the only Perſon to be depended upon to purchaſe them, and his Pay is worſe than any of his Subjects, and the Broad-Cloth may come into this Article, which being ſo much eſteem'd, is not to be purchaſed but by the King, Nobles or great Men, and their Pay is reckon'd the worſt, in proportion to their Grandeur and Dignity.

Fair Dealers.

Besides their Fiſhers Boats, they have a ſort of long Galleys, but they are fit only for a Coaſt or River Trade, and even that but in good Weather; but as they have a great deal of both Coaſt and River Fiſhing, that Trade employs a great number of Hands, and ſome of them make it ſo conſtantly their Buſineſs, that many of them, with their whole Families, live altogether upon the Water. Their Shore abounds with Torroiſes, which by the Sailors are commonly called Sea Turtles.

Torroiſes or Turtles.

There are no Vines in this Country, nor much of any Grain except Rice, in which they abound; they have two Crops of it every Year, if the Rains are ſeaſonable, for it depends very much upon that, becauſe here (as in *China*) it delights in Ground that is ſo wet, as to be reduced to a Mire, or Pulp, and growing even in the Water till it is Ripe, and if their Ground be overflow'd in the Harveſt, yet they do not loſe their Crop, but reap their Rice, and make it up in little Bundles and hang them up till they are dry, which will ſoon be in this hot Country, and the Rice not damaged. For Roots and Garden-Stuff they have Yams, Potatoes and Onions, alſo Plantons, Bonanoes, Mangoes, Cocoa-Nuts, Limes, Guava's and Pine-Apples, and two ſorts of Oranges, larger and ſmaller; the larger Sort have a fine Smell and a good Taſte, and may be eaten without Danger, and are accounted by ſome Travellers the beſt in the World, but the other, which has a ſmooth thin Rind, and is a deep Red within and without, is reckon'd a very unwholſome Fruit, and cauſeth the Flux, though it taſtes almoſt as well as the other; the Oranges are in Seaſon from *October* till *February*; their Limes are as big as ordinary Lemons, they are round and have ſmooth Skins, they are full of Juice, but not ſo ſharp as leſſer Limes, that grow in other Countries.

Roots and Garden-Stuff

The *Betel* Leaf before ſpoken of and ſo much valued, is very plenty here: They abound in Mulberry-Trees, but make little uſe of the Fruit, they account the Leaves of moſt Advantage to them, for the nouriſhing of their Silk-Worms; they plant new Slips of Mulberry-Trees every Year, and reckon the Leaves of thoſe tender Plants to be much better for the Silk-Worms than the Leaves of the full grown Trees; they have the Fruit called *Li-chee* here, which being the ſame that was deſcribed in Chap. V. of *China*, we refer the Reader to it there; here is good Timber for Shipping as well as Houſes, and the Pine-Tree will ſerve for Maſts.

Timber.

They have Elephants of an extraordinary Size, in the woody and mountainous Part of this Country; there is abundance of Cows, Buffaloes and Hogs; they have but few Horſes, no Lions nor Aſſes, nor any Sheep, but ſome few that is kept for the King's Uſe, there are but few Deers or Hares, but great Plenty of Hens, as alſo of Geeſe and Ducks, both wild and tame; they had no way of taking wild Fowl but by their Nets, till the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* taught the Natives to ſhoot them; there is a ſort of a Locuſt which the Natives eſteem as good Food, it breeds in the Banks of Rivers and Ditches, and is about the Bignets of a Man's Finger; there are very few ſmall Birds in the Country, but ſwarms of Gnats, which are very troubleſome; their Ants are ſo numerous and miſchievous, that ſome Travellers tell us they will eat thro' a Bale of Silk in twenty four Hours, and will do it ſo ſmooth as if it had been cut with a Saw.

Animals.

There are no ſweet Flowers in their Gardens but one, which they call Bangue; it grows upon a Shrub that creeps upon the Ground, and is as broad as a large Noſegay.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Learning of the Tonquineſe, *their Language and Characters, Arts Liberal and Mechanick; their Government, Forces, Magiſtrates, Laws and Puniſhments.*

Learning. LEARNING is ſo much valued in *Tonquin*, that it is made the Condition of Preferment, for no Perſon can be prefer'd to any Poſt in the Government, except he have gone through a Courſe of Studies, and taken his Degrees; but their Conditions of Preferment, Degrees of Learning, and Manner of Examination being generally the ſame as in *China*, we ſhall refer the Reader to our Deſcription of that Empire, Chap. VI.

Characters. THEY uſe the ſame Characters with the *Chineſe*, though their Dialect differs from them; their Language comes neareſt to the *Chineſe*, or may rather be ſaid to be a Branch of it, than a Language Writing. of itſelf; and in Writing they begin at the Top, and proceed to the Bottom; their Phyſicians do not much ſtudy Books, but are very inquiſitive into the Nature of Simples, and truſt more to the beating of the Pulſe, than to any other Means, to find out the Nature, Cauſe and Effects of the Diſeaſe; they never let Blood, but uſe Cauterizing, of all which we need not repeat the Deſcription, they being the ſame as in *China*, for which ſee the Chapter of *China* above-mention'd.

Handy-Crafts. THEY have generally all kind of Handy-Crafts and Mechanicks amongſt them, as Smiths, Carpenters, Weavers, Turners, Taylors, Potters, Paper-Makers, Painters, Bell-Founders, *&c.* they have a ſort of Paper made of Silk, but the beſt is made of the Bark of a certain Tree; it is pounded in large Troughs with wooden Peſtles, and is much preferable to the other for writing upon: The changing of Money is a great Buſineſs here amongſt the Women, who are as dextrous at it as our Stock-Jobbers in *Exchange-Alley*, one finding out as artful ways to riſe and fall the Price of their Cath, as the other do to raiſe and fall their Stocks, when they ſee occaſion.

Government. THE Conſtitution of this Government differs from moſt of what we have heard of; the Prime Miniſter has the Command of all the Forces and Treaſure of the Kingdom, and he it is that receives the Compliments and other Applications of all Men, eſpecially for about a hundred Years laſt paſt, ſo that the rightful Prince enjoys little more than the bare Title, or elſe looks upon it as a Privilege, to eaſe himſelf of the Fatigues of Government; for if the King or *Boua* have Sons, he is ſucceeded in his Title by one of them, and the next Heir of the *Choua* or Prime Miniſter, ſucceeds him in the Adminiſtration of the Government; at the firſt of this Uſurpation of the Prime Miniſter to the Dignity and Authority of King, the Prince was in a great meaſure depoſed from his Power, but ſuffer'd to enjoy his Title of King or *Boua*, that the Uſurpation of the Prime Miniſter might make the leſs Noiſe, and not be ſo much taken notice of; but before this Revolution, the King of *Tonquin* was alſo King of *Cochin-China*, keeping the ſupreme Authority in his own Hand, and with an almoſt abſolute Power, ſubſtituted a General under him in each Kingdom.

Uſurpation. BUT theſe Generals proved at laſt too powerful for their Monarch, though not by Combination or joint Appointment, but ſeparately; the General of *Cochin-China* firſt breaking the Ice, threw off his Allegiance, and ſet up for himſelf, and the General of *Tonquin*, animated by the other's Succeſs, follow'd his Example, took all the Forces and Revenues of the Crown into his own Poſſeſſion, making the King or *Boua* a Priſoner of State in his own Houſe; nor can he command either Privilege or Diverſion, but what the *Choua* allows him; he ſuffers him to have his Title continued to him as above, and to divert himſelf with his Women and Children, and ſometimes to receive a ſort of Homage from the Mandarins and the People, who continue to be devoted to him, to pray for him, and to think it is a great Affliction to them if he ſhould die without Iſſue, the *Choua* as well as the People paying him, ſeemingly, the moſt profound Reſpect, affirming that he only takes upon him the Adminiſtration of the Government, to make the Life of his Prince the more eaſy, and his Enjoyments the leſs interrupted; the Foreign Ambaſſadors addreſs themſelves to the *Boua* or King as if he was ſtill inveſted with Royal Dignity; but this is but at certain Seaſons, when the *Choua* pleaſeth to ſuffer it, nor is he ſuffer'd to have any Attendants, but ſome few, and thoſe choſen by the *Choua*, and ſuch as are in his Intereſt, nor muſt any of his Subjects approach him, but ſuch as are ſo, nor has he any Guard allow'd him,

Guards. THE *Choua* has his Guards in readineſs, both of Horſe and Foot, and Elephants, to the Number of two or three hundred, and an Army of thirty thouſand Men quarter'd in and about *Cachao*, beſides ſeventy or eighty thouſand Men which he keeps in Pay in other Parts of the Kingdom; for all the Forces, Civil and Military, as well as the Revenues, are at his Diſpoſal; thoſe that are quarter'd in the more remote Parts of the Kingdom, are moſtly Foot, arm'd with Broad Swords and Match Locks; they make their own Gun-powder in little Hand-Mills, but they cannot corn it as we do in *England*; every Soldier has his Cartouch-Box, and inſtead of Cartridges, they have little Canes filled with Powder, every one of which holds juſt a Charge, and thus accoutred, they will load and fire with great Dexterity and Quickneſs.

Soldiers choſe by Eating. IN order to their Soldiers being able Men, every Village is obliged to ſend the ſtouteſt they can pick out, and leſt the *Choua* ſhould be deceived in his Choice, he tries them by their Stomachs, as ſuppoſing, the greateſt Eaters are the beſt Soldiers, and fitteſt to be employ'd in his Service as Guards.

FOR the better Improvement of their Soldiers in Shooting, there are frequent Shooting-Matches, and for their Encouragement, every one is rewarded according to the Nearneſs and Goodneſs of his Shoot, and he that makes the worſt in the File, is, as a Mortification, obliged to do double Duty next Time that he mounts the Guard.

THE greateſt part of their Forces, except thoſe quarter'd in and about *Cachao*, are upon the Frontiers of *Cochin-China*; for ſince the Diviſion of theſe two Kingdoms into their preſent Conſtitution, as being under two diſtinct Generals or Governors, there are continual Bickerings and frequent Skirmiſhes between the Out-Guards of each, but they ſeldom amount to any thing material.

WHEN the Armies have occaſion to take the Field, they are obliged to do it in the dry Seaſon, it being impoſſible to march or encamp during the

the heavy Rains; and when the Army marches, the Generals and principal Officers are carried upon Elephants, where they have little Apartments; and when they take the Field, they never carry any Field-Pieces, nor but little Baggage, but they have Guns about six or seven Foot long in the Barrel, which being too heavy to be managed without something to support them, they have Crutches to rest them upon when they fire them, and then they are soon pitch'd or removed, and serve chiefly to clear a Pass, or fire cross a River, and seem adapted to light Skirmishes rather than pitch'd Battles.

No Men of War

THEY have no large Men of War, but some light Galleys of sixty or seventy Foot long, and very narrow, the Head and Stern very high, as ten or twelve Foot above the Water, and the Middle not above two or three; the Residence for the Captain or Commander is at the Stern, as in *Europe*, having their Cabbins or Apartments gilded or painted; the Soldiers row, but have an Awning or Covering over them, to keep them from the Rain; they row with their Faces forward, and push their Oars from them; they strike all at once, having a Person that keeps Time and gives the Word, which the Rowers answer; they draw but between two and three Foot Water, and are only fit to venture to Sea in calm Weather.

As they have not much martial Exercise for their Soldiers, they find another Employment for them; for besides their Rowing in the Galleys, they employ them as Custom-house Officers, both upon their Rivers and Roads, to prevent the running of Goods; they also serve for Watchmen in their Cities and Towns, in which Office they are often rude and troublesome, and there is seldom any Redress obtain'd by complaining to their Officers, but rather a Fine for Complaining; the easiest way to get quietly past them, is to give them a little Money, and then they will generally use a Person civilly.

No Courts of Justice

THEY have no publick Courts, crowded with Lawyers, Attorneys and Solicitors; but a single Magistrate, which may be supposed to be of the Nature of one of our Justices of the Peace, hath a Power to cause any Offender to be brought before him, and to inflict upon them any Punishment, which according to the Laws of their Country is justly proportionable to their Demerit, (from whence it is natural to infer, that a Person cannot be qualified as such a Magistrate, without a through understanding of the Laws of the Country;) there is no formal Process, nor Time allow'd for an Appeal, but what Sentence he pronounceth is executed immediately.

Manner of Execution.

PERSONS guilty of Capital Crimes, as Murder and the like, are commonly beheaded, and the more to expose them, and terrify others from the like Offences, the Execution is generally perform'd before the Person's own Door, or elsewhere the Fact was committed; the Criminal stands upon the Ground with his Legs stretch'd out, and the Executioner with a Back-Sword strikes off his Head at one Blow; they never hang People for Stealing, but punish that Crime with cutting off some part of the Body, in proportion to the Nature of the Crime; for petty Thefts they cut off one Joint of a Finger, and for higher Crimes the whole Finger, or the whole Hand, *&c.* according to the Nature of the Offence; but Adultery is deem'd such a heinous Crime, that if a Woman be taken in it, or convicted of it, she is thrown to an Elephant, who though he doth not eat her as if he was a Beast of Prey, yet he tosseth her up in the Air and then treads upon her, till he tramples her to Pieces and kills her. Adultery punish'd.

THEY punish other Offences of a less heinous Nature with slighter Punishments, as loading them with Iron Chains and wooden Clogs, and in such Cases the Punishment consists more in being exposed than in any corporal Suffering; sometimes they have a great heavy Board made with a Hole in it, to shut about their Necks like a Pillory, and this they wear a Week, two or three, or sometimes a Month, according to the Nature of the Offence; again, some Offenders are punished with a certain Number of Strokes upon their naked Bodies with a split Bambou, and when any Person has suffer'd any of those inferior Punishments, he is look'd upon as infamous and contemptible: They do not confine their Debtors in Gaols, where they can neither pay their Debts nor maintain themselves, nor have they large Fees or Civility Money to pay to any Body, when they cannot pay their Debts; but when they are taken into Custody, they become Prisoners to the Creditor only, and work for him till the Debt is either paid, or so far satisfied, as the Creditor is content with, he at the same Time allowing the Prisoner a poor Subsistence of Rice and Water during his Confinement, which, though doubtless it is a miserable penurious Life, yet it is better than Starving in a Gaol, without any Opportunity of Working themselves out of Debt, or any hopes of its ever being paid.

THE Mandarins, though they are most of them Eunuchs, and have no Children to succeed them, yet they are excessively covetous, and guilty of Oppression and Extortion; and yet if any Complaints are made to the Government, they are seldom regarded or redress'd, because as they generally die without Issue, all their Wealth falls to the Government, and it is supposed it is with this covetous View that the Government allows none but Eunuchs to be prefer'd to the Dignity of Mandarin; and yet these Mandarins keep young Girls to toy and divert themselves with, and sometimes lend or recommend them to the *Europeans* that trade thither, to make use of as they please, and thank them for their Trouble too.

Oaths.

THEY administer an Oath of Fidelity to the Subject every Year, which Ceremony is perform'd by drinking a Cup of the Blood of some Fowls mix'd with Arrack, which they reckon the most solemn Tie that they can lay themselves under.

THEY have little or no Coin of their own, but some foreign Money, especially *Spanish* Reals, go current amongst them; their other Money, if it may be so called, is little Bits of Silver, which they pay by Weight, having always Scales about them for that Purpose.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of their Religion, Temples and Superſtition.

Religion. TONQUIN having been formerly a Province of *China*, their Religion is much the ſame, (ſee Chap. VIII. of the Deſcription of *China*) yet differ in ſome Particulars; they have a great Variety of Images, but the Elephant and the Horſe are the moſt common; their Temples, called by them Pagodes, are ſome of them, eſpecially in the Country, very mean wooden Buildings, with no better Roof than Thatch, and ſo little as to have but juſt Room to contain the Image that is to be plac'd in them, but in the great Towns they are ſomething better; their Prieſts live a very auſtere Life, which ſeems rather to be the effect of Neceſſity than Choice; for they have but little Subſiſtence except the Offerings of the poor People, which ſeldom amounts higher than two or three handfuls of Rice, or a little *Betel*, or ſome ſuch Trifle, and their Houſes are as poor as their way of Living; they commonly live near their Temple, to be ready to offer up the Petitions of their People, which they deliver to the Prieſts in Writing, and they read it aloud before the Idol, and afterwards burn it in the Incenſe-Pot, the Petitioner proſtrating himſelf upon the Ground all the Time that the Ceremony is performing.

How the Rich offer their Prayers. AND it is no wonder that the Prieſts are poor; for the richer ſort of People, that might be able to make them better Preſents, do not employ them, they do not go to the Pagodes or Temples, but chuſe ſome open Court about their own Houſes, to offer up their Prayers in, and one of their Servants or Attendants ſupplies the place of Prieſt, in reading the Petition, the Maſter in the mean Time lying proſtrate upon the Earth; the Paper conſiſts of Prayers and Thankſgivings, and contains an Account of the Bleſſings the Perſon has received, as Health, Riches, Honour, the Prince's Favour and (if he be old) long Life, and concludes with a Prayer for the Continuance and Increaſe of them, which being done, he that read the Paper ſets it on Fire with the Ruſhes that ſtand burning in an Incenſe-Pot, and with it they throw ſome little Parcels of gilded Paper into the Fire, which all conſume together, and this they do before their Houſhold Gods, before whom an Altar is erected for that Purpoſe; upon ſuch Occaſions they dreſs great Plenty of good Proviſions, and when the reading is over, and the Maſter riſes from the Ground, he orders his Servants and other poor People that are about him, to fall to and make their Hearts merry; ſo that their Religion and Piety produceth that agreeable Effect Charity, in feeding the Poor and Hungry.

Superſtition. THEY are great Bigots to Aſtrology, and conſult the Pretenders to this Art upon every Occaſion of Moment, to know lucky or unlucky Days and Hours to begin a Journey, or to undertake any Enterprize; they call every Hour of the Day by the Name of ſome Beaſt or living Creature, as the Horſe, the Tyger, the Elephant, and the like, and as every Hour has ſome Beaſt or Creature apply'd to it, every Body muſt be born under ſome of them, and though this ſeems ridiculous at firſt, yet I cannot ſee that it differs much from the Method of our Aſtrologers in *Europe*, who divide the Heavens into twelve Signs, and call them the Ram, the Bull, the Twins, the Crab, the Lion, *&c.* and by them undertake to foretel depending Events; however, the uſe that the *Tonquineſe* make of this Application of the Beaſts to the Hours is, that they look upon that Beaſt which governed or repreſented the Hour under which the Perſon is born, to be ominous and dangerous to him, and are careful to avoid them, leſt it ſhould ſome time or other prove fatal to them, nor do they care to go about any Buſineſs of Importance in the Hour which is govern'd by that Beaſt under which they were born: Hiſtory gives us an Account of a Prince in this Country that was born in the Hour of the Horſe, and therefore would never give Audience nor ſtir out of his Palace in the Hour of the Horſe, for fear of ſome ill Conſequence attending it; they reckon it very unlucky to meet a Woman at the firſt going out in the Morning, and ſome are ſo ſuperſtitious, that if that happens they will go directly home again, and not ſtir out for ſeveral Hours.

Chriſtianity. THE Chriſtian Religion is not encouraged by the Government, but great Numbers of the poorer ſort encline to embrace it, although ſome People would inſinuate that theſe poor People were induced to it only for the ſake of the Rice that was diſtributed amongſt them by the Miſſionaries; but this ſeems not to be the Caſe, but that there are probably many of the richer ſort converted, for it is very unlikely that the ſeveral Chriſtian Churches now in that Kingdom could be built by ſuch poor Objects of Charity as were glad to receive an Alms or Charity at the Hands of the Miſſionaries, and that of ſo mean and trifling a Nature as a little Rice, a thing ſo common and cheap amongſt them; the Miſſionaries formerly indeed durſt not publickly propagate the Chriſtian Religion, but reſided as Merchants, and were not ſuffer'd to dwell at *Cachao*, but when they were ſent for to the Mandarins to teach them Mathematicks, or to do any Mechanical Performance for them, as mending their Clocks and Watches, they took the opportunity of this Converſation to promote the Chriſtian Religion.

CHAP. VI.

Of their Women, Marriages, Funeral Rites and Mourning.

Wives. THEY purchaſe Wives here as in *China*, (ſee Chap. IX. of *China*) nor are they any way limited as to their Number of Wives, except as their Pockets or Abilities limit them; for every Man may have as many as he can purchaſe or maintain, and if a Man happen to purchaſe more Wives, or have more Children than he can maintain, he is allow'd to ſell ſome to maintain the reſt; it is common there, and thought no Crime, to let their Daughters out to *European* Merchants and Mariners

Mariners who Trade there, and this is common, not only with the poorer Sort to raiſe Money, but with the Rich, who think thereby to have the Complexion of their Poſterity of a fairer Hue; for though it is ſaid of the right Blacks, that the blacker they are, the handſomer they look upon themſelves to be, yet amongſt theſe Tawnies they value themſelves the nearer they come to white, and that is the Reaſon that they chuſe to have their Women to co-habit with white Men, and though the Men are to ſtay but a ſhort Time, they may go when they pleaſe, they are never called to account for the keeping of the Child; and if Women by this means get more Children than they can well maintain, they ſell what they can ſpare and keep the reſt, as we do with any ſort of Cattle or Merchandize, ſo that Children are ſo far from being a Charge, that they are an Advantage; for whereas in *England*, the more Children a Man has the more he has to maintain, and the greater his Charge, but there the more Children a Man has, the more Money they will fetch, if he have occaſion to ſell them.

Marriages. They are very Prodigal in celebrating their nuptial Feaſts, and yet obliged to be governed by their Ability; the Feaſts of the pooreſt Sort ſeldom laſt leſs than three Days, and the Rich longer, according to their Pleaſure or Circumſtances: A Divorce. Man may divorce his Wife for a ſmall Offence, but a Woman has not that Privilege, except for a notorious Crime; all the Ceremony that is uſed when a Man puts away his Wife, is, they take one of each of their Chop-ſticks, ſuch as they eat with, and break them both in two, the Man keeping one half and the Woman the other half of each of them, and ſo they part; but if the Man had any Goods with his Wife he is obliged to reſtore them to her, and if they have any Children he is obliged to keep them.

Funerals. In *Tonquin* they do not burn their Dead as in *Japan*, but bury them in their own Ground, for they have no common Burying-Places, and within a Month after the Burial they make a great Feaſt at the Grave, and the Prieſt attends, and if the Deceas'd was a Perſon of Quality, there is a Tower of Wood built ſlightly over his Grave, about ſeven or eight Foot ſquare, and five and twenty Foot high, and about twenty Yards from the Tower on every ſide of it are little Huts or Sheds ſet up, and ſtored with all ſorts of Proviſions: When the People are aſſembled, the Prieſt mounts the Tower, and makes a Speech ſuitable to the Occaſion, and then comes down, which done, the People ſet Fire to the Tower, which being but ſlightly built, as above obſerved, is ſoon reduced to Aſhes, and then the People fall to Eating and Drinking, and are very merry. Mr. *Dampier* gives an Account of one of thoſe Funerals that he was preſent at, agreeable to the Account above, and adds in particular, that at that Solemnity there were fifty or ſixty Hogs cut out, and the greateſt Quantity of Oranges for the Entertainment of the Gueſts that he had ever ſeen together while he was at *Tonquin*.

Burial of a King. But when the King of *Tonquin* dies, he lies in State threeſcore and five Days, during all which time the Meat is ſerved up at his Table every Day as if he was alive, all which Victuals the *Bonzes* and poor People conſume or divide amongſt them; when the lying in State is over, the Corps is interr'd in the Burying-Place of the Royal Family with great Funeral Pomp; the Ground is cover'd all the Way with violet-colour'd Callico, which is the King's Colour; the Journey to the Burying-Ground generally takes up ſeventeen Days, by reaſon of the State and Solemnity with which they walk, though otherwiſe it is not above two Days Journey; the Mandarins upon this Occaſion wear Mourning for three Years, thoſe of the Houſhold nine Months, the Nobility ſix, and the common People three Months, but there are no Diverſions, ſuch as Shows or the like uſed for three Years, except at the Coronation of the ſucceeding Prince.

The Reader may obſerve, that through the whole courſe of this Univerſal Hiſtory, where two Kingdoms are Contiguous, as their Religion, Language, Cuſtoms, &c. are the ſame, we ſhall refer to the Deſcription of the former; as for Inſtance, in the foregoing Chapter, ſpeaking of the Religion of Tonquin, *which is the ſame with that of* China, *we only refer to Chap.* VIII. *of the Deſcription of* China, *where you have the Religion of* Tonquin *deſcribed in the Religion of* China, *as being the ſame, and by this means we avoid needleſs Repetitions, reſerve room to clear up any Doubts, as to the Situation of any Places in Diſpute, or the like, and alſo to give a full and ample Deſcription of our own and neighbouring Nations.*

S A

A DESCRIPTION OF THE Kingdom of *Cochin-China*.

CHAP. I.

Treating of its Situation, Extent and Diviſions; alſo of their Buildings, Cuſtoms, Habit, Diet, Animals and Manufactures; the Temper of the People, with their Arts, Sciences and Language, and a particular Account of the Deſtruction of the Engliſh *Settlement at* Pulo Coudore.

Bounds. *COCHIN-CHINA*, if we take in *Chiampa*, which may well be ſaid to be the Southermoſt Part of it, is bounded on the Eaſt by the Sea of *China*, and on the Weſt by the Mountains of *Kemois* and Kingdom of *Cambodia*; on the North it is bounded by *Tonquin*, and on the South by the

Name. *Indian* Ocean; it is called by the Natives *Anam* or *Onam*, which ſignifies the Weſt Country or Weſtern Part of the Empire, it having once belonged to *China*, and been a Part of that large Empire, as the Name *Cochin-China* alſo imports, which ſignifies Weſt *China*; *Chiampa* is the Southermoſt part of *Cochin-China*, and taken together, it is about one hundred and ſixty Leagues in Length, and about

Dimenſions. fifty or ſixty Leagues in Breadth, its joining upon

Clime and Soil. *Tonquin*, the Climate is much the ſame, and ſubject to the ſame Rains, upon which they depend for moiſtning the Ground and enriching it by the Mud and Slime that it leaves behind it.

Diviſion. IT is divided into five Provinces, whoſe Names are: *Sinoa*, *Cachiam*, *Quangum*, *Pulozambi* and *Reoan*; the King keeps his Court in *Sinoa*, which is the Northermoſt Province, and joins to *Tonquin*; the Capital of this Province is called by the ſame Name as the Province, *Sinoa*, and doubtleſs takes its Name from it, the other Provinces, as *Chiampa*, *Cachiam*, &c. bearing the ſame Name with their Capitals, and for the ſame Reaſon.

Building. THEY build their Houſes two Story high, the Floor of the Upper being as high as the Floods riſe in the rainy Seaſons, that they may retire to them when the lower is over-flow'd, and then maintain their Communication with one another by little Boats made for that Purpoſe. The common Sort, in Eating or Converſing together, ſit croſs-legged upon the Floor, which is cover'd with Mats, but the better Sort have Seats ſtanding againſt the Wall, as our Benches or Forms do, and are two or three Foot high; theſe they ſit upon in common Converſation, and have Tables ſtanding before them when they Eat: their Stature, Feature and Complexion is much like the *Chineſe*, (*for which ſee Chap.* III. *of* China,) but they wear their Hair long like the *Tonquineſe*; their Dreſs is of Silk Veſts and Gowns of divers Colours, one upon another, and inſtead of Stockings and Breeches they wrap Silk about their Legs and Thighs, and have a Sort of Slippers or Sandals for their Feet inſtead of Shoes; their Diet and manner of Eating and Drinking is the ſame as in *Tonquin*, (*Chap.* II. *of* Tonquin,) only they have a particular Sort of Sauce, which we have not elſewhere deſcribed; there are moſt Birds like Swallows which frequent the Rocks upon the Sea-Coaſts, which build their Neſts much in the Form of our Swallows Neſts, but inſtead of Clay they uſe a Compoſition made of Sea-froth, and a ſort of a Moiſture which proceeds from the Birds Stomach, which little Parcels they ſtick to one another, as the Swallows do their Clay, and by the Heat of the Sun they ſoon become a dry hard Subſtance, almoſt tranſparent; theſe they gather in great Quantities at the proper Time of the Year, (probably when the Birds have done with them and forſaken them,) and being ſoftned in warm Water, it is very Nouriſhing to be put into Broth, and is of ſo delicious a Taſte that it is eaten as Sauce with all ſorts of Meat.

Dreſs.

Sauce made of Bird-Neſts.

Animals. THEY have Animals both Wild and Tame, the ſame Sorts as in *Tonquin*, as Beaſt, Fowls, and the Sea produces excellent Fiſh; they have great ſtore of Rice, Fruit and Herbs, and plenty of good Silk, and the ſame Sort of Trees and Plants as in *Tonquin*; but they have one ſort of Timber which we do not find in *Tonquin*, it is ſo ſolid that it ſinks in the Water, and ſerves them for Anchors; they are of two different Sorts, but both the Kinds go by the Name of *Thins*, the Wood of one is Black almoſt like Ebony, the other is near the Colour of Yew, but both equally heavy, and it is ſaid that they will not corrupt neither in Earth nor Water; they make Pillars of them, on which they erect their Buildings, to have the Floors of them high enough above the Surface of the Water, in the Time of the Floods, as before hinted; but in the dry Seaſons they fill the Space between the Pillars with Planks, or wind them with Reeds like a Wall or Cieling, and make themſelves commodious Rooms on the Ground Floor, but at the Approach of the rainy Seaſons they are forced to demoliſh all the lower Part, except the Pillars themſelves which ſupports the Building,) to let the Water more freely paſs amongſt them, under the Houſe, to prevent its carrying all away.

Anchors made of Wood.

Lignum Aquila. THEY have alſo the Lignum Aquila or Aquila-Tree; it is a Wood of a fine Scent, and grows always in moſt Plenty upon the Mountains of *Kemois*; there is alſo another Tree called Calamba, if it may be

Calamba. called another Tree, for the Aquila and Calamba are the ſame Tree, only the Aquila is the Tree when young and the Calamba is the ſame Tree when grown old, and is eſteem'd much more valuable; the King reſerves ſo much of this for himſelf as he thinks convenient, and the reſt is tranſported to *Japan*, or other Places at a great Diſtance, and is ſold for an incredible Price; the Calamba is of the much more fragrant Smell, and ſome think it to be the ſame with Lignum Aloes, ſo much valued

in

in *China* and *Japan*, and the rather becauſe the Columba, when tranſported thither, fetcheth ſuch an exorbitant Price among thoſe Nations, who burn their Dead; they expend great Quantities of this fragrant Aquila-Tree in their Funeral Piles.

THE People of *Cochin-China* are reported to be very courteous to Strangers, and indeed ſo much of this Kingdom lying open to the Sea, and their having ſo many good Harbours, gives them a great Opportunity of converſing with Foreigners and Strangers that trade with them, and of becoming more familiar with them; 'tis true ſome Authors pronounce them a barbarous ſavage People, and prove it by a flagrant Inſtance of their Cruelty in their Manner of deſtroying the *Engliſh* Settlement at *Pulo Coudore*, of which we ſhall give an Account towards the Concluſion of this Deſcription of *Cochin-China*, and leave every impartial Reader to judge for himſelf, when he conſiders who were the firſt Proprietors, and how the Invaders uſed theſe undiſciplined Inhabitants when they had it in their Power.

SOME report that they excel in Arts and Sciences, and as an Inſtance produce Gunnery; affirming, that they can hit a Mark with a great Gun or Field-Piece as well as the *Europeans* can with a Hand-gun or Fire-lock; but this does not ſeem to be confirm'd by the Sequel, for had the *Cochin-Chineſe* been ſuch able Soldiers and expert Gunners as the Jeſuits repreſented them to be, they would ſcarce have ſuffer'd the *Engliſh* to have taken the Iſland, and founded and eſtabliſh'd the Settlement, or to defend it when in Poſſeſſion by a ſmall Redoubt garriſon'd with forty or fifty Men, and thoſe none of the beſt experienc'd in Military Affairs; but that our Account may be Impartial and Intelligible, we ſhall give the following Narration, which is

A particular Deſcription of the Iſland of Pulo Coudore, *and of the Erecting and Deſtroying the* Engliſh *Settlement there.*

THE largeſt of the Iſlands of *Coudore*, which we here call *Pulo Coudore*, and which is the only one that is Inhabited, lies about South by Eaſt from the River *Cambodia*, and about twenty Leagues from the Shore, in between eight and nine Degrees of North Latitude; it is but a ſmall Iſland, between four and five Leagues Long, and three Leagues broad where wideſt; this, with the next to it, which is about three Miles long, and half a Mile broad, forms a very convenient Harbour;

Trees. upon theſe Iſlands are great Quantities of Timber fit for Building or any other Uſe; here is alſo a Tree of three or four Foot Diameter, called the Damar-Tree, from whence ſuch Quantities of a kind of Turpentine or Tar is drawn, that it furniſheth a great deal of Employment for the poorer Sort of Peo-

Fruits. ple; they have a Kind of a Fruit like a Grape, which they call a Mango, it grows upon Trees; there is alſo a ſort of wild Nutmeg, anſwering the Purpoſes of the New, but different in Shape; there is alſo a Tree like the Cabbage-Tree, ſuppoſed by ſome to

Animals. be only a wild Cocoa; there are Hogs, Guana's and Lizards, alſo Pigeons, Parrots, Parakites, wild Cocks and Hens about the bigneſs of a Crow; there are alſo Limpits and Muſcles, and Plenty of green Turtle or Tortoiſes.

THE wet and dry Seaſons are the ſame as at *Tonquin*, (*ſee Chap.* I. *of* Tonquin) ſo that towards the latter End of the dry Seaſons the Springs are ex-

Brooks. hauſted and the Brooks dry, but at the latter End of *April* or beginning of *May*, when the Rains fall, they are ſupplied and fill'd with Water, and ſo continue during the Rains, the Floods, and ſome Part of the dry Seaſon, in all about ten Months.

Product. THE chief Product of theſe Iſlands is the above-mention'd Tar, drawn from the Damar-Tree, and a ſort of an Oil, which they make of the Turtle, and ſell to *Cochin-China*; the Inhabitants of this Iſland, as in *Tonquin* and other Places, bring their Women aboard, and offer them to the *European* Sailors to make uſe of during their ſtay there; being ſo willing to encreaſe their Number and mend their Breed, that they are not afraid of the Conſequence, but think it an Honour as well as an Advantage to have their Stock increaſed by *European* white Men.

THEIR Religion is the ſame of *Tonquin*; for when Mr. *Dampier* was at this Iſland, he tells us, he obſerved a little Idol Temple or Pagoda with the Image of an Elephant about five Foot high on on one Side, and the Figure of an Horſe not quite ſo high on the other Side, the Temple was a low wooden Building as deſcribed, Chap. V. of *Tonquin*. Religion or Superſtition.

FROM what Mr. *Dampier* obſerved, as to the Situation of the Place and commodiouſneſs of the Harbour, he recommended theſe Iſlands, as a convenient Place for the *Engliſh* to eſtabliſh a Factory in; and whether by his Recommendation only, or by concurrent Encouragement; however in the Year 1702, the new *Eaſt-India* Company built here a Fort of Earth, fenced it in with Palliſadoes, inſtead of a Ditch, and mounted ſome great Guns to defend their Factory from the Inſults of Enemies.

BUT what Terms the *Engliſh* made with the Inhabitants, to get this Iſland in Poſſeſſion, is left to Conjecture; whether by Treaty or Storm, or by what other Means; but by the Sequel it ſeems probable, that the Natives not being apprehenſive of any Invaſion, nor capable of making any Reſiſtance, the Company might come into peaceable Poſſeſſion, without any Oppoſition from the Inhabitants.

ABOUT two Years after the Foundation of this Settlement, Mr. *Lockyer* in a Voyage to *Canton* in *China* touch'd here, and found but forty five *Europeans* there, which were Soldiers or Servants to the *Eaſt-India* Company; there were alſo ſeven or eight *Topazes* which is a kind of a Tawny mingled Breed, and Strangers; probably, the ſpurious Iſſue of *European* Men and *Tonquin* or *Cochin-Chineſe* Women before ſpoken of; there were likewiſe fifteen *Bugoſſes*, who are Natives of *Macaſſer* or *Celebes* which reckon'd all together make but between ſixty and ſeventy in all, and though the *Macaſſers* were the beſt Soldiers, yet they were the moſt Treacherous to the *Engliſh*, and leaſt to be depended when occaſion required.

THERE are two or three ſmall Villages on the Iſland where the Factory was, of which the *Engliſh* were ſo jealous of, that they diſarmed all the Inhabitants, who, (according to the Jeſuits) are a brave and warlike People; but this I think was but a ſmall Proof of their Bravery to ſuffer themſelves to be plunder'd and diſpoſſeſs'd by ſo inconſiderable a Body of Men, and not to make the leaſt Attempt upon their Redoubt which had not above ſeventy to defend it.

BUT however they meditated Revenge, and reſolved, that what they could not effect by Force of Arms, they would if poſſible compleat by concerted Barbarity and Cruelty without the leaſt Compaſſion or Remorſe; and in order to this, the Burgeſſes ſet the Factory on Fire, and Maſſacred the *Engliſh* in their Beds, the third of *March* 1705, when the Factory had not continued above three Years, and the *Cochin Chineſe* taking the Advantage of the Diſtreſs and Confuſion of the *Engliſh* that ſurviv'd, murder'd them or expell'd them the Place, and put a fatal Exit to the *Engliſh* Factory at *Pulo Coudore*.

Our Authority for this Account, as well as the Particulars of it, we have in a Letter from Mr. *Cunningham* at *Pulo Coudore*, to the *Engliſh* Supercargoes in *Chuma*, which to do Juſtice to the Account, we inſert *verbatim*; as follows.

Gentlemen,

" BEFORE this comes to your Hand, you " may have heard of the Overthrow of the " Settlement at *Coudore*, whereof I ſhall give you " a farther Account, and what relates thereto, that " you may impart the ſame to our Honourable

Maſters.

" Maſters. Our *Macaſſer* Soldiers had been threat-
" ned, for letting two of our Slaves eſcape from
" Cuſtody; whereupon, it ſeems, they did medi-
" tate a cruel Revenge: For on the ſecond of
" *March* at Midnight, they ſet Fire to the Fort,
" and at the ſame Time kill'd the Governour Mr.
" *Lloyd*, Capt. *Raſhwell*, Mr. *Futler*, and others, to
" the Number of Nineteen; Dr. *Pound*, Mr. *Chetty*,
" and the Captain, with Eight or Nine more,
" made their Eſcape in a Sloop to *Malacca*, (I ſup-
" poſe) and from thence to *Batavia*; thoſe that re-
" main'd were ſo diſpers'd, that there were ſcarce
" two together. I took to the *Cochin-Chineſe* for
" their Aſſiſtance, but their Fear was ſo great, that
" they only went about to barricado themſelves.
" The *Macaſſers* having perpetrated this Villany,
" got into a *Cochin-Chineſe* Prow, to put to Sea,
" but were aſſaulted by the People of a *Cambodia*
" Veſſel, which was then at the Iſland, with the
" Aſſiſtance of our Armourer, who kill'd one of
" them, and mortally wounded two more, which
" made them put to Shore again, and make their
" Eſcape into the Woods: In the Morning be-
" times, the *Cochin-Chineſe* took Poſſeſſion of the
" Fort; fearing, I ſuppoſe, we ſhould have join'd
" with the *Cambodians*, to carry away what the
" Fire had not deſtroy'd; for being got together,
" we were ſixteen *Engliſh*, (four of which were
" dangerouſly wounded) ſix *Topazes*, and about
" twenty Slaves, too ſmall a Number to cope with
" them, who were above two Hundred; the *Chi-*
" *neſe* being like ſo many Cyphers, and the *Madraſs*
" Sloop in *Cochin-China* obliged us to deſire their
" friendly Aſſiſtance; whereupon the Money was
" put all into Cheſts, and the moſt Part weigh'd
" and carried into their Cuſtody; during which
" Time the *Macaſſers* thought to have ſeiz'd ano-
" ther Prow to eſcape in, but were frighted away
" by the *Cochin-Chineſe*, who promiſed in a few
" Days to bring them all dead or alive; moſt of
" us were dubious of their Friendſhip, but did not
" know how to anſwer it to our Honourable Maſ-
" ters, to leave ſo much Money while they pre-
" tended to be our Friends, and we had not de-
" ſerved otherwiſe at their Hands; for we could
" have got away in the *Cambodia* Veſſel, which
" ſail'd the Seventh following, being unwilling
" to ſtay any longer; in which went Mr. *Baldæus*
" and Mr. *Wingate*, to make the beſt of their Way
" to *Batavia*. The next Day after they went away,
" the *Cochin-Chineſe* caught one of the *Macaſſers*, and
" that very Night cut off his Head, whereby we
" thought their Friendſhip had been ſecure to us;
" yet on the Tenth, without any Provocation, but
" to make ſure of their Prey, they barbarouſly mur-
" der'd all the *Engliſh*, of which were Mr. *Pottinger*,
" Mr. *Townſend*, Mr. *Joſ. Ridges*, Mr. *St. Paul*, with
" 4 *Topazes* and ſix Slaves, only me they ſav'd alive,
" after they had given me two Wounds, one ſlight
" in the Arm, and the other more dangerous in my
" Left Side, whereof I am now well, God be thank-
" ed, with two other *Topazes* and fifteen Slaves:
" on the eighteenth arrived there from *Borea*, four
" *Cochin-Chineſe* Galleys with Prows, which a-
" mounted in all to ſixty five, and in them about
" three hundred Soldiers, the other *Cochin-Chineſe*
" making about three hundred more, wherewith
" they embark'd every thing worth carrying away:
" During their ſtay there they went three or
" four Times in ſearch of the *Macaſſers*, and ſight-
" ing on them at laſt, killed four: on the ſeventh of
" *April* I was order'd aboard one of their Galleys;
" not having leave to go any where without a
" Soldier along with me; I law and underſtood
" that all the People belonging to the *Madraſs*
" Sloop were under Confinement, in ſeparate
* She ſhe ſhes " Houſes, and alſo in * *Conga's* except Captain
" *Ridley*: I deſired ſeveral times to wait upon the
" Governor but could not; he was taken up in
" overhalling the Goods that came from *Pulo*
" *Condore*, and weighing the Money, which was
" found to amount to twenty one thouſand three
" hundred Tael. At laſt, upon the twenty eighth
" I was obliged to appear as a Criminal in *Conga's*
" before the Governor and his grand Council, at-
" tended with all the Slaves in *Conga's* alſo; there
" I was charged with three Crimes; the firſt, that
" the *Engliſh* when they arrived at *Pulo Condore*
" ſaid that they would ſtay there whether the
" King of *Cochin-China* would or not; the ſecond,
" that there were no *Engliſh* ſent along with the
" Preſent to Court laſt Year; the third, that we
" ſent a Ship to *Cambodia*, and did not acquaint the
" Governor of *Borea* therewith; to the firſt I
" replied, that we had never heard of any ſuch
" thing, for at our arrival there we did not know
" that any Body lived upon the [illegible]ed that
" as ſoon as our Governor had diſpatch'd the Ships
" to *China*, he preſently diſpatch'd an Embaſſy to
" *Cochin-China*, whereby he had his grant to ſtay
" there; to the ſecond, that all the *Engliſh* were
" ſo ſickly that we had not one of any Port to
" ſend, and therefore ſpoke to a *Chineſe* Captain
" then preſent, who agreed to go, but that the
" † *Cafſon* did take it upon himſelf to carry the
" Preſent, and excuſe us to the King, whereto they
" reply'd, that ſending a *Chineſe* was all one as
" ſending the *Cafſon*, and that an *Engliſhman* would
" have done better; I anſwer'd that was the *Cafſon's*
" Fault, who ſhould have inform'd us better; then
" further, why we did not get ſome out of the
" Ships to ſend, where there were ſo many, to
" which I reply'd that it was not in our Power to
" demand them out of their Ships; to the third,
" that never any Body told us we were to acquaint
" the Governor of *Borea* before we ſent any Ships
" to *Cambodia*; then he inſiſted there did not any
" *Engliſh* come aboard the Ship to him at the
" Mouth of *Cambodia* River, when he ſent thither
" by one to ſpeak with them; to which I reply'd,
" that the Ship had not return'd to *Pulo Condore*,
" and therefore could not poſitively tell the Reaſon
" for ſo doing; then I was diſmiſs'd, and return'd
" home, where I had the *Conga's* taken off again;
" the next Day I was at the Governor's Son's
" Houſe, by which the Governor paſſing acciden-
" tally ſaw me, whereupon he ſent for me to his
" Houſe; he asked me nothing of Moment, but
" why I ſent two *Engliſhmen* to *Cambodia*, and
" how much I had given them; having anſwer'd
" this, I deſir'd to know what he reſolv'd to do with
" us; he anſwer'd, that we muſt ſtay here till he had
" a Return from Court, which would take up two
" Months, and having ask'd for Capt. *Ridley*, who
" was ſick at *Damaan*, about twenty Leagues
" from hence, and to take his People out of the
" *Conga's*, he only reply'd he would ſee to it ſhort-
" ly, and thus Matters ſtand at Preſent, and what
" will the Reſult thereof be God knows; I know
" not what our Honourable Maſters will be wil-
" ling to do, and therefore cannot tell how to ad-
" viſe them herein. I am with Reſpect,

SIRS,

Yours, *&c.*

† Interpreter.

Thus far Mr. *Cunningham* gave account in his Letter, which being writ before he was diſcharg'd from his Confinement, it was impoſſible for him therein to give any Relation of his ſucceeding Adventures; however, he was afterwards ſet at Liberty, and made Preſident of *Banjar*, on the South Coaſt of the Iſland of *Borneo*; but his Preſidentſhip there was ſhort-liv'd, for the Settlement was ruin'd by the Natives before he had been ten Days there; but this not being the Place we are now treating of, we ſhall give a further Account of it when we come to give a Deſcription of the Iſland of *Borneo*.

A

A DESCRIPTION OF THE *KINGDOM of* SIAM.

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation and Extent of Siam, *with its Diviſion into Provinces, alſo of their principal Rivers, Monſoons, Winds and Tides, and the Nature of the Climate.*

UNDER the Deſcription of *Siam*, may properly be comprehended *Malacca*, *Cambodia*, and *Laos*, as well as what is commonly known by the Name of *Siam*, not only becauſe they were lately Provinces of this Kingdom, and are yet tributary to it, but chiefly becauſe their Religion, Laws, Cuſtoms and Complexions are much the ſame, ſo that to treat of them ſeparately would in a great Meaſure be only repeating the ſame Thing, which we always take care to avoid, only it will be proper to give an Account of the Situation of the abovemention'd Kingdoms or Provinces, with Reſpect to *Siam Proper*, or what goes more particularly by the Name of *Siam*.

Situation of the Provinces.

LAOS lies to the Northward of *Siam*, *Cambodia* to the Eaſtward, and *Malacca* is a Peninſula, lying to the Southward of *Siam Proper*; but if we look upon *Siam*, *Laos*, *Malacca*, and *Cambodia* as all one Kingdom, it is bounded on the Eaſt by *Tonquin* and *Cochin-China*, and on the Weſt by the *Indian* Sea or Bay of *Bengall*, by the Kingdoms of *Pegu* and *Ava* on the North and Weſt, and on the South by the Gulf of *Siam*, and the Straits of *Malacca* or *Sincapore*.

Bounds.

Extent.

THE Kingdom of *Siam* (in which we ſhall always include the abovementionn'd Provinces of *Laos*, *Malacca* and *Cambodia*,) extends from the Southermoſt Point of *Malacca*, in Latitude one Degree North to the northermoſt Part of *Laos*, in about the Latitude of twenty-five Degrees North, which is four hundred and eighty *Engliſh* Leagues, or one thouſand four hundred and forty Miles; the City of *Siam* is in the fourteenth Degree of North Latitude, but Authors differ with reſpect to its Situation, as to Longitude, ſome affirming it to be in one hundred twenty one Degrees, while others will have it in one hundred and forty five Degrees, *viz.* twenty four Degrees Difference in the Account; and the late Mr. *Moll* lays it but in about one hundred Degrees, which is the moſt agreeable to ſome of our late Maps and Globes; and although we have not yet been ſo happy as to find out a Method to correct the Longitude by Obſervation, yet theſe different Accounts are more reconcileable than at firſt ſight they appear to be, if we conſider that different Geographers have reckon'd their Longitude from different Places; they formerly reckon'd the Longitude from *St. Michael's*, one of the Iſlands of the *Azores*, whereas of late, the *Engliſh* Geographers reckon from *London*, and as *St. Michael's* Iſland lies in above twenty one Degrees of Longitude Weſt from *London*, it will evidently follow, that a Place that lies a hundred Degrees Eaſt from *London*, will be a hundred and twenty one Degrees Eaſt from *St. Michael*; ſo that theſe different Accounts are reconciled, and probably both true; and ſince theſe two Teſtimonies naturally concur, we ſhall look upon them as Authentick, and recommend them as ſuch; and as for thoſe who lay *Siam* in Longitude one hundred and forty five Degrees Eaſt from *London*, we muſt either allow their Account to be erroneous, or ſuppoſe they placed their firſt Meridian about forty four or forty five Degrees Weſt from that of *London*, but ſhall rather believe the former, as having never heard of any Geographer that placed the firſt Meridian there.

Longitude of *Siam*.

Name.

ALTHOUGH the *Portugueſe*, and the reſt of the *Europeans*, call this Kingdom *Siam*, yet the Natives call it the Country of *Tai* or of *Freemen*, from their ſtoutly oppoſing all Encroachments upon their Liberty.

Provinces. *Upper Siam.*

UPPER *Siam* is divided into ſeven Provinces, and are diſtinguiſh'd by the Names of their Capital Cities, *viz.* *Porſelouc*, *Sangueloue*, *Louantai*, *Campenggpet*, *Cocomrepina*, *Pechebonne* and *Pitchia*; and theſe Provinces are again divided into Diſtricts or Counties, of which *Porſelouc* contains ten, *Sangueloua* eight, *Louantai* ſeven, *Campenggpet* ten, *Cocomrepina* five, *Pechebonne* two, and *Pitchia* ſeven, in all forty nine, beſides one and twenty other Diſtricts or Counties not ſubject to the former, but are under the Juriſdiction of the Capital City and Province of *Siam*.

Malacca or *Lower Siam.*

IN *Malacca* or *Lower Siam*, there are alſo ſeven Provinces, *viz.* *Tchai*, *Petelong* or *Bordelong*, *Chantebonne*, *Tenaſſerim*, *Ligor*, *Patana* and *Jor*; the Province of *Tchai* contains two Counties or Diſtricts, *Petelong* eight, *Chantebonne* ſeven, *Tenaſſerim* twelve, *Ligor* twenty, *Patana* eight, and *Jor* ſeven, in all ſixty four.

Cambodia.

CAMBODIA is bounded on the Eaſt by *Cochin-China* and *Champa*, on the Weſt with the Gulf or Bay of *Siam*, on the North with the Kingdom or Province of *Laos*, and on the South with the *Indian* Ocean; its Extent from North to South is about one hundred and forty Leagues; the chief Town or City is *Cambodia* on the Bank of the River *Mecon*, in between twelve and thirteen Degrees of North Latitude; *Tatsek* or *Ravena* is higher up the River, but the Ports of *Cural*, *Tarama* and *Langor*,

are

ar upon the South-west Coast, in eleven or twelve Degrees of North Latitude.

Laos. The Kingdom or Province of *Laos* is the Northermost of all the rest, and is bounded on the East by *Tonquin*, and by *Cambodia* on the South, on the West by *Pegu* and *Siam Proper*, and is but a small Province, some say not above fifty Miles in Breadth from East to West, though six hundred Miles from North to South; the Capital City of *Laos* is called *Langone* or *Lanchang*; it is about a hundred and sixty Leagues to the Northward of the Town of *Cambodia*, and upon or near the same River *Macon*, the greatest River in all the Kingdom of *Siam*, except the River *Menan*, upon which the Capital City of *Siam* is situate; both those Rivers are supposed to rise in *Tartary*, and run to the Southward into the Sea; *Menan* falls into the Gulf of *Siam*, at the very Bottom of it, and *Macon* having past through *Laos* and *Cambodia*, dischargeth itself into the *Indian* Sea, near the Island of *Pulo Cundore*, in about nine Degrees of Latitude; there is also another River of less Note, called *Tenasserim* which empties itself into the Sea, in the Bay of *Bengal*, in about twelve Degrees of North Latitude; but though the River be inconsiderable of itself, yet in its falling into the Sea, it forms an Island called *Mergay*, and makes one of the best Harbours in all *India*.

Rivers.

The Country is very mountainous, and overrun with Wood, except in the low Lands, between the Mountains and where the Rivers run, so that there are few Towns of any Note, except near those Rivers or the Sea, the rest being either so woody as to be uncapable of Tillage, or so barren and burnt up that it will not produce any Thing worth the Trouble; it is especially unfit to bear Rice, which delights in wet Ground, and which is their chief Dependance for Food.

Rain, Seasons, Winds, and Tides.

The rainy Seasons here continue longer than in *Tonquin*, beginning about the latter End of *April* or Beginning of *May*, (as there) but continuing till *September*; the Trade Winds here are very constant; in *March*, *April* and *May*, it blows from the South, in *April* the Rains begin, and it rains almost continually all *June*; the Winds blow from the West, and the Rains continue all *July*, *August* and *September*, during which Time the Rivers overflow their Banks, for the space of nine or ten Miles, and for above a hundred and fifty Miles up the Rivers; and yet notwithstanding these vast Rains, and the prodigious Confluence of Water out of the Country, the Tides are so strong, especially in *July*, that they flow up as high as *Siam*, which is about sixty Miles up the River, and sometimes as high as *Louvo*, which is fifty Miles higher; In *October* the Wind shifts more to the Northward, and the Rain abates, and in *November* and *December* the Wind blows from the North, and the Weather is fair, and so by degrees the Floods are exhausted, and the Rivers reduced to their former Channels, and then the Tides are so weak, if any at all, that the Water is fresh and sweet even at the Mouth of the River; In *January* the Wind blows from the East, and in *February* it begins to shift more to the Southward, and whether it be from the Force of the Winds, or from the natural Propensity of the Sea to tend that way, and to be acted upon as the Wind is, however it is observed, that which way soever these settled Trade Winds blow, the Current sets the same Way, *viz.* if the Wind be West, the Current sets East and the contrary; it is to be observed, there is never more than one Flood and one Ebb in twenty four Hours at *Siam*. There are also many other small Rivers and Artificial Cuts and Canals, whereby they maintain a Communication with one another by Water; and if to this we add the Situation of the Country for Correspondence and Commerce with other Places by Sea, and the many convenient Harbours that are here, it might, if the Government would encourage it, be as likely a Place for Trade as any in the *Indies*.

Climate.

When we consider the Situation and Extent of this Kingdom, *viz.* almost from the Equinoctial to the Tropick, the Nature of the Climate may be easily determined, and that as the Sun is almost Vertical every Day, while he has North Declination, the Heat should naturally be very intense, and yet they are so screen'd from it by the cloudy Weather, and the Air is so cool'd by the excessive Rains and the Overflowing of the Rivers, that the Heat is not so intolerable as might be expected, and as it would otherwise be; and although their Summer and Winter may rather be distinguish'd by wet and dry Weather, rather than by Heat and Cold, yet they being on the same Side of the Equinoctial with us, they have the coolest Winds in *December* and *January* as well as we.

CHAP. II.

A Description of their Cities, Towns, Fortifications, Palaces, Princes, Courts, Guards and Seraglio; as also of the Buildings, Houses, and Furniture of the private People.

Siam.

The City of *Siam* is the Metropolis of the Kingdom; it was formerly called *Odiaa*, and by the Inhabitants *Siyothiya*, situate upon the River *Menan*, about sixty Miles from its Influx into the Sea; it may be almost said to stand upon an Island, because it is surrounded with several Branches of the River *Menan* on all Sides except the East; it is three Leagues in Compass, and fortified with Walls and Towers; there is a Causeway or Pavement out at the East Side of the Town, where People may go out without crossing the Water; the Town is not so large as the space of Ground which is contain'd within the Walls, but besides Dwelling Houses, there are within the Walls between two and three hundred Temples or Pagoda's, encompassed with as many Convents of *Telapoins*; their Burying-places are also about their Temples, and have Pyramids erected upon them, which with their Spires and the Spires or Towers of the Temples are very pleasant to behold.

The Streets are broad, and generally straight; some of them are paved with Brick, and have Canals cut through them; over which are several ordinary Bridges, which has given occasion to some People to compare it to the City of *Venice*; the Houses are mostly built upon Bamboo or over-grown Cane, and stand upon Pillars of the same, about thirteen Foot above Ground, upon which the first Floor is laid, that Place below it, amongst the Posts the House stands upon, being of no use; their Houses do not join to one another as ours do, but as every Man knows his own Ground, he has it paled in with Bamboo,

Bambou, and within that there are ſeveral ſmall Houſes erected on Pillars, according to the Dignity of the Perſon and the Numerouſneſs of his Family, Slaves or other Dependants; for if they are many of them they have ſo many the more little Habitations in proportion, and do not all lodge under the ſame Roof; the common People keep their Cattle alſo in upper Rooms, eſpecially upon the Approach and during the Continuance of the Inundations; there are ſome few Houſes built of Brick by the Foreigners, and ſome of the ſame which the King has erected for the Reception and Entertainment of Foreign Ambaſſadors.

Palace. Of this laſt ſort is the King's Palace; it is built with Brick on the North Side of the City, and encompaſſed by a triple Incloſure, having large Courts between each Wall, and the King's Apartment, which in their Language is called *Vang*, is within the innermoſt Wall, within which is likewiſe encloſed Gardens, Groves, Canals, and the like, for Pleaſure or Ornament; the whole including all within the outermoſt Wall is called by the general Name of *Praſſat*; when the *Siameſe* go in and out of the *Vang* they proſtrate themſelves, and when they paſs by the Gates of the outer Palace it is at a great Diſtance from it.

Higher they lodge the more Honour. Although neither the Palace or Private Houſes are built any more than one Story high, yet in a Houſe of any Faſhion there is a Difference in the Height of the Rooms, both as to the Floors and Roofs; the firſt or outward Room is always the loweſt, and having paſt that they aſcend two or three Steps to the next, and ſo on right forward, aſcending higher the further they go, and the Roof on the Outſide riſes in the ſame Proportion, and the Roof of the King's Palace being cover'd with ſhining Tiles, looks very magnificent; when a Perſon is either introduced to the Palace or to a Perſon of Quality's Houſe, the greater his Dignity the further, and conſequently the higher he is conducted, the higheſt Room being always reckon'd the moſt honourable, and no Man cares to lodge under another's Feet, ſo that at *Siam*, though their Houſes are built upon Pillars, yet they will not make any uſe of that Part which is under the firſt Floor; we have an Inſtance of this in an Ambaſſador that was ſent from *Siam* to the *French* Court, who when he with his Retinue arrived, ſome of his Attendants were lodg'd in the upper Rooms or Chambers nearer the Top of the Houſe than their Maſter, which when they underſtood, they were in the utmoſt Conſternation, and ran down tearing their Hair like Mad-men, for being guilty of ſuch an unpardonable Crime, as lying above their Maſter.

There are uſually in the Palaces of the Officers of State three Floors and Roofs, every one higher than the other; and in the King's Palace at *Siam* there are ſeven ſuch Floors and Roofs, aſcending gradually, as before deſcribed.

There is alſo a Palace at *Louvo*, about ſixteen or ſeventeen Leagues above *Siam*, on the Eaſt Side of the River *Menam*, but ſome diſtance from the main River; and we are inform'd by the Report of a *French* Ambaſſador that reſided there, that when he had an Audience either at *Siam* or *Louvo*, it was always in the firſt Room, and when he was entertain'd at the Palace, it was in an open Room, encompaſſed with a Wall no higher than a Man's Breaſt, and the Roof ſupported by Pillars fix'd on the Wall, and ſhaded by Trees; and that at both Palaces there were a great many ſuch Rooms about the Gardens, where the Mandarins and other great Officers and Perſons of Quality uſually attended.

Hunting Palaces. The King has ſeveral Palaces built in the Woods, for his Conveniency in Hunting, which is a Sport he delights much in; they are but ſlightly built, and painted red, and are for his Lodging in the Hunting Seaſon only. The Room of Audience at *Siam* is wainſcotted, and cover'd with a red Varniſh, and ſome Panels of Looking Glaſs; the Floor is cover'd with Carpets, the Diſhes, Baſons, Drinking Veſſels and other Utenſils are all Plate.

The Gates of the Palace are kept ſhut, and if any Perſon deſires Admittance, they acquaint the Officer who commands the Guard with it, and if they are admitted they are not ſuffer'd to enter arm'd, nor if they have drank any Arrack or Spirits, for the preventing of which they ſmell at every Man's Breath before he enters.

Guards. There ſtands a Guard of about ſix hundred unarmed Soldiers between the two firſt Walls of the Palace, they ſerve the King as Executioners; there are always Arms lodg'd in the Palace for them, but they are never truſted with them but upon ſpecial Occaſions; the King had a Guard of ſix hundred *Japoneſe*, but he diſmiſs'd them, leſt they ſhould prove too many for him.

The King has a Guard of Horſe, conſiſting of one hundred and thirty Gentlemen, two Troops whereof, conſiſting of thirty each, are *Moors* or *Mahometans*, born in the *Mogul*'s Country; another Troop conſiſts of twenty *Chineſe-Tartars*, arm'd with Bows and Arrows, and two other Troops of *Raſboots*, Natives of *India*, and of Pagan Principles, containing twenty five each: they are habited like the *Moors*, and famous for their Courage, but (as if it was not poſſible for another Nation to have as much Courage as a *Frenchman*, without being intoxicated, or rather infatuated into it) Mr. *Loubiere*, a *French* Author, who agrees to their being courageous, would depreciate the Value of their real Courage, by imputing the Cauſe of it to their taking of *Opium*: The King at his going abroad is attended by all his Horſe Guards, but none of them are ſuffer'd to enter within the Gates of the Palace; every Trooper is furniſh'd with his Horſe and Arms at the King's Charge, and every *Moor* has fifty four Stivers a Year, beſides a red Stuff Veſt; their Captains and *Raſboots*, whoſe Pay is alike, have eight hundred and forty Livres each; the *Chineſe Tartars* have forty five Livres a Year each, and every Captain one hundred and twelve Livres ten Sols for his annual Pay. Their Pay.

Note, As there is no ſuch current Money as Livres in *Siam*, and we have this Account from Mr. *Loubiere*, a *French* Author, it is to be ſuppoſed that he reduced the *Siameſe* Money abovemention'd to its Value in *French* Coin; but as we have *Engliſh* Readers to oblige, the abovemention'd Pay in Sterling Money is as follows:

The Pay of the Moors was by the Year	04	01	00
Their Captains and the *Raſboots*	63	00	00
The *Chineſe Tartars*	03	07	06
Their Captains	08	08	09

For the Coins, Weights and Meaſures of *Siam*, ſee the ſixth Chapter following of the Deſcription of this Country.

Stables for Elephants and Horſes. Within the firſt or outermoſt Wall of the Palace there are Stables for Elephants and the King's beſt Horſes, to every one of which the King gives a particular Name, and every Elephant is treated with Honour or Dignity ſuitable to the Name the King has beſtow'd upon him, and his Number of Servants or Attendants is alſo in the ſame Proportion; they never go out but in their proper Dreſs of Trappings or Ornaments; and as this People hold the Doctrine of the Tranſmigration of Souls, and find the Elephant to be not only ſtrong and majeſtick, but alſo very docible, and, as ſome expreſs it, quick of Apprehenſion, they imagine that every Elephant is animated by a Soul that has formerly poſſeſs'd ſome great and illuſtrious Man, and that the white Elephant, which is very ſcarce, and, as they affirm, never to be found but in the White Elephant.

King-

Kingdom of *Siam* is poſſeſſed and acted by the Soul of ſome great Prince, for which reaſon the King only keeps him for his ſuppoſed Dignity, but never puts him to any ſervile Uſe, nor ſo much as rides upon him himſelf; but though this Elephant is called by way of Diſtinction and Eminency the white Elephant, yet he is not quite white, but a ſort of a Fleſh Colour, for which reaſon ſome call him the white and red Elephant; the white Elephant (for there is ſeldom more than one) is ſerved in Gold Plate, and treated as Sovereign of all the reſt.

White Horſe. Next to the white Elephant, they pay a great Veneration to a white Horſe, an Inſtance of which we have in the King of *Siam*'s Concern for one of them that was ſick: when one Mr. *Vincent* a *European* Phyſician was at *Siam*, a white Horſe being ſick, the King deſired the ſaid Mr. *Vincent* to aſſiſt with his Advice concerning him, and being apprehenſive that Mr. *Vincent* might ſcruple to take upon him the Office of a Farrier, the King, to obviate this Objection, told him that he was no ordinary Horſe, but that he was deſcended from a Sire and a Dam who were not only both white themſelves, but their Anceſtors had been ſo for at leaſt four Generations, without any Mixture: Next to the White they eſteem the Black, becauſe they are the ſcarceſt except white, and ſo much do they admire that Colour, that they uſe artificial Means to blacken the Colour of thoſe who are not naturally ſo black as they would have them to be.

Barges &c. The Barges and Galleys that are kept for the King's own Uſe are lodg'd in a Houſe on the other Side of the River, oppoſite to the King's Palace.

Through the Hall of Audience there is an inner Palace, advanced ſeveral Steps above the ſaid Hall; there is a Window out of this Palace into the Hall, where the King uſually ſhews himſelf upon occaſion; in at this Window the *French* Ambaſſador deliver'd the King a Letter, for which purpoſe there were three Steps placed under the Window to raiſe him high enough to reach it, by reaſon of the advanced Height of the inner Palace where the King was; every thing that is deliver'd to him by his Officers or Foreign Ambaſſadors is preſented to him in a Golden Cup.

Pages. There are forty four Pages or young Gentlemen to wait in this Hall, they are divided into four Companies under their proper Officers; theſe proſtrate themſelves one half on the Right Hand, the other on the Left in the Time of Audience, till called to diſpatch the King's Orders to his Officers, but at other Times they are differently employ'd within Doors, ſome to read to the King, and take care of his Books, if he is ſtudious and delights in it, ſome are employ'd to take care of his Arms, ſome to ſerve him with *Betel*, &c. The King of whom the *French* Ambaſſador above-mention'd had his Audience, was ſo ſtudious, that he order'd *Quintus Curtius*, and ſeveral other Hiſtories to be tranſlated into the *Siameſe* Language, and by ſuch means underſtood the Conſtitution of ſeveral *European* Governments, and never thought that the Art of Governing could be attain'd without the help of Reading and Experience.

Palace Officers. He has one of his Officers immediately in his Preſence to receive his Orders, which the King delivers by certain Signs, which the Officer without proſtrating himſelf receives, and inſtantly communicates to thoſe that are waiting without, only by Signs alſo.

Officers of the Bed Chamber. Two Officers of his Bed-Chamber are his Women, none elſe being admitted there to make his Bed and dreſs him but the Women only, and they are not allow'd to put on his Cap, he reſerving that Office for himſelf, becauſe no Body is allow'd to touch his Head or put any thing over it; the Proviſions for his Table are brought to the Eunuchs, but they deliver it to the Women, who both dreſs it and wait on him at the Table; and they are ſo ſtrict in juſtly proportioning the Ingredients with which they ſeaſon or reliſh his Victuals, that all the Salt, Spice, and the like, is put in by Weight.

Queen. Amongst the many Women the King keeps, there is but only one that is honoured with the Title of Queen, and ſhe is commonly one of the Royal Family; but they are ſo far from being careful as to their Legitimacy, that the *French* Ambaſſador that was there in the Year 1688 tells us, that ſhe who was then Queen was the King's Daughter, which he had by his own Siſter, and that all the reſt of the Women ſubmitted to her, and reſpected her as Queen, that ſhe had the Command of the Eunuchs, both black and white, which were not above twelve in Number; and ſhe had alſo the Command of the reſt of the Women, with a Power to puniſh both if ſhe pleaſed; ſhe has alſo her Elephants and Barges to attend her when ſhe goes abroad, as occaſion may require, and when ſhe goes abroad in her Chair ſhe is ſo incloſed with Curtains, that ſhe can ſee without being ſeen, but when ſhe comes, they get out of the Way, or elſe proſtrate themſelves as ſhe paſſes by.

Her Trade. Her Magazines, Ships and Treaſure is her own, ſeparate from that belonging to the King, and if ſhe thinks fit ſhe carries on a Trade for herſelf, but the *French* Ambaſſador tells us, that when he was there the King and Queen were at ſome Difference, becauſe he had engroſs'd to himſelf all the Foreign Trade, whereby ſhe was deprived of the Advantages in Trade, which had formerly been reckon'd the Queen's Right; it is no wonder if where there is ſuch inceſtuous Co-habitation, Love and Unity ſhould decline when private Intereſt takes Place.

Seraglio. They take the Daughter of any Subject into the Service of the Vang or Seraglio, and that without conſulting the Conſent of either the Woman or her Parents, or rather they chuſe to do it againſt the Conſent of both, that they may extort a ſmall Sum from the Girl or her Parents for her Redemption; for the King keeps not above a Dozen Miſtreſſes in his Seraglio, and even them but for Cuſtom or State more than any thing elſe, that one would think there were no great occaſion to preſs Women into his Service.

Succeſſ. If the King have Children by more Women than one, and if one of theſe be Queen, yet the Queen's Son, although her eldeſt, doth not always ſucceed to the Crown, but the King's eldeſt Son, by the firſt Woman that brings him a Child is deem'd the natural and lawful Succeſſor, yet not indiſpenſibly ſo, for if the King ſees any private Reaſon for ſuſpending him from the Succeſſion, or does not look upon as qualified to ſucceed him, it is in his Power to nominate another; and notwithſtanding that in moſt of the Eaſtern Countries they generally affect being govern'd by one of the Royal Family, yet they do not inſiſt upon the eldeſt Son, if any Objection occurs againſt it, nor do they ſeem much to regard whether it be the Son of a Wife or a Concubine.

Wardrobe. He keeps Gentlemen of the Wardrobe (tho', as above obſerved, his Women dreſs him;) the Chief of his Officers of the Wardrobe is he that has the Care of the Kings Cap, any thing belonging to his Head being deem'd ſo ſacred that it muſt be a Perſon of Dignity that muſt preſume to handle it; and as the preſent Succeſſion of the Kings of *Siam* are of the *Cambodian* Line, they having uſurp'd it ſome time ago, and cannot pretend to any relation to the antient Kings of *Siam*, hence it has been lately, if it do not continue to this Day, that the great Office of being Keeper of the Cap of the King of *Siam* was one of the Princes Royal of the Blood of *Cambodia*.

Perſon keeps the King's Cap

Be-

For Strangers here.

BEFORE the King engrofs'd the Foreign Trade to himſelf, all Nations had the freedom of Commerce at *Siam*, which encouraged People of all Nations to come and ſettle there, and ſo numerous were the People of all Nations here, that Strangers converſed and contracted Acquaintance with their reſpective Countrymen, inſomuch that Numbers of People from ſeveral Countries inhabited ſeveral Parts or Quarters of the Town, forming themſelves into Communities, and chuſing Conſuls or Chiefs over them, the King appointing a Mandarin to tranſact Affairs with the ſaid Conſuls; but in matters of greater Conſequence there could be no Determination without the Barcalon or Prime Miniſter.

The Siamese Religion prevails.

ONE of the Barcalons or Prime Miniſters happen'd formerly to be a *Moor* of the Great Mogul's Country, and a *Mahometan* by Religion, and by this Means the *Moors* or *Mahometans* got then the beſt Eſtabliſhment; for by his Means the principal Eſtabliſhments were in the *Moors* Hands, and inſinuated themſelves ſo far into the King of *Siam*'s Favour and Intereſt, that he cauſed ſeveral Moſques or *Mahometan* Temples to be erected at his own Expence, and ſtill continues to ſupport the Charge of the Feſtival kept in Memory of *Haly*; and for the further encouraging of the *Mahometan* Religion, the Government of *Siam* order'd that all the *Siamese* who embraced that Religion, ſhould be exempt from the ſix Months perſonal Service; but this ſudden Proſperity ſoon met with a Blaſt, the late exalted Barcalon fell into Diſgrace, and with him as ſuddenly ſunk the Credit and Intereſt of his Nation; all the *Mahometans* were turn'd out of Employment, and forced either to perform the ſix Months Service, or to pay for their exemption from it; but ſo far had *Mahometaniſm* prevail'd in *Siam*, that they are yet allow'd their Moſques and the Exerciſe of their Religion; but they are not ſo numerous now as they were in the time of the above-mention'd *Mahometan* Barcalon, yet now there are computed about four thouſand *Moors* at *Siam*, and as many *Indian Portugueſe* or the mix'd Breed propagated by both, which are very numerous all along the *Indian* Coaſt: there continues ſome *Chineſe* and *Malays*, but the richeſt Merchants are withdrawn from *Siam*, ſince the King engroſſed all the beſt of the Foreign Commerce to himſelf.

Other chief Towns.

BESIDES *Siam*, there are other conſiderable Towns, though of leſs Note than *Siam*, but they are the Capitals of the ſeveral Provinces of the Kingdom, and generally give Names to them; their Situation is as follows, 1. *Menagſang*, the Northermoſt Town in *Siam Proper*, in twenty two Degrees of North Latitude; 2. *Lacontai*, about twenty one of North Latitude; 3. *Porſelouc*, in Latitude twenty North; 4. *Campenggpet*, in eighteen Degrees; and 5. *Prabat*, in ſixteen Degrees of North Latitude; all theſe five are ſituate upon the Banks of the River *Menam*; 6. *Lovvo*, about fifteen and a half North Latitude; here the King has one of his Hunting Palaces for his Reſidence in the Hunting Seaſon; it lies on the Eaſt Side of the River *Menam*, upon a ſmall Branch that runs into the ſame; 7. *Bancock*, ſituate upon the ſame River *Menam*, but about fifty Miles below *Siam*, towards the Sea, and ſo near, it may properly be called the Port of *Siam*, becauſe here was held the Cuſtom-houſe or Place to receive their Commiſſion to trade, and their Diſcharge when they leave the Country; 8. *Martaban*, in the Bay of *Bengall*, in about ſixteen Degrees of Latitude; this City is the Capital of a Kingdom or Province contiguous to that of *Pegu*, and was formerly Subject to *Pegu*, as it is now to *Siam*; it hath many convenient Ports for Trade, and produceth Grains, Fruits, Oil and Medicinal Herbs; here are alſo rich Mines of Gold, Silver, Iron, Lead and Copper; here are alſo Rubies, Lacques, Benjamin, &c. here they make a ſort of large Earthen Veſſels, called by the Name of the Place *Martabans*, ſome of which are ſo large as to hold a Buſhel; they are made of a kind of *Porcelane*, varniſhed black; they are eſteem'd very uſeful to keep Water, Wine, Oil, and all ſorts of Liquors in all over the Eaſt; 9. *Tenaſſim* lies alſo in the Bay of *Bengall*, at the Mouth of a River of the ſame Name, and is a good Harbour; it lies in Latitude thirteen Degrees North; 10. *Ligor*, on the Weſt Side of the Gulf of *Siam*, upon the *Iſthmus* that lies between *Siam* and *Malacca*, in the *Engliſh* Degree of Latitude; 11. *Chantebon* or *Liam*, in twelve Degrees of Latitude, upon the Mouth of a River of the ſame Name, which comes into the Sea in the North-eaſt Part of the Gulf of *Siam*; 12. *Patane*, it lies on the Eaſt Side of the Peninſula of *Malacca*, in between ſix and ſeven of North Latitude; this Province has a great Trade with ſeveral Foreigners, eſpecially the *Chineſe*, who bring *Porcelane*, Inſtruments of Husbandry, and divers Manufactures, and carry from thence Timber for Building, Cordage, Rice, and various ſorts of Skins; here is excellent good Pepper, but it is cheaper at *Bantam*; (of which more when we come to treat of *Java*;) they put a great Value upon *Saray Boura*, or the dried Birds-Neſts, which we ſpoke of in the Deſcription of *Cochin-China*; the Soil about this part of *Malacca* is very rich, producing Fruit every Month; their Hens, Ducks and Geeſe, of which they have plenty, often lay Eggs twice a Day, they have great Quantities of Fowls, they have white Herons and Turtles of divers Colours, like Parraquets; 13. *Queda* lies on the Weſt Side of *Malacca*, in between ſix and ſeven Degrees of Latitude; 14. the Town of *Malacca*, which gives name to the Peninſula in which it is, it lies in about two Degrees and a half North Latitude, and is the Capital of the Kingdom of *Malacca*, which takes its Name from it; this Kingdom is tributary to *Siam*, and was once a Part of that Kingdom; it had once a particular King of its own, till in the Year 1511 the *Portugueſe* took it, and kept it in deſpight of all the neighbouring Kings, till the *Dutch* took it from them in the Year 1640; but while it was in the Poſſeſſion of the *Portugueſe* it had the greateſt Trade of any Place in the *Indies* except *Goa*, it being the Rendezvous of all the Shipping from *China*, *Japan* and the *Spice Iſlands*; and to add to its Strength and Splendor, they built the Caſtle, and fortified the Town with a Wall, and built ſome Churches; but the *Dutch*, as if equally concern'd for the Ruin of other People's Intereſt, and the promoting of their own, took it from the *Portugueſe* in the Year 1640, and when they had got in Poſſeſſion, they (like the Dog in the Manger, who would neither eat the Hay himſelf nor let the Ox eat it,) in a great meaſure deſerted the Place, and removed the chief Trade to *Batavia*; the Town of *Malacca* being now Inhabited by a mix'd Multitude of *Dutch*, *Moors*, *Portugueſe*, and *Chineſe*, and a few *Malays*, in all not exceeding two or three hundred Families, and has a Garriſon of about the ſame Number of Soldiers, the *Dutch* ſtill keeping the chief Poſſeſſion, over-aw not only all the reſt of the Inhabitants of *Malacca*, but all the little Princes on theſe Coaſts; but as this relates rather to Trade than to the Situation of the Place, we ſhall handle it more largely in Chap. IV. following, when we ſpeak of the Article of Trade, and now proceed to the Deſcription of the next Capital in order, which is, 15. *Singapore*, it is ſituate at the Southermoſt Point of *Malacca*, and of all the Continent of *Aſia*, and gives name to the Strait or narrow Sea contain'd between *Malacca* and the Iſland of *Sumatra*; this Strait is called by ſome the Straits of *Malacca*, as being bounded by the Eaſt by that Continent, but by others the Straits of *Singapore*, the Capital upon that Part of the Coaſt of *Malacca*.

Lastly *Johr* lies in a Bay on the South Coaſt of *Malacca* to the Eaſtward of *Sincapore*; this City was taken and ruin'd by the *Portugueſe* in the Year 1603, they took from thence fifteen hundred Braſs Cannon; the King of *Johr* in Revenge three Years afterwards beſieged *Malacca* with ſixty thouſand Men, but was forced to raiſe the Siege and quit the Place; this Town and Province lying ſo remote from *Siam*, the Capital of the Kingdom, and the *Dutch* having got firm Footing here (like ſome other Animals who when they once get their Heads in do make the whole Body follow,) this Province has thrown off all Allegiance to the King of *Siam*, and are entirely govern'd by the Laws of the *Dutch*, and are ſo paſſively ſubmiſſive to them, that the *Dutch* do not find themſelves under any neceſſity to keep a Garriſon here to keep them in Subjection.

This Account of the Situation of theſe ſixteen Provinces and their Capitals may ſuffice at preſent, referring our Reader for a more particular View of them to a Map of *China*, *Japan*, *Tonquin*, *Cochin-China*, *Siam*, and the *Oriental Iſlands*, which ſhall immediately follow the Deſcription of the abovemention'd Kingdoms and Iſlands.

Fortifications and Buildings.

Their Fortifications are but weak, being either a ſlight Wall and a Ditch, or ſometimes only paliſadoed in with Bambou; their common Buildings through the whole Kingdom is much the ſame with thoſe deſcribed towards the Beginning of the Chapter, in the Deſcription of the Town of *Siam*; they uſe no Glaſs, but have a Shutter to let down like a Shop Window when they have Occaſion; their Roofs are ſloping like our common Thatch'd or Tiled Houſes, only inſtead of Tiles they uſe Palmeto Leaves laid one over another like our Slates, and as their Houſes all ſtand upon Poſts, as before deſcribed, they uſe Ladders to go up to them; they have no Iron Nails, but all their Beams, Rafters, Boards and other wooden Work are faſtned together with wooden Pins; they have ſeveral Brick Buildings, eſpecially thoſe of the better Sort, as Temples, Pyramids, &c. their Bricks are pretty good, and their Cement or Mortar better than ours, inſomuch that a Wall plaiſter'd with it looks like poliſh'd Marble; but their Buildings are but of a ſhort Continuance, becauſe they do not lay a good Foundation, or elſe the Softneſs of the Ground, by reaſon of the annual Inundations and ſoaking of the Ground, will not bear the Superſtructure: Every Houſe has a Boat ready againſt the Inundation, and has it tied at his Door to maintain a Communication with their Neighbours as Occaſion requires; the Climate is ſo hot that they have little occaſion for Fire but only to dreſs Victuals, and therefore they have no Hearths, but only a Basket of Earth to make the Fire upon, nor do they need any Chimney, becauſe they dreſs their Victuals without Doors.

Furniture.

The better Sort have Bedſteads or Couches to lie upon, but only broad enough for one Perſon, and cover'd with a Matt, and have no Curtains round the Bed, only one drawn before him when he ſleeps; ſome of them go ſo high as a Mattreſs ſtuff'd with Cotton, and a ſheet upon it to lie on, and a Coverlid to throw over them, with a Pillow under their Head, but they uſe no Feather-Beds; the pooreſt Sort have no Bedſteads, but pig all together on the Floor, having only Matts under them.

They ſit upon the Ground at Victuals, and have every one a little lacquer'd Table without Feet, and a Border round it; they have alſo Cheſts of Drawers, Cabinets and *China* Ware, with Veſſels of Copper and Earth; and as they have not Men of particular Trades, every Man has his own Set of working Tools to do his Work for himſelf or aſſiſt one another.

CHAP. III.

Of the Genius, Temper, Stature and Complexion of the Siameſe; *alſo of their Shape and Habit, together with their Ceremonies, Viſits, Entertainments, Diet, Diverſions and Feſtivals.*

Genius.

The *Siameſe* have a ready Conception, their Repartees ſmart, their Apprehenſion ſo quick that they can imitate any Thing at firſt ſight, and become tolerable Workmen in one Day's time by looking on and Imitating what they ſee, but they reſt in a certain Pitch of Acquirements, and are not ambitious to excel, and although *Loubiere* aſcribes this to their Indolence, yet it ſeems to proceed from Prejudice rather than Fact, an indolent Temper being almoſt inconſiſtent with ſuch a quick Genius as all Authors, and he amongſt the reſt, allows them to have; but they have other more probable Reaſons to make them ſlacken their natural Ingenuity, for the King employs half his Subjects ſix Months in the Year to do any Buſineſs indifferently, and thoſe that excel he retains in his Service during Life, ſo that to excel in Ingenuity here is to purchaſe Slavery for ever, which the Generality prudently endeavour to avoid, and which is as diſcouraging as the former, if a Man is ingenious, and eſcaping this Slavery, acquires a competent Fortune, it is ſeized for the King as ſoon as it is known; and if this was the Law in *France*, I queſtion not but it would make the *Frenchmen* as lazy as Mr. *Loubiere* reports the Subjects of the King of *Siam* to be.

Virtue

The *Siameſe* hate Intemperance and Laſciviouſneſs, and excel ſome Chriſtian Countries in ſuppreſſing looſe and frothy Diſcourſe, which never paſſes for Wit amongſt them, but is deſpiſed in Converſation: their People, eſpecially the better ſort, are ſo far from being Drunkards, that it is reckon'd ſcandalous among them to drink Arrack or Brandy; and ſo modeſt are the People, that Adultery is ſcarce ever heard of amongſt them, which *Loubiere* imputes to the Women's Induſtry and continual Exerciſe in the Care of their Families, which indeed is one good Step towards expelling of Vice and Debauchery out of a Family, but I rather take the chief Cauſe to be the entire Love the Men and Wives bear to one another and to their Children, which ſo much prevails there in all Degrees of People, that the King himſelf makes it a great Part of his Diverſion to play with his Children till they grow old enough to out-grow their childiſh Actions, and turn their Thoughts to ſomething more material.

Love their Wives

They are averſe to the ſhedding of Blood, but if their Reſentments amount to a deſign of Revenge, they ſeldom come to Blows, but if Words will not do, Poiſon or Aſſaſſination ſometimes puts an end to the Tragedy; but they will ſmother their Reſentment

ment a long Time, and will not put their Revenge in Execution till by the Provocation they are exasperated beyond the Bounds of Reason or Humanity; they are not readily provoked or reconciled, but when they would profess the most sincere Friendship, it is done by drinking in the same Cup.

Stature and Complexions. They are small of Stature and well proportion'd, but the Women's Breasts hang down to their Girdles; swarthy complexion'd, broad Faces, high Cheek-Bones, their Fore-heads tapering upwards, and ending at the Top as narrow as their Chins; they have small Eyes, hollow Jaws, large Mouths and thick Lips; Large Ears, short Noses and long Nails is deem'd beautiful and ornamental, and they so much admire black Teeth, that they dye them black, as in *Tonquin*, (*see Chap.* II. *of* Tonquin,) they have thick lank Hair, which both Sexes cut so short as to come no lower than their Ears, the Men shave their Beards clean, and leave not so much as Whiskers.

Teeth

Hair

Bathing. They never make a Visit till they first bathe, although it should happen two or three times a Day or more, some times they go into the Water, and other times have it pour'd over them for an Hour together, after which they perfume their Bodies, and use a sweet Pomatum to anoint their Lips, which makes them look rather more pale than their natural Colour; they sometimes swim and bathe in the Rivers, which the Women do as frequently as the Men, but never without a Pagne about their Middle, which is a Cloth round their Middle and coming down to the Calves of their Legs, for they are said to be strictly modest, and avoid every thing that has the least Appearance to the contrary, even smutty Songs being prohibited by a Law.

Habit. The Quality, Men as well as Women, wear Pagnes, and they wear them fine according to their Dignity; those that are made of fine Linnen or embroider'd Silk, or any other way gay and splendid, are only wore by those to whom the King presents them, but the Pagnes of the vulgar People are made of common Cloth, according to the Inclination or Ability of the Wearer; the Men bring up the Corner of the Pagne between their Legs, and tuck it into their Girdle, making it like a Pair of Breeches: The Women have also a Cloth to cover their Breasts, and throw the Ends over their Shoulders, (besides the Pagnes before spoken of,) but the rest of their Bodies are naked; they have no Shift as the Men have, nor any Covering for their Heads but their Hair; the poorest People of all go almost naked, and wear neither Shoes, Stockings nor Slippers; the Women wear as many Rings on the last three Fingers as they can keep on, if they can purchase them, and Bracelets or Rings of Gold upon their Wrists and Ankles, with Pendants in the Ears fashioned like a Pear: The Men of Quality have a Muslin Shirt without a Collar, with wide Sleeves and no Ribbons, and the Bosom open; in Winter they wear a Breadth of Stuff or painted Linnen over their Shoulders like a Mantle, and wind it about their Arms; the King wears a Vest of Brocaded Sattin, with strait Sleeves down to his Wrists under such a Shirt as above described, but no Subject is allow'd to wear such a Vest except he to whom the King presents it; they use no Stockings, but they have Slippers with picked Toes turning up; the King sometimes presents his Generals with a Military Vest, button'd before, and reaching to his Knees, having short wide Sleeves reaching only to the Elbows, and either in the Field of Battle or Riding a Hunting the King and all his Retinue are cloathed in Red; the King wears a Cap in form of a Sugar-loaf, with a Coronet or Circle of precious Stones about it; his Officers have also such Caps with Circles of an inferior Value, as Gold, Silver, or gilt Vermillion, according to their respective Dignities; these Caps are fastned with a Stay under the Chin, and are never worn but in the King's Presence, or upon some extraordinary Occasion; their putting off their Slippers when they enter a Person's House is a Token of Reverence or Respect, as our putting off our Hats are.

Behaviour. They are in their Infancy and Minority impregnated with and brought up under the strictest Rules of Modesty and Submission, always to learn rather than speak before their Betters, except they be call'd to give their Opinion; in addressing a Woman they commonly prefix the Epithet *Young* to what other Titles is due to her, as the King's Daughter is called *Young Heaven*, and those of a lower Quality *Young Jewel*, *Young Flower*, &c. one cannot affront a Woman worse than to call her Old, and indeed it is ill Manners enough to omit the Epithet of *Young* when you address them, let their Age be what it will.

It is reckon'd a Piece of Insolence for a Man to stand before a Person of Quality, or a Slave to stand before his Master, but they most sit upon their Heels, their Heads inclining forward, their Hands join'd and lifted up to their Forehead; or when they meet a Superior, they join their Hands and lift them towards their Heads; the greater Veneration or Respect they pay the higher they lift their Hands, insomuch that if any receives a Commission, or but a Letter from the King or a Nobleman, they hold it up to their Heads, and sometimes as a Token of more profound Reverence they lay it upon their Heads, as *Loubiere* tells us he did when he received the King of *Siam*'s Letter to his Master the King of *France*. When one visits a Superior, he comes stooping into the Room, then puts his Knees upon the Ground, and sits upon his Heels, and continues in this Posture till the Person he visits speaks to him, for always between any two of different Dignity the Superior speaks first, the contrary being deem'd unpardonable ill Manners in the Inferior; when a Person visits his Inferior, he walks upright, and the Master of the House receives him at the Door, and conducts him to the same Place at his Departure, but never further; at a Visit the Master of the House gives his Visitor *Betel* and Arrack, which he gives, and the Visitor receives with both Hands together, they also treat with Tea, Rice, and Fish, as the Person thinks convenient, and as Opportunity permits.

Position or Places. In Walking the Right Hand, and in Entertainments that Part of the Room over against the Door is always esteem'd the most honourable, and therefore if a Person comes in of a Dignity superior to all that were there, he that had the Head Place before must take the next lower, and so on, that every one is obliged to remove a Place lower quite round, or at least half round the Room, and with their Places they must also alter their Postures, sitting upright or leaning less or more, according as they are to pay the greater or less Respect to the Person last come in, but if he that came last in is inferior to all the Company, he takes the first Place, next the Door, and if he is much below them, he continues sitting upon his Heels with his Knees upon the Floor; when they approach the King's Presence, they fall upon their Knees and bow their Faces to the Ground.

They have an uncommon Respect for their Heads, and it is a heinous Affront to touch or stroke them; nay, even the Cap must not be used too familiarly, for when a Servant carries it, it is put upon a Stick with a Foot to it, that when the Masters walks, the Cap may be carried along with him, and when he stands still the Servant sets it down: When they return an Answer to the King in person, it is introduced with, *High and Mighty Lord of me thy Slave, suffer me to take thy Royal Word, and fix it in my*

all

Hand, and preserve it on the Crown of my Head: In their Addresses to high or low, they always speak in the singular Number.

HUNTING the Elephant is a Diversion as well as an Exercise, a Pleasure as well as a Profit; when they hunt a Male Elephant, they lead a tame Female one into the Wood, who with her Noise entices him into a narrow Strait between two Banks of Earth, fortified with bodies of Trees for that Purpose; it grows narrower the further he goes in, till at last he gets in so far that he cannot turn himself, and then they secure his hinder Legs with Ropes, and (likely by some Convenience at that narrow End for that purpose) let him out, and make him march home with two or three tame Elephants, and so by Discipline suitable to his Capacity, they bring him to be serviceable; sometimes they surround them with Fire to drive them to the Trap; but that being more practised in the Island of *Ceylon*, we shall enlarge upon it when we come to treat of that Place.

Elephant Fighting Cock-fighting

THEY formerly had Mock-fights of Elephants, and also Cock-fights; but of late they exceed many other Countries in Tenderness in that Respect; for they will not allow of exposing the Life of either Man or Beast for the sake of Sport: And although they yet divert themselves with these Mock-fights of Elephants, yet they always take Care to keep them at too great a Distance to hurt themselves or any body else; and the Priest have got an Order against Cock-fighting, alledging that thus killing the Cocks, or, which is the same, causing them to kill one another, is a Degree of Murder; and that those who are guilty of promoting this Sport, shall be bastinadoed with Bars of Iron in another World: However erroneous or superstitious their Religion may be, there seems to be more Humanity and Tenderness in them than in some whose Knowledge and Profession very far exceeds theirs. They have Comedies, Rope-dancing, and Tumbling, which last they say is excellently perform'd.

Paper Kite

THEY are so fond of that Boyish Diversion of Flying the Paper-Kite, that the King himself will come abroad, during the two Winter Months, to fly the Kite with a Lanthorn at its Tail, his Mandarins who attend him, taking it by Turns to hold the String. There is also the Diversions of the *Cone*, the *Layeome*, and the *Rabam*: The *Cone* is a Figure-Dance after Musick; the Dancers are arm'd and masked, and seem to fight rather than dance. In the *Layeome*, the Actors sing Verses of the Histories of their Country; the Actors are all Men. The *Rabam* is a Dance perform'd by Men and Women, who sing in the Dance; and as long Nails are looked upon as an Ornament, those that have not natural Nails long enough, have artificial ones made of Copper upon such Occasions; the Dance is slow and stately, and requires various Postures and Distortions of the Body and Limbs; the Actors in the Cone and Rabam have Caps like flate Caps, in the form of a Sugar-loaf, as mention'd before in the Dress, and perform at Funerals; but the *Layeoms* act at the Dedication of their Temples, at the Ceremony of setting up their *Summonacodom*, when they have Wrestling, Mock-fights, and Races of Oxen that run round a Ring; sometimes one Ox runs against another, being each of them led by a Man on Foot, but more commonly two Yoke of Oxen run one against another with a Plough fathned to each Pair or Yoke, but held up so that it does not plough as it goes; they do not start at the same Place of the Circle, but at opposite Points, and the Pair that overtakes the other wins the Race: *A good Way to prevent their Justling one another.*

Races of Oxen

Rowing for Wagers

THEY row for Wagers in their Barges upon the Rivers, which makes them very great at that Exercise; they are so addicted to Gaming, that when they have lost all else, they will stake their Children, and when they have lost them will stake themselves, and if they lose, become Slaves, and lose their Liberty when they have no more Money, Goods, or Children to lose; their chief Play is like our Play at Chess.

Festival

THEY have an Annual Festival; when the dry Weather comes on, and the Waters begin to retire, they go out of their Barges in the Evening, and the River seems to be cover'd with floating Lanthorns made of painted Paper, and with these Tokens of Rejoicing they continue several Nights together, returning Thanks for the hopeful Prospect of succeeding Plenty, occasion'd by the Floods; they also rejoice and return thanks in the same Manner for the Fruits of the Earth, after they have gather'd it in, and with this addition, that not only the Barges but the Houses and Streets are illuminated, and curious Fire-works play'd upon this occasion.

Holy-

THE New and Full Moons are also Holidays, but they are as Fast-days not Festivals, for neither Priests nor People eat any thing in the Afternoons of those Days, nor are the People allow'd to fish, though other Labour is not altogether forbid on those Days; the People then make offering to the Priests in their Convents of Money, Cloth, and Cattle; if the Cattle be dead, the *Telapoins* eat them; there are other Feasts which *Loubiere* observed when there, and supposed them to be the Feast of the Dedication of their respective Temples; the People attend every Holiday in their best Cloaths, and release some wild Animal, which they buy of those that have taken them, and set them at Liberty, which they look upon as a great Act of Charity; their offerings are presented to the Idol by the Priest, who either holds it in both his Hands before the Shrine, or lays it upon the Altar, and afterwards it is applied to the Priest's Use; they sometimes offer lighted Tapers, but never any bloody Sacrifice, the killing of Animals being entirely prohibited.

Offeri

Rice

RICE and Fish is their chief Food, and is very cheap; Rice is a Farthing a Pound, and they can have as much Fish for a Farthing more as together is sufficient for a Man a whole Day, there are also great Store of Oysters, Turtles, and Lobsters, with some excellent kinds of Fish not known to us in *Europe*; they have Plenty of fresh Water Fish, and *Baladaun* is in great Esteem with them; (*for the making of it in Chap.* II. *of* Tonquin;) they like their Fish better dryed and salted, though it stink, than fresh; they eat Rats, Mice, Lizards, Locusts, and almost all kind of Insects whatsoever; they seldom eat Flesh, but of what they do eat they like the Guts and Entrails best; their Land Fowls and Butchers Meat is so dry and insipid that the *Europeans* do not like them, but leave them off, and conform to the Country's Way of Eating; their Sauces are made of Water with a little Spice, Garlick, and sweet Herbs; they use also *Nukemum*, described Chap. II. of *Tonquin*; they have neither good Grapes, Olives nor any Oil worth Eating; the Milk of the Female Buffaloe affords more Cream than Cows Milk, but they only eat it, and never make either Butter or Cheese.

Dri

RIVER Water is their chief Drink, but it is so thick and muddy after the Inundation, that they are obliged to take it up beforehand, and let it settle three Weeks or a Month, if it is immediately after the Floods, or else it causes Dilenteries to those who drink it fresh taken up; the King has a large Cistern in the Fields to keep fresh Water in for his own Use; he has also a great Eafon near the Palace at *Longo*, about three Miles in Circumference, called the Fish Sea, where the Rain Water is preserved and settled, and accounted very wholesome.

The

Tea.

THE Citizens of *Siam* drink Tea both as Food and Phyſick; for beſides their common uſe of Tea, they drink it as a Remedy againſt the Head-ach; they reckon that drinking five or ſix Diſhes, and going to Bed to ſweat upon it will carry off an ordinary Indiſpoſition, for Sweating is their common Remedy for moſt Diſtempers; when they drink Tea they do not put Sugar into it to ſweeten it, as we do in *England*, but put Bits of Sugar-candy in their Mouths, and let it diſſolve with the Tea as they drink it; they often make it with cold Water, and think it is the beſt Tea that is made in this manner.

Strong Liquor.

THEIR Religion forbids them to drink Wine, or ſtrong Drink, but they can diſpenſe with that if they can come at it; the Country affords no ſtrong Liquor but Arrack, which they diſtil from Rice, and alſo Toddy, which is drawn from the Cocoa-Tree.

DIFFERENT Foreigners drink different Liquor at *Siam*; the *Portugueſe* drink Chocolate, the *Moors* Coffee, the *Engliſh* Arrack Punch; there are but few of the Sorts of Fruit here that are known in *England*, except Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, and Pomegranates; there are alſo Bonanoes or *Indian* Figs, which with one ſort or other of the Oranges continue all the Year, but other Fruits are only to be had at their proper Seaſons.

CHAP. IV.

Gives an Account of the Trade and Manufactures of the Siameſe; *alſo of their Mechanick Arts, their Coins, Weights, and Meaſures, the Nature of their Shipping, and of their Navigation abroad.*

SIAM was a Place of good Trade when the Commerce was free and open both to Foreigners and to the Natives amongſt themſelves, but now the King has engroſs'd all the beſt Trade to himſelf, not only by Wholeſale, but carries on a Retale Trade in Shops by his Factors, and ſells to his Subjects all their Cotton-Cloths, which is the chief Wear of the common People; he monopolizeth to himſelf all the Trade in Ivory and Arrack. What the Subjects have to diſpoſe of, of theſe ſort of Goods, as alſo Salt-Petre, Lead, and Sapan-Wood, they are not allow'd to trade with Foreigners in, but are obliged to ſell all to the King, and even at his own Price too, and having all the Trade in his own Hand, he makes his own Price with Foreigners in the Selling as well as with his own Subjects in the Buying, ſo that there is little got on either Side by Trading with him, which has reduced the Trade of *Siam* to a very low Ebb; he ſometimes agrees with the *Dutch* by Wholeſale, to ſell them all the Skins and Furs that the Country affords at a certain Price, as they can agree, but his Subjects muſt provide them, and ſell them to him firſt at a Price to afford him Profit, whatever they have for their Labour or Property; indeed he allows his Subjects to deal with Foreigners in Trading with Brown-Sugar, Sugar-Candy, and Amber-Greeſe, which they may ſell to Merchants or Foreigners without any Reſtriction.

Trade diſcouraged.

THIS Practice of engroſſing the Trade to himſelf has been ſo fatal to all Commerce, and eſpecially with Foreigners, that whereas there was not leſs than a thouſand Veſſels yearly traded to *Siam*, there are now ſcarce any but a few ſmall *Dutch* Barks, for no Body cares to deal with the King becauſe he is arbitrary, and will make his own Terms, ſo that few care to carry Goods there for a Market, becauſe the Seller has no ſhare in making a Bargain for the Price, and this Country not affording ſo much for Exportation as to create a Trade, and what there is being all in the King's Hand, (except as above,) you muſt either give his Price or one Word, whatever it is, or go without, that few care to go there either to carry Goods for a Market, or buy Goods to bring Home, and if the Subjects had a free Trade either with Foreigners or amongſt themſelves, yet they are tax'd even to the laſt of what they are known to be worth, or if a Native happens to have ſaved a little Money, he is forced to hide it, or hoard it up, and dare not let it appear in Trade or in any publick Manner, leſt it ſhould be ſeized for the King's Uſe.

Handicrafts.

HERE are but few Mechanick or Handicraft Trades carried on, every Man generally has his Set of Tools, and underſtands ſomething of the Uſe of them; the King employs half his Subjects one half of the Year in whatſoever Mechanical Exerciſe he thinks fit, in which they dare not be lazy or quite ignorant, for fear of the Baſtinado, nor do they care to excel the reſt, leſt the King without making any Terms with them keep them in his Service like Slaves for their Ingenuity; *(ſee Chap. III. near the Beginning;)* ſome of them do Carpenters Work tolerable well, but they have no Nails, but faſten their Work together with Pins inſtead of them; they can burn Bricks, make Cement or Mortar, and do Maſons Work; they can caſt Metals to cover their Idols, which at firſt are nothing but monſtrous Figures compoſed of Brick and Lime or Cement, which they cover with Plates of Gold, Silver, or Copper; they can cover Sword Hilts, or the like, but their Work is but rough, for they do not underſtand Poliſhing or ſetting of Precious Stones; they can beat Gold, and gild tolerable well; they have no great Art of forging of Iron, but caſt it into the Forms they want; they never ſhoe their Horſes, nor have the Art of Tanning Leather; they make an ordinary Cotton Cloth, and paint it inſtead of dying it; they make no Stuffs either of Wool or Silk; they underſtand not Painting in Oil, but in the way of Painting that they do uſe, they affect extravagant Figures of Men, diſtorted and out of Proportion, or of Animals that the World never produced; they will encourage a *European* Artiſt or Handicraft when there, but take care he ſhall not bring much out of their Service.

Employment

THEY that have got a little Stock, follow Merchandizing in ſuch Things as the King allows them to Trade in, but the chief Exerciſe of the common People is Fiſhing; they are not curious in admiring Rarities or Superfluities, but either in Building, Wearing, or Furniture are content with barely what is neceſſary, for which reaſon Mechanicks or any ingenious Exerciſe is little or not at all improved amongſt them.

Simply Honeſt

AND as their Simplicity keeps them from aſpiring after Superfluities, ſo it keeps them from any Inclination or Neceſſity to be Covetous or Tricking in their Dealing, which is what they are ſo far from, that one of them will ſcarce count the Money that he receives after him that paid it to him, and they

laugh

laugh at the Carefulneſs of the *Europeans*, who dare not truſt to the Perſon they receive any thing of, without examining it after them.

Their Markets begin at five in the Evening, and continue till eight or nine at Night.

The better ſort buy their Muſlin by the Piece, taking one another's Word for the Quantity, and the meaner Sort that buy by Meaſure, have only their own Cubit, or from their Elbow to their Finger's End to meaſure by; but they have a Fathom which they uſe in Building, and in meaſuring their Canals, and their Roads, in which there is a Stone ſet up at the End of every Mile.

For a Meaſure for Grain or Liquor, they uſe a Cocoa-Nut Shell; but as they are of unequal Bigneſs, they determine the different Capacities of them by the Number of Cories that they will hold: Theſe are little Shells, which we call Black-a-moor's Teeth, which ſerve for ſmall Money at *Siam*: Some Cocoa's will hold a thouſand, and ſome five hundred of them, or more or leſs. They have alſo a kind of Wicker-Meaſure for their Corn, called a Sat, and a Pitcher to meaſure their Liquids; but they have no particular Standard, but compute them by their Cocoa-Shells; and they being ſo uncertain, as above mentioned, their Liquid, as well as dry Meaſure, cannot be eaſily determin'd: And their Weights are as uncertain as their Meaſures, they being govern'd by their Pieces of Money, which are as uncertain as the reſt; but they have other Weights that are more certain, as the Cattee, Bahar, and Peeul. There are two Sorts of Bahars; the great Bahar is two hundred Cattees, or three Pices; a Cattee is twenty ſix Tails, and one Tail is an Ounce and a Half *Lisbon* Weight; and by this they weigh Spices, Drugs, and other Commodities.

Meaſures.

Weights.

The ſmall Bahar is alſo two hundred Cattees; but the Cattees differ as our Ounces *Troy* and *Avoir-dupoiſe* do. This Cattee is but twenty two Tails, and the Tail is near an Ounce and a half, and half a Quarter; by this they weigh Quickſilver, Silk, Musk, Aloes, Copper, Lead, Tin, Ivory, Amber, Vermillion, &c. The Peeul is a hundred Cattees of *China*, or a hundred and thirty two Pound *Engliſh*.

Mr. *Lockyer* gives us alſo an Account of another ſort of Weight called a Mace, of which there are ſixteen to one Bunkal of one Ounce nine Penny Weights twelve Grains *Troy*, and that a hundred Cattees make one Peeul of one hundred and thirty ſeven Pounds and a half, being five Pounds and a half more than the common *China* Peeul above-mention'd.

Coins.

Their current Coins are Tails, Tycals, Maſſes, and Copans; a Copan is three Pence Farthing Sterling; four Copans is a Maſs, or thirteen Pence Sterling; four Maſſes is a Tycal, or four Shillings and four Pence of our Money; and four Tycals is a Tail, worth our eighteen Shillings. They have no Gold or Copper Money; theſe are only reckon'd merchantable Commodities, as our Lead and Tin is, and are ſold by Weight, any Weight of Gold being reckon'd of ten times the Value of the ſame Weight in Silver. The little Shells called Cories, found about the *Maldiva* Iſlands, (of which hereafter,) are current for the Purchaſe of ſmall Things; they pay them by Tale, and are of more or leſs Value, as they are ſcarce or plenty; but their general Value at *Siam* is eight hundred for a Penny.

Trade at *Malacca*.

The chief Trade that the *Engliſh* have in this Country is at *Malacca* with the *Dutch*, who are in Poſſeſſion of that Port: To this Place the *Engliſh* ſend two or three Ships every Year from the Bay of *Bengall*, and Coaſt of *Cormandel*, with Callicoes, Opium, ſlight Silks, and the like, and bring back Canes, Rattans, long Pepper, Sugar, Sugar-candy, Benjamin, Sapan-wood, and ſometimes Gold; but this Trade is prohibited by the *Dutch*, though ſometimes carried on by the Connivance of the Governor, Council, or Fiſcal; for moſt of the chief Officers of the *Dutch* Settlement are Friends of thoſe who compoſe the State, and ſent abroad to make their Fortunes; ſo that they are wink'd at in their trading even with any People, becauſe it is to enrich their Families; and indeed this Connivance contributes conſiderably to the Advantage of the *Engliſh* Trade; for the *Dutch* have engroſſed all the chief Trade of the *Indies* to themſelves by building Forts and planting Garriſons, where it is worth the Charge; and where it is not, they fix Guard-Ships to prevent the Natives trading with other People; and ſo cunning are they, that where they have neither Guard-Ships nor Garriſons, they give out that they have bought up all the Pepper and other Commodities that ſuch a Place produces, to prevent other Peoples going there to buy, and ſo to monopolize and engroſs the Market to themſelves, at a cheaper Rate, though there is no ſuch Contract ſubſiſting; ſo that a great Part of the Trade we have, and the Goods we receive, is either from the *Dutch* at ſecond Hand, or if from the Natives, it is what the *Dutch* reject, and think not worth their while to meddle with.

And as we are treating of the Trade, it may not be amiſs to give a Deſcription of the Town of *Malacca*. It ſtands upon a low level Ground, cloſe to the Sea-ſide, on the Weſt Side of a ſmall River, which at Spring Tides has Water enough for ſmall Veſſels. On the Eaſt Side of this River ſtands a ſtrong Fort built at the Foot of a little ſteep Hill, and maintaining a Communication with the Town of *Malacca* by a Draw-bridge: The Walls are thick and high, and founded upon a Rock. Cloſe on the River, on the other Side of the Hill, ſtands a little Church; for the *Dutch*, who 'tis probable, as they have Poſſeſſion of the Place, may ſuppreſs the Religion of the Natives, there being no Temples for the Exerciſe of their Way of Worſhip.

The Native *Malayans* poſſeſs the leaſt Share of the Town, there being between two and three hundred Families of *Dutch*, *Portugueſe*, *Chineſe*, and *Moors*. The *Chineſe* have the beſt Shops fill'd with the Manufactures of their own Country, and ſuch other Goods as there are any Demand for. The Houſes are moſtly built with Stone, the Streets are wide and ſtraight, but not pav'd. The Natives are generally expelled the City, and live in poor mean Cottages in the Suburbs, and are kept in great Subjection, and although they have frequently not only meditated, but executed Revenge upon the *Dutch* for their Tyrannical Government, yet the *Dutch* keep the Trade of the Natives under ſuch Reſtraint, with their Guard-ſhips at Sea, and their ſevere Government aſhore, that it is next to impoſſible for them to deal with any but the *Dutch* themſelves.

Malacca is a very healthful Place, though ſo near the Line; it has not a great Trade; but as the *Dutch* are Maſters of the Straits of *Sunda*, between the Iſlands of *Sumatra* and *Java*,) and the Town of *Malacca* gives them the Command of the Straits between *Malacca* and *Sumatra*, called the Straits of *Malacca*, or by ſome the Straits of *Sincapore*, and theſe two Paſſages command in a great Meaſure all the Trade from *Europe* to *China* and *Japan*: 'Tis true they may paſs the Straits of *Malacca*, and not come within the Reach of the *Dutch* Guns from the *Malacca* Fort; but they have their Guard-ſhips out to intercept that Paſſage, if they pleaſe; and they now make Reprizals of the *Portugueſe*, making them pay a Toll or Acknowledgment for every Ship that paſſes

paſſes, as the *Portugueſe* formerly ſerved them, when it was in their Power.

Shipping. THE *Siameſe* have not much Shipping, the King has five or ſix ſmall Veſſels, which he mans generally with *Europeans*, and ſends them out ſometimes to trade, and ſometimes to make Repriſals upon his injurious Neighbours, but the Commiſſions of his Captains either by Sea or Land never extend ſo far as to kill any Body; he has alſo about forty or fifty Galleys, with about ſixty Men each, but they are of little uſe except in the Gulf or Bay of *Siam*, and then only in a ſmooth Sea and good Weather.

Barges. THEY have fine Veſſels called Ballons or Barges, for uſe in the Rivers, they are ſixteen or twenty Foot long, the lower Part of them is made out of one ſingle Tree, which they firſt cut hollow, ſomething like a Canoe, as large as the Tree will admit, or the Barge requires, and then raiſe the Sides with Boards to what Height they think fit; the Head and Stern is very high, and in the Middle is a Place for the Reception and Accommodation of Paſſengers, or the Gentleman to whom it belongs; they have ſometimes forty Rowers in one of them, who as the Barges are ſo narrow and long, will row them with incredible Swiftneſs, even againſt the Stream; the Mandarins Barges are diſtinguiſh'd by their Colour or Workmanſhip, according to the Dignity or Order of the Mandarin whoſe it is, and if any of them are upon the Water when the King comes by, the Mandarins proſtrate themſelves in the Barge, and not a Barge moves till the King be out of Sight.

CHAP. V.

Of the Nature of the Soil of Siam; *their Method of Husbandry and Gardening; alſo of their Plants, Animals, and Minerals, and of their Manner of Travelling.*

Soil. THEIR Soil has been form'd, and is annually encreaſed and thicken'd by the Clay and looſe Earth that is annually waſh'd down from the Mountains by the Floods in the wet Seaſons, and has now cover'd the lower Grounds to ſuch a Thickneſs that they have but very little ſtony Ground, nor ſcarce a Flint to be found in the Country; it is this rich Soil that makes the Land fruitful where it lodgeth, while the high mountainous Ground from whence this Soil is waſh'd is left rocky and barren, and ſometimes even the lower Lands, which is otherwiſe naturally fruitful, are ſo ſcorch'd with Droughts, and ſubject to Inſects and the like, that they are deprived of their Harveſt for ſeveral Years together, and theſe Years are generally ſucceeded by peſtilential and Epidemical Diſeaſes.

Plowing. THEY prepare their Land for Tillage when the Floods have ſufficiently moiſtened the Earth, and then plow it with Plows without Wheels, like our Foot Plows, with a Share and a Staff to hold it by, but inſtead of Nails they are only faſtned together with Thongs and Pins, and are drawn by Oxen and Buffaloes, which they guide by a Rope run through their Noſe; it was formerly a Cuſtom for the King of *Siam* to ſet his Hand to the Plow on a certain Day once in a Year, as his Neighbours of *China* and *Tonquin* did, but it is now thought ſufficient that one of his Majeſty's Officers perform the Ceremony for him, and upon this Occaſion a great Sacrifice is offer'd to *Sommono Codom* their God, and he is implored to be propitious to their Labours. They ſometimes ſow Wheat on the higher Lands, but Rice is the chief Grain, which they plant before the Waters riſe to any great height, and then as the Waters riſe very ſlowly, and the Rice delights in wet Ground, it grows as faſt as the Water riſes, and always keeps the Ear above Water, and if the Rice be ripe before the Water retires, they go in Boats to reap it, or if not, they reap it not till the Water is gone: but the beſt reliſh'd Rice and what will keep the longeſt is that ſown in higher Ground, which is never over-flow'd, but then they are at a vaſt Trouble to water theſe Fields while the Rice is growing, for it will not grow without abundance of Moiſture.

INSTEAD of Threſhing their Rice, they tread it out with Cattle, and for Winnowing they pour it gradually from ſome high Place, and in its falling the Wind ſeparates the Rice from the Duſt and Chaff, but there is ſtill a thick Skin upon it like the Skin or Bran of our Wheat or Barley, and this they wear off by beating it in a wooden Mortar before it is fit for Boiling.

Gardens. THE *Siameſe* cultivate their Gardens as well as their Fields; they have in them Pulſe and Roots, as Garlick, Potatoes, and Radiſhes, but no Onions, Carrots, Turnips, or Parſnips, nor any Colworts, Lettice, or any of our Sallad Herbs; they have Cucumbers leſs offenſive than ours, and their Garlick is not ſo rank in this hot Country; when the Inundation is over they cover the Plants in their Gardens from the Heat, as we cover ours in the Winter to keep them from the Cold.

Fruits. THEY have Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, and Pomegranates; they have Oranges of one kind or other all the Year, but the other Fruits are limited to their proper Seaſons, as ours generally in *England*; they have ſcarce any other ſorts of Fruit known in *Europe*, but there is *Indian* Figs, Bonanoes, Goyvaes, Jacques, Durions, Mangoes, Mangoſtans, Tamernids, Annanaes, and Cocoa-Nuts; they have Plenty of Pepper and Sugar-canes; a great Part of their Food is what their Gardens produce; their Fruits in general have ſo ſtrong a Taſte and Smell that it requires ſome Time before a Foreigner's Appetite can be reconciled to them.

Flowers. OF Flowers they have the Tube-roſe, Gilly-flower, and ſome few Roſes; they have ſome Jaſſamine, Amaranthus, and Tricolets, but no others *European* Flowers, but ſeveral others peculiar to their own Country, agreeable enough both for Beauty and Smell, but they only ſmell in the Night, for the exceſſive Heat of the Sun deſtroys the Smell in the Day-time.

Wood. MOST of the hilly and uncultivated Part of the Country is cover'd with Woods, but the Bambou is the moſt uſeful to them, it delights in marſhy Ground among Reeds and Sedges, and ſeems when young to be one of the ſame Species, and is ſo tender when it is green and young, that they pickle it for Sauce, but in time it grows to a prodigious Bigneſs, and ſo hard as to be fit for any common Uſe, as Timber, (*ſee their building Houſes with it Chap.* II. *of the Deſcription of* Siam;) it is hollow, ſave only for a Sugary Pith that fills up the

the Middle of it, the Shoots are separated by Knots; it has Branches and Thorns that our Reeds have not, and each Root sends out several Stems; it is easy to cleave, but so hard that a Knife will scarce penetrate it, and it is said the *Siamese* strike Fire with it; they have other Timber fit for building Ships and making Masts, but their Cordage is made of the Skin or Husk of the Cocoa-Nut, spun and twisted together; they have Timber also for all other Uses, as Wainscoting, *&c.* there are also Cotton-Trees, which yield the Wool very fine, but so short it cannot be spun, and serves only to stuff Pillows, or the like; there is a Tree from which they extract an Oil which they mix with their Cements, and others that afford Lacquer and Gums; here are Cinnamon-Trees, also Sapan-Wood and other Woods proper for Dying; here is Lignum Aloes, but not so good as in *Cochin-China*, and very scarce, being only in the rottenest Part of the Tree, and those very little Pieces, and difficult to be found.

Cordage.

Cotton.

Beasts. THERE are Oxen, Buffaloes, Sheep, and Goats, the two former not good to eat, but kept for Tillage, their Hogs are small but fat, and the wholsomest Food of any Beast they have; there are no Rabbits, and but few Hares; their Cows are not nice Victuals any more than their Oxen; a Sheep is worth more than a Goat, and either of them is worth more than a Cow. They have a pretty Store of Venison, though the wild Beasts destroy a great deal of it, yet they have so much Deer, that the Natives kill them only for their Skins, to sell the *Dutch*, who trade with them to *Japan*.

Fowls. HENS are sold under Two-pence a-piece; Ducks are cheap, and very good Peacocks and Pigeons are plenty and wild; both Pigeons and Partridges perch upon Trees, to avoid the Floods. They have excellent Snipes, Turtle Doves and Parrots, and Plenty of wild Fowl, because the Natives will neither kill nor take them, but the *Moors* have Faulcons, which they bring from *Persia*, to fly at the Game. Most of the Birds of *Siam* are more grateful to the Eye than to the Ear: They are beautiful to look upon, but have no harmonious Voices. Their Sparrows are so tame, that they come into the Houses, and do some Service in picking up the Insects, which are very numerous and troublesome, (of which below;) their Crows and Vultures are so tame that the People feed them for Pity or Charity. Mr. *Lonbiere* before-mentioned tells us, that the Children that die before they are three Years old, are given to the Crows and Vultures for Food, thereby killing two Birds with one Stone, *viz.* Feeding those Birds of Prey out of Charity, as they call it, and at the same Time giving their Children a Burial, (if it may be so called;) that they deem the most honourable of any other, except Burning itself.

Children devoured by Birds.

Insects. THERE are Abundance of Insects in *Siam*, as Lizards, Scorpions, Millepedes, *&c.* And the Ants, and Gnats, which the Sparrows help to destroy, are exceeding troublesome; for they will penetrate through the Covers of Books, which obliged the Missionaries to wash them over with Varnish to preserve them: These Ants, by Foresight or natural Instinct, to avoid the Inundations, make their Nests, and lay up their Stores in the Tops of Trees, and thereby secure their Stores and Magazines in the Time of the Floods. They have many Water Insects unknown to us, amongst the rest a shining Fly, that casts a Light in the Dark; but they are killed or driven away by the North Wind, after the Rains.

Mines. THIS Country, thought by some to be the antient *Chersonese*, as having been formerly rich in Mines: The great Number of Idols, and other Cast-Works that are found there, as well as the old Pits that are daily discovered, shew, that there have been more wrought formerly than are at present. Their Images, and the Roofs of their Temples could not have been so well adorn'd with large Quantities of Gold, if it had not been taken up in greater Plenty formerly than it is now; but there has been no considerable Vein of Gold or Silver found lately; though Mr. *Vincent*, an *European* Physician, lately discovered a Steel Mine at the Top of a Mountain; also a Mine of Chrystal, one of Antimony, one of Emerald, and one of white Marble; and he further adds, that he had found a Gold Mine, which he believed to be very rich; but he would not acquaint the King with it. The *Talapoins* brought him Specimens of very rich Ore. They have plentiful Mines of Tin and Lead; but their Tin is but poorly refined; however it serves to make the Tea-Boxes and Canisters, which come from *India*.

Loadstone. THERE is a Mountain of Loadstone near *Louvo*, and another in the Island of *Jansalan*, on the West Coast of *Malacca*, in the Bay of *Bengall*; but this latter soon loseth its Virtue. There are also some Diamonds, Agates, and Sapphires in the Mountains of *Siam*; but as fast as they are found they are seiz'd for the King's Use; so that People have no Encouragement to search after them.

Travelling. THEY use in Travelling the Elephant, the Buffaloe, and the Ox to ride upon; but they do not ride upon either Horses, Asses, or Mules. The *Moors* have some Camels of their own, brought from other Countries. They seldom use the Male Elephant for Carriage, he being trained up to the War, and the Female is used for Carriage or Travelling. Elephants are common for any to hunt, and take for their own Use; but none are allow'd to kill them.

Chairs. THEIR Travelling Chairs are placed upon a Bier, and carried by four or eight Men on their Shoulders, one or two at each End of a Pole, and spare Men to change them when weary; those Chairs are sometimes in the Shape of a Dressing-Chair with Back and Arms; but some have only a Rail and Ballister about half a Foot high. They are commonly open at the Top, and the *Siamese* generally sit cross-legg'd in them; but Chairs are not allow'd to every Body; they must be Persons of Dignity and Quality that are carried in them. The *Europeans* are allow'd to use a Kind of Coaches called *Palanguins*: They have a Canopy over them to screen the Person that is in them from the Sun, and are carried upon Mens Shoulders like the Chairs.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of their Education, Learning, Preferments, and Honours; also of their Language, Characters, History, and Chronology.

Education. FOR the Education of their Children, they fend them to a Convent of *Talapoins*, or Prieſts, as ſoon as they are ſeven or eight Years old, and when they enter there, they put on the *Talapoins* Habit, but are not obliged to continue to wear it but as long as they pleaſe. Their Friends ſupply them with Food, and a Slave or two to attend them, if their Dignity require it, and their Abili-
Learning. ty will afford it. There they learn Reading, Writing, and Arithmetick; as alſo the Balie, or Court Language, ſome Principles of Morality, and the Myſteries of their Religion, but do not read Law or Hiſtory, or ſtudy any ſpeculative Science.

Writing. THEY write from the Left Hand to the Right, as we do, but the Alphabet for the Balie, or Court Language, and that common to the *Siameſe*, are not the ſame altogether; for the *Siameſe* Language has thirty ſeven Letters, and the Balie but thirty three; and theſe are all Conſonants. But of this by-and-by, when we come to ſpeak of their Language.

Numbers. THEY have Characters to expreſs their Digit-Numbers, and a Cypher; ſo that by altering the Places of their Figures or Characters, or placing Cyphers, they alter their Value, and count by Units, Tens, Hundreds, &c. as we do.

Orators. THEY need no Orators, for every Man pleads and manages his own Cauſe without an Advocate: What he aſſerts or proves is regiſter'd, and the Magiſtrate from thence determines the Merit of his Cauſe; nor is any Perſon ſuffer'd to harangue his Superior, nor indeed to ſpeak at all, till ſpoke to, and then nothing but Matter of Fact, or direct Anſwers to Queſtions propoſed; or if there is any Compliment or Addreſs to paſs from an Inferior to a Superior, the Words are preſcrib'd beforehand; ſo that there is more Need of Memory than Elo-
quence in their Addreſſes; as alſo in their being qualify'd for the Law; for they none of them ſtudy the Laws of their Country, till they are advanced to ſome Poſt, and then a Copy of Inſtructions, relating to that particular Poſt is put into their Hands; according to which they muſt ſtrictly act; and when they are preferr'd higher, they have other Inſtructions, &c. ſo that they never know all the Law, till they have been employ'd in all the Poſts and Places in it.

Phyſick. THEY are but ordinary Phyſicians or Surgeons; they have ſeldom uſed letting of Blood till of late, and then ſome *European* Surgeon is employ'd in the Operation; and yet the *Siamefe* will ſometimes open dead Bodies, as if they would learn ſomething, but we do not hear of any Improvement they make in Anatomy; but they ſometimes pretend to pull a Lump of Fleſh out of the Stomach of the Deceaſed, of eight or ten Pound Weight, which they make the Survivors believe was occaſion'd by Witchcraft, and indeed this is their Salve for all Sores; for although they ſeldom vary their Receipts, let the Diſtemper be what it will, yet if the Patient die, the Phyſicians give out, that he was inchanted or bewitched. In moſt Diſtempers they rub and work the Body with their Hands; and that not only the Sick, but the Healthy are ſerved ſo by way of Precaution. Some will employ their Servants or Slaves in this Operation upon their Backs for Hours together; and by this Means, and their one Receipt, as above-mentioned, it is ſaid they cure many Diſtempers; but whether this Receipt be a univerſal Specifick for all Diſeaſes, or ſomething that fortifies Nature ſufficiently to withſtand, and expel them, or whether this Friction and Rubbing of the Body, add freſh Vigour and Motion to the Blood and Spirits, or whether the Temperance of the *Siameſe* do not contribute much to a Cure, along with theſe ſeeming ſimple Means: If all theſe Suppoſitions be allow'd probable, it would not ſeem ſtrange that the Concurrence of them all together ſhould often have the deſir'd Effect.

BUT beſides what is above-mention'd, they ſometimes give a Purge, but never a Vomit; they take Sweats for moſt ſlight Indiſpoſitions, and often carry them off by that Means; they adviſe Bathing in Fevers, but reſtrain the Patient from eating any but Congee, or Water-gruel made of Rice, which ſlender Diet may doubtleſs contribute very much to their Recovery.

Diſeaſes. THE Diſeaſes which affect Foreigners moſt at *Siam*, is, Diſenteries and Fluxes, which 'tis moſt likely may proceed from the Alteration of the Climate or Diet, becauſe the Natives are not ſo ſubject to thoſe Diſtempers; they ſeldom have any Agues in theſe hot Countries, neither Gout, Stone, Pthiſick, Scurvy, or Dropſy, but the Small-Pox is reckon'd Epidemical, and is as much dreaded as the Plague in other Countries; and although they reckon burning the dead Bodies more honourable than the common way of Burying, yet if even Perſons of Figure die in the Small-Pox, they bury them quickly to prevent Infection; and after they have lain three Years, when they think that Danger is over, they take them up and burn them, to give them an honourable Funeral.

Aſtrono-my. THEIR Aſtronomy is very imperfect; they have no true Notion of the Syſtem of the World, nor of the Eclipſes being occaſion'd by the Interpoſition of one of the two dark Bodies, the Moon and the Earth, between the other and the Sun; but they think the Eclipſes are cauſed by ſome Dragon who is endeavouring to devour the eclipſed Luminary, and during the Conflict, as they take it to be, they make a Noiſe with Kettles and Pans to frighten the Dragon away; they ſuppoſe the Earth to be an extenſive Square, and that the Sky is ſupported and reſts upon the four Corners of it.

Aſtrology. THEY have ſuch an Opinion of Aſtrology and Magick, that they think the Profeſſors of thoſe Arts are never miſtaken, except by Neglect or Careleſſneſs, and as ſuch, they ſometimes ſuffer for what is really their Ignorance; for if they foretel to the King what doth not really come to paſs, they are baſtinado'd for Neglect, and not for Ignorance, though that be really the Caſe; and he ſerves his Phyſicians in the ſame Manner, for if their Phyſick has not the Effect upon him for which they adminiſter it, they are drubb'd for the Miſcarriage; none will undertake any Enterprize without firſt conſulting the Aſtrologers or Magicians, nor will they ſtep out of their Houſes, if they tell them it is an unlucky Hour; they give a great Regard to Omens, as the Howling of Wild-beaſts, Omens. or a Smoke croſſing the Way, or any thing falling, when there is no viſible Cauſe for it; theſe and

ſome other ſuch like things are look'd upon as ſo ominous, that if they happen the Perſon will not proceed upon his Enterprize, let the Conſequence be what it will; one way of foretelling Events is, after having a Queſtion propoſed to be anſwer'd, they perform a ſort of a Ceremony, and then go out into the Town or firſt Concourſe of People, and out of the firſt Words they hear ſpoke, they by ſome Application form an Anſwer to the Matter in doubt, whether the Perſon they hear ſpeak be expreſſing Joy or Paſſion, or whether ſpeaking of ill Succeſs or good Succeſs, *&c.* this they apply to their Queſtion, and look upon the Anſwer form'd from thence as an infallible Oracle; they are very ſuperſtitious, in pretending to drive away evil Spirits, inſomuch that when they prepare a Medicine they faſten a Paper to the Brim of the Cup, and in it is written ſome myſterious Words to prevent the Fairies running away with the Virtue of the Medicine, or when at Sea in a Storm, they fix one Charms. of theſe Papers to the Maſt to charm the Wind and the wicked Spirit which they ſuppoſe occaſions it, and is the Cauſe of all other Diſturbance and ill Luck; for the Doctors never miſcarry in their Preſcriptions, but that they always impute the Misfortune to a wicked Spirit, which the Ignorant as readily believe, and doubtleſs thoſe Impoſitions ſo much prevailing, is owing to the Superſtition of thoſe pretended Conjurers, and the Credulity of the People.

THEIR Women lie in a Month as in *England*, during which time they are kept continually before a great Fire, (though in that hot Country,) and this they call Purifying, though it might more properly be called Smoak-drying, for the Smoak has no vent but at a little Hole in the top of the Room and when this Month's Purgation is finiſh'd, the Woman returns Thanks to the Fire for her Purification, and then treats her Friends with Meat, which by way of Ceremony ſhe firſt offers to the Fire; they do not ſuffer their lying-in Women to eat or drink any thing but what is hot.

Muſick THEIR Skill in Muſick doth not exceed that of other Sciences; they underſtand nothing of either Singing or Playing by Notes, nor are their Inſtruments ſo nice as to be tuned to them; they have very ordinary Drums, and worſe Trumpets and Hautboys, and a little ſort of Violin with three Strings, they alſo beat upon Braſs-Baſſoons, and ſometimes uſe all theſe together when the King goes out, or upon any ſolemn Occaſions; that Jargon of Muſick ſounds beſt upon the Water, and at a Diſtance.

Language THEIR Language (as obſerved towards the Beginning of this Chapter) is of two ſorts, the *Balie*, or Court Language, whoſe Alphabet conſiſts of thirty three Letters; and the *Siameſe*, whoſe Alphabet contains thirty ſeven Letters, and thoſe all Conſonants; for Vowels and Dipthongs, of which there are great Numbers in both Languages, have particular Characters, ſome of which are placed before the Conſonant, ſome after it; ſome above, and ſome underneath it; but however they be placed, they are always pronounced after the Conſonant, ſo that in every Word the Conſonant is firſt, but if a Word begins with a Vowel, there is a mute Character placed before the Vowel, which repreſents a Conſonant, to keep up their way of Spelling; but its Sound is omitted, to make way for the Vowel that begins the Word to be firſt pronounced.

IT is very difficult for a Stranger to learn the *Siameſe* Pronunciation, becauſe their Language depends ſo much upon the Accent, like the *Chineſe*, in whoſe Language the ſame Word may expreſs two Meanings directly contrary, only by differently accenting them, *(of which ſee more in Chap.* VI. *of* China;) ſome ſuppoſe they firſt writ without Vowels, and afterwards learned to mark the Conſonants with different Daſhes or Marks, according to the different Sound that was to follow them, as we diſtinguiſh by our Vowels, one or more of which we always find neceſſary in the Pronouncing of any Note or Syllable; their Language conſiſts chiefly in Monoſyllables; the *Balie* is known only to the Learned, but in their proper way of writing the Terms of their Religion, the Names of their Offices, or whatever is elegant or ornamental to the common vulgar Language, or adds any Beauty to it, is borrow'd from the *Balie*.

THE *Siameſe* have not made themſelves Maſter, No Print- of the Art of Printing, which makes Books very ing. ſcarce among them, and what Hiſtories they have, obtain but very little Credit; their Calendar has been twice corrected, and two new Epocha's taken to reckon from, as we do, from the Birth of our Saviour; one of them commences five hundred forty five Years before the Birth of our Saviour, which they believe was the time that their God *Sommono-Codom* was tranſlated to Heaven, but their laſt *Æra* takes date almoſt twelve hundred Years after that, *viz.* at the Year of our Lord ſix hundred thirty eight, and thoſe Aſtronomers have form'd Tables for the Calculation of a Planet's Place, but they amount no higher than their mean Motions, and do not account for the Excentricity or Obliquity of their Orbs, nor determine their Latitudes or the Inequality of their Motions; they begin their Year with the firſt Moon in *November* or *December*, and divide it into three Seaſons, *viz.* the Winter or coldeſt Seaſon is when ours is, being both on the ſame Side of the Equinoctial; and their coldeſt is in our *December* and *January*; their little Summer is when the Heat approaches, and continues till the Rains come on in *April* or *May*, and from thence till *November* again; the Weather would be exceſſive Hot if it was not for the Rains that cool the Earth, and the Clouds that ſcreen them from the violent Heat of the Sun.

ALL Honours here are acquired either by Fa- Honours. vour or Merit, none are hereditary, but made by a Man's obtaining a Place in the Government; it is no ſtrange Sight there to ſee the Son or Grandſon of a Miniſter of State labouring at an Oar; though it is ſaid that all Offices or Places of Truſt were formerly hereditary; but now the King's Power is ſo abſolute, that very few Families can long maintain themſelves ſucceſſively for any conſiderable Time in any Place of Truſt, eſpecially near the Court, nor are they ſuffer'd to ſell their Places, but are diſcarded at the King's Pleaſure.

WHEN any Perſon enters into an Office or Place of any conſiderable Truſt, inſtead of an Oath of Allegiance to the Prince, one of the Prieſts take a Cup of Water and pronounces certain dreadful Imprecations, if the Perſon to whom it is given fails in his Duty to the King, the Perſon repeating them, or aſſenting to them, and this is the Method uſed to ſecure the Perſon's Fidelity to the King, let him be of what Country or Religion he will.

THE Court of *Siam* appeared more grand and Court of *Siam* not ſplendid formerly than at preſent, attended with ſo great a great Number of Lords richly dreſt, and attend- aſformerly. ed with Slaves and Elephants; but the King finding his Courtiers ſo numerous and ſo great, and being conſcious of his own Uſurpation of the Throne, and jealous of thoſe about him, leſt they ſhould be too powerful for him, he cut off moſt of the conſiderable Families that were great and powerful, and that without any Regard to common Juſtice or Gratitude, but ſerved all alike, as well thoſe who aſſiſted in his Uſurpation, as thoſe who oppoſed him, ſuppoſing this was the beſt way to ſecure his illegal Poſſeſſion; and as Uſurpation is commonly ſucceeded by Tyranny, ſo it was in the King above-mentioned (who reign'd ſo lately, as to be the Father of the King that reign'd in 1688.)

1688.) he had not ſo much Pretence of Right to the Crown as to be of the Royal Family, yet his Uſurpation ſucceeded, and his Tyranny ſucceeded that: For when he had dragged his Predeceſſor out of the Temple, whither he was fled for Refuge, he firſt cauſed him to be declared unworthy of Royal Dignity, and then barbarouſly ſtrangled him; and to colour his Cruelty with a Shew of Juſtice, he gave out that what he had done, was becauſe the King had deſerted his Palace and Government when the Rebel was at the Gates, and upon the Point to force an Entrance.

After this Uſurper had reign'd thirty Years, his Brother ſucceeded him, excluding his Son from what was his juſt Right, (if the Kingdom had been the juſt Right of his Father;) his Son therefore retir'd to a Cloyſter till he found himſelf in a Capacity to diſpute with, and diſpoſſeſs his Uncle, which he did, and poſſeſs'd the Throne himſelf, but continued the ſame Caution that his Father had uſed, and would not ſuffer his Courtiers to enjoy that Grandeur that uſed formerly to be ſeen at the Court of *Siam*.

This Race of Uſurpers are not only barbarous to Strangers but to their own Families, ſometimes ſtarving them, or putting them to cruel Deaths, or ſometimes put their Eyes out or cripple them, to render them uncapable of Government and maintain their Authority; chiefly rendering themſelves formidable and terrible to their Subjects, governing them by Fear, and not endeavouring to gain their Affections: He makes his Government ſo burdenſome that his Conſciouſneſs of his own Tyranny makes him jealous of his Subjects Fidelity, and ſo perpetually apprehenſive of their revolting, that if any fire a Gun he thinks it is an Inſurrection, and if the Perſon that did it is diſcover'd, it is deem'd a capital Crime ſo to alarm the King, and he is puniſhed for it accordingly.

The King uſed to ſhew himſelf four or five times a Year in all his Grandeur, but now he ſhews himſelf but twice a Year, at which times he diſtributes his Alms to the *Telapoins*; he formerly alſo perform'd the Ceremony of holding the Plough with his own Hand once a Year, as alſo of commanding the River to return into its Channel after the Rains, but now theſe Ceremonies are perform'd by a ſuperior Officer, deputed for that purpoſe.

Ceremonies

When the King goes abroad it is either in a Chair or upon an Elephant; when he uſes the latter he is not lifted upon it, nor is he ſeen on Foot coming to it, but has a Room whoſe Door is the ſame Height with the Elephant, from whence he conveys himſelf into his Seat upon the Elephant, which has no covering, and is open before; and when he ſtands ſtill, all his Attendants proſtrate themſelves except one Man, who with a high Umbrella ſhelters him from the Heat of the Sun; the Perſon that guides the Elephant ſits upon his Neck, and governs him by pricking him upon the Head; when he goes to hunt at *Lonvo*, his Concubines run on Foot by him, and he has a Guard of two or three hundred Men to march before him, to drive People out of the Way.

The King's riding abroad.

The Day is twenty four Hours, as in *England*, they divide the Night into four Watches, the laſt of which ends at Day-light; they have no Clocks, but truſt to a Sight of the Sun for knowing the Time of the Day, but in the Palace they have an Invention to determine an Hour, which is a Copper Veſſel with a Hole in its Bottom; this is ſet upon a large Veſſel of Water to ſwim in it, and the Water comes in through the Hole, (as it would into a Boat when floating upon the Water with a Hole in her Bottom,) and the Bigneſs of the Hole is ſo exactly adjuſted to the Weight of the Veſſel, that juſt at the End of an Hour the Hole will have let in ſo much Water as ſinks the Veſſel, and then the Watch, eſpecially in the Night, give Notice that the Hour is expired, by beating upon Copper Veſſels made to give a Sound for that Purpoſe.

Water Hour Glaſs.

They hold their Councils twice a Day, *viz.* at ten a-Clock Morning and Night, when any Member who has had a Buſineſs referr'd to him by the King, reads his Inſtructions, and tells them what he has done upon it, and ſeveral Members deliver their Opinions upon it to one another, the King being abſent; afterwards the King preſent in Council, the former Reſolutions are reported to him, and he either determines the Affair, or if it be attended with Difficulty, he re-commits it to their Conſideration, and if at laſt it is too difficult, he conſults the *Telapoins*, or higheſt Order of Prieſts.

Councils.

But the Determination is chiefly the King's; for although he asks the Opinions of the Members of his Council, yet if he diſlike their Sentiments, he not only rejects them but puniſheth any that gives him Advice which he doth not like, and therefore his Miniſters deliver to him ſuch Opinions as they think may pleaſe him, rather than declare their own.

He frequently calls his Officers to account about their Proficiency in the *Balie* Language, and in their Religion, and baſtinadoes the Negligent for their Ignorance; no Officer is permitted to come into his Majeſty's Preſence without his previous Permiſſion, nor are the Officers allow'd to viſit one another but at Weddings and Funerals, and then no two are allow'd to converſe without the Preſence of a Third, and then to ſpeak aloud, and all this Precaution is uſed to prevent Conſultations againſt the Government, and every one that is proved to over-hear any thing that may endanger the Government, and doth not immediately give Information of it, is ſentenced to Death, ſo that they are not only obliged to inform, but to do it with all Expedition, leſt a Charge be brought againſt them for their Neglect before they arrive with their Information; there are Spies alſo appointed in all Companies, to inform the King of what Diſcourſe paſſeth, and yet this is to be done with as much Caution as the other; for if it is News that is diſagreeable to the King, it muſt be told ſoftly, and by degrees, and not without a Certainty of Truth; for if it ſhould prove falſe, they are puniſhed with the utmoſt Severity, and where an Accuſation is brought againſt another, and the accuſed Perſon diſputes it, and the Truth is doubtful, he ſometimes cauſeth both Parties to be thrown to the Tygers, who are ſometimes both deſtroy'd, or if one eſcapes, he is thought the innocent Perſon; they have alſo other ways of trying to find out the Guilty and the Innocent, of which more hereafter in this Chapter, when we ſpeak of the Tryal of Criminals; but from what hath been obſerved it appears, that the common People are much more happy and ſafe here than the Courtiers; it is dangerous for a Perſon to give a falſe Information, and equally ſo to neglect to inform when they hear any thing ſpoke that requires it, and therefore the Vulgar are the moſt ſafe who *meddle not with State Affairs*; for though the Miniſtry uſe all poſſible Means to prevent Accuſations againſt themſelves reaching the Prince's Ear, yet the Terror of neglecting to inform, makes them very induſtrious that way againſt Oppoſition, when they know the Charge is juſt.

Informers and Spies.

This Tyranny in the Prince and Want of Affection in the Subjects, is often the Cauſe of their Kings being depoſed; for the People are in no great Concern who be King, ſince they know they cannot depend upon having their Properties ſecured; if they are induſtrious and thrive, they know it will be ſeized for the King's Uſe, (*ſee Chap.* IV. *of* Siam,) and better be idle than work for nothing.

Thoſe

those who are taken Prisoners by the King of *Pegu* never attempt an Escape to *Siam*, but contentedly cultivate the Land he gives them within twenty Miles of their own Country; and although they look upon their Kings as the Sons of Heaven, and that their Souls are as much exalted above those of their Subjects as their State is, yet they think it is the actual Possession of the Crown, and not his Right to it, that makes this exalted Difference; for if a Rebel usurp the Crown and succeed, his Soul is then thought as much refined as his Predecessor's was before him.

Revenue. His Revenue upon all cultivated Land is a Quarter of a Tycal for every forty Fathom Square, which reduced to *English* Money and Measure, is something more than Six-pence three Farthings an Acre, by the Year; but the Hereditary Governors of the Provinces have the Half of it. He has a Duty upon all the Boats, according to their Length, a Tycal a Fathom. He has the Customs of all Goods exported and imported; besides a Sum upon the Ship itself, according to its Bigness. He lays a Duty upon Arrack or Spirits made of Rice, and a yearly Tax upon every considerable Fruit-Tree, as the Durion, Mango, Coco-Tree, Orange, and the Trees that afford Betel, or the Arrack-Nut. His Gardens or Demain Lands are cultivated by his Subjects in the six Months that he commands their Service, and they supply the Court with Provision. The numerous Presents he receives from his Subjects, and what falls to him upon the Death of his Officers, the Fines, and Confiscations upon the Condemnation of Criminals, and the six Months Service that he takes Money for of the Rich, who seldom serve in Person, are large Additions to his Revenue, and to this we might add his Engrossing all the most beneficial Part of the Trade to himself, (*but for that we shall refer the Reader to Chap.* IV. *of* Siam, *towards the Beginning, where that is largely treated of under the Article of Trade.*) There is another Advantage which he enjoys beyond most other Princes, which is, that all the Officers which compose the Civil List, as well as his Troops, maintain themselves; and the like do all his Subjects, during their six Months Service. He also levies other Taxes for the Support of the Dignity of Ambassadors, erecting publick Buildings, and other extraordinary Occasions.

Besides all this, his Court is not very expensive to him, he allows his Officers of State no Sallaries; only a Lodging, a Barge, and some few Moveables are allow'd them by the Crown, with Horses, Elephants, and Slaves suitable to their Rank, but nothing to maintain them on, but only as much Land as will supply the Family with Rice, and that reverts to the Crown as soon as the Officer dies or is removed; but what they have more they must extort from the People by Oppression; indeed they are allow'd to take Money or Presents of those under their Command, nor is it deem'd any Crime to take a Gift or Bribe of Persons between whom they have (as Magistrates) determined a Difference, except it can be proved that they have been guilty of Injustice for the sake of the Reward.

Govern ment. Every Province has its proper Governor, who has the sole Command both Civil and Military, he gives the final Determination in all Cases, and those that sit in Court with him are only to advise with; and as his Power is so absolute, it is easy for the Governors of those Provinces which are remote from the Court, to call off their Allegiance, and make a Government of their own, as *Ihor* (the Southermost Province of *Malacca*, and most remote from *Siam* of all the other Provinces) has already done, and may now be said to be govern'd by the *Dutch*, which the King of *Siam* perceiving, has dismembered several hereditary Governors of Provinces, and substitut d temporary ones in their Room, which he can dismiss upon Dislike or Suspicion at his Pleasure.

The hereditary Governor (called in their Language *Tchaou Meuang*) has half the Rents of all the Lands in his Province, (the King the other Half, as mention'd before, under the Article of his Revenues;) he also receives several Presents, and has the Profits of all pecuniary Penalties incurr'd, and of all Confiscations, and in some Provinces they have the Customs also, and sometimes levy new Taxes upon extraordinary Occasions. The temporary Governor of *Pouran* has his Commission generally for three Years; his Authority is like that of the other, but not his Profits; if he be only appointed in the Absence of the hereditary Governor, he has half his Profits; but where there is no Hereditary, the Temporary shares none of the Profits with the King; it is therefore neither for the King's Profit nor his Safety to have hereditary Governors, if he could help it. Of the Governors.

The Province of *Patani* (next to the Northward of *Ihor*) is a temporary Province, with the Privilege of chusing their own Governor (or rather Governess) every three Years, and they always elect some old Maiden Gentlewoman of one certain Family; some of the most eminent Persons in the Province is her Privy-Council, by whose Advice she governs, and at the three Years End (or every three Years, if she is re-elected,) she sends the King of *Siam* two small Trees, one of Gold, the other of Silver, loaded with Flowers and Fruits, and this is a Tribute by way of Acknowledgment, and is all the Subjection that she thinks she owes to the King of *Siam*.

The Laws of *Siam* give an absolute Authority Laws. in Parents over their Children, and requires an unlimited Obedience and Subjection; on the other Side, they that contradict their Parents are look'd upon as Monsters: They pay a profound Reverence to old Age. If a Lie is told to a Superior, it is in his Power to punish the Offender, and the King punisheth it as severely as any other Crime. If it was so in other Places, it might probably prevent some of those fatal Consequences that attend it, and some of the many horrid Crimes that are shelter'd and excused under the Protection of it, which must come to light if that Subterfuge were removed.

Stealing is reckoned so odious, that when a Theft. Person is convicted of it, no Friend will appear in his Behalf; and indeed the Crime is greater, because it is so easy to get a Living here, that there is no Temptation to it, for one Day's Labour will purchase Provision for many: but when by the Tyranny of the Government they are drove into the Woods, they are obliged to rob and plunder for a Subsistance, that upon this account the Roads are not very safe for Travellers. Their civil and criminal Laws are confused together, their Laws being mostly employ'd in criminal Cases, and even in civil Cases the Person that is cast is punish'd as a Criminal; no Person is allow'd to exhibit a Charge against another without giving Security to prosecute it, and answer the Damage that the accused Person may sustain in his Character if the Charge proves false.

The first Step towards a Prosecution is, the Proceedings in Law. Plaintiff draws up his Charge in Writing, in which he represents his Grievance, and delivers it to the Head of the Band he belongs to, who transmits it to the Governor, and if it appears frivolous and vexatious, the Prosecutor renders himself liable to be punish'd, (though that is often wink'd at, because the Magistrate's encouraging Prosecutions, produceth one of their best Perquisites; but this way of getting Money is not limited to *Siam* only,) but if it is thought worth proceeding upon, the Governor orders his Associates to examine it: They

order

order their Clerks to examine the Witneſſes at their own Houſes, and when they have heard what each Party has to ſay, they write it down, and if a Perſon cannot ſo well ſpeak for himſelf, he is allow'd any Relation, provided he be not more remote than a firſt Couſin, to ſpeak for him; and thus all matters being prepared for hearing, the contending Parties are call'd into Court, (and by way of Form or Ceremony,) adviſed to agree, though they are not aiming to reconcile them. When the Aſſeſſors are prepared to deliver in their Opinions in Writing, the Governor appoints a Day for both Parties, and their Witneſſes to attend, and he being there in Perſon, the Clerk reads the Proceſs, and the Opinions of the Aſſociates, and the Governor examines into the Foundations of their Opinions, in which if he is ſatisfied, he proceeds to Judgment.

How they find out the Truth

But when the Witneſſes contradict one another ſo much that the Governor can form no Judgment from what is depoſed, they have recourſe to various other Methods to find out the Criminal and the Innocent; ſometimes they make both Parties walk upon hot burning Coals, and he that comes off without Damage is judged to be innocent, and ſometimes the like Tryal is made, and Judgment given by putting their Hands in boiling Oil; another way is by Diving, making both Parties go under Water, and he that can ſtay the longeſt (if he comes up at laſt) is deem'd innocent; another way of finding out the Truth, as they think it, is, by Vomiting Bills adminiſter'd by the Prieſt with ſevere Imprecations, and he that holds them longeſt in his Stomach without feeling or diſcovering the Effect of them, is concluded to be in the Right: But it is ſaid that they being apprized of thoſe being the ways of examining the Parties, they have ways to prepare their Feet to reſiſt the Fire, their Hands to reſiſt the boiling Oil, and to reconcile their Stomachs to the nauſeous Potion that they take upon ſuch Tryals, that they evade their natural, and otherwiſe expected Effects to Admiration, and yet if in any or all of theſe both Parties come off unhurt, they have recourſe to other Tryals, ſometimes throwing both Parties to the Tygers, if they are both devoured the Tryal is over, if both eſcape they are tried by ſome other Means as ridiculous, and if but one eſcapes, the Sentence is given in his Favour as an innocent Man.

Diving.

Vomiting.

Tygers.

Appeals.

But they allow of Appeals from a lower Court to a higher, ſo that there, as in other Places leſs remote, a rich Man may lead a poor Man a Dance, which he not being able to hold out to follow, is forced to drop it, and loſe all at laſt; but in Caſes of Life and Death, that Sentence is never executed without the King's immediate Order, or a ſpecial Commiſſion from him, but the Governors of their reſpective Provinces can both ſentence and execute the Baſtinado, with that Barbarity that Death frequently enſues.

Robbers how puniſhed

But there is one Piece of Juſtice, in which we have not many Inſtances in Hiſtory of Places that exceed *Siam*, and that is, he that unjuſtly poſſeſſes another Man's Land is deem'd as much a Robber as he that robs upon the Highway, and the Perſon convicted thereof not only reſtores the Land, but forfeits the Value of it, one half to the Party diſpoſſeſs'd, and the other Half to the Governor, but then the King has half the Governor's Share, (though a hereditary Governor;) and if it be a Temporary one the King has one entire half, and the Party aggrev'd the other, and his Land again. The King has a particular Officer or Inſpector in every Province, to inform him of what paſſes in their ſeveral Courts of Juſtice, but there is generally ſuch Connivance between them and the Governors, that they can wink at each other's Extortions, and the King know little of the Matter, nor Subjects be much the better. Every Officer gets what he can out of his Inferiors, and the Commander of a Band, to make a Perquiſite to himſelf, and yet have all the Duty of thoſe under his Command perform'd, excuſeth thoſe who bribe him well, and makes thoſe do double Duty that have nothing to give him.

Puniſhments.

As for the Puniſhment of Criminals, it is generally adapted to the Crime; for Robbery or Extortion they pour melted Gold or Silver down their Throats; for Lying they ſow up the Man's Mouth; they ſometimes behead, ſometimes baſtinado to Death, but for petty Crimes they have proportionable Puniſhments; ſome have a Pillory-board about their Necks, for a longer or ſhorter Time, according to the Nature of the Crime, but the moſt mortifying Indignity that can be put upon a *Siameſe* Man is, to ſet him in the Ground to the Shoulders, and let a Woman buffet him about the Head; but let the Puniſhment be what it will, it is reckon'd honourable to undergo them with Reſolution, and a Man is never reckon'd infamous for them after they are over, but rather boaſts of his Courage, and is look'd upon as the better Man, and fitter for Preferment when he has overcome his Sufferings; ſuperior Officers are often puniſh'd for the Crimes of inferior ones under their Juriſdiction, and Parents and Maſters of Families frequently ſuffer for the Faults of their Children, Servants, or Slaves, to make them more circumſpect in the Government of thoſe under their Charge.

All enroll'd.

Every Perſon in *Siam*, Male and Female, are enroll'd when young, that they may not eſcape the ſix Months Service in the Year due to the Prince; for though the *Telapoins* or Prieſts, and alſo the Women, are exempted from the ſix Months Service, yet they are enroll'd, becauſe the *Telapoins* may return to a ſecular Life again, and then they are called to the ſix Months Service, and by their being enroll'd it is readily known what Band they belong to; and if a Woman ſhall have Children, they belong to the ſame Band that ſhe is enroll'd in, and the Males are called to ſerve there as ſoon as capable, and every Commander of a Band is obliged to furniſh the King with ſo many Men out of his Band as he requires, either for War, Tillage, Building, or what elſe he thinks fit to employ them in; if a Soldier wants Money, the Commander of his Band will readily lend it him, or pay his Debts to a certain Sum, becauſe if a Soldier becomes inſolvent, his Governor does not drag him to a Goal, and extort more Money from him for Charges than his Debt amounts to, but takes him as a Slave to Work for him till he is out of his Debt, as in *Tonquin*, (*Chap.* IV. *towards the latter End.*)

Titles figurative.

The Commander of a Body of Men has commonly ſome figurative Title annex'd to him, which expreſſes much greater Dignity than he really poſſeſſes; as if a Man commands five hundred Men, he is ſometimes entitled Captain of ten Thouſand; and this Hyperbolical way of ſpeaking in *Aſia* being ſometimes not underſtood or foreſeen by the *Europeans*, has cauſed great Errors in our Hiſtories of *Aſia*; and when we obſerve theſe two Cuſtoms, *viz.* their enrolling all their Natives, and calling them all Soldiers, becauſe liable to be called to Duty at the King's Pleaſure, which muſt needs amount to a prodigious Number in fact; and ſecondly, their figurative way of magnifying their Numbers, calling five hundred by the Name of ten thouſand, as above, no wonder that our Hiſtories of *Aſia* give Account of their being able to ſend ſuch incredibly numerous and formidable Armies into the Field; but as the Greatneſs of the Number of ſuch un-diſciplined Armies tend only to their Confuſion, and even the Number of thoſe, ſuch as they

are, is so vastly short of what they give out, as above, it is no Wonder, on the other Side, that we seldom read of so much Execution done by them, as by some European Armies, which consist not of one Tenth the Number which they give out. The ten thousand Elephants that some Histories report that the King of *Siam* keeps is as absurd, especially if we consider how improper that Place is for the Breed of Elephants, where the Ground is so low, and cover'd with Water every Year. But if we allow this also to be a Hyperbola, and that by their way of speaking we are for a certain Number to understand an uncertain; and for a great one, always to understand a lesser, their Expressions may thus be reconciled to Reason and Probability.

Artillery. They have some Artillery, which the *Portuguese* cast for them, but they have no Carriages for them; they are carried to the Field in Waggons drawn by Oxen and Buffaloes; for they have no Horses but what are in the King's Stable, for his own Use; their Army consists chiefly in Elephants, and poorly equipp'd Infantry; they commonly begin the Fight with their heavy Artillery, and sometimes end with it too, not caring to come nearer together.

But when they draw up, it is in three Lines, each Line consisting of three square Battalions, and the General posts himself in the Center of the Middlemost, which is compos'd of their best Troops. The other commanding Officers are placed in the Centers of their respective Bodies. If these Battalions are thought too large, they are sub-divided into lesser Bodies; each Battalion has sixteen Male Elephants, every one of which has two She-ones, without which they would not be easily govern'd. If their Artillery do not conclude the Battle, but they must come to a close Engagement, the following Instance of the manner of Fighting between the Kings of *Siam* and *Pegu* may serve as a Specimen of their Method of doing it.

Manner of Fighting. When the two neighbouring Kingdoms of *Siam* and *Pegu* are at War, their Armies seldom face one another in the Field, but make Excursions upon each other, to carry off Prisoners and Plunder, and retire with all Expedition with their Booty; but if the Armies do meet, they do not shoot at one another directly, except when put to Extremity, or that one cannot manage his Attack, or the other his Defence, without it; for when the King of *Siam*'s Troops take the Field, his Orders are, *Kill not*, viz. till they try what can be done without it; but when the Bullets or Arrows fly in earnest, they seldom hold it long, but one Side or the other retreats and disperses. In one Engagement the King of *Siam*'s General (by his Master's general Order, *Kill not*) commanded his Soldiers to fire over the Enemy. A *French* Engineer being then employed in the King of *Siam*'s Army, and not knowing the Custom, supposed the General did not sufficiently exert his Commission, but that he was going to betray his Master by his fighting so remissly, and finding he had not Liberty to do what Execution he could have done, he went one Night into the Enemy's Camp, surprized them, and brought off their General Prisoner; which put an End to the War.

Sieges. We seldom read of a Town taken by Storm in this Country. They sometimes starve a Place; or, if the Inhabitants be treacherous, may find an Opportunity to surprize it by their Means; or otherwise a slight Work will bid Defiance to a numerous Army.

Forces. The King of *Siam*'s Forces (besides the six Months Service yearly due from every Subject) are a Guard of eight hundred Men at *Louvo*, taught the European Discipline by an *English* Serjeant at *Fort St. George*, and four hundred more at *Bancock*, at the Mouth of *Siam* River. No other Service is required of them but to remain in the Garrison in these Places. But the chief Defence of *Siam* is the Woods, Mountains and Sea, with which, some on one Side, and some on another, it is encompassed, which renders it tolerable safe from Invasions; or if an Enemy should land, it is difficult for them to penetrate far into the Country, by reason of the Canals interspersed every where being fill'd by the Inundations, when the Water is so far above its common Bounds; which Canals they can let out, and drown the Land and the Invaders with it, if they are attack'd; as was the Case when the *Pegutns* invaded *Siam* with a powerful Army; and as they do not need strong Forts for their own Defence, so they build none, lest Invaders should get them in Possession, secure themselves, and employ them against them, and by that Means run themselves needlessly into both a Charge and a Hazard, when the annual Inundations sufficiently protect them. Their Defence.

When a Foreign Ambassador arrives, he is not look'd upon as his Master's Representative, but barely as his Messenger; the Letter he carries has much more Honour paid it than he has, as supposing that the Letter rather than the Man represents the crown'd Head from whence it comes. The *Siamese* never send any Ambassador to reside at any Court, except to dispatch some particular Business, and then they send Three, who are all privy to the Affair, but of three different Ranks; the first has the Direction of the Affair, the other are his Attendants; only if he dies in his Passage, the second succeeds him in his Embassy; and so the third in the like Case. But the Eastern Princes seldom send any Ambassadors to other Courts, as looking upon the crown'd Head that does that to be a kind of a Petitioner to it; and therefore look upon it as beneath them to send any any where; as on the other hand they deem it a great Condescention in themselves to receive Embassies, and a Favour done to the Prince from whom they receive them. For this Reason the Emperor of *China* and the Great Mogul send none, as thinking that their Emperors have no need of Foreign Assistance, and at the same time, that all the World have a Dependance upon them for the Produce of their respective Empires. Ambassadors. Princes seldom send Ambassadors.

It is true, the King of *Siam* sends People abroad under the Name and Title of Ambassadors, but it is more to trade for his own private Interest, than to transact publick Affairs; and under such honourable Titles they are easier admitted to trade. He also furnisheth them with large Quantities of Gold, but it is not for Presents, but Purchases; and so strictly does he call them to account, that if they have not improved their Talent according to his Expectation, the poor Ambassadors are severely bastinadoed at their Return. Ambassadors go to trade.

But when a Foreign Ambassador arrives at *Siam*, he is introduced and received with great Ceremony. The King being first apprized of his coming, the *Siamese* Ambassador (or some proper Person appointed for that Purpose) accompanies him towards the Court, and then goes up to Court first to acquaint the King with his Arrival, but he is not allowed to enter the City till he is to have his publick Audience, which is always in the Metropolis; but private Audiences are often given at *Louvo* and other Places, where the King appears in less Grandeur, and with fewer Attendants.

At a publick Audience the Court appears in all its Splendor, and the Ambassador being introduced, he must not use any Words of Compliment till the King speaks first, asking him some Questions, which are usually to the same Purpose; which answer'd, the Ambassador is order'd to address him- Publick Audience.

himſelf to the Barcalon or Prime Miniſter; and in all Addreſſes, either to the King or Miniſter of State, few Words and to the Purpoſe is accounted the beſt Eloquence; for they reckon it too much Familiarity to attempt to detain them with a long Diſcourſe, and look upon it as an Inſult, if they do not as much as poſſible contract their Meſſage or Addreſs. When the King has ſpoke to the Ambaſſador, he preſents the Ambaſſador with a Sabre, a Chain of Gold, and a Veſt, which he immediately puts on. Sometimes the Ambaſſador's Retinue is preſented with ſome things of the ſame kind, and the King ſometimes ſuffers the Ambaſſador to approach him in his Garden-houſe, and converſe with him by anſwering Queſtions which the King propoſes.

FROM the Ambaſſador's firſt Audience to his Audience of Leave he is lodg'd and maintain'd at the King's Charge, and allow'd to trade during that Time; but as they are not allow'd to enter the City till they are introduced to have their firſt Audience, ſo they are not ſuffer'd to ſtay in it after they have had their Audience of Leave, being look'd upon from that Time as diveſted of the Dignity of an Ambaſſador.

As the King engroſſes the chief Trade to himſelf, and it is a conſiderable Branch of his Revenue, he not only allows the Foreign Ambaſſadors to trade, but expects they ſhould; ſo that in ſhort they are Merchants under a more honourable Title; and as he that comes as an Ambaſſador, comes alſo as a Trader, he even expects conſiderable Preſents at their firſt Addreſs, which he values and honours in a Manner ſuitable to the Nature of the Preſent; as, if it be any thing to wear, he puts it on immediately in their Preſence; if it be Horſes, he immediately builds Stables for them; and ſo in other Caſes ſhews his Value of it by his Manner of receiving and uſing it, though chiefly for its real Value, and his Hopes of Gain by trading with the Donor.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Religion, Temples and Superſtition of the Siameſe.

Pagodes. IN *Siam*, as in *Tonquin* and other *Aſian* Countries, they call their Idol-Temples, or rather their Temples of Idols, Pagodes. Theſe Pagodes or Temples ſtand each of them in the middle of a ſquare Piece of Ground encompaſs'd with Pyramids, and the whole incloſed with a large Wall, which is again encompaſs'd with another large Square. Here are all the Cells or Apartments of the Prieſts and Nuns or *Telapoineſſes*. Theſe Cells ſtand in Rows, but not contiguous; they are erected (as many other of their Buildings) on Bambou Pillars, and the whole is incloſed with a Fence of Bambou, and a Garden is belonging to every Convent. The *Telapoins* or Prieſts, and the *Telapoineſſes* or Nuns, are in the ſame Convent, and as they have free Converſation together, and the Females are not admitted in till they be arrived at Years of Maturity, we may ſuppoſe that (except the Severity of their Laws reſtrain them, which make it burning to Death for a *Telapoin* to have criminal Converſation with any Woman) they live as chaſte there as ſome of our *Telapoins* in *Europe*, who to avoid the Sin of being confined to one Woman, allow themſelves as many as they pleaſe; and yet Mr. *Salmon* in his *Modern Hiſtory* obſerves three Particulars in which *a Pagan Convent ſeems much to be preferr'd to that of a Catholick Cloyſter. Firſt, Neither Sex is forced into a Cloyſter againſt their Conſent. Secondly, Young Girls are not admitted there at all. Thirdly, Liberty is given to any Perſon to return into the World when that State of Life becomes uneaſy to them.*

Pagan Convent better than a Catholick Cloyſter.

Lay Brothers like Servants.

ALL Youth are educated by the *Telapoins*, and every one has two or three Nens under his Charge, who ſerve him while they continue in the Convent, to do any Work that he ſets them about. Theſe Nens are ſometimes Pupils; but ſome of them do not go in for Education, but are a ſort of Lay-Brothers, and have their Habits made like the *Telapoins*, only white. Theſe ſubmit to weed the Gardens, and other ſervile Offices, which a *Telapoin* would think it a Sin to put his Hand to. There is one Room in the Convent for the Nens, and another where the People bring their Alms; then the Temple is ſhut, and the *Telapoins* aſſemble in the Alms-Room, and have their Conferences.

THE Steeple of the Pagode is of Wood, and is not joined to the Temple, but is a Tower ſtanding by itſelf; it has a Bell in it without a Clapper, which inſtead of ringing they beat upon with a wooden Hammer.

THERE is a Head or Maſter to every Convent, but their Order and Privileges are different; the higheſt Order are called *Sancrats*, and 'tis only they that can admit a Perſon into the *Telapoins* Order, and inveſt him with the Habit, which is all the Juriſdiction they have over the *Telapoins*; nor are their Convents diſtinguiſh'd any otherwiſe than by ſome Stones planted round. The King gives a Name to ſome of the principal *Sancrats*, and with that he gives an Umbrella and a Chair, and Slaves to carry it, but the *Sancrats* never uſe them but when they attend upon the King. *Sancrats.*

THE *Talapoins* are by their Inſtitution appointed to lead holy auſtere Lives, by which they think they attone for the Sins of the People. They live by Alms, and muſt not eat in common, but every Man ſeparately lives upon what he begs, and have commonly ſo much to ſpare, as to enable them to be very hoſpitable to Strangers, which they think is ſo great a Duty incumbent upon them out of the Overplus of what they receive by begging, that they do not deny it even to Chriſtians who come into their Convents; and they have Lodgings for the Entertainment of Travellers on each Side of their Gate.

BUT beſides theſe *Telapoins* that live in the Convents near the Temples, called *Telapoins* of the Towns, there is another ſort that live in the Woods, and lead much more auſtere Lives than the former, but both are obliged to Celibacy, on pain of being burnt, for as they enjoy great Privileges, and are exempt from the ſix Months Service and other Duties, ſo they are compell'd to ſtrict Auſterities under the ſevereſt Penalties, and the King himſelf takes care to ſee them put in Execution; for if their Privileges were ſtrictly continued, and yet their Duties allow'd to be remiſsly perform'd, it might induce the greateſt *Telapoins of the Towns.*

Part

are, is ſo vaſtly ſhort of what they give out, as above, it is no Wonder, on the other Side, that we ſeldom read of ſo much Execution done by them, as by ſome European Armies, which conſiſt not of one Tenth the Number which they give out. The ten thouſand Elephants that ſome Hiſtories report that the King of *Siam* keeps is as abſurd, eſpecially if we conſider how improper that Place is for the Breed of Elephants, where the Ground is ſo low, and cover'd with Water every Year. But if we allow this alſo to be a Hyperbola, and that by their way of ſpeaking we are for a certain Number to underſtand an uncertain; and for a great one, always to underſtand a leſſer, their Expreſſions may thus be reconciled to Reaſon and Probability.

Artillery. THEY have ſome Artillery, which the *Portugueſe* caſt for them, but they have no Carriages for them; they are carried to the Field in Waggons drawn by Oxen and Buffaloes; for they have no Horſes but what are in the King's Stable, for his own Uſe; their Army conſiſts chiefly in Elephants, and poorly equipp'd Infantry; they commonly begin the Fight with their heavy Artillery, and ſometimes end with it too, not caring to come nearer together.

BUT when they draw up, it is in three Lines, each Line conſiſting of three ſquare Battalions, and the General poſts himſelf in the Center of the Middlemoſt, which is compos'd of their beſt Troops. The other commanding Officers are placed in the Centers of their reſpective Bodies. If theſe Battalions are thought too large, they are ſub-divided into leſſer Bodies; each Battalion has ſixteen Male Elephants, every one of which has two She-ones, without which they would not be eaſily govern'd. If their Artillery do not conclude the Battle, but they muſt come to a cloſe Engagement, the following Inſtance of the manner of Fighting between the Kings of *Siam* and *Pegu* may ſerve as a Specimen of their Method of doing it.

Manner of Fighting. WHEN the two neighbouring Kingdoms of *Siam* and *Pegu* are at War, their Armies ſeldom face one another in the Field, but make Excurſions upon each other, to carry off Priſoners and Plunder, and retire with all Expedition with their Booty; but if the Armies do meet, they do not ſhoot at one another directly, except when put to Extremity, or that one cannot manage his Attack, or the other his Defence, without it; for when the King of *Siam*'s Troops take the Field, his Orders are, *Kill not*, viz. till they try what can be done without it; but when the Bullets or Arrows fly in earneſt, they ſeldom hold it long, but one Side or the other retreats and diſperſes. In one Engagement the King of *Siam*'s General (by his Maſter's general Order, *Kill not*) commanded his Soldiers to fire over the Enemy. A *French* Engineer being then employed in the King of *Siam*'s Army, and not knowing the Cuſtom, ſuppoſed the General did not ſufficiently exert his Commiſſion, but that he was going to betray his Maſter by his fighting ſo remiſsly, and finding he had not Liberty to do what Execution he could have done, he went one Night into the Enemy's Camp, ſurprized them, and brought off their General Priſoner; which put an End to the War.

Sieges. WE ſeldom read of a Town taken by Storm in this Country. They ſometimes ſtarve a Place; or, if the Inhabitants be treacherous, may find an Opportunity to ſurprize it by their Means; or otherwiſe a ſlight Work will bid Defiance to a numerous Army.

Forces. THE King of *Siam*'s Forces (beſides the ſix Months Service yearly due from every Subject) are a Guard of eight hundred Men at *Louvo*, taught the European Diſcipline by an *Engliſh* Serjeant at *Fort St. George*, and four hundred more at *Bancock*, at the Mouth of *Siam* River. No other Service is required of them but to remain in the Garriſon in theſe Places. But the chief Defence of *Siam* is the Woods, Mountains and Sea, with which, ſome on one Side, and ſome on another, it is encompaſſed, which renders it tolerable ſafe from Invaſions; or if an Enemy ſhould land, it is difficult for them to penetrate far into the Country, by reaſon of the Canals interſperſed every where being fill'd by the Inundations, when the Water is ſo far above its common Bounds; which Canals they can let out, and drown the Land and the Invaders with it, if they are attack'd; as was the Caſe when the *Pengums* invaded *Siam* with a powerful Army; and as they do not need ſtrong Forts for their own Defence, ſo they build none, leſt Invaders ſhould get them in Poſſeſſion, ſecure themſelves, and employ them againſt them, and by that Means run themſelves needleſsly into both a Charge and a Hazard, when the annual Inundations ſufficiently protect them. Their Defence.

WHEN a Foreign Ambaſſador arrives, he is not look'd upon as his Maſter's Repreſentative, but barely as his Meſſenger; the Letter he carries has much more Honour paid it than he has, as ſuppoſing that the Letter rather than the Man repreſents the crown'd Head from whence it comes. The *Siameſe* never ſend any Ambaſſador to reſide at any Court, except to diſpatch ſome particular Buſineſs, and then they ſend Three, who are all privy to the Affair, but of three different Ranks; the firſt has the Direction of the Affair, the other are his Attendants; only if he dies in his Paſſage, the ſecond ſucceeds him in his Embaſſy; and ſo the third in the like Caſe. But the Eaſtern Princes ſeldom ſend any Ambaſſadors to other Courts, as looking upon the crown'd Head that does that to be a kind of a Petitioner to it; and therefore look upon it as beneath them to ſend any any where; as on the other hand they deem it a great Condeſcention in themſelves to receive Embaſſies, and a Favour done to the Prince from whom they receive them. For this Reaſon the Emperor of *China* and the Great Mogul ſend none, as thinking that their Emperors have no need of Foreign Aſſiſtance, and at the ſame time, that all the World have a Dependance upon them for the Produce of their reſpective Empires. Ambaſſadors. Eaſtern Princes ſeldom ſend Ambaſſadors.

IT is true, the King of *Siam* ſends People abroad under the Name and Title of Ambaſſadors, but it is more to trade for his own private Intereſt, than to tranſact publick Affairs; and under ſuch honourable Titles they are eaſier admitted to trade. He alſo furniſheth them with large Quantities of Gold, but it is not for Preſents, but Purchaſes; and ſo ſtrictly does he call them to account, that if they have not improved their Talent according to his Expectation, the poor Ambaſſadors are ſeverely baſtinadoed at their Return. Ambaſſadors to trade.

BUT when a Foreign Ambaſſador arrives at *Siam*, he is introduced and received with great Ceremony. The King being firſt apprized of his coming, the *Siameſe* Ambaſſador (or ſome proper Perſon appointed for that Purpoſe) accompanies him towards the Court, and then goes up to Court firſt to acquaint the King with his Arrival, but he is not allowed to enter the City till he is to have his publick Audience, which is always in the Metropolis; but private Audiences are often given at *Louvo* and other Places, where the King appears in leſs Grandeur, and with fewer Attendants.

AT a publick Audience the Court appears in all its Splendor, and the Ambaſſador being introduced, he muſt not uſe any Words of Compliment till the King ſpeaks firſt, asking him ſome Queſtions, which are uſually to the ſame Purpoſe; which anſwer'd, the Ambaſſador is order'd to addreſs Publick Audience.

him-

himſelf to the Barcalon or Prime Miniſter; and in all Addreſſes, either to the King or Miniſter of State, few Words and to the Purpoſe is accounted the beſt Eloquence; for they reckon it too much Familiarity to attempt to detain them with a long Diſcourſe, and look upon it as an Inſult, if they do not as much as poſſible contract their Meſſage or Addreſs. When the King has ſpoke to the Ambaſſador, he preſents the Ambaſſador with a Sabre, a Chain of Gold, and a Veſt, which he immediately puts on. Sometimes the Ambaſſador's Retinue is preſented with ſome things of the ſame kind, and the King ſometimes ſuffers the Ambaſſador to approach him in his Garden-houſe, and converſe with him by anſwering Queſtions which the King propoſes.

From the Ambaſſador's firſt Audience to his Audience of Leave he is lodg'd and maintain'd at the King's Charge, and allow'd to trade during that Time; but as they are not allow'd to enter the City till they are introduced to have their firſt Audience, ſo they are not ſuffer'd to ſtay in it after they have had their Audience of Leave, being look'd upon from that Time as diveſted of the Dignity of an Ambaſſador.

As the King engroſſes the chief Trade to himſelf, and it is a conſiderable Branch of his Revenue, he not only allows the Foreign Ambaſſadors to trade, but expects they ſhould; ſo that in ſhort they are Merchants under a more honourable Title; and as he that comes as an Ambaſſador, comes alſo as a Trader, he even expects conſiderable Preſents at their firſt Addreſs, which he values and honours in a Manner ſuitable to the Nature of the Preſent; as, if it be any thing to wear, he puts it on immediately in their Preſence; if it be Horſes, he immediately builds Stables for them; and ſo in other Caſes ſhews his Value of it by his Manner of receiving and uſing it, though chiefly for its real Value, and his Hopes of Gain by trading with the Donor.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Religion, Temples and Superſtition of the Siameſe.

Pagodes. In *Siam*, as in *Tonquin* and other *Aſian* Countries, they call their Idol-Temples, or rather their Temples of Idols, Pagodes. Theſe Pagodes or Temples ſtand each of them in the middle of a ſquare Piece of Ground encompaſs'd with Pyramids, and the whole incloſed with a large Wall, which is again encompaſs'd with another large Square. Here are all the Cells or Apartments of the Prieſts and Nuns or *Telapoineſſes*. Theſe Cells ſtand in Rows, but not contiguous; they are erected (as many other of their Buildings) on Bambou Pillars, and the whole is incloſed with a Fence of Bambou, and a Garden is belonging to every Convent. The *Telapoins* or Prieſts, and the *Telapoineſſes* or Nuns, are in the ſame Convent, and as they have free Converſation together, and the Females are not admitted in till they be arrived at Years of Maturity, we may ſuppoſe that (except the Severity of their Laws reſtrain them, which make it burning to Death for a *Telapoin* to have criminal Converſation with any Woman) they live as chaſte there as ſome of our *Telapoins* in *Europe*, who to avoid the Sin of being confined to one Woman, allow themſelves as many as they pleaſe; and yet Mr. *Salmon* in his *Modern Hiſtory* obſerves three Particulars in which *a Pagan Convent ſeems much to be preferr'd to that of a Catholick Cloyſter. Firſt, Neither Sex is forced into a Cloyſter againſt their Conſent. Secondly, Young Girls are not admitted there at all. Thirdly, Liberty is given to any Perſon to return into the World when that State of Life becomes uneaſy to them.*

Pagan Convent better than a Catholick Cloyſter.

Lay Brothers like Servants. All Youth are educated by the *Telapoins*, and every one has two or three Nens under his Charge, who ſerve him while they continue in the Convent, to do any Work that he ſets them about. Theſe Nens are ſometimes Pupils; but ſome of them do not go in for Education, but are a ſort of Lay-Brothers, and have their Habits made like the *Telapoins*, only white. Theſe ſubmit to weed the Gardens, and other ſervile Offices, which a *Telapoin* would think it a Sin to put his Hand to. There is one Room in the Convent for the Nens, and another where the People bring their Alms; then the Temple is ſhut, and the *Telapoins* aſſemble in the Alms-Room, and have their Conferences.

The Steeple of the Pagode is of Wood, and is not joined to the Temple, but is a Tower ſtanding by itſelf; it has a Bell in it without a Clapper, which inſtead of ringing they beat upon with a wooden Hammer.

There is a Head or Maſter to every Convent, but their Order and Privileges are different; the higheſt Order are called *Sancrats*, and 'tis only they that can admit a Perſon into the *Telapoins* Order, and inveſt him with the Habit, which is all the Juriſdiction they have over the *Telapoins*; nor are their Convents diſtinguiſh'd any otherwiſe than by ſome Stones planted round. The King gives a Name to ſome of the principal *Sancrats*, and with that he gives an Umbrella and a Chair, and Slaves to carry it, but the *Sancrats* never uſe them but when they attend upon the King.

Sancrats.

The *Talapoins* are by their Inſtitution appointed to lead holy auſtere Lives, by which they think they attone for the Sins of the People. They live by Alms, and muſt not eat in common, but every Man ſeparately lives upon what he begs, and have commonly ſo much to ſpare, as to enable them to be very hoſpitable to Strangers, which they think is ſo great a Duty incumbent upon them out of the Overplus of what they receive by begging, that they do not deny it even to Chriſtians who come into their Convents; and they have Lodgings for the Entertainment of Travellers on each Side of their Gate.

But beſides theſe *Telapoins* that live in the Convents near the Temples, called *Telapoins* of the Towns, there is another ſort that live in the Woods, and lead much more auſtere Lives than the former, but both are obliged to Celibacy, on pain of being burnt, for as they enjoy great Privileges, and are exempt from the ſix Months Service and other Duties, ſo they are compell'd to ſtrict Auſterities under the ſevereſt Penalties, and the King himſelf takes care to ſee them put in Execution; for if their Privileges were ſtrictly continued, and yet their Duties allow'd to be remiſsly perform'd, it might induce the greateſt

Telapoins of the Towns.

Part

Part of his Subjects to become *Telapoins*, and thereby (as an Author upon that Subject obſerves) *become uſeleſs to the State.*

Telapoins diſmiſs'd for their Ignorance.

In order to prevent this, their Ignorance of or Remiſſneſs in their Duty, he ſometimes cauſeth them to be examin'd as to their Skill in the *Balie* Language, becauſe in it the Precepts of their Religion is written, and if he finds them ignorant diſmiſſeth them, and ſends them into the World again, that they may be uſeful in another Capacity.

The *Telapoins* not only educate the Children, but explain the Precepts of their Religion to the People in the Temples every New and Full Moon, and during the Inundation, till the Waters abate,

Preaching.

they preach every Morning from ſix till Noon, and every Afternoon from one till five. The Preacher ſits croſs-legged upon a high Bench or Couch, taking it by turns, one beginning when the other is weary, the People expreſſing their Aſſent to his Doctrine by ſaying *Right*, or *it is ſo*, &c. after which they preſent their Alms to the Preacher, which they beſtow ſo liberally, that many of the *Telapoins* become rich by this Bounty. The Time

Faſting.

of the Inundation thus ſpent in Faſting as well as Preaching, the *Europeans* call the Lent of the *Telapoins*, for they eat nothing after Noon except ſometimes a little Fruit; it is ſaid of ſome of them that they will faſt thirty or forty Days together, ſaving that they take now and then ſome ſmall Liquor with a ſort of a Powder infuſed in it, and although this ſeems almoſt incredible, yet it is certain it may be better endured there than in thoſe colder Climates, where the Stomach is hotter, and Digeſtion ſtronger, and conſequently an empty Stomach more pernicious.

After the Rice Harveſt the *Telapoins* of the Towns go for three Weeks together to watch every Night in the Fields, in little Hutts, and return to their Cells; they encamp in the Field in much the ſame form as their Cells ſtand in Town, with their Superior's Cell in the Middle, as their Pagodes in the Towns; they make no Fires in the Night to drive away Wild-beaſts, making the

Telapoins deceive the Credulous

Credulous believe their Sanctity preſerves them; but we may rather impute it to their Policy in encamping further from the Woods than the Wild-Beaſts generally ſtray, and likewiſe encamping in ſuch Numbers and Order that it can ſcarce be expected that any wild Beaſt would care to attack them; and for thoſe *Telapoins* who inhabit the Woods, they uſe the common Means of making Fires, to keep the Wild-Beaſts off, and although they give out that a Tyger will not fall upon a *Telapoin*, though he ſhould find him ſleeping, and come with a Deſign to devour him, yet by the Smell he can know him to be a *Telapoin*, and will only lick his Hands and Feet; and the better to confirm the Ignorant in this Opinion, if they happen to find the remains of one that has been kill'd and partly devoured, they will deny that it was a *Telapoin*, except ſome Circumſtance, as a Part of his Garment, or the like, being found, prove it beyond diſpute that it was one; yet they have a Salvo for this alſo, and allege that he has tranſgreſs'd the Rules of his Order, and forfeited the Protection that his former Sanctity entitled him to, which was the Occaſion of his Suffering.

Habit of the *Telapoins*

The *Telapoins* go bare-headed and bare-footed, but have a yellow Linnen Cloth round their Middle, (that being the Royal Colour here as in *Siam*;) they have no Veſt or Shirt of Muſlin like the Laity, but a yellow Linnen Cloth thrown over their Left Shoulder, like a Shoulder-Belt, and over all another large yellow Cloth, compoſed of Rags and Patches, from whence it takes its Name: This hangs down before and behind, and is girt about with a Saſh of four or five Inches broad; they ſhave their Heads, Beards, and Eye-brows, and have a broad Leaf or Talapat, which they hold by the Stalk, and uſe it as a Fan or Umbrella; the Superior is forced to ſhave his Head himſelf, becauſe no other Perſon is worthy to touch it, and for the ſame Reaſon a young *Telapoin* muſt never ſhave an old one, but an old one may ſhave a young one; and yet when a *Telapoin* grows ſo old as to be paſt ſhaving his own Head, another may do it; but he muſt firſt make an Apology and ask Pardon, and profeſs his own Unworthineſs of ſo great an Honour as touching a Senior *Telapoin*'s Head. — Their Razors are made of Copper.

The *Telapoins* waſh their Hands betimes in the Morning, but not in the dark, or before they can ſee, leſt they ſhould drown ſome Inſect and not perceive it, ſo ſtrictly do they keep up to their Principle, *not to take away Life*, though they let others do it for their Uſe. When they are dreſt they go to the Temple, and ſpend about two Hours at their Devotion: Their Hymns or what they ſing at their

Book of Devotions.

Devotions are engraved on thoſe long Leaves before mention'd, tack'd together at the End to make a Book, but the common People have no Book, or if they had they might not underſtand it, their Devotions being in the *Balie* Language, which the Vulgar are ſeldom Maſters of; the *Telapoins* ſit croſs-legged while they ſing, and keep Time with their Talapat or broad Leaf, as if they were fanning themſelves; but when they go in or out of the Temple they proſtrate themſelves three times before their great Idol, with their Heads to the Ground.

The Begging.

After the Evening Devotion the *Telapoins* go into the City to beg, if it may be called begging; for they neither ask any Thing, nor do they take any Thing in their Hands that is given them, for they only ſtand at the Gate of the Houſe, having an Iron Bowl or Diſh in a Linnen Bag hung over their Shoulders by a Rope, and the People knowing what they want, ſeldom let them go away empty, but put their Benevolence, whatever it is, into the Iron Bowl, the *Telapoin* not touching the Alms or Money that is given them, thinking it is a Sin for the Prieſt himſelf to touch that Mammon with his Hand, but brings it home to one of his Nens or Lay-Brothers (mention'd at the Beginning of this Chapter,) who receives it at his Hand, and lays it out, and tranſacts ſuch matters as it is thought unlawful for a *Telapoin* to be concern'd in.

Admiſſion into the Order.

It is an eaſy matter for any that deſire it to be admitted into a Convent, for none are ever oppoſed in it, it being deem'd a Sin to hinder it, nor are the Parents of young People often againſt it, becauſe it is the ſureſt way to be rich, nor are they obliged to remain there longer than they pleaſe: There are ſo many Advantages accrue to thoſe that can ſubmit to thoſe ſevere Reſtrictions, that their Friends are ſeldom againſt it, and when they are reſolved to undertake it, they apply to the Head of the Houſe or Convent, who ſeldom repulſes them; and when they go to take on the Habit, they are generally accompanied by their Friends and Relations, who not only ſing and dance themſelves, but hire People for that Purpoſe, when they lead their Son to take the Habit; but neither the Muſick nor the Women are admitted to enter with him; he has his Head, Beard, and Eye-brows ſhaved, and then the Sancrat, after pronouncing ſome pious Sentences on his devoting himſelf to Religion, gives him the Habit, after which he is ſhut up in the Convent, never to ſee a Dance or hear Muſick afterwards, except they firſt quit the Convent.

The Nuns or *Telapoineſſes* are cloath'd in White, and may, like the young Nens, receive a Habit from any Head of a Houſe, without the Leave of a Sancrat, and after their Entrance, if a Woman is taken

in criminal Converſation with a Man, it is not Burning, as it is with a Man in the ſame Caſe, but ſhe is deliver'd to her Relations to be baſtinadoed, the Prieſts never performing the Execution, much leſs flogging them, as is reported of ſome nearer Neighbours, from whom, according to the Title of their Religion, more Modeſty might reaſonably be expected than from Heathens and Infidels.

Their Penance.

Their Tranſmigration.

THEY all hold Tranſmigration of Souls; which Doctrine they apply to all things Animate and Inanimate, and think them to be acted and inform'd by a rational Soul, even Fire, Water, Earth, *&c.* as well as Men, Beaſts, and other living Things; they think that every Soul that now poſſeſſes a human Body has poſſeſs'd and actuated an innumerable Number of Bodies before it came into that; and ſome of the *Telapoins*, the better to confirm this Opinion, pretend to remember their ſeveral Tranſmigrations.

BUT this Tranſition of the Soul from one Body to another they do not hold to be immediate, but that they remain diſpoſſeſs'd of any Body for ſome Time, during which Interval they think the Soul hath Occaſion for ſuch Things as was neceſſary for the Perſon in a State or Mortality; for which Reaſon they burn their moſt valuable Moveables, and even Animals, and Slaves with the Bodies of the Deceas'd, as ſuppoſing that they may have Need of them in their State of Separation; and there are Inſtances in Hiſtory, that between Man and Wife the Survivor offer'd to be burnt; and that it has been practis'd, but not beyond the *Ganges* where we are now ſpeaking of; and for other Neceſſaries or Moveables they make gilded Paper in the Reſemblance of them, and burn them; imagining that they will be real Goods in the next State of the Deceas'd.

BUT though they think they contribute to the Wants of the Deceas'd, yet they believe that they can make reciprocal Returns to them again; and therefore, to lay their deceas'd Relations under all poſſible Obligations, they do them all the Honour they can contrive at their Funerals, and then pray to them, eſpecially to their direct Anceſtors, the Father, Grandfather, and great Grandfather, but not any further back, ſuppoſing that thoſe beyond them have undergone ſo many Tranſmigrations, that they are loſt as to them, and can no longer hear them. But this Doctrine of believing that the Deceas'd can help them, and the Practice of praying to them ſeems to contradict another Part of their Belief, *viz.* that every human Soul is removed into another Body Animate or Inanimate; and that it ſometimes actuates a Beaſt of Burden, as an Elephant, *&c.* ſometimes a Tyger, or other Beaſt of Prey; ſometimes a Serpent, or other venomous Beaſt; ſometimes a Tree, a Stone or the like; and that it is condemn'd or confined to this Place or State for ſome Miſdemeanor committed in the human State, and as a Puniſhment for it; and how this departed Soul ſhall or can aſſiſt its Survivors, when it cannot aſſiſt itſelf, or obtain its Liberty, is contrary to Reaſon, and to the Capacity of that Being which is liable to Confinement, as by this Doctrine the Soul of Man is in ſeveral Bodies ſucceſſively.

Praying to the Dead.

THEIR Principles ſeem to be grounded upon Humanity and Morality; they are forbid to kill any Thing, not only Men or Animals, but Vegetables too, and in that they are ſo ſtrict, that they will not eat the Seed of any Plant while it is capable of propagating its Species; ſo that though they will eat the Fruit, that not affecting the Life or generative Faculty, yet they preſerve the Kernel or Stone, that being the Seed, which being deſtroy'd the Propagation is extinct; and for the ſame Reaſon they will not eat Fruit before it be ripe, leſt they ſhould deſtroy the Seed; they will not deſtroy any thing which we call Inanimate, becauſe they think every thing is animated by a Spirit or Genii, and that in deſtroying it, they diſpoſſeſs a Soul of the Happineſs it was to enjoy, or diſcharge it from the Confinement it was ſentenced to ſuffer. It is contrary to their Principles to open a Vein to let out the Blood, becauſe they think that to be the reſidence of the Soul; nor will ſome of them wound a Plant to let out the Sap or Juices, for the ſame Reaſon, but though theſe be their Precepts, they find Ways to evade the ſtrict Obſervance of them, and to diſpenſe with the Breach of them in ſome Caſes; for though the *Telapoins* will not eat or deſtroy the Seed that is capable of producing its Species, yet they will ſuffer it to be done for them, as for inſtance, Rice is a Seed, but when it is boil'd it is no more capable of any ſuch Action, and therefore they let their Servants boil it, and then they think it no Sin to eat it themſelves. They will not kill a Beaſt leſt they ſhould violently diſpoſſeſs a Soul, but when it is ready kill'd they think no further Violence can be offer'd to the Soul, and therefore they make no ſcruple to eat the Body, and as for their Reluctancy to deſtroy Men, the King of *Siam*'s Watch-Word, *Kill not*, ſeems to be a ſufficient Proof, and the *Siameſe* alledge in their own Defence, againſt Murder in a Battle, that they firſt fire ſhort of the Enemy, and if then they will preſume to approach within Shot, it is their own Faults if they are killed.

Their Principles not to kill.

THEIR ſecond Precept prohibits Stealing, but this is not ſo ſtrictly obſerved as the former, and as for the Third and Fourth againſt Immodeſty and Drunkenneſs, they think any Enjoyment of a Woman is equally ſinful in a ſingle or married State, only the ſtrict Religion of the *Telapoins* attone for the Sins of the Laity who cannot pretend to that Perfection; and they look upon faſting, or any Degree of drinking ſtrong Liquor to be equally criminal with being drunk with it.

IT is not lawful for the *Telapoins* to hear Muſick, ſee Plays or Dancing, touch Gold or Silver, or meddle with any thing but the Affairs of Religion, he muſt not borrow of a Lay-man, nor lend upon Uſury; he muſt keep no Arms, nor eat, drink, or ſleep immoderately, nor whiſtle, ſing, or play on any Inſtrument, or uſe any Sport or Diverſion; they muſt live on what they begg'd that Day, and keep none till the Morrow; but if any is left, give it to ſome Animal; they muſt not ſpeak freely to, or ſit near a Woman, nor receive any thing at her Hand, but if their Alms are brought them by a Woman ſhe muſt lay it down for him, or put it in his Iron Bowl; they are to wear Yellow, not to eat in Gold or Silver, and ſeveral other ceremonious Reſtrictions they are obliged to obſerve; and if they keep up to them, live reſerved, ſeldom laugh, and never aloud, carry always an auſtere ſtern Countenance ſuitable to the Homage they expect, they are admired as Demi-Deities by the Vulgar.

Their auſtere Lives.

THEIR grand Deity they call by the Name of *Summono-Codom*, who, as they imagine, was Son to the King of the Iſland of *Ceylon*, (to be deſcribed afterwards,) he beſtow'd all his Eſtate in Charity, pull'd out his Eyes, kill'd his Wife and Children, and gave them to the *Telapoins* to feed upon, and they expect that another *Summono-Codom* will ariſe, and alſo kill his Children for the ſame Purpoſe, (*However inoffenſive the* Telapoins *may deem it to eat another Man's Wife and Children when kill'd to their Hands, it would ſeem* Summono-Codom *was no* Telapoin *becauſe he butcher'd his Wife and Children himſelf,*) and that this Charity will bring them to the higheſt Pitch of Virtue; and as this ſeems to be a Piece of the greateſt Stupidity, Mr. *Loubere* imagines that the chief Happineſs of the *Siameſe* conſiſts in attaining to a great Pitch of Inſenſibility, and that

Summono-Codom

it was *Sommono-Codom*'s ſtupid Superſtition in giving his Wife and Children to be eat by the *Telapoins*, that exalted him to the Dignity of a Deity; but whatever Conſtruction Mr. *Loubiere* may put upon the Practice of the *Siameſe*, it is certain they do not look upon *Sommono-Codom* to be a ſtupid unactive Deity, when they pray to him in their Diſeaſes, and return him Thanks for Favours received, which (except they were more infatuated than he) they would not do, if they thought he was not capable of hearing them and able to help them.

His Diſciples.

THEY believe that *Sommono-Codom* is now in a State of Bliſs, and that before he entered into it he acquired a prodigious Strength of Body; that he could enlarge his Body to any Size, from a Point to any Magnitude; that his two principal Diſciples *Pra-Mogla* and *Pra-Scarabout*, whoſe Images they place with his, the former on his Right Hand, the other on his Left, on his Altars; and behind theſe they place others repreſenting his Officers; there are alſo other Images round the Galleries of the Cloyſters adjoining to the Temples.

IT is very difficult to convince the *Siameſe* of any Errors in their Religion, nor do they meddle with the Religion of Foreigners, from a Belief that every Country has a Religion peculiar to itſelf. They erect Temples to the Memories of ſome whom they believe to have been great and virtuous Men, which even the *Portugueſe*, as well as they, have called the Gods of the *Indies*, and pay a ſort of Adoration to them, for which Mr. *Loubiere* the *French* Ambaſſador at *Siam*, would charge them with Atheiſm; but if they pay divine Honour to them, and worſhip them as God, they cannot be juſtly charged with Atheiſm, becauſe they believe there is a God, and are only miſtaken in what God is, as to his Attributes, *&c.* but if they worſhipp'd thoſe Images or God by thoſe Images, we will give Mr. *Loubiere* leave to charge them with Idolatry, and ſuppoſe he might find Inſtances enough of that kind at home, though in a Chriſtian Country, and it's probable, as the *Siameſe* are not prejudiced againſt any Religion, they might ſoon have been brought to embrace Chriſtianity, if it had been offer'd to them in its Purity, according to the reform'd Church, and not encumber'd with the Dregs of Popery and Superſtition, as it was by the Popiſh Miſſionaries, when ſent to propagate Chriſtianity in thoſe Parts, as it is known not only to thoſe that read the Hiſtory of thoſe Times and Places, but by the Advice of Mr. *Loubiere* to the Miſſionaries, when aiming at the Converſation of the *Indians*, who adviſes them that they ſhould *with great Caution preach up the Worſhip of Saints*, as ſuppoſing thoſe *old Birds would not be catch'd with ſuch Chaff.*

CHAP. VIII.

Gives an Account of their Marriages, Women, Children, Slaves, and Funeral Rites.

Marriage.

THE Father has the chief diſpoſing of his Child, and when he thinks fit to marry his Son to any Woman, he employs ſome Woman to propoſe it to her Relations, and if they agree to it, they have Recourſe to ſome Conjurer or Aſtrologer to have both the young Peoples Nativities calculated, and conſult him if it is likely to prove a happy Match; but principally each enquires into the other's Fortune, to know whether they are rich or poor; for no Body dare be known to be rich, becauſe if it is diſcover'd, the King ſeizes it to his own Uſe; and from the Conjurer's Sentiments both Parties form their Reſolutions; and if the Parents agree, the intended Bridegroom is allow'd to viſit his Miſtreſs three Times, and make her a ſmall Preſent of *Betel* or Fruit; at the laſt of which Viſits, the Bride's Portion is paid down, and now the Couple are look'd upon as married, and have Preſents ſent them by their Friends and Relations.

Conſummation.

THEY proceed next to Conſummation, without any Form or Ceremony preceding, to be perform'd by the *Telapoins*, for the Weddings are attended with Mirth and Feaſting, and Perſons are hired to dance, and make the Company merry; but neither the young Couple, or any of their Relations dance upon that Occaſion; the Entertainment is kept at the Bride's Father's Houſe, where the Bridegroom builds an Apartment for that purpoſe, which is ſoon done after their ſlight Way of Building; but the *Telapoins* are prohibited to be preſent at any of theſe Entertainments, but afterwards they come to the Houſe and ſprinkle the new married Couple with holy Water, and repeat ſome Prayers for their Happineſs. The young Couple remain ſome Months at the Bride's Father's, and then adjourn to a Settlement of their own.

Mandarin's Daughter's Marriage.

WHEN a Mandarin's Daughter is married, ſhe is diſtinguiſh'd by a particular Dreſs; ſhe wears ſuch a Coronet or Circle of Gold, as the Mandarin wears on his Cap of Ceremony; her Cloaths are finer, and her Pendants of greater Value than ordinary, and ſhe has more Rings upon her Fingers than uſual: The greateſt Fortune at *Siam* ſeldom exceeds five thouſand Crowns, and they commonly endeavour to match Men and Women of equal Fortunes together; it is deem'd lawful to have more Wives than one, but it is ſeldom practiſed by the Common People, though ſometimes the great Men have more, becauſe it is look'd upon as a Piece of Grandeur; but with thoſe that have it ſo, there is a Difference in Dignity, one is called the great or chief Wife, and the reſt are purchas'd, and Attendants on her, and the Children of the great Wife call the Man only Father; whereas the Children of the reſt call him Lord as well as Father.

Degree forbidd.

MARRIAGE in the firſt Degree of Conſanguinity is prohibited to the Subjects, but the Princes think it beneath them to marry any but what are of their own Blood; nor do they ſtick at Degrees, nor regard what we call Inceſt; for the preſent King marry'd his own Siſter, and having a Daughter by her, he married her.

Chief Wife's Children only in heir.

THE Husband's Eſtate paſſes to the Children of the chief Wife, the reſt being ſo far from having any Share, that they are accounted Slaves; and when the Man dies, both the inferior Wives and their Children are at the Diſpoſal of the next Heir by the chief Wife, who inherits the Eſtate, and may ſell them all if he pleaſes. Their Eſtates conſiſt moſtly in Money and Goods; for if they have Eſtates of Land, either hereditary, or by Purchaſe, the King ſeizes it for himſelf, if he pleaſes, although he ſold them to them himſelf, and that without returning the Value; ſo that few care to purchaſe, but rather to let their Eſtates conſiſt of Money or Goods, which they can conceal; for if the King finds them out, he ſerves them

them in the ſame Manner, and that makes Diamonds be much valued, becauſe they are eaſily conceal'd.

THE Wives of the *Siameſe* are remarkably faithful to their Husbands, and as the Husbands are ſenſible of it, there is no Room for Jealouſy. They maintain their Husbands not only during their ſix Months Service to the King, which is required of every Man; but ſometimes he detains them two or three Years, their Wives maintaining them all the while. Their Laws allow of Divorce, but it is ſeldom practiſed, except amongſt the poorer Sort; and then their Children are equally divided between them, only with this Difference, that when they ſhare them, the Woman takes the firſt, the Man the ſecond, *&c.* and thereby if there be an odd one, the Woman is ſure to have it; and after they are divorced, they are at Liberty to marry again immediately.

Divorce.

THE Husband is abſolute Lord of his Family; he may ſell his Wives and Children, except the Chief, and ſhe has the ſame Power over the Children after his Deceaſe, but with this Limitation, that as the ſecond, fourth, *&c.* and every even Number is deem'd the Father's Right, as above, ſo his Relations may oppoſe the ſelling of them, if they pleaſe.

THE Women of *Pegu* who live at *Siam* will commonly offer themſelves to Foreigners, and be as faithful as Wives to them while they remain in the Place, and value themſelves upon being with Child by a white Man. The Women of *Siam* are not ſo familiar with Foreigners, but chuſe to deal with white Men rather than others, in hopes to mend the Complexions of the ſucceeding Generations.

Chuſe white Men

THE Law here is ſuch, that if a Son commits a Crime, and makes his Eſcape, his Father, Mother, or the next Relation, are thought chargeable with it, and taken up accordingly; but it is likewiſe as common, that however the Criminal may eſcape or abſcond, yet if he hears of his Relation's being apprehended, and likely to ſuffer for his Crime, he ſurely ſurrenders himſelf, rather than let them ſuffer wrongfully.

THEIR Husbands have an entire Confidence in their Chaſtity, and do not reſtrain their Liberty at all; but on the other hand the Women are ſo tenacious of their own Honour and Chaſtity, that they will not admit of any Indecent Familiarities with Men, or any Freedom that ſhould be ſuſpected as ſuch; and ſo abſolutely do they think themſelves united to their Husbands, that they had rather die by the Hand of the Husband, than to be taken from him by the Hand of an Enemy; nor can any thing grieve the Husband more, than to have his Wife taken Priſoner; and yet tho' this be the general Cuſtom of *Siam*, yet there are ſome that will go aſtray; but this happens chiefly among the Royal Concubines, or Wives of Great Men, who are ſo very numerous, that ſome of them are hardly known to the Husband, and likely not to be admitted to his Embraces: And the ſame with reſpect to the King, and ſome of his Concubines; and yet when any of them are found falſe to his Bed (if it may be ſo call'd) he puniſhes them with the utmoſt Severity. We have an Inſtance in one of the King's Concubines, that being charged with the above-mention'd Crime, the King order'd her to be caſt to the Tygers, who would not meddle with her, which the King taking to be a Token of her Innocency, offer'd her a Pardon, but ſhe rejected it, alledging, that ſhe had rather die than live the Life ſhe had liv'd in the Seraglio; whereat the King was ſo exaſperated, that he cauſed the Tygers to be again ſet upon her, himſelf ſtaying to ſee the Execution done. But the Puniſhment of the Man that is guilty with her is more mild. Sometimes they allow the Baſtinado to be deem'd a ſufficient Puniſhment for his Crime. But if a Perſon of Quality's Daughter offends in this Kind, ſhe is ſold to an Officer, and proſtituted, to puniſh them for the Crime, as well as ſhame them out of it.

Chaſtity of their Wives.

King's Cruelty.

THERE are but few Beggars here; for if they marry, and have more Children than they can maintain, they will ſell one to maintain the reſt, or if that will not do, even ſell all, Wife and all, to maintain themſelves, as has been before obſerved; but if they have neither Wives nor Children to ſell for a Maintenance, their Relations adviſe them to be Slaves rather than Beggars, as thinking the former the leaſt reproachful; and therefore there are very few Beggars except thoſe who have no Wives or Children to ſell for Subſiſtence, nor Relations to introduce them into that preferable Penury, Slavery: And altho' the very Name of Slavery is terrible to us, yet their Slaves are not ſo entirely ſo; for they are allowed to work for their Maſters to maintain themſelves, only paying to their Maſters from four Tycals to eight yearly out of their Wages; ſo that he that pays moſt, pays not above one Pound four Shillings yearly out of his Wages to the Maſter to whom he is a Slave.

Beggars

BUT beſides thoſe Slaves for Debt or Poverty, as above, People may become Slaves by being taken captive from the Enemy in Time of War, or a free Subject may be condemn'd to Slavery for a petty Crime, which is not deemed worthy of Death; or laſtly, a Perſon may be born a Slave, as is the Caſe when his Parents are Slaves on any of the above-mention'd Accounts, at the Time of his Birth, and in this Caſe ſuch Children are perpetual Slaves, though the Parents work out the Debt, and recover their Freedom; or if but one of the Parents be a Slave, the Maſter may mitigate the Sentence, and take but one half of the Children, *viz.* if it is the Mother, he takes the Firſt-born, the Third, Fifth, *&c.* and if it is the Father, he takes his, *viz.* the ſecond, fourth, *&c.* but it is in his Power to take them all if he pleaſes.

Other Slaves.

THE King perpetually employs and maintains his own Slaves; but thoſe called Freemen, that give the King Six Months Service yearly, maintain themſelves during that Time; but the Slaves of particular Men are not employed in the King's Work, nor does the King ſuppreſs any body from becoming a Slave, that is willing to exchange his Liberty for an indolent Life, and ſlender Maintenance.

WHEN one of the *Siameſe* dies, they ſometimes endeavour to conſume the Bowels within the Corps with Mercury, to prevent any offenſive Smell; ſometimes they are put into leaden Coffins, but moſt commonly into wooden Coffins laquer'd and gilded, and place them upon a Bedſtead or Table, where it remains till they make the neceſſary Preparations for the Funeral, and the Head of the Family can attend the Solemnity. In the mean time they burn Perfumes, and ſet up lighted Tapers before the Corps, the *Telapoins* ranging themſelves round the Room every Night to entertain the Family with Hymns and Diſcourſes adapted to the Occaſion; and we muſt not forget the grand Spring that puts the *Prieſts* Performances in Motion, for they are rewarded with good Proviſion and MONEY too, tho' by their Profeſſion they are forbid to touch the latter.

Funerals.

DURING this Ceremony, they cauſe a ſquare Spot of Ground to be incloſed with Bamboo Pales near ſome Temple; this is hung round with ſuch painted and gilded Papers as the Family makes upon that Occaſion, repreſenting Houſes, Goods, Animals, and ſuch other Things as they think the Deceas'd may have Occaſion for in a future State:

In the Middle of this Square they build a Funeral Pile of Earth and common Wood interſperſed with Lignum-Aloes, yellow Sanders and other fragrant Combuſtibles, of which they put a greater or leſs Quantity, according to the Ability of the Family. The Pile is built to a great Height.

Funeral Proceſſion.

They always carry the Corps to the Pile in the Morning, attended by the Family of the Deceas'd, with the Sound of ſeveral ſorts of Inſtruments; both Sexes are cloathed in white and have white Veils, lamenting and bewailing themſelves; after them come the Friends and Relations of the Deceas'd; they generally chuſe to go by Water, as far as they can, towards the Burying-Place.

They take the Body out of the Coffin, and lay it upon the Pile, and the *Telapoins* having ſung melancholy Hymns for about a Quarter of an Hour they retire, becauſe then the Shows and Plays, and the Feſtival begin, at which the *Telapoins* are forbid to be preſent; but the Relations continue there Mourning, and do not ſuffer themſelves to be affected by the Diverſion.

Burn the Pile.

About Noon the *Telapoin*'s Servant ſets fire to the Pile, and when it has burnt about two Hours, they give out that the Corps is burnt to Aſhes, though it is not; while the Fire is burning, or rather when it is beginning to burn, the ſacrilegious *Telapoins* ſteal the painted Papers, which ſhould by the Heat of the Fire have been melted into Houſes, Goods, Animals and the like for the Uſe of the Deceas'd in his future State, and keep them to ſell at the next Funeral, where they can ſteal them again, and ſell them again; and ſo their Trade goes round, while the poor Deceas'd is left to ſhift for himſelf in the other World, for the Goods and Neceſſaries which they were to have been converted into, for his Uſe.

The Family entertains the Company for three Days, and beſtows Alms upon the *Telapoins* of that Convent where the Funeral is ſolemnized, the whole concluding with Fire-works and ſuch other Diverſions, as upon a different Occaſion would be look'd upon as Demonſtrations of Joy; and after all this is done, they take the Remains of the Corps which is yet un-conſumed, and put it in the Coffin, and bury it under one of the Pyramids which ſtand about the Temple; and ſometimes they alſo bury Treaſure and Precious Stones under the Pyramid with the Corps; but all this formal Pomp and Solemnity is underſtood of the Rich and Great, for People in lower Circumſtances are forced to diſpenſe with the Want of ſome of the Charge and Grandeur above-mention'd and, as in *England*, ſuit their Expence to their Ability; but then, if a Son is but in a low Capacity at the Death of his Father, and Makes his Funeral in Proportion, if afterwards the Son is advanced in the World, he cauſeth his Father's Corps to be taken up, and beſtows upon him a more noble and ſplendid Funeral to pay that reſpect to the Memory of his deceas'd Father, which his ſtraiten'd Circumſtances would not ſuffer him to pay before. Burn.

The Perſons of Quality in this Kingdom of *Siam* uſually chuſe or pitch upon a Piece of Ground for a Burying-Place for the Family, and build a Temple as near it as conveniently they can; but thoſe of a next inferior Degree that cannot afford to build a Temple, preſent ſome Idol to a Temple already built; they that are poorer ſtill bury their Parents without the help of a Funeral Pile; but the pooreſt of all who are not able to hire the *Telapoins* to ſing the burial Hymns, and perform the Funeral Rites; (for *no Penny no Pater-Noſter*,) the next greateſt Honour that they can pay to their deceas'd Parents, is to expoſe them on a Scaffold to be devour'd by Birds of Prey, which they look upon as the moſt honourable Interment except that of burning them upon a Funeral Pile.

They allow no Funeral Rites to ſuch as die an untimely Death, amongſt whom they reckon not only executed Criminals and Self-Murderers, but alſo Women dying in Child-bed and ſtill-born Infants, alledging as a Reaſon, that ſuch People have brought the Judgment of Heaven upon themſelves for their Crimes. I could eaſily fall in with this Opinion as to the two former, but can ſcarce think that any Perſon endued with common Humanity could have ſuch an uncharitable Opinion of the two latter.

THE HISTORY AND DESCRIPTION OF THE *Oriental* ISLANDS.

CHAP. I.

Of the first (European) Discovery of the Ladrones *and* Philippine Islands.

WHAT is here meant by the *History* of these Islands is chiefly to be understood as relating to the first Discovery of them by any *European*, the Substance of which shall consist of the following Particulars: First the Person for whom. Secondly, by whom. Thirdly, Manner how. And lastly, Time when they were first discover'd.

Ferdinandus Magellans in his first Design to sail round the Globe (he being the first that ever attempted a Voyage of that Kind) was the first Discoverer of these Islands, of which Expedition and the Person take the following Account.

Birth of *Magellans.*

HE was born in *Portugal*, and had served his Country both in the *African* and *East-Indian* Wars, and chiefly under *Albuquerque*, the great *Portuguese* General, who reduced *Goa* and *Malacca* to the Subjection of the Crown of *Portugal*, for which Success, when he desired but a Ducat a Month Advance in his Pay, the Government of *Portugal* denied it. Such is too often the Case when a faithful and successful Servant is employed by a covetous ungrateful Master; but he endeavoured that *Portugal* should get nothing by it, and so quitted their Service, and engaged himself in the *Spanish* Interest under *Charles* V. then Emperor of *Germany* and King of *Spain*.

WHEN *America* was discovered by *Christopher Columbus*, there was a Bull in Force granted by Pope *Alexander* VI. to the King of *Spain*, bearing Date the 3d of *May* 1493, granting to him and all his Heirs and Successors for ever all the Countries and Islands discovered or to be discovered within one hundred Leagues Westward and Southward of the *Azores* and *Cape de Verde* Islands. But the *Portuguese* thought this interfered with a former Grant, which they had obtained in the Year 1442, upon account of their having discovered a Passage round *Cape Bona Esperanza*. This Grant made over to them all Lands discovered or to be discovered to the South and East of *Cape Bajadon*, on the West Coast of *Africa*, in about Lat. 27 North. Thus made the *Portuguese* dispute the *Spaniards* Right; but they adjusted the Difference between themselves, by agreeing that a Line should be supposed to be drawn through the *Azores* and *Cape de Verde* Islands, and another parallel to it, and two hundred and seventy Leagues to the Westward of it, and that all Land that should be discovered to the Westward of this last Line should belong to the *Spaniards*, and all to the Eastward of it to the *Portuguese*; and that neither should trade in the others Territories. This Agreement was made *June* 7. 1493, ratified by the King of *Spain* the second of *July*, and by the King of *Portugal* the 27th of *February* following, and then each Party applied themselves to the making of further Discoveries in his own Limits.

BUT *John*, then King of *Portugal*, dying *Anno* 1495, King *Emanuel*, his Successor, resolving to pursue his Predecessor's Design, fitted out three Ships in the Year 1497, under the Command of *Vasco di Gama*, who having got about the Cape of *Good Hope*, arrived at *Calicut* on the West Coast of *India*, where having made his Remarks, he returned to *Portugal*, *Anno* 1499, and gave account how easy and profitable it might be to establish a Trade with *East India* by way of the Cape of *Good Hope*.

WITH this Encouragement the aforesaid King *Emanuel* of *Portugal* in the Year 1500 fitted out another Fleet of thirteen Sail, and fifteen hundred Men for the same Voyage, who in their Passage stood so far to the Westward, that they made the Land of *Brazil* in *South America*; but then altering their Course, they pass'd round the Cape of *Good Hope*, and came to *Calicut* as before, but when they attempted to land and settle there, they were repulsed by the *Moors* or Mahometans of *Arabia*, who had got Possession of the Place, and engross'd the Trade to themselves, and transported the *Indian* Goods to *Turkey*, which is the Reason that *Europe* was formerly supplied with them from thence.

HAVING met with this Disappointment, they adjourn'd to *Ceylon*, a Port upon the same Coast,

about twenty Leagues to the Southward of *Calicut*, where they met not with so much Opposition, and having got Footing there, they were immediately reinforced with Ships and Men to maintain and enlarge their Possession; so that in a short time the *East India* Trade was transferr'd from *Turkey* to *Portugal*, and the Goods with which we were supplied by the former, we are now supplied with by the latter.

They having got such sure Footing in *Asia*, soon extended their Possessions to the Eastward as far as *Malucca* (*of which see more in the Account of* Malacca *under the Head of the Description of* Siam) of which they were no sooner in Possession of, but they discover'd the *Molucca's* or Spice Islands. But here *Magellans* thought fit to put a stop to his Adventures, and return Home to know how he should be rewarded for what he had already done, and whether his Reward answered his Expectation is uncertain, but it is certain it fell far short of his Merit; for being denied the Advance of one Ducat a Month in his Pay, he deserted the *Portuguese* Service, and engaged with *Charles* the Fifth, Emperor of *Germany*, and King of *Spain*, as has been observed before.

Magellan began now to use some Geographical Policy in the Interest of his new Master; for by the before-mention'd Contract any Discovery made amongst the *Philippines*, *Molucca's* or Spice Islands would seem to belong to the *Portuguese*; for if we suppose a Meridian drawn two hundred and seventy Leagues to the Westward of the Meridian, passing through *Cape de Verde* Islands or the *Azores* (for their Longitudes differ not much) it is customary to reckon that one hundred and eighty Degrees (or half the Globe) East Longitude from that Meridian is to be deemed *Eastward*, and the other half, or one hundred and eighty Degrees West Longitude from the said Meridian should all be called *Westerly*; and if that be granted, the *Molucca's* or Spice Islands lying within the one hundred and eighty Degrees East Longitude from the said proposed Meridian, must in that Sense be an Easterly Discovery, and belong to the *Portuguese*, exclusive of any Pretensions of the *Spaniards*.

But *Magellan*, nettled at the Ingratitude of the *Portuguese*, and studying to resent the Indignities he had received from them, soon contrived a Way for his Master, the King of *Spain*, to evade that Contract; for as all Eastern Discoveries did belong to the *Portuguese*, so did all Western to the King of *Spain*; he therefore advised the King of *Spain* to furnish him with Ships and Men proper for such an Expedition, and he would sail West so far round the Globe, as to come to the *Molucca's* or the *Philippine* Islands, and if then he could make a Discovery and a Conquest too, it was no Infringement upon the King of *Portugal's* Property, as being a Western Discovery, and belonging to the King of *Spain*.

The King of *Spain* approving of the Project, immediately order'd five Ships to be fitted out, and mann'd with three hundred Men, of whom thirty were *Portuguese*, and made *Magellan* Admiral of the Fleet. He set sail from *Seval* the 10th of *August* 1519, and arrived at *Cape de Verd* on the Coast of *Africa* the third of *October* following, from whence he steer'd South-west till he made the Coast of *Brasil* in *South America*, where he only took in some fresh Provisions, and so proceeded without any remarkable Adventure to the Southward along the *American* Coast.

Coming into Latitude Fifty-two South, he discovered the Streight that separates *Terra del Fuego* from the main Continent of *South America*, which Streights he called by his own Name, *The Streights of* Magellan, now sometimes called the *Magellanick Streights*. This Streight is about a hundred Leagues in Length, but the Breadth very uncertain and irregular, being in some Places several Leagues, and in others not half a League broad, the Land on both sides rugged and mountainous, and cover'd with Snow, which being in *November*, almost the Height of their Summer, it is to be supposed they wear that Livery all the Year round. In these Streights they found Plenty of fresh Water Fish, Herbs, Wood, and very good Harbours. On the 28th of *November* 1520 they past out of the Streights of *Magellan* to the Westward into the Great South Sea or Pacifick Ocean, and sailed North-westward for about three Months, without making any Land, having a fair brisk Gale and a smooth Sea, which is common in all Seas, as well as this in these Latitudes, the Wind always blowing to the Westward. On the 6th of *March* following, when they had by their Reckoning run down an hundred and forty six Degrees of Longitude to the Westward, they discovered the *Ladrones* Islands, in about Latitude twelve Degrees North. Here he went ashore and refresh'd his Men; but as neither the Peoples Behaviour nor his own Inclination induced him to stay there, he made the best of his way for the *Philippines*, where he was kill'd in a Skirmish with the Natives; but he and some of his Officers having (before his Death) had Intelligence that the *Molucca* Islands which they were in quest of were not far off, the Ships pursued their Voyage, and arrived at one of the *Mollucca's* called *Tidore*, a small Island in the first Degree of North Latitude, a little to the Westward of the Island *Gilolo*. Here they arrived on the 8th of *November* 1521. In this and some other of the Spice Islands they were kindly received by the respective Governors, and suffer'd to build a Fort and erect a Factory at *Tidore*. They also left one of their Ships there, which was leaky, to be refitted; and now they began to think that their Conquest, or rather, the other's Surrender, had confirmed their Title beyond all Dispute, and that all the Spice Islands, as well as the *Tidore*, was now their absolute Property.

Streig of M gellan discov'd

But notwithstanding the Cunning of the *Spaniards* in calling this a *Western Discovery*, and so to quit themselves from any Imputation of infringing upon the depending Contract, the *Portuguese*, who were the first *Europeans* that traded thither, would not take it so, but ruin'd their Factory, and took their Ships as a Prize. This created continual Bickerings between the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese*, but the King of *Spain* soon put an End to the Dispute, by borrowing of the Crown of *Portugal* three hundred and fifty thousand Ducats, and Mortgaging all his Property in these Islands as Security, which Sum the King of *Spain* never repaying, his Security was forfeited, and the King of *Portugal* kept quiet Possession till the Year 1564, in the Reign of *Philip* the Second King of *Spain*, when *Don Lewes de Valasco*, Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, sent *Michael Lopez de Legaspes* with a Fleet thither, imagining that by planting a Colony there he might establish a Trade between *Mexico*, *China*, and *Japan*.

So much for the History of these Islands; the next is the Description of them, in which, for Order's sake, we shall step back to the Easternmost of them again, and so proceed Westward.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

A Description of the Ladrones Islands.

THE *Ladrones* are a Number of small Islands lying between twelve and twenty two North, the largest of which is, 1. *Guam*, in 13 Degrees 21 Min. North, according to Mr. *Dampier*'s Observation, and is seven thousand three hundred and two Miles to the Westward of Cape *Corientes*, in the Kingdom of *Mexico* in *America*; but besides this, there are others to the Northward of this, and much in the same Longitude; as, 2. *Sarpanta*, in Lat. 14. 3. *Buena Vista*, in Lat. 15. 4. *Saespara*, in Lat. 1540. 5. *Anatan*, in Lat. 17 20. 6. *Sarigan*, in Lat. 17 25. 7. *Guagam*, in Lat. 18. 8. *Almaguan*, in Lat. 18 18. 9. *Pagon*, in Lat. 19. 4. 10. the Burning Mountain *Griga*, in Lat. 19 33. 11. *Tina*, and 12. *Manga*, in Lat. 20 45. 13. *Urrac*, in Lat. 20 55. 14. *Isle de Patos*, in Lat. 25 30. 15. *La Disconocida*, in Lat. 25 50. 16. *Malabriga*, in Lat. 27 40.

Guam. OF all these Islands *Guam* is the most frequented; here the *Spaniards* have a small Fort mounted with a few Iron Guns, and garrison'd with thirty or forty Soldiers; it lies North and South, twelve Leagues long, and four broad, high Land and steep Rocks to the Eastward, against which the Sea in its perpetual Westerly Current beats continually with great Violence; but the Land declines to the Westward, that the West or Lee Side of this Island is low Land and sandy Bays, separated by rocky Points, which makes very good Anchoring; the Soil is dry and reddish, but indifferently fruitful in Pine Apples, Melons, Oranges, Limes, Cocoa-Nuts, and a Fruit which our Sailors call Bread-Fruit; they have also some Rice, but neither good nor Plenty, because the Soil is too dry; the Cocoa-Nut-Trees grow by the Sea Side, on the West Part of the Island, in large Groves of three or four Miles long, and a Mile or two broad.

Bread Fruit.

Bread Fruit how used. THE Bread-fruit grows upon a Tree the Bigness of a Large Apple-Tree; it has a spreading Head, full of Branches and dark; the Fruit grows as Apples do on the Branches of the Tree, as big as an ordinary Foot-Ball; it is round, and has a thick tough Rind, the Fruit when ripe is yellow and soft, and of a sweet Taste; the Natives gather it when it is green and hard, and bake it till the Rind is scorch'd black, and then scraping off that Outside, there remains a thin tender Crust; the Inside is white and soft, like the Crumb of a Penny-Loaf; there is neither Stone nor Seed in it, but a pure fine Substance like Crum of Bread, but it will not keep above twenty four Hours till it eats harsh and choaky, and thus order'd, it continues in Season for Bread eight Months in the Year, and the Natives have no other Bread during the Season of this. The Bread-Fruit and Tree on which it grows is peculiar to the *Ladrones* and *Philippines* only, and not to be found any where else in the World: They have not much Fish, but they have Hogs-Flesh very good, being fed with Cocoa-Nuts.

Natives Complexion &c. THE Natives have strong well-shaped Bodies, large Limbs, long black Hair, tawny Complexion, small Eyes, thick Lips, and white Teeth; their Visage is long, Countenance stern, yet courteous, if not provoked; there is seldom any reigning Distemper, except one like a Leprosy, but otherwise the Country is tolerable healthy, especially in the dry Seasons, which lasts from *November* till *May*, but during what is called the wet Seasons, the Rains are neither perpetual nor violent, as in some other Places between the Tropicks; and as these Islands lie so far to the Eastward of the *Philippines*, or any other considerable Land, the Westerly Winds either do not reach so far, or if they do they do not hold so long.

THEY are very dexterous in building a Sort of a small Sailing Boat, which for the Excellency of the Construction, and uncommon and ready way of Working, a Description of them will not be amiss. The Bottom is sharp at both Ends alike, like that of a Canoe, and is commonly about twenty eight Foot long; this is what may be called the Keel; the under Part of it is like a Wedge, but inclining to be roundish; the upper Part is almost flat, or very little hollow, and is about a Foot broad; from hence both sides are carried up to about five Foot high, with Planks of about five Inches broad; but what is most remarkable in their Structure is, that one side is flat, and the other rounding or bulging, like other Boats; they are four or five Foot broad a-loft, and the Mast just in the Middle, because both Ends must be exactly alike; they have a Yard with a Sail fix'd to the Mast, and when they are to turn to the Windward, they turn the flat Side to the Wind, the bulging or bearing of the other Side supporting her from being overset, and thus having sailed as far as they think convenient upon one Tack, or making one End the Head, they do not ware or tack, but trim the Sail so as to stand full, when the other End is to be the Head, and she is to stand the contrary Way, and by this means all Loss of Time and Stern-way, which unavoidably attends our *English* Method of turning to Windward, is entirely avoided, and doubtless between any two *English* Vessels equally qualified in all respects for turning to Windward, only with this one Difference, that one at every time of staying lost time, and made Stern-way, and the other was not clogg'd with either of these Incumbrances, it is not difficult to conceive how the latter would spring out a-head of the former in a few Trips to Windward.

WHAT is most difficult to be accounted for in these sort of Demi-Vessels is, how they sail large or right before the Wind; for if then they should sally towards the flat Side, where there is no bearing to support them, they must overset of course. —It may be answer'd that the bulging Side that has all the Bearing carries likewise all the Loading, so that she will naturally heel so much to that Side that a small Breeze would not righten her, much less overset her, but the most safe Way is, suppose the Wind is East, and the Course West, keep the Wind a Point or two upon the flat Side, which suppose it is now made the Starboard Side, she would then instead of West lie West by North, or West-North-West, and after having finish'd about half your Voyage, turn the other End forward, make the flat Side the larboard Side, and let her lie West by South or West-South-West, and so have they the flat Side always to Windward, and the same Course with a mere Trifle, more Distance made good, as if she had sailed all the Way upon a right Line; and this I take to be the Method of managing the Boats they send expres's to *Manila*, one of the *Philippines*, which lies directly West from *Guam*, near four hundred Leagues off; the Trade Winds (except when the Westerly Winds reach so far to the Eastward,) blowing always East;

to

ſo that from *Guam* to *Manila* is right before the Wind, and turning to Windward back, excepting in caſe of a Weſterly Wind, if it happen at that Seaſon, ſo that it is evident they can ſail before the Wind, or at leaſt fetch a Place that is right to Leeward of them, as in this Caſe from *Guam* to *Manila*; and this Voyage, *Dampier* tells us, was perform'd going and coming in four Days time by one of theſe Veſſels, though the Places be near, or as he ſays, above four hundred Leagues aſunder.

Mr. *Dampier* gives us an Account of one of them that he made trial of, that ſailed twenty four Miles an Hour, which is what I have not heard that any of our *Engliſh* Galleys have done upon a Wind cloſe hawl'd.

The Natives of *Guam* have neat little Houſes built with Wood, and cover'd with Palmeto Leaves; they live together in Villages by the Sea Shore, on the low Land on the Weſt Side of the Iſland; the Religion they profeſs is what they learned of the *Spaniſh* Prieſts, whom the *Spaniards* ſent over to inſtruct them, they being under the *Spaniſh* Government at this Day.

CHAP. III.

Gives an Account of the Name, Situation, and Extent of the Philippine Iſlands *in general, and of* Mindanao *in particular; together with an Account of the Winds, Monſoons, Rivers, and Harbours in the ſaid Iſland of* Mindanao.

Number. SOME ſay the *Philippine Iſlands* are a thouſand in Number, but that is only a figurative Way of ſpeaking, a certain Number for an uncertain; however, there are a vaſt Number of ſmall ones, beſides thoſe more remarkable ones, which are diſtinguiſh'd by proper Names, of which the

Names. moſt remarkable are, 1. *Luconia* or *Manila*, 2. *Tandaga* or *Samar*, called by ſome *Philippina*, 3. *Maſbate*, 4. *Mindoro*, 5. *Luban*, 6. *Paragua*, 7. *Panay*, 8 *Leyte*, 9. *Bohol*, 10. *Siba*, *Zebu*, or *Sogbu*, 11. *Negroes*, 12. *St. John*, 13. *Xollo*, 14. *Mindanao*; theſe are the moſt remarkable of them, they lie in about Latitude 5 to 19 Degrees North, and as Mr. *Salmon* obſerves, they extend from Longitude 134 to 147 Eaſt, but he reckons his Longitude from *Ferro*; but if we reckon from *London*, as it were to be wiſh'd all *Engliſh* Geographers did, they lie in Longitude from 115 to 128 Eaſt from *London*, to the Southward of *China* and the Eaſtward of *Cochin-China*,

Why ſo called. They were called *Philippine Iſlands* by the *Spaniards*, in honour of their King *Philip* the Second, in whoſe Reign the firſt *European* Colony was planted there, which Name they retain to this Day.

Firſt peopled. It is probable theſe Iſlands were firſt peopled from the Continent of *China*, becauſe they were under that Government till he voluntarily deſerted them, on Account of their being too remote from the Bulk of his vaſt Dominions; but their Religion and Cuſtoms, when the *Spaniards* firſt went amongſt them plainly proves that they were of *Chineſe* Extraction.

Mindanayans. Mindanao, the Southermoſt and biggeſt of all theſe Iſlands, except *Manila*; it is ſixty Leagues in Length, and in ſome Places forty, ſome fifty over; it is not all ſubject to one Prince, nor is the Religion, Language, or Manners, of the People the ſame in all Parts of it, but may rather be rank'd under three Heads or Names, the *Mindanayans*, the *Hillaloons*, and the *Sologues*: The prevailing Religion of that Place is *Mahometaniſm*; their ſupreme Governor is called the Sultan of *Mindanao*, he governs with an arbitary Power, and gives no written Laws for the Direction of his Subjects Obedience, and thoſe moſt directly under his Religion and Government are in a particular Manner call'd *Mindanayans*, and inhabit near the Sea Coaſt, and have a free Trade for themſelves with any Strangers or Foreigners that reſort thither.

But there are another ſort of a People who live in the Middle and retired Parts of the Country, in the Woods and Mountains, and from that Choice of a Reſidence are called *Hillaloons*. They have rich Mines of Gold Ore, and Plenty of Bees-Wax, but they have no further View in Trading than in trafficking with the *Malayans* for Cloathing, and ſuch other Neceſſaries as their preſent Occaſion requires. *Hillal*

There are alſo another very obſcure ſort of People called *Sologues*, who converſe very little with either of the two former; they are ſettled moſtly at the North-Weſt Part of the Iſland, and trade much to *Manila* and the interjacent Iſlands. *Sologu*

In this Iſland are ſeveral fine Harbours and Roads for Ships; there are alſo Navigable Rivers well ſtored with Fiſh as well as their Seas; eſpecially they have Plenty of Bonetoes, Cavallies, Breems, Mullets, Sea-Turtle or Tortoiſe, and ſmall Maratee. *Harb*

The Weather is not ſo hot as might be expected from its Situation ſo near the Line, becauſe it is conſtantly refreſh'd by Sea Breezes; the Wind blows Eaſterly one half of the Year, and Weſterly the other; they begin to blow from the Eaſt in *October*, but are not ſettled till the middle of *November*; this Wind is attended with fair Weather; the Wind begins to come about to the Weſt in *May*, but ſettles not till *June*, and then comes Rains, Storms and Thunder, Showers which comes againſt the Wind; when the Wind firſt veers to the Weſtward, it blows faintly, and there is ſeldom more than one or two Hurricanes in a Day, and after the Storm is over the Wind ſhifts about to the Eaſt, and the Sky becomes clear, than by degrees thoſe Hurricanes come more frequently and oftner a Day, with violent Guſts of Wind, and very terrible Claps of Thunder, and at length they come on ſo thick, that the Wind continues in the Weſt, from whence the Hurricane comes, and in that Quarter it remains till *October* or *November*, during all which time they have dark thick cloudy Weather, dreadful Thunder and Lightnings, and violent Rains, the largeſt Trees torn up by the Roots, and the Rivers overflow their Banks and drown the Country, ſometimes not ſeeing Sun, Moon, or Stars for a Week together; but the worſt of the Weather is generally the latter End of *July* or Beginning of *Auguſt*, then it is cool and chilly; in *September* both Wind and Rain abate, and the Air ſometimes clear, but commonly thick Fogs till about Noon, and then the Sun breaks out; in *October* or *November* the Wind comes about to the Eaſt again, &c.

Hindu nayans.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Contains a Deſcription of the City of Mindanao, *alſo of the People; the Genius, Temper, Perſons, Habits, Cuſtoms, and Diverſions of the* Mindanayans.

THE City of *Mindanao* is the Metropolis of the Iſland, and ſtands about two Miles from the South Shore, and near the Middle of the Iſland; it is ſituate upon a ſmall River, which runs into the Sea about two Miles below; their Houſes are like thoſe of *Siam*, built on Bambou Poſts, fourteen, ſixteen, or ſome twenty Foot above Ground; they have but one Floor, but it is divided into ſeveral Apartments as they pleaſe, to which they go up by a Ladder on the Outſide of the Houſe; the reaſon of their building thus, is the ſame as at *Siam*, to be above the flowing of the Deluge in the wet Seaſon; their Buildings are very ſlender and weak, being made only with ſplit Cane or Bambou, and the Roofs cover'd with Palmeto Leaves; the People keep their Ducks and Poultry in the empty Place, amongſt the Poſts under the firſt Floor; they alſo make their Dunghills there, and throw down any ſtinking ſtuff, that their Houſes can ſeldom be ſaid to ſtand in a ſweet Air, except during the Inundation, or ſome ſmall time after it, when the freſh Deluge carried away all the Filth and Corruption that the dry Weather had collected together.

THE Sultan's Houſe is very large and ſtrong, ſtanding upon one hundred and eighty great Bambou Pillars, and is much higher than the common Buildings, and has a large Pair of broad Stairs to go up to it; in the firſt Room of the Palace there are twenty Iron Guns mounted upon Carriages, ſeveral others of the Grandees having alſo Guns in their Houſes; at a ſmall Diſtance from the Sultan's Palace there is a Houſe built on Purpoſe for the Reception of Ambaſſadors, and Merchant Strangers, and to hold their Councils in; the Floor is neatly matted, becauſe the People ſit croſs-legged, and uſe no Chairs.

Mindanao deſcribed. THE City of *Mindanao* is about a Mile in length, and but narrow, it poſſeſſing only the Bank of a winding River, on the Right or Starboard Side going up, but there are ſome few Houſes on the other Side; the Bar has not above ten or eleven Foot at Spring Tides, and therefore the River is not navigable for Ships of any conſiderable Burden.

Genius and Temper. THEY are an ingenious witty active People, and yet a *French* Author, who probably thinks no Country ſo bright as his own, calls them lazy, and affirms that they will not work till Hunger compels them; the Caſe is true as to their not being willing to work more than needs muſt; for it is here as in *Siam*, if a Man is ſo induſtrious as to procure to himſelf a Competency beſides Food and Raiment, (that is expended as faſt as it comes,) if it comes to the King's Ear that the Man has acquired a Fortune or ſmall Subſiſtence, the King immediately ſeizes it for himſelf, without any Queſtions aſk'd, and they think it is better to lie idle than work for Nothing. (*See the ſame Caſe in* Siam, *the Beginning of Chap.* III.)

Perſons. THE *Mindanayans* Men have ſtrait Bodies, ſmall Limbs, little Heads, oval Faces, ſmall black Eyes, their Noſes ſhort, their Foreheads flat, their Lips red and thin, their Mouths large, their Hair black and ſtrait, and they black their Teeth as in other Parts of *India*; thier Complexions are tawny, but of a brighter Hue than ſome of their Neighbours; they reckon long Nails an Ornament, eſpecially that on the Left Thumb to be look'd upon as a Piece of Dignity; they never cut it, but ſcrape it ſmooth, and clean and nouriſh it with great Induſtry.

Mein. THEY have a Mein or Carriage ſo ſtately, that Strangers think it the Effect of Pride, but as their other Behaviours are civil and complaiſant, it may rather be imputed to their genteel Air; indeed if they are inſulted and affronted, they are ſo implacable that it is next to impoſſible to perſwade them to a Reconcilation till they have had their Revenge, which they are continually meditating till 'tis perpetrated, and terminates in Poiſon, Aſſaſſination, or ſome mortal Tragedy upon the Perſon's Life.

Habit THE Men wear a kind of a Linnen Shirt or Frock, which comes down almoſt to their Knees; they have a Pair of Drawers, but have neither Stockings nor Shoes; they have a little Cloth or Turbant upon their Heads, which they tie once round, and let the fringed Ends hang down. The Women have long black Hair, which they plat or make up in a Roll on the hinder Part of the Head; their Faces are rounder than the Mens, and their Complexions better; their Features are very proportionable and agreeable, only their Noſes are ſmall and low, and their Foreheads flattiſh, which makes them appear beſt at a ſmall Diſtance; they wear a Frock or Shift like the Men, but with the upper Part of the Sleeve very wide, and gather'd at the Wrist; they have a Cloth or Petticoat once about their Middle: The common People wear the Cloth made of the Plantain-Tree, but the better Sort are cloath'd in Silk or Callico; they have very ſmall Feet, but wear no Shoes or Stockings more than the Men.

Women not reſtrained. THEIR Women are allow'd to converſe with Foreigners, and to entertain them at their Houſes, but are not allow'd to uſe any further Familiarities, nor are they ſuſpected of deſiring it, ſo that their Husbands do not think it neceſſary to lay them under any Reſtraints. It is cuſtomary when any Ship comes to *Mindanao* for the *Mindanayans* Men to come aboard, and enquire if any of the Ship's Company want a Comrade or male Companion, or a Pagally or Female Companion, and it is very common for almoſt every Stranger that comes to contract ſuch Acquaintance, which being done, he comes aſhore, eats, drinks, and ſleeps at his new Companion or Bed-fellow's Houſe, but they muſt pay for every Thing they have, except a little Tobacco, or *Betel*, or the like. The Men of the beſt Quality allow their Wives the Freedom of Converſing with their Pagallies in publick. They wear Rings upon their Fingers, and Bracelets on their Wriſts made of Gold or Silver.

Eating. THE better ſort of People eat Buffaloes Fleſh and Fowls, with their Rice; but their Cookery is as naufeous as their manner of Eating. They never uſe any Spoons, but take up a handful of Rice out of the Diſh, and ſqueeze it together into a hard Lump as big as their Mouths will hold, and cram themſelves with it till they almoſt choak themſelves. They waſh after Meals, and after touching any thing they deem unclean, which conſumes a great deal of Water in their Houſes, and when they have got a Quantity of dirty Water toge-

ther, they only pour it upon the Floor of the Houſe, which Floor is made of ſplit Bambou, like Lath wove together, and when the People are ſick, they have only a Hole in the Floor like a Cloſe-ſtool, which they uſe as ſuch, letting all lie underneath for every body to ſee that comes, which makes their Lodgings be very filthy and loathſome; but the healthy People of both Sexes go to the River Side on theſe Occaſions, as alſo to bathe their Bodies and waſh their Clothes, there being frequently abundance of People in the River from Morning till Night, both Sexes taking great Delight in ſwimming, and waſhing themſelves, which they uſe from their Infancy; it is accounted very wholeſome in hot Countries, and eſpecially where the Flux is predominant.

Swimming.

Liquor.

They have a Liquor made of Rice ſteep'd in Water, ſo ſtrong, that they can drink themſelves merry with it; but when they invite Foreigners, they will not drink out of the ſame Veſſel with them, looking upon that as defiling themſelves, and a Thing that is by no Means to be done.

Diverſions.

At any Wedding, or Occaſion of ſolemn Rejoicing, they have Women who are brought up to it, to ſing and dance before them, if it may be called Dancing: For they do not make much uſe of their Feet in jumping from the Ground, the Excellency of their Dancing conſiſting chiefly in extending their Bodies into odd diſtorted Poſtures, and to ſhew the Suppleneſs of their Limbs in twiſting and ſcrewing themſelves, as if they had no Bones in their Skin, and all this is done to the Noiſe of Singing only, they having no Inſtruments of Muſick here. Sometimes at theſe Entertainments, a Man is introduced, intended it is ſuppoſed in their Way, to repreſent a Hero or Champion. At his firſt Appearance he puts on a dreadful ſtern Look, gives a Shrick or two, and ſtrides croſs the Stage with the utmoſt Grandeur, having a Lance in one Hand, and a great broad Sword in the other, and having taken ſeveral Turns in a frightful menacing Manner, he ſtamps, ſhakes his Head, throws his Lance, and draws his Crice, and falls to cut and flaſh the Air like a Madman. At length, as if he had got his Enemy in his Mercy, gives two or three Blows on the Floor with his broad Sword, as if he was cutting off his Head, and then withdraws, as having done a great Feat, and ſometimes they are ſo diverted with his frantick Exerciſes, that another ſucceeds him to repeat the Diverſion; ſometimes their Generals, nay, the Sultan himſelf, will expoſe themſelves in theſe Mock-Fights; but if the Sultan acts at all, he always comes laſt, and concludes the Droll, being actually dreſs'd in Armour as if a going indeed to engage.

Horſes.

Besides theſe Diverſions, they hunt wild Cows and Buffaloes, like Deer or other Veniſon, for they have great Store of thoſe, and commonly take their Women with them to the Sport, but their Way of Hunting ſcarce deſerves the Name of Hunting, for they only incloſe a Piece of Ground in with a ſtrong Fence, and then drive their Game in and take them, which affords very poor Diverſion to the Sportſmen; they have no Dogs, nor do they underſtand much of the Uſe of Fire-Locks, that they have no Chance for a diverting Chace.

CHAP. V.

Gives an Account of their Trade, Shipping, Manufactures, Coin, Soil, Plants, Animals and Minerals.

They build very ſerviceable Ships at *Mindanao*, both for Trade and Pleaſure, and have ſome Sorts of Ships of War. Their Trade is chiefly to *Manila*, to which Place they carry their Gold and their Bees Wax, and bring back *Chuna* Silks, Calicoes and Muſlins. They alſo maintain a Trade with the Iſland of *Borneo*. The *Dutch* come hither in Sloops from *Ternate* and *Tidore* to purchaſe Tobacco, Rice and Bees Wax. Tobacco grows more plenty in this Iſland than in any in all the *Indies*, except *Manila*, and is reckon'd of an excellent Sort; but they have not the Art of managing it ſo well as the *Spaniards* do at *Manila*. The *Mindanao* Tobacco is a deeper Colour than that of *Manila*, and a much larger Leaf, which ſome impute to the Fatneſs of the Soil. The *Manila* Tobacco is of a bright yellow, and the Leaf of a moderate Size, and is not ſtrong to ſmoke, but very pleaſant. The People of *Manila* have a great Trade all over *India* with this Tobacco, and ſell it at a very great Price, while that at *Mindanao*, which is really as good in itſelf, is ſold exceeding cheap, and all the Difference of the Value put upon theſe Tobacco's is only owing to different Ways of ordering, in which the *Manilans* excel the *Mindanayans* as much as the Price of their Tobacco excels theirs.

Gold.

The Rate of *Mindanayan* Gold is fourteen *Spaniſh* Dollars the *Engliſh* Ounce, and eighteen Dollars the *Mindanao* Ounce. *Spaniſh* Dollars are current Coin in the *Philippine* Iſlands.

They puniſh Theft ſeveral Ways, for they are arbitrary in their Sentence, and if it is paſt, there is no Repeal or Mitigation. Mr. *Dampier* relates a Story of a Captain who had been robb'd of ſome Goods by one of the General's Men, who after he had done made his Eſcape to the Mountains, but being purſued and taken after the aggrieved Captain was gone, they were ſo ſtrict in bringing him to Juſtice, that they brought him bound to Captain *Swan* (who commanded the Ship *Dampier* was in) to know how he would pleaſe to have him puniſh'd, but the Affair being foreign from his Buſineſs, he declined it; whereupon the General himſelf order'd the Criminal to be ſtript naked, and bound Hand and Foot to a Poſt from Morning till Night, with his Face towards the Sun, which was a ſevere Puniſhment, if we conſider not only his ſtanding ſo long in that one Poſture, but being expoſed to the intenſe Rays of the Sun's Heat, and which was yet the worſt Part of his Puniſhment, the Musketoes and Gnats, creeping biting, and preying upon his Body, himſelf not having a Hand at Liberty to drive them away, or to rub himſelf under that tormenting Itch. The General would have kill'd him after all, but Captain *Swan* would neither deſire it, nor conſent to it. For other Puniſhments, they lay them ſometimes on their Backs for a long time in the Sands, which are ſo exceſſive hot, they are not to be touch'd with the Hand, or walk'd upon with the bare Feet.

Worms.

The Rivers and Seas too near the Shore about this Iſland are ſo infeſted with Worms, that they will

will ſink a Ship in a very ſhort Time, to prevent which, when the Natives come from Sea, they hall up their Ships upon the Shore or dry Land, as they do their ſmall Craft, their Canoes and Barges, and never let them lie long in the Water; theſe Worms are chiefly in the Bays and Creeks near the Shore, or in the Mouths of Rivers, but ſeldom far off at Sea, except ſo far as they may be brought off by other Ships that have got them when they were in with the Shore.

Jealous of the *Dutch*.

THE *Mindanayans* are very jealous of the *Dutch*, as knowing their barbarous as well as covetous Temper, eſpecially where there is any view of their beloved Mammon Intereſt, they know their Tenderneſs is firſt Conquering, and then Tyrannizing over their Victims, and reducing them to a ſtate of Slavery; and their Apprehenſions that they will in time invade them, or put ſome Reſtraint to their Trade, makes them wiſh that the *Engliſh* would ſettle a Factory there, and defend them from their Encroachments; they have obſerved that the *Engliſh* wherever they ſettled, never endeavour'd to oppreſs or enſlave any Place or People: though the *Dutch*, *Spaniards*, and *Portugueſe*, wherever they come, have plunder'd and divided the Spoil, claiming the Property of every Country or Iſland where they have but ſet their Foot athore, though they have been at the ſame Time govern'd by Princes of their own. There is hardly a conſiderable Iſland in *India* but what the *Dutch* have by Force or Fraud uſurped the Government of all or ſome of it, and form'd Pretences to depoſe Princes to make room for themſelves, and where they could not pick a Quarrel with any Pretence of Juſtice or Reaſon, have nevertheleſs fallen upon them in Peace and cold Blood, and ſo reduced them under their Government. Several of the Eaſtern Nations, who think themſelves ſtrong enough to vie with the *Dutch*, and defend themſelves from them, will not trade with them upon any Account, nor ſuffer them to come into their Dominions: And what makes it more remarkable is, that the *Dutch* who groan'd under their poor diſtreſſed Condition, made it a Pretence for even Rebellion itſelf, and caſting off their Allegiance to their lawful Sovereign, that they ſhould become the greateſt Tyrants or Oppreſſors that ever were known in the Eaſt, or perhaps in the World. It is to be ſuppoſed that the *Dutch* would very well reliſh the *Engliſh*'s accepting the Propoſals of the *Mindanayans*, in enjoining them to renew their Claims to *Amboina* and other of the Spice Iſlands, which they were ſo unjuſtly and inhumanly deprived of by them; but we ſhall have Occaſion to ſpeak more of this under *Amboina*.

Soil.

THE Country towards the Middle of it is Mountainous and Woody, but has ſeveral pleaſant Valleys; the Soil is a deep black Mould, and very fruitful, and though the Hills are ſtony, they produce tall Timber, and in ſome of them are Mines of Gold.

Gold Mines.

THERE are fine Rivers and Brooks run down the Valleys, which are beautifully cloathed with great Variety of Trees and Plants, which are green and flouriſhing all the Year, but moſtly unknown to us, but the Natives call one of them the *Libbu*, and the *Europeans* call it the Sago-Tree; they grow wild in large Woods five or ſix Miles in length by the Rivers Side; they make Sago of the Pith of theſe Trees, and the Natives eat it inſtead of Bread four or five Months in the Year; the Tree is ſomething like the Palm-Tree, the Bark and Wood is hard and thin, but the Inſide is full of a white Pith like Eldar; they cut down the Tree and ſplit it down the Middle, and ſo take out the Pith, and beat it in a Mortar with a wooden Peſtle, and then pouring Water to it, they ſtrain it through a Cloth, which carries all the Subſtance of the Pith through the Cloth, leaving nothing but a light husky Subſtance behind in the Bag; that which comes through the Cloth has a Settlement at the Bottom like Mud, which when the Water is drawn from it, is made into Cakes and baked, and proves what they call very good Bread.

THIS Sago is exported from *Mindanao* into other Parts of the *Indies*, in order to which they make it up in dry hard little Bits; it is reckon'd good againſt the Bloody Flux, it being a great Aſtringent if eaten with Milk and Almonds.

IN the Ground that is hilly, and fit for that Purpoſe, they plant Potatoes, Yams, and Pumpkins; they have alſo Melons, Plantains, Bonanoes, Guavoes, Jacks, Cocoa-Nuts, and Oranges.

Plantain deſcribed.

MR. *Dampier* cries up the Plantain above all other Fruit of that kind; perhaps by reaſon of his reſiding ſome time in the Country, it was become natural to him, for otherwiſe Travellers do not commonly give it that Character; the Tree on which it grows is about ten Foot high, and three Foot in Circumference, and is not raiſed from the Seed but from Slips and Suckers taken from the old Tree, which will bear in a Twelvemonth's time after they are tranſplanted into their native Soil, but it will be fifteen Months or more before they will bear if removed into other Ground; the Tree bears but once, for as ſoon as the firſt Fruit is ripe the Tree decays, but the young Shoots grow up yearly, and ſupply more Fruit, and die likewiſe. It has two Leaves at its firſt ſpringing out of the Ground, but when it is a Foot high, it has two more between theſe two, or a little lower, and in a ſhort Time it produces more Leaves, and ſo on, till by that Time it is a Month old the Stem or Body is near as big as a Man's Arm, and then the uppermoſt Leaves are about a Foot long, and half a Foot broad, and as the Tree grows higher, the Leaves are larger, and when it is full grown, the Leaves are ſeven or eight Foot long, and a Foot and a half broad at the Bottom, but towards the upper End they are ſmall, and end in a round Point

THE Stalk of the Leaf is almoſt as big as one's Arm, and about a Foot from the Body of the Tree to the Bottom of the Leaf; when it is full grown there ſprings out of the Top a ſtrong Stem harder than any other Part of the Body, about as thick and as long as a Man's Arm; the Fruit grows in Cluſters round it, in Cods about ſix or ſeven Inches long, and bigger than one's Wriſt; the Cod is yellow and ſoft when ripe, and the Fruit not much unlike a Bologna Sauſage for ſhape; the Pulp on the Inſide is ſweet, and ſofter than Butter, and of much the ſame Colour and Texture, melting in the Mouth, and has no Seed nor Stone in it; it will never thrive but in a rich Soil: They ſometimes roaſt it and boil it when it is green, and eat it inſtead of Bread; the *Engliſh* make Bread-Pudings with it, by taking the Pulp of five or ſix of them and boiling them in a Bag till 'tis enough, and ſo eat it. They often gather ripe Plantains, and dry them in the Sun and preſerve them, they make tolerable Sweet-meats: This Fruit is uſed for both Meat and Drink in the *Weſt Indies*; when they make drink of it, they take the Pulp of ten or a dozen ripe Plantains, and maſh them together in a Tub, into which they put about two Gallons of Water, and in two Hours time will work and have a Head like Barm or Yeaſt, and in four Hours it will be fit to drink; then they bottle it, but it will not keep much above twenty four Hours, ſo that they who depend upon this Drink muſt brew every Day; it drinks brisk and cool, but it is very windy, as the Fruit itſelf is when eaten raw, though when it is roaſted or boil'd it has no ill Effects. This Drink as it grows four in twenty four Hours, if it be ſet in the Sun it will make very good Vinegar.

Cloaths. But there is another Use of the Plantain-Tree, for it not only furnisheth them with Victuals and Drink, but Cloaths too; for as the Tree is rather a Weed than Timber, it never bears but once, and if it is let stand, after that it only decays of itself, and never revives more, but if as soon as they have gather'd the Fruit they cut the Tree close to the Ground, which may be done with one Blow of an Hatchet, (the out Rind of Wood is so thin,) then having pull'd off the Bark, they split the Body into four Quarters, which being dried two or three Days in the Sun, the Women divide it into small Threads with their Fingers, which Threads they spin up, and make into a sort of a Cloth, but it is very stubborn while it is new, and soon wears out; they make about seven Yards in a Piece; the Warp and Woof are both alike.

Bonano. The Bonano-Tree is much like the Plantain for Shape and Bigness, but the Fruit is not half so large; it is less luscious, and of a more delicate Taste, and is oftner used in making Drink than Plantains.

Cloves. Dampier tells us there are good Cloves at *Mindanao*, and in great abundance, and affirms that himself saw a Ship Load of Cloves there, and that the Natives assured him that if the *English* would settle a Factory there, they might bring home a Ship Load of Cloves every Year; there are also Nutmeg-Trees upon this Island, which is a fair large Fruit, but they dare not cultivate them, lest the *Dutch*, who have always a Mouth open for what is made ready to their Hand, should for the sake of their Improvements endeavour to make a Conquest of them, and reduce them to Slavery; for so covetous are the *Dutch*, that they not only monopolize to themselves all this sort of Commodity, as Cloves, Nutmegs and other Spices, but when themselves are served, they send their Mohawks in whole Gangs every Year to several uninhabited Islands thereabouts, to cut down and destroy all the Spice-Trees they can come at, lest any other *European* should fetch away any of the Spices to hinder their Market.

Beasts. They have almost all sorts of Beasts here, as Horses, Cows, Buffaloes, Deer, Goats, Hogs, Monkeys, Guanoes, Lizards, Snakes, and a vast Multitude of Wild-Hogs in the Woods, with great Bunches hanging over their Eyes; there are no Beasts of Prey, but several sorts of venomous Insects, as a Scorpion, whose Sting is in her Tail, and turns up in a Ring upon her Back; there is a Serpent or venomous Insect called a Centapes, from its many Feet; it is four or five Inches long, reddish on the Back, and the Belly whitish; they are flattish like a Leech, and about as big as a Goose's Quil, and are full of Feet; their Bite is reckon'd more dangerous than the Sting of a Scorpion; they are not amphibious, but breed in old Timber in the Ruin of old Houses, and among dry Timber and Rubbish; there are also several other kinds of Serpents and Snakes, some of whom are so tame that they will come into the Houses and aboard of the Ships, and that frequently without doing much harm.

The most common Fowls here are Ducks and Hens, but they have also wild Pigeons, Parrots, Parrakeets, Turtle-Doves, and abundance of small Birds, and also Batts as big as Kites.

CHAP. VI.

Treats of the Language, Mechanick Arts, Diseases, Religion, Women, and Superstition of the Mindanayans.

Language. They speak two Languages in the Island of *Mindanao*, one peculiar to the Island, and may be called the *Mindanayan* Language, and the other, called the *Malayan* Language, is common to all the *Oriental Islands*, and is spoke in several Countries on the Continent, as at *Malacca*, *Cambodia*, *Cochin-China*, &c. which by-the-by gives reason to believe that these Islands were first peopled from that Continent.

Schools. There are several Schools in the Island of *Mindanao*, where they teach their Children to write and read; and it is observable that most of their Words used in their Devotion are *Arabick*, and their Forms of Salutation are in the *Turkish* Language, from whence it looks like no false Inference to suppose they had their Religion from one, and their Morals or good Manners from the other; there are also several antient People of both Sexes that speak the *Spanish* Language, for the *Spaniards* formerly inhabited most of the Island, and made several Fortifications in it, but they were obliged to be drawn from hence to reinforce their Countrymen at *Manila*, when threatned with an Invasion from the *Chinese*; and as soon as the *Spaniards* embarked from *Mindanao* to assist their Countrymen at *Manila*, the then Sultan of *Mindanao* demolish'd their Forts, seiz'd their Guns, and sent the *Spanish* Missionaries to *Manila* after them; nor have the *Spaniards* ever since been allow'd to settle in that Part of *Mindanao*, which is immediately in Possession and under the Care of the Sultan.

No Accompts. They do not understand Accounts, but when they have to deal with Foreigners, both Parties leave their Accounts to be adjusted by *Chinese* that reside among them. They have no Clocks, but they have in the Mosques a great Gong or Drum with one Head, upon which they strike at certain Times; some say at every three Hours, but we are not told by what Instrument or other Means they divide their Hours, or know when an Hour is expired. No Clock

There are but few Handicrafts in this City; the chief are the Goldsmiths, Blacksmiths, and Carpenters; there are but two or three Goldsmiths, and they keep no Shops; but if you can meet with them they will make any little Toy in Gold that you will give them the Pattern of: The Blacksmiths are very ingenious, considering the small Tools and Conveniences they have; their Bellows is made of the Trunk of a Tree, about three Foot long, and when they have made it hollow like a Pump, they set it upright on the Ground, and make their Fire on the Top of it, near the lower End of the Tree or Pump; they bore a Hole in the Side of the Pump, in which they put a Pipe, and through this Pipe they drive the Wind to the Fire by a Bunch of Feathers fastned upon the end of a Stick; their good Fuel makes amends for their bad Bellows, for they burn mostly Charcoal; they have neither Vice nor Anvil, but hammer upon a great Stone, or he is well provided for that has got a Piece of an old Gun to beat upon instead of an Anvil, and yet one would admire, all these Inconveniences consider'd, to see what tolerably handsome Work they will make, both as to Ship Work and Utensils for the House; and as for Carpenters Work, almost every Man is Master for himself, for they can all handle Hammers, Adzes, and Axes, but

but they have no Saws, but ſplit their Planks, and plain them with Axes and Addſes; and although this is very tedious, and waſtes a great deal of Wood, yet it is in ſome meaſure accounted for by the Goodneſs of their Plank, which by this Means is cut according to the Grain of the Wood.

Diſeaſes. THEY are much afflicted with a Leproſy or dry Scurf, which ſpreads all over the Body, and creates an intolerable Itching in the Skin, which makes them ſcratch perpetually, which ſome of them do with that violence as to tear their Skin ſo that after it be whole again, there will remain great broad white Spots; and yet as troubleſome as it is, it either is not catching, or however, they that have it not, do not ſeem to avoid the Company of thoſe who have it; they have alſo Small Pox, Fevers, and Fluxes, the laſt of which is very dangerous, and occaſions great Pain and griping in the Bowels. The Country affords good Drugs and Medicinal Herbs, but the Natives underſtand not much of the Uſe of them.

Religion. THEIR Religion is that of *Mahomet*, but as theſe are but a few ſcattering Iſlands, we ſhall decline giving any Deſcription of that Religion here, and defer it till we come to the Deſcription of thoſe main Continents, where that is the prevailing Religion, and moſt generally practiſed.

THESE People allow of Plurality of Wives or Concubines, as other *Mahometans* do, and the Sultan allows himſelf about thirty, with which he ſpends moſt of his Time, but they are not kept up ſo ſtrictly as in *Turkey*, but ſuffer'd to walk the Streets at their Pleaſure, and converſe with Strangers.

THE Religion of the *Mahometans*, which forbids them to touch Hogs-Fleſh, is a good Protection to that ſort of Cattle, and by that means they multiply prodigiouſly in this Country, and come down into the very Towns from the Woods to ſeek for Food; their never killing them makes their Numbers increaſe, and makes them become more familiar, and the People dare not kill them for fear of being defiled with touching them, but the *Europeans* will do it for them for Sport, and make no bones of it; but the Natives are ſo ſtrictly ſuperſtitious, that they think that to touch any thing belonging to a Hog is defiling; an Inſtance of this we have in one of their Generals, who had a Pair of Shoes made him by one of the Ships Crew, which Shoes he liked very well, but upon a ſecond Conſideration finding that the Threads, with which they were ſew'd, had been pointed with Hogs Briſtles, which paſſing through every Hole in ſewing the Shoes together, had ſo defiled his Shoes that he would not wear them, but deſired his Workman to make him another Pair: They have ſuch an Antipathy againſt Hogs-Fleſh, that they will not ſuffer an *European* to come near them after he has touch'd Hogs-Fleſh, let his Buſineſs be of what Conſequence it will.

WHEN *Dampier* recites the Hiſtory of his being here, he obſerves that he had loſt a Day; indeed he could not really loſe a Day with making only this part of a Revolution round the Globe, but if when he by ſailing Weſt came to *Mindanao*, if he had there met with any that had ſail'd from *England* at the ſame Time that he did, they would have differ'd juſt a Day, but in this Caſe *Dampier* having ſail'd Weſt round ſo far, and the *Mahometans* which inhabited *Mindanao* coming from the Weſt, *Friday*, which was their Sabbath, was but *Thurſday* by *Dampier*'s reckoning, and upon this Account it is, that there is a Day's Difference between the *Spaniards* at *Manila* and the *Mahometans* at *Mindanao*, though both Places lie near the ſame Meridian, namely, becauſe thoſe *Spaniards* came Weſt from *Mexico* or *New Spain*, and the other came from the Eaſtern Continent.

THIS Difference will appear better, if we ſuppoſe three Perſons at the Land's-End of *England*, one ſailing Eaſt, the other Weſt round the World in the ſame Time, and the third to remain there till they both return, the two that went away would each of them differ a Day from him that ſtaid at home, and ſuppoſe when they arrive it is *Thurſday* the 10th of *Auguſt* at Noon by his Account that ſtaid at home, it will be *Wedneſday* the 9th of *Auguſt* to him that ſail'd Weſt about, and *Friday* the eleventh of *Auguſt* to him that ſail'd Eaſt.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Government, Revenues, and Forces of the Sultan of Mindanao, *and of their Wars, and Arms.*

THE Sultan of *Mindanao* is an arbitrary and powerful Prince, but has not found thoſe ways to enrich himſelf that ſome of the Eaſtern Princes have done. The *Hillaloons* are in Poſſeſſion of all the Gold Mines, and the Country affords little other Merchandize except Sago, Rice, Tobacco, and Bees-Wax, and this laſt comes alſo from the Woods and Mountains. The King expreſſes a mean Spirit in what Attempts he makes to enrich himſelf, for if he knows of any of his Subjects that have got Money by them, he immediately ſends to borrow it, and troubles not himſelf to make any return; this makes the People indolent, not caring whether they have any more than common Neceſſaries, as being aſſured that what they have over will be borrow'd, which is the ſame as being ſeiz'd by the King, if once it is found out.

WHEN he goes abroad he is carried on a Couch or open Palakin on four Men's Shoulders, attended by eight or ten of his Guards: When he goes upon the Water he carries his Women in the Barge with him, where there is an Apartment big enough to entertain fifty or ſixty People; this is built with ſplit Cane or Bambou about four Foot high, with little Windows in it, and the Roof is neatly cover'd with Palmeto Leaves; in this Apartment is three Rooms, one for the Sultan himſelf, having its Sides and Floor neatly matted, and he has a Carpet and Pillows to ſleep on; the next Room is for his Women, which is much like the former, and there is a third for Servants, who wait on them with *Betel* and Tobacco, for they are ever chewing *Betel* or ſmoaking Tobacco; the Head and Stern of the Veſſel is for the Watermen to ſit and row: Theſe Veſſels have Out-layers or Lee-boards, like the *Dutch*, and are made like *Engliſh* Veſſels, and not round on one Side and flat on the other, like thoſe of the *Ladrones Iſlands*.

THE Sultan has one grand Favourite Miniſter, in whom he repoſes his chief Confidence, both as to Civil and Military Affairs: Natives as well as Strangers muſt apply themſelves to him for a Permiſſion to trade, and this ſame Prime Miniſter is alſo General of all his Forces. When the Women

dance before him at any solemn Rejoicing, they make their Monarchs great Actions in the Field the Subject of their Song; and when any of the *Indian Princes* call in their Players to entertain Strangers, their Songs and Speeches are chiefly employ'd in expressing the Valour and Wisdom of their great Men, and particularly of those before whom they act; and something like this we have in sacred History, where the Women sung in their Dances, that Saul *had slain his Thousands, and David his ten Thousands.* The Sultan of *Mindanao* is seldom at War but with his Subjects the Mountaineers of the inland Country. Their Weapons are a Sword, and a Lance, and a Crice, which they wear in their Girdles both in Peace and War: This Crice is a short Dagger like a strait Trowel, broad at the Hilt and sharp at the Point, with two sharp Edges; the Hilt is much like the Prongs of a Pitchfork reversed, with the Points toward you, between which they clap their full Hand when they push, for that is mostly the Way of using them. They seldom come to a close Engagement, but if the Armies advance near one another, they begin to dig Entrenchments, throw up Redoubts, and disturb one another with their great Shot, and thus they will sometimes lie sculking for two or three Months, sending out small Parties, and skirmishing every Day; they seldom take Prisoners or give any Quarter, but will fight it out to the last, if they cannot gain their Point without it.

CHAP. VIII.

Gives an Account of the Situation and Extent of the Island Manila *or* Luconia, *and of their Buildings and Fortifications; with an Account of the Air, Winds, Earthquakes, Baths, Rivers, and Lakes in that Island.*

Manila. THE Island *Manila* or *Luconia* extends from about thirteen and a half to nineteen of North Latitude, and is somewhat like an Arm bended in the Elbow, or rather like a Boot, the Leg lying North and South, from the Northermost Part of the Island to *Manila* Town, and the Foot from thence to the Eastermost Part of the Island; it's breadth is unequal, being in some Places twenty, thirty, or forty Leagues over; that Part of the Island which is subject to the *Spaniards* is divided by them into eleven Provinces, every one of which has its *Spanish* Alcade or Governor; *Manila* is not only the chief Province, but the Capital of all the Island, and from that Capital it is that the whole Island takes the Name of *Manila*, and this City of *Manila* is the Seat of the *Spanish* Viceroy. The City of *Manila* stands on the Southwest Part of the Island; a little below or Southwest from it there is a spacious Harbour called *Cavite*, but the Entrance is difficult, by reason of the Rocks and Shoals that lie at the Mouth of the Bay; the City is about two Miles round, encompassed with a good Wall and a Ditch, and fortified with Bastions and Outworks; there is also a Fort stands on a Point of Land between the Sea and the River, and commands the Entrance of the River. Besides the Viceroy, there are two Alcades or Governors under him, one of whom has the immediate Command of the *Spaniards*, and the other of the *Chinese* and other Foreign Nations

Seat of the Viceroy.

Cathedral. ONE of the principal Buildings in *Manila* is the Cathedral, which is large, but not very well adorn'd within, the Walls being black and the Altars out of order; this Cathedral has twelve Chapels and Altars besides the high Altar; the Roof is supported by two Rows of Pillars, six in a Row on each Side, twelve in all; here are also several Convents and Religious Houses, Churches, Chapels, and Hospitals endow'd in the Church of *Misericordia*, dedicated to St. *Elizabeth* the Orphan, Daughters of *Spaniards* or *Mustees*, half *Spanish* half *Indians* are received, and have a Portion of three or four hundred Pieces of Eight paid for them, and if they chuse to be Nuns they have a yearly Allowance

Churches. suitable: The Insides of their Churches and Chapels are exceeding rich, that of St. *Austin*'s especially, which has fifteen well gilt Altars, some of them with Antipendiums of beaten Silver, but the Structures are mostly Wood, because of the Earthquakes: The College of Jesuits is very large, adorn'd with fine Arches, and has spacious Dormitories; this College is of the Invocation of St. *Ignatius*, and was founded upon the Arrival of the first Bishop of *Manila* 1581; adjoining to it is the College of St. *Joseph*, where are forty Collegians studying Humanity, Philosophy, and Divinity, for all Degrees are given in it; it has particular Revenues besides the King's Allowance; the Collegians are cloathed in Purple, and have red Cloth Gowns; the Graduates are distinguish'd by wearing a thing like a Collar of the same Cloth. *Habit.*

THE Streets are wide and handsome, having Galleries all along the Front of their Houses, but the Frequency of Earthquakes destroying what they build, dispirits them very much from building sumptuous handsome Houses, most of their Buildings above the first Floor being now only built slightly with Wood.

Mixt Inhabitants. THERE is a Medley of Inhabitants in *Manila* from *Spain*, *China*, *India*, &c. and every sort so numerous that they even contend among themselves who was the first Inhabitants, and though they have been mixed so many Years, yet they in a great measure retain their respective original Complexions of Black, White, and Tawny; it is computed there are about three thousand Souls in *Manila* within the Walls, and as many more without in the Liberty called the *Chinese* Suburbs, and besides this distinguish'd by the Name of the *Chinese* Suburbs, there are other large and numerous Buildings without the Walls, built on wooden Pillars near the Rivers Sides, like the Houses of *Siam*, and beyond these Suburbs on both Sides of the River are Country Houses, Farms, and Gardens, for a long Way into the Country, which makes the Prospect very agreeable.

Their Houses. THE wild sort of People that inhabit the Mountains live under the Shelter of the Trees, or if they think not that sufficient, they cut down the Trees, and make little Hutts; but these are but temporary Habitations, for they only live in them till they have eat up all the Fruits and Roots and what else is useful to them round about them and at a considerable Distance, and then they transplant themselves, and pitch in some more fruitful Place.

Air. THE Air of the *Philippines* is not so excessive hot as might be expected, considering the Latitude and Climate, and this is occasion'd by the many Lakes

and

and gliding Livers which water the Country, the Rivers by their gentle Motions creating a murmuring Breeze, which gently cools and refreſhes the Country, and to this we may add the great Rains which fall annually at their Seaſons, and overflow and cool all the low Lands; another Reaſon is, theſe being a certain Number of Iſlands, they are continually on one Side or another refreſh'd by Sea Breezes, and render the Heats much more tolerable than they would otherwiſe be, but the Damps occaſion'd by the Rain, and the heavy Dews that fall even in fair Weather, make the Country very unhealthy to *European* Conſtitutions, but the Natives here live to as great an Age as in other Climates of the World: It is common with *Europeans* at their coming here to ſweat after their Meals and when they are aſleep, and this brings a great Faintneſs or Weakneſs upon them, but they are leſs ſubject to it in the hilly and open Countries, whither the better ſort of People for that Reaſon retire, from the Middle of *March* to the End of *June*, which is the Time of their greateſt Heats; but in *June*, *July*, *Auguſt*, and part of *September*, the Weſt and Southweſt Winds blow, and bring ſuch Deluges of Rain that the Fields are all overflow'd, and they are forced to uſe Boats always in going from home. During this Time there are very frequent Storms and Tempeſts with terrible Thunder and Lightning: The North Winds blow from *October* to the Middle of *December*, and from thence till *May* the Eaſt and Southeaſt Winds blow; that is the drieſt as well as the cooleſt and moſt healthy time of the Year.

Monſoons.

Cauſe of Earthquakes.

" Theſe Iſlands are very ſubject to Earthquakes, " for which Mr. *Salmon* aſſigns as a Reaſon, the " Subterraneous Fires which give a violent Motion " to ſeveral Minerals, and having no room to di- " late and vent themſelves, puſh forward with great " Force againſt thoſe ſolid Bodies which ſurround " them, and are ſo ſhaken that the Motion is com- " municated to all that is over it, even to the Super- " ficies of the Earth, and this (he adds) is confirm'd " by Experience, which ſhews us, that thoſe Places " are moſt ſubject to Earthquakes which abound " moſt in Minerals and ſubterraneous Fires, as is " obſerved of *Campania*, *Calabria*, and *Sicily*, ſo fa- " mous for burning Mountains." *So far Mr.* Salmon.

I anſwer (ſo far with Mr. *Salmon*,) that ſubterraneous Fires is certainly the Cauſe of Earthquakes, which ſeems to be fully proved by Earthquakes being moſt frequent where Volcanoes and other ſubterraneous Fires are moſt common, but how theſe *ſubterraneous Fires ſhould give a violent Motion to ſeveral Minerals*, is difficult to account; 'tis true an artificial Exploſion made of common Gunpowder will ſplit prodigious ſtrong Rocks, but we do not find that the Nature of Powder or any denſe Air firſt confined, and afterwards infinitely expanded by Heat, ever inclines to a horizontal Motion, but upon the Exploſion it flies upwards, and not horizontally, as Mr. *Salmon* obſerves, where the *ſubterraneous Fires give a violent Motion to the Minerals, and they again puſh forward with great Force againſt the ſolid Bodies which ſurround them*, &c. which Motion muſt be horizontal by that way of thinking; but certainly if any Quantity of Air was ſo ſtrongly pent up in the Bowels of the Earth, and ſo near the Surface as to affect it with a Trembling or Earthquake, and if that confined Air was ſo ripe for Exploſion as to drive the ſolid Mineral Rocks horizontally, as above, the Surface of the Earth would much ſooner break above, and give it vent with a Violence proportionable to its Quantity and Confinement.

I do not find that in any Earthquakes there is any horizontal Motion, or any other but a Shrinking or Sinking directly downwards, but no ſhaking up and down, or horizontally, and this ſhrinking is cauſed by the ſubterraneous Fires above-mention'd, which are occaſion'd by Veins of Sulphur or other combuſtible Matter, being lodg'd within the Surface of the Earth, and at ſome conſiderable Depth, and theſe Veins taking Fire are conſumed or reduced to Aſhes, or to ſome Subſtance leſs capable of Reſiſtance than at firſt, and not being able to ſupport the Surface above, it muſt ſink or ſhrink, and this ſhrinking of the Surface and its breaking in, and ſometimes burying Houſes and People alive, with different Circumſtances, according to the different Cavities that the ſubterraneous Fires have made, is what we call an Earthquake, and (if the Compariſon be not too familiar) it cannot be better illuſtrated than by a Lime-Kiln, at the firſt filling of which they lay a great Quantity of Wood in the Bottom, and then fill it up with Coals and Stone to the Top, where it is firm and ſolid; but ſetting fire to the Wood below, it moulders away to Aſhes, no longer able to ſupport the Weight of the Stone above, the Stone ſhrinks down and tumbles together, and acts in every thing proportionable to an Earthquake.

THERE is one thing more in favour, or rather in confirmation of this Opinion, and that was an Obſervation I made in my Travels in *Italy*; the great Volcanoe *Veſuvius*, lying Southeaſt from *Naples*, and one either ſmaller or leſs known, lying towards the North-weſt from it, and I obſerved that theſe two Volcanoes could ſcarce ever be perceived to burn with equal Fury; but when the Wind was Southerly or Southeaſt, *Veſuvius* burnt the moſt violently, and the other when the Wind was North or North-weſt, (why the Weſtermoſt ſhould burn moſt is a Queſtion beſide our preſent Purpoſe,) from whence I concluded that there was a ſubterraneous Communication between them. *Old Naples*, or the ancient *Pharthenope*, was ſituate nearly between thoſe two Volcanoes, in the Bay of *Baya*, a little to the Weſtward of where *Naples* now ſtands; and by a dreadful Earthquake *Old Naples* with its Foundation, and the Hill whoſe ſide it ſtood upon, was buried ſo deep in the Sea, that an *Engliſh* Firſt Rate Man of War may now ride at Anchor where *Old Naples* once ſtood, and it could not have been poſſible that ſuch a vaſt Maſs of Earth could have ſunk without a proportionable Cavity to receive it, which Cavities I think it is moſt reaſonable to believe are occaſion'd by the ſubterraneous Fires above-mention'd.

IN the Iſland of *Manila*, which we are now treating of, there was a terrible Earthquake in *September* 1627, ſo violent that it level'd one of the *Carrallo Mountains*; and in the Year 1645 a third Part of the City of *Manila* was ſunk or overthrown, and no leſs than three thouſand People periſhed in the Ruins; another Earthquake not much leſs dreadful happen'd the Year following, and the old *Indians* give out that this Iſland of *Manila* was much more ſubject to Earthquakes than it is now, and this they aſſign as a Reaſon for their building their Houſes ſo ſlightly with Wood above the firſt Floor, the Loſs or Damage being leſs if they ſhould happen to be demoliſh'd by an Earthquake. The Burning Mountains in theſe Iſlands have all the ſame Properties that thoſe noted ones of *Italy* and *Sicily* have, as recorded by *Pliny*; they caſt out their Flames, ſhake the Earth, &c.

Hot Baths.

THERE are a great many hot Baths proceed from theſe ſubterraneous Fires, and ſome of their Brooks and Streams are ſo hot that no Animal can live ſcarce a Moment in them, but theſe Waters, tho' Mineral, are as clear and well taſted as any other, and when they are cool they are reckon'd wholſome Drink: about half a Mile from one of theſe hot Rivers is another exceſſive cold, and yet eſteem'd equally wholſome with the former for common drinking.

Bahia Lake.

THERE are ſeveral Lakes in this Iſland, but the Principal is that of *Bahia*, not far from *Manila*; it

is about ninety Leagues in Compass, and almost half as much in Length, being long but very narrow, and affords great Plenty of Fish; Crocodiles abound there very much, and do abundance of Mischief, devouring both Men and Cattle, which come near the Banks; there is another small Lake not far distant from this great one; it is upon a Mountain, and the Natives believe it has no Bottom, because they never could yet sound it to find the Depth of it; the Water is blackish, and has some sort of Fish in it, but they are so ill tasted they are not fit to be used; there is also a Spring of hot Water in the Mountains, which petrifies every thing living and dead, Animal or Vegetable, that falls into it.

The *Spanish* Fathers report, that when it thunders in these Islands, there falls a Thunderbolt in the shape of a Cross, being a kind of a greenish black Stone, to which they ascribe mighty Virtues; but there happens to be some honest People amongst them to detect the Fraud, who tell us that these Crosses are made by Art, and made use of by the Priests to impose upon the Credulity of the Ignorant. Thunderbolts like Crosses

CHAP. IX.

Of the several Nations that inhabit these Islands, their different Complexion, Stature, Make, and Habit; also of their Diet, Diversions, Salutations, and Ceremonies.

AMONGST the Inhabitants of these Islands may be reckon'd four or five different sorts of People: 1. the Blacks; these frequent the Woods and most Desart and inaccessible Places; 2. the *Chinese*, who once had the greatest Part of their Sea-Coasts and Places of Traffick; 3. the *Malayan Moors* or *Mahometans*, who came from *Malacca*, *Sumatra*, *Borneo*, *Macasser*, and the neighbouring Islands; 4. the *Portuguese*, *Spaniards* and other *European* People; and 5. the *Mustees* or mixt Breed, compounded of all the rest.

First Inhabitants.

The Opinions of Authors are various as to the Place from whence these Islands were first peopled, some affirming that their first Inhabitants came from *China*, the nearest Continent to these Islands, and what adds to the Probability of this Conjecture is, that these Islands were under the *Chinese* Government till the Emperor of *China* voluntarily deserted them, as being too remote from the rest of his Dominions, but, as we observed before, their retaining several Religious Rites and other Customs of the *Chinese*, is a strong Inducement to believe they had their Original from thence.

But we have some Authors of Opinion that the *Blacks* were the first Inhabitants of these Islands, because they are possess'd of all the Inland Parts of the Country, having probably been driven up to the Woods and Mountains by their succeeding Invaders, who having reduced the *Blacks* themselves, took possession of all the Sea-Coasts and trading Places, and became Masters of the whole.

But here is a grand Difficulty to account for, and that is, from whence these *Blacks* came to inhabit these Islands, and which way they came to them, Black not being the natural Complexion of these Islands; those of that Colour inhabiting there must have their Original from some where else, which a certain Author answers thus:

It is plain they could not descend from the *Blacks* in *Africa* for two Reasons, first, because the Country of *Africa* is so very remote from these Islands; and secondly, because the Hair and Features of the *Blacks* of *Africa* and of these Islands are quite different. The *African Blacks* have thick Lips, flat Noses, and short woolly Hair; and the *Blacks* of these Islands have regular well-proportion'd Features, and fine long black Hair, from whence the said Author concludes, that the *Blacks* that now inhabit these Islands came originally from *India* on this Side the *Ganges*, because they exactly resemble those *Indians* in their Hair and Features, and are the nearest them of any *Blacks* upon the Continent.

But against this it may be objected, if the *Philippine Islands* were first peopled from *India*, why did not the same *Indians* people *Siam* and *Malacca*, and the Islands of *Sumatra* and *Borneo*, which lies between them and the *Philippines*; but it may easily be answer'd, that as *Siam* and *Malacca* are upon the main Continent, and formerly a Part of the Empire of *China*, there was no Reason to think that the *Blacks* from *India* should ever attempt to inhabit these Places which were so populous before; it may rather be question'd how they got a Passage through that Country with so little Resistance, and with so little Opposition took possession of those Islands.

And here a very curious Observation occurs upon this Subject, *viz.* What is the original natural Cause of the various Features and Complexions that we meet with in the several different Climates of the World? as we see the *African Blacks* have flat Noses, thick Lips, and short woolly Hair; and these sort of *Blacks* are peculiar to the hottest Climates in *Africa*, and not to be found naturally any where else, or in such other Countries as have been peopled from thence; the only Nation of natural *Blacks* in the World beside, are those before mention'd in that Peninsula in *India* which lies on this Side the *Ganges*; these, though come from their native Place to inhabit the mountainous Parts of these Islands, are of as deep a Black as those in *Africa*, but their Features quite contrary, the *Indians* having very comely Features, though hid under such a black Complexion; their long black Hair adds to their Beauty, and indeed, except for the very Colour itself, an *African Black* is no more like an *Indian Black*, than a *European* is like either of them.

But as for the original Cause of this black Complexion, various have been the Conjectures of both Divines and Philosophers about it; some of the former have thought it the Effect of *Noah*'s Curse upon his Son *Cham*, whose Posterity they say inhabited *Africa*; but to this these Objections arise; first, it appears that *Canaan*, one of the Sons of *Cham*, possess'd the Land of *Canaan*, and we find no Reason from Scripture or History to believe that any of those people were black, any more than they are at this Day; secondly, the Inhabitants of the Coast of *Barbary*, which makes a considerable Part of *Africa*, and are supposed to be the Posterity of this curs'd Son, never were black; thirdly, the Inhabitants of *India*, who are supposed to be the Posterity of *Shem* the favourite Son, are quite as black as those of *Africa*, and therefore if this Blackness be the Effect of the Curse, *Shem*'s Offspring was as much curs'd as *Cham*'s was, and indeed it would be a very difficult Question to resolve, why black should be any more an Effect or a Token of

God's

God's Anger than any other Complexion; for my part I would willingly put that Article of God's Anger quite out of the Queſtion, and endeavour to aſſign more probable Reaſons for the different Complexions.

But as the *Blacks* in theſe Iſlands may rather be ſaid to be accidental than natural, a Diſcourſe of the Cauſe of the different Complexions of black and white, or of the quite different Features between ſome Country *Blacks* and others among themſelves, may not be ſo proper; we ſhall therefore defer any further Conjectures upon that Subject till we come to *India*, where black is the original native Colour, and in the mean Time, to avoid too long Digreſſions, ſhall purſue our Deſcription of thoſe Iſlands we are now treating of.

Some of the tawny Breed that inhabit theſe Iſlands, paint or ſtain their Bodies, from whence they are called *Pintadoes*; when they go about this painting Work, they prick and wound the Fleſh in ſuch Forms and Figures as they would have repreſented, and afterwards rub the Part over with a certain Powder, which gives it the Colour they deſire. And becauſe the Popiſh Miſſionaries cannot well finiſh their Accounts without ſomething miraculous, and even incredible, they give us account of a People with Tails; but the Thing being very improbable and ridiculous in itſelf, and the Credit of the Authors ſo ſuſpicious, as to be no way able to ſupport the Truth of the Fact, we ſhall quite ſuſpend our Belief of it till we have it from more credible Authors, and in the mean Time leave every Body to judge for themſelves.

The native Inhabitants of theſe Iſlands are of a middle Stature, well ſhap'd, and handſome Features, both Men and Women, both black and white; ſome affect wearing their Hair long, ſome cut it to a moderate Length; the *Mahometans* wear but one Lock upon their Heads, and ſhave all the reſt cloſe; inſtead of a Cap they have a Cloth, which they tie about their Heads, letting the Ends hang down behind as an Ornament; the Women tie up their Hair in a Roll upon the hinder Part of their Heads, adorning it with Jewels, or what elſe they can afford, to make a ſplendid Show; they wear alſo Necklaces and Ear-rings, and have Bracelets both upon their Arms and Legs, and Rings on their Fingers; the more Civilized wear a kind of a Waiſtcoat, and a Cloth about them, which reaches below their Knees, but the *Blacks*, and thoſe that live in the Mountains, have only a Cloth about their Loins, and the meaner Sort are generally without Shoes or Stockings. The *Chineſe*, *Spaniards*, and *Maſſacs* retain each their own reſpective Faſhions.

Those who are the moſt ſociable of them, and live near the Sea-Coaſt, ſit upon their Legs like other *Indians*, both at Victuals and in Converſation; their moſt common Food is boil'd Rice and Fiſh, Fleſh being a Rarity, and ſeldom eat but at Feſtivals; their uſual Liquor is Water, which they drink hot, but they have ſome ſorts of ſtrong Liquor made of Palm, Wine, and Toddy, which they draw from the Palm and Cocoa-Trees, from a Compoſition of which they diſtil a Liquor ſomewhat like Brandy or Arrack; they have alſo a Liquor called *Chiham*, which is made of the Juice of the Sugar-Cane boil'd. Their Arrack is diſtill'd from Rice.

The wilder Sort which inhabit the Mountains, live chiefly on Roots and Fruit, having little Fleſh but that of Wild-Beaſts, which they take in hunting; they eat ſeveral ſorts of Vermin, but do not at all apply themſelves to the Sowing of Rice, or any other kind of Husbandry, and probably no fault of their own, for, as the Reader may obſerve through all the Courſe of this Hiſtory, where we had occaſion to treat upon the growing of Rice, it never thrives but in low wet marſhy Ground, and theſe Mountaineers being confin'd to the high dry Land, it would be in vain for them to attempt to ſow any Rice there. Thoſe of the *Spaniards* that are reckon'd good Houſekeepers, frequently eat Fleſh at Noon, and Fiſh at Night.

The more civilized Natives who inhabit near the Sea-Coaſt have Variety of Diverſions, as Plays, Muſick, Dancing and Singing, and in their Songs one ſings a Verſe, and another repeats it, attending to the Sound and Time of a Gong or metal Drum; their dancing repreſents a Fight, and all their Actions and Motions therein are very regular; ſometimes they aſſault each other with a Spear, and then retire very graceful: 'tis ſaid by thoſe that ſay they underſtand them, that their Compoſitions are very elegant; but as theſe are not to be compoſed, perform'd, or perhaps underſtood by the Vulgar, their chief Diverſion is Cock-Fighting. Diverſions. Cock-Fighting.

They ſeldom neglect to bathe both Morning and Evening, and this is ſuppoſed to be a Reaſon why they build their Houſes ſo near the River Side; Bathing is thought ſo eſſential to their Health, that even lying-in Women and new-born Children are dipt in the cold Water, and never find any Inconvenience attend it. Both Sexes ſmoak much Tobacco, and chew *Betel* and *Arrek*. Bathing.

Their way of ſaluting formerly was by pulling off the Cloth that was wrapp'd round their Head, but whether what they uſe now be a more polite Way, derived from the *Spaniards*, or ſome Improvement of their own, we know not, but in ſaluting they now bow the Body, and bend the Knee, and when they would pay a profound Reſpect, it is diſtinguiſh'd by joining both Hands together, and lifting them to their Head. Saluting.

They commonly in any Addreſs or Application to Superiors ſpeak in the third Perſon, that when a Perſon wants to petition for a Favour, he does not ſay *I humbly crave*, but *he humbly craves*, and the like; in the plural Number, where two or more are concern'd in the Addreſs or Requeſt, they do not ſay *we*, but *they*, modeſtly repreſenting the Petitioners as abſent, though preſent and ſpeaking; but the Inferior never ſpeaks firſt, but when introduced, waits to receive ſuch Queſtions as ſhall be propoſed to him, and delivers his Addreſs when required or commanded to do it. Addreſs.

These *Philippine Iſlands*, eſpecially *Manila*, is ſo well ſituated between the Riches of the Eaſt and Weſt, that it was reckon'd the beſt Place for Trade in the whole World, when that and the *Moluccа's* were both under the ſame Government, to wit, the *Spaniards*, for then the *Spaniards* might be ſaid to have the beſt Share of both Eaſt and Weſt *Indies*; Silver was then brought Weſtward to *Manila*, from *Peru* and *New Spain*; Diamonds and other precious Stones from *Golconda*, a Kingdom in *India*, on this Side the *Ganges*, Cinnamon from the Iſland of *Ceylon*, near the South Part of the Coaſt of *Cormandel*, Pepper from *Sumatra* and *Java*, (which Iſlands will be deſcribed by and by,) Cloves and Nutmegs from the *Moluccа's*, Silk from *Bengall*, Camphire from *Borneo*, Benjamin and Ivory from *Cambogia*, Silk and *China* Ware from *China*; this Place might then be called the Center of Trade and Mart of the World; there came formerly every Year two or three Ships from *Japan*, freighted with Silver, Amber, Silks, Cabinets, and other varniſh'd Wares, in exchange for Hides, Wax, and the Fruits of the Country; two Veſſels ſail'd yearly to *Acapulco* in *New Spain*, loaded with the Riches of the Eaſt, and return'd freighted with Silver, making four hundred *per Cent.* Profit, and this Trade they carry on at this Day. *Manila* is a fruitful Soil, and produces the Neceſſaries of Life in a ſufficient Plenty, as appears by the Multitude of its Inhabitants that *Manila* well ſituated for Trade.

are to be found in the Woods and Mountains, ſubſiſted only by the Fruits of the Earth and the Veniſon they take; and for a beautiful and delectable Proſpect it can ſcarce be excell'd, for there is a perpetual Verdure all the Year round; Buds, Bloſſoms, and Fruits are always to be found upon the Trees, as well upon the Mountains as in the Gardens and other cultivated Grounds.

But beſides theſe Excellencies of the *Philippine Iſlands*, they alſo abound in Pearls, Ambergreaſe, Cotton and Civet, and are very rich in Gold Mines, but they are ſeldom wrought, either becauſe the Mountaineers keep them ſo cloſely in Poſſeſſion that they will not let the *Spaniards* work them, or becauſe of the Indolence of the *Spaniards*, who will not be at that Pains; but I rather think the former, and that the Mountaineers repulſe the *Spaniards*, and will not ſuffer them to dig the Gold out of the Mountains, though the great Plenty of it is evident from the vaſt Quantities of Gold that are waſh'd down the Hills by the Rains, and after the Floods are over, is found mixt with the Sand of the Rivers; beſides Gold there are rich Mines of ſeveral other Metals found here, and excellent Loadſtones.

Buffaloes. Here are ſuch Numbers of Wild Buffaloes in theſe Iſlands, that a Sportſman that underſtands the hunting of them, and only arm'd with a Spear, may kill ten or twenty in a Day; the *Spaniards* take them, and uſe only their Skins, which they ſell to the *Chineſe*, but the Mountaineers uſe the Carcaſſes for Food; there is abundance of Deer in their Woods, as alſo of Hogs, but eſpecially Goats, which abounded ſo in one of theſe Iſlands that the *Spaniards* gave it the Name of *Cabras*; they have alſo imported Horſes and Cows from *New Spain*, *China*, and *Japan*, and they multiply conſiderably; but the Sheep they import comes to nothing, 'tis ſuppoſed, becauſe they are not able to bear the Heat and Moiſture of the Climate.

Wax and Honey. They have ſuch abundance of Honey-Combs, that Bees-Wax is exceſſive cheap; the Natives have the way of making Candles of it, and do not uſe Lamps, as in ſome other Parts of *Aſia*. They have ſeveral ſorts of Bees that produce Honey, one ſort is called *Pocoytan*; they are bigger than our *Engliſh* Bees, and make their Combs not leſs than four Spans long, and of Breadth proportionable; theſe they fix under the Boughs of high Trees, ſometimes ſix or ſeven together, and they continue whole during the heavy Rains; there is another ſort called *Liquam*, about the Bigneſs of *Engliſh* Bees; they make their Neſts and fix their Combs in old hollow Trees; there is another ſort of a Bee, no bigger than a Fly, called *Locot*; it has no Sting, it makes ſour Honey and black Wax, it is a thieving Bee, and plunders others; there is another ſort called *Camomo*, which, like thoſe called *Pocoytan*, ſettle in high Trees: Doubtleſs the Spicineſs of the Soil and Product of thoſe Iſlands contributes to the Production of theſe various ſorts of Bees.

Gums. The Trunks of their Trees put out ſeveral ſorts of Gums all the Year; there is one the moſt common kind called *Brea*, they uſe it inſtead of Pitch; there are ſeveral other ſorts for various uſes, ſome odoriferous, ſome medicinal, and ſome for other uſes; theſe Gums are ſo vaſtly Plenty, that not only the Trees, but the Ground is cover'd with them, and it falls ſo plentifully from the Trees at ſome Seaſons, that it is found upon the Leaves of the Plants under them.

There are Monkeys and Baboons in theſe Iſlands of ſo monſtrous a Size, that it is ſaid they will defend themſelves againſt Men if attack'd by them; ſome of them go upon two Feet, they ſometimes live upon Fruit, and what the Mountains produce, but when that fails, or they are weary of it, they have recourſe to the Sea-ſide, to catch Crabs and Oyſters, and when they open an Oyſter they are ſo wary, leſt the Oyſter ſhould cloſe and catch their Paw, that they always take care to have a little Stone ready to clap in to prevent its ſhutting cloſe till they can fetch a better Purchaſe, and ſo get the Oyſter out, and ſave their Paws; when they would catch a Crab, they thruſt their Tails into the Hole where the Crabs lie, and ſo provoke them till ſome or other of the Crabs lays hold of it with his pinching Claws, which the Monkey feeling, pulls the Crab out of the Hole, and ſeizes him for his intended Prey. There are great Numbers of Civet-Cats, which abound ſo in Civet that if it is not taken away every Month, it makes them ſo uneaſy by the Heat that it occaſions, that they tumble themſelves about upon the Ground till the Bladder breaks, and then they get immediate eaſe. There is alſo found in theſe Iſlands a Cat of a Fox's Colour, having Wings like a Batt, by the help of which they will leap from one Tree to another, though above ſeven Yards diſtance. There is alſo in the Iſland of *Leyte* an Animal like a Mouſe, only its Head is twice as big as all the Body.

Cunning of Baboons getting out an Oyſter. Their cunning in catching Crabs.

Large Serpents. Here are Serpents of a prodigious Bigneſs, one ſort is called *Ibitin*; this Serpent can hang himſelf by the Tail on the Arm of a great Tree, and draw in a Deer, a Wild-Boar, or even a Man, into his Mouth, and ſwallow him whole; after which he winds himſelf about the Tree till he digeſts his Prey; there is another ſort of a Snake called *Aſangua*, which eats nothing but Hens, and another called *Olopong*, exceeding venomous; but the biggeſt Sort is called *Boles*, which is twenty or thirty Spans long; there is alſo another Creature which devours Poultry; it is called *Iguana*; it is like an Alligator, the Skin Purple ſpeckled with yellow Spots, the Tongue cloven, but the Feet cloſe, having Claws; though it is a Land Creature, it paſſes very ſwiftly over the Rivers; the *Indians* and ſome of the *Spaniards* eat it, and ſay the Fleſh taſtes much like that of a Tortoiſe.

Croco-diles. Of the Crocodiles of theſe Iſlands they give us the following ſurprizing Account, *viz.* That the Females bring ſometimes fifty at a Time, and that the Rivers and Lakes would ſoon be full of them, to the great Detriment of Mankind, if they did not deſtroy their own Brood; theſe Crocodiles have no Paſſage for Excrements, but vomit up what remains upon the Stomach after Digeſtion; by this means the Meat remains upon the Stomach a long Time, and the Creature is not hungry every Day, which if they were, it would require an infinite Number of Men, Beaſts, *&c.* to ſupply them; there have been ſome of them taken and open'd, and in them have been found Mens Bones and Skulls, and Stones, which laſt the *Indians* ſay they eat to pave their Stomachs; the Female lays her Eggs out of the Water, that they may hatch; they are white, and as hard as a Stone, and about twice as big as a Gooſe's Egg; the Yolk is but ſmall, like that of a Tortoiſe's Egg; not only the *Indians*, but the *Spaniards* too, will eat the young Crocodiles.

Alligators. There are Alligators which ſome call another ſort of a Crocodile; they are moſtly found in the Lakes: The Difference between them and the above-mention'd Crocodiles is, the Alligators have no Tongue, and for want of it can make no Noiſe, or ſwallow in the Water, and therefore they eat their Prey upon the Banks. There are abundance of Sea-Horſes and large Whales in the Seas of *Mindanao* and *Xolo*; the Horſes are much like thoſe on the Shore, but have no Feet or Tails.

Sea-Horſe.

Tortoiſes. There are found in theſe Seas two ſorts of Tortoiſes, the great ones are eatable, and the Fleſh taſtes like Beef, but the Shell is of no uſe; the leſſer is only valuable for the Shell, the Fleſh being of no uſe.

But there is one thing ſo very extraordinary, that it is almoſt beyond the reach of Credit, and

I think we cannot do juſtice to the Relation without giving up our Author, that the Reader may judge of his Integrity as well as we: it is the Popiſh Miſſionaries that give us Account, that in ſome of the *Philippine Iſlands* there are Trees whoſe Leaves become living Creatures, with Wings, Feet, and Tails, but remain after this Metamorphoſis of the ſame Colour and Shape with the other Leaves; but, by our Author's Leave, it is difficult to underſtand how any Thing can retain the ſame Shape, after it has undergone a Metamorphoſis, that it had before, or whether a Fowl that has Wings, Feet, and Tail can be ſaid to be of the ſame Shape with the Leaf of a Tree that has no ſuch thing; the Colour indeed it may retain, but we ſee how cautious we had need to be in believing what is reported by theſe Wonder-makers, except confirm'd to us by Perſons of better Credit; ſome that are not ſo biggotted to Popiſh Miracles, more probably conjecture, that theſe Creatures proceed from a Worm which may be dropt in theſe Leaves by ſome Inſect or living Cereature, and there hatch'd by the heat of the Sun.

Leaves produce live Birds.

HERE are ſeveral ſorts of Parrots; there is alſo a *Cocato*, larger than a Parrot, with a Tuft of Feathers on his Head. The *Spaniards* try'd an Experiment to carry ſome Turkeys to the *Philippine Iſlands*, but they could not keep them alive; but there is a Hen called *Camboxa* natural to the Country, whoſe Legs are ſo ſhort that their Wings trail upon the Ground; they have alſo a ſort of Fowl called *Xolo*, which hath long Legs, and eats like a Turkey; they have a ſort of a Hen whoſe Fleſh and Bones are black, but the Meat is well taſted; they have great Plenty of Fiſh, particularly one which the *Spaniards* call *Perimuger*, or *Woman's Fiſh*, it having Breaſts and Private Parts like a Woman; ſometimes by chance they ſee a large Sword-Fiſh in theſe Seas, of fifteen Foot long, but they are not very common.

Woman-Fiſh.

Sword-Fiſh.

THERE is a black Sea-Fowl called *Tavan*, ſomething leſs than a Hen, but has a long Neck; this Bird lays her Eggs in the Sea Sand, forty or fifty in a Trench, and then covers them, and the heat of the Sand hatches them; their Eggs are as large as the Eggs of Geeſe, but they have very little white in them; when the Chickens are hatch'd, the Yolk appears whole and ſweet, and the *Spaniards* frequently eat the Chickens and the Yolk of the Egg together in the ſame Diſh; the Chickens feed upon the Yolk till they have Strength to work their way through out of the Sand, and then the Hen, who keeps near them, calls them out; when people go to ſeek theſe Neſts, they go along the Shore, and where they find the Sand to have been thrown up or open'd, they open it again, and ſometimes find Eggs and ſometimes Chickens, either of which they will take away, and uſe for Food. There are alſo a ſort of Turtle-Doves, grey on the Back, and white on the Breaſt, and in the Middle of that white there is a red Spot like a Wound, with freſh Blood upon it. There is alſo a Bird called *Colin*, black and aſh colour'd, as big as a Black-bird; it has no Feathers upon it's Head, but only a Crown of Fleſh. Here is alſo the *Saligan*, which builds her Neſt in the Sides of Rocks, as the Swallow does againſt the Wall; theſe are the Birds-Neſts that are applied to ſo many Uſes: (*See the Deſcription of* Cochin-China, *towards the Beginning.*) The Green-bird, called *Herrero*, is as big as a Hen, and has a Beak ſo hard and ſo ſtrong that ſhe can make a Hole in the Body of a Tree to build her Neſt in, and from the Noiſe it makes with picking this Hole, the *Spaniards* call it *Herrero*, or the *Carpenter*. There is another Bird called *Colo-Colo*, black and almoſt as big as an Eagle, ſaid to be half Fiſh half Bird; it flies, but preys chiefly upon Fiſh; here are no Pheaſants nor Partridges, but there are Heath-cocks, which are very good Food, and Quails about half as big as ours, with red Beaks and Feet, and in all theſe Iſlands there are the Green-birds called *Volanoes*.

Tavan.

Doves.

Colin.

Saligan.

Herrero

Colo colo

Quails.

THERE is a Fruit called Santer, which the *Spaniards* put a great Value upon; it grows wild in the Woods; the Fruit is in Bigneſs, Shape, and Colour like a ripe Peach; it has five Kernels, like the Seeds of an Orange: the *Spaniards* preſerve it as they do Quinces, and it is good pickled with Vinegar when about half ripe; the Tree is like a Walnut, with large Leaves, which they uſe in ſome Caſes as a Medicine: They have another Fruit called Magol, it is ſomewhat bigger and downy, like a Peach, but about the Colour of an Orange, but it is not well taſted, nor eaſily digeſted; the Tree is as tall as a Pear-Tree, and has thick Boughs and large Leaves, like Laurel; the Wood is little inferior to Ebony; they have alſo Mangoes, Durions, and moſt other *Indian* Fruit; they have no Olives, but there is a Fruit called Paxo's, which differ but little from them; they have Oranges of ſeveral kinds, bigger than thoſe of *Europe*; they have Lemons both large and ſmall, but they are generally ſweet: there are ſeveral ſorts of Fruits brought hither from *New Spain*; but the Trees which produce them the moſt Profit are, their Palm-Trees; it is thoſe that enrich the Eſtates in the *Philippine Iſlands*, and of theſe they enumerate about forty various Sorts; but amongſt them all the Sago is the Principal, (*of which, to avoid Repetitions, ſee the Deſcription and Uſe in Chap.* V. *beforegoing*,) a ſecond Sort of Palm-Trees are thoſe that yield Wine, but they may rather be called Shrubs than Trees; they are commonly found in Salt Water Marſhes; the Fruit is like the Date, but they never ſuffer it to come to Perfection, becauſe they cut off the Boughs as ſoon as it bloſſoms, to let the Liquor run into the Veſſels which they place under the cut Branches for that Purpoſe; the Leaves of thoſe Trees, woven with ſmall Cane, ſerve to cover the Roofs of the Houſes. They make Vinegar of the Palm and Cocoa Wine when it grows ſtale, and draw an Oil alſo from the Cocoa Nut. There is another ſort of a Palm called Yonola, which produceth a kind of Wool, which ſerves them to ſtuff Quilts and Pillows withal; it alſo furniſheth them with a ſort of a black Thread, of which they make Cables for Ships; its Flakes or Threads are like thoſe of Hemp for Length and Thickneſs, and when ſpun and made into Ropes, will laſt longer in the Sea-Water than being kept dry. They have divers other Uſes for the Leaves of the Palms, beſides covering their Houſes, for they make Hats, Mats for Rooms, and Sails for their Ships, beſides ſeveral other Ways they have of making them up into Baskets and other things uſeful about their Houſes.

Quails.

Santer.

Magol.

Mangoes

Durions.

Oranges

Palm

THEY have Tamarinds or Sampalo's growing wild in Cods like Green-Peaſe; they have a ſharp Taſte, and are commonly preſerved with Sugar; they are reckon'd extraordinary uſeful for allaying the Heat and Thirſt in Fevers; the Tree is tall and thick, with ſmall Leaves; the Wood is much like Ebony, and ſerves for the ſame Uſes.

Tamarind.

THERE is alſo Caſſia grows in theſe Iſlands, the Tree is not ſo thick as the Tamarind, but the Branches much bigger; the Leaves are bigger than thoſe of the Pear-Tree, and of a beautiful Green, and being boil'd with the Bloſſoms, in the Nature of a Conſerve, it has the ſame Effect as the Fruit, and more palatable, alſo the young Fruit made into a Conſerve is a good Laxative; there is ſuch vaſt Plenty of Caſſia in the mountainous Part of *Mindanao*, that in *May* and *June* they fat their Hogs with it.

Caſſia.

THE Mountains produce very good Timber of all ſorts, fit for building either Ships or Houſes; they

Timber.

They have very good Black Ebony, and a Tree call'd the *Red Blayong*. There is the *Calambac*, which has an Aromatick Bark, also divers sorts of Wood for Dying; which cannot be cut without a Saw and Water, as we cut Marble, it is so hard; for which Reason the *Portugueſe* call it *Ferro*, or the Iron-Tree. There are in the Island of *Manila* abundance of Nutmeg-Trees, but they are but of a Bastard Kind, and the Fruit is seldom made use of.

The Cacao Plant which was brought hither from *New-Spain*, is so improved and increased, that they have no occasion to import any more of it from *America*. They have some Cinnamon, but much inferior to that at *Ceylon*, the Tree called *Amet*, or the Water-Tree, so called because when the Natives want water they need but cut a hole in that Tree, and a great Quantity of Water issues out. There is also a Kind of a Cane which the *Spaniards* call *Vaxuco*, which if cut, yields a Quantity of Water sufficient for a Man to drink at a Time; and this Reed is most Plenty in the Mountains where Water is most wanted. This Reed creeps up the Trees, and winds about them like Ivy; but some of it is so straight, they make Pikes and Halberds of it, and with such is the Royal Armoury at *Manila* furnish'd. Plantains are very Plenty here, with Leaves so long and so broad that two of them would be almost sufficient to make a Man a Cloak. The *Indians* Plant them about their Houses, for the Benefit of having the Leaves to use instead of Napkins, Plates, and the like; and the Leaves, as they grow, serve for Shelter from the scorching Heat of the Sun: They sometimes make Vinegar of the Fruit; the best Sort of them are called *Tundques*, which are a Span and a half long, and as thick as a Man's Arm: These roasted, and eat with Wine and Cinnamon, they reckon a delicious Dish. There are other Sorts of Plantains, of which those called *Dedoes de Dama*, or *Lady's Fingers*, are the best, and grow so Plenty that a Hundred, or sometimes two Hundred of them hang by a Twig, which weighs so heavy upon the Trees that they are forced to prop them up.

Water-Tree.

Water-Cane.

Plantain.

Potatoes are very Plenty, and much used both by the *Indians* and the *Spaniards*; and there are several Kinds of them: The *Camotes* are like great Radishes; they smell and taste very pleasant. The *Glabis* are like Pine-apple Nuts, and when boil'd the *Indians* use them instead of Bread, and the *Spaniards* instead of Turneps. The *Ubis* is as big as a Pompion, and the Plant like Ivy. It would be tedious to the Reader to give a Detail of all the Roots growing in these Islands, and made use of by the Inhabitants as Food: Here are Garlick, Onions and Pine-apples, called by the *Portugueſe*, Anana's; they are reckoned one of the finest Fruits of the East, and are found here. Here is also Plenty of Tobacco, Sugar-Canes, Ginger, Indico, *&c.* also great Plenty of all Manner of Odoriferous Herbs and Flowers, which are peculiar to the Place, and grow naturally without any cultivating; which plentiful natural Growth of these most useful Things, makes their Gardens be very much neglected. There is a Flower called *Zamaga*, which is one of the finest the Place produces; it is like a little White Rose, with three Rows of Leaves, and much excells the Jessamin in Smell. The Fields abound with the *Dasa*; it has an Aromatick Root. The *Tala* is also an Odoriferous Herb, very Fragrant.

Many Sorts of Potatoes.

Tobacco

Medicinal Herbs also abound here; for besides Sage, St. Mary's-Wort, Baulm, Houseleek, and others known to us, they have many peculiar to the Country. There is an Herb like Purslain called *Del Pollo*, grows very common, they give it that Name because by proper Application, it in a short Time cures any Wound their Game Cocks receive. The Herb *Pausipan* is taller, with a white Flower like a Bean-Blossom, which being pounded and laid on a Wound, draws out any Poison or Corruption, and cleanseth the Wound. There is the Herb *Del Sapo*, and others of great Virtue in *Mindanao* and *Xolo*, some of which the Natives use as the *Turks* do Opium, to stupify them, and suspend the use of their Reason, and make them void of Fear when they engage an Enemy. There are also Accounts of Wonders done by Herbs, but they smell so strong of the Popish Missionaries, that I look upon it as best not to relate them, lest the Credulous should believe them.

Medi... inal Herbs

But after all these Excellencies and Varieties which these Islands afford, we must not forget that the Heat and Moisture of these Islands cause them to produce Abundance of venomous Creatures, as the Soil does poisonous Herbs and Flowers, which not only kill those that touch or taste them, but so infect the Air, that many People die in the Time of their Blossoming; but those Places are as well furnished with Antidotes against these dangerous Poisons, particularly the Bezoar-stone, which is found in the Belly of a Creature much like a Deer; also the Root *Dilao*, which is like Ginger, heals Wounds made by any venomous Beast, being bruised and boil'd with Oil of Cocoas.

Veno... mous C... atures... poiso... Quali...

The Orange and the Lemon Tree, and several others, bear twice a Year; or if they plant a Sprig it will become a Tree, and bear Fruit in a Year's Time.

Was we to affect relating Things so miraculous as to appear incredible, we might tell our Readers of a Kind of a Nut or Kernel, that Cures as many Distempers as a Quack or Mountebank can name, under the Pretence of being cured by some of his Grand Specificks; especially, they say, it is such an Antidote against Poison, that it not only preserves him that carries it about him from being poisoned, but destroys him that was designed to poison the Person so wearing it: But these coming from no better Authority than the Popish Missionaries, we must suspend our Belief of them till we have them better attested. However, from what hath been said from the most unquestioned Authority, and the Report of Men of the most undoubted Integrity, that have been upon the Spot, the perpetual Verdure and Spring of some of those Islands, the Bud, Blossoms and Fruits being found all the Year, not only upon the Trees in the Gardens, but in the uncultivated Ground; the Woods being so full of Trees, not only the hardest of Wood for curious and particular Work, but their Plenty of common Timber of all proper Sizes, for Building either Ships or Houses, besides such prodigious Numbers of Trees, whose Fruit yield Nourishment and Sustenance for the Inhabitants, it is much to be questioned whether we shall meet with any Place in all Respects equal to some of the *Philippine Islands*, in all the rest of our Travels upon the Terrestrial Globe.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Gives Account of the Language, Government and Forces, of the several Nations which now inhabit the Philippine Islands.

Language. THE Language most commonly spoke in the *Philippines*, and the rest of the *Oriental Islands*, within or beyond the Straits of *Malacca*, is the *Malayan* Language; the *Spanish* and *Chinese* Colonies retain their own Language, as do the *Indian* Blacks theirs of *Malabar* or *Jentoo*, spoke in the Peninsula from whence they came: Nor do we hear of any Writing amongst the Mountaineers, but the Tawnies that live upon the Plains near the Sea Coasts write upon Paper if they can have it, or if that is not to be had, they write upon large Cocoa Leaves, or sometimes with an Iron Pencil on the smooth Part of the Cane. In their writing they begin at the bottom Corner on the Left-hand, and carry the first Line up the Left-hand side of the Page to the top, and so begin at the bottom again, and proceed up, till the Page be full.

Writing.

No Mechanicks. THE Natives of those Islands are no Mechanicks, nor do they understand Numbers like the *Chinese*, but in that Suburb or Out-part of the Town of *Manila* where the *Chinese* live, are almost all Sorts of Workmen to be found, and Trades exercised by the *Chinese*, the *Spaniards* or *Indians* seldom applying themselves to any Handicraft Business but when they cannot help it, which makes them poor Proficients. The Natives are so ignorant of the natural Cause of an Eclipse, that when any happens, they beat upon their Drums and Brazen Vessels, and make all the Noise they can, as some other of the ignorant *Asiaticks* do, thinking thereby to frighten away the Dragon which they think is going to devour the Sun or Moon.

Government. THE Civil Government of these Islands is in the Hand of a *Spanish* Viceroy or Captain-General, who keeps his Court or chief Residence at *Manila*: This is a very profitable Post, only the Benefit of it could not induce every body to go so far from their native Country as from *Spain* to the *Philippines* for the sake of it. The Viceroy has two and twenty Alcades under him, those are Governors of Towns and Provinces, two of them reside in the City of *Manila*, one of whom have the Government of the *Europeans*, the other of the *Asiaticks*. There is also a Tribunal of three or four Judges, wherein the Viceroy presides, but has no Voice, not even if the Opinion be equally divided; but when it so happens, he appoints some Doctor to give the casting Voice.

THE Viceroy has no Power to turn out those Judges or Solicitors for the Crown; their Places are during Life, but all military Employments and Preferments are in his disposing, as are also the Places of the Alcades or Governors of Provinces; he has also the choosing of the Captains of the Galleons which sail every Year to *New Spain*, which Post alone is worth Fifty thousand Crowns a Year. He has a Garrison of about eight hundred Soldiers in *Manila*, and three or four hundred more in other Parts of the Country: Their Pay is two Pieces of Eight, and fifty Pound of Rice a Month for every Man.

WHEN there are supposed any Reasons for recalling a Viceroy or Captain-General, or whether there are Reasons or not, if it is thought fit to be done, Proclamation is made for all Persons to come and exhibit their Complaints against him for sixty Days, the intended Successor sitting as Judge through all the Tryal, who having his own Preferment in View, and no body called in to speak of the old one but only Complainants, it is easy to see how the Matter will terminate, which is commonly in the Disgrace of the old Captain-General, who is thereupon sent back to *Spain* with an Account of his Conduct, and of what has been alledged against him.

THE Ecclesiastical Government is in the Hand of an Archbishop, chosen by the King, and also some Suffragan Bishops: The Archbishop resides at *Manila*, and determines all Appeals from his Suffragan Bishops, as well as all Matters in his own Diocese, but they may Appeal from him to the Pope's Delegate, who also resides in one of the *Philippine Islands*. The annual Income of the Archbishop is six thousand Pieces of Eight, which he has from the Crown; and the Bishops of *Sibu*, *Camarine*, and *Caguayan*, five thousand. There is besides these a Coadjutor or Titular Bishop, who officiates in the first vacant Church that there may be no Intermission in the Cure of Souls, during the six Years before a new Prelate can come, and for the Management of the Inquisition here, there is a Commissary appointed by the Court of Inquisition at *Mexico*.

NOTWITHSTANDING that the *Chinese* abandoned the Government of these Islands, either for their Remoteness, or for some other Reason, as has been before hinted, yet there were such Numbers of *Chinese* found upon these Islands, that in the City of *Manila* there was found not less than forty thousand since the *Spaniards* arrived there. They found themselves so numerous that they contended with the *Spaniards* for Superiority, but the *Spaniards* not brooking that, reduced them, and banished them all from the Island, except three or four thousand, whom they suffer'd to remain because they were useful to the Government, for they were the best Artisans and Mechanicks in the Country; insomuch that it was scarce possible for the *Spaniards* to subsist without them; so that notwithstanding the Bigottry of the *Spaniards* to their own Religion, yet for the sake of the Assistance of the *Chinese*, they suffer'd them the free and open Exercise of their Religion at *Manila*, rather than want their Help. There is an Alcade and other Officers appointed over the *Chinese* by the King of *Spain*, whose Salary they are obliged to pay; and such Bigots they are to a simple Sort of Gaming, that they pay no less than ten thousand Pieces of Eight yearly for the Liberty of Gaming some few Days at the Beginning of every new Year. The Game they use they call *Aletua*, it is only a Chance of even and odd, one laying a Heap of Money down, the other Gamester guesses odd or even; if he guess right, he has all the Money, but if he guess wrong, the other keeps his own Money, and the guessing Man gives him as much to it. The *Spaniards* will not suffer the *Chinese* to remain in any Christian House in the Night-time, nor to have any Fire or Light in their own after it is dark.

It is obſerved that in all the *Philippine Iſlands* there are about two hundred and fifty thouſand People ſubject to the Crown of *Spain*, and yet it is computed that theſe are not a twelfth Part of the Inhabitants of thoſe Iſlands, ſo that by that Computation the Inhabitants of theſe Iſlands amount to above three Million of People. The *Spaniards* exact a Duty of ten Ryals a Year from every Maſter of a Family under their Government, and from every ſingle Man who is above eighteen, and under ſixty Years of Age, they demand five Ryals, and the ſame from every Maid between twenty four and fifty Years of Age. The *Spaniards* ſubdivide their Territories into Diſtricts, impoſe other Duties upon the Subjects, making their Taxes ſtill more grievous.

Government. They have no Records to give account of their antient Form of Government; what account we have of that is from the *Spaniards* now inhabiting there, who tell us that they firſt came over under ſeveral Captains and Leaders, and that when they ſettled every one ſtill retain'd the Government of their own People, and were never united into one Government ſo as to be ſubject to one Monarch, and that ſeems very ſeaſible to have been the Caſe, becauſe at this Day almoſt every Mountain is poſſeſs'd by a particular Tribe, which has a Governor of its own, independant on all the reſt, and that they ſometimes make Deſcents upon one another, when they think they have provocation to it.

Laws. The Natives are regulated by Laws and Cuſtoms of their own, though the *Spaniards*, becauſe they will not ſubmit to their Inſtitutions and Impoſitions, would make the World believe they are under no Regulation at all, with reſpect to Cuſtoms or Morals, whereas they ſtrictly enjoin the profoundeſt Reſpect to Parents and Governors; they are tender of taking away Life, and puniſh Theft only with Fine or Impriſonment; the eldeſt Son ſucceeds to the Father's Honour and Eſtate, but if there be no Son, the Effects are divided among the Daughters. Their way of ſwearing is in the Preſence of a lighted Torch, or before ſome Wild-Beaſt, wiſhing they may be conſumed like the Torch, or devoured by ſuch Wild-Beaſt, if they do not perform what they are by this Form obliging themſelves to.

Slaves. Those that are in Debt either ſell their Children and pay their Debts, or themſelves become Slaves to their Creditors till they work it out; thoſe they take in the Wars are alſo Slaves to the Great Men, to cultivate their Lands and perform any ſervile Offices they require of them.

Arms. The Arms they uſe are Bows and Arrows, and a Lance either headed with Iron or hardned in the Fire; they have alſo broad Daggers with two Edges; they have hollow Tubes made of Ebony or other fine Wood, through which they ſhoot little poiſon'd Darts, and the ſlighteſt Wound made by theſe is mortal, without immediate Application. They have for Defence a Shield and Helmet, alſo a Back and Breaſt, but theſe laſt are only Cane cover'd with Buffaloes Hide, to reſiſt the little poiſon'd Darts.

The *Blacks* of the Mountains have ſuch an Averſion to the *Spaniards*, that they will neither be govern'd by them nor ſcarce converſe with them; there is ſuch an Enmity betwen them, that if the *Blacks* catch a *Spaniard* and kill him, they invite their Family or Neighbours to rejoice three Days ſucceſſively, drinking out of the *Spaniard*'s Skull while the Entertainment continues; and well may the *Spaniards* expect ſuch Treatment, if they conſider how they uſe the *Blacks* when they fall into their Hands.

But although the Antipathy is ſo great between the *Blacks* of the Mountains and the *Spaniards*, yet for the ſake of Trade there is a mediate Correſpondence between them, by Means of the *Indians* who inhabit the flat Country, for to theſe the *Spaniards* ſell Tobacco and ſeveral other Things, which they exchange with the *Blacks* of the Mountains for Bees-Wax, Gold, and what other Commodities the Mountains afford, and theſe they ſell to the *Spaniards*, who are by that Means furniſh'd with what the Mountains afford, as if they were ſupply'd by the Mountaineers themſelves.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Religion, Marriages, and Funeral Rites obſerved by the Inhabitants of the Philippine Iſlands.

Tranſmigration. They are ſo bigotted to the Doctrine of Tranſmigration, as well as their neighbouring *Aſiaticks* before ſpoken of, that they cannot be prevail'd upon even to cut down an old decay'd Tree, becauſe they ſuppoſe they ſhall thereby diſturb or perhaps diſlodge the Souls of ſome of their Anceſtors; for them they worſhip as far back as the Great-Grandfather, believing, as as the *Siameſe* do, that their Anceſtors farther back than the Great-Grandfather has undergone ſo many Changes, and their Souls been tranſplanted into ſo many different Bodies (animate or inanimate) that they are beyond their Notice. (*See Chap.* VII. *of* Siam.)

Marriage. When a Marriage is propoſed, the Man is not to expect a Fortune with his Wife, but the Huſband is to pay a Sum of Money to the Woman's Father or neareſt Relation for his Wife, ſo that it is a Purchaſe before it is a Marriage. The Marriage is celebrated by a Prieſteſs, after which the Man and Wife are enjoin'd both to eat out of the ſame Diſh, in token that they are for the future to participate equally of all the Viciſſitudes of Life; they then ſacrifice ſome Beaſt, and then the Ceremony is finiſh'd, and the whole is concluded with ſuch Entertainments as they think proper; they always marry in their own Tribe, and the neareſt Kin they can conveniently, except the firſt Degree; Divorces are allow'd, but no Man is allow'd to have two Wives at a Time, except the lawful Wife have no Children, and then he may take one of his Slaves to his Bed, and if he has Children by her it is deem'd no Crime.

When a Perſon of Diſtinction dies, not only his Relations mourn, but alſo Strangers are hired for the ſame Purpoſe to lament the Departure of the Deceas'd; the Body being waſh'd and perfum'd, and wrapt up in Silk, it is put into a Coffin, cut out of one ſolid Piece of ſome precious Wood, and cover'd ſo cloſe as to keep out all the Air, and ſo placed upon a Table, the Cloaths and Arms of the Deceas'd being laid on a Cheſt by the Coffin, or if it be a Woman, her Utenſils for Work, and all ſorts of Meat are ſet before the Corps; afterwards the Body is interr'd in the Burying-Place of the Family, and a Feaſt is made for thoſe that attended the Funeral, but if it is a Man, the Widow and Children faſt for ſome time afterwards, and abſtain from Fleſh and Fiſh, and live only upon Rice and Herbs; ſome mourn in black, others in white, ſhaving their Heads and Eye-brows. They pay a particular Veneration to thoſe who die in the Defence of their Country, by offering Sacrifices to them after their Deceaſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Island Celebes *or* Macassar.

Situation. THE Island of *Celebes* or *Macassar*, lies under the Equinoctial Line to the Eastward of *Borneo*. It is divided into six Provinces or petty Kingdoms, the chief of which is *Celebes*, on the North-West, lying under the Equinoctial, and *Macassar*, which takes in all the South Part of the Island; all the rest of the Provinces being under one or other of those two, is the occasion of the Island going by one of those two Names.

Division.

Air. THIS Island lying under the Equinoctial, the Air is hot and moist, subject to great Rains; it is most healthy during the Northern Monsoons; if they fail, as it sometimes happens, the Island is sickly, and a great Mortality ensues.

THEY have Gold, Tin and Copper Mines, but do not work them, most of the Gold this Island produces being found in the Sands of the Rivers and the Bottom of the Hills, being wash'd from the Mountains by the Torrents occasioned by the violent Rains.

THEY have Pepper and Sugar, Betel and Arrek, but no Mace, Cloves, or Nutmegs; these they Import from the Spice Islands in Quantities sufficient to supply themselves and to sell to Strangers.

Cotton. THEIR Fruits are of a more delicious Taste than those of other Countries: The Cotton Shrub grows very Plenty here upon the Plains, it bears a red Flower, and when that falls it leaves a Head about as big as a Wallnut, which contains the Cotton; that which grows in this Island is reckon'd the best in all *India*.

Opium. OPIUM grows wild at the Bottom of Mountains, or in stony Ground; it is a Shrub whose Branches afford a Liquor which they draw out much in the same manner as they do Palm Wine, and being close stopp'd up in a Pot, it thickens to a Consistency, till they can make it up in Pills; and when they would impregnate their Tobacco with Opium, to make it inroxicating, they dissolve one of these Pills in Water, and then sprinkle their Tobacco with the Water; or sometimes they will take the Quantity of two Pins Heads of the Opium Pill in a Pipe of Tobacco, which elevates them, or rather stupifies them, beyond all Sense or Apprehensions of Danger, till its Effect wears off, and then they are more dull and stupid than before, till they renew their Stupefaction with more Opium; but these repeated Operations burthens Nature, preys upon the Spirits, and shortens Life.

Poison. THEY are famous for compounding mortal Poisons out of their venomous Drugs and Herbs, of such a malignant Nature, that if their Darts, Criees or Daggers have their Points dipt in it, and if afterwards a Person be wounded with the said poison'd Weapon, though in a remote Member, yet the most immediate Application cannot save his Life, as was proved upon a condemned Criminal, upon whom the Experiment was tried, by wounding him in the Toe with one of these little poison'd Darts; and although there were Surgeons ready to cut off the Toe as soon as the Wound was given, yet all the means they could use could not preserve the wounded Person's Life.

An Experiment.

Monkeys. THEY have very large Cattle at *Macassar*, and also such Numbers of large Monkeys and Baboons, that they are dangerous to Travellers; some of them go upon all four, and some walk upright on two Feet, like a Man, never using their Fore-Feet but as Hands: The white ones are as big as an *English* Mastiff, and are the most dangerous, but they are more inveterate against Women than Men: The Serpents sometimes make War upon them, pursuing them to the Tops of the Trees, and destroying them there. The Bezoar-stone is sometimes found in these Monkeys, and is much better than those found in the Goats.

Horses. HERE are no Elephants bred, but Plenty of little Horses for riding only. The Natives in riding use no Saddle, but a painted Cloth thrown over the Horse's Back, and no Stirrups; and for a Bridle, they have a Piece of Wood for a Bit, and a Cord for a Rein, which they tie to each End of the Bit; their Horses are never shod, being never put to drawing; their Oxen and Buffaloes are put to that Part of their Labour.

Macassar River. THERE is but one large River in the Island, it is about half a League broad, and washes the Walls of *Macassar* City; it is deep enough to carry the largest Vessels in some Places, but its Depth is so uncertain, that in other Places there is not Water for a Vessel of fifty Tun; but there is a Port called *Jompadan* on the South-West Part of the Island, now in Possession of the *Dutch*, and is a very commodious Harbour.

Macassar. THE City of *Macassar* is situate upon the Bank of the great River above-mentioned, where the *Dutch* have a strong Fort, and a Garrison of seven or eight hundred Men. The Streets of the City are wide, but not paved, but have Trees planted on each Side of the Street. The meaner Sort of Houses are Wood, but the Palaces, Mosques, and great Houses are of Stone: The wooden Houses are built upon Pillars as in *Siam*, and the Roofs like theirs, covered with Palm or Cocoa Leaves. (*See* Chap. II. *of* Siam, *near the latter End.*)

Market. THEY have Shops and Market-Places; their Market times are before Sun-rise and after Sun-set, for Flesh, Fish, Rice, Fowls, and all sorts of Provisions, except Hog's-flesh, which their Religion forbids. The Market, both Buyers and Sellers, consists only of Women, insomuch that it is reckoned ridiculous to see a Man amongst them.

Genius. ALTHOUGH abundance of People have deserted *Macassar* and the adjacent Villages, since the *Dutch* have tyranized over them, yet the remaining Natives have their Faculties of Memory and Apprehension so quick, that they can either remember or imitate any thing they see, and might improve with little Assistance. They are strong and industrious, and so addicted to Arms and martial Enterprizes, that they are hired out to Fight, as the *Swiss* in *Europe*.

THEY have flat Noses, shining black Hair, tied up or cover'd with a Turbant when they are dress't, but at other times they only wear a Case or Hat with a small Brim. They take great Pains to rub and supple the Limbs of their Infants, and that is assign'd as a Reason why few or none are lame or crooked amongst them. Their Male Children are taken from the Mother at six or seven Years of Age, and put to some distant Relation, to prevent their being too much indulged by their effeminate Caresses. They are sent to School to Read and Write, and learn the Precepts of the Alchoran, and then brought up to some Handicraft Trade,

Sports

Sports and martial Exercises if they be of the Quality; but the meaner Sort are brought up to ordinary Trades, Fishing, Husbandry, or the like.

Wives. The Women here are under severe Restraints; the least Smile in the Woman to any Man but her Husband, being thought a sufficient Reason for her Husband to Divorce her; nor does their Law look upon the Man as Criminal that kills a Man that he finds alone with his Wife; but the Man may have as many Wives and Concubines as he pleases, nothing being look'd upon with greater Ridicule and Contempt than to have no Children, or to have but one Wife; the Man's Honour and Happiness being always supposed proportionable to the Number of Women and Children that the Man possesses.

Children are commonly matched by their Parents in their Infancy, and when the young Man is arrived at sixteen or seventeen, and has gone through his Exercises of Riding, drawing the Bow, discharging a Fuzil, handling his Scymiter and Criee, and shooting little Darts out of Trunks of Ebony, *&c.* he is allow'd to visit his Mistress, consult about the Marriage, and marry soon after, if they agree upon it. The Girls are also brought up to Write, Read, Spin, Sow, Embroider, and make their own and the Mens Cloaths, for Men are not Taylors nor Cooks here, but the Females

Diet. dress all the Victuals; but they have no great Variety, their ordinary Food being Rice, Herbs, Roots, Fish, and Fruit: But they have also Beef, Kid, and Poultry, but this is rather for a Relish than a Meal, for they boil it and season it high with Pepper and Spices, and cut it in small Pieces to eat with their Rice, to give it a Relish. They eat but twice a Day, once about eight or nine in the Morning, and the other about Sun-set; this last is the set and heartiest Meal; the rest of the Day they chew Betel and Arek, or smoak Tobacco with

Drink. Opium. They have variety of Liquors to drink, as Water, Sherbet, Coffee, Tea, Chocolate, Palm-Wine, Arek, and other Spirits which they mix, though their Law forbids it.

Men's Dress. The better Sort have a Vest down to their Knees of brocaded Silk, or fine Scarlet Cloth, with Gold Plate Buttons, a strait Sleeve and button'd at the Wrist: They wear a rich Sash, the Ends of which reach down to their Knees; they wear their Criee, Dagger, Knife and Purse in their Sash. The poorer Sort have their Cloaths made of Cotton, and wear no Stockings or Shoes; their Turbants are not close at the Crown, but is only a Piece of Stuff or Linnen wrapp'd about their Heads. They frequently dye their Nails red, and their Teeth red or black.

Women's Dress. The Women have Shifts of fine Muslin to their Knees, the Sleeves strait and come but to their Elbows, the Neck and Breast close, that their Breasts cannot be seen. They have Drawers of Silk or Cotton reaching down to the middle of the Leg, and some have them richly embroider'd; for that, as well as the making of their Cloaths, they learn in their Youth, as before observed, that they may dress themselves rich with their own Labour: This is their Home Dress, but when they go Abroad they throw a loose Linnen Cloth or Piece of strip'd Muslin over all. For a Head-dress they only tie up their Hair in a Roll on the hinder Part of the Head, leaving some Curls hanging down to adorn the Neck. They perfume and oil their Hair, which makes it look still blacker than otherwise it would. The Men wear Jewels in their Hair, but the Women have none, nor have they any additional Ornaments but only a Gold Chain about their Necks. They are very neat and clean in their Houses.

Govern-ment. The Government is Monarchial, and the Crown Hereditary, the eldest Brother succeeding in the Kingdom, to prevent the Government's falling into the Hands of an Infant that is not able to manage it, and protect his People. The Prime Minister is entrusted with almost all Places of Trust in the Civil Government, and has the disposing of most, if not all, the Places of Trust or Profit therein. The Houshold and the Revenues the King looks after himself, and musters his Troops twice every Month, but leaves the Civil Government almost entirely to the Prime Minister.

No Fees. Common Justice is obtained here at a cheaper Rate than where whole Shoals of Lawyers, Attornies, and Pettifoggers are to be fee'd, for there are no Lawyers, Attornies or Bailiffs here, but every one exhibits his Complaint in Person, as being the most capable of understanding his own Grievance, and Justice is immediately executed according to the Merit of the Cause, without further Delay or Expence. They are so severe against Criminals, that whosoever takes a Murderer, Robber, *&c.* in the Fact, is allow'd to execute him himself without any further Trial.

Divorce. When a Man takes such a Disgust at any Behaviour of his Wife, that it amounts in his Opinion to a just Cause of Divorce, he need only acquaint the Priest with his Case, and charge his Wife with Levity or unregarded Conduct; and if the Priest finds the least Reason to believe that the Charge is just, the Divorce is pronounced by the secular Judge, and both Parties are at Liberty to marry again.

Funerals. They are very prodigal and expensive in their Funerals: When a Person dies his Corpse is wash'd and perfum'd, and cloath'd in a white Robe, with a Turbant on his Head. The Chamber the Corpse is set in is hung with white, and perfumed with Incense and Aromatick Gums: When the Corpse is to be buried he is carried by his Slaves to the Burying-place on a Couch or Palanquin, follow'd by the Priests, Perfumes and Incense being burnt all the Way as they go. The Corpse is buried without a Coffin, and only cover'd with the Plank on which it lay, and the Earth thrown in upon it; and some Time afterwards there is a Tomb erected according to the Quality of the deceas'd, adorn'd with Flowers, and having Perfumes burning for forty Days, which concludes with a costly Entertainment for those who come to pay their last Respects to the Memory of the deceas'd.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Molucca Iſlands, *with thoſe of* Banda, *and the Iſland of* Amboyna, *commonly called the* Spice Iſlands.

THE Iſles of *Banda* take their Name from one of the Southermoſt of them, which goes by that Name *Banda*, but is as much known by the Name of *Lantor*, that being the Name of the chief Town upon the Iſland. Theſe Iſlands lie in the fourth or fifth Degree of South Latitude, on the South of *Ceram*, and on the Eaſt of *Celebes* or *Macaſſar*. The Names of the chief of them are, 1. *Banda* or *Lantor*; 2. *Poolowaj*; 3. *Pooloroon*; 4. *Nero*; 5. *Roſinging*, and 6. *Gonapi*; amongſt which are ſeveral ſmall Iſlands, not known by any particular Names, but only by that general Name of being ſome of the *Banda Iſles*. Theſe Iſlands are as famous for Nutmegs as the *Moluccas* were, and *Amboyna* now is for Cloves. The Nutmeg-Tree is like a Peach-Tree, only its Leaves are rounder and ſomething leſs: The Fruit is encloſed in a thick Rind, like a Walnut, and between that Rind and the Nutmeg is a thin Rind or Shell, which is what we call Mace; and in the Middle of all lies the Nutmeg, like the Stone in the Middle of a Peach or Apricot. All the above-mentioned Iſlands, with that of *Amboyna*, are now in the Poſſeſſion of the *Dutch*, in all which (except *Amboyna*) as alſo in the *Moluccas*, the *Dutch* have rooted up all the Cloves, becauſe theſe Iſlands lay remote from them, and conſequently expoſed to the Attempts of other Nations; and their High Mightineſſes, as generous as the Dog in the Manger, becauſe thoſe Iſlands were too far diſtant for them to reap the Fruit of them, deſtroy'd all the Cloves, that becauſe they could be no better by them, no body elſe ſhould; and after they had barbarouſly (as will appear by and by) got *Amboyna* into their own Poſſeſſion, they planted Cloves there, which ſucceeded ſo well, that it is ſaid that Iſland alone is ſufficient to ſupply the whole World with Cloves. The Clove-Tree bears within eight Years after it is planted, and is ſomewhat like the Bay-Tree; the Fruit grows in Cluſters at the End of the Branch, where it hangeth like a Bunch of Grapes; the Bud is firſt white, then green, afterwards red, and when it is ripe it turns brown; and after they are gather'd they dry them in the Sun, which makes them ſtill of a darker Colour. This Tree dries up all the Moiſture near it, inſomuch that no Graſs will grow under its Branches.

Amboyna. ON the South or South-Weſt Side of the Iſland of *Amboyna*, there is a deep Bay, which makes a good Harbour for Ships. It has Plenty of Fruit, Fiſh, and freſh Water, and ſufficiently ſtored with Fleſh; they have alſo Oranges, Lemons, Sugar-Canes, Cocoas, and other Fruit: They have alſo Potatoes and Tobacco, but the *Dutch* endeavour to keep the Iſland as barren of Proviſion as poſſible, that the Natives may have their entire Dependance upon them for Supplies; and that if a Stranger ſhould attempt to ſurprize them, they may find nothing in the Iſland ſufficient for their immediate Subſiſtence; for which Reaſons they chooſe rather to ſend their Proviſions from *Batavia* to *Amboyna*, than to have them grow upon the Iſland.

Moluccas. THE *Molucca Iſlands* lie near the Line on both Sides of it, on the Weſt of the Iſland of *Gilolo*, which lies under the Equinoctial; the Chief of them are *Bachian Machian*, *Motyr Ternate*, and *Tydore*; they all lie to the Northward from *Amboyna*, and are all in Poſſeſſion of the *Dutch*.

Diet. IN the *Moluccas* they have no Rice nor Corn, and but little Fleſh, except that of Goats. Their Bread is made of Sago, which is a Sort of a Pith of a Tree, from whence they make Cakes, which they uſe as Bread. Their common Drink is Water, but they have a ſtrong Liquor which they draw from the Bambou and Cocoa-Tree; they have Almonds, Oranges and Lemons: But the chief Produce of theſe Iſlands was Cloves, till they participated of the common Fate of the reſt of the Clove Iſlands, their Ruin and Deſtruction by their *Dutch*.

THERE are four other Iſlands near the Spice Iſlands, larger, but of leſs Value, for what they Produce; as, 1. *Gilolo*, or *Batochina*, lies under the Equinoctial, to the Eaſtward of *Tydore* and *Ternate*: It is above two hundred Miles long, but narrow: It has ſeveral deep Bays on the Eaſt Side of it, which makes good Riding for Ships. 2. *Ceram*, to the Northward of *Amboyna* and *Banda Iſles*. It lies Eaſt and Weſt, and is about fifty Leagues in Length. 3. *Bouro*, between *Ceram* and *Celebes*, about twenty Miles long and ten broad. 4. *Bouton*, near the South Eaſt Corner of *Celebes*, about twenty five Leagues long, and ten broad. The chief Town is *Callaſuſung*, a handſome Town, with ſpacious clean Streets, and fortified with a Stone Wall.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the several Discoveries made by the Portuguese, Spaniards, English, *and* Dutch, *in order to promote a Trade to the* East Indies *in general, and the* Spice Islands *in particular; with an Account of the several Steps taken by the* Europeans *to engross the* East India *Trade; and of the first Settlement of the* English *and* Dutch East India *Companies.*

OF above two thousand Years that *Europe* has been supplied with those delicious Spices of the East, it is not above two hundred Years since we have been acquainted with the Islands where they grew, they being sent from *Persia*, *Arabia*, and *Egypt* to the several Ports in the *Mediterranean*, whither the *Venetians*, *Genoese*, and *Catalons* used to resort to buy the *Indian* Spices and Silks, with which they supplied all the other Parts of *Europe* at a prodigious Profit.

THE *Moors* of *Arabia*, willing to engross the Spice Trade to themselves, planted Colonies in the *Oriental Islands* upon the Sea Coasts, driving the Inhabitants up to the Mountains, obliging them to abscond, or submit to their Government, and in this Condition were most of the *Oriental Islands* when the *Portuguese* first discover'd a Passage to *India* by the Cape of *Good Hope*, which probably they had never attempted if it had not been in hopes of making themselves Masters of the Spices and other Riches of the East, which Design they begun and prosecuted as follows:

PRINCE *Henry*, third Son of *John* King of *Portugal*, sent out Ships about the Year 1418 to discover the West Coast of *Africa*, which Enterprize they pursued till the Year 1486, when King *John* the Second sent out a Ship, which discovered the Southermost Point of *Africa*, now called by us the Cape of *Good Hope*.

IT having been agreed upon between the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese*, that the *Spaniards* should have all the Western Discoveries, and the *Portuguese* the Eastern, the (then) King of *Portugal* sent three Ships to find a Way to the *East Indies* in the Year 1497, and passing safe round the Cape, arrived at *Mosambique* in *Zanguebar*, on the East Coast of *Africa*, in about Latitude 14 Degrees South, where they found seven Ships mann'd with *Arabians*, who they observed had Mariners Compasses, Sea-Charts, and Quadrants aboard, so that the *Arabians* had the Use of those Instruments before that Time.

Sails to *Melinda.*

FROM *Mosambique* he sail'd Northward along the same East Coast of *Africa*, till he arrived at *Melinda* on *Easter-Day* 1498; this Place is in about the third Degree of South Latitude; here he found some Christians, who used him well, though the *Mahometan* Religion is establish'd there; however, here he got a Pilot for *India*, and arrived within two Miles of *Calecut* in *Malabar*, *May* 19, 1498, and was kindly used by the King of *Calecut*, till by the Instigation of the *Moors* or *Arabians*, the King was set so much against the *Portuguese*, that he seized some of their Men, and detain'd them; *Gama*, the *Portuguese* Commander, finding no hopes of establishing a Trade there, return'd home in the Year 1499, bringing with him only a *Tunis* Merchant which he found at *Calecut*, who gave the *Portuguese* some Insight into the Nature and Advantages of the *East India* Trade.

Thirteen Ships more.

THE King of *Portugal*, willing to pursue so advantageous a Prospect, sent thirteen Ships and fifteen hundred Soldiers under the Command of *Peter Alvarez Capralis*; he sail'd from *Lisbon March* 8, 1500, made *Porto Seguro* in *Brazil*, on the East Coast of *South America*, in Latitude about 15 Degrees South; here he staid till the fifth of *May*, and then sail'd about the Cape, and arrived at *Calecut* the 22d of *August* following, but upon his Arrival met with the Fate of *Gama* his Predecessor, being at first kindly received by the King of *Calecut*, but the *Moorish* Faction again prevailing, though the King had order'd the *Portuguese* a House for a Factory, yet the People set upon the *Portuguese* in that very House, and kill'd above fifty of them; *Capralis* resenting this unjust and dishonourable as well as barbarous Treatment, attack'd a *Moorish* Ship, kill'd six hundred of their Men, made Slaves of the rest, seiz'd all their Merchandize, and sail'd away to *Cochin*, about an hundred and seventy Miles to the Southward of *Calecut* upon the same Coast; here he settled a Factory, and then return'd to *Lisbon*, *July* 31, 1502.

Thirteen more, a fifteen Frigats.

BUT before *Capralis* return'd, the King of *Portugal* fitted out three Ships more, and after them ten more, which last were commanded by the first Admiral *Gama*; he also sent out fifteen Frigats to suppress the *Moors*, and command the *Indian* Seas; and this was easily done, the *Moors* having no Ships of Force, nor had they occasion for any, having no Enemies to encounter with till the *Portuguese* found a Way to them by sailing about the Cape of *Good Hope*.

THE *Portuguese* having met with this Success, were animated to advance farther East, and attempted the settling of a Trade at *Malacca*; but the Natives, incited by the *Moors*, endeavour'd to repulse them, surprizing forty of their Men ashore, and attacking their Ships in the Road, but were repell'd with Loss; not long after the famous *Albuquerque* besieged *Goa*, and took it, as he afterwards did *Malacca*, in the Year 1511, whose King *Mancudias* was kill'd in defending it; this success of the *Portuguese* made several *Indian* Princes court their Favour and Alliance, as not being able to resist or withstand them.

They seek the Spice Islands.

THEY having penetrated so far to the Eastward, their next Enterprize was in quest of the *Spice Islands*; upon which Expedition *Antonius Ambreus* was dispatch'd, who fell in with a very favourable Opportunity; for the Kings of *Ternate* and *Tidore*, the most powerful Princes of the *Moluccas*, were then at War, and most of the Islands in these Seas were engaged in the Interest of one or other of those Princes, and when the *Portuguese* arrived there, each of those Princes courted their Friendship; the *Portuguese* taking the Advantage of this Difference between those two leading Princes, found no great Difficulty to settle a Trade, establish Factories, and build Forts for their own Advantage and Security, the Inhabitants of both Parties in the different Interests of the contending Princes above-mention'd being each willing to oblige and encourage the *Portuguese*, in hopes of their Alliance and Assistance if occasion required.

THUS Success of the *Portuguese*, with their Agreement with the *Spaniards* that all Eastern Discoveries should

ſhould belong to *Portugal*, and all the Weſtern to *Spain*, made them now think themſelves Lords of the Navigation, Conqueſt and Commerce of *Ethiopia*, *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and *India*, and accordingly they built themſelves Forts and Cities where they thought convenient, upon the *African*, *Arabian*, *Perſian*, and *Indian* Coaſt, but more particularly upon the Spice Iſlands.

Spaniards attempt the Spice Iſlands.

THE *Portugueſe* now thought themſelves ſecure in Poſſeſſion of the Spice Iſlands, and although the *Spaniards* would have been glad to have had a Fellow-feeling with them in the Sweets of their Profit, yet they could not in Honour attempt it, becauſe it had been mutually agreed between them that all Weſtern Diſcoveries was to belong to the *Spaniards*, and the Eaſtern to the *Portugueſe*, till (as we have obſerved before) *Magellan*, prejudiced againſt the *Portugueſe* for the Slights he had received from them, thought he had found out a way whereby the King of *Spain* might be entitled to the *Philippines*, notwithſtanding the ſaid Contract, which was by ſailing Weſt to them, thereby making them a Weſtern Diſcovery, and conſequently including them in the Contract, as the Property of the King of *Spain*.

Magellan's Expedition to the Spice Iſlands.

THE King of *Spain*, glad to take the Advantage of this Pretenſion, diſpatch'd *Magellan* upon this Weſtern Diſcovery of the Spice Iſlands, who ſail'd through the Straits of *Magellan* (ſo called after his Name) to the *Ladrones*, and ſo to the *Philippines*, where he was kill'd; but his Ships arrived at *Ternate* about ten Years after the firſt Arrival of the *Portugueſe* here. The King of *Tidore* ſuffer'd the *Spaniards* to eſtabliſh a Factory in his Country, and they left a Ship there to be refitted, or to attend the Buſineſs of the Factory; but notwithſtanding the cunning of the *Spaniards* in making this a Weſtern Diſcovery, the *Portugueſe* did not think they had any Right to trade to thoſe Iſlands, but look'd upon them as Treſpaſſers upon their Property, and as ſuch they ſeiz'd their Ship, deſtroy'd their Factory, and ruin'd their Trade. The King of *Spain* at the ſame Time having occaſion for a little Money, and ſuppoſing that would do him more ſervice than all his pretended Property in the Spice Iſlands, he mortgaged all his Property in and Right to the Spice Trade, to the *Portugueſe*, for three hundred and fifty thouſand Ducats, in the Year 1529; which Money being never ſince repaid, the *Spaniard* has hitherto forfeited all his ſuppoſed Right to the Spice Trade.

The Engliſh Expedition.

THE *Engliſh* were the next that viſited the Spice Iſlands, under the Command of Mr. *Drake*, (afterwards Sir *Francis Drake*) who ſail'd from *Plimouth*, *December* 13, 1577, with five Ships and a hundred and ſixty four Men; he arrived at Fort St. *Julian* on the Coaſt of *Brazil* in South *America*, and ſail'd thence *July* 17, 1578, and on the twentieth entered the Straits of *Magellan*, through which he paſs'd, and enter'd the Great *South Sea*, *September* 6, but meeting with bad Weather, they were driven in Latitude 57 South. In this Storm Captain *Winter* being ſeparated from him, made the beſt of his Way for *England*, but Mr. *Drake* proceeded, and arrived at *Lima* in *Peru*, on the Weſt Coaſt of South *America*, on the thirteenth of *February*, where he found twelve *Spaniſh* Merchant Ships, which he plunder'd of what Treaſure they had, (for they were not prepared to reſiſt him, having never ſeen an Enemy in theſe Seas before.) From thence he ſail'd in Purſuit of a Ship called the *Cacafogo*, all whoſe Loading was Treaſure, and came up with her about a hundred and fifty Leagues from *Panama*, and ſhe not being able to make much Reſiſtance, he took out of her thirteen Cheſts of Rials of Plate, fourſcore Pound Weight of Gold, and twenty-ſix Tun of Silver, beſides a great Quantity of Jewels and precious Stones.

Nova Albion.

FROM thence he ſail'd to *Nova Albion*, in the North Part of the Iſland of *Californea*, ſo called becauſe the King reſign'd his Crown into Mr. *Drake*'s Hands, and deſired that his Country might be taken into the Protection of the Queen of *England*, (then Queen *Elizabeth*;) but whatever was the Reaſon, *England* never formed any Colony there, nor ſeem'd much to regard the Mines of Gold and Silver which *Drake*'s Men ſuppoſed to be in *Nova Albion*.

To the Moluccas.

FROM hence Mr. *Drake* ſail'd to the *Molucca Iſlands*, where he arrived *November* 14, 1579, and upon his Arrival ſent a Preſent to the King of *Ternate*, with a Meſſage that he was come to trade in his Country, which was very acceptable to the King, who being weary of the inſolent Behaviour of the *Portugueſe*, who debarr'd his Subjects from Trading with any Nation but themſelves, choſe rather to have reſigned to the Crown of *England* than live under the Reſtraints and arbitrary Power of the *Portugueſe*; and as a Teſtimony of ſuch Submiſſion or Reſignation, gave Mr. *Drake* his Signet. If this formal Surrender could be called a Title, doubtleſs the *Engliſh* had the moſt indiſputable Right to *Ternate*, and all its Appendages, which is ſaid to be above ſeventy Iſlands more, all under this ſame Prince; but we do not find that ever the *Engliſh* purſued their Claim, only Mr. *Drake*, after he had been ſplendidly entertain'd, took in a good Quantity of Cloves, and ſail'd for *England*, where he arrived (after an almoſt three Years Voyage) *November* 3, 1580.

Engliſh go by the Cape of Good Hope.

AFTER all theſe Voyages, both Eaſtward and Weſtward to the *Eaſt Indies* and *Molucca* Iſlands, the *Engliſh* attempted an Eaſtern Paſſage to the *Eaſt Indies*, about the Cape of *Good Hope*, in the Year 1591, with three Ships, *viz.* the *Penelope*, Admiral; the *Merchant Royal*, Vice-Admiral; and the *Bonaventure*, Rear-Admiral; commanded by Captain *Raymond*, Captain *Lancaſter*, and Captain *Kendall*. They ſet Sail *April* 10, croſt the Line *June* 6; and meeting with South Eaſt Winds, ſtood for the Coaſt of *Brazil*, in about Latitude 26 South; where meeting with the Wind Northerly, they ſtood for the Cape, where they arrived the 28th of *July*.

AT their firſt Landing, the Negroes were afraid of them, but becoming more familiar, they ſold them as much Beef and Mutton as they wanted, an Ox coſting a Couple of Knives, and the Sheep one Knife a-piece. The Cattle were large, and not poor, nor very fat,

BUT having loſt many Hands by Sickneſs, occaſioned by croſſing the Line and Alteration of the Climate, they mann'd two Ships out of the three Companies, putting only Hands enough aboard the *Royal Merchant* to be ſufficient to work her, and ſo ſent her Home, the other two purſuing their Voyage, till *September* the 14th, when they met with a Storm that parted them, and the *Penelope* was never heard of more; and four Days afterwards they had a terrible Clap of Thunder and Lightning, which ſplit their Main-maſt, kill'd four of their Men, and diſabled others, who all recover'd except the ſaid four.

Thirty two kill'd

AT *Camora* on the Coaſt of *Africa* they took in freſh Water, and were civilly uſed at firſt, but ſo little were thoſe ſavage Brutes to be truſted to, that they deſtroy'd two and thirty of the *Engliſh* in Sight of their Ship, who having no other Boat but what the Men had aſhore, could not go to their Relief. Hence they ſail'd to *Zanzibar*, a *Portugueſe* Factory; but the *Portugueſe*, not willing that the *Engliſh* ſhould find any Trade there, gave it out, that they were Canibals or Man-eaters, and affrighted the Natives from having any Converſation with them.

IN

In *May* 1592 they sail'd about Cape *Comorin*, which is near *Zeylon*, and is the Southermost Point of the Continent of the *Indies*, and sail'd Eastward from thence towards *Malacca*, till they arrived at the *Nicobar Islands*, and thence to *Poolo Pisang*, in the seventh Degree of North Latitude, and near the West Coast of *Malacca*, where they continued till the End of *August*, when they were so weakened by the Loss of their Men, that they were not capable of any considerable Enterprize, but making Prizes of some *Portuguese* Ships that they met on the Coast of *Malacca*, they set sail for *England*, arriving at *St. Helena April* 3, 1593, and proceeded thence to *St. Domingo*, where the Captain and most of the Men going ashore to find Provision, the Ship went adrift, with only five Men and a Boy aboard, and the Captain got his Passage in a *French* Ship to *England*, where he arrived *May* 24, 1524.

Captain gets his Passage home.

There were afterwards three Ships more fitted out from *England*, intended for *China*, but not so much as one Man ever return'd to give any account of the Success of the rest.

But although these Disappointments might have been supposed sufficient to have deterr'd the *English* from ever attempting a Trade to the *East Indies* any more, yet it is so far from that, that they again undertake it more vigorously and regularly than ever. A Society of Merchants forming themselves into a Body, rais'd a Stock of seventy two thousand Pounds, and were incorporated into a Company by Letters Patent, dated *December* 30, 1600, in which they were stiled, *The Governor and Company of Merchants of* London *trading to the* East Indies; they had a Governor, Deputy-Governor, and twenty four Directors to be elected every Year; the Right of trading to the *East Indies* being invested in that Company only, and all other *English* Subjects attempting to trade thither to forfeit Ship and Goods, the Company at the same Time engaging to bring in as much Gold and Silver and foreign Coin every Year as they carry out.

The most regular Attempt.

The first *East India* Company.

In the first Expedition the Company sent out four Ships under the Command of Capt. *James Lancaster*, who bore the Queen's Commission, with a Power to exercise military Discipline, the Queen at the same Time sending Letters by him to several of the Princes of *India*, desiring that her Subjects might be well used, and be freely allow'd to trade. Admiral *Lancaster* went aboard the *Dragon*, a Ship of six hundred Ton, the other three, *viz.* the *Hector*, the *Ascension*, and the *Susan*, were commanded by *John Middleton*, *William Brand*, and *John Hayward*; these four Ships carried in all four hundred and eighty Men; they set sail from *Dartmouth April* 22, 1601, and arrived at the Cape of *Good Hope Sept.* 9. following, from whence they set sail *Nov.* 1, and arrived in *Achen* Road in the North Part of *Sumatra June*, 5, 1602, where the Admiral delivering Queen *Elizabeth*'s Letter and Presents to the King, obtain'd very advantageous Conditions of Trade, as we shall shew more at large when we come to speak of *Sumatra* in the Description and Trade of the *Sunda Islands*.

Their first Voyage

At *Achen* he took in what Pepper, Cinnamon, and Cloves he could get, and sail'd to *Priaman* on the West Coast of *Sumatra*, and having taken in more Pepper and Cloves there, he sail'd to *Bantam* in *Java*, where he arrived *December* 16, 1602, and having had Audience of the King, and deliver'd the Queen's Letter and Presents, settled a Factory there, disposed of his Goods he had left, and took Pepper in return for them, and so sail'd for *England Feb.* 22, and arrived in the *Downs Sept.* 11 1603.

Another Voyage

Captain *Henry Middleton* set sail from *Gravesend* on the 25th of *March* 1604, for the *East Indies*, with four Ships under his Command, and Queen *Elizabeth* being now dead, he had a Letter and Presents from King *James* I. to the young King of *Bantam*, which he deliver'd upon his Arrival there *Dec.* 20, 1604, and dispatching two of his Ships for *England*, he sail'd with the other two, to wit, the *Dragon* and *Ascension*, to *Amboyna*, where was a Fort built by the *Portuguese*, but the *Dutch* having taken it, and the Island would not suffer the *English* to trade there, and therefore he sent the *Ascension* to *Banda* or *Lantor*, about thirty Leagues Southeastward from *Amboyna*, where they took in Nutmegs and Mace without any Opposition from the *Dutch*, and the Admiral in the *Dragon* sail'd for the *Moluccas*, where he found the Kings of *Ternate* and *Tidore* at War, the former assisted by the *Dutch*, and the latter by the *Portuguese*; but the Admiral not being concern'd on either Side of the Quarrel, sail'd first to *Tidore*, and then to *Ternate*, whose King was inclined to encourage a Trade with the *English*; but the *Dutch* being his *dear Allies*, threaten'd that if he encouraged the *English*, they would desert him, and join the King of *Tidore*; at the same Time calling the *English* by such degrading and opprobrious Names, as none but the ungrateful *Dutch* would have used to the *English*, especially considering the Obligations they were under to them at the same Time.

The *Dutch* not suffering the Inhabitants of *Ternate* to trade with the *English*, Admiral *Middleton* sail'd to *Tidore*, where he took in great Part of his Loading of Cloves, and sail'd from thence to *Bantam*, where joining the *Ascension*, he set sail for *England*, where he arrived the 6th of *May*, 1606, and finish'd that Voyage.

Hitherto of the *Portuguese*, *Spaniards*, and *English* finding out a Trade to the *East Indies*; next of the *Dutch*.

The first Voyage of the *Dutch* to the *Oriental Islands* was in the Year 1595, above a hundred Years after the *Portuguese* had found the Cape of *Good Hope*, and ninety eight Years after they had found a Way about the Cape to the *East Indies*, seventy five Years after *Magellan* had discover'd the *Oriental Islands*, and eighteen Years after Sir *Francis Drake*'s Expedition to the *Moluccas*; so that they were the last, though they have since proved themselves the most tyrannical of all the *Europeans* that have made any Discoveries there, and by their unparallel'd Cruelty, where other Means would not answer their Purpose, or rather where there was no Provocation to such Barbarity, have got the largest Trade, and the most numerous Possessions of Factories and Garrisons in the *East Indies* of any Nation in *Europe*.

The *Dutch* attempt an *India* Trade.

Their first Expedition was four Ships fitted out at *Amsterdam* for the *East Indies*; they arrived at *Bantam* in *Java* in *June* 1596, where they were at first well used, and had a House assigned them for a Factory; but they of *Bantam*, by the Instigation of the *Portuguese*, began to take the *Dutchmen* Prisoners, but the *Dutch*, by way of Reprisal, seized three or four of their Vessels in the Harbour, and began to batter the Town, and then sail'd to *Batavia*, to the Eastward of *Bantam*, where they took in a Cargo of Spices, and what other Goods they could get fit for their Purpose; and without going any further Eastward, return'd to *Holland*, where they arrived *August* 11, 1597.

The *Dutch* sent eight Ships more to the *East Indies* in the Year 1598, commanded by Admiral *Neecus*; they sail'd to *Bantam*, where four of them loaded with Pepper, and the other four sail'd for the *Moluccas*, and arrived at *Amboyna*, *March* 3, where two of them loaded with Cloves there and at *Ternate*, at which latter Place they settled a Factory; and the other two took in Mace and Nutmegs at *Banda*, and all four return'd to *Holland* in the Beginning of the Year 1600.

But

But before the Arrival of theſe four Ships, the *Dutch* had ſent out three more, and after them the above-mention'd four, as ſoon as they were unloaded, and although the Trade was hitherto confined to *Amſterdam*, or the Province of *Holland* only, yet this Proſpect of Succeſs and Profit put other Companies upon raiſing ſeparate Stocks, and ſending Ships to the *Eaſt Indies* too, inſomuch that *Dutch* Veſſels ſwarm'd in the *Indian* Seas; but the States ſeeing them ſo numerous, thought it was beſt to unite them into one Company, that they might unanimouſly reſiſt any Oppoſition of the *Spaniards*, *Portugueſe*, &c. which accordingly they did, raiſing a Capital Stock of Six Millions of Florins; in which *Amſterdam* had one half, *Middleburgh* a Quarter, *Rotterdam*, *Delf*, *Enchuyſen* and *Hoorn*, each of them a ſixteenth Part. This Company was incorporated in the Year 1601, the next Year after the *Engliſh Eaſt India* Company was eſtabliſhed.

A Dutch Eaſt India Company began.

And now they began to be in earneſt; fitting out Fleets for the *Eaſt Indies* ſtrong enough to over-match the *Portugueſe*, ſeizing their Ships wherever they found them, and taking from them one Fort and Factory after another, till they had hardly any left; of which we ſhall give a larger Account as we come to the Hiſtory of the ſeveral Coaſts or Iſlands where the *Portugueſe* had got thoſe Poſſeſſions.

In 1602 the *Dutch* ſent a Fleet, which arrived at *Bantam* in *March*, and ſail'd to the *Molucca's* to attack the *Portugueſe* Fleet, but the *Portugueſe* proved too many for them, and obliged them to retire: The *Dutch*, nettled at this, fitted out a Fleet of twelve Ships in the Year 1605, routed the *Portugueſe*, and took *Amboyna*; and then Part of their Fleet ſailing to *Tidore*, attack'd a Fort the *Portugueſe* had in that Iſland; and the Magazine of Powder happening to blow up, deſtroy'd a Part of the Wall, and very much facilitated the *Dutch* Conqueſt of *Tidore*.

The *Spaniard*, who by his Contract with the *Portugueſe*, thought himſelf reſtrain'd from attacking them in any of their Eaſtern Poſſeſſions, as the *Molucca's* was, yet thought that they were diſcharged from their Contract as ſoon as the *Portugueſe* were diſcharged from their Poſſeſſions; and conſidering that though they were under Contract with the *Portugueſe*, yet they were not with the *Dutch*, they were reſolved to try their Fortune for a Trade to the *Molucca's*; and fitting out a ſtrong Fleet from the *Philippines*, fell upon the *Dutch* in the *Moluccan* Forts, beat them, and retook the Forts before they had had them a Year in Poſſeſſion; but the *Dutch*, aſſiſted by the King of *Ternate*, ſoon diſpoſſeſſed the *Spaniards*, upon which a War commenced between the *Spaniards* and *Dutch*, and in their different Intereſts the King of *Tidore* ally'd to the *Spaniards*, and the King of *Ternate* to the *Dutch*; and this War continued many Years.

In the Year 1609 the *Dutch* ſent out a ſtrong Fleet with Land Forces aboard, and arriving at *Banda*, demanded leave to build a Fort at *Nero*, (one of the *Banda* Iſles) to defend themſelves from the *Spaniards* and *Portugueſe*, as they pretended, but the *Bandaneſe* deny'd them; whereupon the *Dutch* fell upon them with a Body of Troops, and ſlew great Numbers of them. The *Bandaneſe* finding themſelves too weak to reſiſt them, had recourſe to Policy when Strength would not do, and under a Pretence of treating with the *Dutch* about excluding all other Nations from any Share of Trade with them, (the beſt Bait they could lay for the inſatiable *Dutch*) they drew ſeveral of the Officers into a Wood, where by an Ambuſcade they were all cut in Pieces: But the *Dutch*, exaſperated at this, made continual War upon the *Bandaneſe*, whoſe laſt Shift to ſave their expiring Liberties was to make a formal Surrender of their Country to King *James* the Firſt; but how much we were the richer, or they the ſafer, for that Surrender, muſt be referr'd to the Sequel of the Hiſtory to be determined.

Dutch ſend a Fleet to Banda.

CHAP. XV.

Of the illegal Practices of the Dutch *to exclude all other Nations from trading to the Spice Iſlands, and other Parts of the* Eaſt Indies. *Their unjuſt Uſage of the* Engliſh *in thoſe Places; and particularly of their barbarous torturing and maſſacreeing the* Engliſh *in the Iſland of* Amboyna, *and that not only in a Time of Peace, but after a ſolemn Agreement between the* Engliſh *and* Dutch Eaſt India *Companies, ratified and confirmed by the Sovereigns of both Nations.*

The *Engliſh* (as well as *Dutch*) purſued the *Eaſt India* Trade, and ſent the *Hector* and the *Dragon*, under the Command of Captain *Keeling*. The *Dragon* anchored in the Road of *Priaman*, on the Weſt Coaſt of *Sumatra*, *July* 26, 1608, and when they had taken in what Pepper they could get, came to *Bantam* the fourth of *October* following; and the *Hector*, having been at *Surrat*, arrived at *Bantam*, *December* 2; and *December* 23 the *Dragon* ſet ſail for *England*, and Captain *Keeling* in the *Hector* ſail'd for *Banda*, where he arrived *February* 8, 1608-9; and having deliver'd King *James's* Letter and Preſent to the States of *Nero*, (one of the *Banda* Iſles) he agreed to ſettle a Trade with them, and built a Fort there, and had of them 225 Cattees of Mace, and 1357 Pound of Nuts.

Arrives at Banda.

The *Dutch* at the ſame time thinking to make the *Banda* Trade all their own, ſent their Admiral *Vanhoof*, who arrived in the Road of the above-mentioned Iſland of *Nero*, *April* 9, 1609, and produced a Writing to the States of *Nero*, importing, that the States of *Holland* would confirm any Agreement that he (as Admiral) ſhould make with any of the States in the *Eaſt Indies*; and thereupon, as if all had been his own, he propoſed to build a Fort in the Iſland of *Nero*, but the *Bandaneſe* refuſed it; whereupon he, regardleſs of Juſtice or Humanity, landed 1200 Men, and kill'd a great Number of the *Bandaneſe*; and when they had weaken'd them ſo as to make them unable to reſiſt, they went about building their Fort.

Dutch Fort at Nero.

The *Dutch* having got this Footing, began to

inſult the *Engliſh*, and as if now all the Trade had been their own, interrupted them in getting their Goods aboard which they had purchaſed of the Natives; which the States of *Nero* ſeeing and reſenting, and not able publickly to revenge it, drew the *Dutch* Admiral and his Council into an Ambuſcade, and cut them to Pieces, and had ſerved more of the *Dutch* in the ſame manner, if Captain *Keeling* had not diſcover'd and prevented it; as a Reward for which the ungrateful *Dutch* again reſtrain'd the *Engliſh* Trade, and the better to perform that, ſearched their Boats under pretence of preventing their carrying Ammunition and Proviſion to the *Bandaneſe*; at the ſame Time they took the Town of *Lubataca* from them, burnt ſixteen Veſſels belonging to the States of *Banda*, and commanded Captain *Keeling* to be gone out of the Reach of their Guns, which they had planted upon their Fort of *Naſſau*, as they called the Fort they had built in the Iſland of *Nero*, and afterwards order'd him to quit all that Coaſt; but he had Courage enough to deſpiſe their Orders, and ſtaid in the Road to take in his Loading.

Dutch Ingratitude.

Engliſh Factory at *Bantam.*

On the 10th of *Auguſt* 1609, Captain *Keeling* ſail'd for *Bantam*, ſettled a Factory, and then ſail'd for *England*, *November* 3, and arrived in the *Downs May* 10, 1710.

After this Captain *Middleton* in the *Expedition*, ſail'd from the *Downs* to *India*, *April* 24, 1609, and arrived at *Bantam*, *December* 7; from whence he ſail'd for the *Moluccas*, and touch'd at the Iſland of *Bouton* near *Macaſſar*, thinking to load with Spices there; but the Warehouſes having been conſumed by Fire, and the Wind not ſerving for the *Moluccas*, he went for the *Banda* Iſlands, where the Natives would have been glad to trade with him, but the *Dutch* would ſuffer none to trade there but themſelves.

The Governor of the *Dutch* Fort *Naſſau* commanded Captain *Middleton* to come under his Guns, which the Captain refuſing, the *Dutch* intended to clap a Fireſhip on board of him, and if that ſhould not ſucceed, to ſend two Ships of a thouſand Tun each, with ſome Frigates, to ſink him; but Captain *Middleton* underſtanding their Deſign, went aſhore to know why they uſed him ſo; to which they anſwer'd, that the Iſlands of *Lantor* and *Nero* were theirs, and that no other Nation ſhould trade thither, nor would they ſell him any Spices; therefore he ſail'd to *Pooloway*, which Iſland, with that of *Pooloroon*, held out ſtill againſt the *Dutch*, and preſerved their Liberty. Here he purchaſed his Lading of Mace and Nutmegs, and arrived in *Bantam* Road *October* 9, 1610.

The envious *Dutch* knowing that he had got his Lading in *Pooloway*, though it was an Iſland to which their Tyranny or Dominion had not extended, yet they follow'd him with two great Ships, and ſeveral Frigates, deſigning to ſink or take him; but by reaſon of contrary Winds or Calms, they never could come up with him to put their unjuſt Deſign in Execution.

Many more, and even innumerable Inſtances might be given of the Avarice of the *Dutch*, and of their Endeavours to block up and intercept the Trade of the *Engliſh* with any of the *Indian* Natives, eſpecially in the Spice, or any other profitable Branches of Trade, and this in a Time of profound Peace between the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*; but the *Bandaneſe* being willing to trade with the *Engliſh*, and the *Dutch* oppoſing it, the Inhabitants of *Pooloway* and *Pooloroon* put on a Reſolution, rather than run the Hazard of falling under *Dutch* Tyranny, to make a formal Surrender of the ſaid two Iſlands, with the Country of *Wayre* and Iſland of *Roſingin*, to King *James* the Firſt of *England*, by Inſtruments in Writing, ſign'd by the Kings or States of the reſpective Iſlands, bearing Date *December* 14, 1616, and deliver'd by their own Hands to Mr. *Nathaniel Courthop*, Mr. *Thomas Spurway*, and Mr. *Sephon Cozoke*, to the Uſe of his Majeſty King *James*. They alſo deliver'd them a Nutmeg-Tree, with its Root, and alſo the Fruit upon it as it grew; alſo a live Goat, and deſired to have the *Engliſh* Colours planted on the Iſland of *Poolorcon*, and thirty ſix great Guns fired in Memory of this Surrender; all which was done accordingly.

Surrender of Pooloway, &c

The *Engliſh* being now in Poſſeſſion of *Pooloroon*, and their Ships being in the Road, ſeveral *Dutch* Ships appear'd in Sight, one of which ſtruck her Enſign, and hoiſted a bloody Flag, which made the *Engliſh* apprehend they ſhould be attack'd, and therefore they landed ſeveral Pieces of Ordinance, and threw up a Redoubt on the Iſland of *Pooloroon*, whereby they had the Command of the Road.

Dutch come to attack the Engliſh.

On the third of *January* came three *Dutch* Ships from *Nero*, one of eight hundred, one of five hundred, and another of one hundred and ſixty Tuns, full of Men, with a deſign to attack the *Engliſh*, who thereupon ſhew'd them the Surrender of *Pooloway* and *Pooloroon* to the King of *England*, and demanded the Iſland of *Pooloway*, which the *Dutch* ſtill kept in Poſſeſſion, as if it had been their own. The *Dutch* ſeeing the Redoubt, and the Artillery aſhore, which cover'd the *Engliſh* Ships in the Road, durſt not engage them; but ſeeing Captain *Davis* in the *Swan* ſailing over to *Wayre*, (a Place in the Iſland of *Lantor*) two *Dutch* Ships from *Nero*, without War or Provocation, pour'd their Broad-ſides into him, and eaſily took him, he not having above thirty able Men on board, Mr. *Stephen Cozoke* being kill'd in the Engagement by a Cannon Ball.

Dutch take the Swan, though no War

Captain *Courthop* ſeing the illegal Actions of the *Dutch*, regardleſs of Juſtice or Humanity, he yet bravely reſolved to defend the Iſlands lately ſurrender'd to the Crown of *England*, and in order thereto built a Fort upon a little Iſland near *Pooloroon*, took his Guns out of his Ship the *Defence*, and planted in the ſaid Fort, thereby being able, as he thought, to command the Road, and defend theſe Iſlands from the Power of the *Dutch*, till he ſhould be relieved from *England*; but the few Men that he left in the *Defence*, either for fear of the Hardſhips they might undergo in that barren Iſland before they could be ſupplied from *England*, or rather being bribed by the *Dutch*, run away with the Ship to them, who broke open the Cabbins and Cheſts, and plunder'd them of every Thing they valued, and threw the reſt overboard; and although the Uſage of the *Dutch* to the *Engliſh* Renagadoes, not intended as an Act of Juſtice but of Cruelty in the *Dutch*, yet it may be ſaid the Men were juſtly uſed for their Treachery and Villainy in running away with the Ship to the *Dutch*, who may now be called profeſt Enemies; for they laid the Men in Irons, threw them into Dungeons, and voided their Excrements upon them by way of Contempt; others they carried about the Country in Triumph, giving out that ſuch Slaves were the *Engliſh* to the *Dutch* in *Europe*; and thus they treated not only Men who belonged to the *Defence*, (who might in ſome Reſpects be ſaid to deſerve it,) but all other *Engliſh*, where ever they could get them; and this not only in a Time of full Peace between *England* and *Holland*, but when the *Dutch* were under the greateſt Obligations of Gratitude to the *Engliſh* for their very Beings which they then enjoy'd.

Engliſh men run away with their Ship; the Du

Captain *Courthop* ſent to the *Dutch* at *Nero* to demand the Reſtitution of the Ship *Defence*, but they refuſed that, except he would quit all Pretenſions to the Iſland of *Pooloroon*, and all the reſt of the *Banda Iſles*; they alſo exhibited ſeveral falſe

Com-

Complaints againſt the *Engliſh*, to juſtify the inhuman Uſage wherewith they had and were reſolved to ſerve the *Engliſh*, as they found opportunity.

Much intolerable.

CAPTAIN *Courthop* ſeeing the *Dutch* obdurately prepoſſeſs'd of a Reſolution to make all their own as much as poſſible, and as they had no regard to Juſtice, all treating and reaſoning was in vain, he diſpatch'd Mr. *Spurway*, ſeveral of the States and great Men to the *Engliſh* Factory at *Bantam* in *Java*, to acquaint them with the State of their Affairs, and ſeek redreſs; but the *Dutch* gave chace to the Veſſel that carried them, and would have ſunk her had not they put into *Bouton*, where the King protected them, ſent them to the further part of the Iſland, and furniſh'd them with another Veſſel to carry them to *Bantam*, where they arrived *June* 3, 1617.

FROM thence they diſpatch'd Letters to the *Eaſt India* Company in *England*; acquainting them that *Pooloroon* not only afforded Store of Mace and Nuts, but would afford more if well cultivated; and that *Lantor* and *Roſinging* had great Plenty of them; and that if the Factory at *Pooloroon* was not ſpeedily ſupplied and re-inforced, it would be an irretrievable Loſs to *England*, as well as a Diſgrace to them in that Part of the World, if we ſhould ſuffer the *Dutch* not only to rob us of our Trade, but to inſult us under the Loſs of it.

Dutch Ravages increaſe.

TWO *Engliſh* Ships, called the *Solomon* and the *Attendance*, arrived on the 25th of *March* 1618, in Sight of the *Engliſh* Fort at *Pooloroon*, but were intercepted and attack'd by the *Dutch*; and although they held out ſeven Hours, yet were at laſt taken, and carried into *Nero* Road under their Fort *Naſſau*; nor could they two be expected to defend themſelves againſt four, eſpecially when the *Solomon* was ſo deep laden with Rice and other Proviſion for the *Bandaneſe*, that ſhe could not uſe her lower Tire; ſo that it had been cowardly and diſhonourable for an Enemy to have engaged two Ships, and one of them ſo deeply loaded, with double their Number of fighting Ships; much more for a dear Ally to do it in a Time of Peace, and that under Pretence of a Commiſſion from the States of *Holland*, of which there was the greater Probability of Truth, becauſe the *Dutch* Commanders were never called to account for all this their barbarous Uſage to the *Engliſh*, in not only taking their Ships without any open War, but maſſacreing the Men in cold blood that they found aboard.

THE *Dutch* thus taking all Opportunities to weaken the *Engliſh*, did alſo form falſe Reports to alienate the *Bandaneſe* from the *Engliſh*, by telling them, *That Captain* Courthop *had loſt all his Men*; *that he had no Proviſions*; *that this Iſland, or the other, (naming ſome one of the* Banda *Iſlands) had agreed to ſurrender to them*, and other ſuch Arguments; but all could not prevail with the *Bandaneſe* to make them deſert the *Engliſh* Intereſt, ſo long as the *Engliſh* ſtood by them; in which reſpect Captain *Courthop* was faithful to his laſt Breath; but the Hardſhips he had to encounter with were almoſt inſupportable, by reaſon of his Scarcity of Proviſion and Reinforcements, he not being ſupplied either from *England* or *Bantam*, as he requeſted and expected; and on the other Side, the Petitions and Importunities of his *Engliſh* Sailors, now periſhing in Priſons by the Cruelty of the *Dutch*, begging of him to make Peace upon any Terms, to releaſe them from their miſerable Tormentors and Tormentors, and he in Compaſſion ſent them what Proviſions he could ſpare under that Scarcity.

BUT *January* 27, 1618, Captain *Courthop* received an Expreſs, that Sir *Thomas Dale* was arrived at *Bantam* with an *Engliſh* Fleet, and that he had expell'd the *Dutch* from the Coaſt of *Java*, and would ſpeedily ſail for *Banda*, and correct the *Dutch* for their Inſolency; adviſing him to continue with the utmoſt Reſolution to defend the Iſlands of *Banda*, and eſpecially to encourage the People of *Pooloroon* and *Lantor* to perſiſt in their Loyalty, *&c.* but notwithſtanding all this Encouragement, he waited a whole Year, and had neither Supplies nor Intelligence from *Bantam*.

AND what was a further Mortification to Captain *Courthop*'s almoſt expiring Hopes was, that he heard that Sir *Thomas Dale*, the aforeſaid Commander of the *Engliſh* Fleet, was dead, and that the ſeveral Commanders differing amongſt themſelves, the Fleet was diſperſed to ſeveral Parts of *India*, by which means ſeven of them was fallen into the Enemy's Hands. Captain *Courthop* now deſpairing of any Supply from them, writ once more to the *Engliſh* Preſident at *Bantam*, in theſe Words. *God grant me well out of this Country, for the People have ſpent their Gold and Eſtates, and many of them have loſt their Lives and Liberties in expectation of* Engliſh *Succours.—Can every other Nation ſail into theſe Seas, and are the* Engliſh *only afraid to venture hither*, &c.

BUT although Captain *Courthop* was thus deſerted by the Factory at *Bantam*, he would not give up his Cauſe nor quit his Poſt, but ſent ſome Country Veſſels to *Macaſſar* for Rice, he in the mean time keeping himſelf in a Poſture of Defence againſt the *Dutch*, by repairing his Fort, in which they never durſt attack him, though they often threaten'd it; but after all his Diſcouragements and Diſappointments, his fatal Deſtiny unfortunately overtook him, for going over to regulate ſome Abuſes, he was attack'd by two *Dutch* Ships, whom he fought bravely till he was ſhot in the Breaſt, whereupon ſitting down a little, after a ſhort Pauſe, he threw himſelf over-board, rather than fall into their Hands, and was never ſeen or heard of more.

THUS died this brave Man, in the midſt of his ſteady Endeavours to put a Period to the Encroachments of the avaricious *Dutch*; a Man, who though diſappointed, and even neglected by his own Fellow-Subjects at *Bantam*, would never ſhrink from his Loyalty and Reſolution, till it may rather be ſaid he was murther'd by a Neighbour than ſlain by an Enemy, the *Dutch* and we not being at War at that Time.

WHEN Captain *Courthop* was dead, Mr. *Hayes*, with the unanimous Conſent of the *Engliſh* and *Bandaneſe*, took upon him the Command of the Fort, to whom the States of *Lantor*, purſuant to their Promiſe formerly made to Captain *Courthop*, made a formal Surrender of the Iſland of *Lantor* to the King of *England*, delivering the Inſtrument to Mr. *Hayes*, ſigned *November* 24, 1620.

IMMEDIATELY after the Surrender of *Lantor*, Mr. *Hayes* intercepted a *Dutch* Packet, by which he underſtood that a Treaty was concluded between *England* and the States of *Holland*, in Relation to the Spice Trade; which as ſoon as he perceived, he diſpatch'd it to Fort *Naſſau* in the Iſland of *Nero*, ſuppoſing that now all the Diſpute had been over between the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* reſiding or trading in the *Eaſt Indies*, about the Spice Trade; but neither would this ſatisfy the *Dutch*, for though they at firſt began with fair Means, and courted the *Lantor* Men to break with the *Engliſh*, and let them have their Spices, yet when the *Lantor* Men refuſed, the *Dutch* form'd the Town of *Lantor*, and the *Bandaneſe*, in return, kill'd a great many of their People in the Iſland of *Nero*.

AND notwithſtanding the Treaty between *England* and the States of *Holland* above-mentioned, the *Dutch* ſent a great Fleet with Land Forces aboard; and as Mr. *Hayes* ſuſpected that their

Deſign

Deſign was to make an entire Conqueſt of all the *Banda Iſlands*, he to prevent Hoſtilities, acquainted the *Dutch* Admiral by a Letter with the Surrender of thoſe Iſlands to the King of *England*, but he rejected it, and would make no anſwer to it, and order'd the Meſſenger to be gone immediately at his Peril; he alſo ſent an Order to the States of *Lantor*, to quit the *Engliſh*, and ſurrender to the States, which when they refuſed, he ſtorm'd *Lantor* again, and then took the Town, and ſet it on fire, and what *Engliſh* Factors were there they ſtripp'd naked, beat, and abuſed, ty'd them Hand and Foot, and carry'd them aboard of the Admiral, where they laid them in Irons; they alſo ſeiz'd the Company's Goods, amongſt which was twenty three thouſand Weight of Mace, and a hundred and twenty thouſand Weight of Nutmegs, beſides Treaſure, Cloth, and other Effects.

On the 6th of *March* the *Dutch* came with 1500 Men to attack *Pooloroon*, demanding a Surrender, or if they refuſed, they would ſerve them as they had ſerved them of *Lantor*; to whom the States of *Pooloroon* anſwer'd, that as there was then Peace between *England* and *Holland*, and as they were Subjects to the King of *England*, they preſum'd the *Dutch* would not attempt any Thing againſt them; but all their Arguments were in vain to the obdurate *Dutch*, who took poſſeſſion of the Iſland, and cauſed the Natives to demoliſh their Walls and Forts, the *Engliſh* in the mean Time looking on, without offering to defend their new Fellow Subjects, pretending, that becauſe *England* and *Holland* were at Peace together, they muſt not uſe any Hoſtilities againſt the *Dutch*; though they had both pull'd down the Houſes of the *Engliſh* about their Ears, plunder'd their Factories, and in the baſeſt Manner abuſed their Perſons, and amongſt the reſt of their Ravages demoliſh'd the *Engliſh* Battery, and applied the Guns to their own Uſe; and on the 26th of *April*, the *Dutch* ſent to the States of *Pooloroon*, commanding them to ſell the *Engliſh* no more Spice; and on the 28th, the *Dutch* General maſſacred forty two of the head Men of the Country in cold Blood, pretending they were guilty of ſome Conſpiracy againſt their High Mightineſſes; and theſe Outrages were committed after the Peace between the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* was known and proclaim'd at *Banda*.

The *Dutch* thus inſulting the *Engliſh*, and tyranizing over them and their Property, and the *Engliſh* on the other hand ſo paſſive under all the Injuries they ſuſtain'd from them, the two Nations being at perfect Peace at the ſame Time, there was at laſt Terms of Accommodation propoſed and agreed upon between the *Engliſh* and *Dutch Eaſt India* Companies, expreſt in particular Articles, and ſign'd by both Parties, *July* 7, 1619: And that the Reader may ſee as well the advantageous Terms the *Dutch* had, as their Fidelity in keeping to their Contract, we ſhall inſert the Articles and Conditions of their Agreement, which are as follow:

Articles of Agreement between the Engliſh *and* Dutch, *relating to the* Eaſt India *Trade, ſign'd and agreed upon* July 7, 1619.

I. That there ſhall be a perpetual Amneſty of all Offences and Injuries before that Time committed in the *Eaſt Indies*, either by the Subjects of his Majeſty, or the Subjects of the ſaid Lords the States; and accordingly all Priſoners on either Part ſhould be ſet at Liberty, and all Ships, Goods and Merchandize taken before the Publication of this Treaty in the *Eaſt Indies* ſhould be reciprocally reſtored.

II. That Officers, Agents, and Servants, as well on the Part of one Company as the other, ſhall entertain a friendly Correſpondence, and afford each other mutual Aid whenever they meet, as becomes Neighbours and Friends engaged in ſo ſtrict an Alliance; and if either Party ſhall find the other in Diſtreſs at Sea, they ſhall afford them all friendly Aſſiſtance to the utmoſt of their Power, and faithfully deliver any Letters or Accounts that ſhall be ſent by them.

III. The Trade and Commerce of the *Eaſt Indies* ſhall be free as well for the *Engliſh* Company as for that of the *United Provinces*, and each of the ſaid Companies ſhall be at Liberty to raiſe and employ ſuch ſeparate Capital Stock and Funds as they reſpectively ſhall think fit.

IV. And for the general Good and Advantage of Trade, they ſhall mutually endeavour to regulate and leſſen the exceſſive Duties and Impoſitions lately exacted in the *Indies*, and leave off the Practice of giving Gratuities and Preſents over and above.

V. They ſhall by common Conſent agree to fix a reaſonable Price in the *Indies* on all Merchandize, and at publick or private Sales made either in *England* or *Holland* of *India* Goods, they ſhall agree upon a ſtated Price for a certain Time, during which Time it ſhall not be lawful for either Party to ſell under that Rate.

VI. And for the avoiding all manner of Jealouſies and Differences for the future, the Agents or Factors on both Sides ſhall conſult and agree together upon a moderate Price for purchaſing Pepper at *Bantam*, and other Places in *Java Major*, (nevertheleſs there ſhall remain a Freedom of Commerce in other Parts of the *Indies*, and alſo in *Java Major*, as to other Merchandizes, agreeable to the third Article;) and to this End skillful Agents or Factors ſhall be appointed to buy Pepper, which when bought ſhall be divided and ſhared equally.

VII. The *Engliſh* Company ſhall enjoy a free Trade at *Paliacate*, and bear half the Charge of maintaining the Fort and Garriſon there, to commence from the Time of publiſhing this Treaty in thoſe Parts.

VIII. In the Iſles of the *Moluccа's*, *Banda* and *Amboyna*, the Trade ſhall be ſo regulated by common Conſent, that the *Engliſh* Company ſhall enjoy a third Part of that Trade, as well for the importing and ſelling of Goods in thoſe Iſlands, as of the Fruit and Merchandize, the Growth of thoſe Iſlands, which ſhall be exported from thence; and the *Dutch* Company ſhall enjoy the other two Thirds.

IX. As to buying and ſharing the ſaid Fruits and Merchandizes, the principal Factors of the two Nations ſhall buy them at a current Price, and divide them by Lot, to each their reſpective Share; and for that End it ſhall be lawful for either Party to have acceſs to, and abide in the Forts and Magazines of the other.

X. And conſidering that a Trade ſo remote and important cannot be ſecured but by a conſiderable Force, this ſhall be done by furniſhing out and maintaining twenty Ships of War, *viz.* ten by each Company, the ſaid Number to be increas'd or leſſen'd by common Conſent, as Occaſion ſhall require; and every one of the ſaid Ships ſhall be of the Burden of ſix or eight hundred Ton, and carry an hundred and fifty Men, and thirty Pieces of Cannon, which will carry Bullets from eight to eighteen Pound Weight, with Ammunition, and all other Neceſſaries ſuitable thereto.

XI. And the Council of Defence ſhall order what Number of Frigats, Galleys and other ſmall Veſſels ſhall be further neceſſary for the ſaid Defence.

XII. The Forts and Garriſons in the Iſlands of the *Moluccа's*, *Banda*, and *Amboyna*, ſhall be maintain'd out of the Duties and Impoſitions to be levied on the Fruits and Merchandizes exported from the ſaid Iſlands, which Duties and Impoſitions

ſhall

ſhall be aſſeſs'd by Order of the Council of Defence, and received by the Agents of both Parties, and by them be tranſmitted from Time to Time, as it ſhall be neceſſary, to the Treaſurers of both Companies, for the Payment of the Soldiers.

XIII. For the better ordering and eſtabliſhing the ſaid Defence, a Council of Defence ſhall be erected, conſiſting of eight Perſons of the principal Officers there, and an equal Number to be elected out of each Company, and they to have the Precedency by Turns.

XIV. This Council ſhall order all Things which ſhall concern the common Defence by Sea, and diſtribute the Ships of War to ſuch Stations as they ſhall judge moſt neceſſary.

XV. They ſhall alſo regulate the Duties and Impoſitions which ſhall be neceſſary for maintaining the ſaid Forts and Garriſons, and ſhall have Power to call the Collectors of the ſaid Duties to Account.

XVI. The Ships of War ſhall continue in the Stations appointed them, and purſue the Orders of the Council of Defence, and not be employ'd in importing Merchandizes into theſe Kingdoms or Provinces.

XVII. Provided that the ſaid Ships of War may be ſometimes employ'd in tranſporting Merchandize from Place to Place in the *Indies*, for the Service of their reſpective Companies, if the ſaid Council approve of it, and if it be not prejudicial to the Defence.

XVIII. And in Caſes of Neceſſity the ſaid Council are impower'd to employ ſuch Numbers of Merchant Ships as they ſhall judge proper in the ſaid Defence.

XIX. The Loſſes and Damages that ſhall happen in any Engagement for the common Defence, or in going to or returning from the ſaid Defence, ſhall be born equally, and defray'd at the common Charge, and the Gains and Prizes which ſhall be made ſhall redound to the common Profit.

XX. The ſame Rule ſhall be obſerved as to Merchant Ships employ'd on the like Occaſion, and during ſuch Service the Soldiers and Proviſions for the Seamen ſhall be made at the common Charge of both Companies; and in Conſideration of the Interruption their Commerce may ſuſtain by ſuch Service, they ſhall receive ſuch Recompence as ſhall be adjudg'd them by the Council of Defence.

XXI. But if any Ship of War being in his own Road or Fort, or in going or returning thither ſhall receive any Damage by Tempeſt or other Misfortune, ſuch Lots ſhall not fall on the Community, but be born by the Company ſuch Ship ſhall belong to.

XXII. And for the avoiding all Diſputes that may ariſe concerning the Value of Ships loſt or endamaged, the Council of Defence ſhall make an Eſtimate of all the Ships of War and others before they be employ'd in the common Defence.

XXIII. The Forts, as well on one Part as the other, ſhall remain in the Hands of thoſe who poſſeſs them at preſent.

XXIV. And whereas a Queſtion has been moved concerning the building certain new Forts, which the *Engliſh* Company have judged neceſſary for the Security of their Men and Goods, it is agreed that the ſaid Queſtion ſhall remain undecided for the Term of two or three Years, to the End that having duly view'd and conſider'd how many Forts, of what Nature, and in what Places the ſame will hereafter be neceſſary, the ſaid Queſtion may be reſum'd, and determined in ſuch manner as may tend to the mutual Satisfaction of both Parties.

XXV. As to ſuch Forts as ſhall be taken in the *Moluca's* or any other Part of *India*, by the Intereſt and joint Forces of both Companies, they ſhall be equally poſſeſs'd, garriſon'd, and maintain'd by each Company, who ſhall have there equal Numbers, or they ſhall be divided equally between the two Companies, according to the Direction of the ſaid Council of Defence.

XXVI. They ſhall jointly endeavour to open and eſtabliſh a free Trade to *China*, and other Places in the *Indies*, by ſuch Ways and Means as the Common Council ſhall judge expedient.

XXVII. The ſaid Companies ſhall not prevent or exclude each other from trading, either by Force or by any ſeparate Contracts which they ſhall make in the *Indies*, but the Trade ſhall be free and open, as well for the one as for the other, in every Place, as well within the Forts and Towns either Party ſhall be poſſeſs'd of, as elſewhere.

XXVIII. And it is agreed that without the Conſent of both Companies no other Perſon, not being of their reſpective Bodies, ſhall partake of the Benefit of the preſent Treaty; and if any Subject of either Nation, not being of the ſame Body, ſhall undertake any Thing in prejudice of the ſaid Companies, they ſhall jointly and ſeverally oppoſe the ſame, and maintain their reſpective Privileges; and his ſaid Majeſty, and the ſaid Lords the States ſhall be addreſs'd not to authorize any other Companies to intermeddle in the Traffick or Navigation of the *Indies*, while the preſent Agreement ſhall remain in force.

XXIX. If in any Part of the *Indies* the one or the other Company ſhall have a Factory, Trade, or Effects, and it happen by the Death of the Factors, or ſome other Misfortune, that the Goods or Eſtates of either remain without any Perſon legally entitled to adminiſter them, the ſurviving Factors and Officers of the other Company ſhall take the ſaid Goods and Eſtate into their Poſſeſſion, and honeſtly keep them for the Owners, to whom they ſhall reſtore them in convenient Time.

XXX. This Treaty ſhall be in force for twenty Years, and if during that Time there ſhall happen any Diſputes which cannot be terminated by the ſaid Council abroad, nor on this Side by the ſaid two Companies, ſuch Differences ſhall be referr'd to the King of *Great Britain* and the ſaid Lords the States General, who will graciouſly be pleaſed to determine ſuch Differences to the Satisfaction of both Parties.

All which Articles ſhall be faithfully and inviolably obſerved by both Parties, according to the true Intent and Meaning of this Treaty; and the above named Lords do engage, that as well his ſaid Majeſty of *Great Britain* as the ſaid Lords the States, and both the ſaid Companies, ſhall approve, confirm, and ratify the ſaid Treaty, and reciprocally deliver Inſtruments of Ratification in due Form.

Done at London *the 7th of* July, 1619, O. S.
Sign'd by the Lords and the Commiſſioners of the reſpective Companies;
Ratified by King James *the Firſt at* Weſtminſter, July 16, 1619.

One would think the *Dutch* had made their Bargain with the *Engliſh* as advantageous to themſelves as they could deſire, and ſuch as none but the *Engliſh* would ever have agreed to, when the *Engliſh* was to bear half of all Charges, as by Article 7, 10, 19, 20, and yet to have but one third of the Trade to thoſe material Places *Banda*, *Amboyna*, and the *Molucca's*, by Article 8, and I think the Reaſon why the *Engliſh* ſhould be content with one Third, as by Article 8, when the Iſlands of *Banda* was their Propetry, and why the *Dutch* were not content with two Thirds (as the Sequel proves they were not,) is equally difficult to determine. Our next Buſineſs is to obſerve how our

dear Allies ſtood by their Contract with the *Engliſh*, as it was agreed upon by both Parties, and expreſt in the above-mention'd Articles.

WITHIN leſs than a Year and a half after the Signing of the above-mentioned Agreement, *viz.* in *December* 1620, the *Dutch* General prepared and mann'd ſixteen Ships, declaring to our *Engliſh* Preſident, *that he intended an Exploit for the Good of both Companies, but not mentioning any particular Deſign.* The *Engliſh*, however, not apprehending any Danger from their lately contracted Allies and Fellow-Traders, had no thoughts of raiſing any Force to reſiſt him; and he the better to carry on his Deſign, did not deſire them to join him, but ſaid *he would attempt the Enterprize alone*, and accordingly ſet ſail from *Batavia January* 3, and making the beſt of his Way to the *Banda Iſlands*, arrived there *February* 3, and made Preparation againſt the Iſland of *Lantor*, which (as we obſerved before) had been ſurrender'd to the *Engliſh* in *November* before, and our Governor of *Pooloroon* had it now in Poſſeſſion, and had ſettled a Factory there.

The twenty-third Article broke by the *Dutch*.

WHEN our chief Factor of *Lantor* underſtood the Deſign of the *Dutch* againſt that Iſland, he ſent a Letter to the *Dutch* General, aſſerting the King of *England*'s Right to the Iſland of *Lantor* by Surrender, and that it would be a Breach of the late Agreement to offer any Violence to it; but the *Dutch* General, ſcarce reading the Letter, threw it from him in the higheſt Diſdain, and cauſed the Meſſenger to be thruſt out of Doors, and bid him tell the *Engliſh* Factor at *Pooloroon* immediately to fetch from *Lantor* all the People and Goods belonging to the *Engliſh*; for whoever he found there he would look upon them as utter Enemies, and treat them as ſuch; and in a few Days he landed his Forces, and took Poſſeſſion of the Iſland, ſack'd the *Engliſh* Factory, took all their Goods, murther'd three of the *Chineſe* Servants, bound the reſt (*Engliſh* or *Chineſe*) Hand and Foot, binding them ſeveral times to ſeveral Stakes. They put a Halter about the *Engliſh* Factor's Neck, and pulled up his Head, and ſtretched his Neck ready to kill him, and yet did not, but tumbled him and others (bound as they were) over the Rocks, as if they intended to daſh them to Pieces, and then carried them aboard of the *Dutch* Ships, and put them in Irons, *&c.* ſo that if it may be once ſaid the *Dutch* were true to their Promiſe, it was in executing their threaten'd Barbarity.

Dutch take Lantor.

WHEN he had taken *Lantor*, he demanded the principal of their Children for Hoſtages, which they deliver'd: He took away all their Boats and Veſſels, and demanded all the *Bandaneſe* that had aided the *Lantor* Men, to be brought with their Wives and Children aboard of his Ships, but they fearing his Tyranny, retired into the higheſt and ſtrongeſt Places of the Land, where they ſecured themſelves as well as they could, but they purſued them, ſlew many of them, and took twelve hundred Priſoners (moſtly Women and Children) which they ſent to *Batavia* and other Places.

HAVING thus reduced *Lantor*, he ſent to demand the Iſland of *Pooloroon*, but the *Engliſh* Factor refuſed, alledging that it belonged to the King of *England* by Surrender, and that it would be a Breach of the late Agreement between the two *Eaſt India* Companies, if he ſhould offer any Violence to it; but he, regardleſs of all Obligations, ſent twenty-ſix Prows and one Ship, with a great Number of Men, who landed upon the Iſland, and demanded of the Inhabitants to ſurrender the Iſland to them; they refuſed, and expected that the *Engliſh* ſhould defend and protect them, but the *Engliſh* not being prepared for ſuch a Surprize, could not defend themſelves, and ſo the *Dutch* ſtruck the *Engliſh* Colours, and hoiſted their own. Nor were they ſatisfied with the Poſſeſſion of the Iſland, but commanded the Inhabitants to bring them all their Weapons, to demoliſh their own Walls, and to take all the Ordnance out of the Fort, which laſt when they refuſed to do, the *Dutch* brought ſome Soldiers aſhore, and forced the Inhabitants to throw all their Ordnance (being nine Pieces) over a Rock; four of them broke with the fall, but all, both broken and whole, were carried by the *Dutch* aboard of their own Ships.

Dutch take Lantor.

THESE Ravages and Outrages, not to mention any more, are ſo inconſiſtent with the foregoing Articles, and committed with ſo little Remorſe, and on the contrary with ſo much Inſolence and Cruelty, that they ſeem to make it evident that they never were intended for any other Deſign but to tie up the Hands of the *Engliſh*, while they were plundering their Property, and maſſacreeing their Men. Indeed if the *Dutch* had been deluded into an Overſight, or ſomething to their Diſadvantage, they might have had ſome Pretence for finding Fault, but it is evident that if theſe Articles had been drawn up by the *Dutch*, and only conſented to by the *Engliſh*, they could not well have been calculated more to the Advantage of the former, nor could it have been thought that any (but the *Dutch*) would ever have broke through ſuch a ſolemn and (to them) beneficial Contract; but there is Reaſon to believe, that as much as this Agreement was in their Favour, they had higher Views for their own ſeparate Intereſt, and never intended to ſtand by their Contract with the *Engliſh*, any further than Self-Intereſt govern'd them.

WHAT unprejudiced Reader can obſerve the twenty-fourth Article, but may ſee they had a Reſerve in ſuſpending for two or three Years the determining the Places where the *Engliſh* were to build Forts for their own Security; might not this as well be underſtood that the *Engliſh* ſhould build no Forts till the *Dutch* had got the *Banda Iſlands* and the Chief of the Spice Trade in their Poſſeſſion. Did not the Practice of the *Dutch* prove this in their attacking and taking *Lantor* and *Pooloroon*, when in Poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*, directly contrary to the twenty-third Article, and alſo to the twenty-ſeventh, not to mention their other Barbarities, which are but faint Specimens of their ſucceeding Inhumanities.

HOWEVER, the *Engliſh* thinking themſelves ſafe (after the Signing the Contract with the *Dutch*) as to what they had agreed upon, ſettled Factories at *Amboyna*, *Banda*, and the *Molucca's*, for carrying on their Trade in the Proportion ſpecified in the Agreement, aſſuring themſelves that whoever might oppoſe them, they were now to expect no Diſturbance from their dear Allies, their contracted Friends the *Dutch*; but alas, when the *Engliſh* thought themſelves moſt ſecure, they were in moſt Danger; for when the *Dutch* could find nothing of Fact to charge them with, and being reſolved to have ſomething whereof to accuſe them, they invented a Plot in the Year 1622, and fix'd it upon the *Engliſh* and *Japoneſe*, as being guilty of a Conſpiracy to ſurprize their principal Fort at *Amboyna*.

IT may be obſerved, that this Plot was charged upon the *Engliſh* three Years after the Contract between the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* was ſign'd, at the Expiration of which Time the *Dutch* were obliged by Article twenty-four to ſettle and determine where the *Engliſh* were to build their Forts for their own Security, *&c.* but they being previouſly reſolved that the *Engliſh* ſhould never have that Opportunity, trifled with them for that three Years, and then to evade the Performance of that and other Articles, firſt charged them with a Plot,

Plot, and then maſſacreed them under that falſe Charge, as follows:

Tra-
of
oyna.

ON the 11th of *February* 1622, a *Japaneſe* in the *Dutch* Service at *Amboyna* being upon the Guard, enquired of a *Dutch* Centinel concerning the Strength of the Caſtle, and the Number of the Garriſon; the Centinel inform'd his Officer of the Queſtion, who pretending thence to form a Suſpicion of a Deſign in the *Japaneſe*, jointly with the *Engliſh*, to ſurprize the Cittadel, cauſed the *Japaneſe* to be apprehended, and put to the Torture, and with him ſeveral other *Japaneſe*, and a *Portugueſe* who took care of the *Dutch* Slaves, thereby if poſſible to extort from them a Confeſſion of their being guilty of the Deſign above-mention'd; but they being quite ignorant of any ſuch thing, deny'd it; but being tortured four Days together, and finding no hopes of being releaſed, they ſubmitted to confeſs what their mercileſs Tormenters dictated to them.

WHEN they had brought the *Japaneſe* to this Confeſſion, they call'd up one *Abel Price*, an *Engliſh* Barber-Surgeon, and ſhew'd him the *Japaneſe* whom they had tortured, and told him that they had confeſs'd that the *Engliſh* were Confederates in the Conſpiracy of ſurprizing the Caſtle, and that if he did not confeſs the ſame, they would uſe him worſe than they had uſed them; and although he underwent ſome of their Cruelties before he would confeſs any Thing ſo much againſt his Conſcience or Knowledge, yet by their Tortures they brought him to confeſs what they order'd him, and that the *Engliſh* were concern'd in a Deſign to ſurprize the Fort of *Amboyna*; and then made uſe of him and the *Japaneſe* to be Evidences againſt the *Engliſhmen*, who were afterwards examined by various Tortures, the Barber and the miſerable *Japaneſe* not daring to deviate from what they ſaid, for fear of another Inundation of *Dutch* Cruelty.

THEIR different Methods of Torturing by Fire and by Water were as follow:

Way, of
Torture
by Water.

WHEN they torture by Water, they firſt hoiſt him up by the Hands with a ſtrong Cord upon a large Door, and having ſtretch'd his Hands as far aſunder as they could, they faſtened them to two Iron Staples fix'd in the Door-Poſts; his Feet about two Foot from the Ground were likewiſe ſtretch'd, and faſtened to Staples below in the ſame Poſts, his Head being no way confin'd or ſupported; then they ty'd a ſtrong thick Cloth, the lower Edge about his Neck, and the upper Part, growing wider in the Form of a Funnel, about his Head and Face; then they pour'd Water gradually upon his Head till the Cloth fill'd up to his Mouth and Noſtrils, and ſo higher, that (his Hands being confin'd) he muſt ſuck in the Water, or be ſuffocated for want of Breath, they ſtill pouring Water till his Body ſwell'd; the Water guſh'd out at his Ears and Noſe, and his Eyes almoſt ſtarting out of his Head; and when almoſt expiring, they let him down, let him diſgorge the Water; and if then he confeſs'd whatſoever they order'd him to confeſs, he was put aſide as an Evidence againſt thoſe who were next to be examin'd by Torture; but if he would not confeſs, he was hoiſted up again, and again, till if poſſible the Tortures extorted a Confeſſion from him, and then he was put aſide.

y Fire

BUT Fire being a more exquiſite Torment than Water, they had recourſe to that when Water Tortures would not prevail. It was thus: The Perſons being hoiſted up, and extended as before, they put lighted Candles to the Soles of their Feet, the Palms of their Hands, and to their Arm-pits, till the Fat dropt out; ſome they ſplit their Toes, or tore off their Nails one after another; they cut the Breaſts of others, and ramm'd in Gunpowder, and ſet it on Fire, that by theſe continued Tortures they might bring them to confeſs their being guilty of what they were unjuſtly accuſed of.

Greater
Cruelty.

AND what was yet more inhuman, when they had mangled and tormented two particular Gentlemen, Mr. *Clark* and Mr. *Thomſon*, in ſuch a barbarous Manner that it was thought impoſſible they ſhould ſurvive the Cruelty they had undergone, or that any thing but Death could relieve them, yet then they would not be ſo merciful as to execute them, but threw them into a Dungeon for five or ſix Days, in which Time their Wounds (not being ſuffer'd to be dreſt) putrified, and bred Maggots; and when they were ſo loathſome that the Stench could ſcarce be endured, they were fetch'd out and executed; *this being the only Way by which thoſe unfortunate Gentlemen could then be deliver'd from* Dutch *Barbarity*.

AFTER theſe two Gentlemen were in the Dungeon, they proceeded to examine *Griggs*, *Frido*, and ſome *Japaneſe*; the *Japaneſe* were firſt examined, and being cruelly tortured, accuſed *Griggs*, who having ſeen what the *Japaneſe* had ſuffer'd, confeſs'd all that the Fiſcal demanded of him, to avoid the Torture; then was *Frido* examined, but not confeſſing any thing, they brought him to the Torture by Water, which he endured very courageouſly; but being brought to the Torture by Fire, and feeling the Candles, he confeſs'd every thing they ask'd him, and ſo was remanded back to Priſon to accuſe the next.

THEN they brought Captain *Towerſon* to Examination, and ſhew'd him what others had confeſt of him, but he proteſting his Innocency, *S. Colſon* was ſent for to accuſe him, who was told that unleſs he would make good his former Coſeſſion againſt Captain *Towerſon*, he ſhould be tortured again; but between Conſcience and the Dread of Torture, he re-affirm'd what he had formerly ſaid as to Captain *Towerſon*, but did it with ſo much Horror that they ſent him back to Priſon, and brought out *Griggs* and *Frido* to accuſe Captain *Towerſon* to his Face, according to their Confeſſion when under Torture; but when they came before Captain *Towerſon*, his Conſcience atteſting his own Innocency, and he being ſenſible their Accuſation of him was extorted from them by Torture, he ſeriouſly charged them, *as they would anſwer at the dreadful Day of Judgment, that they ſhould ſpeak nothing but the Truth*, at which they both fell down upon their Knees before him, *begging him for God's ſake to forgive what they had ſaid againſt him*, and ſpeaking openly before them all, *that what they had confeſt againſt him was very falſe, and ſpoke on purpoſe to avoid the terrible Torments with which they ſaw others tortured*; whereupon the Fiſcal order'd them to be put to the Torture again, which they being affrighted at the Thoughts of, reſumed and corroborated their firſt Confeſſion againſt Captain *Towerſon*; and the Fiſcal, leſt they ſhould recant again, order'd them to ſet their Hands to their Confeſſion, which they not being willing to do, one of them boldly ask'd the Fiſcal *upon whoſe Head will this Sin lie, whether upon theirs who conſtrain'd them to confeſs what was falſe, or upon thoſe ſo conſtrain'd to confeſs*; the other, without waiting the Fiſcal's Anſwer, added, *you make us accuſe ourſelves and others of what is as falſe as God is true, God is witneſs that we are innocent as the Child unborn*.

THE next that was examined was Mr. *Witheral*, to whoſe Accuſation Captain *Towerſon* was called as an Evidence; but inſtead of accuſing he encourag'd him, and even to endure the Torture; ſaying, *O Mr.* Witheral, *ſpeak the Truth, and nothing but the Truth, as God ſhall put into your Heart.* Upon Captain *Towerſon*'s encouraging Mr. *Witheral* in ſuch a reſolute Manner, he was thruſt out, and *Witheral* brought firſt to the Water Torture, and then to that of the Fire; he by Reaſon of the

ex-

exquiſite Torment, ſubſcribed his Name to a Confeſſion againſt Captain *Towerſon*, in hopes to mitigate his own Suffering, though they both ſuffer'd together at laſt.

SEVERAL others were examined, but to expreſs what was laid to their Charge would be needleſs, ſince they were all condemned for the ſame (pretended) Crime, and upon the Evidence of thoſe whoſe Confeſſions had been extorted from them by unparalell'd *Dutch* Cruelties, and yet this arbitrary Sentence of Death was pronounced againſt the following twenty, *viz.*

Captain *Gabriel Towerſon*, Agent of the *Engliſh* at *Amboyna*.
Samuel Colſon, Factor at *Hitto*.
Emanuel Thomſon, Aſſiſtant at *Amboyna*.
Timothy Johnſon, Aſſiſtant there alſo.
John Witheral, Factor at *Cambello*.
John Clark, Aſſiſtant at *Hitto*.
William Griggs, Factor at *Larica*.
John Frido, Steward of the Houſe.
Abel Price, Surgeon; and
Robert Brown, Taylor.
Beſides a *Portugueſe* and nine *Japaneſe*.

THESE were ſentenced *to be puniſhed with the Sword, in ſuch ſort as Death may enſue, with the Confiſcation of all their Goods*, &c. and ſign'd by *H. Van Speult*, being then the *Dutch* Governor of *Amboyna*.

SENTENCE being pronounced, the Execution ſucceeded, and the Condemn'd were brought out of their Confinement along by the Chamber where the Pardon'd ſtood, to take their laſt Farewel of them; they who were now going to ſuffer deſiring their Survivors to bear witneſs of their Innocency to their Friends in *England*, Mr. *Colſon* crying, *If I am guilty, more or leſs, of what I am charged with, may I never be a Partaker of the Joys of Heaven*; at which every one of the *Engliſh* ſaid, *Amen for me good Lord*; and being brought to the Place of Execution, they were all beheaded.

Seize Goods and Factories.

It might be expected after all this Barbarity, that we ſhould now ſay, Here ends the Tragedy of *Amboyna*, and all the *Dutch* Cruelty; but it is not ſo, for after they had thus ſacrificed the Lives of the *Engliſh*, they ſeized the *Engliſh* Goods and Factories at *Amboyna*, to the Value of four hundred thouſand Pounds, and ſent what *Japaneſe* they found to be Slaves in their own Iſlands.

WHEN they had thus plunder'd and murder'd the *Engliſh* at *Amboyna*, they went to the *Banda Iſlands*, and forcibly took Poſſeſſion of ſuch of them as they had not already, although they had been made over to the King of *England* by a voluntary Surrender of the Inhabitants and legal Proprietors; and thus without any Regard to Juſtice, or the ſolemn Contract expreſt in the foregoing Articles, and ſign'd but three Years before both by the *Dutch* and *Engliſh*, they, as if now reſolved to become Maſters of all the Spice Trade, have got into their Poſſeſſion the Iſlands of *Nero*, *Pooloroon*, *Pooloway*, *Lantor*, *Roſinging*; and the *Molucca Iſlands*, *Ternate*, *Tydore*, *Motyr*, *Machian*, *Bachian*, and ſeveral other Iſlands where the *Engliſh* had Goods and Factories, which they alſo ſeiz'd, making all their own before them, together with *Amboyna*, which they had made their own of courſe, by murdering and expelling the *Engliſh* that had Poſſeſſion, ſo that now all the Spice Trade is their own.

CAPTAIN *Welden* finding it in vain to pretend to hold out or contend any longer againſt the barbarous *Dutch*, whom no Law could govern, Contract bind, or Reaſon perſwade, he did not think it conſiſtent with the Honour and Profit of his Maſters the *Engliſh* Company, for him to ſtruggle any longer to hold a Reſidence at *Ambyna*, brought the poor Remnant of the *Engliſh* along with him that were yet left, and landed them at *Batavia*, from whence they were ſent to *Banda*, and by the firſt Opportunity ſent to their native Country *England*, to bewail their broken Fortunes, and the inhuman Treatment of their dear Allies the *Dutch*.

Th
ſent
Eng

The Molucca's *and* Spice Iſlands *above-mentioned, lie near and to the Southward of the Equinoctial, to the Eaſtward of the Iſland of* Celebes *or* Macaſſar; *but we need not enlarge upon the Situation of them, that being beſt underſtood by the Map of* China, Japan, *the* Philippine Iſlands, *&c. which will be inſerted within a few Pages following.*



A

A

DESCRIPTION

OF THE

SUNDA *ISLANDS.*

CHAP. I.

A Deſcription of the Iſland of Borneo, *as to its Situation, Trade and Product; and alſo of the Manners and Cuſtoms of the Inhabitants.*

THESE Iſlands are call'd *Sunda Iſlands* from the Straits ſo called, which is the Paſſage between *Sumatra* and *Java*. The chief of the *Sunda Iſlands* are *Borneo*, *Sumatra* and *Java*; and firſt of *Borneo*.

BORNEO extends from about the eighth Degree of North Latitude to the fourth Degree South, it lying under the Equinoctial, and the Middle of it being in about 112 Degrees of Longitude Eaſt from *London*. It lies between *Malacca* and the Iſland of *Celebes* or *Macaſſar*, having *Java* on the South, and the *Philippine Iſlands* on the North Eaſt.

Air. THIS Iſland is not ſo exceſſive hot as might be expected, conſidering that it lies under the Equinoctial, for all Places in that Situation, eſpecially Iſlands, are frequently refreſhed with Showers and Breezes, which helps to allay the exceſſive Heat proceeding from the perpendicular Rays of the Sun; and if with this we conſider that the Days under the Equinoctial is no more (nor leſs) than twelve Hours, the Sun is abſent as long as it is preſent, which gives the Earth a great Opportunity to cool, which is a Reaſon why this Climate is not ſo exceſſive hot as might otherwiſe be expected.

THE vaſt Multitude of Frogs and Water Inſects which the Water leaves behind it, and which the Heat of the Sun immediately kill, cauſeth ſuch a Stench that it makes the Air unhealthy, eſpecially to *European* Conſtitutions; but the Views of Advantage makes even Death itſelf not appear ſo terrible.

Monſoons. THE Monſoons or periodical Winds here are Weſterly from *September* to *April*, during which Time their wet Seaſon continues, which conſiſts of heavy Rains, and violent Storms of Thunder and Lightning, and then the Rains are ſo perpetual, that there is ſcarce two Hours together of fair Weather, eſpecially on the South Coaſt of the Iſland, whither the *Europeans* chiefly reſort; and what they call the dry Seaſon begins in *April*, and continues till *September*; but yet in this Seaſon they ſeldom miſs of a Shower every Day, which cools the Air, and refreſhes the Earth, making it more wholſome than it would otherwiſe be: This Shower commonly comes on with the Sea Breeze.

Harbours. THE principal Harbours in *Borneo* are *Banjar Maſſeen*, *Borneo* and *Succadana*, but *Banjar Maſſeen* is a Place of greater Trade, and more frequented by *Europeans* than either, or even both the other two, the greateſt Quantities of Pepper growing in that Part of the Iſland, which is the Reaſon that it is call'd by ſome the *Pepper Country*. The Town of *Banjar* formerly ſtood about twelve Miles up the River, and was built partly upon Pillars, and partly upon Floats, to ſecure them from the Inundations in the wet Seaſons, but now there is no appearance of a Town there, the Inhabitants being removed further up into the Country.

THE City of *Borneo* is the Capital, and was the Reſidence of the King or Sultan of *Borneo*; it is ſituate on the North Weſt Coaſt of the Iſland, and is a good Harbour, though a Place of no great Trade. *Succadana* is on the Weſt or South Weſt Part of the Iſland, and was formerly the chief Place of Trade in the Iſland.

Banjar River. THE River *Banjar*, near the Mouth of it, is about twice as broad as the *Thames* at *Graveſend*; here the Tides ebb and flow but once in twenty four Hours, and flow only in the Day-time, which ſome impute to the Land-winds blowing much ſtronger in the Night than in the Day.

Houſes. THE Towns whither the *Europeans* Trade are moſtly built upon Floats of Timber upon the River, and form one long Street; their Partitions are ſplinter'd Cane or Bambou, and their Roofs cover'd with Palmeto Leaves; ſome of the Houſes are built upon the *Ouze*, and ſtand upon Pillars to prevent their being drown'd by the Tides or Land-floods, and at low Water they go from one to another upon Pieces of Timber, ſo that both the Floating Houſes, and thoſe built upon Pillars, are ſecured from the Inundations, except when the Currents are ſo ſtrong that the former break from their Moorings, and then they ſometimes drive to the Sea.

Their Forts. UPON *China River*, or *Tatas River*, ſtands a City called *Caytongee*, the Reſidence of one of the Kings or Sultans of the Iſland; and about eighteen Miles below *Caytongee* there is a Wooden Caſtle, with about twelve Guns pointed down the River; but it is ill contrived, and out of Repair, as moſt of the reſt of their Forts are, and contributes but little to the Strength or Security of the Place.

Mahometans. THE Sea-Coaſts and Places of Trade are moſtly inhabited by *Mahometans*, and the *Byaos* or *Pagans* poſſeſs the Inland Country. The *Popiſh* Miſſionaries tell us, that the *Pagans* are the moſt docible of the two, and readier to embrace the Chriſtian Religion. The *Byaos* inhabit the Woods and *Byaos.* Mountains, and neither apply themſelves to Art

nor Trade, but employ and divert themſelves with keeping Cattle and Hunting, but are otherwiſe an unpoliſh'd Sort of People, compared to the *Banjareens* or *Moors*, who living upon the Coaſt, and by that means converſing with People of other Nations, are more Polite, and apt to learn what they ſee, and are of a peaceable Diſpoſition naturally; but if exaſperated, ſeldom leſs than the Life of their Enemy will ſatisfy their Revenge, and that in any private, baſe and malicious Manner, without any Regard to what is commonly call'd Honour, or genteely reſenting their Affronts.

Habit. The *Byayos* commonly go naked, except ſome light Thing caſt about their Middle, but they paint their Bodies of a bluiſh Colour, which at a Diſtance looks ſomething like Cloathing: They beſmear themſelves with a ſtinking Oil, and that, with the natural Smell of their Bodies, amounts to a nauſeous Stench, very diſagreeable to Strangers.

Food. The *Banjareens*, or thoſe who live by the Sea-Side, have long, ſhining, black Hair, low Stature; and the Men have but ordinary Features, but the Women much better; they are little, but well ſhap'd, and very engaging Carriage. The Dreſs of the common People is much like that of the *Byayos*. They live in a very hoſpitable and friendly Manner amongſt themſelves. Their Food is chiefly boil'd Rice, Fowls, Eggs, Fiſh and Venniſon. The Diſhes or Bowls uſed at Great Men's Tables are commonly Gold or Silver; but the Poor uſe Braſs or Earthen Ware. Their common Way of Sitting is croſs-legg'd, whether at Victuals or not: They are perpetually chewing of Betel and Arek, as in other Places in *India*, except when eating, drinking, or ſmoaking; for both Men and Women ſmoak, having their Tobacco mix'd with Opium thus: They boil Opium in Water till it comes to a Conſiſtency, and make it up in Pills as big as a Pea, and put it into the Pipe amongſt the Tobacco; all the Company uſe but one Pipe, which the Maſter of the Houſe lights, and ſo it paſſes round the Company from one to another, as we do in drinking.

Drink. Their uſual Drink is Water or Tea, their Religion prohibiting ſtrong Liquor; but they will ſometimes grant themſelves a Diſpenſation, and drink both Wine and Arrack among the *Europeans*, as freely as they will themſelves.

Diverſion. They divert themſelves with Dancing and Comedies, as in ſome other Eaſtern Countries, (*See Chap. II. of* Japan; *Chap. II. of* Tonquin, *and Chap. III. of* Siam.) And beſides, their moſt manly Diverſions are ſhooting at a Mark and Hunting, the latter of which they do not take ſo much Pains in as ſome of our *Europeans* do; for having rouz'd the Game, they ſurround it and wound it on every Side, that it is ſoon diſpatch'd by the multitude of Wounds, it being reckon'd ſo great an Honour to be ſaid to have given the Game one Wound, that ſome of them rather than fail, will dart a Spear at him after he is dead.

Travel by Land. The *Banjareens* travel moſtly in cover'd Boats, and moſtly in the Night, for the coolneſs of the Air; and theſe Veſſels, being built ſharp and narrow, ſail with an incredible Swiftneſs; but when they travel by Land they uſe Elephants or Horſes, but the Poor, who cannot procure them, do, as in other Places, walk on Foot.

Trade. The *Engliſh* Factory at *Borneo* having affronted the *Banjareens*, by ſome Indignity offer'd to the Sultan of *Cayongee*, they rejected the *Engliſh Eaſt India* Company, and would not trade with them as a Company, though they allow'd a Commerce with ſeparate Traders; ſo that what Ships went in the Company's Service never durſt own, when in the Country, that they were employ'd by the Company. They had no Quarrel with the *Engliſh* Nation, but reckon'd them a brave, generous People, and fair Dealers; but for the Affront they charged the Company with, they could not be reconciled to them.

Pepper. The chief Goods which this Country produces to maintain a Commerce with our Merchants, is, Pepper, Gold, and precious Stones; beſides other valuable Commodities brought thither from other Places, of which we ſhall give Account in its Place.

Goods. Goods proper to be carried to *Borneo* (beſides Dollars, which paſs as Money) are Guns, from one to two hundred Weight, Sheet-Lead, Calimanco, Knives, and moſt other Cutler's Ware, except Forks, which they never uſe; alſo Iron Bars, ſmall Steel Bars, Hangers, ſmall Spike-Nails, Twenty-penny Nails, Graplings of about forty Pound Weight, Red Leather Boots, Spectacles, Clock-Work, ſmall Arms mounted with Braſs Piſtols, Blunderbuſſes, Gunpowder, and Looking-glaſſes.

Gold. The Goods that are to be had there to the beſt Advantage, is Pepper, Gold, and Diamonds, if good ones are to be had, but they are very ſcarce at *Banjar*: The moſt advantageous Way of purchaſing Gold, is to agree for a certain Number of Dollars in Silver, for the Weight of one Dollar in Gold.

It is ſuppoſed by ſome, that it would be very much to the Advantage of the *Engliſh* if the Iſland of *Borneo* was made the Mart or Center of Trade, for there we may meet the *China* Ships, and be ſupplied with the Goods of that Country almoſt as cheap as at *China*, and is a ſhorter Voyage; and as for Cloves, Nutmegs, Mace, Gumbouge, Lignum, Aloes, Caſſia, and abundance of other valuable Commodities, the *Macaſſar* Prows bring great Quantities of them to *Borneo* about *September*, every Year, in Spite of what the *Dutch* can do to prevent it; and therefore if a Ship was there about the Beginning of *Auguſt*, he is there Time enough to purchaſe Pepper that is left of the laſt Year's Crop, which is reckon'd better than the new, and then is ready there againſt the coming of the *Macaſſar* Prows with the above-mention'd rich Goods, and alſo to treat with the *Chineſe* that live there, about ſuch Goods as they can furniſh you with, which you cannot have of the Natives.

Dragon's Blood. The Iſland of *Borneo* affords the beſt Dragon's Blood in the World: It is a Gum which iſſues from a Tree that bears a Fruit as red as a Cherry, and that which appears of the brighteſt Colour when rubb'd upon Paper is the beſt. The Country People expoſe it to Sale in ſmall Drops about an Inch long.

Gold. The Natives can ſo artificially cover baſe Metal with Gold, that though you cut a Bar, that is ſo cover'd, quite in two with a Chiſſel, to ſee the inſide of it, to prevent being cheated, yet the Gold is ſo cunningly laid on, that the Chiſſel will draw the Gold after it, and the baſe Metal cannot be diſcover'd; but the ſafeſt Way to detect the Cheat is to cut it half through and break it, and then the baſe Metal will appear.

When there is Iron Duſt among ſmall Gold, they ſeparate them by rubbing a Load-ſtone in a Diſh, or large Shell, amongſt the Metals ſo mix'd; the Particles of Iron ſtick to the Stone, but the Stone will not affect the Gold.

Bezoar. The fine *Monkey Bezoar* is worth about five times its Weight in Silver in *Borneo*: The beſt is of a greeniſh Colour, but the largeſt are thought to be Goats Bezoar; but they have a Cheat in this alſo, for they can make a Compoſition ſo like the true Bezoar, that it is hard to diſtinguiſh it; but the beſt Way to try it is by rubbing White-Lead, Lime, or Chalk, on a White Paper, and afterwards rub the Bezoar on the Paper, and if it

it be right it will turn the Lime, Chalk, &c. to a greeniſh Colour.

Navigation. Boats.

They have no great skill in Navigation, neither have they any large Ships nor undertaking any far diſtant Voyages. They have a ſort of Boat call'd a Prow, made of the Body of a tall Tree hollow'd, and made ſharp at both Ends, like the Stern of a Wherry; ſome of them are thirty Foot long, and not above two Foot broad; they have no Keel or Rudder, but ſteer with a Paddle; the Sail is made of a Matt, and is pretty large; they have Out-layers or long Pieces of Wood laid croſs at each End of the Boat from Side to Side, and reaching over without the Boat on both Sides; and when it over-blows, the Watermen run out to the Weather-end of thoſe Out-layers, or as far as there is occaſion, and by poizing her with their Weight, keep her from overſetting; theſe Veſſels being ſo narrow and able to carry ſo much ſail, will run at the rate of four and twenty Miles an Hour.

The only Grain they eat here, as in many other Places, is Rice; the Manner of cultivating has been deſcribed in the Hiſtory of ſome of the foregoing Countries; they have alſo Plenty of Cocoa-Nuts, Lemons, Oranges, Citrons, Plantains, Melons, Banana's, Pine-Apples, and other *Indian* Fruit; they have alſo the Cotton-Shrub, Canes, and very good Timber; but the chief Trade of the Iſland is in Pepper.

Pepper of four ſorts.

There is three ſorts of Black-Pepper in this Iſland; the beſt is called *Moluca* Pepper, the middle Sort is *Caytongee*, and the worſt is *Negaree*; but beſides them, there is another Sort called White-Pepper, from its being that Colour; this laſt is gather'd by poor People under the Pepper-Trees: this is accounted the beſt of all the four Sorts, perhaps becauſe it is not tore from the Tree when green, but hangs till it is full ripe, and its falling and lying under the Tree may occaſion its Whiteneſs; but if the Whiteneſs be occaſion'd by that Means, perhaps it might be as good with its own natural Colour.

Animal.

The Country affords Elephants, ſmall Horſes, Oxen, Buffaloes, Deers, and Goats, alſo ſeveral ſorts of Wild-Beaſts; as Bears, Tygers, and Monkeys, of which laſt there are vaſt Numbers and great Variety; but the moſt remarkable is the *Orang Outan*, or Man of the Woods; he is ſix Foot high, and walks upright like a Man; his Arms are ſomething longer than a Man's, he is not hairy but as other Men are, he is very ſtrong and nimble, and will throw Stones or any Thing that comes in his Way at any that provoke him. Captain *Beckman* had one of theſe Animals, and affirm'd that it would drink Punch and Brandy very heartily; he grew ſo faſt, that although he was but a Year old when he died, yet when alive and well, he was ſtronger than any Man in the Ship.

Man of the Woods.

Birds.

This Iſland affords ſcarce any of the Birds that *England* produces, except the Sparrow, but Parrots and Parrakeets of all ſizes. The *Lanee* is a beautiful Bird the bigneſs of a Parrot; his Feathers are a lively red, intermix'd with blew and green, and finely ſhaded; the *Engliſh* Captains often purchaſe ſome of them, but they ſeldom live to come into *England*.

Flying Cat.

There is another flying Animal in Colour, Shape, and Smell like a Fox, but leſs; ſome call it a Flying-Cat; when its Wings are extended it is five or ſix Foot from the Tip of one to the Tip of the other; theſe Bats or Flying Cats, during the Weſtern Monſoons, fly to the Eaſtward for two or three Hours in ſuch Shoals that they darken the Sky.

Fiſh.

They have ſtore of Sea and River Fiſh, and ſome that are known in *England*; but there is a Fiſh called the Cat Fiſh, becauſe it has a Head and Whiskers ſomething like thoſe of a Cat, the Fiſh is ſometimes five or ſix Foot long, but they have no Scales. There are Prawns in *Banjar* River ſix or eight Inches long, and large Rock-Oyſters.

Aſtronomy.

They underſtand but little of Mechanicks or Handicraft Trades, nor do they much ſtudy Phyſick or Aſtronomy; if they find the Sun or Moon eclipſed, they look upon them as being attack'd by ſome Celeſtial Dragon, and (as has been ſaid of other Eaſtern Countries) they never ceaſe beating and ſounding their Brazen Veſſels till the eclipſed Luminary recovers Light, and then they think the Dragon that encounter'd it, and deſign'd to deſtroy it, is expell'd.

Language

The Language ſpoken by the *Banjareens* and other *Moors* who inhabit the Coaſt is the *Malayan* Language, but the inland Country People, not having much Correſpondence with Foreigners, or the trading Part of the World, have a Language which few underſtand but themſelves.

Govern-ment.

Borneo is divided into ſeveral petty Kingdoms, but ſeldom content with their own Territories; their continual Encroachments upon one another, and their Succeſs therein, occaſions the enlarging of their Dominions to depend more upon Power than Property, ſo that ſometimes a King or Prince that can by any means over-power the reſt, is often call'd the Sultan of the whole Iſland.

Giving Audience.

The following Inſtance may ſerve as well as many more, as to the Method of giving Audience. When Captain *Beckman* had Audience of the Sultan of *Caytongee*, he was order'd to ſit croſs-legg'd on a Carpet before the Throne, but at a Diſtance from it; when the Sultan came in, there was brought before him two beautiful Children finely dreſt, carried in Arms, guarded by twelve Men arm'd; and upon the Approach of the King, the *Engliſh*, to do him the greater Honour, roſe up, which proved an Affront to him, becauſe his Subjects, as a token of Reverence, lifted up their Hands to their Heads, and fell upon their Faces, and when they approach their Prince, they creep to him upon their Knees, and retire in the ſame Poſture.

Weights and Meaſures.

Their current Money is chiefly Dollars, Half-Dollars, and Quarter-Dollars; but as common Caſh, or to purchaſe Things of ſmall Value, they have Strings of Rings of baſe Metal, which they give in proportion to the Value of what they purchaſe.

Their Weights are the Cattee and the Peeul, the Cattee is about two and twenty Ounces; their uſual Meaſure is the Ganton, which is about a *Winchester* Gallon.

Religion.

The *Byajos* or Mountaineers are Pagans, but the *Banjareens* which inhabit near the Sea-Coaſt are generally *Mahometans*, deſcending from thoſe who tranſported themſelves from *Africa*, *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and the *Oriental Iſlands*, ſome hundreds of Years ago, to form Colonies, and trade in the rich Spices that theſe Iſlands afford; they are very ſuperſtitious as to lucky and unlucky Days, telling Fortunes, and conſulting Conjurers, uſing Charms, believing the bewitching and unbewitching of People, as alſo of Apparitions, and the like; all which are ſo firmly believed and obſerved among them, that they who deny or queſtion the Truth of ſuch Things are deem'd as bad as Atheiſts.

Charms.

They impute their Sickneſs or Diſtempers to the Anger of ſome incenſed Demon, to pacify whom, and cure the Diſtemper, they make a little Pageant in form of a Boat, and fill it with various ſorts of Meat, as an Offering to their afflicting Demon, and then they launch the little Veſſel, and let it go adrift down the Stream, imagining that with it all the Diſtempers of the Sick are carried away; and that if any Perſon take up the Boat, or take any thing out of it, the Demon to whom it was devoted will either ſtrike them dead, or inflict the Diſtemper of the ſick Perſon upon them, for their Preſumption and Sacrilege.

I am

Marriages

THE Women marry at about eight Years of Age, and have Children soon after, and seldom have Children after five and twenty. Single Fornication is not much taken Notice of, nor is a Woman liked much the worse for having had a Gallant before Marriage, if she is but faithful to her Husband afterwards, as they most generally are, however they may have transgress'd before. Mr. *Beeckman* gives us the following particular Account of a Mahometan Wedding that he was invited to at *Borneo*.

A Wedding at *Borneo*

ALL the Partitions of a very large House was pull'd down, and the House all laid into one Room; the Sides were hung with the richest Cloaths, and the Floor cover'd with fine Cane Matts. At the upper End was a large Throne erected, with a Canopy over it, and Cushions and Pillows to lean upon.

ALL the Night before the Wedding, they kept beating upon their Brazen Drums, and other Brass Vessels, which made a Noise something like our rough Musick of Frying-pans, Gridirons, &c. and inferior to our Marrow-Bones and Cleavers: Next Morning Flags and Streamers were hung at the Door, and the Vessels in the River put out their Colours, and fired their Guns, (for their Houses being built upon Floats of Timber upon the River, were in the Neighbourhood with the Ships.) About the Middle of the Afternoon there was a handsome Dinner, and when they had eat plentifully, every one had a Basket given to carry Home what was left, and then Betel, Arek, and Opium went round, as strong Liquor and Tobacco does here upon such Occasions.

TOWARDS Evening a large Float of Timber came down the River, with a Pageant upon it, in Form of a Ship, and in the Middle of the Quarter-Deck was the Bridegroom upon a Throne. When this Machine came to the House where the Bride was, twelve young Virgins descended from it, each having a large Bowl of Gold, Silver, or Brass, in her Hand, in which were Presents from the Bridegroom to his Bride. She sat upon a Throne to receive them, and return'd Presents to him again.

WHEN the Bridegroom came to the Door of the House, the Priest met him, and after some Words speaking, he strew'd some Rice upon his Head, as a Ceremony of blessing him with future Plenty; at which the People gave a great Shout, and fired a Volley of Small-shot: Then he was led to the Bride, and seated on her Right Hand; and now they are married; and in a small Time the Company withdrew. The Men value themselves upon having a great Number of Wives and Concubines; but (as in some other Eastern Countries) he never has a Portion with her, but gives a Purchase for her to her Father, or who has the disposing of her.

Funerals

THEIR Funerals are solemnized as those of other Mahometans, retaining some Pagan Customs; as burying several Necessaries with the Deceased, for their Use in the other World: The Mourners are cloathed in white, and the Company usually carry lighted Torches in their Hands when they attend their Friend to the Grave. Their Burying-Places are generally up the River, on the Shore, out of the reach of the Floods; and they always lay the Head of the Corpse to the Northward.

CHAP. II.

A Description of the Island of Sumatra; *its Situation, Trade, and Product, with the Manners, Religion, and Customs of the Inhabitants.*

Sumatra.

THE Island of *Sumatra* extends nearly North West and South East, about three hundred Leagues in Length, and where broadest (which is towards the South Part of it) about sixty Leagues in Breadth; it is separated from *Java* only by the Straits of *Sunda*, and from *Malacca* by the Straits of *Malacca*, or the Straits of *Sincapore*. The Middle of it lies near the Equinoctial, from whence it extends to about five Degrees and a Half North Latitude, and as much South.

THE *English* Settlement at *Bencoolen* is reckon'd as unhealthy a Place as any in the Island, though at *Achin* (the Northermost Place of Note in the Island) Fevers are very common. The Monsoons here are much the same as in other Places to the Northward of the Line, only the wet Seasons begin rather sooner here than further towards the North, and are full as violent; but the Heat is not so intense here as near the Tropicks, for Reasons given in the Description of *Tonquin*.

IN this Island are good Roads, but few Harbours. *Achin* was the first Port where the *English* fix'd a Trade in this Island; Captain *Lancaster*, with the *English* Fleet under his Command, arriving here *June* 5, 1602; who, upon the first Opportunity, dispatch'd Captain *Middleton* to the King of *Achin*, desiring to be admitted to an Audience, and to have the Honour of delivering the Queen of *England*'s Letter to his Majesty.

THE King received Captain *Middleton* very kindly, and order'd him to assure his General (Captain *Lancaster*) that he might come ashore with as much safety as if in the Queen of *England*'s Dominions; and presented Captain *Middleton* with a Dress, or Suit, according to the Habit of the Country, as a Token of his Promise. Captain *Lancaster* went ashore accordingly, and was invited to a *Dutch* Factor's House, from whence six Elephants, with Drums, Trumpets, and Streamers, and a vast Retinue, fetch'd Captain *Lancaster* to Court. The largest Elephant was about fourteen Foot high, and carried a Machine upon his Back, by some call'd a Castle; it was somewhat like the Body of a Coach, cover'd with Crimson Velvet, and in the Middle of it stood a Gold Bason, in which the Letter from the Queen was put. Captain *Lancaster* was mounted upon another Elephant, some of his Retinue upon others, and the rest walked on Foot.

WHEN he was admitted to the King's Presence, he attempted to deliver his Charge or Message with an elegant Speech, forgeting, or not knowing, the Aversion those Eastern Princes have to long Harangues; but the King interrupted him, and, as if he knew what he designed to request, told him, that *he might depend upon all the Favours he could reasonably demand in Behalf of that Noble Prince's from whence he came, of whom Fame had spoken such great Things*.

THEN

THEN Captain *Lancaſter* deliver'd the Queen's Letter to the King, who gave it to one of his Officers that ſtood by; the Queen's Preſent was ſet before the King, conſiſting of a large Silver Baſon, with a Fountain in the Middle of it, weighing above two hundred Ounces, a great ſtanding Silver Cup, a fine Looking-Glaſs, a Head-piece with a Plume of Feathers, an embroider'd Sword-Belt, a Fan made of Feathers, and a fine Pair of Piſtols; he ſeem'd moſt pleas'd with the Fan, and immediately made one of his Women fan him with it.

The Queen's Preſent.

THE King was ſeated in a Gallery about ſix Foot above the Audience; he drank frequently to the Captain in a Glaſs of Arrack, who having pledg'd him once in that Liquor, drank what Liquor he pleaſed afterwards; after Dinner the King's Women dane'd after the Manner of the Country.

A Dance.

THE King then order'd Captain *Lancaſter* to be preſented with the Country Habit, with which he dreſt himſelf in his Majeſty's Preſence, and then they all withdrew, and went aboard their Ships.

THERE were two Noblemen order'd to treat with Capt. *Lancaſter* about ſettling an Alliance between Queen *Elizabeth* and the King of *Achin*, with Articles of Commerce, which were as follow: 1. That the *Engliſh* ſhould enjoy a free Trade in the King of *Achin*'s Dominions. 2. The *Engliſh* ſhould pay no Cuſtoms for Goods either imported or exported; and that the *Engliſh* ſhould be aſſiſted in caſe of Shipwreck, and the Goods reſtored to the Owners 3. That when an *Engliſhman* dies he ſhall have Liberty to bequeath his Effects as he pleaſes. 4. That all Bargains and Contracts with the King's Subjects ſhould be punctually perform'd. 5. That they ſhould have Power of doing juſtice and determining Differences among their own People. 6. That in caſe the *Engliſh* receive any Injury from the Natives, the King ſhall do them juſtice. 7. That no Seizure or Arreſt ſhould be made of the Perſons or Goods of the *Engliſh*. And, 8. that the *Engliſh* ſhould enjoy the free Exerciſe of their Religion; which Articles thus ſettled, the *Engliſh* began to buy up what Pepper they could get at *Achin*, and other Places in *Sumatra*.

Articles of Commerce.

WHILE the *Engliſh* were at *Achin*, the *Portugueſe* had their Spies out among them, and endeavoured as much as poſſible to obſtruct their Trade, which Captain *Lancaſter* being appriz'd of, and *England* being at War with *Portugal*, he reſolved to cruiſe upon them in the Streights of *Malacca*; where on the 3d of *October* 1602, he took a *Portugueſe* Carrack of nine hundred Tuns Burden; ſhe had on board, (beſides above ſix hundred Men, Women and Children,) nine hundred and fifty Bales of Chints or Callicoes, plain and painted, and abundance of other rich Merchandize.

Takes a Portugueſe Ship.

CAPTAIN *Lancaſter* return'd into *Achin* Road with his Prize, and made the King a Preſent of ſome of the moſt valuable Things he had taken in her. The King received the Preſent very graciouſly, congratulating him upon his Succeſs over the *Portugueſe*, who were then as troubleſome Neighbours almoſt as the *Dutch* are now where they come. The Captain having diſpatch'd his Affairs, ſettled Factors at *Achin*, and had his Audience of Leave of the King, who ſent by him a Letter to his Miſtreſs, our renowned Queen *Elizabeth*; he alſo ſent to her Majeſty a Preſent of a Habit of rich Embroider'd Silk, and a Ring with a fine Ruby ſet in it; and alſo preſented the Captain with a Ring of the ſame ſort, aſſuring him that when any of the *Engliſh* arrived in his Ports, they ſhould meet with the ſame kind Uſage as he had met with; the fulfilling of which Promiſe is experienc'd to this Day, by the *Engliſh* trading to any Port of that Kingdom, but eſpecially to the Port of *Achin*.

Preſent to Queen Elizabeth.

CAPTAIN *Lancaſter* having diſpatch'd the *Aſcenſion* and *Sufan* for *England* from *Sumatra*, laden with Pepper, made the beſt of his Way for *Bantam* in *Java*, where he arrived the 5th of *December*, and ſent Vice-Admiral *Middleton* aſhore to acquaint the Court at *Bantam* with his Arrival, and being invited to Court, he found the King a Boy of ten or eleven Years of Age, ſitting in a large Room among his Nobles. At his Approach the young King bid him welcome, and ſmiling, received her Majeſty's Letter and Preſents, and referred him to the Protector of *Bantam* to treat with about Articles of Commerce, which being ſettled and agreed upon, Captain *Lancaſter* took a Houſe, and landed his Goods, and expoſed them to Sale; but the Cuſtom being here as in ſome other Eaſtern Countries, that the King is to have the firſt Refuſal, accordingly the King's Officers came and purchas'd what they liked beſt, and in leſs than five Weeks they diſpoſed of ſo much Goods that they purchaſed Pepper and other Spices ſufficient to load both their Ships; and having ſettled a Factory at *Bantam*, he took his Leave of the young King, who gave him a Letter and a Preſent of ſome fine Bezoar Stone for his Miſtreſs Queen *Elizabeth*; and then the Captain in the *Dragon*, in Company with the *Hector*, ſet ſail for *England*, arriving in the *Downs* the 11th of *December* 1603, having made a profitable Voyage for the Company.

Comes to Bantam.

Returns to England.

ACHIN is the Metropolis of *Sumatra*, and ſituate on the North-Weſt End of the Iſland, in a Plain ſurrounded with Woods and Marſhes near a pleaſant River, and within half a League of the Sea; the Town lies open without Wall or Moat; but the Palace, which is in the Middle of it, is encompaſs'd with a Moat of twenty five Foot broad, and the ſame in Depth; about the Palace, inſtead of Walls, are caſt up great Banks of Earth, planted with Canes or Bambou, ſo prodigious numerous and high, that it makes the Palace inacceſſible, except by the Gates and Avenues, and theſe Bambou's being always green, are not eaſily ſet on fire.

Achin the Metropolis.

Palace.

IN the City of *Achin* is ſeven or eight thouſand Houſes, which makes the City very ſpacious, becauſe the Houſes are not contiguous, every Perſon of Note ſurrounding his Houſe with Paliſadoes at ſome diſtance from it; but in the Market-Places, or in any Street inhabited by any particular Set of Strangers, whether *Chineſe*, *Europeans*, &c. the Houſes join, or are near to one another, the better to defend themſelves from Thieves, with whom this City is much infeſted.

IT is needleſs to ſpend time in the Deſcription of their common Building, the Country being ſubject to the ſame ſort of Inundations, and therefore the Houſes built on Pillars, as deſcribed in *Chap.* II. *of the Deſcription of* Siam, exactly anſwers this.

THEIR Moſques or *Mahometan* Temples, of which there are a great many, are built with Stone, and roof'd with Tiles; they are not tall nor have any Steeples. There are Traders from ſeveral Nations inhabit here, as from *England*, *Holland*, *Denmark*, *Portugal*, *Guzarat*, and *China*, the Inhabitants of which laſt Place are moſt numerous, and drive the greateſt Trade.

THERE are ſeveral other once conſiderable Places of Trade, but now of little Note, and the following Map will beſt diſcover their Situation; *Jambe* or *Jambe* is a conſiderable Settlement now belonging to the *Dutch*; *Palimbam* alſo was once the Metropolis of a flouriſhing Kingdom, but falling a Victim to the deſtructive Torrent of *Dutch* Cruelty, they were reduced, but revolted (as thoſe Uſurpers call'd it,) and regain'd their antient Liberties.

BENCOOLEN is the next, and indeed the moſt remarkable Place to us; the Town is almoſt two Miles in Compaſs, the Houſes moſtly built upon Bambou Pillars to guard againſt the Inundations, that this as well as other Eaſtern Countries are ſubject to; it ſtands upon a ſtinking Moraſs, very unhealthy to

Bencoolen.

English Conſtitutions; nor were the *Engliſh* ſafe in this low Situation againſt the Inſults of the Natives, ripe for Rebellion againſt them, and therefore they mark'd out a Fort upon a riſing Ground, two or three Miles to the Southward of *Bencoolen*, and call'd it *Marlborough* Fort, which they had rais'd in Brick and Mortar a Foot or more above-ground; but the Country combined ſecretly againſt the *Engliſh*, and form'd a Plot with a Deſign to put it in Execution, while the *Engliſh* had no Ship in the Road to aſſiſt them.

Deſtruction of the Settlement at *Bencoolen.*

On the 23d of *March* late at Night, Capt. *Gibbs* inform'd the *Engliſh* Deputy-Governor that the Governor of *Bantam* had muſter'd between four and five hundred Men in his own Territories, which created a Suſpicion that they intended to attack the *Engliſh*, whereupon the ſaid Deputy-Governor ſent Orders to him immediately to diſperſe the Men he had ſo aſſembled, and to come himſelf to the Fort next Morning, and if he had any juſt Complaints they ſhould be redreſs'd; but if he rejected this Propoſal, he would no longer eſteem him as a Friend, but treat him as an Enemy; next Morning he ſent a civil but trifling Anſwer, but not diſcarding his Men, which continued and increas'd our Suſpicion, and not without good Cauſe; for while this was a doing our Sugar Plantations were ſet on fire about ſix in the Evening.

Upon this a ſtrong Party were ſent out to engage the Enemy where ever they met them, and to deſtroy as many as they could; but the *Malayan* Kings not furniſhing them with Boats according to their Promiſe, they could only fight croſs the River, but could not do much Execution; the *Engliſh* therefore muſter'd all their Forces of *Engliſh*, *Macaſſars*, *Blacks*, and *Chineſe* againſt thoſe Invaders; but when they came to *Bencoolen*, the *Macaſſar* Soldiers having another Deſign on foot, refuſed to fight without preſent Pay, a ſtrong Party of them at the ſame Time lying in Ambuſh to fall upon the *Engliſh*.

Ambuſh

Being thus involved, and finding it in vain to contend, when even our own Forces, as we call'd them, betray'd us, we conſulted an Eſcape rather than a Victory, and how to ſave ourſelves rather than to hurt our Enemies; and ſent the Company's Treaſure aboard the *Medlapatam*; the *Malayans* at the ſame Time deſerting us, or thoſe of the *Malays* that ſtill remain'd at *Bencoolen* had riſen and join'd the *Macaſſars*, and been guilty of barbarous Murders. Thus Meſſage was fearce deliver'd till Fires were obſerved breaking out at *Bencoolen*, another at a Houſe behind the Fort belonging to the Company, and in ſeveral other Places about the ſame Time, which we ſuppoſed was done by our own *Malays*, becauſe no publick Enemy then appear'd againſt us; and thus our Fort and Buildings being moſtly deſtroy'd by Fire, every one endeavoured to ſave himſelf; thoſe that could not get the help of a Boat, ſwam aboard the *Medlapatam* (or drown'd by the Way) We loſt near half of our People by drowning or the Enemy; and near three hundred and fifty black and white Men, Women, and Children got ſafe on board, and from thence made the beſt of our Way for *Batavia*.

Eight come from Batavia to England

The *Engliſh* being thus expell'd from *Bencoolen*, the Natives and *Malayans* begun to apprehend their Caſe worſe than before, fearing that becauſe the merciful *Engliſh* were expell'd, the tyrannical *Dutch* would inſult them more than ever, and lay Iron Yokes upon their Necks which they were not able to bear; and therefore they ſoon laid aſide all Animoſity, and encouraged the *Engliſh* to ſettle among them again; whereupon they finiſh'd *Marlborough* Fort without Oppoſition; and for the wholſom Air and Soil in which it is ſituate, though but three or four Miles from *Bencoolen*, they chuſe it as well for a Habitation as a Defence, but it anſwers both, for *Marlborough* Fort is much more defenſible as well as much more healthy, than *York* Fort at *Bencoolen*.

Inhabitants.

This Iſland of *Sumatra* is peopled from different and diſtant Nations; the Inland Mountaineers are generally Pagans, and deſcended probably from the *Chineſe*; but thoſe near the Sea Coaſt, from *Arabia*, and *Perſia*, and other Nations, profeſſing the Religion, and retaining the Manners and Cuſtoms of the *Mahometans*.

Genius and Temper.

The *Malayans* that inhabit this Coaſt are generally, like the *Spaniards*, proud and lazy, and have moſt of their Buſineſs done by Foreigners; they have no Genius for Arts or Sciences, and either through Ignorance or Indolence, they do not delight in cultivating their Ground, or improving in Mechanick Arts.

Complexion.

They are of a ſwarthy Complexion, middle Stature, ſtrait and well-limb'd, flat Faces, little Noſes, ordinary Features, ſtrait black Hair, and black Eyes; they black their Teeth as in ſeveral other Eaſtern Countries, and beſmear themſelves with ſtinking Oil as in *Borneo*. They wear red Woollen Caps without Brims, but moſt commonly tie a piece of blew or white Linnen about their Heads, letting the Ends hang down, having no covering for their Crown but their Hair, which is pretty long, and hangs upon their Shoulders; the poorer Sort wear only a narrow Cloth about their Middle, but People of Figure have cloſe Drawers or Breeches, and a Piece of Silk or Callico thrown looſe about their Bodies; they wear a kind of a Wooden Clog or Sandal about home, but when they go abroad every one, both Rich and Poor, go barefoot.

Habit.

Food.

Here, as in other Parts of *India*, the common Food for the middling People is Rice and Fiſh, but the better Sort have Fowls, Mutton, Goats-Fleſh, Buffaloes-Beef, and Veniſon; they ſeaſon their Meat very high with Pepper, Onions, and Garlick, and colour their Rice yellow with Turmerick; their Fowls and Mutton are dry and inſipid, and for Pork, which is the beſt Meat in hot Countries, they have but little of; their Veniſon is pretty good, eſpecially the Hog-Deer, which is ſomething bigger than a Rabbet, and his Fleſh is very white; their Ducks are much better than their Land Fowls; they have a liquid Butter like Oil brought from *Bengall*, made of Buffaloes Milk and Hog's Fat mix'd; they have very good Pickles of Mangoes and other Fruit, pickled green.

Veſſels.

Their Meat is ſerved up in Silver, Brazen, or Earthen Veſſels, according to the Quality of the Perſon that is Maſter of the Houſe, and is boil'd or broil'd, and cut in little Pieces; they ſqueeze the Rice between their Fingers into Balls or Morſels, as big as their Mouths will hold, and ſo cram them in, putting a little piece of their Meat or Fiſh to reliſh it; they uſe no Knives or Linnen at their Meals, but waſh both before and after.

Liquors.

Their moſt common Liquor is fair Water or Tea; they drink alſo Toddy, (drawn from the Branches of the Cocoa-Tree when cut;) alſo Arrack, a Liquor drawn from Rice and Sugar-Canes, is very common; and the *Chineſe* bring their Hockſhue and Samſhue, which the *Europeans* love almoſt as well as they do Arrack Punch.

The Cuſtom is here, as in others of thoſe Eaſtern Countries, to chew Betel and Arek, or take Opium, Bang or Tobacco between Meals; Bang raiſes their Spirits almoſt as ſoon as Opium; it is like Hemp, and when they intend to take it, they infuſe it in their Liquors, and drink it: they ſeldom uſe Pipes to ſmoak Tobacco, but roll up a Leaf about the bigneſs of a Man's Finger, and lighting it at one End, they ſmoak it at the other, till it is beſt half out, and then throw it away; they ſeldom drink when they ſmoak.

Their

THEIR manner of Salutation is much the ſame with that of the *Siameſe*, to which the Reader is referr'd for a further Deſcription of it.

FOR Gaming they deviſe Cards, Dice, and Cock-fighting; but they do not trim their Cocks as the *Europeans* do, but think it an Ornament to bring them out in their gayeſt Plumage, with murdering Inſtruments fix'd to their Heels, about the Shape and Length of a Penknife-Blade, ſo that one advantageous ſtroke often determines the Battle. They will ſtake very high upon a Cock-fight; but the Cuſtom is, the Battle is not allow'd to be won, nor the Conqueſt allow'd, except the Victor will peck or ſtrike his Enemy after he has diſpatch'd him, for if he does not the Stakes are drawn.

Game. STAG-HUNTING is one of their chief Sports. The Game is firſt rouz'd by ſome little yelping Curs; and the Huntſmen, who are almoſt naked, run it down on Foot, darting their Launces, when they come within a proper Diſtance, and ſo killing it; ſo that there is no great Diverſion in their Way of Hunting.

Carriages. THEY ſometimes uſe Elephants, Horſes, and Buffaloes for Carridge, but more commonly Porters, where they have not the Advantage of a Navigable River; and they travel for the moſt part on Foot.

Trade. THE Port of *Achin* is the chief Place of Trade in the Iſland. When the *Engliſh* arrive they apply to the Governour for Liberty to Trade. At their firſt going aſhore they are examined at the great Quala, or River's Mouth, whiat Country, or Buſineſs, they are of: of which they give Notice to the proper Officers that are appointed to ſettle Commerce with all Foreigners. The *Engliſh* are only ſworn to obſerve the Articles formerly made between the King of *Achin* and Captain *Lancaſter*, as before expreſs'd. They muſt alſo bring a Letter from the Chief of the Place from whence they came, to the Sabandar, to certify him that they belong to the *Engliſh* Company. They alſo ſwear to be faithful to the Government while they remain at *Achin*, which Oaths are taken before the *Sabandar* by the principal Officers of the Ship, with a Ceremony of lifting up a ſhort Dagger in a Gold Cafe, three times to their Heads; and this is performed with great Gravity and Seriouſneſs, to make it have the greater Impreſſion.

THE *Engliſh* Supercargoes (till very lately) have enjoy'd the Privileges mention'd in the foregoing Articles of Trade, paying no Duties, but only making the uſual Preſents, *viz.* two Pieces of fine Cotton Cloth to the King at firſt coming aſhore, and two more at coming away, and ſomething to the Eunuch that delivers the Preſents: There is alſo a Piece of Silk or Callico preſented to the Sabandar, and another to the chief Miniſter of State, at the ſame time when the firſt Preſents are made to the King; and as ſoon as that is done, the Supercargoes hire Houſes to lodge the Goods they purchaſe as they come in. There are no Boats to be hired at *Achin* for loading or unloading of Goods, but every Ship makes uſe of her own Boats. There are two things previouſly neceſſary to be ſettled in order to trade with them, *viz.* what Cattee you intend to buy and ſell by, for they are different, as our Pounds are, and if in *England* a Perſon ſhould intend to buy by *Avoirdupoiſe*, but not naming it, as perhaps not knowing of any other, they ſell by *Troy*, they have but three of their intended Pounds inſtead of four, and a Remedy would be difficult to be obtain'd, becauſe they have the Number of Pounds agreed for, and the Kind of Pound was not mentioned. The ſecond thing to be agreed upon is, at what Rate you are to receive or pay untold Gold (which is oftner uſed than Coin) for if that is not pre-determined you will be as much at a loſs to know how much Gold to give for any Quantity of Goods bought, as if the Price of the Goods had not been ſettled; for if a Man buy a Tun of Sugar at Six-pence a Pound to be paid for in Broad-cloth, it is eaſy to know what the Sugar will come to, but impoſſible to know how much Broad-cloth will pay for it, till the Price of the Cloth, by ſome certain Meaſure, be firſt determined.

IN order the better to underſtand what has been or may be ſaid as to the Way of Trade, it may not be amiſs here to give an Account of their Coins and Weights reduced to the *Engliſh*; and firſt of their Coins, which are the Cattee, the Tael, the Maſs, and the Cupan; a Cattee is eight Tael, or ſix Pound eight Shilling Sterling; a Tael is ſixteen Maſſes, or ſixteen Shillings Sterling; and conſequently a Maſs is four Cupans, or one Shilling Sterling, every Cupan being Three-pence. Coins.

THE common Weight is the Bahar, of two hundred Cattees, every Cattee twenty nine Ounces *Avoirdupoiſe Engliſh*, which is three hundred and ſixty two Pound and a half *Engliſh*, but reckon'd three hundred and ſixty ſubtle. Weights.

THE Inhabitants of *Sumatra* are ſhy and cautious with all *Europeans*; ſince the *Dutch* have ſerved them ſo ill, they will not trade with them at all. The *Engliſh* are moſt encouraged, but their Trade precarious upon any Alteration of Government, and eſpecially of late the Miſunderſtandings between the Government of *Achin* and the *Engliſh* Company has very much interrupted their Trade.

THE chief Product of *Sumatra* is Pepper and Gold Duſt; the latter is moſtly near the Equinoctial. Here is alſo good Camphire, the beſt is in ſmall Bits, white and tranſparent. The Bezoar-ſtone is alſo found here; it is taken out of the Hog-Deer before deſcribed, and is valued worth ten times its Weight in Gold; it is a dark brown, and ſmooth on the Outſide, and when the firſt Coat is off, it appears ſtill darker, and will ſwim on the Water. The Porcupine Bezoar is reddiſh; the Monkey Bezoar is a light Green and ſhining. Product.

THE Pepper Plant not being able to ſupport it ſelf, but like a Vine creeping at what is next to it, they plant a Thorn-Tree by it, along whoſe Branches it runs; the Berries grow in Cluſters about the Form and Size of a Bunch of Grapes. The Vine (for ſo they call the Pepper-Tree) bears no Fruit the firſt three Years, but the fourth it bears, and increaſes till the eighth Year, and then declines the ninth and tenth, and ſeldom bears more. The Leaf is like Ivy, but larger; their beſt Crop is ready in *September* or *October*, and they have a ſmall or ſecond Crop in *March* or *April*. Pepper Plant.

RICE is the chief Grain upon which they depend for Food; but the Country doth not produce enough to ſupply it ſelf, without importing from other Places. Next to Pepper and Rice, their moſt conſiderable Plantations are Sugar Canes, which they improve chiefly for the ſake of the Arrack and Spirits they extract from them. They have in their Gardens, Peaſe, Beans, Raddiſhes, Yams, Pumpkins, and Potatoes of three or four Inches long, red without, and white within, as ſome in *England*. They have alſo Limes, Plantains, Pine apples, Cocoa-nuts, Citrons, Oranges, Pump noſes, Mangoes, Pomegranates, and the Mangoſteen, a moſt delicious Fruit, like a Pomegranate, but leſs. Rice. Fruit.

THE Silk Cotton-Tree grows about *Achin*, the Fruit hangs down at the Ends of the Twigs like Purſes, three or four Inches long, and when they are ripe, they drop off, and they gather them, and take out the Cotton for Uſe or Sale. Silk-Cotton.

THE

Minerals. THE Minerals that *Sumatra* chiefly produces is Gold and Tin. The Gold Mines are in Poſſeſſion of the Mountaineers; they exchange it with the Inhabitants of the Coaſt or flat Country, for Rice, Cloaths, Tobacco, and other Neceſſaries, and they ſell it to the *Europeans*.

THE Beaſts that are moſt common here are ſmall Horſes, Buffaloes, Goats, Hogs, Elephants, Deer, Hog-Deer, and a few Bullocks, ſeveral Kinds of Tygers, Monkeys, and wild Hogs; alſo Guanoes, Lizards, Crocodiles, Snakes, Serpents, Ants, Musketoes, and other troubleſome Inſects: They have Plenty of Fowls and Ducks, and in the Woods are wild Pigeons, Parrots, and ſeveral other Birds, beautiful to look upon, but none that excel for Melodiouſneſs of Voice.

Laws and Puniſhments. THEY have no written Laws but what relates to Religion, and are recorded in the Alchoran; otherwiſe the moſt antient Cuſtoms are look'd upon as Laws, and the moſt antient People are conſulted in the moſt difficult Caſes. If a Precedent can be remember'd, it is thought ſufficient to form a Judgment from in the Caſe depending. Murder and Adultery are puniſh'd with Death, in which Caſe they have no regular Executioner, but all, under the higheſt Reſentment of ſo heinous a Fact, fall upon the Criminal, and ſtab and mangle him with their Crices or Daggers; yet they ſhew ſo much Tenderneſs to female Offenders, that they ſtrangle them at once, and do not expoſe them to ſuch a cruel, and ſometimes lingering Death. For Theft they cut off one Joint or more from the Criminal's Fingers or Toes, according to the Nature of the Crime. The third Offence is always Death. Civil Cauſes are judged by Precedents of the like Kind, produced by antient Men, and when compared with them, are finally determined by the Opinion of the Magiſtrate before whom it is brought. Civil Cauſes.

THE Religion of this People being generally Mahometiſm, we ſhall defer any further Deſcription of it till we come to treat of thoſe Places where it is the eſtabliſhed Religion. This Government allows Concubines and Plurality of Wives; they alſo allow of Divorce, if the Crime be thought ſufficient to deſerve it, of which the Prieſt is the Judge: he that join'd them together being thought the propereſt Judge as to the Caſe of a Divorce. The Prieſt alſo attends the Funeral Rites, which being perform'd in much the ſame Manner as at *Macaſſar*, we ſhall refer the Reader to that for further Satisfaction.

CHAP. III.

Of the Iſland of Java; *its Trade and Product; the Monſoons and Currents in the adjacent Seas; the Cuſtoms and Manners of the People,* &c.

THIS Iſland is by ſome call'd *Java Major*, to diſtinguiſh it from a little Iſland call'd *Baly*, and by ſome *Java Minor*, which lies near the Eaſt End of it. *Java* is ſeparated from *Sumatra* on the North Weſt of it, only by the Straits of *Sunda*; it has *Borneo* on the North, the Iſland *Baly* or *Bally* on the Eaſt, and the *Indian* Ocean on the South. It is about ſix hundred Miles in Length, and an hundred Miles in Breadth, or in ſome Places more.

Air. THE Air of this Iſland is not very wholſome, by reaſon of the abundance of ſalt Marſhes, from whence pernicious Fogs ariſe; and it is obſerved, that if the Sea Water be taken up and kept twenty four Hours, it will corrupt ſo as to ſtink and be very nauſeous; therefore when the Salt Water overflows the Meadows, and afterwards ſtands to corrupt there, it makes the Air very unhealthy.

Monſoons. THE worſt Weather upon the North Coaſt of *Java*, and as far Eaſt as the Iſlands of *Sola* and *Timor*, is with the Weſterly Winds, which commonly begin the firſt Week in *November*: In *December* the Wind and Rain increaſes, and ſo continues till *January*, when it is at the worſt, and continues ſo till *February*, after which time the Wind and Rain abates till the latter End of *March*. In *April* the Weather grows fair, with variable Winds and Calms, and about the Beginning of *May* the Wind ſettles Eaſterly, and in *June* and *July* often brings Rain; but the Eaſterly Monſoons blow hardeſt in fair Weather, and continues till the latter End of *September*, and in *October* the Winds are variable, and in the Beginning of *November* the Weſterly Monſoon ſets in again, &c. but the Monſoons happen ſometimes ten or fifteen Days ſooner or later than the Times above expreſſ. Currents. THE Currents always ſet along the Shore the Way the Wind blows.

THE Capital of this Iſland is a City called by the ſame Name *Java*, or by ſome *Mataram*, and its King is the moſt potent in all the Iſland. And next to *Java* was *Bantam*, the chief Place of Trade for moſt *Europeans*. Here the *Engliſh* ſettled their principal Factory, and the *Dutch* had another, till the King of *Bantam*, not able longer to bear the inſolent Encroachments of the *Dutch*, expell'd them to *Batavia*, where they fortified themſelves ſo ſecurely, that when the King of *Batavia* was alſo weary of them, they bid defiance to his Forces, nor have all the united Powers of the *Javan* Princes ever ſince been able to expel them.

Bantam *BANTAM* is the weſtermoſt Place of Note in the Iſland, and was once the Metropolis; it was a populous City, not leſs than twelve Miles in Circumference; the King's Palace was a ſtrong Fortification; it was one of the greateſt Ports in the Eaſtern Sea, and of great Concourſe for Trade; but ſince it became a Prey to the deſtructive Tyranny of the *Dutch*, it is become a wretched poor Place, the King depoſed, the fine Buildings demoliſh'd, the principal Inhabitants remov'd, and little to be ſeen but Ruin and Deſolation.

Batavia *BATAVIA* is about forty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Bantam*, on the North Coaſt of *Java*; it is about the bigneſs of *Briſtol*, and regularly built with white Stone, the Streets wide and ſtrait, and in ſeveral of the principal of them are Canals faced with Stone, and planted with Ever greens; over the Canals are fifty-ſix Stone Bridges. It is ſurrounded with a good Wall, with two and twenty Baſtions well furniſh'd with Cannon. They have ſeveral handſome publick Buildings, as the great Church, the Stadt-Houſe, &c. There are two Churches for the reform'd *Portugueſe*, and one for the *Malayans*; but neither *Papiſts* nor *Lutherans* are allow'd the Exerciſe of their Religion in Publick.

Fort THE Fort ſtands on the Weſt Side of the Town, and by that Situation has both the Command of the Town and the Road: It has four Baſtions faced with Stone, but no Moat except the Canals, which

which are about twenty five Foot broad, and generally fordible. Within the Fort are the Houſes of the General and other principal Officers, and Companies Servants; there are in the City ſeveral large Market-Places, and other Places of publick Courſe, *&c.* But beſides what may properly be call'd the City, the Suburbs extend almoſt half a League into the Country, and form a Town larger than the former, but not ſo compact, becauſe Kitchen-Gardens and other Conveniences are interſperſed among the Houſes. In theſe Suburbs the *Chineſe* live, and have their Temples and Burying-Grounds, and have the free Exerciſe of their Religion; here live alſo the *Malayans* and *Javans*, (for the *Dutch* have expell'd the Natives of *Java* out of *Batavia* City into the Suburbs and remote Parts;) here alſo live the *Bandaneſe*, the *Amboyneſe*, and who ever elſe the *Dutch* have collected here to anſwer their Purpoſe, or indeed to be their Slaves.

The *Dutch* Houſes are built after the Manner of *Holland*, and the *Chineſe* after their Country Method, and the Natives on Bamboo Pillars, like the *Malayans*, as deſcribed when treating of that Country.

The ſeveral Foreigners (allowing the *Dutch* to be the Inhabitants,) have their reſpective Settlements and Employments in the Suburbs; the *Chineſe* are ſome of them good Mechanicks; they farm the Rulers Exciſe and Cuſtoms, and apply themſelves to Husbandry and Gardening, to cultivate Rice, Cotton, Sugar, *&c.* The *Dutch* are the greateſt Merchants, keep the greateſt Taverns, and in ſhort, trade for themſelves what brings them the moſt Money: the *Malayans* live moſtly upon Fiſhing, and ſupplying the reſt with that ſort of Commodity; the *Malayneſe* have a Suburb to themſelves, and are the beſt Carpenters, and are the moſt dexterous at building their Bamboo Houſes, and making Windows of ſplit Cane, ſomewhat like the Work of our Cane Chairs; the *Javaneſe* have alſo their particular Suburb, their Buſineſs is chiefly building the Country Boats and Fiſhing-Boats; the *Topaſſes* or *Mardikers* are a mix'd Breed of *Dutch*, *Portugueſe*, *Chineſe*, and other Nations promiſcuouſly intermarried; ſome of them live in the City, and have handſom Houſes, and follow Merchandize, the poorer Sort practiſe Husbandry, Gardening, and Mechanicks; the *Macaſſers* and *Bugaſſes*, whoſe Anceſtors were Natives of *Macaſſar*, they live in the Suburbs: And thus the City Suburbs of *Batavia* are inhabited by ſuch as the *Dutch* chuſe to make their Slaves, and anſwer their purpoſes, and out of whom they have form'd a Body of ten or twelve thouſand regular Troops to garriſon *Batavia* and the Neighbouring Forts, about a thouſand of them being upon the Guard every Day.

The *Javans* are of a Moderate Stature, tawny Complexion, their Hair of a ſhining Black, partly tied up or put under a Turbant, and the reſt falls upon their Shoulders; they have thin Beards, and to make them ſo, they pull up the Hair of their Beards when they are young, as it firſt begins to grow; they go naked to their Middle, but wrap a Piece of Silk or Callico about their Loins, reaching down to their Knees; they eat very ſparingly Fruit, dry'd Fiſh, and drink Water and Tea, but no ſtrong Liquors, keeping ſtrictly up to that Precept of their Prophet, wich forbids it.

It cannot be amiſs, by way of Reflection, to look back and take a ſummary View of the ſeveral Steps the *Dutch* have taken to get ſuch firm Footing as they now have in *Batavia*, and indeed all *Java*, for they never thought themſelves ſafe or ſatisfied as long as they had any Competitors in Trade, or any Body had a Share, though they had more than they could diſpenſe with. It would have been difficult for them to have engaged againſt the united Powers of all the Princes of *Java*; but they contrived an eaſier Method, and that was to ſeparate their Intereſt, foment Differences, and join the Malecontents, at other Times aſſiſting them one againſt the other, till in the End they ſwallow'd up both; and if the Subject of any *European* Prince had a conſiderable Factory in any of the *Indian* Dominions, they were ſure to pick a Quarrel with that Prince, and if ſtrong enough for him, would never make any Peace with him, without making the Expulſion and Deſtruction of that *European* Settlement the Condition of it. This appear'd evidently in their Reduction of *Bantam*, and that the flouriſhing Trade that the *Engliſh*, and other *Europeans* enjoy'd there was their chief Inducement to the Enterprize againſt that Port, which was thus:

Ruin of *Bantam* contrived and compleated by the *Dutch*.

When the *Dutch* were ſettled at *Batavia*, the *Engliſh*, *Danes*, *Spaniards*, and *Portugueſe* had a flouriſhing Trade at *Bantam*; the envious *Dutch* unwilling to ſee any Thing eſcape them, contrived to pick a Quarrel with the King of *Bantam*, alledging that he had made ſeveral Attempts upon them, and then concluded that they apprehended him a dangerous Neighbour, and thus meditating ſome pretence to fall upon him, it happen'd there was a Quarrel between the old and young King of *Bantam*, and the old King weary of the fatigue of Government, reſign'd to his youngeſt Son, who having been at the Court at *Conſtantinople*, and a new-fangled of what he had ſeen, deviated from the original Conſtitution of the Government of *Bantam*, and model'd his Government by that of the Grand Seignior and the *Turkiſh* Empire; the Subjects diſcontent under theſe Innovations, depoſed him, and ſet up his elder Brother, who till now had retired from Buſineſs and devoted himſelf to Religion; the old King not willing his eldeſt Son ſhould reign, reſumed the Government again himſelf, and beſieged his Son in the Caſtle of *Bantam*. In this Diſtreſs the young King ſent to the *Dutch* for Aſſiſtance; ſuch an Opportunity as this they wanted; they did aſſiſt him indeed, as *Jupiter* aſſiſted the Frogs, when they deſired a King, and he ſent them a Crane, who eat them all up alive; in ſhort, the *Dutch* having, at the young King's Requeſt, defeated the old King; they then depoſed the young one, and made him their Vaſſal, and having thus ſeized the Sovereign Power, they alſo ſeized the Port and Kingdom, and therewith alſo all the Goods and Merchandize of the *Engliſh*, and other *European* Merchants, totally expelling them from that Coaſt, and entirely engroſſing the Trade and Property to themſelves.

But to proceed with the Deſcription of this Iſland and People; their Salutation and manner of Sitting are much the ſame with thoſe of the *Malayans* and other *Indian* Nations, to the Deſcription of which we refer the Reader. Their Diverſions are Cock-fighting, in which they very much delight; alſo Buffaloes-Baiting; but as the Beaſt is never ſtak'd, nor the Place rail'd in, he often breaks out, and does a great deal of Damage. Tyger-Hunting is ſtill worſe; for they firſt prepare their Traps and Pit-falls, and with a great Number of armed Men ſurround the Place he haunts, thinking by their Noiſe to drive him into the Snare, but he ſometimes takes a different Rout, and when enraged ſpares none that comes in his Way.

Cuſtoms.

Diverſions.

Since *Batavia* has been ſo populous, their Conveniencies for travelling are very much improved; Coaches are as common as in ſome great Towns in *England*; they have fine Horſes from *Perſia*, and the Iſland produces a ſmall-ſized Horſe very ſerviceable. The Princes or great Men are ſometimes carried in a kind of a Litter or Couch on Men's Shoulders, but the moſt common way of Travelling is on Horſe-back.

Way of Travelling.

View of *Dutch* Policy.

The Shipping of *Batavia*, or indeed of the whole Iſland of *Java*, was but inconſiderable; they had

ſmall Veſſels that ſail'd quick, but of ſmall Burden, few of them exceeding fifty Tuns; but the *Dutch* finding good Timber upon the Iſland, built ſome Men of War, and by Degrees encreaſed their Number to twenty or thirty, with which they are able to inſult all their Neighbours, and by which they have acquired the Poſſeſſions they now enjoy, and maintain them by their Care in maintaining Carpenters, Ropemakers, and other Mechanicks, to repair and improve their Shipping, which they employ as they think fit, either for Merchandize, Conqueſt, or Defence, no *European* being ſuffer'd to trade where they have made an entire Conqueſt, except to trade with them, or (which is the ſame) to have the Goods at ſecond Hand.

Batavia is now a Place ſo populous for Trade, that other Nations apply to them; as from *China* there comes fifteen or twenty Junks every Year, three, four, or five hundred Tun each; they commonly arrive in *November* or *December*, and furniſh the *Hollanders* at *Batavia* with ſuch Goods as *China* affords, at an eaſier Rate than if they fetch'd them in their own Ships, and the like, with reſpect to Merchandize imported from any other Place; ſo that it may be ſaid that *Batavia* is now become the Magazine for Goods, or the Mart for Trade of all the *Eaſt Indies*; for hither they import the Merchandize of *Japan*, the *Spice Iſlands*, *Perſia*, *Surrat*, *Bengall*, and the whole Coaſt of *Malabar* and *Bormaudel*, beſides whatever *Europe* affords. They barter one ſort of Goods for another till they have engroſs'd to themſelves the moſt valuable Goods the Eaſt affords, which they tranſport into *Europe*, and change into ready Money, and by this means engroſs to themſelves more Treaſure than any *European* Nation, the whole Spice Trade being their own; for though there are other Iſlands capable of bearing the ſame valuable Commodity, yet the Natives dare not cultivate them, as knowing that if they are once brought to Profit, the *Dutch* will either ſeize them for themſelves, or entirely deſtroy them; and hence there can be no readier way for any *European*, *Engliſh*, or other, to make the *Dutch* their Enemies, than to acquire the Poſſeſſion of ſome profitable Place of Trade in the *Eaſt Indies* that the *Dutch* have a fancy for, for then 'tis likely rather than fail, they will ſerve them *as they ſerved the* Engliſh *at* Amboyna.

Manufactures are promoted here as much as in *England* or *Holland*, in Proportion to the Trade and Number of Inhabitants. At *Batavia* are Printing-Houſes, Paper-Mills, Powder-Mills, Sugar-bakers, Spinners, Cotton-Weavers, Ropemakers, Carpenters, Bricklayers, Shipwrights, Smiths, Braziers, and all manner of Iron-ware is forged at *Batavia*; but we do not find that any good Watches are made at *Batavia*, which they do not impute altogether to the Deficiency of the Workmen, but to the Climate, it being obſerved that Watches carried from *England*, or other Parts of the temperate Zone, do not keep true Time, the Heat of the Climate ſoftening their Springs, and by that means (if proper Means be not uſed to avoid it) they loſe their Elaſticity, or it is ſo much impair'd that the Motion of the Watch is uncertain.

The *Dutch* have founded Schools in *Batavia*, where the learned Languages and liberal Arts are taught, but there is no great Perfection in any Language to be attain'd here, becauſe this City is compoſed of Inhabitants from almoſt every *Indian* Nation, and hence all their Languages are ſpoken here; but notwithſtanding what is taught in the Schools, the moſt current Language is the *Malayan*, and a kind of Baſtard *Portugueſe*, which is the only Language with which a Man may travel through this Part of the World, if he know no other.

The Iſland of *Java* is very mountainous towards the Middle, and all cover'd with Woods, and the low Lands near the Shore are generally marſhy, and abound with Reeds and Bambou, but nearer *Bantam* and *Batavia* the Land is clear'd and drain'd, and made fit for Tillage; their Rice-Fields and Kitchen-Gardens being well ſupply'd with Water by Rivulets running through them out of the Country. Up theſe Streams the Gentry and Citizens of *Batavia* go in their Pleaſure-Boats to their Farms or Country Seats, as either Pleaſure or Buſineſs may give them an Invitation.

They have no Corn grows here but *Rice*, but it is very good; they begin to ſow it in *March*, and cut it in *July*; they import pretty good Wheat from *Bengall*, and tolerable cheap, but yet ſo much inferior to the beſt *European* Wheat, and the Rice is ſo good, that after a little Practice, the *Europeans* conform to eat boil'd Rice as the Natives do, rather than Bread made of that Wheat. They have about *Batavia* ſeveral conſiderable Sugar Plantations, and ſome Tobacco, and in their Gardens they have plenty of Beans, Peaſe, Roots, and Herbs, which next to Rice, are the principal Food of the Inhabitants. They have alſo for variety, great Plenty of Seeds from *Europe*, *Perſia*, and *Surrat*, which generally thrive at *Batavia* with Increaſe. From *Holland* they have Cabbages, Purſlain, Aſparagus, Lettice, Water-creſſes, Parſley, Fenrel, Pompions, Water-mellons, Cucumbers, Raddiſhes, Potatoes, &c. in great abundance, and ſeveral Aſtringents good againſt the Bloody-flux, the predominant Diſtemper of the Country. The greateſt Plenty of Fruit is about *October*, but they have ſome ſort or other all the Year round.

Their Paſtures afford but a long, rank, four Graſs, which produceth but coarſe Fleſh upon their Cattle. The *Dutch* have planted Vines about *Batavia*, which thrive ſo well as to bear ſeven times in two Years; but whether by reaſon of the ſmall Quantity, or the contrary Quality of the Grapes, the *Dutch* have no Wine but what comes from *Europe* or *Perſia*, which makes it very dear. They have lately planted the Coffee Shrub at *Batavia*, and it thrives tolerable well, but is not near ſo good as that that grows in *Arabia*. They have almoſt all manner of *Indian* Fruit in great Plenty, as Cocoas, Bonanoes, Plantains, Anana's or Pine-Apples, alſo Mangoes, Mangoſteens, Durions, Oranges, and Lemons, with their beloved Betel and Arek. There are alſo Benjamin, and other Gums found here. They have Cedar and Oak, the latter ſaid to be not inferior to the *Engliſh*, but the Bambou is of the moſt uſe for building their Houſes, &c. as has been obſerved before.

There are good Stone Quarries about *Batavia*, and alſo good Earth for Bricks, but we do not find that the *Dutch* have yet got any Mines in what they aſſume as their Dominions; if there are Mines, they are either where their Uſurpations have not reach'd, or if they have, they have not found them out; and if the Natives know of any, perhaps they are ſo wiſe they will not diſcover them.

There are Hogs wild and tame, alſo Buffaloes; there have been alſo Bullocks, Cows, and Sheep imported hither, but they do not thrive nor increaſe as in colder Climates. There is Deer, wild Hogs, Rabbets, &c. whoſe Fleſh is much more preferable to that of the tame Cattle for eating; they have a ſmall ſort of Horſes very ſerviceable, and abundance of wild Beaſts, as Monkeys, Tygers, and the like; alſo Porcupines, Crocodiles, Snakes, Scorpions, Millepedes, Locuſts, Caterpillars, and all ſorts of Inſects, very prejudicial

to

to the Fruits of the Earth, if the Rains do not drown them or waſh them away. The Crocodiles are ſome of them twenty or thirty Foot long, for which reaſon they are not quick to turn about, and may eaſily be eſcaped if ſeen in time, and one turn aſide from them, for they take moſt of their Prey lying among the Reeds, like the Body of an old Tree, and ſo ſeize the unwary Traveller, or other Prey, for want of their taking care to avoid him: When they would take them either for Diverſion, or to rid the Country of ſuch pernicious Vermine, they bait a large Iron Hook with a Dog, which is the Crocodiles favourite Morſel, and fiſh for them at the Mouth of ſome Rivulet or Creek, where they uſually lie to catch what is driven down to the Sea. The Back of it is ſo hard that a Musket Ball will not penetrate it; but he is eaſily kill'd if you can come at his Belly. Theſe Creatures are ſo pernicious and terrible to the Inhabitants, that the Government allows a Reward for taking or killing them.

Revenues. The Revenues of the Government at *Batavia* is very large, the Inhabitants of the City being rich, and a Duty laid upon almoſt every thing. The *Chineſe*, who are not leſs than eighty thouſand Men, under the *Dutch* Government, pay a Crown a Head for a Permiſſion to wear their Hair, and for them that are Rich and wear a Silver or Gold Bodkin in their Hair, they pay a Crown more, and was they to impoſe a Tax upon every Tooth in a Man's Head, there is no Remedy, it muſt be paid, nor are they ſuffer'd ſo much as to diſpute it.

Javaneſe Women. The *Javaneſe* Women are ſaid to be very amorous, nor can their Husbands oblige them more than by being kind and faithful to them by way of return, in which if they fail, or alienate their Love, or if there is but juſt Cauſe to ſuſpect ſuch a thing, their amorous Careſſes are turned into the moſt inveterate Hatred; and if the Husband's Affection to ſome other put an End to his Love, the Wife ſoon finds a Potion to put an End to his Life, ſo highly do the Wives reſent the ſlighting of that conjugal Love in which they think their chief Virtue conſiſts: But where they conceive no Jealouſy of being ſlighted, they uſe all modeſt and chearful Freedoms in Dancing and other Diverſions, which as they have very agreeable Features, they perform with a Grace entirely engaging, nor do their Husbands confine them as in ſome other Eaſtern Countries, but they have the full Freedom of Converſation and going Abroad as in *Europe*.

Poligamy. The Men nevertheleſs are allow'd Poligamy, beſides She-ſlaves or Concubines. The *Dutch* alſo allow their Men to marry the native Women, provided they turn Chriſtians, which their Women are eaſily induced to do, for the Sake of having every one a whole Husband to herſelf, the *Dutch* not allowing Plurality of Wives, and ſo ſtrictly oppoſing it, or Concubinage, or any falſe Steps with any of their She-ſlaves, that if the Wife finds it out, ſhe eaſily obtains a Divorce. The Manner. Method uſed when a *European* is to marry a *Javan* Woman, is, the Contract is drawn up by a Publick Notary, and they appear before a proper Magiſtrate, who (the Conditions being ſettled) gives them Licence to marry, which Licence being Regiſter'd, they may ſolemnize the Nuptials when they pleaſe, and in what manner the *Dutch* Church requires. The Children of thoſe mixt Marriages uſually wear the *Javan* Habit to the third and fourth Generation, and thoſe Wives and Children are what the *Dutch* call their Converts; but though their Women are ſometimes thus converted (if marrying a *Dutchman* may be called Converſion) yet few of the *Javan* Men are converted by this or any other means, for few or none of the *Dutch* Women care to marry into the *Indian* Tribes purely to make Chriſtians, or to forego the Priviledges they enjoy at *Batavia* purely for the Sake of making Proſelytes to their Religion; for when the *Dutch* firſt ſettled at *Batavia*, *European* Women were ſo ſcarce, and conſequently ſo much valued, that it made them intolerable proud, which Pride they retain to this Day, without any great regard either to Trade or Religion, and are now got to that Height of Pride and Revenge, that the Men had rather put up a ſmall Affront than provoke them.

Funerals. The *Dutch* as well as the *Javans*, and other their Proſelytes by Intermarriages, &c. bury as in *Europe* and the other Natives bury, but do not burn their dead. The *Chineſe* here have a Burying-place aſſign'd them about half a League out of the City of *Batavia*, where they bury their Dead with much the ſame Form and Ceremony as in *China*. (*See Chap.* X. *of* China.)

We have been the larger in treating of *Bantam* and *Batavia*, the Ruin of the former, and the Riſe of the latter, becauſe they were, or are, the chief Scene of Trade, Commerce, and Concourſe of Shipping in the whole Iſland. There are ſeveral other Towns in the Iſland, as *Caraban*, *Japara*, and alſo *Java* City, or *Mattaran*: The two former, ſince the Encroachments of the *Dutch*, and picking and chooſing where they pleas'd, retaining little more than the bare Name of being Capitals or Metropolizes of Kingdoms; but *Java*, or *Materan*, remains a Kingdom independant of any other, and is ſaid by ſome to contain all that Part of *Java* to the Eaſtward not yet poſſeſs'd by the *Dutch*; but as theſe are Places of little or no Trade, and their Manners and Cuſtoms common with thoſe of the Natives of the other Parts of *Java*, we ſhall not enlarge upon them, but proceed to a brief Deſcription of the moſt remarkable of the adjacent Iſlands, becauſe they are uſeful to the *Engliſh* in furniſhing them with Refreſhments at an eaſier Rate than they can have them at *Batavia*. Other Iſlands.

Madura. The firſt is *Madura*, it lies upon the North Coaſt of *Java*, and near the Eaſt End; the chief Town of this Iſland is *Arabaya*. This Iſland is called by ſome Sailors *Carimon Java*, and lies between *Bava* and *Borneo*. The *European* Ships frequently touch at it in their Voyage to *Borneo*.

Bally Iſland. A little to the Eaſtward of the Eaſt End of *Java* is the Iſland of *Bally*, or leſſer *Java*, from whence the great Iſland of *Java* is diſtinguiſhed by the Name of *Java Major*. Between theſe two Iſlands is form'd a narrow Paſſage, call'd *The Straits of Bally*, which where it is narroweſt is not much broader than the *Thames*; the Mountains on each Side of a prodigious Height, and ſeem as if they lean'd over, and ready to fall upon you, which afford a frightful Proſpect; and what adds to the Dread is the hollow Noiſe the Sea makes in beating againſt the Rocks where it is ſo much confin'd; and what makes this Paſſage really dangerous is the ſudden Squalls and Gulls of Wind that comes down from theſe Rocks upon all Points of the Compaſs in a very ſmall Time, which with the whirling Eddies of the Water occaſioned thereby, makes ſailing through theſe Straits very hazardous.

To the Eaſtward of *Bally* are the Iſlands of *Lomboc*, *Cumbava*, *Flori*, *Solo*, and *Timor*, in every one of which the *Dutch* have Forts or Settlements; of the firſt four there is nothing remarkable, but that from their Inhabitants the *Dutch* recruit their *Indian* Forces at *Batavia* when they have occaſion. To deſcribe all theſe Iſlands would be needleſs, for as they all lie adjacent one to another, and near the ſame Latitude, &c. in deſcribing one as to their Complexions, Product, &c. I ſhall deſcribe them all.

Timor

Timor. TIMOR, the largeſt of them, is about two hundred Miles long, and fifty broad; the Middle of it is in about nine Degrees of South Latitude, and 124 Degrees of Longitude Eaſt from *London*; there are no navigable Rivers, but ſeveral Bays, where Ships may Anchor to ſhelter them from the Monſoons; but the Bay of *Babao* is the ſafeſt riding for Ships in the whole Iſland, having the Land on every Side from Weſt by South to Eaſt-North-Eaſt; but in riding here Care ought to be taken to avoid the Worms, which will deſtroy a Ship's Bottom in a ſmall Time if not carefully prevented.

Concordia Fort. THE *Dutch* have a Fort upon this Iſland towards the Weſt End of it, in a Bay on the North Shore, and before the Bay lies the Iſland of *Ambo*; the Fort is of Stone, and built upon a Rock by the Sea Side, having a freſh Water River falling into the Sea; on the Eaſt Side of it, near the Fort, are Gardens both for Greens and Roots belonging to the Kitchen Garden, and alſo for *Indian* Fruit. There are about threeſcore Houſes in the Town, and fifty or ſixty Soldiers in the Garriſon.

Laphao ABOUT fifty Miles to the Eaſtward of the *Dutch* Fort, and on the ſame North Coaſt, is *Laphao* a *Portugueſe* Settlement; they have no Fort or Garriſon, but have penetrated ſo far into the Country, and are ſo incorporated with the Natives by Intermarriages and the like, that the *Dutch* give them little Diſturbance; but whether their quiet Poſſeſſion be owing to the Greatneſs of their Strength, or the little Value of what they enjoy, or laſtly to the Equity and Integrity of the *Dutch*, who, for Conſcience ſake, will not covet their Neighbours Property, we cannot determine; but the laſt is leaſt probable, when we think of the *Banda Iſlands* and the Tragedy of *Amboyna*.

IN the Town of *Laphao* there are not above forty or fifty Houſes, all low and meanly built, and cover'd with Palmeto Leaves; there is a ſmall Church, but it is all open to the Air where the Walls ſhould be, except at the Eaſt End; there are ſix old Iron Guns upon a Platform under a Shed, but their Carriages are rotten, and in ſhort, they ſeem to have no Defence to depend upon but the Forces they can draw down out of the Country if they ſhould be attack'd. The *Portugueſe* have a Governor upon this Iſland, but he reſides at a Place call'd *Porta Nova*, at the Eaſt End of the Iſland; this is a Place of the beſt Trade in all the Iſland; and both here and at *Laphao* ſeveral *Chineſe* live, and the *Chineſe* Junks come every Year to trade at both Places. It is not long ago that a Pyrate (doubtleſs ſenſible of the Weakneſs of this Iſland,) plunder'd and burnt both this Town and the *Dutch* Town of *Concordia*.

Complexion. THE Natives of this and the other Iſlands between it and *Java*, are of ſo ſwarthy a Complexion, that they are commonly called *Blacks*. They are of a middle Stature, long black Hair, ſtrait Limbs and ſlender, with a long Viſage. It is ſaid that thoſe who are not ſubjected to the *European* Chriſtians, are very barbarous, and ſtick not to cut off any *European* that lies in their Power; but as one Story is good till the other is told, we muſt ſuſpend our Cenſures of the natural Barbarity of thoſe Natives, till we conſider with what Cruelty both the *Dutch* and *Portugueſe* have uſed the Natives of other Places, whoſe Properties they had a mind to engroſs to themſelves, and then judge whether we think the *Timoreans* have not been juſtly provoked againſt ſome *Europeans* at leaſt.

THE meaner Sort have no Dreſs but a little Cloth about their Loins, pull'd up and made faſt between their Legs; but for Ornament the better Sort wear a Coronet of Mother of Pearl, or thin oval Plates of Silver or Gold as big as a Crown Piece; four or five of theſe make a fine Dreſs. The Men go always arm'd with Swords, Darts, or Lancets, with which they ſtrike their Wild Buffaloes when they hunt them; and they make no ſcruple of eating any Thing that Nature produces, and their Appetites approve of.

THEY have Wild-Beaſts and Inſects as in *Java* and other Places, but of Fowls, beſides Hens, Pidgeons, &c. as in other adjacent Iſlands, there are ſome beautiful Birds with very harmonious Notes, a great rarity in theſe Countries; there is alſo a little Bird called the Ringing Bird, having juſt ſix Notes, he begins with the higheſt and ends with the loweſt, and at every time of ſinging them repeats them twice. There are abundance of Bees in the Woods, which produce great Quantities of Honey and Wax.

THESE Iſlands afford great Variety of Fiſh, both what is known in *Europe* and others peculiar to the Country; there are Oyſters of ſeveral Kinds, and Cockles as big as a Man's Hand, with Allegators or Crocodiles, as in moſt other of thoſe hot Countries.

AMONG their Trees there is one ſeems peculiar to the Iſland; it grows by the Sea Side, and is ſomething like a Pine; it is a hard Wood, of a reddiſh Colour, very ponderous, and good Timber; here are ſeveral ſorts of Palms, of which one kind is ſeven or eight Foot in Circumference, and eighty Foot high, with Branches only at the Top, like the Cocoa-Tree, the Fruit like a Cocoa-Nut, but no bigger than a Hen's Egg, and no Liquor in it, as in others; there is alſo another Palm, which bears great quantities of ſmall Fruit, which hang on the Branches, but the Tree has no Leaves or any thing green about it; but, there are nevertheleſs abundance of common Cocoa-Nut-Trees, which are a great Relief to the Natives; they have alſo Fruits in common with *Java* and other *Indian* Iſlands, as Oranges, Mangoes, &c. and ſeveral good eating Herbs, one eſpecially not known in *Europe*; it eats like Spinage or Purſlain, and grows wild in the Field.

Few of them have Land. THERE are but few in this Iſland have any Land they can call their own, becauſe the Inhabitants are but few, and the Land is common; if a Man clears and manures a Piece of Land to ſow his *Indian* Corn upon it, it is his till he has reap'd his Crop, and then he deſerts it, and finds out another Piece for the next Seaſon, &c. for they ſeldom plant their *Indian* Corn twice in one Place; probably it will not bear a ſecond Crop without a greater Charge than that of only preparing a freſh Piece, which is done by only burning up the Graſs and Shrubs which grow upon it, and then it is prepared for the wet Seaſon or Seed Time.

THE *Andaman* and *Nicobar Iſlands* lie to the Weſtward of *Siam* and *Malacca*, and to the Northward of *Sumatra*; but as they afford us no Matter for Trade or Navigation, and the Map beſt diſcovers their Situation, it is needleſs here to give any further Account of them.

THE

THE

HISTORY

AND

DESCRIPTION

OF

PROPER INDIA:

Or the EMPIRE of the

GREAT MOGUL.

CHAP. I.

Shews the Situation and Extent of this mighty Empire; the first Foundation of it; with the vast Additions with which it has since been augmented and improved.

Situation.

THIS spacious Empire is bounded on the East with the Kingdom of *Ava*, and on the West with *Persia*, with *Usbeck Tartary* and *Thibit* on the North, and with Cape *Comorin*, or rather the *Indian Ocean*, on the South. Cape *Comorin*, the Southermost Point of the Continent of *Proper India*, lies in the eighth Degree of North Latitude, and from thence this Empire extends Northwards to Latitude of about forty Degrees; and for its Breadth, the East Side of it next to the Kingdom of *Ava*, is ninety two Degrees of Longitude East from *London*; and the West Side next to *Persia* is in Longitude sixty six East from *London*. Its Breadth in Longitude is twenty six Degrees, which reckon'd in Latitude twenty five, which is about the broadest Part of the Empire, gives about fourteen hundred Miles Breadth from East to West, and nineteen hundred and eighty Miles Length from North to South.

Founda-tion.

This Empire was first founded by *Tamerlane*, and has ever since improv'd, insomuch that it is now one of the largest in *Asia*; not but that there are some Raja's, or petty Sovereigns, on the Coast of *Malabar*, and some even in the Heart of *India*, who inhabit the mountainous and inaccessible Parts of the Country, which yet maintain their Liberties, and have not submitted to the Yoke of Conquest.

Name

As to the Name of *India*, or as some call it, *Indostan*, it is generally supposed to be taken from the River *Indus*, and consequently is supposed to contain that Tract or Space of the main Continent, which is comprized between the River *Ganges* on the East, and *Indus* on the West. As for its Name *Mogulston*, which the present Natives affect, we have no occasion to regard in *English* History, because it is known to us by the Name of *India*, and under that Name it will be represented in the ensuing Discourse of it.

Tamerlane

As to the Foundation of this great Empire, it was laid about the Year 1400 by the Great *Tamerlane*, King of *Usbeck Tartary*, who derived his Pedigree from the *Moguls*, and from his Northern Dominions penetrated into the Bowels of the present *Mogul*'s Empire, and made great Conquests; but as he advanc'd to distant Enterprizes and new Attempts, his late conquer'd Subjects revolted, and his Successors held but little of what his conquering Sword had made him Master of.

Succession

TAMERLANE order'd, that at his Death his third Son *Miracha* should succeed him in all new Conquests in *India*, and in the North East Parts of *Persia*; but *Miracha* did not chuse to fix his Imperial Seat in *India*, but at *Herat* in *Persia*, and came down once a Year, with a great Force, to demand the Tribute imposed by his Father upon his late conquer'd *Indian* Subjects, but either because of his Non-residence amongst them, or for some other Reason, they deny'd Allegiance to him, and refused to pay the Tribute required, which *Miracha* thinking to recover by Force, one of the *Indian* Raja's, or Governors, fought him in a pitch'd Battle, and took *Miracha* Prisoner, but generously releas'd him, upon Condition that he would quit all Demands of that Kind for the future; but having got his Liberty, he renew'd his former Demands, and being still refused, another Set Battle ensued, wherein *Miracha* took the same

Raja Priſoner who had before been ſo kind to him, but inſtead of Gratitude, he put out both his Eyes, and kept him Priſoner.

MIRACHA, who delighted very much in ſhooting with Bows and Arrows, at which the *Tartars* are generally very dexterous, had a Number of them about him exerciſing that Sport, and being told that the Raja his Priſoner, though blind, could hit a Mark, if any particular Noiſe was made at the Mark he was to ſhoot at, the Mark was prepared, and *Miracha*, eager to ſee the Performance, gave the Word of Command; the Raja willingly directing his Arrow where the Voice came from, ſhot *Miracha* through the Body. This happen'd about the Year 1451, when *Miracha* had reigned forty ſix Years.

Miracha kill'd.

Some Authors diſpute the Truth of this Accident occaſioning *Miracha*'s Death, but as we have the Authority of *French* Hiſtory for it, and *Miracha*'s Ingratitude might ſeem Provocation enough to the Raja to meditate Revenge, it is probable enough that he would not ſlip ſuch a favourable Opportunity for that Purpoſe, if it once fell into his Hand, let what would be the Conſequence.

Abouchaid. *ABOUCHAID* ſucceeded next according to ſome, though others ſay *Mahomed* was between them, but as we find nothing material recorded of *Mahomed*, that may probably be the Reaſon why ſome Authors paſs him by in Silence; and we find little recorded of *Abouchaid*, but that after a troubleſome Reign of twenty eight Years, he left his Dominions to his Son *See-Omer*, who reſided at *Samarcand*, and was kill'd by a Fall from his Terraſs in the Year 1493, after a Reign of twenty four Years, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Babar*, who being expell'd from *Samarcand*, retir'd to *India*, conquer'd the Kingdom of *Patana*, or at leaſt drove the Inhabitants into the Mountains, about the Year 1519, where they now remain, ſometimes Tributary, but taking all Opportunities, by Hoſtility, or otherwiſe, to recover their loſt Liberty.

See Omer.

Babar conquers *Patana.*

When *Babar* had thus conquer'd, or rather ſubdued the *Patanes*, he made *Delly* the Imperial Seat, where the *Tartars* crowded to him from the North, and particularly from *Samarcand*, to be protected by him, and, if poſſible, to make their Fortunes under him, and were ſo kindly received, and as it were incorporated with them, that *Tartars* as well as *Indians* were now indifferently called *Moguls*. The *Perſians*, after the Example of the *Tartars*, and not queſtioning but to ſucceed as well, came over to him in Troops, and one with another augmented his Forces, ſo that he was eaſily eſtabliſh'd in his new Conqueſts, whereby his Empire was enlarged without the Effuſion of much Blood, and himſelf dy'd in perfect Peace in the Year 1530, when he had reigned about thirty Years over the *Indians*, and left his Dominions to his Son *Amayum*.

Babar's Death

Amayum ſucceeds.

There was a young *Patane* Lord who had been bred up with *Amayum* in his Father's Court, and was become one of *Amayum*'s chief Favourites, in whom *Amayum* repoſed ſo much Confidence, that (when he ſucceeded his Father *Babar* in the Government) he made him Generaliſſimo of all his Forces, and Commander of the Guards about his Perſon; but *Chira* (for that was the *Patane* Lord's Name) meditating more the recovering the Liberty of his conquer'd Country, than Gratitude to his generous Maſter, conſpired the depoſing of *Amayum*, not queſtioning but the Conſequence of that would be advancing himſelf to the Throne; and the rather, becauſe he had now the Command not only of the *Mogul*'s Troops, but of all thoſe of the *Perſians* and *Tartars* who had voluntarily reſorted to him, and had by his obliging Behaviour gain'd the Hearts of the greateſt Part of *Amayum*'s Subjects, which *Amayum* finding, and obſerving the Coolneſs and Diſaffection of his Subjects of late, and as he apprehended that *Chira*'s inſinuating himſelf into the Favour of the Subjects was the Cauſe, ſo his own Deſtruction might be the Conſequence; and therefore with a ſmall Body of *Tartars* and *Perſians* he gave Battle to *Chira*, but proving too weak, he was forced to quit the Field, and flee to the Sophy of *Perſia* for Protection, after he had reign'd in *Delly* eleven Years, and left to *Chira* the Victory, and with it the Empire.

CHIRA reigned nine Years, but we do not read of any thing memorable that he did, ſaving that he was the firſt that built Caravanſera's, or Houſes for the Entertainment of Travellers upon the Road, and alſo adjuſted their Weights and Meaſures, Balances being then unknown in the *Indies*, and they having no Meaſure but the Span or Cubit, which differ'd according to the Stature of the Perſon from whom it was taken.

When *Chira* had reigned nine Years, he was kill'd by the burſting of a Cannon that had been preſented to him, which he gave Fire to himſelf, and leaving no Children, the *Patanes* Raja's differ'd about the Election of a Succeſſor, and *Amayum* taking hold of this Advantage of their being ſo divided, found an eaſy Opportunity of recovering his Kingdom, eſpecially as his powerful Friend the Sophy of *Perſia* was ſo firmly attach'd to his Intereſt, and by this means he was ſoon reſtored to his former Dignity; but when he was reſtored, he forgot his former Promiſes to the Sophy of *Perſia*, neither paying him the annual Tribute ſtipulated, nor putting him in Poſſeſſion of *Candahor*, according to his Promiſe; but he reign'd not long, till going to erect a ſtately Tomb, after the manner of the *Mahometan* Princes, and walking over the Scaffolding, fell down, and was ſo bruiſed that he never ſpoke afterwards: And thus ended the Reign of *Amayum*, in the Year 1552.

Chira kill'd.

Amayum reſtored.

AMAYUM was ſucceeded by his Son *Akbar*, whom all agree was a Man every way accompliſh'd for Government, and being of a penetrating Judgment, he ſoon perceived that of thoſe under his Government, the *Moguls* and *Tartars* were few in Proportion to the *Patanes* and *Indians*, and therefore to carry the Balance in his own Favour, he invited the neighbouring *Uſbecks* and *Tartars* to ſerve under him, and gave them Wives, that they might propagate and ſtrengthen his Power and Intereſt, and ſo continued to encourage new Supplies of *Perſians* and *Tartars* to tranſplant themſelves, and for their Encouragement, they uſually fill up the greateſt Poſts in the Government; and having taken theſe Meaſures to ſecure his preſent Poſſeſſions, his next Buſineſs was to extend his Dominions towards the Sea, that he might taſte the Sweets that Navigation produced, by a Communication of one Place with another by Sea.

Amayum kill'd.

His firſt Attempt of this Kind was againſt the Kingdom of *Guzarat*, between *Surat* and the River *Indus*: This was a Place of great Trade, and the *Portugueſe* having got footing here, had ſeveral Colonies, and tranſported great Quantities of Goods hence to *Europe*. It was a *Mahometan* Prince named *Badar* that then reign'd in *Guzarat*, he had maintain'd a long War againſt his Invaders the *Portugueſe*; but upon the Alarm of *Akbar*'s coming againſt *Guzarat*, Sultan *Badar* and the *Portugueſe* united againſt him, but in vain, for *Akbar* at the Head of his Forces routed both *Guzarat* and *Portugueſe*; Sultan *Badar* fled, his Children were taken and put to Death, and the whole Kingdom ſubmitted to him, except the Towns in Poſſeſſion of the *Portugueſe*, which being fortified after the modern Way, were above the reach of all his Forces.

Akbar conquers *Guzarat.*

AKBAR reſolved to purſue his maritime Conqueſts, directed his Courſe to the Southward, along the Coaſt to *Decan*. In this Province, or Sovereignty, are the Towns of *Brampour* and *Ago*, govern'd by *Muſtapha*, a *Mahometan* Prince. *Akbar*

Decan.

danger,

danger, and its Territories, was ſubject to the Queen of *Cande*, and *Ambar* had the Command of the Diſtrict of *Doltabad*. Theſe Princes, though commonly at Variance, yet all united againſt *Akbar*, and gave him Battle, but he defeated them with very little Loſs. *Muſtapha*, and the Princeſs of *Cande* ſurrender'd their Capitals upon Conditions, and *Ambar* was kill'd in an Engagement, and the reſt ſubdued to *Akbar*'s Conqueſt.

After this Conqueſt *Akbar* remov'd the Imperial Seat from *Delly*, and demoliſh'd the City to the Ground, and built a Palace at *Fetipour*, but the Air not agreeing with him, he return'd, and built another City in the Neighbourhood of it, but ſoon after remov'd to *Agra*, to the Southward of *Delly* upon the River *Gemma*, which has of late been the common Reſidence of the *Mogul* Emperors.

Removes to Agra.

But *Akbar*'s extenſive Deſires not yet ſatisfied, he meditated the further Enlargement of his Dominions, and fell upon *Rama*, whoſe Dominions lay to the Eaſtward of *Guzarat*; the Raja, though aſſiſted by ſeveral *Indian* Princes, was not able to withſtand *Akbar*, but ſhut himſelf up in the City of *Chitor*, which held out for about two Years, and then the Raja being kill'd in the Siege, the City and the whole Country ſubmitted to *Akbar*.

Conquers Rama.

AKBAR ſtill being in Peace, and quietly enjoying his new Conqueſts, he enlarged the City of *Agra*, and planted the Road from *Agra* to *Labor*, making it one continued Walk of ſhady Trees, though four hundred and fifty Miles long. He had a difficult War with the Peaſants of the Country, who were very obſtinate, and when they could not overcome him by Force, they ſhut themſelves up in a fortified Town, but he impatient to revenge their Inſolence, order'd the Conductors of the Elephants to advance and break open the Gates, which they perceiving ſome Hazard in, by reaſon of the reſolute Temper of the Peaſants, *Akbar* put on a common Soldier's Coat, mounted the Elephant himſelf, forced open the Gates, and though in a Shower of Arrows, came off without Damage. The Government is now ſo ſevere to prevent theſe Inſurrections, that if a Peaſant be found under Arms, he loſes his Head, abundance of which Heads are to be ſeen now by the Road Sides, to deter the reſt from Rebellion.

Road above four hundred Miles.

War with the Peaſants.

But while *Akbar* was at War with the Peaſants, his Son *Jehan Guire* raiſed a Rebellion againſt him, but the conquering *Akbar* ſoon defeated him, and made his Son Priſoner, but inſtead of keeping him confin'd, he tenderly took him along with him, and ſhew'd him the Heads of thoſe that had been the chief Conſpirators under him in the Rebellion, hanging upon Branches of Trees: The Prince was ſo melted with the tragical Proſpect of them, and his Father's Tenderneſs to him, that he was always after loyal and ſteady to his Father's Intereſt.

Civil Rebellion.

AKBAR through the Courſe of his Enterprizes obſerved, that if he miſcarried, it was commonly for want of good Engineers, and upon that Account invited ſeveral *Europeans* to his Court from *Goa*, and other *Portugueſe* Settlements, as Goldſmiths, Surgeons, *&c.* and afterwards march'd againſt the *Patanes*, for they being abandon'd by the Emperor's Brother and their new Allies, were driven to the Mountains again. Upon this *Akbar* grew intolerable vain and proud, ſetting up a new Religion, or rather a Medley of all Religions; the Baptiſm of the *Chriſtians*, the Circumciſion of the *Mahometans*, the Idolatry of the *Indians*, &c. were all encouraged, thinking thereby to unite his Subjects of all Perſuaſions to his Intereſt; but what was moſt abſurd and ſhocking, is what we have from our *French* Author's Account, Mr. *Manouch*, or his Editor *Carou*, viz. that *Akbar* commanded his Subjects to worſhip him as God, when he appear'd every Morning in his Balcony; he then received their Vows, heard their Prayers, and cauſed it to be divulged among the People, that their Petitions would infallibly be miraculouſly granted. So far our Author, though others diſpute whether he went this extravagant Length laſt mentioned.

Europeans Arrive.

Pretended Revelation.

But his Religion did not hinder his new Conqueſts, but marching with a ſtrong Army to the Northward, with a Deſign to ſubdue the Kingdom of *Cachemire*, they ſubmitted to him without ſtriking one Stroke; but in the mean Time *Muſtapha* (the *Mahometan* Prince mention'd before in *Akbar*'s Conqueſt of *Decan*) who had lived peaceably in the *Mogul*'s Court ſince he was ſubdued, retired from thence, and by means of great Numbers of *Mahometans*, who revolted from *Akbar* upon account of the Slights and Innovations he had put upon their (*Mahometan*) Religion, *Muſtapha* was eaſily re-poſſeſs'd of his own Kingdom.

Subdues Cachemire.

Muſtapha revolts.

AKBAR incens'd at this Revolt, ſent his Son *Morad* with an Army to ſuppreſs the Inſurrection, and correct the Raja *Muſtapha*, whom he engaged in the Province of *Cambaya*, but *Muſtapha* being an experienc'd Commander, and beloved as well as acquainted in the Country, he entirely defeated *Akbar*'s Forces, and his beloved Son *Morad* was found ſlain among the reſt of the dead Bodies, which was ſuch a heart-breaking Mortification to *Akbar*, that he, as ſenſible of the Wrath of Heaven for his former Ambition, never afterwards worſhip'd the Sun, nor ſuffer'd divine Honours to be paid to himſelf.

Morad ſlain.

The Emperor began now to think of retiring from *Cachemire*, by way of *Labor*, to the Capital *Agra*, and to meditate Revenge for the Death of his Son, and the Revolt of *Muſtapha* from his Allegiance, and made great Preparations againſt him; accordingly in the mean time *Akbar* found out a new way of executing State Offenders, for he had poiſon'd Pills made up, and when he found any of his Lords diſaffected, cauſed them to take of theſe Pills in his Preſence, and thereby diſpatch'd them without any further Ceremony.

Akbar takes Poiſon and dies.

This Method of Execution becoming common with *Akbar*, he cauſed a Gold Box to be made with three Partitions; in one he had Betel Leaves, in another Cordial Pills, and in the third his Pills of Poiſon; and miſtaking one for the other, himſelf took one of the fatal Pills; and notwithſtanding all the help of his own and the *Portugueſe* Phyſicians, he, after lingering a little Time, expired, dying a *Muſſulman*, without any regard to the Endeavours of the Miſſionaries for his Converſion. If we look back into his Life, we cannot but obſerve that the vaſt Additions he made to his Empire, the Arts he introduced, the opening a Way to the Sea Coaſt, and the Trade and Commerce firſt eſtabliſhed by him in his Dominions, the Cities and Palaces that he built, the Road of four hundred and fifty Miles long from *Agra* to *Labor*, being one continued Walk of ſhady Trees, which he planted, *&c.* all theſe are evident Marks of his Grandeur, and renders his Hiſtory worthy a Place, where the Additions and Augmentations of the *Mogul*'s Empire are treated of; he died in the Year 1605.

Cha Selim ſucceeds.

It is ſaid that *Akbar* before his Death appointed Sultan *Coſrou*, eldeſt Son of *Cha Selim*, to be his Succeſſor; but however that was, *Cha Selim* acceeded to the Crown without any Oppoſition, and took upon him the Name or Title of *Cha Jehan*; he was the Son of *Akbar*, but nothing like him for his temperate Way of Living, but on the contrary, given to all manner of Exceſs; the Appearance of which might probably be the occaſion of *Akbar*'s ſettling the Empire upon *Coſrou*, the eldeſt Son of *Cha Jehan*, if it was ſo; for he having now got the Empire, and looſed from all Reſtraints, order'd the Palace Gates to be always open to the

Europeans,

Europeans of what Nation ſoever, and frequently drank with them all Night till Morning, and that even in the Time of the *Mahometan* Lent, which Slight of hisof ſo ſolemn a Time, gave the Miſſionaries ſome hopes that he might be eaſily drawn to embrace Chriſtianity, but it ſeem'd rather to be the effect of his Frolick than any thoughts of Religion, that induced him to theſe Liberties.

Cha Jehan *CHA JE HAN* remov'd his Imperial Seat from *Agra* to *Labor*, which lies four or five hundred Miles to the North, in a more temperate Climate; he improved the fine Walk from *Agra* to *Labor* made by his Father *Akbar*; he improv'd the City of *Labor*, and built a Palace there, but not ſo ſumptuous as that at *Agra*. And being walking in his Terraſs here, which is by a fine River, a Barge was rowing by, in which was a Lady of ſurprizing Beauty ſitting under a Canopy, which Sight coſt the Empire a great deal of Trouble; for he being ſmitten with her Beauty, ſent immediately to know her Name and Place of Abode; the Meſſengers inform'd him that her Name was *Nour Mahal*, and that ſhe was the Wife of an Officer that had the Command of five hundred Men under the Emperor. Whereupon the Emperor ſent her rich Preſents, and gave her to underſtand how much he was ſmitten with her Beauty; but ſhe would not liſten to any Temptations to be unfaithful to her Husband; whereupon the Emperor order'd her Husband to attend a certain General, commanding the General at the ſame Time to put him to Death, which was executed accordingly, and then the Emperor renew'd his Addreſſes to her, to take her among the Number of his Wives; but ſhe having found that her Husband was murder'd by the Emperor's Order, ſhe broke out into bitter Invectives, and boldly reproach'd him with Treachery and Cruelty; but the View of the Splendor of a Court waſh'd away her Paſſion, and ſhe was willing to comply upon Terms, which was, that ſhe ſhould be firſt Queen, her Father Prime Miniſter, and all her Relations preferr'd to the higheſt Poſts; to all which he agreed, and the Marriage was ſolemnized, the Emperor changing her Name from *Nour Mahal* to *Nour Jaham*, or *Light of the World*; though ſhe was but of mean Parentage, and her Husband a Camel-driver till he advanc'd his Fortune in the Mogul's Service.

Slays the Woman's Husband for love of her.

She is made Sultaneſs

And now like an ambitious Woman, advanced from ſo mean a Beginning, her firſt Buſineſs was to rid herſelf of all Rivals, no leſs than five of the Emperor's Favourite Queens dying the firſt Year, not without ſtrong Suſpicion of a fatal Doſe to ſhorten their Days; and having ſo far clear'd the Way, her next Ambition was to unite her Blood with that of the Emperor's, and in order to that propoſed to marry her only Daughter to the Heir apparent to the Crown; for the Emperor had four Sons, the eldeſt, called Sultan *Coſrou*, was born while his Grandfather *Akbar* was alive, the ſecond Sultan *Perwis*, the third Sultan *Chorrom*, and the youngeſt Sultan *Scheriar*; the ambitious Queen aim'd at nothing lower than the eldeſt Sultan *Coſrou* for a Match for her Daughter, but he was prejudiced againſt the Sultaneſs his Mother in Law, thinking ſhe had too much Influence over the Emperor, and beſides he was already married to a Daughter of one of the Raja's, whom he loved too well to ſlight her for *Nour Jaham*'s Daughter; ſhe then propoſed her Daughter in Marriage to *Scheriar* the youngeſt Son, who immediately embraced the Offer, thinking by that and the Intereſt of the Sultaneſs, who would now be his Mother-in-Law in a two-fold Reſpect, to advance himſelf to the Throne at his Father's Death; and to make his Aſcent to the Throne more eaſy, the three elder Brothers were appointed to different Governments; *Chorrom* was ſent to *Decan*, *Perwis* to *Bengall*, and *Coſrou* the eldeſt was appointed for *Guzarat*; and now the Sultaneſs thought the Way was open for her Daughter's Husband to take poſſeſſion of the Empire, without Rival or Oppoſition as ſoon as the Emperor died.

A Feaſt marries her Daughter to

But *Coſrou*, inſtead of going to *Guzarat*, and leaving his younger Brother ſo fair a View of the Empire, aſſembled a Body of Troops to ſecure his Succeſſion, as ſuppoſing it was his Right even in his Father's Life-time, he having been told (as before hinted) that his Grandfather *Akbar* appointed him, and not the preſent Emperor *Jehan Guire*, to be his Succeſſor; and though *Coſrou* was content notwithſtanding that his Father ſhould peaceably enjoy the Empire during his Life, yet he could not bear to ſee himſelf deprived of his juſt Right of Succeſſion, by means of the Sultaneſs and her Daughter, and ſettled upon his youngeſt Brother before his Face.

The Emperor had at this Time two great Miniſters of State, to whom he committed all Affairs of that kind; one was *Aſaph Cham*, who was Brother to the Sultaneſs, and in her Intereſt, and the other was *Mahomet Cham*, a Man above Corruption, and in the Intereſt of *Coſrou*. The Sultaneſs had carried her Intrigues ſo far againſt *Coſrou*, that he was forced to betake himſelf to Arms to defend himſelf and his Right; and in caſe *Mahomet Cham* ſhould appear in his Favour, ſhe had laid an Ambuſcade to ſeize and diſpatch him as he came out of the Palace, but he eſcaped their Hands; and being General of a Party of Soldiers, he aſſembled them, ſurrounded the Emperor's Appartment, ſeized the Emperor, and carried him home to his own Houſe, holding a naked Dagger in his Hand, and letting the Sultaneſs know that if any Attempt were made to reſcue the Emperor or ſtop his Paſſage, the Emperor, ſhould not ſurvive it; and when he came at his own Houſe, he had a Body of Troops under Arms ſufficient to protect himſelf from the Deſigns of the Sultaneſs and her Brother *Aſaph Cham*.

It was now expected that the Emperor *Jehan Guire* would be depoſed, and *Coſrou* advanced to the Imperial Dignity; but inſtead of that, *Mahomet*, after ſome Promiſes of Loyalty, releaſed the Emperor, march'd againſt *Coſrou*, defeated him in the open Field, and brought him Priſoner to Court, where he, his Wives and Children, were ſhut up in the Caſtle of *Guallore*.

Coſrou is taken Priſoner

The Sultaneſs taking the Advantage of *Coſrou*'s Diſtreſs, repeated her Offer of not only aſſuring him his Liberty, but ſecuring his Succeſſion to the Crown, if he would marry her, which if he would comply with, ſhe would have divorced from his youngeſt Brother *Scheriar*; but ſuch was *Coſrou*'s Averſion againſt her, and his paſſionate Love for his Wife before mention'd, that he deſpiſed Liberty rather than accept it on her Terms, and *Aſaph Cham*, the Sultaneſs's Brother, having married his Daughter to *Chorrom*, the third Son of the Emperor, encouraged *Coſrou* to perſiſt in his obſtinate Reſolution againſt the Sultaneſs; *Aſaph* ſuppoſing that if ever ſhe and *Coſrou* ſhould be reconciled by that Marriage, there would be ſmall hopes of his Son-in-Law *Chorrom* ever enjoying the Empire; and to prevent ſuch Reconciliation or Affinity, *Aſaph* prevail'd with the Emperor to ſend for Sultan *Chorrom* home to Court, where to put an End to all doubt, they conſpired to murder *Coſrou*, which being firſt attempted by Poiſon, and he ſuſpecting it, would eat nothing but what his Wife dreſt; and therefore they being reſolute in their Deſign, order'd the Captain of the Fortreſs to ſtrangle him, which was accordingly done, unknown to the Emperor, but he ſoon found it out, and though the Murder was perpetrated by Perſons of ſuch Conſequence that he could not puniſh it as it deſerved, yet he defeated them of all that they deſign'd by it, or expected

Liberty offer'd, and refuſed

Coſrou murdered

from

from it, by commanding *Chorrom* to retire to his Government at *Decan*, and ſettling the Succeſſion upon *Bolaqui*, *Coſrou*'s eldeſt Son, as it were in the Right of his injured Father.

BOLAQUI was a hopeful Prince, and about ſeventeen Years of Age, and was immediately brought to Court, and treated as preſumptive Heir to the Crown, forming Alliances with the Neighbouring Raja's, and gaining the Eſteem of the beſt Officers in the Army.

THE Emperor *Jehan Guire* frequently retired in the Summer to the Kingdom of *Cachemire*, the Northermoſt Part of his Dominions, which being in a more temperate Climate, is exceeding healthful, and abounds with all Things that can render Life comfortable; but in the midſt of his Enjoyment here with his Sultaneſs, he received the News that *Cha Abbas* King of *Perſia* threatened to invade *Indoſtan* or *India*, unleſs *Candahor* was ſurrendred to him, according to a former Agreement of *Amayum*, Grandfather to the preſent Emperor *Jehan Guire*, which the Emperor not agreeing to, ſent Orders to *Sian Cham*, Viceroy of *Multan*, to march towards the Frontiers, to ſtop the Progreſs of the *Perſian* Army; but he being unprovided for ſuch an Expedition, he only ſaw *Candahor* taken by the *Perſians*, which News no ſooner reach'd the Emperor's Ear, but it was ſeconded with the News of his Son Sultan *Chorrom*'s raiſing a Rebellion in the Heart of the Empire.

Candahor demanded.

THE Emperor being inclined to have his Reſidence at *Labor*, had order'd the Treaſure of the Empire to be brought thither from *Agra*, under the Conduct of *Aſaph Cham*, Brother to the Sultaneſs, and he being now in the Intereſt of the Rebel *Chorrom*, on account of his marrying *Aſaph*'s Daughter, *Aſaph* ſent to *Chorrom* to betray the Treaſure to him, telling him where upon the Road he might beſt intercept and ſeize it, whereupon *Chorrom* came towards *Agra* with an Army of ſixty thouſand Men; which the Eunuch that kept the Treaſure underſtanding, would not deliver the Treaſure, though it was to the Sultaneſs's Brother, and by the Emperor's Order; but the Eunuch diſpatch'd a Courier to Court, to acquaint the Emperor what Hazard it would be to remove the Treaſure at that Juncture. Sultan *Chorrom* being diſappointed of meeting the Treaſure on the Road, came to *Agra*, and attack'd the Fort where the Treaſure was depoſited, but was repuls'd with Loſs, and ſo with only plundering the Palaces of the *Omrah's*, he return'd towards *Decan*.

Chorrom plunders the Palaces.

WHILE this was doing, the Emperor march'd towards *Agra*, with a great Force, and finding ſuch Ravages committed by *Chorrom*, he with his youngeſt Son Sultan *Pervis* from *Bengall*, purſued *Chorrom*, but *Abdul Cham* one of the Emperor's Generals, deſerted to *Chorrom*, which diſabled the Emperor from correcting his Son's Rebellion; however he gain'd the Victory, and *Chorrom* was compell'd to retire to the Mountains. The young Prince *Bolaqui* laid ſiege to *Amadabat*, the Capital of *Guzarat*, and having ſtorm'd it, plunder'd *Chorrom*'s Palace, broke down his Golden Throne, and diſtributed the precious Stones with which it was adorn'd amongſt his own Officers; *Abdul Cham*, the late Deſerter from the Emperor, muſter'd the Remains of *Chorrom*'s broken Troops, and engaged young *Bolaqui*; but being again defeated, he eſcaped to *Surat*, and afterwards found means to join *Chorrom* at *Brampour*, where they raiſed a great Body of Troops, but they were ſoon diſperſed upon the Approach of Sultan *Pervis* and *Mahomet Cham*, with the Emperor's Forces.

Cham Canna Abdul Cham

THE chief Favourite Miniſter of *Chorrom* at firſt was *Cham Canna*, but when *Abdul Cham* deſerted the Emperor to join *Chorrom*, it was look'd upon as ſuch a diſtinguiſhing Piece of Service, that he was the moſt reſpected, which ſo incens'd the late Favourite *Canna*, that he went over to the Emperor, and acquainted him with *Chorrom*'s Diſtreſs in *Bampour*, and how they might eaſily ſurprize him; the Emperor's Forces came accordingly, but *Chorrom*, either by Advice or Suſpicion, was gone from *Bampour*, which gave great Cauſe of Jealouſy as to the Truth of *Canna*'s Relation of *Chorrom*'s being in ſuch diſtreſs at *Bampour*.

IN the mean Time the *Uſbeck Tartars* invaded their neighbouring Province of *Cabulſtan*, which obliged the Emperor to go with a great Part of his Forces to the Northward; and *Chorrom*, glad to ſee the Emperor ſo diverted, enter'd the Field again, and having plunder'd the rich Country of *Bengall*, and retiring with his Booty, was met by his Brother Sultan *Pervis* and General *Mahomet*, who fell upon him, defeated his Army, and he eſcap'd with only three thouſand Men.

Cabulſtan invaded.

BUT the Sultaneſs thinking that the ſuppreſſing of *Chorrom*, and advancing Sultan *Pervis* and *Mahomet Cham* to the Head of the Emperor's Troops, would tend, to if not end in the Ruin of her Family, ſhe inſinuated to the Emperor that *Mahomet*'s Zeal for Sultan *Pervis*'s Intereſt was with a Deſign to ſet *Pervis* on the Throne, even in his Father's Lifetime, and adviſed the Emperor to ſend for *Cham Canna* to Court, who being a mortal Enemy to *Mahomet*, and being pre-inſtructed, came up with a heavy Charge againſt *Mahomet*, magnifying the Services he had done in deſerting *Chorrom* to come over to the Emperor, for which inſtead of being rewarded, he was confin'd as a Priſoner in the Camp of Sultan *Pervis*, and that he and *Mahomet* had acted as if they were already Maſters of the Empire; this Charge of *Cham Canna*, by the Inſtigation of the Sultaneſs, ſo touch'd the Emperor, that he immediately diſcharg'd *Mahomet* from his Command, and required him to give a ſtrict Account of his Conduct.

False Charge

MAHOMET thinking it in vain to plead his own Inocency or Integrity before the Sultaneſs and her Creatures, who were bent upon his Ruin, he form'd another Project; for the Emperor being now upon his Progreſs from *Agra* to *Cachimere*, *Mahomet* with five thouſand *Rajaputes* ſurprized the Emperor in his Tent one Morning, while his Army was paſſing the River *Tziunab*, the greateſt Part of them being got to the other Side, and the Guards being ſurprized fled; ſo that without ſtriking one ſtroke he ſeized the Emperor, Prince *Bolaqui*, Sultan *Scherier*, and his two great Enemies *Aſaph Cham* and *Cham Canna*, and indeed all the whole Court; the City of *Agra* hereupon declared for *Mahomet Cham*, and the Cittadel ſurrenderd to one of his Officers; and it was now in his Power to have advanced which of the Royal Family he pleas'd to the Throne, but he was not intending to bring about a Revolution, nor attempted any Alteration, but gave the Emperor and his Sultaneſs liberty to purſue their Journey to the North, himſelf attending them as Captain of their Guards, he ſent *Bolaqui* and *Scherier* to the Caſtle of *Agra*, and carried *Aſaph Cham* and *Cham Canna* along with him in Irons.

Seizeth the Emperor

THE Sultaneſs now ſtudied to make Reprizals upon *Mahomet*, and make him Priſoner, and in order to that, conſulted ſome of the chief Officers who had been diſperſed by *Mahomet*'s firſt Surprize, and they concluded to poſt a Body of Troops upon the Road, who might eaſily defeat *Mahomet* and his *Rajaputes*, and make *Mahomet* Priſoner; but he having Intelligence of the Ambuſcade, return'd back to *Agra* with his two Priſoners, leaving the Great Mogul and his Sultaneſs to go their Journey without him, giving *Cham Canna* liberty alſo to follow the Court, when he had firſt ſworn him upon the *Alcboran* never for the future to bear Arms againſt him.

Sultaneſs's Contrivance.

But the Sultaness not yet satisfied, not only prevail'd upon the Emperor to send a powerful Army against *Mahomet Cham*, *Canna*, notwithstanding his Oath, gladly accepting the Command thereof, but also, either by Presents or Promises, procured all *Mahomet*'s Friends, even his own Son, to desert him. In this Strait *Mahomet* thought he could not do better, either for his own Security, or to be revenged on the Sultaness, than to desert the Emperor, and go over to Sultan *Chorrom*, who received and entertain'd him with the greatest Satisfaction, as being sensible he might be of great Use to him in his intended Struggle for the Empire at the Decease of his Father, which accordingly happen'd in his return from *Cachimere* to *Labor*, in the Year 1627.

The Emperor *Jean Guavedies*.

And now the Empire was involv'd in Confusion in the several Interests of three different Competitors to the Crown. Now the Sultaness exerts her utmost Efforts in favour of her Son-in-law *Scheriar*, who married her Daughter, and she had him proclaimed in the Palace. The Army adher'd to Prince *Bolaqui*, as being Son and Heir of the late Emperor's eldest Son *Cosrou*; he being recognized at *Agra*, enjoy'd the Imperial Title for some Time. The Sultaness, and her Son-in-law *Scheriar*, were deliver'd up to him, and he put out the Eyes of *Scheriar* as a Usurper, and kept the Sultaness in Prison.

Three Competitors for the Crown, and *Bolaqui* proclaim'd

The two old Ministers *Asaph Cham* the Sultaness's Brother, and *Mahomet*, who a little before the Emperor's Death deserted to *Chorrom*, were both in *Chorrom*'s Interest, but durst not declare themselves, because the Forces and Treasure of the Empire were under the Command of *Bolaqui* at the same Time. *Bolaqui*, willing to sound his Uncle *Chorrrom*'s Temper, and how he could brook being tributary, sent to demand Homage for the Kingdom of *Decan*, and the other Dominions he held of the Empire. When the Messenger came at Sultan *Chorrrom*'s Palace, he was told that the Sultan was in such an ill State of Health that he could not be spoke to; but the Messenger insisted upon seeing him, which at last he was admitted to do, and found the Sultan vomiting Blood, and so weak that it seem'd as if he could not live many Days. The Messenger dispatch'd a Courier to acquaint the Court at *Agra*, that Sultan *Chorrom*'s high Indisposition detain'd him, as knowing that his Sickness would be welcome News to the young Emperor, though this Sickness was all dissembled, and the Blood he vomited was the Blood of a Kid put in his Mouth privately, to compleat the Cheat, which they carried on till he disappear'd, and then they gave out that he was dead, and the Court went into Mourning for him. *Mahomet* also advised the Messenger to write to *Bolaqui* for Leave to bury Sultan *Chorrom* in the Royal Sepulchre at *Agra*, which was readily granted; and upon the return of the Courier, a pompous Funeral Procession was begun, suitable to the Quality of so great a Prince. *Mahomet Cham*, at the Head of a thousand Officers of the Deceased, attended the Hearse, and Sultan *Chorrom* himself follow'd in Disguise, several Bodies of the Rajapates, Allies of Sultan *Chorrom*, fell in with the Procession upon the Road, under pretence of paying the last Devoirs to the Deceased. *Asaph Cham*, who was of *Bolaqui*'s Council at *Agra*, (but privately in *Chorrom*'s Interest) treacherously advised the young Emperor to meet his Uncle's Corpse as they drew near *Agra*, who thereupon march'd out with an ordinary Guard and small Equipage suitable to the Occasion; but when he saw such a numerous Body of Troops attend the Hearse, and suspecting he was betray'd, he turn'd short, and made his Escape, not attempting to recover *Agra*, nor stopping till he came in the *Persian* Dominions, for he supposed the Defection was universal, and he knew that if he fell into his Uncle's Hands, Death, or the loss of his Eyes would be the Consequence.

Chorrom feigned Sick, and dies. The Emperor's Funeral. *Bolaqui*'s Escape

Upon their Approach to *Agra*, Sultan *Chorrom* threw off his Disguise, and at the Head of his Troops entred the City, whose Gates were set open to receive him; he was immediately proclaim'd Emperor, and took upon him the Name or Title of *Cha Jehan*, or King of the World. Sultan *Scheriar*, who had before lost both his Eyes, was order'd to be shut up with his two Sons in an Apartment in the Palace, where it is supposed they all starved, nothing having ever been heard of them since.

Chorrom proclaim'd. *Bolaqui* proclaim'd.

Cha Jehan having contracted an inveterate Hatred against the *Portuguese* in his Dominions, for refusing to assist him in his Wars against his Father, was resolved, if possible, to expel them out of his Dominions; they had indeed been weaken'd at Sea by other *Europeans*, and several of their Settlements taken from them by the *Dutch*; but his first Enterprize was against the *Portuguese* Fort at *Hugly*, a little up the River *Ganges* or *Hugly* River. This Place the General *Cassam Cham* besieged in Form, but when he first appear'd, he only demanded a certain Sum of Money, upon Payment of which he promised to withdraw his Forces, but as soon as they had answer'd his demand, he opened the Trenches, and play'd from his Batteries with so much Fury, that they were soon forced to surrender, and were made Prisoners of War, and carried to *Agra*, where they must either turn Mahometans, or die Martyrs to their Religion.

Besieges *Hugly*.

Cha Jehan remov'd the Imperial Seat to *Delly*, where he made beautiful Gardens, with Fountains and other Water-Works, and by Degrees degenerated into such Luxury and Effeminacy, that he became contemptible to his Subjects, and the great Raja's refused to obey his Orders; but as he grew in Years, he became covetous, even to Excess, and the greatest Miser that ever sat on the Throne, insomuch that he would allow his Generals and Governors of Provinces no Salary, but an unlimited Power to fleece the People, and when by that means any of them grew vastly rich, he would soon charge them with some Misdeamour, and as a Penalty, empty their Bags into his own Treasury, whereby he became immensely rich; his Sons (which were four) likewise having no Allowance but what they could extort from distant Courts and People to which they were sent, to save Charges at Home.

Leaves *Delly*.

Covetous.

Of his four Sons, the eldest was Sultan *Dara*, the second was Sultan *Sujah*, the third *Aurengzebe*, and *Morad Back* the fourth; and of two Daughters the eldest was *Begom Sabeb*, and the other, *Roxanara Begum*; some Authors mention a third, named *Merinza Begum*; but if there was such a one, she was kept very obscure, and made little Figure in History.

Four Sons and two Daughters.

Cha Jehan intending his eldest Son *Dara* to be his Successor, kept him at Court, and near his Person, and had him instructed in Mathematicks and Mechanicks, and such Sciences as might qualify him for Government; so that in his Father's Life-time he was vested with almost regal Authority, and allow'd to sit upon a Sopha or Chair of State but little lower than the Emperor's, and even in his Presence, which was an unprecedented Honour in that Empire, for he had all the Marks of Sovereignty conferr'd upon him, except disposing of the Revenues; and all these royal Favours were answer'd by him with suitable Returns of Gratitude and Obedience to his indulgent Father.

Royal Favour

But this Grandeur set him above the Respect due to the Raja's and principal Ministers, insomuch

Lofty Deportment

much that he treated them with a Sort of Diſtance, or rather Contempt, as ſuppoſing ſuch a Favourite Prince as himſelf could never need to be beholden to any Subject to ſupport his juſt Pretenſions to the Crown; but this his loſty Carriage alienated the Hearts of the Miniſtry from him, and procur'd him many Enemies at Court, which his other Brothers obſerving, made the more Intereſt againſt *Dara*, every one ſeverally to ſucceed to the Government in caſe the Emperor ſhould die.

WHILE every one was thus ſecuring his own Intereſt, there happen'd to be one *Mirza Mula*, a *Perſian* in the Mogul's Service, and advanced by *Cha Jehan* to the moſt conſiderable Commands in the Army, and an old Friend of *Aurengzebe*; but notwithſtanding his Merit, he was ſlighted by the haughty Sultan *Dara*; upon which Provocation he went over to the King of *Golconda*, who gave him a Poſt in the Treaſury, and the Direction of the Trade of his Country. In this Place of Truſt he grew rich, and valued himſelf for his magnificent Equipage, and purchaſing Curoſities, and preſenting them to the King and Royal Family; the Queen Dowager the King's Mother, was ſo taken with the Preſents and Complaiſance of this *Perſian Mirza*, that ſhe deny'd him no Favours, which the King perceiving, ſent *Mirza* out of her Way to the Government of *Carnate*, where the Diamond Mines were; where he took care to lay by the moſt Valuable for his own Uſe, and among the reſt one which was not to be match'd in the *Indies*, either for Bigneſs or Luſtre. This he preſented to his Friend *Aurengzebe*, whoſe Government lay contiguous to the Kingdom of *Golconda*, and with it he ſent a Meſſage to let him know, that if he would march an Army into *Golconda*, he would join him with a Body of Troops from *Carnate*; and to convince him of the Value of ſuch a Conqueſt, ſent him the Diamond above-mention'd as a Specimen of what that Kingdom afforded.

AURENGZEBE, who made Religion the chief Motive and Spring of all his Actions and Undertakings, at leaſt ſeemingly ſo, and from that Principle alledged that the Kingdom of *Golconda* and the rich Diamond Mines of that Country ought not to be in the Poſſeſſion of a Heretick of the *Perſian* Sect, but of a true Believer, as he called both of; and under that Pretence he thought he could eaſily juſtify his intended Invaſion of *Golconda*; but his chief Motive at the Bottom was, that he queſtion'd not but that if he was once in poſſeſſion of the Riches of *Golconda*, he would be in a fair Way for the *Indoſtan* or *Indian* Empire, and therefore without Delay march'd and join'd *Mirza*'s Forces with his, and made a powerful Army.

As ſoon as the King of *Golconda* was inform'd of theſe united Forces coming againſt him, he retir'd from his Capital of *Baguagar* in the utmoſt Conſternation, and ſhut himſelf up in the Fortreſs of *Golconda*, about three Miles from *Baguagar*; they plunder'd *Baguagar*, and then inveſted the Fortreſs where the King was; and having made this Progreſs, *Aurengzebe* ſent Advice to his Father the Emperor *Cha Jehan* of his Succeſs; but Sultan *Dara* being afraid, and not without Reaſon, that if *Aurengzebe* ſhould once make himſelf Maſter of the Diamond Mines, his next Stroke would be at (the Succeſſion at leaſt to) the *Indian* Empire, he told his Father what he was apprehenſive of, who thereupon diſpatch'd Orders to *Aurengzebe* to deſiſt from any further Purſuit of his preſent Enterprize, and retire immediately to his Government at *Decan*.

AURENGZEBE with Reluctancy obey'd the Emperor's Orders, but firſt made Conditions with the King of *Golconda*; which were, that the Mogul ſhould be re imburs'd the Charges of the War; that the King of *Golconda* ſhould give his Daughter in Marriage to *Mahumed*, *Aurengzebe*'s eldeſt Son, who ſhould ſucceed to the Crown of *Golconda* after the King's Deceaſe; and that *Mirza*, notwithſtanding his Treachery and Rebellion, ſhould be at Liberty to retire peaceably with his Family and Effects out of the Kingdom; and thus *Aurengzebe* return'd to *Decan*, but with ſuch a Taſte of the Riches of *Golconda*, that he reſolved to make it a Province of the Empire if ever he ſucceeded to the Crown; and finding that *Mirza* had Courage, Conduct, and indeed Villany enough to execute, without Remorſe, whatever he was bent upon, and not queſtioning but that *Mirza*'s Prejudice and Averſion to Sultan *Dara* was ſufficient to confirm him in the Intereſt of *Aurengzebe*, he look'd upon him as the fitteſt Inſtrument to promote the Deſigns he had in view; and upon that Account he made him General of the Forces employ'd againſt the Kingdom of *Viſapour*, and ſhew'd him other particular Marks of Favour and Reſpect.

Cha Jehan ſick.

IN the mean Time the Emperor *Cha Jehan* was taken dangerouſly ill, inſomuch that it was reported almoſt all over the Empire, and even in *Delly* itſelf, that he was dead; whereupon the three youngeſt Sultans, his Sons, began to puſh for the Empire; Sultan *Sujah* was the firſt that appear'd in Arms; he was Viceroy of *Bengall*, he march'd towards *Delly* with forty thouſand Horſe, and ſpoke by way of Proverb or Motto, *Now for a Throne or a Grave.*

Dara falſely accuſed.

SULTAN *Sujah*, to make his Plea the ſtronger, gave out that Sultan *Dara* had poiſon'd the Emperor, but *Cha Jehan* recovering, not only clear'd Sultan *Dara* by his own verbal Evidence, but writ to Sultan *Sujah* that *Dara* had not done any thing that contributed to his late Illneſs, and therefore commanded him to return to his Government at *Bengall*; but *Sujah* ſtill hoping that his Father was paſt Recovery, continued his march towards *Delly*; but the Emperor *Cha Jehan*, upon Advice of *Sujah*'s Approach, removed the Court to *Agra*; *Dara* follow'd his Father, but detach'd two Generals with his Son *Soliman Chacu*, one of them was Raja *Jaſing*, the other *Dalil Cham*, to oppoſe *Sujah*, whom they defeated, and it was with Difficulty that *Sujah* eſcaped to *Bengall.*

Sujah defeated

Aurengzebe and Morad join.

AT the ſame Time, the two youngeſt, *Aurengzebe* and *Morad Back*, aſſembled their Troops to oppoſe *Dara*; *Aurengzebe* continued to promote his Intereſt upon a religious Foundation, and wrote to his Brother *Morad Back*, Viceroy of *Guzarat*, that he had no other View but to ſee the Worſhip of God, and the Law of his holy Prophet eſtabliſh'd in its primitive Purity, and that he would endeavour to prevent any Heretick ſucceeding to the Throne of his Father, and that as he (*Morad*) alone retain'd a true Zeal for the Alchoran, he would aſſiſt him to oppoſe both *Sujah* and *Dara*. *Morad*, pleaſed with his religious Reſolution, invited him to join Forces with him, that they might march in a Body to *Delly*; whereupon *Aurengzebe*, with his Friend *Mirza Mula*, march'd for *Delly*, well provided with Money and all other Neceſſaries; and when the Armies came in ſight of each other, *Aurengzebe* proſtrated himſelf before *Morad* as his Sovereign, (as ſuppoſing the Emperor *Cha Jehan* was now dead;) but *Morad* immediately took up *Aurengzebe*, and took upon himſelf the imperial Stile and State, which *Aurengzebe* ſubmitted to, under a pretence that he had no further View of his own Intereſt than to devote his Time to Acts of Mortification and Devotion.

BUT when *Dara* underſtood that the two Brothers were united, he diſpatch'd Letters to each of them, to let them know that their Father *Cha Jehan* was alive, and that they ſhould diſband their Forces immediately, upon pain of Reſentment; this ſhock'd *Morad*, but *Aurengzebe* ſpirited him up, telling him that though their Father might be alive,

he

he was superannuated, and *Dara* being little less than Sovereign already, would certainly extirpate the Holy Religion, if not timely prevented, and under these specious Pretences prevail'd upon *Morad* to continue his march.

Cassam deserts Dara.

DARA being apprized of the Design of his two Brothers sent two of his Generals, with proper Forces, to meet them; but *Cassam Cham*, whom the insolent *Dara* had formerly disobliged, being in the Interest of *Aurengzebe*, withdrew, and left *Dara*'s other General to fight by himself, by which means the two Brothers gain'd an easy Victory, and made themselves Masters of all the Enemy's Artillery and Baggage.

Cha Jehan resigns to Dara.

UPON these Successes *Cha Jehan* thought himself betray'd, upon Account of some Prejudice to his own Person, and upon that resign'd to his Son *Dara*, who thereupon rais'd a prodigious Army, and march'd to meet his Enemies the two united Brothers; but all the Officers of the haughty *Dara* were prejudiced, some against him, and some against his Father *Cha Jehan*, that upon Trial, they had almost every one a particular Pique against *Cha Jehan* or *Dara*. In short, *Calil Cham*, one of those prejudic'd Generals of *Dara*'s, being sent to oppose the two Brothers *Aurengzebe* and *Morad*, and at the same Time holding a private Correspondence with them, and in their Interest, suffer'd the Army of the two Brothers to pass the River without Opposition, and without any Disturbance, to form themselves in order of Battle, and in a Readiness to receive *Dara* and his Forces, some of whom being commanded by those prejudic'd Officers, were remiss in their Duty, and others deserting to the two Brothers, they easily obtain'd an entire Victory, and *Dara*, with a few that stood by him, retired to *Agra*, and thence to *Delly*, but the Governor having heard of his Defeat refused him Admittance, whereupon he was obliged to withdraw to *Lahor*.

Dara defeated.

Agra betray'd. Cha Jehan taken Prisoner.

IN the mean time the two Brothers *Aurengzebe* and *Morad* advanced to *Agra*, which was soon betray'd to them, and their Father *Cha Jehan* soon became their Prisoner, whereupon they seiz'd his immense Treasure, left a Garrison at *Agra*, and continued their March towards *Delly*, *Aurengzebe*, and the whole Army, treating *Morad* as Emperor; and when they encamp'd in the Plains of *Matura*, where there is a noble Mosque or Temple, erected by some of the *Mogul* Emperors, which *Aurengzebe* thought a proper Place to perform the Ceremony of the Inauguration of his Brother *Morad*, for which Solemnity they appointed the fifteenth of *June* 1656.

Morad to be made Emperor.

BUT *Aurengzebe* had a quite different Project to manage, and in order to that, he, under a pretence of Indisposition, remain'd at his own Quarters the Night before the pretended Ceremony, and sent for *Morad* to his own Quarters, under a Pretence of regulating some Affairs relating to the Procession, and to consult the Astrologers about the lucky Minute for the Inauguration; whereupon *Morad* went to *Aurengzebe*'s Tent, where a noble Entertainment was provided, and plenty of Wine brought in; the Royal Brothers eating and drinking together, while *Morad*'s Officers were entertain'd in a distant Tent, and only his Eunuch *Cha Abbas* remain'd in the Tent with his Master.

Morad betray'd

MORAD, mistrusting no harm, made himself drunk, and *Aurengzebe* order'd him to be remov'd into another Pavilion, attended only by his Eunuch, who laid down at his Feet, and towards Morning *Aurengzebe*, with a few that were privy to his Design, came to *Morad* half drunk, and scarce awake, and bound him and his Eunuch, and sent them one to *Agra* and the other to *Delly*, under strong Guards as Prisoners, and for the greater Privacy in accomplishing this Design, they were shut up each in a close Litter, and convey'd away unknown to any in the Camp, except those concern'd in the Execution of the Design; the Musick continuing to play, and all Tokens of rejoicing continuing, as if the two Royal Brothers had actually been still feasting together, and the new Emperor *Morad* being every Minute expected to appear in his Procession to his Inauguration, while on a sudden *Aurengzebe* appear'd in his Royal Robes upon the Throne erected for his Brother *Morad*, his Party, as they had been before instructed, crying, *Long live the Emperor* Aurengzebe, in which Acclamation both Armies join'd, or if any of *Morad*'s Party refus'd, they were immediately disarm'd, or made to comply with the common Voice of proclaiming *Aurengzebe* Emperor.

Aurengzebe proclaim'd.

AURENGZEBE having thus united both Armies in his own Interest, thought it was now time to conspire the Ruin of his rival Brother *Dara*, and went in pursuit of him to the Kingdom of *Lahor*, but upon the Approach of *Aurengzebe* *Dara*'s Forces dispersed, except a very small Retinue, with whom he went along the *Indus* to *Guzarat* with a Design to escape to *Persia*.

Defeats Dara's Force

THE new Emperor elevated with this Success, resolved to march against his Brother *Sujah*, who he understood was advancing towards *Agra*, and accordingly he did, and prevented that Capital from falling into his Hands, but *Sujah* had encamp'd so advantageously, that he kept a Communication open with several Towns, from whence he had Plenty of Provisions, while *Aurengzebe* wanted common Necessaries, nor could they come at any Water but what they fetch'd upon Camels from the *Ganges*, about twenty Miles off. In this Distress *Aurengzebe* struck their Tents, and put the Army in Motion, which *Sujah* observing, fell upon their Rear, and thus it came to a Set Battle, the Armies advancing they fought with great Obstinacy, till *Aurengzebe* drew his Enemy into a Field, where the Night before he had caused Pits to be dug, and cover'd with Turf; here *Aurengzebe* drew his Brother in Person to engage him, himself avoiding the Pit, while *Sujah* with his Elephant tumbled in, and the Army losing Sight of him, thought he was slain, and thought of nothing but a Retreat, and though *Sujah* recover'd himself and mounted a Horse that was brought him, yet his Army was so confused, that he could not rally them again, but was forced to make his Escape to the Province of *Bengall*, where he recruited his Forces and waited for his Brother and Enemy *Aurengzebe*, whose eldest Son *Mahomet* being under his Father's Displeasure, *Sujah* took that Advantage to invite him over to his Party, which he agreed to, and brought several of the best Officers along with him; but this Revolt was short-liv'd, for *Aurengzebe* encouraged his Son, and prevail'd upon him to return to his Duty, which when he had done, he rewarded him accordingly, confining him in the Castle of *Guallior*, being conscious of what he had done to his Father *Cha Jehan*, and not unjustly suspecting that his Son *Mahomet* might serve him in the same manner if he were at Liberty.

Sujah betray'd & defeated

Mahomet imprisoned.

AURENGZEBE having now got *Cha Jehan* his Father, the rightful Emperor, and his Rival Brother *Morad*, and also his Son *Mahomet*, all in Prison, he thought he had nothing to fear, and made a triumphant publick Entry into *Delly*, assumed all his Titles, and caused Money to be coin'd with this Inscription, *I the King* Aurengzebe, *Conqueror of the World, have caused this Money to be coin'd as bright as the Sun itself.*

BUT Sultan *Dara* resolving in the mean time to dispute the Title with *Aurengzebe*, drew together another Army at *Guzarat* to meet his Brother; but upon the Approach of the Armies towards

Dara again defeated

each

each other, *Dara*'s Forces diſpers'd, and all abandon'd him, except about two thouſand Horſe, with which he was forced to travel a ſandy Deſart, deſigning to go to *Amadabat*, where his Troops were; but when almoſt ſpent with his Journey, and arriving near the Town, *Aurengzebe* had ſo work'd the Governor, either by Threats or Promiſes, that *Dara* was deny'd entrance; whereupon his Fortune being now deſperate, and paſt hopes of retrieving, he determined to flee to *Perſia*, truſting to the Favour of *Given Cham*, Commander of a Fort upon the Frontiers, whoſe Life *Dara* had formerly ſaved, when *Cha Jehan* had ſentenced him to be trod to death by Elephants; he received *Dara* with all Marks of Gratitude and Eſteem, but immediately ſent Intelligence to *Aurengzebe*'s General, that he had *Dara* in his Power, and would deliver him up, which was accordingly done, and he was carried Priſoner to *Bakar*; which was now beſieged by *Aurengzebe*'s Forces, and was the only Fortreſs that held out for *Dara*; who being now under ſuch unfortunate Circumſtances, was eaſily prevail'd upon by *Aurengzebe*, to ſend Orders to the Governor of *Bakar* to ſurrender, upon Condition that *Dara* ſhould have Liberty to retire to the Kingdom of *Calamire*; but when *Aurengzebe* had got poſſeſſion of *Bakar*, he, regardleſs of his Promiſe, ſent *Dara* Priſoner to *Delly*; where being for ſome Time expoſed in the moſt mercileſs and contemptible Manner, *Aurengzebe* order'd him to be beheaded, and further to gratify his Revenge, cauſed his Head to be ſent to his Father *Cha Jehan* and his Siſter *Begum Saeb*, who were in Priſon at *Agra*, which melancholy Sight added infinitely to their Affliction.

AURENGZEBE having thus rid himſelf of *Dara*, he went with an Army againſt Sultan *Sujah*, who was at *Bengall*; but *Sujah*, not able to ſtand before his Brother, retired to *Arracan*, which lying to the South-Eaſt from *Bengall*, and being ſeparated from it by unpaſſable Mountains, and the *Portugueſe* being then poſſeſs'd of *Chatigan*, a Port near the Mouth of the River *Ganges*, undertook to tranſport him, with his Family and Treaſure, by Sea to *Arracan*, but they proved treacherous, and ſunk the Ship where his Treaſure and Jewels were, in ſuch ſhallow Water, that they could afterwards weigh them, and convert them to their own Uſe, but *Sujah* and his Family arrived ſafe at *Arracan*, where he fled for Refuge. But he had not been long at that Court, till there happen'd ſome Miſunderſtanding between that Prince and *Sujah*, which amounted ſo high, that not only the Sultan himſelf, but his Wives and Children were all cut to Pieces. This happen'd in the Year 1658.

The next that *Aurengzebe* conſpired to cut off, was his rival Nephew *Chaan*, the eldeſt Son of *Dara*, who though he had fled for Refuge to the Raja *Srinagor*, whom neither Threats nor Promiſes could prevail upon to deliver *Chaan* up to *Aurengzebe*; who therefore went another Way to work, and prevail'd upon the Raja's Son to betray *Chaan* to him; in order to which, a Hunting Match was appointed, and intelligence given to *Aurengzebe* of the Time and Place for the intended Sport, and *Chaan* went along with the Raja's Son and his Company to partake of the Diverſion; where *Aurengzebe* had detach'd ſome of his Forces to form an Ambuſcade, who carried off the young Prince, who was ſent to Priſon at the Caſtle of *Guallior* to accompany his Uncle *Morad*.

AURENGZEBE thought he had nothing now to fear but his Brother *Morad*, and not thinking himſelf ſafe while he was alive, he, according to ſome of his former pretences of Sanctity, as if he would not execute him unjuſtly, produced Witneſſes to prove, that when *Morad* was Viceroy of *Guzarat*, and the Emperor *Cha Jehan* ſent an *Omrah* to inſpect into his Conduct, *Morad* cauſed the *Omrah* to be aſſaſſinated, whereupon Sentence was paſt upon *Morad*, and he executed, or rather murder'd, the better to ſecure the Poſſeſſion of the Throne to *Aurengzebe*; who now thinking himſelf eſtabliſh'd againſt all Oppoſition, demanded the Inveſture of the Government, and demanded the Oaths of Homage, as the Cuſtom is upon the Acceſſion of a new Emperor or Mogul; but in this the Cadi or High-Prieſt oppoſed him, who declared that he could not be recogniz'd as Emperor during the Life of his Father, eſpecially having taken ſuch indirect and unjuſt Meaſures to cut off his elder Brother, and any other that he thought might ſtand in his Way. *Morad* ſlain.

Upon this he ſummon'd an Aſſembly of Doctors of the *Mahometan* Law, and told them his Father was ſuperannuated, and that *Dara* had violated their holy Religion by drinking Wine, *&c.* and that the chief Motive that induced him to take the Government upon him, was his Zeal to ſee the Precepts of their great Prophet maintain'd: But all this had no effect upon the Cadi, who ſtill oppoſed his Inauguration; whereupon he cauſed that Cadi to be depoſed, and another to be ſubſtituted in his Room; who fearing that if he did not comply with the Emperor's Demands, he might undergo the Fate of his Predeceſſor, or worſe, he immediately agreed to his Inauguration; which was accordingly perform'd on the 20th of *October* 1660, and received the uſual Compliments upon that Occaſion. *Aurengzebe* Inaugurated.

But *Cha Abbas*, the great Sophy of *Perſia*, ſo much reſented the Diſſimulation and Uſurpation of *Aurengzebe*, with his repeated Murders, the Impriſonment of his Father, *&c.* that when *Aurengzebe* afterwards diſpatch'd an Envoy to *Perſia* upon ſome particular Affair, the Sophy order'd the Envoy's Beard to be pull'd off, and the Preſents he brought to be burnt, intending to invade the Great Mogul, *Aurengzebe*'s Dominions, whoſe People were generally ready for a Revolt; but the Sophy dying, before he could put his Deſign in Execution, ſaved *Aurengzebe* the Charge and Trouble he would otherwiſe have been put to, to defend himſelf and his Dominions. Sophi of *Perſia*.

The Mogul ſtill kept his Father *Cha Jehan* in Priſon, but treated him with all manner of Reſpect, and allow'd him all the Pleaſure that ſuch a State of Confinement could afford, and ſent him ſeveral Mollahs to read the Alchoran to him: theſe being *Aurengzebe*'s Creatures, brought *Cha Jehan* over to a perfect Reconciliation to *Aurengzebe*, forgiving all Injuries, and aſſiſting him in the Government with his Advice; and, beſides other diſtinguiſhing marks of his Favour, agreed that *Aurengzebe* ſhould marry the Daughter of his eldeſt Brother *Dara*, the better to confirm his Title to the Crown. But ſtill *Aurengzebe* was not quite eaſy, but jealous even of thoſe of his Officers, who knew by what indirect Means he had advanc'd himſelf to the Throne, particularly of *Emir Jemla*; whom he had advanced to be one of his Generals, but being a very ambitious Man, and having a great Influence over the Mogul's Subjects, *Aurengzebe* did not ſtill think himſelf ſafe while *Emir Jemla* was alive, and not finding any Thing to charge him with, commanded him to invade the Territories of the Raja of *Acham*, which lies to the Eaſtward of *Bengall*; where he went on with Succeſs at firſt, but the wet Seaſon coming on, he return'd to *Bengall*, where he was Governor; thinking to compleat his Conqueſt of *Acham*; but himſelf and a great Part of his Forces having contracted the Bloody Flux, which cauſed a great Mortality amongſt them, *Emir Jemla* was ſwept away among the Reſt, to the great Satisfaction of *Aurengzebe*; who never thought himſelf ſafe as long as this aſpiring General was alive; and having thus gain'd his Point, he never attempted any further Conqueſt on that Side of his own Dominions. *Emir Jemla* ſent to *Acham*.

Pirates.

In the mean Time the Coaſt in the Bay of *Bengall*, eſpecially about the Mouths of the River *Ganges*, was infeſted with Pirates, being moſtly *Europeans*, but chiefly *Portugueſe*, who plunder'd and burnt the Frontier Towns belonging to the Mogul, and made Slaves of his Subjects, and made the Trade here either by Sea or Land very hazardous, but *Aurengzebe* ſent one of his Generals, who ſuppreſs'd the Pirates, and render'd the Government and Trade there as peaceable and as ſafe as in any Port of the Mogul's Empire.

Rebellion of Sevagi.

While theſe Things were tranſacting in the Eaſt Parts of the Empire, Raja *Sevagi* attack'd the Mogul's Frontiers on the Weſt: His Father had been an Officer in the King of *Viſiapour*'s Service, and the young *Sevagi*, inclined to Rebellion, rais'd a Parcel of looſe Fellows againſt the King of *Viſiapour*, who ſuſpecting that the Father of *Sevagi* was concern'd in the Rebellion, ſhut him up in Priſon, where he dy'd. *Sevagi* out of Revenge, plunder'd *Viſiapour*, the Capital of the Kingdom, and with that Treaſure raiſed a Force which enabled him to form a new State in the Heart of the Country, which he did with little Oppoſition, becauſe the King of *Viſiapour* died about the ſame Time, and left the Adminiſtration of the Government to the Queen, who rather than contend with *Sevagi* made Peace with him, and confirm'd to him the Territories he had already uſurp'd; and *Sevagi*, thinking his Uſurpation would always have the like Succeſs that it had in his Attempt upon *Viſiapour*, fell to plundering ſeveral Towns belonging to *Aurengzebe*'s Dominions; but *Aurengzebe* order'd his Uncle *Chaſta Cham* to head an Army againſt *Sevagi*, who thereupon retir'd to the Mountains; but when *Chaſta Cham* purſued him to thoſe wild, and to him unknown, Paſſes, *Sevagi* ſurprized him in his Tent, kill'd his Son, and wounded his General, and ſo harraſs'd the Mogul's Forces that *Chaſta Cham*, finding he could do no good, was glad to quit the Enterprize, and return to his Government of *Aurengabad*.

Invades Surrat.

When *Sevagi* had thus defeated *Aurengzebe*'s General *Chaſta Cham*, he thought himſelf able to invade *Surrat*, on the Weſt Coaſt of the Mogul's Empire, and a Port of the greateſt Trade in all the Mogul's Dominions. In this Expedition he firſt went in Diſguiſe to viſit the Avenues to *Surrat*, and finding the Place but weak, and his Expedition againſt it very ſecret, he took but four thouſand Men, and march'd ſo privately that the Governor had no Notice of his Approach till he arrived within Sight of the Town, and under this ſudden Surprize retir'd to the Caſtle with the moſt valuable Effects. The Inhabitants alſo quitted their Houſes, and left to *Sevagi* the Plunder of one of the richeſt Towns in *India*, only the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Factories erected Batteries to defend their Houſes, and ſo ſav'd their Effects. His plunder at *Surrat* was computed to the Value of three Millions of Pounds Sterling, and altho' *Aurengzebe* was nettled at the Ravages and Plunders of *Sevagi*, yet not being able to reſiſt him, he carried all fair, and pretended to one of the Raja's that attended the Court, that he would be glad to ſee ſuch a puiſſant Heroe, and deſired him to invite him to Court, which *Sevagi* accepted, and with his Son were received at the Mogul's Court with all poſſible Tokens of Reſpect, but in a ſmall Time being jealous of *Aurengzebe*'s Integrity, and being informed that there was a Deſign againſt him, he did not wait to ſee the Event, but haſten'd with his Son to *Viſiapour*, where he and his Succeſſors maintain'd a long War with *Aurengzebe*.

Sevagi's jealouſy.

Cha Jehan dies.

Cha Jehan died in the Year 1666, leaving his Son *Aurengzebe* ſole Emperor, who, beſides his eldeſt Son *Mahomet*, who died in Priſon at *Gualeor*, had four Sons, viz. *Cha Alem*, *Azem Dara*, *Akbar*, and *Chan Bux*, who all ſeverally, and for themſelves, (except *Chan Bux*) conſpired the Downfal of their Father *Aurengzebe*. *Cha Alem* cauſed a Pit to be dug near his Father's Tent, which the Emperor narrowly eſcaped falling into, for which (being detected) he was ſhut up in a dark Priſon many Years. *Azem Dara* alſo having conſpired againſt his Father, and fearing to be detected, deſerted to the King of *Viſiapour*. *Akbar* being ſent with an Army to reduce the Raja *Liſonte*, whoſe Dominions lie contiguous to *Aſemire*, join'd with the ſaid Raja againſt his Father, and marching to attack *Aurengzebe* in his Camp, he partly by Strength and partly by Stratagem overcame them, though they were of ſuperior Force; whereupon *Akbar* fled, but being purſued by his Father's Forces, was forced to betake himſelf to the *Portugueſe* at *Goa* for Protection, and they tranſported him to *Perſia*, where the Sophy entertain'd him kindly, and gave him his Daughter to Wife, and continued ſo faithful to him, that *Aurengzebe* could never prevail upon the Sophy by Threats or Promiſes to deliver him up: However, *Aurengzebe* fell upon *Sevagi*, becauſe he had aſſiſted *Akbar* in his Rebellion, took ſeveral of his Towns, and ſent ſome of his Forces to beſiege his Capital *Gingy*, while himſelf ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Golconda* and *Viſiapour*.

Death.

AURENGZEBE having made ſuch large Conqueſts, ſeem'd to have nothing but his Sons to defend himſelf againſt, and therefore kept the Field at the head of his Army, and to prevent any Attempts from his new Conqueſts of *Viſiapour* and *Golconda*, he made their Kings tributary to him in the Years 1685 and 1686, diveſting them of all Appearance of Sovereignty, and brought them Priſonors to his Camp, and their Kingdoms being made Provinces of the Empire, are govern'd by Officers or Raja's appointed by the *Great Mogul*; and now *Aurengzebe* may be ſaid to have extended his Conqueſts as far as *Cape Comorin*, the Southermoſt Limits of *Proper India*, and to be even ſole Monarch of all the Peninſula, except ſome little Provinces, whoſe Raja's aſſiſted him in ſubduing *Golconda* and *Viſiapour*, and he in Point of Gratitude, or rather becauſe theſe mountainous Provinces produce nothing worth the Trouble and Charge of a Conqueſt, lets them remain quiet under their own Government in their little Principalities, but even they are ſo far from being able to withſtand him if he ſhould think them worth his Conqueſt, that they may properly be called his, though not made tributary, and all the South Part of his Empire is now bounded by the Sea from the River *Indus* Weſt to the great River *Ganges* on the Eaſt.

Death of Cha Alem.

AURENGZEBE being now eſtabliſhed in his Empire and advanc'd in Years, he took care before his Death to ſettle the Affairs of the Empire, and fix the Succeſſion, and in order thereto, releas'd *Cha Alem* out of Priſon, and gave him the Government of *Indoſtan*; he gave *Decan* to *Azem Dara*, and to *Chan Bux* he gave *Viſiapour*, *Golconda*, and *Biſnagar*, (for *Akbar* was dead in *Perſia*.) *Aurengzebe* being dangerouſly ill, and paſt Hopes of Recovery, the three Brothers, before the Breath was out of his Body, began each to draw his Forces together to puſh for the Empire. *Aurengzebe* died the fourth of *March* 1708, and *Azem Dara* arrived at the Camp the next Day, and being attended by ſome of the great Officers of the Court and the Generals, he mounted the Throne, and cauſed himſelf to be proclaim'd King by the Name of *Mahomet Azem Cha*. He buried his Father at *Aurengabad*, in a magnificent Tomb which he had cauſed to be built ſome Years before his Death.

Azem proclaim'd King.

CHA

Cha Alem. *CHA ALEM*, *Azem Dara*'s eldest Brother, being a Prince of great Prudence and Moderation, was better beloved by many than *Azem Dara*, who had now assumed the Throne; wherefore *Azem Dara* gave out that *Cha Alem*'s Mildness was only his Weakness occasioned by his Age, endeavouring thereby to represent him to the People as a Person uncapable of Government; notwithstanding which *Cha Alem*'s Interest increas'd, and he drew together Troops from all Parts, among which were *Rajapouts*, *Patans*, &c. who are better Soldiers than the other *Indians*; with them he march'd to *Delly*, and was joyfully received, and seated on a magnificent Throne; in the mean Time *Hassameddin*, *Cha Alem*'s second Son, march'd from *Bengall* with a considerable Force to assist his Father, took *Agra*, and put the Governor to death, for stopping Letters that were written from Court to *Cha Alem*. Prince *Chan Bux* also prepared for War, but was pacified by a Letter sent him by *Cha Alem*, wherein he promised to protect and maintain *Chan Bux* in the Possession of *Visiapour*, *Golconda*, and *Bisnagar*, which his Father had left him; whereupon *ChanBux* was crown'd King of *Visiapour*, and sent his Son to take Possession of *Golconda*.

Chan Bux crown'd.

In the mean Time *Azem Dara* march'd against *Cha Alem* with an hundred and fifty thousand Men, and arrived at *Aurengabad*, and pursued his March to meet *Cha Alem*; who dispatch'd his two Sons, *Hassameddin* and *Massoudy*, to meet their Uncle, while himself tarried at *Agra*. The two Brothers advanc'd towards the River *Naandaba*, which was within twelve Leagues of *Azem Dara* and his Forces, but *Azem Dara* observing how advantageously *Cha Alem*'s Forces were entrench'd, durst not pass the River to meet them; whereupon the two Brothers with their Forces quitted their Intrenchments, and retired to the Plain in some seeming Disorder, which made *Azem Dara* conclude that they retired out of fear, for which Reason he cross'd the River, and pursued them the more eagerly; but the two Brothers fac'd about to receive the Enemy, and Sultan *Bederbeck*, eldest Son of *Azem Dara*, attack'd a Body of Horse commanded by Sultan *Mahmedguery*, Son of Prince *Hassameddin*, who made *Bederbeck* give Ground; who out of revenge, or rather despair, push'd his Elephant against *Mahmedguery* and wounded him mortally with his Launce, who finding Death approach, push'd his Elephant against *Bederbeck*, run him through, and thus both these Princes dy'd together.

Two Princes kill'd.

Sultan *Valataber*, second Son of *Azem Dara*, likewise attack'd Sultan *Iskander*, Son of Prince *Massoudy*, but the latter wounded the former in the Throat, that he died in the Evening; *Azem Dara*, enraged at the Loss of his two Sons, animated his Generals to revenge, but next Morning he found himself surrounded with the Enemies Army, yet he would not presently surrender, but held out a Fight of almost eight Hours, in which Time he lost sixty thousand Men; and while he endeavour'd to rally his broken Troops, *Razin Sekader*, one of the Sons of *Cha Alem*, fell upon him with fifteen thousand Horse, and a thousand Camels, and made a great Slaughter, and at the same Time Sultan *Massoudy* attack'd him on another Side, so that of a hundred and fifty thousand Men, Horse and Foot, he had only six thousand Horse left; whereupon he quitted his Elephant, and mounted his Horse, to make his Escape, but his Horse being soon kill'd under him, he defended himself till he had kill'd above twenty Men that would have seiz'd him; but at last Sultan *Massoudy* came up in Person, who gave Orders that they should not kill him, but take him alive; but he finding no probability of an Escape, kill'd himself with his own Poniard, rather than be taken Prisoner by his Nephew; and thus perish'd *Azem Dara* with all his Party, and *Cha Alem* remain'd entirely Master of the Field.

Azem Dara kill'd.

CHA ALEM upon this Success took upon him the Name or Title of *Badour Cha*, who now thinking his Power almost beyond Limitation; he, at the Instigation of his Sons, and without any regard to his former Promise to his Brother *Chan Bux*, was perswaded to make War against him, and deprive him of his Kingdoms of *Visiapour* and *Golconda*, his Sons and Ministers insinuating that he was never secure in his Kingdom as long as *Chan Bux* was in a Condition to give him any Disturbance. Upon this *Badour Cha* march'd with a great Army against *Visiapour*, and contrary to all Obligations to his Brother *Chan Bux* for Neutrality, when *Cha Alem* and *Azem Dara* were at War; he also broke through former Agreements with the Raja's, by whose Assistance he obtain'd the Crown; but they being exasperated at his perfidious Violation of his Words and Promises, took up Arms, not to fight but to plunder the Country; but *Badour Cha*, not willing to be diverted from his Enterprize against his Brother *Chan Bux*, let them ravage at pleasure, while he advanc'd into his Brother's Dominions with an Army of fifty thousand Horse and thirty thousand Foot; but *Chan Bux*, not expecting any such hostile Visit from his Brother and Ally *Badour Cha*, he was not prepared for him, not being able to draw together more than eight thousand Horse and twenty two thousand Foot, with which he lay intrench'd near *Golconda*; when *Badour Cha* thought fit to begin the Attack, he soon forc'd *Chan Bux*'s Intrenchments; who seeing himself now under a Necessity to overcome or perish, he put himself at the Head of his Troops with two of his three Sons; and as this was the last Stake, to win the Victory, or lose his three Kingdoms, they fought desperately, but being so much inferior in Number, they were soon overcome, and *Badour Cha* gain'd an entire Victory; and thus the three Kingdoms of *Visiapour*, *Golconda*, and *Bisnagar* were subdu'd, and made Provinces of the Empire, and *Badour Cha* sole Emperor of *India* or Great Mogul. This Victory was obtain'd in the Year 1708.

Badour Cha invades Visiapour.

Chan Bux defeated, and his Kingdoms reduc'd.

CHAP. II.

Treats of the Situation and Extent of India, *the Climate, Monsoons, and Seasons; also the Rivers, Tides, and Sea Ports upon the Coast of* India.

IT might not have been improper, before we had enter'd upon this Chapter, to have given some Account of the first *European* Discoverers and Discoveries of the *East Indies*, or the Trade included under that Title; as also of the first Establishment of the *English* and *Dutch East India* Companies, *&c.* but those Discoveries being sufficiently treated of in Chap. I. of the Description of the *Oriental Islands*,

Page

Page 93, and the Eſtabliſhment of the above-mention'd Companies being alſo treated of in Chap. XIV. of the ſaid Book, Page 114, we refer the Reader to thoſe Places for further Satisfaction.

For the Situation and Extent of *Proper India*, ſee the Beginning of Chap. I. before-going. The Northern Part of *India* is in the Temperate Zone, and the Winds variable, as in other Places without the Tropicks; but the Southern Part is hot, and the Winds periodical, returning to certain Points at or near certain Times of the Year; as from *April* to *October* it blows from the South-Weſt or Weſt-South-Weſt; and from *October* to *April* the contrary Way upon the *Malabar* Coaſt, or between that and the Coaſt of *Africa*, to the Southward of the *Red Sea*. At the ſhifting of thoſe Monſoons, or a little before it, they have prodigious Storms of Wind, and yet theſe Storms do not come ſo exactly by the Day of the Month, but ſometimes a Fortnight or three Weeks before or after the uſual Time; which often occaſions much Damage to Ships, which will be ſo bold as to venture out of a good Harbour, upon a Preſumption that theſe Storms will not come till the periodical Time, whereas if it comes a Fortnight or three Weeks before, they are taken in it, and imprudently expos'd to needleſs Hazards. And ſuch is the Superſtition or Vanity of the Prieſts, and Credulity of the Ignorant, that when the cunning *Bramins* or Prieſts foreſee by the Approach of the Seaſon and other concurring Teſtimonies, that the Hurricanes are almoſt over, they offer gilded Cocoa-Nuts and other Trifles to the Sea, by throwing them into it, doubtleſs with a ſhew of Devotion; and they having thus calm'd the Wind, and ſtill'd the Sea, as the Ignorant believe, they pronounce it ſafe for Ships to go out to Sea again.

But they have alſo Land and Sea Breezes, as they are call'd, which ſhift once in twelve Hours, except the Hurricanes be ſo violent that thoſe Breezes (though otherwiſe periodical) cannot be perceiv'd; theſe Breezes are very uſeful by Sea and Land, eſpecially the Sea Breezes, which are not only uſeful to convey Ships from Port to Port, but in cooling the Land, which is ſcorch'd by the Heat of the Sun, and not at all cool'd by the Land Breezes, ſo that without them the Heats in *May* or the Beginning of *June* would be intolerable.

Wet Seaſon. About the latter End of *June* the wet Seaſon comes on, and continues about four Months, *viz.* from the latter End of *June* to the latter End of *October*, but it ſometimes holds longer. The Rains fall ſo heavy that the whole Country will be overflow'd ſometimes in a Night or two, eſpecially about the Middle of the wet Seaſon, but nearer the Beginning or latter End there are conſiderable Intervals of fair Weather, and ſo increaſe and decreaſe gradually, as the Seaſon is latter begun, or nearer expired; and the heavieſt of the Rains are commonly attended with the moſt terrible Thunder and Lightning; and in the dry Seaſon there is commonly Lightning without Thunder moſtly every Night, but without doing any harm.

Bengall unhealthy. The loweſt Lands are reckon'd the moſt unhealthy, and hence the Country of *Bengall* is reckon'd ſo in particular, being water'd by the ſeveral Branches of the great River *Ganges*, and therefore muſt lie low, and the noiſom Vapours ariſing from the Mud after the Inundations are over, and the River return'd into its Channel, muſt need be pernicious, and doubtleſs are more ſo by the great Numbers of Frogs and Inſects kill'd in the Floods, and left upon the Shore in great Numbers when the Floods are over.

Rivers, Ganges. Of the Rivers in *India*, *Ganges* is not only the largeſt, but in the greateſt Eſteem; the Depth, Breadth, and Number of the Channels, by which it empties itſelf into the Sea; and not only the Clearneſs but Goodneſs of the Water, which Seamen ſay will keep at Sea better than any Water in the World, except that of the *Thames*; and if to that we add a Piece of the Superſtition of ſome of the Natives, they believe there is ſo much Sanctity in the Water of this River, that they worſhip it as a Deity, and think that Perſon entirely happy that expires upon its Banks. The Tides riſe at the Entrance of the *Ganges* ten Foot in the Spring Tides, and ſix in the Neap Tides; but as for the motion or ſetting of the Tides it is uncertain, becauſe that is affected by the Monſoons, and beyond Calculation, though ſome Authors have taken upon them to determine it. This River empties itſelf by ſeveral Paſſages into the Bottom of the Bay of *Bengall*, but for its Source, its winding Motion, and what Places ſtand upon its Banks, &c. will be beſt ſeen upon the Map of *India*, &c. which will follow in its proper Place. *Tides.*

The next River for Note and Magnitude is the River *Indus*, which waters the Weſt Part of *India*, as *Ganges* does the Eaſt; they riſe not far aſunder, but *Indus* running to the South-Weſtward, empties itſelf into the Sea near the Tropick upon the Coaſt of *Guzarat*. *Indus.*

The River *Jemma*, famous for the two Capitals *Delly* and *Agra*, being ſituate upon its Banks, it riſes to the Northward of *Delly*, and runs South to *Agra*, and falls into the *Ganges* about Latitude 27 North. *Jemma.*

The River *Criſtna* riſes in the Province of *Decan*, a little to the Northward of *Amadanger*, and having run Southward ſome hundreds of Miles, turns to the Eaſtward near *Golconda*; it falls into the Bay of *Bengall* about Latitude 16 North, a little to the Southward of *Maſulapatan*. *Criſtna.*

Guenga River riſes in the Province of *Decan*, and having run ſome hundreds of Miles North-Eaſt, it turns Eaſt, and falls into *Hugly* River, (the Weſtermoſt Branch of the River *Ganges*,) near its Confluence into the Sea in the Bay of *Bengall*. *Guenga.*

Tapte River riſes near the City of *Bramport*, and runs Weſt through *Surrat*, and falls into the Sea near the Gulf of *Cambaya*. *Tapte.*

The River *Paddar* riſes near the City of *Aſmer*, and after a Weſterly Courſe, meets the River *Indus*, and loſes itſelf in the Sea to the Northward of *Guzarat*. *Paddar.*

Chaoul River riſeth in the Province of *Penbbab*, one of the Northermoſt Provinces of *India*, and holding almoſt the ſame Courſe with the River *Indus*, at laſt falls into it, a little before it falls into the Sea. There are ſeveral other Rivers, ſome whereof are as broad as the *Thames* immediately after the Rains, but are commonly dry before the Rains fall again. *Chaoul.*

India may be divided into North and South; the latter contains twelve Provinces, 1. *Biſnaga*, *Carnate*, or *Narſinga*, for they are all the ſame. 2. *Golconda*. 3. *Orixa*. 4. *Bengall*, on the Eaſt Side. 5. *Malabar*. 6. *Viſiapour*. 7. *Decan*. 8. *Guzarat*, or *Cambaya* on the Weſt; and within the Land more to the North are the Provinces of 9. *Berar*. 10. *Candich*. 11. *Chitor*. 12. *Malva*. But beſide theſe particular Diviſions, the Coaſt commonly goes by two general Names, the Eaſt Coaſt is *Cormandel*, and the Weſt *Malabar*; the Southermoſt Part of *India* is but barren, and famous for nothing but the Pearl Fiſhery between the Continent and *Ceylon*, which employs ſome thouſands of People every Seaſon; but the *Dutch* have the Benefit of it, as being Maſters of both Coaſts; but the Pearls are not ſo large, nor the Fiſhery ſo valuable as in the *Perſian* Gulf; and therefore we ſhall defer giving any Account of the manner of Fiſhing for Pearl till we come to the Deſcription of *Perſia*. *Diviſion.*

The Province of *Biſnagar*, or *Carnate*, comprehends not only *Biſnagar* but *Cormandel*, *Tanjour*, and *Madura* to Cape *Comorin*. *Madura* lies on the South-Eaſt *Biſnag.*

East Part of *India*, being bounded on the North by *Tanjour*, and on the West by *Malabar*, and on the South and East by the Ocean and the Streights of *Manar*, which lies between the Continent and the Island of *Ceylon*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Madura*, in about ten Degrees North Latitude; 2. *Periapatan*, upon the Coast, in about nine Degrees of Latitude; and 3. *Tutacorin*, on the East Coast, in eight Degrees; the *Dutch* took this Town from the *Portugueſe* in the Year 1658. The inland Part of this Country is moſtly inhabited by native *Blacks*, but the Coaſt has been long poſſeſs'd by Strangers, as *Moors*, *Portugueſe*, *Dutch*, and ſeveral other Nations.

Tanjour

The Province of *Tanjour* adjoins to *Madura* on the South, and the Bay of *Bengall* on the East, it making a Part of that Coaſt which goes by the general Name of *Cormandel*; the chief Towns are, 1. *Tanjour*, which lies up in the Middle of the Country; 2. *Negapatan*, on the Coaſt of *Cormandel*, in about eleven Degrees North Latitude; this was but a ſmall Place till the *Portugueſe* enlarged and fortified it, but it is now ſurrounded with a Wall and twelve Baſtions, and defended by a numerous Artillery. The *Dutch* appearing before it with only five hundred Men, the *Portugueſe* ſurrender'd it to them in the Year 1658 without ſtriking one ſtroke. When the *Dutch* took poſſeſſion of *Negapatan*, it had ſeveral fine Churches, a Monaſtry, and other Publick Buildings, but run to ruin ſince it has come to be poſſeſs'd by the *Dutch*.

Trankebar

Trankebar ſtands about fifteen Miles to the Northward of *Negapatan*, and is in the Poſſeſſion of the *Danes*; here is a regular Fort, ſurrounded with a deep Moat, and the Town, which is about two Miles in Circumference, is encompaſs'd with a Wall, with large Baſtions mounted with Cannon; the Houſes are of Brick or Stone, and made very commodious, though only upon the firſt Floor, eſpecially thoſe where the *Danes* or other *Europeans* live; the Streets are wide and ſtrait, and pav'd along each Side with Brick; but the *Indian* Houſes are Mud Walls and thatch'd Roofs, and every way very mean, and the Garriſon, being only a hundred and fifty *Europeans* and a few *Indians*, ſeem'd too weak to defend ſuch a Place; and yet in the Year 1699, when the King of *Tanjour* (aſſiſted underhand by the *Dutch*) beſieged it, they held out ſix Months, and then by a Re-inforcement ſent by Governor *Pitt* of Fort *St. George*, they defended themſelves, and the Enemy was forced to raiſe the Seige.

Building

Gingy

Next to *Madura* is the Province of *Gingy*, and to the Northward of that is that Part of *Narſinga* called *Cormandel*, which is bounded by *Golconda* on the North, by *Proper Narſinga* on the Weſt, and by the Sea or Bay of *Bengall* on the Eaſt. Upon this Coaſt are *Porta Nova*, Fort *St. David's*, *Conymere*, *Saderaſapatan*, *Maderaſs*, now call'd Fort *St. George*; alſo *Poliate* and *Pettipolly*.

Porta Nova

Porta Nova is a *Dutch* Factory to the Northward of *Trankebar*; and about fifteen Miles to the Northward lies Fort *St. David's*, in near twelve Degrees of Latitude North: This Place was purchas'd by the *Engliſh East India* Company, and regularly fortified, and is a Place of the greateſt Conſequence to the *Engliſh* of any upon the Coaſt, except Fort *St. George*; there being a great Trade at Fort *St. David's* for Callicoes and Muſlins.

Bengal and South Settlements

About fourteen Miles to the Northward of Fort *St. David's* is *Pondichery*, a *French* Settlement, and a fine Fortification; and near thirty Miles to the Northward of that is an *Engliſh* one call'd *Conymere*; and ſix Miles beyond that is a *Dutch* Settlement called *Sadera-a-Patan*; to the Northward of which about twenty Miles is *Coblon*, the only Settlement that the *Oſtend East India* Company have in the *East Indies*.

Meliapour

The next Place, once of great Note, is *Meliapour*, about ten Miles North from *Coblon*; it was once as conſiderable a Place as any on the *Cormandel* Coaſt; but being in ruins when the *Portugueſe* fix'd a Settlement here, they rebuilt it by the Name of *St. Thomas*, and made it a Biſhop's See; they fortify'd it regularly, and it became the greateſt Place of Trade upon all this Coaſt; but they were beat out of it by the *Moors*, and the *French* took it from them about the Year 1666. The *Dutch* apprehending that if the *French* got footing in *India*, they might diſpute the Sovereignty of the Seas with them, (the *Dutch* now thinking themſelves ſole Lords of that Element,) they therefore, before the *French* had been four Years in Poſſeſſion, block'd it up with fifteen Ships, while the King of *Golconda* beſieged it by Land; but the Town holding out beyond expectation, the *Dutch* landed ſeven hundred Soldiers, who join'd the Beſiegers and took it; they demoliſh'd the Fortifications, and the Trade is now removed to Fort *St. George*, whither many of the *Portugueſe* alſo removed, and have a Church allow'd them for the Exerciſe of their Religion.

Maderas or Fort St George

Maderas, or Fort *St. George*, is about four Miles to the Northward of *Meliapour*, or *St. Thomas*; it is in about thirteen Degrees of Latitude, and about eighty of Longitude from *London*; the Fort is a regular Oblong, about the Middle of the *White-Town*, where the *Europeans* inhabit, about a quarter of a Mile long, and not half ſo broad; the *Portugueſe* have a Church on the North Side of the Fort; and on the South Side of it is the *Engliſh* Church, a large Building, with a handſome Altar-piece and an Organ.

Black-Town

To the Northward of the *White-Town*, and adjoining to it, is the *Black-Town*, where *Portugueſe*, *Black-Indians*, *Armenians*, and other Strangers inhabit; this Town has alſo the Sea on one Side, and a River on the other, which makes its Situation pleaſant, and it is well ſupply'd; but (except ſome few brick Houſes,) the Buildings are poor and miſerable, only Mud Walls and thatch'd Roofs, no Windows to be ſeen on the Outſide, (except a little ſquare Hole in the Middle to give them light,) nor Furniture within, except Matts and Carpets to lie upon.

Singing-Women

In this *Black-Town* is an *Armenian* Church, and ſeveral little *Indian* Pagoda's or Temples; to the latter belong abundance of Singing-Women, who ſerve not not only in the Temple to ſing Anthems to their Idols, but to entertain their Gallants of any Nation whatſoever, and alſo to make up a Part of the Equipage of a great Man; for every Man of Figure when he goes abroad is attended by them, even the Governor of Fort *St. George* at his going abroad was attended by fifty of them, with the Country Muſick when he went out.

Our *East India* Company, beſides *Maderaſs* or Fort *St. George*, have ſeveral neighbouring Villages under their Government, which they purchas'd of the King of *Golconda* when this Coaſt was under his Government; they have alſo a Houſe and Garden at *St. Thomas's Mount*, about eight Miles to the Weſtward of Fort *St. George*, where the Country People ſay St. *Thomas* was buried.

The Salaries of thoſe in Places of Truſt or Employment under the *East India* Company at Fort *St. George* are as follow:

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
The Governor by the Year, beſides Perquiſites, Advantages by private Trade, *&c.*	300	0	0
A Lieutenant by the Month	6	6	0
An Enſign by the Month	4	19	0
A private Soldier by the Month	1	1	9
A Serjeant by the Month	2	5	0
A Corporal or a Gunner by the Month	1	5	0

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
Two Senior Merchants, each by the Year,	40	0	0
Two Junior Merchants, each by the Year,	30	0	0
Five Factors, each by the Year,	15	0	0
Ten Writers, each by the Year,	5	0	0
Two Chaplains, each by the Year,	100	0	0
The Surgeon, or Doctor, by the Year,	40	0	0
Judge Advocate, by the Year,	100	0	0
The Attorney General, by the Year,	23	0	0
The two Essay Masters of the Mint, by the Year, each	120	0	0

The Church is so well provided for, that they have usually three or four thousand Pounds in Bank, which they put out to Interest; but the annual Repairs of the Church not expending what that Interest amounts to, the Overplus is added to the Principal, and the Fund increases, as it well may, for they have neither got a Ring of Bells, nor if they had, have they built a Steeple to hang them in; but the other Buildings belonging to the Church are kept in good repair, and handsomely beautified.

Palicate. The next Place of Note to the Northward of Fort *St. George*, is *Palicate*, a little more than twenty Miles distant; this is one of the first Settlements the *Dutch* had in *India*; they have had it in Possession above a hundred Years, and yet hold it. About a Day's sail North of *Palicate* lies *Calctore*, where the *English* have a small Factory About a hundred Miles to the Northwatd of this is *Pettipolly*; here also the *English* have a Factory; this lies in Latitude sixteen North, and is the Northermost Factory upon the Coast of *Cormandel*.

Masulipatan. About thirty Miles to the Northward of *Pettipolly* is *Masulipatan*, in the Kingdom of *Golconda*. This is a large and populous Town, and a Place of good Trade, both the *English* and *Dutch* having Factories here; but it is not to be admired, either for its Situation or Buildings, it standing upon a Morass, at the Mouth of a River, and the Buildings mean, after the manner of the *Indians*; it was once famous for the Trade driven here for Diamonds and precious Stones, as also in Chints, Calicoes, and Muslins. A little to the Northward of this is *Madapollom*; here the *English* have a small Factory, in a much more healthy Situation than that of *Masulipatan*.

Nagapa-tan. Between forty and fifty Miles to the Northward of *Masulipatan* is *Nasipore*: here the *Dutch* have a Factory; and about a hundred and fifty Miles further is *Vizagapatan*, where the *English* have a Factory; and at *Bimlepatan*, about fourteen Miles further Northward, is a *Dutch* Factory at *Bimlepatan*; these are all the trading Towns on that Coast.

CHAP. III.

Treats of the Trading Ports upon the Coast of Malabar, *and of the inland Cities and Towns in the Southern Provinces of* India.

THE *Malabar* Coast may be said to begin at Cape *Comorin*, and according to the common way of speaking, is reckon'd to continue to the Gulf of *Cambaya*; but though all the Coast is generally known by that Name, yet *Malabar* extends no further than *Mangalore*, about Latitude thirteen Degrees North. *Malabar* is bounded on the North with the Kingdom of *Visiapor*, on the North, with the Mountains of *Gate* on the East, and with the Ocean on the West and South.

Tagapatan The first Town upon the Coast to the Northward of Cape *Comorin* is *Tagapatan*; it is about thirty Miles from the Cape. Here the *Dutch* have a Fort and a Factory; and about seventy Miles further North is *Anjengo*; this is the Southermost Settlement the *English* have upon this Coast; here our *East India* Company have lately built a Fort to secure their Pepper Trade.

Anjengo. A little to the Northward of *Anjengo*, is *Coulan* or *Quelon*; the *Portuguese* took it and rebuilt it about the Year 1505, and had seven Churches in it, but the *Dutch* took it from them about the Year 1662, and destroy'd the Churches and publick Buildings: They have also a Settlement at *Calecoulon*, a little to the Northward of *Coulan*, which they fortify on Account of their Pepper Trade, after the *Portuguese* had almost destroy'd it in the Year 1523.

Porca *Porca* is the next remarkable Place, it was the Capital of a small Kingdom or Province of that *Cochin* Name; and the next is *Cochin*, a Town of great Trade, and the best Settlement the *Dutch* have upon this Coast: It lies in near ten Degrees of Latitude, it was fortified by the *Portuguese* in the Year 1504, and adorn'd with several fine Edifices, Churches, Monasteries, and a beautiful Cathedral of noble Architecture; the Jesuits Church had a lofty Steeple, and there were other fine Buildings of excellent Stone and Workmanship; but being surrendered to the *Dutch* in the Year 1662, they, according to their wonted Generosity, preferring Warehouses before Churches, destroy'd all the Churches but one, thinking that one was sufficient for as many of them as wanted to make use of it, converting the Stones to a regular Fortification, and rendring the Town almost impregnable.

Cranganor About fifteen Miles to the Northward of *Cochin* is the City of *Cranganor*; it was possess'd and fortified by the *Portuguese*, but taken from them by the *Dutch* in the Year 1661, who found here a noble College of Jesuits, a stately Library, a Cathedral, and six or seven other Churches, the Ruins of all which (for that is all that is now to be seen) is a plain Proof that they, amongst the rest of their Neighbours, have been Partakers of *Dutch* Cruelty.

Panane. Tanor. The Towns of *Penane* and *Tanor* are situate between *Cranganor* and *Calicut*. It was at *Panane* that the *Portuguese* Admiral treated with the King of *Calicut* about setting a Trade, and was repuls'd by the *Moors*, &c. (*See Chap. I. of the Oriental Islands, Page 93.*) but the *Dutch* succeeded the *Portuguese*, and have now a Factory at *Panane*. *Tanor* is but a poor weak Place, but the *Europeans* resort thither sometimes upon the Account of Trade.

Calicut. The City of *Calicut* lies in 11 Degrees, 20 Minutes North Latitude; it was the greatest Place of Trade in all *India* when the *Portuguese* first arrived here; and now several *European* Nations have Factories, and trade there, and especially the *English*, with whom the King of this Country entered into an Alliance against the *Portuguese* in the Year 1615.

Panola.

Between thirty and forty Miles North from *Calicut* is *Panola*, a *French* Factory; and about five Miles further is *Tillicherry*, where the *Engliſh* have a Fort to protect their Trade, which conſiſts chiefly in Pepper. The City of *Cananor* is a few Leagues further North; here the *Portugueſe* erected a Fort, but the *Dutch* took it from them in the Year 1663, and keep it to this Day. *Mangalore*, the Northermoſt Bounds of *Malabar*, is the beſt Port in *India* for Rice; it ſupplies all the reſt of the Coaſt, and the *European* Ships alſo. The Town lies a little up a River, the Bar whereof is very dangerous. The *Portugueſe* pretend to ſome Property here, but other *Europeans* regard them not, but make their Markets to the beſt Advantage, without any Premium or Acknowledgment paid to them.

Cananor.

Mangalore.

Rajapour.

The next adjoining to *Malabar* to the Northward is the Kingdom or Province of *Viſiapour*, upon whoſe Coaſt, ſtill purſuing our Courſe to the Northward from *Mangalore*, the next Place is *Barcelor*, called by ſome *Baſſalore*, and by others *Baquor*, in near fourteen Degrees of North Latitude. Here the *Dutch* have a Factory. About ſeventy five Miles to the Northward of this is the Town of *Carwar*. Here the *Engliſh* have a ſmall Fort, and the Country produces the beſt Pepper in *India*. This is the moſt pleaſant and healthful Settlement the *Engliſh* have upon the *Malabar* Coaſt, (as this, though in *Viſiapour*, is commonly called) and in the Mouth of the River in *Batteçore*, Ships ride ſecure from the Southweſt Monſoons.

Carwar.

Beſt Pepper Trade.

Goa.

From *Carwar* to *Goa* is about thirty Miles. The *Portugueſe* had formerly great Dominions in this Part of *India*, of which *Goa* was the Metropolis, but now they have hardly any conſiderable Settlement but it left. It ſtands about eight Miles up the River *Mandoua*. It is a ſafe and commodious Harbour; and as a certain Captain obſerves, is not much inferior to *Portſmouth*, either for Strength or Conveniency; the Truth of which ſeems to appear in that the devouring *Dutch*, in Purſuit of their Ravages upon this Coaſt, thinking to make *Goa* a Prey to their boundleſs Deſires, block'd it up for ſeveral Years, but could never make themſelves Maſters of it, as they had done by many other *Portugueſe* Towns upon this Coaſt, but the *Portugueſe* ſtill keep it in Poſſeſſion.

Situation.

Goa ſtands upon an Iſland about twenty four Miles in Circumference, which whole Iſland is encompaſs'd with a Wall fortified with Baſtions and Redoubts. The Town is about two Miles in Length, and half a Mile in Breadth; but including the Fields and Gardens about it, it is about twelve Miles in Circuit. The *Portugueſe* have rendered this Place almoſt impregnable, by Caſtles and Redoubts on each Side the Channel before you come up ſo high as *Goa*, which, as before obſerved, ſtands about eight Miles up the River; for all which Space the Shores are ſo adorn'd with Groves of the fineſt Trees that *India* affords, interſpers'd with Forts, Gentlemen's Seats, Villages, and Variety of other Buildings, that it yields a delightful Proſpect all the Way up the River to *Goa*.

Marmagoa.

Goa and Salſet.

Adjoining to the Port of *Goa* is another, call'd *Marmagoa*, made by another Channel, which runs between the Iſland of *Goa* and the Peninſula of *Salſet*. Theſe two Channels meet at *St. Laurence*, and form the Iſland of *Goa*, which contains thirty Villages. In going into the Harbour there is *Salſet* on the Right, which contains fifty Villages, and in them, by a modeſt Computation, are not leſs than fifty thouſand Souls. On the Left is the Peninſula of *Bardes*, containing twenty eight Villages; and if we allow every Village in *Goa* and *Bardes* to contain a thouſand Souls, the Number of People contain'd in the three Iſlands or Peninſula's of *Goa*, *Salſet*, and *Bardes*, amount to one hundred and eight thouſand.

First taking of Goa.

Alphonſo de Albuquerque took *Goa* in the Year 1508, but *Idal Chan* recover'd it again, but did not hold it long till *Albuquerque* retook it; and the *Portugueſe* having rebuilt and fortify'd it as above deſcribed, neither *Dutch* nor *Indians* think it worth while to make any Attempts againſt it; neither doth the Raja, deſcended from *Sevagi*, give them much Diſturbance, for he and the *Portugueſe* are ſo equally match'd, that when either would encroach upon the other, either the *Portugueſe*, to enlarge their Dominions on his Side, or he to make a Conqueſt of *Goa*, they both defend their preſent Property with ſo much Vigour, that the Aggreſſor gets nothing but Blows; and now both Parties reſt ſatisfied with their own Poſſeſſions.

Viſiapour.

The next Town of Note to the Northward of *Goa* is *Rajapour*, in about ſeventeen Degrees of Latitude. *Viſiapour*, formerly the Capital of this Kingdom before the Mogul ſubdu'd it, is an inland Town in about Latitude ſeventeen North: It has ſuffer'd ſo many Depradations, by its being defended againſt the Attempts of the Mogul, before it was conquer'd, that it is now a Place of no Strength, but a weak ſtraggling Town.

Dabul.

The next Province is *Decan*, which is bounded by *Cambaya*, or *Guzarat*, on the North; *Golconda* and *Berar* on the Eaſt; *Viſiapour* on the South; and the Ocean on the Weſt. The chief Town of Note upon the Coaſt of this Province (proceeding ſtill to the Northward) is *Dabul*; it is in near eighteen Degrees of Latitude, and ſix Miles from the Sea. The *Portugueſe* took it in the Year 1508; but the *Indians* retook it, and it is now ſubject to *Sevagi*, or his Succeſſors.

Dunde.

Choul.

Dunde Rajapour, (a Place diſtinct from, and to the Northward of *Rajapour*, before-mention'd) is about forty Miles to the Northward of *Dabul*; and twelve Miles to the Northward of that is *Choul*, ſituate upon the Bank of a River, about ſix Miles from the Sea. The Fort *Ehnero*, which ſecures the Entrance of the River, was built by the *Portugueſe* in the Year 1520. The River is Navigable up to the Town for Ships of good Burthen. Its Territories extend ſix Miles from the City, and borders on the Country of *Sevagi* on the South.

Bombay.

Bombay, ſo called from the Corruption or Contraction of the Word *Boon-Bay*, it being ſo call'd by the *Portugueſe*; the Word ſignifying a good Bay, or good Harbour, and not improperly; for it is ſaid, it is ſufficient to contain a thouſand Ships. It lies in Latitude nineteen Degrees North. In the Year 1663 the King of *Portugal* transferr'd the Property of it to *Charles* II. King of *England*, on Account of his marrying *Catharine* the Infanta of *Portugal*, as a Part of her Fortune; and King *Charles* afterwards made a Preſent of it to the *Engliſh Eaſt India Company*. The Iſland is about ſeven Miles long, and twenty Miles about. The chief Town is about a Mile long; the Houſes of the Natives low and mean, but the Fort is ſtrong and regular; it has a hundred and twenty Cannon mounted, and ſtands at ſome Diſtance from the Town. They have no good Water but what they ſave in the Time of Rain; but there is a Spring about a Mile off, where thoſe that pleaſe to be at the trouble, may ſend for good Water to drink. The Iſland does not produce much Grain, but they are ſupply'd from the neighbouring Countries; but they have Groves of Cocoa-Nut-Trees. Their Gardens produce Mangoes, Jacks, and other *Indian* Fruits; and they have Salt pretty cheap, the Climate affiſting them to make Salt at a ſmall Expence; for the Sea Water is let in to Pits made for that Purpoſe, and the Heat of the Sun extracts the Moiſture, and leaves the Salt behind.

How Salt is made.

The

Government. THE Preſident of *Surrat* is commonly Governor of *Bombay*; who, when he is upon the Iſland, appears in great State. Both the Mogul and the *Dutch* have ſeverally attack'd *Bombay*. The Mogul's General in the Year 1688, attack'd *Bombay* with twenty five thouſand Men, but retired without Succeſs.

Venomous Creatures. *Bombay*, at the Time of the Rains, produces vaſt Numbers of venomous Creatures, which come to an uncommon Growth. Mr. *Ovington*, late Chaplain to King *William*, who was upon the Spot, ſays their Spiders are as big as a Man's Thumb, and the Toads near as big as Ducks.

Canorin. THE Iſland of *Canorin* is ſeparated from *Bombay* only by a narrow Channel on the North Side of *Bombay*, which is fordable at low Water. This Iſland is twenty Miles long, and ſeventeen broad; it belongs to the *Portugueſe*, but is of no further uſe than to be parcell'd out among ſome of the Crown Favourites, who willing to live an indulgent Life, have a Parcel of Land allotted them in this Iſland, and have the common People like ſo many Vaſſals to cultivate it for them.

THIS Iſland produces Rice, Sugar-Canes, and *Indian* Fruits in abundance, in the low Grounds near the Sea, but the middle of the Iſland is mountainous and barren. The chief Town is *Baudora*, where are ſeveral good Buildings; but the pooreſt Sort live in miſerable Cottages, and go almoſt naked, and yet are ſo willing to imitate the better Sort, that they wear Bracelets upon their Legs and Arms made of Glaſs, if they cannot afford richer Materials.

Baſſaim. THE next to the Northward of that is *Baſſaim*, in between nineteen and twenty of North Latitude: It is in Poſſeſſion of the *Portugueſe*, and is the Reſidence of their Captain-General of the North, who has the Juriſdiction over all the Governors of the Northern Settlements. The next to the Northward of that is *Daman*, which the *Portugueſe* have had the Poſſeſſion of from the Year 1559 to this Time; it is Situate at the Mouth of a River, in about twenty Degrees of Latitude; it is an obſcure Place with reſpect to Trade, and not any Harbour for Ships of Burden.

Surrat THE next Port to the North of *Daman*, is *Surrat*, in about twenty Degrees and a half North Latitude; it ſtands on the River *Tapte*, about ten Miles from the Sea; the City is above two Miles in Circumference, and lies almoſt in the Form of a Crefcent, by reaſon of the winding of the River; it is defended by a Wall and Towers, and has ſix or ſeven Gates, at which Centinels are plac'd. The Streets ars narrow, and the Houſes low and mean where the Natives live, but the *Europeans* have loftier Houſes, built of Stone or Brick, and cover'd with Tiles, but no Glaſs in their Windows, either for the ſcarcity and dearneſs of it, or elſe becauſe it ſhould not hinder the cool Air of its Paſſage into the Houſe.

Officers at *Surrat*. THE *Engliſh Eaſt India* Company have a Preſident of *Surrat* who lives in great State; there is alſo an Accomptant, a Store-keeper, a Purſer Marine. Theſe conſtitute the Council, and have a Secretary: There are alſo Factors and Writers. The Company has alſo a Chaplain, who reads Prayers three Times, and preaches once every Sunday, beſides reading Prayers twice every Week-day. The Salary of the Preſident is three hundred; the ſecond one hundred and twenty, and the Chaplain a hundred Pounds a Year. The Senior Factors of the Council have Forty Pounds a Year, the Junior Factors Fifteen, the Writers Seven Pounds a Year, and the *Black Peons*, who ſerve the Company either for Servants or Soldiers, as Occaſion requires, have but each nine Shillings a Month.

THE Preſident has the Inſpection of all the Affairs and Settlements of the Company, and their Factors and Agents on the Weſtern Parts of *India*, and ſome of the Inland, as at *Agra*, *Amadabad*, &c. and bears a great Authority at *Surrat*. There are no Publick-Houſes at *Surrat*, but *Caravanſera's*, where Travellers may dreſs their Victuals, and lodge, and have Water to waſh in or drink. No Publick Houſes.

Surrat cannot properly be ſaid to be a Settlement or Colony belonging to the *Engliſh* or any *European* Country or Company; for the Mogul keeps the Property in his own Hand; and though he ſuffers *Engliſh*, *French*, and *Dutch* to carry on a great Trade here, yet they pay a Duty of almoſt Four *per Cent.* though the *Dutch* when they thought they were too much impos'd upon, block'd up his Ports, and compell'd him to lower his Impoſts or Cuſtoms; but all the Trade of the *Europeans* is not comparable to that of the *Moors*, *Armenians*, *Banians*, *Arabians*, and *Jews* at *Surrat*.

BUT as *Surrat* is not a convenient Harbour for large Veſſels, the *European* Shipping uſually lie at *Swalley-Hole*, a little Bay about ten or twelve Miles to the Northward of *Surrat*; here they load and unload their Goods, the *Engliſh*, *French*, and *Dutch* having each their proper Place to lodge and ſtow their Goods in; and while the Shipping lies here, which is from *September* to *March*, the *Banians*, *Armenians*, and *Moors* build little Huts along the Shore, and expoſe their Goods to Sale as in a kind of a Fair. Swalley-Hole.

Baroche is in the Gulf of *Cambaya*, about fifty Miles to the Northward of *Surrat*; it was formerly a ſtrong Place, but the Fortifications are run to ruin; but there is yet ſome Trade there, both the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* having Agents here. Baroche.

Amadabad is the Capital of *Guzarat*, and Seat of the Viceroy; it is ſituate at the very Bottom of the Gulf of *Cambaya*, in Latitude 23, 40, or a little without the Tropick; it ſtands on a fine Plain, and water'd by a ſmall River. The Town is incloſed with a Wall, in which are twelve Gates; the City and Suburbs is three or four Miles long. The principal Street is full thirty Paces over, and the reſt very wide; the King's Square is an Oblong of ſeven hundred Paces in Length, and four hundred in Breadth; the Caſtle is on the Weſt Side of this Square; and on the South is the great Caravanſera, or publick Inn for the Lodging of Strangers; near this Square is one of the Mogul's Palaces. The *Engliſh* have a Factory in the middle of the Town, and the *Dutch* have another in the great Street; their Ware-houſes are well ſtored with rich *Indian* Goods. Amadabad.

THE Moſques or Pagodes are very numerous, but thoſe little Idol Temples having been deſcribed in our Account of *Tonquin*, Chap. V. we ſhall refer the Reader to that; but at *Amadabad* is a ſumptuous *Mahometan* Temple, call'd the *Friday's Moſque*; it is aſcended by ſeveral large Steps, and before it ſtands a ſquare Cloiſter, a hundred and forty Paces in Length, and one hundred and twenty in Breadth, adorn'd with twelve Domes, and an open pav'd Square in the Middle of it. There are three large Arches in the Front of the Temple, over which are very high Steeples; the chief Dome is ſurrounded with ſeveral ſmall ones, and two Minorets or Spires; the whole Building is ſupported by forty four Pillars in two Rows, and the Pavement is Marble. There were ſeveral other Moſques and Temples, but ſome of them much defaced in the Time of the Civil Wars of the Empire. A large Temple.

THERE are Hoſpitals here for ſick and lame Beaſts, Birds, and other Animals, as at *Cambaya*, and for the ſame Reaſon; but here they not only take care of their own, to cure them if poſſible, but if the Chriſtians there have any ſuch ſickly Animals, Hoſpitals for Beaſts.

Animals, they will purchaſe them to entitle them to the ſame Charity; there they remain till they die, if they cannot be cured; but if they recover, they either keep them, or ſell them to thoſe of their own Belief, and will not ſell them to Infidels, (as they term thoſe that do not believe their Doctrine of Tranſmigration;) leſt the Souls of their Anceſtors ſhould be again diſlodg'd before their Time.

Cambaya. The City of *Cambaya* is at the Bottom of the Gulf of the ſame Name; it is bigger than *Surrat*, and had formerly a better Trade, but it is now remov'd to *Surrat*; the *Portugueſe* once had this Place, till the *Moors* beat them out. *Cambaya* is encompaſs'd with a brick Wall, and there is an old Caſtle; the Streets are wide, and the Houſes built of Brick dry'd in the Sun. Here, as well as in other Parts of the *Indies*, there were Hoſpitals erected for Beaſts and other Animals that were ſick, they having ſuch a ſtrong Opinion of the Tranſmigration of Souls, and thinking the Souls of their Anceſtors might be removed into ſome of thoſe Animals, they do what they can to keep them alive, to keep the Soul as long as poſſible from being diſturb'd again, or at leſt when it removes again, it ſhould be ſent to a worſe Habitation. The Tide being confin'd between *Diu*, the Southermoſt Point of *Guzarat*, and the Coaſt of *Bombay*, and to the Northward of the firſt of the Flood, ſets up into the Gulf of *Cambaya* with that Violence and Swiftneſs, that the ſwifteſt Horſe cannot keep Pace with the Flood.

Diu. *Diu* ſtands upon an Iſland of the ſame Name, upon the Southermoſt Coaſt of *Guzarat*, on the Weſt Side of the Entrance of the Gulf of *Cambaya*; it is ſeparated from the Main by a narrow Channel. The *Portugueſe* took it in the Year 1515, and to its natural Strength added new Fortifications; they had not been long in Poſſeſſion of it, till *Badur* King of *Guzarat* attack'd it, but was forced to raiſe the Seige; whereupon he prevail'd with the Grand Seignior to aſſiſt him with a great Fleet, and twenty thouſand Men; with which, added to his own Forces, he renew'd the Attack; but the *Portugueſe* not only defended themſelves and the Place, but beat the Enemy off with ſo much Precipitation that they were glad to eſcape, leaving behind them their Artillery and Baggage, and alſo their wounded Men, who were not able to ſhift for themſelves. This was a Place of good Trade, but now declines.

And now, having gone along the Coaſt of Southern *India*, as far as *Guzarat* under the Tropick, we ſhall take a general View of the inland Country; and firſt, to the Eaſtward of the Province of *Guzarat* lie the Provinces of *Candiſh* and *Berar*, now united; they have the Provinces of *Chitor* and *Malva* on the North, *Orixa* on the Eaſt, *Decan* on the South, and *Guzarat* on the Weſt. The Capital of *Candiſh* is *Brampour*, above two hundred Miles to the Eaſtward of *Surrat*, and near the ſame River; and near a hundred Miles North-Eaſt from that is the famous Caſtle of *Mandoa*, which ſtands upon a high Hill, and is encompaſs'd with a Wall twenty Miles in Circumference; and Eaſt from that is *Shapour*, the Capital of *Berar*; both which lie in Latitude about twenty two North.

Candiſh and Berar.

Orixa. The next to the Eaſtward is *Orixa*, bounded on the North, (and ſeparated from *Bengall*) by the River *Gueuga*, on the South by *Golconda*, and on the Eaſt by the Sea. The Chief Town is alſo call'd *Orixa*, in the twenty firſt Degree of North Latitude; and about a hundred Miles from the Sea or Bay of *Bengall*, is *Ballaſore*, a Sea Port; where *European* Ships bound for any Part of *Bengall* commonly take in a Pilot; it is in the Mouth of a River of the ſame Name, in Latitude twenty one and a half; this is a Place of ſome Trade; here the *Engliſh* have a Factory, and it is a good ſafe Road.

A little to the Northward of *Ballaſore* is *Pipley*, where both *French* and *Dutch* have Factories, but the River is not navigable for large Veſſels; they lie in the Road ſome Diſtance off. *Pipley.*

The next Province to the Northward along the Coaſt, is *Bengall*, the Eaſtermoſt of all the Mogul's Dominions; it has *Orixa* and the Bay of *Bengall* on the South, *Aracan* and *Tipra* on the Eaſt, *Patua* and *Jeſua* on the North, and the Province of *Malva* on the Weſt; it is a large Province, being about four hundred Miles from Eaſt to Weſt, and three hundred from North to South. Some compare *Bengall* to *Egypt* for its Fruitfulneſs, and the *Ganges* to the *Nile*, for its many Mouths, and its annual Overflowing. *Bengall.*

There are ſeveral remarkable Towns upon the great River *Ganges*, as, 1. *Decca*, upon one of the Eaſtern Branches, in Latitude twenty four; this is the Seat of the Viceroy, and a Place of great Trade; here the *Engliſh* and other *Europeans* have Agents to carry on their Trade. 2. *Ragemahal*, higher up, in about twenty five Degrees of Latitude. 3. *Caſſimbazar*, upon the Weſtermoſt Branch, in Latitude twenty four and a half. This Place affords great Quantities of Silk and Muſlin, and ſeveral *European* Factors are employ'd here, both *Engliſh* and others. 4. On the ſame Branch, and more to the Southward, is *Hugly*, which gives Name to that Branch of the River; it is ſituate upon an Iſland made by the *Ganges*, in Latitude twenty three Degrees; it is a large Town, and there are Factors here from moſt *European* Nations trading to *India*. But the *Engliſh* finding the Climate unhealthy, removed lower down the River near *Calcuta*, and built a Fort about the Time that King *William* came to the Crown of *England*, and called it from thence Fort *William*. 5. The City of *Chatigan*, lies near the Mouth of the moſt Eaſterly Branch of the *Ganges*. Here the *Portugueſe* ſet up not only for Governors but for Pyrates too, and intercepted Trade to that degree, that the Great Mogul, which was *Aurengzebe*, found it neceſſary to ſend a Power to expel them, as was hinted in the firſt Chapter of *India* in his Reign. 6. *Malda*, to the Eaſtward of *Ragemahal*, where the *Engliſh* and moſt other *Europeans* have their Factors. *Decca.*

The Northern Provinces of *India* are, *Cabul*, *Haican*, *Multan*, *Buckor*, *Tatta* or *Sinda*, *Jeſſelmere*, *Soret*, *Hindowns*, *Jengapour*, *Labor*, *Delly*, *Agra*, *Aſmer*, *Gualeor*, *Narvar*, *Caſſimere* or *Cachemere*, *Bankiſh*, *Naugracut*, *Siba*, *Jamba*, *Becar*, *Gor*, *Canduana*, *Patan*, *Mevat*, beſides ſome other ſmall Sub-diviſions belonging to *Bengall*. *Candahor* is a Province of *Perſia*, and will be ſpoke of when we come to the Deſcription of that Kingdom. Northern Provinces.

Cabul is the Northweſtermoſt Province of *India*. The greateſt Part of the Mogul's Dominions are ſupply'd from hence with Horſes brought from *Perſia* and *Tartary*. The Capital City is *Cabul*, which being ſituate upon the Frontiers of *Tartary* and *Perſia*, is as well fortified as moſt Towns in *India*. *Haitan*, *Multan* and *Buckor*, as alſo *Jeſſelmere*, *Soret*, *Hindowns*, and ſome others, being obſcure Places, and of little or no Trade, we ſhall refer the Reader to the Map for their Situation, and proceed to *Cabul.*

Caſſimere, whoſe chief Town is of the ſame Name, ſituate upon a Lake near the Head of the River *Indus*. This has been a Retreat or Summer's Reſidence for ſeveral of the Moguls, as has been already intimated, there being beautiful Palaces, and fine Gardens and Canals in the Neighbourhood of this City, which makes its Situation ſo pleaſant, that it is call'd by ſome the *Parradice of the Indies*. *Caſſimere.*

Labor, in about Latitude twenty three, is upon the Bank of the River *Ravi*, a Branch of the River *Indus*; it is a large City, founded by the Mogul *Amayum*; whoſe Reign ſee Chap. I. it was ſome *Labor.*

Time the Capital of the Empire, and had many fine Buildings, but is now in a declining Condition: However, the Ruins that now appear, partly discover how magnificent the Place has been; and here it is that the fine Walk of between four and five hundred Miles in Length terminates.

Delly The Capital of the Province of *Delly* is the Town of the same Name, in about twenty eight Degrees of Latitude; it stands upon the Bank of the River *Jemma*; it is about three Leagues in Circumference. There are in *Delly* two handsome large Streets, with Piazza's on each Side, under which are Shops and Warehouses; and these Streets terminate at a large handsome Square, on the further Side of which is the Palace; but the rest of the Town are but irregular Streets, compos'd of low thatch'd Cottages. The Palace is like a Castle, with a Wall, Towers, and a Moat, in all about two Miles in Compass. There is a great Mosque, with several fine Marble Domes, and a large Caravansera, for the Entertainment of Strangers.

Agra. *Agra* is situate to the Southward of *Delly*, but likewise upon the Banks of the River *Jemma*: It is the Capital of a Province of the same Name; it is in about twenty six Degrees of North Latitude; it was but an inconsiderable Place two hundred Years ago, but is now the Capital of the Mogul's Dominions. The Town is seven or eight Miles in Length, but not near that Breadth, and there is always an Army there, but especially if the Mogul be there, for then the City is very populous, though at other Times like a Desart, the chief Traders following the Camp; so that it may be said, that the Mogul and his Camp (wherever he is) is the Capital of his Dominions.

There are some other Inland Provinces, but as they are no Places of Trade, we shall refer the Reader to the Map which will follow the Description of those Parts of *Asia* for their Situation, chusing rather to hasten over those Places which produce nothing in History but their Situation, that we may have room to be more particular in our Account of the Diamond Mines, which follows in the next Chapter.

CHAP. IV.

An Account of the Diamond Mines in Visiapour *and* Golconda; *the Colour of their Earth, and Weight of the Diamonds found in the respective Mines.*

THERE is a great Range of Mountains, which begins near Cape *Comorin*, and continues scatteringly along the Coast of *Cormandel*, to, or even through *Bengal*; some of these are very rocky, and adjacent to these craggy Hills the Diamond Mines are found, but the Kingdoms of *Golconda* and *Visiapour* have the most as well as the best Diamonds of any Place in the World yet discover'd; and first in the Kingdom, or (as it is now) the Province of *Golconda*.

Quolure is the first Mine that ever was wrought in this Province; the Earth is somewhat yellowish, but the Diamonds lie so scattering, that sometimes digging a Quarter of an Acre of Ground they find but few, especially where they find great Stones near the Surface of the Earth, but what they do find are often well shap'd, some of them pointed, and a good lively white Water; but there are some yellow, some brown, and other Colours; they are of an ordinary Size, from about a sixth of a Mangelin to five, ten, and some twenty Mangelins, though such large ones are but seldom found.

N. B. The Reader is desired to take Notice in this Account of the Diamond Mines, that a Mangelin is four Grains, and a Pagoda's Weight is nine Mangelins, or thirty six Grains.

Malabar, &c. The Mines of *Codawillakal*, *Malabar*, and *Butepallam*, is a reddish, or rather Orange colour'd Earth, and stains the Cloaths of the Labourers that work in it. The Diamonds lie about four Fathom deep; they are of a Chrystalline Skin, and an excellent Water, but they are generally a smaller Size than *Quolure*, but have a yellowish Earth; but there are many Diamonds of a blue Water.

Gurone *Gurone* is an excellent Mine; in it have been found Diamonds of about nine Ounces *Troy*; they are large and well spread, and very few small ones among them; they have a bright Skin of a pale greenish Colour, but within they are pure white. The Soil here is also reddish; but though these Diamonds are large and valuable, they are very scarce. We read of a *Portugese* that went to those Mines from *Goa*, perhaps to repair his broken Fortune, if his Luck should be propitious, in his Search for Diamonds; but he spent all he had, and what wearing Cloaths he could spare, without Success, and resolving to venture Life and Fortune upon the Issue of one Day more, he prepar'd a Cup of Poison, with a full Resolution, that if that Day produced nothing, he would at Night put an end to his Search and his Life by drinking his fall; but in the Evening the Workmen brought him a fair spread Stone of twenty Pagoda's Weight which is about an Ounce and a half *Troy*, in memory of which Success he caused a Stone to be erected at the Place, with the following Inscription.

Your Wife and Children sell, sell all you have,
Spare not your Cloaths, nay, make your self a Slave,
But Money get, then to Gurone *make haste,*
There search the Mines, you'll find a Purse at last.

Latawaar and *Gangcouta* are much the same Soil and Water; *Jungaire*, *Pean*, *Pagulle*, *Parwall*, and *Ammapelle*, are all red Earth, and afford many large Stones of a greenish Water, but these may rather be call'd Pits than Mines. In digging some of their Mines they sink through Rocks so deep that they can go no further for Water; sometimes they go forty or fifty Fathom deep, the Rocks they dig through are hard white Stone, in which they cut a Hole like a Well five or six Foot deep, then they fill the Hole with Wood, and kindle it, keeping a hot Fire in it for two or three Days, and when it is hot they quench it suddenly with cold Water, which makes the Stone or Rock crumble like Lime, this they dig out till they come at the solid Rock again, and so repeat the Operation till they get through the Rock, and then they come to a Vein of Earth which runs under the Rock, sometimes for the Space of two or three Furlongs or more, this they dig out and search, and

and then dig deeper, and through other Strata of Rocks, till they come ſo low that the Water flows in upon them, and then they are obliged to deſiſt, although the Vein lies lower. They break all the Lumps of Mineral in Pieces, and find Diamonds among them, the Earth is red; they find many large Stones, but ſome leſs than a Grain; they are commonly good, but ill-ſhap'd, craggy, and as it were broken.

Muddamurg produces the beſt Diamonds of any Mine yet mention'd; they are a very fine Shape and Water, and a tranſparent Skin, yet ſome veiny ones are found here. *Melwille* or the *New Mine* produces Diamonds, but the Earth ſticks to them as if they were clammy, or compos'd of a glutinous Subſtance, or as ſome think, they are not come to their full hardneſs; they are very apt to flaw in ſplitting, and are neither ſo hard nor ſo white as ſome others.

THERE are fifteen Mines employ'd in the Kingdom of *Viſiapour*; it is needleſs to fill up Room with an Account of every particular Mine; ſome produce ſuch ſmall Diamonds, that it is almoſt impoſſible to diſcern them among the Earth where they are found: But where they are ſo ſmall they make a Ciſtern, near the Place where they are digging, of about two Foot high, and ſix Foot over, with a ſmall Vent in one Side about two Inches from the Bottom, by which it empties itſelf into a little Pit made in the Earth to receive the ſmall Stones, if by Chance any ſhould run through. The Vent in the Ciſtern being ſtopp'd, they fill it with Water, and therein put the Earth which they dig out of the Mine, breaking it as they put it in, that it may diſſolve or ſeparate the ſooner, picking out the greateſt Stones, and ſtirring the reſt about with Shovels till it is thick and muddy; then they open the Vent, and let off the muddy Water, and fill it again with clean Water, repeating this till all the Mud and Clay be gone, and the Gravel and Diamonds left, which cannot run out with the Water, becauſe the Vent is two Inches above the Bottom of the Ciſtern. About ten a Clock before Noon they take off the gravelly Stuff they have waſh'd, and ſpread it on a clean ſmooth Place made for that Purpoſe, where the Heat of the Sun ſoon dries it, and then they ſearch among the Gravel for Diamonds; which after they are thus waſh'd, are ſo eaſily diſcover'd by their gliſtering, that the ſmalleſt can hardly eſcape them.

CHAP. V.

Of the Buildings and Furniture of the Indians *and* Mahometans *in the Empire of the Great Mogul.*

THE original *Indians* or Pagan Inhabitants are much more numerous than the *Mahometans*; but their Houſes, even thoſe of which their chief Towns are compos'd, are poor Cottages, with Clay Walls and thatch'd Roofs, and no Rooms but what are upon the Ground; indeed in the Market Places they have little Sheds in the Front of their Houſes, ſupported by little Pillars, and under thoſe Sheds, or as ſome call them Piazza's, are little Banks of Earth thrown up, for People to tranſact their Affairs, entertain their Friends, or expoſe their Goods to Sale; they have no Windows into the Street, and even the Princes Palaces are very indifferent, meanly built in one Form; before the Gate is a large Roof ſupported by Pillars; upon each Hand, as you go up towards the Gate, are Banks of Earth rais'd about a Yard high; theſe Banks are cover'd with Carpets or *European* Scarlet, with Cuſhions of the ſame to lean upon, here the Raja hears the Complaints of his Subjects, receives Foreigners, or tranſacts Affairs of State; within the Gate of the Palace is a ſquare Court, with Piazza's on every Side, opening into ſeveral Rooms, which had no Light but what they receiv'd by the Door; the Women are kept in the more retired Part of the Buildings, and probably have Piazza's looking towards the Gardens to divert themſelves, as the Men do towards the Street. Their Furniture is chiefly Cuſhions, Matts, and Carpets to ſit or lie upon; they have no Beds, Tables, Chairs or Stools; they have no Chimnies or Kitchens in their Houſes, but thoſe that cannot afford little Cook Rooms to be built at a ſmall Diſtance from the Houſe, dreſs their Meat in the Yard.

THEIR Inns, or Caravanſera's, are built almoſt in the ſame Manner as the Sheds before their Houſes, being open before, and no Doors to ſhut in to ſecure them either from Wild Beaſts or Robbers. Near any of their Places of Entertainment there is commonly a large Reſervatory of Water ſaved in the rainy Seaſon, and ſo large, that it ſerves all the fair Weather, and till the wet Seaſon comes on again; ſome of them are above a Mile in Circumference, and lin'd with ſquare Free-ſtone, with Steps down to the Bottom on every Side; ſome have a Summer-Houſe of Stone in the Middle, encompaſs'd with Galleries, from whence you may deſcend by Stone Steps into the Water, where ſeveral Perſons may bathe unſeen by one another; but the common People, that have not theſe Conveniences (eſpecially the Females) pour Water upon their Heads two or three times a Day, and let it run down over their Bodies, to cool themſelves inſtead of Bathing.

THEIR Pagodes or Temples appear very hand- Temples.
ſome on the Outſide, many of them built of Stone, with lofty Spires and good Carving, but the Inſide is diſmal, being a long dark Room without Windows, which want of Light being ſupplied with a multitude of Lamps, which by the Heat of the Climate and the want of Air is ſo ſuffocating, that it is almoſt intolerable to endure, eſpecially for thoſe that are not uſed to it. There are alſo a great many other Pagodes in the Country, open before, and but big enough to hold the Image, and here generally the People ſacrifice and perform their Devotion; but the Figures, or carv'd Work, in theſe Pagodes are very monſtrous; ſometimes the Head of a Hog, the Body of a Man, and the lower Part of a Lion in one Figure, and ſuch other prepoſterous Figures they have, as would be ſufficient to frighten a Chriſtian to ſee them, eſpecially in a Place of Devotion.

HITHERTO of the Buildings of the *Indians*, and indeed thoſe of the *Mahometans* do not much exceed them, nor do the great Omrahs much affect Building, becauſe they have no Inheritance in their Lands, and beſides, they live two Thirds of the Year in the Camp, and delight more in fine Tents, and moving from Place to Place all the dry Seaſon, than in being confin'd to one Place to live

in a fine Houſe, ſo that their Houſes are rather Lodgings during the wet Seaſons, when they cannot encamp in the Field, than Habitations for them to improve and take Delight in. However, the Mahometan or Chriſtian Merchants have handſome Houſes in ſome of the great Towns, which are built with Brick or Stone two Story high, with flat Roofs and Battlements, very commodious for taking the Air Mornings or Evenings, or when they pleaſe.

Moſques. THE Mahometans are at a vaſt Expence in erecting magnificent Temples or Moſques, the common Sort whereof are of good Stone, or ſometimes Marble; they are built in an Oblong Form, the Ends North and South; the Ends and Weſt Side are all ſolid Walls, without any Windows, and the Eaſt Side is Pillars, and Vacancies between them to let in the Light; there are neither Images nor Painting within them, but the Walls are perfectly plain, and when at their Devotion, they place themſelves with their Faces to the Weſtward or dark Side of the Temple; the reaſon of this Poſition of their Temples and of their Perſons at their Devotion is, that they may then have their Faces towards the Tomb of their great Prophet *Mahomet*, which is Weſtward from them, it being at *Mecca* in *Arabia Felix*, about forty Miles from the *Red Sea*; towards this Place all Mahometans, in what Part of the World ſoever, turn their Faces when they perform their Devotions, and their Moſques or Temples are ſituate in a proper Poſition to give them that Opportunity. Over the middle of the Moſque, and at each Corner, is a high Tower, where the Prieſts aſcend five times a Day to call the People to Prayers.

Tomb THEIR Tombs might have been thought rather to belong to the Article of their Funerals, but as ſome of them are very ſumptuous Structures, they may as well be ſpoke of under this Head. If a Mahometan be a Perſon of any Note or Figure, he commonly erects a Tomb for himſelf in his Life-time. They have ſuch Notions of Futurity, that they think it not worth the while to build magnificent Houſes for the little Time they are to live in this World; but for their Tombs or Burying-places, they (themſelves in their Life-time) encloſe a great Compaſs of Ground near one of the great Reſervatories of Water, planting Trees and Flowers, and every thing that can render it pleaſant; here they erect little Moſques or Temples, and near them raiſe the Tomb, which is arched and cover'd with a handſome Dome, and in ſome of them they keep Lamps continually burning, and leave a Penſion to their Prieſts to perform Devotion there.

CHAP. VI.

Gives an Account of the Genius and Temper of both Indians *and* Mahometans; *alſo of their Perſons, Habits, Food, Diverſions, and Ceremonies, with their Carriages, and Manner of Travelling.*

Diſtinction. WE are here to obſerve, that under the Name of *Indians* we mean thoſe originally ſo, or Natives of the Place, which are call'd *Pagans*; the *Moors* or *Moguls* being (in Point of Religion) *Mahometans*, and are compoſed of *Tartars*, *Arabs*, *Perſians*, and almoſt all Nations where the *Mahometan* Religion is profeſt, theſe being the Lords of the Country, as being Adherents of the Great Mogul, treat the antient Inhabitants with even more Contempt than they do the Chriſtians, though greater Strangers, becauſe the Chriſtians are uſeful to them, as Mathematicians, Engineers, *&c.* but their Affection for us reaches no further than their Intereſt, for otherwiſe, even to touch a Chriſtian is an Abomination to a Mahometan.

Indians moſt affable. BUT the *Indians* or *Pagans* (the far greater Part of the Inhabitants) are much more affable, polite and ingenious, as well as tender and compaſſionate to Men and Beaſts, which may perhaps be the reaſon that they are not ſo couragious againſt an Enemy as others that are more cruel or leſs tender, and few excel them in an equal Temper at the Approach of Death.

Genius. As an Inſtance of their Genius, they can imitate any Pattern either in Cloaths or Head-Dreſs at firſt Sight, and make others ſo like it, as not to be diſtinguiſhed from the Original, and the ſame in copying a Picture. Their Chints and Calicoes, whoſe Flowers and Shades we reckon ſo beautiful, are drawn by their common Sort of People from their own Fancy at three Pence a Day, to which (almoſt) common Genius of that People, the valuable Figures, drawing, and ſhading in their Chints, Calicoes, and the like, are chiefly owing.

Stature and Complexion. THE *Indians* are of a good Proportion, well ſhaped, and agreeable Features, hardly any crooked, or otherwiſe deformed among them; they have long black Hair, and black Eyes; thoſe of the Northern Part of the Empire are an Olive or deep Tawny, but thoſe in the South are quite black, and ſo are the Inhabitants of the Mountains, but thoſe upon the Coaſt who have mix'd with the *Portugueſe*, are a mixture of both white and black, or rather tawny and black.

Dreſs of the Mogul. AS for Dreſs it may not be amiſs firſt to mention that of the Great Mogul when he goes abroad, which we ſhall deliver in Sir *Thomas Roe*'s own Words, in his Account of the Mogul's Dreſs upon that occaſion, which, with the order of putting on, was as follows: As he came out, one came and girt on his Sword, another hung on his Shield ſet with Diamonds and Rubies, with a ſuitable Belt; another hung on his Quiver with thirty Arrows, and his Bow in a Caſe. He had on his Head a rich Turbant, with a Plume of Heron's Feathers; on one Side hung a Ruby unſet as big as a Walnut, and on the Side a Diamond as large, and in the Middle an Emerald like a Heart, but much bigger. His Staff was wound about with a Chain of large Pearls, Rubies, and Diamonds drill'd. He wore a Chain of three Strings of excellent Pearl about his Neck; he had Bracelets ſet with Diamonds above his Elbows, and three Bracelets of ſeveral Sorts on his Wriſts; he had a Pair of *Engliſh* Gloves in his Girdle, but none on his Hands, having almoſt on every Finger a Ring. His Coat was Cloth of Gold, but without Sleeves, and on his Feet a Pair of Buskins, embroidered with Pearl. In this Dreſs he went into his Coach, which was exactly like an *Engliſh* one, but cover'd with *Perſian* Velvet, embroidered with Gold.

But

of

But the Dreſs of the common *Indians* is a white Veſt of Calico, Silk, or Muſlin, which folds before, and is tied with Strings on one Side; the Sleeves are cloſe to their Arms, but ſo long that they ſit in wrinkles about the Wriſt; the upper Part is cloſe to the Body to the Waiſt, but full and pleated below, and reaches a little below the Knees. Under this Veſt they have a ſhorter, but they have Breeches reaching down to their Heels; they put on their Slippers without Stockings, and down at the Heels, that they may be readier ſlipt off upon occaſion, when they go into any Houſe, that being the firſt and moſt common Token of Reſpect when they enter a Friend's Houſe, and ſhews the ſame Veneration as we mean by putting off our Hats, as is common in other Eaſtern Countries. (*See Chap.* III. *of* Siam.) Moſt of them wear Saſhes, and the better Sort wear a Crice or Dagger. Both *Indians* and *Mahometans* wear Turbants of Muſlin or Calico; but thoſe of the Mahometans are much the largeſt. The Mahometan Women are dreſt like the Men, but being veil'd, their Dreſs is not ſo eaſily diſcover'd. The Women in the Southern Parts wear no Shoes or Slippers, nor Head-Dreſs, except their Hair, of which they let Part hang down over their Shoulders; the lower Part of their Arms are naked, only adorn'd with Rings, Bracelets, and other Toys. Children are quite naked till they are five or ſix Years old.

Their chief Times of eating and drinking is Morning and Evening; the exceſſive Heat of the Day they endeavour to paſs away in Sleep. The *Banian* Tribes, which are very numerous, and likewiſe the Bramins, or Prieſts both forbear to eat any thing that hath or had Life, or even Eggs, as ſuppoſing they may have Life; but they live chiefly on Rice, Roots, Herbs, or Fruit; but the Pagan *Indians* eat both Fiſh and Fleſh, only abſtaining from Beef, and the Fleſh of ſome other Animals that they look upon as ſacred; but Beef they look upon as moſt ſacred, eſpecially the Cow or Female, not only becauſe they think ſome of the happieſt Souls are diſlodged from their own Bodies to that Animal, but becauſe the Bramins teach that after Death they are to be conducted over a River by a Cow, and aſſiſted in their Paſſage by taking hold of her Tail; and they further add, that their God *Mahadeu* being incens'd by the Sins of the People, was appeas'd by a Cow. Whatever their Errors be, they ſeem to retain a grateful Principle, who will not eat the Fleſh of that Animal that was their Mediator, and is to be their Guide after this Life, according to the Notions they have of the Cow.

The Mahometans eat no Swine's Fleſh, but the common Victuals of the Country is boil'd Rice, with a high-ſeaſon'd Broth made of Fleſh and Fiſh, which they call Curry, pour'd upon the Plate, and mix'd with the Rice, the Fleſh being cut in little bits like Dice, and laid on the Side of the Plate; but this is eat but ſparingly for a Reliſher, as we uſe Pickles. The middling People ſit croſs legg'd upon the Ground, but this Poſture, and the manner of eating, differing but little, if at all, from what has been ſaid of other Eaſtern Countries, we ſhall not make Repetitions, but refer the Reader to *Chap.* III. *of* China, as alſo for their ſtrong Liquors, which is Palm Wine, Toddy, &c.

Fashion

The common *Indian* Salute is lifting the right Hand to the Head, or, to expreſs more Reverence, both, (but never the Left-Hand alone) but if it be to a Perſon of Diſtinction, they bow the Body a little; but to a Prince they bow the Body low, put the Hand to the Ground, then to the Breaſt, then lift it to the Head, and ſome repeat this three times when they are to pay a profound Reverence.

Upon a Viſit, the Perſon viſited never moves to meet his Gueſts, but deſires them to ſit down upon the Carpet, and according to the Cuſtom of all the Eaſtern Countries we have hitherto treated of, Betel and Arek is brought to them; they have but little Converſation, but if they have a mind to be merry, they ſend for the Dancing Girls, who when they have diverted the Company, will, any of them, retire privately with any of the young Fellows, if they deſire it. There are Jugglers and Legerdemain People, who act ſo dexterouſly that it was thought what they did could not be performed without magical or diabolical Aſſiſtance; but what Performances of that Kind were then thought Wonders, are not now worth the Entertainment of a common Reader. Viſits. Diverſions.

Another of their Diverſions is Hunting, but their Sport is mean, having no Dogs, for they ſurround the Place where the Game lies, and employing ſome to beat about, they ſtand ready to ſhoot the Beaſt, or knock him on the Head, as ſoon as he breaks out. There are good Hawks brought from *India* and *Perſia*, which will afford fine Sport, being flown at Partridges. Hunting.

The Fiſhermen uſe Nets as we do, but inſtead of Boats they have two or three Timber Logs tied together, upon which they go a fiſhing; it is true they are not ſo dry nor ſo capable of being commanded as the Boats, but are in leſs Danger of being overſet. Fiſhing.

Their Roads are commonly a deep Sand, and very hot to walk in; at about every ten or twelve Miles upon the Road ſtands one of the Caravanſera's or Inns, with one of the Reſervoirs of Water near it, as before deſcribed in Chap. V. When a Man of Faſhion and Subſtance travels, he takes with him eight or ten Cooleys or Chairmen, to carry his Palanquin, which is a Couch carried upon two Poles by four Men like a Bier, one four ſhifting and relieving the other at certain Diſtances, that at this Rate they will carry a Man four or five Miles an Hour, and they that carry ten Cooleys along with them, have two ſpare Men to ſend before to the Caravanſera, where they intend to bait, for ſometimes there is neither Victuals nor Fewel at the Caravanſera but what you carry along with you, but there are Sticks enough to be gather'd in the Woods near the Road without any Interruption; and this extraordinary Attendance is not dear, the ten Cooleys coſting but half a Crown a Day, or three Pence a Man. Roads and the Travelling

For the Carriage of Goods they uſe Camels, Oxen, and Aſſes; the Horſes are too valuable to make uſe of in theſe Drudgeries, and of too little a Size for great Burthens. The Camel is the moſt uſeful, becauſe in thoſe hot ſandy Countries he will travel ſeveral Days without Water. They alſo uſe Oxen both to ride upon, draw, and carry Burthens, guiding him with a Rope put thro' the Cartilage that is between his Noſtrils. Carriage.

The Buffalo is as large as an Ox, but more ſluggiſh, and therefore ſerves only for the Carriage of Water, or to draw in the Scavenger's Carts. Their Hackeries are Square like the Bodies of our Coaches, and run upon two Wheels, being drawn by the Oxen; every Perſon of Quality has a Set of *Perſian* Horſes for their own riding, and our *Eaſt India* Company keep Sets of them for their Factors and Servants in their chief Settlements. The Mogul and his Omrahs travel with Elephants, by which they convey their Women, Children, and Baggage from Place to Place; he has alſo a prodigious Number of Camels and Wheel Carriages, Hackeries

riages, which are commonly drawn by eight or ten Oxen; their Wheels have no Spokes, but are all one solid Board.

It is very troublesome Travelling in the rainy Seasons, for in all Southern *India* the flat Countries are overflow'd at the rainy Seasons, as in other Countries between the Tropicks. There are no Posts for Conveyance of Letters in this Country, but all Letters and Packets dispatch'd by Land are sent by Messengers on purpose, who travel very quick on foot, and at a reasonable Charge.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Trade and Manufacture of India; *also of their Soil, Husbandry, Plants, Minerals, Animals, and Insects; with a particular Account of the Growth of Cotton, the making of Indico,* &c.

Produce of India.

THE principal Manufactures of *India* are Silks, Calicoes, and Muslins; but, as we have observ'd in Chap. IV. there are great quantities of Diamonds in *Visiapour* and *Golconda*, some of which and other precious Stones we import to *England*; we have also great quantities of Pepper from the *Malabar Coast*, with Salt Petre, Indico, Cardamums, Opium, Assafœtida, and a great variety of Physical Drugs, &c.

Goods exported thither.

Goods proper to be carried from *Europe* thither are *English* Broad-Cloth, Lead, Looking-glasses, Sword Blades, Knives, Haberdasher's Ware, Gold and Silver Lace, Tin-ware, Wine, Brandy, Beer, and other Provisions, but these are mostly taken off by our own Factories. Flints carried from *England*, as part of their Ballast, are very acceptable there, for so far in *India* as the *Europeans* have yet visited, there is not a Flint to be seen, (but what are brought there,) insomuch that a Bag of good Gun-flints in the inland Country, where they are far distant from the Ships, is almost worth its Weight in Money.

Soil and Husbandry.

At the latter End of the dry Season the Earth looks scorch'd and barren like a Sandy Desart; no Grass appears upon the Surface of the Earth, but the Trees retain their Verdure all the Year round, but no sooner the Rains come on but Nature revives, and the Grass and Herbs cover the (late) barren Ground. They never manure the Land they till for Rice and other Grain; it is made so fruitful by the annual Rains that it always produces a good Crop. In the Northern Part of *India* they have as good Wheat and Barley as we commonly have in *Europe*, but in the Southern Part they scarce sow any Grain but Rice, nor do the Natives eat any other. As for their Manner of preparing and cultivating their Land for Rice, with the Manner of sowing and reaping it, &c. *see Chap.* V. *of* Siam: we may only add, that as Rice delights in a very wet Soil, if the Land they intend to assign for the Growth of that sort of Grain be not of itself moist enough, it must be chose in such a Situation, that by digging of Trenches or Channels it may be moistened or overflow'd when the Season or State of their Husbandry requires it, and when the Crop is reap'd (which is at the return of the dry Season,) they do not carry it into Barns in the Straw, as we do our Wheat, Barley, &c. but thresh it out in the Field as soon as it is cut; for when the dry Season comes on, the Heat soon makes the Ground sufficiently dry and hard, to answer the purpose of a Threshing Floor.

Wheat and Barley.

Threshing-floor of Rice.

Their Lands are mostly common, except near the Towns, and every one chuses a piece of Land for his own Use, having no other Property but present Possession, but then the Prince's Officers takes a Third, or sometimes have the Crop, which the Husbandman is forc'd to surrender as an Acknowledgment to the Prince for the Land he occupies. They have no Oats, but Pease and Beans as good as ours, though smaller. They have a sort of big Pease call'd *Donna*, larger than Tares, which they boil and mix with coarse Sugar, and being made up into Balls, are excellent feeding for Horses when it is cold, as is also a Composition of Barley Meal and other Ingredients, made into a sort of Paste, and given them as Victuals.

When they churn their Cream, it only produces a Substance like thick Oil, and never comes to the hardness of our Butter, by reason of the Heat of the Climate, but it is sweet, and tastes well. They make plenty of Cheese from the Milk of their Cows, Buffaloes, and Goats. Their Wheat Bread at *Bengall* is as good and as white as ours at *London*.

They have pleasant Gardens adorn'd with Walks, Trees, and large Basons of Water, but few Flowers; but what they have generally last all the Year; they are more grateful to the Sight than to the Smell, excelling more in Beauty than Fragrancy, except the Rose, and a white Flower like Jessamine, of which People of Fashion make a kind of a sweet Oil to perfume themselves.

Their Fruits are much the same as in other Eastern Countries, as Cocoa-Nuts, Mangoes, Pomegranates, Tamerinds, Lemons, Oranges, and also Betel and Arek, which they chew here as frequently as in other Eastern Countries, and in the North Part of *India* they have Pears, and Apples, and some Grapes, and other *European* Fruit; their Kitchen-Gardens afford Melons, Potatoes, Garlick, Onions, and other Roots, as well as Pot-herbs; they have also the Pepper-plant, Ginger, Cardamums, Saffron, Turmerick, Opium, Indico, and Cotton, and large Plantations of Sugar-Canes, chiefly in *Bengall*.

There are large Groves of Cocoa-Trees in the low Grounds almost all along the Sea Coast of *India*, it is about twelve or sixteen Inches thick, thirty or forty Foot high, and sometimes much more; it has no Boughs but at the Top, where it puts out eighteen or twenty tender Branches, on which are thick Leaves about two Foot long, and two or three Inches wide, like the Sedges that grow in moist Places in *England*; the Nuts grow at the lower End of the Branch where it comes out of the Tree, six or eight in a Cluster, some of the Nuts being bigger than a Man's Head. The Shell is enclosed in a thick Rind like our Walnuts, with the Fibres or Strings of which they make Cordage; the Shells we see frequently in *England*, for a kind of Rarity, made into Punch Bowls, Drinking Cups, &c. The Meat of the Nut does not fill the Shell, but sticks to it on the Inside about half an Inch thick, within which the rest of the Space is fill'd with a Liquid, which while the Nut is green, drinks as soft as Milk, and is a very agreeable Morning's draught; but when the Nut is ripe, it is of a more clammy or oily Substance, and is used as such

Plants.

The Liquor call'd Toddy is alſo drawn from this Tree, by making Inciſions in the Branches, and hanging Pots underneath to catch it; if the Pots be taken down before the Heat of the Day comes on, it drinks mild and pleaſant, but if it be left till the Heat comes on, it is more ſtale or louriſh, but then it is ſtronger; and hence People, according to their different Palates, let it hang longer or leſs Time. It is ſaid it is poſſible to build, rig, and victual a Ship out of this Tree only, ſuppoſing the Hull and Maſts to be made of the Tree or Timber, the Cordage of the Fibres of the Husks, the Sails may be made of the Leaves, which are capable of being made into Baskets, Matts, Fans, coverings for Houſes, *&c.* the Victuals of the Meat of the Nut; but this is only making the moſt of it, that it may be ſaid ſuch a Thing may be done, but the Materials that this Tree affords are not the moſt fit for the above-mention'd Uſes. The Toddy when ſour ſerves for Vinegar, the Leaves, beſides the Uſes above-mention'd, ſupply the uſe of Paper, for they write, or rather engrave upon them, with a Steel Pencil, inſtead of Pen, Ink, and Paper.

The Cotton-Shrub is alſo very uſeful; for out of its Fruit is made Callicoes, Muſlins, Ginghams, *&c.* they plant the Seed in large *Fields*; it grows up to a Shrub about the height of a Roſe-buſh, and then puts out yellow Bloſſoms, which falling off, there remains little Cods as big as the Top of one's Thumb, which ſwell to be about as big as a Walnut, and then break the outer Skin, and there appears a fine ſoft Wool or Cotton as white as Snow, and then they gather it; theſe Shrubs will bear three or four Years ſucceſſively, and then they fail, and are dug up, and the Ground replanted in the ſame Manner as before: The Seeds are always found among the Wool. But beſides this Cotton-Shrub there is a Cotton-Tree, which grows to a great Height, the Fruit when ripe is near as big as a Hen's Egg and then burſts like the other, and within it there is a fine white Wool or Cotton as in the others; the Fruit hangs at the middle and ends of the Branches, and are commonly two together.

Indico is made from a Shrub like a Goosbery-buſh, but not ſo prickly; they ſtrip off the Leaves, and lay them on a Heap for ſeveral Days together till they ſweat, which being over, they put them in Water in large Veſſels, and let them lie till they leave a blue Tincture and Subſtance in the Water; then the Water is drain'd off into other broad ſhallow Veſſels, and ſet in the Sun till all the Moiſture is exhal'd, and then there is left at the Bottom a dry hard blue Cake about a quarter of an Inch thick, which is the Indico that we uſe.

They have plenty of good Timber for building Houſes, but no Oak, Aſh, or Elm, or any kind of Timber known or uſed as ſuch in *Europe*; they have great Quantities of Red-wood for dying; but the moſt remarkable is the Banian-Tree, the Twigs of which bend down to the Ground, and takes root and grows upwards to the Trees, whoſe Branches again taking root grow again, *&c.* and by this means what was originally but one Tree, will ſpread a vaſt ſpace of Ground, and become a multitude of Trees; which by reaſon of the Branches bending down again to the Ground, form very delightful Arbours and Arches, and they being always full of green Leaves makes them ſtill more pleaſant; ſome of theſe are made uſe of as Places for their Idols, and Retirements for their Penitentiaries and other Perſons, who ſeem in a more particular Manner to be devoted to the Exerciſe of Religion.

These Oxen are the moſt uſeful of any other Beaſt, both for Draught and Carriage; they are not large, but will carry a Man twenty or thirty Miles a Day with eaſe. The Oxen are moſtly employ'd in the Caravans; the Drivers of them follow no other Employment, nor have they any Habitations, but are always travelling, or live in Tents, taking Wives and Children along with them. They are divided into four Tribes, and every one knows his own Branch of Trade or Carriage; the firſt Tribe carries nothing but Corn, the Second Rice, the Third Peaſe and Beans, and the Fourth Salt; the Tribes are diſtinguiſh'd by proper Marks; their Prieſts travel with them, and every Morning before they ſet forwards they pay their Adoration to the Image of a Serpent, which they carry along with them. Their Coaches are drawn by two Oxen, and will hold but two People, but they have uſually ten or twelve to draw one of their heavy Carriages. When they bait, they feed their Oxen with Balls of Paſte made of Flower, as mention'd before for the feeding of their Horſes. Camels are not ſo much uſed for Carriage as Oxen, but are very uſeful in the Sandy Deſarts for that purpoſe, becauſe they can live a long Time without Water.

Four Tribes.

Camels.

Here are plenty of large Elephants, ſome twelve, ſome fifteen Foot high, but very docible; they ſeldom or never go any Pace beyond a Walk, but they have ſuch a long Step that they will travel four or five Miles an Hour; their Trunk is as uſeful to them as Hands, to reach what they want, to pull up Graſs or green Corn, and alſo for a Defence: for if they ſtrike a Horſe or a Camel with it in earneſt, they will break their Bones, or ſometimes kill them at one Blow; when they ſwim they have little but the Trunk above Water, and through it they breathe, and will hold out to ſwim as long and as far as any Animal whatſoever.

Elephants.

They have alſo Buffaloes and Aſſes; the former differ but little from Cows and Oxen, only more ſluggiſh, and have a thick ſmooth Skin with little or no Hair, and their Fleſh is very coarſe Food. The Sheep in the Southern Parts of *India* are thin and long-legg'd, with reddiſh Hair inſtead of Wool upon their Backs; their Fleſh is good for little; but towards *Perſia* and *Tartary* they have fine Sheep with good Fleeces, ſome of their Tails weighing ſeveral Pounds. The *Perſian* Sheep brought into *India* have from three to ſeven Horns a-piece. They have Plenty of Goats, and the young Kids are tolerable good Eating.

Buffaloes and Aſſes.

Sheep.

Goats.

The little ſort of Hogs which we ſee in *England*, with their Bellies down to the Ground, came originally from *India*, and are reckon'd as good Butchers Meat as the Country affords, except the Wild Hogs, which are very Plenty, as are alſo Deer, Hares, Wild-Beaſts, and Wild-Fowls, which Poor as well as Rich have liberty to kill, they not being reſerved for Game to the Rich, only but for the common Uſe of Mankind, which was doubtleſs the Deſign of their Creation. The Lion is the only Beaſt of the Field, the hunting whereof the Emperor reſerves to himſelf. There are alſo Tigers, Leopards, Wolves, Monkeys, and Jackals. Theſe laſt are like Foxes in Shape and Colour, but ſomething larger; they run about in Companies in the Night, not only in the Country, but in the great Towns, and make a hideous Howling. Some ſay it is one or more of theſe that hunt the Lion's Prey for him, but ſome diſpute that, alledging that to be improbable, becauſe there are great Numbers of Jackals where there are no Lions. I muſt own it would have made out much more againſt the Probability of the Lion's having ſuch an Attendant or Harbinger, if it had been proved that there were great Numbers of Lions where there were no Jackals, but that Proof not being attempted, we muſt beg leave to ſuppoſe, that the common Report of Travellers of the Lions being attended by the Jackals, is not without Foundation.

Hogs.

There are abundance of Serpents, Scorpions, and other Venemous Creatures and Inſects. The Muſketoes, Gnats, and Bugs ſalute the *Engliſh* at their

Venemous Creatures.

their firſt going aſhore in ſuch a Manner, that in one Night's Time their Faces are ſo ſwell'd that next Morning they can ſcarce know one another. People of Faſhion keep Servants to beat them away while they ſleep; and for Bugs, they ſwarm amongſt common People and Soldiers, and yet there is a Way to keep them off; for if the Bed be all cloſe but an End or a Side, and the Way into the Bed be beſmear'd with a ſtreak of Tar (which may be done without daubing the Bedding,) the Bugs can never get into the Bed, either becauſe of the Averſion they have to Tar, or, which is more probable, that their Feet ſtick faſt in the Tar, and they are not able to proceed on their Journey.

Spiders. Toads. THERE are Spiders and Toads of a prodigious Bigneſs: during the Rains the Frogs multiply prodigiouſly, which is ſuppoſed has given riſe to that

Rats. fabulous Report of raining Frogs. Their Rats grow to be three or four times as big as ours, and will ſcarce give way to a Man. Beſides Serpents and Scorpions, the Centipedes are very dangerous; it has abundance of Feet, (from whence it takes its Name,) it is about as big as a Gooſe's Quill, and three or four Inches long; its bite is very dangerous.

Hogs Scorpions. There are Scorpions which frequent the Houſes; they are about as long and as thick as a Man's little Finger, they are ſomething like a *Lizard*; they have a Sting in the End of their Tail, which they carry turn'd upon their Backs; their Sting is ſmall like that of an Hornet, and they have no way to draw it out of Sight.

Locuſts. THE Locuſt is about two Inches long, but ſo ſtrong of Wing that they can croſs a conſiderable Arm of the Sea; they ſometimes fly in ſuch prodigious Multitudes, that where they light they will deſtroy a whole Crop in one Night, as Mr. *Ovington* tells us was the Caſe of a Husbandman near *Surrat*.

OF Fowls they have great Plenty, as Geeſe, Hens, Ducks, Pigeons, Partridges, Turtle Doves, Quails, Peacocks, Parakeets, &c. their Fleſh is lean and dry, and ſome of their Bones are as black as Jet, but the Fleſh of thoſe that have black Bones differ not in Taſte from thoſe that have white. Vultures are very common and tame here. There is a Bird leſs than a Wren with pretty Feathers, and her Note not inferior to the beſt of ours; but the Monkeys, which are very numerous there, do plunder the Neſts of thoſe Birds when they can come at them, and the Birds, as if apprized of their Danger, build their Neſts in the remote Ends of the Branches or Twigs, that will not bear the Weight of the Monkeys, and by this Means ſave their Eggs and young ones from their Tyranny.

HERE are Dolphins to be admired for their inimitable Colour, eſpecially when alive, their Fleſh as white as Snow, and they are reckon'd by the Sailors a nice Diſh, eſpecially when ſhort of Victuals, they ſwim very ſwift, and prey upon the Flying Fiſh, which to avoid them, ſpring out of the Water, and fly in the Air as long as their Wings are wet, and the Dolphins watching their Motion, wait to catch them as they fall into the Sea again, which they muſt of Courſe do when their Wings are dry. The Albecores and Bonetaes will follow a Ship for ſix or ſeven Weeks together in good Weather between the Tropicks, as the Sharks alſo do, if the Ship does not ſail too faſt.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Nature, Property, and Manner of breeding the Silk-Worms in India, *which may be called their proper Climate; with ſome Obſervations of the different Manner of managing Silk-Worms in colder Climates, from the Methods uſed in* India.

IN *India* the Silk-Worms are in Eggs twelve Days, which Number of Days the Natives call one *Aggoa*, and from thence the Silk then made is called *Aggonedbund*, and is the beſt that is made all the Year; about the twelfth or thirteenth of *November* the Worms are hatch'd, and laid upon Matts, after which they give them Mulberry Leaves for the firſt four Days; they cut them in ſmall thin Pieces, and feed them at Morning, nine a-Clock, Noon, and three a-Clock, but the fifth Day they are not fed at all.

THE ſixth Day they grow bigger, and ſo the ſeventh, eighth, and ninth Day, and are to be fed with Leaves four Times a Day, at the Times above-mention'd, but the tenth Day they muſt not be fed at all.

THE eleventh and twelfth Day they are to be fed four times a Day, but the thirteenth and fourteenth not at all. The fifteenth, ſixteenth, ſeventeenth, and eighteenth they muſt be fed with whole Leaves four times a Day as above.

THE nineteenth, and ſo to the twenty ſixth inclusive, they are fed five times a Day, *viz.* Morning, nine a Clock, Noon, three a-Clock, and Midnight. They begin to be green about the fourteenth Day, and at the twenty ſixth Day they are above two Inches long, and after the twenty ſeventh Day they are not to be fed any more, becauſe then they begin to ſpin.

THE twenty eighth Day they muſt be put upon Ledges of Matt, faſtned to a large Piece of round Matting, the Ledges being about an Inch high from the Matt, and running round like a Screw, beginning at the Center of the Matt, and running round at about three Inches diſtance to the Circumference. When the Worms are put upon thoſe Ledges, they ſet the Matts leaning in the Sun about eight in the Morning, and let them ſtand about an Hour and a half, and then they put them into the Houſe, leaning againſt the Wall, till about four in the Afternoon, and then they ſet them in the Sun again till about Sun-ſet, and then take them in again, and in this Day and Night they finiſh their Houſes.

THE twenty ninth Day they take the Worms with their new Houſes and put them upon other Matts flat, without any Ledges or Partitions, and ſo lay ſeveral Matts upon Frames one over another.

FROM the thirtieth to the thirty third inclusive, they ſpin within their Houſes of Silk, and then they take each Worm with its Houſe and ſhake it at their Ears, and thoſe that are alive are good, and kept for Breeders; but thoſe that make no noiſe have ſpun their Lives away, and are dead, ſometimes a quarter, or half a quarter, or fewer of them live.

FROM the thirty fourth Day to the thirty ſeventh inclusive, they continue ſpinning. The thirty eighth

Day

Day they eat through their Houſes, and are like a Butterfly, and then the People take up their Houſes, and put them upon new Matts. The Males are diſtinguiſh'd by their Slenderneſs; when both Sexes are put together they join or copulate, and the thirty ninth Day they throw away the Males.

The fortieth Day the Females lay their Eggs, after which the Females are thrown away alſo; ſo that the whole Time of the Silk-Worm from the very firſt Propagation to its final Exit is but twelve Days in the Egg, and forty Days alive afterwards, which is but fifty two Days in all.

But there are different ſorts of Worms that produce the various Kinds of Silk; the beſt is produced by the Worms above-mention'd: But the ſecond Sort is called *Cheita-Bund*; theſe Worms are but eight Days in the Egg, and live thirty two Days afterwards, *viz.* forty Days in all, and is from about the Middle of *February* to the twenty fourth or twenty fifth of *March*.

The next or third Sort of Silk is called *Sowaud-Bund*; the ſpinning of this ends about the laſt of *July*.

The next or fourth Sort for Goodneſs is call'd *Affaree-Bund*; when the Worms have ſpun themſelves to death, they ſtill continue in their Eggs, (dead;) the making of this Silk ends about the fourth of *June*.

The fifth is called *Suuk-Bund*; the Worms ſtay in their Eggs eight Days, and live thirty two Days afterwards, which amounts to forty Days in all; the making of this Silk ends about the ſixth of *May*.

The ſixth Sort is call'd *Maug-Bund*; the Worms that ſpin this Silk are fourteen Days in the Egg, and live forty Days afterwards, which is fifty four in all. This is the worſt ſort of Silk, and the Worms leave off ſpinning about the Middle of *February*, ſo that in *Auguſt* or *September* there is no Silk made, and but very little in *October*.

Thus far as to the Nature of the Silk-Worms in *India*, their proper Climate, where the Heat of the Sun renders them much more fruitful than in any of our *European* Countries; for if we conſider the ſeveral ſorts of Worms, we may obſerve they breed and ſpin their Silk ſix times in the Year, but in *England* only once, becauſe here in *England* they remain in the Egg from the latter End of *Auguſt* to the latter End of *May*.

The Silk-Worm derives its Birth from the Seed of the Butterfly, which is as ſmall as Pins Heads, and are ſomething like Rape Seed. This Inſect, by whoſe Induſtry we have the Silk, ſpins it out of its Bowels, and winds it by its Mouth into the Form of a Clew or little Ball; it is ſomething like a Caterpillar both for Shape and Bulk, only it is more hairy, and its Web weaker and of a different Colour. The moſt proper Food for them is Mulberry-Leaves, but for want of that, People ſometimes feed them with Leaves of the Roſe-Tree, ſome with Lettice, or other Leaves; but it is obſerved, that with this Feeding, they either ſpin a weaker Thread, or elſe they do not ſpin at all; but what is moſt remarkable in this Inſect is, its Change of Shape; I might almoſt ſay Specie, for it is tranſformed from a creeping Worm into a Butterfly.

The Seed or Grain of thoſe Creatures was tranſported ſome hundred Years ago by two religious Perſons, but their Silk was of an older Date, and was brought into *Europe* above a thouſand Years ſince, and called *Sericum*, from an *Oriental* People called *Seres*, who were very induſtrious in improving the Silk-Worms, and the Silk they produce.

Note, This Account of the Silk-Worms was taken from Mr. *Ovington*, who reſided ſome time in *India*, and had the Opportunity of making or ſeeing the Experiments of nurſing and breeding the Silk-Worms there; but the following Account we have from *Andreas Libavius*, a famous Phyſician of *Rotenburg* in *Germany*, which being a cooler and more Northerly Climate than *India*, is not ſo natural to the Silk-Worms, and requires a different Way as well as a longer Time to nurſe them. The Method he uſed in breeding them was as follows:

He kept the Silk-Worms Eggs in warm Chambers all the Winter, and expoſed them to the Sun ſhining through the Window the latter End of *April*, and as they hatch'd, they left the empty Shells behind, and were like Caterpillars in Form, having ſmall Threads like the ſpinning of a Spider, by which they lower themſelves down from the Leaves, or pull themſelves up, much as the Spiders do.

As ſoon as they are hatch'd, the propereſt Food here (as in *India*,) is the Leaves of Mulberries; with which they feed them from the latter End of *April* till about the eighth of *May*, when they caſt their firſt Skin; and then they appear ſmooth and of a ſhining black Colour; but when the Skin is off, the Body grows ſo ſenſibly, as if the ſtraitneſs of the Skin had confin'd or ſuppreſs'd their Growth while they had it on. When they caſt their Skin they eat but little; it is ſuppoſed their Mouths are too tender to feed upon Leaves, but when they come to eating, they ſeem to grow ſleepy after they have eat, till freſh Leaves are given to them, and then they ſeem to revive and eat again.

About the middle of *May* ſome of them caſt their Skins a ſecond Time after their Sleep, for they are always ſeemingly inclined to ſleep before they caſt their Skins, and after they have them are more inclined to eat. Their next Change begins about the twenty ſecond Day of *May*, when they firſt incline to Sleep, or at leaſt decline eating till they caſt their Skin again; and this ſleeping and caſting their Skins is again repeated before the Month of *May* is expired. And at this fourth Change they become Silk-Worms, and now great Care is to be taken in feeding and managing them.

When the Worms have done ſpinning, and it is time to wind the Silk off, they put them into ſcalding Water, or ſome put them into an Oven after the Bread is taken out; (but the former was the Way that I ſaw practiſed in *Italy*,) then they have Servants or Attendants to find the End of the Thread, and ſo they wind it off upon a large Wheel made for that purpoſe, till they come to the inner Coat; which being more difficult to undo, is dry'd and pull'd into Tow, and comb'd, and apply'd to other Uſes.

their firſt going aſhore in ſuch a Manner, that in one Night's Time their Faces are ſo ſwell'd that next Morning they can ſcarce know one another. People of Faſhion keep Servants to beat them away while they ſleep; and for Bugs, they ſwarm amongſt common People and Soldiers, and yet there is a Way to keep them off; for if the Bed be all cloſe but an End or a Side, and the Way into the Bed be beſmear'd with a ſtreak of Tar (which may be done without daubing the Bedding,) the Bugs can never get into the Bed, either becauſe of the Averſion they have to Tar, or, which is more probable, that their Feet ſtick faſt in the Tar, and they are not able to proceed on their Journey.

Spiders. Toad. THERE are Spiders and Toads of a prodigious Bigneſs: during the Rains the Frogs multiply prodigiouſly, which is ſuppoſed has given riſe to that fabulous Report of raining Frogs. Their Rats grow to be three or four times as big as ours, and will ſcarce give way to a Man. Beſides Serpents and Scorpions, the Centipedes are very dangerous; it has abundance of Feet, (from whence it takes its Name,) it is about as big as a Gooſe's Quill, and three or four Inches long; its bite is very dangerous.

Rats.

Lizards. Scorpions. There are Scorpions which frequent the Houſes; they are about as long and as thick as a Man's little Finger, they are ſomething like a Lizard; they have a Sting in the End of their Tail, which they carry turn'd upon their Backs; their Sting is ſmall like that of an Hornet, and they have no way to draw it out of Sight.

Locuſt. THE Locuſt is about two Inches long, but ſo ſtrong of Wing that they can croſs a conſiderable Arm of the Sea; they ſometimes fly in ſuch prodigious Multitudes, that where they light they will deſtroy a whole Crop in one Night, as Mr. *Ovington* tells us was the Caſe of a Husbandman near *Surrat*.

OF Fowls they have great Plenty, as Geeſe, Hens, Ducks, Pigeons, Partridges, Turtle Doves, Quails, Peacocks, Parakeets, &c. their Fleſh is lean and dry, and ſome of their Bones are as black as Jet, but the Fleſh of thoſe that have black Bones differ not in Taſte from thoſe that have white. Vultures are very common and tame here. There is a Bird leſs than a Wren with pretty Feathers, and her Note not inferior to the beſt of ours; but the Monkeys, which are very numerous there, do plunder the Neſts of thoſe Birds when they can come at them, and the Birds, as if apprized of their Danger, build their Neſts in the remote Ends of the Branches or Twigs, that will not bear the Weight of the Monkeys, and by this Means ſave their Eggs and young ones from their Tyranny.

HERE are Dolphins to be admired for their inimitable Colour, eſpecially when alive, their Fleſh as white as Snow, and they are reckon'd by the Sailors a nice Diſh, eſpecially when ſhort of Victuals; they ſwim very ſwift, and prey upon the Flying Fiſh, which to avoid them, ſpring out of the Water, and fly in the Air as long as their Wings are wet, and the Dolphins watching their Motion, wait to catch them as they fall into the Sea again, which they muſt of Courſe do when their Wings are dry. The Albecores and Bonetaes will follow a Ship for ſix or ſeven Weeks together in good Weather between the Tropicks, as the Sharks alſo do, if the Ship do not ſail too faſt.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Nature, Property, and Manner of breeding the Silk-Worms in India, *which may be called their proper Climate; with ſome Obſervations of the different Manner of managing Silk-Worms in colder Climates, from the Methods uſed in* India.

IN *India* the Silk-Worms are in Eggs twelve Days, which Number of Days the Natives call one *Aggoa*, and from thence the Silk then made is called *Aggoadhaud*, and is the beſt that is made all the Year; about the twelfth or thirteenth of *November* the Worms are hatch'd, and laid upon Matts, after which they give them Mulberry Leaves for the firſt four Days; they cut them in ſmall thin Pieces, and feed them at Morning, nine a-Clock, Noon, and three a-Clock, but the fifth Day they are not fed at all.

THE ſixth Day they grow bigger, and ſo the ſeventh, eighth, and ninth Day, and are to be fed with Leaves four Times a Day, at the Times above-mention'd, but the tenth Day they muſt not be fed at all.

THE eleventh and twelfth Day they are to be fed four times a Day, but the thirteenth and fourteenth not at all. The fifteenth, ſixteenth, ſeventeenth, and eighteenth they muſt be fed with whole Leaves four times a Day as above.

THE nineteenth, and ſo to the twenty ſixth inclusive, they are fed five times a Day, *viz.* Morning, nine a Clock, Noon, three a-Clock, and Midnight. They begin to be green about the fourteenth Day, and at the twenty ſixth Day they are above two Inches long, and after the twenty ſeventh Day they are not to be fed any more, becauſe then they begin to ſpin.

THE twenty eighth Day they muſt be put upon Ledges of Matt, faſtned to a large Piece of round Matting, the Ledges being about an Inch high from the Matt, and running round like a Screw, beginning at the Center of the Matt, and running round at about three Inches diſtance to the Circumference. When the Worms are put upon thoſe Ledges, they ſet the Matts leaning in the Sun about eight in the Morning, and let them ſtand about an Hour and a half, and then they put them into the Houſe, leaning againſt the Wall, till about four in the Afternoon, and then they ſet them to the Sun again till about Sun-ſet, and then take them in again, and in this Day and Night they finiſh their Houſes.

THE twenty ninth Day they take the Worms with their new Houſes and put them upon other Matts flat, without any Ledges or Partitions, and ſo lay ſeveral Matts upon Frames one over another.

FROM the thirtieth to the thirty third inclusive, they ſpin within their Houſes of Silk, and then they take each Worm with its Houſe and ſhake it at their Ears, and thoſe that are alive are good, and kept for Breeders; but thoſe that make no noiſe have ſpun their Lives away, and are dead, ſometimes a quarter, or half a quarter, or fewer of them live.

FROM the thirty fourth Day to the thirty ſeventh inclusive, they continue ſpinning. The thirty eighth

Day

Day they eat through their Houſes, and are like a Butterfly, and then the People take up their Houſes, and put them upon new Matts. The Males are diſtinguiſh'd by their Slenderneſs; when both Sexes are put together they join or copulate, and the thirty ninth Day they throw away the Males.

The fortieth Day the Females lay their Eggs, after which the Females are thrown away alſo; ſo that the whole Time of the Silk-Worm from the very firſt Propagation to its final Exit is but twelve Days in the Egg, and forty Days alive afterwards, which is but fifty two Days in all.

But there are different ſorts of Worms that produce the various Kinds of Silk; the beſt is produced by the Worms above-mention'd: But the ſecond Sort is called *Cheita-Bund*; theſe Worms are but eight Days in the Egg, and live thirty two Days afterwards, *viz.* forty Days in all, and is from about the Middle of *February* to the twenty fourth or twenty fifth of *March*.

The next or third Sort of Silk is called *Sowaud-Bund*; the ſpinning of this ends about the laſt of *July*.

The next or fourth Sort for Goodneſs is call'd *Aſſorce-Bund*; when the Worms have ſpun themſelves to death, they ſtill continue in their Eggs, (dead;) the making of this Silk ends about the fourth of *June*.

The fifth is called *Sauk-Bund*; the Worms ſtay in their Eggs eight Days, and live thirty two Days afterwards, which amounts to forty Days in all; the making of this Silk ends about the ſixth of *May*.

The ſixth Sort is call'd *Maug-Bund*; the Worms that ſpin this Silk are fourteen Days in the Egg, and live forty Days afterwards, which is fifty four in all. This is the worſt ſort of Silk, and the Worms leave off ſpinning about the Middle of *February*, ſo that in *Auguſt* or *September* there is no Silk made, and but very little in *October*.

Thus far as to the Nature of the Silk-Worms in *India*, their proper Climate, where the Heat of the Sun renders them much more fruitful than in any of our *European* Countries; for if we conſider the ſeveral ſorts of Worms, we may obſerve they breed and ſpin their Silk ſix times in the Year, but in *England* only once, becauſe here in *England* they remain in the Egg from the latter End of *Auguſt* to the latter End of *May*.

The Silk-Worm derives its Birth from the Seed of the Butterfly, which is as ſmall as Pins Heads, and are ſomething like Rape Seed. This Inſect, by whoſe Induſtry we have the Silk, ſpins it out of its Bowels, and winds it by its Mouth into the Form of a Clew or little Ball; it is ſomething like a Caterpillar both for Shape and Bulk, only it is more hairy, and its Web weaker and of a different Colour. The moſt proper Food for them is Mulberry-Leaves, but for want of that, People ſometimes feed them with Leaves of the Roſe-Tree, ſome with Lettice, or other Leaves; but it is obſerved, that with this Feeding, they either ſpin a weaker Thread, or elſe they do not ſpin at all; but what is moſt remarkable in this Inſect is, its Change of Shape; I might almoſt ſay Specie, for it is tranſformed from a creeping Worm into a Butterfly.

The Seed or Grain of thoſe Creatures was tranſported ſome hundred Years ago by two religious Perſons, but their Silk was of an older Date, and was brought into *Europe* above a thouſand Years ſince, and called *Sericum*, from an *Oriental* People called *Seres*, who were very induſtrious in improving the Silk-Worms, and the Silk they produce.

Note, This Account of the Silk-Worms was taken from Mr. *Ovington*, who reſided ſome time in *India*, and had the Opportunity of making or ſeeing the Experiments of nurſing and breeding the Silk-Worms there; but the following Account we have from *Andreas Libavius*, a famous Phyſician of *Rotenburg* in *Germany*, which being a cooler and more Northerly Climate than *India*, is not ſo natural to the Silk-Worms, and requires a different Way as well as a longer Time to nurſe them. The Method he uſed in breeding them was as follows:

He kept the Silk-Worms Eggs in warm Chambers all the Winter, and expoſed them to the Sun ſhining through the Window the latter End of *April*, and as they hatch'd, they left the empty Shells behind, and were like Caterpillars in Form, having ſmall Threads like the ſpinning of a Spider, by which they lower themſelves down from the Leaves, or pull themſelves up, much as the Spiders do.

As ſoon as they are hatch'd, the propereſt Food here (as in *India*,) is the Leaves of Mulberries; with which they feed them from the latter End of *April* till about the eighth of *May*, when they caſt their firſt Skin; and then they appear ſmooth and of a ſhining black Colour; but when the Skin is off, the Body grows ſo ſenſibly, as if the ſtraitneſs of the Skin had confin'd or ſuppreſs'd their Growth while they had it on. When they caſt their Skin they eat but little; it is ſuppoſed their Mouths are too tender to feed upon Leaves, but when they come to eating, they ſeem to grow ſleepy after they have eat, till freſh Leaves are given to them, and then they ſeem to revive and eat again.

About the middle of *May* ſome of them caſt their Skins a ſecond Time after their Sleep, for they are always ſeemingly inclined to ſleep before they caſt their Skins, and after they have them are more inclined to eat. Their next Change begins about the twenty ſecond Day of *May*, when they firſt incline to Sleep, or at leaſt decline eating till they caſt their Skin again; and this ſleeping and caſting their Skins is again repeated before the Month of *May* is expired. And at this fourth Change they become Silk-Worms, and now great Care is to be taken in feeding and managing them.

When the Worms have done ſpinning, and it is time to wind the Silk off, they put them into ſcalding Water, or ſome put them into an Oven after the Bread is taken out; (but the former was the Way that I ſaw practiſed in *Italy*,) then they have Servants or Attendants to find the End of the Thread, and ſo they wind it off upon a large Wheel made for that purpoſe, till they come to the inner Coat; which being more difficult to undo, is dry'd and pull'd into Tow, and comb'd, and apply'd to other Uſes.

T t CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Learning, Language, Characters, Arts and Sciences, of the Indians; *also of their Physicians, Diseases, and Cures.*

Learning. THE *Indians* do not learn or use *Latin* or *Greek*; which may probably be the Reason why they cannot so well converse with other Parts of the World, as those People can who learn these original Languages. The Moors or Mahometans have heard of *Aristotle*, and have some of his Books, as well as those of the famous Physician *Avicene*, in the *Arabian* Language, in which they have also some Fragments of the Old Testament, but they are all in Manuscript, for Printing has not yet been introduced among them.

Language and Characters. THE Mahometans use the *Indian*, or else the *Persian* Characters, though their Language differs from the original *Indian*, but the Court Language spoken by the great *Omrahs*, and the politest of them, is the *Persian*; but their learned or School Language is the *Arabian*, which they write from the Right to the Left, like the *Hebrew*, for they borrow many Words from that Language. The Bramins, the chief Sect amongst the Idolaters, have a Language peculiar to themselves, in which their Records, Books of Divinity and Philosophy, and the Fables of their Priests, are written. In these Books they tell us of four remarkable Periods since the World began. The first was the Golden Age, which they say lasted a Million, seven hundred and twenty eight thousand Years, at the expiration of which Time their God *Brama*, the Original of the Bramins, was form'd, and that those original Bramins were Giants, and liv'd to the Age of four hundred Years in Innocency, and not subject to Diseases. Then came on the second Age, which lasted a Million, two hundred and ninety six thousand Years; in this Age the Raja's were created, who were a noble Race next to the Bramins. In this Age they say Vice prevail'd, and Man's Life was shortened to three hundred Years. The third Age lasted eight Millions, and sixty four thousand Years: and now Man's Life was reduced to two hundred Years. The fourth, or present Age, which they say is to be the last, they likewise undertake to limit, and when it expires, the World is to be at an end; but they allow a vast Time of it yet to come: But however, they reckon in those three Ages above eleven Millions of Years, and we do not reckon six thousand.

Four Ages. Golden Age.

BUT the common *Indians* or *Pagans* most commonly speak the *Malabar* and *Jentee* Tongues, the one upon the Coast of *Malabar*, and the other on the Coast of *Coromandel*; but the *Portuguese* Language is the most used, and the best understood in the Places of Trade upon the Sea Coast, only mix'd with some *Indian* Names or Words.

THE *Pagan Indians* commonly write on the Leaf of the Cocoa-Tree or the Palm-Tree, and write from the Left hand slanting to the Right; but the *Mahometans* have a thin shining Paper, sometimes ten Foot in Length and a Foot broad; the Pen they use is the antient Calamus or Reed, about the thickness of a Goose's Quill, and when they send Letters of Consequence, they enclose them in a hollow Cane or Bamboo, to secure them from the wet. They have no Coats of Arms, but have Seals of Gold, Silver, or Cornelian Stone, with their Names engraved upon them.

History. THEIR History is written in Verse, and those are most valued by them which treat of their Heroes and subordinate Deities, which formerly inhabited their Country. They also celebrate the Memory of their Saints and Martyrs, as in *Europe*, and think it an indispensible Duty to believe all that the Bramins teach them of the Adventures or Miracles of those Deities, as they look upon them to be.

New Year. THE original *Indians* or *Pagans* begin their Year the first of *March*, but the Mahometans not till the tenth, when they think the Sun crosseth the Equator; they divide the Year into thirteen Months or Moons.

Mogul's Feast. The Great Mogul holds a Feast from the first of *March* to the tenth, to usher in the new Year, during which Time his great Lords repair to Court in their gayest Equipage, and make great Presents to their Prince, who at that Time makes such Promotions, or other Alterations, among his great Officers, as is intended for the ensuing Year.

Mathematicks. THEY know little of the Mathematicks, except Arithmetick, at which they are so expert that few can excel them, and frequently cast up their Accounts by Head, without the help of a Pen. The Bramins have Tables for the Calculation of Eclipses, by which they can calculate within a few Minutes; but they do not call their Sub-divisions of Time Minutes, as we do, but Garis, and the half, the Quarter, and the half Quarter of the Garis; their Garis is about half of one of our Hours; so that their lowest Division of Time is very near our four Minutes of Time, which with them is reckon'd a tolerable Error in the Time of an Eclipse. Their Notions of the System of the Heavens is very vulgar and ignorant; as that the Moon is further from the Earth than the Sun; that when the Sun is set, it is only hid behind some great Mountain, *&c.* but they divide the Zodiack into twelve Signs as we do, and call them by the same Names of *Ram*, *Bull*, *Lion*, &c. in their Language, as we do in the *English* or *Latin*: By Indeed it is most probable that we have the Divisions and Names of the Signs and Constellations from the Pagan Astrologers, for they are such great Bigots to Astrology, that even the Mogul himself will not undertake a Journey, nor resolve upon any thing of Moment till the Astrologer be consulted for the lucky Minute, and the Moment that he prescribes is made use of.

Astro-logy.

Phy-sick. THEY have but little Skill in Physick, and none in Anatomy; but from Tryal and Experience they have found the Virtue and Use of some Simples, which they apply with Success; and one common, and indeed, safe Prescription, is Abstinence; for when they meet with a Distemper that they can neither find Name nor Cure for, they order them to eat nothing but Congee, or a little Gruel made of Rice, till they find themselves better. Indeed one great Reason why a slender Diet contributes so much to a Cure, may be because they have a Distemper call'd, *Mort-de chien*, proceeding from Indigestion, which throws the Patient into vomiting and purging, with racking Pains, and is often mortal; but doubtless where People have but a lower Degree of this Distemper, Nature only supported, but not over-burthen'd, will be best able to expel those Crudities which the Stomach, by an ill State, has contracted, and wants to throw off.

Bur

But in the higher Degrees of this Diſtemper, their Cure is to ſtop the Purging and Vomiting, and eaſe the Pain, by clapping a red hot Iron to the Sole of the Foot near the Heel, and another like Cure they have for the Cholick, which is by an Iron Ring about an Inch thick, and an Inch and a half Diameter; this they heat red hot, and clap it to the Patient's Belly, ſo that the Navel is in the middle of the Ring, and immediately taken off again, eaſes the Pain of the Cholick. *Doubtleſs it will make the Perſon nimble, if he is able to move at all.*

Chintz. The Bramins induce, or rather ſeduce, the ignorant *Indians* to believe that they cure Diſtempers by Charms; but as thoſe things are not believ'd by any in *England*, except thoſe remarkable for their Ignorance (not for their Knowledge) I ſhall not take any further Notice of that unwarrantable Practice of thoſe *Pagans*, where Ignorance and Superſtition prevails, nor are they worth indeed mentioning in an *Engliſh* Hiſtory, except to guard the weaker Sort againſt the Belief or Regard of ſuch Impoſitions.

Muſlins. It is much more worth while to obſerve the excellent Qualifications of the *Indians* in Mechanicks, eſpecially in making Muſlins out of the Cotton that grows upon the Cotton Shrub, as hinted before; this they make ſo fine, that a whole Piece may be drawn through a Ring, and ſo dextrous are they about this Commodity, that if a Piece of Muſlin be torn, they can join it ſo nice, that it is impoſſible to diſcern where it is torn, though it was a whole Piece torn in two.

Chints. Calicoes. The Chints and Calicoes on the Coaſt of *Cormandel* are painted with a Pencil, as before obſerv'd, but thoſe made in Northern *India* are printed; however, whether it is owing to their Art, or to the Ingredients the Colours are made of, we ſee they will endure waſhing very well. Their Painters will very exactly follow a Copy in drawing a Picture; and ſo will the Goldſmiths as well imitate any Piece of *European* Work in their Way of Buſineſs, though their Tools are mean. The Cement they uſe in Building is harder than Brick, that they can terraſs the Roof of a Houſe or lay a Floor, which when dry ſhall be a hard as one entire Stone. Their Smiths are the moſt deficient; they can make no Clocks, Watches, or Gun-lock, or any Iron or Steel Ware that requires Springs, but they make Swords, Crices, Poniards, Scymetars, and other Arms to anſwer their Purpoſe; but they ſupply the uſe of Clocks in great Towns by a Veſſel of Water, which by a ſmall Hole in the Bottom, lets the Water out into another Veſſel, and when it is out, a Watchman appointed for that Purpoſe, ſtrikes the Number of Gares upon a Concave Piece of Metal, hung by him for that Deſign, in a Manner ſomething reſembling our Clocks, ſtriking the Number of the Hour upon the Bell. Meaſure of Time.

Eſtates. The Mahometans have no hereditary Honours or Eſtates; they are only created or promoted by the Government; the Nabobs and Omrahs are often Natives of *Perſia* or *Tartary*, and whatever advantageous Poſts they are in, yet when they die, what they have got together does not deſcend to their Families or Succeſſors, but devolves on the Crown. The Dignity of the Omrahs is according to the extent of their Command; he that is to furniſh a thouſand Horſe has a Country allotted him ſufficient to maintain them, and he that furniſheth fewer has a leſſer Diſtrict in Proportion. But though the Cuſtom is ſuch that the Omrah cannot ſettle any of his Subſtance upon his Children, yet there is regard had to his Behaviour, which if it has been agreeable, the Emperor commonly makes Proviſion for his Family by Preferment, or otherwiſe taking Care of them; but for the Encouragement of Trade, the Merchants Houſes along the Sea Coaſt deſcend to their Children.

But the *Pagans* or *Proper Indians*, who vaſtly exceed the Moors or Mahometans in Number, value themſelves upon their Birth, Family, or Tribe, inſomuch that they will not eat with thoſe of an inferior Caſt, but here Honour is not always accompanied with Riches. The Bramins are both the Prime Nobility and the Prieſts, which in ſome Nations would give a great Opportunity of being Rich, yet here even they are often very Poor. The next in Honour is the Rajaputes, they are Soldiers by Profeſſion, and a Sort of Vaſſals to the Raja's or Princes of the Mountains. Theſe Raja's, though tributary to the Mogul, retain their own Religion and Laws, and their Honours and Eſtates deſcend to their next Succeſſors.

CHAP. X.

Gives a Deſcription of the Mogul's Court; his Officers, Women, &c. alſo of the Succeſſion of the Empire, with his Civil Government, Laws and Puniſhments: With an Account of his Camps, Forces, Revenues, Coins, Weights and Meaſures.

THERE is no ſtanding Council of State kept in the Mogul's Court, like ſome other Princes; but the Affairs of the Empire are managed by four or five ſuperiour Officers, who diſpenſe his Orders to their reſpective Diſtricts, and report the State of thoſe Provinces to him. The Mogul never uſes or wears a Crown. The Emperor himſelf preſides as Judge in criminal Caſes in the Province where the Court reſides, and his other ſuperior Officers do the ſame in their reſpective Diviſions. The Emperor's Sons are call'd *Sultans*, and the Daughters *Sultana's*; and when any Perſon is preferr'd to great Dignity, he has a Name or Title added, that is expreſſive of the Dignity he is advanc'd to; as *Aſaph Chan*, is rich Lord; *Chan Channa*, Lord of Lords; one of the Moguls call'd his chief Phyſician *Moarib Chan*, or Lord of his Health, &c. the great Military Officers are call'd Omrahs; he has alſo Treaſurers, Stewards, and Comptrollers of the Houſhold; and his other great Officers are Secretaries of State, Governors of the Elephants, Maſter of the Tents, and Keepers of the Wardrobe; theſe laſt are entruſted with the Jewels.

Women. There are ſeveral Denominations of Women in the Seraglio, as Wives, Concubines, Princeſſes of the Blood, Governants, and Slaves; his Wives are contracted to him with a kind of a Nuptial Ceremony, and their Number ſeldom exceeds four; and he never marries the Daughter of a Foreign Prince,

Succeſſion.

Prince, but often of a Raja, and ſometimes makes choice of one of his Slaves if ſhe pleaſe him; and the firſt Son by any of theſe Wives is accounted the Heir of the Empire, without any regard to the Blood or Quality of the Mother, though it often happens that the moſt Powerful in Arms carries it againſt this hereditary Courſe of Succeſſion; and when it is thus determined by Force, the Conqueror generally deſtroys all his Rivals and their Male Iſſue, to ſecure himſelf from any Attempts they might make upon him or his Dominions for the future. Beſides the Wives, the Great Mogul has ſometimes above a thouſand Concubines.

Sultans.

The young Sultans are married at thirteen or fourteen Years of Age, and then live in great Grandeur in ſeparate Courts, except the Heir apparent, who is brought up near the Emperor. The young Sultaneſſes are tenderly uſed, and not under ſuch ſevere Reſtraints as the other Women are, he allowing them all the Gayneſs in Dreſs and Gallantry that can be imagined, but they are never allow'd to marry with any Subject of the Empire.

Privy Council

If the Mogul may be ſaid to have any Privy-Council, it is the Ladies of the Seraglio, for there, according to their Dignity, one is ſtil'd Prime Miniſter, another Secretary of State, another Viceroy of ſuch a Province; and each Lady maintains a Correſpondence with the Miniſter whoſe Title ſhe bears, and Eunuchs are employ'd for the intercourſe of Letters between them; by which Means theſe Ladies know the Affairs of the Province, whoſe Viceroys Title they bear, and have greater Opportunities of repreſenting Things to the Emperor than his Miniſters at a Diſtance, that have not ſuch frequent Acceſs to him; and according to their Way of repreſenting, the Affairs of Provinces or Perſons are frequently determined, and the great Offices of State or Places of Truſt in the Government are diſpos'd of accordingly. The Mogul has alſo a Guard of *Tartar* Women, arm'd with Scymaters and Bows, who have the Care of his Perſon.

Ambaſſadors

The Mogul never ſends an Ambaſſador to a Foreign Court, as looking upon all the Princes in the World to be his Inferiors; nor does he treat Ambaſſadors ſent to him any other than common Meſſengers: But when his Orders are diſpatch'd to any of his Miniſters or Governors, he receives it as if the Emperor was preſent, meeting the Meſſenger upon the Road, and as ſoon as he ſees the Packet, he alights from his Horſe, and falls on his Face to the Earth, then takes the Packet from the Meſſenger, and binds it faſt upon his Head, and returning to his Reſidence, reads and anſwers it with the utmoſt Expedition he is capable of.

Court

He uſually ſhews himſelf three Times a Day to the People, *viz.* at Sun-riſing, when they give him an Acclamation *Padſha Salamet*, or *Long Life and Health to the great King*; he alſo ſhews himſelf at Noon, and a third Time a little before Sun-ſet, the Drums, Trumpets, and other Muſick filling the Air with their Sound when he appears and when he withdraws.

Laws and Punishments.

There are no written Laws in the Empire, but yet the ſame Puniſhment is commonly inflicted for the ſame Crime, as Death for Murder and Theft, &c. but the Manner of the Execution is intirely in the Breaſt of the King or Viceroy of the Province. They never lie above a Night in Priſon, and ſometimes not ſo long, for if they be apprehended in the Morning, they are immediately brought before the Governor, and either condemn'd or acquitted, and if condemn'd, there is no Reſpite between Sentence and Execution, but the Criminal is directly hurry'd away to the Market-Place, to be executed according to his Sentence. Some are hang'd, others beheaded, ſome impaled on ſharp Stakes, others torn in Pieces by Wild-Beaſts, ſome trod to death by Elephants, and others bitten to death by Snakes, &c.

Preſents expected.

The Mogul expects a Preſent from every Foreign Ambaſſador that addreſſes him, though he treats them not as Repreſentatives of, but as Meſſengers from their Maſters, but with the more or leſs Reſpect according to the Value of the Preſents they make to him. And though he never ſends Ambaſſadors to Foreign Princes, yet he ſends Letters to them by the Ambaſſadors that they ſend to him, and gives them their Titles in the Beginning of his Letters, in a Language very condeſcending and courteous.

His Camp.

The Form of his Camp in the Field is near round, and when they remove, there is a Detachment goes before to clear the Ground and the Streets, and every one's Habitation or Tent is to be found in the ſame Form as if it had been remov'd all in one, or rather as if it had not been remov'd at all. The Circumference of the Camp is ſeldom leſs than twenty Miles, and will contain a hundred thouſand military Men, with their Wives and Families, beſides all manner of Trades and Profeſſions that are exerciſed in the Camp. The Tents are for the moſt part white, as is the Cloathing of the People, but the Mogul's Tent is red, pitch'd in the Center of the Camp, and much higher than the reſt, that he may from thence have a full View of all the Camp; and as almoſt the whole Seraglio take the Field and encamp with him, his large Family of Queens, Sultans, Concubines, Eunuchs, Slaves, &c. makes his Camp as large as a conſiderable Town, and no Man is ſuffer'd to approach it within a Muſket Shot. The Tents of the Omrahs ſurround the Emperor's Camp at a Diſtance, in proportion to their Dignity, and ſo the more inferior People are pitch'd the moſt remote from the Mogul's Tent. The Streets are wide and ſtrait, and the chief of them run in a direct Line from the Royal Camp. In every Quarter there is a Market-Place for Proviſions, and all Trades are carried on in the Camp as in a City; but the Mogul's Camp is the greateſt Market in the World for Diamonds. They always take Care to pitch where Water is plenty, and they always have abundance of Barges for the Emperor to take his pleaſure in upon the Rivers, as well as for paſſing the Army and Baggage when interrupted by Water; but when they move the Camp, and travel by Land, theſe Barges are convey'd from one Place to another upon Carriages made for that Purpoſe. He alſo carries with him Hawks, Dogs, and Leopards for the Game, ſo that his Enquiry into the Conduct of his Viceroys or Governors is intermix'd with proper Diverſion, and his thus ſhewing himſelf once or twice a Year ſtrikes a Terror into his Raja's, and keeps them up to their Duty.

Forces.

As to his Forces, it is ſaid he allows Pay for a Million of Horſe, but it is not ſuppoſed that any Mogul did ever muſter ſuch a Number in the Field all at the ſame Time. The Viceroyſhip of *Patan* maintains five thouſand Horſe; the Pay of each is but two hundred Roupies, or twenty two Pounds ten Shillings Sterling a Year for each Horſe, but the Viceroy is not obliged to keep up above fifteen hundred Men, which is not one Third of the five thouſand, ſo that if we reduce the Million at this rate, we cannot reckon above three hundred thouſand Horſe in the whole Empire, and if to theſe we add the *Rajaboes* or *Rajaputes*, the only fighting Men among the Idolaters, but generally if not always on Foot, it will fall vaſtly ſhort of the Number which ſome give account of as to the Emperor's Forces.

Revenue.

The Revenues of the Mogul ariſe from the Product of the Ground, the Labour of the People, the Cuſtoms of the Sea Ports, the Effects of great

Men

Men which devolve on the Crown at their Deceaſe, and the Preſents of the Subjects. The Viceroy of every Province is obliged to anſwer the Crown a certain Sum, which he raiſes out of the Product and Manufacture of the Soil; which Part of the Revenue alone, *Manouchi*, who reſided in the Mogul's Court forty Years, computed at three hundred and eighty ſeven millions, one hundred and ninety four thouſand Rupees; which at two Shillings and three Pence each, amounts to forty three Million five hundred fifty nine thouſand three hundred and twenty five Pounds Sterling; if as above we add to this the Eſtates of his Viceroys and Governors, that devolve on the Crown when they die, the Preſents of his Subjects, the Benefit of the Diamond Mines, *&c.* the Total of his Revenues muſt amount to an immenſe Sum.

Coins. THE Coins are, the *Pice* or *Caſh*, a Copper Coin, Value about one Halfpenny; the *Fanam* worth three Pence; the *Roupee* two Shillings and three Pence, (the two laſt are Silver;) the Gold *Roupee*, Value one Pound eleven and Sixpence; the *Pagoda* is worth nine Shillings; for Things of ſmall Value they give the ſmall Shells call'd Blackamoors Teeth, of which about ſixty is worth a Halfpenny. But their great Sums are reckon'd by other Terms; a *Leck* is a hundred thouſand *Roupees*, a *Caron* is a hundred *Lecks*, and an *Arob* is ten *Carons*.

Weights. THEIR Weights differ in different Places, but the common Weight at *Surrat* is the *Seer*, which is about thirteen Ounces and one third, and forty *Seers* make a *Maund*, and twenty *Maunds* make a *Candy*. But the ſeveral Sorts of other Goods go by different Weights, as in *England*: we ſell ſome ſome ſorts of Goods by *Troy*, and ſome by *Avoirdupoiſe*. Corn and Rice is alſo ſold at *Surrat* by Weight.

Meaſures. CALICOES and Silks are ſold by the *Cobit*, a Meaſure equal to an Ell *Flemiſh*, or twenty ſeven Inches.

THEIR *Coſs* or Miles, by which they meaſure or compute their Roads, is about an *Engliſh* Mile and a half near the Coaſt, but in the Country about *Brampour* it is near two Miles,

CHAP. XI.

Of the Variety of Religions profeſs'd in India, *or the Mogul's Empire, and by what Tribes or Caſts thoſe ſeveral Religions are profeſs'd.*

Religion. Four Sorts. THERE are four ſorts of Religions, or Profeſſors of it; firſt the *Original Indians*, who are by far the greateſt Number, are Idolaters; ſecondly, the *Perſees*, or Worſhippers of Fire, who ſuppoſe themſelves to be the Extract of the antient *Perſians*; thirdly the *Moors* or *Mahometans*, which under the Mogul's Government is the eſtabliſh'd Religion; and fourthly the Chriſtians, who are either the Inhabitants of other Chriſtian Countries ſettled there, or ſome of that Country converted by the Miſſionaries ſent there for that Purpoſe, ſome of whom are diſtinguiſh'd by the Name of Chriſtians of St. *Thomas*; and thoſe are ſuch as believe that that Apoſtle firſt planted Chriſtianity in this Part of the World, and is Patron of their Religion, and therefore refuſe to ſubmit to the Authority of the Pope.

Original Indians. THE *Original Indians* (by ſome call'd *Hindowns*,) are divided into abundance of Tribes; who though of nearly the ſame Religion, yet will not intermarry, or ſcarce eat or drink with any of another Tribe; and although there are ſixty or eighty different Tribes, yet the *Bramins* are reckon'd the Chief; (as well they may, having engroſs'd to themſelves the chief Dignities both Civil and Eccleſiaſtical;) the next are the *Rajaputes*, who enjoy military Preferments; and the third are the *Banians*; but there is a fourth Sort, who eat the Fleſh of ſome Animals, and not of others; a fifth, and very numerous Sort are call'd *Pariars*; they make no ſcruple of eating any thing whatſoever, and are uſeful only in the moſt ſervile Offices, as Scavengers, Kennel-rakers, Cleaners of the Streets, and the like; and are ſo contemptible, that if they touch one of the ſuperior Tribes, they imagine themſelves to be ſo much above them, that they think they are defiled by the Touch.

Bramins. THE *Bramins* are divided into ſeveral Caſts among themſelves, ſome eat ſome kinds of Fleſh, others none; ſome marry, others will not with any pleaſure look upon a Woman; ſome waſh and bathe ſeveral times a Day, but ſome not at all, for fear of killing ſome Animal, and for the ſame Reaſon they burn no Wood, leſt they ſhould thereby kill ſome Inſect harbour'd in it.

They own a God. THE *Indians* agree in this, that they own one ſupreme God, and that their Images repreſent ſome Heroes or virtuous Perſons, who lived on Earth and are now exalted to Heaven, and that they pay Adoration to the before them Images as Mediators or Interceſſors for them. But as we are not now upon the Hiſtory of any Part of *Europe*, we ſhall not make any Remark how nearly the Popiſh Religion reſembles this of the Pagan *Indians*.

Fourteen Worlds. THE *Bramins* believe that *Brama*, by the Power given him by *Mahadeu*, made fourteen Worlds, and that our World is to continue four Ages; which will fill up ſeveral Millions of Years, as mention'd near the Beginning of Chap. IX. and that this Age wherein we live has above four hundred thouſand Years yet to come.

Shapes of their God. THEIR *Vedam* (which is the Foundation of their Belief, and read to them by the *Bramins* as ſuch,) tells them that their God *Mahadeu* has appear'd in ſeveral Shapes, ſometimes with four Heads, and four Arms and Hands; ſometimes with a Head like a Hog, with two great Tuſks, and a Body like a Man, with four Arms and Hands. This is a common Image in *India*, and as frightful to a Chriſtian to look upon as one of their Deities, who think it more like a Devil. Another there is, partly Man, partly Fiſh, with ten Heads. and ten pair of Hands; and they believe that this is their God *Viſtnow* that appears in all thoſe Shapes. But theſe Accounts are ſo ridiculous and incredible, that if we would have any Charity for them or their Religion, we may perhaps be miſtaken in taking their Deſcription of God in a literal Senſe; and thus they might, for want of knowing our Language or Religion better, miſtake us, and report that we believe the Devil to be in the Form of a Lion, becauſe he is repreſented in our Scripture, *as a roaring Lion ſeeking whom he may devour*, &c. though indeed this will bear but little Weight in their Favour, when Chriſtian Travellers ſee thoſe Images ſet up as Objects of their Worſhip.

THEY ſeldom have any publick Aſſemblies in their Pagoda's, but every one performs his Devo-

tions when and to what Image he pleaſes; but the greateſt Part of their Worſhip is Singing, Dancing, Playing, and offering Rice, and other Food; though ſome pray before the Shrines of their Gods with as much Fervour as if their God was as able to ſupply their Wants as they are to feel and know them; and even the pooreſt Sort will waſh, perfume, and otherwiſe adorn their Images, according to the utmoſt of their Ability.

THE Bramins believe a pre-exiſtent State, with reſpect to which this was a future State, and that the good or bad Fortune we meet with in this World, is a Reward or Puniſhment for what we did in the former; and that according to our Behaviour in this World we ſhall be rewarded or puniſhed in the next, *&c.* Some aim at Works of Supererogation, or more than the Vedam requires, in Hopes to enjoy extraordinary Happineſs in the next State. Some undertake Pilgrimages, eſpecially to the Pagodes, near the Mouths of the *Ganges*, as believing that the bare waſhing in the River contributes very much to the cleanſing them from their Sins. Their Law enjoins moral Duties, as Temperance, Charity, *&c.* and forbids Murder, Stealing, Lying, and Oppreſſion, and the Rajaputes hold the ſame.

Morals.

Rajputes.

THE Banians are the moſt numerous of the *Pagan* Tribes, but they are ſubdivided into ſeveral Profeſſions and different Tenets in Matters of Religion, but though they differ in ſome Particulars, yet they all agree in their Tenderneſs to Animals, upon a Suppoſition that every Animal is enliven'd by the Soul of ſome Perſon deceas'd, and that to kill or abuſe that Animal would be diſlodging or diſturbing the Soul that is embodied in it.—But of this before.

THEY perform all ſervile Offices with the Left-hand, but all venerable Offices or Salutes with the Right; and that Diſtinction is ſo ſtrictly obſerved, that to give a Salute with the Left-hand is the greateſt Affront that can be offer'd.

THE Second of the four Sorts mention'd in the Beginning of this Chapter, is the *Perſes*, or Worſhippers of Fire; they were tranſplanted hither from *Perſia*, when the Mahometans conquer'd that Country, and thence call'd *Perſees*; they alſo acknowledge one Supreme GOD, Creator of all things; but they believe that their Law-giver *Zertouſt*, when caught up into Heaven, had Fire given him, which he brought down from thence, and commanded his Diſciples to worſhip it, and hence to extinguiſh Fire of any Kind is, with them, deem'd a heinous Crime. They pay ſuch a Veneration to Fire, that they keep Lamps fed with Oil continually burning in their Temples, and attended by their Prieſts; and ſome ſay they have burnt for many Generations without Intermiſſion; and it is reported by ſome experienc'd Travellers, that if a Houſe was on Fire they would not extinguiſh it, becauſe thereby they would interrupt the Operation of that venerable Deity.

Perſees.

THEY eat indifferently of all Animals, ſave the Cock, to which they pay as much Veneration as the *Banians* do to the Cow. They eat Beef and Pork with a Sort of Reſerve, but that Reſtraint is more in Compliance to the *Moors* and *Banians*, than any Point of Conſcience in themſelves.

THE Religion of the *Moors* is the ſame with that of the *Turks*, and the *Perſians* are look'd upon as Hereticks by both. We ſhall have Occaſion to enlarge upon the Mahometan Religion, when we come to treat of *Perſia* and *Turky*, where it is profeſt; yet in ſome Meaſure to ſatisfy the Reader's Curioſity in the mean Time, their Principles are, 1. That there is one only God, and that *Mahomet* was his Prophet, *Abraham* his Friend, *Moſes* his Meſſenger, and that Chriſt was the Breath of God. 2. That every Man ought to marry to encreaſe the Number of Believers. 3. That all Men ought to be Charitable to the Poor. 4. To pray five Times a Day. 5. To keep a Month's Faſt Yearly, which they call *Ramezan*, when they faſt religiouſly all the Day, but regale themſelves at Night. 6. To be obedient to Parents. 7. To do no Murder. 8. To do by others as they would be done by. And *Laſtly*, To abſtain from Wine and Swine's Fleſh.——*Friday* is their Sabbath.

Moors Religion.

SOME think that Chriſtianity has been profeſt there ever ſince the Apoſtle's Time: However, it is certain there were Chriſtians here when the *Europeans* firſt viſited this Coaſt. The Natives had a Tradition that St. *Thomas* was martyr'd near *Maliapour*, on the Coaſt of *Cormandel*, and the *Portugueſe* believing it, call'd *Maliapour* by the Name of St. *Thomas*. It is now a Biſhop's See, and ſituate about a League to the Southward of *Fort St. George*. Theſe *Indian* Chriſtians differ from the Church of *Rome* in the following Particulars: 1. They adminiſter'd the Sacrament in both Kinds, only, having no Wine, they ſupply'd that with a Liquor made of Reaſons. 2. They did not Baptize their Children till they were forty Days old, except they were in Danger of Death. 3. They had no Images in their Churches only the Croſs. 4. They allow'd their Prieſts to marry once. 5. They had no extreme Unction; and, 6. They do not acknowledge the Pope's Juriſdiction. And they ſo far agree with the Proteſtants that they come to Church within the Walls of *Maderaſs*, and practiſe their Religion in ſo near a Conformity to the Proteſtants, that our Divines do not attempt to contradict or proſelyte them, though whether that be owing to their near Conformity to us already, or to the Pains that our Divines muſt be at to make themſelves ſo much Maſters of the Language as to be able to diſpute with them, in order to convince or convert them, is a Queſtion.

Chriſtianity.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Marriages and Children of the Indians.

IN the Marriages of the *Jentoe* or *Indian* Idolaters, the Contract is made by the Parents of the contracted Parties in their Infancy, before they have the uſe of their Reaſon, or are capable of chooſing for themſelves, and they both look upon themſelves as obliged to ſtand by their Parent's Choice, only if the Man do not like the Choice his Parents have made for him, he may take another, and as many Concubines as he pleaſes, but the Woman can have no Divorce, and if ſhe murmur at her Husband's Conduct, he may reduce her to a State of Slavery, and ſet her to Work among his Slaves if he pleaſe, nor need the Woman under her greateſt Diſcontent and her Husband's higheſt Reſentments, be afraid of her Life, for they will not kill an Animal, and, doubtleſs, they pay ſome Deference to their Bed-fellow; and if a Woman is married to a *Bramin* or *Banian* Husband, ſhe need not fear undergoing any greater Mortification than ſeeing him kiſs her Rival before her Face.

A *Jentoe* or *Indian Idolater* will not marry out of his own Tribe or Profeſſion; a Merchant will not marry into a Mechanick Tribe, nor will any Mechanick marry into a Profeſſion different from his own, as a Smith into a Carpenter or Weaver's Family, or the contrary, and ſo of any other Trade.

Marriage.

AT

The Ceremony.

At the Solemnization of any *Jentoe*'s Wedding, the Bride and Bridegroom are for ſeveral Nights ſucceſſively carried through the Streets, dreſs'd in the richeſt Apparel which they can produce, attended with Flags, Streamers, and Muſick, and by their Friends and Acquaintance, the Streets being illuminated upon this Occaſion. When the Cavalcade is over, the Couple proceeds to the Wife's Father's Houſe, where being ſeated on each Side of a Table, they join their Hands a-croſs the Table, and the Prieſt covers both their Heads with a kind of a Hood, in which Poſture they continue till he has ended his Prayers, and pronounc'd the nuptial Benediction, and then their Heads are uncover'd, and the People are ſprinkled with Roſe-water tinctur'd with Saffron, which leaves the Stains as well as the Smell upon their Cloaths, and ſerves as our Favours do to diſcover thoſe that have been at the Wedding: The Evening concludes with Entertainments ſuitable to the Quality of the married Couple, and ſometimes the Feſtival laſts ſeveral Days.

The Women ſeldom bring any Fortunes to their Husbands, but rather advance a Sum to their Wife's Friends, ſo that it may be ſaid to be a Purchaſe; and this renders the Woman vaſtly inferior to her Husband, and obliges her to pay him an extraordinary Reſpect; and ſometimes ſhe is kept at that Diſtance that ſhe is not allow'd to eat with him, but ſits down when he has done. But the Women are not here ſo cloſely confined from converſing with other People as in ſome other of the Eaſtern Countries.

Naming their Children.

When their Children are about ten Days old, the *Banians* give them Names, with this Ceremony; they aſſemble ten or a dozen Children, and placing them round in a Circle, they give them a Sheet to hold, in which the *Bramin* pours a quantity of Rice, and upon it he lays the Child that is to be named; the Boys that hold the Sheet ſhaking the Child and the Rice together, the Father's Siſter (or if there is no ſuch Aunt, the Father or Mother) advances, and names the Child; and a Month or two after it is carried to the Pagod or Temple, to be initiated into the *Banian* Religion; in which Ceremony the *Bramin* mixes ſhavings of Sandal-Wood, Camphire, Cloves, and other ſweet Things, and puts them upon the Child's Head; and from that Time he is reputed a compleat *Banian*.

They have ſwinging Cradles, that go with much leſs Noiſe than ours, that ſtand upon the Ground, ſome ſay they are uſed in *Holland*; however, I have ſeen them in *Muſcovy*. The *Indians* never bind or ſwaddle up their Children when young, but let them go naked till they are ſix or ſeven Years of Age; and as we have before obſerved, that none of them are crooked or miſhapen as many are in *England*, it would give ſome Reaſon to conjecture, that thoſe Deformities which often happen to Children, and continue when come to Maturity, is either owing to our cramping them in ſwaddling Cloaths, or at leaſt to the Midwives or Nurſes doing it unskilfully when they are young.

It is needleſs here to give any particular Account of the Marriage of the *Mahometans*, that falling more naturally under the Hiſtory of *Perſia*, or that of the *Turkiſh* Empire.

Burial.

When a Perſon is dead they waſh the Corpſe, and dreſs it in ſuch Cloaths as the Perſon uſually wore when alive, and carry it out upon a Bier attended by the Friends and Relations of the Deceas'd to the Funeral Pile, which is commonly fix'd near ſome River or Pond, that when the Body is conſum'd to Aſhes they may be convey'd away by the Stream, or loſt in the Water; but if Wood is ſo ſcarce that they cannot procure a Funeral Pile, they ſink the dead Body in a River, eſpecially if they be near the River *Ganges*, whoſe Waters they eſteem very ſacred; and next to it they pay a great Veneration to the River *Tapte*, upon whoſe Bank *Surrat* is ſituate. Their next, but indeed their laſt Choice, is to bury their dead; but this muſt be where they have neither Wood for a Funeral Pile, nor a convenient River wherein to ſink it deep out of their ſight.

As to the Cuſtom of the living Wife burning herſelf with her deceas'd Husband, Hiſtory gives us but few Inſtances of it, nor do our late Travellers warrant it by their Relations; the leaſt that we can now conjecture is, that if in Times of Ignorance they were ſo infatuated either by Prieſt-craft or Obſtinacy, they are now grown wiſer; however, now neither the *European* nor even the *Moriſh* Government do allow of it.

Mourning.

The Women who mourn for their Husbands ſhave their Heads, neglect their Dreſs, and abandon themſelves to Grief; but the Men never cut their Hair, except it be upon the death of a Raja, or Father, or ſome Superior; but the common Mourning of one Relation for another is expreſt by renting their Cloaths, or rather wearing old torn Cloaths, or a careleſs negligent Dreſs for ſome Time; during which they viſit the Place where the Body was burnt or buried, and carry Cocoa-Nuts, Rice, and other Proviſions, probably for the Uſe of the Deceas'd, but it is devour'd by the Fowls or Wild-Beaſts as ſoon as they are gone.

It is ſaid that the *Indians* formerly buried great Sums of Gold with the Deceas'd, or with the Bones that were left unconſum'd if the Body was burnt; but the *Europeans* finding them to uſe this Cuſtom, and thinking that the Gold would be of more uſe to the Living than the Dead, they plunder'd them of it, and converted it to their own Uſe. If this was a *Dutch* Invention, it was one of the eaſieſt Plunders they met with, becauſe they met with no Reſiſtance from the Poſſeſſor, nor had they occaſion to maſſacree him in cold Blood to oblige him to ſurrender.

The *Jentoes* do not affect magnificent Tombs as the *Moors* do; who do not burn but bury their Dead in Vaults, ſo high that one may ſit upright in it; they are as ſtrict in making their Graves North and South as we in making ours Eaſt and Weſt; the Relations of the Deceas'd hold a Feſtival for ſeveral Days after the Burial, beſides annually reſorting to the Tomb to pay their Reſpects to the Memory of their deceas'd Friend. The *Mahometans* are very extravagant in adorning and beautifying the Tombs of the Deceas'd and publick Burying-Places; they encloſe large Fields, and convert them into fine Gardens or Groves, probably imagining that the Soul hovers about the Place where the Body is depoſited; and however ridiculous ſuch an Opinion appears at firſt hearing of it, yet the Vulgar in moſt Countries ſeem to be of an Opinion not much differing from this; for what is more common in *England* than for Nurſes or grown Perſons to affright the Children with dreadful Notions of Spirits and Apparitions, which they imagine frequent the Burying Places, which is now our Churches and Church Yards; though it is obſerved that neither *Pagans* nor *Mahometans* make Burying-Places of their Temples, nor (as the Learned tell us) did the Primitive Chriſtians practiſe it, that Cuſtom being firſt introduc'd amongſt Chriſtians by their building Churches over the Graves of their Primitive Martyrs, and others, being willing to be depoſited as near theſe holy Men as poſſible, were deſirous to be buried in the Churches that were built over them; but the Churches not being able to contain all that dy'd, others, for the ſame Reaſon, were willing to be buried in the Ground that was as near the Church and the Holy Martyr as poſſible, and hence gradually aroſe the Cuſtom of burying in Churches and Church-Yards now ſo frequently practiſed.

THE

THE DESCRIPTION OF THE KINGDOMS OF *Pegu, Ava, Arracan, Tipra, Acham,* and *Boutan.*

BEFORE we proceed further to the Weſtward, to treat of *Perſia* and *Arabia*, &c. it is proper for us to return to where we broke off, when we paſs'd over to the *Oriental Iſlands*; and as *Siam* was the laſt treated of upon that Continent, we ſhall go on to deſcribe the above-mention'd Kingdoms of *Pegu*, *Ava*, *Arracan*, and *Tipra*; which being now all reduced under the Power of the King of *Ava*, and their ſeveral Manners, Cuſtoms, and Religion being nearly the ſame, it is needleſs to treat of them ſeparately, but ſhall include them all under the Name of the Kingdom of *Ava*.

Ava. THIS Kingdom thus underſtood, is bounded on the North by *Aſem* or *Acham*, and on the Eaſt by *Siam* and *China*, and on the Weſt and South by the Bay and Country of *Bengall*; it extends from about ſixteen to twenty ſeven of North Latitude; ſo that from North to South, which is much the longeſt Dimenſions, it is about ſix hundred and ſixty Miles, and the Breadth from Eaſt to Weſt between three and four hundred Miles.

Rivers. THE chief Rivers in this Country are, 1. *Capoumo*, one Source of which is in the *Chamia Lake*, and in its Courſe from thence meeting with other Branches that proceed from other Heads, as the Rivers *Aſa* and *Ava*, by ſome called *Menan*, it falls into *Pegu River* a little below *Pegu*, and into the Sea or Gulf of *Bengall* at *Martaban*. 2. The *Arracan*, which falls into the Gulf of *Bengall*, near a Town of the ſame Name with the River. 3. The *Pegu* River riſes about Latitude twenty two North, and running about full South to *Pegu*, meets the *Ava* or *Menan*, and falls into the Sea at *Martaban*, as above obſerved.

Chief Towns. CHIEF Towns are, 1. *Pegu*; it is ſituate in about Latitude ſeventeen Degrees North, and on the Eaſt Side of the River *Pegu*; it has been ſo improv'd ſince it was firſt built, that it is by ſome diſtinguiſh'd into the New and Old City, which are ſo far from being intermix'd or confuſed together, that they are ſeparated by a Wall and a Ditch; it is almoſt in Form of a Square, and is defended by a Wall and a Moat, and has five Gates on every Side. The Court, together with the People of Faſhion or Quality, inhabit the New City; whoſe Streets are ſtrait, and wide enough for fifteen Men to ride a-breaſt; they have Trees before their Houſes for Shade, as in other *Indian* Towns and hot Countries before deſcribed. The Palace is in the middle of the New city; it is ſtrongly fortified with Walls and Towers like a Caſtle, and is reckon'd by our Travellers a very magnificent Building.

Ava. THE next Capital is *Ava*; it is to the Eaſtward of *Arracan* upon the River *Ava* or *Menan*, before or above its meeting with the River *Capoumo*. The Town of *Arracan* ſtands (as before obſerved) near the Confluence of the River *Arracan* into the Gulf of *Bengall*, in the twenty firſt Degree of North Latitude. *Tipra* is the Capital of the Province of the the ſame Name, and is in about twenty four Degrees of North Latitude South-Weſt from *Chamai Lake*.

THERE are other Towns of Note that are not Capitals of Provinces, as *Prom* and *Mero*, both on the Eaſt Side of the River *Ava* or *Menan*, and after (or to the Southward of) its meeting with the River *Capoumo*; *Prom* is in about Latitude Eighteen, and *Mero* in about Latitude Seventeen; but as we do not find them to be Places of any great Trade or Concourſe, the Map will beſt diſcover their Situation.

THIS Country lying partly under the Tropick, or within it, and the Courſe of the Rivers being moſtly to the Southward, the Rains have the ſame Effect here, both in overflowing the Rivers, and in rendring the Country fruitful, as in *Bengall* and *Siam*, and therefore ſhall not repeat any thing of it here, but refer the Reader to the foregoing Account of thoſe Countries.

Monſoons. THIS Country being contiguous to *Siam*, and the Monſoons and Seaſons being much the ſame, we ſhall, to avoid filling up room with Repetitions, refer the Reader to Chap. I. of the Hiſtory of that Kingdom; and for their Manner of Building, ſee Chap. II. of the ſame; and laſtly for their Genius, Temper, their Habit, Food, Entertainment, and Ceremonies; alſo their Husbandry, Product, their Manner of making War, their Learning and Religion, ſee the reſpective Chapters in our Account of the Kingdom of *Siam*, and they ſo exactly agree with the ſame Articles in the Inhabitants of *Pegu*, *Ava*, *Arracan*, and *Tipra*, that to give any further Account of them would be but to write the ſame Thing over again; only our Sailors take notice in a particular Manner of the Complaiſance of their Women, who they ſay will contract with them for as long or as ſhort a Time as they pleaſe, and during that Time behave with the utmoſt Faithfulneſs

Faithfulneſs to their contracted Husband, and it is look'd upon ſo lawful, as well as cuſtomary to do ſo, that when the Men come away the Women return home, not having the leaſt Reproach, or being receiv'd with any Shyneſs by their Friends at their return. And in this the Women of *Pegu* differ very much from thoſe of *Siam*; who are not only faithful after Marriage, but generally modeſt and reſerv'd when Maids, only if they do take liberty to be familiar with a Man, they chuſe a white one rather than otherwiſe, it not being deem'd ſo great a Crime to conceive by a white Man, becauſe they hope thereby by degrees to mend the Complexion; for even at *Siam* they admire the white Complexion moſt; (*ſee Chap.* VIII. *of the Kingdom of* Siam,) but the Women of *Pegu* that live here at *Siam* proſtitute themſelves, and are as faithful to their Contracts as in their own Country.

THE *Engliſh* who live at Fort St. *George*, drive a great Trade to *Pegu* and *Arracan* for Rubies, Sapphires, Amethiſts, and other precious Stones, and find a conſiderable Advantage in it, as alſo in dealing here for Skins and Furs, another great Branch of their Trade. Precious Stones.

Acham and *Boutan* lie both to the Northward of the Kingdoms or Provinces hitherto mention'd. The former, viz. *Acham*, is bounded on the North by *Boutan*, on the Eaſt by *China*, alſo by *Ava* on the South, and by *Patan* on the Weſt. But *Boutan* lies to the Northward of *Acham*, and has *China* on the Eaſt, *Tartary* on the North, *Great Tibet* and Part of the Mogul's Dominions on the Weſt, and *Acham* on the South; but how far *Boutan* extends to the Northward, our Authentick Geography has not yet determin'd; for as this Part of the Country is ſo woody and mountainous that it is ſcarce paſſable, it cannot be expected to be very populous, nor to afford any thing of Trade, Product or Manufacture worth a particular Notice. *Acham* and *Boutan*.

THE DESCRIPTION OF THE Iſland of *CEYLONE.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation and Extent of the Iſland of Ceylone, *with the Names and Diviſions of its reſpective Provinces; of the Springs and Rivers, the Winds, Monſoons, Harbours,* &c.

Situation. THE greateſt Dimenſion of this Iſland, which is from North to South, is about two hundred and forty Miles, it being comprehended between the ſixth and tenth Degrees of North Latitude, and ſcarce two hundred Miles in Breadth from Eaſt to Weſt: It is not far from a round Form, except a Peninſula at the North End of it, which makes the *Dutch* ſay it is rather like a *Weſtphalia* Ham; the Middle of it lies about Eaſt from Cape *Comorin*, the Southermoſt Part of *India*; and the Northermoſt Point of it is ſeparated from the main Continent of *India*, by a Channel between forty and fifty Miles broad.

Cinnamon. THIS is one of the beſt Acquiſitions the *Dutch* have in *India*, there being no Place in the *Indies*, nor in the World, that produces the right true Cinnamon but this Iſland only, or, however, in any Quantity, to furniſh a Trade, and the Plantations are wholly in the Power of the *Dutch*, who have drove the King up into the Mountains and deprived him of all Commerce and Correſpondence with the reſt of the World, and it is ſaid, that they have ſince made him a Priſoner.

Provinces. THE Inland Provinces are, 1. *Nourecalava*, towards the North Part of the Iſland; it is divided into five leſſer Diſtricts. 2. *Hohourly*, which lies to the Weſtward, and is ſubdivided into ſeven Counties. 3. To the Eaſtward of that lies *Mautaly*, containing three Counties. 4. Farther Eaſt is *Tamaquod*; and 5. *Bintana*. 6. *Vellas*; and 7. *Panao*, all diſtinct Juriſdictions; and to the Southward of theſe is, 8. *Ouvah*, which is divided into three Diſtricts. To the Weſtward of *Ouvah* lies the particular Diſtricts of *Wallaponahoy*, *Goddaponahoy*, *Ponaipot*, *Hevoyhattay*, *Cottemul*, *Horſepot*, *Yallanwa*, and *Timponahoy*; and farther Weſt is *Oudipollat*, *Doluſbang*, and *Hotteracourly*; and the fartheſt Weſt of any of them is *Timcourly*; all theſe, except the firſt, ſecond, fourth, and ſixth above-mentioned, and *Hotteracourly*, lie upon fruitful Hills, well water'd with Springs, and are called *Conde Uda*, which ſignifies Tops of the Mountains; and hence the King (I ſuppoſe ſince his Advancement to that elevated Ground, by the Benefit of *Dutch* Favours) is call'd King of *Conde Uda*; but his proper Title takes its Name from his Country, as other Kings do, and is *King of* Ceylone.

Capital Cities. THERE are five Cities reckon'd Capitals; Firſt *Candy*, which is ſituate about the Middle of the Iſland, upon the River *Mavillagonga*, and in the Province of *Yattanour*; this was the Reſidence of moſt of their Kings, and the King of *Ceylone* was ſometimes call'd King of *Candy*, till the *Portugueſe* burnt it, and the King finding it ſo much expoſed to the Attacks of Foreigners, remov'd the Royal Seat. 2. *Nellembyneur*, which lies to the Southward of *Candy*, in the Province of *Oudipollat*. 3. *Allontneur*, North Eaſt from *Candy*; the River *Mavillagonga*, upon whoſe Bank *Candy* ſtands, runs through *Allontneur*. 4. *Badoula*, between ſixty and eighty Miles North Eaſt from *Candy*. 5. *Digligyneur*, between *Candy* and *Badoula*, in the Province of *Ouvah*, in the moſt inacceſſible Part of the Mountains; this is the Royal Seat, and here is the Palace, ſince the *Portugueſe* burnt his Capital of *Candy*, and the *Dutch* drove him into the Mountains for Shelter from their Fury; but more of this in Chap. V. when we come to ſpeak of the Prince's Court, &c.

Coaſt. THE *Dutch* has chiefly the Command of the Coaſt. The chief of all the *Dutch* Settlements (which was once ſo to the *Portugueſe*) is *Columbo*; it lies on the South Weſt Part of the Iſland, in about ſeven Degrees of Latitude. The *Portugueſe* fortified this and ſeveral other Places upon the Coaſt about the Year 1520, and having made themſelves Lords of ſeveral of the beſt Harbours along the Coaſt, their Ambition did not terminate there, but they begun to conceit themſelves to be Kings of all the Iſland, and diſpute the Sovereignty with the King of *Candy* himſelf. The crafty *Dutch*, glad of this Irruption, offer'd their Aſſiſtance to him againſt the *Portugueſe*, not doubting, but that if they, by his Help, could expel the *Portugueſe*, they could uſe him as they pleas'd when the *Portugueſe* were gone. This was the Opportunity the cunning *Dutch* wanted, and it happen'd according to their Scheme, for the joint Forces of the King of *Candy* and the *Dutch*, took *Columbo* from the *Portugueſe* in the Year 1656, and after that ſeveral other of the beſt Towns along the Coaſt, and as faſt as they drove the *Portugueſe* out, the *Dutch* took Poſſeſſion for their dear Ally the King of *Candy*, as he imagined, but they kept all that they had got in Poſſeſſion, without allowing him any Share of the

Dutch Contrivance.

Plunder,

Plunder; and here the poor King of *Candy* jump'd out of the Frying-pan into the Fire; for whereas before the *Portugueſe* would not ſuffer the King to ſell his Cinnamon to any but themſelves, the generous *Dutch* redreſs'd his Grievance, for they would not allow him any to ſell, for they deprived him of the Cinnamon itſelf. This, and their keeping *Columbo*, and other Places, in Poſſeſſion, which he had help'd them to take from the *Portugueſe*, did exaſperate him, but he found no effectual Way to reſent it, only by refuſing to receive an Ambaſſador from the *Dutch* for ſome Years afterwards.

The next conſiderable Fort on the Weſt Side of the Iſland, and eight Leagues to the Northward of *Columbo*, is *Negumbo*: This the *Dutch* have had the Poſſeſſion of ever ſince the Year 1644. *Negumbo.*

But the beſt Harbour in the Iſland, except *Columbo*, is *Chilao*, twenty Miles to the Northward of *Negumbo*; and ſixteen Miles further North is the Iſland of *Calpetyn*, between *Ceylone* and the main Continent of *India*; it is about thirty Miles long, and three broad; and about forty or fifty Miles to the Northward of that, on the ſame Coaſt, is the Iſland of *Manar*, which the *Dutch* took from the *Portugueſe* about two Years after they had taken *Columbo*. *Chilao*

On the Northermoſt Part of the Iſland is the Peninſula call'd the *Kingdom of Jaffanapatan*; and between that and the Iſland *Manar*, lies ſeveral ſmall Iſlands, which are all in the Poſſeſſion of the *Dutch*, and by them called by the Names of ſome of the Iſlands and Places of their own Country, as *Delft*, *Middleburg*, *Leyden*, *Amſterdam*, *Enkheuſen*, and *Hoorn*. This Peninſula and theſe *Dutch* Iſlands contain one hundred and fifty nine Villages, and ſome great Towns. The Capital bears the Name of the Kingdom of *Jaffanapatan*; this was likewiſe taken by the *Dutch* in their Inundation over *Ceylone* (if I may ſo call it) in the Years 1656, 57, and 58; it is regularly fortified, and is a ſtrong Place. The Northermoſt Point of this Peninſula, and of the whole Iſland, is called *Punta das Pedras*, or the rocky Point. *Jaffana-patan.*

About fourſcore Miles to the Southward of *Punta das Pedras*, and on the Eaſt Coaſt of *Ceylone*, is *Trinkamale*; and about fifty Miles to the Southward of that, upon the ſame Coaſt, is *Battacalao*, now alſo in Poſſeſſion of the *Dutch*; alſo on the South Part of the Iſland they have a Fortification; and, in ſhort, the whole Iſland is ſurrounded with their Forts, as if it all, or all the Coaſt at leaſt, was their own.

There are no navigable Rivers, though there are ſeveral that riſe up in the Mountains, and in their Paſſage water the Country: but their Courſe is ſo rapid and full of Rocks, that they rather tumble into the Sea than glide to it, to receive Ships into the Country. The largeſt is *Mavillagonga*; it riſes in *Adam's Mount*, and running North Eaſt by *Candy*, and through *Allontneur*, it falls into the Sea at *Trinkamale*.

The Monſoons, and wet and dry Seaſons, are the ſame here as on the Continent of *India*, and with the ſame Sort of Variation; for as the Rains come on ſooner on the Coaſt of *Malabar*, or Weſt Coaſt of *India*, than on the Eaſt Coaſt, or *Cormandel*, ſo they come ſooner on the Weſt Coaſt of *Ceylone* than on the Eaſt Coaſt, and the Reaſon of both ſeems to be the ſame, for as during all the rainy Seaſon the Wind is South Weſt, or very near it, the Coaſt of *Malabar* muſt of Courſe receive it before it can come to the Eaſt Coaſt, or *Cormandel*; and the ſame Reaſon holds good for their coming ſooner upon the Weſt than upon the Eaſt Coaſt of *Ceylone*; and ſome are of Opinion, that the Mountains of *Gate*, a high Ridge of Mountains running up the Middle of *India* between *Malabar* and *Cormandel*, retards the Motion of the Wind and Rains; and the ſame Effect they impute to a Ridge of Mountains that ſeparate the Eaſt from the Weſt Part of *Ceylone*; and however weak it may be, to imagine that theſe Mountains can retard the Paſſage of the Wind and Rain to the Eaſtward, becauſe the Rain (that doth not fall amongſt them) muſt fly over them, and not be ſubject to their Interruption, but purſue a horizontal Motion, as if there were no Mountains at all, yet it is certain that the Rain coming from any Point of the Compaſs will require a Time to paſs to any Place towards the oppoſite Point, as we daily obſerve, if a Shower approaches us from any Point of the Compaſs, we can ſee it fall at ſome Diſtance from us, and on that Point from whence it comes ſome Time before it reaches us, in Proportion to the Diſtance it is from us when we firſt ſee it; and hence it is evident that the firſt of the rainy Seaſons muſt require a conſiderable Time to paſs over ſuch a large Tract of Land as the main Continent of *India*, and muſt be upon the Weathermoſt Coaſt ſome conſiderable Time before it reaches the other. Monſoons and Seaſons.

The Northern Parts of this Iſland are ſubject to great Droughts, and the Affliction is the greater becauſe Springs or Rivers are very ſcarce in that Part of the Iſland, and what Water they have is from the Southern Part of the Iſland; and this Inconvenience renders the Kingdom of *Jaffanapatan*, and all the North Part of the Iſland, very ſickly, but the reſt of the Country is eſteem'd very healthful. Droughts

CHAP. II.

Of their Towns, Fortifications, and other Buildings; with their Furniture, the Stature, Complexion, and Habits of the Natives; alſo of their Food, Feſtivals, Diverſions, and Ceremonies, with their Carriages, and Manner of Travelling.

Their Towns, if we may ſo call them, are only irregular Numbers of Buildings promiſcuouſly placed, without any regard to regular Streets, but every Man encloſes a Spot of Ground according to his Ability, Neceſſity, or other Circumſtances, with a Bank or Pale, and twenty or thirty, or more or leſs, of theſe Enclo-ſures, being near together, is what may be called a Town. Towns.

Their Buildings are mean, low, thatch'd Cottages, with one or two Ground-Rooms, but few or no Chambers or upper Rooms; the Sides inſtead Houſes.

instead of Walls, are splinter'd with Ratan or Cane, which they sometimes cover or daub with Clay, and sometimes not; but if they do they are not allow'd to white-wash them, that being a Privilege which the King reserves to himself. The better Sort have a Square within their Houses, and as many Rooms about it (like so many Piazza's about any other Square,) as there are Persons in the Family; these Rooms are parted with Banks of Earth about a Yard high. They have no Chimnies, but dress their Meat in a Yard or Corner of a Room.

Furniture. THEIR Furniture is a Matt, some few Stools, but no Chairs with Backs to them to lean against, (that being prohibited as too great an Indulgence for the Vulgar,) China Plates, and Earthen and Brazen Vessels to hold Water and dress Victuals in; and the Master has a Bed, which, instead of Cords, has small Ratan or Cane wove to support what is upon it; but the Women and Children lie upon Matts, and cover themselves with the Cloaths they wear in the Day Time.

Fortifications. THE Mountains or inland Country is so well defended that it needs no Fortification, for which Way soever you approach that Part of the Country, it must be ascending the Mountains, which are vastly high, and cover'd with thick Woods, altogether unpassable, except by one narrow Path, which is fenced at proper Distances, and by the help of that may be defended by a very few Centinels, which are placed there to keep the Passes Night and Day.

Genius and Temper. THE original Inhabitants of *Ceylone* and their Descendants, are call'd *Cynglasses*; who are Men of quick Parts, Courageous and yet Complaisant, even-temper'd, not soon provok'd, but easily reconciled, temperate, but nice in Diet, neat in their Dress, and not indulgent in their Sleep, and yet not very active in Business; they do not regard their Promise, but are great Liars; and so superstitious and inclined to believe Omens, that if they see a white Man or a great-belly'd Woman at their first going out in the Morning, they promise themselves good Success that Day; Sneezing is an ill Omen, and there is a certain little Animal like a Lizard, which if they hear they will not proceed in what they are going about, they look upon it to be so unfortunate.

Stature, Complexion, &c. THEY are well-shap'd, middle Stature, long black Hair, dark Complexion, and black Eyes, as other *Indians* have, and in other Respects differ not much from them, as being an Island so nearly adjacent.

Food. IN this Island, as in other Parts of *India*, their chief Food is Rice, or, with those that can afford it, some savoury Soup of Flesh or Fish to relish it; the better sort indeed have variety of Dishes at the Table, but they consist mostly of Soup or Herbs, but seldom above two of Flesh or Fish, of which they eat sparingly. The Meat is cut in little Pieces and laid by their Rice. The better Sort have Brass and China Plates to eat upon, but the poor Sort make a shift with Leaves for the same Purpose.

Drink. FOR their Liquids they have Ladles and Spoons made of the Cocoa-Nut Shell, and their usual Drink is Water; they have no Wine or Beer, and but little Arrack. When they drink Water, they hold the Cruise or Bottle over their Mouths, and pour it in as we do in pouring into a Pot. The Poor think they are well provided if they have Rice and Salt in the House, and can make a good Meal of Sallad relish'd with Juice of Lemon instead of Vinegar. They are forbid to eat Beef, and had rather sell their Pork and Fowls to Foreigners than be forced to eat them themselves, which they would think a Hardship. The Wife dresses the Victuals, and waits upon her Husband till he has done eating, and then she and her Children sit down, and satisfy themselves with what he leaves.

Habit of Men. AMONGST the genteeler Sort the young Men wear their Hair long, and comb it back, or tie it up; they let their Beards grow long; they wear a Waistcoat of blew or white Calicoe, and a Piece of the same wrapp'd about their Middle, with a Sash over it, in which they stick their Knife; they also wear a Hanger. They walk with a Cane, which has sometimes a Tuck in it; and have a Boy to wait on them with a Bag, in which he carries their Betel, Arek-Nut, and such Trinkets. The poorest Sort have only a Piece of Calicoe about their Middle, which comes down to their Knees.

Women's Habit. THE Women have their Hair comb'd back, and oil it with Cocoa-Nut Oil to make it shine; the better Sort wear Waistcoats of flower'd Calicoe close to their Bodies, through which their Shape appears; they wrap a piece of Calicoe about their Middle, which reaches down to their Knees, or longer or shorter according to their Quality; they make great Holes in their Ears, to hang their Jewels at, and seem to be at some pains to stretch their Ears downwards; they wear Necklaces and Bracelets, and abundance of Rings upon their Fingers and Toes; they wear a Girdle or two of Silver Wire and Plate about their Waist, and when they go out they throw a Piece of Silk over their Heads, as our Women do their Hoods.

Visits and Salutations. THEY are very condescending to their Inferiors, and obliging to all, conversing with freedom and familiarity; when they salute their Equals, they hold out both Hands with the Palms upwards, and bow the Body; but when a Superior salutes one of a lower Rank, he holds out but one Hand, or sometimes neither, but only nods his Head. The Women salute by clapping the Palms of their Hands together, and carrying them to their Foreheads. When Relations visit, they never talk much, but the Visitors commonly carry Provisions and Sweetmeats along with them to their Friend's House, and if they stay longer than one Day, they fall to work to assist the Master in his Business, for the People are generally poor, and not able to sustain a long Entertainment, except the Visitor do some Work to help to support the Charge.

Carriage and Roads. THE *Cynglasses* or Natives of *Ceylone* have no Wheel Carriages, for if they had, the Country is so woody and mountainous, and the Roads so narrow, that they could not make use of them, for in some of the Roads in the Mountains two Men can scarce go a-breast; for the Narrowness of the Roads is the greatest Security that the King has against the Insults of the *Dutch*: And for want of Carriages the greater Sort of People have Slaves to carry their Baggage, but the common People carry theirs themselves; for there were no Horses in the Country till the *Portuguese* brought them, and those that they now have, the King will neither permit his Subjects nor Foreigners to ride upon in his Country. They have Oxen with Bunches on their Backs, as on the main Continent of *India*, which serve for Carriage; and when the King and the Court move, they have Elephants as well Oxen to carry their Baggage.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Gives an Account of their Trade, Manufacture, and Husbandry; alſo of their Plants, Animals, and Minerals.

Cinnamon.

THERE is no Nation in the World produces ſuch Quantities of the beſt Cinnamon as the Iſland of *Ceylone*; which is ſo good and in ſuch Quantities, that the *Egyptians*, *Arabians*, *Perſians*, and indeed all the Eaſtern Country People traded thither for it. Thoſe Eaſtern People being here when the *Portugueſe* attempted to ſettle here, oppoſed and would not ſuffer them to eſtabliſh any Factories here, becauſe themſelves had ſo long enjoy'd the Benefit of the Cinnamon Trade in tranſporting it to *Europe*; but the *Portugueſe* grew too ſtrong for the *Moors*, and were not ſatisfied with barely participating of the Trade, but attempted to engroſs it all to themſelves, that they might keep it up to their own Price; and in order to this in all their Treaties with the King of *Ceylone* they endeavour'd to prevail upon him to confine his Cinnamon Trade to them, and ſell none of that Commodity to any other Nation or People whatſoever; and he, glad of ſuch Chaps as they were at firſt, agreed to confine himſelf to their Deſires; but when they found they had engroſs'd the Trade, they behaved with ſuch intolerable Inſolence, that the King, not able to bear with their Encroachments, invited the *Dutch* to his Aſſiſtance to expel them, as obſerv'd before in Chap. I. Indeed he juſtly made Repriſals upon them, by ſeizing the *Dutch* while they were gathering the Cinnamon, and they complain'd of it as an Abuſe, that he ſhould diſturb them in the Enjoyment of what they ſo notoriouſly robb'd him of; and he perſiſting in the Proſecution of his own Right, they made him tributary to them, or, as ſome ſay, and which is moſt likely, made him Priſoner. The *Dutch* are poſſeſs'd of the Pearl Fiſhery, which is between *Jaffanapatan* and *Madura*; but, like the Dog in the Manger, they neither ſuffer other People to partake of the Benefit of it, nor do themſelves practice it much of late Years.

Trade.

THERE are no publick Markets, but ſome Shops in the great Towns, where they ſell Rice, Calicoe, Braſs, Copper, and Earthen Veſſels, Swords, Knives, and Tools of Iron and Steel for Carpenters, and Husbandmen, *&c.* which they make very well; they alſo perform Goldſmiths Work, Painting, and Carving tolerable well, and make good Fire-arms. Their Calicoes are ſtrong, but not ſo fine as thoſe on the Coaſt of *Cormandel*.

Husbandry.

THEY have ſeveral Sorts of Rice, ſome of which are ſeven, ſome ſix, five, or four Months after they are ſown before they are ripe. That which is ſooneſt ripe is the beſt taſted, but yields the leaſt Increaſe; and as all the Sorts grow in the Water, the Inhabitants are at great Labour and Expence to level the Ground they intend for Rice, and making Repoſitories for Water at the Top of the Hill, and Channels to convey it to the Fields; as the Ground is very mountainous, and the Rice will grow no where but upon a Level, where the Water will ſtand; they cut the Sides of the Hills into Levels, one above another, like ſo many Stairs, of about ſix or eight Foot wide; they are obliged to proportion the Rice they ſow to the Quantity of Water they can ſave to moiſten it with, or if Water be ſcarce, they ſow that Sort that will be ſooneſt ripe, for if the Crop wants Water it dies. If they ſow the ſeveral Sorts of Rice, they ſow that firſt that requires the longeſt Time to ripen, and the reſt in proportion, that they may be all ripe together; for their Fields are common, and they turn their Cattle in after Harveſt, as in *England*, and if any of their Rice is much later in the Field than the reſt, they do not wait for it, but the Cattle eat it up, to prevent which as much as poſſible, when they are a little later than ordinary a ſowing their Rice, they ſow that Sort that will be ripe in the leaſt Time, that it may all be ready together.

IN the North Part of the Iſland they have few Springs, and therefore are forced to ſave Water in the Time of the wet Seaſons in great *Tanques* or Ponds, ſome of a Mile round; and thoſe they intend for the watering of their Rice they have upon the Tops of the Mountains or Hills, that they may, at the proper Seaſon after the Rice is ſown, let it down in Channels to the gradulated Levels above-mention'd to water it. Their Seed-time is about *July* or *Auguſt* a little after the wet Seaſon begins, that the Rains may naturally water the Ground with leſs Toil to the Husbandman. But where they have Plenty of Water, they ſow and reap almoſt at any time of the Year, the Seaſon not altering much for growing between the Tropicks, where the Sun is always ſo near them.

Plowing.

THEY plow their Lands twice; when they have plow'd it the firſt Time, they make up their Banks to keep the Water in that is to overflow the Ground, and alſo upon theſe Banks they go from one Field to another, when the Fields are a Foot or two deep in Water and Mud. At the ſecond Plowing the Ground is ſo ſoak'd with Water that it is as ſoft as wet Mortar, and when it is ſo ſoft they take great Pains to make it level, and ſmooth it with dragging a heavy Board over it, that the Water may ſoak it equally. They ſteep their Seed in Water before they ſow it, and lay it on a heap till it grows, and when it is ready they drain the Water off the Land, and ſow the Rice as we ſow Wheat, and let it continue without any Water till it is eight or nine Inches long; then the Women weed it, and tranſplant it from where it grows too rank to where it is thin; and then they let in the Water upon it again, and it grows in Water half a Foot or a Foot deep till it be ripe.

Rice, how it grows.

Threſhing.

THEY do not threſh their Corn, but tread it out with Oxen, always performing ſome Religious Ceremony before they begin, and apply to their Idols for a Bleſſing upon their Labour.

Other Grain.

BUT though Rice be their chief Grain, yet they have other Sorts of Grain to ſupply the want of it when it grows ſcarce; as *Coracan*, a Grain as ſmall as Muſtard-Seed, which they grind into Flour, and make Cakes of; as alſo is their *Tanna*; every Seed whereof that takes in the Ground ſhoots out four or five Stalks, with an Ear upon each, and they ſay multiplies a Thouſand for One; they only cut off the Ears when ripe, and carry it home; but it makes ſuch dry Food that they do not care to uſe it but when Rice is ſcarce.

Fruit.

THEY have plenty of Fruit, but they do not much regard it, except when green, to make Pickles or Soup, or to uſe with their Rice. They have great plenty of the Betel Nut, ſo often mention'd; alſo a Fruit call'd *Jack*, which grows upon Trees, round in Form, and as large as a Peck Loaf,

they gather them before they are ripe, and dreſs and eat them like Cabbage, or if they let them be ripe, they are very good to eat raw, and ſaving the Kernels (which are in Bigneſs, Colour, and Taſte like a Cheſnut,) they roaſt them in the Embers, and they are good Proviſion on a Journey. There is alſo a Fruit call'd a *Jambo*, almoſt like an Apple, and others like our Plumbs and Cherries; beſides Cocoa's, Pine-Apples, Mangoes, and the Fruits common to other Parts of *India*. They have Yams and other Roots and Herbs; not only thoſe peculiar to that Country, but Coleworts, Lettice, Roſemary, Sage, and abundance of *European* Herbs have been introduced and propagated there by the *Portugueſe* and *Dutch*.

Tree. The moſt remarkable Tree is the *Tallipot*, a ſtrait tall Tree; one Leaf whereof will cover fifteen or twenty Men, and keep them dry; they are round, and fold up like a Fan; they ſerve them as Umbrella's to ſhade them from the Sun; and they are ſo tough they can travel through the Woods with them; every common Soldier carries one to make his Tent of, to ſhelter him both from Rain and Heat; it bears a hard Fruit as big as a Nutmeg, the Inſide of which is like the Pith of Elder, and is ſometimes eaten like the Pith of the Sago-Tree, (*ſee Chap.* VIII. *of the* Oriental Iſlands,) or like it made into Bread; but it never bears this Fruit till the laſt Year, and then it dies.

Vallat. The *Reſſule* grows up ſtrait and tall as the Cocoa-Tree, and is alſo full of Pith. There grows out of the very Top of this Tree a Bud, which if it was ſuffer'd to grow would bear a round Fruit, but it is good for nothing but to plant again; and therefore they can apply the Tree to a better Uſe, by cutting that Bud, and binding about it Salt, Pepper, and other Ingredients, which hinders its Growth, and ſtagnates the riſing Sap in the Body of the Tree, from whence they draw it at the rate of three or four Gallons a Day from one Tree; it taſtes no ſtronger than Water, but by boiling it they extract a ſort of a Brown-Sugar, which they call *Jaggory*, which they can make finer or coarſer as they pleaſe. It renews its Leaves every Year, as other Trees do, till it comes to its full Growth, and then the ſame Leaves remain till it begins to decay, and when it caſts them, never any more grows upon it.

But the moſt valuable Tree in Iſland, and moſt profitable to the *Dutch*, who now poſſeſs all the Trade there, is the Cinnamon-Tree; of which take the following Account:

Cinnamon Tree. This Tree is as common in the South-Weſt Parts of *Ceylone*, near *Columbo*, as any Tree in the Wood, though but few of them are found in the North Part of the Iſland. It is of a middle Size, and not very large; it has a Leaf in Colour, Shape, and Thickneſs like that of a Lawrel; when the Leaves firſt ſprout out they are as red as Scarlet, and if rubb'd between the Fingers, ſmells like a Clove. It bears a Fruit like an Acorn, which is ripe about *September*, but the Fruit neither taſtes nor ſmells like the Bark; yet boiling the Fruit in Water, an Oil will ſwim on the Top, which has a very agreeable Smell, and when it is cold it is white and hard like Tallow; they ſometimes uſe it as an Ointment for Aches and Pains; but it is ſo common, and being a combuſtible Liquid when melted, they burn it in their Lamps.

This Tree has two, or ſome ſay three Barks, however the outermoſt but one is the Cinnamon, the beſt of which are peel'd off the Trees of a middling Growth; the Way to come at the Cinnamon is, by firſt ſtripping off the outſide Bark, and then they cut the next round the Tree at certain Diſtances with a pruning Knife, like ſo many Hoops about the Tree; theſe again they cut croſs, or up and down the Tree at half an Inch or an Inch diſtance, and ſo peel off the Pieces, and lay them in the Sun to dry, which makes them roll and ſhrivel up together, as we ſee them when they come to *England*. One would think that pulling off the outſide Bark, and afterwards the next for Cinnamon, would be ſufficient to kill the Tree, but whether it does or no it matters not; for there are ſuch Plenty of them, and they grow ſo faſt, that there is continually enough in this Iſland to furniſh a perpetual Supply for the whole World.

The Body of the Tree after the Bark is off is white, as moſt other Trees are, and ſerves them for Building and other common Uſes of Wood, but has no Fragrancy either in the Smell or Taſte, as the inner Bark or Cinnamon has.

Mala. Cinnamon. There are alſo Cinnamon Trees upon the *Malabar Coaſt*, but far ſhort of the *Ceylone* Cinnamon, though its Bark is ſo like it in Colour and Taſte that it is not very eaſily diſtinguiſh'd, eſpecially by the Sight, and ſome think if it were cultivated, and taken care of, it would not be much, if at all, inferior to the *Ceylone* Cinnamon. But this being but a bare Conjecture, and never confirm'd by the Experience of the *Engliſh* upon the *Malabar Coaſt*, who doubtleſs have uſed Endeavours to make the beſt of it, we muſt ſuſpend our Belief, not as to there being Cinnamon on that Coaſt, but as to its coming near the *Ceylone* Cinnamon for Goodneſs.

It is a Miſtake as common as the Report, that Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Mace, and Cloves grow all upon one Tree; affirming that the Nutmeg is the Fruit, the Clove grows upon the End of the Nutmeg, as the decay'd Flower upon the end of the Apple or other Fruit, the Mace is the Huſk of the Nutmeg, and that the Cinnamon is the Bark of the ſame Tree; whereas they neither grow all upon one Tree, nor all in any one Country, nor within ſome thouſands of Miles of one another. Nutmegs grow only in the *Banda Iſlands*, (*ſee their Growing, Chap* XIII. *of the* Oriental Iſlands.) Cloves grow only in the *Moluca's* and *Amboyna*, (*See their Growth in the ſame thirteenth Chapter,*) and the true Cinnamon only in *Ceylone*.

There are other Trees of leſs Note, as the *Orula* and the *Downckaia*; which latter is in great Eſteem by the Idolaters, becauſe they believe their God *Buddou*, when he was upon Earth, uſed to refreſh himſelf under the Branches of it; under it therefore they ſet up their Altars and Images, and place a Number of lighted Lamps, as other *Indians* do, in or before their Places of Worſhip.

Animals. They have Buffaloes, Bears, and other Beaſts and Animals common to other *Indian* Countries. But Elephants are ſo very numerous in this Country, that they do great Damage by breaking down the Trees, and trampling down the Corn: The only Way that People have to prevent the Damage, is by great Noiſe and Fires to frighten them away. There are abundance of Monkeys, ſome with black Faces and white Beards, and ſome with white Bodies, but neither of theſe do much harm. But there are others that delight in Miſchief, and not only eat great Quantities of Corn, but carry abundance away in their Hands, and will plunder their Gardens or what they can come at; theſe have white Faces and long Hair on their Heads, like Men, but they have no Beards. There are Alligators, Serpents, and ſome Snakes, ſo venomous, that their Cattle being bit by them are often found dead. Here are Hens, Ducks, Geeſe, Woodcocks, and Partridges; but the King prohibits the keeping of theſe domeſtick Fowls, preſerving that as a Prerogative to himſelf. They have great Plenty of Fiſh, both in the Rivers and Ponds; but in ſeveral Places the King denies the Subjects the Privilege of taking them, on pain of Death. And to this they impute the Tameneſs of the Fiſh, for they are ſo familiar, that they will ſwim after any Body to the Sides of the Pond to be fed.

Fruits

Leeches are ſo common here in the Fields and Woods, that Travellers cannot paſs along without having their Legs full of them; for they travel without Shoes orStockings; they ſuck till the Blood runs down: Thoſe that would avoid the Trouble of them, rub their Legs with Lemon and Salt; but ſometimes they ſuffer them to feed, for though it makes the Legs ſmart, they think it wholſom, they knowing of no other Way of Bleeding.

They have Plenty of Iron, and have the Art of manufacturing it it ſo well, that they can make tolerable good Steel. The Prince has abundance of Diamonds and Precious Stones; but it is ſuppoſed he had them in Exchange for Cinnamon in his Trade to *Golconda*; for it is reaſonable to ſuppoſe that if there were any Diamond Mines in *Ceylone*, the prying *Dutch* would have found them before now. Mines.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Language, Learning, and Books of the Cynglaſſes, *or* Ceyloneſe, *and alſo of their Modern Hiſtory; with a particular Account of ſome that were twenty Years Priſoners, and of the Return to* England *of thoſe that eſcaped at laſt.*

Language. Although the Main of the *Cynglaſſes* Language be peculiar to themſelves, yet they have ſome Words borrow'd from the *Malabars*; there is alſo in the Iſland a learned Language underſtood only by the *Bramins* or Prieſts, and in this Language is written all that pertains to the Rites and Ceremonies of their Religion. In their Addreſſes to their Superiors they are very complaiſant, and have ſuch diſtinguiſhable Titles both for Men and Women, according to their different Dignities, that Mr. *Knox* (one of the Priſoners mention'd in the Title of this Chapter,) tells us, that they can diſtinguiſh their Titles in their Addreſſes into ten or a dozen degrees of Dignity; and their Children are brought up with ſo much good Manners and Behaviour, that they are ſeldom guilty of that inadvertant Rudeneſs in their Addreſſes that the unpoliſh'd Youth amongſt the Vulgar in other Nations are frequently guilty of. The *Portugueſe* ſpeak their own Language, and by the Natives frequent Converſation with them, it has begun to prevail upon all the Sea-Coaſts in the Iſland.

Writing. Inſtead of Paper they uſe the Leaves of the Tallipot-Tree before-mention'd, which they cut into Slips of what Length and Breadth they require, and the Leaf will contain, and thereon write with a Steel Bodkin from the Left to the Right. Their firſt Way of teaching their Children to write is by making Letters in the Sand

Aſtrono- They have ſome tolerable Knowledge in Aſtronomy; they can make Almanacks, and in them tell the Age of the Moon, and foretel the Eclipſes. They alſo profeſs Aſtrology, and pretend to determine lucky and unlucky Days to begin any Journey or other Enterprize; but (which is the moſt groſs Abuſe of their pretended Art) they pretend to determine a Child's Fortune by its Birth, and the Poſitions and Configurations of the Planees at that Time; and if the *Wiſe Man* finds it deſtined to bad Fortune, they anticipate it by an immediate Deſtruction of the Infant. *If thoſe Aſtrologers are always right in their Predictions, and all that are born to bad Fortune be diſpatch'd before they are expos'd to the World, or come to Maturity, it would neceſſarily follow that all the living Inhabitants of* Ceylone *muſt needs be a happy and fortunate People, and yet we ſee that even the King himſelf was not exempted from the Vicciſſitudes of Fate, when the* Dutch *robb'd him of all his Trading Ports, and drove him into the Mountains. One would think this might be a Caution to them (though they are no Chriſtians,) to guard againſt the Impoſition of thoſe pretended Fortune-tellers, and yet we ſee ſome that profeſs to be Chriſtians drawn into a kind of a Belief of it.*

Time. They have Three hundred and ſixty five Days as ours is, and is alſo twelve Months, and theſe again are divided into Weeks. The firſt Day of each Week they always reckon fortunate for any Undertaking. Their Days (from Sun-riſe to Sunſet) are never much, if at all, more or leſs than twelve Hours in Places ſo near the Equinoctial; but they divide the Day and Night each into thirty Parts, call'd *Pays*. And, having no Clocks or Sun-Dials, they divide Time by a little Copper Diſh, with a ſmall Hole in the Bottom, and it is ſo contrived, that being ſet upon the Water to ſwim, the Water comes in at the ſmall Hole, and it juſt takes in as much in a *Pay*, or the thirteenth Part of a Day as will ſink it, and when it ſinks they immediately take it out, and ſet it on the Water again, to meaſure another *Pay*, &c.

Phyſick. They have no great Skill in Phyſick, any otherwiſe than what is known to almoſt every Body; they know of ſome Herbs, Barks of Trees, &c. in the Woods, with which they purge and vomit, as they find Occaſion; they have alſo Cures for Green Wounds, and even for the biting of Snakes if apply'd in Time; they have Antidotes againſt Poiſon. The moſt prevailing Diſtempers here are Agues, Fevers, Bloody-Flux, and Small-Pox They never bleed except with Leeches, as was hinted above, when treating of Animals in the third Chapter.

Hiſtory. Their Hiſtories conſiſt moſtly of Accounts of their (now) Deified Heroes, which they think are removed to Heaven, and do make the Objects of their Worſhip. Their Records are kept in the *Bramins* Language, and therefore the People are entirely ignorant of them, except ſo much as is communicated to them in Songs and Ballads, which they frequently ſing and repeat at their common Labour, and with ſuch a Grace and Tone, as makes Strangers believe they are Pſalms or Divine Songs.

Modern Hiſtory. But to come down to their Modern Hiſtory: The *Portugueſe* were the firſt *Europeans* that we hear of that diſcover'd this Iſland, which was about the Year 1505, but they did not ſettle a Trade and Factories here till about 1517, and about 1520 they built a Fort near *Columbo*, at which the King being alarm'd, laid Siege to it; but they being too ſtrongly fix'd for him to remove them, they came to a Treaty; which at firſt amounted no higher than that the King ſhould deliver them a certain Quantity of Cinnamon at a certain Price, both which were determin'd and agreed upon; but the *Portugueſe* encroach'd upon this Contract, and in a ſmall Time it amounted to that, that they would not ſuffer him to ſell any Cinnamon to any *European*

but themſelves; and indeed if they gave him a Market-price, both Parties were Gainers, for the *Portugueſe* engroſs'd all that advantageous Trade to themſelves, and the King had a ready Market for his Cinnamon; and this mutual Correſpondence continued many Years, till the *Portugueſe* growing rich, grew alſo inſolent; and then the *Dutch* General *Spilbergen* arriving on the Coaſt, the King entred into a Treaty with him for his Defence againſt the Inſults of the *Portugueſe*. This was tranſacted in the Year 1602.

But *Sebald de Weert*, the *Dutch* Admiral that was to aſſiſt the King againſt the *Portugueſe*, did, according to the wonted Generoſity of the *Dutch*, uſe the King more like a Slave than a Sovereign as far as lay in his Power, which ſo incens'd the *Ceyloneſe*, that they cut the *Dutch* Man to Pieces, which put an End to his Inſults for that Time; and the *Dutch* finding the Want of the Cinnamon Trade, feign'd a Submiſſion, by Letters in the Name of Prince *Maurice*, and the States of *Holland*, to propoſe an Alliance with the King of *Ceylone*; which Alliance, offenſive and defenſive, was concluded in the Year 1613; and therein the King obliged himſelf not to diſpoſe of his Cinnamon, Pearls, or Precious Stones to any *European* but the *Dutch* only, and allow'd them to build a Fort at *Trinquemale*; but when they had done that, the *Portugueſe* ſoon beat them out of it, and maintain'd their Poſſeſſion and Trade there till about the Year 1636. Whereupon the King invited the *Dutch* to his Aſſiſtance againſt the *Portugueſe*, which they hearing of, and expecting to be defeated, burnt the Capital City of *Candy*, and plunder'd it, but in their Retreat were attack'd by the King's Forces, and all cut to Pieces.

The Power and Intereſt of the *Portugueſe* thus weakening and decaying, the *Dutch* took the Advantage of it, and beſieged the Town and Caſtle of *Battacalao*, then in Poſſeſſion of the *Portugueſe*, and took it from them, and then renew'd their Treaty with the King; who was glad to treat with them almoſt upon any Terms to revenge himſelf, and get rid of the *Portugueſe*; and ſoon after this the *Dutch* took the Southermoſt Settlement in *Ceylone*, call'd *Point de Galle*, from the *Portugueſe*, and alſo the Town of *Caleture*; this was in the Year 1655; and they, jointly with the King's Forces, took *Columbo*, in the Year 1656; of which, and how ungratefully and unjuſtly they ſerv'd their dear Ally the King, we have already in the firſt Chapter given an Account.

The *Dutch* having thus plunder'd the King's Dominions, and drove him into the Mountains, as obſerved in the firſt Chapter above-mention'd, he was ſo exaſperated that he now invited the *Portugueſe* to his Aſſiſtance againſt the *Dutch*, ſo that he might now be call'd rather the Balance of Power, than abſolute Monarch in the Iſland; for between the two Parties, the *Portugueſe* and the *Dutch*, who were contending for what neither of them had any Right to, to whoſe Side ſoever the King took, was ſuppoſed to be the ſtrongeſt Party, and now he with the *Portugueſe*, though not ſtrong enough to extirpate the *Dutch*, yet they frequently ſally'd out upon their Cinnamon Gatherers, deſtroy'd and plunder'd them, and diſappointed the *Dutch* of the Stocks of Cinnamon that the Gatherers ſhould have brought down.

But the *Dutch*, who underſtood Flattery as well as Cruelty, and never fail'd to uſe which beſt ſerv'd their Turn, begun to court the King's Friendſhip again, ſending him rich Preſents, and abundance of Excuſes for their late Conduct; and when that would not do, they ſent Ambaſſadors to him, who try'd all means, both by Flattery and Threats, to bring him to a Reconciliation; but he remain'd as obdurate as they had been perfidious, and was ſo far from being prevail'd upon, that he detain'd their Ambaſſadors Priſoners, to ſhew his Reſentment of their former unjuſt Practices.

The firſt Ambaſſador that they ſent, being detain'd Priſoner ſeveral Years, at laſt engaged in the King's Service, thinking thereby to get an Opportunity to betray his Councils to the *Dutch*, which the King not preſently miſtruſting, preferr'd him to a Place of Truſt, which was what he wanted, and made ſome Progreſs in his Treachery, but was betray'd by a Letter ſent him from *Holland*, and intercepted by the King, in which they thank'd him for diſcovering to them a certain Enterprize that the King was about, upon which the King order'd him immediately to be put to Death.

The *French* obſerving the vaſt Advantage that accru'd from the Cinnamon Trade to the *Dutch*, and finding that there was no good Underſtanding between the King of *Ceylone* and them, they fitted out a Fleet of fourteen Sail, under the Command of Captain *De la Hay*; on board of which they ſent an Ambaſſador, with a full Power to ſettle a Treaty of Commerce between the two Kings of *France* and *Ceylone*; the Fleet arrived at *Trinquemale* in the Year 1673, and from thence three Gentlemen were diſpatch'd to the King to give him Notice of their Arrival. Theſe were very ſplendidly entertain'd at Court, and as Tokens of a kind Reception, were every one preſented with a Gold Chain, a Sword inlaid with Silver, and a Gun, and ſo diſmiſs'd to go down to their Fleet to give Account of what Treatment they had met with. The Fleet being bound to the Continent of *India*, the Ambaſſador with ſix Attendants went to Court, thinking to ſtay there till the Fleet return'd; the King continued ſo generous to them, that he not only ſent great Quantities of Proviſion aboard the Fleet, but aſſiſted the *French* in building a Fort at *Trinquemale*; thinking he had now met with an *European* Ally, who, with his own Forces, would be a ſufficient Defence againſt the Encroachments of the inſatiable *Dutch*. But whether the *French* Fleet were deſtroy'd by the *Dutch*, or whatever other Accident happen'd, Captain *Knox*, who was upon the Iſland from before the Time of their Arrival till a great many Years after they ſail'd, aſſures us that they never return'd, and the *Dutch*, to whom nothing came amiſs that they could catch, ſoon made themſelves Maſters of their new Fort.

French Ambaſſador's Ambition.

The Ambaſſador, as if he had forgot whoſe Country he was in, began to put on ſo many *French* Airs, that his Behaviour was reſented at Court, and inſtead of Friends, made them Enemies; for he, either ignorant of the Cuſtoms of the Court, or by an unguarded Ambition, reſolved to act in contempt of them, rode on Horſeback from *Trinquemale*, a Privilege the King never allows any Man; but that was wink'd at, and Orders ſent to meet him upon the Road, for him to remain there till a Houſe was provided in the City for his Entertainment; and when it was ready he had Notice given to come to the City, ſeveral Noblemen coming to meet him, and to aſſiſt in bringing his Preſent to the King; but notwithſtanding the former Affront in coming ſo near the City on Horſeback, he would not be diſſwaded from entring the City in the ſame State, and rode up by the Palace Gate, though it is reckon'd the higheſt Inſult to an Eaſtern Prince to approach his Gate without the moſt profound Reverence; however, no Notice was at that Time taken of it, but he went to his Houſe without Interruption, and was generouſly entertain'd with Proviſions ſent him from the King's Palace three times a Day.

When the Time appointed for his Audience was come, ſeveral of the Nobility and great Officers [illegible] waited on him to Court; and when he came there, and not having an immediate hearing, he began to ſtorm,

ſtorm, and notwithſtanding all the Repreſentations made to him, nothing could pacify him, but he would return to his own Houſe; to prevent which, and his thereby affronting the King, they placed Elephants in his Way to prevent his return; but his *French* Ambition being reſolute, he laid his Hand upon his Sword, and gave them to underſtand that he would not be interrupted by them; which Inſult being reported to the King, he order'd him and his Retinue to be ſeverely beaten, and laid in Irons, and though he ſoon releas'd the reſt, yet he kept the Ambaſſador in Chains ſix Months; his Attendants were ſuffer'd after their Releaſement to live every one in his own Houſe, and to follow their reſpective Buſineſs; but whether ever that imprudent *French* Ambaſſador was releas'd is uncertain, and the leſs probable becauſe their Fleet never return'd from the Coaſt of *Cormandel*, nor did they ever recover the Fort of *Trinquemale* from the *Dutch*.

Captain *Knox*.

THE Nature of Travelling in this Country, and their Uſage of Strangers, may pretty well be accounted for in the following Relation of Captain *Knox*; who ſail'd from the *Downs* in *January* 1657; and being in the Road of *Meſulapatan* in *November* 1659, they were ſo diſabled by a Storm that they were forced to go into the Harbour of *Trinquemale* to refit; where they were a little jealous of the Inhabitants at firſt, but finding a free Commerce with them, and that they ſupply'd them for their Money with what the Country afforded, they thought themſelves welcome and ſecure.

Engliſh Captain ſeiz'd.

THE King hearing that there was an *Engliſh* Ship in the Bay, ſent a Preſent to the Captain, with an offer to ſupply him with Proviſions; upon which Encouragement the Captain, with his Son and fifteen or ſixteen more, went aſhore, but they were all made Priſoners, and the Captain was commanded to order his Ship up the River; the Captain pretended to ſend two Men to his Chief Mate with that Order, but inſtead thereof order'd his Mate (by the ſame two Meſſengers) to take care of the Ship, and ſtand in his own and the Ship's Defence, let what would be the Conſequence.

THE Ship not being brought up the River according to the King's Orders, the Reaſon was enquired into, and the Captain alledged in his own Defence that his Men would not obey his Orders; whereupon the Captain was order'd to ſend his Son to the Chief Mate with the aforeſaid Command, to bring the Ship up the River. The Captain ſent his Son to the Chief Mate, but (inſtead of the King's Orders,) he commanded the Mate to take care of the Ship, and go to the Coaſt of *Cormandel*, and ſhift for themſelves, only deſiring his Son, who carried the Meſſage, to return to him again, which he did. And after a ſmall Time the Captain, his Son, and the Sailors were convey'd into the Mountains, or Kingdom of *Conde Uda*, and there every one quarter'd in a different Village, except the Captain and his Son, who reſided together, and had Victuals brought to them, ſuch as the Country afforded.

Captain *Knox* die.

BUT the Country being very ſickly, and infeſted with a Sort of an Epidemical Diſtemper, though of the Nature of an Ague and Fever, both the Captain and his Son fell ſick of the ſame; the old Gentleman dy'd, but his Son, being pretty well recover'd, wrapp'd him up in his Cloaths and the Matt he lay upon, and bury'd him by the Side of a Wood, near the Village of *Boudecoos-wat*, about the Middle of the Iſland.

THE reſt of the Captain's Crew that were ſingly lodg'd at ſeparate Houſes, were every one removed every Day, ſo that no one continued two Days in the ſame Houſe; though afterwards they had more Liberty, and were ſuffer'd to go from one Village to another; and indeed they might well enough allow them that Liberty, for they were ſo far from the Sea Side, and the narrow Paſſes of the Mountains ſo ſecurely guarded, that it was next to impoſſible that they ſhould eſcape; nor were they very uneaſy in their preſent Circumſtances, for their Allowance from the King was more than they could eat by one half, ſo that they could afford to ſell the other half to help to buy them Cloaths, and to this adding their own Induſtry in knitting of Caps, which Neceſſity, the Mother of Invention, put them upon learning, they began to be worth a little ready Money.

AS their Acquaintance and Intereſt increas'd, they gain'd ſtill more Privilege, and were permitted to live every one in a ſeparate Houſe of his own; and then ſome follow'd Husbandry, ſome diſtill'd Arrack; and ſo, whatever Goods they could find vent for, and had the proper Ingredients for making up, they had the Liberty to trade in, and to keep Geeſe, Hogs, and Poultry about them for their own private Uſe; till at laſt Captain *Knox*'s Crew were all ſent for to Court, where they found other *Engliſhmen*, who had been caſt away upon the Iſland, and were made Priſoners as well as themſelves.

BUT in the Year 1664, Sir *Edward Winter*, Governor of *Fort St. George*, ſent to the King of *Ceylone* to demand the Releaſe of the *Engliſh* Captives; but though the King promiſed it to the Governor, yet he conceal'd it from the Priſoners, and uſed all poſſible Means to induce them to engage in his Service, which they refuſed. And in the mean Time there happen'd a Rebellion at *Candy*, and the King's Palace was attack'd, and by this Combuſtion the *Engliſh* Priſoners were neglected, and they left almoſt ſtarving; but when the Rebellion was ſuppreſs'd, they were all reſtored to their former Allowance and Privileges; and ſome of them ſettled with ſo much Satisfaction, that they married and had Children; but Mr. *Knox* and his Companion kept ſingle, always meditating an Eſcape, and reſolved to make uſe of the firſt Opportunity that offer'd for that Purpoſe; and, rather to prevent Suſpicion of a Deſign to eſcape than to procure a Settlement, Mr. *Knox* purchas'd a Piece of Land, which ſo much rivetted the People and the Government in an Opinion of their Willingneſs to remain in the Country, that he and his Mate were now ſuffer'd to travel where they pleas'd, without any Suſpicion.

Set up Peddling.

AFTER this, to give a better Sanction to their pretence of travelling, they ſet up a kind of a Peddling Trade, buying Goods in one Part of the Country, and carrying them to another to ſell, hoping by this Means to ſlide down to the Sea-Coaſt and ſo make off; and knowing that the Paſſes towards the North were the leaſt guarded, they purchas'd a little Cargoe of what was moſt wanted there, and of light Carriage, as Tobacco, Pepper, Cutler's Ware, and the like; but they having diſpoſed of all their Stock before they got out of the Country of *Conde Uda*, or the Mountainous Country, to which the King is now reduc'd, they had no pretence of travelling further, and ſo to avoid Suſpicion, they were forced to return.

NINE or ten Times, by one Diſappointment or other, they were thus obliged to return; however, their frequent coming back gave the Government an entire Confidence in them. And all Suſpicion of running away being now quite wore off, they were reſolved once more to puſh for it, and directed their Courſe towards *Annarodgburrow*, a Town in the Northermoſt Part of the King of *Candy*'s Dominions, where they found a River, which, as they knew that all Rivers run into the Sea, and that very poſſibly there might be a Harbour at the Mouth of it, and perhaps ſome Shipping that might contribute to their Eſcape, they accordingly came down to the Sea, and it happen'd

happen'd to be the River *Molwat*, which falls into the Sea on the northweſt Part of the Iſland, near the Iſland and Port of *Manar*; where being come, they were kindly receiv'd by the *Dutch*, to whom it belongs, and who afterwards gave them their Paſſage to *Columbo*; where the *Dutch* Governor was very inquiſitive about the Forces and Policy of the King of *Candy*, in which having reſolv'd him as well as they could, they were ſent to *Batavia*, where meeting with a Fleet ſailing for *England*, they embark'd aboard, and after above twenty Years abſence, return'd once more to their Native Country. They arrive at home.

CHAP. V.

Of the Prince's Court, his Forces, Revenues, Laws, and Puniſhment; with their Coins, Weights, and Meaſures.

THE Palace of the King of *Candy*, or *Ceylone*, is contrived more for Security than Beauty; it is built in the moſt inacceſſible Part of the Mountains, the Place, or what may be call'd the Palace, is wall'd round; but the Rooms and Apartments are promiſcuouſly plac'd, being neither regular nor contiguous; the King's own Apartments are not diſtinguiſh'd, nor is it known in which Apartment he lies. He is ſo jealous of his own People, that his Guards immediately next to his Perſon are *Negroes* or *Coffres*, who are not only immediately about his Perſon, but he ſends them down as Spies at uncertain Times to watch if the Officers and Centinels be upon Duty.

Attendance. He is attended chiefly by beautiful young Boys, who are taken up and ſent to Court, as they do young Girls, which they pretend are to ſerve as Cooks to dreſs or to ſerve up his Victuals, but when they come there they ſerve as Concubines; the *Portugueſe* Women (Maids or Wives) are ſometimes ſent for upon the ſame Account, and thoſe immediately call'd in that he has preſent Occaſion for, and the reſt put up till call'd for.

Guards. He has a very numerous Guard, and in them both *Dutch* and *Portugueſe* Companies, under the Commanders of their reſpective Countries; they are obliged to aſſemble upon the leaſt Notice, which is often given when he has no Deſign of going abroad, to ſee in what readineſs they will be upon any Occaſion and ſo ſmall a Warning.

Addreſs. When a Subject comes into his Preſence, he falls three Times upon his Face, and then does not ſtand, but ſits upon his Legs, and gives him almoſt divine Titles, as, *May your Majeſty be a God*, &c. and to make the greater Diſparity between him and them, they call themſelves the Limbs of Dogs, or ſome contemptible Animals, as not worthy to approach him, and when they go out of his Preſence they creep backwards till they are out of Sight. No Courtier in waiting is allow'd to come near his Wife or any other Woman during that Time.

Prerogative. This King is abſolute, and acts without Reſtraint. All the Lands are holden of him, but by different Tenures; ſome hold for ſo much Service in the War, ſome for ſuch a Time of Labour, ſome give him ſuch a Quantity of the Product or Manufacture of their Land in lieu of Rent; ſome Villages and Land he retains entirely in his own Poſſeſſion, allowing the Husbandman that he employs a yearly Stipend for cultivating and improving them, and theſe may properly be call'd his own Demains; but ſome Lands are hereditary, and deſcend in the ſame Line, only paying the Tax or Acknowledgment impoſed, as in *England* and other Places.

Revenue. They that hold their Land immediately of the King, bring their Rent to Court three Times a Year; and all the Officers in the Government make Preſents to the King every New-Year's-Day according to their different Stations, ſome of precious Stones, others of Gold, others of Plate, Calicoe, &c. and ſome, but very few, bring Money, but that is ſcarce. The Jewels are the moſt acceptable, and are moſt commonly uſed as Preſents when People of a ſuperior Rank are in purſuit of Preferment; and when the Exigencies of the Government require an extraordinary Supply, as in the Caſe of War, or Rebellion, or the like, if he demands even all the Produce of their Lands, or other Incomes, they dare not reſiſt him.

Forces. He has no ſtanding Troops, but the Soldiers that hold their Land by Military Tenure, or doing ſo much Military Service for their Land as above-mention'd, mount Guard by Turns, and are as numerous as our Militia; the Generals are always upon Duty; the Forces are moſtly on Foot, there being no Horſes here but what are imported hither from other Places. He never truſts one General with the Command of his whole Army, which has been of great Advantage to the *Dutch* in their Wars with him, for although his whole Army at once might have cruſh'd them, they could cut down his ſeparate Companies one after another, and by degrees deſtroy them all; but he is ſo jealous of his Subjects, that he is afraid if he ſhould give the Command of a whole Army to one Man, that General might ſet up for himſelf againſt his Maſter, and be too ſtrong for him too.

Arms. The Arms of the Soldiers are broad Swords, Bows and Arrows, Pikes and Muskets, and ſome little Field Pieces; their Tents are cover'd with Tallipot Leaves; they have no Carriages for their Proviſions, but every one carries his own, and when as much as they could carry is ſpent, they go to ſeek more, ſo that by the Time the Army has been a Month in the Field, their Proviſion is gone, and they diſperſed about the Country to ſeek more.

Laws. They have no other Laws but the arbitrary Will of the Prince, who reſerves to himſelf the Prerogative of inflicting Puniſhment for capital Crimes, not entruſting any of his Governors with that Power; he has no regular Forms of Trial, but if upon the ſlighteſt Evidence he thinks a Perſon guilty, he condemns him; whether Life or Eſtate, or both be concern'd, if Death is the Puniſhment, the Manner of Execution is moſt commonly being trod to death with Elephants; ſome are impal'd, or, if guilty of Treaſon or Conſpiracy againſt the King, his Fleſh is tore off with red hot Pincers; and ſometimes, when the Crime is Capital, not only the Criminal ſuffers, but his Father, or Brothers, &c. participate of the Puniſhment, by being ſent into Slavery, or the like.

Succeſſion. The Succeſſion is hereditary, except when the reigning Prince ſettles it in his Life-time; for he has a Power to ſettle the Succeſſion upon any of his Sons, or to divide the Kingdom amongſt them if he thinks fit.

Coin. They have but little current Coin, but more commonly barter one Commodity for another. The *Portugueſe* coin'd ſome Pieces which they call'd *Tan-*

gam-

gum-Maſſa, worth about nine Pence, which ſtill paſs current in the Country; there is alſo a Piece like a Fiſh-hook, made by the common People, of finer Silver than Dollars; but the King coins one ſort of Money himſelf, ſeventy five of which makes a Piece of Eight, and it is a Capital Crime for any Perſon to counterfeit it.

Weights. THEIR ſmalleſt Weight is a *Collonda*, ſix of which weighs a Piece of Eight, and twenty *Collonda's* make a Weight call'd a *Pollam*. Their long Meaſure for Cloth is the Cubit. Their Corn Meaſure is the *Potta*, which is as much as a Man can heap upon the hollow of the Inſide of his Hand; and four of theſe *Potta's* is a Meaſure call'd *Bonder-Nellia*, or the King's Meaſure. Four Meaſures is a *Courney*, and ten *Courneys* is a *Pale*, four *Pales* is an *Ommounas*, by which they reckon their Stock or other great Quantities of Grain. Their Uſurers are as covetous and over-reaching as ours in *England*, and for that Reaſon their Meaſures are contriv'd too large rather than too ſmall, becauſe theſe covetous Extortioners take Corn by the Meaſure for Intereſt for the Money they lend.

CHAP. VI.

Of their Religion, Idols, Temples, and ſolemn Feſtival; with their Marriages, Women, Children, and Funerals.

Worſhip. THE *Cynglaſſes* or Natives worſhip one Supreme God, as Creator of all Created Beings, but they fall down before the Images of their Saints and Heroes, who have lived on Earth, and whom they now ſuppoſe to be Angels or Miniſtering Spirits to the ſupreme Deity: but the Principal of thoſe inferior Deities is their God *Buddou*, who (as they believe) came from Heaven to procure eternal Happineſs for Mankind, and when that was done, aſcended into Heaven from a Hill in *Ceylone* called *Adam's Mount*. It is ſhap'd like a Sugar-loaf, and on the Top there is a little plain flat Rock, with a Print upon it in ſhape like a Man's Foot, but larger, being about two Foot long; this is ſuppoſed to be the laſt Place that ever he ſet Foot upon on Earth, and that when he aſcended into Heaven the violent Spurn which he gave made that Impreſſion in the Rock. It is cuſtomary for the Natives to come in Pilgrimage every Year, as ſuppoſing it to be a meritorious Act. They alſo worſhip the Sun, as likewiſe the Moon and other Planets. They have alſo their Houſhold Gods, for whom they erect little Chapels, placing Lamps, and ſtrewing before them, and offering Rice and other Food to them as Mediators, and addreſs them as ſuch at leaſt every Morning, every one making choice of the Deity he moſt affects, or, as ſome ſay, who he moſt fears; as ſuppoſing that God gives Permiſſion to evil Spirits to afflict them, and therefore they worſhip them to pacify them, or that they may not act according to the utmoſt Rigour of their Commiſſion. We do not find that they have any Temples or Prieſts dedicated any higher than to thoſe inferior Deities only, but whether it is owing to their Humility or Superſtition we cannot determine.

Prieſts. THE Prieſts are ſo abſolutely devoted to divine Service, that they are prohibited all ſecular Employments, Women, and Wine, nor are they allow'd to eat more than one Meal a Day; they will have no hand directly or indirectly in the killing of any Animal, that is, they will neither do it, nor (if ask'd) will give their Conſent to it, and yet they will eat Fleſh, except Beef, or ſome particular Sort of Fleſh which is forbidden them. If they do not like the Auſterities they are confin'd to, they may quit the Order when they pleaſe, without any Ceremony, but only pulling off their Prieſt's Habit, and throwing it into the River, and then waſhing themſelves all over, which done they are quite diſcharg'd from the Prieſthood.

Their Privileges &c. THE Clergy, if I may ſo call them, have prevail'd ſo much there, as well as in ſome Chriſtian Countries nearer hand, that if even the himſelf King ſhould call them to an Account for any Crime, he would be look'd upon as an Infidel, or Violator of their Religion; though there have been Kings amongſt them that were not ſo Prieſt-ridden, but that they took liberty to condemn ſome of the Prieſts, and execute them too when found in Arms or Conſpiracy againſt him.

Lower Claſſes. THERE are other Claſſes or Orders of Prieſts, ſome of whhich are allow'd to follow ſecular Employments. When the People bring boil'd Rice and Fruit to the Temple, the Prieſts take it of them, and preſents it to the Idol, and when it has ſtood ſome Time, they bring it out again, (for their Idols cannot eat any more than the Idols of other Countries,) and then the other Servants of the Temple and other poor People eat it up; but they never ſacrifice any Fleſh to theſe Idols.

THEY never aſſemble publickly for divine Worſhip, except at ſolemn Feſtivals, but at other Times every one goes to the Temple when his Neceſſities require it, and to that Temple and Idol where he believes his Neceſſity is moſt likely to be ſupply'd; but Wedneſdays and Saturdays they eſteem the moſt propitious Days for them to apply to their Deities.

One Feſtival. THEY have one ſolemn Feſtival either in *June* or *July*; it begins at the New Moon, and continues till the Full Moon, during which Time there are in the principal Cities a great Number of Elephants ſplendidly accoutred, and hung with Braſs Bells; theſe march round the City, and through the principal Streets, and after them come People dreſſ like Giants, in Memory of thoſe that they think formerly inhabited the Earth; then follows Muſick and Dancing, in ſeveral Companies; then comes Women of the beſt Quality, three a-breaſt, with Flags and Pendants; and after them the Generals, with the Troops, and the great Officers of State cloſe the Proceſſion; and this they repeat twice every twenty four Hours, *viz.* once by Day and once by Night, all the Time from the New Moon to the Full.

Sacrifices. THEY offer Sacrifices of Rice and Fruit to their God *Buddou*, and on their New-Year's-Day they perform a ſolemn Feſtival to him; but this is not done in his Temple, but on the Top of *Adam's Peak*, where he left the Print of his Foot as before mention'd, or elſe under a ſacred Tree (as they think it) which ſtands at *Anuradgbouro*, a Place in the North Part of the King's Dominions; under this Tree they ſay their God *Buddou* uſed to repoſe himſelf.

Images. THEY have Images of various and monſtrous Shapes, but the Images of *Buddou* are in the Shape of

of Men ſitting croſs-legg'd in yellow Coats. They have abundance of Idol Temples all over the Country, ſome of hewen Stone and excellent Workmanſhip. They have been built by People of ſome other Nation, or elſe a very long Time ago, for the preſent Inhabitants are ſo far from being able to imitate their excellent Architecture, that they cannot ſo much as repair them where they fail, after the ſame Manner as they were firſt built; but it is rather conjectured that theſe fine Pieces of Workmanſhip were built by the *Chineſe*, when this Iſland was a Province of that Empire, for they have a Tradition that it was formerly ſo, and it is natural to ſuppoſe that they who could build the *Chineſe* Wall above twelve hundred Miles in Length, could eaſily manage any of the Structures that are to be ſeen in *Ceylone*.

Temples.

THERE are ſeveral of the Race of the *Portugueſe* who profeſs Chriſtianity, and other *European* Nations are allow'd the free Exerciſe of their Religion; but there are no Chriſtian Churches in the Kingdom of *Conde Uda*, but down towards the Coaſt, that being the chief Settlement and Reſidence of the *Portugueſe*, *Dutch*, and other *European* Chriſtians.

THEY follow the ſame Cuſtoms as in other Parts of *India*, for the Parents make the Match before the Parties know any thing, always taking care that they be of the ſame Caſt or Tribe; when they are ſuppoſed to be old enough to cohabit together, the Man brings or ſends a Piece of Calico to his Spouſe, of ſix or ſeven Yards long, and with this Difference, that if he carry it himſelf, they ſleep together that Night, and appoint the Time for performing the Nuptial Ceremony. The Evening before he takes her from her Father's Houſe, he comes thither with his Friends, bringing Sweetmeats and other Proviſion with him, and they have a Supper ſuitable to their Condition, and the next Day they have a Dinner; after which they form a kind of Proceſſion from the Wife's Father's to the Husband's Houſe, the Wife always going before the Husband; and ſome Time after they are ſettled, the Relations viſit them, but bring Proviſions with them, and they rejoice together; but the Prieſt has no Hand in the Marriage, nor are they by theſe Contracts ſo faſt bound, but that if either Party diſlike the other's Temper, they may part, and match again if they pleaſe; only when they do ſo part, the Man muſt return to the Woman's Parents what he had with her, or an Equivalent; and if they have Children, the Man has the Boys, and the Woman the Girls.

Marriages.

THE Women have no Midwives at their Labour, only the neighbouring Women are called to aſſiſt; and as ſoon as the Child comes into the World, the Aſtrologer is immediately conſulted, and if he ſays it is born under a lucky Planet, they keep it; but if not, they give it away, (if any body will take it) ſuppoſing it may be fortunate to another though not to them; but if no body will accept of it, they expoſe or ſtarve it, or throw it into the River; and under the Pretence of their being born under an unlucky Planet, ſome that are afraid to have a Charge of Children, deſtroy them to ſave the Expence of bringing them up. They diſtinguiſh them by Names when they are young; but as they grow up, and are capable of Buſineſs, they loſe thoſe Names, and are called by the Place where they live, or the Buſineſs they follow, or the like.

WHEN a Perſon of Diſtinction dies, they lay out and waſh the Corpſe, and lay it upon a Bier, and being cover'd with a Linnen Cloth, they carry it out to ſome high Place, and burn it; but if he is an Officer, they muſt not do that till they have an expreſs Order from the King, and in that Caſe they hollow the Body of a Tree, and having taken out the Entrails, and embalm'd the Corpſe, they put it into the Cavity, and fill up the Vacancy with Pepper, and bury it in the Houſe till the King's Order comes to burn it.

Funerals.

WHEN the Order comes for burning it, the Corpſe is laid upon a Pile of Wood, about three Foot high, and more Wood laid upon it, and if it be a great Perſon there is an Arch built over it, with Colours, Flags, and Pendants, which are all conſum'd with the Corpſe in the Fire; and when they have ſwept the Aſhes up together, they build a Fence about them, and make a Sort of an Arbour over them, to preſerve them as Monuments to the Memory of the Deceas'd. But for the poor People that cannot afford ſo much Ceremony, they wrap them in the Matts they uſed to lie upon, and bury them any where in the Woods, laying their Bodies Eaſt and Weſt, as the Chriſtians do in *England*.

Burning the Corpſe.

SOME Time after this burning or burying, the Prieſt is ſent for to the Houſe of the Deceas'd, to ſing Anthems, and pray for the Repoſe of the Soul; the Women carelеſly undoing their Hair and wringing their Hands, uſe all poſſible Expreſſions of Sorrow for the Death of the Deceas'd, the Men at the ſame Time groaning as if their Hearts would break. But however ſincere this may be, the Widows ſoon marry again, if they can meet with an agreeable Match.

THE

A

DESCRIPTION

OF THE

MALDIVIA Islands.

Extent and Situation.

THE *Maldivia* Islands extend North West and South East, from about seven Degrees of North Latitude, to about one or two South; the Southermost end of them being near the same Longitude with Cape *Comorin*; but we need not be particular as to their Situation, because they will be included in the Map of the Western half of *Asia*, which we shall publish with the Conclusion of the Description of that Quarter of the World.

AUTHORS differ in the Number of them, which I suppose is owing to their different Opinions as to what they call an Island; for if they were to reckon every little Rock for an Island, they are reckon'd to amount to above twelve thousand; but if we reckon none into the Number but what may properly be call'd Islands, they are generally computed to the Number of about a Thousand. These Islands are commonly surrounded with Sands or sunken Rocks, that, except in three or four Places, they are not accessible by Sea, it being frequently observed, that where the Land is low, and the Shore shelving, as is the Case in these Islands, the Water is also shallower than where the Land is high, and the Shore bold.

Monsoons and Season.

WE need not enlarge upon any Account of the Monsoons and Currents, for both, as well as the Seasons of wet and dry Weather, are the same as upon the Coast of *Malabar*; for although the *Maldivia*'s lie under the Equinoctial, and in less North Latitude than any Part of *India*, yet as the Wind blows out of the South West when the rainy Seasons come, the *Maldivia*'s have the Rains at the same Time, if not sooner, than the Coast of *Malabar*, for the same Reasons that the Coast of *Malabar* has them sooner than that of *Cormandel*.

Whence peopled.

THIS Country was probably peopled from *Arabia*, because the Natives are of the same Complexion, and their Religion is Mahometanism, as the *Arabians* are; and this Conjecture is corroborated, if we consider that *Arabia* is the nearest Land to them, except *India*, or the Island of *Ceylone*, both which Countries differ from the Natives of *Maldivia* both in Complexion and Religion, the *Indians* being of much the darker Complexion, and their Religion Paganism.

Government.

THEY are all under the Government of one Prince, who has his Court, or Place of Residence, upon the Island *Mala*, the chief of these Islands, and from whose Name they derive the Title of the *Maldivia* Islands; but they are divided into thirteen Provinces. The Channels between many of the Islands are very narrow and shallow, in some Places not a Stone's-cast over, nor Knee deep; the Land low, and yet many of them barren and uninhabited, and those that do produce any thing, bring neither Rice nor any sort of Corn; but what they excel in, and which is their chief Subsistence, is the Cocoa-Trees, which furnish them with Meat, Drink, Cordage, and Timber, and many other Uses, as has been already treated of in the Description of other Countries, when speaking of the Cocoa-Tree.

Blackamoor's Teeth.

IT is here they take up the little Shells, call'd Blackamoors Teeth, of which there are vast Numbers, which serve by Tale instead of Money, to purchase small Trifles, almost all over *India*. Here is plenty of good Fish, which with their Roots, and what they produce from the Cocoa-Nut, instead of Bread, is their common Food, for they have little or no Flesh, but get some small matter of Rice from *Bengall*, in exchange for their Shells They find some small matters of Ambergrease, but neither of that, nor any thing else that is valuable, is there a sufficient Quantity to induce any *Europeans* to fix a Colony, or to settle and trade amongst them; and as these Islands have neither Trade nor Product that is worth Notice, it will be needless further to enlarge upon a Description of these Islands.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE Empire of *PERSIA.*

CHAP. I.

The Situation and Extent of this Empire, with its Diviſion into Provinces; alſo of the Air, Climates, and Seaſons; and an Account of the Rivers, Seas, and Iſlands, belonging to Perſia.

THIS Empire is, by all *Engliſh* Authors, call'd *Perſia*; but though they all agree in the Name, yet they differ in the Original and Derivation of its Name; ſome will have it derive its Name from one of its Provinces, call'd *Perſis*, or from *Perſepolis*, the Capital of this Province; others rather think it is from *Perſeus*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*; others from *Perſes*, a Nobleman of this Province, who rais'd himſelf to the Throne by his extraordinary Merit; but we ſhall leave all Perſons to judge for themſelves, and ſatisfy our ſelves with a Deſcription of it under the known Name of *Perſia*.

Bounds. *Perſia* is bounded with *India*, or the Mogul's Dominions on the Eaſt; with the Ocean, and the Gulf of *Perſia*, (by ſome call'd the Gulf of *Baſſora*) towards the South; the *Turkiſh* Empire towards the Weſt; *Circaſſia*, the *Caſpian* Sea, and River *Oxus*, towards the North; on the North Side of which is *Uſbeck Tartary*.

Extent The Extent of *Perſia* from North to South, being from Latitude 25 to Latitude 45 Degrees North, is ſix hundred Miles, accounting ſixty Miles to a Degree; and its Breadth, taken in Latitude thirty three, (which is about the middle Latitude of the Body of the Empire) is twenty two Degrees, which taken in that Latitude, is eleven hundred and ſeven Miles from Eaſt to Weſt.

Provinces The twelve Provinces of *Perſia* are, *Choraſſan*, *Sablaſtan*, *Sgiſtan*, *Makeran*, *Kerman*, *Fars*, *Chuſiſtan*, *Curdeſtan*, *Erack-Agem*, *Gilan*, *Aderbeitzan*, and *Shirvan*; of which in Order.

1. *Choraſſan*, including the Diſtricts of *Eſterabad* and *Khomas*, may be called the Northermoſt Corner of *Perſia*, bounded on the North Eaſt by the River *Oxus*, on the North Weſt by the *Caſpian* Sea, on the South by the Province of *Sablaſtan*, and on the Weſt by *Gilan* and *Erack Agem*. 2. *Sablaſtan*, including *Gaur* and *Candahar*, lies to the Southward of *Choraſſan*; and to the Southward of it is, 3. *Sgiſtan*, which again is bounded on the South by the Province of *Makeran*; ſo that theſe four Provinces take up all the Eaſtern Part of *Perſia*, and lie pretty much North and South from one another.

The next Province Weſt from *Makeran*, and on the South Coaſt of *Perſia*, or the Gulf of *Oman*, is *Kerman*, anciently *Carmania*; and to the Weſtward of it, upon the ſame Coaſt of the *Perſian* Gulf, is the Province of *Fars*, or *Farſiſtan*; and the next to the North Weſt of that, upon the ſame Coaſt, and at the Head of the Gulf of *Baſſora*, is the Province of *Chuſiſtan*. The chief Town is *Suſter*, ſaid to be the ancient *Shuſhan*, the Palace where King *Ahaſhueras* made his magnificent Feaſt at his eſpouſing Queen *Eſther*: There is alſo *Elmais* and *Banderick*, now ſmall Towns on the Coaſt of the *Perſian* Gulf.

To the Northward of *Chuſiſtan* is the Province of *Curdeſtan*, or *Aſſyria*, the Weſtermoſt Part of which belongs to *Turkey*, and the Eaſtermoſt to *Perſia*; and to the Eaſtward of *Curdeſtan*, in the Heart of the Country of *Perſia*, and between the Provinces of *Curdeſtan* and *Choraſſan*, is the Province of *Erack-Agem*, or the ancient *Parthia*, now *Parthia.* the principal Province of the *Perſian* Empire, being almoſt in the Center of it, and of a large Extent, and the Province where the Capital City of *Iſpahan* is ſituated. This great Province is bounded by *Aderbeitzan* and *Gilan* (or the ancient *Hyrcania*) on the North, *Choraſtan* on the Eaſt, *Farſiſtan* and *Chuſiſtan* on the South, and *Curdeſtan* on the Weſt. *Iſpahan* (the Metropolis of *Perſia*) is in *Iſpahan.* Latitude 32, 40 North, and Longitude 50 Degrees Eaſt from *London*. Other Capital Towns are, *Cabin*, anciently *Aſtaria*, in about Latitude 36, and North Weſt from *Iſpahan*; *Hamadan*, *Sava*, and *Com*, between *Cabin* and *Iſpahan*; alſo *Kaſhan*, North, and *Yeſd*, Eaſt from *Iſpahan*.

Gilan, or the ancient *Hyrcania*, is bounded on the *Gilan.* North by the *Caſpian* (or by ſome called the *Hyrcanian*) Sea; *Choraſſan*, or *Bactria*, on the Eaſt; *Erack-Agem*, or *Parthia*, on the South; and *Aderbeitzan* on the Weſt. The chief Towns are, *Gilan*, in 38 Degrees of North Latitude, and two hundred Miles Eaſt from *Tauris*; and *Mezanderan*, two hundred Miles further Eaſt; and *Aſterol*, within two Miles of the *Caſpian* Sea.

Aderbeitzan is the South Part of the antient *Media*, adjoining to the *Caſpian* Sea; its Capital is *Tauris*, ſuppoſed to be the ancient *Ebatana*, formerly the Seat of the *Median* and *Perſian* Monarchs, a Place of great Antiquity and Magnificence; it is in the thirty ninth Degree of North Latitude, and is about four hundred Miles North Weſt from *Iſpahan*, alſo *Ardevil*, thirty Miles Eaſt from *Media* an

from *Tauris*; and *Sultania*, South East from *Tauris*, and in Latitude 36, 30 North.

Schirvan. *Schirvan*, including *Dagistan* and the *Persian Georgia*, and *Armenia*; it lies to the Westward of the *Caspian* Sea, and South East from the *Black* Sea. In this Province is the noted City of *Derbent*, upon the Coast of the *Caspian* Sea, and in 42 Degrees of North Latitude. There is also *Schamakie* and *Baku* upon the same Coast, and to the Southward of *Derbent*. In this Province, in Latitude 40 Degrees, and South from the East Part of the *Black* Sea, is the Mountains of *Ararat*, famous for *Noah*'s Ark resting upon them, when the Waters of the Flood abated; and a little to the South East of those Mountains is *Nackschivan*, or *Nazivan*, a Village, or Town, reported to be built by *Noah* when he first came out of the Ark, which Opinion is rather corroborated by the meaning of the Word, which signifies a Station for Ships; for though it is too far from any Sea, or navigable River, to have any Concourse of Shipping, yet it was a Station for his Ship or Ark, from whence she never floated or sail'd afterwards, which might be sufficient to give Name to the Town which he built, where he first fix'd after his Landing from such an uncommon and surprizing Voyage. There are other Places formerly eminent, but reduced to Ruins since the *Armenians*, and with them the chief Trade of the *Persian* Dominions is removed to *Ispahan*, or Places adjacent.

Mount *Ararat*, where *Noah*'s Ark came aground

Rivers. In all the Country of *Persia* there is not so much as one River in the Heart of the Country that will carry a Boat of any Burthen; nay, a Person may travel a great many Days Journey without meeting with any Water in many Parts of *Persia*. The River *Kur*, or antient *Cyrus* and *Aras*, formerly *Araxes*, rise in the Mountains of *Ararat*, and joining their Streams in the Country, fall altogether into the *Caspian* Sea, in near forty Degrees of Latitude, and make the most considerable River in all *Persia*.

Aqueducts. Water being so very scarce in *Persia*, they are very industrious in making Aqueducts, both subterraneous and in visible Channels, and by one means or other, the chief Towns are supply'd with the Streams that issue from the Mountains, and convey'd to Places at twenty or thirty Leagues Distance, and they can turn the Water from one Channel to another, to serve the Inhabitants alternately, as is done by Pipes here in *London*.

Caspian Sea. The *Caspian* Sea, which breaks in upon the North East Part of *Persia*; it is about a hundred Leagues in Length from North to South, and ninety in Breadth, and has near a hundred Rivers runs into it; the chief of which is the *Wolga*, which rises in *Muscovy*, and falls into the *Caspian* Sea at *Astracan*; but though so many Rivers run into it, yet there is no visible Way out of it, and yet it neither overflows its Bounds, nor does it appear higher or lower at one Time than another; but probably it may have a subterraneous Passage into some other Sea, and occasion some of the Currents not hitherto otherwise accounted for.

A new Canal. The late Czar of *Muscovy* attempted a Communication between the *Caspian* Sea and the *Black* Sea, which, when accomplish'd, would open a Passage from *Persia* to the *Mediterranean*; this he proposed to do by a navigable Canal cut between the Rivers *Don* or *Tanais*, which falls into the *Black* Sea, and the River *Wolga*, that falls into the *Caspian* Sea, as above; and this Cut was to be made in about Latitude 50 Degrees, where these Rivers are nearest together; and this was so confidently supposed to be practicable, that this Canal was actually exprest in some of our late Maps, but we having never heard any more of it, there is Reason to believe the Project is suspended at present.

Pearl Fishery. But though, for Reasons above, there cannot be much Navigation on the *Persian* Side of the *Caspian* Sea, yet they improve the Opportunities they have in the Gulf *Bassora*, especially as to the Pearl Fishery, the nature and manner of managing of which we shall explain in *Chap.* VI. wherein we shall give an Account of the Plants, the Sea and Land Animals, and other Product of that Empire, and the adjacent Seas, Gulfs, or Lakes, and the Islands in them, of which *Bahara Island* in the *Persian* Gulf is the chief, or lately was, for the profitable Branch of fishing for Pearl, while the *Portuguese* kept the Island of *Ormus*, as being the Key of the Gulf; but now the Trade is remov'd to *Gombron*, near the entrance of the Gulf, and in Possession of the *Persians*, who are able to command the Gulf, and preserve the Pearl Fishery to themselves, and for this they are beholden to the *English East India Company*, who above a hundred Years ago assisted him to reduce the Island to Obedience to him, and expel the *Portugeuse*, for which the *English* were to have great Advantages in Trade, and half the Customs of *Gombron*; but when the *Persians* had got sure Possession of the Place and the Trade, they found means to quarrel with the *English*, and their stipulated Priviledges dwindled away to nothing, or but to a mere Trifle at best, to what it was by the first Agreement.

CHAP. II.

Gives a Description of their principal Towns; their manner of Building, and the Furniture of their Houses.

Quality's Houses. THE Houses of the Quality, which might otherwise be supposed to be the greatest Ornament to the Cities, Towns, or Streets where they are built, are rather the least, because they are built backwards, and retir'd in a Garden, and make no Appearance in the publick Streets where Travellers frequent; and so fond are they of Retirement, that they have a dead Wall before the House; and if there is a Gate in the Middle, there is also a Wall cross the Gate, and at some Distance within it, by the End of which they rather chuse to go about to the House, than to let a Stranger see any further than the inner Wall or Skreen itself. One would think they need not be at that Pains to hide their Buildings, for they are not so very high, but with a little declevity or disadvantage of Ground, they would hide themselves, for they seldom have more than the Ground-Floor, in the Front of which is a Piazza, or Cloyster, call'd by them *Eyvando*, it is open before, and here they transact their common Affairs, or meet and complement Acquaintance, as in the Porch of a House; but behind this is a spacious Hall, some so high as eighteen or twenty Foot, which is the highest as well as the largest Room in the House; this is the Room

for

for great Entertainments upon ſolemn Occaſions. At each Corner of this Hall is a Parlour or Lodging-room; for it is uſed promiſcuouſly in both Capacities. There is alſo another Piazza behind the Houſe like that before it, and out of both into the great Hall are abundance of Doors, which contribute very much to the cooling of the Houſe when they are ſet open, the Fronts of the Piazza's being always open, only as in other Piazza's, ſupported by Pillars.

Walls. THEIR Walls are ſometimes of Brick, burnt like ours, but more commonly they are only dried in the Sun. Their Doors do not go upon Hinges as ours do, but have a Piece of Timber thicker than the reſt of the Door goes up the Middle of it, and it being alſo longer than theſe Ends, are made round, and fix'd in round Holes made for that Purpoſe in the Middle of the Threſhold, and of the Top of the Frame, and when they open it, it is like two half Gates, only as one Part turns into the Houſe, the other turns into the Street; they ſeldom have any Locks or Bolts but what are made of Wood.

Furniture THEIR Furniture is Carpets ſpread on the Floor, and Cuſhions or Pillows to lean upon, and a Matt to ſleep upon, with a Quilt or two (but ſeldom any Sheets) to cover them. The Sides of ſome of the Rooms are lin'd with Tiles, like *Dutch* Tiles, about a Yard high, and the reſt adorn'd with Painting or Pictures, according to every one's Fancy or Ability, aſpiring to be like their Betters, as is common in other Places.

Deſcription of *Iſpahan*. *Iſpahan* ſtands on a fine Plain, almoſt ſurrounded with Mountains that are two or three Leagues from it; the *Sanderhout* runs by it, and the Town is ſupplied with Water from a Place a Mile diſtant, by Channels and Pipes contrived for that Purpoſe. Antient Hiſtories give an Account of the Town being wall'd about, but there is no regular Wall about it now: However, that is no Proof but that it may have been wall'd about; for was a foreign Traveller to give a Deſcription of *London* in its preſent State, the Walls are now ſo obſcure, that without good Information he could not give Account where they are, (or rather where they were;) and indeed if we ſhould continue to demoliſh one Gate after another, and never rebuild them, (as is the preſent Caſe of *Biſhopſgate*,) it may be diſputed hereafter whether ever *London* had any Walls or Gates or no.

Account of Streets THE City or Town of *Iſpahan* is now reckon'd about twelve Miles in Circumference; but in this Account they take in *Julpha*, which is on the other Side of the River, and ſome adjacent Villages; as if in a Deſcription of the Circumference of *London* a Stranger ſhould take in *Southwark*, *Newington*, *Kenſington*, *Iſlington*, *Hackney*, *Bednall-Green*, and *Blackwall*. There was formerly (when the Town was wall'd) twelve Gates; but four of them are now fill'd up, and the reſt are demoliſh'd, or ſo fallen to Decay, that they can ſcarce be called Gates.

Streets THE Streets are narrow and crooked; and few of them being pav'd, they are either duſty or dirty, according to the Weather, or Seaſon of the Year; but there are ſeveral fine Squares in the Town, eſpecially the Meydan, or Royal Square, into which two of the Palace Gates open. This Square is above five hundred and eighty Yards in Length, and more than half as much in Breadth; and on the Sides of it are Buildings like the *New Exchange* or *Fleet Exchange* in the *Strand*, with Shops and Counters on both Sides, and a common Paſſage both for Foot and Horſe in the Middle. In this is a particular Apartment for every ſeveral Trade, and the Mechanicks have their ſeveral Shops in a ſecond Story. Theſe Exchanges have not particular Windows, but large Openings, at proper Diſtances, to let in the Light

THIS Square was at firſt deſign'd for manly Exerciſes, but it is now apply'd to Traffick, and in the Middle of it is a Market for Horſes, Cattle, and alſo for all Sorts of Eatables. Several Streets are arch'd over, which makes them pretty dark. In the Night-time they lock up their moſt valuable Goods, and leave the reſt in the Charge of the Watch, who are ſo careful, or the People ſo little given to thieving, that ſeldom any thing is loſt; but whether this their Honeſty is owing to their Principle, or to the ſevere Penalties inflicted upon Offenders of that kind, we cannot determine; but if the Severity of their Puniſhments deter Spectators from the Crimes that procure them, there is no Doubt but was the ſame Severity to be uſed in other Places, the Terror of it might deter People from the like Crimes, and ſave many, who not dreading a milder Puniſhment, proceed from peddling, thieving, and pilfering to downright Robbery and Murder, and go to Execution unlamented.

Caravanſera's THERE are ſeveral publick Caravanſera's in the City, in which Foreign Merchants lodge themſelves and their Goods, where alſo they have their Diet, and uſe them both as Inns and Ware-houſes, but every Lodger finds his own Bed, and cooks his own *Victuals*, and though it may be thought an Inconveniency, yet it prevents Travellers or Lodgers being impos'd upon. There are in *Iſpahan* above 1500 of theſe Caravanſera's, which come much cheaper to Strangers than the Uſe of our Inns do, becauſe they have been built by charitable People for the Uſe of Strangers; ſo that the Rent of any Number of Rooms is but a Trifle. The Caravanſera's are built moſtly in one Form, and differ only in the Dimenſions; there is a handſom Portal at the Entrance, and on each Side of it are Shops, and from thence you go into a Square, on every Side of which are Piazza's, and within are Lodging-rooms, Ware-houſes, Stables, *&c.*

No Taverns. THEY have no publick Taverns in *Iſpahan*, becauſe Wine is prohibited, but they that can afford it, drink it plentifully in private. There are handſom Coffee-houſes apply'd to the ſame Uſe as ſome in *London*, viz, for People to meet and diſpute about Politicks, and to give ſome People an Opportunity of being Politicians that know nothing of the Matter.

Moſques. THERE are above 150 Mahometan Moſques or Temples in *Iſpahan*; they are cover'd with Domes or Cupeloes, and being commonly built amongſt Groves of Trees, they afford a very agreeable Proſpect; but the common Buildings are ſo low, that they are hid by the Trees. It is difficult to give any true Deſcription of the Inſide of their Moſques, becauſe no Chriſtian is ſuffer'd to come within them if it is known: but thoſe whoſe Curioſity have amounted ſo high as to induce them to go in Diſguiſe tell us, that the King's Moſque at *Iſpahan* (which may in ſome Meaſure give the Reader an Idea of the reſt,) has a Gate leading to it, through which there is a Court, with Piazza's or Cloiſters on each Side, where the Prieſts lodge that belong to the Moſque. The Moſque is compos'd of five Iſles; in the Middle is a Cupelo ſupported by four ſtrong Pillars; two great Windows towards the Top of the middle Iſle (whoſe Roof is higher than that of the outſide Iſles,) give light to the whole Moſque; there is towards the Middle of it a kind of a Pulpit, with Stone Steps up to it; the Floor of the Moſque is cover'd with Carpets, and the People put off their Shoes when they enter into it; but there are no Seats or Pews as there are in Chriſtian Churches.

Bagnio's. THERE are abundance of Bagnio's, the *Perſians* thinking that ſweating and bathing is very healthy in that Country, and cures Colds, Aches, and many other common Diſtempers.

THE

Charbag. The *Charbag* is much admired by Travellers; it is a Walk somewhat like the *Mall* in *St. James's-Park*, but larger, being above a hundred Yards broad, and a Mile long, and extends from *Ispahan* to the River *Zenderud*; it has double Rows of Trees down each Side, and a Canal down the Middle; which goes with a Descent towards the River, and not driving down like a common Stream, but at every Furlong falls from one Bason to another, till at last it falls into the River, and at the End of the Walk is a Bridge over the River to *Julpha*. There are also two other Bridges, by which there is a Communication between *Ispahan* and the neighbouring Country on the South Side of the River.

Julpha. At the other End of the Bridge, on the South Side of the River, is the Town of *Julpha*, mostly inhabited by *Armenians*. This Town is about eight Miles in Circumference; it is better built, and wider Streets than *Ispahan*. This Colony has improv'd very much since their first Settlement by *Shaw Abbas*, they being now reckon'd the greatest Merchants in the World, and are dispers'd almost all over *Asia* and *Europe*; but at first they might more properly be call'd the King's Factors, he furnishing them with a Stock to trade, and allowing them a Share of the Gain; but now they trade with their own Stock, only paying a Yearly Tax to the Government; and have Liberty to buy Estates and settle, which is a Privilege not allow'd to any other Christian.

Schiras. The City of *Schiras* is about two hundred Miles South-Eastwards from *Ispahan*; it is accounted the second City of the Kingdom; some say the great King *Cyrus* was buried there, and that the Name *Schiras* was derived from his Name. It is situate in a pleasant Valley, and has a Rivulet running through it, which in the Spring has the Appearance and Force of a large River, but in Summer is almost dry; it is not wall'd about, nor is it very populous. The chief Buildings are the Viceroy's Palace, Mosques, and Caravansera's, *&c.* but their Form and Manner of building being the same as in *Ispahan*, we need not give any further Description of them, but refer to *Ispahan*. It is very common here for succeeding Generations to build new Houses rather than live in those of their Ancestors, but their Form and Manner of building is still the same.

Persepolis. The antient Palace or Temple of *Persepolis* is about thirty Miles North-East from *Schiras*, but little remains of it now but the Ruins; it is now call'd *Chilmanar*, which in *English* is forty Pillars; it is at the North-East End of that Plain upon which stood the antient *Persepolis*, and is supposed to be a Part of the Palace of *Darius*, who was conquer'd by *Alexander the Great*, and stood upon near three-score Acres of Ground; the Ascent to it was by ninety five Steeps, thirty Foot long, twenty Inches broad, and not above three Inches deep, so that a Horse might easily go up or down them. This valuable Piece of Antiquity, so far superior to any Thing that *Rome* itself can produce, was burnt to the Ground by *Alexander the Great* about the Year of the World 3724, which was above two hundred Years before the Birth of our *Saviour*.

Gombroon. *Gombroon* is on the North Side, and a little within the Mouth of the *Persian Gulf*, in Latitude 27 Deg. 30 Min. North, and about two hundred fifty Miles South-East from *Schiras*; it is a Place of the greatest Resort of any Port in *Persia*, the *English East India* Company have had a Factory there for above this hundred Years. It stands upon a level Ground close by the Sea; is inhabited by *English*, *Dutch*, *Portuguese*, *Arabs*, *Jews*, *Armenians*, *Banians*, and several other Nations; of which, the two last are much the greatest Merchants. There is an old ruinous Wall towards the Land, and three small Forts, of five Guns each, and a Platform of eight towards the Sea; there is also a Castle mounted with five and thirty Guns, for the Security of the Road.

Houses. Their best Houses are of Stone, but the most common Sort are of Bricks, not burnt like ours, but hardned in the Sun; some are two Story high, and have a Wooden Machine at the Top to drive the Wind down into the House to cool it. The *English* Factors are most of them remov'd to *Bassora*, a Place in the *Turkish* Dominions at the Bottom of the Gulf.

Tauris. The next Town of note is *Tauris*, in about thirty eight Degrees of Latitude, supposed to be the antient *Ecbatane*, the Seat of the *Median* and *Persian* Monarchs, and built by *Semiramas*; though *Josephus* tells us, that the City, or at least a Palace in it, was built by the Prophet *Daniel*, and these two different Opinions may easily be reconciled, if we allow the City to be built by *Semiramas*, and the Palace by *Daniel*. It was fifteen Miles about, and had a Wall seventy Cubits high and fifty broad, with many noble Palaces, but now there is little or nothing of either to be seen; however, it is yet a considerable Town for Trade, is about five Miles in Circumference, and pretty populous, considering the Decays it has labour'd under.

Tauris (like *Ispahan*, and several other noted Places in *Persia*,) stands on a Plain encompass'd with Mountains, and the Springs that trickle out of those Mountains collect themselves, and form a Stream, in the Valley, which descending to the Town runs through the Middle of it, and supplies it with Water; but upon the melting of the Snow from the Mountains it occasions a Confluence of Water, which amounts to a mighty Torrent. In this Town they have Squares, cover'd Streets, Exchanges, Mosques and Bagnio's, imitating those in *Ispahan*, and not much inferior to them.

This City has been sometimes possess'd by the *Turks*, and at other Times by the *Persians*, but the Inhabitants being originally *Persians*, they have endeavour'd to withstand the Invasions of the *Turks*, and sometimes with Success, in requital for which the *Turks*, when they prevail, burn and plunder the City in a dreadful Manner; but the great *Shaw Abbas* above a hundred Years ago expell'd the *Turks* so effectually, that they have not since been disturb'd, till very lately they have repeated their Inroads, and renew'd their former Barbarity upon the City of *Tauris*.

Teflis. *Teflis* is the Capital of *Georgia*, and stands upon the River *Kur* or *Cyrus*, in about forty two Degrees of North Latitude. It is inhabited mostly by Christians, as appears by the Places for Religious Worship, there being fourteen Christian Churches, and not one Mahometan Mosque in the City. It stands at the Foot of a Mountain; it is not large, but handsomly built; there is a Castle on the South Side of it, but of little Strength at present. *Teflis* is a Bishop's See, and has a handsom Cathedral built in Form of a Cross; their other Churches belong to the *Georgian* and *Armenian* Christians. The Churches and other publick Buildings are built of Stone, and in the same Form and Model of those in other Parts of *Persia* already described, to which we refer the Reader. N° 7.

CHAP. III.

An Account of the Genius and Temper of the Perſians; *alſo of their Stature, Complexion, Shape and Habit; with their Food, Liquors, Entertainments, Diverſions, and Ceremonies; and likewiſe of their Roads, Carriages, and manner of Travelling.*

THE *Perſians* are reckon'd more lively and courageous than the *Indians*, which is the Reaſon, as has been obſerved before, that the Mogul prefers them both in his Court and Army before his own Subjects the *Indians*. They are very obliging to Foreigners; and if they are guilty of a Crime, it is in their Profuſeneſs and Extravagancy in their Cloaths, Equipages, and number of Servants, and the like; but moderate in eating and drinking, both as to Quantity and Quality, for the greateſt Part of their Food is Rice, Fruits, and Garden-ſtuff; they have not much Fleſh, nor much variety in dreſſing of it; but a ſtanding Diſh, eſpecially with the better Sort of People, is *Pilo* or *Palaw*, which is a boil'd Fowl cover'd with Rice, boil'd dry, and cook'd with Spices and Turmerick. It is not cuſtomary with them to drink extravagantly, or force Liquor at Entertainments; nor do they detain any after they are inclin'd to go, but every Perſon may retire when they pleaſe, without the Imputation of Rudeneſs, or being charged with the Breach of good Manners.

They are much addicted to Women, Wives, and Concubines; and their Law is ſo far from reſtraining them, that they are taught to believe that the Enjoyment of Women contributes much to their Happineſs in the next World as well as this; nor are they ſatisfy'd with this unlimited Liberty, but follow Practices of a more odious Nature with Boys, which the great ones keep for deteſtable Uſes, not proper to be named in Hiſtory.

They are covetous to get Money, but profuſe in ſpending it, not taking thought for To-morrow; inſomuch that if a Man has eight or ten thouſand Pounds left him, he acts as if he did not know the Uſe or Value of it, but raſhly lays it out for Wives, Slaves, Cloaths, Furniture, or whatever comes to hand; by which imprudent Management they are often forced to ſell off ſome of their new Purchaſes ſoon after they have bought them, and that to procure common Neceſſaries.

Temper. They have great command of their Paſſions, not eaſily provoked, but ſeldom ever incited to a Quarrel; and the chief and moſt common of their hard Words uſed in ſcolding, is calling one another Jew or Chriſtian.

They perform their Addreſſes with an obliging Behaviour, and with the beſt of good Manners; punctual in their Bargains, and treat Strangers with the utmoſt Humanity; they are grateful to Benefactors, generous to Strangers, and courteous to all Chriſtians, as well as others.

Stature, Complexion. They are of a good Stature, well-proportion'd clean limb'd, and agreeable Features. In the North Parts, towards *Circaſſia*, they are of an admirable Complexion, though towards the South they are a little upon the Olive; and as white is the valuable Complexion, they take Wives and Concubines of the *Georgian* and fair *Circaſſian*; and by that Means, even the Southern Provinces have very much mended their Complexion. Their Hair and Eye-Brows are generally black. They wear only one Lock of Hair upon the Crown of their Heads, by which they expect that *Mahomet* will lift them up to Paradiſe. The King, and great Officers of State, and Soldiery, wear no Beards, only Whiskers on the upper Lip. Their *Mollahs*, or Religious People, wear their Beards their full Length, only cutting off the wither'd Ends to bring them into a regular Form; and the common People clip their Beards pretty ſhort, but do not ſhave at all.

Habit. They wear Turbants of different Value, according to the different Quality or Ability of the Perſon; and made ſo large, that with the Scull-cap under, it weighs not leſs than ſeven or eight Pounds. They have a Shirt of Silk or Calicoe, commonly blew, which they wear as long as it will laſt, and never waſh it; their Stockings are of woollen Cloth, but not ſhap'd to their Legs; inſtead of Shoes they wear Slippers, with narrow piqu'd Toes turning up, but they never tie or buckle them; when they ride they have Boots of yellow Leather, and delight in extravagant ſize Houſen, and ſo large as almoſt to cover the hinder Part of the Horſe. They wear a Crice or broad Sword, and a Poniard, whether riding or going on foot.

The Women wear no Turbants nor Saſhes, and their Coats come almoſt as low as their Heels. When they go into the Street they have a Veil over them from Head to Foot. They make their Hair in Treſſes, and let it hang down upon their Backs, the Quality having it interwoven with Pearls and Jewels. They wear no Gloves, but have their Fingers adorn'd with Rings, and their Arms with Bracelets.

The Dreſs is ſo material an Article in *Perſia*, that let the Faſhion be what it will, the rich will have it, and the Poor will imitate them, if they have ſcarce neceſſary Victuals at the ſame Time; nor need we go ſo far as *Perſia* for an Inſtance of this kind, becauſe *England*, and even *London* itſelf, produces infinite Numbers of thoſe, who for the ſake of imitating the greateſt in a gay airy Dreſs, fall ſhort of even the meaner Sort in Things neceſſary and commendable, and their Faſhions alter as much as amongſt us; ſo that what would ſerve as a Deſcription of their Dreſs a good many Years ago, though it may anſwer in general, yet it will differ in ſome Particulars from their Dreſs at this Time.

Food. The *Perſians* commonly drink a Diſh of Coffee early in the Morning, and about eleven they eat Liquors. Melons, Sweetmeats, Curds, or other light Victuals; but their chief Meal is Supper, when they have a Diſh of *Pilo*, (deſcribed before) and perhaps a Piece of Mutton or Kid ſerved up with it. They commonly bake their largeſt Joints, but baked or roaſted, it is always done to Rags, that it may be the eaſier pull'd to Pieces, for they uſe no Knives or Forks. They never eat Pork, Veal, or Hares, nor but ſeldom uſe *Beef*, Venilon, Fiſh, or Wild-Fowls. They ſeldom have any Sauce, except a Slice of Lemon, or ſome Pickle; their chief Bread, or what they uſe inſtead of it, is boil'd Rice, but they have ſome made in thin Cakes, but never bake till they are going to uſe it. They never pickle any Meat beforehand, but kill their Meat as well as their Fowls the ſame Day they uſe them. There are a great many Cooks in *Ispahan* that are

to

so ready to furnish House-keepers with what they want, whether *Pilo*, or other Victuals, that they seldom dress any thing at Home. They are very ambitious to imitate *Abraham* in his Hospitality, keeping their Doors open at Meal-times, and inviting every Body to eat with them that comes in, thinking that by chance they may entertain some Angels unware, as he did; they never set any Thing by till next Morning, but what is left they always give to the Poor.

Their chief Meal, as at any Entertainment is, commonly a Supper, but till that is ready they divert themselves with smoaking, and eating Sweetmeats, and repeating heroick Poems of the great Atchievements of their Prince; there are also dancing Girls to divert the Company, and if any of the Men are inclined to step aside with one of them, they are presently shown into a private Room, the Company not taking any more notice, either at their withdrawing or at their return, than would be taken at any two Persons calling one another apart to transact common Business.

Wine is not allow'd to the Mahometans, yet they indulge themselves with it privately, but the *Armenians* consume most of the Wine made in *Persia*. But those who abstain from Wine for Conscience sake, under the Name of Wine, scruple not to supply that Defect by intoxicating themselves with Opium, Bang, Poppy-Seed, and the like; and though we may at first wonder that any Person should use Opiates to a Sort of Intoxication, and call that a Refreshment, yet we may look nearer home and find much the same Thing; for, not to regard those, who under a Pretence of drinking strong Liquor to cheer the Spirits and support Nature, never think they are refresh'd till they are so intoxicated, that a blind Passion will put them upon rash and imprudant Attempts, which when govern'd by Reason they would not have Courage enough to undertake; but besides them, what is our Tobacco, so disagreeable in the Taste, that the Use of it is generally attain'd with Difficulty; and when that Hardship is overcome, the best that the most Genteel, as well as the most Impartial, generally say of it, is, that it is a Companion, an Amusement, &c. Far be it from me to attempt to discourage the Use of smoaking Tobacco, so genteel an Exercise, and which brings so great a Revenue to the Crown. But I am only observing, that it need not surprize us that those People intoxicate and lull themselves into a pleasant Amusement with Bang and Opium, when we do the same Thing, but only another Way; and as it is said of those Men that are used to Opium, that one of them can take as much Opium as would kill or confound the Senses of six *Englishmen*, and not only so, but that he can scarce live without such a Quantity; I may add, that some *Englishmen* used to smoak Tobacco, can smoke as many Pipes in three or four Hours as would make half a Dozen Men disorder'd and uncapable of Business for as long a Time, if they had never been used to smoaking before. It is said the Use of those Opiates was first occasion'd to supply the Use of Wine, and that was prohibited to preserve Peoples Health, which was impair'd by the excessive Use of it. But so resolutely are some People bent upon indulging themselves to their own Detriment, that when those People were restrain'd by a Law from impairing their Health by Wine, they industriously found out their Opiates to execute the same Design, and do it as effectually. And of this Kind we have also a fatal Instance at home, for notwithstanding the Laws that have been made to suppress the excessive drinking of that odious Liquor, commonly called Gin, yet I think there never were so many Gin-Shops, or any so much frequented, or so many fatal Accounts of People dying by excessive drinking, as now.

The *Parthians* are so famous for the Bow and for Horsemanship, that even their Princes have exerted themselves in those Exercises, in contending for the Prize, not for the Value of it, but for the Honour of winning it. One sort of Game (if it may be so call'd,) on Horseback is almost like Bandy, every Gentleman has a short Batt in his Hand, and a Ball being thrown among them they ride after it, and reach down as they sit on horseback to strike it, and he that hits it the oftenest wins the Prize. Exercise.

They are taught to manage the Back-sword and Sabre, and are dextrous at throwing the Lance, to which they are first brought up by throwing a Staff about five Foot long, without any Iron upon it, or Spear at the End of it. And for the Exercise of the great Proficients, there is a high Pole erected in the *Meydan* before the King's Court, upon which is put a Prize agreeable to the Dignity of the Persons contending for it; if the King, or great Officers, design to shoot for it, it is sometimes a Cup of massy Gold or the like. The Way of winning the Prize, or gaining the Applause, is to ride full Gallop with their Bows and Arrows in their Hands ready, and being got a little beyond the Pole, on the Top of which the Prize is, they bend themselves back and shoot at the Prize, and he that brings it down gains the Honour. Which Practice it is to be supposed has caused the *Parthian* Forces to be as much dreaded when they retreat as when they engage. Lance.

Hawking and Hunting is another Exercise with them; it is needless to describe their manner of managing, so far as it is the same as in *England*, but they have something peculiar in their way of Hawking, for the Hawks do not only fly at Partridges, Rabbits, &c. but at Deer and Wild-Beasts, when too swift for the Dogs; and to bring them up to this, they stuff the Skin of one of these Beasts, and fasten upon its Head a Piece of the same Flesh with which they feed the Hawk; which done, they fix the stuff'd Skin upon a Board that runs upon Wheels, and turning the Hawk loose to catch the Meat, they pull the stuff'd Beast swiftly along, till by degrees she is brought to fly upon the Deer or Wild Beast, till the Dogs are let go, and then the Hawks beat about his Head that he cannot see his Way, and by this Means the Dogs easily seize him; and then they call off their Hawks with a Kettle Drum, which they carry at their Saddle-bow for that Purpose. Hawking.

In Saluting they never move their Cap or Turbant, but to common People they bow the Body a little, but to the King, or Viceroy of a Province, they bow their Faces three Times to the Ground, but it is expected that *Europeans*, if dress'd in their own Country Habit, should pull off their Hats, and pay their Reverence to the great ones there in the same Manner and Form as they do to those in their own Country.

They have no Wheel Carriages, but travel upon Camels, Horses, Mules, or Asses. The Women, who affect being conceal'd, are put in a square Wooden Machine, and hung like Panniers on each Side of a Camel, being cover'd with three or four Hoops, and a Cloth over them, like the Tilt of a Boat or Waggon; but they usually travel with Caravans; and in this Country they travel very cheap, for there are Caravanseras at every proper Distance, erected at the Charge of generous People, as hinted before, towards the Beginning of this Chapter, where they have their Lodgings gratis, only buying their own Victuals at the best Hand, and sometimes dress them where they lodge. Carriages and ways of travelling.

They have no Posts for conveyance of Letters, but every Person of Quality dispatches a *Shaun* or Footman; who, through constant Practice, are brought up to travel at a very great Rate. They take great Pride in the extraordinary Performance Footmen.

of

of Running-Footmen, insomuch that when the King chuses a Footman, he tries him by causing him to run twelve times in a Day from the Palace to a Place a League and a half off; and as a Proof of his Performance, he brings every Time a single Arrow from the Place, and this he is obliged to perform between Sun and Sun, which is less than fourteen Hours at most, and is a hundred and eight Miles, which is between seven and eight Miles an Hour, and if he cannot perform this, he is no Footman for the King; nor if he can, is he admitted to this Tryal, except he was a Favourite before, but if he was, and performs, he has great Presents made him, and is usher'd into his Place with Acclamations, as if it was a great Festival.

CHAP. IV.

Treats of the late Rebellion and Civil Wars in Persia, *and of the deposing the late King* Shaw Sultan Hossein; *and of the Actions and Death of* Mereweys, (*call'd by some the Usurper*) *in the Time of the late Czar of* Muscovy.

WE now come down to the History of the present Age, and to the Affairs transacted in *Persia* in the Time of the late Czar of *Muscovy*, which, as largely as our History of the World will admit of, you have in the following Account.

THE late Sophy of *Persia*, *Shaw Sultan Hossein*, succeeded his Father Sultan *Solyman*, in the Year 1694; but this Prince chose to live an indolent Life in the Haram or Seraglio, minding his Women more than the Affairs of Government, and leaving the Administration of publick Affairs entirely to his Ministers, who oppress the Subjects, and imposed new Taxes as they pleas'd, though in a Time of profound Peace; and while one Part of the People were employ'd in plundering and collecting Money, the other, after the Example of their Prince, spent their Time in the Haram among the Women.

Now People were placed or displaced, not always according to their Merit, but according to their Interest, or the Presents they made; and if they fail'd in that, even those who were in Place were cashier'd, which was the Case of *Mereweys*, of which we have had some Hints in the publick Papers in their Accounts of the Wars in *Persia* in the Time of the late Czar of *Muscovy*.

MEREWEYS was originally a *Tartar*, or however commanded a Body of four or five hundred Tents on the North or North East Bounds of the *Persian* Empire, towards *Usbeck Tartary*, where the *Persians* are as populous as the *Tartars* are on the other Side of the River *Oxus*, and move from one Place to another with their Tents, as they can find necessary Provision.

BUT *Mereweys* was removed from this Post when he scarce knew the Reason of his being so discarded, but he soon (by prying into the then Constitution of the Government) found that he was degraded for no other Reason but to make room for another that was a Court Favourite, and had out-done him in Presents. He therefore muster'd all his Friends and Interest, and as Sums of Money was to carry the Cause, he found means to procure such a Sum, as by the Virtue of it he was re-inflated in his former Command; but though he succeeded so far as to produce Money to answer the present Design, yet both his Fund and Interest were thereby so much exhausted, that he found himself in very uneasy Circumstances, but thought of another Contrivance whereby to retrieve himself: For the Government being but in a weak Condition, and he being very remote from the Court, he resolved to seize the Neighbouring Province of *Candahor*, which lies upon the Eastermost Bounds of *Persia*, bordering upon the Great Mogul's Dominions, and there set up a Government for himself.

THIS Design he communicated to his Friends, who all approved of the Project; and his Friends and Countrymen the *Tartars* promised to assist him with their Forces in the Enterprize; but upon a second Consideration that *Candahor* was a Frontier upon *India*, and that a great Body of Troops was commonly quarter'd thereabouts, he had recourse to a Stratagem, which he chose rather to make use of, than to expose his Forces in such an Attack, and it was this:

HE pretended that when he received his Commission to re-instate himself in his Command, he also received a Commission to succeed the Governor of *Candahor* in that Province, and upon that pretence march'd up with his Troops towards the Town, and coming within a Mile or two of the Place, he sent to the Governor to acquaint him with this his pretended Commission, supposing that the Governor would come out to meet his supposed Successor, which he accordingly did, but *Mereweys* had posted his Men so advantageously, that after a small Time past in Complements between him and the Governor, they would not suffer the Governor to retire into the Town, but having cut his Guards to Pieces, march'd forward to *Candahor*, where he found the Gates open for his Reception, before the Inhabitants knew any thing of what had happen'd to their Governor and his Guards, in meeting his pretended Successor.

BUT this bare Possession was of little use to *Mereweys*, without contriving how to secure it to himself, which might be best done by erecting it into an independant State, but that could not be accomplish'd without forming some powerful Alliances, and the Great Mogul, now his bordering Neighbour, he thought the propereſt Person to address in this Case, because the Great Mogul and the Sophy of *Persia* were at perpetual Variance, and he thought that to contract an Alliance with the Great Mogul, was the best way both to secure himself from his Rage, and, in case of need, to have his Assistance to defend him against the Sophy of *Persia*, which he thought he would be very willing to do, in case the Sophy should resent *Mereweys* Usurpation; because what *Mereweys* (as an Ally of the Great Mogul) had taken from the Sophy, was, in some respect, the same as if done by and for the Mogul himself.

ACCORDINGLY he dispatch'd an Omrah with the News of his Success, which was joyfully received by the Mogul, who now began to think, that by means of his new Ally *Mereweys*, he might

find

find an Opportunity to have *Candahor* reſtored into his own Poſſeſſion, and therefore ſent him all poſſible Aſſurances of Affection, offering him what Number of Troops he thought fit to require to his Aſſiſtance; and for his further Encouragement gratified his Ambition in giving him the Title of *Prince of Candahor*, which gave the *Perſians* Reaſon to entitle him, *The Uſurper Mereweys*.

When the News of the taking of *Candahor* reach'd the Ears of the Government and Miniſtry of *Perſia*, it put them all in a Surprize; whereupon they detach'd a Body of four or five thouſand Horſe, in order to reduce him, but he had got too firm footing to be ſo eaſily rooted out, for he was joined by the *Usbeck Tartars*, and others, who were glad to aſſemble under him, in hopes, under his Protection, to plunder *Perſia* by Authority; and he finding himſelf ſo ſtrong did not hide himſelf in *Candahor*, but march'd out, met them, attack'd them, and defeated them. This Succeſs elevated him to ſo high a Pitch, that he began to aim at a Revolution, and in order thereto he ſent his Agents, not only to the remote Parts of *Perſia*, but even to *Iſpahan* itſelf; and thoſe his Emiſſaries inſinuated to the Subject, that they were oppreſs'd by the Male Adminiſtration and perſonal Vices of the Sophy; who, as they endeavour'd to inſinuate from thence, was unworthy to have the Command of the true Believers.

The Government, on the other Hand, was at a loſs to know who to truſt to for their own Defence, for they had diſobliged ſo many of the Chans and Omrahs, that they could not repoſe any Confidence in them, but were afraid that if they ſhould aſſemble their Forces to make Head againſt this formidable Rebel, they would revolt and join him; and inſtead of defeating him make him ſtronger than before, and enable him firſt to call them to an Account for their Adminiſtration, and then to demand their Heads, if in his own Judgment only their Crimes deſerved it.

But, on the other Hand, they were no leſs perplex'd; for to let him march forwards without Oppoſition, was, in other Words, to reſign to him, and let him have all *Perſia* as cheap as he had got *Candahor*; therefore, in this Difficulty, they reſolv'd of two Evils to chuſe what they thought the leaſt; and came to a Reſolution to diſpatch a General, whoſe Fidelity and Conduct they could depend upon, and order'd him to attend the Motion of *Mereweys*; not ſo much in Hopes to overcome him, as at leaſt to awe the Country, and prevent their ſupplying him with Proviſion, and conſequently oblige him to retire for want of thoſe common Neceſſaries, without which he could not ſubſiſt; but this Detachment ſucceeded no better than the reſt, for *Mereweys* met them, cut them to Pieces, and plunder'd them, eſpecially of their Arms, with which, and the Arms that he took from the Governor of *Candahor*'s Guards, when he approach'd the Town, he equipp'd his own Forces, who before were little better than a naked Rabble.

With theſe Succeſſes he began to imagine himſelf Conqueror of all *Perſia*, and thought in his next Expedition to advance to *Iſpahan*; but it is above eight hundred Miles from *Candahor* to *Iſpahan*, and all his Force not amounting to above ten thouſand Horſe, he thought it beſt to ſecure the Conqueſts he had made, before he aſpired after new ones; and in order to that, contracted an Alliance with the Grand Seignior, and put the City of *Candahor* in a Condition to defend itſelf againſt any Attempt that might be made againſt it in his Abſence.

His Negotiations had all the deſired Succeſs, and the Baſſa of *Bagdad* receiv'd Orders immediately to march with an Army to the Frontiers of *Perſia*; and now *Mereweys* began to think himſelf eſtabliſhed upon ſuch a ſure Foundation, that he took upon him the Stile and Title of *Protector of the Kingdom of Perſia*, and reſolved to march to *Iſpahan*, to take actual Poſſeſſion of that Capital, and of his new Government: But, in the midſt of this his great Succeſs, Death put a Period to his Life, and with that, to all his Schemes and Projects. Death of *Mereweys*.

But the Hoſtilities begun by *Mereweys* did not terminate with his Death; for his Son *Mahamood*, being a prudent Man, and very ſenſible of the great Reputation his Father had got by the Conqueſt, or rather Surprize of *Candahor*, reſolved to carry on the Work his Father had begun, and to begin where he left off, and directly purſue his Schemes; and the better to effect this his Deſign, and to appear more formidable to his Oppoſers, he wiſely conceal'd his Father's Death, and reſolv'd to do every thing in his Father's Name, and in the ſame manner as if his Father was alive, till his own Reputation ſhould be eſtabliſhed; and therefore, without the leaſt Interruption or Intermiſſion, the Preparations for marching to *Iſpahan* were continued, new Alliances cultivated, and new Forces rais'd, as if no Accident or Alteration had happen'd in the Family, and vigorouſly purſued his March for *Iſpahan*.

The *Muſcovite* (in the Time of the late Czar of *Muſcovy*) on the one Hand, and the *Turk* on the other, very gladly took the Advantage of theſe Diſtractions in *Perſia*. The *Turk* attack'd *Hamadan*, and ſeveral other frontier Places in the Weſtern Part of *Perſia*, which they took without much Difficulty, meeting with little Oppoſition, while the *Muſcovite* ſurprized *Derbent*, and on the Weſt Side of the *Caſpian* Sea; and their Succeſs giving them Encouragement, they proceeded to the Southward as far as *Gilan*, or the ancient *Hyrcania*; and along the South Coaſt of the ſaid *Caſpian* Sea, the *Perſians* finding ſo many Enemies to encounter with, the *Turks* and *Muſcovites* upon the Frontiers, and *Mahomood* (ſtill in the Name of *Mereweys*) penetrating into their Bowels, and aiming at their very Capital, this put them in the utmoſt Conſternation, but not having much Time to deliberate, they reſolved rather to let the Frontiers ſhift for themſelves than neglect their Capital, and expoſe it to the Mercy of the Uſurper, who they heard was in full March againſt them, and therefore aſſembled an Army of eight or ten thouſand Horſe about *Iſpahan* for its Defence, in caſe of an Attack.

When the King heard what Havock the *Turks* and *Muſcovites* were making in his Frontiers, and that the Uſurper's Army was in the Neighbourhood of his Capital City; and, which yet added to his Affliction, he was very ſenſible that the People in general were diſcontented with the Adminiſtration, he propoſed to reſign the Crown, and ſurrender it to his eldeſt Son: this the Omrahs approved of; but the poor effeminate young Prince, who had been always brought up in the Seraglio, and knew more of Eunuchs and Ladies than of military Affairs, was ſo affrighted at the Report he heard of the formidable Power of the Uſurper, declined the Offer, chuſing rather to ſleep in a whole Skin than become a Sacrifice to ſuch a powerful Enemy, which he ſuppoſed would be the Conſequence, if he ſhould attempt to give him a meeting.

It was then propoſed to ſettle the Crown upon the ſecond Son, Sultan *Tahmas*, or *Thomas*, and he not being quite ſo puſillanimous, accepted it, and put himſelf at the Head of the Army, encamping them at *Charbag*, near *Iſpahan*, in continual Expectation of being attack'd by the Uſurper's Forces.

In the mean Time *Shaw Thomas*, the young King, ſeem'd to endeavour to find out how the Minds of the People ſtood affected to him, and in order to that, he ſent (amongſt others) to the *Engliſh* Factory, reminding them what Privileges they had enjoy'd under his Anceſtors, and that in return he expected their Aſſiſtance in the preſent Exigency. What Anſwer he had is uncertain, but People buoy'd themſelves up with the Hopes of expelling the Uſurper out of the Neighbourhood of *Iſpahan*; when Affairs took a ſudden and unexpected Turn; for News was brought one Morning that *Shaw Thomas*, with ſome few of his Friends, had privately retired from the Army the Night before, and that they did not know where he was gone.

In this Confuſion the Officers of the Army and Citizens of *Iſpahan* conſulted together what was beſt to be done, and ſoon reſolved to make their Peace with the Uſurper, and invite him to *Iſpahan*; which being done, and he in ſafe Poſſeſſion, he made the old King and the whole Court his Priſoners, though all his Forces did not amount to above ſix or ſeven thouſand Horſe. He took Poſſeſſion of *Iſpahan* in the Month of *February*, 1721-2.

Mahamood had now no longer occaſion to conceal his own Name, or the Death of his Father *Mereweys*; his next Buſineſs was to find what Condition the Treaſury was in, which upon enquiry he found very empty, and being under a Neceſſity of raiſing more Forces to ſupport his Poſſeſſion, he therefore took a ready Way to ſupply himſelf with Money, and at the ſame Time purge the Nation of ſome of thoſe Caterpillars with which it had been infeſted; for he confiſcated to his own Uſe the Goods and Riches of thoſe who were not in his Intereſt, thereby ſtrengthening himſelf, and at the ſame Time weakening his Enemies, and then cut off the Heads of thoſe Prime Miniſters and others, who had for ſeveral Years been fleecing the Publick, and ſeiz'd their Riches to himſelf which they had unjuſtly plunder'd the People of, and thereby gain'd a univerſal Applauſe and the Affection of the People; for it is natural for People to rejoice when they ſee a Plunderer of the Publick ſuppreſs'd and puniſh'd, they commonly expreſs Satisfaction, though they meet with no Reſtitution.

But not content with this, he extorted Money from the Foreign Merchants, eſpecially the *Engliſh*, by which Means our *Eaſt India* Company's Trade at *Iſpahan* is now in a poor Condition, and their Factory almoſt, if not quite ruin'd; and it is ſaid the Company have order'd their Factors to get away as well as they can.

But the better ſtill to eſtabliſh his Poſſeſſion, he ſent the old King *Shaw Sultan Hoſſein* Priſoner, under a ſtrong Guard to *Candahor*, and himſelf took poſſeſſion of the Royal Palace. In the mean Time, the young King *Shaw Thomas*, who at his Departure from *Iſpahan* took the Road to *Tauris*, aſſembled a Body of Troops, pretending to oppoſe the *Turks*, which brought many of the *Perſians* over to him to aſſiſt in that Enterprize, but to little purpoſe; for he was ſo far from defeating them, that he could not ſtop the Progreſs of their Arms; and the Towns being moſtly without Walls or Garriſons, became an eaſy Prey to the *Turks*, or if they met with any Oppoſition at *Tauris*, it could only be from a raw undiſciplined Multitude; for the *Perſians* could never raiſe ten thouſand Men at a Time ſince the Wars begun; however, the *Turks* ſo diverted *Shaw Thomas*, that it was in vain for him to return, to attempt to give *Mahamood* any Diſturbance in his Poſſeſſion of *Iſpahan*; which *Mahamood* finding, he tranſplanted ſeveral thouſands of Families from the Province of *Candahor* to *Iſpahan*, and has now ſo eſtabliſh'd his Affairs, and fix'd himſelf at *Iſpahan*, that we do not find that they make any Attempts to dethrone him.

CHAP. V.

Of the Manufactures, Mechanicks, and Home Trade of the Perſians; *alſo of their Foreign Trade; and of their Weights, Coins, and Port-duties at* Gombroon.

Manufacture.

SILK is the principal Manufacture of the Country, as Taffaties, Tabbies, Sattins, and Silk mix'd with Cotton, or Camel and Goat's Hair, Brocades, and Gold Tiſſue. There are a hundred Sorts of ſingle Brocade. The double Brocade is call'd Duroy, which in plain *Engliſh* is two Faces, becauſe both Sides are alike, or, according to the common Way of ſpeaking, both Sides are right Sides; thoſe of *Perſia* are the richeſt of any in the *Indies*, and the ſame may be ſaid of their Gold Velvet. All the *Perſian* Stuffs are very durable, and where there is Gold or Silver in the Work, it keeps its Colour and Luſtre to the laſt. The fineſt Looms and Workmen are at *Iſpahan*, *Caſhan*, and *Yeſd*. Thoſe Carpets which (by reaſon of their being brought to us by way of *Turkey*) are call'd *Turkey* Carpets, are indeed *Perſian* Carpets, made chiefly in the Province of *Kirman*; in which Province, near the Entrance of the *Perſian* Gulf, is the great Sea-Port of *Gombroon*. Goat's-Hair Stuffs are made in *Hyrcania*. The *Perſians* make and ſtain ſome Calicoes, but they are not to be compared with the *Indian* Calicoes.

Mechanicks.

There is a Head or Warden belongs to every Trade, eſpecially in the Cities or great Towns, who acts as a Sort of a Juſtice of Peace, and is inveſted with a Power to ſee the Rules and Orders of that Trade ſtrictly obſerved; but they are not under any great Reſtrictions, for, although every Perſon that would ſet up any Trade muſt firſt go to the Warden, and enter his Name and Place of Abode, yet he is not examin'd where he learn'd his Trade, or whether he underſtand it, nor are they limited to the Branch that they profeſs only; for if a Brazier can make a Veſſel of Silver, and deal in that Ware, it is not reckon'd any Encroachment upon the Silver-Smiths, and the like in any other Trades.

They take no Apprentices, but Youths hire themſelves to Maſters whoſe Trade they fancy, who gives them little or no Wages at firſt, but as they improve in Workmanſhip, they increaſe their Wages; and when they think they are perfect of their Trade, they may enter their Names and Places of abode with the Warden, as above, and then are at liberty to ſet up for themſelves. Every Trade is bound to work for the King when he requires it, or to pay an Annual Tax for an Exemption.

They have but little large Timber, and therefore few Carpenters, and thoſe but poor Workmen. Their Joiners and Turners are very expert in laying on Lacker. Moſt of their Kitchen Veſſels are of Copper, tinn'd; they have no Braſs or Pewter Veſſels; they make but ordinary Guns, and for their Gun-locks, or any Thing that goes by a Spring, they either have them from *Europe*, or have

have *European* Workmen there to make them. They are very ready at Embroidering, especially with Gold or Silver, either upon Cloth, Silk, or Leather. The *Turkey* Leather (so call'd because we have it from thence, is made in *Persia*. The Shagreen, which is made of the Skin of an Asses Rump, is made also in *Persia*. They make a Sort of Earthen Ware far exceeding the *Dutch*, and little inferior to *China* Ware. They excel in Wire-drawing. Mr. *Chardin*, who was there himself, affirms that they can draw a Piece weighing a Drachm, to the Length of two hundred and ninety, or three hundred *English* Yards. Their Barbers do not give a Man a Bason of Water to hold under his Chin, as with us, but hold it themselves in a little Cup, and when they have shaved a Man, which they do with an incredible light and quick Hand, they cut the Nails of his Hands and Feet, and rub and chafe his Flesh, which even to *Europeans* is cooling and refreshing in those hot Countries. But not to enumerate Particulars, their Mechanicks are generally ingenious, except Goldsmiths and Watch-makers; the former are meer Bunglers, and there are none of the latter, they not understanding any Thing that works with a Spring.

Foreign Trade.

A Merchant is deem'd an honourable Profession, and are much encouraged because they bring in so great a Revenue to the Crown; and the Ministers of State, or even the King himself, do not think it beneath them to be Merchants, and have their Agents or Factors in the adjacent Countries, and export Silks, Brocades, Carpets, and other rich *Persian* Goods; and such is his Industry in Trade, that his Agents at the Mogul's and other Courts are commonly dignified with the Title of Ambassador, when their Business is chiefly, if not only, Traffick and Merchandize.

Tehre is no Exchange where Merchants may meet, but the Buyer or his Broker talks it over at the Seller's House. Though the Mahometans are the most powerful Part of the Country, yet the *Armenian* Christians and the *Indian Banians* have much the best Share of Trade; the former trade in their own Country and to *India*, but the latter, especially the *Armenian* Christians, trade all over *Europe*; one Reason why the Trade of the Mahometans is so much confin'd to their own Country is, because their Law forbids them to eat Flesh kill'd by one of another Religion, or to drink out of the same Cup, or even to touch such Persons at some times, which they could not possibly avoid if residing in a Christian Country; this, with some other Reasons, restrain the Mahometan Trade to People and Places of their own Religion; and this may be a great Reason why Christians are so much encouraged in *Persia*, to wit, because they manage most of the Foreign Trade, which brings in so great a Revenue to the Crown.

This Country was once famous for Pearls, and the greatest Fishery of that kind in the World was once, and that not long ago, in the *Persian* Gulf; but whether the Pearls there be exhausted, or the Fishery is diffused by *Persians*, having lost those Islands where the Pearl Fishery was, is uncertain; but certain it is, that the *Arabians* have got from the *Persians* one Island after another, and *Bahren* itself, and that Part of the Coast of *Arabia* which the *Persians* once possess'd, and where they used to fish for Pearl; of which, and the Manner of fishing for them, we shall treat in the next Chapter near the latter End.

The *English* have a Factory at *Ispahan*, and another at *Gombroon*, in the Entrance of the *Persian* Gulf; their chief Agents live very grand. The *English East India* Company seldom carry any thing to *Persia* but Cloth, and the *Turkey* Cloth being sold so cheap, the *English* have but a poor Market for theirs; they bring back Goat's Wool, which is the Down that grows among the Roots of the Hair, and is used by the Hatters; they also bring Abasses and Chequeens, and also Gold Bars; and if they cannot make out their Loading, they take Freight of the *Armenians*, *Banians*, and *Moors*. The *Persians* have no Ships in the Gulf, but put their Goods aboard of *English* or *Dutch* Vessels; they let the Conveniencies for Passengers very dear; the great Cabbin in a Ship of four hundred Tons is let for a thousand Rupees, (each two Shillings and Sixpence, which amounts to a hundred and twenty five Pounds Sterling,) for a Passage from the *Persian* Gulf to *Surrat* or *Bombay*.

One Branch of the Company's Profit is their Ships being employ'd in carrying the Goods and Effects of the *Armenians*, *Moors*, and *Banians* from *Gombroon* to *Surrat*; the *Persians*, as above observed, having no Ships in Gulf. When an *English* Ship is taken to Freight to or from *Persia*, the Agreement is made before the *English* Council at *Gombroon*, and Care is taken that the Passengers have proper Accommodations, and that the Ship have a competent Price for them. And to see Justice done in the Passage, the *Persians* send a proper Person in each Ship, and when they return, the Council enquires whether the Captain has acted according to his Agreement; and if not, the Council protests against such Commanders, and makes Satisfaction to the Passengers for the Damage, and acquaints the Company with what they lose by such irregular Captains, in losing Freight and Passengers by such Abuses.

Weights.

Their great Weight is a *Maund*; but they are different in different Commodities, as it is with us in our *Troy* and *Averdupoize* Pounds, or, as in most Counties in *England*, a Pound of Butter is heavier than a Pound of Tobacco, or Tea, or the like. They sell all Sorts of Drugs by the *Maund-Tabrees*, which is about six Pound three Quarters *Averdupoize*, but the *Maund-Basar* is six Pound and a Quarter. The *Maund-Copara* is seven Pound three Quarters; by this they sell Rice, Fruit, and other Eatables. Fine Goods, as Gold, Silver, Musk, Camphire, Coral, Amber, Cloves, and Cinnamon, are sold by the *Miscal*, six of which is a Pound *Averdupoize*. The *Maund-Shaw* is thirteen Pound and a half.

Coins.

They keep their Accounts of Money in *Shahees*, though it is a Species which is very scarce with them, but that need not be suprizing, if we consider that we reckon our Money very frequently by Pounds, Shillings, and Pence, and yet have no Pieces of a Pound, and very few of a Penny among our current Coin.

The *Shahees* are worth about four Pence each; the *Coz*, *Mamooda's*, and *Tomaud* are current Coin.

The *Coz* is a Copper Coin; 10 makes a *Shahee*.

Two *Shahees*, or twenty *Coz*, is a *Mamooda*.

Two *Shahees* and a half is one *Laree*.

Two *Mamooda's*, or four *Shahees*, make one *Abassee*.

Two *Abassees*, or four *Mamooda's*, make one *Surrat Rupee*.

Fifty *Abassees* are a *Tomaud*.

A *Shahee* is reckon'd worth four Pence Sterling, and by that all the rest may be computed.

Our *East India* Company, as a Recompence of the Service they did the *Persians* in taking the Island of *Ormus* from the *Portuguese*, are exempted from all Customs, and Ships trading under their Protection only pay as below:

Two *per Cent.* on the Sale of Goods to the Company.

One *per Cent.* Consolage to the Agent.

One *per Cent.* to the Broker.

Boat or *Franky* Hire for landing Goods, thirty *Mamooda's* for two thousand *Maund-Tabrees*.

Hamalgae or *Cooly* Hire, is one *Coz*, for weighing every twenty *Maund-Tabrees*.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Describes the Face of the Country, and Nature of the Soil; and also gives an Account of the Husbandry and Gardening of the Persians, *with their Plants, Animals, and Minerals; and the Manner of Fishing for Pearl.*

IN *Persia* are more Mountains and Rivers than in any Country in the World, and some of their Mountains are reckon'd the highest upon the Face of the Earth; and amongst them, that Range of Mountains commonly known by the Name of Mount *Taurus*, which stretches itself quite through the Country; the South West Part of them are the highest, and is called Mount *Ararat* in *Armenia*, at the Bottom of which is the City of *Erivan*; they are in about 40 Degrees of Latitude North, and in 43 Degrees of Longitude East from *London*; this is the famous Mountain where *Noah*'s Ark rested on the seventeenth Day of the seventh Month, *Genesis*, viii. 4. after the Waters of the Flood began to abate. There are also very high Mountains between *Gilan* and *Hyrcania*, and *Erack* or *Parthia*, as also between *Fars* or *Parsis*, and *Carmania*, now called *Kerman*, of which Mount *Jarron* is the highest; but they are dry and barren, except those of *Gylan* or *Hyrcania*, and the Mountains of *Curdestan* or *Assyria*, which are cover'd with Wood, and fruitful where cultivated. Here are vast sandy Deserts of several Days Journey, and scarce a Drop of Water; but there are some fruitful Valleys, where their chief Cities are, and it is very fruitful near the *Caspian* Sea.

IT is not altogether the Badness of the Soil which renders *Persia* so barren, but the want of Husbandmen and Managers for their Aqueducts that should convey Water to their Land, they are choak'd up and gone to Ruin; the Soil is a hard Gravel or stiff Clay, and if well water'd, will bear two, or sometimes three Crops in a Year, and when it was well cultivated, was as fruitful a Country as any in the World, and only lost and barren for want of Improvement.

THEY have no Oats, and but little Rye. Rice, Wheat and Barley is the chief Grain; they have in their Gardens much the same Roots and Sallading that we use in *England*; they have twenty several Sorts of Melons, which is the common People's constant Food during their Season; the Gentry have a Way to preserve them under Ground till their Season returns. The best Sort grow in the Province of *Choraffan*, near *Tartary*, and carry'd to *Ispahan* to supply the Court. They have Grapes of several Sorts, and some as large as a great Plumb; but they make their Wine of a little round Grape, of which the best Sort is made at *Sheraz*.

Dates. DATES are no where so good as in *Persia*, and themselves reckon them most delicious Fruit. The Tree they grow upon is slender and tall, and has no Branches but at the top, and they grow in Clusters of thirty or forty Pound Weight; the Tree never bears till it be about fifteen Years old, but when it begins, it will continue bearing above a hundred Years. They have most of the Kinds of *European* Fruit, but they have no Way of improving Fruit-Trees by grafting, inoculating, or the like, and yet they have excellent Apricots, and some of their Nectarins weigh sixteen or eighteen Ounces a Piece; there is a Sort of Apricot called *The Egg of the Sun*; it is red within; they dry and export great Quantities of them; in using them, they boil them with Water, and as it boils the Water thickens with the Juice of the Fruit, and makes a fine sweet Syrup without Sugar.

Fruit. THEY have Apples, Pears, Oranges, Quinces, Pomegranates, &c. and put so great a Value upon Variety of Fruit at their Entertainments, that Mr. *Chardin* reports that he has seen above fifty Sorts of Fruit upon such an Occasion, some of which were fetch'd above three hundred Leagues. They have Nuts, Filberds, Almonds, and Olives, the latter especially in *Hyrcania*, and near the *Caspian* Sea, but they neither know how to preserve them, or extract the Oil: There are also Plantations of Sugar and Tobacco.

Trees. OF Trees they have the Palm and the Cypress; the Mulberry they nurse and cultivate very tenderly, and have large Plantations of them for Food for the Silk-worms; as soon as the Mulberry Trees grow old, they root them up, and plant young ones, because these bring the best and tenderest Leaves. Here are plenty of Sena Trees, whose Leaves we use as Physick; it has a large straight Body, forty or fifty Foot high; the Tree is useful in Building, as common Timber. They have the Trees that yield Gum and Mastick; also the Tree that yields Frankincense, which is very like a Pear-Tree. There are Trees that produce Manna of several Sorts, but the best is large and yellowish. The Tamarisk Tree produces a Sort of a Manna of the same Name: There are Trees whose Leaves drop liquid Manna in Summer-time, which makes the Ground under them fat and greasy, but it has the Taste of other Manna.

BESIDES the Cotton Tree, there is another that yields a kind of a Down, that serves for quilting and stuffing of Pillows; but there are Shrubs of a poisonous Quality, as the *Galbad Samour*, and the *Kerzabree*; the latter grows about six Foot high, and has a Flower like a Sweet-Bryer; but as there are few Trees found in the Mountains of *Persia*, any further Description will be needless.

IN *Hyrcania* they have whole Groves of Orange Trees, Jessamins, and other Vegetables, that produce Flowers; but what is most remarkable is, that in our Winter, *viz.* from *September* to *April*, the whole Country is cover'd with Flowers, and this is the best Time they have for their Fruit. They have abundance of Lillies and Roses, insomuch that they export great Quantities of Rose-water to other Countries.

Drugs. THIS Country affords Plenty of Physical Drugs, as *Cassia*, *Sena*, *Antimony*, *Nux Vomica*, *Gum Arabick*, *Galbanum*, *Sal Armoniack*, and a Sort of *Rhubarb*, with which they Purge their Cattle. The *Persian* Poppies grow about four Foot high; they make little Incisions into the Head of the Poppy, and a thick clammy Liquor ouzes from thence; this they gather before Sun-rising, and is so strong an Opiate, that it will intoxicate the People employ'd about it, and make them Convulsive, or Paralitical: This Liquor, when thus extracted, thickens into a clammy Substance, and at last is capable

capable of being made upon into Pills, and is what we call in *England* Opium.

Aſſafœtida. *Aſſafœtida* diſtils from the Plant call'd *Hiltot*; it thickens after it is drawn, and grows as hard as a Gum; there are white and black Kinds, but the white is reckon'd the beſt; it is of that Nature, that it not only diffuſes its Smell, but will tarniſh any thing that lies near it.

Mummy. *Mummy* is the Bodies of Men or Women embalmed, and having laid under the Earth for ſeveral Ages, becomes as hard as Horn; and whether by Battles formerly fought there, or by what other Means is unknown, that ſo many human Bodies are found in the Sands of *Choraſſen*, or antient *Bactria*; however, they are not only found there in great Plenty, but their very Features, after having been ſo many Years depoſited, remain perfect and diſtinguiſhable.

But there is another Sort of Mummy which diſtils from a Rock, and is a Sort of a Gum, which, they ſay, performs thoſe wonderful Cures which is attributed to the Mummy in *England*.

Camels. Some of the Camels in *Perſia* will carry ſix, ſeven, ſome eight, ſome nine hundred, or a thouſand Weight; but thoſe that carry the moſt ſeldom exceed a Foot-pace, whereas the other will gallop like a Horſe; the Way of loading them is very remarkable, for when they are to take up their Burthen, the Driver touches their Knees, and they knowing what it means, lie down upon their Bellies, though at the ſame Time they expreſs a great uneaſineſs; and when they are loaded, and upon a Journey, they are not chargeable as to their Victuals, and can live two or three Days without Water, which is a vaſt Advantage in thoſe dry ſandy Deſarts, where Water is ſo ſcarce.

Horſes. They have beautiful Horſes in *Perſia*, light and ſprightly; but as Camels are ſo plenty, the Horſes are ſeldom uſed for Burthen, but for the Saddle; they never geld them, nor cut their Tails, which adds to their Beauty; but they are neither ſo ſwift as the *Arabian*, nor ſo hardy as the *Tartar* Horſes; they are ſold from fifty to three hundred Pound a Horſe; but it is not ſo much the Scarcity, as the vaſt Numbers they vend to *India* and *Turkey*, that makes them ſo dear.

Sheep. The *Perſian* Sheep are remarkable for their large Tails, of which that in *Greenwich Park*, by ſome call'd a *Turkey Ram*, is an Inſtance; but ſome of them have Tails that will weigh ten or twelve, and ſome ſay twenty Pound Weight; and ſome of them have ſix or ſeven Horns, promiſcuouſly diſpoſed forwards or upwards, as Nature can find room or uſe for them.

They have ſometimes ſuch Swarms of Locuſts, that in flying they darken the Air like a Cloud, and where they alight they deſtroy the Fruits of the Earth; but there are temporary Birds, whoſe Seaſon of appearing is at the ſame Time with that of the Locuſts, and who eat them up, and ſo prevent the Ruin of the Country: *But I do not find there are any ſuch Birds in* England, *that deſtroy the Caterpillars, and other pernicious Creatures, ſo prejudicial not only to the Gardeners, but to other People in* England.

The Coaſt of the *Caſpian* Sea is very much infeſted with Serpents, Toads, Scorpions, *&c.* which dying in the Summer, for want of Moiſture, infect the Air, and make it unwholſome. There is a white Fly, no bigger than a Flea, which makes no Noiſe, the Sting is like the Prick of a Pin; there are alſo abundance of Multipedes of a pernicious venomous Nature; they have Geeſe, Hens, Ducks Partridges, Snipes, *&c.* like ours; they are very induſtrious to improve their Pidgeons, becauſe their Dung is of ſuch great uſe in raiſing their Melons, that it is ſold at three Pound for a Penny. The Pelican is Plenty here; they have a Body as big as a Sheep, a ſmall Head, but a Bill half a Yard long, and as thick as a Man's Arm, under which is a large Bag, which will hold a great Quantity of Water; they build and breed in the Deſarts, far from the Water, to avoid being diſturb'd by the Inhabitants, and fetch Water for their Young in the ſaid Bag, which will hold enough to laſt ſome Time.

Fowls. There are abundance of Eagles, Hawks, and other Birds of Prey, ſo frequently brought up for the Game, that few of any Figure are without them; and how they bring them up to it we intimated in *Chap.* III. towards the latter End. Sparrows are very numerous and troubleſome in deſtroying the Corn when the Harveſt approaches. Water is very ſcarce, and conſequently but few Fiſh, for of the few Rivers they have, moſt of them ſink before they find any viſible Way into the Sea, by Reaſon of the exceſſive Heat and Sandineſs of the Country; there are Plenty of Sea-Fiſh in the *Caſpian* Sea and *Perſian* Gulf, and freſh Water Fiſh in the Rivers *Kur* and *Arras*, but they are all ſo far from *Iſpahan*, that Fiſh is very dear eating there.

Minerals. They have good Mines of Steel, Iron, Lead, and Copper; their Steel being ſo brittle, and they not underſtanding how to temper it, is the Cauſe why they can make no Springs, nor conſequently Gun-Locks or Watches, or any thing that requires Springs, as was hinted towards the Beginning of *Chap.* V. ſpeaking of their Mechanicks. They dig Sulphur and Salt-petre in the Mountains which ſeparate *Hyrcania* from *Erack*. There is a Baſtard Sort of Antimony in *Carmania*: There is a Sort of a Salt ſo hard, that they uſe it as Stone to build their Cottages with: There is white, black, and red Marble; the beſt comes from *Tauris*, and is white mix'd with green, and is almoſt as tranſparent as Chryſtal. There is abundance of Bole-Armoniack, and Sort of Marl, which they uſe inſtead of Soap; there are alſo Mines of Iſing-Glaſs: But the moſt valuable Mines in *Perſia* are thoſe where the *Turquois* Stones are found, one of which is at *Niſhapour* in the Province of *Choraſſan*, and another in the Mountains between *Erack* and *Hyrcania*; they have lately found another, but the Stones are not quite ſo good.

Fiſhing for Pearl. And now we ſhall, according to our Promiſe, conclude this Chapter with ſome Account of the Pearl-Fiſhery, and the Way of managing it.

In the *Perſian* Gulf, it is reckon'd, was formerly the beſt Pearl-Fiſhery in the World, but it is now made little uſe of; but whether the Pearl-Oyſters (call'd *Nacres*) be exhauſted, or whether the preſent Indolence of the *Perſians*, or laſtly, whether it is becauſe the *Arabians* have now the chief fiſhing Iſlands of *Babaren*, and the adjacent Iſlands in Poſſeſſion, and neither will purſue the Fiſhery themſelves, nor ſuffer the *Perſians* to do it; I ſay, which of theſe Reaſons, or whether ſome other be the Cauſe of this Decay of that Fiſhery, is uncertain; but ſure we are, it is now dwindled to little or nothing: However, as it has been ſo very famous, and probably may revive again, take the following Account of the Way of Fiſhing for Pearl.

There are two Seaſons a Year wherein this Fiſhing is practicable, *viz.* one Seaſon is in *March* and *April*, and the other in *Auguſt* and *September*; but this latter is the chief Seaſon; for ſome Travellers, that give Account of the Fiſhing Seaſon, do not mention the former at all, probably becauſe they were not there at that Seaſon; but be that how it will, the Method of performing is the ſame. When the Fiſhery was in its moſt flouriſhing State, there were ſometimes two or three thouſand Boats near the Iſland *Babaren*, which is about the Middle of the *Perſian* Gulf, and neareſt to the *Arabian* Shore; there is in every

Boat a Diver, who (when the Boat is brought to an Anchor, in about five Fathom Water) ſtrips himſelf naked, and having fix'd a Piece of Horn upon his Noſe, to pinch it gently together, to keep the Water out, and tied a Stone to his Foot to ſink him immediately, and taking a Net or a Basket with him, there is one Rope faſtened to him under his Arms, and another to the Basket. Then he ſlips the Rope that faſtened the Stone to his Foot, and falls to Work to gather up the Oyſters at the Bottom, putting them into his Net or Baſket; and when he has remain'd under Water as long as he can, he makes a Sign to thoſe that attend him in the Boat, to draw him up, and after he is ſafe in the Boat, they draw up the Basket, while he ſmoaks his Pipe, or otherwiſe refreſhes himſelf, and then goes down as before, and continues to repeat the Performance from about eight till eleven in the Morning; and after about an Hour for Dinner, begins the ſame Work of diving again, and holds till about three, and towards Evening they carry their Oyſters aſhore and lay them on Heaps, and when they begin to dry they open themſelves, and the Men ſeek diligently for the Pearls, which the *Banians* and *Armenians* purchaſe, and ſort them, and diſpoſe of them to a great Advantage.

CHAP. VII.

Gives an Account of the Language and Characters of the Perſians; *alſo of their Learning, Hiſtory, and Chronology.*

Language. BESIDES the *Perſian* Language itſelf, there is ſpoke the *Arabick* and the *Turkiſh*, and alſo another ſpoken by the *Gaurs* or *Guebres*, the Deſcendants of the ancient *Perſians*, or Worſhippers of Fire. The *Arabick* is the learned Language, and in it their valuable Books are written, as the Alchoran, and their Books of Divinity, Philoſophy, Morality and Phyſick: But, it ſeems, that the Language of the ancient *Perſians* is not underſtood by the *Arabians* or *Turks*, becauſe they do not underſtand the Inſcriptions yet remaining at the Ruins of the once famous *Perſepolis*; nor indeed are the Characters uſed by the preſent *Gaurs* the ſame as thoſe at *Perſepolis*, though theſe *Gaurs* deſcended from thoſe ancient *Perſians*; nor need this ſurprize us, if we conſider, our Print in *England* now differs both in the Characters and Spelling from what was printed two hundred and fifty, or near three hundred Years ago.

THE common Language now uſed in *Perſia*, participates of the Languages of the ſeveral Nations that have conquer'd them, or trade with them; as is the Caſe in *England*, where we have been conquer'd by ſo many different Nations, and participated of their Language, that moſt *Engliſh* People are, in a great Meaſure, if not intirely Ignorant of the *Welſh* or ancient *Britiſh* Language; which moſt Hiſtorians allow is either the Original, or, at leaſt, the moſt ancient Language that we have any Specimens of, that was ſpoke in this Iſland; and ſo far has the *Engliſh* prevail'd, eſpecially in South *Wales*, that in ſeveral Years Travelling there, I do not remember one School in any Market Town, but where *Engliſh* was Taught: Nor do they think a Gentleman is qualified to converſe even with their own Gentry, if he have not had *Engliſh* Education; but more of this when we come to the Hiſtory and Deſcription of *England* and *Wales*.

FOR the Reaſon above-mention'd, the *Perſian* Language is compounded of *Turkiſh*, *Tartars*, *Arabs*, and of *Europeans*, *High Dutch*, *French*, and *Engliſh*; and ſome *Engliſh* Travellers ſay, there is more of the *Engliſh* than any other; but that perhaps may be becauſe they underſtood *Engliſh* when they heard it, better than any of the reſt; they borrow ſome from the *Greek* and *Latin*, as we do in *England*, but they have more *Arabick* than any other.

Letters. THEY have eight and twenty Letters, amongſt which they have but one Vowel, *viz. Aliſ*, it ſounds like our *a*, but the Letters *you* and *ye* are by different Accents ſounded either as Vowels or Conſonants. They have no Stops nor Paragraphs, but diſtinguiſh a new Clauſe or Sentence, by beginning it with a Capital Letter.

THEIR Paper is made of Rags of Silk and Cotton, but not comparable to ours, being neither ſo white nor ſo thick, and will bear but on one Side. Their Pen is made of a ſmall Reed inſtead of a Quill, and whatever Language they write, they uſe the *Arabick* Characters, as we do the *Engliſh* in writing *Latin*, *French*, or *Welſh*.

THEY are very tender of burning Paper, or putting it to any ſervile Uſe, becauſe as writ upon, they ſay, the Name of God may happen to be writ upon it; or, if not writ upon, yet it may ſerve to write that Name, or ſomething ſacred upon. Their Books are all in Manuſcript, the Art of Printing not yet being known, or at leaſt practiced among them: They excel in writing, and uſe eight ſeveral Hands, which altogether are call'd the *Nesky*, and he is no more reckon'd an accompliſh'd Writer there, that can write only ſome of the Hands, and cannot write the whole *Nesky*, or all the eight Hands, than he would be with us that could only write ſome of the Letters of the Alphabet, but cannot write them all. They never uſe Desk or Table to write upon, but lay the Paper on their Hand, and yet are prodigiouſly expeditious in the Diſpatch of Buſineſs; they write not as we do, but from the Right to the Left, and their Lines Curve like a Bow. Writing is ſo great a Buſineſs, that the Clerks ſtrive to out-do one another in writing cheap to get Buſineſs, as is the Caſe in ſome Trades or Occupations with us, which has brought the Buſineſs of Writing to be a very poor Employment.

Arithmetick. THEY uſe Figures in Arithmetick as we do, and the ſame firſt four Rules, Addition, Subſtraction, Multiplication, and Diviſion, but know nothing of the Rule of Three, or any Rule above it. The *Perſian* Magi were ſo expert in Aſtronomy, that it was thought by the Vulgar, they dealt with infernal Spirits; but Arts and Sciences being cultivated, and become more common among the Curious and Studious, thoſe ignorant People are now undeceiv'd, and even the Artiſts ſurprized that they ſhould formerly be ſo ignorant in the late Improvements in Aſtronomy and Coſmography; for it is but a few Years ſince, that a *European* brought a Pair of Globes to *Iſpahan*, of the Uſes of either of which they were intirely Ignorant.

THEY

THEY, as well as other Eaſtern Countries, have a great Belief in judicial Aſtrology, and call the twelve Signs by the ſame Names as we do, which doubtleſs we had from thoſe Eaſtern Countries, not they from us. Aſtrology is ſo much encouraged here, even by the Government, that the King's Head Aſtrologer has ten thouſand Pounds a Year, and there are ſo many inferior Poſts under him, that the whole annual Penſion paid them all is no leſs than four hundred thouſand Pounds a Year; and yet they cannot always predict future Events, even relating immediately to themſelves. For there being once ſome State Criminals to be cut to pieces, and the King and all the great Men preſent to ſee the Execution, and the chief Aſtrologer being among the Spectators, he (it is ſuppoſed, not able to ſee ſuch inhuman Barbarity,) ſhut his Eyes at every Stroak of the Sabre, which the King obſerving, and ſuppoſing it proceeded from his diſlike of the inhuman Sentence, order'd a Governor of a Province, which ſat near the Aſtrologer, to put his Eyes out, which he accordingly did: But doubtleſs had the poor blind Aſtrologer fore-known any thing of his impending Fate, he would either have ſtaid away from the Execution, or have kept his Eyes open to have ſaved them. They alſo uſe Charms, and truſt very much to lucky and unlucky Days to undertake Buſineſs.

Poetry. THEY have ſuch poetical Paſſions and Fancies, that moſt of their beſt Pieces are written in Verſe: Every great Man keeps a Poet in his Family, and any Entertainment is deem'd imperfect if they have not a Poet to divert them with his Compoſitions; and the Caſe is the ſame in Coffee-houſes and other Places of publick Reſort; where they always think the Converſation as lame without a Poet, as a Country Wedding would be thought in *England* without a Fidler or a Piper; and indeed ſo much is Poetry eſteem'd there, that they think the beſt Way to rivet the remarkable Actions of their Princes and great Men in the Memories of the People, is to record them in Verſe, which is the Practice accordingly.

THEY are no great Proficients in ſinging or daning, it being reckon'd ſcandalous among People of Faſhion to ſuffer their Children to learn either; and they that have acquired thoſe merry Qualifications, are look'd upon as common Proſtitutes, if they have ſo much Aſſurance as to exerciſe them publickly; and Muſick is as little eſteem'd for the ſame Reaſon; but they uſe Drums, and a Sort of Trumpet ſeven or eight Foot long, and wide at the End in proportion; with theſe they ſound at certain Hours to let the People know the Time of the Day or Night, they having no Bells to anſwer that Purpoſe; they alſo uſe theſe Drums and Trumpets to give Notice of the King or any great Man's going out of his Palace, or upon any other like Occaſion, which requires ſuch publick Notice.

Geography. THEY formerly thought that only the upper Part of the Earth (as they call'd it) was inhabited, or, that the habitable Part of the Earth, was only like the upper or viſible Part of an Orange ſwimming in the Water, ſuppoſing themſelves to be upon the Vertex or uppermoſt Point of the ſaid Part of the Globe, and that there were no Antipodes; but they are convinced to the contrary, ſince the *Europeans* have found the Way to them about the *Cape of good Hope*.

Hiſtory. THEY know very little of the Hiſtory of their own Country, much leſs of *Europe* or any remote Regions. *Ferdous*'s Hiſtory of their Kings in Verſe, is indeed good Poetry, but poor Hiſtory, and conſidering it was writ, as they ſay, in the Beginning of the fifth Age, according to Mahometan *Æra*, the Credit of it is very dubious.

Their Year. THEY differ in their Accounts of the Year; ſome reckon twelve Moons to the Year, but others begin the Year at the Sun's Entrance into *Aries*; which doubtleſs is a more proper Beginning of the Year than that we uſe, either the firſt of *January* or the twenty fifth of *March*, except we allow the Probability of the Sun's having formerly enter'd *Aries* on the twenty fifth of *March*, and that its being now come back to the tenth or ninth is owing to an Error in the *Engliſh* Account, as was proved in *Gadbury's Ephemeris* for the Year 1729. Their *Epocha* commences with the Year of *Chriſt* 622; which Year they call the *Heriga*, which ſignifies Retreat or Flight, becauſe this Year he was forced to flee from *Mecca*, his native Place, on account of the new Religion he broach'd, and the Doctrines he advanc'd.

BUT as, beſides thoſe common Accounts of Time by the Year, the *Greeks* computed their Time by *Olympiads*, the *Romans* by *Indictions*, the *Jews* by *Jubilees*, ſo the *Perſians* have a Revolution of four Years, ſo that forty Years is ten of thoſe Revolutions. Their Sabbath is on the ſeventh Day, but they begin their Week on the Saturday, ſo that their Sabbath is on our *Friday*.

THEY have no Clocks or Watches to divide Time, or give the Hour, but they have as in ſome other Eaſtern Countries, a Brazen Veſſel (which we have deſcribed before in the Hiſtory of thoſe Countries,) with a Hole in it, ſo contrived, that when it is ſet in the Water, the Water comes into it, as into a leaky Boat, and juſt in three Hours Time it takes in as much as will ſink it, and then he that watches it, immediately takes it up from the Bottom, and ſets it afloat again, and gives Notice by his great Trumpet, that the Watch, or three Hours, is expired.

THE Aſtrologers (before ſpoke of) and the Phyſicians are equally encouraged, and equally uſeleſs, and, I may add, equally concern'd in deluding their credulous Votaries and Employers; for when a Perſon is ſick, the Phyſician is conſulted, and preſcribes a Remedy, but before he takes or applies it, the Aſtrologer is likewiſe conſulted to tell them the proper Minute for that purpoſe; if it ſucceed, and either make a Cure, or give any Eaſe, they both come off with Applauſe, as our Aſtrologers do; who being ask'd whether the Man or his Wife ſhall die firſt, is cry'd up for an Oracle if he hits right but once in three Times, though he had an equal Chance in his Favour; but if the Doctor's Patient dies, or finds no Benefit, the Aſtrologer charges the Phyſician with a Miſtake in his Preparation, and the Doctor charges the Aſtrologer with a Miſtake in his Calculation, ſo between them the deluded Patient ſuffers, while they each defend himſelf, and the ſuffering Patient, or his Survivors, are equally ignorant who to blame. Phyſicians.

BUT though they ſeldom let Blood, and never give Clyſters, yet Bathing is much uſed among them, for which they have very good Conveniencies; the Bath having three Rooms, which receive their Light from little round Quarries of Glaſs fix'd in the arch'd Roof; the firſt is a great Room with Benches, where they undreſs and put on their Bathing Cloaths; the ſecond has a large ſquare Room, in which is fix'd a Copper fill'd with Water, with a great Fire under the Bottom of it, in the Room under that where the Copper is; the Copper is cover'd cloſe, and the boiling Water in it diffuſes Heat all over the Room where it is, where being kept continually hot, it makes the Room anſwer the Purpoſe of a Bagnio; and in the third is Conveniency for bathing. The Men and Women bathe all in the ſame Place, but not at the ſame Time; the Men's Time is from Day-break till Four in the Afternoon, and the Women from thence till Midnight; the Men are attended by Men Servants, and when the Men's Time of bathing is over, and the Women begin, they are attended by Servants of their own Sex. Bathing.

ONE

ONE would think by the Excellent Painting to be ſeen in *Perſia*, and the ordinary Work they now perform there, that ſome Branches of that Art have been loſt, as Painting upon Glaſs is in a great meaſure, if not quite, in *England*. They delight more in Invention than Nature in their Painting, and make *Harlequin* miſ-ſhapen Figures, and indeed it is no wonder that imitating of Nature by Painting or Engraving declines ſo much, if we conſider that the repreſenting of created Animals is forbidden by their Doctors; but tho' the want of Practice may be a Hindrance to their Painting of living Creatures, yet they paint Flowers pretty well, as not being reſtrain'd from that Branch of Painting, as having more lively Colours to do it with, and a drier Air to do it in than we have.

Schools. THERE are plenty of Schools in *Perſia*, where they learn their Mother Tongue the *Perſian*, and alſo the *Arabick*, which is their learned Language; the Alchoran is reckon'd by them the Standard of good Language: Their Method of Education is like ours in *England*, firſt to learn their Mother Tongue (the *Perſian*) and then the learned Language (the *Arabick*,) which when they have learned, as alſo writing and Accounts, they are ſent to the Colleges. *Medres* or Colleges; ſome of which are large and well endow'd, and moſtly by the publick Benefaction of the King or great Men; moſt of theſe Charities being laid out in publick Foundations, as Caravanſera's to lodge Strangers *gratis*; it is alſo Cuſtomary with them to apply theſe Charities to the purchaſing of a Bagnio, a Coffee-houſe, a Market-place, and the like, and let them out at an eaſy Rent, and apply the Income to the Maintenance of the Colleges and Students. And yet thoſe charitable Deſigns are there, as in other Places, often abuſed; for there are ſometimes ſome of the pretended Scholars ſo idle, that they will endeavour to make Friends and get into the College without any Deſign to ſtudy, but to participate of the Maintenance, and to live a Life of Lazineſs and Indulgence, or, as there are ſome Profeſſors ſo charitable to read Lectures *gratis*, the indolent Students apply to them, and ſave their Money to indulge their Luxury.

BUT the induſtrious Students of acquired Parts and Learning and ſober Behaviour, may have good Salaries in great Men's Houſes for educating their Children; for Gentlemen and People of Fortune are ſo careful in the Education of their Children, that they had rather be at the Charge of having it done at home under their immediate Care, than expoſe them to the various, and ſometimes vicious Tempers which they muſt be obliged to converſe with at the publick Colleges.

CHAP. VIII.

Treats of the Eſtabliſhment of the preſent Royal Family, and of the Prerogative of the Perſian *Kings, with the Succeſſion of the Crown of* Perſia.

THE *Perſians*, but eſpecially the Clergy, are of Opinion that none but Prophets, or their Deſcendants, or Subſtitutes, have any right to govern, alledging in Defence of this Opinion, that *Abraham*, *Moſes*, *Samuel*, *David*, *Solomon*, and next to them they rank *Mahomet*, *Haly*, and the twelve *Imans*, as the *Perſians* aſſert, who were all Prophets as well as Supremes or Governors.

BUT I ſhall not enter into the Merit of this Aſſertion, but give account of the Riſe and Eſtabliſhment of the preſent Royal Family, as I have done in that of *India* or the Great Mogul, and other Countries.

Original of the Royal Family. WHEN *Tamerlane* had defeated *Bajazet*, he return'd through *Perſia* with great Numbers of *Perſian* and *Turkiſh* Captives; but *Cheik Aider*, a Doctor in Law, of great Reputation for his Sanctity among the Mahometans, obtain'd of him a Releaſe for moſt of his Priſoners; which ſo increas'd the Fame of the Doctor, that when *Tamerlane* march'd away, the Doctor, *Cheik Aider*, began to entertain ſome Thoughts of aſſuming the Government, and in order to pave his Way the ſmoother to that Deſign, he gave out that he deſcended from the above-mention'd *Haly*, the immediate Succeſſor of *Mahomet*, and took upon him the Title or Name of *Caliph*, which ſignifying a Prieſt as well as a Prince, this looks as prophetick, according to the Notions of Government above-mention'd, as if he had been the only Perſon, both by Deſcent and Function, that was cut out for that Purpoſe. *Iſmael Sophi*, the Son of the ſaid *Aider* or Doctor, follow'd the Steps of his Father, and being ſucceſsful in ſeveral Battles, he accompliſh'd what his Father had begun, and eſtabliſhing himſelf in the Government, is reckon'd the firſt King of this preſent Royal Family of *Perſia*.

THE next that ſucceeded *Iſmael Sophi* was *Shaw Thomas*, but being a cruel Prince he was depoſed, and ſucceeded by his Brother *Mahomet Codabundi*; who was as weak as his Brother was cruel; how long he reign'd is uncertain, but he made no Figure in the World, but only being the Father and Predeceſſor of *Shaw Abbas* that ſucceeded him. *Shaw Thom.*

Shaw Abbas enlarged the Empire on every Side, he took the Province of *Candahor* from the Great Mogul, he conquer'd the Kingdoms of *Lar* and *Ormus*, and almoſt expell'd the *Turk* out of *Armenia* and *Georgia*, he encourag'd all Arts and Sciences; and as he did not find the *Perſians* at all enclin'd to Foreign Trade, he tranſplanted the *Armenians* of *Zulpha* to *Iſpahan*, and made them his Factors and Merchants in every Part of *Europe* and *Aſia* where there was any Trade: and as he obſerved the Pilgrims to *Mecca* carried abundance of Treaſure out of his Dominions, he went himſelf a Pilgrimage to the Tomb of *Imaurezez*, which was in his own Dominions of *Perſia*, thinking by his Example to induce his Subjects to carry their pious Benevolence there, that the Money might circulate in his own Country. He puniſh'd Fraud and Injuſtice ſo ſeverely, that he cauſed a Cook to be roaſted alive, and a Baker to be bak'd in his own Oven for keeping falſe Weights, and made many other Examples of that kind. *Shaw Abbas.*

BUT in ſome Caſes his Juſtice and Severity amounted to Cruelty, of which his own Son, *Sophi Mirza*, was a fatal Inſtance; who in his Youth was not ſhut up in the *Haram* or Seraglio, as was uſual, but attended his Father in all his Wars, and was look'd upon as one of the greateſt Generals of his Time; and as he frequently commanded in the moſt dangerous Enterprizes he became extremely popular in the Army, and gain'd the Love of the People

People to ſuch a Degree, that the King his Father begun to be jealous, that of a General, he would become his Rival; which Fears increas'd ſo much, that, in ſhort, the King did not think himſelf ſafe while his Son was alive: As to the Cauſe of thoſe Apprehenſions of the King, ſome ſay it proceeded only from his own Surmiſes, as being ſo conſcious of his own Cruelty, and afraid that the Hearts of his Subjects would, for that Reaſon, be ſet againſt him; but others go further, and ſay, that for the Reaſons above, the principal Chans had actually offer'd to depoſe *Shaw Abbas*, and advance *Sephi Mirza* to the Throne; but which Way ſoever it was, *Shaw Abbas* was reſolved to make himſelf eaſy, and ſo commanded a Nobleman, who attended him, to bring him *Sephi Mirza*'s Head.

This Nobleman, not caring to be the Executioner of ſo tragical a Scene, deſired to be excuſed; but another Courtier, named *Bebut Bey*, not regarding the Cruelty of the Action, but thinking thereby to ingratiate himſelf into the King's Favour, readily offer'd his Service, and by the King's Order, ſurprized *Sephi Mirza* as he came out of the Bagnio, having but only one Page, and acquainted him, that it was his Father's Pleaſure that he ſhould die, and without further warning, threw him down; the poor young Prince would have expoſtulated with the Ruſſian, to know what he had done to deſerve ſuch a violent and unforeſeen Death, but all in vain, for immediately *Bebut* ſtabb'd him with a Poniard, and then cut off his Head and carried it to his Father.

The People were no ſooner acquainted with this Piece of Barbarity, but they aſſembled at the Palace Gate, and were inclined to a general Inſurrection; *Sephi Mirza*'s Mother alſo upbraided the King with his Cruelty, and in a Tranſport of Paſſion flew in his Face; all this he took very patiently, and was ſo far from reſenting it, that he begun to conſider what he had done, and only asked her, what ſhe would have had him do, when there was a Conſpiracy againſt his Life? And adding, that it was done, and could not be recall'd; but that if it was to do again, it never ſhould be done; and ſo pacifying himſelf and the Queen, as well as he could, he thought there was no Way to make Atonement for the Blood of his injured Son, but to execute immediate Revenge upon thoſe who had adviſed him to the inhuman Murder; and thereupon, pretending to have recover'd himſelf a little from his Grief, he made a Feaſt, and invited all the *Perſian* Lords, who had been Buſy to inſtil thoſe Notions of Jealouſy againſt his Son into his Head; and, after Supper, mixing Poiſon with their Wine, he ſaw them every one expire before his Face.

But as a Puniſhment in ſome Sort of the ſame Nature with the Crime of *Bebut Bey*, who was ſo very officious to offer his Service to be the Executioner of *Sephi Mirza*, he order'd him to cut off the Head of his own Son, and bring it to him; which, to his great Grief, he did, which when the King ſaw, he mildly told him; *Now you are ſenſible of the Grief I undergo for the Cruelty you ſo readily offer'd your Service to commit*; but we do not read of any further Puniſhment inflicted upon him. *Shaw Abbas* having reigned about forty Years, died in the Year 1628, appointing *Shaw Sephi*, the Son of *Sephi Mirza*, to be his Succeſſor. *Shaw Abbas dies.*

Shaw Sephi. *Shaw Sephi* was not above fifteen Years old when he came to the Crown, and being ſo young, the Adminiſtration of the Government continued in much the ſame Condition and Hands in which his Grandfather left it; but when he came to Man's Eſtate, and ſenſible of his Power, he call'd his chief Miniſters to a ſevere Account for cutting off the Head of *Ali Couli Chan*, Viceroy of *Perſia*, who had deſerv'd well of his Country, and contributed as much as any General to the Conqueſts that were made in the late Reign. He alſo ſent for the Heads of his three Sons, and of ſeven other Lords to Court. His Reign was violent and tyrannical, and he drank to that Exceſs, that in one of his Debauches he kill'd the Queen, for which he expreſt ſo great a Concern when he was cool, that he prohibited the drinking of Wine in any Part of his Dominions; but in leſs than a Year's Time he fell to his old Exceſs, and died in a Debauch, when he had reign'd fourteen Years.

Shaw Abbas II. the ſecond Son of *Shaw Sephi*, ſucceeded him when he was about twelve Years of Age: He was a brave Prince, and hoſpitable to Strangers, eſpecially Chriſtians; but he was ſo violently addicted to his hereditary Vice of Drunkenneſs, that he cauſed three of his Women to be burnt, becauſe they would not drink ſo long as he did. He died in the Year 1664, after he had reign'd about two and twenty Years. *Shaw Abbas* II.

Shaw Sephi II. ſucceeded him, but the Grandees apprehending that this Prince had been dead, were about to advance his younger Brother *Hamzel Mirza* to the Throne, till an old Eunuch aſſured them, that *Shaw Sephi* was alive. This Prince took upon him the Name of *Solyman*; 'tis obſerved, that in his Reign the Kingdom of *Perſia* was afflicted with Famine, War, and epidemical Diſtempers; but his Government was much milder than that of his Predeceſſors. He died the 29th of *July* 1694, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Shaw Sultan Hoſſein*, who after a long and indolent Reign, was depoſed by *Mahamood* the Son of *Mereways*, of which you have already had a full Account in *Chap* IV. of this Hiſtory of *Perſia*, to which we refer the Readers.

The King of *Perſia* is an abſolute Monarch, and has the Lives and Eſtates of his Subjects entirely at his Diſpoſal; there need be no legal Proſecution or Evidence of the Fact; but if in his Caprice he paſſes Sentence, it muſt be immediately executed, though the Life of his Queen, or of his Son, and intended Succeſſor, lies at Stake, as has been juſt now inſtanc'd in the Murder of *Sephi Mirza*, by Order of *Shaw Abbas*; alſo of *Shaw Sephi* killing his Queen, and *Shaw Abbas* II. ordering three of his Women to be burnt, for no other Crime, but becauſe they would not drink ſo long as he did; and theſe Severities are commonly exerciſed upon Domeſticks or Courtiers, ſo that the moſt remote and obſcure of his Subjects are in leſs Danger of thoſe Severities and Oppreſſions ſuffer'd at Court, but yet he is ſo modeſt as to make his Commands ſubſervient to the divine Laws, and does not think that they are obliged to obey him, if his Commands are inconſiſtent with any Branch of their Religion.

Mr. *Chardin*, and other Writers, gives us an Inſtance of this in a Prime Miniſter in the *Perſian* Court, whom the King commanded to drink with him, but he excuſed himſelf, alledging that he had been a Pilgrimage to *Mecca*; but the King in his Cups, not regarding that Excuſe, cauſed his Servants to throw it into his Face and Boſom, and to pour it into his Mouth by Force, and he perſiſting in his Refuſal, the King threatened him with immediate Death; to which he mildly anſwer'd, *That he own'd the King had a Right to his Life, but not to his Religion; and that he would willingly reſign his Life rather than his Religion, and conſequently, would rather die than drink:* For which, though the King did not kill him, he diſcarded him, but with Regret; and when he conſider'd what he had done in puniſhing him for his Zeal to Religion, he reſtored him to his Place, and valued him more than ever, for his Conſtancy.

But there is another particular Piece of Tyranny in the *Persian* Government, and that is, the executing the Governors of Provinces by the King's arbitrary Command, without charging them with any Crime, or giving them Leave to plead for themselves; and the Manner of doing it is as strange, for the King two or three times a Year sends every Governor the *Calaat*, which is commonly a Royal Vest; and this is sent by some Court Favourite, because it is expected that the Governor to whom it is sent should make a handsome Present to the Messenger. When he comes within two or three Miles of the Governor's Residence, he sends to him to come to receive the *Calaat*, which is so made up, that the Messenger himself knows not what it is, only thinking it is the fine Coat, but it sometimes proves a Halter when they open the Parcel; and if so, the Messenger is obliged to execute the Governor without hearing any Defence, or either Party knowing the Reason of the Sentence; which put the Governor under dreadful Apprehensions when he meets the Messenger to open the *Calaat*.

The *Persians* plead in Defence of this barbarous Practice, that it is never used but upon some extraordinary Suspicion of a Design against the King or Government, and that, in such Cases, if they were allow'd Time for a legal Trial, the Party might in the mean Time come to a Head, and rescue their rebellious Leader, which by this means is prevented; but this sudden Severity awes the Governors, and makes them not only fearful to rebel, but to do any thing that can be construed as such.

The King has no Privy Council, or Council of State, but is according to the Constitution, advised by the Prime Minister and great Officers: Notwithstanding which, his Women in the *Haram* have so great a Sway, that he will reject the Advice of his proper Counsellors, and indulge them.

The Crown of *Persia* is hereditary, but the Heiresses or Females of the Line are excluded; but if the Succession is intercepted by a Woman, yet if she come in the Place of the next Heir, and be excluded only upon the Account of her Sex, in such a Case her Son may inherit, if she have one, though she could not. It is a positive Law there, that no blind Man shall enjoy the Crown; and hence comes that barbarous Practice there, as well as in some other Places, of putting out the Eyes of some of the young Princes, which, as they pretend, is done to prevent War and Bloodshed in contending for the Crown; so that Children born of poor Parents are much happier in that Respect than the Sons of the Royal Family.

The Crown, according to Right of Succession, always falls to the King's eldest Son, but if the King have a Mind to interrupt the Succession, and settle the Crown upon the next, or even upon the youngest Son, he disqualifies all that are elder than the intended Successor, by putting out their Eyes; and by thus ending all Disputes, the youngest, or he which the King intended should succeed, mounts the Throne at the King's Decease, without Opposition.

As the Princesses of the Royal Blood are by their Sex excluded from Government, they never are so barbarously blinded, but they are commonly married to some dignified Ecclesiastick, but never to a Minister of State, or a Man of the Sword, lest his marrying into the Royal Family should inspire him with rebellious Sentiments, and create in him an Ambition to aspire after the Crown.

CHAP. IX.

Gives an Account of the Arms of Persia, *and of the pompous Titles that the King of* Persia *assumes.*

Arms. Titles.

THE King of *Persia*'s Arms is a Lion Couchant, looking back at the Sun as it rises. His usual Title is *Shaw*, or *Patshaw*, which rendred in *English*, is Disposer of Kingdoms, and is the highest Title used in *Asia*: But to make his Title, and, as they think, his Dignity the more complete, they add the Title of *Sultan*, and also of *Chan*, or *Cham*, which is the Title of the *Tartar* Sovereigns. The King never subscribes his Name to Acts of State, but gives his Sanction at the Head of it to this Purpose; *This Act (or Edict) is given by him whom the Universe obeys.* The last King but one, in his Letters, stil'd himself, *Victorious Lord of the World, the most valiant Prince, descended from* Cheik Sephi Moulla, *and* Hessein. Some of them, when they grant Patents, enumerate the several Kingdoms and Provinces under their Dominion; and as the King of *Spain* stiles himself, *King of Castile, Leon, Arragon*, &c. so the King of *Persia* calls himself King of the several Provinces of *Persia*, as, *King of Parthia, Media, Hyrcania*, &c. and sometimes *King of Kings*, for they give all the Viceroys of their respective Provinces the Title of *Cham*, or *Sovereign*.

When his Subjects address him, they call him, *The most renowned of all Men living; the Source of Power, Majesty, and Glory; equal to the Sun; Substitute of Heaven; Object of all Men's Vows; Master of the Conjunctions; Head of the most excellent Religion; Prince of the faithful Shadow of the Almighty God; Father of Victory; Lord of the Revolution of the World; thrice happy Sultan* Hossein Patshaw, *descended from* Sephi Moulla, *and* Hessein, *Disposer of Thrones and Crowns*, &c. These are the Titles with which they address him in their Petitions sent to him; but those that are admitted to his Presence to address or petition him, call him the *Lieutenant of God*, the Prince by whom God dispenses his Grace and Favour to Men. Those of the Blood Royal, and not arrived at the Throne, are call'd *Mirza*, added to their other Title, as *Sophi Mirza Ibraham Mirza*, *Mirza* being a Title common to the Son of a King, as the Title Prince is with us.

State Officers.

The *Persians* prefer all Men indifferently to Posts or Places of Trust, according to their Merit and Capacity, either in the State or the Army; sometimes Ecclesiasticks are made Generals, and Soldiers sit as Judges; and the High Priest is sometimes Prime Minister at the same Time. The King does not regard a Person's Birth or Fortune, as a Condition of his Promotion, but only his Integrity and Capacity, and other Branches of Merit; and doubtless was all other Nations as well as they to consult Merit, as the chief Condition

of

of Preferment, without regard to Parentage or Interest, there would be more compleatly accomplish'd Officers than now, and Industry and Integrity would be more encouraged and practised, when People know it will be rewarded; they enjoy their Posts during Life, and sometimes they are made Hereditary, according to Behaviour.

Creating great Officers.

When a great Man is to be invested with a Place of Trust, his Commission is sent him in a Purse of Gold Brocade, and with it the Calaat, or rich Habit which he always gives at the first investing a Person with Power, as well as two or three Times a Year, as has been observed before, and if he be a Sword's-Man, he is presented with a broad Sword and Poniard, set with precious Stones; and the Officer thus equipp'd with his new Dress, and the other Accoutrements, attends at Court, and when the King appears, he prostrates himself three times before him, with his Face to the Ground, and then rises and takes his Place, according to his Dignity, in the Presence Chamber. When a Person falls under Disgrace, and is to be degraded, the King sends for his Commission, or the Seal of his Office, according as his Place is; but if it is but a trifling Crime, he is commonly restor'd to his Place in a small Time.

Chief Minister.

The chief Minister in the Kingdom is call'd in that Language *Atamadoulet*, which in *English* signifies the Support of the Empire; he is call'd *Vizir Azem*, or *Grand Vizir*; he is at the Direction of all State Matters of Consequence; no Grant, or Act of the King, is thought valid till he has counter-seal'd it; for as their Princes are usually brought up in the Haram among the Women, they are not so skill'd in Affairs of State as those Ministers and Politicians that make it their Business: Nor is *Persia* the only Place in the World where the Affairs of State are chiefly directed by a Minister, or the Ministry; though the King must give a Sanction to it before it can become a Law.

Bey.

The second Office is the *Bey* or *Divan Beghis*, which is something like our Lord Chancellor, or Lord Chief Justice; the Word signifies Lord, and *Divan* a Court or Council. This Office determines all Cases Civil and Criminal, except where the King himself sits as Judge; the *Divan Bey* can command any Cause to be removed to his Tribunal; nor do the Kings of *Persia* of late trouble themselves much with determining Trials in Civil or Criminal Cases, except in the arbitrary Sentence of Death, when his Passion leads him to it, as before-mention'd.

General.

The third is the Generalissimo, if in a Time of War; otherwise it is the General of the *Courtchis*, which is a Body of thirty thousand Horse, originally *Turks* or *Tartars*; there is also the General of the Musketeers, and the General of the *Coulars*, or Royal Slaves: And after the Generals comes the Secretary of State; he registers the publick Acts, and keeps the Records, and appoints a Deputy in every Province, who transmits Affairs of Consequence to him, to be laid before the Ministry.

Mirab.

The last great Office is the *Mirab*, or Lord of the Water; it is their Business to distribute the Water of the Rivers and Aqueducts, that every Country or Place may have its Share.

Houshold Officers.

The Officers of the Houshold are the Lord Treasurer, and Steward, with whom all Ambassadors and Foreigners transact their Affairs; but there are those, who though inferior to him, are yet a Check upon him, as he is upon the Prime Minister; but to prevent the publick Treasure being embezzled, no Money can be paid out of the Treasury, without an Order from the Prime Minister, the Chief Justice, and other great Officers; and they are too jealous of, and too great a Check upon one another, to propose the committing of any Fraud, which, in this Case, it is impossible for any one of them to do alone.

Master of the Ceremonies.

There are also Masters of the Ceremonies, Porters, Ushers, and Guards, and then the Master of the Horse; he has Stables all over the Kingdom to keep the King's Horses in, and proper Officers to take care of them. Then there is the great Huntsman, who has not less than a thousand Huntsmen and Falconers under him: When the King Hunts, they carry Lions and Panthers to the Chase, as well as Dogs; all which are bred up to the Game; they have also all Sorts of Birds of Prey, as well as Hawks, all which are taught to fly at Beasts as well as at Birds, as has been mention'd before.

Chief Physician and Astrologer.

Next in Rank is the chief Physician, and chief Astrologer, Places of great Profit, and People much in request; and then the High Chamberlain, who has a great Influence on Affairs of State, but never sits in the King's Presence, but only stands behind him; he is always a white Eunuch, who serves the King at Table on his Knees, tastes his Meat, dresses and undresses him; and, in short, is always with him, except when he is going to engage with the Ladies, and therefore has a great Opportunity of giving the King a good or ill Opinion of Persons or Things, as his Interest or Inclination leads him.

Pontiff.

Of Ecclesiastical Officers the chief is the Pontiff, or High Priest, the *Antient of the Law*, the *Cadi*, and the *Mufti*. The Pontiff is also entitled, Prince of their Religion, right Head of the true Church, and is in all publick Assemblies next to the Prime Minister. The bigotted Part of the *Persians* think that the High Priest only has the Right of Government repos'd in him, because *Mahomet* was both King and Priest, and that God gave him the supreme Power both in Spirituals and Temporals.

Cheik Islam.

The second Ecclesiastical Judge is the Ancient of the Law, whom the *Persians* call *Cheik Islam*; he is not much inferior to the Pontiff, and People seldom appeal from one of those Courts to the other, but from both to the *Divan Bey* upon occasion, for he is the grand Judge in all Cases.

Cadi.

The third Ecclesiastical Judge is the *Cadi*, he takes Cognizance of the same Causes with the two former, but is limited to some particular Town or District. The fourth is the Mufti, he is but of an inferior Power in *Persia*, for he cannot Controul or Reverse the Proceedings of other Courts; but they pay a Reverence to him as to a Man skill'd in the Law, and frequently consult him for Advice, but do as they please when they have done, his Authority being little regarded among them.

Mufti.

Every one of those Judges have their respective Tribunals, and the People apply to them indifferently, as they are inclin'd. The other Ecclesiastical Officers have no Jurisdiction, but are kept pretty much in Subjection by the Temporal Power, on account of their making such Pretensions to a Right to supreme Authority, as is scarce consistent with Regal Power.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of the Government of the ſeveral Provinces and great Towns in Perſia, *and of their* Chans, *or* Chans Vizirs, *and other inferior Magiſtrates.*

Chan Vizir.

THERE is a *Chan* and a *Vizir* in every Province of *Perſia*: The *Chan* has the Government of the Province in General, and the *Vizir* has the Government of thoſe Towns or Villages in particular which are the King's Demeſne Lands, or which belong immediately to the Crown. The *Chans*, in their reſpective Provinces, live almoſt in as much State as the King himſelf, having all the Officers of the ſame Kind and Title with thoſe at the King's Court, but inferior both in Number and Salaries. The *Chan* commands the Millitia of his Province, and aſſigns them Land for a Maintenance; he reviews them at certain Times to ſee that their Arms and Horſes be in good Order, but every Soldier is permitted to live at his own Houſe in Times of Peace.

The *Chans* have their Places for Life, and if they behave well, their Children often ſucceed them. There are two Sorts of *Chans*, the greater are call'd *Beglerbeg*, or Lord of Lords, the other are *Coulembeg*, or Lord of Slaves. The Governors of the Frontier Provinces are commonly *Beglerbegs*, as the *Chan* of *Armenia*, from whom the *Chans* of *Chars Marega*, and other Diſtricts, in Time of War receive their Orders, and are obliged to march under his Standard.

Three Officers.

THERE are in every Province three Officers put in by the Government, *viz.* a Lieutenant and a Receiver General of the King's Taxes; he has alſo the Management of the Crown Lands, and the Places where they lie; there is alſo a Secretary, who takes account of all Tranſactions of Moment in the Province, and tranſmits them to Court; and it is the Buſineſs of all theſe three inferior Officers to have an Eye upon the *Chan*'s Conduct, and to oppoſe him if he ſhould undertake any Thing againſt the State.

Daroga's.

THERE are alſo *Daroga's*, or Governors of Cities and Caſtles, they are put in directly by the King, and have their Lieutenants and Secretaries independent of them. The ſame Perſon who is Governor of the City is never made Governor of the Fort or Caſtle belonging to it. The Miniſters of State and Generals of Armies have alſo their inferior Officers, not ſo much to act as ſuch, as to inſpect into the Conduct of their Superiors, and if they find any thing amiſs to report it to the Court; and this they are double diligent in, both to ſpy and to diſcover what is amiſs, in hopes to ingratiate themſelves into the King's Favour, and gain Preferment; ſo that Men in thoſe ſuperior Places are forced to be very circumſpect in all their Actions.

Cadi

THERE is alſo in every Town a *Cadi*, or Civil Judge, a Mayor, or Head Officer among the trading People, and Provoſt or Sheriff; and every particular Trade has a Warden or Maſter; there is an Officer alſo that acts like a Conſtable, he has a Watch under his Command, and is to keep the Peace in the Night, eſpecially in the great Towns, and Places of great Trade or Concourſe of People.

Chief Judge.

THE Governor of every Town is the chief Judge in Caſes both Civil and Criminal in any Puniſhment leſs than Death, but that the King generally reſerves as his own Prerogative; the moſt common Puniſhment is a Fine, more or leſs, in proportion to the Nature of the Crime. When a Governor or *Vizir* is ſent to any Province, he has his Inſtructions in Writing, with a Deſcription of the Extent of his Government, and of the Revenues, and the Manner in which he is to treat the People; he has alſo Inſtructions to give to every Officer of State when he enters on his Poſt.

Diſcharging.

WHEN an Officer returns from his Command by the King's Order, (which often happens when they do not know the Reaſon of it,) he always waits at the Gate of the Palace, till he can find an Opportunity to acquaint his Majeſty with his Arrival, and begs leave to throw himſelf at his Feet; which, if there have been no Misbehaviour in his Conduct, he is admitted to do, but if ſome Miſdemeanor was the Cauſe of his being ſent for, Orders are commonly given to ſtrike off his Head.

Agents at Court.

ALL the Governors and great Officers of the ſeveral Provinces are obliged to have an Agent at Court, and to give an Account of the Tranſactions of the Province when the Government requires it, and to ſend Diſpatches upon ſuch Occaſions, as the Court does not think fit to employ an Expreſs on purpoſe, but chiefly to ſolicit the Affairs of the Governor and the Province. Thoſe Lords have uſually one or more of their Children brought up at Court, intended as a Pledge for the Father's Fidelity; but by this Means the Youth commonly learns ſo much of the Affairs of State, that he frequently ſucceeds his Father in his Poſt.

THE *Vizirs* and Receivers of the King's Revenues are a much greater Burthen to the People than the *Chans*, they impoſing new Taxes and Oppreſſions upon the People, under a Pretence of ſupplying the Neceſſities of the State; and uſually obtain and keep their Place of Truſt and Profit by virtue of Preſents made to the Court Favourites, and by engaging to find out Meaſures and Schemes to increaſe the Revenue beyond what is has been before. But though I relate this as Matter of Fact in *Perſia*, I do not relate it as peculiar to *Perſia* only, for I doubt not but in our Progreſs to the Weſtward, we may find Inſtances of the like Kind in *Europe*; but doubtleſs it is a double Mortification, where they find it in the Power of a *Vizir*, or by his Inſtigation, to impoſe new Taxes perhaps with little other View but to enrich himſelf; but bleſſed be God *we are a free Nation in a Chriſtian Country*

Preſents to Court Favourites.

THE *Perſian Vizirs* are generally as good as their Words, eſpecially to their Patrons and Friends that promoted them: Complaints are often carried to Court againſt their Oppreſſions, but the Miniſters that participate of the Booty are frequently the Inſtruments of ſtifling them before they can be introduced to the King's Ear; though what is done of this Kind is all clandeſtine, for thay dare not openly oppoſe or intercept any Petition or Petitioner, but will ſometimes divert them from their Importunity to be admitted to his Preſence, by making them large Promiſes of Redreſs, and ſo put them off for that Time, till they can find ſome other Expedient to ſerve them in the ſame Manner when they come again; and it is very difficult to get any Redreſs even though they are admitted to the King, for by their Oppreſſion his Revenue is increas'd, and the *Vizir* muſt muſt allow the King a Share or elſe his Fraud will be detected. Indeed ſometimes when the *Vizir*, Miniſter, or other great Man petition'd againſt, has powerful Enemies at Court,

or

CHAP. X.

Of the Government *of the ſeveral Provinces and great Towns in* Perſia, *and of their* Chans, *or* Chans Vizirs, *and other inferior Magiſtrates.*

Chan Vizir.

THERE is a *Chan* and a *Vizir* in every Province of *Perſia*: The *Chan* has the Government of the Province in General, and the *Vizir* has the Government of thoſe Towns or Villages in particular which are the King's Demeſne Lands, or which belong immediately to the Crown. The *Chans*, in their reſpective Provinces, live almoſt in as much State as the King himſelf, having all the Officers of the ſame Kind and Title with thoſe at the King's Court, but inferior both in Number and Salaries. The *Chan* commands the Militia of his Province, and aſſigns them Land for a Maintenance; he reviews them at certain Times to ſee that their Arms and Horſes be in good Order, but every Soldier is permitted to live at his own Houſe in Times of Peace.

THE *Chans* have their Places for Life, and if they behave well, their Children often ſucceed them. There are two Sorts of *Chans*, the greater are call'd *Beglerbeg*, or Lord of Lords, the other are *Coulembeg*, or Lord of Slaves. The Governors of the Frontier Provinces are commonly *Beglerbegs*, as the *Chan* of *Armenia*, from whom the *Chan* of *Chars Manga*, and other Diſtricts, in Time of War receive their Orders, and are obliged to march under his Standard.

Three Officers.

THERE are in every Province three Officers put in by the Government, *viz.* a Lieutenant and a Receiver General of the King's Taxes; he has alſo the Management of the Crown Lands, and the Places where they lie; there is alſo a Secretary, who takes account of all Tranſactions of Moment in the Province, and tranſmits them to Court; and it is the Buſineſs of all theſe three inferior Officers to have an Eye upon the *Chan*'s Conduct, and to oppoſe him if he ſhould undertake any Thing againſt the State.

Daroga's.

THERE are alſo *Daroga's*, or Governors of Cities and Caſtles, they are put in directly by the King, and have their Lieutenants and Secretaries independent of them. The ſame Perſon who is Governor of the City is never made Governor of the Fort or Caſtle belonging to it. The Miniſters of State and Generals of Armies have alſo their inferior Officers, not ſo much to act as ſuch, as to inſpect into the Conduct of their Superiors, and if they find any thing amiſs to report it to the Court; and this they are double diligent in, both to ſpy and to diſcover what is amiſs, in hopes to ingratiate themſelves into the King's Favour, and gain Preferment; ſo that Men in thoſe ſuperior Places are forced to be very circumſpect in all their Actions.

Cadi

THERE is alſo in every Town a *Cadi*, or Civil Judge, a Mayor, or Head Officer among the trading People, and Provoſt or Sheriff; and every particular Trade has a Warden or Maſter; there is an Officer alſo that acts like a Conſtable, he has a Watch under his Command, and is to keep the Peace in the Night, eſpecially in the great Towns, and Places of great Trade or Concourſe of People.

Chief Judge.

THE Governor of every Town is the chief Judge in Caſes both Civil and Criminal in any Puniſhment leſs than Death, but that the King generally reſerves as his own Prerogative, the moſt common Puniſhment is a Fine, more or leſs, in proportion to the Nature of the Crime. When a Governor or *Vizir* is ſent to any Province, he has his Inſtructions in Writing, with a Deſcription of the Extent of his Government, and of the Revenues, and the Manner in which he is to treat the People; he has alſo Inſtructions to give to every Officer of State when he enters on his Poſt.

Diſ. ing.

WHEN an Officer returns from his Command by the King's Order, (which often happens when they do not know the Reaſon of it,) he always waits at the Gate of the Palace, till he can find an Opportunity to acquaint his Majeſty with his Arrival, and begs leave to throw himſelf at his Feet; which, if there have been no Misbehaviour in his Conduct, he is admitted to do, but if ſome Miſdemeanor was the Cauſe of his being ſent for, Orders are commonly given to ſtrike off his Head.

Agent Court

ALL the Governors and great Officers of the ſeveral Provinces are obliged to have an Agent at Court, and to give an Account of the Tranſactions of the Province when the Government requires it, and to ſend Diſpatches upon ſuch Occaſions, as the Court does not think fit to employ an Expreſs on purpoſe, but chiefly to ſolicit the Affairs of the Governor and the Province. Thoſe Lords have uſually one or more of their Children brought up at Court, intended as a Pledge for the Father's Fidelity; but by this Means the Youth commonly learns ſo much of the Affairs of State, that he frequently ſucceeds his Father in his Poſt.

Preſer to Cou Favour ites.

THE *Vizirs* and Receivers of the King's Revenues are a much greater Burthen to the People than the *Chans*, they impoſing new Taxes and Oppreſſions upon the People, under a Pretence of ſupplying the Neceſſities of the State; and uſually obtain and keep their Place of Truſt and Profit by virtue of Preſents made to the Court Favouries, and by engaging to find out Meaſures and Schemes to increaſe the Revenue beyond what is has been before. But though I relate this as Matter of Fact in *Perſia*, I do not relate it as peculiar to *Perſia* only, for I doubt not but in our Progreſs to the Weſtward, we may find Inſtances of the like Kind in *Europe*; but doubtleſs it is a double Mortification, where they find it in the Power of a *Vizir*, or by his Inſtigation, to impoſe new Taxes perhaps with little other View but to enrich himſelf; but bleſſed be God *we are a free Nation in a Chriſtian Country*

THE *Perſian Vizirs* are generally as good as their Words, eſpecially to their Patrons and Friends that promoted them: Complaints are often carried to Court againſt their Oppreſſions, but the Miniſters that participate of the Booty are frequently the Inſtruments of ſtifling them before they can be introduced to the King's Ear; though what is done of this Kind is all clandeſtine, for thay dare not openly oppoſe or intercept any Petition or Petitioner, but will ſometimes divert them from their Importunity to be admitted to his Preſence, by making them large Promiſes of Redreſs, and ſo put them off for that Time, till they can find ſome other Expedient to ſerve them in the ſame Manner when they come again; and it is very difficult to get any Redreſs even though they are admitted to the King, for by their Oppreſſion his Revenue is increas'd, and the *Vizir* muſt muſt allow the King a Share or elſe his Fraud will be detected. Indeed ſometimes when the *Vizir*, Miniſter, or other great Man petition'd againſt, has powerful Enemies at Court,

or

or ſome great Man waiting for his Place, the aggriev'd Party is eaſily introduc'd to a Hearing, and obtains Juſtice according to his Complaint.

THE Vizirs or Receivers are ſeldom puniſh'd capitally, except detected of defrauding the King, which, if known, they are inevitably ruin'd, and a Perſon is uſually ſent to take off his Head, with an Order diſpatch'd by the Prime Miniſter, under the King's Seal, and when the Meſſenger, or intended Executioner arrives at the Place, he goes to the Governor, or ſome great Officer, and ſhews him the King's Order; whereupon he takes him with him to the Delinquent's Houſe, and as ſoon as he enters, produces his Order, and immediately puts it in Execution, without ſaying one Word, but *By the King's Command*; and thereupon, without admitting of any Defence, cuts him in Pieces with his Sabre; and if he ſhould offer to reſiſt, every Body will lend a Hand to have the King's Order put in Execution.

Miniſter in Diſgrace.

WHEN a Miniſter is diſgrac'd, his Eſtate is immediately confiſcated, he is deprived of his Goods, his Slaves, and ſometimes of his Wife and Children; and, till the King's Pleaſure is known, No-body dare relieve him with ſo much as a Cup of Water; but if the Accuſation do not amount ſo high as to touch his Life, he has his Wife and Children return'd, and often ſome of his Slaves, and a Competency for Subſiſtence, is return'd to him; and if the Crime be trivial, or a falſe Charge, he is commonly reſtored to his former Poſt, or to ſome other, equivalent.

THERE being no Nobility in *Perſia*, every Man is honour'd according to his Poſt, or his Riches, except thoſe of the Family of *Mahomet*, or of the twelve *Imams*, Succeſſors of *Haly*; they are honour'd with the Title of *Prince*, or *Noble*, and wear green Turbants by way of Diſtinction. Although Places of Profit or Truſt are ſo precarious in the *Perſian* Court, yet People covet them, and crowd the Court perpetually in Purſuit of Preferment. The greater Sort have a Footman at the Palace Gate, to tell them when the King comes out of the *Haram*, that they may take the firſt Opportunity of addreſſing him, for the Preferments or Places they are aiming at.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Laws and Puniſhments of the Perſians.

Clergy.

THE *Perſians* have but one Word (viz. *Chera*) to ſignify both Canon and Civil Law, purſuant to that Principle of the *Mahometans*, that one Man ought to be both King and High Prieſt; and that the ſame that is at the Head of the State to Command in War, and adminiſter Juſtice, ought alſo to have the Direction of the Church, and explain the Articles of Faith, and regulate Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline, as *Mahomet* and his Succeſſors did for ſome Ages, in Imitation (as they ſaid) of *Abraham*, *Moſes*, *Samuel*, &c. as hinted at the Beginning of *Chap.* VIII.

Doctors ſeize the Adminiſtration.

THE Doctors would exclude the Civil Magiſtrate from any Share in the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, any further than to execute ſuch Sentences as the Clergy ſhall pronounce, but the Temporal Power retains their Authority, notwithſtanding the Attempts of the Clergy, and furthermore will not allow the Clergy any other Share in the ſupreme Courts of Juſtice, but to give their Opinion in difficult Caſes. When the *Divan Bey*, or ſupreme Civil Magiſtrate, demands the Opinion of the Mufti, (whoſe Office ſee *Chap.* IX. towards the latter End) he tells him what is written in the Alchoran, that God commands ſo or ſo, or that the *Imams* have determined in ſuch a manner in a like Caſe, but their Authority extends no further, for the *Divan Bey* is ſo far from being govern'd by his Opinion, that he often ſits in Judgment without him.

Alchoran, and other Books.

THE Alchoran is their fundamental Law-Book, both in Spirituals and Temporals; and if any thing yet remain doubtful, they have recourſe to a Book call'd the Sayings and Acts of *Mahomet*, and afterwards to another, call'd the Sayings and Acts of the *Imams*; and laſtly, to another call'd the *Cheraiet*, which is a Collection of Judgments both Civil and Criminal: But they are expreſſ in ſuch myſtical, equivocating Terms, that the Judges can make them ſpeak what Language they pleaſe, according to their different Conſtructions of them; nor are the Uſe of theſe Books, in Trials at Law, any more than pure Ceremony, for at laſt the King, the Governors of Provinces, and the Vizirs, determine arbitrarily, without laying much, if any, Streſs upon their Conſtructions of thoſe Books, and although the Clergy would aſſume a Power which the Laity will not allow them, and call thoſe Determinations which are made without their Conſent, *Sentences of Violence*, and *Acts of Tyranny*, the Temporal Government regard them not. The Eccleſiaſtical Courts and Laws are ſo ſevere againſt Chriſtians, that if a Mahometan kills a Chriſtian, cutting off one Joint of his little Finger is thought a ſufficient Atonement for killing an Infidel (ſo they call Chriſtians) and if the Temporal Courts did not interpoſe in favour of them, and diſpenſe with ſome of the Severities of *Mahomet*'s Law againſt them, they could not live in *Perſia*, much leſs be ſo kindly treated as they are; for if it is the King's Inclination, and he finds it for his Intereſt to encourage Chriſtians, as is the Caſe for Reaſons given in *Chap.* V. when ſpeaking of their Merchandizes or foreign Trade, he ſometimes gives Orders that Chriſtians be admitted to dwell in any City, and that they have Liberty to build Churches, and be protected from all Violence (as is now the Caſe with the *Armenian* Chriſtians at *Julpha* near *Iſpahan*.) The ordinary Mahometan Miniſters and Judges will not ſubmit to ſuch Orders, or if the King inſiſts upon having them put in Execution, the others think them Acts of Force and Tyranny; but here the Temporal Courts interpoſe, and ſtrictly ſee the King's Orders put in Execution.

Laws ſevere againſt Chriſtians.

No Faith to be kept with Infidels.

THEIR Doctors formerly ſtrenuouſly advanced and maintain'd a Doctrine, that no Faith ought to be kept with Infidels, as they call the Chriſtians; but that Opinion is little regarded at preſent, except by the bigotted giddy Vulgar; but the Merchants of *Europe* meet with Juſtice and civil Treatment in their Dealing and Commerce, both with the Government and private Perſons, if of any Faſhion.

Courts have different Buſineſs.

THOUGH the Spiritual and Temporal Courts differ as to Superiority, yet the Temporal always have the Aſcendant, nor, except in ſome general

Cases, are they concern'd in the same Affairs; it is the Business of the Ecclesiastical Courts to meddle with Deeds and Contracts, Marriages, and Divorces, Succession of Estates, and other litigious and troublesome Matters; but the Temporal Courts are employ'd about Criminal Cases, or those that are so self-evident that they will scarce admit of any Dispute, and hence very often determine a Cause at the first Hearing, but the Spiritual Courts are more tedious and chargeable.

Debtors. WHEN a Person is either unable or unwilling to pay his Debts, 'tis true he is not imprison'd and jail'd, and render'd entirely useless, but he is taken into the Creditor's Possession, who makes him work, and uses him as he pleases, provided he do not lame or kill him; he may also dispose of the Debtor's Estate and Goods, and even himself, Wife, and Children, to pay his Debts; but, however, the Fury of the worst of them terminates there; they are content when they have got him, and all he has, and he is reckon'd a barbarous Man that proceeds to such Extremities.

Way of swearing. WHEN an Oath is required, they swear upon the Alchoran; if they be Mahometans that are to swear, the Alchoran is brought into Court in a fine Linnen Cloth, and upon its Approach the Judge and all the Court rises to pay Respect to it; the Judge takes it in both his Hands, and with the most profound Reverence kisses it, and bows to it till his Forehead touch it, and opening it, he offers it to the Person who is to swear, who kissing it, puts his Hand upon it, and swears to speak the whole Truth; but they indulge Persons of different Religions with their own way of swearing, sending an Officer with him to a Priest of his own Religion; and thus the Christian swears upon the Gospel, the Jew upon the Old Testament, the *Indian* Idolater by his Cow, and the *Gaur*, or Fire-worshippers, by Fire; and then proceed to speak, when required: But it is not supposed that it is altogether out of Indulgence to People's Consciences, that they allow them their own Ways of swearing, but chiefly, if not only, to prevent their touching the Alchoran, for they think it is prophaned if an Infidel touch it.

Prosecutions. WHEN a Person aggrieved has a mind to prosecute the Aggressor, he draws up his Petition in such Words as he thinks will best express his Grievance, and presents it to the Judge, whereupon the Judge writes in the Margin, which serves as a Warrant to bring the Offender before him, and sends a Servant with it to the Defendant, who brings him before the Judge, and being allow'd some Time to produce each his Witnesses, each Party pleads his own Cause, and so, without Lawyer or Council, the Judge determines the Cause, and commonly gives Sentence in a Hearing or two.

Women's Pleas. THE Women sometimes come to have their Grievances redress'd too, and with more Clamour and Importunity than the Men; they seldom have any other Business in the Court than to sue for a Divorce, and their Plea is commonly the Impotence of the Husband, which they express in such moving Terms, and with such howling and crying, that they are perfectly troublesome, and the more so because he will not take such measures with them as he does with the Men, whom he causes to be cudgel'd, when they are impertinent in their pleading for Justice against one another; and what may, perhaps, give the Women the more Assurance, is that they are veil'd when they come in Publick upon such Occasions, and let them be never so impertinent, they cannot be known as to who it is, except a Conjecture can be made by the Voice.

Criminals. THE Civil Magistrate never intermeddles in Criminal Cases, nor is the Ecclesiastical Law consulted, but are left to the Determination of the Temporal Courts, who give Judgment according to the Nature of the Offence, compar'd with former Precedents, and it is the *Divan Bey*, the Governor of the City, and the *Nazir*, that is invested with Authority to give the definitive Sentence.

Murder. THERE are very few Murders committed, but when that happens, the Court, or Judge, surrenders the Murderer up to the surviving Relations of the Deceas'd, with Words to this Purpose; *I deliver you the Murderer, according to Law; make your selves Satisfaction with his Blood, for the Blood he hath spilt; but, remember, God is merciful*; and then the Judge's Servants are order'd to observe the Directions of the Prosecutors, and to conduct the Prisoner to the Place they desire, and they follow the Criminal, beating and abusing him as they go; and when he comes to the Place, he is deliver'd to them, who invent such variety of cruel Tortures to be inflicted upon him, that they are scarce to be remembered or exprest; and the Women are the most cruel, who though they seldom appear abroad upon other Occasions, yet will break through the Bounds of their pretended Modesty, to imbrue their Hands in the Blood of a Murderer; yet this is to be observed, that if either by Mistake, or Compassion, they leave him before he is quite dead, they must not return back to compleat the Execution.

Petty Crimes. COMMON, or petty Crimes, are commonly punish'd by Fines, or where the Person is poor, with a Number of Blows upon the Soles of his Feet, proportionable to his Crime: The Number is always above thirty, and under three hundred; with these Severities their Feet swell, and sometimes their Nails come off; and then for a Cure, they set him in warm Horse-Dung, almost to the Middle, for several Days, and when they take him out, they foment the swoln Parts with Spirits of Wine; but it is sometimes a long Time before they get the use of their Feet again.

Other Crimes. PICK-POCKETS and little pilfering Thieves, are branded in their Foreheads with a hot Iron. House-breakers have their right Hands cut off, and the same Punishment have they that counterfeit the King's Coin, for the first Offence; but if they be detected afterwards, their Bellies are ripp'd open. They tie his Feet to a Camel, and hoisting him up till his Head but just touch the Ground, they rip his Belly open, and let all his Entrails hang over his Breast and Face; and in this Manner he is dragg'd through the principal Streets of the Town, an Officer going before him, and with a loud Voice acquainting the People with the Nature of his Crime. He is afterwards hang'd by the Heels on some Tree, and it is often a long Time after that before he expires.

Women's Punishment. THERE are several other miserable Deaths inflicted on Men; but when a Woman is guilty of a capital Crime, their usual Punishment is to be precipitated from a high Tower, by which Fall they are beat to Pieces, or at least quite kill'd as soon as fallen.

Few Robberies. BUT those capital Crimes, and consequently Executions, are very rare in *Persia*; insomuch that those that have lived in the capital City of *Ispahan*, affirm, that there has not been a Murder or a Robbery committed there for several Years together, and but seldom on the Highway; so that it is very safe Travelling: The great Reason of which I suppose is, that there are Rabdars or Guards of the Road dispers'd all over the Country; and a Man is no sooner robb'd, but these Rabdars, like so many Beacons, give notice to one another, and the whole Country is immediately alarm'd; and there being few Woods to hide in, and large open Deserts to cross, it is

How prevented.

next

next to an Impossibility for them to escape, which is doubtless the chief Reason why so few Robberies are attempted; and besides, if a Man be found in a Village that does not belong to it, he is look'd upon as a Stroller, and immediately apprehended upon Suspicion; and if there is any Noise of a Robbery, he is detain'd till it is known whether he is the Person; and yet let the Crime be never so heinous, and his hazard of Punishment never so great, he is obliged to go to some Village or starve, for he cannot subsist in these barren Deserts; and to make the Rabdars more diligent in the Execution of their Office, the Governor when any Robbery is committed, sends for the Rabdars station'd near that Place, and if they have not taken the Robber, nor apprized their Fellow Rabdars so as to have him apprehended, the Governors compel them to make good the Loss to the Person robb'd, or, in Case of Refusal, to forfeit the Sum in which they were bound as Security for the faithful Execution of their Office, or if their Security falls short of the Sum the Men was robb'd of, the Rabdar is bastinado'd, and the Money levy'd upon the neighbouring Villages; which must doubtless make the Rabdars very vigilant and strict in the Execution of their Office.

When the Person robb'd has thus had his Money return'd, he is obliged to make the Governor a handsome Present; and another Perquisit that the Governor has out of those Robberies is, when the Money is levy'd upon the adjacent Villages, he always lays it too high rather than too low, and the Surplus goes into his own Pocket.

If a Robbery be committed in a City, the Watch is obliged to produce the Thief or make Satisfaction; if he is taken, he is without further Trial immediately executed, by ripping up his Belly, as before described; and as we observ'd before, the Murderer is executed, or rather murder'd, by the Relations of the Deceas'd; so that neither of these two are sentenc'd by the King, as other Capital Offenders are. It has been observ'd that Cooks are sometimes roasted, and Bakers bak'd in their own Ovens for cheating in their Weight, but this is when Provision is scarce and dear, which makes wronging their Customers become the greater Crime; but for petty Offences of the same Kind, they have lower Degrees of Punishment, as a Fine, the Bastinado, or the like, or sometimes the Baker is expos'd with a heavy Pillory Board fastened about his Neck, and a Bell fix'd to it, which rings as they move, and this they wear a certain Time, proportionable to the Nature and Aggravation of the Offence.

CHAP. XII.

Gives an Account of the Haram *or Seraglio, being the Women's Apartment in the Palace of* Ispahan; *as also of their* Guards *and other Attendants.*

Haram.

THE Word *Haram* is said to signify *Sacred* or *Prohibited*; and if the Expression may be allow'd, the *Haram* is in this Sense *Sacred*, or *devoted* to the Debaucheries therein committed, and is also devoted to the Use of those only that have the Privilege of Access to that Place and Company, and prohibited to every Body else; for there is no Place in the World where the Women are more strictly guarded than in *Persia*, and whatever may have been said of the Restraint the Women lie under in the more Eastern Countries, yet compar'd with that of the *Persians*, they may be said to enjoy almost a perfect Freedom. One of our late Authors ascribes this Severity in immuring or confining their Women, to their amourous Constitutions, which seems to intimate, in plain Terms, that Jealousy is the necessary Consequence of true and real Affection between a Man and his Wife; but as Jealousy, where it presides, is a perpetual Corrosive, it would follow that all married People in Christian Countries, where the Women are not so confin'd, must be miserable either in marrying a Woman that he loves not, nor cares what comes of her, or that because he loves her, he must be perpetually gall'd with Jealousy when she is out of his Sight; which must be the Case, if, according to his Maxim, *Jealousy is always proportionable to Love*; but as it is to be hop'd that is not the Case with all, or many, we may rather impute this strict Care they have for their Women, to that Precept of *Mahomet*, said to be deliver'd at his last Moments, viz. *Take Care of your Religion and your Wives*; and this seems rather to be the Case, because since *Mahomet*'s Time, a Woman in *Persia* is look'd as polluted if a Man do but cast his Eye upon her, and both the Wife and Husband's Honour is lost if she appears in publick; but in the Times of the Old Testament it was not so, and therefore it is not the Climate, but the Laws and Customs in force at that Time, which occasion'd the different Practices of the Place, as may be proved by the Practice of *Abraham*, who lived in *Haran* in the Country of *Mesopotamia*, *Gen.* xi. 31. This Country is upon the West or North-West Borders of *Persia*, between the Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, and by the late Geographers known by the Name of *Diarbeck*: And though *Abraham* travell'd from thence into *Egypt* by various Journeys, (see *Gen.* Chap. xii.) we find no Reason to think but that he retain'd the Principles he had imbib'd in *Mesopotamia*; and yet we find he did not confine his Wife from the Sight of Men, or if he had, he need not have apprehended his Life in Danger by the *Egyptians* seeing her, (*Gen.* xii. 12.) which plainly proves, that he had no Notion of a Law or a Custom, that should prevail upon him to confine his Wife from so much as seeing or being seen by any other Men.

Abraham lived on the Borders of Persia

But there is another Instance of Women having the same Liberty as above, without Restraint; for when King *Ahasuerus* reign'd from *India* to *Ethiopia*, he reign'd over one hundred and twenty seven Provinces, he kept his Court in *Persia*, at *Shushan*, which was therefore call'd *Shushan* the Palace, (*Esther* i. 1, 2.) it is now call'd *Schouster*, situate in 31 Degrees of Latitude, not far from the River *Euphrates*; here it was that he made his Feast, and not only allow'd his Queen *Esther* to be publickly seen, but left her in the Room with *Haman*, who was permitted to speak to the Queen when no other Person, that we read of, was present; which further confirms, that those Laws or Customs of restraining Women from the Sight, or even the Conversation, of Men, were not regarded then, and probably not till *Mahomet*'s new Religion got footing in the World. But where Women are so unjustly and

Ahasuerus his Palace and Feast.

and unnaturally confined, it is reasonable to suppose that, as they find opportunity, they may prostitute those Inclinations, which Nature has bestow'd upon them, in a Manner that Modesty would not admit of if not so unnaturally confin'd.

It is difficult to give a particular Description of the *Haram*, because so few Men of any kind, and much less Strangers and Travellers, are admitted within it; what account can be gather'd is from the Eunuchs that attend them, and the Women that furnish the Ladies with Toys and other small Matters; and they tell us, that the Apartment of the Ladies is in the most magnificent and best furnish'd Part of the Palace, the Prince spending most of his Time amongst the Ladies in the *Haram*. The Women have their several Posts here, as the Men in the outer Palace, as Treasurers, Secretaries, Stewards, Guards, *&c.* and sometimes lay their Schemes so close as to frustrate the Designs of the Ministers without.

Four Degrees of Women.

The Women are divided into three, or I may rather say four Ranks. First Princesses of the Blood Royal, they are call'd *Begum*. Secondly, those by whom the King has had Children, they are call'd *Cazun*, which Title is the same of *Chan* among the Men, as King and Queen are equal Titles only for the Difference of the Sexes. The third Sort are those that the King keeps in Case he thinks fit to call them to his Embraces, but till then they are only call'd Ladies; and the rest, which may be call'd the fourth Sort, are Slaves, and answer the common Use of Servants.

Women shut up.

But there is one Custom, which the second Rank of the four above-mention'd are the greatest Sufferers by; for there are several distinct Buildings in the Royal *Haram*, which have no Communication with each other, and when the King dies, the Ladies that he has used as Wives are shut up in a Quarter by themselves, and never permitted to stir from thence as long as they live, unless she of whom the succeeding Prince was born, who acts with the Authority of a Queen within the Limits of the *Haram*.

When the King has a Son or Brother marriageable, he gives him the Choice of a Mistress among the Ladies of the *Haram*, or of two or more, according to the Respect he has for him, for in proportion to that it is, that he bestows upon him a greater or less Number of Wives, and gives him a number of Female Slaves and Eunuchs, and other Domesticks suitable to his Dignity, and also an Apartment in the Palace to suit his Family; and there he continues in his own Apartment with his Family, but is never allow'd afterwards to converse with the rest of the *Haram* without the King's leave; and if ever these Princes are known to have any Love Intrigues with any other Ladies it is commonly fatal to both Parties, nor are they allow'd to converse with any Men, except the Eunuchs, so that when they succeed to the Crown they are as ignorant of the Affairs of the Kingdom, as if they had been born of the most obscure Parents in it. Their Princesses are commonly married as soon as they are at Age, and frequently to some dignified Clergyman.

The *Haram* is the Magazine of the Kingdom for beautiful Women, for the *Chans* or Governors are continually sending up fresh Supplies of beautiful Virgins to Court, or if he hears of a beautiful young Virgin in any Family, he sends for her to Court, and the Parents send her up without the least Regret, but rather rejoice that their Daughter is prefer'd at Court; for whenever a young Lady enters the Seraglio, there is a Pension immediately settled upon her nearest Relations, and if she becomes a Mistress to the King, the Salary is increas'd, but if she has Children by the King, she commonly procures the Advancement of all her Family. There are abundance of the fair *Circassian* Virgins in the *Haram*, whose excellent Beauties often captivate the Heart of the young Monarch.

But there is a grievous Mortification attends even the most beloved Ladies of the *Haram*, after the King has had several Children, for then the Women that afterwards have Children by him are not only confined to their Apartments, but in perpetual Apprehensions of having their Children murder'd, or their Eyes put out, which is most commonly executed, if not by the King, the Natural or rather Unnatural Father of those unhappy Children, yet his Son or Successor seldom fails to do it, to prevent any Dispute about the Succession to the Crown, as we have observ'd is often done in other Places in the East.

Guards.

The Guards that attend the *Haram* are composed of three Sorts of People. 1. The White Eunuchs, they guard the outer Gate, and never come within Sight of the Women. 2. The Black Eunuchs, these come from the *Malabar Coast* in *India*, they attend in the second Court, and some of the eldest and most deform'd are pick'd out to carry Messages to and from the Ladies within, and to assist in the Gardens, and Kitchens, and the like. The third, or innermost or Body Guard is composed of Women, commanded by some grave experienced Matron, that has her Orders directly from the Prince himself, and by the Eunuchs convey the King's Orders from within the *Haram* to the Guards without.

Lodging.

The Women of the *Haram* are every one lodg'd in a separate Chamber, or if two lodge in the same Chamber, they put an old One and a young One together, nor are they allow'd to make Visits from one Apartment to another without leave, and this Precaution is taken to prevent Quarrels that might ensue upon the Jealousies entertain'd against each other, grounded upon that Envy which is the common Consequence of Court Favourites, being or conceiting themselves to be one more respected than another; for if one excel the rest in singing, dancing, or any other Performance, they are sure to be the Butt at which the rest will level their Envy, especially if the King has either by Words or Gestures express'd his Approbation of the Performance in any distinguishing Manner.

Women indolent.

The Women in *Persia* lead very indolent Lives, and the Indulgence which they enjoy, is owing to an Opinion that Women were not made for any other Purpose but for Pleasure, and the Propagation of the human Species, and therefore they have nothing of Service required of them, but live in Idleness and Luxury, and instead of Exercise to make the Blood circulate, they have their little Slaves to rub and chafe them for that Purpose; sometimes they take Opium and smoak Tobacco, their Slaves dress their Victuals, and wash their Cloaths; so that the Women here have no difficulty to encounter with, except those in the *Haram*, who find difficulty enough to please their Tyrannical Prince.

Coura.

At the Time of the *Coura*, or March of the *Haram*, every Person of seven Years old or upwards is obliged to get out of the Way; for which Purpose a Troop of Horse marches before, and another behind them, crying *Coura*, *Coura*, by which Cry every Man knows that he is to retire from the Road, at a proper Distance, the Eunuchs with their Batons march on Horseback between the Guards and the Women; and if any Man is found in the Way, under any Pretence whatsoever, he loses his Life; and if they march through a City, the Men quit all the Houses in the Street they march through; they fire their Muskets at little Intervals to give Warning of their Approach; but

if after that they meet any Man in or near the Way they kill them directly, and never give any Quarter.

Eunuchs. THERE are vast Numbers of Eunuchs dispersed through all *Persia*, especially in the King's Palaces and Houses of the Quality, where thay are entrusted with almost every Thing valuable of their Masters, and even the Women are so much under their Care, that whenever they go abroad they are always attended by them, either upon a Visit, or even to the Bath, but not to their private Chambers. They also teach the Children of the Family to Read and Write, and instruct them in the Principles of Religion, till they are fit for more learned Teachers; and even then they attend them as Pages to take Care of their Persons; and the King's Son, that is to be his Successor, is always under their Care till he is advanced to the Throne. Some of these Eunuchs are vers'd in Liberal and Mechanick Arts, which is ornamental to a Prince, but sometimes to prevent aspiring Thoughts, that very Prince whom the King intends shall be his Successor is kept in Ignorance, as to what or whose Son he is, lest he should attempt to ascend the Throne before it is his Due. The Eunuchs are usually castrated at between seven and ten Years of Age, and if they are cut after they have arriv'd at Fifteen, few of them survive the Operation.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Strength and Force of the King of Persia, *with regard to his Neighbours; and of their Manner of Engaging an Enemy.*

How Formed. PERSIA neither has nor needs any of the Fortifications made by Art, according to the modern Method; for it is defended on every Side either by the Sea, unpassable Desarts, or inaccessible Mountains, which render the Approach to it extremely difficult; nor have they any Enemy to be immediately under any Apprehensions from, except the *Turk*, and even he is at present so diverted otherways, that they have not much to fear from him, as we shall further observe below. When the *Tartars* have a mind to make any Attempts upon *Persia*, they are such little distinct Principalities that they can only make Incursions in small Bodies, but never penetrate far; for the Thoughts of an Enemy so affrights them, that they always retreat rather than stand a pitch'd Battle. The *Persians* look upon the *Indians* as a contemptible Enemy, whom they have upon all Occasions defeated. The *Turk* is a powerful Enemy where he has an Opportunity; but, as above observed, he has so much upon his Hands in his War with the Christians, that he has no Time to attempt new Conquests in *Persia*. The last War that the *Turks* and *Persians* had, was about the City of *Bagdat* or *Babylon*, which stands upon the River *Tygris*, in about Latitude 33 Degrees, and being near the Eastern Frontiers of *Turkey* in *Asia*, though in *Persia*, and in that King's Possession, it was a perpetual Bone of Contention between the *Turks* and *Persians*, the former to attack, and the latter to defend, which they did with a great deal of Vigour: For *Bagdat* is one of the finest Towns in the East, but it being far distant from any of the inhabited Parts of *Persia*, and separated from thence by a vast Desart, and the *Turks* on the other Hand having the advantage of the River *Tygris*, (upon which it is situate, as before observed,) for the Conveyance of Men, Ammunition, and Provision to it, it became an easy Prey to the *Turks*, who now have it in Possession: But the Surrender of *Bagdat* putting an End to all the Wars between the *Turks* and *Persians*, the latter now thought themselves secure, as having no Enemy from any Quarter, they indulged themselves in Ease and Luxury, their State neglected, and their Forces undisciplin'd, which contributed very much to the Conquest begun by *Mereweys*, and compleated by his Son *Mahamood*, with so small a Force as six or seven thousand Men; of which Conquest, and the several Steps of it, we have given a particular Account in Chap. IV. foregoing, to which we refer the Reader.

It is surprizing to observe how the natural Temper and Disposition of a Prince affects that of his People. The *Persians* were naturally a brave and active People, and yet the Indolence of their Princes (before *Mereweys* and his Son *Mahamood* awaked them out of their Lethargy,) had made them slothful, unactive, and unprepared to resist an Enemy, and though, in the last Century, in the Time of that active Prince *Shaw Abbas*, or *Abbas the Great*, (*see Chap.* VIII.) they enlarged the Empire, and made great Conquests both in *Turkey* and *India*, they are so much degenerated from what they were then, that they even suffer little Insults from the *Tartars* and *Arabians*, though, for want of a superior Power, they can make no Conquests upon them.

Two sorts of Troops. THE *Persian* Troops are of two Sorts, the Troops of State and the King's Troops; we mention the Troops of State because they are of the more Antient Institution, till suspected to be too strong, *Shaw Abbas* constituted the King's Troops, or Troops of the Crown, to suppress them. The Troops of State are maintain'd by the Governors of the respective Provinces, and paid out of certain Lands appropriated to that Purpose, and they are divided into Militia and Regular Troops, which last are call'd *Courtchis*, and were originally a stout hardy Race of *Tartars*.

Coselbasses. THESE are lately, and indeed properly, call'd *Coselbasses*, or Red-heads, so call'd, because they came to assist *Cheik Sephi*, or *Ismael Sephi*, the Son of *Aider*, the first of the present Royal Family, (as in Chap. VIII.) for which Service, he allow'd them the Honour of wearing red Turbants of the same Form of that he wore himself; these remain in their Tents in Peace or War; and when they are not call'd to Duty as Soldiers, they employ themselves in feeding, buying or selling of Cattle, and it is from thence they are call'd *Courtchis* or Shepherds. The Service they did for *Cheik Sephi* is not yet forgot, but out of Respect to that, and the Zeal they have for the Religion of the *Imam*, they are distinguish'd with the particular Favours of having the best Posts both in the Court and the Army; it is from those hardy Soldiers that the Natives of *Persia*, not only Soldiers but others, obtain'd the Name of *Coselbasses*, and even that Name itself has made them, though indolent, formidable to *Indians*, *Turks*, and *Tartars* in the last Ages of the *Persians*; it was by them that the *Turkish* Language was introduced into *Persia*, which is now more common in the Northern Parts of that Kingdom than the *Persian* Language itself

Coselbasses in favour.

But as we obſerv'd before, *Shaw Abbas* obſerving to what a Pitch of Power the *Cooſelbaſhes* had attain'd, and that they had ſo much Influence upon all the Affairs of State, that they were not much ſhort of the *Turkiſh Janizaries*, to depoſe and ſet up what Princes they thought fit, he did not think himſelf ſafe, and eſpecially upon the Account of his own Son, to whom he obſerved that the *Cooſelbaſhes* paid ſuch a profound Reſpect, as he was jealous was inconſiſtent with their Allegiance to himſelf, which made him apprehenſive of Danger; and therefore, to nip them in the Bud, he cauſed his Son to be put to death, and diſperſed the *Cooſelbaſhes* in ſmall Detatchments through all the Provinces of the Empire, that they might continue to anſwer all former Purpoſes, and yet be prevented of coming to a Head, or uniting into one Body againſt him. They ſerve on Horſeback, and for offenſive Arms they have a Bow and Arrows, a Sword, Poniard and Launce, and a Hatchet at the Saddle-skirt, and for defenſive Arms a Shield and a Helmet; they paſs in Review once a Year before a Commiſſary ſent from Court, or elſe before the Governor of the Province.

Kills his Son.

The Jealouſy of *Abbas* the Great, put him upon erecting another Body of Troops to ſuppreſs the *Cooſelbaſhes*, in Caſe of any Attempt, and theſe were therefore call'd the King's Troops, or the Troops of the Crown; one of theſe Bodies conſiſted of twelve thouſand Men, and were call'd Muſketeers, becauſe inſtead of Bows and Arrows, they carried Muskets; and though they march on Horſeback, they fight on Foot, but before this Time neither Foot Soldiers nor Fire-arms were uſed in *Perſia*, nor are in *Tartary* to this Day.

King's Troops.

The other Body was call'd the *Coulars*; they conſiſted of ten thouſand Horſe, and every one carried Fire-arms; the Word *Coular* ſignifies Slave, becauſe the firſt of them came from *Georgia* and *Circaſſia*, as voluntary Slaves to the King of *Perſia*; but now the *Perſian* Subjects, who voluntarily and abſolutely devote themſelves to the King's Service, as Troops of the Crown, are alſo call'd Musketeers; ſome of them are Preſents ſent to the King, and others are deſcended from *Georgian* and *Circaſſian* Families; they are generally faithful and courageous in the King's Service; for, as few of them know from whence they have deſcended, they can have no lingering Thoughts of returning Home, nor any particular View of Intereſt, otherways than to oblige the King their Maſter, by whom they ſubſiſt.

Coulars

But as we have ſpoke of *voluntary Slaves*, it is not amiſs to obſerve, that *Slave* is an honourable Title in *Perſia*, much above that of Subject; for *Coular Shaw*, or *King's Slave*, is equal to the Title of Marquis in *France*; and one of thoſe Slaves in *Perſia* is in one of the fairеſt Steps to Preferment, when Opportunity offers.

Slave an honourable Title.

There are alſo two other Bodies of Men, one of them is call'd *Sophi's*, or *Sephi's*, firſt inſtituted by *Cheik Sephi*, as a Guard to his Perſon, and continued in the ſame Office to this Day; they conſiſt of only two hundred Men; they wear the Sophi's Cap, and for their Arms have a Sabre, a Poniard, and an Ax, which they carry on their Shoulders. The other Body is call'd the *Zezami*, or the ſix Hundred; they are tall, ſtout, young Fellows, like Grenadiers; they were inſtituted by *Abbas* II. for the ſame Purpoſe as the former, only an Addition to them; they wear long red Caps, in the Form of a Sugar-Loaf; and their Arms are a Muſket, Sabre, and Pomard, adorn'd with Silver, exceeding fine. All the Troops of *Perſia* are comprehended under the two Names of *Courtchis*, and *Coulars*, Shepherds, or Slaves; and by this they diſtinguiſh the old Eſtabliſhment from the new.

Sophi's or *Sephi's*

The King finds all the Troops of the Crown with Horſes, Arms, and Accoutrements; but the Men cloath themſelves as they pleaſe, or are able; not being confin'd to any Livery, or Colour, as in *England*. There was formerly a Body of twelve thouſand Men belonging to the Artillery, but they are diſcharged; and there is now no Artillery, except a few Guns at the Palace of *Iſpahan*, and ſome other great Places, but they are of little uſe.

If we compare the Extent of the Kingdom of *Perſia* with the Number of their Forces, their Armies are not or ever were large; the great *Shaw Abbas*, who made ſuch a conſiderable Figure and Conqueſts in the World, had never above a hundred and twenty thouſand Men in his Service at a Time, take all the Provinces together; and indeed by the natural Strength of their Kingdom, and the peaceable Situation of their Affairs, they have at preſent ſo little need of a ſtanding Army, that they neglect to pay their Soldiers, for which Reaſon they frequently deſert, and enter into Foreign Service, and the Truſtees at Court conniving at it without Noiſe, take that Opportunity to put their Pay in their own Pockets, by which Means the King's Forces are weaken'd, his Enemies ſtrengthen'd, and his Soldiers Pay goes into the great Men's Pockets.

Their Diſcipline is much inferior to ours in *Europe*; they know very little, if any thing, of our Artillery, our Bombs and Granades; but by this Means they have one Advantage; for they make exceeding ſwift Marches, by which Means they ſometimes arrive at the Enemy unawares, and fall upon him at once with unlimited Fury, when he leaſt expects ſuch a Viſit; and the Country being ſo deſart, and Water ſo ſcarce, they can immediately divert the Courſes of the Rivers, and intercept their Proviſions; and when they have thus diſpirited them, fall upon them, where a Number far inferior to that of the Enemy is ſufficient to cut them off; but if the Enemy is able to make Head againſt them, and prove too hard for them, they retreat, (during which, as has been obſerved, they ſhoot more Arrows than when they advance,) and when they have drawn the Enemy to a diſadvantageous Ground, they return to the Charge again, and by this means often harraſs the Enemy till they prove ſucceſsful.

Their Diſcipline

The *Perſians* never throw up any Entrenchments about their Camps, but commonly encamp behind ſome Mountain or difficult Paſs; but in beſieging they entrench, and uſually undermine the Place they intend to take, for they are very dextrous at Mining and ſubterraneous Works; it was by this Means that they took *Eriwan*, the Capital of *Armenia*, from the *Turks*, when it was obſerved that the greateſt Part of the City was undermin'd in a very ſhort Time.

Notwithſtanding

Perſia is ſo thinly peopled, that a Part of it, if well cultivated, is ſufficient to ſubſiſt all the Inhabitants; and therefore when they are apprehenſive of an Invaſion from abroad, they draw all the People from the Frontiers, and deſtroy the Country in ſuch a Manner, that when the Enemy comes they can find no Subſiſtence; and for what Stores and Utenſils the Husbandmen or others may have, they make Pits in the Ground to bury them in, and cover them over ſo artfully that it is next to impoſſible to find them; and the Climate being ſo hot, and the Ground ſo dry, even Proviſion will lie there a long Time before it will take any Damage.

Method in their Incurſions.

When they have made the Country thus deſolate for about eight Days Journey together, they encamp near it in ſeparate Bodies, and when the Enemy is advanc'd near it in queſt of Plunder, they fall upon him to diſtreſs him in his March, or if by that Means they cannot force his Retreat, and expel him, the Army harraſſes him in his March, who-

while the *Perſians* themſelves continue to deſtroy the Country, that if they cannot Fight them out, they will Starve them out, rather than let them penetrate into the Bowels of the Country to make a Conqueſt. This is the Method by which they have defeated the greateſt *Turkiſh* Armies, and may ſerve as a Specimen of their Conduct on the like Occaſions. When the Enemy is thus expell'd, every Man returns to his own Land, and without much Expence, or Loſs of Time, ſoon repairs all the Damage; their Mud-wall Houſes are ſoon built, and, in this hot Country, ſoon dry. Their Furniture and Proviſion has received little or no Damage, and every Thing ſoon reſtore to its Place.

They are almoſt ſure of Succeſs, by the Project above-mention'd; for if the Enemy bring great Numbers to over-power them by Force, it is impoſſible for a numerous Army to ſubſiſt; and if for the Sake of ſubſiſting, they bring but a ſmall Number, they are eaſily defeated, ſo that it is very difficult to penetrate far into *Perſia*, except their own Remiſſneſs and Security pave the Way to their own Deſtruction, as was the Caſe with *Mereweys* and *Mahamood*, near the Beginning of this Chapter.

Colours. Their Colours are made of rich Silk, much in the ſame Form as our Horſe Standards; and for a Motto or Device, they have commonly ſome Clauſe of the Alchoran, or of the Confeſſion of Faith: Sometimes they have a Lion wrought in the Colours with the Sun-riſing over his Back. The great Standard-Bearer, or Alemdar Baſſa, is one of the principal military Officers. The Coofelbaſhes or Troops of State are well and regularly paid; for as their Wages are raiſed out of Land appropriated to that Purpoſe, Care is taken the Money ariſing from it ſhall not go through too many Hands before the Soldiers have every one his juſt Proportion, nor to be fleec'd by Men of ſuperior Authority, and the Soldiers deprived of their Right. The Officers, according to their ſeveral Ranks and Dignities, and alſo the Soldiers, receive of the Farmers that hold the Land their reſpective Shares of their Rents ariſing from thence. The General of the Musketeers, and the General of the Coulars have each three thouſand Pounds a-year, and the other Officers, and alſo the Soldiers, in Proportion; and as every one has the Rent of a certain Quantity of Land inſtead of Money in Specie, and the Lands aſſign'd for theſe Payments are valued very low, it is probable the Farmers may give more for the Lands than they are valued at, and conſequently the Pay of the Officers and Soldiers amount to more than the exact Sums that were allotted them.

That Pay

Standing Forces. The *Perſians* always keep up ſtanding Forces, though in Times of Peace, as about ſix or ſeven thouſand Men in *Chaldea* towards *Babylon*, to prevent the Incurſions of the *Arabs*. The Governors of *Armenia* and *Georgia* have each about five thouſand Men; in *Choraſſan* or antient *Bactria*, they have eight thouſand Men, to defend them againſt the *Uſbeck Tartars*, and the like Number in the Province of *Candahor*, on the Frontiers of *Perſia*, towards *India*; and all thoſe Frontier Troops being well diſciplin'd, and kept generally in Action or Motion, are good Soldiers; but thoſe that are canton'd in the Inland Countries have met with ſo little Oppoſition, and conſequently ſo little Exerciſe, that they have either loſt, or never had the Air of Soldiers: As for *Gylan* and *Mazenderan*, which lie on the Coaſt of the *Caſpian* Sea, they ſeldom keep any Troops there; whether they truſt to the Sea for their Defence, I cannot determine; but certain it is, that by the Way of the *Caſpian* Sea, the late Czar of *Muſcovy* brought his Forces to the *Perſian* Coaſt upon the Southern Part of the *Caſpian* Sea, in the Provinces of *Gylan* and *Mazenderan* above mention'd, and taking the Advantage of that Coaſt being ſo ill guarded, landed his Forces with little Oppoſition, and have now fix'd themſelves in thoſe Provinces, the richeſt and moſt fertile Part of all the *Perſian* Empire.

Vanity of the *Perſian* Aſtrologers. The King of *Perſia*'s Generals loſe many advantageous Opportunities in their martial Exploits by the King's Bigottry to Aſtrology; by which he ſuffers himſelf to be deluded; for he thinks them of ſuch Conſequence in the Army, that ſome of them muſt be ſure to accompany the General in every Expedition, to tell him the lucky Minute; and they being at leaſt ſo wiſe as to know it is the eaſieſt for them to ſtay at home, be indulg'd at Court, and ſleep in a ſound Skin, that they are ſeldom forward to confeſs that an Enterprize will be lucky at all; but if it is reſolved to be put in Execution, they muſt be conſulted for the lucky Minute to ſet about it, which they find with as much Reluctancy as the other; and the Prudence of both King and Generals muſt be ſubſervient to the Opinion of the Star-gazer, though they loſe a viſible Opportunity of Advantage.

The effeminate Eunuchs and Favourite Women are as averſe to War as the Aſtrologers; for they apprehend that if they loſe their Prince, they loſe their all, or however muſt undergo ſome ſevere Revolution, and therefore they are ſure to fall in with the Aſtrologers in diſſwading the King from every thing that carries in its Face the leaſt Appearance of Danger.

No Ships. The *Perſians* have no naval Forces, or any Ships whatſoever, though they have Sea Coaſts both on the South Shore of *Perſia* and in the *Caſpian* Sea; though they had formerly ſome Veſſels in the *Caſpian* Sea to defend them from the *Coſſacks*; but that Practice is diſcontinu'd, and the *Muſcovites* generally tranſport their *Perſian* Merchandize by the *Caſpian* Sea to *Aſtracan* in their own Veſſels, and have moſt of the Navigation of the *Caſpian* Sea to themſelves, which doubtleſs has facilitated their Conqueſts on that Side; and if they fortify the Coaſt, and can be ſupply'd by Sea from *Muſcovy*, it may probably be difficult for the *Perſians* to remove them, nor is it to be ſuppoſed they will much endeavour it, becauſe they are always apprehenſive that if the *Turks* had Power, they do not want Good-will to make an entire Conqueſt of *Perſia*; and by what has been obſerved before, it is natural to infer, that if others that the *Turk* is now at War with ſhould give him Time to breathe, and he ſhould take that Opportunity to fall upon the *Perſians*, their Enmity againſt the *Turks* is ſuch, that they would rather enter into an Alliance with the Emperor and *Muſcovy*, or perhaps invite their Forces into the *Perſian* Territories, than ſubmit to be a Prey to the *Turks*, though perhaps the Conſequence might be the ſame as that of the antient *Britains* inviting the *Saxons* to their Aſſiſtance againſt the *Picts* and *Scots*, who being faithful to the antient *Britains* till they had expell'd thoſe common united Enemies, they ſeiz'd the Kingdom to themſelves, and expell'd their Maſters the antient *Britains* too, or at leaſt ſubdu'd them, and drove them to *Wales*, *Cornwall*, and *France*, where their Succeſſion continues to this Day; but indeed the *Perſians* are not at preſent under any Neceſſity of running ſuch Hazards; for as Affairs now ſtand, the *Perſians* are a ſufficient Match for the *Turks*, eſpecially on the defenſive Part; and it might be for the Emperor's Intereſt to come into an Alliance with *Perſia*, as well as for the Intereſt of *Perſia* to enter into an Alliance with him, to quell the Inſolence of the *Turk*, in caſe the Emperor ſhould be engag'd with any of the Chriſtian Powers in *Europe*; for which Reaſon it is not to be ſuppos'd the Emperor will ſtand neuter, and ſee *Perſia* become a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire; and the ſame Reaſon holds

good

good with the *Muſcovite*; for if the *Turk* ſhould conquer *Perſia*, which is in other Words, if the *Turk* and *Perſian* ſhould unite, it would be eaſy for them to expel the *Muſcovite*, and at leaſt oblige him to quit his new Acquiſitions in *Perſia*, and perhaps attack him in his own Dominions into the bargain; and doubtleſs the *Perſian* is ſenſible of the fatal Conſequence that may attend making *Muſcovy* his Enemy, and therefore of two Evils chuſes the leaſt, and rather parts with a Frontier Place or two; from whence they are in no more Danger of being conquer'd, than to be expos'd to the Mercy, or rather the Fury of two ſuch powerful Enemies as the *Muſcovite* on one Side, and on the other Side the *Turk*, whom he has more Reaſon to fear than all the World beſide, an Alliance with *Muſcovy* ſeeming to be the only viſible and probable Method to ſave *Georgia* from the *Turks*.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Revenues of the Crown of Perſia.

Land, four Sorts.

BY an impartial Eſtimate of all the Land in *Perſia*, it is computed that where there is one Acre inhabited and cultivated, there are ten that are barren, deſolate, and uncultivated. The Land in Occupation are of four Kinds, or Tenures, as followeth.

Lands of State.

1. The Lands of State; and the Land under that Denomination contain the much greater Part of what is cultivated, and are in the Poſſeſſion of the Governors of the reſpective Provinces, who out of them take their own Revenue, and aſſign the reſt for the Payment of their Officers and their Troops, for every Soldier has his Pay aſſign'd him upon ſome Village or Farm, as was intimated in the laſt Chapter.

Demeſne Lands.

2. The Demeſne Lands are the King's immediate or perſonal Eſtate, out of which he pays the Officers of the Houſhold, and the Troops of the Crown, or the King's Troops, and the reſt is given as Preſents or Penſions to Court Favourites, and what remains of that is managed by the Vizirs and Intendants, who remit *what they can ſpare of* the Produce to the Treaſury.

Church Lands.

3. The Church Lands and theſe are the Donation either of Princes or of private Perſons, that are able and willing to advance in that Way; theſe are accounted ſacred, as being devoted to pious Uſes, and therefore they are never taxed, nor are they confiſcated or alienated from their original Deſign, for any Crime, or under any Pretence whatſoever, nor can their Title ever be ſo much as call'd in Queſtion after one Year's Poſſeſſion.

Lands of private Men.

4. The Lands of private Men; theſe they hold of the Crown for a Term or Leaſe of ninety nine Years, paying a ſmall annual Rent, or rather an Acknowledgment; it is ſo inconſiderable, that at the End of the Term above-mention'd, they renew their Term or Leaſe for ninety nine Years more, only advancing one Year's Income.

Un-occupy'd Land.

If any Perſon deſires to Cultivate or Build upon the un-occupy'd Land, they apply to the King's Officers, who procure him a Grant, or Leaſe, for ninety nine Years, upon a ſmall annual Acknowledgment, as above, and renew their Leaſe, when expired, as in other private Eſtates; and one would think, that if the Country were very populous, the Land would be more of it cultivated, ſince People may have Eſtates ſo cheap as for improving, and only paying ſo ſmall an Acknowledgment to the King, and doubtleſs it muſt be owing either to the Sordidneſs or Indolence of the Inhabitants, or to the Barrenneſs of the Soil in ſome Parts of the Country, that there is ſo much waſte, deſolate, defart Land in *Perſia*.

The King has one Third of the Produce.

WHATEVER Rent the Lands pay, the King has one Third of the Produce; but the Grain being very ſubject to be deſtroy'd by Hail, Drought, Locuſts, Graſs-hoppers, and other Inſects, the Tenants inſiſt on proportionable Abatements; and when the Deſtruction is very great, the People, the better to convince the King of their Loſs, carry to Court wither'd Branches of Trees, and damaged Ears of Corn, as Specimens of the Truth of their Complaint, and to prove their Inability to pay the uſual Rent; and if their Loſs be but little, yet they commonly make loud Complaints that ſometimes their Abatements is more than their Loſs; by which Means they ſometimes make an Advantage of their Misfortunes; but private Landlords cannot be ſo impoſed upon, becauſe they are proper Judges of the Farmer's Loſſes, as having the Land under their immediate Inſpection. The King's Officers frequently pretend they have no Authority to make Abatements, and therefore the Inhabitants of the Villages go up in whole Shoals to Court, to preſent their Petitions, and expreſs their Grievances to the King in Perſon, inſomuch that there are ſometimes ſeven or eight thouſand People attending at the Court of *Iſpahan* upon theſe Occaſions; and the Court uſually ſends Orders to their Intendants and Receivers in the ſeveral Provinces, or depute Commiſſioners to redreſs the People; but herein the Crown is uſually defrauded; for by a ſmall Purſe given as a Preſent to theſe Commiſſioners or Intendants, the Truth of their Complaint is confirm'd at Court by the Report of the ſaid deputed Officers.

Attends the Cattle, &c.

THE King has alſo one Third of the Husbandman's Profit in his Cattle, as the third Fleece, the third of the Breed, &c. Every Province makes alſo large Preſents to the Court, of the moſt valuable Things the Country affords, whether Silk, Grain, Fruits, Cattle, or whatſoever is moſt valuable among them, and that in ſuch Quantities as to be ſufficient to ſupply the King's Houſhold: He has the ſeventh Fleece, and the ſeventh of the Breed of Cattle, in thoſe Lands which are not appropriated to his Uſe, which is a conſiderable Addition to his Revenue; for the Shepherds in *Perſia*, like the Patriarchs of old, reckon their Riches by their Number of Flocks and Herds, and make attending upon them their Buſineſs. They live in Tents, and remove from Place to Place as they can find Paſture for them; for all Lands that are not the Property of particular Perſons, are common to all the King's Subjects to graze upon, only the ſevenths, above-mention'd, is demanded as an Acknowledgment, that it is the King's original Property.

The wealthy Shepherds and Herdſmen, are call'd *Sauamat-chan*, from whence we have the Word *Saracen*; for the Word ſignifies an Inhabitant of the Fields, for they live in Tents by two or three Hundred together, and ſometimes ſo many more encamp'd in one Place, that their Tents, and

their

their Flocks and Herds cover the Ground ſo far, that it requires two or three Hours to paſs thro' them; and the King has in every Province an *Inchomban Baſhi*, or Chief of the Shepherds, reſiding to take up the above-mention'd Sevenths both of Sheep, Aſſes, Mules, Camels, and Goats; but of Horſes, Silk, and Cotton, he has a third all over the Kingdom.

Minerals and precious Stones.

Minerals and precious Stones are his entire Property, and though he allows the Subject a Share, yet it is not till he has had his Choice, and he has two *per Cent.* of all the Money. Nothing will grow in that dry parch'd Country, without being artificially ſupply'd with Water, of which the King makes an Advantage, by making Perſons pay for turning it into their Fields and Gardens. Every-body alſo pays a Ducat a Head, whether Natives or Foreigners, that are not of the ſame Religion; and there is alſo a Tax of ten Pence for every working Shop, and twenty Pence for every one of the reſt.

Their Cuſtoms do not amount to much, as having no Port but *Gombroon*; and as for the Merchandize carried out or brought in by Land, they only pay a ſmall Sum for the Load of every Camel, Mule, or Ox, according to their Bignels, without examining the inſide of the Packs.

Preſents.

But the confiſcated Eſtates amount to ſomething conſiderable, and to that we may add the numerous Preſents made to the King, the chief of which are made on New-Year's-day, when they preſent wrought Silks, Horſes, Aſſes, beautiful Boys and Girls, Gold, Silver, precious Stones, Perfumes, and every thing that is Rich and Curious.

Several Handicraft Trades are exempted from all Duties to the Crown, but then they are obliged to Work for the King *Gratis*, when he requires it; and when the King has any Palace to Erect or Repair, he has nothing to do but give Directions, and find Materials; for the Maſons, Carpenters, *&c.* are obliged to Work without Wages, for the Reaſon above-mention'd. The Maintenance of Ambaſſadors, and their Carriage and Paſſage, is all done at the Charge of the Country they paſs through, without any Expence to the King; and when he has a mind to diſtinguiſh a Perſon with a Reward for ſome particular Service, it is done out of other People's Pockets, for he ſends him to one of the *Chans* with the *Caluat*, or Royal Veſt, for which the *Chan* makes the Meſſenger a Preſent of a much ſuperior Value, according to the Poſt he is in.

The King's Revenue four Millions Sterling.

By virtue of the Impoſts above-mention'd, it is ſaid the King's Revenue amounts to four Millions Sterling a Year, and yet ſuch is the Splendor of the *Perſian* Court, that it is ſuppoſed but little of it remains in the Treaſury at the Year's End, for the Court, whether at *Iſpahan*, or removed in Form, as deſcribed in *Chap.* XII. under the Name of the *Courac*, yet the numerous Women and Eunuchs are ſo chargeable, that it muſt require an immenſe Sum to ſupport ſo great an Expence.

The Officers of the Revenue ſend every Year to Court the State of their Province, and what every Town and Village produces, examin'd and atteſted by the principal Inhabitants of the reſpective Places, and theſe Accounts are given as a Security for the Payment of the Penſions or Salaries from the Crown; and in the ſame manner every Governor pays his Officers and Soldiers with Aſſignations on the Lands belonging to their reſpective Provinces, ſo that as their Pay is ſmall, there is little or no Money diſburs'd in the Payment of it.

Seals.

They have five Seals in *Perſia*. The firſt is uſed in Affairs relating to the Demeſne Lands. The ſecond for Commiſſions and Letters Patent. The third in military Affairs. The fourth about the Revenue; and the fifth in Things relating to the Houſhold. The Form of one of the Seals is round; two others are ſquare; and two of an irregular Form. There are no Arms engrav'd upon them, but on one is the Names of the twelve *Imans*, or Mahometan Patriarchs; on the other a Sentence of the Alchoran, or ſome other pious Motto. The largeſt are about the bigneſs of a Crown Piece, and the reſt about half that bigneſs; they are made of Rubies, or ſome other precious Stones; the King always wears the principal Seal about his Neck, and all Inſtruments that require the Royal Seal are carried in on a *Friday*, and ſeal'd in the King's Preſence. The Impreſſion is made on Paper, with a Kind of thick Ink, like our printing Ink, and not in Wax as it is here.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Birth, Parentage, Life, and Death of Mahomet, *firſt Author of that Religion that now goes by his Name.*

Mahomet, his Birth.

As the *Perſians* are of the Mahometan Religion, it may not be amiſs to give an Account of the Birth, Life, and Education of *Mahomet*, the Founder of it; which is briefly as follows:

He was born in the City of *Mecca*, near the Eaſt Coaſt of the *Red Sea*, in the twenty ſecond Degree of Latitude, in the Year of our Lord 571; he was of the Tribe or Family of the *Koraſhites*, which was eſteem'd the moſt honourable in that Part of *Arabia*: He deſcended in a right Line of Primogeniture from *Pher Koraſh*, the Original of that Tribe, from whence it took its Name; but his Father *Abdallah* dying when he was but two Years old, his Grandfather *Abdol Motallab*, who was then living, left the Bulk of his Eſtate to two of his other Sons. *Mahomet*'s Father being dead, he remain'd with his Mother till he was eight Years of Age, and then ſhe dying, his Grandfather *Abdol Motallab* took him Home into his own Family, and the Grandfather dying the Year after, left *Mahomet* to the Care of his Uncle *Aba Taleb*, who being a conſiderable Merchant, brought *Mahomet* up to his own Buſineſs; and when he arrived at a proper Age, his Uncle ſent him with his Camels into *Syria*; and at *Boſra*, a City upon the Borders of that Country, it is given out, that he was diſtinguiſh'd as a Prophet by a Light round his Viſage; and whether the Thing was Fact, or their telling him of it was Flattery, we cannot determine; but he from thence, or about that Time, commenc'd Prophet.

His Trade.

But notwithſtanding his prophetick Spirit, he continued to trade as a Factor for his Uncle, till he

he was five and twenty Years of Age, at which Time he was invited into the Service of a rich Widow of about the Age of thirty seven Years; her Name was *Cadigha*, and after he had been about three Years in her Service, trading to *Damascus*, and other Places, he married his Mistress, and by that Match, and his good Trade, he became one of the richest Men in *Mecca*.

This Success begun to inspire him with more ambitious Views, and he began to think, that considering his Pedigree, he ought to be the Sovereign of his Tribe, and after having weigh'd all Means to attain that Dignity, he thought nothing could answer his Purpose so well as a Pretence to extraordinary Sanctity, and an industrious Concern for the Reformation of the whole World.

His trading to *Egypt*, *Palestine*, and *Syria*, gave him a great Opportunity of being acquainted with both *Jews* and *Christians*; and in Order the better to qualify him for his intended Design, he took particular Notice of the Animosities that were amongst the several Sects of Christians at that Time, from whence he concluded, that it would be no difficult Matter to set up a *new* Form of Religion, that might please them all; and, lest by gaining one he should lose another, or more, he did not propose to abolish any Religion absolutely, but to collect from all what he thought might please every Body's Palate, and reject the rest, under the igneminious Terms of Innovations and Corruptions.

But as it was then, is now, and ever will be, very surprizing to see a Man of a very licentious Course of Life, set up for a Preacher of Righteousness, and a Reformer of the People, he thought it proper first to make himself a miraculous Specimen of the Reformation that he design'd to promote in others; and, indeed, this was no mistaken Conduct, for we find to this Day, that let a Preacher's Doctrine be never so Good and Orthodox, yet if he contradicts, and willingly falls short of it, in his Life and Conversation, People are apt to take Liberty to think, that he cannot expect that his Doctrine should have any Influence upon them, when it has so little or none upon himself.

But *Mahomet* obviated this Objection, and in his Reformation begun with himself, at least, to all visible Appearance, for he lead an abstemious Life, and every Morning retired to his Devotions at the Cave of *Hira*, near *Mecca*; and, as he gave out, continued all Day in Fasting, Prayer, and pious Meditations; and some think it was here that he met his Associates, by whose help he form'd his Alchoran.

When he return'd to *Mecca* in the Evening, he related to his Wife certain Visions that, he said, he had seen, and Voices that he had heard in his Retirement; but she look'd upon those Relations as ridiculous Stories, but he insisted to her upon his having intimate Conversation with the Angel *Gabriel*, and repeated the Report of his Visions to her with that Assurance, that she could not avoid giving some Credit to it, which was soon confirm'd by her asking the Opinion of a Monk which *Mahomet* kept in the House, who being privy to, and assisting in the Design, corroborated what *Mahomet* gave out, and from thence his Wife became his Proselyte.

When he had continued in this abstemious Life for about two Years, he began to aim higher, and to take upon him the Character of an Apostle of God, but with that Modesty and Humility, that he seem'd rather to conceal his Mission, than to be seen to promulgate it, which, doubtless, gave a Sanction to his whole Design; and now he gain'd more Proselytes, among which was his Cousin *Haly*, the Son of his Uncle, whose Name, and those of his Successors, were afterwards famous among the Mahometans, as stiling himself the first of Believers.

After this *Abubekar*, one of the richest Men in *Mecca*, espoused his Doctrine, which was brought into great Esteem by the Wisdom and Interest of this great Man, and now his Followers began to increase, and as they were capable he rewarded them with Preferment, to be Generals of his Army, and other Advancements suitable to their Capacities. Those Rewards and Preferments brought him more Proselytes, and strengthen'd him; and, on the other Side, his Officers being all Proselytes of his own making, contributed very much to the propagating and establishing his Doctrine: And now, which was in the four and fortieth Year of his Age, he began publickly to acknowledge and promulgate his Mission as the Messenger of Jesus Christ, or a Prophet sent from God, to reform his *Pagan* Countrymen, and reclaim them from Idolatry.

But what puzzled him most was, that he could not work Miracles, as *Christ* and his Apostles did, but he evaded that by saying, that he was only sent to preach, and not to work Miracles; and other times he would say, that their Ancestors had despised the Prophets, and contemn'd former Miracles, and therefore God would appear no more by Miracles among them; other times fixing his Doctrine upon the Foot of Predestination, he told them that those whom God had ordain'd to believe, would believe without Miracles, and the rest would not be convinc'd by Miracles, so that they were of no Use; however, many of his Followers, having Sense enough to see into these Evasions, forsook him, as he complains in his Alchoran. Cap. 2. Vers. 106. Cap. 3. Vers. 178. Cap. 6. Vers. 109. Cap. 16. Vers. 103.

When he came to *Medina*, and had a sufficient Force to support his Pretensions, and thought he was able by Force to make them do what they would not be deluded to, he told them in plain Terms, that God had sent *Moses* and *Jesus* with the Power of working Miracles, but since the obstinate People would not be convinc'd by them, God had sent him without Miracles to reduce them to Obedience by the Sword; and so with a Pretence of Indignation, forbid his Followers to enter into any Disputes about his Religion; but instead of that, commanded them to maintain it by Force, and without exception, to destroy all those that refused obedience to his Laws, promising glorious Rewards in the next Life to those who should take up Arms in his Cause, and the Crown of Martyrdom to all who died fighting for it.

His Proof of his Mission

But, not to regard those miraculous Legend Writers in favour of *Mahomet*, who affirm that he cleft the Moon in two Parts, that Trees went out to meet him, &c. the chief Thing that he alledges as a Proof of his divine Mission is, that he, an illiterate Man, could not possibly compose such an excellent Book as the Alchoran without the Assistance of some supernatural Power, and, as it is allow'd, that it is an elegant Stile, and the Standard of good Language in the *Arabian* Tongue, *Mahomet* infills, that it is beyond the Power of Men and Devils united to compose such another Book, or one Chapter of it, for eloquent Stile and divine Instructions; which his Followers agreeing to, they conclude he was sent from God; and that he was illiterate is more than probable, because the Tribe he descended from naturally despised all manner of Literature, and when he declared himself a Prophet, there was scarce a Man in *Mecca* that could either write or read; though at *Medina* they encouraged and promoted Learning to that degree, that they were, by way of distinction, call'd the People of the Book

By that time he had continued eight Years in his pretended Apostleship, his Party became so numerous, that the Governor of *Mecca* prohibited all People to join with him, or converse with him; but as long as his Uncle *Abu Taleb* lived, he skreen'd him from Prosecution, but when he died, *Mahomet*'s Doctrine suffer'd, abundance of his Followers leaving him, and looking upon his Cause to be desperate.

About this Time *Cadiga* his first Wife died, but he married two others, viz. *Ayessha*, the Daughter of *Abubekar*, and *Sewda*, Daughter of *Zama*, and soon after he married *Huphsa*, the Daughter of *Omar*; who all being of very considerable Families in *Mecca*, he thought thereby to strengthen his Interest. In the twelfth Year he pretended he was carried up into Heaven by the Angel *Gabriel*, in the following Manner:

As he was in Bed with his beloved Wife *Ayessha* one Night, he heard a Knocking at the Door, and when he open'd it he found an Angel at the Door, with seventy Pair of Wings expanded; they were witer than Snow, and clearer than Chrystal; this Angel mounted him upon the Beast *Alborack*, not so big as a Mule, and in the twinkling of an Eye carried him to *Jerusalem*, though it is above six hundred Miles; and there leaving his Beast, he ascended by a Ladder of Light to Heaven, and from one Heaven to another, till he came to the Seventh Heaven, the Throne of God. (*I hope the Reader will look upon this as his own Relation, which is what we are now upon, and not that we would impose it upon their Belief as matter of fact.*) But to proceed in his Account of his Journey, that the seven Heavens are five hundred Years Journey from each other, according to the Way of Mortals travelling upon this Earth; he says, furthermore, that in one of them he saw an Angel of such a prodigious Bigness, that it was above one hundred and ninety Years Journey between his Eyes; but if we allow, as Limners do, that the proportion of the Space between the Eyes, is to that of the Height of the Body, as One to Seventy Two, the Height of that Angel must be thirteen thousand six hundred and eighty Years Journey. But let *Mahomet* pretend to what he will as to his Divinity, he has proved himself very absurd in his Mathematicks, for his seven Heavens, allowing the first to be five hundred Years Journey from the Earth, to the highest of them could be but three thousand five hundred Years from the Earth; but the Height of the Angel being above thirteen thousand Days Journey, he would possess almost four times the Space that was contain'd between the Earth and the Seventh Heaven, and above twenty seven Times the Space that the Heaven, in which he was seen, contain'd; by which Way we may at least observe, that where an Imposture is intended to be introduc'd, the greatest Absurdities will go down to impose upon People's Belief, and make the Miracle appear the greater; and yet he tells us on the other Hand, that the Journey was perform'd in the tenth Part of a Night. When he came to give an Account of his Journey next Morning, it was receiv'd with a Ridicule suitable to the Improbability and Absurdity of it; but *Abubekar* gave it a Sanction, by professing his Belief of the Whole, by which the Populace were so drawn in, that *Mahomet* gain'd a great deal of Ground by the Project; and though it was some time disputed whether it was a Vision or a real Journey, *Mahomet*'s Party brought it in as a real Journey, and so put an End to the Dispute.

His Journey to Heaven.

The Consequence of the People's Credulity in this Particular was, that all *Mahomet*'s Sayings were afterwards deem'd sacred, as coming immediately from Heaven, and are recorded accordingly; and now the Interest of *Mahomet* was so far establish'd, that he sent his Disciples abroad into other Towns in *Arabia* to propagate his new Doctrine; but it did not take in any Place so well as at *Medina*, then call'd *Yathrib*; and what contributed to the introducing it there was, that the *Jews* and Christians (of both which the Inhabitants of *Medina* consisted,) were at continual Variance, and persecuted one another with great Violence, till one of the contending Parties, to strengthen themselves against the other, fell in with *Mahomet*, and it is generally believed, by the Consequence, that it was the Christians did so, because of the kind Reception the Christians now meet with in *Persia* and other Mahometan Countries, and on the other hand their inveterate hatred of the *Jews*.

In the thirteenth Year of his Mission, if we may so call it, there came seventy three Men and two Women to him, from *Medina* to *Mecca*, to embrace his new Religion; and this being a voluntary Act, he thought them a fit Company out of which to chuse twelve Apostles, which he did; and when he had instructed them, he sent them back to *Medina* to propagate his Doctrine, and they succeeded so well, that they brought over abundance of Proselytes; but *Mahomet* and his Followers at *Mecca* were so far from being encourag'd, that a Design was form'd to surprize them and cut them off, but he, having timely Intelligence of it, fled with his Disciples to *Medina*, where they arrived safe, though several Parties were sent out to intercept them; and having built himself a House, he spent the remainder of his Life and finish'd his Days at *Medina*.

It may not be amiss to observe here, that the Mahometan *Æra* takes date from this Flight of *Mahomet* from *Mecca* to *Medina*, which was on the twelfth Day of the Month *Rabia*, which is our twenty fourth of *September*, and this *Æra* is call'd the *Hegira* or Flight, as the Word implies in their Language; and the Time of his setting out from *Mecca* upon that Flight, being on the sixteenth of *July*, in the Year of *Christ* six hundred and twenty two, they date their Year from that time, as we do from the Birth of our *Saviour*, and hence the Year 1733 with us, is in the Mahometan Account but the Year one thousand and eleven.

But, being thus settled at *Medina*, he married his Daughter *Fatima* to his Cousin *Haly*; this was the only Child of six that he had living by his Wife *Cadigha*, and indeed the only Daughter that produced any Succession from *Mahomet*.

He being now Master of a considerable Town, and having Troops under his Command, he did not think it necessary to dispute about his Religion, but to drive People into it, and to compel those that would not embrace it to pay severely for their Infidelity, as he call'd it; this Levy upon Infidelity continues to this Day in Mahometan Countries.

When he found himself able to set forward in the World, he was more like *Cartouch* the famous *French* Robber, than an Apostle under a Divine Mission, for he attack'd some Caravans of Merchants who traded between *Mecca* and *Syria*, and often carried off a great Booty, though sometimes overmatch'd and defeated; however, by this Means he brought over abundance to his Party, not doubting but they might rob and plunder with a clear Conscience when they had such a sanctified Leader. Turns Robber.

In the second Year of the *Hegira*, or with us the Year 623, he alter'd the *Kibla*, or Order for turning their Faces towards *Jerusalem* when they pray'd, and commanded that they should upon that Occasion turn their Faces towards *Mecca*, not only for the Veneration that he would have them pay to the Place of his Birth, but for the inveterate hatred which he had now conceiv'd against the *Jews*, and for the same Reason he also order'd the Pilgrimages of his Followers to be made to the Temple at *Mecca*, and not to that at *Jerusalem*.

In

In the third Year of the *Hegira*, or of his compleat Apoſtleſhip, or rather Impoſtureſhip, and in our Account 624, he made War upon ſome of the *Jewiſh Arabians*, and taking many of them Priſoners, he ſold them for Slaves, and divided their Effects among his Followers, which further encouraged them in their religious Plunder; but not knowing when he was well, he attempted to proceed yet farther in his Conqueſts, but was himſelf defeated, which gave ſuch a Shock to his Infallibility, that his deluded Diſciples began to queſtion whether he was the Perſon they took him for; Mutiny. ſome forſook him, and others mutunied upon Account of their Friends, which he had drawn into the Battle, and were ſlain, but he was not at a Loſs for an Excuſe; and to ſatisfy thoſe who began to doubt his Miſſion, as that Great Prophet he ſtil'd himſelf, he told them, that his Defe t was owing to the Wickedneſs of his Army, and that it was for their Sins that God permitted him to be beaten; and for thoſe that murmur'd for the Death of their ſlain Relations, he quietted them with aſſerting his Doctrine of Predeſtination, affirming, that that was the Time appointed for their Death, and beyond which it was impoſſible for them to ſurvive, ſolving all the whole with making them believe that thoſe who died fighting for his Cauſe, had obtain'd a Crown of Martyrdom, and were now in a bleſſed State in Paradiſe, and theſe Doctrines anſwer'd his Purpoſe, and kept up the Spirits of his Followers; but afterwards, upon a Victory obtain'd, his Soldiers being merry with Plunder, and hot with Liquor, they quarrel'd, and therefore in the fifth Chapter of his Alchoran, he makes refraining from Wine and Games at Chance, a ſtanding Article of his Religion.

Mecca againſt him. But his City of *Mecca* were ſtill bent upon his Ruin, as being jealous, that if he was ſuffer'd to Reign at this Rate, he would ſome Time or other be prejudicial to them, and attempt to reduce them to Subjection; to prevent which they enter'd into a Confederacy with ſome *Jewiſh Arabians*, his mortal Enemies; and when they had muſter'd an Army of about ten thouſand Men, they went in queſt of him; but he not being able to encounter them, made his Eſcape from them; and having encreas'd his Forces, he return'd the Viſit to his Friends at *Mecca*, where a Battle was fought, but with no great Advantage on either Side; but they came to a Treaty, in which it was agreed, that all that were *Mahomet*'s Friends in *Mecca*, ſhould have free Liberty to join him, and all that were already join'd to him, and had a mind to deſert him, might return to *Mecca*, by which means he encreaſed his Forces, and with that his Ambition, and cauſed himſelf to be proclaim'd King at *Medina*, in the Year 627, and of the *Hegira* ſix.

Mahomet proclaim'd King. *Mahomet* now acted as both King and Prieſt, and ſo did his Succeſſors the *Caliphs*, till about the three hundred and twenty fifth Year of the *Hegira*; but then the Eyes of the Government began to be open, and they thought the Eccleſiaſtical Power or the Prieſthood was ſufficient for one Perſon, and ſo renounced all Obedience to him, as to any Civil Authority; and the Prince where the *Caliph* reſided, *viz.* in *Babylon*, now called *Bagdat*, depoſed the *Caliph* at his own Pleaſure, and ſet up another more in his own Intereſt; but in Proceſs of Time the *Tartars* over-ran the whole Country, deſtroy'd the Name and Authority of *Caliph*, and conſtituted High-Prieſts in the Room of *Caliph*, which in *Perſia* are call'd *Sedre*, and in *Turkey* the *Muſti* to this Day.

Mahomet, inveterate againſt the *Jews*, continued his War againſt the *Jewiſh Arabians*, and with his Army of ten thouſand Men he ſurprized the City of *Mecca*; and having cut off his zealous Oppoſers, the reſt comply'd with his Government and Religion; whereupon he conſecrated the Temple at *Mecca* to his own Religion, and enjoin'd all his Followers to reſort thither once in their Lives.

This Succeſs animated him to make ſtill further Attempts; but the Pagan *Arabians* united againſt him, and gave him battle, and forced him to fly for Refuge under the Walls of *Mecca*; but he recruiting, gave them a ſecond Battle, and defeated them, and compell'd them to embrace his Religion, and reduc'd moſt of *Arabia*, and ſome Towns in *Syria*, under his Power.

In the Year 631, being the tenth of the *Hegira*, he undertook a Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, and enter'd that City the tenth Day of the Month *Dulhaga*, where a vaſt Concourſe of People reſorted to him from all Parts of *Arabia*; he inſtructed them in his new Law; but finding himſelf in an ill State of Health, by reaſon of ſome Poiſon that he had taken unknown to him ſome time before he return'd to *Medina*, and being delirious in his Sickneſs, he pretended to leave them Inſtructions that he was never able to accompliſh, and died in great Torment.

Some of his Followers, that had ſuppoſed him immortal, were very much ſurprized at his Death; but *Abubekar* kept their Spirits up, by citing ſeveral Paſſages out of the Alchoran, intimating that he muſt die; and the only Diſpute now depending was, as to the Place of his Burial: Some would have him buried at *Mecca*, becauſe he fled from thence; others choſe *Medina*, becauſe that was the Place he fled to; a third Party would have him buried among the other Prophets at *Jeruſalem*; but *Abubekar* affirm'd, that he heard him ſay, a Prophet ought to be buried where he died, and thereupon made a Grave under the Bed he died upon, and buried him there, and ſo put an End to all the Diſpute.

He died the very Day of the grand Climacteric of his Age, Sixty-three; and it may be obſerved, let his Foundation be what it will, he made the greateſt Revolution in the World that ever happen'd in ſo little Time; for in leſs than a hundred Years he and his Succeſſors extended their Dominion more than the *Romans* did in eight hundred Years; and ſome of the *Mahometan* Dominions are at this Day the moſt potent in the World.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Persian *or* Mahometan *Religion.*

gion. THE *Persian* Religion is that of the *Mahometan*, as explain'd by *Haly*, the Nephew and Son-in-law of *Mahomet*, and one of his Successors in the Empire, and also interpreted by the eleven *Imans*, the Descendants in a Right Line from *Haly*.

We have given in the last Chapter the Original of *Mahomet*, and of his Progress: It remains now that we give account of his Religion, as broach'd by himself, pursued by his Followers, and now embraced in *Persia*, the Place which is the Subject of the present Discourse.

When *Mahomet* died, *Haly* his Son-in-law, and *Abubekar* his Father-in-law, both pretended to have a Right to succeed him; and the People also being divided, it amounted to Blows, that they had various Battles with different Success, in which *Omar*, one of *Mahomet*'s Captains, exerted himself so much, that when *Abubekar* died, which was between two or three Years after the Death of *Mahomet*, he kept the Command for about ten Years; in which Time *Haly* was very much reduc'd; and when *Omar* died, one of his Relations, call'd *Osman*, took upon him to be *Mahomet*'s Successor, and was proclaimed accordingly; but he dying, both Parties were united in owning *Haly* to be the Successor of *Mahomet*.

But when *Haly* died, the Difference was again propagated; *Hassen*, the eldest Son of *Haly*, claim'd the Empire, by Right of Inheritance; but his Opposers insisting upon the Right of Election, chose *Muhuvia*, one of their Generals, who it is said procur'd *Haly* and eleven of his Sons to be murder'd, the twelfth only escaping; and from him the *Persian* Kings value themselves upon deriving their Pedigree: However, the Descendants of *Muhuvia* were always successful; but the Kings or Sophi's of *Persia* have always valued themselves upon being the Descendants of *Haly*.

Difference in the *Mahometan* Religion.

This Difference makes them vary in their Sentiments of Religion; and even the same Alchoran is differently interpreted by different Parties, insomuch that although the *Persians* and *Turks* use the same Alchoran as their original Guide, yet they vary as much in the Interpretation of it as they do in their Opinions of the legal Successors of *Mahomet*; of which the *Persians* think that *Haly* and the *Imans* are the only ones; but the *Turks* are for *Abubekar*, *Omar*, and *Osman*. The *Turks* and *Persians* are so inveterate in their Sentiments against each other, that neither of them believe that the other can be saved, though they are both *Mahometans*.

The *Mahometans* have two Articles of Faith, and five of Practice. The two first are,

I. That there is no other God but one.
II. That *Mahomet* was sent from God.

Their five Articles of Practice are,

I. That they ought to observe their Corporal Purifications.
II. To pray to God at the appointed Times.
III. To give Alms to the Poor.
IV. To fast all the Month of *Ramezan*.
V. To go in Pilgrimage to the Temple of *Mecca*.

And to this the *Persians* add a Sixth.

VI. That *Haly* is the Vicar of God.

The *Persians* hold that all Souls were created long before the World was made; and their Doctors believe and teach the Transmigration of Souls, especially those of Prophets, Saints, and good Men.

They allow the six Days Work of Creation, and that both good and evil Angels are composed of a Substance that may be so condensed as to become visible. They alledge that *Adam* was allow'd to eat any Fruit in Paradise, and that the gross Part did not turn to Excrement, but evaporated by the Pores only; that if he should eat Wheat it would turn to a noisom Excrement, and that it was for eating Wheat that he was turn'd out of Paradise; not as it was Sin, or he forbid to do it, but as it laid him under a Necessity of voiding those noisom Excrements which disqualified him from any longer Enjoyment of a Place so entirely clean and undefiled.

It would require a Volume of itself to enumerate all the Absurdities of their Religion. They say that when a Person dies the Soul wanders about till the Body be interr'd, and then it re-enters the Body it was separated from, and that as soon as the Body is deposited, and the Company retired, there comes two terrible black Angels, who demands of the Deceas'd an Account of his Faith, concerning the Unity of the Godhead, and the Mission of *Mahomet*, and what the Deceased answers, is wrote down, and preserved to be brought in at his final Examination, at the Day of Judgment; and after this first Examination is over, the Soul enters into an aerial Body prepared for it; where it continues till the Resurrection, when the Soul shall be united to the same Body it was separated from.

They believe that after the last Judgment every Person must pass over a narrow Bridge, not wider that the Edge of a Razor, and that the Wicked will slip off, and tumble into Hell, while the Righteous shall be supported in their Passage over, and conducted to Paradise.

Seven Hells

They allow seven Hells or Degrees of Punishment; in the first, or mildest of them, they place the wicked Mahometans; in the second those who deny *Haly* and the *Imans*; in the third, those who deny that *Mahomet* was a Prophet; and here they place the Christians: In the fourth, those who deny both *Christ* and *Mahomet*, of which Number they reckon the *Jews*: In the fifth the *Pagans*: In the sixth the Apostates; and in the seventh the Atheists.

They hold that *Adam* was the first Prophet, and *Mahomet* the last, and that as there was no Prophet before *Adam*, so there shall be none after *Mahomet*, and that every Prophet, or Law-giver, abrogates those given by his Predecessor; and hence the Followers of *Mahomet* would insinuate that his Alchoran has superseded, and made void the Gospel of our blessed Saviour.

They bring *Mahomet*'s want of Learning in as a corroborating Proof of his divine Mission, and as our Saviour did not begin to preach till he was above thirty Years of Age, *Mahomet*'s Followers presume to make a Comparison, and to observe that he did not preach till he was forty Years old.

The twelve *Imans*

The eleven *Imans*, (or twelve, if we reckon *Haly* to be the first) are, 1 *Haly*; 2. *Hassein*; 3. *Hossein*, 4. *Haly* II. 5. *Mahomet Beker*; 6. *Jafer*, 7. *Mousa*; 8. *Haly*; 9. *Mahomet* the Abstemious; 10. *Haly* III. 11. *Hassan* II. 12. *Mahomet Mehdy*; but

these *Imans* being all now extinct, the Kings of *Persia* stile themselves Slaves, or Lieutenants of *Mahomet*, the last *Iman*, and that they hold the Crown in his Right only, till he comes into the World again. *They need desire no better Title than to hold the Crown till he comes into the World again.*

Purifications. THEY are exceeding ceremonious as to their Purifications, and avoiding Things which they, according to their Religion, deem unclean; for, according to their Law, they look upon any thing unclean that has had Wine in it, or so much as dropp'd upon it. They scarce perform any Act of Devotion without first washing their Hands, especially in touching the Alchoran, there is that Care taken, that upon the Cover of it, or any other Book of Devotion, there is commonly written, *Touch not this Book with impure Hands*; and as they pray five Times a Day they are sure to wash as often, nor are they to do it for Ceremony or Convenency, but sincerely express themselves to this Effect, *I perform this necessary Act of Purification to render my Devotions acceptable to God, and that I may be fit to approach him.*

They pray five Times a Day. THEY pray five Times a Day; the first Time is at Noon, the Second in the Evening, the Third when it is dark, the Fourth at lying down to sleep, and the fifth in the Morning; but sometimes, if Business intervene, they are allow'd to put two together to have the sooner done; but the Clergy, who are more immediately devoted to Religion, seldom allow themselves any of these Dispensations.

Calling to Prayers. THEY have People to proclaim the Time of Prayer from some Eminence, as a Turret of a House, or the like, and begin their Declaration with these Words, *O God most great*, which they repeat four Times, turning to the four Quarters, East, West, North, and South; then they say, *The Testimony that we render to God is, that there is no other God but one*, Mahomet *is the Apostle of God*, Haly *is the Vicar of God*, and this they repeat in four different Positions, as above, after which they say, *Arise, say your Prayers, perform that most excellent Duty which* Mahomet *and* Haly *the most perfect of Created Beings have commanded*, and if it be Midnight or Morning, they begin with, *Awake out of Sleep*, and then proceed as above, and having again repeated four Times these Words, *O God most great*, they sing some Verses of the Alchoran, and then conclude, Omar *be curs'd*; and thus done, every one goes to Prayers in his own House, or where he thinks fit, prostrating their Bodies to the Earth, and turning their Faces or Heads towards *Mecca*.

Materials at their Devotions. WHEN they go to their Prayers every one has a little Carpet, in which they wrap up several Things which they use at their Devotion, as an Earthen Dish, a Bead-Roll, a Pocket Glass, a Comb, and some tatter'd Reliques, but especially the Alchoran, which they put in a Bag by itself; when they have taken these Things out, they spread the Carpet, and place their Trinkets before them; then they take the Comb and the Glass and comb their Beards and Whiskers; then they take out their Purse and put off their Rings, for they must have no Gold about them at their Devotions; and having got their Beads in their Hand, they prostrate themselves upon the Carpet, in the Posture above-mention'd.

Beads. THE Number of their Beads is ninety nine, some have them all of a Size, but some have every third Bead a little bigger than the rest, and so telling them over by three at a Time, when they come to the thirty third Bead, they cry *O God most great*, and at the sixty sixth, they say *Glory be to God*, and at the ninety ninth, or last, they say *God be praised*; sometimes they repeat some Part of their Confession of Faith, or of the Alchoran. Their little Earthen Dish, about as big as the Palm of one's Hand, is to clap upon their Foreheads, for as their Foreheads must be upon the Earth, they have these Dishes, as well as their Beads, made of Earth brought from some of the *Imans* Tombs, or some such Earth, which they deem more sacred than the rest.

Reliques. THEIR Reliques are little Pieces of the Pall or Hangings of *Mahomet*'s Tomb, or of the Palls of the *Imans*: For the Grand Seignior sends every Year new Hangings to *Mahomet*'s Tomb and the Temple at *Mecca*, and when the new Palls or Hangings are put up, the old ones that are taken down are cut in little Shreds, and given or sold to Pilgrims, and are look'd upon by them as sacred Reliques.

Eclipse. WHEN an Eclipse of the Sun or Moon happens, they use certain particular Prayers adapted to that Occasion, as apprehending that they portend some dreadful Calamity, though at the same Time the *Persians* are not quite ignorant of both the Cause and the Calculation of them; but upon whatever Occasion they pray, they do not assemble at the Mosque or Temple, or read the Alchoran, or if they do, they pray every Man by himself; for they think that no Man ought to pray or read the Alchoran to the Congregation in the Temple but an *Iman* or Prophet, or one legally descended from one, but there are but few in *Persia* at this Day that pretend to that legal Descent; and hence they generally pray and read the Alchoran separately, and in all Places indifferently, provided they be not polluted.

Prayers for the Dead. THEY do not make praying for the Dead any material Part of their Religion, only they commemorate their deceas'd Relations at some certain Times, and so think that God will increase the Happiness, or lessen the Misery of the departed Souls at the Importunity of their surviving Relations, but in this they are not all agreed; nor do they pray to their Saints, nor even to *Mahomet* or *Haly*, to intercede for them, nor do they think that their Saints know what is done upon Earth, any further than God reveals it to them.

Alms. THEY think that giving Alms is so essential a Duty, that without it their Prayers are not accepted, but their Charity consists very much in publick Buildings, as Caravansera's or Houses of Entertainment in the great Towns, or upon the Road, for the lodging of Strangers *gratis*, as also in making Bridges, Causeways, Cisterns, Colleges, Bagnio's, and the like; but they have no Hospital's for the Sick as in *Europe*, their Caravansera's in some measure supplying that Defect, because there all People, sick and well, may have a Lodging *gratis*.

Dervises. THERE are abundance of *Dervises* and *Fagirs* in almost all Mahometan Countries; they are a kind of begging Fryers, and pretend to a Sanctity much superior to other People; upon which Account they pretend to a Right to those plentiful Charities, which they may be rather said to demand than to crave, and go in such Shoals to the Country Villages, that it is hardly safe to deny them.

Tythe. THERE are other establish'd Charities for these begging Fryers, and this may be called a Sort of a Tythe of Camels, Oxen, and Sheep, which they have had in Possession seven Months: it is levy'd thus; if a Person has but four Camels, he pays no Tythe, but if he has five he pays a Sheep for them, and so for every five Camels under twenty six; but if he exceed that Number, he pays a Camel, or the Value of it; he that has less than thirty Oxen pays no Tythe, but for every thirty he pays a Calf; and so for every forty Sheep one Sheep is paid, but for less than forty they pay nothing; and besides this, there is paid towards this Charity one Fifth of all the Spoil and Plunder taken in the Wars.

THE begging Fryers have the best Share of these Tythes, but they are sometimes apply'd to the redeeming Slaves hardly used by their Masters, also for the Relief of Insolvent Debtors, and of Strangers who happen to be in distress in the Country, and the rest is laid out in publick Buildings above-named.

THE

ſt.

The *Perſian* Doctors define a Religious Faſt to be *A total Abſtinence from all kind of Nouriſhment and carnal Pleaſure, from the Break of Day till Night, with an intent to pleaſe God,* but their Religion does not expreſsly command any other annual Faſt beſides that of the Month *Ramezan*, unleſs upon ſome extraordinary Occaſion, as by Way of Penance, or to avert a Calamity, or the like. The Word *Ramezan* is the ninth Month, and may be call'd their Lent, becauſe it is the Month of Faſting, and takes date from the firſt Appearance of the Moon after that new Moon, which is always ſoon after Sunſet; and upon its firſt appearance the Holy Cryers proclaim the Faſt from the Terrets of their Moſques, as a ſurprizing Piece of News, with Hymns, Acclamations, and Illuminations, Sound of Horns from the Terret of the Bagnio, to let them know that the Baths are ready; for they begun their Faſts as well as other Acts of Devotion with waſhing, and the End of the Faſt is proclam'd much in the ſame Manner by the Appearance of the ſucceeding Moon.

ſt pro-
aim'd.

Another Thing that the Mahometan Religion requires is the Pilgrimage to *Mecca* once in their Life time; here is the *Kabba*, or as they call it, the Houſe of God, which though by ſome call'd the Temple, yet is ſaid to be a ſmall Chapel built by *Abraham*, fifteen Foot long, twelve broad, and above thirty Foot high; (but for a further Deſcription of it ſee the following Hiſtory of *Arabia.*) The chief End of theſe Pilgrimages is to viſit this Chapel, and to perform ſome Acts of Devotion in the Courts about it, in veneration to *Abraham*, and not becauſe it was the Place of the Birth or Burial of *Mahomet*, for his Tomb is at *Medina*, above two hundred Miles to the Northward of *Mecca*.

grima-
e.

When *Bagdat* was in Poſſeſſion of the *Perſians*, their Pilgrims went that Way to *Medina*, but now they go by Way of *Beſſora*, near the Bottom of the *Perſian* Gulf; from whence the Caravans ſet out at ſuch a Time as to be at *Mecca* at the Time that the Law requires; they are convoy'd upon the Road by *Arabs*, whoſe Power is as abſolute over them as that of a Pilot in conducting a Ship in Pilots Water, and by that Means keep them forty or fifty Days upon the Road when the Voyage might be perform'd in twenty. In this Deſart they travel by Night, becauſe of the Heat, and truſt to the Light and Direction of the Stars. There are no Inns or Caravanſera's in this Deſart, but the Pilgrims lie in Tents near ſome Well if poſſible, where the *Arabs* ſupply them with Proviſions, as they do during the Time they perform their Devotions at the *Kabba* at *Mecca*.

When the Pilgrims have paſs'd the Deſart, they encamp near *Mecca*, and on the firſt Day of the Month *Zilhab* they waſh themſelves, and perform the Purification required in a great Baſon of Water, after which they wear no Cloaths during the Time, but a Linnen Cloth about their Middle, and another about their Sholders as a Token of Purification, or Innocency, or being dead to this World, and that they have no regard to external Ornaments, but that their Hearts are fix'd upon heavenly Things, without any regard to what this World produces.

Thoſe that go from *Mecca* to *Medina* to viſit *Mahomet*'s Tomb, are commonly ill uſed by the *Turks*, and are obliged by the *Turks* to viſit the Tombs of *Abubekar* and *Omar*, (Enemies and Rivals of *Mahomet*, *Haly*, &c.) but for thoſe whoſe Zeal induces them to this Branch of the Pilgrimage, the *Perſian* Doctors grant a Diſpenſation to temporize a little with the *Turkiſh* Ceremonies, rather than hazard their Lives, and then thoſe that go to *Medina* uſed to return to *Bagdat* to viſit the Tombs of thoſe Imans that are buried in thoſe Parts of *Chaldea*, near that City, and take Certificates from the Magiſtrates of the reſpective Places of their having been there; and this whole Pilgrimage coſts them about a Year's Time, and ſeveral Weeks are ſpent after their Return in receiving the Compliments of their Friends, who afterwards add the Title of *Hadgi* or *Pilgrim* to the Name they went by before.

Diſpen-
ation.

Festivals.

They have a great Religious Feſtival, which they hold in Memory of *Abraham*'s ſacrificing his Son. This is held in the Month *Zilhab*, when beſides the ſacrificing of Sheep and Goats, both for themſelves and Neighbours, the grand Sacrifice is a Camel. The Ceremony is perform'd at *Iſpahan*; at which the King ſometimes aſſiſts in Perſon, and is as follows: Sacrifices.

On the firſt Day of the Month *Zilhab*, a Camel was given to the People out of the King's Stables: They dreſs'd him up with Garlands and Ribbands, and led him throught he City with Muſick, and all Marks of Triumph every Day, till the tenth, the grand Day appointed for the Sacrifice, which being come, he was led to a Field not far from the City, where the King often attends in Perſon upon that Occaſion, and the whole Court, with a rich Dreſs and magnificent Equipage: When they come at the Place, they make the Camel lie down, with his Head towards *Mecca*, and the King attending on one Side, and the Clergy on the other, they offer up certain Prayers, and ſtick the Beaſt in the Left Shoulder; then they preſent his Head to the King, and the Body and Quarters are preſented to the ſeveral Wards of the City, there being a Family appointed in each Ward to keep the Fleſh, which they now deem ſacred, the ſubſtantial People of the Neighbourhood contributing to a grand Entertainment for thoſe who aſſiſted in ſacrificing the Camel, and have in return Preſents made them of little Morſels of the Fleſh of the conſecrated Camel; not of the laſt, but of *that* which was ſacrificed a Year ago, the preſent Sacrifice being always ſalted, and kept till the enſuing Year, &c. ſo that they always have that holy Fleſh in the Houſe, and they that can get a Bit of it to eat, think themſelves entitled to all Bleſſings with it. Sacrifice in Memory of *Abraham*.

In Memory of *Haſſen* and *Huſſen*.

The other grand Feſtival is in the Memory of *Haſſen* and *Huſſen*, two Brothers, who loſt their Lives in the ſame War, *viz.* in a Battle with the Caliph of *Damaſcus*, who contended with *Huſſein* for the Empire in the ſixty fifth Year of the *Hegira*, on the tenth Day of their firſt Month, ca'l'd *Muharam*, of which we have this brief Account:

When *Huſſein* had loſt the Battle, he retired with his Troops to the Deſart of *Kerbele* near *Babylon*, in *Chaldea*, but being purſued, and overtaken there, he died fighting valiantly, (his Brother *Haſſen* being alſo ſlain in the ſame War;) and this Feſtival, if it may be ſo called, continues the firſt ten Days of the Month *Muharam*, during which Time every Countenance appears in the moſt dejected Manner: They neither waſh nor ſhave; they rent their Cloaths, paint themſelves black, and ſhew all poſſible Marks of Dejection, as if wholly diſconſolate; ſome appear naked, others ſlain'd with Blood; ſome in Armour, others as if fainting, and ready to periſh, all crying *Huſſein Huſſen*; and all this is to expreſs the Danger and Affliction they ſuſtain'd on one hand, and the Courage they exerciſed on the other to their laſt Moments.

Curſe
Omar.

They commonly add *Curſed be* Omar, (who was the great Enemy of their Patriarch *Haly*,) and they are ſo inveterate, and ſeem to expreſs ſo much Diſtraction, that it is Prudence for any, either Pagan or Chriſtian, to join with them, or at leaſt not to oppoſe them; but if they meet with a *Turk*, upon this Occaſion it is ſometimes with Difficulty that he eſcapes their Fury.

During

DURING this ten Days Mourning there are some sort of Altars almost at the Corner of every Street, and a Place enclosed and hung round with Shields, Fire-arms, and all sorts of Necessaries of War for Man and Horse. In the Night-time the Streets are illuminated, and sometimes their Doctors make Orations to excite the People's Rage against *Omar*, and in Praise of *Hossein*; and when Sermon is over they again begin to roar out *Hossein Hassen*, as long as they can hold out, and then return Home, and the Night before the last Day of the Feast is usually spent in Devotion.

Gaurs. BESIDE the Mahometan Religion, there is that of the *Gaurs* or antient *Persians*, Worshippers of Fire; they are dispers'd through all *Persia*, and have several Colonies, especially near *Ispahan* there is a Village inhabited only by *Gaurs*; they are generally of a rough Complexion; the Men wear their Hair and Beards long, a short close Vest, and a Cap something like our Hats; they are generally Husbandmen or Mechanicks, but not much inclined to Liberal Arts or Merchandize; they neither allow of Divorce nor Bigamy, except the Wife has remain'd barren nine Years, and then they may marry a Second. They think Intelligence is lodg'd in the heavenly Bodies, of which the Sun is chief, the Moon next, and the rest in Order as we reckon them; and hence when the Moon is eclipsed they think she has had some bad Intelligence, which she will soon communicate to this lower World, and the like with respect to the Sun, so that they seem to deduce almost articulate Predictions from those Affections of the Luminaries. They worship Fire, and sometimes break out in Extasies upon the Purity and Activity of the Fire, the Light, and God, which they thus confuse together; they believe that sacred Fire has been kept alive in *Persia* ever since the Time of King *Keyomersa*, who has been dead above three thousand six hundred Years, and to this Day they worship the common Fire; but that which is intended for that Purpose, they take care that it be not fed with smoaking or stinking Fuel: They always perform their Devotions with their Faces towards the Fire or the Sun. Their principal Temple is on a Mountain near the City *Yedz*, near two hundred Miles East from *Ispahan*, and there their High-Priest resides; their Priests are employ'd to keep alive the sacred Fire, which they say was lighted on this Mount ain by their Patron *Zoroaster*, and they live in hopes of his Return. They look upon it as a Duty to destroy noisom and pernicious Animals. Instead of burying their Dead, they expose them to be devour'd by Birds of Prey, as has been spoke of before when treating of *India*.

Armen. Relig. THE *Armenian* Christians make a considerable Body in the *Persian* Dominions, especially if we rank them with other Christians that have join'd them on account of the Privileges granted them by the *Persian* Government; (*For the Reason of which see Chap.* V. *under the Article of Foreign Trade*;) and all go now by the Name of *Armenian Christians*; they came originally from *Julpha* in *Armenia*, and are now become a numerous Colony at *New Julpha*, in the Neighbourhood of *Ispahan*, and call'd so after the City of *Julpha* in *Armenia*; they were originally of the *Greek* Communion, but now differ from both the *Latin* and *Greek* Churches.

Clergy THEIR Clergy consists of Patriarchs, Archbishops, Bishops, Priests, and Monks of the Order of St. *Basil*: Simony is so much tolerated among them, that the Patriarch himself obtains his Confirmation by Bribes and Presents; the Monks perform no Ecclesiastical Function but reading Mass; all the Clergy may marry except the Monks. Both Clergy and Laity have as many Fast-Days in a Year as there are not, and then they abstain from all Manner of Flesh and Fish, and eat nothing at all till Evening; and it is said their Bishops have not above four Days in a Year in which they may eat Flesh or Fish.

Sacrament WHEN they intend to administer the Sacrament, there are some little Bells, and all Clergy and Laity sing to the Musick of them. The Priest taking up the Chalice with the Bread upon it, he turns to the People, who falling upon the Ground, say, *This is the Lord who gave his Body and Blood for us*; then the Bread being dipp'd in the Wine, the Priest says three Times (the People repeating it after him,) *I confess I believe that this is the Body and Blood of the Son of God, who takes away the Sins of the World, and who is not our Salvation, but the Salvation of all Mankind*; then he gives the Bread so dipp'd in Wine to all the Congregation, and even to the very Children of two or three Years old.

Marriage THE *Armenians* contract their Children in Marriage in their Infancy, to prevent their being carried into the *Haram*; and the Marriage is commonly celebrated about Nine or Ten, but not consummated till some Eays afterwards.

THERE are other Denominations of Christians there as well as in *Europe*; but to give a distinct Account of all who differ so little, and amount to so small a Number, would tire the Reader's Patience rather than inform his Judgment, especially as we have thought ourselves to be pretty full in our Account of the Mahometan Religion.

CHAP. XVII.

Gives an Account of the Marriages of the Persians, *and of the Condition of their Children.*

IT cannot be said that Love is the chief Inducement to marry in *Persia*; for as the Women are never to be seen, the Man cannot form any Idea of his intended Spouse, but what is communicated to him by others, that he is obliged to content himself with such an Account of his Mistress's Beauty and other Accomplishments as he receives from others; nor do they seem much to regard that in their Choice, but rather marry with some politick View, either for the Quality or Interest of her Family, or to serve as a Governess over the rest of his Women, who, though they have the Privilege of their Master's Bed, yet must own her for their Mistress and Superior, and wait upon her accordingly, but their Children and her's are reckon'd equally legitimate, and Children of the same Wife, whether born before or after Marriage, have the same Privileges as to Right of Inheritance; so that they make no difference between a Child born of a lawful Wife, a Concubine, or a Black Slave.

WHEN a Man is propos'd to a Woman, the main Question that she enquires after is his Dress, his Equipage, the Number of his Slaves, and other Testimonies of Grandeur; and if the Account she has of that answers her Expectation, she is under no

no Apprehensions of being disappointed in the Man, for Love is so far from being the Motive to bring them together, that it often makes them unhappy; for if a Woman is indeed in love with her Husband, her Love to him will seldom restrain him from taking another to his Bed, it being so customary that it is thought no Crime; and in this Case the more she loves him the more unhappy she is, and if she complains, he studies revenge, and perhaps displaces her from her Authority, and not only so, but from his Bed too.

Forty Days.

When the *Persians* meet with an advantageous Match, they dispose of their Children very young, rather than lose the Opportunity, otherwise they are in no haste; and if their Sons are inclin'd to have Experience of Female Enjoyments before they can marry them to Advantage, they think it no Crime to allow them a She-bedfellow in the mean Time; so that however tenacious the Man that marries may be of the Virginity of his new Spouse, yet she has but little Assurance, or even Hopes, of being Mistress of his first Embraces.

Method of Marrying.

The Parties being agreed, and the Terms settled by them and their Relations, they make proof thereof to the Cadi or Civil Magistrate, who causes the same to be registred, but the Couple do not use any Form or Ceremony, as to go before him or any Priest, to Celebrate their Nuptials, but the Day of Espousal being appointed, the Bridegroom on the Day before it sends her a Habit, Ornament, and Jewels of Value, proportionable to his Ability and Circumstances; and on the next Day, being the Day appointed, towards Evening he dresses in his richest Apparel, and being mounted on Horseback, attended by his Friends, with Musick and dancing Girls, he goes to fetch her home; and she, being appriz'd of the Time of his coming, meets him upon the Way, mounted also on a Camel or Horse, but so veil'd that he cannot yet see her Face; she is also attended by her Friends and Relations dress't in their best Habits, with her Cloaths and Baggage, and all the Slaves she is Mistress of, the Number of which contributes very much to the Grandeur of the Show.

But so met, he returns back with them to his own House, being preceded with Drums, Trumpets, lighted Torches, and the Musick playing, being follow'd with the Acclamations of the Populace, who make the Skies echo with their Wishes of Happiness to the new-married Couple; and when they arrive at his House, the Bride is led to her Apartment, where being settled, the Husband comes to her, and finding her unveil'd, has his first view of her Face; upon which the Company spend the rest of the Evening, and sometimes several Days, in Feasting and rejoicing at the Bridegroom's House; but the Men and Women are in separate Apartments, while the Musick, dancing Girls, and Populace are also well entertain'd, especially if the new-married Man be a Person of Quality.

Here be shown the

This is the Form of marrying what may properly be call'd a Wife, according to our Notion of the Word, but they have also other Women, which, according to the Custom of the Country, it is lawful for them to take to their Beds, but these Contracts may rather be call'd Bargains than Marriages; these they agree with either for Life or for what Time they agree to contract for; and these Contracts are also registred by a Magistrate, as another private Contract may be, but not attended with any other Ceremony; and if the Contract is only for a Time, and they part by Consent when the Time is expired, she is obliged to remain single forty Days afterwards before she contracts with another, that it may be first known whether she is with Child, for if it proves so, he is obliged to keep her till her Lying-in, notwithstanding the Time of the Contract is expired, and also to maintain the Child, or if she had Children by him before, he is obliged to maintain them all, and she is at liberty; or if at the End of forty Days she is found not to be with Child, she is at full liberty to let herself out again as soon as she pleases, &c.

While these Contracts continue in force, which is till the Time agreed upon be expired, they are look'd upon in the Eye of their Law to be as sacred and valid as Marriage, and it is look'd upon as the same Crime, either in the Woman with a strange Man to violate this Contract, or in the Man that is guilty of such an Offence within the Time limited, as it is in defiling the lawful Marriage Bed.

Slaves. Bed-fellows.

But they have another sort of Women Bed-fellows, for they cannot justly be call'd Wives, and that is their Female Slaves, whom Custom has made lawful to take to their Beds at pleasure, without any Ceremony but taking them to Bed, or any Restriction but their own Choice, nor are they oblig'd, whether they have had Children by them or not, to continue them as Bed-fellows any longer than during Pleasure; only if they are with Child, he is obliged to keep them till they are deliver'd; and the Children of such Slaves inherit according to Seniority equally with those of the first or married Wife; so that if his eldest Son be born of one of his Slaves, he has the same Privilege of Inheritance as if he had been the Son of the Wife, except it is otherwise order'd by some previous Contract made with his Wife to settle a certain Part of his Effects upon her, and if so, that descends to her particular Issue.

Settling Effects.

But if the Man has neither made a Will, nor bound himself by any particular Contract, the eldest Son (whether by his married, a contracted Wife, or a Slave, it matters not) has two Thirds of his Estate and Effects, and the other Third is divided among the younger Children, without any regard to their Age, Sex, or the Quality of the Mother they descended from; and if he divorce his Wife without any Fault on her Side, she shall nevertheless have the Dowry stipulated for, and it descends to her Issue, as in Case of no Divorce at all.

Divorce.

If a Woman either alledge that her Husband is impotent, or spends too much Time with his Concubines or Slaves, or otherwise does not do justice to the Marriage Bed, the Magistrate will grant a Divorce, and both Parties are at liberty to marry again as soon as they please, or can find Opportunity.

When at Age.

The *Persian* Boys are reckon'd of Age at thirteen Years of Age, and the Girls at nine, and are no longer under the Direction of their Guardians, nor are they always strictly tied up to that Age, for if a Guardian die, and the Boy or Girl be found upon Examination to be of a ripe Capacity, the Magistrate will dispense with the strict Number of Years, and allow them to be of Age sooner, without giving them the Trouble of having a new Guardian; but among Children the Eldest, who, as above, has two Thirds of the Estate, is always Guardian to the Youngest; and the Minors have that Privilege, that if the Estate be involved it cannot be seiz'd for the Debts of the Deceas'd till they come to Age, and are able to plead for themselves. And when a Person dies intestate, there are proper Officers, whose Business it is to take Care that his Effects be distributed among his Relations, according to their Sex or Nearness of Kindred, for which the Law has settled a just Proportion.

Of Persons Intestate.

N. B. *Although it may seem needless to follow the Circulation of a Lunar to solar Years, and as it is so naturally to be very much, yet the Reader is desired to observe, that in Chap XV of the Description of* Persia, *Page* 211, *the first Column, Line* 31, *the Word which by Mistake is printed* [Days] *should have been* [Years], *and then the Passage will be* [But the Height of the Angel being above that a thousand Years *coming*], &c.]

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Funeral Rites of the Persians, *their Behaviour to the Dying, their Way of burying the Dead, and Manner of Mourning.*

WHEN a sick Man is thought past all hopes of Recovery, and near expiring, they set up lighted Lamps, or make little Fires upon the Turrets of his House, that People that pass by may know there is a dying Man in the House, and that they may pray for him; they also send for a Priest to put him in mind to remember his past Life, and repent, to which he commonly answers *I repent*; then, if he is able, he repeats his Creed or Confession of Faith, *That there is one only God, and* Mahomet *was his Prophet*, &c. [as mention'd in their Religion,] and that *Haly* and the eleven *Imams* were the true Successors of *Mahomet*; and as they find him draw near his Exit, he repeats, that as he has lived in this Faith so he professes he dies in it, and after this Confession they continue to read to him in the Alchoran till his last Moments.

As soon as he is dead, it is soon discover'd by the dismal Groans and Lamentations of those about him; the Relations immediately set up a great Howl, rend their Cloaths, tear their Hair, beat their Breasts, and act like People in the utmost Distraction, especially the Women, uttering the most tender Expressions to the dead Corpse, as if it was sensible of their Grief.

In the mean Time those who are the most composed, send to the Civil Magistrate to procure an Order to the Person whose Office it is to wash the Dead, to send some to perform that Office, who always send those of the Sex of the Deceas'd; whatever is upon the Body they strip off for their own Use, and then carry out the Body to a certain Pool, appointed for that Purpose in some private Place in every Town, (but this is to be understood of the common People,) for the Rich have Basons in their own Gardens, over which a Tent is erected, and in this they wash any of the Family when they die, when the Corpse is wash'd, they stop up all the Vents, as Mouth, Nose, Ears, &c. with Cotton; the Corpse is afterwards wrapp'd up in a Winding-sheet, and if it be a Man of Figure, they have some Passages in the Alchoran or some sacred Book, written upon it; and in this Condition the Body is deposited at some Distance from the House, and if it be buried a great Way off, it is put into a wooden Coffin fill'd up with Salt, Lime and Perfumes, to preserve it, for they never embalm or embowel their dead Bodies, as is common in other Places.

If they are buried near the Place where they die, they are carried to the Place of Burial without much Ceremony, and the Company follow without any Order, except for Persons of Distinction, and then the Ensigns of the Mosque are carried before them, upon long Pikes or Poles, one of which has an Iron Hand at the Top of it, which they call *Haly*'s Hand; others have Crescents, and on the rest are written the Names of *Mahomet*, his Daughter *Fatima*, and his twelve Successors, they carry Streamers of Silk, and have Led-Horses to carry the Turbant and Arms of the Deceas'd: They have no Bearers on purpose to carry the Corpse to the Grave, that being reckon'd such a charitable Office, that People offer themselves, and if a Person of Fashion meet a Funeral, he will alight from his Horse to assist in carrying the Bier to the Grave.

They bury none in their Mosques or Temples, but in some Towns they have Burying-places by the Road Side near the Houses, but in *Ispahan*, and other great Cities, they have Burying-places within the City. They make in their Graves a hollow Arch on that Side next *Mecca*; wherein they lay the Corpse, with only a Winding-sheet, and no Coffin, with the Face towards *Mecca*; the Reason of this Arch is, because they believe that soon after the Interment, the Soul re-animates the Body, who is examined as to its Faith and Manners. Those who call themselves of the Family of *Mahomet* have no Earth thrown upon them, but cover'd with a Grave-Stone, upon which is commonly wrote some Sentence of the Alchoran.

Eight or ten Days after the Burial, the Relations of the Deceas'd, especially the Women and Children, visit the Tomb, and renew their Lamentations, and expostulate with the Deceas'd upon his leaving them, their Friends in the mean Time condoling with and comforting them, sometimes leaving Cakes, Fruit, and Sweet-meats upon the Tomb, with which they think the Angels who guard the Sepulchre are well pleased.

Their Mourning commonly lasts forty Days, Mour-
but they wear no Black, for they call that the De- ing.
vil's infernal Habit, but whatever their Colour be, it consists in a torn negligent Dress, and their Mourning is express by the most visible Tokens of Grief and Despair. When the Mourning is over, the Men shave and wash, but the Widows of the Deceas'd continue real Mourners, and seldom or never marry again.

Supplement to the History of Persia, *adapted more particularly to the fourth Chapter, which treats of the Succession of the Government.*

IN our Account of the Usurpation of *Meerweys*, and of the Success of his Son *Mahamood*, in aspiring and attaining to the Throne of *Persia* in the Year 1721-2, we gave a Detail of the several Steps taken to accomplish that Enterprize, for which we refer the Reader to Chap. IV. as abovemention'd; but we having later Accounts transmitted to us, not contradicting but continuing the former, we thought it necessary to insert it to make the Work compleat to the present Time.

In the last Account that we had, or could then give in the Conclusion of Chap. IV. we left *Mahomood* upon the Throne of *Persia*, which, as we there observed, he got Possession of in *February* 1721-2, but by later Intelligence we are assured that *Mahomood*'s Footing in *Persia* was not so firmly establish'd as was imagin'd, for *Shaw Thomas* or *Sultan Tahmas*, the second Son of the deposed *Shaw Hussein*, did, notwithstanding his voluntary Abdication, recover the Throne of *Persia*; and, as he was not a Man of the brightest Parts himself, he made the politick *Kouli Chan* his Prime Minister, and invested him with a full Power to transact all the Affairs of State, even at his own Pleasure

Thamas

Thamas Kouli Chan, who had long cheriſh'd ambitious Views, hearing of the Treaty which the Sophi his Maſter had concluded with the *Ottoman Porte*, thought he had a fair Opportunity of executing what he had already deſign'd, which was to poſſeſs himſelf of the Crown of *Perſia*; and in order thereto he firſt recover'd the Province of *Erack Agem*, in which the Capital of *Iſpahan* was ſituate, and then pretended that this Treaty was ſo diſadvantageous to the Nation, that he could not agree to it, but was reſolved to march with his Army towards *Iſpahan*, pretending to adviſe the Sophi to maintain his War with the Grand Seignior; but the Sophi, being very ſenſible that ſo ambitious a Prime Miniſter as *Kouli Chan* was, ought to be truſted with Caution, or not at all, forbid him to advance with his Army, and commanded him to halt in the Province of *Choraſſan* till further Orders; *Kouli Chan*, having particular Views in order to the Accompliſhment of his grand Deſign, obey'd; but, under a pretended Concern for the Security and Intereſt of the Publick, deſired the Sophi to ſend to him ſome of his Miniſters, in whom he repoſed the greateſt Confidence, that he might convince them of his own Deſigns for the Publick Intereſt. To this the Sophi ſoon agreed, and ſent ſeveral Deputies to *Kouli Chan*'s Army; who to gain the greater Credit by ſhewing them due Reſpect, he appointed *Imam Riza*'s Tomb for the Place of their Meeting; where he affirm'd with the moſt ſolemn Oaths, that he had no other Meaning in propoſing to march with his Army into the Province of *Iſpahan*, but only to proceed with them to the Frontiers of *Turkey*, that the *Perſians* might revenge all the Cruelties the *Turks* had exerciſed upon them.

But the Sophi, regardleſs of theſe Proteſtations, was not only upon his Guard, but march'd five Days Journey out of *Iſpahan*, there to muſter his whole Army, and make a powerful Head againſt *Kouli Chan*, at the ſame Time forbidding him to enter the Province of *Iſpahan* upon Pain of Diſobedience.

Kouli Chan continued his pretended Submiſſion, and ſo far prevail'd with his Friends at Court, that they perſwaded the Sophi to a good Opinion of his Fidelity, who upon that broke up his Camp, and return'd to *Iſpahan*.

When *Kouli Chan* had thus far gain'd his Point, he decamp'd with his Army, and detatch'd his moſt truſty Officers with ſmall Bodies of Men to take Poſſeſſion of the moſt important Poſts in the Neighbourhood of *Iſpahan*, ſo that in a ſhort Time he became Maſter of all the Paſſes through which the Sophi could poſſibly get out of the City, that now the City might be ſaid to be block'd up.

In the mean Time *Kouli Chan*'s Friends at Court were uſing their utmoſt Intereſt with the Sophi to invite *Kouli Chan* to Court; the Sophi, too late, ſenſible of the Diſtreſs he was in by quitting his Camp, and giving the General an Opportunity to ſurround him in his own Capital, comply'd, and wrote to *Kouli Chan* to come and receive the Marks of his Favour and Satisfaction; whereupon *Kouli Chan* advanc'd with his Army near the City, and caus'd them to encamp, and he demanding Audience of the Sophi, it was granted; he entered *Iſpahan* with ſome Troops and the principal Officers of his Army, and being introduc'd into the Hall of Audience, he approach'd the Sophi, and told him, *That he was the Prime Miniſter, and that as ſuch the Care of the Affairs of State belong'd to him, that his Majeſty ought to be perſwaded of his Fidelity by the important Services he had done him*, &c. and the Sophi, reduced to this Neceſſity, *confirm'd him in his Truſt, and told him, that he was perſwaded of his Fidelity.*

Kouli Chan's Authority being renew'd, he did not think fit to loſe this Opportunity to begin to put his Deſigns in Execution; and his firſt Step was to ſeize two of the Sophi's chief Confidants, Officers of the Crown, and ſtill pretending to act by the Sophi's Authority, he ſent for his Army to *Iſpahan*, inſinuating that that Prince had a Mind to review them.

When *Kouli Chan*'s Way was thus pav'd to his intended Deſign, he invited the Sophi to an Entertainment, pretending thereby to convince the Sophi and the People of his Fidelity, and that the People might ſee the Confidence the Sophi repos'd in him, the Sophi accepted the Invitation, and was received with all due Honour and Reſpect.

By *Kouli Chan*'s Perſwaſions, the Sophi ſtaid with him all that Night, but the next Morning he had prepared the principal Officers of his Army, and thoſe of the Court Party that he had brought over, and repreſented to them that the King was a weak Prince, and of no Courage, and that it was neceſſary to dethrone him, and place his Son *Mirza Abbas* upon the Throne in his Room; adding, that though that Prince was yet in his Cradle, he would take Care of the Government as Regent during his Minority, and all Men ſhould ſee the Difference; this Propoſal being univerſally agreed to, the Sophi was ſeiz'd, and ſent Priſoner to *Choraſſan* under a ſtrong Guard, with only two Eunuchs and a few Slaves to attend him; whereupon *Kouli Chan* went to the Palace, and proclaim'd *Mirza Abbas*, who, though in his Cradle, was placed upon the Throne to receive the Compliments of the Grandees. But *Kouli Chan* finding himſelf ſole Regent, and arbitrary during the Minority of *Mirza Abbas*, he in Royal Robes and the Crown upon his Head, aſſumed the Throne, and received the Compliments of the Courtiers; and entering the *Haram*, he by Force debauch'd the late Sophi's Siſter, the Daughter of *Shaw Hoſſein*, who had reſign'd to *Mahamood*; *(ſee the latter End of Chap.* IV.) he alſo ſeiz'd the Royal Treaſure, and every Thing belonging to the Crown and Royal Family.

Kouli Chan having had ſuch Succeſs, his next Attempt was to recover what his Predeceſſor, the late depoſed Sophi, had loſt; and with this View he attack'd *Babylon*, which the *Turks* had in Poſſeſſion, and ſhut it in ſo cloſe, that he made himſelf Maſter of all the Paſſes, and thereby cut off all Supplies of Men or Proviſions; by which Means *Achmet Baſſaw*, Governor of *Babylon*, found himſelf obliged to deſire a Suſpenſion of Arms, which he propoſed for two Months; but *Kouli Chan*, not now as Prime Miniſter, but as Regent and Protector of *Perſia*, taking the Advantage of the Diſtreſs he had reduced *Babylon* to, anſwer'd that he could not grant his Requeſt; but that he was willing to make a perpetual Peace with the *Ottoman* Empire, provided the Grand Seignior would ſign the following Conditions by Way of Preliminary, *viz.* 1. To ſurrender the City and Province of *Erevan*. 2. To reſtore all the Places taken from the *Perſians*. 3. To give a ſolemn and publick Satisfaction for the Affront offer'd at *Conſtantinople* to the *Perſian* Ambaſſador ſome Years ago, contrary to the Law of Nations; and 4. That Repriſals be made upon the *Turkiſh* Officers, who are now *Kouli Chan*'s Priſoners, by uſing them as the *Turks* uſed the *Perſian* Officers, whom they ſent back with their Noſes and Ears cut off, and their Mouths ſlit. But *Achmet*, having no Authority to admit of theſe Conditions, deſired a Time to tranſmit them to the *Divan*, to have their Opinion of them; which Anſwer being no Satisfaction to *Kouli Chan*, he purſued the Blockade with the utmoſt Vigour, and ſome Letters ſince ſay he has actually taken it.

These Particulars having been tranſmitted to *Holland*, and from thence to us in the Month of *April* 1733, what we have ſaid may be juſtly allow'd to be the preſent State of *Perſia*, it being impoſſible to bring the Hiſtory any lower down till more Time afford farther Matter for ſucceeding Hiſtory.

A DESCRIPTION OF ARABIA.

CHAP. I.

A Description of the Bounds and Extent of this Country, with the Name and Divisions; also of the Rivers, Port Towns, and Climate.

Division. ARABIA is divided into three Parts, *Arabia Felix*, *Arabia Deserta*, and *Arabia Petræa*; of which the first is largest and Southermost, the last is the least and Northermost, and the other, viz. *Desert Arabia*, is partly between the other two; and *Arabia*, thus consider'd, extends from Latitude 12 Deg. 30 Min. to 32 Deg. 30 Min. North, and in Longitude East from *London* from 34 to 61 Degrees; its longest Dimensions is from the North-West to the South-East, and its Form is like that of an Ax. *Arabia* thus consider'd is bounded by *Palestine*, *Syria*, and *Diarbeck*, or *Mesopotamia*, on the North, and on the West by the *Red Sea* and the *Isthmus* that separates *Asia* from *Africa*, on the South by the *Arabian Sea*, and on the East by the *Persian Gulf*, and *Ewat Arabick*, which is the ancient *Chaldæa* or *Babylonia*.

It is difficult to determine the Bounds that separate one of those grand Divisions from another, because they are govern'd by abundance of *Emirs*, or petty Princes, who march from Place to Place, and encamp where they can find Water and Pasture for their Cattle, and by this their wandering the Country is almost become Common, and few of them know the Bounds of their own Dominions.

Name. THE Name *Arabia*, as some say, is derived from *Harab*, a Thief or a Robber; but others say it is from *Arabes*, the supposed Son of *Apollo* and *Babylonia* but whether this be real or fictitious we cannot determine; however, the People or Inhabitants of *Persia* are more known by the Name of *Saracens* than *Persians*, which Word is derived from the two Words *Sara* a Desart, and *Sakan* to inhabit, and they being *Sarakalani*, or Inhabitants of the Desart, the Word is now contracted to *Saracens*, which we call them to this Day.

Persia. THUS, as well as *Persia*, is a Country very scarce of Water, there being but few Rivers or Springs here, except we reckon the great River *Euphrates*, which separates *Arabia Deserta* from *Mesopotamia*; it is indeed encompass'd on three Sides by the Sea, viz. on the South-West by the *Red Sea*, on the South East by the *Arabian Ocean*, and on the North-East by the *Persian Gulf*, which last, with their Manner of fishing for Pearls, and whatever else is material, we have already defended in our Account of *Persia*.

Coasts. AS to the Main Ocean, or *Arabian Sea*, it is observed there are no regular Tides in it, and what Current there is, is not fix'd upon any one Point of the Compass as to its Motion, but sets which Way the Wind blows, and runs stronger or weaker, in proportion to the Strength or Continuance of the Wind upon any Point of the Compass; but this is supposed at the Time of the Moon that we have Neap Tides, for it is observed that for three or four Days together, at the Full and Change, the Current sets against the Wind, and then the Water rises seven or eight Foot perpendicular upon the Coast of *Arabia*.

Winds. ALTHOUGH the Winds upon this Coast have a Tendency to Trade Winds, yet they are not exactly so, but blow from the South-West Quarter, or between the West and South-South-West, from *April* till the latter End of *August*; during which Time it blows very hard Gales, and is sometimes attended with violent Showers of Rain; but then it turns about to the Eastward, and blows gently from that Quarter till the latter End of *March* or the Beginning of *April*, with sometimes Land or Sea Breezes, but Trading upon this Coast is not practicable in the Months of *April*, *May*, *June*, and *July*, for during that Time the Wind generally blows hard about South-South-West, and there is no Harbour upon the Coast but what lies open to those Winds, nor is there any Soundings sometimes within six Miles of the Shore.

Red Sea. THE other Sea is called the *Red Sea*, or by some the *Arabian Gulf*; it lies on the South-West Side of *Arabia*, and extends from *Aden*, or the Streights of *Babelmandel*, North-West so near to the *Levant*, or East Part of the *Mediterranean*, that it is only separated from it by the *Isthmus* that divides *Asia* from *Africa*, or *Arabia* from *Egypt*. Authors differ about the Original of its Name; some affirm that the Redness of its Sand or Waters was the Occasion of giving it that Name, and though that Conjecture might naturally be thought probable, yet Travellers assure us that the Water differs not at all from those of other Seas in Colour; and therefore others derive the Name from King *Erythro*, who was Sovereign of this Sea, and was buried in one of the Islands of it, and hence it is called *Mare Erythræum*, or *Red Sea*; others will have it that the Red Mountains thereabouts give it that Name; but the Scripture calls it *Yam Suf*, or the Sea of Bulrushes, and if we allow that the Word there translated Bulrushes might be translated Reeds, with which this Sea so much abounds, it might then be call'd the *Red Sea*, which might naturally be contracted or corrupted to *Red Sea*, and give rise to that Opinion that the Waters or Sands in the Sea or the Mountains

tains about it were red; but this laſt Conjecture of its being the *Reed Sea* ſeems to me moſt probable, Water being the proper Element, and marſhy wet Ground, as the Shores of Seas and Rivers, the moſt agreeable Soil for Reeds as well as Bulruſhes. The *Arabians* call'd it the Sea or Gulf of *Cly ſma*, from a Town of that Name that ſtood in the Bottom of it, as we call the *Adreatick Sea* by the Name of the *Gulf of Venice* for the ſame Reaſon.

This Sea was very much frequented formerly for its maintaining a Communication by Sea from the *Eaſt Indies* by the *Mediterranean* to the Weſt Coaſt of *Europe* and *Africa*, except that ſmall *Iſthmus* by which it is ſeparated from the *Levant*, which would require Land Carriage; but that Trade was diſcontinued when the *Europeans* found a Way to the *Eaſt Indies* by ſailing round the *Cape of good Hope*; ſo that there is now but little Navigation in that Sea, except with *Turkiſh* Galleys and ſmall Craft, and ſome Veſſels that tranſport the Mahometan Pilgrims to *Mecca*; however, it may not be amiſs to give a brief Deſcription of thoſe Towns or Places that have been formerly Trading Ports and Harbours in this Sea.

Harbours. The furtheſt North, at the Entrance of this Sea, from *Egypt*, is *Suez*, in Latitude 30 Degrees; this is ſuppoſed to be the antient *Arſinoe*; it is now a little Town belonging to the Grand Seignior, containing about two hundred Houſes, and has a pretty Harbour, but not Water enough for Ships of Burden; it is full of People when Foreign Shipping or the *Turkiſh* Galleys are there, but it is but thinly inhabited at other Times, becauſe of the Scarcity of freſh Water, there being none within two Leagues of it. This Town being ſituate in the very Bottom of this Gulf, or the Northermoſt Point of the *Red Sea*, may be call'd the Port Town of *Grand Cairo*, from whence it is but about forty or fifty Miles, which in Caſe of a Trade between the *Red Sea* and the *Mediterranean* requires Land Carriage; this being all the Land Carriage that is required between thoſe two Places, and conſequently between *England* and the *Eaſt Indies* if they were to Trade this Way; but ſince a Paſſage about the *Cape of good Hope* has been found out, it is reckon'd ſo much more commodious, that this by the *Red Sea* is quite diſuſed, except by Galleys and ſmall Veſſels as above.

Tor. The next Port to this is *Tor*, on the Eaſt Side of the *Red Sea*, and about a hundred Miles from *Suez*. Between *Suez* and *Tor*, but nearer the former, is the Place where the Sea was cut in two to make a Paſſage for the Children of *Iſrael* to eſcape the Fury of *Pharaoh*, *Exodus* xiv. 21. Where the Sea was thus divided it was about fifty Miles broad, and thirty five Fathom deep where it is deepeſt; the Weſt, or *Egyptian Coaſt*, is very high and ſteep, except where the *Iſraelites* went down to the Sea Side, which goes down by an eaſy Deſcent, about eight or nine Miles, between vaſt inacceſſible Mountains, like Rocks or Walls; and *Pharaoh*, or his Officers, knowing very well the Nature of that Shore, and what a Preminary they had brought themſelves into, purſued them the more eagerly; aſſuring himſelf, that by reaſon of thoſe impaſſable Rocks and Mountains on each Side of them, and the Sea before them, it was impoſſible for them to eſcape his Fury; as indeed it was, had not that or ſome other Miracle been wrought for them; but when they found themſelves in this Diſtreſs, the ſteep Rocks and Mountains on each Side of them, the Enemy behind, and the Sea five and thirty Fathom deep before them, then the Sea divided and made way for their ſafe Paſſage. But as it will be too great a Digreſſion to purſue the Travels of the *Iſraelites* in *Arabia* any further at preſent, we ſhall defer that to the latter End of the fourth Chapter, and continue the Deſcription of the *Red Sea*.

The next Port to the Southward of *Tor*, and about a hundred Leagues from it, is *Yambo*, in the twenty fifth Degree of North Latitude; it is a tolerable good Harbour, but has a dangerous Sand or Bar at the Intrance into it; there is a Caſtle, which ſerves to defend the Town from the Inſults of the wild *Arabs*, though not ſufficiently ſtrong to withſtand a formal Siege; it is the Port Town of *Medina*, and is diſtant from it about four Days Journey. *Yambo.*

To the Southward of *Yambo*, in the twenty ſecond Degree of North Latitude, and on the *Arabian* Side, is *Siden* or *Judda*, the Sea Port of *Mecca*, where the Pilgrims uſed come to aſhore. The Country about here is ſo barren, that they have their Proviſion from *Egypt* by Way of *Suez*; and the *Egyptians* have in return great Quantities of Coffee, which the *Arabians* bring hither when the *Turkiſh* Galleys come into the Road.

But the chief Port in the *Red Sea* is *Mocha*, ſituate on the *Arabian* Shore at the Entrance of the *Red Sea*, in about thirteen Degrees of North Latitude; this is the gereral Rendezvous of Shipping and Trade from *Europe* and *India*, or what Ships come from the *Indian* or *Oriental Ocean*, and the *Abyſſine* and *Turkiſh* Ships, and the Merchants and Traders from *Egypt* that trade thither by Way of the *Red Sea*. *Mocha.*

There is another Port call'd *Aden*, one of the moſt antient and pleaſant Sea Ports in all *Arabia*, it is Situate on the South Coaſt of *Arabia*, about forty Leagues Eaſtward from the Entrance into the *Red Sea*, called the Streights of *Babel Mandel*; it is in about thirteen Degrees of North Latitude; it was once in the Poſſeſſion of the *Portugueſe*, but they not keeping it in a Condition ſtrong enough to reſiſt the Attacks of the *Arabian* Princes, they were forced to quit Poſſeſſion, though it is defended by a Wall on one Side and high Mountains on the other. *Aden.*

The next remarkable Place to the Eaſtward of *Aden* is *Macallah Bay*, in between fourteen and fifteen Degrees of North Latitude, and from thence to *Shahar* is between twelve and thirteen Leagues; this Place lies in about fifteen Degrees of North Latitude; beyond this is *Cureſe* and *Doſar*; and beyond *Cape Roſalgat*, on the *Arabian* Side, is *Muſcat*, in about twenty three Degrees of North Latitude, the King of which Province ſeems to excel any of the other *Arabian* Sovereigns in ſtrength of Shipping. *Macallah Bay.* *Muſcat.*

The Air in this Country is exceſſive hot, and conſequently unhealthful, eſpecially near the Coaſt, and the Sands in *Arabia* are very troubleſome and dangerous, being driven, as Snow is in *England*, like Clouds in the Air, inſomuch that whole Caravans have been loſt, and buried by Storms of Wind and Sand. Air.

CHAP. II.

Of the Kingdoms and Provinces into which Arabia *is divided, and of their Towns, Fortifications, Camps, Buildings, and Furniture.*

Hagiaz or Mecca.

I. TO begin in *Arabia Felix*, and in that with the Province of *Mecca*, or, as it is call'd by ſome, the Province of *Hagiaz*; it lies in the Weſtern Part of *Arabia*, and is bounded on the Weſt by the *Red Sea*, and on the South by the Province of *Tehama*. The chief Towns in this Province are *Medina*, *Mecca*, *Siden* or *Judda*, *Hagier*, and *Hageſa*.

Tehama.

II. *Tehama*, the Province next to the Southward of *Hagiaz*, has the *Red Sea* on the Weſt, and *Moha*, or *Moco*, on the South: The chief Towns are *Haran*, *Sibet*, and *Ghalaſeka*.

Mocha.

III. THE Kingdom of *Mocha*, which has the Streights of *Babel Mandel*, and further up the *Red Sea* on the Weſt, the Ocean on the South, the Province of *Hadramut* on the Eaſt, and *Tehama* on the North: the chief Towns are *Mocha*, *Aden*, *Abia*, and *Sanaa*.

Hadramut.

IV. THE next Province to the Eaſtward is *Hadramut*; it has the Ocean on the South, and the the Kingdom of *Careſe* on the Eaſt. Chief Towns are *Hadramut*, *Aragui*, *Macullah*, and *Shahar*.

Careſe.

V. THE two Kingdoms of *Careſe* and *Seger* (by ſome Geographers comprized under one,) has the Ocean for its Boundary on the South, *Hadramut* on the Weſt, and the Kingdom of *Muſcat* on the North and Eaſt. Chief Towns are *Hawſel*, *Fortach*, *Doſar*, *Mirabat*, and *Niban*.

Muſcat

VI. THE Kingdom of *Muſcat*, by ſome call'd *Oman*, is, if we include *Bahrelia*, the largeſt Kingdom in *Arabia*, and has the Kingdom of *Jamama* on the North-Weſt, the Gulf of *Perſia* on the North and Eaſt, the Ocean on the Eaſt, and *Segar* on the Weſt and South-Weſt. The chief Towns are *Haſen*, *Harmin*, *Gama*, *Muſcat*, *Sohar*, *Julphar*, and *Elcatiff*. *Cape Roſalgate*, the Eaſtermoſt Promontary of *Arabia*, is in this Province, as is alſo Cape *Muſledon*, which is one of the Capes that makes the *Streights of Ormus* near *Gombroon*, or the Entrance into the *Perſian Gulf*.

Jamama.

LASTLY *Jamama*, the chief Towns of which are *Jamama*, *Hujor*, and *Tiana*; but being an Inland Town, it is not ſo much known to Travellers and Sailors as thoſe that are ſituate upon the Sea Coaſt. A Deſcription of the moſt remarkable Towns in theſe ſeveral Provinces comes next under our Conſideration.

Medina.

THE firſt, and indeed the moſt noted in ſome Reſpects, is *Medina*, where *Mahomet* was buried, and his Tomb yet remains; which, in the Opinion of his Followers, gives ſuch a Sanction to the Place that the Natives call it *Medina Tamabi*, or the City of the Prophet; it lies not very far from the *Red Sea*, and in the twenty fifth Degree of Latitude, and about two hundred Miles North-Weſterly from *Mecca*; it contains about a thouſand Houſes, built moſtly of Brick and Stone, but not lofty, as having only a ground Floor; there are ſeveral ſtately Moſques in the City, the Principal of which is call'd *Mo a Kiba*, or the moſt Holy; it is built in the Middle of the Town, and is in Form of a long Square, a hundred Paces in Length, and eighty in Breadth, and ſupported by four hundred Columns, on which hang four thouſand Lamps. In a Tower in this Temple ſtands *Mahomet*'s Tomb, cover'd with a Dome and encompaſs'd with Iron Rails, and round it, within the Rails, is a Silver Grate, and the Wall within that is hung with rich Silks, adorn'd with precious Stones, the Benefaction of Mahometan Princes. The Pilgrims after their tedious Pilgrimages never ſee the Tomb itſelf, but only the Tower in which it is incloſed; but when the ſtated Times of the Pilgrimage is over, and the Crowd abates, they will ſhew it to any Mahometan for a ſmall Gratuity; ſo that even in thoſe Affairs that are deem'd ſacred, Money has the ſame Influence as in other Parts of the World; and it is not to be queſtion'd but that Money has contributed more to the Intereſt of *Mahomet*'s Miracles, or the Reputation of his Religion, than ever the Loadſtone did, by which it was ſuggeſted that he was ſupported in an Iron Coffin, which by the moſt Authentick Hiſtory, or the Report of the moſt credible Travellers, we find no Reaſon to believe.

Mecca is about two hundred Miles from *Medina* ſoutherly, in the twenty ſecond Degree of Latitude, and a Day's Journey from the *Red Sea* to the Eaſtward; it ſtands in a Valley almoſt ſurrounded with Mountains, it is twice as large as *Medina*, it is handſomly built with Brick, and the Houſes generally flat-roof'd. The *Kaaba*, or Houſe of God, ſtands in the Middle of the Town, and according to their Tradition was built by *Abraham*; to this *Kaaba Mahomet* obliged his Followers to go in Pilgrimage once in their Lives. It is a ſmall Edifice, not above fifteen Foot in Length, and twelve in Breadth, and about thirty Foot high; the Door is in the Corner on the Left Hand, about nine Foot high, and ſix Foot wide, made of beaten Silver, and opens with two Leaves, but it ſtanding upon an Aſcent of about ſix Foot above the common Level, and no Stairs to go up to it, they make uſe of a Ladder to approach the Door; the Roof is flat, and ſupported by three Pillars of Aloes-wood; the Sides are hung with red and white Stuff, with the following Words wrought in, in ſeveral Places, viz. *La Illa Illalla Mahomed Reſoul Allah*, that is, *God is a great God, and* Mahomet *his Prophet.* *Mecca*

ABOUT this Houſe there is a large Court, encompaſs'd with a Piazza, which is ſupported by three Rows of Pillars. In this Court the Pilgrims of the ſeveral Sects of Mahometans have their reſpective Places to perform their Devotions in; for the *Kaaba*, or Houſe of God, is ſo ſmall, as by the Dimenſions above, and the Concourſe of Pilgrims ſo great, that it is impoſſible it ſhould contain them. The *Kaaba* is girt round with two Belts of Gold, and hung on the Outſide with Damask; and every Year the Grand Seignior preſents new Hangings, at which Time the old Ones are cut into Slips and Shreds to make Relicks of, for thoſe who will be at the Charge of them.

Mocha, as obſerved before, is the Capital of a conſiderable Kingdom, and is ſituate on the *Abaſſian* Side of the Entrance into the *Red Sea*; it was but a ſmall Village within this two hundred Years, but by the Concourſe of Shipping into and out of the *Red Sea*, and other Ships that trade upon the *Arabian* and *African Coaſt*, it is now the moſt populous trading Town on that Coaſt. It ſtands upon a flat ſandy barren Soil by the Sea Side, on the Right Hand, or Star board Side, going in by the Streights of *Babel Mandel* to the *Red Sea*, the Houſes *Mocha*

are of Brick or Stone, and generally two Story high, with flat Roofs, and terraſs'd at the Top to walk upon; the Shops are furniſh'd with even all manner o Commodities, which are either the Product of the Country, or what they have from other Countries; in lieu thereof they furniſh large Quantities of Coffee here; of which we ſhall give a more particular Deſcription when we ſpeak of the Growth of that Berry, now ſo much in uſe.

The next conſiderable Place, though at a great Diſtance, is *Muſcat*; it is the Capital of a large Kingdom; it is about three Miles in Circumference, and ſituate upon the *Arabian Coaſt*, between *Cape Roſalgate* and the Entrance into the *Perſian Gulf*, and is nearly under the Northern Tropick. When the *Portugueſe* had the Command of all the Trade in the *Perſian Gulf*, they had Poſſeſſion of this Place amongſt the reſt; but when they had loſt *Ormus Iſland* near *Gombroon*, on the *Perſian* Side of the Entrance into the *Perſian Gulf*, and being much weakened by other *Europeans*, who ſucceeded them in the *Indian* Trade, the *Arabians* took that Advantage, and made themſelves Maſters of *Muſcat*, which was but recovering their own again; and as they have been at variance ever ſince, the *Muſcatters* ſometimes make Prizes of other *European* Ships under a Pretence of a Suſpicion that they are *Portugueſe*, and nothing but a Power to defend themſelves can ſecure them. *Muſcat*

There are ſeveral Redoubts and Batteries for the Defence of the Harbour of *Maſcat*, but they are much out of Repair; the City ſtands at the Bottom of a Hill, and ſurrounded with rocky Hills, which keeping off the Air, the natural Heat of the Climate makes the City prodigious hot; they have good handſom Houſes of two Story high, but they have little Furniture in them; the Streets are irregular, and ſo narrow that they are very incommodious to walk in. The Market-place is in the Middle of the Town, and is well ſtored with Proviſions of ſeveral Sorts, as Fiſh, Fruit, *&c.* very cheap.

The laſt remarkable Place on the *Arabian* Shore is *Elcatiff*; it lies in the *Perſian Gulf* above the Iſland *Bahrein*, in about twenty ſeven Degrees of North Latitude: This was a Place of great Trade when the Pearl Fiſhery was in its height, but now a Place of little Buſineſs, ſince the King of *Muſcat* reduced it, and brought it under Subjection, and annex'd this, with all the Coaſt hereabouts, to his own Kingdom. *Elcatiff*

CHAP. III.

Treats of the Genius and natural Temper of the Arabians; *alſo of their Complexion, Shape, and Habit, with their Food, Liquors, Diverſions, Roads, and Way of Travelling.*

Although there are ſome large Towns and Cities in *Arabia*, yet the far greater Part of the Inhabitants live like the Patriarchs of old, in Tents, wandering from Place to Place, as they can find Water and Paſture for their Flocks, and Herds of Camels, Sheep, and Goats; and when they find the Paſture is eat up, or the Forage or Water exhauſted in one Place, they load their Goods, Baggage, Wives and Children upon their Camels, and remove to another Place, where they can find thoſe neceſſary Supplies for their Families and Cattle; and the Place where formerly there was a Number of Tents, like a little Village, there is now nothing to be ſeen. Some impute this their frequently removing from Place to Place to their roving Temper; but I rather think as above, that their Neceſſity of removing ſo frequently for Water, Paſture, *&c.* has made it become cuſtomary; and continual Cuſtom, as having been born and brought up from their Infancy in that State of Peregrination, has made it become natural; whereas ſuch an unſettled Life would be very irkſome to a Perſon or Family that had been uſed to a fixed Habitation; and probably they rather chuſe this Sort of Life becauſe it gives them an Opportunity for Theft and Plunder, which is what they practiſe not only in whole Shoals, and without Contradiction, but alſo with a ſeeming Authority, by Permiſſion or Order of their Prince, and ſometimes with him at their Head committing thoſe Outrages.

These Plunders they make both by Land and Sea; for they have taken ſeveral *European* Ships which they have found weakly mann'd, or labouring under any other Diſadvantage; and not only taken them when out at Sea, but fetch'd them out of the very Road at *Gombroon* in the Night-time, and alſo defrauded thoſe Merchants of their Goods who came to trade with them at *Muſcat*; and for the Merchants Caravans by Land, though the *Arabian* Emirs or Princes cannot properly be ſaid to rob them, yet they extort what they pleaſe from them for their Paſſage through their reſpective Provinces; yet, with a View rather to their own Intereſt than to publick Juſtice, they limit their Extortions to hold ſome Proportion to the Value of the Goods ſo tax'd, becauſe if they ſhould let it amount to downright Robbery and Plunder, the Caravans would be afraid, or think it in vain to go any more that Way, and then theſe Exciſemen would loſe all.

But as it is common for a Traveller to give a general Character of a Country, according to the Treatment that he has met with from particular Perſons therein, we think that the moſt likely Way to reconcile the Account that we have given, with the following Inſtance, which differ in themſelves, and yet are undoubtedly both true.

Captain *Say* gives us the following Relation from his own Experience, as being his own Caſe: He tells us that he was ſhip wreck'd on the Iſland of *Maira*; it lies on the *Arabian* Coaſt, in Latitude 20 Degrees North,) and he and his Company eſcaping to the Shore, the *Arabs* came down upon them, who he apprehended were to plunder; but it proved quite otherwiſe; for they offered to aſſiſt in ſaving the Goods, as he underſtood by their Signs; (for they could not underſtand one another one Word) and ſo it proved, and when they had ſaved what they could, one of the *Arabs*, who ſeem'd to have the Command of the reſt, not having any other Way to make him underſtand what Share of the Goods he demanded for his Aſſiſtance, he made three little Heaps of Sand, and gave the Captain one, and kept two to himſelf, intimating that he expected two Thirds of what was ſaved to himſelf; at which the Captain ſhook his Head, to make him underſtand that he thought that was too hard; whereupon the *Arab* put all the Sand together, and dividing it into two equal Parts, Captain *Say*.

gave

gave the Captain one; whereupon the Captain ſhook Hands with him, as being well ſatiſfied that under ſuch a Misfortune he had better have half a Loaf than no Bread; and indeed he was much better off than ſome that loſe their Ships on a Chriſtian Shore; nay, even upon our own Coaſt, where ſometimes the Country comes down arm'd with Axes, Crows, and the like, and inſtead of treating with the Captain, run away with all.

Stature and Complexion.

THE *Arabians* are of a Middle Stature, and their Complexion neither white nor black, but of a ſwarthy Mixture of both, but their Hair and Eyes are commonly black; they have an effeminate Voice, though they are a brave People; they are expert at the Bow and the Launce, and ſince they have been uſed to Fire-arms, are pretty good Markſmen with them too.

Habit.

THEIR Habit is a blue Shirt, tied about with a white Saſh; and ſome have Veſts or Gowns of Fur, or (for Want of them) of Sheep-Skins, over their Cloaths; they wear Drawers and Slippers, but no Stockings, and have a Cap or Turbant upon their Heads, but ſome of them go almoſt naked; but the Women, with their Apparel and Veils, are ſo cover'd up, that when they are dreſt nothing is to be ſeen but their Eyes.

Food.

THEIR common Food is Beef, Mutton, Goat's-Fleſh, Veniſon and Camel's Fleſh, which laſt they prefer before all the reſt. For Bread they make thin Cakes of Flower and Water, or inſtead of Bread, eat dried Dates, which they prefer before the other Bread; they eat almoſt all Sorts of Fiſh that have Scales; but whatever Animal they eat, they take care to have the Blood well drain'd out of it. Thoſe about *Muſcat* do not only obey that Mahometan Precept of abſtaining from Wine, but even ſupererogate and abſtain from Tea and Coffee too; nor do they ſmoak much Tobacco. Water is their common Drink; and if they go higher than that, it is with a Sherbet made with Water and Oranges, and Sugar in it.

Travelling

NOTWITHSTANDING the frequent Travelling of the Caravans, yet there are no beaten Paths, as with us; for the hot Sand in thoſe Deſarts is ſo ſlippery, that although a numerous Caravan may be follow'd by the Path they have deſcribed, if the Weather be calm, yet the firſt Gale of Wind fills them up, as it is ſometimes with us in caſe of Snow; ſo that they have no more Certainty of a Path in theſe Deſarts than the Sailors have at Sea, and are therefore glad to make uſe of the Compaſs as they do, or elſe of the Stars, for Direction, becauſe they travel moſtly by Night, by reaſon of the exceſſive Heat of the Climate, which added to the reflected Heat of the Sand, renders Travelling almoſt intolerable, and impracticable in the Daytime.

Caravans.

PEOPLE chuſe to travel with the Caravans becauſe there is commonly two or three hundred Men, and perhaps a thouſand Beaſts; for they go thus in large Companies to ſecure themſelves from the thieviſh *Arabs*. They have no Wheel Carriages in this Country, but commonly carry their Goods upon Camels and Dromedaries, between which two ſorts of Beaſts there does not appear much Difference, only the Camel has but one Bunch upon his Back, and the Dromedary has two; and alſo that the Camel is the ſtrongeſt and ſloweſt, and fit for great Loads; but the Dromedary is the ſwifteſt, and moſt proper to ride on, and, as they ſay, will trot thirty or forty Leagues a-Day with Eaſe, and will travel five or ſix Days without Water; they kneel down to take up their Burden.

No Inns.

THERE are no Inns or Caravanſera's to bait at; but thoſe who travel with the Caravans carry not only their Proviſion, but their Tents along with them, which they ſet up in bad Weather; but if the Weather be good, they lie upon Carpets in the open Fields, without any Tents, to give themſelves the better Opportunity of keeping a ſharp Look-out for the thieviſh *Arabs*; of whom, if it was not for the Numbers of Men that travel with the Caravans, the Travellers would be in continual Fear.

Diſſerent Meat.

THE Servants and Slaves belonging to the Caravans dreſs their Maſters Meat upon the Road, which is done by making a Fire in a little Hole in the Ground, over which they ſet a Pot; their Fuel is Charcoal, which they carry along with them, but ſave it as much as they can, by gathering Brakes and Shrubs when they are to be had; and for Water, they carry it in Bags made of Skins, they not meeting with Water ſometimes for ſeveral Days together; but the *Arabians* obſerve, that wherever they find Trees, there is Water not far off; and the Camels are ſo ſenſible, by their Smell or ſome natural Inſtinct, of their Approach towards it, that they will ſet up a Trot before they can ſee the Water.

Captain of the Caravan.

AT the ſetting out of the Caravans they elect a Baſhaw or Captain, who orders the March, and appoints the Places they are to lodge at, and, by the Aſſiſtance of ſome of the principal Men, as if it was a Jury, determine Differences that happen upon the Road. They are alſo entruſted with compounding with the Governors of the ſeveral Provinces they paſs through for the Exactions impos'd upon them for their Paſſage through the Country, in which Caſe it is ſuppos'd they often bring in a larger Bill than they paid, and ſo both enrich themſelves and caſt an Odium upon the Governors of the Provinces, more than they deſerve, under a Pretence of their unreaſonable Extortions; and this is ſo commonly the Caſe, that the ſober People in the Caravan had rather ſubmit to a ſmall Impoſition than ſtand to diſpute it with ſuch as will undertake the Office of Captain of the Caravan, who are generally People of ſuch ſuſpicious Principles as few care to converſe with them.

THOSE who carry Wine along with them are obliged to furniſh themſelves with Pack-Horſes for that Purpoſe, for as the Camels are conſecrated to *Mahomet*, their Maſters will not ſuffer them to be polluted with touching or carrying the Liquor which he has forbid. They carry both their Wine and their Water in Goat-Skins, which, if they be not well pitch'd, and the hairy Side inwards, are commonly leaky.

THEY commonly adapt the Stages of the Caravans to the Opportunities they have upon the Road of finding Water; for which Reaſon they ſometimes travel ſix Hours, ſometimes eight, ten, or twelve Hours in twenty four. Every Merchant, with his own Servants, ride by thoſe Camels that are loaden with his own Goods, eſpecially if it be dark Nights; for there are ſly Thieves among them that will cut the Strings by which the Camels are faſten'd to one another, and in the Crowd drive a Camel or two away unperceiv'd till Day-light approach, when it is too late to purſue them.

WHEN the Caravans are come to the Place where they are to pitch for the Night, there are a ſort of poor People that attend them, who make it their Buſineſs to guard the Field, and take care of the Goods. They walk about in the Night, like our Watchmen in *London*, crying, *God is one*, *God is merciful*, *Have a Care of yourſelf*; and when the Time for Marching approaches, they give notice to the Caravan Baſhaw or Captain, and he upon that orders them to cry *Saddle your Horſes*; for which allowing a proper Time, the next Cry is, *Load your Goods*; after which ſecond Cry they are all immediately ready together, and ſet forward without the leaſt Diſorder or Confuſion.

But when they have a long Stage, and do not expect to come to their intended Place of pitching till ten or eleven in the Morning, (for it has been obſerved before that they travel moſtly by Night,) the Merchants ſpread their Carpets on the Ground, and pulling out their Proviſions go to Breakfaſt, while the Caravan marches ſlowly forward.

Any Traveller is obliged to temporize ſo far with the Mahometans, as to dreſs in an *Arabian* Veſt and Cap, or in a Mahometan Garb, or elſe he will ſcarce be allow'd to paſs ſome of the Towns. When they travel they have Boots of black, red, or yellow Leather lin'd with Cloth, they come no higher than the Knee: They never wear Spurs, but prick the Horſe with an Iron fix'd to the Stirrup.

The Water they have upon the Road is commonly in Wells or Ciſterns, where not above two or three Perſons can draw at a Time; and thoſe to whom the Beaſts of Burden belong will let no Body come near till they are ſerved, unleſs People will contend and run the Hazard of a Miſchief for their Pains, which makes Watering very tedious; and thoſe who are obliged to wait till the laſt Turn, are commonly a long Time before they can be ſerved.

CHAP. IV.

Gives an Account of the Nature of the Soil, with their Husbandry, Gardening, and Plants, and alſo of their Animals and Minerals.

The South Part of *Arabia* is commonly known by the Name of *Arabia Felix*, or *Happy Arabia*, not becauſe it is all fruitful and happy; for it abounds with ſandy Deſarts and dry barren Mountains, but as the South Part of it is tolerably fruitful, and may be ſaid to abound not only in Corn and Herbage, but in Aromatick Gums, *&c.* it is to be ſuppoſed that this productive Part of the Southern Part of *Arabia*, now call'd *Arabia Felix*, has given that Title to all that Part of *Arabia* ſo call'd.

Their Hills are not capable of Cultivation, as being ſuch a barren rocky Soil, and the Valleys are equally barren, where Water is wanting, and bear no Herbage; but where they can by ſmall Canals convey Water to them, they produce Corn, Herbs, Flowers, and Garden-ſtuff. They draw Water out of their Wells Morning and Evening, in large Skins, by the Help of Oxen, and convey it along thoſe little Canals, which they make for that Purpoſe; by the Sides of which their Plants and Greens are ſet, and their Corn is ſown, that they may ſupply the Defect of Rain by moiſtening the Ground, by the Water convey'd there by theſe Canals.

Fruits and Gums. They have excellent Lemons, Oranges, Grapes, Peaches, and Apricots; but what they moſt excel in is Dates and Coffee, of both which great Quantities are ſent from thence both to *Europe* and *India* every Year. Of the Growth and nurſing of Coffee, and how it is managed, take the following Account:

Coffee, how it Grows, &c. The Coffee-Tree or Shrub is about eight or ten Foot high, the Bark is grey and ſmooth, and the Wood white, and has but little Pith, the Twigs come out two at a Joint, one oppoſite to the other, and the Leaves upon thoſe Twigs, in the ſame Manner, oppoſite to one another, like the Leaves of our *Engliſh* Aſh, and each Pair about two Inches diſtant from one another; the Leaves are about four Inches long, and two broad in the Middle, and ſo decreaſing both Ways to a Point, and ſtand upon a ſhort Stalk, about a quarter of an Inch in Length, the Leaves are ſmooth, and not dented in the Edges, and pretty much reſemble a Bay-leaf; the Fruit comes out of the Twig where the Leaves come out, and hang upon ſhort Stalks by one, two, or more in the ſame Place. The Coffee-Shrub requires rich Ground, and are there water'd by artificial Canals, as their other Vegetables are; a Tree will bear tolerably well for three or four Years, and then they decay, and the Natives plant new ones in their Places. They dry the Berries in the Sun, and then take off the outſide Husk with Hand-Mills, which Husks the *Arabians* uſe in the hotteſt Seaſons, to roaſt in the Room of Coffee-Berries, as ſuppoſing the Liquor made of them to be more cooling than that made of the Kernel of the Berry.

Coffee has been uſed in *Aſia* two hundred Years and upwards, and was brought into *England* in the Beginning of King *Charles* the Second's Reign, by a *Greek* who came over with Mr. *Edwards* a *Turkey* Merchant, and was the firſt that kept a Coffee-Houſe in *London*. The beſt Coffee-Berry is large and plump, and of a greeniſh Colour, and a kind of a Tranſparency in the thinneſt Parts of it, but the other is yellowiſh and more groſs and opaque, but when they are roaſted, they are not eaſily diſtinguiſh'd; the beſt Way of keeping Coffee-Berries after they are roaſted, is in ſome warm dry Place, for Moiſture palls them, and takes off the Briskneſs of the Taſte; to prevent which it is beſt to grind it no faſter than it is to be uſed, as we find is the general Cuſtom in *England*.

Drugs. Beſides what is already mention'd, *Arabia* alſo produces great Plenty of Myrrh, Manna, Caſſia, Incenſe, Aloes, Olibanum, Balm, and Frankincenſe, and other valuable Drugs; but Timber or any kind of Wood is very ſcarce.

Animals. Their Camels and Horſes are the beſt in their Kind of any other Animal the Country affords. The Camels are extreamly uſeful in theſe Sandy Deſarts, not only for the vaſt Weight they carry, but for their being able to travel ſo long without Water. Their Horſes are only fit for the Saddle, and never uſed either for Draught or Burthen: The fineſt Horſes uſed in *Perſia* are *Arabian* Horſes, and are admired both for their Proportion and Swiftneſs. The common Food both for Camels and Horſes is Barley, or Barley Flower made into Dough. Mr. *Thevenot* tells us that in ſome Parts of *Arabia* they feed them with Camels Milk, Butter, and Wheat, and ſometimes with Camels Fleſh dried in the Sun, which laſt I muſt own carries but little Probability with it, and therefore quote the Author whence we had it; we have alſo a later Author who tells us that they feed their Cattle at *Muſcat* with Fiſh, not when it is newly catch'd, but they dig a little Pit, and throw a large Quantity of Fiſh into it, and let them lie till they are ſo rotten that they appear like a Sort of Earth, and then they take it up and boil it in Water, and when it is cold give it to the Cattle; it feeds them a-pace, and their Fleſh does not by this Means contract any diſagreeable Taſte. They have alſo Oxen, Buffaloes, Goats, and Veniſon, but the Beef and Buffaloes

loes Fleſh is very coarſe Meat; they never breed any Hogs, that being contrary to the Mahometan Principles; they have Plenty of Fiſh and Fowl along the Coaſt, they are ſcarce in the Country by reaſon there is ſo little Water. Wood is alſo very ſcarce, which is ſuppoſed to be the Reaſon that ſo few Lions, Bears, and other Wild-Beaſts are to be found here.

Gold. GOLD has been reported to have been very plenty here; but late Travellers inform us that they have few or no Gold Mines open at preſent; they have large Pearls near the Coaſt of *Perſia*, both in the *Red Sea* and in the *Perſian* Gulf; in the latter of which the Pearl Fiſhery belongs to the King of *Muſcat*; but he makes little or no Advantage of it at preſent, for Pearls are as dear there as in other Parts of *Aſia*.

Iſraelites. Travels. BUT as *Arabia* was the Scene of ſome Part of Scripture Geography, and particularly of the Children of *Iſrael*'s paſſing the *Red Sea*, and of their forty Years Travels in the Wilderneſs, it may not be amiſs to be ſomething particular in our Account of that Part of the Country. I have already in Chap. I. obſerved, that it was between *Suez* and *Tor* that the *Iſraelites* paſs'd over the *Red Sea* upon dry Land. Thoſe who viſit thoſe Places commonly go from *Suez*, the Northermoſt Port of the *Red Sea*, to *Tor*, not far from Mount *Sinai*, where the Law was given to *Moſes*, *Exodus* xix. To the Southward of *Suez* is *Marah*, where the Waters being bitter, *Moſes* cured them by caſting a Piece of Wood into them. A little further to the Southward, and not far from the *Red Sea*, is *Elim*, where the *Iſraelites* found twelve Wells of Water, and ſeventy Palm Trees. Mr. *Thevenot* and other late Travellers, inform us that theſe Wells are yet in being, and that they are now included in a Garden belonging to the Monks at *Tor*, and that they are all hot, and return'd to their former Bitterneſs; and they add that one of them is in a dark Cave, and is made uſe of to bathe in, and is call'd by the *Arabs* *Hummam Mouſa*, or the *Bath of Moſes*. In this Garden are a great Number of Palm Trees; and indeed there are ſcarce any other Sorts of Trees; but they do not pretend to affirm that any of theſe are the individual Trees which were growing when the *Iſraelites* were there; but as the Soil is probably the ſame, it is reaſonable to expect that it may produce the ſame ſort of Trees now as then.

Wilderneſs of *Sin.* FURTHER to the Southward, and on the Eaſt Coaſt of the *Red Sea*, is the Deſart or Wilderneſs of *Sin*; it lies between *Elim* and *Sinai*, *Exodus* xvi. Here it was that the *Iſraelites* long'd for the Fleſh-pots of *Egypt*, and God ſupplied them with Quails and Manna. In this Plain are abundance of *Acacia* Trees, which produce the Gum call'd by the *Arabians Acacia*, or *Acakia*: They are about the Height of an ordinary Willow, with thin prickly Leaves; the Gum iſſues out of the Tree of itſelf, without any Inciſion, as from our Cherry-Trees, or Plumb-Trees; the *Arabs* gather it about *July* or *Auguſt*.

Rephidim ABOUT two Days Journey from this Wilderneſs, and through a hilly Country, is the Place call'd *Rephidim*, where the *Iſraelites* murmur'd for want of Water, *Exodus* xvii. Here is the Rock from whence *Moſes* brought Water by ſmiting it with his Rod; this Rock is of a prodigious Height and Thickneſs, and the Inhabitants ſhew the Channel by which the Water flow'd from it, but it is all quite dry at preſent.

A few Miles from this Rock is a *Greek* Monaſtery dedicated to the Honour of the forty Martyrs; it is a neat Building, and has a fair Church, with very handſom Gardens, ſo well ſtored with Apples, Pears, Walnuts, Oranges, Lemons, Olives, and other curious Fruit, that it is ſaid the beſt Fruit which is eaten at *Grand Cairo* is fetch'd from thence. From this Monaſtery, about two or three Hours travelling up a great Hill, by a ſteep Aſcent, is another Monaſtery, which is at the Foot of Mount *Sinai*, ſo that Mount *Sinai* may be ſaid to be one Mountain above another.

THERE is another Head to Mount *Sinai*, call'd by the Inhabitants the Mount of *Moſes*; on the Top of which are two Churches, one of *Greeks* the other of *Latins*, and near them is a little Moſque, and by the Side of it is a Cave; in which the Inhabitants ſay *Moſes* was when he faſted forty Days and forty Nights; and on the Side of the *Latin* Church is a little Grotto, which they ſay is the Cleft of the Rock where God put *Moſes* while he paſſed by, *Exod.* xxxiii. 22. This is the Mount where *Moſes* received the two Tables of the Law from God himſelf.

THERE are yet to be ſeen little Chapels with Cells near them all over the Mount, which they ſay were the Habitations of fourteen thouſand Hermits, who came there to retire from the World, and devote their Time to Religion; and it was a very agreeable Retirement, for every Cell had a Garden, and a Receptacle for Water, &c. but the *Arabs* did ſo oppreſs them that they were forced to remove.

THE Monaſtery, before mention'd, at the Foot of Mount *Sinai*, call'd the Monaſtery of St. *Katharine*, has been in the Poſſeſſion of the *Greeks* above a thouſand Years, being given them by ſome of the *Greek* Emperors, and the *Arabs* ſuffer'd them a long Time to enjoy it peaceably, not ſo much for the Reſpect they had for them, as for the Privileges they enjoy'd from them: Which ſome ſay was occaſion'd as follows:

WHEN this Monaſtery was in its flouriſhing Condition, *Mahomet* ſerved the Monks in quality of a Camel-driver, and that as he ſlept an Eagle hover'd over his Head, from whence the Abbot foretold his future Greatneſs, deſiring that he would be kind to them when he was ſo advanc'd, which he promiſed to do; and accordingly when he aroſe to the Dignity of a Prince, he confirm'd them in the Poſſeſſion of their Monaſtery, and all the Lands belonging to it, obliging his Succeſſors and Followers not to diſturb them, but to protect their free Poſſeſſion; but made that as a Condition, that they ſhould never deny Entertainment to the neighbouring *Arabs*; and whether this was the real Caſe or no, it carries a great Face of Probability, for it is certain, that when the Monks were in Poſſeſſion of this Monaſtery, they gave half a Peck of Corn to every *Arab* that viſited them, which was ſometimes two or three hundred in a Day; but at laſt the ungrateful *Arabs*, not content with this Charity, plunder'd the Camels that were bringing Proviſions to the Convent, whereupon the Monks wall'd up the Gate, and retired to *Tor*.

THE Monks begun to be jealous of the *Arabs* before theſe Inſults were given, and never would admit them into any Part of the Convent, but lower'd down the Corn or Proviſions to them, and alſo drew up the Pilgrims in Baſkets by Ropes, for they did not think the *Arabs* People fit to be confided in, notwithſtanding the Obligation *Mahomet* had lain them under to let them continue in quiet Poſſeſſion, and the Sequel prov'd the Truth of what they apprehended.

THE City of *Midian*, of which *Jethro*, *Moſes*'s Father-in Law, was Prieſt, (*Exod.* iii. 1) is near *Rephidim*, between it and the *Red Sea*; but the Tract, call'd the Land of *Midian*, extends from the *Red Sea* to Mount *Horeb*, where the Angel appear'd to *Moſes* in the Burning-buſh; it was to this Place that *Moſes* fled from the Fury of *Pharaoh* when he had kill'd the *Egyptian*, and here he remain'd till God ſent him to *Egypt* to deliver the *Iſraelites* from *Pharaoh*'s Bondage; and as *Moſes* and the *Iſraelites*, in their Return from *Egypt*, travell'd to the Southward

ward near the *Red Sea* till they came to the Land of *Midian*, *Jethro* hearing of *Moses*'s Succeſs, and of his Approach, he met him with his Wife and Children; and after a ſmall Interview, *Jethro* return'd home to *Midian*, and *Moſes* proceeded to Mount *Sinai* in his Way to *Canaan*, with the Families of *Iſrael* along with him, *Exod.* Chap. xviii, xix.

Situation of Para-diſe

But, before we conclude this Part of Scripture Hiſtory relating to *Arabia*, it will be very ſeaſonable here to give ſome Account of the Situation of the Terreſtial Paradiſe; which as we ſhall not aſſert any Thing but what we have Scripture Hiſtory for, we ſhall produce our Authority for our Conjecture, and ſatisfy our Readers of the Probability, if not of the Certainty, of the Opinion we advance, ſince we find no other Place upon the Surface of the Terreſtial Globe anſwers the Deſcription, eſpecially according to the Names of the Rivers by which it is deſcribed in the ſecond Chapter of *Geneſis*.

But as this Part of Sacred Hiſtory was writ by *Moſes*, let us firſt conſider his Birth and Situation: He was born in *Egypt*, *Exodus* Chap. ii. and fled from thence to *Midian*, upon the Account of his killing the *Egyptian*, *Exod.* ii. 15. and while he dwelt there he ſerved his Father-in-Law in the low Capacity of a Shepherd, till keeping his Flock in Mount *Horeb*, God appear'd to him in a Burning-buſh, and gave him his Commiſſion to bring the Children of *Iſrael* out of *Egypt*, *Exod.* iii. which he executed accordingly, but never enter'd into the Land of *Canaan*, *Deut.* xxxiv. 4, 5. So that all his Travels in general was from *Egypt* to *Midian*, and from thence back to *Egypt*; from whence he came with the Children of *Iſrael* through the *Red Sea*, and after all their tedious Journeys in the Wilderneſs, he accompanied them into the Sight of the Land of *Canaan*, though himſelf never ſet Foot upon that promiſed Land.

Queſtion.

It cannot be an improper Digreſſion to enquire (that ſince *Moſes* could flee from *Egypt* to *Midian*, or *Madian*, when he had kill'd the *Egyptian*, *Exod.* ii. and could ſo eaſily return to *Egypt*, *Exod.* iv. 20.) which Way he went and came, ſince in the Paſſage of the Children of *Iſrael* to the Wilderneſs and Mount *Sinai*, there ſeem'd to be a Neceſſity of dividing the *Red Sea* to open their Way for their laſt Paſſage from *Egypt*?

Anſwer.

In Anſwer to which, as a natural Reaſon, it is evident that *Moſes* had the Opportunity of going by Sea from *Tor*, or ſome other Port on the *Arabian* Side, to *Suez*, or ſome other Port in *Egypt*, or elſe, that he might travel by Land over the *Iſthmus* that ſeparates the *Red Sea* from the *Mediterranean*; but if it be further objected, why did not the *Iſraelites* come the ſame Way? the Anſwer is plain, that *Pharaoh*, intending to intercept their Flight, block'd up that Paſſage by Land; and they finding a Neceſſity to retreat to the Sea, it could not be ſuppoſed that in that Sea of ſo little Trade, they could meet with Veſſels to embark ſuch a numerous People; and, as has been obſerved before, the Mountains on each Side, and the Enemy behind, they muſt have been deſtroy'd if this Miracle had not intervened for their Preſervation.

But we beg leave to be excuſed from attempting to give natural Reaſons for the Proceedings of infinite Wiſdom, and, as to the preſent Caſe, rather ſuppoſe in this Diſtreſs of the *Iſraelites*, God, willing further to convince them of, and confirm them in a Belief of his infinite Power, gave them this timely Inſtance of it, to ſupport them in their entire Dependance upon him, in the Difficulties they had to encounter with in a ſtrange and deſart Wilderneſs. But to return to our Deſcription of Paradiſe.

Having thus proved that all the Travels of *Moſes* were comprized in *Egypt*, *Arabia*, &c. excluſive of the Land of Promiſe, *Deut.* xxxiv. 4. it is evident that he muſt write the Hiſtory of the Creation, and the other four Books of the Pentateuch, within thoſe Limits which is contain'd between twenty eight and thirty eight Degrees of North Latitude; in which Climate lies *Iraa Arabick*, to the North-Weſtward of the *Perſian Gulf*; and if we compare this his Situation with his Words *Gen.* ii. 8. that God planted a Garden Eaſtward in *Eden*, it ſeems to be a ſatisfactory Proof, that the Garden of *Eden* is in or near the Latitude of ſome Part of the Travels of *Moſes*, and under a more Eaſterly Meridian.

Where *Moſes* writ the Pentateuch

Deſcription of *Eden*.

We are next to conſider the Deſcription that *Moſes* gives of the Garden of *Eden*; and it was at the Confluence, (or Separation, or both, of four Rivers, *Piſon*, *Gihon*, *Hiddekel*, and *Euphrates*; and if we allow the River then call'd *Hiddekel* to be the ſame at preſent call'd *Tygris*, theſe four Rivers do concur and empty themſelves into the Bottom of the *Perſian Gulf*.

If it ſhould be objected that the River deſcribed by *Moſes*, *parted and became into four Heads*, *Gen.* ii. 10. it may be anſwer'd, that that does not prove that it muſt run four different Ways; for, as we may obſerve in the following Map, the two Rivers *Tygris* and *Euphrates* meet, and running in the ſame Stream for ſome time, they part and fall into the *Perſian Gulf* in two Channels, the Weſtermoſt of which is *Piſon*, and the Eaſtermoſt *Gihon*; ſo that allowing that which contains the Confluence and Separation of theſe Rivers to be the Garden of *Eden*, they, as beheld from thence, *parted and became into four Heads*, and include the four Rivers mention'd by *Moſes* in his Deſcription of the Earthly Paradiſe.

Inconſiſtent Conjecture.

Some indeed would have the Garden of *Eden* to be in *Egypt*, and in favour of that Opinion affirm that the River *Nile* was call'd *Gihon*, and that before the Flood *it parted and became into four Heads*, (and no more,) by which it emptied itſelf into the *Mediterranean*, (though by many more ſince the Flood;) but this does not agree with the Situation of Paradiſe according to *Moſes*, who ſays, *Gen.* ii. 8. that God planted a Garden Eaſtward in *Eden*; but as *Moſes* was never further Weſt than the Land of *Goſhen*, and conſequently never to the Weſtward of the *Nile*, it is impoſſible that ever thoſe four Heads, and the Land included between them, could ever be Eaſtward from him, and therefore cannot be that Garden Eaſtward in *Eden* which *Moſes* deſcribes.

But the Paradiſe before mention'd agrees with *Moſes*'s Deſcription both as to Situation, being *Eaſtward* of the Scene of his Travels, and anſwering to the Confluence, or Separation, or both, of the four Rivers he mentions; and this is contain'd in about a hundred and fifty Miles in Length, which, though far ſhort of the Extent which ſome allow Paradiſe to contain, yet, humanly ſpeaking, not only that whole Plat, but even ſome ſelect Part of of that, was ſufficient for a Garden for a Man and his Wife, eſpecially as *Adam* alone was to dreſs and to keep it, *Gen.* ii. 15. And if to this we add, that there is no other Place in the World that will anſwer the Deſcription *Moſes* gives, both as to Situation and other Circumſtances, we may ſafely conclude, that ſuch a Concurrence of theſe more than probable Conjectures amount to little, if any thing, leſs than a Proof that this is the Garden of *Eden* which *Moſes* deſcribes.

CHAP.

loes Flesh is very coarse Meat; they never breed any Hogs, that being contrary to the Mahometan Principles; they have Plenty of Fish and Fowl along the Coast, they are scarce in the Country by reason there is so little Water. Wood is also very scarce, which is supposed to be the Reason that so few Lions, Bears, and other Wild-Beasts are to be found here.

Gold. GOLD has been reported to have been very plenty here; but late Travellers inform us that they have few or no Gold Mines open at present; they have large Pearls near the Coast of *Persia*, both in the *Red Sea* and in the *Persian* Gulf; in the latter of which the Pearl Fishery belongs to the King of *Muscat*; but he makes little or no Advantage of it at present, for Pearls are as dear there as in other Parts of *Asia*.

Israelites. Travels. BUT as *Arabia* was the Scene of some Part of Scripture Geography, and particularly of the Children of *Israel*'s passing the *Red Sea*, and of their forty Years Travels in the Wilderness, it may not be amiss to be something particular in our Account of that Part of the Country. I have already in Chap. I. observed, that it was between *Suez* and *Tor* that the *Israelites* pass'd over the *Red Sea* upon dry Land. Those who visit those Places commonly go from *Suez*, the Northermost Port of the *Red Sea*, to *Tor*, not far from Mount *Sinai*, where the Law was given to *Moses*, *Exodus* xix. To the Southward of *Suez* is *Marah*, where the Waters being bitter, *Moses* cured them by casting a Piece of Wood into them. A little further to the Southward, and not far from the *Red Sea*, is *Elim*, where the *Israelites* found twelve Wells of Water, and seventy Palm Trees. Mr. *Thevenot* and other late Travellers, inform us that these Wells are yet in being, and that they are now included in a Garden belonging to the Monks at *Tor*, and that they are all hot, and return'd to their former Bitterness; and they add that one of them is in a dark Cave, and is made use of to bathe in, and is call'd by the *Arabs Hummam Mousa*, or the *Bath of Moses*. In this Garden are a great Number of Palm Trees; and indeed there are scarce any other Sorts of Trees; but they do not pretend to affirm that any of these are the individual Trees which were growing when the *Israelites* were there; but as the Soil is probably the same, it is reasonable to expect that it may produce the same sort of Trees now as then.

Wilderness of *Sin.* FURTHER to the Southward, and on the East Coast of the *Red Sea*, is the Desart or Wilderness of *Sin*; it lies between *Elim* and *Sinai*, *Exodus* xvi. Here it was that the *Israelites* long'd for the Flesh-pots of *Egypt*, and God supplied them with Quails and Manna. In this Plain are abundance of *Acacia* Trees, which produce the Gum call'd by the *Arabians Acacia*, or *Acakia*: They are about the Height of an ordinary Willow, with thin prickly Leaves; the Gum issues out of the Tree of itself, without any Incision, as from our Cherry-Trees, or Plumb-Trees; the *Arabs* gather it about *July* or *August*.

Rephidim ABOUT two Days Journey from this Wilderness, and through a hilly Country, is the Place call'd *Rephidim*, where the *Israelites* murmur'd for want of Water, *Exodus* xvii. Here is the Rock from whence *Moses* brought Water by smiting it with his Rod; this Rock is of a prodigious Height and Thickness, and the Inhabitants shew the Channel by which the Water flow'd from it, but it is all quite dry at present.

A few Miles from this Rock is a *Greek* Monastery dedicated to the Honour of the forty Martyrs; it is a neat Building, and has a fair Church, with very handsom Gardens, so well stored with Apples, Pears, Walnuts, Oranges, Lemons, Olives, and other curious Fruit, that it is said the best Fruit which is eaten at *Grand Cairo* is fetch'd from thence. From this Monastery, about two or three Hours travelling up a great Hill, by a steep Ascent, is another Monastery, which is at the Foot of Mount *Sinai*, so that Mount *Sinai* may be said to be one Mountain above another. *Mount Sinai.*

THERE is another Head to Mount *Sinai*, call'd by the Inhabitants the Mount of *Moses*; on the Top of which are two Churches, one of *Greeks* the other of *Latins*, and near them is a little Mosque, and by the Side of it is a Cave; in which the Inhabitants say *Moses* was when he fasted forty Days and forty Nights; and on the Side of the *Latin* Church is a little Grotto, which they say is the Cleft of the Rock where God put *Moses* while he passed by, *Exod.* xxxiii. 22. This is the Mount where *Moses* received the two Tables of the Law from God himself. *Mount Moses.*

THERE are yet to be seen little Chapels with Cells near them all over the Mount, which they say were the Habitations of fourteen thousand Hermits, who came there to retire from the World, and devote their Time to Religion; and it was a very agreeable Retirement, for every Cell had a Garden, and a Receptacle for Water, &c. but the *Arabs* did so oppress them that they were forced to remove.

THE Monastery, before mention'd, at the Foot of Mount *Sinai*, call'd the Monastery of St. *Katharine*, has been in the Possession of the *Greeks* above a thousand Years, being given them by some of the *Greek* Emperors, and the *Arabs* suffer'd them a long Time to enjoy it peaceably, not so much for the Respect they had for them, as for the Privileges they enjoy'd from them: Which some say was occasion'd as follows:

WHEN this Monastery was in its flourishing Condition, *Mahomet* served the Monks in quality of a Camel-driver, and that as he slept an Eagle hover'd over his Head, from whence the Abbot foretold his future Greatness, desiring that he would be kind to them when he was so advanc'd, which he promised to do; and accordingly when he arose to the Dignity of a Prince, he confirm'd them in the Possession of their Monastery, and all the Lands belonging to it, obliging his Successors and Followers not to disturb them, but to protect their free Possession; but made that as a Condition, that they should never deny Entertainment to the neighbouring *Arabs*; and whether this was the real Case or no, it carries a great Face of Probability, for it is certain, that when the Monks were in Possession of this Monastery, they gave half a Peck of Corn to every *Arab* that visited them, which was sometimes two or three hundred in a Day, but at last the ungrateful *Arabs*, not content with this Charity, plunder'd the Camels that were bringing Provisions to the Convent, whereupon the Monks wall'd up the Gate, and retired to *Tor*.

THE Monks begun to be jealous of the *Arabs* before these Insults were given, and never would admit them into any Part of the Convent, but lower'd down the Corn or Provisions to them, and also drew up the Pilgrims in Baskets by Ropes, for they did not think the *Arab* People fit to be confided in, notwithstanding the Obligation *Mahomet* had lain them under to let them continue in quiet Possession, and the Sequel prov'd the Truth of what they apprehended.

THE City of *Midian*, of which *Jethro*, *Moses*'s Father-in-Law, was Priest, (*Exod.* iii. 1) is near *Rephidim*, between it and the *Red Sea*; but the Tract, call'd the Land of *Midian*, extends from the *Red Sea* to Mount *Horeb*, where the Angel appear'd to *Moses* in the Burning-bush; it was to this Place that *Moses* fled from the Fury of *Pharaoh* when he had kill'd the *Egyptian*, and here he remain'd till God sent him to *Egypt* to deliver the *Israelites* from *Pharaoh*'s Bondage; and as *Moses* and the *Israelites*, in their Return from *Egypt*, travell'd to the South-

Midian.

ward

ward near the *Red Sea* till they came to the Land of *Midian*, *Jethro* hearing of *Moses*'s Success, and of his Approach, he met him with his Wife and Children; and after a small Interview, *Jethro* return'd home to *Midian*, and *Moses* proceeded to Mount *Sinai* in his Way to *Canaan*, with the Families of *Israel* along with him, *Exod.* Chap. xviii, xix.

Situation of Paradise

But, before we conclude this Part of Scripture History relating to *Arabia*, it will be very seasonable here to give some Account of the Situation of the Terrestial Paradise; which as we shall not assert any Thing but what we have Scripture History for, we shall produce our Authority for our Conjecture, and satisfy our Readers of the Probability, if not of the Certainty, of the Opinion we advance, since we find no other Place upon the Surface of the Terrestial Globe answers the Description, especially according to the Names of the Rivers by which it is described in the second Chapter of *Genesis*.

Moses.

But as this Part of Sacred History was writ by *Moses*, let us first consider his Birth and Situation: He was born in *Egypt*, *Exodus* Chap. ii. and fled from thence to *Midian*, upon the Account of his killing the *Egyptian*, *Exod.* ii. 15. and while he dwelt there he served his Father-in-Law in the low Capacity of a Shepherd, till keeping his Flock in Mount *Horeb*, God appear'd to him in a Burning-bush, and gave him his Commission to bring the Children of *Israel* out of *Egypt*, *Exod.* iii. which he executed accordingly, but never enter'd into the Land of *Canaan*, *Deut.* xxxiv. 4, 5. So that all his Travels in general was from *Egypt* to *Midian*, and from thence back to *Egypt*; from whence he came with the Children of *Israel* through the *Red Sea*, and after all their tedious Journeys in the Wilderness, he accompanied them into the Sight of the Land of *Canaan*, though himself never set Foot upon that promised Land.

Question.

It cannot be an improper Digression to enquire (that since *Moses* could flee from *Egypt* to *Midian*, or *Madian*, when he had kill'd the *Egyptian*, *Exod.* ii. and could so easily return to *Egypt*, *Exod.* iv. 20.) which Way he went and came, since in the Passage of the Children of *Israel* to the Wilderness and Mount *Sinai*, there seem'd to be a Necessity of dividing the *Red Sea* to open their Way for their last Passage from *Egypt*?

Answer.

In Answer to which, as a natural Reason, it is evident that *Moses* had the Opportunity of going by Sea from *Tor*, or some other Port on the *Arabian* Side, to *Suez*, or some other Port in *Egypt*, or else, that he might travel by Land over the *Isthmus* that separates the *Red Sea* from the *Mediterranean*; but if it be further objected, why did not the *Israelites* come the same Way? the Answer is plain, that *Pharaoh*, intending to intercept their Flight, block'd up that Passage by Land; and they finding a Necessity to retreat to the Sea, it could not be supposed that in that Sea of so little Trade, they could meet with Vessels to embark such a numerous People; and, as has been observed before, the Mountains on each Side, and the Enemy behind, they must have been destroy'd if this Miracle had not intervened for their Preservation.

But we beg leave to be excused from attempting to give natural Reasons for the Proceedings of infinite Wisdom, and, as to the present Case, rather suppose in this Distress of the *Israelites*, God, willing further to convince them of, and confirm them in a Belief of his infinite Power, gave them this timely Instance of it, to support them in their entire Dependance upon him, in the Difficulties they had to encounter with in a strange and desart Wilderness. But to return to our Description of Paradise.

Where *Moses* writ the Pentateuch.

Having thus proved that all the Travels of *Moses* were comprized in *Egypt*, *Arabia*, &c. exclusive of the Land of Promise, *Deut.* xxxiv. 4. it is evident that he must write the History of the Creation, and the other four Books of the Pentateuch, within those Limits which is contain'd between twenty eight and thirty eight Degrees of North Latitude; in which Climate lies *Iraca Arabick*, to the North-Westward of the *Persian Gulf*; and if we compare this his Situation with his Words *Gen.* ii. 8. that God planted a Garden Eastward in *Eden*, it seems to be a satisfactory Proof, that the Garden of *Eden* is in or near the Latitude of some Part of the Travels of *Moses*, and under a more Easterly Meridian.

Description of *Eden*.

We are next to consider the Description that *Moses* gives of the Garden of *Eden*; and it was at the Confluence, (or Separation, or both, of four Rivers, *Pison*, *Gihon*, *Hiddekel*, and *Euphrates*; and if we allow the River then call'd *Hiddekel* to be the same at present call'd *Tygris*, these four Rivers do concur and empty themselves into the Bottom of the *Persian Gulf*.

If it should be objected that the River described by *Moses*, *parted and became into four Heads*, *Gen.* ii. 10. it may be answer'd, that that does not prove that it must run four different Ways; for, as we may observe in the following Map, the two Rivers *Tygris* and *Euphrates* meet, and running in the same Stream for some time, they part and fall into the *Persian Gulf* in two Channels, the Westermost of which is *Pison*, and the Eastermost *Gihon*; so that allowing that which contains the Confluence and Separation of these Rivers to be the Garden of *Eden*, they, as beheld from thence, *parted and became into four Heads*, and include the four Rivers mention'd by *Moses* in his Description of the Earthly Paradise.

Inconsistent Conjecture.

Some indeed would have the Garden of *Eden* to be in *Egypt*, and in favour of that Opinion affirm that the River *Nile* was call'd *Gihon*, and that before the Flood *it parted and became into four Heads*, (and no more,) by which it emptied itself into the *Mediterranean*, (though by many more since the Flood;) but this does not agree with the Situation of Paradise according to *Moses*, who says, *Gen.* ii. 8. that God planted a Garden Eastward in *Eden*; but as *Moses* was never further West than the Land of *Goshen*, and consequently never to the Westward of the *Nile*, it is impossible that ever those four Heads, and the Land included between them, could ever be Eastward from him, and therefore cannot be that Garden Eastward in *Eden* which *Moses* describes.

But the Paradise before mention'd agrees with *Moses*'s Description both as to Situation, being *Eastward* of the Scene of his Travels, and answering to the Confluence, or Separation, or both, of the four Rivers he mentions; and this is contain'd in about a hundred and fifty Miles in Length, which, though far short of the Extent which some allow Paradise to contain, yet, humanly speaking, not only that whole Plat, but even some select Part of of that, was sufficient for a Garden for a Man and his Wife, especially as *Adam* alone was to dress and to keep it, *Gen.* ii. 15. And if to this we add, that there is no other Place in the World that will answer the Description *Moses* gives, both as to Situation and other Circumstances, we may safely conclude, that such a Concurrence of these more than probable Conjectures amount to little, if any thing, less than a Proof that this is the Garden of *Eden* which *Moses* describes.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Treats of the Language of the Arabians, *and of their Learning, with their Account of Time; alſo of their Forces and Arms, with their Coins, Weights, and Meaſures.*

Language

IT is aſſerted by the People of the Eaſt, and believed by thoſe that are proper Judges, that the *Arabick*, or *Arabian* Language, is the richeſt and moſt copious of any in the World; it is compoſed of ſeveral Millions of Words, and ſuch Variety to ſignify the ſame Thing, that they have not leſs than a thouſand Terms to expreſs the Word *Camel*, and five hundred for that of *Lion*. And as it is a Language ſo well embelliſh'd with Choice of Words of the ſame Tendency and Signification, and many of them ſo emphatical, and bearing ſuch a particular Force and Energy, as not to be capable of being tranſlated into any other Language without a great many Words to explain them, that and the Situation of the Garden of *Eden* in *Iraca Arabick*, as obſerved in the Concluſion of the laſt Chapter, adds a further Probability of the *Arabick* being the Language of Paradiſe. But it is obſerved that a great deal of the Richneſs and Beauty of this Language is loſt, which, by-the-bye, corroborates the former Conjecture of its having been the Language of Paradiſe; and that when Paradiſe was loſt as to the Felicity and Beauty of it, and *Adam* drove out of it elſewhere, and, as ſome think, he and his Wife were ſeparated, it is natural to conclude that the Language muſt be loſt, or at leaſt loſe ſome of its primitive Beauties.

Mother or Original Language.

THERE is a Debate between the Eaſtern and Weſtern Part of the World, whether the *Arabick* or *Hebrew* be the Mother Language, the Eaſtern contend for the *Arabian*, but in this Part of the World they maintain the *Hebrew* to be the Original; but thoſe who would reconcile theſe Diſputes, aſſert that they both proceed from the ſame Source, and bear a great Reſemblance to each other. However, as *Latin* and *Hebrew* are the learned Languages with us in the Weſt, ſo is *Arabick* in the Eaſt; and therefore the Alchoran is read in that Language in *India* and *Perſia*, as well as in *Arabia*, where it is the native Language.

Arts diſcouraged.

BUT the Degeneracy of Arts and Sciences has been obſerved to make a conſiderable Progreſs (if I may be allow'd the Term,) in thoſe Places where the Mahometan Religion has prevail'd and been propagated; Witneſs, *Greece* itſelf, though formerly the Seat and Source of Polite Literature, yet not to ſay they, as well as *Arabia*, are ſunk into Sloth and Idleneſs, but they are degenerated into the Neglect of Arts and Sciences; for, as neither their Religion nor the Principles of their Government will bear examining, they diſcourage every Attempt towards the Improvement of Learning, leſt the Abſurdity of thoſe Maxims by which they are govern'd ſhould be detected, and that thoſe who are aiming at Impoſitions and Arbitrary Power, do endeavour firſt to expel all Seminaries both of Religion and Learning upon the ſame Account; as ſuppoſing that when Learning is excluded, and as a neceſſary Conſequence Ignorance promoted, it will be eaſier to impoſe upon the ignorant Vulgar, than upon thoſe People who have Senſe and Learning to judge for themſelves; in this Senſe it may indeed be ſaid, that *Ignorance is the Mother of* their *Devotion*.

THE Kingdoms upon the Coaſt of *Arabia* are ſome of them very extenſive: Their Monarchs are commonly ſtil'd Xerifs, as Xerif of *Mecca* &c. and others are call'd Imans, but they each of them ſignify Prieſt as well as King; and it would ſeem that thoſe call'd Imans are thoſe that reckon themſelves the more immediate Succeſſors of *Mahomet*, as the Caliphs of the *Saracens* were till conquer'd by the *Turk*; for the *Turkiſh* Emperors do not pretend to meddle with the Prieſthood, ſo as to officiate in it, but govern and controul the Eccleſiaſtical Juriſdiction as they pleaſe, and give Laws to their Mufti or High-Prieſt, as we ſhall further explain when we treat of the *Turkiſh* Dominions. Title of Governor.

Government.

As to the Form of Government in *Arabia* and their Laws, their Monarchs are abſolute, both in Spirituals and Temporals, or in all Affairs Civil and Eccleſiaſtical, the Succeſſion is Hereditary, and they have no Laws but what is founded upon the Alchoran, only their different Comments upon it cauſe different Opinions, both in Law and Religion; but *Arabia* is not the only Place that has experienced ſuch pernicious Differences, where the Religion has taken its Riſe from the ſame Original.

Account of Time.

THE *Arabians*, both before and ſince *Mahomet*'s Time, compute their Years by Lunar Months; but to rectify their Account, they did (as we do, by adding one Day in every fourth Year, which we call Leap-Year) intercalate ſeven Months in nineteen Years, which by allowing eleven Days every Year, (the Difference between the Solar and Lunar Years, and the Foundation of our Epact, it amounts to their Intercalary ſeven Months in nineteen Years (nearly,) ſo that by this Means their Months were again brought back to the proper Seaſons of the Year, and this Intercalary Correction was uſed in *Arabia* till *Mahomet*'s Time; but then, as if he had a Mind to do ſomething that ſhould be talk'd of, right or wrong, that Correction was diſuſed, and the Year only reckon'd to conſiſt of three hundred fifty four Days, eight Hours, and forty eight Minutes; which odd Hours and Minutes amount in thirty Years to elven Days exactly; to account for which they intercalate a Day every 2d, 5th, 7th, 10th, 13th, 15th, 18th, 21ſt, 24th, 26th, and 29th Years of this Period, ſo that their Intercalary Year conſiſts of 355 Days, the other but of 354; and hence it is that the Beginning of the *Hegira* is unfix'd, and paſſes through all the Seaſons of the Year, and makes a Revolution to near the ſame Place again, only with a Year's Alteration in their Account in every one of thoſe Revolutions. *Dean* Prideaux's *Life of* Mahomet, *page 66*.

THEY have twelve Months, of which the firſt has 30 Days, the Second 29, and ſo on alternately through the Year, which makes out their 354 Days in the Year, as above, only the Intercalary Years above-mention'd; the laſt Month of the Year, call'd *Dulhaga*, has alſo thirty Days.

Another Æra.

BUT the *Perſian* Mahometans have another Æra, call'd the *Æra* of *Jeſdegard*, which took Place upon his Acceſſion to the Throne, ten Years after the *Hegira*; and by this Year they compute in all Civil Matters, and it is three hundred ſixty five Days without any Intercalation; and by this the Eaſtern Aſtrologers reckon their Years.

THE *Hegira* commences with the Year of our Lord ſix hundred and twenty two, from the ſixteenth

teenth Day of *July*, which being the Day of *Mahomet*'s Flight, as the Word *Hegira* imports, they reckon the Date of their Years from thence, as we do from the Year of our Saviour's Incarnation.

They have no regular ſtanding Forces by Land; but the Conſtitution is ſuch, that if the King or Monarch requires either Men or Money they are obliged to ſupply his Demands; and of all the Xerifs or Imans of *Perſia*, the moſt Potent Monarch by Sea is the King of *Oman*, or *Muſcat*; who is now grown ſo formidable, that he is able to maintain a War not only with the *Aſiaticks*, but with the *Europeans* too; for they are always, of late, at War with the *Portugueſe* and *Danes*, and if an *Engliſh* Veſſel falls in their Way, that is not able to reſiſt them, they take her, and deem her a lawful Prize, though for no other Reaſon but becauſe ſhe could not defend herſelf from them. Mr. *Lockart*, in his Account of that Place, informs us, that there were fourteen Sail of Men of War in the Mole at *Muſcat* when he was there, from twenty to ſeventy Guns, but the biggeſt of them not ſo large as one of our Fourth Rates, their Ports being as near together as they can poſſibly work their Guns; there were alſo twenty Merchant-men in the Mole, and they had fifteen or ſixteen Men of War a Cruizing abroad; their Colours are red, which they diſplay in Flags and Pendants at the Top-maſt Heads, and Yard-arms, and make a beautiful Appearance; but they have very little, if any Timber fit for Shipping; but their Ships are built at *Surrat*, or at the Mouth of the River *Indus*, and many of them are Prizes taken from other Nations.

Shipping.

Thoſe of the inland Country are divided into Tribes, and the Tribes ſubdivided into Families. Every Tribe hath its *Sheik el Kebir*, or Grand Captain, and every Family its *Sheik*, or Captain; the *Sheik el Kebir* is inveſted with Supreme and Civil Authority; the Offices of the *Sheiks* are Hereditary, except they die without Children, and then it comes to an Election, by the Leave of the grand *Sheik*, or Sovereign; and if he dies without Iſſue, the whole Tribe aſſembles to chuſe another. It is ſaid that ſome of thoſe *Sheiks* or *Emirs* that lie next *Turkey* are tributary to them; but it is certain they receive large Gratuities from the *Turks*, for protecting the Pilgrims in their Paſſage through the Country. And the Grand Seignior is always glad to have a good Underſtanding with them, for he knows it is in their Power to do his Subjects a great deal of Miſchief, by their Excurſions and Robberies, and it is very difficult to puniſh them for it; for although the *Arabians* are not a Match for the *Turk* in the open Field in a ſet Battle, yet when they make their Inroads upon the *Turks*, to plunder them, and afterwards retreat in their own Country, it would deſtroy the beſt of Armies to purſue them into the wild Deſarts, where there is no Proviſion, or Water, nor ſo much as Towns or Habitations for Shelter from the Heat; which is ſo exceſſive, that it is inſupportable to any but the Natives, and this, and not the Power of their Forces, is the chief Reaſon why the greateſt Part of *Arabia* was never conquer'd.

Perſons

If it ſhould be ask'd if Water, and Proviſions, &c. be ſo ſcarce, how are the Natives ſupply'd? or why cannot the *Turks* in their Purſuit ſubſiſt as well as the *Arabs* in their Retreat? it may be anſwer'd, that the *Arabian* Tribes, which conſiſt of three or four hundred Families or more, are acquainted with the Country, and know where to find Water and Paſture to ſubſiſt themſelves and their Cattle; whereas was a great Army to purſue them through thoſe Deſarts, they muſt unavoidably periſh for Want, ſo that their Strength or Succeſs does not always conſiſt in a numerous Army, nor yet in a ſmall one; for if it is large, the Country cannot ſubſiſt them, and they muſt periſh of Courſe, and if their Number is ſmall, the *Arabs* are too ſtrong for them, and ſo defeat them; and that is the Reaſon why the *Turks*, either with large or ſmall Armies, never care to penetrate far into *Arabia*.

The *Turks*, *Perſians*, and *Portugueſe* have got ſeveral of the great Towns upon the Coaſt in their Poſſeſſion; which intimates that it is not their Power or their Skill in Military Affairs that ſecures them from being conquer'd by their Neighbours, becauſe ſeveral of their Ports or Places worth conquering have undergone that Fate by different Foreigners; but the inland Deſarts not being worth conquering, they continue in quiet Poſſeſſion of them, becauſe it is not worth any Body's while to take them from them; for who would exert his Courage and his Power to make a Conqueſt, if he knows, that in caſe he ſhould ſucceed, he muſt fare worſe than he did before.

The Arms of the *Arabians* are a Launce, a half Pike, a broad Sword, a Dagger, a Bow and Arrows, and of late they have found the Uſe of Fire-Arms and great Guns; they had formerly Shields cover'd with Skins of Beaſts or Fiſh, but theſe are not of much Service to them, ſince they knew the Uſe of Fire-Arms. They do not care to engage in a pitch'd Battle and upon equal Terms, but truſt more to the Swiftneſs of their Horſes, and the Barrenneſs of their Deſarts, by which they make their Flight, which renders a Purſuit almoſt impracticable, for this is what they truſt to for their Security more than Force of Arms.

Arms.

The Current Coin at *Mocha*, at the Entrance of the *Red Sea*, and the principal Trading Port belonging to it, are Dollars, but they abate Five *per Cent.* on the Pillar Dollars, becauſe they are not of the fineſt Silver. The Dollar Weight with them is ſeventeen Drams fourteen Grains; all their Coin paſſes by Weight, and is valued according to its Fineneſs. The Gold Coins that are current here are the Ducats of *Venice*, *Germany*, *Turkey*, *Egypt*, &c. there is a ſmall Coin call'd *Comaſſes*, but their Value is alter'd as the Government pleaſes. They generally keep their Accounts by an imaginary Coin call'd *Cabeers*, of which eighty goes to a Dollar, but they have no ſuch current Coin as *Cabeers*, though they reckon by them; as is the Caſe with us in *England*, who reckon by Pounds, Shillings, and Pence, and yet we have no ſingle Pieces of a Pound, or but few of a Penny, that paſſes current amongſt us.

Coins.

But the *Arabian* Coins alter either according to the Time or Place in which they are; for Mr. *Lockart* informs us that at *Muſcat*, when he was there, the Current Coin was *Budgerooks* and *Mamooda's*: The *Budgerooks* were made of a mix'd Metal, ſomething like Iron, with a Croſs on one Side, and were coin'd by the *Portugueſe* when they had *Muſcat* in Poſſeſſion; thirty of theſe *Budgerooks* are worth one Silver *Mamooda*, the Value of which is but eight Pence. The *Rupees* of *Surrat* paſs current for three *Mamooda's* and a half, and *Spaniſh* Dollars at ſeven *Mamooda's* and a half. *Venetians*, *Ibrams*, and other Pieces of Gold, paſs current at *Muſcat*.

Of Weights; the *Babar* is four hundred and twenty Pound *Engliſh*; the *Fraſſel* is twenty eight Pounds, fifteen of them is a *Babar*; the *Maun*, ten goes to a *Fraſſel*, and forty *Fakea's* is a *Maun*, and ten *Coſſila* is a *Fakea*.

Weights.

Of dry Meaſure, the *Aldeeda* is equal to three *Engliſh* Pints; and of long Meaſure the Cubit, by which they meaſure Cloth and Silk, is equal to our two Foot, or twenty four Inches.

Meaſures

A DESCRIPTION OF THE *TURKISH EMPIRE,* As lying in Asia, Europe, *and* Africa.

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation, Extent, Bounds, and Divisions of the Turkish Empire.

WE have now in our Description of the World travell'd as far to the Westward as the *Red Sea*, the South-West Bounds of *Arabia* and of *Asia* itself, and shall now alter our Course, and take a View of the *Turkish Empire:* Which, as it lies in *Asia*, *Europe*, and *Africa*, we shall treat of it under these three Heads, or rather four; as first of the *Turkish Empire* in general, secondly of *Turkey* in *Asia*, thirdly of *Turkey* in *Africa*, and lastly of *Turkey* in *Europe*; supposing that our Readers will approve of the Order in which we proceed, when they consider that the Reason of our describing that Part of *Africa* which is in the *Turkish* Dominions, and then returning from *Africa* before we had finish'd that Quarter, and proceeding to *Europe*, was in order to have all the *Turkish Empire*, in what Quarter of the World soever, compact and entire; because therein is generally compriz'd the Travels of the Patriarchs, Prophets, our Saviour and his Apostles, and the whole Scene of the Histories of the Old and New Testament, which when begun ought to be also finish'd before we leave it, to make it more compleat.

Bounds of the whole Turkish Empire.

THE whole *Turkish Empire* then, as consisting of the three Parts of it, lying in *Asia*, *Africa*, and *Europe*, may be said to be bounded on the East by the Kingdom of *Persia*, on the North by the *Black Sea* and the River *Neister*, which falls into it, to the Northward of the Influx of the *Danube* into the same Sea; and from that River the Northern Boundary ranges Westward, and separates it from *Poland* by the *Carpathian Mountains*; its Westermost Boundaries are *Hungary*, *Sclavonia*, *Croatia*, the Gulf of *Venice*, and the *Ionian Sea*, and it is bounded on the South by the *Mediterranean* and *Arabia Deserta*.

Turkey in Asia.

BUT, considering the *Turkish Empire* as consisting of the three Parts above-mention'd, *Turkey* in *Asia* extends from Latitude 29 to 35 Degrees North, and from 27 to 46 Degrees of Longitude East from *London*; and is bounded by *Persia* on the East, by the *Black Sea* and *Tartary* on the North, by the *Archipelago* and *Levant* on the West, and by *Arabia Deserta* on the South.

Divisions

IT is divided into Eastern and Western *Turkey*; the Eastern contains, first, *Eyraca Arabick*, or *Chaldea*, (the supposed Situation of Paradise.) 2. *Diarbeck*, or the antient *Mesopotamia*; 3. Part of *Curdistan*, or *Assyria*; 4. *Turcomania*, or the antient *Armenia Major*; and 5. Part of *Georgia*, and *Mengrelia* on the East of the *Black Sea*. Of these in order:

Chalde.

1. *Eyraca Arabick*, or *Chaldea*, is bounded on the North by *Diarbeck*, or antient *Mesopotamia*; on the East by Part of *Persia*; and on the South and West by *Arabia Deserta*. The chief Towns are *Bagdat* and *Bossora*; between which, and near the River *Euphrates*, was once the famous City of *Babylon*, and the Tower of *Babel*, mention'd *Gen.* ii.

Mesopo mia.

2. *Diarbeck*, formerly called *Mesopotamia*, Acts vii. 2. and is called *Padan-Aram*, Gen. xxviii. 2. it is bounded by *Turcomania* and *Curdestan*, or *Assyria*, on the North, by Part of *Persia* on the East, *Chaldea*, or *Eyraca Arabick*, on the South, and *Syria* on the West. The chief Towns are *Diarbeck*, *Orsa*, and *Mosoul*, or *Mausat*, which last is situate near the Place where old *Niniveh* once stood.

Assyria

3. *Assyria*, of which read 2 *Kings* Chap. xviii. now call'd *Curdistan*, the Eastern Part of which belongs to *Persia*, and not hitherto conquer'd by the *Turks*, has Part of *Persia* on the East, *Chaldea* on the South, *Mesopotamia* on the West, and *Turcomania* on the North. The chief Towns are *Betlis*, *Armadia*, and *Sheraszoul*.

Armen Major.

4. *Turcomania*, or *Armenia Major*, hath *Persia* on the East, *Mesopotamia* and *Assyria* towards the South, and *Natolia*, or *Lesser Asia*, on the West and North. The chief Towns are *Erzerom*, *Van*, and *Kars*.

5. THE fifth Division of Eastern *Turkey* in *Asia* contains Part of *Georgia* and *Mengrelia*; the greatest Part of *Georgia* belongs to *Persia*, but *Mengrelia* belongs to the *Turkish* Dominions, and is subdivided into *Mengrelia Proper*, *Iberia*, and *Guriel*. The chief Towns are *Amarchia* and *Gony*.

Weste Turkey

WESTERN *Turkey* in *Asia* contains, 1. Part of *Arabia Petraea*, and *Arabia Deserta*; 2. *Palestine* and *Syria*, and 3. *Natolia* or *Asia Minor*.

Arabia Petræa.

1. *Arabia Petræa* and *Deserta* are (so much of them as lies in *Turkey*) bounded by *Palestine* and *Syria* on the North, by *Mesopotamia* on the East, by another Part of *Arabia Deserta* towards the South, and by the *Red Sea*, and the *Isthmus* that divides it from

from the *Mediterranean* on the Weſt. The chief Towns are *Bozra*, and *Herat*, or *Anna*, and *Petræa*.

Paleſtine and Syria. 2. *Paleſtine* and *Syria* are bounded by *Natolia* and *Turcomania* towards the North, by the *Levant*, or *Mediterranean*, on the Weſt, on the South by *Arabia Petræa*, and ſome Part of *Arabia Deſerta*, and on the Eaſt by *Meſopotamia* and ſome other Parts of *Arabia Deſerta*. Chief Towns are *Jeruſalem*, *Damaſcus*, *Tripoli*, *Aleppo*, and *Standeroon*.

Natolia. 3. *Natolia*, or *Aſia Minor*, in which is the ſeven Churches of *Aſia*, mention'd *Rev.* i. 2. It is bounded on the Eaſt by *Georgia* and the River *Euphrates*, and on the North by the *Thracian Boſphorus* and the *Black Sea*, on the Weſt by the *Archipelago*, and on the South by the *Levant*, or the Eaſtermoſt Part of the *Mediterranean*; and is ſubdivided into four Parts; as

Bythinia. 1. *Natolia Proper*, which is the Weſtern Part of *Natolia*, and contains the antient Provinces of, 1. *Bythinia*; the chief Towns whereof are *Burſa* or *Pruſa*, *Chalcedon*, *Nice*, *Nicomedia*, and *Libuſta*. 2, *Miſia* and *Phrygia*; the chief Towns whereof are *Cyricus*, *Parium*, *Lampſacus*, *Abydus*, *Troy*, *Scamandria*, *Aſſos*, and *Pergamus*. 3. *Æolis*; chief Towns *Elea*, *Myrina*, and *Cumaphocea*. 4. *Ionia*; chief Towns *Smyrna*, *Clazomene*, *Erithræa*, *Colophon*, and *Epheſus*. 5. *Caria*; chief Towns *Miletus*, *Heraclea*, *Borigba*, *Mylaſa*, *Stratonice*, and *Alinda*. 6. *Lydia*, or *Mœnia*; chief Towns *Sardis*, *Philadelphia*, *Thyatira*, *Laodecia*, (four of the ſeven Churches.) 7. *Phrygia Major*; chief Towns, *Cotiæum*, *Coloſæ*, *Hierapolis*, *Prymneſia*, and *Tiberopolis*. 8. *Galatia*; chief Towns *Germe*, *Ancyra*, and *Amurium*. 9. *Paphlagonia*; chief Towns *Heraclea*, *Amaſtris*, *Claudiopolis*, *Tripoli*, or *Tenthramia*, and *Anciſus*.

Amaſia. 2. *Amaſia* contains the four Provinces following, 1. *Pontus Galaticus*; chief Towns *Amaſia*, *Themiſcyra*, and *Comana*. 2. *Pontus Ptolemoniac*; chief Towns *Tocat* and *Sebaſtia*. 3. *Pontus Cappadocia*; chief Towns *Trapezond*, *Pharnacia*, and *Cerauſus*.

Cappadocia

Aladulia. 3. *Aladulia* contains *Cappadocia*, and Part of *Armenia Minor*; chief Towns *Suvas*, *Caiſar*, and *Nyſſa*.

Caramania 4. *Caramania* contains the Provinces of, 1. *Lyſia*; chief Towns *Telmeſſus*, or *Patara*, *Xanthus*, or *Myra*, *Olympus*, or *Phaſelis*. 2. *Pamphylia*; chief Towns *Atralia*, *Perga*, and *Syde*. 3. *Piſidia*; chief Towns *Sangalaſſus*, *Antioch-Piſidia*, and *Temeſſus*. 4. *Lycaonia*; chief Towns *Lyſtra*, *Derbe*, and *Iconium*, (of *Lycaonia*, *Lyſtra*, *Derbe*, and *Iconium* we read *Acts* xiv. verſe 1 and 8) 5. *Cilicia*; chief Towns, *Tarſus*, (ſee *Acts* xxi. 39.) alſo *Iſſus*, now call'd *Aiazzo*.

Although ſome Geographers reckon all the Coaſt of *Barbary* to be in the *Turkiſh Empire*, yet as their Princes ſeem to be almoſt independant, and ſo far from being govern'd by the Grand Seignior that his Orders are very little regarded, we therefore ſhall confine *Turkey* in *Africa* to *Egypt* only, as being more immediately under his Influence.

Turkey in Africa.

Egypt. *Egypt* is divided into three Parts, viz. *Upper*, *Middle*, and *Lower Egypt*. *Upper Egypt*, formerly call'd *Thebes*, from its famous Capital of that Name, is bounded on the North by *Middle Egypt*, on the Eaſt by the *Red Sea*, on the South by ſome Mountains that divide it from *Nubia* and *Abyſſinia*, and on the Weſt by the Deſarts of *Barca*.

Upper.

Middle. *Middle Egypt* is bounded on the Weſt by the ſaid Deſarts of *Barca*, on the South by *Upper Egypt*, on the Eaſt by the *Red Sea*, and on the North by *Lower Egypt*.

Lower. *Lower Egypt* has the *Mediterranean* on the North, the *Iſthmus* of *Suez* on the Eaſt, *Middle Egypt* on the South, and the Deſarts of *Barca* on the Weſt.

Turkey in Europe. *Turkey* in *Europe* (excluſive of that Part of the *Turkiſh* Dominions that is in *Aſia*) is bounded on the Eaſt with *Little Tartary*, *Crim*, and the *Euxian* or *Black Sea*, and the *Propontis*; and on the North with the River *Neiſter* and the *Carpathian Mountains*, which ſeparate it from *Poland*; its Weſtern Boundaries are *Sclavonia*, *Hungary*, *Croatia*, and the Gulf of *Venice*, or the *Adriatick Sea*, and on the South it is bounded by the *Mediterranean Sea*; and is divided into ten Parts or Countries, *viz.* 1. *Greece*, 2. *Romania*, 3. *Bulgaria*, 4. *Servia*, 5. *Boſnia*, 6. *Raguſa*, 7. *Walachia*, 8. *Moldavia*, 9. *Beſſarabia*, and 10. *Budzack*, and *Oczacow Tartary*; and as *Little Tartary* and *Crim Tartary* are reckon'd a Part of the *Turkiſh Empire*, as being govern'd by the Porte, we ſhall include them in this Deſcription.

And, firſt, as to *Greece* it is divided into ſeven Provinces, 1. *Macedon*, 2. *Theſſaly*, 3. *Achaia*, 4. *Epirus*, 5. *Albania*, 6. the *Morea*, or *Peloponneſus*, and 7. the Iſlands near the Coaſt of *Greece* in the *Ionian Sea*, and the *Ægean Sea*, or *Archipelago*; of which in order.

Macedon. 1. *Macedon*, or *Macedonia*, is bounded on the South by the *Archipelago* and Part of *Theſſaly*, on the Weſt with *Albania*, on the North with *Romania*, and on the Eaſt and South-Eaſt with ſome Bays of the *Ægean Sea*, or *Archipelago*. Chief Towns are *Theſſalonica*, or *Salonichi*, *Amphipolis* now *Emboli*, *Conteſſa*, *Cavalla*, *Pella*, and *Stagyra*.

Theſſaly. 2. *Theſſaly*, now call'd *Janna*, has *Macedon* on the North, the Gulf of *Solonichi* on the Eaſt, *Achaia*, or *Livadia*, on the South, and *Epirus* on the Weſt. The chief Towns are *Lariſſa*, now called *Aſababa*, with *Janna*, *Pharſalus*, *Pegaſa*, now call'd *Volo*, and *Armiro*.

Achaia. 3. *Achaia*, called alſo *Hellas* and *Grecia Proper*, but now known by the Name of *Livadia*; it has *Theſſaly* on the North, the *Ægean Sea* and the *Euripan Streight*, which ſeparates it from *Negroponte*, on the Eaſt, the Gulf of *Lepanto* and the *Morea* on the South, and the *Ionian Sea* on the Weſt. Chief Towns are *Thebes*, *Livadia*, *Platæa*, *Athens*, *Marathon*, *Delphi*, and *Lepanto*, now call'd *Epactus*.

Epirus. 4. *Epirus*, or *Canina*; whoſe Northern Bound is *Albania*, the Eaſtern is *Theſſaly* and *Achaia*, which alſo extends to the Southward of it, and the Weſtern is the *Ionian Sea*. The chief Towns are *Chimera*, *Parga*, and *Larta*, by ſome call'd *Ambraica*.

Albania. 5. *Albania*, by ſome call'd *Arnaut*, is bounded on the North by the Mountains of *Argentura* and *Servia*, on the Weſt by the Gulf of *Venice*, on the South by *Epirus*, and on the Eaſt by *Macedon*. The chief Towns are *Scutari*, now call'd *Iſcador*, *Alleſio*, or *Liſſus*, *Dolſigno*, *Croya*, *Durazzo*, the *Dyrrachium* of the *Romans*, and *La Velona*.

Morea. 6. The *Morea*, or *Peloponneſus*, is bounded by the Gulf of *Lepanto*, which ſeparates it from *Achaia* on the North, and by the *Archipelago* on the Eaſt, the *Mediterranean*, or Sea of *Candia*, on the South, and the *Ionian Sea* on the Weſt. The chief Towns are *Patros*, *Clarenza*, *Modon*, or *Mutum*, *Coron*, *Navarinum*, *Belvedere*, *Languanica*, the antient *Olympia*; *Miſitra*, the antient *Lacedemon*, *Argos*, and *Corinth*, now call'd *Coranto*.

Iſlands of Greece. 7. The principal Iſlands in the *Ionian Sea*, near the Coaſt of *Greece*, are *Corfu*, *Cephalonia*, *Zant*, *Pachſu*, *Antipachſu*, *St. Maura*, *Ithica*, and *Columbus*. And more to the Southward, in the *Mediterranean*, are the Iſlands of *Sapienza*, *Serigo*, and the large Iſland of *Candia*, or *Crete*; and in the *Ægean Sea* the *Cyclades Iſlands*, viz. *Milo*, *Pario*, *Naxia*, *Margo*, *Delos*, *Micone*, *Andros*, and *Thera*, formerly *Caliſte*, *Lemnos*, and ſome other ſmall Iſlands, and *Negroponte*, which can ſcarce be call'd an Iſland.

Romania or Thracia 2. The ſecond Diviſion is *Romania*, call'd in antient Hiſtory *Thrace* or *Thracia*; it is bounded on the North by a Ridge of Mountains call'd *Hemus*, which ſeparates it from *Bulgaria*, and on the Weſt by *Macedonia*; it is bounded on the South by the *Archipelago*, and on the Eaſt by the *Propontis* and the *Black Sea*. Chief Towns are *Janicoli*, *Philippipoli*, *Adrianople*, *Trejaneple*, *Conſtantiaopole*, *Galata Galipoli*, *Seſtos*, *Selivera*, and *Rudiſto*.

3. *Bul-*

Bulgaria. 3. *Bulgaria* is bounded on the North by the *Danube*, which divides it from *Walachia* and *Moldavia*, and on the East by the *Black Sea*, by *Romania* on the South, and by *Servia* on the West. Chief Towns are *Sophia*, *Siliſtria*, *Nicopolis*, *Ternoon*, *Verna*, and *Meſembria*.

Servia. 4. *Servia* is bounded on the North and East by the Rivers *Save* and *Danube*, on the West by *Boſnia*; from whence it is divided by a Branch of the River *Save*, and on the South by *Macedon*. Chief Towns are *Belgrade*, (now in Poſſeſſion of the Emperor,) *Semendria*, *Widin*, *Niſſa*, *Scopia*, and *Novibazar*.

Boſnia. 5. *Boſnia* is bounded on the North by the River *Save*, by which it is divided from *Sclavonia*; by *Servia* on the East, from which it is ſeparated from the ſame River; on the South by *Dalmatia*, and on the West by *Croatia*.

Raguſa. 6. *Raguſa Republick*, on the Coaſt of *Dalmatia*, is partly Continent and partly Iſlands, and bounded on the North by the Bay of *Narenza* and the Iſland *Leſina*, and towards the East by the Land of *Dalmatia*, and by the Gulf of *Venice*, or the *Adriatick Sea*, on the South. The chief Towns are *Raguſa* and *Stagno*.

Walachia. 7. *Walachia* is bounded on the North and East by *Tranſilvania* and *Moldavia*, and on the West by *Tranſilvania* and *Hungary*, and by the *Danube* on the South. Chief Towns are *Targowiſch*, *Buchareſt*, *Braſchow*, *Rebnick*, *Alauth*, and *Pedt*.

Moldavia. 8. *Moldavia* is bounded by *Podolia* on the North, from whence it is ſeparated by the River *Neiſter*, a Part of the Northermoſt Bounds of all the *Turkiſh Empire*; by *Beſſarabia* on the East, on the South by the *Danube*, and on the West by *Tranſilvania* and *Walachia*. Chief Towns are *Jaſſy*, *Sezowa*, *Targonod*, *Chotzin*, and *Vaſleye*.

Beſſarabia. 9. *Beſſarabia* is bounded on the North by River *Neiſter*, which divides it from *Podolia*, and on the East by the *Black Sea*, and by *Moldavia* on the West. Chief Towns are *Tekin*, *Bialogrod*, *Kelia*, *Nova*, and *Kelia Vechia*.

Budziak. 10. *Budziak* and *Ozacow Tartars* is bounded on the North by *Podolia*, by *Little Tartary* on the East, by the *Black Sea* on the South, and *Beſſarabia* on the West. Here are no Towns, the Inhabitants living in Tents and Hutts, and moving from Place to Place like other *Tartars*.

To theſe we may add *Little Tartary* and *Crim Tartary*, the former of which is bounded on the North by *Muſcovy*, on the East by *Don Coſſacks* and the Sea of *Palus Meotis*, and on the South by an *Iſthmus* and two Bays, that ſeparate it from the Peninſula of *Crim Tartary*, and by the River *Boriſthenes* on the West. Chief Towns are *Stelnitz* and *Precop*; as for *Aſoff*, it may be reckon'd in *Tartary* in *Aſia*, being on the East Side of the River *Don* or *Tanais*. *Little Tartary.*

Crim Tartary, antiently *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, is a Peninſula almoſt ſurrounded by the *Black Sea*. Chief Towns are *Baccaſſara*, *Crim*, and *Caffa*. *Crim Tartary.*

CHAP. II.

Of the Seas and Rivers that are in or adjoining to the Turkiſh Empire.

Seas of Turkey. THE Seas which may properly be ſaid to belong to *Turkey* are the *Euxian*, or *Black Sea*. The *Palus Meotis*, which runs into the *Black Sea* by the Streights of *Caffa*. The *Propontis*, or Sea of *Marmora*, between the *Black Sea* and the *Archipelago*. The *Archipelago*, the *Ionian Sea* on the Weſt Coaſt of *Greece*, and the moſt Eaſterly Part of the *Mediterranean Sea*, commonly known by the Name of the *Levant*.

Black Sea. The *Black Sea*, call'd by ſome *Pontus Euxinus*, or the *Euxian Sea*; it lies on the North Side of *Natolia*, or *Leſſer Aſia*, and has a Communication with the *Mediteranean* by a Streight call'd the *Boſphorus*, and running thence by *Conſtantinople* into the *Propontis*, or Sea of *Marmora*, it paſſes by the *Dardanel* into the *Archipelago*, and thence falls into the *Mediterranean* on each Side of the Iſland of *Candia*, or *Crete*; *Pontus Euxinus* is contain'd between 42 and 46 of North Latitude, and between 29 and 44 Degrees of Longitude Eaſt from *London*.

It is ſaid that the Reaſon of this being called the *Black Sea*, is the frequent Tempeſts that are obſerved here, which they that have not been any further abroad than to trade within the Limits of this Sea, think they are not ſo violent any where elſe. Theſe Notions, imbibed by *Ovid*, and other Poets that lived before Navigation arrived to the Perfection it is now, and having the Report of ſeveral Shipwrecks happening in theſe Seas, thoſe Notions being improved and rendred diſmal by the Flights of thoſe Poets, who had no real Knowledge of, or Correſpondence with the other Parts of the Known World; and theſe Poetical Fictions and Dangers, magnified by the Art of Poetry, being now introduced into the Schools of Chriſtians as well as others, as Principles for the Pupils to draw Inferences from and improve themſelves by, 'tis no great Wonder that *Pontus Euxinus* has been really thought, and conſequently acquired the Name of the *Black* or *Terrible Sea*; although it is obſerved that neither the Water in this Sea, nor the Sands upon its Shore, differ in Colour from thoſe of other Seas. If the *Muſcovite*'s Schemes had ſucceeded, who, when in Poſſeſſion of *Aſoff*, where the River *Don*, or *Tanais*, falls into *Palus Meotis*, form'd a Deſign to participate of the Trade of this *Black Sea*, perhaps the Improvements that he might have made in making the Navigation here more practicable, might have obliterated this Name of *Black* or *Terrible*; but as he was obliged by the laſt Peace to ſurrender that Place, the ſole Trade of that Sea is in the Hand of the *Turk*, whoſe Navigation continuing much in the ſame State as formerly, this Sea continues to them to be a black or Terrible Sea.

Palus Meotis lies to the Northward of the *Black Sea*, and has a Communication with it only by the Streights of *Caffa*; its Extent is from *Crim Tartary* to *Aſoff* North Eaſt, and has *Little Tartary* on the North-Weſt, and *Kobau Tartary* on the South-Eaſt; it is about ſixty Leagues in Length, and forty in Breadth; and now, ſince the Surrender of *Aſoff* to the *Turk*, he is ſole Maſter of both the *Black Sea* and *Palus Meotis*. *Palus Meotis.*

The *Propontis*, or Sea of *Marmora*, lies South-Weſt from the *Black Sea*, and by a Paſſage between it and the *Black Sea*, call'd the *Boſphorus*, and alſo between it and the *Archipelago*, by another Paſſage, call'd the *Helleſpont*, there is a Communication maintain'd between the *Black Sea* and the *Archipelago*; the *Helleſpont* is about a League over, but the *Boſphorus* of *Thrace* is ſcarce a Mile broad: The City of *Conſtantinople* is ſituate at the South End of the *Boſphorus*, where it falls into the *Propontis* on the *European* Side: Here is ſuppoſed to be the fineſt Harbour in the World, being a Baſon of ſeven or eight Miles on the City Side, and as much on that Side towards the Suburbs, *Propontis.*

harbs, and good Ships may anchor in any Part of it; but is expoſed to the Eaſterly Wind, which though it blows there but ſeldom, yet when it comes, eſpecially in the Night-time, it cauſes great Confuſion among the Sea-faring People, and this Wind alſo affects the Seraglio itſelf, which ſtands juſt at the Entrance of the Port, on the Point of the Peninſula of *Thrace*.

The *Propontis*, being by ſome call'd the Sea of *Marmora*, is occaſion'd by an Iſland of the ſame Name lying in it. This Sea is about forty Leagues in Length, and fifteen or twenty broad. At the Entrance of the *Propontis*, going from the *Archipelago*, *rdanels.* are two Caſtles, one on each Side, call'd the *Dardanels*; ſo call'd, as ſuppoſed, from *Dardane*, an antient City not far from thence; there is at each Caſtle a Platform of Guns, but the Sea is ſo wide at this Entrance, that a Ship may ſail in or out, and not come within the Reach of the Guns from either Side; but further up, where the Channel is not a League over, ſtand two other Forts, one on the *European* Side, where *Feſtos* ſtood, and the other on the *Aſian* Side, where *Abydos* ſtood, and theſe two command the Paſſage by reaſon of the Narrowneſs of the Channel.

To the Southward of theſe Streights, and between *Greece* on the Weſt, and *Natolia*, or *Leſſer Aſia* on the Eaſt, are the numerous Iſlands of the *Archipelago*, or *Egean Sea*, of the moſt material of *he Archi-* which we ſhall treat in diſtinct Chapters.

n Sea. The *Ionian Sea* on the Coaſt of *Epirus*, on the Weſt of *Greece*, and at the Entrance of the Gulf of *Venice*, or *Adriatick Sea*, and to the Southward of *Greece*, the *Archipelago* and Part of *Natolia*, is the *Levant*, or Eaſtermoſt Part of the *Mediterranean*, call'd by the *Turks* the *White Sea*, but for what reaſon we know not; but however, as including that he ſtiles himſelf Lord of the *Black*, *Red*, and *White Seas*, the *Archipelago* and *Ionian Seas* being in this Caſe reckon'd a Part of the *Mediterranean* or *White Sea*.

Red Sea. We have given a Deſcription of the *Red Sea* before, which added to the above-mention'd, includes all the Seas belonging to the *Turkiſh Empire*; we ſhall next treat of the principal Rivers, and firſt of thoſe in *Aſia*.

Rivers in Turky The principal Rivers of *Turkey* in *Aſia* are the *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, both of which riſe in the Mountains of *Armenia*, but in different and far diſ-*Euphrates.* tant Sources. *Euphrates* firſt runs croſs *Armenia* from Eaſt to Weſt, and then turns South, and divides *Armenia* from *Natolia*, or it may be ſaid divides the greater from the *Leſſer Aſia*; from thence it paſſes between *Syria* and *Meſopotamia*, and gliding ſtill to the Southward by *Chaldea*, and meeting with the *Tygris*, and running together for ſome ſpace, they again ſeparate, and become two Rivers, the Eaſtermoſt *Gihon*, and the other *Piſon*, and by theſe two Streams they fall into the *Perſian Gulf*, or Gulf of *Baſſora*, in the thirtieth Degree of North Latitude.

Tygris. *Tygris* is ſo call'd from its rapid Motion, and, as above, riſes in the Mountains of *Armenia*, but not ſo far Northward as *Euphrates*; it runs generally South, or ſomewhat Eaſterly, and divides *Meſopotamia* from *Aſſyria*, and runs by *Bagdat*, (which ſome ſay is Old *Babel*, but that is a Miſtake; for *Babel* is further to the Southward,) and joining *Euphrates*, runs, as deſcribed in that River, into the *Perſian Gulf*.

There are no remarkable Rivers in that Part of *Turkey* which lies in *Africa*, but only the River *Nile*, which riſes in a Lake in the Kingdom of *Nile in Africa.* *Goyama* in *Africa*, in Latitude fourteen Degrees North, and when it has run croſs that Kingdom and *Ethiopia*, it runs North through the Middle of *Egypt*, and empties itſelf into the *Mediterranean* by two grand Channels, the Weſtermoſt call'd *Roſetta*, and the Eaſtermoſt *Damieta*, though Travellers affirm that there are ſeveral ſmall Channels. This River is remarkable for two Things, the firſt is the prodigious Cataracts or Falls, which renders Navigation impracticable above them, or to the Upper or more Southerly Parts of the River; and the other is the annual Overflowing of its Banks; which has for ſo many Ages been thought a Miracle, or rather a Prodigy, though it proceeds from natural Cauſes, as we have inſtanc'd in the Deſcription of *Tonquin*, Chap. I. whoſe Rivers, as well as others that riſe between the Tropicks, are affected with the ſame Property of annually overflowing of their Banks in the ſame Manner as the *Nile* does; but we ſhall treat further upon this Subject when we give a particular Account of *Egypt*, or *Turkey* in *Africa*; and in the mean Time proceed upon the Deſcription of the Rivers in *Turkey*; the chief of thoſe of *Turkey* in *Europe* are,

1. *Danube*, which riſes near a Village call'd *Tonc Eſchingen* in *Suabia*, a Province of *Germany*, and runs by *Ratisbon*, *Vienna*, *Presburg*, *Buda*, and *Belgrade*, and paſſing Eaſtward, it ſeparates *Servia* from *Wallachia*, and afterwards paſſes between *Moldavia* and *Bulgaria*, and falls into the *Black Sea* by ſix Channels, after a Courſe of above a thouſand Miles; it is generally rapid, notwithſtanding that it is ſo broad, and has three Cataracts or dangerous Falls in it. *Danube.*

The *Neiſter* riſes in and proceeds from a Lake not far from *Leopold* in *Poland*, and runs Eaſtward between *Moldavia* and *Podolia*, or, which is the ſame, between *Chriſtendom* and *Turkey* in *Europe*, and falls into the *Black Sea* a little to the Northward of the moſt Northerly Mouth of the *Danube*. *Neiſter.*

The *Bog River* riſes in *Podolia*, and paſſing through *Budziack Tartary*, falls into the *Boriſthenes*, a little before it falls into the *Black Sea*. *Bog.*

The *Boriſthenes*, by ſome called the *Niper*, riſes in the Province of *Bielki* in *Muſcovy*, from whence it runs Weſtward by *Smolensko* in *Poland*, and then turning to the Southward, ſeparates *Budziack Tartary* from *Little Tartary*, and falls into the *Black Sea* about a hundred Miles to the Northward of the *Danube*. *Boriſthenes*

CHAP. III.

Gives an Account of the Original of the Turks, *alſo of their Genius and Temper; with their Perſons, Habits, Diet, Liquors, Diverſions, and Ceremonies.*

Tartary in Scythia. It is agreed by moſt Geographers and Hiſtorians that the preſent *Tartary* is the antient *Scythia*, and that the *Turks* had their Original from thence; but the preſent *Tartary* is diſtinguiſh'd from the antient *Scythia* in this, that *Tartary* ſeems to be confin'd to thoſe Parts of the World that lie to the Northward of *China*, *India*, &c. but *Scythia* takes in that Tract of Land contain'd on the North

of both *Asia* and *Europe*, or to the Northward of the *Caspian* and *Euxian Seas*. There was the *Turcæ* a *Scythian* Nation, mention'd both by *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela*, but they have not inform'd us what Part of *Scythia* they possess'd. However, this we know, that the *Turks* were but little talk'd of till the ninth Century; when in the Year 844 compleat, which was the ninth Century current, they plunder'd *Georgia*, and penetrated as far as *Armenia Major*, where they then fix'd themselves, and from thence it was that this Country was call'd *Turcomania*.

A Revolution.

About the Year of *Christ* 1000 the *Saracen* Caliph of *Babylon* prevailing upon the Sultan of *Persia*, and reducing him very low, the Sultan made an Alliance with the *Turks*, who sent three thousand Men to his Assistance under the Command of *Tangrolipix*; by which Means the Sultan obtain'd a signal Victory; but *Tangrolipix* not being rewarded according to his Merit for that Service, or at least not according to his Expectation, it occasion'd a Difference; upon which a War commenc'd, wherein *Tangrolipix* defeated the *Persian* Sultan, and kill'd him in the Field, and by that Conquest commenc'd Sultan of *Persia* himself; but the *Turks*, who were *Pagans* at their coming into *Persia*, had convers'd so long with the *Saracens* as to incline to their Religion, and *Tangrolipix* on his Accession to the *Persian* Throne commenc'd Mahometan, without which Compliance he could not well have accomplish'd his Conquest, and establish'd his Empire; but having done that, and thinking himself now almost capable of any Enterprize, march'd against the Caliph of *Babylon*, defeated and kill'd him; and now thinking no Undertaking too difficult, he attempted the Conquest of *Arabia*, but being repuls'd and quite disappointed, he turn'd his Arms and Forces towards *Natolia*, or *Lesser Asia*, and made a considerable Progress in the Conquest of that Country.

Why call'd *Ottoman*

The *Turks* being now Sovereigns of *Persia*, continued so till the Year 1260, when another Swarm of *Scythians*, or *Tartars*, invaded *Persia*, and making themselves Masters of *Persia*, *Assyria*, and the *Lesser Asia*, reduced the *Turks* to a very low Ebb; and at the same Time there were two great *Turkish* Families in *Persia*, to wit, the *Ogycian* and the *Selzuccian*; of the latter was *Tangrolipix*, who with the whole Family was entirely suppress't and eradicated; but from the *Ogycian* descended *Ottoman*, who was an enterprizing Prince, and from very small Beginnings restored his Family and the *Turkish Empire* to their former Grandeur, making himself Master of *Nice*, *Persia*, and a great Part of *Lesser Asia*; and from him it is that the Empire obtain'd the Name of *Ottoman*, and to this Day the Grand Seignior deduces his Pedigree from this Prince.

Genius and Temper

The *Turks* do not seem to aim at any Improvements either in Husbandry or in Arts and Sciences, and although some Part of the *Turkish Empire* is now what was once the famous *Greece*, yet the Spirit of the People is quite degenerated from what it formerly was; a sluggish useless Life is now thought preferable to Learning and Industry, and they had now rather be in the *Haram* among the Women, than in a College among the Students; and as an Effect of this Indolence, *Natolia*, one of the most fertile Countries in the World, lies in a great measure uncultivated, and several Provinces of it, which were exceeding populous and fruitful, are now become barren Deserts, remarkable only for the Ruins of famous Places, and particularly for the once noted seven Churches of *Asia*, mention'd *Rev.* i. 11. of the former flourishing and present decay'd Condition of which, see Chap. XVII. following.

Their Indolence forms in them a kind of an Independent and Incommunicable Principle; for as the Vulgar scarce trouble their Heads about the Affairs of their own Nation, much less about those of others, their passive Spirits are so well adapted to submit to Arbitrary Government, that it is no Wonder that *A Slave in Turkey* is so compleat a Slave as now to become a Proverb. It is observed that sometimes five or six of them will sit smoaking together, and scarce a Word be spoke among them in a Quarter of an Hour's Time, and then seldom any of their Sentiments in Matters of State is the Subjects of Discourse; and though some impute this to their Ignorance or Indolence, yet others think that it is owing to the Restraints they lie under from such Discourse; and indeed the two different Opinions are easily reconciled, for if one Generation after another be deprived of the Liberty of Speaking of what is done, the Consequence must terminate in profound Ignorance, the Path-way to Slavery and Arbitrary Government; the dreadful Thoughts of which may be thought sufficient to induce the People of any free Nation to defend and preserve their Native Privileges.

Acute in Trade.

They are very acute in Trade, and will carry long Accounts in their Heads, without the Help of a Book, their Arithmetick, so far as they use it, being mostly natural, and the Effect of Custom or Necessity more than of Education. They are such Enemies to Exercise, that when they see a *European* or other Stranger walking backwards and forwards in a House or Garden, purely for the sake of walking, they look upon the Exercise as ridiculous, and the People that perform it as crazy or distracted; or if they are obliged to spend some Time, they are rather willing to loll or sit cross-legg'd a long Time than move or walk; and when there is any Concourse of them, either by Appointment or Accident, they seem to have no more Conversation than Animals of a lower Species, which only consists in the Satisfaction of sitting or standing near together.

Drinking

Their Law forbids Wine, but their Consciences can now and then dispense with such a Breach of *Mahomet*'s Injunctions, if it can be done privately, and especially among those of a superior Rank, who think it no great Crime to drink even to Excess, provided they can in their Liquor behave inoffensively, and not expose or discover themselves to others.

Charity.

Their Charity is very extensive, and in itself commendable; however some Travellers, that cannot deny the Fact, would deprive them of the Honour of it, by saying it is done for Ostentation; but let the Inducement be what it will, their Charity is such that when they see Misfortunes but approaching a Person, they take care if possible timely to prevent it, and where the Misfortunes have gone higher, and the poor Debtor is confined, they at certain Times visit the Prisoners, pay their Debts, and procure their Discharge, though with some Regard had to the preceding Conduct of the Prisoner.

Fires.

And in Cases of Fire, which are very frequent among those Timber Buildings, they make the Loss a common Case, and the Suffering of one is reliev'd by the Contribution of the rest.

They repair Highways and erect Fountains and Cisterns at their own Expence, for the Conveniency of Travellers, and build Caravansera's to entertain them upon the Road, as in some other Eastern Countries; and some, as an Effect of extraordinary Devotion, build Sheds by the Way Side, as intermediate Places for the weary Traveller to refresh themselves. Their Charity sometimes extends to Animals and Plants, they will purchase the Liberty of imprison'd Birds, feed others, and religiously water certain Trees which want it, which in that hot Country is reckon'd an Act of great Charity.

Quarels.

In their Quarels they commonly supply the Place of Blows with Words; they seldom fight, but conclude their irreconcileable Differences and Disputes with

with accompliſh'd Scolding, and a Complication of old or new invented Curſes, with which they put an End to the Quarrel, though it do not put an End to the Difference.

They treat all Religions but their own, and all Perſons but themſelves, with ſo much Scorn and Contempt, that they allow or eſteem no Body Holy, Wiſe, or Valiant but themſelves, and reckon all others Reprobates, not entitled to the good Things of this World or the next; and hence they look upon it as a Duty to endeavour to extend their Conqueſts all over the Face of the whole Earth, as believing that if they die fighting for the Cauſe of *Mahomet*, they are thereby entitled to a Seat in Paradiſe.

Predeſtination. They have ſuch an abſolute Dependance upon Predeſtination, that that alone ſupports them under all Apprehenſions of Danger; if any of the Family, or even a Slave, is infected with the Plague, they attend the Sick with the ſame Freedom as if the Diſtemper was not contagious; and by the ſame Principle their Courage is ſupported in the Field of Battle as firmly, believing that the Time of every Man's Death is ſo irrevocably fix'd, that no Dangers can forward it, nor can any Endeavours for Security retard or prevent it; if they run into the moſt apparent Danger, and with the utmoſt Precipitation and Raſhneſs, and be thereby cut off, the Survivors believe that they were appointed to die at that Time, and that ſuch an unwary Accident was appointed as the Inſtrument to draw them to it. And yet, however previouſly fortified with ſuch Reſolutions, as the Effect of this Doctrine, it is ſometimes made ſubſervient to that innate Principle of Self-Preſervation, and they will ſometimes endeavour to eſcape from an Enemy or other Danger for the Safety of their Lives.

Perſons. The *Turks* are generally well-proportion'd Men, their Women beautiful and agreeable, which may eaſily be expected to be the natural Conſequence of the beautiful *Georgians*, and the fair *Circaſſians*; being ſo frequently tranſplanted hither by ſelling them in their own Markets to the *Turks*, who keep them for Breeders, by which Means, and Proceſs of Time, the *Turks* have acquir'd a Generation of handſome and beautiful People.

Habits. The common Men ſhave their Heads, but wear their Beards long; only thoſe in the military Service and Seraglio wear Whiskers. The Men wear Turbants upon their Heads, being long Pieces of Linnen wound about their Heads, but the ſame kind, though not ſo extravagantly large, being often to be ſeen in *London*, we need not to enlarge upon a Deſcription of them; but they reſerve to themſelves the Prerogative (as they call it) of wearing white Turbants, the *Greek*, *Armenian*, and other Chriſtians not being allow'd to wear that Colour, how far ſoever they may ſubmit to temporize with the Dreſs of the Nation. They wear a Pair of Drawers cloſe before and behind, and which Way ſoever Nature has Occaſion for a Diſcharge, they equally let down their Drawers, and ſit down to perform the Office. Their Stockings are faſten'd to their Drawers; they wear a Shirt with white Sleeves, but no Collar or Wriſtbands, and upon this a kind of a Veſt ſomething like our late Banyans uſed in *London*; it comes down to their Heels, and is cloſe to the Arms and Wriſts; they tie it with a Saſh or Leather Girdle, and over it, when they are dreſt, they have a ſort of a looſe Gown, ſhorter than the Veſt, being red, blue, or green of the Outſide, and lined with Fur; their Stockings are Cloth, and inſtead of Shoes they have Slippers, with narrow piqued Toes, made of yellow *Turkey* Leather, which they put off at the Entrance of any Houſe, eſpecially of a Superior, by way of Compliment, as we in *England* do our Hats; they carry their Purſe and Handkerchief, and ſuch other Things, in their Boſom, which we commonly carry in our Pockets, and have their Poniards in their Girdles.

The *Grecians* are more numerous in ſeveral Parts of *Turkey* than the Mahometans, but endeavour to imitate their Maſters as far as they will allow them, ſome Colours (as white above-mention'd) being forbidden them; but you may know a Chriſtian from a *Turk* if you ſee but his Head and his Feet.

The Women's Dreſs is not much different from that of the Men, only inſtead of a Turbant they wear a ſtiffned Cap, with four Points or Corners on the Top of it; their Hair hangs down their Backs in Treſſes; and when they go abroad they are ſo veil'd or muffled up with Linnen Cloaths or Handkerchiefs, that nothing appears but their Eyes.

Food. The *Turks*, as well as other *Aſiaticks*, feed moſtly upon Rice, but they have alſo a high-ſeaſon'd ſtrong Broth, made of ſeveral kinds of Meat cut to Pieces, which Broth they call *Shorba*, they mix it with Rice; the Meat they intend to roaſt they firſt cut in Pieces, about as big as a Man's Hand, and skewer it together, with Garlick, Onions, and other Seaſoning between the Pieces; this they call *Keback*, it is very reliſhing Victuals: But the moſt genteel Diſh among the better Sort is *Pilo*, which is Rice made of Broth boil'd with Fowls and Meat, till all the Liquor is evaporated. The common People live pretty much upon Melons and raw Cucumbers at the Seaſon, and theſe they never dreſs at all. Inſtead of Bread they make Cakes of Meal, and bake them upon the Hearth; they are either temperate in Living, or elſe, like the Fox and the Grapes, they deſpiſe what they cannot obtain; for they neither enjoy the Variety that a great many Chriſtians do, nor do they ſeem to deſire ſo much as to imitate it. They do not effect new Faſhions, either in what they drink or wear, for their Faſhions continue the ſame through many, if not all, Generations.

Liquor. Their common Drink is Water, but they uſe Sherbets and other cooling Liquors, which is thought a ſufficient Entertainment for a Friend, eſpecially if to that they add Coffee, Tobacco, and Sweetmeats; and ſometimes they moiſten their Tobacco with Perfumes; if they drink Wine, it is privately about Bed-time. But though they do not ſeem to affect great Variety of voluptuous Living, yet what they fall ſhort in Quality, they ſeem to make up in Quantity; for they devour much more Victuals than we do, eſpecially Rice; and though they do not drink Plenty of Wine, yet they take pleaſure in eating Opium, even to Intoxication, and in moſt of the Cuſtoms they uſe, in eating one Thing, and abſtaining from another, their chief Authority is Cuſtom or Preſcription; they eat one Thing and refrain from another becauſe their Progenitors did the ſame.

At Victuals they uſually ſit in an open Hall, on a *Sopha* or Bench, about five Foot broad, and a Foot and a half high, it is cover'd with Carpets and Cuſhions to lean on; here they ſpread a Piece of Leather when they eat, and ſet little wooden Tables about half a Foot high before them, upon which they ſet a Bowl of Rice, with a Ladle, Meat, and Plates; which being done, the Maſter ſays ſome Words in Form of a Grace, beginning *In the Name of God Almighty, merciful*, &c. and one Napkin of blue Linnen ſerves all the whole Company.

Salutation. When they would ſalute one another, they expreſs it by inclining the Head a little, and clapping the Right Hand to the Breaſt; but when they ſalute a Perſon of Diſtinction, they ſtoop ſo low as to take up the Hem of his Veſt and kiſs it.

Lodging. The *Sopha*, or elſe the Floor itſelf, ſerves them to lie upon as well as to eat upon: A Slave comes

at

at Bed-time, and ſpreads a Quilt or Mattreſs for every Perſon, leaving a Pillow, and ſome Cloaths for a Covering; and when they riſe in the Morning, he comes again, and rolls up all that he brought, and puts them in the Cupboard from whence he had them, to lie till he has Occaſion for them again.

Games and Diverſions.

THE *Turks* play at Draughts and Cheſs for Paſtime, but not for Sums of Money; and thus they think they comply with the true Intent of the Law, which prohibits Gaming upon the Account of the Quarrels it creates, as ſuppoſing there will not be much Quarrelling about the Game when there is no Hazard of loſing. Their Country Muſick is not at all entertaining to *Europeans*; but their Dervices have a kind of a religious Muſick, to which they will dance ſo zealouſly, that before they leave off they are ready to drop down. Here are Dancing-Girls, as in *Perſia* and *India*, with whom they ſometimes entertain themſelves.

Exerciſes.

THEIR manly Exerciſes are ſhooting at a Mark, and that both with Fire-arms and Bows and Arrows, and in almoſt all Poſtures. They alſo learn to dart with a Staff, with which they attack and purſue one another, and ſometimes give one another dangerous Bruiſes.

Travelling.

THEIR Way of travelling with the Caravans is the ſame as in *Perſia*, (*Chap.* III. *towards the latter End,*) and *Arabia*, (*Chap.* III.) Only Mr. *Motraye* gives us an Account of ſome Particulars in their Way of Travelling which has not been mention'd in the Chapters now quoted. He obſerves that it is cheaper travelling in *Turkey* than in any Country in the World, becauſe Proviſions are plenty, and Horſe-hire cheap, particularly for *Franks* or *European* Chriſtians; for if one of them would undertake a Journey, he has no more to do but to apply himſelf to the Ambaſſador or Reſident of his Nation, who ſends his Interpreter with him to Court, or to the Governor of the Place, to procure him a *Menzil Ferman*, or a *Yoll Ferman*, and he has always one or the other granted.

Menzil Ferman.

IF they have what is called the *Menzil Ferman*, he bears all the Charges of the Traveller, both as to Horſe and Proviſion, *&c.* during the whole Journey, which he is at laſt allow'd to place to the Grand Seignior's Account; and their Manner of being ſupply'd on the Road is, that at every three or four Leagues there are Houſes of Entertainment, and Horſes laid to furniſh the Couriers and Expreſſes to all Parts of the Empire, and equally allow'd to any Gentleman to whom the *Menzil Ferman* is granted; and as for the Conveyance of Letters, tho' they have no General Poſts, yet thoſe Expreſſes will convey Letters for the *European Frank* Merchants to *Bagdat*, *Aleppo*, *Smyrna*, *&c.* at reaſonable Rates.

WHEN a Gentleman who has the *Menzil Ferman* arrives at any Stage, there are People ready to take care of his Horſe and Baggage, and provide freſh Horſes while he eats and drinks, or otherwiſe refreſhes himſelf; for come in by Day or Night, there is always Meat, Fiſh, or Rice dreſt for the Travellers Entertainment; but if the Traveller has only a *Yoll Ferman*, he pays ten Aſpres, or Half-pence for every three Miles for his Horſe, but his Guide, Lodgings, and Proviſions are all upon Free-coſt. *Yoll Ferman.*

THE Caravanſera's or Inns where Travellers lodge that have no *Ferman*, are very common upon the Road, but eſpecially in the Towns or Villages at proper Stages or Diſtances; for the Manner of building of which ſee *India*, *Chap.* IV. latter End, and *Perſia*, *Chap.* II. Here they not only lodge *gratis* in *Turkey*, but have boil'd Rice, Meat, and Bread, if they will accept of it; notwithſtanding which, Proviſions being ſo cheap, People of any Faſhion generally make uſe of their own; but the *Turks* are ſo generous, that if a poor Traveller falls among them that has no Proviſion of his own, he need make but very little Ceremony to ſit down and eat among his own Countrymen. *Turkiſh Generoſity.*

THE Roads, Ciſterns, Bridges, and Caravanſera's are repair'd by the private People; ſome contributing their Money, and others their Labour; every one looking upon it to be a Work of Charity to provide for the Neceſſity and Conveniency of poor Travellers, and thoſe who have nothing but their Labour to depend upon for a Subſiſtence, will contribute a Part of that to that charitable Purpoſe; and Travellers further aſſure us, that thoſe Eaſtern (now *Turkiſh*) Countries of *Chalden* and *Meſopotamia*, retain their Native Principle of Generoſity that *Abraham* practiſed, (*Geneſis* xviii.) and will not only invite Travellers and Strangers to their Houſes, but contend for the Honour of entertaining them.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Power, Court, and Officers of State of the Grand Seignior; as alſo of his Women, and other Inhabitants of the Haram or Seraglio.

THE Grand Seignior thinks his Power ſo abſolute and unlimited, that he looks upon not only the Country or Empire, but even the Lives and Fortunes of the Inhabitants to be at his diſpoſing; but in this Caſe there is a Diſtinction between his Officers, or indeed his Creatures and Courtiers, who have their Dependance upon him, and thoſe other of his Subjects who have no Place or Penſion under the Government; thoſe have nothing to fear either as to their Lives or Effects, and do not pay any Duties to the Government; for ſhould he attempt to tax them, or change their antient Cuſtoms, he would run the Hazard of being depoſed. Two ſorts of Subjects.

As to the others that have been preſented to him, or purchaſed by him, or which Way ſoever, they become his Vaſſals, and are bred up in the Seraglio; theſe he acknowledges to be his own, 'tis true, but by Vertue of this his abſolute Property in them, he exerciſes an arbitrary Power over them, and not only diſgraces, but puts them to Death upon the leaſt Suggeſtion of Diſaffection or Miſconduct, without allowing them to anſwer for themſelves; and their Children commonly feel the Effects of the Reſentment, and ſcarce ever ſucceed to the Poſt or Fortune of the degraded Father. (*Thus far Mr.* Motraye.) But all Officers Civil and Military, as Viceroys, Baſſaws, and Governors, and even the whole Militia, are compoſed of theſe Royal Slaves or Court Dependents; and the Chriſtians, who are there very numerous, (and ſome go further, and ſay they are as numerous as the *Turks* themſelves,) are certainly in the Grand Seignior's Power, and treated as his Vaſſals, which is very probable when the *Turkiſh* Eccleſiaſticks, and even the Muſti, are depoſed, or ſometimes

times put to Death upon the least Disgust of the Grand Seignior; from whence we may conclude that he has an arbitrary Power, how far soever he may please to dispense with it in favour of his Mahometan Subjects.

Absolute Power.

However, his Power is little less than absolute in defending the Mahometan Religion against all Opposers under his Jurisdiction; to which his Mahometan Subjects are so biggotted, that if he should not defend and protect it, they would look upon themselves as absolved from their Allegiance; and whatsoever Pique they may have privately against him, yet they think no Plea so good as that of his not protecting the Faithful, (so they call the Mahometans,) and if he fails in that, they allow it to be not only a grand Plea against him, but a plausible Reason to depose him if they all unite against him.

Grand Seignior claims all Lands.

The Grand Seignior looks upon all the Lands in the Empire as his own, and consequently whatever Estates any Persons are possess'd of he thinks they hold them all of him, under certain Tenures; among which some of the conditional ones are, that when they are required to it, they shall bring into the Field a certain Number of Men and Horses, in proportion to the Land assign'd them; and thus the Prince first making the Land his own, made all the Forces his own of Course, and all his Creatures were then his Slaves, and obliged to serve him without any further Charge; only with this Condition, that it is in his Power to resume the Grant of his Lands at pleasure, but that when he recals the Privilege he formerly granted them, they are discharged from the Obligations that they were under.

The Tribute.

The Prince or Grand Seignior is stiled by his Subjects *The Shadow of God, a God on Earth, Brother to the Sun and Moon, Disposer of all Earthly Crowns*, &c. and by his Bigots he is look'd upon as something more than Human, and not bound by any Law whatsoever, except that of maintaining the Mahometan Faith.

Coronation.

The new Emperor at his Accession is conducted in great State to a Place in the Suburbs of *Constantinople*, call'd *Job*; where is a Monument, supposed to be that of *Job*, though their Reasons for that Opinion are very inconsistent with their History, which makes *Job* to be one of *Solomon*'s Judges, though he lived some hundred Years before *Solomon*'s Time, if we allow him to be the Son of *Isshak*, as expresst *Gen.* xlvi. 13. However, at this Place they, at the Inauguration of an Emperor, first offer solemn Prayers, that God would prosper the new Emperor, and inspire him with Wisdom, &c. and the *Mufti*, embracing him, pronounces the Benediction; and the intended Grand Seignior solemnly swears to maintain the Musulman Faith, and Laws of the Prophet *Mahomet*; though their Doctors hold that he is only obliged to observe that Part of the Law relating to Religion, but that he may alter or interpret the rest as he pleases; and this Belief very much excites their implicit Obedience to his Dictates, and corroborates his arbitrary Power; for though their Law was left them by *Mahomet*, yet his Construction of it is a Law to them, and as such they imbibe it from their Infancy; especially those that are brought up in the Seraglio, and are design'd to fill up the great Places in the Empire, they are kept in so much Ignorance, as to believe that an entire Submission and Resignation to the Emperor's Commands will entitle them to a Crown of Martyrdom, and a Seat in Paradise if they die in the Service he commands them to.

Those who have any Salary or Pension from the Government, or are in any Office under the Crown, seem to regard the Prophet more than the Honour, for at last they are but call'd the Grand Seignior's Slaves; but that Title they look upon as an Honour, and indeed such Slaves as they are there call'd, have the Command of those Subjects who are not in the Grand Seignior's Pay, so far at least as to insult them at their Pleasure. The Term of *Slave* is not quite so contemptible there as with us, but even there it signifies one who is entirely devoted to the Emperor's arbitrary Will, and is obliged to undertake whatsoever he commands, let the Danger in the Execution, or the Consequence in the Conclusion be what it will. Slaves.

Young Boys.

The young Boys educated in the Seraglio are commonly the Children of Christian Parents, and intended for Places in the Government: They are commonly either taken in the Wars, or made Presents from the Viceroys of *Georgia* and *Circassia*, which Places produce the most sprightly, beautiful, and well-shap'd Children that that Country, or perhaps the World, affords; *Circassia* being a Country noted in History for producing beautiful Persons of both Sexes: When there is a Number to be entred into the Seraglio, the Emperor reviews them, and according as they excel in Beauty, or other Accomplishments necessary to qualify them for the Seraglio, they are differently disposed of to the respective Seraglio's of *Pera*, *Adrianople*, or *Constantinople*; which last is preferable to the other, and the readiest Way to Preferment of all the three; they being under the Care of the *Capi Aga*, or Chief of the white Eunuchs; where, during their Continuance there, they are often, by Way of Correction, treated with great Severities.

Education.

The first Lesson they learn in the Seraglio (if it may be call'd a Lesson) is Silence, and then they are instructed in the Mahometan Principles, and to speak, read, and write the *Turkish* Language, and then the *Persian* and *Arabick*; their Diet is Rice and other wholsom Food, and their Raiment is commonly of *English* Cloth. The Eunuchs have a strict Eye over them till they are fit for manly Exercises, and then they are taught to handle the Spear, to draw the Bow, and to throw the Gerit or Dart; in which Exercises they spend much Time, and are corrected if they do not improve. They are also taught, as in *Persia*, to shoot their Arrows on Horseback in full Career, backwards, forwards, sideways, and in almost any Posture: (*See Chap.* III. *of the Description of* Persia.)

As they improve in their Exercises, they are advanced to a superior Class and Dress, changing their Cloth Vests for embroider'd Silks, their Salaries are augmented; and as Places fall they are prefer'd to the *Hazna Oda*, or Chamber of the Treasury, or to the *Kilor*, or Dispensatory, where the Drugs and Cordials are kept for the Grand Seignior's Use. And from these two Chambers they are elected into the highest Class of the Seraglio, or *Hax Oda*, which consists of forty Pages which attend the Grand Seignior's Person, of which twelve hold the principal Offices at Court, as 1. the *Selictor Aga*, or Sword Bearer; 2. the *Chiohadar Aga*, who carries the Grand Seignior's Cloak; 3. the *Richitor Aga*, who holds his Stirrup; 4. the *Ebrichta Aga*, who carries him Water to drink or wash with; 5. the *Tulbentar Aga*, who makes up his Turbant; 6. the *Kemhosar Aga*, or Keeper of the Wardrobe; 7. the *Chesnegar Bassa*, or Chief Sewer; 8. the *Zagargee Bassa*, who looks after the Dogs; 9. the *Turnachgee Bassa*, who pares his Nails; 10. the *Berber Bassa*, or Chief Barber; 11. the *Mahosebegee Bassa*, or Chief Accomptant; and 12. the *Tekeregee Bassa*, his Secretary; and besides these the *Dogan Bassa*, or Chief Falconer, and the *Hammamgee Bassa*, or Keeper of the Baths, are great Offices at Court. Officers at Court.

Those who are thus introduced to the Dignity of the Royal Chamber, are constantly under the Prince's Eye, and he frequently presents them with Swords, Bows, Vests, and the like, and are allow'd them. Presents made them.

allow'd to take Preſents for their Interceſſion and Application in the Behalf of others; they are alſo ſent with Orders to the Viceroys, Baſſa's, and Tributary Princes, from whom they receive large Preſents in Money, Jewels, Horſes and the like; and as Places and Governments fall they are preferr'd to them, but ſeldom till they arrive at or near forty Years of Age, and then their Judgment is look'd upon as ſound and mature, and the Heat of Youth ſuppos'd to be pretty well allay'd; and when they are rais'd to any Command, or Place of Truſt, they are preſented by the principal Members of the Seraglio as Favourites of the Grand Seignior, and take their Leave of the Seraglio with great Ceremony.

We ſhall not enlarge upon the unnatural Love, or rather Luſt, practiſed by the young Men in the Seraglio among themſelves, which is allow'd and practiſed by the Grand Seignior himſelf; inſomuch that they keep the handſomeſt of their young Men for Pages, and for the ſake of thoſe indecent Familarities which they exerciſe with them, make them their Companions, and ſometimes allow Honours to be paid them, not much if at all inferior to what they require to be paid to themſelves; and the Women likewiſe pleaſe themſelves with ſuch Indecencies, being deprived of Converſation with Men.

Mutes and Dwarfs.

The Emperor keeps Mutes, which are born Deaf, and conſequently are Dumb, to the Number of about forty; they teach them how to diſcourſe by Signs, and maintain Converſation without the uſe of Words, and there are eight or nine of the favourite Mutes continually attend the grand Seignior: He alſo keeps a Number of Dwarfs, little or deformed, and thoſe with the Mutes he uſes as Buffoons to divert himſelf with when he is ſo diſpoſed; but when a Dwarf proves a Mute, and eſpecially if he has been made an Eunuch, it is almoſt impoſſible to put too great a Value upon him. One of theſe being preſented to the Grand Seignior, was cloathed in the richeſt Tiſſue, and had the Liberty of paſſing all the Doors of the Seraglio; a Privilege ſcarce ever granted to any other Eunuch belonging to the Grand Seignior's Court. We ſhall ſpeak more largely of the Officers of the Eunuchs when we come to ſpeak of the Officers of State.

Ladies of the Seraglio.

The Ladies of the Haram, or Seraglio, are generally born of Chriſtian Parents, and are a Collection of beautiful young Virgins, either ſold into *Turkey* or taken in the Wars. When they are firſt entered into the Seraglio they are committed to the Charge of an old *Duena*, or Governant; they are taught Muſick, Dancing, and other Accompliſhments, and furniſh'd with rich Cloaths and Jewels to render them as agreeable to their Lords as poſſible, and ſeveral of them frequently play and dance before the Grand Seignior, while others entertain him with their Converſation. When he chuſes any one to be in private with him ſhe is complimented by the Ladies of the Court; and being dreſt and ſet out to the beſt Advantage, ſhe is conducted to his private Apartment with Songs and Muſick, and other Demonſtrations of Joy and Triumph, as being diſtinguiſh'd for her ſuperior Charms among ſuch a Crowd of Beauties; when ſhe has obtain'd this Honour, ſhe has an Apartment, with Servants and an Equipage appointed her, as being now become a Royal Concubine; and if ſhe is ſo fortunate as to bring the firſt Son, ſhe is crown'd with a Coronet of Gold ſet with precious Stones, and ſtil'd the *Haſaki Sultana*, but thoſe who afterwards have Children are only ſtil'd the firſt, ſecond, third Concubines, &c.

The Grand Seignior's Daughters are commonly married very young to ſome of the Baſſa's or Viceroys of Provinces, who are obliged to keep Courts, and maintain them like Sovereigns, and make large Preſents to the Grand Seignior for having the Honour to match with his Blood; and the *Baſſa*, &c. having married one of them is obliged to put away the reſt of his Wives, how long ſoever he has had them; and if he is but even ſuſpected to caſt an amorous Glance upon one of the female Slaves of his Royal Wife, it is as much as his Life is worth.

The Grand Seignior never marries, nor does he ever take the Daughters of any Mahometan Princes or Subjects to be his Concubines, but they are generally the handſomeſt Girls of thoſe either taken in War, purchaſed, or preſented to him (as above) when young, and brought up in the Mahometan Religion. If the *Sultana Haſaki*'s Son dies, ſhe, with him, loſes her Dignity, and the next that has a Son, ſucceeds her in the ſame Honour. The Ladies of the Haram are never ſuffer'd to go abroad, except when the Grand Seignior removes from one Palace to another, and then if they travel by Water they go in Boats encloſed on all Sides with narrow Lattices, and if they go by Land they are put in cloſe Chariots, and Signals are made at certain Diſtances to give notice of their Approach, that no Perſon may attempt to come in or near the Road where they are, and all this to prevent their being ſeen; and when they are to take an Airing in the Gardens of the Palace, *Helvet* is cried, and all People are obliged to remove at a great Diſtance; and then, before they enter the Garden, an Officer of the white Eunuchs ſearches all the Walls, to ſee that there be none of the young Men that are educated in the Seraglio attempting privately to ſee them, and when he finds all the Coaſt clear, and, to be further ſecure, having planted Eunuchs at the Windows, and at all Places from whence the Gardens can be ſeen, the Ladies come out of their Apartments to walk in the Gardens.

Concubines.

Slaves.

There are Female Slaves kept to wait upon thoſe that are choſe and ſet apart for the Grand Seignior's Uſe, and alſo luſty Male Slaves to go through the Drudgery, as Porters, Gardiners, Hatchet-men to cut and carry Wood, and Watermen; alſo Cooks, Butchers, Confectioners, Attendants of the Hoſpital, &c. Thoſe Slaves of the loweſt Claſs call'd *Agiamoglans*, undergo great Hardſhips, not only in Labour but Faſting, they wear coarſe Cloaths and Felt Caps, and their Diverſion, if it may be ſo call'd, conſiſts more in running, leaping, wreſtling, and ſuch violent and laborious Exerciſes, than in reading, writing, and the like; they are lodged in Sheds, and receive their Pay once in three Months, which is about four or five *Aſpers* (or Halfpence) a Day.

Officers of State.

The Officers of State, as has been hinted before, are commonly choſe out of the Royal Slaves which have been educated in the Seraglio; their Head is the Grand Vizier, in whom the Grand Seignior repoſes an almoſt unlimited Confidence, leaving the Adminiſtration entirely in his Hand, and giving him the ſole Command of both Peace and War; he has the Direction of the Revenue, and is ſupreme Judge both in Civil and Criminal Caſes. The Sultan at the Advancement of any one to the Poſt of Prime Vizier, delivers him the Seal of the Empire, upon which his Name is engraven, and the Vizier always carries it in his Boſom, and under it he iſſues his Orders: he diſpoſes of many Honours, and Offices; but his Power is limited in Military Matters, and he cannot inflict any Puniſhment upon a Soldier without the Conſent of his Officer. His Court is always open, and he gives Audience to the meaneſt Subject; he appears very magnificent, with a Turbant adorn'd with two Plumes of Feathers ſet with Diamonds and Precious Stones; his Guard is four hundred *Boſniaks*, ſome of which attend him on Foot when he goes to the Divan, but when he takes the Field, they are all gallantly mounted, and are arm'd with a Pair of Piſtols, a Launce, a Sword, and a Hatchet.

When

How inſtled with Command.

When the Grand Seignior inveſts the Grand Vizier with the Command of the Army, he takes one of his Plumes from his Turbant, and at the Head of the Army delivers it to the Grand Vizier, as a Badge of the Authority and abſolute Command he has given him over the Army, and the Soldiers after that look upon him as their General. In Time of War he has a Power to fill all the vacant Poſts, in which he commonly takes care to prefer the moſt deſerving of his Officers; and although in Times of Peace the Grand Seignior reſerves to himſelf the Prerogative of diſpoſing of Places of Truſt and Profit, yet as the Grand Vizier has the moſt Experience of the Merit of his Officers in the Time of War, his Recommendation for the Preferment of any of them in Times of Peace generally ſucceeds.

Grand Vizier's Salary.

The ſtated Salary of the Grand Vizier is but five thouſand Pounds a Year; but his Perquiſites make it amount to an immenſe Sum; for thoſe that are laying out for Preferment make him valuable Preſents to pave the Way to Succeſs, and as much as poſſible engage him in their Intereſt: His greateſt Rivals or Competitors in Power are the Sultana's Mother, the favourite Sultaneſs, and the chief Eunuch, who having the grand Seignior's Ear in his Retirements, can infuſe Sentiments into him in favour of their Friends, when even the grand Vizier himſelf can have no ſuch Opportunity; by which even his Schemes are ſometimes defeated, and theſe his Rivals not only ſometimes thus diſappoint him, but are Spies upon his Conduct, and oftentimes procure his Diſgrace, and ſometimes the Loſs of his Head; and though it is a great Place, yet it is ſo precarious, that it was look'd upon as no leſs than a Miracle that the two *Cuperli's*, Father and Son, enjoy'd this Place one after the other, without ſuffering Diſgrace when alive, and at laſt died peaceably in their Beds. Doubtleſs though their Merit was very great in diſcharging ſuch an important Office with Reputation and Applauſe, yet their great Succeſs contributed to their Eſtabliſhment.

Other Viziers.

But beſides the Grand Vizier, there are ſix others, call'd Viziers of the Bench of Council, and Baſſa's of the three Horſe-Tails, becauſe there are three Standards or Horſe-Tails carried before them, whereas the other Baſſa's have but one. Theſe ſix are skill'd in Law and Politicks; the Grand Vizier ſummons them to the Divan, but he is at Liberty to obſerve or reject their Advice as he pleaſes. The Mufti or Civil Judges are alſo called to aſſiſt at their Councils, and ordinary Matters are often determin'd by them.

Divan.

The Divans are both Councils and Courts of Juſtice, and are held every Day except Fridays, at the Vizier's Palace. He goes alſo to the Divan in the Seraglio in great State, the People ſhouting and wiſhing him Proſperity as he goes along the Street; and when he comes near the Gate, the Baſſa's haſten their March, and range themſelves on the Right Side of the firſt Court as the Vizier paſſes by. Upon entring the Divan, Prayers are made, and when the Court is come into the Divan, all the People proſtrate themſelves on their Faces to the Ground. When the Grand Vizier is ſeated, the two Juſtices take their Places on his Left Hand, which is the Poſt of Honour in *Turkey*; the chief Juſtice of *Europe* next him; and the chief Juſtice of *Aſia* in the ſecond Place; and next to theſe the Treaſurers of the Empire. The other Viziers, with their Seals, ſit on the Right Hand of the Grand Vizier; and if any Beglerbeg or Viceroy be arrived from his Government, he is placed next to the Viziers.

Buſineſs of the Divan.

When the Court is ſet, the firſt Buſineſs they enter upon is the State of the Revenue. The *Chiaus Baſha* takes the Seal off from the Door of the Treaſury, and brings it to the Grand Vizier; after which the Treaſury is open'd, and Money receiv'd or iſſu'd out as Occaſion requires, and then the Door is ſeal'd up again. The next Thing that comes under their Conſideration is Foreign Affairs, and then Domeſtick, and Orders, Grants, Patents, &c. are diſpatch'd. The Secretary of State records the Acts of State, and tranſmits the Orders of the Porte to the reſpective Viceroys and Governors; and when thoſe publick Affairs are over, they proceed to try criminal Cauſes, where the Accuſer appearing with his Evidences, the Offender is either condemn'd or acquitted immediately; and laſtly, comes on the Trial of Civil Cauſes, which concludes the Buſineſs of the Court for that Day.

Officers of the Seraglio.

The firſt Officer of the Seraglio is, 1. the Chief of the black Eunuchs, and Keeper of the Virgins; and it is obſerved that they always truſt thoſe beautiful Ladies under the Care of one of the uglieſt of the black Eunuchs that can be produced; for which one or both of the following Reaſons may be given for it, *viz.* either that he may appear leſs tempting to them, or that the Grand Seignior himſelf may upon his Approach appear more amiable, after their Eyes have been ſo long entertain'd with ſuch a diſagreeable Object; 2. the Chief of the white Eunuchs is always near the Grand Seignior, and introduces Ambaſſadors and Miniſters to his Preſence, and none can go in or out of the Grand Seignior's Apartment without his Leave; 3. the Governor of the forty Pages of the Bed-Chamber; 4. he that takes care of the Repairs and Furniture of the Grand Seignior's Apartment; 5. the Keeper of the Privy-Purſe; 6. the Butler or Keeper of the Cellars, Kitchens, &c. 7. the Grand Falconer, who puts on the Emperor's Veſt; 8. he who holds his Stirrup; 9. the Sword-bearer; 10. the Keeper of the Baths; 11. the Launderer, or he that has the Care of the Linnen; and, 12. the Maſter-Archer, or he that has the Command of thoſe that ſhoot with the Bow. Theſe ſeveral Officers are moſtly diſtinguiſh'd by their Caps, as the Hatchet-Men that cut Wood wear a Cap like a Sugar-loaf, &c.

Caimacan.

The Caimacan or Governor of *Conſtantinople* (which famous City ſhall be deſcribed when we come to treat of *Turkey* in *Europe*) has his Apartments without the Seraglio; he is the Grand Vizier's Lieutenant, and ſupplies his Place in his Abſence, even to ſo high a Station as that of giving Audience to Ambaſſadors. The Aga or General of the Janizaries is an Officer of great Authority and Reputation, having a hundred thouſand Janizaries at his Command. The Chiaux are Meſſengers of the Court, ready to be diſpatch'd to execute the Emperor's Order, whatever it be; though it be to take off the Head of a Baſſaw or Governor, yet neither the Executioner nor the Sufferer muſt diſpute it.

Viceroyalties.

There are ſeveral ſorts of Beglerbeglicks or Viceroyalties; of the firſt ſort there are about twenty, each of which have ſeveral Sangiackſhips or Provinces; the firſt is the Viceroyalty of *Natolia* or *Aſia Minor*, containing fourteen Provinces; 2. *Caramania*, antiently *Cilicia* (*Acts* xxii. 3.) hath ſeven Provinces; 3. *Diarbeck* or *Meſopotamia*, hath nineteen Provinces; 4. *Scham* or *Damaſcus*, hath ſeven Provinces; 5. the Viceroyalty of *Sivas*, a City of *Armenia Major*, contains ſix Provinces; 6. *Erzerum*, on the Confines of *Georgia*, hath eleven Provinces; 7. *Van* in *Turcomania* contains fourteen Provinces; 8. *Tchildir*, on the Borders of *Georgia*, contains nine Provinces; 9. *Sheriſoul* in *Curdeſtan*, or antient *Aſſyria*, hath twenty Provinces; 10. *Halep* or *Aleppo*, contains ſeven Provinces; 11. *Maraſh*, near the River *Euphrates*, four Provinces; 12. *Kibros*, or the Iſland of *Cyprus*, ſeven Provinces;

13. *Tarabolus Scham*, or *Tripoli* in *Syria*, four Provinces; 14. *Terbozon*, or *Trapezond*, on the South-East Part of the *Black Sea*, formerly the Imperial Seat of the *Commeni*, has fourteen Caſtles, but no Provinces; 15. *Kars* has ſix Provinces; 16. *Mouſal* or *Niniveh*, in *Aſſyria*, commands five Provinces; 17. (in *Europe*) the firſt is *Rumuli*, or *Romania*, the Seat of *Conſtantinople* and of the Grand Seignior, and the moſt honourable Poſt in all the *Turkiſh Empire*; 18. the Captain Baſſa, or Admiral of the Fleet, has likewiſe the Command of thirteen Provinces on the Continent, or in the *Archipelagian Iſlands*; 19. *Boſnia*, formerly divided into *Liburnia* and *Dalmatia*, now jointly call'd *Sclavonia*, in which are eight Provinces; and laſtly the Baſſa of *Caffa*, or *Theodoſia*, in the *Taurica Cherſoneſe*, he has only ſome poor Villages, but no Provinces

Saliane Viceroyalties.

ANOTHER Sort are *Saliane* Viceroyalties, they are paid out of the Grand Seignior's Treaſury, and are, 1. The Viceroy of *Grand Cairo*, he has the Government of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, which is divided into ſixteen Provinces. 2. The Viceroyalty of *Bagdat*, or *Babylon* in *Chaldea*, two and twenty Provinces; and to theſe ſome add *Algier*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoli*, but they ſeem now to be independent on the *Turkiſh Empire*, and treat with other Princes in their own Names, as Sovereign States.

EVERY Viceroy, Baſſa, &c. is obliged for every five thouſand *Aſpers* (which is little more than ten Pound Sterling) Rent aſſign'd him, to bring a Soldier into the Field compleatly armed; and to ingratiate himſelf into the Grand Seignior's Favour, ſome of them bring more than they are obliged to produce. Of the Beglerbegs, Viceroys or Baſſa's, ſome of them have the Title of Viziers, as the Baſſa's of *Anatolia*, or *Leſſer Aſia*, as alſo of *Buda Cairo*, and *Babylon*; but as the Territories belonging to *Buda* is now under the Emperor's Dominions, it is to be ſuppoſed that the Honour of Vizier is transferr'd to ſome other Baſſa.

Three chief Officers.

IN every one of theſe Governments, or Diviſions above-mention'd, there are three principal Officers, the Mufti, or Chief Prieſt; the *Reis Effendi*, who acts as Chancellor, or Secretary of State; (for theſe two Offices ſeem to be united in him;) there is alſo the *Teſter lau*, or Treaſurer, who are of the Baſſa's Council, but employ'd as Spies to inſpect into his Actions and Conduct. Appeals lie from theſe Offices to thoſe of the ſame Denomination at *Conſtantinople*, and their Power extends all over the *Turkiſh Empire*.

Crim Tartary.

As for *Crim* or *Little Tartary* the Han, or Cham of it is in ſome meaſure dependent on the *Turk*, at leaſt ſo far, that upon the Acceſſion of a new Cham to the Throne, the Grand Seignior claims a Power to confirm or reject him, and if the former, he makes him take the Oath of Fealty, and takes his eldeſt Son as an Hoſtage or Pledge of his Performance. And what makes the *Tartars* eaſy is, that they think in Caſe of failure of Iſſue in the *Ottoman* Line, the Empire is by antient Compact to devolve upon them, in hopes of which the *Tartar* keeps himſelf cloſe to the *Turkiſh* Intereſt, that he may hay have a more free Acceſſion to the Throne in caſe that Revolution ſhould happen to come about.

THE Grand Seignior in the mean Time pays that Deference to the Hans, or Chams of little *Tartary*, that he does not ſend his abſolute Commands or Orders to him, as to other Viceroys, but treats with him by Letters in the following Stile, viz. *To the Poſſeſſor of excellent Power and eſtabliſh'd Glory, the King of* Crim, Gian, Begli, *&c.* and by an antient Contract, whenever the Grand Seignior takes the Field, the *Tartar* Han is to join him with an Army of a hundred thouſand Men; but if the Grand Vizier or ſome other General head the Army, the Han is only obliged to meet and aſſiſt him with forty or fifty thouſand, under the Command of one of his Sons; or whatever General it be, they commonly enrich themſelves with the Plunder, but eſpecially with the Captives, who, Male or Female, are all ready Money when they bring them into *Turkey*.

WHEN they march into an Enemy's Country, they continue their March into it for three or four Days, without doing any Execution; but when they turn their Faces homewards, they burn, plunder, and ſpoil all before them, carrying off the Inhabitants to *Turkey*, for Sale, like ſo many Cattle to a Market; and for the greater Expedition, every *Tartar* has three or four Horſes to mount his Captives upon, and make a running March Day and Night, till they find themſelves ſafe; ſo that no regular Forces can come up with them; and the Country People are ſo far from being able to reſiſt or defeat them, that their Perſons as well as their Subſtance become a Part of their Plunder.

Tributary Countries.

THE Countries tributary to the *Turk* are as follow: *Moldavia*, whoſe Natives are generally Chriſtians, was firſt made tributary to the *Turks* by *Mahomet the Great*, but revolted after, and was not quite ſubdued till the Year 1574. It is true, the *Turk* ſtill allows them Princes of their own, but they are of his abſolute Choice, without any Regard to Succeſſion, or the Royal Line, or the Qualifications of the Perſon he advances to Regal Dignity, any further than that he is commonly ſome worthleſs Creature that the Grand Seignior can make a Tool of as he pleaſes; ſo that the Government may yet be ſaid to be in his Hands; and indeed he ſqueezes and oppreſſes theſe People more by thoſe Titular Kings that he puts over them, he does his Subjects that are govern'd by his own Baſſa's.

Yearly Tribute.

THE yearly Tribute that *Moldavia* pays to the Grand Seignior is a hundred and twenty Purſes, containing ſixty thouſand Dollars, ten thouſand Okes of Wax, and a thouſand Okes more for the Uſe of the Arſenal, ten thouſand Okes of Honey, ſix hundred Quintals of Tallow, five hundred Ox Hides, and five hundred Pieces of Canvas. To the Prime Vizier they preſent ten Purſes, each five hundred Dollars, and Sables for a Veſt. To the chief Steward five hundred Dollars, and to the Treaſurer the ſame. As for what is extorted by Artifice is uncertain, and may rather be call'd a Perquiſite than a Tribute; and under this Denomination we may reckon the Price paid for the Principality, which is every third Year ſet to Sale, and then the leaſt that muſt be paid to the Grand Seignior is a hundred and fifty Purſes, or ſeventy five thouſand Dollars; to the Queen Mother twenty five thouſand Dollars; to the Grand Seignior's Favourite five thouſand, and the ſame Sum to the chief of the black Eunuchs, beſides great Sums extorted by the Grand Vizier and others, for ſoliciting the Bargain, *&c.* and as the Grand Seignior gives no Credit, the Prince of *Moldavia* is obliged to produce the Money, though he has it at 50 or 100 *per Cent.* to anſwer which, he is forced to ſqueeze the Subject, as obſerved above.

Wallachia.

THE Tribute of *Wallachia* is much heavier than that of *Moldavia*; for they pay the Grand Seignior a hundred and thirty thouſand Dollars yearly, and the other Articles in proportion, as ſpecified in *Moldavia*, beſides ſerving him with their Troops, as will appear more at large hereafter, when we treat of the Grand Seignior's Forces.

Ragoſa.

THE little Republick of *Ragoſa*, on the Coaſt of *Dalmatia*, is more antient than that of *Venice*, and has ſecured itſelf not ſo much either by Defence or Conqueſt, as by a timely Submiſſion to the Powers it was in Danger from, and thereby came to better Terms; and they are now ſo jealous of being enſlaved by their Governors, that they change their chief Officer every Month; others weekly, and the Governor of the principal Caſtle holds

holds his Authority but twenty four Hours, a new one being nominated every Night by the Senate, who is without Ceremony led cover'd, and his Face hid, to the Caſtle; ſo that no Body knows who is Governor but thoſe who are concern'd in electing him, and carrying him thither, and it is impoſſible to form a Conſpiracy to betray the Place, becauſe no Enemy knows who to apply to as Governor by Bribes or Treachery, his Time being ſo ſhort.

Georgia and Part of *Mengrelia* are look'd upon as tributary to the *Turk*, but that is compounded to the Satisfaction of both Parties; for they pay their Tribute in Children of both Sexes, the Grand Seignior chuſing rather to have *Georgian* and *Circaſſian* Boys and Girls than Money, and they on the other hand chuſing rather to part with them, becauſe it ſaves their Money, and put them in the likelieſt Way of Preferment, as has been obſerved above in treating of the young Boys in the Seraglio.

CHAP. V.

Gives an Account of ſome Maxims of Turkiſh *Policy, and of the Arts they uſe to encreaſe their People, and gain Proſelytes.*

THE *Turks* apprehend that there is nothing contributes more to the ſecuring the Succeſſion to the Royal Family, than ſuppreſſing of all Rival Powers, and the leaſt Appearance of Nobility or a great Family among them; and to prevent any Family's growing in Riches and Grandeur, they allow of no Succeſſion to Eſtates or Offices; ſo that even the eldeſt Son of a Baſſa has no Chance of ſucceeding his Father in his Place, for theſe Officers are all taken out of the Seraglio, where they have been kept entirely ignorant from what Blood or Family they deſcended; and hence of however great a Family they come, they do not know of any powerful Relations they have to aſſiſt or ſupport them, in caſe they ſhould encourage any aſpiring Thought; and as the Authority of thoſe Officers are always ſhort-liv'd, and their Line or Succeſſion interrupted, it is impoſſible for either a Family or a Perſon in a great Office to contract a Correſpondence with the People, or to ingratiate himſelf ſo far into their Favour as to form any Deſign of Uſurpation againſt the Government, or of forming an Intereſt ſuperior to that of the Grand Seignior's.

AND yet there have been Rebellions form'd by Baſſa's of remote Provinces, but few of them had either Duration or Succeſs; for if it amounts but to a Suſpicion of a Rebellion, the Sultan need only take off the Leader, and he entirely defeats the whole Deſign, and, as above obſerv'd, the Leader when ſo taken off is never ſucceeded by his Son, or any of his own Family, to eſpouſe his Undertaking, but by a Stranger, that is altogether ignorant of the Affair; the Scheme is quite broke, and would require the ſame troubleſome as well as dangerous Meaſures to renew it as it did to begin it at firſt, which is not to be expected at his firſt Acceſſion to his new Government; nor could it be poſſible he could be privy to the Scheme of his Predeceſſor, becauſe no Perſon knew who it ſhould be, or ſo much as himſelf, till he was inveſted with his new Authority.

BUT if a Rebellion ſhould ſucceed for a while, the Uſurper has ſeldom any other Way to ſecure himſelf but by ſetting up another Prince of the Royal Family, who is no ſooner ſecur'd in his Poſſeſſion, but he commonly ſtrangles the Traytor that brought him there, leſt he ſhould ſerve him as he did his Predeceſſor.

Recital of Treachery

YET to this general Rule there is ſometimes an Exception; for the Baſſa's of ſome petty Governments have the Privilege of leaving their Commands to their Children, as was once the Caſe with the Baſſa of *Gaza*; but one of them happening to live ſeventy five Years in the Government, it was thought an ill Precedent, and contrary to *Turkiſh* Policy; for which Reaſon he was ſent for to Court and without any Proceſs or Charge brought againſt him, ſtrangled as ſoon as he arriv'd.

Keep them poor.

AND as Power and Riches are generally neceſſary Concomitants, it is another Maxim of *Turkiſh* Policy to deprive them of the latter, to prevent their aſpiring after the former; and for that Reaſon the Wealth of a Baſſa is ſeldom allow'd to deſcend to his Children, but is ſeiz'd by the Grand Seignior for his own Uſe; but whether this be only Policy to keep them poor and uncapable of rebelling, or Covetouſneſs to enrich himſelf under that Pretence, is difficult to determine; but it would look like a covetous ſort of Policy in a Chriſtian Country for a Government to fleece their Subjects for no other Reaſon or Pretence but to eſtabliſh their own Grandeur or Security upon the Poverty of the Subject.

HOWEVER, the ſurviving Children of the Baſſa are not quite left deſtitute, but have a ſlender Maintenance allow'd them; and if the deceaſed Baſſa was the Husband of a Sultana, a Siſter, Daughter, or near Relation of the Grand Seignior's, there is a Dowry of about a hundred thouſand Dollars deducted out of the Eſtate for her Maintenance, and the reſt devolves upon the Sultan.

Baſſa's during Pleaſure.

THE Baſſa's bear their Authority only during the Grand Seignior's Pleaſure, and are often depoſed or recall'd (and ſometimes ſtrangled) without any previous Notice given, or Cauſe ſhewn, except the Baſſa of *Grand Cairo*, who generally holds his Place for three Years, during which Time he lets no Opportunity ſlip to enrich himſelf by oppreſſing the People, who are generally rich; but here the Grand Seignior may be ſaid to come in for a double Share, for all the Baſſa's, as well as that of *Grand Cairo*, pay vaſt Sums to the Grand Seignior at their Entrance upon their Poſt of Baſſa. Thoſe of *Grand Cairo* and *Babylon* pay three or four hundred thouſand Dollars upon that Occaſion; and others fifty, one hundred, or two thouſand, according to the Extent of their Dominions; and as they are generally kept poor, they are obliged to take up the Money at 40 or 50 *per Cent.* of the Eunuchs of the Seraglio, and have no ſooner enter'd upon their new Authority, but think themſelves equally obliged to plunder, oppreſs, and by ſome Means or other extort Money from thoſe under their Juriſdiction, to enable them to return the Money they borrow'd to make up the Premium they advanc'd; and this they are in the more haſte to do becauſe they know not how ſoon they may be recall'd; or if they happen to be continued longer, and enrich themſelves, it, as has been obſerv'd before, never devolves upon their Children at their Deceaſe, but

is seiz'd by the Grand Seignior, for all the Riches may generally be said to tend to, and center in, the Coffers of the Grand Seignior, and those of the Eunuchs of the Seraglio, so that the People's Spirits are sunk by their dejected Poverty; for, as my Lord *Verulam* observes, *It is impossible for a People overladen with Taxes to retain a brave Martial Spirit*, or in the Words of a modern Author, *Whoever would effectually enslave a People, must first oppress and impoverish them*; where it is criminal to be rich, People will for their own Safety affect being thought poor, and nothing can stifle Industry more than for a Man to know that if he by his Diligence acquires a plentiful Fortune he must be pillag'd as soon as there is a Discovery made of his Substance.

Arts used to people the Country, and gain Proselytes.

One Artifice they make use of to propagate their Religion and gain Proselytes is, the Favours they confer upon those Christians who embrace the Faith, and become true Believers, so they call the Mahometans; and a still greater Inducement to Christians to embrace their Faith is, their bestowing higher Favours and Preferments upon such Converts than upon their own natural Subjects; which occasions a great many dissolute People to go over to them, especially such as have no other Notion of Religion but that they go by the general Name of Christians, and those who have it only so superficially will easily wipe it off, or change it away for a little Preferment; or when they can find a young Slave capable of any Impression, they ply such a one with Arguments to convert them, and think it brings a great Honour not only to the Person but to the Place where he lives, to gain a Proselyte.

It is observed that those who at Years of Maturity abandon the Christian Religion are afterwards more inveterate to Christians generally than the *Turks* themselves, which the *Turks* experiencing, chuse to prefer them; and it is observ'd that the greatest Successes of the *Turks*, especially at Sea, are obtain'd under the Conduct of these Renegado Christians.

It was formerly a Custom in *Turkey*, once in five Years, to take away the Christians Children from them, and educate them in their own Religion, and by this Means they increas'd their own People; but there being now so many Jews, and also *Greek* and *Armenian* Christians, who flock to the *Turks* to participate of the Temporal Honours and Advantages conferr'd upon those who embrace the *Turkish* Religion, they do not find so much occasion to take the Children, and be at the Charge of bringing them up.

And although it may be natural and easy for us to blame those Christians in *Turkey* for renouncing their Religion, yet we should rather pity them and consider the Oppressions, the Hardships, and Contempt which they go through, or are exposed to, and the Insolence and Arrogance with which they are treated, equal to their Beasts of Burthen, which they but just suffer to live to do the servile Work which themselves do not care to undertake, while we not only are allow'd the free Exercise of our Religion, but are protected in it; their abandoning their Religion may be owing to their Ignorance, and that again to the wretched Poverty of their Priests, whereas we are not under that Necessity of being Ignorant, because our Ecclesiastical Livings, if justly appropriated, according to the Design of them, (*1. Cor.* ix. 14.) are sufficient to maintain the *Preachers of the Gospel*; but we have reason to attribute it to divine Providence, that any of them should retain their Integrity under so many Difficulties that attend the Exercise of their Religion, and their abundant Temptations to desert it.

Hardships and Contempt Christians in *Turkey* undergo.

Another great Article by which they are supply'd with Inhabitants, is the vast Number of Slaves of both Sexes brought from *Tartary*, by the Way of the *Black Sea* and the *Bosphorus*, by which Way a great many *Turkish* Ships come loaded with those Slaves, being distinguished by a particular Flag at the Top-mast Head, to signify what their Cargo consists of; and by this Means it is computed that they import one Year with another at least twenty thousand Christian Slaves, who being mostly Women and Children, are easily, by common Conversation and fair Promises, brought over to their Religion.

Supply'd from *Tartary*.

If it was not for these Supplies, the *Turkish* Dominions would be but thinly peopled, for if we should allow by a general Computation that the Number of People of both Sexes are nearly equal, and consider the vast Numbers of Women lock'd up in the Seraglio, and also in the Harams of private great Men, who have hardly ever any Conversation with their Lords, nor are they ever allow'd scarce to be seen, much less to converse, with any other, these Women are lost as to Propagation, and the Sex by this Means becomes more scarce, which has doubtless contributed to the Practice and promoting of the abominable and unnatural Sin of Sodomy; and when there are such Multitudes both of Men and Women rendred useless as to Propagation, no wonder if Inhabitants are so scarce, that they are forced to purchase Supplies from other Parts of the World.

CHAP. VI.

Treats of their Manner of receiving and entertaining Ambassadors, and of their Conduct in their Negotiations at the Porte.

Although the *Turkish* Laws prohibit the offering any Violence to the Persons of Ambassadors, yet they are not look'd upon here with that Veneration, as honourable Representatives of their Masters, as they are in Christendom; but the Emperor's Ambassador is look'd upon with more Respect than those of any other Christian Princes; perhaps one Reason of that may be, because his Dominions, and even his Capital of *Vienna*, is upon their Borders, and that may make his Power appear more formidable; and as Power is what they most value in themselves, and fear in any other Prince, 'tis probable they may upon that Account, outwardly at least, shew more respect to the Emperor's Ambassador than to one of a more remote and unknown Prince.

When the Imperial Ambassador arrives in the *Turkish* Dominions, the Porte bears his Charges during his stay in the Country; but it is an antient Custom, and yet observed, for the Emperor to send a Present with the Embassy, for which the *Turk* returns another of equal Value; but other Ambassadors, or Ministers, whose Design is only to promote Trade and settle a Correspondence, they do not pay so much Respect to, but have a brocaded Vest, or some such like Present made them in return for

Charges born

for theirs, as thinking *England*, *France*, *Holland*, &c. ſufficiently gratified for their Preſents by the Privileges and Immunities granted to their trading Subjects.

Audience. WHEN an Ambaſſador is to be admitted to Audience, the Court appears in all its Splendor, and every Thing ſeems to be contrived to expreſs the Glory and Magnificence of the Empire; and thoſe Audiences are commonly contrived to be on ſome of the Days on which the Janizaries are paid, which is once in three Months; and the Audience being contrived at this Time is to give the Ambaſſador an Opportunity of ſeeing the Order and Diſcipline of their Troops, and the vaſt Sums of Money which are expos'd to view for the Payment of them, which is pil'd up on Heaps: When the Ambaſſador is introduc'd into the Divan, he is ſeated on a Stool, cover'd with Crimſon Velvet, near the Grand Vizier and other Viziers of the Bench; and the Money being paid to the reſpective Officers to be diſtributed among the Soldiers, an Entertainment is prepared for the Ambaſſador, who, with the Grand Vizier and the other Viziers, as above, and the Lord Treaſurer, all dine at a Table lower than what we uſe, upon which is a large Voider of Silver, in which are Diſhes, but no Knives or Forks are uſed at their Meals; there are alſo two other Tables in the Room, where the Ambaſſador's Retinue and ſome *Turkiſh* Officers of Quality ſit. There are commonly three or four ſcore Diſhes ſerved up, but as ſoon as they are taſted they are taken away.

Paying the Janizaries.

WHEN the Repaſt is over, the *Chious* Baſſa conducts the Ambaſſador with ſome of his Retinue to an Apartment, where rich Silk Veſts are preſented to them, made after the *Turkiſh* Mode, with which about twenty of them being cloath'd, two of the chief Porters of the Palace, with their Silver Staves in their Hands, introduce the Ambaſſador, the Preſents that he intends to make being brought after him, and deliver'd to Officers appointed to receive them. The outer Court of the Palace are now fill'd with Janizaries, who obſerve ſuch a profound Silence, that there is not the leaſt Noiſe to be heard among them; the Ambaſſador being brought to a great Portal at the Entrance of the Place of Audience, he finds ſeveral white Eunuchs, cloath'd in rich Brocade and Tiſſue, here all the Ambaſſador's Train ſtops, only his Secretary, his Interpreter, and two or three more are admitted along with him.

How introduc'd

AT the Entrance of the Audience Chamber there hangs a Golden Ball ſtudded with Precious Stones, and about it are great Chains of rich Pearl; the Floor is cover'd with Carpets of Crimſon Velvet embroider'd with Gold, and ſet in many Places with Seed-Pearl. The Grand Seignior's Throne is rais'd a little above the Floor, ſupported by four Pillars plated with Gold, and the Roof richly gilded, from whence hang ſeveral Golden Balls; and the Cuſhions he leans on are embroider'd with Gold and Jewels; there remains no other Attendants in this Room but the Prime Vizier, who ſtands in an humble Poſture at the Grand Seignior's Right Hand. As ſoon as the Ambaſſador appears in the Grand Seignior's Preſence, two *Capigi* Baſſa's lead him in, holding him under his Arms, and having brought him to a convenient Diſtance, they lay their Hands upon his Neck, and make him bow his Face almoſt to the Ground, and then raiſing him up, they retire back to the End of the Room; the reſt of his Retinue that are admitted perform the ſame Ceremony, but bow rather lower than the Ambaſſador himſelf.

No Chair allow'd.

THE Ambaſſador is not allow'd a Chair at his Audience, but is kept ſtanding till he acquaints the Grand Seignior with the Deſign of his Embaſſy, which being taken down in writing, and read over, is, with his Letters of Credence, put into the Hand of the Grand Vizier, with whom he afterwards negotiates his Affairs; but if any thing happens that the Grand Seignior takes as a Diſguſt, he will impriſon, or otherwiſe puniſh or affront him, without any regard to the Law of Nations, or the crown'd Head he repreſents.

Ambaſſadors impriſon'd.

THERE are Inſtances of Ambaſſadors, that without any Proof have been impriſon'd barely upon a Suſpicion of being guilty of the Crimes he was charg'd with, as was the *French* Ambaſſador in the ſeven Towers, on a Suſpicion of his having contrived the Eſcape of a *Poliſh* General, and was detained, till Money and the Mediation of his Maſter the *French* King, who was forc'd to put up the Affront, procur'd his Liberty; and ſeveral other Inſtances of this kind Hiſtory furniſhes us with; and if a War breaks out between them and any Power that has an Ambaſſador at the Court at the ſame Time, they then impriſon the Ambaſſador; but it is remarkable, that upon ſuch an Occaſion they never confiſcate or ſeize the Effects of thoſe Merchants, who being the Subjects of the Powers they contend with, are reſiding to trade at *Conſtantinople*, or in other Parts of *Turkey*.

IT is ſaid that of late the Grand Seignior will not allow an Ambaſſador to approach him with his Sword on; but whether the Imperial Ambaſſador be under this Reſtriction we cannot determine; but it ſeems by a † Paſſage in the following Account of Monſieur *Ferriol*, that they had been admitted to Audience with their Swords on till this Accident happen'd. This Inſtance is of a *French* Ambaſſador, to whom (as was obſerv'd in the Beginning of this Chapter) he does not pay ſo much Reſpect as to thoſe ſent from *Germany*. The Account, in the Words of a modern Author, is as follows:

No Sword allow'd at an Audience.

" WHEN Monſieur *Ferriol*, the *French* Ambaſſa-
" dor, attempted to be admitted to an Audience
" with his Sword on, and having put on the rich
" Veſt or Caffetan, in order to approach the Grand
" Seignior, the *Chious Baſſa* obſerving a long Sword
" peep from under it, told the Ambaſſador that it
" was not uſual to appear in that Manner before
" his Highneſs, and deſired him to lay it by; to
" which M. *Ferriol* anſwer'd, that the King his
" Maſter only had a Right to take it from him,
" and that another Man ſhould ſooner take away
" his Life; that his Predeceſſor M. *Chateauneuf*
" aſſured him that he had been admitted to Au-
" dience with his Sword on; to which the Vizier
" anſwer'd, that then it muſt have been ſo ſhort
" as to be entirely hid under the Caffetan, and
" that they would take care for the future that
" neither the Imperial † Ambaſſador, or any other,
" ſhould ever come to their Audiences with their
" Swords on. M. *Ferriol* ſtill remaining inflexible,
" the Aga of the Janizaries interpoſed, repreſent-
" ing that neither the Grand Vizier, who go-
" vern'd the *Ottoman* Empire as the Grand Seig-
" nior's Lieutenant, nor himſelf, who was General
" of his Forces, had ever enter'd arm'd into any
" of his Highneſs's Apartments. The Ambaſſador
" reply'd, *You are a Subject, but I have the Honour*
" *to repreſent a great Prince, who exempts me from ſuch*
" *Submiſſion.* Then the Viziers of the Bench uſed
" their utmoſt Efforts to perſwade him not to inſiſt
" upon entring with his Sword on; but finding all in
" vain, they only ſaid *You had better enter in as you*
" *are then*; whereupon he took the King's Letter
" in his Hand, and the two Capigi's taking him
" under each Arm, he was advancing towards the
" Door, when he found a Capigi privately endea-
" vouring to get his Sword from his Side, which
" he no ſooner perceiv'd, but he puſh'd him at a
" great Diſtance from him, and getting from the
" two Capigi's who had him under the Arms,
" drew his Sword half out, demanding if they
" were Friends or Enemies; to which they re-
" ply'd,

" ply'd, *Friends, but we will not suffer you to enter* " *with your Sword*; whereupon he refused to en- " ter at all, and putting the King's Letter in his " Pocket again, he pulled off his Vest, and gave " it to the first Officer he met, commanding all " his Retinue to do the like; after which he " retired, and crossed the Court of the Divan on " Foot, and mounting afterwards on Horseback, " returned with his People to his House; but the " Chious Bassa, who had conducted him to Court, " did not return with him. The Grand Vizier af- " terwards sent to acquaint Monsieur *Ferriol*, that " he might take his Presents back again, which " he did accordingly, and the King of *France* " found himself obliged to put up the Indignity " offered to his Minister." We have several other Instances of the little Regard paid to foreign Ministers at this Court; but as they had the same Tendency and Consequence, we shall not fill up Time nor Room with the Particulars.

An Ambassador is obliged to be upon his Guard; for if he fails either in his Courage or Conduct, he soon acquires a perpetual Slight from the Court; or if the Ambassador's Interpreter seems to the Grand Seignior to be either deficient, or too impertinent in explaining his Master's Meaning, he is often imprison'd, and sometimes executed for so doing; and indeed the Grand Vizier thinks he has a Right so to do, because these Interpreters are commonly the Grand Seignior's Subjects, and therefore it is thought a greater Crime for him in his Interpretation of the Ambassador's Sentiments to put any Construction upon what he delivers that may seem partial in his Favour, such a natural Antipathy they have to Christians.

CHAP. VII.

Gives an Account of the Turkish *Forces and Militia.*

Two sorts of Militia.

THE *Turkish* Militia are of two sorts, and are distinguish'd by the different Ways by which they are paid: The first have certain Lands appointed them for their Maintainence, and the other is paid out of the Treasury. Those who are paid by Lands appropriated to that Purpose, are again divided into two Denominations, viz. *Zaims* and *Timariots*, distinguished only by the different Number of Men they bring into the Field, and the Revenue appointed for that Service. The Land that a *Zaim* holds, is from 20 000 Aspers to *99999* a Year, not to exceed; for one Asper more, which would make it 100 00, is the Revenue of a Sangiack Bey, or *Bassa*, whose lowest Revenue is 100000 Aspers, and not to exceed *99999* Aspers a Year; for one more, which would make it 1000000, or one Million, is the Revenue of a Beglerbeg or Viceroy, who has several Bassa's under him.

Two sorts of Timariots.

The *Timariots* are also of two sorts; some of them hold of the Viceroy of the Province, and others immediately of the Crown: Those latter have from five thousand to any Thing less than 20 000 Aspers a Year; for if it amounts to 20000, it makes him a *Zaim*. Those who hold of the Viceroy of a particular Province, have from three thousand to six thousand Aspers a Year. The Number of Men which either of these bring into the Field is uncertain in itself, though limited between two Numbers. The *Zaim* brings in from four to nineteen; and the *Timariot* four, or under, but never above.

Horsemen

The *Zaims* for every five thousand Aspers yearly Rent, are obliged to find a Horseman compleatly furnished, and for a greater Rent in the same Proportion; and if we reckon the Aspers at a Halfpenny each, they are obliged for every ten Pound eight Shillings and four Pence yearly Rent, to furnish out a compleat Horseman with all his Accoutrements, which would seem but a little Money for that Service, if we did not consider the Cheapness of Provisions, and that probably in Times of Peace, when they have no Occasion for so many Horses in the Field, they may put most of the Money into their own Pockets.

But the *Timariots* are obliged for every three thousand Aspers Rent, to bring a Trooper into the Field compleatly armed: But both *Zaims* and *Timariots* are formed into Regiments, who have their respective Colonels, Colours, and Kettle-Drums; but the Colonels are commanded by the Bassa, and he by the Viceroy of the Province; and when the Army, as form'd of the Militia of several Provinces, is collected together, the whole is commanded by the Grand Seignior, or in his Absence the Grand Vizier has the sole Command.

Sea Service.

They are also furnish'd with Men for their Sea Service when the Government requires it, and to serve in Person, if they cannot produce Men to supply the Place. When the *Turks* compute the Number a Viceroy can bring into the Field, they reckon how many *Zaims* or *Timariots* are in the Province, and how many Provinces are in a Viceroyalty, and lastly, how many Viceroyalties are in such a Part of *Turkey*, whether in *Europe*, *Asia*, or *Africa*; they can by this compute the Number of Forces that that Part of the Empire can furnish; which is as follows: Suppose that, as above express'd, every *Zaim* is to bring between four and nineteen, and every *Timariot* four or under; if we calculate in a Medium for the Whole, and allow every *Zaim* to bring ten Troopers into the Field, and every *Timariot* two, the Forces raised by the several Provinces will be as follows:

Provinces.	Men.
Natalia, or *Asia Minor*,	25728 Number
Caramania, or *Cilicia*,	5060 of Men
Diarbeck, or *Mesopotamia*,	1156
Damascus, or *Sedam*,	3026
Sivas, Part of *Armenia Major*,	11109
Erzerum near *Georgia*,	12316
Van in *Turcomania*	3502
Marasch near *Euphrates*,	1294
Kibros, or *Cyprus*,	2534
Tripoli in *Syria*,	1770
Kika,	1932
Trabezond,	1556
Aleppo,	3258
Tekelder,	2378
Under the High Admiral,	3541
Rumelia, or *Romania*,	27158
In all	117451
And if to this we add the Militia on the Frontiers of *Hungary*, &c.	70000
It amounts to	187451

And

And to this we may add, that in every War there are a great Number of Voluntiers Cavalry, or Adventurers, who live at their own Charge, in hopes of succeeding the Zaims and Timariots who fall in the Service, who, to raise their Fortunes, will engage in the most desperate Enterprizes upon this Foundation, that if they survive they promise themselves Preferment, by succeeding some of the deceased Zaims or Timariots, who were equally exposed; and not only so, but they are taught to believe, that if they die in a War against the Christians, they shall go immediately into Paradise; and buoy'd up with this Hope of a Reward here, or in Paradise, they are so resolute, that at the Attack of a certain City a Timariot's Farm was disposed of eight Times one Day, the first Possessor being kill'd, the next succeeded, and he being killed, the third according to his Merit succeeded, *&c.* to the Number above-mentioned; and when these resolute Voluntiers are added to the former Number, the most moderate Computation cannot suppose the Forces raised by the above-mentioned Provinces only to amount to less than two hundred thousand Men.

They so violate.

Militia of Grand Cairo.

But besides the Militia above-mentioned, there are eighty thousand Timariots in the Province of Grand *Cairo* in *Egypt*, which, according to the former Computation, of every Timariot furnishing two Troopers, amounts to one hundred and sixty thousand Men more. This Country is divided into twelve Districts, commanded by as many Lords, by them called Beys, who have each of them five hundred Horse for their Guards, besides having Command of the other Militia: The Command or Authority of some of them descend from Father to Son; they are so powerful and resolute, that if the Beglerbeg or Viceroy of the Grand Seignior's attempt to impose any Thing upon them that they do not approve of, they commonly stand in their own Defence; and if they find the Viceroy insists upon his Imposition, they imprison or depose him, and yet the Grand Seignior is forced to put up the Affront, lest attempting to reduce them by Force, should cause an universal Revoult through all the Province, and rend it from the Body of the Empire.

Tributary Countries.

The tributary Countries, as the *Tartars*, *Walachians*, *Moldavians*, &c. raise certain Auxiliary Forces, commanded by their own Princes. The Han of the *Crim Tartars* is obliged to bring a hundred thousand Men into the Field, himself at the Head of them, when the Grand Seignior himself commands the *Ottoman* Army; but if the Prime Vizier has the Command of it, it is thought sufficient that the Han's Son, or some of his Generals, enter the Field with forty or fifty thousand. The Princes of *Walachia* and *Moldavia* are always upon such Occasions obliged to attend in Person, with forty or fifty thousand Men.

Sphahi's and Janizaries.

Besides all the Forces above-mentioned, there are the Sphahi's and Janizaries, which are paid out of the Treasury, and may properly be called the Troops of the Houshold. These were formerly Men of some Education taken out of the Seminaries in the Seraglio, and are about twelve thousand: They are in two Bodies, *viz.* the Silachtari, who carried yellow Colours, and the Sphahaoglari, or Servants of the Sphahi's, who carried red Colours; but these latter are now made equal, if not superior to the former, upon the following Occasion.

Sultan *Mahomet* the Third, at a Battle in *Hungary*, observing that the Silachtari gave Ground, earnestly endeavoured to perswade them to rally and charge again, but all in vain, while the Sphahaoglari, or Servants of the Sphahi's, still remaining in a Body, he encouraged them to Charge, and supply the Place of their Masters, which they did with such Resolution and Conduct, that they turn'd the Fortune of the Day, and the Sultan came off victorious; as an Encouragement for which, and to express his Resentment at the Cowardize of the other, he gave them the Pre-eminence of their *quondam* Masters, and allow'd them to carry red Colours from that Time forward.

Armour.

They were arm'd formerly with a Scymetar and Launce, also Bows and Arrows, and sometimes with a Dart which they threw very true, and were taught to take it up again from the Ground in a full Carreer without standing still; but now they they have learn'd the Use of Fire-Arms, as Carbines and Pistols, and some of them have Harness for the Head, Back and Breast, painted the Colour that their Squadron is distinguish'd by.

Asiatick Sphahi's.

The *Asiatick* Sphahi's formerly made a great Figure in the Army, bringing into the Field thirty or forty Men a-piece, with led Horses, Tents, and other Equipages very magnificent; but the Grand Vizier *Caprully* perceiving that this Grandeur and Ambition introduced a Spirit of Faction and Mutiny, beheaded several of them to humble the rest, and keep them in Awe; and now one Tent, with two or three Horses or Mules to carry their Bagage and Provision, will serve ten or twelve of them, and according to their Crimes undergo the same Punishment as the rest, either the Bastinado, or, if their Crime be great, they are sent for by a Messenger, and without being allowed to make any Defence, they are strangled near the Walls of the Palace, and in the Night their Bodies are thrown into the Sea, without any other Ceremony but only firing a great Gun, which is to give Notice that there has been such an Execution, to frighten others from committing the like Crimes.

Pay.

There Pay differs according to their Education, or the Chambers they are taken from, and is from twelve to a hundred Aspers a Day; those of them who are brought up in the Seraglio's of *Ibrahim*, *Bassa*, *Pera*, or *Adrianople*, which are Nurseries for the Art of War; as also those who are employ'd in servile Offices, as cutting Wood for the Court, *&c.* and yet have the Privilege of being entitled Sphahi, have the lowest Pay, which is twelve Aspers a-Day, but those who come from the Grand Seignior's own Seraglio at *Constantinople*, have nineteen Aspers a Day, but others that come from the higher Chambers, as the Laundry, the Turbant Office, the Dispensatory, the Treasury, the Falconer's Lodge, *&c.* have at first thirty Aspers a Day, and at the Instalment of a Grand Seignior five Aspers more is given to all the Sphahi's of the Army, and some of them by Diligence and Application rise to a hundred Aspers a Day, but are never allowed to exceed that Sum.

These Troops may have their Pay quarterly if they require it, or they may forbear it, and have nine Months Pay together, as some chuse it who live at a great Distance from Court; but if they forbear it longer, they never receive above nine Months Arrear, but lose the rest for want of looking after it. There having been great Abuses discovered in the Money being paid at the Paymaster or Treasurer's Houses, by their extorting Gratuities from the Sphahi's for preferring, or paying one before another, which occasioned Mutinies and Disorders, the Vizier *Caprully* ordered the Money to be paid in his Presence to the respective Persons to whom it was due, no Bribe or Reward being extorted from any Person on Account of the Order of their being paid, and the Viziers that succeeded him followed his Example.

Besides these two Bodies of Sphahi's there are four others; as first, the Sag Uleligi, who march on the Right of the Sphaha Oglani, carrying white and red Colours. 2. The Sol Uleligi, who march on

the Left of the Salachtari, with white and yellow Colours. 3. The *Sagureba* Voluntiers, or Soldiers of Fortune, who march on the Right Hand of the Sag Ulefigi, and carry green Colours. 4. The Sol Gureba, who march on the Left Hand of the Ulefigi, and have a white Standard; but theſe four Sorts of Sphahi's or Troopers are never employ'd but upon extraordinary Occaſions, as when a War is entring upon, or the like, and then they do all Manner of Duty; and their Pay is from twelve to twenty Aſpers a Day; one Advantage they have is, that when they have once been entred into this Sort of Supernumerary Company, they are capable of being preferr'd into other Bodies, if their Merit recommend them.

But there is yet another Body, called the *Matuſaraca*, which may be call'd the Grand Seignior's Life-Guards, they are a Sort of Court Favourites, and have had their Education in ſome of the principal Chambers of the Seraglio, there is four or 500 of them, their leaſt Pay is forty Aſpers a Day, they attend the Grand Seignior's Perſon as his Life Guard when he goes abroad.

But we have not yet deſcrib'd the Janizaries which we juſt mention'd; when we begun to ſpeak of the Sphahi's we then join'd them together, becauſe they are taken out of the ſame Seminaries, but with this Difference in their Stations, that the Janizaries always ſerve on Foot. *Amurath* the Third, Emperor of the *Turks*, preſcribed Rules for their Education and Maintenance; and his Prime Vizier order'd, that for the Augmentation of this Militia, every fifth Captive that was taken from the Chriſtians, and was above fifteen Years old, ſhould be given to the Sultan to be added to this Number; ſome of them while young being diſtributed among the *Turkiſh* Peaſants, to learn the Language and Religion of the Country. They did not at firſt exceed ſeven thouſand, but they now amount to twenty five thouſand effective Men; but if we reckon all who have the Name, and all the other Privileges, but not the Pay of Janizaries, they will amount to above a hundred thouſand Men, for there are many who with a Sum of Money purchaſe the Name and Privileges of Janizaries, who are ſcarce ever call'd to actual Service.

This Militia was formerly confin'd to the Children of Chriſtians only, but now Chriſtians or *Turks* are promiſcuouſly taken into thoſe Seminaries, and brought up to laborious Employments, as cutting Wood, carrying Burthens, manuring the Ground, and the like, and alſo ſome are made Cooks, or put to other Employments in the Kitchen; others, that cannot ſpeak the *Turkiſh* Language, are ſent to *Natolia* to plow and ſow the Ground till they are wanted for the Wars, and then they are called to the Chambers of the Janizaries, where they march in Order before the Muſter-Maſter, according to their Seniority, and he having enrolled their Names, they paſs by the Oda Baſſa, or Maſter of the Chamber, who gives every one as he paſſes by a Blow on the Ear, to intimate, that they are under his Command, which is all the Ceremony that is uſed in the Admiſſion of a Janizary.

They are at firſt allow'd, from one Aſper a Day to ſeven, and by Degrees advance to twelve, but a private Janizary never advances above that till he is preferr'd to ſome Office; but beſides this Pay, they have a Table ſpread for them at certain Hours, furniſh'd with Rice, Bread and Fleſh, they have alſo every Year a coarſe warm Soldier's Coat given them, made of Cloth of *Salonica*; ſo that beſides their Wages they may be ſaid to have both Victuals and Cloaths allow'd them; and they are in a great Meaſure exempted from thoſe preſſing Cares that attend People under the want of the common Neceſſaries of Life; and yet they frequently grow ſo mutinous, as to depoſe the Sultan, and demand the Heads of ſome of his Chief Miniſters, whom they ſuſpect to be their Enemies, and will not be appeas'd till they are deliver'd up to them: When a Sedition is intended to be put in Execution, they commonly diſcover it in the publick Divan, whither five or ſix Hundred of them are oblig'd to go twice a Week to attend their Aga or General, at which Time, they have their Food ſent them from the Grand Seignior's Kitchen, and if they have taken any Diſguſt at any great Man, they overturn their Plates of Rice, and ſlight the Entertainment, which the Grand Seignior and his Miniſters often finding to be the Forerunner of an intended Inſurrection, commonly endeavour to appeaſe and redreſs them before it amounts any higher.

Janizaries mutinous.

The Janizaries Chambers in *Conſtantinople*, are one hundred and ſixty two, of which eighty are of an antient, and eight two of a more modern Foundation, and there is generally to every Chamber a Tchorbagi or Captain; theſe are the Dwellings of the unmarried Janizaries, who have two Meals a Day provided for them by the Government. There are five Officers belonging to theſe Chambers; Officers.
1. The *Odabaſhee*, or Maſter of the Chambers, who is alſo Lieutenant of the Company in Time of War. 2. The *Wekilbarg*, or Burſer. 3. The *Bairackle*, who carries the Colours. 4. The *Aſhgee*, or Cook, who is alſo the Executioner: And 5. The Under Cook, who ſummons the married Janizaries that live in *Conſtantinople*, when their Attendance is requir'd; but there are but few of them married, becauſe it would be an Hindrance to their Preferment, otherwiſe there is no Law to reſtrain them.

They account the Janizaries their beſt Soldiers, and depend chiefly upon them in an Engagement; their Arms are Swords and Muskets, which they handle very dexterouſly, but are not Maſters of any Order: The Gunners and Armourers are taken out of the Janizaries, but the Renegado Chriſtians are their beſt Engineers, on whom they have ſuch a Dependance, that they think themſelves quite diſabled in that Reſpect if they cannot have them.

The *Azapes* and *Arcanges*, are another Sort of Inferior Infantry, and are chiefly employ'd as Pioneers, to fill up a Ditch, or to blunt the Sword of an Enemy, and are frequently detach'd before the Army to ravage and plunder the Enemies Country; in which if they behave well, they are ſometimes advanc'd to be the Janizaries. *Azapes* and *Arcanges*.

The Janizaries, in late Times, are not ſo powerful, nor ſo much reſpected in *Turkey* as formerly; for their Seditions have been ſo fatal to the Miniſters, and even to the Emperors themſelves, that they have ſuppreſt their Power, and now expoſe them to every trifling Service, and introduced Servants, Mechanicks, and almoſt any Sort of idle Fellows in their Room; inſomuch, that they are now generally a raw undiſciplin'd Multitude, and by this means their Power is leſſened, for they and the Sphahi had ſo much Power lodg'd in their Hands, that when they united, it was dangerous affronting them, or calling them to any Account; but now their Spirits, as well as their Power is broke, and they are neither a Terror to the *Turkiſh* Empire, nor are they the Glory and Security of it, as they have been formerly. Janizaries decline

There are another Sort of Men, which ſome rank among the Military Forces, becauſe they wear both offenſive and defenſive Arms, they are call'd *Chaouſes* or Meſſengers; they are chiefly employ'd in Civil Proceſſes, carrying Orders, and in arreſting and executing State Criminals; there are about five or ſix hundred of them, and their Pay is from twelve to forty Aſpers a Day; their Commander is call'd the *Chaous Baſchee*, they attend at the Prime Vizier's Palace, to execute the Orders of the Porte in any Part of the Empire, and Meſſen gers.

are

are ſometimes diſpatch'd to Foreign Princes: The Arms they uſed were a Bow and Arrows, a Scymetar, and a long Staff with a great Head. Thoſe of them that belong to the Prime Vizier, or Viceroys, have their Staves plated with Silver: As they ſerve all Summons's, and execute the Orders of all the Courts of Juſtice, they have very conſiderable Profits belonging to their Office.

Turkiſh Camp.

WHEN the *Turkiſh* Army takes the Field, the Janizaries and the reſt of the Infantry are poſted in the Front, and pitch their Tents round about that of their Aga or General; and about the Center of the Camp are erected the glorious Pavilion of the Grand Vizier, as alſo that of the Chief Steward, the Chancellor, the Lord Treaſurer, and the Maſter of the Ceremonies; theſe five Pavilions encompaſs a ſpacious Field, in the Center of which is a lofty Tent or Canopy, where People attend who have any Buſineſs in the Divan, the Court of the Vizier, or with the Generals or Officers of State. In this Place alſo, Criminals are corrected or executed; and within this Circle alſo is the Treaſure, pil'd up in ſmall Cheſts, and ſurrounded by a Guard of Sphahi's, and near the Grand Vizier's Quarters ſtand the Tents of the Baſſa's and Beys, and other Perſons of Diſtinction. The Sphahi's, and thoſe who guard the Baggage of the Horſe, pitch their Tents in the Rear; and on the Right Hand of the Vizier's Quarters ſtand the Train of Artillery and Ammunition.

Each two Tents.

PERSONS of Diſtinction in the Army, have always Duplicates of every Thing belonging to their Tents, ſo that when they are to remove, they ſend their Servants beforehand to the Place intended for their next pitching, and there they ſet up the ſpare Tents, ready for their Maſter's Reception, before they pull the other down, where he reſided laſt; but this double Baggage obliges them to employ Abundance of Servants and Camels, which makes their Armies appear very numerous, and be very expenſive, though not one half of them that appear in the Field are diſciplin'd fighting Men.

Neceſſary Places.

WHEN they are encamped in the Field, they are very careful to avoid any offenſive Smell, which doubtleſs would be very nauſeous in thoſe hot Countries, and therefore they have deep Pits dug in the Field, at a proper Diſtance, and encompaſs'd with Canvas, like little Tents; theſe ſerve for Conveniences to do the Offices of Nature, ſo that the Camp is free from all Ordure, or any Smell ariſing from thence.

March by Night.

WHEN they march in the Summer-time they travel moſtly by Night, to avoid the exceſſive Heat, having ſo many Lights as ſufficiently diſcover the Road to them. Their Lights are not Torches, but a bituminous oily ſort of Wood, which they burn in an Iron Grate, on the Top of a Pole, which diffuſes its Light at a great Diſtance.

Little Navigation uſed.

THEY do not ſeem to have any great Genius for Navigation, as having but few Ships, conſidering the vaſt Extent of the Empire, and the many fine Sea-ports in it. Their grand Fleet ſeldom conſiſts of more than thirty Men of War, beſides Gallies. Thoſe of *Conſtantinople* are tolerable large, and finely ſet off with Gilding, Carving, and other Ornaments; by which Means they make a very handſome Appearance. The *Turks* have little Notion of Ship-building, moſt of their Shipping being either bought from abroad, or built there by Renegado Chriſtians.

THEY in ſome meaſure ſupply the Art of Sailing with the Slavery of Rowing, eſpecially in their Galleys; for though *Turkey* does not breed many able Mariners to navigate their Ships, yet their own Country and *Tartary* affords them Plenty of Slaves to lug at the Oars. Theſe are what they ſo much truſt to, that there are People in *Conſtantinople* who make it a Trade or Buſineſs to let Slaves out for the Sea Service during the Summer Seaſon; but when they cannot procure Slaves enough, they ſend out Officers into the Country, who take one able Man out of every twenty Families, obliging the other nineteen to contribute to his Maintenance. The Zaims alſo and Timariots are obliged by their Tenures to find a certain Number of Men for the Sea Service; but as the *Turks* ſeldom ſail out of their own Dominions, nor import much foreign Merchandize in their own Bottoms, we cannot expect there can be any Plenty of able Mariners, and conſequently not much can be expected from their Fleets.

CHAP. VIII.

Treats of the Revenues of the Grand Seignior, and of his State and Grandeur in which he appears in Publick.

Revenues.

THERE are ſeveral Articles which contribute very conſiderably to augment the Grand Seignior's Revenues, as by the Cuſtoms; alſo by the Produce of the Demeſne Lands. There is likewiſe a Capitation Tax impoſed upon every Subject of the Empire that is not of the Mahometan Religion; and to this we may add the annual Tributes paid by the *Crim Tartar*, the Princes of *Moldavia* and *Walachia*, the little Republick of *Raguſa*, and Part of *Mingrelia*; and of a Million and a half of Money levy'd annually in *Egypt*, he allows a Million to pay the Officers and Forces of that Province, and the other half Million he puts in his own Coffers; but all theſe taken together are far ſhort of the Sums he extorts from his Viceroys and great Officers of State, which he allows them the Honour to call Preſents. He is the next Heir to all Places and Eſtates of the deceaſed Officers; for, as has been obſerv'd before, when a great Officer dies, his Subſtance does not devolve upon his Children, but upon the Crown, only the Children have an Allowance for a ſlender Maintenance; ſometimes if he finds an Officer very rich he cuts him off, under a Pretence of Miſconduct, and ſeizes his Eſtate and Effects to himſelf; or if a Poſt of Honour or Profit becomes vacant by the Death of the Officer that enjoy'd it, the Place is in the Grand Seignior's Diſpoſal, and muſt be purchas'd of him with a vaſt Premium or Preſents, (*See Chap.* V.)

Money raiſed other Ways.

IF there be a preſſing Neceſſity for Money upon ſome particular Occaſion, as a War with the Chriſtians, or the like, and the Treaſury be low, the great Moſques muſt be conſulted for a Supply, and they never fail, they being exceeding rich; nor does he make any Scruple of Conſcience to employ this ſacred Treaſure in Defence of their Superſtition, eſpecially againſt the Unbelievers, as they call the Chriſtians.

His private Treaſure

THE Grand Seignior's private Treaſure is lodg'd in a ſubterraneous Vault, where never any but himſelf, or ſome of the Pages of the Treaſury, enter.

ter. The Gold is put up in Leather Bags, and lock'd up in ſtrong Cheſts; and when there is a ſufficient Quantity of Gold in the outer Chambers to fill two hundred Bags, the Vizier gives notice to the Grand Seignior, who comes in Perſon to ſee them remov'd, and to ſeal the Cheſts they are in.

Land of the Zaims.

But beſides what have yet been mention'd, there is the Rents ariſing from the Lands of the Zaims and Timariots, which at leaſt are found to be ſufficient to maintain a hundred thouſand Men. What he borrows of private People he pays punctually again, and need not be accounted any Part of his Revenue; but few care to be known to be able to lend, leſt he ſhould, under a Pretence of keeping them from being too powerful, ſeize their Effects, and by keeping them under Subjection, enrich himſelf: But what he borrows of his Viceroys and great Officers he ſeldom returns, and yet they neither dare deny to lend it, nor murmur for the Loſs of it, leſt he ſhould demand their all, their Places, and ſometimes their Heads too. He muſt put up with his Loſs; and if he has any Way to retrieve it, it muſt be by pillaging and oppreſſing the Subject, to make it up, and then he is no Loſer; and hence it may in general be ſaid, that almoſt all the Money in the Empire is the Grand Seignior's Revenue, ſince what he borrows of his great Officers he ſeldom repays, and they again reimburſe themſelves out of the Subſtance of the Subject; ſo that they bear the Burden, and account for all at laſt.

The State in which the Sultan goes to Moſque.

The Sultan goes in State to the Moſque of St. *Sophia* on *Fridays*; the Janizaries in their Ceremonial Caps and other Dreſſes, make a Lane from the Gate of the Seraglio to that of the Moſque: The Cavalcade is begun by 60 or 80 Meſſengers on Foot, preceded by their Chief on Horſeback: After them come ſome hundreds of Boſtangies, with their Commander alſo on Horſeback before them: Next comes the Chancellor, accompany'd by the Judge of *Conſtantinople*; the Chief Juſtices; the Imans; the Molla's; and after them the Mufti or Grand Pontiff, mounted on a ſtately Horſe; then thirty or forty Gentlemen of the Seraglio, and twenty or thirty of the Life-Guards and as many Pages form two Lines, and in the middle of thoſe Life-Guards rides the Grand Seignior, on a fine *Arabian* Horſe, with the Bridle, Saddle and Houſing glittering with Gold and precious Stones. The Sultan on common Days wears but one Plume of Feathers; but he wears three in his Turbant upon extraordinary Occeaſions; one before, and one of each Side of his Head, that which is before is adorn'd with a Roſe of Jewels, with a Diamond of an extraordinary Size in the middle of it.

The Sword-bearer is next after, and a little to the Right of the Grand Seignior; he carries a Sabree in his Hand, the Hilt and Scabbard of which is cover'd with Precious Stones; then follows the Cup-bearer with a Veſſel of Water, and after him the Maſter of the Turbant, theſe three all on Horſeback; after them follow the white Eunuchs, and the young Gentlemen educated in the Seraglio; and after them follow ſome led Horſes, which cloſe the Cavalcade.

When he goes by Water.

When the Grand Seignior goes by Water he takes but a ſmall Retinue with him; he has Summer-houſes belonging to the Seraglio which ſtand upon the Water, and there he goes into his Galliot, and is row'd to the *Black Sea* to take the Air; his Galliot has four and twenty Benches of Oars on a Side, and to every Oar is two Men, wearing only Shirts and Drawers, and have red high Caps in form of a Sugar-loaf.

Walks Incognito

The Sultan uſed often to walk Incognito in the Streets of *Conſtantinople*, and would go into the Shops of the Bakers and Butchers, to ſee how his Edicts were obſerv'd; and if he found they ſold their reſpective Proviſion above the Price limited by his Order, he immediately made a Sign to his Executioner to take off the Offender's Head; but though Covetouſneſs in ſelling above the ſtated Price coſt many a Head, yet far ſhort of what were ſacrific'd to the ſmoaking Tobacco, notwithſtanding that it was ſtrictly prohibited upon Pain of Death, on Account of the frequent Fires that were occaſion'd by it.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Manner of depoſing one Sultan and ſetting up another; with their Method of Inſtalling and Crowning the New one: With a particular Account of the depoſing Sultan Muſtapha, *and the Advancement of Sultan* Achmet *to the Throne by the Soldiery.*

THIS Revolution happen'd in *Turkey*, in the Year 1703, and was brought about as follows: The Grand Seignior reſiding at *Adrianople* about the Beginning of *May*, and ſome time before and after, created a great Uneaſineſs among the People of *Conſtantinople*, becauſe the Trade was in a great meaſure diverted from that Metropolis; and they apprehending that the Mufti by his Advice, was the Chief Author and Occaſion of this Remove of the Court, and of the Uneaſineſs of the People, they exclaim'd moſt againſt him, which the Caimacan of *Conſtantinople* the Mufti's Son, perceiving, ſent Advice to the Court at *Adrianople* about it, but little Notice was taken, much leſs had the diſcontented People of *Conſtantinople* any Redreſs; and this Diſaffection was ſtill increas'd by their Apprehenſions, that the Mufti either farm'd out or ſold to the beſt Bidder, the publick Offices and Places of Truſt and Profit, and that by this Means, his own Family had engroſs'd the moſt advantageous Poſts in the Empire; and not only ſo, but that he made no ſcruple in iſſuing out his Fetſa's for exempting the greateſt Miniſters, to make Room for his own Creatures; and that the Oppreſſions, in which he was indulg'd in the Practice of, alienated the Hearts of the Subjects from the Grand Seignior, and made them look upon him as a Tyrant.

This Diſaffection continued and increas'd till *July* following, when ſome hundreds of the Zebidgies (which is thoſe who have the Care of the Arms,) ſet up a Standard in the *Atmeidan* (a great Square) in *Conſtantinople*, proclaiming that every good Muſſulman, as he valu'd their antient Laws and Cuſtoms, and his own Liberty, ſhould repair thither, and they were ſoon join'd by others of the Soldiery;

Soldiery; but the Zebidgi Baſſa, or Chief of thoſe that had the Care of the Arms, being one of the Mufti's Creatures, hid himſelf, as not being willing to appear at the Head of them, leſt he ſhould diſoblige the Mufti; however, the Gunners alſo repair'd to the Standard of the Male-contents, and having join'd them, they march'd in a Body towards the Seraglio, and meeting with the Vice-Aga of the Janizaries, at the Head of a Detachment of thoſe Troops who were going to poſt themſelves in the Seraglio, the Janizaries all deſerted their Aga, and came over to the Zebidgies, and alſo demanded their Colours of their Aga, and although he, being overpower'd by their Number, did not think fit to deny them, yet he would have excuſed himſelf by telling them that he had left the Colours at home, but they not being ſatisfied, one of the Soldiers cleft his Head with a Sabre, and when he had kill'd him, took the Colours out of his Boſom, and putting them upon a Pike-ſtaff, proclaim'd that if any of their Body did not repair to the Standard they ſhould be deem'd Infidels; whereupon the Janizaries aſſembled, and march'd with the Zebidgies to inveſt the Seraglio, where being come, they knock'd at the Iron Gate, and the Porters, being of the ſame Kidney, ſoon open'd to them; whereupon the Caimacan, the Mufti's Son, fled, and the Captain of the Porters, upon the Promiſe of his Life, and the Continuance of his Place, came over to them.

The Malecontents thus encreaſing, and amounting to ſuch a Number, were further augmented by the Addition of the Sphahi's or Troopers, (*of which ſee Chap.* VIII.) and now they are ſo ſtrong that they reſolv'd to leave a Garriſon in the Seraglio, and encamp at the *Atmeidan*, the Square where they firſt aſſembled, and about which the Janizaries have their ordinary Quarters. Here they choſe one *Achmet Baſſa*, who was then at his Country Seat near the *Boſphorus*, for Prime Vizier, whom they dragg'd againſt his Will from his Retirement, and even compell'd him to accept of the Command; which being accompliſh'd, they likewiſe conſtituted Viziers of the Bench, a new Chancellor, and other Members of the Divan, and then publiſh'd a Manifeſto, with their new Mufti's Fetfa to it, ſummoning the Grand Seignior to appear before the *Char Alla*, a Tribunal ſo ſacred, that whoſoever refuſeth to obey the Citation, is deem'd an Infidel; they alſo required him to deliver up the Mufti to the People, and this Manifeſto they ſent to the Grand Seignior, at his Court at *Adrianople*.

In the mean time the new Vizier ſent for the Interpreters of the *European* Ambaſſadors, deſiring that their Maſters would keep their People from ſtraggling abroad, and that no Taverns ſhould be open'd under their Protection, and prohibiting all Vintners whatſoever to ſuffer any *Turks* to have Wine under ſevere Penalties; and all the Shops were obliged to be ſhut, except thoſe where Proviſions were to be ſold, and the Women were prohibited not to go out of their own Houſes.

The Sultan was ſo far from obeying their Summons, that he aſſembled his Forces to march out againſt them, which when the Male contents had alſo that he had made a Preſent of a hundred and eighty Purſes to the Janizaries about him, and that *Mahomet's* Standard being ſet up with a Loaf, a Sabre, and the Alchoran laid upon a Table, according to the Cuſtom of the *Turks*, and that he had cauſed an Oath of Allegiance to be adminiſtred to his Army, which conſiſted of ſeventy thouſand Men.

They had alſo been inform'd that the Sultan's Mufti had publiſh'd a *Fetfa* in the City of *Adrianople*, and in the Army, declaring the People of *Conſtantinople* Conſpirators, Infidels, and Rebels, divorc'd from their Wives, and unworthy to bear the Name of Muſſulmen, and ought to be extirpated for their Rebellion, exhorting all true Muſſulmen to take up Arms for the Emperor againſt them; whereupon the Mufti of the Male-contents iſſued a like Fetfa againſt the *Kyſilbaſh*, as they ſtil'd the Mufti and his Adherents, for ſo they call the *Perſian* Hereticks.

In the midſt of all this Combuſtion it is very remarkable that all Things were very quiet at *Conſtantinople*, the Markets were regularly kept, and no Diſorders were heard of; the Imans and Clergy, with the Head of the Malecontents, united in adviſing the People not to diſgrace a good Cauſe by committing Outrages; and what contributed moſt to this Security was the uncommon Generoſity of the Clergy, who were content to part with the Treaſure of their Moſques to pay the Troops regularly.

The Malecontents having made this Progreſs, they held a Council on the eighth of *Auguſt*, in the ſame Year 1703, wherein they came to a Reſolution, that the Sultan *Muſtapha*, the preſent, or rather late, Emperor, having neglected to appear before the great Tribunal three *Fridays* ſince the Summons were iſſu'd, had forfeited his Crown by Law, and that they would proceed to depoſe him, and ſet another upon the Throne, which their Mufti had confirm'd by his Fetfa, and the Reſolution was committed to writing, and carried by a Janizary on the Point of a Spear through the City and Army, the *Mueſtin* at the ſame Time concurring with him in publiſhing the Contents of it from the Top of the Moſques. A Council held.

In the mean Time *Aſſan Firally* Baſſa (who had till now conceal'd himſelf in his Haram to ſee what Turn Things would take) began to appear, and, upon their aſſuring him of their Protection, and maintaining his Dignity and Poſſeſſion in the Poſt of Caimacan, undertook the Command of a Garriſon in *Conſtantinople*, conſiſting of twenty five thouſand Men, which being ſettled, the Army of the Malecontents march'd out of *Conſtantinople*, and ſoon after their March held a Council, wherein, after ſome Debates, it was agreed to ſet up Sultan *Achmet*, the only Brother and Heir of the (then) preſent Emperor, and to put him in Poſſeſſion of the Throne, as Grand Seignior of all the *Turkiſh Empire*. A Garriſon.

The Troops of the Malecontents proceeded in their March and encamp'd at a Place call'd *Dabout Pacha*, and were now amounted to the Number of ſixty five thouſand Men, beſides ſeven or eight thouſand Men arrived from *Aſia*, their Artillery being arrived here before them; and now the Gates of *Conſtantinople* were all ſhut except two, and at them ſtrong Guards were kept, and an Oath was adminiſter'd to thoſe who profeſs'd to be of the Party of the Malecontents, whereby they engaged themſelves not to lay down their Arms till they obtain'd Redreſs for their Grievances. Malecontents in Creaſe

But on the other Side, the Mufti of the late, or preſent, Sultan, repreſented that the Army of the Malecontents, as compos'd of Students, Shopkeepers, *&c.* was an undiſciplined Mob, who would diſperſe upon the Appearance of the Royal Troops; upon which they thought that a Body of thirty thouſand Men was ſufficient to oppoſe their March,

and accordingly they detach'd that Number; but the Generals of the Royaliſts (ſo they are ſtill call'd by way of Diſtinction from the Malecontents,) finding their new Enemies a more regular Body than they imagin'd, and which was more, their Numbers were vaſtly Superior, they propoſed to treat with them, to which the Malecontents gave this poſitive Anſwer, *That the Emperor had long known their Demands, and that they ſhould treat with none but himſelf in Perſon*, upon which the Imperial Officers made a precipitate Retreat, and many of the Troops deſerted, and went over to the Malecontents.

The diſaffected Party thus gaining Strength every Day, they continued their March towards *Adrianople*; which the Royaliſts being adviſed of, advanced half a Day's Journey with an Army of fourſcore thouſand men, commanded by the *Kiaca Bey*, to meet them, and arriving within Cannon Shot of the Enemy, Orders were given for the Attack, but the Royaliſts, inſtead of preparing for the Attack, moſt of them likewiſe deſerted and join'd the Enemy; whereupon the Janizaries alſo refuſed to fight for the *Kefilebaſh*, or Heretick Mufti of the Emperor, as they call'd him, and the *Kiaca*, or General, ſeeing this, declared alſo for the Malecontents, and the two Armies immediately united, except a ſmall Body of the *Albanians*, who retired to the Emperor's Pavilion with the melancholy News of the Deſertion of his Forces; the Sultan hearing this, immediately retreated to the Seraglio at *Adrianople*, there to attend his future Fortune, while his Prime Vizier and Mufti fled to ſecure their own Lives.

Seize the Sultan's Camp.

The Armies thus united in Favour of the Malecontents, took poſſeſſion of the Sultan's Camp, where his own Pavilion was left ſtanding, and made a general Diſcharge of great and ſmall Shot as a Signal of their Union: And a great Council being held, it was unanimouſly agreed to ſend the Aga of the Janizaries, the Boſtangi Baſſa, or Captain of the Porters, the Zebidgi Baſſa, or Captain of thoſe that take care of the Arms, and the Spahilar Baſſa, or Captain of the Troopers, each with two thouſand of their reſpective Forces, to the Seraglio at *Adrianople*, to demand Sultan *Achmet* in order to proclaim him Emperor; and being arrived before the Gate of the Palace, Proclamation was made by a Janizary that Sultan *Achmet* was elected Emperor by the Army and People, and he was required to come out to them and take the Government upon him; and Sultan *Muſtapha* the (yet) preſent Emperor appearing, the Zebidgi Baſſa declared to him that he was no longer Emperor, having forfeited his Crown, and that he therefore deſired that Sultan *Achmet* might be brought out to them; and the old Sultan *Muſtapha*, ſeeing it in vain to reſiſt, fetch'd his Brother *Achmet*, who was in the Priſon where the Princes of the Blood are kept, and preſented him to them, and then withdrew without expreſſing the leaſt Reluctancy or Uneaſineſs.

Manner of their Election.

There were then ſome Queſtions propoſed to Sultan *Achmet* in the Name of the People, and previous to their Allegiance to him, as, if he would govern his People according to their antient Cuſtoms, if he would reſide at his Capital of *Conſtantinople* in Times of Peace, if he would deliver up to them the late Mufti *Feſulla Effendi*, &c. to all which he anſwer'd in the Affirmative; upon which they unanimouſly cry'd out, *Let Sultan* Achmet *live and reign!* and inviting him to the Army, he was there ſolemnly proclaim'd their Emperor, after which the Viziers and all the Generals paid their Homage to him.

The News of the Succeſs of the Malecontents ſoon reach'd *Conſtantinople*, who, upon Confirmation thereof, and of the Depoſing of Sultan *Muſtapha*, and the Advancement of Sultan *Achmet* to the Throne, immediately cauſed the new Emperor to be pray'd for in the Moſques, and all Matters of State were tranſacted in his Name; the Gates of the City and the Shops were open'd, and every Body expreſt an entire Satisfaction under this Revolution; ſo univerſal was the Diſguſt conceiv'd againſt the late Mufti, and againſt his Maſter, the Sultan *Muſtapha*, for protecting and encouraging him in his Proceedings.

But their Reſentment did not ſtop here; for though the late Mufti had made his Eſcape, yet the new Emperor was no ſooner proclaim'd, but Search was immediately made through the City of *Adrianople* for him, but they finding that he was fled to *Philippopolis*, a Detachment of Troopers were ſent after him, but he was gone from thence the Night before they arrived; but they, reſolved not to leave off the Purſuit, divided themſelves into two Parties, and took different Routs, and took him as he was about to embark on the *Black Sea*; whereupon they put him into a Peaſant's Waggon, and convey'd him to *Adrianople*, where they did not want Inclination to have executed him, but the *Turks* believing that a Mufti, or Supreme Pontiff, is not to be ſubject to any human Judicature, they could not as ſuch proceed to his Execution; however, as they were inexorable, they firſt diveſted him of his Eccleſiaſtical Dignity, and conferr'd a Temporal one upon him, making him Baſſa of *Sophia*, and being brought under that Denomination, they could proceed to try him as a Lay-man; for it is to be obſerv'd, that as their Prieſts take that Office upon them without any Ceremony of Conſecration, ſo there need be no Ceremony uſed in diveſting them of that, but by conferring upon them ſome ſecular Employment. The old Mufti taken.

When they had contrived this Means to make him liable to the Examination, they firſt put him to the Rack to make him confeſs where his Money and Effects were, which on ſuch Occaſions always fall to the Sultan; and then he was deliver'd up to the Soldiery, who, being exaſperated againſt him, ſet him upon an Aſs, with his Face to the Tail, which they obliged him to hold in his Hand; and thus mounted, a poor *Jew* took the Aſs's Halter in his Hand and led him through the principal Streets of the City, the irritated People crying before and after him, *This is the Man that has given pernicious Advice to Emperors, violated the Laws he ought to have maintain'd, and enrich'd himſelf at the publick Expence; behold the* Perſian *Heretick!* and in this Condition they brought him to a Place where there are old Cloaths ſold, call'd the *Louſe Market*, and forcing the old Mufti to diſmount, one of the Soldiers ſever'd his Head from his Body with one Stroke of his Sabre, and both Head and Body were thrown into the River; and next Morning his two Sons were beheaded in Priſon, and their Eſtates confiſcated. Rack him. Expoſe him. Behead him.

The new Emperor's next Buſineſs was to ſet forwards for *Conſtantinople*, and arriving at *Dahout Baſhaw*, near that City, on the fifteenth of *September*, he appointed the Ceremony of his Inſtallation to be the eighteenth of the ſame Month, in the Moſque of *Job*, in *Ypre*, one of the Suburbs of *Conſtantinople*, which Moſque they ſay takes its Name from *Job*'s being buried here. In this Moſque they keep the Standard of *Mahomet*, and an old Sabre ſaid to have been worn by him; to which they pay ſuch a Veneration, that the girding of this Sabre on the Emperor at his Acceſſion is equivalent to the ſetting a Crown upon a Prince's Head with us; and this Ceremony is perform'd by the Agdi Becktaſſe, who according to their Tradition is always to be a Deſcendant from *Job*.

When the Day appointed for the Inſtallation of the new Sultan, *Achmet*, was come, the late Sultan *Muſtapha*, about ſeven in the Morning, was brought into *Conſtantinople* in a cover'd Waggon, ſurrounded by white Eunuchs, and guarded by a Detachment of Janizaries, and was convey'd to one of thoſe Inſtallation.

Apart-

Apartments, or Priſons, in the Seraglio, where thoſe of the Royal Blood are uſually kept; after him follow'd his only Daughter, his Siſter and the Empreſs Dowager in other Waggons, attended by their Slaves, and after them came about thirty other cover'd Waggons with Women belonging to the depos'd Sultan, ſurrounded by black Eunuchs, and guarded by another Detachment of Janizaries at ſome Diſtance in the Front and Rear of the Waggons, who convey'd them to the Old Palace.

His Entry

About half an Hour after eight the new Sultan began to make a magnificent Entry, attended by all the Officers of State, paſſing through a double Line of Sphahies and Janizaries, who were drawn up between *Dahout Baſhaw* and the Moſque where the Ceremony was to be perform'd; but it was obſerved that he did not appear like an extraordinary Horſeman, leaning forward almoſt to the Neck of his Horſe; but it is ſuppoſed that he, as well as moſt other of the Eaſtern Princes, underſtood the Inhabitants of the Seraglio better than riding or managing a Horſe, which Indulgence in their Youth contributes much to their being weak in Politicks.

The Emperor being arrived at the Suburb of *Ypre*, he diſmounted at the Gate of the Moſque between ten and eleven a Clock, where Prayers were ſaid upon that Occaſion; after which the Agdi Becktaſſe girded the Sabre about him, and put the Turbant adorn'd with rich Feathers upon the Sultan's Head, after which the Mufti pray'd for a Bleſſing upon the Emperor, and Succeſs to his Arms againſt the Infidels, and exhorted him to propagate the Mahometan Faith, *&c.* after which the Mufti embraced his Knees, and the Agi of the Janizaries, the chief Meſſenger, and the other Officers of State, kiſs'd the Hem of his Veſt, and the Ceremony concluded with the Diſcharge of the great Guns, and the Acclamations of the People through whom he paſs'd; and the Way being lined in his Return to the Seraglio in the ſame Manner as it was from thence to the Moſque, he returned thither with the Prophet's Sabre by his Side, which he ſent back to be repoſited in its Place as ſoon as he arrived at the Seraglio.

While the Ceremony was performing, the three Sons of the late Sultan *Muſtapha*, and *Ibrahim* the Emperor's Couſin, being in cover'd Waggons, and guarded by Eunuchs and Janizaries, were carried to their ſeveral Apartments in the Palace; as was alſo the Haram of the new Emperor, which conſiſted of above a hundred beautiful Damſels, which had been preſented to him ſince he had been declar'd Emperor.

CHAP. X.

Of the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, and of the Puniſhments inflicted upon various Offenders in Turkey.

MAHOMET being both Prince and Prieſt, both Civil and Eccleſiaſtical Authority was lodg'd in him, and his Succeſſors, the Caliphs of *Babylon*, bore the ſame for ſeveral hundred Years afterwards; but as the Spiritual and Temporal Power is now divided, the Grand Seignior his Viziers and Viceroys bear the Authority in judicial Affairs, though the Mufti is conſulted in the Affair, but the Emperor does as he pleaſes nevertheleſs; only in the Caſe of State Criminals, the Emperor cannot cauſe them to be put to Death without the Mufti's Fetfa; but that is ſeldom deny'd if the Emperor requires it, or if the Mufti ſhould refuſe it, the Emperor can depoſe him, and ſubſtitute another in his Room.

Cadiſiſquers.

Next to the Mufti are the Cadiliſquers, or Chief Juſtices of Provinces, of which thoſe of *Romania*, *Anatolia*, and *Egypt* are the Chief; theſe are ſuppoſed to be Eccleſiaſticks as well as the Mufti, and may be controul'd by the Viceroys of their reſpective Provinces, but in Caſes where the Soldiery is concern'd, the Cadiliſquers have the determining Voice.

The Alchoran is all the Statute Book that they make uſe of, and by it they are directed to determine and decide Differences, though ſometimes different Conſtructions put upon the reſpective Paſſages in the Alchoran give an unexpected Turn to Affairs to be decided, and it is reaſonable to expect that amongſt *Turks*, as well as among Chriſtians, a little Money, or ſomething equivalent, may add Force to a Clauſe which had otherwiſe had but a ſmall Share in the Queſtion.

The Judges in great Towns are call'd Molla's, and thoſe of ſmaller Towns are call'd Cadies, but are both deem'd Eccleſiaſticks, and receive their Authority from the Mufti; they determine Controverſies both Eccleſiaſtical and Civil, and where Marriage Contracts or Divorces come into the Diſpute, they determine them in a ſummary Way; but, as above obſerved, they rather adviſe than paſs Sentence in Capital Caſes, and confirm the Sentence by a Fetfa, which Sentence is commonly pronounc'd by the Grand Seignior, or his Viceroys, or Viziers, and only confirm'd by the Mufti.

But if a Viceroy, or Baſſa, is but in the leaſt ſuſpected of Diſloyalty or Miſconduct, that is ſufficient to bring him to a Trial, and condemn him too, without any Evidence in order to his further Conviction; for as all the Fortune of a State Delinquent devolves upon the Crown, a ſmall Charge will convict them, and it is common for ſuch to be condemn'd before they acquaint them with the Nature of the Offence they are charg'd with, or the Names of their Accuſers, or allow them Liberty to make a Defence, but to order Sentence to be executed, which is done by diſpatching a Capigi with the Imperial Decree to take off the Viceroy's or Baſſa's Head, without allowing him to plead for himſelf, or any other Ceremony required except the Mufti's Fetfa, as before obſerved, which for Form's ſake, according to their Conſtitution, is all that is neceſſary.

But to prevent any Reſiſtance, in Caſe the Capigi would meet with Oppoſition in the Execution of his Office, he carries an Order to the Civil and Military Officers of the Place to aſſiſt him if Occaſion requires; but this is ſeldom found neceſſary, ſo blindly paſſive are they under the arbitary Sentence of their Prince, and ſo entirely bigotted to the Doctrine of Predeſtination, that they do not impute their Sufferings either to their own Demerit or their Prince's Tyranny, but to an irreſiſtible Fate which was from the Beginning ordain'd for them.

When the Capigi comes to execute his Tragical Office, he firſt acquaints the Cadi and the principal Officers of the Place with the Subject of his Errand,

Method of proceeding in Offenders in *Turkey*.

rand, and enquires after the Affairs of the condemn'd Perſon, and then goes to the condemn'd Baſſa's, or Viceroy's, Palace, and preſents the Grand Seignior's Orders to him, which the Baſſa, or Viceroy, undauntedly receives with Tokens of the higheſt Reſpect, and reading it, he puts it to his Head, and ſays, *the Will of God and the Emperor be done*, or Words to that Purpoſe, expreſſes his entire Reſignation to the Sentence he is under, and has commonly about an Hour granted him for his private Thoughts, which ſome would imagine is to ſettle his Domeſtick Affairs, but I cannot find that that would be of any uſe to him, ſince he is now dead in Law, and all his Effects fall to the Government of courſe; but whether he ſpends that Hour in Devotion, or to make an Inventory of his Treaſure, is uncertain; but the latter ſeems to be improbable, for what Pleaſure can he have in having an Account of that Treaſure, which within an Hour he muſt leave, and which, after he is expired, muſt go out of his Family, and immediately fall into the Poſſeſſion of the Grand Seignior.

When this ſhort Reſpite is expired, the Capigi gives him a Silken Cord, which he has provided for the Purpoſe, and the Baſſa, or Viceroy, ties it about his own Neck, and, when he has ſaid a ſhort Prayer, the Capigi's Servant throws him upon the Floor, and by drawing the Cord tight, they ſoon diſpatch him, which done they cut off his Head, and carry it to Court to ſhew it to the Sultan.

Whether this laviſh Reſignation may be imputed to Fortitude and Reſolution, or to the puſillanimous and paſſive Spirits of thoſe Sufferers, who cannot properly be call'd either Victims or Martyrs, we cannot determine, but there ſeems to be a much greater Influence of Bravery in the following Account of *Aſſan* Baſſa, who at the Beginning of the Revolution, mention'd in the laſt Chapter, was made Cammacan of *Conſtantinople* by the Malecontents, and being at his Government, ſome Diſtance from Court, Sultan *Muſtapha* (being then reigning and not yet depoſed,) ſent a Capigi Baſſa to take off his Head, which Sentence was ſuppoſed to be occaſion'd by the Inſtigation of the then Mufti, Sultan *Muſtapha*'s Tool, who was ſuppoſed to be the Occaſion of the Alienation of the Hearts of Sultan *Muſtapha*'s Subjects from him, and of the Revolution which follow'd, as in Chap. IX. But *Aſſan* Baſſa, apprehenſive of this, contracted an intimate Friendſhip with the Cadi and other inferior Officers of the Place, and by his Bounty and impartial Adminiſtration render'd himſelf very popular in the Government, and gain'd their Hearts ſo much that when the Capigi came to enquire privately of the Cadi and other People into the Character of *Aſſan*, and whether he ſhould be likely to meet with any Reſiſtance in the Execution of his Office, they aſſured him that he would find him entirely reſign'd to the Emperor's Pleaſure, and that he had no occaſion to take any Soldiers with him; whereupon the Capigi went to the Baſſa's Palace, and preſented him with the Imperial Order.

The Baſſa diſſembled the moſt profound Submiſſion, and kiſs'd the Order with great Reſpect, and, having read it over, made an Inventory of his Effects, ſeemingly for the Uſe of the Emperor, and deſired only half an Hour's Time to take leave of his Family, which being granted, he left his Steward to entertain the Capigi, and for a little Time retired.

But as he had no Deſign of leaving the World ſo ſoon as the Capigi expected, ſo he did not employ his Time in taking leave of his Family, but in aſſembling his Friends and faithful Servants, and having told them of the cruel Meſſage the Capigi had brought, they with one Conſent reſolved to hazard Life and every Thing elſe in his Defence, rather than like Cowards to ſtand by and look on to ſee him ſo barbarouſly executed.

The Scheme being thus laid, he return'd to the Capigi within the Time that he had deſired, and order'd a Table to be ſpread, and a handſom Entertainment provided, and having ſeveral of his Friends about him, under a Pretence of taking his Leave of them, he prevail'd with the Capigi alſo to ſit down and eat; but when he was thus expreſſing all ſeeming Tokens of entire Reſignation and Satisfaction under his impending Fate, ſuddenly four Men came into the Room, and making boldly up towards the Capigi, demanded his Head; the Capigi, ſurprized at ſuch a ſudden Turn of Affairs, and finding it in vain to reſiſt by Force, began to petition for his Life, promiſing that if they would but ſpare him he would return to Court, without attempting to put his Orders for beheading the Baſſa in Execution; but it was now too late, and all Intreaties were vain, for they immediately ſtrangled him, and cutting off his Head, they ſent it to *Conſtantinople* to *Aſſan* Baſſa's Friends; and ſome think this unjuſt Demand of *Aſſan* Baſſa's Head, and his Succeſs in ſo bravely reſiſting it, gave the firſt Riſe to the Inſurrection, which was afterwards the Occaſion of depoſing Sultan *Muſtapha*, and advancing Sultan *Achmet* to the Throne, as you have already heard in Chap. IX.

The Capigi ſtrangled

The different Puniſhments, inflicted upon different Criminals, are as follow, *viz.* a Murderer is beheaded, a Thief ſtrangled, an Apoſtate burnt, a Traytor is dragg'd at a Horſe's Tail, and afterwards impal'd; and if one maims or wounds another, the ſame is inflicted upon him, an Eye for an Eye, a Tooth for a Tooth, *&c.* as in the *Jewiſh* Law; for Perjury they are ſet upon an Aſs, with their Face to the Tail, which the Criminal holds in his Hand, and, being thus expoſed through the City, they are afterwards branded in the Cheek with a hot Iron; Bakers, or others, who are guilty of defrauding in Weight or Meaſure, are baſtinado'd, that is, they receive a certain Number of Blows, according to the Nature of the Crime, on the Soles of their Feet, or ſometimes they are expoſed with a heavy Pillory-Board about their Necks, for a longer or leſs Time, according to the Crime they are guilty of; but it is alſo there as in ſeveral other Parts of the World, where there is Money, a Bribe or Fine will either buy off or very much mitigate the Corporal Puniſhments. Puniſhments

As to Civil Debates about Debts or Damages, the Plantiff commences by way of Petition, and the Judge ſends a Meſſenger of the Court to ſummon the Defendant, and when the Parties themſelves and their Evidences have been examined, the Matter is uſually determined without any long Delay; they do not allow Demurrs and dilatory Forms, nor are there any Lawyers to put falſe Gloſſes and wreſt the Truth of the Fact, or the Letter of the Law, to the vileſt Purpoſes; and though ſome here, as well as in other Parts of the World, are guilty of taking Bribes, yet it is both practiſed and puniſh'd as a Crime, and if a Judge be found guilty of Bribery or Extortion, his Puniſhment is, to be pounded in a Mortar without any Mittigation or Compaſſion. Civil Caſes

The ordinary Puniſhment for petty Offences is the *Falack*; in this Caſe the Offender ſits down upon the Ground, and, having his Legs held up, receives a Number of Blows, proportionable to his Crime, on the Soles of his Feet, with a Cane or Rattan about as thick as a Man's Finger; the Women receive it on the fleſhy Part of their Buttocks, but are allow'd Drawers at the ſame Time, that they may not be indecently expoſed; and the Number of Blows is always appointed by the Judge, and not left to the Mercy of an Executioner, or (after Sentence is paſt) to be bought off by a Bribe, or bullied off by a Mob. They have the Prices even of The *Falack*.

of Cherries and other Fruit ſo regulated, that he that comes firſt to Market has no other Advantage by his coming firſt, but only that of ſelling his Goods firſt, but not dearer than the reſt; which Expedition in his Sale, and having finiſh'd his Market betimes, is a ſufficient Reward for his Induſtry, without any Advancement of the Price; for if any one by his timely Arrival at Market pretend to enhance the Price, he is ſure to be condemn'd to the *Falack*, which he muſt undergo, or buy it off with a Fine. Mr. *Thevenot* gives us ſome particular Inſtances of the Rigour with which theſe Laws are put in Execution; as, of a Man who ſold Snow (a waſting Commodity in thoſe hot Countries when broke open and expoſed to Sale,) at five Pence a Pound, receiv'd and underwent the *Falack* for want of Weight; and another who had impoſed upon a Child, in not giving Onions enough for a Penny, was brought to the *Falack*, and received thirty Blows. If theſe petty Villanies were ſo expoſed and puniſh'd here, it would certainly contribute to the ſuppreſſing of petty Felonies, and in proceſs of Time the timely ſuppreſſing of thoſe might ſave abundance of People from the Gallows.

Murders. If a Perſon is found murder'd in the Streets, and the Murderer be not known or found, the neighbouring Houſes are amerced forty five thouſand Aſpers, which is not much leſs than a hundred Pounds Sterling; and this makes People, both in publick and private Buſineſs, to be very careful to ſee Differences reconciled, and Bloodſhed prevented; which, by Duelling and private Quarrels, frequently happen in Chriſtian Countries; for as, according to our Laws, it does not affect any but thoſe concern'd in the Action, the Neighbourhood cannot be expected to be ſo Induſtrious to prevent Murders as they might reaſonably be ſuppoſed to be if themſelves were to be Sufferers, whoever committed the Crime.

They keep a regular Watch in the Streets every Night, and take up Perſons that cannot give a good Account of themſelves, and of the Reaſon of their being abroad at unſeaſonable Hours, and condemn'd to the *Falack* or Baſtinado the next Morning, and ſometimes to pay a Fine into the Bargain.

The Chriſtian Foreigners, whom they call *Franks*, have the Privilege of having all their Controverſies determined by the Ambaſſadors, or Conſuls of their reſpective Nations; but in a Difference between a *Turk* and a *Frank*, the Cauſe is decided in their own Courts of Judicature, but if there the *Frank*, or Chriſtian, have not Juſtice done him, he appeals to the Reſident of his reſpective Nation, and commonly procures Redreſs upon ſuch Application.

They are very induſtrious to proſelyte ſuch Chriſtians as they can prevail upon, and take all Advantages to execute that Deſign; as we have an Inſtance in an *Engliſh* Cabbin-boy, who having received ſome hard Uſage from his Captain, turn'd Mahometan, and was circumciſed, without any regard to the Forms of Capitulation agreed upon before between *England* and the Porte; the Condition of which is, that if a *Frank* offers to turn Mahometan, he ought not to be received by them under the Ceremony of Circumciſion, till he acknowledges before the Interpreter of the Nation, that it is his own voluntary Act, and that he was not induced to it by Threats or Promiſes; and to prevent his being perſwaded or over-aw'd againſt his own real Inclination, he is to perſiſt in that Reſolution for twenty four Hours.

A Cabbin-Boy turns Mahometan.

The Lord *Paget* being then Ambaſſador at *Conſtantinople*, who was at that Time at *Carlowitz*, and returning to *Adrianople*, was informed of thoſe Proceedings of the *Vaivode* of *Galatia*, at whoſe Houſe the Boy had been circumciſed, and immediately demanded to have the Boy deliver'd to him, and to have the *Vaivode* baniſh'd for ſeducing the Boy contrary to the above-mention'd Agreement; the Vizier eaſily conſented to ſend the *Vaivode* into Exile, and to deliver the Boy up *privately*, if he repented of what he had done, but not *publickly*, leſt it ſhould give Offence to the Muſſulmen; but that if the Boy perſiſted in his Reſolution before the Druggermen, or Interpreters, he could not be deliver'd up notwithſtanding; but my Lord inſiſted upon having the Boy deliver'd up, whether he recanted or not, becauſe the Form agreed upon was not made uſe of when he was initiated; the Vizier endeavour'd to evade that Demand, by a Complement, telling him that they had been very much obliged to him for his good Offices at the Treaty of *Carlowitz*, but deſired that my Lord would not inſiſt upon any Thing which might caſt a Reflection upon their Religion; but the Ambaſſador ſtill inſiſted upon having the Boy return'd, alledging that the Capitulations had been violated, and that the Boy, who was ſcarce of Age to be grounded in his own Religion, much leſs in theirs, to which he was a meer Stranger, ought not to be deem'd a Mahometan, but to be deliver'd up *publickly*, and not *privately*, that the Capitulations might be look'd upon as the more ſacred and inviolable for the future; and now the Diſpute lay not whether the Boy ſhould be deliver'd up or not, for that was agreed upon in the Affirmative, but whether he ſhould be deliver'd up *publickly* or *privately*; and the Vizier condeſcended to communicate the Ambaſſador's Demand to the Mufti, but he poſitively refuſed to deliver up the Boy *publickly*; however, to accommodate the Matter, it was agreed that the *Vaivode* ſhould be baniſh'd for procuring the Boy to be circumciſed, contrary to the Capitulations, and that the Boy ſhould be protected by the Lord *Paget* againſt any Thing that he had to fear from his Captain for leaving him; which being agreed upon, and the Boy declaring himſelf a Chriſtian, and that it was only the hard Uſage he had from his Maſter that induced him to turn Mahometan, he was thereupon diſcharged of all the Engagements to their Religion and return'd to the Lord *Paget*.

Having thus treated of the Situation, Bounds, Seas, Rivers, Provinces, &c. of *Turkey*; and of the Original, Power, Arts, Negotiations, Forces, Revenues, and Adminiſtration of Juſtice of the *Turks*, we ſhall next proceed, according to our propoſed Method, to give a Deſcription of *Chaldea*, *Aſſyria*, *Meſopotamia*, *Syria*, the *Holy Land*; with the Situation and Deſcription of *Jeruſalem*, &c. with whatſoever is remarkable in any of thoſe Places, as it relates to Scripture Hiſtory; of which in Order.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Province of Eyraca Arabick, *or the Antient* Chaldea, *with a particular Description of the famous City of* Babylon.

Situation. THE antient *Chaldea*, now call'd *Eyraca Arabick*, has *Diarbeck*, or *Mesopotamia*, on the North, and *Arabia* and the Gulf of *Persia*, or *Bossora*, on the South; it lies on both Sides of the two Rivers *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, and may be said to comprehend a Part of both, which makes it very probable that this is the Place which was once the Garden of *Eden*, of which see more in Chap. IV. of the Description of *Arabia* towards the latter End.

Babylon. IN this Province stood the once famous, and yet memorable, City of *Babylon*, first built by *Nimrod*, and afterwards much enlarged by *Semiramus*, the Widow and Successor of *Ninus*, the third Monarch of this Empire, but it was *Nebuchadnezzer* that made it the Wonder of the World. The Walls of this City were eighty seven Foot thick, and, by the most authentick and probable Account that we have of them, they were about seventy five Foot, or twenty five Yards high; the City was exactly square, each Side was fifteen Miles in Length; it was built of large Bricks, and cemented with a kind of glutinous Slime or Bitumen, which in that Country arises out of the Earth, and when it is newly taken up it is soft and fit to use as Mortar, but when dry, it is harder than either Brick or Stone itself, which contributed much to the strength and duration of those Buildings.

THERE was a large Moat or Ditch without the Walls, both Sides of which were built with Brick, made of the Clay or Matter dug out of the Ditch, and the Moat was fill'd with Water; and on every Side of this spacious Square were twenty five Gates of solid Brass in the Walls; and where the Wall was not of itself impregnable, there were two Towers, or sometimes three, between every two Gates; but this is not to be understood of all the Gates, or of those Parts of the Wall which are inaccessible, but that the Towers were so disposed as to defend the weakest Part of the Wall; these Gates are supposed to be the Gates mention'd by the Prophet, when God promised *Cyrus* that *he would break in Pieces before him the Gates of Brass*.

FROM the twenty five Gates on each Side there went Streets cross the Square to its respective Gate on the other Side of the Square, so that there were fifty Streets, each of them fifteen Miles long, and about one hundred and fifty Foot broad, and by the Streets thus regularly crossing each other, there were within the Wall six hundred seventy six Squares, each Side of every one of which was four Furlongs and a half. The Houses, as is common in other Cities and great Towns, front the Street; and in the Squares behind the Houses were Yards, Gardens, Orchards, and all other Conveniencies; but these Houses are not contiguous to one another, but have Spaces left between them to render them more healthy and airy, as well as otherwise more pleasant.

THE River *Euphrates* divided the City into two equal Parts by its Passage through the Middle of it, entring on the North Side, and running directly South; the four Sides of the City answering exactly to the four Winds, or Cardinal Points, of the Compass, East, West, North, and South. There is a spacious Bridge in the Middle of the Town, which preserves the Communication of the East and West Parts of the Town with each other, and they that call it the least, say it is a Furlong in Length, though others say it is much more; there was at each End of the Bridge a Royal Palace, that on the East Side call'd the Old, and that on the West Side the New Palace; the old Palace was thirty Furlongs in Compass, but the new one sixty; the whole City was upon a flat Ground, without any Hill in it, and the Soil exceeding fruitful; and to People, this vast City *Nebuchadnezzer* almost depopulated, *Judea* and several other conquer'd Countries round about, so that the Inhabitants consisted of a Medley of People of almost all Nations and Languages.

IT was in this spacious City that the Temple of *Belus* was first built, and afterwards enlarged, which last was done by *Nebuchadnezzer*, but the most magnificent Part of the Building was a Tower, which was in the Middle of the Temple; which at the Foundation was a Furlong square, and consequently half a Mile about; it had eight Stories one above another, growing less at every Story, so that at the Bottom of each Story there was a large Battlement, or Gallery, on the Top of the lower Tower, lying without the Foundation of the next uppermost that stood upon it; and though there are various Accounts of the Height of it, yet those that bring it in at the least, say that it was a Furlong in Height.

AND though we shall always take care to avoid imposing upon the Belief of our Readers, or relating Matters impossible in themselves, or at least inconsistent with human Reason to give Credit to, yet we must beg leave to report the Account of other Authors and Travellers, who affirm that of all these eight Stories every one was a Furlong in Height, and consequently the whole must be a Mile, and that this was not the intended Height of it is evident, because they were abruptly broke off from the Work by the Confusion of Languages, and yet even this Height seems almost incredible; but if to this Conjecture we add the Opinion of those who think that this Tower was the Tower of *Babel*, mention'd *Gen.* XI. where God was willing to shew his infinite Power in so easily destroying the whole Design, by confounding the Language of the Undertakers of it, it may not be improbable that he should suffer them to proceed to a Mile in Height to expose their own Vanity, that after so great a Progress the Miracle of putting a stop to it might be more evident and convincing. *Tower Babel.*

BUT if we should still allow this to be the Tower of *Babel* above-mention'd of a Furlong square, or half a Mile about, and they had been suffer'd to carry it up to the Vertex of the Pyramid, or, which is the same, till by continual tapering they had brought it to a Point, and allowing likewise that every Tower was a Furlong in Height, and that the Foundation of every Tower was but three Foot within the Top of that upon which it stood, yet then there could have been but a hundred and ten Towers one above another, each a Furlong in Height, which though the Number of them and the Height of the whole be incredible, yet if granted, it makes not quite fourteen Miles; a Height surpassing human Belief to build so high, and yet immensly short of their intended Design of reaching to Heaven had it succeeded, so that human Frailty was expos'd on one Side in the Attempt, and Divine

Power

Power and Wisdom was display'd on the other Side in the Destruction of the whole Design.

We may subjoin one Argument more of this being the Tower of *Babel* mention'd in Scripture, for according to the authentick Authors, this Tower was built of Bricks, cemented with the bitumenous Substance above-mention'd, and Scripture says that the Tower was built with *Bricks throughly burnt, and that they had Slime for Mortar*, which Slime was, according to the Opinion of the best Interpreters, that bitumenous Matter above-mention'd; but this we only deliver as the different Opinions of different Authors, to which we may add the Account of it given by *Herodotus*; who tells us it was eight Towers upon one another, each of them seventy five Foot high, which in all made six hundred Foot, or two hundred Yards, which is the most probable, and capable of human Belief, except we allow it to be an extraordinary Case, as above-mention'd.

Why the *Chaldeans* [illegible] early.

But whatever Height this Tower was, Doctor *Prideaux* observes it amounted to so great an Eminency, that he thinks it contributed very much to the Improvement of the *Chaldeans* in Astronomy, and to their then excelling all other Nations in that Art; and as few deny their being the earliest, and at that Time the greatest Proficients therein, we may subjoin one material Reason to confirm that Conjecture, that is, that the Ark first resting upon the Mountains of *Ararat*, in *Armenia*, and that there at that Time were all the People of the inhabited World, being only eight Persons, who came out of the Ark, it is very natural to believe that they, or their immediate Successors, would soon spread themselves as far South as *Chaldea*; and as the *Antidiluvian* Learning was then in its Purity in *Noah*'s Family, no wonder if it declined as it was handed down to remote Nations by succeeding Generations, except retain'd by those whose natural Genius and Industry prompted them to retain and improve those excellent Sciences, in which this our remote Western Island of *England* has not been the least eminent.

But to proceed as to the Opportunities for Astronomical Improvements at *Babylon*, the above-mention'd Dr. *Prideaux* tells us there was a fine Observatory on the Top of the Tower, which contributed very much to the early Improvement of the *Chaldeans* in the Skill of Astronomy, beyond other Nations, and the Serenity of the Air in that Climate added still to the Frequency and Truth of their Observations; these Considerations, not to add any more, makes it cease from being a Wonder that the *Chaldeans* were esteem'd the most antient Astronomers, but it will not follow from thence that any of the present Inhabitants of the same Province are now the most, if at all, curious in that Art.

Temple of *Belus*.

But to return to the Temple of *Belus*, it is observed that it contain'd no more than this Tower when it was first built, nor till *Nebuchadnezzar*'s Reign, but he enlarged it with vast Buildings erected about it in a square Form, each Side of the Square being two Furlongs in Length, which is a Mile about; here the God *Bel*, or, as some say, *Baal*, was worshipped; and this is generally supposed to be *Nimrod*, to whom the Name *Bel* was apply'd, as signifying Lord, because he usurp'd such extensive Dominions; this Temple stood till *Xerxes*, in his Return from the *Grecian* Expedition, demolish'd it, and plunder'd it of a prodigious Treasure, particularly of several Images of massy Gold, one of them forty Foot high, which contain'd a thousand *Babylonish* Talents, or eight hundred seventy five Ounces of Gold, which amounts to about three Millions and a half Sterling; there were also other Images and Utensils in the Temple, which added to the former, amounted to above one and twenty Millions Sterling, beside other Treasure and valuable Things, which had been near two thousand Years collecting, *viz.* between the Foundation and the Destruction of *Babylon*.

Plunder'd

This famous Temple stood near the Old Palace, before spoken of, at the East End of the Bridge, and the New Palace was at the West End; it was defended by three Walls. But what has been most admired in this new Palace is, the hanging Gardens, which contain'd a Square of four hundred Foot, and were several large Terrasses one above another, and all supported by vast Arches, and surrounded and strengthened by a Wall of two and twenty Foot thick; the Mould was so deep that the largest Trees might take root in it, which were accordingly planted in Rows on each Side of the Walks.

Hanging Gardens.

The Walls of *Babylon* were so thick as to be deem'd almost impregnable before Gunpowder was invented, and supposed to have been able to resist any Force; and yet *Cyrus* surprized it by a Stratagem, diverting the River another Way, and entering at that Part of the Wall where the River run into the City; it was able to have held out a long Siege, by reason of the vast Quantity of Garden Ground contain'd in the City, and especially considering the Fertility of the Soil upon which it stood, it was sufficient to supply a great Number for a long Time.

There is also a Place call'd *Bagdat*, or *Bagdad*, which is sometimes called *Babylon*, and these Places are so promiscuously call'd by each Name, that some think that since *Bagdat* was in being, there is no such Place as *Babylon*, or that it stands where *Babylon* once stood; but that seems not to be the Case, for *Bagdat* stands upon the River *Tygris*, in 34 Degrees of North Latitude; it was built by *Mahomet* the Second, Caliph of the *Saracens*, who reign'd in the Middle of the eighth Century, and made it the Capital of the *Saracen*'s Empire; it was first built on the West Side of the *Tygris*, but the Caliph *Mustetahar* built a new City on the Eastern Bank of the same River, and then united both by a Bridge of Boats, and made it one City; and it continued in its former Dignity, as Metropolis, till the Middle of the thirteenth Century, when the *Tartars* made a Conquest of it, and put an End to the Dominion of the *Saracens*, though their Religion still prevail'd, and being profess'd by the Conquerors, has been since that establish'd in the Country, and profess'd to this Day.

Bagdat.

Tartars take *Bagdat*.

After the City of *Bagdat* was taken by the *Tartars*, it lost much of it Splendor, but has since in some measure recover'd itself; and being upon the Frontiers of both *Turkey* and *Persia*, as being in a Manner between both, it has been a Bone of Contention between both *Turks* and *Persians*, having been alternately taken and retaken several Times by each, until the Year 1689, when the *Turks* made themselves Masters of it, and made it the Capital of the Province, where the Viceroy continually resides; it has a considerable Trade at present, but had much more when it was under the Dominion of the *Persians*; however, it is supply'd with all the Merchandize of the East by Way of the *Persian Gulf* and *Bossora*, which stands upon the united Streams of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, before it falls into the Gulf of *Bossora*.

Trade.

They have also a Trade with *Aleppo*, *Smyrna*, and the Western Part of the *Turkish Empire*, whereby they receive the Produce of these Countries by the Caravans; also the Pilgrims which visit *Mecca*, and the Tombs of *Haly* and the Imans, pass yearly through this Place; but since it has been taken by the *Turks*, this Trade has also declin'd.

Dimensions.

Bagdat is about fifteen hundred Paces long, and about half as broad; and if, according to our *English* Computation, we reckon five Foot to a Pace, it makes not quite a Mile and a half in Length, including only what stands on the *Persian*, or East Side

Side of the River, which may properly be call'd the City; but if with that we reckon that Part which ſtands on the Weſt Side of the *Tygris*, which indeed was the old City; though now not defended by either Wall or Caſtle, and may therefore rather be call'd the Suburbs, that adds a great deal to the Spaciouſneſs of *Bagdat*

THE City is much longer from North to South, as it lies along the River's Side, than the Breadth of it is from the River Eaſtward, but the North End is much broader, and extends further from the River towards the Eaſt than the South End. The Caſtle. Caſtle ſtands at the North End of the City, and upon the Bank of the River; the Walls are of Brick, except that next the River, which is white Stone; there are Towers, or Baſtions, after the Manner of our Modern Fortifications; the Ditch, or Moat, about it is wide and deep; it has but four Gates, one towards the River, and the reſt towards the Land; and they keep a Garriſon of three or four thouſand Horſe and Foot. Below the Caſtle, by the Water-Side, is the Seraglio, or Palace, of the Viceroy, with ſeveral Summer Houſes on the River, which makes a very agreeable Appearance. The Houſes are but meanly built, but the *Bazars*, or Exchanges, where the Tradeſmen keep their Shops, are arch'd, and cover'd, and tolerably handſom; there are five Moſques in the Town, two of which have handſom Domes, cover'd with varniſh'd Tiles of ſeveral Colours. The Cadi here has Authority almoſt equal to that of the Mufti of *Conſtantinople*, and are accountable for their Actions only to the Porte, and not to the Viceroy, but are rather a ſort of Equals to him, and conſequently a Check upon him, which makes him ſet a greater Guard upon his Actions.

Boſſora. THE next conſiderable City is *Boſſora*; it ſtands in thirty Degrees North Latitude, upon the Weſtern Branch of the united Rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates* after they are again ſeparated; which Branch, in our Deſcription of Paradiſe (*Chap.* IV. *of* Arabia,) we ſuppoſed to be *Piſon*, ſpoke of *Gen.* ii. 11. *Boſſora* is encompaſs'd with a Wall of Earth, above twelve Miles in Circumference; the Place has an advantageous Situation with reſpect to Trade, as well as to the Fruitfulneſs of the Soil, and it is ſo ſafe a Port, that large Veſſels may come up to the End of the Canal without Danger; it may be ſaid that *Boſſora* lies in the Center of Trade between *Europe* and the *Eaſt Indies*; with the latter of which they have an open Communication by Way of the *Perſian Gulf*, and with *Europe* formerly by the River *Euphrates*, where navigable, the Goods being firſt brought by Land from *Aleppo* to *Bir*, on the Eaſt Side of the River *Euphrates*, which is but four Days Journey; and ſo much is the Trade of *Boſſora* improv'd, that ſince the Civil Wars in *Perſia*, the *Engliſh Eaſt India* Company have withdrawn their Agents from *Iſpahan* and *Gombroon*, and made *Boſſora* their principal Factory.

BUT of late the Navigation of the River *Euphrates* is not practicable all the Way from *Bir* to *Boſſora*, by reaſon of the ſeveral Canals cut out of it to ſupply the Country with Water, by which Means the Water of the River is in a great Meaſure exhauſted, and uncapable of Navigation till lower down in the River, where it is made Navigable by the Flowing of the Sea; and to ſupply the Communication and Commerce between *Boſſora* and *Aleppo*, they carry the Goods from *Aleppo* to *Bir*, where they croſs the *Euphrates*, and proceed by Land to *Mouſul*, or antient *Niniveh*, where they embark them in *Kelecks* for *Bagdat* and *Boſſora*.

Goods how brought from *Aleppo* to *Boſſora*.

THESE *Kelecks* are about four Fathom long, and three broad, born up by Skins fill'd with Wind like Bladders, and call'd *Borachio's*, of which there is ſometimes twenty on each Side, and thirteen or fourteen at each End; to theſe they faſten long Poles, which are tied together with Withes, and croſs them they lay Poles from Side to Side, cloſe together, and of ſome Thickneſs, and upon theſe the Paſſengers and Goods are placed: The Ships Company conſiſts only of three Men, two to row, and one to wet that Part of the *Borachio's* that is above Water, which if not moiſt, is in Danger of burſting; they uſe neither Pin nor Nail in the Framing, nor either Maſt or Sail in the working, nor have they any regard to Head or Stern, or which End or Side goes foremoſt; and as the Wind in the *Borachio's* perpetually waſtes, they blow them up, and ſearch them to make them tight in caſe of any Defect every Night; they are obliged to lay in a Stock of Proviſions ſufficient for their Paſſage from *Mouſal*, or *Niniveh*, to *Bagdat*, there being ſcarce a Town to be found between the two on either Shore.

THE thieving *Arabs*, who feed their Cattle upon the Banks of the *Tygris*, wait the Opportunity of theſe *Kelecks* coming aſhore, which they commonly do in the Evening to blow up their *Borachio's*, which being done, if they then go to ſleep, the *Arabs* take that Opportunity to plunder the *Kelecks*; when the *Arabs* have occaſion to croſs the River, they only take a *Borachio* under each Arm, tied together under their Breaſts, as is the Cuſtom here with Bladders or Corks; and by the help of them, Men, Women, and Children can croſs this rapid Stream with Bundles on their Heads, and ſome are ſo expert as to do it without thoſe Helps. *Arabs plunder the Kelecks.*

FROM *Bagdat* to *Boſſora* the Navigation is leſs dangerous or troubleſome, there being no Cataracts or Falls to hinder or endanger it, ſo that large Boats can trade upon this Part of the River, and can go down from *Bagdat* to *Boſſora* in ten Days Time, nor need they in this Paſſage incumber themſelves with Proviſions, there being ſeveral Villages aſhore where they can buy Proviſions very reaſonable; theſe Boats are contrived with proper Shelter and Accommodations, that the Paſſengers need not lie aſhore, as in that Part of the Paſſage above *Bagdat*. The Towns near the Shore are *Amurat*, *Manſoury*, *Magar*, *Gazen*, and *Gorna*, at which laſt Place the *Tygris* and *Euphrates* meet, and here are three Caſtles, one on the Point where the Rivers meet, one on the *Chaldean*, or *Perſian*, Side, and the third on the *Arabian*; and as theſe Caſtles are in the Territories of *Boſſora*, they collect the Cuſtoms here for the Goods coming down out of the Country. *Bagdat to Boſſora.*

THE Ships from the *Arabian Sea* and the Coaſt of *Malabar* uſually arrive at *Boſſora* in the Months of *July*, *Auguſt*, *September*, and *October*, when the Monſoons ſuit to bring them in; during which Time the Town is crowded with Foreigners from moſt Parts of the World, who come to traffick, the City being very well ſituate for Trade; but the hot poiſonous Winds during their Seaſons, eſpecially ſome Years, are ſo pernicious to the Health of Strangers, that it is a great Damp to the Trade of the Place, and to the Concourſe of People in general; inſomuch, that Mr. *Thevenot*, who was upon the Spot in the Year 1665, aſſures us that theſe *Samiel*, or hot Winds, carried off above four thouſand People at *Boſſora* that Year.

THIS Country ſeems yet to retain ſomething of the Paradiſical State; for it is the richeſt and moſt fruitful of any in the Grand Seignior's Dominions; it abounds with fruitful Paſtures and Meadows, and with Flocks and Herds in proportion, and that for ſeveral hundreds of Miles together, which would produce an immenſe Revenue to the Grand Seignior, but their being ſo remote gives them a great Opportunity to defraud him; nor does he care to uſe them with Severity, leſt it ſhould provoke them to revolt to their Neighbours the *Perſians*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Gives a Deſcription of the preſent State of the Province of Curdiſtan, *or the antient* Aſſyria.

Situation. CURDISTAN, or the antient *Aſſyria*, was the Scene of the firſt of the four Monarchs, and of the Hiſtory of which, and the other three, *viz.* the *Perſian*, *Grecian*, and *Roman*, we ſhall give a compendious Abſtract when we have finiſh'd the *Turkiſh Empire*. In the mean Time, as to the Situation and Boundaries of *Aſſyria*, *viz.* that Part of it which is comprehended in the *Turkiſh Empire*, the reſt, being the Eaſtermoſt Part of it, belonging to *Perſia*, as was obſerved in Chap. I. of our Deſcription of that Empire; it lies on the North Side of *Chaldea*, deſcribed in the laſt Chapter, and conſequently bounded on the South by it; on the Eaſt by the *Perſian Curdiſtan*, or *Aſſyria*; it is bounded by *Diarbeck*, or the antient *Meſopotamia* on the Weſt, and on the North by *Turcomania*, or *Armenia*; it is ſaid to have receiv'd its Name *Aſſyria* from *Aſſur*, or *Aſshur*, the Son of *Shem*.

Boundaries.

Niniveh. In this Country ſtood the once famous City of *Niniveh*, upon the Eaſtern Bank of the River *Tygris*, over againſt *Mouſal*, in the thirty ſeventh Degree of North Latitude. This Town was ſixty Miles in Compaſs, according to the Deſcription of it in *Jonah*, allowing twenty Miles for a Day's Journey, and according to the Deſcription we have of it, when in its flouriſhing Condition, the Walls were a hundred Foot high, with eleven hundred Towers in them, each of them twice as high as the Wall; the Houſes were not always contiguous, but Spaces left for Gardens, and to render the City more airy and healthy. It is ſaid by ſome to be built by *Nimrod*, but others, and that more probably, ſay it was built by *Ninus* the Grandſon of *Nimrod*, and the third Emperor of the *Aſſyrian* Monarchy, but whoever built it at firſt, yet all Authors agree that it was either firſt built or very much enlarged by *Ninus*, and called *Niniveh* after his Name.

Beſieged. *Niniveh* was beſieged by *Arbaces* three Years, when the River overflow'd twenty Furlongs of the Wall, whereupon the effeminate Prince, *Sardanapalus*, collected his Wealth together, which was agreed upon by all to be an immenſe Sum, and retiring into his Palace, ſet fire to the whole, and threw himſelf into the Flames; whereupon *Arbaces* and *Beloch* jointly ſucceeded, and ſhared the Empire. *Arbaces* ſettled Eaſtward in *Media*, (now *Adarbeitzen*) and *Beloch* ſucceeded in *Niniveh*; in whoſe Time ſome ſay it was that *Jonah* preach'd in *Niniveh*, and this King proclaim'd a ſolemn Faſt; ſee *Jonah* III.

Niniveh deſtroy'd. This City was afterwards entirely deſtroy'd by *Aſtyages*, the eighth King of the *Medes* after *Arbaces*, ſo that nothing remains of it now but heaps of Rubbiſh on the Eaſt Side of *Tigris*, ſome Part of it over-againſt *Mouſal*: Amongſt which Heaps, about half a Mile from the *Tygris*, is a Hill a little higher than the reſt, on the Top of which is a Moſque, which they ſay was built over the Burying-Place of *Jonah*, and for this the *Turks* have ſo great a Veneration, that they will ſcarce ſuffer a Chriſtian to enter the Moſque. There ſtands in the Middle of the Moſque, or Temple, a Tomb cover'd with a Pall of Tiſſue, and at the four Corners are great Wax Candles, beſides ſeveral Lamps which hang down from the Roof; this is ſuppoſed to be *Jonah*'s Tomb; here the Alchoran is read by Monks employ'd for that Purpoſe.

Sheraſoul, or *Scherazur*, is now the Capital of *Aſſyria*; it lies to the Eaſtward of *Niniveh*; it is now the Seat of the Viceroy of the Province; the Building of it is very remarkable, for it ſtands on the Side of a Hill, and the Houſes are hew'd out of a Rock for a quarter of a League together, and there is an Aſcent to them by fifteen or twenty Stone Steps, or in ſome Places more. *Sheraſoul.*

To the Eaſtward of *Sheraſoul* is *Arbela*, near which is a Plain fifteen Leagues over; this is the Place where *Alexander the Great* vanquiſh'd *Darius*; there is towards the Middle of this Plain a little Hill about half a League in Circumference, round the Side of which is a ſtately Grove of Oaks, and at the Top is the Ruins of a Caſtle, in which it is ſaid *Darius* ſtood to ſee the Succeſs of the Battle. *Arbela.*

Betlis is ſituate in the Northern Part of this Province, near the Lake *Van*, in the thirty eighth Degree of Latitude. This Place is independent, and neither ſubject to the *Turks* nor *Perſians*; it is very mountainous, and probably either inacceſſible that they cannot come at it, or barren that it is not worth while to attempt it, but the former ſeems to be the Caſe; for by this Situation the Bey of *Betlis*, is able to intercept the Trade between *Aleppo* and *Tauris*, inſomuch that both Princes think it their Intereſt to keep fair with him. In approaching *Betlis*, the Way lies among high ſteep Mountains for a Day's Journey, from whence deſcend prodigious Torrents in the wet Seaſons; the Way to the City is cut through a Rock, and ſo narrow that there is but juſt room for one Camel to paſs at a Time. The City is built round the Sides of a Hill that is in Form of a Sugar-Loaf, with a Caſtle, where the Bey's Palace is on the Top of the Hill; it is ſaid that he can raiſe twenty five thouſand Horſe and a great Body of Foot out of the Shepherds of his own Country. *Betlis.*

Soil. This is a fruitful Soil and a pleaſant Country, being diverſify'd with Hills and Valleys; the former cloath'd with fine Groves of Oak, and great variety of other Timber and Fruit-Trees, and the Valleys well water'd, and where cultivated, bring excellent Grain; but as it is moſtly either in *Turkey* or upon the Frontiers between them and *Perſia*, there is very little of it improv'd as it might be; however, there are vaſt Flocks and Herds fed in this Country, the Owners living in Tents, and moving from Place to Place for the ſake of Paſture like the *Arabs*, where the Land is common.

The People. The People are generally Bruriſh and Rapacious, inclined to Rapine and Plunder, that the Caravans are not ſafe; but this is attributed to the continual Enmity between the two Countries, one plundering and the other making Repriſals perpetually. The chief Product of the Country, as now neglected, is Gauls and Tobacco; but it ſeems fit for any Thing that requires a deep rich Soil, which is the Occaſion of the Roads being deep and bad. Moſt of of the Villages have the Houſes diſperſed ſometimes a Musket-ſhot from each other; they form no regular Streets, but ſtand in the moſt convenient Part of the Ground belonging to them; almoſt every Houſe has a Vineyard, but they ſeldom make Wine, but dry their Grapes.

CHAP. XIII.

Treats of the Province of Diarbeck, *or the antient* Mesopotamia.

THE Province of *Mesopotamia*, now known by the Name of *Diarbeck*, lies between the two famous Rivers *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, being bounded on the East with the former, and on the West with the latter, on the South with *Chaldea*, and on the North with *Turcomania* and *Armenia Major*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Diarbeck*, 2. *Orsa*, 3. *Bir*, 4. *Sharmley*, 5. *Mousal*, 6. *Merdin*, 7. *Nesbin*; of which in Order.

Diarbeck. 1. *Diarbeck*, called by the *Turks Caremit*; it lies in about 37 Degrees of North Latitude; it is situate on a rising Ground on the West Side of the River *Tygris*, where it is in the Form of a half Moon; it is encompass'd with a double Wall, in the outermost of which is sixty two Towers and three Gates; on every Gate there is an Inscription in *Greek*, which though in a great Measure obliterated, yet the Name of *Constantine* in more Places than one remains legible. There is in the Town two or three handsom Piazza's, and there was once a Christian Church, but it is now turn'd into a Mahometan Mosque; about a League above the City there is a Canal cut out of the *Tygris*, which by reason of the great Descent of the *Tygris* in that three Miles running, brings the Head of the Canal above the Level with the highest Part of the Town, by which means the Water is convey'd from that Canal to all Parts of the City; in this Water all the red *Turkey* Leather is wash'd that is made at *Diarbeck*, and excels in Colour all that is made elsewhere, and has occasion'd such a Trade for that sort of Goods, that at least above one Fourth of the Natives are employ'd in it. The Soil is very good, and the Country abounds with Corn and Wine. It is a populous City, and in it are computed to be about twenty thousand Christians of one Denomination or other, as *Nestorians*, *Jacobites*, and *Armenians*; but the last are reckon'd double the Number of both the other. The Bassa is a Viceroy, and one of the Viziers of the Empire; several Provinces or Governments are under him, in which he can raise twenty thousand Horse among them who hold of the Crown by Military Tenure.

Diarbeck stands so near the Spring or Head of the *Tygris* that it is fordable there, except at the Time of the Freshes, which are occasion'd by the falling of the Rains, or the melting of the Snow from the Mountains, and they are obliged to go up as high as a Stone Bridge that is about a Mile above the Town.

Orsa. 2. *Orsa* is five or six Days Journey South-West from *Diarbeck*, and is supposed to be where *Edissa* once stood; it is in the thirty seventh Degree of North Latitude, on the East Side of the River *Euphrates*; here the Caravans commonly stay eight or ten Days, because the People who let the Horses and Mules between *Turkey* and *Persia* have their Houses here. *Orsa* is the Capital of *Mesopotamia*, and is said to be the Place where *Abraham* dwelt, *Abraham.* which carries with it a great deal of Probability, since we are certain that *Abraham* did dwel in *Mesopotamia*, *Acts* vii. 2. To those Strangers that desire to see the Rarities or Antiquities of the Place, they shew a large Fountain, upon the Springs whereof the Foundation of the principal Mosque in the City was laid; and they say this is the Place where *Abraham* prayed before he went to sacrifice his Son *Isaac*; and so exact are they in the Belief of it, that they say the two Springs are in the two Spots of Ground where *Abraham*'s two Knees were at that Time. The Springs feed the large Fountain above-mention'd, and at this Time they will not let any Person enter into the Grotto where those Springs rise, without pulling off their Shoes, and it is with difficulty that they will admit a Christian then, or even to see it. The Inhabitants are many of them *Armenian* Christians, and have their Churches, where they are allow'd to perform Divine Service; here are also several Grotto's in the Mountains, in which they say are the Tombs of antient Christians.

THE Town of *Orsa* is but meanly built, but it is encompass'd with Walls of Free Stone, with Towers at convenient Distances from one another. It is govern'd by a Bassa, and has a Garrison consisting of six or seven hundred Sphahi's, and about two hundred Janizaries, there being a greater Number of Horse that Foot required to oppose the Incursions of the *Arabs*, who, if not timely withstood, cross the River in hopes of Plunder. This Town is most famous for making the yellow *Turkey* Leather as it is call'd, the red (as above observ'd) being made at *Diarbeck*, and the blue is made at *Tocat*.

THERE is a Castle on the South Side of the City, about which is a broad deep Ditch, some Part of which is cut through a Rock; and on the Top of the Castle is a little square Turret, where they tell Travellers *Elias* formerly dwelt. There is a Well on the outside of the Town, of which they give the following Account: *Aggarus*, or *Agbarus*, King of *Orsa*, (supposed to be the same *Agbarus* which sent a Letter to King *Lentulus*, with a Description of our *Saviour*, which Letter, or one under that Name, is now frequently sold in *London*;) this *Agbarus*, being a Leper, sent Messengers to our *Saviour*, desiring that he would come and heal him, and with the Letter he sent a Painter to draw our *Saviour*'s Picture, but whether he thought to desire him to sit for it, or only to take a Sketch of it from some Views of him that he hoped to find opportunity to get, is uncertain, but the latter (if either) is most probable; but however the History further tells us, that when our Lord observed the Painter taking his Picture, he threw a Handkerchief over his Face which immediately received the Print of his Visage, and gave it them to carry to their Prince; but as they were returning home, and come near the City of *Orsa*, they were attack'd by Robbers, and the Person who had the Handkerchief dropt it into a Well to conceal it, and hasting to the Town related what had happen'd; the King, impatient to see the Handkerchief, or what was become of it, went the next Day with his Retinue in Procession to the Well, where they found the Water risen to the Brim, and the Handkerchief floating at the Top of it, which the King taking up in his Hand, was immediately cured of his Leprosy, and that the Water retains the same Virtue ever since.

I am apt to think some Persons may think this Story, but especially the latter Part of it, to be fabulous, and it is my Business to leave every Man to his own Way of Believing, and shall only add, that as we cannot prove the Impossibility of it, we must consult Probabilities; and as *Orsa* was not so far distant from the Place of our *Saviour*'s Birth and Travels but that a Correspondence might easily be maintain'd by Letters or Messengers, and if we further consider not only how frequent Leprosies

were

were in thoſe Countries, but how common it was to ſend to the Prophets to deſire a Cure, both which are atteſted in Holy Writ; and if we further obſerve, that *Eliſha*'s Word only ſent by a Servant to *Naaman*, made the Waters of *Jordan* become medicinal to him, and cured his Leproſy, 2. *Kings* v. 10, 14. or, that *Moſes* made the bitter Waters of *Marah* ſweet only by caſting a Stick into them by God's Appointment, *Exod.* xv. 25. it is very eaſy to believe that if *Agbarus* ſent the Petition to our *Saviour*, and receiv'd the Handkerchief from him, as above related, (though without any Promiſe to the Meſſenger of a Cure for his Maſter,) it might have that Effect upon *Agbarus* and the Well, as above, *for a greater than either* Eliſha *or* Moſes *was there*; nor does it at all derogate from the Credit of this Cure, that we do not read of it in the New Teſtament, for there are many other Things that *Jeſus* did which are not recorded there, *John* xxi. 25. This I thought fit to offer, and leave every Man to judge for himſelf, becauſe as too much Credulity in believing without Reaſon may be deem'd Superſtition; ſo too much Incredulity where Probabilities occur, may amount to Prejudice; but in what we relate that is any way dubious, we ſhall keep the middle Road between both Extreams.

Bir or Beer The next Place of Note is *Bir*, or *Beer*, ſituate on the Eaſt Bank of the River *Euphrates*, about four Days Journey, or eighty Miles from *Aleppo* towards *Perſia*, and to the Southward of *Orſa*, on the ſame Side of the River *Euphrates*; this is the chief Paſs from *Aleppo* to *Meſopotamia*. The Town is built on the Side of a Hill, and is not very ſpacious; and on the Top of the Hill there is a Caſtle, where the Governor reſides; this Caſtle is built upon a Rock, and from it there is a Way cut under Ground to the River.

When Mr. *Maundril* was there they ſhew'd him a Room full of old Arms, large Croſs-Bows and Beams of a prodigious Size, which he thought had been deſign'd for Battering-Rams; there were alſo large Head-pieces and *Roman* Saddles, *&c.* but he only ſaw them, for they would not give him any opportunity to examine into the Original or Antiquity of them; he obſerved in the Side of a Hill a large Cave or Vault cut into, with fifteen large natural Pillars left to ſupport the Roof. This City (like *Orſa*) is well wall'd, but meanly built; there is a Garriſon of ſix or ſeven hundred Men, commanded by an Aga; but it is within the Territories of the Baſſa of *Orſa*.

Sharmley About a Day's Journey to the Eaſtward of *Bir* lies the Town of *Sharmley*; but here is nothing obſervable; only there is a good Caravanſera and Baths, and a ſtrong Caſtle, or Fortreſs, upon a Mountain near it.

Mouſal ſtands on the Weſt Side of the River *Tygris*, over againſt where old *Niniveh*, in *Aſſyria*, once ſtood, in the thirty ſeventh Degree of North Latitude. This City, like many other noted Places in *Turkey*, has ſtrong Walls, but the Houſes are ordinary, and many of them in Ruins; the City however is three Miles in Circumference, and govern'd by a Baſſa, who reſides in a little Caſtle built on the *Tygris*. It is a Place of good Trade, as being the common Road of the Caravans from *Aleppo* to *Perſia*, and its ſituation upon the *Tygris* in that Road ſtill increaſes the Trade and Concourſe of People, becauſe it has a navigable Communication with *Bagdat*, and conſequently with *Boſſora*, by the River *Tygris*, ſo that it is the Center of Trade between *Aleppo*, *Boſſora*, and *Perſia*. Here is commonly a Garriſon of three or four thouſand Horſe and Foot; here is a great Trade for Gauls, that being the chief Product of the adjacent Country; it has a Communication with *Aſſyria* by a Bridge of Boats over the River *Tygris*. *Mouſal,*

Merdin is ſix or ſeven Days Journey to the Eaſtward of *Orſa*; it is a ſmall City, ſtanding upon a Mountain; it is encompaſs'd with a good Wall, and has a Caſtle upon a riſing Ground on the North Side of it, here the Governor reſides with a Garriſon of two hundred Horſe and four or five hundred Foot, but it is an inland Town, and a Place of no great Trade, but only as it is in the Road from *Aleppo* to *Perſia*.

Nesbin. The Town of *Nesbin* is two Days Journey to the Eaſtward of *Merdin* in the Road to *Perſia*; this is the antient *Niſibis* which was once the Capital of *Meſopotamia*, or rather ſtands where it ſtood, and is now only a Shadow of it, being reduced to a large Village; it is ſituate on the River *Saba*, about thirty Miles to the Weſtward of the River *Tygris*; it is inhabited now by *Armenian* and *Neſtorian* Chriſtians. Here they ſhew Travellers the Tomb of St. *James* Biſhop of *Niſibis*. In the ſame Church-Yard is a Pedeſtal of Stone, on which are placed ſeveral lighted Candles, which poor People offer when they are ſick or in Diſtreſs, as ſuppoſing it to be the Pedeſtal of ſome Saint's Statue which the *Turks* have defac'd. We have a certain Author that obſerv with a ſort of a Surprize, that the poor People pay the ſame Reverence to the Pedeſtal as they would have given to the Image: from whence it is natural to ſuppoſe, that he thinks the Pedeſtal could not hear them as well, and do them as much Service, as the Image could have done if it had been there.

CHAP. XIV.

Treats of Armenia Major, *now known by the Name of* Turcomania.

ARMENIA MAJOR lies to the Northward of *Aſſyria* and *Meſopotamia*, and conſequently is bounded on the South by them, and on the Weſt by *Natolia*, on the North by *Georgia* and Part of *Natolia*, and on the Eaſt by *Adirbitzan*, or the antient *Media*, which is a Province of *Perſia*. The chief Towns are *Erzerom*, *Kars*, and *Van*, of which take the following Deſcription:

Erzerom. *Erzerom* is in about forty Degrees of Latitude North, and about five or ſix Days Journey (allowing twenty Miles a Day) to the Southward of the *Black Sea*; it ſtands at one End of a fine Plain, at the End of a Chain of Mountains, which, as Mr. *Tournefort* obſerved, was cover'd with Snow when he was there, although it was in the middle of *June*, and the Place, as above obſerved, is but in forty Degrees of Latitude. The Plain of *Erzerom* is fruitful in all Manner of Grain, but their Harveſt ſeldom happens before *September*.

But another Thing that makes *Erzerom* very diſagreeable, is the want of Fuel; they have no Wood but Fir, and this they fetch two or three Days Journey; but as they have plenty of Cattle, the poorer Sort burn dry'd Cow's Dung mix'd with ſome other nauſeous Combuſtibles, which creates a very offenſive Smell in the Houſes where they are burnt, and partly leaves it's own Taſte upon Milk and Meat dreſt with it, which is otherwiſe very good, for the Country abounds with Grain and Cattle.

CHAP. XIII.

Treats of the Province of Diarbeck, *or the antient* Mesopotamia.

THE Province of *Mesopotamia*, now known by the Name of *Diarbeck*, lies between the two famous Rivers *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, being bounded on the East with the former, and on the West with the latter, on the South with *Chaldea*, and on the North with *Turcomania* and *Armenia Major*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Diarbeck*, 2. *Orsa*, 3. *Bir*, 4. *Sharmley*, 5. *Mousal*, 6. *Merdin*, 7. *Nesbin*; of which in Order.

Diarbeck. 1. *Diarbeck*, called by the *Turks Caremit*; it lies in about 37 Degrees of North Latitude; it is situate on a rising Ground on the West Side of the River *Tygris*, where it is in the Form of a half Moon; it is encompass'd with a double Wall, in the outermost of which is sixty two Towers and three Gates; on every Gate there is an Inscription in *Greek*, which though in a great Measure obliterated, yet the Name of *Constantine* in more Places than one remains legible. There is in the Town two or three handsom Piazza's, and there was once a Christian Church, but it is now turn'd into a Mahometan Mosque; about a League above the City there is a Canal cut out of the *Tygris*, which by reason of the great Descent of the *Tygris* in that three Miles running, brings the Head of the Canal above the Level with the highest Part of the Town, by which means the Water is convey'd from that Canal to all Parts of the City; in this Water all the red *Turkey* Leather is wash'd that is made at *Diarbeck*, and excels in Colour all that is made elsewhere, and has occasion'd such a Trade for that sort of Goods, that at least above one Fourth of the Natives are employ'd in it. The Soil is very good, and the Country abounds with Corn and Wine. It is a populous City, and in it are computed to be about twenty thousand Christians of one Denomination or other, as *Nestorians*, *Jacobites*, and *Armenians*; but the last are reckon'd double the Number of both the other. The Bassa is a Viceroy, and one of the Viziers of the Empire; several Provinces or Governments are under him, in which he can raise twenty thousand Horse among them who hold of the Crown by Military Tenure.

Diarbeck stands so near the Spring or Head of the *Tygris* that it is fordable there, except at the Time of the Freshes, which are occasion'd by the falling of the Rains, or the melting of the Snow from the Mountains, and they are obliged to go up as high as a Stone Bridge that is about a Mile above the Town.

Orsa. 2. *Orsa* is five or six Days Journey South-West from *Diarbeck*, and is supposed to be where *Edissa* once stood; it is in the thirty seventh Degree of North Latitude, on the East Side of the River *Euphrates*; here the Caravans commonly stay eight or ten Days, because the People who let the Horses and Mules between *Turkey* and *Persia* have their Houses here. *Orsa* is the Capital of *Mesopotamia*, and is said to be the Place where *Abraham* dwelt, *Abraham.* which carries with it a great deal of Probability, since we are certain that *Abraham* did dwel in *Mesopotamia*, *Acts* vii. 2. To those Strangers that desire to see the Rarities or Antiquities of the Place, they shew a large Fountain, upon the Springs whereof the Foundation of the principal Mosque in the City was laid; and they say this is the Place where *Abraham* prayed before he went to sacrifice his Son *Isaac*; and so exact are they in the Belief of it, that they say the two Springs are in the two Spots of Ground where *Abraham*'s two Knees were at that Time. The Springs feed the large Fountain above-mention'd, and at this Time they will not let any Person enter into the Grotto where those Springs rise, without pulling off their Shoes, and it is with difficulty that they will admit a Christian then, or even to see it. The Inhabitants are many of them *Armenian* Christians, and have their Churches, where they are allow'd to perform Divine Service; here are also several Grotto's in the Mountains, in which they say are the Tombs of antient Christians.

THE Town of *Orsa* is but meanly built, but it is encompass'd with Walls of Free Stone, with Towers at convenient Distances from one another. It is govern'd by a Bassa, and has a Garrison consisting of six or seven hundred Sphahi's, and about two hundred Janizaries, there being a greater Number of Horse that Foot required to oppose the Incursions of the *Arabs*, who, if not timely withstood, cross the River in hopes of Plunder. This Town is most famous for making the yellow *Turkey* Leather as it is call'd, the red (as above observ'd) being made at *Diarbeck*, and the blue is made at *Tocat*.

THERE is a Castle on the South Side of the City, about which is a broad deep Ditch, some Part of which is cut through a Rock; and on the Top of the Castle is a little square Turret, where they tell Travellers *Elias* formerly dwelt. There is a Well on the outside of the Town, of which they give the following Account: *Aggarus*, or *Agbarus*, King of *Orsa*, (supposed to be the same *Agbarus* which sent a Letter to King *Lonulus*, with a Description of our *Saviour*, which Letter, or one under that Name, is now frequently sold in *London*;) this *Agbarus*, being a Leper, sent Messengers to our *Saviour*, desiring that he would come and heal him, and with the Letter he sent a Painter to draw our *Saviour*'s Picture, but whether he thought to desire him to sit for it, or only to take a Sketch of it from some Views of him that he hoped to find opportunity to get, is uncertain, but the latter (if either) is most probable; but however the History further tells us, that when our Lord observed the Painter taking his Picture, he threw a Handkerchief over his Face which immediately received the Print of his Visage, and gave it them to carry to their Prince; but as they were returning home, and come near the City of *Orsa*, they were attack'd by Robbers, and the Person who had the Handkerchief dropt it into a Well to conceal it, and hasting to the Town related what had happen'd; the King, impatient to see the Handkerchief, or what was become of it, went the next Day with his Retinue in Procession to the Well, where they found the Water risen to the Brim, and the Handkerchief floating at the Top of it, which the King taking up in his Hand, was immediately cured of his Leprosy, and that the Water retains the same Virtue ever since.

I am apt to think some Persons may think this Story, but especially the latter Part of it, to be fabulous, and it is my Business to leave every Man to his own Way of Believing, and shall only add, that as we cannot prove the Impossibility of it, we must consult Probabilities; and as *Orsa* was not so far distant from the Place of our *Saviour*'s Birth and Travels but that a Correspondence might easily be maintain'd by Letters or Messengers, and if we further consider not only how frequent Leprosies

were

were in thoſe Countries, but how common it was to ſend to the Prophets to deſire a Cure, both which are atteſted in Holy Writ; and if we further obſerve, that *Eliſha*'s Word only ſent by a Servant to *Naaman*, made the Waters of *Jordan* become medicinal to him, and cured his Leproſy, 2. *Kings* v. 10, 14. or, that *Moſes* made the bitter Waters of *Marah* ſweet only by caſting a Stick into them by God's Appointment, *Exod.* xv. 25. it is very eaſy to believe that if *Agbarus* ſent the Petition to our *Saviour*, and receiv'd the Handkerchief from him, as above related, (though without any Promiſe to the Meſſenger of a Cure for his Maſter,) it might have that Effect upon *Agbarus* and the Well, as above, *for a greater than either* Eliſha *or* Moſes *was there*; nor does it at all derogate from the Credit of this Cure, that we do not read of it in the New Teſtament, for there are many other Things that *Jeſus* did which are not recorded there, *John* xxi. 25. This I thought fit to offer, and leave every Man to judge for himſelf, becauſe as too much Credulity in believing without Reaſon may be deem'd Superſtition; ſo too much Incredulity where Probabilities occur, may amount to Prejudice; but in what we relate that is any way dubious, we ſhall keep the middle Road between both Extreams.

Bir THE next Place of Note is *Bir*, or *Beer*, ſituate on the Eaſt Bank of the River *Euphrates*, about four Days Journey, or eighty Miles from *Aleppo* towards *Perſia*, and to the Southward of *Orſa*, on the ſame Side of the River *Euphrates*; this is the chief Paſs from *Aleppo* to *Meſopotamia*. The Town is built on the Side of a Hill, and is not very ſpacious; and on the Top of the Hill there is a Caſtle, where the Governor reſides; this Caſtle is built upon a Rock, and from it there is a Way cut under Ground to the River.

WHEN Mr. *Maundril* was there they ſhew'd him a Room full of old Arms, large Croſs-Bows and Beams of a prodigious Size, which he thought had been deſign'd for Battering-Rams; there were alſo large Head-pieces and *Roman* Saddles, *&c.* but he only ſaw them, for they would not give him any opportunity to examine into the Original or Antiquity of them; he obſerved in the Side of a Hill a large Cave or Vault cut into, with fifteen large natural Pillars left to ſupport the Roof. This City (like *Orſa*) is well wall'd, but meanly built; there is a Garriſon of ſix or ſeven hundred Men, commanded by an Aga; but it is within the Territories of the Baſſa of *Orſa*.

Sharmley ABOUT a Day's Journey to the Eaſtward of *Bir* lies the Town of *Sharmley*; but here is nothing obſervable; only there is a good Caravanſera and Baths, and a ſtrong Caſtle, or Fortreſs, upon a Mountain near it.

Mouſal *Mouſal* ſtands on the Weſt Side of the River *Tygris*, over againſt where old *Niniveh*, in *Aſſyria*, once ſtood, in the thirty ſeventh Degree of North Latitude. This City, like many other noted Places in *Turkey*, has ſtrong Walls, but the Houſes are ordinary, and many of them in Ruins; the City however is three Miles in Circumference, and govern'd by a Baſſa, who reſides in a little Caſtle built on the *Tygris*. It is a Place of good Trade, as being the common Road of the Caravans from *Aleppo* to *Perſia*, and its ſituation upon the *Tygris* in that Road ſtill increaſes the Trade and Concourſe of People, becauſe it has a navigable Communication with *Bagdat*, and conſequently with *Boſſora*, by the River *Tygris*, ſo that it is the Center of Trade between *Aleppo*, *Boſſora*, and *Perſia*. Here is commonly a Garriſon of three or four thouſand Horſe and Foot; here is a great Trade for Gauls, that being the chief Product of the adjacent Country; it has a Communication with *Aſſyria* by a Bridge of Boats over the River *Tygris*.

Merdin is ſix or ſeven Days Journey to the Eaſtward of *Orſa*; it is a ſmall City, ſtanding upon a Mountain; it is encompaſs'd with a good Wall, and has a Caſtle upon a riſing Ground on the North Side of it, here the Governor reſides with a Garriſon of two hundred Horſe and four or five hundred Foot, but it is an inland Town, and a Place of no great Trade, but only as it is in the Road from *Aleppo* to *Perſia*.

Nesbin THE Town of *Nesbin* is two Days Journey to the Eaſtward of *Merdin* in the Road to *Perſia*; this is the antient *Niſibis* which was once the Capital of *Meſopotamia*, or rather ſtands where it ſtood, and is now only a Shadow of it, being reduced to a large Village; it is ſituate on the River *Saba*, about thirty Miles to the Weſtward of the River *Tygris*; it is inhabited now by *Armenian* and *Neſtorian* Chriſtians. Here they ſhew Travellers the Tomb of St. *James* Biſhop of *Niſibis*. In the ſame Church-Yard is a Pedeſtal of Stone, on which are placed ſeveral lighted Candles, which poor People offer when they are ſick or in Diſtreſs, as ſuppoſing it to be the Pedeſtal of ſome Saint's Statue which the *Turks* have defac'd. We have a certain Author that obſerves with a ſort of a Surprize, that the poor People pay the ſame Reverence to the Pedeſtal as they would have given to the Image: from whence it is natural to ſuppoſe, that he thinks the Pedeſtal could not hear them as well, and do them as much Service, as the Image could have done if it had been there.

CHAP. XIV.

Treats of Armenia Major, *now known by the Name of* Turcomania.

ARMENIA MAJOR lies to the Northward of *Aſſyria* and *Meſopotamia*, and conſequently is bounded on the South by them, and on the Weſt by *Natolia*, on the North by *Georgia* and Part of *Natolia*, and on the Eaſt by *Adirbitzan*, or the antient *Media*, which is a Province of *Perſia*. The chief Towns are *Erzerom*, *Kars*, and *Van*, of which take the following Deſcription:

Erzerom *Erzerom* is in about forty Degrees of Latitude North, and about five or ſix Days Journey (allowing twenty Miles a Day) to the Southward of the *Black Sea*; it ſtands at one End of a fine Plain, at the End of a Chain of Mountains, which, as Mr. *Tournefort* obſerved, was cover'd with Snow when he was there, although it was in the middle of *June*, and the Place, as above obſerved, is but in forty Degrees of Latitude. The Plain of *Erzerom* is fruitful in all Manner of Grain, but their Harveſt ſeldom happens before *September*.

BUT another Thing that makes *Erzerom* very diſagreeable, is the want of Fuel; they have no Wood but Fir, and this they fetch two or three Days Journey; but as they have plenty of Cattle, the poorer Sort burn dry'd Cow's Dung mix'd with ſome other nauſeous Combuſtibles, which creates a very offenſive Smell in the Houſes where they are burnt, and partly leaves it's own Taſte upon Milk and Meat dreſt with it, which is otherwiſe very good, for the Country abounds with Graſs and Cattle.

AL-

Although *Georgia* lies in a more Northerly Climate, yet their Summer is ſo much forwarder, that *Erzerom* has their beſt Fruit from thence. The Town of *Erzerom* is water'd by ſeveral Rivulets which deſcend from the Hills, and not only ſupply the Town, but water the adjacent Fields. Their Wine and Spirits are the worſt in *Turkey*, and ſuch as they are, are very hard to come at; for as they are ſo ſtrictly prohibited, thoſe who are found ſelling of them are frequently puniſh'd with the Baſtinado.

This Town, like ſeveral others in this Part of *Turkey*, is encompaſs'd with a double Wall, or rather with two Walls, on which are ſeveral Towers; the whole is about two Miles in Circumference, but the Ditches are not deep, but almoſt fill'd up with Mire. The Viceroy of the Province reſides in an old Palace, and the Aga of the Janizaries, who is abſolute in his own Branch of Government, and independent of the Viceroy, dwells in a Caſtle which ſtands above the Town. It is moſt commonly fatal to the Viceroy when he is ſent for to the Aga's Caſtle; for if upon ſome Miſdemeanor or Diſguſt, ſometimes never diſcover'd to the ſuffering Perſon, the Grand Seignior thinks fit to put a Period to the Viceroy's Reign, he ſends a Capigi to ſummon him to the Aga's Caſtle, who, upon his Arrival there, immediately executes his Tragical Commiſſion.

The greateſt Part of the *Turks* inhabiting in this City paſs under the Name of Janizaries, not that they are in Pay as ſuch, but give Money to the Aga to purchaſe the Privilege of being inliſted as ſuch, to protect themſelves from the Inſults of thoſe that are really Janizaries; for they are ſuch a numerous and powerful Body, and the Empire has ſuch a Dependance upon them, that they are allow'd to inſult the reſt of their Fellow Subjects, and ſeldom call'd to Account for the Abuſes commited by them.

Erzerom a Biſhop's See.

Erzerom is the Reſidence of an *Armenian* Biſhop, ſubject to the Patriarch of *Erivan* in *Perſia*. The *Greeks* have alſo a Biſhop here, but they have but one Church, and are a ſort of a poor People, being moſtly Handicrafts, and quarter'd in the Suburbs, and pretty much employ'd in making Copper Utenſils, that Metal being dug up in the neighbouring Mountains; they have alſo a Trade for *Jarvada* Furs, which are Skins ſomewhat like thoſe of Martens. *Erzerom* is a conſiderable Thorough-fare from *India* and *Perſia* to *Conſtantinople*, and the rather, becauſe the thieviſh *Arabs* ſo much infeſt the Road by way of *Aleppo* that they think it ſafer to go by the Way of *Erzerom*, and from thence to *Trapeſonde* upon the South-Eaſt Coaſt of the *Black Sea*, where they can embark, and, without fear of any Enemies, go by Sea all the Way to *Conſtantinople*.

The River *Euphrates* has two Sources, or Springs, the Stream of one of which runs on one Side, and the other on the other Side of *Erzerom*, at ſome conſiderable Diſtance from it, and meet forty or fifty Miles below the Town, after which the River, or the two Rivers united, will carry ſmall Veſſels; but there are ſo many Rocks and Sands, that the Navigation is dangerous, if not impracticable.

When Mr. *Tournefort* was in this Country, his Curioſity excited him to ſee the main Source of the River *Euphrates*; but, not being acquainted either with the Roads or the Temper of the People, was told that the *Curdes* were what he had chiefly to be afraid of, becauſe they were ſo numerous; their Buſineſs is to attend their Flocks and Herds, for which Purpoſe they pitch their Tents on the Mountains, and remove from one Place to another, but being of a thieviſh Diſpoſition, they ſtick not to take Plunder when Opportunity offers; but, however, he being inform'd of the Veneration they pay to a Prieſt, he prevail'd upon an *Armenian* Biſhop to go along with him, and after two or three Hours riding they entred ſome fine Valleys, through which the winding Stream of the *Euphrates* paſs'd, and rendred them exceeding pleaſant; but aſcending the Mountains they were all cover'd with Snow, although it was then the two and twentieth of *June*, and in a Climate above ten Degrees of Latitude to the Southward of any Part of *England*; or where the Ground could be ſeen, they produc'd nothing but Moſs; however, they found abundance of Springs on the Tops of the Mountains, which trickling down the Sides of the Hills into the Valley, united and became one Stream, and this Collection of Springs was the Head, or Source, of the River *Euphrates*, which, with the Addition of the continual Springs that deſcend from the Mountains, and join it in its Paſſage, amounts to the famous River known by that Name.

Kars. The next Place of Note is *Kars*, or *Sars*, in the forty ſecond Degree of North Latitude; it is ſituate about five or ſix Days Journey North-Eaſt from *Erzerom*; it give Name to a River upon which it ſtands, which runs into the *Caſpian Sea*, tho it goes by another Name before it reaches the Sea. This Place before the preſent War was a Frontier Town of *Turkey* towards *Perſia*; it has a double Wall round it, and is about two Miles in compaſs, but thinly inhabited; the Caſtle ſtands next the River, on an inacceſſible Rock; the Houſes are very mean Buildings, but there is a ſtrong Garriſon, commanded by a Baſſa. A little below the City of *Kars* the River is join'd by that call'd *Arpagi*, and the River, as compos'd of theſe united Streams, falls into the *Araxes*, or *Arras*, before it reaches the *Caſpian Sea*. The *Turkiſh* Officers here impoſe very much upon Travellers, which makes the Paſſage through this Town into *Perſia* almoſt impracticable.

Van. The large City of *Van* lies South-Eaſt from *Erzerom*, upon a Lake of the ſame Name; it has a ſtrong Caſtle built upon a Mountain, it is a populous Place, and has a numerous Garriſon, commanded by a Baſſa; the Lake of *Van* is about fifty Miles in Circumference, but, beſides the Largeneſs of it, we do not find it remarkable for any thing but for the Plenty of Fiſh it produces, with which the Neighbourhood and Parts adjacent are ſupply'd.

CHAP. XV.

Gives an Account of the antient Syria, *and therein of* Aleppo, Scanderoon, Antioch, Tripoli, Tyre, Sydon, Damaſcus, Lebanon, *and the famous Cedars there*, &c.

SYRIA is ſeparated from *Meſopotamia* by the River *Euphrates*, the former being to the Weſtward, and the latter to the Eaſtward of that River; it is bounded on the North by *Natolia* and *Turcomania*, and on the South by *Arabia*, on the Weſt by the *Levant*, or *Mediterranean Sea*, and on the Eaſt by the *Euphrates*; in *Syria*, taken in its largeſt Extent, is included *Paleſtine*, or the *Holy*

Land.

Land; it is divided into three Viceroyalties, *Aleppo*, *Tripoli*, and *Damaſcus*, call'd by the *Turks Scham*, which Capitols are the Seats of the reſpective Viceroys. To begin at the Northermoſt, *Aleppo*, whoſe Capitol is of the ſame Name, lies in Latitude thirty ſix Degrees North, is about eighty Miles Weſt from the *Euphrates*. *Aleppo* is upon four Hills in the Middle of a pleaſant Plain; the City is about three Miles in Circumference; the Caſtle ſtands upon the higheſt of the four Hills, in the middle of the City, and is about three thouſand Foot, or a thouſand Yards, in Circumference; the Walls and Towers of the City and Caſtle is built of Stone, but not very ſtrong, there are ten Gates in the Walls of the Town, and the Houſes are handſomer than moſt of the Buildings in *Turkey*, and thoſe that belong to People of Figure have generally Domes or Cupeloes, and in general their Architecture exceed moſt of what is in other Parts of *Turkey*. The Natives are ſaid to be both ingenious and induſtrious; in the Town are very handſom Marble Buildings and Fountains, and ſix and twenty Moſques, ſome of which are very magnificent; there are alſo ſeveral Caravanſera's in *Aleppo*, one whereof is more ſpacious than the reſt, having two great Gates leading into a large Court, with a Piazza on every Side, under which are Rooms for the Foreign Merchants and their Goods. There are three Colleges for *Turkiſh* Education, and great Numbers of publick Bagnio's, and alſo of *Bazars*, or Market-Places, where Tradeſmen have their Shops.

Water. In *Aleppo* are two Fountains, or Receptacles of Water, which are ſupply'd by two Springs, which riſe at a ſmall Diſtance above the Town. They have plenty of Grapes, with which they make ſtrong Wine; they have alſo Oranges, Lemons, Pomegranats, *&c.* and their Kitchen Gardens afford plenty of Sallads, Collyflowers, Onions, Mellons, Artichokes, Kidney-Beans, and other kinds of Pulſe, but they have not Apples, Pears, and ſuch common *Engliſh* Fruit; but the Country about yields good Crops of Wheat and Barley, and their Valleys are full of Olive-Trees and Capers, but they have but little Graſs.

There are great plenty of Silks, Camblets, and *Turkey* Leather; they alſo make great Quantities of that fine, but rough, Leather that we call Shagreen, which is made of the thickeſt Part of an Aſs's Skin. Our *Turkey* Company have a Factory here, who converſe among themſelves and live very happy, although in a Heatheniſh Country.

Valley of Salt. About ſix or ſeven Miles from *Aleppo* there is a Valley of Salt, four or five Miles in Extent; it is an exact Level, and appears at a Diſtance like a Lake, or Pool of Water; there is a kind of a dry Cruſt upon the Surface of it, which when the Horſes go upon it ſounds like hollow Ice, or frozen Snow; there are four ſmall Rivers empty themſelves into this Pool, or Valley, which in the rainy Seaſons overflow it; but when the Heat has dried up the Water there remains a Cruſt of Salt, which they gather and diſtinguiſh into ſeveral Degrees of Fineneſs, and lay it in different Heaps accordingly, ſome of it being exquiſitely white, and the ordinary Sort incorporated with a kind of dirty Matter. The Surface was not equally hard, for in ſome Places the Horſes Feet ſtruck deep in a ſoft brown Clay, and in other Places into a black one, which at a great Depth was very ſalt; there is a great Precipice on one Side of the Valley, which is made by their digging for Salt, and in it may be diſcern'd how the Veins of Salt lie; and it was obſerved that what was expoſed to the Sun and other Varieties of Weather, retain'd its outward appearance of Salt, but had loſt its Savour; but the inward Part, which was not ſo expoſed, had the natural Taſte of Salt, and is uſed and ſold as ſuch, and there is ſuch a Call for it, that it is farm'd of the Government for 1200 Dollars a Year.

The Viceroy of *Aleppo* commands all the Country between *Scanderoon* and the River *Euphrates*; but beſides him there is an Aga, or General of the Horſe; there is alſo a General of the Janizaries, to whom the Keys of the Gates are deliver'd every Night, and beſides him, the Caſtle has another independent Governor; for it is one Maxim of *Turkiſh* Policy, never to truſt an important Place in the Hand of one Man, but to place two inveſted with full and equal Power, to be a Check upon one another, and to prevent Conſpiracies, which cannot be ſo unanimouſly carried on by Perſons of different Intereſts.

Scanderoon. *Scanderoon*, or *Alexandretta*, is the Port of *Aleppo*, inſomuch that they are promiſcuouſly underſtood to be both the ſame, but *Aleppo* is between twenty and thirty Leagues up in the Country, to the Eaſtward of *Scanderoon*; which, it is ſaid, was founded by *Alexander the Great*, but is not now any populous Place, but only affords a little Entertainment for Mariners that trade hither, but not for Merchants or Perſons of any Figure, the Factors and Dealers living at *Aleppo*; and when an *European* Ship arrives at *Scanderoon*, they ſend Notice from thence to *Aleppo* by a Letter faſtened to a Carrier Pidgeon; which, having been bred up for that Purpoſe, will fly home to *Aleppo* in four or five Hours, though it is near thirty Leagues, or ninety Miles, as above obſerved.

Belan. The Village of *Belan* is ſituate on a Mountain between *Scanderoon* and *Aleppo*; and from this Mountain may be ſeen the once-famous, but now ruinous, City of *Antioch*, where our Saviour's Diſciples were firſt call'd Chriſtians; it was once the Capitol of *Syria* and a Sea-Port, but is now gone to Ruin, and the Channel choak'd up. The Plain of *Antioch* is about fifteen Leagues long, and three broad, and therein is a long Cauſe-way, join'd together by ſeveral Bridges, over the Rivulets which water the Plain; there is a conſiderable Stream at the End of the Plain, over which is a great Stone Bridge; this Stream with the other Rivulets are collected into one Place, and call'd the Lake of *Antioch*; this Plain is very well planted with Olives; about eight or ten Miles beyond this are abundance of Ruins of antient Monaſteries for two or three Leagues on each Side of the Road.

Antioch. *Antioch* is ſituate an the River *Orontes*, now call'd *Haſi*; the *Turks* have had it in Poſſeſſion ever ſince the Year 1188; it was famous for the Grove and Oracle of *Apollo*, but is now a poor Place, and much fallen to decay.

Jebilee. Three or four Days Journey to the Southward of *Antioch* ſtands the antient City of *Gabala*, now *Jebilee*, on a Fruitful Plain, cloſe by the Sea. It was a Biſhop's See in the Time of the *Greek* Emperors, but now makes but a mean Appearance, though it retains ſome Marks of its former Splendor, eſpecially the Remains of a noble Theatre at the North Gate of the City; and there are alſo found a great many Pillars of Granate, with Capitals of white Marble curiouſly carved; ſome Part of the Wall, which is not above twenty Foot high, has been blown up by the *Turks* at their taking it, and not ſince repair'd, but the Marble Stones, of which it was compoſed, are applied to the repairing and beautifying the Moſque and Bagnio now remaining in this Place. There is yet ſtanding the Semicircle, being about a hundred Yards from Side to Side; in the Semicircular Part is a Range of ſeventeen round Windows juſt above the Ground, between which were raiſed maſſy Pillars upon high Pedeſtals, but now moſtly fallen to decay; the Seats of the Spectators, and alſo the Vaults under the Theatre, remain perfect; the Building has been very ſtrong,

and might have continued many Ages, if it had not fallen a Victim to *Turkish* Cruelty.

Tortosa. About twenty Miles to the Southward of *Jebilee* stands the antient *Orthosia*, now *Tortosa*; it was a Bishop's See, and a very strong Place; it stands in the Province of *Tyre* on the Sea Shore, on the Edge of a spacious Plain, which extends a great Distance on the North, East, and South Sides of it, but it is now in a ruinous Condition, though there is yet left a large Castle wash'd by the Sea; some Part of the Walls are still remaining. There is also a Church a hundred and thirty Foot long, and ninety three broad, and sixty one in Height; the Wall Arches, and Pillars are still so entire, that it would not require a great Charge to repair it, but the *Turks* use it as a Stable for Cattle, and the Ground about it is by that means almost to the Knees in Mire and Dirt, which makes the approach to it very troublesome.

Tripoli. The next remarkable Place to the Southward of *Tortosa*, is *Tripoli*, the Seat of the Viceroy of this Province, which was formerly call'd *Phenicia*; and is that antient *Phenicia*, and its then Inhabitants those antient *Phenicians*, so famous in History for their so early, or as some say, first improving Navigation to that degree, as by the help thereof to settle Colonies in the remote Parts of their contiguous Countries, or Quarters of the World, *Africa* and *Europe*, long before *America* was known to the Inhabitants of those Parts.

Tripoli is situate between two Hills, a small Distance from the Sea; there stands a ruinous Castle on one of the two Hills, which was built to command the Town, but is now rather like a Prison than a Garrison; the Port is rather a Road than a Harbour, but is made a little more safe by two Islands, which lie about two Leagues from the Shore. This City stands but a little Way distant from the famous Mount *Libanus*; in which, as in several other Mountains, there rises a Spring, which forms a Rivulet sufficient not only to supply the Town with Water, but to be dispers'd by small Channels to the upper Part of their Ground or Gardens, and so to water them by trickling Streams descending from thence. Here are plenty of Orange-Trees, and also Mulberry-Trees in such abundance, that they produce great Quantities of Silk, and have considerable Manufacturies here of that Commodity. This Town is supposed to have been call'd *Tripoli* from three Towns, which antiently stood in a Triangular Form, about a Furlong from each other; of which, they say, the first was inhabited by *Aradii*, the second by the *Sydonians*, and the third by the *Tyrians*; but, however probable it may be that the Name of the Town was derived as above, it seems unlikely that those Towns so near one another should be differently peopled by the respective Towns of *Tyre* and *Sydon*, the nearest of which two Places is at such a Distance from *Tripoli*.

Sydon. *Sydon*, by some call'd *Sayd*, is seventy or eighty Miles to the Southward of *Tripoli*, and upon the same Coast; it is still a populous Town, but the Pieces of Antiquity, as the many beautiful Pillars and other Remains of antient Buildings, which stand in the Gardens without the present Walls, are fatal Monuments of its being declined from its antient Grandeur. On the South Side of the City there stands an old Castle upon a Hill, and not far from it a Palace, where the Bassa resides; but, as most of the Buildings are either fallen to decay, or repairing and not quite finish'd, there cannot much be said as to the Beauty of the Place.

Tyre or Sur. The antient *Tyre*, by some now called *Sur*, is about twenty or twenty five Miles South of *Sydon*; it stands upon a Peninsula, and being an antient, but now ruinous, Place, it appears best at a Distance; there was an old *Turkish* Castle on the North Side, but little of it now remains but broken Walls and Pillars. The Town is mostly inhabited by poor Fishermen. This and the last Place described, are that *Tyre* and *Sydon* so often mention'd in Scripture, more especially in St. *Luke* x. 13, 14. The Place where *Tyre* stands was only an Island, but was made a Peninsula, and join'd to the Land by an artificial *Isthmus* by *Alexander*; there is yet the Remains of an antient Wall about it; and in the Middle of the Ruins there is a Pile higher than the rest, which is the East End of a great Church, supposed to be the antient Cathedral of *Tyre* when it was a Bishop's See, and from hence Mr. *Maundril* makes a particular Remark, and to it subjoins a Prophetick Conjecture; his Remark is, that he has seen not less than a hundred Instances of Churches in that Country, whose *East* End has been tolerably entire: this he imputes to a miraculous Providence, and looks upon it as a prophetical Presage of their future Restoration; the Fact we have no reason to dispute, having had it from so credible an Author; but whether we are to impute the *East* End standing longest to any Thing that will admit of a prophetick Conjecture, or to the superior Strength of that Part of the Building above the rest, we ought to leave every Reader to judge for himself; only I cannot forbear thinking that if the West End had stood longest, it had been as good a Presage as the other of a future Restoration, if there could be any Presage in either the East or West standing longest.

As we have begun, we shall proceed along the Coast to the Southward, and observe that the next remarkable Place to *Tyre* is *Acra*, or *Acho*, about ten Miles distant to the Southward of *Tyre*; it lies also upon the *Mediterranean*, but on the East and North of it is a spacious fertile Plain; the Bay on the South of it extends as far as Mount *Carmel*; it has of late fallen into the Hands of the *Turks*, as has now the rest of *Syria*, and now there is little to be seen of *Acra* but the Ruins of it, as compleated by the *Turks*. *Acra.*

We have a Report in History that the old Abbess and Virgins under her Care in *Acra*, being apprehensive that they should be exposed to the brutal Usage that they expected from the Soldiers, in case they lay under their Mercy, the old Abbess summon'd the Nuns together, and advised them to make themselves uncapable of giving any Temptations to the Soldiers, by cutting, mortifying, and disfiguring their Faces, and herself, as a President, first disfigured her own, to encourage the Virgins to undergo the same Operation, whereupon some of them cut, gash'd, and tore their Faces, some cut off their Noses, and all made themselves such dismal Spectacles to outward Appearance, that they thought they had put themselves beyond all Temptation to Rapes or Ravishments; but when the *Turks* found them in this Condition, by their own voluntary Performance, they finish'd what the Nuns had begun, and since they could so easily submit to cutting and slashing, they put them all to the Sword, having no more Mercy of them than they supposed they had had of themselves before, in so abusing themselves.

Damascus or Sham. The next Place of Note, but not upon the Coast, is what is now call'd *Scham*, but as it is called *Damascus* both in authentick History, and in Scripture itself, I rather chuse to treat of it under that Denomination, as being very sensible that those new Names of Places, so far as they differ from the common receiv'd Names by which these Places have been first represented to us in antient authentick History, and even in Scripture itself, has created a great deal of Confusion in, and been a great Obstruction to Geographical Studies and Improvements.

But to proceed to *Damascus*; it is the Capitol of the South Part of *Syria*, and since it has been subject

to

to the *Turks*, it continues to be the Seat of a Viceroy of that Empire; it is in thirty three Degrees and ſome odd Minutes of North Latitude, forty or fifty Miles Eaſtward of *Sydon*, and conſequently of the *Levant*, or *Mediterranean Sea*. As a Perſon approaches the Town, on the South-Weſt Side, there is a Precipice with a high Building upon the Top of it, from whence *Damaſcus* makes a very agreeable Proſpect; and what is yet more entertaining, the River *Barrady* runs under this Eminency and Building: *Damaſcus* is ſituate on a Plain ſo extenſive, that the Mountains which encompaſs it are but juſt diſcernible, and the Town ſtands upon the Weſt Side of this Plain, about two Miles from where the River *Barrady* falls out of the Mountains, moſt of which two Miles is taken up with handſom Gardens: The City is about two Miles in Length, and narroweſt in the Middle; there are ſeveral fine Moſques and Steeples in the Town, and encompaſſed with Gardens, well ſtored with all manner of Fruit round about it; the Gardens are water'd by Streams iſſuing from the River *Barrady*, which ſupplies both the City and Gardens with Water, and is ſo exhauſted in its Paſſage, that the remaining Water is dried up before ever it reaches the Sea.

The River *Barrady*, immediately after its Deſcent from the Mountains, divides itſelf into three Streams, of which the Middlemoſt is the greateſt, and runs directly to *Damaſcus*, the other two run one of each Side of the Town, and are by ſome Geographers reckon'd to be that *Abana* and *Pharphar* mention'd mention'd 2 *Kings*, v. 12. and with great Probability too, ſince theſe are called *Rivers of Damaſcus*, and we find no other at or about the Place that could poſſibly bear that Name.

Streets of Damaſcus. The Streets of *Damaſcus* are but narrow, and the Houſes make but a dull Appearance on the Outſide, only the Doors are adorn'd with Marble Portals, and the Inſides very agreeable: Their common Faſhion of Building, is to have a large ſquare Court, beautify'd with Trees and Fountains, and ſurrounded with fine Apartments, and alſo with broad Seats, ſixteen or eighteen Feet above the Floor, ſpread with Carpets, and furniſh'd with Pillows and Cuſhions to lean upon; and upon theſe Places it is that the *Turks* eat, drink, ſleep, ſmoak, receive Viſits, and perform their Devotions; and theſe *Duans* or Places of Entertainment, are built and furniſh'd richer or poorer, according to the Ability of him that is the Owner.

Place where Adam was created. There is a Tradition at *Damaſcus*, that the Meadow or Field call'd *Ager Damaſcenus*, through which the River *Barrady* abovemention'd runs to *Damaſcus*, was the Field, in which, and of whoſe Earth God form'd *Adam*; nor does this at all contradict our foregoing Deſcription of *Eden*, or earthly Paradiſe; for it is not ſaid, that God created *Adam* in *Paradiſe*, but only, that *the Lord God planted a Garden Eaſtward in* Eden, *and there he put the Man whom he had form'd*, Gen. ii. 8. From hence it is not inconſiſtent with the Account that *Moſes* has given us of the Creation, to ſuppoſe that *Adam* was created before he was put in the Garden of *Eden*, and that it was after he was fix'd and ſettled there, that the Woman was created.

Paul's Viſion. They ſhew Travellers a Place about half a Mile out of the Eaſt-Gate of the City, which is the Place where *Saul* (afterwards call'd *Paul*) had his Viſion, which ſeems very probable, becauſe he was come near to *Damaſcus* when he had the Viſion, *Acts* ix. 3, 4. About half Way between that and the City, there is a ſmall Timber Building with an Altar in it, where they ſay *Paul* reſted in his Way to *Damaſcus*: after he had ſeen the Viſion, there is a Gate, which they tell us, is the Place where *Paul* was let down in a Basket, but that Gate is at preſent wall'd up. The Street called *Straight*, Acts ix. 11. is yet in the City, and retains the ſame Name; it is about half a Mile in Length, and by the Houſe jutting over it, ſeems to be very narrow.

Towards the Weſt Part of the City is a large Caſtle, where they depoſite their old Arms, and other Things that they have plunder'd the Chriſtians of formerly. Their Market-Places are cover'd, and made commodious for the vaſt Concourſe of People that reſort thither, it being a Place of very great Trade. One great Manufacture here is, that of making Knives, Sword-Blades, and other Inſtruments of Iron and Steel; the Water of the River *Barrady* being reckon'd of an extraordinary Nature for tempering theſe Sort of Tools. They excel in making Damasks, Soap, Raw and wrought Silks, Wine, Prunes; and Water of Damask Roſes, which grow in Plenty here, is one of the principal Merchandizes brought from thence.

Cain ſlew Abel. A ſmall Diſtance from *Damaſcus* is a high Hill, upon which they ſay *Cain* and *Abel* offer'd up their Offerings, and *Cain* ſlew his Brother. About ten or twelve Miles Northweſt of *Damaſcus* ſtands the City of *Balbeck*, ſuppoſed to be the antient *Heliopolis*, or *City of the Sun*, it is encompaſs'd with Gardens, and is of a ſquare Form, ſurrounded with a tolerable good Wall and Towers at equal Diſtances, each Side of the Square being about a Quarter of a Mile in Length, but the Buildings within are but mean. There is on the South-weſt Side of the City the Ruins of a noble Heathen Temple, with other Buildings belonging to it, which ſeem to be the Remains of ſomething exceeding magnificent, but are now pieced up, and ſerve for a Caſtle. *Balbeck.*

The firſt Thing that offers it ſelf to view upon approaching the City of *Balbeck*, is a little round Pile of Buildings, all of Marble, encompaſs'd with beautiful Pillars of the Corinthian Order; theſe Pillars ſupport a Cornice that ſurrounds the Structure, and the whole is made uſe of as a Church, in which the *Greeks* celebrate divine Service: Near this Building, but not ſeeming to be a Part of it, is a lofty Pile of Building, compos'd of vaſt ſquare Stones, through which they paſs into a ſtately arch'd Walk or Portico, two hundred and fifty Yards in Length, and this Walk reaches to the Temple, which is built in an oblong Form of ſixty four Yards in Length, and thirty two in Breadth: The Anti-Temple is fallen, but what is now ſtanding, is encompaſs'd with a noble Portico, ſupported by handſome Pillars, ſix Foot three Inches in Diameter, and forty five Foot high, each Pillar conſiſting of three Stones only, and are nine Foot aſunder, and as far from the Wall.

Mr. Maundrel enlarges more upon the particular Deſcription of this Building, than we think neceſſary to trouble our Readers with; we ſhall only obſerve what he ſays, as to the Largeneſs of ſome of the Stones, three of which he aſſures us, he meaſur'd, and that two of them were ſixty Foot each in Length, and the other ſixty three, and all of them were twelve Foot broad, and as many deep, and theſe three Stones were laid End to End, extending one hundred eighty three Foot, and the Wall upon which they lay was above twenty Foot high, which would almoſt ſeem incredible, how they ſhould hoiſt Stones of ſuch a vaſt Magnitude ſo high, and plainly proves, that their Skill in mechanic Powers, was not inferior to the beſt that our Architects are at preſent Maſters of.

Cedars of Lebanon. The ſame Author gives us the following Account of Mount *Libanus* or *Lebanon*, ſo famous in Scripture for the Cedars that grow there; he tells us, there is a fine ſpacious Plain of three or four Hours travelling, and being got over it, he came to the Foot of the Mount, and from thence continually aſcending, he came in about four Hours and

a

a half to a Village call'd *Eden*, and in about two Hours and a half more, he came to the Cedars; they grow upon the higheſt Part of the Mountain, which was cover'd with Snow, amongſt which thoſe Cedars grow; ſome of them are very remarkable for Age and Bulk, of which Sort he could reckon but ſixteen, the largeſt of which he meaſur'd, and found it thirty ſix Foot ſix Inches about, and ſeemingly very ſound, the Boughs extended thirty ſeven Yards in Breadth, about ſixteen or eighteen Foot from the Ground; it parted into five Branches, each of which was as big as a large Tree; but tho' there were but few ſo large, yet thoſe of a younger and leſſer Growth were very numerous.

Canobine. But to purſue the ſame Author's Account of this Country, he tells us, that he arriv'd at *Canobine*, which is a Convent of *Moronites*, and the Seat of their Patriarch. The Structure is but mean, but admirably adapted for Retirement and Devotion. There is a very deep Aperture in the Side of *Lebanus*, which runs twenty Miles and upwards, directly up into the Mountains. It is on both Sides exceedingly ſteep, but cloath'd with fragrant Greens from Top to Bottom, being every where water'd with Fountains, which overflowing, fall down from the Rocks on every Side, and form moſt beautiful Caſcades, and the Streams uniting at the Bottom, make a rapid Torrent, whoſe murmuring Noiſe is not diſagreeable to the adjacent Inhabitants.

Canobine abovemention'd, is ſituate on the North-ſide of this great Chaſm, on the ſteepeſt Part of this Mountain, and about half Way up. It ſtands at the Mouth of a great Cave, having a few ſmall Rooms only, which front outward, and enjoy the Light of the Sun, the Reſt being all under Ground, and was firſt founded by *Theodoſius the Great*. This Valley of *Canobine*, was once much frequented by the Religious, the remaining Proofs of which are the Hermitages, Cells, and Monaſteries, almoſt without Number; and not only ſo, but almoſt every Jetting out of a Rock in the Side of the Mountain, is a Teſtimony of this Antiquity, as every one has ſome Remains of the Structures for the Reception of Monks and Hermits, tho' very few of them are now inhabited. This *Canobine* Monaſtery is about ten Miles diſtant from *Tripoli*.

Palmyra or Tadmor. The next Thing to be taken Notice of is *Palmyra* or *Tadmor*, though now in Ruins; it is about a hundred and fifty Miles South Eaſterly from *Aleppo*, and between the two there is a barren Deſart almoſt deſtitute of Water. *Palmyra* is a Place of ſuch Antiquity, that our *Engliſh* Merchants at *Aleppo*, have travell'd thither out of mere Curioſity, and as their Expeditions are recorded in the *Philoſophical Tranſactions*, we ſhall depend upon the undoubted Credit thereof, and extract our Account from thence.

In their firſt Expedition, they were ſixteen Gentlemen in Company, which with Servants and Muleteers, amounted to forty in all. In the ſecond Day's Journey, they came to a Well in the Deſart, where they met with ſome *Arabs* ſhooting Antelopes; their Bullets were little Stones artificially cover'd with Lead. The *Arabs* had Pieces of Antelope Skins faſtened upon their Feet, Elbows, Knees, and the Palms of their Hands, to prevent their being cut or bruiſed with creeping after their Game. They made uſe of an Aſs, inſtead of a ſtalking Horſe, till they came within their proper Diſtance. They alſo found others at work, making Pot-aſh of an ordinary ſort of Weed, which they put into Pits, and burn for that purpoſe; but the beſt Sort is made of the Weed *Sticaon*, which grows about *Palmyra*; it has not what can properly be call'd Leaves, but juicy Branches like our Sapphire, and in burning runs into Cakes like Cinders, but heavier, and not ſo hard or porous.

The next Day's Progreſs brought them to *Andrene*, where they were only entertain'd with the Sight of Ruins, both of ſome Churches, and of a Town lying in a beautiful Plain; the moſt they could obſerve amongſt thoſe Ruins, was ſome *Greek* Inſcriptions, which tho' imperfect, and may almoſt be ſaid unintelligible, yet they gather'd ſo much from them, as to conclude, that they were evidently Chriſtian, and conſequently were ſtanding Proofs, that the Chriſtian Religion had prevail'd here. *Andrene*

About ſix or ſeven Miles from thence (ſtill purſuing their Journey toward *Palmyra*) they came to a pleaſant Aqueduct, cut through a Rock, a long Way from the Mountains, at the End of which was a fine Garden, or rather Gardens, which afforded, Melons, Cucumbers, and other Garden-ſtuff; and adjacent to that, they found a Grotto, where an *Arab* lived with his Family, and kept Buffaloes, not only to give Milk, but to plow his Ground, which by this Means procured Wheat and Barley, and makes it capable of being a Rendezvous for thoſe thievith *Arabs*, who plunder Travellers upon the Road, and come here to divide the Spoil. *A Rendezvous*

In their next Day's Journey, which was now the fourth, they found the Ground ſo hollow and ſandy, that it was very fatiguing travelling, and the Burrows made by Rats, and other Vermin, made it ſtill more dangerous, but the Inhabitants are glad of the Company of thoſe undermining Neighbours for; they take thoſe Rats and other Vermin, and eat them with the ſame Pleaſure as we do the Conies taken in the Burrows in *England* Theſe and the Piſtachio Wood held them the fourth and fifth Days.

The ſixth Day, they came within Sight of the Caſtle of *Anure*, which ſtands upon ſo high a Mountain, that they could ſee it over a Plain which lay before them, of the Breadth of ſeveral Hours travelling, but when they had travell'd two or three Hours upon this Plain, they were met by an *Arab* mounted upon a ſwift Camel, and carrying a Launce; they were at firſt jealous of him, ſuſpecting him to be a Spy, but when they came up to him, he told them, he belong'd to *Tadmor*, of which is the ſame *Palmyra*; and that his Prince the *Emir Melkham*, had that Day made Peace with another *Arabian* Prince named *Hamet Shided*, and that they were both then at *Palmyra*. This *Arab* took the Opportunity of travelling an Hour or two with the *Engliſh* Gentlemen and their Company, and expreſs'd his Jealouſy, by enquiring of their Muleteers, if they were not *Turks* in Diſguiſe, and were come with Deſign to ſeize the *Emir Melkham*, and what rather increas'd his Suſpicion, was, that he thought there muſt be ſomething more than Curioſity in the Caſe, or elſe, that alone could never have induc'd them to undertake ſuch a dangerous Journey, in ſo ſtrange a Country; but as it was out of his Power to intercept them, they proceeded towards *Tadmor*, the *Arab* riding before them with all the ſpeed he was capable of, till he got to the Town, which created a Suſpicion in the Town, that the *Franks* were intending to attack them, and the *Franks* on the other Side, expected the ſame Treatment from the Natives, and thereupon diſpatch'd twenty of their Servants before them, each arm'd with a Fuzee and Piſtols, the Gentlemen following at a ſmall Diſtance, to know how their Servants and Repreſentatives were receiv'd; and in this Manner they proceeded arm'd with Carbines and Muskets, till they came to an Aqueduct cover'd with an Arch of Marble, and five Miles in Length. In this Order they advanc'd, till they came to the Top of the Hill, from

from whence they had a View of the vaſt and noble Ruins of *Palmyra*, with a Plain to the Southward of them like the Sea for its vaſt Extent.

HERE they and their Company took the Opportunity to refreſh themſelves, and then fetch'd a Compaſs, and deſcended by the Foot of a Mountain, upon which ſtands an uninhabited Caſtle; here they met two *Arabs*, who complimented them in the Emir's Name, with Aſſurances of his Friendſhip, whereupon they return'd the Compliment by a Janizary, themſelves diſmounting in the mean Time at a Watering-place amongſt the Ruins, but did not unload their Beaſts, but waited for the Janizary's Return, expecting that he would bring the Emir's *Teſcar* or Writing, for their Protection; when the Janizary return'd, there came with him one that belong'd to the Sheik of the Town, for whom they had Letters from ſome *Turks*, People of Figure and Character at *Aleppo*; he directed them to the Town Wall, under which they pitch'd their Tents, in the Ruins of a large Palace, where they continued a conſiderable Time to wait the Sheik's Anſwer to their Letters; but finding the Natives expreſs ſome Uneaſineſs, they began to imagine that the Emir expected a Preſent from them, whereupon two of the Company took with them a Janizary and a Servant, and carried with them two Pieces of Red Cloth, and four of green, beſides ſeveral other Things, intended as a Preſent to him; the Emir received them graciouſly and treated them handſomely, and asked them ſeveral Queſtions about the Reaſon of their Journey; to which they anſwer'd, that it was only their own Curioſity put them upon that Journey to viſit the Ruins of *Tadmor*, which they had heard ſo much of.

THE Emir went out and left them in his Tent, and calling their Servant and the Janizary to him, he told them that no *Frank* had ever been there, and that if they ſhould acquaint the *Turks* with the Way through the Deſart, it might be of fatal Conſequence to the *Arabs*, and that he was therefore minded to deſtroy them all, leſt they ſhould make any Diſcovery to the *Turks* at their Return, but as he had that good Opinion of them, that they did not come with any ill Deſign, he would only have four thouſand Dollars of them as a Preſent, which if they did not comply with, he would immediately hang up both of them, and the two *Franks* in the Tent, and then fall upon the reſt and deſtroy them all.

THE Emir communicated this his Reſolution to the Gentlemen in the Tent, who anſwer'd they could not do any thing till they acquainted the reſt of their Company with his Demands, but if he would permit them to ſpeak to them, they would return him an Anſwer; but the Emir at firſt deny'd them, and threaten'd them with preſent Death, but a little ſoftned by their Importunity, he gave them leave to ſend their Janizary with a Letter to their Fellow Travellers, to acquaint them with his Demand, and to deſire them to redeem them; but when they had conſulted each other, they found that all the Money and Effects they could then make up fell vaſtly ſhort of his Demands; which when the Emir was inform'd of, he came to them in Perſon, and although, conſidering his former Reſolution, they were under Apprehenſions of preſent Death, yet he mitigated that Sentence, and for paying fifteen hundred Dollars he diſcharg'd them all, and they to haſten out of his Dominions, ſet forward on their Journey for *Aleppo* the next Day.

WHEN they arrived at *Aleppo* and inform'd the Baſſa there of what had happen'd, it ſo irritated him againſt the Emir, or Prince of the *Arabs*, that he meditated Revenge, to accompliſh which he amuſed the Emir with ſome Hopes of his making him King of the *Arabs*, in order to which the Emir thought to conſult the Baſſa in Perſon, and being come with his Retinue near *Aleppo*, the Baſſa ſurprized him in his Tent, took him, and ſoon after put him to Death.

CHAP. XVI.

The Deſcription of Paleſtine, *or the* Holy Land.

SOME Authors limit *Paleſtine*, or the *Holy Land* to *Judea* only, but Dr. *Fuller* in his Holy War includes in *Paleſtine*, or the *Holy Land*, the four Diviſions of *Galilee* on the North, *Trachonitis* beyond *Jordan* on the Eaſt, *Judea* on the South, and *Samaria* in the Middle and, conſidering this Extent, it may be ſaid to be bounded by the Mountains of *Libanus* on the North, the *Mediterranean* on the Weſt, *Arabia Petræa* on the South, and *Arabia Deſerta* on the Eaſt. *Galilee* is divided into Upper and Lower; the Upper is ſometimes call'd in Scripture *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*, becauſe it borders upon them, and comprehends the Tribes of *Aſher* and *Naphtali*.

IN the Tribe of *Aſher* (which extends to the Sea, and is a Part of the antient *Phœnicia*, ſo famous for their early Improvement in Navigation,) we find near the Sea-ſide *Sarepta*, where *Elijah* multiplied the Widow's Oil; 2. *Tyre*, a famous Sea-port in the Infancy of Navigation; 3. *Aphek*, whoſe Walls falling, ſlew 27000 of *Benhadad*'s Soldiers; 4. *Cana*, where the Woman lived that *Chriſt* diſpoſſeſs'd of a Devil; 5. The famous Mount *Libanus*, ſo remarkable for the Cedars, and for its being cover'd with Snow, of which in the preceding Chapter, from which ſnowy Top, or the Frankincenſe growing thereupon, it is ſuppoſed it obtain'd the Name of Mount *Libanus*.

AMONGST other Places remarkable in the Tribe of *Naphtali*, is *Haroſheth* of the *Gentiles*, where *Siſera*'s Head was nail'd to the Ground, *Judges* iv. 16, 21. notwithſtanding his nine hundred Chariots of Iron; 9. *Capernaum* ſo much ſpoke of in the Goſpels, and not far from which our Saviour fed the Multitude by a Miracle; 3. *Kedeſh*, a City of Refuge; 4 *Riblah*, where King *Zedekiah* after he had ſeen his Sons ſlain, had his own Eyes put out.

Lower Galilee contains *Zebulun* and *Iſſachar*; in *Zebulun* is contain'd, 1. *Nazareth*, the Place of our Saviour's Conception and Education; 2. *Naim*, where *Chriſt* rais'd the Widow's Son; 3. *Bethulia*, where *Judith* cut off *Holofernes*'s Head; 4 *Kiſhon River*, where *Siſera*'s Hoſt was ſwept away, *Judges* v. 21. alſo 5. Mount *Carmel*, where the Prophets converſed; and 6. Mount *Tabor*, where our Saviour was transfigured. *Lower Galilee.*

IN *Iſſachar* is *Shunem*, the Habitation of that Woman who was thence call'd *Shunamite*, who ſo often entertain'd *Eliſha*, and whoſe Son he rais'd from the Dead. In this Tribe alſo was fought the following Battles, viz. *Gideon* againſt the *Midianites*, *Jehu* againſt *Joram*, and *Saul* againſt the *Philiſtines* upon Mount *Gilboa*. *Iſſachar.*

The Deſcription of Samaria.

THE next, or Middlemoſt Province is *Samaria*; it contains the Tribe of *Ephraim* and the half Tribe of *Manaſſeh*; in this latter is *Megiddo*, where *Joſiah* was ſlain, alſo *Ceſarea Stratonis*, where *Samaria*

Herod was eaten up with Worms, and also *Jezreel*, near which was *Naboth*'s Vineyard.

A Description of Judea.

Judea. THIS Province contains the Tribes of *Benjamin*, *Dan*, *Simeon*, and *Judah*. In the Tribe

Benjamin. of *Benjamin* was the first Landing-place of the *Israelites* after they had croſt the River *Jordan*, and here it was that they first eat of the old Corn of the Country, and the Mannah ceased. In this Tribe is *Gibeon*, where *Joshua* commanded the Sun to stand still, also *Jericho*, whose Walls fell down, and *Ai*, which was taken by Stratagem, *&c.* the History of all which we read at large in the first ten or twelve Chapters of the Book of *Joshua*.

Dan. IN the Tribe of *Dan*, amongst other Things remarkable, is the City of *Joppa*, a Sea-port and good safe Harbour upon the *Levant* or *Mediterranean*, *Acts* x. 5, 6. and where *Jonah* took Shipping to flee to *Tarshish*, to avoid going to *Nineveh*, *Jonah* i. 1, 2. here is *Timnath*, where *Judah* committed Incest with *Tamar*; and in the Tribe of *Simeon*, adjoining to the Southward, is *Askelon*, where *Herod* was born; *Gaza*, whose Gates *Sampson* carried away, and afterwards being sent for to make them Sport, it ended in his own and their Destruction; in this Tribe also is *Beersheba* and *Gerar*, where *Abraham* and *Isaac* lived, near the Brook *Bezor*.

Judah. THE Tribe of *Judah* is the largest to the Westward of the *Dead Sea* or Lake of *Sodom*, and to the Southward of the Tribe of *Benjamin*; here is *Hebron*; 2. The Cave of *Macpelah*; 3. *Tekoah*, where *Amos* was born; 4. *Zoar*, where *Lot* fled for Refuge at the Destruction of *Sodom*, and near which his Wife was turned into a Pillar of Salt; and adjoining hereunto is *Lot*'s Cave, where, being overcome with Wine, he committed Incest with his Daughters; also *Bethlehem*, where our Saviour was born, and *Jerusalem* the Capital of *Palestine*.

A Description of Trachonitis.

THIS contains the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the half Tribe of *Manasseh*, on the East Side of the River *Jordan*, and was known in Scripture by the Name of Mount *Hermon*, or *Gilead*.

Reuben. IN the Tribe of *Reuben* is the Mount *Abarim*, being a Ridge or Chain of Mountains, the highest whereof was called Mount *Nebo*, and the Summit of that which was therefore the highest Land in all that Country, was call'd *Pisgah*, and from hence it was that *Moses* view'd the Promised Land, died, and was buried.

Gad. IN the Tribe of *Gad* we read of several remarkable Places, as 1. *Peniel*, where *Jacob* wrestled with the Angel; 2. *Jabesh Gilead* where *Saul* was buried; 3. *Ramoth Gilead*, where *Ahab* was slain, also the Cave where *David* had hid himself when he cut off the Skirt of *Saul*'s Garment; but we shall enlarge more upon the Situation of those particular Places in the Table which will follow the Map, and proceed now to

A particular Description of Jerusalem.

NOtwithstanding the Alterations that *Jerusalem* has undergone, it is still accounted the Capital of *Palestine*, or the *Holy Land*. It is in about two and thirty Degrees of North Latitude, and is about thirty Miles East from the *Levant*, or *Mediterranean Sea*; it has been twice destroy'd, first by *Nebuchadnezzar*, King of *Babylon*, and afterwards by *Titus Vespasian*; before which Time it was situate upon four Mountains, *viz.* Mount *Sion*, Mount *Moriah*, Mount *Acra*, and Mount *Bezetha*.

Mount *Sion.* MOUNT *Sion* was the highest of all, and was within the City towards the South; here stood King *David*'s House, and the Castle of *Sion*, and the uppermost Town.

MOUNT *Moriah*, whereon the Temple stood, with other excellent Buildings, was on the East Side of the City, within the Walls. Mount *Moriah*

THE lower Town was built upon Mount *Acra*; this is the West Part of the City; here *Annas*, *Caiaphas*, *Pilate*, *Herod*, *Agrippa*, *Bernice*, *Helena*, and other Kings and great Princes dwelt. The lower Town.

IT was then about four Miles in Circumference, but it is now reduced, and is computed not above three Miles about, nor does it now stand upon the same Ground upon which the antient *Jerusalem* stood, for Mount *Calvary*, which is a small Eminence, or rising Ground, upon the great Mount *Moriah*, was at a small Distance without the Walls of the City, and was held in the utmost Contempt, as being the Place of Execution of common Malefactors, and for that Reason our blessed Saviour was there crucified; but his Suffering there has occasion'd such a Concourse of Christian Pilgrims, that it has drawn the City round about it, so that Mount *Calvary* may now be said to be in the Heart of the City, and a great Part of Mount *Sion* is now without the Walls.

THE City, according to the latest Description we have of it, has six Gates, *viz. Bethlehem*, Mount *Sion*, *Sterquilina*, or the Dung-Gate, *St. Stephen's*, *Herod's*, and that of *Damascus*; there is also the *Golden-Gate*, which is shut up. The Walls are not very strong, nor have they Bastions, but common Towers, according to the old Way of Fortification, and an inconsiderable Moat, or Ditch, and that but only on one Side; the Buildings are mean, the Streets narrow, and the Place but thinly inhabited, and indeed the chief Support of the Town depends upon the Concourse and Resort of Pilgrims or Travellers, whose Religion or Curiosity excites them to come to this Place, and accommodating those People with Necessaries seems to be the principal Business of the Inhabitants.

Jerusalem is under the Dominion of the Grand Seignior, who has a *Turkish* Bassa, or Resident here, to see good Orders kept, and to collect the Grand Seignior's Tribute from the Pilgrims, and the Fathers who reside here, and to protect them from the *Arabs*, when they go to visit the Holy Places about *Jerusalem*.

NO *Frank*, or *European* Christian, is allow'd to enter the City till the Governor is acquainted with his Arrival, and he has paid the Duties required, and then they are not allow'd to enter on Horseback, or with Arms, unless they come with some Consul or publick Minister. All the *Franks*, whether Papists or Protestants, go to the *Latin* Convent, where the Guardian and Friars entertain them handsomly for their Money; but they always distinguish between those that come for Devotion and those who come out of meer Curiosity; but whatever Inducement moves them to go there, they are always obliged, for their own Security, to maintain a good Correspondence with the Fathers of the *Latin* Convent, or if they refuse that Intimacy with them, and as it were a Sort of Protection from them, they are never safe, but charged as Spies, or some way entangled in Difficulties, which sometimes they never survive, nor return from thence to give an Account of what Usage they met with.

THERE is a Church upon Mount *Calvary* call'd the Church of the *Holy Sepulchre*; it is very much visited by Pilgrims; it is about five hundred Foot long, and three hundred Foot broad; it stands upon the Side of the Hill, but the Ground upon which it stands is reduced to a Level by taking away the higher Part of the Rock; but this Church is at a little Distance from that Part of Mount *Calvary* where our Saviour's Cross was fix'd, that Ground to this

Day being taken particular Care of, and not ſuffer'd to be broke or alter'd, or apply'd to any Uſe; it is upon the higher Part of Mount *Calvary*, and is a little Place nearly level, about ten or twelve Yards ſquare, and ſtands above the Church, or higher up, on the Mountain, ſo that there is one and twenty Steps, or Stairs, up from the Church to the Place where the Croſs was fix'd, and the Holy Sepulchre itſelf, which was firſt a Cave hewed in the Rock under Ground, but the Rock having been cut away all round it, and the Sepulchre left, it is now an Arch, or Grotto above Ground.

Reception of Pilgrims.

When Travellers or Pilgrims go to viſit the City of *Jeruſalem*, the Druggerman and others deputed by the Convent meet them without the Gate, where they pay the Duties required before they are admitted, and then they are brought into the Cloiſter, and handſomly entertain'd, and their Feet waſhed, &c. after which they are conducted to the Chapel, where they ſit down on a Crimſon-Velvet Couch, and the Father-Guardian, or his Monks, waſh their Feet in Veſſels of Water, in which is Plenty of Roſes; which done, they give every Pilgrim a white Wax Taper, and then go in Proceſſion round the Cloiſter, ſinging *Te Deum* at three ſeveral Altars, for the ſafe Arrival of the Pilgrims at the Holy City.

Things remarkable in *Jeruſalem*.

Mr. *Thevenot* gives us the following Account of what he ſaw in and about *Jeruſalem*: He ſays, that he and the reſt of the Pilgrims went out with proper Guides on the *Saturday* before *Palm Sunday*, to viſit the *Dolorus Way* and other Places; and firſt they paſs'd near the *Judgment Gate*, ſo call'd becauſe it was the Gate through which common Criminals went to Mount *Calvary*, the Place of Execution; and through this Gate it was that our Saviour went bearing his Croſs to be crucified at that common Place of Execution. On the Right Hand is the Houſe of *Veronica*, who ſeeing our Saviour's Face ſmear'd with Sweat and Blood with the exceſſive Load of his Croſs, made Way through the Crowd, and wip'd his Face with her white Veil; and a little further towards Mount *Calvary*, is the Place where *Simon* the *Cyrenean* help'd our Lord to carry his Croſs.

About a hundred and fifty Yards from this Place is an Arch under which they paſs'd; it is a large Arch, and extends from one Side of the Street to the other, and has two Windows (ſeparated only by a little Marble Pillar) which looks into the Street, under theſe Windows is this Inſcription, *Tolle tolle Crucifige eum.* At the End of that Street, on the Left Hand, is *Herod*'s Palace, where our Saviour was, in Deriſion, cloath'd with Purple, and ſent back to *Pilate*, to whom *Herod* was but that Day reconcil'd. When they had left this Street, they ſaw *Pilate*'s Palace on the Left Hand; it is but a Piece of dull Architecture at preſent; they afterwards proceeded to the Place where our Saviour was ſcourg'd; and from thence proceeds the *Dolorous Way*, which reaches from the Houſe of *Pontius Pilate* to Mount *Calvary*; the Way is ſo call'd becauſe our Saviour went that Way to be crucified, and not only ſo, but was even compell'd to carry the Croſs upon his own Back, on which he knew he was to ſuffer. This *Dolorous Way* leads from *Pilate*'s Houſe to Mount *Calvary*; and indeed, ſpeaking of our Saviour as to his Human Nature, it was (to him) the Way from Life to Death, yet it was to all Chriſtians and true Believers the Way from Death to Life; I might expatiate upon this Subject; but as I am not a Divine, to enlarge upon thoſe ſublime Affairs, but an Hiſtorian to relate Matters of fact, it is to be hop'd that my Zeal as a Chriſtian will excuſe this Digreſſion.

Herod's Palace.

Dolorous Way.

This *Dolorous Way* is about a Mile in Length, at the End of which the Temple of the Sepulchre is built, of which Mr. *Sandys* gives the following Account:

N. B. *This is the Temple before deſcribed, but by this Author more fully under the Name of the* Temple of the Sepulchre; *the other, which was call'd the Church of the Holy Sepulchre, being the ſame.*

Temple of the Sepulchre.

This Temple is lofty and curiouſly arch'd, and ſupported by large Marble Pillars; the outward Iſles have Galleries, and the whole Fabrick is very magnificent; but they entertain People with different Kinds of Reception, according to the different Inducements that bring them there; for if it is Devotion, the uſual Anthems *Pater-Noſters*, *Ave-Maria's*, &c. is ſung; but if it is only Curioſity induces them to come there, thoſe Ceremonies are omitted.

Right againſt the Door in the midſt of the South Iſle, and level with the Pavement, there lies a white Marble Grave-ſtone, ſurrounded with a Rail of Braſs about a Foot high; this is the Place where *Joſeph* of *Arimathea* and *Nicodemus* anointed the Body of our Saviour; over this Stone hang ſeven Lamps, which burn continually. Againſt the Eaſt End of the Stone there is a little Chapel; and near the Entrance on the Right Hand ſtands the Sepulchre of *Godfrey* of *Boloigne*, with this Inſcription:

Hic jacet inclitus Godefridus de Buglion, *qui totam iſtam Terram acquiſivit Cultui* Chriſtiano *cujus Anima, requieſcat in Pace*, Amen.

And on the Left Hand that of his Brother *Baldwin*, likewiſe in *Latin*, in the following Words:

Rex Baldwinus Judas *alter* Machabeus *ſpes Patria Vigor Eccleſiæ Virtus utriuſque quem formidabant, cui Dona Tributa ferebant Cedar* Egypti, *Dan ac Homicide* Damaſcus, *Proh Dolor in Modico Clauditur hoc Tumulo.*

Theſe were the two firſt Chriſtian Kings of *Jeruſalem*.

Over this Chapel are the Chapels of Mount *Calvary*, for although, as before obſerv'd, the Mountain is not demoliſh'd or dug away, yet they have built a Chapel upon it; at the Eaſt End of which, under a large arch'd Concave of the Wall, is the Place where our Saviour ſuffer'd, according to Mr. *Sandys*'s Account of the Place, and that on the Right Hand was the Place of the Penitent Thief's Suffering; and on the Left Hand the Place of the other Thief; but the latter is ſeparated from the Place where our Saviour's Croſs ſtood by the Rent in the Rock, which cleft aſunder at the Time of his Paſſion, and is about a Yard and a half from the Hole where the Foot of the Croſs was fix'd; and that this is the Rent in the Rock, mention'd *Matthew* xxvii. 51. ſeems evident, firſt, that the Rocks did rent is evident from the Scripture above quoted, and that it was ſomewhere near the Place of our Saviour's Crucifixion is more probable, becauſe the Vail of the Temple which was rent, as mention'd in the ſame Chapter and Verſe, was at *Jeruſalem* and at the ſame Time; but a ſecond Reaſon, which more than confirms the firſt is, that this Cleft in the Rock is not above a Span wide in the upper Part of the Rock, and of an immenſe Depth, ſo that Mr. *Maundrel* allows a Probability of it's reaching to the Center of the Earth; but be that how it will, it is plain that ſo far as the Eye can ſee into it, the two Sides, notwithſtanding their Irregularity, would fit exactly into one another, although it is impoſſible for any Men or Tools to approach to do by Art, what is therefore evident Nature, or rather Divine Providence, upon that extraordinary Exigency has in ſuch a diſtinguiſhing Manner done, becauſe it could neither be counterfeited by Art, nor come at by Men and Inſtruments.

Place of Suffering.

Rent in the Rock.

Noted Places.

It is obſerv'd, by thoſe that give our Travellers an Account of thoſe Antiquities, that this Chapel ſtands upon, or covers, the following Places, *viz.* the Place where the Soldiers divided his Garments; the Place where he was ſhut up while they digg'd

the

the Hole to set the Foot of his Cross in, and prepar'd every Thing for his Crucifixion; where the Cross was erected; where the Soldier stood who pierced his Side; where the Angels appeared to the Women after his Resurrection, and several other Things and Places relating to the Particulars of our Saviour's Sufferings and Resurrection, to all which Places the Christians who now inhabit there (holding it of the *Turk*) pay such Veneration, that all the above-mention'd Places, and several others, are adorn'd with each its several Altars, erected in little Chapels about the Church or Temple.

THERE have been very warm Disputes about the Propriety of the Holy Sepulchre of several Places and Denominations, as *Armenians*, *Greeks*, and *Latins*; but especially the two last have contended so hotly about saying Mass here, that their Debates have amounted to Blows. But, in order to put an End to those Religious Quarrels, the King of *France* interposed with his Letters to the Grand Vizier, desiring that the Holy Sepulchre might be put into the Possession of the *Latins*, and prevail'd so far that in the Year 1690 an Order was obtain'd for that Purpose and then the *Latins* only had the Privilege of saying Mass there, and so it continues to this Day with respect to publick Mass; but Christians of all Denominations, and from whence soever they come, are allow'd to perform their private Devotions there.

Keeping the Time of the Passion and Resurrection.

MR. *Maundril* gives us the following Account of their strict Observation of the Anniversary, or yearly Return of the Time of our Lord's Passion and Resurrection, from his own Experience upon the Spot in the Year 1697, in which Year on *Good Friday*, he attended the *French* Consul to the Church of the Holy Sepulchre; the Doors were open, but guarded by Janizaries, who are placed there to receive the *Caphar*, or Tribute, which the *Turk* exacts of every Christian Pilgrim that goes to visit the Holy Sepulchre, and the other Antiquities relating to our Saviour's Life, Death, and Resurrection; but they who have once paid this Duty may afterwards go in and out *Gratis*, as often as he pleases, at publick Times, during the whole Feast, provided the Doors be open, but if they are shut, the same Payment must either be repeated, or he must wait till the Doors are open at the usual Time.

As soon as the Pilgrims were entred, the Church Doors were shut, and open'd no more till *Easter-Day*, but when it grew duskish on *Good-Friday* Evening, all the Monks and Pilgrims assembled in a small Oratory on the North Side of the Holy Grave, which is called the Chapel of the Apparition; here one of the *Latin* Fathers preach'd a Sermon, which began *La quarta Notte Tenebrosa*, &c. at which Words all the Candles were put out to represent the Darkness which was at our Lord's Crucifixion; when the Sermon had continued about half an Hour, the Preacher left off, and every one had a large lighted Taper put into his Hand, and the Crucifixes and other Utensils were disposed in proper Order for the Procession; and amongst the rest there was a Crucifix that bore the Image of our Saviour as large as the Life; it was nail'd to the Cross with great Nails, crown'd with Thorns, smear'd with Blood, and in every Circumstance represented in a most lively Manner the tragical Spectacle of our Saviour's Body hanging upon the Cross.

Sermon on the Darkness.

THUS was carried at the Head of the Procession, first to the Pillar of Flagellation, or Scourging, where a Sermon was preach'd in *Spanish* upon that Occasion; then they proceeded to the Place where our Lord was imprison'd while the Soldiers prepared every Thing for his Crucifixion, here a Sermon was preach'd in *French*; they went next to the Altar built upon the Spot where the Soldiers divided his Garments, where they only sung a Hymn; and went from thence to where he was derided, spit upon, &c. here they had a Hymn and a Sermon, and thence proceeded to Mount *Calvary*.

Procession to Mount *Calvary*.

WHEN they came at the Foot of the Stairs before-mention'd, which leads up to the Mount *Calvary*, they left their Shoes at the Bottom, and so ascended to the Altar which is built upon the Spot where our Saviour was nail'd upon the Cross; there they laid down this large Crucifix, and perform'd the Ceremony with all the Actions and Motions of nailing him to the Cross, (though the Image was nail'd to the Cross before,) and then, after a Sermon on the Crucifixion, which was then preach'd in *Spanish*, they remov'd to the adjoining Altar on the Top of the Mount; which Altar was built close by, though not upon, the Place where the Cross stood, the Hole in the Rock being kept open in which the Foot of the Cross actually stood: In this very Hole they put the Foot of the Cross upon which the crucified Image was, and letting it stand, they sung a Hymn, and the Father Guardian preach'd a Passion Sermon in *Italian* before it. Crucifixion.

WHEN Sermon was ended came two Fathers, personating *Nicodemus* and *Joseph* of *Arimathea*, and approaching the Cross with great Solemnity, and drawing the Nails, took down the Body, which, besides its Colour and other Circumstances, was also as flexible as a dead Body composed of real Flesh and Bones; it was then received in a large Winding-sheet, and brought down from Mount *Calvary* with great Solemnity, and carried to the Stone of Unction, which is set upon the very Place where our Lord's Body was anointed and prepared for the Burial; here they laid it down, and having thrown sweet Powder and Spices upon it, they wrap'd it in a Winding-sheet, and one of the Fathers preach'd a Funeral Sermon in *Arabick*, and then the (supposed) Corps was buried in the (real) Sepulchre where our Saviour's Body once actually lay; and thus the Procession being finish'd, the People adjourn'd to their respective Habitations or Quarters. The Body taken down.

THE next Morning, being our *Saturday*, and with them *Easter Eve*, those Pilgrims that fancied it, had their Arms mark'd with the Ensigns of *Jerusalem*, but that being now so common in *London*, we need not describe it. In the Afternoon they assembled in the Area, or Plain, before the Holy Grave, and with singing the Lamentations of *Jeremiah*, they concluded *Easter Eve*.

EARLY on *Easter-Sunday* Morning the Fathers and People concern'd in perforing the whole Solemnity appear'd at the Sepulchre, the Grave was set open, and there was the utmost Apearance of Joy in all their Faces, as a Representation of their actual Belief of our Lord's being risen from the Dead; and this Morning they celebrated Mass before the Holy Sepulchre; here the Father Guardian had a Throne erected, and being cloath'd in Episcopal Robes, with a Mitre upon his Head, he gave the Host, in View of the *Turks*, to every Christian that was willing to receive it, after which the Company left the Church, and went to Dinner at the *Latin* Convent. They represent the Resurrection.

THE Pilgrims, to compleat their Visits, went to see the Valley of *Jehoshaphat* and River *Jordan*, being convoy'd by the Governor and a strong Detachment of the Garrison; the Pilgrims in this Expedition amounting to two Thousand, one Nation with another, every *Frank*, or *European* Pilgrim, paying for his Protection twelve Dollars, except the Ecclesiatticks, who pay only half as much; and if they have engaged in paying for visiting the Antiquities now already described, they are obliged to pay for all the succeeding, whether they pursue their Visits or no. They travel further.

THEY came to the Valley of *Jehoshaphat*, and having croft that and Part of Mount *Olivet*, they came in about half an Hour to *Bethany*, where *Martha* and *Mary* and their Brother *Lazarus* lived, see *John* xi. 1, 2, &c. *Bethany* is now but a small Village, very *Bethany*.

very little more than two Miles from *Jerusalem*, *John* xi. 18. Here they were shew'd the Tomb where *Lazarus* was buried, and call'd from the Dead again, *John* xi. 43: and about a Bow-shot further was the House where *Mary Magdalen* lived; and then descending a steep Hill, and travelled thro' an intricate, barren, mountainous Country or Desart, in which it was, their Guides told them, that our Saviour was tempted of Satan, and among the rest was an exceeding high one, which is the Mountain to the Top of which Satan took our Saviour when he tempted him, *Matt.* iv. 8. This Mountain has a Chapel on the Side of it about half way up, and another at the Top, besides several Caves and Cells in the Sides of the Mountains, where some Hermits resort to this Day to keep *Lent* in Imitation of our Saviour; but the Curiosity of the Pilgrims going up, was disappointed by abundance of *Arabs* being quartered there, who demanded so extravagantly of them for their Passage up, that rather than comply with their exorbitant Demands, they turn'd down to the Plain, and came to the Fountain of *Elissha*, so call'd, because he healed the Water of it, 2 *Kings* ii. 19, and 22. This Fountain is received into a large Bason, from whence it dispersés itself into several Streams, and waters the Fields between this Place and *Jericho*, making them exceeding fruitful.

Jericho. About a Mile to the Eastward of this Fountain is *Jericho*; it is a Place of no Entertainment, but a poor dirty Village, inhabited by the *Arabs*; and as it is a Place so despicable, the Governor did not think it worth while to expect any Accommodations there, but pitched with his Forces and the Pilgrims under his Convoy about a quarter of a Mile to the Eastward of *Jericho*.

Jordan. The next Morning they decamp'd, and set forwards to see the River *Jordan*, in their Way to which they passed thro' a wild barren Plain, scarce producing any thing but a green Thing like *Samphire*, and such other Marine Plants, or rather Weeds, as the sandy or rocky Ground near the Sea produces, and in many Places where the Water had stood and was dry'd up, it had left a white Crust of Salt. When they arriv'd within about a Furlong of *Jordan*, they found an old ruined Church and Convent dedicated to St. *John the Baptist*, in Memory of his baptizing our Saviour in *Jordan*. Near that Place, a little beyond the Convent, there begins a regular gradual Descent, the Top of which, it is thought, was the highest or broadest Bounds of *Jordan* at the Time when it was highest, and having proceeded by an easy Descent for about a Furlong, they were told they were near *Jordan*, but could see nothing but a Row of Bushes and Trees, such as *Tamarisk*, *Willow*, and other Sorts of Trees, which seemed to obstruct their intended Passage; but pressing a very little Way through them, they came at the Bank of the River, the Top of which was about two Yards above the Surface of the Water: When they came here, some cut down Branches to carry away with them; some stripp'd and wash'd themselves in *Jordan*, and, in short, every one did something, or carry'd something away to preserve the Memory of his having been at this famous Stream.

That Part of the River they came to is above twenty Yards over, and five or six Feet deep, and the Stream so rapid that it was impossible for a Man to swim against it. The other Side, or East Side of *Jordan*, was fuller of Woods or Thickets, at least it appear'd so to them, for they were so apprehensive of Danger from the thievish *Arabs* which skulk'd about that Wood, that they did not go over to the other Side.

Dead Sea. The *Dead Sea* or Lake where *Sodom* and *Gomorrah* once stood, beginning a little to the Right-hand, or to the Southward of them down the River *Jordan*, some of them went to see it, and tell us that it is enclosed on the East and West with vast high Mountains; on the North with the Plains of *Jericho*, through which the River *Jordan* runs into that great Stagnum or Lake which extends from North to South above seventy Miles. There are abundance of sulphureous Stones in the Hills about the Lake, which being held in the Flame of a Candle, burn, but yield a Smoke of an intolerable Stench. The Water of the Lake is salt, and extremely bitter and nauseous, and of prodigious Strenth to bear up any thing that swims upon it. This Lake is famous for a Sort of *Bitumen*, which is found in great Plenty in the Mountains on both Sides of it. It is exactly like Pitch, but is easily distinguish'd from it by its disagreeable sulphureous Smell and Taste.

The Pilgrims having satisfy'd their Curiosity, return'd to *Jerusalem*, and took a Tour to the Southward to see the once famous City of *Bethlehem*; it *Bethlehem.* is about five or six Miles from *Jerusalem*; it is now but a poor Village, and of little Resort but only by Travellers and Pilgrims, who visit it to see the Place of our Saviour's Nativity, which is now in a Temple built by *Helena* the Mother of *Constantine*: The Roof of the Temple is Cedar, and is supported by forty white Marble Pillars, being dispos'd in four Rows, ten in a Row; and the Walls are also fac'd with the same Sort of Marble. The Plan of the Church is in Form of a Cross, of which the Chancel is the upper Part, and is cover'd with a noble Cupola. Under there, in a Cave hewn out of the Rock, is the Place call'd the Chapel of the Nativity, where they shew the Manger our Saviour was laid in, cut also out of a Rock, but now crusted with Marble: There is also an Altar erected here with a Representation of the Nativity, and Lamps kept there burning before it: There is also a Valley near this Town, where the Shepherds were keeping Sheep when the Angels appear'd to them, declaring the Birth of Christ. Here also this Empress *Helena* built a Church, but by reason of Assaults of Enemies, or Length of Time, there is nothing of it appears now but the Ruins.

CHAP. XVII.

Treats of Natolia, *commonly known by the Name of* Lesser Asia.

Division of Natolia. NATOLIA or, *Lesser Asia*, is divided into four Parts, *viz. Caramania*, *Aladulia*, *Amasia*, and *Natolia Proper*; of which in order.

Caramania. *Caramania* is in the Southern Part of *Lesser Asia*; the South Part of it is the Coast of the *Levant*, or of the Eastermost Part of the *Mediterranean* Sea. It contains the antient *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Pisidia*, *Licaonia*, and *Cilicia*.

Lycia. The antient *Lycia* is now known by the Name of *Menteshi*, and is bounded on the North and East by *Phrygia Major* and *Pamphylia*; on the South by the *Levant* or *Mediterranean*, and on the West by *Caria*; it is encompass'd by Mountains on every Side except the South. It has been a fruitful Part of the Country, but since it came into the Hands of the *Turks*, who have conquer'd more than they

can cultivate: Not only the Fields but Towns too lie in a great measure in Ruins. The chief Towns are, 1. *Telmessus*, on a Bay in the *Mediterranean* towards the West Part of the Province; 2. *Patara*, near the Sea to the Eastward of *Telmessus*; it is a little Town seated on a Hill, and famous in antient History for the Temple and Oracle of *Apollo*; 3. *Xanthus*, an inland Town, situate on a River of the same Name; 4. *Mira* or *Limira*, the Metropolis of the Province, standing upon the River *Mira*, at some Distance from the Sea.

Pamphylia.

The next in Order is *Pamphylia*; it lies on the Sea-coast to the Eastward of *Lycia*, and is bounded on the North by *Pisidia*, and on the East by *Cilicia*. The inland Country is very mountainous, but they maintain large Flocks of Goats, and make excellent Camlets of their Hair; and towards the Sea-coast it is naturally fruitful, where it is cultivated and improved. Chief Towns are, 1. *Attalia* or *Sattalia*, a Sea-port Town, and has a tolerable good Castle; 2. *Perga* on the River *Cestus*, antiently famous for a Temple dedicated to *Diana*; 3. *Syda* or *Candalor*, a Port Town to the Eastward of *Attalia*.

Pisidia.

Pisidia is a small Province on the North Side of *Pamphylia*; it is in itself a fruitful Plain, but intirely surrounded with Mountains. The chief Towns are 1, *Sagalassus*, situate towards the West Part of the Province. 2. *Antiochia Pisidia*, it was the Capital while under the *Roman* Government; 3. *Termessus*, a Town naturally strong, being seated in the Passage between the steep Mountains.

Lycaonia.

Lycaonia and *Isauria* together is but a small Province to the Eastward of *Pisidia*, but a fine Champion Country. The chief Towns are 1. *Iconium*; so call'd in *Acts* the 14th Chapter, but now known by the Name of *Cogni*, the Capital not only of *Lycaonia* but of all *Caramania*, and is the Residence of the Viceroy; it stands near a Lake of fresh Water, call'd *Trigolus Palus*, about a hundred Miles North from the Sea in the thirty-ninth Degree of North Latitude; 2. *Isauria*, which once gave Name to the Province, but is now entirely destroy'd; 3. *Derbe*, South-East from *Iconium*; and 4. *Lystra*, situate between both, where the People took the Apostles for Gods, calling *Barnabas Jupiter*, and *Paul Mercurius*, and would have sacrificed to them, *Acts* xiv. 12, 13.

Note, This Country of *Natolia* comprehended a considerable Part of the Travels of *Paul* and the rest of the Apostles, as in the Chapter above-mentioned, *Iconium*, ver. 1. *Lystra* and *Derbe*, ver. 6, &c. But of those Scripture Names, the Places where they are spoke of in the Old or New Testament, and in what Part of the World or Map they are situate, with other Explanations of them, we shall refer to the Table which will follow the Map of the *Turkish Empire*

Cilicia.

Cilicia is bounded by *Pamphilia* on the West, *Syria* on the East, *Lycaonia* on the North, and the *Levant* or *Mediterranean* on the South, and lies on the Continent North from the Island of *Cyprus*. The Country towards the Sea is plain and fruitful, but towards the North and East it is rocky and mountainous, and the Passes between the Mountains exceeding narrow and difficult. It was in some of these Streights that *Alexander* defeated the Forces of *Darius* a second Time at the Battle of *Issus*. Chief Towns are 1. *Tarsus* the Capital of the Province, and Birth-place of St. *Paul*, *Acts* xxii. 3. It is an Archbishop's See, situate on the River *Cydnus*, near the Middle of the Province. Those Geographers that affect new Names for antient Places, call it, at present, *Theraffe*, and some call it *Hemsa*. For my Part, where I treat of Places mention'd in Scripture, I had rather retain the Names by which they are there express'd, that it may give a greater Light to the Travels of the Prophets and Apostles, and to the Geography as well as History of those sacred Writings; 2. *Silenus*, on a River of the same Name near the Sea-Coast; 3. *Seleucia Trachea*, an Archbishop's See, the Town situate on the River *Calicadrius*; 4. *Philadelphia*, (but not that one of the seven Churches of *Asia* that went by that Name); 5. *Sole*, or *Pompeopopolis*, on the River *Lamus*; 6. *Issus*, now *Ajazzo*, or *Lajazzo*, in a Bay of the same Name, and chiefly remarkable for the Battle fought near it between *Alexander* and *Darius*, as mention'd above.

Battle between *Alexander* and *Darius*.

Aladulia.

The next grand Division of *Natolia*, or *Asia Minor*, is called *Aladulia*; but of late, by the Invention of the Moderns, it is known by the Name of *Morasch* or *Marat*; it extends East as far as the River *Euphrates*, and is otherways known by the Name of *Cappadocia*; it is bounded between *Galatia* on the West, and *Armenia Minor* on the East, and *Cilicia* on the South. Chief Towns are 1. *Cesarea*, but by some Geographers, I know not for what Reason, called now *Caisar*; it was the Capital of *Cappadocia* when it was under the Dominion of the *Romans*: It stands on an Eminency, a little distant from the River *Melus* or *Lyma*, and is still tolerably beautiful and populous; 2. *Metita*, now *Morasch* or *Marat*, near the *Euphrates*, and in the South-East Parts of the Province: It is a large Town, and is now the Seat of the Viceroy; 3. *Nissa*, which lies on the Confines of *Armenia*. This *Cappadocia*, for which our Moderns have found the Name of *Aladulia*, is an extensive Country, and formerly abounded with Corn, Wine, and Fruit, but now labours, or rather lies idle under the common Fate of the *Turkish* Conquests, looking no farther than to cultivate as much Land as will produce Bread and Meat to keep them from starving. This Country produces Mines of Silver, Copper, Iron, and Allom, good Horses, with Plenty of Seeep, Oxen, Buffaloes, Wild-fowl, Venison and other Sorts of Game.

Cappadocia.

Amasia.

The next or third Division of *Natolia* or *Asia Minor* is *Amasia*; it comprehends *Pontus Galaticus*, *Pontus Ptolemoniac*, and *Pontus Cappadocia*; of which in order.

Pontus Galaticus

Pontus Galaticus is on the South-side of the *Euxin* Sea, and on the East-side of *Galatia*. Chief Towns are 1. *Amasia*, about a League from the Banks of the River *Iris*, from whence the Town is supply'd with Water, but what is most remarkable, the *Aqueduct* by which the Water is convey'd is cut through a Rock as hard as Marble. *Amasia* is a fine Place, and has a very agreeable Prospect, especially to the Southward, and is sometimes the Residence of the Viceroy, but there is no great Trade nor sumptuous Buildings at this Time, though there are the Ruins of very magnificent Structures to be seen in or about it, which are supposed to have appear'd in their Grandeur when *Amasia* was the Seat of the Kings of *Cappadocia*; but what it is now most remarkable for, as a Piece of Antiquity, if it may be so call'd, is, for its being the Birth-place of *Strabo*, the (then) famous Geographer; 2. *Themiscyra*, (now *Lerio*) on the Coast of the *Euxin* Sea; and I might add, *Comana*, which was formerly a Bishop's See; but being within eight Miles of *Amasia*, it is now fallen to Decay, its rival Neighbour *Amasia*, like the Sun shining upon a Candle, obscuring its Dignity.

Pontus Ptolemoniac.

The next Sub-division in *Amasia* is *Pontus Ptolemoniac*, which is to the Eastward of *Galaticus*, and has two remarkable Towns or Cities; the first of which was called *Neocesarea*, but now known by the Name of *Tocat*; it is the Capital of the Province, and Seat of the Viceroy. It is built at the Foot of a Mountain, but there is a rocky Eminence almost in the Middle of the Town, upon which there is a Castle. The Streets are narrow, but the Houses are tolerably handsom, considering it is in *Turkey*; and among the Mosques, there is one very magnificent.

ficent. The Inhabitants are Mahometans, *Armenians*, *Greeks*, and *Jews*; and for fourteen or fifteen Leagues about the Town it is moſtly inhabited by *Armenian* Chriſtians, moſt of which are Mechanicks or Handicrafts, and among them the Smiths, do chiefly abound, whoſe chief Talent is working in Copper, which is the Reaſon that all Manner of Copper Veſſels are ſent hence to *Conſtantinople* and *Egypt*. They alſo make here excellent *Turkey* Leather of Goat-Skins, and the Place produces good Wine, and Fruit in great Plenty.

THIS Place is one of the greateſt Thorough-fares in the Eaſt, for here the Caravans lodge, whether coming from the Eaſtward from *Perſia*, &c. or from *Conſtantinople* or *Smyrna*, or any Place to the Weſtward. There is a fine River runs within a Mile to the Northward of *Tocat*, which renders the Country both pleaſant and fruitful. Saffron grows here very plentifully, and they make a great Advantage of it by ſending it to the *Eaſt Indies*, they uſing great Quantities of it in their Food, and upon other Occaſions.

Pontus Cappadocia extends ſtill farther Eaſt, as far as the Frontiers of *Georgia*, and is bounded on the North by the *Euxin Sea*, and on the South by *Armenia Minor*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Trabiſond*, or *Trapeſond*, or by ſome call'd *Tarrabaſſon*; from the Abridgment or Corruption of which Word it is ſuppoſed the other Names proceeded. It may be called a Sea Port, but the Harbour is now almoſt choak'd up, except for ſmall Veſſels. The Inhabitants are moſtly *Armenians* and *Greeks*, and they profeſs the Chriſtian Religion, of which they are allow'd the free Exerciſe. The Ground is not fruitful of Corn, nor is Fleſh or Fiſh very plenty: Oil is the beſt Thing in its kind that the Country produces. After ſeveral Viciſſitudes in its Government, it is now under the Poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, who keep a Viceroy here accordingly.

Pontus Cappadocia

THE fourth and laſt grand Diviſion of *Natolia Genaral*, or *Leſſer Aſia*, is *Natolia Proper*; it is larger than any of the reſt, and contains, according to their diſtinct Names, ten Provinces, *viz.* 1. *Pontus Paphlagonia*; 2. *Galatia*; 3. *Phrygia Major*; 4. *Lydia*, or *Mœnea*; 5. *Doris*; 6. *Caira*; 7. *Ionia*; 8. *Æolis*; 9. *Myſia* and *Phrygia Major*; and 10. *Bythinia*, of which in Order,

Natolia Proper.

Pontus Paphlagonia, or, as ſome ſay, *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*, has two Provinces thrown together into one; it is bounded by the *Euxin Sea* on the North, *Cappadocia* on the Eaſt; on the South with *Galatia*, and on the Weſt with *Bythinia*. The Name of *Pontus* extended formerly along all the South Coaſt of the *Euxin Sea*; and hence that Sea is call'd by ſome *Mare Ponticum*, and by others *Pontus Euxinus*, however it generally goes now by the Name of the *Black Sea*: But this *Pontus Paphlagonia*, or that Part call'd *Paphlagonia*, contains but a ſmall Part of that Coaſt. Chief Towns of this Part, call'd *Pontus*, are 1. *Heraclea*, a Sea Port in the North-Weſt Part of this Country open to the *Black Sea*; 2. *Amaſtris*, or *Somaſtro*, which is alſo a Sea Port, ſituate at the Mouth of the River *Parthenius*; 3. *Claudiopolis*, or *Bythinium*, which is now known by the Name of *Caſtromena*, an inland Town.

Pontus.

Paphlagonia.

In that Part of the Province call'd *Paphlagonia* are, 1. *Tripoli*, formerly call'd *Touriania*; it is a Port Town ſituate at the Bottom of a ſmall Bay; 2. *Sinope* or *Sinabe*, a Sea Port on the South of the *Black Sea*, or, I might ſay, two Sea Ports, for it ſtands upon the *Iſthmus* of a *Peninſula*, and has a Harbour on each Side. It was antiently the Capital of the Dominions of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and was by *Lucullus* firſt added to the *Roman* Conqueſts. Here the Cynick Philoſopher *Diogenes* was born.

Galatia is bounded on the Eaſt by *Cappadocia*, on the South by *Pamphilia*, on the Weſt by *Phrygia*, and on the North by *Paphlagonia*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Peſſinus*, on the River *Sangarus*, where, according to Poetical Fictions, the Goddeſs *Cybele* reſided; 2. *Therma*, on the ſame River, famous for Hot Baths; 3. *Ancyra*, on the River *Melus*; near which Place *Pompey* obtain'd a ſignal Victory over *Mithridates*, and this was alſo the Place where *Tamerlane* defeated *Bajazet*, and afterwards carried him about in an Iron Cage. It is to this Day a handſom City, and ſtill ſhews ſome Marks of its antient Grandeur, by the Remains of Marble Pillars with which the Streets abound, amongſt which are red and white Porphiry and Jaſper, and even their Clay Walls, of which the Town chiefly conſiſts, are ſo interſpers'd with Marble and Porphiry, and other fine and valuable Stone, and eſpecially their Doors and Gates ſhew ſo much of that ſort of Waſte, as is ſufficient to prove the antient Grandeur of the Place. Here is a fine Breed of Goats, their Hair eight or nine Inches long, as ſoft as Silk, and curled, and it is ſaid it makes the fineſt Stuffs and Cambletts, and is the chief Manufacture of that Part of the Country; but no ſuch fine Goats are to be ſeen, except within a hundred Miles of *Ancyra*, and if they are carried further to propagate, yet the Breed degenerates and falls ſhort of their Primitive Excellency. It was to the Inhabitants of this *Galatia* that St. *Paul* wrote his Epiſtle, called therefore *The Epiſtle to the* Galatians.

Galatia.

THE third Sub-diviſion of *Natolia Proper* is *Phrygia Major*, now by ſome called *Germain*; it is bounded on the North by *Bythinia*, on the Eaſt by *Galatia*, on the South by *Pamphilia*, and on the Weſt by *Myſia*. It is a good Soil, and formerly a fruitful Country, but for want of Cultivation it undergoes the common Fate of the reſt of the *Turks* acquired Dominions. Chief Towns are, 1. *Cotæum*, now *Chintaia*, once the Seat of the *Turkiſh* Emperors before they took *Conſtantinople*, and now a conſiderable Town, and Seat of the Viceroy of *Natolia*; 2. *Gordium*, the Seat of *Gordious* King of *Phrygia*; 3. *Apamia*, now of no great Note; 4. *Coloſs*, now called *Chonoſs*, on the South Side of the River *Meander*, the Place to whoſe Inhabitants St. *Paul* wrote his Epiſtle to the *Coloſſians*; 5. *Hieropolis* on the Frontiers of *Lydia*; 6. *Primneſia*, near the Head of the River *Sangarus*; and 7. *Tiberiopolis*, near the Mountain *Sipilus*; of theſe three laſt I find nothing worth obſerving but their Names and Ruins.

Phrygia Major.

LYDIA, or *Mœnea*, is the fourth in Order, and is bounded on the Weſt by *Æolis* and *Myſia*, on the South by *Caira*, and on the Eaſt by *Phrygia Major*; the wealthy *Cræſus* was formerly King of this Country; the chief Tows are, 1. *Sardis*, now a poor Village, but antiently the Capital, it is ſituate on the River *Pactolus*, about ſeventy Miles from *Smyrna*; it was a Biſhop's See, and one of the ſeven Churches of *Aſia*, to whom St. *John* wrote in the *Revelation*, Chap. i. 11. but was demoliſh'd by an Earthquake; but beſides the Village, there are ſome noble Ruins of the City yet remaining; *Philadelphia*, the Seat of the Metropolitan, and another of the ſeven Churches; it is ſituate on a fruitful Plain, on the North Side of the Mountain *Molus*; it is fallen much ſhort of its Primitive Grandeur; but by the lateſt Acounts of it, as it is now ſtands, it has four Churches, and above two thouſand Chriſtians inhabiting in it; 3. *Thyatira*, another of the ſeven Churches, and a Biſhop's See; it is now called *Akhiſar*, it is about thirty Miles North-Weſt of *Philadelphia*, there are the Ruins of ſome Marble Structures to be ſeen, and it has a ſmall Trade for Corn and Cotton, but the Buildings are only Clay Walls; 4. *Magneſia* now *Guoſethiſer*, on the River *Meander*, about fifty Miles South of *Sardis*; it is a large wall'd Town, and the chief Trade is to *Smyrna* with Cotton Yarn; 5. *Laodecia* is on the Eaſtermoſt Bounds of this Province; it was one of the ſeven Churches, and the Ruins that yet remain prove it to have been a large and magnificent City, there

Lydia or Mœnea.

Sardis.

Philadelphia.

Thyatira.

Laodecia.

there yet remaining three Theatres almoſt entire, all of white Marble, and a ſtately Circus, but there are no Inhabitans nor Houſes to dwell in.

Caria and Doris.

Caria and *Doris* are now comprehended in one, under the Name of *Adinelli*; it is bounded on the South and Weſt by the Sea, and on the North by the River *Meander*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Miletus*, on the South Side of the River *Meander*, and not far from the Sea; it was once the Seat of the Temple and Oracle of *Apollo*; it has been a large City, as the ſtill viſible Ruins prove, but it is now an inconſiderable Village, conſiſting of Shepherds Cots and poor ordinary Hovels, and the reſt of the Towns in *Caria* have nothing remarkable. In *Doris*, which is the Southern Part next to the *Levant*, the chief Towns are, 1. *Myndus*, a Sea Port in a ſmall Bay, and is the Seat of a *Turkiſh* Baſſa; 2. *Halicarnaſſus*, to the Southward of *Myndus*, once the Capital of the Province, but now a Heap of Ruins, and famous for nothing but the Tomb built by Queen *Artemiſia* in Honour of her Husband *Mauſolus*, being a Building ſo magnificent that it was accounted one of the Wonders of the World. The famous Hiſtorians *Herodotus* and *Dyoniſius* were born here. *Creſſa* and *Ceramus Cyndus* were good Harbours on this Coaſt, but now choak'd up and gone to Ruin.

Æolis and Ionia.

Æolis and *Ionia* taken together is a Tract of Land on the Weſt Coaſt of *Natolia* towards the *Archipelago*: *Ionia* is the Southermoſt. The chief Towns in *Æolis* are, 1. *Elea*, ſituate at the Mouth of the River *Caicus*, and the Port Town to *Pergamus*, one of the ſeven Churches, and the Birth Place of *Zeuo*; 2. *Myrina*, or *Sebaſtiopolis*; 3. *Cuma*, formerly the Capital of *Æolis*; it gave Name to one of the *Sybils*; and 4. *Phocea*, which is ſituate a little to the Southward upon the ſame Coaſt.

Smyrna.

Proceeding to the Southward we come to *Ionia*; in which the chief Towns are, 1. *Smyrna*, now called *Iſmir*, in the thirty ninth Degree of Latitude; it is about eight Days Journey, or one hundred and ſixty Miles from *Conſtantinople*, at the Bottom of a large Bay in the *Ægean Sea*, or *Archipelago*: The Town runs above half a Mile along the Shore, from whence it gradually riſes with an eaſy Aſcent, and thereby ſhews itſelf to thoſe that are aboard of Ships before the Town; the chief Houſes, as thoſe of the Conſuls, Merchants, *&c.* are near the Sea Side, and form a Street called *Frank-Street*, as being inhabited moſtly by *European* Chriſtians; *Smyrna* is a very fine Port, and very ſpacious, there being ſeldom leſs than a hundred Ships of ſeveral Nations there, and the Harbour is capable of containing a great Number more. The City, as it now ſtands, is about four Miles in Circumference, the Side next the Mountain being much the longeſt; the Houſes are poor and low, and for the moſt Part built of Clay Walls ſince the laſt Deſtruction of it by an Earthquake, which demoliſh'd a great Part of it; however, the Caravanſera's and publick Buildings are built more magnificent; the Streets are wide, and almoſt one continued Fair, where almoſt all Sorts of Goods, that either *Aſia* or *Europe* affords, are expoſed to Sale, with Proviſions Plenty, but not ſo cheap as in ſome other Parts of *Turkey*, becauſe the Place is populous in itſelf, and a vaſt Concourſe of Strangers reſort hither, and the *Turks*, under whoſe Government it is, are the moſt numerous of any other People, but there are great Numbers of *Greeks*, *Jews*, and *Armenians*, beſides *European* Chriſtians; there are ſeventeen Moſques, two *Greek* Churches, one *Armenian* Chriſtian Church, and five *Jewiſh* Synagouges; the Papiſts have three Convents, viz. *Jeſuits*, *Franciſcans*, and *Recollects*, one of each, beſides one of the Fathers *De la Terra Santa*; here is an Archbiſhop of the *Greek* Church, and a Biſhop of the *Latin*; and the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Factories have each their own Chaplains.

Note, This was alſo one of the ſeven Churches of *Aſia*.

There is a Caſtle at the Entrance of the Port, which commands all the Shipping; there is alſo another, but now in Ruins, in the Middle of the City; as alſo a large Amphitheatre, of which it is reported to be here that *Polycarp* fought with the Lions; this Town alſo contends with *Rhodes*, *Scio*, *Athens*, and ſeveral other Places for the Birth-Place of *Homer*. Here grow good Grapes, Olives, Oranges, and Lemons, of which there are fine delightful Groves, but the Pleaſure of them is very much allay'd by the exceſſive Heats and the unhealthy Climate, and eſpecially by the Earthquakes, which it ſeldom eſcapes for two Years together, and have been ſometimes felt for forty Days ſucceſſively. There was in *June* 1688, an Earthquake which overturn'd a great Part of the Houſes, the Rock upon which the Caſtle ſtood open'd and ſwallow'd moſt of it up, with above five thouſand People, whereupon ſeveral Merchants and others, that eſcaped that dreadful Calamity, retired to *Scio*, but by degrees the Trade and Inhabitants return'd to the City, and it is now rebuilt or repair'd in the Manner above related.

The next Place of Note, or rather of Antiquity, is *Clazomene*; it is a Maritime Town, about thirty Miles South-Weſt from *Smyrna*; it was a conſiderable Place in the Time of the *Roman* Government, and there are ſeveral antient Medals with *Auguſtus* on one Side, and the Empreſs *Livia* on the other, but it is now a poor inconſiderable Village; as alſo is *Colophon* an once famous City, about thirty Miles to the Southward of *Smyrna*.

Epheſus.

The once famous City of *Epheſus* is ſituate about fifty Miles to the Southward of *Smyrna*; it was one of the ſeven Churches of *Aſia*, but now ſcarce deſerves the Name of a Village, having not above twenty or thirty Houſes in it; it ſtands near a fine Haven, and in the Time of the *Romans* was the Metropolis of *Leſſer Aſia*; here was the famous Temple of *Diana*, formerly one of the Wonders of the World; it was above a hundred and forty Yards long, ſeventy three broad, and ſupported by one hundred and twenty ſeven Marble Pillars, of ſeventy Foot high, but it was deſtroy'd by *Eroſtratus*, who ſet it on Fire the ſame Night that *Alexander the Great* was born. *Timothy* was the firſt Biſhop of this City; and St. *Paul*'s Epiſtle to the *Epheſians*, which we have in the New-Teſtament, was wrote to the Inhabitants of *Epheſus*, thence call'd *Epheſians*. There are yet the Remains of ſome ſtately Edifice, which they ſay is the Ruins of the ſecond Temple of *Diana*, it having been rebuilt ſince it was firſt deſtroy'd, the latter not at all inferior in Magnificence to the former.

Myſia and Phrygia Minor.

Myſia and *Phrygia Minor* taken together are bounded by the *Propontis*, or Sea of *Marmora*; on the North by *Bythinia*, and *Phrygia Major* on the Eaſt; alſo by *Lydia* on the South, and by the *Archipelago* or *Ægean* Sea on the Weſt. This Part of *Aſia Minor* is famous for the Battle fought between *Alexander* and *Darius* upon the Banks of the River *Granicus*, which riſes in the Mountains of this Country; and after about fifty or ſixty Miles Paſſage through this Country, falls into the Sea of *Marmora*. In this Country alſo is Mount *Ida*, where the Poets feign that *Paris* gave Judgment between the Goddeſſes; but no more of that any farther than to obſerve that Mount *Ida* is here, but we do not paſs for the Truth of thoſe poetical, not to ſay heatheniſh Fictions, notwithſtanding that they have been not only introduc'd into, but gain'd ſo much Ground in our Chriſtian Schools, as to draw ſome of the unwary Pupils to believe them to be Fact.

The chief Towns in theſe two Sub-diviſions are 1. *Cyzicus* or *Spigia*; it is on the South Coaſt of the

the *Propontis*, and in the Time of the *Romans* it was the Metropolis of the Conſular of *Helleſpont*; it was a beautiful City, but was overturn'd by an Earthquake, and never rebuilt; the Stones that could be ſaved being afterwards convey'd over the *Propontis*, and apply'd towards the building of *Conſtantinople*; it is about ſixty Miles Weſt of *Nice*; 2. *Lampſacus*, on the Coaſt of the *Propontis*; 3. *Abidus* or *Avido*, a Fortreſs oppoſite to *Seſtos* at the Mouth of the *Helleſpont*. This Place reſiſted *Philip* King of *Macedon* with ſo much Reſolution that the Inhabitants deſtroy'd themſelves as ſoon as they found they could no longer defend the Place. It is now the Southern of thoſe two Caſtles call'd the *Dardanelles*, ſo nam'd from a little Town to the Southward of them; 4. the once famous *Troy*, (now call'd *Ilium*) againſt the Iſland of *Tenedos*, one of the *Archipelagian* Iſlands; it is not far from the Sea, and is famous for the ten Years Siege which it is ſaid in Hiſtory to have held out againſt the *Greeks*, though ſo embelliſh'd by the poetical Flights of *Homer* and *Virgil*, that ſome impartial Perſons are at a Loſs to know how much of it to believe; nor is it the Buſineſs of an Hiſtorian to engage in poetical Fancies and Diſputes, but to relate Fact, as it is in a Geographer to determine the Situation of Places. However, the noble Ruins that are yet to be ſeen about the Place is ſufficient to prove that the famous Accounts given us of *Troy* in Hiſtory are not without good Foundation; 5. *Zoras Alexandria*, to the Southward of *Troy*, once the Capital of the Province but now in Ruins. This is that *Troas* mention'd *Acts* xx. 5, 6. which brings us to the next remarkable Town, *viz.* 6. *Aſſos*, about ten Miles South of *Troas*: See *ver.* 13, & 14. 7. *Pergamus*, near the Banks of the River *Caicus*: This was another of the ſeven Churches, and ſaid to be the Place of *Galen*'s Nativity. It was antiently a noble City, but now an obſcure Place, having but one *Turkiſh* Moſque and one *Chriſtian* Church.

Bythinia. *Bythinia* is ſeparated from *Europe* only by the *Thracian Boſphorus*, or Streights of *Conſtantinople*, which is there ſo narrow that *Scutari* in *Bythinia* is reckon'd a Suburb of *Conſtantinople*, as *Southwark* is of *London*, though *Conſtantinople* is in *Europe*, and *Scutari* in *Aſia*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Chalcedon*, two Miles from where *Scutari* now ſtands; it was once a populous City, and the fourth general Council was held in it, but it is now only an inconſiderable Village; 2. *Nicomedia*, eight Miles to the Southward of *Chalcedon*: It was the Capital of *Bythinia*, and is now a populous Town, and has a good Trade, and ſituate in a fruitful Country. Their chief Trade is in Silk, Cotton, Earthen-ware and Glaſs, and is ſo great a Place for Ship-building, that moſt of the Ships of *Conſtantinople* are built here. It takes the Name *Nicomedia* from *Nicomedes* King of *Bythinia*, who repair'd and enlarg'd it; but it was formerly call'd *Iſnigimid*. It ſeems by the Extent of the Ruins to have been larger than *Conſtantinople* or *London*, and it is at preſent pretty well inhabited, for there are in the Place twenty *Turkiſh* Moſques, ſome Chriſtian Churches, and two *Jews* Synagogues; 3. *Nice*, called by ſome *Iſnich*, South-Eaſt from *Nicomedia*, formerly a noble Place, and ſtill famous for the firſt general Council which was aſſembled by *Conſtantine* againſt the *Arian* Hereſy; and when *Conſtantinople* was taken by the *Latins*, the *Greek* Emperors reſided here. The Place is much declin'd from its primitive Grandeur, but is yet large and pretty populous; 4. *Lybuſſa*, between *Chalcedon* and *Nicomedia*, of which there is nothing remarkable except for its being the Place of *Hannibal*'s Death, who here put a Period to his own Life with his own Hands rather than fall into the Hands of *Nicomedia*; 5. *Pruſa* or *Burſa*, it ſtands on ſeveral little Hills at the Foot of the famous Mount *Olympus*, about forty or fifty Miles South-Weſt from *Nice*. It is now the Metropolis of *Bythinia*, as it formerly was of all the *Turkiſh* Empire till they took *Conſtantinople*. The City is about half a League in Length, and the ſame Wall in a great meaſure ſtanding that it was ſurrounded with when it was in the Hands of the Chriſtians. The Inhabitants are *Turks*, *Greeks*, *Armenians* and *Jews*. There are above thirty handſome *Turkiſh* Moſques. The Caravanſera's are grand, and cover'd with Lead, nor does *Conſtantinople* itſelf exceed it for a Biſiſtin or Exchange. The City ſtands upon the Edge of a fine Plain grown over with Mulberry and other Fruit-Trees, and the Water ſprings ſo plentifully out of Mount *Olympus*, that it is convey'd to almoſt every Houſe in the Town to ſupply them, as New River Water is convey'd to the ſeveral Houſes in *London*, but there is one exceeds the reſt; it ſends forth a Stream as big as a Man's Body, which is convey'd to the Town, and diſpos'd to all Parts of it where it is wanted. The Silk about this Place and Parts adjacent is the beſt in *Turkey*; and if we add to this, that they have the beſt of Workmen too, it will not be ſurprizing that *Turkey* ſhould afford better Tapeſtry and Hangings than any other Place in the known World. Here is to be ſeen the Ruins of the Palace where the Grand Seignior reſided when this was his Capital. Here are alſo the Sepulchres of the firſt *Turkiſh* Emperors and their Sultana's in little Chapels with Domes over them, but at preſent they expreſs more of Antiquity than Beauty.

Nice, famous for the Council.

Mount Olympus. THE famous Mount *Olympus* is in the Neighbourhood of this City of *Burſa*. It is of a prodigious height, and cover'd with Snow; of which they carry great Quantities to *Conſtantinople*; from whence they can ſee it though they are a hundred Miles aſunder. The Top of *Olympus* is barren, producing nothing but the Snow which the Clouds produce, but about the Middle or half Way up it produces Firs and other Sorts of Trees, and the Valleys beneath it affords all manner of Fruits, as Grapes, Apples, Mulberries, Melons, Nuts, as well as Fiſh, Fleſh and Fowl, but Corn is ſcarce, becauſe the *Turks* have no great Notion of cultivating and plowing their Land, but rather content themſelves with what the Earth brings forth without Labour, and were more like the *Arabians* and *Hebrews* or antient Patriarchs, who were rather Shepherds living by their Flocks and Herds than Husbandmen to till the Ground, for 'tis obſerv'd, that *Natolia*, as well as other Parts of *Turkey*, is a fruitful Country and and a good Soil, if they were not ſo indolent as to loſe the Benefit of it for Want of Cultivation.

I have now finiſh'd that Part of *Turkey* which is in *Aſia*, and ſhall proceed to a Deſcription of the other Parts of that ſpacious Empire contain'd in *Europe* and *Africa*; but as the great Scene of Action in the firſt Ages of the World in the Time of the Antediluvians, Patriarchs and Prophets, as well as the great Work of Redemption in the Birth, Sufferings, Reſurrection, and Aſcenſion of our Bleſſed Saviour were in *Aſia*, and the Goſpel was thence diffuſed to the Weſtward, and propagated in *Europe*, I ſhall endeavour to follow the ſame Order, and come next to a Deſcription of *Turkey* in *Europe*.

A DESCRIPTION OF TURKEY IN EUROPE.

CHAP. I.

Treats of Crim *or* Little Tartary, *and of* Oczakow *or* Budziack Tartary.

AS I propos'd in the Concluſion of the Deſcription of *Turkey* in *Aſia* to proceed Weſtward to *Turkey* in *Europe*, it will be neceſſary to begin at the Eaſtermoſt Part of it; and when we conſider that the fortify'd Town in *Crim* or *Taurica Cherſoneſe* and *Little Tartary* are gariſon'd by the *Turks*, and the *Cham* or *Han* of *Tartary* is a Vaſſal of the Grand Seignior's; and as he is as liable to be deſtroy'd by him as any other of his Viceroys, he may therefore be ſaid to be a Dependent upon him: theſe Places may well be deem'd the Eaſtermoſt Part of his Dominions, and moſt proper to begin with, according to the Method propoſed.

Bender. THE lateſt and beſt Account that we have of theſe Countries was by a late Traveller, who being at *Bender* a City upon the River *Nieſter*, which falls into the Black Sea in the Northweſt Part of it between the Influx of the *Boriſthenes* and the *Danube*, and is ſituate in *Podolia*, (the Place where *Charles* the Twelfth, late King of *Sweden* was, or was ſaid to be during his ſo long Abſence from his own Dominions in the Years 1710, 11, 12, *&c.* of which ſee a more particular Account in the next Chapter). This Traveller reſolved to viſit *Little Tartary*, *Crim*, *Koban* and *Nogaian Tartary* to get a better Account of their Government, Product and Manner of Living than we had before; and with this Reſolution he ſet out from *Bender November* the 14th, 1711; and on the twentieth he reach'd the Town of *Oczakow* on the Weſt Side of the River *Boriſthenes*, and not far from the Black Sea, about 46 Degrees of North Latitude; it ſtands on the Side of a Hill, on the Top of which there is a Caſtle; the Town is encompaſs'd by a Wall, and governed by a Baſſa, and may be ſaid to be the Capital of *Budziack Tartary*.

Oczakow.

Precop. FROM thence having travell'd thro' a Deſart of fifty Leagues he arriv'd at *Precop*, call'd by the Natives *Ur* or *Hor Capi*; it ſtands on the *Iſthmus* or Neck of Land that is the Paſſage between *Crim* and *Little Tartary*. The Houſes are miſerably built with Stakes and Branches of Trees wove together and cover'd with Mud or Cows Dung, which is the general Faſhion of the Country for Building. There is an Intrenchment caſt up quite croſs the *Iſthmus*, in the Middle of which is a Tower, and a Gate for a Paſſage into the Town, and is all the Land-Paſſage there is into the *Peninſula* of *Crim*; it is ſecured by a great Gate, and defended by ſeveral little Towers at equal Diſtances. The Line above-mention'd ſerves as a Ditch to the Town on the North-weſt Side. The Caſtle is in poor Repair, and fortify'd with only eighteen Iron Cannon mounted upon the Walls, and the Garriſon conſiſts only of a Company of Janizaries.

Hor Bey. THE Lord or Governour of the Town is generally the *Cham*'s ſecond Son, who is ſtyl'd *Hor-Bey*, or Lord of *Bey*, who is maintain'd by the Revenues ariſing from ſome Salt-Pits in the Neighbourhood of that City, and by the Duties on a certain Liquor called *Boza*, made of Millet, Flower and Water, which after it has had a Ferment like our Beer, is ſtrong enough to fuddle a Man. The *Hor-Bey* is not allow'd to live in the Caſtle, that being poſſeſs'd and garriſon'd by the *Turks* as well as all the other fortify'd Towns about *Crim Tartary*, but the *Cham* or his Son are ſo far from having any Authority in the Caſtles that they are never allow'd to lodge in them, and the Palace of the *Hor Bey* at *Precop* is ſuch an ordinary wooden Edifice that it is not worth a Deſcription.

WE obſerv'd at the Concluſion of *Turkey* in *Aſia*, that they were very remiſs in cultivating and improving their Land; and the ſame Indolence prevails here, which makes Bread ſo very ſcarce that the common People ſeldom taſt any, but live upon Milk, Cheeſe and Shorba, which laſt is a ſavoury Diſh, much like what we have deſcrib'd in other Eaſtern Countries: It is compos'd of little Pieces of Meal boil'd with Wheat and Barley, and high ſeaſon'd, with Spice and butter'd, but boil'd Milk is ſo common that you can ſcarce go into

Provi-ſions.

a Houſe

a Houſe but you'll find a Kettle of Milk upon the Fire.

Kuſtowe.

THE next Stage after *Precop* was to a Place called *Kuſtowe*, a pretty large Port Town ſurrounded by a Wall, and inhabited by *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Armenians*, and *Jews*, and encompaſs'd by an old decay'd Wall; here are ſome *Turkiſh* Moſques built of white Stone; the *Greeks* and *Armenians* have each of them a Church, and the *Jews* a Synagogue. The *Turks* import hither Rice, Coffee, dry'd Figs, Raiſons, Dates, Cloth, and Stuffs, and the Veſſels return loaden with Slaves and Corn, which are very acceptable in *Turkey*.

Bachiſerai.

FROM *Kuſtowe* he went to *Bachiſerai* the Capital of *Crim Tartary*, a Place ſo fortified by Mountains on each Side, that it has no need of Walls; this Place, as well as *Kuſtowe*, is moſtly inhabited by *Tartars*, *Armenians*, *Greeks*, and *Jews*; the three laſt pay to the Cham a Crown a Quarter each, but the native *Tartars* pay no Taxes, except the Tenth of the Slaves they take in their Expeditions, or rather Excurſions upon their Enemies; their Houſes are like the reſt, their Moſques of white Stone, and ſome of them cover'd with Lead; their Caravanſera's, or publick Inns, are tolerably convenient to entertain Travellers, and their Water is very good.

THE Palace of the Cham, or Han, is a large Building, but irregular; and, though the Chams of this Place ſel lom end their Days, and find Sepulchres here, becauſe the Grand Seignior's Power is arbitrary, and, as before obſerved, he can depoſe them when he pleaſes, as he frequently does, and is often ſo kind as to baniſh them to the Iſle of *Rhodes*, to let them have the Comfort of dying in in Exile, and laying their Bones there, yet in the Entrance of the Cham's Court there are two fine Tombs of the Chams who died and were buried there.

Forces.

HIS Guards, which amount to about twelve hundred, are paid by the Grand Seignior; but when he enters into a War, the Cham with all his Forces are obliged to aſſiſt againſt the Enemy, and then *Crim Tartary* furniſhes thirty thouſand Men, thoſe of *Akerman*, and the Deſarts between *Ozacow* and *Aloph* twenty thouſand, and the *Nogaians* more than both, though they may rather be call'd Voluntiers than Subjects, and go more for their Share of Plunder than out of Duty to the Prince, becauſe when they have this Opportunity they can plunder by Authority, and depend ſo much upon it, that they take no Pay, nor carry any Proviſion with them but *Talcan*, or Flower made of *Cammin*, of which they carry ſuch a Quantity along with them, which they mix up with Milk or Water for their Proviſion, till they meet with Plunder to furniſh them with better Variety.

THE Cham keeps but a ſmall Number of Women; and the *Tartars* generally content themſelves with one Wife, though their Law allows them four, nor do they make much Uſe of their Female Slaves, as in ſome other Parts of the Eaſt; but whether it is becauſe they are leſs lecherous or more covetous is hard to determine, for they commonly do by the handſomeſt of their Female Slaves as ſome People do with the beſt of their Goods, keep them for a Market; for, as they are their Plunder and a great Part of their Wages, they endeavour to make the beſt they can of them, and the *Turks* give a good Price for them if they are handſome.

THE Children of the Cham are not confined in the Seraglio's, as in other Eaſtern Countries before deſcribed, but they are brought up in ſome Military Place or Employment, as the eldeſt Son is ſtiled *Sultan Galga*, which bears the ſame Import as the *Dauphin* of *France*, or the like; the ſecond is *Nur Bey*, or Lord of *Precop*, as obſerv'd before, and the younger are dignified as Dukes, &c. according to their Age; there are other Degrees of Nobility the Heads of thoſe are called *Chirim Beys*; and the Cham conſults them in all Affairs of Importance; and out of them, and the *Myrſa's*, or Nobility, the *Tartars* chuſe their General Officers, and the People, as Voluntiers march under their Command; they deſire no Pay, Cloathing, or Subſiſtence, but look upon their Plunder as a ſufficient Reward for their Services, and no News can pleaſe them better than to hear of an approaching War, as aſſuring themſelves that they ſhall have a freſh Commiſſion to plunder.

WHEN the Cham joins the *Turkiſh* Army, he has immediately an Audience of the Grand Seignior or Vizier, which of the two ſoever be at the Head of the Army. And to inure the *Tartars* to plunder with the greater Dexterity, they have a Cuſtom to roaſt ſome thouſands of Oxen and Sheep whole, and having impal'd them on Stakes, ſet obliquely in the Ground in right Lines, and at equal Diſtances, and theſe are interſpers'd with Pyramids or Heaps of Loaves; the *Tartars* at a Signal given, run and ſcuffle for the Fleſh and Bread without any Order, but every one to be at it firſt, and get the moſt, and by this Means all is carried clean off in half an Hour's Time, and he is the moſt applauded that gets the greateſt Qnantity, becauſe he is ſuppoſed to be the moſt dextrous at plundering when he goes to work in Earneſt; and indeed Neceſſity as well as Ambition may make them active upon ſuch Occaſions; for after this they have no Proviſion allow'd them, but either what they can carry with them, or what they can take by Rapine or Force.

Exerciſe in Plundering.

WHEN they march, eſpecially in the Winter Time, they have a ſhort Cloak made of hard Felt, with a ſtiff Collar ſtanding up about their Necks; they can turn it round as they pleaſe, ſo that which Way ſoever the Wind blows, whether before or behind them, they always put the open Part on the contrary Side to that which the Weather blows upon. They carry Store of Horſes in their Expeditions, but they carry no Proviſions for them, but let them live upon what they can get, though they are forced to eat the Tops or Bark of Trees, or ſcratch up the Snow to come at the Graſs, and ſometimes the Horſes die a natural Death, or rather unnatural, by too much Work, or too little Victuals, or both, but then they loſe not all, for when he is dead they make a Feaſt of him, and invite their Neighbours, perhaps the Reaſon is, that they may eat him up while is ſweet and good.

Eat their dead Horſes.

IT is obſerv'd, notwithſtanding their rapacious plundering Temper to others, they are very juſt to one another; and if ten, twenty, or more or leſs, be one Company, or contract to divide equally what they get, then, if they ſeparate, every one brings his Booty to the appointed Place of Rendezvous, and there it is put all together, and divided equally amongſt all the contracted Parties, without any Regard to who got leaſt or moſt, and it would be reckon'd as odious and diſhonourable in any of them to conceal or embezzle any Part of his Prey, as it would be amongſt juſt and honeſt Traders to have one in Partnerſhip that ſhould do the ſame.

BUT though they live thus by Sharping and Plunder when they are in an Enemy's Country, or I might have ſaid, although they often go into an Enemy's Country to live thus by Sharping and Plunder, yet when they are travelling amongſt their own Country People, they meet with better Living, for either in their Excurſions, or Return among the *Tartarian* Villages, they have no occaſion to plunder, for all Things are as good as common; for as ſoon as a Brother *Tartar* appears at the Gate, there is no Queſtions ask'd from whence he came, but the Maſter, or ſome Servant, or Slave, takes his Horſes and gives them Hay, while the Stranger is like-

likewise conducted in and entertain'd with what the House affords, of which boil'd Milk is commonly one Dish.

THE next Stage that our Traveller made beyond *Bachiserai*, was about five Leagues, to a Place call'd *Almagick Serai*; this is the usual Residence of the *Saltan Galga*, or the Cham's eldest Son; at this Place he got Wine as good as *Burgundy* or *Champaign*, and so plenty that it was sold for two Pence a Bottle; *Chiflick.* and from thence he went to *Chiflick*, the Seat of *Cephenza Myrsa*, whom he found sitting by a good Fire, and made him sit down by him, and called for Pipes, Tobacco, and Coffee till Dinner was ready; which, when it came, consisted of three Dishes, namely, Pilo, (which has been described before,) also a broil'd Pike, and a Ragout, which look'd so fine and was so well drest that he thought it had been Veal, and eat heartily of it, but it was only a Piece of a Colt; the *Myrsa* also call'd for Wine for him, though he drank none himself. When Victuals and Drink is brought out, and a Person invited to eat and drink, they never repeat the Compliment, but leave the Guests to their own Inclination to eat and drink just as they please; when he had been entertain'd with Dinner, Wine, and Supper, the *Myrsa* retired to his Haram, and our Traveller was conducted to his Lodging to repose himself till next Morning.

Karasson. HIS next Journey was to *Karasson*, a great Town about two Leagues from *Chiflick*; this is a noted Place, as being the greatest Horse-Market in all *Crim Tartary*; here are four *Turkish* Mosques built of Stone, but the common Houses are low and mean, like those of the rest of the Country.

Crim. FROM *Karasson* he went next to *Crim*, now fallen so much from what it was formerly that he gives us rather an Account of the Ruins than the Place, and that there are not now so many Houses or Inhabitants in it as would amount to an ordinary Village.

Cassa. *Cassa*, or *Kaffa*, was the next Place he came to, it was formerly called *Theodosia*, it is situate on the *Peninsula* of *Crim Tartary*, and gives Name to the Streights upon which it lies, it is very agreeably situated on the South-East of some high Mountains, at the Foot of which it stands by the Sea Side; it retains a great deal of its antient Grandeur, and is defended by the same Walls that were built by the *Genoese*; the best of the Christian Churches are demolish'd, and *Turkish* Mosques built instead of them, and those that still remain are in the Hands of *Armenians* or *Greeks*, of which the former have twenty, and the latter seven, but they are all but in a ruinous Condition, the Arms and Paintings of them, which are yet visible in several Places, makes it appear that they have been built by the *Genoese*, but most of the Statues and embost'd Images have been destroy'd by those who have them now in Possession. The Harbour is almost choak'd up for want of cleaning.

Jegnicale THE next Place he went to was *Jegnicale*, a Sea Port for small Vessels; it is commanded by a *Turkish* Bassa; it is surrounded by a Wall of Stone, but the Town is not large, nor the Fortifications regular; the Castle is upon an Eminence at the South-West Part of the Town, and has a Platform of several Brass Cannon, which commands the Passage of the Streights of *Cassa*.

Taman. THE next Place is *Taman*, which stands on the other Side of the Streight, in *Koban*, (or as some call it, *Nogaian Tartary*,) it is a little but populous Town; the Castle, formerly built by the *Genoese*, is not strong, and garrison'd by only a Company of Janizaries.

BUT to pursue the Journey of our before-mention'd Traveller, the next Place was *Temrock* in his *Temrock.* Travels, to which he found several little artificial Hills, or such as seem'd to have been cast up in Memory of some Victory, or the Burial-place of some great Person rather than the Work of Nature, as we see the like in several Parts of *England*, and more especially in *Wales*; *Temrock* is about thirty Miles North-East from *Taman*; the Buildings and Inhabitants are so much like those of the rest of the Country, that a new Description is needless. The Trade of *Temrock* is chiefly in Hides, Cavier, Honey, and Horses, but especially in the fair *Circassian* Slaves, which bear a great Price in *Turkey*, whether they be Males or Females, but more especially the latter.

FURTHER to the Eastward is the Land of the *Nogaian Tartars*; they live mostly like the Patriarchs *Nogaian* of old, in moveable Villages composed of a Number *Tartars.* of Tents to be remov'd at Pleasure, for the sake of better Pasture, Water, or other Coveniences, so that, as above observ'd, they do not mind Tillage, because their Removes are so frequent, that if they were to plow and sow, it is likely they might be obliged to remove for Pasture for their numerous Flocks and Herds before their Crops would be ripe, and, although they are glad of Bread when they can meet with it, yet they prefer Horse-flesh before other Food, and can easily dispense with the want of Bread if they can but get that.

THEY are so hospitable that they will not suffer a *Hospi-* Traveller to pay for Meat for Horse or Man; *table.* if a Stranger, after the kind Entertainment he has receiv'd, should in return make a Present of a little Tobacco, they think themselves ungrateful if they do not subjoin an additional Return to their former Favours.

I SHALL conclude this Chapter with a Description of the City of *Asoph*, and shall leave the Rea- *Asoph.* der to judge for himself whether it belongs to the *Turk* or *Muscovite*. It is situate at the Mouth of the River *Don*, or *Tanais*, on the East Side of the Influx of that River into the *Palus Meotis*; this Town was in Possession of the *Turks* till the *Czar* of *Muscovy* took it from them, and fortify'd it, thereby opening and securing a Communication between *Muscovy* and the *Palus Meotis*, whereby he could not only command a Passage through the *Black Sea*, but even to *Constantinople* itself, whither the *Czar* sometimes sent his Men of War to the great Surprize of the *Turks*, who a long Time had held an undisturbed Possession of those Seas; but the *Turks*, in the Year 1711, gaining an Advantage of the *Czar* by hemming in his Forces near *Felezin* on the River *Pruth*, near the Place where it falls into the *Danube*, he and his whole Army were reduced to great Distress for Want of Provisions, and the *Czar* finding himself under Difficulties, from which he could not otherwise extricate himself, agreed to deliver up *Asoph* to the *Turk*, and to demolish all the Forts he had erected at the Mouth of the River *Don*, or *Tanais*, so that since that Time the *Muscovite* is excluded a Trade and Passage in, and Communication with, the *Palus Meotis* and the *Black Sea*, the Grand Seignior being now again sole Master of both.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Gives an Account of the Province of Beſſarabia, *and more particularly of the Action at* Bender *in the Time of the late King of* Sweden, *during his long Abſence from his ſaid Kingdom.*

TO the Weſtward or rather South-Weſt of *Budziack Tartary* is *Beſſarabia*, bounded on the North by the River *Nieſter*, which divides it from *Podolia*, and on the North-Eaſt and Eaſt by *Budziack Tartary* and the *Black Sea*; by the River *Danube* on the South, and by *Moldavia* on the Weſt.

The Hiſtory of the late King of Sweden during his Abſence at Bender.

THIS, as one of the Provinces of the *Turkiſh* Empire, was mentioned, and the chief Towns deſcrib'd in Chap. I. of the general Deſcription of the *Turkiſh* Empire; only *Bender*, whichw as the Scene of ſo much Action and even Admiration too in the Expedition of *Charles* II. King of *Sweden*, and his long Continuance there, we have reſerved the particular Account of the whole Affair for the following Chapter, that the Reader may have the Satisfaction of peruſing that at his Leiſure by itſelf, without its being interſpers'd with the reſt of the Hiſtory; but it is neceſſary to the better underſtanding of this Part of Hiſtory, to obſerve that *Bender* is ſituate upon the River *Nieſter*, above a hundred Miles North-Weſt from the North-Weſt Part of the *Black-Sea*, and is the Place to which the above-mention'd King of *Sweden* made his Retreat after his Defeat at *Poltowa* in *Ukrania*; the Particulars of which are as follow:

Charles the XIIth King of *Sweden* had for nine Years a Series of uninterrupted Succeſs, that it might be ſaid of him, that to Fight and to Conquer were in him inſeparable; and that where-ever he did the former, he was ſure of the latter, and looking upon himſelf invulnerable and invincible, neither to be wounded nor overcome, he deſpiſed the greateſt Dangers, and according to his Ambition ſo was his Succeſs, he remain'd unhurt in the Midſt of Showers of Bullets, and when his Troops fell round about him, and his Horſes under him, yet then he would never allow his own Countenance to expreſs the leaſt Apprehenſions of Danger.

WITH this Intrepidity he went on like the great *Alexander*, as if all the World was not ſufficient to ſatisfy his Conqueſts; and having dethron'd the King of *Poland*, and obtain'd great Advantages againſt the *Czar* of *Muſcovy*, ſaid, I'll treat him with the ſame Fate: And when the *Czar* made any Propoſals towards an Accommodation, he anſwer'd, *I'll treat with him at* Moſcow, intimating, that he could penetrate to that Capital when he pleas'd. His Reſolution was ſuch, that when an old Officer in *Ukrania* told him it was againſt the Rules of War to have fortify'd Towns behind him, and hazard the Deſtruction of his Army by advancing ſo far into an Enemy's Country without Proviſion or Ammunition, he reſolutely anſwer'd, *What, are you afraid to loſe Sight of your Wife? If you are a true Soldier, and a Lover of Glory, I'll lead you ſo far that you ſhall ſcarce have News from* Sweden *once in three Years.*

BUT on the 18th of *June*, 1709, he loſt the Battle at *Paltowa*, which gave a Check to his former reſolute Temper. The Scene was chang'd, and he reduc'd to great Neceſſities, being deſtitute of Proviſions, and the *Muſcovites* having deſtroy'd the Country before him, he was forc'd either to ſubmit to the Enemy, or fight at a great Diſtance. He choſe the latter to his great Mortification, was forced to flee before the ſame Enemy he had juſt now deſpiſed, and what aggravated his Misfortune, was, the Wound he receiv'd in his Foot the Day before the Battle; however, his Lameneſs did not put an End to his Enterprizes, but he cauſed himſelf to be carry'd at the Head of his Army in a Litter; but the Litter, when he was in it, was ſhatter'd to Pieces by a Cannon-Shot, tho' himſelf remain'd unhurt; whereupon he mounted his Horſe, which was alſo ſhot under him, himſelf ſtill remaining unhurt: but his Generals ſeeing this, and his Reſolution ſtill continuing againſt all Probability of either Conqueſt or Safety, they even forc'd him out of the Field, and glad they could ſo eſcape.

THE next Day he croſs'd the *Boriſthenes* with about eighteen hundred Horſe, *Swedes*, *Poles*, and *Coſſacks*, and fled with ſo much Precipitation, that as a Ship chas'd by an Enemy is forc'd to throw overboard ſome Part of her Lading that ſhe may ſail the better, ſo they were forced to diſcharge themſelves of their heavieſt Baggage, amongſt which were ſome large Cheſts of Silver and other Things which might retard their Flight; the Money and moſt valuable Things they caſt into the River *Boriſthenes*, that the Enemy in their Purſuit might not have the Advantage of finding them; the River was broad and the Stream rapid, and as there were not Boats enough to carry them all over with that Expedition that their Occaſions required, the Troopers ventured to ſwim their Horſes over, and a great many both Men and Horſes periſh'd in the River.

BUT under all this Difficulty they had taken Care to ſecure a Coach for the King on the other Side of the River, and ſome light Waggons for thoſe who were weak or diſabled, and the reſt, ſome on Horſeback, and ſome on Foot, all purſued their Journey towards *Oczakow*, but in their Paſſage they went through a tedious Deſart, where they found no Proviſion, nor ſo much as Water, nor a Path, ſo that if they had not had the *Coſſacks* for their Guides, they muſt in all Probability have periſh'd; but tho' the People were very much dejected, it was obſerved that the King kept his Countenance, and did not expreſs the leaſt Concern in this deſolate Condition, but detached ſome *Coſſacks* in Search of Water towards *Oczakow*, which is a little fortify'd Town on the Weſt Side of the united Rivers of *Boriſthenes* and *Bog*, a few Miles above their Influx into the *Black Sea*.

IN ſix Days time they arrived within three Miles of *Oczakow*, and the King ſent to the Baſſa to deſire a Paſſage through his Territories; but before the King's Meſſage arrived at *Oczakow*, the Baſſa having heard of the King's Approach, ſent a Meſſenger to him to offer him whatever he wanted, and at the ſame Time ſent conſiderable Refreſhments to him; but the King and his Company were yet on the contrary Side of the River *Bog* from *Oczakow*, and could not get over for Want of Boats, and the *Muſcovites* being in Purſuit of him, made him very uneaſy: He did not get over till the *Ruſſian* General *Walkonisky* juſt came up with him, but he had the good Fortune to eſcape himſelf, and that was all, for he had the Mortification to ſee five hundred of his Men taken Priſoners by the *Muſco-*

vites, becauſe they could not get over the River quick enough for want of Boats to tranſport them to the other Side.

In this Difficulty the King thought it moſt proper to apply himſelf to the Grand Seignior for Protection againſt the *Muſcovite*, and a Paſſage through the *Turkiſh* Dominions, and diſpatch'd a Letter to him to deſire thoſe Favours, but in the mean Time the Baſſa of *Bender* ſent him an Invitation to come thither, which he accepted, and upon his Arrival was kindly received. The Baſſa pitch'd a Tent for the King on the Bank of the River *Nieſter*, and another for himſelf about one hundred Paces from it. The Baſſa gave him all poſſible Aſſurances of his Friendſhip, and invited him to quarter in the City, but he rather choſe to remain in his Tent, only made Choice of a Place on the other Side of the River, where he encamp'd with his Followers, and there the Officers built Houſes and Soldiers Huts, every one working for himſelf, and living in the Houſe he had built; and by this happy Settlement their Numbers daily increas'd by reaſon of ſeveral *Poles* and *Swedes* that found Means to eſcape from the *Muſcovite* and join'd the King of *Sweden*.

But the King, rather fool-hardy than courageous, ſtill neglected to take any Care of the Wound in his Foot, ſo that by this Time it was become dangerous; for which he was obliged at laſt to ſuffer proper Remedies to be apply'd and made uſe of, and by that Means by the Middle of *Auguſt* he was able to walk. About the Beginning of the ſame *Auguſt*, his Majeſty ſent a Detachment of eight or nine hundred Men to the Frontiers of *Poland*. What was his real Deſign in ſo doing is a Miſtery, but he pretended it was to obſerve what paſs'd there, and promis'd to follow them in a ſhort Time; but the *Muſcovites* having ſeiz'd all the Paſſes leading to *Poland*, and having Parties out as far as *Valachia*, not only intercepted the *Swedes* but made them all Priſoners. This the *Turks* reſented as an unwarrantable Piece of Hoſtility, inſomuch that the *Muſcovite* Ambaſſador at the Port was forc'd to promiſe in his Majeſty's Name that Satisfaction ſhould be made for the Affront; and the further to allay the Reſentment, he was obliged to ſwear that it was done without the *Czar*'s Orders. Some account this a Piece of Policy in the King of *Sweden* to expoſe that Handful of Men to the *Muſcovites* to provoke them to take ſuch an eaſy Prey, and thereby provoke the *Turk* to break with the *Czar*; and altho' the *Turk* did not create a new War with the *Muſcovite* upon this Account, he continued to expreſs ſo much Friendſhip to the King of *Sweden*, that he made him conſiderable Preſents, and ordered a Body of ſeven or eight thouſand Men to aſſemble near *Bender* to convoy him to his own Dominions.

But the King of *Sweden* not thinking a Body of ſeven or eight thouſand Men ſufficient, demanded fifty thouſand for a Convoy; which extravagant Demand the Port reſented, and the *Muſcovites* taking the Advantage of this Difference ply'd the Port with Preſents, that partly the one and partly the other, the *Turk* and the *Muſcovite* inſtead of declaring War contracted a firmer Alliance than formerly.

The King of *Sweden* finding his Demand ſo far from being comply'd with that it was not only rejected but reſented, he began to look upon the Grand Vizier as his Enemy; whereupon he cauſed a Memorial to be drawn up and tranſmitted to the Grand Seignior by General *Poniatowski* on the 13th of *April* 1710. Whereupon the Grand Seignior ſent him a Preſent of Twenty-five fine Horſes with rich Furniture, and an Aſſurance, that he would protect him againſt his Enemies. The Grand Vizier finding the King of *Sweden*'s Succeſs with the Grand Seignior, he likewiſe offer'd a Preſent to the King of *Sweden*, but he rejected it, telling him that brought it, that he did not receive Preſents from his Enemies, nor could he put on that Double-face to take a Preſent from a Perſon that he is endeavouring to deſtroy. This Reſentment run high; the Vizier was depos'd, and the King of *Sweden* pleaſed himſelf with the Thoughts of one being the Occaſion of the other; and whether that was ſo or not, the new Vizier profeſs'd himſelf a great Friend to the King of *Sweden*, and perſuaded the Grand Seignior to ſend him a Preſent of four hundred Purſes.

On the other Hand the Cham of *Tartary* being in the King of *Sweden*'s Intereſt, prevail'd with the Grand Seignior to declare War againſt *Muſcovy*; upon which he was ſo reſolutely bent, that he depoſed both the Grand Vizier and the Mufti for oppoſing it; upon which a new Vizier and a Mufti were choſen, and the Mufti's Declaration of the Lawfulneſs of the War was publiſhed, and the *Czar*'s Ambaſſador at *Conſtantinople* was ſeiz'd and impriſon'd, and circular Letters diſpatch'd to all the Baſſa's and Generals of the *Ottoman* Forces to be in a Readineſs againſt next Spring to march under the Command of the new Grand Vizier, and in the mean Time to corroborate the Matter. The Tartar Cham held frequent Conferences with the King of *Sweden* at *Bender*, as to the beſt Method of proſecuting the intended War, and the Cham's Troops were already making their Winter Campaign, the Winter Seaſon, when the Rivers are frozen over, being the beſt Time for their Incurſions.

When the Horſe Tails or Standards had been ſome time expoſed before the Gate of the Seraglio, the new Vizier was preſented with a rich Sabre ſet with Jewels. This the Grand Seignior gave him as a Token or Badge of the full Power and Authority wherewith he had inveſted him; and when he had aſſembled his Army of two hundred thouſand Men, he begun his March towards the Frontiers. The *Czar*, on the other hand, had an Army, and tho' they were well-diſciplin'd Men, yet they were vaſtly ſhort of the *Turks* in Number, the *Ruſſians* being but ſeventy thouſand, and the Vaivod of *Moldavia*, tho' conſtituted Prince of that Country by the Grand Seignior, yet he join'd the *Czar* with ſix thouſand more, and had repreſented the People of that Country to the *Czar*, as well affected to him, and ready to riſe unanimouſly in his Favour whenever he ſhould appear in that Country; which Encouragement was an Inducement to the *Czar* to venture farther into the *Turkiſh* Territories than he would otherwiſe have done without eſtabliſhing Magazines, and making ſuch Proviſion as is uſual on marching into an Enemies Country; but the reſt of the *Moldavians* as well as the *Valachians* continuing faithful to the Port, the *Czar* was diſappointed of the Help he expected, and was reduc'd to very great Hardſhip, and loſt almoſt one Half of his Army by Death or Deſertion, and the reſt being almoſt ready to periſh for Want of Food, and cloſely purſued by the *Turks*, intrench'd themſelves on a Spot of Ground almoſt ſurrounded by the River *Pruth*; and here they were put to great Extremity, the Officers having nothing to eat for two Days together, and the common Soldiers much worſe; the Horſes died on Heaps for Want of Forage; and in this Condition they were three times attack'd by the Janizaries Sabre in Hand, and yet notwithſtanding their miſerable Condition, they bravely defended themſelves againſt the Janizaries every Time, which little abated their Courage, and obliged them to give the *Muſcovites* a Breathing time, till the *Turkiſh* Artillery arrived, for till then they durſt not charge them any more.

Whe-

When the *Turkiſh* Artillery arrived, they fired upon the *Muſcovite* Intrenchments with two hundred Pieces, for they had ſix hundred Braſs Guns in their Train; and altho' the *Muſcovites* had but a hundred Pieces, yet they did more Execution in proportion; but after above an Hour's firing on each Side, the *Muſcovites* hung out a white Flag, and deſired to capitulate with the *Turks*; being glad of a Truce, was ſigned that very Day, wherein the Czar obliged himſelf to ſurrender *Aſoph*, and alſo to demoliſh his Forts towards the Mouth of the *Don* or *Tanis*, and to evacute *Poland*.

During theſe Tranſactions, the King of *Sweden* receiv'd Advice that the Czar was ſurrounded by the *Turks*, but he had not heard of the Truce between the Grand Vizier and the Czar, and thereupon he mounted his Horſe in all Haſte, in Hopes to find the Czar in that diſtreſs'd Strait that he had heard he was in, and made the beſt of his Way to the Vizier's Quarters in Hopes to add to the Czar's Misfortune, by detaining him, indeed, as a cloſe Priſoner; but ere he arriv'd, the Truce between the Grand Vizier and the Czar was ſign'd, and the Czar diſcharg'd, and was marching off juſt as the King of *Sweden* arriv'd; who nettled at his Diſappointment, boldly and paſſionately upbraided the Vizier with his Conduct in loſing ſo fair an Opportunity of detaining the Czar to deliver him a Priſoner to the Grand Seignior, and ſo eager was he to retrieve the Opportunity that the Vizier had loſt of detaining the Czar, that he deſired twenty thouſand of the Vizier's Troops to go along with him in Purſuit of the Czar, not doubting but with their Help to bring the Czar back Priſoner to the Grand Seignior; but the Vizier would by no Means violate the Truce he had ſign'd with him, but on the contrary ſupply'd the Czar's Army with Proviſions, as if there had never been any Enmity between them.

The Vizier was now ſo far from being directed or adviſed by the King of *Sweden*, that he endeavoured to perſuade him to return home to his own Dominions, either by Way of *Germany* or *Poland*, but he refuſed to move without fifty thouſand Men for a Convoy; which the Vizier not only refuſing, but reſenting, took away his Penſion which the Port allow'd him, thereby to haſten or rather force his Departure out of their Dominions; but the indefatigable King of *Sweden* had Recourſe to other Methods, and preſented a Memorial to the Grand Seignior, which had ſo far the deſired Effect, that the King of *Sweden* had the Satisfaction of ſeeing that Grand Vizier depoſed, becauſe he had diſcharged the Czar upon his bare Promiſe only of delivering up *Aſoph*; which not being done according to the Czar's Promiſe, the Grand Vizier was caſhier'd for diſcharging him upon his own Promiſe only, and the ſucceeding Vizier reſtored to the King of *Sweden* his former Penſion; who now thinking himſelf eſtabliſh'd as a Native, or rather a naturaliz'd Perſon of the Place, built himſelf a little ſtone Palace at *Bender*, as if he was ſettled there for many Years, or for Life: at which his Troops, who waited at *Bender* for his Departure, were ſurpriz'd, and deſired to know what his Majeſty intended to do, that they might direct their Meaſures accordingly, but he gave them no Anſwer, only ordered his Miniſter at the Port to ſolicit for a thouſand Purſes, or five hundred thouſand Dollars to defray the Expence of his Journey to his own *Swediſh* Territories.

But in all this Time the *Muſcovites* had not, according to Agreement, deliver'd *Aſoph*, nor evacuated *Poland*, which ſo provok'd the Grand Seignior, that he again declared War againſt the *Muſcovite*, and confin'd the Czar's Miniſter at *Conſtantinople*: This pleaſed the King of *Sweden*, as hoping now that he ſhould ſee his Deſire upon his Enemy the Czar; but the Port was ſo far from conſulting the King of *Sweden*, or deſiring his Aſſiſtance in the Caſe, that they continually preſs'd him to a Departure, and made him ſenſible that he could not oblige the Grand Seignior in any thing more than in quitting his Dominions; and to get rid of him the ſooner, ſent him twelve hundred Purſes to defray the Expence of his Journey, but lodg'd it in the Baſſa of *Bender*'s Hand, with an Order not to pay it to him till he was ſure he was ſetting forward upon his Journey Home.

The King of *Sweden* hearing of the Money being come, and himſelf under great Neceſſity, importun'd the Baſſa to deliver it to him forthwith: but the Baſſa deny'd, telling him, that he was order not to deliver the Money till the Moment of his Majeſty's Departure; or, if he would venture to diſpenſe with that Order, yet he could not do it without the Conſent of the Cham of *Tartary*; but the King making ſolemn Promiſes, that he would ſet forward on the very Day that the Grand Seignior ſhould appoint; and both the Baſſa and the Great Cham reſpecting him very much, they were ſoon prevail'd upon, tho' contrary to the Order of the Grand Seignior, to let him have the Money.

When he had got the Treaſure in Poſſeſſion, he was not in ſo much Haſte for his Journey as he pretended, but ſquander'd it away, and ſent to his Reſident at *Conſtantinople* to ſolicit the Grand Seignior for a thouſand Purſes more. They finding him trifle at this rate, and the Froſt coming on, which was the moſt proper Time for travelling, and finding that nothing but a poſitive Order, without any Conditions or Delay, would take Place with him, the Cham of *Tartary* gave him direct Orders to march on the fifteenth Inſtant, but neither did he regard that Notice; whereupon the Cham intimated to him, that if he did not quit *Bender*, according to the laſt Notice given him, they would expel him by Force: To which he anſwer'd, that if they did ſo, he would repel Force by Force. The Baſſa finding him ſo obſtinate as well as trifling, and having gone beyond his Orders in giving his Majeſty the Money before he ſet forwards, he came to the King, and in the moſt compaſſionate manner beſought him to begin his March at the Time appointed, adding, that if the King did not begin his Journey as he was order'd, it would not only coſt him his own Head, but he was afraid ſome Violence would be offer'd to his Majeſty; but the King ſeemingly without any Concern ſignified that he would juſtify his Conduct to the Grand Seignior: But the Baſſa reply'd, that the Sultan would not ſtay to hear a Juſtification, but would puniſh a Perſon, if but ſuſpected of the Crime he was charged with.

But all his Solicitations were in vain, the King had ſpent moſt of the Money, and reſolved not to ſtir without a thouſand Purſes more. When the Baſſa acquainted the Cham with the King's Obſtinacy and Reſolution, he began to think himſelf in Danger for being ſo eaſily perſuaded out of the Money before the Time that he was order'd to deliver it; however finding it was in vain for them to endeavour any more to perſuade the King to depart, they jointly ſent an Expreſs to the Port to acquaint him with the whole Affair, and to excuſe themſelves by avering, that it was at the King's earneſt Solicitations and Promiſe to depart, that they delivered him the Money. The Grand Seignior reſenting the King of *Sweden*'s impertinent Demands, cauſed his Miniſter to be arreſted at *Adrianople*, (the Court being then removed thither, and the King of *Sweden*'s Miniſter along with them to purſue his Solicitations) and a Divan being aſſembled upon this Occaſion, the Grand Seignior made the following Speech:

I had

I had ſcarce any Knowledge of the King of Sweden *till his Defeat at* Pultoway *threw him upon my Dominions, I cannot believe I ſtand in need of him, nor have I any Reaſon to love or fear him; but, without conſulting any thing but the Rules of Hoſpitality and my own Generoſity, I have received and maintained him almoſt three Years and a half, with near ſix thouſand Perſons, as well* Poles *and* Coſſacks *as* Swedes, *who follow'd his Fortunes; I have loaded him with Favours, granting him four hundred Purſes for his particular Occaſions ſoon after his Arrival, beſides a Purſe a Day for his Table, allowing his Miniſters and Interpreters Penſions proportionable to their Quality, with Proviſion of all kinds for themſelves and their Houſes. Some Weeks ſince he demanded a thouſand Purſes to enable him to defray the Expences of returning to his own Dominions, and I granted him twelve hundred, with a numerous Convoy, which is ready at* Bender, *with all Things neceſſary for ſuch a Journey, as Horſes Waggons, &c. and now all Things are ready, he declares he is not ready to ſet out, and will not ſtir without another thouſand Purſes; if therefore, after I ſhall have again notified to his Prince that he departs inſtantly, and he ſhall refuſe to go, can any Chriſtian Potentate think it unjuſt, if I compel him to it by Force?* To which the whole Divan unanimouſly anſwer'd, *No. But ſhould he perſiſt in his Refuſal, and oppoſe Force by Force, can I be accuſed of violating the Laws of Hoſpitality if this ungrateful Prince happen to be kill'd in the Conteſt?* To which the whole Divan anſwer'd, *No.* And the Mufti gave his Fetfa, allowing the Juſtice of ſuch a Proceeding; upon this, Orders were ſent to the Baſſa of *Bender* and the Cham, to notify once more to the King, in the Sultan's Name, that the King ſhould depart out of the Sultan's Dominion, or if he did not immediately, they would proceed to Force, and that they would take away his Penſion, and diſcharge the Guard of Janizaries that were given him for his Protection, and ſurround his Quarters ſo as no Proviſion could be brought him. This Meſſage the Baſſa deliver'd to him on the ſecond of *January* 1712, adding that it was now a proper Seaſon to march, and that if he did not depart upon this Notice the Porte would uſe open Violence. He ſeem'd to hear them with Patience till they mention the Word *Violence*, but then turn'd his Back upon the Baſſa without any Anſwer, but only telling him he was not ready yet, that he did not fear their Threats, but if he was attack'd he would defend himſelf; whereupon the Baſſa retired.

His Guard of Janizaries was immediately taken away, upon which he order'd his Men to barricade his Palace, himſelf alſo working with his own Hands, and the Ground being too hard, and their Time too ſhort, to caſt up a regular Intrenchment, they made a Breaſt-work with Waggons, Tables, Chairs, Dung, and the Rubbiſh of Stables, which they demoliſh'd for that Purpoſe; and the King knowing that his Allowance was taken off, he ſhew'd his Reſentment of it, by taking nineteen of the fineſt Horſes which had been preſented to him, and order'd them to be ſhot a little without the Camp, to let them ſee that he neither wanted their Allowance nor their Preſents; but the Horſes were not all waſted, for they made a glorious Feaſt for the *Tartars*. The Day after he rid in a ſort of a Triumphant Manner through *Bender*, as it were in Defiance of them, although he had ſcarce ever been in the Town before.

In the mean Time ſeveral Detatchments of *Tartars* block'd up the *Swediſh* Camp, to cut off all their Supplies, and the Country about were forbid to furniſh them with any Proviſions, and when any *Swedes* were found ſtraggling out of the Camp, they were taken and made Priſoners, and the *Turks* made Preparations to attack the *Swediſh* Camp; which the King's Chaplains ſeeing, threw themſelves at his Feet, begging of him not to expoſe the ſhatter'd Remains of *Pultoway* to the Violence of the *Turks* and *Tartars*, arguing that every Prince was Maſter of his own Dominions, and it was no Injuſtice in the *Turks* to require Strangers, whom they had harbour'd and reliev'd, to return home, and even compel them to it too if they would not depart without it, and if they would drive them out, it would be very ungrateful in them to fight and kill thoſe Benefactors, for no other Reaſon but to remain in their Country whether they would or no; but the King interrupted them, and ſaid, if you have a Mind to preach, chuſe another Place and other Auditors, our Buſineſs here is to fight, and ſo turn'd his Back upon them without giving them any further hearing.

In a ſmall Time after about three thouſand Janizaries march'd out of *Bender*, with a ſmall Train of Artillery, to attack the *Swediſh* Camp, crying *Alla, Alla*, (the Name of God,) as they always cry at an Attack. The Han and the Baſſa march'd after them with a Body of Horſe, and with theſe Forces they inveſted the little *Swediſh* Camp on every Side; and when they had got all Things ready for an Attack, they ſent once more to the King to know whether he would depart quietly before they uſed any further Hoſtilities, but the King would not ſee the Meſſenger, but only bid them tell him that he was ready to defend himſelf when ever he ſhould be aſſaulted; however, his Generals and Officers endeavour'd what they could to diſſuade him from ſuch an obſtinate and unequal Engagement in a ſtrange Country; where, if it could be imagin'd poſſible for them to defeat the ſmall Party that at preſent attack'd them, they could never hold their Victory long, but would bring the Nation about their Ears, and be ſure to be overpower'd with Numbers at laſt; and if it was poſſible for them both to gain the Victory and maintain their Ground, yet it would be an indelible Blot upon the *Swediſh* Name for them to fight and plunder their Benefactors who had reliev'd them in their Diſtreſs; with theſe and ſuch like Arguments they thought to have diſſuaded him, but ſtill in vain, for he only anſwer'd, *You have acted formerly like brave Men, but now you talk like Cowards.* One of his Officers therefore, to gain Time, and if poſſible to prevent an Attack, acquainted the *Turkiſh* Aga, that the King his Maſter could not depart, unleſs they gave him more Time to prepare for his intended Journey to his own Dominions.

The Aga no ſooner returned with this Anſwer, but the *Turkiſh* Forces reſolving not to to be trifled with any longer, began to beat Drums, ſound Trumpets, and ſtrike up their other Warlike Muſick, and the bold King of *Sweden* anſwer'd with the ſame, whereupon the *Turkiſh* Artillery began to play; but Mr. *Grothuſen* went over to the Baſſa to deſire a little Reſpit; but the Baſſa anſwered, in ſhort, that the Sultan's Orders would admit of none, and ordered the Aga of the Janizaries to begin the Attack, and promiſed eight Ducats a Man, to every one that ſhould have any Hand in taking the King of *Sweden* alive: But Mr. *Grothuſen* apply'd himſelf to the Janizaries in ſoft Terms, alledging, that as they had given Quarter to the *Muſcovites*, he hop'd they would not be more ſevere with the *Swedes*, whom they had call'd Brethren; we only deſire Time, and are deny'd: upon which many of them, eſpecially thoſe who had received Favours from the *Swedes*, cry'd out, *You ſhall have Time, we will do nothing againſt you.* And ſome of the moſt obſtinate turn'd back, and threatned to fire if he pretended to force them. Others, to juſtify their own Obſtinacy, ſpread a Report, that the Baſſa's Orders, as he call'd it, were feign'd, and by that Means clogg'd his Men with a Sort of a Doubt or Heſitation, which made them more indifferent in

acting

acting againſt the King of *Sweden*; whereupon the Baſſa commanded his Aga to lead the Forces back to *Bender*, and the Baſſa follow'd them.

But the Cham of *Tartary*, a little more reſolute, remain'd in the Field, and ſent Word to the Baſſa at *Bender*, that if the Janizaries would not obey his Orders, and fight under his Command, he would attack the *Swedes* without them with his own Guards only: When the Baſſa heard this, he ſummon'd the Captains of the Janizaries together, and deſir'd them to go the next Day to the *Swediſh* Camp, and to deſire the King in a friendly manner, as he knew they were not his Enemies, to truſt himſelf in their Hands, and only march a Mile from his Camp, that they might then juſtly ſend Word to the Grand Seignior that his Orders were executed, and that the *Swedes* were indeed upon their March. The Janizaries approv'd of his Propoſal, and further unanimouſly declar'd, that if the King of *Sweden* refuſed this Propoſal, they would begin the Attack the next Minute.

Accordingly the next Morning, being the firſt of *February*, the Captains of the Janizaries went to the King's Quarters, and in Order to ſucceed the better, they took with them *Sellam Agaſi*, the King's favourite Interpreter, and addreſs'd Mr. *Grothuſen* and Mr. *Mullern*, the King's chief Miniſters, to deſire them to perſuade him not to provoke them to uſe Violence, as they muſt do if he refuſed to move immediately; but if he would ſet forwards, they would convoy him wherever he pleas'd, and protect him from all Enemies.

While theſe Diſputes were depending, the King receiv'd a Letter from his Envoy at *Adrianople*, (the Grand Seignior's Court being there at that Time) aſſuring him that there had been three Divans aſſembled, the Grand Seignior preſent at every one, of which it was agreed *nemine contradicente* to drive the King of *Sweden* out of *Bender*, as an ungrateful Perſon, and unworthy of the Civilities he had receiv'd amongſt them, and that they had obtain'd the Mufti's Fetſa to put every one to the Sword that ſhould make the leaſt Reſiſtance; but neither the Letter nor the Perſuaſion of his Officers had any Effect upon him, but on the contrary, he ſent to the Officers of the Janizaries to order them to retire, or he would burn their Beards, which is the greateſt and moſt contemptible Indignity that can be offered to a *Turk*; and when his Officers undertook to adviſe or perſuade him, he interrupted them, telling them, *It was not a Time to preach but to fight.*

The Janizaries, affronted at this unmannerly Uſage, call'd the King *Iron-Head*, and in a Paſſion return'd to *Bender*, and inform'd the Baſſa what an ungrateful Return they had met with for all their paſt and intended Kindneſs, and withal prompted the Baſſa to attack him, telling him they were ready to march and put the Grand Seignior's Orders in Execution that Moment, and, the Affront being reſented on all Sides, Orders were given to renew the Attack with the utmoſt Vigour; which they began with the Word *Alla, Alla*, (in the Name of God) as before, but advanced in great Diſorder, and had they met with a vigorous Defence, their Attack had been to little purpoſe; but the *Swedes* not being able to make any powerful Reſiſtance, the *Turks* ſoon forc'd their Intrenchments, and not above ſixty in five or ſix hundred making any Defence, the greateſt Part of them ſurrendered themſelves as Priſoners, and in leſs than half an Hour the King found himſelf in a great Meaſure deſerted.

But ſtill his Courage, or rather his Reſolution, did not fail, but he apply'd himſelf to the few Men he had yet left, ſaying, *Let thoſe who have any Courage left follow me, and I'll prefer them*, and upon theſe Words he diſmounted, and about thirty of his common Domeſtick Servants followed him, while he made his Retreat Sword in Hand to his Palace, where he found the *Turks* in Poſſeſſion, plundering every Apartment as faſt as they made themſelves Maſters of them, only one Apartment the King's Chief Miniſter with only two and twenty *Swedes* defended, and kept Poſſeſſion of.

In the mean time the King gain'd the Weſtern Door of his Palace, and charg'd the Enemy with great Fury; but endeavouring to break through the Crowd he fell down, and a Janizary taking that Advantage, diſcharg'd a Piſtol at him, but it only ſing'd his left Eye-brow, and the Bullet graz'd upon his Noſe, without doing him any other Damage, but the ſame Bullet wounded General *Hordth* in the Arm, and diſabled him ſo, that he was eaſily made a Priſoner.

The King recovering himſelf, and being well ſupported by his Followers, join'd thoſe who were defending themſelves in the Palace; but when he review'd his Garriſon that was in his Palace, he found that when all together they did not amount to above one or two and forty Men; but he encouraging them by his Promiſes and Example, they attack'd thoſe *Turks* who ſurrounded him, and endeavour'd to make him a Priſoner, but he kill'd two with his own Hand, and having wounded a third, he cleft the King's Cap, and thinking to follow his Blow, and make the next Stroke fatal, the King caught his Scymeter to break the Force of his Stroke, by which his Hand was wounded; and while the King was thus engaged, another Janizary, for the ſake of the Reward offer'd for taking the King Priſoner, ruſh'd upon him, and puſh'd him againſt the Wall, ſeiz'd him by the Collar and call'd out for Aſſiſtance; but Baron *Spar*'s Cook coming up to relieve the King, ſhot the Grenadier dead, and diſcharg'd the King, for which the King afterwards made him a Captain.

When the King found himſelf thus diſengaged, he again reſum'd his Station at the Head of his People, and renewing the Fight, recover'd the great Hall in leſs than an Hour, and from thence he paſs'd to his own Chamber, where he found the *Turks* and *Tartars* at work plundering for what they could get; moſt of them upon his Approach jump'd out at the Window, but he found two ſculking in a Corner with their Piſtols cock'd, but either by the ſudden Conſternation they were in, or for what other Reaſon is unknown, he run them both through at once with his long Sword before they ſo much as attempted to fire at him, and another that he found in another Corner, begg'd for Quarter, which his Majeſty granted on Condition he would go and give the Baſſa an account of this Rencounter.

By this time his Majeſty had loſt eight or nine out of the little more than Forty Men he had; however, by the help of the reſt he clear'd the reſt of the Apartments of all the *Turks* and *Tartars*, who eſcap'd through the Windows and Doors as faſt as they could; whereupon the King commanded all the Doors and Windows to be ſhut, only leaving room to fire through the Windows upon the Beſiegers, who ſtill continually encreaſed.

The *Turks* having by this time loſt above two Hundred of their Men, and their Cannon doing but little Execution, either by the Unskilfulneſs of their Gunners, or the Hurry and Confuſion in which they fir'd, they were reſolv'd to go a nearer way to Work, which was by ſetting the Houſe on Fire, to accompliſh which the *Tartars* were order'd to faſten lighted Matches and other Combuſtibles to their Arrows, and ſhoot them at the wooden Roof while the Janizaries heap'd up Straw, Wood, and other Fuel againſt the Doors and ſet that on Fire, and while the Houſe was burning ſtill, the beſieg'd King and his ſmall Company continued firing for ſome time; but the

Flames encreasing, the King, with seven or eight of his Men, got upon the Roof with Sabres and Hatchets, thinking to break it down and extinguish the Flames; but finding this in vain, they went to seek for Water, but could find no Liquid but only Wine and Brandy, they handed it by Hatfuls from one to another to throw in the Fire, which instead of extinguishing made it rage the more.

When they found it in vain to endeavour any more to extinguish the Flames, and they had continued till the Roof was dropping in, it was then proposed to quit that House, and go to Mr. *Mullern*'s new House, which, being all of Stone, the Fire could not so soon affect; this was agreed upon, and they sallied out with their Arms in their Hands; but the *Turks*, assuring themselves that the *Swedes* must either quit the House or be burnt with it, and supposing they would chuse the former, had planted Janizaries in all the Avenues, by which Means the King and his small Company were soon surrounded, who falling violently on the King, crush'd him down, and no less than one and twenty Janizaries fell upon him, every one so eager to be intitled to the Reward for taking him, that those who could not come at his Person, endeavour'd to get a Scrap of his Cloaths, as a Badge of their Title to the Reward offer'd for taking him.

Having now got the King in Possession, they immediately convey'd him to the Bassa's Tent; where he still retain'd his resolute Temper to that degree, that he would neither sit down at the Bassa's Invitation, or give any Attention to what was said to him, and as the King would not sit down, the Bassa in Compliment stood up likewise, and express himself as being sorry that the King had laid him under a Necessity, as he call'd it, to use Violence; but the King, regardless of the Compliment, haughtily answer'd him, that he was never afraid of Death, and that if his Men had done their Duty, they would not have had him so soon.

The Bassa perceiving that his Majesty would neither sit nor enter into Conversation, he order'd a Horse to be brought richly accoutred, upon which his Majesty, at the Bassa's Entreaty, mounted, without speaking one Word, and was carried to the Bassa's Palace in *Bender*, where his principal Officers and Ministers were permitted to attend him; in a few Days he was put into a Waggon cover'd with red Cloth, having one of his Generals with him, and another Waggon was provided for two others of them, and Horses for about sixty *Swedes* of his Attendance, and all were sent under a strong Guard of two Hundred Horse to *Demir-tash*, a Mile from *Adrianople*, where the Porte gave him to understand that he was welcome to *Demir-tash*, and that if he pleas'd he might remain there as long as he liv'd, and they would supply him with Necessaries for his Subsistence.

Altho' there was not much ready Money paid him, yet the Allowance of Provision was so large, that several of the *Swedes* sold part of it to the *Greeks* for ready Money to purchase other Trifles that they wanted, and the Vizier allow'd the King five and twenty Crowns a Day for Wine for his Table.

But notwithstanding that the Grand Seignior used the King of *Sweden* with so much Civility, yet he did not forget to resent the Liberties that the Bassa of *Bender* and the Cham of *Tartary* had taken, in giving him the Money contrary to Order, and several other Favours for which the Cham was deposed and succeeded by his Brother, and the Bassa was banish'd to a little Island in the *Mediterranean*, and all his Effects seiz'd for the use of the Government.

The King of *Sweden* continued about a Year longer in *Turkey*, endeavouring to excite the Grand Seignior to declare War against the *Czar*; but when he found all his Endeavours were in vain, he inclined to return Home to his Dominions, and accordingly the Grand Seignior order'd him three Hundred Horses and sixty Waggons, besides making him a handsome Present, and the King set forward the first of *October*, being convoy'd to the Frontiers by a Body of *Ottoman* Troops, and pass'd Incognito through *Germany*, declining to receive the Favours and Honours due to a Crown'd Head, and offer'd him by his Imperial Majesty.

I presume this Compendious Account of the Transactions of the King of Sweden, *during his long Absence at* Bender, *will not be deem'd an unnecessary Digression, especially as it was the Subject of so much Conversation, and so many Conjectures during the time of his said Absence, some supposing he would never return, others that he was dead, and would undertake to confirm that Opinion, by asserting that the Word* Bender *signified a* Grave, *whilst others thought him Invincible and Impregnable; but by his coming Home he convinc'd one Party that he was not dead, as well as he prov'd to the other that he was not Invincible, by his being kill'd by a Cannon Ball after his Return to his own Dominions.*

CHAP. III.

Of the Province of Bulgaria *and* Servia.

THE next Province to the Southward upon the West Coast of the *Black Sea*, is *Bulgaria*, which is therefore bounded on the East by the *Black Sea*, on the North by the River *Danube*, by which it is separated from *Bessarabia*, *Moldavia*, and *Walachia*, or *Valachia*; it is also bounded on the South by Mount *Hamus*, which divides it from *Romania*, and by *Servia* on the West; it was anciently part of *Mysia Inferior*.

Chief Towns.

Chief Towns are, 1. *Sophia*, situate on the River *Ischar*, near a Hundred Miles South of the *Danube*, and near the same Distance Westerly from *Adrianople*; it lies in the Road from *Belgrade* to *Constantinople*, it was antiently call'd *Sardica*, but was call'd *Sophia* from the Empress of *Justinian* of the same Name, as being rebuilt in her time; it stands on a pleasant Plain between two Mountains, one of which is cover'd with Snow in the Heat of Summer, (but this is to be imputed to the Height of the Mountain rather than the Coldness of the Climate) in less than forty-five Degrees Latitude. The Springs or melting of the Snow afterwards drain'd through the Pores of the Earth, descending from those Mountains, supply the Town with Plenty of excellent Water; it is remarkable for the Baths naturally hot, of great Use for the curing of many Distempers, but though its Name from so great an Empress makes it famous, yet it is not wall'd or any ways fortify'd.

Silistria City.

2. *Silistria*, a City on the same River, but to the Northward of *Sophia*, and nearer to the *Danube*; it is about seventy Miles to the Northward of *Sophia*, and is the Seat of a Bassa—— 3. *Nicopolis* upon the same River *Ischar*, at the Influx of that River

River into the *Danube*; it was near this Place that *Bajazet* detain'd *Sigiſmund* King of *Hungary*. There are ſome other Places mention'd by ſome Geographers, which upon Enquiry either belong to the Land of *Utopia*, or are but inconſiderable Villages, when found by Travellers in *Bulgaria*; the Country is very Mountainous, and interſpers'd with Fruitful Valleys, which yield good Corn and Graſs; the Inhabitants are moſtly Chriſtians, they follow Huſbandry, and cultivate thoſe Lands that are capable of it, and are very Hoſpitable to Strangers, but is ſo much infeſted with Robbers in the narrow Paſſes between the Mountains, which is the unavoidable Road between *Conſtantinople* and *Belgrade*, that Sir *Paul Ricaut* gives us an Account of three hundred Merchants travelling that Road that were deſtroy'd by a Gang of Robbers conſiſting only of eighteen, who having hemm'd them in, and the Paſſage being ſo narrow between the Skirts of the Mountains, did more Execution with tumbling Stones down upon them, than they did with their Arms. It was by the help of thoſe Natural Fortifications that the Natives ſo long reſiſted the Force of their Enemies the *Grecian* Emperors.

The Province of *Servia* (anciently call'd *Myſia Superior*, becauſe it lies higher up the *Danube*) is bounded on the North by the Rivers *Save* and *Danube*, by *Bulgaria* on the Eaſt, by *Albania* and *Macedon* on the South, and on the Weſt by a Branch of the River *Save*, which divides it from *Boſnia*; the principal City is *Belgrade*, but as it and ſeveral adjacent Towns were conquer'd in the Year 1718, and are now in Poſſeſſion of the Emperor of *Germany*, I ſhall defer enlarging upon it till I come to ſpeak of the Imperial Dominions and Conqueſts; but as the Emperor's taking it could not alter the Situation of the Place, I ſhall only obſerve that it ſtands at the Meeting or Conflux of the *Save* and *Danube*, and that the Country is well water'd, and is compos'd of a great Variety of Mountains and Plains, Woods and Champagne; it produces good Corn and Wine where it is cultivated, and the more barren Parts are ſtor'd with Minerals, and the Country in general enjoys a very temperate Air.

Boſnia. As for the Province of *Boſnia*, its Bounds and Situation has been deſcribed before in the firſt Chapter of the Deſcription of the *Turkiſh* Empire, and therefore, ſhall only obſerve here, that the Emperor having taken *Belgrade* in the Year 1718, he reduc'd a great part of that Province to his Obedience.

Moldavia, Bulgaria, and Valachia. *Moldavia* and *Valachia* are to the Northward of *Bulgaria*, being ſeparated from it by the River *Danube*, and were Part of the antient *Dacia*: theſe Provinces underwent a Revolution in the Year 1686, the *Poles* that Year over-running the Country, and reducing it in general to the Emperor's Government, by taking of ſeveral of the fortify'd Places or greateſt Towns, but the Emperor reſign'd them up ſince at the Peace of *Carlowitz*, and they are now Tributary to the *Turks* as they were before.

Our next Stage is to be in *Romania*, but as by the Way we are to paſs over the Mountains of *Hæmus*, a ſmall Deſcription of them cannot be amiſs; they are call'd by the *Greeks*, *Balcan*; they ſeparate *Bulgaria* and *Servia*, or the antient *Myſia*, on the North of them from *Romania* and *Macedonia*; they are a Ridge of Mountains, continuing more or leſs from *Pontus Euxinus*, or the *Black Sea* to the *Adriatick Sea*, or Gulph of *Venice*, in that part of thoſe Mountains which border upon *Romania*; there are but two Paſſges, one of which was made by the Emperor *Trajan* ſo narrow and ſtrong, that a ſmall Force is able to defend it againſt a numerous Army. The other is near the River *Saltiza*, which tho' not quite ſo narrow or ſtrait as the other, yet being ſo full of Rocks and dangerous Precipices, may likewiſe be eaſily defended againſt a powerful Army; and as for thoſe Parts they are not much eaſier penetrated, as we have an Inſtance in *Perſeus*, the laſt King of *Macedonia*, who when he had fortify'd theſe Straits, conceiv'd it impoſſible for the *Romans* to find any Paſſage, for when the Straits between the Mountains are block'd up, if they would aſcend them in order to find a Paſſage, yet the Tops are ſo exceſſive cold to thoſe who come out of the Heat below, that Travelling there is altogether impracticable.

CHAP. IV.

Treats of Romania, *or the antient* Thrace, *with a Deſcription of the Great Capital* Conſtantinople, *as alſo of* Adrianople, Trajanople, Philippipoli, Gallipoli, &c.

Bounds of Romania. ROMANIA, antiently call'd *Thrace* or *Thracia*, is the moſt conſiderable Province of all *Turkey* in *Europe*, bounded by the above-mention'd Mountains of *Hæmus* on the North, by the *Black Sea*, *Boſphorus* and *Propontis*, on the Eaſt, on the South by the *Archipelago*, and by *Macedonia* on the Weſt; it was once Tributary to the *Macedonians*, it was conquer'd by the *Romans* under the *Caius Stribonius Cucio*, the Proconſul, and in the Poſſeſſion of the Eaſtern Emperors, till it fell into the Hands of the *Turks* about three Hundred Years ago; the moſt conſiderable River of this Province is the *Mariza*, formerly call'd the *Hebrus*; it riſes at the Foot of Mount *Rhodope* on the Borders of *Macedonia*, and running Eaſtward to *Philippipoli* and *Adrianople*, and then turning to the Southward, fall into the *Ægean Sea* or *Archipelago*.

Chief Towns. The chief Towns of this Province are, 1. *Conſtantinople*, the antient *Byzantium*. 2. *Adrianople*. 3. *Trajanople*. 4. *Philippipoli*. 5. *Gallipoli*. 6. *Seſtos*. 7. *Heraclea*. 8. *Rodoſto*: Of theſe in Order.

Conſtantinople. 1. The chief City in the Province, and as ſome ſay, the fineſt Harbour in the World, is *Conſtantinople*, ſo well known in antient Hiſtory by the Name of *Byzantium*, by the *Turks Stamboul*, and by the *Europeans* it is very frequently call'd the *Porte*, inſomuch that that Appellation is underſtood ſynonimouſly to mean the City of *Conſtantinople*, or the *Grand Seignior* himſelf, as *Money was ſent from the Porte*, or *Orders were ſent from the Porte*, &c. Indeed Authors differ about the Reaſon of that general Name the *Porte*, ſome alledging that it is call'd the *Porte* by way of Eminence, as being ſuppoſed the fineſt Port or Harbour in the World, as above; but ſome think it is rather call'd ſo from the Name of one of the Gates of the Emperor's Seraglio which fronted the Town, and was ſo call'd; but whatever be the Reaſon of that Name, it

it is moſt commonly known to us by the Name of *Conſtantinople.*

Situation. IT is ſituate in between 41 and 42 Degrees of North Latitude, it was rebuilt, (or rather indeed built) by *Conſtantine the Great*, and call'd by him *Nova Roma*, and hence the Province formerly *Thrace*, was call'd *Romania*; but after *Conſtantine* the Builder died, they chang'd its Name, and in Honour to his Memory call'd it *Conſtantinople*, and I call him the Builder rather than only the Rebuilder, becauſe it ſtands not exactly on the ſame Ground where *Byzantium* formerly ſtood, and the firſt Foundation of the Walls, as well as of the new Town, were actually laid by him, and it was he that firſt tranſlated the Imperial Seat from *Rome* to this Place, which after the Diviſion of the Eaſtern Empire, continued to be the Seat of their Emperors; but it was taken from the *Greeks* by the *French* and *Venetians* in the Year 1203, and retaken by the *Paleologi*, *Anno* 1254, but *Mahomet* the Second took it from the *Chriſtians* on *Whitſunday*, in the Year 1453, ever ſince which time it has continued to be the Capital of the *Turkiſh* Empire.

IT is ſomewhat in the Form of a Triangle, two Sides of which are waſh'd by the Sea; the Harbour is about three Miles long, and the *Boſphorus* before the City is but about a Mile over, it being the narrow Paſſage between the *Propontis* and the *Black Sea*, and as this Province of *Romania* was formerly call'd *Thrace*, this narrow Paſſage is what we read of in antient Hiſtory by the Name of *Boſphorus* of *Thrace*; the Water is ſo deep, or, according to the Sailors Phraſe, it is ſo ſteep too on *Conſtantinople* Side, that a large Ship may lie very near the Shore and her Keel not touch the Ground. This City affords an exceeding fine Proſpect, eſpecially from the riſing Ground about *Scutari* on the other Side of the *Boſphorus*, from whence *Conſtantinople*, by an eaſy Aſcent from the Water Side, ſhews itſelf to the beſt Advantage, for you may ſee at one View an innumerable Quantity of Moſques, with their Domes and Turrets; the Seraglio and Caſtle of the ſeven Towers, with their Globes and gilded Spires, interſpers'd with Groves of Trees and other Greens, makes a moſt delectable Appearance.

Seraglio. THE Seraglio ſtands upon a Point on the Larboard Side or Left Hand going out of the *Propontis* into the Harbour, and underneath the Seraglio, between it and the Sea, on the Declivity of the Hill, are the Gardens belonging to it, ſuppoſed to be the Place where *Old Byzantium* once ſtood. At the other or Southermoſt Angle of *Conſtantinople* ſtands the Caſtle call'd *Seven Towers*, which was built when this Place was in the Poſſeſſion of the *Chriſtians*, and is now the Place where State Priſoners are confin'd; and at the other Angle quite within the Harbour may be ſeen the Ruins of *Conſtantine*'s Palace; the Town is incompaſſed by a Wall pretty ſtrong towards the Land, but of little Conſequence towards the Sea. In this Wall are twenty-two Gates, five open to the *Propontis* before you go into the Harbour, eleven open to the Harbour, and the other five on the back part of the Town towards the Land; the Gates open to the *Propontis*, and to the Harbour have their reſpective Landing Places and Stairs. The Circumference of the whole City of *Conſtantinople* (exclusive of *Galata*, which is on the other Side of the Harbour, and of all the other Suburbs) is computed at about twelve Miles, which at a diſtance makes a very extenſive as well as beautiful Proſpect.

BUT it appears beſt at a Diſtance, for when a Traveller comes within it, he finds his Expectation much deceiv'd, for the Houſes are low, and moſtly built of Wood, and jutting over in many Places ſo much, that one may almoſt ſtep croſs from one to another, which makes the Streets dark and dirty, as well as narrow; and as their Combuſtible Fabricks are crowded ſo near together, if a Fire happens it can ſeldom be extinguiſhed till it comes to ſome Garden or dead Wall, or other vacant Place; but this in general: Let us now come to ſome Particulars worth our Notice.

AND firſt of the *Seraglio*, which is ſuch a magnifi- *Seraglio* cent Edifice, that as a late Author obſerves, it is rather a Collection of Palaces than one ſingle Palace, there being continually new Apartments and Conveniences added to it, according to the Fancy of the new Emperor, and thoſe built upon new Ground, without demoliſhing the Old to make room for them; the Materials exceed the Workmanſhip, the former being Rich, but the latter very Mean; they are cover'd with Lead, by which they are known to belong to the Grand Seignior, that being a piece of Dignity not allow'd to any Subject there. The principal Entrance into the Seraglio is call'd by the *Turks*, *Capi*, or *the Porte*, by way of Eminence, and by this Name the *Ottoman* or *Turkiſh* Empire is now known; but whether that Name is taken from this Gate is ſtill a Queſtion, or rather an Improbability, for there is nothing Magnificent in this Gate, except the Materials, which are all of Marble. There is an *Arabick* Inſcription over it in Gold and Azure, which ſhews that this and the Emperor's Palace were both built by *Mahomet* the ſecond, but this Gate is not diſtinguiſh'd from the next by the Number of Guards, there being forty or fifty *Capigi*'s at each, who are known by their high ſtiffned-Caps when they are upon Duty; they have no Arms, but a little Staff in their Hands, for even the Janizaries themſelves never go arm'd in the Towns, and laugh at the *Francks*, or the *European* Chriſtians that reckon the Sword a Part of their Dreſs where they are in no Danger.

WITHIN the great Gate above-mentioned, which *Hoſpit.* is open to every Body, there is the firſt Court or Duor, which is conſiderably longer than broad; on the Right Hand is an Hoſpital or Infirmary, built more for Conveniency than Beauty or Shew; however, the Sick are ſo well taken care of and indulg'd here, eſpecially in Drinking Wine, which they are allow'd here for Medicine and the Recovery of Health, that ſome of them will get in upon a very ſlight Diſtemper, or even counterfeit Sickneſs to enjoy the Privilege of Drinking; ſo little Conſcience do they make of Drinking it, if they can come at it by any Pretence whatſoever, notwithſtanding that their Religion ſtrictly forbids it.

ON the Left Hand of this Court, there is an old Building with a Cupola over it, ſaid to have a Chriſtian Temple; here the Arms and other Spoils and Plunder of the Chriſtians are repoſited; here are alſo Lodgings for the ordinary Servants of the Seraglio, and the Mint for coining Money. The ſecond Court, which is alſo open to every Body, is call'd the Court of the *Divan*; in this there are ſeveral Graſs-Plats, ſurrounded with Trees, with Fountains in the middle of them, and the Walks are pav'd with Marble; round this Court runs a large Gallery, low, but tolerably well built, and ſupported by a vaſt Number of fine Marble Pillars: On the Right Hand ſtands the Treaſury, and a Stable where ſome Horſes are kept, ſaid to be the fineſt in the World; theſe are for the Grand Seignior's own Riding, their Bridles, Saddles, and other Furniture being proportionably ſplendid, the Houſen every where ſhining with Gold and Silver, and enrich'd with precious Stones, but neither the Treaſury or the Stables have any thing magnificent in their Architecture.

ON

On the Left Hand of this Court are the Kitchens, being ſeveral large handſome Buildings with Cupola's over them, but they have no Chimneys, only Holes in the Sides of the Cupola's to let out the Smoak, the Hearth being always in the middle of the Room. As for the Number of People that inhabit the Place in the ſeveral Capacities, it is difficult to determine, but the beſt Eſtimate that can be made is from the Quantity of Proviſions expended every Year, which Mr. *Mortraye* obſerves by the Report of ſome of the Cooks, who aſſured him that there was no leſs than Thirty Thouſand Oxen, Twenty Thouſand Calves, Sixty Thouſand Sheep, Sixteen Thouſand Lambs, Ten Thouſand Kids, an Hundred Thouſand Turkeys and Geeſe, an Hundred Thouſand Pigeons, and Two Hundred Thouſand Fowls and Chickens, beſides Wild Fowl and Fiſh; of one Sort of the latter, viz. Turbet they expend at leaſt One Hundred and Thirty Thouſand, and all theſe Articles are expended or conſum'd in the Seraglio in one Year's time; the Turbet is moſt delicious Eating, and ſo plenty in the Seas thereabouts, as well as other ſorts of Fiſh, that the *Turks* can pick and chuſe what they like beſt, and for that Reaſon any ſort of Shell-fiſh of what kind ſoever is ſeldom taken or made uſe of amongſt them.

Proviſions yearly expended in the Seraglio.

There is never any Perſon, but only the Grand Seignior himſelf, is allow'd to be ſeen on Horſeback in this ſecond Court, or Court of the Divan, and ſo profound a Silence is kept in all the Courts of the Palace, that notwithſtanding the vaſt Number of Inhabitants and Reſort of Strangers, eſpecially in the firſt Court where the Servants wait, there is not the leaſt Murmur or Voice heard, but all as quiet as if no Body liv'd there; but being confin'd to that Silence, has put them under a Neceſſity of converſing with their Fingers, which every Perſon is oblig'd to learn that would be admitted to Court, the Grand Seignior himſelf being very much Maſter of, and delighted with that ſort of Converſation.

The Divan.

The Divan is at the farther end of the Upper Court; this is the Place for aſſembling Councils of State, and determining Publick Affairs, and hence it is that the Council when met there is call'd a *Divan*; beyond this no Stranger is admitted unleſs Ambaſſadors who paſs to the Hall of Audience, where the Grand Seignior has a Throne erected, being almoſt quite cover'd over with Pearl and precious Stones; the Hall of Audience is very richly furniſh'd, the Roof and Sides caſt a reſplendent Luſtre with Gold and Azure, and adorn'd with the fineſt of Paintings after the *Perſian* Manner; the Divan is but a low Building, its Height much ſhort in proportion to the large Space of Ground that it poſſeſſes.

Inſide of the Seraglio

It is difficult for a Stranger to penetrate or be introduced further into this ſpacious and ſumptuous Building, only Mr. *Mortraye* procur'd himſelf an Opportunity by a Stratagem; for the Court being remov'd to *Adrianople*, and he having contracted an Acquaintance with a *French* Watch-maker, who was ſent for to rectify and keep in Order ſome fine Clocks that the Grand Seignior had had preſented to him, and the Watch-maker having of Courſe an Opportunity of going into the Rooms where the Clocks were, Mr. *Mortraye* attended him as a Servant, and by that means could give us the following further Account of the Seraglio.

They were conducted by a black Eunuch firſt into the great Hall, becauſe there was an *Engliſh* Clock in a rich Caſe that wanted to be put in Order, and while the Watch-maker was at Work, Mr. *Mortraye* was making his Obſervations, and tells us that the whole Room was lin'd or wainſcotted with *China* Tiles, and all the Roof and the Cieling of the Cupola was adorn'd with Gold and Azure. In the Hall, under the middle of the Cupola, was a Fountain, the Baſon of which was a fine green Stone or Marble, ſuppoſed to be Jaſper; this, as well as other Artificial Fountains, ſerve for their Ablutions, which always precede their Prayers, eſpecially in the Harams of the Women, who always when they enter their Moſques or Temples, have the Alchoran read to them in thoſe great Halls, which ſerve inſtead of Chapels on thoſe Occaſions; thoſe Halls have large Windows, not only glaz'd but have Lattices before them, and round the Room againſt the Walls are Benches cover'd with rich Carpets, where the Ladies air themſelves, and divert themſelves with ſeeing the Gardens.

They were conducted from thence by ſeveral little Rooms like the private Cells of Monks or Nuns, but infinitely excelling them in Richneſs of Furniture; in one of them was a fine Pendulum Clock wanted to be repair'd, it ſtood upon a Maſſy Silver Table before a Looking-Glaſs, whoſe Frame was Silver gilt, curiouſly wrought and embelliſh'd with Foliages in Relievo; two high Stands of maſſy Silver ſtood at the end of a rich Sopha or Bench, which was cover'd with plain green Silk, which was only a Cover or Caſe for the Bench, which was a very rich Brocade with a Gold Ground, the Cuſhions were of green Velvet richly wrought; this Chamber appear'd more beautiful than the Hall, as to its Paintings and Gildings; the bottoms of the Windows were above the Reach of the talleſt Man, the Glaſs was painted in a confuſed manner, but no Repreſentation of any living Creature was upon it.

When the Watch-maker had done his Buſineſs, and Mr. *Mortraye* had finiſh'd the Obſervations that he had Opportunity for, they were led through many fine Halls and Chambers, the Floors of which were cover'd with rich *Perſian* Carpets, and adorn'd with fine Sopha's and gilded Cielings, and from thence they paſs'd to the Sea-ſide through the Gardens, which were full of Cypreſſes and other green Trees planted without any manner of Order; they had not gone above twenty Paces from the Houſe towards the Gardens till they came at a Pillar of Granite Marble of one ſingle Piece, which ſeem'd larger and about a third part higher than *Marcian*'s Pillar; it ſtood upon a ſquare Pedeſtal, adorn'd with ſome mutilated Feſtoons and *Latin* Inſcriptions, but by length of time they were defac'd and not legible, eſpecially to Mr. *Mortraye*, who was obliged to attend their Motions, and could not ſtay to make particular Obſervations of any thing that he ſaw.

What is moſt remarkable beſide, is the Pleaſure-houſe over-againſt *Galata*; it is ſupported by twelve Marble Pillars, it is richly furniſhed, and painted after the *Perſian* manner; to this Place the Grand Seignior often comes to take Water or divert himſelf with viewing the Shipping. There is alſo another Pleaſure-houſe on that ſide of the Seraglio next to the *Boſphorus*, higher than that before-mentioned; it is built on Arches, which ſupport three Salons cover'd with giled Cupola's; to this Place the Grand Seignior frequently comes with the Ladies, attended with the Mutes, and Dwarfs, and other Seraglions, to take the Air and divert himſelf.

Pleaſure-houſe

But Beſides the Buildings, Gardens, and Squares which are more particularly for Pleaſure, there are others in which the inferior Servants, and ſome of the Officers lodge, and all manner of Stores and Proviſions are laid up. As on the Left Hand of the Entrance going down to the Water Side, there are prodigious Piles of Wood for Fuel for the uſe of the Palace, there being ſome Thouſands of Baltagi's or Hatchet-men, who are young luſty Slaves

employ'd continually to cut it down and pile it up, and carry it to the ſeveral Apartments as they have Occaſion for it. And on the other Side, or the Right Hand going down, there is a large Square where they exerciſe thoſe that are intended for Military Employments, the Grand Seignior himſelf being often preſent at their Exerciſes.

Other Palaces.

THERE are ſeveral other Seraglio's or Palaces in *Conſtantinople* beſides the Grand Seignior's, but they make but a poor Appearance when one is near them; nor dare they do otherwiſe, leſt they ſhould be thought to vie with the Grand Seignior, or be thought too Rich, and thereby endanger the ſeizing of his Poſſeſſions; but though theſe Places make no ſplendid Appearance without, except their being encompaſs'd with high Walls, yet within they have generally noble Apartments, adorn'd with Gold and Azure, the Flowers cover'd with rich Carpets, and the Walls freqently lin'd with Tiles in Imitation of *China* Ware; there is generally in every Room a broad Bench about a Foot high againſt the Wall, cover'd with better Carpets than thoſe upon the Floor, and embroidered Cuſhions put upon it. The Womens Apartment is ſeparated from the reſt, and is deem'd ſo ſacred, that none but Women enter it, except the Maſter and his Eunuchs, and ſo ſtrictly do they obſerve that, that if a Criminal makes his Eſcape thither, the Officers of Juſtice will not follow him in, but wait his coming out. They have frequently Fires in *Conſtantinople*, which do a great deal of Miſchief, and the general Method uſed to put a Stop to it, is to employ a great Number of thoſe Baltagi's or Hatchet-men to deſtroy twenty or thirty Houſes round the Houſe that is burning and on each ſide of it, that the Fire may meet with little or nothing to work upon but the Houſe that is already on Fire, and then it will ſtop of courſe when that is burnt. Theſe Fires are moſt frequently occaſioned by the *Turks* ſmoaking Tobacco in their Beds, which they are ſuch Bigots to, that they will not be reſtrain'd from it, notwithſtanding the Danger that attends it, and the ſevere Penalties which the Law inflicts upon thoſe that do it when once they are known

Publick Buildings.

THEY take great Delight in their Temples and publick Buildings, to have them beautiful and magnificent, and amongſt Travellers, the ſeven Royal Moſques or Temples are not the leaſt worth Notice, they not being encompaſs'd and hid by Houſes or Tradeſmens Shops, as the Churches are among the *European Chriſtians*, but ſtand ſingle within ſpacious Incloſures, planted with fine Trees, and adorn'd with noble Fountains.

St. Sophia

THE Principal of theſe ſeven Moſques is call'd *St. Sophia*; it has a very advantageous Situation, being over-againſt the great Gate of the Seraglio, in the moſt beautiful part of the Town, upon an Eminence from whence there is a gradual Deſcent to the Sea: It was formerly a Chriſtian Temple, built by the Emperor *Juſtin*, who liv'd about two Hundred Years after *Conſtantine the Great*, enlarg'd and beautified by *Juſtinian*, and dedicated to the Wiſdom of God; whereupon it obtain'd the Name of *Agia Sophia*, which Name it ſtill retains, notwithſtanding that it is converted or rather perverted from a Chriſtian Temple to a *Turkiſh* Moſque; it is of a ſquare Form, being 570 Foot long, and four Hundred Foot broad, but appears round within. There is a Portico or Piazza twelve Yards deep, ſupported by Marble Pillars extends the whole Length of the Front. This Piazza, which in the time of the *Greek* Emperors ſerv'd as a *Veſtibulum*, and has a Communication with the Church by nine folding Doors, the Arches being all of Marble, and the Leaves of Braſs adorn'd with Baſſo Relievo, extremely Magnificent, and the middlemoſt of thoſe Doors is very large. This *Veſtibulum* is join'd to another parallel to it, which has only five brazen Doors, the Leaves whereof were charg'd with Croſſes, but there are now left only the upright Beams, the croſs Beams being taken away. The *Turks* have built a large Cloiſter parallel to theſe *Veſtibulums*; in it are the Cells or Lodgings of the *Mollas* and other Officers belonging to the Moſque.

THE greateſt part of this Building is cover'd by a Cupola of admirable Workmanſhip, and at the Foot of the Dome or Cupola runs a Piazza of thirty Foot deep or broad, which ſupports a Gallery of the ſame Breadth, by ſome call'd *Conſtantine*'s Gallery; it was formerly ſet apart for the Women. There are two leſſer Galleries over this, which makes a handſome Figure in the time of the *Ramezan*, when they are all filled with Lamps; the Cupola is thirty-ſix Yards from Side to Side, and is ſupported by four vaſt Pillars about eight Fathoms thick, the Arch is illuminated by four and twenty Windows placed round it at equal Diſtances; from the Eaſt End of this Dome we paſs on to the Demi-Dome in a ſtrait Line; this was formerly the Sanctuary of the Chriſtians, and their great Altar was plac'd here; there are in this Moſque one Hundred and ſeven Pillars of various Kinds of Marble, of which ſome are Porphyry, ſome *Egyptian* Granite, and the whole Dome is lin'd with curious Marble and exquiſite Workmanſhip.

Solymania

THE next Moſque to *St. Sophia* for Beauty and Workmanſhip is *Solymania*, ſo call'd from its firſt Founder *Solyman* the ſecond; the Outſide of this Moſque may be ſaid in ſome Meaſure to exceed that of *St. Sophia*, the Windows being larger and better diſpoſed, the Galleries more regular and ſtately, and the Whole compoſed of the fineſt Stones brought the Ruins from of *Chalcedon* and *Troy*; the Mauſoleums of its Founder *Solyman* and his *Sultana*, are behind this Moſque, cover'd with Noble Domes; there is over *Solyman*'s Coffin, a rich Piece of Embroidery repreſenting the Town of *Mecca*, and at the Head of the Coffin is a Turbant with a Tuft of Heron's Feathers enrich'd with precious Stones, the whole Tomb being illuminated with a vaſt Number of Lamps and Tapers, and Religious People attend conſtantly to read the *Alchoran*, and pray for the Souls of the Deceaſed, and have ſtated Salaries for their ſo doing.

THERE is another Moſque founded by the Mother of *Mahomet* the fourth; it is a very handſome Structure, and is much the ſame Model and Materials with *St. Sophia*, and being the moſt frequented Part of the Town, is nobly illuminated on Rejoicing Days; for they do not only fill the Galleries and Minarets with Lamps, but by Cords faſten'd from one Minaret to another, and little Lamps fix'd to them; they repreſent the Name of the Grand Seignior or a beſieg'd Town, or a Battle or any other Fancy ſuitable to the Occaſion of Rejoicing, very artfully.

THE New Moſque built by Sultan *Achmet* is another fine Building; the Entrance is through a large Court which leads to a Portico or Piazza, over which is a Gallery ſupported by Marble Pillars, beyond which is a large ſquare Cloiſter which joins to the Moſque, over which there is a ſtately Dome with ſlender Minarets or Steeples, as in the reſt; but the chief Ornaments of this, as well as the reſt, are branch'd Candleſticks, Ivory Balls, and Chryſtal Globes, one of which contains a little Galley rigg'd, another the Model of the Temple, and every one of them contains ſome Curioſity or other.

THERE are ſeveral other Moſques built by different Founders, as *Sultan Selin*, *Sultan Mahomet*, *Sultan Bajazet*, &c. but they being much of the ſame Form, but of inferior Magnitude and Beauty to what has already been deſcribed, a farther Account of them is needleſs.

BUT

Atmeidan. But another noted Place in *Conſtantinople* is the *Atmeidan*, or the antient *Hypodrome*; it is a famous Square ſtill, as formerly dedicated to the Exerciſe of Horſemanſhip, throwing of Darts in a full Career, &c. and formerly the Horſe Races were run there; it is near ſeven Hundred Yards long, and about one Hundred and ſeventy broad, but the Statues and Obelisks that formerly appeared very grand, are much defac'd; but there ſtill remains an Obelisk of Granite Marble, being one ſingle Piece of fifty Foot tapering upwards, and terminating in a Point, and charg'd with Hieroglyphicks, the Remains are to be ſeen, but are now unintelligible. but by the Inſcriptions on the Baſe it appears that *Theodoſius* the Emperor ſet it up again after it had lain on the Ground a conſiderable time, and the Engines uſed in raiſing it are repreſented in Baſſo Relievo; it had at firſt a Brazen Pine-Apple on the top of it, but that was thrown down by an Earthquake. A little diſtance from hence is another Obelisk compoſed of ſeveral pieces of Marble, but the top of it is fallen, and the reſt is in a ruinous Condition; it was formerly cover'd with Braſs Plates ſet off with *Baſs Reliefs*; former Authors give an Account of a Column repreſenting three Serpents twiſted together, which was deem'd a Charm againſt Serpents, with which this Country was very much infeſted, but late Travellers tell us it is now demoliſh'd.

Burnt Columns. There is a Street in *Conſtantinople*, call'd *Adrianople-ſtreet*, in which is a Column call'd the *Burnt-Column*; it is ſo black and ſcorch'd, that it is hard to find what it is made of, tho' ſome think it is Porphyry. There is alſo the Hiſtorical Pillar, ſo call'd as being cover'd with Figures repreſenting the Hiſtory of the Victories of the Emperor *Arcadius*; it is of plain Marble, and is about one Hundred and Forty-ſeven Foot, or Forty-nine Yards in Height; amongſt the many fine wrought Figures that are upon this Pillar, there is the Emperor ſitting in an Elbow Chair in a Fur Gown; the Imperial Standard is held over his Head by two Angels, with this Motto or Device wrought in it, *Jeſus Chriſt is a Conquerer.*

Hiſtorical Pillar.

Exchange. The Grand *Beſaſtin*, or *Exchange* is admirable, both for the manner of Building, and the Order of diſpoſing of it; here all manner of Handicraft Trades have their Shops in their reſpective Parts of the Exchange, one part of it being aſſigned to the Goldſmiths, another to the Mercers, a third to the Drapers, &c. for different Trades never mix together, but according to what Tradeſman a Perſon wants, he may go to their reſpective Part of the Exchange, and find all the Shops belonging to that Trade together, and take his Choice as he pleaſes; here are alſo the richeſt Merchandize expoſed to Sale all Day, and at Night the Exchange is lock'd up, and the Dealers retire to their reſpective Lodgings in the City. There is alſo another Exchange, where Goods of leſs Value are ſold; but in other Parts of the City there are no Shops or any Trade carried on, or Goods ſold except in the Market-places, and that only for Fleſh and other Eatables.

Caravanſera's. The Caravanſera's, or publick Inns for the Entertainment of Travellers and Merchants, are many of them ſtrong Stone Buildings, and generally built all much after the ſame Form, *viz.* there is commonly a large ſquare Court, in the middle of which is a Fountain; every Side of the Square is a continued Row of Cloiſters, through which the People go to their Lodgings; alſo over the Cloiſter is a Gallery with Lodging Rooms behind it; when a Merchant comes to *Conſtantinople*, and wants both Lodgings and Warehouſe-Room, he need only ſpeak to the Porter or Houſe-keeper, and he may be furniſhed with both, paying only about the Value of half a Crown at Entrance, and two or three Aſpres [Half-pence] a Day, and what they do pay is not applied to the maintaining of thoſe that attend, for the Caravanſera's are built, and the Attendants maintain'd either at the Expence of ſome particular well-diſpos'd Perſon, or out of the Money devoted to Charitable Uſes, to which that which Merchants or Gentlemen give for their Lodgings is apply'd among the reſt, but there are ſome Caravanſera's where they not only give Lodgings gratis, but give the Travellers Rice and Fleſh into the Bargain, but People in any tolerable Circumſtances ſeldom will accept of thoſe Favours without making ſome Returns, or elſe buy their own Proviſions, which is here exceeding Cheap.

Slave Market. They have their Bazars or Market-places where they buy and ſell Slaves of both Sexes, as we do Cattle, which (as a certain Author juſtly obſerves in his Deſcription of *Conſtantinople*) is very ſhocking to the *European Chriſtians*; but it is ſurpriſing to me that thoſe *European Chriſtians* ſhould without the leaſt Remorſe make a Trade and a Practice of that which they think ſo ſhocking in others: How many not only *Europeans*, but *Engliſh Chriſtians*, and Profeſſors of the Reform'd Religion too, not only buy, but ſteal their Fellow Creatures of the Human Species to carry to Market under the Name of Slavery, and rejoice as much in their Succeſs in the Numbers they catch, and the good Price they make of them, as they would in catching and ſelling Fiſh or any other Creatures made for Man's Uſe? and I humbly conceive it is a vaſt leſs Degree of Barbarity in the *Turks*, who bring their Slaves to their own Markets, where they have a Chance of being bought and employ'd there, without being ſhov'd aboard a Ship, and tranſported like ſo many Felons, than it is in thoſe Chriſtians who make a Trade of ſtealing them from their Parents and Families, and carry them to a remote Quarter of the World, where they have no Chance of ever ſeeing their Relations again, and perhaps when old and paſt their Labour, live unprovided for, and die miſerable.

But to return to the Slave-Market at *Conſtantinople*, here Men purchaſe Wives, Concubines, or Servants, agreeing for the Price as we do Cattle in *Smithfield*, or in Country Fairs; this Slave-Market is a large Square, where both Sexes are expos'd to Sale, but more Women than Men; the Male Slaves ſtand out in the middle of the Square, but the Females are kept in little Apartments adjoining to it, where Chapmen go to cheapen and purchaſe them. Thoſe who are diſtinguiſh'd for their Beauty or ſome other Accompliſhments fit to recommend them to People of Condition, thoſe the Merchants keep up in their own Houſes, and bring them up to Singing or Dancing, or other Qualifications, to render them deſirable, and when a Chapman comes to purchaſe one that he fancies, and that ſhe alſo likes to go with, ſhe will uſe the moſt endearing Expreſſions to induce him to purchaſe her, but there is always a ſtrict Guard kept over them to prevent the Chapman's trying his Ware before he has purchas'd, for a Girl is not reckon'd worth half the Money after ſhe has loſt her Maidenhead that ſhe was before, and when the Terms are agreed upon (provided ſhe be a Maid) there are old Matrons appointed to examine their Virginity, and give in their Report to the Seller and Buyer according to their Opinion, *or perhaps a little Reward given the Matrons by the Seller, may purchaſe a Maidenhead for ſome of them that have loſt it, and the Purchaſer think himſelf well off too, when he has her recommended by ſuch proper Judges.*

Harbour. The Harbour of *Conſtantinople* is a large Creek, by which Ships come out of the *Boſphorus* up to the Gates and Landing-Places of the City; the Creek ex-

extends about three Miles up into the Land, and is about a Mile broad at the Entrance, but grows narrower higher up, till it comes to nothing, but only a little River, which comes in at the Head of it. On the other Side of the Creek or Harbour, oppoſite to *Conſtantinople*, is a large Town call'd *Galata*, to which People uſually croſs from *Conſtantinople* by the Wherries, where the Water is about half a Mile broad, or it is common to go by Land, for going up to the Head of the Harbour, there is no Water to croſs, except the little River that falls into it as above-mentioned, and the Journey is pleaſant enough, becauſe there are ſeveral remarkable Things in the way, as firſt the *Ocmeidan* or Field of Arrows, a ſpacious Place where the *Turks* practiſe Archery, and alſo here they come when a War commences, to implore Succeſs to their Arms, and Victory over their Enemies.

Ocmeidan.

The next thing remarkable in the Way is *Caſſumpaſha*, a ſort of a Village where the Arſenal is; here all the Gallies and Ships are built, here being no leſs than one Hundred and twenty arch'd Docks. The Captain Baſſa reſides in the Arſenal, and has the Command of all the Workmen and Marines. From *Caſſumpaſha* there is only a ſmall Space, containing ſome Burying-Grounds; beyond is *Galata*, a handſome Town, and the private Houſes generally better Buildings than thoſe of *Conſtantinople*; in this Place every Sect has the free Exerciſe of their Religion, the Chriſtians have almoſt the ſame Liberty as in *Chriſtendom*, and the *Turks*, who refrain from Wine more by the Reſtraint of their Laws than for Conſcience or Inclination, have Taverns and publick Houſes, and drink Wine with all poſſible Freedom, and thoſe *Turks* that live in *Conſtantinople*, and are denied Wine there, do often croſs the Water to take a Dole.

Fiſh-market.

The Fiſh-Market in *Galata*, is down by the Sea Side, where is great Plenty of all kind of Fiſh, exceeding good and cheap. A little beyond *Galata*, only over ſome Burying-Grounds, is a Place call'd *Pera*; here all the Chriſtian Ambaſſadors have their Reſidence, except thoſe of the Emperor and *Poland*, who are allow'd to reſide within the Walls of *Conſtantinople*; the Houſes in *Pera* are generally handſomer than thoſe in the City, and moſtly inhabited by People of Figure and Character; from *Pera*, paſſing down a great Deſcent, you come to *Tophana*, ſo call'd becauſe all their Artillery is caſt here; but altho' we name theſe Places as ſo many diſtinct Towns or Villages, yet there being nothing but the Harbour between them and *Conſtantinople*, they are generally reckon'd a part of that great City, or at leaſt Suburbs to it, and may as well be accounted ſo, as *Southwark* or *Wapping* may be call'd either the Suburbs or a part of the City of *London*; and if we take thoſe Places in under the Name of *Conſtantinople*, it may be ſaid to be thirty Miles about, though the City within the Walls is not above twelve Miles about, excluſive of the great Seraglio, which of itſelf is three or four Miles in Circumference.

Old Seraglio

But beſides this, which by way of Eminency is called the *Seraglio*, there is another in *Conſtantinople* of about two Miles in Compaſs, call'd the *Old Seraglio*; to this Place the Ladies of the deceaſed Emperors are remov'd upon the Acceſſion of a new one, and from hence they never come out, except ſome of them ſhould have the good Fortune to be re-choſen, and re-inſtated in the great Seraglio by order of the ſucceeding, or rather now preſent Emperor; here are alſo kept, as in Exile, thoſe of the Royal Blood who are ſuffer'd to live.

Scutari.

Over-against the Opening of the Harbour of *Conſtantinople*, but on the *Aſian* Shore on the other Side of the *Boſphorus*, ſtands *Scudaret* or *Scutari*, which ſome reckon a Part of *Conſtantinople*, though ſeparated from it by the *Boſphorus*, where it is a Mile broad and ſtanding in *Aſia*, and yet it is not amiſs to call it ſo, if we conſider that it is the Rendezvous of the Merchants and Caravans of *Armenia* and *Perſia* trading to *Conſtantinople*, and not only ſo, but the Emperor has a ſumptuous Palace and ſpacious Gardens at *Scutari*, to which he ſometimes retires from the Hurry of Buſineſs in *Conſtantinople*.

A little to the Weſtward of *Scutari*, and almoſt over-againſt the Grand Seraglio in *Conſtantinople*, is the Town of *Calcedon*, of which little is now to be ſeen but the Ruins, and as nothing of it now remains ſufficient to give a Perſon any tolerable Idea of what it has been, I ſhall ſay no more of it.

Adrianople.

The ſecond City for Dignity and Magnificence in this Province is *Adrianople*, ſo call'd from the Emperor *Adrian*, who rebuilt it after it had been demoliſh'd by an Earthquake; this is the antient *Oreſtes*, ſo call'd from its firſt Founder; it is about a Hundred and forty Miles Weſt, Northerly from *Conſtantinople*; it ſtands in a low Fruitful Country, a heathful Air, and a pleaſant Situation, which induces the Grand Seignoir often to remove the Court to this Place, and the laſt Sultan eſpecially was ſo fond of it, that he could ſcarce be prevail'd upon to return to *Conſtantinople*; here is a magnificent Seraglio, and ſome noble Moſques, but their private Buildings are but mean, and the Streets as dirty as thoſe at *Conſtantinople*; it is computed about ſeven or eight Miles in Circumference, including Gardens and all, and is ſaid to contain a Hundred Thouſand Inhabitants: when the *Turks* took in the Year 1362. they made it the Imperial Seat, which had before been at *Bruſa* in *Natolia*, and this continued to be the Metropolis of the Empire till the taking of *Conſtantinople*, which has been the Capital of the Empire ever ſince.

The Exchang

The *Biſiſtin* or Exchange of this City, is very remarkable, it being near half a Mile in Length, and between three and four Hundred Shops on the Sides, furniſh'd with rich Goods, and near it is a cover'd Street or Cloiſter a Mile in Length, all full of Shops, and crowded with Buſineſs, every Trade having a particular Part of the Exchange allotted them, where they are to be found, and not diſpers'd up and down, and found with Difficulty, as in *London* and other Places in *England*.

Moſque

The Moſque built by Sultan *Selin* is the chief in the City, but the Form and Materials being much the ſame as before deſcribed at *Conſtantinople*, and there being little Difference, except in the Dimenſions or ſometimes in the Materials of which they are compoſed, it is not worth while to enlarge upon a Deſcription of them.

Trajan

The next great Town is *Trajanople*, ſo call'd from the Emperor *Trajan*, the Builder of it; it is about forty Miles South Eaſterly from *Adrianople*, it was once an Archbiſhop's See, but now an obſcure Place.

Philipp.

Weſt a little Northerly from *Adrianople*, and upon the ſame River, is *Philippipoli*, ſo called from *Phillip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Alexander the Great*; it is about eighty Miles from *Adrianople*, and is now a large City ſituate on a ſpacious Plain on the River *Mariza*, or it may rather be ſaid that a part of it ſtands upon the Declivity of a Hill, and the reſt upon a Plain. This is generally allow'd to be the Place whoſe Inhabitants are call'd in the New-Teſtament the *Phillippians*, and to whom St. *Paul* wrote his Epiſtle under the Title of the *Epiſtle to the Phillippians*, which we now receive as a part of Canonical Scripture, and they now ſhew the Remains of two antient Brick Chapels, in one of which the *Greeks* ſay St. *Paul* preach'd, which indeed there is the utmoſt Reaſon to believe, it not being to be ſuppoſed that St. *Paul* would have wrote

an Epiſtle to People that he would not have preach'd to if he was upon the Spot, and Opportunity fell in his Way.

THE Walls of *Philippoli* are now in a ruinous Condition; there are indeed ſome *Greek* Inſcriptions over the Gates, but obliterated and ſcarce legible, and their Monks are ſo ignorant of the Hiſtory of the Place, or its Original, that they give the utmoſt Attention to any Stranger while he relates any thing of the Antiquities of the Place, but never make any Collections, and conſequently are as far to ſeek, and as induſtrious to enquire when the next Travellers comes. This City was taken by the *Turks* in the Year 1360, and is now an Archbiſhop's See.

Gallipoli. ANOTHER large Town is *Gallipoli*, ſituate at the Mouth of the *Propontis*, or Sea of *Marmora* on the *Thracian Cherſoneſe*, or according to the Terms now, it is on the *Weſtern* or *European* Side of the *Propontis*, South Weſt of *Conſtantinople*, and where the Sea of *Marmora* is about five Miles over. It is reckon'd about a Hundred Miles South Weſt from *Conſtantinople* between it and the *Dardonelles*, it has two Ports for the Reception of Ships or Gallies; the Exchange is a handſome Building, and has ſeveral Domes cover'd with Lead, but their common Buildings low and mean, and their Doors not above two Foot and a half high, being made ſo low to prevent the *Turks* riding into their Houſes to inſult and diſturb them where they find the Doors high enough for their Reception on Horſeback. There are ſuppoſed to be about ten Thouſand *Turks* in this City, three or four Thouſand *Greeks*, and the *Jews* are very numerous. This is the firſt Capital Place that ever the *Turks* poſſeſſed in *Europe*, and is ſo convenient a Paſſage from *Aſia* to the antient *Thrace*, (now *Romania*) that other *Mahometan* Princes who had any Deſigns upon this Province, did commonly firſt attempt *Gallipoli*.

Seſtos. THE antient *Seſtos* is the next remarkable Place, it is about twenty-five Miles South-Weſt of *Gallipoli* on the *European* Side, and upon the Shore of the *Helleſpont*; this and the old Caſtle of *Anatolia* on the Eaſtern Shore are the Caſtles call'd the *Dardanelles*, this is the Place of the Amours of *Hero* and *Leander*, which doubtleſs in itſelf was Fact, but now ſo confounded inſtead of being improv'd with the Poetical Flights of our old Authors, that no body knows how much of it to believe; but as thoſe Fictions have crept into the Schools (nay even into our Chriſtian Schools too) he would almoſt be deem'd a Scholaſtick Heretick that would not believe all theſe Poetical Fictions to be Fact, nor dare a great many of the newly initiated Pupils believe the contrary.

THIS is the Place where *Xerxes* laid his Bridge of Boats over the *Helleſpont*, which is here about two Miles wide, and the Caſtles call'd the *Dardanelles* bound for *Conſtantinople*, but the Paſſage is too broad, and the Fortification too weak to hinder the Approach and Paſſage of a powerful Fleet to *Conſtantinople*, and for that the *Turks* were in the utmoſt Surprize when the *Venetians* obtain'd a Victory (if it was worth the Name of a Victory) at the *Dardanelles*, becauſe they apprehended that their next Attempt would be to ſail up to *Conſtantinople*, Bridge of Boats.

Note, *The Reader is to obſerve, that in ſailing from the* Archipelago, *to the* Black Sea, *the Strait paſſing the* Dardanelles *is call'd the* Helleſpont, *the broad Sea between that and* Conſtantinople, *is the* Propontis *or Sea of* Marmora, *and the Strait between* Conſtantinople *and the* Black Sea *is the* Boſphorus, *anciently call'd* Boſphorus of *Thrace.*

Heraclea or *Araclea* is ſituate upon the *European* Shore of the *Propontis*, between *Conſtantinople* and *Gallipoli*; it has been famous for the Amphitheatre erected by the Emperor *Severus*, who to ſuppreſs the Power of *Byzantium*, the antient City near whoſe Ruins *Conſtantinople* now ſtands as before obſerv'd, transferred their Privileges to *Heraclea*; it has a Harbour, but it neither has Water enough for large Veſſels, nor is it ſafe for any, by Reaſon of ſome Rocks that lie almoſt even with the Water at the Entrance of it. *Heraclea*, *Rodoſto.*

Rodoſta is but a ſmall Diſtance from *Heraclea*, on the ſame Coaſt, it is a large and populous Town, and has a good Trade; it is inhabited by *Turks*, *Greeks*, and *Jews*, who have their reſpective Churches and Synagogues, and the free Exerciſe of their Religion.

CHAP. V.

Of the State of the Chriſtian Religion in Turkey, *and more particularly of the* Greek *Church, with the Juriſdiction of their ſeveral Patriarchs; their Feſtivals, Sacraments, Oaths, &c.*

IT will be needleſs here to repeat any Account of the *Mahometan* Religion, *Mahomet* and his Religion being fully deſcribed in Chap. XV. and XVI. of the Hiſtory of *Perſia*, and therefore in order to introduce the ſucceeding Account of the State of the Chriſtian Religion in *Turkey*, I ſhall only obſerve that the *Mahometans* or *Turks* tolerate all Religions, but never encourage or reward the Profeſſors of any but their own; and the Chriſtians in thoſe Countries are perſecuted and oppreſs'd even to this Day; they allow them ſome Churches indeed, but the greateſt part of the Chriſtian Churches are either deſtroy'd or converted into Moſques for the *Mahometan* Worſhip, and they will neither allow the repairing of thoſe Chriſtian Churches now in Ruins, nor the Building of any upon a new Foundation, without extorting an exhortant Fine from the poor Chriſtians for that Privilege. There were ſeveral Churches deſtroy'd by Fire in *Conſtantinople* and *Galata* in the Year 1660. which the Chriſtians, not apprehenſive of any Affront it would be to the Government, rebuilt at their own Charge; but an Edict was immediately iſſued out and executed too, for the demoliſhing of them, but it has ſince been found that a little Money given to the proper Magiſtrates will purchaſe a Diſpenſation and Churches built upon that Foundation ſtand undiſturb'd.

THERE are ſome Severities that the Chriſtians in *Turkey* labour under, as if he ſpeaks irreverently of the *Mahometan* Religion, he muſt either die or turn *Mahometan*; there is no Mitigation of his Sentence, and the ſame if he is detected of too much Familiary with a *Turkiſh* Woman, for then no leſs than loſing his Life or renouncing Chriſtianity can atone for the Crime in this Part of *Turkey*; and if Severities.

a Man, drunk or ſober, raſhly profeſſes himſelf to be a *Mahometan*, he is obliged in earneſt to ſtand by the Religion he profeſt in Jeſt, or to loſe his Life for his ſo inadvertently profeſſing to be a *Mahometan*.

No Chriſtian is allow'd to wear any Part of the Garb by which a *Mahometan* is diſtinguiſh'd, as a white Turbant, a yellow Slipper, or the like, of which if they are detected they undergo ſevere Penalties, and ſometimes the profligate *Mahometans* do not ſtick to charge the Chriſtians with thoſe Crimes, tho' without any Foundation, only to extort Money from them, and yet there is no Place for the Chriſtian to appeal to for his own Juſtification.

Four Patriarchs. THE *Greek* Church is very extenſive, but our Buſineſs now is to treat of thoſe Chriſtian Churches in the *Turkiſh* Dominions, and they are divided into, or diſtinguiſh'd by the four Patriarchſhips of *Conſtantinople, Alexandria, Antioch, and Jeruſalem.*

Patriarch of *Conſtantinople.* 1. AS *Conſtantinople* is now the Metropolis of the Empire, ſo its Patriarch is the firſt in Point of Dignity, and his Juriſdiction the largeſt, extending over all leſſer *Aſia*, except the two Eaſtermoſt Provinces, which border upon *Syria*, and in *Europe* he hath *Romania*, *Macedonia*, and the reſt of *Greece*; alſo *Dalmatia*, *Albania*, *Valachia*, and *Moldavia*, and the Iſlands of the *Archipelago*, he ſtiles himſelf Archbiſhop of *New Rome*, [*Conſtantinople*,] and *OEcumenical Patriarch.*

Patriarch of *Alexandria.* 2. THE Patriarch of *Alexandria*, his Juriſdiction extends over *Egypt*, *Lybia*, and Part of *Arabia*; he ſtiles himſelf, *By the Mercy of God, Pope and Patriarch of the Great City of* Alexandria, *and OEcumenical Judge* or *Patriarch of all Egypt*, *Pentapolis*, *Lybia*, and *Ethiopia*. It is ſaid that this Patriarchſhip was founded by *St. Mark*, and hence *Alexandria* is ſometimes call'd the Seat of that Apoſtle. The Metropolitan of the *Abyſſines* was till of late conſecrated and confirm'd by him. This Patriarch uſually reſides at *Grand Cairo*, for the Conveniency of the Chriſtians of his Communion, they being very numerous in this City, and by that means he can have more ready Acceſs to the Viceroy, in caſe of any Diſturbance or grievous Oppreſſion that requires to be remedied.

Patriarch of *Antioch.* 3. THE Patriarch of *Antioch* has under his Juriſdiction the Churches of *Syria* and *Meſopotamia*, and the Provinces of *Iſauria* and *Celicia* in the leſſer *Aſia*; he ſtiles himſelf, *By the Mercy of God, Patriarch of the Great City of* Antioch, *call'd* Theopolis, *and of all the Eaſt*; he uſually reſides at *Damaſcus* or *Scham.*

Patriarch of *Jeruſalem* 4. THE Patriarch of *Jeruſalem* has *Paleſtine*, and Part of *Arabia*, and ſtiles himſelf, *By the Mercy of God, Patriarch of the Holy City of* Jeruſalem, *and of all* Paleſtine, *the Holy Mount Sion, Syria, Arabia, beyond Jordan, Cana of Gallilee*, &c.

THESE four Patriarchs are pray'd for in their publick Liturgies, and when a Union was propos'd between the *Latin* and *Greek* Churches in the time of Pope *Alexander* the Fourth, his Name was join'd in the Prayer to the four Patriarchs; but at the Return of the *Greek* Commiſſioners to *Conſtantinople*, it was obliterated, and his Holineſs was excluded out of their Prayers; but there is commonly a titulary Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* of the Popes appointing, and alſo a Biſhop who is inveſted with the Power of a Legate. The other Sects of Chriſtians, as *Armenians*, *Maronites*, *Jacobites*, &c. have their reſpective Patriarchs as well as thoſe before mentioned.

THE Chriſtians in *Turkey* are ſo inur'd to Slavery, by the Treatment they meet with from the *Turks*, that it is even become Natural to them, and as they have no Hopes of ever being deliver'd from their Bondage, they never attempt it, only ſometimes flatter themſelves by the Succeſſes of the *Muſcovites* that by their Means their Church will once more become Triumphant, and to corroborate this Belief, the *Turks* have a Prophecy, intimating, that *the Ruin of their Empire will be compleated by the Muſcovites*, which is not improbable if we conſider their Situation and the Enterpriſing Genius of ſome of their Princes; and to this we may add, that the *Muſcovites* are of the *Greeks Church*, and would doubtleſs ſoon be join'd by the *Greek* Chriſtians in *Turkey*, in caſe they ſhould penetrate into the Bowels of that ſpacious Empire.

IF we conſider the Artifices uſed by the *Turks*, to promote the *Mahometan* Religion, and the cruel Oppreſſions and Diſcouragements the Chriſtians labour under in *Turkey*, how deſtitute they are of all Helps of Learning, being depriv'd of the Benefit of Schools or publick preaching, few of them being able to read, and no Sermons preach'd among them except at the Patriarchal Church of *Conſtantinople*, and that only in *Lent* or *Chriſtmas*; if we conſider this, and what little Helps or Encouragements they have to ſupport them under their Chriſtian Reſolutions, and what Temptations they lie under to abandon it for their own Temporal Eaſe and Advantage, it ſeems to be owing to an extraordinary Support from Divine Providence that any of them ſhould continue to hold faſt their Profeſſion of Chriſtianity, but next to that ſome of our Chriſtian Travellers impute their ſteady Perſeverance to their ſtrict Obſervation of the Feaſts and Faſts of the Chriſtian Church; for the moſt ignorant of them can remember, or by Enquiry find out the Approach of thoſe Holy Solemnities, at which times they flock to the Solemnization of thoſe Days in Crowds, and thereby retain and refreſh their Memory of our Saviour's Birth, Crucifixion, Reſurrection, and Aſcenſion, with the Suffering and Martyrdom of the Apoſtles and other Saints; theſe glorious Examples animate them to endure patiently the Tryals that their Religion expoſes them to.

Fixed Feaſts. *Their fix'd Feaſts beſides thoſe obſerv'd in the Church of* England, *are*,

1. THE Nativity of the Bleſſed Virgin, *Sept.* 8.
2. THE Exaltation of the Holy Croſs, *Sept.* 14.
3. THE Death or Tranſlation of *St. John the Evangeliſt*, Sept. 26. for they retain a Belief that he never died, from theſe Words of our Saviour, John 21. 22. *If I will that he tarry till I come, what is that to thee?* but that is not a Proof that he ſhould never die; but *Polycrates*, Biſhop of *Epheſus*, aſſures us that he died, and was buried there, as he relates in a Letter to *Victor*, Biſhop of *Rome*, which is preſerv'd by *Euſebius* in his Church Hiſtory, *Lib.* 3. *Chap.* 31. and is alſo found in other Authors.
4. THE Martyrdom of *Demetrius* the Proconſul, who was piere'd thro' with Launces at *Theſſalonica*, by the Command of *Maximian*, Octob. 26.
5. *St. John Chryſoſtom*, Nov. 13.
6. *St. Nicholas*, Biſhop of *Myra* in *Lycia*, Confeſſor under *Dioclefian* and *Maximian*, Dec. 6.
7. *St. Spiridian*, Biſhop and Confeſſor under *Maximian*, having had his Right Eye ſtruck out and Ham-ſtring'd on his left Leg, was condemned to work in the Mines, but afterwards was preſent at the Council of *Nice*; they keep his Feaſt *December* 12.
8. *St. Ignatius*, the third Biſhop of *Antioch* from *St. Peter*; he was thrown to the Wild Beaſts in the Amphitheatre at *Rome* under *Trajan*, Decemb. 20.
9. *St. Anthony*, one of the firſt Founders of the *Monaſtick* Order in *Egypt* under *Decius*, Jan. 17.
10. *St. Athanaſius* and *St. Cyril*, Biſhops of *Alexandria*, *Jan.* 18.

11. *St.*

11. *St. Gregory* of *Nazianzen*, ſtiled the Divine, is on the ſame Day with *St. Paul*, Jan. 25.

12. *St. Baſil*, *St. Gregory*, and *St. Chryſoſtom*, three famous Biſhops they celebrate together, *Jan.* 30.

13. *St. Blaſius*, Biſhop of St. *Sebaſte* in *Armenia*, put to Death by the Emperor *Diocleſian*, Feb. 11.

14. The Forty Soldiers, call'd in the Calender the Forty Martyrs, who being expoſed in a Lake near *Sebaſte*, were frozen to Death under *Licinius*, *March* 9.

15. *St. George* of *Cappadocia*, martyr'd under *Diocleſian*, April 23, the ſame (for which I know no Reaſon) that is now call'd the Patron of *England*.

16. *Conſtantine the Great*, and his Mother *Helena*, whom they call equal to the Apoſtles, *May* 21.

17. *St. Marina*, Virgin and Martyr of *Antioch*; ſhe was the Daughter of *Ædiſius*, a *Pagan* Prieſt, who was very intimate with *Julian* the Apoſtate: The *Roman Catholicks* call this *St. Margaret*, and thoſe Eaſtern Chriſtians celebrate a Day to her Memory, *July* 17.

18. *Elias* the Prophet, *July* 15.

19. *Paraſceve*, Virgin and Martyr, who had her Head ſtruck off, *July* 26.

20. *St. Panteleemenon*, Phyſician and Martyr, who ſuffer'd at *Nicomedia* in *Bythinia* under *Maximian*, *July* 27. the *Roman Catholicks* call him *Pantaleon*.

21. The Transfiguration of our Saviour, *Auguſt* 6.

22. The Death of the Bleſſed Virgin, *Aug.* 15. commonly call'd the Aſſumption, and a great deal of Ceremony is uſed upon this Occaſion, that Day relating to her Triumphant Aſcenſion into Heaven by the Aſſiſtance of Angels. The Inſtitution of this Solemnity is by *Nicephorus* attributed to *Mauritius* the Emperor about the Year of our Lord Six Hundred.

And beſides theſe ſolemn Feſtivals, they commemorate ſome Saint or Martyr in their Monaſteries almoſt every Day, tho' not with the Solemnity of thoſe above-mentioned, ſo that we need not think it a Wonder that there is ſome Black Letter'd Saint or other in the Calender for almoſt every Day in the Year.

Vigils. Their Prieſts and Deacons, and other Perſons more particularly devoted to Religion, ſtrictly obſerve the Vigils or Eves before theſe ſolemn Feſtivals, ſpending the whole Night in Praying and Reading the Goſpels, or the Life of that Saint, whoſe Feſtival they are commemorating, officiating by Turns, and as one grows weary, another ſupplies the Place; and when the Feſtival Day comes on, they begin their Exerciſe about four or five in the Morning, and continue till about Noon; the Ordinary Prayers begin when the Congregation is pretty full, and then the Life of the Saint is read to the People in Vulgar *Greek*, containing the moſt remarkable Paſſages of the Saint's Life, with his Sufferings and Martyrdom, and concluded with moral Reflections and Applications very affecting, and to which the People are very attentive. The Sacrament is celebrated with great Solemnity, and every one brings his Gift or Preſent, as Bread, Wine, Oil, Wax Candles, Frankincenſe, as their Abilities will permit, and the Service of the Church requires; and upon theſe Occaſions their Charity is commonly very extenſive.

Moveable Feſtivals. The other Feſtivals that are moveable, are govern'd by *Eaſter*, which is the grand Feſtival as in *England*, their Account being the ſame with ours, and *Eaſter* Day is called the Holy Day, or the Great Lord's Day by way of Emphaſis, and by ſome of them it is call'd the Paſſover of the Reſurrection. Upon this Day, and the two following, which we call *Eaſter Holidays*, they, when they meet one another in the Street, inſtead of ſaying, *Good Morrow*, or ſome ſuch common Salute that we uſe, he that ſpeaks firſt, ſays, *He is Riſen*, and the other anſwers, *He is Riſen indeed.* The ſtrict Obſervation of thoſe Feaſts and Faſts, and keeping up thoſe formal Salutes at *Eaſter*, and other proper Times ſuitable to the Occaſion, is ſaid to be the chief Support of the Chriſtian Religion in thoſe Heatheniſh Countries where they have not the Advantage of publick preaching, nor the Scripture in their own Mother Tongue ſo common as we have it in *England*.

Annual Faſts. They have four annual Faſts, the firſt is about our *Lent*, before *Eaſter*, and ſeems to be intended as a time of Mortification, preparatory to the ſolemnizing of *Eaſter*; it continues eight and forty Days, during which time they eat no Fleſh, nor any Fiſh, except Shell Fiſh, which they eat becauſe they think they have no Blood; they never eat any thing made of Milk during that time, but on the *Saturdays* they allow the uſe of Oil and Wine, and on *Lady-Day* and *Sundays* they eat ſome ſorts of Fiſh, which they are not allow'd to uſe at other times in *Lent*.

Paſſion Week. The Week before *Eaſter* is call'd the Great and Holy Week, or the Paſſion Week; they call our *Sunday* the Lord's Day, and our Seventh Day or *Saturday*, they call the Sabbath; the other five they diſtinguiſh by their Order, as Second Day, Third Day, &c. On the *Thurſday* before *Eaſter*, the Ceremony is perform'd by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* to waſh the Feet of twelve Monks in the Patriarchal Church; theſe twelve Monks repreſent the twelve Apoſtles, and this Ceremony is perform'd in Imitation of our Saviour's waſhing the Feet of his Diſciples; every one of the twelve Monks bears the Name of the Apoſtle he repreſents, but none of them care to repreſent *Judas* without a Promiſe of Preferment.

Their ſecond Faſt begins the fifteenth of *November*, and continues forty Days, *viz.* till *Chriſtmas*, but in this Faſt they are not under ſuch ſevere Reſtrictions as to Eating and Drinking, as in the former, but allow themſelves Oil and Wine, and all manner of Fiſh.

The third Faſt is kept in Honour of the Bleſſed Virgin; it begins the firſt and ends the fourteenth of *Auguſt*; the Day following being the fifteenth, is the Day of her Aſſumption, as before obſerv'd. The fourth Faſt is moveable, and not always of a like Duration, for it begins the *Sunday* after *Whitſunday*, and ends at the Feaſt of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*, *June* the 29th; there are ſeveral other Faſts, but leſs material, and not ſo ſtrictly obſerv'd.

Greek Churches. The *Greeks* have yet about ſix and twenty Churches in *Conſtantinople*, and ſix in *Galata*; there are alſo ſeveral Chriſtian Churches in the Towns and Villages near *Conſtantinople* on both Sides of the *Boſphorus*; the Patriarchal Church at *Conſtantiple* is but an ordinary Building, without any great Ornament; here they have ſeveral Relicks lock'd up in Cheſts, which they keep to ſhew to Travellers that will gratify them; but what they put the greateſt Value upon, is a Piece of Black Marble, which they ſay is a piece of the Pillar to which Chriſt was tied when he was ſcourg'd; it is incloſed in a Brazen Grate, leſt it ſhould by degrees be pilfer'd away by Superſtitious or Sacrilegious People; for it is currently believ'd, that the Powder made of this Stone will infallibly cure Fevers and Agues.

The Women never mix promiſcouſly with the Men in the Churches, but are in an Apartment by themſelves, it is ſeparated from the Church by a Lattice, where they can look thro' and ſee the

the Men, but cannot be diſtinctly ſeen themſelves; there are three Tables in the Chancels of their great Churches, on the middlemoſt of which only it is Lawful to conſecrate the Elements. This Table is of Stone fix'd to the Wall, and is call'd the Holy, the Divine, and Myſtical Table, over which there is a little Croſs; and on the Left Hand towards the North, is a little Table, where they place Holy Gifts or Preſents. They generally burn Lamps before the Altar, and ſometimes in the Body of the Church; the *Turks* denying them the Uſe of Bells, they ſupply that Defect by beating with a Hammer upon a Board or Iron-plate, to give People Notice to go to Church, or at certain Hours of the Day.

THE ſevere Courſe of Life which the Monks confine themſelves to, is much admir'd there by a great many of the Order of St. *Baſil* in *Greece*, eſpecially on Mount *Athos*; alſo in *Aſia* there are thoſe of the Order of St. *Anthony*, they live chiefly about Mount *Libanus*, and Mount *Sinai*; they live retir'd, and have their Convents in the moſt obſcure Places; their Innocency and Strictneſs of Life has gain'd them great Eſteem, even of the *Turks* themſelves, inſomuch that they ſeldom give them any Diſturbance.

Three Degrees of Monks

THESE Monks are rank'd in three Degrees or Orders, according to their Age, Sanctity, and Experience; the Novices or young Sort, on their Admiſſion vow Chaſtity and Obedience, and to undergo chearfully all the Auſterities of a Monaſtick Life; and when their Novitiate is compleated, they advance a Degree higher, and commence compleat Monks, changing their coarſe Hair Cloath, for a Coat which they call a leſſer Habit; but the Angelical or Divine Habit, as they call it, is reſerved for thoſe who are particularly remarkable for their Sanctity and Auſterity of Life; ſuch are allow'd to wear what they call the great Habit, which is only a Hood thrown over their Heads and Shoulders.

THE chief Reſidence of thoſe Monks is upon Mount *Athos*, a Promontary jutting into the Sea, in the North Weſt Part of the *Archipelago*, about ſeventy Miles to the Eaſtward of *Salonachi*, or *Theſſalonicha*; it is now call'd *Monte Sancto*, from the great Concourſe of theſe Monks there; there are two and twenty Monaſteries upon it, ſeveral of which belong to the *Bulgarians*, and one to the *Ruſſians*; and it is generally thought that the Monks reſiding in them all, amount not to leſs than four Thouſand Perſons; no Woman is ever ſuffer'd to come within Sight of theſe Convents, and thoſe which are near the Sea, are fortify'd, to ſecure them from Rovers who ſometimes land here.

IT is ſaid theſe Monks keep ſtrictly up to their Primitive Inſtitution, which was ſo much admir'd in the Primitive Ages of Chriſtianity; they are punctual in their publick Devotions at the appointed Hours, and their ſpare time is employ'd in the Buſineſs of the Convent, every one knowing his own Employment; for ſome are Mechanicks, others attend the Vineyards or Husbandry, ſome make Cloaths for the reſt, others go a Fiſhing; every Man follows his reſpective Calling or Buſineſs, only the Clergy are exempted from ſecular Employment, their Leiſure time being ſpent in Tranſcribing Greek Books, and viſiting the Sick; but as they are ſo numerous, it ſometimes happens, in an unkind Seaſon, they are forc'd to ſend out ſome of their Party to beg Relief for the reſt, and they ſeldom return empty-handed; for it is known they never uſe thoſe Means but in extream Neceſſity.

Food.

THEY eat no kind of Fleſh or Fiſh that has Blood in it; their chief Food is Shell Fiſh, Olives, Beans, and other Pulſe; alſo Onions, Melons, Raiſins, and what their Gardens afford; their Bread is a coarſe ſort of Bisket twice bak'd, and with this ſort of Diet, they generally enjoy a good State of Health, and live to a good old Age; they faſt every *Monday*, *Wedneſday*, and *Friday*, only allowing themſelves a Piece of Bisket and a Draught of Water after Evening Prayers; but on the other Days they eat what Meat they think lawful, and drink Wine too, but it is ſaid that in their great *Lent* ſome of them will faſt for forty eight Hours together.

BUT there are ſome Hermits amongſt the *Greeks*, who live more abſtemious Lives than the Monks of Mount *Athos* or Mount *Sinai*, eating nothing but Herbs, nor drinking any thing but Water, and ſuch a Streſs do the Religious *Greeks* lay upon Faſting, that ſome of them account it a leſs Sin to be guilty of Fornication, Drunkenneſs, Curſing, Revenge, and the like, than to violate or neglect an appointed Faſt, and that a zealous Monk will rather die than in any Diſtemper to taſte the leaſt Morſel of Fleſh.

THE modern *Greeks* allow of ſeven Myſteries or Sacraments, *viz.* 1. Baptiſm, 2. Unguent of Chriſm. 3. The Euchariſt or the Lord's Supper deliver'd in the Elements of Bread and Wine. 4. Penance. 5. Holy Orders. 6. Matrimony. 7. Oil with Prayer; but of all theſe they hold only Baptiſm and the Lord's Supper to be generally neceſſary to Salvation, as inſtituted by our Saviour himſelf.

THE firſt Sacrament is Baptiſm, upon which they lay ſo great a Streſs, that they entertain very hard Thoughts of the future State of thoſe that die without it; and where they find a Child's Life in Danger, they allow any Lay Perſon, Male or Female, to adminiſter it if a lawful Miniſter cannot be had at that Inſtant; but if the Child is in a likely way to live, they bring it to Church, Baptiſm. where there is a Font about a Foot and a half deep with Water in it, which in the Winter-time they warm and perfume with Sweet Herbs; upon this this the breathes, and makes a Croſs, and pour Oil upon it three times in form of a Croſs with this Compoſition he annoints the Child, ſaying, *The Servant of God*, A. B. *is baptized in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghoſt*, Amen, dipping the Child under the Water at the Naming of each Perſon of the Trinity, ſpeaking the Words with a Deliberation ſufficient to give himſelf the Opportunity of repeating the dipping three times diſtinctly, the Godfather anſwering at every Emerſion, *Amen*; but ſometimes they think it ſufficient to pour the Water three times on the Child's Face, inſtead of dipping, with the ſame Ceremony as before. We may obſerve there is a circumſtantial Difference between the Baptiſm of the *Greeks* and that of the *Latins*, the *Greeks* ſaying, *the Servant of the Lord*, A. B. *is baptized*, &c. *And the Latins*, A. B. *I baptize thee*, &c. and theſe Circumſtances, however trivial in themſelves, have occaſioned great Differences between the *Latins*, and *Greeks*, though both Chriſtian Churches.

Unguent of Chriſm.

UNGUENT of Chriſm is a ſort of Confirmation, and is never adminiſtred to thoſe who have not been baptiz'd, tho' reckon'd a diſtinct Myſtery or Sacrament from Baptiſm, and adminiſtred to Children that have been baptized, tho' yet in their Infancy; it is call'd by ſome the Obſignation or Seal of Confirmation, and they that have receiv'd it when young, have it not repeated when grown up. This Ceremony is perform'd by anointing the Forehead, Eyes, Noſtril, Mouth, Ears, Breaſt, Hands and Feet, the Prieſt ſaying in the mean time, *The Seal of the Gift of the Holy Spirit*, *Amen*. The Oil uſed in this Ceremony is compos'd of Styrax, Balſam, Myrrh, Caſſia, and the Decoction of

of ſeveral curious Drugs and Plants, mix'd with Wine and Oil, and this Compoſition is put in round Vials, or ſometimes into Alabaſter Boxes in Alluſion to the Alabaſter Box of Ointment, which was broke and pour'd upon our Saviour's Head, *Mark*, xv. 3.

Euchariſt. THE Elements made uſe of in the Euchariſt are Bread and Wine, which are preſented for that Purpoſe by the People, and are carried by the Prieſts and Deacons to the Altar; the top of the Loaf is mark'd with a large Square, with ſix Letters in it in four Squares, as follows:

$\overline{\text{I C}}$	$\overline{\text{X C}}$
N	K

THESE Letters ſtand for *Jeſus Chriſt overcometh*, but the Ceremonies they uſe in the Conſecratin of the Elements are ſo numerous, that to give account of them all, would be only fit for a Treatiſe of the Ceremonies of the *Greek* Church, and the other Sacraments, beſides Baptiſm and the Lord's Supper, being not reckon'd by themſelves *generally neceſſary to Salvation*, we ſhall not regard them as ſuch, but paſs on from *Romania*, or the antient *Thrace*, to the other *Turkiſh* Provinces in their proper Order.

CHAP. VI.

Treats of the Provinces of Macedonia, Albania, Epirus, *and* Theſſaly.

MACEDONIA is bounded on the North by *Romania* and *Servia*, and on the Eaſt by ſome Bays of the *Archipelago*, by *Theſſaly* on the South, and by *Albania* on the Weſt. The chief Towns are, 1. *Salonichi*, or the ancient *Theſſalonica*, ſituate at the Bottom of a Gulph of the ſame Name, in the *Ægean* Sea in the North Weſt Part of the *Archipelago*, in about 41 Degrees of Latitude; this Town is ſaid to have been built by *Caſſander* and *Theſſalonica*, Siſter to *Alexander the Great*; St. *Paul* preach'd here, and writ his two Epiſtles to the Inhabitants of this Place, then call'd *Theſſalonians*: It is at preſent a Biſhop's Sea, and the Seat of a *Turkiſh* Baſſa; it is a Town of good Trade, and of great Reſort by the Weſtern Nations of *Europe*, the *Engliſh* having a Conſul there. We import from this Place good Silk, *Turky* Leather, Cotton, Bees-wax, and other Commodities. Tho' this Place is in a Province of *Turkey*, yet there are a great Number of both *Jewiſh* and Chriſtian Inhabitants in it, there being thirty Chriſtian Churches, and as many *Jewiſh* Synagogues: It was taken by the King of *Sicily* from the *Grecian* Emperor in the Year 1180, and ſoon after recover'd by *Andronicus Paleologus*, and ſold to the *Venetians* in the Year 1313, and was taken from them again in the Year 1321 by *Amurath* the ſecond, and remained in the Hands of the *Turks* ever ſince that Time.

Jannina. 2. *Iannina* or *Pella*, South Weſt from *Theſſalonica*; the *Macedonian* Kings formerly reſided here, as was the Caſe with *Philip* King of *Macedon*, by which means it became the Birth-place of his Son *Alexander the Great*; but it is now declined into an inconſiderable Town, no Marks of its antient Grandeur remaining, except ſome Marble Pillars and other noble Ruins.

Contella. 3. *Conteſſa*, a ſmall Town, and of but little Trade, about eighty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Theſſalonica*; it ſtands in a Bay of the ſame Name in the *Archipelago*; between this and *Theſſalonica* is Mount *Athos*, or *Monte Santo*, of which in the laſt Chapter; only I ſhall obſerve, that *Pliny* reports Mount *Athos* to be ſo high, that its Shadow reach'd to the Iſland of *Lemnos*, which is about ſixty Miles; and the Truth of this may well be accounted for, if we conſider that Mount *Athos* is to the Weſtward of *Lemnos*, and at the ſetting Sun, the Shadow of any Object may be ſaid to be of an infinite Length, let the Object be of what Length it would; and I humbly conceive that too little Geography, and too much Credulity have made many things in former Times, and diſtant Places, ſeem to be Wonders, and Subjects of abundance of poetical Airs, which at this Time and Place would be no Wonder at all; and yet on the other hand the vaſt Height of thoſe Hills, is not altogether a Fable, becauſe notwithſtanding the low Latitude they were in, *viz.* about 40 Degrees North, yet the tops of them are always cover'd with Snow.

4. *Cavalla*, a little Town over-againſt *Conteſſa*, from whence the Bay is ſometimes call'd *Cavalla* Bay. Cavalla.

5. *Philippi*, ſo call'd from its being enlarged and beautify'd by *Philip*, Father of *Alexander the Great*, King of *Macedon*; it was antiently call'd *Dathus Thuaſſus*, and lies on the Confines of *Thrace*, at the Foot of Mount *Pangeus*, near which Place was fought that famous Battle between *Brutus* and *Caſſius* on one Party, and *Auguſtus* and *Mark Anthony* on the other, in which the latter gain'd the Victory; here are ſtill to be ſeen the Ruins of a noble Amphitheatre and other magnificent Buildings. Philippi.

6. *Amphipolis*, or *Empoli*, ſituate on the River *Strimon*, about ten Miles above, where it falls into the Bay of *Conteſſa*; it is now but an inconſiderable Town, tho' formerly the Capital of *Macedonia*. This Country was famous for their King *Philip*, and eſpecially his Son and Succeſſor, *Alexander the Great*, who conquer'd *Greece*, and all the then known World, (if the Poetical Hiſtorians of the Times do not ſtretch a little) who add, that all this was ſo ſmall a Morſel for his inſatiable conquering Sword, that he ſat down and wept becauſe there was no more to conquer. Amphipolis.

THE Province of *Albania* lies on the Weſt ſide of *Macedonia*, between it and the Gulph of *Venice*, which two are therefore the Eaſt and Weſt Bounds thereof. *Servia* bounds it on the North, and *Epirus* on the South. The chief Towns are *Scodra*, call'd by the *Turks*, to whom it is ſubject, *Iſcodar*, ſituate on a Hill near the River *Boiana*, about five and twenty Miles from the Gulph of *Venice*; it is thought to have been the Seat of the antient Kings of *Illyricum*; it is ſtill a large City, and a Biſhop's See. The Province of Albania.

Alessio. 2. *Alessio*, or *Lyssus*, on the River *Drino*, near its Influx into the Gulph of *Venice*, where it grows so wide, that it is call'd by some the Gulph of *Drino*: This Town is famous for the Sepulchre of *Scanderbeg*, who died here 1467; he resisted the whole *Turkish* Power for a considerable time with a small Number of Men, and defeated them in two and twenty several Engagements.

3. *Dulcigno*, a Sea Port in the Gulph of *Venice*, about forty Miles to the Westward of *Alessio*, of which there is nothing remarkable. 4. *Croya*, situate on the River *Lizane*, thirty Miles from the Gulph of *Venice*, and about as many to the Southward of *Alessio*; this was the Residence of *Scanderbeg*, after whose Death the *Turks* soon got it in Durazzo their Possession. 5. *Durazzo*, or *Dyrachium*, of the *Romans*, a noted Sea Port in the Gulph of *Venice*, a common Landing-Place for those who came from the South Part of *Italy* to *Greece*: it was formerly a considerable City, memorable for being the Place of *Cicero*'s Exile, and for the Retreat of *Pompey*, when he fled from *Cæsar*, and transported himself hither from *Brundusi* in *Italy*; but it is now a Village, not otherwise of any great Note. 6. *La Valona*, is at the Entrance of the Gulph of *Venice*, about forty Miles to the Southward of *Durazzo*, and antiently a strong Place, but now declining.— We shall now pass to the Southward to *Epirus* and *Thessaly*, and defer the Description of *Dalmatia* and *Bosnia* till we come to treat of the Imperial and *Venetian* Territories.

The Province of Epirus. *Epirus*, call'd by some *Canina*, is bounded on the North by *Albania*, and on the East by *Thessaly*, by *Achaia* on the South, and by the *Ionian* Sea, and the Gulph of *Venice* on the West; its longest Dimensions from North West to South East is about a hundred Miles, and the shortest or Breadth is about sixty; it is separated from *Albania* by the *Ceraunian* Mountains, or Mountains of *Chimera*, and from *Thessaly* by the Mountain *Mezua* or *Pindus*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Chimera*, in the North Part of the Province on the Sea Coast, about eighty Miles to the Southward of *Durazzo*, and twenty to the Northward of the Island of *Corfu*; it is a Bishop's See, and a Place of a tolerable good Trade. 2. *Butrinto*, upon the same Coast, about thirty Miles South East of *Chimera*; it is now but an obscure Village, tho' formerly a good Town and a Bishop's See. 3. *Ambracia*, now *Arta* or *Larta*, the Residence of the Kings of *Epirus*; it is situated at the Bottom of a Gulph of the same Name, about sixty Miles from *Lepanto*, and as many from *Butrinto*. 4. *Prevesa*, between *Butrinto* and *Lepanto*; this is said to be the Place where *Nicopolis* once stood, which was built by *Augustus Cæsar*, in memory of the Battle of *Actium*, where he defeated *Mark Anthony*'s Fleet. 5. *Higalo*, at the Mouth of the said Bay, where *Actium* once stood, formerly considerable, but now a poor Place.

The Province of Thessaly. *Thessaly*, is now known to some by the Name of *Janna*; it is bounded on the North by *Macedonia*, on the East by the *Archipelago*, by *Achaia* on the South, and by *Epirus* on the West. The chief Towns are, 1. *Larissa*, or as the *Turks* call it, *Asiababa*, situate near the famous Mount *Olympus*, near the River *Peneus* about eighty Miles South Westward from *Salonichi*, or *Thessalonica*, and about sixty North West of the *Negropont*: *Larissa* is memorable for being the Place of *Achilles*'s Birth; it is now an Archbishop's See, and a Town of good Trade. Dr. *Brown* describes it in these Words:

Larissa. It is situate on the River *Peneus*, the most considerable of the Country; it has the famous Mount *Olympus* on the North, and the Plains of *Thessaly* on the South, and is inhabited by *Christians*, *Turks*, and *Jews*, there being several *Christian* Churches, as well as *Turkish* Mosques, and also some handsome Exchanges for transacting Affairs of Merchandize; it is situate on a pleasant rising Ground, on the upper part of which the Grand Seignior has a Palace, where he kept his Court in the Year 1669, to be as near *Candia* as he could, during the War there, and yet to have the Conveniency of Hunting and Hawking, for which the Country about *Larissa* is very proper. That Summer being very hot, the Sultan retired to Mount *Olympus* for the Benefit of the Air, as he intended it; but the Air was there so piercing cold, that it cost the Lives of many of his Followers, who were obliged to attend the Court; for coming out of the violent Heat of the Climate below, and being further heated with ascending the Mountain, they found at the top such a cold Air, which so suddenly affected their open Pores, that the sudden Change from excessive Heat to the like Degree of Cold, so affected their Stomachs, that some of them, not only Men, but Camels, Horses, &c. died in three or four Days, especially those who drank of a Spring whose Water was of a whitish Colour, and the Sultan himself, notwithstanding the Cordials and other means he had for the Preservation of his Health, was ill several Days, and *in Danger of dying by Cold in a hot Country*.

Olymp. It has been reported by the *Greek* Poetical Historians, that *Olympus* reaches beyond the Clouds, and has thence been reported to be the Residence of *Jupiter*, and the Gods, so much talk'd of, and almost realiz'd to the Pupils in Christian *Latin* Schools, but the Author I am now quoting, believes the *Alps* to be high; but the Reason he assigns for that Opinion, is, that upon the Mount *Olympus* there was no Snow in *September*, whereas on the *Alps* the *Pyrenæan* and *Carpathian* Mountains, there is Snow all the Year; but whether this may be any Proof of the *Alps*, &c. being higher than *Olympus*, is another Question, if we consider their different Situations, Mount *Olympus* being so near the *Ægean* Sea, that may contribute to the more early dissolving the Snow than upon the Inland Mountains; but if they think that because the top of *Olympus* is sometimes hid by the Clouds, it must be the Residence of some of the Heathen Gods, they may as well believe the same of several Mountains, both in *Wales* and divers Parts of *England*; but it is to be hoped Christianity has expelled these Notions out of *England*, except so much of them as the *Latin* Schools retain, and propagate and make them as much Matters of Learning, as if they were Matters of Faith.

Farsa. 2. *Farsa*, or the antient *Pharsalus*, memorable for a Battle between *Pompey* and *Cæsar* fought near this Place; it is about thirty Miles South, Westerly from *Larissa*. 3. *Tricala* on the River *Peneus*, about fifty Miles to the Westward of *Larissa*, where formerly stood a Temple dedicated to *Æsculapius*. 4. *Janna*, Janna. which at present gives Name to the Country or Province of *Thessaly*; it is a handsome Town, situate on a Lake of the same Name, and stands about forty Miles to the Northward of *Lepanto*. 5. *Demitrias* upon a Bay of the same Name; it is fifty Miles to the Eastward of *Larissa*, and is now frequently call'd *Sinus Pelasgicus*. 6. *Volo*, antiently call'd *Pegasa*, on the North Side of the said Bay, forty Miles Eastward of *Larissa*, it has a tolerable good Harbour in the *Ægean* Sea. 7. *Armiro*, or *Erenia*, at the bottom of the said Bay, about twenty Miles to the Southward of *Demitrias*; it is mentioned by several antient Authors, as being the Port from whence the *Argonauts* set sail. 8. *Zeiton*, Zeitou. about thirty Miles from *Armiro*, and as many to the Westward of the *Negropont*, over-against which is a Bay of the same Name of *Zeiton*. In this Province are, (besides Mount *Olympus*) the Mountains of *Pelion* and *Ossa*, both to the Southward of *Olympus*, between which and *Ossa* are the celebrated

Plains

Plains of *Tempe*, which the *Greek* Poets in their Hyperbolical Flights repreſent as a perfect Paradiſe; it produces Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, and Pomegranates, and Grapes as large as Damſons; alſo large rich Figs, and the beſt taſted Melons in all the whole Country; their Fields alſo abound with Almonds, Olive-trees, Ever-greens, Cotton, Sweet-Herbs, &c.

Perſons. As to the Perſons of this Province of *Theſſaly*, Dr. *Brown* tells us they are generally well made, with black Hair and Eyes, and a freſh ſanguine Complexion, and that their Women are generally celebrated Beauties. The *Macedonians*, who inhabit to the Northward of them, are more weather-beaten and rough, and thoſe of the *Morea* to the Southward of them, are of a ſwarthy Complexion, ſo that whether we compare *Theſſaly* with thoſe to the Northward, or thoſe to the Southward of it, it much exceeds both in Fruitfulneſs of the Soil, and Beauty of the Inhabitants; and under this Light, when thus compared with its Neighbours, it is probable the Poets found themſelves induced to give it the Epithet of a celeſtial Paradiſe.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Province of Achaia, *or* Grecia Proper, *now known to ſome by the Name of* Livadia.

ACHAIA is the Province, or the People mentioned by St. *Paul*, 1 *Cor.* xvi. 15. and 1 *Theſſalonians*, the firſt Chaper, verſe 7, and 8. *Corinth* being ſituate at the Bottom of the Gulph of *Lepanto*, which ſeparates *Achaia* from the *Morea* on the South; as for the other Limits of *Achaia*, it is bounded both on the Eaſt and Weſt by the Sea, *viz.* the *Ægean* Sea, or more particularly the Sea of *Negropont* on the Eaſt, and the *Ionian* Sea, or Entrance of the Gulph of *Venice* or *Adriatick* Sea, on the Weſt, and by *Theſſaly* on the North. The Chief Towns are, 1. *Athens*, the once famous Nurſery of Learning amongſt the *Greeks*; and conſidering in what early Ages *Athens* flouriſh'd, it is very probable that in its Time it was the greateſt Academy in the World; it was the Place from whence St. *Paul* writ his two Epiſtles to the *Theſſalonians*, as appears by the Subſcription at the Concluſion of each.

Athens. 1. *Athens* is ſituate in the Gulph or Bay of *Engia*, and is about forty Miles to the Eaſtward of the *Iſthmus*, upon which *Corinth* ſtands, and is in about thirty-eight Degrees of Latitude North. It ſtands near the middle of a large beautiful Plain, in a healthful Situation; the River *Iliſſus* runs on the South Eaſt of the City, and running South and South-Weſt by the Hill, anciently call'd the *Muſeum*, paſſes about a Bow-ſhot from the Caſtle, where it joins another Stream, and in its Way waters a Wood of Olive Trees about ſix Miles in Length, which is ſaid to be the greateſt Wealth and Ornament of that *Athenian* Plain; ſome think this River is the antient *Eridanus*, which is very probable, if we conſider that there was ſuch a River, and that this, according to many concurrent Circumſtances, is moſt likely to be the ſame; and as for its being tranſlated into Heaven, it is no Proof that it was not, but rather that it was a River upon Earth, whoſe delectable Streams excited the *Greek* Poets to aſſign, or at leaſt to allow it a Place amongſt the celeſtial Conſtellations.

Situation. The Town of *Athens* does not at preſent lie round the Caſtle as formerly, but more on the North-Weſt Side of it, extending along the Plain about a Mile and a half, at the continued Breadth of about half a Mile, the Circumference about four Miles; the Streets of the Town are but narrow, which indeed cauſes it to contain more Inhabitants in the ſame Space, being pretty well peopled, but it has now no Walls for Defence, and in ſeveral other Reſpects falls far ſhort of its antient Grandeur; for it formerly took up a conſiderable Part of the Plain, and was join'd by long Walls to the two Sea-Ports *Phalera* and *Pyræus*, one Wall being four, and the other five Miles in Length. When it was in its Grandeur it gave Laws to other Nations, and was deem'd the Seat of the Muſes, where Wit, Eloquence, and Learning, and all Arts and Sciences were brought to a greater Perfection than in any other Part of the known World.

Number of Inhabitants. The Town is now ſuppoſed to contain about ten thouſand Inhabitants, of whom the greater Part are Chriſtians; and the Inhabitants, even under this degenerate State, are allow'd to retain a good Share of Wit and Learning, if compar'd with their Neighbours. The City is divided into eight Wards, or Diſtricts, out of one of each of which the Chriſtians chuſe one of the graveſt to decide Differences between the Chriſtians in an amicable Way.

Dreſs. The uſual Dreſs of the preſent *Athenians* is a long black Veſt, and over it a Coat, or Cloak, lin'd with Fur, which they hang upon their Shoulders; they have only a Scull-cap on their Heads, and on their Legs thin black Boots, which, not being garter'd up, lie in Wrinkles upon their Legs, and they wear no Slippers as the *Turks* do. The Women wear a long looſe Coat about them of colour'd Cloth, as red or green, &c. and over it a ſhort Silk Veſt, or at leaſt of fine Woollen Cloth lin'd with rich Fur, furniſh'd with Plate Buttons as big as Walnuts; their Hair is plaited, and hangs down their Backs, with Bunches of Silver Buttons faſtened to the Ends of the Treſſes; but going to Church they wear a thin Linnen Veil.

Cathedral. The Cathedral in *Athens* is but an ordinary Building, not much, if at all, excelling our common Pariſh Churches, but of common Churches and Oratories there are near two Hundred, of which there are but two and fifty that have their particular Prieſts, and wherein divine Service is ſtatedly perform'd; the reſt are ſeldom uſed, except upon certain Days only to commemorate the Founders and Benefactors of them. There are ſeveral Convents of Monks and Nuns in the Place. The *Turks* have five Moſques here; one of which is in the Caſtle, and was antiently the Temple of *Minerva*, which is own'd by moſt Authors to be as fine a Building in its Kind, if not the fineſt, of any in the World; it ſtands in the middle of the Caſtle, and all built of exceeding fine white Marble; it is two hundred and ſeventeen Foot nine Inches long, and ninety eight Foot ſix Inches broad; and has an Aſcent every Way of five Steps, which ſerve as a Baſis to the Portico; which is ſupported by forty ſix channell'd Pillars, of the *Doric* Order, which

Temple of *Minerva*.

go

go all round the Temple, *viz.* fifteen on each Side, and eight at each End, beſides the Corner Pillars; theſe Pillars are forty two Foot high, and ſeventeen Foot and a half in Circumference, and the Diſtance between every two is ſeven Foot four Inches; the Portico bears up a Front and Frize round about the Temple, charg'd with Hiſtorical Figures of exquiſite Work and Beauty; the Figures, in the Front call'd the *Eagle*, appear of their natural Bigneſs, notwithſtanding their Height, being Relievo, wonderfully well carv'd; but their Repreſentations are differently interpreted by different Authors; the Cella of the Temple without is a hundred and fifty eight Foot in Length, and ſixty ſeven in Breadth.

Temple of *Eriethens.*

On the North Side of *Minerva*'s Temple is, or rather was, the Temple of *Eriethens*, a double Building. The leſſer, by which they enter the greater, is twenty nine Foot long, and one and twenty broad; the other is ſixty three Foot and a half long, and thirty ſix broad; the Roof is ſupported by *Ionick* Pillars, channell'd; but the Chapiters are a mixture of the *Ionick* and *Dorick* Orders.

Theatre of *Bacchus*

Deſcending from the Caſtle there is on the Left Hand the Theatre of *Bacchus*; the Seats of the Spectators are upon the Riſe of the Rock, and contains ſomething more than a Semicircle, whoſe Diameter is two hundred and forty three *French* Feet; and the whole Body of the Scene ninety one Paces, or above a hundred and fifty Yards; the Scene is oblong, and though the antient Seats are ruin'd, yet there is ſome Appearance of the Places where they have been; the whole Fabrick (by what remains of it,) appears to have been of white Marble.

Portico of *Eumenes.*

To the Eaſtward of this Theatre, and in the ſame Line with the Front of it, there are yet to be ſeen ſome Foundations of Arches, ſuppoſed to be the Remains of the Portico of *Eumenes*, where the Tragedians got their Plays by heart, and was the Place where the Citizens walk'd, not only to take the Air, but to hear News, and converſe with Men of Learning, and divert themſelves by walking in Company with Philoſophers and ingenious Men; and hence *Ariſtotle*'s Diſciples were call'd *Peripetaticks* from their diſputing as they walk'd.

Peripetaticks.

Adrian's Pillars.

South-East from the Caſtle are thoſe beautiful Pieces of Antiquity call'd *Adrian*'s Pillars, ſuppoſed to be the Remains of his Palace, and continues ſtill to be the greateſt Ornament to it, and to the whole City; theſe Pillars, with their Chapiters and Baſes, being fifty two Foot high, and ſeventeen Foot nine Inches about; they are of white Marble, channell'd, and of the *Corinthian* Order; there are now only ſeventeen of thoſe Pillars left ſtanding; but it appears by the Plan upon which they ſtand, and the Order of thoſe that are left, that there have been ſix Rows of them, twenty in each Row, in all an hundred and twenty, built by the Emperor *Adrian*; here was that famous Library that the Emperor *Adrian* collected, and a *Gymnaſium* bearing his Name; here was celebrated the Games called *Adrianalia*, inſtituted by him; about this *Gymnaſium*, or Monument, ſtood a hundred Pillars of *Egyptian* Marble.

Temple of *Theſeus.*

Without the Town, to the Northward, is the Temple of *Theſeus*, like the Temple of *Minerva* before ſpoken of, as to its Matter, Form, and Order, but far ſhort of it in Magnitude, for the Portico is but an hundred and one Foot in Length, and forty four Foot and a half broad, the Cella fifty four Foot long, and twenty broad, but it is a fine Piece of Architecture not to be excell'd, if equall'd, by any in the Country of its Dimenſions; the Relievo expreſſes the Hiſtory of *Theſeus*, with the Locks and and Arts of Wreſtling to admirable Perfection.

There is yet ſtanding in *Athens* the Tower of *Andronicus*, being an Octagonical Priſm, with the Figures of the eight Winds well done, the Names of the Winds ſtill remaining legible in fair *Greek* Characters, on that Quarter of the Tower which fronts it, as North, North-Eaſt, *&c.* the Roof is made of triangular Planks of Marble, which lean together, and all the Vertexes meeting in a Point, forms an obtuſe Pyramid; here is alſo a little round Fabrick, call'd the Temple of *Hercules*; it is excellent Workmanſhip, but not above ſix Foot Diameter. There are alſo the Remains of many other Buildings in *Athens*; as the Gate of the Emperor *Adrian*, his noble Aqueduct, the *Stadium*, where the publick Games were ſolemnized, the Ruins of the *Areopagus*, of the *Odæum*, or Muſick Theatre, and of the Temple of *Auguſtus*, and *Jupiter Olympus*, and other memorable Atiquities; which furniſhes ſuch Variety of Entertainment to the Traveller, that it may be ſaid to be the beſt worth viewing of any Place in *Europe*.

Tower of *Andronicus.*

There are now four publick Bagnio's in *Athens*, and the Town is well ſupply'd with Water by ſubterraneous Aqueducts from the Rivers *Eliſſus* and *Eridanus*, being diſpers'd by Pipes under Ground to the publick Reſervoirs, or Fountains, and alſo to the private Houſes, as the New-River Water is in *London*. Here Corn, Wine, Oil, Fleſh, Fiſh, and Fowl, and all Sorts of Proviſions abound, and are cheap, and the contiguous Country produces Plenty of Hares and Partridges. What is chiefly exported from *Athens* is Raw Silk, *Turkey* Leather, Oil, Wool, and Wax, but the Trade of the Place at preſent is not very conſiderable.

Bagnio's.

And with reſpect to Learning, it may be ſaid of *Athens* that *Oracles are ceas'd*, for Learning is now far from being the Staple Commodity of this Place, which was once reckon'd the Seat of the Muſes; few of the Natives underſtand either *Latin* or their antient Mother Tongue the *Greek*, in its primitive Beauty and Purity; and yet Travellers at this Day obſerve, that there is ſomething viſible in their Deportment; their Civility, and genteel as well as courteous Behaviour, excelling that of their circumjacent Neighbours, which, as they have not the Advantage of Education as formerly, they impute to the Serenity of the Air, in which *Athens* is ſituate; and if a fine Air alone has that Effect, what would not the happy Concurrence of ſo good an Air, aſſiſted by a liberal Education, do?

Athens declin'd.

I ſhall conclude this Deſcription of *Athens* with a brief Hiſtory of it ſince it was firſt built. —— *Cecrops* an *Egyptian* was the Founder of the City, and their firſt King, about eight hundred and thirty Years before the building of *Rome*, and above three thouſand three hundred and fifteen Years ſince this preſent Year 1733, and conſequently one thouſand five hundred and eighty two Years before the Birth of our Saviour. *Athens* continued a Monarchy about five hundred and fifty Years, when *Codrus*, their ſeventeenth and laſt King, died; after which they were govern'd by *Archontes*, a ſort of Magiſtrates, who at firſt held the Government during Life, but were afterwards changed every ten Years, and at laſt every Year. Under theſe they bravely defended their Country and Liberties for five hundred and thirty Years, till *Pyſiſtratus* tyrannically uſurp'd the Government; his Family held it forty Years, and then were expell'd by *Cliſthenes Alcmeonides*, who ſtil'd himſelf *Archon*, altering the Numbers or Names of the Tribes. After this they engaged in a War with the *Perſians*, and defeated the numerous Armies of *Darius* and *Xerxes*, and that with an inconſiderable Force, under the Command of *Miltiades* and *Themiſtocles*. After this the *Lacedemonians* came againſt them, over-power'd them, and

Hiſtory of *Athens.*

Athenians defeat the *Perſians.*

and took *Athens*, placing thirty Governors over them, who exerciſed their Authority with inhuman Tyranny and Cruelty; but their Dominion was ſhort-lived, and they were deliver'd from this State of Slavery by the Conduct of *Thraſibulus*, and their General *Epaminondas*, who, with the Aſſiſtance of the *Thebans*, defeated the *Lacedemonians* at the Battle of *Leuctra*, which Turn of their Affairs ſo animated their Spirits, that purſuing their Blow, they began to extend their Conqueſts, and made themſelves almoſt entire Maſters of the *Egean Sea*, or *Archipelago*, and the Iſlands in it, and croſſing the *Levant*, took ſeveral Places upon the Coaſt of *Egypt*, inſomuch that it was ſaid they had not leſs than a thouſand Cities under their Command, and this their Grandeur continued, and they held the Sovereignty of *Greece* threeſcore and ten Years; but the *Lacedemonians* and *Thebans* (the latter of which had formerly aſſiſted them againſt the *Lacedemonians*,) equally envying their Happineſs, and fearing their Power, jointly fomented a War againſt them, and obliged them to quit a conſiderable Part of their late Conqueſts, and a Peace enſuing, they gradually degenerated into Luxury and Idleneſs; which the *Macedonians* obſerving, took this Opportunity to lay the Foundation of the *Grecian* Monarchy; in Order to which *Philip* King of *Macedon* broke the Power of the *Athenians* by Sea, and made himſelf Maſter of the *Egean Iſlands*, which was a good Step toward the future Succeſs of his Son *Alexander the Great*, who afterwards compleated the Conqueſt of *Athens*, and then that of the reſt of all *Greece*.

They were next ſubject to the *Romiſh* Government; their Emperors were ſome of them very indulgent, and ſuffer'd them to enjoy ſo much of their antient Liberties as to be govern'd by their own Laws. The *Romans* were very proud of being the Governors and Protectors of this renowned City, the Nurſery of ſo many learned Men. The Emperor *Adrian*, being in his Youth choſen *Archon* of this City, took ſuch a liking to it, that when he became Emperor, he reſtored it to its antient Beauty, and granted them many Privileges; he alſo inſtituted publick Games, which in Honour of him were call'd *Adrianalia*, and a thouſand Wild Beaſts were given them every Year to be hunted in the *Stadium*; He built a magnificent Palace for himſelf; he alſo built a Library, and Schools for teaching the Liberal Arts; he alſo built the Temple of *Jupiter Olympus*, and in other Reſpects ſo enlarged and beautify'd the City, that it was afterward call'd *New Athens*; the Walls were built in the Time of *Valerian*.

Conſtantine the Great was a very great Benefactor to them, and *Conſtantine* the Second gave them ſeveral Iſlands in the *Archipelago*: But in the Reign of *Arcadius* it was plunder'd by *Alarick* King of the *Goths*, when *Greece* and *Italy* underwent the ſame Fate; tho' *Zozimus* in that Part of his Hiſtory, relates that *Alarick* ſpared *Athens* for fear of *Achilles*, whom he imagin'd he ſaw fighting upon the Walls of the City.

In the thirteenth Century *Bajazet*, Emperor of the *Turks*, took it, but the *Venetians* ſoon retook it under the Command of *Reinerius Acciaclo*, a *Florentine*; but in the Year 1455, in the Reign of *Mahomet* the Second, the *Turks* retook it again, they not being able to defend it, for want of the Aſſiſtance they expected from the *Latins*, who refuſed to ſend them any Re-inforcements, except they would conform to them in Doctrine and Ceremony, which one inſiſting upon, and the other refuſing, *Athens* was taken by the *Turks* for want of Union among the Chriſtians to defend it; and being now in the Poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, they maintain'd their Property till the Year 1687, when the *Venetians* made themſelves Maſters of it again; but in the late War with the *Venetians* it was rendered to the *Turk*, and the Grand Seignior now continues Sovereign of *Athens*.

2. *Elenſis*, is near the Sea, about ſixteen Miles North-Weſt from *Athens*; it is now frequently known by the Name of *Lepſina*; this Place formerly rivall'd *Athens* for Imperial Dignity, till *Theſeus* reduced it, and now little of it is to be ſeen but Ruins; at this Place was the Temple of *Ceres*, which is now little better than a confuſed Heap, the beautiful Marble Pillars and Cornices ſo confuſedly buried in the Rubbiſh, that it is hard to diſcover the original Form of it; Mr. *Wheeler* found here a Part of the Statue of the Goddeſs *Ceres*, *viz.* from the Head to below the Middle; it is a Coloſſus of white Marble, about three Times as big as the Life, ſhe has a Girdle about her Waiſt, and two Belts croſſing each other upon her Shoulders, her Breaſt appear very natural, but the Face is much disfigur'd, her Hair hangs down behind, and is tied back, ſhe hath on her Head a Basket, carv'd on the Outſide with Cluſters of Wheat-Ears, Bundles of Poppies, Roſes, and Veſſels; for they have a Tradition that it was ſhe that firſt taught the *Greeks* to ſow Corn; and even among thoſe Chriſtians where Heathen Maxims, and the Fables of thoſe Pagan Gods are not quite extirpated, they maintain and teach Notions of ſeveral Gods, and amongſt the reſt of *Ceres*, the Goddeſs of the Harveſt, or ſometimes Goddeſs of Plenty in general. *Elenſis.* Goddeſs *Ceres.*

3. *Megara*, about five and twenty Miles to the Weſtward of *Athens*; it was once the Capital of a conſiderable State; it is built upon two Rocks, about two Miles from the Shore of the *Saronick* Gulph; but it is now reduced, and moſt of what is left ſtands upon one of thoſe Rocks, it conſiſting at preſent of only three or four hundred poor Cottages inhabited by Chriſtians, but it ſtill retains its antient Name. *Megara.*

4. *Delphos*, now call'd by ſome *Caſtri*; it ſtands upon a rugged Mountain, about ten Miles to the Northward of the Gulph of *Lepanto*; this Mountain is a Part of the famous *Parnaſſus*; the Aſcent to *Delphos* is above two Leagues, but when a Perſon is there, he is not half Way to the Top of *Parnaſſus*; (of which below.) This was once a great City, and famous for the Temple of *Apollo* being in it, but more particularly for the dark Cave, from whence the *Pythian* Prieſteſs pronounced her Oracles, ſitting on a Tripos, ſwelling and foaming like one poſſeſs'd, the more to ſurprize her deluded Followers; and yet this has made ſuch a Figure in Hiſtory, that they muſt have read very little that have not read of the *Delphick Oracle*, or the Oracle of *Delphos*, but now ſuch *Oracles are ceas'd*, and *Delphos* is but an inconſiderable Place, containing not above two hundred Houſes, but they are chiefly inhabited by Chriſtians. *Delphos.*

We have obſerved before that *Delphos* ſtands upon a Side, or Part of the Mount *Parnaſſus*, but when at *Delphos*, the towering Top, or rather Tops, of *Parnaſſus*, appear of vaſt Height, notwithſtanding the Aſcent to *Delphos*, from whence it appears to have two Tops, and from them, or in another Poſition, many other Summits appear; but between theſe two is a Cleft, by which the Water ruſhes down with an impetuous Rapidity after a Shower of Rain, which with its melting the Snow, with which the Tops of thoſe Mountains are perpetually cover'd, cauſes the Water to deſcend with the Violence above-mention'd. This is the famous *Parnaſſus* ſaid to be ſacred to *Apollo* and the Muſes: and below the Cleft above-mention'd, is a Well, where the *Pythian* Prieſteſs, or Propheteſs, and thoſe of her Diſciples that pretended to Inſpiration, uſed to bath, and drink its Water; there are Marble Steps to deſcend into it, and Niches for Statues cut in the Rock. Not far from *Parnaſſus* ſtands the famous Hill, or Moun- *Parnaſſus* Mountain

tain of *Helicon*, ſo much talk'd of by the *Greek* Poets; this Mountain is by them alſo conſecrated to *Apollo*; this is not inferior to *Parnaſſus* either in Height or Compaſs, they are both rocky Mountains, always cover'd with Snow. This was the Native Country of the Poet *Heſiod*, who was born at *Aſcra*, a Town on the Weſt Side of thoſe Mountains, between them and the *Ionian Sea*.

Lepanto. 5. *Lepanto*, antiently called *Naupactus*, and now by the *Greeks Epactus*; it is near the Mouth of the Gulf of the ſame Name, formerly call'd the Gulf of *Corinth*; it is ſituate between forty and fifty Miles to the Weſtward of *Delphos*, and about eighty Weſt of the Iſthmus of *Corinth*; it ſtands on a very ſteep Hill, cloſe to the Sea, with a Deſcent every Way, that Side next the Sea being built cloſe down to the Shore; on the Top of the Hill is a little Caſtle, and on the South Side of the Town is a little Harbour, with a Tower on each Side of the Entrance, planted with Braſs Guns, and the Mouth of the Harbour is ſo narrow that a Chain of fifty Foot long is enough to ſecure it, but it is likewiſe ſo ſhallow, that no Veſſels but Barks or Gallies, or ſuch ſmall Craft, can enter; there are fruitful Vallies on each of the three Sides of it, which produce Oranges, Citrons, Lemons, Olives, Wines, and Corn. The Trade of this Place conſiſts in Leather, Oil, Tobacco, Rice, and Corn, and as good Wine as any *Greece* produces.

Livadia. 6. *Livadia*, an antient Town, and gives Name to the Country; it ſtands on the Gulf of *Lepanto*, about twenty Miles to the Weſtward of the Iſthmus of *Corinth*; it is built round a pointed Hill, on the Top of which is an old Caſtle; the River *Hercyna* riſes here, and produces ſuch a plentiful Stream that it turns twenty Mills in the Town, within a Bow-ſhot of its Source. There are four or five Chriſtian Churches in this Town, and about as many *Turkiſh* Moſques; the Town is well inhabited, and has a tolerable Trade in Woollen Stuffs and Rice; it was formerly famous for the Oracle of *Trophonius*, which was in a Cavern in the Hill, and publick Games were inſtituted in Honour of this ſuppoſed Deity.

Thebes. 7. *Thebes*, ſituate in the thirty-ninth Degree of Latitude, about forty Miles to the Northward of the *Iſthmus* of *Corinth*, and twenty Miles Weſt of *Negropont*: It ſtands on a riſing Ground, between two little Streams; it is declined from its antient Grandeur, and now only that Part which was the Caſtle, is inhabited. The preſent Walls ſeem very antient, and have ſquare Towers of hewn Stone, very exactly laid; the Figure of the Caſtle, (in which all the Town is now compriſed) is Oval; the Houſes are higher, and better built than is common in this Country; it is about three Miles in Circumference, and contains about four thouſand Inhabitants, moſtly Chriſtians; whatever Temples or publick Buildings may have been in this Town, or mention'd by Authors, there is not one, nor ſo much as the Ruins of one to be ſeen at preſent.

Marath. 8. *Marathon*, is ſituate near the Gulph of *Negropont*, and about forty Miles North Eaſtward from *Athens*; here was fought that memorable Battle between the *Athenians* and *Perſians*, wherein the latter were defeated by a ſmall Number of the former. (*See the Hiſtory of* Athens *in the foregoing Part of this Chapter.*) This City is now reduced to an inconſiderable Village.

Aulis. 9. *Aulis*, is a Sea Port Town about twenty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Thebes*, where the *Grecian* Fleet rendezvous'd when they were preparing for the Siege of *Troy*.

Platæa. 10. *Platæa*, is ſituate between *Thebes* and *Athens*; it was here that the *Lacedemonians*, under the Command of *Pauſanias*, obtained a remarkable Victory over the *Perſians*, which entirely ruined the intended Enterprize of *Xerxes* againſt *Greece*. This is moſt of what Hiſtory gives us account of concerning *Platæa*; nor can the Travellers of this Age add any thing to it, the Town being ſo entirely demoliſh'd, that ſcarce any of the Ruins of it are to be ſeen.

CHAP. VIII.

Treats of Peloponeſus, *or* Morea.

Names. THIS Country was firſt call'd *Argos Achaium*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Argos Peláſgicum* in *Theſſaly*; afterwards *Ægialia* from *Ægialus* King of the *Cicyonians*; then *Apia* from *Apis*, the third King of *Argos*; but it had its preſent Name *Peloponeſus* from *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus*, who planted a Colony here, and was ſome time Sovereign of the *Peninſula*; and as for its other Name *Morea*, it is ſaid to be derived from *Morus*, a Mulberry-Tree, either becauſe it reſembles that Leaf in Form, or becauſe of the Plenty of thoſe Trees which this Country produces.

Bounds. THE whole *Peninſula* is bounded on the North with the Gulph of *Lepanto*, the *Iſthmus* of *Corinth*, and the Gulph of *Engia*, formerly call'd the *Soronick Gulph*; it is bounded on all the other Sides by the Sea, *viz.* on the Eaſt by the *Ægean*, on the South by the *Mediterranean*, and on the Weſt by the *Ionian* Sea, and is contained between thirty-ſix Degrees odd Minutes, and thirty-eight and odd of North Latitude. The Principal Rivers are, 1. *Carbon* or *Orſea*, antiently *Alpheus*, which River it is ſaid paſſes under the *Ionian* Sea, and riſes again in *Sicily*; but for this we have only the Authority of the *Greek* Poets, and thoſe that know how to diſtinguiſh Facts from Figures in their Writings, may know how much to believe of this. Other Rivers are, 2. *Eurotas*, whoſe Source or Spring is in *Arcadia*; it paſſes thro' *Laconia*, and meets with the Sea in the Gulph of *Paſſel Rampani*. 3. *Planizza*, formerly call'd *Inachus*. 4. *Pamiſſus*, or *Spinazza*, which falls into the Gulph of *Coran* near *Calamata*. 5. *Sty*, whoſe Waters are ſo exceſſive cold, that they are generally fatal to thoſe that drink, and is hence call'd one of the Rivers of Hell.

THE *Morea* is uſually divided into four Parts or Diſtricts, *viz.* 1. *Saccania*, or *Romania Major*, containing the antient *Argya*, *Sycionia*, and *Corinthia*; it is bounded by the Gulph of *Engia* on the North, the *Archipelago* on the Eaſt, *Napoli de Romania* on the South, and the Dutchy of *Clarenza* on the Weſt.

2. *Zachonia*, or *Braccio de Mano*, which comprehends the ancient *Arcadia* and *Laconia*, and is bounded on the North by *Saccania*, on the Eaſt by the *Ægean* Sea, by *Sapienza* on the South, and by the Diſtrict of *Belvidere* on the Weſt.

3. *Belvidere* is bounded on the North by *Clarenza*, and is ſeparated from it by the River *Carbon* or *Orſea*

Orſea on the North, by *Zachonia* on the Eaſt, on the South by the Sea of *Sapienza*, and on the Weſt by the *Ionian* Sea.

4. The Dutchy of *Clarenza* comprehends *Achaia Proper*, and is bounded on the North by the Gulph of *Lepanto*, by *Saccania* towards the Eaſt, on the South by *Zachonia* and *Belvidere*, and by the Gulph of *Putras* on the Weſt.

Succania. As to the firſt of theſe, *viz. Succania* or *Romania Minor*, the chief Towns are, 1. *Naupha*, now *Napoli de Romania* called *Napoli de Romania*, at the Bottom of a Gulph in the *Ægean* Sea, which now goes by the ſame Name, but was formerly call'd *Agricola Sinus*. The Town ſtands South of *Corinth*, upon a Promontary or Cape, which ſhooting out into the Sea, divides itſelf into two Points, which make a little Bay, and forms a Harbour, whoſe Entrance is ſo narrow, that no more than one Veſſel can enter at a time, and the Paſſage by Land is of ſuch difficult Acceſs, as being a narrow ſtrong Strait between the Mountain *Palamida* and the Sea, that it is difficult to approach it, and the Citadel, which is about a hundred Yards from the City, having the like advantageous Situation, renders the Place, if not impregnable, yet one of the ſtrongeſt Towns and generally the Capital of the *Morea*; it is ſuppoſed to contain ſixty Thouſand *Grecian* Inhabitants, beſides others, and is now an Archbiſhop's See.

Argos Peloponeſiacum. 2. *Argos Peloponeſiacum*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Argos Pelaſgicum* in *Theſſaly*; it is ſituate on the River *Inachus* or *Naio*, about thirty Miles South of *Corinth*, and to the Weſtward of *Napoli*: It was formerly a magnificent City, and Capital of a Kingdom, till *Perſeus* remov'd the regal Seat to *Mycene*, ſince which time it has been a poor Place, tho' dignify'd by being a Biſhop's See, and has a Citadel for its Defence.

Corinth. 3. *Corinth*, antiently *Ephyra*, in the 39th Degree of Latitude; it ſtands at the South End of the *Iſthmus* of *Morea*, between the Gulphs of *Lepanto* and *Eugia*, fifty Miles to the Weſtward of *Athens*, and eighty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Patias*: It is about two Miles from the Gulph of *Lepanto*, and ſix Miles from the *Seronick* Gulph, or Gulph of *Eugia*. The Town is in two Parts, the South Part is in and near the Caſtle on the Top of a Hill, and the North Part is about a Mile diſtant from the Caſtle, upon an eaſy Deſcent towards the Gulph of *Lepanto*: The Houſes are not contiguous or diſpos'd in Streets, as is common in Cities and great Towns, but eight or ten near together, with their Gardens belonging to them, and Orchards or Corn Fields between one Hamblet or Diviſion and another; the largeſt Hamblet or Plot of Houſes is where the Market Place is, and contains about a hundred Houſes; from the lower Town to the Caſtle is an Aſcent for about a Mile, ſo ſteep, that near the Caſtle it is impoſſible to aſcend it, without turning and winding to and fro to gain the Caſtle, which is ſituate on a very high Rock, with a Precipice on every Side, but the South Side where the Entrance is, the Windings having carried you half round the Hill, upon which the Caſtle ſtands, before you can come at the Top, and from this South Side of the Caſtle there runs a Ridge of Hills two or three to the Southward, which makes the Caſtle acceſſible on that Side only, and here an Enemy may approach it, if not repuls'd in time. Moſt of the Trading Inhabitants have Houſes in the Caſtle, to ſecure their Effects from Rovers, and theſe Houſes in the Caſtle are the moſt ſecure, but thoſe in the lower Town are the moſt pleaſant, being planted round with Orange, Lemon, and Cypreſs Trees; there are three or four Moſques, and five or ſix ſmall Churches in the Caſtle, and two or three of each in the lower Town, but Chriſtianity is at a very low Ebb here, and yet it continues to be a Biſhop's See; it was to the Inhabitants of this Place that the Apoſtle *Paul* writ his two Epiſtles to the *Corinthians*, which we have in the New Teſtament as part of Canonical Scripture.

The Caſtle ſtanding upon an Eminence affords a moſt beautiful Proſpect, for to the Eaſtward is the *Seronick* or *Eugian* Gulph, with the Iſlands of the *Archipelago* before it, which ſeem to cloſe the Mouth of the Gulph. To the Weſtward is the Gulph of *Lepanto*, which may be ſeen as far as beyond *Sicycon*; the Plains of *Corinth* that way is water'd by two Rivulets; it is rich Ground, and well planted with Vineyards and Oliveyards, and has many little Villages interſpers'd, which adds to the Beauty of the Proſpect. On the North the Sight is bounded by the lowring Tops of thoſe famous Mountains of *Parnaſſus* and *Helicon* before deſcrib'd, and to come nearer Home, the lower Town, which, as before obſerv'd, is alſo to the Northward of the Caſtle, appears from that Eminence, and at that Diſtance in little Knots of Houſes, ſurrounded with Groves, Gardens, and Vineyards, intermix'd with Corn Fields. Theſe different Views of various Objects, render the whole admirably pleaſant; but their Properties being ſo precarious, by reaſon of the Inroads of Enemies, and the Rapaciouſneſs of Governors, abates much of the Sweetneſs of their Enjoyments.

Iſthmus. The narroweſt Part of the *Iſthmus* of *Corinth* is about ſix Miles Eaſt Northerly from *Corinth*, near a Village call'd *Heixmila*; it was once propoſed to cut a Channel thro' this *Iſthmus* from the Gulph of *Lepanto* to the Gulph of *Eugia*, to make the *Morea* an entire Iſland; but it was never put in Execution; becauſe, as they tell us, they were forbid by the Oracle. The *Iſthmian* Games, ſo call'd as being perform'd here, were perform'd on Part of Mount *Oneius*, where may ſtill be ſeen the Ruins of a Town, and the Remains of the *Iſthmian* Theatre, with the Ruins of ſeveral Temples, dedicated to the Sun, *Neptune*, *Diana*, *Pluto*, *Bacchus*, &c. and there are yet remaining ſome Pieces of the Foundation of the Wall built from Sea to Sea by the *Lacedemonians*, to defend *Morea* from the Incurſions of the *Athenians* and other Enemies, which Wall the *Venetians* repair'd, when they had the *Morea* in Poſſeſſion.

Sicyon. 4. *Sicycon*, now *Baſilica*; this was once the Capital of *Sicyona*; it ſtands on the River *Aſopus*, about twenty Miles Weſterly from *Corinth*, and four Miles from the Gulph of *Lepanto*; there is nothing now to be ſeen of it but Ruins, particularly of a Theatre and Stadium; the Walls of the Caſtle, and of ſeveral Churches and Moſques, and, 5. *Nemæa*, famous for the Grove where antiently the *Herculean* Games were exerciſed; it is about five and twenty Miles South of *Corinth*; it is now but a ſmall Village; as is alſo, 6. *Mycene* or *Charia*, about ten Miles North of *Argos*, which was formerly a Capital of a Kingdom.

Zachonia. In the Diſtrict of *Zachonia* or *Lacedemonia*, are theſe Towns, viz. 1. *Lacedemon* or *Sparta*, or rather the Ruins of them, upon which or near the ſame Place ſtands the preſent *Miſitra*, near the River *Eurotas* in the South Eaſt Part of the *Morea*, about forty Miles to the Southward of *Napoli de Romania*. *Lacedemon* is ſuppoſed to have been built a Thouſand Years before the Building of *Rome*; the City was round, and about ſix Miles in Circumference. This is the Place to which the famous *Lycurgus* left his Laws and Rules for Government, which he contrived to make almoſt perpetual; but they were afterwards govern'd by the *Ephori*, or five Magiſtrates, but *Cleomenes* depoſed them, and uſurp'd the Crown, which he held but for a ſmall time, till he was conquer'd by

by the *Macedonians*, and his Country annex'd to that Monarchy.

Miſiſtra 2. *Miſiſtra* is an Epiſcopal See; it has a Caſtle ſituate upon the riſing Ground of Mount *Tagetus*, upon which within the Caſtle ſtood Temples dedicated to *Diana*, *Lypatheria*, and *Minerva Penachaide*; the Town is at the Foot of the Caſtle, and conſiſts chiefly of two ſpacious Streets, and ſeveral ſmall ones croſſing them; there is a Noble Fountain in the old Market-place, and a Church built moſtly out of the Ruins of *Minerva*'s Temple; here are three Marble Temples, *viz.* that of *Helen*, *Hercules*, and *Venus*, and the Remains of ſeveral other antient Buildings, particularly in the middle Suburb is a Church exceeding fine, and there is ſtill to be ſeen without the Walls the Grove of Palm Trees, with the *Dromas*, where the *Spartans* had their Races, Wreſtlings, and other Exerciſes for which they were ſo famous.

Malvaſia. 3. *Malvaſia*, antiently *Epidaurus*; it ſtands on a Rock in the Sea, about forty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Miſiſtra*, but has a Communication with the Continent by a Wooden Bridge; here is a tolerable Harbour, defended by a Citadel; and what is very Remarkable, tho' it ſtands upon a Rocky Iſland in the Sea, yet it is well ſupplied with Water by its own Springs, and has fine Gardens and Vineyards about it. It is a Biſhop's See.

Chieſa. 4. *Chieſa*, a ſtrong Town ſtanding upon a high Rock about two Miles from the Sea, and fifteen from Cape *Matapan*; this is the Place where the antient *Vitulo* ſtood; there are other Places in the *Morea*, which the *Greek* Poets magnified to eminent and remarkable Places; but as now the Places or ſcarce their Ruins are to be ſeen, a further Account of them is needleſs.

Belvidere. The next Province is *Belvidere*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Modon*, it is a ſtrong Place, has a commodious Harbour and a good Trade. 2. *Navarina*, an antient Town near the Sea, about thirteen Miles North of *Modon*; it is eſteemed the beſt Harbour in the *Morea*, which was ſuppoſed to be the Reaſon why Sultan *Ibraham* appointed it to be the Rendezvous of his Fleet in his Expedition againſt *Candia*. 3. *Belvidere*, which gives Name to the Dutchy; it ſtands on the River *Peneus*, fifteen Miles Eaſtward from the *Ionian* Sea. 4. *Arcadia*, on the Weſtern Coaſt of the *Morea*, from whence the Bay now ſo called took its Name. 5. *Olympia*, ſituate upon the River *Alpheus*, near its Influx into the Sea in the Gulph of *Arcadia*; it was anciently famous for the Games inſtituted by *Hercules* in the adjacent Fields every fifth Year, where the young Nobility of *Greece* contended for the Prize, and put a prodigious Value upon a Victory obtain'd; from hence came the *Æra* of the *Olympiades*, and the Name of the *Olympick* Games.

Clarenza. In the Dutchy of *Clarenza*, is, 1. *Patras*, ſituate upon a riſing Ground, about half a Mile from the Sea, ten Miles to the Southward of the Entrance of the Gulph of *Lepanto*. *Auguſtus Cæſar* brought his Fleet into this Habour, and conferr'd great Honours upon the Place; it ſtands upon a Hill, and has a pleaſant Deſcent every way into a fruitful Valley, well planted with Lemons, Oranges, and Citrons. The Sea that flows between this Place and the Iſland of *Cephalonia* takes its Name from this Place.

2. *Clarenza*, of which little appears now but the Ruins; but what is yet to be ſeen of the Walls is ſo ſtrongly cemented together, as if it was all one Stone; and as a late Traveller obſerves, nothing but Gun-powder or an Earthquake could have ſeparated thoſe prodigious heavy Parts of the Wall one from another, which now appears in the Ruins.

Caminitz. 3. *Caminitza*, of which there is little remarkable except its antient Name *Olenus*; it is now a Biſhop's See, under the Archbiſhop of *Patras*.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Iſland of Candia, *or* Crete.

Gort. THE Iſland of *Candia* or *Crete*, is in the *Mediterranean*, and may be ſaid to be at the Entrance of the *Archipelago*, in the thirty-ſixth Degree of North Latitude; and as to the Bounds of it, it has the *Archipelago* on the North, the *Morea* on the North Weſt, and *Natoli* or *Aſia Minor* on the North Eaſt, and the *Mediterranean* on Eaſt, South, and Weſt. *Lethe* is one of the largeſt Rivers in the Iſland, if it may be call'd a River. Upon it ſtood the City of *Gortyna*, once the Capital of the Iſland. In this Iſland is the famous Mount *Ida*, of which the antient *Greek* Poets give ſuch admirable Romantick Accounts; but Mr. *Tournefort*, a late Traveller, the Truth of whoſe Account there is no room to queſtion, tells us, that altho' this famous Mountain covers a great part of the middle of the Iſland, yet it is nothing but a huge barren Rock, without any thing agreeable, either as to Proſpect or Enjoyment; and the ſame Author, after he had been a Simpling upon Mount *Ida*, tells us, that whatſoever Side they look'd, they ſaw nothing but Quagmires, and deep Abyſſes cover'd with Snow, except the Sea, which from the top of the Mountain they could ſee both on the North and South of the Iſland; but when they came at the Foot of the Mountain, they came into a large open Valley, planted with Olives, Mulberries, Walnuts, and other valuable Fruits; here the Villages ſtand thick, and they have extraordinary good Water. The chief Towns are,

Gort. 1. *Gortyna*, once the Capital of the Iſland, whoſe magnificent Ruins ſufficiently demonſtrate what it has been; it was ſituate upon the River *Lethe*, about ſix Miles to the Southward of Mount *Ida*, near the Entrance of the Plain of *Meſſaria*, the moſt fertile in the whole Iſland; but now Corn and Graſs grows where *Gortyna* once ſtood, and yet prodigious Quantities of Ruins appear, of Marble, Jaſper, and Granate Stone, of exquiſite Workmanſhip; here yet remains Part of one of the City Gates, with a multitude of Pedeſtals, rang'd two and two in paralled Lines; they are ſuppoſed to have ſupported ſome Columns in the Front of ſome Temple; there are abundance of fine Capitals and Architraves, but the *Turks* have carried many of them away to patch up ſome poor Buildings, according to their indolent Performance; amongſt which in particular are two antique Columns, of fine Workmanſhip, ſet at a Garden Gate, which it is to be ſuppoſed, the ſlothful *Turks* did not make uſe of for the Value of the Matter or Workmanſhip, but becauſe they found them ready made to their Hands, and could they have had a fine Gate at the ſame Price, there is no Reaſon to queſtion but they would have made uſe of that as a Gate to the Garden, but as it is, there is nothing but

a ſorry Hurdle to fill up the Space. At the North-Weſt End of theſe Ruins there is the Remains of the Metropolitan Church, and of a Monaſtery near it; and not far from thence there are to be ſeen ſome Parts of the Arch of an old Aqueduct, the Arch whereof is ſix or ſeven Foot high. There are yet Medals extant at *Gortyna* of the Heads of *Germanicus*, *Caligula*, *Trajan* and *Adrian*.

A ſubterraneous Labyrinth.

Before I paſs on to the Deſcription of the other Towns in *Candia*, it may not be amiſs to take notice of what is remarkable in the Neighbourhood of *Gortyna*; particularly a ſubterraneous Paſſage, or Labyrinth, under a little Hill, at the Foot of Mount *Ida*; which, by an unknown Number of intricate Windings, without any appearance of Regularity, runs quite through the Hill: The Entrance into it is by a Paſſage, or natural Opening, about twelve or thirteen Yards broad, but ſo low that in ſeveral Places in the Entrance, a Man of a common Stature is oblig'd to ſtoop; the Floor is rugged and uneven, as if it was only the Work of Nature; but the Roof is flat, made by Beds of Stone laid horizontally. The moſt dangerous Part of the great Alley is about thirty Paces from the Mouth of it; for here are ſeveral Paths, among which if a Man miſſes the right, he is immediately bewilder'd in Intricacies, from whence it is difficult to extricate himſelf, for which Reaſon Travellers commonly take Guides. Mr. *Tournefort* gives us the following Account of his Expedition:

The Guides led him and his Company through the middle Alley, having firſt poſted one of their People at the Mouth of the Cavern, that in Caſe they did not return in Time, or might be ſuppoſed to be loſt, they might fetch help from the adjacent Villages to ſeek them, and help them out, and the better to direct thoſe that might follow them upon that Occaſion, they paſted up at every Turning Scrolls of Paper, number'd 1, 2, 3, *&c.* and alſo they ſcatter'd Straw on the Ground all the Way as they went, that if they could not go to the further End they might be ſure to find the ſame Way back that they went; and with theſe Precautions they arrived at the principal Alley, which is not ſo difficult as the reſt, and is about two thouſand Yards, or little more than a Mile and half a Quarter long, and that reaches to the End of the Grotto, or Labyrinth; where there are two beautiful Apartments for thoſe People to reſt who care to venture themſelves ſo far.

These two Rooms are almoſt round, cut out of the Rock, about four Fathom wide; here they found ſeveral Names and Dates cut in the Rock, as is common for Travellers to do when they meet ſuch Pieces of Antiquity. I ſhall wave the different Opinions of People as to the Original of this Labyrinth, or rather conclude it Natural, or the Effect of ſome Earthquake, as to its firſt appearance; however, it might afterwards be improv'd by Art, to make the two Rooms and the Paſſage to them more commodious; I ſhall only obſerve that what Mr. *Tournefort* found here confirm'd him in his Opinion of the Vegetation of Stones, for he tells us, that in the Letters, Figures, or other engraving there in the Rock, thoſe that ſeem'd to be of a very antient Date, and that doubtleſs had been concave at firſt, were ſome of them become plain, and ſome convex, and ſtood up like Baſſo Relievo, as he makes the Compariſon, and that the new Matter, or Stone, that fill'd up the Concavity was whitiſh, though the original Rock was grey; this Callofity he thinks is form'd by the nutritious Juice of the Stone, which gradually flows in to ſupport Nature and ſupply the Vacancy, and in proceſs of Time is petrify'd, and again incorporated with the Rock itſelf; and I am very ready to believe the Probability of this, if we conſider that in a Green Wound in a Man, the Effuſion of Blood being ſtopp'd, the nutritive Juice gently flows to the Wound, and furniſhes Matter, which, with proper Care and Aſſiſtance, becomes Fleſh, uniting or incorporating with thoſe Parts which were ſeparated. But to proceed, the next remarkable Town is,

Candia.

2. *Candia*, or *Crete*, which gives Name to the Iſland, and is the Capital of it; it is an Archbiſhop's See, ſituate on the the North Shore, about the Middle of the Iſland; it was once a good Harbour, but now ſo choak'd up, that it is of no Uſe but for Boats or very ſmall Veſſels, but large Ships lie under the Iſland of *Dia*, almoſt oppoſite to the Town. The City of *Candia* is but like the Skeleton of a City, if compared with what it was when the *Venetians* had it in Poſſeſſion; it was then a ſtrong Place, and had a flouriſhing Trade, but now nothing remains in Repair except the Market-Place, and two or three principal Streets, the reſt being in Ruins, and has been ſo ever ſince the laſt Siege, which was the moſt obſtinate that I remember to have read of in any Hiſtory, for it was of more than twice the Duration of the remarkable ten Years Siege of *Troy*; for the *Turks* invaded it in the Year 1645, and after ſeveral fierce Attacks, in which they loſt conſiderable Numbers of their Forces, they were forced to retire to a greater Diſtance; however, they continued the Blocade till the Year 1667, perpetually alarming the Garriſon, and intercepting their Proviſions, and renewing their Attacks; but the *Turks* not being able to block them up by Sea, they had continually freſh Supplies, ſo that the Garriſon held out till 1669, and at laſt ſurrender'd, when they had been ſtorm'd ſix and fifty Times; in this Siege the *Venetians* loſt upwards of eighty thouſand Men, and the *Turks* above a hundred and eighty thouſand, and the City was almoſt depopulated and demoliſh'd.

Canea.

Canea, or *Cydon*; it is a Sea-port, about a hundred Miles to the Weſtward of *Candia*, upon the North Coaſt of the Iſland; there is now to be ſeen the Ruins of a noble Arſenal, what remains ſtanding of it are the Arches of the Work-houſes, where they fitted out their Galleys; the Walls and publick Buildings are entirely neglected and ruin'd, and no care taken to keep them in repair.

Retimo.

4. *Retimo*, on the ſame Northern Coaſt of *Candia* *Iſland*, and about half Way between the Town of *Candia* and that of *Canea*; it was a wall'd Town, and had a tolerable good Harbour, but both are now in a ruinous Condition. There is alſo, 5. *Spina Longa*, a good Harbour and a ſtrong Caſtle, upon the ſame North Coaſt, and towards the Eaſt End of the Harbour.

The Iſland is generally inhabited by *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Jews*, and *Turks*, but the laſt carry the Superiority in Point of Government. Of Animals, the Country produces Sheep, Hogs, Hares, Rabbits, Poultry, Pigeons, *&c.* but no Deer, or any Sort of Wild-Beaſts, are ever found there; they have Corn, Wine, Oil, Silk, Wool, Honey, Wax, Laudanum, and ſome Cotton; they have good Wheat, but ſcarce know how to uſe it, ſo that their Bread is not extraordinary; but their Wine is exceeding good, and thoſe Parts of the Iſland which are capable of Cultivation, and improv'd accordingly, are exceeding fruitful.

CHAP. X.

Of the Islands of Cyprus *and* Rhodes.

THE Island of *Cyprus* is in the North-East Part of the *Levant*, the Middle of it is in about thirty-five Degrees of North Latitude; about sixty Miles South of *Caramania*, and thirty Miles West of the Coast of *Syria*, said to have its Name *Cyprus* from its abounding with Cypress Trees. Chief Towns are, 1. *Nicosia*, the Capital of the Island; it was a large Place, but much fallen to decay since the *Turks* got it in their Possession; it was formerly the Royal Seat of the Kingdom, and is now the Residence of the Viceroy, it is situate near the Middle of the Island; the Cathedral of St. *Sophia* is converted into a Mosque for the *Turkish* Worship, but it is still an Archbishop's See, and there are three or four *Greek* [Christian] Churches in the Place; the *Latins* and *Armenians* have also several Churches here. 2. *Famagusta*, or *Salamais*, on the South-East Coast of the Island, almost over-against *Tripoli* in *Syria*, formerly a good Harbour, but now fallen to decay; 3. *Silines*; and, 4. *Lymisso*, or *Amathus*, both on the South Coast, near *Cape de Gate*; the latter is now the best Harbour in the Island; the most remarkable Mountain here is also call'd *Olympus*, it is about eighteen Leagues in Circumference, and well planted with Trees; there are no remarkable Rivers, only Streams occasion'd by the Rains, collecting themselves in the Valleys as they descend from the Mountains.

Chief Towns.

Produce.

THE Country produces Corn, Wine, Oil, Salt, Wood, Cotton, and some Silk, for which they have a considerable Trade; the Country produces Plenty of Fowl, as well as the Sea of Fish, for the Use of the Inhabitants. The *Europeans*, especially the *English Turkey* Company, have Consuls and Factors here. When the Christians had it in Possession there was near a thousand populous Villages and handsom Towns in it, but it has felt the Effect of *Turkish* Indolence, and now half the Lands lie uncultivated, and most of the Buildings which the *Venetians* erected while they were Masters of the Island, are neglected or demolish'd; it is now inhabited by *Turks*, *Jews*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Maronites*, and some few *Latins*, but the *Greeks* are most numerous of the Sects of Christians, tho' the best of their Churches were taken from them, and converted into Mosques when the *Turks* became Masters of it.

THERE are several Sorts of Earth in this Island fit for the Painter's Use, and especially red, yellow, and black; there has been found here a Stone, or Mineral, of which they made a Sort of Thread, which they wove into a Sort of a Linnen Cloth, which would not consume in the Fire, and when they want to clean it, they put it in the Fire till the Dirt or Foulness is burnt out of it, and it comes out white and clean. They are afflicted with such Swarms of Locusts about a certain Time of the Year, that they appear like Clouds at a Distance, and all the Fruits of the Earth would be in danger of being devour'd by them was it not for a North Wind, which usually happens about the same Time, and drives them away. —— But to make the Description of *Cyprus* compleat, it is proper to give a Compendium, or Abstract of the History of the Place, which take as followeth:

History of Cyprus.

THIS Island was at first govern'd by several Petty Sovereigns, who were afterwards reduced to the Dominion of the *Egyptians*, and next to their Neighbours, the *Phenicians*; each of those Nations having Colonies on the Coast, and thereby keeping the Inland Country in Subjection to them; but it was not long afterwards that *Cyrus*, King of *Persia*, invaded them, and found the Island govern'd by nine Petty Kings, and, tho' he brought them under an Annual Tribute, yet he suffer'd them to retain the Name and Authority of Kings, as before, in their respective Dominions.

THE next Revolution it underwent was by the Conquest of *Alexander the Great*, and in the Division of his Empire, *Cyprus* fell to *Ptolemy*, King of *Egypt*, and continued in his Line till the *Romans*, seeing the Wealth of the Country, sent *Porcius Cato*, who not only reduced it to the Subjection of the *Romans*, but plunder'd the Island, carrying Spoils to *Rome* to the Value of seven thousand Talents; the *Saracens* afterwards plunder'd it, but it return'd to the Obedience of the *Greek* Emperors again about the Year 1191. *Richard* the First, King of *England*, putting in here for fresh Water, in his Voyage to the *Holy Land*, met with a very disagreeable Reception, whereupon he subdued the Island, and surrendered his Right to *Guy Lusignan*, titular King of *Jerusalem*, in whose Family it remain'd till the Year 1423; when the Sultan of *Egypt* invaded the Island, taking *John*, the then King, Prisoner, but restored him for a great Ransom, and a Tribute of forty thousand Crowns a Year; and about *Anno* 1473, the tributary Prince then reigning made it over to the Senate of *Venice*; who held it about a hundred Years, till *Selemas*, the *Turkish* Emperor, as Sovereign of *Egypt*, claim'd a Title to *Cyprus*; and his Grand Vizier, *Mustapha*, setting down before *Famagusta*, the strongest Place in the Island at that Time, obliged the Governor to surrender in the Year 1570; but when the *Turk* had got Possession, he could no longer forbear his natural, or rather unnatural, Barbarity, and murder'd the principal Inhabitants in cold Blood; and as for the Governor, who bravely defended the Place to the last Extremity, he was so far from applauding his Courage, (as is often the Case when a courageous Commander becomes a Prisoner of War to a generous Enemy,) that he caus'd him to be flay'd alive, and hang'd up at the Yard's Arm of his Ship, and having reduc'd the whole Island, and kill'd the chief Inhabitants, he spar'd the Artificers and Mechanicks, allowing them the free Exercise of their Religion, only paying the Tribute that he imposed upon them. Amongst the rest of his Plunder, he took Prisoner a beautiful *Cyprian* Lady, which he sent with the rest of his Booty to his Master the Grand Seignior, being as much as loaded two Ships; but the virtuous, as well as resolute, Lady preferring her Modesty before her Life, and chusing rather to die than to be prostituted to the Grand Seignior's unlawful Embraces, she found Means to blow up both the Ships, and voluntarily sacrificed her own Life with the Lives of all the Sailors and Passengers; and some Historians applaud this her undaunted Resolution, but I must own I think it will be very difficult to prove that this Preservation of her Chastity could attone for the wilful Murder of so many innocent Persons; indeed, so much Virtue was very remarkable in a Lady brought up in an Island consecrated to *Venus*, and where prostituting their

Bodies were accounted a Part of the Religion, or an Act of Obedience to their Patroneſs, as was the Caſe in *Cyprus*, where the Females never refuſed to perform this Piece of Worſhip to their Goddeſs *Venus*, either with Strangers at home, or with the moſt remote of Foreigners from abroad; however, this Iſland has produced not only great Poets and Philoſophers, but it was the native Place of *Barnabas*, who, with St. *Paul*, firſt planted Chriſtianity here; on which Account the Archbiſhop of this Place was made independant of the See of *Antioch*, tho' all the Eaſtern Biſhops were formerly ſubject to it.

Rhodes. The next remarkable Iſland is *Rhodes*, in the South-Eaſt Entrance of the *Archipelago*, in between 36 and 37 of North Latitude; it was formerly call'd *Aſteria*, *Ethræa*, *Corymbia*, and other Names, but it is now known by the Name of *Rhodes*; as for the Reaſon of its going by that Name, the Account that we have from the *Greek* Hiſtorians carry ſuch a Face of Fable and Fiction along with it, that I think the Hiſtory may be ſupplied with Matter more true and uſeful. The chief Towns in *Rhodes*, are, 1. *Rhodes*, of the ſame Name with the Iſland, and on the North-Eaſt Part of it; it has a tolerable good Harbour; the Town is about three Miles in Circumference; the Streets are broad, ſtrait, and well paved, and the largeſt is paved in the Middle with Marble, from End to End. In this Street is yet to be ſeen the Apartments of the Knights of *St. John of Jeruſalem*, and the Palace of the Grand Maſter, but very much decay'd; and the Grand Maſter's Palace is now only a Priſon for the Chams of *Tartary*, whom the Grand Seignior baniſhes hither when he depoſes them. The Church of St. *John* is now a Moſque. The City is defended by three Walls and as many Ditches, and is reckon'd one of the ſtrongeſt Fortreſſes in all the Sultan's Dominions; it is inhabited chiefly by *Jews*, *Turks*, and Chriſtians, but the Chriſtians are not allow'd to have their Dwellings within the Walls, bnt only their Shops or Warehouſes, but retire at Night to their Houſes without the Walls. There are two other, once conſiderable, Towns in the Iſland, named *Lindus* and *Camirus*, but now there is no Place of Note, either for Strength, Trade, or Buſineſs, but only *Rhodes*.

Air. The Air is healthful and the Country pleaſant, the Trees and Herbs always green; they have excellent Wine, and Plenty of all Things for the Support and Comfort of Life, except Corn, and that they have in great Plenty from the main Continent of *Natolia*.

Coloſſus of the Sun. It is at *Rhodes* that the famous Coloſſus of the Sun was, which was ſo much ſpoke of in Hiſtory, of which take the following Account: It ſtood at the Mouth or Entrance of the Harbour of *Rhodes*, which though it was fifty Fathom wide, the Coloſſus, which had all the Proportions of a Man, only the Face of it repreſented the Sun, it ſtood with one Foot on one Side of the Harbour, and the other on the other; the Ships that came in or out of the Harbour ſail'd between its Legs; the Height of it was ſeventy Cubits, the Thumb was as thick as a Man could graſp in his Arms, and the Fingers as thick as an ordinary Man; it carried in one Hand a Light-houſe for the Direction of Veſſels into the Harbour; it was thrown down by an Earthquake, and lay till the *Saracens* took *Rhodes*; they beat it to Pieces, and ſold it to a *Jew*, who tranſported it to *Egypt*, and in carrying it aſhore they loaded nine hundred Camels with the Braſs; 'tis true, the whole Account of it ſeems almoſt beyond human Belief, nor will it add much to the Credit of it to conſider into what extravagant Flights, and figurative Expreſſions, the poetical Authors have launch'd into who have writ of of the Hiſtory, but eſpecially the Rarities or Wonders of thoſe Parts of the World; indeed, from the Concurrence of Hiſtory, it would ſeem that there was a Coloſſus of an extraordinary Size, and called the Coloſſus of the Sun, but thoſe exorbitant Dimenſions ſeem rather to be the figurative hyperbolical Expreſſions of one Author being taken for Fact by another, that has magnified this Coloſſus to this monſtrous Size.

As to the Abſtract, or Summary, of the Hiſtory of this Iſland; the Inhabitants ſo improv'd the Advantage of their Situation, that they became the moſt conſiderable Maritime Power in all the *Mediterranean*, and preſcribed Laws for the Regulation of Navigation and Commerce; thoſe Inſtitutions became ſo publick and univerſal, that they were known by the Name of the *Rhodian* Laws, and by them all Maritime Cauſes were decided in all the Provinces of the *Roman Empire*. The *Rhodians*, apprehenſive of falling under the Dominion of the *Macedonians*, they entered into an Alliance with the *Romans*, whom they aſſiſted againſt *Philip*, the Father of *Perſeus*, and afterwards againſt *Antiochus*; for which laſt Service the *Romans* annex'd the Provinces of *Lycia* and *Caria* in *Natolia* to their Dominions; and they continued ſo faithful to the *Romans*, that when all the other Iſlands revolted to *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, they ſtood it out for their Maſters, the *Romans*, but retain'd their own Freedom, till at laſt ſome Liberties that they took was reſented by the *Romans*, as too inſolent, whereupon they loſt their Independency, and the *Romans* annex'd them to the Empire as a Province of it, and ſubject to it, till the Year 1124; at which Time it was reduc'd by the State of *Venice*, but recover'd again in the Year 1227; the *Turks* conquer'd it in 1283; but the Knights of *St. John of Jeruſalem*, being driven from the *Holy Land*, took it about the Year 1308, and held it upwards of two hundred Years; when it was at laſt taken by *Solyman the Magnificent*, and has been ever ſince belonging to the *Ottoman Empire*, and the late Inhabitants, the Knights of *St. John of Jeruſalem*, retired to *Malta*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Treats of the Islands of Scarpanto, Stampalia, Coos, Samos, *and* Patmos.

Scarpanto.

SCARPANTO was antiently call'd *Carpathus*, and being situate between the Islands of *Candia* and *Rhodes*, that Sea is call'd the *Carpathian* Sea; it is a Mountainous Rocky Island, about 60 Miles in Circumference. The chief Town is of the same Name with the Island; it stands towards the Western Coast of it, and has a pretty good Harbour, but the Island produces little except good Quarries of Marble; its chief Inhabitants are *Greek* Christians, but it is under the Government of the *Turks*.

Stampalia.

To the North Westward of *Scarpanto*, and South West from the Coast of *Natolia*, is *Stampalia* or *Astypalæa*; it is about fifty Miles in Circumference; there is but one Town in the Island inhabited by *Greek* Christians; the Town is on the South Part of the Island, and has a pretty good Harbour belonging to it.

Coos.

Coos, now call'd *Longo*, or *Stanchio*, lies North West from *Rhodes*, and not twenty Miles from the Coast of *Natolia*; it is of a longish Form, and about eighty Miles in Circumference: it has one large Town of the same Name, and a good Harbour, defended by a Castle; this is a Rendezvous for the *Turkish* Galleys, and for their Shipping in their Passage from *Constantinople* to *Egypt*. The Western Part of it is a fine Champion Country; but tho' the East Part is more Mountainous, from whose Springs plenty of Rivulets descend to the lower Ground, and make them exceeding Fruitful, the Wine of this Island was very much valued at *Rome*; here are also great plenty of Cypress and Turpentine Trees, and medicinal Plants, both for Beauty and Profit. Here was anciently a Temple dedicated to *Esculapius*. This was the Native Place of *Hypocrates*, and several eminent Physicians and Philosophers, and particularly of *Apellas* the Painter, who drew that famous Picture of *Venus* rising out of the Sea naked; it was first hung up in one of the principal Temples of the Island, but was afterwards remov'd to *Rome*, and dedicated to *Julius Cæsar*, for which Favour the Inhabitants had a great part of their Annual Tribute remitted them. The Inhabitants are mostly *Greeks*, but the Garrison are *Turks*.

Samos.

The Island of *Samos* lies off of *Ephesus*, about two Leagues from the Continent of *Natolia*, and about fifty Miles to the Southward of *Smyrna*, about ninety Miles in Circumference. In this as well as other Islands in the *Levant*, they seldom have Rain, Thunder, or Lightning, but in Winter. There is a great Ridge of Mountains runs cross the Middle of the Island from East to West, composed mostly of white Marble cover'd with Vegetable Earth, which produce Trees, Plants, and fine Springs, the most remarkable of which runs to the Southward by *Juno*'s Temple, and falls into the Sea on the South Side of the Island: There are several Harbours in the Island, as *Scian* on the West; *Tigani*, the Port to the antient City of *Samos*, on the South; but *Vari* on the North is much the best Harbour in this Island. *Juno* and *Samia* the Sybil are said to be Natives of the Island, as well as the two famous Philosophers *Pythagoras* and *Polycrates*.

The Number of Inhabitants are computed at about twelve Thousand. The *Cadi*, the *Aga*, and his Lieutenant, are *Turks*, and are chiefly employ'd in Levying the Grand Seignior's Duties; but Civil Affairs, or Differences, are determined by Magistrates chosen by the *Greeks* from amongst their own People. The *Samians* are an inoffensive People, and thereby live at ease, and are less tyranniz'd over, than the Christians in other Parts of *Turkey*. *Cora* is the chief Town and Residence of the Bishop, whose Revenue is about two Thousand Crowns a Year. The Ecclesiasticks have the greatest Share in the Government, for there are about two Hundred Priests and a much greater Number of Monks, who possess seven Monasteries; there are also four Numeries, and above three Hundred private Chapels in the Island.

Coa.

The Chief Towns are, 1. *Cora* on the South Side of the Island, adjoining to the Ruins of the antient City of *Samos*, within two Miles of the Sea; it is a pleasant fertile Country, but sickly of late by Reason the Waters which formerly discharg'd themselves into the Sea now Stagnate on the Plain. The Town contains about six Hundred Houses, but not fully inhabited. 2. *Vari* above mention'd, it lies on a Descent of a Mountain, about a Mile from the Port of the same Name; in it are about three Hundred Houses, and six Chapels, all meanly built; however, as a Sea-Port it is the most considerable in the Island. There are other large Villages, but do not deserve to come under the Denomination of chief Towns; nor does History give any particular Account of them, perhaps, because they do not produce any thing that is a proper Object for the poetical Fancy of a *Greek* Author, to magnify and enlarge upon. There are in this Island abundance of Mountains, Rocks, and Precipices; but the Plains, especially about *Cora*, are Fruitful and Pleasant. The Mountains produce two Sorts of Pine Trees, one Sort of which grows to a Height fit for Ships Masts, and yield abundance of Turpentine, but the others are only a common sort. They have Wine, Olives, Pomegranates, Mulberry Trees, Figs, Corn, Honey, Wax, Scammony, Apples, Roses, and very fine Silks. There are also Cattle, Oxen, Sheep, Goats, Wild Deer, Wild Hogs, Hares, Partridges and other Game. Their Wool is so good, that the *French* import great Quantities yearly from thence, which, with what they have from other Parts of *Turkey*, supplies them so well that they have the less need of that Commodity from *England*. There are also some Iron Mines in *Samos*. The Emery Stone is also found here, and the Oaker is found near *Vari*, which makes a fine Yellow. There is good Jasper near *Platano*, but the chief Substance of the Mountains is white Marble. Their Wine and Brandy is so wholsome, that Mr. *Tournefort* tells he met with a Monk a Hundred and twenty Years old, that had drank any sort of Liquor in the Island but Wine and Brandy.

Antiquities.

The most remarkable Antiquities in this Island, is the Ruins of the once famous City of *Samos*, which stood on the South Side of the Island, near the Sea, not far from where *Cora* now stands. The North Part of the Town stood on the Side of a Hill, and the lower Part ran along the Sea Shore: Port *Tigani*, which is the Galley Port of the Antients

tients, is in Form of a Creſcent, or half Moon, on the Left Horn whereof was the famous *Jette*, which *Herodotus* reckons amongſt the Wonders of *Samos*, being a Hundred and twenty Foot high, and one thouſand two hundred and fifty Foot into the Sea: From Port *Tygani* there is an Eminence, upon which are abundance of Marble Tomb Stones, but without any Inſcription to diſcover whoſe they are,

The Wall.

At this Place begins the Wall of the upper Town, on the Declivity of a Mountain, and continues the whole Length of it; the Ruins of the Wall being now all that is to be ſeen of it, prove it to have been very magnificent, being ten or twelve Foot thick, with Marble Towers at proper Diſtances: The Deſcent of the Mountain towards the South facing the Sea was cover'd with Buildings, in Form of an Amphitheatre, and a little lower is the Ruins of the Theatre; from whence going down to the Sea, there are abundance of broken Pillars, which by the Order in which they ſtand, ſeem to have ſupported ſome Temples or Portico's; and the like is to be ſeen in ſeveral other Places in the Iſland, ſuppoſed to be of the ſame Uſe.

By what appears of the Ruins of the City of *Samos*, it ſeems to have taken up all the Space between *Corea* and the Sea, which is above two Miles, and to have extended as far as the River, which runs beyond the Ruins of *Juno*'s Temple: There has been a noble Aqueduct cut thro' a Mountain, by which the Water was convey'd to the City of *Samos* from the Head of the River *Metelinous*. The Ruins of the Temple of *Juno*, the Protectreſs of *Samos*, according to the Fictions of the Heathen Poets, is above five Hundred Paces from the Sea, and about the ſame Diſtances from the River *Imbraſus* towards Cape *Corea*. There were in the Courts of this Temple, three Coloſſus like Statues, ſtanding on the ſame Baſe, repreſenting *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, and *Minerva*, but theſe *Mark Anthony* carried to *Rome*.

Patmos, or Patina.

Patmoſa, or *Patina*, as it is now call'd, is the antient *Patmos*, where St. *John* writ his *Revelation*, *Rev.* i. 9. It is South Weſt of *Samos*; it is about twenty Miles in Circumference, but one of the barreneſt Iſlands in the *Archipelago*, full of Rocks, and ſtony Mountains, with ſcarce either Trees or Herbage upon them; there are no Rivers in the Iſland, nor ſcarce any Springs but what are dry in the Summer. The Port *La Scala* on the North Side of the Iſland, is one of the fineſt Harbours in the *Archipelago*, tho' *Sapſila* and *Gricon* are very good Havens, but thoſe commodious Rendezvous for Shipping make it ſo infected with Pyrates and Rovers, that the Inhabitants are forced to quit the Shore, and retire to the Mountains. The Convent of St. *John* is ſituate upon a Precipice about three Miles to the Southwards of *La Scala* Harbour; it is a ſtrong Building with ſeveral Towers like a Caſtle; the Chapel is ſmall, and poorly painted; but the Convent has a Revenue of ſix Thouſand Crowns a Year annex'd to it, and they have Plate to a conſiderable Value; but what is moſt obſervable, as being in a *Turkiſh* Country, is two large Bells, which hang in the Gate-way, the *Turks* very rarely allowing any ſuch thing in their Dominions; but the Veneration for the Memory of St. *John* induces them to allow the Monks of *Patmos* this Privilege. There are about a Hundred Monks belonging to this Monaſtery, ſixty of whom are Reſident, and the reſt are employ'd in Manuring the Farms in the adjacent Iſlands.

Hermitage of the Apocalypſe.

There is a Building, call'd the *Hermitage* of the *Apocalypſe*, which is a Dependent on the Convent of St. *John*, and makes but a poor Figure; it ſtands on the Side of a Mountain; the Way to it is rugged and narrow, and cut thro' a Rock. The Chapel is between forty and fifty Foot long, and between twenty and thirty broad. On the Right Hand is St. *John*'s Grotto, the Entrance whereof is about ſeven Foot high, with a ſquare Pillar in the Middle. There is in the Roof a Crack in the Rock, through which they ſay the Holy Ghoſt dictated to St. *John* the Revelation which he wrote; and altho' I would not be ſo credulous as to impoſe all verbal and ſuperſtitious Traditions upon the Belief of the Reader, as indiſpenſible Matters of Faith; yet, on the other hand, I would conſult Probabilities before I would raſhly reject them; and if ſo, then firſt the Book of the *Revelation* was writ in the Iſle of *Patmos*, Rev. i. 9. Secondly it was, or at leaſt introduced, preceded by a Voice, as of a Trumpet, &c. *Rev.* i. 10. and it is not at all difficult to believe that ſuch a tremendous Voice might be convey'd to him through the Cleft of a Rock.

Preſent State of *Patmos*.

As to the preſent State of this Iſland of *Patmos*, the lateſt Account we have of it, is by Mr. *Tournefort*, who tells us, that there are not above three Hundred Men upon the Iſland at preſent, but that there are at leaſt twenty Women to one Man; they are tolerably handſome in themſelves, but to make themſelves handſomer, as they think, they diſfigure themſelves with Paint, thinking thereby to make Strangers fall in Love with them, and are very willing to go along with Strangers, that offer their Service, to keep them Company.

Government.

There are no *Turks* or *Latins* live in the Iſland, but moſtly *Greeks*, only a Publican from the *Turks* comes yearly to collect the Poll and other Taxes; but their Civil Magiſtrates are of their own chuſing, and of their own People, as in *Samos*. The Biſhop of *Samos* is their Dioceſan, but their Prieſts frequently have Ordination from other Biſhops. They have Corn and Wine of their own Growth; they have alſo Plenty of Partridges, Quails, Pigeons, Snipes, and other Game. I need not take Notice that there are few, if any Cattle upon the Iſland, becauſe I obſerv'd before, that there is very little or nothing for them to eat.

CHAP. XII.

Gives a Description of the Islands of Nicaria, Scio, Mitylene, *or* Lesbos, *and* Tenedos

Nicaria.

TO the Westward of *Samos*, about five or six Leagues, is the Island *Icaria*, so call'd from *Icarus* the Son of *Dedalus*, who being drowned in this Sea, the Island had its Name given in Memory of him, tho' some derive its Name from the *Phenician* Word *Icaure*, which signifies full of Fish; however the Name is now alter'd, or rather corrupted to *Nicaria*; it is a long narrow Island, about sixty Miles in Circumference; a Chain of rugged Mountains run quite through the Middle of it from end to end, but they are cover'd with Wood, and supply'd with good Springs. Their chief Trade, if it may be so call'd, is the Sale of their Pines, Oaks, and other Fire-wood, which they carry to the adjacent Islands for Fuel. They are miserably poor, and not ashamed to beg where ever they come, which they had rather do than work to improve their Land, which would bring both Corn and Fruit, if manur'd and cultivated. Their Bread is Dough Cakes about half baked, of which they only bake a Quantity sufficient for one Meal at a Time, or just as they need them, and in all their Actions they express a more than Brutish Slothfulness, nor do they encourage any sort of Trade, but trust to just what the Earth produces, and that is the Reason why few of their Neighbours or Strangers trouble their Heads to converse with them; yet there is one Advantage arises from thence, and that is, that their Language comes nearer the antient *Greek*, than that of those other Islands, who converse more with Strangers.

Scio.

THE next considerable Island to the Northward of *Samos*, is *Scio* or *Xio*, or by some call'd *Chios*, about eighty or a hundred Miles West from *Smyrna*; it is above a hundred Miles in Circumference, its longest Way is North and South, and it is narrowest in the Middle; it is rocky and mountainous, having no Springs that endure all the Summer; it is not less subject to Earthquakes than *Smyrna*.

THERE is but one City in the Island, and it is of the same Name, *Scio*; it is situate about the Middle of the Eastern Coast; it is well built if compar'd with the Buildings in that Part of the World, for it has been in the Hands of the *Genoese*, and several of their Families yet remain there; they built a Castle close to the Sea, which is yet standing; the City is surrounded with a Ditch and a Wall with round Towers, the Garrison consists of about fourteen hundred Men; this Port is a Rendezvous for Shipping in their Passage between *Syria*, or *Egypt*, and *Constantinople*; there is also commonly a Squadron of *Turkish* Gallies in this Port. There are about fifty or sixty Villages in the Island, besides Farms and Plantations almost all over the Country; the *Greeks* are the most numerous of the Inhabitants; for in the Year 1701 it was computed that there were in the Island about ten thousand *Turks*, three thousand *Latins*, and a hundred thousand *Greeks*, in all one hundred and thirteen thousand Inhabitants.

Scio taken.

THE *Venetians* took it in the Year 1694, but in a Year's Time the *Turks* took it from them, forbidding the *Latins* to wear Hats, as had been usual for them here, and obliged them to shave themselves, and to quit the *Genoese* Habit, and also to alight from their Horses at the entering the Gate of the City, and humbly to salute every *Turk* they met.

Roman Catholick encouraged.

THE *Roman* Catholicks had for a while the free Exercise of their Religion in this Island, a Privilege they obtain'd by the Intercession of the *French* King, and then Divine Service was perform'd with the same Ceremonies as in the Pope's Territories; the Priest carried the Host to the Sick at Noon-Day, and the Procession of *Corpus Christi* was perform'd with the utmost Solemnity, the Clergy walking in their proper Habits, under Canopies, and bearing Censers in their Hands, and all was perform'd with so much Ceremony, that the *Turks* call'd *Scio Little Rome*, and suffer'd them to enjoy all this without Interruption; but the *Turks* envying them that Advantage, found Means to pick a Quarrel with the *Latins*, under a Pretence of their being concern'd in the late Revolution, and so deprived them of their new Privilege; and now their Cathedral is turn'd into a *Turkish* Mosque, and so is the *Dominican* Church, and the Jesuits Church is converted into an Inn, and those of the *Capuchins* and *Recollects* pull'd down; the *Latin* Bishops was forced to fly to the *Morea*, and the Priests, who remain'd behind, were made subject to the Capitation Tax, but were exempted by the *French* King's Intercession.

BUT still the *Greek* Bishop remains the same as before, having three hundred Churches under him, besides Chapels, with which the Island abounds, their Monasteries and Nunneries also enjoy large Revenues; the most considerable Convent is that of *Neamoni*, or *New Solitude*, it is about five Miles from the City, it pays Yearly five hundred Crowns Capitation Tax to the *Turk*; there are in that House about a hundred and fifty *Greek* Monks, who never eat together but on *Sundays* and *Holidays*, and provide for themselves all the rest of the Week, the House allowing them only Bread, Wine, and Cheese, but the richer Sort do not confine themselves to that Allowance, but live very voluptuously.

New Solitude.

THIS Cloister is so large and well endow'd that it looks more like a Town than a Convent; it has an eighth Part of the Revenue of the whole Island, and rather more, for they have fifty thousand Crowns paid them Yearly, besides Gifts and Legacies; for every new Member pays in a hundred Crowns at his Admission, and when he dies two Thirds of his Substance goes to the House, nor can any Relation enjoy the other Third without becoming a Member, so that in short it may be said that all the Effects of the Deceas'd go to the House. This Convent stands on a little Hill, surrounded with rugged disagreeable Mountains and Precipices, which kind of Situation the *Greek* Monks commonly make choice of, quite contrary to the Catholicks, who commonly build their Monasteries in the most agreeable Places they can meet with, and indeed Solitude, rather than a Diversity of pompous Objects, might, one would think, be the most proper Situation for the Exercise of Abstinence and Religion. The Church of this Convent is reckon'd one of the best in the *Levant*, the Columns and Chapiters are of Jasper, dug in this Island, but the Painting is very mean, like that of the rest of the *Greek* Churches.

Manners.

THE Inhabitants are accounted witty and sharp, especially in Tricking and Over-reaching, but Learning bears a very low Value among them; they

are

are extravagant in their Pleaſures, and Drunkenneſs is an ordinary Vice, or rather none at all, with them; it is common with them, as well in the City as in the Country Villages, to dance promiſcuouſly in a Ring on *Sunday* Evenings, and ſometimes till *Monday* Morning, any Stranger preſent, that deſires it, being welcome to join in the Dance, and participate of the Diverſion.

Perſons. The Men are generally tall and well-ſhap'd, but no agreeable Aſpect; however, the Women are extreamly handſom and beautiful, and their Habit exceeding neat and pretty, to which if we add their Vivacity, Wit, and good Humour, they may juſtly be eſteem'd the moſt agreeable Women in the World; they enjoy their full Liberty to converſe, ſing, play, dance, or ſtand at their Doors or Windows, without any of thoſe Reſtraints that abundance of Women in the Eaſtern Countries are kept under; even a Stranger may addreſs them, and have as courteous an Anſwer as in any other Nation; their Nuns are courteous and kind to Exceſs, their uſual Work is embroidering with Gold, Silver, or Silk, and they work exceeding pretty Flowers in their Purſes, Handkerchiefs, *&c.*

Government. The whole Country is under the Government of a Cadi, or Civil Magiſtrate, if it is peaceable Times; but in Times of War the Forces are commanded by a Baſſa, and then there is an Aga of the Janizaries, with three hundred Men, reſides here, but he has only half that Number in Times of Peace. The *Greeks* are diſtinguiſh'd into three different Ranks, or Degrees, and tax'd accordingly; the firſt pay ten Crowns a Head annually, the next three, and the meaneſt two and a half. The *Greeks* are allow'd to chuſe twelve out of their own People in the City to regulate Matters, and preſide over the Community, and in every Village they chuſe ſix for the ſame Purpoſe, and theſe generally determining all Differences, they ſeldom have occaſion to go before the Cadi.

Produce. One great Misfortune which this, as well as others of the *Archipelagian Iſlands*, labours under is, that it does not produce Corn enough to ſupply the Inhabitants, and that is the Reaſon why thoſe Iſlands can never maintain them long againſt the *Turks*, except they have the *Morea* or *Candy* to ſupply them with Proviſions; for if the *Turks* block up all their Supplies of Proviſions from thoſe Iſlands, which cannot furniſh themſelves, they ſtarve them into a Compliance of Courſe. *Scio* produces great Plenty of Wine, and it is ſaid the firſt Red-Wine was made here; the beſt Vineyards are thoſe of *Meſta*, which produced the *Nectar* of the Antients, ſo much admired: They plant their Vines on the Hills, and the Vintage is in *Auguſt*; as to the Ordering their Grapes, they let them dry ſeven or eight Days in the Sun, and having preſs'd them, they let the Liquor ſtand in Tubs in a cloſe Cellar to work; when they make their beſt Wine, they mix ſome white Grapes with their black, which gives the Wine the Reliſh of a Peach Kernel.

They have ſome Olives and Silk, but they neither of them amount to Merchandize, but are moſtly manufactured and conſumed in the Iſland; there are in ſome Parts of the Iſland Abundance of Orange, Citron, Mulberry, Pomegranate, and Turpentine Trees, and the beſt Maſtick in the World. The Maſtick-Tree ſpreads wide, and in a circular Form, ten or twelve Foot high; the largeſt of them grows to about a Foot Diameter in the Body, they are cover'd with a rough greyiſh Bark; the Leaves are about an Inch long, half an Inch broad in the Middle, and narrow at the Ends; from the joining of the Leaves grow Flowers, in Cluſters like Grapes, as does the Fruit, or Berry, which follows them; in each Berry is a white Kernel: The Tree blows in *May*, and the Fruit is ripe after Harveſt, or towards Winter; but the Gum is the moſt valuable, and is properly the Maſtick, which they draw from the Tree by cutting the Bark of the Trunk croſs-wiſe; next Day the Juice diſtils in ſmall Drops, which they call Tears, which by degrees congeal, and form the Maſtick Grains, which harden on the Ground, and are then ſwept up and ſifted; but if it happens to rain in the mean Time, the Maſtick is all loſt; the principal Time of cutting the Trees is about *Auguſt*, tho' they cut them again in *September*, but they yield a leſs Quantity of Maſtick; they never cut the Branches at all. The Ladies of the Seraglio uſe a great Deal of Maſtick for chewing, to ſweeten their Breath and preſerve their Teeth.

Deſcription of the Maſtick Tree.

Turpentine-Tree. The Turpentine-Tree grows wild in the Borders of the Vineyards and by the Highway Sides; it is about as high as the Lentisk, or Maſtick-Tree, and hath a reddiſh Leaf; the way of drawing the Turpentine out, is by wounding the Body of the Tree with a Hatchet, between *July* and *October*, and the Turpentine runs down upon flat Stones, put upon the Place to receive it; it is a natural Balſam, and an excellent Thing for the Stomach. They have a Sort of Figs in this Iſland of which they make Brandy, of which they ſend great Quantities to the neighbouring Iſlands. The Partridges may be reckon'd a tame, or domeſtick Fowl, and People keep Flocks of them, as we do of Hens and Geeſe, and every Village has a common Servant, who calls them out of their Owner's Houſes in a Morning, and leads them into the Fields, and upon a Call which he gives them in the Evening they all come to him, and he leads them to the Village, where they all repair to the Houſes of their reſpective Owners.

Great Men. This Iſland has produc'd ſeveral great Men, as *Ion*, the Tragick Poet, *Theopompus*, the Hiſtorian, *&c.* But beſides them this Place contends with ſome others for being the native Place of *Homer*; and to confirm this Opinion, they ſhew Travellers a Place, which they ſay was *Homer's* School, at the Foot of Mount *Epos*, by the Sea Side, about four Miles from the City of *Scio*: It is a flat Rock, wherein has been hew'd a Kind of a round Baſon, of about twenty Foot Diameter; the Brims of it are made to ſit on, and in the Middle there is a ſquare Stone about three Foot high, and the ſame in Breadth, where it is ſaid he ſate in the Middle of his Scholars; but as no leſs than ſeven great Cities contended for the Honour of his Birth, and every one pretends to give ſome valid Proofs of their Aſſertion, I ſhall not pretend to decide the Debate amongſt ſo many contending Parties.

Homer's Birth-Place.

Mitylene. *Mitylene*, or *Lesbos*, is another of the Iſlands of the *Archipelago*, North-Eaſtward from *Scio*, and not far diſtant from the Coaſt of *Natolia*; it is about fifty Miles long, and five and twenty broad; there are between the barren Mountains ſome fruitful Valleys and Plains, which produce Plenty of Corn. The chief Town is *Mitylene*, now call'd *Caſtro*; it ſtands on a rocky Promontory, on the North Part of the Iſland, having two Forts belonging to it, beſides a Caſtle and a ſtrong Garriſon, to defend it from the Pyrates and Rovers, who very much infeſt thoſe Seas. There are above a hundred Villages in this Iſland, of which one is call'd *Eriſſa*, ſuppoſed to be the *Eriſſus* of the Antients, where *Theophraſtus* and *Phanias*, eminent Diſciples of *Ariſtotle*, were born; as was alſo the famous *Arion*, whoſe Skill in Muſick was ſuch, that he is ſaid by it to have charm'd the Dolphin which carried him aſhore; *Epicurus* read Lectures at *Mitylene* two Years, and as long did *Ariſtotle* reſide here; *Pittacus*, one of the ſeven Wiſe Men, and *Sapho*, the Poeteſs, were Natives

of

of this Place; and in ſhort few Iſlands, if any, have produced Men of greater Genius than this Iſland, and yet ſo degenerate in their Morals, that it became a Proverb in *Greece*, when deſcribing a profligate Perſon, *He lives like a* Lesbian.

Produce. BESIDES Corn, as above mention'd, this Iſland produces excellent Wines, and good Oil, and the beſt Figs in the *Archipelago*; there are Pine-Trees which yield a Sort of a black Gum, which ſerves for the Uſe of Pitch. The Iſland is govern'd by a Cadi and a Janizary Aga, who have the Government of the Iſland, and reſide at the City of *Caſtro*, or *Mitylene*.

Tenedos is about ſixty Miles to the Northward of *Mitylene*, and about two Leagues from the *Natolian* Coaſt; it is about fifty Miles in Circumference, and is the Iſland behind which the *Grecian* Fleet retired when they firſt pretended to raiſe the Siege of *Troy*, and afterwards ſurpriſed it. The moſt remarkable of the Produce of this Iſland is their excellent *Muſcadine* Wine, which exceeds any in the *Archipelago*. The Iſlands hitherto deſcribed are generally reckon'd to belong to *Aſia*.

Tenedos

CHAP. XIII.

Gives a Deſcription of the Iſlands of Delos, Mycone, Naxos, Paros, *and* Antiparos; *with a particular Account of the ſurprizing* Grotto *in the Iſland of* Antiparos.

THIS Parcel of Iſlands is call'd by ſome the *Cyclades*, becauſe they are diſpoſed round about the Iſland of *Delos*; ſome ſay they are fifty-three in Number, however in a clear Day twenty of them may be ſeen at once; the Chief of them is *Delos*, of an oblong Figure, about twice as long as it is broad; it lies near the Middle, between the *Natolian* and *Morean* Shores; and has the South Part of *Mycone* on the Eaſt, the Channel between *Mycone* and *Tinos* on the North, and the Iſland *Rhenia* on the Weſt; ſome call it *Little Delos*, or if the Iſland *Rhenia* be included with it, it bears the Name *Zdeli*, in the Plural Number. This Iſland was held in great Veneration by the Antients, becauſe it was held to be the Birth-Place of *Apollo* and *Diana*; for which Reaſon the Iſlands about it ſent thither Prieſts, Sacrifices, and Choirs of Virgins, and inſtituted great and publick Feſtivals in Honour of *Apollo*; Sir *George Wheeler* tells us there were but twelve of thoſe *Cyclades* at firſt, but the above mention'd Superſtition of the Veneration paid to *Apollo*, drew ſuch a Concourſe of Inhabitants, that they not only comprehended moſt of the Iſlands in the *Egean Sea*, but the Humour ſpread itſelf through moſt of *Greece*, and upon the Deſtruction of *Corinth* by the *Romans*, moſt of the Wealth and Trade of that City remov'd to *Zdeli*, being thereto induced by the Conveniency of the Harbour, and by its Situation between *Europe* and *Aſia*, as well as between *Egypt* and *Syria* to the Southward, and *Conſtantinople* to the Northward, but eſpecially on Account of the Immunities and Freedom from Cuſtoms and Impoſitions which thoſe Iſlands then enjoy'd; and thoſe Privileges were continued to it till the Time of *Mithridates*, who deſtroy'd its Wealth and Power; ſince which Time the Iſlands of *Delos* and *Rhenia* are quite deſerted, and ſerve only as a Retreat and a Shelter for Pyrates.

Remaining Antiquities. THE following Account of the preſent State of this Iſland we have given us in a particular Manner by Sir *George Wheeler* and Monſieur *Spon*, who were both upon the Iſland together; and ſince that by Mr. *Tournefort*, from whoſe Relation we have extracted the enſuing Deſcription of this Iſland: Sir *George Wheeler* relates, that landing on the North-weſt Part of this Iſland, he ſaw a ſquare Foundation, with eleven Granite Pillars, then ſtanding about, and within it; this Place the People call'd the Schools, from a Tradition that the Schools were antiently there. About a Stone's Caſt from thence they found a Pedeſtal of a Statue, in a large oval Foundation; it was dedicated to *Mithridates Euergetes*, in the Time that *Seleucus* of *Morathan* was Gymnaſiarch, or chief Governor, of the Schools, and another Inſcription to the ſame Purport at a great Diſtance from the other two; the oval Foundation is about five hundred Yards in Length, and above three hundred in Breadth; and the Ground within it is ſo much below that without it, that the Wall about it is five Foot high on the Inſide, and but even with the Ground without; which has given Reaſon to conjecture that this was a Reſervoir or Baſon, wherein they floated ſmall Veſſels, to exerciſe their mock Naval Fights; there were ſome Pillars then remaining on the Brink of it, which made them conclude that it had been formerly ſurrounded by ſome Building or Galleries now demoliſh'd.

Apollo's Temple. FURTHER to the Eaſtward they found a Heap of Ruins of white Marble, which they concluded belong'd to the Temple of *Apollo*, becauſe they found the Body of his Statue among them; but the Temple is ſo entirely deſtroy'd, that one cannot give any tolerable Gueſs at the Form of it; and as for the poor Demi-God, he has neither Hands, Feet, nor Head left; but the Shape of his Locks are yet to be ſeen upon his Shoulders, with Marks in the Curls, where 'tis ſuppoſed Jewels were ſet; his Girdle ſeems alſo to have been richly adorn'd, and on his Left Shoulder he had a Mantle; the Shoulders of the Statue were about ſix Foot broad, and the other Parts (what was left) in proportion: When *Wheeler* was there about three Years before, it ſtood upright, with the Head and Arms on; but then a Commander of a Ship attempting to carry it away, and finding it too heavy for him, he broke off the Head, Hands, and Feet, and took them along with him. They found alſo among the ſame Ruins half the Body of a Woman, and juſt by it the Body and Forepart of a Centaur, both admirably well carv'd; and many other Things they found, as Images, and the like, which ſeem'd to have been Ornaments of the Temple Walls.

A fair Portico. NEAR the Weſtern Shore they found the Remains of a wonderful Portico of Marble, whoſe Architraves, Pillars, and other Parts, tho' exquiſite Workmanſhip in themſelves, are now in the utmoſt Ruin and Diſorder; but they found by an Inſcription on one of its Architraves, that it was founded by *Philip* of *Macedon*; the Pillars were of the *Corinthian* Order, angular towards the Baſe, and channell'd upwards. Near the South End of this Portico, and on the Weſt Side of a little Rocky Mountain,

tain, call'd, Mount *Cynthus*, were the Ruins of a Theatre, ſomething more than a Semi-circle, whoſe Diameter to the utmoſt Wall is about two hundred Foot; it is all built of white Marble, and every Stone cut in the Form of a Diamond; there are yet ſome of the Seats remaining. Paſſing further Eaſt over abundance of Ruins, they aſcended Mount *Cynthus*; it conſiſts of Marble of ſeveral Colours, ſome Reddiſh mix'd with Black, ſome Yellow and Black, and ſome of a light grey. On the Sides of the Hill were the Remains of ſeveral Buildings of excellent Marble, curiouſly wrought, as appears by the Pedeſtals, Pillars, and other Fragments, yet remaining; amongſt which are ſeveral Pillars, particularly one dedicated to *Latona*, the Mother of *Apollo* and *Diana*. The Iſland is Rocky and Barren, and affords little of the Neceſſaries of Life except a little Game, and Water is very ſcarce; yet there are ſome Springs in the Iſland which are never dry; one of them is the Fountain *Inopus*, which had four and twenty Foot Water in it in the Summer-time.

Soil.

Rhenia, or the great *Delos*, is ſeparated from the Leſſer, by a Channel near half a Mile broad; it is about eighteen Miles in Circumference; the Mountains are very high; they afford excellent Paſture, and would produce good Corn, if they were cultivated; but this, as well as the other *Delos*, is quite abandon'd and neglected, only the People of *Mycone* ſend Shepherds over hither with Horſes, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats, but they are forced to watch them very narrowly to preſerve them from the Rovers. Mr. *Tournefort* ſaw above ſix Score Altars among the Ruins, moſt of which look'd then very Magnificent. They are moſtly Cylindrical, adorn'd with Feſtoons with Heads of Oxen, or Rams. They are commonly about three Foot and a half high, and three Foot Diameter. One of the Altars had a Bunch of Grapes hanging below the Feſtoons, which made them ſuppoſe it was dedicated to *Bacchus*. So devout is their Worſhip, that that drunken Deity muſt be allow'd his Share. The beſt Port in this Iſland is *Maſtick-Port*, from the great Numbers of Maſtick-Trees growing about it.

Rhenia.

Myconе.

The Iſland of *Myconе*, is about three Miles to the Eaſtward of the Leſſer *Delos*; it is about five and twenty or thirty Miles in Circumference; there is a good Harbour on the Weſt part of the Iſland, by which ſtands the Town, without any Wall or Fortification. One great Baſon or Reſervoir ſerves the Town with Water; there are very few Wells, and little Wood in the Iſland. The higheſt of the Mountains, tho' not very high, is called Mount *Elijah*; the Soil produces Wine, Corn, Figs, and ſome Olives. There are computed to be about five hundred Sea-faring Men in the Iſland; but they go moſtly under the Reputation and Character of Pyrates and Rovers. It is ſuppoſed there are about three Thouſand Inhabitants in the Town, but the Women appear much the moſt, probably becauſe the Men are many of them at Sea. The chief Trade of this Harbour, if it may be call'd a Trade, is its being the Rendezvous of Rovers; hither they bring their Plunder, and for the Conveniency of the Harbour for that Purpoſe, they ſettle their Wives and Families here; their Women have a greater Character for Beauty than Chaſtity, an Inſtance of which we have of an *Engliſh* Captain, who during his Stay there, had ſeveral Temporary Wives; but not content with them, he purchas'd a young Girl of her Father, who with a ſeeming Reluctance ſuffer'd herſelf to be carried Aboard, being accompanied to the Water Side by a Multitude of Women, and about a Hundred Girls from eleven to fifteen Years of Age, who, as the Boat drew off with their Companion, pull'd their Coats as high as their Middle, and ſhew'd what Sex they were; but whether this is their way of taking Leave of one another, or they ſhew'd their Goods to try if the Sailors had a Mind to purchaſe any more of them, I cannot take upon to determine.

Mount *Elijah.*

Trade.

A Woman bought.

The Inhabitants are moſtly Chriſtians of the *Greek* Church, and have Magiſtrates of their own Religion, but they have every Year a *Turkiſh* Officer comes to collect the Taxes they pay to the Porte. A *Turkiſh* Cadi alſo comes ſometimes to hold a Court, and gives Notice to thoſe who have any Controverſies to decide, to come before him, bringing their Evidences along with them, and contrary to the Inclinations of moſt of the Inhabitants of the other Iſlands, they chuſe frequently to come before the Cadi's Tribunal, rather than ſubmit to the Determination of their own Magiſtrates. There are no leſs than fifty *Greek* Churches in *Mycone*, and alſo ſome Monaſteries, and the Nunnery of *Paleo Caſtro*, which ſtands upon a Hill in the middle of the Iſland, near which is the Church of St. *Marina*, where they celebrate one of their great Feſtivals annually on the 17th of *July*, and afterwards drink and dance all Night; but the People in general ſo little value a Monaſtick Life, that their Monaſteries are almoſt out of Uſe, and the Convents that are inhabited, have not above five or ſix Brothers apiece in them, except the great one, where there is about a Dozen.

Religion and Government.

Naxia, or *Naxos*, lies 2 or 3 Leagues to the Eaſtward of *Paros*, and is to the Southward of *Mycone*; it is near a Hundred Miles in Circumference, and is pleaſantly diverſified with Mountains and Valleys, Champain as well as Wood Lands, and well water'd with Springs and Streams, ſome of which are ſtrong enough to turn Mills. There is not one good Port in the Iſland, nor any great Town, but one, but ſeveral Villages, to the Number of forty or fifty; the Town is ſituate on the South Part of the Iſland, and the Caſtle flank'd with great Towers in the moſt elevated Part of it. The Palace of the Dukes of the *Archipelago*, was in a Square in the middle of the Caſtle, and their Deſcendants are ſtill in Poſſeſſion of the Scite of the Caſtle; the *Greeks*, who are the moſt numerous, poſſeſs all that Part of the Town between the Caſtle and the Sea. There is an inconceivable Enmity between the *Latins* who live in and about the Caſtle, and the *Greeks* who live near the Sea, inſomuch that a *Latin* of Quality will ſooner marry the meaneſt Peaſant of their own, than a *Greek* Lady, and for want of Women of their own, and rather than marry a *Greek*, have procur'd Diſpenſations from *Rome*, to marry their firſt Couſins; but notwithſtanding this Emulation between the *Latins* and *Greeks*, the *Turks* uſe them both alike, nor dare they attempt to wear any *Turkiſh* Habit, or any thing but a red Cap upon their Heads in the Preſence of the Commander of even the leaſt of the *Turkiſh* Galliots; but in their Abſence they reſume their wonted Pride, wear their Velvet Caps, brag of their Pedigrees, and what not; and the Women are as vain as the Men, for you may ſee the Ladies returning from the Vintage with thirty or forty Females, ſome riding on Aſſes, ſome on Foot, one carrying a pair of Stockings, another a Towel, a third a Diſh; and thus they make a Show of their Miſtreſs's Cloathing and Furniture, and in this manner they make a kind of a Publick Entry upon ſuch a trifling Occaſion, the Lady at the Head of them, the Children and Servants in the Middle, and the Husband brings up the Rear.

Naxia or *Naxos.*

The chief Employment or Diverſion of the Gentlemen is Hunting, there being plenty of Deer and other Game. There are two Archbiſhops in the Iſland, tho' there are not reckon'd above eight Thouſand Inhabitants; one Archbiſhop is of the

Religion. *Latin*, and the other is of the *Greek* Church; the *Latin* Archbiſhop is nominated by the Pope, and is call'd *Metropolitan*. The *Capuchins* have alſo a Settlement here, and zealouſly apply themſelves to proſelyte *Greeks* to the *Latin* Church, but dare not attempt to convert the Muſſulmen or *Mahometans*, for fear of the impending Puniſhment, which is inflicted with the utmoſt Expedition and Severity upon any who are found endeavouring to draw a *Mahometan* over to the Chriſtian Religion; beſides Churches in the Cities and Villages, there are ſeven or eight Monaſteries in the Iſland, beſides a great Number of Chapels diſpers'd up and down in the Country.

Government. THEY chuſe their Governors themſelves, and amongſt their own People, only there is a *Cadi* or *Mahometan* Judge ſometimes ſent among them, to whom, if Differences run ſo high, or the Caſes of the moſt material Conſequences, they may make the final Appeal, and while this Officer reſides there, he is little leſs than abſolute both in Civil Caſes and Corporal Puniſhment, ordering whom he pleaſes to the Baſtinado or other Puniſhment as he pleaſes, and keeps the Iſland in ſo much Dread, that almoſt all petty Differences diſperſe and vaniſh upon his Approach.

THERE is yet ſtanding upon a little Rock in the Sea, about a Musket Shot from the Caſtle, a beautiful Marble Gate, among a heap of magnificent Ruins of Marble and Granite; but Authors differ in their Conjectures, as to what the Building has been. Mount *Dia*, the higheſt in the Iſland, formerly gave Name to the Iſland, and there is yet to be ſeen on a rough Block at the Bottom of the Mountain a *Greek* Inſcription, intimating, that this is the Mountain of *Jupiter the Preſerver of Flocks*, and there is a Grotto at the Bottom, where they have a Tradition, that the *Bachantes* celebrated the *Orgies*.

Paros. ABOUT ſix or ſeven Miles to the Weſtward of *Naxa* lies the Iſland of *Paros*, which is about forty Miles in Circumference; the chief Town is *Parechia*. There are ſeveral fine Marble Columns lying along, or Horizontally in the Walls, as if the Walls had been built partly out of the Ruins of ſome magnificent Structures, as is part of the Town probably, for there are to be found all over the Town fine Architraves, Pedeſtals, and other Marks of Antiquity in carved Marble of curious Workmanſhip; the Marble of *Paros* is the moſt eſteemed of any of the Iſlands of the *Archipelago*.

Induſtrious. THE Inhabitants of this Iſland, are generally more induſtrious than their Neighbours, and by that Means have plenty of Corn and Wine, as they alſo had of Oil, till the *Venetians* deſtroy'd their Olive Yards; they feed Cattle of almoſt all kinds, and their Meat is very good; but they have a Scarcity of Mutton, becauſe they bring the Sheep up in the Houſes, and feed them with Fruits and Bread, which makes it admirably good.

Their own Magiſtrates. THE *Turks* have ſo much Confidence in the *Greeks* of this Iſland, that they truſt the *Greek* Magiſtrates with the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, and do not ſend a Cadi of their own as in the other Iſlands. There are ſeveral good Harbours in this Iſland, eſpecially that of *St. Mary's*, where a whole Fleet may ride ſecure; there is alſo a Harbour, call'd *Drio*, on the Weſt Coaſt of the Iſland. Beſides the Capital, *Parechia*, there are ſeveral Villages in the Country, and Churches and Chapels ſtand pretty thick; but of all the Churches in the Iſland the *Madona*, without the City of *Parechia*, is the moſt beautiful in all the Iſlands of the *Archipelago*, and yet, as the Columns were made out of the Ruins of old *Paros*, they are not confined to any Order of Architecture, but appear to be a Piece of Patch-work, when compar'd to any curious Structure.

THE moſt valuable Piece of Antiquity yet diſcover'd here, is a Piece of Marble, whereon was engraven the moſt noted *Greek* Epocha's, from the Reign of *Cecrops*, the Founder of the *Athenian* Monarchy, to *Diogenes* the Magiſtrate, being the Space of thirteen hundred Years; it was purchaſed by the *Engliſh*, and is now lodg'd in the Theatre of *Oxford*; and from hence it is that we have gain'd the Knowledge of the Original, or Foundation, of the moſt famous Cities in *Greece*, and when the greateſt Men of that Country liv'd.

Antiparos. THE Iſland *Antiparos* lies about a Mile from *Paros*; it is a flat Rock about ſixteen Miles in Compaſs, it is in ſome Places cover'd with a Strata of vegetable Earth, which produces Corn for the Inhabitants of a ſmall Village, which ſtands by the Sea Side, and contains about three or fourſcore Families.

A Grotto. BUT what is moſt remarkable is a magnificent Grotto, which being one of the greateſt Curioſities of Nature of that Kind, which that, or perhaps any other Part of the World, has produced, take the following Deſcription of it in Mr. *Tournefort*'s own Words, who was in it, and a curious Obſerver of it:

THE Entrance is ſtrait and troubleſome, but when they were in they diſcover'd, by Torch-light, one of the moſt pleaſant Scenes that ever they beheld, and what render'd it the more Surprizing, was, that it was purely the Workmanſhip of Nature; after they had paſs'd this difficult Entrance, it was about forty Fathom high, and fifty broad, the Roof is a very good Arch, embelliſh'd with Variety of natural Fret-work, and in ſome Places they ſaw the exact Reſemblance of Bunches of Grapes, Feſtoons, and Launces of a ſurprizing Length, and on both Sides were Cavities, like little Cloſets, or Cabinets; and amongſt other curious Works, if they may be ſo call'd, or rather Productions of Nature, there was a large Pavilion, which ſo exactly repreſented the Roots, Branches, and Heads of Colliflowers, as if Nature intended to ſhew how ſhe can operate in the Vegetation of Stone; all theſe Figures are of white Marble, tranſparent and chryſtaliz'd, and many of them cover'd with a white Bark, and when ſtruck, they, by the help of the Cavity of the Grotto, ſound like Copper; there were alſo ſeveral Columns of Marble, planted like Trunks of Trees, on the Tuft of a little Rock; Mr. *Tournefort* thinks theſe Stems of Marble certainly vegetate, for not a Drop of Water is known to fall in that Place, and if it did, it is not conceivable how a few Drops, falling from a Height of five and twenty Fathom, ſhould form cylindrical Pieces, terminating like round Caps; (this Mr. *Tournefort* delivers as his Conjecture;) *But I muſt beg leave to ſubjoin, that this is no Proof that the Water does not penetrate through the Roof of the Grotto, and if that be granted, it is not difficult to conceive that ſuch Water, after ſo many Turnings and Windings through the Joints of the Rocks, may have acquired ſo much of the Nature of Stone, and may be ſo much impregnated with it, that by the Time it has penetrated to the Grotto, it may be capable of Petrification, and the Exuberances flowing from it may congeal, as Water upon the lower End of an Icicle, or Tallow at the lower End of a Candle, when making, and become a Sort of Stone, and form the irregular ludicrous, or natural, Shapes of Things which are ſeen in the Grotto.* But to proceed with Mr. *Tournefort*'s Deſcription: In the furthermoſt Part of the Grotto appears a Pyramid, on which the Marqueſs of *Nointel* cauſed Maſs to be ſaid in the Year 1673; it ſtands by itſelf, and is about twenty-four Foot, adorn'd with ſeveral Chapiters fluted, of a dazzling Whiteneſs,

as

as is all the reſt of the Grotto; this Pyramid he thinks the fineſt Plant of Marble in the World, for, (according to his own Words,) *It is impoſſible that this ſhould be done by Droppings of Water, it is much more probable that theſe Congelations, and ſome others, which hang downwards in the Grotto like monſtrous Iſicles, were produced by Vegetation*; but here I would add, that nothing can be produced by Vegetation without ſome Supply of Moiſture, or Nouriſhment; and this ſeems rather to be a Confirmation of what I have above aſſerted, *viz.* that this Moiſture, which produces the Vegetation, is ſupply'd by the Rain penetrating through the Rock, as above, and furniſhing this vegetable Supply.

The Marqueſs of *Nointel*, the *French* Ambaſſador to the Grand Seignior, paſs'd the three firſt Days of the *Chriſtmas Holidays*, *Anno*. 1673. in this Grotto, being attended by above five hundred Perſons; there were a hundred large Torches of Wax, and four hundred Lamps, all alight at the ſame Time, and burnt Day and Night, and were ſo advantageouſly placed, that no Church could be better illuminated; and when the Hoſt was lifted up in Celebration of the Maſs, they gave Fire to four and twenty Patereroes, plac'd at the Entrance of the Cavern, which gave a Report, as being confin'd in the Cavern, beyond Imagination to conceive; and ever ſince that the above-mention'd Pyramid has been deem'd the Altar of the Grotto. The Top of this Mountain, over this Grotto, is cover'd (it may almoſt be ſaid pav'd) with tranſparent Chryſtalizations, like common Talc, the reſt of the Mountain is cover'd with *Cretan* Thyme, Cedars, and Lentisk-Trees; of which ſee before.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Iſlands of Cerigo *and* Melos.

Cerigo. TWO or three Leagues diſtant from the South Eaſt part of the *Morea*, is the antient *Cytherea*, now call'd *Cerigo*; this, according to the fictitious Poetry natural to the *Greeks*, was the Country of *Venus*, and the Native Place of fair *Helen*, whoſe Rape occaſioned the Siege of *Troy*. It is a Mountainous Rocky Iſland, about forty or fifty Miles in Circumference; it produces but little Corn, Wine, or Oil; nor is it very populous, they have plenty of Sheep and Poultry, and good Store of Game. The chief Town is on the South Side of the Iſland, and has a tolerable ſtrong Caſtle, ſituate on a Precipice, and the Harbour under is not amiſs, only expoſed to the South Winds.

Melos. *Melos*, or *Millo*, is an Iſland of a round Form, ſixty or ſeventy Miles in Circumference; it lies about forty or fifty Miles to the Eaſtward of the South Eaſt Part of the *Morea*, and as much to the Northward of *Candia*; it is ſaid to be called *Melos*, from the abundance of Honey it produces; it is generally Mountainous and Rocky, but interſpers'd with fruitful Plains. In the North Weſt Part of the Iſland, is one of the beſt Harbours in the *Levant*; and about two Miles from thence up in the Country, is the Town of *Millo*, which is the only Place of any Note in the Iſland; the Town is tolerably well built, and contains about five thouſand Inhabitants, but it is a filthy Place, for their Hogſties ſtand in the Front of their Houſes, between them and the Street, and there they throw out their Dirt and Naſtineſs, which is very offenſive to Strangers, and renders the Country very unhealthy.

Of the Foundation of Allum and Sulphur. In coaſting round the Iſland, eſpecially in a Boat, being low and near the Water, there are ſeen abundance of ſubterraneous Paſſages, thro' which the Sea Water is convey'd to the minuteſt Cavities of the ſpungy Rocks, of which this Iſland is chiefly compoſed; and from this perpetual ſoaking with the Salt Water, Mr. *Tournefort* thinks that the perpetual ſubterrraneous Fires which are diſcover'd here, are occaſioned, being agitated and corroborated by ferruginous Matter and Sulphur, which is common all over the Iſland, and that theſe Materials are heated by being drench'd with the Sea Water, convey'd to them as above, produces the Allum and Sulphur, with which this Iſland more than others in its Neighbourhood abounds.

The following Conjectures I ſhall deliver in Mr. Tournefort's *own Words, and as they carry with them the utmoſt Face of Probability, I ſhall judge in Favour of them, and then leave every Perſon to judge for himſelf. His Words are theſe:*

" 'Tis highly probable that Salt undergoes much " the ſame Proceſs as that which we put into our " Retorts, that is, the Fire which is continually " heating the Bowels of this Iſland, cauſes an a- " cid Spirit to ſeparate from this Salt, not unlike " what we draw from Sea Salt by common Fire; " and to this Acid muſt be referr'd the Pro- " duction of Allum and Sulphur, the moſt common " Minerals here; for this Liquor penetrating in- " ſenſibly the hardeſt Rocks, diſſolves them, in- " corporates with them, and is converted into " Allum, of which we can hardly make a Queſtion, " becauſe by pouring Spirits of Salt upon com- " mon Stones or Chalk, alluminous Concretions " are produced, and the ſame acid Spirits mix'd " with the Brimſtone, which pervades the Viens " of the Earth, occaſions the Formation of Sul- " phur, which is only a fat Subſtance fix'd by an " acid Spirit. Now the Water of the Sea is not " only Salt, but Bitter and Fat; and this may be " the Reaſon that Sulphur is ordinarily found in " Places near the Sea, where Earthquakes are " alſo moſt frequent, Witneſs thoſe great Volca- " noes, out of which iſſue Flames of Fire, *viz.* " *Veſuvius*, *Stromboli*, *Ætna*, the *Canaries*, &c. In " theſe Iſlands there are Fires which have burnt " ever ſince the World began. The Sulphur of " *Melos* is beautiful, of a Greeniſh Shining Caſt, " which made the Antients prefer it to that of " *Italy*; it is found here in large Pieces when " they did the Ground, and in huge Veins in the " Quarries where they get their Mill-ſtones. Thus " the Iſland of *Melos* is a perpetual Laboratory, " wherein is continually preparing Spirits of Salt, " Allum, and Sulphur, by means of the Sea Wa- " ter, Iron and Rock, and by the ſingular Struc- " ture of the interior Parts of the Iſland, which " are ſo form'd as to ſtrain the Fat and Saline " Parts of the Sea Water, and thoſe Parts are

" put

" put in Motion by the Violence of the Burnings, " excited therein continually, which Burnings " produced by the Spirit of Salt, gives Birth to " the Sulphur and Allum before-mentioned.

THE Waters in this Island of *Melos* are not good to drink, especially in the low Grounds, where they participate so much of the Smell of Sulphur; here are Baths at the Foot of a Hill, between the Town and the Port of *Melos*; the Entrance into them is so narrow, that a Person of a common Size is obliged to stoop to go into them; but being in, you are immediately in a Chamber form'd by Nature, adjoining to which there is a Bason or Reservoir of Luke-warm Salt Water, in which People sit and bathe, and the Place is so hot, that it causes the Sweat to gush out in large Drops, and these are esteem'd much better than artificial Baths. Below these Baths, nearer the Shore, are several little Springs as hot as one can endure his Fingers in them. On the North Part of the Island, near the Village of *Castro*, is a purging Spring, which rises upon the very Edge of the Sea; there is also another a little distance from this; they are both Luke-warm, but have no Salt Taste; with these the *Greeks* of the Island do once a Year purge and drench themselves.

Baths.

BUT altho' this Country abounds with Allum, yet the Mines are not wrought; for the *Greeks*, knowing that if they work the Mines they shall lay themselves liable to new Exactions from the *Turks*, chuse rather to lose the Benefit of their Mines, than to pay the Duties imposed upon 'em; or in other Words, chuse rather to let their Lands by Fallow, than pay the Tythes or Duty upon the Crop. These Allum Mines are about a Mile, or a Mile and a half from the Town of *Melos*. Their Entrance is narrow, but being in, you come into Chambers or Vaults four or five Foot high, and nine or ten broad, crusted almost throughout with Allum, which grows in the Form of flat Stones, from nine to fifteen Lines thick, and as they take away these, new ones succeed in their Places.

Feather'd Allum.

THERE is in these Mines a sort of Allum, call'd *Plumous*, or Feather'd Allum, so call'd because instead of parting into Scales, it rises in white soft Threads or Filaments, like the Feathers of a Quill; and this is supposed one of the most curious Things in the *Levant*, as a part of the product of Nature; it rises in large Lumps, composed of Threads as fine as Silk, silver'd over and shining; they are an Inch and a half or two Inches in Length, and have the same Taste as the Stone Allum; the Stones thro' which this Allum grows, is very light and friable.

A Grotto.

ABOUT four Miles to the Southward of the Town, and close to the Sea Side, is a Grotto, between seventy and eighty Foot deep, into which the Sea Water penetrates in rough Weather; this Grotto is fifteen, sixteen, eighteen, and in some Places twenty Foot high; it is all crusted over with Allum Sublimate, in some Places as white as Snow, and in other Places reddish, Gold-Colour, and in some Places like the Chymical Flowers of Salt-Armoniack; and all the Rocks round the Cavern are lined with such Concretions.

A sulphureous Grotto.

A FEW Paces from this Grotto, on the Sea Shore, is another Grotto, the Bottom of which is fill'd with Sulphur that burns continually, so that there is no going into it, and all the Places about it cast out a continual Smoak, and sometimes Flames of Fire, and in several Places here about is found Sulphur perfectly pure, and always burning, but never is exhausted.

THERE are other Places from whence, Drop by Drop, distils a Solution of Liquid-Allum, which is supposed to be the same that *Pliny* call'd by that Name, and assigns in a particular Manner to this Island of *Melos*. Travellers have observed, that where-ever a Person puts his Head into a Hole in any Rock in this Island, they perceive a considerable Heat; and in one Part of the Island there is a Spot of Ground which burns perpetually, and all the Fields about it smoak like a Furnace; the Surface is as yellow as Gold with the Sulphur which covers the Earth.

Liquid Allum.

IT is observed that this spungy, hollow, rocky Ground of *Melos*, being a kind of a natural Stove, gently warms the Superficies of the Earth in most Places, and causes it to produce the best of Fruits, especially Grapes, Figs, and the most delicious Melons; and so fruitful is the Soil that it never requires to lie Fallow, but in different Years it produces different Crops, as Wheat, Barley, Beans, Pease, Melons, *&c.* their Fields are like so many Gardens, separated by Stone Walls, and produce Varieties of what can be expected from a Garden. They have Butcher's Meat, Fowl, Fish, and Game in great Plenty. And, although the Air is but unwholsome and sickly, and a Burning-Lake near them, or it may rather be said under them, which they may every Day expect to break out and destroy them and their Country, they are a secure thoughtless People; they live happy upon the good Things they enjoy, and never fret or reject themselves at the Thoughts of *Turkish* Tyranny, or the burning Caverns in the Bowels of the Island, of which they stand in perpetual Danger.

THE Inhabitants of *Melos* are generally Seafaring Men, and very active, to serve as Pilots in the *Archipelago*. The Women wear Breeches, which is indeed necessary, because their Coats are so short as scarce to reach to their Knees. The Inhabitants are mostly *Greeks*, but there is a *Latin* Bishop, and a Monastery of *French* Capuchins in the Town of *Melos*, but there is very few of their Clergy. The *Greek* Bishop has a great many Churches under his Care, besides thirteen Monasteries: the most considerable of which is that on Mount *Elijah*; from whence there is a very entertaining Prospect of several of the *Archipelagian* Islands; and what makes the Situation more agreeable is, that there is a Rivulet runs down thro' the Gardens, and Groves of Orange, Olive, and Cedar Trees, surround the Convent, which, all taken together, makes a most agreeable Solitude.

Govern-ment.

THERE are two *Turkish* Magistrates in the Island, the Cadi, or Civil Officer, and the Vaivode, military one; their chief Charge is to take Care of the Sultan's Duties, and next to fill their own Pockets, by their Extortions from the poor *Greeks*; for although the *Greeks* here, as in other *Archipelagian Islands*, have the Privilege to chuse one of their own Brethren to be a Magistrate to determine trifling Differences, yet the last Appeal, if it rises so high, must be made to the Cadi, and so Christian Differences are ultimately determined by *Turkish* Judges.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Gives a Deſcription of the Iſlands of Argentiere, Siphanto, Serpho, Stenoſa, Nicouria, Amorgos, *and* Caloyero.

Argentiere. WITHIN leſs than a Mile to the Northward of *Melos*, lies an Iſland now call'd *Chimoli*, but it was formerly called *Argentiere*, from the Silver Mines that were wrought here, but there are none open at preſent; it is about eighteen Miles in Circumference; there is but one poor Village in the Iſland, and all about it is a mountainous, hungry, barren Soil, and produces nothing worth Notice, except the *Terra Cimolia*, or *Chimolian* Earth, mention'd by the Antients; it is a white heavy Chalk, but it is of little or no Uſe, except in whitening their Linnen.

Siphanto. ABOUT thirty-ſix Miles to the Northward of *Melos* is *Siphanto*, or *Siphno*, formerly call'd *Merope*; it is about forty Miles in Circumference; both the Air and Water here are exceeding good and wholſom; the whole Iſland in general is a Rock of Marble, cover'd with a thick Strata of rich Earth, which produces Corn, Vines, Oil, Capers, Figs, Seſamum, and ſome Silk, which is reckon'd very good; there is Plenty of Poultry, as alſo of Wild-Fowl and other Game. There are five or ſix Villages in the Iſland, containing, by Eſtimation, about five thouſand Inhabitants. There is a Caſtle on a Rock by the Sea Side, ſuppoſed to ſtand on the Ground where *Appolonia* once ſtood.

THERE are in this Iſland not leſs than five hundred *Greek* Chapels, and about ſixty Prieſts, whoſe Buſineſs it is to ſay divine Service in every one of them once a Year, which is on the Anniverſary of their Dedication. Here are four Convents of Monks, and two of Nuns; it is in the Dioceſs of the Biſhop of *Melos*. There are both Lead and Gold Mines in the Iſland, eſpecially the latter, for which it was famous; but the preſent Inhabitants pretend they know not where they are; whether it is really ſo, or the *Greeks* do not care that the *Turks* ſhould reap the Benefit of them, I cannot determine, but certain it is they do not work any of them at preſent; and the latter is the more probable, by ſome Inſtances of their Conduct; for there were ſome *Jews* ſent from *Conſtantinople*, by Order of the Porte, to examine the Gold Mines, and carry back ſome of the Ore: but the Natives apprehending that they ſhould be obliged to work them for the *Turk*, if he once found the Benefit of them, they bribd the Maſter of the Galliot, who was to carry the Ore and the *Jews* to *Conſtantinople*, and he accordingly ſunk the Veſſel, and ſent the Ore and the *Jews* to the Bottom, but as himſelf was Author of the Accident, he took Care to have the Boat ready to ſave himſelf and Company.

THERE was another Time a Company of *Jews* ſent to *Siphanto* on the ſame Errand, but the Natives hired a Rover to attack them, who ſent them packing; ſo that they deſiſted from any further Attempts upon the Gold Mines of *Siphanto*. And 'tis ſaid the Rovers do much more than the Prieſts towards preventing Apoſtacy among the *Greeks*, for as ſoon as they find any of them turn'd *Turks*, they immediately ſeize them, and carry them into Slavery to *Malta* or other Places; and as the *Greeks* are more numerous than the *Latins* in theſe Iſlands, and upon that Account often inſult them, they, for Redreſs, take the firſt Opportunity to apply to a *Malteſe* Corſair, and by their Help procure their inſulting Adverſary to be well baſtinado'd; for though the *Greeks* are much the greateſt Number, yet the *Latins* being ſupported by the Pope, the *French* King the *Venetians*, the *Malteſe*, &c. they maintain their Ground againſt the *Greeks*.

Serphanto. ABOUT twelve Miles North-Eaſt from *Siphanto* is the Iſland of *Serpho*, or *Serphanto*; it is a rugged mountainous Iſland, between thirty and forty Miles in Circumference. In this Iſland there are Mines of Iron and Load-ſtone, ſome of which lie ſo ſhallow that the Waſhing of the Rain lays them open, but the beſt Load-ſtones lie deep. There is a pretty good Port in the Iſland; and about three Miles from it is a Town, built round a frightful Rock, and there are no more Towns in the Iſland, only a ſmall Village. The Inhabitants are all *Greeks*; the Catholicks, perhaps a little biaſs'd by Prejudice, ſay they are a very ſlothful People, and that their Ground lies much in waſte, and their Crops are inconſiderable for want of cultivating their Land.

Government. THERE is a Vaivode reſides here to take care of the Sultans Duties, he is alſo inveſted with an arbitrary Power to inflict corporal Puniſhment upon the Chriſtians when he ſees fit, without any legal Proceſs, or Form of Trial. The Natives are merry, and delight much in compoſing Satirical Songs, dancing, and carouſing, and ſometimes hold it Day and Night, eſpecially at their great Feſtivals.

Stenoſa. *Stenoſa* lies about eighteen Miles North-Eaſt of *Naxos*, or *Naxia*, deſcribed before in Chap. XIII. it is about twelve Miles in Circumference. It's chief Inhabitants are a few Shepherds, who keep ſome Flocks of Goats belonging to the Monks of *Amorgos*, (hereafter to be deſcribed in this Chapter) who, in return for their Attendance, ſend them a Supply of Biſcuit once in a Quarter of a Year.

Nicouria. THE Iſland of *Nicouria* lies about a Mile from *Stenoſa*; it is a Block, or Rock of Marble, about five Miles in Compaſs, in the Midſt of the Sea, but there is not much to be found upon it but Goats and Partridges, the Goats very poor and lean. What is moſt obſervable in this Iſland, is the Multitude of little Chapels, erected upon thoſe Parts of the Rock that are moſt difficult of Acceſs, as believing their Labour in climbing up to them to be meritorious; and it is ſuppoſed that the Reaſons why theſe Chapels are ſo numerous in this Iſland is, becauſe Materials for Building are ſo Plenty; and to that we may add the Zeal of the *Greeks*, few of whom of any Subſtance dying without leaving a Legacy, according to his Ability, towards the erecting ſome or other of thoſe Oratories.

WHEN they have aſcended, with indefatigable Labour, to one of theſe Chapels, they croſs themſelves fifteen or twenty Times, more or leſs, according to the Importance of the Affair they are treating with the Saint, or Image, about, and at every Signing bow their Heads almoſt to the Ground; if their Lamp is not alight, they ſtrike Fire and light it, burning two or three Grains of Incenſe before the Image, or Saint, they are addreſſing, to whom they recommend their Affairs; and if Things have not anſwer'd their Expectation, they ſometimes expoſtulate with him or her: The good

Women commonly bring a little Oil for the Lamp, or a Wax Candle, or Money to buy ſome, and, if they can, they produce a Prieſt to ſay divine Service before the Saint, but if they cannot, their own private Devotion ſerves.

BETWEEN thirty and forty Miles South-Eaſt of *Naxia*, and two or three Leagues from *Nicouria*, *Amorgos.* lies the Iſland *Amorgos*, above-mention'd, between thirty and forty Miles in Circumference. The beſt Harbour is upon the South Shore of the Iſland. The Town is built in Form of an Amphitheatre, on the Side of a Rock; where ſtands the old Caſtle of the Dukes of the *Archipelago*, who reſided here; they have no *Turkiſh* Magiſtrate conſtantly reſiding here, but are generally govern'd by Magiſtrates of their own chuſing from among themſelves. There is a large *Greek* Monaſtery about three Miles from the Town, by the Sea Side, to which the beſt Ground in the Iſland belongs; the Convent is ſituate towards the Bottom of a frightful perpendicular Rock, having Cells for a hundred Caloyers, or Monks; the Entrance is very difficult; it is at the Corner of the Building, which they aſcend by a Ladder, and being there, they go up a very narrow Stair-Caſe; and indeed every Way it is ſo difficult of Acceſs, and ſuch an unpoliſh'd Place, that it looks more like a Retreat or Shelter for Theives than a Convent of Religious.

A miraculous Urn. THERE is a Chapel about four Miles from hence, ſituate in the pleaſanteſt Part of the Iſland, where they ſhew a miraculous Urn, which, the Natives give out, ſometimes ſuddenly fills itſelf with Water, and at other Times as ſuddenly and miraculouſly becomes dry. To this Urn People repair as to an Oracle, to enquire about Buſineſs of Importance; as, ſhall the Sick live or die, ſhall Buſineſs ſucceed, *&c.* Their Method is to go juſt when they find the Impulſe upon them, without any previous Enquiry whether the Well be full or empty; and if they find it full they look upon it as an Anſwer in their Favour, but if empty the contrary; indeed ſome, that are not ſo credulous, think it is acted by a Prieſt, or Papa, who has the Care of it, and can fill or empty it at Pleaſure. I neither can prove nor deny the Fact, but, as an Inſtance of the Poſſibility and Probability of it too, I know a Well, call'd St. *Gowen*'s Well, cloſe by St. *Gowen*'s Chapel, under the Rocks by the Sea Side in *Pembrokeſhire*, that is ſometimes full of Water, and ſometimes quite empty; it is reckon'd miraculouſly medicinal as well as prophetical; for when any diſtemper'd Perſon comes to ſeek a Cure by uſing it, if at their coming they find it dry, they look upon it as an infallible Omen of their Diſtemper being mortal and paſt cure; but more of this Well when we come to the Deſcription of that Country, I have only given this Hint to prove the Probability of the Urn before deſcribed being attended with the Viciſſitudes or Properties above-mention'd. Their Grapes are good, they have Plenty of Corn and Wine, and furniſh their Neighbours with thoſe Commodities; they have alſo Oil ſufficient to ſupply themſelves.

Caloyero is a hideous ſteep Rock in the Sea, about *Caloyero.* twelve Miles from *Amorgos*; but being remarkable for nothing, except the Multitude of Falcons Neſts found there, I ſhall not trouble the Reader with any further Deſcription of it.

CHAP. XVI.

Treats of the Iſlands of Nio, Sikino, Policandro, *and* Santorini.

BEFORE I give a particular Deſcription of the Iſlands above-mention'd, I ſhall only obſerve that there are other Iſlands, as *Cheiro*, *Skinoſa*, *Rachia*, &c. but they being ſuch barren, rocky, inconſiderable Iſlands, producing little or nothing but Graſs to feed a few Goats, they are not worth taking any further Notice of.

Nio THE Iſland of *Nio* is thirty Miles North-Weſt from *Santorini*, and twenty-four Miles from *Naxia*; it is about forty Miles in Circumference, and was formerly call'd *Ios*, from the *Ionians* its firſt Inhabitants. This is one of the Places that contend for being famous for being the Burial-Place of *Homer*, but they cannot produce any viſible Remains of his Tomb. They have ſome good Ports, and the Men of the Iſland are eſteem'd good Pilots in their own and the neighbouring Seas.

Sikino. EIGHT Miles from *Nio* is *Sikino*; it is about twenty Miles in Circumference; it produces abundance of Figs, and the beſt Wheat in the *Archipelago*. The Town, which is alſo call'd *Sikino*, is built upon the Precipice of a Rock, and ſeems to hang over the Sea; it contains about two hundred Inhabitants. There is never a Port belonging to the Iſland.

Policandro. *Policandro* lies to the Weſtward of *Sikino*; It is about eight Miles in Circumference; it has no Harbour, and but one Town, which ſtands about three Miles from the Sea, containing upwards of a hundred Families of *Greeks*; it is generally a rocky parch'd Iſland, but yet they find ſo much of it fit for Cultivation, that it ſupplies them with Corn ſufficient for their own Uſe, as alſo of Fleſh and Fowl, and they drive ſome Trade with the Cotton the Iſland produces. Here are two Convents of Monks, and one of Nuns; there is in the Iſland a Chapel, call'd St. *Michaels*, ſtanding upon ſo high a Hill, that in a clear Day may be ſeen from thence all the Iſlands in the *Archipelago*.

Santorin THE Iſland *Santorini*, corruptly ſo call'd from St. *Irene* the Patroneſs of this Iſland, was formerly call'd *Thera* and *Caliſte*; it is five and twenty Leagues to the Northward of *Candia*; it is in Form of a Creſcent, and about thirty-five Miles in Circumference. The rocky Iſland *Therafia* lies between the two Points of the Creſcent, and defends the Bay from the Violence of the Waves and Weather, thereby making it a ſafe and commodious Harbour, at the Bottom of which is the Caſtle of *Scaro*, or *Caſtro*, upon a Rock that is inacceſſible from the Harbour; there are alſo two other Caſtles, one on each Point of the Creſcent, about which there inhabit two or three hundred Families. There is a Town, call'd *Pirgo*, ſituate upon a Hill of Pumice-Stone, out of which the Natives dig or make Caves; but the Rocks of Pumice-Stone (if they may be ſo call'd) are cover'd with a Strata of Vegetable Earth, which, compared with ſome other Iſlands in its Neighbourhood, may be ſaid to make it like a fruitful Garden; for it produces Grapes, Barley, and Cotton in great Plenty, and ſome Wheat. Their Wine is the Colour of Rheniſh, ſtrong and ſpirituous, it is exported all over the *Archipelago*, and up as high as *Conſtantinople*; this and their Cotton is the chief Trade of the Iſland. The Men and Women go Sharers in the Labour, the

the Women cultivating the Vineyards while the Men are abroad vending their Wine.

Cotton. THEIR Cotton grows on a Shrub like a Goosberry-Buſh, and is not replanted every Year as in other Places. They have no Oil, and ſcarce any Fruit but Figs; their Bread is coarſe Barley-Biſcuit; there is ſaid to be but one Spring in the Iſland, and what Water they have beſide is Rain Water preſerved in Ciſterns; they pickle their Meat in Salt and Vinegar, and dry it in the Sun till it be as hard as Stock-Fiſh; they ſometimes boil it, but more commonly eat it raw, becauſe the Iſland produces little or no Fuel. There are computed to be about ten thouſand Inhabitants upon the Iſland, all *Greeks*, but about one Third of them is of the *Latin* Communion, and under a *Latin* Biſhop; but they are viſited generally every Year by a *Turkiſh* Cadi, or Judge itinerant, here as well as in other Iſlands.

Volcanoes and new Iſlands. THE following Account of Volcanoes, and new Iſlands ſpringing up in this Part of the *Archipelago*, we have from Mr. *Thevenot* and other Authors, whoſe Integrity is indiſputable. They tell us that the Sea about all the Coaſt of *Santorini* is black, and the Land burnt and ſcorch'd, occaſion'd by a rocky Iſland which aroſe out of the Sea ſome Years ago, vomiting out Flames of Fire; and, which is more, *Pliny* tells us that the Iſland of *Santorini* itſelf aroſe out of the Sea by a Volcano, tho' ſo large as to be thirty-five Miles in Circumference, as before obſerv'd; but whether that be ſo, or the Name of the Iſland has been miſtaken or miſ-apply'd, yet certain it is, three other ſmall Iſlands, two in the Harbour and one without, have been raiſed out of the Sea by thoſe ſubterraneous Fires. The firſt of theſe Iſlands, called the *Great Burnt Iſland*, was rais'd and firſt appear'd above the Surface of the Sea after an Earthquake, a hundred and ninty-ſix Years before our Saviour's Incarnation, and was improv'd to twice it's firſt Bigneſs in the Year of our Lord 726, by increaſing till it join'd another, which roſe out of the Sea after the former, and in the ſame Manner, with a terrible Noiſe and Concuſſion; the Space between them filling up, by the ſame Means themſelves were rais'd, and making them both one Iſland. There is a *Latin* Inſcription upon a Marble at *Santorini*, which ſhews that the like happen'd in the Year 1457, only with this Difference, that the ſubterraneous Fire having rais'd an Iſland five or ſix Foot above Water, a vaſt Quantity of Rocks form'd a Space of about a Mile in Circumference, open'd a Paſſage for the Sea Water to enter, by which the Fire was extinguiſh'd, and the Middle of that Space remain'd ſo low, that the Sea flowing into it by a ſubterraneous Paſſage, made a Sort of a Lake, which continues to be ſo to this Day.

White Iſland. ANOTHER new Iſland is a little without the Harbour, call'd the *White Iſland*, the Earth with which it is cover'd being as white as Chalk; *Pliny*, who liv'd in the Time of the Emperor *Veſpaſian*, tells us it aroſe above the Surface of the Sea in his Time. There is alſo another Iſland, call'd the *Little Burnt Iſland*, which, according to the Relation of it given by the antient Inhabitants of *Santorini*, was form'd, or at leaſt firſt appear'd above Water, in the Year 1573. And between this and the *Great Burnt Iſland* there began another Iſland to ariſe in the Year 1707, which continually increas'd till it came to be ſix Miles in Circumference. The Volcano which form'd this Iſland was preceeded by violent Shakings of the Earth, follow'd by a thick Smoke in the Day Time, and Flames of Fire by Night, which proceeded out of the Sea, and theſe were attended with terrible roaring Noiſes under Ground, like Thunder or the firing of Guns.

Another new Iſland. FATHER *Goree* was at *Santorini* in the Year 1707, when this Iſland firſt appear'd, and was very curious in obſerving the ſeveral Steps of its Progreſs every Day for above a Year, and he tells us it did not riſe equally either as to Time or Quantity, but it ſometimes increas'd on one Side only, and ſometimes one Side decreas'd as the other increas'd. He obſerved a Rock to riſe out of the Sea, forty or fifty Paces from the Iſland, which grew higher every Day for four Days together, and then ſunk again and never appear'd any more; but ſome others which diſappear'd as this did, appear'd again afterwards.

THE Sea in the Harbour of *Santorini* often chang'd its Colour to green, reddiſh, and yellowiſh, and a Stink aroſe out of it which annoy'd all the whole Iſland, and was ſuppoſed to proceed from the Sulphur with which the Sea was cover'd; they alſo ſaw Rocks riſe in the Sea on every Side of the Iſland, and growing bigger, they ſpread themſelves till they were united to the firſt, and to one another, and became all but one Iſland; the Smoke increas'd, and, there being no Wind, it aſcended in a Pillar of Smoke to an incredible Height in the Day time, but in the dark Night it appear'd like a Pillar of Fire, and during its Continuance there was an intolerable Stench for about a Day and a half, but then a South-Weſt Wind ariſing, it carry'd the Smoke to the Iſland *Santorini*; it deſtroy'd their Vintage, and their Grapes appear'd ſhrivell'd, like dry'd Raiſons; their Silver and Copper was black and tarniſh'd, and the Natives began to be afflicted with Pains in their Heads; the Sea in ſome Places boil'd and bubbled up, and Fiſh were found dead upon the Shore; Noiſes were heard under Ground like Thunder, or the firing of Cannon, and Flames of Fire darted high up into the Air, and in a Moment diſappear'd. Our Author one Night obſerv'd ſixty Openings in the Iſland, which all threw out Fire, and the next Morning the Iſland was very much advanc'd in Height: ſometimes ſuch large Stones were caſt up into the Air, that they endanger'd both the Natives aſhore and the Ships at Sea. The 15th of *April* 1708, was a ſurprizing terrible Day upon that Account, there being Stones thrown up that Day ſo large that they endanger'd the Building, and with ſuch Force, that ſome of them fell into the Sea at above two Miles Diſtance from the Iſland.

THESE convulſive Motions beginning to decreaſe in *May* 1708, Father *Goree* and the Latin Biſhop of *Santorini* took a Boat, and thought to have gone to the new Iſland; but in their Paſſage the Sea ſmok'd at ſuch a Rate that it indue'd them to put their Hands into the Water, and accordingly, they found it ſo very hot that they thought fit to retreat from their intended Curioſity before they came within five hundred Paces of the *New Iſland*; however, they went afterward to the *Great Burnt Iſland* to view the new Iſland from thence, and judg'd it to be about two hundred Foot high, and of an oblong Form, about five or ſix Miles in Circumference. The laſt Account we have of the State of the new Iſland was in the Year 1711, when the Smoke and Noiſe were more moderate, and the Inhabitants being uſed to it, were under leſs Apprehenſions of Danger, but the Iſland then continued to encreaſe in Magnitude.

Nanſio. THE antient *Anaphe*, now the Iſland of *Nanſio*, is to the Eaſtward of *Santorini*, there is no Harbour in it; it is a rocky mountainous Iſland, about ſixteen Miles in Circumference; it produces ſcarce any Plants or Herbage, but has Abundance of fine Springs upon it. The Inhabitants are all of the *Greek* Communion, the Biſhop of *Siphno* is their Dioceſian. *Religion.* They, like moſt of the other Iſlands, are viſited now

now and then by a *Turkiſh* Cadi in his Circuits. The Country produces Abundance of Wax and Honey; they have but little Corn, and what they have is in Danger of being eaten up with Partridges, who breed ſo faſt, that they are forced to deſtroy their Eggs as much as they can, to prevent their Increaſe. Here the Ruins of a Temple dedicated to *Apollo* are ſtill remaining, conſiſting of Pieces of Marble Columns and a very beautiful Architrave, and at a ſmall Diſtance from thence there is a Chapel built out of the Ruins of that, and dedicated to the Virgin.

CHAP. XVII.

Gives an Account of the Iſlands Thermia, Zia, Syra, Macroniſi, Andros, *and* Tenos.

Thermia. THERMIA takes its Name from the hot Baths that are found upon it, it lies North-Eaſt from *Melos*; it is not very mountainous, but with Cultivation it yields Plenty of Barley, Wine, and Figs, but they have Scarcity of Wheat; they have Silk and Cotton enough for their own Uſe; here is alſo Plenty of Honey, Wax, and Partridges. There are about fourteen or fifteen Churches of the *Greek* Communion. There are many hot Springs in the Iſland; the hot Baths are in the Middle of a Valley, where there are ſtill ſome Remains of Buildings that have been erected about them.

Zia. The Iſland *Zia*, or *Ceos*, is about twelve Miles to the Weſtward of *Thermia*, it is ſix or ſeven Leagues to the Eaſtward of the Main Continent of *Greece*; it is about fifty Miles in Circumference. There were formerly four famous Cities in the Iſland, but now only one, call'd *Carthea*, remains: It is ſituate on the Side of a Hill, and has three Rows of Houſes running acroſs, which being all flat Roof'd appear like a Theatre one above another, that when a Perſon is walking along by the Doors of one Row of Houſes he is upon the flat-roof of the Row that is below it, and there are ſcarce any other Streets but the Tops, or Roofs, of the Houſes, whereby to paſs from one Door to another. The Citadel is neglected and quite in Ruins; and tho' the Town did extend over the Plain to the Port at the Sea-ſide, yet now what is left, ſtands three or four Miles from it. The Port is on the North-Weſt Part of the Iſland, and will admit of the largeſt Veſſels. In the Valley, at the Bottom of the Declivity on which the Town ſtands, are innumerable Pieces of broken Marble Columns and Baſes, and other Remains of Antiquity, hard to be known what they have been.

Streets on the Tops of Houſes.

Joulis. The antient, but now ruinous City of *Joulis*, takes up a whole Mountain. Here is an antient Temple, whoſe Columns have their Shafts half plain half fluted; and from this Temple is a Deſcent to the Sea-ſide, through a noble Stair-caſe cut in Marble, where is the Remains of a Woman's Statue, ſaid to be that of the Goddeſs *Nemeſis*, but the Hands and Head are broke off. There is yet to be ſeen in this Iſland a Way of above three Miles in Length, pav'd with flat Stone, ſuppoſed to have been done when *Greece* was in its flouriſhing State. The Inhabitants are moſtly *Greeks*.

Silk and Camblet are the chief Manufactures, inſomuch that ſome affirm that Silk-Stuffs were firſt invented in this Iſland. They have ſufficient Plenty of Corn and Wine, and their Figs are reckon'd extraordinary; but they have no Oil and very little Wood. It is ſaid that this Country being formerly very populous, there was a Law enacted, that if any Perſon lived to the Age of ſixty Years, he ſhould then be taken off by Poiſon, or ſome violent Means, to prevent his being chargeable; and to make Room for the reſt, and this became ſo cuſtomary, that it leſſen'd the Terror of it, and People living to that Age as willingly reſign'd to Death as a Man would to go to Bed when the proper Hour is come.

To the Eaſtward of *Zia* is the Iſland of *Syra*, about five and twenty Miles in Circumference. There is a Port by the Sea-ſide, where the antient City of *Syros* ſtood; but the chief Town now is about a Mile from thence, and is built round a little ſteep Hill, in the Form of a Pyramid. The *Latins* boaſt of a great Superiority in this Iſland, and are ſaid to be Men of great Piety and Probity, as well as Induſtry in improving their Manufactures, eſpecially that of Cotton. They have alſo Plenty of Barley, Wine, Figs, and Olives, and ſome good Wheat; they have but little Wood, tho' the Air in this Iſland be more cool and moiſt than in the adjacent Iſlands. *Syra.*

Macroniſi, or the antient *Helena*, is about five or ſix Leagues from the Coaſt of *Attica*, and between it and *Zia* before mention'd; it was once a famous Iſland, but now produces little but Graſs and Herbage, the Plants in this Iſland, according to Mr. *Tournefort*'s Account of it, exceeding for Largeneſs and Beauty thoſe of the other Iſlands in the *Archipelago*. *Macroniſi.*

Twelve Miles from *Syra*, and eighteen from *Zia*, is the Iſland of *Joura*; it is about twelve Miles round, but it is a poor, barren, abandon'd Place, having no Towns, nor any Inhabitants but Shepherds, *Joura.*

About forty or fifty Miles North-Eaſt of *Zia*, is the Iſland of *Andros*; it is a large Iſland, about a hundred Miles in Circumference, but much longer from North to South than the Breadth from Eaſt to Weſt. The chief Town, call'd the *Port of Lower-Caſtle*, is ſituate near the Sea, and, by the old Marble Monuments, it appears to have been built upon the Ruins of ſome magnificent City; and though the Materials of the preſent Buildings are very valuable, yet the Architecture is ſo mean, and the Work ſo poorly put together, that they make a very poor Appearance. There are a great Number of Caſtles and Towers to defend the Inhabitants from the Rovers, and in theſe the Cadi and People of Figure have generally their Reſidence. *Andros.*

There are thirty or forty Villages in the Iſland, the Number of whoſe Inhabitants are computed to amount to four or five Thouſand. They have the Privilege of chuſing a Magiſtrate of their own to determine common Cauſes; but they, as well as the Inhabitants of the reſt of the *Archipelagian Iſlands*, are obliged to ſubmit to the Deciſion of a *Turkiſh* Cadi, an Aga, or Colonel, of the Janizaries; the Natives are moſtly of the *Greek* Communion. There is a very delightful Plain between the chief Town and the Village of *Livadie*, it is planted with Oranges, Lemons, Mulberry-Trees, Figs, *Inhabitants.* *Land.*

Figs, Pomegranets, &c. and agreeably ſupply'd with Water by moſt pleaſant Springs and Rivulets.

As to their Habits, the Women of *Andros* have ſhort Coats ſcarce reaching ſo low as their Knees, but their Shifts about three or four Inches lower; they wear five or ſix Gowns, and a great Roll of Cloth about their Waiſts. A Part of the Pride of their Dreſs conſiſts in the Largeneſs of their Sleeves, which ſome have ſo full that they reach almoſt down to the Ground; they wear white Cloth Stockings and Slippers, and a Piece of Linen round their Heads, which alſo hangs down and covers their Breaſts. The common Dreſs of the Men is a Veſt and red Cap, and inſtead of Shoes they commonly wear Pumps or Slippers, as in other Places in the Eaſt.

This Iſland is very fruitful, yielding abundance of Wine, Oil, and Barley, and ſome Wheat; but their richeſt Commodity is Silk, of which it is computed they make above ten thouſand Pound Weight every Year. They diſtil a Sort of a Liquor from the Fruit of the Arbute-Trees for Drink; and their general Food is Goats-Fleſh, Poultry, Veniſon, with Partridges and other Game, but their Seas afford but little Fiſh.

Tine. The Iſland of *Tine* is about ſixty Miles in Circumference; its longeſt Dimenſions are from South-Eaſt to North-Weſt; it lies about a Mile or two South-Eaſt from *Andros*; it is high mountainous Land, compos'd moſtly of Rocks of Marble, tho' in ſome Places cover'd with a Strata of fertile Earth. There are now two or three Houſes on the Southern Shore, where it is ſaid the Capital of the Iſland once ſtood, and is ſtill call'd the City; that which is the chief Town now is about four or five Miles from the ſaid City, up a ſteep rocky Hill; it is defended by a Caſtle; and, beſides this chief Town, there are thirty or forty Villages extremely populous. The Country is well water'd and fruitful, producing Corn, Wine, and a conſiderable Quantity of a Sort of Silk; which, not being fine enough to weave into Stuffs, they make into Stockings and Gloves. The Inhabitants have a more decent Dreſs than in moſt of the neighbouring Iſlands, as having been longer under the Dominion of the *Venetians* than the reſt. Here is a *Latin* Biſhop, and more of the Natives are of the *Latin* Communion, in proportion, than in any of the adjacent Iſlands. *Dreſs.*

The Caſtle of *Tine* ſtands upon an Eminency, and affords a very agreeable Proſpect to ſeveral other of the *Archipelagian Iſlands*, as *Jura* Weſt, *Syra* South-Weſt, *Andros* North-Weſt-Northerly, *Paros* South, *Delos* South-Eaſterly, *Scio* North-Eaſt-Northerly, *Samos* Eaſt-Northerly, *Nicaria* Eaſt, *Mycone* South-Eaſt, *Amorgos* South-Eaſt-Southerly, *Naxia* South-Eaſterly.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Iſlands in the Gulf of Eugia, *as* Porus, Colouri, Negropont, Skyros, Lemnos, Imbros, Samothrace, *and* Thaſſus.

THE Gulf or Bay of *Eugia* is made by the Promontory of *Suniam*, or *Cape Colouni*, on the *Attick* Shore; and Cape *Skillo* on the *Peloponeſian* Shore. In this Gulf are ſeveral little Iſlands, of the chief of which we ſhall give a brief Account in their Order. And firſt,

Eugia. *Eugia*, or *Eugina*, is about eighteen Miles from the *Attick* Shore and twelve from the *Morea*, it is about thirty Miles in Circumference; but, tho' it is ſo large, there is no Harbour in it, nor any City, Town, or Village, except that of *Eugia*, or *Eugina*, the ſame Name with the Iſland; there are about eight hundred Houſes in the Town, and alſo a Caſtle a little above it, from whence there is a very fine Proſpect; for from hence may be ſeen in clear Weather both the *Attick* and *Morean* Shores, as well as ſeveral of the *Archipelagian Iſlands*.

Antiquities. There yet remain two Pieces of Antiquity, both being the Ruins of Temples; one of which is ſuppoſed to be that of *Venus* mentioned by *Pauſanias*, of which there are now but two Pillars ſtanding, with a Piece of an Architrave upon them; it is ſituate at the North-Weſt End of the Town. The other is about four Miles from the Town, and is ſuppoſed to be the Temple which *Æacus*, the firſt King of this Iſland, dedicated to *Jupiter*; it is not long ſince there were twenty Pillars of this ſtanding, with their Architraves upon them, and many others lying on the Ground; being of the *Dorick* Order, channell'd or fluted, two and twenty Foot and a half long, and the Architraves thirteen Foot and a half long, and three broad, and, by the Order in which they are placed, there ſeems to have been fifty in Number, about ſeven or eight Foot from one to another.

Produce. This Iſland affords Plenty of Corn, Cotton, Honey, Wax, Almonds, and other Sorts of Fruit; and Partridges are ſo Plenty that they are a Nuſance rather than an Advantage; for there are ſuch an abundance of them, that they would deſtroy all their Crops if their Breed was not ſuppreſs'd; in order to which they are ſummon'd annually to deſtroy their Eggs at the proper Seaſon, to prevent their growing ſo numerous and detrimental to the Fruits of the Earth.

Porus. The Iſland of *Porus* is ſituate near the *Morea*, between *Eugia* and *Cape Skillo*; it is about eighteen Miles in Compaſs, and inhabited by the *Albaneſſes*; it was formerly call'd *Calabrea*; but is not now remarkable for any Thing but *Demoſthenes*'s being baniſh'd hither, where he poiſon'd himſelf to prevent his falling into the Hands of his Enemy *Antipater*.

Colouri. *Colouri*, formerly call'd *Salamis*, is ſeparated from the Promontory of *Amphalia*, ſix or ſeven Miles from *Athens*, by a Straight not a Mile over; it is about fifty Miles in Circumference. There is a Bay on the Weſt Side of the Iſland, about eight Miles broad and three deep; at the Bottom of which is a Harbour and a Town, call'd by the ſame Name with the Iſland; there are about a hundred and fifty Houſes in it, but they are poor, mean, low Buildings. There is alſo a Village, called *Ambelachi*, which ſtands upon the Straight towards *Athens*, on or near the Place where the antient *Salamis* once ſtood, which, if its Extent may be computed by its Ruins, appears to have been four or five Miles in Compaſs. The King of this Iſland was the famous *Ajax*, who join'd the *Grecian* Navy with his Troops and twelve Ships, when they went to begin the ten Years Siege of *Troy*.

Negropont. To the Northward of the Gulph of *Eugia* is *Negropont*, which ſtretches North-Weſt and South-Eaſt along the Eaſtern Coaſt of *Achaia*; it is an

Iſland ſeparated from the main Continent by a Channel, called *Euripus*; which is in one Place ſo ſhallow and narrow, that Geographers generally make that narrow Place an Iſthmus, by which they join the Peninſula of *Negropont* to the main Continent of *Achaia*; it was formerly called *Eubæa*, and by the modern *Greeks Egripos*; whoſe chief Town, of the ſame Name, ſtands on the South-Weſt Coaſt of the Iſland, and has a Communication with the main Continent by a Stone Bridge; in the Middle of which is a Draw-bridge for Galleys to paſs through, between the Continent of *Achaia* and the Iſland of *Negropont*; ſo that it is indeed an Iſland, becauſe Veſſels can ſail round it, though ſometimes repreſented as a Peninſula, by Reaſon of its Communication with the main Continent by the Bridge above-mention'd.

The Town within the Walls is about two Miles in Circumference, and the Suburbs contain more Inhabitants than the Town, and are moſtly Chriſtians. The Viceroy of this Iſland and the adjacent Parts of *Greece*, is alſo Captain Baſſa, or Admiral of the *Turkiſh* Fleet. When *Mahomet* the Second conquer'd this Iſland, and had put the *Venetian* Governor to Death, he made Love to his Daughter; but ſhe, abhorring the Embraces of him that had murder'd her Father, refuſed him with the utmoſt Contempt; whereupon he cut her to Pieces with his Scymitar; upon the Account of which Suffering, her Memory is deem'd ſacred among the *Venetians* that inhabit in this Iſland.

On the Eaſt of *Negropont*, and towards the North Part of the Iſland, ſtands the Caſtle of *Caſtro*; a populous Place and a Biſhop's See, ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Egripos*. Here is ſuch Plenty of Corn, Wine, Fruit, Fleſh, Fiſh, and Fowl, that our Countryman, Mr. *Wheeler*, relates, that when he was there Wine was two Pence a Gallon, Fleſh a Halfpeny, and Fiſh a Farthing a Pound, in the City of *Egripos*; tho' there is moſt commonly a Fleet of Galleys in the Harbour, which enhances the Price of Proviſions.

A ſtrange Property of the Tide of the *Euripus*.

But what is particularly remarkable here, is the Irregularity or Uncertainty of the Tide in the *Euripus*; of which the above-mention'd Mr. *Wheeler* gives the following Account, *viz.* The Tides are ſometimes regular and ſometimes irregular in the *Euripus*, according to the different Ages and Phaſes of the Moon; the Ebbing and Flowing is perceiv'd ten or a dozen Leagues, on each Side of the Straight, where the Town of *Egripos* ſtands, in the little Bays along the Shore: They are regular the three laſt Days of the Old Moon, and the eight firſt of the New, the ninth Day they become irregular, and continue ſo to the Tenth, Eleventh, Twelfth, and Thirteenth; but on the Fourteenth they are regular again, and continue ſo till the Twentieth: On the one and twentieth they begin to be irregular again, and continue ſo till the Twenty-ſeventh: When they are irregular they flow and ebb twelve, thirteen, or fourteen Times in twenty-four or twenty-five Hours; and, at theſe Times, the Water flows about half an Hour, and ebbs about three Quarters of an Hour; but when the Tides are regular they are govern'd by the ſame Rule, according to the Moon, as in the main Ocean, ebbing and flowing twice in twenty-four or twenty five Hours; the Ebbs and Floods taking up equal Time, and falling back about three Quarters of an Hour every Day, as is common in *England*; but in the *Euripus*, when the Tides are regular, they flow and ebb but about a Foot or little more, and continue ſome Space of Time both at high Water and low Water, that they cannot be perceived either to ebb or flow. Theſe various Properties of the Tide may, I think, be ſaid to be peculiar to the *Euripus* only; and therefore it is no Wonder if what was reported of *Ariſtotle* be true, who, it is ſaid, lived upon this Iſland, and prying eagerly into the Reaſon of theſe Irregularities of the Tide in the *Euripus*, and not able to find out the true Cauſe of thoſe regular Irregularities (if I may ſo call them) threw himſelf into the ſame *Euripus*, the Myſtery of whoſe Flux and Reflux he was not able to find out, ſaying, *If I cannot comprehend thee, thou ſhalt comprehend me.*

The Iſland of *Skyros* lies about ſix or ſeven Leagues to the Northward of *Negropont*; it is full of Rocks and Precipices; it is of a Triangular Form, and is about ſixty Miles in Circumference. The Temple of *Pallas* ſtood in a Town, call'd *Skyros*, by the Sea-ſide, of which there yet remain ſome of the Ruins to be ſeen; it ſeems to have been a ſumptuous Temple, and dedicated to that Goddeſs, as ſhe was deem'd the Protectreſs of this Iſland. The Town of *Skyros* is a Biſhop's See, tho' the Iſland is not very populous, there not being much above three hundred Families (*Greeks*) in the Iſland. The Country affords Plenty of Corn, Wine, Wood, and Water.

There are ſeveral other inſignificant ſmall Iſlands, between *Skyros* and the Gulph of *Theſſalonica*, or *Saloniki*, but as they are not worth any Deſcription, I ſhall paſs them by, and proceed to the Northward to *Stalimene*, or the antient *Lemnos*, which is an Iſland of a Quadrangular Form, in the North Part of the *Egean Sea*, above a hundred Miles in Circumference. The chief Town is of the ſame Name with the Iſland, and on the Weſt Side of it. The Iſland is in the Poſſeſſion of the *Greeks*.

This Iſland is not ſo barren and mountainous as ſome of the reſt; it produces Corn, Wine, and other Neceſſaries of Life; but Wood and Water are very ſcarce. The principal Product, peculiar to this Iſland, is a Sort of Earth of excellent Virtue in curing Wounds, expelling Poiſon, ſtopping Fluxes, and other Uſes in Medicine; it is call'd *Terra Lemnia*, or *Lemnian* Earth, from the Name of the Iſland; it is not allow'd to be ſold abroad, till it be firſt made up in little Balls and ſeal'd by the *Turkiſh* Officers, from whence it is call'd by ſome *Terra Sigillata*, or ſeal'd Earth, and under both theſe Names we have it in *England*. The *Greeks* are very ſtrict as to the Time of their beginning to gather it, which is on the ſixth of *Auguſt*, for which they make religious (or rather ſuperſtitious) Preparations before they begin to touch any in order to gather it: There is only one Hill in all the Iſland that affords this Earth, the Surface whereof being open'd, they diſcover a Vein ſomething like the Earth which is caſt up by Worms; the Quantity they gather is directed by the Prieſts, who, when they think there is enough gather'd, cauſe the Earth to be cloſed up again till the next Seaſon; and, before they diſpoſe of any, they firſt ſend a certain Number of Bags of it to the Grand Seignior, and then ſell the reſt to Foreign Merchants, or any other with whom they can trade, and agree for Price.

When the *Venetians* had Poſſeſſion of this Iſland there were forty or fifty Towns and Villages in it, but it is now but thinly peopled. The beſt Port in this Iſland is call'd *Mudro*; it is on the South-Eaſt Coaſt of it; and above it ſtands a Town, with an indifferent Caſtle garriſon'd by the *Turks*, who are now in the Poſſeſſion of the Iſland. There is another Town alſo, which is built near the Ruins of the antient *Hepheſtiades*, memorable for the Temple of *Vulcan* which was built here upon the Account of a fictitious Notion of the *Greek* Poets, that *Vulcan*, being a deform'd decrepid Brat, was kick'd out of Heaven by *Juno*, and, to add to the Misfortune of his Deformity, he was lamed in the Fall; but falling upon this Iſland, he was thence

thence called *Lemnius*, and, lame as he was, was worſhipp'd as a Deity by the People of this Iſland.

Lembros. BETWEEN *Lemnos* and the *Thracian Cherſoneſe* is the Iſland of *Lembros*, but it is famous for nothing but Mountains and Woods, which are good Shelter for Wild-Beaſts and Game, with which it abounds.

Samo-thrace. *Samondrachi*, or the antient *Samothrace*, is an Iſland oppoſite to the Coaſt of *Thrace*; it was once called *Samos*, but there being another Iſland called *Samos* in the *Archipelago*, and this being upon the Coaſt of *Thrace*, it is called *Samothrace* to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Samos*. There are ſeveral good Ports in this Iſland, but the beſt and largeſt is on the North Side, over which the chief Town is built, being of the ſame Name with the Iſland.

Thaſſus. To the Weſtward of *Samondrachi* lies the Iſland of *Thaſſus*, near the Mouth of the Gulph of *Contteſſa*: It is a fruitful Iſland, about forty or fifty Miles in Circumference, affording Plenty of Wine and Wood, and in the Mountains are Quarries of excellent Marble, call'd *Thaſſian* Marble by Way of Diſtinction for its Goodneſs; there were alſo Mines of ſeveral Sorts of Metal, but I do find that they work any of them now. The chief Town is on the North Part of the Iſland, on a Plain not far from the Sea.

I have been pretty large and particular in the Deſcription of thoſe Archipelagian Iſlands, *not onl becauſe that, even in a large Map, they make ſuch a ſmall Appearance, as if they ſcarce afforded either Trade or Inhabitants, but alſo becauſe they were once under the Government and Diſcipline of the* Greeks; *a People, who, I think I may ſay, without any Apprehenſions of Oppoſition or Contradiction, were once the moſt polite People that ever the World produc'd.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Trade, Weights, Meaſures, and Coins of Turkey.

IF we conſider the Situation of the *Turkiſh Empire*, and the Footing that the Grand Seignior has got in theſe three great Parts of the World, *Aſia*, *Europe*, and *Africa*, but eſpecially the two firſt, it is not difficult to conceive what Opportunities the *Ottomans* have for the Improvement of Trade, if their Indolence did not counter-balance and deſtroy all the other Advantages; for were we to enumerate all the concurrent Teſtimonies they have of a flouriſhing Trade, under ſo many diſtinct Heads, it may be ſaid that the Grand Seignior has, *Firſt*, an extenſive Empire; *Secondly*, in very many Places, a fruitful Soil, as may have been obſerved in the foregoiug Deſcription of the ſeveral Parts of it; *Thirdly*, a better Opportunity of exporting his own Product, and importing that of other Countries, than any Nation in *Europe*; for by the *Perſian Gulph*, and alſo by the *Arabian Gulph*, or *Red Sea*, he may maintain a Communication between his own Dominions and thoſe of *China*, *India*, and all the Spice Iſlands, &c. and by the *Levant* or *Mediterranean*, he may maintain a Correſpondence even as far as himſelf pleaſes, his Territories both in *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africa* bordering upon it, *viz. Egypt* in *Africa*, *Syria* and *Natolia* in *Aſia*, and *Romania*, *Macedonia*, and indeed all *Greece* in *Europe*; and to this we may add *Fourthly*, not only his great Plenty of Timber and all other Materials for Building, and the Quantity of Naval Stores for ſupplying and fitting out vaſt Numbers of Ships; but alſo the Millions of Men which are entirely uſeleſs; which were they diſciplined and improved in Maritime Affairs, as the late great Precedent, *Peter* Czar of *Muſcovy*, did, both by himſelf and innumerable Multitudes of his unpoliſh'd Subjects, I queſtion not but the Grand Seignior might have been able by this Time to have furniſh'd out more, both Merchantmen and Men of War, than any Monarch in the World.

BUT if we look upon the preſent Situation of Affairs in the *Turkiſh* Dominions, we find an extenſive Empire, and a fruitful Soil, not only lying uncultivated, but ſuffer'd to run to Deſtruction; and where-ever the *Turkiſh Empire* has gain'd Ground, and got Poſſeſſion, Deſolation has generally been the unavoidable Conſequence; witneſs the numberleſs Ruins of Temples and other ſumptuous Buildings, whoſe Remains yet diſcover the Curiouſneſs of the Workmanſhip, tho' ſcarce ſufficient to deſcribe the Dimenſions or Proportion of the whole Building; and ſuch have frequently occur'd in this Hiſtory of the *Turkiſh Empire*, as melancholy Teſtimonies of the Truth of this Aſſertion, and of the deſtructive Maxims by which they govern.

AND as to the Trade of the *Perſian Gulph*; the chief Town is *Boſſora*, ſituate at the Mouth of the *Tygris*, or Head of the Gulph, it has more Trade than any if not all the Ports in the Gulph, and at the Seaſon there is a numerous Concourſe of Foreign Merchants from all Parts; but the *Turks* have no Share in what may properly be call'd the Trade of this Gulph, but may rather be ſaid to have a Benefit by the Trade, than to have a Trade themſelves, for they never have ſo much as one Ship here, but the chief Advantage they reap by the Trade here, is the Duties on Goods imported and exported, and the Taxes laid on the Trade of the adjacent Country, in which the Tributary Prince of *Boſſora* has a conſiderable Share: And the King of *Muſcat*, a Prince of *Arabia*, commands the Navigation of both theſe Gulphs, the *Perſian Gulph*, and the *Arabian*, or *Red Sea*, as well as all the *Ethiopick Ocean*, and yet he is not dependent upon or accountable to the Grand Seignior. And as for the Coaſt of *Arabia*, between thoſe two Gulphs, where the *Turks* had good Harbours, the Effect of their univerſal Indolence was found here as well as elſewhere, and, for want of Induſtry to fortify and maintain them, they were ſoon beat out of them, and became an eaſy Prey to their Enemies, inſomuch that they are now very little regarded by the Inhabitants: The *Turks* have indeed ſome Gallies and other Veſſels in the *Red Sea*, trading from Port to Port there, but ſeldom if ever ſail beyond the Straights of *Babelmandel*, or out of the *Red Sea*, which can never be call'd a foreign Trade; and what Trade they have in the *Mediterranean* is moſtly confined to the *Levant*, to tranſport the Product and Manufactures of one Province to another amongſt themſelves; but they never make any long Voyages to diſtant Countries,

or

Iſland ſeparated from the main Continent by a Channel, called *Euripus*; which is in one Place ſo ſhallow and narrow, that Geographers generally make that narrow Place an Iſthmus, by which they join the Peninſula of *Negropont* to the main Continent of *Achaia*; it was formerly called *Eubæa*, and by the modern *Greeks Egripos*; whoſe chief Town, of the ſame Name, ſtands on the South-Weſt Coaſt of the Iſland, and has a Communication with the main Continent by a Stone Bridge; in the Middle of which is a Draw-bridge for Galleys to paſs through, between the Continent of *Achaia* and the Iſland of *Negropont*; ſo that it is indeed an Iſland, becauſe Veſſels can ſail round it, though ſometimes repreſented as a Peninſula, by Reaſon of its Communication with the main Continent by the Bridge above-mention'd.

The Town within the Walls is about two Miles in Circumference, and the Suburbs contain more Inhabitants than the Town, and are moſtly Chriſtians. The Viceroy of this Iſland and the adjacent Parts of *Greece*, is alſo Captain Baſſa, or Admiral of the *Turkiſh* Fleet. When *Mahomet* the Second conquer'd this Iſland, and had put the *Venetian* Governor to Death, he made Love to his Daughter; but ſhe, abhorring the Embraces of him that had murder'd her Father, refuſed him with the utmoſt Contempt; whereupon he cut her to Pieces with his Scymitar; upon the Account of which Suffering, her Memory is deem'd ſacred among the *Venetians* that inhabit in this Iſland.

On the Eaſt of *Negropont*, and towards the North Part of the Iſland, ſtands the Caſtle of *Cariſto*; a populous Place and a Biſhop's See, ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Egripos*. Here is ſuch Plenty of Corn, Wine, Fruit, Fleſh, Fiſh, and Fowl, that our Countryman, Mr. *Wheeler*, relates, that when he was there Wine was two Pence a Gallon, Fleſh a Halfpeny, and Fiſh a Farthing a Pound, in the City of *Egripos*; tho' there is moſt commonly a Fleet of Galleys in the Harbour, which enhances the Price of Proviſions.

A ſtrange Property of the Tide of the *Euripus*.

But what is particularly remarkable here, is the Irregularity or Uncertainty of the Tide in the *Euripus*; of which the above-mention'd Mr. *Wheeler* gives the following Account, *viz.* The Tides are ſometimes regular and ſometimes irregular in the *Euripus*, according to the different Ages and Phaſes of the Moon; the Ebbing and Flowing is perceiv'd ten or a dozen Leagues, on each Side of the Straight, where the Town of *Egripos* ſtands, in the little Bays along the Shore: They are regular the three laſt Days of the Old Moon, and the eight firſt of the New, the ninth Day they become irregular, and continue ſo the Tenth, Eleventh, Twelfth, and Thirteenth; but on the Fourteenth they are regular again, and continue ſo till the Twentieth: On the one and twentieth they begin to be irregular again, and continue ſo till the Twenty-ſeventh: When they are irregular they flow and ebb twelve, thirteen, or fourteen Times in twenty-four or twenty-five Hours; and, at theſe Times, the Water flows about half an Hour, and ebbs about three Quarters of an Hour; but when the Tides are regular they are govern'd by the ſame Rule, according to the Moon, as in the main Ocean, ebbing and flowing twice in twenty-four or twenty five Hours; the Ebbs and Floods taking up equal Time, and falling back about three Quarters of an Hour every Day, as is common in *England*; but in the *Euripus*, when the Tides are regular, they flow and ebb but about a Foot or little more, and continue ſome Space of Time both at high Water and low Water, that they cannot be perceived either to ebb or flow. Theſe various Properties of the Tide may, I think, be ſaid to be peculiar to the *Euripus* only; and therefore it is no Wonder if what was reported of *Ariſtotle* be true, who, it is ſaid, lived upon this Iſland, and prying eagerly into the Reaſon of theſe Irregularities of the Tide in the *Euripus*, and not able to find out the true Cauſe of thoſe regular Irregularities (if I may ſo call them) threw himſelf into the ſame *Euripus*, the Myſtery of whoſe Flux and Reflux he was not able to find out, ſaying, *If I cannot comprehend thee, thou ſhalt comprehend me.*

The Iſland of *Skyros* lies about ſix or ſeven Leagues to the Northward of *Negropont*; it is full of Rocks and Precipices; it is of a Triangular Form, and is about ſixty Miles in Circumference. The Temple of *Pallas* ſtood in a Town, call'd *Skyros*, by the Sea-ſide, of which there yet remain ſome of the Ruins to be ſeen; it ſeems to have been a ſumptuous Temple, and dedicated to that Goddeſs, as ſhe was deem'd the Protectreſs of this Iſland. The Town of *Skyros* is a Biſhop's See, tho' the Iſland is not very populous, there not being much above three hundred Families (*Greeks*) in the Iſland. The Country affords Plenty of Corn, Wine, Wood, and Water.

There are ſeveral other inſignificant ſmall Iſlands, between *Skyros* and the Gulph of *Theſſalonica*, or *Saloniki*, but as they are not worth any Deſcription, I ſhall paſs them by, and proceed to the Northward to *Stalimene*, or the antient *Lemnos*, which is an Iſland of a Quadrangular Form, in the North Part of the *Egean Sea*, above a hundred Miles in Circumference. The chief Town is of the ſame Name with the Iſland, and on the Weſt Side of it. The Iſland is in the Poſſeſſion of the *Grecks*.

This Iſland is not ſo barren and mountainous as ſome of the reſt; it produces Corn, Wine, and other Neceſſaries of Life; but Wood and Water are very ſcarce. The principal Product, peculiar to this Iſland, is a Sort of Earth of excellent Virtue in curing Wounds, expelling Poiſon, ſtopping Fluxes, and other Uſes in Medicine; it is call'd *Terra Lemnia*, or *Lemnian* Earth, from the Name of the Iſland; it is not allow'd to be ſold abroad, till it be firſt made up in little Balls and ſeal'd by the *Turkiſh* Officers, from whence it is call'd by ſome *Terra Sigillata*, or ſeal'd Earth, and under both theſe Names we have it in *England*. The *Greeks* are very ſtrict as to the Time of their beginning to gather it, which is on the ſixth of *Auguſt*, for which they make religious (or rather ſuperſtitious) Preparations before they begin to touch any in order to gather it: There is only one Hill in all the Iſland that affords this Earth, the Surface whereof being open'd, they diſcover a Vein ſomething like the Earth which is caſt up by Worms; the Quantity they gather is directed by the Prieſts, who, when they think there is enough gather'd, cauſe the Earth to be cloſed up again till the next Seaſon; and, before they diſpoſe of any, they firſt ſend a certain Number of Bags of it to the Grand Seignior, and then ſell the reſt to Foreign Merchants, or any other with whom they can trade, and agree for Price.

When the *Venetians* had Poſſeſſion of this Iſland there were forty or fifty Towns and Villages in it, but it is now but thinly peopled. The beſt Port in this Iſland is call'd *Mudro*; it is on the South-Eaſt Coaſt of it; and above it ſtands a Town, with an indifferent Caſtle garriſon'd by the *Turks*, who are now in the Poſſeſſion of the Iſland. There is another Town alſo, which is built near the Ruins of the antient *Hepheſtiades*, memorable for the Temple of *Vulcan* which was built here upon the Account of a fictitious Notion of the *Greek* Poets, that *Vulcan*, being a deform'd decripid Brat, was kick'd out of Heaven by *Juno*, and, to add to the Misfortune of his Deformity, he was lamed in the Fall; but falling upon this Iſland, he was thence

thence called *Lemnius*, and, lame as he was, was worſhipp'd as a Deity by the People of this Iſland.

Lembros. BETWEEN *Lemnos* and the *Thracian Cherſoneſe* is the Iſland of *Lembros*, but it is famous for nothing but Mountains and Woods, which are good Shelter for Wild-Beaſts and Game, with which it abounds.

Samothrace. *Samondrachi*, or the antient *Samothrace*, is an Iſland oppoſite to the Coaſt of *Thrace*; it was once called *Samos*, but there being another Iſland called *Samos* in the *Archipelago*, and this being upon the Coaſt of *Thrace*, it is called *Samothrace* to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Samos*. There are ſeveral good Ports in this Iſland, but the beſt and largeſt is on the North Side, over which the chief Town is built, being of the ſame Name with the Iſland.

Thaſſus. To the Weſtward of *Samondrachi* lies the Iſland of *Thaſſus*, near the Mouth of the Gulph of *Conteſſa*: It is a fruitful Iſland, about forty or fifty Miles in Circumference, affording Plenty of Wine and Wood, and in the Mountains are Quarries of excellent Marble, call'd *Thaſſian* Marble by Way of Diſtinction for its Goodneſs; there were alſo Mines of ſeveral Sorts of Metal, but I do find that they work any of them now. The chief Town is on the North Part of the Iſland, on a Plain not far from the Sea.

I have been pretty large and particular in the Deſcription of thoſe Archipelagian Iſlands, *not onl. becauſe that, even in a large Map, they make ſuch a ſmall Appearance, as if they ſcarce afforded either Trade or Inhabitants, but alſo becauſe they were once under the Government and Diſcipline of the* Greeks; *a People, who, I think I may ſay, without any Apprehenſions of Oppoſition or Contradiction, were once the moſt polite People that ever the World produc'd.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Trade, Weights, Meaſures, and Coins of Turkey.

IF we conſider the Situation of the *Turkiſh Empire*, and the Footing that the Grand Seignior has got in theſe three great Parts of the World, *Aſia*, *Europe*, and *Africa*, but eſpecially the two firſt, it is not difficult to conceive what Opportunities the *Ottomans* have for the Improvement of Trade, if their Indolence did not counter-balance and deſtroy all the other Advantages; for were we to enumerate all the concurrent Teſtimonies they have of a flouriſhing Trade, under ſo many diſtinct Heads, it may be ſaid that the Grand Seignior has, *Firſt*, an extenſive Empire; *Secondly*, in very many Places, a fruitful Soil, as may have been obſerved in the foregoiug Deſcription of the ſeveral Parts of it; *Thirdly*, a better Opportunity of exporting his own Product, and importing that of other Countries, than any Nation in *Europe*; for by the *Perſian Gulph*, and alſo by the *Arabian Gulph*, or *Red Sea*, he may maintain a Communication between his own Dominions and thoſe of *China*, *India*, and all the Spice Iſlands, &c. and by the *Levant* or *Mediterranean*, he may maintain a Correſpondence even as far as himſelf pleaſes, his Territories both in *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africa* bordering upon it, *viz. Egypt* in *Africa*, *Syria* and *Natolia* in *Aſia*, and *Romania*, *Macedonia*, and indeed all *Greece* in *Europe*; and to this we may add *Fourthly*, not only his great Plenty of Timber and all other Materials for Building, and the Quantity of Naval Stores for ſupplying and fitting out vaſt Numbers of Ships; but alſo the Millions of Men which are entirely uſeleſs; which were they diſciplined and improved in Maritime Affairs, as the late great Precedent, *Peter* Czar of *Muſcovy*, did, both by himſelf and innumerable Multitudes of his unpoliſh'd Subjects, I queſtion not but the Grand Seignior might have been able by this Time to have furniſh'd out more, both Merchantmen and Men of War, than any Monarch in the World.

BUT if we look upon the preſent Situation of Affairs in the *Turkiſh* Dominions, we find an extenſive Empire, and a fruitful Soil, not only lying uncultivated, but ſuffer'd to run to Deſtruction; and where-ever the *Turkiſh Empire* has gain'd Ground, and got Poſſeſſion, Deſolation has generally been the unavoidable Conſequence; witneſs the numberleſs Ruins of Temples and other ſumptuous Buildings, whoſe Remains yet diſcover the Curiouſneſs of the Workmanſhip, tho' ſcarce ſufficient to deſcribe the Dimenſions or Proportion of the whole Building; and ſuch have frequently occur'd in this Hiſtory of the *Turkiſh Empire*, as melancholy Teſtimonies of the Truth of this Aſſertion, and of the deſtructive Maxims by which they govern.

AND as to the Trade of the *Perſian Gulph*; the chief Town is *Boſſora*, ſituate at the Mouth of the *Tygris*, or Head of the Gulph, it has more Trade than any if not all the Ports in the Gulph, and at the Seaſon there is a numerous Concourſe of Foreign Merchants from all Parts; but the *Turks* have no Share in what may properly be call'd the Trade of this Gulph, but may rather be ſaid to have a Benefit by the Trade, than to have a Trade themſelves, for they never have ſo much as one Ship here, but the chief Advantage they reap by the Trade here, is the Duties on Goods imported and exported, and the Taxes laid on the Trade of the adjacent Country, in which the Tributary Prince of *Boſſora* has a conſiderable Share: And the King of *Maſcat*, a Prince of *Arabia*, commands the Navigation of both theſe Gulphs, the *Perſian Gulph*, and the *Arabian*, or *Red Sea*, as well as all the *Ethiopick Ocean*, and yet he is not dependent upon or accountable to the Grand Seignior. And as for the Coaſt of *Arabia*, between thoſe two Gulphs, where the *Turks* had good Harbours, the Effect of their univerſal Indolence was found here as well as elſewhere, and, for want of Induſtry to fortify and maintain them, they were ſoon beat out of them, and became an eaſy Prey to their Enemies, inſomuch that they are now very little regarded by the Inhabitants: The *Turks* have indeed ſome Gallies and other Veſſels in the *Red Sea*, trading from Port to Port there, but ſeldom if ever ſail beyond the Straights of *Babelmandel*, or out of the *Red Sea*, which can never be call'd a foreign Trade; and what Trade they have in the *Mediterranean* is moſtly confined to the *Levant*, to tranſport the Product and Manufactures of one Province to another amongſt themſelves; but they never make any long Voyages to diſtant Countries,

or

or ſeldom, if ever, trade with People of a different Faith from their own; but what Trade is carried on between Chriſtendom and *Turkey*, is all perform'd in Forrign Bottoms, and not in the *Turks* own Ships; if we buy their Goods we fetch them, and if we ſell them our Goods, we carry them in our own Ships; and therefore they have no Benefit by the Navigation, and the chief of what they get by Trade is by dealing one with another, and proceeds from the Cuſtoms and Duties of Imports and Exports; and this is their Method of trading with all the Eaſtern Parts of the World as well as the Weſtern, the *Turkiſh* Ships never either fetching home foreign Goods, or carrying their own abroad.

Black Sea. As to the *Black Sea*, it is almoſt ſurrounded by the *Turkiſh* Dominions, and therefore what Trade is there is likewiſe among themſelves, and conſiſts chiefly in Naval Stores and Proviſions; here alſo the *Turks* import great Number of Chriſtian Slaves, taken by the *Tartars* in their Incurſions into Chriſtendom, or ſuch as their *Jewiſh* or Chriſtian Factors buy up and barter for in *Circaſſia*, *Mingrelia*, and the Places adjacent, where the Female Children are generally fair and beautiful, which one would think ſhould be a great Inducement to the Parents to keep them and bring them up, although with the utmoſt Labour and Difficulty, rather than ſell them into *Turkey*; but the Caſe is quite otherwiſe with them, for they are ſo far from apprehending, that the Female Children that they ſell into *Turkey* are going into perpetual Slavery, that they ſell them with a View of their being prefer'd, and hope that their Beauty and Merit will procure them Admiſſion into the Families of the greateſt Princes, and thereby raiſe the Fortune of themſelves and Families; and although the ſelling of Children looks barbarous, yet it is very often a great Step towards the Preferment both of themſelves and Parents; and was it not for theſe Supplies of People from abroad, the Empire would not be ſo populous as it is, although at beſt it is ſtill but thinly peopled.

Trade by Land But beſides what Trade is carried on by Sea in *Turkey*, (but not by *Turkiſh* Ships, as above obſerved,) there are great Quantities of rich Merchandize daily tranſported to and from *Perſia*, *Arabia*, and *Tartary*, by Caravans of Camels and Mules; but this Trade, as well as that by Sea, is not managed by the *Turks*, but chiefly by the *Armenian* Chriſtians or *Jews*. The Mahometan Subjects, living in *Turkey*, do not ſo much regard Trade as Preferment in the Church, the Army, or the Civil Government, leaving Mechanick Employments to their Slaves, and Traffick to the deſpiſed Chriſtians; which indeed is one, if not the only Reaſon for their allowing Chriſtians the Exerciſe of their Religion, becauſe they are glad to converſe and traffick perſonally with Chriſtians abroad, which the *Turks* will not do.

As to the particular Trade between *England* and *Turkey* I ſhall diſtinguiſh it under the two Heads of Imports and Exports; and firſt, of Goods proper to be exported from *England* to *Turkey*: *English Goods proper to be ſent to Turkey.* Theſe are chiefly of our own Manufacture; as, Long and Short Cloths, Stuffs, Perpetuana's, Haberdaſher's Ware, Coney-Skins, Clock-work, Gold and Silver Watches, wrought Iron and Braſs, Glaſs, Lead, and Tin, *&c.* and all theſe, and whatſoever elſe they deal with us for, are carried to them in our own Ships, theirs never trading ſo far abroad, or ſailing into thoſe Nations whoſe People are of a different Faith, as has been obſerved before.

Turkiſh Goods imported to England Goods which the *Engliſh* import from *Turkey* are Raw *Perſian* Silk, Carpets, Goats-hair, Mohair Yarn, Goats-Wool, Cotton-Wool, Cotton Yarn, Dimities, Burdetts, Shagreen-Skins, Cordovants Blue, Red, and Yellow; *Arabian* Coffee, Rhubarb, which comes from Eaſtern *Tartary*; Turpentine, Storax, Gum-Seneca, Gum-Tragacanth, Gum-Arabick, Opium, Organum, Galls, Maſtick, Wormſeed, Senna, Zedoary, Emery-Stones, Terra-Lemnia, or Sigillata, taken up in the Iſland of *Lemnos*, as before obſerv'd in the Deſcription of that Iſland; alſo China-root, Pomegranate Peels, Sponges, Piſtachio-Nuts, Dates, Almonds, Wine, Oil, Figs, Raiſons, Mother of Pearl, Viſui-valinia for Dying, Sal-Armoniack, Allum, Botargo, Roman Vitriol, Box-wood, Bees-Wax, and Saffron.

Prices. It is impoſſible to be exact in giving an Account of the Prices of the ſeveral Goods imported from *Turkey*, becauſe they vary according to the Plenty or Scarcity of them, or according to the Situation of Affairs as to Peace or War. But ſetting aſide theſe Circumſtances, take the following general Account of the Prices of *Turkey* Goods, as we had it from an eminent *Turkey* Merchant, and is as follows:

Sherbuffe Silk, and *Ardepett* Silk, imported from *Smyrna*. Sold by the Battman of 2400 Drams, which ought to hold out eleven great Pounds of twenty-four Ounces (as this and all Raw Silk is ſold) or ſixteen Pounds and an half of ſixteen Ounces to the Pound, is worth about ſixty-five Dollars *per* Battman; the firſt Sort, without the Charges of Cuſtom, *&c.*

	Dollars.	
Cotton Wool	14	*Per* Kental of 100 Rotilo's, which ought to weigh 122 Pounds *Engliſh*.
Cotton Yarn as in goodneſs	20 to 37 ½	
Galls	20	
Vallinia	1 ¼	
Box-wood	1 ½ to 2	
Bees-wax	44	

Goats Wool the Oque of 800 Drams, or five Poudd ſix Ounces *Engliſh*, three Dollars and three Fourths.

	Dollars.	
Scamony	7 ¼	*Per* Oque of 400 Drams, or 2 lb. 11 Oz. *Engliſh*.
Wormſeed	1 ½ to 2	
Roman Vitriol	½	
Mohair Yarn from	1 ½ to 5	
Scio Turpentine	2	
Gum Tragant	½	

Cordovants Blue, Red and Yellow, one Dollar *per* Skin.

Weights.

2400 Drams, or ſixteen Pounds and a half *Engliſh*, is one Battman of *Smyrna*.
180 Drams, one Rotilo.
146 Drams, is one Pound *Engliſh*.
250 Drams, is one Rotilo of Opium.
120 Drams, is one Rotilo of Saffron.

720 Drams, is one Rotilo of *Aleppo*.
700 Drams, is one Rotilo of White Silk.
680 Drams, is one Rotilo of *Perſia* Silk.
The Kental of *Perſia* is 28 Battmans.

Meaſures.

The Pike is 27 Inches *Engliſh*, by which is ſold all Cloth, Wrought Silk, *&c.*

Coins.

Gold and Silver Coins of all Countries paſs in *Turkey* for their Value.

The Coins of the Country are Aſpers, Pararrs, Zelotes, and half Zelotes.

An

An Aſper is about the Value of an Halfpenny. Three Aſpers make one Pararr. Forty Pararrs make one Dollar. A Zelote is two thirds of a Dollar.

Gold Coins.

Zingerlees are worth two Dollars and two thirds. Tomilees are worth two Dollars and a half each.

Ambaſſador and Conſuls

For the Protection of our *Turkey* Trade, and Support of the *Engliſh* Intereſt in the Grand Seignior's Dominions, his Excellency, Mr. *Stanyan*, at preſent reſides at *Conſtantinople*, in the Quality of Ambaſſador of *Great Britain* to the Porte, Mr. *Pournell* Conſul at *Aleppo*, Mr. *Bodington* Conſul at *Smyrna*, Mr. *Wheake* Conſul at *Grand Cairo*, Mr. *Stevens* Conſul at *Theſſalonica*, or *Salonichi*, and Mr. *Hefferman* Conſul at *Cyprus*. Mr. *John Cary* reſides at *Tripoli* under the Character of Vice Conſul, and Mr. *Brutus Brown* is Vice Conſul at *Scanderoon*; which, tho' it be but a Viceconſulate, is one of the moſt profitable Poſts in the Diſpoſal of the *Turkey* Company; there being greater Quantities of Goods exported and imported here to and from *England*, than at any other Port in *Turkey*. It is to be remark'd alſo, that the Raw Silk imported from the Grand Seignior's Dominions, is for the moſt Part of the Growth of *Perſia*: The Silk which is of the Growth of *Turkey* being manufactur'd and ſpent there. There are no Wrought Silks imported into *England* from *Turkey*, or any other Country, becauſe they are at preſent prohibited by Act of Parliament: But the *Turkey* Burdetts, which have a Mixture of Silk, are however pretty much worn amongſt us.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Marriages, Divorces, Concubinage, and Funeral Rites of the Turks *in* Europe.

Two Sorts of Wives

THE Marriages in *Turkey* may be diſtinguiſh'd into two Sorts: One during Life, if there be no ſufficient Cauſe of Divorce in the mean Time, and the other during Pleaſure, or upon ſuch Conditions as the Parties can agree upon; but this muſt be done before a Magiſtrate: And beſides thoſe Wives, they make uſe of their female Slaves as Concubines, without any other Contract than being their own by Purchaſe; but ſuch can ſcarce be called Wives, becauſe both Mother and Children continue to be Slaves, and as much the Property of the Man as Cattle are that are purchaſed in *England* or elſewhere, and deſcend to the next Heir as other Eſtates or Moveables do, or are otherwiſe diſpoſed of according to the Father's Will; but in caſe the Wife dies or is divorced, then what he agreed to allow his contracted Woman goes among the Children he has by her.

The Marriages even of the firſt Sort may rather be called Bargains than Marriages, as indeed we need not go out of *England* for Inſtances of that Kind; for the Agreement or Bargain is generally made when the Parties are either too young or too far aſunder to chuſe for themſelves; but the Fathers, or neareſt Relations, commonly make the Bargain and ſettle the Conditions, which, being recorded before a Judge, is thought ſufficient to make them Man and Wife, without falling in Love with one another, much leſs any Courtſhip; nor is even ſo much as a previous Acquaintance required, and the Marriage is ſo far from being publickly ſolemnized, that the Woman is not ſo much as required to be preſent when herſelf is contracted for in Marriage.

Marrying

The Manner of performing the Rites of Marriage, if it may be ſo called, is, that the Woman, veil'd from Head to Foot, is ſet upon a Horſe, with a Canopy held over her Head, her whole Fortune going before her; which conſiſts of her Baggage and Wardrobe, and ſuch Furniture and Utenſils as her Father is able or willing to give her; and with this, and a large Train of her Acquaintance and Relations, and the Country Muſick and Dancing before her, ſhe is brought in great Pomp to the Bridegroom's Houſe; where the Males and Females, each in ſeparate Apartments, are entertain'd, and ſpend the Day merrily, as is uſual in other Countries upon ſuch Occaſions.

The Day being thus ſpent, and Night coming on, the happy Minute of Conſummation is impatiently expected by the Parties concern'd, and the Lady is led by an Eunuch to the Bridal Chamber, or if ſhe is a Woman of a lower Station, it is thought ſufficient to have her conducted to Bed by ſome of her female Acquaintance; but be that how it will, ſhe is left in her Bedchamber with only her Spouſe, who, according to their Cuſtom, is himſelf to undreſs her, and the Bride, as well as other Women in this Country, wearing Breeches tied with Strings, the waggiſh Females that dreſs her in the Morning, put ſuch long Strings to her Breeches, and tie them in ſo many crabbed croſs-grain'd Knots, and it being contrary to their Nuptial Laws for him to uſe any Violence, by cutting or breaking the Strings, or to fight his Way through, any other Way than by undoing all the Knots, it commonly proves a great Trial of his Patience and Induſtry too, before he can get her undreſt to anſwer his Purpoſe, in going to bed as a new-marry'd Bride.

First Sort of Wives

A *Turk* is allow'd four Wives, (I mean of the firſt Sort, for the reſt I can ſcarce call Wives,) but of theſe they ſeldom take more than one, except with a View of advancing themſelves by the ſecond, third, or fourth Marriage, and in this Caſe they are all deem'd lawful; but it ſeems not much leſs than impoſſible to avoid perpetual Contention where there are four rival Miſtreſſes, equal in Authority, in the ſame Family; only in this Caſe the Man ſtands Umpire, and his Vote alone carries it as to which of the four Wives ſhall be Miſtreſs of the Family.

Second Sort of Wives

The ſecond Sort of Wives are contracted with only for a Time, and are moſt commonly taken when a Merchant or Traveller has Occaſion to reſide in a Place for ſome conſiderable Time which is at a great Diſtance from his own Home; in this Caſe the Terms of Cohabitation are agreed upon, and regiſtered before a Magiſtrate, and the Woman is taken to his Bed with very little Ceremony, and diſmiſs'd with leſs, if any at all.

The third Sort.

The Third Sort are the Female Slaves, who by the Maſter's Choice are admitted, or rather invited, to his Bed; but, by their Laws, theſe muſt be no Subjects either of the Chriſtian or Mahometan Religion, but ſuch Chriſtian Females as, according to their Laws, are become their

Property, either by Capture or Purchaſe, either taken in the Wars or bought in the Market, and their Iſſue are deem'd Slaves as well as their Mothers, except they either become *Turks* by Religion or are naturalized by their Laws; but if either of theſe happen, they are upon the ſame Foot with the Children of the contracted Wives.

These Concubines are ſo far diſtinguiſh'd from their Miſtreſſes, that they wait upon them with uncommon Diligence, and are ſo obſervant to their Commands, that if they give them but a Sign, whether a Nod or a Wink, generally imperceptible to Strangers, all the Miſtreſs's Orders are executed in the Family, without Noiſe or Contradiction, where the Women are ſubmiſſive, and the Orders of the Maſter obey'd, without any Diſpute to the Contrary.

Divorce. But if any diſguſt ariſes which the Husband thinks material, they have recourſe to that common Remedy, a Divorce, and by a Separation put an End to all Conjugal and Family Diſputes; and on the Man's Part it is thought a ſufficient Cauſe for a Divorce if he only alledges that *She finds no Favour in his Eyes*, but then even the Divorces are conditional; for if he cannot charge her with any particular Fault, but only in general that he does not like her, as above, he muſt pay the whole Sum that he previouſly agreed for in Caſe of Death or ſuch Divorce; and this Conſideration makes Divorces leſs frequent than they might be otherwiſe ſuppoſed to be, if Men's Wills were arbitrary, and no Conditions required previous to a Divorce, but only that a Man ſhould be able to procure it upon every Pretence of a Pique againſt his Wife; and what may be another Reſtraint to a Man from too haſtily divorcing his Wife, is, that ſhe, when divorced, is immediately at Liberty to marry again, but the Man is not allow'd to engage with another Wife before his divorced Wife is married, and himſelf has undergone the Mortification of ſeeing her enjoy'd by another.

Adultery is reckon'd ſo heinous a Crime, that if a Woman is taken in it, it is look'd upon as capital; and if the Man is taken in Adultery along with another Man's Wife, it is no Crime for the Woman's injur'd Husband to kill the adulterous Man upon the Spot. *Adultery.*

There are alſo Conditions upon which the Wife may obtain a Divorce; as, when her Husband does not allow her the neceſſary Supplies of Food, Fire, or Clothing, or if he be impotent, or ſpends ſo much of his Time with his Female Slaves, that he does not bed with her once a Week as the Law directs: In ſuch Caſes ſhe may not only obtain a Divorce, but recover of her Husband the Sum agreed upon in Caſe of Separation. Indeed thoſe Women who can ſuffer themſelves to be rival'd in the Marriage Bed, and be content to participate with their Slaves in their Husbands Embraces and Converſations, find very little elſe to diſturb them; for it is the Men's Ambition to have their Wives Apartments commodious and agreeable, and their Furniture and Habits as rich as their Circumſtances will admit; they have all poſſible Attendance and Diverſion at Home, and Liberty to viſit their Relations abroad; their Baths are Places of publick Reſort, where the Females meet with Aſſemblies of their own Sex, and divert themſelves and one another by ſhewing their Jewels and rich Dreſſes, and boaſting of their Husbands Favours; and they pleaſe themſelves ſo with theſe Amuſements, that thoſe of them that can ſubmit to be Partners only in the Husband's Bed, and to be but a Quarter of a Wife, or one of the four or more that her Husband enjoys, thoſe of the *Turkiſh* Wives that can put up with this, reckon themſelves the happieſt Women in the World, as being ſo well provided for in what their chief Ambition aſpires after, and putting ſo ſlender a Value upon thoſe Privileges, which, tho' never ſo diſcontented, they know they cannot be ſure to engroſs entirely to themſelves.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE *TURKISH EMPIRE* IN AFRICA.

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation and Extent of Egypt; *with a Deſcription of* Pompey's *Pillar, the River* Nile, *and other Things remarkable.*

Name of *Egypt.*

EGYPT was formerly called *Miſraim*, ſuppoſed from *Miſraim*, the Son of *Cham*, who was the Son of *Noah*; it has alſo been called *Coptus*, and from thence the Inhabitants were call'd *Cophties*, as the *Egyptian* Chriſtians are at this Day; the *Turks* call it *El-Kibit*, or the overflow'd Country; they having ſo little Knowledge of other Parts of the World, that they thought *Egypt*, or the River *Nile*, was the only Inſtance of thoſe annual Inundations; but it was afterwards call'd *Egypt*, from *Egyptus*, the Brother of *Danaus*, who was once Sovereign of it, which Name it retains and is known by amongſt all *Engliſh* Geographers to this Day.

Situation. *Egypt* is ſituate on the North-Eaſt Part of *Africa*, being bounded on the North by the *Mediterranean*, and on the Eaſt by the *Red Sea* and *Iſthmus* of *Suez*, which makes all *Africa* become a *Peninſula*, and ſeparates it from *Aſia*; the Empire of *Abyſſinia* and *Nubia* bound it on the South, and the Deſarts of *Barca* on the Weſt; its Length from North to South is about ſix hundred Miles, *viz.* from Latitude 21 to Latitude 31 Degrees North, but the Breadth is ſcarce one Third ſo much.

Air. It is but an unwholſome Air, and more ſo by Reaſon of the noiſome Vapours which ariſe from the ſtinking Mud which covers the Ground, eſpecially the lower Part of it, after the overflowing of the *Nile*; and if to this we add the exceſſive Heat of the Country, occaſion'd not only by the Climate, but by the Sandy Deſarts which encloſe *Egypt* on three Sides, all theſe render the Air unwholſome and the Country unhealthy; and beſides there are ſo few Springs in the Country, that they are under a Neceſſity of building their Towns and Habitations near the *Nile*, which they do upon ſuch little Eminences, as either Nature has left or Art produced; ſo that during the overflowing of the *Nile* the Towns appear like ſo many Iſlands, and the Communication with one another at that Time is only by Boats.

Diviſion. *Egypt* in general is divided into Lower, Middle, and Upper *Egypt*. *Lower Egypt* ſome confine to that Triangular Iſland that is contain'd between the *Mediterranean* and thoſe two Branches of the *Nile*, one of which runs into that Sea at *Roſetto*, and the other at *Damietta*, ſeparating themſelves a little below *Old Cairo*; but there is a great Extent of the Country both Eaſtward and Weſtward of this Iſland, and of thoſe Branches of the River that bound what they call *Lower Egypt*.

Chief Towns. In *Lower Egypt* the chief Towns are, 1. *Alexandria*, 2. *Roſetto*, 3. *Damietta*, or the antient *Peluſium*.

Alexandria. 1. *Alexandria* may be call'd the Capital of *Egypt*, and the beſt Harbour therein; it was built by *Alexander the Great*, or at leaſt much enlarged by him, and called by his Name, about three hundred Years before our Saviour's Incarnation. It ſtands about a hundred Miles to the Weſtward of *Grand Cairo*, and forty Miles to the Weſtward of the Weſtermoſt of the two Branches of the *Nile*, upon a low Promontory which runs out into the *Mediterranean*, and forms a Harbour on each Side of the City, but one of them is almoſt choak'd up and little frequented: The Ground upon which *Alexandria* ſtands is ſo low, that the Mariners cannot diſcern it till they come very near it; which was the Occaſion of their building that famous high Watch-tower, ſo frequently mention'd in Hiſtory, for a Sea Mark. The Country is a barren ſandy Deſart, affording very little Proviſion or Fruit, and leſs Water; for thoſe that are near forty Miles from the River *Nile* have no Water but what is brought from thence; and this Conveyance was formerly perform'd by a Canal, but that being now neglected and choak'd up,

moſt

most of the Water, in the dry Season, is carried from the River *Nile* to those remote Parts upon the Backs of Camels.

The Town of *Alexandria* was about seven Miles in Circumference, but indifferently built, except one Street, and the Houses which face the Harbour; the rest is now all in Ruins, except Part of the Walls, which yet shew themselves to be magnificent Ruins, or the Remains of some valuable Pieces of Antiquity; for there still remain great square Towers at about two hundred Paces from each other, and a little Tower between each two. There is in every one of the larger Towers a spacious Hall, supported by an Arch and great Pillars of *Thebaick* Stone, and over the Hall are several other Rooms, and on the Top a Platform of a hundred Foot square; every Tower was capable of containing a Garrison of two hundred Men, and had a Cistern in it, into which the Water of the *Nile* was convey'd.

The antient City of *Alexandria* was built upon Arches, which were supported by Marble Pillars, and under the Houses were Cisterns to receive and retain the Waters of the *Nile*, being either convey'd thither by the Canal above-mention'd, or by Aqueducts, or brought upon Camels to ravish them; and tho' those Methods of supplying them from the River *Nile* do now in some Measure fail, yet they use them to receive the Rain Water, when, by the Defect of their Aqueducts, the said Supplies from the *Nile* are wanting.

Amongst the Ruins of *Alexandria*, are several fine Pillars of Porphiry and Granite, with Hieroglyphicks upon them; these having been formerly the chief Ornament of the antique *Egyptian* Buildings. The Gates still remain, and are compos'd of *Thebaick* Stone and Granite; and where they dig amongst those Parts that are quite demolish'd, they find such Plenty of Marble and Porphiry, that they put no more Value upon it than we do upon common Stone, in those Parts of *England* where it is dug out of the common Quarries, and every one has it for the Labour of digging.

Pompey's Pillar.

The finest Piece of Antiquity, which is now standing and belonging to *Alexandria*, is *Pompey's* Pillar: It stands about two hundred Paces out of the Town, and was erected by *Julius Cæsar* in Memory of his Victory over that great Man; *Pompey*, flying to *Alexandria* from the Battle of *Pharsalia*, and being murder'd some where upon this Part of the Coast of *Egypt*.

The Height of this remarkable Piece of Antiquity is seventy Foot, and the Circumference twenty-five Foot; and, altho' these Dimensions are in themselves large, yet what increases the Wonder is, that it is all one entire Piece of Granite Marble, or some Composition as durable, beautiful, and every Way so much like it, that it is asserted by some to be real Marble; and indeed its long duration, and the likeness it retains to Granite Marble, would almost put it out of dispute and prove its being so, if it was not for the Improbability, not to say Impossibility, of finding Engines to raise such a Stone, or Carriages to bring it to the Place where it now is; and hence some imagine it to be an artificial Composition, cast upon the Spot where it now stands, and in the same Form; and this Opinion is corroborated by a Conjecture that the antient *Egyptians* had an Art of casting Stone, imitating, or rather excelling, the most beautiful natural Marble; and this seems much more probable than that one Marble Pillar of such a Bulk and Weight should be convey'd, either by Land or Water, from any Place where Marble is taken up, to the Place where this Pillar now stands; and if it should be objected, that we cannot, in this Time and Place, cast the same, or as good a Sort of Marble, it may be easily answer'd, that probably we have either lost the Art, or have not the Ingredients proper for such a Composition; and altho' most Arts, when once acquired, are commonly rather improv'd than lost, yet it is not always so, as witness that antient Art of Painting upon Glass, which, I believe, most will own is very much impair'd, if not quite lost, as to the Excellency of former Performances.

There is another Curiosity at *Alexandria*, but we must beg Leave of our Readers to take it upon Trust from us, as we did from Those upon the Spot: It is a Piece of a round Stone Pillar, about two Foot high, upon which they say St. *Catharine* was beheaded, and that it is at this Day stain'd with her Blood and Fat. There is also a Church, call'd the Church of St. *Mark*, now in Possession of the *Egyptian* Christians, call'd *Cophties*; here is the Pulpit in which they tell us St. *Mark* used to preach, and a Picture of St. *Michael*, drawn, as they say, by St. *Luke*. St. *Mark* was the first Patriarch of *Alexandria*, and, as it is related, suffer'd Martyrdom there in the Year 64; and they further say, that his Body was reposited in this Church till the *Venetians* transported it to *Venice*. The Island *Pharos*, on which the famous Light-house, or Watch-tower stood, which was esteem'd one of the Wonders of the World, was formerly separated from *Alexandria* by a Channel a Mile broad, but is now join'd to the Continent, and in the room of the *Pharos* is built a Castle, call'd the *Pharillon*, which serves as a Sea-Mark to Mariners to this Day.

St Catharine beheaded

St. Mark martyr'd

The next considerable Town to *Alexandria*, is *Rossetto*, which stands fifty Miles to the Eastward of it, and was formerly the Place of *Cleopatra's* principal Residence, being seated upon the best Branch of the River *Nile*, which falls into the Sea five Miles below this Town. There is a Bar which prevents large Vessels entring the River, hazardous for lesser Barques in stormy Weather. The Form of the City is almost round, being about six Miles in Circumference, and containing, as 'tis said, near eighty thousand Inhabitants: Whereas there are not above fifteen thousand in *Alexandria*, according to *Gimelli*. *Rossetto* is reckoned one of the prettiest Towns in *Egypt*; having a fine Piazza, and several handsom Hans or Caravansera's; the private Houses also are well built for *Turkey*, and encompass'd with pleasant Gardens, which make it look more like a Village than a City, especially since it is without Walls. There is a tolerable brisk Trade, and Plenty of all Things; but they are put to very great Inconveniences for want of fresh Water some Months in the Year, when the Water of the River is brackish, being mix'd with that of the Sea.

Rossetto City.

About an hundred Miles to the Eastward of *Rossetto*, and as much North-East of *Grand Cairo*, stands the City of *Damietta*, or *Peluſium*, upon the most Easterly Branch of the River *Nile*, four Miles distant from the Sea: It was antiently a considerable Port, and the Country about it affords Plenty of Fruits and Provisions; but the other Branch of the *Nile*, on which *Rossetto* is situated, is more frequented. Seventeen Miles to the Southward of *Damietta*, on the same Branch of the *Nile* towards *Grand Cairo*, lies the City of *Mansoura*, and on both Branches of the *Nile* the Villages and Towns stand exceeding thick; some pretend to have counted no less than three hundred between *Rossetto* and *Grand Cairo*, and assure us, there are not much fewer on the *Damietta* Branch. This Part of *Egypt*, which is enclosed by the two Branches of the *Nile* and the Sea, and antiently call'd *Delta*, from its triangular Figure, is much the most fruitful

Damietta or Peluſium.

Part

Part of *Egypt*, and the moſt conveniently ſituated for a foreign Trade; and *Alexandria*, which lies not far from the Weſtern Mouth of the River, being the only Harbour upon the Coaſt, had the greateſt Trade of any Town in the World, when the rich Merchandize of the Eaſt was brought hither by the *Red Sea*, and from hence diſperſed to all the Kingdoms of *Europe*: but upon the finding out the Paſſage to *India* by the *Cape of good Hope*; this, and all the Towns in *Lower Egypt*, found a very ſenſible Decay in their Trade.

Middle Egypt lies to the Southward of *Lower Egypt*; the Capital City whereof is *Grand Cairo*, the Seat of the Beglerbeg, or Viceroy of the whole Kingdom. It is ſituated in twenty-nine Degrees odd Minutes Northern Latitude, about a Mile and a half diſtance from the Eaſtern Bank of the River *Nile*, being built upon a Plain, at the Foot of a Mountain, of a triangular Form, and about ten Miles in Compaſs. The private Houſes are built of ill burnt Bricks, or Clay, and the Streets are narrow: It muſt be very populous, there being frequently thirty or forty People in a very little Houſe: But thoſe Travellers who talk of its containing five Millions of Inhabitants, are certainly very much miſtaken in their Calculations, and ſhould they include *Old Cairo*, *Bulack*, and other Towns which are at a diſtance from the City, as ſome of them do, the Inhabitants muſt nevertheleſs fall very ſhort of five Millions; eſpecially if we conſider the Unhealthfulneſs of the Place, and the Numbers the Plague ſweeps away once in ſeven Years. The Houſes have flat terraſs'd Roofs, and, tho they have no very grand Appearance on the Outſide, they are many of them beautiful enough: Thoſe of the Quality are built about large Courts or Squares; their Halls pav'd with Marble, and cover'd with handſome Domes, ſometimes open at the Top to let the Air in; the Walls and Roofs of the principal Apartments ſhine with Gold and Azure, and the Floors are laid with rich Carpets.

Middle Egypt

THEIR Moſques are ſome of them very magnificent, but many of them poor Buildings ſcarce ten Paces ſquare; however, their Numbers ſeems to make amends for their Dimenſions, for 'tis reported that there are no leſs than twenty-five thouſand of them in *Cairo*; but I am apt to think there muſt be the miſtake of a Figure in this Account, for five and twenty hundred Temples would be abundantly ſufficient for a City which is not more than ten Miles in Circumference, eſpecially where the Women never enter them, any more than the *Jews* and Chriſtians, who are no inconſiderable Part of the Inhabitants.

THE Caſtle ſtands on the Top of the Hill, on the South Side of the City, of which it has a noble Proſpect. It is two or three Miles in Circumference, and looks like another City: There are the Remains of ſome ſtately Buildings and Marble Pillars of a prodigious Size in it; the Walls are high and thick, and ſtrengthened with Towers after the antient Way of Fortification; and there are ſeveral ſubterraneous Vaults, or Paſſages, leading to diſtant Towns, as is given out; but what our Travellers ſeem to be moſt taken with here, is a deep Well, which has obtain'd the Name of *Joſeph*'s Well, being in the higheſt Part of the Caſtle, two hundred and eighty-two Foot deep; this and one more being all the Springs that are to be found in the Kingdom of *Egypt*. They ſhew alſo the Ruins of a noble Building, which they pretend was *Joſeph*'s Hall where he ſat in Judgment; and here are ſtill remaining thirty fine Pillars of *Theban* Marble, with Part of the Roof overlaid with Azure. The Caſtle is the Reſidence of the Viceroy, and in it are a great many Artificers, who work for the Government, as well as a numerous Garriſon.

THERE are ſcarce any wide Streets in *Cairo*, except thoſe of the great Bazar, or Market-Place, and the Khalis or Canal, a low Street which runs through the Middle of the City, from one End of it to the other, in which the Water ſtands one half of the Year, and is dry the other: It is into this Canal, or Street, they let the River *Nile* when it is at the Height, and from thence diſtribute the Waters to their Gardens, and the adjacent Country.

THE River *Nile*, or *Abanchi*, which in the *Abyſſine* Language ſignifies the Father of Rivers, hath its Source, as is generally held, in eleven or twelve Degrees Northern Latitude, in the Empire of *Abyſſinia*: But whether the *Portugueſe* Jeſuits, as is pretended, or any other Perſons, have diſcover'd the very Fountain it iſſues from, is very much queſtion'd I perceive; the Country where it riſes, as ſome of the Natives relate, being cover'd with vaſt impenetrable Woods. This River runs a Courſe of about fifteen hundred Miles, from South to North for the moſt Part; and a little below *Cairo* dividing itſelf into two Branches, one inclining to the Eaſt and the other to the Weſt, falls into the *Mediterranean*, the Mouths being about an hundred Miles aſunder. As for any other Branches of this River, our modern Travellers take no Notice of them, and probably thoſe that have been mention'd by antient Writers, were only Canals cut from one of theſe, particularly the Canal which was made to convey the Water from the River to *Alexandria* ſeems in our Maps to be laid down for one: However certain it is, there are no other Branches navigable at this Day than thoſe of *Damietta* and *Roſſetto*. At *Old Cairo*, while the River is contain'd within the Bounds of the ordinary Channel, I don't find it is broader than the *Thames* at *London*, and in the dryeſt Seaſon of the Year is fordable in many Places. In the upper Part of the Stream there are ſeven Cataracts, where the Water falls in Sheets from a very great Height, cauſing a prodigious Noiſe; but through *Lower Egypt* it ſlides along with a very gentle Stream, and Paſſengers are ſeldom ſurpriz'd by Tempeſts on it, as 'tis obſerv'd. The Water is very thick and muddy, eſpecially when it is ſwell'd by thoſe heavy Rains which conſtantly fall within the Tropicks, and which annually cauſe the Rivers to overflow the Lands, for many Miles before they reach the Sea, particularly in *Tonquin*, *Siam*, *Bengal*, &c. And theſe alſo leave a proliſick Mud, which yields a vaſt Increaſe, like that which the *Nile* leaves in *Egypt*; and tho' the Waters of all theſe Rivers be very thick, when they have ſtood ſome Time they are not unwholſome nor unpalatable, and ſome eſteem them preferable to Spring Water, on account of the long Courſe they run, in Latitudes where the Sun has ſo much Influence.

River Nile.

THERE are great Rejoicings annually in *Egypt*, when the River *Nile* riſes to a certain Height, for upon this depends the fruitfulneſs of the Country; and the cutting of the Banks to let it into their Canals, from whence 'tis diſtributed into their reſpective Fields, is ſolemniz'd as one of their greateſt Feſtivals. The River begins to ſwell uſually in the Month of *May*, and on the 28th of *June* they publiſh it in *Cairo* and other Towns by a Cryer, how much the Water is encreas'd. The Viceroy has a Palace upon an Iſland oppoſite to *Old Cairo*, in which there ſtands a Pillar divided into Picks, (a Meaſure about the Length of two Feet) Every Day there are Officers appointed to view this Pillar, and obſerve how much the River is riſen, who give Notice to the ſeveral Cryers to

publiſh it in their reſpective Quarters; and when the River is high enough, the Banks are cut to let it into the Khalis or Canal which runs through *Grand Cairo*, and in the dry Seaſon forms one of the fineſt Streets in that Town, as has been intimated already. Mr. *Thevenot* relates, that he attended twice at this Ceremony of cutting the Bank of the River to let it into the Khalis: The firſt Time was in the Year 1657, when the Viceroy being abſent from *Cairo*, the Sous-baſſa came with his Guards to the End of the Khalis, and alighting from his Horſe, gave the firſt Stroke with a Mattock towards breaking down the Bank, and mounting again, rode along the Khalis thro' *Grand Cairo*, while the Workmen were employ'd in demoliſhing it: He ſtopp'd before the Doors of the *Frank* Conſuls, which open into the Khalis, who made him a Preſent on this Occaſion; after the Baſſa follow'd a Mob, ſinging and hollowing, and expreſſing their Joy in ſuch a Manner as the Vulgar uſually do: Some time after came the Water pouring in, of which they had Notice by a louder Shout than ordinary; ſeveral Men ſwam in the Stream, and other merry Fellows in Boats, attended with Muſick, row'd through the City. In *October*, the *Nile* ceaſing to riſe, the Water ſtagnates in the Khalis, and has a very noiſome Smell occaſion'd by the Filth which is thrown into it, as well as by the Stagnation, inſomuch, that the very Money and Plate is tarniſh'd with the Vapour.

Another Year, on the fifteenth Day of *Auguſt*, our Author went to *Boulac*, a Town which ſtands upon the *Nile*, about two Miles from *Grand Cairo*, to ſee the Preparations that were making for cutting the Banks, and he obſerved ſeveral Acaba's, or Galleys, lying in the River, in the Sterns whereof were noble large Rooms, like thoſe in their Houſes, ſome of them twelve or fourteen Paces Square, and ſurrounded with Rails and Balluſters gilded and painted, and the Floors cover'd with rich Carpets and Cuſhions: About ſeven in the Morning the Viceroy arriv'd in great State; as he paſs'd a Sheep was kill'd in ſeveral Places, and three or four more on the Bank of the River, when he entered into his Galley. All the Beys, or Lords of *Cairo*, went with the Viceroy in his Barge, and having ſail'd as high as *Old Cairo*, he was ſaluted by the Guns of the other Veſſels, which follow'd him in Order. The Sails of the Viceroy's Galley were of ſeveral Colours, and work'd with large Red Roſes, and the Flags and Streamers in this and the other Galleys made a very pretty Appearance on the Water; the Trumpets and other Muſick alſo play'd as they paſs'd, while the Guns fir'd and the People ſhouted to expreſs their Joy; and in this Manner they mov'd gently along, till they came to the Place where the Bank was to be open'd to let the Water into the Khalis: Here the Mob were waiting in Crouds, and there being two Paſt-board Towers fill'd full of Squibs and Fireworks, theſe were let off as the Baſſa paſs'd; the People in the mean Time broke down the Bank to give the Water a Paſſage into the Khalis, and Boat Loads of Sweetmeats were thrown into the River, for which they jump'd in and ſcrambled. The Viceroy mov'd forwards to his Palace in the Iſland over againſt *Old Cairo*; and Bonfires, Illuminations and Fireworks were continued for three Nights ſucceſſively. There were two vaſt Machines, particularly repreſenting a Man and a Woman of gigantick Stature, plac'd before the Viceroy's Palace on the River, which took up no leſs than two thouſand Lamps to illuminate them; all Galleys, Barges, and other Veſſels alſo are hung full of Lamps, where the Muſick plays, and Fireworks with great and ſmall Shot are let off continually.

The letting the Water of the *Nile* into the Canals was antiently attended with great Rejoicings, when they us'd alſo to ſacrifice a Boy and a Girl, which our Author thinks gave Occaſion to the preſent Generation to repreſent human Figures in their Fireworks at this Solemnity. When the Khalis or Canal is full, there are Men who ſwim in it with heavy Iron Chains on, attended by Boats full of People, with Drums and Trumpets, and all kind of Muſick the Country affords. One of theſe Mr. *Thevenot* aſſures us, he ſaw with his Hands tied behind his Back, and his Feet bound with an Iron Chain of ten Pounds weight, who ſometimes ſtood upright on the Water, and did not ſeem to move; and in this Manner he came from *Old Cairo*, where the Canal begins, thro' *Grand Cairo* to the End of the Canal, being at leaſt a League; and for a Reward the Viceroy gave him a fine Veſt, and a thouſand *Maidens* *, beſides what he collected of the Spectators, which was very conſiderable. There was another of theſe Fellows, who ſwam in Chains from one End of the Canal to the other, with a Pipe in his Mouth, and a Diſh of Coffee in his Hand without ſpilling it. The River uſually continues to increaſe from *May* to *September*, two, three, or four Fingers Breadth a Day, and decreaſes gradually in like Manner.

* A Coin of about three-pence.

The Fertility of *Egypt*, as has been long obſerv'd, is to be aſcrib'd chiefly to the Overflowing of this River, which leaves a fattening Slime behind it; for the Soil is naturally a barren Sand; but the Fields the Water has cover'd are ſome of them ſo very rich, that the Husbandman is forc'd to mix Sand with the Earth, or his Grain would be too rank.

CHAP. II.

Of the famous Pyramids of Egypt, *the Time, Manner, and Occaſion of building them; and of their Embalming their Dead; with an Account of the* Egyptian *Mummies and Catacombs.*

The Pyramids.

BETWEEN three and four Leagues to the Weſtward of *Grand Cairo*, on the other Side of the *Nile*, ſtand thoſe three vaſt Pyramids, ſo juſtly the Admiration of all that view them: That which has ſuffered leaſt by Time and Weather, and is the faireſt of the Three, is ſituated on the Top of a Rock, in the Sandy Deſart of *Lybia*, about a Quarter of a Mile to the Weſtward of the Plains of *Egypt*, above which the Rock riſeth an hundred Feet or more with an eaſy Aſcent: Upon ſo advantageous a Riſe, and ſo ſolid a Foundation, is this Pyramid erected. Each Side of this Pyramid, at the Baſis, is ſix hundred ninety-three Feet, according to the *Engliſh* Standard; its perpendicular Height is four hundred ninety-nine Feet; but if we take it as the Pyramid aſcends, incli-

inclining, then the Height is equal to the Breadth of the Baſis, namely, ſix hundred ninety-three Feet. But notwithſtanding the Height of this Pyramid has been ſo much admir'd, Mr. *Greeves* obſerves, that the Spire of St. *Paul*'s Church in *London*, before it was burnt, exceeded the Height of this Pyramid, being, according to Mr. *Camden*, five hundred and thirty-four Feet perpendicular from the Ground. But to proceed, the whole Area of the Baſis of this Pyramid we are deſcribing, contains four hundred eighty thouſand two hundred forty-nine ſquare Feet, or eleven Acres of Ground, and 1089 of 43560 Parts of an Acre.

THIS Pyramid is aſcended on the Outſide by Steps, the loweſt Step being four Feet in Height and three in Breadth, running about the Pyramid in a Level: The ſecond Step or Degree is like the firſt, each Stone being almoſt four Feet in Height and three in Breadth, but retires inwards from the Firſt near three Feet; in the ſame Manner is the third Row of Stones plac'd upon the Second, and ſo in Order the reſt, like ſo many Stairs riſing one above another to the Top; which does not end in a Point, as Mathemathical Pyramids do, but in a little Flat or Square, conſiſting of nine Stones, beſides two that are wanting at the Angles. The Steps or Degrees by which we aſcend, are not, as has been intimated, all of an equal Depth, but the higher we aſcend, ſo much the more they diminiſh, and therefore a right Line extended from any Part of the Baſis (on the Out-ſide) to the Top, would equally have touched the outward Angle of every Degree or Step, before the Stones were waſhed and impaired by the Air and Rain; but they are ſo worn and mouldered away at preſent, that they cannot conveniently be aſcended, except on the South Side, or at the Eaſt Angle on the North. The Breadth and Depth of every Step is one entire Stone, many of them thirty Feet in Length, and the Number of Steps from the Bottom to the Top is two hundred and ſeven.

IT has been reported by many Travellers, that a Man ſtanding on the Top of this Pyramid, could not ſhoot an Arrow beyond the Bottom, but the Arrow muſt neceſſarily fall upon the Steps: But it is very certain that a good Bow and a ſtrong Arm will ſend an Arrow much further. The Relation alſo that theſe Pyramids caſt no Shadows, is of equal Credit with the former; for, as Mr. *Greeves* obſerves, if he had not ſeen them caſt a Shadow at Noon-Day, yet Reaſon, and the Art of Meaſuring Altitudes by Shadows, does neceſſarily infer as much. In Summer time indeed, and for almoſt three Quarters of the Year, at Noon-Day, the Pyramids caſt no Shadow; but in the Winter time at Noon Day, and every Morning and Evening in the Year, they certainly caſt a Shadow proportionable to their Bulk: And 'tis obſervable, that *Thales Mileſius*, above two thouſand Years ago, took the Height of theſe Pyramids by their Shadows, according to *Pliny* and *Laertius*.

ON the North Side of this Pyramid, aſcending thirty-eight Feet up an artificial Bank of Earth, there is a narrow ſquare Paſſage, leading into the Pyramid, about three Foot and a half high, and three Foot and a quarter broad, being a very ſteep Paſſage, and running downward ninety-two Feet and a half: The Structure of it has been the Labour of ſome exquiſite Hand, as appears by the Smoothneſs and Evenneſs of the Work, and the cloſe knitting of the Joints. Having paſſed with lighted Torches through this narrow Strait, (for at the further End of it, it grows ſo very narrow, that they are forced to creep upon their Bellies) they land in a Place ſomething larger, but Travellers obſerve nothing worth Deſcription in it, except the monſtrous Bats which inhabit it, exceeding a Foot in Length. The Length of this obſcure broken Place, contains eighty-nine Feet, the Breadth unequal, ſuppoſed to have been dug for the Diſcovery of ſome hidden Treaſure. On the Left Hand of this, adjoining to the narrow Entrance through which they firſt paſſed, they climbed up a Stone eight or nine Foot high, where they enter'd upon the lower End of the firſt Gallery, the Pavement whereof riſes gently, and conſiſts of ſmooth poliſhed Marble, of a White and Alabaſter Colour, being about five Foot in Height, and as much in Breadth. This Gallery contains in Length an hundred and ten Feet. At the End of this begins a ſecond Gallery, a very ſtately Piece of Work, not inferiour either in Materials or Workmanſhip to the moſt magnificent Buildings. The Length of this Gallery is an hundred and twenty-four Feet; and here Mr. *Greeves* obſerves, that if we conſider the narrow Entrance at the Mouth of the Pyramid, by which they firſt deſcend, and the Length of the firſt and ſecond Galleries, by which they aſcend again in one continued Line, and leading to the Middle of the Pyramid, we may eaſily apprehend the Reaſon of that ſtrange Eccho of four or five Voices, mention'd by *Plutarch*, or rather of a long continued Sound, which is heard on diſcharging a Musket at the Entrance: For the Sound being ſhut in, and carried in thoſe cloſe ſmooth Paſſages, as in ſo many Pipes or Trunks, finding no Iſſue out, reflects upon itſelf, and cauſes a confus'd Noiſe and Circulation of the Air, which by degrees, vaniſhes as the Motion ceaſes. But to return: This ſecond Gallery is paved and lined with white poliſhed Marble, cut in vaſt Squares and Tables, and of the ſame Materials is the Roof; and the joining of the Stones are ſo cloſe that it is ſcarce diſcernable. The Height of this Gallery is twenty-ſix Feet, and the Breadth ſix, having Benches on each Side of poliſhed Stone. Paſſing from the ſecond Gallery, through a little ſquare Hole, into ſome Cloſets, or little Chambers, lin'd with *Thebaick* Marble, they enter a very noble Hall, or Chamber, which ſtands in the Center of the Pyramid, equidiſtant from all the Sides, and almoſt in the midſt between the Baſis and the Top. The Floor, Sides, and Roof of this Room, are all made of vaſt and exquiſite Tables of *Thebaick* Marble. From the Top to the Bottom of it there are but ſix Ranges of Stone; and the Stones which cover it are of a ſtupendious Length, like ſo many huge Beams lying flat, and traverſing the Room; and nine of theſe cover the Roof. The Length of this Hall is ſomething more than thirty-four *Engliſh* Feet, the Breadth ſeventeen Feet, and the Height nineteen Feet and a half. Here ſtands a Tomb, ſuppoſed to be that of *Cheops*, or *Chemmis*, King of *Egypt*, the Founder of the Pyramid, being one entire Piece of Marble, hollowed, and uncovered at the Top, and ſounds like a Bell on being ſtruck. There are no Signs of any Corps having been laid in it; and *Diodorus*, above ſixteen hundred Years ago, writes, that *Chemmis* the Builder of this Pyramid, and *Cephren* the Founder of the next, notwithſtanding they deſign'd theſe Structures for their Sepulchres, it ſo happen'd that neither of them were buried in them; for the People, being exaſperated on Account of the Hardſhips they had ſuffered in the erecting them, and by their repeated Cruelties and Oppreſſions, threatned to tear their dead Bodies in Pieces, and throw them out of their Sepulchres: Whereupon they commanded their Friends to bury them privately in ſome obſcure Place. This Tomb is made of the ſame Stone with which the Room is lined, namely, of Marble ſtreaked and ſpotted

with

with red, white, and black Spots, which some call Thebaick Marble; but Mr. *Greeves* supposes it to be Porphiry.

The Figure of this Tomb is like an Altar, hollowed within, the Stone smooth and plain, without any relief or embossed Work on it. The exterior Superficies contains seven Feet three Inches and an half in Length, and is three Feet three Inches and three Quarters deep, and as much in Breadth. The hollow Part within is little more than five Feet in Length, and two Foot in Depth and Breadth. From which Dimensions, Mr. *Greeves* justly observes, as well as from the embalmed Bodies he saw in *Egypt*, that there is no Decay in Nature, but that the Men of this Age are of the same Stature they were three thousand Years ago. It is not easy to conceive how this Tomb was brought into the Room where it now stands, it being impossible it should enter by the narrow Passages, above describ'd, which makes some conclude it was raised up hither from without, before the Room was finished, and the Roof closed up. But I am apt to think there is some Way left to come at this Place, which is not yet discovered; the Entrance whereof may be so artificially closed up, as not to be discerned: For it can scarce be believed, that any Prince should direct his dead Corps to be dragged through such a long narrow Sink, as has been described, to be laid in his Sepulchre. The Position of the Tomb is exactly North and South, but it is distant from the East Side of the Chamber as far again as it is from the West.

Second Pyramid

As we pass from the first Pyramid to the second, we see the Ruins of a Pile of Building all of square polished Stone, supposed to be the Habitation of the Priests. The second Pyramid is supposed to be built by *Cephren*, the Brother of *Cheops*. The Stones thereof are white, and not near so large as those of the former, nor do the Sides rise by Degrees, or Steps, like the other, but are all plain and smooth; the whole Fabrick, except on the South, being very entire, and free from any deformed Ruptures and Breaches; and the Dimensions, both as to the Height and Breadth, are equal to the first; but there has been no Entrance yet discovered into it, nor is it known whether there be any Rooms or Apartments within, though it is highly probable there are, this being designed for the Sepulchre of another *Egyptian* King. This Pyramid has on the North and West Sides two very stately Buildings, thirty Feet in Depth, and fourteen hundred in Length, hewn out of the solid Rock. These, 'tis supposed, were design'd for Lodgings of the Priests, but have no other Entrance into them than such square Openings hewn out of the Rock, of the same Bigness with those described in the first Pyramid, and within are square Chambers arched and made out of the natural Rock.

Third Pyramid.

The third Pyramid stands a Furlong distant from the second, upon an advantageous Rising of the Rock, which makes it seem equal to the former at a Distance. But Mr. *Greeves* observes, that, notwithstanding *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and some modern Writers affirm it is built great Part of it with black, or *Ethiopick* Marble; the whole Pyramid, however, seems to be of a clear white Stone, something better and brighter than that of either of the former Pyramids. Each Side of the Basis is three hundred Feet and something more, and the Height the same. There are several other Pyramids dispersed about the *Lybian* Desart, Mr. *Greeves* reckons up twenty, most of them much inferior in Bulk to any of the former; but there is one, which stands twenty Miles South and by West of those above described, of the same Dimensions with the first, with Steps, or Degrees, on the Outside, but more decay'd than the former: It has also an Entrance on the North Side, but blocked up, so that there is no getting in to see the Apartments.

The Occasion of building them.

The next Thing disputed, is the Occasion of erecting these Pyramids; the general Opinion is, that they were erected for Sepulchral Monuments; and for a Confirmation of it, *Ibn Abd Alhokm*, the *Arabian*, relates, that *Almamon* the Calif of *Babylon*, when he caused the largest Pyramid to be open'd, between eight and nine hundred Years since, *found in it, towards the Top, a Chamber with an hollow Stone, in which there was a Statue like a Man, and within it a Man, on whom was a Breast-Plate of Gold set with Jewels; upon the Breast-Plate lay a Sword of inestimable Price, and at his Head a Carbuncle of the Bigness of an Egg, shining like the Light, and upon him were written Characters with a Pen which no Man understood.* *Pliny* conjectures, that the Reason the *Egyptian* Kings put themselves to this vast Expence in erecting their Tombs, was partly out of Ostentation, and partly out of State Policy, by keeping the People in Employment, to divert them from Mutiny and Rebelion, But there is this further Reason given, which sprung from the Theology of the *Egyptians*, who believ'd that *as long as the Body endur'd, so long the Soul continued with it*; which was also the Opinion of the *Stoicks*. *For this Reason the* Egyptians *kept their Dead embalmed, that the Soul might continue with it a great while, and not pass suddenly into another Body; and for the same Reason they inclosed them in the most durable Buildings, endeavouring thereby, as much as in them lay, to render them eternal.* *The* Egyptians *alone, says St.* Austin, *believe the Resurrection, and for that Reason carefuly preserve their dead Bodies, by drying them up, and rendring them as durable as Brass.* And certain it is, many of these embalm'd Bodies, or Mummies, have remain'd entire three thousand Years and upwards. Of this embalming *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* speak very particularly: There are, says *Herodotus*, those who profess the Art of Embalming: When the Body is brought to them, they shew certain Patterns of dead Bodies in Wood, of different Prices, and the Friends of the Deceased having agreed in what Manner they will have it done, the Embalmers first draw out the Brain with a crooked Iron by the Nostrils, then they infuse Medicaments [*Mr.* Greeves *relates, that having caused the Head of one of the noblest Sort to be opened, in the hollow of the Skull he found the Quantity of two Pounds of these Medicaments, which had the Consistence, Blackness, and Smell of a kind of Bitumen or Pitch, which became soft by the Heat of the Sun,*] Afterwards with a sharp *Ethiopick* Stone they cut the Belly, and having taken out all the Guts, they purge and wash them with Palm Wine, then they cleanse them with beaten Myrrh, Cassia, and other Odours, they sew it up again: Then they salt it with Nitre, hiding it seventy Days, for longer it is not lawful to salt it; after this they wash the Corps, binding it up with Fillets, and wrapping it up in a Shroud, of Silk or Linen, they besmear it with Gum. The Relations then prepare a Coffin in the Similitude of a Man, into which they put the Corps, and place it in a Reconditory in the House, setting it upright against the Wall; and then with great Expences prepare for the Funeral. *Diodorus Siculus* adds, that every Member of the Body by this Embalming is kept entire: The Hairs of the Eyebrows and Eye-lids remain, the whole Shape of the Body continues unchang'd, and the very Countenance may be known; and many of the *Egyptians* keep the dead Bodies of their Ancestors in magnificent Houses for several Ages. *Tully* relates, that the *Egyptians* embalm their Dead and keep them in their Houses above Ground. *Lucian* adds, they bring the

And to Entertain the Dead.

the dead Body (I ſpeak what I have ſeen) as a Gueſt to their Feaſts and Entertainments; and neceſſitous Perſons have ſometimes pawn'd their Fathers and their Brothers for Money. They have a Cuſtom, ſays *Diodorus Siculus*, of depoſiting the dead Bodies of their Parents as a Pledge, and it is the greateſt Reproach not to redeem them, and if they neglect to do it, they themſelves are depriv'd of Burial.

HAVING thus by Art found out Ways to make the Body durable (ſays Mr. *Greeves*) that the Soul might continue with it, which elſe would, according to their Opinion, have paſs'd into another Body, (of whom *Pythagoras*, 'tis ſaid, borrow'd his Tranſmigration,) the next Care of the *Egyptians* was to provide Conditories, which might be as laſting as the Body, and in which it might remain ſafe from the Injuries of Time and Men. The *Egyptians*, ſays *Diodorus Siculus*, make ſmall Account of the Time of this Life which is limited; but that which after Death is join'd with a glorious Memory of Virtue they highly value. They call the Houſes of the Living, Inns, becauſe they inhabit them but a ſhort Space; but the Sepulchres of the Dead they term eternal Manſions, becauſe they continue with the Gods for an infinite Space: Wherefore in the Structure of their Houſes they are not very ſolicitous, but in exquiſitely adorning their Sepulchres they think no Coſt ſufficient. However, tho' the *Egyptians* were of Opinion, that as long as the Body endur'd, the Soul continued with it; yet it did not quicken or animate the Corps, but remain'd there only as an Attendant, or Guardian, unwilling to leave her former Habitation.

THE Reaſon why the *Egyptians* built their Sepulchres in the Form of Pyramids, Mr. *Greeves* conceives, was, becauſe this is the moſt permanent Form of Structure; being neither over preſs'd by its own Weight, or ſo ſubject to the ſinking in of Rain as other Buildings are. Or, they might hereby intend to repreſent their Gods; for antiently the *Gentiles* expreſs'd them either by Columns faſhion'd like Cones, or elſe by Quadrilateral Obelisks; after the *Egyptian* Manner of which, our Author ſays, he ſaw ſeveral ſtanding entire.

Diodorus Siculus relates, That the *Egyptians* worſhipp'd the Sun under the Name of *Oſiris*, as they did the Moon by the Name of the Goddeſs *Iſis*; and therefore as *Iſis Cornigera* (in which Portraiture our Author obſerv'd her Statue at *Alexandria*,) did repreſent the Horns of the Moon, or *Luna Falcata*; ſo theſe quadrilateral Pyramids, or Obelisks, might not unfitly reſemble the Rays of the Sun, or their God *Oſiris*; for *Diodorus* and *Plutarch* term *Oſiris*, *Many Eyes*, or *Many Rays*; which being emitted, as the *Opticks* demonſtrate, in Pyramidical or Conical Forms, might not unaptly be repreſented in either Figure. And hence the *Phœnicians*, Neighbours to the *Egyptians*, 'tis thought, imitated their Idolatry, worſhipping the Sun, whom they named *Heliogabalus*, in the Similitude of a Cone. *Pauſanias* conjectures, this Manner of repreſenting the Gods to have been the firſt and moſt antient among the *Grecians*. And *Clemens Alexandrinus* imagines it to have been the firſt kind of Idolatry in the World, and therefore well agreeing with the Antiquity of the *Egyptians*. But the Sepulchres of the *Egyptians* were not always in the Form of Pyramids, as appears by thoſe *Mercuriales Tumuli* mention'd by *Strabo*, which were Spherical; and by thoſe *Hypogæa*, or Caves, ſtill extant in the Rocks of the *Lybian* Deſart. *Strabo* writes, That, paſſing near *Siene* in the upper Parts of *Egypt*, over a very even Plain, about an hundred Stadia in Length, all the Way almoſt on both Sides he ſaw thoſe Mercurial Tombs; a great Stone, ſmooth and almoſt Spherical, of that black and hard Marble of which Mortars were made, plac'd upon a greater Stone, and on the Top of this another, ſome of them lying by themſelves: The largeſt of them were twelve Feet Diameter, and all of them more than half as much. As for the other kind of Sepulchres, I ſhall have Occaſion to mention them in ſpeaking of the Mummies.

Mummies and the Sepulchres where they were buried; called *Catacombs* by ſome

THE Mummy-Pits, as they are call'd by our modern Travellers, are in the *Lybian* Deſarts, three or four Leagues diſtant from the three great Pyramids, and a little to the Weſtward of the Place where the City of *Memphis* once ſtood. The Pits are ſquare, and built of good Stone, according to ſome Travellers; but others ſay they are hewn out of the ſolid Rock. When the People, who have the Care of the Mummies, have removed the Sand from the Surface, they take up a great Stone which covers the Mouth of the Pit, and let down thoſe who would view them by Ropes; or a Man may go down by putting his Feet into the Holes on the Sides; but the ſhalloweſt of them are thirty-two Foot deep. At the Bottom of the Pit are ſquare Openings and Paſſages, ten or fifteen Foot long, which lead into ſquare arched Rooms, in which the embalmed Bodies lie, ſome of them in Cheſts or Coffins of Wood, others in Stone Coffins, ſhaped like a Man, with his Arms ſtretched out by his Sides. *Thevenot* relates, that he ſaw a very large Body, in a very thick Coffin of Wood, which was not at all rotten; they obſerved it to be Sycamore, which in *Egypt* is called *Pharaoh*'s Fig-Tree, and not ſo ſubject to rot as other Wood; and the Shape of the Face of the Perſon within was cut in emboſſed Work, as thoſe of the Stone Coffins are. Some of theſe Coffins are made only of Pieces of Linen Cloth, gummed or glued together, which are as ſtrong as the Wooden ones. *Thevenot* ſays, he brought one of the Heads of theſe Mummies entire to *Paris*; it was covered with Billets or Pieces of Sear Cloth, ſo neatly fitted, that one might ſee the Shape of the Eyes, Noſe, and Mouth; the reſt of the Body was ſwathed with little Bandages of Cloth, wrapped about ſo often, that our Author thinks there might be a thouſand Ells in it. But from this Account it is very evident, that the naked Face of the dead Corps was never expoſed at their Feſtivals, as was intimated by the aboveſaid Hiſtorians, but only the Buſt or Shape of it, cut in the Coffin in which it was encloſed. With theſe Mummies are uſually found little Images of ſeveral Sorts; ſome made of Copper, others of Stone, and others of ſeveral Sorts of Earth, being the Figures of Birds and Beaſts, which the Natives ſell to the *Franks* at very eaſy Rates; for the *Turks* have ſo little Curioſity, that they will not give more than the Value of the Materials for any thing of this Kind.

THE Danger of entering the Pyramids and Mummy-Pits is intimated by ſeveral Travellers, on Account of the thieviſh *Arabs*, who watch all Opportunities of plundering thoſe who come to view them: But no Gentleman has given us ſo lively a Deſcription of the Hazard People run, whoſe Curioſity leads them to viſit theſe Places, as our Countryman Mr. *Hill*: Whether every Circumſtance be literally true, I will not take upon me to determine, poſſibly he may have indulged his Poetical Vein a little, as he is ſuſpected to have done on ſome other Occaſions; but, if we may believe him, he was not only an Eye-Witneſs, but of the Party, in the following Adventure.

HAVING procured a Guide at *Cairo*, Mr. *Hill* tells us, he, with three other Gentlemen, ſet out in the Evening to viſit the Catacombs, and having travelled all Night over a Sandy Deſart, they ar-

arrived at a Place where they obſerved Stones of a vaſt Size, which covered the Entrance of the Mummy-Pits, whereupon they alighted, and having with a great deal of Labour removed one of the largeſt Stones, they were ſurpriſed to find a Ladder of Ropes already fixed in the Pit; but imagining it might have been forgot by ſome Travellers who had lately viſited the Place, they went down with their Piſtols in their Hands, and lighted Torches, but had not advanced many Yards in the Vault, before they found two Men in *European* Habits, lying dead croſs the Paſſage, and between the Feet of one of them there lay a Pocket-Book, in which was written, in *Italian*, to this Effect:

> Lorenzo *and* Ferdinando Bonavoglia, *dear unhappy Brothers, born at* Piſa, *a City of* Italy, *died here by Grief and Hunger, barbarouſly ſhut in, and loſt for ever,* June 18, 1701. *Good Chriſtian, if thy dear Eyes ſhall read our Miſery, pray for our Souls. O* Jeſus, *O* Mary, *Mother of God, hear and pity us.*

Mr. *Hill* and his Company were in the utmoſt Conſternation at this Accident, and began immediately to apprehend their own Danger; their Guide trembled, which encreaſed their Fears, and made them return in haſte to the Place where they came down, but to their Aſtoniſhment they found it ſhut, and the Ladder taken away. The Dread and Horror that ſeized them at that Inſtant, according to my Friend *Aaron*, are not to be conceived: Our Travellers, however, did not yet deſpair, but agreed to ſearch every Corner of theſe diſmal Manſions, in Hopes of diſcovering ſome other Paſſage out. They had not marched far before they ſaw ſix *Arabs* ready to attack them, which created no ſmall Terror in them; they had, however, the Preſence of Mind to fire their Piſtols, whereupon the Aſſaſſins fled out at another Paſſage they had made into the Catacombs, and being purſued ſwiftly by our Countrymen, to their inexpreſſible Joy, they found the chearful Rays of Day-light once more break in upon them, and with incredible haſte aſcended after the Aſſaſſins, giving them no Time to ſtop their Paſſage.

When they came up they ſaw the *Arabs* running away with their Beaſts, but a Party of *Turks* being upon the Patrol, obliged them to quit their Prey, and remounted our Travellers again. It was afterwards diſcovered that the two *Italian* Gentlemen, above-mention'd, had been betrayed by their Guide to the *Arabs*, with whom he held Correſpondence, for which he was afterwards impaled alive.

The Sphynx

In ſpeaking of the Pyramids, I ſhould not have omitted mentioning the Coloſſus, or at leaſt the Head of one, which ſtands near the largeſt Pyramid. It is uſually called a *Sphynx*, the upper Part whereof ſhould reſemble a Woman, and the lower Part a Lion, by which the *Egyptians*, in their Hieroglyphicks, repreſented a Harlot; intimating the Danger of being ſmitten with a beautiful faithleſs Woman, whom the fond Lover would probably, in the End, find as cruel and rapacious as a Lion. This Figure, at leaſt what appears of it now, has nothing more of it diſcernible than from the Shoulders upwards, and yet is near thirty Foot in Height, and ſeems to have been hewn out of the ſolid Rock. It is a Queſtion whether there ever was any more of the Figure than is to be ſeen at preſent, though *Pliny*, and ſome of the Antients, give it a Belly, and much larger Dimenſions, making it to be an hundred and two Feet in Compaſs; and ſome of our modern Writers pretend, that there is a ſubterraneau Paſſage from the firſt Pyramid to the Head, which is hollow; ſuggeſting that the Heathen Prieſts uſed to deliver their Oracles from thence; but it does not ſeem well proved to me that there is any ſuch Paſſage under Ground from the Pyramid to the *Sphynx*, or that any Oracles were ever deliver'd from hence,

Another Curioſity in *Egypt*, mentioned by antient and modern Writers, is a Labyrinth near the Banks of the River *Nile*, towards the *Upper Egypt*, built by King *Pſamniticus* the Firſt. The greateſt Part of it is under Ground, and it contains, within the Compaſs of one Wall, twelve Palaces, and a thouſand Houſes, the Walls, Pillars, and Roofs of Marble; to this there was only one Entrance, and ſo many intricate Turnings and Windings, that it was impoſſible for a Stranger to find his Way thro', or get back again, if he had entered it without a Guide. The Marble, 'tis ſaid, was laid with that Art, that there was neither Wood or Cement uſed in the whole Fabrick.

The Ruſh, or Weed, which grows by the Banks of the River *Nile*, called *Papyri*, deſerves alſo to be remembred here. This, being divided into thin Flakes, and moiſtned with the glutinous Water of the River, they preſs'd or beat in much the ſame Manner as we do our Rags, till they made it fit to write on; and of this kind of Paper that vaſt Library of Books was chiefly compoſed, which *Ptolemy Philadelphus* collected, and placed in *Alexandria*.

I proceed now to deſcribe the Situation of ſome other Towns in *Middle Egypt*, and firſt *Eulac*; it is ſituated on the Eaſt Side of the River *Nile*, about five or ſix Miles above the Place where the *Nile* divides, and forms the *Delta*, and two Miles to the Weſtward of *Grand Cairo*, and is the Port Town to that City, and by ſome reckoned a Suburb of it. The Town contains about four thouſand Families, and has a pretty good Trade, all Veſſels going up the *Nile* making ſome Stay, and paying their Duties here. 2. *Old Cairo* ſtands about two or three Miles higher up the ſame River, over againſt the Place where the famous City of *Memphis* once ſtood, and is about half a League diſtant from *Grand Cairo*. This Town makes no great Figure at preſent, being for the moſt Part in Ruins; though the Situation of it on the Bank of the River, renders it much cooler, and more commodious than the new *Cairo*, in the Opinion of moſt Travellers. As for *Memphis*, which is ſuppoſed to have ſtood over-againſt it on the Weſt Side of the River, and was once the Metropolis of the Kingdom, there are ſcarce any Ruins left to diſcover where it was, though it is thought to extend a pretty Way to the Weſtward of the *Nile*, on Account of the Burying-Places, or Repoſitories of the Mummies, above-mentioned, which reach ſeveral Leagues into the Country, and are ſuppoſed to be the Tombs of the antient Inhabitants of *Memphis*. 3. *Matarea*, ſituate about five Miles North-Eaſt of *Grand Cairo*. Here it is reported that the *Virgin Mary* and her Husband *Joſeph* reſted, when they fled with our Saviour from *Herod*, and that, being very thirſty, a Spring iſſued ſuddenly out of the Earth for their Relief. But however that be, 'tis certain that there is a Well in this Town, and that there is not above one Well more of good Water in the whole Country. 4. *Suez*, which ſtands upon the *Red Sea*, about eighty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Cairo*: This is the Port where the Grand Seignior's Galleys, in the *Red Sea*,, rendezvous; and whither they bring Coffee, Drugs, and other Merchandize, from *Arabia* and *India*; which makes it crowded with People at ſome Seaſons of the Year, while at others it is almoſt deſerted, on account of the Heats, and the Scarcity of freſh Water; and I don't find that the Town contains above two hundred Houſes at preſent, though it was here-

heretofore a conſiderable City, and ſuppoſed to be the antient *Arſinoe*.

Upper Egypt. In the *Upper Egypt*, antiently called *Thebais*, or *Thebaida*, and at preſent *Sayd*, the chief Towns are, 1. *Sayd*, antiently *Thebes*, the Capital of the Kingdom; by *Strabo* called *Dioſopolis*, or the *City of Jove*, and by other Writers *Hecatompolis*, or the *City with an hundred Gates*. 2. *Aſna*, or *Sienna*, in the South of *Egypt*, ſituate on the Weſt Side of the *Nile*. The River is navigable to this Place, but a little beyond we meet with the Cataracts, and all Merchandize is put on Shore, and carried by Land, till the Veſſels are paſt them. 3. *Girge*, or *Grege*, on the Weſt Side of the *Nile*, ſituate in twenty-five Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude. 4. *Coptus*, once a great City, and the Capital of *Egypt*, from whence the Natives obtained the Name of *Cophti*, lies upon the *Nile*, in the Latitude of twenty-ſix Degrees odd Minutes: But moſt of the Towns of *Upper Egypt* are now in Ruins, or reduced to inconſiderable Villages, and poſſeſſed by *Arabs*, or *Cophti* Chriſtians; the Trade being diverted another Way, eſpecially from thoſe which lie upon the *Red Sea*, where I do not find one conſiderable Town mentioned by Travellers on the *Egyptian* Side, except *Suez*, above deſcribed, and that ſeems to be very much declined. The *Latin* Fathers at *Cairo*, who have ſome of them gone up the *Nile* into *Upper Egypt*, entertain us chiefly with an Account of the noble Ruins they meet with there; vaſt Columns of Marble and Porphiry, which lie half buried in the Ground, and Statues, and Obelisks of a prodigious Size, with Hieroglyphicks upon them: But their Accounts are ſo confuſed, that I can only learn there were once in this Part of *Egypt* very conſiderable Towns and magnificent Buildings, which the Claſſicks alſo acquaint us with. There are alſo remaining in *Upper Egypt* great Numbers of *Cophti* Chriſtians, who have their Biſhops to preſide over them, and own the Patriarch of *Alexandria* for their Head; but ſo ignorant in the principal Articles of their Faith, if we may believe the *Latins*, that they ſcarce deſerve the Name of Chriſtians; and it ſeems they ſtill preſerve the *Jewiſh* Rite of Circumciſion, which, the Fathers boaſt, they have convinced many of thoſe about *Cairo* and *Alexandria* of the Abſurdity of.

CHAP. III.

Of the Government of Egypt; *alſo of their Animals and Husbandry, with the Original of the* Gypſies.

History of the Egyptian Sove reigns. CHAM, the Son of *Noah*, is generally held to be the ſame with *Jupiter Hammon*; and *Miſraim*, his Grand-Son, the ſame with *Oſiris* the great Deity of the *Egyptians*; and from him, 'tis ſaid, deſcended the Race of Monarchs who had the general Denomination of *Pharaohs*; but from whom, or how, the Word *Pharaoh* came to be the Stile of their Kings, I find no ſatisfactory Reaſon given.

A. M. 3435. There are reckon'd above ſixty Princes of the Line of theſe *Pharaohs*, and they reign'd, as 'tis ſaid, in an uninterrupted Succeſſion, to the Year of the World 3435, when *Pharaoh Pſammiticus*, the ſecond Monarch of that Name, was conquer'd by *Cambyſes* II. King of *Perſia*, who united *Egypt* to that Empire, under which it remain'd till the Reign of *Darius*, being upwards of an hundred Years; when it revolted from that Crown, and became an independant Kingdom again (*Amyrtæus* being their firſt King after that Revolt) in which State it continued about fifty Years, when *Ochus* King of *Perſia* recover'd the Dominion of it again; and it remain'd ſubject to the *Perſian* Monarchs, till *Alexander the Great* defeated *Darius*, when it fell under the Power of that Prince, with the reſt of the Provinces of the *Perſian Empire*.

A. M. 3640. The Race of the Ptolemies. After the Death of *Alexander*, *Ptolemy* the Son of *Lagus*, or, as others inſinuate, the Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, and conſequently half Brother of *Alexander*, found means to mount the Throne of *Egypt*, and render it an independant Kingdom once again, whoſe Succeſſors, Kings of *Egypt*, ever after retain'd the Name of *Ptolemies*; in which Line it continued between two and three hundred Years, the laſt Sovereign being the famous *Cleopatra*, Wife and Siſter to *Ptolemy Dionyſius* the laſt King, and Miſtreſs to *Julius Cæſar* and *Mark Anthony* ſucceſſively. 3975.

It was *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, Son of the firſt *Ptolemy*, who collected the *Alexandrian* Library, ſaid to conſiſt of ſeven hundred thouſand Volumes; and the ſame Prince cauſed the Scriptures to be tranſlated into *Greek*; but whether by ſeventy-two Interpreters, and in the Manner as is commonly related, is juſtly queſtion'd. The *Ptolemies* ſometimes extended their Dominion over great Part of *Syria*, and were frequently at War with the Kings of *Syria*, in which they met with various Succeſs. After the Death of *Cleopatra*, this Kingdom fell under the Power of the *Romans*, and was uſually govern'd by a Gentleman of *Rome*, it being thought too hazardous truſting ſo conſiderable a Command with a Senator. When it was made a Province of the Empire it was look'd upon as the Emperor's peculiar, and afterwards made an entire Dioceſs of itſelf, ſubordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; and while it was under the Dominion of the *Romans*, the Nation in general embrac'd Chriſtianity: It remain'd a *Roman* Province till the Reign of *Heraclius* the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, when the People, being diſguſted with their Governors, call'd in *Omar*, the third Caliph of the *Saracens*, and ſubmitted themſelves to the Mahometan Power, being about the Year of our Lord 640. But ſure the Adminiſtration of the *Greek* Emperors muſt be very grievous, which could induce a Chriſtian Nation to make choice of a *Saracen* for their Sovereign.

Egypt a *Roman* Province.

Embrace Chriſtianity.

Invites in the *Saracens*, *A. D.* 640.

The Caliphs of *Babylon* were Sovereigns here till about the Year 870, when the *Egyptians* ſet up a Caliph of their own, call'd the Caliph of *Cairo*, to whom the *Saracens* of *Africk* and *Spain* were ſubject; but the Governors of the Provinces, or Sultans under the Caliphs of *Babylon* and *Cairo*, ſoon wreſted the Civil Powers out of the Hands of their Caliphs, or High-Prieſts, leaving them only a Shadow of Sovereignty.

870 Caliph of *Cairo*.

About the Year 1160, *Aſſaraddin*, or *Saracen*, General of *Norradin*, the *Saracen Sultan* of *Damaſcus*, ſubdued the Kingdom of *Egypt*, and uſurp'd the Dominion of it, being ſucceeded in this Kingdom by his Son *Saladin*, who reduced alſo the Kingdoms of *Damaſcus*, *Meſopotamia*, and *Paleſtine*, under his Power, and, about the Year 1190, took *Jeruſalem* from the Chriſtians. It was this Prince who eſtabliſh'd a Body of Troops in *Egypt*, like the

Aſſaraddin 1160. Conquers *Egypt*, ſucceeded by *Saladin*.

the preſent Janizaries, compoſed of the Sons of Chriſtians taken in War, or purchaſed of the *Tartars*, to whom he gave the Name of *Mamalukes*, which, 'tis ſaid, ſignifies no more than Slave, which, among the Forces of the Mahometan Princes, is look'd upon as a Title of great Honour, as it expreſſes their being devoted in a peculiar Manner to the Service of their Sovereign, and conſequently they are entitled to greater Privileges than other Subjects. The Poſterity of *Aſſareddin* enjoy'd the Crown till the Year 1242, when the *Mamalukes* depoſed *Elmutan*, as they had done his Father *Melech Aſſalach* ſome Years before, and ſet one of their own Officers upon the Throne; the firſt King of the Race of the *Mamalukes* being *Turquemenius*. Theſe *Mamaluke* Sultans were engaged in continual Wars with the Chriſtians, in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*, till *Araphus* the ſixth Sultan entirely diſpoſeſs'd the Chriſtians of the *Holy Land*; the ninth Sultan, *Melechnaſſor*, ſubdued the Iſland *Cyprus*, and made it tributary to *Egypt*.

1242. *Mamalukes* uſurp the Crown.

1255.

1291.

1423

1501. About the Year 1501, *Campſon Gaurus*, the fifteenth Sultan of the *Mamalukes*, entering into an Alliance with *Iſmael* the Sophy of *Perſia*, againſt *Selimus*, the third Emperor and tenth King of the *Ottoman* Family, the Confederates receiv'd ſeveral memorable Defeats: And *Tonombeius* II. who ſucceeded *Campſon Gaurus*, was depoſed and murder'd by *Selimus*, and, according to ſome Accounts, hang'd up at one of the Gates of *Grand Cairo*. *Gazelle*, one of the Grandees of the *Mamalukes*, maintain'd a War for ſome Time againſt *Selimus*, but was at length defeated, and *Egypt* made a Province of the *Ottoman Empire*.

1517 *Selimus* [illegible] and [illegible] it to the *Ottoman* Empire

The Mamalukes are it ſelf a Nurſery for Soldiers, from whence the preſent Janizaries, compoſed of the Sons of Chriſtians taken in War, or purchaſed of the *Tartars*, to whom he gave the Name of *Mamalukes*, which, 'tis ſaid, ſignifies no more than Slave, which, among the Forces of the Mahometan Princes, is look'd upon as a Title of great Honour, as it expreſſes their being devoted in a peculiar Manner to the Service of their Sovereign, and conſequently they are entitled to greater Privileges than other Subjects. The Poſterity of *Aſſareddin* enjoy'd the Crown till the Year 1242, when the *Mamalukes* depoſed *Elmutan*, as they had done his Father *Melech Aſſalach* ſome Years before, and ſet one of their own Officers upon the Throne; the firſt King of the Race of the *Mamalukes* being *Turquemenius*. Theſe *Mamaluke* Sultans were engaged in continual Wars with the Chriſtians, in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*, till *Araphus* the ſixth Sultan entirely diſpoſeſs'd the Chriſtians of the *Holy Land*; the ninth Sultan, *Melechnaſſor*, ſubdued the Iſland *Cyprus*, and made it tributary to *Egypt*.

About the Year 1501, *Campſon Gaurus*, the fifteenth Sultan of the *Mamalukes*, entering into an Alliance with *Iſmael* the Sophy of *Perſia*, againſt *Selimus*, the third Emperor and tenth King of the *Ottoman* Family, the Confederates receiv'd ſeveral memorable Defeats: And *Tonombeius* II. who ſucceeded *Campſon Gaurus*, was depoſed and murder'd by *Selimus*, and, according to ſome Accounts, hang'd up at one of the Gates of *Grand Cairo*. *Gazelle*, one of the Grandees of the *Mamalukes*, maintain'd a War for ſome Time againſt *Selimus*, but was at length defeated, and *Egypt* made a Province of the *Ottoman Empire*.

The *Mamaluke* Sultans were always choſen, by a Majority of *Mamalukes*, out of their own Body, who were ſo jealous of the Kingdom's being made hereditary, that they ſcarce ever elected the Son of the preceding Sultan; and if the Choice ever happen'd to fall upon ſuch a one, they were ſo apprehenſive of its being made an ill Precedent, that they never reſted till they depoſed him.

The preſent Government of *Egypt*

Since the *Ottoman* Emperors have had the Dominion of this Kingdom, they have always govern'd it by a Viceroy, ſtyl'd the Baſſa of *Grand Cairo*: But as *Egypt* is ſubdivided into ſeveral inferior Governments, theſe Governors, I perceive, are not ſent from *Conſtantinople*, or appointed by the Viceroy, but are Natives of *Egypt*, and ſeem to be veſted with Sovereign Power in their reſpective Diſtricts, and to have the Command of the Militia of the ſeveral Provinces; and are many of them of the Race of the *Mamalukes*. 'Tis true, the Viceroy has a conſiderable Body of Spahi's and Janizaries about *Cairo*, to keep them in Awe; and every one of theſe petty Princes, 'tis ſaid, is obliged to mount the Viceroy's Guard in his Turn, with a Body of the National Troops.

There is a perpetual Jealouſy between the *Turkiſh* Baſſa and theſe *Egyptian* Royalets; ſometimes the Baſſa will take upon him to depoſe one of them, and perhaps take his Head; and there are Inſtances, on the other Hand, where they have depoſed the Baſſa, and compell'd the Porte to ſend them another more acceptable to them: And the Grand Seignior has thought fit to humour them in it, rather than hazard the Revolt of ſo rich a Province, which is now eſteem'd the Granary of *Conſtantinople*, as it was antiently of *Rome*; for this is a Soil ſo fertiliz'd by the *Nile*, that it is not in the Power of the *Turks*, it ſeems, to render it barren. But one great Reaſon of its continuing to be manur'd, is, that they are yet govern'd by their own Princes, and have an Inheritance in their Lands, which are Privileges very few of the Subjects of *Turkey* enjoy beſides: Neither dare the *Turkiſh* Government to overload this People with Taxes, for fear of a general Revolt; Inſomuch that, except what the Viceroy and his Creatures illegally extort from them, the whole Revenue raiſed by the Government, does not amount to a Million of Money, of which two Thirds are ſpent within the Kingdom, and not more than one Third comes into the Grand Seignior's Treaſury.

The State and Condition of the *Egyptian* Royalets, and their Subjects, may be gather'd from the Account Mr. *Thevenot* gives of one of them, call'd *Mahomet Bey*, who came to *Grand Cairo* when he was there. This Prince, or Bey, as Mr. *Thevenot* ſtiles him, was then Bey of *Girge*, and had been Miniſter to *Haley Bey*, the former Bey of *Girge*, a City about fifteen Days Journey from *Cairo* up the *Nile*. *Haley Bey* was in his Life-time one of the richeſt and moſt potent of all the *Egyptian* Princes, and had conſtituted, by his ſole Authority, three others of his Officers Beys of as many Diſtricts, beſides the preſent Bey of *Girge*; and left behind him when he died (if we may credit the Relation the People of *Cairo* gave Mr. *Thevenot*) fourſcore thouſand Camels, as many Aſſes, and a vaſt Treaſure in Money and Jewels; among which there was one Cup made of a Turkeis, worth an hundred thouſand Crowns. In his Palace at *Grand Cairo*, there was never ſpent leſs than a thouſand Crowns a Day in his Abſence, and much more when he was preſent. His Succeſſor, *Mahomet Bey*, whoſe Publick Entry into *Grand Cairo* our Author ſaw, was exceeding magnificent. The Baſſa, it ſeems, had twice ſent for him to account for what he was in Arrear to the Government; deſigning when he had him in his Power to depoſe him, and procure another to be appointed Bey in his Room; which *Mahomet* ſuſpecting, he did not obey the Summons, till he had aſſembled a Force ſufficient to defend him againſt any violent Meaſures the Baſſa might take; who, hearing he was come within three Days Journey of *Cairo*, attended with great Forces, ſent him Orders not to advance: And, it ſeems, the other Beys, and the Cadeliſquier, were at this Time ſo much in *Mahomet*'s Intereſt, that they had determin'd to depoſe the Baſſa, if any Thing were attempted againſt their Friend the Bey of *Girge*. This Prince therefore, depending on his Forces, and the Friends he had in the Capital, ſlighted the Baſſa's Orders, and continued his March; and, when he came near the City, all the Beys and Perſons of Diſtinction went out to compliment him on his Arrival.

Theſe Congratulations, or rather Cabals, having continued ſome Time, a Day was appointed for the Bey's Entry, and the Baſſa went to a Palace in the great *Meidan*, or Square, in order to receive him; the Bey not thinking it ſafe to come within the Walls of the Caſtle. The *Arab* Troops, arm'd with Launces and Sabres, march'd before their Prince, and drew up in the great Square, where the Baſſa alſo had order'd the Janizaries and other Troops of his Houſhold to attend. The *Arabs* were all well mounted and tolerably cloath'd, and were in Number about three thouſand, having ſixteen Caſcheffs, or Governors of ſo many petty Diſtricts which belong'd to the Bey, at the Head of them: After theſe was carry'd the Bey's Horſe-Tail, or Standard, follow'd by two thouſand Musketeers on Horſeback, and after them five hundred Foot in the Bey's own Pay; then came ſix led Horſes, as if the Baſſa himſelf had been there, with ſeveral Chiauks and Janizaries belonging to the Baſſa, in their Caps of Ceremony; two Pages of the Bey's and ſix of the Baſſa's, with their Silver Gilt Caps and Plumes of Feathers; and after them the Bey in Perſon, follow'd by his Houſhold, conſiſting of three hundred Men. The ten Firſt of theſe were cloath'd

cloath'd in Green Velvet, arm'd with Bows and Arrows and Sabres; and the next ten in Yellow Sattin, arm'd with a Launce, Shield and Sabre: the reſt were arm'd with Carbines and Sabres, and after them came the Country Muſick. When the *Bey* came to the Palace in the *Meidan*, he alighted, where the *Baſſa* waited to receive him; and treated him with Coffee, Sherbet and Perfumes, after the manner of the Country: He alſo order'd a hundred *Caftan's*, or rich Veſts, to be given to his principal Attendants; after which the *Bey* took his leave, and was attended by the *Kiaca*, or Steward of the *Baſſa* to his Palace, which was an Honour ſeldom done to a *Bey*. The Prince ſaluted all the People as he paſs'd, who ſhouted and wiſh'd him a thouſand Bleſſings; being much better affected to their *Beys* than to the *Turks*: And when the *Beys* are at their Governments, they do not much dread the *Turkiſh* Power, it ſeems. *Mahomet* kept two thouſand Men about his Palace for his Guard all the while he was at *Cairo*; and the reſt of his Forces encamp'd at a little diſtance from the Town. He never went abroad but he was attended by three thouſand Horſe; and while he ſtay'd at *Cairo* he preſented the *Baſſa* with fourſcore Purſes (every Purſe is of the value of 500 *Dollars*.)

Notwithſtanding the mutual Civilities which paſs'd between the *Baſſa* and *Bey* at this Interview, the next Year the *Baſſa* enter'd into a formal War againſt him; and having corrupted ſome of the *Arab* Troops, in whom he moſt confided, he cauſed him to be ſtrangled; looking upon his own Government to be very precarious while ſo potent and popular a Prince as *Mahomet Bey* was living.

Some things *Egypt* is remarkable for.

Hatching Chickens in Ovens.

There ſtill remain ſome remarkable things to be related of this Country, which every Traveller who paſſes through it takes notice of; as firſt, their way of hatching Chickens in Ovens. They put their Eggs in Ovens, ſays *Thevenot*, which are heated with ſo temperate a Warmth, and imitates ſo well the natural Heat, that Chickens are form'd and hatch'd in them: Theſe Ovens are under Ground, and the Hearth of them cover'd with Cotton or Flax to lay the Eggs upon. There are twelve of theſe Ovens together, ſix on a ſide, two Stories on each ſide the Paſſage, that is three Ovens above and three below on each Hand: They begin to heat the Ovens about the middle of *February*, and continue to heat them about four Months: They heat their Ovens only with the hot Aſhes of Oxen or Camel's Dung, which affords a ſmothering heat without any viſible Fire; this they lay at the Mouth and the further end of the Oven, changing it and putting in freſh Dung every Day: This they continue to do for ten Days, and then lay in the Eggs, ſometimes eight thouſand in an Oven; after eight or ten Days they pick out the good from the bad, which are diſcover'd by holding them to a Lamp, then they put out the Fire, and having laid one half of the Eggs in the upper Ovens, they ſhut up all cloſe, and let them lie about ten Days longer, when the Chickens are hatch'd; but there are few of them which have not ſome defect, 'tis obſerv'd and nice People think they can diſtinguiſh one of theſe Pullets from another by their Palates. It has been diſputed I perceive, whether this can be effected in any other Country beſides *Egypt*, where the natural heat of the Climate is thought to contribute much towards theſe Productions: But Mr. *Thevenot* tells us, that the Duke of *Florence* ſent for ſome of the *Cophti's* (who only follow this Buſineſs) and hatched Chickens in *Italy* in the ſame manner.

Another thing which creates Admiration in the credulous Traveller, as well as the ſuperſtitious Natives, both *Chriſtian* and *Mahometan*, is the pretended annual Reſurrection of Bones, in a certain Burying-Place near *Old Cairo*, on *Good-Friday* and the two preceding Days, according to the old Stile, by which both the *Greeks* and *Cophti's* reckon. Mr. *Thevenot* relates, that he went to the Place on *Good-Friday*, to ſee what grounds they had for this Belief, where he found a Multitude of People aſſembled, and the *Turks* going in Proceſſion with their Banners or Colours flying, on Account of a *Sheik*, or Holy Man, who was interred here, whoſe Bones annually appear, and take the Air with the reſt; and the *Turks* offered up their Prayers there, with great Devotion.

The annual Reſurrection of Bones.

There were a great many Skulls and Bones, Mr. *Thevenot* obſerved, upon the Place, and every one aſſured him they were juſt riſen out of the Earth; nor is it poſſible, he ſays, to make them think otherwiſe, for he enquired of ſome, who ſeemed to have more Senſe than the reſt, and they averr'd it to be true, and that while a Perſon was looking one way, the Bones came out of the Earth on the other Side, frequently within two Foot of him. *Thevenot* laughed at them, and ſaid they had probably been ſcattered there by ſome of their Saints; but he was ſuſpected to be an Atheiſt for his Pains, and in Danger of being mobbed, and therefore thought it Prudence to conceal his Thoughts, and not be too officious in undeceiving them, this being an Error, of which the *Cophti's* and *Greeks* are as tenacious as the *Mahometans*. And Dr. *Heylin*, a Gentleman of good Senſe, ſeems to give ſome Credit to the thing, as poſſibly many of us might have done, if we had lived in thoſe Times, when the wiſeſt Men were not entirely free from Superſtition. Witneſs the great Lord *Clarendon*, and his Woodſtock Dæmon, Dr. *Heylin* relates the Fact out of an Author, who aſſures us, that *Stephen Dupleis*, a ſober diſcerning Man, was an Eye-Witneſs of the Miracle, and touched ſeveral of the riſing Members, (for the firſt Account we had of this Matter, was, that entire Limbs appeared, cloathed with Fleſh and Blood, and afterwards retired to their Tombs) and that as he was about to touch the Head of a Child, a Native of *Cairo* cryed out to him, *Hold, hold, you know not what you do!* A ſtrange forerunner, ſays Dr. *Heylin*, of the Reſurrection of the whole Body, (if it be of undoubted Credit, as he adds) for the Doctor could not give entire Credit to the Story it ſeems, though it came from an Eye-Witneſs, even in thoſe credulous Times.) But ſurely we do not want any ſuch Inſtances as theſe to ſupport the principal Articles of our Faith: And it is but too juſt an Obſervation, that the introducing ſuch ridiculous Stories as a Confirmation of our Religion, when the Falſity of them comes to be diſcovered, are no ſmall Prejudice to it, and induce weak Minds to imagine there is as little Foundation for thoſe real Miracles, by which the World was at firſt convinced of the Truth of *Chriſtianity*, as for theſe pretended ones.

The Animals which *Egypt* is remarkable for, are, firſt the Crocodile, formerly thought to be peculiar to this Country, but I don't find any material Difference between theſe Creatures and the Allegators at the Mouth of the *Ganges*, and in other Rivers of *India*. They are both of them known to be amphibious Animals, accuſtomed both to Land and Water. They grow to a prodigious Length, twenty Feet and upwards. In Shape they are like a Lizard, with four ſhort Feet, rather Claws, and ſome of them ſo large as to ſwallow a Man. They have a flat Head, their Eyes indifferently large, and their Back covered with broad Scales, like ſome antiquated Pieces of Armour. They ſeem to move with greateſt Strength and Agility in the Water; and though

Crocodiles.

they run a great Pace by Land, yet their Bodies are so long and unweildy, that they cannot easily turn, whereby their Prey escapes them on Shore. They watch therefore in the Sedge and other cover by the Sides of Rivers, and so much resemble the Trunk of a Tree, that, 'tis said, Travellers have mistaken them for such, and unwarily been surprised. As for his Tears and alluring Voice, which the Antients ascribe to him, I need not intimate that these are pure Poetical Fictions. They take them by digging deep Pits near the River, which are covered over, especially when the Water rises to a considerable Height, for then they most usually get out upon the Shore. When they are taken in a Pit, they let them fast several Days, and then hamper them with Ropes, with running Knots, and muzzle their Snouts, and the *Franks* most commonly purchase them to send to *Europe*. Some of their Skins stuffed may be seen in *London*. Notwithstanding they grow to such a prodigious Bulk, it seems they proceed from an Egg no bigger than a Turkey's, hatched in the warm Sand.

The Sea-Horse

The *Hippopotamus*, or Sea-Horse, is another amphibious Animal which frequents this River. Mr. *Thevenot* says, he say one of them which was taken at *Girge*, on the *Nile*, in the Year 1658, which was immediately afterwards brought to *Cairo*. It was about the Bigness of a Camel, of a tawny Colour, the hinder part made much like an Ox, and the Head like an Horse; its Eyes and Ears small, but it had great open Nostrils; thick large Feet, almost round, and four Claws; the Tail like an Elephant's, and not more Hair than there is upon an Elephant. In the lower Jaw it had four great Teeth, half a Foot long, two of them crooked, and as big as the Horns of an Ox, and the other two strait, but standing out in Length. Some *Janizaries* shot it as it was grazing on the Land. It received several Shot before it fell, the Bullets hardly piercing the Skin, but one that happened to hit the Jaw, brought it down. These Monsters are very rare, even in *Africk*, for there had been no such Animal seen there for many Years before.

As to the little Bird *Trochileus*, which is said to live on the Meat she gets out of the Crocodile's Teeth: And the Rat *Ichneumon*, of whom there is a Tradition, that he jumps into the Crocodile's Mouth, and eats his way out again through his Belly, I presume there have been but few Witnesses of these Feats of Activity, and therefore must beg leave to suspend my Faith in these Things, till we receive better Evidence of the Facts than we have hitherto done.

Camelion.

The Camelion is reckoned among the remarkable Animals of *Egypt*, but he is not peculiar to this Country. In Size and Shape it something resembles a Lizard, and is, in a true Light, of a greenish Colour, but assumes the Colour of most things it stands near. It was thought formerly to have lived only upon Air, but has been observed to take Flies, by darting out his Tongue, which is of an extraordinary Length: However, those that have kept them in Boxes observe, that they will live several Months without any Nourishment but what they draw in with their Breath.

Ostritch.

The Ostritch is another Animal, very common in the Deserts of *Egypt* and *Arabia*. They are the tallest Fowls we meet with any where, and will strike a Blow like a Horse, with their huge Feet. Their Backs are shaped almost like a Camel's, and they run a prodigious Pace, assisted by their Wings, which are of little Use to them in flying, for they can scarce raise themselves from the Ground, and the *Arabians* frequently ride them down. Their Eggs, which are of the Bigness of a Foot-Ball, they hide in the Sand till they are hatched, and never sit upon them. But both the Bird and its Eggs being frequently brought to *England*, needs no farther Description here.

The Basilisk, or Cockatrice.

The Serpent called the Basilisk, or Cockatrice, whose very Eyes dart certain Death, if we may credit the Antients, are said to be found also in *Egypt*, and I have heard some modern Travellers averr, that there are Serpents in some parts of the World, which by fixing their Eyes upon little Birds, will bring them down from the Tops of Trees; which Fact, tho' it be unmannerly flatly to deny, when a grave Gentleman says he has seen it, yet if there have been such an Instance, possibly it did not proceed from any Poison the Animal emits, either from its Eyes, or the Effluvia of its noxious Body; but probably the Brightness of his Eye, like those Glasses the Fowler uses, may tempt the unwary Bird to approach him, till he comes within his reach. But upon second Thoughts, as there are Poisons which will operate very strongly on smelling them, I should not entirely reject that Opinion, which supposes a Bird may be brought from the Top of a Tree, by the poisonous Smell, which attends some Animals, were I but entirely satisfied that the Fact was true. But as I would be very cautious of relating any thing as a piece of History which carries an Air of Improbability with it, so I would not reject every thing that appears strange to us, provided it was well supported. We are not sufficiently acquainted with the Nature of things to pronounce positively, that by one means or other a Bird cannot have been drawn into the Jaws of a Serpent standing at some Distance: But I must confess, I am more enclined to believe it only a Simile of the antient Poets, to illustrate how fatally young Fellows are frequently drawn in, and taken Captive by the Eyes of some fair Charmer, to their eternal Destruction.

The Asp.

The Asp is another little Serpent found in this Country, by whose Bite, the celebrated *Cleopatra* and her Ladies chose to die, the Poison operating suddenly, and throwing the Party into a deep Sleep, though its Effects are said to be various, some who are wounded by it dying in a laughing Fit, and others weeping.

Other Animals.

But to proceed, *Egypt* is as famous for Camels, Dromedaries, and fine Horses, as the neighbouring Country of *Arabia*. Oxen, Buffaloes, Goats, and Sheep are to be met with also in great plenty here; especially the Sheep, with fat Tails, which weigh several Pounds. They abound also with Poultry, Geese, Ducks, *&c.* And a great Variety of small Birds; but Fish is not very good or plentiful, unless it be in those Countries which lie on the Sea, and near the Mouth of the *Nile*. Upon the retiring of the Waters of that River to the usual Channel, a Multitude of Frogs and other Insects are produced; and was there not a large Fowl, like a Stork, which constantly devours them, they would, according to a late Writer, be annually afflicted with the Plague of Frogs.

The *Christians* of the Country are all condemned to ride upon Asses here, as well as in some other Parts of *Turky*; but it happens they have a pretty good Breed, which will keep to a Dog Trot, especially if you hire a Servant with the Ass, as the *Franks* usually do, to prick him forward with a Goad. The governing part of the Nation reserve the riding on Horses, as a peculiar Privilege to themselves: But on long Journeys when they cross the Deserts with the Caravans, most People make use of Camels and Dromedaries.

Husbandry

As to the Husbandry of the *Egyptians*, we are told, that they have no more to do, than to harrow their Grain into the Mud on the Retiring of the Waters of the *Nile* into its proper Channel,

and

and in *March* following they ſeldom fail of a plentiful Harveſt; but they reſerve Water to let into their Rice-Fields, from time to time, as they do in other Countries, for this is a Grain that grows in Water till the Harveſt in all Countries. As to Peas and Beans, and other kinds of Pulſe, Travellers relate, they have them almoſt all the Year round. And thoſe Lands, which are not ſown, yield good Crops of Graſs for their Cattle. But as I don't find they make any of their Graſs into Hay here, any more than in the Eaſtern Countries, I preſume their Camels and Horſes live chiefly on Barley, or Barley Meal made up into Paſte, as they do there. Our Countryman, Mr. *Sandys*, ſays of the Country about *Roſſetto*, the antient *Canopus*, that there is not a Place under Heaven better furniſhed with Grain, Fleſh, Fiſh, Sugar, Fruits, Roots, *&c.* than that Country is. Both within and without *Cairo*, the ſame Author acquaints us, are great Numbers of fine Orchards, watered by little Channels, as they do their Fields, in which grow variety of excellent Fruits, ſuch as Oranges, Lemons, Apples of Paradiſe, Sycamore Figs, Dates, Almonds, Caſſia, Galls growing on Tamarisk, Apples of the Size of Berries, Plantains, a Fruit of the Shape and Bigneſs of a Cucumber, without Stones or Kernels, the Pulp exceeding luſcious, which we meet with alſo in *India*, and other Places, where they have the ſame Notion with the People of *Egypt*, that this was the Fruit which tempted our firſt Parents, adding, that of the Leaves of this Tree they alſo made themſelves Aprons, the Leaves being two or three Foot long. Some of the Fruit Trees about *Cairo*, bear all the Year, and moſt of them keep their Leaves. The Corn Fields beyond are planted with Palm Trees, which are not at all prejudicial to the Grain, but both together afford a moſt delightful Proſpect. They have ſome Vines alſo in *Egypt*, which bear a Black Grape, but not proper for Wine, however, this is in ſome meaſure ſupplyed by the Liquor drawn from Palm. There are a great Variety of Melons alſo, and Cucumbers in their Kitchen Gardens, the laſt of which, the People eat raw, without any ill Effects; nor do they want any Garden Stuff almoſt, that we have in this part of the World. Garlick and Onions, which once were deified here, they have ſtill in great Plenty, though they have not that extravagant Veneration for them, as their Anceſtors had.

Inconveniencies and Diſtempers.

The principal Inconveniencies and Diſtempers People are ſubject to in this Country, Mr. *Thevenot* tells us are, firſt, exceſſive Heat, ſo intollerable, that a Man knows not how to ſet about any Buſineſs; and in the Summer Nights, there is no ſleeping quietly for Musketoes, or Gnats; there are always Swarms of them buzzing about; the beſt Remedy againſt them is to have a fine Cloth tacked cloſe round the Bed, but ſome of them will get in and torment a Perſon notwithſtanding. Another Inconvenience is, the Sand, which inſinuates it ſelf every where, inſomuch that you will find the Bed-Cloths full of it, and as hot as if they had been warmed with a Pan of Coals.

A Pain in the Stomach, Foreigners eſpecially are very ſubject to, which proceeds from their going open breaſted, which chills their Bowels, and Cauſes dangerous Fevers and Fluxes, eſpecially in Autumn, when the River overflows the Country. Another Diſtemper which reigns here, is the Swelling of the Scrotum, and ſore Eyes are almoſt univerſal in Summer Time, occaſioned by the ſcorching Heat reflected from the Sand, and the Duſt it ſelf, which is very ſubtle and ſalt, is pernicious to the Sight. Mr. *Thevenot* relates, that a *French* Merchant of his Acquaintance, loſt his Sight by it, as many of the Country People do; and others were ſo afflicted with it, that they were in the extreameſt Torture, crying out Night and Day for a Fortnight or three Weeks together, and could get no Sleep. You will hardly ſee any Body abroad in Summer time, that is perfectly free from this Diſtemper, and moſt of them with little Slips of Blue Stuff hanging over their Eyes. Mr. *Thevenot* ſays, he eſcaped ſore Eyes himſelf, which he imputes to his waſhing them frequently with cold Water. The ſwelling of the Legs attended with ſharp Pains is another Inconvenience many People ſuffer at *Cairo*, and when the Water of the *Nile* begins to riſe, there are few People but are troubled with an Inflamation, which runs over the whole Body, and when they drink they feel ſharp pricking Pains all over them, as if a hundred Needles run into them at once.

The Plague generally viſits them once in ſeven Years, during which Time it is obſerved to take a Tour round the *Ottoman* Empire, but is ſometimes at *Cairo* two Years together. All Diſeaſes are more fatal in *Egypt*, during the *Hamchin*, or Hot Winds, than at any other Time, and they generally begin about the ſeventh of *April*, and laſt fifty Days. They bring abundance of Sand into the Town which gets into the Chambers, Trunks, and Boxes, let them be never ſo cloſe; and many People who travel with the Caravans at this time of the Year periſh by theſe Winds; as ſoon as the Hot Winds ceaſe and the Dews begin to fall, ſay ſome, or as others, when the *Nile* begins to riſe, all Diſtempers, even the Plague it ſelf ceaſes to be Mortal; ſo that this noble River conſtantly brings Health and Plenty with it when it overflows the Country, and may well be the Occaſion of that annual Joy they expreſs on its riſing to a certain height.

As for Phyſicians, or Remedies, the *Mahometans* in *Egypt* ſcarce uſe any, adhereing immoveably to their Doctrine of Fate; and therefore when the Plague is in a Family, viſit their Neighbours as at other times, and don't ſcruple to wear the Cloaths of a Man that died of it.

Diverſions of the Mob.

The Streets of *Cairo*, like other populous Cities, are infeſted by Juglers, Ballad-ſingers and Fortune-Tellers; and among other Amuſements to wheedle the common People out of their Money, they lead about dancing Camels: Theſe Animals are taught to Dance when they are young, by being ſet upon a heated Floor, which gives them a great deal of Pain, and makes them lift up their Legs as if they were dancing; at the ſame time they beat upon a Drum, and thus they deal with the Creature for about half a Year; after which, when ever he hears the Noiſe of a Drum he ſtrikes into a Dance. Their Fortune-Tellers breed up little Birds, which when any Perſon comes to enquire concerning the ſucceſs of his Affairs, carry him a little Scroul of Paper ready prepar'd, in which he finds his good or bad Fortune written: And this I find ſome People give as much attention to as to an Oracle; which brings me to enquire into the firſt Riſe of that raſcally People call'd *Gypſies*. Thoſe pretended Fortune-Tellers that infeſt moſt Countries in *Europe* and *Aſia*, and who are generally held to be of *Egyptian* Extraction, at leaſt the firſt of them were ſuch. They are call'd in *Turky Zinganees* from their Captain *Zinganeus*, who when *Sultan Selimus* made a Conqueſt of *Egypt*, about the Year 1517, with ſeveral other *Mamalukes*, and as many Native *Egyptians* as refuſed to ſubmit to the *Turkiſh* Yoke, retired into the Deſarts, where they liv'd by Rapine and Plunder, and frequently came down into the Plains of *Egypt*, committing

Gypſies, their Original

ting great Outrages in the Towns upon the *Nile* under the Dominion of the *Turks*; and idle People frequently reſorting to them, in hopes of participating in their Plunder; they encreaſed at length to ſo formidable a Body, that the *Turks* were glad to come to a Treaty with them, wherein it was agreed they ſhould lay down their Arms, and be permitted to exerciſe any other Callings, with the ſame Privileges other Subjects enjoy'd: But the *Zinganees*, having been long uſed to a Vagabond rapacious Way of Living, and compoſed of a Mixture of Nations, who, during their Depredations upon all Mankind in the Deſarts, had loſt all Senſe of Religion, and became averſe to the following any Art or Science, began to have recourſe to their former Ways of Rapine and Robbery; and tho' they were often forgiven by the *Turks*, for fear of another Inſurrection, yet it being found at length that they were not to be reclaim'd, the Government were compell'd to baniſh the *Zinganees* their Country, and a Power was given to any Man to kill a *Zinganee*, or make him his Slave, if he was found in *Egypt* after a limited Time; and this Edict was ſo well executed, that a *Zinganee* was not to be ſeen in *Egypt* for ſeveral Years after; at leaſt any that dar'd profeſs themſelves ſuch; for it ſeems they agreed to diſperſe themſelves, in ſmall Parties, into every Country in the known World; and as they were Natives of *Egypt*, a Country where the Occult Sciences, or the Black Art, as 'twas call'd, was ſuppoſed to have arrived to great Perfection, and which in that credulous Age was in great vogue, with People of all Religions and Perſwaſions; they thought that they could not pitch upon a more effectual Way to gain a Subſiſtance, and yet indulge that lazy wandring Life they had been uſed to, than by ſetting up for a more than ordinary Skill in foretelling future Events; and as they had, by a profligate Life, quite eradicated all Principles of Honour and Conſcience, no doubt they had a View of ſupplying their Neceſſities by other Means, when Fortune-telling ſhould fail them. There needed no Teſtimonials that they were of *Egyptian* Extraction, the Swarthineſs of their Complexions demonſtrating as much wherever they came. And what makes me give the greater Credit to this Account of the Original of our *Gypſies*, is an Act of Parliament which I find made in the 22d of *Henry* VIII. being about fourteen Years after the Conqueſt of *Egypt* by *Selimus* the *Turkiſh* Emperor, wherein it is recited, *That, whereas certain Outlandiſh People, uſing no Craft or Merchandize to live by, but going from Place to Place in great Companies, uſing ſubtil and crafty Means to deceive the King's Subjects, bearing them in Hand, that they by Palmiſtry can tell Mens and Women's Fortunes; and ſo many Times ſubtilly deceive the People of their Money, and commit divers Felonies and Robberies. It is enacted, That all ſuch Offenders, commonly called* Egyptians, *who ſhall remain in this Realm for the Space of one Month, ſhould be adjudg'd Felons; and that every Perſon who ſhould import ſuch* Egyptians *ſhould forfeit for every Offence* 40 *l.*

But in the 5th Year of Queen *Elizabeth*, it being found, that ſeveral Natives of our own Country were ſo much in Love with this idle profligate way of Living, that they frequently liſted themſelves among theſe *Egyptians*, and diſfigur'd their Faces that they might appear ſuch, uſing an unintelligible Cant, which other People were as much Strangers to as to the Language of *Egypt*: It was enacted by the 5th of *Eliz.* Cap. 20. *That every Perſon, who ſhould be ſeen or found within this Realm, in the Company and Fellowſhip of theſe Vagabonds commonly call'd* Egyptians; *or counterfeiting, or diſguiſing themſelves by their Apparel, Speech, or otherwiſe, like to ſuch Vagabonds, and ſhould continue ſo to do, either at one or ſeveral times, by the Space of a Month, ſhould be adjudged Felons, and loſe the Benefit of Sanctuary and Clergy, provided that this Act did not extend to Children under fourteen Years of Age:* For they travell'd with Children, which were their greateſt Protection it ſeems, as they are to the Vagabonds of this Age; few People caring to apprehend or puniſh the Parents, or reputed Parents, for fear of bringing a Charge of Children on themſelves, or the Places where they reſided; and this might be one Reaſon that theſe People encouraged Propagation, and laid no reſtraints on thoſe of their Tribe, but ſuffer'd the neareſt Relations to couple together like the common Herd; which might alſo be one Inducement for ſo many looſe profligate People to join them, as occaſioned the above-mentioned Statutes to be made in *England*. But notwithſtanding theſe Laws had that good Effect, as to rid the Country of all Foreign *Gypſies*, we find there are too many of their Diſciples remaining amongſt us to this Day. But in *Turky*, and other Countries where they have not been thus reſtrain'd by Laws, their Parties are larger and more formidable than with us, and many of this kind of Vagabond People are to be found at this Day, even in *Egypt* itſelf.

The Reaſon theſe People are ſtill tolerated in *Turkey*, may be, that they do there, at leaſt of late Years, apply themſelves to ſome Handicraft Buſineſs, particularly the making of Edge-Tools, which they are very excellent at; carrying their Tents and Utenſils upon Aſſes, and uſually pitching their Black Camp near ſome great Town, where, by Working, Thieving, or Fortune-telling they make a pretty good Proviſion for their Bellies, but do not much trouble themſelves about Clothing or Furniture: And when the People begin to be weary of their pilfering Tricks, they move off to ſome other Part of the Country: They have a Prophecy, it ſeems, amongſt them, that they ſhall recover the Dominion of *Egypt* again, and the *Turkiſh Empire*, after a certain Period, ſhall be deſtroyed, which Mr. *Hill* has given us in *Engliſh* Verſe, as follows:

Years over Years ſhall roll,
Ages o'er Ages ſlide,
Before the World's Controul,
Shall check the Creſcent's *Pride.*
Baniſh'd from Place to Place,
Wide as the Ocean's Roar,
The mighty Gypſie *Race*
Shall viſit every Shore.
But when the hundredth Year
Shall three Times doubled be,
Then ſhall an End appear
To all their Slavery:
Then ſhall the Warlike Powers
From diſtant Climes return;
Egypt *again be ours,*
And Turkiſh *Turrets burn.*

It is now about two hundred Years ſince the firſt Inſtitution of the *Gypſie* Tribes, and poſſibly the *Turkiſh Empire* may be deſtroy'd in a hundred more, if the Chriſtian Princes themſelves do not ſupport it, as they have long done, by their ſcandalous Diviſions: But that ever that abandon'd Race ſhould obtain the Dominion of *Egypt* again, this Part of the Prophecy I believe very few People will have any Faith in.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Religion of the Egyptians; *as alſo of their Hieroglyphicks and Pilgrimages.*

Religion of the Mahometans.

AS to the Religion of the Mahometans of *Egypt*, it differs but little from that of the *Turks*, only, 'tis obſerved, that the *Moors*, or *Arabians*, who at preſent make up the Bulk of the People here, are much more ſuperſtitious and zealous in their Way than the Mahometans of *Turkey*; and have their *Santo's*, or Puritans, among them, for whom they expreſs an extraordinary Veneration, but the *Turks* deſpiſe the Hypocrites.

Santo Saints.

MANY of theſe *Santo's*, Mr. *Thevenot* relates, go perfectly naked about the Streets, without the leaſt Rag to cover them, ſuffering their Hair to grow to an unreaſonable Length. In this Condition they viſit the Houſes of Perſons of Diſtinction, and ſit down to Dinner with them without any Invitation, and leave their Tables with as little Ceremony as they enter'd; and it is look'd upon as no ſmall Bleſſing to a Houſe to receive a Viſit from theſe People. It is no Fiction, this Author aſſures us, that many Women who have no Children, will kiſs their Priapus with great Veneration, in order to obtain a great Belly. There are many other Sorts of *Santo's* in *Egypt*, for whom the Vulgar expreſs a mighty Reſpect: But a certain *Turkiſh* Baſſa, it ſeems, had ſo little regard to their pious Pretences, that he ſent as many of them as he could apprehend to the Galleys.

Religion of the antient Egyptians.

THE Religion of the antient *Egyptians* I ſhall not take upon me to deſcribe, any further than to obſerve that they paid divine Honours not only to the Planets, but to ſeveral Sorts of Birds and Beaſts, and even to Leeks and Onions, if they are rightly repreſented to us, but the Beaſt they moſt ador'd was a black Ox, under the Name of *Apis*. But whether their Veneration for theſe Creatures proceeded from an Opinion that they were animated by ſome noble Soul, (for the Doctrine of Tranſmigration ſeems to have its Original here) or whether they only ador'd the Divine Power manifeſted in theſe Creatures, I do not find decided; but as the *Egyptians* are univerſally acknowledged to be a learned ingenious People, we may depend upon it they had ſome ſpecious Reaſon at leaſt, for their Devotion towards theſe Things.

Religion of the Cophti.

THE Poſterity of the antient *Egyptians* are held to be the preſent *Cophti* Race, among whom, 'tis generally held, St. *Mark* firſt planted Chriſtianity, and was the firſt Biſhop of *Alexandria*, then the Metropolis of *Egypt*. His Succeſſors, according to Dr. *Heylin*, were continually choſen out of the Presbytery, or Cathedral Clergy, till the Time of *Heraclas* and *Dionyſius*, and afterwards out of the Clergy at large. Their Juriſdiction was ſettled by the Council of *Nice*, over all the Churches of the Dioceſs of *Egypt*, which included *Lybia*, *Pentapolis*, and *Egypt*, properly ſo called; and afterwards the *Ethiopian*, or *Abaſſine* Churches became ſubject to this Patriarch, and have ever ſince acknowledged a Relation to him. Upon the revolting from the *Greek* Emperors, and putting themſelves under the Dominion of the *Saracens*, the Chriſtian Religion ſenſibly decayed; but much more ſince the Conqueſt of that Kingdom by the *Turks*, which happened about two hundred Years ago, and there are not now thought to be fifty thouſand of them in the Country. They are deemed Hereticks, on Account of their holding but one Nature in Chriſt. They alſo retain the Rite of Circumciſion, as well as Baptiſm; and hold that no Baptiſm is valid, unleſs adminiſtred by the Prieſt in the open Church. They give Infants the Sacrament of the Euchariſt alſo as ſoon as chriſtned, and admit Marriages in the ſecond Degree of Conſanguinity, without a Diſpenſation; and in their Liturgies read a Goſpel written by *Nicodemus*. They differ from the Church of *Rome* in adminiſtring the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper in both Kinds; and allow neither extreme Unction, or the Euchariſt, to be adminiſtred to the Sick. Neither do they agree with that Church in the Points of Purgatory or praying for the Dead; but the *Roman* Miſſionaries boaſt, that they have made good Catholicks of great Numbers of them of late; however, the Patriarch of *Alexandria* ſtill retains his Authority, and has not ſubmitted to the Infallibility of the Pope, as I can learn.

THEY ſay Maſs in the *Coptick* and *Arabick* Languages, and when they ſing the Paſſion, and come to the Place where 'tis ſaid *Judas* betrayed our Saviour, the Congregation cry *Arfat*, that is to ſay, *Horned Beaſt*, or Cuckold. And when they read that *Peter* cut off the Ear of the High-Prieſt's Servant, they all anſwer *Aſia Boutros*, or *Well done* Peter. And, if we credit the Accounts the *Roman* Miſſionaries give, both of Clergy and People, they are intolerably ignorant; but ſomething in this Caſe muſt be imputed to Prejudice. Mr. *Thevenot* relates, that they have a Legend of our Saviour's Life, during his Minority, which ſays, that an Angel every Day brought him Food from Heaven; and that our Lord ſpent his Infancy in making Birds of Clay, which he afterwards breathed upon, and they flew away. It relates alſo, that a roaſted Cock being ſerved up at the laſt Supper, and *Judas* being gone out to betray our Lord, he commanded the roaſted Cock to go after him, who brought Intelligence that *Judas* had ſold him, and for this Service the Cock was admitted into Paradiſe: And 'tis obſervable, that *Mahomet* has inſerted this Fable of the Cock's being admitted into Heaven, with ſome Alteration, in his Alchoran. I ſhall here add the Obſervations of Father *Brothais* on *Upper Egypt*, as I find them inſerted in our Philoſophical Tranſactions, which are as follow:

Obſervations on Upper Egypt.

'I have ſpent three Months of 1669 in a Voyage to the *Upper Egypt*, accompanied with my Brothers, the Fathers *Charles* and *Francis*, all of us aſcending upon the *Nile* as high as three hundred Leagues above *Cairo*, being two Days Journey on this Side of the *Caſcata's* of the *Nile*. I there admired Store of Idol Temples, yet entire together, with very antient Palaces filled with Statues and Idols. I counted in one Place alone ſeven Obeliſks, like thoſe at *Rome*, and above an hundred and twenty Columns in one Hall, of the Bigneſs of five Braſſes, filled within and without, from the Top to the Bottom, with Hieroglyphick Letters, and with Figures of falſe Deities. I found Statues of white Marble, and ſome of black, of the Bigneſs of three Perſons, with their Swords on their Sides, and of

'an hard Stone; particularly there was a Man 'and a Woman of the Height of eight Fathoms at 'leaſt, tho' ſeated in Chairs, and well propor- 'tioned; there were alſo two other Statues of 'black Marble, repreſenting Women with Globes 'on their Heads.

'We meet but with two Places where Anti- 'quities are to be ſeen, one whereof is called '*Lazon*, and the other *Candion*, which is a very 'antient Caſtle, and, according to the Tradition 'of the Country, formerly the Reſidence of a 'King. Nor indeed is this hard to believe, even 'before one enters it, conſidering in the Ave- 'nues to the ſaid Caſtle the great Number of '*Sphynxes* ſtanding on a Row, and turning their 'Heads towards the Alley. This Idol, with 'the Head of a Woman and the Body of a Lion, 'was once adored as a Deity by the *Egyptians*. 'They are diſtant from each other about two 'Paces, and are twenty Foot long. I walked in 'Alleys, ending at four Gates of the Caſtle, and 'for ought I know there may be more of them, 'ſince I went but half the Round of the Caſtle, 'which is very ſpacious. I reckoned ſixty of them 'on the Side of one Alley, and as many over 'againſt it; and fifty one in another Alley; the 'Alleys being about as broad as the Mall. The 'Gates of the Caſtle are of an extraordinary 'Height, covered with excellent Stones; mea- 'ſuring one, which makes the Height of it, I 'found it twenty-ſix Foot long, and proportion- 'ably thick. I believe there are above a Million 'of Figures in Profile, none in Front: I ſpeak of 'thoſe which are graven on the Walls and Pillars. 'That which moſt pleaſed me, was the Ground, 'where the Azure and other Colours, which are 'like Enamel, appear as freſh as if they had 'been laid on but a Month before. There are 'Temples ſo ſpacious, that three thouſand Peo- 'ple may ſtand on the Roof with eaſe. In the 'ſame Caſtle there is a Pond, the Water where- 'of is bitter, ſet about with fine Stone.

'There are a great Number of Chriſtian '*Cophti's* in this Country, who have many Mona- 'ſteries and antient Churches, but poor. We 'have paſſed many Places where was neither 'Prieſt or Church, but only the poor People, 'like Sheep without a Shepherd.

'*An Account of the Porphiry Pillars in* Egypt, *by Dr.* Robert Huntington.

Porphiry, an Account of it.

'IT may be, I think, taken for granted, that 'there is no Quarry, or rather Rock, of 'Porphiry, in all the lower Parts of *Egypt*. For 'ſo far as the *Nile* overflows is perfect Soil; and 'the Boundaries of this Overflow (which are 'never ten Miles from the Channel that I ſaw, 'generally ſcarce half of it, and in ſome Places 'but a Mile or two, the *Delta* excepted, which is 'univerſally covered all but the North Side to the 'Sea, and a little to the Eaſt for ſome Miles above '*Damietta*) are riſing Hills of Sand, beyond which 'is perfect Deſart, upon the *Africk* Side. [Higher 'South, I have been told, there are Rocks nearer 'the River, and in ſome Places they ſtraiten it.] 'Under theſe Sands there is a yielding Stone, not 'much harder than Chalk, but not ſo white, and 'very eaſily managed, as at the Mummies deep 'ſpacious Vaults, which were the old Repoſito- 'ries for the Dead. And the like may alſo be 'ſaid of thoſe Cells or Sepulchres, which are 'hewn purely out of the rocky Earth, three 'Quarters of a Mile to the South of *Alexandria*. 'Albeit, nearer to the Sea there are Stones of a 'harder Kind, and with which they build, but 'by their mouldring away, as appears by the Re- 'mains of Houſes within the Walls of the City, 'tis plain they cannot endure the Weather, 'which is ſufficiently corroding there; the Iron, 'which once plated their thick wooden Gates, 'being moſtly eaten away, and the deep Charac- 'ters upon the Sides of theſe very Porphiry Pil- 'lars exceedingly defaced. Indeed about *Mem- 'phis*, that is, near the Pyramids, they have a 'milder Air, and the Hieroglyphicks cut in theſe 'Stones will laſt well enough, but if they are re- 'moved into a rougher, they will crumble and 'ſcale, as I found by Experience: For having 'procured four Stones, the beſt marked with 'thoſe Figures of Antiquity I could meet with, 'and ſent them down to *Alexandria*, in order to 'their Tranſportation into *England*, I found them 'upon my ſecond Voyage into *Egypt*, very much 'injur'd, being put into the Cuſtom-Houſe-Yard, 'where they lie ſtill embargoed by the Aga. 'But yet further into the Country, there are 'Mountains of harder Stone. In the *Nitrian*, 'now the Deſart of St. *Macarius*, and not far 'from the Lake where the true Nitre incruſtates 'on the Top of the Water, there are many, and 'ſome of them not utterly unlike Porphiry. That 'which neareſt reſembles its Colour, but not its 'Conſiſtence, is the Vein that produces the Earle 'Stone, of which there are many in the *Babr Ba- 'tama*, a great Sand Valley.

'However, I cannot pronounce there is no 'Porphiry hereabouts, for in the chief Monaſtery 'of the four now remaining, (of three hundred 'ſixty-ſix,) dedicated to the Bleſſed Virgin, the 'two Stones which ſecure their Entrance are of 'the like, if not the very ſame Subſtance, which 'I more particularly obſerved upon the Account 'of their ingenious Contrivance: For the People 'lying otherwiſe at the Mercy of the roving *Arabs*, 'with theſe two Mill-Stones, for that's their 'Make, thus make good the Gate, or Paſſage, 'into which they run them, and then drive a 'great wooden Wedge between them on the In- 'ſide, which ſo faſtens them that they cannot 'be mov'd but on the Inſide: And of ſuch a Sort 'of Porphiry is the noted *Sphynx*, that mighty 'Head and Shoulders yet ſtanding by the Nor- 'thern Pyramids. I have indeed been told of a 'Place upon *Mount Sinai*, whence this Porphiry 'came: And they pretend to ſhew the very 'Rock, where the two excellent double Rows of 'Pillars in the Church of *Bethlehem* were hewn; 'though I went away ſatisfied it was quite a dif- 'ferent Sort of Stone. Another tells of a Pillar 'of the ſame Make, yet lying there, and if this 'be certain you need ſeek no further. Albeit I 'muſt tell you, that the Stones brought from 'thence, with the Repreſentation of a Buck (as 'termed) upon them, though reddiſh, are of a 'much finer, and more even Texture. Father '*Carlo Franciſco D'Orleans*, now Superior of the '*Capuchins* at *Cairo*, who went three hundred 'Leagues up the *Nile*, told me of many Temples, 'Statues, and Pillars at that Diſtance, tho' I 'can't be ſure he ſaid there were any of Porphiry; 'but ſince it was in *Thebais*, why may we not 'ſuppoſe them of that Black, White, and Red 'ſpeckled Marble, famous in the World, and 'wherewith the leſſer Pyramid perhaps was 'cruſted, yet to be ſeen upon the Ground about 'it, which when poliſhed looks finely.

'Thoſe which I have my ſelf ſeen, are one of 'them at *Matarea*, three or four Miles Eaſt of '*Grand Cairo*, and two at *Alexandria* juſt within 'the Wall upon the North ſide of the City, (for '*Pompey's* Pillar, as they call it, half a Mile 'without the Gate to the South, is quite of ano- 'ther Make and Matter.) One of theſe is thrown 'down and broken in pieces, but was of the 'ſame Dimenſions, for Length and Thickneſs, as

'the

‘ the other. The *Franks* call them *Agulia's*, the ‘ *Engliſh* particularly *Cleopatra*'s Needles, but the ‘ Inhabitants content themſelves with the gene- ‘ ral Name of Pillars. They have no Baſis or ‘ Pedeſtal above Ground, and if they ever had ‘ they muſt needs be very deep in the Earth. The ‘ Stone it ſelf is ſomething more lively than the ‘ Porphyry of St. *John*'s Font at *Epheſus*, much ‘ more vivid than thoſe four tall ſquare Pillars at ‘ *Tadmor*, or *Palmyra*, which are each of them, ‘ I think, but of one piece; whilſt all the reſt ‘ exceeding many of another ſort of Stone, are of ‘ ſeveral pieces, and round. The Clearneſs of ‘ its Complexion may perhaps be attributed in ‘ part to the Air which corrodes them, eſpecial- ‘ ly upon the North and Eaſt. The Hieroglyphick Character, with which they are engraven, ‘ is perhaps the aboriginal *Egyptian* Letter, long ‘ ſince worn out of common Uſe in the Country, ‘ as the *Samaritan*, ſo 'tis now generally called, ‘ was amongſt the *Jews*, and bears proportion ‘ with the *Chineſe*, now in Uſe, where each Cha- ‘ racter repreſents a Word, or perhaps a Sen- ‘ tence; and moreover it ſeems to be written in ‘ the ſame way from Top to Bottom, as may be ‘ ſeen by the Board I brought from a Door in the ‘ Village *Succara*, next to the Mummies, the ‘ largeſt Piece of *Egyptian* Writing perhaps at ‘ this Day in *Europe*. I confeſs that in the Vaults, ‘ or Prieſts Chambers cut out of the Rock cloſe ‘ by the ſecond Pyramid, the whole Walls are ‘ inſcribed therewith, but I ſpeak of an Original. ‘ And if all that is there written were but exactly ‘ copied, it might be then lawful to hope that ‘ the Language ſo long ſince dead and buried in ‘ the Houſe of Bondage, might have its Reſur- ‘ rection in the Land of Liberty.

‘ That ſuch vaſt Monuments might be remov'd ‘ from Place to Place is difficult indeed, but not ‘ impoſſible; for ſome of theſe Mountains, from ‘ whence they are ſuppoſed to be dug are near the ‘ *Red Sea*; and *Suez*, which ſtands upon it, from ‘ *Cairo* is but two or three Days Journey, and the ‘ *Nile* leſs. How poſſible it is to convey mighty ‘ Weights by Water let the Obelisks of *Rome* de- ‘ clare, which were all of them brought from this ‘ very Country: And that ſuch things may be ‘ done by Land too, tho' not by every one, is ‘ plain enough, becauſe we ſee they have been ‘ done. At *Balbeck*, which is fourteen Hours ‘ from *Damaſcus* (others ſay but ſeven) whither I ‘ went accompany'd by Mr. *Anthony Balam* and ‘ Mr. *Joſeph Verney*, there is a Stone about ſixty ‘ Foot long, on the North ſide of the Caſtle-Wall, ‘ and two more of ſixty each; and I believe we ‘ ſaw the Way they travelled, having left one of ‘ their Company, tho' not quite ſo big in the ‘ Road as a Monument there to this very Day.

Several Obſervations on the ancient Hieroglyphicks.

The Obſervation that Doctor *Huntington* makes, that the primitive Way of Writing among the *Egyptians* ſeems to have been the ſame as among the *Chineſe* at this Day, has a great deal of probability in it, and he might have carried it further perhaps, and added that all Nations expreſs'd themſelves the ſame way originally; for as Words were in uſe long before Letters were known, ſo there is no doubt every People fix'd upon ſome certain Characters to expreſs their Words, and to record ſuch Actions as they thought deſerved it; and theſe were as generally underſtood as their reſpective Languages. It was a kind of ſhort Hand, where every Character expreſs'd a Word, and ſometimes a Sentence; and theſe Characters obtain'd the Name of *Hieroglyphicks*. But when that more certain Way of compoſing Words by Letters came in uſe, 'tis no wonder that *Hieroglyphicks* were laid aſide, nor can it be expected we ſhould interpret thoſe myſterious Characters any further than the Antients were pleaſed to interpret them to us, as they have done in ſome few Inſtances, unleſs ſome of the Learned in the primitive Ages ſhould riſe again to inſtruct us. From entire Characters the Antients proceeded to write the Conſonants of every Word, and left the Reader to ſupply the defect of Vowels; and thus, it ſeems, were the Scriptures of the *Old Teſtament* penn'd, which People beginning to read variouſly, ſome of the Learned added Accents, or Marks to ſupply the Place of Vowels, and thus the *Hebrew* is written at this Day; but every other Nation almoſt has introduced Vowels, which is found much the moſt eaſy and intelligible way of Writing, and there ſeems to be little room left for further Improvements on this Article at preſent.

From Dr. *Huntington*'s Obſervations, and ſome other learned Gentlemen upon Marble and Porphyry, it ſeems pretty evident that the Antients had not the Art of caſting Stones in imitation of them, as has been ſuggeſted by ſome Writers; and that the true Porphyry is very ſcarce, tho' there are ſome kinds of ſpotted Marble which reſemble it ſo nearly, that an unwary Eye may be deceiv'd, particularly that which has paſs'd for Porphyry among the Ruins of *Tadmor* or *Palmyra* is another kind of Stone, according to the Doctor, tho' ſeveral Gentlemen who view'd thoſe Ruins, it ſeems, took it for ſuch. But whether the Porphyry uſed at *Alexandria* and in other noble Buildings in *Egypt* were dug in the *Arabian* Mountains to the Eaſtward of the *Red Sea*, or in *Thebais* call'd *Upper Egypt*, I find is very uncertain, tho' the general Opinion has been that *Thebais* afforded the fineſt Stone in the World, and the moſt curious Marble has obtain'd the Name of *Thebaick* Marble. How thoſe vaſt Columns and Obelisks were brought either from *Thebais*, or the *Arabian* Mountains, the Doctor does not pretend to inform us; but having concluded there is no ſuch thing as caſt Marble, he ſays, we may be aſſur'd the Antients had Carriages which would tranſport ſuch a vaſt Bulk from one Place to another, becauſe we find thoſe Pillars in Places far diſtant from any ſuch Rocks or Quarries from whence they were hewed; and there is no doubt they had ſuch Carriages, if there never was any ſuch thing as caſt Marble; but it were to be wiſh'd the Antients had left us ſome Hints upon what kind of Carriages, or with what Draught Cattle they were able to carry ſuch a prodigious Bulk and Weight by Land as *Pompey*'s Pillar is ſaid to be.

I ſhall conclude the State of *Egypt* with the Account Mr. *Thevenot* gives us of the annual Preſent the *Grand Seignior* ſends from *Grand Cairo* to *Mecca* with the Pilgrims, which amounts to one third of the value of the Revenues of this Kingdom. All the Particulars contain'd in this Preſent are by the *Franks* call'd *Mahomet*'s Veſt, and are wrought in the Caſtle of *Cairo*.

The Pilgrimage from Cairo to Mecca, with the Grand Seignior's Preſent.

At the time appointed for the Caravan to prepare for *Mecca*, the Preſents are brought with great Solemnity from the Caſtle, through the City to the Palace of the *Emir Adge*, who is Captain of the Caravan of Pilgrims, which our Author had the Opportunity of ſeeing perform'd. In the beginning of the Proceſſion came the Servants of the *Beys* or Lords of *Cairo*, followed by the *Chiaux*, *Azapes* and *Janizaries*; and after them the *Beys* in Perſon, of whom the *Emir Adge*, and ſeveral other Officers, had rich *Coſtans*, or Coats on, preſented them by the *Baſſa* on this Occaſion: Then came the *Janizaries* of the *Divan* followed by Men carrying four very long Pieces of Crimſon Velvet, embroider'd with *Arabick* Letters of Gold as large as ones Finger, and others carried

carried a large Door-piece of Velvet embroider'd in the ſame manner; after theſe came a Camel well harneſs'd, carrying a great Pavilion or Tent of Crimſon Sattin embroidered with Gold, and ſhap'd like a Bell, with a great gilt Ball on the top of it; then a little ſquare Pavilion, carried by a Man, and ſome other Utenſils, which were all to be employ'd in hanging and adorning the *Caaba*, or little Temple of *Mecca*: After theſe great Numbers of Banners and Colours were carried in Proceſſion, all the *Santo*'s with Drums and Muſick attending them; the People in the mean time preſſing and crowding to touch the Sacred Utenſils, and thoſe that could not get near enough threw a piece of Linnen to touch them, holding one end in their Hands that they might draw it back again; and it is not to be conceiv'd with what Devotion they would kiſs the Thing that had touch'd but a Rope employ'd in the ſacred Preſent, which was to adorn the Place they eſteem moſt Holy.

Theſe Ornaments being lodg'd at the Palace of the *Emir Adge*, two Days after he went out of Town encamping near the City. The Cavalcade on this Occaſion was not very different from the former, only there were ſix Field Pieces, which the *Emir* always carries with him on theſe Expeditions: There were alſo a great many little Children mounted on Camels and Horſes, who were the Sons of the *Emir*'s Officers, and ſeveral Camels loaden with Proviſions for the Journey. A Multitude of Santo's in ſtrange Antick Habits alſo follow'd dancing and ſcruing themſelves into a Thouſand ridiculous Shapes and Poſtures, like Maſquers at a Carnival, as our Author expreſſes himſelf. At length came the Bleſſed Camel which carried the Pavilion above-mention'd, richly dreſs'd out, with another to relieve him when he was weary.

Five Caravans of Pilgrims annually

It is wonderful, our Author obſerves, to ſee the Multitudes which come from all Places to perform this Pilgrimage, there being no leſs than five Caravans of them (*viz.*) That of *Cairo*, which conſiſts of *Egyptians*, and of all thoſe that come from *Conſtantinople* and the Neighbourhood of it. That of *Damaſcus*, in which are all the Pilgrims of *Syria*. That of the *Magrebins*, or thoſe who come from the Weſtward, conſiſting of the Natives of *Barbary*, *Fez* and *Morocco*, who meet at *Cairo*, and thoſe of *Perſia* and *India*. Thoſe who come from *Fez* and *Morocco* undergo the greateſt Fatigue, travelling by Land over large Deſarts, in which they employ a whole Year, and one half of them uſually die in the Journey. The Caravan of *Cairo*, our Author ſays, was very numerous when he was there; there being in it four *Beys* or Princes, and ſeveral other great Lords, beſides an hundred thouſand other Pilgrims, as was given out; but he underſtood afterwards they did not amount to a fifth Part of that Number. The *Emir Adge*, or Captain of the Caravan has uſually fifteen hundred Camels to carry his Baggage, and ſell to thoſe who loſe their own, for many of them die in the Way, and he has five hundred Camels alſo to carry Water only.

The *Emir Adge* having encamp'd ſome time cloſe to the City, remov'd twelve Miles further to the *Birque*, being a great Baſon, or Reſervatory of Water, about twelve Miles to the Eaſtward of *Cairo*, and is the Rendezvous of all the Caravans. The *Emir Adge* decamp'd from thence on the eighth of *Auguſt*, it being the Cuſtom for the Caravan of *Cairo* to ſet out ſeven and fifty Days after the beginning of the *Ramadan* that they may be at *Mecca* at the time preſcrib'd: The next Day, being the ninth of *Auguſt*, the Caravan of *Magrebins*, which came from the Weſtern Part of *Africk*, ſet forward; theſe do not depend on the *Emir Adge* of *Cairo*, but have a Chief of their own. They travel chiefly in the Night to avoid the Heat, which is inſupportable, and when there is no Moon they have Men who carry Torches, and either in their Camps, or on the March, that infinite Numbers of Lights which are ſpread over the Deſarts make a noble Illumination.

There are other Reaſons for going this Pilgrimage to *Mecca* beſides pure Devotion: Many go upon the Account of Trade, Merchandize being brought thither from almoſt every part of the known World; and ſome go, 'tis ſaid, to eſcape the Puniſhment of their Crimes: For let a Man have been guilty of the moſt notorious Facts, he is never call'd in Queſtion if he makes this Journey afterwards, but obtains a general Indemnity, and the Character of a Saint, on Account of the Fatigue and Hazard he has undergone to ſee the Holy Place. But whatever may be the true Inducement to the undertaking this Journey, all perform it with abundance of ſeeming Devotion, repeating or ſinging ſome Verſes of the *Alchoran* all the Way they go; and beſtowing their Charity according to their reſpective Circumſtances: As to their Behaviour when they arrive at the Holy Place I have given an Account of it already in treating of the *Perſian* Pilgrims.

About ſix Weeks after the ſetting out of the Caravan from *Cairo*, it being computed that they are ready to return, an *Aga* marches from *Cairo* to guard the freſh Proviſions which People ſend to their Relations in the Caravan; all which are ſeal'd up to be deliver'd to thoſe they are directed. The *Aga* has a great Number of Camels aſſign'd him for this Service; and uſually meets the Pilgrims half Way, being very well paid for his Trouble. The Year our Author was in *Egypt* the Caravan return'd and incamp'd at the *Birque* twelve Miles from the City on the thirteenth of *November*, and the Caravan of *Magrebins* arrived there the Day before; ſeveral People came from *Cairo* to the *Birque* to meet their Friends, and welcome them Home; and upon theſe Occaſions they Salute and Kiſs all they know five or ſix times; and indeed, there is nothing to be ſeen in the City but Kiſſing and Congratulations for five or ſix Days ſucceſſively, or elſe People lamenting the Death of their Relations who died in their Journey.

The Pilgrims are forty five Days in their Journey from *Cairo* to *Mecca*, and as many in returning, beſides the time they ſpend there; but they make very eaſy Journeys, often ſtopping to unload and load the Camels, of which many die as well as of the People. They find but very little Water in the Way, and that exceeding bad, and freſh Proviſions they meet with none but what they carry with them. What incommodes them moſt are the Hot Winds, which frequently ſuffocates, or otherwiſe deſtroys them: In one Day, it ſeems, there dy'd ſeveral hundreds of Pilgrims by the Hot Winds in this Journey; and not leſs than ſix thouſand belonging to the Caravan of *Cairo* died by one Misfortune or other. And thoſe who return alive are ſo alter'd and extenuated that they can hardly be known by their Friends; notwithſtanding which there is not a Year but many Women and Children perform this Pilgrimage.

Thoſe who have made this Journey are called *Adge*, or Pilgrims, and are in great eſteem in the Countries where they live ever after. The *Emir Adge* amaſſes vaſt Sums in this Command; for beſides his other Profits he is entitled to the Effects of all that die in the Journey, of which Perquiſite alone he made three hundred thouſand *Piaſtres* this Year, there were ſo many of the Pilgrims that died: He is alſo Supreme Judge of all the People under his Charge during the Expedition.

A

A TABLE

OF THE

Moſt material Names, Things, or Paſſages, treated of in the firſt Part of this HISTORY.

A

AMOY, China Page 16
Adultery, how puniſh'd in *Tonquin* 63
Anchors, made of Wood 66
Aquila-Tree 66
Alligators 106
Amboyna, the *Dutch* Cruelty there 117
Achin, Metropolis of *Sumatra* 129
Abouchaid 138
Amayum 138
Akbar 138
Aurengzebe, 143. Proclaim'd 144
Agra betray'd 144. Its Situation 154
Azem Dara kill'd 147
Amadabad 152
Aderbeitzan, Perſia 182
Ararat, where *Noah*'s Ark came a-ground 183
Alchoran 201
Abraham, where he lived 203
Abaſhueras 202
Arabia reduc'd by *Mahomet* 212
Armenian Religion 216
Arabia, its Deſcription begins 220
Aden 221
Aſſyria 230
Armenia Major 230
Arabia Petræa 230
Amaſia 231
Aladulia 231
Achaia 231
Albania 231
Adrianople, 231. Deſcribed 284
Ambaſſadors, how uſed in *Turkey* 243
Antioch 257
Adam, the Place of his Creation 259
Aleppo, Journey to it 261
Aſoph 272
Amphipolis 289
Achaia 291
Athens 291
Apollo's Temple 304
Allum, its Original 307
Alexandria, Egypt 319
Aſſaneddin conquers *Egypt* 327
Aſps 330

B

Bells at *Pekin* 16
Baking of China-Ware 28
Burials of the *Chineſe* 45
Betel and Arek 63
Bange, a ſweet Flower in *Tonquin* 61
Birds, Neſts Sauce made of them 66
Bonano-Tree 100
Bahia-Lake 103
Banda Iſlands 113
Borneo deſcribed 125
Bencolen 129
Batavia 130
Bantam 132
Babar 138
Bengall Page 148
Biſnagar 148
Bombay 151. Salt, how made there 151
Banian-Tree 159
Blackamoors-Teeth 181
Bang 187
Bythinia 231
Bulgaria 232
Boſnia 232
Beſſarabia 232
Budziack Tartary 232
Black Sea 232
Boriſthenes River 233
Babylon 250
Babel, the Tower of it 250
Belus, his Temple 251
Bagdat 251
Boſſora 252
Bir or Beer 255
Bethany 264
Bethlehem 265
Bythinia 269
Bender, where *Charles* XII. King of *Sweden* continued ſo long 270
—— Actions of the late King of *Sweden* when there 273
Bulgaria deſcribed 278
Belgrade 278
Bizantium, ſee *Conſtantinople*
Bridge of Boats over the *Helleſpont* 285
Boſphorus, where 285
Bones riſe annually 329

C

China, its Situation, Extent, Climate, Limits, Boundaries, &c. 5
Chekiam in *China* 7
China and *Tartary* united 14
Canton in *China* 16
Chuſan China 16
China-Ware, or Porcelane, the different Kinds of it, and the Manner of making and painting it 25
Cinnamon 32
Cloves in *China* 32
Calendar and Account of Time in *China* 36
Chronology of the *Chineſe Empire* of a Date long before ours 37
Cochin-China 66
Calamba-Tree 66
Cambodia, its Bounds, &c. 69
Cloves 100
Crocodiles 106
Caſſia 107
Cotton 111 Silk Cotton 131
Coffee Shrub 134
Chira 138
Cha Jehan 140
Cafrou 140
Chorom feigns Sickneſs and Death 142

TABLE.

Coan Bux defeated — Page 147
Carnate — 148
Calecute — 150
Cambaya — 153
Cocoa-Tree described — 158
Cotton-Shrub — 159
Cotton-Tree — 159
Cotton, how it grows — 159
Ceylone — 170
Cinnamon 170. what it is and how it grows — 174
Caſpian Sea — 183
Charbag, a fine Walk a Mile long — 185
Crown of *Perſia*, its Succeſſion — 196
Chan, what — 200
Circaſſians, very fair — 204
Concubines — 217
Coffee, how it grows — 225
Chaldea — 230
Cappadocia — 231
Caramania — 231, 265
Conſtantinople — 231
Calvary Mount — 262
Ceſarea — 266
Crim — 272
Caffa — 272
Conteſſa — 289
Corinth — 295
Candia — 297
Cyprus — 298
Coloſſus of the Sun — 299
Coos, Archipelago — 300
Catacombs in *Egypt* — 325
Chicken hatch'd in Ovens — 329
Crocodiles — 329
Camelion — 330

D

Diamond Mines — 154
Delly — 154
Dardanelles — 233, 285
Danube River — 233
Divan, what — 239
Diarbeck City — 254
Damaſcus — 259
Dead Sea — 265
Delphos — 293
Delos Iſland, Archipelago — 305
Damietta City — 320

E

Emperor of *China*, his Dignity, Titles, &c. — 38
Execution, the Manner of it in *Tonquin* — 63
Earthquakes, Cauſe of them — 103
Eaſt India Company, its firſt Settlement — 114
Ecbatane, or *Tauris* — 185
Eleatiff — 223
Elim, where were twelve Wells of Water, &c. — 226
Eden, the Garden deſcribed — 227
Epirus — 231, 290
Euphrates River — 233
Erzeroom — 255
Epheſus, one of the ſeven Churches of *Aſia* — 268
Euripus Tide uncertain — 314
Egypt deſcribed — 319
Embalming the dead — 324

F

Fokien, a Province of *China* — 8
Flying-Cats — 127
Fort St. George — 149
Feaſts in the *Greek* Church — 286

G

Gold Fish — 10
Ginger in *China* — 32
Giſeng, or human Plant — 32
Ganges River — 148
Goa — 151
Gombroon — 185
Gaurs, Worſhippers of Fire — 216
Generoſity of the *Turks* — 236
Galatia — 267
Gallipoli — 285
Greece Proper — 291
Grotto — 308
Gypſies, their Original — 331

H

Honan in *China* — 6
Huquam in *China* — 7
Hamchau in *China* — 17
Hiſtory in *China* — 37
Har'am — 203
Holy Land, ſee *Paleſtine*
Helicon — 295
Homer's Birth-Place — 303
Hieroglyphicks — 335

I

Japaning, how done — 29
Indian Ink — 29
Jeſſo, a Conjecture of its joining to *America* — 56
Java — 132
India, Deſcription of it begins — 137
Indico, how made — 159
Iſpahan 182. Deſcription of it — 184
Julpha near *Iſpahan* — 185
Imans, twelve of them — 213
Iſraelites Travels — 226
Janizaries, what — 245
Judea deſcribed — 262
Jeruſalem deſcribed — 262
Jericho deſcribed — 265
Jordan deſcribed — 265
Jannina, the Birth-Place of *Alexander the Great* — 289
Iſlands new — 311

K

Kiamſi, *China* — 8
Kouli Kan, Emperor of *Perſia* — 218

L

Language of the *Chineſe* — 31
——— of the *Perſians* — 194
Learning of the *Chineſe* — 35
Lacquer'd Ware — 64
Loadſtones in *Siam* — 80
Ladrones Iſlands, their Diſcovery and Deſcription — 93, 94, 95
Laconia — 102
Labor — 153
Locuſts — 160
Lebanon, the Cedars there — 259
Lycia — 265
Laodicea, one of the ſeven Churches of *Aſia* — 267
Lariſſa — 290
Lacedemonia — 295
Labyrinth — 297
Lemnos — 314

M

Macao, *China* — 16
Mandarins in *China* — 20
Manufactures of *China* — 24
Mace in *China* — 32
Mahometan Religion — 43
Marriages of the *Chineſe* — 44
Malacca, or *Lower Siam* — 69
Magellan, his Birth, &c. — 93
Manila

TABLE.

Hamia Page 102
Mirza Mala 143
Madras 249
Maſulipatam 150
Monſoons 171
Maldivia Iſlands 181
Mereweys, his Actions and Death 188, 189
Mahomood ſucceeds *Mereweys* 189
Mahomet, his Birth, Life, Death, and Burial 209
Mecca taken by *Mahomet* 212. Its Deſcription 222
Mourning of the *Perſians* 218
Mocha in the *Red Sea* 221. Its Deſcription 222
Muſcat 221. Its Deſcription 223
Medina, *Mahomet*'s Tomb 222
Marah, where the Waters were bitter 226
Mount of *Moſes* 226
Midian 226
Moſes, his Travels 227
Meſopotamia 230
Myſia 231
Macedon 231
Morea 231
Mouſal, near *Nineveh* 255
Mount *Moriah* 262
Mountain where *Satan* tempted our Saviour 265
Myſia 268
Moldavia 279
Minerva's Temple 291
Maſtick-Tree deſcribed 303
Mitylene, *Archipelago* 303
Mark, Evangeliſt, martyr'd 320
Mummies 324

N

Nankin, *China* 6, 15
Nutmegs in *China* 32
Nile, the natural Cauſe of its overflowing 61
—— deſcribed 321
Natolia 231. deſcribed 265
Niniveh 253
Natolia Proper 267
Nice, famous for the Council held there 269
Nicaria 302
Negropont 313

O

Ovens, to bake China-Ware 28
Oranges, from whence 31
Outmeehou-Tree 31
Odoriferous Deer 33
Oriental Iſlands 93 to 124
Opium 111, 187
Oath, how taken in *Perſia* 202
Original Language, which 228
Ottoman Empire, what and why ſo called 234
Olympus Mount 269, 290
Ocsakow 270
Olympia, from whence the *Olympick* Games 296
Oſtritches 330

P

Pekin in *China* 6, 11
Petrifying Water in *China* 10
Porcelane, or China-Ware 25
Painting and Colours for Porcelane 27
Pepper-Tree 31
Printing in *China* 35
Pulo Condore, the Deſcription of it, and the deſtroying the *Engliſh* Settlement there 67 to 69
Pagods 87
Praying to the Dead 89
Philippine Iſlands 96
Plantain 99, 108
Potatoes 108
Pepper, four Sorts in *Borneo* 127
Pepper-Plant Page 131
Palicate 150
Perſia, its Deſcription begins 182
Parthia 182
Pearl Fiſhery 183, 193
Perſepolis 185
Pilo, what 186
Paradiſe, where 227
Paleſtine 231. A Deſcription of it 261
Phrygia 231
Propontis 232, 285
Predeſtination 234
Phenicia 258
Palmyra, ſee *Tadmor*
Piſgah, where *Moſes* ſaw the Promiſed Land 262
Pontus, *Cappadocia* 267
Philadelphia, one of the ſeven Churches of *Aſia* 267
Phrygia 268
Precop 270
Philippipoli 284
Patriarchs, four 286
Philippi, in *Macedonia* 289
Parnaſſus Mountain 293
Patmos, where St. *John* wrote the *Revelation* 301
Pompey's Pillar 320
Pyramids of *Egypt* 322
Porphiry 334
Pilgrimage to *Mecca* 355

Q

Queycheu, Province in *China* 7
Quanſi, *China* 7
Quantum 7

R

Religion of the *Chineſe* 43
Red-wood, for dying Silk 61
Religion in *Tonquin* 64
Rice 131
—— how thraſh'd 158
—— how order'd in the ſowing 173
Ringing Birds 136
Road from *Agra* to *Lahor* 139
Reſſide 174
Red Sea, its Trade, Harbours, &c. and the *Iſraelites* Paſſage through it 221
Raphidim 226
Raguſa 232
Romania, ſee *Thrace*
Rhodes 299
Roſetta City 320

S

Suchuen, *China* 7
Silver Fiſh 10
Salutations in *China* 21
Silk of *China* 24
Seze, a Fruit ſo call'd 31
Sugar-Canes in *China* 32
Sauce made of Birds Neſts 66
Siam, its Situation, Extent, and how its Longitude is reduced to former Accounts 69
—— its Deſcription 70
Sommono Codom, the grand Deity of *Siam*, &c. 89
Swimming 98
Sunda Iſlands deſcribed 125
Sumatra 128
Silk-Cotton 131
Surrat 152
Scorpions 160
Silk-Worms, how bred and managed 166
Sinai 185
Shaw Thomas 199
Shuſhan, the Palace of *Ahaſhuerus* 203
Say, Captain, caſt away 223

TABLE.

Sitez in the *Red Sea* Page 226
Sinai Mount 226
Sin, the Wilderneſs 226
Syria 231
Servia 232
Scythia 233
Sphahi's, what 245
Sultans, how depoſed, and how the new ones are inſtall'd and crown'd 248
Sheraſoul 253
Scanderoon 257
Sydon 258
Samaria deſcribed 261
Sion Mount 262
Sardis, one of the ſeven Churches of *Aſia* 267
Smyrna, one of the ſeven Churches of *Aſia* 268
Servia deſcribed 278
Seraglio at *Conſtantinople* 280
Seſtos 285
Seven Sacraments 288
Sparta, ſee *Lacedemon*
Scarpanto, *Archipelago* 300
Stamphalia, *Archipelago* 300
Samos, *Archipelago* 300
Scio, or *Zio*, *Archipelago* 302
Sulphur, its Original 307
Sphynx in *Egypt* 326
Sea Horſe 330

T

Tartary and *China* united 14
Taffaty of *China* 25
Tallow-Trees 31
Tea, the ſeveral Kinds 32
Talapoins, what 87
Tranſmigration of Souls 89, 110
Tortoiſes 106
Tamarinds 107
Tobacco 108
Tamerlane 137
Taurus City, ſee *Ecbatane*
Teſtis 185
Tor in the *Red Sea* 221
Theſſaly 231
Tygris 233
Tripoli 258
Tyre 259
Tadmor, ſee *Palmyra* 260
Tarſus in *Cilicia*, the Birth-Place of St. *Paul* 266
Trapeſond 267
Thyatira, one of the ſeven Churches of *Aſia* 267
Thrace, ſee *Romania* 279
Trajanople 284
Theſſalonica 289
Theſſaly 290
Turpentine-Tree 303
Tenedos 304
Terra Lemnia, or *Sigillitta* 314

U

Varniſh for China-Ware, how made 26
Valley of *Jehoſhaphat* 264
Valachia 279
Urn, a ſtrange one 210
Volcanoes, new 311
Vulcan, Story of him 314

W

Wax in *China* 29
Writing of the *Chineſe* 35
Water Hour-Glaſs 83
Worms that damage Ships 98
Water-Tree 108
Water-Cane 108
Walachia 232
Wine forbid to the Mahometans 234

X

Xanſi in *China* 5
Xenſi in *China* 6
Xintum in *China* 7

Y

Yunam Province, *China* 7

A

COMPENDIOUS HISTORY
OF THE
FOUR MONARCHIES,
VIZ.
The *Aſſyrian*, *Perſian*, *Grecian*, and *Roman*.

Before I enter upon the Second Part of the Hiſtory of the World, *I aſſure myſelf that the following ſummary Account of the Four Eaſtern Monarchies will be very proper and uſeful, becauſe the Scene of three of them,* viz. *the* Aſſyrian, Perſian, *and* Grecian *was in that Part of the World already treated of,* viz. *in* Aſia, *and* Turkey *in* Europe. *I could not before confine myſelf to thoſe particular Monarchies, without interrupting the Courſe of the* Hiſtory; *nor, on the other Hand, would this Work have been a* Compleat Univerſal Hiſtory, *if I had omitted a particular Account of Empires ſo famous in the antient Records of Time. There are a great many that have read and heard of thoſe four antient Monarchies, and find them neceſſary Subjects of Diſcourſe in general: As nothing therefore can contribute more to the underſtanding of their Hiſtory, than the Time when, the Place where, and the crown'd Heads under whom, any Thing therein mention'd was tranſacted; the following genuine Narrative of them, embelliſh'd with all the above-mention'd Circumſtances, ſufficiently large to render the whole intelligible, and yet ſo compendious as not to tire the Reader, will doubtleſs be very acceptable.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Aſſyrian, *called by ſome the* Babyloniſh, Monarchy.

By whom founded.

THE *Aſſyrian* Monarchy was founded by *Nimrod* the Son of *Cuſh*, *Gen.* x. viii. *Cuſh* was the Son of *Ham*, *Gen.* x. vi. and *Ham* was the Son of *Noah*, *Gen.* x. i. The Capital of *Nimrod*'s Empire, or as it is called *Gen.* x. 10. *The Beginning of his Kingdom*, was Babel, *or* Babylon, *and* Erech, *&c.* The *Erech* there ſpoken of is *Chaldea*, call'd by ſome Geographers to this Day *Eyraca Arabick*, which ſignifies the *Arabian Erech*, or *Chaldea* in *Arabia*. [Of which ſee more in Chap XI. of the *Turkiſh Empire*, Page 250 of this Book.] This great aſpiring *Nimrod*, whoſe Ambition ſeem'd to extend beyond the Bounds of ſublunary Monarchies, is ſaid to be the Projector of the Tower of *Babel*; for which if we had not the Authority of Scripture Hiſtory, it would ſcarce be believ'd that it could ever have enter'd into the Heart of any human Being to have propoſed ſuch an extravagant Undertaking; but to avoid Repetitions, I ſhall refer the Reader for the Shape and Dimenſions of it to Page 250, above-mention'd.

Jam. b. SOME Hiſtorians and Interpreters of Scripture, ſay, that it was *Nimrod* that alſo built the great City of *Nineveh*; but this Opinion is grounded upon an ambiguous Tranſlation of the eleventh Verſe of the tenth Chapter of *Geneſis*, which ſome interpret, (having ſpoken of *Nimrod* in the tenth Verſe) *He* (meaning *Nimrod*) *went out into Aſſyria and builded Nineveh*; for the Word *Aſſur* there may be tranſlated *Aſſyria*; but our *Engliſh* Tranſlation reads it, *Out of that Land went forth Aſſur and builded Nineveh*, &c. and call'd that Country *Aſſyria*: Of which ſee more Chap. XII. Page 253, in the Deſcription of the *Turkiſh Empire*.

It was obſerved at the Beginning of this Chapter, that *Nimrod* was the Third in a Lineal Deſcent from *Noah*; and tho' it is generally believed that he was the Predeceſſor of *Belus*, yet ſome think he was the ſame Perſon, and that his boundleſs Ambition excited him to change his Name from *Nimrod* to *Belus* or *Bell*; becauſe *Bell* or *Bal*, in the *Chaldean* Language, ſignifies a ſort of a Deity, as *Baal*, *Baal-Zephon*, &c. and whether this *Belus* was the ſame with *Nimrod* or no, yet it is certain he was deified by the People, as will further appear in the Reign of his Succeſſor *Ninus*. *Belus* ended his Reign in the Year of the World 1774, which was a hundred and eighteen Years after the Flood of *Noah* had deſtroy'd all the World. *Belus.*

Ninus began to reign in the Year of the World 1774; he enlarged *Niniveh*, which had been built before by *Nimrod*, or by *Aſſur*, (*Nimrod*) and called it by his own Name *Niniveh*, or the City of *Ninus*; it continued to be an *exceeding great City* when *Jonah* was ſent to it, *Jonah* iii. 3. ſee a Deſcription of it Page 253. This *Ninus* ſet up the Image of his Father *Belus* to be worſhipped, which continued till it was deſtroy'd by *Daniel* the Prophet, after it had ſtood above ſixteen hundred Years, according to the Hiſtory of the Deſtruction of *Bell* and the *Dragon*, Verſe 22. *Ninus* reigned fifty two Years, and then was deſtroy'd by *Semiramis*, his Wife, to make Way for herſelf to govern. The Project by which ſhe executed her Deſign was this, ſhe prevail'd upon him to inveſt her with all the Royal Power and Dignity for only five Days, and he, willing to try how ſhe could govern, granted her Requeſt; and in that Time ſhe made him away, under a Pretence of making Room for her Son *Ninias*; but when ſhe found herſelf in Poſſeſſion, ſhe would not quit it for her Son. *Ninus.*

Semiramis. *Semiramis* was first married to one *Menon*, who accompanied *Ninus* in his Expedition against *Zoroaster*; but being a Woman of Wit and Resolution, as well as Beauty, *Ninus* married her, and she requited him as above. She began her Reign in the Year of the World 1826, and after the Flood 170; she very much enlarged *Babylon*, but was at last overthrown by *Staurobates* upon the Banks of the River *Indus*, after she had reigned forty-two Years, a lustful and tyrannical Queen.

Ninias. *Ninias* succeeded his Mother, *Semiramis*, and began his Reign in the Year of the World 1868, and after the Flood 212 Years; but there is little recorded of him, except his effeminate gluttonous Temper, and under him, and after him, this Monarchy degenerated into Indolence, Security, and Effeminancy, insomuch that the very Names of those Monarchs are lost in History for near twelve hundred Years.

Sardanapalus. *Sardanapalus* is the next that History makes mention of. He began to reign in the Year of the World 3059, and after the Flood 1403; but he was so far from a noble masculine Spirit, that he rather seem'd ambitious to fill up the Measures of the Debauchery of his Predecessors; retiring from his Nobles to toy among the Ladies, dress in their Habits, and even spin amongst them; till *Arbaces* and *Beloch*, possess'd of an heroick Resentment, found Means to cut him off, and agreed that *Arbaces* should settle himself to the Eastward, among the *Medes* and *Persians*, and *Beloch* should succeed to the Government of *Assyria*.

Beloch. *Beloch*, or *Belesor*, is supposed to be the same with the *Hebrew Pul*, or *Phul*, 2 *Kings* xv. 19. He began his Reign in the Year of the World 3079, and after the Flood 1423, and is said to be that King of *Niniveh* that so exceedingly humbled himself at the Preaching of *Jonah*, Chap. ii. 6, 7, 8, 9.

Tiglath Pilesar. *Tiglath Pilesar* succeeded *Beloch*; see more of him and of *Beloch*, 1 *Chron.* v. 16. he, in the Days of *Pekeh*, the Son of *Remaliah*, carried away captive most of the Inhabitants on the East Side of *Jordan*. *Ahaz* King of *Judah* sent to him, to desire him to save him out of the Hand of the King of *Syria*, 2 *Kings* xvi. 7. to Verse 10, *&c.* he began his Reign in the Year of the World 3186, and after the Flood 1530.

Salmanesar. *Salmanesar* is next after *Tiglath Pilesar*; he began his Reign in the Year of the World 3216; and as his Predecessor had attack'd *Galilee* and the Places East of *Jordan*, so did he by *Samaria*, and carried *Israel* away Captive, 2 *Kings* xvii. 6. as he also did *Tobit*, *Tob.* 1, 2. but after he had reigned fourteen Years, he was succeeded by

Sennacherib. *Sennacherib*; who reigned over *Assyria* in the Time of *Hezekiah* King of *Judah*; which History see at large in 2 *Kings* xix. and *Isaiah* xxxvii. where we find he was slain by *Adrammelech* and *Sharezer* his Sons, who thereupon escaped into *Armenia*. He began his Reign in the Year of the World 3230, and after the universal Deluge 1574.

Esarhaddon. *Esarhaddon*, after a short Reign of *Sennacherib*, succeeded him, 2 *Kings* xix. 37. but we do not find that History, either sacred or prophane, mentions any Thing remarkable transacted by him, either offensive or defensive; for he was set upon and subdued by *Berodach Baladan*, Governor of *Babylon*, as you read more at large 2 *Kings* xx. 12.

Berodach Baladan. *Berodach Baladan* began to reign in the Year of the World 3326: He sent Letters to *Hezekiah*, King of *Judah*, to congratulate him upon his Recovery, when he had a Promise of fifteen Years added to his Life; and this Compliment was probably the Effect of Policy in *Berodach Baladan*; for while he was Governor of *Babylon*, the Imperial Seat of *Assyria* was at *Niniveh*, but he found Opportunity to shake off the Yoke of the *Medes* in *Artices* Time; and not content with that, attempted to discharge himself from all Subjection to the *Assyrians* likewise, and to remove the Imperial Seat to *Babylon*; and for the better managing of that Design, and securing his own Person and Interest, he cunningly sent those Presents and Compliments to *Hezekiah*, King of *Judah*, in order to begin and contract an Alliance with him. And *Hezekiah*, on the other Hand, as a grateful Return, shew'd the Messengers all his Silver, Gold, Treasure, and other precious Things that were in his House, (Verse 13) for which *Isaiah* severely reproved him, (Verse 17) as doubtless foreseeing by Prophetick Spirit, that the Sight and Knowledge of so much Riches would be a Temptation to the *Babylonians* to attempt to plunder the Kingdom of *Judah*, for the sake of the Riches which they had seen there; and this *Isaiah* prophecy'd of in the 17th Verse above-mention'd, and it was fulfill'd in the very next Reign, *viz. Nebuchadnezzar*, King of *Babylon*, see 2 Kings xxiv. 3. and Chap. xxv. 13.

Nebuchadnezzar the Great succeeded *Berodach Baladan* in the Year of the World 3355. It was he that brought this first Monarchy to its highest Pitch, by his Victories over the *Jews* and the neighbouring Nations; he conquer'd *Egypt*, as was prophesied, or rather promised to him, *Ezek.* xxix. 19. It is needless to repeat the Life and Actions of *Nebuchadnezzar*, they being so largely hinted at in the four first Chapters of *Daniel*, and other Places of Scripture, to which we refer our Readers. *Nebuchadnezzar.*

Evilmerodach, who was the Son of *Nebuchadnezzar*, succeeded him in the Year of the World 3387; it is supposed he had the Management of the Kingdom during the Time of his Father's conversing with the Beasts, *Dan.* iv. 31, 32, 33. but now in his own Reign, the *Medes* and *Persians* prove victorious against him, which the *Egyptians* taking the Advantage of, revolted from the Obedience which his Father *Nebuchadnezzar* had but just subdu'd them to; he was slain in a Battle against the *Medes*, and taken from the Government of his declining Empire. *Evilmerodach.*

Baltasar began his Reign in the Year of the World 3393. He was so far from retrieving the lost Dignity of the Empire, that he only serv'd to fulfil that Prophecy in *Jeremiah*, Chap. xxvii. 7. when speaking of *Nebuchadnezzar*, it is said, *All Nations shall serve him, and his Son, and his Son's Son, until the very Time of his Land come, and then many Nations and great Kings shall serve themselves of him*; but I need not enumerate his Extravagancies; his drinking Wine before a thousand of his Lords, his prostituting the Vessels to the Use of his Wives and Concubines, which his Grandfather *Nebuchadnezzar*, had taken out of the Temple at *Jerusalem*, his praising the Gods of Gold, *&c.* the Hand-writing upon the Wall, and the Interpretation of it by *Daniel*, are all amply treated of in the fifth Chapter of *Daniel*; which, towards the Conclusion, brings us to the Death of *Belshazzar*, or *Baltasar*, and to *Darius* the *Median* taking the Kingdom: And here ends the *Assyrian*, or *Babylonish* Monarchy, that great Empire being declin'd, and the Race extinct. *Baltasar.*

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Persian *Monarchy.*

In order to the better understanding the Succession of the Persian *Monarchy, it is proper to look back and observe, that* Sardanapalas *was cut off by* Beloch *and* Arbaces; *the former of whom succeeded in the Government of* Assyria, *and the latter,* viz. Arbaces, *settled himself Eastward, among the* Medes *and* Persians; *and as the* Assyrian *Line of* Beloch *is now extinct, the Line of* Arbaces, *now a* Persian, *put up for Monarchy. History gives us an Account of nine in a lineal Descent from* Arbaces, *but, as their Names are not material, it is sufficient that, according to* Justin's *Example, we come as low as* Astiages, *of whom we read in the Apochryphal Account of the Destruction of* Bell *and the* Dragon, *Verse* 1. Astiages *had a Daughter, named* Maudana, *married to one* Cambyses *a* Persian, *to whom she bore* Cyrus, *whom* Astiages *plotted to make away; this made* Cyrus, *in his own Defence, expel both* Astiages *and* Darius, *who succeeded* Baltasar, *as observed at the Conclusion of the last Chapter, which he accomplish'd, and so extinguish'd the first Monarchy of the* Assyrians, *to set up the second Monarchy of the* Persians, *as follows:*

Cyrus.

CYRUS was the first Founder of the *Persian* Monarchy, about the Year of the World 3421, and 1765 Years after the Flood. His first Expedition was against his Grandfather, *Astiages*, to requite him for his cruel Design of conspiring his Death in his Youth; but he was more merciful than *Astiages*, for he not only saved his Life, when he had him in his Power, but offer'd him a Government among the *Medes*. *Astiages* not caring to return again to rule there, *Cyrus* placed him in a Government amongst the *Hyrcanians*; after which he vanquish'd *Crœsus* of *Lydia*, but sav'd his Life, and made him his chief Counsellor, and he proved very faithful to him. Then he fell upon the *Greeks* of *Ionia*, and conquer'd them; afterwards he, with *Darius Medus*, whose Daughter he married, fell upon *Babylon*, took it, and kill'd *Baltasar*. (For all that has been hitherto said of *Cyrus* was transacted while *Baltasar* was alive, and consequently before the Government was entirely in *Cyrus*'s Hand; nor could he then be said to be sole Conqueror, while his Partner and Father-in-Law *Darius* was alive, because he was Sharer in his Conquest of *Babylon*; but *Darius* did not live long, and when he died *Cyrus* had no Rival left, and then he was sole Emperor; so that now, and not till now, it may be said the *Persian* Monarchy began.) The last Expedition that he undertook was against the *Scythians*, where first defeating *Spargapices* by a Stratagem, his Mother *Tomaris*, in a second Conflict, overthrew *Cyrus*, and cutting off his Head, she threw it into a Vessel of Blood, and cruelly cried, *Now glut thyself with Blood, which in thy Life thou hast so thirsted after.*

Cambyses.

Cambyses, the Son of *Cyrus*, succeeded him, about the Year of the World 3433. He overthrew the *Egyptians*; and intending to fall upon the *Carthaginians*, his Sailors, who were *Phenicians*, refused to undertake the Expedition, by Reason of a League between them and the *Carthaginians*. His Death was occasion'd by a Wound with his own Sword, which fell out of the Scabbard as he was mounting his Horse.

AFTER *Cambyses* there was an *Interregnum*, during which the Government was usurp'd by the *Magi*, or Wise-men of the Country.

Darius.

Darius Histaspis next sway'd the *Persian* Sceptre, about the Year of the World 3441, and after the Flood 1785; and the better to confirm his Title, he married *Atossa*, the Daughter of *Cyrus*; and then recover'd rebellious *Babylon* by a Stratagem, executed by a Man, who was either out of his Senses or extravagantly faithful to his Master's Interest: His Name was *Zopirus*, one of *Darius*'s Noblemen; he cut off his own Lips and Nose, and otherways pitifully mangled his Face, and in that frightful Condition went to *Babylon*, and made the Inhabitants believe, that the Tyrant, as he called him, *viz.* his Master *Darius*, had so abused him, and desired them to furnish him with Forces to be revenged on him for his Inhumanity; which they were very glad to grant: But when he had got them under his Command, he employ'd them against *Babylon*, and again subjected it to his Master *Darius*. When *Darius* was defeated by the *Scythians*, the *Greeks* rebell'd against him; and he, coming with a numerous Army to reduce them to their former Obedience, was overthrown by *Miltiades*, the *Athenian*. This Defeat, and the Rebellion of the *Egyptians*, together with the unhappy Differences between his Sons, who should succeed him, shortned, or rather put a final Period to his Life.

Xerxes.

Xerxes, the younger Son of *Darius*, succeeded his Father, in the Year of the World 3466; he was Grand-child to *Cyrus*, by his Daughter *Atossa*. This *Xerxes* is said, by Mr. *Prideaux* and other Historians, to be that *Ahasuerus*, mention'd *Esther* i. 1. who made a great Feast at *Shushan* the Palace; see *Chap.* XII. *of* Persia, *Page* 203, and see more of his Life in the Book of *Esther*; he had a Son by *Esther*, whose Name was *Artaxerxes*.

Artaxerxes Longimanus.

Artaxerxes Longimanus came next to the Crown, in the Year of the World 3487, and soon revenged the Death of his Father and Brother upon his great Uncle *Artabanus*. He was more favourable to the *Jews* than his Predecessors had been, for his Mother *Esther*'s sake; but yet the Adversaries prevail'd so far, as to get a Stop put to the building of the Temple at *Jerusalem* during his Reign, and till the second Year of the Reign of *Darius Nothus*, the Successor of *Artaxerxes*; see *Ezra* iv. 24.

Darius.

Darius Nothus commenc'd King of *Persia* in the Year of the World 3527: It was in the Reign of this *Darius* that *Haggai* and *Zachariah* began to prophesy, *Ezra* v. 1. *Haggai* i. 1. and *Zach.* i. 1. he set forward the rebuilding of the Temple, *Ezra* vi. he had two Sons, the elder of which, *viz.*

Artaxerxes Mnemon.

Artaxerxes Mnemon, succeeded *Darius*, in the Year of the World 3546; but being of a mild Temper, his younger Brother *Cyrus* endeavour'd to lord it over him, and put up for Monarch of *Persia*; and in order thereto he hired a Company of resolute *Greeks*, with whom he met his Brother, and overcame him; but, being puff'd up with the Victory, his Presumption cost him his Life.

Ochus.

Ochus, his younger Son came to the Crown of *Persia*, or the Crown to him, in the Year of the World 3589; and being willing to tyrannize, without Controul or Competitor, he made away with all his Brethren that he had any Apprehensions might rival him; he also caused

forty

forty thouſand *Sydonians* to be barbarouſly butcher'd in cold Blood, for only being peaceable Supplicants for his Favour. He recover'd *Egypt*, that had revolted from the *Perſians* in the Reign of his Grandfather *Darius*; in which Expedition the Generals *Mentor* and *Bagoas* commanded, but notwithſtanding ſuch ſignal Service, his Tyranny over them was ſo intolerable, that *Bagoas* gave him a Potion which caſt him into his laſt Sleep, and the next Succeſſor was his Brother

Arſes — *Arſes*, or *Arſames*; who mounted the *Perſian* Throne in the Year of the World 3612: But, according to the old Proverb, *They that love the Treaſon, hate the Traytor*; ſo tho' *Bagoas*, by the Murder of *Ochus*, ſet *Arſes* upon the Throne, yet *Arſes* conſpired his Death for his villanous Way of performing it; but *Bagoas*, being appriſed of the Deſign, found Means to ſend *Arſes* after his Brother, and then the Blood Royal, in a direct Line, was extinct; however *Bagoas* had provided a Friend of his, and Couſin-German to *Arſes*, to ſucceed.

Darius Codomanus — *Darius Codomanus* began to reign in the Year of the World 3615; altho' he was but a Couſin to *Arſes*, yet, when the direct Line was extinct, his Acceſſion to the Throne was very eaſy, as being of high Eſteem at Court, by reaſon of his overcoming a Champion that had challeng'd the *Perſian* Army; but, tho' he was of *Bagoas*'s own chuſing, yet the Guilt of the treacherous *Bagoas* flew in his own Face, for what he had done to *Ochus* and *Arſes*; and being ſenſible what he deſerved for ſuch Treachery, he did not think himſelf ſafe while *Darius* was alive, and therefore reſolved to diſpatch him alſo, in the ſame Manner as he had done the other two; but *Darius*, being inform'd of his wicked Deſign, received the fatal Cup with a ſeeming Pleaſure, but made *Bagoas* drink it up himſelf, and ſo put an End to his wicked and treacherous Life.

This *Darius* lived a Life of Luxury and Security; which *Alexander* (afterwards the Great, the Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*) obſerving, he came upon him, and gave him three fatal Overthrows: The firſt at the River *Granick*, where, notwithſtanding all the Advantages that he had of his Enemies, all his Forces, for want of Diſcipline and Reſolution, ſhamefully fled; the ſecond at *Iſſus*, where his Army was defeated, his Brother ſlain, his Mother, Wife, and all his Court Ladies taken captive, and himſelf forced to caſt away his Crown, and with Difficulty to eſcape with his Life; and laſtly at *Arbela* he had a final Overthrow, when thinking to eſcape by Flight, he was betray'd by his two Commanders, *Nabarzanes* and *Beſſus*, and miſerably murder'd. And thus was the *Perſian* Monarchy quite extinct, and the Victory turning altogether in Favour of *Alexander*, he was ſole Conqueror; ſo that in him begun the *Grecian* Monarchy.

CHAP. III.

Of the Third, or Grecian *Monarchy.*

Alexander the Great. — *ALEXANDER*, commonly diſtinguiſh'd by the Epithet of *Great*, was the firſt Founder of the *Grecian* Monarchy, as has been before obſerved, about the Year 3620: He was the Son of *Philip*, King of *Macedon*, and being brought up under the famous *Epaminondas*, the *Theban*, he was inſtructed in the Policy, as well as the Conduct, neceſſary in martial Affairs: If to this we add, that when *Philip* died, *Alexander* had his experienc'd Soldiers and Officers coming immediately into his Service; all theſe Advantages, and *Alexander*'s natural Fortitude and Braveneſs of Spirit, contributed very much to his ſucceeding Greatneſs, and Succeſs in future Undertakings.

He form'd a Deſign againſt *Perſia*, but firſt prudently reſolved to ſettle *Greece* in a State of perfect Obedience, leſt domeſtick Broils ſhould divert him from, or diſturb him in, his foreign Expeditions; and as *Thebes* was ſo ſtubborn as to give him an unneceſſary Trouble in the intended Reduction, their Ruin was the Effect of his Indignation, to make them a Terror to the reſt; and yet he ſo far reſtrain'd his otherwiſe exaſperated Paſſion, that he pardon'd the Lady *Timoclea*, and preſerved the Race of *Pindar* the Poet, purely out of the Reſpect he had to Learning and Virtue.

Having thus ſettled his *European* Dominions, he went into *Aſia*, and overthrew *Darius* at *Granvick*, as mention'd towards the Concluſion of the foregoing Chapter, and then foraged all *Phrygia* and the Coaſts thereabout at Pleaſure; from thence he paſſed into *Syria*, and advanced the poor Gardener, *Abdolominus*, to be King of *Sidon*: Then, after a ſeven Months Siege, he took *Tyre*; but (*according to* Joſephus) not only ſpared *Jaddus*, the High-Prieſt of the *Jews*, but alſo the City of *Jeruſalem* and the Temple, honouring them with many Immunities and Privileges. Paſſing from thence into *Egypt*, they ſurrender'd as ſoon as he ſet Foot in the Country: He burnt *Perſepolis* in *Perſia*, and conquer'd *Porus* when he withſtood him in *India*; but at laſt dy'd in *Babylon*. Some think his Death was haſten'd by Poiſon, and that *Ariſtotle* and *Caliſthenes* were ſuſpected of it, but without ſufficient Proof. He left his Dominions *To the Worthieſt*; which ambiguous Will occaſion'd ſeveral Competitors, who had each of them Ambition enough to conceit himſelf the Perſon meant. This occaſion'd ſome Strife and Bickering among them for the Succeſſion, till at laſt they agreed upon another Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*.

Antigonus — *Antigonus*, *Philip*'s Son by a Concubine, took upon him the Title of King in the Year of the World 3629, and ſettled himſelf in *Leſſer Aſia*; but was continually harraſs'd by the Rival Kings, who thought their Right, by *Alexander*'s Will, equal to his: His greateſt Conflict was with *Eumenes*, ſir-named *the Valiant*, who held *Antigonus* hard to it, till he was betray'd by *Agyraſpides*. *Perdiccas* alſo form'd a Force againſt ſome of his Dominions, but was quite defeated in *Egypt*. He was afterwards overcome at *Ipſus*, near *Epheſus*; and after various Viciſſitudes in his Succeſs, and Changes of Fortune, he was ſlain by the united Forces of *Seleucus*, *Lyſimachus*, and *Ptolemy*.

Demetrius Poliorcetes — *Demetrius Poliorcetes*, the Son of *Antigonus*, was in the ſame War in which his Father was ſlain; but not meeting with the ſame Fate, he ſurvived, and ſucceeded to the Kingdom in the Year of the World 3651. He was a great Help to his Father when living, and when he came to the Throne himſelf, he ſpread his Conqueſts Eaſtward as far as *Babylon*, which he ſubdued, and then went to *Athens*; where he block'd them up ſo cloſe, that

a dead Mouse happening to fall from the Roof of a House, in which were a Man and his Son, they quarrell'd between themselves which should have it. He married his beautiful Daughter, *Stratonice*, to *Seleucus Nicanor*, of *Babylon*, thinking thereby to strengthen his Alliance, but it proved otherwise; for shortly after this new Son-in-Law, *Seleucus*, join'd with *Ptolemy*, King of *Egypt*, and put an end to the Reign of *Demetrius*, who was succeeded by his said Son-in-Law.

Seleucus Nicanor annex'd all his own *Asian* Dominions to those of *Demetrius*. He erected nine Cities, and call'd them all by his own Name, *Seleucia*, with some other Appellation to distinguish them from one another; and at last put so little Value upon his Father-in-Law's Present of a Wife to him, which was the beautiful *Stratonice* above-mention'd, that when his Son, *Antiochus Soter*, fell so desperately in Love with her, that *Cupid*'s Wound could not be heal'd without her, he bestow'd her upon him, and at his Death left him also the Kingdom.

Antiochus Soter then succeeded, in the Year of the World 3668. I find nothing remarkable recorded of him in History, except his Cruelty to the *Jews*, and that he had by his Wife, *Stratonice*, who was first his Mother-in-Law, a Son, named *Antiochus*.

Antiochus, sir-named *Theos*, Son of *Antiochus Soter*, succeeded his Father. He and *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, King of *Egypt*, were perpetually at Variance, and could never be reconciled, till *Antiochus* put away his Wife, *Laodice*, by whom he had two Sons, *Seleucus Calinicus* and *Antiochus Hierax*, and in her stead married *Berenice*, Daughter of the said *Ptolemy*; but this forc'd and unnatural Alliance did not hold long, (and is supposed to be that spoke of by the Prophet *Daniel*, *Dan.* xi. 6.) for upon the Death of *Antiochus Theos*, the enraged and wrong'd *Laodice* falls upon her late Husband's rival Wife, *Berenice*, and her young Son, which she had by *Antiochus*, and, notwithstanding the solemn Oath of her own Son, *Seleucus Calinicus*, who promised to protect *Berenice*, they were both put to Death. Even the View of a peaceful Accommodation could not attone for such an unnatural Crime.

Seleucus Calinicus next mounts the Throne, in the Year of the World 3704. And altho' one would think he had Provocation enough to fall upon his rival Mother, and her spurious Issue, when his own Mother had been put away for her sake, yet his consenting to the Murder of her, when by the most solemn Vow he had obliged himself to protect her, was reckon'd such a base ungenerous Action, that the Poets, or else the Astronomers, have given her, or at least her Hair, a Place as a Constellation in the Heavens, by the Name of *Coma Berenices*; which is a Cluster of small Stars that are very near the Northern Tropick, and come to the South with the Beginning of *Libra*. This Cruelty to her was so resented by her Brother, *Ptolomy Euergetes*, the Son of *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, that he fell upon *Seleucus*'s Dominions, and took Part of *Syria* from him; but *Seleucus*, by the help of his Brother *Hierax*, recover'd it; which being done, and he again settled in his own Dominions, the late perjur'd *Seleucus* makes a separate Peace with *Ptolomy Euergetes*, without the Advice or Consent of his Brother *Hierax*; at which *Hierax* was so exasperated, that he waged War against his Brother, and drove him out of *Syria*. *Eumenes* in *Bythinia*, *Arsaces* in *Parthia*, and also the *Gauls*, taking the Advantage of those Disturbances, and loving to fish in troubled Waters, began to plunder every where. *Ptolomy*'s Soldiers slew *Hierax*; *Seleucus Calinicus* was kill'd by a Fall from his Horse, and left two Sons behind him, *viz.* *Seleucus* and *Antiochus*, who reign'd in their Turns.

Seleucus succeeded his Father in the Year of the World 3724, but he continued but two Years, and little is recorded of him, but that he was slain by his own Soldiers, and left his Dominions to his Brother. *Seleucus.*

Antiochus Magnus began his Reign in the Year 3726: He attack'd *Philopater* King of *Egypt*; but finding him too hard for him, was glad to make Peace with him, and set upon the *Romans*, who had taken upon them the Guardianship of young *Ptolomy Epiphanes*, of *Egypt*; but being continually beat by them, he retired beyond the Mountains of *Taurus*, and left his Dominions on this Side to the Mercy of his Enemies. *Hannibal*, having been overcome in the second *Punick* War, fled to him for Refuge; but he that could not defend himself being unlikely to protect him, *Hannibal* in despair made himself away, to prevent his being deliver'd to the *Romans*. When most of his other Attempts proved abortive, he went to rifle and plunder the Temples and Treasures of the God *Belus*, or *Bel*, and was there slain by the enraged Multitude, in Defence of their supposed Deity; he left three Sons, *Seleucus Philopater*, *Antiochus Epiphanes*, and *Demetrius*. *Antiochus Magnus.*

Seleucus Philopater was the eldest, and succeeded to the Kingdom in the Year of the World 3763. This is he, who being told what Treasure was in the Temple of *Jerusalem*, 2 *Mac.* iii. 6. sent *Heliodorus* to fetch it, Verse 7. who being affrighted and beat by an Apparition, Verse 24, 25, 26. and returning to the King, he told him, Verse 38. that if he had an Enemy, or a Traitor, he might send him, and he should return well scourged, if he escaped with his Life at all. While the two Brothers of *Seleucus* were Hostages at *Rome*, he thought himself secure from all Attempts on their Part, and indulged himself in all manner of Licentiousness; but the second Brother, *Antiochus Epiphanes*, finding Means to escape from *Rome*, drove his Brother out, and succeeded in the Kingdom. *Seleucus Philopater.*

Antiochus Epiphanes began to reign in the Year of the World 3775: He pretended at first to be Guardian to *Demetrius*, the Son of his deceas'd Brother; but probably fearing that he was bringing up a Bird to pick out his own Eyes, he was no sooner settled but he remov'd all Danger and dispatch'd him. He made an Attempt upon *Egypt*, but the *Romans* hav'd him from it: He then, without any Mercy, fell upon the *Jews*, with a Resolution to extinguish their Religion and destroy their Temple; and, amongst other barbarous Cruelties, martyr'd old *Eleazar*, and also a Woman and her seven Sons all in one Day. (See the sixth and seventh Chapters of the second Book of *Maccabees*.) He caused the Image of *Jupiter Olympus* to be set up on God's Altar, and Sacrifices offer'd to it. His last Expedition was into *Persia*, to the once famous City of *Persepolis*, to plunder the Temple of *Namea*; he pretending to have a Right to her in Marriage, and that he would seize that Treasure for her Dowry, 2 *Mac.* i. 13, 14. But the Priests and the Multitude were too many for him, and sent him away without either Wife or Dowry, and he return'd with Shame to *Ecbatane*, still thundring out Threatnings of Revenge against the *Jews*, till smitten with a filthy incurable Disease; his Flesh falling away, Worms coming out of his Body, and himself not able to bear his own Smell; and in this Condition he gave up the Ghost, nauseous in his Life, and leaving a Stink behind him at his Death. See 2 *Mac.* ix. *Antiochus Epiphanes.*

Antiochus Eupater.

Antiochus Eupater ſucceeded him about the Year 3786, but he reign'd but two Years, till his Uncle *Demetrius*, third Son of *Antiochus Magnus*, came home from *Rome*, where he had been an Hoſtage in *Seleucus Philopater's* Time, and ſoon diſpatching *Antiochus Eupater*, ſucceeded to the Throne.

Demetrius Soter.

Demetrius, ſir-named *Soter*, began his Reign in the Year of the World 3788: When he was ſettled, *Alcymus*, coveting to be High-Prieſt, complain'd to him of the Conduct of *Judas Maccabeus*, 1 *Mac.* vii. 6. whereupon he diſpatches *Bacchides*, and the new made High-Prieſt, *Alcymus*, againſt *Judas*, to ſubdue him; but they not ſucceeding, he ſent his General *Nicanor*, Verſe 26, 27. but he was ſlain alſo, Verſe 43, as was alſo *Demetrius*, *Mac.* x. 50. by *Alexander* his Nephew, called for Diſtinction *Alexander Bala.*

Alexander Bala.

Alexander Bala took Poſſeſſion of the Throne next after *Demetrius*, about the Year of the World 3799: He made a League with *Ptolomy Philometer*, who gave him his Daughter *Cleopatra* to Wife; but *Philometer* ſoon afterwards deprived him of his Wife and his Kingdom, whereupon *Alexander* fled into *Arabia*, where he was ſlain and his Head preſented to *Philometer*. (ſee 1 *Mac.* x. xi.) He left one Son, named *Antiochus*; but his Predeceſſor, *Demetrius Soter*, had two Sons, *Demetrius Nicanor* the Elder, and *Antiochus Sedetes* the Younger.

Demetrius Nicanor

Demetrius Nicanor ſucceeded in the Year 3804; but his Brother *Sedetes* joined with *Tryphon*, and with the Concurrence of the *Aſmonian Jonathan*, expell'd him from the Throne, *Tryphon* privately intending to fix himſelf upon the Throne; but diſappointed of his Deſign, and reſolved, if poſſible, to ſupplant his late Partner in Rebellion, *Sedetes* went into *Arabia*, and, by means of one *Malchus*, procured *Antiochus*, the Son of *Bala*, to ſucceed.

Antiochus Entheus aſcends the Throne in the Year of the World 3807; but he dying before he had reign'd a Year,

Antiochus Entheus.

Tryphon, above-mention'd, aſcends the Throne, *Anno Mundi* 3808: He overcame *Nicanor*; he alſo betray'd and ſlew *Jonathan*, *Mac.* xii. 48. and *Joſephus*, in his *Antiquities*, Book iii. Cha. 12. tells us, that *Simon*, *Jonathan's* Brother, was made General of the *Jews*, and beſieged *Tryphon* in *Dora*; but he eſcaping from thence to *Apamea*, was there ſlain by *Antiochus Sedetes*, the younger Son of *Demetrius Soter*, before-mention'd.

Tryphon.

Antiochus Sedetes ſucceeded in the Year of the World 3811: He was Brother to *Nicanor*, now in Captivity; but he reign'd but ten Years, and invading *Arſaces* was ſlain by him.

Antiochus Sedetes.

Nicanor, then returning from Captivity, began his Reign in the Year 3821; but after an obſcure Reign of only three Years, he died.

Nicanor.

Antiochus Gryphus, the Son of *Nicanor*, next ſucceeds: His younger Brother *Cyzicenus* perpetually vex'd him with Wars and Diſſentions; and being aſſiſted by *Seleucus*, *Phillippus*, and *Demetrius*, Sons of *Gryphus*, and alſo by *Antiochus* their Uncle, their continual Broils ſo weaken'd themſelves and one another, that they became an eaſy Prey to their Enemies; when being ſurpriſed by *Tigranes* of *Parthia* they were overcome, and a final Period put to the *Seleucian* Line. *Cyzicenus* himſelf was alſo ſoon after ſubdued by the *Romans*, and *Syria* made a Province ſubject to the *Roman Empire.* And thus the *Grecian* Monarchy expired, and made Room for the fourth Monarchy of the *Romans.*

Antiochus Gryphus.

CHAP. IV.

Of the fourth, or Roman *Monarchy.*

The firſt of theſe four Monarchies beginning in the Infancy of the Poſt-Diluvian World, *the Æra's, or Periods, from whence we dated the Acceſſion of the ſeveral Monarchs, were the Creation of the World, and the Flood of* Noah; *but the* Aſſyrian, Perſian, *and* Grecian *Monarchies bringing us down ſo near to the happy Year of the Birth of our Bleſſed Saviour, which ought, with all Chriſtians, to be accounted as a Beginning of Time, we ſhall, in the following Account of the* Roman *Monarchy, take our Date from thence.*

Julius Cæſar.

THE *Roman* Monarchy may properly be ſaid to begin with *Julius Cæſar*; who gain'd early and great Fame by his Exploits and Conqueſts in the *Galliſh*, *German*, and *Britiſh* Wars; alſo in the Civil Wars againſt *Pompey*, his Wars in *Alexandria*, and in *Africa*, againſt *Cato*, who ſlew himſelf at *Utica*; and in *Spain* againſt *Sextus Pompeius*; in all which, reckon'd together, he is ſaid to have won fifty ſet Battles. When he was ſettled in the Dictatorſhip, he reform'd the Calendar, which we now uſe in *England*, under the Name of the *Julian* Account, in Oppoſition to that call'd the *Gregorian* Calendar, corrected by Pope *Gregory* in the Year 1582, and now uſed in *Holland*, and the *Roman* Catholick Countries; and gave his own Name to the Month *July* in Memory thereof, it being formerly call'd *Quintilis*, as being the fifth incluſive from *March*. He was the firſt *Cæſar*, and left that Title to his Succeſſors: He began his Reign in the Year of the World 3902, and before the Birth of our Saviour forty-ſeven Years.

Auguſtus.

Auguſtus Cæſar began to reign in the Year of the World 3907, and before *Chriſt* forty-two Years: In his Time all the World was taxed, as it is ſaid *Luke* ii. 1. When *Auguſtus* had vanquiſh'd all his Enemies abroad, and ſuppreſs'd all his Diſturbers at home, he ſhut up the Temple of *Janus* as a Token of an univerſal Peace. And in this Time, and in the forty-ſecond Year of the Reign of *Auguſtus*, our bleſſed Saviour was born, after which *Auguſtus* reigned fourteen Years.

Tiberius Cæſar began in the Year of *Chriſt* 14: He was only the Son-in-Law of *Auguſtus*, being begot of his Wife *Livia*, who had two Sons, this *Tiberius* and *Druſus*, by her former Husband *Tiberius Nero*; he was victorious againſt the *Germans*, for which his Father in Law *Auguſtus* gave him his Daughter *Julia* to Wife, but ſoon had her divorced from him. Our Saviour ſuffer'd in the eighteenth or nineteenth Year of his Reign.

Tiberius.

Caius Caligula begun in the Year 37: He was the Son of *Germanicus* by *Agrippina*, Daughter of *Julius*, and Grandchild to *Auguſtus*: He ſet up his own Statue in the Temple of *Jeruſalem*, and was very cruel to the *Jews* for denying to worſhip it, by

Caius Caligula.

by the Name of *Jupiter Caius*; he erected Stews, deflower'd his own Sisters, and spared neither Maids nor Matrons that his un-limited Lust required: But after his wicked Living, his two Officers, *Cassius Cherea* and *Cornelius Sabinus*, slew him, his Wife and Daughter, all together.

Claudius. *Claudius*, the Son of *Drusus*, the Son of *Tiberius Nero* above-mention'd, succeeded in the Year 41. He would not be honoured with Sacrifices as his Predecessor affected to be; he banish'd the tumultuous *Jews* out of *Rome*, and provided for the Poor in the Famine foretold by *Agabas*, *Acts* xi. 28. which happen'd in his Days. He received his Death by Poison, given him by his Wife *Agrippina*, to introduce her Son *Nero* to the Throne.

Nero. *Nero*, the Son of *Domitian*, began *Anno* 54: He seem'd devoted to Virtue the first five Years, and as visibly degenerated afterwards, debauching what Women he pleased; of whom his own Mother was one, and afterwards murdering her he spared not her dead Corps. He kill'd his Wife *Octavia*, and kick'd to Death his beloved *Poppæa*; and also killed *Seneca* and *Burrhus* his faithful Counsellors: He set *Rome* on Fire, and charged it upon the Christians: He begun the first Persecution, under which *Paul*, and some say *Peter*, suffer'd at *Rome*: And continuing so intolerably wicked, his Soldiers deserted him; when finding his Friends had all forsaken him, he kill'd himself to prevent another's doing it.

Galba. *Galba* succeeded in the Year 67: He was so strict in his Discipline, that his Name was enough to terrify his Soldiers to their Duty; but being soon weary of his Tyranny they slew him.

Otho. *Otho* then succeeded, *Anno* 68: He was well beloved, but a Man of no Resolution, and being overthrown in three several Attempts, and despairing of Success, as being conscious of his own Weakness, he chose rather to put an End to his own Life than draw others to Ruin by his want of Conduct, which accordingly he did.

Vitellius. *Vitellius* began *Anno* 68; but so despised his Subjects, that he had a Saying, *Good is the Smell of a dead Enemy, but better is that of a dead Citizen*; and he got himself as much despised by them; for his Partizans forsook him, dragg'd him through the Streets, pelted him with Mire, and at last threw him into the River *Tyber*.

Vespasian. *Vespasian* came next to the Throne, *Anno* 69: he repair'd the Ruins of *Rome*, shew'd his Aversion to Flatterers and Court Sycophants, and hated base Lust and Revelling: He readily forgave Injuries, tho' a Man of so much Resolution, that he had a *Latin* Motto, which is in *English*, *An Emperor should die standing*.

Titus. *Titus*, his Son, succeeded him, *Anno* 79: His Government was so mild and prudent, that he was sir-named *The Delight of Mankind*; it is said he held a Principle, *never to dismiss a Suitor with a sad Countenance*; and when at Night he had enumerated the Actions of the Day, if he found that that Day he had done no Good, he would cry out, *I have lost a Day*. The Conquest of *Jerusalem* made him famous, and his Grief for the Burning of the Temple was a Proof of the Mildness and Humanity of his Temper; of all which see more in *Josephus*'s History of the Wars of the *Jews*.

Domitian. *Domitian*, the Brother of *Titus*, succeeded next: He set on Foot the second grand Persecution, *Anno* 92, when *John* was banish'd into *Patmos*, and wrote his *Revelation*: He assumed the Title of Lord and God, and was slain by his own Servants.

Nerva. *Nerva* was the next Successor, *Anno* 96: His Government was short but good: In his Time St. *John* returned from his Banishment: He provided for the Poor, and forbad incestuous Marriages; he reign'd but two Years.

Trajan. *Trajan*, a *Spaniard*, next sway'd the *Roman* Scepter: He is said by some to be just, moderate, and valiant; but his Valour seem'd wrong employ'd, for he rais'd the third Persecution. The *Jews*, tho' weaken'd by the late Destruction of *Jerusalem*, made Head against *Trajan*, to the Ruin of a hundred thousand of them, and the suppressing of their Power.

Adrian. *Elius Adrian* took Place *Anno* 118. The fourth Persecution began under him; but by the Intercession of *Aristiades* and *Quadratus*, it was so much mitigated against the Christians, that he would have builded them a Church without Images, had not some about him told him, that it would be dishonourable to the rest of the Gods. The *Jews* arose up in Arms against him, which so exasperated him, that he demolished the City of *Jerusalem*, and, as a Token of absolute Ruin, plow'd up the Streets, and at a small Distance built another City out of its Ruins, calling it after his own Name *Elia*, setting the Image of a Sow over the Gate in Contempt of the *Jews*. He built the Wall in *England* (call'd therefore the *Roman* Wall) from *Newcastle* to *Carlisle*, near 80 Miles long, to separate the *Scots* and *Picts* from the Southern, or *English* Inhabitants. He settled his Kingdom before he died upon

Antoninus Pius. *Antoninus Pius*; who began *Anno* 138: He was well affected to Christians, and esteem'd learned Men; he govern'd his Actions by an Opinion, that *It is more Credit to preserve one Citizen, than to destroy a thousand Enemies*. His Son

Antoninus Philosophus. *Antoninus Philosophus* follows in the Government *Anno* 161: He raised the fifth Persecution against the Christians, in which *Polycarp* and *Justin Martyr* suffer'd.

Commodus. *Commodus* succeeds *Anno* 180: He was a debauch'd Prince, and made an untimely End by a Draught of Poison from his Sweetheart *Martia*; which when he had drank they immediately strangled him, to make quick as well as sure work with him, and get him out of the Way.

Pertinax. *Pertinax* had the Name of Emperor next, *Anno* 193; but thinking too hastily to rectify the Disorders that *Commodus* had left, he was murder'd by the *Pretorian* Bands, and left his Empire in Disorder after less than a Years Reign.

Didius. *Didius* next mounted the Throne, *Anno* 193, rather by Purchase than Right; but *Niger* in *Syria*, and *Albinus* in *Britain* laid claim to it; and *Didius* being slain in his Palace,

Septimus. Severus. *Septimus Severus* next takes Place, *Anno* 193. Here were three Emperors in one Year. This *Severus* raised the sixth Persecution; and, after some Victories in the East, ended his Days at *York* in *England*, after he had reigned eighteen Years.

Bassianus. *Bassianus* began *Anno* 211; noted for nothing but Cruelty and Debauchery; and, in an Expedition against the *Parthians*, going to ease himself, he was slain by one *Martial* a Centurion.

Macrinus. *Macrinus* took the Government upon him *Anno* 217: He made a dishonourable Peace with the *Parthians*; he admitted his Son Co-Emperor with himself; but an End was put to their joint Reign by their own Soldiers, who put an End to both their Lives.

Antoninus Heliogabalus. *Antoninus Heliogabalus* succeeded *Anno* 218: He was the Bastard of *Bassianus* by *Simiamira* a Strumpet, and afterwards used his Mother incestuously himself; he had a Senate of Women, who made Laws as to what Women should wear, how they should take Place, and the like; his Soldiers murder'd him in a Privy, and afterwards threw him into *Tyber*.

Alexander Severus. *Alexander Severus*, Cousin to his Predecessor, came next to the Imperial Dignity, *Anno* 222: He

was

was mild to the Christians, was strict in Discipline, and an Enemy to Idleness: He would not allow the buying and selling of Places, but bestow'd them according to Merit: He was so averse to having any Trade carried on in Bubbles and imaginary Views, that he caused one of those Sort of Traders to be stifled with Smoke, because he had made a Trade of Smoke instead of Substance; but he, together with his Mother, were slain by his own Soldiers, near *Mentz* in *Germany*.

Maximinus — *Maximinus Thrax* succeeded *Anno* 235. His Tyranny so irritated his Soldiers, that they set up *Quercianus* in opposition to him, but he was soon overcome; but his Senate encouraging his Competitors against him, he hasted to *Rome* to be revenged of them; but at the Siege of *Aquileia* both he and his Son were slain by his own Soldiers. He was gradually rais'd to the Imperial Dignity from a common Soldier, merely on Account of his Stature and Stomach; being the largest Man and the greatest Eater in the whole Army.

Gordianus — *Gordianus* next mounts the Throne, *Anno* 239: He is taken Notice of only for his Success against *Sapor* of *Persia*, but was made away by his General.

Philippus — *Philippus Arabs* succeeded, *Anno* 244, but he and his Son were both slain by his own Soldiers.

Decius — *Decius* next sway'd the Scepter, *Anno* 251; he was Author of the eighth Persecution.

Trebonianus. — *Trebonianus Gallus* betray'd *Decius* and his Son to the *Goths*, where they both perished, and *Trebonianus* reigned *Anno* 252, but he was soon betray'd and dethroned, and

Valerian. — *Valerian* succeeded him *Anno* 255: He raised the ninth Persecution against the Christians, in which *Cyprian* suffer'd, and *Laurence* was roasted on a Gridiron; but this haughty Prince being afterwards taken by *Sapor*, King of *Persia*, he used him as a Footstool to mount his Horse by; and his Son, whom he had before made Partner with him in the Government, succeeded him, *viz.*

Galienus. — *Galienus*, *Anno* 260: He never moved to redeem his Father from, or relieve him in, his Slavery; but spent his Time in Gluttony and Idleness, till he was overcome and slain by *Claudius*.

Claudius. — *Claudius* then succeeded, *Anno* 267: He overthrew the *Goths* by Sea and Land: When *Claudius* was sick upon his Death-bed, his Brother *Quintilius* thought to have succeeded; but being too weak to conquer, and unwilling to be conquer'd, he open'd a Vein and bled himself to Death.

Aurelianus came next to the Crown, *Anno* 269: It was he that brought *Zenobia*, Queen of *Palmyra*, Prisoner to *Rome* in Golden Chains: As his Greatness so his Cruelty increas'd, till he was betray'd by his own Secretary and slain. *Aurelianus*

Tacitus appears next in the Imperial List: He began *Anno* 277, but dy'd before he had reign'd a Year. *Tacitus*

Probus next succeeds, *Anno* 277: He subdued the *Germans* on the West, the *Persians* on the East, and other *Roman* Enemies; and for his good Service the very Soldiers that chose him made him away, when he had reign'd five Years. *Probus*

Carus and his two Sons all reign'd, severally, successively in one Year, *Anno* 283; and being all dead, *Aper* thought to have had the Empire, but was slain in the Attempt by *Diocletian*. *Carus*

Diocletian then acceeded to the Throne, *Anno* 284: He was told that he should be Emperor when he had slain a Wild-Boar; and, allowing the Expression to be figurative, he concluded this *Aper* that he had slain was the Boar meant, because his Name imply'd as much: He was puff'd up with Pride, and those that used to kiss the Hand or the Knee of other Emperors must kiss his Foot: He rais'd the tenth and severest Persecution, wherein Churches were overthrown, Bibles burnt, and all possible Barbarities used: He made *Maximianus* Co-partner in his Government; and being weary of his new invented Cruelties, his Partner and he agreed to quit all Government and live as private Men, which they did: His Cruelty against the Christians had been so odious, that amongst the Competitors for the Government, he that was most tender to the Christians stood fairest for the Succession; whereupon *Diocletian.*

Constantius Chlorus was elected, *Anno* 304: He was of so good a Disposition, and so willing to encourage the Christian Religion, that in the Choice of his Soldiers he chose the Professors of Christianity and rejected the Idolaters. He dy'd peaceably at *York*, after divers Victories over his Enemies, and was succeeded by *Constantine the Great*; after whom the Succession continued in a Race of Christian Emperors. *Const. Chlorus.*



A

A COMPLEAT

Universal HISTORY

Of the Several

Empires, Kingdoms, States, &c.

THROUGOUT THE

KNOWN WORLD.

Containing an Account of the moſt

REMARKABLE TRANSACTIONS

Of their reſpective

Reigning Monarchs, *&c.*

PART II.

The Reaſon of our deviating from the Method of Diviſion propoſed in the Introduction to this Work, and extending the Firſt Part into Europe, *was to have the* Turkiſh Empire *intire, both in the Hiſtory and in the Map; which being now finiſh'd, we ſhall, in this Second Part, begin with the Hiſtory of* Poland; *it's Boundaries, Diviſions, and chief Towns, with the Succeſſion of their Princes, and the Manner of electing and crowning their Kings; more particularly the electing, and afterwards depoſing, of* Auguſtus, *late King of* Poland, *and their chuſing* Staniſlaus Leſczinski, *Palatine of* Poſnania, *and Father to the preſent Queen of* France, *in his Room; with* Auguſtus's *renouncing the Crown, and acknowledging* Staniſlaus *under Hand and Seal: Alſo the Reſtoration of* Auguſtus, *and the cruel Perſecution at* Thorn, Anno 1724; *with the Diſturbances occaſion'd by the Death of* Auguſtus, *about the Succeſſion of the Crown, between the two Competitors,* Staniſlaus *and the Elector of* Saxony; *the ſeveral Articles of the* Pacta Conventa, *or Conditions upon which the Kings of* Poland *are admitted to the Crown,* &c. *After which we ſhall proceed to the Deſcription of* Germany, Ruſſia, Sweden, Denmark, *and all the remaining Part of* Europe; *and ſhall conclude this Second Part with the Hiſtory of* England, Scotland, Wales, *and* Ireland.

LONDON:

Printed in the Year M. DCC. XXXIV.

A MAP of POLAND, MOSCOVY, SWEDE
DEN MARK and NORWAY,
with the Frontiers & Part of the Empire of
GERMANY.
Adapted to the compleat Universal History of the Wor
By *HENRY WILSON* Geographer &
Teacher of *NAVIGATION*

THE NORTHERN OCEAN
LAPLAND
Kimi
MOSCOVITE LAPLAND
Lula
Torneo
Kiema
Ulo
Cajona
Nyland
Ingria
WHITE SEA
Archangel
Mesen
Plowonicha
Lampronkoi
Golotina
Pustoi Ojerkoi
Pustoi Lake
Pezero Koi Monastery
Syrianes
Great Permia
RUSSIA
RUBENSKA
BELOZERO
WOLOGDA
YEREISLAF
Yereslaf
MOSCOWA
Moscow
EUROPE
SAMOIEDA
TARTA
SWEDEN
NORWAY
FINLAND
LIVONIA
POMERANIA
PRUSSIA
SAXONY
GERMANY
BOHEMIA
Cracow
Warsaw
Vienna
Red Ruffia
BALTICK SEA
GULF of FINLAND
GULF of BOTHNIA
Stockholm
Copenhagen
Hamburg
Dantzick
Sluczk
Longitude East from London

Virtue of imaginary hereditary Right, contrary to the Conſtitution of the Republick; not but that formerly they had ſuch a Regard for the Royal Family, that they ſcarce ever elected a King but what was a Branch of it for eight hundred Years together. The King's eldeſt Son is ſtil'd, by way of Eminency, *The Prince of* Poland; the other only Princes, as Prince *Alexander*, Prince *Conſtantine*, &c. his eldeſt Daughter is alſo call'd *Princeſs of* Poland, the reſt only Princeſſes; but when a new King is elected his Children take theſe Titles, and the Children of the deceas'd King bear only the Sir-names of their Families, annex'd to the Title of Prince, as Prince *James Sobieski*, &c.

Council. It is obſerved before that none but Natives of *Poland* can be of the King's Council, or of the Senate; and theſe two Bodies, jointly with the King, can make Acts to bear the Authority of Laws, till repeal'd by the Diet. And by Cuſtom they have now prevail'd ſo far, as to receive and ſend Ambaſſadors, make Alliances, and declare Peace and War when no Diet is ſubſiſting, tho' that is contrary to the third Article of the *Pacta Conventa*, which he ſigns at his Acceſſion; but as the Senate is not ſo tumultuous a Body as the Diets generally are, they are thought the moſt proper to treat with foreign Princes, jointly with the King himſelf, upon Affairs of Conſequence, and that require Diſpatch.

Senate. The Senate conſiſts of Biſhops, Palatines, &c. The Palatines are Governors of the Palatinates, and conſequently may be call'd the Repreſentatives of their reſpective Provinces, and could not be Senators without being poſſeſs'd of ſuch high Poſts, in the King's Gift. The Caſtellans are Lieutenant-Governors, or Commanders of Diſtricts, or Sub-diviſions, in the Provinces; and they, as well as the Palatines, have their Commiſſions directly from the King's own Hand.

Eccleſiaſtical Senators. Eccleſiaſtical Senators are the two Archbiſhops, viz. of *Gneſna* and *Leopol*, and their Suffragans, fourteen in Number. Thoſe under the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, are the Biſhops of *Cracow*, *Cujavia*, *Poſen*, *Plocko*, *Vilna*, *Varmia*, *Samogitia*, and *Culm*. Thoſe ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Leopol* are the Biſhops of *Chelm*, *Camina*, *Luceoria*, *Premiſlia* and *Kiovia*.

The Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, who is alſo Primate of *Poland*, and firſt Senator, had that Title given him by the Council of *Conſtance*; and by a Decree of the Council of *Lateran*, he ſtiles himſelf the *Pope's Legate born*. At an Inter-regnum he rules as King; and when there is a King upon the Throne the Primate's Power is not much inferior to his; for the Primate receives Appeals from other Biſhop's Courts, and when he attends the King, he has a Golden Croſs carried before him, and the Great Chamberlain receives him at the Foot of the Stairs; the King comes out of his Chamber into the Anti-chamber to meet him, and introduce him into his own Chamber.

Ten great Officers. The ten great Officers, who are by their Poſts entitled to be Senators, are, 1. the Great Marſhal, or Great Steward of *Poland*; 2. the Great Marſhal, or Great Steward of *Lithuania*; 3. the Great Chancellor of the Kingdom; 4. the Great Chancellor of *Lithuania*; 5. the Vice Chancellor of *Poland*, and 6. that of the Dutchy; 7. the Great Treaſurer of the Crown, and 8. that of the Dutchy; 9. the Little Marſhal of the Crown, and 10 that of the Dutchy: And the Officers of the Dutchy of *Lithuania* have as much Authority as thoſe of *Poland*, only the latter take place of thoſe of *Lithuania* when they are aſſembled in the Senate in *Poland*; but when the Court is in *Lithuania*, the Officers of that Dutchy have the Preference, and when ſome of the Officers of *Poland* are abſent, the Officers of the Dutchy ſupply their Places.

The Grand Diet is ſummon'd by the King, or, in an Inter-regnum, by the Primate; and, according to Agreement, there are always to be two Seſſions, or Diets, held at *Warſaw* in *Poland*, and the Third, *viz.* one in three, is generally held at *Grodno* in the Province of *Lithuania*.

Calling the Diet. When the King intends to hold a Diet, he ſends Circular Letters to the Palatinates of the Provinces, to acquaint them with the Time when, and the Place where, the Diet is to be held, and the Heads of the Articles, which between him and the Senate are determin'd to be debated upon, and the Time it is to hold, which ſeldom exceeds ſix Weeks.

The firſt Buſineſs in the Diet is to chuſe a Marſhal, or Speaker, in which Affair they are ſometimes ſo tumultuous, that the whole ſix Weeks is ſpent and the Marſhal not choſe at laſt, and conſequently no Buſineſs enter'd upon; but as ſoon as he is elected, he with the reſt of the Deputies attend the King in the Upper Houſe, or Senate Chamber; where the Great Chancellor, in the King's Name, propoſes all the Matters to the Diet that are intended to be the Subjects of their Debates; which are commonly about the Election or Marriage of their King, the making Alliances with foreign Princes, declaring War or Peace, impoſing Taxes, raiſing Forces, naturalizing Foreigners, and the like; and in both Civil and Criminal Cauſes the laſt Appeal is to the General Diet.

The Members of the Diet wear no diſtinguiſhing Habit, but dreſs more or leſs rich, according to their Abilities and Inclinations, and ſit in the Diet with their Sabres girt on: The King ſits on a Throne, advanc'd a little above the reſt, at the upper End of the Senate-Houſe; the Biſhops ſit a little lower, next the Throne, on the Right Hand and on the Left; the Primate at the Head of thoſe on the Right Hand, and the Archbiſhop of *Leopol* at the Head of thoſe on the Left; next to them, on the Right Hand, ſtand the five Great Officers of *Poland*, who are Senators; and on the Left thoſe of *Lithuania*; the Lay Senators next takes their Places; and behind them the Deputies, or Repreſentatives, of the Palatinates, the loweſt Claſs of the Members of the Diet.

Every Member, while in the Diet, has Liberty of Speech, without Reſpect of Perſons; ſo that the King himſelf is not only contradicted with ill Language, but ſometimes threatned, and that with the ſame Freedom as the meaneſt Member: And if ſome, more impudent than the reſt, either of their own accord, or put upon it by a Party, will talk Nonſence for an Hour together, on Purpoſe to drown and confound the Debates about ſomething upon the Carpet, there is no Remedy but Patience; ſuch Perſons often cauſe a Matter to be poſt-poned, or ſometimes quite thrown out, purely by dint of Noiſe, when, if every Member had a fair hearing, a great Majority would appear in it's Favour: And for this Reaſon they often break up without concluding any Thing, and the Senate is at laſt forc'd to determine Affairs; which, by the Conſtitution of the Republick, they have no Authority to do, that being the Prerogative of the Diet only.

Every *Poliſh* Gentleman is a petty Sovereign in his own Eſtate, and in moſt Caſes above the Cognizance of the Superior Courts; his Tenants being look'd upon as his Vaſſals or Subjects, over whom, in petty Caſes, he exerciſes a Sort of an abſolute Power without Contradiction: But in Criminal Caſes, as, if he kill one of his Tenants, he is liable to a Fine; and if he raviſh a Tenant's Wife or Daughter the Family are enfranchiz'd, enjoying what they held before, and he loſing their Service as a Puniſhment for his Crime; but there is no Corporal Puniſhment inflicted upon him.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Military Officers, Forces, and fortified Towns in Poland.

UNDER the Name of *Poland* we also include the great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, whose combin'd Forces, when all the Gentry are summon'd to appear on Horseback, as at an Election, or the like extraordinary Occasion, are computed to amount to an hundred and fifty thousand Horse, besides Foot; but in fact, those that actually appear in the Field upon such a Summons fall vastly short of that Number. And as for their Army, or Military Force, even in Time of War, they seldom exceed forty thousand Men, and in Time of Peace scarce half that Number; and these are so dispers'd in their respective Palatinates, and so little regard the Summons when sent them, that an Enemy may over-run half the Country before they can be assembled; which doubtless contributed very much to the King of *Sweden*'s Success when in *Poland*, he being generally in the Field, ready for an Enterprize, while the *Poles*, who should have resisted, were so far to seek, and required such a Time to assemble, that he often accomplish'd his Designs with little Opposition.

Grand Generals. THEY have two Grand Generals, one for the Kingdom, and the other for the Dutchy; they both have their Commissions from the King, and hold them during Life; these Generals are usually chosen out of the greatest Senators; they are independent upon each other, nor is there any Superiority between them, any further than that, when they meet, the *Lithuanian* pays the Compliment of giving Place to the *Polander*; and where they are both engaged in a general Battle, the *Poles* take the Right, and the *Lithuanians* the Left; but their Authority is equal, and not to be controul'd by any Order, even by the King himself, but they march and quarter their Troops when and where they think fit: When the King is in the Army he has the absolute Command of it, without any Competitor in Authority, any further than as he thinks fit to depute proper Persons to assist him him in the Command.

Their Lieutenant Generals act in the Absence of, or in Subordination to, the Grand Generals, and usually succeed them at their Decease. Other great Military Officers are the Standard-bearer, the Master of the Artillery, the Commanders upon the Frontiers against the *Tartars*, *&c.* and the Colonel of the King's Guards, who has the sole Command of that Body when the King is in the Field, but is at other Times subject to the Generals. These Guards are regular Troops, and (under a *Saxon* Prince, as the late *Augustus* was) are commonly compos'd of *Germans* and other Foreigners, and commanded by a *Saxon* Colonel; but of late, by the Importunity and Uneasiness of the *Poles*, the King agreed that they should receive their Orders from the Crown General. The Sarosta's are Governors of Cities and Castles; and the Burgraves are their Lieutenant Governors, and Commanders of the Soldiery in their respective Districts.

THE Body call'd *Hussars* are the *Polish* Horse; they amount to about fifteen hundred, enclosed in Armour from Head to Foot, and arm'd with Pistols, Lances, and Sabres. There is another Body call'd *Towarzyss*; their Armour is a Breastplate, Helmet, and Gorget; their Weapons are Bows and Arrows, Carabines, and Sabres; both these Bodies are select Men, and adorn their Heads with Feathers of Ostritches, Cranes, Turkies, *&c.* they cover their Armour with Skins of Tygers, Bears, Leopards, *&c.* which makes them look very terrible in the Field. There is also another Body of seven thousand Horse; these Men wear Armour; their Dress differs from the former, but they may wear Feathers if they please; these Troops are all separate and independant, and not incorporated into any Regiment. But there is a fourth Kind of Horse, and the most numerous; they have no Armour; their Weapons are Bows and Arrows, and Sabres; and they are distinguish'd by a short Cloak, or Mantle, over their Cloaths; but neither they nor any other Troops are distinguish'd by any particular Colour, as in most other Nations. They have of late left off their Lances, Bows and Arrows, and more frequently have taken to the Use of Fire-Arms.

Foot. THE *Polish* Foot Forces are of little Use, but serve for Pioneering and other Drudgery. The *Cossacks* fight either on Foot or Horseback, according as they are provided, or may do the most Execution. But if the *Poles* want Infantry, to carry on a Siege, or the like, and the King a Native of *Poland*, they hire Forces of the *Germans*, or other Foreigners; but when the King is not a Native, as was the Case when *Augustus*, Elector of *Saxony*, was King of *Poland*, he supply'd them with Foot Forces from his own Dominions of *Saxony*, or from his Confederate the *Moscovite*; which whatsoever Pretence *Augustus* might have for bringing them there, of assisting the *Poles* against their Enemies. the Republick had much rather have been rid of them.

THE National Troops as compos'd of the Gentry, as above-mention'd, are not oblig'd to march beyond their own Frontiers, or to remain in the Field above six Weeks at a Time; which has often destroy'd Enterprizes which were otherwise the most promising, had the Government had a Power to extend them beyond the Time and Place limited, as their View of Success and other Circumstances of the Undertaking required; but they insist so much upon those Privileges, (as they think them) that if they happen to gain a Victory, they had rather quit it when they have done, than stay in the Field beyond the limited Time to maintain their Conquest. And this Security and Indolence of the *Poles* gives their King (if Elector of *Saxony*) an Opportunity of quartering his *Saxon* Troops amongst them, under a Pretence of defending them, though at the same Time he is only intending to oppress and enslave them; and that there may be a greater Necessity for his *Saxon* Troops, he does not desire the *Poles* to improve themselves in the Art of War; which Want of Discipline, their little regard to Order or Command, and the frequent Bickerings of one Province against another, with the frequent Disorder and Confusion of their Diets, make their Power as little regarded abroad as their Consultations are at Home.

BUT another Thing, which makes the *Polish* Forces do so little Execution abroad, is the common Soldiery (who otherwise might probably be pre-

prevail'd upon to travel) have no Magazines, nor so much as Victuallers or Suttlers to supply the Army if they had Money, nor are they paid above once in half a Year; so that they are forced to carry what Provisions they can along with them, and when that is all eaten up, and their Half-Year's Pay not come due, they must either return home, or live upon the Plunder of the Country, or Province, where they are, which indeed they make little scruple of; and hence they may be said to oppress rather than defend the Country.

Fortifications. THEIR Fortifications are generally like their Military Discipline, poor and out of Order: The strongest they have on the *Turkey* Side is *Caminec*; and that so weak, that its remaining so long in the Possession of the *Turks*, might justly be imputed to the Ignorance and Unskilfulness of the *Poles* to manage a Siege against it, rather than to the Strength of the Place. *Cracow* may be call'd a strong City, if compar'd with other *Polish* fortified Places; but in the Wars between the *Swedes* and the *Poles*, it could scarce ever hold out a Week's Siege, but was alternately surprized by one, and taken from the other, when the Possessor had not an Army to cover it; which was all they had to trust to, so little could they depend upon their Fortifications.

THE *Poles* are so far from looking upon it as a Disadvantage to have so few fortified Places, that they impute the Preservation of their Country and Liberties chiefly to the Want of them; for should an Enemy penetrate into the Country, they think they would be forc'd to retire as soon as they advanc'd, because there are no Fortresses where they could erect Magazines, or fix themselves secure, but would be obliged to retire as soon as the Provision and Ammunition they brought with them were consum'd. And besides, they think that if there were many fortified Towns, the King might place Garrisons in them, and by that Means bridle the Subjects at his Pleasure, and deprive them of the Liberty and other valuable Privileges they now enjoy.

WE have not yet taken Notice of *Dantzick*, which being an independant City, is regularly fortified. But we shall be able to give the Reader a better Account of this Place in our Supplement to the History of *Poland*, when the Differences between the two present Competitors for the Crown of *Poland* are adjusted. *Dantzick*

CHAP. X.

Of the Courts of Justice and Religion of the Poles; *also of their Physicians, Diseases, Marriages, and Funerals; and of their Condition with respect to other Nations; concluding with some further Account of the* Cossacks.

THOSE *Polish* Gentlemen, or Petty Sovereigns, mention'd towards the Conclusion of Chap. VIII. have their several Courts, of which they make their Stewards and Officers Judges. The next Courts are those of the Starostas, or Governors of Cities and Castles, which usually have large Districts belonging to them; here the Staroста, or his Deputy, administers Justice; but there is an Appeal from thence to the higher Courts of Justice, two of which are held in *Poland*, and one in *Lithuania*: Those in *Poland* are held alternately, at *Lublin* and *Petricow*; and that for *Lithuania*, at *Wilna*, *Minski*, or *Novogrodesk*; but the last, or highest Appeal, is to the See of *Rome*; upon which Account the Pope's Nuncio, who resides constantly in *Poland*, and keeps a Court there, draws considerable Sums of Money from the *Polish* Subjects.

Religion. FROM the *Pacta Conventa*, and other Laws and Customs of *Poland*, it is evident that the establish'd Religion of *Poland* is that of the *Roman* Catholicks, to which they are zealously bigotted; for there being many *Lutherans* and *Calvinists* among them, and in the adjacent Parts, the *Poles* are the more zealous in the Practice and Defence of their own Religion in Opposition to the other. In *Prussia* the Majority are *Lutherans*, and, by the Treaty of *Oliva*, are to be defended and protected in the Exercise of their Religion. Also in *Courland* the establish'd Religion is the *Lutheran*, but not without a Mixture of *Roman* Catholicks and *Calvinists*. But in other Parts of *Poland* the *Roman* Catholicks amount to a vast Majority, and exercise their Power with an equal Cruelty over their Protestant Fellow-Subjects; witness the bloody Massacre at *Thorn*, in the Year 1724, already spoken of, the Memory of which, Time itself will never be able to obliterate.

WE have some particular Instances of the Zeal of the *Polish Roman* Catholicks; for they would not marry or contract Alliances with Christians of a different Persuasion: As in the Case of *Uladislaus* V. who refused the Crown of *Bohemia* because the *Hussites* prevail'd in that Kingdom. And in the Reign of *John Casimir*, the *Swedes* were expell'd *Poland* because they were *Lutherans*; and now no *Greek* or Protestant is admitted to sit in the Senate, or Diet, or in the Courts of Judicature; and finally, as was observed in the eleventh Article of the *Pacta Conventa*, the King is oblig'd to be a *Roman* Catholick.

THE *Socinian* Religion prevails pretty much in *Poland*; and, notwithstanding that there have been Acts in several Reigns to extirpate People of that Persuasion, yet they so much encourage even *Mahometanism* itself, that there are reckon'd above thirty thousand *Tartars* who profess that Religion. The *Armenians* and *Greek* Churches are allow'd, and have their Bishops, Priests, &c. And of *Jews* some reckon not less than a Million of them dispers'd in *Poland*, who meet with great Indulgence from the Government.

THEY never consult Church History in the Practice of the Primitive Times, whereby to form a regular Method of Church Government; but seem to be acted by an implicit Faith, being entirely govern'd by the Decisions of the Church of *Rome*; and if any Thing therein is contrary to Reason itself, they prevent its being expos'd, by not suffering any Person to enquire into the Reasonableness of their Tenets.

THE *Sclavonian* Language is commonly used in *Poland*, but with such different Dialects, in the several Provinces, that they scarce understand one another; there are so many Consonants made use of in their Words, that if they did not found Langua

more

more Vowels in ſpeaking than they inſert in writing they could not pronounce what they write. But as there are whole Towns or Villages in *Pruſſia*, whoſe Inhabitants are of *German* Extract, the *High Dutch* prevails among them, and the Terms of Art are generally in that Language. The *Ruſſian* and *Tartarean* Languages are alſo ſpoken on their reſpective Borders; and the *Jews* have in ſome Places introduc'd the *Hebrew* Tongue. The *Latin* is the chief Language taught at their Schools, which are common in almoſt every Village, and their Girls learn in the Nunneries.

Diſeaſes and Phyſick.

THE moſt eminent of their Phyſicians are commonly *Germans*, *French*, and *Italians*, the *Poles* not much applying themſelves to thoſe Sort of Studies; though we hear of one illiterate Quack, that lived in a Wood about ſix Miles from *Warſaw*, that undertook to cure the *Veneral Diſeaſe*, which is very common here. But the Diſtemper more peculiar to *Poland* is call'd the *Plica*; in which the Hair of the Head is matted together, and generally hangs in twiſted Ropes down to the Middle. Thoſe that have this Diſtemper, if their Hair be kept ſhort, yet it will be ſo matted in one Night's Time that it is impoſſible to clear it; and if they cut it off to prevent matting together, it cauſes a Dimneſs of the Sight, and ſometimes total Blindneſs, with Pain in the Head and Limbs, and ſometimes Puſtules all over the Body. This Diſtemper ſeems to be peculiar to the Place rather than the People, for Foreigners frequently have it when in *Poland*, but with this Difference, that they can cure it by cutting off their Hair, without any other Inconveniency attending it. The Scurvy, Pluriſy, Malignant Fevers, *&c.* are ſeldom found to be of ſuch ill Conſequence in *Poland* as in *England*, and other Countries.

Marriages and Funerals.

THERE is nothing remarkable in the Marriages or Funerals of the *Poles*, only that they both are commonly very pompous and expenſive: At a Marriage the Company make Preſents to the Bride, which generally amounts to a conſiderable Fortune. The Eſtate of the Father is, by the Laws of *Poland*, to be equally divided among his Children, except any of them go into a Monaſtery, and then their Parts are divided among the reſt; and this very often happens to be the Caſe, the Parents frequently encouraging the younger Children to engage in a Monaſtick Life, that the eldeſt may have the Eſtate, which would otherwiſe dwindle away to a Trifle for each, when divided and ſubdivided down amongſt a numerous Iſſue.

OF all the Neighbours that *Poland* has to be afraid of, the *Ruſſians* are the worſt; who (although before the Time of the late Czar, *Peter the Great*, they were an unpoliſh'd undiſciplined People, yet) now are new modell'd and diſciplin'd by that Prince, have caſt off that Contempt under which they lay, both from the *Swedes* and *Poles*, and are become the moſt formidable Power in the North: And the *Poles*, though a numerous People, yet are unſtable, and, for want of Union and Order, are not able to make Head againſt any Invader in their own Defence, much leſs to act offenſively againſt any other Power; whereas, were they all unanimous, it is much to be queſtion'd whether any *European* Prince could be able to make any Impreſſion upon them; but they are not the only People that make themſelves leſs formidable abroad by their Diſcontents and Diviſions at home.

Some further Account of the *Coſſacks*.

THE *Zaporowski Coſſacks*, who inhabit the Weſtern Shores of the *Nieper*, or *Boriſthenes*, near the Cataracts, are deem'd Subjects of this Kingdom; but thoſe on the Eaſt Side are reckon'd to belong to *Ruſſia*, according to their Situation; but it is ſometimes according to their Inclination; for of the *Poles* and *Ruſſians* theſe *Coſſacks* ſometimes put themſelves under the Protection of the one, and ſometimes of the other; and ſometimes they will engage in the Service of the *Turk* himſelf, according as who uſes them beſt, or gives them moſt Money.

THESE *Coſſacks* are but of late ſtanding, as not being heard of till the Sixteenth Centuary; and, as they are generally of the *Greek* Communion, they are ſuppoſed to derive their Original from ſome opprels'd People in the *Ruſſian* or *Turkiſh* Dominions, who fled for Refuge to thoſe Rocks and Mountains which lie towards the Mouth of the River *Boriſthenes* for Shelter from their Oppreſſors; where being increas'd to ſome Thouſands, they infeſted the *Black Sea*, and made Deſcents into ſeveral Parts of *Turkey*, advancing ſometimes almoſt to the Gates of *Conſtantinople* itſelf. Their Boats are flat-bottom'd without any Keel; they are about ſixty Foot long, and ten or twelve Foot broad; they are lined ſo thick on the Outſide with Bundles of Willows or Reeds, that a ſmall Stroke againſt a Rock cannot hurt them, nor will they ſink though full of Water, being born up by the Bundles aforeſaid; theſe Boats, with twelve or fifteen Oars on a Side, will row with incredible Swiftneſs, and outdo the ſwifteſt *Turkiſh* Galley.

ABOUT *Autumn*, it is common for about a hundred of theſe Veſſels, mann'd with ſixty or eighty Men each, having two Fire-locks a-piece to run down the *Boriſthenes*, from the above-mention'd Rocks and Cataracts, towards the *Black Sea*; and although the *Turkiſh* Galleys lie at the Mouth of the River to intercept their Paſſage, yet the *Coſſacks* row through the Reeds which grow at the Mouth of the River *Boriſthenes*, for three or four Leagues together, where the *Turkiſh* Galleys cannot come, nor can they overtake them when once they are got paſt them; all that they can do is to give Notice to the Coaſt of the *Black Sea*, and the adjacent Country, that the *Coſſacks* are out, as they term it, for they plunder and ravage all, where-ever they come. It is never known where they will make their Deſcent, only they ſeldom go far up the Country, or ſtay long in a Place, but make off with their Booty with Precipiration, before any Force can aſſemble to ſuppreſs them, and retire to the Mouth of the River *Boriſthenes* again. They are ſometimes met with by the *Turks* in their Return, who know nearly the Time when to expect them.

THIS Country lying between *Turkey*, *Ruſſia*, and *Poland*, was entirely deſerted by reaſon of the perpetual Ravages of the *Tartars*, which made it unſafe for any People to inhabit, till the *Coſſacks* (as ſavage as the *Tartars* themſelves) poſſeſs'd themſelves of it: Their Poſſeſſion was but ſmall at firſt, but is now extended to an hundred Leagues in Length, and forty in Breadth; and the Weſt, or *Poliſh* Side of the *Nieper* is exceeding fruitful.

Stephen Battori, who commenc'd King of *Poland* in the Year 1577, firſt taught the *Coſſacks* the Art of War, and employ'd them to ſerve againſt the *Turks*; and they afterwards ſerv'd *Poland* as a Barrier againſt the *Tartars*, till the *Poles* uſing them ill, they join'd the *Tartars* and *Ruſſians* againſt them, and ravaged and plunder'd their Country. While the Grand Seignior had *Kaminec* and the *Ukrain*, which was from the Year 1677 to 1699, the *Coſſacks* on the Weſt Side of the *Nieper* were ſubject to *Turkey*; but by the Peace of *Carlowitz*, it was agreed that they ſhould be ſubject to *Poland*, under whoſe Dominion they now remain; but are of little Uſe, but to harraſs an Enemy's Frontiers, or purſue their flying Troops.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE EMPIRE OF *MOSCOVY*, or *RUSSIA*.

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation and Extent of the Ruſſian Empire; *alſo of the Air and Climate, and of the Seas, Lakes, and Rivers, with which it is water'd.*

Boundaries and Extent.

IF we take the *Ruſſian Empire* in its full Extent, and include the additional Conqueſts, as they now ſtand annex'd to that Crown, it is bounded by the *Frozen Ocean* towards the North; and towards the Eaſt by *Chineſian Tartary*; by the *Calmucks*, the *Caſpian Sea*, *Coban Tartary*, *Georgia*, the *Palus Meotis*, and the *Leſſer Tartary* on the South; and by the *Bothnick Gulph*, the *Baltick Sea*, and *Poland*, on the Weſt. The Eaſtern Bounds of that Part of *Moſcovy* which lies in *Europe*, is the River *Tobol* till it meets with the River *Iris*, whoſe Name it afterwards bears, till thoſe united Rivers fall into the River *Oby*, and go by that Name: The South Part of *Moſcovy* in *Europe* is divided from *Moſcovy* in *Aſia* by a Line drawn from the River *Tobol* to the Mouth of the River *Don*, or *Tanais*. Its Length from North to South is from 45 Degrees to 70, about fifteen hundred Miles; it extends indeed further North, the North Cape (about which our Ships trading to *Archangel*, are obliged to ſail) lying in near Seventy-one and a half North Latitude, but it is ſcarce habitable in any higher Latitude. It contains about fifty Degrees of Longitude, which accounted in Latitude 57. 30, the Middle between the two extreme Latitudes, is above ſixteen hundred Miles in *Europe*; beſides his vaſt Dominions and numerous Provinces in *Aſia*; which contain about thirty-ſix Degrees of Longitude, or one thouſand one hundred and ſixty Miles more, in all about two thouſand ſeven hundred Miles; and conſequently the Czar's Dominions in the Continent of *Europe* and *Aſia* is by much the largeſt Tract in that Continent ſubject to one Monarch.

THE late Czar of *Moſcovy* taking the Advantage of the Civil Wars in *Perſia*, wherein the *Perſians* deſtroy'd one another and weaken'd themſelves, made his new Conqueſts near and beyond the *Caſpian Sea*; but as the *Perſians* will not quit their Claim to his new Acquiſitions, we ſhall not at preſent reckon them any Part of the Czar's Dominions.

Name.

THE Province of *Moſcow* gives Name to the whole Empire, and the general Name of *Moſcovy* includes *Ruſſia*, and all the Czar's antient Dominions; but *Caſan*, *Aſtracan*, the *Coſſacks* and *Circaſſians*, and the large Country of *Siberia*, as well as *Livonia* and *Finland*, being late Acquiſitions, do yet retain their own Names.

Climate.

THE longeſt Day in the South Part of *Moſcovy*, is about fifteen Hours and a half, it being in a leſs North Latitude than the Southermoſt Part of *England*; but at the North Cape above-mention'd the Sun never ſets from the Beginning of *May* to the Middle of *July*; nor does it ever riſe from the Beginning of *November* to the Middle of *January*. During the Winter (which continues ſeven Months, or, in the Northermoſt Part of *Moſcovy*, eight or nine) the whole Country is cover'd with Snow, a Yard or two thick, and the Rivers are all frozen up; the Air is ſo exceeding ſharp, that Water ſprinkled in ſmall Drops up into the Air freezes in falling, before it can reach the Ground: And many People, who having Buſineſs there in the Summer, are unwarily overtaken by the Winter before they get away, have loſt their Fingers, Toes, or Noſes, by the exceſſive Sharpneſs of the Cold. I myſelf, in a Voyage to *Archangel*, in the Year 1710, came over the Barr, homeward bound, on the twenty-ninth of *September*; when it ſnow'd at ſuch an exceſſive rate, that it was difficult to attend Buſineſs upon the Deck; but we were obliged to get out to Sea, leſt we ſhould be frozen up, and the River cloſed with Ice, as it was within four Days, *viz. October* the third, as we were told the next Year, when we went thither; and that the Ice did not break up, or the River

The Author's Voyages to *Archangel*

River open, till the third of *May* following, ſo that the River was actually frozen up for ſeven Calender Months. When theſe exceſſive Snows begin to fall, they can pretty ſafely predict the cloſing of the River with the Froſt: For when in thoſe ſevere Froſts the Snow falls in ſuch vaſt Quantities upon the Surface of the Water, it moiſtens, and would diſſolve if the Froſt would permit it; but inſtead of that, tho' as it falls it moiſtens, yet the Froſt being ſo ſevere, it freezes again, and by this Means the Ice will be increas'd to ſeveral Inches in Thickneſs in a few Hours time, till by degrees it begins to choak, and the Stream to ſtagnate, and then it is an eaſy Prey to the inveterate Froſt, and is ſoon congeal'd to Ice from Top to Bottom, or from the Surface of the Water to the Bottom of the River.

Archangel lies in about Latitude ſixty-five North; but in our Way home we were obliged to come about to the Northward of the North Cape, which lies in about ſeventy-one and a half; and that Year, about the Middle of *October*, we were drove ſeveral Degrees to the Northward of the Cape; where the Froſt was ſo ſevere, that, notwithſtanding what may be ſaid of Salt Water not freezing, we were obliged to ſet Men, with Sticks in their Hands, that as ſoon as the Spray of the Sea broke, or fell upon the Tacks, or Sheats, or any Rope that hung over-board, they might immediately beat it off, before it had Time to freeze, and by degrees render the Rope uncapable of paſſing through the Hole or Pulley in which it was to move.

In this homeward bound Paſſage, one of the Ships in our Company had a Man on board, who was not only unactive but ſleathful, and though ſome violent Exerciſe was the beſt way to get Heat, and preſerve the Limbs, this Man, in the exceſſive cold Weather, had recourſe to his Hammock for Shelter: where, for want of Exerciſe, he became unable to move, and before we arrived at *London*, he loſt the Nails of his Fingers and Toes: but what became of him afterwards I know not.

But altho' the Ice in *Archangel* River breaks up, and the River opens, near the Beginning of *May*, yet the Ice is ſo thick, that it is a long Time before the Iſlands of Ice, after they are floated out to Sea, are diſſolv'd, as I obſerv'd in the Year 1716, upon an outward bound Paſſage to *Archangel*. We were that Year ſo early, that we were off of the North Cape, in the greateſt North Latitude of all the Paſſage, on the tenth of *June*, when the Sun was in the Northern Tropick; by by which Means we had the Sun five or ſix Degrees above the Horizon at Midnight, a very agreeable Sight for thoſe who delight in thoſe Aſtronomical Speculations; but proceeding on our Voyage, we enter'd the *White Sea* in a ſmall Time more; where we met with ſuch Iſlands and Shoals of Ice, that had not the Days been very long, and the Sun, even at Midnight, depreſs'd but very little below the Horizon, which made the Nights alſo very light, it would have render'd our Paſſage into the *White Sea* very difficult. But in other Voyages that I have been, neither coming home ſo late as in the firſt mention'd Voyage, nor going out ſo ſoon as in the laſt, there were no ſuch remarkable Extreams to be obſerv'd.

But to return, (if this may call'd a Digreſſion) When the Summer approaches, and the Snow is melted, it is immediately ſucceeded by a beautiful verdant Spring; the Earth is cover'd with green Herbs and Flowers, and the Corn, or Grain, ſown in *April* or *May*, is ripe and ready to be reap'd in *Auguſt*. And I have obſerv'd, during my Reſidence at *Archangel*, that Corn (a great deal of which is a Sort of Barley) that is not ripe about the Time the Sun croſſes the Autumnal Equinox, will not ripen, naturally, at all that Seaſon: However, to make the beſt of ſuch late Crops, when the Seaſon is elapſed for ripening them upon the Ground, they cut them down ripe or not ripe, provided the Ears, though green, be tolerably full of Corn; they make them up in very little Sheaves, and tying two together by the Bands they are bound with, they hang them by two and two over Rails, fix'd along from Poſt to Poſt for that Purpoſe; and by this means they ripen, and change Colour, ſooner than ſtanding upon the Root; but the Corn is ſmall and ſhrivell'd, and affords but little Kernel, but a thick tough Shell: And of this, without any further dreſſing, they make a coarſe ſort of Rusk, or Bread, which not only themſelves make uſe of, but many of the *Engliſh* Ships lay in for a Store of Bread for their Paſſage home.

In the Middle of *Moſcovy* their Soil is generally ſo rich, that they do not uſe any Dung to manure their Land; and this they impute to the Snow lying ſo long upon the Ground, as to enrichen and mellow it: But this is not to be underſtood of the Northern Parts of *Moſcovy*; for they are barren, and produce but very little either Corn or Herbage.

But before we leave *Archangel*, or theſe Northern Parts of *Ruſſia*, or *Moſcovy*, I would note, that I have obſerved in the Heat of their Summer, which is about *July* and the firſt half of *Auguſt*, the Weather is much hotter there than ever I found it in *England* when at the hotteſt; and as an Effect of that Heat, thoſe troubleſome Inſects call'd Moskettoes, a ſmall Sort of ſtinging and ſinging Gnat, are as plenty and troubleſome too as in other hot Countries. This Heat cannot be attributed to the Son's Nearneſs to their Zenith at Noon, for at his greateſt North Declination he is above forty-one Degrees diſtant from the Zenith of *Archangel*, whereas at the ſame Time he is but twenty-eight Degrees from the Zenith of *London*: But I impute the Increaſe of this Heat to the Continuance of it; for though the Sun at Noon is much nearer to us than to them, yet the Sun at Midnight is as much nearer to them than to us; for at our (and their) longeſt Day, the Sun is abſent from our Hemiſphere above ſeven Hours and a half, and depreſs'd below our Horizon at Midnight about fifteen Degrees: This great Diſtance and long Abſence gives the Vapours Time to riſe, and the Earth time to cool; whereas at *Archangel*, which is in about ſixty-five North Latitude, the Sun, when in the Northern Tropick, is depreſs'd but one Degree and a half below the Horizon at Midnight, when loweſt, and at the ſame Time riſes at *Archangel* twenty-five Minutes after one in the Morning, and ſets not till thirty-five Minutes after ten at Night. And his Abſence from their Hemiſphere continuing but two Hours and fifty Minutes in twenty-four Hours, and even then he being but a Degree and a half below the Horizon, if this almoſt un-interrupted Preſence of the Sun, and the ſmall Diſtance he is from them when abſent, be conſider'd, no Wonder that the Air contracts ſuch a Warmth as to propogate thoſe troubleſome Inſects, when there is no ſuch Thing with us. *What an Oven is once hot, a ſmall Fire, if continued in it without Intermiſſion, will keep it warm.*

But to come a little further to the Southward: We have the following Account of *Peterſburgh* from a Gentleman that reſided there, which we ſhall give in his own Words, becauſe we will not impoſe upon the Belief of our Readers. He tells us, 'They have very little Comfort in their Winter 'Days; for though the Sun may be a little above 'the Horizon for two or three Hours, it is ſel-

'dom

'dom seen on Account of the thick Fogs, which so 'darken the Air, that it may rather be call'd 'Dawn than Day-light.'

I am afraid this Gentleman had not Astronomy sufficient to correct his Geography; for although we know the Weather there in the Winter to be as dark and foggy as he intimates, yet, by his Leave, in Latitude sixty North the Sun, when in the Tropick of Capricorn, *rises sixteen Minutes after nine in the Morning, and sets forty-four Minutes after two in the Afternoon, and consequently is above the Horizon five Hours twenty-eight Minutes, the shortest Day in Winter in Latitude sixty North, which is much more than two or three Hours.*

But to proceed: The Cold begins in *August* and continues till *May*; the Ice in their Rivers is an Ell and a half thick, and is seldom melted till after the Snow be gone. Their best Defence against the Cold is Fur-Coats, and Muffs, and Boots lined with the same, of Value according to the Person's Fancy or Ability.

On the other Hand, the Weather in Summer is almost as troublesome as that in Winter, by the frequent Tempests of Lightning and Thunder; but they soon blow over, and are follow'd by fine Weather. In the Heart of *Moscovy* the Gnats and Flies are as troublesome as at *Archangel*; which renders the Summer very incommodious to Travellers.

Seas. The Seas of *Moscovy* are the *Frozen Ocean*, the *White Sea*, the Gulph of *Finland*, the *Bothnick Gulph*, and the *Baltick Sea*; we shall not take in the *Black Sea*, for since the Czar has quitted *Asoph*, and the rest of the Forts he built near the Mouths of the Rivers *Don* and *Boristhenes*, his Communication with the *Black Sea* seems to be quite cut off. The *White Sea*, call'd by some the Bay of *Archangel*, lies between *Moscovite Lapland* on the West, and *Samoieda*, vulgarly *Shammucks Land*, on the East. The *English* finding this Bay, or Sea, and thereby a Communication with *Archangel*, enjoy'd the sole Benefit of that Trade for many Years, till supplanted, or however rivall'd, by the *Dutch*. The next is the Bay, or Gulph, of *Finland*, which divides *Livonia* from *Finland*, and may well be call'd one of the Seas of *Moscovy*, because they possess the Country on both Sides of it. The *Bothnick Gulph* is reckon'd among the Seas of *Moscovy*, the East belonging to them, and the West to *Sweden*. The *Baltick* may in some Measure be said to be one of the Seas of *Moscovy*, because they are in Possession of *Riga* and *Revel*, and some other Ports in it, but as other Princes participate so much of the Coasts of this Sea, we shall defer speaking any more of it, till we come to give a particular Description of other Kingdoms bordering upon it.

Lakes. The most considerable Lakes are, 1. *Ladoga*, 2. *Onega*, 3. the *White Lake*, 4. the Lake *Ilmen*, 5. *Worsero*, 6. *Pepus*.

Lagoda Lake has a Communication with the Gulph of *Finland*, by the River *Nieoa*; on which River the City of *Petersburg* is since built: We are told by a certain Author, that this Lake *may be* four or five hundred Miles in Circumference; that it is very large is certain, but to me it seems imprudent and unjust in any Author to magnify Things to that Degree, that, because they are surprizing in themselves, they do not think them sufficiently so, till they have distorted them beyond the Bounds of Probability; however, this Lake is, by the best Geographers, allow'd to be about a hundred and twenty Miles long, and forty Miles broad, (its greatest Dimensions being from North to South) and its Circumference, at that rate, above three hundred Miles; the South Part of it is about fifty Miles to the Eastward of *Petersburgh*. 2. *Onega Lake*, as large as the former, and North-Eastward from it; it extends to the Northward within a few Leagues of the *White Sea*. 3. To the Southward of *Onega* is the *White Lake*, the Source of the River *Shacksena*; being one of those Branches which, when united, form the River *Volga*, or *Wolga*. 4. The Lake *Ilmen*, near the City of *Novogrod*, above a hundred Miles South from *Ladoga*. 5. The Lake *Worsero*, near *Pleskow*, on the Confines of *Livonia*. 6. The Lake *Pepus*, which lies to the Southward of *Worsero*, and has a Communication with it. This Country lying very low abounds with Lakes, the rest of which being not worth our Notice, we shall therefore proceed to the Rivers of *Moscovy*; of which the most considerable are:

Rivers. 1. The River *Oby*, which with the River *Intis*, or *Itis*, that falls into it, is accounted the East Bounds of *Europe*, as has been observed above; this River rises in *Calmuck Tartary*, and running North above two thousand Miles, falls into the Sea near *Waygat's Straights*. 2. The *Rha*, or *Wolga*; it rises in, or near, the *White Lake*, and having run above two thousand Miles to the Southward, it falls into the *Caspian Sea*, below *Astracan*. 3. The *Don*, or *Tanais River*, has its Source in a Lake in the Province of *Rezan*, and, with various Courses, winding to the Southward and Eastward, it falls into the *Palus Meotis*, near *Asoph*. 4. The River *Nieper*, or *Boristhenes*, rises in the Province of *Moscow*, and running first West, and then to the Southward, along near the Borders of *Poland*, it falls into the *Euxine*, or *Black Sea*, near *Okzakow*. 5. The River *Dwina*, upon the Banks of which *Archangel* is built; it rises in a Lake in the Province of *Wologda*, from whence one Branch of it is first call'd *Wologda River*; it runs to the Northward, and winding afterwards to the Westward, it falls into the *White Sea*, a few Miles below *Archangel*. There is another *Dwina*, between *Courland* and *Livonia*, which falls into the *Baltick*, near *Riga*. There are other Rivers less considerable, and therefore not worth a particular Description.

CHAP. II.

Treats of the Provinces of Samoieda, Mesleen, Dwina, Syrianes, *and* Reubeniska.

SAMOIEDA is the Northermost Province in *European Russia*; it is bounded on the North by the Frozen Ocean, and on the East by the River *Oby*; it is bounded on the West by the *White Sea*, but its Extent to the Southward is uncertain.

Samoieda. 1. Under the general Name of *Samoieda* we include *Petzora*, *Condora*, and *Oustrich*. The People

People in this Part of the World have scarce any Towns, but live in Huts or Caves, contrived on the declining Ground, or the Side of a Hill; the larger Sort of them have the Door and some Part of the Hut above Ground, and the back Part dug into the Hill under Ground; that Part that requires a Roof is frequently cover'd with Bark of Trees, laid shelving over one another, as we lay our Tiles or Slates, to carry off the Rain.

2. South-West from *Samoieda* is the Province of *Messeen*; its chief Town is of the same Name, near the Sea; and hence the Bay, or Gulph, made by *Catsnose-Point* and the Island of *Candenose*, is call'd the *Messeens Gulph*; this Province is also bounded on the West by the *White Sea*.

3. To the Southward of *Messeens* lies the Province of *Dwina*, bounded on the North and West by the *White Sea*, and towards the East by the Province of *Syrianes*, and by *Rubenska* on the South. The chief Town is *Archangel*, situate about ten or twelve Miles up the River, in about sixty-five Degrees of North Latitude. The Town is about two Miles long on the North Side of the River, and extends about a Mile from the River to the North, or Out-Parts of the Town. The only Building of Note is the Palace, as some of our *English* Authors render the Word; but the *Russian* Inhabitants of *Archangel* call it the *Palott*; it is a spacious Oblong, situate near the River's Side; it is about three Times as long as it is broad, and is built of white Free-Stone; and on the Inside it is divided into three large Squares, by Rows of Merchants Houses and Warehouses. These Squares are call'd by the Names of the respective Merchants or Factors that use and possess them; as, the first is call'd the *English Palott*, the middlemost the *Dutch Palott*, and the furthest the *Russia Palott*; and they have their Keys, or Landing-Places, before the Gates of their respective *Palotts*, as the *English*, the *Dutch*, and the *Russia* Bridges, all built of Timber; which, by Reason of the Easiness of the Descent to the River and in it, are obliged to be projected a great Way into the River, to come into Water deep enough to have the Paws to float a-breast of them, to load and unload Goods.

These Paws are flat-bottom'd Vessels, having no Keel, and therefore not fit to turn to Windward, or to carry any Sail, except the Wind be large. I have seen one at *Archangel* which stow'd above three hundred Bundles of Hemp, and did not draw above three Foot and a half Water.

The River at *Archangel* is near two Miles broad; and on the other Side, opposite to *Archangel*, is a small Village, call'd *Durrop*, where the *English* and *Dutch* Sailors go a-shore to buy Diaper and Linnen, and the like, as at *Archangel*. The River at the Town being so broad, it is likewise so shallow, that is not safe to put a Ship down to above eleven Foot Draught of Water off of the Bridge; but Ships of greater Burthen are put to that Depth at the Town, and then fall down to a Place call'd *Sullensburg*, about two Miles below the *English* Bridge, to take in the rest of their Loading and Provisions.

The Custom-House is also in the *Palott*, and serves also for a Court of Justice, where Grievances are redrest, and petty Criminals punish'd according to their Demerit. I remember one of our Ship's Company having cast off his Coat and Waistcoat, in hot Weather, to assist in stowing in the Paws, before he had done Work his Cloaths were stolen; whereupon he immediately apply'd to the Custom-House, and they order'd him to go sit upon the *Russia* Bridge, where he lost his Cloaths, and he should have them brought there to him; but with a strict Caution that he should not abuse or affront the Man that should bring them. He conform'd to their Orders for the sake of his Cloaths, and accordingly a Man brought him his Cloaths, and, falling upon his Knees, deliver'd them to him and march'd off; but what sort of Confederacy, or ready Communication, there is between the Custom-House and the Thieves, I am at a Loss to understand, but I know by Experience that the generality of the poor vulgar *Russians* will *Crawl Groet*, that is, they are very thievish.

But besides the Petty Court of Justice above-mention'd, there are also held at *Archangel* Courts of Justice for the Province of *Dwina*. The Castle, or Residence of the Governor, is a mean Place, surrounded only with a wooden Wall, within which are the Houses of several Handicrafts and Mechanicks; and in this Place they have an Annual Fair, during which Time the *Russians* expose their Goods to Sale. The Shipping, as has been above observ'd, seldom remaining there after *September*, about which Time the Frost comes on, and the Rivers being froze and turn'd to Ice, gives the *English* Gentlemen, and the *Russians* too, residing at *Archangel*, an Opportunity of travelling upon the Ice, with their Sledges and Horses, to *Moscow*, or other the more Southern and warmer Parts of *Moscovy*; for when the Rivers are froze, and the Snow hardened, that it will bear the Horses and Sledges, is the Time that they appoint for their Travelling, as much as we appoint the best of Summer, when the Roads are good, for our Travelling in *England*.

Buildings.

There are no Stone Buildings in *Archangel*, except the *Palott* above-mention'd, the rest of the Houses being generally built of Wood, not cut into Boards, but a little roughly squared and piled upon one another; and although the Trees be nearly strait, yet when they are not exactly so, nor they have not Art or Care enough to make them so in the cutting, they supply the Defect by stuffing in Moss, where they do not join exactly, to keep the Air out; but, notwithstanding the ordinary Way of their common Building, the *English* Merchants and Factors have their Houses wainscoted and smooth on the Inside. They have commonly a Stove in every Room, in Form of a Table, or rather a Tomb-Stone, within which they keep a Fire in cold Weather, and can heat it, and thereby the Room, to what degree they please, according as the Season requires, there being no Fire to be seen in the Room, but it is to be felt with a kind of stifling Heat at the first Entrance.

Paving.

The Streets are pav'd with Timber instead of Stone, the Tree being cut a little flat on the upper Side; but the Streets being so full of Dirt, Rubbish, and Horse Dung, makes them very dirty and slippery, till the Snow falls and the Frost comes on, and then they all tread down smooth and level. The *Lutherans* and *Calvinists* have each of them a Church here; but in the Winter-time they assemble generally in the Minister's House, for the sake of the Stoves keeping them warm, and, the Inhabitants in the Winter-time being mostly out of the Town, their Congregations are very thin at that time of the Year.

That have all Sorts of Provisions plenty at *Archangel*, especially Poultry, Fish, Wild Fowl, Patridges, and other Game. There is a sort of a Patridge that turns white in the Winter. They have also a Wild Fowl somewhat like our Turkeys; the Cock is of a black Colour mix'd with a deep Blue. They have Plenty of a sort of Hares, which turn white in Winter. They have Plenty of Salmon, Perch, and the best Sort of fresh Water Fish; so cheap, that any moderate Appetites may dine for a Penny a-piece; and their Butchers Meat is not above a Penny a Pound the latter

End of Summer, which is indeed the only Time to have good Beef in *Russia*; for their Summer continuing so short a Time, they have no great Opportunity of laying up a Stock of Hay, which occasions their Cattle to be almost starv'd in the Winter-time; and in the Beginning of Summer, when the Snow is melted and gone away, the Spring comes on at once; and they putting their Cattle into this fresh Grass which had scarce any Flesh left upon them in the Winter, they fatten apace; and tho' the Cattle be old, the Beef on their Backs, laid on in the Summer, may be said to be new, or young. And this I take to be a Reason why *Russia* Beef, bought there in *August* or *September*, is so much admired in *England*; our Ships trading to *Archangel* seldom coming home without some Quantity of *Russia* Beef on board, for Presents to their Merchants, Owners, or Relations here in *London*.

Liquors. They have tolerable good Beer at *Archangel*, but it is neither so clear nor keeps at Sea so well as our *English* Beer. The Government engross the Brewing to themselves; no private Person is allow'd to brew without a Licence from the proper Officer. Their Wine and Brandy is mostly *French*, generally convey'd thither by the *Dutch* Ships in Summer-time. But they make a sort of a CornSpirit of their own, which is almost the Colour of Water, and has a sort of a smoaky Taste: with this the vulgar *Russians* will fuddle in hot Weather, as if it was a more agreeable Liquor; but the Cheapness makes amends to them that know no better.

The *English*, *Dutch*, *French*, *Hamburghers*, &c. used to trade hither yearly. I think I have seen to the Number of not much less than a hundred Ships of several Nations at *Archangel* at a Time; and then the Czar's Revenue arising from the Trade of *Archangel*, was computed to amount to near a hundred thousand Pounds a Year. But the *Moscovite* having now several good Ports in the *Baltick*, and the late Czar having remov'd the chief Trade of *Russia* to *Petersburgh*, and compell'd his Subjects to carry their Merchandize to that Place, there is small Hopes at present of *Archangel*'s ever retrieving its lost Trade.

The Island of *Podesemsk* lying in the Mouth of *Archangel River*, makes it fall into the Sea in two Channels, by either of which Vessels may go up to *Archangel*; but the Northermost is most used, as being the nearest Way. And on the other Mouth stands the Town of *St. Nicholas*, near the Sea. About fifty Miles up the River stands the Town of *Colmogorod*; it is a large open Place, without either Castle or Walls to defend it, nor is it any Place of Trade.

The fourth Province that comes under our Notice is *Syrianes*; it is to the Eastward of *Dwina*, and some Geographers extend it as far East as the River *Oby*: We have little more Knowledge of it than that it consists mostly in large Forests, where the Natives hunt for Furrs; the same may be said of the Province of *Permia*, of which we find nothing else remarkable.

The Province of *Reubeniska* is bounded by the *White Sea* on the North, and the *Dwina* on the East: The chief Town is *Usgorodischna*, which stands upon the West Banks of the River *Dwina*.

CHAP. III.

Of the Provinces of Lapland, Finland, *and* Ingria; *with a particular Account of the Island of* Cronslot, *and the City of* Petersburg.

Moscovite Lapland. WE shall now pass over the *White Sea*, and come over to *Moscovite Lapland*, call'd by some *Russian Lapland*; it is bounded on the North by the Main Ocean, on the East and South by the *White Sea*, and on the West by *Swedish Lapland*. It is divided into three Parts, *viz. Mourmanskoi Leporie* towards the North-West: The chief Town, as it is call'd, is *Kola*; I say as it is call'd, for in the Year 1708 there were but twelve Houses in the Town, and they such small Huts, that they scarce deserved the Name of Houses. They were mostly inhabited by Fishermen; who went a fishing there in the Summer-time, and went over to *Archangel* before the Winter came on. It stands on a River of the same Name, the Entrance into which, with the Island of *Kilduyn*, makes a good Road for Ships upon Occasion, in their Passage to and from *Archangel*. 2. *Bellamoreskoy*, or the South Part of *Lapland*: The chief Town is *Candelax*, in the North-West Corner of the *White Sea*. 3. *Treskoy*, the Easternmost Part of this Country: The chief Town is *Warsiga*, on the South-East Corner of *Lapland*, over-against *Catsnose*. This is so uncomfortable a Climate, that it has not very plenty of Inhabitants; they in the North Part of *Mouremanskoy* never seeing the Sun from about the tenth of *November* to the tenth of *January*, and having but very little Benefit of it for some Time sooner in *November* and later in *January*.

The Soil of this Country produces no Grain or Corn of any kind, and but very little Fruit. Their Animals are Deer, Elks, Foxes, Ermins, Martens, Bears, Wolves, and other Beasts; which they hunt for their Furrs, the staple Commodities of this Country. They have no Salt, nor probably do they know the Use of it in preserving Flesh and Fish, as having never been used to it; but the Flesh and Fish that they would keep, they dry upon the Rocks in the Frost, and then it will keep in the Winter-time long enough to be expended while it is good. Some say (though I have never seen it) that they beat their dry'd Fish to Powder, and make a Sort of a Paste, which serves them as Bread, and doubtless as Meat too, for they have no Oxen, Sheep, or Hogs, nor have they any Horses in that Country. The Natives are generally swarthy, with broad flat Faces like the *Tartars*, and short black Hair, but so timorous and untractable that they can never be brought under any Discipline.

Drink. They have no Drink, but Water or Broth, or sometimes they procure a little Brandy in Exchange for their Furrs, for as for Money they are entire Strangers to it. Their Dress is of the Skins of Beasts, which in Winter-time they wear with the Hair inwards, their Beds and Bedding being also made of the same. When they are in pursuit of their Game, they slide with an incredible Swiftness over the Ice and frozen Snow, with

with wooden Scates; or the better Sort are drawn on Sledges by the Rein-Deer. The Sledges are somewhat in the Form of Boats, only flat behind, and the Traces by which they are drawn are fastened about the Necks of the Deer that draw them; the Traveller that sits upon the Sledge, having a Rein tied to each Horn of the Deer, by which, and the Deer being broke to it, as a Horse to his Bridle, they can turn and command them as they please. They have no Thread or Cordage to make their Reins or Traces of, but supply that Defect with Thongs of the Beasts Hides, or with the Guts of some Animal scrap'd, and twisted, somewhat like our Catgut, but in a coarse Manner.

Of their Witchcraft, &c.

As to the pretended Witchcraft of the *Laplanders*, their selling a fair Wind to any that will give them a Price, and sending a Storm after those that affront them, to destroy both Ship, Men, and Cargoe, such silly Opinions I should not have mention'd, but only to expose them, and the Weakness of those that believe them. I have sail'd several Times along all the Coast of both *Swedish* and *Moscovite Lapland*, and never either found any such Thing, or ever convers'd with any using that Trade, that had observed any worse Weather there than elsewhere, except such as may be expected from a Climate so near the Pole; but our *English* who impute that to Witchcraft, Fairies, Conjuration, &c. bewray their own Ignorance of the Nature of the Globe, and the Principles of Geography; and if upon Sight of those People they conceit them to look like Witches, Wizards, Conjurers, &c. it may rather be imputed to the Inclemency of their Climate, whose various Seasons are so different and so disagreeable to those of us that inhabit in the Temperate Zone, that none of us covet their Situation, or desire to invade their Territores: And hence they have very little Conversation with any but their own unpolish'd Natives; so that if by Chance a few *English*, *Dutch*, or *French* Men, or those of any other civiliz'd Nation, approach any of them, they are startled, and look like wild People, or perhaps Witches; but if they can procure a small Gratuity under a Pretence of selling a fair Wind, I conclude them much more cunning in taking that Reward, tho' they laugh at the Giver when they have got it, than he that thought himself wiser than they were, and gave it; and it is still more Matter of Sport and Ridicule, when the credulous Purchaser, not finding the Winds to answer the Condition of his Agreement, imputes their blowing too hard, or not at all, or contrary to the Point he agreed for, &c. to his own Mistake, in undoing the Knots given him, or the the like, rather than to any Defect in his *Lapland* Witch; but People now-a-days of but common Capacities are generally above being impos'd upon by those fallacious Opinions.

It is observ'd that, notwithstanding their cold Climate and hard Fare, they are commonly long-lived; and, what is yet more remarkable, if they are removed to a warmer Climate and better Diet, they seldom live long.

Finland

The Province of *Russian* or *Moscovite Finland*, is so call'd because the Czar has by Conquest annex'd it to his own *Moscovite* Dominions. It is bounded by *Lapland* on the North, by the *Ladoga* and *Onega* Lakes on the East and South-East, by the Gulph of *Finland* on the South, and on the West by the *Bothnick Gulph*. This Country is divided into seven Parts, or Provinces. 1. *Cajania*, call'd by some *East Bothnia*, the most Northerly Province: The chief Town is *Cajaniburg*, a Fort on the North-East Side of the Lake *Ula*, near the North Part of the *Bothnick Gulph*, and in Latitude sixty-five. 2. *Savolaxia*, to the Southward of *Cajania*: The chief Town is *Koskinpa*, in about Latitude sixty-two; it stands on a Lake, call'd *Jende Lake*, which has a Communication with the Gulph of *Finland*. 3. *Kexholm*, to the Eastward of *Savolaxia*: Chief Town is also *Kexholm*, or *Carelgorod*, on the West Side of *Ladoga Lake*. 4. *Carelia*, between *Ladoga Lake* and the Gulph of *Finland*: The chief Town is *Wybourg*, on the North-East Corner of the Gulph of *Finland*; it has a very good Harbour. 5. *Nylandia*, or *Newland*: The chief Town is *Helsingros*, or *Helsing-fort*, on the North Shore of the Gulph of *Finland*. 6. *Finland Proper*, included between the *Bothnick Bay* on the West, and the Gulph of *Finland* on the South: The chief Town is *Abo*, on the East Coast of the Gulph of *Bothnia*, and near the South Part of it, where it meets with the Gulph of *Finland*, in near sixty-one Degrees of North Latitude. 7. *Tavistia*, an Inland Province, bounded by *Cajania* on the North, *Finland Proper* on the West, *Nyland* on the South, and *Savolaxia* on the East: Chief Town is *Tavistia*, or *Croneburg*. This Country is full of Lakes, Bogs, and Bushes; and has few Villages, but only some Houses and Huts dispers'd up and down; but towards the Coasts of the Gulphs of *Bothnia* and *Finland* the Soil is better, and some tolerable Towns are to be found. The Northern *Finlanders* differ but little from the *Laplanders*; but the Southern, who converse and trade with the *Swedes*, and other trading People in *Europe*, are a little more polite in their Conversation and Behaviour.

The next Province, to the Southward of *Carelia*, is *Ingria*, or *Ingermanland*, from which it is separated by the River *Nieva*, or *Nye*; this has *Carelia* and the Lake *Ladoga* on the North, *Estonia*, a Province of *Livonia*, on the West, *Great Novogorod* towards the South, and *Belozero* towards East. Chief Towns were *Notteburg*, or *Slutelburg*, upon the River *Nieva*; and *Ivanagorod*, over-against *Narva*, upon the same River, which is a strong Place. There are also other Towns of less Note, as *Coporea* and *Jamogorod*; but the chief Town, which for Trade and Populousness may now be call'd the Capital of the *Russian Empire*, is *Petersburg*, the Foundation of which any Person of a very moderate Age may yet remember.

Petersburg

The City of *Petersburg* is built upon both Sides of the River *Nieva*, as well as some Islands in the River; it is situate at the Eastermost Part of the Gulph of *Finland*, in about sixty Degrees of North Latitude, and near thirty Degrees of Longitude East from *London*.

The late Czar of *Moscovy* being at War with *Sweden*, in the Year 1702, and having taken first the City of *Notteburg*, and afterwards the Fortress of the *Nyeschants*, which is lower down the River; and penetrating still towards the Sea, he found, in the Mouth of the River, several Islands, which he thought if he could get Possession of, he could by that Means open a Communication with the *Baltick*. Whereupon he built a Fort upon one of them, and also fix'd a Detachment of Troops upon the Island *Retusari*, in the Gulph of *Finland*; near which Island all Ships are obliged to pass that sail for the River *Nieva* (upon which *Petersburg* now stands;) and finding this Island to make a very commodious Harbour for his Men of War, he built upon it the Fortress of *Cronslot*, which is, in their Language, *Crown Castle*, and it was the Rendezvous, or Harbour for his Men of War; which caused a Concourse of People to it; he therefore built also a Town, which, together with the Castle, and even the Island itself, go all by the Name of *Cronslot*; and since the Building of that Town and Fort the Island is scarce ever known by the Name of *Retusari*.

The

THE Czar, pleas'd with his advantageous Situation, began to think that if he ſhould build a City here, and make it the Capital of his Empire, it might be a Means to keep the *Swedes* at a greater Diſtance from his Frontiers, and they at that Time were the moſt formidable Enemies he had; nor was this all; for he thought he could better eſtabliſh a Trade with the reſt of the Nations in *Europe* from *Petersburg*, than he could from *Archangel*, in the *White Sea*, beyond the North Cape.

THIS Opinion of his ripen'd into a full Determination to erect a Royal, or Capital City, which might deſerve to be eſteem'd the Metropolis of ſo great an Empire; and for that Reaſon he ſummon'd Artificers and Labourers from all Parts of *Ruſſia*; but he met with ſuch Difficulties in the Undertaking, that ſcarce any, but a Perſon of his Reſolution, could ever have accompliſh'd it; for, notwithſtanding that he exerted himſelf with his uſual Vigour, yet the Progreſs of the Work was ſo clogg'd, as if ſome inviſible Obſtacle had been at the Bottom; ſometimes, when there did not want Money, the Miniſters, Officers, and Overſeers of the Work, were not there to give the neceſſary Orders, as if they were averſe to the Undertaking, and did not care that any new Place ſhould rival their antient City of *Archangel*, or their Capital of *Moſcow*; other whiles there was no Proviſion to be had for the Workmen, or at other Times no neceſſary Implements, as Wheelbarrows, Shovels, or neceſſary Tools for the Workmen's Uſe, or Huts for them to lie in; and, in ſhort, the Work went on with ſuch ſmall Expedition, as if ſome of the *Lapland* Witches abovemention'd, had caſt one of their Spells, or Charms, over it, to incumber its Progreſs.

BUT all this could not abate the Edge of his Reſolution; he had ſet his Heart upon his new City, and, to prevent any Neglect in the Performance, he attended the Work frequently himſelf; and by this Means the Labourers and Mechanicks grew very numerous, and when they had not Bags or Baskets for them all, they carried their Building Materials in the Skirts of their Garments; but when the Workmen were grown ſo numerous, they wanted Proviſions ſo much, that many poor Creatures ſuffer'd, and dy'd for Want.

BUT, notwithſtanding all this, the Czar perſiſted in his Deſign, and having got ſome Part finiſh'd, he order'd ſeveral of his Nobility, Merchants, and Tradeſmen, to ſettle there, to people his new Colony: Several of the Inhabitants of *Finland* and *Livonia*, who had their Houſes burnt, and their Effects deſtroy'd, in the late Wars, did alſo reſort hither; as did alſo abundance of Seafaring Men and Merchants, which were the People he chiefly encourag'd; inſomuch that the Place ſoon became extreamly populous, and in a few Years the City contain'd above ſixty thouſand Houſes.

ONE great Inconveniency that attends *Peterſburg*, is its low Situation; the whole Country hereabouts being flat and low, and thereby expoſed to Floods and Inundations, whereby abundance of People and Cattle have been drown'd, and ſome of the Fortifications waſh'd away. The River *Nieva* is about half a Mile broad as it runs through the City, and yet is ſo deep and rapid, that they think the Building a Bridge over it is impracticable; and as he was willing to have as many Watermen brought up as he could, he choſe rather to ſee the Men row the Paſſengers over in Boats than build Bridges; and now it is common at *Peterſburg* for People of Faſhion to have their own Boats and Watermen, and a foreign Miniſter has a Boat and four able Watermen allow'd by the Government.

THERE are ſome handſome Stone Churches, Palaces, and other Buildings, in *Petersburg*; but the common Houſes are Wood, as at *Archangel*; the Roofs are cover'd with thin Deal Spars, lin'd with Lath, and cover'd with Turf or Bark, laid over one another like our Tiles; the common Sort are but one Story high, and ſeldom contain any more than one Room. The Ground about *Petersburg* is low and marſhy, and brings little or no Corn, eſpecially in a wet Year: They have ſome Turnips and Cucumbers; there is a ſweet little ſort of Cabbage very plenty at the Seaſon. But the chief Dependance of *Petersburg* for Corn, Flower, Fruit, and the like, is upon the Country towards the Middle of *Moſcovy*, where theſe Things are plenty, and whence they are ſent by Water (by the Rivers and Lakes) down to *Petersburg*. *Bu*

THE Iſland of *Cronſlot* is about twelve Miles or more below, or to the Weſtward of, *Petersburg*, at the Bottom of the Gulph of *Finland*; the Channel up to *Petersburg* is on the South Side of *Cronſlot*, which was a barren deſolate Iſland, only the Czar obſerving its commodious Situation, fortified it for the Security of his Men of War; he firſt built the Fort or Citadel, and afterwards the Town of the ſame Name. In this Harbour the Czar's Men of War lay at firſt, but when their Number increas'd to forty or fifty Ships of the Line, the greateſt Part of them were then laid up at *Revel*, and continue to be ſo at preſent, when they are not out upon any Expedition. *Cron*

THE South Coaſt, over-againſt *Petersburg*, affords a very agreeable Proſpect; being all the way adorn'd with Pleaſure-Houſes and Country-Seats. When the Czar conquer'd *Ingria*, he granted the Eſtates of the former Inhabitants to his Officers and Servants. But this Coaſt, over-againſt *Cronſlot*, being much the more deſirable, he parcelled out amongſt his principal Nobility, who moſt of them built their Country Seats here. They ſtand upon a riſing Ground, a ſmall Diſtance from the Shore, and afford a moſt agreeable Proſpect to thoſe who ſail up the River to *Petersburg*; and when aſhore the Land thereabouts is tolerably good, and diverſified with Woods, Meadows, Paſtures, and Gardens. Here the once famous Prince *Menzikoff*'s Seat is; it is three Story high, and hath two Wings, which, with the Gardens, ſtretch down to the Sea Side. The late Czar had alſo two or three Palaces upon this Coaſt, very handſomely built.

THE *Ingrians* and *Carelians* were formerly a poor illiterate People; but ſince the Czar conquer'd them, and not only annex'd them to his Dominions, but compell'd them to participate of the Improvements and Education which himſelf promoted and delighted in, they both know more and live better than before, and have no Cauſe to lament their being ſo conquer'd; and eſpecially as *Petersburg* may be ſaid to be the Capital not only of *Moſcovy* in general, but of *Ingria* and *Carelia* in particular, (as *London* is not only the Capital of *England*, but more particularly of *Middleſex*) the Inhabitants of thoſe Places were ſo far from being detrimented by the Czar's Conqueſt of them, that they were tranſlated (whether they would or no) from their ſtarving Condition, to be the circumjacent Country of the Czar's new Capital.

WHEN the Czar had thus eſtabliſh'd *Petersburg*, his next Buſineſs was to make it popular, and a Place of Literature; in order to which he inſtituted a Marine Academy, for the Encouragement of Navigation; to which he obliged every conſiderable Family in *Ruſſia* to ſend ſome of their

Sons

Sons or Kinſmen, (more or leſs, in Proportion to the Dignity of their Families) above ten and under eighteen Years of Age, to learn Navigation, the Languages, Riding, Fencing, *&c.* He alſo ſet up Woollen and Linnen Manufactures; the latter of which was, according to their Capacities, improv'd very much at *Archangel* before *Petersburg* was thought of, and more ſince it is come to what it now is; witneſs the great Quantities of *Ruſſia* Linnen brought formerly from *Archangel*, and now from *Petersburg*. Here is a Workhouſe, where not leſs than fourſcore young Females are employ'd in Spinning; in which if their own Genius, and the Advice of their Matron, will not prompt them to Induſtry and Improvement, the Whip, or ſome other Correction, muſt. There are alſo ſeveral Improvements made in their Growth of Hemp and Flax, which were not known ſome few Years ago.

They have alſo Paper-Mills and Powder-Mills, with Laboratories for Gunnery and Fire-works; as alſo Places for preparing Salt-Petre and Brimſtone, of both which they have great Plenty in *Ruſſia*. They have alſo Rope-walks, where they make Rigging and Tackle for Ships, as in *England* and *Holland*; and a Foundery for great Guns, Mortars, and ſmall Arms; there being great Quantities of Iron Ore taken up at *Alonitz*, near *Ladoga Lake*, which, it is ſaid, may be brought to ſuch a Temper as to be near as durable as Braſs. There is now a Forge at *Peterſburg* where they make Anchors, and all Sorts of Iron-work for building Ships or Houſes. They have alſo of late begun to burn Bricks to build with, as we do in *England*.

There is alſo a Printing-Houſe, and News-Papers are now as regularly printed as in ſeveral other Cities in *Europe*; and ſeveral Books have been lately tranſlated out of the *High Dutch*, and printed here. For, according to the preſent Conſtitution of *Ruſſia*, they are allow'd to enquire into the State of the World abroad, though before the late Czar's Time, when affected Ignorance prevail'd, it was deem'd a Crime to be ſo inquiſitive. All foreign Artiſts and Mechanicks, as Architects, *&c.* are not only ſuffer'd, but encouraged, and even invited to ſettle here, and are allow'd ſeveral Privileges and Immunities, beyond what their own Subjects are allow'd. The late Czar took great Delight in Books, Medals, and all Sorts of Antiquities; as in Gardens, Green-Houſes, Aviaries, Grottoes, Fountains, Caſcades, and all Manner of Water-works. He alſo allow'd, for the Diverſion of the common People, Plays, Opera's, and Aſſemblies at the proper Seaſons, which has contributed very much to the Politeneſs of the Inhabitants, and makes them vaſtly exceed the Genius that the *Ruſſians* were Maſters of before the late Czar's Time.

The chief Grievance that they now labour under is, that they are obliged to build Houſes at their own Charge, and pay very dear for every Thing they have. But ſo arbitary is the Czar's Power, and ſo paſſive their Submiſſion and Obedience, that they readily conform to the Czar's Commands, upon whatever Terms are propoſed to them.

CHAP. IV.

Treats of the Provinces of Livonia, *or* Liefland; *as alſo of* Great Novogrod, Belozero, Wologda, Jeriſlaw, Tweer, *and* Smolensko.

LIVONIA is one of the Czar's late Conqueſts from the Crown of *Sweden*; it is bounded on the Eaſt by *Ingria* and *Great Novogrod*, on the South by the River *Dwina*, which ſeparates it from *Courland*, and other Provinces of *Poland*; on the Weſt by the *Baltick Sea*, and on the North by the Gulph of *Finland*. It is divided into *Eſtonia*, or *Eaſtland*, on the North; and *Letitia*, or *Lettenland*, on the South: The chief Towns are, 1. *Narva*, which ſtands upon the Weſt Banks of a River, which runs from the Lake *Pepus* into the Gulph of *Finland*, which River divides *Livonia* from *Ingria*; it is a ſtrong Place, and has a good Trade for Hemp and other Commodities, which that and the adjacent Countries afford.

In the laſt War between *Sweden* and *Moſcovy*, the Czar took *Narva* by Storm, making a terrible Slaughter of the Inhabitants; and thoſe of them who ſurviv'd the Conqueſt he tranſplanted to *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, to prevent their rebelling againſt him, as being jealous that they were better affected to the *Swede* than to him; but when he had got ſure Footing in the Country, he recall'd them home that remain'd alive, but, having loſt moſt of their Effects by their being ſent abroad, they liv'd but a poor miſerable Life at their Return home.

Revel is a Port on the North-Eaſt Part of *Livonia*, open to the Gulph of *Finland*, above a hundred Miles to the Weſtward of *Narva*; it was much improv'd by the late Czar, and is made a commodious Port for Part of the *Ruſſian* Navy to lie up in during the Winter. It was taken by the *Moſcovite* in the laſt War. The Town ſtanding moſtly upon the Side of a Hill, with a Deſcent towards the Sea, the Cathedral, and the Houſes of the Nobility and others, that are lately built, afford a very handſom Proſpect to the Shipping, but the reſt of the Town is decay'd and ruinous. When they were apprehenſive that the Czar, with his brutiſh *Coſſacks* and *Tartars*, intended to attempt the taking of the Country, the Inhabitants fled to *Revel* for Refuge, by which Means the Town became ſo populous that a Plague enſued, which was computed to carry off not leſs than fifty thouſand People: The Czar allow'd them, after they were conquer'd, the free Exerciſe of their own Religion, which is after the *Lutheran* Way; but the *Ruſſians* have a Church of their own, and their Religion is after the Manner of the *Greek* Church.

Govern-ment. The Magiſtrates have the Civil Government of the City; the Nobility have the Government of the Country, and the *Ruſſian* Governor of *Revel* has the Command of the Military Power; Admiral *Apraxin* was lately Governor of *Revel* and all *Eſtonia*. They yet retain the Arms, Inſcriptions, and other Monuments or Remarks of Antiquity, belonging to *Denmark*, as may be ſeen by their Churches and other antient Buildings; this Town having been firſt built by ſome of the Kings of *Denmark*, and ſtill enjoying ſeveral Privleges granted them by that Crown.

Dorpt. The City of *Dorpt*, or *Dorpat*, ſtands upon the River *Embeck*, to the Southward of Lake *Pirbus*: It was taken

taken by the Czar in the Year 1704, and now continues annex'd to the Empire of *Moscovy*.

Parnow. *Parnow* is about fifty Miles to the Southward of *Revel*; it is situate upon a River of the same Name, which falls into the *Livonian Sea*.

Riga *Riga* is deem'd the Capital of *Livonia*, situate near the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, where it falls into the *Livonian Sea*: It is a Place of good Trade, and a good Harbour, where some of the *Russian* Men of War lie up during the Winter Season. The Town has suffer'd very much of late, and by the Enemies Bombs and the Plague it has been very much depopulated. *Livonia* has been severally in the Possession of the *Germans*, *Danes*, *Poles*, *Swedes*, and *Moscovites*, of all which Nations they are now compounded; but the *Germans* are the most numerous, and their Language prevails most in the Country.

The Soil is good, but the Country has been so ruin'd, and the Inhabitants so destroy'd by War and Plague, that the Advantage of the good Soil is lost for want of Inhabitants to cultivate it. The Sea, the Lakes, and navigable Rivers, contribute very much towards the maintaining a Communication in Trade between *Moscovy* and the rest of *Europe*.

Novogrod. The Province of *Novogrod* is bounded on the North by *Ingria* and *Belozero*, and towards the East by *Jereslaw*, or *Jereslaf*, by *Livonia* towards the West, and *Smolensko* towards the South. The chief Town is *Novogrod*, on the North Side of *Ilmen Lake*, and about two hundred Miles North-West from the City of *Moscow*. There is a Communication, by the River *Wolchoff*, between *Ilmen Lake* and *Ladoga Lake*; the River *Wolchoff* running through *Novogrod*, and being navigable from one Lake to the other; which has made *Novogrod* one of the most populous trading Places in that Part of the World. *Novogrod* was an independant Place till about the Year 1477; when the Great Duke of *Moscovy*, as he was then call'd, plunder'd the Place, (and when they were so poor they became an easy Conquest) and then he impos'd a Governor upon them: And in the Year 1569 the then Great Duke, *John Bazilowitz*, pretending that they had form'd a Conspiracy against him, massacred a great Number of the Inhabitants, and demolish'd great Part of the Town; and since that it has, between the *Swedes* and *Moscovites*, fallen much to decay, and its Trade and Inhabitants are inconsiderable to what they were formerly; but it is still a considerable Place, and an Archbishop's See. There are, in and about the City, a hundred and eighty Churches and Monasteries, all built of Stone, as is the Castle, on the opposite Side of the River; but the Houses are commonly mean wooden Buildings.

A Miracle But I must not forget the Monastery of St. *Anthony* in particular, which the Natives tell us took its Rise from hence: St. *Anthony* being at *Rome*, shipp'd himself aboard of a Millstone, upon which he sail'd, or swam, down the *Tiber*, and getting safe through the *Sneights of Gibraltar*, steer'd away to the Northward, and sail'd into the *Baltick*, and by the Gulph of *Finland* into *Ladoga Lake*, and from thence up the River *Wolchoff* to the Place where *Novogrod* now stands, where (they say) he perform'd many Miracles; and indeed if they could find a Way to draw me into a Belief of his Expedition, it would be a great Step towards creating a Belief of all the rest; but as for those who are so incredulous as to deny this Naval Expedition, they shew them the Millstone as a Proof of the Fact, *but I never heard of any that saw it swim.*

Product. The Province of *Novogrod*, and Country about it, abounds in Grain, Flax, Hemp, Honey, and Wax; and the best of *Russia* Leather is manufactur'd here.

Old Russia and *New Russia* are situate on the South Side of the Lake *Ilmen*. *Pleskow* is the Capital of the Dukedom so called: It is a large populous City; and was a free and independant City till about the Year 1509, when the Great Duke of *Moscovy* reduc'd it, and annex'd it to his own Dominions.

Belozero The Province of *Belozero* lies North-East from *Ingria*: The chief Town is *Belozoro*, on the South-West Coast of the *White Lake*. The Province of *Wologda* is South-East from *Belozero*: The chief *Wologda* Town is of the same Name, *Wologda*, in near fifty-nine Degrees of Latitude, upon a River of the same Name, which falls into the *Dwina*, and empties itself into the *White Sea*, below *Archangel*. The City is about two hundred Miles to the Northward of *Moscow*; it is a large City, encompass'd with a Stone Wall, which is not common in *Russia*; it is a Place of very good Trade, insomuch, that when the late Czar was intending to remove the Mechanicks and Handicraft Trades from *Wologda* to his new City of *Petersburg*, he was told that, by only three *German* Merchants, that were settled at *Wologda*, there were upwards of twenty-five thousand Persons employ'd in dressing of Hemp and Flax, that was yearly exported to foreign Countries, by the way of *Archangel*, to which Place they had the Conveniece of Water-Carriage, by the Rivers *Wologda* and *Dwina*; whereas, if they were carried to *Petersburg*, they must be obliged to carry them by Land, which would be a much greater Expence; for the greatest Part of the Goods exported from *Archangel* were of the Growth of the Province of *Wologda*. These Objections and substantial Reasons against their removing to *Petersburg*, cast a Damp upon the Czar's *Petersburg* Project for some Time, though the Consequence proved that none of those Difficulties could make him desist.

The River runs through the City of *Wologda*, which stands upon the Banks of the River, on each Side, for near four Miles together. The great Church has five Cupola's, cover'd with Tin, with large gilt Crosses on the Top of them; and besides it there are above twenty more Stone Churches in the City, with Cupola's cover'd with Tin and gilt Crosses, and above forty more built of Wood; there are also three Monasteries of Friars, and one of Nuns.

Jereslaw *Jereslaw*, or *Jereslaf*, lies to the Southward of *Wologda*: The chief Town is of the same Name with the Province; it is situate on the River *Wolga*, in the fifty-eighth Degree of Latitude; it is reckon'd one of the principal Cities in *Russia*, especially for the great Number of Churches that are built of Stone, because wooden Buildings are much more common in *Russia*. It is a very plentiful Country, and has a very good Trade, especially in Linnen and Leather.

Twer Between *Great Novogrod* and *Jereslaw* is the District of *Twer*: The chief Town is also *Twer*, upon the River *Wolga*; a Town containing about two thousand Houses, with seventy Churches and Monasteries; and a Castle in which the Governor resides. There are great Quantities of Wheat brought hither every Year from *Casan* and the Country about, and sent to *Petersburg*.

Smolensko The Province of *Smolensko* lies between the Province of *Lithuania*, in *Poland*, and the Province of *Moscowa*: The chief Town is *Smolensko*, situate on the River *Nieper*, or *Boristhenes*, near the Borders of *Lithuania*, of which it was once accounted a Part. The *Moscovites* and *Poles* have by Turns had this Province in Possession, till the Year 1686, when it was by Treaty confirm'd to the *Moscovites*, who have peaceably enjoy'd it ever since.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of the Province of Moſcow, *or* Moſcowa; *with a Deſcription of the City of* Moſco, *the Capital of the Province; alſo of the Provinces of* Little Novogrod, Caſan, Bulgar, *&c. with the Territories of the* Don Coſſacks, *and the* Ruſſian Ukrain.

Moſcow.

THE Province of *Moſcow*, including the Diſtricts of *Raſtow*, *Periſlaw*, *Suſdal*, and *Wolodimir*, is bounded towards the North by the Province of *Tweer*, and towards the Eaſt by *Little Novogrod*, by the Province of *Rezan* towards the South, and by *Smolensko* on the Weſt. The chief Town of the Province is *Moſcow*, antiently the Capital of the Empire, till now *Peterſburg* has juſtled it out of the Imperial Dignity; notwithſtanding which, it is not diveſted of its antient Grandeur; its Situation, and Appearance, eſpecially at a ſmall Diſtance, being very agreeable: It ſtands on a large pleaſant Plain, on the Banks of the River *Moſcowa*, in near fifty-ſix Degrees of Latitude, and about thirty-eight Degrees of Longitude Eaſt from *London*; it extends about ſix Miles in Length, and four in Breadth. The multitude of Churches, with their gilded Cupola's and Spires, with the numerous Palaces of the Czar and the Nobility, which are ſurrounded with large Courts and Gardens, afford a very beautiful Proſpect as you approach the City, eſpecially on the Road from *Great Novogrod*, but I muſt own it looks beſt at a Diſtance, when only the fine Buildings appear, and hide the dirty Streets that lie between them, and the poor wooden Cottages that are interſpers'd among them; there are indeed two or three thouſand handſome Stone Houſes, which would of themſelves form a noble City, if they were contiguous, and diſpoſed in regular Streets, and the very ordinary Houſes not to be intermix'd with them, but rather to encompaſs them in the Nature of Suburbs; but there is no Care taken to diſpoſe even the beſt Buildings, much leſs the worſt, to any Advantage of Beauty or Order, which makes them (however they may ſhew themſelves at a Diſtance) be very little entertaining to a Traveller when among them; nor is their Pavement more entertaining, as being only Trees of Timber, cut a little plain on the upper Side, and laid in the Street, in the ſame Manner as before deſcribed at *Archangel*.

The City of *Moſcow* is divided into four Parts, each ſurrounded by a Wall: Within the firſt are the *Slabodaes*, or Suburbs, moſtly in Ruins by Fire and foreign Enemies; the ſecond Part, or Quarter, is call'd *Czar Gorod*, or, in *Engliſh*, the *Czar's City*; the Third is *Kitai*, or the *China Town*, for here the *Indian* and *China* Merchandizes are ſold; and in the Fourth ſtands the Royal Palace, and thirty or forty Churches and Chapels, with the Palace of the late Patriarch, and the principal Officers of State; and alſo ſeveral Monaſteries, and other Buildings, and ſo populous, that this Quarter alone might be accounted a conſiderable City. Before the Walls is a large Market-Place, the fineſt in the City of *Moſcow*.

In the *China* Market they expoſe the Pictures of their Saints, to be ſeen and ſold; but with this Difference, between them and Goods that are common, and leſs ſacred as they think them, that the Buyer muſt not chaffer or undervalue a Picture, by bidding leſs than the Seller asks, but devoutly either give him the Price, or go without it; indeed if the Seller is as conſcientious on the other hand as to ask no more than it is worth, the Bargain is the ſooner made, and both Parties as juſtly ſerv'd. They deal much in wooden Ware here, as at *Archangel* and *Petersburg*; but here, *viz.* in the Czar's Market, they expoſe to Sale not only Toys, as Hand-Bowls, Punch-Bowls, Spoons, *&c.* all of Wood, but alſo they have wooden Houſes, ready fram'd, of ſeveral Sizes; that if by Fire, or any other Means, a Houſe be demoliſh'd, they go to Market, and, having fix'd upon a Size, and agreed for the Price, the Workmen take it down, and convey the Timber to the Place appointed, and putting each in its proper Place, the Houſe is finiſh'd; ſo that the old Houſe may be burnt or pulled down, the new one bought at Market, carried home, and built, and all in a Day's Time, or two at moſt; which is a great Advantage to the Natives, on account of the frequent and dreadful Fires which happen, by reaſon not only the Houſes, but Pavements, too are made of Wood, that if they had not this ready way of rebuilding, when thoſe Fires happen, the Sufferers would be much longer deſtitute of Shelter. They have ſuffer'd ſo much by Fires in thoſe combuſtible Houſes, that they have begun to build Warehouſes, and make Vaults of Stone and Brick, for the better Security of their moſt valuable Goods, by which means their Sufferings by Fire have not of late been ſo ſevere as formerly.

It is ſaid there are not leſs than fifteen hundred Churches, Monaſteries, and other Religious Houſes, in *Moſcow*; and it is obſerv'd, that they are ſo plentifully furniſh'd with Bells, that their mix'd and confuſed Sound on the Holidays make them very troubleſome to the Inhabitants. They have ſome few Clocks in the City; but the moſt common Way is, as at *Archangel*, to give Notice of the Time of Day, by ſtriking every Hour upon a Board, or large Piece of caſt Iron, with a wooden Hammer. The Czar's Palace is built of Free-Stone, on the Side of the River; but, as it conſiſts of the Contrivance of ſeveral Princes of different Taſtes, the whole is, in itſelf, very irregular; the Circumference of the whole is about twice as much as that of the Tower of *London*. Since the removal of the Court to *Peterſburg*, the Czar's Palace at *Moſcow* lies not only unfurniſh'd and neglected, but going to Ruin for want of Repairs. For when the Czar became ſo intent upon the Improvement of *Peterſburg*, he, in Order to promote that Deſign, and even to oblige his Nobility to forſake *Moſcow*, publiſh'd an Order to prohibit the Rebuilding or Repairing any of the Palaces or Stone Buildings at *Moſcow*. The Cathedral is a large ſtrong antient Building; on the Right Side of the Altar is a Seat for the Czar, and on the Left for the Patriarch, while they had one; in the Middle of the Church hangs a Silver Branch, of a prodigious Size; the Picture of the *Virgin Mary*, and other Ornaments of the Altar, are adorn'd with Jewels to the Value of above fifty thouſand Crowns;

Crowns; they also shew another Picture of the *Virgin Mary*, which, they say, was drawn by St. *Luke*. At the Bottom of the Steeple lies the great Bell, so much talk'd of by Travellers, said to weigh 336000 *lb.* or one hundred and fifty Tun, and is thirteen Foot in Diameter. Before the Gate of the Castle stands the Church of the *Holy Sepulchre*, which, they say, is built exactly after the Model of that at *Jerusalem*. The late Czar founded three Colleges; one for the learned Languages, another for Mathematicks in general, and a Third for Navigation in particular. During the Carnival, when almost all the loose disorderly Persons are drunk, as it were by a Sort of Authority, there are so many Street Robberies and Murders committed, that dead Bodies are found in the Streets by fifty or sixty in a Week. But while *Moscow* was in its Grandeur, its Neighbourhood abounded with fine Country Seats, Walks, Groves, and Gardens, which afford Plenty of Fruits, Flowers, and Garden-Stuff, and all Necessaries of Life extremely cheap.

Great Bell at *Moscow*.

Rostow, or *Rostoff*, is about a hundred and twenty Miles North-East of *Moscow*. *Pereslof* is seventy Miles North-East from *Moscow*, in the Road to *Rostoff*. *Susdal* is about a hundred Miles North-East from *Moscow*, on the River *Kisma*. *Wolodimer* is about forty Miles East from *Susdal*, on the said River *Kisma*. These four are the Capitals of their respective little Provinces. *Troitza* is about forty Miles North of *Moscow*: It has sometimes been the Czar's Residence, he having a Palace here, and is yet famous for its Castle and Monastery. *Columnia* is situate at the meeting of the two Rivers *Moscowa* and *Oka*, about fifty Miles South-East from the City of *Moscow*.

Nice Novogrod

The Province of *Nice Novogrod*, or *Little Novogrod*, lies South-Eastward from the Province of *Moscow*: The chief Towns are, 1. *Nisna*, upon the River *Oka*, it is about two hundred Miles to the Eastward of *Moscow*; it is encompass'd with a strong Wall of Stone, and hath a Cittadel built upon a Rock; the Cathedral is also built of Stone, and cover'd with five Domes, painted green, and a gilt Cross on the Top of each; there are three other Churches built of Stone, as is the Archbishop's Palace, but the rest of the Houses, and other Buildings are all of Wood. 2. *Basilgorod* is a good Town on the River *Wolga*, about twenty Leagues East from *Nisna*.

Casan.

Casan Province lies North-Easterly from *Little Novogrod*: The chief Town, and Capital, of the Province, is *Casan*, situate at the Confluence of the River *Casan* into the *Wolga*, in the fifty-sixth Degree of Latitude. So large is the River *Wolga*, so high up as *Casan*, that the Czar's Men of War, intended for the *Caspian Sea*, are built there. Here are many fine Churches, built like those before described, with Domes and gilded Crosses; and a Castle also, surrounded by a Stone Wall; but the generality of the Houses here are mean wooden Buildings, like those describ'd in other Parts of *Moscovy*.

Bulgar.

The Province of *Bulgar* lies to the Southward of *Casan*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Bulgar*, or *Belaya*, near the River *Wolga*, and about a hundred and twenty Miles South-East from *Casan*. 2. *Samara*, about a hundred Miles further to the Southward, upon the River *Wolga*, but on the *Asian* Side.

Rezan.

The Province of *Rezan* is between the Provinces of *Moscow* and *Belgorod*. Chief Town is *Rezankoi*, on the River *Oka*, about seventy-five Miles South-East from *Moscow*: The River *Don*, or *Tanais*, rises in this Province. To the Southward of the Province of *Rezan* is that of *Belgorod*: Chief Town is *Veronese*, or *Weronitz*, situate near the Confluence of the Rivers *Don* and *Veronese*, in near fifty-two Degrees of North Latitude. Here the late Czar built some of his Men of War, which he intended for the *Black Sea*, some so large as to carry eighty Guns, though so high up the River; but when he was obliged to surrender *Asoph*, the Ships perish'd, because his Communication with that Sea was cut off, notwithstanding the Charge he was at to cut a Channel between the River *Don* and the River *Wolga*. 2. *Belgorod* about one hundred Leagues to the Southward of *Moscow*. 3. *Ostrogofskoi*, about sixty Miles to the Southward of *Veronese*.

Land of the Don Cossacks.

The Territories of the *Don Cossacks* lie partly on the East, but mostly on the West, Side of the River *Don*, or *Tanais*, extending six or seven hundred Miles. The chief Town is *Donetskoi*, on the East, or rather North-East, Side of the *Don*, in fifty Degrees odd Minutes of Latitude. This is a fruitful Soil, and a good Climate, being some of it in the same Latitude with the South Part of *England*; but the Country being so thinly peopled, this otherwise fruitful Country lies uncultivated for want of Inhabitants.

Seesk.

The Land of *Seesk* lies between *Belgorod* on the North, and *Smolensko* on the South, not far from the Borders of *Poland*: Chief Towns are *Novogrodesk* and *Zernigof*, both on the West Side of the River *Deesna*; but, being obscure Places, they do not afford much Matter for our Observation.

Ukrain

The *Russian Ukrain* is bounded on the East by *Belgorod* and *Don Cossacks*, and on the South by *Little Tartary*, by *Polish Ukrain* on the West, and by *Zernigof* on the North; it is divided from *Polish Ukrain* by the River *Nieper*, or *Boristhenes*. The chief Town is *Kiow*, or *Kiof*, situate on the West Bank of the *Boristhenes*, in Latitude fifty-one North, about four hundred Miles South-West from *Moscow*. This Country belong'd to *Poland*, till it was surrendred to the *Moscovites* in the Year 1686; it is mostly inhabited by the *Cossacks*. It is call'd *Ukrain*, which signifies a Frontier, it bordering upon *Little Tartary*, with whose Inhabitants they are seldom at Peace. The *Turk* claims the Dominion of *Little Tartary*, though they do not greatly care for him; but when a Truce subsists between them, the *Tartars* make Incursions into *Moscovy* and *Poland* to steal Slaves to sell to the Porte.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Gives an Account of the Stature, Complexion, Shape, and Habit, of the Ruſſians; *their* Genius, Temper, *and the Vices to which they are moſt addicted: Of their Diet, Lodging, Baths, Exerciſes, Diverſions, Feſtivals, Salutations, and Ceremonies; alſo of their Poſts, Roads, Carriages, and way of Travelling.*

THE *Ruſſians* are of a good Stature; and though the Boors, or labouring People among them, if we compare their Working with their manner of Feeding, have no great Reaſon to expect to be fat, yet the better Sort, if inclined to be a little corpulent, value themſelves upon it. They are generally of a healthy Conſtitution, and very nimble. I do not know how far the late Czar might prevail upon them to ſhave, if he laid a heavy Tax upon their Beards, as it has been reported he did, but I have ſeen the common Sort of them with their long Beards, and when an *Engliſhman* has ſportingly brought out a Razor, and ſeem'd to offer to ſhave them, they have cover'd their Beards, or put them by, and expoſed their Throats, intimating, that they would rather ſuffer to have their Throats cut, than their Beards ſhav'd; and at the ſame time hold up their Hands, and look up with ſuch frightful and diſtorted Countenances, as if it was the greateſt Sin imaginable to have their Beards ſhav'd, or cut off with a Razor. But I have been told, that when the Czar, by his arbitrary Commands, has compell'd them to undergo the Operation, either to be ſhav'd, or, if obſtinate, to have the Beard and Skin with it pull'd off, they have endeavour'd to ſave as much as they could of the Hair to be buried with them, ſuch a Veneration they have for that Badge of Gravity.

THE Women have generally very good Features, but delight ſo much in a red Complexion, and are ſo confident that they cannot be handſome without it, that if Nature has not beſtow'd that Colour upon them, they ſupply that Defect by Art, and lay on Red in abundance. They formerly uſed Patches, cut in the Shape of Trees, Horſes, and the like; but ſince they have convers'd more with other *Europeans*, theſe Fancies are pretty much laid aſide. The young Women have many of them very handſome Hair, which they have plaited, and it hangs down in Treſſes on their Backs. They are well proportion'd, and fair complexion'd, but have generally brown, blackiſh Teeth, which they procure to be ſo by Means uſed for that Purpoſe, as thinking black Teeth more beautiful than white ones.

THE Men formerly wore Caps in Form of a Sugar-Loaf, turn'd up with Fur, a Shirt with a round Skirt like a Petticoat, not ſo low as their Knees, with a Saſh about their Middle, and the Shirt not put in their Breeches, but hanging down on the Outſide of them. This was their working Dreſs, but at other times they had a looſe Coat or Veſt over all the reſt, reaching down almoſt to their Heels. Their Shoes like ſhort Boots, up as high as the Small of the Leg. But when the Czar ſaw more of the *Engliſh* Dreſs, he thought it more commodious, and order'd his Subjects to conform to it; which ſome ſcrupling to comply with, he placed Guards at the Gates of the Cities, and other Places of Reſort, to cut their long Garments off by the Knees; and then inſtead of thoſe Caps, they wore Hats, and very much affected Gold-Lace, or ſomething in Imitation of it about the Edges of them.

Shammucks. THE *Samoieds*, or *Shammucks*, as they are there call'd, who live in their Huts, in the Northern Part of the Empire, are much more unpoliſh'd than the Inhabitants of the Cities of *Archangel*, *Petersburg*, &c. They wrap themſelves up in Skins of Rein Deer, clapping the two Fleſh Sides together, having then a hairy Side outwards, and another hairy Side inwards; next them the Coat and Cap is all of a Piece, and only a Hole is left forward to look out at.

Tempers. THE *Ruſſians* are, many of them, of late grown much more ingenious than formerly, eſpecially in making or turning little light Toys in Ivory or Wood; but it is difficult to bring them to any thing of ſolid Improvements, which ſome impute to their Pride and Slothfulneſs; and tho' that may be partly the Cauſe, yet there is a Reaſon ſeems to me to be more material; for the Government, or the Lords, whoſe Slaves they are, will employ their whole time, if they excel in any Art, and allow them nothing for all their Induſtry.

THE late Czar, after he had got himſelf a little more poliſh'd than the common *Ruſſians* were, by his Converſation with the *Engliſh*, and other *European* Nations, call'd them *a Herd of Brutes in the Shape of Men*, and almoſt deſpair'd of bringing them to any Degree of Docibility: And the young Nobility, which he ſent abroad, were not much the better for their Experience. But here we are not to be ty'd up to the Account given by ſome of our *Engliſh* Travellers, who report them in general to be Drunkards, &c. I own I have ſeen, and that very frequently, the Boors, or Labourers, drunk with their *Paw Brandy*, as they call it, and lying aſleep with their Faces againſt the Sun in hot Weather. But if this was to be a Precedent, or a Ground for the general Character of a Country, it might with much more Reaſon be affirm'd, that *England* is a drunken Nation, when Travellers ſee the Gin-Shops in *London* crowded every Day (Sabbath-Days not excepted) with Cuſtomers of the moſt deſpicable and contemptible Rank. But we ſhould think it very hard, if Foreigners ſhould carry home ſuch a Report of *England*, for no other Reaſon, but becauſe they ſee ſome of the moſt profligate of the Inhabitants guilty of thoſe Crimes, ſo odious to the better, or even to the middling Sort of People. For my Part, I apt to believe, that thoſe who bring home ſuch an ordinary Account of *Ruſſia*, or indeed of any other foreign Chriſtian Nation, have only, or at leaſt moſtly, convers'd with the meaneſt of the Inhabitants, amongſt whom, and them only, they could find People of ſuch a mean Character as they repreſent the whole Nation to be; and that if they had convers'd with the better Sort of People in the Country, they would have brought home a better Character of *Ruſſia*.

Food. They are more used to Fish than Flesh, especially Salt-Fish, which they will eat without boiling, or any other way of Dressing I have seen a Labourer aboard of a Ship, who, for his Provision, brought a Fish like a small Cod, and when the rest went to Dinner, he eat of his raw Fish; and what was left served the next Day, &c. till it was consumed. They like Flesh very well, but their Fasts taking up by far the greater half of the Year, and they at those Times being absolutely prohibited the Eating of Flesh, makes it not much used among them; nor will they, during those Fasts, eat either Milk or Eggs, or, as they call it, any thing that came of Flesh, or might have come to be Flesh. They use Melons, Cucumbers, and other Garden Stuff, in great abundance. They use Cavier so much, that it is brought in Pots or small Caggs from thence to *England*, as a Rarity, or as Presents to Merchants, or other Gentlemen. It is made of the Roes of Sturgeon, salted and dry'd. They have Plenty of Hams, many, if not most, of which are made of Bears; they taste well, and except by their Shape, are not easily distinguish'd from our *English* Hams.

Liquor. Their Liquor formerly was mostly Mead, or a Liquor called *Quaz*, being a small sort of Liquor made with Honey-Combs; but of late they have learn'd to brew and drink Malt Liquors; but those that brew it, must first take Licences of the Government for so doing.

Lodging. Their Lodgings are commonly in the same Room where they eat and drink; the Houses, as has been observed, consisting generally of but one Room, in which is a Stove, or large Oven, cover'd with Planks, which makes it appear like a large Table, or a Tomb-Stone, and a gentle Fire being kept in it, warms all the House; and in cold Weather so many of the better Sort of the Family lie upon it, as can conveniently stow themselves, and the rest upon the Floor, or upon broad Benches or Shelves fix'd round the Room, having Quilts or common Matts to lie upon, or cover them with; but of late, the better Sort have Beds, in imitation of the *English*. One material Piece of their Furniture, is, the Pictures of their Saints, which they commonly place on that Side of the Room opposite to the Door.

Salutation. Their manner of Salutation was, by Bowing or Inclining the Head, and the greater the Quality of the Person saluted, the lower and more profound the Reverence; to a Prince or Magistrate they bow the Head, or prostrate their Faces to the Ground, and never address in their own Name, but the Name of a third Person, and in some diminutive Terms, as, *Little Peter*, or *Poor John*, or *Your Slave*, &c. desires this or that Favour. The Women also bow, and do not kneel, or make a Courtesy, as they do in *England*.

When a Person pays a Visit at a Friend's House, he at his first Entrance looks for the Saint; and if the Paint be almost wore off, or if the House be dark, and the Candles not burning, or for other Reasons they cannot see it, he first asks, *Where is the God?* and having found it, makes a low Bow, or falls on his Face to the Ground before it, crossing himself, and saying, *Gospodi Pomoli*, which is in *English*, *Lord have Mercy upon me*. Then he pays his Respects in particular to the Family, and kisses the Mistress's Cheek; which done, the Mistress used to withdraw, and be no more seen at that Entertainment; but of late they are allow'd more Liberty, and converse more familiarly with the other Sex.

Bathing. Bathing is a universal Diversion, as well as a Remedy for all Distempers; the poor, or middling People have recourse to publick Bagnio's, but the Quality have them in their own Houses; but the Bagnio's, whether Publick or Private, pay a Tax to the Government. The publick Baths have one Apartment for Men, and another for Women, which might be look'd upon as a Piece of Modesty, if they did not after Bathing run promiscuously about the Field, and lay themselves down in the Snow, and the like, without any Notion of Shame, or avoiding a Stranger even of a contrary Sex, but will rather meet them, and sport with them when naked, without any regard to Modesty or Decency.

Their Exercise for Diversion is Hawking, or Diver Coursing with Greyhounds, and some of them are inclined to Musick, for which their chief Instruments were the Harp, the Bagpipe, the Hunting Horn, and Kettle-Drum; but the late Czar promoted better Musick, as also Plays, Opera's, and Assemblies, after the Manner of several other *European* Nations, but with Regulations and Restrictions drawn up by his own Hand, to prevent their Diversions degenerating into Debauchery; and it were to be wish'd, that other Nations, that pretend to a greater Degree of Reformation, and a higher Pitch of Christianity, would do the same.

The Persons of Quality used to keep Dwarfs or Jesters, seemingly foolish, though satirically witty; these were allow'd to make all Remarks, and speak all Truths that they thought fit, tho' such as might have been resented from any other Person. The Czar used to entertain his Friends with his Dwarfs and Jesters to a high Degree, insomuch, that immediately after the Marriage of the late Duke of *Courland* to the Czar's Niece, the Princess *Anne*, the Czar order'd a Marriage A *Ru* to be solemniz'd between two of his Dwarfs, with We as much Splendor and Magnificence as if it had been the Nuptials of a Prince; and to make the Appearance more uniform, all the Officers and People employ'd in performing the Procession, and the Ceremony, were of the same diminutive Race with the Bride and Bridegroom; and one of the least of that Species walk'd at the Head of the Procession, carrying a Marshal's Staff, as a Badge of the great Office of this little Officer; next came the Bride and Bridegroom richly dress'd; then the Czar himself, with his Ministers and Nobility; then follow'd threescore or fourscore Couple of Dwarfs of each Sex; and being come to the Church, the Czar himself held the Nuptial Garland over the Bride's Head, according to the Custom of the *Greek* Church: They afterwards din'd in the same Hall where the Czar had entertain'd the Duke and Duchess of *Courland* at their Wedding, and with the same Magnificence, having as many Tables as they, only with this Difference, that the Tables were low, and proportion'd to the Stature of the Guests. The Bride and Bridegroom were plac'd at separate Tables, each under a Canopy, and the rest at other Tables, according to their Rank and Dignity. The Company was attended by a Marshal and eight Deputies, with other Officers, all of the same Pigmy Stature, but generally crooked or deform'd, or some way disproportion'd in their Structure, which afforded more Diversion to the Spectators; for after Dinner and the usual Healths, these diminutive Actors began to dance; one advancing with a high Bunch upon his Back, and short Legs; another with a monstrous big Belly; another waddles along with a Pair of short crooked Legs, and a Head almost as big as his Body. In short, no Person was suppos'd qualified to be an Actor in this Farce, except he was some way deform'd, and of a contemptibly little Stature; and as for their Deformities, they were so far from concealing them, that they rather magnified them, as being the chief Badges or

Marks

Marks of their Qualifications for ſo great an Office as that of making themſelves ridiculous to the Company.

Feſtivals. THEIR chief Feſtivals are, firſt, on *New-Years-Day*, or the Firſt of *January*, which is the ſame with our Firſt of *January*, the *Ruſſians* reckoning by the *Old Stile* as we in *England* do. I ſhall give one Inſtance of their Manner of performing that Ceremony, as we have it from a Traveller who was preſent at it. He tells us, that the late Czar on that Day repair'd to the great Church at *Peterſburg*, at Four in the Morning, and officiated in reading Divine Service himſelf, inſtead of the Patriarch, he having ſuſpended that Office, as participating too much of Sovereign Power. When Divine Service was over, he return'd to his Palace under the Diſcharge of the great Guns; there he receiv'd the Compliments of the Nobility, and preſented to every one a Glaſs of Brandy, according to annual Cuſtom. Afterwards he, with ſome of the Nobility and Clergy, paid a formal Viſit to ſome of the higheſt Rank, where as they entered the Doors, they ſung *Te Deum* in the *Ruſſian* Language and Manner, and wiſh'd them a happy New Year; whereupon the Maſter of the Houſe, who was appriz'd of the Viſit, preſented the Czar (as Head of the Clergy or Patriarch, whoſe Office he had that Day perform'd) with a Purſe of Money. It is likely the Czar was very willing to perform the Prieſt's Office that Day, becauſe receiving the Money was one grand Part of it; for which very Reaſon it is to be ſuppoſed the Prieſt did not thank him for being ſo very officious. But what cannot arbitrary Power do, when that once prevails! After the Preſent made, the Perſon invited the Czar and his Company to an Entertainment; but they never ſtay'd at any Place above two Hours, becauſe of the many Viſits they had to make that and the ſucceeding Days, till *Twelfth-Day*, which is alſo another great Feſtival for the Ceremony of the Conſecration of the Waters, which is celebrated on that Day.

THE Ceremony of Conſecrating the Water was thus perform'd at *Peterſburg* (the Gentleman from whoſe Account we had this, being preſent at it in the Year 1719.) The Czar himſelf march'd at the Head of ſeven Battalions of his Guards to the River *Nieva*, which was then frozen ſufficiently ſtrong for the Ice to bear them. The Troops were form'd into a Square, in the Middle of which a Hole was cut in the Ice, and over the Hole a wooden Houſe ready fram'd for the Purpoſe was ſet; and when Divine Service was ended at Church, the Proceſſion of the Clergy began, the Bells in the Churches ringing at the ſame time. When the Clergy had advanc'd to the Houſe in the Square, the Conſecration Prayers were read; upon which the Artillery was diſcharg'd, and three Vollies of ſmall Shot fired: In the mean time the Prieſts drew up ſome of the conſecrated Water out of the Hole in the Ice, to give the People to drink. Some bring their Children to be baptiz'd in it, *&c.* and when all that Ceremony is over, in which the Prieſts are concern'd, the Populace flock in to carry ſome of the conſecrated Water home to their Families or Acquaintance, which is look'd upon as a valuable Preſent. Cripples alſo, and infirm People, crowd thither for Cure, as not only believing the Waters to be medicinal, but as ſuppoſing, that he that gets to it the firſt after its Conſecration, has the beſt Chance for a Cure.

THE Fourteenth of *September*, call'd by us *Holy Rood*, or the Exaltation of the Croſs, is a very ſolemn Day with them. They form a Proceſſion, having the Picture of our Saviour in his Agonies upon the Croſs, and the Virgin *Mary*, &c. weeping at the Foot of it. This Picture is elevated or exalted upon a Pole, and expoſed to View with ſo much Veneration and Ceremony, that although the labouring People are not ſuppreſs'd from working that Day, yet if either a Man, Horſe, or Sledge, ſhould be in the Street likely to meet it, they muſt go on the other Side, or, if the Street is not broad enough, they muſt go quite back, and not put the Clergy an Inch out of their Way that form the Proceſſion.

THEY have two other rejoycing Days: One is when the Snow is fallen, and the Water frozen, that they can travel with their Sledges over Land and Water with equal Eaſe and Safety, without regarding the winding of the Roads. The other is at the Spring of the Year, when the Froſt breaks, and the Rivers are open for Water Carriage; ſo that their Carriage in Summer is moſtly perform'd by Water, and in Winter by the Sledges.

Traveling and Carriage. THE Sledges being chiefly uſed in Winter, as above obſerv'd, they load their Goods and carry the Paſſengers upon them: Thoſe in *Lapland*, *Samoieda*, and other Northern Parts, are generally drawn by Rein-Deer; but in the Southern and more civiliz'd Parts of *Moſcovy*, they are commonly drawn by one Horſe. The Rein-Deer is much about the Height of our Fallow-Deer, but much thicker, and their Legs ſtrong in Proportion. It has an Advantage of the Horſe in travelling in the Winter, for it has a thin wide Hoof, and is naturally nimble, and treads light, that it can travel upon the Top of the frozen Snow without breaking in; whereas the Horſes have ſuch ſmall Hoofs, that they cannot travel but in the beaten Road, where the Snow, by continually treading upon, becomes hard and ſolid.

THE Travellers carry their Proviſions along with them, there being no Inns upon the Roads that are leſs frequented, but upon the great publick Roads, as between *Moſcow*, *Archangel*, and *Petersburg*, &c. the late Czar order'd Houſes of Entertainment to be erected at every fifteen or twenty Miles, with Mercuries to deſcribe the Way, and ſhew the Number of Miles from Place to Place; and upon ſome of the chief Roads, as between *Moſcow* and the City of *Veroneſe*, he has caus'd Trees to be planted for ſome hundred Miles together, alſo Poſt-Stages and Horſes for Conveniency of Travelling. They chuſe the Winter-time as we do the Summer for Travelling, as being the beſt Road; for thoſe Places there that are in Summer boggy and impaſſible, are in the Winter become practicable, by reaſon of the frozen Snow with which it is cover'd: That being the Weather they wait for for Travelling, and which puts Travellers in Motion, as ſoon as the Sledge-way is fix'd, many hundreds of Sledges may be ſeen every Day going in and out of *Peterſburg*, *Moſcow*, *Archangel*, &c. Some of the Quality uſe Coaches; but few, if any, travel Journeys in Stage-Coaches, as with us.

THE late Czar has very induſtriouſly improv'd his Dominions, by making Rivers navigable, and cutting Canals from Place to Place, particularly from the *Baltick* to the *Caſpian Sea*, by Way of the River *Wolga*, inſomuch, that great Quantities of Oak Timber is now convey'd from *Caſan* to *Peterſburg*, by the ſame River, though it is a thouſand Miles or more; which gives them an Opportunity of building much ſtronger Ships now than when they had only their own Fir Timber; and I may add, when they had not Carpenters and other Workmen, that underſtood the Buſineſs nearly like thoſe they have now; and thoſe Canals are not only uſeful for conveying Floats of Timber, but Proviſions, to *Peterſburg*, where it would be otherwiſe much wanted.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Gives an Account of the Nature of the Soil of Ruſſia; *of their Husbandry and Gardening; alſo of their Plants, Animals, and Minerals: With ſome particular Remarks of Captain* Perry, *and others, concerning the Froſt, Snow, Air, Winds, Seaſons,* &c.

Soil. *RUSSIA*, being a plain flat Country, cannot miſs of being naturally moiſt and well-water'd, eſpecially if to this we add the Additions made by Art by the late Czar, who, not only to water the Country, but to maintain a Communication between one Part of the Empire and another, cut Canals in the low wet Grounds, and repair'd the old Roads, or made new ones in the higher, or dry, Grounds, that are capable of it; by which Means the barren Places are either made fruitful, or ſupply'd with Neceſſaries from other Places that are ſo. So that the Northern Parts, where the Seaſons are not capable of ripening the Grain, are ſupply'd by the Southern, and more fruitful, Provinces of the Country. But the *Samoieds* and *Laplanders*, who are ſo far to the Northward, that they neither have Seaſons for ripening Corn of their own, nor have any Communication with their Neighbours by Roads or Canals, whereby to be ſupply'd, live on the Fleſh of Wild Beaſts, ſuch as Deer or Bears; whoſe Hams they cure in their Faſhion, and ſell them at *Archangel*, where the *Engliſh* uſed to buy them, as Rarities, and bring them to *England*, for Preſents or Entertainment. They have alſo Plenty of Fiſh and Fowl; as alſo of Turnips, Cabbages, and the like, which ſerve them for Bread. Their Rein Deer feed upon Moſs; which, when the Snow hinders them from coming at the Ground, they find upon the Trees, and with this they grow fat in the Winter. The moſt fruitful Part of the Country is *Caſan*, and other Countries near the River *Wolga*. Their Seed-time and Harveſt is near the ſame Time as ours: But there is but little of Sowing or Reaping among them; becauſe, let who will plow and ſow, their Lords have the firſt Refuſal of ſo much of the Crop as they pleaſe; and therefore they rather chuſe grazing, or expending what the Earth naturally produces; which makes Beef cheap, and the other Products of the Earth, as Turnips, Cabbages, &c. ſupply the Place of Bread. And when the Summer comes, not only Graſs, but Tulips, Roſes, and the beſt of Aſparagus, ſpring up, as our Hemlocks and other Weeds, ſpontaneouſly, without any Culture.

The Woods and Foreſts of *Ruſſia*, eſpecially towards the Northern Parts of it, produce no Oak Timber, or ſcarce any other, but Fir and Birch, of which they have Plenty; but towards the Southern and Eaſtern Parts of *Moſcovy*, as about *Caſan*, they have Plenty of Oak, Elm, and other Timber, fit for all Manner of Uſes. They have improv'd their Fruit Trees, and, even ſo far North as *Peterſburg*, have brought their Gardens to great Perfection. They have great Plantations of Hemp and Flax, of which they export abundance yearly to all, or moſt, of the Nations in *Europe*. Their Fir, or Pine, being ſo plenty, furniſhes them with great Quantities of Tar, and conſequently of Pitch; which the late Czar conſidering, found he was able to build, rigg, and fit out, a Fleet of good Ships. But it is but of late that they have ſo much improv'd their Iron Manufactury; for, not much more than twenty Years ago, I have ſeen a Ship at *Archangel*, of about ninety Tuns, that had no Iron about her, all the Planks being faſtned together with wooden Trindles, and the Feather-Edges of them ſtitch'd together with Withes.

Animal. The Tame Animals are Horſes, Oxen, Buffaloes, Goats, Hogs, and Sheep; and the Rein Deer may alſo be reckon'd among that Species, being broke to drawing and other Uſes, as our Horſes are. Their Wild Beaſts are Bears, Foxes, Elks, Deer, Wolves, with Wild Sheep and Wild Horſes. Captain *Perry* tells us, that the Fleſh of their Wild Sheep, when dreſt, is tender, and much preferable to our *Engliſh* Mutton. The Wild Horſe-Skin is a thick, warm Furr, much uſed to line the Covers of their Sledges. There are alſo Martens, Sables, Ermins, and Hares; one Sort of which is white in the Winter, and in the Summer the common Colour of *Engliſh* Hares, or rather greyiſh. They have ſome Furs ſo valuable, that a late Traveller reports, that he ſaw a Gown made of Sables, of the deepeſt black, valued at above a thouſand Pounds, which the late Czar made a Preſent of to the Grand Seignior.

Wild Beaſts. The Bears, Wolves, and other Wild Beaſts, are not ſo ravenous as in moſt other Places where they abound; it being ſcarce ever heard in *Moſcovy* that any Man was attack'd and hurt by a Wild Beaſt, they always rather inclining to avoid a Man, as Hares and other Wild Beaſts do in *England*; or if thoſe more voracious Wild Beaſts, as Bears, &c. do fall upon a Man, it is commonly the Effect of exceſſive Hunger, or his approaching their young Cubs, or ſome ſuch Provocation.

Bees. They have vaſt Plenty of a Sort of Wild Bees in the Woods, which makes the Country abound with Honey and Wax; by which Means Mead, or Quaz, becomes a common Sort of a Liquor among them, and their Candles are commonly made of Wax; not but that, for all their Plenty of Wax, and Cheapneſs of Candles, the common People will commoly light one End of a long Fir Splinter, and putting the other End in their Mouth, carry their Light before them to execute any common Buſineſs of the Houſe; and ſo lighting one after another, as long as Occaſion requires.

There are but few Serpents, Scorpions, or other poiſonous Inſects in this Country; but Gnats, Muskettoes, and other troubleſome ſtinging Flies, abound, both in the Houſes and Roads, in the Summer-time. Here is abundance of excellent Fiſh; amongſt which is the *Bolluga*, a Fiſh about eight or ten Foot long, deem'd by ſome preferable to Sturgeon; and the Roes of it as good, or better, to make Cavier of. There is plenty of Salmon, red or white; alſo Carp, Perch, Tench, &c. Fiſh.

Fowl. They have great Plenty of Fowls; and Hawks, particularly Falcons, abound here. The Woods and Gardens about *Moſcow* abound with Singing Birds; which being very ſcarce in the Woods

about

about *Petersburg*, the Czar employ'd People about *Moſcow* to catch Numbers of them, to the Value of ſix or ſeven hundred Pounds; which being brought to *Petersburg* and let fly, they took Shelter in the Woods, and multiplied conſiderably; but ſtill retain that natural Inſtinct to fly more to the Southward in Winter-time; as do alſo the Wild Geeſe, Ducks, Snipes, Swans, and other Water Fowls; as alſo Fieldfares, Thruſhes, Woodcocks, and other Land Fowls; which, doubtleſs, is a natural Reaſon why theſe are ſo plenty with us in the Winter-time, without that abſurd Notion, advanced in ſome Books, where it is aſſerted that, becauſe it is too far for our Swallows, and other Summer Birds of Paſſage, to fly to between the Tropicks for the ſake of warmer Weather, they fly into the Moon. They muſt have dull Notions of Geography and Aſtronomy, who know no better than to think that the Diſtance of the Moon from the Earth, is leſs than one Eighth of the Earth's Circumference, as muſt be the Caſe, if the Paſſage into the Moon be eaſier than from *England* to within ſeven Degrees of the Equinoctial, which is not above two thouſand ſeven hundred Miles: And if that Diſtance be incredible, much more that of flying into the Moon, which, by the Computation of ſome Aſtronomers, is above two hundred thouſand Miles. But when People have Notions to advance, contrary to the Rules of Reaſon, Philoſophy, or Probability, we ſee what Abſurdities they will have recourſe to, to ſupport them, and impoſe upon Peoples Belief.

There are ſome Copper Mines in *Ruſſia*, eſpecially near *Caſan*. There are alſo Iron Mines and Works near *Moſcow* and *Veroneſe*, as alſo near *Onega Lake*; where they make both Guns and Mortars, and alſo all Manner of Small Arms. It is ſaid alſo that they have diſcover'd a Sort of a Gold Sand in ſome of the Rivers that run into the *Caſpian Sea*, and that they can refine it, and ſeparate the Ore from the Droſs. They have Brimſtone alſo, and Salt-Petre, and make moſt of the Gun-Powder they expend.

Captain *Perry* gives us the following Account of the Air and Seaſons in this Part of the World, and of his Opinion concerning them: He ſays, the Czar was of Opinion that his Country join'd to *America*, and was peopled from thence, when there was not ſuch Quantities of Ice, and the Cold more moderate than now. *Thus far Captain* Perry: But I muſt own I muſt ſuſpend my Belief of this Opinion, if we conſider that the Scene of the firſt Creation was in *Aſia*, and that therefore, by ſome Means or other, *America* muſt conſequently be peopled from thence at firſt; [*See Chap.* VI. *of the Hiſtory of* Japan, *Page* 56] and as *Moſcovy*, and all the Czar's Dominions, are upon the ſame Continent with that where the firſt Creation was, it is very reaſonable to think that, as the World grew more populous, the Inhabitants would gradually ſpread and diſperſe themſelves, almoſt all over the ſame continued Tract of Land, before they would, in thoſe infant Ages, attempt new Diſcoveries: And if we do admit of Communication by Land between *Moſcovy* and *America*, and conſider, as above, that the firſt Creation was in *Aſia*, it is much more probable that *America* was peopled by Way of *Moſcovy*, and from thence, than that *Moſcovy* could be peopled from *America*: For if we allow the Communication between *Aſia* and *America* by Land, the Probability of which is aſſerted in Chap. VI. of the Hiſtory of *Japan*, above-mention'd; and if we ſhould likewiſe allow, what is yet a Diſpute, that there is an uninterrupted Communication by Land between *North America* and *Moſcovy*, by which the Inhabitants might by degrees ſpread themſelves into *Moſcovy*; I ſay, if theſe two diſputable Points were granted, yet then the Inhabitants muſt at this rate have diſpers'd themſelves quite round the Globe, or through all the three hundred and ſixty Degrees of Longitude; whereas, if we allow the Creation to be near the Head of the *Perſian Gulph* [*See Chap.* IV. *of the Hiſtory of* Arabia, *Page* 227.] they had not above twenty or thirty Degrees of Latitude to ſpread, which is not above twelve or eighteen hundred Miles Northerly. And being all upon the ſolid Continent, it ſeems to me ſo very probable that *Moſcovy* was peopled this Way, that it is little leſs than abſurd to think otherwiſe, or to ſuppoſe them to have ſpread gradually twelve thouſand Miles through diſputable (though not improbable) Paſſages, as from *Aſia* to *America*, and from thence to *Moſcovy*, and all that by Land, when a Paſſage of only as many hundred Miles, upon one continued known Continent, will anſwer the Caſe with much more probability.

But to continue Captain *Perry*'s Opinion: He tells us, That when the extreme Northern Parts were firſt inhabited, thoſe Countries were more temperate, and not ſo cold as now; and that at the Beginning of the World there was no Ice upon the Surface of the Water; and that, even under the Pole, the Froſt occaſion'd by the Sun's Abſence for ſix Months the firſt Year could not produce Ice of any conſiderable thickneſs; but as the Froſt, during the Sun's Abſence in the ſix Winter Months, created more Ice than his Preſence in the ſix Summer Months could diſſolve, it will follow that there muſt be a conſtant yearly Increaſe of the Ice, by which it has amounted to what it is now, as being the Work of ſo many thouſand Years: And he thinks that as theſe Mountains of Ice increaſe the Cold reflected from it, ſo thoſe Northern Climates increaſes in Proportion; and that the Cold continues to be very perceptible a-ſhore, and ſo far from the Sea, as on the Road near *Moſcow*, as long as the Iſlands of Ice are floating about in the *White Sea*, though that happens in *June* or *July*, the beſt of Summer.

Again, in *September* or *October*, when the Winter is coming on, and the Surface of the Earth is juſt frozen, and the Snows fallen to the Southward of *Archangel*, but the Ice not gather'd in the *White Sea*, the Seaſons ſeem to be metamorphos'd, or tranſpos'd; the Southerly Winds being coldeſt, as coming from the Country where the Snow was fallen, and the Northerly Winds the warmeſt, as coming from the Sea before the Ice is contracted in it. The Truth of this is prov'd by our own Experience; *viz.* That the Wind blowing from the Sea where there is no Ice is generally more warm than Wind that comes off the Main Continent; witneſs, the Weſt and South-Weſt Winds, coming out the Sea to *England*, being warmer than the Eaſt and North-Eaſt Winds, which blow from the Main Continent of *Europe*; and the Froſts being earlier, later, and more ſevere, in *Holland* than in *England*, though in the ſame Latitude. And to mention no more, the Froſt, at the ſame Seaſon, is much more ſevere in ſome Parts of the *Baltick* than in thoſe Parts of *England* or *Scotland* in the ſame Latitude: The Reaſon of the difference is, becauſe the Iſland of *Great Britain* is ſurrounded by the Sea, (where no Ice is) and the *Baltick* is ſurrounded by the Main Continent, where the Snow falling, is continued by the Coldneſs of the Winter Air, and from thence proceeds the cold froſty Air which affects the *Baltick*.

CHAP. VIII.

Treats of the Trade, Shipping, Navigation, Manufacture, Coins, Weights, and Measures of Moscovy.

IN order to give a proper Account of the Trade and Navigation of *Moscovy*, it will be necessary first to give an Abstract of the History of the several Steps taken towards its Improvement: We are therefore first to observe, that *Russia* having formerly no Communication by Water but by the *White Sea* and the *Frozen Ocean*, then unfrequented, it had then but very little, if any, foreign Trade; and as for the Furs, and other Merchandize which their Country afforded, they were sent by Land to *Livonia*, and from thence shipp'd off at *Narva*, *Revel*, *Pernaw*, or *Riga*. But in the Year 1552 a Company of *English* Merchants were incorporated, by the Name of, *The Merchants Adventurers for the Discovery of Lands*, &c. *unknown*. They fitted out three Ships, *viz.* the *Bona Esperanza*, the Admiral, of a hundred and twenty Tuns, commanded by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*; the *Bon Adventura*, Captain *Richard Chancellor*, one hundred and sixty Tuns; and the *Bona Confidentia*, Captain *Duforth*, of ninety Tuns: They weigh'd from *Deptford May* 11, 1553; agreeing that, in Case of Separation, their Rendezvous should be at *Ward-huys*, on the Coast of *Lapland*, to the Eastward of the *North Cape*. And accordingly Captain *Chancellor*, losing the other two, made the best of his Way thither, and waited a Week in expectation of them; but they not appearing in that Time, he stood to the Eastward, and discover'd the Bay of *St. Nicholas*, as he call'd it, but now call'd the *White Sea*. This Country he found to be *Moscovy*, and that *John Basilowitz* was then Sovereign of it. The Governor, as well as the Inhabitants, receiv'd the Captain with great Humanity, furnish'd them with Provision, and express'd a Desire to trade with them; but the Governor would not propose any Terms upon this Subject till the Great Duke was acquainted with it; and therefore dispatch'd an Express to *Moscow*, with Intelligence that the *English* had found the *White Sea* and *Archangel*, and were willing to establish a Trade there. Whereupon the Great Duke (the same as Czar, or Emperor, is now) sent Post Sledges, and other Conveniences, to attend Captain *Chancellor* to *Moscow*; who, upon his Arrival there, presented the Great Duke with a general Letter from King *Edward* VI. directed, *To all Kings, Princes, Rulers, Judges, and Governors of the Earth*, Importing, *That whereas God had implanted in all Men a Desire of Friendship and Intercourse with one another, and that Justice and Humanity required us to treat those kindly, who, through great Dangers, brought their Merchandize from distant Countries, to supply what might be wanting in the Places they visited, and take off the Product of their Country in Return; concluding with an earnest Desire that a joint Correspondence, and reciprocal Favours, and common Humanity, might be establish'd and continued.* Dated, at *London*, *May* 14, in the Year of the Creation 5515, and in the seventh Year of the Reign of King *Edward* the Sixth.

THE Great Duke, upon Sight of this Letter, invited the Captain and his People to a magnificent Entertainment, and express'd his Desire of establishing a Trade and Intercourse between the two Nations, and dismiss'd Captain *Chancellor* with a Letter to King *Edward* VI. where, after having acquainted him what Kingdoms and Provinces he was Sovereign of, he informed him of Captain *Chancellor*'s Arrival in the twentieth Year of his Reign, &c. and to this Letter was affix'd a Translation of it into *High Dutch*.

CAPTAIN *Chancellor* return'd to *England* in the Year 1554, when he found King *Edward* dead, and Queen *Mary* upon the Throne. In the Year following the Company sent Captain *Chancellor*, in the *Bon Adventura*, again, with Agents and Factors to settle a Trade with *Russia*, and Letters from King *Philip* and Queen *Mary*, to empower them to treat with the *Russians* upon that Subject. The two Agents that were join'd in Commission with Captain *Chancellor* were *George Killingsworth* and *Richard Gray*. The Great Duke receiv'd them with all possible Marks of Respect. Here Mr. *Killingsworth* was inform'd, that the two other Ships, that came out with them on the first Voyage, under the Command of Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, were found near *Kegon*, upon the Coast of *Lapland*, by some Fishermen; but all the Men, which were seventy Persons, were dead: So he caus'd the Ships to be brought into the *White Sea*, and sav'd all their Effects that were good for any Thing. It appear'd by Journals found aboard, that they had beat about upon the Coast of *Greenland* and elsewhere, to the Northward, and arrived at this Place *September* 18, 1553; that they had sent Parties of Men into the Country to seek for Inhabitants but found none; and that most of the Company were alive in *January* following; and, lastly, that they perish'd with Cold rather than Hunger, because their Journals mention'd great Plenty of Deer, Bears, Foxes, and other Wild Beasts in that Country; and neither had they spent all the Provision that they had on Board, which proves they did not die for want of Food.

THE Great Duke's Commissaries, and our *English* Agents above-mention'd, coming to Terms about Trade, the Great Duke granted the *English* the following Privileges.

I. THAT the said Company, their Agents and Factors, with their Ships, Goods, and Merchandizes, might enter into any of the Cities or Territories of *Russia*, by Sea, Land, or fresh Water, to traffick or depart at their Pleasure, without any Restraint, Toll, Custom, or Acknowledgment whatsoever upon their Ships, Goods, or Effects, or Licence to enter or depart.

II. THAT the *English* Subjects should be solely under the Government of the *English* Agents, and such Discipline as they should agree to appoint among themselves, and the *Russians* not to intermeddle in that Affair, except to deliver up to the *English* such Delinquents as should fly from Justice, and attempt to take shelter among them.

WHEN Captain *Chancellor* return'd from *Russia* with this Grant of the Great Duke, the Company obtain'd a new Patent from their Majesties, King *Philip* and Queen *Mary*, whereby *Sebastian Cabot*, who was Governor of this new Company, was now confirm'd in that Office for Life, and the Lord Treasurer, the Lord Steward of the Houshold, and most of the great Officers of State, as well as Aldermen of *London*, were concern'd in it, as Members. They were incorporated by the Name

Name of, *The Governor, Conſuls, Aſſiſtants, Fellowſhip, and Commonalty of Merchants Adventurers, to Lands, Territories,* &c. *unknown and unfrequented.*

By the ſaid Letters-Patent full Power was given to the Company, and their Agents, to ſail to all Ports, Dominions, Territories, and Places unknown before their late Adventure, under the Royal Banner, Standard, Flags, and Enſigns; and to erect and fix them there, or on any Lands and Shores, Cities, Towns, or Iſlands of any infidel Princes; and to ſubdue and poſſeſs their Dominions, as well as all other Lands hereafter to be diſcovered, and to reduce them under the Power of the Crown of *England*; and all other People were thereby prohibited from reſorting to or trafficking with *Ruſſia*, or any other Place which the ſaid Company ſhould hereafter diſcover, without Licence from the ſaid Company.

In the Year 1556 the Company ſent out two Ships to *Ruſſia*, double mann'd, with Orders (beſides what they brought home with them in the Way of Trade) to bring home Sir *Hugh Willoughby*'s two Ships. Captain *Chancellor* having on board *Oſeph Napea*, who was coming in Quality of Ambaſſador from the Great Duke to the Court of *England*, they ſet ſail from *Archangel July* 20, 1556, in Company with the *Philip and Mary*, and Sir *Hugh Willoughby*'s two Ships; one of which, in their Paſſage home, founder'd upon the Coaſt of *Norway*, and the other, with ſeveral *Ruſſian* Merchants aboard, coming for *England*, was ſeparated from the reſt and never heard of more; the Loſs of both being ſuppoſed to be occaſion'd by their being decay'd, by lying ſo long like Wrecks upon the Coaſt of *Lapland*. Captain *Chancellor*, in the *Bon Adventua*, was alſo drove from his Anchors, upon the Coaſt of *Scotland*, the Ship ſplit upon the Rocks, and Captain *Chancellor*, with ſeveral Men, both *Engliſh* and *Ruſſians*, loſt; but the Ambaſſador, with ſome of the Company, were ſav'd, and getting a-ſhore in *Scotland*, were treated there but very indifferently. But the News thereof coming to Court, Queen *Mary* diſpatch'd a Meſſage to the Regent in *Scotland*, to order that the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador ſhould be kindly uſed, and that what Effects of his were recover'd from the Wreck might be reſtor'd to him. Which being done, he came to *London*, and made a magnificent Publick Entry, and was met by above three hundred Horſe a little Way out of Town, and at *Smithfield-Bars* by my Lord Mayor and Aldermen, on Horſeback; and was conducted from thence in great State, riding between the Lord Mayor and Lord *Montague*, through the City, to his Apartment in *Fenchurch-Street*. Thus did the *Engliſh* find out and ſettle a Trade with *Moſcovy*, which they enjoy'd the ſole Benefit of for near thirty Years; which the *Dutch* perceiving, they, according to their wonted Induſtry in reaping the Fruit of other People's Labours, put in for a Share of the Benefit, when *England* had been at the Charge of making the Diſcovery, and eſtabliſhing the Trade; and now may be ſaid to reap as much Advantage by the *Ruſſia* Trade as any Nation in *Europe*.

Three Ships loſt and 3 home.

When *Oſeph Napea*, above-mention'd, had finiſh'd his Embaſſy in *England*, and was order'd home, Captain *Anthony Jenkinſon* carried him over, in the Year 1557; and was order'd to proceed to find a Way, if poſſible, from *Moſcovy* to the *Eaſt Indies*, and to open a Trade with *Perſia*. And to facilitate this Deſign, the *Engliſh* Company, to ingratiate themſelves with the *Ruſſian* Emperor, whoſe Permiſſion and Aſſiſtance too was neceſſary to carry on the Deſign, ſent ſeveral Mechanicks and Artiſts over with Captain *Jenkinſon*, to enter themſelves in the *Ruſſian* Emperor's Service; which were ſo very acceptable in his un-poliſh'd Country, that Captain *Jenkinſon* found it not difficult to obtain the Great Duke's recommendatory Letter to all Kings and Princes through whoſe Dominion he propos'd to paſs.

Captain *Jenkinſon* ſet ſail from *Moſcow*, *April* 23, 1558, and arriv'd at *Aſtracan*, which Kingdom and City *John Baſilowitz* had conquer'd about ſix Years before: Here they embark'd on the ſixth of *Auguſt*, and fell down the River *Wolga*, into the *Caſpian Sea*, ſteering Eaſterly along the Shore to the Mouth of the River *Jaick*, and ſo to *Manguſlave* and *Sellyzure* on the ſame Coaſt; and from thence, by the Caravan, to *Bochara*, on the River *Oxus*, one of the chief Cities of *Ubeck Tartary*, and a great Mart for the Merchants of *India*, *China*, and *Moſcovy*: But he met with little Encouragement, only ſelling a little Cloth, and to but ſmall Advantage, the *Perſians* having it at a better Hand by way of *Turkey*; and, as the Prince of *Samarcand*, or *Ubeck Tartary*, was about to lay Siege to *Bochara*, he was forced to quit the Place, and make the beſt of his Way back to *Moſcow*.

There were afterwards ſome other Attempts made to contrive a Trade with *Perſia*; but the Danger of being plunder'd by the *Coſſacks* in the *Caſpian Sea*, and, at laſt, the Eſtabliſhment of the *Engliſh Eaſt India* Company, who traded to *India* and *Perſia* by the *Cape of Good Hope*, quite deſtroy'd all Thoughts of our trading with *Perſia* by way of *Moſcovy*, till the Reign of the late Czar; and even then, although he attempted, for the Love of his new-projected *Petersburg*, to allow the *Engliſh Ruſſia* Company to tranſport their Goods that way, through *Moſcovy* into *Perſia*, yet, this not being conſiſtent with the Patent of the *Turkey*, and alſo of the *Eaſt India*, Company, and contrary to the Act of Navigation, which requires all foreign Commodities to be ſhipp'd at the uſual Ports, that Deſign was dropp'd alſo.

What Improvements the *Ruſſians* have made in their Shipping is moſtly in or ſince the Time of the late Czar. For when he open'd a Paſſage into the *Black Sea* by his taking of *Aſoph*, about the Year 1695, he began to form a Deſign of building a Royal Navy there, with which he might even force a Trade with *Turkey*, and penetrate at laſt, through *Boſphorus* and the *Helleſpont*, into the *Mediterranean*, in Caſe the Grand Seignior ſhould diſpute his Paſſage or his Trade there. And with this View he ſent to *Holland*, *Italy*, and *Venice*, for Workmen to build Ships and Galleys; compelling each Nobleman, whoſe Riches conſiſt in the Number of their Slaves as well as in their Lands, to build a Man of War at his own Charge; the inferior Gentlemen, Tradeſmen, and Clergy alſo, and even the Monaſteries too, contributing in Proportion to the building of this Navy, or Fleet; inſomuch, that in three Years Time he had built forty Men of War, ten Store-Ships and Bomb-Veſſels, twenty Galleys, and thirty half Galleys, and other Veſſels in proportion.

In the mean Time himſelf, with ſome of his Nobility, travell'd to get Experience in maritime and martial Affairs, but eſpecially in Ship-Building, which he apply'd himſelf very cloſely to at *Amſterdam*, being exited thereto by the Inſinuations of the *Dutch*, who would have made him believe that no Nation in the World was ſo expert in Ship-Building as they; but coming from thence to *England*, he ſoon found the Difference between the neat Models of the *Engliſh* built Ships, and the grouty Buttocks of the *Dutch* ones, and, repenting that he had loſt ſo much Time in *Holland*, apply'd himſelf in earneſt to Ship-Building when he came to *England*; and the better to promote his Deſign, he fix'd himſelf at Mr. *Evelyn*'s Houſe at *Deptford*, where the Back-Door open'd

into

into the King's Yard, where the Builders shew'd him their Bends of Moulds to form a Ship of any Rate or Burthen proposed.

But, besides the Ship Carpenters, he also visited the most ingenious Mechanicks, as Watch-makers, Smiths, Gun-smiths, &c. and when he went home, he took with him a Master-Builder, and several Carpenters, and other Tradesmen and Mechanicks, into his own Country.

When he return'd into *Moscovy*, he made a Draught of a Man of War, of fifty Guns, with his own Hands, and set her upon the Stocks at *Veronitz*, and caus'd himself to be declar'd Master-Builder. And at Sea he advanc'd gradually, from the inferior to the more exalted Stations; and, although it was in his Power to have assum'd what Place or Authority he pleas'd, yet he would not take upon him any particular Dignity or Command aboard of his own Men of War, but what he first duly qualified himself for, that his Subjects might not pretend to do otherwise.

Product. *Russia* produces Pitch, Tar, Hemp, Planks, and Fir-Timber for Masts; also Pot-ash, *Russia* Leather, Furs, Linnen, Iron, Copper, Seal-skins, Train-Oil, Rozin, Cavier, Tallow, Wax, and two Sorts of Ising-glass; one for Windows, which is transparent, and like our ordinary Glass, and will bend like a thin Lanthorn-Horn; the other is such as we use in fining down Liquors, and they also use it in making Glue.

Manufacture. They have also set up the Silk, Woollen, and Linnen Manufactures, which last turns to the best Account. Their Woollen they had mostly from *England*, but now from *Prussia*. They make and export vast Quantities of a coarse narrow Sort of plain Linnen and Diaper, and also of Linnen and Hempen Yarn, raw or unwrought, to most Parts of *Europe*.

But what is a great Discouragement to their Trade is, the Government monopolizes the principal Commodities of their own Growth; buying up the best, and not only putting an extravagant Value upon them, but prohibiting the Subjects from selling any of theirs, till the Czar's are dispos'd of; and when foreign Merchandizes arrive, no Subject must purchase any till the Czar has had the Refusal, or as much of them as he likes, by which Means the Czar in effect makes his own Price. If a Man has acquir'd any Substance by his Industry or Ingenuity, it is look'd upon as the Property of his Governors; and therefore let a Man's Circumstances be what they will, he must either be thought poor, or be plunder'd of what he is worth; which is a great Means to destroy Ingenuity and promote Sloth and Idleness; for even an industrious Man had rather be idle than suffer another Man to enjoy all the Fruits of his Labour.

Coins. Between twenty and thirty Years ago all the Silver Coin they had were Copeaks, Half-Copeaks, and Quarter-Copeaks; which might be reckon'd like our Pence, Halfpence, and Farthings, of full Weight and Fineness, in proportion to the purest Coins of other Countries. But the Czar being straitened for Money, in the Year 1700, called in and melted down the old Money; and, besides a deeper Allay of Copper than the former Standard, he made the Copeaks, &c. but about three Fifths of the Weight of the old ones; by which means he nearly, if not quite, doubled the Quantity of Money that was in the Empire before, as to its current Value; but the intrinsick Value of the Silver being thus diminish'd by the deeper Allay, those that could afford it kept up the old Coin, till the Czar fetch'd it out, by offering an Advantage in exchange to those who would return old Money for new.

He then coin'd large Money, as Grecvnaes, or ten Copeak Pieces; as also Rubles, which are ten Grecvnaes each, or a hundred Copeaks; as also five and three Copeak Pieces, and Copper Half-Copeaks. But now a Dollar, which was worth but fifty-five Copeaks, will, by increasing the Allay, and diminishing the Weight, make a Ruble, or a hundred Copeaks very near double, as observ'd above.

It may be observ'd of Rubles, Grecvnaes, and Copeaks, (which is the most common Way of reckoning and paying their Money, as by Pounds, Shillings, and Pence with us) that ten of the lower Denomination makes always one of the next higher, as, ten Copeaks is one Grecvna, and ten Grecvnaes one Ruble; or, according to the common Phrase, that, in adding any Sum together, they stop at every ten; whereas we stop at twelve in Pence, and twenty in Shillings. It will follow therefore, that to add any Number of Articles of Rubles, Grecvnaes, and Copeaks together, the whole Result taken as one Sum, without any regard to the different Denominations, shews the Number of Copeaks in the whole; but cutting off one Figure to the Right Hand will be odd Copeaks, and another cut off from the Right Hand of those that are left are odd Grecvnaes, and the rest, of how many Places soever it consists, is Rubles, as those that please to try will see. Thus if to 876 Rubles, 7 Grecvnaes, and 8 Copeaks we add 129 Rubles, 9 Grecvnaes, and 5 Copeaks, the first Number, taken all together, is 87678, and the Second is 12995; which added together, as if they were Numbers of one Denomination, amount to 100673 Copeaks; but the two last Figures being singly separated, as above directed, it will be 1006, 7, 3, or 1006 Rubles, 7 Grecvnaes, and 3 Copeaks. And if all our Denominations of Coins, Weights, and Measures, were thus decimally sub-divided, it would save an infinite Trouble in casting up large Sums or Quantities.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Arms of Russia, *the Imperial Stile, the Prerogative of the Prince, the Constitution of the Government, the Degrees of Nobility, and the Forces and Revenues of the Empire.*

Arms. THE Arms of *Russia* are *Or*, an Eagle display'd *Sable*, bearing on its Breast a Shield *Gules*, charged with a Cavalier *Argent*, St. *George* (or St. *Michael*) fighting with a Dragon; and over the Heads of the Eagle are three Crowns, *viz.* that of *Moscow*, *Casan*, and *Astracan*. The same spread Eagle, &c. is upon the large Money of *Russia*, as the Rubles, Half-

Half-Rubles, &c. as alſo in their Flags, or Enſigns.

THE Emperors of *Moſcovy* formerly aſſum'd to themſelves a Multiplicity of pompous Titles, inſomuch that there was ſcarce a Province in their Dominions but what they had ſome Title from, beſides that general one of Czar, Great Duke, or Emperor of *Moſcovy*; as, King of *Aſtracan*, Lord of *Pleskow*, Great Duke of *Smolensko*, &c. But whatever Titles they may have aſſum'd, the *Ruſſian* Sovereigns were never allow'd the Title of Emperor by the other Powers of *Europe*, till the late Czar procured it for himſelf and Succeſſors; and as for his other Titles, he grew ſo weary of the ſuperfluous Repetition of them all, that he order'd that, in Petitions, &c. it ſhould only be directed, *To his moſt highly gracious Majeſty*, &c. and that the Petitioner, inſtead of ſubſcribing himſelf *Slave*, as uſual, ſhould for the future only write *Subject*.

THE *Ruſſians* are ſuppoſed to be of the Extraction of the *Scythians*, or *Tartars*; for they were at firſt a wandring People like them, and rambled from Place to Place like the wild *Arabs*, where they could find Forage for their Flocks and Herds. The City of *Kiow* was the firſt Seat of the *Ruſſian Monarchy*; and continued ſo, till their Sovereign *Wolodimer* built a City, calling it by his own Name, and remov'd it thither, about the Year 1000. He civiliz'd the People of the Country and introduc'd Chriſtianity. Many of the *Tartars* Herds, about the ſame Time, leaving that rambling Life, join'd with the *Ruſſians*, and fix'd themſelves in that Country now call'd *Moſcovy*; being govern'd at that Time by their reſpective Princes, as the ſeven Kingdoms of *England* were during the *Saxon* Heptarchy; but the *Ruſſians* being the moſt powerful, ſubdu'd all the reſt, and, like *Egbert*, King of *Mercia*, brought all the reſt of theſe petty Powers under Subjection.

WHEN the *Tartars* about *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, found the *Ruſſians* grew ſo powerful, they united and made Head againſt them, and, in the Year 1237, reduc'd the *Ruſſians*, and brought them under Tribute for near two hundred Years. And in the Reign of *Daniel Caletta* the Seat of the Monarchy was remov'd to *Moſcow*, and he firſt took upon him the Title of Great Duke. It is ſuppoſed by ſome that the *Moſchi*, a People among the *Scythian Nomades*, gave Name to this City and Province, though ſome think it takes its Name from the River *Moſcowa*, which runs through the Country, and upon which the City of *Moſcow* is built. Indeed I could incline to believe that the People above-mention'd, call'd the *Moſchi*, were the Original of the Name, and that from them it deſcended both to the Country, the River, and the City.

John Baſilowitz was the firſt who united the ſeveral Dominions and Territories of the *Ruſſians*; it is ſuppoſed he began his Reign about the Year 1450; he expell'd the *Tartar* Garriſon from the Caſtle at *Moſcow*, and added the Dukedoms of *Novogrod* and *Tuwer* to his Dommions; as his Son did thoſe of *Pleskow* and *Smolensko* afterwards. And he again was ſucceeded by *John*, or *Ivan Baſilowitz*, *Anno* 1540: He conquer'd the Kingdoms of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, and was the firſt *Ruſſian* Sovereign of the vaſt Country of *Siberia*, from whence chiefly the *Ruſſians* have their Furs. This is that *John Baſilowitz* with whom Captain *Chancellor* and Captain *Jenkinſon* treated about ſettling a Trade to *Ruſſia*, as mention'd in the foregoing Chapter. This *John Baſilowitz* reign'd forty-four Years, *viz.* from 1540 to 1584; in which Time he obtain'd the Name of Tyrant by Way of Diſtinction, for his bloody maſſacreing the tributary Sovereigns in his Neighbourhood, and annexing their Dominions to his own.

THE Succeſſion to the Crown of *Ruſſia* has been deem'd hereditary, and in the Male Line; but both have been diſpens'd with in the Caſe of the of the late Empreſs, ſhe being the firſt Female that ever ſate upon the Throne of *Moſcovy*. (Except the Princeſs *Sophia*, the late Czar's Siſter, might be ſaid to ſit upon the Throne when the Adminiſtration was in her Hands, during his Minority.) And though the Succeſſion is generally reckon'd hereditary, yet it is in the Power of the reigning Monarch to ſet aſide the next Succeſſor, and name a more remote Relation to ſucceed.

IN order to introduce an Account of the late Czar and Czarina of *Moſcovy*, and more eſpecially of him, who has made his Name ſo famous throughout all the Known World, it may not be amiſs to give a brief Abſtract of the Succeſſion of the Great Dukes, Czars, or Emperors of *Ruſſia*, as far as Hiſtory furniſhes us with an authentick Account of them, beginning with

Great Dukes of *Moſcovy*.

Wolodimer: he liv'd in the tenth Century, and died *Anno* 1015, and was ſucceeded by his Son,

Wolodimer II. who was alſo called *Jariſlaw*: He built a City and call'd it by his own Name. He was ſucceeded by his Son,

Wolodimer III. And after him reigned

Vitzevoldus; of whom little is recorded, only he was ſucceeded by

George, who was murther'd by *Battus*, a *Tartarian* Prince, in the Year 1237; and by that Means *Jariſlaw*, the Brother of *George*, was advanc'd to the Throne, on Condition that he would become tributary to the *Tartars*; and when he died he was ſucceeded by his Son,

Alexander, and he by

Daniel; who remov'd the Imperial Seat to *Moſcow*; and dying, he was ſucceeded by his Son,

Ivan, or *John*; this *John* was ſucceeded by his Son,

John; after whoſe Deceaſe

Demetrius Ivanowitz mounted the Throne; he obtain'd ſeveral Victories over the *Tartars*, but loſt his Life in a Battle with them; and after him reign'd

Baſil Demetriowitz: He drove the *Tartars* out of *Ruſſia*, and conquer'd *Bulgar*; but, by the Inſtigation of his Wife, ſet aſide his Son from the Succeſſion, and left the Crown to his Brother,

George; who at his Death left the Crown to his diſinherited Nephew, whoſe Name was

John Baſilowitz Golzden: He began his Reign about the Year 1450; he firſt took upon him the Title of Emperor, and united the tributary Dukedoms under one Head; but he diſ-inherited his eldeſt Son, and ſettled the Crown upon his Son by a ſecond Wife, whoſe Name was

Baſil Ivanowitz: He began to reign *Anno* 1492, but dying, was ſucceeded by his Son,

John Baſilowitz, ſirnamed the Tyrant: He began his Reign *Anno* 1540, and reign'd till the Year 1584, at which Time he was ſucceeded by his Son,

Fedor, or *Theodore*. He married the Siſter of his Brother-in-Law, *Boris Fedorwitz Gadinow*; but *Boris* murder'd both him and his Brother *Demetrius*, and uſurp'd the Throne. But he had but a ſhort Enjoyment of it, till a certain Monk, named *Griska Veropia*, perſonated *Demetrius*, tho' murder'd, and getting Intereſt and Aſſiſtance among the *Poles*, made himſelf Maſter of ſeveral Places of Note in *Moſcovy*. Whereupon the Uſurper, *Boris*, died with Grief; and, notwithſtanding that the Nobility proclaim'd *Fedor Boriſſowitz*, the Son of *Boris*, yet the Uſurper, *Griska*, perſiſted in his Reſolution, and enter'd *Moſcow* in Triumph, and, having ſtrangled young *Fedor* and his

his Mother was crown'd Emperor. But he having married the Daughter of a *Poliſh* Palatine, and promis'd to introduce the *Roman* Catholick Religion, and to prefer thoſe *Poles* who had been aſſiſting to his Advancement, gave ſuch a Diſguſt to the *Ruſſians*, that, not long after his Coronation, while he was ſolemnizing his Wedding with the *Poliſh* Princeſs, the *Ruſſians* fell upon his Guards, fought their Way to his Apartments in the Caſtle, and murder'd him; and then

Zuski, one in the Conſpiracy, and allied to the former Royal Family, aſcended the Throne; but in a ſhort Time, another counterfeit *Demetrius* aroſe and depoſed *Zuski*.

Demetrius, the better to eſtabliſh himſelf, ſhav'd *Zuski*'s Head and thruſt him into a Monaſtery. However, the Impoſtor, *Demetrius*, was ſoon diſcover'd and degraded, and the *Ruſſian* Nobility choſe

Uladiſlaus, Son of the King of *Poland*, who then mounted the Throne; but the *Ruſſians* enter'd into a Conſpiracy to drive the *Poles* out of *Moſcovy*, which the *Poliſh* General being apprized of, he ſet fire to the City of *Moſcow*, and fell upon the *Moſcovites* before they were ready to receive him, by which Advantage above two hundred thouſand of the *Moſcovites* periſh'd by the Flames and by the Sword, and almoſt all the whole City was reduc'd to Aſhes; and the General, having amaſs'd a prodigious Quantity of Treaſure, which he had plunder'd the *Ruſſians* of, march'd off to *Poland*, and left the *Ruſſians* to ſhift for themſelves.

Michael Federowitz, of the Race of *John Baſilowitz*, and Son of the then Patriarch, was then elected Sovereign by the *Ruſſians*, *Anno* 1613. From him the preſent Royal Family of *Ruſſia* deſcended.

Alexis Michaelowitz ſucceeded *Anno* 1645, and after him his Son,

Feodore, or *Theodore Alexowitz*, *Anno* 1675; but he dying without Iſſue in the Year 1682, left the Crown, as ſome ſay, to his two Brothers, *viz.* *John* and *Peter*, which latter was *Peter*, the late Czar of *Moſcovy*, who was but half Brother to *John*; but ſome ſay, that *Theodore*, being ſenſible of the Incapacity of *John* for Goverment, left it entirely to *Peter*. However, the Princeſs *Sophia*, being of the whole Blood to both *Theodore* and *John*, having form'd a private Deſign of mounting the Throne herſelf, procur'd *John* to be declared Joint-Emperor with *Peter*, perhaps that their ſeparate Ambition to rival and excel each other in Power might weaken them both, and render her Acceſs the eaſier; and, in order to accompliſh this Deſign, ſhe, by degrees, drew the *Ruſſian* Guards, conſiſting of twenty or thirty thouſand Men, to her Party, as alſo the Prime Miniſter, Prince *Gallitzin*, who was, by the Czar *Peter*, charg'd with being in the Plot. Whereupon *Peter* retired to the ſtrong Monaſtery, or Fortreſs, of *Troitza*, about a Day's Journey to the Northward of *Moſcow*: Hither he ſummon'd the Nobility and Guards, *Anno* 1689, declaring to them that he had narrowly eſcap'd the Hands of the Conſpirators; and his Report meeting with Credit among them, he try'd ſome of them by the moſt exquiſite Tortures, and brought them to confeſs that there was a Plot form'd to murder him, his Wife, his Mother, and all his near Relations, and that his Siſter, *Sophia*, and the Prime Miniſter, *Gallitzin*, were at the Bottom of it. Hereupon he ſhut up his Siſter, *Sophia*, in a Monaſtery, and baniſh'd *Gallitzin* and his Family into *Siberia*, and ſeveral of the Guards, that were charg'd with being in the Conſpiracy, he tortur'd and put to death. Their eaſy Submiſſion to their reſpective Puniſhments would ſeem, to an impartial Eye, to be a tacit Proof of their Guilt

And now being come as low as the late Czar, ſo famous in his Life-time, and ſince in Hiſtory, for his heroic Atchievements, by which he has made himſelf as great a Prince, in many Reſpects, as ever appear'd in the World, it would render this Hiſtory imperfect if we did not give a more particular Account of him than of the reſt, as to his Parentage, and the ſeveral reſolute and undaunted Steps which he took to raiſe himſelf to that Pitch of Grandeur at home, and make himſelf ſo formidable to his Enemies, when he thought fit to approach them abroad.

The late Czar, *Peter Alexowitz*, was the Son of the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz*, who dy'd *February* 8, 1675-6, and of *Natalia Kiribowna Nariskin*, his ſecond Wife. He married the Lady *Ortokeſia Federowna*, the Daughter of *Boyer Fedor Abramowitz Lapuchin*; but was afterwards ſeparated from her, and cohabited with *Katharina Alexiowna*: Whenever he married her, it was not declar'd till *Anno* 1711. He had by the firſt Venter the Prince *Alexis Petrowitz*, born in 1690, but he dy'd in *Anno* 1718, under a Sentence pronounc'd by his Father, the late Czar, in a great Council; being charg'd with a Conſpiracy to depoſe his ſaid Father, and afterwards flying into foreign Countries to avoid the Puniſhment that he deſerv'd; but the Prince, though under Sentence, dy'd before it was put in execution; and ſome think that the Czar's deferring the Execution of the Sentence was the Effect of his Indulgence, and that he never intended that his Son ſhould die by it.

The Czarowiz, *Peter Alexowitz*, married the Princeſs *Charlotte Chriſtina Sophia*, Daughter of *Lewes Rodolphus*, Duke of *Brunſwick Wolfenbuttle*, and Siſter to the preſent Empreſs of *Germany*. She died *Anno* 1715, leaving Iſſue the Princeſs *Natalia*, born *July* 14, 1714; and Prince *Alexowitz*, the Czarowitz, born *October* 23, 1715. The late Czar had Iſſue by his laſt Wife Princeſs *Mary*, born *March* 20, 1713, and married to the Duke of *Holſtein Dec.* 5, 1724; the Princeſs *Anna Margaretta*, born *Sept.* 19, 1714; Prince *Peter*, born *Nov.* 8, 1715, who the Czar declar'd his Heir, but he dy'd *May* 6, 1719; Prince *Paul*, born *Jan.* 13, 1717, but he dy'd the ſame Day; he had alſo the Princeſs *Natalia*, born *Aug.* 31, 1718.

The late Czar reign'd jointly with his Brother *John* till the Year 1696, when *John* dy'd, and left Iſſue the Princeſs *Catharine*, married to *Charles Leopold*, Duke of *Mecklenburg Schwerin*, *April* 19, 1716; the Princeſs *Anne*, married to *Frederick William*, Duke of *Courland*, but he dy'd and left her a Widow the Year following; he had alſo the Princeſs *Prefovia*.

The late Czar, in the Year 1695, finding the *Turks* engag'd in a War with the *Germans*, *Poles*, and *Venetians*, he thought that a good Opportunity to attack the *Turk* on the other Side; and raiſing an Army of eighty or ninety thouſand Men, he laid Siege to *Aſoph*, upon the River *Don*, near the *Black Sea*, but he was repuls'd with Loſs, and forc'd to raiſe the Siege, after four Months lying before the Place. However, next Year he not only recruited his Army, but alſo prepared a Fleet of ſmall Veſſels and Galleys to cruiſe in the *Black Sea*, to prevent the *Turks* from conveying any Relief to the Town, which had hindred his Succeſs the Year before; and thus prepared, he made a ſecond Attack and carry'd the Town, in the Year 1696. And it is obſerv'd that his Naval Force being of ſuch Uſe to him now, he thought it might be ſo in his other intended Expeditions; which is ſuppoſed to be his chief Inducement to travel, and ſend his young Noblemen and Gentlemen abroad to improve in Ship-building, and other mechanical Performances, as above related

In his Return home from *Holland* and *England*, he went by the Way of *Vienna*; but, during his stay there, he receiv'd Advice that a Conspiracy was on Foot to declare his Throne vacant, by reason of his long Absence; but the Rebels were defeated at his Return, and all Things were quiet; and therefore he went to work to regulate his Revenues, reform the Civil Government, establish Trade, but chiefly to discipline his Army, and build Men of War, and all according to the Model he had seen in his Travels.

In the Year 1700 he made a Truce with the Grand Seignior for twenty-five Years; and then, finding all Things easy from that Quarter, he declar'd War against *Charles* XII. then King of *Sweden*; but made an unfortunate Beginning; for, at the Battle of *Narva*, he lost all his Artillery, and more than half of his Army; but in the Year 1702, he gain'd a Victory over the *Swedes* at *Stagnitz*, in *Livonia*, and took *Wolmer*, *Marienburg*, *Dorpt*, and *Nottebarg*. He took the City of *Narva* in the Year 1704; and in the Year 1705 he sent an Army into *Lithuania*, in favour of his Ally, *Augustus*, then King of *Poland*, but was defeated by the *Swedish* General. His Campaigns of 1706 and 1707 were all disadvantageous; but in 1709 he defeated the King of *Sweden* at *Pultowa*, and cut to pieces or made Prisoners most of the *Swedish* Troops, only the King, with a thousand or fifteen hundred Horse, escaped over the *Boristhenes*, to *Bender*, in the *Turkish* Dominions, of which see more in *Chap.* II. *of the History of* Turkey *in* Europe, *Page* 278. In 1710 the Czar made a triumphant Entry into *Moscow*, and took *Riga*, and almost all *Livonia*. In 1711 the *Turks* broke Truce with the *Russians*, whereupon the Czar march'd as far as the Banks of *Pruth*; but there finding himself destitute of Provisions, and having lost above half of his Army, by the Sword, Famine and other Hardships, they were attack'd by the *Turks*, and had probably suffer'd very much, if the Czarina had not made a large Present to the Grand Vizier, by which means he suffer'd the Czar's Army to march off undisturb'd; but with this Condition, that he should surrender *Asoph*, and all his other Acquisitions in the *Black Sea*, or near the Mouths of the Rivers *Don* or *Boristhenes*; which he being oblig'd to do, it spoil'd all his Projects on that Side.

Loss of Asoph

Having thus escap'd the *Turks*, his next Expedition was to *Swedish Pomerania*, which he made himself Master of in the Year 1713; and in 1714 his Fleet, under the Command of Admiral *Apraxin*, beat the *Swedes* in the Gulph of *Finland*. In the Year 1715 he establish'd the Marine Academy at *Petersburg*. And in 1716, the Patriarch of *Moscowy* dying, he assum'd the Place, and declar'd himself Head of the Church, seizing the Revenues of several of the Monasteries, and devoting them to his own Use, much like King *Henry* the Eighth of *England*; but, however, he deputed the Archbishop of *Rezan* to execute some Part of the Patriarchal Office. In the Year 1717 he visited *Paris*, and the Royal Academy of Sciences there. In the Year 1718 he was taken up with the Trial of the Czarowitz, his Son. And in 1719 he was preparing to make a Descent upon *Sweden*; but he then receiv'd Advice that *Charles* XII. King of *Sweden* was dead, and succeeded by his Sister, *Ulrica Eleonora*, with whom he soon commenc'd a War, burning several Cities, and destroying their Copper-works, &c. In the Year 1721 a Peace was concluded between *Russia* and *Sweden*, in which the Czar was declar'd Father of his Country, and Emperor of all the *Russia's*. In the Year 1722 and 1723 the Czar, taking the Avantage of the Civil Wars in *Persia* easily made himself Master of the Provinces of *Gilan*, *Mazanderan*, and some of the best Provinces in *Persia*, situate on the South-West Side of the *Caspian Sea*; and several Princes of *Georgia* and *Circassia* threw themselves also under his Protection.

In the Year 1724 he caused his Consort, the Empress *Catharina*, to be crown'd, and caused the States, both Civil and Ecclesiastical, to swear Allegiance to her; and, as if he had fore-seen his Death, he departed this Life the Eighth of *February* following, in the fifty-third Year of his Age, leaving his Consort, the then Empress, to succeed. The Czar dies.

Immediately after his Death she was not only proclaim'd, but the Senate and all the great Officers, Civil and Military, renew'd their Oath to her that they had taken when she was crown'd and declar'd Joint-Empress with her Husband; and although she was a Foreigner, and of an Extract much inferior to the Dignity of a Crown, yet they all submitted to her unanimously, nor have we heard of any Insurrection or Conspiracy form'd against her while she was sole Empress of *Russia*.

Her Behaviour in the Time of her Husband, the late Czar, did very much endear her to her Subjects. She was originally a Native of *Marienburg* in *Livonia*; her first Husband was a *Swedish* Lieutenant at best; (some say but a Serjeant or Corporal) but when the Czar took *Marienburg*, about the Year 1702, he (by what powerful Fancy or other Motive induced is uncertain) took her from her said Husband on their Wedding Day, and kept her for several Years before they were known to be married. She was agreeably tall and fat, with black Hair and Complexion. She attended the Czar both in the Fleet and in the Field, with vast Courage and Conduct, and was serviceable to him in several Enterprizes; but especially when he was surrounded by the *Turkish* Army on the Banks of the *Pruth*, where she artfully found out the weak Side of the Grand Vizier, and seeing him of a covetous Disposition, she softened him with Presents to that Degree, that he not only suffer'd the Czar and his Army to escape, but supply'd them with Provisions too.

When she dy'd, she was succeeded by Prince *Peter Alexowitz*, who was born *Oct.* 23. 1715. He was Grandson to the late Czar, as being the Son of Prince *Alexis Petrowitz*, who died when under Sentence of Death, as above.

When the Czar *Peter Alexowitz* died, he was succeeded by the present Czarina, or Empress of *Moscovy*, who at the writing hereof, is besieging and bombarding *Dantzick*, to prevent King *Stanislaus*'s Re-accession to the Throne of *Poland*, and in favour of *Augustus*, Elector of *Saxony*. But that Affair being yet depending, we shall give a further Account of her Life and Actions, as well as of the History of *Poland*, in some of our succeeding Numbers, when the Succession of the Crown of *Poland* is determin'd.

The Nobility of *Russia* are the Dukes, or Sovereigns, of their respective Principalities, or the Posterity of such; and when the Duke of *Moscowy* (which we now call the Czar) had united several of those Principalities or Dukedoms into one under himself, as Supreme, he call'd himself, by way of Distinction, the *Great Duke*; they had also Boyers, or antient Nobility, and Vayvodes, or Governors of Provinces; but these Honours are never conferr'd upon any of late, the Czar having created Princes, Counts, Margraves, &c. after the Manner of *Germany*; but the Honours, as well as the Estates, are equally distributed among their Male Posterity, which keeps them much upon a Level, the youngest being as rich and honourable as the eldest; and when even great Estates are equally divided in numerous Families, and these again sub-divided, &c. they dwindle away Nobility

away to little or nothing; and their Nobility may rather be said to proceed from Preferments at Court, than from Honours and Estates, descending from one Generation to another.

Senate. THERE are Boards, or Councils, for several Branches of Business; as the Navy, the Treasury, the Army, Trade, the Mines, &c. The Senate is compos'd of eight or ten of the principal Nobility; these preside over the Boards. And altho' the Legislative Authority is solely in the Sovereign, yet he calls the Nobility to advise with them upon any Affairs of Importance; as was the Case when the late Czarowitz was brought to his Trial, when the Field-Officers of the Army, and the Commanders of the Fleet, were called in to hear the Process.

Forces. WHEN the State hath Occasion to raise new Troops, or recruit the old, the Senate sends Orders to the Governors of their respective Provinces to levy a certain Number of Men, according to the Extent of their Jurisdictions, or as the Exigency may require; and by this Means they can raise above twenty thousand Men in a Year; and, when that is not sufficient, they draw every fourth or fifth Servant out of the Noblemens Families, to serve either in the Troops or by Sea.

WHEN any publick Work is to be done, as building Fortifications, digging Canals, making Rivers navigable, or the like, the Artificers and Labourers are summon'd in, in Numbers proportionable to the Undertaking, and, if they are summon'd, they must not dispute it. And being come together, they are employ'd, and furnish'd with Wages and Subsistence for six Months, and then they are dismiss'd, and their Places supply'd by others. The Government is at very little Charge in maintaining either the Army or Workmen; for every Farm in the Province where they quarter, sends in Corn, Oatmeal, and other Things, in proportion to the Numbers quarter'd upon them.

THE *Strelitzes*, or Guards, amounted to thirty or forty thousand Men: But the Czar had a Mind to have an Army of his own modelling and disciplining, and this he did gradually and unperceiv'd, as if it had been only for his Diversion; for he thought if his numerous Guards should apprehend that he was aiming at such an Alteration, it would create a Jealousy in them, and they would probably oppose it; he therefore began at first with a Company of only fifty Men, whom he cloath'd and exercised after the *German* Manner, by the Assistance of some foreign Officers he entertain'd in his Service; and, to draw others into his Measures, he acted in his little Army himself, first as a private Soldier, then a Drummer, then a Corporal, then a Serjeant, &c. till at last he prefer'd himself to be a Captain, and then he appear'd at their Head, and exercised them himself. The Guards, apprehending nothing but that he did it for his Diversion, were highly delighted with the Actions of this Mock-Army; which by degrees increas'd till it grew into a Batallion, and afterwards into several Regiments, and thence, gradually increasing, they became ten thousand strong, and were call'd the *Preobanski* Guards, and were so well disciplined, that they became a Match for the *Strelitzes*, though the latter were much superior in Number. Besides these, the *Moscovites* have now near a hundred thousand regular Troops, mostly commanded either by Officers invited into the late Czar's Service from abroad, or chose out of his Nursery of *Preobanski* Guards.

Artillery. BEFORE the late Czar's Time the *Russians* had little Notion of the Use of Artillery, or the carrying on a Siege. But the late Czar, in his Travels, improv'd himself in the Knowledge of that; and at his Return, he establish'd proper Officers, as Gunners and Engineers belonging to his Artillery.

Cossack. BESIDES the regular Troops, his Army is compos'd of *Cossacks*, *Calmucks*, and other *Tartars*. The *Cossacks* inhabit *Ukrain*, between the Rivers *Don* and *Boristhenes*; which was formerly subject to *Poland*, next to the *Turk*, and now to the *Moscovite*; but may be rather said to be protected than govern'd by the *Moscovite*, for their Surrender was voluntarily, with Conditions on both Sides, *viz.* That they should pay no Taxes; that they shall be govern'd by their own Laws and Magistrates; and also that they should be at Liberty to brew and make Brandy, Mead, &c. without paying any Excise; and that, in Lieu of those Privileges, they should bring sixty thousand Horse into the Field whenever the Czar required. So that they were rather a Reserve against an Emergency than a standing Army.

Calmuck. THE *Calmucks* are also obliged to furnish a certain Number of Troops for the Government, but they are commanded by their own Officers; they are stout and hardy, but want Discipline; but when it comes to their Turn to ravage and plunder, they make miserable Havock, and commit all Manner of Disorders; witness the dreadful Manner in which they treated *Livonia* in the late War.

THEIR Naval Force was inconsiderable, or rather nothing worth mentioning, till after the late Czar's Travels into *England*, *Holland*, &c. for till then they neither had Ships, nor Men that understood the working them; but finding how necessary a Fleet of Men of War was in his Wars with *Turkey* and *Sweden*, and that the Riches and Trade of other Nations bore generally some Proportion to their Number of Shipping, it was this that induc'd him both to travel himself, and to encourage Mathematicians and Artificers in his own Dominions, as has been hinted before; but none of his Country People could excel him in his Proficiency, so that he was really the Head Master-Builder, setting aside the *English* Workmen and Officers that he had in his Docks and Yards.

HAVING now brought the Czar to be a compleat Master-Builder, his first Undertaking of that Kind was to build forty or fifty Men of War, and a great Number of Galleys, which he did a *Veronitz*, upon the River *Don*. The Reason of his building them upon that River, was, because they were intended for an Expedition into the *Black Sea*, after the taking of *Asoph*; but the Reason of his building them so far up the River (for he built them six or seven hundred Miles above *Asoph*) might probably be for the Conveniency of being near his Oaken Timber, which is plenty in the Kingdom of *Casan*, and Places adjacent; however, this Project did not take, for when he was forc'd to surrender *Asoph*, there was no Way left for them to get out to Sea, and they all decay'd and rotted in the River.

Revenue. THE late Czar, in raising Fleets and Armies, building Fortifications, &c. never contracted any Debts, but, which Way soever it was done, always found fresh Supplies to support every Enterprize he went upon, which was done by taxing their Houses and Land, to pay to the War-Office, the Admiralty, &c. The Country People also are tax'd for their Bagnio's, Gardens, Bee-Hives, Ponds, Mills, Fisheries, and indeed all other Possessions, though in this Case, here as in some other Places, the Nobility bear (in proportion) the highest Burthen.

THE annual Income rais'd this Way is, 3111145 Rubles; which, allowing every Ruble to be worth six Shillings and eight Pence, (though they are generally worth more) the whole is one Million,

thirty

thirty-ſeven thouſand, and forty-eight Pounds Sterling, yearly; beſides ſome extraordinary and variable Impoſitions laid upon the Subject upon any extraordinary Emergency.

The Coinage is alſo a good Article in Favour of the Crown; it yields the Czar a Revenue of 200000 Rubles in a Year, which, by the former Computation, is near ſeventy thouſand pound Sterling.

The Revenue of ſtrong Liquors, of which great Plenty is drank in *Ruſſia*, is reckon'd at a Million of Rubles, or, by the former Eſtimate of ſix and eight pence each Ruble, is above three hundred thouſand Pound Sterling.

To this we may add, the Duty upon Potaſh, Iſinglaſs, and other Commodities of their own Product exported, and the Duty of Goods imported, which together is a conſiderable farther Addition to the Revenue.

CHAP. X.

Of the Laws and Puniſhments of the Ruſſians; *alſo of their Language, Learning, Chronology, Religion, Marriages, and Funerals*

Laws. THE Laws of *Moſcovy* are compos'd chiefly of their antient Cuſtoms, which indeed, according to the *Engliſh* Phraſe, *That Cuſtom becomes a Law*, ſeem now to be confirm'd in *Moſcovy*. For the late Czar collecting their Cuſtoms and Practices into a Body, form'd his Laws according to them; and what they could plead Preſcription for had the Law on its Side by Conſequence. But theſe Laws are of little Uſe, becauſe their reſpective Lords have an arbitrary Power to determine Controverſies, and to ſeize Eſtates and Effects, under Pretence of their being for the Government's Uſe.

Criminals. For Criminal Offences the Judge or Governor can inflict Corporal Puniſhment, or Death itſelf if he ſees fit, and there is no Appeal from his Sentence. When the Country is more than ordinarily infeſted with Robbers, the Governor commonly makes Examples of ſome, to deter others from the like Crimes. As to their other Methods of Puniſhment, one Sort is the *Bataog*: Here the Offender is laid flat upon his Face, with his Back bare, and one Perſon ſitting on his Feet, and the other at his Head, with ſmall Sticks, about as large as a Man's little Finger, they beat him till the Perſon who directs the Puniſhment bids them deſiſt; and the greateſt as well as the meaneſt undergo this Puniſhment, in a degree proportionable to their Crime, and ſometimes with ſo much Severity that they die under it; and ſometimes even the Magiſtrates undergo the ſame Puniſhment, if they are guilty of Crimes that deſerve it, and are afterwards continued in their Poſts.

Another Sort of Puniſhment is the *Knout*, which is for petty Offences: It is a thick hard Thong of Leather, faſtened to a Stick, in the form of a Whip, with which the Offender has a Number of Stripes on his bare Back in proportion to the Nature of the Offence.

The Pine is a Puniſhment inflicted for greater Offences: In this Caſe the Criminal's Hands are ty'd behind him, and a great Weight ty'd to his Feet, and in this Condition he is hoiſted up by his Hands, which, by reaſon of the great Weight at his Feet, diſplaces the Joints of his Shoulders, and brings his Arms quite over his Head from behind him; and in this Poſture he hangs till the Executioner gives him the Number of Laſhes determin'd, according to the Crime; and if he denies the Charge, the Strokes are commonly given very leiſurely, that hanging in Torment may extort a Confeſſion from him, as to the Circumſtances of his Fact, his Accomplices, *&c.* and if, after fifteen or twenty Days undergoing this Puniſhment, he is thought to be innocent, all the Satisfaction he has for all his Suffering, is only to have his Bones reduc'd, and himſelf diſcharg'd from all future Puniſhment for that Offence.

Sometimes, for the Murder of a Superior, or a Woman for the Murder of her Husband, they are ſet up to the Neck in the Ground till they die. Once, when I was at *Archangel*, a Gentleman ſhew'd me a Place by the River's Side, where he ſaid he had lately ſeen an old Man, at leaſt one that had a long Beard, that was mangled to death, if I may ſo call it; they firſt cutting off his Hands by the Wriſts, then his Feet by the Ankles, then his Arms by the Elbows, then his Legs by his Knees, then his Arms by his Shoulders, then his Thighs cloſe to his Body, and laſtly his Head, he being till then alive; whereupon a Man took hold of the Head by the Beard, and carried it away; but he that gave me the Relation being an *Engliſhman*, and not Maſter of the *Ruſſian* Language, could not learn what was the Crime he dy'd for.

Language. The *Ruſſian* Language is a Mixture of the *Poliſh* and *Sclavonian*, and is like the *Greek*, with ſome Alteration; they have thirty-eight Letters in all, including double Letters, Dipthongs, Gutterals, Aſpirates, *&c.* Their *Æra*, or the Time they reckon'd from, was the Creation of the World; which great Work they think was finiſh'd the Firſt of *September*, which they obſerve annually as a great Thankſgiving-Day (as ſuppoſing that God created the Earth, with Corn and Fruit and all Things ripe upon it, not conſidering that when it is Harveſt in the Northern Latitudes, it is the Spring of the Year in thoſe on the other Side of the Line) and, in Memory of the Creation, they formerly began their Year on that Day. But the late Czar order'd it to begin the firſt of *January*, and that their Year ſhould bear Date from our Saviour's Incarnation; but they affect the ſame Error as we in *England* do, in accounting by the *Old Stile*, though both they and we know the *New Stile*, or *Gregorian* Account, to be the trueſt, and ours differs eleven Days from it. I muſt own I cannot give any Reaſon why we, and the *Ruſſians*, ſhould perſiſt in an Account of Time which we both know to be ſo erroneous, except it is becauſe the new Account is call'd the *Roman* Account, and we are ſo prejudic'd againſt the Errors of *Rome*, that we do not care to imitate them in Matters wherein we know them to be in the Right.

Learning. Learning, as well as other Improvements, had made but a very inconſiderable Progreſs in *Ruſſia*, till the late Czar undertook his Travels, about the Year 1698, to *England*, *Holland*, &c. and when he went from hence he obtain'd leave of

King *William* to take ſome young Mathematicians out of Chriſt's Hoſpital, and other proper Perſons, to teach Mathematics, Languages, *&c.* in *Ruſſia*. He erected and endow'd a large School at *Moſco*, where Arithmetick, Navigation, and Aſtronomy were taught, and Eclipſes of the Luminaries, and Motions of the Planets calculated, *&c.* He alſo ordered Globes, Teleſcopes, and other mathematical Inſtruments to be carried over to *Ruſſia* from hence; and ſo much he promoted Learning, that he made an Edict, that whoever could not read and write, ſhould be diſqualify'd from enjoying his Father's Eſtate, if it exceeded five hundred Rubles a Year; and that no Man ſhould be a Prieſt till he firſt underſtood *Latin*: He alſo ſet up Printing-houſes, and had ſome of the moſt valuable Books tranſlated from other Languagues, and printed in *Moſcovy*. He had alſo Colleges, Libraries, Paintings, Statuary, Medals, Antiquities, and other Curioſities, at *Moſcow* and *Petersburgh*.

Religion. THE *Ruſſians* have a Tradition, that St. *Andrew* firſt preached the Goſpel in *Moſcovy*; but others ſay, that Chriſtianity was not introduc'd and profeſs'd there till the Reign of the Great Duke *Wolodimer*, who marying *Baſilius*, Daughter to the *Grecian* Emperor, was, by her means, converted to the Chriſtian Religion about the tenth Century. They had a Patriarch, after the manner of the *Greek* Church, till the late Czar's Reign, who was inveſted with the Power of Life and Death in Caſes Eccleſiaſtical, and might in ſome meaſure be ſaid to ſhare with the Czar in the Government; but whether the late Czar thought his Power too great for a Subject, or his Profits and Privileges too valuable, he, upon the Death of the laſt Patriarch, took the Office, and with it the Revenue, and annex'd it to himſelf, only ſubſtituting the Archbiſhop of *Rezan* to execute ſuch part of the Patriarchal Function as he himſelf could not attend upon by Reaſon of his Affairs in the Civil Government.

THEY have Monaſteries, and Convents of Monks and Nuns, and large Poſſeſſions annex'd to them; but the late Czar ſeiz'd their Lands and Riches to maintain his Army; and tho' he return'd ſome of them again, yet he annex'd a great Part of their Lands to his own Demeſnes, by which means he enrich'd himſelf, and ſuppreſs'd, or at leaſt diſcourag'd, the Monaſteries: And becauſe ſo many young People devoted to a Monaſtick Life hinder'd the Increaſe of his Subjects, he order'd that no Man, under fifty Years of Age, ſhould be admitted into a Religious Houſe.

THEY pay a great Veneration to the Pictures of their Saints, and lay ſuch a Streſs upon their Preſence, that if a Man, poſſeſs'd of one of thoſe Pictures, happens to thrive, or meet with good Succeſs, it is common for others to apply to him for that proſperous Saint, and rather than fail will advance a little Money for the uſe of it.

THEY are not ſo ſuperſtitious as formerly: They will admit Foreigners to their religious Worſhip, and ſuffer them to be buried in their Church-yards, which they never permitted till the time of the late Czar.

Marriages. THEIR Marriages and Funeral Rites are the ſame as in other *Greek* Churches, of which we have ſpoken before; only they do not now keep the Womem up as in other Places, nor do the Men make ſuch blind Bargains in chuſing their Wives, but have free Acceſs to viſit and converſe with them in Courtſhip, as in other parts of *Europe*.

Burials. AT their Burials they do not affect that immoderate howling and roaring as formerly, but content themſelves with that manner of Mourning which is the Effect of real Sorrow.

FORTY pound weight of *Ruſſia*, which is about thirty ſix Pound *Engliſh*, is call'd a *Pood*; the *Arſheen*, by which they meaſure Linen, *&c.* is twenty eight Inches.

THEIR Method of weighing Pieces of Butcher's Meat, or other Parcels, of eight, ten, fifteen Pound weight, or the like, is with a Beam like a Steel-yard, with a Pound, or ſome known ſmall Weight, fix'd at one End of it, and a Hook at the other to hang the thing upon that is to be weigh'd; only inſtead of removing the Weight backwards or forwards, as we do the Weight on our Steel-yard, theirs is ſo contriv'd, that the Axle-tree or Staple, upon which it plays, is mov'd backwards and forwards; the heavier the thing is that is to be weigh'd, the nearer to it the Axle-tree is remov'd, till they poiſe equally, and then the Place where the Axle-tree or Staple plays upon is the Weight of the thing, being diſtinguiſh'd by Figures for that Purpoſe.

Although Dantzick *is not in* Ruſſia, *or* Moſcovy, *yet, as the Czarina's Forces are now lying before that Place, and the Siege of it is a great Subject of Diſcourſe, as well as the Place is the Scene of Action, we preſume the following Deſcription of* Dantzick *will be a very proper Subject wherewith to conclude this Chapter.*

A Deſcription of the City of *Dantzick*. DANTZICK lies in the Territory of *Pomerellia*, or Palatinate of *Dantzick*, in that Part of *Pruſſia* which goes by the Name of *Royal*, Weſt of *Ducal Pruſſia*; which laſt was erected into a Kingdom *Anno* 1701, in the Perſon of *Frederick* Elector of *Brandenburg*. That Change, and the Continuance ſtill of their old Names make a ſort of a Paradox.

Dantzick is bounded on the Eaſt by the River *Weichſel*, or *Viſtula*; on the South with *Proper Poland*; on the North with the *Baltick Sea*, and on the Weſt with *Pomerania*.

Dantzick lies 24 Miles N. W. from *Marienburg*, 32 almoſt W. from *Elbing*, 76 N. of *Thorn*, 120 N. from *Gneſna*, 150 N. W. from *Warſaw*, 260 N. of *Cracow*, 200 almoſt W. from *Grodno*, 260 W. and by S. from *Wilna*, and 80 Miles W. and by S. from *Koningsberg*, 260 S. W. from *Riga*, 460 *ditto* from *Narva*, 540 *ditto* from *Petersburg*, 220 N. E. from *Breſlaw*, 280 *ditto* from *Dreſden*, 300 *ditto* from *Prague*, and 440 almoſt N. of *Vienna*. Latitude 54 Deg. 13 Min. Longitude 40 Deg. 42. Min.

THIS City, till the Year 1170, conſiſted only of ſome Fiſhermens Cottages, and was antiently a Part of *Pomerania*, till ſeparated from it by *Meſlevin* the ſecond Duke thereof, who dying without Male Iſſue, left it to *Primiſlaus* King of the *Poles*, who *Anno* 1295 erected it into a City, and annexed it to the Crown of *Poland*. It has ſuffer'd many Revolutions. About the 1100 the *Danes* poſſeſs'd it, afterwards the *Polanders* gained it: In 1305, the *Teutonick* Knights were Maſters of it: In 1454, *Caſimir* fourth King of *Poland* regained it, and granted great Privileges to the Citizens; who afterwards, in Defence of the *Augsbourg*, or *Lutheran*, Confeſſion, ſided with *Maximilian* of *Auſtria* againſt the *Poles*; which provoked King *Stephen Bathori* to beſiege them in 1577; but, by the Mediation of other Princes, they were reſtored to their Liberties in 1597. And in 1632, the City was made a Member of the State, and admitted to a Vote on the Election of a King.

IT is a free Republick, under the Protection of *Poland*, one of the chief old *Hans Towns*, and has a Juriſdiction of above forty Miles in Circumference. Of late it has often been moleſted by the neighbouring

bouring Powers, for exacting large Contributions; and though in 1706, the Queen of *England*, King of *Prussia*, and States of *Holland*, made a League to protect it, yet the Czar, *Peter* I. took it in his Head, without Provocation, to call on them twice for large Sums; a grievous Weight upon the Inhabitants, and what they durst not refuse; so that neither their *Polish* Protector, nor grand triple Alliance, did them any Service. And at this very Time, they are closely besieged by General *Leslie* and *Munich*, the Czarina's Generals, in Conjunction with the *Poles* and *Saxons* of the Party of King *Augustus* III. for their espousing the *French* Interest in the Person of *Stanislaus*, and harbouring of him; which 'tis believed they must abandon, and capitulate to the Confederates Proposals, or else undergo the Ruin of their City, which is so apparently threatned: So though it is called a free Republick, it is too weak for its own Support; and those whom it chuses for Protectors, are unwilling to defend it.

It is situated by the River *Wexel*, or *Weissell*, in Latin *Vistula*, which rises from the *Carpatian Mountains*, that separate *Poland* from *Hungary*, sixty Miles beyond *Cracow*, making a winding Course of about 440 Miles, watering in its Passage *Cracow*, *Warsaw*, and *Thorn*, and at last, passing by *Dantzick*, discharges itself into the Gulph or Bay of that Place, having first divided itself into several Branches, and made the Islands called the *Werder*; the larger Branch passes by *Marienburg*, a City about twenty-four Miles South-East, and falls into the great Lake called *Frisch Haff*: The Branch which goes to *Dantzick* is one of the least of them, which is the Occasion that great Ships have not Depth of Water to come loaded into the Harbour. Between the Mouth of the River and the Port, there is a Fort which is called the *Light House*, where there is a Light every Night, which is a Direction afar off to all Ships making to the Harbour.

The Harbour at the Town receives Ships of above fifty Lasts: Those of great Burthen deliver and receive their Cargoes at the *Weissell Munde*, or Entrance of the *Weissell*; and often, when the Weather is calm, in *Dantzick* Road, which is eight to fifteen Fathom deep.

Anno 1720, in the Middle of the *Weissell*, a new Wood Battery was built in the Water, fortified round with Cannon, opposite to an even Canal, cut an *English* Mile and a half, which, for quick Dispatch, leads to the *Munde* by *Tair Water*, a Village on the left Side: Here is a large cover'd Boat, the same as your *Holland Tracht Sluyts*, drawn by a single Horse, which plies to and fro all Day, that its coming and returning is almost constant to a Minute, which in fine Weather draws abundance of Company thither, as well for Pleasure as Business; having publick Houses prettily situated on the Sides for Accommodation and Diversions. This Canal on the East, and the Course of the River *Weissell* on the West, makes an Island which is called *Holm*.

The *Munde* is a little fortified Castle, commanding the whole Navigation of the Gulph and Entrance into the River and Harbour, where all Ships send a Person on Shore thither to make a Report. It is about three Miles distant from the Town, and six Leagues from the *Heel*, a small running Point of Land, which forms a Bay. The Sea all over the *Baltick* never flows nor ebbs. It is also watered by two small Brooks, the *Radaun* and *Moldau*, taking their Springs about sixteen Miles to the South; the *Radaun* is not above four or five Yards broad, has a constant clear Current, supplies the Town with fresh Water, and serves to fill up the Trenches; besides in its way driving several Mills upon it, one of which for Corn may vie with any in *Europe*, having eighteen Stones going at a Time, which brings the King of *Poland* every Hour throughout the Year a golden Ducat, besides the Profit to the Proprietors; so that the yearly Revenue of this single Mill to the King is worth above 4000 *l.* Sterling a Ducat being in Value eight *Polish* Guilders, or ten Shillings.

On the West and by South are a Range of high sandy Hills, whereon are built the Villages called *Hagelsburg*, *Bischoffburg*, and *Stoltzenburg*, which signify *Hail*, *Bishop*, and *Proud Hills*: But the latter, *Stoltzeburg*, is the Habitation of the most abandoned Whores in Nature; though it commands an entire View over the whole Town and Suburbs, with the Harbour, Ships, Road, and even to the Sea. And to the South is a delightful Prospect of the adjacent Country: Those Hills are look'd upon to be highly prejudicial for the Town's Defence in Case of an Attack by an Enemy; but *Bishop Hill*, and the Eminences opposite to the Town, are lately fortified with Redoubts, *&c.* and constant Watch kept upon them. And if they would build Fortresses upon them, to have a Communication one with another, the Town, in Case of a Siege, would be render'd thereby almost seemingly impregnable. Whether the Magistrates will be at the Charge of making such Improvements and Fortresses for their Security, Time will show.

The Town of *Dantzick*, within the Walls, is divided into three Cities, called, *Voorstadt*, *Reichstadt*, and *Alstadt*, which are the *Fore City*, *Emperor's City*, and *Old City*.

It was first wall'd round by the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order in 1343, whose Master, *Conrad Wallenrodt*, built that Part called the *Reichstadt*, *Anno* 1390; and they were improved after the Irruption which the *Swedes* made into *Poland* in 1655, which two Years after in 1657 obliged them to burn their Suburbs, to prevent their being taken.

In the present Condition they are vastly strong, and high, with many vaulted and cover'd Ways, which are well mounted with Ordnance of several Sizes of Cannon, and contain twenty Bastions, still defended by a broad and deep Trench of Water, handsomely faced with Free-stone at the Sides of the Scarps and Counterscarp.

On the Inside they are so large, that two Coaches can pass a-breast; in several Places beautified with regular Rows of Trees, from whence is a Prospect of the Town, and direct Vista's into the Length of some of the principal Streets.

These Walls inclose the three Cities, which have as many Gates out of them, with Draw-Bridges, and constant Centries, one at each End; that belonging to the *Old City* to the North-East, and the other to the *Fore City* South-East, with the great central Gate Westward, leading from the *Emperor's City*. Its Form is semicircular, and its Extent betwixt two and three Miles in Compass: But then add to this the large Space immediately out of the great Gate, to the Right Hand, as far as to the outer Gate West, the Road to the *Olive*, (which also has a Draw-Bridge and Centry) and to the End of the large Suburbs of *Schotland* Southward, with the Granaries, and that Part of the Suburbs beyond them to the East, called *New Gare*, which at their Entrances are all well guarded and defended with a lesser Rampart; all these included together will make the Circumference take up above eight *English* Miles.

The Granaries of *Dantzick*, for hoarding Corn, are not to be equall'd in all *Europe*; making an entire Town of lofty Buildings, divided into several Streets, and separated from the *Reichstadt* only by a large Draw-Bridge, to the East, called Granaries.

the

the *Green Bridge*. It is encompaſſed with Water, that Boats may load and unload at thoſe Granary Doors, which lie contiguous to them.

The Magazines differ in Bigneſs and Size, few lower than five Stories: The Chambers have for a more eaſy Conveyance, Funnels, or Pipes, to let down the Corn at their Pleaſure from one Chamber into another. It is open all the Day-time for Trade, and the Ground-Rooms are generally large Warehouſes, well ſtocked with all Sorts of valuable Merchandize for Wholeſale. There are two Granaries built by Sir *William Brown*, exceeding the reſt for Magnitude, ſo large as to contain each 2000 Laſts; 60 Scheffels, or Buſhels, making one Laſt. At Evening the Bridges are drawn up, and not a ſingle Perſon is permitted to lodge there; and for the better Security they keep a Breed of Maſtiffs cloſe confin'd all Day, which the Keepers let looſe for a Guard to range about in the Night; which, it is ſaid, are ſo furious in their Natures, as inevitably to fall foul on and deſtroy any Perſon they ſhould meet with, and yet will diſtinguiſh, and be as paſſive to their Feeders as Spaniels. Their beſt Dogs are from our *Engliſh* Breed.

Trade. Its Trade is very conſiderable, receiving the Product of *Poland*, chiefly by the River *Weiſſell*, conſiſting of Corn, Linnen, Pot-aſh, Plank, *&c.* In Return for which, the *Poles* receive what they want of foreign Growth and Manufacture, *viz.* Cloth, Silks, Stuffs, Leather, Sugar, Oils, Lead, Herrings, and all the Spices, which they uſe in very great Quantities to ſeaſon their Fiſh and other Meat. The Wines, Salt, and Brandy, which come from *France* in great abundance, the *Poliſh* Nation conſumes little of, but ſupplies part of *Pruſſia* therewith; for Wine they prefer that of *Hungary*, being well ſupply'd, though at a dear Rate. Brandy they make ſufficient for their own Uſes, and from all kinds of Corn; and the Goodneſs and Variety of ſtrong Waters diſtill'd at *Dantzick*, are not to be equall'd any where; and as to Salt, their Country abounds ſufficiently with it; but the vaſt Quantities of Grain they receive from *Poland*, which abounds therein, being a fertile Plain and champion Country, makes it the greateſt Mart for the Exportation of that Commodity of any Place in *Europe*. Vaſt Fleets of *Holland* Ships come yearly to fetch almoſt all the Corn us'd in *Holland* and *Zealand*. The Medium of their Exports in Corn of all Sorts, annually, is betwixt thirty and forty thouſand Laſts. From the *Weiſſell*, out of a Branch which runs into the *Friſch-Haff*, a great Lake ſixty Miles long, and in ſome eight Miles broad, it has an inland Communication thereby, with *Elbing*, *Pilau*, and *Koningsberg*. Its Nearneſs to the Sea bids a welcome Acceſs to all Foreigners, beſides its conſtant Traffick of ſending and receiving Goods ſeveral hundred Miles up the Country, even as far as *Hamburgh*; ſo that many Neceſſities being ſupplied from hence by their Trade, 'tis not in the leaſt to be admired how the Town is beoome ſo populous, rich and conſiderable, as at preſent it appears; the Inhabitants being computed two hundred thouſand in Number.

The whole Town, as has been obſerv'd, is encompaſſed with the ſame ſtrong Ramparts and Wall, but is divided into three Cities by their reſpective Gates. *Reichſtadt* and *Voorſtadt* lie much upon the ſame Line, but the *Altſtadt*, in its whole Extent, lies beyond the *Reichſtadt* to the North-Weſt; ſo that the utmoſt Length of the City is to be taken from the *Altſtadt Gate* in the Rampart, to the *Green Bridge* which joins the Granaries, and is above an *Engliſh* Mile and a half, though it is not direct, but a little oblique; and the entire Breadth takes up both *Reichſtadt* and *Voorſtadt*, to the Extremities of which are above two Miles.

But the Beauty and Admiration of all, for Magnificence, Regularity, and Trade, belongs to the *Reichſtadt*, which is the opulent City. What is the moſt curious and worthy of Obſervation in it, the Particulars which follow are a faithful and exact Account of:

The whole Length of the *Reichſtadt*, from Weſt to Eaſt, from the handſome inner Gate at the Beginning of the *Lang Gaſs*, to the Granary of the *Green Bridge*, is not half a Mile. Its Breadth, from South to North, contiguous to the *Voorſtadt*, and ſo leading to the Road which goes to the Harbour, is above a Mile: From thence to the Canal, which goes to the Road and the *Munde*, is about another Mile; a Walk exceeding pleaſant, all by the Side of the River, commonly full of Ships of various Nations, to which at the Entrance you muſt ferry over a narrow Paſs upon a little flat Boat or Bottom, without any Sides; and after that, at ſome Diſtance, you go over a floating Bridge, whoſe Water by the Preſſure of the Paſſenger, if you walk heavily and ſlowly, comes over its Surface.

The Houſes are built of Brick and Stone, commonly five, ſix, or more Stories high, with handſome embelliſhed Outſides, having in the Middle an Aſcent of Steps, conducting to the Entrance, with Galleries on each Side, the Fronts are variouſly beautified with Plaiſter, Marble, and Painting, and moſt with Images or Statues on the Top, according to their reſpective Fancies, which is vaſtly ornamental. Their Architecture within, for Contrivance, is none of the beſt, having at firſt Entrance a huge gigantick diſproportionable Room, called the *Salle*, which takes up, to a needleſs Purpoſe, the beſt Part of the Houſe, to the ſpoiling the Proportion of the other Rooms; beſides their Taſte runs not on making handſome Stair-Caſes, or light ſpatious Kitchins, which ſeldom have any Windows in them, ſtruck directly from the Light, but what they receive is only a Reflection from the adjoining, or ſome remoter Room; that moſt of them, beſides their Littleneſs, are forced to burn Candles at Noon-day to dreſs their Victuals; ſo that though their Buildings exceed ours in a very different Manner for external Beauty and Ornament, yet ours for Contrivance, Method, and Conveniency, far out-do theirs. No one is permitted to build the Foundation of his Houſe with the leaſt Incroachment on his Neighbour's, or make any Outſhot in the upper Stories, which contributes to form a delightful Viſta in a charming Evenneſs, and Regularity. On both Sides of the Way are planted Walnut-Trees, which grow not high, but bear plentifully; each Street is ſupply'd with ſeveral publick Wells, prettily covered and painted, with Images on the Top, which afford good Water; there are likewiſe in ſome perpetual running Conduits.

Exchan The Great Court is the daily Exchange of Merchants, held in the open Air. It begins at Eleven, and holds till One; where are a Reſort of many Foreigners, chiefly *Engliſh*, *Scotch*, and *Hollanders*: They are at a Loſs for Room on all Days but *Saturdays*. Here the Butchery or Fleſh Market is kept, and is a very noble and well-provided one; but reduces the Merchants into ſo narrow a Compaſs, as if they were metamorphos'd into ſo many Graziers.

Govern *Dantzick* is divided into three Cities; each has its peculiar *Burgho-Maſter*, or Mayor, a limited *ment.* Number of *Rath-hern*, or Aldermen, with their reſpective *Guildhalls* for Conſultation and Diſpatch of Buſineſs: Theſe with the *Centum-Viri*, or Common-Council of a hundred Burghers, or Citizens, promiſcuouſly elected out of all three,

unake

make together but one Senate and Government. The Common-Council presents the Town's Grievances, maintain their Privileges, and inspect the Conduct of the upper Senators. To these the King of *Poland* nominates a Burgrave to personate him in the Senate, and sign all Sentences of Death, to whom they allow half the Revenue from the Customs, which has been continued ever since the Reign of King *Sigismund Augustus*, the last of the Male Issue of *Jagello*, who begun his Reign in 1548; who for the *Dantzickers* Presumption, in proposing some provoking Conditions to him, before they would suffer his Deputies to enter their City, impos'd and oblig'd them to grant him that Tribute. The Magistrates continue for Life, and determine all criminal Causes without Appeal, and even condemn to Death the Gentlemen of *Poland* themselves, if they commit any Crime within their Jurisdiction deserving capital Punishment; as likewise all Civil Causes, not exceeding a thousand Guilders; which if any Appeal from, to the Tribunal of *Poland*, they are obliged to deposite a hundred Gilders in the Town-House for that Liberty, to prevent the Frequency of them. They, with the Concurrence of the *Centum-viri*, lay all Taxes upon the Inhabitants, coin their Money from a Mint of their own, without Leave or Permission from the Republick of *Poland*; the King's Effigy on one Side, and their Arms, which are three Crowns, on the Reverse. They chuse their own Ministers, for supplying their Churches, which is a general Custom among the *Lutherans*; and are much better serv'd, than where a Right of imposing them by Patrons prevails. Tho' the People of *Dantzick* may, from those Instances, be reckoned a Republick, and a particular Sovereign State, yet to shew their Dependency on *Poland*, they are oblig'd to send to the Diets two Deputies, who never fail to speak in the Name of the Senate of *Dantzick*, and who always are interrupted by the Chancellor, enjoining their Silence, and forbiding them to take that Quality upon them, which nevertheless they are sure to take afterwards in the following Diets, and have their Suffrage therein; they also maintain a Secretary constantly at Court.

Punishments. The capital Executions of the unfortunate Transgressors of their Laws, are Beheading, Breaking on the Wheel, and Hanging; Beheading is the most frequent. To those that are broke on the Wheel they give *Opium*, to bereave them of their Senses, and make them insensible of Pain. The Bodies of those that are sentenced to be hang'd are never cut down, unless beg'd and granted for Anatomizing; and it is a nauseous miserable Spectacle, to behold Corps so suspended, in various Degrees of Putrefaction and Consumption, by the Elements, and Birds of Prey continually gorging upon them. All Persons under Denunciation of Death are allow'd at the Publick Expence, Victuals and Drink of the very best they have a mind to make choice of; but in those Circumstances they are seldom luxurious: And about half way to the Gallows, there is a little Booth built on Purpose, with an Inscription on it, where the Prisoners stop, and have as much Wine given them as they will drink. This Custom is supported in Imitation of the Eastern Practice of giving Wine to alleviate the Sense of an inevitable approaching Destiny; and some have drunk so largely, as to be heartily intoxicated before they were turn'd off.

Its Force. They maintain no more Soldiers in Peace than are sufficient to relieve the Guard-houses, where there is one at every Gate, and a Watch upon the Ramparts; for which no more than about three hundred Men are required. They can easily upon occasion raise upwards of ten thousand, and have had an Army of sixty thousand. In 1655, this City strenuously adher'd to the Interest of *John Casimir*, King of *Poland*, formerly a Jesuit and Cardinal, whom *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden* fell upon, and took *Mussovia*, with all *Poland*, properly so called, and all *Royal Prussia*, except *Dantzick*, which shut up its Gates upon him, and stood by *Casimir* beyond Expectation, when all the World besides had deserted him; so that the Faithfulness of this City, put a Barrier to the *Swedish* Victories, sav'd the Kingdom, and occasion'd five Years after an honourable Conclusion of the War, by the Peace agreed upon at the Monastery of *Oliva*, *Anno* 1660. This King voluntarily resign'd his Kingdom in 1668, after a Reign of twenty Years, and died in 1672 at *Neveres*, a Monastery in *France*.

One of the Burgher Masters, or his immediate Deputy in Person, are oblig'd to go every Night about the Walls in his Coach, attended with a Guard, to see that all the Sentinels are upon Duty, and other Things kept in right Order.

When the King of *Poland* enters any City in his Dominions, the Magistrates always bring him the Keys; and he has Power to make his own Regiment of Guards keep Watch at the Gates. But the Citizens of *Dantzick* alone have the Privilege of guarding their Gates; nay they have a Right to hinder any Forces entring along with the King, and to go the Rounds all Night in the Streets, as long as he stays within their Walls. There are Persons that go about the Streets all the Year round as Night Watches, and constantly give a Signal of the Hour, which resembles the Noise of a Child's Rattle.

Its Religion and Churches. *DANTZICK* was the first Town in *Poland* that shook off the Fetters of Popery in a tumultuous Manner, as tho' they had been seiz'd with a sudden Conviction, superior to a long Course of Reasoning. They begun with deposing the old Common-council Men, who were Papists, created new ones of their own, prophaned the Churches, robbed them of their Ornaments, abolished the Mass, abus'd the Priests and religious Persons, and alter'd all things at their Pleasure. This was about the Year 1525, in the Reign of *Sigismund* I. who subdued *Prussia*, at which time they embraced the *Lutheran* Persuasion.

SIGISMUND durst not oppose this Reformation, because he was afraid of engaging in a War with the *Teutonick* Knights, the Peace which he had made with them being nigh expired; and *Sigismund Augustus* his Successor, having afterwards received the Homage and Oath of Fidelity to himself and the Republick, from *Albert* I. Duke of *Prussia*, confirm'd the People of *Prussia* in their antient Rights and Priveleges, and gave them leave also to make open Profession of *Luther*'s Doctrine, according to the *Augsburgh* Confession. This same *Albert* founded the University of *Konimberg*, *Anno* 1544.

DANTZICK is an University, and has a College in the *Forestadt*, with Professors in all Faculties, and a fine publick Library.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE Kingdom of *SWEDEN.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation, Extent, Air, and Climate of the Kingdom of Sweden; *and of their Mountains, Rivers, Lakes, and Seas; alſo of their reſpective Provinces, and of their chief Towns, Palaces, Publick Buildings,* &c.

Bounds. WHAT is now called *Sweden*, is a part of the antient *Scandinavia*, bounded on the Eaſt by *Moſcovy*; on the South by the *Baltick*; on the Weſt by *Denmark* and *Norway*; and on the North by the *Norwegian Lapland*. It extends from about 56 to 69 Degrees of North Latitude, and from 10 to about 30 Degrees of Longitude Eaſt from *London*; but here we include *Finland*; which tho' belonging to *Sweden* has been conquered by the *Moſcovite*, and has therefore been already deſcrib'd in our Account of the Czar's Dominions in *Moſcovy*, where we refer the Reader to a Deſcription, as being divided into ſeven Parts, of which the Czar has reſtor'd five to the Crown of *Sweden*, reſerving only *Kexholm* and *Carelia*: But if we obſerve that the Czar has alſo the Provinces of *Ingria*, *Eſtonia*, and *Livonia*, Southward of the Gulf of *Finland*, we ſhall find that *Sweden* is now almoſt reduc'd to its antient Bounds.

Mountains. THE moſt remarkable Mountains in *Sweden* are the *Dolfrine* Hills, being a long Train of Hills, which ſeparate *Sweden* from *Norway*, and are almoſt continually cover'd with Snow. There are other ſtony barren Mountains all over the Country, but they add nothing to the Agreeableneſs of the Proſpect, or the Fruitfulneſs of the Country; for the Rivers that run in the Valleys between them, fall with ſuch Rapidity from the Rocks and Precipices, that the Rivers are ſeldom navigable, and therefore not remarkable till they come near the Sea: But as the Rocks frequently obſtruct the Paſſage of thoſe Rivers, they thereby form great Lakes, the chief of which are the *Wenet* and the *Weter*, each of them near an hundred Miles in Length; and to them we may add the *Meller*, on which *Stockholm* ſtands.

THE Seas of *Sweden* are, 1. The *Sound*, which divides *Gothland* and *Schonen* from *Denmark*. 2. The *Baltick*, which divides *Sweden*, *Livonia* and *Germany*. 3. The *Bothnick* Gulf, which ſeparates *Sweden* from *Finland*; and the Gulf of *Finland*, which lies between *Finland* and *Livonia*; but as the preſent Czarina is now poſſeſs'd of *Wyburg*, *Petersburgh*, *Revel* and *Narva*, all that part of the World begins to dwindle into the Name of *Moſcovy*. Monſieur *Mortray* obſerves, that the Water in the *Baltick* is not ſo ſalt as that of the main Ocean, which he imputes to the many freſh Water Rivers that fall into it. One would think the ſame Obſervation might be made, and the ſame Reaſon given with Reſpect to the Mediterranean Sea, when we conſider that the great Rivers the *Don*, the *Danube*, the *Boriſthenes*, &c. which fall into the *Black Sea*, fall from thence into the Mediterranean, together with all the Rivers in *Greece*, *Italy*, &c. and on the other ſide the *Nile*, ſo famous for its annually overflowing its Banks, and conſequently ſending ſuch a Confluence of freſh Water into the Mediterranean, and yet I do not find, but that the Water in that Sea is as ſalt as that in the main Ocean.

Divi- *SWEDEN* contains ſix Parts or Diviſions, 1. *Gothland*, the Southermoſt part adjoining to the *Sound*. 2. *Old Sweden*, adjoining to the North part of *Gothland*. 3. *Swediſh Lapland*, the Northermoſt part of *Sweden*. 4. *Finland*, on the Eaſt ſide of the *Bothnick* Gulf, and North of the Gulf of *Finland*. 5. The *Swediſh* Dominions in *Germany*, of which little now remains except *Stralſund*. 6. The Iſlands of *Sweden*, as *Gothland*, *Oeland*, *Aland*, *Uſedom*, *Rugen* and *Huena*; for the Iſlands of *Oeſel* and *Dago* were reſign'd to *Ruſſia*, with *Livonia* and its Iſlands. The principal Towns of *Gothland* are as follows, 1. *Lunden*, the Metropolis of *Schonen*, in the Latitude of fifty ſix, and about thirty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Copenhagen*: It is an Epiſcopal See, and an Univerſity, but is upon the Decline. 2. *Malmo*, about twelve Miles to the Southward of *Lunden*. 3. *Landſcroon*, about ſixteen Miles North-Weſt from *Lunden*; it is a ſtrong Place, and a good Harbour. 4. *Helſenburg*, or *Elſenburg*, almoſt over againſt *Elſinore*; and on the Eaſt ſide of the *Sound*. 5. *Chriſtianople*, the Capital of *Bleking*, North-Eaſt from *Lunden*. 6. *Carelſcroon*, where the Royal Navy is laid up: It is upon an Iſland, on the Eaſt Coaſt of *Gothland*, and join'd to the Continent by a long Bridge. 7. *Calmar*, a Town of pretty good Trade, to the Northward of *Carelſcroon*, and behind the Iſland of *Oeland*. 8 *Weſterwick*,

Weſterwick, a Sea Port, about fifty Miles to the Northward of *Calmar*. 9. *Halmſtat*, the Capital of *Halland*, a Port about ſixty Miles to the Northward of *Lunden*. 10. *Gottenburg*, the Capital of *Weſt Gothland*, a trading Town, a good Harbour, and well fortify'd; and, being to the Northward of the *Sound*, is open to the *German* Ocean, without paſſing the *Sound*, or paying to the King of *Denmark*. There are ſeveral other Places Capitals of ſmall Provinces, but being of little Note for Trade, or any thing remarkable, I ſhall paſs them by in Silence.

Old Swe-den. *OLD Sweden*, which ſome call *Sweden Proper*, is divided into eleven parts, *viz.* 1. *Upland*. 2. *Sudermania*. 3. *Weſtmania*. 4. *Nericia*. 5. *Geſtricia*. 6. *Helſingia*. 7. *Dolecarlia*. 8. *Medelpadia*. 9. *Jemptia*. 10. *Angermania*. 11. *Weſt Bothnia*.

Stockholm. THE Capital of *Upland* in particular, and *Sweden* in general, is *Stockholm*, in Latitude about fifty nine Degrees North. It ſtands on the Lake *Meller* near the *Baltick* Sea: It is not wall'd or otherwiſe fortified, nor is there much occaſion; for it has a Parcel of troubleſome Iſlands and dangerous Channels on one ſide, which make the Accels to it by Sea very difficult; and to approach it by Land is equally troubleſome, by reaſon of the Lake *Meller*, which ſecures it on the Land Side, and makes it almoſt an Iſland, and where it is not encompaſs'd by Water, the Land is ſo mountainous and rocky, that it is inacceſſible, except by ſome ſmall Paſſes, ſo that a ſmall Force may defend it againſt a numerous Army; but as to the Harbour, it is as ſpacious and ſecure as moſt in *Europe*, and the largeſt Ships may ride cloſe to the Keys; but as there is no regular Tide, and ſo many Winds are required to carry a Ship in or out, and adding to this that it is cloſed up with Ice four or five Months in the Year, an Enemy might deſtroy the whole Coaſt before their Navy could put to Sea, if they were to lie up at *Stockholm*; and this indeed was the Reaſon why *Charles* XI. laid up his Fleet at *Carleſcroon*, which has been the Practice of the *Swedes* ever ſince.

THE Iſland, upon which *Stockholm* ſtands, is about a Mile and a half in Circumference, and the City extends all over the Iſland; and beſides this there are five other adjacent Iſlands, having a Communication with *Stockholm* by Bridges. They are alſo built upon, and reckoned as Parts of *Stockholm*, or rather the Suburbs of it. The Iſland, where the main Body of the City ſtands, is call'd *Stockholm*: Here was the Citadel and the Royal Palace (long ſince burnt down) alſo the Chapel, the Senate Houſe, Chancery, *&c.* In *Riddersholm*, one of the adjacent Iſlands, is a Church call'd the Cloyſter Church, and ſeveral fine Gardens. The Iſland of *Hogslandholm* is moſtly inhabited by Mechanicks. In *Schipsholm* is the Court of Admiralty, the Arſenal, and Magazine for naval Stores. *Ladulugges-ſland* is full of Gardens, Pleaſure-houſes, and Menageries; and here alſo is the King's Park. The South Suburb is on the Continent, and is join'd to the City by a Bridge. Here is the Exchange and Merchants Houſes. The North Suburb is alſo join'd to the City by two Bridges. This is in the Province of *Upland*, as alſo is part of the City; but the reſt of the City, and the South Suburb, is in *Sudermania*, the Bounds, or Parting of the Provinces being diſtinguiſhed by a Stone Pillar, with the Arms of each Province deſcribed upon it; and in the ſame manner are the Bounds of the other Provinces mark'd out.

Churches. THERE are nine Churches in *Stockholm*, of which St. *Nicholas* is the largeſt. Over the Altar of this Church there is a Cabinet of exquiſite Workmanſhip. It is ſet open on *Sundays* and other great Feſtivals: There is in it a Table with five Partitions or Shelves in maſſy Silver, whereon are the following Hiſtories in *Baſſo Relievo*. On the firſt, the Nativity of Chriſt. On the ſecond, his laſt Supper. On the third, his Crucifixion. On the fourth, his Burial; and on the fifth his Reſurrection. And above all is a little Statue, of Silver alſo, about two foot high, which repreſents the Aſcenſion. There are alſo other little Statues of the ſame Height; as *Moſes* with the two Tables, *John Baptiſt*, the four Evangeliſts, all in maſſy Silver and exceeding fine Workmanſhip, with other curious Figures, excellent Paintings, and Plenty of rich Plate, eſpecially one Chalice of beaten Gold, ſo richly embelliſh'd with Jewels, that it is valued at forty thouſand Crowns.

Their Churches and publick Buildings are generally cover'd with Copper, and have very high Spires; and inſtead of Bells they have Chimes, which are ſet to play upon Feſtivals and other Occaſions of rejoicing. The Houſes in the City are chiefly built of Brick, but in the Suburbs generally of Wood, and conſequently ſubject to Fire. *Stockholm* was at firſt but a barren Iſland, inhabited only by a few Fiſhermen; but afterwards a Caſtle was built upon it: Since which, between three and four hundred Years ago, the City was begun to be built, and by degrees it was ſo improv'd, that the Court thought fit to remove thither from *Upſal*, and it is now the Capital, and beſt trading Place of *Sweden*.

Upſal. THE City of *Upſal* is in the middle of a large Plain, and ſituate upon the River *Sala*, in ſixty Degrees North Latitude. It is about forty Miles to the Northward of *Stockholm*, and was once the Capital of *Sweden*. *Upſal* is ſtill an Univerſity, and an Archbiſhop's See, being the only one in any *Lutheran* Country. Some of the beſt Buildings are Brick, and the reſt of Wood. The Cathedral is ſeven hundred and forty foot long, one hundred and forty foot broad, and two hundred and thirty foot high, and cover'd with Copper. There are Marble Tombs of their antient Kings and Queens in ſixteen antient Chapels. The Library was plunder'd from ſome of the beſt Libraries in *Germany*, and was preſented to them by King *Guſtavus*.

SWEDISH Lapland lies to the Northward of *Proper Sweden*, and is divided into five Parts, each Part having the Name *Lapmark* affix'd to it, as *Torne Lapmark*, *Kimi Lapmark*, *Lula Lapmark*, *Pitha Lapmark*, and *Uma Lapmark*; the firſt Name being given them from certain Rivers ſo call'd, which riſe in, or run through, each Province, and fall into the *Bothnick* Gulf. It is remarkable that there is a Town at the Mouth of each River, which bears the Name of the Province, and the River upon which it ſtands.

Uma. *UMA* ſtands on the North Side of the River *Uma*, and is the Reſidence of the Governor of *Weſt Bothnia*. It was twice burnt by the *Muſcovites*, which was eaſily effected, as being moſtly built of Wood, and having no Fortification to defend it againſt an Enemy.

Torne. *TORNE* is a decay'd ruinous Place, as are moſt of the Towns on the Coaſt of the *Bothnick* Gulf, having been deſtroy'd by the *Muſcovites* purely for the ſake of Ruin and Deſtruction, the Country being ſo barren, that it is not worth plundering, or ſcarce worth poſſeſſing. Their Trade is ſalted Salmon, or other Fiſh dry'd without Salt upon the Rocks in *Lapland*. They alſo deal in Skins of Rein Deer and other Animals, which they carry to *Stockholm* for a Market. The Town of *Torne* ſtands upon an Iſland in a River of the ſame Name, about ſix Miles from the Sea. This River affords abundance of Fiſh; for which

Reaſon

Reaſon there are here and there Fiſhermens Houſes upon the Banks of the River for near an hundred Miles from the Town. For Fiſhing is their Trade and chief Suſtenance, the Soil affording little Grain. Indeed they cultivate but ſome ſmall Patches of Land near the River Side, and thoſe not being ſufficient to ſupply them, the greateſt part of their Bread is made of the white inward Bark of the Fir Tree, which they dry and grind, and uſe as we do Flower. But they have likewiſe a ſort of wild Oats, that grow in the Woods, which they uſe as Corn.

The River *Torne* has ſo many Cataracts, and is ſo rapid, that the Watermen, their Boats being built light for that Purpoſe, are oblig'd to hale up along the Shore, when they have theſe Currents or Cataracts in their Way.

CHAP. II.

Of the Mines in Lapland, *and of the Habit and Employment of the* Laplanders: *Alſo of their Magick; with a Deſcription of* Pomerania, Stralſund, *and the Iſlands of* Sweden.

Mines. THERE have been ſeveral Mines of Iron and Copper found in *Lapland*, eſpecially near the River *Torne*, upon which there were Forges and Conveniences for working and melting the Metal; but they are moſtly deſtroy'd by the *Moſcovites*, and the Miners and Managers forced to turn Fiſhermen; a Trade that never fails to thoſe who can put up with that way of living, as theſe *Laplanders* are forc'd to do, when they can do no better. The moſt conſiderable Iron and Copper Mines are in the Mountains of *Suapawara*, about two hundred Miles to the Norward of the Town of *Torne*. The Huts. Tents or Hutts of the Inhabitants of this part of *Lapland* are made of a great Number of long Poles, ſet in a circular Form upon the Ground, and all meeting at the Top in the Form of a Sugar-loaf, and cover'd with thick coarſe Stuff, to keep out the Weather, only a Hole left at the Top to let out the Smoke that proceeds from the Fire, which is in the middle of the Hutt, and the People ſit round it.

Habit. Both Men and Women have their upper Garments made of Skins with the Hair on, girt to them with a Belt or Girdle; their Breeches, or rather Trowſers, reach down to their Heels; their Caps are ſhap'd exactly like their Heads, and almoſt as cloſe as the Skin; their Shoes are alſo made of Skins, with picked turn'd-up Toes, but without any Heels, and tied with Thongs of Skins of Rein Deer, or the like.

Women. The Women who think themſelves to be of the better ſort, make themſelves fine with a Sort of Pewter Wire, or Tinſel, with which they work and embroider their Girdles, the Breaſts of their Coats, and the Edges of their Caps. They have no Linen, but make Waſtcoats of Fawns Skins, which they wear next to them. It is hard to diſtinguiſh the different Sexes by their Dreſs, only the Womens Garments are longer than the Mens; but otherwiſe they are equip'd much alike, each having a Purſe at their Girdle, in which they put Money, Rings, and Toys, a Knife, and a Leather Bag, in which they carry Thread, made of the Nerves of Beaſts. They dry the Fleſh of Rein Deer and Fiſh, in order to preſerve it, but without Salt. Both Men and Women chew Tobacco, yet few ſmoke any. Their Beds and Coverings are Skins of Rein Deer, between which they lie ſtark naked. Their Arms are Bows and Arrows, which they uſe with great Dexterity. Their chief Riches conſiſt in Flocks of Rein Deer, and he that has about two hundred or more is accounted a rich Man; but they are a tender Creature, and apt to die by the Heat in ſultry Weather, or, if they eſcape that, there is an Inſect, of the Nature of a Louſe, or Tick, very pernicious to them; which getting among the Hair, multiplies apace, and great Numbers of them eating Holes in the Skin ſpoil their thriving; ſo that when once a Deer is infected with theſe Vermin it is good for little, they having no Method to deſtroy them.

Traveling. When the *Laplanders* decamp, they carry their Children and Baggage upon their Rein Deer, driving the loaden ones before them, the reſt of the Flock following naturally after. And as they have Wool plenty enough to build new Huts, they never regard the Carcaſe or Shell of the old one, when they have got the Furniture out.

Employment. Their chief Employment is feeding and tending their Flocks of Rein Deer; beſides which they exerciſe themſelves in Fiſhing, Hunting, and Shooting with their Bows and Arrows, to furniſh themſelves with Proviſions, and Skins of Ermine and other Animals, not only for their own Wearing or Uſe, but to exchange with the neighbouring People for Neceſſaries which they cannot otherwiſe procure.

Religion. The *Swediſh Laplanders* are generally reputed Chriſtians, but ſeem very ignorant. Mr. *Moray* ſays he ask'd one of the moſt ſociable of them if ever he frequented any Church; to which he anſwered, that he did while his Friend, the Curate of *Jukaerwa*, was alive, but he was now encamp'd too far from any Church to frequent them. Being ask'd what the Sacrament was? he anſwer'd, that it was a little round Piece of Bread, as thin as Paper, and a Spoonful of Wine; and that the Body of Chriſt was in the Bread, but could not be diſcern'd. Being ask'd, if he did not believe that the Body of Chriſt was riſen, and now alive? he anſwer'd, *God knows*. Another of them owning the Father, Son, and Holy Ghoſt, was ask'd, if there were not three Gods? and anſwered, they were a Triangle; by which Anſwer it is ſuppoſed the Prieſts had endeavour'd by that Simile, to illuſtrate the Myſtery of the Trinity. He farther added, that they paid their Curate, or Miniſter, a certain Quantity of dry'd Fiſh, Furr, Skins, and Cheeſes, in proportion to their Stock, beſides paying the Fees for Chriſtenings, Marriages, and Buryings.

Magick of the *Laplanders*. Our Traveller, willing to know whether the Report which he had heard of the Magick and Witchcraft of the *Laplanders* was true, ask'd ſome diſtant Queſtions relating to that Subject, and was anſwer'd, that thoſe Profeſſors of the Black Art were moſtly in *Kimi Lapland*, and *Finland*, and told him, that they convers'd with the Devil,

Devil, and knew every thing, and that they could inflict Diseases on any Man, his Family, or Cattle, if hir'd or provok'd to it, and could kill or strike blind at Pleasure by their Sorcery; and that, on the other hand, they could cure any Man or Beast that themselves or others had struck with any Disease, and had often done it without any Gratuity, except a small Present; and the poor ignorant Part of the *Laplanders* are so fix'd in a Belief of this, that they dread the Anger, and court the Favour, of those reputed Conjurers.

Mr. *Mortraye* relates, that he being willing to satisfy his Curiosity, by seeing their Method of Exorcising, hir'd a Gulde to conduct him to the Tent of one of those Conjurers, in the most Northerly Part of *Lapland*. But when he found the old Wizard, he observ'd him to be very cautious of trusting him, because the Laws of *Sweden* are very severe against Witchcraft: However, by repeated Promises that he would not betray or discover him, he prevail'd upon the Conjurer, bid him follow him to the Top of a high Mountain, where being come, the Conjurer desir'd him to stay till he fetch'd his Drum and other things, which he did, and soon return'd, for it was hid hard by among the Shrubs and Rubbish, for fear of a Discovery.

The Drum was of an oval Form, having but one Head, made of transparent Parchment, miserably painted with celestial Signs: There was fastened to it a Chain, with several Brass Rings, *&c.* And all things being now ready for the Operation, the Conjurer ask'd him if he had any Brandy; and half a Pint being given him, he drank about two thirds of it; and then putting the Chain and Rings into the Drum, he beat upon it with a forked Piece of a Deer's Horn for a few Minutes, the Chain and Rings, in the mean time, jumping and jingling within the Drum; then he laid himself flat upon his Back, setting the Head of the Drum upon his bare Breast, and lay in this Posture like a dead Man; at last, fetching a deep Sigh, he opened his Eyes, and lifting the Drum gently up, he could see through the transparent Head in what Position the Chain and Rings lay, and how situate with Respect to the Celestial Signs; and then looking earnestly at the Enquirer, who was as earnestly waiting for his Answer, told him that he would run a great Hazard, as he return'd in his Sledge, and again in going down the Cataracts, or Water-falls, in his Boat; and that he would escape a great Danger by Fire, that he should have two Fits of Sickness within two Years, and having escap'd them, his Life should be long and healthy; for all which great things he foretold, he gave the Conjurer half a Crown, with which he seem'd extreamly satisfy'd.

The Conjurer, in point of Gratitude to the Guide, or Interpreter, that brought him so good a Customer, told him what Days in *July* and *August* would be lucky, and that if he went a fishing on those Days, he should come home loaden with Fish; he also told him what Days in *September*, *October*, and *November*, would be lucky for him to hunt. When all this was over, our Querist ask'd him, if he could tell whether he was a Batchelor, and what Countries he had travell'd? But he made him no Answer to any thing he ask'd him concerning things past; probably for fear of betraying his Ignorance, and consequently his Inability to tell things to come.

Mr. *Mortraye*, advancing on his Journey, came at last so far to the Northward, that he could see the Main Ocean to the Northward of him; and it being near the longest Day, he observ'd the Sun, when at lowest under the Pole, to be about as far above the Horizon, as it is with us in *England* near three Quarters of an Hour before Sun-set.

The *Laplanders* are very busy in the Winter-time in bringing their Copper and Iron Ore down the Rivers to *Torne*, and other Places on or near the *Bothnick* Coast; it being the best time for that Carriage, because the Rivers are so throughly frozen, that the loaden Sledges can safely travel upon the Ice; and for that Reason there are Fairs held in *January* upon the *Bothnick* Coast, which draw the People out of the Country, to bring down their Ore, Furs, *&c.* to sell, as well as to buy Goods of the *Swedes*, or to exchange one Commodity for another. This likewise is the only Time the *Laplanders* have to frequent Churches, or converse with Priests. It is likewise the Time they get themselves married, have their Children baptiz'd, receive the Sacrament, pay their Dues to the Government and to the Priest; and one great Article is, to lay in a Stock of Tobacco to serve till near that Time Twelvemonth.

The *Swedish* Dominions in *Germany* are now confin'd to some Part of *Upper Pomerania*, and is bounded on the North Side by the *Baltick*, on the East by *Lower Pomerania*, on the South by the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, and on the West by *Mechlenburg*. Of this *Stralsund* is the chief Town, now possess'd by the *Swedes*, *Stetin* having been yielded to the King of *Prussia*.

Stralsund is a strong Place on the South Shore of the *Baltick* Sea, over against *Rugen*, in about fifty four Degrees of North Latitude, about eighty Miles North-West from *Stetin*. This Place held out above five Months against the united Forces of the *Danes*, *Prussians*, *Poles*, and *Muscovites*, in the Year 1715. King *Charles* XII. being there in Person, and retir'd but a Day or two before the Town surrendred, which was done upon honourable Terms.

The *Swedish* Islands are all in the *Baltick*, and are, 1. *Aland*, with a Number of small Islands about it, in the Mouth of the *Bothnick* Gulf, between *Stockholm* in *Sweden* and *Abo* in *Finland*. There are no great Towns or considerable Villages, the *Russians* having harrass'd their Coast, burnt their Towns and Villages, and destroy'd their Mines, till they were oblig'd to confirm to the Czar the Conquests he had made of *Carelia*, *Ingria*, *Esthonia* and *Livonia*, the most desirable Part of all the *Swedish* Dominions.

2. The Island of *Gothland* lies between *Gothland* and *Livonia*, in the Latitude of fifty seven or fifty eight; it is about thirty Leagues long, and twelve broad; the chief Town is *Wisbuy*, or *Visburg*. Here is a large Harbour, but now almost choak'd up with Sand. There were formerly in the Town thirteen Churches, and six Monasteries, now all in Ruins, except the Church of St. *Mary*, and that has lost its rich Plate and antient Revenues. In the City are yet several Fountains, Cisterns, and Canals to be seen; some intire, but others in Ruins. This Island is supposed to be the first Colony of the *Goths*, so famous afterwards in History, for spreading farther to the Southward in such Multitudes, and dispersing themselves over the finest Countries in *Europe* and *Asia*. It is worth observing, that three of the Villages do still retain the Names of three of their Pagan Gods, *Wodin*, *Thor*, and *Friga*, from whence we Christians do, to this Day, give Names to three Days of the Week, *viz.* *Wednesday*, *Thursday* and *Friday*, as we do to three other Days of the Week, *Saturday*, *Sunday*, and *Monday*, from *Saturn*, the Sun, and the Moon. There are several good Ports in the Island; it affords Plenty of Arable, Meadow, and Pasture Land; their Fields are well stor'd with Cattle, their Seas with Fish, and their Rocks with Free-stone

and Marble; but, notwithstanding the Plenty of all these, the Island has been in a declining Condition upwards of two hundred Years.

3. *Oeland*, a little to the Eastward of the Continent of *Gothland*, and South-West from the Island of *Gothland*. It is about twenty five Leagues in Length, and four in Breadth. The principal Town is *Borkholm*, on the West Side of the Island, over against *Calmer*. The Island is chiefly Pasture Ground, and produces Plenty of Oxen, Horses, and Fallow Deer.

4. *Huena* is a small Island in the *Sound*. The chief Town is *Uraniburg*, built by (or rather for the use of) *Tycho Brahe*, the ingenious Astronomer. This, as well as *Gothland* and *Oeland*, was subject to *Denmark* three or fourscore Years ago.

5. The Island of *Rugen*, North of *Stralsund*, in the Entrance into the *Baltick*, and not far from *Bornholm*. It is almost of a circular Form, except for the Bays and Inlets, and about thirty Miles over; but so indented with Creeks and Bays, that scarce any Part of it is above a League distant from some Branch or other of the Sea. It is separrted from the main Continent, near *Stralsund*, by a narrow Streight, not a League over. There is not a walled Town upon the Island, but some Forts and Villages, the chief of which is *Bergen*, consisting of about four hundred Houses. It abounds with Grain and Cattle. The *Danes* and Confederates, in the late Northern War, made themselves Masters of it, but by the Peace, in the Year 1720, it was restor'd to the *Swedes*.

6, The Islands of *Usedom* and *Wallin* lie South-East from *Rugen*, on the same Coast of *Pomerania*, in the Mouth of the River *Oder*. There is nothing remarkable in them for Trade or Buildings, only they command the Navigation of the *Oder*. The narrow Passage between them is called the *Swin-Sound*. I might add the *Dago* and the *Osel*, in the Mouth of the *Livonian* Sea, or Gulf of *Riga*; but as these have been surrendered to the Czar of *Moscovy*, and are now a Part of his Dominions, they come not under our Cognizance, in this Description of the Continent or Islands of *Sweden*.

CHAP. III.

Of the Persons and Habits of the Swedes; *their Genius, Temper, Diet, Exercises, Roads, and Method of Travelling: With the Nature of their Soil, and of their Plants and Animals.*

THE *Swedes* are generally of a hardy robust Constitution, and able to endure Hardships, of which their late King *Charles* XII. was a lively Instance. Their Hair is commonly inclin'd to the yellow. The common Peasants oblige their Females to undergo the greatest Part of their laborious Employments, as Ploughing, Thrashing, Rowing their Boats, serving the Bricklayers, carrying Burthens, *&c.* The Cloathing of the better Sort, in the Winter-time, is Furs, instead of which the poor People use Sheep-skins, dress'd with the Wool on. But where Cloathing is scarce, and the Weather severe, they sometimes lose Limbs, and sometimes Lives by the Cold; but if a Limb is so frozen and the Blood so stagnated by the Cold, that they are in Danger of losing the Use of it, the common Cure, or Preventive, is to rub it with Snow, to put the Blood in Motion and make it circulate; for if they hold such a frozen Limb to the Fire, or come within the Influence of their Stoves, which are as common here as in *Russia*, they endanger the Loss of their Limb. The better Sort, especially in Summer-time, wear Cloth or Stuff, as the Season and their Circumstances will admit of.

The *Swedes* have little Inclination to Mechanicks, which makes them poor Manufacturers; but the *Finlanders* are a rustick laborious People, and good Soldiers when disciplin'd; they are generally used to coarse Fare and hard Lodging, and consequently can scarce find any harder Fare than what they have been used to, and are therefore better qualified for Labour and Hardship than for Art and Curiosity: And the Nobility, whose Preferment is commonly in the Military Service, are more famous for downright Courage and Resolution than for Conduct or Contrivance. In Learning they chuse rather to transcribe other Peoples Works than digest or communicate their own Thoughts. In Trade they had rather do the Drudgery than dive into the Mystery of Commerce or Manufactures; in short, in all their Performances they chuse rather to be slavish than nice, and where Ingenuity is wanting (as it generally is) a rugged Strength supplies its Place.

They that reckon themselves indeed Gentry, do not aim at Employments in the Church, Law, or Physick, nor do they engage in Trade. Their Clergy are but moderately learn'd, and, to hide their Ignorance, they forbid all Disputes about controverted Points in Religion. The Peasants live in a wretched poor Way, every one making his own Shoes, Hats, Cloaths, and Instruments of Husbandry; which are miserably perform'd; but they are forc'd to put up with it, as not having Money to purchase them of proper Workmen and Dealers. They are very religious, zealous to their Church, and loyal to their Monarch. There are seldom any Houses broke, or Robberies on the Highway, or such Violences committed, but little pilfering over-reaching Tricks, which they think may be done so secretly as not to clash with their Pretences to Religion, or expose their Villany and Hypocrisy to the View of others, these they do not stick to commit when they find Oportunity.

Exercise

The Exercises which they use for their Diversion, are running Races on Sledges, and sailing in Yachts on the Ice; which they manage with such Dexterity, that they will turn to Windward, and sail swifter than the Vessels upon the Water, and with much less Danger of oversetting.

Roads

Their Roads are kept in good Repair, and Travelling as good as can be expected, considering the Rocks and rugged Mountains in the Country: The Roads are repair'd by the Peasants, who receive Orders from the Governors of their respective Provinces for that Purpose, and strictly obey them. It is cheap travelling, for Horses are hired for a Penny a Mile; but there is but poor Accommodation upon the Road, either

ther for Lodging or Diet. The best Travelling is in Winter, upon the Sledges, the Country abounding with Lakes and Rivers, which have a Communication with one another, and when froze afford an Opportunity for travelling upon the Ice, which is the most expeditious, as well as the most safe, Way of travelling.

A GREAT Part of *Sweden* consists of Woods, Lakes, and Pools, and in some Places prodigious high Rocks, especially about *Stockholm*, and by the Sea Side; but further up in the Country it is more agreeable, for there are a great many fertile Plains; and their Woods serve both for Shelter and Fuel. The Lakes, besides being well stor'd with Fish, serve for Carriage and Passage, in the Summer by Boats upon the Water, and in the Winter by Sledges upon the Ice.

IT is here as in the Northern Parts of *Moscovy*, no sooner the Winter is over, and the Snow gone, but the Grass and other Vegetables cover the Face of the Earth immediately, that it may almost be said that the Year is divided into only two Seasons, *viz.* Winter and Summer; for upon the first Appearance of Summer, the Fields are stor'd with Variety of Flowers, and Strawberries and Rasberries grow upon every Rock. Their Gardens bring Melons to Perfection in dry Years; but Peaches, Apples, Pears, *&c.* are scarce, and those they have not good; but they have tolerable Cherries of several Sorts. Their Nurseries and Green-houses produce Orange, Fig, and Myrtle, with other Plants and Trees of the most tender Nature. Their Woods afford Fir, Pines, Beach, Birch, Alder, Juniper, and in the Province of *Bleking* the Trees grow so rank, that it is difficult to get through among them, and they are generally strait and tall. Fuel is very plenty except near the Mines, where it has been destroy'd much faster than it grew, and they are now supply'd, by Sledge or Water Carriage, from other Places.

Fruits.

THEIR Horses are small, but hardy. Their Sheeps Wool is coarse. Their Wild-Beasts are Bears, Wolves, Elks, Deer, Foxes, Hares, and Squirrels. The Way of catching Wild-Beasts can scarce be call'd Hunting, but rather murdering the Game, for they surround them, and shoot them directly, without giving any Law; there is very little Riding, or what we call Sport, either in this Country or *Germany*. Cattle.

FOWLS, both Tame and Wild, are plenty and good. The Reder, a Fowl about as big as a Turkey, is reckon'd fine Eating, as is the Orras, about as big as a Hen: Here are plenty of Partriges, and a Bird call'd a Yerper, something like a Partridge; there are great Numbers of Thrushes and Blackbirds; and a beautiful Bird about the Bigness of a Fieldfare, whose Feathers are tipp'd with Scarlet. They have but few Pigeons, which is imputed to the great Numbers of Eagles, Hawks, and other Birds of Prey. Fowls.

THEY have Plenty of Fish, particularly Salmon, Perch, Trout, Tench, Pikes, and the Streamling, a Fish less than a Pilchard; these they salt and barrel up to send abroad, and to supply themselves in the Winter, when the Rivers and Lakes are frozen that no Fish can be caught; also, besides Fish for Eating, they have Seals and other Fish in the *Bothnick Gulf*, of which they make great Quantities of Train-Oil. Fish.

CHAP. IV.

Of their Mines, Manufactures, Trade, and Commerce.

Mines.

THEIR Mines and Manufactures are rank'd under the same Head, because the principal Part of their Manufacture consists in what they make of their Copper and Iron, and what the Mines afford. There is in *Sweden* a Mine of Silver, the first Landing-place whereof is a hundred and five Fathom deep; the Roof of it is as high as a Church, and is supported by vast Pillars or Arches of Ore; from thence there is a Descent, by Ladders or Baskets, to the lowest Mine, being above forty Fathom more, where they now work. Their Records give no Account of the first Discovery either of this or their great Copper Mine, which seems to have been the Work of many Ages. The Ore of their Silver Mine, seldom yields above four *per Cent*, and requires great Pains to refine it. They make use of Water-Engines both to draw up the Ore and drain the Mines. The greatest Copper Mine is eighty Fathom deep, and of Breadth in proportion, and yields the Value of two hundred thousand Pounds Sterling yearly, of which the King hath a fourth Part in Kind, and a Duty upon the rest of twenty-five *per Cent*, when it is exported unwrought. They have also a great Number of Iron Mines and Forges, which are generally work'd by Water, where there is a sufficient Quantity to answer the Purpose; and from these they export annually to the Value of three hundred thousand Pounds in Iron to foreign Countries.

MR. *Mortraye*, giving an Account of his Travels in *Sweden*, says, that at a Town call'd *Arboga*, in *Westmania*, he saw several Forges, with what he calls *large Hammers and vast Bellows, put in Motion by such Wheels as are used in Water Mills*; but as the Bellows at the Furnaces, and the Bellows and the Hammers at the Forges in *Wales*, are work'd in the same Manner, I shall forbear a further Description of them till I come to give a Description of that Country, and only observe that the two Forges at *Arboga*, in *Sweden*, work near five hundred and forty Ton of Iron in a Year, and the three Hammers at *Axberghammer* work about half that Quantity. There is a Fair held every Year, in *January*, at *Orebro*, whither the Citizens of *Gottenburg* and *Stockholm* resort, to buy the Iron of the Masters of the Iron Works, in order to sell it to Foreigners, who are not allow'd to buy any up till the other have first bought it, in order to sell it to them at second Hand. They have also lesser Hammers and Bellows, wherewith to forge Bayonets, Hammers and other Instruments.

MR. *Mortraye* went next to the Silver Mines at *Salsberg*: The Mines now at work are call'd the New Mines; they at first produc'd twenty thousand Pound Weight of neat Silver every Year, for fourscore Years together successively; but of late they have not produced above ten or twelve hundred Weight every Year. Mr. *Mortraye*, desirous to see the Mine, procured him- Silver Mines.

himself to be let down in one of their Buckets to the first Floor, which is ninety Fathom deep, and afterwards to the Second, which is twenty Fathom more, and from thence he descended by Ladders thirty-five Fathom more, which is in all one hundred and forty-five Fathom: Here they shew'd him the Method of softning the Rocks, to break the Ore, and their Manner of working it; and when he had satisfied his Curiosity, he came up by the same Way and Means that he went down, and being come up, they shew'd him some Pieces of Maiden Silver, which came pure out of the Mine without refining, and a Kind of Cotton which they call *Asbestos*, which they say is the incombustible Matter which the Antients used to spin and weave into a Sort of a Stuff like Linnen; and, because the Fire could have no Effect upon it, they wrapp'd up the dead Bodies of their deceas'd Friends in it to be burnt; for tho' the Cloth could not preserve the dead Bodies from being consum'd by the Fire, yet as the Cloth remain'd unconsum'd, it preserv'd the Ashes of the Body entire, and prevented its being mix'd and lost among the Ashes of the Funeral Pile.

Asbestos.

But to pursue Mr. *Mortraye*'s Description of *Sweden*: The Copper Mines lie near the City of *Fulun*, in the Province *Delecarlia*, where, before he came to the Mine, he found several Furnaces for melting the Ore; the Mine has seventeen Openings, the Mountain in which it is, is like Mount *Vesuvius*, the Smoke that ascends from it not being less offensive, it being so sulphurous, that it causes sneezing, or otherwise very much disturbs the Breath of those who are not used to it. The largest Opening is two hundred and sixty Fathom in Circumference, and seventy deep to the first Landing, and the same Depth from thence to the Second; some of those Openings are fill'd up by the falling in of the Earth, and others kept open at work. He had the Curiosity to go down into one that was at work, but came out almost suffocated with the Smell, and as black as Soot; but he was the more desirous to see it, because it is said to be the most considerable Mine in all *Europe*, and some say there was Copper transported from this Mine before the Birth of our Saviour, and they produce Manuscripts which prove its flourishing State five hundred Years ago and upwards, and their Brass Utensils and Arms, as Mattocks, Hatchets, Sabres, Poinards, Knives, &c. are still preserv'd in the College of Antiquities. This Mine yields above nine hundred Ton of Copper every Year, and formerly much more, but some of the Works have been ruin'd by the Earth falling in, and besides, the Government has not only deny'd them the Privileges they had, but laid new Imposts upon them, by which Means they are disabled from carrying on the Work, or what they do it with a Vigour and Activity far short of what is was before they were so oppress.

Notwithstanding the Plenty of Iron Ore in *Sweden*, there was formerly little Iron made there, but the Ore was transported to *Dantzick* and other Parts there-abouts, and at *Dantzick* especially such large Quantities were forg'd, that generally all the Iron that comes out of the *Baltick* is call'd *Dantzick* Iron; but when the Duke *D'Alva* drove a great many ingenious Mechanicks out of the *Low Countries*, they sheltered here, being depriv'd of the Exercise of their Religion at Home, and set up Forges and other Conveniences for making Iron Guns, Wire, &c. and their Descendants are the chief Manufacturers of those Sort of Goods to this Day.

Manufacture.

Besides Iron and Copper, as above, there are great Quantities of Pitch, Tar, Masts, Deals, Timber, (or Raft) and wooden Ware, comes from *Sweden*; and they have made some Progress in the Woollen Manufacture, and with some Success too. Their Imports exceed their Exports, and consist mostly of Cloth, Silk, Stuffs, Wine, Brandy, Sugar, Spices, Tobacco, Paper, Linnen, and other Merchandizes. Their Trade with *England* is the most advantageous Branch they follow, because it takes off their own Manufactures and in some respect brings them in ready Money. Their Payments in Merchandizing are commonly made by drawing upon the Bank of *Stockholm*, which is much easier done than carrying their heavy Copper Money from Place to Place, where a small Sum requires a Cart or a Wheel-barrow to remove it.

The very Management of their Manufactures depend mostly upon Credit; for, as to their Iron Work for Instance, they contract with the *English* and other Foreigners at the Beginning of Winter, and they advancing the Sums contracted for, receive their Iron the next Summer. And indeed this Poverty and Necessity of the *Swedes* is an Advantage to Foreigners, against whose Persons and Interest the *Swedes* are so prejudic'd, that they would not allow any to live, or at least thrive, amongst them, if their Trade and Interest was not almost entirely supported by them.

The *English* formerly exported great Quantities of Cloth to *Sweden*; but their Government having of late encouraged that Manufacture, they have procur'd Workmen from *Germany*, *Scotland*, and even *England* too, which is the Occasion that there is a much less Call for *English* Cloth than formerly.

CHAP. V.

Of the Forces of Sweden; *the Strength of its Situation, and Frontier-Towns; and of the Publick Revenues; with the antient and present Constitution of the Government, and the Revolutions which it hath undergone.*

The Nobility and Gentry formerly held their Lands of the Crown by Knights Service, which is to maintain and bring into the Field a Body of Horse, in proportion to the Land so held; and therefore when they fought it was in Defence of themselves and their Lands and Estates, as well as of their Sovereigns, and the King was at this rate supply'd with Forces without any other Charge to the Government; and indeed this was a proper Way to secure new acquired Territories; but this degenerated into an Inconveniency at last, for the Descendants of these

theſe petty Governors, who were afterwards call'd Barons, growing ſtrong and numerous, and in ſome reſpect independant, neglected their Obligation to the Crown, and in a Confederacy againſt it ſet up a Government of their own, and at their own Pleaſure depoſed the King, and rendered the Crown elective, or at their own Pleaſure put Reſtrictions and Limitations upon the Sovereign, or ſhar'd the Regal Authority with him, which they made him ſubmit to when they proſper'd in their Attempts.

Militia. THE Militia of *Sweden* ſeems to be yet upon the ſame Foot as formerly, or but with ſome few neceſſary Alterations. Formerly no Levies of Foot could be made in *Sweden* without the Conſent of the Commons, or Fourth Eſtate; till the Time of King *Charles* the Eleventh, and then it was with Difficulty; upon this there were Commiſſioners appointed by that King to allot each Province their Proportion of Soldiers, according to the Number of Farms it contain'd: Every Farm of ſixty or ſeventy Pounds a Year, being charg'd with one Foot Soldier; the Farmer being obliged to furniſh him with Diet, Lodging, and ordinary Cloaths, and about twenty Shillings a Year; or if he be a married Man, the Farmer builds him a little Wooden Houſe, and allows him Hay and Paſturage to keep a Cow, and a little Land to plow, to ſupply himſelf with Bread; and when they have once enter'd into this Pay it is Death by Martial Law to deſert it.

IT was not in the Power of any Farmers to impreſs, or any Way compel, any Man, poor or rich, into this Military Service, but they muſt agree upon fair Terms, and if the Farmer by Agreement paid ten or twenty Pounds in Hand to a Perſon to ſerve as a Soldier, together with the above-mention'd Perquiſites, yet if he dies or is diſabled the Farmer is oblig'd to repeat the Charge, and procure another in his Room, at his own Expence; and thus both the Entring, and Recruiting, the common Foot Soldiers is entirely at the Country's Charge.

THE Officers, both of Horſe and Foot, are maintain'd out of the Lands lately reſum'd and united to the Crown. Every Officer hath a Houſe and a Parcel of Land aſſign'd him in that Part of the Country where his Regiment is quarter'd, and for his Pay he has the Rent of ſome other Farm or Farms, equivolent to it; and this Way they are better pleas'd with than to take it at the Treaſury, becauſe the Farmers Pay is more punctual, and better to be depended upon in point of Time than the Pay at the Treaſury, which they ſometimes wait a long Time for.

THE Pay of a Colonel of Foot is about three hundred a Year, and the other Officers in proportion. The Pay of all the Officers in one Regiment amounts to two thouſand five Pounds a Year, and there were lately twenty-eight Regiments of Foot upon this Eſtabliſhment; beſides fifteen Regiments of Horſe, whoſe Officers were alſo paid out of the Crown Lands. And that the Houſes may not fall out of Repair, or the Lands be work'd out of Heart, as the Farmers phraſe it, there are Commiſſioners appointed to inſpect them as there is Occaſion; and if an Officer is advanc'd to a ſuperior Command, and conſequently remov'd to a greater Eſtate, he is oblig'd to leave the Eſtate and Houſe that he is going from in as good a Condition as he found them. They never wear the King's Cloaths but when they exerciſe, they being at all other Times lock'd up in the Churches.

BUT the Forces of *Pomerania* are not upon this Foot, but are paid out of the Treaſury. Before the Loſs of *Livonia* and *Bremen* the Militia of *Sweden* was computed as follows:

	Men.	
Fifteen Regiments of Horſe, containing	17000	
Twenty-eight Regiments of Foot	35000	
One Regiment of Foot Guards	2000	*Swediſh* Forces.
The Forces of *Pomerania*, *Bremen*, and *Verden*	6000	
In all	60000	

BUT the late *Charles* the Twelfth, when attack'd by *Denmark*, *Poland*, and *Moſcovy* all at once, aſſum'd an arbitrary Power, and rais'd above twice that Number, and Money in proportion, and went on with great Succeſs againſt his Enemies the firſt twelve Years, but afterwards loſt *Livonia*, and a great Part of his *German* Dominions, and ſo impoveriſh'd the reſt of his Dominions, that they are now far ſhort of what they were when he came to the Crown. However, the *Swedes* have ſo far recover'd their Liberty, that the Sovereign has not Power to raiſe Forces or to levy Money without the Conſent of the States in Diet aſſembled.

IN the Reign of *Charles* the Eleventh there was, beſides the Rents above-mention'd, about twenty Farms aſſign'd to anſwer any extraordinary Expence, or to ſupply a Subſiſtance for ſuperannuated or diſabled Officers; but for common Soldiers there is one general Hoſpital, well endow'd, for their Relief upon Occaſion; to which, beſides the ſettled Endowment, ever Officer, upon his Promotion, contributes a certain Sum, in proportion to the Dignity of the Place he is advanc'd to. Their principal Magazines were *Stockholm* and *Jenkopping*, at the latter of which their Train of Artillery uſually ſtands.

THEIR rocky Precipices are a better Defence than Walls, for if they do but ſecure their Paſſes the reſt is impenetrable and inacceſſible; but they have alſo ſome Places of Strength, as the Caſtle of *Bahus*, near *Gottenburg*; alſo *Elſinburg*, *Halmſtat*, *Landſcroon*, and *Malmo*, all over-againſt *Denmark*; likewiſe *Carelſcroon*, where the Royal Navy lies up, and *Calmar* on the Eaſt Coaſt, and two ſmall Forts at the going into *Stockholm* Harbour.

Navy. THE Royal Navy of *Sweden* is not ſo ſtrong as that of *Denmark*, or that of *Moſcovy*; but it was not the powerful Fleet of Men of War belonging to the *Moſcovites* that gave them the Advantage over the *Swedes* in the laſt Wars, but it was their Galleys, which could row up to the very North End, or Bottom, of the *Bothnick Gulph*, where the *Swediſh* Men of War could not come, for fear of Shoals and Dangers; ſo that the *Moſcovites*, by the Help of their Galleys, ravaged the Country at pleaſure, deſtroy'd their Copper Works, and burnt their Towns before them; nor are the *Swedes*, and all their Allies, yet a Match for the *Moſcovites* in thoſe Seas, the latter having not leſs than three or four hundred Galleys, but the *Swedes* have none, nor are they in a Capacity to build any, nor are their Men of War of any Service to them, to defend the Coaſt of the *Bothnick Gulph*, they being too large to go above *Stockholm*.

Revenues. THE Revenues of *Sweden* are rais'd from the Demeſne Lands of the Crown, the Cuſtoms, Copper and Silver Mines, or the Coin, alſo the Tithes, which before the Reformation belong'd to Biſhopricks and Monaſteries, but were then ſeiz'd by the Crown. There is likewiſe Poll-Money, Fines, Stamps upon Paper, and Duties payable on Proceedings at Law; all which Revenues amount, by Computation, to a Million of Pounds Sterling, whereof the Cuſtoms produce a Fourth, and the Demeſne Lands a Third. The Poll was levy'd upon the common People, each, between ſixteen and ſixty, paying twelve Pence a Year: But other Exactions were alſo laid on by

the late King in his Diſtreſs in the late Wars; inſomuch that Baron *Gortz*, the Prime Miniſter, form'd a Scheme to extort from the People (beſides all other Duties) the ſixth Penny of all their Effects, Houſhold Furniture not excepted, and to make them declare upon Oath the Value of all their Subſtance, and in caſe of a Concealment to forfeit the Whole.

And, which was worſe, King *Charles* XII. cauſed the Subjects to bring in all their Silver and Braſs Money, in Exchange for which he gave them Muntetekins, a ſmall Copper Coin, of little Weight or Worth, which the King put what Value upon he pleaſed; and thus a Piece of Copper, of the intrinſick Value of not above a Halfpenny, paſs'd for half a Crown or more, and other Pieces in proportion, and Foreigners as well as Natives were oblig'd to ſubmit to it. Then another Invention was propos'd in favour of the Crown, by impoſing Notes upon the Trading People inſtead of Money, although no Fund was aſſign'd for the Diſcharge of them. In ſhort, the Subjects were at laſt depriv'd in a manner of all Property by the Projects of Baron *Gortz*, who was then Prime Miniſter of *Sweden*, and look'd upon to be the Author of theſe deſtructive Councils, of which he found the fatal Conſequence when his Maſter *Charles* XII. who protected him, was dead, and the Subjects Reſentments ran ſo high, that the whole terminated in his Ruin.

Government. The antient Government of the *Swedes* was monarchical and abſolute, as may be obſerv'd both from Hiſtory and the Conſtitution of the Governments which they ſettled where they conquer'd. Their Conqueſts may be ſaid to be divided into three Parts: 1. They appropriated Lands to themſelves ſufficient to ſupport themſelves and Families, which they call'd their Demeſne Lands. 2. They reſerv'd certain Rents and Services for the Uſe of the Crown, or to anſwer the Exigences of the State 3. They parcell'd out the reſt amongſt their Followers. And thus in ſhort the Benefit of the Conqueſts contributed to the enriching of the Subjects, eſpecially the Officers and Commanders, who by this Means became able to join in Confederacy, and even diſpute the Power of their Sovereign, and ſometimes compel him to ſubmit to Limitations by them propos'd, and even to ſuffer them to ſhare the Adminiſtration with him; and when the Roman Catholick Clergy, the Emiſſaries of *Rome*, once got footing, they were ſo far from loſing ground afterwards, that they aſſum'd a Power of controuling the Civil Magiſtrate, and by degrees crept in to be a powerful Party in the Legiſlature, and now, and for ſeveral hundred Years paſt, there are four Eſtates eſtabliſh'd in *Sweden*.

These four Eſtates are, 1. The Nobility, 2. The Clergy, 3. The Burgeſſes, and 4. The Common People; but beſides theſe there was a Senate, or Council, whoſe Authority was ſuch as not only to adviſe but contradict the King, inſomuch that he could not act in ſome Caſes of Importance without the Concurrence of them, or at leaſt of the Majority of them. They fix'd themſelve to continue Senators for Life, and any Attempt againſt their Perſons or Reputations was made Treaſon.

The four Eſtates, above-mention'd, uſually met at *Stockholm* once in three Years, or oftner if the Affairs of State required it: Upon which Occaſion, his Majeſty being ſeated on the Throne, and the Senators and Eſtates in their proper Places, at ſome Diſtance, the Preſident of the Chancery compliments them in the King's Name; then a Secretary acquaints them with the State of Affairs during their Recels, and the Occaſion of their being call'd together; which Compliment is ſeverally return'd by the Marſhal for the Nobility, by the Archbiſhop for the Clergy, by the firſt Burgo-maſter of *Stockholm* for the Burghers, and by one of the Peaſants deputed by them in the Name of the reſt; which done the four Eſtates retire to four ſeparate Chambers, and chuſe one Committee, compoſed of all the four Eſtates; this Committee receives all the Particulars that are neceſſary to be laid before them, and communicates them to their reſpective Bodies, or Eſtates; and in every Chamber the Majority of Votes determines the Affair in that Chamber; but all the Eſtates, or Chambers, muſt concur before any Matter propoſed can paſs into an Act: But the executive Power was almoſt entirely lodg'd in the Senate; which was generally compos'd of twelve Lords, of whom the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, Primate of *Sweden*, was one, and the reſt were principal Officers of State, or Governors of Provinces; and thoſe ſeparately maintain'd their own Ground, and fortify'd their own Seats, ſo that they ſeem'd rather like independant Princes than like Subjects; and if aggriev'd they never appeal'd to the King's Court for Redreſs, but every one thought himſelf able to avenge himſelf of the Aggreſſor when he found himſelf injur'd; and under this confus'd Conſtitution of Government *Sweden* labour'd for ſome Time.

Guſtavus Eriction. But when *Guſtavus Erickſon*, who was a *Swediſh* Nobleman, was elected to the Crown, about the Year 1523, he reſcued *Sweden* from the Oppreſſion of the *Danes*, by which Means he ſo far ingratiated himſelf into the Favour of his Subjects, the *Swedes*, that he advanc'd the Regal Authority to a very high Pitch. For the Eſtates, thinking that they could never expreſs a ſufficiently grateful Senſe of their Deliverance, made a ſolemn Decree, or Act, whereby they oblig'd themſelves to approve whatever *Guſtavus* ſhould think fit to do for the Preſervation of his Dignity, and that it ſhould be in his Power to make War or Peace, and that his Enemies ſhould be imputed the Enemies of the Nation; and this Power they the rather choſe to give him for his Defence and their Safety, becauſe there was then a Pretender put up againſt him.

This happen'd about the Time of the Promulgation of *Luther*'s Doctrine, and when the Reformation began to prevail in *Sweden*; and there being now an inveterate Enmity between *Guſtavus* and the *Romiſh* Clergy, who were then in Poſſeſſion of half the Lands and Revenues of the Kingdom, and of many of the Royal Caſtles and Demeſnes, he thought if he ſhould fall in with *Luther*'s Doctrine, in Oppoſition to Popery, it would give him a good Pretence of ſeizing all thoſe Caſtles, Lands, &c. into his own Hand, which had been alienated from the Crown and engroſs'd by the Clergy; and as this Project was entirely to his own Advantage, and the not much leſs than abſolute Power now depoſited in his Hands enabled him to put it in execution, he procured an Act to be paſs'd in the Year 1527, by which it was order'd, 'That the Biſhops ſhould immediately 'ſurrender their Caſtles to the King, and diſband 'their Troops; that their pretended Right to 'Fines and forfeited Eſtates, which originally 'belong'd to the Crown, ſhould be entirely abro-'gated, that all the ſuperfluous Plate and Bells 'in the Churches ſhould be ſold to pay the pub-'lick Debts; that all Grants of Eſtates to 'the Clergy, ſince the Edict of King *Canutſon*, 'who began his Reign in the Year 1445, ſhould 'be annull'd, and the Lands re-united to the 'Crown; that the two Thirds of the Tythes, 'hitherto poſſeſs'd by the Biſhops and Abbots, 'ſhould be apply'd towards the maintaining of 'the Army in Times of War, and erecting and 'endow-

'endowing publick Schools and Hospitals in 'Times of Peace; and, in short, that all the 'Privileges of the Clergy should be entirely at 'his Majesty's Disposal.' This Act they presented to the King by the Chancellor, and Doctor *Olaus Petri*, the great Preacher and Promoter of *Lutheranism* in *Sweden*, with a Promise from the States that he should never find the least Opposition to his Pleasure in that Assembly.

When the King had thus made himself Master both of the Religion and Revenues of the Church, he did not rest here, but went in Person, at the Head of a Body of Horse, to see the Act put in execution, being attended by *Olaus Petri*, and other *Lutheran* Doctors, whom he order'd actually to preach before him in the principal Churches; then call'd in the Titles and Grants by which the Clergy held their Lands, and re-united the said Lands to the Crown; and, in short, saw every Thing put in execution according to the Tenor of the Act above-mention'd.

The Clergy being thus humbled, and their insatiable Demands suppress'd, he form'd another Project for the increasing of his Revenues: For most of the *Swedish* Provinces did formerly abound with Forests, which former Kings had caus'd to be demolish'd, and given the Lands to the Nobility and Gentry, reserving only a Crown Rent to the King; but the Circumstances of the Crown being low, the Lords acted according to the Old Proverb, *when a Man is down keep him down*, for they so disregarded the King's Authority, that they neglected to pay even those Crown Rents, and that for so long a Time, that they seem'd to be abolish'd by Prescription; but this King, whose almost arbitrary Power enabled him to make almost what Claims and Demands he pleased, demanded of the Lords and Gentry to resign their Lands and Fiefs to him, at which they were so much startled, that they were glad to compound with him to pay a certain yearly Sum for the Fiefs, or Manors, which they held of the Crown.

The Crown made hereditary.

Having secured this Privilege also for himself, his next Step was to secure his Succession; in order to which he proposed to them to abrogate the Custom of electing their Princes, and to have the Crown made hereditary, alledging in Favour of what he advanced, that the Divisions and Contests attending Elections were commonly attended with fatal Consequences; (*a fatal Instance of which we have, at the writing hereof, in the Affair of* Poland;) but these Arguments were needless where arbitrary Power prevail'd, for all the four Houses consented directly to what he proposed, and settled the Crown upon his eldest Son, Prince *Eric*, and the other Princes his Children, successively, according to their Seniority, and again upon their respective Heirs and Successors, &c. This Act was pass'd in the Year 1542, and pursuant to it the Crown has ever since been in his Line; though the Right of this Succession has in some Measure been dispens'd with in Favour of *Ulrica Eleonora*, the present Queen of *Sweden*, as we may have Occasion to observe by and by.

But all this did not satisfy *Gustavus*, for in his Life-time he allotted several Provinces to his several Sons; as to his second Son *John*, *Finland*, to his third Son *Magnus*, *West Gothland*, and to his youngest Son *Charles*, *Sudermania*, *Nericia*, and *Wermeland*; but all to hold of their eldest Brother *Eric*, as Fees of the Crown, every one to furnish a Number of Troops in proportion to their Dignity, and the Necessity or Circumstances of the State.

King *Eric* began *Anno* 1559, and reign'd but nine Years, during which his Reign, his Brothers, envying his Greatness, charged him with Male-Administration, and under that Pretence deposed him, and he was succeeded by his second Brother, *John*, in the Year 1568, who, to make way for himself, poison'd his Brother *Eric*, and succeeded to the Crown. *John*, 1568.

John had a Son, named *Sigismund*, who having resided mostly in *Poland*, was elected King there; but endeavouring to restore the *Roman* Catholick Religion in *Sweden* now, when the *Lutheran* was so well establish'd, he lost the Affections of the *Swedish* Nobility, and although he did by the establish'd Law of Hereditary Right succeed his Father *John* in the Crown and Kingdom of *Sweden*, when he was King of *Poland* at the same Time, yet *Sigismund* was deposed, and *Charles* the Ninth advanc'd to the Throne of *Sweden*, in the Year 1604. *Charles* IX. 1604.

Sigismund's close Adherence to the *Roman* Catholick Principles prevail'd so far with him, that he would not suffer his Son *Uladislaus* to be educated in *Lutheran* Principles; whereupon an Act was pass'd to exclude *Uladislaus* from the Crown, and to settle it upon *Gustavus Adolphus*, the Son of King *Charles*, (after his Father's Decease) and upon his Heirs Male; whereupon *Gustavus Adolphus* succeeded his Father, and came to the Crown in the Year 1611.

Gustavus Adolphus had such Success against the *Muscovites* and *Poles*, that he brought them to a Peace upon those advantageous Terms, that they should surrender and confirm to him *Livonia* and *Ingermanland*; he afterwards made considerable Conquests in *Germany*; but being kill'd at the Battle of *Lutzen*, left his Crown and Kingdom to his Daughter *Christiana* in the Year 1633, which although this was contrary to the Act of Settlement, yet her Father prevail'd with the States to alter that Act in her Favour, and to dispense with that Article of confining the Succession to the Male Line only. *Gustavus Adolphus*, 1611. *Christiana*, 1633.

But whether the Load of Government was too heavy for female Shoulders, or whatever else was the Case, *Christiana*, with the Consent of the Estates, resign'd the Crown to her Nephew, *Charles Gustavus*, fourth Son of *Casimir*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Catharine*, Sister of *Gustavus Adolphus*, and Queen *Christiana* retired to *Rome*, having embrac'd the *Roman* Catholick Religion. *Charles Gustavus*, 1654.

Charles Gustavus in his War with the *Danes*, had such Success, that he brought them to his own Terms; which were, that *Denmark* should confirm to *Sweden* the Provinces of *Schonen*, *Halland*, and *Bleking*, with *Lysler*, *Huseen*, *Bornholm*, and *Drontheim* in *Norway*, and that the *Swedes* should have free Passage through them, and that the *Danes* should exact no Duty of them for such Passage.

When *Charles Gustavus* died, his Son, *Charles* the Eleventh, who was then but five Years of Age, succeeded him, in the Year 1660; but the Administration was entrusted in the Hands of the Queen and Five great Officers of the Crown, till he was seventeen Years of Age; at which Time, being in the Year 1672, he took the Government upon him, and found the Nation involv'd in an expensive and unprofitable War, which was by some charged upon the Ministers who were at the Helm during his Minority; whereupon he chose a Committee out of the several Bodies of the States to enquire into their Administration, and it was concluded that the Power which the Senators had assum'd to themselves was the Cause of the Misfortune; whereupon he absolv'd the Senate, only keeping some of them that he could most confide in about him, which he call'd the King's Counsellors. *Charles* XI. 1660.

King *Charles* the Eleventh dy'd *April* 17, 1697, in the two and fortieth Year of his Age, and the thirty-

Charles XII. 1697. thirty-seventh of his Reign, and was succeeded by the (afterwards) famous *Charles* the Twelfth, not yet quite fifteen Years of Age; but during his Minority the Kingdom was govern'd by a Regency, consisting of the Queen, his Mother, and Five great Officers of State; however the States declared the King Major in *November* following. And, in the Year 1700, the *Poles*, *Danes*, and *Moscovites* fell upon him, without Provocation, or any Declaration of War; but the united Fleet of the *English* and *Dutch* appearing in his Behalf made the *Danes* retire to Shelter, and he being clear of all Enemies from that Quarter, he march'd against his old Enemies, the *Poles* and *Moscovites*, defeating them in almost every Engagement, with Numbers far inferior to theirs, though he had old experienc'd *Saxon* Troops to deal with, as well as *Poles* and *Moscovites*. In this War he dethron'd the King of *Poland*, and put the Czar of *Moscovy* to his last Shift; but being so elevated with his Success, his Presumption and Want of Caution precipitated him into un-foreseen Dangers; for, being surrounded by the Czar's Forces, his Army was entirely cut off, or made Prisoners, at *Pultowa*, except three or four hundred Horse, with which he escap'd to *Bender*; of which you have a particular Account in the Description of *Turkey* in *Europe*, Chap. II. Page 273, &c. of this Book, to which I refer the Reader. Some few Years after his Return into *Sweden* he was kill'd at the Siege of *Fredericksball*, after a Reign of about twenty-one Years.

Charles XII. dying without Issue, the Crown devolv'd, according to legal Succession, upon *Charles Frederick*, Duke of *Holstein*; but *Ulrica Eleonora*, the youngest Daughter of *Charles* XI. being married to the Hereditary Prince of *Hess Cassel*, who was then in the *Swedish* Army, and the Princess, his Consort, promising to restore the States to their antient Power and Privileges, and promising for herself and her Posterity to renounce all arbitrary Power, and that if ever she should attempt to restore it she should forfeit the Crown, or if any Peson should propose, either to her or her Successors, the restoring of arbitrary Power, that Person should be punish'd as a Traitor, also that she would not admit any Person into any Employment in the Government who was not a *Lutheran*, and a Native of *Sweden*, &c. upon these, and many other like Obligations that she had laid herself under, they settled the Crown upon her Majesty, and her Issue Male, in Case she had any should survive.

The States being assembled at *Stockholm*, in *February* 1720, the Queen proposed to have her Consort, the Prince of *Hess*, King, jointly with her, he at the same Time offering to conform to all the Conditions and Limitations sign'd by the Queen; but the States did not immediately come into the Proposal of having them both to reign jointly; whereupon her Majesty offer'd to resign wholly to her Consort, and quit all Pretensions to the Government, only provided that she might resume the Government again in Case she should survive him; which, with some further Restrictions, being agreed to, he was proclaim'd King of *Sweden*, and the Ceremony of his Coronation was perform'd the third of *May* 1721, in the great Church at *Stockholm*.

Prince of *Hess* elected King.

CHAP. VI.

Of the several Courts, or Colleges, of Sweden, *for the Administration of Publick Justice; and of their Courts of Judicature, Ecclesiastical and Civil; also of their Laws and Civil Government.*

The Senate

SINCE the last Act of Settlement the King cannot determine any Affair without the Consent of the Senate, who are now reduc'd to fourteen in Number, of whom the House of Peasants, by them sometimes call'd the House of Commons, have no Share in the Election, they being chose by the Nobility, Clergy, and Burgesses, and invested with such extensive Authority, that when the King is sick, or absent, the Administration is wholly deposited in their Hands, and all Affairs of Consequence determin'd by a Majority of Voices.

Court of Justice

There is also a Senator presides in every superior Court of Justice, and under him is substituted a Vice President and four Assistants. The War-Office hath also a Senator for President, and two others for Assistants. The Land Forces, Artillery, and Fortifications, are under their Direction. The Court of Admiralty hath one of the Senators (who is also an Admiral) for its President, and he has other proper Admirals and Sea-Officers for his Assistants. The Chancery hath a Senator for President, and he hath two other Senators, the Chancellor, and three Secretaries of of State, for his Associates. It is here that all Acts of the Diet, Charters, Patents, and Treaties of Peace, are drawn up and recorded.

Treasury

The Treasury hath also a Senator for President, assisted with another Senator, and Counsellors of the Chamber: To them all those that are concern'd in the publick Revenues are accountable, and the publick Chest is committed to their Care. Another Office is the College of Mines; here is a Senator President and four Assistants: Their Business is to see the Machines and Engines belonging to the Mines repair'd and improv'd to the best Advantage. There is also the College of Commerce, for the Regulation of Trade and Manufactures. And the first Marshal of the Court, who is also a Senator, is Comptroler of the Royal Tables, Palaces, and Stables. The Kingdom is also divided into twenty-five Precincts, or Governments, over each of which is a *Landshofding*, who takes Care to see all the Government's Lands, in his Territories, cultivated, and all judicial Sentences executed; the Collection of the publick Revenues, and the Keeping of the Royal Forests, Parks, and other Crown Lands in his Dominions, are all committed to his Care.

Court of Revision

The supreme, and finally decisive, Court in *Sweden*, to which an Appeal may be made from any Civil Court, provided the Matter in Dispute amounts to seventy Pounds or upwards, is call'd the Court of Revision: Here, besides the President of the Chancery and other Senators, the King sits in Person, when he pleases. But before any Cause, or Appeal, is suffer'd to come before this Court, it is laid before an under Court of Revision, where the Chancellor is President; if

in

in this Court they find a Cauſe worth laying before the ſuperior Court, they repreſent it as ſuch. There are alſo ſeveral inferior Courts, where Affairs are determined by Juries: But Capital Crimes are tranſmitted to the National Courts; of which there are three; one held at *Stockholm*, for *Sweden*; one at *Jencoping*, for *Gothland*; one for *Finland*, held at *Abo*: In each of theſe alſo a Senator is Preſident; and the Appeal lies from the inferior Courts in the Country to theſe, where the Matter in Debate does not exceed the Value of twenty Pounds; and as thoſe Courts generally ſit, Cauſes are generally ſoon determined, except ſome Golden Demurrs obſtruct the Proceedings, for they love Gold in *Sweden* almoſt as well as in other Parts of the World.

Laws of *Wisby*.

THERE are Laws yet in Memory, call'd the Laws of *Wisby*, (the Capital of the Iſland of *Gothland*) they were formerly as much regarded as the Laws of *Oleron*, and by them all Facts committed at Sea are determined.

MARRIAGE Contracts, Baſtardy, *&c.* are try'd by the Conſiſtory, of which the Biſhop is Preſident; but, whatever may be their Opinion as to the Merit or Demerit of the Cauſe, they cannot inflict Corporal Puniſhment, or give Sentence of Excommunication, *&c.* that being the Prerogative of the Governors of Provinces, and ſometimes the King reſerves that Power entirely in his own Hands. Their Law Suits, concerning Titles to Eſtates and Matters of ſuch Conſequence, are neither ſo tedious nor expenſive as in *England*; what adds moſt to the Charge of going to Law, is the extravagant Price of the Stamps upon the Paper upon which their Proceſſes and Law Proceedings are writ; this Paper is from two Pence to ſeven Shillings a Sheet, proportion'd to the Value of the Thing in Diſpute; but other Charges are not great, every Man being permitted to plead his own Cauſe, and not obliged to depend upon a Perſon to ſpeak for him, who knows nothing of the Matter but what he is told; however if they deſire the Aſſiſtance of thoſe learned in the Law, they are not deny'd them; and probably the firſt Deſign of the Inſtitution of Lawyers was only to aſſiſt and adviſe thoſe who did not care to truſt to their own Judgments in ſpeaking for themſelves. And in *Sweden*, to this Day, they admit of no Council, or Advocates, in Civil or Criminal Cauſes; and the Practice of the Law is held in ſuch Contempt, that no Gentleman will undertake it.

Theft.

THEFT is puniſh'd with perpetual Slavery, the Criminal being condemn'd during Life to the Service of the Crown, and that in the moſt ſervile Labour, as carrying Wood and Stone to repair the Fortifications, and the like Drudgery. He wears a Collar of Iron, Night and Day, about his Neck, to which there is a little Bell fix'd, which rings upon the leaſt Motion, and expoſes him wherever he goes. If two Perſons fight a Duel, and one of them be kill'd, the Surviver is always puniſh'd with Death; but if neither of them be kill'd, they are both impriſon'd for two Years, being allow'd nothing but Bread and Water, and before they are diſcharg'd pay a Fine of a thouſand Crowns beſides.

THE National Court, call'd by ſome the Court of Honour, orders, That where an Affront is given the Offender do make a Recantation, and publickly beg Pardon. But for Capital Crimes, as Murder, double Adultery, Burning of Houſes, Witchcraft, *&c.* if the Criminal be a Man, he is hang'd, if a Woman, ſhe is beheaded, or, where the Fact is aggravated by Circumſtances, the Criminal is burnt, quarter'd, or hang'd in Chains, or the like; and when a Nobleman commits a Capital Crime, he is ſhot to Death.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Religion and Learning of the Swedes; *alſo of their Marriages, their Children, and what Share they have in the Eſtates of their Parents; and ſome Account of their Manner of burying their Dead.*

THE *Swediſh* Hiſtories relate, that near *Upſal*, to the Northward of *Stockholm*, was the famous Temple of the *Trium-Deat*, or three Pagan Gods, *Woden*, *Thor*, and *Friga*, formerly as much reſorted to as the Temple of *Jeruſalem* by the Chriſtians, or that at *Mecca* by the Mahometans. And whether we in *England* deriv'd our Pagan Superſtition from the *Swedes* and *Goths* is uncertain, but the *Goths* and *Engliſh* did certainly once worſhip the ſame Heathen Deities; and, as if the Generality of the *Engliſh* continued to pay ſome Reſpect to the original Paganiſm of the Nation, they ſtill retain the Names of thoſe venerable Deities, and, to perpetuate their Memory, have attributed to every one of the three above-mention'd one Day of the Week; as, to the Pagan God *Woden* they give the fourth Day of the Week, and call it *Wedneſday*; to *Thor* the Fifth, or *Thurſday*; and to *Friga* the Sixth, and call it *Friday*; and if to them we add what the Aſtrologers have done, who alledge that *Saturn* governs *Saturday*, the Sun *Sunday*, and the Moon *Monday*, and therefore call them after the Names of their reſpective Planets or Governors, not to ſay Gods, we ſhall find that the Pagans and Aſtrologers have, between them, furniſh'd the *Engliſh* with Names for every Day in the Week, *Sunday* itſelf not excepted. It is not ſo ſurprizing that theſe Pagan Names ſhould be embrac'd here before Chriſtianity was known amongſt us, as it is that thoſe Terms of Heatheniſm have not been extirpated ſince.

THE *Swediſh* Hiſtorians themſelves relate, that Chriſtianity was firſt planted in that Country by *Engliſh* Miſſionaries, the chief of whom was *Sigifred* Archbiſhop of *York*, who quitted that See to become the Apoſtle of the *Goths*, and ſuffer'd Martyrdom, with three or four of his Nephews under their Pagan Government, as *Eskil*, and other *Engliſh* Miſſionaries, did under the *Swedes*.

The Reformation.

THE Reformation was begun in the Sixteenth Century, in the Reign of *Guſtavus Ericſon*, of whoſe Life ſee more in Chap. V. The prevailing Religion here is *Lutheraniſm*, and it may even be ſaid to be the eſtabliſh'd Religion, for they will not ſuffer any other Denomination of Chriſtians, whether Natives or Foreigners, to exerciſe their Religion in *Sweden*; and ſo ſtrictly are they bent

againſt thoſe of any other Perſuaſion, that when the Lord *Carteret* was Ambaſſador at the Court of *Sweden*, a Chaplain of his dying, they would neither allow him Chriſtian Burial in their own Way, nor ſuffer the *Engliſh* to read their Funeral Service at the Grave; and this Denial was by the direct Order of the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, who would not ſuffer the *Swediſh* Clergy ſo much as to aſſiſt at his Funeral; and, which was a greater Proof of their Ingratitude than of their Strictneſs in Religion, the *Engliſh* Fleet was there at the ſame Time, to defend the *Swedes* from the Ravages of the *Moſcovites*.

THE Archbiſhop of *Upſal* is Primate of *Sweden*, and is the only Archbiſhop of the *Lutheran* Perſwaſion, having eight or ten Suffragans under him. The Revenues of the Clergy are but mean; the Archbiſhop hath not above four hundred Pounds a Year, and the other Biſhops in Proportion. The Number of Churches, both in *Sweden* and *Finland* together, amount to above two thouſand. The Clergy have but one Third of the Tythe, and a ſmall Portion of the Glebe, the reſt having been ſeiz'd for the Crown at the Reformation.

BEFORE the late Regulation, the King had moſt of the Eccleſiaſtical Preferments in his own diſpoſing, and was little leſs than Arbitrary both in Church and State, but now he has not the diſpoſing of one ſingle Biſhoprick without the Conſent of the Senate; and for private Churches and Livings they are now in a great Meaſure at the Diſpoſal of the Pariſhioners.

THE *Swedes* are ſo tenacious of their Religion, which is the *Lutheran*, as above obſerv'd, that if any Perſon forſake it, and turn to any other Religion, he muſt be baniſh'd, and forfeit his Right of Inheritance, both for himſelf and his Poſterity; but the Execution of the Eccleſiaſtical Laws are not ſolely in the Hands of the Clergy, but jointly in the Eccleſiaſtical and Civil Power, inſomuch that they cannot pronounce a Sentence of Excommunication without the Conſent of th King and Senate.

Their Learning.

IN bringing up, or educating, their Youth, they generally prefer Arms before Arts, for which Reaſon their Academies are not much frequented; for few apply to the Univerſities to be qualify'd for Holy Orders, but thoſe who have ſcarce any other Way to procure themſelves Bread. The Law they hold to be a contemptible uſeleſs Profeſſion; every one being allow'd to plead his own Cauſe, and all the Proceſs being in their own Language, that thoſe who are Maſters of Juſtice and Reaſon have no farther need of having the Law explain'd to them, nor do they want any to plead for them, as ſuppoſing that the aggriev'd Perſon, who knows beſt the Circumſtances of his own Caſe, is the moſt proper to plead his own Cauſe, eſpecially as there is no need of School Learning or the original Languages to expreſs their Sentiments by.

Univerſities.

THEIR Univerſities are but of a late ſtanding, eſpecially that at *Upſal* has not been eſtabliſh'd much above three hundred Years. The Chancellor is always one of the Prime Miniſters of State, and whoever is Archbiſhop of *Upſal* is always Vice Chancellor; there are about twenty Profeſſors, at a hundred and fifty Pounds a Year each, and the Rector is always one choſe out of that Number; there are about ſeven or eight hundred Students, fifty of whom are maintain'd by the Crown; the reſt, except thoſe maintain'd by Perſons of Quality, ſubſiſt upon Charity, which is given them in Corn, dry'd Fleſh or Fiſh, or Butter, *&c.* they live in private Houſes, and are not diſtinguiſh'd by any Dreſs. The Univerſity of *Finland* is after the ſame Model, but not ſo numerous: There is alſo another at *Landen* in *Schonen*. There is a Free-School in every Diocels to qualify Boys for the Univerſity.

Antiquities.

THERE are not many Monuments of Antiquity, and amongſt thoſe few there are ſome Funeral Inſcriptions roughly cut in Stone, in a *Runick* Character, and in the old *Gothick* Language, but without any Date. What is moſt valuable among them is a Manuſcript Copy of a Tranſlation of the Goſpel, according to all the four Evangeliſts, into the *Gothick* Language, done twelve or thirteen hundred Years ago, by the Biſhop of the *Goths* in *Thrace*. *Guſtavus Adolphus* was a great Patron of Learning, which was further encouraged by his Daughter, Queen *Chriſtiana*, by whoſe Means ſeveral ingenious Foreigners were encouraged to ſettle there, to the great Advantage and Improvement of the *Swediſh* Nation.

Language.

THE common Language of *Sweden* is a Dialect of the antient *Teutonick*, ſomething like that of the *Germans* or *Danes*, but rougher; but the Language uſed by the better Sort, in writing, is generally *French* or *High Dutch*.

Marriages.

IN *Sweden* there is ſuch Proviſion made againſt ſtolen or clandeſtine Marriages, that no Perſon, of what Rank ſoever, can marry without firſt having the Banes lawfully publiſh'd in the Pariſh Church, nor can any Diſpenſation from the Biſhop ſupply its Place. The Men look upon their Wives here as ſo much their Inferiors, that they are kept at the Diſtance of Slaves rather than as Boſom Friends, or Bedfellows.

BY the Laws of *Sweden* the Father's Eſtate is divided among his Children, every Son, without any regard to Seniority, has twice as much as a Daughter, only as to an acquired Eſtate the Father may give the one Tenth of it to whom he pleaſes.

Funerals.

THEY ſo much affect pompous Funerals, that if at a Perſon's Deceaſe the ſurviving Relations are not able at preſent to furniſh out ſuch a Funeral as they deſire, they depoſite the Corps in a Vault a Month or two, *&c.* under Pretence of making Preparation for the Interment; but it ſometimes lies there for Years, and the People's Expectations being tired out, the Burial is forgot, and inſtead of a pompous Funeral there is none at all.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE KINGDOMS OF *Denmark* and *Norway*.

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation, Extent, and Boundaries, of Denmark *and* Norway; *alſo of their Seas, Lakes, and Rivers; with the Provinces into which they are divided, and the chief Towns therein contain'd.*

ALTHOUGH *Denmark* and *Norway* were formerly diſtinct Kingdoms, yet being now both under the Dominion of one Prince, it is thought moſt proper to treat of them both under the ſame Head, but with a due Regard to their reſpective Situation and Diviſions, *&c.*

South-Lat. *Denmark*, including the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, is bounded on the North by the Sea, called *Schagerrack*, or, by the *Engliſh*, *Cattegate*; it is the Entrance into the *Baltick*, between the *Scaw*, or North Part of *Jutland*, and the *Naze* of *Norway*; and on the Eaſt it is bounded by the *Baltick Sea*; it is bounded on the South-Weſt by the River *Elbe*, which goes up to *Hamburgh*, and divides *Holſtein* from the Dutchy of *Bremen*; and on the South-Eaſt it is bounded by the Dutchy of *Saxlawenburgh*. The Counties of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt*, in *Germany*, belong alſo to *Denmark*, tho' ſeparated from it by the Dutchy of *Bremen*.

Norway is alſo ſeparated from *Denmark* by the *Cattegate*, which bounds *Norway* on the South; it is bounded by the Main Ocean on the North and Weſt, and on the Eaſt by *Sweden* and *Swediſh Lapland*, from which it is ſeparated by the *Dolſrine Hills*; it is about eight hundred Miles in Length, and one hundred in Breadth. The Northermoſt Part of *Norway* is exceſſive cold, eſpecially within the Polar Circle, but the Southern Part of it is more temperate, being in a leſs ſevere Latitude.

The Seas bordering upon the *Daniſh* Dominions are, 1. the *German Ocean*, between *Denmark* and *Norway* on the Eaſt, and *Great Britain* on the Weſt; 2. the *Northern Ocean*; 3. the *Baltick*, the *Sound* and the *Cattegate*. The *Sound* flows between the Continent of *Schonen* and the Iſland of *Zeland*. In the narroweſt Part, or Entrance, of the *Sound* is the Town and Fort of *Elſinore*, and over-againſt it, on the Eaſt or *Swediſh* Side, is *Elſinburg*, or *Helſinburg*; between theſe Two the Ships ſail into the *Sound* for the *Baltick*.

The *Swedes*, being in Poſſeſſion of the Eaſtern Shore of the *Sound*, as the *Danes* are of the Weſtern, were exempted from paying any Duty to the *Danes* for paſſing the *Sound*, till the Peace in the Year 1721, when they agreed to pay to *Denmark* for paſſing the *Sound* as other Nations did; but as to the Grand Fleets of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* they ask no Leave, nor pay any Acknowledgment to the *Danes* for paſſing the *Sound*, the *Danes* not being able to diſpute the Paſſage with them, nor does it appear reaſonable that any Acknowledgment ſhould be paid to the *Dane* more than to the *Swede* for paſſing of the *Sound*, the *Dane* having but one Side, and the *Swede* the other.

There are many fine Lakes in *Denmark*, in which are plenty of Fiſh. Remarkable Rivers are, 1. The *Elbe*, which is properly a River of *Germany*, but is the Boundary of *Denmark*; 2. The *Eyder*, which riſes in the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, and running Weſtward, meets with the River *Iron*, which riſes in the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, after which the united Rivers fall into the Sea, near *Tonningben*; 3. The River *Trave* riſes in the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, and running Eaſt by *Lubeck*, falls into the *Baltick* at *Travemund*. The chief Ports in *Norway*, upon the *German*, or *Weſtern Ocean*, are *Bergen*, in ſixty Degrees odd Minutes, and *Drontheim*, in ſixty-four Degrees of North Latitude. *Copenhagen* is in the Iſland of *Zeland*, and is the Capital of *Denmark*, and for Strength and Commodiouſneſs is eſteem'd one of the fineſt Harbours in *Europe*.

The grand Diviſion of *Denmark* may be reckon'd under theſe ſix Heads, *viz.* 1. *Denmark Proper*; 2. The Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, or *South Jutland*; Diviſion of *Denmark*.

3. The

3. The Dutchy of *Holstein*; 4. The *German* Provinces of *Oldenburgh* and *Delminhurst*; 5. The Kingdom of *Norway*; 6. The Island of *Iceland*, and other Islands scatter'd up and down in the *North Sea*, and belonging to *Denmark*.

DENMARK.

I. What is properly call'd *Denmark*? The Island of *Zeland* is the principal Part of it; of which, and of the whole Kingdom, *Copenhagen* is the Capital. The Island of *Zeland* is about sixty Miles in Length; it is bounded on the East by the *Sound*, which separates it from *Schonen*; on the West by the *Great Belt*, which divides it from the Island *Funen*; it has the Islands of *Laland*, *Falster*, and *Mona* on the South; and the Sea call'd *Cattegate* on the North.

Copenhagen. 1. *Copenhagen* the Capital of *Denmark*; it is situate in the Island of *Zeland*, in between fifty-five and fifty-six Degrees of North Latitude, and near thirteen Degrees of Longitude East from *London*; it is near the Eastern Shore of the Island of *Zeland*; it is computed to be about the Bigness of *Bristol*; it is a strong Place, standing in the Middle of a Marshy Ground, and fortified after the modern Way. The Harbour is surrounded by Fortifications, and the Entrance is so narrow that it will not suffer above one Ship at a Time to sail in; and a Citadel on one Side, and a Blockhouse on the other, commands the Harbour; there is a wooden Gallery round the whole Harbour, close to which the Ships lie; and the Port will contain near five hundred Sail, and secure them from Storms and Enemies, if not too powerful; for, notwithstanding their Security against a weak Opposer, yet when the *English* and *Dutch* Fleets threatned them with a Bombardment in the Beginning of the late War, when the the *Danes*, together with the *Moscovites* and *Poles*, jointly fell upon *Charles* XII. (the then young) King of *Sweden*; I say, when the *English* undertook to decide the Quarrel, by threatning their Capital and Harbour with a Bombardment, as above, they obliged them to desist from their intended Enterprize.

These Seas are sometimes so hard frozen, that the *Swedes* have march'd an Army over the *Sound* by the Help of the Ice, and actually besieged *Copenhagen*; and as it is a Morass, cut through with Dikes, it is probably of easier Access in Winter than in Summer for that Reason.

Buildings. The Buildings are generally mean; the King's Palace is one of the meanest and worst contriv'd of any in *Europe*, but he has a Pleasure-House and Gardens at some Distance which are very much admired. Of all the Publick Buildings the Citadel, the Exchange, the Arsenal, but especially the Observatory, is most taken Notice of; in this last is the Celestial Globe, of six Foot Diameter, made by the Directions and for the Use of *Tycho Brahe*, the famous Astronomer. The Market-Place is spacious, and the Streets broad. There are nine or ten Churches, besides the Cathedral, which is dedicated to St. *Mary*; in this their Kings are usually crown'd; it has a lofty Spire, cover'd with Copper. Here is also an University, and an Academy for Martial Exercises, Modern Languages, and Mathematicks, but not plenty of remarkable Antiquities. The first Castle that was built upon the Island was built in the Year 1168, for a Defence against Pyrates, who then abounded in those Seas; and the People resorting thither, it soon grew into a populous Town, and was formerly an Archbishoprick, but is now reduced.

Finak. The little Island of *Finak*, or *Amak*, is so near *Zeland*, that it is join'd to *Copenhagen* by a Bridge; it affords abundance of Fowls, Venison, Corn, Milch-Cattle, Garden-Stuff, &c. which supply *Copenhagen* Market with those Sort of Provisions. This little Island was some time ago given to a Colony of *North Hollanders*; who for their great Skill in that sort of Business, were sent for and settled there, to make Butter and Cheese for the Court; and their Posterity yet remain there, and in a great Measure retain the Habit, Language, and Customs of their Ancestors, and value themselves so much upon their Cleanliness and Industry, that they think it beneath them to inter-marry or mix with the *Danes*, having Privileges conferr'd upon them on Account of their being useful at Court.

Elsinore. 2. To the Northward of *Copenhagen*, about fifteen Miles from it, is *Elsinore*, or *Helsingor*, over-against *Helsingburgh*, on the North Entrance and narrowest Part of the *Sound*; and about a Quarter of a Mile from *Elsinore*, is the strong, and by some call'd impregnable, Castle of *Cronenburgh*; but, strong as it is, it was taken by *Charles Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, in the Year 1658, but by Treaty restor'd to the *Danes* in the Year 1660. *Cronenburgh.*

Fredericksburgh. 3. *Fredericksburgh* is situate twelve Miles South-Westward from *Elsinore*: Here the King of *Denmark* has a Palace and a Castle, remarkable for its Situation in the Middle of a Lake. 4. *Roschild*, formerly the Metropolis of *Denmark*, twenty Miles West from *Copenhagen*, at the Bottom of a Gulph of the Sea; there is nothing now remarkable in it, except the Ruins of an old Cathedral, in which are several, and some very magnificent, Tombs of the antient *Danish* Kings. 5. *Holbech*, at the Bottom of another Gulph, eighteen Miles to the Westward of *Roschild*. 6. *Kallenburgh*, a Place of pretty good Trade, near the Sea, on the North-West Part of the Island of *Zeland*. There are other Towns of less Note, and a great many Villages, but those already mention'd are the chief.

Funen. The Island *Funen* is the next considerable Island in *Denmark*; it lies on the West Side of *Zeland*, being separated from it by the *Great Belt*, a Streight of about twenty Miles over; it is bounded on the West by the *Lesser Belt*; it hath the Island of *Samsoe* on the North, and the *Baltick Sea* on the South. The chief Town is *Odensee*, situate about the Middle of the Island; it was once a flourishing, but is now a declining, Place. 2. *Newburgh*, a good Harbour, on the East Side of the Island; it is yet a fortified Town, and was once the Residence of the *Danish* Kings. 3. *Swinbergh*, a pretty good Harbour, on the South-East Part of the Island; here the *Swedes* pass'd over the Ice in the Year 1658, when they went to besiege *Copenhagen*. 4. *Middlefar*, on the West Side of the Island; here is the common Passage to *Kolding* in *Jutland*; here the King of *Sweden*'s Army march'd over the Ice in the Year 1658, when he invaded this Island. Besides those Towns there are between two and three hundred Villages in the Island of *Funen*.

Langland. The Island of *Langland* lies in the South Part of the *Great Belt*; it is about thirty Miles long, and eight broad. The chief Town is *Rudkoping*, on the West Side of the Island, and towards the South End of it; besides which there is no Place of any considerable Note, only about sixteen Villages.

Laland. The Island of *Laland* is on the South Side of *Zeland*, having *Langland* on the West, and the *Baltick Sea* on the East and South; it is about thirty Miles long, and twenty broad. The chief Town is *Nankow*, situate at the Bottom of a Gulph, or Inlet, which is on the West Side of the Island.

Falster. The Island of *Falster* is also on the South Side of *Zeland*, and on the East Side of *Laland*, being separated from the latter only by a small Streight, like a River, and has *Mona* on the North-East of it; it is about twenty Miles long, and sixteen broad. Chief Towns are *Nykopping* on the West Side

Side, and *Stubkopping* on the North Side, which last is the common Place of Passage between this Island and *Zeland*.

Mona is an Island on the South-East Side of *Zeland*, having *Falster* on the South-West of it, and the *Sound* and *Falsterborn* on the North-East. *Mona.*

Arroe is a small Island on the South Side of *Funen*; whose chief Place is *Koping*, on the South Part of the Island. *Arroe.*

Bornholm is the Eastermost Island of any the *Danes* have in Possession; it lies in the *Baltick Sea*, between the Shores of *Schonen*, on the North-West, and *Pomerania* on the South-East of it; it is about twenty Miles long, and twelve broad. Chief Towns are *Sandwick*, on the North Coast, and *Rottum* and *Nexia*, on the South. *Bornholm.*

Anbout and *Lessou* are noted Islands in the *Cattegate*, between the *Scaw* and the *Sound*. These are the most remarkable Islands; but besides these there are abundance of other Islands, so small, that if they have any Names, they are not all known to the *English* Geographers; but it is said that to *Funen* only, exclusive of all the rest, there belong no less than ninety habitable Islands. But now we shall leave the Islands, and pass over to the Main Continent of *Jutland*. *Anbout and Lessou.*

II. *North Jutland*, the Country of the antient *Jutes*, or *Juts*. *North Jutland* is bounded by the *German Ocean* on the North and West, by the Dutchy of *Sleswick* on the South, and on the East it is bounded by the *Cattegate* and the *Little Belt*. These People the *Romans* call'd *Cimbri*, and this Country, taking in also *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, they called *Cimbrica Chersonesus*, or the Peninsula of the *Cimbri*. *North Jutland* is divided into four Governments, or *Stift-Amts*, *viz.* those of 1. *Alburg*, 2. *Wiburg*, 3. *Arhusen*, and 4. *Ripen*. *North Jutland.*

1. *Alburg* is the extreme North Part of *Jutland*, bounded on the East and West by the Sea, and on the South by the Districts of *Wiburg* and *Ripen*, from which it is separated by the Gulph of *Limford*, which flows from the *Baltick*, or *Cattegate*, almost quite through to the *German Ocean*, whereby the District of *Alburg* is made a Peninsula. The Length of this Province, from North-East to South-West, is about a hundred and thirty Miles. The chief Towns of this Province are, 1. *Alburg*, on the Gulph of *Limford*, about fifteen Miles from the Eastern, or *Baltick* Shore. 2. *Nykoping*, on the Island of *Mors*, which is an Island in the North-West Part of the Gulph of *Limford*. 3. *Tysted*, on the Main Land, near the South-West Side of *Mors Island*. 4. *Seeby*, a Sea-Port, on the East Coast, between the *Scaw* and *Limford-Bay*. 5. *Schagen*, or *Scaw*, the Northermost Point of *Jutland*, and known to Mariners by the Name of the *Scaw*, or *Scaw-Point*; it is Town of good Trade, Shipping often touch here in their *Baltick* Voyages. In this Province are an hundred and sixty Parishes. *Alburg.*

2. *Wiburg*, on the South Side of the Gulph of *Limford*, between *Arhusen* on the East, and *Ripen* on the South and West. In this District is a Lake, called *Otho's Sound*, suppos'd so call'd from *Otho* the Emperor, who making an Excursion this Way, threw his Javelin into it, and thereupon call'd it by his own Name. Chief Towns are, 1. *Wiburg*, about the Middle of the Province; it was formerly a Bishop's See, and now holds a Court of Justice, and receives and determines Appeals from inferior Courts. 2. *Harkier*, about twenty-five Miles to the Northward of *Wiburg*. 3. *Nybye*, about ten Miles North-East of *Wiburg*. These Places are remarkable for great Fairs of fine Horses. In this Province are sixteen Bailiwicks, and upwards of two hundred Parishes. *Wiburg.*

3. *Arhusen* is bounded by *Wiburg* on the North, the *Baltick* on the East and South-East, and by *Ripen* on the West; it is about sixty Miles long, and thirty broad. Chief Towns are, 1. *Aarhus*, on the Coast of the *Baltick*, and North from the Island *Funen*; it was a Bishop's See; and the Cathedral, which is yet standing, is a fine Piece of Architecture, and in it are several fine Tombs of Bishops and Noblemen. 2. *Randers*, about fifteen Miles to the Northward of *Aarhus*, upon the River *Gudden*, and near the *Baltick*: it is a Town of good Trade. There are upwards of three hundred Villages in this Province. *Arhusen.*

4. *Ripen* has *Wiburg* on the North, *Arhusen* on the East, the Dutchy of *Sleswick* on the South, and the *German Ocean* on the West. Chief Towns are, 1. *Ripen*, upon the River *Nipsick*, or *Nipsau*, which falls into the *German Ocean*, and forms a very good Harbour; it was formerly a Bishop's See, and an University, and is now a Place of some Trade. The Cathedral is a magnificent Building, all of hewn Stone, with an extraordinary high Steeple, which serves as a Sea Mark to Mariners. 2. *Kolding*, situate upon a Creek of the *Little Belt*, or *Baltick*, over-against *Funen*: It is a Place of good Trade; a great many Horses, Cattle, and other Merchandizes, being exported there for *Holstein* and other Parts of the *Baltick*; it is defended by a strong Castle, call'd *Arnsburg*. 3. *Frederickshodde*, a small Port, about twenty Miles to the Eastward of *Kolding*, on the West Side of the *Little Belt*. Here the King of *Sweden* pass'd over the Ice with his Army, in the Year 1658, when he invaded *Funen* and *Zeland*, and laid Siege to *Copenhagen*. 4. *Weil*, about fifteen Miles to the Northward of *Kolding*; a compact trading City, and a very good Harbour. 5. *Warde*, about twenty Miles to the Northward of *Ripen*, upon a River which falls into the *German Ocean*. 6. *Ringkoping*, about thirty Miles to the Northward of *Warde*, a tolerable Harbour. *Ripen.*

II. The Dutchy of *Sleswick*, or *South Jutland*, has *North Jutland* on the North, the *Baltick Sea* on the East, *Holstein* on the South, and the *German Ocean* on the West; it is about sixty Miles long, and forty-five broad. This is under the joint Sovereignty of the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holstein*, only some of the Bailiages are under their distinct respective Sovereigns. Chief Towns are, 1. *Sleswick*, on the River *Sley*, which falls into the *Baltick*, about twenty Miles North-West from *Kiel*; formerly a Bishop's See, and now a Place of great Resort by foreign Merchants. A little to the Southward of this Town are the Ruins of the Wall, which went quite cross the Country, from the *Baltick Sea* to the *German Ocean*, to prevent the Incursions of the *Saxons*. 2. *Gottorp*, the Residence, or Palace, of the Duke of *Holstein*; it stands in the Middle of a Lake, about fifteen Miles West of *Sleswick*. This is accounted one of the finest Palaces in the North, having the Advantage of fine Gardens, Cascades, Fountains, &c. here is also a noble Library, and a fine Collection of Rarities, particularly a Globe of Copper, of ten Foot and a half Diameter, with a Sphere, wherein the Sun moves in the Ecliptick, and all the Planets are carried about by Wheels, turn'd by a Stream which falls from an adjacent Mountain. But this Palace was much defac'd by the *Danes*, in the Year 1688, who unjustly seiz'd it and the Duke's Person but the *English* and other Powers engaging in the Quarrel, compell'd the *Danes* to desist, and to make Restitution in the Year 1689. 3. *Ekrenford*, at the Bottom of a small Gulph in the *Baltick*, between *Sleswick* and *Kiel*; a good Harbour, and a Place of some Trade. 4. *Frederickstadt*, on the River *Eyder*, about thirty Miles West of *Ekrenford*. Here it was that the Duke of *Holstein* attempted to fix a Trade for *Indian* and *Persian* Silks, and sent a Dutchy of *Slesw.*

famous Embaſſy to *Perſia* for that Purpoſe. 5. *Tonningen*, ſituate on the ſame River *Eyder*, between *Frederickſtadt* and the Sea; this is one of the ſtrongeſt Fortreſſes belonging to the Duke of *Holſtein*. 6. *Huſum*, upon a Bay in the *German Ocean*, to the Northward of *Tonningen*. 7. *Flensburgh*, upon a Gulph in the *Baltick*, about fifteen Miles to the Northward of *Sleſwick*, and twenty Miles North-Eaſt from *Huſum*; it is a large City, and ſo convenient a Harbour, that, as it conſiſts of but one Street, the Merchants can load and unload at their own Doors. The ſmall Tract of the Country between *Sleſwick* and *Flensburgh* is extremely pleaſant, and is remarkable for being the Seat of the antient *Angles*, who invaded *Britain*, and gave it their own Name *Anglia*, which Name it yet bears, though now commonly call'd *England*. 8. *Luxburg*, or *Gluxburg*, a little Town and Caſtle, from whence the Dukes of *Holſtein Gluxburg* take their Title. 9. *Haderſleben*, a Sea-Port in a ſmall Gulph of the *Baltick*, thirty Miles to the Northward of *Flensburg*, a well-built Town. 10. *Tunderen*, a Port on the *German Ocean*, twenty-five Miles North of *Huſum*. 11. *Lohem Cloſter*, ten Miles North of *Tunderen*. 12. *Sunderburg*, on the South Part of the Iſland of *Alſen*, in the *Baltick Sea*, a ſtrong Town, and the uſual Reſidence of the Dukes of *Holſtein*. 13. *Nordburg*, on the North Part of that Iſland which gives Title to the Dukes of *Holſtein Nordburg*. There are alſo ſeveral Iſlands, both upon the Eaſt and Weſt Coaſts of *Jutland*, but they are of little Note.

Dutchy of *Holſtein*.

III. The Dutchy of *Holſtein* is a Fief of the Empire; and hence not only the Duke of *Holſtein* is deem'd a Prince of the Empire, but the King of *Denmark* is alſo accounted ſo, as being a Competitor with the Duke of *Holſtein* in that Government. The Dutchy of *Holſtein* is bounded on the North by the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, on the Eaſt by the *Baltick*, on the South by the *Elbe*, and on the Weſt by the *German Ocean*; it is about a hundred Miles from Eaſt to Weſt, and fifty from North to South, if we include *Ditmarſh*, *Wagerland*, and *Stormar*. I ſhall firſt treat of *Holſtein Proper*, and then of the other three diſtinctly.

Holſtein Proper.

Holſtein Proper, as excluſive of the other three, contains the inland Parts of the Country between *Stormar* and *Jutland*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Kiel*, ſituate in a Gulph in the *Baltick*, between *Lubeck* and *Sleſwick*, fifty Miles to the Northward of *Hamburgh*, and about forty North-Weſt from *Lubeck*; it is a good Harbour, a populous trading Town, and defended by a ſtrong Caſtle; it is an Univerſity, founded in the Year 1669; and here is held the annual Aſſembly of the States of *Holſtein*. 2. *Rensburg*, upon, and almoſt ſurrounded by, the River *Eyder*, twenty Miles to the Weſtward of *Kiel*: it is one of the ſtrongeſt Forts in *Holſtein*. 3. *Wilſter*, ſituate on a River which falls into the *Stoor*, about thirty Miles South-Eaſt from *Rensburg*. 4. *Itzehoa*, a little to the Eaſtward of *Wilſter*, ſituate on the River *Stoor*. 5. *Newmunſter*, near the Mouth of the River *Stoor*.

Ditmarſh.

The Province of *Ditmarſh* has *Holſtein Proper* on the North-Eaſt, the *German Ocean* on the Weſt, and the River *Elbe* to the Southward. Chief Towns are, 1. *Meldorp*, a Town of good Trade, ſituate on the *German Ocean*, about thirty Miles South-Weſtward from *Rensburg*. 2. *Lunden*, near the Mouth of the River *Eyder*, fifteen Miles North-Weſt from *Meldorp*.

Stormar.

The Province of *Stormar* is a low marſhy Country, bounded and divided from *Holſtein* by the River *Stoor* on the North, and by the River *Elbe* and *Lunenburg* on the South; it abounds with Dykes and Banks to keep out the Sea and drain the Land, and yet it is frequently overflow'd. Chief Towns are, 1. *Altona*, about a Mile from *Hamburgh*; it was formerly a pretty Town; it hath been very much improv'd and encouraged by the *Danes*, in hopes it might in Time riſe to the Dignity and Trade of *Hamburgh*; which probably the *Hamburghers* were apprehenſive of, for in the laſt War it was burnt down to the Ground by the *Swedes*, and it was conjectured it was done at the Inſtigation of the *Hamburghers*, to prevent its rivalling them in Trade and Riches, to their Detriment: However, *Altena* is now rebuilt more beautiful than ever. 2. *Gluckſtadt*, a ſmall City upon the *Elbe*, about thirty Miles North-Weſt of *Hamburgh*; it is a ſtrong Place, and here the *Dane* had form'd a Project to lay an Impoſt upon all Ships ſailing to and from *Hamburgh*, but there were ſo many Powers concern'd in that Trade, that the Oppoſition he met with prov'd too many for him: He has formerly forced the *Hamburghers* to raiſe him conſiderable Sums of Money, he claiming a Right to the Dominion of that City; it was indeed in the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, but is now a free Imperial City. 3. *Cremp*, about ſix Miles to the Northward of *Gluckſtadt*. 4. *Pennyburgh*, about ten Miles to the Northward of *Hamburgh*, remarkable for nothing but giving Name to the Diſtrict about it.

Wagerland.

The Province of *Wagerland* is bounded by *Holſtein* on the Weſt, and by the *Baltick* and the *land Trave* on the other three Sides; it is about fifty Miles in Length from North to South, and thirty in Breadth from Eaſt to Weſt. Chief Towns are, 1. *Segeburgh*, on the *Trave*, twelve Miles Weſt of *Lubeck*. 2. *Oldenſloe*, on the River *Trave*, about Midway between *Lubeck* and *Segeburgh*. 3. *Bloen*, ſituate on a Lake which almoſt ſurrounds it; it is about twenty Miles to the Northward of *Segeburgh*; it gives Title to the Dukes of *Holſtein Bloen*. 4. *Oldenburgh*, near the *Baltick*, on the North-Eaſt Part of this Country, formerly a Place of good Trade, but the Harbour is now chok'd up.

Delmenhurſt and Oldenburgh.

The Counties of *Delmonhurſt* and *Oldenburgh* are Part of the *Daniſh* Territories in *Germany*, on the South Side of the *Elbe*, and ſeparated from the reſt of the Continent of *Denmark* by the Dutchy of *Bremen*; they are bounded towards the North by a Bay of the *German Ocean*, on the Eaſt by the River *Weſer*, by the Biſhoprick of *Munſter* towards the South, and by the County of *Embden* on the Weſt; being about ſixty Miles long, and thirty broad. The chief Town of the firſt is *Delmonhurſt*, on the River *Delm*, about ten Miles Weſtward from *Bremen*; and the chief Town in the County of *Oldenburgh* is alſo of the ſame Name, *Oldenburgh*, on the River *Hund*, not far above where it falls into the *Weſer*. The *Hund* is navigable up to *Oldenburgh*, which creates ſome Trade to the Town. Theſe two Provinces lie in that Part of the Weſt of *Germany*, call'd *Weſtphalia*.

Norway.

NORWAY is ſeparated from *Denmark* by the *Cattegate*; it is divided into the four Governments of, 1. *Wardhuys*, or *Finmark*, 2. *Drontheim*, 3. *Aggerhuys*, and 4. *Bergen*.

Wardhuys.

1. *Wardhuys*, for by ſome, *Norwegian Lapland*, is bounded on the North and Weſt by the Sea, on the South by *Swediſh*, and on the Eaſt by *Moſcovite Lapland*; in this Province is the *North Cape*, the Northermoſt Part of all *Europe*. The chief Town is *Wardhuys*, on an Iſland, about fifteen Miles in Circumference, on the North-Eaſt Coaſt of the Main Continent of *Wardhuys*; here is an old Caſtle, the Reſidence of the Governor, and a few Cottages, call'd the Town of *Norwegian Lapland*: There can ſcarce be ſaid to be any Villages, being ſeldom more than two or three Cottages together; only upon the Iſland of *Maggeroe*, (the Northermoſt Point whereof makes the *North Cape*, ſo well known to the Mariners

trading

trading to *Ruſſia*,) and upon ſome other adjacent Iſlands, there are Churches built by the *Danes*, but moſt of the vulgar Natives continue to be ignorant Pagans.

2. The Government of *Drontheim* lies alſo next the Sea, having the great *Northern Ocean* on the Weſt, *Wardhuys* on the North, *Sweden* and *Swediſh Lapland* on the Eaſt, and the Province of *Bergen* on the South; it is about five hundred Miles long, and one hundred broad. This Country was deliver'd up to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Roſchild*, in the Year 1651, but reſtor'd to the *Danes*, by the Treaty of *Copenhagen*, 1660. Chief Towns are, 1 *Drontheim*, at the Mouth of the River *Nyder*, which falls into a large Bay in the *Northern Ocean*, call'd therefore *Drontheim Bay*; it lies in ſixty-four Degrees odd Minutes of North Latitude, and between ten and eleven Degrees of Longitude Eaſt from *London*: It was formerly an Archbiſhop's See, and the Seat of the Kings of *Norway*, but it has declined very much from its former Grandeur; however, there is a Caſtle ſtill remaining, where the Governor reſides; it has ſtill a Trade for a coarſe Sort of Tar, but far inferior for Goodneſs to the *Swediſh* Tar, exported from *Stockholm*. 2. *Opdale*, at the Bottom of a narrow Bay, about thirty Miles Eaſt from the *Ocean*, and one hundred Miles South from *Drontheim*. 3. *Romſdale*, about thirty Miles to the Southward of *Opdale*. 4. *Solendale*, on another Bay, about thirty Miles to the Southward, or rather South-Weſt, of *Romſdale*.

Aggerhuys. 3. The Government of *Aggerhuys*, the Southermoſt Province of *Norway*, extending as far South as the *Naze*, and conſequently bounded on the South by the *Cattegate*, on the Weſt by the Province of *Bergen*, on the North by *Drontheim*, and on the Eaſt by *Sweden*; it is about two hundred Miles from North to South, and between forty and fifty from Eaſt to Weſt. Chief Towns are, 1. *Obſlo*, or *Auſlo*, now generally call'd *Chriſtiana*, ſituate at the Bottom of a Bay, or, as they call it, *Fuer*, between the *Naze* and *Gottenburg*, in between fifty-nine and ſixty Degrees of Latitude; it was anciently a Biſhop's See, and here are yet held the Courts of Juſtice for the Kingdom of *Norway*. Here King *James* the Sixth of *Scotland*, afterwards *James* the Firſt of *England*, ſolemniz'd his Nuptials with *Anne*, Daughter of *Frederick* King of *Denmark*, *Feb.* 23, 1589. She was, before her Marriage, upon a Voyage to *Scotland* to be married there, but, being put back by contrary Winds, King *James* went over and married her, as above. 2. *Aggerhuys*, which gives Name to the Province, is ſituate on the ſame Bay, or *Fuer*, as *Chriſtiana*, but a little to the Weſtward of it; it is a ſtrong Fortreſs, and held out a long Siege againſt the *Swedes* in the Year 1567. 3. *Frederickſtadt*, at the Mouth of the River *Glammen*, which falls into the *Baltick* about ſixty Miles South-Eaſt of *Chriſtiana*. 4. *Frederickſhall*, a ſtrong Fortreſs on the Borders of *Sweden*, a little to the Eaſtward of *Frederickſtadt*. It was at the Siege of this Place that *Charles* XII. King of *Sweden*, that Hero of the Age, loſt his Life, in the Year 1718. 5. *Saltsburg*, on the River *Drammon*, about twenty Miles North-Weſt from *Chriſtiana*; the Copper and Iron Mines of this Place make it a Town of good Trade. 6. *Tonsburg*, on the ſame Bay of *Onſlo*, to the Weſtward of *Chriſtiana*. 7. *Holien*, on the Lake of *Nordſee*, fifteen Miles North-Weſt of *Tonsburg*; remarkable for a Church not built, but hewn out of a Rock. 8. *Hammer*, eighty Miles to the Northward of *Chriſtiana*, formerly a Biſhop's See.

Bergen. 4. The Province of *Bergen*, which is the South-Weſt Part of *Norway*, has *Drontheim* on the North, *Aggerhuys* on the Eaſt, the Entrance of the *Baltick* on the South, and the great *Northern Ocean* on the Weſt; the *Naze* is the Southermoſt Point of it, from whence it extends to Latitude ſixty-three North. Chief Towns are, 1. *Bergen*, an antient Sea-Port, and a commodious Harbour, on the *German*, or *Northern Ocean*, about one hundred and forty Miles to the Northward of the *Naze of Norway*; it is almoſt ſurrounded with Mountains, but is eſteem'd one of the moſt populous, as well as beſt trading, Towns of *Norway*, and is the Reſidence of a Viceroy. 2. *Eyde*, fifteeen Miles to the Eaſtward of *Bergen*. 3. *Staffanger*, ſituate on a *Peninſula*, on the Ocean, ninety Miles to the Southward of *Bergen*; it is a ſmall City, and was once a Biſhop's See; it hath yet a tolerable Harbour, defended by a Caſtle.

Iſlands. Islands belonging to *Norway* are, 1. *Iceland*, about a hundred and fifty Leagues Weſt of *Norway*; the Artick Circle paſſes over the North Part of that Iſland, and the Eaſt End lies in about ten Degrees of Longitude Weſt from *London*; its Length from Eaſt to Weſt is about three hundred Miles, and its Breadth from North to South about one hundred and fifty Miles; it is divided into four Provinces, which take their Names, of Eaſt, Weſt, North, and South Provinces, according to their Situation. Their Mountains are always cover'd with Snow, and three of them are Volcano's, which continually throw out Fire, as other Volcano's do; the chief of which is Mount *Hecla*, which is near the South Coaſt, and about the Middle between the Eaſt and the Weſt End of that Coaſt. Chief Towns are, 1. *Skalholt*, North-Eaſt from Mount *Hecla*. 2. *Hola*, on the North Coaſt. 3. *Beredit*, to the South-Eaſt. The Viceroy reſides at the Caſtle of *Beſted*, towards the South-Weſt Part of the Iſland. Their Houſes are built of Wood, and cover'd with Skins of Beaſts, Bark of Trees, or Turf; and ſome of them have no ſettled Habitation, but wander from Place to Place, like the antient *Arabians*, or the preſent *Laplanders*.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Treats of the Persons and Habits of the Danes; *their* Genius, Temper, Learning, Diet, *and* Diversions; *also the Nature of the Soil, and Product of the Country: With an Account of their Plants, Animals, and Minerals; as also of their Trade, Manufactures,* &c.

Persons. THE *Danes* are generally strong-limb'd and well made, but inclining to a gross Shape like the *Dutch*; their Hair, for the most Part, flaxen, yellow, or red; which they take great Pains to curl, few of them wearing Perukes; and as red Hair is so common, they rather take a Pride in it, than are any way asham'd of it. The Motion of the Women is very sluggish and heavy, which may in some Measure be imputed to the Grossness of their Shape. As for their Dress, both Ladies and Gentlemen affect the *French* Fashions, only the Coldness of the Climate, in the Winter, obliges them to wrap themselves in Furs at that Season, like other Northern People; they commonly affect wearing neat clean Linnen, and had rather change often than wear it dirty.

Genius. *Denmark*, it is said, seldom produces any bright Genius; but yet to this general Rule any Person may find an Exception, if they do but consider, that the ingenious, as well as noble, *Tycho Brahe*, Lord *Knudstrop*, the famous Astronomer, who was first Author, or Inventor, of the *Tychonean* System, and made the Globe of six Foot Diameter, now at *Copenhagen*, mention'd Chap. I. was a *Dane* by Birth. But, however, they are generally as dull in their Genius as in their Motion, and neither quick to invent what they have not, or to imitate what they have seen, either in Learning or Mechanicks. Mr. *Molesworth* observes, that they are more upon a Level than most other People or Nations; for as the Country is not at present remarkable for any People of extraordinary Parts or Qualifications, or excellent for Persons in any particular Study or Art, (says he) we do not find any Enthusiasts, Mad-men, natural Fools, or whimsical People, but a certain Equality of Understanding reigns amongst them; every one plods on in the ordinary beaten Tract of common Sense, without deviating to the Right or the Left; the common People, however, generally write and read, and their Clergy usually talk *Latin*, —but not in the greatest Purity. —— Thus far Mr. *Molesworth*.

Without enquiring whether Mr. Molesworth *was a proper Judge of Mathematical Learning and Improvements, we will endeavour to give the Reader an Idea of* Tycho Brahe's *System. This Gentleman, willing to reconcile the* Ptolomaic *and the* Copernican *Systems, form'd an Hypothesis compos'd of both, allowing that the Earth stands still, and the Sun, as it appears, moves: But Experimental Observation proving the apparent Motions of the Planets to be sometimes Direct, sometimes Retrograde, and sometimes Stationary, or without any Motion at all, to make the Earth the Center of Planetary Motion, he allows the Sun to be the Center of the Planets Orbs, and that with himself, as a Center, he carries all those Orbs along with him. Tho' this System has been since proved to be false, yet it was such an ingenious Step towards a true Hypothesis, that we must either allow the* Danes *to have a common Share of Genius, or that* Tycho Brahe *was an unprecedented Instance of Ingenuity amongst them. But a Traveller commonly forms his Description of a Country from the Company that he converses with in it.*

Vices. THE Vices that the Gentry, or what may in other Words be call'd the better Sort of People, are most addicted to, are Gluttony and Drunkenness; if they are in Debt, it is not to their Bellies, for they will eat and drink for whole Days and Nights together. They who invite a Friend commonly treat him, at his first Entrance into the House, with a Dram of Brandy; at Dinner every Body has a Glass of Brandy set by their Plate, and when a Health is proposed, they do not stay to pledge one another, but when one begins they all begin, and make short Work of it, by drinking all their Glasses off at the same Moment. When Dinner is over, the Women soon retire, but the Men will sit to Intoxication, or, in Mr. *Molesworth*'s Character of them, they will *sit it out till they have lost that little Sense that comes to their Share.* Liquo The Liquors drunk by the better Sort, that can afford it, are *Rhenish* Wine, and all Sorts of *French* Wine, and Cherry-Brandy; but the poor People make themselves merry with a poor Sort of Beer, or Spirits extracted from Malt or Barley. And in *Norway* they, according to their different Abilities, regale themselves in much the same Manner; the Value of their Treats being commonly proportion'd to the Intemperance and Extravagancy used in them.

Eatin Nor to observe that they, as well as those in other Nations, are obliged to adapt their Eating to their Ability, the People of Fashion love a great Variety of Dishes: But the Country does not afford the best of Flesh-meat. Tame Fowls, or Wild Ducks. They have no Fallow Deer, Woodcocks, Pheasants, or Rabbits; and Red Deer are not to be purchas'd, being the King's Game. Their Hares, Bacon, and fresh Water Fish, are very good, but Sea Fish is scarce and ill-tasted. The common People live upon coarse Rye-bread, lean Salt-Fish, Stock-Fish, or Roots, and very bad Cheese, seldom tasting either Flesh or Fish fresh.

Tem The above quoted Mr. *Molesworth* says, that the *Danes* are mean-spirited, &c. and thus they have degenerated very much from the warlike Temper of their Ancestors; but these Accounts of them seem to be compos'd of a great Allay of Prejudice, incorporated with Matter of Fact, which, if so, spoils the Relish of the whole. The *Norwegians* undergo all Kind of Hardships, and encounter Difficulties with much more Courage and Vigour than the *Danes*; but the same Author adds, that ever since the *Danes* had *Norway*, they have depress'd the *Norwegians* and deprived them of all Opportunities of exerting their Vigour, and by Degrees reduc'd them so low, that there are now very few of the antient Nobility left in *Norway*.

THEIR Way of Travelling is either in Waggons or Sledges, or else on Horseback. There is a settled Price for Carriage, and an Officer to regulate it, and punish those who are exorbitant

in their Demands. If any Gentleman, going to undertake a Journey, can procure a Warrant from the Court for that Purpoſe, the Peaſants, or Farmers, are obliged to furniſh him with Horſes and Carriages in every Country through which he paſſes, without any Charge, in the ſame Manner as they do for the King and Court when they travel. They take their Diverſion in Sledges upon the Ice in the Winter-time.

They have plenty of Feather-beds, and it is cuſtomary for thoſe who have them, to lay one under another over them in the Winter-time. But they are very jealous of Strangers, who are Travellers, not allowing a Traveller a Room to himſelf, except he be a Nobleman, or very well known, or otherwiſe he muſt eat, drink, and ſleep, in common with the Family.

Product. The Iſland of *Zeland*, where the Capital of *Copenhagen* ſtands, produces no Bread Corn, except Rye, of which moſt of their Bread is made; and of this they have but juſt enough for their own Uſe, and none for Exportation; nor have they much Meadow or Paſture Ground, but the Graſs they have is ſweet, though but ſhort and ſcarce. It is computed that one Fourth of the Country is Foreſt, and reſerv'd for the King's Game, ſuch as Stags, Wild Boars, *&c.* and ſo ſtrictly are they protected, that no Subject dare meddle with them, tho' he finds whole Herds of them devouring his Corn, by which means the Farmers are generally great Sufferers by them. Their Cattle are ſmall, and in the Winter they are lean, being kept within Doors ſeven or eight Months, and fed, or rather juſt kept alive, with Roots, Weeds, and whatever the Owners can procure, to keep them from ſtarving; but in the Spring, or Summer, when the Graſs grows, they put them into it, ſo that what has been ſaid of *Ruſſia*, is the ſame here, (*viz.*) though they be old Cattle, the Beef is young, as being but of that Summer's Growth; but is far ſhort of *Engliſh* Beef for Service, in Salt the Fat falling away to a skinny Matter of little Subſtance. Near *Copenhagen* the Sea produces but a Scarcity of Fiſh, which ſome impute to the Water's not being ſo ſalt as in the Main Ocean, ſuppos'd to be occaſion'd by the great Number of freſh Water Rivers, which running into the *Cattegate*, the *Sound*, the *Belt*, and the *Baltick*, and mixing with the Waters of thoſe Seas, very much allays the Saltneſs of them.

Funen The Iſland *Funen* produces Corn, Wood, and Cattle, ſufficient for the Natives, but none for Exportation, except a few Horſes. *Laland* produces plenty of all Sorts of Corn, eſpecially Wheat, with which they ſupply *Copenhagen*, and ſome other Parts of *Denmark*, where that ſort of Grain is very ſcarce. *Arroe* and *Alſen* produce Anniſeeds, which they uſe to mix in their Bread, and to ſeaſon their Meat.

Jutland *Jutland* produces Corn ſufficient for its own Natives, and abounds in Cattle; their Horſes and Hogs are very good. The *Dutch* buy lean black Cattle here, and after they have fed them, ſell them to a great Advantage.

Sleſwick The Country of *Sleſwick* hath Corn, Cattle, and Horſes, ſufficient to ſupply themſelves and aſſiſt their Neighbours.

Holſtein *Holſtein* is ſaid, in ſome Meaſure, to reſemble *England*, for its Variety and Fruitfulneſs, being interſpers'd with Hills, Woods, Rivers, Meadows, and Corn Fields. *Stormar* and *Ditmarſh* are low, and are compar'd with *Holland* for Situation, Fruitfulneſs, and Richneſs of the Soil, but ſometimes the adjacent Ocean breaks through its Bounds, and does conſiderable Damage. *Oldenburgh* is alſo, by its low Situation, ſubject to the ſame Fate, yet it abounds in Cattle, and is noted for its producing plenty of a Sort of Cream-colour'd Horſes, but they are tender-footed, and not for much Service.

Norway *Norway* is a more barren Country than any that are yet mention'd, not producing either Corn or Cattle ſufficient to ſupply its own Inhabitants with neceſſary Subſiſtence. There is a long Ridge of Mountains, extending from North to South, call'd the *Dolfrine Hills*, which divides *Norway* from *Sweden*; and beſides theſe, the Country is full of Hills and Mountains, which are almoſt all cover'd with Snow, and produce ſcarce any Food, either for Man or Beaſt. And as to the *Norwegian Lapland*, it differs little, if at all, from *Moſcovite* and *Swediſh Lapland*, already deſcribed.

But notwithſtanding the Barrenneſs of *Norway*, hitherto mention'd, it produces what is valuable, both under Ground and above; as to the former, *viz.* their Mines, they are of great Value; for, beſides their Iron Mines, which are the moſt plenty, they have one of Copper, and another of Silver; but the Copper is not ſo good as that of *Sweden*; and beſides *Norway* produces plenty of Maſts, Plank, and Timber for Shipping, and other Uſes; and they export great Quantities of Pitch and Tar from that Country. Nor is the Sea deficient, but produces plenty of all Manner of Fiſh; of which one Sort is Stock-Fiſh, which they dry, without Salt, upon the Rocks; great Quantities of which are purchas'd for Victualling our Fleets, as being deem'd more wholſome than altogether ſalt Meat, which is very much attended with the Scurvy.

Iceland. The Iſlands of *Iceland*, *Fero*, and *Shetland* are almoſt as barren as *Norway*, eſpecially as to Corn, which will ſcarce grow in any one of them. They have ſome Cattle, but they are ſo ſcarce, that the poor or common Sort of People live upon the Fleſh of Bears, Wolves, and Foxes, and Bread made of dry'd Fiſh, ground to Powder. They trade with their Stock-Fiſh, Tallow, and Sulphur, and therewith purchaſe other Things which their Country does not afford. In the Iſlands of *Iceland*, or *Fero*, there is no Timber; they have Willows, Birch, and Juniper Shrubs, and the like; but their chief Support, as to Proviſion, is Roots and other Garden-Stuff, which, with their Fiſh, is their chief Dependance.

One *Jacob Debez*, Provoſt of the Churches in the Iſlands of *Fero*, gives us the following Account of them: 'He ſays, they have Barley in 'thoſe Iſlands that will yield twenty or thirty-'fold Increaſe, but no other Grain will grow 'there; they have good Paſtures, and a tolerable 'Breed of black Cattle, ſmall-ſiz'd Horſes, and 'ſome Flocks of Sheep, and almoſt all manner of 'Roots and Herbs that grow in our Kitchen 'Gardens; they are pretty well ſtock'd with 'Fiſh and Fowl; but the Cold is very ſevere in 'thoſe Iſlands, and the Winters dark.'—By the Winters being dark, we are not to underſtand of thoſe beyond or within the Artick Circle, where the Sun is abſent for ſeveral Days or Weeks, or under the Pole, for near half a Year together, for none of thoſe Iſlands, except the North Part of *Iceland*, are within the Artick Circle; but for the Iſland of *Fero*, of which the above-mention'd Deſcription is given, the Northermoſt of them lies not in quite ſixty-three Degrees of North Latitude, and conſequently the Sun, on the ſhorteſt Day, will be between three and four Degrees above their Horizon at Noon; however, the Nights are dark, and both Day and Night in Winter is exceſſive cold.

The Manufactures of *Denmark* and *Norway* are inconſiderable; as for Exports from *Norway*, there are great Quantities of Fir Timber exported, for Maſts, Yards, and Planks; alſo Pitch, Tar, Stock-Fiſh, Oil, and Iron; for which, what they

ſell to the *Engliſh*, they trade moſtly for ready Money, or ſometimes for a coarſe Sort of Cloth; but with the *French* they barter moſtly for Wine, Brandy, Alamodes, *&c.* The *Danes* have ſome ſmall Factories on the Coaſt of *Guinea*, and the *Weſt Indies*; and in the *Eaſt Indies* they have a conſiderable City and Fort, call'd *Tranquebar*, from whence they have ſome Years two or three Ships arrive richly laden. The Natives rebell'd againſt the *Danes*, ſome time ago, by the Inſtigation of the honeſt *Dutch*, who thought by that means to procure one Party to weaken the other, ſo much, that the Place might at laſt become an eaſy Prey to their voracious Appetites; but Mr. *Pitt*, the then Governor of *Fort St. George*, ſent a Detachment of *Engliſh* Troops, who aſſiſted the *Danes* in ſuppreſſing the Rebellion, and re-eſtabliſh'd them in the Poſſeſſion of it, to the great Diſappointment of the cunning *Dutch*, who thought to run away with the Bone that the other two had been fighting about.

CHAP. III.

Of the King of Denmark's *Forces by Sea and Land; and of his Revenues.*

THE *Danes* have generally been reckon'd ſtronger by Sea than the *Swedes*, not only in Number of Shipping, but in Strength of Men; for *Norway* furniſhes Sailors, who, being uſed to fiſh in thoſe boiſterous Seas, are ſo inured to Hardſhips, that they prove better Sailors than thoſe who are brought up in more Indolence. The cunning *Dutch* value them for their Hardineſs, and therefore employ great Numbers of them. The *Norwegians* think they live better in the *Dutch* Service than upon their own barren Coaſt, and the *Dutch* think they are ſupply'd with more hardy Sailors from *Norway* than from their own Breed: Thus the *Norwegians* apply themſelves more to the Sea Service than any of the Subjects of *Denmark*, their Neceſſities calling them, and their Reception by the *Dutch* encouraging them; and of theſe *Norwegians* thus bred, great Numbers are employ'd in Manning the Royal Navy of *Denmark*, and contribute much to the King of *Denmark*'s Strength by Sea.

A learned Author gives his Opinion of the Affairs of *Denmark* in the following Words: 'It is certain, ſays he, that the levying Taxes 'on the Subject here, is not more grievous 'to them than the Reaſon for which they are 'levy'd, namely, *the Maintenance of a great ſtanding Army*; the People are made Contributors to 'their own Miſery, and their Purſes drain'd in 'order to their Slavery." But he does not here quote the Fable, in *Æſop*, of the Willow-Tree and the Ax; where the latter deſired the former to ſpare him only one Branch, and the Willow-Tree perceiving that there was one Branch growing out of it that might, without much Damage, be ſpared, agreed to ſuffer the Ax to cut it off; which when the Ax had done, it fell to work to make Wedges of that Branch to ſplit to Pieces that very Tree from whence it was, by Importunity, obtain'd, and the Tree, in the old *Engliſh* Verſion of that Fable, is brought in making (when too late) the following Reflection:

> *What grieves me moſt is, that out of my Side*
> *Wedges are made my Body to divide.*

But our Author proceeds in theſe Words, *viz.* 'That the Princes and States of *Europe* have been 'taught by the *French* King, that pernicious Se-'cret of making one Part of the People both the 'Bridle and Scourge of the other, which in Time 'muſt needs end in a general Deſolation. The 'King of *Denmark* hath been too apt a Pupil to 'ſuch a Maſter, and hath endeavour'd to exceed 'his Original, raiſing more Men than his Coun-'try can maintain. And at preſent the Northern 'and *German* Princes eſtimate their Wealth, not 'by the Fertility or Extent of their Territories, 'or by the Trade or Induſtry of their People, 'but by the Numbers of Horſe and Foot in their 'Service; for the Subſiſtence of which, after 'they have eaten up their own Subjects, they 'make uſe of a Hundred cruel and unjuſt 'Pretences to ruin and encroach upon their 'Neighbours; and, when they cannot accompliſh 'ſuch deſtructive Projects, foment Quarrels a-'mong other Princes, that they may have an 'Opportunity of letting out their Troops to cut 'Throats for Hire, which they are not able 'otherwiſe to maintain, and have found the Art 'of receiving Pay without intereſting themſelves 'in the Quarrel, which hath been the conſtant 'Practice of the *Danes*, and ſome neighbouring 'Princes, for many Years paſt.'

But by Way of Reflection upon this Conduct, the Author obſerves, that theſe Practices have been very pernicious to *Denmark*; nor, at the Time when thoſe Remarks were made, had the *Dane* ſucceeded in any of his Attempts, either againſt the City of *Hamburgh*, the Duke of *Holſtein*, or the *Swedes*. Indeed in the laſt War the *Dane* took Advantage of the Neceſſity the *Swedes* were reduc'd to, and by a potent Confederacy, made themſelves Maſters of *Bremen* and *Verden*, which he afterwards convey'd to be annex'd to the Sovereignty of *Hanover*. The *Dane* alſo ſeiz'd the Duke of *Holſtein*'s Territories in his Minority, and ſtill detains them in his own Poſſeſſion.

The Strength of the Forces.

But to proceed; as to the Forces of the *Dane* in general, including *Holſtein* and *Oldenburgh*, they maintain 5450 Horſe, 1500 Dragoons, and 17000 Foot; and *Norway* maintains 1256 Horſe, and Dragoons, and 14300 Foot, which amounts in all to near forty thouſand Men.

Their Pay.

As to the ſuperior Officers, a Colonel has, beſides his Captain's Pay, thirty-ſix Rix-dollars a Month, which amounts to eight Pounds two Shillings a Month; a Lieutenant-Colonel hath twenty, or four Pounds Ten; and a Major hath ten Rix-Dollars, or two Pounds five Shillings a Month; and the reſt as below.

The Pay of a Captain of Foot is twenty Rix-dollars a Month, and every Rix-dollar being about four Shillings and Sixpence, the Monthly Pay amounts to four Pounds ten Shillings a Month Sterling, and the other as below.

A

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A Lieutenant, 11 Rix-dollars a Month, or - -	2	9	6
An Enſign 16 Rix-dollars a Month, or	2	5	0
A Serjeant 6 Rix-dollars a Month, or	1	7	0
A Corporal 4 Rix-dollars a Month, or	0	18	0
A Drummer hath by the Month 3 Rix-dollars and 8 Pence	0	14	0
A Common Soldier 2 Rix-dollars and 32 Stivers a Month, amounting, in Sterling Money, to	0	11	8

But the Common Soldiers receive of their Pay in Specie, but ſeven Stivers a Week, the reſt being allow'd for Bread, Cloaths, *&c.* and in Times of Peace the Officers of the Horſe receive no more Pay than thoſe of the Foot. The Horſe are uſually Natives, and maintain'd by their reſpective Peaſants, or Farmers, who are obliged to find them Meat for Man and Horſe, and ſix Shillings a Month in Money; and even of that it is as in many other Caſes and Places, the Officer runs away with one half of it, which he reckons a Perquiſite to himſelf, towards the Mounting, as they call it. There is but little Money expended in *Norway* in paying the Forces, becauſe the private Soldiers are quarter'd on the Boors, and ſubſiſted by them.

Mariners. There are three thouſand Mariners conſtantly maintain'd at *Copenhagen*, both in Peace and War; they have a Weekly Allowance of Meal, Grout, Stock-Fiſh, Salt-Fiſh, *&c.* for themſelves and their Families, and about eight Rix-dollars, or one Pound ſixteen Shillings a Year in Money; they have Streets of little Houſes, or Barracks, appropriated to their Uſe only, and for Habitations for their Families while the Men are abſent at Sea. In Times of Peace they are employ'd in the King's Docks and Yards, as Labourers to aſſiſt in fitting and repairing the Shipping; and once a Year they generally equip a ſmall Squadron to keep the Sailors in Exerciſe. The Officers of the Fleet are always kept in pay, whether in Times of War or Peace, that they may be the more ready upon Occaſion; and it is ſaid that by this Means, upon a very ſhort Warning, they can fit out a Fleet of between thirty and forty Sail of Men of War.

Revenue. The Revenue of the King of *Denmark* proceeds from three different Branches, *viz.* 1. from the Duty paid by his own Subjects, or, 2. from Cuſtoms paid by Foreigners, or, 3. by Crown-Land Fines, or Confiſcations. Of thoſe paid by the Subject, there are Duties of Import and Export, and the Exciſe laid upon the Conſumption, that is, upon every Thing that is eaten and drank in the Kingdom; there are alſo Duties paid for Marriages, Licences, and the ſtampt Paper upon which Inſtruments, Bargains, Contracts, Grants, Proceedings at Law, *&c.* are written, ſome of which Duties amount to ſeveral Rix-dollars *per* Sheet. There are alſo Duties upon Brewing and Grinding, whether Malt or Corn, in the Mills; theſe are generally the ſame from Year to Year, and ſeldom liable to any conſiderable Alterations.

But there are other Duties, which are alter'd as Occaſion requires; as, 1. The Land-Tax, which rites or falls with the annual Value of the Farm. 2. Poll-Money, which is always proportion'd to the perſonal Eſtate, and ſometimes levy'd twice a Year. 3. When the Fortifications want Repairs, there is a Tax laid on to anſwer the Charge. 4. When a Daughter of the King of *Denmark* is to be married, there is a Tax laid to raiſe her a Portion, which is commonly a hundred thouſand Crowns. 5. Every Tradeſman not only has Soldiers quarter'd upon him, but is tax'd according to the Advantage he is ſuppos'd to make of his Trade. 6. Every Houſe is tax'd according to the Rent it fetches, or Ability of the Poſſeſſor. And as for the Lands in *Holſtein*, they are tax'd according to the Number of Plows employ'd in cultivating them; and this is paid every Month.

There was, not long ago, an Eſtimate made of all the Houſes in the King of *Denmark*'s Dominions, and all the Lands were meaſur'd, that their Value might be the better known; which when done, the Ground-Tax in the City was laid at four *per Cent* of the whole Value of the Ground; as, if a Houſe was valued at a thouſand Dollars, it paid yearly forty Dollars Ground-Tax; and the ſame Proportion was uſed in taxing Houſes and Poſſeſſions, according to what they did or were computed to bring in.

Poll-Tax. The Poll-Tax was levy'd according to the Ability of the Family; as, if a Citizen was worth eight or ten thouſand Rix-dollars, he paid four Rix-dollars for himſelf, and as many for his Wife, and for each Child two; alſo one for each Servant, and one for each Horſe; but an Ale-houſe Keeper pays for himſelf and his Wife but one Rix-dollar each, twenty-four Stivers for each Child, and ſixteen for each Servant. When there is Occaſion for a Fortification-Tax it lies high; a Merchant worth ſix or eight thouſand Rix-dollars, ſometimes pays ſixty-eight Dollars, and others in Proportion.

The Revenues in *Norway* ariſe from the Tythes of Timber, Tar, Fiſh, Oil, *&c.* and the Mines alſo produce an Income to the Crown, but other Duties are the ſame as in *Denmark*.

Crown-Lands. The Branch of the Revenue ariſing from Crown-Lands and confiſcated Eſtates brings but a very inconſiderable Advantage to the Crown, if any at all; for though they are annex'd to the Crown, the King is often rather the poorer for them; for falling into his Poſſeſſion, they are not afterwards cultivated, but turn'd into Foreſt, and ſerve the King for Pleaſure and Diverſion rather than Profit; or, if they are of any Value, they are commonly beſtow'd upon ſome Courtier, or Favourite, who makes little Advantage of them to himſelf or the Crown.

A late Writer has given us the following Eſtimate of the Revenues of *Denmark*.

	Rix-dollars a Year.
The Toll of the *Sound* — — —	65000
The reſt of the Toll of *Denmark* —	165000
The Conſumption, or Exciſe of *Copenhagen*	140000
The Conſumption of the reſt of *Denmark*	140000
The ſmaller Taxes of *Denmark* —	100000
The Poll-Tax, Fortification-Tax, Ground-Rents, and Land-Tax	100010
The whole Revenue of *Norway* — —	700000
The Crown-Lands, Confiſcations, *&c.*	200000
The Revenue of *Iceland* — —	27000
——— of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt*	8000
The Toll upon the *Weſer* — —	5000
Rix-dollars a Year in all -	1650000

When, at four Shillings and Sixpence the Rix-dollar, makes the Yearly Revenue of *Denmark* amount to three hundred ſeventy-one Thouſand two hundred and fifty Pounds Sterling, only with ſome Abatement, becauſe the Poll-Tax and Fortification-Tax are never levied the ſame Year: However, conſidering the Cheapneſs of Labour and Proviſions in *Norway*, where any Sum will go near three Times as far as the ſame Sum with us, this may juſtly be accounted a plentiful Revenue.

But ſome compute that there is not a hundredth Part the Value of ready Caſh in *Denmark* as in *England*; for the Trading People there are Men of ſmall Subſtance, and deal much upon

Credit with *Holland* and *Hamburgh*, and no ſooner receive Money but pay it away to keep up their Credit. The Nation labours alſo under another Diſadvantage; for the Officers of the Army being moſtly Foreigners, and they engroſſing a great Quantity of the Specie to themſelves, convert it to the Trade or Bank, each of his reſpective Country. The Over-ballance of Trade alſo carries off a great deal of their running Caſh; for ſince their Imports of foreign Commodities exceed their Exports of their own Product, the Ballance draws away their Caſh, which makes it ſo ſcarce among them, that they are forc'd to make current Coin of their own Product, *viz.* Copper; which being ſuch a baſe Metal, when compar'd with Gold and Silver, that they are forc'd to account for the Meanneſs of Quality with the Greatneſs of Quantity, the Conſequence of it is, that if a Man has an ordinary Sum to receive, he is obliged to have a Wheel-barrow or two to bring it home; and hence indeed there is an Advantage accrues to the Hackney Wheel-barrows, their Hire being determin'd by the Government, according to the Diſtance they go, as with our Hackney Coaches in *London*, and doubtleſs with ſome regard to the Weight they carry from Place to Place.

As for their Coins, a Roſe-noble is eighteen Shillings Sterling; a Ducat is half a Roſe-noble, or nine Shillings; a Rix-dollar is half a Ducat, or, as has been obſerv'd before, four Shillings and Sixpence; a Slet-dollar is three Shillings; a Rix-mark about eleven Pence; a Slet-mark nine Pence; and a Stiver a Penny; and beſides theſe there are great Variety of Copper Coins, of ſmall Value; but this muſt be ſubjoin'd, that thoſe Coins alter with reſpect to their Value, compar'd with Sterling Money, and ſometimes a Rix-dollar is in Value little ſhort of an *Engliſh* Crown, and Stivers in Proportion. Coins.

Their Weights are the great and ſmall hundred; the former a hundred and twenty, and the latter a hundred and twelve Pounds; but we are to obſerve that the *Daniſh* Pounds are larger than the *Engliſh*, a hundred of our Pounds not making above ninety-two of theirs. A *Daniſh* Ell is about one Third leſs than the *Engliſh*. Weights.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Laws of the Danes, *and their Manner of Adminiſtering of Juſtice; with the various Puniſhments inflicted upon various Crimes and Miſdemeanours.*

IT is obſerved, that Juſtice is not to be had cheaper, or with more Expedition than in *Denmark*; their Laws are not compoſed of a Collection of Ambiguities, to be wreſted into different Interpretations, according to the different Drift or Intereſt of the Perſon pleading them; for the whole Body of their Law is compriz'd in one moderate Quarto Volume, and written in their own proper Language, in ſuch plain intelligible Terms, that it requires no Comment upon it in order to its being underſtood.

Three Courts. THERE are three Courts of Judicature, from the Loweſt of which Appeals may be made gradually to the Higheſt: The moſt Inferior of them is call'd the *Heredſougds Court*, which is like our *Court-Leet* or *Hundred-Court*. The next Superior to this, and to which an Appeal may be made from the *Heredſougds-Court* is the *Landſtag-Court* or General Court of the Province. The next Court, which is the Supreme, and from which there can be no Appeal, is call'd the *Highright*; it is held in *Copenhagen*, and compos'd of the Prime Nobility, the King ſometimes preſiding in Perſon. But there are other Petty Courts in ſome of the Cities and Boroughs, which are call'd *Biſoghts* Courts here the Burghers are Judges, but an Appeal may be made from their Determination, to the Court at *Copenhagen*, not the *Highright* or Superior Court abovementioned, but a Court compoſed of the Burgo-Maſters and Common-Council of that City, to which the Appeal may be brought without paſſing through the Provincial Court; and if the Sentence there is not approv'd by both Parties, they may ſtill remove to the *Highright*, or Higheſt Court abovemention'd, and there, in Caſe there be no Clauſe in the Law that directly hits the Circumſtances of the Caſe, the Court hath a full Power to give an abſolute Determination, and no other Remove or Appeal is allow'd of, and the whole Time for ſuch a Proceſs is not above thirteen Months, or the Charge above ten or twelve Pounds Sterling.

No Inns of Court. THEY have no Inns of Court or other Societies of Lawyers, as would doubtleſs be the Caſe in other Places, if the exorbitant Fees did not induce Men, and ſome of very indifferent Capacities too, to ſet up for Lawyers, Sollicitors, *&c.* But in *Denmark* the Laws are ſo plain, that every Man of but a common Capacity may underſtand them; and as every Man is allow'd to plead his own Cauſe, there is very little Need of, and conſequently little Encouragement for, any but the Judges themſelves and the Perſons concern'd to have any Hand in the Diſpute.

THE greateſt Expence that attends the Law redounds moſtly to the King, as proceeding from the Stamps upon the Paper that the Proceedings are writ upon; and yet to prevent Impoſition, they are alſo under a Regulation; for the Clerks and Regiſters are limited to a certain Number of Sheets, wherein to comprize both the Allegations, the Proofs, and the Sentence it ſelf, all which are committed to Writing; and where any belonging to thoſe Inferior Courts are guilty of Impoſition, they are puniſh'd; inſomuch, that if the Judges themſelves are detected of Miſdemeanours, they are not only puniſh'd, but oblig'd to make Satisfaction to the Party they have injur'd by an unjuſt Sentence.

THERE are but few Criminals, as Traytors, Houſe-breakers, or Robbers, which is generally imputed to the Severity of the Puniſhment inflicted upon ſuch Offenders when detected; nay, ſometimes the leaſt Intimation or Suggeſtion, attended with any tolerable Circumſtances, is deem'd ſufficient to convict a Man, eſpecially of Treaſon or Diſaffection; and Capital Crimes, of which Treaſon is one of the Chief, are immediately puniſh'd with ſevering the Head from the Body with one

one Stroke of a Sword, which Severity makes People avoid diſaffected Words, much more Treaſonable Actions.

Polity-Maſter.

THERE is a Sort of a general Officer in *Copenhagen*, call'd the *Polity-Maſter*, whoſe Buſineſs it is to compoſe trifling Differences among Merchants or Others; he alſo takes Care of the Orders of the Market and the Town, examines Merchandize, to ſee that it be good and ſaleable, and that they do not interfere with, or foreſtal one another; he looks after the Cleaning and Repairing of the Streets, Bridges, and Canals, and that all Nuſances and Obſtructions be remov'd; he ſeizes prohibited Goods, and has the Command of the Fire-men, if I may ſo call them; for when a Fire happens, they do not ſuffer a tumultuous Mob to run in Confuſion to the Place, but have ſelect Companies of Men, provided with Inſtruments and Materials proper for the Purpoſe, whoſe Buſineſs alone it is to quench Fires, and none but them are allow'd to approach within a certain Diſtance of the Place; and, becauſe their Buildings are moſt of them compos'd of Fir Timber, they allow no Flambeaux, or Torches, to be carried lighted in the Streets, but inſtead of them uſe Lanthorns fix'd upon Staves. The *Polity-Maſter* is alſo general Game-Keeper, and is impower'd to ſeize Guns, Nets, or the Veniſon unlawfully taken with them; he alſo apprehends Night-walkers, ſuppreſſes Riots and Tumults, and allows no Perſon to walk the Streets after the Tattoo has beat.

THERE is great Care taken that People be not impos'd upon by the Apothecaries Drugs, to prevent which the Number of Apothecaries is limitted, none being admitted to that Profeſſion but thoſe appointed by the College of Phyſicians, and confirm'd by the King; and for thoſe that practiſe under theſe Qualifications, their Drugs are examin'd by the Magiſtrate two or three Times a Year, and the bad taken away, and a Price fix'd upon the good, above which they dare not take or demand. The reſt of the *Daniſh* Laws may be, as briefly as the thing will admit of, compriz'd in the following Articles:

Summary of the *Daniſh* Laws.

THE King is ſupreme Judge and Preſident in the High-Court of Juſtice, and occupies the Place when he pleaſes; but when the Place is ſupply'd by another, the Advocates always addreſs themſelves to the King.

THE Princes of the Blood, the Nobility, and Gentry, are the only Perſons that can be try'd by this High-Court, except the Superintendants and Biſhops, who have the ſame Privilege when they are charg'd with Hereſy, or any notorious Crime, but otherwiſe not.

WHEN a Perſon aſperſes the Government, or the Adminiſtration, he is declared Infamous, and his Goods confiſcated; but if his Diſcourſe tends to Sedition, he is puniſh'd with ſuch Severity as ſometimes not to ſurvive it. They that defame a Magiſtrate, either Civil or Eccleſiaſtical, or a Perſon of Honour, pay eighty Rix-dollars to the Perſon aggriev'd, and three Marks to the Crown, or, in Default of Payment, they are condemn'd to the Pillory, or to carry Stones for the Repair of the Fortifications, and publick Buildings.

IF an Invaſion or Inſurrection happens, he that refuſeth to ſerve the Government, either by Sea or Land, when ſummon'd to it, forfeits his Eſtate, and is declar'd Infamous. Theft is not only puniſh'd with reſtoring double the Value to the Owner, but being whipp'd, and laſtly ſentenc'd to hard Labour in the publick Works. Coining is puniſh'd with the entire Loſs of Life, Honour, and Eſtate, and removing antient Land-Marks with the ſame.

COUNTERFEITING a Hand, or Forgery, is puniſh'd with having the Perſon's Hand cut off, his Goods confiſcated, and himſelf declar'd Infamous. They ſeldom uſe Torture, except in Caſes of High Treaſon, and then only upon the Perſon convicted, to make him diſcover his Accomplices; and in this Caſe the Convict is admitted Evidence, contrary to the Laws of *England*, which will not admit a convicted Criminal to be an Evidence, nor is it fit they ſhould, for it is natural to ſuppoſe, that he that would not ſtick at ſuch Capital Crimes, as High Treaſon againſt a Government, whereby a whole Nation is affected, would not ſcruple to ſwear away the Life of a ſingle Perſon, tho' wrongfully, to ſave his own.

PUBLICK Challenges to Duelling, and much more Duelling itſelf, is puniſh'd with Loſs of Life and Alienation of Eſtate; and if Seconds are choſe, and approve of it, not taking Care to prevent it, their Puniſhment is the ſame; and he who is kill'd in a Duel is not ſuffer'd to be buried in conſecrated Ground; and whoever reflects upon another as a Coward for refuſing a Challenge, is puniſhable, and declar'd Infamous; and ſo Offences of a leſs heinous Nature are puniſh'd according to the Nature of the Crime, or Demerit of the Offender.

IN Caſes of Shipwreck the *Daniſh* Laws oblige the Subjects to give all poſſible Aſſiſtance to ſave the Goods for the Owner's Uſe, and the Ships which guard the Coaſt are obliged to ſave what they can for the Owner, and are limitted to a very moderate Reward for ſo doing; and in this Caſe the Owners are permitted to ſell in the Country what they ſave, or ſhip them aboard of other Veſſels, as their Inclination or Opportunity may direct them. If a Ship or Goods be drove upon the Coaſt, and no body claims them, the King's Officers, or Lord of the Manor, lay up what they can ſave, or, if they are periſhable Goods, they ſell them, and if any Perſon claims them in a Year and a Day they are reſtor'd to them, or the Money for them; but if no body claims them in that Time, they become the free Property of thoſe who took them up.

IF the Maſter of a Ship finds Goods floating on the Sea, he is to take them up, and deliver them to the next Magiſtrate, who is obliged to keep them a Year and a Day; and if claim'd in that time he muſt deliver them, but if not they fall to the King. If any one embezzle ſuch Goods, or Wrecks, he is puniſh'd as a Felon when convicted. Or if a Perſon finds Goods or Cattle upon the Road, he is obliged to publiſh it in the Court of the Diſtrict, or, in Caſe of Concealment, it is deem'd Felony; but ſo publiſh'd, if they are not claim'd in a Year and a Day, they become his own Property.

Travelling.

AS for Travelling, they have a Number of Waggons in every City, and a Waggon-Maſter preſiding over them, whereby they are kept under a Regulation, as our Hackney Coachmen and Watermen are in *London*. So that when a Perſon has occaſion to travel, he need but go to the Waggon-Maſter, and he is furniſh'd with a Waggon immediately; nor need he treat about the Price, that being fix'd by the Government; or if the Waggoner extort more than his limited Price, or refuſe to go for that, the Magiſtrate cauſes him to be ſeverely puniſh'd; or if the Waggon-Maſter hinders a Traveller, by refuſing to furniſh him with a Waggon and Horſes, the Traveller is immediately redreſs'd upon applying to the Magiſtrate. The Watermen and Ferrymen are under the ſame Regulations.

THERE is a Divinity Reader reſides in every Cathedral to expound the Scriptures; and they, as well as the Maſters of Colleges, are examin'd

by the Professors of the Royal Academy at *Copenhagen*, before they are allow'd to officiate. There are no private Grammar Schools allow'd, but they have publick ones in the Cities and great Towns, establish'd by Authority, and no others; nor are any Masters allow'd to teach in them, but such as have at least taken the Degree of Master of Arts. The lesser Schools, where only Writing and Accounts are taught, are appointed by the Magistrate, and the Master is examin'd by the Priest before he is allow'd to teach.

If a young Gentleman has a Mind to travel, and his Father would appoint a Tutor to accompany him, that Tutor is not allow'd to travel with him, till he is first examin'd by the Superintendant of the Diocess, and found to be Orthodox in the Religion of the Country; and the same is the Case in taking a Tutor into the House; and it is commonly required that the Tutor be a Student of the University of *Copenhagen*.

And as in Teaching so in Books, none are allow'd to be read but what are allow'd by Authority, and hence the Importation of Books, especially those that treat of Religion, is prohibited. They will not suffer any Calendars or Almanacks to be publish'd but what are allow'd, or licensed, by the Government. They are great Bigots to Predictions of War, Famine, and other Calamities.

The Clergy is in three Ranks, or Dignities. 1. Superintendants; each of them is obliged to visit his Diocess every Year once, and he with his Servants and four Horses is entertain'd at the Parson's House *gratis*. This Superintendant is nominated by the King, and consecrated by the Bishop of *Zeland*, with five or six Priests to assist in the Ceremony. The Tythes are divided into three Parts, one to the King, another to the Bishop, and a Third to the Parish Priest; but Grass, or whatsoever grows spontaneously, pays no Tythes. The Priests there, as well as in other Places, have Perquisites for Burials, Marriages, Confessions, &c. 2. There are also Intendants, like our Archdeacons; and, 3. Curates, or Parish Priests. They look upon all as Ecclesiasticks that have any Service appointed in the Church, if they be but Clerks, Sextons, or Singing-men; and consequently these are chosen from among the Students, and have their Dependance entirely upon the Priest, or Curate, of the Parish.

If any Person is convicted of turning Papist, his Lands are forfeited to the next Heir, except he dispose of them before his Apostasy is discover'd; and besides, he himself is banish'd the *Danish* Dominions. A Person educated by any of the Jesuits, is disqualified from holding any Employment in Church or State. And so strict are the *Danes* against Popery, that Popish Priests are forbid to enter the *Danish* Territories upon Pain of Death; and as severe are they against what they denominate Hereticks. *Jews* are not admitted to come into the *Danish* Dominions without the Royal Licence; and whoever finds a *Jew* in that Country without that Legal Admission, is intitled to a Reward of fifty Crowns. The Laws against Gypsies and Fortune-tellers are, for the first Offence Banishment, for the Second Capital.

Punishment

Blasphemers have first their Tongues cut out, and then their Heads cut off. And whatever Crime a Priest is guilty of, as to what may be call'd Petty Crimes, his Punishment is double to that of a Layman guilty of the same Crime.

In Marriage their Law requires the Consent of the Parents and Guardians, as well as of the Women; or if she marries without the Consent of her Guardian, he has the Benefit of her Fortune during his Life; but if the Guardian, perhaps in Hopes to enjoy the Benefit of her Fortune, keeps her unmarried till she is above eighteen Years of Age, she may be reliev'd by applying to the Magistrate.

A Divorce may be obtain'd in *Denmark*, Div.
1. For Adultery; but this requires good Proof, for even the Confession of the Party is not sufficient, because some People, desirous to obtain a Separation, would charge themselves falsly to obtain it; when they are separated for Adultery, the innocent Person may marry immediately, but the Guilty cannot be married till three Years after the Divorce; nor even then, if she is guilty of any lewd Action of that kind in the mean Time; and if the Husband cohabits with his Wife after he has prov'd her guilty of Adultery, he cannot obtain a Divorce, except she transgress again.

Secondly, a Divorce may be obtain'd for a malicious Elopement; or when one Party leaves the other for three Years or above; in this Case the deserted Party may obtain a Divorce, provided they have not cohabited with one another in the mean Time, but if the deserting Party is prov'd to cohabit with another, during the Time of Separation, the deserted Party may, upon such Proof, marry as soon as he or she pleases.

If a Man's Business, as Trade, War, or the like, calls a Man away, his Wife may marry after seven Years Absence is expir'd, but not before; and if after that Time he returns home, and finds his Wife married, he may renew his Claim to her nevertheless, provided no Proofs are brought against him of having cohabited with any other Woman during his Absence.

Thirdly, A Divorce may be obtain'd in Case of Impotency; but then the Woman is obliged to wait three Years, to give the Man an Opportunity to apply for Remedy; and if in that time the Man finds no Hopes of a Cure, a Divorce is granted, and the Marriage is annull'd.

A Man cannot sell his Lands before he is five and twenty Years of Age, without the Consent of his nearest Relations, or the next Successor. And a Woman, whether Maid or Widow, cannot dispose of her Lands at all, but is obliged to leave them to the next Successor, according to Law.

An uninterupted Possession of an Estate for twenty Years gives a compleat Title to it; so that when the Right is to be disputed by Law, they are not allow'd to go any further back: All Obligations and Personal Debts are also void if not renew'd in that time. No Person is obliged to pay any Money lost at Gaming.

Villainage

The Tenure of Villainage yet holds good in many Parts of *Denmark*, and they who hold by this Tenure, descend with the Land, like the Deer in a Park, to the next Heir or Possessor: The Tenant cannot go from that Land to any other, without losing his Title to that he was first in Possession of for it, and all their Goods upon it will be seiz'd by the Lord of the Soil as soon as they quit Possession; nor can he be receiv'd in any Town or Parish, unless they produce a Licence from their Lord, and a Certificate from the Minister of the Parish where he last inhabited; and if one of those Sort of Tenants conceals himself, his Lord has Power over him, as over an Apprentice, and may seize him wherever he finds him, and put him in Prison, or fix him in another Farm by way of Punishment.

Every Freeholder may hunt and fish in his own Ground; and the Nobility may hunt in the Common, or waste Ground, within ten Miles of their own Seat, and may fish in Lakes or Ponds; but it is to be understood that those Lakes or Parks belonging to the King are exempted from this common Liberty; for if any Lord hunt,

shoot,

shoot, or fish in any Place set apart for the King, he forfeits for every Stag he kills a thousand Rix-dollars, for a Fallow Deer eight hundred, for a Hare four hundred, and for every Swan or other Fowl two hundred; and he that hunts in another Man's Land, without Leave, forfeits for every Offence a hundred Ounces of Silver.

If any Person be known to send his Money out of the Kingdom, to lodge it in foreign Banks, the King claims a sixth of it, and the Magistrates of the Town, or Lord of the Soil, a Tenth; and the foreign Merchants themselves are sometimes forced to submit to these Exactions.

CHAP. V.

Of the Religion, Universities, Marriages, and Funerals of the Danes.

THE Religion of *Denmark* was formerly the same with the *Swedes*; and *Woden*, *Thor*, and *Friga*, were their Deities when Paganism prevail'd among them, of which I have spoke before in the Description of *Sweden*. The first Part of this Country that received the Christian Religion was *Holstein*, by St. *Augarius*, about the Year 826, but Christianity was not planted in *Norway* till the eleventh or twelfth Century. The *Lutheran* Doctrine was first propagated here about the Year 1537, and that being now the establish'd Religion, no other Denomination of Christians are tolerated; nor are the common People allow'd so much as to discourse about any controverted Points of Religion, nor to absent themselves from the Church upon any Pretence whatsoever.

THE Clergy do not interfere in State Affairs, or Politicks; that is reckon'd no Branch of their Business; nay, so far are they set aside for Ecclesiastical Service, and from Civil Affairs, that they are not kept as Chaplains to the King or Noblemen, but some Page says grace in those Families. They are allow'd to reprove even Persons of Quality publickly for their Vices, nor is it deem'd any Crime to speak home to them, provided they do not meddle with State Affairs or Politicks; and this Freedom procures them large Benevolences from the common People, who love to hear the Nobility reprehended publickly by the Clergy, when they dare not reprove them themselves. Another Thing that keeps up the Dignity of the Clergy is Confession, for no Man is admitted to the Sacrament without first confessing to a Priest.

THEY have ten Superintendants in *Denmark*, *viz.* one in *Zeland*, one in *Funen*, four in *Jutland*, and four in *Norway*; they hold no Ecclesiastical Courts; they have no Temporalities, nor any Cathedrals, with Deans and Chapters, in the Manner of Bishops, but their Business chiefly is to inspect into the Doctrine and Lives of the inferior Clergy. The Superintendant of *Copenhagen* has two thousand Rix-dollars, or four hundred and fifty Pounds Sterling a Year; all the rest of the Superintendants of *Denmark* have fifteen hundred, and those of *Norway* a thousand Rix-dollars yearly each. Their Habit is like that of other Clergymen. They are very strict in the Observation of their Holidays; and so retir'd in their Devotion, that in Time of Divine Service the Gates of *Copenhagen* are always shut, and the People strictly attend Divine Service. The *Danes* are great Admirers of Organs, and some, well skill'd in the use of them, will sometimes entertain them half an Hour before and after Divine Service.

THERE is now but one University in *Denmark*, and that is *Copenhagen*, the Capital of the Kingdom; but there was another at *Sora*, till the Crown seiz'd its Revenues, and now it is deserted, and a Grammar School erected in its Place.

Marriages. THE Form of Marriage in the *Lutheran* Church differs not much from ours, only the Parties are often not only contracted, but as free with each other as Man and Wife for Months, and sometimes Years, before the Marriage is solemniz'd; nor is the Lawfulness of it disputed if the Nuptials be solemniz'd before the Woman be brought to Bed, the Child being born of a Woman married lawfully to a Husband being always thought sufficient to prove its Legitimacy.

Funerals. THEY are profusely magnificent in celebrating their Funerals, and some of them chuse rather to suffer a Corpse to lie without Interment for Months, and sometimes Years, than abate the least Article of their usual Funeral Grandeur but here, as in other Places, the Poor are forc'd to be content with less, but even they are attended to their Graves by a Set of Mourners, appointed for that Purpose.

CHAP. VI.

Of the antient Constitution, and original Inhabitants of the Kingdom of Denmark; *with the present State of that Kingdom.*

IT is the Opinion of the most authentick Authors, and further confirm'd by Sacred History, that Patriarchal Government was the first instituted in every Nation under Heaven, or, as a modern Historian expresses it, that Children and Subjects are synonimous Terms; and that when People multiply'd, they found themselves under a Necessity of dividing themselves into Colonies; some of which fix'd in fruitful Countries, while others, with their Substance, their Flocks and Herds, travell'd from Place to Place to find Subsistence for their Cattle and themselves, as was the Case with *Abraham* and *Lot*, *Gen.* xiii. In this Case the Senior of the Family was Governor; and though the rest were his Descendants in Point of Succession, yet, as a Supreme, they became his Subjects

Subjects in Point of Sovereignty. And some in *Arabia* and *Tartary* follow that way of Living to this Day, knowing no other Bounds to their Estates, than that of claiming all the Land they graze their Cattle upon, and needing no Title but Possession to make the Land their own.

Some of these Rovers, or unsettled Colonies, descended from the Western *Scythians*, were the Ancestors of the present Inhabitants of *Scandinavia*, which includes not only the Country of the *Danes* and *Norwegians*, I am now describing, but of the *Goths* and *Swedes* too; it is uncertain in what Year, or how long ago, they fix'd here; but it is evident, that when they became so numerous, that their present Possessions could not subsist them, they spread themselves to the Southward, finding that a more plentiful Country and a richer Soil, and here by Degrees they fix'd themselves, not in Tents only, but in settled Habitations, and more substantial Buildings.

When they had thus planted themselves, they, to prevent Confusion, allotted to every Tribe, or Family, certain Bounds, the Senior, or Leader, still retaining his Paternal, or Patriarchal Authority (which began to amount to a Sort of a Sovereignty) over them, and he began to be look'd upon as a Prince over his Subjects, as well as a Father to his People; and as they increas'd in Number and Strength, these little Principalities, by Inter-marriages, or Compacts for mutual Defence, grew up into little Kingdoms. As was the Case in *England*, no longer ago than the Time of the *Saxon* Heptarchy; and indeed to pursue that Parallel yet further, some of those petty Kings, being more powerful than their Neighbours, invaded the Weaker, and reduced several of these little Monarchies into one; as in the *Saxon* Heptarchy, above-mention'd, *Egbert* King of *Mercia*, one of the seven Kingdoms of this Island, reduced all these seven Kingdoms into one, and call'd it *England*, of which himself was the first sole King under that Name. But of this at large when we come to treat of the Dominions of *Great Britain*.

This probably was the Case with the several Parts of *Scandinavia*, as *Sweden*, *Denmark*, &c. for, to come lower, we find that sometimes *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, have been under one Sovereign, and at other Times under three distinct Princes; and, even then, those three were sometimes arbitrary, and at other Times so restrain'd by their Nobility and Clergy, that they had little of a King left but the Name; for every Bishop or Nobleman began to have his Castle, or fortify'd Place, as if he aim'd at a Sort of an Independency, and the common People were their Vassals, to be tax'd and pillag'd even as they pleas'd. The executive Power was lodg'd in the Senate or Privy Council, of which the King seem'd to be only President in Times of Peace, and General of the Army in Time of War, but had not a Power to make Peace or War, or to raise Men or Money, without the Consent of the Senate and the Chief of his Subjects.

In this State *Denmark* continued till the Year 1660, when the People, not able longer to subsist under the grievous Taxes and Oppressions of their Superiors, the Nobility and Gentry, occasion'd by a long War, they concluded they had better be under one arbitrary Prince than be under such a Number of Tyrants; and the rather, as hoping that their falling entirely in with the King might enable him to suppress the Exorbitance of the rest of their voracious Superiors; and the Clergy, who constitute another of the States, came into the Sentiments of the Commonalty, to bring about the intended Revolution. The History of which take as follows, according to the Account given by Mr. *Mortaye*.

'When Money was to be rais'd, in the Year '1660, for paying and disbanding of the Army, 'and other Exigences of the Government, and 'the States of the Kingdom were assembled for 'that Purpose, the Commons propos'd, that since 'the Nobility and Gentry enjoy'd the greatest 'Profit from the Land, of which themselves were 'but the Occupiers, or Farmers, they ought to 'bear a Share of the publick Taxes. To which 'the Nobility answer'd, that the Commons nei-'ther understood nor consider'd the Privileges of 'the Nobility, who had at all Times been ex-'empted from Taxes; nor did they consider their 'own Condition, who were no better than Slaves; 'that they had best keep within their own 'Bounds, and acquiesce in such Measures as an-'tient Practice warranted, for the Lords would 'maintain their Authority.

'The President of *Copenhagen*, Speaker of the 'Commons, answer'd, that they were no Slaves, 'nor would they be treated as such by the No-'bility for the future,—and thereupon he with-'drew from the Assembly, the Commons and 'Clergy following him out of the House.

'The Commons afterwards assembled in a 'Body, and, with their Speaker and the Super-'intendant of *Copenhagen* at their Head, form'd a 'Procession to a proper Hall in the City; and 'here they resolv'd immediately to attend the 'King, and offer their Assistance to make him an 'absolute Monarch, and to make the Succession of 'the Crown hereditary; by which they ima-'gin'd they should lay such an Obligation on his 'Majesty, that he would free them from that 'slavish Dependance upon their Superiors that 'they had so long groan'd under; nor were they 'much concern'd about the Resentment of their 'Lords, because the Army was composed of the 'Commons, and devoted to them; and besides, 'they knew that, let the Consequence be what it 'would, they could not serve worse Masters 'than those who not only made Slaves of them, 'but call'd them so to their Faces; and if Sla-'very was to be their Fate, they would rather 'be Slaves to their King, than to every assuming 'Gentleman, who was but a Fellow-Subject.

'With these and the like Considerations, they 'corroborated their Resolution of revenging them-'selves upon those who had so long insulted them. 'They had also seen their King, more than once, 'defend their Capital City against a formidable 'Enemy, and how firmly he was attach'd to their 'Interest, when the *Swede* had almost made him-'self Master of all his Dominions; this animated 'them to venture their Lives and Fortunes in his 'Hands, rather than remain at the Courtesy of 'their mercenary Nobility.

'The Clergy had the same View as the Com-'mons; for having shar'd the same Fate with 'them, in the Tyranny of the Nobility, they 'were in hopes, if they could bring about the in-'tended Revolution, that they should then have 'but one common Master, the King; and as they 'engaged to influence the People in his Favour, 'by preaching up unlimited Obedience to him, 'they hop'd for his Majesty's Protection, and 'some Increase of Power.

'The Court at the same Time was not on-'ly privy to, but at the Bottom of, this Design, 'and the Prime Minister push'd the Superin-'tendant, or Bishop, of *Copenhagen*, and the 'Commons, to forward the Undertaking, while 'the Nobility, rejecting the Commons with the 'usual Contempt, were not apprehensive of any 'Danger from them. But the Nobility assem-'bling next Day, received Information that the 'Commons intended shortly to visit them, and so 'it proved, for they soon after, with the Bishop of

'*Copen-*

'*Copenhagen* and their Speaker at their Head, 'gave the Lords to underſtand, that having con-'ſider'd the Diſorders with which the Kingdom 'was diſtracted, they apprehended the only Re-'medy for them would be to enlarge the King's 'Prerogative, and make the Crown hereditary; 'and that they had come to a Reſolution ac-'cordingly, and if the Nobility thought fit to 'concur with them, they would accompany them 'to his Majeſty; but if not, they would attend the 'King themſelves, and the Matter would be done 'without them.

'THIS peremptory Reſolution of the Com-'mons put the Nobility into great Confuſion, they 'eaſily perceiving that the Commons, whom they 'had juſt now deſpiſed, would certainly meet 'with Encouragement from the King, eſpecially 'in a Deſign ſo much in his Favour; and beſides, 'all theſe Meetings and Affairs were tranſacted 'in *Copenhagen*, a fortify'd Town; and all the 'Gates being ſhut, by the King's particular Or-'der, they could not retire to their own Country 'Seats, where they lived and commanded like 'ſo many petty Kings: In this Difficulty they 'thought it was their wiſeſt Courſe to ſeem 'to ſubmit to what they could not prevent, 'and therefore told the Commons that they 'were not againſt what they propoſed, but that 'it was not proper to ruſh upon an Affair of 'ſuch Importance without mature Deliberation, 'and therefore deſired the Commons to defer 'putting their Deſign in Execution, till they 'could deliberate how to do it for their mutual 'Advantage.

'BUT the Speaker of the Commons anſwer'd 'the Lords in plain Terms, telling them that 'theſe were only Evaſions to gain Time, in or-'der not to comply with, but to fruſtrate, the 'Intentions of the Commons; and that they came 'not thither to triſle away Time about Delibera-'tion, but to act; and in ſhort, they told the 'Lords, that if they would not immediately 'come into their Meaſures, they would wait up-'on his Majeſty without them, and thereupon 'abruptly left them by themſelves, to deliberate 'upon what might be the Conſequence if they 'refus'd.

'AND as the Commons ſuſpected ſo it prov'd; 'for while the Nobility trifled with the Commons 'to gain Time, and keep them back from put-'ting their Deſign in execution, they them-'ſelves ſent a private Deputation to the King, '(without the Knowledge of the Commons) of-'fering to make the Crown hereditary in his 'Majeſty's Male Line; but the King being very 'ſenſible how hearty the Commons were in his 'Intereſt, and looking upon an Offer made by 'the Nobility without the Commons to be of 'little Conſequence, he rejected their Favour, tel-'ling them he would not accept it under thoſe Li-'mitations, but would have the Females included.

'THE Commons, reſolved to proſecute their 'Deſign of addreſſing the King, without triſling 'any more Time away in conſulting the Lords, 'proceeded to Court: Where being met by the 'Prime Miniſter, and conducted into the Hall 'of Audience, his Majeſty ſoon appear'd, and 'the Biſhop, in the Name of himſelf, the Com-'mons, and the Clergy, (excluſive of the Nobili-'ty) addreſs'd himſelf to the King, with an Of-'fer to make the Crown hereditary. The King 'return'd them thanks, but told them the Con-'currence of the Nobility was neceſſary; but 'encourag'd them ſo far, as to deſire them to 'continue their Seſſion till this important Affair 'might be determin'd.

'THE Nobility were in the utmoſt Confuſion 'when they heard that their Propoſal of making 'the Crown hereditary, but limiting it to the 'Male Line, was rejected, and in the mean time, 'that their Offer was look'd upon to proceed 'from no other Motive, but that of the Commons 'being reſolv'd to offer it firſt, and therefore they 'made it becauſe they could not avoid it; and '(which ſtartled them more) the City Gates being 'ſhut, they began to apprehend that the King 'had ſome Deſign againſt their Perſons: In this 'Diſtreſs they diſpatch'd Deputies both to the 'Court and Commons, to ſignify their Willingneſs 'to comply with what the Commons had propoſed. 'Whereupon the King order'd the City Gates to 'be kept ſhut, till they had ſworn Fealty to him, 'before the People and the Army, and relin-'quiſh'd all Right and Power to create any 'Diſturbance.

'IN order to this grand Ceremony, the King, 'Queen, and Royal Family, appear'd upon a Thea-'tre, in Chairs of State, under Velvet Canopies, 'and received the Homage of all the Senators, 'Nobility, Clergy, and Commons, kneeling, 'in Sight of the Army and Burghers, who 'were drawn up under Arms; the Subſtance of 'their Oath, was to be *True and faithful to his 'Majeſty and his HEIRS*, &c. Thus the King-'dom of *Denmark* was chang'd, in a few Days 'Time, from an Ariſtocracy to a compleat Mo-'narchy; and the Commons, without any View 'of Advantage to themſelves, had the Satisfaction 'of ſeeing the tyranical Power of their Adver-'ſaries, the Nobility, ſuppreſs'd, and they made 'as miſerable as themſelves; the Clergy, if any, 'being Gainers by this Revolution, becauſe they 'were greater Favourites at Court, on account 'of their preaching up paſſive Obedience to a 'Prince, who is by that Means become arbitrary.'

CHAP. VII.

A brief Account of the Succeſſion of the Daniſh *Princes; with the modern Hiſtory of* Denmark, *and more particularly of the principal Occurences of the two laſt Reigns.*

IT is uncertain in what Time the Kingdom of *Denmark* was eſtabliſh'd as ſuch; for, as before obſerv'd, the Patriarchal Government advanc'd by inſenſible Degrees, or Steps, into Kingdoms; but *Dan* was the firſt taken Notice of, as King of *Denmark*; he reign'd a little before the Birth of our Saviour, and was Governor of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*, he conquer'd the *Vandals*, who then poſſeſs'd *Pomerania* and *Mecklenburg*, and was the firſt that took upon him the Title of King of the *Vandals*.

THE *Daniſh* Hiſtory (of which we look upon Mr. *Puffendorf*'s Account to be the moſt authentick) does not furniſh us with any Genealogy of the Kings of *Denmark*, but takes their *Æra* from *Erick*, the firſt Chriſtian King of *Denmark*, who reign'd about the Year 846. In the Year 931 reigned *Gormo*, who endeavour'd to expel Chriſtianity from *Denmark*, but it was defended by the Emperor *Henry*, ſir-named the *Bird-catcher*. The next that ſucceeded *Gormo* was his Son *Harold* VI. and he dying left the Crown to his Son *Swain*, about the Year 980; he, after he had conquer'd a Part of *England*, died in the Year 1012.

Erick

Gormo

Harold VI.

THE next was *Canute the Great*, the Son of *Swain*, King of *Norway*, *Denmark*, and *England*; and after him his Son *Harold*; who dying without Iſſue, *Hardy Canute*, the third Son of *Canute*, was the next in the Line, as King of *England* and *Norway*. The next after him was *Magnus* King of *Norway*; but *Sueno*, of the Royal Family of *Denmark*, recover'd that Kingdom again; and dying in the Year 1074, was ſucceeded by *Harold* VII. and he again by his Brother *Canute* IV. in the Year 1087. This King granted the Tenth of the Revenues of his Kingdom to the Clergy, and gave great Authority to the Biſhops and Eccleſiaſticks; for which Liberality to the Clergy, the *Jutes* were ſo exaſperated, that they aſſaſſinated him; however, the Clergy, in their ſuperſtitious Way, made him amends, for they canoniz'd him among their Saints, and annually celebrated his Memory at their Feaſts in full Bumpers: *Such Honour have their Saints.*

Canute I.

Hardy Canute.

Magnus.

Harold VII

Canute VI.

Canute IV. was ſucceeded by his Brother *Olaus*; but he dying in 1095, his Brother *Erick* IV. aſcended the Throne; at whoſe Deceaſe there were three Competitors for the Kingdom, *viz.* *Sueno*, *Canute*, and *Waldemar*; who, to compromiſe the Matter, agreed to divide the Kingdom between them; but *Canute* being aſſaſſinated, and *Sueno* kill'd in Battle, *Waldemar* ſucceeded as ſole Monarch of *Denmark*: He laid the Foundation of the City of *Dantzick*; and in his Reign the City of *Copenhagen* was begun to be built by *Abſalom* Biſhop of *Roſchild.*

Olaus

Erick IV.

Waldemar I

Canute VI. *Waldemar* was ſucceeded by *Canute* VI. who having ſubdu'd the *Vandals*, ſtiled himſelf King of the *Vandals*, or (according to his Senſe of the Word) Slaves; he took the City of *Hamburgh*, and ſeveral other Places, from *Adolph*, Earl of *Holſtein*; he conquer'd *Eſtonia* and *Livonia*, and eſtabliſh'd the Chriſtian Faith in thoſe Countries. His Brother *Waldemar* II. ſucceeded in the Year 1202, as King of *Denmark*, *Eſtonia*, *Livonia*, *Courland*, *Pruſſia*, *Pomerania*, *Rugen*, *Mecklenburgh*, *Holſtein*, *Stormar*, *Ditmarſh*, and *Wageren*, with the Cities of *Lubeck* and *Lawenburgh*; but the Cities of *Dantzick* and *Lubeck*, with the Provinces of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*, revolted from him. *Adolph* Earl of *Lawenburgh*, diſpoſſeſs'd him of *Holſtein* and *Stormar*; and the Knights of the *Croſs* took from him the Provinces of *Livonia* and *Eſtonia.*

Waldemar II.

Erick V. *Erick* V. ſucceeded in the Year 1241, but his Father had given Portions out of the Kingdom to his other three Sons, *viz.* to *Abel*, *Sleſwick*; to *Canute*, *Bleking*; and to *Chriſtopher*, *Laland* and *Falſter*; every one of which ſet up for Sovereignty in their reſpective Dominions; but (as it is commonly the Caſe when a Kingdom is divided into ſo many petty Governments) *Erick* attempting to reduce them all to one Kingdom, and reign Monarch himſelf, was murder'd by his Brother *Abel*, who then took the Government upon himſelf; but *Abel* had not reign'd above two Years before he was ſlain by the *Frieſlanders* and *Ditmarſians*; and then the third Brother, *viz.* *Chriſtopher*, ſucceeded in the Kingdom, in the Year [illegible].

Abel

Chriſtopher engaging in ſome Diſputes with the Clergy, was poiſon'd by them, with the conſecrated Hoſt. (What Sort of a Clergy a Perſon is a Member of who durſt repeat the Words of Conſecration, over ſuch a Meſs of known and intended Poiſon, the World may judge.) *Erick* VI. his Son, was the next Succeſſor, in the Year 1286: But in the Wars with *Sweden*, *Norway*, and *Holſtein*, the Duke of *Holſtein* took him Priſoner, and the Grandees afterwards murder'd him, leaving his Crown to his Son *Erick* VII. This was alſo in the Year 1286, ſo ſhort was the Reign of *Eric* VI. Of the Son nothing is remarkable, only that he engag'd in a War with the King of *Norway* for protecting his Father's Murderer, and had ſome Difference with the neighbouring States, *&c.*

Chriſtopher II. Son of *Erick* VII. ſucceeded to the Throne; who, to ſecure the Succeſſion in his own Line, cauſed his Son to be crowned in his Lifetime. The Subjects expell'd him as an Oppreſſor, and elected *Waldemar*, Duke of *Sleſwick*, in his Room; but the *Danes*, ſoon weary of their new Choice, recall'd *Chriſtopher* again: In his Reign the *Holſteiners* conquer'd *Schonen*, and ſurrender'd it to *Magnus* King of *Sweden*; other Parts of the Kingdom were alſo torn from it, and made tributary to other Princes, King *Chriſtopher* remaining Sovereign of but a ſmall Part of it while he liv'd, and after he dy'd there was an Inter-regnum of ſeven Years; during which Time the Duke of *Holſtein* aſſum'd the Government of *Denmark*; but the *Danes* call'd in *Waldemar*, the Son of *Chriſtopher* II. who was now in the Emperor's Court: He in ſome Meaſure reſtor'd the declining State of the Kingdom; but ſold *Eſtonia* and *Revel* to the Knights of the *Croſs* for twenty-eight thouſand Marks, and ſpent moſt of the Money in a Voyage to the *Holy Land*; however, he procured *Schonen* to be reſtor'd to *Denmark* again, and had *Gothland* ſurrendered to him by *Albert* King of *Sweden.*

Erick VII.

Chriſtopher II.

Waldemar II.

THE next was *Olaus* VI. who was Grandſon to *Waldemar*; he came to the Crown in the Year 1375, he being the Son of *Haquin*, King of *Norway*; and *Margaret*, the Daughter of *Waldemar*, ſucceeded to the Crown of *Norway* at his Father's Death; and, as his Father was the Son of *Magnus Smech*, Sovereign of that Kingdom, he laid Claim to *Sweden* alſo; but he dying young, the *Danes* and *Norwegians* received *Margaret* his Mother for their Queen; and ſhe engaging in a War with *Albert*, King of *Sweden*, his Subjects deſerted him, and ſhe became Sovereign of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*; and probably finding this Weight of Government too heavy for her Shoulders, ſhe cauſed *Erick* of *Pomerania* to be aſſociated with her; and next Year the Eſtates of all the three Kingdoms being aſſembled at *Calmar*, *Erick* was declared King; and it was then determin'd that all the three States, of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*, ſhould for the future be ſubject to one and the ſame Sovereign; and *Margaret* dying in the Year 1412, *Erick* remain'd ſole Monarch of the three States, or Kingdoms, of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Norway.*

Olaus VI.

Margaret.

Sweden, Denmark, and Norway united.

Erick VII.

BUT the *Danes*, not ſatisfied with his Adminiſtration, depoſed him, and elected his Siſter's Son *Chriſtopher*, Duke of *Bavaria*, to be their Sovereign; and he dying, the *Danes* offer'd the Crown of *Denmark* to *Adolph*, Duke of *Sleſwick* and Earl of *Holſtein*, but he declined it, being too far advanc'd in Years to engage in the Fatigues of Government, and therefore recommended *Chriſtian*, Earl of *Oldenburgh*, in the Year 1448, who accepted the Offer, and reign'd King of *Denmark* and *Norway*; and drove *Charles*, King of *Sweden*, out of his own Kingdom; but he ſoon after recover'd his Crown

Chriſtopher III

Chriſtian

Crown again. From this *Chriſtian*, Earl of *Oldenburgh*, the preſent Royal Family of *Denmark* deſcended.

But the Emperor *Frederick* added *Ditmarſh* and *Holſtein* to his Dominions, in the Year 1471. About which Time he married his Daughter *Margaret* to *James* III. King of *Scotland*, and gave her the Iſlands of *Orkney* and *Shetland* (which till then belong'd to the Crown of *Denmark*) for a Dowry.

Chriſtian II.

After *Chriſtian* his Son *John* ſucceeded, in the Year 1481: He divided the Dukedom of *Holſtein* with his Brother *Frederick*; he enter'd into a War with *Steen Sture*, Governor or Protector of *Sweden*, and ſuppreſſing him, he caus'd himſelf to be crown'd King of *Sweden*; but the *Lubeckers* joining *Steen Sture*, drove *John* out of *Sweden*, who was ſucceeded by his Son *Chriſtian* II. who being order'd by the Pope to put a Decree in Execution againſt the Kindom of *Sweden*, he defeated *Steen Sture*, who was kill'd in the Battle, and caus'd himſelf to be proclaim'd and crown'd King of *Sweden*; but he having exaſperated that People, by maſſacreing many of their Nobility, he was driven out of the Kingdom by *Guſtavus Ericſon*; ever ſince which Time the *Swedes* would never ſubmit to the *Daniſh* Yoke. The *Danes* themſelves alſo hated him, becauſe he was govern'd by his Concubine, and the old *Dutch* Woman her Mother; and at laſt he was depos'd by them, and forc'd to retire into the *Netherlands*; and afterwards attempting to recover the Crown of *Denmark*, he was, in that Attempt, taken Priſoner, and continued in that State all the remaining Part of his Life.

Frederick I.

Frederick, Duke of *Holſtein*, then obtained the Crown of *Poland* in the Year 1532, but dying in the Year 1533, his Son *Chriſtian* III. ſucceeded to the Crown of *Denmark*; but his own Biſhops oppoſing him, and he having a more noble Spirit than to be Prieſt-ridden, by ſuch a Clergy as thoſe Times and Places afforded, he ſeiz'd the Revenues of the Church, mortified the Clergy, and begun and eſtabliſh'd a Reformation of Religion about this Time.

Chriſtian III.

Frederick II.

Frederick II. was the next Succeſſor to the Crown, *Anno* 1560; who, after a long War with *Sweden*, dy'd in Peace in the Year 1588, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Chriſtian* IV. who alſo engaged in a War with *Sweden*, and afterwards with *Germany*, but was defeated, and the Imperialiſts took *Jutland* and *Holſtein*, which was afterwards reſtor'd by a Treaty. The *Swedes* took from him *Gothland*, *Oſel*, *Jemperland*, and *Halland*. He dy'd in the Year 1648.

Chriſtian IV.

Frederick III.

Frederick III. ſucceeded; he was the Son of *Chriſtian* IV. but being defeated in attacking the *Swedes*, his whole Country was over-run by them, and himſelf beſieged in his Capital of *Copenhagen*, where he was obliged to yield up to the *Swedes Bahus*, with the Provinces of *Bleking*, *Schonen*, and *Halland*; and yet this was the King that was firſt declar'd abſolute Monarch of *Denmark*, as in Chap VI. preceding; he dy'd in the Year 1670.

Chriſtian V.

Chriſtian V. Son of *Frederick* III. ſucceeded to the Crown of *Denmark*; and finding the King of *Sweden* engaged at War with the Emperor, reſolv'd to take this Opportunity to recover thoſe Provinces, above-mention'd, loſt in the laſt Reign; but the Duke of *Holſtein*, being ally'd to *Sweden*, endeavour'd at any rate to ſecure his own Territories; and there being then ſome Difference between him and the King of *Denmark*, concerning the Succeſſion to the Counties of *Oldenburgh* and *Delmonhoſt*, and alſo about the Revenues of *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein* (the King of *Denmark* claiming the greateſt Share, becauſe the greateſt Part of the Forces, maintain'd for the Defence of the Country were his) the Duke inſiſted upon an equal Share, alledging, that what Forces the King kept up more than was neceſſary, and without the Duke's Conſent, was an Impoſition rather than a Favour, and therefore ought not to be any Cauſe of diminiſhing his Revenues. But thoſe Diſputes did not riſe high, but rather ſeem'd to come near to an Accommodation; and the King, under a Profeſſion of all the Friendſhip that could be imagin'd, propos'd to take a Review of his Troops in *Holſtein*, writing very familiar Letters to the Duke; intimating that he hop'd the Duke would not take any Umbrage at his Journey, or Tour, to viſit the Places and Troops belonging to him. The Duke not only excluded all Thoughts of Jealouſy, but he, accompany'd by his Brother, the Biſhop of *Lubeck*, and ſeveral of his Nobility, met the King upon the Road, and gave him a ſplendid Entertainment, at a Seat near his Palace *Gottorp*; which the King ſeem'd to accept of very graciouſly, and, by Way of Return, invited the Duke to ſee him at *Rensburg*, and there all ſeeming Diſputes ſhould be accommodated; which Invitation the Duke promiſed to accept of, and to wait upon his Majeſty according to Appointment, entirely relying upon the King's Profeſſion of Friendſhip, and hoping it would eſtabliſh a good Underſtanding between them.

The Duke, according to his Promiſe, waited upon the King at *Rensburg*, which is a fortified Place in *Denmark*, near the Frontiers of *Holſtein*; and having his Prime Miniſter, and ſeveral of his Nobility with him, on the Twenty-fifth of *June*, 1675, he was welcom'd with the Diſcharge of the Cannon on the Ramparts, and other Demonſtrations of Reſpect. But the next Day the King of *Denmark* cauſed the Duke's Guards to be diſarm'd, and the Duke himſelf impriſon'd; and ſent out Detachments of his Troops to ſeize on all the Places in *Holſtein* and *Sleſwick* which belong'd to him. The Duke pleaded the Injuſtice of thus violating the Laws of Blood, Friendſhip, and Hoſpitality, but all in vain. The King charg'd him with being in the Intereſt of *Sweden*, and that he would not truſt him; and told him furthermore, that unleſs he would renounce all Right to the Lands or Matters in diſpute, he would put Garriſons in all his Towns, and take Poſſeſſion of his whole Country; and that he would detain him Priſoner till he ſent an Order to *Tonningben*, to command the Governor of that Fortreſs to ſurrender it to the King of *Denmark*. The Duke conſented to this laſt, as fearing there was a Deſign againſt his Life; and accordingly that Fort, with all its Artillery and Stores, was deliver'd up to the *Danes*.

When this was done, the King permitted the Duke to live at his Palace at *Gottorp*; but ſtill as a Priſoner; the Guards being placed at all the Avenues to prevent his Eſcape, and hard Propoſals ſent to him almoſt every Day, to be ſign'd in order to his Diſcharge. One grand Article propoſed to him was the Renunciation of his ſupreme and independant Power and Right over the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*. His Dutcheſs was all this while at *Copenhagen*; and being the King of *Denmark*'s Siſter, it was ſuppoſed ſhe was not very uneaſy at all the Indignities her Husband underwent; but the Duke, weary of his preſent unhappy Circumſtances, contriv'd his Eſcape, and arriv'd ſafe at *Hamburgh*, where one of the firſt Things he did was to proteſt againſt the Validity of any Act or Inſtrument that under his Confinement he was compell'd to ſign. The King, being nettled that the Duke was got out of his Power, meditated Revenge, and as an Effect thereof, he cauſed the Fortreſs of *Tonningben* to be demoliſh'd, and ſequeſter'd the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, cauſing both

Mag-

Magiſtracy and Commonalty to ſwear Allegiance to him, declaring them abſolutely clear'd from all Allegiance to the Duke. He alſo cauſed all the Duke's Revenues to be brought into his Treaſury, and continued Garriſons in his Towns, and even in his Palace at *Gottorp*; and leſt the Duke, by the Help of ſome Alliance with other Princes, ſhould be powerful enough to oblige him to reſtore what he had ſo unjuſtly ſeiz'd, he extorted Contributions, or rather perfectly plunder'd the poor Subjects, to the Value of ſeveral Millions, ruining a flouriſhing Province to fill his own Coffers, and with this farther View or Conſideration, that the poorer he made the Subjects of *Holſtein*, the leſs able they would be to aſſiſt the Duke, in caſe he ſhould require it.

The Duke, who ſtill reſided at *Hamburgh*, ſent his Son to implore Help from the Princes of the Empire; but little was done till the Year 1689, when *Charles* XI. of *Sweden* undertook his Quarrel, and was about to ſend an Army into *Germany* to reſtore the Duke to his Right; but the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *Germans*, being then in a Confederacy againſt *France*, and not willing to encumber that Affair with that of the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holſtein*, they ſoon put an End to that Diſpute, by compelling the King of *Denmark* to reſtore all the Duke of *Holſtein*'s Poſſeſſions; but no Care was taken to oblige him to make any Repairs of the Ruins and Devaſtations that he had committed, nor to account for the Arrears for the thirteen Years that he had unjuſtly had the Duke of *Holſtein*'s Dominions in his Poſſeſſion, nor had he any Satisfaction made for either the Expence they put him to, or for the Indignities offer'd to his Perſon.

The Differences between the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holſtein* being thus compos'd, Matters continued in a tolerably peaceable Situation till the Death of *Chriſtian* V. who died *September* 4. 1699. and was ſucceeded by his ſecond Son *Frederick* IV. when the old Grudge between *Sweden* and *Holſtein* on one Part, and the *Dane* on the other, not being quite forgot, the *Dane* was reſolutely determin'd to make War upon the other two Powers, but took care firſt to enter into a Confederacy with *Ruſſia* and *Poland* for that Purpoſe; and for a Beginning, he order'd his General the Duke of *Wirtemberg* to demoliſh *Frederickſtadt*, *Huſum*, and other Places belonging to the Duke of *Holſtein*; which he ſoon did, and then inveſted *Tonningben*, in which was a Garriſon of five thouſand Men; notwithſtanding which the *Dane* laid Siege to the Town; whereupon the *Germans*, *Dutch*, and *Swedes*, join'd their Forces to reduce the Exorbitance of the *Dane*, but marching with their joint Forces towards *Tonningben*, the *Daniſh* General was forced to ſubmit, to the Mortification of raiſing the Siege, as not daring to ſtand a Battle.

This Check being given to the Inſolence of the *Dane*, they were not allow'd to reſt thus; for the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* ſent each of them a Squadron into the *Baltick*, where the *Swediſh* Fleet join'd them, and than the *Daniſh* Fleet was glad to retire into the Harbour of *Copenhagen*; and beſides this, the young King of *Sweden*, who was afterwards the reſolute *Charles* XII. but at that Time not above ſeventeen Years of Age, raiſed an Army of fifteen thouſand Horſe and Foot, and landed them upon the Iſland of *Zeland*, about three Miles to the Southward of *Elſinore*, in order to inveſt *Copenhagen*. When the King of *Denmark* found what Diſtreſs he had plung'd himſelf into, he was glad to accept of ſuch Terms of Accommodation as the Powers that he had provok'd to correct him were pleas'd to preſcribe; and a Treaty was accordingly concluded at *Travendale*, the 18th of *Auguſt*, 1700. in which, amongſt other Particulars, it was agreed, that the King of *Denmark* ſhould pay to the Duke of *Holſtein* two hundred and ſixty thouſand Dollars for the Damage done to his Forts, and otherwiſe in his Territories; and by a ſeparate Article the King of *Denmark* was obliged to abandon the King of *Poland* as a Confederate, ſo far as not to aſſiſt him againſt *Sweden*.

But notwithſtanding the moſt ſolemn Treaties, the King of *Denmark* wanted nothing but an Opportunity to break through all, according to the inflexible incorrigible Tempers of ſome People, who, when their Hands are ty'd behind them, will attempt the intended Miſchief with their Teeth; for the King of *Sweden* no ſooner loſt the Battle of *Pultowa*, and was obliged to retire to *Turkey* for Refuge, but the King of *Denmark* took the firſt Opportunity of falling upon his dejected Kingdom in that Diſtreſs; and not only ſo, but although, as in the foregoing Paragraph, he obliged himſelf *to abandon the King of* Poland *as a Confederate, ſo far as not to aſſiſt him againſt* Sweden, yet, when he thought himſelf out of Danger from the united Force of the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *Swedes*, he united his Force with that of the *Muſcovites* and *Poles*, to drive the *Swedes* out of their *German* Dominions; which he not only effected, but, to pick a plauſible Quarrel with the young Duke of *Holſtein*, he charg'd him with favouring the *Swedes*, and under that Pretence ſeiz'd the Territories of *Holſtein* again, and continued in Poſſeſſion of them; and when the King of *Denmark* had done this, he and his Allies commenc'd a War againſt *Sweden*; of the Hiſtory of the Occaſion and Succeſs of which take the following Abſtract:

The Defeat of *Charles* XII. King of *Sweden* at *Pultowa*, happen'd *June* 30. 1709. the News of which no ſooner reach'd the King of *Denmark*'s Ears, but he began to ſtudy ſome Pretence for renewing the War with *Sweden*; in order to which he immediately recall'd the *Daniſh* Regiments which were in the Emperor's Service in *Hungary*, and quarter'd them in *Holſtein*. He tranſported ten thouſand Men from *Norway* to *Denmark*, levy'd new Troops at *Hamburgh*, and fitted out a ſtrong Squadron of Men of War; and having aſſembled an Army of eighteen or twenty thouſand Men, and having made all thoſe Preparations, and qualified himſelf for a War, his next Buſineſs was to find out ſomething to allege that might juſtify him in falling upon the *Swedes* in the Abſence of their King, which to effect, he publiſh'd a Manifeſto in 1709. to juſtify his intended Enterprize, charging the King of *Sweden* with ſuch ambitious Deſigns as had cauſed great Devaſtations in the North, and that he entertained great Animoſities againſt him and his Subjects; that the *Swediſh* Miniſters had oppoſed the *Daniſh* Intereſts in Foreign Courts, with ſeveral other Articles with which he charged the King of *Sweden*, and concluded that it was high Time for him to prevent impending Danger. All theſe Reaſons ſumm'd up againſt the King of *Sweden*, when he was not preſent to defend himſelf againſt the Charge, the King of *Denmark*, without Oppoſition, gave the Verdict in favour of his own intended Enterprize, and directly declar'd War againſt all the *Swediſh* Territories, except thoſe in *Germany*, and with ſix thouſand Horſe and Dragoons, and twelve thouſand Foot, he made a Deſcent upon *Schonen*, the Southermoſt Point of *Sweden*, on the Eaſt Side of the *Sound*, and landed his Forces at *Elſinburg*, over-againſt *Elſinore*, *Nov.* 12. 1709. and quarter'd in the Country Towns till *January*, when, by the Favour of a hard Froſt, he advanc'd towards *Chriſtianſtadt*, where

where the *Saxon* Garriſon immediately ſurrendred the Town, and went over to the King of *Denmark*. They afterwards took *Carelſhaven*, a Sea-Port, on the Eaſt Coaſt of *Schonen*, between *Bornholm* and *Oeland*; he alſo ſent a ſtrong Detachment to the Province of *Halland*, on the Weſt Coaſt of *Schonen*, who receiv'd ſuch Enforcements, by the *Swedes* coming over to them, that their Army became very formidable.

The *Swediſh* General, Count *Steinbock*, with eighteen or twenty thouſand Men, march'd towards *Helſinburg*, as if he would intercept their Paſſage to that Place; whereupon they abandon'd all their new Conqueſts of *Chriſtianſtadt*, *Carelſhaven*, &c. and made towards *Helſinburg*; where the *Swediſh* Army entirely defeated them; only about ſix or ſeven thouſand of the *Danes* were tranſported to *Denmark* in the Night, going home with Shame and Loſs, as a juſt Reward for that and others of his inglorious and unjuſt Exploits.

But the *Dane*, not willing to ſit quietly by this Loſs, the next Year join'd the Forces of the Czar and the King of *Poland*, who all jointly fell upon *Swediſh Pomerania*, and the *Swediſh* Forces, too weak for them, retir'd for Security to *Stralſund* and other Places. While the *Moſcovites* and *Saxons* block'd up *Stralſund*, the King of *Denmark* paſs'd the *Elbe* and entred *Bremen*, took the Town of *Staden*, and with it the whole Country. The *Dane*, in his Return to meet his Allies, the *Moſcovites* and *Saxons*, threatned to bombard *Hamburgh*, if they did not advance him two hundred and thirty thouſand Rix-dollars, to which they comply'd to ſave the Town.

The *Swediſh* General in the mean Time, knowing that the King of *Denmark* was ſeparated from the other two Armies, of *Moſcovy* and *Poland*, watch'd an Opportunity to engage the *Dane* ſingly, which he accordingly did, on the Twenty-ſecond of *December*, 1712, near *Wiſmar*; and having defeated and put them to flight, he purſu'd them to *Holſtein*, ſeiz'd the *Danes* Magazines there, and put *Daniſh Holſtein* under Contribution; from thence he march'd to *Pinenburg*, near *Hamburgh*, with a Deſign to burn the City of *Altena*, and make other Reprifals for the *Danes* Barbarity.

But in the mean Time the *Danes* made the beſt of their Way to join the *Moſcovite* and *Pruſſian* Armies; and accordingly, being all join'd, to the Number of fifty thouſand Men, they march'd to meet the *Swediſh* General, whoſe Army did not conſiſt of above fifteen thouſand Men, and conſequently not able to ſtand, or give them a Meeting, he retired to *Holſtein*, whither they purſu'd him, whereupon he threw himſelf into *Tonningben*, and for that Time eſcap'd their Fury; but the Confederates, *Moſcovy*, *Denmark*, and *Poland*, block'd up *Tonningben* till *May* following, but the *Swedes* not being able to ſend their General any Supplies or Reinforcements, he was forc'd to ſurrender himſelf, and his nine thouſand Men (all the Army he had left) Priſoners of War, without any Condition, but that of keeping their Cloaths and Baggage undiſpos'd of, to be exchang'd or redeem'd the firſt Opportunity.

This ſeem'd at leaſt for a little while to put an End to the Wars in *Pomerania*; but the Czar the next Year inveſting *Stetin*, it was agreed between the Czar and the *Swediſh* Governor, by the Mediation of the King of *Pruſſia*, that *Stetin* ſhould be ſequeſtred into the Hands of the King of *Pruſſia*, and be garriſon'd by an equal Force of *Pruſſians* and *Holſteiners* till the War ſhould be brought to a Concluſion, and that it ſhould then be reſtor'd to the King of *Sweden*.

The King of *Sweden* arriv'd at *Stralſund* in *November* 1714; when he found that *Pruſſia*, *Denmark*, *Poland*, and the Elector of *Hanover*, then King of *England*, had form'd a League to preſerve the Peace of *Germany*, by ſecuring the Sequeſtration of *Stetin* to the King of *Pruſſia*; and *Bremen* and *Verden*, and whatever the *Dane* had ſeiz'd in *Germany*, belonging to the *Swede*, ſhould be ſecured to the *Dane*, or his Aſſignees; but the King of *Sweden* inſiſted upon a Liberty to recover thoſe Territories which had been unjuſtly taken from him in his Abſence; but the Kings of *England* and *Pruſſia*, thinking this would embroil the North of *Germany* in a War, came into a Confederacy againſt the King of *Sweden*, tho' at the ſame Time *Moſcovy*, *Poland*, and *Denmark* were engag'd againſt him.

On the Twenty-eighth of *April*, 1715, the King of *Pruſſia* formally proclaim'd War againſt the diſtreſs'd King of *Sweden*; he diſarm'd the Regiment of *Holſtein* then in *Stetin*, and enter'd upon that City as a Specimen of his *Swediſh* Conqueſts. The *Danes* and *Pruſſians*, with their joint Forces, to the Number of ſixty-thouſand Men, appear'd before *Stralſund*; and the King of *Sweden*'s Army not amounting to above one Fourth the Number of his Enemies, he was forc'd to retire for Shelter under the Walls of *Stralſund*. In *July*, this ſame Year, a Treaty was propoſed between the King of *Denmark* and the Court of *Hanover*, by which the King of *Denmark* propoſed to deliver up *Bremen* and *Verden* (which he had taken from the King of *Sweden*) to the Elector of *Hanover*, (then *George* I. King of *England*) upon Condition that the Elector would enter into a War againſt *Sweden*, and advance a Sum of Money to the King of *Denmark*.

The *Danes* and *Pruſſians* being join'd by twenty-four thouſand *Ruſſians*, and a Number of *Saxons*, attack'd *Stralſund*; but that Place being continually ſupply'd with Men, Proviſion, and other Supplies, from the Iſland of *Rugen*, the Confederates thought it neceſſary firſt to cut off the Communication between *Stralſund* and *Rugen*, and conſequently the Supply that had been ſent from the latter to the former; in order to which they landed a great Body of Forces on the Iſland, and, after a ſharp Engagement, ſoon made themſelves Maſters of it, tho' the King of *Sweden* was in Perſon in the Action. This happen'd on the Seventeenth of *November*, 1715.

But, notwithſtanding this Defeat, the undaunted King of *Sweden* reſolved to defend *Stralſund* to the laſt Extremity; and, it being a terrible Winter's Siege, the Centinels were actually frozen to death at their Poſts, the Attacks were deſperate, and great Numbers of the Confederates were ſlain; but the *Swedes* were over-power'd by the numerous increaſing Forces of the Confederates; the King of *Sweden* retir'd home in a light Frigat, giving Orders to the Governor of *Stralſund* to capitulate, which he did the latter End of *December*, and agreed that *Stralſund* and the Iſland of *Rugen* ſhould be deliver'd up to the King of *Denmark*; and that all the Inhabitants of *Swediſh Pomerania* ſhould take an Oath of Allegiance to him, except thoſe of the City and Diſtrict of *Stetin*, with the Iſlands of *Uſedom* and *Wollin*, and the Lands between *Oder* and the River *Peene*, of which the King of *Pruſſia* was left in Poſſeſſion.

Stralſund taken by the *Danes*, &c.

The next Spring the united Forces of the *Danes* and Confederates, *viz.* the *Pruſſians*, *Hanoverians*, and *Moſcovites*, inveſted the Town of *Wiſmar*, the Metropolis of *Mecklenburg*, the only Town which the *Swedes* had left in *Germany*; this Town they alſo obliged to ſurrender, and the Confederates left it in the Poſſeſſion of the King of *Denmark*; and thus this Expedition was over, and the Wars in *Germany* at an End.

Wismar taken.

THE next Year, *viz.* 1716, the *Danes* and *Moscovites*, jointly, made Preparation to make a Descent upon the King of *Sweden*'s Dominions in *Schonen*; the Czar of *Moscovy* himself going in Person to *Copenhagen*, whither his Generals led an Army of thirty thousand Men, Horse and Foot, the King of *Denmark* at the same Time assembling between twenty and thirty thousand Men to join the *Moscovites*, and had also prepared seven or eight hundred Vessels to transport them; but the *Danes* at the same Time, being apprehensive of a Visit from *Sweden*, sent the greatest Part of their Fleet into *Norway*, where it was employ'd most of the Summer; the other great Preparations for the intended Enterprize against *Sweden* came to nothing, the *Dane* being apprehensive that he would have enough to do to defend himself.

THE Czar of *Moscovy* resented the *Dane*'s Remissness in his Preparations, and upbraided him that his Fleet was not ready in Time; the *Dane*, at the same Time, reproaching the Czar for his Conduct, in denying to make the Descent in the latter End of the Year; which the Czar, and not without good Reason, thought impracticable at that Season, as knowing that there was then no Forage to be found, and the King of *Sweden* having forty thousand good Veteran Troops, at the Head of whom he was resolv'd to receive his Enemies, if they attempted any thing against him; for these Reasons the Czar thought it prudent to desist from the Enterprize till a fitter Season, at which Delay the *Dane* was so disgusted, that he began to look very cool upon the Czar, and the Czar return'd the Compliment in as luke-warm a Manner as he had receiv'd it; whereupon the *Dane* drew up his Forces underneath the Cannon of *Copenhagen*, as if he was apprehensive of some Danger from his old Ally the *Moscovite*; whereupon the Czar return'd with his Troops to *Germany*. And indeed if this Expedition had not been broke off in time, it might have been of ill Consequence; for probably had the Czar, by the Help of the *Dane*, or by what means soever, made himself Master of *Sweden*, he might have deserted the *Dane*, and have been a troublesome Neighbour to him, and his neighbouring Princes in *Germany*.

THIS Indifferency between the Czar and the King of *Denmark* continuing, or rather increasing, the mutual Alliance between them seem'd to be in a great Measure dissolv'd; which the King of *Sweden* observing, and that the *Dane*, in any Exigency, could not depend upon the Czar for any Assistance, he threatned to invade the Island of *Zeland*; but, while the King of *Sweden* was making Preparation for his intended Expedition, the Elector of *Hanover*, (*George* the First, King of *England*) apprehending that the Design of the *Swede* might be upon some of his *German* Dominions, sent a Squadron of *English* Men of War into the *Baltick*, under the Command of Admiral *Byng*, which quite put a Stop to the King of *Sweden*'s Design upon *Denmark*.

IN the Year 1718 the King of *Sweden* march'd two Armies into *Norway*, one of them to the Northward to *Drontheim*, and the other to *Christiana*, the King himself being at the Head of the latter; and the *Danes* not having Force enough to oppose them, they laid all the whole Country under Contribution; but the King of *Sweden* laying Siege to *Frederickshall*, was shot in the Trenches before it, which in a great Measure put an End to the Wars between *Sweden* and *Denmark*, tho' the Treaty of Peace was not actually sign'd between them till the Year 1720, nor perhaps would it have been then, but that the *Dane* on one Side, and the *Moscovite* on the other, distress'd the *Swede* at such a Rate, that he found himself obliged to comply with such Terms as the Kings of *Great Britain* and *France*, the Guarantees of the Peace, prescribed to him.

The Swede invades Norway.

THE Substance of this Treaty was, That, by the fifth Article, the King of *Denmark* oblig'd himself not to assist his Czarish Majesty against *Sweden*, or to suffer the *Russian* Men of War to enter his Ports. By the sixth Article, the *Swede* obliged himself to conform to such Measures as the Mediators should take in Behalf of the King of *Denmark*, as concerning the Dominions of the Duke of *Holstein*. By the seventh, the King of *Denmark* obliges himself to deliver up to *Sweden* the City of *Stralsund*, and that Part of *Pomerania*, as far as the River *Pene*; that he should evacuate the Fortress of *Marstrand*, the Town of *Wismar*, the Capital of *Mecklenburgh*, and also the Island of *Rugen*, and other Islands which the *Danes* took in the late War. And in the ninth Article it was stipulated in Favour of the *Dane*, that the *Swede* should pay Contribution, or Toll, for passing the *Sound*, as the *English* and *Dutch* did. And by the tenth Article, the King of *Sweden* engages himself to pay to the King of *Denmark* six hundred thousand Crowns, before the above-mention'd Places be deliver'd up. There was also a separate Article, in which it was agreed, that the Fortifications of *Wismar*, which had been demolish'd in the late War, should never be repair'd, *Bremen* and *Verden* having been before confirm'd to King *George*, as Elector of *Hanover*, by the *Swede* some time ago, as has been mention'd in the former Part of this History.

Treaty of Peace.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Arms and Titles of the Kings of Denmark: *Of their Nobility, and Orders of Knighthood; and of the Intereſt of* Denmark *in Relation to other Powers.*

THE King of *Denmark* bears the Arms of 1. *Denmark*, 2. *Norway*, 3. *Gothland*, 4. *Schonen*, 5. *Sweden*, 6. *Jutland*, 7. *Sleſwick*, 8. *Iceland*, 9. *Holſtein*, 10. *Stormar*, 11. *Delmonburſt*, and 12. *Oldenburgh*; the Particulars of which are as follow:

Arms. FIRST Party of three, and Coupe of two, which makes twelve Quarters. In the Firſt, *Or*, Seme of Hearts, *Gules*, three Lions paſſant guardant, *Azure*, crown'd, languid, and arm'd of the Firſt, for *Denmark*. 2. *Gules*, a Lion rampant, *Or*, crown'd and arm'd of the Firſt, in his Paws a Battle-Ax, *Argent*, hilted of the Second, for *Norway*. 3. *Gules*, a Lion paſſant guardant, *Or*, on nine Hearts of the ſame, in Feſſe, for *Gothland*. 4. *Gules*, a Dragon crown'd, *Or*, for *Schonen*. 5. *Azure*, three Crowns, *Or*, for *Sweden*. 6. *Gules*, a Paſchal Lamb, *Argent*, ſupporting a Flag of the ſame, mark'd with a Croſs, *Gules*, for *Jutland*. 7. *Or*, two Lions paſſant guardant, *Azure*, for *Sleſwick*. 8. *Gules*, a Fiſh crown'd, *Argent*, for *Iceland*. Over theſe eight Quarters a great Croſs, *Argent*, (the antient Device of the Kingdom) on the Center of which is, *Gules*, a Cavalier arm'd, *Argent*, for *Ditmarſh*. 9. *Gules*, a Nettle Leaf open, and charg'd in the Middle with an Eſcutcheon, the whole *Argent*, for *Holſtein*. 10. *Gules*, a Cygnet, *Argent*, with a Crown, *Or*, for *Stormar*. 11. *Gules*, two Feſſes, *Or*, for *Delmonburſt*. 12. *Gules*, a Croſs, Pattree, Fitchtree, *Argent*, for *Oldenburgh*. The Shield ſurrounded with the Collar of the Order of the Elephant. The Creſt is a Crown, *Or*, flower'd, rais'd with eight Diadems, terminating in a Monde of the ſame. The Motto *Pietas & Juſtitia coronant*.

Title. THE Stile or Title of this Prince is, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, of the *Goths* and *Vandals*, Duke of *Sleſwick*, *Holſtein*, *Stormar*, and *Ditmarſh*, Earl of *Oldenburgh* and *Delmonburſt*.

THE King of *Denmark* being abſolute, his Prerogative, within his own Dominions, is unlimited, but he acts by Laws and Rules made by his Anceſtors, with what Alterations or Reſtrictions he thinks fit to make. None can ſell or diſpoſe of their Eſtates without his Conſent, he being entitled to one Third of the Purchaſe Money upon every Sale of Lands or Eſtates.

NOBILITY and Gentry were formerly ſynonimous Terms with them, but of late they have introduc'd the Title of Baron, or Count, and commonly thoſe who acquire theſe Titles either are, or are intended to be, the Creatures of the Court. Theſe have the Privilege of diſpoſing of their Eſtates by Will, the Succeſſion of all other Eſtates being determin'd by Law, upon the Deceaſe of the Anceſtor.

IT is more common here to prefer Foreigners, or Natives of mean Extraction, than the Deſcendants of Noblemen or good Families, becauſe they are the fitteſt Tools to execute the Commands of an arbitrary Prince; and if they oppreſs the common People to enrich themſelves, the Prince, by his abſolute Power, can more eaſily ſeize their ill-gotten Eſtates, which, when he does it, is not with a Deſign to make Reſtitution to the injur'd Sufferers, but to enrich himſelf, and he can eaſier handle thoſe obſcure Perſons than he could the Nobility, if they were guilty of the like Extortions; and it may be added, that as the Nobility cannot but envy the Promotion of thoſe Dunghil Miniſters, there will a proportionable Satisfaction accrue from their ſeeing them degraded.

Knights. THERE are two Orders of Knighthood, the moſt honourable of which is that of the Order of the Elephant: This is never conferr'd upon any but Perſons of extraordinary Quality or Merit; it is an Inſtitution of above three hundred Years ſtanding; the firſt Knight of that Order that ever was created, having that Dignity conferr'd upon him at the Wedding of *Chriſtian* the Firſt's Son. Their Badge is an Elephant with a Caſtle upon its Back, ſet with Diamonds, and hung by a water'd Sky-colour'd Ribbon, and wore in the ſame Manner as the Knights of the Garter in *England* wear their *George*. The other Degree of Knighthood is of an inferior Nature to the other, and is only conferr'd upon Gentlemen or Noblemen of a lower Rank; the Badge by which they are diſtinguiſh'd is a white Ribbon with red Edges, and worn on the contrary Shoulder to that of the Order of the Elephant; it hath a ſmall Croſs of Diamonds hung to it, and an Embroidery like a Star on the Breaſt of their Coats, in which is the Motto, *Pietate & Juſtitia*.

MR. *Moleſworth* obſerves, that in the Court of *Denmark* no Enſigns of Majeſty appear but what are of a Military Nature, ſuch as belong to the Horſe and Foot Guards, or to the *Trabants*, who are ſomething like our Yeomen of the Guard in the *Engliſh* Court, and conſequently Trumpets, Kettle-Drums, and other Military Muſick, are uſed in the Court as well as in the Camp; but here are no Swords of State, Maces, or the like, even upon the moſt ſolemn Occaſions. At Dinner the Queen, and the King's Children and Relations, with the Miniſters and General Officers, dine with his Majeſty; Grace is ſaid by one of the Pages, there being none of the Clergy kept in the King's Houſe as Chaplains; one or two Gentlemen only wait at the Table, and the reſt of the Attendants are Livery Servants. The Officers of the Houſhold are, the Marſhal, who takes Care of the Table, to have the Victuals ready in its proper Seaſon, and to give Notice when it is ready; the Comptroller of the Kitchen, who places the Diſhes in their proper Order upon the Table; the Maſter of the Horſe, who looks after the King's Stables, Horſes, and Studs of Mares, of which the King has ſome excellent good ones; among which he has one particular Breed of light Iron Greys, with black Heads, Tails, and Manes.

OF the three Northern Powers, *Moſcovy*, *Sweden*, and *Denmark*, the laſt ſeems at preſent to be much the weakeſt; and *Moſcovy*, once a contemptible Place for its being weak and undiſciplin'd, is now ſo improv'd in Military Knowledge, by Means of their long and continual War with *Sweden*, that it is now the moſt formidable of all the Three, and is become the Terror of their Neighbours; and beſides their Strength, they have alſo increas'd very much in Trade, and conſequently

ſequently in Riches, by reaſon of the vaſt Continent they enjoy, and the many Ports they have made themſelves Maſters of in the *Baltick Sea*, which hath open'd a Trade for them with moſt Nations in *Europe*, and given them great a Opportunity to encreaſe their Number of Shipping, which makes them now very formidable both by Sea and Land; which puts the *Engliſh* ſometimes under a Neceſſity to ſend a Squadron into the *Baltick*, to protect the Balance of Trade, the united Fleets of *Sweden* and *Denmark* not being now able to ſuppreſs the inſulting Power of the *Moſcovite* without the Interpoſition of *England*, or *Holland*, or ſome neighbouring Power. And it may be obſerv'd, that the Power of *Moſcovy*, and the Danger that *Sweden* and *Denmark* would be in if the Czar ſhould make any Attempt upon either of them, has been a great Means of uniting thoſe two late contending Powers for their mutual Security; and the rather, becauſe the *Swedes* are apprehenſive that the *Ruſſians* have ſtill a View of placing the Duke of *Holſtein* upon the Throne of *Sweden*, and if that ſhould be brought to paſs, *Denmark* would be an eaſy Prey to the united Powers of *Moſcovy* and *Sweden*.

And, which might ſtill be of worſe Conſequence, ſhould that come to paſs, is, that probably the Czar would attempt the Reſtoration of the Duke of *Holſtein* to thoſe Dominions of his own which the King of *Denmark* unjuſtly took from him, which might in all probability bring *Denmark* itſelf to be the Seat of War; to prevent which the *Dane* keeps up his Alliance with the *German* Powers, alledging, that it is for their Intereſt as well as his, to keep the Czar's Army out of *Holſtein*, becauſe if the Czar ſhould penetrate into thoſe Dominions of the Duke of *Holſtein*, the Territories in the North Part of *Germany* would be in as much Danger as *Denmark*. And this makes it become the joint Intereſt of all thoſe Northern Powers to unite againſt the *Moſcovites* ſwelling to an exorbitant Power; and if that be done, the *Dane* has nothing to fear from the *Swede*, who is ſo much impoveriſh'd by loſing ſo great a Part of his beſt Territories in the late War, and who dare not act offenſively, leſt the *Moſcovite* ſhould take that Advantage to fall upon his Dominions.

A DESCRIPTION OF GREENLAND,

As to the firſt Diſcovery of it, and the Eſtabliſhment of the Whale-Fiſhery there, &c.

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation of Weſt Greenland; *with an Account of the Inhabitants, Animals, and Produce of the Country.*

AMONGST Geographers it is not certainly known whether *Eaſt* and *Weſt Greenland* be upon the ſame Continent; ſome lay down the North-Eaſt Part, commonly call'd *Eaſt Greenland*, as an Iſland, which to me ſeems the moſt probable; but whether that be ſo or not, they were not both diſcover'd at the ſame Time, or if it be all one Continent, the Knowledge of it was the Effect of more Diſcoveries than one; indeed I am inclined to think, that the North-Eaſt Part of it, known by the Name of *Greenland*, or *Eaſt Greenland*, (in oppoſition to the Weſtern Part of it, call'd *Greenland*, or *Weſt Greenland,*) is an Iſland, becauſe there are Roads, Iſlands, and Sounds or Bays, on the Weſt Side of it, eſpecially *Bell Sound*, where the *Engliſh* winter'd in the Year 1630; but if it was a Part of the Continent, whoſe Coaſt ſtretches North-Eaſt and South-Weſt, it is no Iſland, and conſequently there could be no ſuch Harbours or Coves on the Weſt Side of it, as both the *Engliſh* and *Dutch Greenland* Men, that uſe that Fiſhery, know there are.

As for the Diſtinction, or Difference, between the Names, *Greenland* and *Groenland*, I look upon it as having no Share in the Argument on either Side, but rather impute the Difference between theſe two Words, or Names, to be owing either to the corrupt Way of the *Dutch* pronouncing the *Engliſh* Language, or, *vice verſa*, the *Engliſh* pronouncing the *Dutch*; and this I am rather inclin'd to think, becauſe the South-Weſt Part of it was the firſt diſcover'd, and call'd by the Name of *Greenland*, before the North-Eaſt Part was known, at leaſt to any in theſe Parts of *Europe*; but when the North-Eaſt Part was diſcover'd, and probably then ſuppos'd to be a Part of the ſame Continent, it was alſo call'd *Greenland*; and hence it became neceſſary to diſtinguiſh one from the other, which was naturally done by their Situation, as *Eaſt Greenland* and *Weſt Greenland*, under which Denominations I ſhall give the following Deſcription of them, only obſerving that the *Dutch* call *Eaſt Greenland Spitsbergen*, from the Craggy Rocks which appear upon the Coaſt, *Spits* in *Dutch* ſignifying Craggy or Pointed, and *Berg* a Hill or Eminency, or a Precipice higher than the common Land about it.

Weſt Greenland is a large Tract of Land, of which now the King of *Denmark* claims the Sovereignty, as he did alſo of *New*, or *Eaſt Greenland* when it was firſt diſcover'd, as ſuppoſing it to be be on the ſame Continent with *Old* or *Weſt Greenland*; and under this Pretence of a Claim he endeavour'd to exclude the *Engliſh* from fiſhing for Whales there, and had he had Power to his Good-Will, he would doubtleſs have accompliſh'd his Deſign; but as there were no Inhabitants to be his Subjects, and keep Poſſeſſion for him, his Right to Sovereignty was but little look'd upon, but the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* went upon the Whale-Fiſhery there as they thought fit.

Greenland (including both *Eaſt* and *Weſt Greenland*) is a long Tract of Land, lying four or five Days Sail Northward and Weſtward from *Iceland*; it extends from Cape *Farewel*, which lies between ſixty and ſixty-one North, and extends North-Eaſt into Latitude eighty or more, being in Length near ſix hundred Leagues. We have ſome uncertain Accounts of this Land being firſt diſcover'd by the *Norwegians*, about the Year 982, and that they built ſeveral Towns, and converted the Inhabitants to Chriſtianity, &c. But be this Fact or Fiction, if we may believe our Countryman Captain *Forbiſher*, who was upon this Coaſt in the Year 1577, endeavouring to find out a North-Weſt Paſſage to *India*, and whoſe Account I look upon to be more Authentick; he tells us, that when he was upon that Coaſt, the People were perfectly barbarous, and that there was no Reaſon to believe that any of their Progenitors had ever been otherwiſe, there not being ſo much as the Ruins of any Town to be ſeen; and with him agree *Hudſon*, *Davis*, *Baffin*, and *James*, and

indeed all that went upon any of thoſe Northern, or North-Weſt Diſcoveries; nay the *Danes*, who pretend to ſome Sort of a Property there, yet in a Voyage in the Year 1605, could not ſo much as bring the Natives to converſe with them, ſo that whatever Inhabitants there are, it is evident that they never were the Subjects of the Crown of *Denmark*, and ſo far were they from paying any Homage or Reſpect to them, that they were always upon their Guard, and ready to fall upon them as Enemies, and Invaders of their Country, and tho' they took ſome of them by Force, and brought them to *Denmark*, yet they were always indocible, and could never be brought to converſe, ſo as either to underſtand, or to be underſtood.

Face of the Country.

THE Country is rocky and mountainous, the Hills cover'd with Snow, and the Harbours, or Creeks along the Shore, frozen up moſt part of the Year, there are ſeveral Bays and Inlets on the North-Weſt Part of *Greenland*, eſpecially *Davis's Streights*, which lead up into *Baffins's Bay*, where the Adventurers ſail'd as high as Latitude eighty Degrees, but not being able to find any Paſſage to the Southward or Weſtward, they were obliged to return by the Way they went in; and hence they found Reaſon to conclude that *Greenland* is contiguous to the Main Continent of *America*, which Opinion they think is confirm'd by the following Reaſons:

FIRST, It is obſerv'd that the Ice to the Weſtward is unmoveable as if it was fixt to the Land, whereas in the Ocean the vaſt Iſlands and Mountains of Ice are always in Motion; and if there were a Communication by Sea between that great Northern Ocean, which is between *Europe* and *North America*, and the Ocean that is to the Weſtward of *North America*, theſe Mountains of Ice in that Place would alſo be continually in Motion, according as they are affected by the Wind, or Tides, or both.

ANOTHER Reaſon againſt this Paſſage, is, that the natural Courſe of the Tide is from Eaſt to Weſt, if not oppoſed or reſtrain'd, but theſe Tides flow one Way and ebb the other, which is a plain Proof that they meet with ſome Obſtruction, which puts a Stop to their Courſe, and makes them ebb back again by the ſame Way they flow'd in, but upon a contrary Direction, which as Experience proves the Fact, ſo that being Fact amounts to no leſs than a Proof that there is no ſuch Paſſage between *Greenland* and *America*.

THE many ſmall Iſlands upon the Coaſt of *Greenland* form ſeveral good Bays and Harbours; there are alſo many large navigable Rivers, which riſe in *Greenland* and fall into thoſe Seas; up which the Diſcoverers have ſail'd ten or twelve Leagues into the Country; ſome of thoſe Rivers afford plenty of Fiſh, and ſome of the Plains and Valleys are very fruitful. The Air is cold, and the Fogs very troubleſome. Here the *Aurora Borealis*, or Northern Light, appears, with much more Splendour than in *England*, and is more ſo in the Spring of the Year, and near the New Moon, when it ſometimes darts forth Streams of Light from the Horizon almoſt to the Zenith, and that as quick as Lightning, and for a long Time together, without Intermiſſion, but diſappears about Break of Day; but probably it does not actually ceaſe, but continue as much by Day as by Night, only it diſappears becauſe the Sun, the much more reſplendent Light, renders it imperceptible. There was the ſame Sort of *Phenomena* ſeen in *England*, on the Sixth of *March*, 1716, which People put different Conſtructions upon, and were apt to think it ominous; but it has appear'd in *England*, more or leſs, very often ſince, but it is much more frequent and ſplendid in higher North Latitudes than in *England*. It was very common for us in the great Northern Ocean, between the North Cape and *Greenland*, to write, or ſet down, any ſmall Memorandum or Obſervation on the (otherwiſe) darkeſt Nights, having no other Light but the *Aurora Borealis*.

Perſons.

AS to the Perſons of the Natives, they are ſhort and ſtrong, their Hair black, their Complexion dark Tawny, their Faces flat and broad, like the *Tartars*, and their Lips thick like the *Negroes*. They are very ſhy with Foreigners, and indeed no Wonder, if we conſider that our Ships have forcibly carry'd off ſeveral of the Natives, and kill'd and wounded others, for no other Crime but defending themſelves from our unnatural Plunder, in carrying them off, as if they were our Property, or were not of the Human Species; what can we expect when we go a Shaving, as it is call'd, for *Negroes*, and do not ſcruple to ſteal the very Children from their Mothers to make a little Money of, and call it *Trading*, when at the ſame Time our Principles, as Chriſtians, teach us that it is an odious and ſhameful Sin to ſteal a Calf or a Sheep: Does not this give them juſt Reaſon to think us as barbarous and inhuman as we eſteem them; in this we condemn ourſelves out of our own Mouths, in as much as we think ourſelves to know more of Reaſon and Chriſtianity than we think they do, doubtleſs when they have been ſo ill uſed by the *Engliſh*, or other Chriſtians, they do not bewray ſo much of a ſavage Temper, in defending themſelves from us, as we do in invading their Properties, and making Merchandize of their Perſons, to carry to Chriſtian Markets; and this Liberty we take, becauſe we think that we are more civiliz'd than they, but it is well if the Practice do not prove us quite contrary in that Particular.

Temper.

THE Men are hardy and reſolute, and ſometimes, with more Courage than Conduct, have engag'd the *Engliſh* with Slings and Bows and Arrows, when we have fired both great and ſmall Shot at them; but, tho' this may be ſaid of the *Greenlanders*, it is not ſo with the *Laplanders*, tho' otherwiſe their Habit and Way of Living is much the ſame; for the *Greenlanders* cloath themſelves with Skins of Rein-Deer, of Fowls, or ſometimes of Fiſhes, and are drawn by Rein-Deer, Dogs, or other Animals. They have no ſettled Habitations, but wander from Place to Place; living in Tents in the Summer, and in Huts, or Caves, made under the Hills for Shelter, in the Winter, contrived with ſubterraneous Paſſages from one Hut to another in the time of the deepeſt Snows. Their Employments, and indeed a great Part of their Subſiſtence too, is Fiſhing and Hunting. Their Women make long blue Streaks on their Foreheads, Lips, and Chins, with a coarſe Sort of Paint; they plait their Hair, and generally have ſome ſort of Pendants in their Ears.

Language.

THE *Greenlanders* ſpeak very thick, and pretty much in their Throats; they pronounce the Letter *G* rough, like the *Tartars*; they uſe no *R*, but put *L* inſtead of it, as, inſtead of *Right* they ſay *Light*; they have ſome *Daniſh* Words in their Language, but are ſo great Strangers to it in general, that the Natives who were brought over to *Denmark*, could never be brought to learn it. They do not know the Value of Gold or Silver, but very much value Toys in Iron and Steel, ſuch as Knives, Sciſſors, Needles, *&c.* And, either for the Sake of the Value, or the Metal it is compos'd of, they ſometimes attempt to ſteal the Anchors from Ships, and yet they ſeem to have no Art in forging Iron, for if they had, they would ſcarce head or dart their Arrows with Fiſhes Bones, as is now their Way of doing it. Whatever might be their Method of ordering their Fleſh-meat, they have now got the Way of boil-

ing, broiling, or roasting it; it is commonly the Flesh of Rein-Deer, Foxes, or Dogs, as also dry'd Fish: but our latest Discoverers have not found any Bread-Corn grow in the Country; nor can it well be expected, the Climate consider'd.

Religion and Government.

Among such a wild uncivilia'd People there cannot be any great Account expected of their Religion or Government; for as for the latter, they seem to be govern'd by Power rather than Law, and the weakest are obliged to submit to the strongest; and as to their Religion, some People report them to be Idolaters, but the only Reason they assign for that Opinion is, because they have found some monstrous and deform'd Images on the Shore, which they therefore suppose are worshipp'd by them as Gods, but the Presence of the Images, or the Report of those Travellers, are no Proofs of the Fact. Our modern Discoverers tell us, that when the Natives relate any thing with Gestures and Asseverations, proper to exite Belief, it is common with them to point at the Sun, and clap their Hand upon their Breast, as if they thought that great Light was able to penetrate into their most private Thoughts, and as if they appeal'd to it for the Truth of what they assert; and this I can readily believe to be the Truth, because I have seen them, when I was in *Moscovy*, pay this Sort of Veneration, or Worship, to the Sun, and especially in the Morning at its first Appearance, but there they commonly added the Ceremony of Crossing themselves, which, by what I can find, is not used in *Greenland*.

Animals.

The Beasts which are most common or plenty in *Greenland*, are Rein-Deer, Bears, Foxes, Dogs, and Sea-Horses, or Morses, but these last being at present more plenty about *Cherry Island* than upon the Coast of *Greenland*, I shall speak of them, and the Manner of using them, when I come to treat of *Cherry Island*, in Chap. III. following. The Sword-Fish is stil'd the Sea-Unicorn, and the Teeth of some of the largest of them have been brought from *Greenland*, and call'd Unicorn's Horns; they have plenty of Salmon, and other good Fish, with Red Geese, Water-Fowls, and White Partridges, as in *Lapland*.

Produce.

Timber is very scarce in *Greenland*, especially near the Coast. Some think the Soil sufficiently fertile to bear Corn, but if we consider the Shortness of the Summer, and Coldness of the Winter, it will be easy to conclude that there is no Season for the Sowing, Growing, and Ripening of Corn, especially Wheat or Rye, which requires so many Months to bring it to Perfection in such a temperate Climate as *England*. Their Mountains are continually cover'd with Snow, and consequently can yield but little Herbage; but as to what may be further up in the Country, our Sailors, who only trade upon the Coast, have not had any great Opportunity to give us any Account of.

Boats.

Our Mariners mightily admire the Manner of their building their Boats, which are of two Sorts, one is a small one just to carry one Man, the other is thirty or forty Foot long, with ten or twelve Seats for the Rowers to sit upon; the Ribs, or Timbers, are made of Whale-bone, tack'd together with the Sinews of Animals, and cover'd with Seal-Skins. The small Boats, or Canoes, are managed with one Oar, or Paddle, both Ends of which are broad, or feather'd alike, as the feather'd End of an Oar, and with this they can paddle on each Side alternately, without turning the Oar, or having two, and they will, with one Man only, paddle along with incredible Swiftness.

CHAP. II.

Of the Situation and Extent of East, *or* New Greenland, *and of the first Discovery of it; and of some further Probabilities of its joining to* Asia *as well as* America; *with an Account of some Attempts that have been made to discover a Passage to* China *this Way.*

Situation and Extent.

Some Part of *New*, or *East Greenland* is under the same Meridian, or Longitude, with the North Cape of *Norway*, or Northermost Point of *Europe*; the most Southerly Part of it is in about Latitude seventy-six Degrees, but the Extent of it to the Northward is unknown, or whether it may not extend as far as the Pole, or further, or whether the North Pole may not be in the Zenith of some Part of *Greenland*, is uncertain, Navigation so far as under the Pole being hitherto thought impracticable; and as to its Extent East and West, some think it is contiguous to *Asia* on the East, as well as, by the foregoing Conjectures, we have concluded the Probability of its being contiguous to *America* on the West.

The first Northern Discoveries of which we have any authentick Account, or in which the Crown of *England* was interested, were in the Reign of King *Edward* VI. at the Charge of a Society of *English* Merchants, incorporated under the Stile or Title of, *The Merchant Adventurers for Discovering of Lands unknown*, &c. but, altho' they acted under this general Title, their more particular Design was to find a North-East Passage to *India* and *China*, that they might participate with the *Portuguese* in that profitable Trade, by a nearer Way than by the *Cape of good Hope*, which the *Portuguese* having discover'd before the *English* knew any thing of that Way to *India*, [*See the History of the* Oriental Islands, *Chap.* I. *in Page* 93.] the *English* thought it would be ungenerous in them to take the Advantage of a Way to the *Indies* which the *Portuguese* had been the Discoverers of: But whatever tender Consciences the *English* might be govern'd by, yet the *Dutch* were not actuated by such a Principle, when they not only robb'd us of our Property, but massacreed our Fellow-Subjects, the *English*, at *Amboyna*, and others of the Spice Islands, and that when we had not only found out the Way to them, but had them in Possession too; [*See Chap.* XV. *of the* Oriental Islands, *Page* 117.] nor had they that regard for Honour or Principle, when they knowing that we were in the *Russia* Trade and the Whale-Fishery, before ever they attempted those Trades, yet now not only have their full Share, but rather drive the Trade as if they endeavour'd to engross it all to themselves. But we may assign as another Reason of this Attempt for a North-East Passage, *viz.* that if such a Passage could not be found, yet they might in the Attempt discover

some

ſome Place where they might eſtabliſh a Trade as advantageous, or at leaſt might be an Equivalent for the Charge. But to proceed,

This Engliſh *Company for diſcovering unknown Lands* fitted out three Ships, under the Conduct of Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, as Admiral; but he, with another of them, being ſeparated from the Third, theſe two doubled the North Cape, and ſteering North and North-Eaſt for ſome Weeks diſcover'd Land, which the *Engliſh* think was *Greenland*, but the *Dutch* would have it to be *Nova Zembla*; and, for any thing we have yet diſcover'd to the contrary, they may be both one and the ſame Continent, for they both went by the Name of *Nova Zembla* at the firſt Diſcovery of them, and the boldeſt Diſcoverers have not yet found out any Paſſage betwen them; but Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, without ſatisfying himſelf what Land it was that he had diſcover'd, ſteer'd South and South-Weſt, and fell in with the Coaſt of *Moſcovite Lapland* in *September* following. [*See more of this in Chap.* VIII. *of the Deſcription of* Moſcovy, *Page* 390]

But here I muſt deviate from the frightful Account which ſome of our Hiſtorians give of that Coaſt: They tell us, that Sir *Hugh Willoughby* was there embay'd with Ice, and that he and all his Company dy'd, as it was firſt ſuppos'd, by Extremity of Cold, or by the Scurvy, having nothing but ſalt Victuals aboard. *Thus far a very late Author.* But I beg leave to ſubjoin, that however ignorant we might be of thoſe Seas and Coaſts at that Time, and how much ſoever further Diſcoveries might make the Voyage more natural to us, yet the Climate was always the ſame; and tho' I have been in and coming out of the *White Sea* in *October*, and ſail'd then upon the Coaſt of *Lapland*, and coming about the North Cape, in a Latitude ſome Degrees to the Northward of it, yet I have never ſeen any ſuch frightful Shoals of Ice at that Time of the Year; I own I have been ſailing into the *White Sea* the latter End of *June*, and have met Iſlands of Ice coming out of that Sea, but that was the Product of the Froſt of the preceding Winter; the Ice in the River breaking up that Year the Third of *May*, and the Ice from that Time to the latter End of *June* was doubtleſs floating about in the *White Sea*, as the Wind and Tide gave them Motion, till the Heat of Summer had a ſufficient Power and Time to diſſolve them. However, Sir *Hugh Willoughby* periſh'd in this Attempt, but the *Edward Bonadventure*, Captain *Chancellor* Commander, which had been ſeparated from him, doubled the North Cape, and diſcover'd the Bay of *Archangel*, now call'd the *White Sea*, and ſettled a Trade with *Ruſſia*; which being already treated of in Chap. VIII. Page 300, of *Ruſſia*, I ſhall not repeat it here.

But the *Engliſh* Diſcoverers, not yet diſcourag'd from their Attempt to find a North-Eaſt Paſſage, fitted out a Ship, in the Year 1556, under the Command of Captain *Stephen Burroughs*: He ſail'd beyond the *White Sea*, or Bay of *Archangel*, as it was then call'd, and diſcover'd the Streights of *Waygats*, which divides *Nova Zembla* from the Main Continent of *Ruſſia*, and then return'd home.

But the unweary'd Adventurers, when they found this Enterprize miſcarry, of finding a North-Eaſt Paſſage to the *Chineſe* Seas, they then aim'd at a North-Weſt Paſſage; and in this Sir *Martin Forbiſher* was employ'd, in the Years 1576, 1577, and 1578; but after three Years ſpent to no Purpoſe, he was forc'd to deſiſt, the Land or Ice intercepting any further Paſſage.

This indefatigable Company, not willing yet to quit their Undertaking, ſent out two Ships more, in the Year 1580, under the Command of Captain *Arthur Pett* and Captain *Charles Jackman*, upon another Attempt to find out a North-Eaſt Paſſage to *China*; and they paſſing the Streights of *Waygats*, ſail'd as far Eaſt as they could for Ice, and then agreed to return back by the ſame Way they went; but it was ſuppos'd that Captain *Pett* was loſt in his Paſſage home, being never heard of more.

Hitherto the *Engliſh* only had attempted thoſe Seas, but now the *Dutch*, whoſe Induſtry conſiſts moſt in taking the Advantage of the Trade and Diſcoveries that other People have been at the Charge of, they follow'd the Steps of the *Engliſh*, and came to *Kola* in *Lapland*, and from thence into the *White Sea*, or Bay of *Archangel*. And in the Year 1596 they fitted out four Ships, under the Conduct of *William Barents*; he paſs'd the Streights of *Waygats*, and ſail'd Eaſt till the Ice oblig'd him to retreat. But not thus ſatisfied, they gave him the Command of ſeven Ships the next Year, that no Opportunity might be loſt to find this ſuppos'd North-Eaſt Paſſage, but ſtill in vain; for tho' they did not meet with Land to intercept their Paſſage, yet the Ice was ſo ſtrong as to render that Sea unpaſſable; but upon a Conſideration, that, as they found Sea for a Paſſage, and no Land to interpoſe, there might, ſome Time of the Year or other, be a Paſſage found; whereupon they ſent the ſaid *William Barents* with two other Ships, and with them he ſtood more to the Northward, and came to an Iſland, in about Latitude ſeventy-four, which the *Engliſh* had diſcoverd before, and call'd it *Cherry Iſland*, but when they found it, they, willing to be thought the firſt Diſcoverers, call'd it *Bear Iſland*; from hence they ſail'd to the Northward, into Latitude eighty, and diſcover'd the Land, call'd by them *Spitsbergen*, but the *Engliſh*, who had diſcover'd it likewiſe before the *Dutch* did, had call'd it *Eaſt Greenland*, or *New Greenland*; here they went aſhore, but give no Account of the Nature of the Country, or whether they found any Inhabitants, and made the beſt of their Way back to *Cherry Iſland*.

From thence they ſail'd to the North-Eaſt of *Nova Zembla*, into Latitude ſeventy-ſix, and came to an Anchor in a Bay or Creek, which, by Reaſon of the Severity of the Froſt, they call'd *Ice-Haven*; here they were ſo block'd up with Ice in *September*, that notwithſtanding their Attempts to get out, they found it impracticable; whereupon they went aſhore, thinking to build them an Houſe, and, which is very remarkable, although there was no Wood grew upon the Land, yet they found great Plenty of Timber Trees floating along the Shore, which anſwer'd their Purpoſe; but by the End of *September* the Froſt was grown ſo ſevere, that Nails or any Thing of Iron they handled ſtuck to their Fingers. One Author, writing upon this Voyage, ſays, the Sun left them about the fourth of *November*; but in Latitude ſeventy-ſix the Sun would leave them as ſoon as his Declination amounted to fourteen Degrees South, which would be about the Twentieth of *October*, except ſo much as the Refraction amounted to, and therefore it is rather to be ſupoſed that Day-light grew very dim at that Time; for on the Fourth of *November* the Sun was between four and five Degrees below the Horizon when neareſt it, but during the Sun's Abſence, the Moon, when at Full, was continually above the Horizon, which, with the Snow, afforded them a tolerable Light; by the Twenty-fourth of *January* they could ſee the upper Edge of the Sun in the South, and on the Twenty-ſeventh they could ſee his whole Body; on the Twenty-ninth of *April* the Sun firſt appear'd to them in the Northern Horizon, and from that Time continued above the Earth all the twenty-four Hours, as long as they ſtay'd, which was till the Fourteenth of *June* following.

But an Objection may eaſily be made againſt the Truth of this Journal, from that known Aſtronomical Truth, that at any Latitude propoſed, the Sun ſhould have juſt the ſame Declination South, when he is firſt ſeen in the Southern Horizon, as he has North, when firſt ſeen in the Northern Horizon, under the Pole; (which in this Caſe muſt always be in a Latitude above ſixty-ſix Degrees thirty Minutes.) But the Sun's Declination South on the Twenty-fifth or Twenty-ſixth of *January*, when the Center of the Sun could firſt be ſeen in the South, differ'd from his Declination North *April* the Twenty-ninth, when he firſt appear'd in the North under the Pole; but this may be charitably accounted for in Obſervations taken by Men under ſuch difficult Circumſtances; and not only ſo, but probably they might not have a true Horizon on both Sides of them; for if they had the Sea and a true Horizon to the Northward of them, and nothing but ſnowy Mountains to the Southward, they might do the beſt they could in both Caſes, but it could not be expected that under theſe Inconveniences their Obſervations could be capable of being reconcil'd to Mathematical Demonſtration.

Here they ſtay'd till the fourteenth of *June*, in which Time they buried one Man at *Nova Zembla*; another had his Great Toe frozen off; and *Barents*, the Pilot, and another of their Company, being dangerouſly ill, this further weakned and diſcourag'd them; but finding no Hopes of an Opportunity of getting the Ship out of the Ice, they ventur'd to Sea in two open Boats, by which, with great Difficulty, they made their way through the Ice, ſometimes rowing between the Shoals of Ice, and ſometimes, when there was no Channel, nor open Place to row in, they hawl'd their Boats over the Ice till they found ſome Water not frozen; and this happen'd ſometimes for four or five hundred Yards or more, which made this mix'd Expedition very tedious.

On the twentieth of *April* their Pilot, *William Barents*, died, as did alſo their other ſick Man the ſame Day, and on the fifth of *July* another of their Men dy'd; in this deſperate Caſe they kept the Sea in their two open Boats. They croſs'd the Mouth of the *White Sea* to the Coaſt of *Ruſſia Lapland*, and arrived at the River *Kola*; on the ſecond of *September* they met with Captain *Corneilſon*, and ſeveral other *Dutch* Veſſels; and as Captain *Corneilſon* came out with them the Year before, they went aboard of him, to get their Paſſage home to *Holland*, where they arriv'd the firſt of *November* following. Note, from *Ice Harbour*, where they left the Ship, to the River *Kola*, is not much leſs than a thouſand Miles, which, notwithſtanding the boiſterous Seas and Mountains of Ice, they perform'd in their open Boats.

Hudſon's Voyage.

But, notwithſtanding all thoſe Miſcarriages of the *Dutch*, the *Engliſh* fitted out one Ship more, in the Year 1607, under the Command of *Henry Hudſon*. He ſail'd from *England* the firſt of *May*, and on the twentieth of *June* following arrived on the Coaſt of *Greenland*, in Latitude about ſeventy-eight; but ſailing to the Nortward, or rather North-Eaſt, they, on the twelfth of *July*, found themſelves in Latitude eighty, *Greenland* then bearing South South-Weſt about twelve Leagues. Here they met with ſuch Floats of Ice as made Sailing very dangerous: Here *Hudſon* made for the Land, and, willing to know what the Country produc'd, ſent ſome of his Men aſhore, to bring him a Specimen of what they could ſee. They at that Time found it very hot Weather upon the Land; and finding a Stream of clear cool freſh Water by the Sea Side, they enjoy'd and refreſh'd themſelves to their great Satisfaction, and then pick'd up Morſes Teeth, Whalebone, and Deer's Horns, or any Thing worth their Notice, to ſhow what the Land or Shore produc'd.

When here, Mr. *Hudſon* obſerv'd the high Land to extend, as he thought, as far as Latitude eighty-two, and not knowing but that it might be an Iſland, attempted to ſail round it, but found it impracticable, by reaſon of the vaſt Quantities of Ice to the Northward, which, between the Latitudes of ſeventy-eight Degrees thirty Minutes and eighty-two Degrees, abound ſo in thoſe Seas as to render Navigation there impracticable.

In the Year 1608, on the twenty-ſecond of *April*, Captain *Hudſon* ſet out from the River *Thames*, with ſixteen Men aboard, and on the twenty-ninth of *May* was in Latitude ſeventy-three and upwards, having then the Opportunity of ſeeing the Sun in the Meridian under the Pole; on the third of *June* the North Cape bore South-Weſt eight Leagues; and ſteering from thence North-Eaſt, they met with the Ice in Latitude ſeventy-five and a half; but they continued their Courſe, notwithſtanding the Ice, for four or five Leagues; but as they went further the Ice grew ſo thick and ſo ſtrong, that they were forced to deſiſt, and were glad to get out of the Ice the ſame Way they went in, and ſail'd ſo far to the Southward as to get themſelves diſcharg'd from the Ice.

They then directed their Courſe Eaſterly, till they made *Swart's Cliff* in *Nova Zembla*; where ſending ſome of the Men aſhore, they found Graſs, Moſs, and Flowers growing; they alſo found a Croſs ſtanding up by the Sea Side, and a great Quantity of Timber driven aſhore, and ſaw Places where Fires had been made; they found the Prints of the Feet of Bears, Deer, and Foxes, and found Whale Fins and Horns of Deer, ſome of which they brought aboard; and a Day or two after they ſaw a Herd of white Deer, and kill'd a great many Fowls; but, as to the Diſcovery, what they thought moſt worth their Obſervation was, that they obſerv'd a ſtrong Current which carried the Ice and every thing elſe along with it that was in it, which gave gave them ſome Reaſon to hope that there was a Communication between that Sea and the Eaſtern Ocean, and ſo to *China*; but ſailing ſix or ſeven Leagues in that Current, they found, by their Soundings, that if there was a Paſſage, yet it was too ſhallow for Ships of any Burthen, whereupon they again deſiſted and return'd home.

Captain *Hudſon* tells us, that the Land in *Nova Zembla* affords a pleaſant Proſpect, eſpecially in the Summer-time, and that he ſaw ſome of the high Lands that had no Snow upon them, but that it appear'd green, and Herds of Deer feeding upon it; but it is difficult to know where thoſe Deer retire for Paſture and Shelter when the Ground is cover'd with Snow in the Winter-time.

Capt. Wood's Attempt.

The laſt Attempt that was made towards a North-Eaſt Paſſage, was by Captain *John Wood*, who was ſitted out in the Reign of King *Charles* the Second, at the Charge of *James* then Duke of *York*, and afterward King *James* the Second. He ſaild from the *Thames* on the twenty-eighth of *May*, 1676, in the *Speedwell*, having for a Companion the *Proſperous Pink*. He ſeems to have added little or nothing to the Diſcoveries made before (if they could be call'd Diſcoveries,) for he follow *William Barent*'s Tract, ſteering North-Eaſt from the North Cape of *Norway*, thinking to fall in between *Greenland* and *Nova Zembla*, but he found there was no Paſſage; all that he could infer from what he obſerv'd, was, that *Greenland* and *Nova Zembla* he thought to be all one

Continent; and, as he obſerv'd, that the Tides, which ebb and flow about eight Foot, always flow'd one Way and ebb'd the contrary Way, he concluded that either *Greenland*, *Nova Zembla*, and *Tartary* too were all upon the ſame Continent, or if there was any Paſſage between them, it was ſo narrow and choak'd up with Ice, that Navigation therein was impracticable.

CHAP. III.

Of the firſt Eſtabliſhment of the Greenland *Fiſhery, and of the ſeveral Steps taken towards it, by the* Engliſh *and* Dutch *diſputing the Right of it. Of the* Engliſh South Sea *Company's undertaking it, and afterwards declining it, for Reaſons beſt known to themſelves.*

First Diſcovery.

THE *Engliſh* firſt diſcovering, in their Northern Voyages, great Numbers of Morſes and Whales in the Seas about and near *Greenland*, ſome of the Ships belonging to the *Engliſh Ruſſia* Company attempted the taking of Morſes and Whales on the Ice, on the Northern Coaſt of *Moſcovy*, making Oil of their Fat, or Blubber. The Morſes have alſo two Tuſks, or great Teeth, which were then eſteem'd equal to Ivory; but whether the Morſes contracted a Shyneſs, from their being continually hunted by our Mariners, or for whatever other Reaſon, however, they have in a great Meaſure forſaken the *Moſcovite* Coaſts, and were afterwards much more plenty about *Cherry Iſland*. Their Haunt there was firſt diſcover'd by Captain *Stephen Bennet*, who was fitted out at the Charge of Sir *Francis Cherry*, in the Year 1603; and ſailing to the Northward from *Kola* in *Lapland*, he ſaw Land, in between ſeventy-four and ſeventy-five of Latitude, where going aſhore, he found it to be an Iſland; and in Compliment to his Owner, at whoſe Charge he was fitted out, he gave it his Name, and call'd it *Cherry Iſland*. Being aſhore he found plenty of Morſes Teeth, but the Seaſon for taking Morſes being paſt, he ſatisfy'd himſelf with the Diſcovery he had made, and ſo return'd to *England*.

Captain *Bennet's* Expedition.

THE next Year, *viz.* 1604, Captain *Bennet* ſail'd to *Cherry Iſland* again, and found above a thouſand Morſes on the Shore, killing many of them. And finding ſuch Encouragement for a Trade of that kind, he went again, *Anno* 1605, taking with him what Utenſils were neceſſary, for making Oil of the Morſes Fat, or Blubber, and bringing it home, as Coppers, Casks, *&c.* and made eleven Tun of Oil, which he brought home, as alſo ſeveral of the Morſes Teeth. The *Engliſh* alone continued to follow theſe Voyages till the Year 1610, increaſing every Year in their Succeſs and Quantity of Oil.

The *Ruſſia* Company finding this Encouragement, fitted out a Ship, in the Year 1610, of ſeventy Tuns, *Jonas Poole* Maſter: He was deſign'd for *Cherry Iſland*, and to make further Diſcoveries towards the North Pole; he ſail'd beyond *Cherry Iſland*, into Latitude ſeventy-ſix, and made the Land now call'd *New Greenland*; he ſail'd afterwards into Latitude ſeventy-nine, and came to an Anchor in a good Road, and ſending his Boat aſhore, the Men found ſome Whales Fins, and a great Number of Morſes: He erected a Croſs on the Side of a Hill, as a Teſtimony of his having taken Poſſeſſion of this Country for the *Engliſh Ruſſia* Company, and call'd the Road, in which he was at Anchor, *Croſs-Road*; and continuing till the latter End of *July*, killing Morſes, and making Oil, and in the mean Time ſeeing great Numbers of Whales, he return'd home with his Cargo, and an Account of what he had ſeen, as a further Encouragement to purſue the *Greenland* Trade.

The *Ruſſia* Company ſet on foot.

IN the Year following, which was 1611, the *Ruſſia* Company fitted out two Ships for *Greenland*, *viz.* the *Elizabeth* and the *Mary Margaret*, under the Command of *Jonas Poole* and *Stephen Bennet*, both intended to kill Whales and Morſes in *Greenland*. They ſail'd from the *Thames* the eleventh of *April*; they were very much perplex'd with Ice in their Paſſage to *Greenland*, eſpecially one Bank to the Eaſtward of them, about forty Leagues in Length, which ſeem'd without any Motion, as if it was fix'd to the Land; but, however, they arriv'd ſafe in *Croſs-Road* in *Greenland* on the twenty-ninth of *May*.

THE *Elizabeth*, Captain *Poole*, being order'd to try if it was poſſible to paſs from *Greenland* to the Pole itſelf, he ſet ſail accordingly, and ſail'd as far North as Latitude eighty; but there he found the Ice ſo firmly fix'd, that there was no paſſing through it; he therefore ſteer'd South-Weſt along the Shore, having the Ice and Land on the North-Weſt, or Starboard Side of him, till he came near that Part of the Coaſt of *Old Greenland*, call'd *Hudſon's Hold with Hope*, and then run forty Leagues further Weſtward, where he ſaw abundance of Whales by the Edge of the Ice; and finding this continued Tract of Ice from North-Eaſt to South-Weſt, and no Hopes of a Paſſage to the North-Weſt, he ſail'd back to *Cherry Iſland*; (not knowing till now what was become of the *Mary Margaret*, which he left in *Croſs-Road*;) but when he came at *Cherry Iſland* he found ſome of the *Mary Margaret's* Men aſhore there, having loſt their Ship, and left a great Quantity of Oil aſhore in *Greenland*; upon this News Captain *Poole* ſteer'd away again for *Greenland* to fetch their Effects; but when they came there, and were preparing to take in the Oil and Fins, the *Elizabeth*, by ſome Accident, overſet, and a *Hull* Ship took up the Men, and what Goods they had ſav'd, which was twenty two Tuns of Oil, ten Tuns of Whale Fins, and five Hogſheads of Morſes Teeth, with which they arriv'd in *England* the eighth Day of *September*.

The *Ruſſia* Company engroſs.

THE *Ruſſia* Company now thinking themſelves entirely Maſters of the *Greenland* Fiſhery, fitted out two Ships for *Greenland*, *viz.* the *Whale* and the *Sea Horſe*, under the Command of *Jonas Poole* and *Thomas Edge*; they ſail'd from the *Thames* the ſeventh of *April*, 1612, and on the third of *May* arriv'd at *Cherry Iſland*; where they found a *Dutch* Ship, who ſail'd with them towards *Greenland*; but the *Engliſh* Captains thinking that, by their prior Diſcoveries, the *Greenland* Seas and Fiſhery

were become their Property, they order'd the *Dutch* to quit thoſe Seas, which they did accordingly.

The two *Engliſh* Ships, the *Whale* and the *Sea Horſe*, arrived at *Greenland* the firſt of *June*, and found an *Engliſh* Ship there, who at firſt appear'd as a Stranger, but upon a cloſer Enquiry, they found it to be the Ship and Commander that took up Captain *Poole* and his Men, and ſaved them and their Cargo but the Year before; but, whatever Returns of Gratitude might have been expected from Captain *Poole*, he forgot former Favours, and being inveſted with the *Ruſſia* Company's Authority, look'd upon Captain *Marmaduke* as an Interloper, and would not allow him the Privilege of fiſhing in thoſe Seas.

Captain *Poole* and *Edge* kill'd ſeventeen Whales that Year, beſides Morſes, of which they made one hundred and eight Tuns of Oil, with which and their Whalebone they return'd to *England*. The *Ruſſia* Company's Power was then ſo great, that the *Spaniards*, willing to come in for a Share of the *Greenland* Fiſhery, ſent a Ship thither; but the Pilot being an *Engliſhman*, the *Engliſh* impriſon'd him for ſixteen Months, and ſo overturn'd his *Greenland* Voyage for that Year.

Seven or eight Ships fitted out.

In the Year 1613 the *Ruſſia* Company fitted out ſeven or eight Ships, under the Command of *Benjamin Joſeph*, Admiral, and *Thomas Edge*, Vice-Admiral; they ſail'd from the *Thames* the thirteenth of *May*, and, after a Paſſage of only ſeventeen Days, arriv'd at *Greenland* the thirtieth Day. Here they found fifteen Ships, *viz.* two *Dutch*, nine *French* or *Spaniards*, and four *Engliſh*, all which thoſe that came under the *Ruſſia* Company's Commiſſion, began to look upon as Interlopers; no Wonder if the Intereſt and Succeſs of the *Engliſh* began now to fail, when a Monopoly of this Company, in hopes of engroſſing all to themſelves, without any regard to the publick Good, weakned and deſtroy'd the Intereſt of their Fellow-Subjects; as it was in this Caſe; for the *Engliſh* Admiral, who bore the King's Commiſſion, not only prohibited Foreigners the Trade, as not being Subjects of the Crown of *England* but prohibited his own Fellow-Subjects too, that were not of the *Ruſſia* Company, and, what has been no uncommon Thing in *England* ſince that Time, the *Engliſh* had no more Privilege than Foreigners. The Admiral, to ſecure his Title, ſet up a Croſs of Wood, upon a low Point of Land, call'd *Low Neſs*, to which he fix'd the King of *Great Britain*'s Arms. (One would think he ſhould have fix'd the *Ruſſia* Company's Arms, ſince no other of the *Britiſh* Subjects were allow'd the Advantage of his Expedition.) They made ſeveral hundred Tuns of Oil of the Whales they took, and with it return'd to *England*.

The *Dutch*, who ever ſince they were able, have always been willing to take Advantages, and ſeeing the *Engliſh* (who were not of the *Ruſſia* Company) ſuppreſs'd as well as themſelves, and knowing well how eaſy a Matter it was to deal with a divided People, they ſent out eighteen large Ships (four of which were Men of War) to *Greenland*, in the Year 1614; and tho' the *Engliſh Ruſſia* Company ſent out thirteen Ships and two Pinaces, commanded by the ſame Admiral and Vice Admiral as in the preceeding Year, yet the *Dutch* finding themſelves too ſtrong for the *Engliſh*, ſtaid and fiſh'd by Force, and the *Engliſh* Ships, being thus ſupplanted of their Game, were forced to be contented to return half loaden.

The next Year (1615) the *Dutch* ſerv'd the *Engliſh* in the ſame Manner, and the *Engliſh* made but a poor Voyage. But the Year 1616 made amends, for the *Engliſh* ſent out eight ſtout Ships to *Greenland*, under the Command of Captain *Thomas Edge*; they brought home thirteen hundred Tuns of Oil, and a great Quantity of Whalebone, with the Teeth of a thouſand Sea-Horſes, which they kill'd upon an Iſland, which they call'd *Edge's Iſland*, from the Name of their Captain; the *Dutch* had but four Ships in *Greenland* this Year, and they made but a very indifferent Voyage.

In the Year 1617 the *Engliſh* fitted out fourteen Ships, under the Command of Admiral *Edge*; he ſet ſail from the *Thames April* the twenty-fourth, and arriv'd in *Greenland May* the twenty eighth: And now they began to aſſert their Property; for finding ſome *Dutch* Ships there, they not only put them off from fiſhing, but took from them the Blubber they already had aboard, and the *Engliſh* with that Blubber and their own, brought home that Year nineteen hundred Tuns of Oil.

The Year following, *viz.* 1618, the *Engliſh East India* and *Ruſſia* Companies join'd and ſent out thirteen Ships to *Greenland*, upon the Whale Fiſhery, beſides two Pinaces, under the Command of the above-mention'd Admiral *Edge*; but the *Dutch*, reſenting the Affront the Year before, fitted out a ſtrong Squadron, and fell upon one of the *Engliſh* Ships, killing a great Number of their Men; and not only plunder'd the Ship of her Artillery and Effects, but burn'd what Goods of the *Engliſh* they found aſhore; and hindering the reſt from Fiſhing, all the *Engliſh* Ships were forc'd that Year to return home empty. *Note*, If we compare thoſe Tranſactions with the Chronicles of that Time, we ſhall find that the *Dutch* uſurping this Authority was about the Time of, or within a Year or two after, King *James* the Firſt's delivering the Cautionary Towns, of *Flaſhing*, the *Brill*, and *Ramekins*, to the *Dutch*; tho' his Predeceſſor, Queen *Elizabeth*, wiſely conſidering what a Check they were upon the voracious *Dutch*, took care to keep them in her own Hand; but ſhe was no ſooner gone, and King *James* had deliver'd them up, but the *Dutch* ſoon began to encroach upon our Trade, and to inſult the *Engliſh* in all Parts of the World. (But of this ſee more at large in Chap. XV. of the Deſcription of the *Oriental Iſlands*, Page 117, to 124.) It was in this peaceable Reign that the *Dutch* made Articles with the *Engliſh*, and broke them at their Pleaſure; now it was that they not only ſeiz'd the Properties of the *Engliſh*, but maſſacred their Perſons; and this with Impunity, and without Reprizals made by that peaceful Monarch, who could ſee his Subjects ſuffer, and his Territories invaded, rather than ſhew any Reſentment to his mercenary plundering Enemies.

The inſatiable *Dutch* ſeeming now to have got Footing in *Greenland*, went again next Year, *viz.* 1619, as did alſo ſome of our *Engliſh* Ships; but the *Dutch*, now aſſuming the Property of thoſe Seas to themſelves, would not ſuffer the *Engliſh* to fiſh, but what they could do by ſtealth; and, to render their Voyage the more ineffectual, the *Dutch* ſold their Oil at ſo low a Price, to bring down the Market, that what the *Engliſh* had taken'd to little Account.

The *East India* and *Ruſſia* Companies, ſeeing the Court ſo eaſily put up with all thoſe Indignities, and ſeeming rather content to loſe all than make any Reprizals, and being diſmay'd at all Hopes of Redreſs, or of any Succeſs in the Fiſhery, when the *Dutch* were ſuffer'd thus to abuſe them, they tranſfer'd their Right to that Fiſhery over to Captain *Edge*, Mr. *Ralph Freeman*, and others; and thus it was continued with Variety of Succeſs, and a continual Struggle with the *Dutch*, till about the Year 1726, when the *South-Sea* Company undertook it, and fitted out twenty-four Sail the firſt Year, and ſo for ſome Years; and then, for Reaſons beſt known to themſelves,

ſelves, they alſo dropp'd it, and offer'd their Ships and Tackle to Sale; ſome of them were bought by private Owners, in Partnerſhip, and employ'd in the ſame Trade again; and, one would think, if ever that Trade could turn to Account it muſt be now, when every Owner has his juſt Proportion of the Benefit, according to the Share he ventures, and no Governor, Sub-Governor, or Directors, &c. to carry off ſo great a Share of the Profit.

CHAP. IV.

Gives an Account of eight Engliſhmen *who were left aſhore in* Greenland *all the Winter; of the Hardſhips they endured, with other Remarks and Obſervations upon the Place, and their Arrival at* London *at laſt.*

IN the Year 1630 three Ships were fitted out for *Greenland*, one of whoſe Names was the *Salutation*; they ſet ſail from the River *Thames* the firſt of *May*, and on the eleventh of *June* arriv'd in *Greenland*, where they ſeparated, and diſpers'd themſelves to ſeveral Harbours for Conveniency of fiſhing: But the *Salutation* (ſome of whoſe Men are the Subject of this Diſcourſe) being ſtraitned for Proviſion, and Winter approaching, they ſet eight Men aſhore to kill Veniſon, at a Place which they knew to be frequented with Rein-Deer; they left them a Boat, and order'd them, when they ſhould leave that Place, to ſteer to *Green-Harbour*, which lies to the Southward from where they went aſhore; and that Day killing fourteen Deer, they lay that Night aſhore, thinking to go aboard next Day; but a great Quantity of Ice driving towards the Shore, the Captain was obliged to ſtand off to Sea, to prevent its hemming the Ship in between it and the Shore; and they rowing along the Shore to *Green-Harbour*, by that Time they came there the Ship had ſtood ſo far into the Offing, that ſhe was quite out of their Sight.

HOWEVER, as all the three Ships had appointed their Rendezvous at *Bell-Sound*, further to the Southward, and the Time of the Rendezvous now to be within three Days, they began to be in pain leſt they ſhould be gone from *Bell-Sound* before they got there with their Boat and their Veniſon; ſo they lighted the Boat by flinging their Veniſon over-board, and made the beſt of their Way to *Bell Sound*, which was about ſixteen Leagues from *Green-Harbour*; but they, not knowing the Coaſt nor the Place, row'd paſt it eight or ten Leagues, and then diſcovering their Error, the Majority of them agreed to row back to the Northward; but ſtill not finding *Bell-Sound*, one of them over-perſwaded the reſt into a Belief that *Bell-Sound* was to the Southward of them when they turn'd back; whereupon they row'd to the Southward again, till at laſt, convinc'd of their Miſtake, they row'd again to the Northward, and at laſt they arriv'd at *Bell-Sound*, where, when they came, they found, to their great Surprize, that the Ships were gone for *England*.

THIS threw them into the utmoſt Conſternation, the Winter approaching, and they neither having Food, Firing, Clothes, or Habitation, ſuitable to their preſent and approaching Neceſſities; but in this Diſtreſs it was no Time to diſpute, but determine to do ſomething, while the Weather was favourable; and having two Dogs with them, which they had carried aſhore with them at *Green-Harbour*, they reſolv'd to row thither again to hunt for Veniſon, which they did on the fifth of *Auguſt*; and making themſelves a Tent, with their Oars and Boat-Sails, they refreſh'd themſelves with Sleep that Night; and next Morning betimes went a hunting, and kill'd that Day ſeven or eight Deer and four Bears; and the next Day they kill'd twelve Deer more; and with this Proviſion, and ſome Greaves of Whales, (which are the Pieces that remain in the Copper after the Oil is drawn from them) they loaded both their own Boat and another, which ſome of the Company had left there, and return'd to *Bell-Sound*.

AND now they began to think of ſettling themſelves in the World, if this could be called a Settlement; and, as a Beginning, they found a large Booth, about eighty Foot long, and fifty broad, cover'd with *Dutch* Tiles, and the Sides well boarded; it had been built for the Coopers to work in, in the fiſhing Seaſon; and near this Booth ſtood a leſſer, built of the ſame Sort of Materials, which they reſolv'd to pull down, and with the Timber and Boards of it to build a ſmall one within the great one, that they might be the better ſecured from the Injuries of the Weather: They found alſo three Furnaces, which had been uſed for boiling of Oil; theſe they pull'd down, and got out of them about a thouſand Bricks, they alſo found four Hogſheads of Lime, which they mix'd with the Sand on the Sea Shore, which made excellent Mortar. And having got all thoſe Materials, they thought to begin to build, only another Difficulty attended them, for their Mortar froze, but this was ſoon remedy'd, by making two Fires, and placing the Mortar between them; and now they proceeded in their Building, raiſing a Wall, a Brick thick, againſt one of the Sides of the innermoſt Booth; but their Bricks being all gone, they nail'd Boards on each Side the Timbers, and fill'd up the Space between with Sand, by which means they made it very tight. This leſſer Booth was twenty Foot long, ſixteen Foot broad, and ten Foot high, cover'd over with Deal-Boards, five or ſix Thicknеſſes, their Edges reaching over one another like Tiles, that no Air or Water could penetrate; their Door was ſtrong, and lined with an old Bed they found there, to prevent the Air getting in between the Door and the Poſt; their Bedding was the Skins of Rein-Deer; their Firing was old Casks and old Boats, which were left behind.

ON the twelfth of *September* they ſaw a Piece of Ice, driving towards the Shore, with two Sea-Horſes aſleep upon it, both of which they kill'd, and about a Week afterwards another; this help'd to make their Food hold out the longer; however, looking in Time, they found that all the Proviſion they had would not ſubſiſt them half the Winter, and therefore they faſted on *Wedneſdays* and *Fridays*, or, if they allow'd themſelves any thing, it was but the ſtinking Fritters, or

Greaves of Whales before-mention'd, and eat but one Meal a Day the reſt of the Week. By the Tenth of *October* the Sun began to withdraw and diſappear, any thing like Day that they had, till the Sun's Return from the Southern Tropick, being only a ſort of Twilight; the Weather grew exceſſive cold, the Sea froze over, their hunting Seaſon was gone, their Proviſions grew ſhort, the whole Seaſon dark, no Sun-ſhine, or ſcarce Day-light, or any thing but what was diſmal preſented itſelf.

They took another Survey of their Proviſion, and found it ſo reduc'd that it would not afford them above five Meals a Week; but, to make their Victuals hold out the longer, they agreed to live upon the mouldy Fritters four Days in the Week, and the other three to feaſt (as they call'd it) upon Bear and Veniſon: And leſt Firing ſhould fail, they (inſtead of dreſſing Victuals every Day, only for that Day, and waſting the reſt of the Fire,) roaſted every Day half a Deer, and ſtow'd it in a Cask to eat cold, and with this they fill'd three Hogſheads and a half, forecaſting, however, to ſave ſo much raw, as to have for every Sunday a Quarter, and a Quarter for *Chriſtmas-Day*.

It being now the Middle of *October*, the Sun was quite withdrawn, and they ſaw it no more till the Beginning of *February*; but they had the Moon both Day and Night, all the time *, but very much obſcured by Clouds and foul Weather. There was a Glimmering of Day-light for a while before and after Twelve at Noon, which ſhortned every Day till the Firſt of *December*, and then quite diſappear'd, till about the Twentieth of the ſame Month. As long as any Day-light appear'd in the South, once in twenty-four Hours, they reckon'd their Days by it; and when that diſappear'd, they reckon'd their Time by the Revolutions of the Moon. As for Light within Doors, they made three Lamps of Sheet Lead, which they took off from one of the Coolers; and they found Oil enough for their Purpoſe in the Cooper's Tent, and for Wicks they made uſe of Rope Yarn; and thus they kept their Lights in all the Winter, till the welcome Appearance of Day-light.

* *Theſe Words of* the Moon being to be ſeen, both Day and Night, all the Time, *are to be underſtood of the Moon when in or near the Northern Tropick, which, about that Time of the Year, will be when the Moon is at or near the full, and conſequently more conſpicuous; but when ſhe is near the Southern Tropick ſhe does not appear above the Horizon, in thoſe Northern Latitudes, any more than the Sun when there.*

When the Sun was paſt the Southern Tropick, and began to approach them again, ſtill the Cold increas'd with that Severity, that about *New-Year's-Day*, and ſome time afterwards, their Fleſh was bliſter'd as if it was burnt, and any thing of cold Iron that they handled ſtuck to their Fingers; and now Scarcity was likely to accompany the Cold, for, notwithſtanding their frugal Rate of living, their Proviſion would not laſt above ſix Weeks longer; but to alleviate their Diſtreſs, in the Beginning of *February* the welcome Rays of the Sun appear'd upon the Tops of the Mountains, which, being white with Snow, appear'd with ſuch an inconceivable Luſtre, that it afforded a delightful Scene to them who had been ſo long deprived of the Benefit of it; and upon this Return of the Light they could ſee the Bears again, which put them beyond the dreadful Apprehenſions of ſtarving.

But they had another Difficulty to encounter with; for the Bears having undergone a cold ſharp Winter, were as ready to devour the Men, as the Men were to devour them, and they had a reciprocal Inclination to each other; and if the Men had not been well-fortify'd they had been in Danger, for they came up to the very Door; one of them ventur'd ſo near with her Cub to pay them a Viſit, that they laid her dead upon the Spot, and the young one was glad to eſcape; and the Weather being cold, and probably other Bears ranging about, they dragg'd her into the Houſe, to ſlay her and cut her up. This was a Bit of freſh Proviſion, and would help to ſpin out their ſtale Veniſon, for it could not be call'd ſalt Meat; but in this Climate it is ſo exceſſive cold, that no Fleſh or Carcaſs will putrify in the Winter-time.

By that time they had eat up this Bear others came about their Booth, and they killed them as they had Occaſion for them; and, among the reſt, they kill'd one of above ſix Foot high. They roaſted their Fleſh upon wooden Spits, having no other Kitchen Furniture, but a Frying Pan, which they found in one of the Boths: And now being well ſupply'd with Proviſion, they began to eat heartily two or three Times a Day, or as often as Nature required, and thereby they found their Strength to encreaſe apace; and no Misfortunes attended them, except the Loſs of one of their Dogs, which rambled from their Houſe, one Morning, in the Middle of *March*, and whether he loſt himſelf, or was over-power'd and eat up by the Bears, is uncertain, but they never ſaw him any more.

The Middle of *March* was now come, and the Days about twelve Hours long, between Sun and Sun; the Fowls, which in the Depth of Winter retir'd to the Southward, began now to return to the Northward again; the Foxes alſo, which had kept up all the Winter, began now to appear, and prey upon the Fowls; which our Countrymen perceiving, and having catch'd ſome Fowls, baited their Traps with their Skins, and by that means catch'd fifteen Foxes, which they dreſs'd, and found to be very good Victuals, eſpecially to them who had ſo long liv'd moſtly upon dry'd Bears Fleſh; and thus they liv'd upon Fowls and Foxes till the Beginning of *May*, meeting with no remarkable Occurrence all that Time.

About the Eleventh or Twelfth of *April* they began to ſee the Sun at Midnight, it never being out of their Sight all the twenty-four Hours, except Clouds interpoſed. And in *May*, by the Continuance of the Sun, the Weather grew warm; and they wanting a Change of Diet, and having nothing elſe to do, rambled about, and found Eggs of Willocks, a Fowl about the Bigneſs of a Duck, which were very good Eating. Now they begun to look out for the Arrival of ſome Shipping, the Seaſon of the Year approaching, and went up every Day almoſt to the Top of a Mountain; but they could diſcern no Water in the Sea, it being all cover'd with Ice, till the Twenty-fourth of *May*; when a Storm ariſing, and blowing right on to the Shore, broke the Ice in the Sea and in the Bay, it being thaw'd and weaken'd with the Approach of the warm Sun, and the Wind coming about, Eaſterly, carried the Ice out of the Bay into the Sea; but ſtill there was ſo much Ice along the Shore, that the Water could not come near their Habitation.

On the Day following, *viz.* the Twenty-fifth, they kept cloſe Quarters, not looking out as uſual, having ſet that Day apart for Prayers, when, to their great Surpriſe, they heard a Man hale the Houſe, in the ſame Words as a Sailor hales a Ship, and they looking out to anſwer,

found it was a Boats Crew, that belong'd to an *Engliſh* Ship, juſt arriv'd from *England*, and we need not, nor can we expreſs, the Tranſports of Joy which poſſeſs'd our Sufferers upon this Occaſion. But there was one Mortification more, for one of the Ships that was arriv'd, was commanded by the ſame Captain that left them, and would not ſtay ſo much as one Day for them the Year before, and was ſo far from pitying them, that, to juſtify his own Barbarity in leaving them behind, he call'd them Rogues, Run-aways, and the like; and ſuch Barbarity had been no new Thing with him, for he had left ſeven or eight Men in *Greenland* the Year before, who were never heard of afterwards.

But, notwithſtanding his Barbarity to them, the Commander of the other Ship took care of them, and the Officers uſed them civilly during their being aboard; and, when the Seaſon was over for fiſhing for Whales, they were brought home when the Ships return'd, and tenderly provided for, as well as generouſly taken care of, by the *Ruſſia* Company upon their Arrival at *London*: Their Names were, *William Fakely*, Gunner; *Edward Pelham*, (who writ the Narrative of their Tranſactions in *Greenland*,) Gunner's Mate; *John Wiſe* and *Robert Godfellow*, common Seamen; *Thomas Ayers*, Whale-cutter; *Henry Bett*, Cooper; *John Daws* and *Richard Kellet*, Landmen.

CHAP. V.

An Account of ſeven Dutch *Sailors who were, by their own Conſent, left aſhore in* Greenland, *to make Obſervations on the Country; and alſo ſeven others, who made a ſecond Experiment of the ſame Nature, none of which fourteen ever return'd alive.*

THE *Dutch Greenland* Company, in the Year 1633, ſending a Fleet to *Greenland* upon the Whale-Fiſhery, order'd them that when the fiſhing Seaſon was over, they ſhould propoſe to their Sailors, that if any ſeven of them would ſtay and Winter in the Country, to make Aſtronomical Obſervations, and to make what Remarks they could upon the Country, the Air, and Climate, during the Winter Seaſon, and till the Return of the Ships the next Year, they ſhould be furniſh'd with all Neceſſaries, and handſomely rewarded; whereupon ſeven bold able Sailors offer'd to undertake the Enterprize, and accordingly the *Dutch* Fleet left them in the Iſland of *St. Maurice* in *Greenland*, *Auguſt* the twenty-ſixth, 1633.

One great Article that they were to take care of, was, to keep a Diary, or Journal, of the Weather, and of the different Meridian Altitudes of the Sun, according to his Receſs or Approach, or any Thing elſe that they could obſerve, that was neceſſary to be known. The Weather was ſo warm, on the Ninth of *September*, that they play'd on the Side of a Hill, in the Sun-ſhine, without their Shirts, and they had no Occaſion to keep any Fire, except to dreſs Victuals and ſo extinguiſh it again, till the Ninth of *October*, and then the Cold increas'd apace, and in ſeven or eight Days it grew very ſevere, and ſome of them found a Dizzineſs in their Heads, and a great Alteration in their Bodies; but probably the ſudden Increaſe of the Cold, and their ſhifting themſelves up in a cloſe Room with a Fire to ſhelter themſelves from it, might occaſion theſe Diſorders; for the *Dutch*, under theſe Circumſtances, at *Nova Zembla*, found themſelves under the like Difficulties, which were ſoon remedy'd by opening the Door of the Hut to give themſelves Air.

On the Fifteenth of *October* they ſaw two Whales caſt aſhore; the Men attempted to take them, but upon their Approach, and by the Help of a Flood Tide, they both eſcap'd them. By the Tenth of *Octobr* the Sea was froze beyond the utmoſt Bounds of their Sight of its Surface; and by the Eight of *November*, the Spring, which had till then ſupply'd them, was froze up, and they were forc'd to melt Snow to uſe inſtead of Spring-Water. In *November* they ſaw a great many Bears, but kill'd only two of them. By the Nineteenth of *November* the Sun quite left them; but it was not immediately ſo dark at Noon, but that they could ſee to read and write without Doors. And in the latter End of *November* (perhaps occaſion'd by the Southerly Winds) the Froſt abated, and the Ice broke and began to move, and the Weather was very moderate all the remaining Part of *November* and Beginning of *December*. They obſerved, thro' all the Courſe of the Winter, that the Southerly Winds were warmeſt, and the Froſts with them the leaſt ſevere.

On the Twenty-third of *January* they went up a Hill, on the South Side of the Iſland, to ſee the Sun; which, according to the Time it left them in *November*, muſt be about five Degrees above the Horizon at Noon; nor do I find that they had any proper Inſtrument for taking an Obſervation by Land, for the Thirtieth was a clear froſty Day, and they went to the Top of the ſame Hill, but all the Account they give us of the Sun's Meridian Altitude, was, that *it was about an Hour and a half high.* In the Middle of *February* they ſaw a great many Geeſe and Faulcons, and alſo ſet Traps for Foxes, but in vain, for they could catch nothing; and now they began to be over-run with the Scurvy, which was imputed to their Want of freſh Proviſions. About the latter End of *March* they ſaw vaſt Numbers of Whales, but of no uſe to them, they being in no Capacity to make any Advantage of them.

The Scurvy and Indiſpoſition increas'd upon them, and they grew ſo ſickly, that on the Third of *April* there were but two of them in any tolerable Health, all the reſt being crippled with the Scurvy; and on the Sixteenth the Clerk died, and all the reſt were ſick; the Nineteenth they grew worſe, and having no freſh Proviſion, they were paſt all Hopes of Recovery; the Twenty-third there was but one able to help himſelf, and he continued the Journal after the Clerk's Death; he help'd the Commander out of his Cabin the ſame Day, with the Pangs of Death upon him; the Twenty-ſeventh he kill'd their Dog, for want of other freſh Proviſion. This Journal was continued till the laſt of *April*, when it is very obſervable, that to the laſt, his Intellects remain'd perfect,

perfect, tho' his Bodily Strength was exhausted, for in that Day's Journal he writ *Clear and Sunshiny*, and underneath that the last Word in the Journal, and probably the last he ever writ, was *Die*.

The fe-ven Men dead.

The *Dutch* Fleet arriv'd at *Greenland* the Fourth of *June* this Year, and impatient to hear of the Fate of the Men they had left, came to make Enquiry, and found them every one dead in his Hut; one of them (which was supposed to be the first that dy'd, while the rest were able to help him,) was in a Coffin, but the rest were then suppos'd to be so weak that they were not able to bury him. One of them had some Bisket and Cheese standing by him; another had a Box of Ointment by him, which, in all likelihood, was to rub his Teeth and Joints, for the Scurvy was their Mortal Distemper, and it prevail'd upon them, and made them uncapable of Exercise, or any way of providing for themselves; for it appear'd by the Journal, that they had gone almost every Day to the Top of a Hill, till the last Month or two, when by the Prevalency of the Scurvy, they were render'd quite uncapable of Exercise, and that with the Cold doubtless hastned their End. Being sensible of their approaching Exit, they betook themselves to their Devotions, as appear'd most probably, this last having a Prayer-Book lying by him.

The reason why they were left.

It being the Year 1634 when the unfortunate Men were found dead, as above, and it being impossible that the *Greenland* Company should know of their Fate till their Fleet arriv'd at the Place, and supposing them to be alive at least, but likewise supposing them to have undergone so much Hardship, that it was not proper for them to stay another Winter, they sent seven other Men that Voyage to relieve them, and bring them home; and, notwithstanding that the seven fresh Men saw the Fate of their Predecessors, yet they resolv'd to stay at all Adventures; and, having Meat, Drink, Physick, and every Thing provided for them, that could be thought necessary for their Subsistance, they settled themselves ashore.

The Fleet left them in the Country the Eleventh of *September* 1634, as above, and their first Business was to go in Search of Bears and Foxes, and such Herbs as the Country afforded, but they found none. On the Twentieth of *October*, the Journal tells us, the Sun left them, from whence it might be suppos'd they were further to the Northward than the last, who had seen the Sun till the Nineteenth of *November*: For if the First had the Sun till the Nineteenth of *November*, and if it just then ceas'd from appearing above the Horizon at Noon, its Declination then being about nineteen Degrees and a half, the Latitude they were in must be but about seventy Degrees; and this is further confirm'd by their Observation of the Sun's Approach to them again, its first Appearance to them, according to their Journal, being on the Twenty-third of *January*, the Sun's Declination then being the same as on the aforesaid Nineteenth of *November*, *viz.* about nineteen Degrees and a half South; but these latter, who lost the Sun the Twentieth of *October*, and first saw it again on the Twenty-fourth of *February*, at both which Times the Sun had about ten Degrees Declination South, must consequently be in Latitude was about eighty North. But, notwithstanding that they were left ashore to make Discoveries of Things most necessary, yet we do not find any thing in all their Journal, but of taking Bears, and Men dying, &c. they never give us an Account of any Observation they had to ascertain the Latitude of the Place they were in, which would have been one of the most material and useful Observations they could have gone about, and would doubtless have been done had they been capable.

Note, *The Days of the Month and the Sun's Declination, mention'd in the above-mention'd Observations, referr'd to the* Gregorian, *or New Account, by which the* Dutch, *and most other Places beyond Sea, reckon their Time, and was (at the Time of these Expeditions, and till the Year* 1700) *ten Days before the* English *Account; which being consider'd, will account for the Latitudes above-mention'd, to as sufficient an Exactness as can be expected from the Observations of Men under such difficult Circumstances.*

But to proceed, They not being able to get any fresh Provisions, began to be over-run with the Scurvy; and on the fourteenth of *January* one of their Company dy'd, the next Day another, and on the Seventeenth a Third dy'd, and the other four were so weak, they could scarce make Coffins for the deceas'd Three; on the Seventh of *February* they took a Fox, and, as the Sun drew nearer and the Day approach'd, there came such Plenty of Bears about them, that had they been able to move, they need not have wanted fresh Provisions; but it was now too late, for they were not now able to master those Animals, nor could they scarce bite a Bisket; they had racking Pains in their Bellies and Loins, which increas'd with the Cold. The Twenty-sixth was the last Day mention'd in the Journal, and it concludes thus, *Four of us are still alive, and lie flat upon the Ground in our Huts; we believe we could eat if there was one amongst us who could stir out of his Hut to get our Meat ready, but our Pains prevent us; we spend our Time in constant Prayers, imploring God, in his Mercy, to deliver us out of this Misery, being ready whenever he pleases to call us; we are certainly not able to live without Food or Fire till the Shipping arrives; we cannot assist one another, but every one bears his own Burthen.* These were the last Words in the Journal.

The other seven found dead.

When the Fleet arriv'd from *Holland*, to see the Event of their Adventure, which was in the Year 1635, they found them all lying dead, close shut up in their House, which doubtless was to secure themselves from the Bears and other Beasts of Prey, when they were not otherwise able to defend themselves against them. They found three of them in Coffins, two others each in his own Cabin, and the other Two on a Piece of Sail-Cloth on the Floor. And thus concluded the last of these two Tragical Experiments, and these were the last, that ever I heard of, that presum'd to winter in *Greenland*.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Treats of the Plants in New Greenland; *with the Animals, whether upon the Land or in the Water, that* Greenland *affords.*

MOST of the Herbs and Moſs in *Greenland* ſprout out of the Rocks, eſpecially where the Water trickles down; and thoſe Rocks are moſt productive that are on the South or Weſt Side of the Mountains, as being beſt ſhelter'd from the North and Eaſt Winds, and moſt expos'd to the South Sun; and the Fowls, for the ſame Reaſon, reſorting thither, their Dung contributes to the Propagation of thoſe Vegetables, of which there are few growing in this Country but ſuch as will come to maturity in a ſmall Time, their Spring being of ſo ſhort a Continuance; for about *June* is the firſt Time of any thing beginning to appear green, and in *July* they are moſtly in Flower, and ſome of the Seeds half ripe, in *Auguſt* they decline, and in *September* the Froſt comes on, and they diſappear till the next Seaſon.

Herbs. THE Plants, or Herbs, that the Country produces are, 1. A Plant with a thick prickly dark Leaf, like the *Aloe*. 2. A Plant with indented Leaves, like ſmall Houſe-leek. 3. Crowfoot, of which there are four Kinds, diſtinguiſh'd only by their Leaves. 4. Scurvy-Graſs, which produces ſeveral Leaves from one Root, ſpreading upon the Ground, the Stalk riſing in the Middle of them, with a few Leaves underneath the Sprouts; the Flowers have four white Leaves, and many grow upon a Stalk, one above another, and as one fades another ſucceeds, which makes it endure green the longer; while the Seaſon continues, the Seed comes forth in a longiſh Book; this grows in great Quantities on the Rocks, it ſeeds in *July*, and the Leaves are ſo palatable, that the Sailors eat it for Sallad. 5. There is a Snakeweed, but it is not very common. 6. There is a Plant, with Leaves like a Periwinkle; it creeps on the Ground. 7. There is a Plant like a Strawberry, both in the Leaf and Flower. 8. The Rock-Plant, or Fucus; the Root grows in a Rock, from whence it hath its Name. 9. In the *Engliſh Harbour* there is a Plant like Sea-Graſs, and grows like it under the Water, ſome eight Foot long, with yellowiſh Leaves, three Fingers broad, and tranſparent. There are alſo Plants like Horſe-Tail; alſo a ſort of a White Poppy, and a Red Sorrel. Some ſay, that as the Scurvy is the moſt prevailing Diſtemper over People that come from leſs Northerly Latitudes to *Greenland*, ſo Nature had ſo ordain'd that all thoſe Plants are good againſt that Diſtemper; but if that had been known to be ſo, and thoſe People who were left there had known where to have found thoſe Herbs, probably the Scurvy might not have been ſo fatal to them. If ſuch another Expedition ſhould ever be attempted, as to leave Men to winter in *Greenland*, it would be adviſeable to leave them where thoſe Simples grow, that they might gather them when green, and preſerve them till dry againſt Winter, to cure or prevent that fatal Diſtemper, the Scurvy.

Fowl. THE Fowls which *Greenland* produces are, 1. The Snipe, or Strand-runner, about the Bigneſs of a Lark, and much the ſame Colour; they live on Worms and Shrimps, but have not a fiſhy Taſte. 2. The Snow-Bird, about the Bigneſs of a Linnet, with a long bended Spur, and three divided Claws; their Back and Wings are grey, but the Throat and Breaſt, and all under the Belly to the Tail, is as white as Snow; they are ſo tame that they will ſometimes light on a Ship, and may be taken with the Hand; they are chiefly ſeen upon the Ice and Snow, and hence call'd Snow-Birds. 3. The Ice-Bird, about the Size of a ſmall Pidgeon; her Feathers ſhine like Gold.

THE Water-Fowls, or thoſe that have their Toes join'd by Webs or Skins, are ſome of them Birds of Prey, others not: The Birds of Prey are, 1. The Burgher-Maſter, ſo call'd from the Largeneſs of its Size, being almoſt as big as a Stork; they build in the Clefts of the higheſt Rocks, but will come down to feed on the Carcaſs of a Whale or other Carrion, and ſo eagerly that they are eaſily ſhot; they ſometimes light upon the Water to reſt themſelves, or to eſcape an Enemy, but they never dive.

2. THE Ratſher, or Alderman; the latter Name the *Engliſh* gave him, from his ſtately Way of ſtrutting along; he is ſomething leſs than the Burgher-Maſter, his Feathers, if poſſible, whiter than Snow itſelf, and his Tail long and broad; it feeds upon Morſes Dung, but likes Fiſh much better when it can catch them; they are ſo tame that one may come within a Stick's length of them and knock them down. 3. The Strumjager, or Dung-hunter; the Webs, or Skins, that join their Toes or Claws, are black, and it is about the Bigneſs of a Sea-Mew. 4. The Kutyeghef is another kind of Sea-Mew, with grey Back and Wings, and white Belly; he feeds chiefly on Fleſh of Whales, for which reaſon they bait their Hooks with it to catch him. 5. The Mallemuke, the under Part of whoſe Bill is compos'd of four Pieces; he is ſo tame that he will ſuffer himſelf to be taken. Moſt of thoſe Birds of Prey are Carrion, and not fit to be eat, unleſs they be hung up to dry the Train-Oil out of them.

THERE are other Birds, as the Pidgeon-Diver, the Lumb, the Diving-Parrot, the Mountain-Duck, and the Kirmew, but theſe are but of little Note.

Beaſts. THE Land Animals are the Bear, which in this Country is white, only his Noſe and Mouth is black, in Shape more like a Dog than a Bear, but large and ſwift; he hath long ſoft Hair; he will ſwim from one Mountain of Ice to another, and will abide a conſiderable Time under Water, diving after Fiſh, but will alſo eat Fowls and Eggs and Carcaſs of a Whale; he will dig up a human Corps if it be not buried deep, or otherwiſe well ſecured.

Deer. THE *Greenland* Deer is much like ours, with Horns and cloven Feet, and the Fleſh well-taſted, only he is of a greyiſh Colour. Their Foxes are like ours in Shape, but differ in Colour, having white Bodies and black Heads.

Seale. THE Seale is an amphibious Animal; he has five Claws on each Foot, join'd together with a thick Skin, or Web, like a Water-Fowl, but the Head is like that of a Dog, only ſcarce any Ears appear, and from thence he is ſometimes call'd a Sea-Dog, or by ſome a Sea-Calf; the Skin is cover'd with ſhort ſtiff Hair, they crawl upon the Iſlands of Ice, where they ſleep and bask them-

ſleep and bask themſelves in the Sun; they are from five to eight Foot long, their Fleſh black, but it affords better Train-Oil than that of any Fiſh. There is an Animal, call'd the Whale-Louſe, which ſticks ſo faſt to the Whale's Skin, that there is no pulling her off, or making her quit her Hold, without cutting out the Piece. The Sword-Fiſh hath a ſharp Bone at the End of his Snout, indented like a Saw, with which it is ſaid he pricks the Whale under his Belly, and is very troubleſome to him.

Morſe. THE Morſe, or Sea-Horſe, is about the Size of an Ox; he hath five Claws on each Foot, his Skin is very thick, eſpecially about his Neck; their Hair is grey, or Mouſe-colour'd; they have two Tusks in the Upper Jaw, ſometimes two Foot or more in Length. Great Quantities of Oil have been made out of the Morſes, but they have been little regarded ſince they have found the Way of extracting ſuch Quantities of Oil out of the Whale. The Morſe feeds both upon Herbs and Fiſh; they ſleep upon the Ice or upon the Surface of the Water; they ſometimes make a dreadful roaring, and when attack'd by Men in a Boat, they do not immediately make off, but endeavour to overſet the Boat, or make Holes in her with their Teeth, except overpower'd by Force, or ſtruck with ſome proper Weapon. Thoſe that go about to kill them, take them when aſhore or upon the Ice, where, for want of Water to float in, they cannot exert their Strength, any thing like what they could do in their proper Element; but when they take them at this Diſadvantage they are eaſily kill'd with Spears and Clubs, which they uſe for that Purpoſe, and yet they have that Foreſight, that, ſenſible of their Unwieldineſs when out of the Water, they will, when they ſee a Boat rowing towards them, jump off the Ice-hills into the Sea, to be in a better Poſture of Defence. When a Morſe is ſtruck with a Harpoon they veer out the Line to let him run till he is weary, that they may the more eaſily hawl him in; and when they get him to the Boat's Side, the firſt Thing they do is to cut off his Head, his Teeth having formerly been moſt valu'd, but now they are not much eſteem'd.

Whale. IN the *Greenland Seas* there are both black and white Whales, and of different Sizes. Of the black Sort ſome have one and ſome two Holes in their Heads, out of which they ſpout Water, as high or higher than a Ship's Maſt, which may be heard and ſeen at a great Diſtance. There is a Sort, call'd *The grand Bay Whale*, that is the moſt valu'd on Account of his Bulk, and the vaſt Quantity of Fat, or Blubber, that he affords for Train-Oil; his Head is half as much as all his Body, but his Eyes not much bigger than thoſe of an Ox; inſtead of Ears he has only a Hole on each Side of his Head, ſo ſmall as ſcarce to be diſcern'd, but within the Fleſh there is a Cavity in the Form of an Ear; he is obſerv'd to be very quick of Hearing; the two Holes where he diſcharges the Water ſerve alſo to receive the Air, for the Waters expell'd out of theſe Holes are drawn in at his Mouth; his Tongue is about eighteen Foot long, encloſed with long Pieces of Whalebone, like ſo many Palliſadoes; the Whalebone is cover'd with a hairy Kind of a Subſtance. There have been ſeen on each Side of the Tongue of a Whale two hundred and fifty Pieces of this Whalebone, and ſome ſay they have every one the ſame Number, beſides the ſmall Whalebone, which lies under the Root of the Tongue, which, with the reſt, is ſaid to amount to eight hundred Pieces of Whalebone in one Whale; but he has no Teeth in his Mouth; he is very thick from the Middle forward, but tapering from the Middle to the Tail, ſomewhat like a Shoemakers Laſt; his Tail is not like that other Fiſh, but lies flat, or Horizontal, when he ſwims, like the Tail of a Kite when ſhe flies; they are from ſixty or eighty Foot, to twice that Length; their Skin is as ſlippery as an Eel, but the Fleſh being ſo ſoft, that the Weight of a Man makes a conſiderable Impreſſion in it, it is not difficult to ſtand upon them to cut them to Pieces; the Penis, or Pizzle, of the Whale, is a ſtrong Sinew, ſix or eight Foot long or more, according to the Bigneſs of the Whale, and is ſeen on the outſide of his Body. The Female hath Breaſts, with Teats, like thoſe of a Cow, and has never more than two young ones at a Time; the Bones in her Body are like thoſe of a Beaſt, but more porous; the Lean is coarſe, hard, and full of Sinews; the Fat is eight or ten Inches thick upon the Back and Belly, and two Foot thick on the under Lip; the Fat is intermix'd with ſmall Nerves; his Tail ſerves him for a Rudder, as his Fins do for Oars, with which he cuts the Water, and ſwims with ſuch Swiftneſs, that he make a Wake in the Sea like that of a great Ship, which is ſeen at ſome Diſtance behind him, and by it they can follow him.

Taking the Whales. WHEN they go to catch Whales, and come ſo near one that they can hear him, or ſee the Water ſpout up from him, the Word is *Fall Fall*; upon which the Men immediately drop into their reſpective Boats, of which they have four or five to attend the Ship, and ſix or eight Men to each Boat; the Harponier ſits in the Head of the Boat, and when they come conveniently near the Whale he ſtrikes him to the beſt Advantage he can; and when the Whale finds himſelf wounded he immediately makes for the Bottom, with ſo much Swiftneſs, that if they did not veer out Line quick enough, and enough of it, he would either pull the Boat down after him, or they muſt cut the Line, or quit both that and the Whale. That Part of the Rope to which the Harpoon is faſtned is but about an Inch thick, and ſix or ſeven Fathom long, is ſoft laid, and is call'd the Fore-runner; but the reſt of the Line is thicker and ſtronger, made of the beſt Hemp, and tarr'd, as the Ropes are that belong to the Ship's Rigging; they have ſeveral hundred Fathoms of Line in the Boat, quoil'd up carefully and clear, that it may not be entangled when they have Occaſion to veer it out ſo quick; for the leaſt Stop, with that quick Motion, would overſet the Boat; and as the Rope runs out with ſuch Violence, the Edge of the Boat, over which it runs, would take Fire, if they did not keep it continually wet with a Mop, which they carry for that, and other ſuch like Purpoſes.

THE Man that ſteers the Boat obſerves the Motion of the Whale, which may be known by ſeeing which Way the Rope grows, (as the Sailors term it,) for by ſteering directly after her the Line need not be veer'd out, or is not hawl'd away with quite ſo much Violence.

THE Head, or Iron, of the Harpoon is like a barbed, or wither'd Arrow, and very broad, to take the better Hold; and if it keeps it's Hold, the Whale, after having run out ſome hundred Fathoms of Line, is fore'd at laſt to come up for Air, and when he appears he ſpours and makes a terrible Noiſe, and then the Boats follow him, every Harponier endeavouring to ſtrike him again; he continues to plunge till he wearies himſelf, and at laſt coming up, they can approach him with Spears and other Weapons, endeavouring to ſtrike him near the Fins, which they find is the moſt ſenſible Part; and when he is near expiring, he beats the Sea with his Fins and Tail till it is all in a Foam; when he is dy-

ing he falls on one Side, and when quite dead his Belly turns upwards; whereupon they drag him to Shore if they are near it, or if not, they hawl him along the Side of the Ship, in Order to cut him up.

IMMEDIATELY after he is dead, his Belly, which is then the upper Part of him, is almoſt even with the Surface of the Water, or but very little above it, but in a Day's Time he riſes ſix or ſeven Foot, and in another Day he riſes ſtill more. Every Ship has a Whale-cutter aboard, whoſe Buſineſs it is to cut him up; when he rips his Belly open it cauſes a roaring Noiſe, and an intolerable Stench. The Tail of the Whale ſerves for a Chopping-Block as well as a Piece of Wood, it being ſo nervous and hard. The Blubber (for ſo they call it) being barrell'd up, they bring it home to extract the Oil, of which a Whale will yield from ſixty to a hundred Barrels, according to the Bigneſs of the Fiſh, every Barrel computed at the Value of three or four Pounds, more or leſs, according to the Plenty or Scarcity of Oil, or the Number of the Whales that are caught that Seaſon.

A

A DESCRIPTION OF THE KINGDOM OF *HUNGARY*.

CHAP. I.

Of the Name of the Kingdom of Hungary; *with its Situation, and Extent; and of the Air; as alſo the Lakes, Rivers, and Mountains therein.*

HAVING continued our Deſcription as far to the Northward as any Diſcoveries could be made, or as far as Geography is practicable, I ſhall now return to where I left off, when I had finiſh'd the Deſcription of *Poland*, and proceeded to the Northward; and after a Deſcription of *Hungary*, I ſhall travel to the Weſtward, to *Germany*, *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, &c. to our Native Country *England*.

Hungary (which is a Part of the antient *Panonia*) has its Name from the *Huns*, a *Scythian* Nation, who ſettled here about the third Century; but the preſent *Hungary* does not include all the antient *Panonia*, for that comprehended (beſides the modern *Hungary*) the Provinces of *Servia*, *Boſnia*, *Sclavonia*, Part of *Auſtria*, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Croatia*, and *Carniola*.

But the preſent *Hungary* is bounded by the *Carpathian Mountains* on the North, and by them ſeparated from *Poland*; on the Eaſt it is bounded by *Tranſilvania* and *Walachia*; on the South by the River *Drave*, by which it is ſeparated from *Sclavonia*; and on the Weſt by *Stiria*, *Auſtria*, and *Moravia*. It extends from the forty-ſixth to the forty-ninth Degree of North Latitude, and from the ſixteenth to the twenty-ſecond Degree of Longitude Eaſt from *London*.

The Air is ſo unhealthy, that it is call'd by ſome the Church-Yard, or Burying-Place of *Germany*; but it is not ſo unhealthy in the Northern Part as it is in the Southern Part, and near the *Danube*. There are plenty of Lakes and Rivers in this Country, as, 1. The Lake call'd *Balaton*, or *Platſee*, in the Weſt Part of *Hungary*, between the *Drave* and the *Danube*; it is about forty Miles in Length. 2. The *New Fidelſee*, a little to the Southward of the Iſland of *Schut*; it is about twenty-eight Miles in Length.

Lakes.

The principal Rivers of *Hungary* are, 1. The *Danube*, which runs South-Eaſtward through *Hungary* to *Belgrade*. 2. The *Tibiſcus*, or *Teyſſe*, which comes from the *Carpathian Mountains*, and paſſing by *Tockay*, falls into the *Danube*, over-againſt *Salankemen*. 3. The *Drave*, which comes in at the Weſt Part of *Hungary*, and falls into the *Danube*, near *Eſſeck*. 4. The *Raab*, riſes in *Stiria*, and falls into the *Danube*, near *Komora*, at the Eaſt End of *Schuts Iſland*. 5. The River *Gran* riſes in the *Carpathian Mountains*, and falls into the *Danube*, at *Gran*, between *Buda* and *Schuts Iſland*. *Laſtly*, The *Waag* riſes in the North Part of *Hungary*, and falls into the *Danube*, over-againſt *Schuts Iſland*.

Rivers.

All theſe Rivers produce plenty of Fiſh, in ſo much that a thouſand Carps have been bought here for the Value of a Crown Sterling; and in ſome Places Fiſh are ſo plenty that they feed their Hogs with them. There are Waters in *Hungary* of ſurprizing Qualities; amongſt which is a Spring of ſuch ſtrong Vitriol Water, near *Schmolnitz*, that in a ſhort Time 'twill make Plates of Iron look like perfect Copper, and ſome affirm that it actually tranſmutes it into real Copper. There are alſo Waters of ſuch a poiſonous Quality, that if any Animal drink of them they die immediately.

Mountains.

The moſt conſiderable Mountains in this Country are the *Crapack*, or *Carpathian Mountains*, which include all the long Ridge of Mountains that ſeparates *Hungary* from *Poland*, *Moravia*, *Sileſia*, &c. but near the *Danube*, eſpecially from *Presburg* to *Belgrade*, is all one continued Plain, of between two and three hundred Miles in Length; and indeed very little of the Heart of *Hungary* is taken up either with Mountains or Woods, but is, in the General, a fine Champain Country.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Provinces and chief Towns of Hungary; *as also of their Mines, Baths,* &c.

THE antient Division of *Hungary* was into Counties, but these Divisions, with their Boundaries, are now lost; for this Country having been the Seat of War, between the Christians and the *Turks*, for so many Years, each Party made bold with what they could get, without any Regard to Boundaries or Divisions, except the Extent of their own Power or Success; and now there is only one general Division of it into two Parts, into which it is divided by the *Danube*; that Part on the North, or North-East Side of which being the greatest, and call'd *Upper Hungary*; and the lesser Part, on the South, or South-West, of the *Danube*, is call'd *Lower*, or *Lesser Hungary*; and they again are severally subdivided into Governments, *viz. Upper Hungary* into these four, *Presburg*, *Bergstat*, *New Hawsel*, and *Caschaw*; and *Lesser Hungary* is divided into the Governments of *Buda*, *Raab*, and *Canisa*.

IN *Upper Hungary* the chief Towns are, 1. *Presburg*, the Capital of the Kingdom; it is situate on the North Side of the *Danube*, over-against the West End of *Schuts Island*, and betweent forty and fifty Miles to the Eastward of *Vienna*, in a pleasant fruitful Country; it is the Place where the States assemble, but is not of any great Strength. The Castle stands upon an adjacent Hill, and is fortify'd with round Towers; in one of which the Crown of *Hungary* is kept, which Crown, according to their Tradition, was presented by an Angel to St. *Stephen*, their first Christian King. 2. *New Hawsel*, on the River *Nitra*, which falls into the *Danube*, almost over-against *Comora* in *Schuts Island*, from which Place it is about twelve Miles North; it is a strong Place, but a small one, considering it is the Capital of a Province. 3. *Leopoldstat*, upon the River *Vagus*; it is a regular Fortification, about forty Miles to the Northward of *New Hawsel*. 4. *Chremnitz*, the chief of the Mine Towns, is about fifty Miles North-East of *New Hawsel*; the Castle is famous for standing upon the highest Ground in *Hungary*, and the Town more famous for its Gold Mine, which has been wrought this thousand Years or above, and not yet exhausted, tho' they have wrought the Vein to above ten Miles in Length; it is seventy Fathom deep, and so rich, that there have been found in it Pieces of pure Virgin Gold, being so without any refining, some of which Pieces are to be seen amongst the Emperor's Curiosities at *Vienna*. Near *Chremnitz* is a Mine of Vitriol, Fourscore Fathom deep; and to the Eastward and Southward of it are Silver Mines of great Value, amongst which one is at, 5. *Schemnitz*, about twenty Miles to the Southward of *Chremnitz*; it is the most considerable of all the seven Mine Towns; it stands upon a Rock; the Houses are well built in themselves, but the Streets are uneven and irregular. The Air of this Part of the Country is unhealthful, and the Soil barren, but the Mines make amends, and cause it to be much resorted to. The Ore is rich, and mostly contains some Gold, which they extract by first melting the Silver, and afterwards grinding it, and dissolving it in Aqua Fortis, made of the Vitriol, which comes from the Mines near *Chremnitz*; in this Aqua Fortis the Gold, after this Operation, subsides. The Mines at *Schemnitz* also afford Christals and Amethysts; and also Vitriol, which, without any Operation, is naturally christalliz'd.

BUT, 7. there is *Nesol*, or *Bestricia*, ten Miles North-East from *Chremnitz*; it stands at the Foot of a Hill on the River *Gran*; this Place is chiefly remarkable for its Copper Mines, being the best in *Hungary*, and out of which Ore some Silver is extracted. 8. *Hern Grunt*, about seven Miles from *Newsol*; here are Copper Mines so rich, that in a hundred Weight of Ore they extract from twenty to sixty Pound of Copper. In these Mines there is found Vitriol, white, green, blue, and red; as also a sort of a green Earth, used in Painting. In this Place there are two Springs of such a Quality, that in fourteen Days they will turn Iron into Copper, which some Naturalists impute to their being impregnated with Copper. 9. *Esperies*, upon the River *Tarkal*, near the Frontiers of *Poland*; it is about a hundred and fifty Miles to the Eastward of *Presburg*; it is chiefly remarkable for its Salt Mines, in one of which the Veins are so large, that they dig out Pieces of a thousand Pound Weight of pure Salt. There are also near this Place two poisonous Fountains, of such a pernicious Quality, that they kill any Animal that takes them, for which Reason they are wall'd up. 10. *Caschaw*, on the River *Tarkal*, about twenty Miles South of *Esperies*; it is a Royal Free Town, and the Residence of a Deputy, who is Governor under the Emperor, and is one of the best built Towns in the Country; the Air here is unhealthful, and the Wine bad, but it is observed that in its Carriage to *Poland*, and other adjacent Countries, that noxious Quality is evaporated. 11. *Agria*, or *Erlaw*, on the River *Agria*, about sixty Miles North-East of *Buda*; it is a strong Town, and a Bishop's See; it has a very strong Castle, but has been several times taken and retaken, alternately, both by the *Turks* and Christians. 12. *Pest*, a large Town, on the the River *Danube*, over-against *Buda*, with which it has a Communication by a Bridge over the *Danube*, about half a Mile long; it is a handsome Town, and affords a beautiful Prospect; the *Turks* surrendred it and *Buda* to the Imperialists in the Year 1686. 13. *Segedin*, on the River *Teys*, about eighty Miles to the Northward of *Belgrade*; it was taken from the *Turks*, by the Imperialists, the same Year that *Buda* was retaken by them. 14. *Temeswaer*, forty or fifty Miles to the North-Eastward from *Belgrade*; it is a strong Place, situate on the River *Temes*, taken and retaken several Times by the *Turks* and Christians from one another, but now, and ever since the Year 1718, the Imperialists have had it in Possession. 15. *Zolnock*, a strong Town on the River *Teys*, about sixty Miles to the Northward of *Segedin*, taken from the *Turks* by the Imperialists in the Year 1685. 16. *Montgatz*, about fifty Miles South-East of *Esperies*; it was a strong Place, but taken by the Emperor in the Year 1688. 17. *Ungwar*, on the River *Ungh*, at the Foot of the *Carpathian Mountains*, near the Borders of *Poland*, about forty Miles East-Southerly from *Esperies*. 18. *Tockay*, about forty Miles to the Southward of *Esperies*, and thirty Miles East from *Agria*; it

is

is chiefly famous for the excellent Wine it affords, of which they furnish great Quantities to *Poland*, and other adjacent Countries.

In lower *Hungary*, are, 1. *Buda*, once the Capital of the Kingdom; for although *Buda* and *Pest* might almost be said to be both one Place, having nothing but the River *Danube* between them, over which is a Bridge, which maintains a Communication between them, as is the Case between *London* and *Southwark* (only this Bridge at *Buda* is supported by Boats) yet as upper and lower *Hungary* are separated by the *Danube*, all the South Side of it is reckon'd lower *Hungary*. *Buda* is about 90 Miles South East of *Presburgh*, it stands on the Side of a Hill, upon the Top of which is the Castle, which is one of the strongest in *Hungary*; the Town is large and populous, and well traded. The *Imperialists* took it in the Year 1686. after a Siege of ten Weeks, commanded by the Duke of *Lorrain*; in which, many noble Volunteers from most Kingdoms in *Europe* assisted.

Their Baths, as Dr. *Brown* informs us, are the noblest in *Europe*, both for their large hot Springs, and the Magnificence of their Buildings: He gives us the following particular Account of two of the principal of them, *Viz.* 1. The Bath of the *Green Pillars*; the Water whereof is hot, and is impregnated with a petrifying Juice, which sticks to the Sides of the Bath, and on the Spout, and other Places; and in Process of Time, becomes a Grey Stone. The Vapours exhal'd from the Bath, to the Inside of the Cupola, trickle down; and as they seem to be ready to drop they congeal, and form long Stones like Candles or Icicles, which hang down from the Capitals of the Pillars, or any other Place where the Vapours fix.

The Bath is round, and about the Edges it is encompass'd with Pillars, which support the above-mention'd Cupola; in which there are Holes to let out the Heat and Steam of the Bath, and let some Air into the Room, which notwithstanding is as hot as a Stove or a Bagnio.

2. The Bath of *Velibey*, the finest in *Buda*; it hath a sulphureous Smell, and a petrifying Juice; and is so very hot, that it cannot be drank till it be mix'd with cold Water. The Bathing-room hath five Cupolas; the largest is the middle, over the great round Bath, and the other four are dispos'd one at each Corner, and less than the middle one; in them are private Bathing-rooms. The great Cupola is supported by twelve Pillars, between some of which are Fountains of hot Water, and between others are Places for the Barbers, and other Attendants upon the Bath to sit down; and in each of those Places, there are small Cisterns of Free-stone, to mix hot Water and cold in, according as every body likes it.

We are to observe here, that when Dr. *Brown* was there, these Baths were in the hands of the *Turks*; but as the *Christians* much more regard the Improvement of their Houses than their Baths, it is not to be supposed that the Baths at *Buda*, or any where else in that Country, appear with that Splendor and Magnificence now as they did then: But so much for the Description of *Buda* and the Baths there.

2. *Gran*, antiently *Strigonium*, on the South-side of the *Danube*, Sixty Miles South East of *Presburgh*, and about Thirty North West from *Buda*; it is an Arch-Bishop's See, and to him is annex'd the Dignity of Primate of *Hungary*. The most noted Buildings in it, are the Castle, the Arch-Bishop's Palace, and the Cathedral; it is in the Possession of the *Imperialists*, as now most of the considerable Towns in *Hungary* are.

3. *Komora*, at the East End of *Schutz Islands* about forty Miles South East from *Presburgh*.

4. *Raab*, a strong City, but not large; it is on the South Side of *Schutz Island*, upon a River of the same Name.

5. *Alba Regalis*, or *Stull Weissemberg*, at the North East End of the *Platten* Sea; this was the Burial Place, as well as the Coronation Place of the *Hungarian* Kings, till it was taken by the *Turks* in the Year 1543; but it was retaken by the *Imperialists* in the Year 1688, and has been in their Possession ever since.

CHAP. III.

Of the Genius, Temper, Persons, and Habits of the Hungarians; *and also of their Manner of travelling, noble Bridges,* &c. *with the Nature and Produce of the Soil, their Husbandry, Cattle, and other Animals; and of their Manufactures.*

It is very common at the first time of conversing with People of any strange Nation, to give them the Title of Barbarous, or some such Epithet at least, till we become acquainted with them; and thus the Nations who receiv'd Christianity before the *Huns*, from whence *Hungary* takes its Name, do report them to be a Savage People, entirely Strangers, not only to Commerce, but to Conversation too; that they were bred up so hardy, that they needed no Fire, either to warm themselves or to dress Victuals, they eating their Meat raw; and that they liv'd wild in the Woods, having no House, nor so much as a Hut to shelter them from the Weather. That their Cloathing was Skins of Wild-beasts; that they never cultivated their Ground, but only stay'd as long as they could live in one Place, and then rambled to another; that they had no Sense of Morality, or of Good and Evil. This and the like Character is given of the antient *Huns* or *Hungarians*, before they embrac'd Christianity.

But the Modern, or Christian *Hungarians*, bear a much more noble Character, and are esteem'd a brave warlike People; have stood as a Barrier between the *Turks* and *Christians*, and bravely defended the latter, for above two hundred Years; all that while bravely defending, as well as asserting the Christian Faith; but still amongst other Christian Kings and States, charged with Unfaithfulness and Breach of Leagues, when they have any View of Advantage by it; and our Author Dr. *Brown* adds, that they are idle and slothful, which is imputed to the Fruitfulness of their Country, *&c.* In short, the Description of the *Hungarians* which this Author gives, is compos'd of such a Medley, as gives reason to suppose, that he has form'd a general Description of the Tempers of the People from the Opinions that he has

conceiv'd of particular Persons with whom he has convers'd; and from those particular Favours or Prejudices, has form'd his miscellaneous Account of the whole: and as different Constructions are put upon their frequent Insurrectoins, one while calling them downright Rebellion, and another time esteeming them noble Struggles in Defence of their Liberties.

Persons and Habits.

The *Hungarians* are well proportion'd, and of a good Stature and Complection; as to their Habits, they wear Fur Caps upon their Heads, close-body'd Coats ty'd to them with a Sash; and over all, a Cloak or Mantle only down to the Hips, and so contriv'd, as to be buckl'd under one Arm, that they may always have the right Hand at Liberty. They affect, gaudy Colours, as Red, Blue, Green, and the like, for their Cloaths; and the young Sparks retain that Piece of *Turkish* Pride of wearing Feathers in their Caps; but People of the best Fashion, both Men and Women, affect the *French* Dress, but still retain the *Hungarian* short Mantle. The Women veil themselves when they go abroad. The Men shave their Beards, only leave Whiskers on the upper Lip. They wear broad Swords, and some of them have an Iron Mace with a round Head furrow'd with a Balla, which is made in the form of a Hatchel.

Travelling.

They travel pretty much by Water, for which the Plenty of Rivers gives them a great Opportunity; but where they are oblig'd to travel by Land, the common Carriage is an open Chariot drawn by two, three, or four Horses; which, whatever Number there are, all go abreast. They have very swift Horses, and take a Pride in having them with long Tails, which they look upon as a great Ornament. It is dangerous travelling in *Hungary*; for their Hussars or Troopers having but small Pay, endeavour to make themselves amends by plundering Travellers if they can do it privatly and safely. Another dangerous Nusance, is the Numbers of sturdy Gyplies that infest the Country; who under Pretence of being some Handicraft Trade, get themselves introduc'd into the great Towns, and are very mischievous; and to those Da gers, we may add the Wolves that abound in *Hungary*, and make it very dangerous travelling, especially through the Woods; and in them more particularly in the Night Time. The Inhabitants of the great Towns keep abundance of Dogs, which they turn loose in the Night Time, and are ready to devour a Passenger as soon as they see him. It is said, they keep Dogs up all Day, and turn them loose at Night to alarm the Garison, and prevent a Surprize in the Night.

Bridges.

But as good Bridges are an essential Part of a Road, for conveying Goods and Travellers from Place to Place, it may not be amiss, to take notice of the noble Bridges that are or have been to be met with in this Country: As First, the Bridge of *Essek*, over the River *Drave*, near its Confluence into the *Danube*: This Bridge is built not only over the aforesaid River, but over the adjacent marshy Grounds to the Northward of it, which extend for above five Miles; it is rail'd in all the way, and has a Tower at every Quarter of a Mile. There is also a Bridge between *Buda* and *Pest*, over the *Danube*; it is about half a Mile long, but it is only supported by Boats, as before observed. There is also another remarkable Bridge over the *Danube*, between *Gran* and *Barcan*; but the most remarkable, is a Bridge built over the *Danube*, about twenty *Italian* Miles from *Belgrade*, the Ruins of which are still to be seen: It was supported by Twenty Piles of square Stone, an Hundred Feet in Height; each Sixty Feet square, and distant One Hundred and Seventy Feet from one another, all joyn'd to one another by Arches; which made one continued Bridge of Four Thousand Seven Hundred and Seventy Feet, or One Thousand Five Hundred and Ninety Yards, which is near an *English* Mile. Upon the Side of the Arches is this Inscription: PROVIDENTIA AUG. PONTIFICIS VIRTUS ROMANA QUID NON DOMAT? SUB JUGUM ECCE! RAPITURET DANUBIUS; and also to perpetuate the Memory of this Bridge, several Silver Medals were struck with this Inscription: DANUBIUS.

There are in the River *Danube* abundance of large well peopl'd Islands; one of the chief of which is a little below *Buda*, about Forty Miles long, on which are many populous Villages; but the chief of all is the Island *Schutz*, extending from *Presburgh* to *Comora*, above Thirty Miles; and for Strength, Populousness, and Fruitfulness, the most considerable Island on the *Danube*.

Hungary is an exceeding fruitful Soil, except where it is mountainous and woody, of which there is not much. Their Bread-Corn is very good, and yet vastly cheaper than with us. Their Grapes are large and rich, and their Wines, especially the *Tokay* Wines, are reckon'd preferable to any in *Europe*. They improve their arable Ground by burning it; and in Times of War, instead of building Barns, they dig Caves to secure their Corn in from the Weather and the Soldiers. There need be no other Proofs of the Fruitfulness of the Soil, than that of subsisting such vast Armies for so many Years together, as it did in the late *Turkish* Wars.

The Country abounds with Cattle, of which, especially Oxen, they send incredible Numbers to *Germany* every Year; and also into other neighbouring Countries. Deer, Game, and wild Fowls, are so plenty in their Fields and Forests, that none are restrain'd from taking them; but the Poor have them for taking them, and use them as ordinary Food. The best Fresh-water Fish is so plenty, that some (by how modest a Computation I cannot determine) think that the Fish that are in the Lakes and Rivers, contain half as much Space as all the Waters in which they live. Their Horses are swift but not large, which makes them fitter for riding than drawing; but that Defect is suply'd by a good Breed of Buffaloes, which serve them for plowing, and Husbandry, and also for drawing heavy Carriages and the like.

Most of their Manufacture consists in Copper and other hard Wares. They have but little Foreign Trade, as being an Inland Country. Their Exportation consists mostly of Wine, Cattle, and Corn; with which (as they can have no Communication with the *Black Sea*, or the *Mediterranean*, by way of the *Danube*, because they must then come through the *Turks* Dominions) they can have little Trade, except by supplying their Neighbours on each Side of them upon the main Continent.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

An Abstract of the Succession of the Hungarian *Princes, and of their antient and modern History; also of the Constitution of their Government, and of the Forces and Revenues of the Kingdom.*

WHAT has been said of *Denmark* (Chap. VI. of the Description of that Country, Page 427) may not only be said of *Hungary*, but of most Kingdoms and Governments in the World, as arising from patriarchal before they amounted to regal Government; for the first Account we have of *Hungary*, tells us, that it was at first divided into several little independant Principalities, or, it may be said, divided and differently interested Members of that one Body; till at last seeing the Vanity of destroying one another, they united under one of the most powerful, as a common Head for their mutual Defence against foreign Enemies, the Person whom they chose as Supreme being entitled Duke of *Hungary*; of whom fourteen reign'd successively before the *Hungarians* embrac'd the Christian Religion, who all exercis'd sovereign Jurisdiction over the People, and were short of Kings in nothing except the Title.

THE last of these Dukes (but the first that embrac'd Christianity) was named *Geysa*; he was converted to Christianity about the Year 1000 after the Birth of our Saviour, and baptiz'd at *Prague*; but being old and weak, he, with the Consent of his People, resign'd the Government to his Son *Stephen*, the first who assum'd the Title of King of *Hungary*, and who, with his Successors, form the following List:

1. *Stephen*, the Son of *Geysa*, came to the Crown about the Year 1000, his Father resigning immediately upon his embracing Christianity.

2. *Peter*, who was *Stephen*'s Sister's Son, succeeded in the Year 1038; but he reign'd but four Years, and then he was deposed, and succeeded by,

3. *Alban*, or *Ovan*, in the Year 1042; but the People not liking him, assassinated him, and he was succeeded by,

4. *Andrew*, the Brother of *Stephen*, in the Year 1066; but tho' in his Life-time he procur'd his Son *Solomon* to be proclaim'd his Successor, yet he was first murder'd, and then succeeded by his Brother,

5. *Bela*, in the Year 1071.

6. *Solomon*, the Son of *Andrew*, above-mention'd, succeeded upon his Uncle *Bela*'s Death, in the Year 1073; but *Geysa* and *Ladislaus*, the Sons of *Bela*, thinking they had a more immediate Right than his Nephew, asserted each his Right; and although they were for a while contented to be independant Princes in their respective Provinces, yet they soon jointly made War against *Solomon*, and he being slain,

7. *Geysa*, the elder Brother, mounted the Throne, in the Year 1074; but dying, he was succeeded by his younger Brother,

8. *Ladislaus*, in the Year 1077: He had two Nephews, the Sons of his Brother *Geysa*, their Names were *Bela* and *Coloman*, and *Ladislaus* perceiving that *Coloman* was no Favourer of the Christians, settled the Crown by Will upon *Bela*, but he relign'd to his Brother,

9. *Coloman*, who began in the Year 1095, and being now in Power, ungratefully put out his Brother *Bela*'s Eyes, and threw him into Prison; and he was succeeded by his Son,

10. *Stephen* II. who ascended the Throne in the Year 1114; but after eighteen Years he retired into a Monastery, and left the Government to,

11. *Bela the Blind*, who came to the Crown 1132; this *Bela* was succeeded by his Son,

12. *Geysa* II. in the Year 1141; and at his Death his third Son,

13. *Stephen* III. mounted the Throne, *Anno* 1161; and was succeeded by,

14. *Ladislaus* II. the second Son of *Bela the Blind*, in the Year 1172, and after him succeeded,

15. *Stephen* IV. the fourth Son of *Bela*, who came to the Crown 1172; but did not reign above five Months till he was depos'd, and,

16. *Bela* III. the second Son of *Geysa*, commenc'd King 1173.

17. *Emeric*, Son of *Bela*, succeeded in the Year 1195; and he again was succeeded by,

18. *Ladislaus* III. his only Son, who began in the Year 1204, and was succeeded by,

19. *Andrew* II. the Brother of *Emeric*, in the Year 1205; and he, after a Reign of thirty Years, was succeeded by,

20. *Bela* IV. *Andrew*'s second Son; he began in the Year 1235, and after him succeeded,

21. *Stephen* V. 1260, who was succeeded by his Son,

22. *Ladislaus* IV. who began his Reign *Anno* 1272, but he being murder'd was succeeded by,

23. *Andrew* III. the Son of *Stephen*, in the Year 1290; and after him came,

24. *Wenceslaus*, the King of *Bohemia*'s Son, in the Year 1299; but he had not reign'd above six Years before his Father recall'd him from *Hungary*, as finding them a rebellious People; and continually exciting Insurrections against him; whereupon,

25. *Otho*, King of *Bavaria*, was crown'd also King of *Hungary*, *Anno* 1305; but this being done only by a factious Party, and attended with a great deal of Difficulty, was but of short Duration, for after a Reign of but about four Years he was expell'd the Throne, and succeeded by,

26. *Charles Robert*, the Grandson of King *Stephen* V. who began to reign in the Year 1310: He was a successful Prince, and enlarged his Dominions; and having subdu'd *Bulgaria*, *Croatia*, *Servia*, and *Dalmatia*, and several other Principalities, he dy'd, and was succeeded by his Son,

27. *Ludowick*, or *Lewis*, in the Year 1342; he reign'd King of *Hungary* and *Poland* till the Year 1382, and was then succeeded by his Daughter,

28. *Mary*; but she being very young, the Administration was mostly entrusted in the Hands of her Mother, who being not much more fit to govern than her Daughter, the People elected,

29. *Charles*, King of *Naples*, Brother to the late *Ludowick*, or *Lewis*; he began in the Year 1383; but *Ludowick*'s Wife, the late Queen Mother, relenting the Loss of her late Authority, hir'd an Assassin to murder him; after which he was succeeded by,

30. *Sigismund*, who was afterwards Emperor of *Germany*, and had married the late depos'd Queen *Mary*,

Mary; he was advanc'd to the Throne of *Hungary* in the Year 1387; and after a long Reign of above Fifty Years he dy'd; and,

31. *Albert*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, having married the only Daughter of *Sigiſmund*, ſucceeded his Father-in-law, both in the Empire of *Germany*, and in the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, in the Year 1438; and dying without Iſſue, only leaving his Empreſs big with Child, he was ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Hungary* by,

32. *Uladiſlaus*, Brother to the King of *Poland*; who ſucceeded to, or rather uſurp'd the Throne of *Hungary*, *Anno* 1440; but he dying, was ſucceeded by,

33. *Ladiſlaus* V. the Poſthumous Son of *Albert*, who came to the Crown at Five Years of Age; in the Year 1444; but during his Minority, the Adminiſtration was entruſted in the Hands of *John Hunniades*, who behaved ſo well againſt the *Turks*, that when *Ladiſlaus* died, his Son,

34. *Matthias Corvinus*, was elected King, in the Year 1458. This Prince built the famous Library at *Buda*; he dy'd in a Fit of Anger, and was ſucceeded by,

35. *Uladiſlaus*, King of *Bohemia*; he obtain'd the Crown by the means of the late Queen, *Anno* 1460; and dying, was ſucceeded by,

36. *Lodowick* II. his Son; he was King of both *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and began his Reign in the Year 1516; he was a brave warlike Prince, but too boldly engaging *Solyman*, Emperor of the *Turks*, with an inferior Number, he was entirely defeated; and in his Retreat, his Horſe fell into a Morafs with him; and being loaded with Armour, he periſh'd, and his Body was not found till ſome Weeks after the Battle.

37. *John*, *Vayvode* of *Tranſilvania*, was then crown'd King of *Hungary*, in the Year 1526, but expell'd the Throne by *Ferdinand*, Brother to *Charles* V. Emperor of *Germany*, who had married *Anne*, Siſter of the late *Ludowick*; and tho' he was reſtor'd by *Solyman* Emperor of the *Turks*, yet his Enemy *Charles* V. abovemention'd let him have no Reſt, till by his Means,

38. *Ferdinand*, Arch-duke of *Auſtria*, was crown'd King of *Hungary*, *Anno* 1527; but he was afterwards elected Emperor of *Germany*, and his eldeſt Son,

39. *Maximilian*, was crown'd King of the *Romans*, *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1564, while the Emperor *Ferdinand* his Brother was living; but when he dy'd, *Maximilian* ſucceeded to the Empire, and,

40. *Rodolph*, the Son of *Maximilian*, was elected King of *Hungary*, *Anno* 1576; but being either frightned, or over-perſuaded out of his Kingdom, his Brother,

41. *Matthias*, mounted the Throne of *Hungary*, *Anno* 1613, and was afterwards elected Emperor of *Germany*: He perſecuted the Proteſtants with ſo much Severity, as cauſed an Inſurrection; of which, ſee more hereafter in the Hiſtory of that Prince's Life, in the Deſcription of *Bohemia*.

42. *Ferdinand* II. ſucceeded next to the Crown of *Hungary*, and to the reſt of *Matthias*'s Dominions, *Anno* 1618. was Grandſon to *Ferdinand* I. and dying, was ſucceeded by his Son,

43. *Ferdinand* III. who was both King of *Hungary*, and Emperor of *Germany*; he began *Anno* 1625; and after his Death, his Son,

44. *Ferdinand* IV. came to the Crown, *Anno* 1647; after whom, his Son,

45. *Leopold* came to the Crown, *Anno* 1658; and after him ſucceeded,

46. *Joſeph*, the Son of *Leopold*, who was crown'd King of *Hungary* in the Year 1688, his Father being alive; and the Crown was entail'd by the States upon the next Heirs.

47. *Charles*, Emperor of *Germany*, and King of *Hungary*, ſucceeded to thoſe Dominions on the Eleventh of *April*, in the Year 1711.

In order to the electing of a King, the Nobility and Repreſentatives of the People, uſed formerly to aſſemble upon a Plain call'd *Rackes*, near *Peſt*, over againſt *Buda*; where in a formal Manner, having expreſs'd their Liking and Approbation of the new propoſed King, he was conducted to *Stullwieſſenburgh*, or *Alba Regalis*, where the Palatine preſented him to the People; who having three times expreſs'd their Conſent that he ſhould reign over them, he delivers a naked Sword into the King's Hand, which he brandiſheth Eaſt, Weſt, North and South; after which he is attended to the Great Church, where the Archbiſhop of *Gran*, holding the Royal Robes in his Hand, demands again of the People, if they are ſatisfied with the King Elect, *&c.* and being anſwer'd in the Affirmative, he proceeds to the Ceremony of Coronation; after which, the Nobility and Clergy carry the Arms and other Relicks of King *Stephen*, their firſt King, in a magnificent Proceſſion to the Palace.

The Crown of King *Stephen* is carefully preſerv'd at *Presburgh*, with ſo great Veneration, that all their Kings are crown'd with it; and indeed it is not allow'd to be a due Coronation that is perform'd without it. The *Hungarians* think, that the Succeſs of their King and Nation depends upon the Preſervation of this Crown; which the *Turks* knowing, has made them the more eagerly attempt the taking it from them; aſſuring themſelves, that as they value the Crown more than the Perſon that wears it, they would readily pay Obedience and Allegiance even to the *Grand Seignior* himſelf, if once he had St. *Stephen*'s Crown upon his Head.

The Reaſon of this profound Veneration, not to ſay Adoration, being paid to the Crown of their King and Saint *Stephen* I. is not only becauſe it was the Crown of their firſt King, but for the following more particular Reaſon, *viz.* King *Stephen* having begun to encourage and propogate the Chriſtian Religion in his Dominions, ſent *Aſtricus*, Biſhop of *Colocza*, to Pope *Benedict* VII. deſiring his Holineſs to confirm him in his Kingdom, and to ſend him a Crown and other Regalia; but *Myſca*, King of *Poland*, having at the ſame time ſent to the Pope upon the ſame Errand, the Pope had provided a Crown and Regalia for him; but it was not yet ſent to him; for an Angel appear'd to the Pope the Day before it was to be ſent away, and directed the Pope to ſend the Crown, *&c.* to *Stephen* King of *Hungary*, which was intended for *Poland*; and it was ſent him accordingly, and valu'd as ſent by an Angel; and to this Day they believe this Tradition, as if it was an Article of their Faith, and have a firm Belief, that in whoſe Poſſeſſion ſoever this Crown is, he has an indiſputable Right to be King of *Hungary*, be he Turk or Chriſtian.

The next Perſon in Authority to the King, is the Palatine or Guardian of the Kingdom; he is Guardian to the Infant Princes of the Blood; he has the firſt Voice in the Election of a King, and acts as a Deputy King in an Inter-regnum; aſſembling the States, hearing Petitions, conferring with Ambaſſadors and foreign Miniſters, and taking the Adminiſtration of the Government into his Hand while the Throne is vacant,, as if he was King himſelf.

The next Great Officer, is the Archbiſhop of *Gran*; who is always Primate, Pope's Legate, and Chancellor of the Kingdom; and in the Aſſembly of the States, which is compos'd of the Nobility, Biſhops, and Repreſentatives of the Royal Cities, *&c.* he always ſits as Preſident.

The

THE common People here, as in ſeveral other Places before treated of, are a ſort of Slaves or Vaſſals to the Lords upon whoſe Lands they live; and although thoſe Tenants are much the greater part of the Inhabitants, yet they have no Share in electing of their Princes or Governors: So that when any Difference happen'd between the King and the Nobility, it was all one to them which prevail'd, for they could but be Slaves, either to their Landlords, or to the ſuperior Power; and this they were ſure to be, be it how it would; for they have no Properties, or what they can juſtly call their own: All they have, or even what they acquire by their Induſtry, being at the Diſpoſal of their reſpective Lords.

Forces and Revenues.

THE Forces of *Hungary* were very conſiderable, while they were govern'd by their own native Princes, and while the Forces were commanded by their own Fellow Subjects; of which there is a remarkable Inſtance, when *Ladiſlaus* the poſthumous Son of the Emperor *Sigiſmund* was King of *Hungary*, and *John Huniades* his General perform'd ſuch memorable Actions againſt the *Turks*. The Emperor at preſent, raiſes what Forces he pleaſes (ſo far as they are to be had) but the Revenue is computed at no more than an Hundred and Twenty Thouſand Pounds; moſt of which is levy'd upon the Mines and the Cattle; and perhaps the beſt half of it laid out in paying the Governors and Officers of the Towns and Provinces, in repairing Fortifications, and maintaining the Gariſons in the frontier Towns; ſo that the Revenues of *Hungary* alone, are far ſhort of being ſufficient to maintain a Force that may be able to defend them from the Inſults of the *Turks*, without the Aſſiſtance of the Empire and the Hereditary Countries.

OF the *Hungarian* Forces, their Horſe are called Huſſars, and their Foot Heydukes: Several Regiments of Huſſars ſerv'd in *Flanders* in the late Wars, and do alſo in the preſent Wars in the Emperor's Service, againſt the united Forces of *France*, *Spain*, and *Sardinia*. Their Horſes are ſwift and well manag'd, but are but of a ſmall Size for Troopers. The Huſſars ride ſhort, to give themſelves the better Opportunity of raiſing themſelves, and reaching forwards, when they give a Stroke with their Scymeters; but by reaſon of the Lightneſs and Smalneſs of their Horſes, they are far ſhort of being equal to the *Engliſh* Cavalry.

THE Heydukes may be ſaid to be a kind of an undiſciplin'd Militia, and taken under that Denomination. Few Nations it is believ'd, can produce better. Their general Exerciſe, or rather Diverſion, to keep up their Spirits in a warlike Poſture, is an antient Pyrrhical Dance with naked Swords in their Hands, brandiſhing them, and putting themſelves in abundance of terrible Poſtures, with all the Motions of advancing, retreating, turning, and winding, with the greateſt Activity; all the while forming a ſort of a vocal Tune, keeping Time with their other rough Meaſures.

CHAP. V.

Of the Language, Learning, and Religion of the Hungarians; *as alſo of their Antiquities, Arms*, &c.

Lan-guage.

THE *Hungarian* Language, as to the way of writing it, is the moſt like the *Hebrew* of any Language now in uſe; it being govern'd, like that, by Points and Accents; the leaſt Variation of an Accent or Vowel, altering the whole Senſe of the Word; but its having ſo little Dependency upon, and Similitude to other Languages, makes it the more difficult to be learn'd by Strangers. And as few but themſelves underſtand it, the Natives, for the ſake of Commerce and Correſpondence with their Neighbours, eſpecially thoſe of *Poland*, are bred up to ſome tolerable Underſtanding of the Latin Tongue; which is ſo common an acquir'd Language among them, that almoſt every Peaſant is able to maintain Converſation therein.

Learning.

HISTORY does not furniſh us with any Account of Perſons very eminent for Learning in this Country; or at leaſt of any that acquir'd any diſtinguiſhing Degree of Learning. It is true that St. *Jerome*, and St. *Martin*, were Natives of *Hungary*; but they had their Learning elſwhere, as has been the Caſe with all the *Hungarian* Natives, who have apply'd themſelves to Letters, and acquired any conſiderable Degree of Learning; they having generally reſorted to the Univerſities of *Vienna*, *Prague*, or *Breſlaw* for their Education; for it is not a Want of natural Parts or Capacities, that occaſions this Defect, but becauſe *Hungary* has been almoſt a perpetual Scene of War, and their Thoughts have been ſo much turn'd upon military Exerciſes, that they have had neither Inclination nor Opportunity to bend their Thoughts to polite Literature; and hence, Schools and Univerſities have been ſo little encouraged here, that thoſe who were inclin'd to learn, were forc'd to go to other Places to improve themſelves, becauſe they had no Opportunities at Home.

Religion.

THIS Country was formerly ſo embarraſs'd by their Enemies, and the Inhabitants being originally Heathens, they never troubled themſelves much about Religion; the beſt Soldier was deem'd the moſt religious, and the Sword was the Standard by which they determin'd all Diſputes, and maintain'd their Rights, till about the Year 1000; about which time, *Geyſa*, Duke of *Hungary* (for there was then no King there) was converted and baptiz'd; and having given thoſe Proofs of his Profeſſion of Chriſtianity, reſign'd the Crown to his Son *Stephen* about that time; who being acted by his Father's Principles, and profeſſing his Religion, may be ſaid to be the firſt Chriſtian King of *Hungary*.

IN the fifteenth Century, the Followers of *John Huſs*, call'd therefore Huſſites of *Bohemia*, propogated their Opinion; and in the ſixteenth *Martin Luther* follow'd with his; and each of theſe again branch'd out into different Sects of Parties; but all of them ſeem'd to be united under the general Name of Proteſtants, and as ſuch oppoſed the Roman Catholicks; and as profeſs'd Enemies to them, join'd even the *Turks* themſelves againſt them, and took part with the Male-contents and the *Turks*, againſt the Emperor of *Germany*; and that Confederacy maintain'd a War againſt him many Years. In the late Wars between the *French* and the Confederates, the Emperor finding his Affairs pretty much embarraſs'd by Prince *Ra-*

gotski and *Berizini*, was obliged to withdraw Part of his Troops from the Confederate Army, to make head againſt them: But although *Ragotski* had ſo long pretended to be the Defender of the Proteſtant Intereſt in *Hungary*, yet he was perverted to Popery by the Jeſuits, or Popiſh Emiſſaries, during the Time of his Reſidence in *Turky*; and by the laſt Treaty of Peace between the Emperor and the Grand Seignior, nothing was ſtipulated in Favour of the Proteſtants; but on the contrary, the *Turks* engag'd that neither *Ragotski*, *Berizini*, Count *Forgats*, or any of their Leaders, ſhould be permitted to approach the Frontiers of *Hungary*: So that now the poor Proteſtants of *Hungary* are left entirely to the Emperor's Mercy.

HOWEVER, Chriſtianity is now the only Religion profeſs'd in *Hungary*; and had probably been ſo ſooner, had not the Roman Catholick Emperors Severity againſt the Proteſtants, been greater than that of a *Turkiſh* Grand Seignior.

Hungary, was a long time under the Dominion of the *Romans*; and hence it is, that Roman Coins, Medals, and other Antiquities, are frequently found here. The Emperors *Aurelius*, *Probus*, and *Gratian*, were born in *Panonia*; and great Numbers of Latin Inſcriptions of them, and other Emperors, are yet to be ſeen there: Inſomuch that *Cuſpinian* obſerves, that from the *Hungarian* Medals and Inſcriptions, there may be collected a better Account of Eight Emperors or Kings than has yet been given us by the beſt Hiſtory; and if we may give Credit to *Zamoſius*, he tells us, there are Coins to be ſeen here, that give us the true Portraitures of *Lyſimachus*, *Darius*, *Philip* of *Macedon*, and *Alexander* the Great, and other ancient Heroes. And another Author, *Natalis Comes*, tells us, That the Peaſants found a great Quantity of thoſe ancient gold Medals near the Town of *Deva*: They were diſcover'd by a ſudden Torrent, each of them, to the Number of many Thouſands, weighing two or three Crowns a-piece; having on one Side the Image of *Lyſimachus*, and on the reverſe VICTORIA; and that with theſe Medals was found a Golden Serpent; it being a Cuſtom with them to bury a Golden Serpent with their Treaſure, as a Token of a faithful Keeper. The Arms of the Kingdom of *Hungary*, are Barreniſe of Eight Pieces, Gules and Argent.

A

Q 36
459

A DESCRIPTION OF TRANSILVANIA.

CHAP. I.

Of the Name, Situation, and Extent of Tranſilvania; *its Air, Springs, Rivers, and Mountains; alſo of its Diviſion into Provinces, and of the chief Towns therein contain'd.*

TRANSILVANIA is a Part of the antient *Dacia*; it is call'd by the *Germans* *Sieben Bergen*, alluding to ſeven Fortreſſes, or ſtrong Places, built by the *Panonians* to keep the Inhabitants in Subjection; it is call'd by the Natives *Erdely*, or *Ardeli*, which ſignifies a Wood or Foreſt, and to that its preſent Name, *Tranſilvania*, refers, it having that Name, *Trans-Silvania*, now contracted to *Tranſilvania*, from its Situation with reſpect to the *Romans*, as being *beyond the Woods* and Foreſts, which ſeparate it from *Hungary* and *Walachia*.

It is bounded on the North by the *Crapack*, or *Carpathian Mountains*, which ſeparate it from *Poland*; on the Eaſt it is ſeparated from *Moldavia* by a Ridge of Mountains: It is bounded on the South by *Walachia* and a great Part of *Hungary*, and wholly by *Hungary* on the Weſt. The Middle of it lies in about forty-ſeven Degrees of North Latitude, and in about twenty-three Degrees of Longitude Eaſt from *London*. Its Dimenſions are about forty Leagues from North to South, and about twenty from Eaſt to Weſt.

In Summer the Air is exceſſive hot, not only by the natural Heat of the Sun in that Climate, but as it is increas'd by the Reflection of the circumjacent Woods and Mountains. Their Springs are unwholſome, by reaſon of the ſulphureous Soil from whence they proceed.

Their principal Rivers are, 1. *Alt*, or *Atlanta*; it riſes in the *Carpathian Mountains*, and falls into the *Danube*; it was, by the laſt Peace, made the Boundary between the *Turks* and *Germans*, on the North Side of the *Danube*. 2. The *Meriſſo*, which alſo riſes in the *Carpathian Mountains*, and falls into the *Teyſſe*. 3. The River *Samos*, which riſes near *Clauſenburg*, and paſſing near *Tockay*, falls into the *Teyſſe*.

This Country is inhabited by four ſeveral Sorts of People, different in their Original, their Language, Laws, and Cuſtoms, and diſtinguiſh'd under the four following Heads:

1. *Saxons*, ſuppoſed to be a Colony of the antient *Tranſiloanians*; they are poſſeſs'd of *Seben Bergen*, or the ſeven Towns, before-mention'd, which command, by far, the greater half of the Country.

2. The *Siculi*, who poſſeſs the North-Eaſt, near the *Crapack Mountains*; they are the Offspring of the *Huns*.

3. The *Hungarians*, (properly ſo call'd) who reſide near the Borders of *Hungary* and *Walachia*.

4. The *Congers*, or *Gipſies*, a ſtroling Crew, who pitch their Tents in every Part of the Country, and plunder with as much Freedom as if they were licens'd Thieves and Pick-pockets; they aſſume the Privilege of living at this rate, under a Pretence of having formerly done ſome Service to a *Tranſilvanian* Prince. But tho' they chuſe this idle Way of Living, as telling Fortunes, pilfering, and thieving, yet when all theſe idle Practices fail'd, they would work hard rather than ſtarve.

The *Saxons* inhabit five Counties, *viz.* *Altland*, 2. *Landvordenwald*, 3. *Bruckland*, 4 *Veinland*, and 5. *Noſnerland*. The chief Cities, or Towns, are, 1. *Hermanſtat*, the Capital of *Tranſilvania*; it ſtands on the little River *Cibin*, about Fourſcore Miles North-Eaſterly from *Temeſwar*; it is now the Seat of the Governor of the Province; it is a Biſhop's See; it is a ſtrong Place, well-built, the Streets broad, and generally Canals in the Middle of them, ſupply'd by the River. The *Saxons* Court of Judicature is held here. They have a good Trade for Cloth and Mead. The Gout reigns very much amongſt them, which they impute to a particular ſort of Wine made hereabouts.

2. *Cronſtat*, or *Corona*, about fifty Miles North from *Hermanſtat*; it is pleaſantly ſituated, among Vineyards that furround it, and pretty well fortify'd; the Inhabitants are all *Saxons*, having no Mixture of either *Hungarians*, or any other Nations, ſo that the *Saxon* Language is ſpoke here in its greateſt Purity. 3. *Fogaras*, a ſmall City on the River *Atlanta*, twenty-five Miles to the Weſtward of *Cronſtat*. 4. *Segeſwar*, or *Schesberg*, on the River *Cockle*, about thirty Miles to the Northward of *Hermanſtat*. 5. *Megies*, on the ſame River, about ſeventeen Miles to the Southward of *Segeſwar*; it is ſo full of Vineyards, that ſome call the Country hereabout by the Name of *Vineland*. 6. *Noſenſtat*, or *Biſtricia*, near the *Crapack Mountains*, about fourteen Miles to the Northward of *Hermanſtat*. The Gold Mines of *Rudna*

are within four Miles of this Place. 7. *Clauſenberg*, antiently *Claudiopolis*, on the River *Samos*, about fifty Miles North-Weſt of *Hermanſtat*; it is a populous Place, and was formerly the meeting Place of the States of *Tranſilvania*.

The *Hungarians* alſo inhabit five Counties, *viz.* 1. *Alba Julia*, 2. *Huniad*, 3. *Thorda*, 4. *Kohoka*, and 5. *Zatmar*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Alba Julia*, or *Weiſſenburg*, on the River *Lompay*, about twenty-five Miles to the Weſtward of *Hermanſtat*; it had its Name from *Julia Auguſta*, Mother of *Marcus Aurelius*; it was once the Capital of the Kings of *Dacia*, and was then twenty Miles in Circumference. 2. *Deva*, about twenty-eight Miles to the Southward of *Weiſſenburg*; it is remarkable for excellent Wines, as alſo for the Paſs near it, through the *Iron-Gate Mountains*, of great Importance, till the Imperial Dominions were extended beyond it by the laſt Peace with the *Turk*.

The Country of *Siculi* is on the North-Eaſt Part of *Tranſilvania*, and contains ſeven Counties, *viz.* 1. *Markozeck*, 2. *Girgio*, 3. *Utvarthel*, 4. *Chick*, 5. *Kiſdi*, 6. *Orbay*, and 7. *Schepſi*. Their capital Towns are of the ſame Names with their reſpective Provinces; but both are ſo inconſiderable that neither the Provinces nor their Capitals are worth any particular Deſcription.

CHAP. II.

Of the Nature of the Soil of Tranſilvania; *and alſo of the Product of the Country, as to Corn, Fruit, Minerals, and Cattle; alſo of their Trade, Manufactures, Habits, and Cuſtoms; with an Abſtract of their antient and modern Hiſtory, and the preſent State of Religion there.*

Soil. TRANSILVANIA is an exceeding fruitful Soil. Their Wheat is eſteem'd the beſt in *Europe*, and generally ſo plenty, that the pooreſt People eat no other Bread. Their Soil is ſo rich, that it does not agree ſo well with Barley, and hence they brew but little Beer; but that Defect is well ſupply'd with Plenty of good Wine, ſcarce exceeded by any, except the *Tokay*, (of which before.) The Country produces ſuch an Abundance of large Oxen, that one of the beſt Sort may be purchas'd in the Country for the Value of twenty Shillings Sterling, tho' when driven to Market, in *Auſtria*, one of the ſame Size will fetch fourteen or fifteen Pounds. They have alſo a very good Breed of Horſes, much eſteem'd by Foreigners. Their Woods afford great Plenty of a ſort of wild Bees, which produce great Quantities of Honey, of which they make Mead, by mixing the Honey with ſeveral pleaſant Ingredients. Their Foreſts afford abundance of Veniſon, Deer, Wild-Boars, Hares, and the like; their Hares are very large, and their Skins make a valuable Fur. They have wild Horſes, incredibly ſwift; their Manes hang almoſt down to the Ground. In ſome Parts of the Country they are much infeſted with Wolves and Bears, which, in the Winter-time, come near the Houſes, and do great Damage to their domeſtick Cattle. However, their Rivers, Fields, Woods, Hills, and Plains, abound plentifully with what they reſpectively produce.

Mines. There are Mines of Gold and other Metals in *Tranſilvania*, but not ſo plenty as in *Hungary*; their chief Mines are either at *Sculatti*, or *Rimli Dominardiz*, in which laſt Place they ſometimes find Lumps of pure virgin Gold, which will take the Impreſſion without refining. Their beſt Silver Mines are near *Offera* and *Radna*, where there are ſeveral Copper Mines, in which are alſo found Veins of Gold. There is plenty of Steel at *Cyck*, and of Iron at *Thoroſch* and *Huniad*; and they commonly find Brimſtone and Iſing-glaſs in their Copper Mines. They have alſo plenty of Rock-Salt in the County of *Maromarus*, which they ſend abroad.

They manufacture ſome Quantities of Cloth, but ſend little abroad. Their Exports conſiſt chiefly in fat Cattle, Wine, Mead, Rock-Salt, Copper and Iron Wares. They are ſo plentifully ſupply'd with the Product of their own Country, that it makes them more remiſs in looking after a Trade abroad.

Habit. The *Saxons* in *Tranſilvania* wear a ſhort looſe Coat, lin'd with Fur, and a Waiſtcoat under it; their Breeches are fitted as tight to the Thigh as the Stocking to the Leg, and are all of a Piece; their Caps are lin'd with Fur, and their Shoe-Heels ſtrengthen'd with Iron. They are ſuch exquiſite Artiſts at Drinking, that when at a publick Bout they have Muſick amongſt them, they keep Time with it by knocking their Cups and Glaſſes one againſt another, ſo exactly, as to ſupply the Place of Dancing.

Funerals. At their Funerals the Women, in a howling diſmal Tone, recite the memorable Actions of the Deceas'd, and take their final Leave of them with the utmoſt Expreſſions of Sorrow and Deſpair.

Hiſtorical Deſcription. I SHALL conclude this Chapter with an Abſtract of the antient and modern Hiſtory of *Tranſilvania*; which, as has been obſerv'd, is the Weſtern Part of the antient *Dacia*, which comprehended *Moldavia* and *Walachia*, before deſcrib'd in *Turkey*. The firſt that ſubdu'd this People was *Lyſimachus*, one of *Alexander*'s Generals; and they afterwards making frequent Incurſions into the *Roman* Territories, *Julius Cæſar* repuls'd and ſubdu'd them, and kept them under Tribute during the Time of his Adminiſtration; but in the Reign of *Auguſtus* they began to renew their Incurſions, but he ſent his General, *Lentulus*, againſt them, who at once, to prevent their Inroads for the future, fortify'd the South Banks of the *Danube*. Their laſt King, *Decebalus*, was vanquiſh'd by the Emperor *Trajan*, and he, for the Grief of his Defeat, fell on his own Sword, when no King immediately ſucceeding, his Country was reduc'd to a Province.

After this the *Dacians* making frequent Inſurrections, the Emperor *Aurelius* tranſlated the *Roman* Colonies, and the more civiliz'd Part of the Natives, to the South Side of the *Danube*, about *Servia* and *Bulgaria*, and hence thoſe Countries came by the Name of *New Dacia*; when *Old Dacia*, of which *Tranſilvania* was a Part, was thus in a Manner abandon'd by the *Romans*, the beſt Part of the Natives were ſoon ſubdu'd by the *Goths*; who kept it till they again were driven over the

Danube

Danube by the *Huns*, who likewiſe ſubdu'd *Hungary* and *Tranſilvania* much about the ſame Time.

Stephen, the firſt King of *Hungary*, came to the Crown about the Year 1000, and firſt introduc'd Chriſtianity there, as he did alſo in *Tranſilvania*, which was made a Province of *Hungary*, and govern'd by a Viceroy, or Vaivode; and this Conſtitution continu'd from the Year 1000 to the Year 1526; and then *Lewis* King of *Hungary* dying without Iſſue Male, the Faction elected *John*, Vaivode of *Tranſilvania*, to be King of *Hungary*, in Oppoſition to the Pretenſions of *Ferdinand*, Brother to the Emperor *Charles* V. who ſoon drove *John* out of his new Kingdom.

When the Vaivode found that he was not a Match for the Emperor and his Brother *Ferdinand*, he retir'd to *Poland*, from whence *Solyman*, Emperor of the *Turks*, invited him to *Tranſilvania*, with a Promiſe of ſupporting his Intereſt; which *John* accepting of, took upon him the Title of abſolute Prince of *Tranſilvania*, independant of *Hungary*, agreeing at the ſame Time to pay a ſmall Tribute to the *Turk* for his Protection.

When this Prince *John* of *Tranſilvania* dy'd, his Son *John* not only ſucceeded him in the Principality of *Tranſilvania*, but was elected and crown'd King of *Hungary* too; which the Emperor not agreeing to, commence'd a bloody War with the *Turk*; but a Truce was agreed upon, in which *Hungary* was yielded to the Emperor, and *Tranſilvania* confirm'd to Prince *John*; and he dying without Iſſue, *Stephen Bathori* ſucceeded to the Principality of *Tranſilvania*; but he being afterwards elected King of *Poland*, his Brother *Chriſtopher Bathori* was Prince of *Tranſilvania*; and when he dy'd his Son *Sigiſmund* ſucceeded to *Tranſilvania*, who immediately threw off all Subjection to the *Turks*, and enter'd into an Alliance with the Emperor *Rodolph*; and by this Means he was entitled to a Vote at the Diet of *Ratisbon*, and was declar'd a Prince of the Empire, on Condition that, on failure of Iſſue, *Tranſilvania* ſhould be re-annex'd to the Crown of *Hungary*; but this Alliance held but a ſhort Time, and *Sigiſmund* quarrelling with the Emperor, was by him diſpoſſeſs'd of his Principality.

Sigiſmund Ragotski then took upon him the Title of Prince of *Tranſilvania*; but finding himſelf too weak for the Emperor, he ſoon reſign'd, and *Gabriel Bathori* aſſum'd the Government; who the better to ſecure himſelf, put himſelf under the Protection of the *Turk*. After him came *Bethlem Gabor*, who being ſupported by *Achmet*, the *Turkiſh* Emperor, he engaged in a War with the Emperor *Ferdinand* the Second, in the Intereſt of *Frederick* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, (elected King of *Bohemia*) and made himſelf Maſter of a good Part of *Hungary* and *Moravia*; and dying in the Year 1629, the States offer'd the Government of the Principality to his Widow; but ſhe, conſcious of her own Inability for that great Charge, reſign'd to Prince *George Ragotski*, who, under the Protection of the *Turk*, engaged in a War with the Emperor. *George Ragotski* II. ſucceeded his Father; but the *Turks*, not ſatisfy'd with the Succeſſion, proclaim'd *Achatius Bartchay* Prince of *Tranſilvania*, while *George Ragotski* II. was yet alive; but they afterwards beheading *Achatius*, the States elected *John Kimen*; but the *Turks* refuſing to confirm his Election, their Faction cut him to Pieces, and *Michael Abaffi* ſucceeded in the Year 1661; but he, with the Conſent of the States of *Tranſilvania*, reſigning that Principality to the Emperor, as King of *Hungary*, for ever, the Emperor immediately took Poſſeſſion, and put Garriſons into all the fortify'd Towns.

When *Abaffi* dy'd, the Emperor appointed the Prince his Son Vaivode, or Viceroy of the Country, in Oppoſition to Count *Tekeli* and the *Ottoman Porte*; and to this Day the Principality of *Tranſilvania* is incorporate with the Crown of *Hungary*, under the Protection of the Emperor; and this Principality was confirm'd to the Emperor by the *Turks* at the Treaty of *Carlowitz* and *Paſſerowitz*.

Religion. The *Roman* Catholick is the eſtabliſh'd Religion in *Tranſilvania*, as well as in others of the Emperor's Hereditary Dominions; here are indeed great Numbers of *Lutherans*, *Calviniſts*, and other Denominations of Proteſtants, but they are ſo far from being tolerated, that they are perſecuted with great Severity, which has occaſion'd many Inſurrections both here and in *Hungary*.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE FRONTIER PROVINCES OF THE EMPIRE, VIZ. SERVIA, CROATIA, and SCLAVONIA.

CHAP. I.

Of the Province of Servia.

Extent. SERVIA, aniently *Mæsia Superior*, is bounded on the North by the *Danube* and the *Save*; the latter of which separates *Servia* from *Sclavonia*. On the East, by *Bulgaria*, or *Mæsia Inferior*. It is bounded on the South, by *Albania*, and Part of *Macedon*; and on the West, by *Bosnia* and *Dalmatia*. It extends about two hundred and fifty Miles from East to West, and an hundred and twenty from North to South. It has a temperate Air and a fruitful Soil; and was therefore stil'd by the *Romans*, their Granary for Corn. It is well water'd, and would produce good Wines; but labouring under the Misfortune of most other frontier Provinces, the Hazard of being plunder'd by the contending Parties on each Side of it, *viz.* the *Turks* and the *Imperialists*, their Land lies uncultivated, except just sowing or planting, so much as is necessary for the Support of their own Families; they not being entirely free from the Depredations of those voracious Neighbours even in Times of Peace.

Belgrade; The chief Towns of *Servia* are, 1. *Belgrade*, or *Greek Weissenburgh*, situate on a rising Ground, on the Bank of the *Danube*, where the River *Save* falls into it. It lies in about forty five Degrees of Latitude North; and in Longitude, twenty one East from *London*. It is a large Town, well situate for Trade, and one of the strongest Fortresses in *Europe*. It was taken from the *Christians* by *Solyman* Emperor of the *Turks*, in the Year 1521, and retaken by the Emperor in 1686, under the Conduct of the Duke of *Bavaria*. The *Turks* besieg'd it again in 1688; and one of the Enemies Bombs blowing up the Magazine and Part of the Wall, the *Turks* enter'd Sword in Hand, putting all the Garison (which consisted of Six Thousand Men) to the Sword, except the Governor and three hundred Men, who escap'd out of one of the Gates, while the *Turkish* Forces were busy in plundering the Town.

In the Year 1717, about the Middle of *June*, the Emperor sent an Army under the Command of Prince *Eugene*, to invest *Belgrade*; but it being a Place of the greatest Importance to the *Turks*, they were resolv'd to defend it at all Hazards. The Siege was attempted on the Sixteenth of *August* the same Year; when both Parties, knowing the Place to be of great Consequence, either were equally obstinate; whereupon a pitch'd Battle ensu'd, in which the *Imperialists*, under Prince *Eugene*, gain'd a compleat Victory.

In this Engagement, the *Imperialists* took from the *Turks*, above an hundred and fifty Pieces of Cannon, thirty or forty Mortars with Amunition in Proportion, and in short their whole Camp: And if we would give an Estimate of the Largeness and Importance of the Place, by what was contain'd in it, when it surrender'd, the following Account will assist in the Computation: For there were above sixty thousand *Turks* left in the Place, whereof twenty thousand were Soldiers. There were four hundred and fifty six Brass Cannon, two hundred and nine of Iron, and an hundred and three Brass Mortars; which with Ammunition in Proportion, was Proof sufficient of the Strength of the Place.

2. The next City of Note is *Semendria*, upon the *Danube*, about twenty Miles to the Eastward of *Belgrade*; it was formerly the Capital of *Servia*, but now declin'd.

3. *Widin* on the *Danube*, about an hundred and fifty Miles below *Belgrade*, and near the River *Timock*.

4. *Nissa*, about an hundred and twenty Miles South East of *Belgrade*, situate on the River *Morava*, now a Place of no great Importantance.

5. *Scopia*, on the same River *Morava*, and about sixty Miles to the Southward of *Nissa*; it is a large trading Town, and situate in a pleasant fruitful Country on the Borders of *Macedon*: Here are several fine Mosques, Caravanseras, and other Ornaments to the Place.

The Country of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*, or the Lower *Mæsia*, were subdu'd by the *Romans*, and made

made a Province of that Empire in the Reign of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and continu'd ſo till the Fall of the Eaſtern Empire, and was then ſeiz'd by the *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* People; but the Word being contracted to *Sorbi*, and from thence to *Servi*, gives the preſent Name of *Servia* to the Province.

When the *Turk* began to make a conſiderable Progreſs in *Europe*, the *Servians*, willing to make Head againſt them, put themſelves under the Protection of the Kings of *Hungary*, paying a ſmall Tribute to that Crown for their Dependancy; and hence it is that the Houſe of *Auſtria*, as Kings of *Hungary*, claims this Province of *Servia*; and indeed it was little more than a Claim, for in plain Truth, the *Turks* made an entire Conqueſt of it, and the Princes of *Servia* became tributary to the *Turk* in the Year 1460; at which Time they modell'd it into the ſame Form of Government with one of their own Provinces, and made it ſubject to the Viceroy of *Romania*; ſo that the Emperor paid dear for the little Title (and only a bare Title) that he had to *Servia*, till the Battle of *Belgrade*, under Prince *Eugene*, in the Year 1717, by which, and the Peace that enſu'd upon it, a great Part of the Province was again transferr'd to the Emperor.

But as I am now treating of thoſe Places which are the Frontiers of the *German* and *Ottoman* Empires, it may not be amiſs, before I conclude this Chapter, to give an exact Deſcription of the Extent of each of their Dominions, and where they are ſeparated.

And firſt, on the North Side of the *Danube*, all Places and Countries to the Weſtward of the River *Atlanta* and *Temeſwaer*, are by Name confirm'd to the Emperor; and all on the Eaſt Side of that River belongs to the *Porte*, or *Turkiſh Empire*; and this Diviſion holds good from where it flows out of *Tranſilvania* to where it falls into the *Danube*; and on the South Side of the *Danube*, the Boundary is where the little River *Timock* falls into the *Danube*, and up along the ſame for ten Leagues; and the ſaid Limits are continued through the Mountains towards *Parakin*, &c. as far as the River *Drin*; ſo that *Belgrade*, *Parakin*, *Iſtolaz*, *Schabak*, *Bedka*, and *Belina*, with their antient Territories, are ſurrender'd to the Emperor, and *Zokol* and *Razna* remain to the *Turk*; and the Subjects of both Empires are equally to enjoy the Navigation of the River *Timock*, which ſeparates the Empires, as paſſing between them. Again, from the *Drin* to the River *Una*, the River *Save*, with all the Places, whether wall'd or open, upon both its Banks, hitherto in the Emperor's Poſſeſſion, ſhall be continu'd to him, as ſhall alſo that Space from where the *Una* and the *Save* join, to the Territories of the antient *Novi*; the Territories of *New Novi*, on the Weſt Side of the *Una*, which at the Treaty of *Carlowitz* was granted to the *Turk*, ſhould be reſtor'd to the Emperor, with all their Dependencies; the Limits of *Croatia* to remain as before on the Treaty of *Carlowitz*, the River *Una* ſeparating the two Empires in this Province.

CHAP. II.

A Deſcription of the Provinces of Croatia *and* Sclavonia.

Limits.

THE Province of *Boſnia* lies between *Servia* and *Croatia*; but that does not fall under our Conſideration at preſent, it being a Province of the *Turkiſh Empire*, and ſpoke of under that Head.

Croatia, which is Part of the antient *Illyricum*, is bounded on the North by the River *Save* and the *Danube*, the former of which ſeparates it from *Sclavonia*; (of which in the next Chapter;) it is bounded by *Boſnia* on the Eaſt, on the South by *Morlachia*, and on the Weſt by *Carniola*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Carlſtat*, on the River [illegible] about twenty Miles to the Southward of the *Save*: it is the Capital of the Imperial *Croatia*, and being a frontier Town it is tolerably well fortify'd. 2. *Siſeg*, upon the *Save*, about thirty-five Miles to the Eaſtward of *Carlſtat*. 3. *Caſtanowitz*, near the River *Una*, about thirty Miles to the Weſtward of *Gradiſca*. Theſe are ſubject to the Emperor.

Chief Towns.

There are two material Places ſubject to the *Turk*, *viz.* 1. *Dubiez*, on the Eaſt Side of the River *Una*, and therefore in the *Turkiſh* Dominions, that River being the Boundary. 2. *Whitz*, on the ſame River *Una*, about fifty Miles to the Southward of *Carlſtat*, and forty from *Dubiez*.

Croatia produces plenty of good Wine and Oil where it is cultivated, but labours under the melancholy Fate of moſt of the other frontier Provinces againſt the *Turks*, they not being willing to propagate the Growth of any more than what is abſolutely neceſſary for their own Subſiſtence, leſt the Overplus ſhould ſerve for Plunder, and redound to the Advantage of their Enemies.

Stature.

The Natives are of a good Stature, and hardy Soldiers; for which they are ſo much noted, that the *German* Princes commonly have their Guards compos'd of *Croatians*, call'd by them *Croatz*, or *Krabatz*.

Morlachia, which is a long narrow Province, lying between *Croatia* and the Gulph of *Venice*, was and is ſtill by ſome, look'd upon as a Part of *Croatia*; but as they not only bear two diſtinct Names, but are alſo ſubject to different Maſters, the *Turks* and the *Venetians*, one being Heathens and the other Chriſtians, I find no Opportunity to unite the two Places under one Name, but ſhall rather defer ſpeaking of *Morlachia* till I come to ſpeak of the *Venetian* Territories.

Of SCLAVONIA.

THE antient *Sclavonia* contain'd many large Countries, extending from the Gulph of *Venice* almoſt to the *Black Sea*; and its Language ſo extenſive, not to ſay univerſal, that it is ſtill ſpoke in many Kingdoms in *Europe*.

But the modern *Sclavonia*, of which we are now to ſpeak, is bounded by the River *Drave* on the North, and *Danube* on the Eaſt, by both which it is ſeparated from *Hungary*; the River *Save* ſeparates it from *Servia* and *Boſnia* on the South, and *Stiria* is its Weſtern Boundary; it is about two hundred Miles in Length, and fifty or ſixty broad.

It is a level Country, and has a fine Air; it is exceedingly well water'd, eſpecially by the above-mention'd

mention'd Rivers with which it is almoſt encompas'd; namely the *Drave*, the *Danube*, and the *Save*, with many other Streams of leſs Note; which might be ſuppos'd to contribute very much to the Fruitfulneſs of the Country, if its Contiguity to an Enemy's Country did not diſcourage the Improvement of the Soil.

Chief Towns.

THEIR chief Towns (which are now under the Emperor's Dominions) are, 1. *Poſega*, the Capital of the Province; it ſtands upon the River *Oriana*, fifteen Miles North of the *Save*, and about an hundred and twenty Miles to the Weſtward of *Belgrade*: It contains about a thouſand Houſes, is a Place of good Trade, and has about four hundred Villages under its Juriſdiction. 2. *Walpo*, on the River *Walpo*, thirty five Miles North East of *Poſega*. 3. *Eſſeck*, chiefly famous for its Bridge, ſpoke of before in the Deſcription of *Hungary*. 4. *Walcowar*, about twenty Miles to the Southward of *Eſſeck*. 5. *Ilock*, ten Miles South East from *Walcowar*. 6. *Peterwaradin*, upon the South Bank of the *Danube*, between forty and fifty Miles below *Eſſeck*; it is a ſtrong Town, and was the Frontier of the *Turks*, after the taking of *Buda*; but now that, and the whole Province, is ſubject to the Emperor. 7. *Salankamen*, fifteen Miles to the Eaſtward of *Peterwaradin*, remarkable only for the Victory obtain'd by Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* over the *Turks*, *Anno* 1691. 8. *Carlowitz*, a little to the Northward of *Peterwaradin*, remarkable for the Treaty of *Carlowitz*; in which the Peace was concluded in the Year 1699, between the Emperor and the *Turks*. 9. *Semlin*, about the Middle, between *Salankamen* and *Belgrade*. 10. *Alt-Sirmium*, the Capital of a County of that Name; it was a Biſhop's See, but now reduc'd to a Village: It is about ſixty Miles to the Weſtward of *Belgrade*. 11. *Agram*, near the River *Save*, about an hundred Miles to the Weſtward; it is a Biſhop's See, and Capital of a County. Laſtly, *Gradiſka*, a ſtrong Town near the *Save*, about fifteen Miles to the Weſtward of *Poſega*.

Perſons. Husbandry.

THE *Sclavonians* are ſtrong, hale Perſons, and fit for Labour: The Soil is good, the navigable Rivers are fit for Trade; but the fatal Diſadvantages that it participates of in common with the other Frontier Towns, between the *Turks* and *Chriſtians*, make them very ſparing of the Labour of Cultivation; leſt the Enemy ſhould not only plunder them of the Fruits of their Labour, but fight them with their own Weapons into the Bargain.

THE Roman Catholick is the eſtabliſh'd Religion here, it being a Province under the Dominion of the Emperor; there were formerly, and not long ſince, abundance of *Greeks*, as well as *Roman* or Popiſh Chriſtians; but the *Romans* now having the Aſcendant, compel the other Chriſtians to come into their Communion; though indeed, ſome of them not willing to proſtitute their Conſciences to thoſe Superſtitions, fly for Refuge, and are diſpers'd, ſome of them into *Turky* itſelf, where they find better Quarters, and more tender Uſage than they did among their own Popiſh Brethren from whom they fled.

ALL the *Mahometans* have abandon'd this Country except ſome few, who embrac'd Chriſtianity for temporal Intereſt; for no *Mahometan*, while he remains ſuch, is allow'd to reſide in a Chriſtian Country; but moſt of the *Grand Seignior's* Subjects in *Europe* are *Greek* Chriſtians, and they are tolerated in the free Exerciſe of their Religion.

A DESCRIPTION OF BOHEMIA,

Including

Silesia and *Moravia*.

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation and Extent of Bohemia; *also of the Air, Mountains, and Rivers; as also of its Provinces, chief Towns, &c.*

AS the Provinces of *Silesia* and *Moravia* are incorporated with *Bohemia*, and do not contain a vast Space of Ground, and their Government, Religion, Language, &c. being much the same, I shall include them all in the following Description; but as for *Lusatia*, tho' it was formerly reckon'd a Part of *Bohemia*, yet having been transferr'd, by the Emperor *Ferdinand* II. to the Elector of *Saxony*, it shall be treated of as a Part of the Emperor's Dominions.

THE Name of *Bohemia* is deriv'd from *Bemi*, or *Boiemi*, the Name of the antient Inhabitants; who, as *Tacitus* affirms, defcended from the *Boii*, a *Gallick* Nation, that retir'd into the *Hycanian* Forest, which runs through this Country, to avoid the *Roman* Slavery.

Bohemia, according to its prefent Situation and Extent, is bounded on the North by *Saxony* and *Lusatia*, on the East by *Hungary* and *Poland*, by *Austria* and *Bavaria* on the South, and on the West by the Electorate of *Saxony* and Palatinate of *Bavaria*. It extends from about forty-eight to fifty-two Degrees North Latitude, and about Longitude fifteen Degrees East from *London*.

THE Air of this Country is generally colder than nearer the Sea Coast, and yet not very healthy, by reason of the Woods and Mountains which abound here and check the Wind in its Course; and to that we may add, that the Waters are very bad and corrupt, and contribute very much to the Healthiness of the Climate. The Country is most mountainous in the South and East Parts thereof; there are large Mountains in *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, but the North and West Parts are more plain and champaign Ground.

THE Rivers *Elbe* and *Muldaw* rise in *Bohemia Proper*, and running Northwards meet near *Prague*, and then the united Stream is call'd the *Elbe*, which continuing its Course through *Saxony*, washes the Walls of *Hamburgh*, and falls into the *German Ocean*, a little below *Gluckstadt*. The *Oder* rises in the Mountains in the South Part of the Province of *Silesia*, and running along by *Poland*, *Brandenburgh*, and *Pomerania*, it falls into the *Baltick*, to the Eastward of the Island of *Rugen*. The *Weisel*, or *Vistula*, rises in the same Mountains, and runs first to the Eastward, passing by *Cracow* in *Poland*, and from thence to *Warsaw* and *Thorn*, and falls into the *Baltick Sea*, at *Dantzick*. The River *Moraw* rises in the Mountains which separate *Silesia* from *Moravia*, and running to the Southward, quite through the Province of *Moravia*, falls into the *Danube* near *Presburg*. The *Teya*, or *Tey*, runs East through the South Part of *Moravia*, and falls into the *Moraw*. There are divers other small Rivers in this Province, but not being of any Note, they are not worth a Description.

Bohemia is divided into 1. *Bohemia Proper*, 2. *Silesia*, and 3. *Moravia*.

Bohemia Proper is bounded on the North by *Lusatia*, by *Silesia* and *Moravia* on the East, on the South by *Austria*, and on the West by *Misnia* and *Bavaria*; it was formerly reckon'd a Part of the *Hycanian Forest*, it being a mountainous and (then) woody Country; but now the Woods disappear, as having been converted into Towns and Villages, of which the Number is so great, that not so much as the Remains of a Forest is to be seen.

Prague.

The Capital of the Province, and indeed of the whole Kingdom, is *Prague*, which stands upon the River *Muldaw*, about a hundred and forty Miles North-West of *Vienna*, and seventy South of *Dresden*. It is an Archbishoprick, and is said to have been one of the greatest Universities in *Europe*. It is reported that, in the Time of *John Huss*, who attempted a Reformation from the Errors of the Church of *Rome*, not much less than a hundred Years before *Martin Luther* appear'd in publick, the University of *Prague* had forty thousand Students. The Number seems incredible, if we did not likewise consider that the City is one of

the largeſt in this Part of the World. It is compos'd of three Towns, *viz. Old Prague*, *New Prague*, and the leſſer *Prague*: *Old Prague* ſtands on the Eaſt Side of the River *Muldaw*; it is the Univerſity, and the moſt populous Town of the three. In this Town are alſo ſeveral Monaſteries, and a College of Jeſuits. The New Town encompaſſes the former, and is ſeparated from it only by a Moat; it is fortify'd, and has a Citadel; but ſo large that it would require a whole Army for a Gariſon; and without that, it would be the weaker, by being ſo large. The leſſer Town, is on the Weſt Side of the River *Muldaw*, over which there is a pleaſant Stone-Bridge for Communication, between the leſſer Town and the other two. Here is a magnificent Caſtle and Palace, formerly the Reſidence of the *Bohemian* Kings: As alſo here ſtands Saint *Veit*'s Cathedral, and the Houſes of the Nobility; among which is that of Count *Wallſtein*, afterwards Duke of *Friedland*, and General to the Emperor *Ferdinand* II, which is moſt admired. It is a very magnificent Building, erected upon the Ruins of above an hundred Houſes, which were pull'd down to make room for it, and to furniſh Materials to help in the building of it. There is a fine Aviary, Gardens, and Stables, with a Marble Pillar between each Horſe; and to every Stall is a Marble Manger and a Steel Rack; and over it, the Name of the Horſe that ſtands in it, with a Picture as large as the Life. There is a Suburb call'd the *Jews* Town, where great Numbers of that Sort of People inhabit; and as in other Parts of the World live by trucking and chaffering, dealing in Jewels and precious Stones; as Topazes, and Stones dug out of the *Bohemian* Mines, or other Things in which the Ignorant may be moſt eaſily impos'd upon.

Dr. *Brown* tells us, that *Prague* is much larger than *Florence*; the Streets larger, the Windows of fine Glaſs, which makes a better Appearance than the ragged Paper-windows of *Florence*: It ſtands alſo upon a nobler River than the *Arno*, upon which *Florence* ſtands; and the one Bridge at *Prague* exceeds all the four Bridges over the *Arno*. Nor does *Florence* exceed *Prague* in any Thing remarkable, except the Cathedral, built of black and white Marble, the Chapel of St. *Laurence*, and the Great Duke's Gallery and the Rarities therein.

Prague is alſo memorable for the famous Battle fought upon the *White Hill* near it, in the Year 1620, between the Emperor's Forces, under the Command of the Duke of *Bavaria*, and the Elector *Palatine*'s Troops, the Head of the Proteſtant League; but the Elector's Army being defeated, the Proteſtant Intereſt in *Germany* ſuffer'd with it, and the Elector loſt both the Kingdom of *Bohemia* and the Palatinate.

But 2dly, another great Town is *Egra*, about fourſcore Miles to the Weſtward of *Prague*; it ſtands on the River *Eger*. There is a brackiſh Fountain near it, which cures Diſtempers of the Eyes and Ears by purging. 3. *Koningratz*, on the *Elbe*, fifty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Prague*; it is a Biſhop's See in the Archbiſhoprick of *Prague*. 4. *Glatz*, the Capital of a very rich Diſtrict; it is ſituate on the Foot of the Hills which divide *Bohemia* from *Sileſia*; it is about a hundred Miles Eaſt from *Prague*.

The Province of *Sileſia* is bounded on the North by *Brandenburgh*, on the Eaſt by *Poland*, on the South by the Mountains of *Reſſenbergen*, which ſeparate it from *Moravia*, and on the Weſt by *Bohemia*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Breſlaw*, the Capital of the Dutchy of *Breſlaw*, and of all *Sileſia*; it is ſituate on the River *Oder*, about a hundred and twenty Miles North-Eaſt of *Prague*; it is a handſome ſtrong City, a Biſhop's See, and an Univerſity, and govern'd by its own Magiſtrates. 2. *Croſſen*, the Capital of a Dutchy, on the *Oder* near *Brandenburg*; it was mortgag'd ſeveral Times to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and at laſt, not being redeem'd, was wholly confirm'd to him, and he now remains Sovereign of it. 3. *Glogaw*, the Capital of the Dutchy of *Glogaw*, ſituate upon the *Oder*, forty Miles South-Eaſt of *Croſſen*. 4. *Liguitz*, Capital of a Dutchy of the ſame Name, about thirty-ſix Miles to the Weſtward of *Breſlaw*. 5. *Jagendorf*, on the River *Oppa*, near *Moravia*, and Capital of the Dutchy of *Jagendorf*.

Proviſ. of Sileſia.

Moravia is a Marquiſate, and bounded on the North and Eaſt by *Sileſia*; on the South by *Auſtria*, and on the Weſt by *Bohemia*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Olmutz*, Capital of the Province; it ſtands on the River *Moravia*; it is the only Biſhop's See in the Province, and a Town of good Trade. 2. *Brin*, a ſtrong Town at the Confluence of two ſmall Rivers, about ſixty Miles to the Northward of *Vienna*. 3. *Iglaw*, on a River of the ſame Name, about forty Miles to the Weſtward of *Brin*, near the Mountains which ſeparate *Moravia* from *Sileſia*; it is a large ſtrong Town, and lies on the Road from *Hungary* to *Bohemia*.

Provinces of Moravia.

CHAP. II.

Treats of the Perſons and Habits of the Bohemians; *as alſo of their Genius and Temper; their Buildings, Way of Travelling, and the Nature of the Soil; with the Plants, Animals, and Minerals the Country produces; and the Trade and Manufactures carried on there.*

Perſons.

THE *Bohemians*, like their neighbouring *Germans*, are generally both tall and corpulent, which with a hale ſtrong Conſtitution and Complexion muſt needs contribute to make a ſtrong Man.

Habit.

As to their Habit, they are fond of every new foreign Faſhion, but chiefly the *French*. This Country is the Firſt that voluntarily quitted the Eaſtern *Aſiatick* Habits, of Veſts and long Gowns, and cloath'd themſelves in ſhort Coats, Breeches, and Stockings, as with us; the Women alſo have left off their Drawers and Breeches, the Faſhion of the Eaſtern Ladies, and conform to the *French* Dreſs, except thoſe who live near the Confines of *Poland*, and wear the ſame Sort of Habit. The *Ruſſians* did indeed conform to our Dreſs, but neither ſo ſoon as the *Bohemians*, nor *voluntarily*, but when the late Czar compell'd them to it.

As to the Genius and Temper of the *Bohemians*, the Quality are naturally brave, more inclin'd to

Genius and Temper.

Arms per

Arms than Arts, and of an open generous Converſation; but obſerve this was ſpoke of the *Quality*, who have had Education, and convers'd with the better Part of Mankind; for the Boors, or vulgar People, who aſpire to no higher Converſation than that of one of themſelves with another, are a very brutiſh People, addicted to thieving and pilfering; and if we conſult all Authors, of whatſoever Sentiments in other Reſpects, we ſhall find they all charge this whole Nation with Exceſs and Intemperance, both in Eating and Drinking; and a ſuperſtitious Credulity reigns every where amonſt them; for let one tell a Story of Witches, Dæmons. Spectres, Apparitions, *&c.* they are all ſure to believe it; and eſpecially with reſpect to the Mines, thoſe darkſome Cells and fit Habitations for infernal Beings, there not being one of them (if you will believe the vulgar Inhabitants) but what is a Rendezvous for that infernal Society, or ſome ſelect Members of that Fraternity.

Buildings. THE Palaces of the Noblemen are generally modell'd after the *Italian* Manner, the Materials for them and their Churches, and other publick Buildings, being generally of Stone; but as for the Peaſants Houſes they are for the moſt Part built of Wood, and make but a mean Appearance. Their Way of Travelling differs not much from ours, either uſing Coaches, or Horſes, or walking on Foot; but their Roads are not very agreeable, the Mountains being incommodious for travelling, eſpecially with Wheel-Carriages, and the low Grounds are all under Water in the Winter-time; but in this they more reſemble *Holland* than *England*, for in the Winter they uſe Sledges or Skates upon the Ice, either for Buſineſs or Diverſion.

Soil. THE Hills and Mountains, which take up the greateſt Part of the Country, are generally rocky and barren, but the Vallies produce Corn and Wine, but not enough to ſupply themſelves, much leſs for Exportation, for they are forc'd to have additional Supplies from *Hungary*. What Wine *Bohemia* affords is tollerably good for preſent ſpending, but it will ſoon turn ſour. However, to make amends, the Soil produces good Barley and Hops, that they make great Quantities of good ſtrong Beer, both for their own Uſe and for Exportation. Their Soil is proper for Flax, and their Sheep afford a coarſe Sort of Wool; that they can make their own Cloaths, both Linen and Woolen, and export ſome Flax and Wool unwrought to other Places. There is a good Sort of Saffron grows here; and their Foreſts abound with good Timber, as their Gardens do with Fruit-Trees of ſeveral Sorts, and Herbs, Roots, *&c.*

Mines. THEIR Mines are what is moſt valuable to them, wherein they dig up Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, and Lead; and in ſome of their Mountains are found precious Stones, as Topazes, Carbuncles, Amethyſts, Jaſper, Saphires, *&c.* which are bought up by the *Jews*, to ſend abroad. There are at *Guttemburgh*, about twelve Miles from *Prague*, thirty Mines, accounting Silver and Copper together, which have been wrought this ſeven or eight hundred Years; but ſo poor, that a hundred Weight of Silver Ore does not produce above an Ounce of Silver; and a hundred Weight of Copper Ore does not produce above eight or nine Ounces of Copper. Their Tin Mines are of the beſt Advantage to them; this Commodity though ſo uſeful, yet is ſcarce to be met with any where but in *England*, and the Mines in *Bohemia* were firſt diſcover'd by an *Engliſhman*. They have Sulpher and Saltpetre; but ſo little common Salt of their own Product that they are forc'd to import it.

Cattle. THEY have good Meadow and Paſture Ground, and accordingly abound in Oxen, Sheep, and other Cattle, eſpecially in large Horſes. As for tame and wild Animals they are much the ſame as in *England*.

Manufactures. THE Country affords both Linen and Woolen, as was obſerv'd before, but theſe Manufactures do not ſeem to arrive at any great Perfection. They make very good Glaſs; and their Manufactures of Copper, Iron, and Tin, are not amiſs, but worth exporting; as they do alſo precious Stones and ſtrong Beer, but it is in ſuch ſmall Quantities, that their foreign Trade is very inconſiderable.

CHAP. III.

An Abſtract of the antient and modern Hiſtory of Bohemia, *the Succeſſion of their Princes, and the Conſtitution of their Government.*

ALTHOUGH *Bohemia* is look'd upon as a Part of *Germany*, yet as it is one of the Emperor's Hereditary Countries, and excluded from the Privileges which other Circles and Electorates enjoy, (except that the being King of *Bohemia* entitles the Emperor to a Voice in the Election of the King of the *Romans*,) it is proper to treat of it (with *Sileſia* and *Moravia*) as a diſtinct Province from *Germany* in Point of Government; and the rather, becauſe neither the Laws of the Empire are of any Force here, nor are the *Bohemians* obliged to raiſe Forces, or pay Taxes for the Defence of the Empire, as the other Circles are, but are only ſubject to the Emperor as their own Prince, the Prince of *Auſtria*, and not as Emperor of *Germany*.

THE *Sorbians* are commonly ſaid to have been the firſt that ever inhabited *Bohemia*, tho' as before obſerv'd, the *Boemi*, or *Boii*, a *Gallick* Nation, coming after them, gave Name to it. It was firſt divided into ſeveral Principalities, govern'd by their reſpective Dukes, or Heads, till *Zechus* obtain'd a Sort of a Sovereignty over the whole. This *Zechus* was Brother to *Lechus* the firſt King of *Poland*, as that Hiſtory furniſheth with an Account of. [*See the Deſcription of* Poland, *Chap.* IV. *Page* 357;] *Lechus* began to reign in *Poland* about the Year 550. This *Zechus*, tho' Chief of all the reſt, was ſtill but ſtil'd Great Duke of *Bohemia*, all the reſt governing their own Provinces, but acknowledging *Zechus* for their Chief, or Captain General; for the Natives being generally Shepherds and Graſiers before that Time, and *Zechus* teaching them Husbandry, and ſo much of Architecture as to be able to build themſelves little Houſes, which they liked much better than the Tents they formerly uſed, and he being Brother to the King of *Poland*, theſe Inducements prevail'd upon them to elect him their Sovereign.

THE

THE next *Bohemian* Sovereign was *Cracus*, suppos'd to be the same that was King of *Poland*, [*See the Chapter and Page before quoted,*] and this is the more probable, because *Cracus* King of *Bohemia* began his Reign in the Year 700, as did also *Cracus* King of *Poland*; but how the Time was fill'd from the Time of *Lechus* of *Poland*, and *Zechus* of *Bohemia*, (who began *Anno* 550,) till the Year 700, *viz.* 150 Years, History does not mention; but it must be in Contests, Inter-regnums, *&c.* for these two Dukes could not reign so many Years, nor have we so much as the Name of any of their Successors, till *Cracus* above-mention'd; and after his Death succeeded,

Libussa, the youngest Daughter of *Cracus*; but the People, not satisfied with a female Ruler, were about to depose her; but she not willing to quit the Government, pretended to them that Heaven directed her to cause a Horse to be turn'd loose, and at whose Door soever he should stop first, the Man of that House should marry her, and be Partner with her in the Government; which being agreed to, and done, the Horse stopp'd at the Door of one *Primislaus*, a poor Man, who was accordingly married to her, and succeeded her solely in the Government after her Death, and was reckon'd the fourth Ducal Sovereign, reckoning, as above, 1. *Zechus*, 2. *Cracus*, 3. *Libussa*, and 4. *Primislaus*; and I may proceed to 5. *Nimislaus*, the Son of *Primislaus*, 6. *Mnatha*, his Son, and 7. *Vogenius*, or *Vortius*, 8. *Wenceslaus*, 9. *Czecoslaus*, Brother of *Wenceslaus*, 10. *Belam*, Son of *Czecoslaus*. These Ten have little remark'd of them in History, but their Names; but after them succeeded,

11. *Borsivoius*, the first Christian Prince of *Bohemia*; he was the Son of *Belam*, and being advanc'd to the Government *Anno* 856, and continuing in his Heathen Principles thirty-eight Years, he was converted in the Year 894, which occasion'd an (almost) fatal Insurrection in his Dominions; but he bravely withstood and subdu'd his rebellious Subjects, reducing all in general to Obedience, and so many to Christianity, that he liv'd to see that the prevailing Religion in most of his *Bohemian* Provinces.

12. *Spitigneus*, the Son of *Borsivoius*, succeeded *Anno* 904, and after him,

13. *Uladislaus*, Son of *Spitigneus*, *Anno* 906; but he was murder'd, and succeeded by his Brother,

14. *Boleslaus*, in the Year 938; he persecuted his own Christian Subjects, and endeavor'd to restore Paganism; whereupon the Emperor *Otho the Great* invaded his Dominions, and after a War of fourteen Years, brought him to be tributary to him, oblig'd him to do publick Penance for his Apostacy, and to restore Christianity to his own Dominions of *Bohemia*; he was succeeded by,

15. *Boleslaus* II. *Anno* 967, and he by his Son,

16 *Boleslaus* III. *Anno* 999, and he by his Son,

17. *Jaromir*, in the Year 1012.

18. *Ulrick*, the Brother of *Boleslaus*, and Uncle of *Jaromir*, rais'd a Rebellion against his Nephew, and overcoming him, he put out his Eyes, and ascended the Throne himself *Anno* 1035.

19. *Bretislaus*, the Son of *Ulrick*, succeeded in the Year 1037.

20. *Spitigneus* II. succeeded in the Year 1055; he was the last Duke of *Bohemia*; he was succeeded by *Uladislaus* II. but he being created King of *Bohemia* at *Mentz*, by the Emperor *Henry* IV. I shall put him at the Head of the Race of the *Bohemian* Kings.

Kings of BOHEMIA.

1. *Uladislaus* II. began *Anno* 1061, but he only succeeded as Duke, and was not created King; till the Year 1086, and was succeeded by,

2. *Conrade*, the Brother of *Uladislaus*, who came to the Crown in the Year 1092, and was succeeded by

3. *Brezetislaus*, Son of *Uladislaus* II. *Anno* 1099. and after him

4. *Borzivoius*, Brother of of *Brezetislaus*, *Anno* 1100, but he was imposed upon them by the Emperor, against their Consent; and they twice dethron'd him and drove him into *Germany*, and

5. *Sulapulcus*, the Nephew of *Borzivoius*, usurp'd the Throne, *Anno* 1107; and being assisted with Money by the *Bohemian* Dukes, he purchased to himself the Confirmation or Investiture of the Emperor.

6. *Otho* came next to the Throne, but was deposed by Reason of his Incapacity to govern.

7. *Uladislaus* III. (if we include *Uladislaus* Duke of *Bohemia*, but the second King of *Bohemia* of that Name) he was Brother to *Borzivoius*, and succeeded *Otho* in the Year 1111.

8. *Sobislaus*, the Brother of *Uladislaus*, came to the Crown *Anno* 1125.

9. *Uladislaus* III. succeeded about the Year 1153. The Emperor appointed him King of *Bohemia*, and also made him Vice-gerent of the Empire during his Absence in *Italy*, and gave him the Command of the Armies.

10. *Sobieslaus* II. Son of *Sobislaus* I. succeeded in the Year 1174; and after him

11. *Frederick*, the Son of *Uladislaus*, was appointed by the Emperor to reign over *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1178; and after him

12. *Conrade* II. succeeded in the Year 1190. he was Cousin to *Frederick*, and assumed the Throne by the Emperor's Appointment; as did

13. *Wenceslaus*, the Brother of *Conrade*, and Son of *Sobieslaus*, *Anno* 1192. but he reign'd but one Year; and after him came

14. *Bretislaus*, or *Henry*, Bishop of *Prague*, *Anno* 1193. he was succeeded by

15. *Uladislaus* IV. Son of *Uladislaus* III, *Anno* 1196. but before he had reign'd a Year he resign'd to his Brother

16. *Primislaus*, in the same Year 1196. He was succeeded by

17. *Ottocarus*, who usurp'd the Throne, which was the Right of his Brother *Wenceslaus*, *Anno* 1231. but he was kill'd in a Battle with the Emperor *Rodolphus*; and then

18. *Wenceslaus* II. came to his Right in the same Year 1231; and after him

19. *Ottocarus* II. the Son of *Wenceslaus*, sometimes call'd *Primislaus* III. he began *Anno* 1253, he maintain'd a continual War with the Emperor *Rodolph*, and with such Success, that he made himself Master of all the Countries between the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulph of *Venice*, and the *Baltick*, but was at last kill'd near *Marchfelt*, in a Battle with the Emperor.

20. *Wenceslaus* III. then succeeded, *Anno* 1278. but being afterward elected King of *Poland*, his Brother-in-Law,

21. *Henry* Duke of *Carinthia*, was elected King by the Barons of *Bohemia*; but the Emperor deposed him and set up his Son

22. *Rodolph*, *Anno* 1306. and he dying, the Emperor appointed his Son

23. *John* of *Luxemburgh* to be King of *Bohemia*, in the Year 1307.

24. *Charles*, the Son of the above-named *John*, and Emperor of *Germany*, succeeded to the Throne of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1364; he was succeeded by his Son

25. *Wenceslaus* IV. *Anno* 1378. who was afterwards elected Emperor.

26. *Sigismond* was next King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1418. *John Huss*, and *Jerome* of *Prague*, were in his

his Time, of which more when we come to treat of their Religion.

27. *Albert*, Duke of *Auſtria*, was next King of *Bohemia*, and afterwards elected Emperor of *Germany* and King of *Hungary*; he began *Anno* 1436; he was oppoſed by the *Huſſites* and the *Bohemian* Nobility; but he not only reduced them, but depriv'd them of the Privilege of chuſing their own Kings, though indeed the Emperor of *Germany* had in a great Meaſure claim'd that Power before.

28. *Uladiſlaus* V. was the next King of *Bohemia An.* 1439. though an Infant of but five Years of Age.

29. *George Podebrach* was next King of *Bohemia Anno* 1471. but being a *Huſſite*, a Party was form'd againſt him, and created him a troubleſome Reign; at the End of which

30. *Uladiſlaus* VI. mounted the Throne *Anno* 1471. and after him his Son

31. *Liwes* 1516. was elected by the Influence of the Emperor *Maximilian*; he was alſo elected King of *Hungary* (See No. 36. of the Kings of *Hungary*, where he is called *Lodowick.*) he was killed in a Battle with the *Turks.*

32. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, and Brother to *Charles* V. Emperor of *Germany*, was next elected King of *Bohemia Anno* 1526, and Emperor of *Germany Anno* 1556, when *Charles* V. reſigned; and then

33, *Maximilian*, King of the *Romans*, was elected King of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, *Anno* 1562. and Emperor of *Germany Anno* 1564. he tolerated the Proteſtants, and was therefore call'd the *Lutheran* Emperor.

34. *Rodolph* II. King of the *Romans* and *Hungary*, was elected King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1575. and afterwards Emperor of *Germany*, *Anno* 1609. In his Reign the Proteſtants of *Germany* form'd a Confederacy, call'd the *Union*, or the *Evangelical League*, of which they choſe *Frederick*, Elector *Palatine*, for their Head. The Proteſtants of *Bohemia* alſo join'd them, pretending they were oppreſs'd by the Emperor, and call'd in his Brother *Matthias* to their Party, and prevail'd ſo far as to oblige the Emperor to reſign the Crown of *Bohemia* to his ſaid Brother *Matthias*, and he was crowned King of *Bohemia Anno* 1611. and elected Emperor upon the Death of *Rodolph*, *Anno* 1612. when *Matthias* was Emperor, *viz.* in the Year 1616. he declar'd

35. *Ferdinand*, his Couſin, King of *Bohemia*, and caus'd him to be crown'd, but with this Reſtriction that he ſhould not execute any regal Act, during the Emperor's Life-time, without his Conſent.

The Emperor *Matthias* kept his Court at *Vienna*, and *Ferdinand* kept his Court at *Gratz* in *Stiria*: The Government of *Bohemia* being moſtly entruſted with the Privy Council, who being generally *Roman* Catholicks, they, at the Inſtigation of the Archbiſhop of *Prague*, gave the Proteſtants in *Bohemia* great Uneaſineſs; whereupon the Proteſtant Nobility aſſembled at *Prague*, to ſeek Redreſs for their Grievances; and at the ſame Time levying Forces in their own Defence. The Government, apprehenſive of an Inſurrection, deputed ſome of the Imperial Miniſters to the Proteſtant Nobility, to endeavour to pacify them; but it was ſo far from that, that hot Words aroſe on both Sides, and the Proteſtants threw the Emperor's Chief Juſtice out at the Window two Story high; and after him one of the Council of State, and a Secretary of the Emperor's: And though they afterwards reflected upon this raſh Action with ſome Regret, yet they continued to levy Horſe and Foot in their own Defence; and as one Step to the propos'd Quietneſs, they endeavour'd to expell all the Jeſuits out of the City of *Prague*; at which the Emperor (being a *Roman* Catholick) was further exaſperated, and both Sides took to the Field, and great Hoſtilities were acted between the Imperial Forces on one Side, and the Proteſtants on the other; but in theſe tumultuous Times the Emperor *Matthias* died: And he was ſucceeded by

Ferdinand II. as King of *Bohemia*, who was afterwards elected Emperor of *Germany*.

But the *Bohemian* Barons ſent privately to offer the Crown of *Bohemia* to *Frederick* V. Elector *Palatine*, the Head of the Proteſtant Union abovementioned, notwithanding that they had acknowledged *Ferdinand* in the Emperor *Matthias*'s Life-time. This *Frederick* V. had married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *James* I. King of *England*, and was crowned King of *Bohemia*, *Nov.* 4. 1619. unknown to his Father-in-Law King *James* I. But immediately he ſent a Compliment to King *James* to excuſe his acceping of the Crown of *Bohemia*, and to deſire his Aſſiſtance; and acquainted him that his Caſe would not admit of Deliberation: But King *James* reſented the Liberty that the *Bohemian* Subjects had taken, in dethroning one King and ſetting up another at their Pleaſure, and did not at all encourage his Son-in-Law in that Practice,

On the other Hand, the Emperor, at the ſame Time, to terrify the *Palatine* and his Adherents, publiſh'd a Preſcription againſt them, declaring, *That* Frederick, *Count* Palatine *of the Rhine, having made himſelf the Head of a perfidious Crew in the Kingdom of* Bohemia, *was guilty of High-Treaſon, and therefore requires all People to forſake him, diſcharges his Subjects and Vaſſals in the* Palatinate *from their Allegiance to him; and commanding them that they give neither Aid nor Aſſiſtance to him, under the moſt ſevere Penalties.*

In the mean Time the Emperor's Forces fell upon the *Palatinate*, ravaging the Country in a moſt dreadful Manner, while the Evangelical League, under *Frederick* V. endeavour'd to defend it; in order to which, King *James* ſent a Regiment of *Engliſh* Gentlemen Volunteers to join them, but too late; for on the 8th of *Nov.* 1620. the Emperor's Forces entirely defeated them, and drove the new elected King *Frederick* and his Queen *Elizabeth* out of *Bohemia*, who fled to *Sileſia*, and thence to *Holland*, by which Means he loſt to the Kingdom of *Bohemia* and his own whole *Palatinate*; and the Emperor, as a Reward for *Maximilian*'s Services in this War, made him Elector *Palatine* of the Rhine, in the Room of *Frederick* V. And to that he alſo added the *Upper Palatinate*, which when the Emperor had done, and executed great Numbers of the Male-Contents of *Bohemia*, he reſtor'd the Government of that Kingdom again, and the Imperial Family have ever ſince deny'd the *Bohemian* Nobility any Share in the Election of their own Princes, claiming *Bohemia* as one of their Hereditary Dominions.—But to continue the Succeſſion,

Ferdinand III. ſucceeded his Father *Ferdinand* II. in the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, and in the Empire of *Germany*, in both which he was ſucceeded by

Leopold, the Son of *Ferdinand* III. *Anno* 1656. and after him

Joſeph, Son of *Leopold*, ſucceeded to the Crown of *Bohemia*, and to the Empire, *Anno* 1705. and next after him was,

Lastly, *Charles*, the preſent Emperor of *Germany*, and King of *Bohemia*, who began his Reign in the Year 1711.

These laſt Princes, who were Emperors of *Germany*, as well as Kings of *Bohemia*, will fall more particularly under our Conſideration, when we come to treat of *Germany*, what has been ſaid relating to them as Kings of *Bohemia* only.

Sileſia. *Sileſia* has been ſubject to the Empire and *Poland* alternately, the ſtrongeſt Party always carrying it; but it was at length confirm'd by Treaty to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, and is, as before obſerv'd, accounted a Part of the Kingdom of *Bohemia*.

Moravia. *Moravia* was one of the moſt Potent Kingdoms in Europe; *Poland*, *Bohemia*, and *Sileſia*, being all ſubject to it; but their King *Zuantapoc*, about the Year 700. refuſing to pay Tribute to the *Roman* Empire, was ſubdu'd, and *Bohemia*, *Sileſia*, and *Moravia*, were made Provinces of the Empire, and are now ſubject to the Crown of *Bohemia*, except ſome Principalities in *Moravia*, which yet belong to the Crown of *Poland*.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Language and Religion of the Bohemians.

Language. THE *Bohemian* Language is (like that of the *Poles*) a Dialect of the antient *Sclavonian*, a ſmooth copious Language, and ſo ſweet, that their antient Laws required the true Pronunciation and Orthography of it to be ſtrictly obſerv'd, which was very difficult, becauſe they had no other Letters but the Runick Characters, which made a very imperfect Alphabet; but when *Germany* and *Bohemia* became in ſome Meaſure incorporated, the *Roman* Letters were introduc'd, and the Language more refin'd among the common People; but the Nobility, to diſtinguiſh themſelves, and affecting Novelty and foreign Faſhions, (perhaps becauſe the Poor cannot come ſo well at them) affect to ſpeak a ſort of a broken Gibberiſh, compos'd of *High Dutch* and other Foreign Languages, probably becauſe the common People ſhould not underſtand them, or at leaſt not be able to converſe with them but when they pleaſe.

Religion. THE antient *Pagan* Inhabitants of this Country ador'd their God *Pron*; the ſame with *Thor* among the *Saxons*, or *Jupiter* among the *Greek*; but they afterwards found out another Idol, namely, *Swanto Wit*; his chief Temple was at *Wollin* in *Pomerania*, then one of the largeſt Cities in *Europe*.

CHRISTIANITY was brought into *Bohemia* by *Methodius*, a *Greek* Prelate, about the Year 890, in the Reign of *Borſivoius*. (*See* Borſivoius *among the Dukes of* Bohemia) His being of the *Greek* Communion, was the Reaſon that the Pope's Supremacy was not acknowledg'd here till ſome conſiderable Time afterwards.

KING *Richard* II's Queen was a *Bohemian*, and ſome Scholars that attended her from thence to *England*, and convers'd with the Followers of Dr. *Wickliff*, imbib'd his Doctrine, and returning to *Bohemia*, communicated *Wickliff*'s Doctrine and Works to *John Huſs*, a Doctor of *Prague*: And this Doctrine further corroborated his Antipathy againſt the Church of *Rome*, and he, with *Jerome*, (a Doctor of the Univerſity of *Prague*, thence call'd *Jerome of Prague*) began to attempt a Reformation, and brought a great deal of the *Bohemian* Nation over to their Opinion: *John Huſs* and *Jerome* were hereupon ſummon'd by the Pope to the Council of *Conſtance*, in the Year 1414, but they refuſed to go except the Emperor would grant them his Paſsport for their Security; which being done, they endeavour'd to juſtify their Doctrine; but their Defence not being thought ſatisfactory, they were condemn'd as Hereticks, and Teachers of Heretical Seditions or ſcandalous Doctrine, compriz'd in thirty Articles. Their Sentence was to be firſt degraded, and then deliver'd to the ſecular Power to be burnt: They hearing the Sentence, *John Huſs* firſt appeal'd to God, and then reproach'd the Emperor with Breach of Faith, to which he gave little Anſwer; for though himſelf did not approve of the Sentence, yet being Prieſt-ridden by his Clergy, he thought himſelf even oblig'd to humour them. Being under Sentence of Death, *Jerome* retracted his Opinion to ſave his Life; but recanting his Recantation, he was afterwards condem'd, and then burnt at the ſame Stake where his Fellow Sufferer *John Huſs* had dy'd before him.

John Huſs and Jerome of Prague.

Their Sentence.

THIS diſhonourable Action of the Emperor in ſuffering theſe two Men to be executed, at the Inſtigation of the Popiſh Clergy, when he had upon Honour promiſed them his Protection, ſo exaſperated the reforming and reformed Part, that it ſoon cauſed an Inſurrection among the *Bohemians*; which *Wenceſlaus*, then King of *Bohemia*, thought to put an end to, by publiſhing a Proclamation, forbidding the *Huſſites* to aſſemble for Divine Service; but this only aggravated inſtead of redreſſing the Grievance, for the People roſe at *Prague*, and having forc'd the Town-Houſe, threw the Burgo-Maſters out at the Windows, with all who aſſiſted at the Proclamation, while the Multitude without receiv'd them upon Pikes and Halberts. They afterwards demoliſh'd many Churches and Monaſteries, which were as plenty in *Bohemia* as in any other Nation of its Bigneſs; and King *Wenceſlaus*, not being able to remedy it, he ſent to his Brother the Emperor *Sigiſmond* for Aſſiſtance; but the Emperor being then at War with the *Turks*, *Wenceſlaus* was glad to find an Aſylum any where elſe, and retired to a neighbouring Caſtle for his own Security.

KING *Wenceſlaus* dy'd in the Year 1419. and the Emperor *Sigiſmund* ſucceeded to the Crown of *Bohemia*; but the War with the *Turks* continuing, he was forc'd to ſubſtitute a Deputy King of *Bohemia*, which the *Bohemians* being incens'd at, the Party of the *Huſſites* gain'd Ground, and became more formidable than ever. *Ziſca*, their Leader, was a *Bohemian* Nobleman; he aſſembled an Army of Forty thouſand Men, took the City and Caſtle of *Prague*, and many ſtrong Fortreſſes; the Emperor, unable to make much Oppoſition, was glad to make it up with them, by accepting of a Ceſſation of Arms. The *Huſſites*, who had not yet forgot the Severity and diſhonourable Uſage that their two Patrons had met with by the Inſtigation of the Clergy, began now to return the Compliment in their own Coin, plundering them moſt unmercifully, and making the Churches and Altars ſuffer for the late Severity of the Clergy.

WHEN the Emperor ſaw the *Huſſites* thus abandon'd to Rapine and Plunder, he ſummon'd moſt of the Princes of the Empire to his Aſſiſtance, who ſupply'd him with a formidable Army, at the Head of which he march'd into *Bohemia* to ſuppreſs *Ziſca* and the *Huſſites*, of whom he was Head; but all in vain, for *Ziſca* repuls'd and expell'd him out of *Bohemia*, the Country ſtill remaining entirely at *Ziſca*'s Devotion.

It is observable that *Ziska* was so call'd, as having but one Eye, and having lost the other in an Engagement with the Imperialists, yet blind as he was, he afterwards defeated the Imperialists in many considerable Battles; but, though doubtless his Conduct was brave and great, yet where actually seeing was necessary, he saw with other Peoples Eyes, and form'd his Schemes according to the Advices given him by his other superior Officers; and in the Main, his Conduct blind as he was, was such, that the Emperor propos'd a Treaty with him, and offer'd him honourable Terms of Accommodation, which *Ziska* was willing to accept of, and was going to the Imperial Court to confirm it, but died of the Plague upon the Road in the Year 1427.

The Emperor finding his formidable Enemy *Ziska* dead, he renew'd the War against the *Bohemian Hussites*, but still in vain; for the *Hussites*, as long as they continu'd one Party, maintain'd their Ground: But being secure under their being so victorious, they began to crumble into a great many Sects and Parties; and by thus weakening themselves by their Divisions, they effected that which all the Imperial Forces could not do against them while united, *viz.* to make themselves an easy Prey to the Power of their Enemies.

But the fatal Consequence of those Divisions did not terminate here, for the next Dispute was between the Nobility and Commonalty, as to which of them should govern; and this Debate arose to a pitch'd Battle, in which the Nobility gain'd the Victory, and then sent to the Emperor to accept the Kingdom of *Bohemia*; which when the Emperor had done, he prevail'd upon the Barons to be reconciled to the Church of *Rome*; which being likewise settled, the Consequence was, that the common People of the *Hussites* were oblig'd either to quit their Religion or their Country, so that the Divisions of those once prevailing Protestants contributed not only to the introducing, but establishing of Popery, and that upon as firm a Foundation as ever; 'tis true, some of them, rather than conform to the Church of *Rome*, retir'd to the Woods and Mountains for Safety; but those who stood truest to the Reformation, were so divided among themselves, into *Hussites*, *Picards*, *Anabaptists*, *Arrians*, *Flaccians*, *Trinitarians*, *Photinians*, *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, *Dulcians*, *Lungentians*, &c. each asserting Doctrines and Tenets contrary to the rest, that there were sometimes no less than fourteen different Perswasions in one City, every one of which differ'd so much from the rest, that one would have no Communion in Church Ordinances with the other thirteen, of which Divisions the Restablishment of Popery could not be expected to be any less than the necessary Consequence.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE EMPIRE OF *GERMANY*.

CHAP. I.

Of the Name, Situation, Extent, and Climate of Germany, *with an Account of the Rivers rising therein, and the Seas thereunto belonging.*

Name. THE *Germans* have been known by several Names, as 1ſt *Teutones*, call'd by the *High Dutch Teutſhen*, and thence *Deutſchen*, and at laſt by the *Engliſh* contracted to the Word *Dutch*, moſt probably originally deriv'd from *Teut*, the Name of one of the antient *Celtick* Deities, whoſe Deſcendants the *Germans* call themſelves. 2d. They are alſo call'd *Germans* from *Wehr* and *Man*, which ſignifies a bold fighting Man; and the *German* W being turn'd into G in the *Latin*, makes the Word *German*. They were alſo call'd by the *French*, *Almains*, as alſo *Celts* or *Celticks*; but the Etymology of thoſe Words are given ſo differently, that the Original of them is difficult to be found.

Extent *Germany*, in its antient Situation, included *Scandinavia* in the North Part of it, and extended to the *Danube* on the South, and the *Rhine* on the Weſt; but the preſent Bounds of *Germany* (including *Bohemia* and *Sileſia*,) are the *German* Ocean, *Denmark*, and the *Baltick* Sea on the North; *Poland* and *Hungary* on the Eaſt: The Gulph of *Venice*, and the Alps, which divide it from *Italy*, on the South; and *France*, and the *Low Countries*, on the Weſt. It extends from forty ſix to fifty four of North Latitude, and from about ſix to nineteen Degrees of Longitude Eaſt from *London*.

Air. THE Air is more temperate and healthful in the Southern than in the Northern Provinces of *Germany*, and the Soil there is alſo extremely fruitful; but in the Northern Parts the Cold is very ſevere in Winter, and the Land produces neither Wine nor Oil, and but very ordinary Crops of Grain.

Rivers. WHAT Rivers of *Germany* have been juſt touch'd upon, ſhall have a further Deſcription here, and 1ſt. The *Danube* may claim the Preference of any River in *Europe*. I ſhall not trouble the Reader with the jarring Opinion of Authors about the Etymology of the Name, but rather begin with the Original of the River; it riſes near a ſmall Village in *Suabia*, ſituate in the *Hyrcanian* Foreſt, now call'd the Black Foreſt, at the Foot of a low inconſiderable Hill, but has not run many Furlongs till it is augmented by the *Brygen* and *Pregen* falling into it; and they each of them larger than itſelf: And the Addition of them makes it look ſomething like a River.

BUT it is further increas'd by the Addition of ſeveral navigable Rivers, the Chief of which are, 1ſt, The *Iſer*, which falls into the *Danube* near *Ulm*, the Capital of the Country. 2d. The *Lech*, which paſſes by *Lamberg* and *Auſberg*, and falls into the *Danube* between *Newberg* and *Donawert*. 3d. *Regen*; it falls into the *Danube* near *Ratisbon*. 4th. The *Iſar* falls into the *Danube* near *Pfetling*. 5th. The *Inn*, the fineſt River in *Bavaria*; it gives Name to the City of *Inſpruch*, and falls into the *Danube* at *Paſſaw*. 6th. The *Ens*, which gives Name to the Town of *Ens*, where it falls into the *Danube*. 7th. The *Rab*, or *Arabon*, which falls into the *Danube* near the Fortreſs of *Rab* or *Raab*, over-againſt *Schutt* Iſland. 8th. The *Drave*, a large navigable River; it ſeparates *Hungary* from *Sclavonia*, and falls into the *Danube* at *Eſſeck*. 9th. The *Save*; it is a large River, and parts *Sclavonia* from *Boſnia*, and falls into the *Danube* at *Belgrade*. 10th. The *Teyſe*; it riſes in the *Carpathian* Mountains, and running to the Southward, through *Hungary*, falls into the *Danube*, over-againſt *Salankamen*. And thus we have trac'd the *Danube* and the Rivers that fall into it through *Germany* and *Hungary*, into the *Turkiſh* Dominions, in which Tract, *viz.* in the Territories of *Turky*, a great many Rivers fall alſo into the *Danube*, and make it a mighty Stream before it falls into the *Black Sea*.

THE

The great Confluence of Rivers into the *Danube* makes the Water of it of a whitiſh Colour, and muſt conſequently be a vaſt Addition to its Stream; and theſe Rivers, in the Winter-time, very often over-flowing their Banks, it is natural to think that ſuch a Confluence of Waters into the *Danube* ſhould make it over-flow in Proportion, whereas it is obſerv'd never to riſe higher than uſual; and ſome aſſign, as a natural Reaſon for ſo little Difference in the River's Height, that the vaſt Breadth and Depth of the *Danube* will make a ſmall Matter of Rain have the leſs Effect upon it; for it is ſo large, that both the *Turks* and *Germans* have had their Fleets of Men of War upon it both at the ſame Time, and many ſmart Engagements have they had with one another upon it, eſpecially at the Siege of *Belgrade*, and other ſtrong Places upon the Banks of the *Danube*, the Succeſs of which Attempts have frequently depended much upon a maritime Power.

But I rather think the Reaſon of this River's Height being nearly equal, is, that the exhal'd Vapours that diſcharge themſelves in Rain in the Winter-time in the Valleys and low Grounds, and cauſe the Rivers which fall into the *Danube* to overflow, that Part of the ſame Vapours which falls upon the Mountains falls in Snow, and there lies till Summer approaches, and then melts; ſo that it is computed that the Waters produced in Summer, by the melting of the Snow upon the Mountains, is equal to that immediately produc'd by the falling of the Rains in Winter, and has the ſame Effect upon the River, or at leaſt they are ſo near alike, that the Difference is imperceptible.

The whole Length of the *Danube*, from its Head, above-mention'd, to where it falls into the *Black Sea*, is about fifteen hundred *Engliſh* Miles. There are three Cataracts in that Part of it which is in the Chriſtians Dominions; the firſt is call'd *Der Saw Ruſſel*, or *Swines-Snout*, becauſe it runs over and falls from a craggy Rock of that Shape, near *Lintz* in *Auſtria*, the Violence of which Fall creates a dangerous Whirlpool underneath. 2. *Der Strudel*, near *Greinon*, in *Auſtria*. 3. *Der Wurbel*, or the Whirlpool, about a Furlong below *Strudel*; but this laſt, however terrible it is repreſented, does not ſeem to be really ſo, becauſe the Watermen frequently paſs it without any great Apprehenſions of Danger. Thus far as to the Cataracts in the *Danube* in the Chriſtian Territories. There are ſeveral others lower down the River, to the Eaſtward, in the *Turkiſh* Dominions, which the Watermen there report to be impaſſible; and this ſome Authors impute to the Unskilfulneſs of the *Turkiſh* Watermen; but I would rather impute it to the greater Force and more rapid Stream of thoſe *Turkiſh* Cataracts; which being lower down the River, where it has receiv'd a greater Confluence of Streams, theſe muſt needs contribute to make the Cataracts more rapid, and conſequently more dangerous, which ſtill increaſing as it receives additional Streams, muſt needs at laſt render the paſſing of thoſe Cataracts more dangerous, as they are lower down the River, till by degrees it becomes impracticable.

The *Rhine*, for Note and Magnitude, may be eſteem'd the next River: It riſes from two Springs in the *Alps*, about forty Miles aſunder, but meet about eight Miles from the City of *Coir*, and about a Mile below this Meeting, the River falls into the Lake of *Conſtance*. There are ſeveral (ſome ſay Nine) Cataracts in the *Rhine*, of which two are very dangerous; one of them is a little below *Schaffhuyſen*, in *Switzerland*, where the whole River falls over a Precipice of a Rock, ſeventy Foot high. The other is at *Lauffenburg*, in *Switzerland*.

Rhine. The *Rhine* runs to the Northward, between *Suabia* and *Alſace*, into the *Palatinate*, in which Paſſage it receives the *Necker* at *Manheim*, and the *Mayn* at *Mentz* or *Mayence*; and proceeding to *Coblentz*, it is there join'd by the *Moſelle*; from whence it paſſes by *Cologn*, and through the Dutchy of *Cleves*, meeting in its Way with the Rivers *Roer* and *Lippe*, and other ſmall Rivers, and enters at *Scheuchenſchaus*, where I leave it till I come to the Deſcription of that Country.

Elbe. The next remarkable River is the *Elbe*; it riſes near *Hirchburg* in *Sileſia*, from eleven ſeveral Heads, which united, run to the Northward, between *Miſnia* and *Luſatia*, into *Saxony*, where it is join'd by the *Muldau*, *Eyra*, and other Rivers, and paſſes by *Madgeburgh*, *Lawenburgh*, and *Hamburgh*, to *Gluckſtadt*; and after that divides it ſelf into two, and then diſcharges itſelf into the *German* Ocean: It is as famous a navigable River as moſt in *Europe*, and as high as *Hamburgh*, which is ſeventy Miles from the Sea, it is no uncommon Thing to ſee Veſſels of three or four hundred Tun.

The *Weſer* riſes in the Mountains of *Thuringia*; and after having paſſed through *Heſſen* and *Weſtphalia*, falls into the *German* Ocean a little below *Bremen*.

Seas. The Seas that belong to *Germany*, if we were to allow the Whole of every Sea where the Emperor claims a Share, might be ſaid to be the Eaſtern Sea, (with Reſpect to us) commonly call'd the *German* Ocean, and alſo the *Baltick*, as ſome Authors tells us: But in this laſt, we muſt firſt allow the *Swedes*, the *Muſcovites*, &c. their proper Share, and then allow the reſt to whom it is due: Some alſo allow the Gulph of *Venice* to belong to the Emperor, becauſe he has the Port of *Trieſte* near the Head of the Gulph, and ſome other Towns where he has attempted to eſtabliſh a Trade; but a Trade, within ſuch a Gulph as the *Adriatick* Sea, cannot be call'd a free or foreign Trade, except the Crown, which is the Proprietor of that Trade, can command a Paſſage in and out. In ſhort, though *Germany* gives Name to our Eaſtern Ocean, yet, in Reality, the Ocean waſhes but a very inconſiderable Part of the *German* Shores at preſent; and although the ſeventeen Provinces of the *Low Countries* were made Part of the Empire by *Charles* V. by the Name of the *Circle* of *Burgundy*, which might then be ſaid to have made them a pretty large Sea Coaſt, yet even that is reduced, ſince theſe Provinces are now eſteem'd no Part of the Empire.

CHAP. II.

Of the Perſons, Genius, and Temper of the Germans; *as alſo of their Vices and Virtues, with their Diet, Lodging, and Diverſion.*

THE *Germans* both antient and modern are of the largeſt Size, eſpecially if compared with the *French*. The *Germans* and *Gauls* are ſaid to reſemble one another both in their Perſons and Manners; but this is to be underſtood of thoſe ancient *Gauls* that lived near the *Rhine*, whoſe Country is now accounted a Part of *Germany*. Some are of Opinion, that any Country always produces People of the ſame Bulk, Features, Complexions, *&c.* as it did ſome thouſands of Years ago; as *Germany*, large ſtrong Men; *Scythia* and *Tartary*, People of a ſhort ſquare Make, flat Noſe, thick Lips, and little hollow Eyes, *&c.* yet the Naturaliſts conclude, that were ſome of thoſe to be tranſplanted into *Germany*, their Offspring in proceſs of Time, would be ſuch ſtrong robuſt Perſons as *Germany* now produces; and it is indeed proved by Experience; for great Numbers of thoſe *Scythians* and *Tartars* were formerly tranſplanted to *Germany*, and doubtleſs were partly the Progenitors of the preſent *Germans*. If any thing is to be imputed to the Country as to this Increaſe of Stature, it muſt be attributed to the Air or Soil, or both, but not to the Climate; for if ſo, a great Part of *France*, *Poland*, and the Southern Part of *Moſcovy*, muſt produce People of the ſame Stature, as being in the ſame Latitude with ſome Part of *Germany*; But yet common Experience proves the contrary. If therefore the Climate or Latitude is not the ſole Cauſe of this Difference of Statures, we muſt look for it ſome other way; and if we ſhould allow the Air or Soil a Share, yet I am apt to think it is chiefly owing to the antient *Gauls*, the original Inhabitants; who although intermarrying with *Scythian Tartars* of a different Bulk, and leſs than themſelves, yet the *Gauls*, the chief Inhabitants again, marrying into that mixt Progeny, and not being now ſo liable to a Mixture with thoſe diminutive Species they have recover'd, and do now prolong their Succeſſion in a great Meaſure in the original *Gaul* or *German* Race, as if that Succeſſion had never been interrupted; and the like may be ſaid of the *Scythians* or *Tartars*, when invaded by, and for a Time intermarrying, co-habiting, and producing a Succeſſion with the *Germans*, or other Nations.

But as it is obſerved, that the greateſt Head has not always the moſt Wit, ſo Men of the greateſt Stature are not always the moſt polite; and ſome neighbouring Nations do not leſs than charge the *Germans* with downright Stupidity; if Experience prove it, there is no denying it; but the Reaſon given ſeems very deficient, *viz. That it is not poſſible for the Soul to animate ſo vaſt a Bulk to the ſame Advantage it does one of an inferior Size.* The *French* think themſelves more active, and inſinuate that the leaden Temper of the *Germans*, wants to be mended with a little *French* Quick-ſilver. But not to inſiſt too much upon the Soil, Air, or Climate, affecting the Tempers of of Men, we ſhall forbear to ſpeak of *French* Levity, or *Spaniſh* Gravity, till we come to the Deſcription of thoſe Countries; and for the Genius of the *Germans*, it will be better diſplay'd hereafter under the Head of Learning, Arts, and Sciences.

AMONG the Vices of the *Germans*, Drunkenneſs is not the leaſt, if not the greateſt taken Notice of. We have a Reverend Author tells us, That they have drinking Societies for contracting Intimacy and Acquaintance; which as the ſame Author ſays, is done by *being drunk together*: How far this may differ from ſome of our Clubs, they only are proper Judges who are acquainted with both; but I ſuppoſe, if the *Germans* were preſent at ſome of our Clubs, *alias* drinking Societies, they would reflect as much upon us, as ſome of us do upon them: Thoſe Exceſſes were as much cenſur'd in *England* within the laſt Century, as we can cenſure the *Germans* for them now. Vices.

IT is indeed a ſevere Compliment that the *Germans* oblige Strangers to undergo, in compelling them to take off a large Bowl at firſt Entrance as a Welcome; and the *French* and *Germans* are ſo remarkably oppoſite in their Tempers, the former for Sobriety, and the latter for Intemperance, that it was obſerv'd, the *French* King was at a Loſs, to find a Miniſter among his ſober Subjects, that might be capable both to negotiate his Affairs, and at the ſame Time to withſtand *German* Senſuality. However it is obſerved alſo, that they proportion their Eating to their Drinking; and that from Noon till Five to ſit at Dinner, and from Seven at Night till Two or Three in the Morning to ſit at Supper, is reckon'd moderate Meal-times; and even then, if we conſider the Time ſpent by many in *England*, if we include both eating at the Meal, and drinking, ſmoaking, *&c.* after the Cloth is taken away, we need not go ſo far as *Germany* for an Inſtance of ſuch a profuſe Expence of Time, in thoſe otherwiſe comfortable and neceſſary Enjoyments.

THEIR ordinary Food is much as with us, *viz.* Beef, Mutton, Fowls, *&c.* but they have one Diſh, new-faſhion'd once to them, and that is Snails; but it is no great matter what the Diſh is, for as it is a foreign Faſhion, it is now become common among the Gentry in *England*, moſt of them where there is a fine Garden having alſo a Snail-houſe; and the Quadrupeds them in the Winter Seaſon are a great Rarity. Their Drink is generally Beer and Wine, as with us; but they have Wine much cheaper than we, having Rhenith and other Wines of their own Growth, and *Hungary*, *France*, and *Italy* lying ſo near them, in which Places they can furniſh themſelves with the beſt Wines. Food.

THE *Germans* are great Travellers, and are to be found in moſt Courts in *Europe*; ſo that if we ſhould allow their natural Parts to be ſomewhat Inferior to their Neighbours, or if it ſhould be allow'd *impoſſible for the Soul to animate ſo vaſt a Bulk*, yet their acquired Parts ſupply the Defect of natural ones, and their Experience gain'd by travelling, more than counterballances the bright natural Parts of thoſe who never make uſe of them. But this Excellency amounts to a Fault in them; for they appear with ſuch coſtly Equipages at Foreign Courts, that they carry out more Money annually by travelling, than all the Silver Mines of the Country can produce. Travel-ling.

THE

Virtues. THE *Germans* are generally said to be honeſt and fair in their Dealings, even to a Proverb, for the *French* themſelves own, That *a* German's *Word is as good as another Man's Bond*; and they are not only juſt, but hoſpitable too, not only ſupplying, but protecting thoſe that come under their Roof, and thinking it a Piece of Religion ſo to do; nor, by the Report of Travellers, do the preſent *Germans* degenerate from that publick ſpirited Diſpoſition, ſo that travelling in *Germany* is both cheap and ſafe; but there is an Inconveniency attends travelling by the Poſt-Waggon, for it travels Day and Night; or if they ſtop two or three Hours in a Winter's Night, there is no Lodgings upon the Road but clean Straw, where all the Paſſengers pig in promiſcuouſly, Noblemen and Beggars, without any Regard to Age, Sex, or Quality.

Courage. THE *Germans*, both antient and modern, were always allow'd to be brave and couragious: Some Authors indeed ſeem to envy them the Credit of ſo excellent a Qualification, and tells us, that it is their being ſenſible of their own large Bulk and Strength that makes them look upon the reſt of Mankind with a ſort of Contempt, and that this is what they call Courage; and indeed, if the Senſe of their own ſuperior Strength, and a moral Certainty of over-coming, are the chief Motives of their engaging in any Affair otherwiſe hazardous, a Reſolution ſo grounded cannot be ſaid to amount to Courage, any more than that where Numbers and Advantages ſeem near an Equality, and yet the Party, though provok'd, declines to engage. If there is any thing to be ſaid in favour of ſuch a Caſe, it may be included under the Name of Conduct indeed, whether any Reaſons are aſſign'd for ſuch Conduct or not.

Sports and Diverſions. THE Sport moſt uſed by the Quality in *Germany*, is hunting the Deer or the Wild-Boar; but their Way of catching the Game, is by ſurrounding him by a large Company as ſoon as they have found him, and they, with their Guns, Launces, Spears, and Dogs, diſpatch the Creature as ſoon as they can, without the Pleaſure of ſeeing him run for his Life: Indeed the Wild-Boar is ſometimes ſo reſolute that he breaks through Man and Horſe, and does one or the other a Miſchief into the Bargain.

ONE Winters Diverſion they uſe, is riding thro' the Streets on the Snow in Sledges, with Horſes richly harneſs'd and adorn'd with Bells and Feathers. There is ſeldom any Fire to be ſeen in their Houſes, except in the Kitchen; but the Rooms they ſit in are heated with Stoves to what Degree they pleaſe; and as for their Lodgings, they commonly lie with a Feather-bed under them as we do in *England*, and in the Winter, another over them for a Covering to keep them warm.

CHAP. III.

Of the Language of the Germans; *as alſo of their Univerſities, Arts, and Sciences.*

Language. THE *High Dutch* is the Language generally uſed in *Germany*, and is a Language much admir'd by thoſe who underſtand it, or have it naturally, but is very difficult to be learn'd by the *French*, *Italians*, or other Strangers, by reaſon of the many Conſonants uſed in it. Some, that underſtand this Language, ſay there are above a Thouſand Words in it which can never be pronounc'd by one that has been uſed to a ſoft Language; but the Antiquity of the *High Dutch* (like the Language of *China*) appears in the Monoſyllables in which it abounds, becauſe theſe muſt be Primitives, and cannot be ſuppos'd to be deriv'd from any other Language. *Simon Stevin*, a *Dutchman*, has been very curious upon this Subject, and has made a Collection of above Two thouſand primitive Monoſyllables in this Language, whereas he could not find above a Hundred and ſixty three in *Latin*, and Two hundred and ſixty five in the *Greek*. It is obſerv'd, that in the *Engliſh* Tongue a whole Sentence or Speech might be compos'd of Monoſyllables; which were all originally *High Dutch*: And it is further obſerv'd, That in the *German* Tongue there are twenty three principal Terminations, which tho' they ſignify nothing in themſelves, yet added to another Word, give it quite another Meaning, and makes it ſignify a different Thing; and many of theſe we uſe in the *Engliſh* Tongue, as Er, in Buyer, Seller, &c. for to buy, ſignifies the Action of Buying, but with Er to it to make it Buyer, it ſignifies the Perſon buying; and ſo in the Termination Dom, as in Kingdom, Dukedom, &c. The Word King ſignifies the Perſon governing, but with Dom annexed to it, it is Kingdom, and ſignifies the Place govern'd; and ſo in many others. And theſe Alterations in the *German* Language, ſo different in themſelves, and yet ſo eaſily made, make the *German* Language exceeding copious. It is alſo ſaid to be the richeſt in its Compounds; for in it there are not only Words compounded of Adjectives and Subſtantives, and Verbs and Participles, with Prepoſitions, which is common in all Languages; but alſo many Words which are compos'd of two Adjectives or two Subſtantives; which Elegancy of compounding Subſtantives we alſo retain in the *Engliſh* Tongue, as Houſe-Wife, Snow-Ball, &c. But this Author obſerves another and greater Excellency in this Compoſition, *viz.* In not only compounding the Subſtantives to make the Word, but in tranſpoſing them to alter the Senſe, as Horſe-Mill and Mill-Horſe; but there are much more Examples of this in the *High Dutch* than in the *Engliſh* Tongue, only theſe were inſerted as Inſtances.

BUT there have of late abundance of *Italian*, *French*, and *Latin* Words, crept into the Language, by giving thoſe Words a *German* Termination; there are alſo ſeveral Dialects of the *High Dutch* in *Germany*, and ſome of them ſo different from others, that one Province can ſcarce underſtand another's Language; as for inſtance, a *Brandenburgher* can ſcarce underſtand a *Miſnian* or a *Saxon*, either of them; and which is ſtill more, there are ſeveral Dialects ſpoke within the Walls of *Leipſick*. Alſo the old *Britiſh*, *Engliſh*, *Daniſh*, *Swediſh*, *Norwegian*, and *Flemiſh* Languages, do all participate of the *High Dutch*. We may add to this, that upon the Frontiers of *Germany*, (as in other Places) they uſe a Dialect of the adjacent Provinces; thus in *Lorrain* they ſpeak *French*, in upper *Tyrol Italian*, and in *Bohemia* the *Sclavonian*, &c. but *Latin* and *French* are the beſt travelling Languages in *Germany*; the meaneſt Servants in the Inns

Inns being able to ſpeak thoſe Languages intelligibly, though not correctly.

Learning. THE Learning of the *Germans* is ſaid to bear Date with their firſt Acquaintance with the *Romans*, for before that Time the Principles of their Religion were deliver'd in Fables and Riddles, and the Actions of their great Men rehears'd in *Doggerel* Rhime, but neither of them committed to Writing. In the Reign of the Emperor *Adrian*, ſeveral Schools were erected in *Germany*, in that Part next the *Rhine*, where the young Nobility were taught *Latin*; but ſtill thoſe in the Northern Parts of *Germany* had not the Opportunity of Education till the *French* got footing in *Germany*, and their Princes, eſpecially *Dagobert* and *Charles* the Great, founded Schools among them; but ſtill the *High Dutch* had never been brought under any Rules of Writing; and this continued ſuch an inſuperable Difficulty, that they were forc'd to draw up all their Law Proceedings in *Latin* for many Years; but when the *Germans* had regulated their Language, and made it capable of being communicated in Writing, they began to ſtudy the liberal Arts and Sciences, and, in a ſhort Time, erected ſeveral Univerſities, yea, more in *Germany* than were in all *Europe* beſides, as *Juſtus Lipſius* tell us; and now Learning is ſo much the Glory of a *German*, that there are above thirty Univerſities, whoſe Grandeur the *German* Princes are very ambitious to keep up, being of nothing ſo proud as of having a great Number of Scholars in their Dominions, nor are the Scholars ſo ambitious of any Thing as of excelling one another.

Universities.

Mechanicks. THEIR Handicraftſmen and Mechanicks are equally induſtrious, and their Correſpondence is enlarg'd by the various Languages they acquire: *Hebrew* is no where more generally learn'd and better underſtood than in *Germany*; but the trading Language, even among the *Jews* themſelves, is *High Dutch*.

Printing. PRINTING is ſo much encourag'd, that almoſt every Man of Letters is an Author, which makes Books multiply without Number, whether the Matter be new or not, and very often about religious Suppoſitions and Diſputations, which abound ſo as even to over-ſtock the Fairs of *Leipſick* and *Frankfort*; and no Wonder that they are ſo ambitious to commence Authors, for no Man can be a Graduate in their Univerſities, till he has publiſh'd one Diſputation or more.

The Invention of Gunpowder and Guns. THE *Germans* are not only excellent Mechanicks, but Chymiſts alſo. The Invention of Printing is generally aſcrib'd to them, though diſputed with them; but Gunpowder was invented by one *Barthold Swartz*, a *Franciſcan* Friar of *Germany*, though the Invention may more juſtly be imputed to Accident than Ingenuity; for he having made a great Proficiency in Chymiſtry, and happening to mix Sulphur and Salt-Petre with ſome other Ingredidients in an earthen Crucible, and ſetting them on a hot Fire to try ſome Experiment, the Veſſel was ſhatter'd all to Pieces with a violent Exploſion and Noiſe: This at firſt affrighted him, but upon Recollection, thinking ſome further Improvement might be made, he cauſed a long iron Pipe to be made, not unlike the Barrel of a ſmall Gun, and making it cloſe at one End, and driling a Touch-hole, he ramm'd in a Quantity of the cumbuſtible Ingredients above-mention'd, and after them ſome ſmall Pebble-Stones; ſetting Fire to the Combuſtibles at the Touch-hole, the Stones were thrown out with incredible Force: And this was the Original of Guns, which, with the Improvements made ſince, are the Guns now uſed of different Sizes, and may now be ſaid to be the moſt fatal and mortal Invention that ever the World produc'd: The Force of the Powder was indeed diſcover'd by Accident, but the Application of it, and the Invention of Guns to direct its Force, was purely owing to his own Genius. This happened about the Year 1330. but it was concealed and not made publick till ſome Time afterwards.

THE *Venetians* were the Firſt that we read of after the *Germans*, that made uſe of Guns: When they were beſieg'd by the *Genoeſe*, they by the Help of Guns took the Cities of *Padua*, *Verona*, and other Places, from the *Germans*; ſo that when others got the Invention, the *Germans* loſt more than they got by it. The *German Jews*, in order to ſubvert Chriſtianity, taught the *Turks* the Way of making this murdering Compoſition. The *Venetians* were the firſt that made uſe of Guns at Sea: How ſoon the *Engliſh* firſt made uſe of them is uncertain, but they took *Calais* by the Help of Guns in the Year 1347. and thereby taught the *French* the Uſe of them, and this not above ſeventeen Years after the firſt Invention of them. The *Spaniards* about the ſame Time found out the Uſe of them, and employ'd them againſt the *Moors* with Succeſs; and they, though to their Sorrow, found the Advantage of them; and thus, in about fifty or threeſcore Years Time, thoſe thundering murdering Engines were known and made Uſe of by all the Nations in *Europe*.

BUT the Inhabitants of *America* were entirely ignorant of thoſe Improvements, as appears by their Surprize at the *Spaniards* making Uſe of Guns; for they thought the *Spaniards* were Gods, when they no ſooner ſaw a Flaſh of Lightning, and heard their Thunder among them, but immediately they found ſome of their own Countrymen lying dead about them; and therefore they were ſo far from reſiſting them, that they began in their Way to offer Sacrifice to them; but the *Spaniſh* Cruelty to them ſoon made them alter their Sentiments as to the *Spaniards* being Gods, and therefore they had Senſe enough in the next Place to try by the firſt Opportunity whether they were mortal or no, which they effected by taking a *Spaniard* that had ſtroll'd from his Company, and holding him under Water to try if he would drown; and they were hereby ſoon convinc'd of his Mortality, and that whatever they had behav'd themſelves like beſide, they were ſure they were no Gods.

BEFORE I cloſe this Digreſſion (if it may be ſo call'd) about Gun-powder, I ſhall juſt add, that ſeveral Nations aſſume to themſelves the Honour of knowing the exploſive Nature of a Compoſition of Nitre, Sulphur, *&c.* as ſeems to appear by a Letter of our Countryman *Friar Bacon*, who therein ſays, *That out of Salt Petre, Sulphur, and Coal-Duſt, he could make Fire, which ſhould burn at what Diſtance he pleaſed, and that with the ſame Matter he could cauſe Thunder and Lightning in the Air, more terrible than that which is naturally produc'd: That a City or an Army might be deſtroy'd by this Fire, and that it burſt forth with incredible Noiſe.* This intimates that *Friar Bacon* underſtood the Nature of this Compoſition, though he did not apply it to that murdering Purpoſe; nay, probably he underſtood it better than *Barthold Swartz*, though he liv'd three or fourſcore Years before him, for he could give ſome Account of what it would do from the Nature of it, without his own Experience; but *Swartz* hit upon it by mere Accident, and no Thanks to his Ingenuity.

ANOTHER Branch of Ingenuity which the *Germans* challenge the Invention of, is Printing; but as the *Dutch* ſeem to have a better Claim to it than the *Germans*, I ſhall defer ſpeaking of it till I come to treat of *Holland*, and ſhall only obſerve, that though the *Chineſe* had the Art of Printing long before it was known in *Europe*, [*See Chap.* VI.

Printing

of

of China, *Page* 35.] yet it has been much more improv'd in *Europe* than by them, for they know nothing of compoſing and diſtributing Letter, whereby with the ſame Letters to print innumerable Books upon different Subjects, but they ſtill retain their old Way of having their Prints cut in Wood, as is already deſcrib'd in the Chapter above-mentioned.

Clock-work. SOME aſcribe the Invention of Clock-work to the *Germans*, but however that be, it is certain they have brought that Art to very great Perfection, inſomuch, that it is ſaid, that the Emperor *Charles* V. who was co-temporary with *Henry* VIII. King of *England*, and reign'd above Two hundred Years ago, had a Watch in the Jewel of a Ring, and that King *James* I. of *England* had ſuch another, and both made in *Germany*. They are alſo very extraordinary Painters, Engravers, Engineers; but perhaps ſome of our Hiſtorians are not ſatisfy'd without launching out a little too much in their Praiſe; for it is ſaid of *Regiomontanus*, that he made a wooden Eagle which flew a quarter of a Mile out of Town to meet the Emperor *Maximilian* when he came to *Noremburg*, and return'd back with him thither. Alſo that the ſame Artiſt made an iron Fly, which he threw off his Hand, and after it had flown round the Room, return'd to him again: But as for thoſe two laſt miraculous Pieces of Mechaniſm, let every one believe as much of them as he pleaſes; if they were true they were excellent Performances in the Artificers; if not, they are not worth futher Notice. However, we may obſerve that how much ſoever the *Germans* might formerly excel in Watch-work, the *Engliſh* now excel them as much more; their Movements, whether Clocks or Watches, being now in the higheſt Reputation, and to be ſeen in moſt Courts in *Europe*.

CHAP. IV.

An Abſtract of the Hiſtory of Germany, *and the Succeſſion of its Government, from the Time of its firſt being known to the* Romans, *to its firſt being form'd into an Empire under* Charles the Great; *and from thence to the Time of the Emperor* Leopold, *and to the Death of the late King* William *of* England.

NOT to dwell upon improbable Conjectures, as to the original Inhabitants of *Germany*, or by whom it was firſt peopled, we find the moſt authentick Account on which we can moſt ſafely depend, is from the *Romans*, who tell us, that the Inhabitants of *Germany* having paſs'd the *Rhine*, fell upon the *Gauls*, who were then under the Protection of the *Romans*; but *Julius Cæſar* attack'd a Body of them commanded by *Arioviſtus*, one of their Kings, and drove them back over the *Rhine* again, and alſo gain'd further Victories over them: But of all the *Roman* Generals, *Druſus*, the adopted Son of *Auguſtus*, had the greateſt Succeſs in *Germany*, and was thence call'd *Germanicus*, for he reduc'd the whole Country as far as the Ocean, and brought it into the Form of a *Roman* Province; but *Quintilius Varus*, his Succeſſor, loſt all that his Predeceſſors had won, and with it three *Roman* Legions, which *Auguſtus* regretted very much; upon which he made the *Rhine* and the *Danube* the Bounds of his Empire on that Side, placing twelve Legions upon the Banks of thoſe Rivers to prevent the Incurſions of the *Germans*.

BY this Means the *Romans* found an Opportunity to get themſelves acquainted with the *Germans*, and that though they were divided into Nations and Principalities, yet they ſpoke all one Language; that they were under various Forms of Government, but that many of thoſe States or Kingdoms, frequently united under one Head or General, both in their offenſive and defenſive Wars: But by what can be gather'd from their Oeconomy, patriarchal Government ſeems to have been the firſt that has taken Place here, as obſerv'd with Relation to *Denmark*, and ſome other Places, [*See Chap.* VI. *of the Deſcription of* Denmark, *Page* 427.] but whatever their original Form of Government may have been, moſt of the Princes of *Germany* are at preſent as abſolute in their reſpective Dominions, as the Emperor himſelf is in his Hereditary Countries; and we find but few Monarchies or States at this Day, but the Sovereigns of them are abſolute, or at leaſt gain ſo much Power as to refuſe to be limited, which amounts to the ſame; witneſs the *Venetians*, the States of *Holland*, or any other Republick or Commonwealth in *Europe*.

SOME Hiſtorians add, that when *Germany* was erected into a Kingdom, the Multitude had an abſolute Power to elect or depoſe Kings as they pleaſed; and would further add, that as we are ſuppoſed to be of *German* Extraction, it ought alſo to be a part of our Conſtitution; and ſuppoſe it were, what would be the Conſequence? Well then, every deſigning Man that had got more Eloquence than Honeſty, would be animating a giddy-headed Mob, and, by his Rhetorick, be deluding them into his own Meaſures, not only to the depoſing the crown'd Head upon the Throne, but perhaps, at laſt, to the Subverſion of the Government and Conſtitution it ſelf, both in Church and State.

Cuſtoms of the ancient *Germans*. *Cæſar*, *Tacitus*, and other *Roman* Hiſtorians, tell us that it was the antient Cuſtom in *Germany* for the common People to go naked till they grew old, and then to hang the Skin of ſome wild Beaſt about their Shoulders, faſten'd with a Thong; and Men of the beſt Quality wore only a woolen Mantle, or a Coat without Sleeves; that the Poor had no Beds but the Ground, or a little Straw, the better Sort lay only upon the Skins of Wolves and Bears: That they put their new-born Infants in cold Water, or threw them into a River, to determine their Legitimacy by their ſinking or ſwimming. Their Food was Bread, Fleſh, Butter, and Fruit, and their Drink Water, Milk, and Beer, as now, only they had not found out the Uſe of Wine, which they now uſe in great Plenty: They had ſeldom more than one Knife in a Family, with which they carv'd, but every one pull'd his own Victuals to pieces with his Fingers; but to make that Work the eaſier, it is commonly ſo over-boil'd, that it is ready to drop to pieces of it ſelf, and is more eaſily pull'd than cut to pieces.

When they have an Entertainment, they usually make the best of it, being very merry; the Guests sit in form of a Semi-Circle, of which the Master possesses the Center, but no Women are admitted to those Entertainments, nor a Son under twenty Years of Age. The *Germans* had Liberty formerly of marrying or cohabiting with as many Women as they pleased; but even in the Time of that licentious Liberty, that plurality of Wives dwindled into one; for as for what the Laws did not restrain, their own Circumstances did, when they found, that let them cohabit with as many as they would, yet one was as many as they were well able to keep. The eldest Son always succeeded in the Inheritance or Estate of his Father; and if it was a Principality, the eldest succeeded to it, and the youngest had some Villages, Lordships, or other Properties allow'd them for a Maintenance.

It is said of the primitive Germans, that they exceeded most other *Pagan* Nations in living up to the strict Rules of Morality, and an uncommon Regard for divine Worship: They chose their Priests out of the Nobility, as supposing them to have the greatest Advantages of Education, and for that Reason they were call'd to their Council of State. The Doctrine of Transmigration prevail'd among them; they believ'd that departed Souls animated other Creatures, and were deputed into such either more honourable or more contemptible ones, as would make them happy or miserable, as a Reward or Punishment for their manner of living while in this Life.

Religion of the ancient *Germans.*

They worship'd the Sun with so much Devotion, that *Cluverius* thinks they own'd it for the true God; they dedicated the first Day of the Week to it, as they did the second to the Moon; they also worshiped the God *Woden*, and call'd the fourth Day of the Week after his Name *Wodensday* or *Wednesday*: To their God *Thor*, or the *Thunderer*, they attributed the fifth Day of the Week, *Thorsday*, or by us *Thursday*: To their Goddess *Freiga* or *Venus*, they gave the sixth Day of the Week, and call'd it *Friday*: To the God *Ties* or *Mars*, they gave the third Day, and call'd it *Tuesday*; and to *Saturn* they gave the sixth Day, and call'd it by his Name *Saturnday* or *Saturday*; and thus they had at least as many Gods and Goddesses as Days in the Week: And no Wonder that in the Times of that Ignorance People were so deluded as to have a Notion of so many Deities, when we, in a Christian Nation, who pretend to hold *Paganism* in Contempt, yet to this Day distinguish our Days of the Week, as *Wednesday*, *Thursday*, &c. by the Names of those pretended Deities, which ourselves despise: Perhaps indeed our Astrologers and Fortune-tellers, which some therefore call wise Men or cunning Men, may contribute to the Support of this Superstition, not to say Idolatry, for they tell us to this Day, that the Sun is Lord of *Sunday*, and the first Hour of that Day, and that the Moon has *Munday*, and its first Hour, &c. Surely when those call'd wise Men among the Christians, condescend so much to those *Pagan* Superstitions, what can we expect, but that instead of bringing them over to Christianity, they will be confirm'd in their Obstinacy and Ignorance, and produce our Example for their Practice.

They perform'd their religious Exercises and offer'd their Sacrifices in Groves, the Oak being commonly chose for an Altar; and instead of a Temple, they had a Booth cover'd with Boughs of Oak and Beech; both the Priest and the Sacrifice were crown'd with Garlands of Oak, or some Tree which they deem'd sacred. The Roman Authors tell us, they sacrific'd not only Beasts but Men; only in common Cases, their Human Sacrifices were some of their Malefactors, or at least some of their own Slaves; but in extraordinary Cases, they did not stick to sacrifice their own Children: But they did not sacrifice them alive, for the Beasts were shot to Death with Arrows, but the Men, were sometimes crucify'd. They had, like some of the Eastern Nations, a way of foretelling good or ill Success in their Wars or other Undertakings, by inspecting into the Entrails of the sacrific'd Animals; and when the Ceremony was ended, they eat the Sacrifices, (whether Men or Beasts) the Priests entertaining them with the utmost Merriment of Musick and Dancing.

Their Belief of the Doctrine of Transmigration of Souls, or of their Souls animating other Bodies after this Life, made them fearless of Danger, especially those of them who were in unfortunate Circumstances. Their ready Cure was dispatching themselves, as supposing in that miserable Case, let the Soul be transplanted into what Body it would, it could scarce alter for the worse.

At their Funerals, they burnt the dead Body with the funeral Pile; and gathering up the Bones and the Ashes of the Pile, they bury'd all together; and sometimes the most zealous of them, would have their Wives, Slaves, Dogs, Horses, and even their Armour thrown into the Fire with them, which if the Deceas'd had order'd it, was comply'd with; and if it was at the Funeral of a great Man, there were Tiltings and Tournaments, and Songs in memory of his Heroick Actions.

What has hitherto been said of *Germany*, refers to the Time of its Primitive Ignorance in common with other Pagan Countries; but I shall now proceed to shew the Steps by which it was brought under the Imperial Government by *Charles* the Great, the first Emperor of *Germany* in the Year 800, with the Succession of the Emperors, and the most material Transactions in the Empire to the present Time.

When the *Romans* had been contented to make the *Danube* and the *Rhine* the Bounds of their Empire, as before observed, and thought themselves secure; yet within less than an Hundred Years after *Constantine* the Great, the *Franks*, *Burgundians*, *Almains*, and other Powers of *Germany*, broke through those Boundaries, pass'd the *Rhine*, and beat the *Romans* quite out of *Gaul*, *Rhætia*, and *Noricum*, which they at first quietly shar'd among them; but the *Franks* finding themselves the most powerful, prevail'd over their Fellow-Conquerors, and establish'd their Empire over *France*, *Italy*, and Modern *Germany*, under the Conduct and Government of *Charles* the Great, the first Emperor of *Germany*.

Charles the Great was the Son of *Pepin*, King of *France*; he was born, *Jan.* 28. in the Year 747, and *Pepin* dying in the Year 768, *Charles* shar'd the Government with his Brother, who dying, *Charles* assum'd the whole; and his Brother leaving a Son behind him, his Mother fled for Protection with him to *Desiderius*, King of *Lombardy*; but *Charles* pursu'd her thither, defeated *Desiderius*, and conquer'd *Rome*, and a great Part of *Italy*. The Pope and Clergy of *Rome*, having been reduc'd to Obedience by *Desiderius*, look'd upon *Charles* as their Deliverer, and swore Allegiance to him on St. *Peter*'s Tomb. Pope *Adrian* also by a Decree of his, order'd him to be declared Patrician of *Rome*, a Title not much inferior to that of Emperor: By this Authority he confirm'd the Election of Popes, and gave the *Italian* Bishops the Investiture of their Sees; and *Charles* as a

grateful

grateful Return to the Pope, gave him a Power to conſtitute Lieutenants over the Provinces of *Ancona*, *Bologna*, *Mantua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Ferrara*, &c. and thus by the reciprocal Power conferr'd upon one another, they had all both Civil and Eccleſiaſtical Authority in their Hands.

After this, *Charles* conquer'd *Spain*, and reduc'd the *Saxons* in *Germany* to Obedience, and planted the Chriſtian Religion wherever his Arms prevail'd, and founded Schools and Univerſities throughout the whole Empire; but Pope *Adrian* dying *Anno* 795, *Leo* III. was elected to ſucceed, and was confirm'd by *Charles* the Great as he was now call'd; but an Inſurrection being raiſed againſt this Pope by the Nephews of Pope *Adrian* his Predeceſſor, he fled into *Germany* to *Charles* the Great for Protection, who thereupon march'd an Army into *Italy*, ſubdu'd the Rebels, and condemn'd the chief Offenders to Death; but *Leo*, to ſhew his Clemency to the Rebels, interceded with *Charles* the Great to have their Sentences chang'd to Baniſhment, to which he agreed.

Charles's deſign.

These Heroick Actions of *Charles* the Great, ſo engag'd the Hearts of the People to him, that on *Chriſtmas Day* in the Year 800, the Pope with the Senate and People of *Rome*, unanimouſly agreed to confer the Title of Roman Emperor upon *Charles* the Great; and to ſhew the Voluntarineſs of the Action, they plac'd the Imperial Crown upon his Head while he was at his Devotions in St. *Peter's* Church: The Pope anointed him with the Holy Oil as ſupreme Sovereign; and the People with loud Acclamations, ſaluted him *Emperor of the Romans*.

When the Ceremony was over, and the Emperor being inclined to reſide in *Germany*, left *Italy* to the Care of the Pope, who notwithſtanding his Affection to him, knew better how to make an Advantage of his Abſence than of his Company, which had been the Caſe with his Predeceſſors, when they remov'd the *Imperial* Seat from *Rome* to *Conſtantinople* ſome Time before.

When *Charles* the Great had reign'd Emperor fourteen Years, he died in the Year 814; and having founded a Church at *Aix la Chapelle*, with a Deſign to make that the Capital of his Empire, and the Reſidence of his Succeſſors, he was buried therein himſelf with this Epitaph upon his Tomb: *Magni Caroli Regis Chriſtianiſſimi, Romanorum Imperatoris, Corpus hoc Sepulchro conditum jacet.*

The next Succeſſor to the Empire, was *Ludowic*, or *Lewis*, King of *Aquitain*; he was the Son of *Charles* the Great, and was crown'd Emperor by Pope *Stephen* IV. at *Rheims* in *France*, *Anno* 814. This Prince was ſo zealous in the Cauſe of Chriſtianity, that he cauſed the Bible to be tranſlated into the *Saxon* Tongue, and to be given away to the common People. He was ſucceeded by,

Lotharius his eldeſt Son, *Anno* 840; but he retiring into a Monaſtery, was ſucceeded by,

Lewis II. *Anno* 855. It was in his Time that the Court of *Rome* aſſum'd the Power of electing a Pope with the Concurrence of their Sovereign; and *Adrian* I. was the firſt that was choſen upon this Footing.

Charles the Bald ſucceeded, *Anno* 875; and after him,

Lewis III. *Anno* 878; but he reſign'd to his Brother,

Charles the Groſs, *Anno* 879. He was the firſt that annex'd the Year of our Lord to his Grants in Acts of State, they being till now dated only by the Year of the Reign of the (then) reigning Emperor; but at laſt not pleaſing his Nobility, he was by them depos'd, and dy'd in an obſcure Village in *Suabia*, and was ſucceeded by,

Arnolph, natural Son of the King of *Bavaria*, who was advanc'd to the Throne by the ſame Faction that depos'd his Predeceſſor *Charles*, *Anno* 888. He took *Rome* by Storm, and was afterwards poiſon'd, but was ſucceeded by his Son,

Lewis IV. He was at continual War with the *Hungarians*, and had but very ill Succeſs againſt them; and the Pope alſo ſet up another of the ſame Name againſt him in *Italy*, which caus'd great Diſturbance.

When *Lewis* IV. dy'd, the *German* Nobility offer'd the Crown to *Otto* Duke of *Saxony*; but he being old declin'd it, and recommended

Conrade Duke of *Franconia*; but even thoſe who choſe him, endeavour'd to dethrone him, as not approving of his Conduct; but he ſecured his Poſſeſſion during his Life, by obliging them with appointing *Henry* the Son of the abovemention'd *Otto* Duke of *Saxony* to ſucceed him.

Henry ſucceeded to the Throne *Anno* 919. the Pope offer'd to conſecrate and anoint him Emperor, but he bravely told him, that he did not want his Conſecration to confirm him in the Empire. He was a brave Prince, he reſiſted Enemies abroad, and compos'd Factions at home. He fortify'd the great Towns in *Germany*, and after a proſperous Reign of about ſeven or eight Years, he dy'd of an Apoplexy, and was immediately ſucceeded by his Son,

Otho, who began *Anno* 936. He was for his Piety and Conduct call'd *Otho* the Great; he obliged *Harold* King of *Denmark* to acknowledge his Dependance upon the Empire, and to introduce Chriſtianity into his Dominions; he alſo ſubdu'd *Boleſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, and planted Chriſtianity there. He depos'd Pope *John* XII. and put *Leo* VIII. in his room, and decreed that for the future, the Pope ſhould be appointed only by the Emperor. The baptizing of Bells was firſt introduc'd in his Reign.

Otho II. ſucceeded his Father *Anno* 973. and after a proſperous Reign, was ſucceeded by,

Otho III. of ten Years of Age, but prov'd a wiſe Prince. He was the firſt who order'd the Emperor to be choſe by a Majority of ſeven Electors. He reign'd eighteen Years, and was at laſt poiſon'd in *Italy* by his Concubine with a Pair of Gloves, becauſe he did not marry her according to his Promiſe.

Henry II. ſucceeded; he was Duke of *Bavaria*, and was crown'd by the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* *Anno* 1002. he was ſucceſsful in his Wars againſt the *Saracens* in *Italy*, and drove them out of *Apulia* and *Calabria*.

Conrade II. a Deſcendant from *Charles* the Great, ſucceeded *Anno* 1024. he was belov'd by his Subjects, and enacted, That no Prince ſhould make War on any Province of the Empire on Pain of Death. He reign'd fifteen Years, and was ſucceeded by his Son,

Henry III. *Anno* 1039. he ſubdu'd the *Bohemians* and *Hungarians*; and in the Year 1046. went to ſettle the Peace of *Italy*, which was then diſturb'd by three Popes, ſet up by contrary Factions; but to put an End to their Differences, he ſet up a fourth, *viz. Clement* II. and reviv'd and further confirm'd the Decree of *Otho* I. that the Pope ſhould be always appointed by the Emperor.

Henry IV. ſucceeded his Father *Anno* 1056. he was but ſix Years of Age. Pope *Hildebrand* deny'd this Emperor's Authority, and inſtead of having the Pope choſe by the Emperor, would have the Emperor choſe by the Pope; and ſo choſe *Rodolph* Duke of *Suabia*, and ſet him up againſt him; and though *Rodolph* was kill'd in Battle, yet the Pope did not reſt here, but procur'd *Henry* to be depos'd when he had reign'd fifty Years, and fought ſixty two general Battles. They elected his Son in his room, and he himſelf was

reduc'd

reduc'd to ſuch Straits, that he begg'd a Prebendary in the Church of *Spire* which he had founded, and was deny'd it by the Biſhop, which himſelf had created and prefer'd.

Henry V. Son of *Henry* IV. ſucceeded *Anno* 1106, but he was oblig'd to acknowledge the Pope's Supremacy, and to renounce the Privilege his Anceſtors had claim'd as to the Inveſtiture of Biſhopricks. He dying without Iſſue, was ſucceeded by,

Lotharius Duke of *Saxony*, *Anno* 1125, and he by,

Conrade Duke of *Suabia*, who was *Lotharius*'s Siſter's Son, *Anno* 1138.

Frederick Duke of *Suabia* ſucceeded *Conrade*, *Anno* 1152, he was crown'd by Pope *Adrian*; but in the Papacy of *Alexander* III. he was excommunicated, and ſo humbled, that he was obliged to throw himſelf at the Pope's Feet, and ſuffer him to tread upon his Neck. He was drown'd in a River, when he and *Richard* I. of *England*, and *Philip* II. of *France*, were upon an Expedition to the *Holy Land Anno* 1187, and bury'd at *Tyre*, and ſucceeded by his Son,

Henry, *Anno* 1190; but he by the Pope's Inſtigation, was prevail'd upon to undertake a Journey to the *Holy Land*, and dy'd in the Journey, leaving,

Philip his Brother to ſucceed him *Anno* 1198; but he renouncing the Pope's Supremacy, was excommunicated, and *Otho* Duke of *Brunſwick* was put up againſt him. The eſpouſing the Cauſe of theſe two Competitors by different Parties, engag'd the Empire in a bloody War; but *Philip* being aſſaſſinated in his Bed,

Otho the ſurviving Competitor ſucceeded in the Whole Empire *Anno* 1208. but the Pope and Electors ſoon depos'd him; and he being deſerted, dy'd at *Brunſwick*, and they ſet up,

Frederick II. *Anno* 1218. He was five Times excommunicated by three Popes; but at laſt got Pope *Gregory* IX. depos'd from the Papal Chair: And theſe Conteſts between the Popes and the Emperors, gave Riſe to thoſe Heads of the two Factions, the *Guelphs* and the *Gibellines*; the firſt for the Papal See, the latter in the Intereſt of the Emperors.

Frederick dy'd, or as ſome ſay was poiſon'd in *Italy*, and then for Want of a Succeſſor to be unanimouſly fix'd upon, the Empire was in Confuſion for above twenty Years; in which Time there were no leſs than ſix Competitors for the Empire: As, 1. *Henry*, Landgrave of *Heſſe*; but he was kill'd at the Siege of *Ulm*. 2. *Conrade*, *Frederick*'s ſecond Son. 3. *Manfred*. 4. *William*, Earl of *Holland*, declared King of the *Romans* by the Pope in oppoſition to *Frederick* II. 5. *Alphonſus*, King of *Caſtile*; and, 6. *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, Brother to *Henry* III of *England*; but after all this Struggle,

Rodolph Earl of *Hapsburgh*, was unanimouſly choſe by the Electors *Anno* 1273. He created his Son *Albert* Archduke of *Auſtria*, who was afterwards Emperor, and firſt Promoter of the *Auſtrian* Family.

Adolph was declar'd Emperor when *Rodolph* dy'd, *Anno* 1292; but he ſerving with his Troops in the Army of King *Edward* I. againſt *France*, ſo diſguſted the Electors, that they choſe *Albert* abovemention'd; who immediately defeated *Adolph* in a pitch'd Battle, and ſlew him with his own Hands.

Albert was crown'd Emperor, *Anno* 1298. He made his Son *Rodolph* King of *Bohemia*; but was murder'd by his Nephew and three other Aſſaſſins: And,

Henry Earl of *Luxemburgh* ſucceeded *Anno* 1308. but being ſo devout that he receiv'd the Sacrment every Day, a Franciſcan Monk poiſon'd him with the Conſecrated Elements. (See the murdering Devotion of ſuch a Clergy,) The Emperor perceiving himſelf poiſon'd, inſtead of ordering the Fryar to be ſeiz'd, order'd him to get out of the Way; but Juſtice could not ſleep, for the vile Miſcreant not haſtening to abſcond, was taken and flea'd alive. After this, there was a ſmall Inter-regnum, but it was not long before,

Ludowick Duke of *Bavaria*, was choſen Emperor, *viz.* *Anno* 1318; but *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria*, Son of the late Emperor *Albert*, was ſet up by a contrary Faction; but *Ludowick* defeating *Frederick*'s Forces, remain'd ſole Emperor, and bravely oppos'd Papal Encroachments. He depos'd Pope *John*, XXII, and ſet up *Nicholas* V. in his room, and held in Contempt the Popiſh Excommunications which were daily thundred out againſt him.

Charles IV. Son of *John*, King of *Bohemia*, was elected Emperor when *Ludowick* dy'd *Anno* 1346. He was a learned prudent Prince, he contriv'd the *Aurea Bulla*, or Regiſter of the Ceremonies to be obſerv'd at the Election of an Emperor.

Wenceſlaus, the fourth Son of *Charles*, ſucceeded by his Father's Order *Anno* 1378; but being a cruel diſſolute Prince, they depos'd him, and elected,

Frederick Duke of *Brunſwick*, *Anno* 1400; but he was aſſaſſinated by *Henry* Count *Waldeck* as he came from the Place of Election, and,

Rupert Elector Palatine of the *Rhine* was immediately choſen *Anno* 1400; and he dying in Peace, they elected,

Jodocus Barbatus Marqueſs of *Moravia*, and Nephew to the late Emperor *Charles* IV. *Anno* 1410. but he reign'd not quite a Year, and was ſucceeded by,

Sigiſmund King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Brother to the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*. He was reckon'd a Man of uncommon Piety as ſome call him, and indeed it was uncommon Piety in him to ſuffer *John Huſs*, and *Jerome* of *Prague*, to be condemn'd and burnt as Hereticks. *See* Chap. IV. of *Bohemia*, &c.

Frederick IV. Duke of *Auſtria*, and Son-in-law to *Sigiſmund*, was choſen Emperor when his Father dy'd, and was crown'd at *Rome*; he married *Leonora* Daughter to *Alphonſus* King of *Portugal*, and by that Means united the Houſes of *Spain* and *Auſtria*. He fill'd the Imperial Throne fifty three Years, and was ſucceeded by,

Maximilian Anno 1493; but had been elected King of the *Romans* ſeven Years before. He married *Mary* Daughter and Heireſs of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*; and by that Means all that Duke's Territories were transferr'd to the Houſe of *Auſtria*.

Charles V. by ſome call'd *Charles* the Great, ſucceeded him. He was the Son of *Philip* King of *Spain*. He was alſo Grandſon of *Maximilian*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*. He was elected Emperor *Anno* 1519; but *Francis* King of *France* being his Competitor for the Crown, tamper'd with the Electors in hopes to deſtroy the Election by preventing his Coronation; and ſo far prevail'd that *Charles* was not crown'd till *Auguſt* 1520. *Martin Luther* liv'd about this Time, whoſe Doctrine *Charles* condemn'd, but did not perſecute his Perſon; and ſo zealous were his Followers in Proſecution of the Reformation from Popery, that they proteſted againſt a Decree of the Imperial Diet, which was made in Favour of the Roman Catholicks; and from thence it was, that thoſe who thus diſtinguiſh'd themſelves againſt the Roman Catholicks, were call'd Proteſtants, as they are at this Day. He was a victorious Prince; he had the Pope and the King of *France* Priſoners, both

at

at the ſame Time. He conquer'd the Kingdom of *Tunis* in *Africa*; he took the Elector of *Saxony* and the Prince of *Heſſe* Priſoners, and drove the *Turk* from the Siege of *Vienna*; and in a Reign of thirty eight Years, ſatisfy'd with his Succeſſes and Victories, he retir'd into a Convent in *Spain*, where he ſpent the Remainder of his Time, which was about two Years, in a religious Life, having at his quitting the Empire, ſurrendred it to his Brother,

Ferdinand, who was accepted and confirm'd by the Electors *Anno* 1558; but Pope *Pius* IV. refuſed to confirm him in the Empire, becauſe he was not conſulted either in the Reſignation of *Charles*, nor in the Election of *Ferdinand*; however he reign'd ſix Years, a Lover of his Subjects, and Favourer of the Proteſtants. He was ſucceeded by his Son,

Maximilian II. who was alſo King of *Bohemia*, and afterwards of *Hungary*. He was ſo tender to the Proteſtants, that he was call'd by ſome, the *Lutheran* Emperor.

Rodolph, the Son of *Maximilian*, ſucceeded his Father *Anno* 1576. He was a great Student in Arts and Sciences, eſpecially Mathematicks. *Tycho Brahe* liv'd in his Time, and was entertain'd by him at his Court. It is ſaid he was ſo intent upon his Studies, that he neglected the Affairs of Government.

Matthias Brother of *Rodolph*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, ſucceeded *Anno* 1612. He was a Perſecutor of the Proteſtants. [*See the Reign of* Rodolph *King of* Bohemia.] He dy'd without Iſſue, and was ſucceeded by,

Ferdinand of *Gratz*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, and Grandſon to *Ferdinand* I. *Anno* 1619; but the *Bohemians* apprehending that as he was likewiſe King of *Bohemia*, he would follow the Steps of his Predeceſſor in his Severity to the Proteſtants, offer'd the Crown of *Bohemia* to *Frederick* V. Count Palatine of the *Rhine*. This ſo incens'd *Ferdinand*, that nothing leſs than the Deſtruction of the Proteſtants could ſatisfy his Revenge; whereupon a bloody War commenc'd in *Germany*, which laſted near thirty Years; but the Wars were ended by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*, and the Proteſtants reſtor'd to their Civil and Religious Rights in the Reign of,

Ferdinand III. He was elected King of the *Romans Anno* 1636. and ſucceeded to the Empire *Anno* 1637. He maintain'd a War againſt the Proteſtants: but being deſerted by moſt of the Princes of the Empire, which humbled him a little, he procur'd his eldeſt Son *Ferdinand* to be elected and crown'd King of the *Romans Anno* 1653; but he dying within a Year afterwards, his Father the Emperor ſucceeded him as King of the *Romans*, as well as continuing Emperor of *Germany*, in which he was ſucceeded by,

The *German Pa* Convent.

Leopold, the only ſurviving Son of *Ferdinand* III. He was elected and crown'd Emperor *Anno* 1658. At his Coronation he oblig'd himſelf to protect *Chriſtendom*, the See of *Rome*, and the Pope, and to promote Peace and Juſtice in the Empire according to the Laws; and alſo to protect the Electors of *Saxony*, *Brandenburgh*, and *Palatine*, and all their Proteſtant Subjects, according to the Treaty of *Oſnaburgh*; to obſerve the Imperial Conſtitution, and Acts of the Diet, and not to ſuffer any thing to be publiſh'd againſt the Peace of Religion, as concluded in the Treaty abovemention'd: That he will protect the Electors, Princes, and States of the Empire, in the Enjoyment of their Rights and Priviledges; and that the Ambaſſadors of the Electors ſhall take the Place of thoſe ſent from any Republick. That he will make no Alliance with Foreign States, or engage in any War without the Conſent of the Electors, Princes, and Sates of the Empire, or alienate any thing belonging to the Empire without the Conſent of the Electors. That he will not pretend to any Hereditary Right of Succeſſion to the Imperial Dignity, but will maintain the Electors full Power to elect a King of the *Romans*, without any Regard to his Conſent; and that none ſhall be admitted into his Councils or Offices but Natives of the Empire. And laſtly, the moſt remarkable Article of this *Pacta Conventa*, is, That he will not furniſh *Spain* with any Aſſiſtance againſt *France*.

When *Leopold* came to the Crown of *Germany*, *Charles Guſtavus* King of *Sweden* was become a very formidable Enemy to the *Germans*; for he having conquer'd a great Part of *Poland*, penetrated into the North Parts of *Germany*; but the Emperor *Leopold*, in a Confederacy with *Denmark*, *Brandenburgh*, and *Poland*, withſtood him till the Peace of *Oliva* put an End to that War *Anno* 1660. and three Years after that, he engag'd in a War with the *Turks*, wherein though he loſt the City of *Newhauſel*, yet he afterwards frequently defeated the *Turks*; and *Anno* 1664. a Truce was concluded between the two Empires for twenty Years.

But although the Emperor was at reſt on that Side, yet the *Hungarians* continu'd to form Conſpiracies againſt him, and offer'd their Country to the *Grand Seignior*, in order to obtain Protection from him againſt the Emperor; but their Deſign did not ſucceed, for the *Turks* being engag'd in the Siege of *Candia*, rejected the Propoſal, and the *Hungarians* were by that Means left to defend themſelves againſt their Prince the Emperor, whom they had ſo exaſperated.

The Emperor took this Advantage of their Diſtreſs to reduce them, and ſent a ſtrong Army commanded by the Duke of *Lorrain* againſt them *Anno* 1671, who recover'd many of the revolted Cities to Obedience, and made the Leaders of the Male-contents Priſoners, and afterwards beheaded them; and flush'd with this Succeſs, and hoping totally to extirpate the Proteſtant Religion, plac'd the moſt biggotted Roman Catholick Judges and Governours over them, who exercis'd all manner of Barbarities upon them, which made them fly from thoſe pretended Chriſtians, whoſe tender Mercies are ſuch barbarous Cruelty, to find Shelter and better Uſage among the *Turks* themſelves. But the Emperor finding his Subjects deſert at that Rate, and ſenſible how unable he would be to oppoſe the *Turk* if his Subjects ſhould abandon him, order'd his Miniſters to treat them with better Uſage.

While the Emperor was thus embarras'd, and conſequently weakned by the *Turks* firſt, and afterwards by the *Hungarians*, the *French* in the Years 1672. and 1673. over-run a good Part of *Holland* and *Flanders*, and committed great Ravages in the *Palatinate* and on the Frontiers of *Germany*. To put a Stop to which, the Emperor enter'd into an Alliance with *Spain* and *Holland* againſt them, and ſent an Army of forty thouſand Men to aſſiſt the *Dutch* againſt *France*, who ſtrugg'l'd with different Succeſs till the Year 1678; when the Peace of *Nimeguen* put an End to the Difference of the contending Parties of *France* and *Germany*.

But the Affairs of *Hungary* were ſtill embroil'd, for four thouſand *French* had join'd Count *Teckley* in Favour of the *Hungarians* againſt the Emperor. This brought the Emperor to Terms, which was to confirm all the civil and religious Rights of the *Hungarians* to them, if they would return to their Allegiance; and ſome other Acts were paſs'd in Favour of the Proteſtants; but Count *Teckley* would come to no Terms with the Emperor upon any Account, becauſe the *Turk* had promis'd to make him Sovereign of *Hungary*.

THE *French* King being well appriz'd of the *Grand Seignior*'s Design to quarrel with the Emperor, he surpriz'd *Strasburgh*, a *German* Frontier towards *France*, *Anno* 1680; and Count *Teckley* having married the Princess *Ragotski*, and thereby got Possession of what Places belong'd to that Family, rais'd an Army of thirty or forty thousand Men and join'd the *Turk*; who then found himself so strong, that *Anno* 1683, he declared War against the Emperor.

WHEN the Emperor saw this Storm a brewing, he sent Embassies to the Princes of *Christendom*, to desire their Assistance; most of whom, especially Pope *Innocent* XI. and *James Sobieski*, then King of *Poland*, who vigorously withstood the *Turks*, [*See his Life in the History of* Poland.] stood by the Emperor.

IN the mean time Count *Teckley* by Conquest and Plunder, made himself Master of several Towns in *Hungary*, and began to think himself Sovereign of that Kingdom, and coin'd Money in his own Name; which the Emperor not being willing to put up with, sent the Duke of *Lorrain* with a powerful Army against him; but while the Imperial Forces were endeavouring to reduce the revolted Towns of *Hungary* to Subjection, the *Grand Vizier* and Count *Teckley* besieg'd *Vienna* in *July* 1683. the Emperor and his Court having but just Time to retire before it was invested.

Vienna besieg'd.

THE Siege was carried on with such Fury, that in two Months Time the Garison despair'd of maintaining their Ground, till the Elector of *Saxony*, and the King of *Poland*, join'd the Duke of *Lorrain* (the Emperors General) and gave the Besiegers Battle; and Count *Teckley* and his Forces being absent upon some other Expedition, the *Imperialists* drove the *Turks* from the Siege; their Horse fled, and their Foot was left to the Mercy of the conquering Christians. The Siege was rais'd the twelfth of *September* 1683; but the Christians not content to leave off thus, pursu'd the *Turks*, drove them out of the Island *Schutz*, and retook the Fortress of *Gran*, below *Schutz* Island, and other Places of Consequence, from the *Turks*.

IN the Years 1684 and 1685, the *Imperialists* had Success against both the *Turks* and *Hungarians*; they defeated Count *Teckley*, and took several Towns; and *Anno* 1686. the Christians form'd the memorable Siege of *Buda*, and took it by Storm; and in 1687. the Emperor reduced the greatest Part of *Hungary*, and caused his eldest Son *Joseph* to be crown'd at *Presburgh*; and procured the Consent of the States, that the Kingdom of *Hungary* should be no more elective but hereditary. In the Year 1688. the Duke of *Bavaria* with an Army of *Imperialists* took *Belgrade* from the *Turks*, which very much startled them, there being no Place of any Strength between that and *Constantinople*.

WHILE the Emperor was thus busied, the *French* continued to ravage in the *Palatinate*, plundering, and then burning, the Towns between *Heidelburgh* and *Frankfort*; whereupon the Emperor prevail'd upon *England*, *Holland*, *Spain*, *Savoy*, and several of the *German* Princes, to enter into a Confederacy: The Substance of which was as follows, *viz.*

THAT *they would never make Peace with* Lewis XIV. *of* France, *until he had made Reparation to the Holy See for all Damages done to it, and till he had made void all his infamous Proceedings against the Holy Father Pope* Innocent XI. *nor till he had restor'd to each Party, all that he had taken from them since the Peace of* Munster; *and to the Protestants of* France, *all their Possessions and Goods and Liberty of Conscience*; *and to the States of the Kingdom of* France, *their antient Liberties and Priviledges.*

UPON the Conclusion of this Alliance, a War broke out, and was vigorously carried on both on the *Rhine* and in *Flanders*; and while the Duke of *Lorrain* was sent against the *French* upon the *Rhine*, Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* commanded on the Frontiers of *Turky*, and defeated the *Turks* in a general Battle near *Patochin*, and afterwards took *Nissa* and *Widin*; and *Anno* 1690. the Emperor procur'd his eldest Son *Joseph* (already King of *Hungary*) to be chosen King of the *Romans*.

BUT *Anno* 1690. the Emperor lost both *Widin* and *Nissa*; and not only so, but *Belgrade* was also taken by Storm, or rather by the blowing up of a Magazine, which threw down a great Part of the Wall, and made an Entrance for the *Turks* to take Possession. Count *Teckley* was then made Prince of *Transilvania* by the *Grand Seignior*, routed the *Imperialists*, and took Possession of that Country; but he did not hold it quite a Year, for Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* defeated the *Turks* the following Year in a general Battle near *Salankamen*, wherein the *Grand Vizier* was kill'd. They also took *Peterwaradin*; but laying Siege to *Belgrade* *Anno* 1693, the *Turks* defended it with so much Resolution, that they were forc'd to raise the Siege.

IN the Year 1695, the *Turks* again invaded *Transilvania*, and the Imperial General *Veterani* was defeated, taken Prisoner, and beheaded. The *Turks* and *Germans* had also an Engagement near *Temeswaer*; but the Loss was so equal, that both claim'd the Victory. But the last considerable Battle that was fought between the *Turks* and *Christians* in that War, was near *Zenta* in *Hungary*, *Anno* 1697. in which Prince *Eugene* commanded the *Christians*, and gain'd a compleat Victory over the *Turks*; who had thirty thousand Men kill'd of whom, the *Grand Vizier* was one. The *Imperialists* took their Camp, Cannon, and an incredible Quantity of Ammunition and Provision. This Year, *Augustus*, the Elector of *Saxony*, who had commanded the *Imperial* Army at the Battle of *Temeswaer*, was made King of *Poland*, to the great Mortification of the *French*, who put up the Prince of *Conti* against him. [*See this at Large in the History of* Poland, *Chap.* IV. Page 359.] Perhaps this might have some Influence upon the *French*, and might bring them to better Terms at the Treaty of *Reswick*, which was about this Time sign'd, between the Confederates and *France*, and a Peace concluded; but upon Articles quite different from the abovemention'd Confederacy between *England*, *Holland*, *Spain*, &c. for in that Confederacy, there was to be *no Peace with* France, *till the* French *Protestants were restor'd to their Civil and Religious Rights*: But in this Peace, those Protestants are not so much as mention'd, but Popery is establish'd in the *Palatinate*, and the abandon'd Protestants left to the tender Mercies of their Enemies.

THE Substance of the other Articles of the Treaty of *Reswick* was, That *France* should restore to *Spain*, the Towns that had been taken by the *French*; as *Barcelona*, *Roses*, *Giroims*, *Luxemburgh*, *Mons*, *Charleroy*, and all other Towns that had been taken by the *French* in the *Low Countries* or in *America*. *Lorrain* was to be restor'd to its Duke, and several other Restitutions were to be made; and these Transactions fill'd up the Year 1697.

IN the following Year 1698, a Treaty was propos'd between the two Empires of *Turky* and *Germany*, in which the *English* and *Dutch* were chose Mediators; and the Result was, That a Truce was agreed upon between the two Empires for twenty five Years. *Transilvania* was confirm'd to the Emperor, and the Province of *Temeswaer* to the *Grand Seignior*. That the Roman Catholicks in the *Turks* Dominions, were to have the free Exercise

Treaty of Carlowitz

ercise of their Religion; and for the rest, that every Party should keep what he was possess'd of. This was call'd the Treaty of *Carlowitz*.

Treaty of Partition.

In the Year 1699. the *English*, *French*, and *Dutch*, enter'd into a Treaty for the Partition of the *Spanish* Dominions, between the Arch-duke *Charles*, and the *Dauphin* of *France*, in Case K. *Charles* II. of *Spain* should die; and although the *Austrian* Family pretended to an undoubted Right to the whole *Spanish* Monarchy, yet the united Powers abovemention'd, did all this without so much as consulting the *Austrian* Family or the Emperor; which he so resented, that when he was afterwards desired to come into the Treaty, he was so far from embracing the Proposal, that he rejected it with high Indignation.

King of Spain dies.

This Treaty of Partition had been but a small Time ratify'd before *Charles* King of *Spain* dy'd, *viz. November* 1. 1700; upon which the King of *France* gave out, that the King of *Spain* had by his Will, appointed the Duke of *Anjou*, second Son to the *Dauphin* of *France*, to succeed him in all his Dominions; and Old *Lewis* XIV. accordingly, without any Regard to the *Treaty of Partition*, took Possession of the *Spanish* Territories in *Spain* and *Italy*, and the *Low Countries*, for his Grandson the Duke of *Anjou*; and declar'd him King of *Spain*, and all its Territories and Appendages: And *England* and *Holland* not only acknowledg'd his Title, but K. *William* and the *States General* sent him Letters of Congratulation upon his Accession; and he was crown'd at *Madrid*, *Apr.* 14. 1701.

The Emperor not approving of those Proceedings, sent Prince *Eugene*, with an Army of forty thousand Men, into *Italy* that Summer, to maintain the Emperor's Right to the *Spanish* Territories there; and while this was in Dispute, *James* II. the abdicated K. of *England* dy'd, *Sept.* 6. 1701. whereupon, the King of *France* caused *James*, the supposed Son of King *James* II. but now known in *England* by the Name of the *Pretender*, to be proclaim'd King of *England*, by the Name of *James* III.

But King *William* being at that Time happily fix'd upon the Throne of *England*, he enter'd into an Alliance with the Emperor and the *Dutch* against the Designs of *France*; in which these three Powers agreed to stand by each other to see the Emperor have Satisfaction for his Pretensions upon *Spain*; and also, that *England* and *Holland* should be secured in their Dominions and Commerce; and they came into this Agreement with this Resolution: That, *If this could not be obtain'd in a peaceable Way, and within two Months of the Date of the Treaty,* (*which was* Sept. 7. 1701.) *That then they should assist each other with their Forces to accomplish it.*

The Method they propos'd, was to endeavour to conquer the *Spanish* Netherlands for a Barrier for the *Dutch*; and *Milan*, *Naples*, *Sicily*, and the *Spanish* Places on the Coast of *Tuscany*, for the Emperor; and that the *English* and *Dutch* should possess such Places as they should take from the *Spaniards* in the *Indies*. It was also agreed, That no one of the three Parties, should make Peace without the Consent of the other two; and besides the Articles abovemention'd, that they should never agree that the Crowns of *France* and *Spain* should ever be united under the same Prince, or that the *French* should ever have Liberty to trade in the *West-Indies*.

Pursuant to this Resolution, the *Imperial* Army under Prince *Eugene*, made a considerable Progress in *Italy*; and by a subterraneous Passage, they got into *Cremona*, and surpriz'd the Marshal *Villeroy* in his Bed. But while the *English* and *Dutch* were preparing to assist the Emperor in the compleat Recovery of his Pretensions to the *Spanish* Dominions in *Italy*, King *William* dy'd *March* 8. 1701-2. to the great Mortification of the Emperor and the *Dutch*, who were in Confederacy with him.

King William dies.

CHAP. V.

An Abstract of the Modern History of Germany, *from the Death of King* William, *in the Reign of the Emperor* Leopold, *to the present Time; being the Reign of the present Emperor* Charles VI.

Upon the Decease of King *William*, Queen *ANNE* immediately succeeded to the Crown of *England*; and she declaring, that she would carry on, and continue the Preparations against *France*, and support the Allies, their Hopes reviv'd, and matters run in the same Channel as formerly. Queen *ANNE* did not fall short of her Promise; for King *William* had not been dead two Months before she declar'd War against *France*, which was done on *May* 4. 1702. and made the Earl of *Marlborough* General of her Forces in the *Low Countries*; and the *Dutch* lik'd her Choice so well, that they also gave him the Command of their Troops; and in his first Campaign, he drove the *French* out of the *Spanish Gelderland*. The *English* Fleet also sail'd for *Spain* with ten thousand Land Forces on Board, under the Command of the Duke of *Ormond*, and attempted a Descent upon *Cadiz*, in Favour of the House of *Austria*, but with little Success; only in their Return home, they met with the *Spanish* Galleons at *Vigo*, which, to those that got the Money, made some considerable Amends for losing their Labour at *Cadiz*.

This same Summer, *Aug.* 4. the *French* and the *Imperialists* had a close Battle, and a doubtful Victory, at *Luzara* in *Italy*; the Slaughter was great, but near equal on both Sides. But this Campaign the *Imperialists* took *Landau* in *Germany*, and the victorious *Marlborough* took *Venlow*, *Ruremond*, and *Stevenswaert* at the same Time. Marshal *Boufflers* abandon'd the City of *Leige* upon the Approach of the Confederates, and the Earl of *Marlborough* took Possession of both it and the Citadel, *Octob.* 23. which put an end to the Campaign of the Year 1702. only it is worth observing, that as the Earl of *Marlborough* was returning by Water from the confederate Army to *Holland*, he was taken Prisoner by a Party of the *French*; but none of them knowing him, and he producing a *French* Pass, they only plunder'd his Boat, and let him proceed on his Passage.

The Allies take *Landau*.

When he return'd to *England*, he was created Duke of *Marlborough*, and the Parliament resolv'd to increase the Number of Forces under his Command in *Flanders*, to fifty thousand Men. In the mean time the Duke of *Bavaria* having declar'd for *France*, they join'd him with a Body of Troops con-

Duke of *Marlborough* created.

manded by the Marſhal *Villars*, and took the City of *Ratisbon*, where the Diet of the Empire were aſſembled. The Elector afterwards invaded *Tyrol*, thinking thereby to open a Communication with the *French* in *Italy*; but the *Imperialiſts* diverted him from that Attempt, by attacking *Bavaria*, thereby making him Work enough to defend his own County; which when he had ſecur'd, he attack'd *Ausburgh*, and took it; while on the other Side, the Confederates in the *Low Countries* took *Bonn*, *Huy*, *Limburgh*, and *Gelder*. The Duke of *Burgundy*, with a Body of *French*, took *Old Briſac*, and Marſhal *Tallard* inveſted *Landau*; and although the Prince of *Heſſe* was detach'd from the *Netherlands* to relieve it, yet *Tallard* defeated him, and the Place was oblig'd to ſurrender.

Towns taken this Campaign. *French* take *Landau*.

On *June* 19. *Boufflers* ſurpriz'd the Confederate Forces under the Command of General *Opdam* near *Eckeren* in *Flanders*, and *Opdam* being ſeparated from his Army fled to *Breda*; but the other Generals maintaining their Ground, a bloody Battle enſued, and the Confederates beat the *French* out of the Field.

The ſame Year the King of *Portugal* came into the Grand Alliance; the Emperor and the King of the *Romans* both reſign'd their Right to the *Spaniſh* Dominions to the Arch-Duke *Charles*, who was thereupon declar'd King of *Spain*, by the Name of *Charles* III. The Duke of *Savoy* came alſo the ſame Year into the Grand Alliance; but the Duke of *Vendoſme*, the *French* General in *Italy*, getting early Notice of the Deſign, made ſix thouſand of his Troops Priſoners; and the Duke by way of Repriſal, confin'd the *French* Ambaſſador, and all the *French* Subjects that he found in his Dominions. About the ſame time the Marqueſs *Viſconti* and General *Starenburgh* join'd the Duke of *Savoy* with between ſeventeen and eighteen thouſand Men, who maintain'd continual Skirmiſhes with the *French*, though inferior in Number; however by thus keeping the *French* employ'd, they in all Probability prevented their over-running moſt of *Italy*; and as it was, the Empire ſuffer'd ſeverely.

Queen *Anne* being inform'd to what Diſtreſs the Empire was reduced by the *French* and *Bavarians*, to which we may add, that there was at the ſame Time a freſh Inſurrection of the Male-Contents in *Hungary* againſt the Emperor, order'd the Duke of *Marlborough* to be detatch'd with a formidable Army from the *Netherlands*, to aſſiſt the *Imperialiſts* on the *Danube*, whither he began his March in the middle of *May* 1704; and being join'd by Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, they attack'd the *Bavarian* Intrenchments near *Donawert*, not far from *Ausburgh*, *July* 2. and took *Donawert*; and entering the Duke of *Bavaria*'s Country, he retired under the Cannon of *Ausburgh*; where Forms of Accommodation between him and the Allies were propos'd, and hearken'd to on both Sides; but the Elector getting Intelligence that Count *Tallard* with a powerful Body of *French* Troops were ready to join him, he abruptly broke off from the Treaty, as thinking himſelf now a Match for the Confederates; which ſo provok'd the Duke of *Marlborough*, that he detach'd thirty Squadrons of Horſe to burn and deſtroy the Country of *Bavaria*, even to the Walls of the Capital City of *Munich*.

Battle of *Hochſtet*

On *Aug.* 3. the Duke of *Marlborough* and Prince *Eugene* engag'd the *French* and *Bavarians* at *Hochſtet*; the Particulars of which Battle, you have in the following Letter, ſent by his Grace the Duke of *Marlborough*, to the Right Honourable Mr. Secretary *Harley*, dated the Morning after the Battle, as follows.

From the Camp at Hochſtet, *Thurſday Morning*, Aug. 4. 1704.

SIR,

I GAVE you an Account on *Sunday* of the Situation we were in, and that we expected to hear the Enemy would paſs the *Danube* at *Lawingen*, in order to attack Prince *Eugene*; at eleven that Night, we had an Expreſs from him, that the Enemy were come over, and deſiring he might be reinforc'd as ſoon as poſſible: Whereupon I order'd my Brother *Churchill* to advance, at one o' Clock in the Morning, with his twenty Battalions; and by three the whole Army was in Motion. For the greater Expedition, I order'd Part of the Troops to paſs over the *Danube*, and follow the March of the twenty Battalions; and with moſt of the Horſe and Foot of the firſt Line I paſſed the *Lech* at *Rain*, and came over the *Danube* at *Donawert*; ſo that we all join'd the Prince that Night, intending to advance, and take this Camp of *Hockſtet*. In order whereto we went on *Tueſday* early in the Morning, with forty Squadrons to view the Ground, but found the Enemy had already poſſeſs'd themſelves of it; whereupon we reſolved to attack them, and accordingly we marched between three and four yeſterday Morning from the Camp at *Munſter*, leaving all our Tents ſtanding. About ſix we came in View of the Enemy, who we found did not expect ſo early a Viſit. The Cannon began to play about half an Hour after eight; they formed themſelves in two Bodies, the Elector with Monſieur *Marſin* and their Troops on our Right, and Monſieur *de Tallard* with all his on our Left, which laſt fell to my Share. They had two little Rivulets, beſides a Moraſs before them, which we were obliged to paſs over in their View; and Prince *Eugene* was forced to take a great Compaſs to come at the Enemy; ſo that it was One o' Clock before the Battle began: It laſted with great Vigour till Sunſet, when the Enemy were obliged to retire, and by the Bleſſing of God we obtain'd a compleat Victory. We have cut off great Numbers of them, as well in the Action as the Retreat, beſides upwards of thirty Squadrons of *French*, which I puſh'd into the *Danube*, where we ſaw the greateſt Part of them periſh; Monſieur *de Tallard*, with ſeveral of his General Officers, being taken Priſoners at the ſame time; and in the Village of *Blenheim*, which the Enemy had intrenched and fortified, and where they made the greateſt Oppoſition, I obliged twenty ſix entire Battalions and twelve Squadrons of Dragoons to ſurrender themſelves Priſoners at Diſcretion. We took likewiſe all their Tents ſtanding, with their Cannon and Ammunition, as alſo a great Number of Standards, Kettle-Drums, and Colours in the Action; ſo that I reckon, the greateſt Part of Monſieur *Tallard*'s Army is taken and deſtroy'd. The Bravery of all our Troops on this Occaſion cannot be expreſs'd, the Generals as well as the Officers and Soldiers behaving themſelves with the greateſt Courage and Reſolution; the Horſe and Dragoons having been obliged four or five ſeveral Times to charge. The Elector and Monſieur *de Marſin* were ſo advantageouſly poſted, that Prince *Eugene* could make no Impreſſion on them till the third Attack at near ſeven at Night, when he made a great Slaughter of them; but being near a Wood Side, a good Body of *Bavarians* retired into it, and the reſt of that Army retreated towards *Lawingen*, it being too late, and the Troops too much tired, to purſue them far. I cannot ſay

too

too much in Praiſe of the Prince's good Conduct, and the Bravery of his Troops on this Occaſion. You will pleaſe to lay this before Her Majeſty, and his Royal Highneſs, to whom I ſend my Lord *Tunbridge* with the good News. I pray you will likewiſe inform yourſelf, and let me know Her Majeſty's Pleaſure, as well relating to Monſieur *de Tallard*, and the other General Officers, as for the Diſpoſal of near twelve hundred other Officers, and between eight and nine thouſand common Soldiers; who being all made Priſoners by Her Majeſty's Troops, are entirely at Her Diſpoſal: But as the Charge of ſubſiſting theſe Officers and Men muſt be very great, I preſume Her Majeſty will be enclined that they be exchanged for any other Priſoners that offer.

I SHOULD likewiſe be glad to receive Her Majeſty's Directions for the Diſpoſal of the Standards and Colours, whereof I have not yet the Number, but gueſs there cannot be leſs than an hundred, which is more than has been taken in any Battle theſe many Years.

SIR,

Your moſt Obedient

Humble Servant,

MARLBOROUGH.

HERE the Confederates had a compleat Victory, for which the Emperor made the Duke of *Marlborough* a Prince of the Empire. The City of *Ausburgh* ſent to deſire the Duke of *Marlborough's* Protection, and the City of *Ulm* ſurrender'd to the *Imperial* Forces *Sept.* 11. After this, Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* took *Laudau*, and the Electorate of *Bavaria* was yielded up to the Emperor.

IN the Year 1704. Admiral *Rook* ſail'd to *Barcelona*, with a Body of Land Forces aboard, commanded by the Prince of *Heſſe*; who landed two thouſand five hundred of them near the Town, and ſent the Governor a Summons to ſurrender; but he refuſed, whereupon the Troops re-embark'd, and the Fleet ſail'd for *Gibraltar*, and attack'd the Place *July* 21. and it ſurrender'd *Aug.* 24. following; and Sir *George Rook* leaving a large Quantity of Ammunition there to ſecure the Place, ſail'd away to engage the *French* Fleet; but by Reaſon of his ſpending and leaving behind him ſo much Ammunition at *Gibraltar*, he had not the expected Succeſs; however he ſo ſhatter'd the *French* Fleet, that they neither next Day, nor during the whole War, durſt ever diſpute with the *Engliſh*, the Right to the Dominion of thoſe Seas.

Gibraltar taken by the Engliſh.

IN this Campaign, the *French* took *Verceil* and *Suza*, which the Confederates were not able to prevent; but the *Hungarian* Male-contents were however prevail'd upon, to accept the Mediation of *England* and *Holland*, which was ſure when it was in their Hands to turn in Favour of the Emperor.

IN *April* 1705. *Verue* and *Piedmont*, and ſoon after, *Nice* and *Villa Franca* ſurrendred, to the *French*; and *Auguſt* 16. a doubtful Battle was fought between the *French* and the *Imperialiſts* near *Caſſano* in *Italy*: Great Numbers were kill'd on both Sides; but the Loſs was ſo equal, that both Parties ſung *Te Deum* for the Victory, when they had much more Reaſon equally to bewail their Loſs.

THE Duke of *Marlborough* commanded on the *Moſelle* this Campaign. The *French* took *Huy* and *Liege*; but upon the Approach of the Confederate Army in *Flanders*, the *French* were forc'd to relinquiſh thoſe Places again. The Duke afterwards enter'd the *French* Lines near *Tirlemont*, and defeated a Body of their Troops; but being about to attack the Grand Army at *Overyſch*, the Deputies of the *States* oppos'd it, and would not ſuffer the *Dutch* Troops to engage; but that was neither the firſt nor laſt Time, that our Dear Allies the *Dutch*, have been the leaſt forward to purſue a War, when there has been moſt Occaſion for it.

IN the Time of this Campaign, *viz. April* 24. 1705. the Emperor *Leopold* dy'd; he was born *June* 9. 1640, crown'd King of *Hungary June* 27. 1655, and of *Bohemia Sept.* 14. 1656. He was elected Emperor *July* 18. 1658. He was ſucceeded by his eldeſt Son *Joſeph*, upon whom *Leopold* laid his dying Commands to aſſiſt his younger Brother *Charles* in the Recovery of the *Spaniſh* Monarchy. His Heart was depoſited behind the high Altar in the Chapel of *Loretta*, his Bowels in the Cathedral Church of St. *Stephen*, and his Body in the *Capuchins* Church at *Vienna*. *Leopold dies.*

THE Grand *Britiſh* Fleet, under the Command of Sir *Cloudeſley Shovel*, ſet ſail from *England*, *May* 24. 1705, having a Body of Land Forces aboard, commanded by the Earl of *Peterborough*; and touching at *Lisbon*, King *Charles* III. came aboard of them. From thence they ſail'd to *Barcelona*, where they arriv'd *Aug.* 11. The Confederate Forces had made a Deſcent, and attack'd Fort *Montjoy*; and though the Prince of *Heſſe* was kill'd in the firſt Attack, yet they carry'd the Fort *Sept.* 6. The City of *Barcelona* alſo ſurrendred *Sep.* 23; and immediately after, the whole Province of *Catalonia*, except *Roſes*, declar'd for *Charles* III. as King of *Spain*.

THE next Winter, the Earl of *Peterborough* took the City of *Valencia*, and oblig'd the whole Province to declare for the Houſe of *Auſtria*. The *Portugueſe* alſo took ſome Towns on the Frontiers of *Spain*. The *French* and *Spaniards* thus apprehenſive of a Revolt in *Spain*, if not the Loſs of the whole Kingdom, if the Confederates were left in quiet Poſſeſſion of *Catalonia* and *Valencia*, they laid Siege to the City of *Barcelona* on *March* 23. where King *Charles* III. commanded in Perſon, while King *Philip* himſelf commanded the *French* and *Spaniſh* Troops which form'd the Siege; for it was thought at that Time, that the Fate of the *Spaniſh* Monarchy depended upon, and would be govern'd by, the Succeſs of this Place only. The Confederates had not above ſeven or eight hundred regular Troops in *Barcelona*, till the Earl of *Peterborough* found Means to throw in three or four thouſand more, who defended the Place till *April* 27. at which Time the Confederate Fleet of fifty Men of War arriv'd in *Barcelona* Road, under the Command of Sir *John Leake*, with Land Forces aboard, commanded by the Earl of *Peterborough*; which ſo ſtartled the *French*, that they immediately rais'd the Siege *May* 1. leaving their Artillery, Ammunition, and Proviſion. And to add to the Value of the Plunder, they left their ſick and wounded Men too, and under the Command of King *Philip*, they march'd directly for *France*. This Siege was rais'd *May* 12. 1706. *N. S.* on that remarkable Day that the Sun appear'd totally eclips'd at *Barcelona*; as alſo at *Cadiz*, *Marſeilles*, *Geneva*, *Bern*, *Zurick*, &c. Whether their raiſing the Siege was the Effect of their Surprize, occaſion'd by the total Darkneſs, or whether they took the Opportunity of this Darkneſs to pack off, and ſet forward for *France*, is uncertain; but ſeveral Perſons there preſent, have affirm'd that the Eclipſe came unexpected to both Armies: However the Learned Aſtronomers were at no Loſs to know of its Approach and Quantity, while the Aſtrological Conjurers did not fail to make the beſt of it in predicting from ſo ſurpri-

The Sun eclips'd. The ſiege of Barcelona raiſed.

zing a *Phænomenon*, no leſs than the Downfal of the *French* and *Spaniſh* Monarchies.

As ſoon as the Siege of *Barcelona* was rais'd, the *Engliſh* and *Portugueſe* Generals advanc'd to *Madrid*; whereupon the Queen and the Court of *Spain* retir'd to the Confines of *France*, and the Confederates took Poſſeſſion of the City *June* 13. 1706; and on the 27th caus'd King *Charles* III. to be proclaim'd; and *Toledo*, and ſeveral great Towns made their Submiſſion: Whereupon the Allies ſent repeated Expreſſes to *Charles* III. to haſten his March to *Madrid*, to take Poſſeſſion of that Capital as King of *Spain*; but before he ſet forward for *Madrid*, the Kingdom of *Arragon* declar'd for him; and fluſh'd with this repeated Succeſs, he march'd to *Saragoſſa*, where he was ſo carreſs'd by his new Subjects, that he ſtay'd feaſting there, till King *Philip* of *Spain* had drawn an Army together too ſtrong for the Allies to reſiſt; whereupon they were oblig'd to quit *Madrid*, and *Toledo*, and other Capital Places, which had put themſelves under the Protection of the Allies, and declar'd again for King *Philip*, and deſerted their new Monarch *Charles* III.

When this was done, King *Charles* III. when too late, join'd the *Portugueſe* at *Guadalaxara* with a few Regiments; but the Confederate Forces not being able to ſubſiſt in *Catalonia* for Want of Proviſions, decamp'd in *September*, and march'd into *Valencia*; againſt which Time, ten thouſand Men had been embark'd from *England* to meet and join them at *Alicant*; but their Number was much impair'd, if not reduc'd one half, before they arriv'd at that Place to enter upon Action. On *Decemb.* 11. this Year, *Don Pedro* King of *Portugal* dy'd, and was ſucceeded by *Don Juan* IV. his eldeſt Son.

At this Time Matters were pretty quiet upon the *Rhine*; and alſo there was in *Hungary* a Suſpenſion of Arms between the *Imperialiſts* and the Male-contents, but it was otherwiſe in *Flanders*; for on *May* 12. 1706. was fought the Memorable Battle of *Ramielles*, between the Confederates under the Duke of *Marlborough*, and the *French* and *Bavarians*, under the Command of the Duke of *Bavaria* and the Marſhal *Villeroy*. The Confederates took all the Enemies Artillery and Baggage; and in ſhort, gain'd a compleat Victory over the *French* and *Bavarians* with very little Loſs on their own Side.

Battle of Ramielles.

Upon this Signal Victory, the Cities of *Louvain*, *Bruſſels*, *Mechlin*, *Ghent*, *Oudenard*, *Bruges*, *Antwerp*, and ſeveral other conſiderable Places in *Flanders* and *Brabant*, declar'd for King *Charles* III. In this Campaign, the Duke of *Marlborough* beſieg'd and took *Oſtend*, *Menin*, *Dendermond*, and *Aeth*.

In *Italy* the Confederates had but ſlender Succeſs at the Beginning of this Campaign; for on *April* 19. the Duke of *Vendoſme* defeated the *Imperialiſts* at *Calcinato*, and on *May* 23. the *French* inveſted *Turin*; and although Prince *Eugene* march'd to its Relief, yet the *French* took the Counterſcarp of the Citadel, and were in a likely way to have taken both the Town and Caſtle; but the Duke of *Savoy* joining Prince *Eugene*, gave a ſudden Turn to the Affair; for they attack'd the *French* in their Intrenchments *Aug.* 27. and totally defeating them, they entred the City in Triumph. The City of *Milan* alſo, and the greateſt Part of that Dutchy, ſubmitted to the *Imperialiſts*; and about the Beginning of *March* following, a Treaty was concluded between Prince *Eugene* for the *Imperialiſts*, and Prince *Vaudemont* for the *French*; in which it was agreed, That the *French* ſhould evacuate all their Acquiſitions in *Italy*, only they ſhould be permitted to march home with all the uſual Marks of Honour.

Milan declares for the Emperor.

A Treaty

And thus ended this Glorious Campaign, which according to the Charge and Expence it coſt, and the proportionable Succeſs that attended it, might have been ſuppos'd to have turn'd out to a vaſt Advantage to *England*; but whether by the Miſunderſtanding of the Officers, or their Contentions for Precedency and Superiority and the like, we ſee what thoſe great Advantages we then gain'd are come to, and how well the *Spaniards* reſpect us at this Day.

In the next Campaign, *viz.* in the Year 1707, the firſt conſiderable Action was the Battle of *Almanza*, between the *French*, commanded by the Duke of *Berwick*, and the Confederates, under the Command of the Earl of *Galway* and the Marqueſs *das Minas*, where the latter were entirely defeated; and the Horſe with their two Generals abovementioned, retreated to *Catalonia*, leaving the Kingdoms of *Valencia* and *Arragon* (who had but juſt before, declar'd for *Charles* III.) to the Mercy of their exaſperated King *Philip*, who made them pay dear for revolting from him. And this ill Succeſs of the Allies, occaſion'd *Saragoſſa*, and ſeveral other Places, to ſubmit again to King *Philip*'s Forces.

This ill Succeſs of the Confederates, was imputed to the Forces being diverted by an Enterprize leſs material; for there were near thirty thouſand Forces ſent from *England* for the Service of the Allies in *Spain* and *Portugal*; but not quite nine thouſand of them were at the Battle of *Almanza*; for the Duke of *Savoy* in an Attempt to take *Toulon*, employ'd the Grand Fleet of *England*, and upwards of forty thouſand Men by Land, and yet the Project came to nothing; whereas in all Probability, had they been all or moſt of them ſent to *Spain* at that Battle of *Almanza*, where their Aſſiſtance was ſo neceſſary, they would ſoon have put an End to the War in *Spain*, and have fix'd *Charles* III. upon the Throne of that Monarchy, beyond Contradiction and Diſpute.

In the mean time, fifteen thouſand *Imperialiſts* under the Command of Count *Thaun*, enter'd the Kingdom of *Naples*, and the Capital City of *Naples* ſubmitted to own King *Charles* III. without ſtriking one Stroke. He took *Gaita* by Storm, and in it the Duke *de Eſcolona*, who was then Viceroy of *Naples* under King *Philip*; ſo that now, all the Kingdom of *Naples* was reduc'd to the Obedience of King *Charles* III.

We do not find that the Confederate Army did much Execution this Year; but the Reaſon of that we ſhall not undertake to meddle with: However the *French* under Marſhal *Villars* were not idle; for he forc'd the Lines of *Buhl*, took *Raſtal*, and laid under Contribution, to the Circles of *Suabia* and *Franconia*, the Electorate of *Mentz*, the Landgravate of *Darmſtat*, the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, and ſeveral other *German* Principalities. And as if this Year had not been compleatly fatal, it was drawn towards a Concluſion with the Loſs of the *Aſſociation* Man of War, and in her Sir *Cloudeſley Shovel*, and all his Ship's Company, which was near a thouſand Men, upon the Rocks of *Scilly*; two or three Men of War of the ſame Fleet undergoing the ſame Fate; and to this we may add, that about the ſame time, four *Engliſh* Men of War and a rich Fleet of Merchant Ships were taken even at our own Doors, *viz.* off of the *Lizard*, by a *French* Squadron from *Breſt*, which was the Tragical Concluſion of that Year's Tranſactions.

In the next Year, *viz.* 1708. General *Staremberg* was ſent to command the *German* Forces in *Spain*, and Major General *Stanhope* was ſent to *Barcelona*, to command the *Engliſh*. Sir *John Leake* at the ſame Time convoying ſix or eight thouſand Men from *Italy* to *Spain*, to re-inforce King

Charles

Charles III. and bringing with him to *Barcelona*, the Princeſs of *Wolfembuttle*, who had been contracted to King *Charles*; and now the Marriage was conſummated at this Place; and, whether out of Conſcience to the *Jewiſh* Cuſtom of refraining from the Wars the firſt Year after his Eſpouſals, or for the Love of his young Queen, is uncertain, but there was very little done in *Catalonia* this Seaſon. Indeed when Admiral *Leake* had ſet the Queen of *Spain* aſhore, he ſail'd to *Sardinia*; and with little or no Reſiſtance, both the City of *Cagliary*, and the whole Iſland of *Sardinia* unanimouſly declar'd for King *Charles* III. The Confederate Fleet alſo reduc'd to his Obedience, Port *Mahon* and the Iſland of *Minorca*. The young King of *Portugal* was alſo this Year married to *Mary Anne*, Archdutcheſs of *Auſtria*. So that by the Kings of *Spain* and *Portugal* this Campaign, if it may be ſo call'd, was more taken up with marrying than fighting; very little elſe being done on the Side of *Spain* and *Portugal*.

Cagliary and Minorca reduc'd.

In *June* 1708. the Elector of *Hanover* was admitted to ſit and vote in the Electoral College, though it had been oppos'd for ſixteen Years; whereupon he took upon him the Command of the *Imperial* Forces upon the *Rhine*; but it was a Campaign of but little Action in that Quarter; but in *Flanders*, the *French* this Summer ſurpriz'd *Ghent* and *Bruges*, and inveſted *Oudenard*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Berry*, and the Chevalier *de St. George*, being in the *French* Army; but the Duke of *Marlborough* and Prince *Eugene*, attack'd them, made them raiſe the Siege, and they were glad to retire to *Ghent*: Whereupon the Duke of *Marlborough* put *Artois* and *Picardy* under Contribution; and the *French* by way of Reprizal, did the ſame by *Dutch Flanders*.

Prince *Eugene* laid Siege to *Liſle*, *Auguſt* 13. while the Duke of *Marlborough* with the Grand Army cover'd the Siege. *Liſle* is ſaid to be one of the ſtrongeſt Fortreſſes in the World, and was defended by twenty one Battalions of Foot, commanded by the Marſhal *Buſſlers*. In this Siege, Prince *Eugene* was wounded by a Musket Ball; and being thereby confin'd to his Tent, the Duke of *Marlborough* carried on the Siege. The *French*, the more to diſtreſs the Beſiegers, cut off their Communication with all their Gariſons except *Oſtend*; which General *Webb* obſerving to be open, march'd from thence with a great Convoy of Proviſions for the Beſiegers at *Liſle*; and although he was attack'd by General *de la Mothe*, with twenty four thouſand *French* under his Command, the *French* were defeated, and the Convoy and Proviſions arriv'd ſafe at *Liſle*. This Engagement was *September* 28, and *Liſle* ſurrender'd to the Allies in leſs than a Month afterwards, *viz.* on *Octob.* 23; but the Caſtle did not ſurrender till the ninth of *December* following.

Liſle beſieg'd.

Liſle ta-

While the Allies were beſieging *Liſle*, the Duke of *Bavaria* attack'd *Bruſſels*; but the Duke of *Marlborough* ſoon rais'd that Siege, and on the 18th of *December*, inveſted *Ghent*, which ſurrender'd on the thirtieth; and the next Day, the *French* quitted *Bruges*, and all the Towns they had taken in *Spaniſh Flanders*. And thus the brave Duke of *Marlborough*, who did not confine his Campaigns to the Summer Seaſon only, made an End of this in the Winter, and brought it to a Concluſion not only in the Month, but upon the very Day that the Year came to its Period.

Ghent ta-

1709. In the Year 1709. the *French* form'd Preliminaries for a Pacification, in which they offer'd to acknowledge *Charles* III. for King of *Spain*, and to yield up all their *Spaniſh* Dominions to the Houſe of *Auſtria*; and to reſign *Strasburgh*, *Briſac*, &c. to the Emperor; alſo to acknowledge the Queen of *Great Britain*; alſo to demoliſh *Dunkirk*, and relinquiſh *Liſle*, and all other Places that the Allies had taken in the *Netherlands*. But when all theſe Particulars were agreed upon in their Negociations, the *French* Plenipotentiaries refuſed to ſign the Articles; whereupon the Treaty broke off abruptly, and both Parties prepar'd to renew the War.

Propoſals for a Peace.

On *June* 27. the Allies inveſted *Tournay*, and took it *July* 30. but the Citadel did not ſurrender till *Septemb.* 3. following; and on the eleventh of the ſame Month, was fought the Battle of *Malplaquet* near *Mons*, between the Allies commanded by the Duke of *Marlborough* and Prince *Eugene* on one Party, and the *French*, commanded by the Marſhal *Villars* and *Boufflers* on the other Party; each Army conſiſting of an hundred thouſand Men or upwards. The *French* were very advantageouſly poſted, and were in ſome Places cover'd by triple Intrenchments, and the Intervals were planted with Artillery, which made the Acceſs of the Allies to the Enemy more difficult; but the Allies forc'd their Intrenchments, and all the Satisfaction the *French* had, if it could be call'd a Satisfaction, was to retire in good Order, and the Confederates made no vigorous Purſuit after them.

Tournay taken.

Battle of Malplaquet.

The following Winter, the *French* embarraſs'd with the Arms of the Confederates, and diſtreſs'd by Famine, and all other Hardſhips, made freſh Overtures of Peace, in which the *French* King agreed to all the former Articles, only that of aſſiſting to dethrone his Grandſon with his own Troops; but even in Lieu of that, he offer'd to advance a Sum of Money if requir'd; but thoſe Propoſals were rejected; and in the next Treaty, which was at *Gertrudenburg*, we found ſo much Reaſon to put Confidence in our Dear Allies the *Dutch*, that they were wholly entruſted with the Affair of treating with the *French* Plenipotentiaries, nor were the Miniſters of any of the reſt of the Allies admitted into the Treaty; and whoſe Intereſt ſoever their High Mightineſſes had in View, is not material: However this Treaty alſo came to nothing.

The chief Actions that happen'd in *Spain* this Year were, That the Forces of *Philip* King of *Spain*, obtain'd a Victory over the Allies on the Banks of the River *Caga*; and the Allies by way of Repriſal, made themſelves Maſters of *Balaguer* in *Catalonia*.

The Pope refuſing to acknowledge *Charles* III. for King of *Spain*, or to grant him the Inveſtiture of *Naples*, the *Imperial* Generals fell upon the See of *Rome*, taking *Camachio*, and ſeveral other Places in that See; which ſo ſtartled his Holineſs, that he conſented to own *Charles* III. as Sovereign of the *Spaniſh* Dominions.

1710. In 1710. the Allies took ſeveral Towns in *Flanders* from the *French*, as *Mortaign*, *Douay*, *Bethune*, *Aire*, and St. *Venant*; and afterwards made a great Progreſs in *Spain*, but were forc'd to relinquiſh their Conqueſts there for Want of timely Support; but this did not diſpirit them: For on *July* 27. they attack'd King *Philip*'s Army, which himſelf in Perſon commanded, near *Almanaca* in *Catalonia*, and routed his Cavalry; but being late in the Evening, his Foot retired under the Cannon of *Lerida*, and King *Philip* retreated from thence to *Saragoſſa*, to eſcape the Allies, then in purſuit of him.

On *Aug.* 20. the two Rival Kings of *Spain*, *Philip* and *Charles* III. came to a General Battle, in which *Philip* was entirely defeated, and retired to *France* by way of *Navarre*; whereupon the Gates of *Saragoſſa* were thrown open to King *Charles* III. who made a Triumphant Entry into the Town the ſame Night. And about a Week afterwards, he marched to *Madrid*, and took Poſ-

ſeſſion

ſeſſion of it *Sept.* 21; but the Grandees, not willing to be brought under any Obligation to declare for either Party againſt the other, were retir'd from thence upon his Approach; whereupon King *Charles* importun'd the Army of the Allies on the Side of *Portugal* to join him, but he ſucceeded not; and as King *Philip* had aſſembled an Army at *Madrid*, too powerful for King *Charles* to engage with, he return'd to *Catalonia* with a thouſand Horſe, and left the Remainder of his Army to follow him at their Leiſure.

AT the ſame Time the Armies of the Allies, either by ſome Difference between their Generals, or for the better ſubſiſting of their Armies, march'd in two Bodies, and by different Roads; the *Germans* and *Portugueſe* under Count *Staremberg*, took one Road, and the *Engliſh* under General *Stanhope* took the other; but General *Stanhope* with his Forces, halting at *Brihuega*, King *Philip* with his Army ſurrounded the Place *Dec.* 9. where they defended themſelves that Night, but in the Morning were oblig'd to ſurrender Priſoners of War; which, when Count *Staremberg* heard, he march'd to their Relief, but by the way King *Philip* met him, and gave him Battle at *Villa Viciosa* near *Brihuega*; whereupon he march'd towards *Arragon*, drew the Confederate Forces out of the Garriſon Towns in that Kingdom, and march'd to join King *Charles* in *Catalonia*; notwithſtanding which, the *French* ended this Year's Campaign with taking *Girone* this Winter.

1711 Emperor of *Germany* dies.

ON *April* 20. 1711. *Joſeph*, Emperor of *Germany* dy'd; upon which, the Allies uſed their utmoſt Efforts to have *Charles* III. King of *Spain*, and next younger Brother to the deceas'd Emperor, elected to ſucceed him in Order; to which Purpoſe Prince *Eugene* ſent a ſtrong Detachment from the Grand Army in *Flanders* to reinforce the *Imperialiſts* upon the *Rhine*, and prevent the *French* from penetrating into *Germany*, as they were intending, in order to influence the Electors to the Detriment of King *Charles* III. and to fruſtrate his Advancement as intended by the Allies, to the *Imperial* Throne of *Germany*.

THE Confederate Fleet convoy'd *Charles* III. to *Vado* in *Italy*, where he arriv'd *Octob.* 7, and went from thence to *Milan*, and reſided there till he was choſen Emperor, which was the twelfth of the ſame Month *October*; and that was no ſooner done, but *France* offer'd Propoſals of Peace to the Allies: The new Emperor withſtood it, and endeavour'd to diſſwade the Princes of the Empire and the *Dutch*, from entring into any Treaty with *France* without further Conceſſions. But Queen *ANNE* on the other hand, agreed to a Treaty, and pitch'd upon *Utrecht* for the Place, and that the Conferences ſhould begin there on *Jan.* 1. *Old Style*; and accordingly invited the Confederates to ſend their Miniſters thither. The Emperor hearing this, diſpatch'd Prince *Eugene* himſelf to *England*, to diſſwade Queen *ANNE* from treating with *France*; but her Miniſtry prevail'd with her to carry on the Treaty, alledging as one Reaſon, what *England* has found too true, *viz.* That the *States General* were deficient two Thirds of the Shipping they had ſtipulated to provide, by which Means the *Engliſh* Navy was forc'd to perform the Services which belong'd by Contract to our *Faithful Allies* the *Dutch*; and thereby the *Engliſh* Merchant Ships ſuffer'd for Want of Convoy, as well as the Navy ſuffer'd for Want of the Aſſiſtance agreed upon. And to this we may add, that the *Dutch* were deficient upwards of twenty thouſand Men in their *Quota* of Troops which they had agreed to ſend into the *Netherlands*; whereby the Burthen and Charge of the War in *Spain* and *Portugal*, was moſtly thrown upon the *Engliſh*. The Emperor at the ſame time, who was moſt nearly concern'd in the Event of that War, had no Troops at all in his Pay, except in the laſt Year of it, and then he furniſh'd but one ſingle Regiment; whereas *Britain* maintain'd ſixty thouſand Land-men, beſides the vaſt Charge of Shipping; and all this to make new Conqueſts for the Allies, and enlarge their Dominions, while they at the ſame time abated their Share of the Expence; and not only ſo, but while we were ſtrengthening the Allies, we were weakening our ſelves; for the Revenues of the conquer'd Countries were otherwiſe confounded, and were not apply'd to the carrying on of the War; and though *Britain* had the greateſt Share of Charge in the War, ſhe was to reap no Advantage by it; and on the other Side, putting our Conqueſts into the Hands of the *Dutch*, was giving them a Power to fight us with our own Weapons; or in plain *Engliſh*, deſtroying our Trade to put it into their Hands, as is evident; becauſe the putting of *Newport*, and other Places in *Flanders* into their Hands, render'd our Trade to thoſe Places precarious; and thoſe Places which *Britain* had made ſtrong, might by that Means be made *Britain*'s moſt powerful Enemies. In ſhort, however this Piece of Conduct might be cenſur'd, it is evident by the abovemention'd Circumſtances, that we were brought under a Neceſſity either to do the Work for the *Dutch* and ourſelves too, or ſubmit to hearken to a Treaty of Peace, if not ſubmit to it even upon any Terms. *Who would want ſuch* DEAR ALLIES!

ON *Jan.* 29. *Anno* 1711-12. *New Stile*, was held the firſt general Conference on the Subject of Peace, between the Plenipotentiaries of *Great Britain*, *France* and *Holland*; and Prince *Eugene* on the Emperor's Part advanc'd ſome Promiſes, that the Empire would for the future, contribute more to the Expences of the War than they had done, but *the burnt Child dreads the Fire*; and thoſe Promiſes had ſo little Effect, that Prince *Eugene* had his Audience of Leave of Her Majeſty with Reſpect to his Embaſſy, though to expreſs the Value ſhe had for his perſonal Merit, ſhe made him a Preſent of a Sword ſo enrich'd with Diamonds, that it was valued at above five thouſand Pounds.

QUEEN *ANNE*, in the Middle of thoſe Propoſals of Peace, kept up her Preparations for War; and on *July* 25. the Duke of *Marlborough* paſſing the *French* Lines at *Arleux*, inveſted the Town of *Bouchain Aug.* 1. and it ſurrender'd to the Allies *Sept.* 2. following.

IN the Year 1712. the Duke of *Ormond* had the Command of the *Engliſh* Forces in *Flanders*; and he ſoon declar'd to the Allies, that Queen *ANNE* had given him Orders, that he ſhould not act offenſively; but the Allies however, perſwaded her to conſent to the beſieging of *Queſnoy*, which ſurrender'd on the fourth of *July*, and on the ſeventh *Dunkirk* was ſurrender'd to the *Engliſh*; and about the ſame Time the Duke of *Ormond*, and the *Britiſh* Plenipotentiaries propos'd to the Allies a Ceſſation of Arms, but they rejected it; and Prince *Eugene* with the *Dutch* and *German* Troops ſeparated from the Duke of *Ormond*, and they became as two Parties; and Prince *Eugene* about the Middle of *July*, laid Siege to *Landrecy*; but the Duke of *Ormond* on the Part of the *Engliſh*, and Marſhal *Villars* for the *French*, mutually proclaim'd a Ceſſation of Arms in their reſpective Camps. On *July* 12. he took Poſſeſſion of *Ghent* and *Bruges*, and detach'd from thence ſix Battalions to reinforce the Garriſon of *Dunkirk*.

ON *July* 13. the Allies under Prince *Eugene* found the fatal Conſequence of ſeparating from the *Britiſh* Forces; for the Earl of *Albemarle* being encamp'd at *Denain* to ſecure the Communication between Prince *Eugene*'s Army (before

Lan-

Landrecy) and *Marchiennes*; the Grand Magazine of the Confederates; he was attack'd, defeated, and himſelf taken Priſoner by the Marſhal *de Villars*; many other Officers kill'd and wounded, and vaſt Quantities of Ammunition and Proviſion, with twelve Pieces of Cannon taken by the *French*, and the Town itſelf, with all the vaſt Stores therein contain'd, ſurrender'd in about a Week afterwards, which oblig'd Prince *Eugene* to raiſe the Siege of *Landrecy*, which he did *July* 22. following.

The *French* thus gaining Ground, begun to act upon the offenſive, and inveſted *Douay Aug.* 3. which ſurrender'd the 28th of the ſame Month, the Gariſon being made Priſoners of War; and the *French* flush'd with this Succeſs, inveſted *Queſnoy* the ſame Day, which was ſurrender'd to them *Sept.* 23. The *Dutch* ſtill refuſing to come into the Ceſſation of Arms, Marſhal *Villars* inveſted *Bouchain* in *October*, and carried it in ten Days Time.

In the mean time, there was a Suſpenſion of Arms agreed upon, between *France*, *Spain*, and *Portugal*, for four Months, ſign'd *Octob.* 25; and upon the Ceſſation of Arms between *England* and *France*, the *Engliſh* Forces in *Catalonia* embark'd for *Port Mahon*, where the Duke of *Argyle* commanded; who upon their Arrival, caus'd the Emperor's Colours to be taken down, and the *Engliſh* Colours to be hoiſted on all the Caſtles and Forts in *Minorca*; and the Emperor's Governor in the Iſland refuſing to take the Oaths to Queen *Anne*, was compell'd to retire, and ſo went to *Barcelona*.

1713. About the Beginning of the Year 1713. the *Dutch* agreed to come into the Plan of Peace propoſed to be ſign'd jointly with the *Britiſh* Miniſters, but before the Concluſion of this Peace, a Treaty was propoſed for ſecuring the Proteſtant Succeſſion in *Great Britain*; and the Barrier of the *States General* was ſign'd on *Jan.* 19; in which it was agreed, That the *Dutch* ſhould put Gariſons into the Towns and Citadels of *Tournay*, *Mons*, *Charleroy*, *Namure*, *Ghent*, and ſeveral other Fortreſſes; but here the *Dutch* acted with their uſual Caution; for all theſe Fortifications and Gariſons were to be maintain'd out of the Revenues ariſing from the Country about them; whereby the *Dutch* warily evaded all the Expence which muſt otherwiſe have neceſſarily attended ſo great a Charge. And it was further agreed, That if the *Dutch* ſhould require it, *England* ſhould ſend ten thouſand Foot and twenty Men of War to their Aſſiſtance; and that in Lieu thereof, the *Dutch* ſhould ſend twenty Men of War and ſix thouſand Foot to ſupport the Proteſtant Succeſſion to the *Britiſh* Crown: And finally, That each Party ſhould aſſiſt the other with their whole Force in caſe of any extraordinary Danger.

In the Year 1713, on the laſt Day of *March*, the reſpective Treaties of Peace between *England*, *Pruſſia*, *Portugal*, *Holland*, and *Savoy* on one Part, and *France* on the other Part, were executed at *Utrecht*; but the *Imperial* Miniſter proteſted againſt it for Reaſons he there aſſign'd, and affirm'd, that the *Imperial* Forces were reſolv'd to carry on the War themſelves alone againſt the *French*, till they could bring them to better Terms.

In the Treaty of Peace between *England* and *France*, it was agreed, 1. That the Acts made by the *Engliſh* Parliament for ſecuring the Proteſtant Succeſſion, ſhould be thereby confirm'd and enforc'd. 2. That the Crowns of *France* and *Spain* ſhould never unite. 3. That *Dunkirk* ſhould be demoliſh'd. And, 4. That the *Britiſh* Plantations in *America* in Poſſeſſion of the *French*, ſhould be reſtor'd, and Satisfaction made to all the Allies.

In the Treaty between the *French* and *Dutch*, the *French* were entirely to reſign up the Town and Dutchy of *Luxemburgh*, the Towns of *Namure*, *Charleroy*, *Menin*, *Tournay*, *Furnes*, Fort *Knock*, *Loo*, *Dixmude*, *Ypres*, and ſome other Places, for a Barrier to the *States*; and the *Dutch* on the other Hand were to yield up *Liſle*, *Aire*, *Bethune*, and St. *Venant*.

But the *French* ſtill carrying on the War againſt the Emperor, they took *Landau* about the middle of *Auguſt*, after a Siege of little more than two Months; and after it, the Town and Caſtle of *Friburgh*. This brought the Emperor to a Treaty with *France*, which was manag'd at the Caſtle of *Raſtadt*, by Prince *Eugene* for the Emperor, and Marſhal *Villars* for the *French*; and on *Feb.* 23. 1713-14. the Peace between them was concluded, and it was therein agreed, That the *French* ſhould reſtore to the Emperor, the Towns and Fortreſſes of *Old Briſac* and *Friburgh*, the Forts of St. *Peter*, and of the *Star*, and all other Forts in the *Black Foreſt*; and *Briſgau* with Fort *Kehl*, and Fort *Pile*, and others erected on the Iſlands of the *Rhine* near *Strasburgh*, were to be demoliſh'd, and the Navigation of the *Rhine* to be free to the Inhabitants on both Sides of it. The *French* alſo agreed, That the Emperor ſhould enjoy the *Spaniſh Netherlands*, except the Barrier Towns there already granted to the *Dutch*. And, Laſtly, That the King of *Pruſſia* ſhould be confirm'd in his Poſſeſſions in the upper Part of *Gelderland*, and particularly the Town of *Gelder*, in Lieu of his Pretenſions to the Principality of *Orange* in *France*.

In the Year 1714. died *Sophia*, Electreſs and Dutcheſs Dowager of *Hanover*, who, in Caſe ſhe had ſurviv'd Queen *ANNE*, was to have ſucceeded to the Throne of *Great Britain*. She dy'd in the eighty fourth Year of her Age, on *June* 8. *New Stile*; which according to *Engliſh* Computation, was *May* 28. the Anniverſary of the Birth-Day of her next Succeſſor to the Crown of *England* in Caſe of the Demiſe of Queen *ANNE*, which happen'd not long after; for Queen *ANNE* dy'd *Aug.* 1. the ſame Year 1714. and was ſucceeded by King *GEORGE* I. Elector of *Brunſwick Luneburgh*, who arriv'd at *London Sept.* 20. and was crown'd *Octob.* 20. following. Queen *Anne* dies, and King *George* I. ſucceeds

The *French* and *Spaniſh* Troops under the Command of the Duke of *Berwick*, laid Siege to *Barcelona July* 12. this Year; and although they made a brave Defenſe till *Sept.* 12. and then ſurrender'd, yet it was upon Condition, That their Lives ſhould be ſpar'd, and that the City ſhould not be plunder'd. They defended themſelves ſo long at the Inſtigation of the Emperor, upon his promiſing to ſend them Reinforcements; but he was ſo far from that, that he did not ſo much as take Notice of them in his Treaty with *France*, which was concluded at *Baden Aug.* 27. 1714.

On the 26th of *November* this Year, the *Turks* declar'd War againſt the Republick of *Venice*; and in the Year 1715. they conquer'd the *Morea*, 1715. whereupon the Emperor and the *Venetians* enter'd into a Confederacy for their mutual Defenſe.

The *Turks* and *Germans* being now at Wars, Prince *Eugene* in *Aug.* 1716. attack'd the *Turks* near *Carlowitz*; and having ſlaughter'd them in a dreadful Manner, took their Cannon, Tents, Baggage and Ammunition; alſo their Military Cheſt, with five Millions of Florins coin'd, and the *Grand Vizier*'s Pavilion, with Jewels and Treaſure, to the Value of three hundred thouſand Florins more, with two hundred of his beautiful Women, all between the Age of fourteen and twenty ſix. Prince *Eugene* alſo took *Temeſwar* in *October* following, after the *Turks* had had it in Poſſeſſion an hundred and ſixty four Years. *Temeſwar* taken.

In *June* 1717. the *Imperialiſts* inveſted *Belgrade*, 1717. and in *Auguſt*, Prince *Eugene* gain'd a compleat Victory over the *Turks* that came to aſſiſt the Be-

Belgrade taken. ſieg'd, and the Town ſurrender'd in two Days Time to the *Imperialiſts*: But here Prince *Eugene* was oblig'd to put a Stop to his Conqueſts on that Side, becauſe *Philip* King of *Spain* this Summer augmented his Forces, with a Deſign to reduce *Sardinia*, *Sicily*, and *Naples*, and other *Spaniſh* Dominions in and about *Italy*, to his Obedience; in which Expedition, the Marqueſs *de Lede* was employ'd as General of the *Spaniſh* Forces.

1718 In *July* 1718. the Marqueſs *de Lede* landed in *Sicily* with ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand Men, and moſt of the Towns in the Iſland readily receiv'd him, and ſubmitted to King *Philip*; whereupon the Emperor and the Kings of *Great Britain* and *Sicily* enter'd into a Confederacy againſt *Spain*; and the *Dutch* after their uſual Caution, came in at laſt alſo; and then it was call'd the *Quadruple Alliance*: The Deſign of which was, to confirm the Partition of the *Spaniſh* Monarchy; and in order thereto, Admiral *Byng* was ſent into the Mediterranean, with a Squadron of *Engliſh* Men of War, who coming up with the *Spaniſh* Fleet off of *Syracuſe* on the Eaſt-Coaſt of *Sicily* on *July* 31. 1718. he engag'd them, and that Day and the next, took twelve of their Line of Battle Ships, and burnt three. He alſo took one Ship laden with Arms, and three laden with Proviſions, beſides burning two Fire-Ships, two Bomb-Veſſels, and one Sattee. After the Engagement was over, the *Engliſh* Fleet with all their *Spaniſh* Prizes retir'd to *Syracuſe* Bay, the Place before appointed for their Rendezvouz.

1719 In the Beginning of the Year 1719, the *French* invaded *Spain* by Land; and on the 13th of *April* they took *Port-Paſſage*, and burnt ſix *Spaniſh* Men of War which were on the Stocks almoſt finiſh'd. They took *Fontarabia* and St. *Sebaſtian*, whereupon the whole Province of *Guipuſcoa* ſubmitted to the Crown of *France*. In the mean time the Emperor by the Help of the *Britiſh* Fleet, tranſported an Army into *Sicily*, and took the Town and Citadel of *Meſſina*. This brought King *Philip* to Terms; 1720. and *April* 25. 1720. a Convention was held for a Suſpenſion of Arms, and for the Evacuation of *Sicily* by the *Spaniards*, and ſign'd by the *Imperial* and *Spaniſh* Generals: And on the next Day a Convention was held for their Evacuation of *Sardinia*; 1721. and in the next Year 1721. *Sicily* was ſurrender'd to the Emperor, and the Duke of *Savoy* as King of *Sardinia* took Poſſeſſion of that Iſland.

The Emperor, having no Iſſue-male, ſummon'd a General Diet of the States of the Kingdom of 1722 *Hungary* in *June* 1722. wherein he procur'd the Crown of *Hungary* to be ſettled on the female Line of the Houſe of *Auſtria* on Failure of Male-iſſue.

In this Year 1722. the Emperor erected a Company of Merchants at *Oſtend*, to trade to the Eaſt and Weſt *Indies* and the Coaſt of *Africa*; but the *Dutch* preſented Memorials to him, intimating, that it was contrary to the Treaty of *Munſter*; and that it was very unkind and ungrateful in him to encroach upon their Trade, when they had done him ſo many ſignal Services at the Expence of their Blood and Treaſure.

On the 25th of *Auguſt* this Year, the Emperor was crown'd King of *Bohemia*; and on the 28th, his Empreſs was crown'd Queen; it not being cuſtomary here to have thoſe two Grand Ceremonies of crowning a King and his Queen both perform'd in one Day.

The Congreſs of *Cambray* was open'd in *Jan.* 1723-4. and the firſt Things determin'd were, that the Emperor ſhould grant the Inveſtiture of the Dutchies of *Tuſcany*, *Parma*, and *Placentia* to *Don Carlos Infante* of *Spain*; and that the Artillery which the *Spaniards* took away upon their evacuating *Sardinia*, ſhould be reſtor'd again to the King of *Sardinia*. But beſides this, nothing of any great Conſequence was tranſacted at the Congreſs of *Cambray* this Year.

In the Year 1724. little was done at the Congreſs; but in *Germany*, the Emperor having de- 1724
termin'd to give the Government of the *Auſtrian* Netherlands to the Arch-dutcheſs his eldeſt Siſter, Prince *Eugene*, who had that Poſt, was in Lieu thereof made Vicar General of the *Auſtrian* Dominions in *Italy*, the higheſt Poſt the Emperor could advance him to: For the Viceroys of *Naples* and *Sicily*, the Governor of the *Milaneze*, and all other Imperial Officers and Generals, receive their Orders from him, and pay as entire Obedience to them as to thoſe of the Emperor himſelf.

The Congreſs of *Cambray* continu'd in 1725, 1725
but little was done there; but that Year the Emperor and *Spain* entered into a ſeparate Treaty concluded at *Vienna* in *Auguſt*; wherein the Emperor confirms to King *Philip* of *Spain*, all the *Spaniſh* Dominions in his Poſſeſſion: To the Duke of *Savoy*, the Kingdom of *Sardinia*; and to *Don Carlos*, the Dutchies of *Tuſcany*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*, at the Demiſe of the preſent Duke of *Tuſcany*; and King *Philip*, renounces all Pretenſions to *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Flanders*, or any other Place in Poſſeſſion of the Emperor; but that both ſhould be ſtil'd King of *Spain*: And upon this private Tranſaction between the Emperor and the King of *Spain*, the Congreſs of *Cambray* broke up.

The Emperor this Year alſo, enter'd into an Alliance offenſive and defenſive with *Ruſſia* and *Poland*; and on the other hand, *Great Britain*, *France*, and *Pruſſia*, concluded a Treaty in *Auguſt* 1725. mutually to defend all their reſpective Dominions in all their Trade and Privileges, even by Hoſtilities, if it could otherwiſe be done.

In the Year 1726. the Emperor prohibited the 1726
Importation of *Engliſh* Manufactures into his Dominions; and likewiſe the Importation of any *Eaſt India* Goods, except by the *Oſtend* Company.

In the Year 1726-7. in *February*, the *Spaniards* began their laſt coſtly, as well as unſucceſsful, Siege of *Gibraltar*; which turning to no Account in their Intereſt, they were glad to decline, and have not been much heard of ſince (except for their Buccaniering Trade upon the *Engliſh* in the *Weſt Indies*) till their Alliance with *France* and the King of *Sardinia*, in Favour of *Staniſlaus*, in order to ſet him upon the Throne of *Poland*; which Affair being now in Suſpenſe between him and *Auguſtus*, Elector of *Saxony*, we muſt poſtpone any further Account of it at preſent; and as *Germany* is deeply concern'd in that Affair, we ſhall (if it is determin'd before this our *Hiſtory of the World* is finiſh'd) add the further Circumſtances of it, as a Supplement to the Hiſtory of *Germany*, as well as to that of *Poland*; which we promiſed in the Concluſion of *Chap.* VII. *of the Hiſtory of* Poland, *page* 367.

By a ſlender Review of this Chapter, the curious Reader may make an Eſtimate of what the preſent Emperor of *Germany* has coſt *England*; or elſe find that the Charge is beyond Calculation, if we look back to the Times; firſt, before he was King of *Spain*, and afterwards, before he was Emperor of *Germany*. If ever he would let us know what Retaliation he makes for the Expence of ſo much Blood and Treaſure, that ſhall be as faithfully commuicated as the Battles, Sieges, and Treaties in his Favour have been related; but I do not find that he has as yet given us any Opportunity to enter upon that Subject.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Power of the Emperor of Germany; *also of his Election, and Coronation of the King of the* Romans, *and of the General Diet.*

The Emperor's Power.

IN speaking of the Emperor's Power, it is not meant that it has been, and is always the same; for *Charles* the Great, the first Emperor of *Germany*, who was made Emperor in the Year 800. (*See Chap.* IV.) and was the first that was invested with the Imperial Dignity, his Power extended in an absolute Manner over *Hungary*, *France*, and *Italy*, as well as a great Part of *Germany*; and he could determine in his Life time, who should be his Successor after his Death; which Power, several of the succeeding Emperors retain'd and exercis'd. But the Encroachments of the See of *Rome*, very much embarras'd and lessen'd the Power of the Emperor, as pretending not only to be independant in itself, but to assume an absolute Authority over the Emperor and all Princes of the Earth, to advance or depose at the Holy Father's Pleasure.

THE Power of the Emperor also dwindled very much away by exorbitant Grants, made by some of the Emperors to the Governors of several Provinces, in making their Power not only sovereign, but hereditary, and consequently independant of the Emperor; but on the other hand, the Emperor has recover'd some of his lost Power, since the See of *Rome* has lost much of its former usurp'd Authority, the Emperors being at present neither crown'd nor confirm'd in the *Imperial* Dignity by the Pope. And some of the Emperors have still further thrown off the *Romish* Yoke, and made bold to seize the Church Lands in *Italy*; and in their Turns, taken Possession of *Milan*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; by which Means, the Emperor's Possessions almost surround the Territories of the Church.

THE Emperor not only creates Dukes, Marquesses, Counts, *&c*, but sometimes takes upon him to create Kings too; but he cannot make Peace or War, or levy Taxes, without the Consent of the Electors or Princes of the Empire; nor can he either make or suspend Laws, without the Diet or Assembly of Estates: But nevertheless, what of that Kind the Emperor proposes, is most commonly comply'd with. And since the Emperor's Acquisitions in *Italy*, the *Low Countries*, and *Hungary*, he has been able to cope with any Power (though perhaps not strong enough to withstand any three Powers) in *Europe*, but this is meant by Land.

The King of the Romans.

THE next in Power is the King of the *Romans*, but he is not independant; he derives his Authority from the Emperor, and acts as his Deputy in his Absence; and after the Emperor's Death, he always succeeds to the Empire without further Election. The first Election of a King of the *Romans*, was occasion'd by a Project which one of the Emperors had form'd to secure the *Imperial* Crown in his own Family; in order to which he procur'd his Son, Brother, or near Relation, to be chosen King of the *Romans*, which was much easier done, than to procure him the Succession to the *Imperial* Dignity. And yet that Election was thought so proper a Step towards the *Imperial* Crown, that it became customary to elect the King of the *Romans* to that Dignity; which is now so frequently done, that he that is once King of the *Romans*, if he survives the Emperor, is also almost as sure to succeed him in the Empire, as if the Crown was entail'd upon the Males of the *Austrian* Family; and to chuse a Person King of the *Romans*, is in effect making him Emperor elect.

Electors.

THE next principal Members, are the nine Electors, three of which are Ecclesiastical, *viz.* the Electors of *Mentz*, *Triers*, and *Cologn*, (and they are also Arch-chancellors of the Empire.) The other six are, the King of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Bavaria*, *Saxony*, and *Brunswick*, the Marquis of *Brandenburgh*, and the Prince *Palatine* of the *Rhine*. The Right of Election is continu'd in the Male Line of the Electors, as the Electoral Principalities and Estates are; and every Elector is Sovereign in his own Dominions, and has a Power to make Laws, coin Money, but not to the Prejudice of the Empire, or contrary to their Fealty to the Empire; or if they do, the States of the Empire may proceed against them, and divest them of their Inheritances and the Privilege of Election.

NEVERTHELESS it sometimes happens, that the Emperor dies when there is no King of the *Romans*; and in this Case, the Elector of *Mentz*, as High Chancellor of the Empire, and Dean of the Electoral College, gives Notice to the other Electors to appear at *Frankfort* in a Month's Time, to elect a new Emperor; but the Person is generally agreed upon before they come to the Place of Election. In the Morning, they come to the Town-House, where they put on their Electoral Habits. The three Ecclesiastical Electors have Scarlet Robes, and Caps lin'd with Ermin; the rest have Crimson Velvet Robes lin'd with Ermin: And in this Dress, they proceed to St. *Bartholomew*'s Church; and alighting at the Gate, go in to their respective Seats, follow'd by the Princes and Counts of the Empire. In the time of Divine Service, the Protestant Electors withdraw till Mass is over; and then returning, all the Electors take the following Oath, *viz. That without any Regard to Solicitations, Promises, or Rewards, they will elect such a Person for Emperor, as they believe in their Consciences is fit to govern the World.*

THE Qualifications required in the Emperor, are, That he be a Christian Prince, of *German* Extraction, not under twenty Years of Age, and capable of sustaining the Character of *Imperial* Majesty. He is chosen by a majority of Voices, of which his own may be one; which done, they place him upon the Altar, and the Archbishop of *Mentz* delivers him his Charge in Writing, with the Capitulations or Conditions upon which he is to reign, which he signs, and is thereupon proclaim'd Emperor.

Coronation.

AT the Coronation, the Electors or their Ambassadors attend the Emperor from his Palace to the Church in their Robes. The Elector *Palatine* with the Crown, the Elector of *Bavaria* with the Globe, and the Elector of *Brandenburgh* with the Scepter all a-breast, lead the Procession. Then the Elector of *Saxony* carries the Sword, and the Elector of *Hanover* the Standard. When they come to the Altar, the Archbishop officiates, anoints his Head, his Neck, Breast, right Arm, and between his Shoulders; and then he is brought to another

another Altar, and cloath'd with the antient *Imperial* Robes and crown'd, and then conducted to the Throne, where the Archbishop bids him *Receive and keep the Charge design'd for him by Providence.* Then, *Te Deum* is sung, and Trumpets with other Musick conclude the Ceremony.

Diet. When a General Diet is to be held, the Emperor summons the Princes and Members of the Diet, appointing the Time and Place of their Sitting, and they are obliged to appear punctually, either in Person or by Proxy. But the greater Part is most commonly the latter, and that makes their Debates and Proceedings commonly very tedious, before they bring them to a Determination, when the Proxies Instructions are not perfect, and they are forc'd to send Expresses to their Masters. Sometimes the Emperor summons them to come in Person, when Affairs of Importance are in Debate; and in this Case, the Electors themselves must either appear in Person, or make their Ambassadors Plenipotentiaries, and give them as full Power to act and vote as if it was themselves. The Diet has been held at *Mentz*, *Ausburgh*, &c. but is commonly held at *Ratisbon*; but the Emperor is not limited to any Place to hold it in, any otherwise than that he is obliged to hold it within the Limits of the Empire.

No Member of the Diet is allow'd to propose any thing in it, but only to debate and give their Opinions of what is laid before them by the Emperor, who can at his Pleasure adjourn any Debate from time to time, if the Majority do not fall in with his Sentiments.

The Elector of *Mentz* sits as Umpire or President, and on each Side of him those of *Cologn* and *Triers*, who equally and alternately take his right Hand; next to them are the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, and *Hanover* on the Left, and the King of *Bohemia* with the Electors of *Palatine* and *Brandenburgh* on the Right; and below them the rest in their Order. The Courts of *Suabia*, *Wetteraw*, *Franconia*, and *Westphalia*, have Votes in the general Diet.

The Representatives of the *Imperial* Cities, are divided into two Benches, that of the *Rhine*, and that of *Suabia*. The Business debated at the Diet is generally about Peace or War, the making or reviving of Laws, the raising Taxes, regulating the Coin, &c.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Laws and Courts of Justice in Germany, *with their Modern Religion and Ecclesiastical Government.*

NOT to go further back than the Time of the Emperor *Maximilian* I. who began his Reign in the Year 1493. we find he settled a Court of Judicature at *Worms*, which was afterwards remov'd to *Frankfort*, and last to *Spire*. There is also another High Court of Justice in the Emperor's Palace where-ever he resides, suppos'd to be the same with that call'd the *Aulick Council*; in this the Emperor is supreme Judge, but his Place is usually supply'd by a President. This and the Court of *Spire* have so near an Equality of Power, that there is no Appeal from one to the other. The inferior Courts held in their respective Provinces, shall be spoke of in the Description of the Provinces in which they are held.

Civil Law. The Civil Law is generally observ'd through all the Empire, and with this we may observe the *Golden Bull*, a Parchment-Book of about thirty Chapters, publish'd by *Charles* IV. with the Approbation of all the States of the Empire: It contains all the fundamental Laws relating to the Time, Place, and Persons requisite to the due Election of the Emperor, and the appointing Vicars in Case of an Interregnum; and the Seal of this being Gold, it was thence call'd the *Golden Bull*; and what was done by the Authority of it, was deem'd to be irrevocable.

Another Sort of a Law is the *Capitulatio Cæsarea*, being forty or fifty Articles between the Emperor and the Electors at his Coronation; by which he promises to maintain the Privileges of the Electors, Princes, and other Subjects of the Empire; and that all Places at Court shall be enjoy'd by free-born *Germans*, with other Particulars. They have also Acts of the general Diet, something like our Acts of Parliament. And lastly, the *Pragmatic Sanction*, in which it is decreed, That if any Prince or other Member of the Empire, shall endeavour by open Hostility, to disturb the Peace of the whole Body, he shall be cut off from the Community and deem'd an Out-law.

Pragmatic Sanction.

Religion. Authors differ about the Time of the Conversion of the *Germans* to Christianity; but it is agreed by all, that in the eighth Century, which was before *Germany* was erected into an Empire, that Part of the Country between the *Rhine* and the *Weser*, was converted by the Preaching of Missionaries sent from *England*; and afterwards *Charles* the Great conquer'd the Pagan *Saxons*, and establish'd the Christian Religion among them. But the *Bohemians* and *Moravians* were not converted till some time afterwards.

Reform. The Reformation, of which *Martin Luther* was the chief Instrument, was begun in the Year 1517. occasion'd under Divine Providence, by the Covetousness of the Pope, and the Zeal of *Martin Luther* against unwarrantable Impositions in Religion; for the Archbishop of *Mentz* not being able to pay the Sums the Pope exacted of him, the Pope rather than lose the Money, gave the Archbishop Leave to sell Pardons and Indulgences for any Time, past, present, and to come; Friar *Tekel* hawking those precious Goods about for him in all the great Towns of *Germany* to any that would purchase them.

Luther. *Luther* hearing of their thus making a Market of Indulgences and Pardons, which were not in their Power to sell, and were not their Property to dispose of, he protested against their usurp'd Authority; and both at *Wittenburg* and *Leipsick*, disputed openly against all such Impositions and mercenary Methods of raising Money by deluding the People; for which he was threatned with being excommunicated, and being condemn'd as an Heretick. But the Elector of *Saxony*, the Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburgh*, *Wittenburgh*, *Mecklenburgh*, and *Pomerania*, with the Marquels of *Brandenburgh*, and Landgrave of *Hesse*, encourag'd him, and became his Disciples, and jointly drew up a Protestation against those Points of Doctrine and Practice in the Church of *Rome*, from which they dissented, and presented it to the Church at *Spire*,

Spire, *Anno* 1529. and were thence call'd Proteſtants. (*See the Reign of* Charles V. *Chap.* IV.) And after a hard Struggle for their religious Liberties with various Succeſs, they had a Toleration granted in the Year 1552. at *Paſſau*, which was confirm'd at *Ausburgh* in the Year 1555.

Zuinglius. About the Year 1519. *Zuinglius* oppoſed the Church of *Rome*, and declar'd againſt the Maſs, Images, Invocation of Saints, *&c.* by which Means, the Maſs was aboliſh'd at *Zurich Anno* 1526, and at *Bern* in the Year 1528. After this, *Calvin.* *Calvin* ſucceeded *Zuinglius* at *Zurich*, adding the Doctrines and Opinions of Predeſtination, Free-will, and final Perſeverance: This made the *Lutherans* and *Calviniſts* become not only two Parties, but irreconcileable too. *Calvin*'s Doctrine was embrac'd in *France*, *Scotland*, the *Netherlands*, and ſome Part of *Germany*. The reſt of *Germany*, with *Denmark* and *Sweden*, adher'd to *Luther*'s Doctrine; and the Difference became ſo great, that they us'd reproachful Actions and Expreſſions to each other. The Court of *Pruſſia* is zealouſly affected to *Calviniſm*, as are the *States General*, though they tolerate all Religions.

The Roman Catholick Biſhops in *Germany*, exerciſe a greater Authority than any other Prelates in *Europe*, being temporal Princes; and beſides the three Eccleſiaſtical Electors, *viz.* the Archbiſhops of *Mentz*, *Triers*, and *Cologn*, there were formerly five Archbiſhops, and thirty Biſhops, who had Votes in the Diet; but ſince the Reformation, the Archbiſhopricks of *Magdeburgh*, *Bremen*, and *Riga*, with the Biſhopricks of *Halberſtadt*, *Minden*, and *Verden*, have been turn'd into ſecular Principalities. Thoſe of *Metz*, *Toul*, *Verdun*, *Beſancon*, and *Strasburgh*, have been cut off from the Empire, and united to *France* or *Lorrain*; and thoſe of *Valeſia*, *Loſanna*, and *Coire* have been aboliſh'd; ſo that beſides the Eccleſiaſtical Electors, there is no Archbiſhop but that of *Saltsburgh* in the College of the Princes of the Empire, and ſeventeen or eighteen Biſhops who have Votes.

The Biſhoprick of *Lubeck*, tho' in the Hands of the *Lutherans*, is an Eccleſiaſtical Preferment, and is in the Gift of the Dukes of *Holſtein* and *Sleſwick*. The Archbiſhop of *Saltsburgh* is the firſt *German* Prelate, and gives place to none but the Electors in the Diet. The other voting Roman Biſhops, are thoſe of *Bambergh*, *Wirtzberg*, *Wormes*, *Spire*, *Eichſtedt*, *Ausburgh*, *Conſtance*, *Hildeſheim*, *Paderborn*, *Munſter*, *Oſnaburgh*, *Paſſau*, *Friſingen*, *Leige*, *Trent*, *Brix*, and *Bazil*, of which, *Oſnaburgh* belong'd to the then Brother of King *George* I. late Duke of *York*. *Vienna* is a Biſhoprick under the Archbiſhop of *Saltsburg*.

But beſides the Biſhops, there are other Eccleſiaſtical Princes who have Voices in the Diet; as the great Maſter of the Teutonick Order, the Abbots of *Fulda*, *Hirſesfield*, *Murbach*, *Kempten*, *Corbray*, *Prum*, *Stabel*, *Ludors*, the Grand Prior of *Malta*, the Provoſts of *Elvang*, and *Bereſſolaguden*, with ſeveral others of inferior Rank.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Dukes, and other Degrees of Nobility and Gentry in Germany; *and of the Imperial Cities, and Hanſe towns.*

THE antient *Germans* had their Leaders, Dukes, or Generals formerly, as practiſed in other Parts of *Europe* now; and altho' ſome Authors affirm, that they laid down their Poſts or Employments as ſoon as the Service they were choſen for was accompliſh'd, yet certain it, that the Dukes, General, or grand Leaders, appointed afterwards by the *Romans*, were inveſted with a Power not much inferior to Sovereignty; but their Acquiſitions extending but little to the Eaſtward of the *Rhine*, the antient Form of Government was retain'd there as before until the *Franks* ſubdu'd them, and then they divided all *Germany* into Provinces, which were govern'd each by its reſpective Dukes, who were entruſted with both civil and military Affairs, and were aſſiſted in the Adminiſtration by their proper Counts or Deputies.

These Dukes were generally of ſome noble Family, and ſo frequently ſucceeded by their eldeſt Sons if there was no material Objections, that they came at laſt to inſiſt upon Hereditary Succeſſion, and refus'd to pay Homage to the *German* Emperors; and from hence has riſen the great Number of independant Princes in the Empire.

Counts. The Counts are of various Ranks or Dignities, as, 1. The Simple Count, ſo call'd from his being Lord of only one ſmall Caſtle or Territory. 2. Counts *Palatine*; they have an Additional in their Dignity from the Relation they bear to the Emperor's Court; for the Word *Palatinus* ſignifies an Officer of the Houſhold, and the Perſon that bears that Title, either has it annex'd to the Name of ſome Place or Territory, as Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, &c. or appropriated only to the Perſon that bears the Title without any Term annex'd. 3. Counts of the Empire made by Patent; which when done, is commonly in Conſideration of ſome Service perform'd. 4. Margraves or Marqueſſes, ſignifying Keepers of the Marches or Boundaries of any Kingdom or Province, as the Word Marches is underſtood in *England*, or more particularly in *Wales*. 5. Landgraves, as the Landgrave of *Heſſe*, &c. they are the ſupreme Governors of ſome particular Diſtrict. 6. Burgraves, or the Governor of ſome Town or Fort; the Word *Burg* in *High Dutch* ſignifying a Wall'd-Town, Caſtle, Fort, or ſome ſtrong Place.

Barons. The next Degree of Nobility, is Barons, or free Lords, as the Word imports; it is ſometimes underſtood to amount to no more than a Lord of a Mannor in *England*, or a Lord in *Scotland*; but ſometimes a Baron is the ſame as a Count for Dignity and Authority, and differs only in Name and the Ceremony of being inveſted in their reſpective Territories.

Knights. The Knights of the Teutonic Order are of little Repute at preſent; the other Knights are dubb'd by the Emperor with the Ceremony of ſtriking them lightly upon the Shoulders with a naked Sword, and ſaying to each of them, *Eſto Miles Dei & Sancti Stephani.* A Gentleman is underſtood much the ſame as in *England*, being ſuch as from the Blood of their Anceſtors, the Favour of their Prince, or their own Merit or Succeſs, are advanc'd to higher Circumſtances than their common Neighbours. *Gentlemen.*

Imperial Cities. The firſt Riſe of the *Imperial* Cities, was occaſion'd by the frequent Neceſſities the Emperor was under for Money to carry on the Wars or o-

other Occasions; and to procure those Supplies, he borrow'd large Sums of the wealthy trading Towns; and in Lieu of the Money so borrow'd, he requited them with Grants and Priviledges, making them free States, and independant of the Governors of those Provinces in which they stood; and now they exercise Sovereign Power, make Laws, coin Money, raise Forces, *&c.* only acknowledging the Emperor as Supreme. But as those Cities are dispers'd in several Parts of the Empire, I shall give an Account of their Names when I treat of the respective Provinces in which they stand.

Hanse-towns.

The Hanse-towns are distinguish'd from the rest by that Name from the Word *Hanse* or *Anse*: It is originally a *Dutch* Word, and signifies a Town near the Sea-Shore, as the first Hanse-towns were. But what is now understood by Hanse-towns, is not all the Towns so situated, but those of them, which about the Year 1200 or 1300, entred into a strict Alliance for the Advancement of Trade, and their mutual Defence; and these for near two hundred Years engross'd the greatest Part of the Trade of *Europe*. There were about fifty of those Cities, divided into four Circles, which were distinguish'd by the Names of their respective Capitals, *viz. Lubeck*, *Cologn*, *Brunswick*, and *Dantzick*, but *Lubeck* was the Capital of all the four; and hence it is, that the Seal of *Lubeck* is the general Seal of all the Hanse-towns. This City had an Advocate at the *Imperial* Chamber at *Spire*, and took care of the Interest of all the Hanse-towns, with a Power of summoning all their Members when it was thought necessary, or that their joint Interest required it.

The Port-towns they chiefly resorted to, were *London*, *Narva*, *Bruges*, and *Bergen*; they apply'd themselves so close to Trade, that they became both rich and powerful, and had the greatest Fleet belonging to any Government in that Part of the World. But as other Nations improv'd in Navigation, and engag'd more in Trade, their Monopoly declin'd of Course after about two hundred Years flourishing. And now their Union is dissolv'd, though several of the Hanse-towns, as *Dantzick*, *Lubeck*, and *Hamburgh*, have still a considerable Trade; but they are every one in its respective Interest, and independant of one another.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Description of Austria, *particularly of the City of* Vienna, *Capital, being the Metropolis of* Germany, *and the Imperial Seat; with a Description of the several Provinces contained in this Circle.*

THE Circle of *Austria* taken in its full Extent, contains not only the Arch-dukedom of *Austria* itself, but the Dutchies of *Styria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, the Counties of *Goretz*, *Cilley*, and *Tyrol*, with the Bishopricks of *Brixen* and *Trent*, whose Descriptions follow. And *Austria* understood in this Extent, is bounded by *Bohemia* and *Moravia* on the North, and by *Hungary* on the East; on the South by the Republick of *Venice*, and by *Bavaria* on the West. This is the antient *Pannonia Superior*, which the *Romans* after they had quitted the *Boiarii*, took Possession of, and annex'd it to the Dukedom of *Bavaria*; but the Emperor *Otho* first erected it into a Marquisate, and *Rodolph* I. was the first that created his eldest Son, whose Name was *Albert*, Arch-duke of *Austria*. And from the Time that *Austria* was erected into an Arch-duchy, it increas'd in Grandeur every Day. For then it was that *Carinthia*, *Styria*, *Tirol*, and *Alsatia*, were added to it; and when *Maximilian* of *Austria* was married with *Mary* of *Burgundy*, the seventeen Provinces of the *Low Countries* and the *French* County were added to his Dominions; and when his Son *Philip* married *Jane* of *Spain*, a great Part of *Spain*, with *Naples*, *Sicily*, and the *Spanish* Dominions, devolv'd upon the House of *Austria*.

Austria proper.

Austria proper, or the Arch-dukedom so call'd, is divided into *Upper* and *Lower Austria*; the latter is so call'd from its being lower down the *Danube* than the other; it is separated from the *Upper Austria* by the River *Ense*, which falls into the *Danube* near a City of the same Name.

Chief Towns.

Among the chief Towns in *Lower Austria*, *Vienna* is the Principal; as being not only Capital of the Province, but Metropolis of the Empire; of which take the following brief Description:

VIENNA or *Wien*, is situate on the South Side of the *Danube*. The River *Wien*, from whence the Place takes its Name, passes by the City on the East Side of it, and falls into the *Danube* a little below it. The City within the Walls is not three *English* Miles in Circumference. It has held out several Sieges against the *Turks*, the last of which was in the Year 1683. when the Place being reduced to great Extremity, was reliev'd by *John Sobieski* King of *Poland*. It has at other Times defended itself bravely against the *Turks*; but it is become such hard Work to come at it for some time past, that they have not of late attempted it.

The Houses are generally of Stone, and five or six Story high, and it may be said, three or four Story deep, having so many Cellars one under another. The Emperors Palace consists of three Courts, two magnificent ones very richly furnish'd, and the other less, as being the Apartments for the Pages. Here are Churches and Convents of *Carmelites*, *Franciscans*, and *Benedictines*, but the Church of the *Augustin* Friars is most admired, its Model being taken from that of the Holy House of *Loretta*. There stands before one of the Jesuits Colleges, a Pedestal of white Stone, and upon it a Column of Copper, with the Image of the Virgin *Mary* upon the Top of it; and thereon are several Inscriptions, intimating, that *Austria* was dedicated to her Patronage. Here is also a *Scotch* Convent, those People frequently resorting hither in their Pilgrimage to *Jerusalem*; and one of their Saints being murder'd in this County, was crown'd with the Honour of Martyrdom because he suffer'd in that Pilgrimage, and thereupon this Convent was built. The Church of St. *Peter* is only valu'd for its Antiquity, but the Church of St. *Stephen* is the most

most beautiful and magnificent of any in the City; the Steeple is 465 Feet high, the Windows darkned with abundance of curious Painting upon the Glass. In this Church are several Monuments of Princes and great Men, and near one of the Doors, is a Stone in the Wall, which they endeavour to make Travellers believe was one of those with which *Stephen* was ston'd to Death: It is very smooth, and they tell us, it is become so by the Curiosity of the Credulous to touch and rub it, in memory (I suppose) of the cruel Execution which it help'd to perpetrate.

The University of *Vienna* excells many of its Neighbours, both for Antiquity, Number of Students, and their Accommodation and Priviledges. It was founded by *Albertus* III. There are four Ranks or Divisions of Students, *viz.* the Class of *Austria*, of the *Rhine*, of the *Hungarians*, and of the *Saxons*; which last includes *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*: For in the University, as well as in the Town, are People of almost all Nations, as *Greeks*, *Transilvanians*, *Sclavonians*, *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Hungarians*, *Croatians*, *Germans*, *Polanders*, *French*, *Italians*, *English*, &c. in their respective Habits; so that by travelling hither, a Person has an Epitome of all *Europe* to converse with.

Library. The *Imperial* Library at *Vienna* contains above fourscore thousand Books; but it is said, their Manuscripts in *Hebrew*, *Syriack*, *Arabick*, *Turkish*, *Armenian*, *Coptick*, and *Chinese*, are not to be parallel'd in the World; and of them more especially a *Greek* Manuscript of the New Testament, written upon Purple in Letters of Gold fifteen hundred Years ago. Here are also many thousands of Coins and Medals, *Greek*, *Roman*, and *Gothick*; besides such a vast Collection of Curiosities, that a Description of them makes a large Book in *Folio*.

The Suburbs of *Vienna* are larger than the City, the chief of which is *Leopolstat*; it is on the other Side of the *Danube* from *Vienna*. Here are most of the Nobility and Quality's Houses, being sumptuous Buildings. There is a little Plain as well as the River between *Vienna* and *Leopolstat*.

It does not appear from History about what time this City was founded, but the *Romans* had a Fortress on or near where *Vienna* now stands; it was call'd *Vindomina*. And what makes it believ'd that *Vienna* is built upon the same Spot of Ground where that Fort stood, is, 1. The Resemblance between the Names *Vindomina* and *Vienna*; and, 2. Because of the many *Roman* Antiquities yet to be seen in and about *Vienna*. But whenever this City was founded, it was but a naked Place till about the Year 1192. when the Marquess of *Austria* wall'd it round, by the Help of the Money which he receiv'd for the Ransom of King *Richard* I. of *England*, whom he surpriz'd, and made Prisoner, in his Return home from the *Holy Land*.

Fruitfulness. It to the Fruitfulness of the Soil we add the Navigation of the *Danube*, it will not be difficult to allow it to be a plentiful Country; for there are above thirty Sorts of Wine to be had at *Vienna*, either of the Growth of *Germany*, or imported from *Hungary* or *Italy*, besides tolerable good Beer. They have Sheep and Oxen from *Hungary*, and the Frontiers of *Turky* upon Occasion; but *Austria* itself produces Store of Cattle, and the Flesh of wild Boars is esteem'd a delicious Dish, as well as the Hunting of it is excellent Diversion, if not one of the chief. They have Hares, Partridges, and Pheasants, as in *England*, besides other Game unknown to us. The *Danube* affords plenty of Fish, as Carp, Tench, Trout, &c. and a Fish call'd Scheiden, better than our Salmon; but their largest Fish call'd Hausons, about twenty Feet long, taste like our Sturgeon, and are supposed to come out of the *Black Sea* up the *Danube*. They have Oysters, Oranges, and Lemons, and several Sorts of Fruit from *Venice*.

The Frost in the Winter time is so severe upon the *Danube*, and at *Vienna*, that they take their Diversion upon the Ice in Sledges of different Shapes, drawn by one Horse, a Man sitting on the Sledge behind to guide him. At *Vienna*, they have Magazines of Naval Stores, and Men of War fitted out against the *Turks*, notwithstanding it is so far from the main Ocean.

2. *Baden* is a noted Town in *Lower Austria*; it is so call'd from the natural Baths which spring there, and occasion a great Resort of Gentry and others to the Place; and it is said, cures most Distempers of the Head. It is a neat little City and surrounded by a Wall. 3. *Hamburgh*, in the Eastermost Parts of *Austria*, on the South Side of the *Danube*, and about thirty Miles to the Eastward of *Vienna*: It was the Metropolis of *Austria*, and the Seat of the Duke, but it is now reduc'd; but produces such Plenty of Corn and Wine, that they transport Quantities to other Countries. 4. *Tulin*, about twenty Miles to the Westward of *Vienna*; it is an antient Place but decay'd, and at present but poorly accommodated with Provisions. 5. *Krembs*, *Cremesia*, on the North Side of the *Danube*, and forty Miles West of *Vienna*; it is a large well traded Town, it has two Fairs in a Year, to which abundance of Merchants from *Germany*, *Hungary*, and *Poland*, repair.

Chief Towns of *Upper Austria* are, 1. *Lyntz*, or *Lyncia*, the Capital on the South Side of the *Danube*, and an hundred Miles East of *Vienna*; but on the North Side of the River it has a Suburb, their Communication being maintain'd by a Bridge over the *Danube*. In this Suburb the Emperor has a Palace, which occasions a vast Resort of the *Austrian* and other Nobility, who frequently spend their Summer there; and hither the Emperor retired during the Siege of *Vienna*. It has a spacious Market-place, and the Buildings are mostly of good Stone.

2. *Ense*, on the River *Ense*, falls into the *Danube* about eighty Miles to the Westward of *Vienna* on the South Side, some think it was built on the same Spot of Ground where *Laureacum* (some time the Seat of the *Roman* Emperors) once stood. It was formerly an independant County, but *Rodolph* I. purchas'd it, and annex'd it to the Duchy of *Austria*.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of Styria, Cilley, Carinthia, Carniola, *and* Windis-Marſh; *alſo of* Tyrol, Brixen, *and* Trent.

STYRIA, or *Staymark*, including alſo the County of *Cilley*, is bounded on the North by *Auſtria*; by *Carinthia* and *Carniola* on the South; on the Eaſt by *Hungary* and *Sclavonia*, and on the Weſt by *Saltzburg*. It is divided into the *Upper* and *Lower Styria* by the River *Muer*, which runs through that Dutchy.

Lower Styria.

THE Chief Towns in *Lower Styria*, are, 1. *Gratz*. the Capital on the Bank of the River *Muer*, about eighty Miles to the Southward of *Vienna*; it is ſtrongly built and well fortifyed, and defended by a Caſtle, in which is the Duke's Palace. 2. *Rabersburg*, another ſtrong Fortreſs on the River *Muer*, about twenty eight Miles to the Eaſtward from *Gratz*. 3. *Pettaw* on the River *Drave*, thirty Miles South Eaſt of *Gratz*, formerly a *Roman* City, and now a Biſhop's See under the Archbiſhop of *Saltsburg*, but a declining Place. 4. *Marksburg*, on the River *Drave*; it was the Capital of the County, but reduc'd ſince it fell into the Hands of the Family of *Auſtria*.

Cilley.

THE County of *Cilley*, lies between the Rivers *Save* on the South, and *Drave* on the North. The chief Town is *Cilley*, an old ſtrong Place; it was once a Capital of a Territory, which was govern'd by its own Earls; but the *Auſtrians*, in whoſe Hands it now is, have depriv'd it of that Priviledge, and united it to *Styria*; but it is ſuppoſed to have been a Place of ſome Note, by Reaſon of the many *Roman* Antiquities yet found there.

Upper Styria.

THE chief Towns in *Upper Styria* are, 1. *Judenburg*, on the River *Muer*, fifty Miles Weſt of *Gratz*; it is a handſome Town, and therein is a Palace belonging to the Dukes of *Styria*. 2. *Iſenartz*, ſo call'd from the Iron Mines and Forges, ſaid to produce Steel enough to ſupply all *Germany*. They were firſt diſcover'd in the Year 712. and though it has been wrought upon above a thouſand Years, yet it ſtill produces near, if not quite, as great a Plenty of Oar as ever. This Town is ſituate upon the Banks of the River *Saltza*, about twenty four Miles North Eaſt from *Judenburg*.

Iron Mines.

Lower Styria, produces Corn, Wine, Fruits, Fiſh, and Veniſon in great Plenty. *Upper Styria* is more mountainous, but it feeds Plenty of Sheep, which afford them good Wooll, while the fruitful Valley produces Store of good Graſs, with which they feed large Heads of Cattle, generally black; and the Air is very healthy. This Country produces no Wine, and but very poor Beer, which laſt is their common Drink; but the Quality have a ſharp, thin Wine brought out of *Lower Styria*.

THERE is a Struma, or Swelling, that ſeems to be peculiar to this Country; only their Throats and Chins, both of Men and Women, ſwell to ſuch a monſtrous Degree, that from their Ears downwards to their Breaſts, are near as broad as their Shoulders; but this though common to the Poor, yet it ſeldom affects the Rich, which makes ſome attribute it to the great Quantities of Snow-water which they drink; the Rich, who live better, frequently eſcaping the Misfortune.

OF CARINTHIA.

CArinthia is bounded on the North by *Styria* and *Saltsburg*, and on the Eaſt, by *Styria*; by *Carniola* on the South, and by *Tyrol* on the Weſt; it abounds with barren Mountains, but plentifully water'd with Rivers and Lakes, among which firſt, is the River *Drave*, which runs through this Country and receives other Rivers into it.

CHIEF Towns are, 1. St. *Veit*, ſo call'd, as it is ſaid, from a Saint of that Name, who preach'd the Goſpel here during the Perſecution under *Dioclefian*. It is in a plentiful Vale, at the Confluence of the Rivers *Wilitz* and *Glan*, South from *Euſe*, and South-weſt from *Gratz* about eighty Miles. 2. *Gurk*, a Biſhop's See, eight Miles North of St. *Veit*. 3. *Lavemund*, a ſmall City and a Biſhop's See, under the Archbiſhop of *Saltsburg*; it is ſituate in a pleaſant Valley ten Miles Eaſt from *Styria*. 4. *Clagenfort*, ſaid to be the prettyeſt Town in *Carinthia*; it is about ten Miles from St. *Veit*; it is a Wall'd Town, of a ſquare Form, adorn'd with handſome Piazzas, and a beautiful Fountain in the Middle.

CARNIOLA, *and* WINDIS-MARCH.

THESE two conſider'd as one Dutchy, are bounded on the North by *Carinthia* and *Cilley*; on the Eaſt by *Croatia*, and on the South by the Mountains which ſeparate it from the Territories of *Venice*. It is divided into *Upper* and *Lower Carniola*, the *Windiſmarch*, and the County of *Goritia*. Chief Towns of *Upper Carniola* are, 1. *Laubach*, the Capital of *Carniola*. It ſtands upon the River *Laubach*, which falls into the River *Save*, ten Miles below *Laubach*: It ſtands thirty Miles to the Northward of *Trieſte*, a Sea Port in the Nothermoſt Part of the Gulf of *Venice*, and now belonging to the Emperor. *Laubach* is a Biſhop's See, a populous City, and well defended by a ſtrong Caſtle. 2. *Crainburg*, on the River *Save*, twenty Miles North Weſt of *Laubach*; and, 3. *Biſhofslack*, by ſome call'd *Lack*, about ten Miles South of *Crainburg*.

IN *Lower Carniola*, the chief Towns are, 1. *Zirknitz*, an inconſiderable Place, but remarkable for a Lake being near it ſo large, as from the Name of the Place to be call'd the *Zirknitzer* Sea, but otherwiſe call'd *Lacus Circonienſis*: It is about ſixteen *German* Miles long, and eight broad, encompaſs'd with Mountains on every Side. It ebbs quite dry every Year in *July*; and at the Bottom and Sides of it, are then ſeen ſeveral Holes into the Ground, by which it is ſuppos'd the Water retires; and when the Water is gone, the Graſs immediately grows, and the Soil is ſufficiently hard for Cattle to graze and eat up the Paſturage; which, for about a Quarter of a Year continues dry; and when the Water is gone, the Country People take up Plenty of Carp, Tench, Eels, *&c.* in the Mud with their Hands only; and yet when the

the Water returns, the Lake is as well ſtock'd with Fiſh the next Year, as it was in the preceding. About *September*, the Water returns into the Lake through the Holes and Cracks abovemention'd, with ſuch Violence, that it flies up to the Height of four or five Yards till the Lake grows full and theſe Spouts diſappear; but though the Inhabitants young and old affirm, that they never knew the Lake to miſs of this annual Ebbing and Flowing, yet none of them pretend to give a natural Reaſon for it. But, 2. Another Town in *Lower Carniola* is *Oberlaback*, about ſixteen Miles to the Weſtward of *Lauback*, only remarkable for a Trade in *Italian* Goods, which are from hence diſpers'd over all the Provinces of *Germany*.

Windis-Marſh. In *Windis-Marſh* the chief Towns are, 1. *Mething*, near *Croatia*, thirty five Miles South Eaſt of *Cilley*, and twenty five Eaſt of *Zirknitz* Lake; but now remarkable for nothing but its ruinous Condition by the frequent Plunders of the *Turks*. 2. *Rudolphsworth* or *Newſtat*, on the River *Gurk*, twelve Miles North Weſt of *Mething*, famous for producing the beſt Wine in the Country.

Goritia. *Goritia* is a ſmall Diſtrict of *Friuli* belonging to the Emperor; (but the Reſt of *Friuli* belongs to the *Venetians*.) The chief Town is *Gortz* or *Goritia*, twenty Miles North of the Gulf of *Venice*; it belong'd to the Emperor, and was taken by the *Venetians* in the Year 1608, but the Emperor retook it the next Year, and holds it in Poſſeſſion to this Time.

Trieſte, a Sea Port now belonging to the Emperor, is at the Bottom of a Bay in the Northermoſt Part of the Gulf of *Venice*; it is a ſmall Town, but a Biſhop's See. The Emperor would gladly have made it a free Port, but it ſeems ſcarce to deſerve that Priviledge, being an unſafe Harbour, and not fit to receive Ships of Burthen. It belong'd to the *Venetians*, but the Emperor took it in the Year 1507. and has poſſeſs'd it ever ſince.

Sr. *Veit-am-Flaum* is in *Iſtria*, a *Venetian* Province, but now ſubject to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, and annex'd to the Emperor's Dominions. It ſtands thirty Miles South Weſt of *Methin*, and upon the River *Flaum*, which falls into the North Part of the Gulf of *Venice*. This and *Trieſte* were the two Ports by which the *Imperialiſts* thought to eſtabliſh a Trade with the *Mediterranean* by way of the Gulf of *Venice*.

Carniola affords Plenty of Corn and Wine, and is well water'd by Springs and Rivulets; but eſpecially the *Save*, the *Lauback* and the *Gruck* runs through it. The Original Inhabitants are ſaid to be the *Carni*, a *Scythian* Colony, who were ſubdu'd by the *Romans* under *Auguſtus*; but the preſent Inhabitants are compounded of *Germans*, *Italians*, and *Sclavonians*; but the *High Dutch* Language prevails in Acts of State, Law, Proceedings, *&c.* *Windiſmarſh* is a mountainous barren Country, and the Inhabitants ſpeak the *Sclavonian* Language without any Mixture of the *German*.

Of TYROL *and* BRIXEN.

THE antient *Rhætia Superior*, now call'd *Tyrol*, is bounded on the North by *Bavaria* and Part of *Suabia*, and on the Eaſt by *Carinthia* and *Friuli*; by the *Griſons* and *Trent* on the South, and on the Weſt by *Switzerland*; and is divided into *Tyrol Proper*, the Biſhoprick of *Brixen*, and the Diſtricts of *Merum*, *Pludentz*, *Bregentz*, *Feldkirk*, and *Montfort*.

Inſpruck. Chief Towns in *Tyrol Proper*, are, 1. *Inſpruck*, the Metropolis, and Seat of the antient Counts and preſent Governor of *Tyrol*. It ſtands in a pleaſant Valley on the River *Inn*, and is from thence call'd *Inſpruck*. It is about ſeventy Miles North of *Trent*, and eighty South Weſt of *Saltsburg*. The beſt Buildings are in the Suburbs, which are ſeparated from the City by a River. The Cathedral and the Palace are beautiful Buildings; and as it is an Ambition in ſome Meaſure to make great Collections in Rarities both in Nature and Art, ſo here are to be ſeen Agats, Chriſtal, Coral, Jaſpers, Hyacinth, Turcois Stones, Lumps of Virgin Gold and Silver, *&c.* with the Arms of the Houſe of *Auſtria* curiouſly repreſented in a Coat of Diamonds and Rubies; and alſo another Collection at the fine Fort and Palace of *Ombras*, the Summer Retirement of the Arch-duke, where there is a large Volume of the Deſcription and Explanation of Rarities there to be ſeen. Other Towns are, 2. *Hall* or *In'thal*, upon the River *Inn*, ten Miles to the North Eaſt of *Inſpruck*. It has its Name from the famous Salt-works there. 3. *Tyrol*, an antient Caſtle from which the Country takes its Name; but it is of little Note at preſent.

Brixen. In the Biſhoprick of *Brixen* is the Capital of the ſame, ſituate on the Banks of the River *Eyſach*, about thirty Miles South Eaſt of *Inſpruck*. The Biſhop is a Count of the Empire, and holds a Court; but there is an Appeal to the Court at *Tyrol*. The little Diſtricts of *Meran*, &c. abovemention'd, have each of them a Capital, bearing the Name of the Diſtrict; but ſo obſcure, that a Deſcription of them would be of little Uſe.

Of TRENT.

THE County of *Trent* may be ſaid to be ſituate among the *Alps*, being bounded by *Tyrol* on the North, on the Eaſt and South by the Territories of the State of *Venice*, and by the Country of the *Griſons* on the Weſt. It is about ſeventy Miles from Eaſt to Weſt, and fifty from North to South. The chief Towns are, 1. *Trent*, or *Tridentium*, ſituate upon the River *Adige*, about ſeventy Miles South Weſterly of *Inſpruck*. It is a ſmall but wall'd City; it is moſt noted for the Coucil held there, call'd therefore the Council of *Trent*, which held from the Year 1545, to the Year 1563; wherein the Pope obtain'd the *Romiſh* Doctrine to be eſtabliſh'd and confirm'd. *Council of Trent.* 2. *Poſen*, ſituate alſo on the River *Adige*, about twenty five Miles North of *Trent*; this is a great Rendezvouz of *German* and *Italian* Merchants, where they traffick with their Merchandize, eſpecially at the four Fairs, which are here held annually. 3. *Noveredo*, a little City, of Note only for its Trade in Silk. The Country of *Trent* produces Wine and Oyl, Cattle, and Fruit; but they have very little of any Sort of Grain.

It is to be obſerv'd, although *Auſtria* be deem'd one of the Circles of the Empire, it is only ſubject to its own Prince, and not affected by any Acts of the Diet or General Laws of the Empire; for the Emperor *Charles* V. Arch-duke of *Auſtria*, who began to reign *Anno* 1519. decreed that *Auſtria* ſhould be a perpetual Fee of his Family, which no future Emperor ſhould deprive them of: That the Duke of *Auſtria* ſhould be the moſt Intimate Councellor of the Empire; and that no Matters of State ſhould be tranſacted without his Knowledge; with many other Priviledges and Immunities which are reſerv'd to the Houſe of *Auſtria* to this Day, independant of the Dignity of being Emperor of *Germany*.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Circle of BAVARIA.

IN the Circle of *Bavaria*, I include not only the Dominions of the Duke, but alſo the Territories of the Archbiſhop of *Saltsburg*, the Biſhops of *Paſſau*, *Ratisbon*, and *Treyſinghen*, with ſeveral other Lands. The Boundaries of *Bavaria* have been variouſly extended, but the Modern *Bavaria* is bounded on the North by *Franconia*, *Voitland*, and *Bohemia*; and on the Eaſt by *Bohemia* and *Auſtria*; on the South by *Carinthia*, *Brixen*, and *Tyrol*; and on the Weſt by *Suabia*. It is about two hundred Miles from North to South, and about an hundred and twenty from Eaſt to Weſt. The chief Rivers with which it is water'd are, 1. The *Danube*. 2. The *Lech*. 3. The *Inn*. 4. The *Amber*. 5. The *Iller*. 6. The *Saltz*. 7. The *Nab*. And 8. The *Iſar*.

Bavaria conſiſts of three Parts, *viz.* the *Upper* and *Lower Bavaria*, and the *Upper Palatinate*. The chief Towns in the Circle of *Bavaria* conſider'd in this Extent are, 1. *Munich* or *Munchen*, ſituate on the River *Iſar*, between ſixty and ſeventy Miles North of *Inſpruck*. It is a Town though not large, conſiſts of the moſt beautiful Buildings of any in *Germany*, both with Reſpect to the Electoral Palace, the Churches, Noblemen's Houſes, *&c.* The Town is wall'd round and fortify'd after the modern Way; but it is a Town of no great Trade, only the Reſidence of the Prince occaſions a great Concourſe. The Emperor has an Apartment in the Palace; the great Hall of which is an hundred and eighteen Feet long, and fifty two Feet broad, adorn'd with vaſt Numbers of curious Hiſtory Paintings; ſacred Hiſtory on one Side, and prophane on the other; every Hiſtory has a Latin Inſcription in Verſe under it, amongſt which, the following is under the Hiſtory of *Suſannah*:

Munich.

Caſta Suſanna placet, Lucretia cede Suſannæ;
Tu poſt, illa mori maluit ante Scelus.

IN the Parlour of Perſpectives are Pieces of the moſt curious Workmanſhip; but the Hall of Antiquities exceeds all the Reſt; for therein are an hundred and ninety two Buſts, and four hundred other Pieces of exquiſite Workmanſhip and great Antiquity; and in the Palace, beſides the rich Furniture, is an incredible Number of Pearls, Diamonds, Rubies, and other precious Stones. The whole Palace is lin'd or incruſted with Marble or Cement, ſo like it, that a Stranger cannot diſtinguiſh it from it.

Ingolſtat. 2, *Ingolſtat*, on the North Bank of the *Danube*, forty Miles to the Northward of *Munich*, and thirty to the Weſtward of *Ratisbon*. It is a ſtrong Town, but poor and not populous. *Donawert.* 3. *Donawert*, twenty five Miles Weſt of *Ingolſtat*, and twenty four North of *Ausburg*. It is ſituate on the South Bank of the *Danube*. It is no ſtrong Place of itſelf, but the Fortreſs of *Schellenburgh*, which is near it, defended it ſo ſtrongly in the Year 1704. againſt the Duke of *Marlborough* and the Confederate Army, that nothing but their Reſolution and a ſuperior Number could have made the Duke of *Bavaria* retire, as he did, under the Cannon of *Ausburg*. *Amberg.* 4. *Amberg*, the Capital of the *Upper Palatinate*; it ſtands on the Bank of the River *Vils*, thirty Miles to the Northward of *Ratisbon*. It is a ſtrong Place and enjoys large Priviledges; but the chief Employments of the Inhabitants are to forge, and make Utenſils of the Iron and other Minerals which are dug out of the adjacent Mountains; and with theſe they ſupply other Parts of *Germany*. *Neuma* 5. *Newmark*, on the Bank of the River *Sultz*, thirty Miles North of *Ingolſtat*. Their chief Employment is in Iron-work. 6. *Sultzbach*, five Miles Weſt of *Amberg*. Here a Prince of the Houſe of *Newburgh* has a Palace, and takes upon him the Title of Duke of *Newburgh*, *Bavaria*, &c. *Ratisbon* 7. *Ratisbon*; it ſtands where the *Regen* falls into the *Danube*, which is about ſixty Miles to the Northward of *Munich*. It is the only free *Imperial* City that is in the Elector of *Bavaria*'s Dominions. It is pleaſantly ſituate, large, populous, and well built, and fortify'd with a double Wall. The Diet ſits in a large upper Room hung with Tapeſtry. The *Imperial* Throne is richly cover'd with Gold and Silver Tiſſue, Velvet, *&c.* and the Seats of the Members are adorn'd in proportion to their Dignity. Here is a famous Stone Bridge croſs the *Danube* of fifteen large Arches: It is one thouſand and ninety one Feet, or above three hundred and ſixty Yards in Length, and twenty three Feet broad, with three handſome Towers upon it. This City is govern'd by its Magiſtrates, and is not ſubject to the Duke of *Bavaria*. The *Lutheran* is the eſtabliſh'd Religion, only the Biſhop is allow'd to ſay Maſs in the Cathedral once a Week. There is Plenty of Wine, Corn, and other Grain, and alſo of Cattle; and their Situation upon and near ſo many navigable Rivers on one Hand, and the vaſt Concourſe to the Diet on the other, occaſions a brisk Trade.

Paſſaw is about ſixty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Ratisbon*, where the River *Inn* falls into the *Danube*; whereby the Town is divided into three Parts and form a Noble City. It is naturally ſtrong, being ſurrounded with Rocks or Rivers on all Sides. The common Houſes are of Wood, but the publick Buildings are of Stone, very magnificent. In this City the Peace was concluded between the Emperor *Charles* V. and the Proteſtant Princes, in the Year 1552. by which the *Lutherans* were to enjoy the free Exerciſe of their Religion. The Biſhop of *Paſſaw* is Sovereign of the Country for twenty Miles to the Northward of *Paſſaw* and of the *Danube*.

Landſhut, the Capital of *Lower Bavaria* and Reſidence of the Elector's Lieutenant. It ſtands on the River *Iſar*, thirty Miles South of *Ratisbon*, almoſt in the Middle of the Elector's Dominions. Here was formerly a Palace of the Dukes of *Bavaria*, and it is ſtill a very handſome City; and the Tower of the Church is the higheſt in *Germany*.

Newburg, the Capital of a County of the ſame Name, ſtands on the South Side of the *Danube*, fifteen Miles Weſt of *Ingolſtat*. This Diſtrict extends along the *Danube* near forty Miles, and therein is the Town of *Hochſtet*, about twelve Miles to the Weſtward of *Donawert*, famous by the Victory of the *Germans*, *Engliſh*, and *Dutch*, againſt the *French* and *Bavarians* in a Battle here, in the Year 1704; in which, as in ſeveral other Caſes, although the *Engliſh* had a large Share in the Charge and Hazard, yet the Emperor reap'd the Advantage.

Bur

Salzburg. But not to enumerate Places of little Note, I ſhall now come to the Arch-biſhoprick of *Saltzburgh*, it being accounted a Part of the Circle of *Bavaria*. It has the Dutchy of *Bavaria* on the North, *Upper Auſtria* on the Eaſt, and *Tyrol* on the South and Weſt. Chief Towns are, 1. *Saltzburg*, on the River *Saltz*, ſixty Miles Eaſt of *Munich*: It is a very fine City, and has an exceeding magnificent Cathedral, to which the Arch-biſhop's Palace is not inferior. The Town has a good Trade, eſpecially in Salt, of which the neighbouring Pits produce great Plenty; and from thence probably the Town takes its Name.

Hallen. 2. Another Town in this Country is *Hallen*, being likewiſe upon the Banks of the River *Saltza*, about eight Miles to the Southward of *Saltzburg*. Here are a great many poor People continually employ'd about the Salt-pans. The Inhabitants tell us, that in the Year 1573, there was found in a Salt-pit here, ſeveral hundred Fathoms deep in the Earth, a hard Rock of Salt, which being broke, there was in the Midſt of it, an entire Human Body, with its Limbs, Hair, and Cloaths, found and uncorrupted; and not only ſo, but by the Antiquity of the Dreſs, it ſeem'd to have been there for ſome Ages. I ſhall not undertake to determine how Nature perform'd ſuch an extraordinary Piece of Work; but if we allow the Fact, which is neither impoſſible nor improbable, it is not unlikely but that this Perſon might by ſome Accident fall into the Salt-pit, and the Salt congealing and petrifying about the Body, might be ſolid enough to reſiſt the external Air; and by that Means entirely preſerve the Body and the Cloaths upon it from Corruption.

This Country, beſides Salt, affords Copper, Iron, and ſome Silver; and a little above the City is the *Gaſtein Bath*, a very hot Mineral Spring. There are alſo many excellent Quarries; in one of which is found Stone little inferior to Jaſper. This Country extends about ſeventy Miles from Eaſt to Weſt, and fifty from North to South; the Arch-biſhop is abſolute Sovereign there; and as to his Religion, (if it may be call'd Religion) we need not be at a Loſs to know what it is; the poor diſtreſs'd Proteſtants there being ſo many living Teſtimonies, that his tender Mercies are Cruelty; witneſs the *Saltzburg* Emigrants, (as they are now call'd) who are forc'd to quit their Habitations and Eſtates to fly for Refuge into Proteſtant Countries; and who with us, feel the happy Effects of the ſettling the Crown of *England* upon the Proteſtant Succeſſion in the Houſe of Hanover.

Although *Bavaria* is enrich'd with a plentiful Soil, to which we may add a good Trade, by Means of the *Danube*, and many other navigable Rivers paſſing through it, yet the Natives are poor in the Midſt of this Plenty by the Elector's monopolizing the beſt Part of the Traffick to himſelf. He will not allow his Subjects to import Salt from *Auſtria*, *Saltzburg*, or any Dominions; or to buy any that is imported except of himſelf. And as to the Corn, his Agents buy it up for him, no Perſon daring to ſell it to any other; and then he, or his Agents for him, retail it to the People. Nor dare any brew or ſell ſtrong Beer but his Factors; they may indeed brew a Sort of ſmall Beer for their own Uſe, but dare not ſell any. The chief Advantage they have, is by their Herds of Swine, of which they may keep as many as they pleaſe, which they feed in the Woods at little Charge.

The Deer, wild Hogs, and other Game, the Peaſants make free with; for although there are Laws againſt it, yet they are ſeldom regarded or put in Execution, which makes the Poor make more Uſe of them; Corn, Beer, and Salt, being at exceſſive Rates, that they are not able to purchaſe them.

Revenues. These Monopolies very much enhance the Arch-biſhop's Revenues, to which we may add the Tolls on the Rivers, the Cuſtoms of Merchandizes, and the Income of his own perſonal Eſtate. And as for Forces, the Country is ſo populous, that he may always have as many Men as he is able to pay, notwithſtanding that his Revenues are ſo large, that he generally keeps up a ſtrong Force in Times of Peace. The Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg* is ſo high a Station, as to be Co-Director with the Elector in the Affairs of the Circle of *Bavaria*.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Circle of Franconia.

Franconia derives its Name from its antient Inhabitants the *Franks*; but whether they borrow'd that Appellation from *Francus* a great Commander among them, or from *Franken*, which in that Language ſignifies a free People, I ſhall not determine; but I rather incline to believe the latter.

Franconia, as now underſtood, is bounded on the North by *Heſſe* and *Thuringia*; and on the Eaſt by the Palatinate of *Bavaria*; by *Suabia* on the South, and on the Weſt by the Palatinate of the *Rhine*. The principal Rivers are the *Main*, the *Tauber*, the *Reduit*, the *Almutz*, the *Peguitz*, and the *Saal*; which laſt waters the Country where the *Salique Law* was made, which excludes the Females from the Succeſſion. This Country affords tolerable Plenty of Corn and Wine. It contains the Biſhopricks of *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg*, and *Aichſtat*, the Diſtrict belonging to the Maſter of the *Teutonick Order*; as alſo of *Coburg*, *Schwartzenburg*, *Caſſel*, *Henneberg*, *Erpach*, *Wertheim*, and *Holach*. The Marquiſates of *Culembach* and *Anſpach*, with the Imperial or free Cities of *Frankfort*, *Nuremburg*, *Rotemburg*, *Schwemfurt* *Weinſheim*, and *Weiſſemburg*.

Wurtzburg. *Wurtzburg* or *Herbypolis*, is the Capital of the Biſhoprick of *Wurtzburg*, and of all the Circle or Dukedom of *Franconia*. It ſtands on the River *Main*, ſixty Miles to the Eaſtward of *Frankfort*. There is a Stone Bridge three hundred Paces long over the *Main* in the Middle of the Town. The Biſhop's Palace ſtands on a Hill above the Town, and affords a beautiful Proſpect of a plentiful Country. It is computed that the Biſhop has as much of the Country under his Juriſdiction, as contains above four hundred Towns and Villages. He is as abſolute as a Sovereign Prince in his own Dominions.

Bamberg. *Bamberg*, Capital of its own Biſhoprick, is forty Miles North Eaſtwards of *Wurtzburg*. This Biſhop's Territories are ſixty Miles in Length, and forty in Breadth, beſides ſeveral Caſtles and Royalties in *Carinthia* and other Places in *Germany*. There is a Cathedral, a Biſhop's Palace, a Jeſuits Church, &c. but none of them are remarkable for exquiſite Beauty or Workmanſhip.

Aich-

Aichstat. *Aichstat* is the Capital of the Bishoprick of that Name. It is about twelve Miles North West of *Ingolstat*; its Bishop is a Temporal Prince; his Principality is about thirty Miles in Length, but not half so much in Breadth.

Note, *All these three Bishops are Princes of the Empire, and have Seats in the Diet.*

Margentheim. The chief Town of the District belonging to the Master of the *Teutonick Order* is *Margentheim* or *Mariendal*, a small City on the River *Tauber*, above twenty Miles West of *Wurtzburg*, the Residence of the Great Master of the *Teutonic Order*, (since the Order was driven out of *Prussia*) and Capital of his Territory. This Master is always one of the Princes of the Empire, and hath one of the first Seats in the Diet next after the Electors. Those Knights are always of a noble Extraction; for they cannot be admitted Knights of that Order, except they can prove their Nobility for sixteen Descents both by Father and Mother's Side.

Cullembach *Cullembach*, the Capital of that Marquisate, stands on the River *Main*; it is about twenty five Miles North East of *Bamberg*. It is subject to the two Branches of the House of *Brandenburg*, viz. *Cullembach* and *Bareith*, both which are Princes of the Empire; and the Marquess of *Cullembach* and Bishop of *Bamberg* are joint Directors of the Circle of *Franconia*.

Bareith. *Bareith* is fifteen Miles South East of *Cullembach*.

Anspach. *Anspach* is the Capital of its Marquisate, which is subject to the House of *Brandenburg*. It is about twenty five Miles South West of *Nuremburg*; the Country belonging to it, is about fifty Miles long and twenty broad. The County of *Holach* is between *Anspach* and *Hall*. The County of *Cassel* lies between the Bishoprick of *Wurtzburg* and the County of *Schwartzenburg*; it is about twenty five Miles long and seven broad. Chief Town is *Cassel*.

There are other Counties in this Dukedom, as *Schwartzenburg*, between *Anspach* and *Bamberg*. This Count is a Prince of the Empire. Also *Wartheim*, West of *Wurtzburg*, where the River *Tauber* falls into the River *Main*. Also *Erpach*, between the *Lower Palatinate* and the Archbishoprick of *Mentz*. The chief Town of the same Name is situate on a small River forty three Miles to the Westward of *Wurtzburg*.

Henneberg The County of *Henneberg* is bounded by the Territories of the Abby of *Fulda* on the North, and by *Thuringia* on the East; on the South by the Bishoprick of *Bamberg*, and on the West by the Diocese of *Wurtzburg*. It is a populous fruitful Country. Chief Towns are, 1. *Meiningen*, 2. *Shlewsingen*, 3. *Coberg*. In the Castle of this City *Martin Luther* was imprison'd; and during his Confinement, he compos'd several Hymns, which the *Lutherans* sing to this Day: In one of which, he extols the Happiness of Imprisonment, or suffering for the Cause of Religion.

Frankfort. In *Franconia*, the Imperial or free Cities are, 1. *Frankfort*, so call'd from its being a Ford, by which the *Franks* used to pass the River *Main* in their Incursions against the *Saxons*. It is situate about twenty Miles to the Eastward of *Mentz*, in about fifty Degrees of North Latitude. The River runs through the Town, and over it is a handsome Stone Bridge. It is a large and populous City of great Trade, which is vastly improv'd by the Navigation of the *Main* and the *Rhine*, and by two Fairs held Yearly in *March* and *September*, continuing three Weeks each, in which they deal mostly in Books and Horses. The Streets of the Town are broad, the Houses built of a Sort of red Stone, or plaister'd over and colour'd red in imitation of it. St. *Bartholomew*'s Church, where the Emperor is usually elected, is a magnificent Building, as is the Emperor's Palace, and also the Town-House and the Castle. In the Town-House or Guild-Hall, is kept the *Golden Bull*, which contains the Rules and Directions for the Election of an Emperor. (*See Chap.* VII.) The City of *Frankfort* is govern'd by its own Magistrates, being a Prætor or Mayor, twelve Burgomasters, fourteen Aldermen, and forty two Counsellors, all chosen by the Companies of Tradesmen. There is a Senate consisting of three Benches; on the first the Aldermen, on the second the Lawyers, or those learned in their Laws and Customs; and on the third the Tradesmen. The Magistrates and most of the Inhabitants are *Lutherans*; and though the *Roman Catholicks* are possess'd of the Cathedral, yet they are not allow'd to make any publick Processions through the Town, but go to a Village about three Miles off to their publick Worship. The *Jews* are pretty numerous, and have a Synagogue allow'd them; but they do not live so rich and grand as they generally do in *England*; but are employ'd in such servile Drudgery, as quenching Fires, *&c.* when any happen in the City or Suburbs. Govern ment. Religion

The Territories of *Frankfort* extend Northward to *Weteraw*, and to the County of *Hanaw* on the East; to the Landgravate of *Darmstat* on the South, and on the West to the Arch-bishoprick of *Mentz*. The Country is mostly cover'd with Woods and Vineyards, which latter occasions a great Employ among the Poor in making Wine; great Quantities of which they transport to other Countries. Several Protestants retired from *England* to *Frankfort* in the bloody Reign of Queen *Mary*, and had a Church allow'd them; so willing were they to encourage the Protestant Religion.

Between *Bamberg* on the North, and *Ingolstat* on the South, and forty Miles distant from each, is *Nurenburg*, near the Middle of *Germany*. It is situate on a Plain, and is seven Miles in Circumference, being encompass'd with a Wall and Towers after the Veteran Method of Fortification. The Streets are large and well pav'd; the Houses are built of hewn Stone five or six Story high; the Market-places and Squares are spacious, and adorn'd with Fountains. The Town being wall'd round, and the River *Pegnitz* running through it, there are twelve large Arches in the Wall to receive it into the Town; and it is evacuated out of the Town in the same Manner. It is not navigable, but it turns a great many Mills for Corn, Iron, Paper, *&c.* This City is very populous; and of an Inland Place not situate near the Sea or some navigable River, it may be said to have the best Trade of any in *Europe*. Here are exquisite Artists in Iron, Steel, Wood, Alabaster, *&c.* and so plenty, that their Goods and Toys may be bought very cheap; and indeed most of the ingenious Performances which we have from *Holland*, or of the *Dutch* any where, are made at and about *Nurenburg*, though the *Dutch* have the Credit of them, and their Ingenuity is applauded in Performances they were never capable of; Only *they have been so Ingenious* as to find out where they were made, and *Impose* them upon others as their own. Nurenburg

In this City is kept the *Regalia* us'd at the Emperor's Coronation, as is the *Imperial* Crown with which *Charlemain* was crown'd, his Mantle, Globe, and Sword, the Scepter and *Imperial* Cloak, Gloves and Buskins cover'd with Plates of Gold.

The *Lutheran* is the establish'd Religion, only the Roman Catholicks are allow'd to perform their Devotion in the *Lutheran* Church when they have done; and the *Calvinists* have not so much Privilege as that, for they are not allow'd any Place of publick Worship, only at a Church about three

three Miles out of the Town, and ſuffer the *Lutherans* to baptize their Children.

The Juriſdiction of *Nurenburg* extends about twenty Miles. Chief Towns in it are, 1. *Altorf*, an Univerſity about twelve Miles from *Nurenburg*. 2. *Burthan*. 3. *Herſprach*: All theſe were formerly Parts of the *Upper Palatinate*, and taken by the *Nurenburghers* in the Year 1504.

4. Another *Imperial* City is *Rotenburg*, on the River *Tauber*, thirty Miles to the Weſtward of *Nurenburg*, but not noted for any thing but being a neat compact Town. 5. *Schweinfurt*, twenty ſix Miles North Eaſt of *Wurtzburg*, a City neither large nor populous. 6. *Winſcheim*, a little *Imperial* City on the River *Arſch*, ſixteen Miles to the Northward of *Rotenburg*. 7. *Weiſſenburg*, in the Biſhoprick of *Aichſtat*, twenty eight Miles South of *Nurenburg*. Theſe are all the free *Imperial* Cities that are in the Circle of *Franconia*.

CHAP. XIII.

Of Saxony *in General.*

SAXONY conſider'd under its preſent Limitation, and known by the Circles of *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, is bounded on the North by the *Baltick* Sea, *Denmark*, and the *German* Ocean; by *Poland* and *Sileſia* on the Eaſt; on the South by *Bohemia* and *Franconia*; and on the Weſt by *Weſtphalia*. It lies between fifty and fifty five of North Latitude.

The *Saxons* were a prevailing plundering People, inſomuch that they were a Terror to the *Romans* by their frequent Expeditions by Sea, and no leſs upon the Coaſts of *Britain*, *France*, and *Spain*, who were oblig'd to maintain ſtanding Troops to defend themſelves againſt their Incurſions: And when the *Saxons* became formidable, they were join'd by *Jutes*, *Angles*, and other Tribes; all of which ſtill went under the Name of *Saxons*. They firſt infeſted the *Britiſh* Shoar about the Year 370, but found no Reſt or Settlement here, till they were invited hither by *Vortigern*, about the Year 480, of which, *See a further Account when we come to the Hiſtory of* England.

In *Upper Saxony* is included, 1. The Dutchy of *Saxony*. 2. The Marquiſate of *Miſnia* and *Voigland*. 3. The Marquiſate of *Luſatia*. 4. The Dutchies of *Sax Mersburg*, *Sax Naumburg*, and *Sax Altemburg* 5. The Principality of *Anhalt*, and County of *Barby*. 6. The Province of *Thuringia*. Theſe are moſtly ſubject to the Elector of *Saxony*; but beſides theſe, there are in *Upper Saxony*, the Marquiſate and Electorate of *Brandenburg*, the Dutchy of *Magdeburg*, the Principality of *Halberſtat*, and the Dutchy of *Pomerania*; but theſe are moſtly under the Dominion of the Elector of *Brandenburg* now King of *Pruſſia*. The chief Rivers in *Upper Saxony* are, 1. The *Elbe*, which having water'd the Cities of *Prague*, *Dreſden*, *Wittenburg*, and *Magdeburg*, glides down to *Hambugh*, and thence into the *German* Ocean. Other Rivers are, the *Sala*, which falls into the *Elbe* between *Wittenburg* and *Magdeburg*; the *Elſter*, the *Unſtruch*, the *Spree*, the *Havel*, and the *Neiſſe*, beſides others of leſs Note.

Saxony Proper, which gives the Title of Duke to the Elector of *Saxony*, is but of a ſmall Extent; being bounded on the North by the Principality of *Anhalt*, and on the Eaſt by *Luſatia* and Part of *Brandenburg*; by *Miſnia* on the South, and by the Landgravate of *Thuringia* and County of *Mansfield* on the Weſt. The Country yields good Wheat and ſome Wine. Here are Mines of Silver and other Metal, but Fuel is very ſcarce.

Chief Towns of *Saxony Proper* or the Dutchy of *Saxony* are firſt, *Wittenburg* on the *Elbe*, forty Miles North of *Leipſick*. The Town has but one long Street, and is not remarkable for any thing but the Univerſity, of which a merry Traveller gives the following Character:

At Wittenburg *a Man is ſure to meet*
Hogs, Soldiers, Whores, and Scholars in the Street.

2. *Hall Saxonum* on the River *Sala*, about forty Miles South Weſt of *Wittenburg*. Here the *High Dutch* is ſpoken in its Original Purity. The Salt-works here yield a great Revenue to the Elector of *Brandenburg* their Sovereign. 3. *Quedlinburg*, thirty five Miles North Weſt of *Hall*, remarkable for a Nunnery there, whoſe Abbeſs is Sovereign of the Place, has a Repreſentative in the general Diet, and is always a Princeſs of the Houſe of *Saxony*. There are other Towns of leſs Note, and not worth a particular Deſcription.

The ſecond Diviſion of *Upper Saxony* is *Miſnia*, bounded on the North by *Upper Saxony*, and on the Eaſt by *Luſatia*; by *Bohemia* on the South, and by *Thuringia* on the Weſt. The principal Rivers are the *Elbe*, the *Mulda*, the *Pleiſs*, and the *Black* and *White Eſter*. Chief Towns are 1. *Dreſden*, the Capital of *Saxony*, and the Reſidence of the Elector. The City is large and populous, about forty Miles South Eaſt from *Leipſick*. It is a wall'd City, fortify'd after the modern way; and ſo ſtrong, that the late reſolute King of *Sweden* did not think fit to make any Attempt upon it even when he was Maſter of all the reſt of the Country. The River *Elbe* runs through it, and divides it into the new and old City, which are join'd by a fine Bridge of ſeventeen Arches. In the new Town is the Palace, which contains many beautiful Apartments for which it is admir'd; as the Hall of it is for fine Painting, eſpecially of People of moſt Nations drawn in their reſpective Habits; but the chief Curioſities are (beſides many other things) many artificial Works in Coral, Agate, and Mother of Pearl; alſo a Purſe of incombuſtible Linnen, unpoliſh'd Topazes ten Inches in Diameter, and Emeralds of one Inch as they grow in the Rock. Alſo many things perform'd by Clock-work, as a Horſeman riding, a Ship under Sail, a Crab crawling on the Table, *&c.* and even the Stables are no leſs to be admir'd for their Magnificence and Curioſity. In the Arſenal was lately no leſs than four hundred Pieces of Braſs Cannon, but the Number is now reduced by the late Inroads of the *Swedes* in the late War.

Miſnia

Dreſden Capital of *Saxony*.

2. *Leipſick*, a fine, well built, and populous City, ſituate at the Confluence of three ſmall Rivers, *Elſter*, *Pleſſa*, and *Parda*; or it may rather be ſaid, where the two laſt, which are ſmall ones, fall into the *Elſter*, which is more conſiderable, and retains its Name till it falls into the *Elbe* between *Wittenburg* and *Magdeburg*. *Leipſick* is about forty Miles Northweſt of *Dreſden*; it is a Place of great

Leipſick

Trade, chiefly at the three annual Fairs, *Chriſtmas*, *Eaſter*, and *Michaelmas*. The Church of Saint *Nicholas* is ſaid to be the fineſt *Lutheran* Church in *Germany*. Here is an Univerſity, but there are but four Colleges in it. The *High Dutch* Language is ſpoke here in great Purity.

Freiburgh. 3. *Freiburgh* is about twenty Miles South Weſt of *Dreſden* near the River *Mulda*, in an exceeding pleaſant Situation. It is wall'd round, has handſome Streets, and a ſpacious Market-place. The Elector's Palace is a ſumptuous Building, as is the Church of St. *Peter*. A great Part of the Town

Mines. ſtands upon a Silver Mine, which is dug hollow in Arches to ſupport the Surface, under which they dig the Mines to come at the Ore. There are ſeveral other Mines near this Place, but eſpecially three; one of them is call'd the *High Hill*; this is two hundred Fathoms deep. Another they call the *Prince of Heaven*; this has produc'd Ore, of which an hundred Weight has afforded ſixty five Pounds Weight of Silver, but generally only from half an Ounce to an Ounce and an half in the Pound; and its commonly obſerv'd, that where the Strata or Vein of Ore is thinneſt, *viz.* not above two Inches thick, it is the richeſt. It is ſaid that this Mine ſince the firſt opening of it, has yielded Silver to the Value of above an hundred Million Sterling; and that the Elector's annual Revenue ariſing from thence, amounts to above one hundred and thirty thouſand Pounds Sterling clear of all Charges. The third Mine is the *Neck-breaker*, about eighty Fathoms deep; it produces Lead, Copper, and Silver, but they work chiefly for the laſt. There is alſo a rich Sulphur Ore, amongſt which, ſome ſmall Quantities of Copper and Silver Ore are found. It is dangerous working in theſe Mines by Reaſon of the Damps which ſometimes prove fatal to the Miners, as does the Duſt which is drawn into their Lungs with their Breath, and throws them into frequent Conſumptions. The Money coin'd at *Freiburgh* is equal in Allay and intrinſick Value to our Sterling; but no other Money in *Germany* comes near it for Fineneſs; but is of ſo deep an Allay, that it is a much baſer Metal than our *Engliſh* Standard.

4. *Meiſſen*, formerly the Capital of *Miſnia*, ſituate upon a River of the ſame Name; but now remarkable for nothing but an antient Palace belonging to the Elector, but otherways of little Note. Beſides theſe, there are the Towns of *Plawen*, *Mulberg*, &c. but being Places of which we find nothing worth Notice in News or Hiſtory, they are ſcarce worth a Deſcription in this Catalogue.

Luſatia. 3. *Luſatia* is bounded on the North by *Brandenburg*, and on the Eaſt by *Sileſia*; by *Bohemia* on the South, and by the Dutchy of *Saxony*, or *Saxony Proper*, and *Miſnia* on the Weſt. Principal Rivers are, the River *Spree*, which runs down to *Berlin* and the *Neiſſe*. It is in ſome Parts barren and ſandy, and others ſo full of Moraſſes and Bogs, that it ſcarce produces Corn enough to ſupply the Inhabitants; but they have Plenty of Veniſon and Fiſh, and alſo of Wood. Chief Towns are, 1. *Bautzen* on the River *Spree*, about thirty Miles Eaſt of *Dreſden*; but having been almoſt demoliſh'd by the *Swedes*, it makes but a ſmall Figure at preſent. 2. *Gorlitz*, upon the River *Neiſſe*, about twenty five Miles to the Eaſtward of *Bautzen*. The chief Manufacture of this Place is making and dying Linen Cloth, the other Towns are of little Note.

Sax Mersburg, &c. 4. UNDER the fourth Diviſion I ſhall include *Sax Mersburg*, *Sax Naumburg*, and *Sax Altemburg*, of which, 1. *Sax Mersburg* was a Biſhop's See, the Town about eighteen Miles North Weſt of *Leipſick*; but there is little remarkable but an old Cathedral. 2. *Sax Naumburg* is the Capital of a Biſhoprick; the Town is ſituate on the River *Sala*, twenty five Miles South Weſt of *Leipſick*. 3. *Sax Altemburg*, the chief Town or Capital is *Altemburg*; it is now ſubject to the Duke of *Sax Gotha*.

5. Fifthly, The Principality of *Anhalt*, and the County of *Barby*; the Prince of *Anhalt* is one of the moſt antient Families in *Germany*. The chief Towns are, *Zerbſt*, *Brenberg*, and *Deſſau*; but there is nothing remarkable in any of them, except that the Prince has a Palace at each of them, at each of which he reſides alternately at his Pleaſure.

6. Sixthly, The Landgravate of *Thuringia*, and the County of *Manſfeldt*, on the South Side of the *Hercynian* Foreſt. The chief Rivers are the *Sala*, the *Werra*, the *Unſtruch*, the *Jera*, and the *Leina*. This County affords Plenty of Corn and ſome Wine, good Salt-pits, and ſome, but little, Silver and Copper.

CHIEF Towns of *Thuringia* are, 1. *Erfurt*, on the River *Jera*, Sixty Miles South Weſtward from *Leipſick*. It is a very conſiderable City, and us'd to vye with *Cologn* for Beauty, Trade, and Wealth. Here are ſeveral magnificent Structures, as a Caſtle, ſeveral Churches and Abbies, an Univerſity, &c. and to it belongs a large Territory, containing ſeveral Baronies, and between ſixty and eighty Villages; all which were ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*; but upon their embracing the *Lutheran* Religion, they revolted to the Elector of *Saxony*, which occaſion'd a War between them; but it was agreed by a Treaty, that ſeventeen Villages ſhould be transferr'd to the Elector of *Saxony*; and that *Erfurt* and its Dependencies ſhould remain to the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*; and upon this Foot it remains to this Day. 2. *Weimar*, about thirty Miles Eaſtward of *Erfurt*; it is the Capital of a Dutchy, and gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Saxony*. It has a great Trade in Wine. 3. *Jena*, on the River *Sala*, twenty three Miles Eaſtward of *Erfurt*, remarkable only for its Univerſity. 4. *Gotha*, the Capital of a Dutchy of the ſame Name. It is about thirty Miles to the Weſtward of *Erfurt*; the Natives here are chiefly employ'd in cultivating and preparing Wood, of which this and the adjacent Country affords great Quantities; and with this Advantage, that inſtead of impairing, it fattens and improves the Land. There are other Towns of leſs Note, as *Mulhauſen*, a ſmall *Imperial* City, *Orlamund*, *Tomenberg*, *Eiſenach*, Capital of a Dutchy. It gives Title to another Prince of *Saxony*. *Marchſul*, the Reſidence of the Dukes of *Sax Gotha*, *Sunderhauſen*, the Capital of *Schwartzburg*, *North-Hauſen*, the Capital of *Hoenſtein* and *Stolberg*, Capital of a Territory of the ſame Name.

ANOTHER Territory is *Manſfeld*, lying on the *Hercynian* Foreſt, between *Anhalt* on the North, and *Thuringia* on the South. This Country affords Plenty of Minerals, amongſt which there is a Sort of black glittering Salt call'd by the Natives *Scheiffer-ſtones*, which being melted, yield both Copper and Silver. When they have extracted the Copper, they work it over again to fetch out the Silver, of which every hundred Weight of Copper affords ten or twelve Ounces. There is a remarkable Lake in this Territory in the Neighbourhood of *Eiſleben*, which abounds with ſeveral Sorts of Fiſh and other Water Animals, as Frogs, Water-Rats, and the like; all which are lively depicted in theſe *Scheiffer-ſtones* by fair Copper Strokes through the very Body of the *Scheiffer-ſtone*. I do not undertake to give the true philoſophical Reaſon for this ſympathetical Repreſentation of one in the other, but the Poſſibility of the Truth of it may eaſily be allow'd, if we conſider that in our own Country, *viz.* near *Alderly* in *Glouceſter-*

ſhire,

ſhire, and alſo on the Tops of ſome Mountains not far from *Richmond*, are found Plenty of Stones exactly reſembling Cockles, Oyſters, *&c.* alſo above the High Water Mark at Sea Side near *Whitby* in *Yorkſhire*, are found Stones exactly like Serpents quoil'd about like a Rope with the Tails innermoſt. Alſo a little to the Southward upon the ſame Coaſt, and between *Whitby* and *Scarborough* are found Plenty of round Stones, which being tenderly broke, there are found in them Serpents of Stone wreath'd up, but moſtly without Heads; but as this Digreſſion proves, that there may ſuch Sportings or Miracles of Nature be ſeen in our own Country, it may ſerve to prove the Poſſibility at leaſt and Probability too of things as ſurprizing to be ſeen elſewhere.

The Counts of *Mansfield* are Princes of the Empire, of a very antient Family, and have no great Dependance on the Elector of *Saxony*. Chief Towns of the County of *Mansfield* are, 1. *Mansfield*, which gives Name to the County and Title to its Count. It is about five Miles North Weſt of *Eyſleben*; but it is now only an old ruinous Town, and remarkable for nothing but its Dignity abovementioned. 2. *Eyſleben*, ſo call'd from the Iron Ore dug there, which the Natives call'd *Eyſen*. *Martin Luther* was born here in the Year 1483. and died at this ſame Place in the Year 1564. aged 81. This Town is but ſmall, and ſtands about fifteen Miles North Weſt of *Hall*. The principal Trade of this Town is imply'd in the Name of it, *viz.* Iron. Other Towns of leſs Note are, *Wipra*, *Aruſtein*, *Querfort*, &c. but they are but obſcure Places and ſcarce worth a Deſcription.

The Revenues of the Elector of *Saxony* are ſaid to exceed that of any *German* Power, except the Emperor himſelf; for it is ſuppos'd to amount to above five hundred thouſand a Year rais'd from the Corn, Wine, Beer, *&c.* in his Dominions, beſides his Demeſne Lands, and the Revenues ariſing from the Mines, *&c.*

Auguſtus, the late Elector of *Saxony*, beginning to have a Proſpect of being elected King of *Poland* about the Year 1696, endeavour'd to qualify himſelf for that high Station; and as one material Article in the *Pacta Conventa* is, *That the King of* Poland *ſhall be a Roman Catholick*, [See *Article* XI. of the *Pacta Conventa* in *Chap.* VII. of the Hiſtory of *Poland*, *pag.* 369.] ſo he renounc'd the Proteſtant Religion and embrac'd Popery, accordingly as his Son the preſent Elector of *Saxony* has done ſince with the ſame View.

The Elector of *Saxony* is great Marſhal of the Empire, and as ſuch, has the Guard of the City where the Diet aſſembles. His Titles are, Duke of *Saxony*, *Juliers*, *Cleve*, *Berg*, *Eugers* and *Weſtphalia*, Arch-Marſhal, and Elector of the Empire, Landgrave of *Thuringia*, Margrave of *Miſnia*, and of *Upper* and *Lower Luſatia*, Count and Prince of *Henneberg*, Count of *La Mark*, *Ravensburg* and *Barby*, and Lord of *Ravenſtein*; and bears the reſpective Arms belonging to all the abovemention'd Titles.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the North Part of Upper Saxony; *containing* Brandenburg, Magdeburg, Halberſtat, Pomerania, *and the Iſland of* Rugen.

THE Territories now propoſed to be treated of as above, are moſtly ſubject to the King of *Pruſſia* as Elector of *Brandenburg*; and as taken together, are bounded on the North by the *Baltick* Sea, and by *Poland*; on the Eaſt by *Sileſia*, &c. on the South and on the Weſt by *Lower Saxony*.

Brandenburg is a Marquiſate, or by ſome *the Marquiſate* by way of Eminence, as being the Northermoſt Bounds or Marches of the *German* Empire. It is bounded by *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania* on the North, and by *Poland* on the Eaſt; on the South by Part of *Upper Saxony*, and by *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg* on the Weſt. The chief Rivers are, the *Elbe*, the *Oder*, the *Havel*, the *Spree*, and the *Wart*; and as the *Oder* falls into the *Baltick*, and the *Elbe* into the *German* Ocean, they have cut a Canal from one to the other, whereby the Communication is maintain'd between the two Seas; and Goods are convey'd by Water between the *Baltick* and *Hamburgh* or the *German* Ocean without paſſing the *Sound*, or paying the Duties required of Ships that paſs that Way.

This Country does not afford Abundance of Corn, but that Defect is ſupply'd by the common Granary of *Poland*; but they have Plenty of Sheep, as alſo of Deer and other Veniſon, but ſcarce of Black Cattle and no Wine, except a ſour unpleaſant Sort. They have no Salt but what is brought by Water. Their Mines of Silver and Copper yield but very little of their reſpective Metals; and in ſhort they are but a poor miſerable Sort of People. *Calviniſm* is the chief prevailing Religion among them, eſpecially at *Koningsburg* and *Frankfort* upon *Oder*; but the generality of the Inhabitants of *Brandenburg* are *Lutherans*.

Brandenburg.

Towns of moſt Note in the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg* are, 1. *Brandenburg*, in the Midſt of a Morals on the River *Havel* or *Hamel*, which runs through the Town. It is about twenty ſix Miles Weſtward from *Berlin*: It was once the Metropolis of the Marquiſate, whoſe Name it yet bears; but it is ſuch a wretched poor Place, that was it not for a Lake in the Neighbourhood which affords them Plenty of Fiſh, they could ſcarce ſubſiſt.

Berlin.

2. *Berlin*, ſituate in a plentiful Country on the River *Spree*, forty Miles to the Weſtward of *Frankfort* upon *Oder*. It is the Capital of the Marquiſate, and the uſual Reſidence of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, who is now alſo King of *Pruſſia*. It ſtands upon the River *Spree*, but has a Suburb on the other Side of the River called *Coln*, though (like *London* and *Southwark*) they are both underſtood by the Name of the Capital, *Berlin*; and what contributes very much to the Trade and Riches of this Capital, is, that it ſtands upon the Canal above-mention'd between the *Elbe* and the *Oder*; ſo that it not only has a Communication both with the *German* Ocean and the *Baltick*, but alſo all Goods that are convey'd by that Paſſage, are obliged to go through *Berlin*. The Gentry of *don* have of late affected to imitate the Faſhion is Town in a new-faſhion'd Sort of Chariots, w ch are thence called Berlins.

Frankfort.

3. *Frankfort upon Oder*, ſo call'd to diſtinguiſh it from *Frankfort on the Maine*. It ſtands (as its Name imports) on the River *Oder*, about forty Miles

Miles Eastward of *Berlin*. It was a Hans Town, and an Imperial City, but now subject to the Marquis of *Brandenburg*. The Town is divided into two Parts by the River *Oder*, over which is a wooden Bridge. The Town has a tolerable Trade, especially at the annual Fairs, but not like what it has formerly had. Other Towns in this Marquisate are not remarkable, except *Potsdam*, and that only for the King of *Prussia*'s having a Palace there.

Magdeburg.

Magdeburg is a Dutchy bounded on the North by *Mechlenburg* and *Brandenburg*, by *Upper Saxony* on the East, on the South by *Anhalt* and *Halberstat*, and on the West by *Brunswick*. The River *Elbe* divides this Territory into two Parts, the eastermost abounds in Wood and Forests, and the other in Corn and Grain, but with this Remark, that which of these one of them hath the other wants. The chief City is *Magdeburg*, call'd in some antient History *Parthenopolis*. It stands on the Banks of the *Elbe*, about seventy Miles to the Westward of *Berlin*. *Edgitha*, Daughter of *Edmund* the *Saxon*, King of *England*, enlarg'd and beautify'd it, and prevail'd with the Pope to make it an Archbishoprick, and the Archbishop was Primate of all *Germany*. The Bust of this generous Empress is still to be seen in the Cathedral Church, with eighteen Casks of Gold by her, which Quantity it is said the Improvement and Privileges of this City cost her. It was a very large City, but destroy'd by the Imperial General Count *Tilly*, in the Year 1631. who of forty thousand Inhabitants then in the City, massacred all, except four hundred only, for embracing the *Lutheran* Doctrine. He also demolish'd all the Houses and Churches, except the Cathedral, which is now a sumptuous Building, and had in the Popish Times (as Dr. *Nicholson* says) forty nine noble Altars. In *Magdeburg Luther* had his Education, and here were the first Institution of Tilts and Tournaments, by the Emperor *Henry*, sirnamed the *Fowler*, about the Year 930. but although those bold Engagements were accounted the Effects of Valour at the first Institution of them, yet they were found of such destructive Consequence (seventeen Gentlemen of *Franconia*, and nine of *Hesse*, being kill'd upon the Spot) that they were abolished.

Halberstat.

Halberstat is a Principality lying between *Magdeburg* on the North, and *Anhalt* on the South, and between *Saxony* on the East, and *Hildesheim* on the West. The chief Town is *Halberstat*, on the River *Hotheim*, about thirty Miles South West of *Magdeburg*. Here is said to be the largest Inn, with the best Accommodations of any in *Europe*. *Lutheranism* is the established Religion here. There is at *Gruningen*, a Tun, in imitation of, or rather intended to out-vye, that of *Heydelburg*; this containing near a thousand Hogsheads of Wine, whereas that at *Heydelburg* (of whose Description hereafter) contains but two hundred Tuns, or eight hundred Hogsheads. This Country abounds in Corn, and produces Plenty of Venison.

Pomerania is bounded by the *Baltick* on the North, and by *Polish Pomerelia* on the East; by *Brandenburg* on the South, and by *Mecklenburg* on the West. Its chief Rivers are the *Oder*, the *Pen*, the *Roga*, the *Persant*, the *Wiper*, the *Stolpe*, the *Rekenitz*, and the *Bante*. The *Rekenitz* runs between *Pomerania* and *Mecklenburg*, and forms a large Lake near *Damganten*, which empties itself into the *Baltick* at *Dans*. The *Oder* divides itself into several Branches soon after its entring *Pomerania*, and forms several Islands, after which it falls into the *Baltick* at the Islands of *Usedom* and *Welling*, which two Islands lying in the Mouth of it makes it form three Channels, where it falls into the Sea, and all navigable, so that Ships may go through any of them to *Stetin*. *Pomeren* contains several Lakes, and but few Mountains, it being low marshy Ground; the Lakes afford Plenty of Fish and Water-Fowl, but they have Scarce of Corn, and no Mines, except some few of Iron.

Division.

Eastern and Western *Pomerania* are separated by the *Oder*; the Eastern is subdivided into the Districts of *Pomerania*, *Casuben*, and *Vendosin*, or *Wenden*. *Havel*, or the Western, contains the Districts of *Stetin*, *Wolgast Galskow*, and *Bardt*, with the Islands of *Rugen*, *Usedom*, and *Welling*.

The Dukedom of *Pomerania* has undergone many Revolutions, but western *Pomerania* has of late remain'd in the quiet Possession of the *Swedes*, till the late King of *Sweden*'s Defeat at *Pultowa*, when the King of *Prussia* taking the Advantage of his Distress, seiz'd *Stetin*, and the Islands of *Usedom* and *Welling*, and the *Danes*, assisted by the *Prussians*, *Poles*, and *Moscovites*, took *Stralsund*, *Manstrand*, and *Rugen Island*; but in the Year 1720. the *Danes* were obliged by a Treaty of Peace to restore what they had taken from the *Swede*; but *Stetin*, the Isles of *Usedom* and *Welling*, and the Countries adjoining to the *Oder*, were confirm'd to the King of *Prussia* as Elector of *Brandenburg*, who then had them in Possession, so that he has now a free Communication with the *Baltick* by the River *Oder*, which when the *Swede* had *Stetin* and the Islands of *Usedom* and *Welling*, he could not have the Advantage of, without their Leave.

Chief Towns.

Chief Towns of Western *Pomerania* are, 1. *Stetin*, the Capital, and formerly one of the Hans Towns on the West Side of the River *Oder*, about forty Miles South from the *Baltick* Sea, and seventy North from *Berlin*. It is a large populous City, and has a good Trade, but inferior to what it formerly had. The *Swedes* had it in Possession till the King of *Prussia* work'd them out of it by a Stratagem, about the Year 1713. persuading the Citizens to admit his Forces into the Town, that he might secure it for them against the *Moscovite*; but when he had once got Possession, he secured it for himself, and never would quit it since, as above observed.

2. *Stralsund*, on the Coast of Western *Pomerania*, over-against the Island of *Rugen*, where the Channel is about a Mile broad. It is a good Harbour, and the Town well built and fortified. They have a great Trade for Corn, which they export abroad. The *Danes*, assisted by the *Russians* and *Saxons*, took *Stralsund* in *November* 1715. but were oblig'd to relinquish it to the *Swede* in the Year 1720. in whose Possession it now continues. 3. *Gripswald*, a small Harbour, about thirty Miles South East of *Stralsund*. 4. *Wolgast*, upon the *Oder*, about five Miles from the *Baltick*, and fifteen to the Eastward of *Gripswald*. It was formerly the Capital of a Dutchy, and is now a very good Harbour. 5. *Bandt*, twelve Miles to the Westward of *Stralsund*; but of it, and several other Towns, we have only the Names, and nothing remarkable.

Rugen.

The Island of *Rugen* is now in Possession of the *Swedes*. It is a large Island, but much wash'd away by the Sea, and less than it formerly was; but it is yet about thirty Miles over; but the Creeks and Bays run so far into it, that scarce any Part of the Land is above two or three Miles from the Sea, or some Branch of it. The chief Town is *Bergen*, and contains about four hundred Houses, but is not considerable in any Particular. The Island affords Plenty of Corn, Sheep, black Cattle, good Horses, and the largest Geese in *Europe*. Their Seas and Lakes yield Plenty of Fish, although they have so many Creeks and Bays in the Island, they make little Use of them, but make use of *Stralsund* only as their chief or rather their only Sea-Port.

The Succession of their Princes formerly is deliver'd with so much Uncertainty, as renders the

the whole disputable, only the *Danes* took it in the Year 1678. and restor'd it in the Year 1679. to the *Swede*, who has the present Possession of it.

Chief Towns

Chief Towns in Eastern *Pomerania* are, 1. *Cammin*, on a Branch of the *Oder*, five Miles from the *Baltick*, and thirty five North of *Stetin*. 2. *Colberg*, at the Mouth of the River *Pensant*, near the *Baltick*, about twenty Miles North East of *Cammin*. The Salt-Pits near this Place afford the King of *Prussia* a good Revenue. Other Towns not remarkable for any Thing particular, or worth a Description, I shall not trouble the Reader with.

Succession.

As to the Family of the present Elector of *Brandenburg* (now King of *Prussia*) the Emperor *Henry* I. having conquer'd this Country about the Year 927. gave the Government of it to *Sigefride*, Earl of *Rengenheim*, on condition that he should defend the Marches, that is, guard the Limits or utmost Bounds of the Empire, against the Insults and Inroads of the *Sclaves*; and hence, as Defender of those Marches, he was call'd Marchgrave, or Margrave, or, as the Word is now express'd, Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and from him it descended successively to several others, but only during the (then) Emperor's Pleasure, till about the Year 1162. *Albert* Prince of *Anhalt* was constituted Hereditary Marquis of *Brandenburg*, and it continued in his Family for sixteen Descents, the last of which was *Sigismund*, King of *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*, who succeeding to the Empire, sold the Marquisate of *Brandenburg* to the Duke of *Moravia*, and he mortgag'd it to the Marquis of *Misnia*; but the Emperor redeem'd it, and sold it to *Frederick*, Burgrave of *Horemburg*, *Anno* 1417. from whom the present King of *Prussia*, as Elector of *Brandenburg*, derives his Pedigree.

Frederick, the last Elector of *Brandenburg*, was proclaim'd and crown'd King of *Prussia* in the Year 1700. and died in *February* 1712-13. when his only Son *Frederick-William*, the present King of *Prussia*, succeeded; and as to the present State of *Prussia*, although it is neither the most populous, nor the most fruitful Country of any of the *German* Powers, yet it is the largest, except that of *Austria*, and as flourishing a Province as any in all *Germany*, which, as it cannot be imputed to the Fruitfulness of the Soil, it is attributed to their encouraging of foreign Trade, and profitable Manufactures, among which that of the woollen is now so improv'd, that they furnish most Part of the Empire of *Russia* with woollen Cloth, which was formerly a considerable Branch of the *English* Trade there.

Forces of the King of *Prussia*.

The King of *Prussia*'s Troops amount to near eighty thousand regular Forces, a surprizing Charge for a Country that is none of the most productive; but we may consider that he lets them out upon occasion, and that commonly to those who will give him the most for them; so that he not only makes them maintain themselves, and gets Money by them too, but also makes himself formidable, and is now counted as an Ally by both the Imperial Powers of *Germany* and *Russia*, who have offer'd very advantageous Proposals to him, to bring him over, each to their respective Interest; and as they are thus courted, and commonly well paid, his maintaining such a numerous standing Army is not so burthensome to his Subjects as where they are not only paid out of the Substance of the Subjects, but employ'd only to keep them in awe too.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Circle of Lower Saxony, *containing the Dutchies of* Mecklenburg, Lawenburg, Holstein, Hanover, Brunswick, Lunenburg, Bremen, *and* Verden.

Boundary

THE Circle of *Lower Saxony*, (exclusive of *Magdeburg* and *Halberstat* before treated of) is bounded to the Northward by the *German* Ocean, *Denmark*, and the *Baltick* Sea, and on the East by *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*; by the Landgrave of *Hesse* on the South, and by *Westphalia* on the West. The chief Rivers are the *Elbe*, the *Weser*, the *Aller*, the *Hamma*, the *Hemon*, the *Leme*, the *Oker*, and the *Eldt*.

The first Subdivision of *Lower Saxony*, as above-mention'd, is *Mecklenburg*, bounded on the North by the *Baltick* Sea, and on the East by *Pomerania*; on the South by *Brandenburg*, and on the West by *Lunenburg* and *Saxe-Lawenburg*. It produces Plenty of Corn and Fruits, especially Apples, and their Lakes abound with Fish and Water-Fowls. The most remarkable Towns in the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg* are,

stock.

1. *Rostock*, an Imperial City and Hans Town, situate at the Mouth of the River *Warna*, which falls into the *Baltick*, between thirty and forty Miles to the Westward of *Stralsund*, and about as much to the Eastward of *Wismar*. It is a large City, containing many thousands of well-built Houses; and whether by Chance or Choice they made so much Use of the Number seven is uncertain, but it is observed, that there is a spacious Market-place, from and to which seven large Streets lead, and in which they terminate and center. There are seven handsome Gates towards the Land, seven Bridges over the River *Warna*, for a Communication between the several Parts of the Town; seven great Doors to the Cathedral Church, seven Towers in the Town-Hall; and, indeed, some other sevens of so little Consequence, that they seem to proceed rather from Affectation than Order. Here is a large University, founded in the Year 1419. by *John* and *Albert*, cotemporary Dukes of *Mecklenburg*.

Warnemund.

2. *Warnemund*, upon the same River *Warna*, (from whence it takes its Name) and about seven Miles below *Rostock*, being the Port-Town for Ships that cannot come up so high as *Rostock*. 3. *Wismar*, to the Westward of *Rostock* as before observ'd, and between thirty and forty Miles to the Eastward of *Lubeck*. It is a very good Harbour. It was first built, as suppos'd, out of the Ruins of the antient City of *Mecklenburg*, about the Year 1250. and about sixteen Years afterwards was improv'd both in Largeness and Beauty, and is now extremely populous. It was accounted one of the chief Hans-towns; and in this Harbour all the Men of War belonging to that Body were laid up. It is now in the Possession of the *Swedes*, but its Walls and Fortifications are demolish'd according to the Conditions upon which it was deliver'd to them in the Year 1720. 4. *Swerin*, situate on a great Lake call'd the *Swerin* Sea, about fifteen Miles

South of *Wismar*. And, 5. *Gustrow*, a well fortify'd Town to the Southward of *Rostock*, and upon the same River.

Religion. LUTHERANISM was establish'd here in the Year 1550. by Duke *John Albert*, who demolish'd the Abbies and other religious Places of the Roman Catholicks, and apply'd their Revenues to other Uses.

Charles Leopold, the present Duke of *Mecklenburg*, charging his first Wife with being wantonly dispos'd, he put her away and married the Dutchess Dowager of *Courland*, Niece to the late *Czar*, in the Year 1716.

Lawenburg. THE Dutchy of *Sax Lawenburg* is bounded by *Holstein* on the North and West; by *Mecklenburg* on the East, and by *Lunenburg* on the South. The River *Elbe* runs quite through it. The chief Town is of the same Name, *Lawenburg*; it stands where the River *Stegnitz* falls into the *Elbe*, about thirty Miles South of *Lubeck*, and about forty Miles South East of *Hamburg*. It is but a small Town but very populous, and has a good Trade. I do not find any other Town of Note in this Dutchy. The last Duke of *Lawenburg*, *Julius Francis*, dy'd without Male Issue in the Year 1689. and the Duke of *Lunenburg* succeeded to the Possession of it; and at his Death it devolv'd upon the Elector of *Hanover*.

Holstein. *Holstein Proper* has been already described in *Chap.* I. of the History of *Denmark*, *Pag.* 418; but I then omitted the Description of those two noted Places, *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*; some not reckoning them to belong to *Holstein* probably, because they have freed themselves from the *Danish* Yoke; but he yet continues his Pretensions to those Places, and imposes Laws and Taxes upon them, insomuch, that at the Writing hereof, he has made Prizes of some *Hamburg* Ships, and pretends a Privilege so to do till they gratify his Demand.

Hamburg is one of the Hans-Towns, and a very considerable one: It stands on the River *Elbe*, partly upon Islands, and partly upon the main Continent, on the North Side of the River, about forty Miles South West of *Lubeck*, and sixty North East from *Bremen*. It is disputed whether *Hamburg* be within the Limits of *Stormaria*, a Province of *Holstein*; but however the Territories belonging to *Hamburg*, and adjoining to it, lie in *Stormaria*; and although those Territories are but small, yet they contain several Villages, Gentlemen's Palaces, and good Buildings.

A GREAT Part of *Hamburg* stands upon small Islands in the River *Elbe*; betwen which, as well as between them and that Part of the Town that stands upon the North Shore, there is as at *Venice*, a Communication by Bridges; but the Islands are generally so low, that in some extraordinary high Tides, their Houses are damag'd or quite demolish'd; but this watery Situation makes them naturally more strong and more difficult of Access by an Enemy. And for the North Part of the Town, which stands upon the Continent, it is secur'd from the Lands by regular Fortifications and good Walls. The Streets are wide, but crooked; the Buildings most of Brick and very high. Ships from all Parts of *Europe* trade hither; and from hence Merchandize is dispers'd all over the Empire. But as for their own Manufactures, if I may so call it, the chief is Beer; the Brewing of which employs abundance of People, as well as the transporting of it into all the neighbouring Countries is an advantageous Trade; it being valued equal with Wine. The greatest Part of their Provisions, are either brought down the Water to them from *Germany*, or imported from abroad; but their own Rivers produce Plenty of Fish, as their Gardens do of Greens, Roots, and Fruits; and are very delightful as well as profitable; and as for their Navigation, large Ships may come up to the very Walls to load or unload; but the largest indeed anchor at *New Mills*, abou four Miles below the Town, to lighten Part of their Loading when coming up, or going down, there to take in the last of their Loading; when they go down loaden, the Goods being convey'd in smaller Vessels between the *New Mills* and the Town. The Tide flows about sixteen Miles above *Hamburg*, which is in all about Ninety Miles from the Sea, which I have reason to believe is as far as the Tide flows up any River in *Europe*.

THE publick Buildings of this City are St. *Peter*'s Church, formerly a Cathedral when *Hamburg* was an Archbishoprick. Also the Churches of St. *Nicholas*, St. *Jacob*, St. *Catherine*, and St. *Michael*, where a Register is kept of what is distributed weekly to the Poor of the respective Parishes. They have Hospitals and Infirmaries well endow'd, for the Relief of Poor, Sick, and Lame; also for Orphans, disabled Seamen, and their Families; and Free-Schools, where the Children of poor Citizens are both instructed, cloath'd, and put out Apprentices, sent to the University, or fitted for some other Business.

Hamburg is a free Imperial City, independant of any but the Emperor; they having both the Legislative and Executive Power lodg'd in them. And as to the Pretensions of the *Dane* to the City of *Hamburg*, the Emperor *Otho* IV. who began his Reign *Anno* 1208. being a weak Prince, was soon depos'd; [*See the Succession of the Emperors in the History of* Germany, *Chap.* IV. *Pag.* 480.] and in his Reign it was, that *Waldemar* Duke of *Sleswick* took *Hamburg*; and as it were, rent it from the Empire: And *Waldemar* being afterwards advanc'd to the Throne of *Denmark*, gave the Government of *Hamburg* to *Albrecht* Earl of *Orlemund*; and he again return'd his Right to the Citizens for fifteen hundred Marks of Silver. And thus *Hamburg* became once again a free independant City and State; and might be said to continue so if it was not that the Duke of *Holstein*, and King of *Denmark* are perpetually renewing their Claim; and in Lieu thereof, endeavouring to impose Taxes, and extort Sums, which the *Hamburgers* will by no means submit to pay; for which Reasons, the Kings of *Denmark*, as Dukes of *Holstein*, have sometimes appear'd before *Hamburg* with a numerous Army; and at other Times block'd up the Mouth of the River *Elbe*, taken their Ships, and obstructed their Traffick; but there are so many of the *European* Powers concern'd in the *Hamburg* Trade, that they have hitherto contributed their Interest to preserve the Liberties of this free City from being swallow'd up by the *Dane*.

Religion. THE Establish'd Religion at *Hamburg* is *Lutheranism*; nor are any other Sect of Protestants, much less of Papists, tolerated here, except in the Chapels of foreign Ministers; and that only for themselves and Domesticks, no Inhabitant of the City being suffer'd to resort thither, notwithstanding that both the King of *Prussia* and the *States General* have presented Memorials to favour at least a Toleration for the *Calvinists*; but what they receiv'd for Answer was, That as to Trade, the *Calvinists* enjoy'd the same Privileges as the *Lutherans*, but that neither *Calvinists*, *Jews*, nor *Roman Catholicks*, should be allow'd the publick Exercise of their Worship.

Lubeck *Lubeck* is the chief of the Hans-Towns, and an *Imperial* City, situate on the River *Trave* in the Dutchy of *Holstein*. It is ten Miles from the *Baltick Sea*, about forty Miles North East from *Hamburg*, and as many West from *Wismar*. *Travemund*, at the Mouth of the River, is the chief Port for great Ships belonging to *Lubeck*, and is a very good Harbour. *Lubeck* for the Beauty and Uniformity

mity of its Building, the Pleaſantneſs of its Groves and Gardens, *&c.* is not inferior to the handſomeſt City in the North of *Germany*. The Streets are broad and ſtreight, the Houſes moſtly built of Brick; and from the publick Reſervoir, the Water is convey'd to every Citizen's Houſe. There are twenty Churches with high ſpire Steeples. The Cathedral is a fine Piece of Architecture. *Lubeck* was but an inconſiderable Borough till it was enlarg'd and beautify'd by *Adolph* Earl of *Holſtein*, in the Year 1140. but is now a free *Imperial* City. The Biſhoprick of *Lubeck* has been enjoy'd by Proteſtant Princes ever ſince the Year 1561. and is ſaid to be the only Proteſtant Biſhoprick in *Germany* that has not been ſtripp'd of the Revenues and Privileges belonging to it: The other *Lutheran* Biſhops are rather Super-intendants than Biſhops, and have little to diſtinguiſh them from the inferior Clergy except Precedency.

BRUNSWICK *and* HANOVER.

BRunſwick and *Hanover*, including the Principality of *Grubenhagen*, and the Counties of *Blackenburg* and *Renſtein*, as being ſubject to the ſame Princes, are bounded on the North by *Lunenburgh*, and on the Eaſt by *Magdeburg* and *Halberſtat*; by *Heſſe Caſſel* on the South, and by the River *Weſer* on the Weſt. This Country was formerly deem'd a Part of the *Hercynian* Foreſt, and yet produces Plenty of Wood, eſpecially Pine and Fir. Their Mountains abound with Mines of Silver, Copper Lead, Vitriol, Brimſtone, Quick-ſilver, and Copperaſs. The Natives are generally of a large Size, and uſed to coarſe Fare, and hard Lodgings. Their common Food is dry'd Hogs-fleſh and a Sort of coarſe Bread, which, as a *French* Traveller expreſſes it, is fitter for Horſes than Men. The principal Rivers are the *Weſer*, the *Lena*, the *Innerſte*, and the *Ocker*. Chief Towns are,

1. *Brunſwick*; it ſtands on a Plain on the Banks of the River *Ocker*, ten Miles North of *Wolfembuttle*, and near ſixty South of *Lunenburg*, and in Latitude fifty two Degrees twenty five Minutes North. It was a free *Imperial* City and a Hanſ-town; but the Inhabitants after a hard Struggle for their Liberties, being over-power'd by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, the Merchants and trading Men have forſaken the Place; and it is now a declining City, and of ſo little Trade, that Mum and Butter are almoſt the only Commodities they deal in. The Town inclines to a ſquare Form; 'tis about two Miles in Circumference, and the River *Ocker* runs through the Middle of it. The Palace and the Town-Houſe are ſumptuous Buildings, and the private Houſes tolerably handſome. They make a Sort of Mum call'd Ship Mum, ſuch as comes to *England* and other Parts of *Europe*; but the other is thin and weak, and is uſed as Drink by the common Inhabitants. The better Sort is reckon'd ſcarce fit to drink till it has purg'd itſelf at Sea. It is made of Barley with a ſmall Mixture of Wheat, and well hopp'd. The Dukes of *Brunſwick* claim the ſole Sovereignty of the City, and preſcribe abſolute Laws to the Inhabitants as they think proper.

Wolfembuttle. 2. *Wolfembuttle* ſtands on the River *Ocker*, ten Miles to the Southward of *Brunſwick*. It is a ſtrong Place, both by Art, as being well fortify'd, and by Nature, as being in a marſhy, watry Country. It was formerly the Seat of the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, above twenty of whom lie now interr'd in the new Church there, which is an elegant Building. The Palace where the preſent Duke of *Wolfembuttle* reſides, has a Library, ſaid to contain one hundred and twenty four thouſand Volumes; and is thought to be one of the beſt Collections in *Germany* of printed Books. This Library was founded by *Auguſtus* the famous Duke of *Brunſwick Wolfembuttle*; a Prince, of whom it is ſaid, that he excell'd all his Predeceſſors in Learning and Knowledge.

Hanover. 3. *Hanover*, the Capital of the Dukedom of *Calenburg*, ſituate on the River *Leina*. It ſtands between forty and fifty Miles to the Weſtward of *Brunſwick*, and thirty South of *Zell*. The Houſes, except ſome few of Stone, are moſtly Timber and Clay. The Caſtle is on one Side of the Town near the Wall, and in it is the Elector's Palace. The principal Churches are thoſe of St. *James* and the *Holy Croſs*. The Town is tolerably populous and well fortify'd. It was an *Imperial* City and a Hans-town when their Trade flouriſh'd; but now their only Trade, or rather Manufacture, is a Sort of a ſweet muddy Beer call'd Bruhane, which they ſell to ſome of the neighbouring Villages.

Helmſtat. 4. *Helmſtat*, twenty four Miles to the Eaſtward of *Wolfembuttle*, remarkable only for its Univerſity, built *Anno* 1576.

5. *Hamelin*; it ſtands at the Confluence of the *Hamel* and the *Weſer*, as ſtrong a Fortreſs as any in the Duke of *Brunſwick*'s Dominions.

Grubenhagen. The Principality of *Grubenhagen* comes next under our Conſideration: The Name in *High-Dutch* ſignifies a Grove or Foreſt, this being Part of *Hartz Foreſt*, or *Sylvia Hercynia*, mention'd by *Julius Caſar* in his Commentaries; and hence we have in other Parts of this Book call'd this the *Hercynian Foreſt*, or at leaſt a Part of it. It lies to the South Weſt of the Dukedom of *Brunſwick*, and has ſeveral valuable Mines in it; as Silver, Copper, and Lead; alſo grey Vitriol and Atramenſtein, of which, beaten and boil'd together, the green Vitriol is made. Here is alſo Gedien Vitriol, which hangs out of the Rocks like Iſicles, and may be uſed without purifying. Alſo blue Vitriol made out of the Copper Ore, and white Vitriol made out of Lead Ore. Likewiſe Miſa, a Mineral of the ſame Colour and Nature as common Brimſtone. And, laſtly, Brimſtone; from whence the *Flos Sulphuris* drops and afterwards coagulates like Iſicles; but the chief Mines of this Country are,

1. *Rammelsburg*, in a high Mountain near the City of *Goſlar*, diſcover'd *Anno* 972. another great Vein of Ore was diſcover'd *Anno* 1045. but the chief Mine belonging to the Princes of *Brunſwick*, is at *Zellerfield*, diſcover'd *Anno* 1070. Here the Overſeer of the Mines keeps his Court every *Saturday*, and pays his Workmen. The Capital of *Grubenhagen* is *Eimbeck*. There are other Towns, but of ſmall Note; for as the Inhabitants are moſtly Miners and live under Ground, there is no great Care taken to build them many handſome Houſes above Ground.

Blackenburg. The Counties of *Blackenburg* and *Renſtein* lie between *Halberſtat* and *Anhalt*. The Mountains here afford Plenty of Iron Ore. This Country abounds with old Forts and Caſtles, but ſo decay'd and ruinous, that there are few of them worth Notice, only for their ruinous Marks of Antiquity. They are moſtly built upon the Top of craggy and inacceſſable Rocks; but none of them inhabited but one, call'd the *Blackenburg*, which the Duke of *Wolfembuttle* made a Palace of for his own Reception during the hunting Seaſon. The old Caſtle of *Reinſtone* is now remarkable for nothing but its being all cut out of one entire Stone. *Reinſtone.* The *Imperial* City of *Goſlar*, though independant of the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, is reckon'd with his Dominions, becauſe it is ſurrounded by them. The Inhabitants are moſtly Miners, their Employment

ment being either in digging, cleansing, tempering, or vending Minerals, or the Metals which are extracted from them.

The present Elector of *Brunswick*, who is now *George* II. King of *Great Britain*, was Son of His late Majesty *George* I. King of *Great Britain*, and Grandson to *Ernest Augustus*, (who succeeded his Brother *John Frederick* Bishop of *Osnaburg* in this Dutchy in the Year 1679.) by the Princess *Sophia*, Daughter of *Frederick* V. Elector *Palatine*, and of the Princess *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *James* I. K. of *Great Britain*. Duke *Ernest* had Issue, *George Lewis*, late Elector and King of *Great Britain*, born *Anno* 1660. and succeeded his Father in the Dutchy of *Brunswick Anno* 1698; and having married *Sophia Dorothy*, the only Daughter of his Uncle *George William*, and Duke of *Lunenburg Zell*, that Dutchy also devolv'd upon him in the Year 1705.

In the Year 1692. Duke *Ernest Augustus*, the Father of His late Majesty *George* I. was created the ninth Elector and Arch-Standard-bearer to the Empire; but the Duke of *Wirtemburg* claiming the latter, the Emperor *Joseph* in Lieu of it, conferr'd the Title of Arch-Treasurer on the Elector of *Brunswick*; and on *June* 30. 1708. he was created the ninth Elector, as succeeding his Father *Ernest Augustus*, who was the first Elector of that House. I shall not descend any further into the Line of King *George* II. but defer that till I have Occasion to speak of the Royal Family of *Great Britain*.

Arms. King *George* II. besides his Arms as King of *Great Britain*, bears the Arms of *Brunswick*, *Lower Saxony*, *Lunenburg*, *Reinstone*, *Blackenburg*, and *Bremen*; which last is a Field Gules, a Key Argent, to shew (as our Author interprets it) that they can open or shut the Passage of the River *Weser* as they see fit.

The House of *Brunswick* was till of late in three Branches; but we have seen *Zell* and *Hanover* united in the Person of King *George* I. by his Marriage, and thereby succeeding to the Dutchy of *Zell*; but *Wolfenbuttle* still remains separate, and in a different Interest too from that of *Hanover*; as we found in the Year 1702. when Queen *Anne* proclaim'd War against *France*; for the joint Dukes of *Wolfenbuttle*, *Rodolphus* and *Ulrick*, who were Brothers, join'd in with *France* against *England* and the Confederates; whereupon the Dukes of *Zell* and *Hanover* (then two distinct Persons, but in the same Interest) march'd against them, and brought over *Rodolph* to their Party; but *Ulrick* being strongly attach'd to the *French*, they excluded him from his Share of the Regency; whereupon he renounc'd the Protestant Religion in the Year 1709. and prevail'd upon his Grand-daughter, the present Empress of *Germany*, to turn Roman Catholick also.

LUNENBURG *and* ZELL.

THE Dukedom of *Lunenburg*, including *Zell*, is bounded by the River *Elbe* on the North, and on the East by *Brandenburg* and *Magdeburg*; by *Brunswick* on the South, by *Bremen* and Part of *Westphalia* on the West. It is mostly a barren, sandy Country; but their Forests abound in wild Hogs, Deer, and other Venison. The principal Rivers are the *Elbe*, the *Ilmenaw*, and the *Jetze*.

Chief Towns are, 1. *Lunenburg*, on the Rive *Ilmenaw*, about thirty Miles South East of *Hamburg*, and forty South of *Lubeck*. It is near two Miles about, but much longer one way than the other. Here is the Palace of the Duke of *Zell*, but we do not find any thing remarkable in it; but there is a very fine Bridge over the River. There are great Quantities of Salt made from the Salt Springs here, which afford good Employment for the Poor and a Revenue to the Sovereign.

2. *Zell*, the usual Residence of the late Dukes of *Lunenburg*. It stands at the Confluence of the two Rivers, *Aller*, and *Fubse*, about forty Miles South of *Lunenburg*, and thirty North of *Hanover*. 3. *Bardewick*, which at present is but a decay'd Place. There is also, 4. *Ultzen*, between *Lunenburg* and *Zell*. And, 5. *Harburg* on the other Side the *Elbe*, over against *Hamburg*. And lastly, *Walstrode*, near the Confines of *Verden*; the Trade of this Place consists chiefly in Wool, Beer, and Wax.

When *George William* late Duke of *Lunenburg* and *Zell* dy'd, the Dominions devolv'd upon K. *George* I. in the Right of his Wife; and from him they descended to his eldest Son *George* II. the present King of *England*. *Lutheranism* is the Religion generally profess'd in these Dominions.

BREMEN *and* VERDEN.

THE Dutchy of *Bremen*, including *Verden*, is bounded by the *Elbe* towards the North, the Territories of *Lunenburg* toward the East; on the South West by the River *Weser*, and on the West by the *German* Ocean. The Country is generally either barren Sand or Morals, except near the Banks of the *Elbe* and the *Weser*, where there are some fruitful Meadows. The *Danes* got Possession of those Territories in the late Wars, and afterwards transferr'd them to the Elector of *Brunswick* for a Sum of Money, to whom they were afterwads confirm'd by *Sweden* in the Year 1720. and so continue to this Day.

Chief Towns of this Dutchy are, 1. *Bremen*, seventy Miles North of *Zell*, and as many South West of *Hamburg*. It is not a Town of any great Trade by Sea, by Reason of the great Banks of Sand which the Floods throw up in the River; and because Ships of Burthen cannot come up to the Town, they have a Custom-House near the River, six Miles below the Town. *Bremen* was a free *Imperial* City, and a Hans-town; but since the *Swedes* besieg'd it, and depriv'd them of many of their antient Privileges, their Trade has declin'd. Here was one of the most considerable Universities in *Germany*. The chief Commodities exported from hence are Timber, Wool, and Minerals. They excell in dressing Leather and Cloth. They export great Quantities of Fish taken at Sea; and in the River *Weser*, and within the Walls of the Town, are such Numbers of Salmon and Lampreys taken, that they export great Quantities, being only pickled or Smoak-dry'd.

2. *Verden*, formerly a Bishop's See. It stands upon the River *Aller*, near where it falls into the *Weser*, about thirty Miles to the Eastward of *Bremen*. It is not remarkable for any thing but being the Capital of a small Territory, which lies round it. 3. *Stade*, about fifty Miles North East of *Bremen*, and twenty four West of *Hamburg*. It stands on the River *Zwinga*, which falls into the *Elbe* not far below the Town, where is a good Fort and so convenient a Harbour, that will admit of such large Ships, that some think it stands more convenient for the *German* Trade than *Hamburg*. 4. *Buxtehude*, on the River *Este* on the *Elbe*, fifteen Miles West from *Hamburg*. It is noted chiefly for the Plentifulness of its Markets and the Fruitfulness of the Country about it, insomuch that *Hamburg* is supply'd with most of its Provisions from thence.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Circle of Swabia, Suabia, *or* Suevia; *as containing the Dutchy of* Wirtemburg, *the Marquisate of* Baden; *and also the* Imperial *Cities of* Ausburg, Ulm, *&c.*

Suabia. SWABIA is bounded on the North by *Franconia*, and by the Dutchy of *Bavaria* on the East; on the South by the County of *Tyrol*, and the Mountains of *Switzerland*; and on the West by *Alsatia*. In speaking to the several Divisions of this Circle, I begin with the Dutchy of *Wirtemburg*:

Wirtemburg. THIS Dutchy is bounded on the North by the Palatinate of the *Rhine* and *Franconia*, and on the East by the Bishoprick of *Ausburg*; by the Principality of *Furstenburg* on the South; and on the West by *Baden*. The Length and Breadth near equal, *viz.* about seventy Miles. Chief Towns are,

Chief Towns. 1. *Stutgard*, the Capital of the Dutchy, and Residence of the Duke. It stands near the Banks of the River *Neckar*, about forty Miles East of *Baden*, and as many South of *Heidelburg*. The Duke's Palace is a noble Building, and the Gardens about it very fine; but the private Houses are poor wooden Buildings: However, the famous Baths here occasion a great Resort to the Place. 2. *Tubingen*, twenty Miles to the Southward of *Stutgard*; but at present, remarkable for nothing but the University. 3. *Retling*, about twelve Miles South East of *Tubingen*, of which we find little at present worth Notice. 4. *Hailbron*, or the *Fountain of Health*, so call'd from the Virtues of its Medicinal Waters. It stands on the River *Neckar*, twenty eight Miles North of *Stutgard*. The Country here is fruitful and populous, as is the rest of the Dukedom. It contains sixty Cities, an hundred and fifty great Towns, six hundred and forty Villages; and as to its Produce, their Mountains abound with Vines, their Valleys with Corn and Cattle, their Forests with Game, and the Bowels of the Earth with rich Mines; and in short, nothing is here wanting, that can afford either Profit or Pleasure.

THE Dukes of *Wirtemburg* have so great a Power in civil and criminal Affairs, that there lies no Appeal from their Courts to the *Imperial* Chamber. The supreme Court is at *Tubingen*. The Right of Primogeniture is establish'd at *Wirtemburg* as in the rest of *Germany*; the Succession being continued in the eldest Son, the Younger having small Appendages and the Daughters Portions in Money. There are several Branches of the Family, as *Wirtemburg*, *Stutgard*, *Newstadt*, *Montbeliard*, *Teck*, *Barnstadt*, and *Weilting*; but none of them sit in the *Imperial* Diets but the Dukes of *Stutgard* and *Montbeliard*; and they are at present both Protestants.

THE Marquisate of *Baden* is bounded on the North by the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, and on the East by the *Black Forest*; by *Switzerland* on the South, and by the *Rhine*, which divides it from *Alsatia*, on the West. Chief Towns are,

1. *Baden*, the Capital of the Marquisate so call'd, from the Multitude of hot Baths near it, which is said to amount to near three hundred. It is about five Miles from the Eastern Banks of the *Rhine*, twenty Miles North East of *Strasburg*, and twenty five South of *Heidelburg*. It stands upon mountainous rocky Ground, which makes the Streets very uneven. The Baths issue from Rocks of Salt, Allum, and Brimstone, and are scalding hot, and taste strong of those Minerals; one of them is call'd the *Kettle*, because it boils as violently as if it stood over a hot Furnace. The Marquis's Palace and the Castle, are the only publick Buildings in this Place. 2. *Durlach*, on the River *Pfintz*, twelve Miles North of *Baden*, and about the same Distance South from *Heidelburg*. It gives Title to the Marquis of *Baden-Durlach*, whose Palace is a very magnificent Building. The Streets are straight and regular, and the Houses stately and uniform. The stately Library, and the Coins, and Medals in the Marquis's Cabinet, are very valuable. 3. *Stolhoffen*, five Miles South West of *Baden*, famous for the Lines thrown up here for the Defence of the Empire. 4. *Kehl*, or *Fort-Kehl*, on the East Side of the *Rhine*, taken from the Emperor at the Beginning of the present War between *France* and the Emperor. There are other Places of less Note which have formerly been rank'd among the chief Towns on Account of the Antiquity of their Castles or Palaces, as having given Title to some of the antient Princes of *Baden*; but not at present any otherwise remarkable in History.

THE Marquisate of *Baden* is a populous and fruitful Country, abounding with Corn and Wine, and such Plenty of Wild-Fowl and Venison in the Forests, that they are ordinary Food for the common People. There is Plenty of Fish in the Rivers *Rhine*, *Ense*, *Wirmbz*, and *Phintz*, and Plenty of Chesnuts in their Woods; and with them they feed excellent Bacon. Here is Plenty of Marble of all Colours, and some Agate, and Abundance of free Stone, by which means they can build good Houses at a small Charge. The Country produces so much Hemp and Flax, that they export great Quantities of it into other Countries.

Of the Imperial *Cities*; *and first of*

Imperial Cities. Ausburg. AUSBURG, or *Augusta Vindelicorum*, so call'd from *Augustus Cæsar*, in whose Time the *Romans* planted a Colony here. It stands on the Western Confines of *Bavaria*, sixty Miles South West of *Ratisbon*, and on the South Side of the *Danube*. It is a large populous City, and is commonly reckon'd the Capital of *Suabia*. Here are many noble Fountains adorn'd with Brazen Statues of antient Heroes, and many other valuable Monuments of Antiquity. The Cathedral, the Town-Hall, and the two Arsenals, are sumptuous Buildings; and in one Hospital there is an hundred and sixty Houses form'd into four cross Streets, and inhabited by poor People who have yearly Pensions settled upon them. The *Papists* and *Lutherans* are so near an Equality in this Town, that the Magistracy consists of near an equal Number of each, *viz.* in the Senate, twenty three *Roman Catholicks*, and twenty two *Lutherans*; and in their common Council, an hundred and fifty of each. The executive Power is in the Senate, and the Legislative in the two Bodies, *viz.* the Senate and common Council, united as in one Body.

Ulm. 2. *Ulm*, on the North Bank of the *Danube*, where it meets the River *Iller*, whose united Waters make the River *Danube* navigable from thence downwards, for Vessels of considerable Burthen. It is about forty Miles West of *Ausburg*. *Ulm* is a large populous City, but the Cathedral is the most admired for its Magnificence, not having its equal in *Germany*, except at *Strasburg*. They have a great Trade with *Bavaria* and *Austria*, whither they export Linen Cloth and Cottons; and import from thence Corn, Salt, and Iron, by the *Danube*. The Reform'd Church was establish'd here, about the Year 1529. and now the Magistrates and most of the Inhabitants are *Lutherans*.

Bibrach. 3. *Bibrach*, stands on the River *Russ*, twenty Miles South of *Ulm*. Here is also a noted hot Bath. The Magistracy here is equally divided between Protestants and Papists, and the Inhabitants a Mixture of both.

4. *Bucaw*, ten Miles South West of *Bibrach*. Here is a Nunnery, whose Abbess is always a Princess of the Empire, and has a Vote in the Diet by her Proxy.

5. *Memmingen*, a large City on the River *Bach*, seventeen Miles South East of *Bibrach*.

6. *Leutkirk*, a little City twelve Miles South West of *Memmingen*; a great Thorough-fare from *Italy* to *Germany*.

7. *Kempten*, one of the most antient Cities in *Germany*, about fifteen Miles South of *Memmingen*, on the abovemention'd Road from *Italy*. The chief Manufacture here is the Weaving of Linen.

8. *Isne*, twelve Miles to the Southward of *Kempten*. They have neither Corn, Wine, nor Cattle, in their neighbouring Country; most of what they sow is Beans, Rape-seed, and Flax, and a few Oats. Their Supplies of Corn come from other Parts of *Germany*, or from *Italy*.

9. *Lindaw*, stands partly upon the Continent, and partly upon an Island in the Lake of *Constance*, they being united by a Stone-Bridge near three hundred Paces long. Here, as in *Bucaw*, is a Nunnery whose Abbess is a Princess of the Empire.

10. *Bergentz*, on the Lake of *Constance*, five Miles South East of *Lindaw*; but now a Place of no great Note.

11. *Ravensprug*, twenty Miles South of *Bucaw*.

12. *Altorf*, two Miles from *Ravensprug*.

13. *Waugen*, ten Miles North East of *Lindaw*.

14. *Constance*, on the South West Part of the Lake of the same Name, in about Latitude forty seven Degrees, about twelve Miles West of *Bucaw*. The Lake of *Constance* is above twenty Miles in Length, and eight or ten in Breadth. The *Rhine* runs through it with such a Current that the Waters do not mix. *Constance* is a well built populous Town, and has a good Trade by the Navigation of the Lake and the *Rhine*. The Bishop of *Constance* is a Prince of the Empire. In the Year 1414. three Popes, *viz. John*, set up by the *Italians*, *Gregory* by the *French*, and *Benedict* by the *Spaniards*, pretending to the infallible Chair, the Emperor *Sigismund* call'd a Council, lest so much Infallibility in different Interests should at last make a Schism in the Church: They were all summon'd to attend the Council, but none but *John* appear'd; and he perceiving that he was more likely to be made a Prisoner than a Pope, fled to *Friburg*, where he was taken, brought back, and committed to Prison; and the other two though absent, were brought under the same Sentence; but however infallible they thought themselves, they were glad to keep out of the way of what further Misfortunes they might apprehend.

THIS done, *Martin* V. was elected Pope; and in his Time, and at the noted Council of *Constance*, Dr. *John Wickliff* and his Doctrines were condemn'd as Heretical, and his Bones order'd to be dug up and burnt forty Years after his Death. It was also by Order of this Council, that *John Huss* and *Jerome* of *Prague* were executed. [*See Chap.* IV. *of* Bohemia, *Pag.* 470.] It was observed that while this Council of *Constance* lasted, there were in this little City, four Patriarchs, twenty nine Cardinals, three hundred and forty six Archbishops and Bishops, five hundred and sixty four Abbots and Doctors, ten thousand secular Princes and Noblemen, four hundred and fifty common Whores, and three hundred and twenty Fidlers. —— but,

15. *Buchorn*, situate on the same Lake of *Constance*, twenty Miles North West of *Lindaw*. It is but a small City, but has a Trade by Water upon the Lake of *Constance*, by Vessels passing with Merchandize between *Suabia* and *Switzerland*. *Buch.*

16. *Uberlingen*, a City also upon the same Lake of *Constance*, twenty seven Miles North West of *Lindaw*, and the Residence of the antient Dukes of *Suabia*.

THERE is likewise belonging to the Circle of *Suabia*, the Marquisate of *Burgaw* on the South Side of the *Danube*; also the Landgravate of *Nellenburg*. The chief Town is of the same Name, twelve Miles North West of *Uberlingen*; also the County of *Holienberg*. The *Brisgaw*, the chief Towns of which are, 1. *Friburg*, a strong populous Place, thirty Miles South of *Strasburg*, and now subject to the Emperor. 2. *Old Brisac*, on the East Side of the *Rhine*; so call'd by Way of Distinction from *New Brisac*, built lately by the *French*, over against it on the West Side of the *Rhine*. It is thirty Miles South of *Strasburg*, and ten West of *Friburg*.

THE four forest Towns in *Suabia* are, 1. *Rheinfield* upon the *Rhine*, twenty eight Miles South of *Brisac*. 2. *Sechingen*, an Island in the *Rhine*, eight Miles East of *Rheinfield*. 3. *Lausenburg*, through which the *Rhine* runs. It is seven Miles East of *Sechingen*. And, 4. *Walhust*, on the Conflux of the *Schult* and *Rhine*. *Forest Towns.*

IN the Principality of *Furstemburg*, the chief Town, being of the same Name, stands on the South Bank of the *Danube*, thirty five Miles East of *Brisac*. The first Spring or Head of the *Danube* is in this County. There are also the Counties of *Sulz* on the Confines of *Zurick* and *Schaffhausen* in *Switzerland*; *Emes*, about ten Miles to the Southward of *Bregentz*; *Montford*, to the Southward of *Emes*; *Walburgh*, South of *Ravensprug*; *Conigzek* or *Koningsech*, which gives Title to the Count so called. It is North West of *Walburg*. *Kirkburg*, whose Capital of the same Name lies to the Southward of *Ulm*. The County is about eighteen Miles long and eight broad. *Counties.*

OF Principalities there are, 1. *Mindelheim* in *Algow*, between *Ausburg* and *Kempten*. This gave the Title of Prince to the late Duke of *Marlborough*, with which he was honour'd upon his Victory over the *French* at *Hochstet*. It is also continued to the Heir of that Family, who is thereby entitled to a Seat in the *Imperial* Diet. The Capital, call'd also *Mindelheim*, is about twenty five Miles South of *Ausburg*. 2. *Hohenzollern*, between the Principality of *Furstemburg* and the Dutchy of *Wirtemburg*. The chief Place is *Hechingen*, between the *Danube* and the *Neckar*, eight Miles South of *Tubingen*. 3. *Oetingen*, is between the Marquisate of *Anspach* and the Dutchy of *Neuburg*. Chief Town is *Oetingen*, on the River *Wernitz*, fifteen Miles North West from *Donawert*. *Principalities.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Circle of the Upper Rhine; *as containing the Landgravates of* Hesse, Wetteravia, Alsatia, *and the Dutchy of* Lorrain.

THE Circle of the *Upper Rhine* consists of three Parts, *viz.* 1. The Landgravates of *Hesse* and *Wetteraw*. The Landgravate of *Alsatia*. And, 3. The Dutchy of *Lorrain*.

Hesse, as including *Wetteraw*, is bounded on the North by *Brunswick*, and on the East by *Thuringia*; by the River *Main* and *Franconia* on the South, and by the Bishopricks of *Mentz* and *Treves*, and the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, on the West. Its Length and Breadth are equal, *viz.* about a hundred Miles.

This Country is in some Parts of it fruitful in Corn and Wine. They have Plenty of Sheep, and those yielding such fine Wool, that sometimes even the *English* buy it, as equal, if not preferable, to their own. Much of the Northern Part of it is cover'd with Woods, which are well stock'd with Deer and other Game. And in their Mountains are Mines of Copper and Lead, which yield both Profit to the Subject, and a good Revenue to the Sovereign.

The Christian Religion was first planted here about the Year 730. and *Lutheranism* was establish'd in the Year 1509. and continued so with some Struggles with the *Calvinists*, till *Amelia Elizabeth*, Mother and Guardian to *William* VI. with a powerful Army, compell'd the Natives of *Hesse* to profess *Calvinism*, about the Year 1666. which continues generally to this Day.

Their Language is indifferently *High* and *Low Dutch*, occasion'd by its Situation between *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*; *High Dutch* being spoken in its greatest Perfection in the former, and *Low Dutch* in the latter.

Hesse is divided into, 1. *Hesse Proper*. 2. *Wetteraw*. In *Hesse Proper* are, 1. The Landgravate of *Hesse Cassel*. 2. That of *Hesse Darmstat*. 3. The County of *Waldeck*. 4. The Territories of the Abbeys of *Fuld* and *Hirschfield*. 5. The County of *Solms*. And, 6. The *Imperial* Cities of *Wetslar* and *Gidburg*.

In *Hesse Proper*, the chief Towns are, 1. *Cassel*, the Capital and Seat of the Landgrave or Prince. It stands on the River *Fulda*, in Latitude fifty one Degrees odd Minutes, forty Miles South East of *Paderborn*. The Streets of this City are large and spacious, but the Houses are mostly built of Timber. Their chief Trade is in Wool and woollen Manufactures. The Palace, which is a small Space from the Town, is not only strong, but is so advantageously situate for a Prospect, that sixty large Towns in the adjacent Country may be seen from its Walls.

2. *Marpurg*, on the River *Lon*, forty Miles South West of *Cassel*, and the same Distance North East from *Frankfort* upon the *Maine*. Here is the supreme Court of Justice, and one of the best Universities in *Germany*. 3. *Darmstat*, the Capital of that Landgravate, and usual Residence of the Landgrave of *Hesse Darmstat*. It is fifteen Miles South of *Frankfort* upon the *Maine*, and ten Miles to the Eastward of the *Rhine*. 4. *Catzenellebogen*, ten Miles East of *Nassaw*, and twenty North West from *Mentz*. 5. *Smalcald*, fifty Miles South East of *Cassel*, considerable for the Iron Mines in its Neighbourhood, which employ abundance of Smiths and other Artificers in Iron, who make Iron Ware here, which is vended all over the Empire. 6. *Schwalbach*, ten Miles North of *Mentz*, famous only for its Baths; from one of whose Springs, Streams of Sulphur, Vitriol, and other Minerals, rise, with a Steam sufficient to suffocate any Person who holds his Head over them; and yet the Water itself is so cold, that they cool their Bottles of Wine in it in the Summer time. 7. *Embs*, another Town famous for Baths, impregnated with Allum, Sulphur, Vitriol, and Iron. 8. *Rotenburg* on the River *Fulda*, thirty Miles South East of *Cassel*. These are the most remarkable Towns in *Hesse*.

The County of *Waldeck* lies between *Paderborn* on the North of it, and some of the Provinces of *Hesse* on the South. It affords Corn and Wine to supply the Natives, also Sheep and Venison. The chief Town is *Waldeck*, thirty Miles North of *Marpurg*. Other Towns of less Note are *Wildenburg*, *Corbach*, and *Eyenburg*. *Waldeck.*

The Territories of the Abby of *Fuld*, sometimes call'd the County of *Buchen*, is a rich Country about thirty Miles to the Northward of *Hanaw*. The chief Town is *Fuld*, upon the River *Fuld*; it stands forty Miles to the Eastward of *Marpurg*. It is such a noble Monastery, and so well endow'd, that it may be worth the following brief Account of it. It was founded about the Year 744. and afterwards endow'd with large Privileges by several Emperors. The Abbot is not only a Prince of the Empire, but takes place at the Emperor's Feet in all the General Diets. He is Lord both of the Town and Country about it, and Primate of all the Abbots in *Germany*, being entirely independant upon all but the Pope himself. The great Church dedicated to St. *Boniface*, by whom this Monastery was founded, is a very magnificent Structure, and shews very much of good antient Architecture. They have amongst other Antiquities, three Manuscripts, containing the new Testament, the four Evangelists distinct, and a Treatise of the Trinity; which, as the Tradition goes amongst them, were all written by the said St. *Boniface*. The Monastery of *Hirchfield*, about twenty Miles North of *Fuld*, and upon the same River, was accounted one of the most noble Structures in *Germany*, and the Territories about twelve Miles square; but at the Reformation, the Revenues were secularis'd or apply'd to temporal Uses; being transfer'd to the Landgraves of *Hesse*, who enjoy them to this Day. The County of *Solmes* is on the South of *Hesse Marpurg*. The chief Town is *Solmes*, fifteen Miles South West of *Marpurg*; to this Place the *Imperial* Chamber was mov'd, after the *French* destroy'd *Spire*. Abby of *Fuld.*

Wetteraw is bounded by *Hesse Proper* on the North, the County of *Reineck* on the East, the River *Maine* on the South, and the *Rhine* on the West. It affords Plenty of Corn and Wine; the Counties of *Hanaw* and *Nassaw* take up the greatest Part of it. The former of which is bounded on the North and East by the Territories of the Abby of *Fuld*, and on the West by the Dominions of *Nassaw*. The chief Town is *Hanaw*, ten Miles to the Eastward of *Frankfort*. It is a strong Town, and has a good Trade. *Wetteraw.* *Hanaw.*

The

Nassaw. THE County of *Nassaw*, as including the additional Counties of *Welburg*, *Idstein*, *Wisbaden*, *Dillenburg*, *Beilstein*, *Glecburg*, *Stegen*, and *Hadamar*, affords Corn, Wine, Venison, fat Cattle, and Mines of Iron, Lead, Copper, and other Metals; insomuch that at *Frenduburg* is made most of the Steel used in the *German* Empire. Amongst other Towns in *Nassaw*, the chief is *Nassaw*, or *Nassovia*, twelve Miles South East of *Coblentz*, and eight East of the *Rhine*, formerly the Seat of the first Branch of the Family of *Nassaw*.

THERE are four Branches of the House of *Hesse*, viz. *Hesse Cassel*, *Hesse Darmstat*, *Hesse Rhinfield*, and *Hesse Homburg*. The Branch of *Darmstat*, and also that of *Homburg*, are *Lutherans*; that of *Rhinfield*, *Papists*; that of *Hesse Cassel* were always zealous *Calvinists* till the Time of the present Landgrave of *Hesse Cassel*, now King of *Sweden*, who for the Sake of that Crown renounc'd *Calvinism*, and swore to promote *Lutheranism* with the utmost Zeal.

Family of Nassaw. THE Family of *Nassaw* is a very antient Family, of which the late King *William* III. was a Branch; descended from one *Otho*, whose Son *Henry*, about the Year 1190. added *Dillenburg*, *Wisbaden*, and *Idstein*, to the Territories of his Grandfather *Walleren*, which was the antient Name of the Family of *Nassaw*, being but the Name of the Castle or Palace where the eldest Branch resided. But from *William Walleren* it was, that the second Branch of *Nassaw Orange* came, which ended in King *William* III. he dying without Issue. From the said *Walleren* also descended *John* of *Nassaw*, who establish'd the Protestant Religion in his Territories. From him descended the late Prince of *Nassaw Friesland*, whom King *William* III. made his Heir, and whose Son is now married to the Princess Royal of *England*.

Alsatia. *Alsatia* is bounded by the County Palatine of the *Rhine* on the North; by the River *Rhine*, which separates it from *Suabia*, on the East; by *Switzerland* on the South; and by the Dutchy of *Lorrain* on the West. And after a hard Struggle between the *Germans* and *French*, it is now entirely in the Possession of the latter. The Soil of *Alsatia* is exceeding rich, producing Plenty of Corn and Wine. The Hills are cover'd with Chesnut Groves, and the Valleys and Plains are so many fruitful Meadows and Pastures; besides which, the Bowels of the Earth afford rich Mines of Copper, Lead, and other Minerals; to which if we add the Agreeableness of the Climate, and the Conveniency of the River *Rhine*, it must be allow'd to be a most delightful Country. It is divided into *Upper* and *Lower Alsace*, so call'd according to their Situation on the upper or lower Part of the *Rhine*; and first of *Lower Alsace*.

Lower Alsace. IN *Lower Alsace*, the chief Towns are, 1. *Strasburg*, in Latin *Argentoratum*. It stands at the Meeting of the Rivers *Ill* and *Brensch*, which about a Mile below, fall into the *Rhine*. It is in Latitude 48 and 49 Degrees. It had a good Trade, and the free Exercise of their (*Lutheran*) Religion till it fell into the Hands of the *French*, who have ruin'd its Trade and suppress'd their Religion. The only Improvement they have made is in its Fortifications, which is in their own Defence, and to secure Possession of it to themselves. It is a large Town, and several Branches of Rivers run through it; over which are beautiful Bridges to maintain a Communication between one Part of the Town and another. It is a Bishop's See under the Archbishop of *Mentz*. The *Roman Catholicks* were expell'd out of it, excepting one little Church that was allow'd them; and it continu'd in the Hands of the Protestants above an hundred Years; but when the *French* took it, the *Roman Catholick* Religion was establish'd, tho' to this Day the Protestant Religion is tolerated there. The Rarities of this Place are so remarkable, that they ought not to be omitted.

Admirable Clock. BESIDES the admirable Contrivance of the publick Granaries, Store-Houses, Arsenal, Wine-Cellars, Stad-House, &c. the Cathedral deserves a particular Description; for which I shall quote *Of. Schadæus*, who gives the following Account of it. The Height of the Tower is four hundred eighty nine Feet, or an hundred sixty three Yards; and has a Pair of folding Brass Gates at the West End. In the Cathedral is a great Clock, where is a Celestial Globe, with all the Motions of the Planets, fixed Stars, &c. and behind it is a perpetual Almanack, upon which a Statue points at the Day of the Month. There is an artificial Cock crows the Hours, which are immediately afterwards struck on a Bell by an Angel; and near that stands another Angel with an Hour-Glass in his Hand, who turns the Glass as soon as the Clock strikes; and besides the Clock striking the Hours, the Quarters are struck against the Bell in the following Manner: The first Quarter is struck by a Child with an Apple; the second by a young Man with an Arrow; the third by a full aged Man with a Tip-Staff; and the fourth (just before the Clock strikes) by an old Man with his Cane. On the Out-side of the Church are shewn the Increase and Decrease of the Moon, with the Motion of the Sun through the Signs of the Zodiack, and other Curiosities so valuable, that the Author from whom this Account was quoted, thought it worth his while to write a Treatise, containing only a Description of the Curiosities of this Cathedral.

Strasburg. *Strasburg* was confirm'd to *France* by the Emperor in the Year 1714. on Condition that Fort *Kehl* at the other End of the Bridge, and on the East Side of the *Rhine*, should be yielded up to the Emperor, which was done accordingly; tho' in the Beginning of the War, which is subsisting between *France* and the Empire at the writing hereof, in Relation to the Dispute between *Stanislaus* and *Augustus*, as to their respective Rights to the Crown of *Poland*, the *French* Forces attack'd and took Fort *Kehl*: But as for the Consequences of the War, and which way the Crown of *Poland* will be settled, Time only must determine; and then it may probably become a Part of the Appendix to this History rather than a Part of the History itself. But other remarkable Towns are

2. *Zabern*, fifteen Miles North West of *Strasburgh*. And, 3. *Haguenaw*, ten Miles West of the *Rhine*, and fourteen to the Northward of *Strasburg*. It was taken by the *French*, and being since confirm'd to them by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, continues now in their Possession. 4. Fort *Lewis*, on an Island in the *Rhine*, almost over against *Baden*. It was built by *Lewis* XIV. and confirm'd to him afterwards *Anno* 1714. 5. *Weissenburg*, belonging to the *French*; it is ten Miles West of the *Rhine*, and sixteen North of *Haguenaw*. 6. *Landaw*, ten Miles North East of *Weissenburg*. It was taken and retaken five or six times by the Emperor and the *French* alternately; but last taken by the *French* in the Year 1713. and confirm'd to them afterwards by the Treaty of *Rastat*.

Upper Alsace. CHIEF Towns in *Upper Alsace* are, 1. *Colmar*, yielded to the *French* by the Treaty of *Munster*. It is about Eight Miles West of *Brisac*, and thirty South of *Strasburg*. It is suppos'd to stand upon the same Ground, and upon the Ruins of the antient *Argentuaria*, which was conquer'd by the Emperor *Gratian Anno* 378. and destroy'd by *Attila* the *Hun*. 2. *New Brisac*, built by *Lewis* XIV. on the West Side of the *Rhine*, over against *Old Brisac*; of which before. 3. *Marback*, fourteen Miles South West of *Colmar*. 4. *Mulhausen*, fif-

teen

teen Miles South West of *Colmar*. 5. *Hunningen*, built by *Lewis* XIV. on the *Rhine*, half a League below *Basil*. 6. *Pfird*, the Capital of *Suntgow*, thirty Miles South of *Colmar*, and ten West of *Basil*; but now confirm'd by the Emperor to the *French* by the Treaty of *Westphalia*.

THE rest of the Circle of the *Upper Rhine* is comprehended in the Dutchy of *Lorrain*, which is bounded by the Dutchy of *Luxemburg* on the North, and by *Alsatia* and the Dutchy of *Deux-ponts* and the Palatinate on the East; on the South by *French Comté*, and on the West by *Champaigne*. Here are Plenty of Mines of Silver, Copper, Lead, and Iron; but most of the last; and Salt-Springs are so plenty, that it is said they afford the Duke a Revenue of two hundred thousand Crowns a Year. The chief Rivers are, 1. The *Maes* or *Meuse*. 2. The *Mosselle*. 3. The *Sar*. 4. The *Meurte*. 5. The *Saome*. 6. The *Selle*. 7. The *Voloy*. And, 8. The *Maidon*.

Lorrain is divided into three Parts. 1. *Lorrain Proper*. 2. *Bar*, or *Bar-le-duc*. 3. *French Lorrain*, containing the Bishopricks of *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*. *Lorrain* has been alternately subject to the Emperor and the *French*; but as the *French* were obliged by the Treaty of *Ryswick* in the Year 1697. to restore the greatest Part of it to its proper Sovereign, and the Duke of *Lorrain* is a Prince of Empire, it is most proper to treat of it as belonging to *Germany*.

Chief Towns. THE chief Towns in *Lorrain Proper* are 1. *Nancy*, the Capital of the Dutchy, in near forty nine Degrees North Latitude. It is about thirty Miles South of *Metz*, and sixty to the Southward of *Strasburg*. It is divided into the old and new Town; of which the latter is the larger and much the best built. 2. St. *Nicholas*, a large open Town, six Miles South East of *Nancy*, remarkable chiefly for the Crouds of Pilgrims that resort thither to pay their Devotion to St. *Nicholas*, who they say was Bishop of *Myra* in *Lycia*, and a great Opposer of the *Arrian* Heresy at the Council of *Nice*. These are in the Baliwick of *Nancy*. There are other Towns in the Baliwicks of *Vauge*, *Vandervange*, and the re-united Country; but we read little of them in Geographical History except their Names.

Bar. THE Dutchy of *Bar* is now join'd to, and reckon'd a Part of, *Lorrain*. The chief Town is *Bar-le-duc*, the Capital of the Country, about forty Miles West of *Nancy*. It is a handsome well built City, and has a Collegiate Church, and a Seminary for Students.

French Lorrain comprehends the three Bishopricks of *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Metz*, the Capital of *French Lorrain*, at the Confluence of the *Mosselle* and *Selle*, twenty five Miles North of *Nancy*: Formerly it was an *Imperial* City, but reduc'd by the *French*, and confirm'd to the *French* King by the Treaty of *Munster*. The Roman Catholick Religion is the establish'd Religion, only the Protestants are indulg'd with Toleration.

THE chief Town in the Bishoprick of *Toul* is of the same Name. It stands ten Miles to the Westward of *Nancy*. It is a Bishop's See under the Archbishop of *Triers*. It is a large Place, but fortify'd only by a single Wall.

Verdun is a Bishoprick; the chief Town is of the same Name, and the Bishop of that Diocese is a Prince of the Empire.

Duke of Lorrain's Titles. THE Titles of the Dukes of *Lorrain* are, Duke of *Lorrain* and *Mercœure*, Duke of *Calabria*, *Bar*, and *Guelderland*, Marquis of *Pontamousson* and *Nomeny*, Count of *Province*, *Vaudemont*, *Blamond*, *Zutphen*, *Saar*, *Warden* and *Salm*. His Dominions are, the Dutchies of *Lorrain* and *Bar*; the Marquisate of *Pontamousson*; the Counties of *Blackenburg*, *Falkenstein*, *Donnerberg*, *Clermont*, and *Bielstein*; the Provostship of *Kummelberg* and *Hattenburg*, and the County of *Salm*.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Circle of the Lower Rhine; *as consisting of the Palatinate of the* Rhine, *and the Archbishopricks of* Mentz, *or* Mayence, Triers, *and* Cologne.

THE Palatinate of the *Rhine*, (as supposing the Bishopricks of *Spire* and *Worms*, and the Dutchy of *Deuxponts* included) is bounded on the North by the Archbishopricks of *Mentz* and *Triers*; and on the East by *Franconia* and *Suabia*; and by *Alsatia* and *Lorrain* on the South and West. It is call'd the *Lower Palatinate* to distinguish it from the *Upper*. As for its general Character, it may be said to consist of two Extremes: First, as to its being happy in its Soil and Produce as to Wine, Grain, Fruits, Game, Fish, Metals, Minerals, *&c.* which by the Conveniency of Water-Carriage, makes the Trade exceeding commodious. But this happy Situation and Product meets with this Allay, that all those agreeable Circumstances make it so much the Object of the Desire of covetous contending Powers, and in some Measure even the Seat of War between the Empire and *France*; and upon the Prevalency of the latter, the Protestant Religion suffers severely. And during the last Series of Years, the poor zealous Protestants have at every Peace been deserted by their (pretended) Brethren, and themselves left as a Prey to the voracious Roman Catholicks, whose tender Mercies to them have always been downright Cruelty. Indeed in the Midst, or rather towards the latter End, of this dismal Cloud they have long labour'd under, here is at last a Glorious Monarch appears for their Relief, I mean *GEORGE* II. our present Most Gracious Sovereign; who in some Part of his Dominions in *America*, has provided a Place of Refuge for them call'd by his own Name; and which it is to be hop'd will be perpetuated in the latest Annals of Time, upon the account of its being made a Sanctuary or *Asylum* for those distress'd Followers of their Redeemer.

Chief Towns Heidelburg THE chief Towns in the Palatinate are 1. *Heidelburg* on the River *Neckar*, forty Miles South of *Frankfort*, and twelve North East from *Spire*; in Latitude forty nine Degrees odd Minutes. The Town is not large, nor at present very populous; but the Palace is a handsome Building. But what is most taken Notice of, is the monstrous Wine-Fat, commonly call'd the Tun of *Heidelburg*, which stands in an Out-House near the Palace; and was made, or rather built by *Charles Lodowick* Elector of *Palatine Anno* 1664. of which take the

following Description, which may be worth the reading and Imitation of any who value themselves upon such a monstrous Curiosity.

The Tun of Heidelburg. It contains eight hundred Hogsheads *English* Measure. Instead of Hoops, it is encompass'd with large Trees of Timber, like the Bildge Timbers of a Ship, upon which are several Inscriptions painted and carv'd. On one Side there is a handsome Stair-Case leading to the Top of the Tun, consisting of three and forty Steps; at the Top of which is a large Gallery set round with Ballisters for Conveniency of walking round it. — This Respect they pay to the Tun, because Wine is one of the most profitable Branches of their Trade near the *Rhine* and the *Danube* and the Countries adjacent.

This indeed puts me in mind of a Tun or Cask very much talk'd of in *London*; the making of which might probably be occasion'd by the Veneration that the Proprietor pays to strong Beer; but when my Curiosity led me to enquire into the Capacity of this *London* Cask, I find by the best Information that I can get, that the most it contains, is but one hundred and sixty three Barrels; which at thirty six Gallons to the Barrel, and a Barrel and an half to the Hogshead, makes not quite one hundred and nine Hogsheads, which is not one seventh Part of the Content of the Tun of *Heidelburg*; except some Difference in the Measure between our Beer and their Wine should help to compensate for the Difference between the Concave Solidity of the two Casks.

The Elector's Library here was esteem'd one of the best in *Europe*, both for the Choice and Number of Books, especially Manuscrips in *Hebrew*, *Greek*, *Latin*, *Chaldean*, *Arabick*, *Indian*, *Russian*, *Tartarian*, *Italian*, *French*, *German*, and *Bohemian* Languages. But when the unfortunate King of *Bohemia* was defeated about the Year 1622. by the *Spanish* and *Bavarian* Forces, they plunder'd the Library, destroy'd some of the Books, and carried the rest to the *Vatican* or to the *Imperial* Library at *Vienna*. This City was again taken and plunder'd by the *French Anno* 1683, and again in the Year 1692. at which last Time it was almost entirely demolish'd; and the Inhabitants being mostly Protestants, were used with such Barbarity, as nothing less than Roman Catholick Cruelty could ever have exercis'd.

Manheim. 2. *Manheim*, situate near where the River *Neckar* falls into the *Rhine*, and twelve Miles North West of *Heidelburg*. It was burnt by the *French*, and its Fortifications demolish'd; and yet the Elector lately built here a magnificent Palace, and made it his Residence. There are several others, once Towns of Note; but by the Incursions and Barbarities of the *French*, they are now reduc'd only to *Traerbach*, a strong Fortress on the *Mosselle*, which was once taken by the *French Anno* 1702. but restor'd to the Elector *Palatine* at the last Peace, and is now in his Possession; but at this Juncture, it would be a difficult Question to answer, as to how long the *French* will let him remain in peaceable Possession of it.

Spire. The Bishoprick of *Spire* lies on both Sides of the *Rhine*, and is surrounded by the Territories of the Elector of *Palatine*. The chief Town is *Spire*, on the West Side of the *Rhine*, twelve Miles South East of *Heidelburg*, and eight North of *Philipsburg*. It is a Bishop's See and a populous Town, but not strong. This is the highest Court of Justice in the Empire; there lying an Appeal from any of the Princes Courts to this, but none from this to any, while this Place continu'd in its Grandeur. But upon the Destruction of this Place, this Court was remov'd to *Wetzlar*.

Philipsburg. 3. *Philipsburg*, on the East Side of the *Rhine*, at the Mouth of the River *Saltza*. It is ten Miles to the Southward of *Spire*. It has been taken and retaken by the Emperor and the *French*; but last taken by the *French* at the Beginning of the present War, which upon so slight an Occasion as the Election of a King of *Poland*, has put almost all *Europe* in a Combustion; and *Philipsburg* was almost one of the first Places that participated of the *French* Fury, as soon as they could form any Pretence to break through their Bounds and attack the Emperor's Dominions.

Worms. The Bishoprick of *Worms* lies also on both Sides of the *Rhine*, and to the Northward of that of *Spires*. It is a small Bishoprick. The chief Town is *Worms*, on the West Bank of the *Rhine*, twenty five Miles North of *Spire*. It was almost destroy'd by the *French Anno* 1693; and though some Part of it is rebuilt, yet it may rather be said that they have made the best of a bad Bargain, than that they have repair'd their Loss; for in the ruinous, and otherwise waste Spaces within the Walls, they have planted Vines, which afford two or three thousand Hogsheads of Wine every Year.

Deux-Ponts. The Dutchy of *Deux-Ponts* is surrounded by the Palatinate. The chief Town is *Deux-Ponts*, forty Miles South West of *Worms*. It is a little well built City, and takes its Name of *Deux-Ponts* from the Bridges over two Rivers upon which it stands.

Religion. *Lutheranism* and *Calvinism* have so eagerly contended against each other in this Dutchy, that their Debates, which doubtless they call Religious, have weaken'd them so much, that it has contributed very much towards the letting in of Popery like an Inundation upon them. *Frederick* Duke of *Simmeren*, first introduc'd *Calvinism* into the *Palatinate*; and dying *Anno* 1576. he was succeeded by *Lewis* V. as great a Bigot to *Lutheranism*, as his Father had been to *Calvinism*. After him his Son *Frederick* succeeded *Anno* 1583, but he dying in the Year 1610. was succeeded by *Frederick* V. who married *Elizabeth* Daughter to *James* I. King of *England*; but he being advanc'd to the Throne of *Bohemia*, to which the Emperor *Ferdinand* had before been elected, the Emperor and *Spain* jointly attack'd him, and he losing the Battle at *Prague*, and with that the Crown of *Bohemia*, his Fortune declin'd at once, and the Emperor and the Electoral College depriv'd him of all his own Hereditary Territories and Dignities, and he was forc'd to fly with his Consort the Princess *Elizabeth* to *Holland* for Refuge. (*See Chap.* III. *of* Bohemia, *Pag.* 469.) The present Elector *Charles-Philip*, succeeded to the Electorate *June* 8. 1716. he has had three Wives, but has no Issue by any of them, except a Daughter married to the Prince of *Sultzbach*.

Mentz. The Remainder of the Circle of the *Lower Rhine* contains the Archbishopricks of *Mentz*, *Treves*, and *Cologn*. These are Spiritual Electorates, and take the Precedence of the six Temporal ones; and of these the Elector of *Mentz* is the chief, and appoints the Time and Place for a new Election to supply a Vacancy of the *Imperial* Throne. When that happens, he is Arch-chancellor of *Germany*, and Visitor of the Aulick Council of *Vienna*. And in short, the Princes and States when agriev'd, apply to him for Redress.

The Archbishoprick of *Mentz* is bounded on the North by *Wetteraw*, and on the East by *Franconia*; by the Palatinate on the South, and by the Electorate of *Treves* on the West. The chief Towns are,

1. *Mentz*, or *Mayence*, situate near the Mouth of the River *Maine*, where it falls into the *Rhine*. It is twenty Miles West of *Frankfort* on the *Maine*, and fifty North of *Spire*. It is a large and populous Town, but not strong. The Elector's Palace

and other publick Buildings are handſome; but the Streets are narrow, and the private Houſes mean. Proteſtants are permitted to trade and reſide here, but are not allow'd the free Exerciſe of their Religion. They claim the Invention of Gunpowder and Printing; but it is generally allow'd, that the former was known in *Oxford*, and the latter in *Holland*, before they were known in *Mentz*. 2. *Bingen*, at the Conflux of the *Rhine* and *Nabe*, ſixteen Miles to the Weſtward of *Mentz*, once a Roman Fortreſs, and ſince an *Imperial* City; but now ſubject to the Dean and Chapter of *Mentz*.

In the *Rhingaw*, which extends about twenty Miles along the Banks of the *Rhine*, are, 3. *Elfold*, fifteen Miles Weſt of *Mentz*. 4. *Erbach*; here are the Tombs of the old Counts of *Naſſaw*, and of ſome of the Archbiſhops of *Mentz*. This Country of *Rhingaw* abounds ſo with the beſt Vines every where between and among the Towns, that it looks like one continu'd City interſpers'd with Streets of Houſes among Gardens and Vineyards, all within its Territories. There are ſeveral other Towns, of whom we find little remarkable but their Names. The Elector's Revenues are reckon'd to amount to an hundred thouſand Pounds Sterling a Year.

Trier. The Electorate of *Triers* lies between *Veteravia* on the Eaſt, and the *Auſtrian Netherlands* on the Weſt. The South and Weſtern Parts of it are mountainous, barren, and cold; but near the *Rhine* and the *Moſelle* it is pleaſant, fruitful, and populous. Chief Towns are *Triers*, or *Treves*, the Capital. It ſtands on the River *Moſelle*, in near fifty Degrees of Latitude, about ſixty Miles to the Weſtward of *Mentz*, and as many to the Southward of *Cologn*. This Place has been alternately in the Hands of the *French* and Confederates; and by the frequent Plunders on both Sides, it is now neither large nor populous.

Mentz. 2. *Coblentz*, at the Conflux of the *Rhine* and *Moſelle*, fifty Miles North Eaſt of *Triers*, and about forty South Eaſt of *Cologn*. Its Situation at the Meeting of the two Rivers draws it near a Triangular Form; two of whoſe Sides are waſh'd by theſe two Rivers, and the third is defended by a Wall and Fortifications after the modern Way. Its convenient Situation for Navigation has procur'd it a good Trade, which conſiſts chiefly in Corn, Wine, Wood, and Iron. The Houſes are well built, and the Streets uniform. There is a Stone-Bridge over the *Moſelle*, and a Bridge of Boats over the *Rhine*; and on the oppoſite Side of the *Rhine*, there is a Caſtle which commands the Town, and the Navigation of both the Rivers to or from it. This Caſtle is on the Top of an Hill, at the Bottom of which, ſtands the Elector's Palace.

Meyne. 3. *Meyne*, fifteen Miles Weſt of *Coblentz*. It gives Name to a large Territory about it. Other Towns mention'd by Geographers are *Cochin*, *Saffich*, *Boppart*, *Engers*, *Bernaſtle*, *Oberweſel*, *Cell*, or *Zell*, St. *Vendal*, *Sarbrug*, *Limburg*, *Montroyal*, *Ulmen*, St. *Maximin*, *Phaltz*, *Witlich*, and *Prum*. The Revenues of the Elector of *Triers* are computed at near an hundred thouſand Pounds a Year.

The Electorate and Archbiſhoprick of *Cologn* lies on the Weſt Side of the *Rhine*, between the Dutchy of *Cleves* on the North, and the Electorate of of *Triers* on the South. The Country abounds with Corn, Wine, and all other Neceſſaries of Life. The Archbiſhop has ſeveral other large Territories in *Weſtphalia*, and other Parts of the Empire, and is reckon'd more rich and powerful than the other two Spiritual Electors, tho' he allows them the Precedence.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Cologn* or *Colen*, the Capital of the Electorate. It is built in Form of a Creſcent, near the Weſtern Bank of the *Rhine*, in about Latitude fifty one Degrees, about forty Miles North Weſt of *Coblentz*. It is poorly fortify'd, but is one of the largeſt, handſomeſt, and moſt populous Cities in the Empire. Beſides what it is built upon, there is three hundred Acres of Ground planted with Vines all within the Walls, which are ſo ſpacious, that they contain four and twenty Gates, of which, thirteen are towards the Land, and eleven towards the *Rhine*. It has large Streets, two ſpacious Market-places, eleven Collegiate Churches, nineteen Pariſh Churches, (beſides the Cathedral) thirty Chapels, twelve Monaſteries, twenty two Nunneries, four large Hoſpitals, and a *Lutheran* Church. Here it was that King *Charles* II. of *England*, ſpent the two laſt Years of his Exile before his Reſtauration.

The Elector has two Palaces in this City, tho' his general Reſidence is at *Bon*. The Convent of the *Carmelites* is a ſumptuous Building, inſomuch that there was held a Congreſs of Ambaſſadors, Plenipotentiaries from moſt of the Powers in *Europe*, in the Year 1673. The Inhabitants are moſtly Roman Catholicks, and of the Proteſtants, the *Lutherans* only are allow'd a Church in the City, as intimated above; but the *Calviniſts* are forc'd to go two Miles on the other Side of the *Rhine* to their publick Worſhip at a Village call'd *Mutheim*.

2. The next City in Dignity to *Cologn* is *Bon*; it ſtands on the Bank of the *Rhine*, ten Miles to the Southward of *Cologn*. Here the Elector has a Palace, and uſually reſides. From its happy Situation it is ſuppos'd to take its Name from the Latin Word *Bona*.

3. *Andernach*, eight Miles to the Northward of *Coblentz*. Here the two Electorates of *Cologn* and *Triers* are bounded from each other; and here the Elector of *Cologn* has a Cuſtom-houſe. The Elector of *Cologn* is alſo Biſhop and Prince of the Dioceſe and Territory of *Hildeſheim*, which is ſurrounded by the Dominions of the Elector of *Brunſwick*. The chief Town is *Hildeſheim*, fifteen Miles South Eaſt of *Hanover*, and twenty five South Weſt of *Brunſwick*.

Elector's Titles. The Elector of *Cologn's* Titles are, Archbiſhop of *Cologn*, Arch-Chancellor of the Empire in *Italy*, Prince Elector of the Holy Roman Empire, Biſhop of *Hildeſheim*, *Munſter* and *Paderborn*, Adminiſtrator of *Berchtolſgaden*, Duke of *Engern* and *Weſtphalia*, Duke of the *Upper* and *Lower Bavaria*, &c. This Elector crowns the Emperor, unleſs the Coronation be perform'd in the Dioceſe of *Mentz*, or in the Dioceſe of *Triers*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Circle of Westphalia; *as comprehending the Dutchy of* Westphalia, *the Bishopricks of* Leige, Munster, Paderborn *and* Osnaburg; *the Dutchies of* Juliers, Cleves *and* Berg; *the Principality of* Minden; *the Counties of* Marck, Ravensburg, Lippe, Schawenburg, Hoye, Diepholt, Oldenburg, Delmonhorst, Embden, Bentheim, Tecklenburg, Pyrmont, Lingen *and* Steinfort, Corbey Abbey; *and the Imperial Towns of* Aix la Chapelle, Dortmond, *&c.*

THE Circle of *Westphalia* is bounded on the North by the *German* Ocean, and on the East by *Lower Saxony*; by *Hesse* on the South, and by the *Netherlands* on the West. The principal Rivers are the *Weser*, the *Emes*, the *Lipee*, the *Roer*, the *Aa*, and the *Hunt*. Travellers in general give this Country but a dull Character, as affording no better than coarse Bread, hard Lodging, long Miles, and dirty Roads; that they who travel in Post-waggons, as they call them, travel very few Miles in a Day.

Westphalia Proper, or the Dutchy of *Westphalia*, lies between *Munster* on the North, and *Veteravia* on the South; *Hesse* on the East, and the Dutchy of *Berg* on the West. It is mountainous and woody, but the Valleys afford Corn and Pasturage enough to supply the Inhabitants, who are not very numerous. The chief Towns are, 1. *Arusburg* on the River *Roer*, about fifty Miles North East of *Cologn*. Here is a fine Castle which is frequently the Residence of the Elector, especially in the Hunting Season. 2. *Werle*, a pleasant Town between the *Roer* and the *Lippe*. Here the supreme Court of Justice is held for *Westphalia*, for which Reason it is sometimes call'd the Capital of the Dutchy. There is also *Gesek*, near the Banks of the *Lippe* and *Brilon*, near the Head of the River *Aloens*.

Liege. THE Bishoprick or Diocese of *Leige* is bounded on the North and West by *Flanders* and *Brabant*; on the East by *Limburg*, and by *Luxemburg* and Part of *France* on the South. The Country affords Plenty of Corn and Pasture. They have also Mines of Lead and Iron, and Quarries of Marble; but more remarkable for affording great Quantities of Brimstone and Vitriol. Chief Towns are, 1. *Liege* the Capital; it stands on the River *Maes*, about twelve Miles South of *Maestricht*, and in Latitude near fifty one Degrees. It is a populous City, but the Buildings are mostly of Wood; and the Streets have generally a clear Stream runs through the Middle of them. In this City and Suburbs are above an hundred Churches. The Cathedral is built with red Stone, and the Bishop's Palace is a magnificent Building; and in short it is said, that no City either in *France* or *Germany* can compare with it for fine Churches, Convents, and other sumptuous Buildings for religious Uses.

Sir *John Mandeville.* IN the Monastery of St. *William*, without the Walls of this City, lies the Remains of that famous *English* Traveller Sir *John Mandevile*; who after having seen most of the remarkable Cities in the World, preferr'd *Liege* to them all, and chose to finish his Travels and his Life in this Place: And near his Tomb are placed his Saddle, Spurs, and Knife, with a *French* Inscription, which in *English* runs thus: *You who pass over me, for the Love of God pray for me.*

THE Elector of *Cologn*, who was also Bishop of *Liege*, deliver'd it up to the *French* in the Beginning of King *William*'s Wars; but the Duke of *Marlborough* took it in the Year 1702. The *French* besieg'd it in the Year 1705; but the Confederates returning suddenly from the *Moselle* to its Relief, obliged the *French* to raise the Siege. It is stil'd an *Imperial* City, but the Bishop is Sovereign of the City and Diocese, though he cannot impose any Taxes of the three Estates as they are call'd, *viz.* the Clergy, Gentry, and Commons. The Bishop of *Liege* is one of the most considerable Ecclesiastical Princes in *Germany*, having within his Diocese or Principality, fifty two Baronies, eighteen wall'd Towns, and four hundred Villages very populous, which yield him an Annual Revenue of three hundred thousand Ducats.

Tongres. 2. *Tongres* or *Tongren*, on the River *Jecker*, ten Miles North of *Liege*. It was a very considerable Town in the Time of the *Romans*; at which Time there was a Roman Way or Road pitch'd from *Tongres* to *Paris*, near two hundred Miles in Length: Some of that Road is yet to be seen. It was a Bishop's See before *Liege* was, but the Bishoprick was remov'd from thence to *Maerstricht*, and from thence to *Liege*, where it now is. It is now a delining Town at present, not remarkable for either Strength or Grandeur.

Hoy. 3. *Hoy*, on the East Side of the *Maes*, twelve Miles South of *Liege*. In this Neighbourhood are such Plenty of Iron Mines, that they are the chief Employment of the Inhabitants. It is a fortify'd Town, and has a Castle, but was taken by the *French* in the Year 1693. and re-taken by the Confederates in the Year 1703. It is now subject to the Bishop of *Liege*.

Bullen. 4. *Bullion* or *Bullen*, on the River *Semay*, forty Miles West of *Luxemburg*. It is the Capital of the Dutchy of *Bullen*, whose Duke, *Godfrey*, who was also Bishop of *Liege*, (*Bullen* giving the Title of Duke to that Bishop) was therefore call'd *Godfrey* of *Bullen*; but he sold this Inheritance to the Bishop of this See, to enable himself to raise Forces to carry on the War against the Infidels in the *Holy Land*; in which he succeeded so well, that in three Years time he conquer'd *Jerusalem* and a great Part of *Palestine*; and was thereupon crown'd the first Christian King of that City and Territory; in which his Modesty was so remarkable, that after his Conquest in fighting our Saviour's Battles in the Cause of Christianity, he could not be prevail'd upon to wear a Crown of Gold in *Jerusalem*, where his Master had worn a Crown of Thorns.

Dinant. 5. *Dinant* is a fortify'd Town, thirty Miles South West of *Liege*, and twelve South of *Namure*. Its Manufactures are chiefly in Brass and Iron.

6. *Franchemont*, the Capital of a Marquisate, subject to the Bishop of *Liege*; but it is now only

an

an open Village, and not remarkable for any thing but the Lead Mines near it.

Spa or Spaw.

7. The *Spaw* or *Spa* in a Bottom, enclos'd with Hills and craggy Mountains, fourteen Miles South East of *Liege*, chiefly famous for its Mineral Waters, ſo much in Vogue in *London* at preſent, that the Retailers of it ſeem to contend about who ſells the beſt. And as it is now ſo much in Uſe amongſt the Nobility and Quality, it may not be amiſs to give the following Account of the Number and Quality of the Fountains, with the moſt proper Seaſons for filling the Bottles, *&c.*

Fountains at Spa.

The Fountains are four in Number; their Water in general taſtes of Iron, and is purgative; and when boyl'd, grows turbid, and at laſt, of a reddiſh Colour. But as to their Names and particular Qualities, the firſt is call'd *Geronſter*: It is in the Middle of a thick Wood, two Miles South of *Spa*. It is the beſt kept, and built up with Stone with a Pavilion over it, ſupported by four Stone Pillars; and near it ſtands a little Houſe for the Conveniency of thoſe that reſort to it. This Spring hath a ſtrong ſulphurous Smell, and ſometimes cauſes vomiting; but this, like the reſt, works chiefly by Urine. The ſecond Spring is call'd *Savviniere*, two Miles East of *Spa*. Its Waters are much of the ſame Quality with the former, but operate not ſo ſtrongly or effectually. The third is call'd *Tonnelet*; it riſes in a Meadow near *Spa*. It is more ſtrongly impregnated with Nitre than the reſt; but is very cold both in the Mouth and Stomach. The fourth is *Pohunt*: It is in the Middle of the Village of *Spa*. It is at this they take up moſt of the Waters they ſend abroad into Foreign Parts. It is embelliſh'd with a fine Stone Building, over which is an Inſcription, expreſſing the Virtues of the Water; and from this Spring, vaſt Quantities of Water are ſent abroad to all Parts of *Europe*. The beſt Seaſon for filling thoſe Waters, is either in the Heat of Summer or in the hardeſt Froſts. The reaſon of this appears plain; for in the Drought of Summer when other Springs have ſcarce Water to ſupply themſelves, the *Spaw* can then produce no Water but what is pure and genuine from its own Source; and ſomething of the like Nature may be ſaid as to the hard froſty Weather in Winter, when the Water upon the Surface of the Earth, is congeal'd by Froſt, and not capable of penetrating through the Pores of the Earth, to mix with the original *Spaw Water*, and if I may ſo ſay, adulterate it; and when the Water is thus pure and ſimple, it is the moſt ſtrong, briſk, and ſparkling. The Water is heavier Quantity for Quantity, than *Tunbridge* or *Iſlington*, and yet lighter than common Water.

Munſter

The Biſhoprick of *Munſter* lies on both Sides of the River *Ems*, between *Benthem* on the North, and *Marck* on the South; and between *Oſnaburg* on the Eaſt, and the Dutchy of *Cleve* on the Weſt. It is a barren Country, only it produces as good Bacon as any in *Weſtphalia*; it is exported all over *Europe*, and bears a greater, and ſometimes double the Price of any other. The chief Town is,

Chief Towns.

Munſter, the Metropolis of *Weſtphalia*, ſituate on the River *Aa*, in Latitude fifty two Degrees, and about ſeventy Miles to the Northward of *Cologn*. The Town is generally built of free Stone. The Cathedral is a noble Building. The Biſhop's Revenue is reckon'd at an hundred and fifty thouſand Pounds a Year. The Roman Catholick is reckon'd the eſtabliſh'd Religion, but the Proteſtants have been pretty numerous ſince the Reformation.

The Treaty of *Weſtphalia* was concluded here in the Year 1648. In this Treaty was eſtabliſh'd the Proteſtant Religion in thoſe Parts of the Empire where it was profeſs'd, which put an End to a War of thirty Years ſtanding, *viz.* from the Year 1618. to the Year 1648. between the united Powers of the Proteſtant Princes of *Germany* and the *Swede* on one Side, and the Emperor and the Popiſh Princes on the other; and indeed, all Treaties ſince, ſeem to have had an Eye to this, ſo far as the Religion of the Empire is concern'd. The Occaſion of the Emperor's coming to this Treaty with the *Swede*, ſeems to have been, becauſe the *Swedes* had been engag'd in War with *Germany* eighteen Years, in which Time they had taken an hundred ſtrong Towns in the Empire. And having gain'd this Advantage of the Emperor, they at this Treaty, procur'd the Dutchies of *Bremen*, *Verden*, Weſtern *Pomeren*, the Iſle of *Rugen*, and the City of *Wiſmar*, to be confirm'd to them. There are other Towns of leſs Note in this Biſhoprick, but we do not read much of them in Geographical Hiſtory, except their Names and Situation.

Paderborn.

The Biſhoprick of *Paderborn* is next in Order, and is bounded on the North by the County of *Lippe*, and on the Eaſt by the Dutchy of *Brunſwick*; by the County of *Waldeck* on the South, and by *Weſtphalia* on the Weſt. It is remarkable chiefly for the Variety of Salt Springs and other Fountains. The Tranſactions of the Royal Society publiſh'd in *December* 1665. give an Account of a Spring in this Territory, which is loſt twice in twenty four Hours, and at its Return, makes a great Noiſe, and throws out ſuch a Quantity of Water, and with ſuch Force, that it turns three Mills not far from its Source or Spring. But there is another Fountain of a Nature ſo ſurprizingly remarkable, that if I had not the Authority of the Philoſophical Tranſactions for *January* 166⅝. for the Deſcription of it, I ſhould be at a Loſs to give Credit to it. The Spring is call'd *Methorn*, and may rather be call'd two Springs; which though not two Foot aſunder, yet one is limpid, bleuiſh, luke-warm, and bubbling; and contains Sal-Armoniac, Ochra, Iron, Allum, Vitriol, Sulphur, Nitre, and Orpiment. The other is cold as Ice, turbid and whitiſh, much ſtronger in Taſte, and heavier than the former. It is impregnated with Orpiment, Salt, Nitre, Iron, and ſome Sal-Armoniac, Allum and Vitriol. If Water-Fowls drink it and have not immediate Relief, they quickly die; but common Salt will prolong their Lives, and Vinegar will recover them. It is obſerv'd of ſome who have died immediately after the drinking of this Water, or rather ſuppos'd to be kill'd by it, their Lungs are found to be quite ſhrivel'd up, and yet it is a perfect Cure for People troubled with Worms. There is alſo another Spring about twenty Paces from the former two; it is of a greeniſh Colour, very clear, and its Taſte is a Mixture of ſour and ſweet; and from its Weight is ſuppos'd to proceed from the original Fountain with the other two, as being of the ſame ſpecifick Gravity, though by ſome Accident in its Paſſage, its Taſte and Colour are made to differ.

Springs of a ſtrange Quality.

Paderborn.

This Biſhoprick was founded by *Charles* the Great, about the Year 780. It is but a barren Soil, only they have Plenty of Hogs-Fleſh, and alſo of Deer and other Veniſon. The Capital Town is *Paderborn*, ſo call'd from the Head or Source of the River *Pada*, which riſes with a violent Torrent near the Cathedral of this City, and falls into the *Lippe* near *Neinhus*. When *Charles* the Great conquer'd this Country, whoſe Inhabitants were Pagans, he cauſed the moſt of them to be baptiz'd at this Fountain. The City of *Paderborn* is about fifty Miles South East of *Munſter*. It is a large, populous, and well fortify'd Town. The Elector of *Cologn* is Biſhop of *Paderborn*; the eſtabliſh'd Religion is that of the Roman Catholick. 2. *Lippeſpring* is another remarkable Town,

ſtanding on the River *Lippe*, five Miles North of *Paderborn*. It is ſo call'd from the noted Source or Spring of the River *Lippe*, which ariſes near this Place in ſo large a Stream, that it is ſix or eight Paces broad, and turns three or four Mills before it leaves the Town. 3. *Warburg*, ſituate on the River *Dymel*, eighteen Miles South East of *Paderborn*. The Country is fruitful, and produceth Plenty of Iron and Lead. 4. *Lude*, twenty five Miles North East of *Paderborn*, remarkable only for its *Holy Well*, which in Times of Superſtition was very much admired for Cures reported to be preformed by it.

Oſnaburg The Biſhoprick of *Oſnaburgh* lies to the Northward of *Munſter*. It is reckon'd one of the moſt fruitful Parts of *Weſtphalia*; its Biſhop is a Count of the Empire; it was the firſt Biſhoprick founded by *Charles* the Great. After the Reformation, *Lutheraniſm* prevail'd here; but it was agreed by the Treaty of *Munſter*, (ſometimes call'd the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*, and by others the Treaty of *Oſnaburg*) that this Biſhoprick with its Territories and Revenues, ſhould be enjoy'd alternately by a Proteſtant and a Papiſt; and that the Proteſtant Biſhop ſhould always be a Prince of the Houſe of *Brunſwick*, in Lieu of the Principality of *Halberſtat* having been transferr'd from that Houſe to the Houſe of *Brandenburg*. When they have a Popiſh Biſhop, he is Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Cologn*; but the Proteſtant Biſhop is only a Temporal Prince, having little but his Title to denominate him an Eccleſiaſtick.

Chief Town. The chief Town or Capital, is *Oſnaburg*, or *Oſenbruck*, ſo call'd from a Bridge over the *Oſe*; at that Place this River *Oſe* divides *Oſnaburg* into the New and Old Town. The Cathedral, with the Church and Monaſtery of the *Dominicans*, are in the Poſſeſſion of the Roman Catholicks. Theſe are in the Old City, and they have alſo the Collegiate Church of St. *John* in the new City; but the Proteſtants have the great Parochial Church of St. *Mary* in the Old City; and both Proteſtants and Papiſts have a Voice in the Election of Magiſtrates. Here his late Majeſty King *George* I. was born *May* 28. 1660. his Father *Ernſt Auguſtus* being then Biſhop and Prince of *Oſnaburg*. And here he dy'd in the Night of the tenth of *June* 1727. and ſome ſay he dy'd in the very Room where he was born.

Juliers. The Dutchy of *Juliers* is between the *Maes* and the *Rhine*, and lies between *Guelderland* on the North, and *Limburg* on the South. It is a plentiful Country for Corn, Cattle, Paſture, and Wood; but what it is chiefly remarkable for, is a fine Breed of Horſes, and a Sort of Wood for dying, which is gather'd here in great Quantities. Chief Towns are,

1. *Juliers* or *Gulick*, ſaid to be founded by *Julius Cæſar*, and to take its Name from him. It ſtands on the River *Roer*, about twenty five Miles Weſt of *Cologn*. It is a neat fortify'd Town, and in it is the Palace of the antient Dukes.

Aix la Chapelle *Aix la Chapelle*, a large *Imperial* City, fifteen Miles South Weſt of *Juliers*. It is called in *French*, *Aix la Chapelle*, from a Chappel in the great Church much reſorted to by Popiſh Pilgrims, out of a profound Veneration they have for a Parcel of Relicks lodg'd there. The Town may be divided into City and Suburbs, the former being encompaſs'd by a Wall of three Quarters of a League round having ten Gates. The Suburbs, if they may be ſo called, are alſo encompaſs'd by a Wall about a League and an half in Circumference; and in this, there are eleven Gates. There are ſome Rivulets run thro' the Town, which contribute to the keeping it ſweet and clean, and turn ſeveral Mills. There are alſo many publick and private Fountains, and having Plenty of good Stone Quarries, they furniſh them with Materials for many magnificent Buildings, of which the Stadt-houſe and the Cathedral are the chief. The Stadt-houſe is three Stories high, and adorn'd with the Statues of all the Emperors ſince *Charles* the Great. The two loweſt Stories are divided into ſeveral Partitions, but the uppermoſt is one entire Room, an hundred and ſixty two Feet long, and ſixty Feet broad. Here the new elected Emperor uſed to entertain the Electors and Princes of the Empire at their Coronation; it being here that the Emperor receiv'd his firſt Crown, which was Iron, as he did his ſecond at *Milan*, which was Silver; and laſtly, his third, which was Gold, at *Rome*. In this Hall, are many fine Paintings of curious Workmanſhip. There are in this Hall ſeveral Relicks much reſorted to by the ſuperſtitious Roman Catholicks; as the Virgin *Mary*'s Gown, wherein ſhe was dreſt at the Incarnation of our Saviour. The Cloth which was girt about our Saviour when he ſuffer'd, being of very coarſe Linen. Alſo a Piece of Cord, with which he was bound, &c. Theſe Things indeed the cunning Prieſts may make the credulous ignorant People believe; but they have engroſs'd no more of my Belief, than to put me in Mind of a Piece of News I lately read, which tells us, that the preſent Pope examin'd the Roman Calendar, to try if he could find a Saint of his Name [*Corſini*;] and finding one St. *Andrew Corſini*, he dedicated a magnificent Chapel to him, and enrich'd it with Ornaments and Relicks at a plentiful Rate, the Cardinals and Princes endeavouring to out-vye each other in making preſents to his Holineſs of Relicks, worthy to be depoſited in ſo ſacred a Place; but his Holineſs expreſſing a Deſire amongſt other Things, to have a Piece of the original Croſs depoſited amongſt the Relicks on the Altar, an Emulation aroſe in his Courtiers to procure it for him; and in a ſhort Time, as much Wood was ſent in under that Denomination from different Hands (and doubtleſs unknown to one another) as would have built the whole Chapel. [*See* Daily Advertiſer *Jan.* 29. 1734.] And it is as probable, that the Gown and Piece of Linen above-mention'd may be at *Aix la Chapelle*, as that there ſhould be Timber enough to build a magnificent Chapel in the Croſs which *Simon* the *Cyrenian* could carry upon his Back.

Waters of Aix la Chapelle. But what is moſt worthy our Obſervation in *Aix la Chapelle*, is the hot Baths ſo much reſorted to, not only by the Neighbourhood, but by the Nobility and Gentry of *England for Recovery of their Health*; three of which are within the inner Wall, *viz.* the Emperor's Bath, the little Bath, and the Bath of St. *Quirinus*. Theſe Baths riſe ſo hot, that they are forc'd to let them cool twelve Hours before they can uſe them. But thoſe that riſe without the inner Wall, are not ſo hot, but their Smell is more offenſive; and their Waters when in the Ciſterns, are not tranſparent. Here is alſo a Fountain of warm Water, which is much drank in Summer's Mornings. There is alſo a Village call'd *Porcetum*, taking its Name from the Drove of wild Hogs, which formerly frequented the neighbouring Woods. There is a fine cool Rivulet runs through this Village; and on each Side of it are hot Springs, which are convey'd by Pipes into fourteen Houſes, and form eight and twenty Baths. The Waters of theſe Springs are clear and pleaſant, and of no offenſive Smell, but much better than thoſe at *Aix*; for thoſe at *Porcetum* require eighteen Hours cooling before they can be endured to be uſed. Near this Place are ſeveral Mines of Lead, Coal, Vitriol, Sulphur, and Calmey, or *Lapis Calaminaris*, with which laſt they make Braſs, by mixing twenty eight

Mines of Lead.

Pounds

Pounds of the beſt *Swediſh* Copper with an hundred Pounds of Calmey. (And to this ſome ſay, they add ſome broken Pieces of Braſs, and ſome of the Droſs of both Minerals; but theſe two laſt Ingredients being put in, is more to ſave them from being waſted, than for their being any way eſſential to the making the new Metal, as is the Caſe with our Plummers, Goldſmiths, or any that work in caſt Metal. Nor can it be poſſible that Pieces of Braſs are abſolutely neceſſary to the making of Braſs, it having been impoſſible to procure Braſs to aſſiſt in making the firſt Braſs that ever was made. The Copper and Calmey they melt in Crucibles over a hot Furnace twelve Hours, and then putting eight of theſe Crucibles into one, they let the droſſy Part boil over, it being the lighteſt; the pure heavy Metal ſubſiding; and when the Droſs is gone, they pour the pure liquid Metal into a Frame of Stone, and run it into Plates or Webs, as we do Sheet-Lead. But doubtleſs, when the Droſs boils over, ſome of the pure Metal flies out with it, which is the Occaſion of putting the Droſs into the Crucible again to prevent Waſte, and not on Account of the Droſs being a neceſſary Ingredient in producing the next Crucible of Braſs.

I HAVE ſeen a Liſt of the Names of Diſtempers that theſe Waters cure; but as ſo many Diſtempers are therein mention'd that few are omitted, I ſhall decline inſerting their Names, but leave every Perſon to judge of their Virtues by their own Experience, or by the Credit of the Report of thoſe who have try'd them.

eligion. POPERY is the eſtabliſh'd Religion in *Aix*, but Proteſtants that go to drink the Waters or otherwiſe, are not only ſuffer'd to reſide here and ſpend their Money, but are allow'd the Uſe of a Church in the Neighbourhood when they celebrate Divine Service.

THE Dutchies of *Cleves*, *Juliers*, and *Berg*, were ſubject to the ſame Sovereign till about the Year 1609. But upon the Death of the laſt Duke, *John William* who left no Iſſue Male, the Emperor *Rodolph* II. granted theſe Dukedoms, together with the Counties of *Marck* and *Ravenſpurg*, and the Barony of *Ravenſtein*, dependant upon them, to the Houſe of *Saxony*; with a Proviſo however, for ſaving the Rights of all other Claimants. And in the Reign of the Emperor *Charles* V. the Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Duke of *Newburg*, the Duke of *Deux-Ponts*, and the Marquels of *Burgow*, having all married Siſters, or Siſter's Daughters, of the laſt Duke *William*, claim'd their Shares in the ſaid Territories; but the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and the Duke of *Newburg* taking Poſſeſſion of theſe Countries by Force of Arms, the other Powers declin'd their Pretenſions, and it was at laſt agreed, that *Juliers*, *Berg*, and *Ravenſtein*, ſhould be poſſeſs'd by the Duke of *Newburg*, and the Elector of *Brandenburg* ſhould have the Dutchy of *Cleve*, with the Counties of *Marck* and *Ravenſpurg*; and they each of them remain to this Day in Poſſeſſion of theſe their reſpective Shares, and every one aſſumes an empty Title to the whole.

y of THE Dutchy of *Berg* is bounded on the North by the County of *Marck*, and on the Eaſt by *Weſtphalia*; by *Cologn* on the South and by the *Rhine*, which ſeparates it from the Dutchy of *Juliers*, on the Weſt; extending near fifty Miles along the Banks of the *Rhine*, and in ſome Places about twenty Miles broad. The Country is neither fruitful nor populous. The chief Town or Capital of the Dutchy is *Duſſeldorp*, a large Fortify'd Town near the Eaſtern Bank of the *Rhine*, twenty five Miles to the Northward of *Cologn*. It ſtands where the River *Duſſel* (from whence it takes its Name) falls into the *Rhine*. The Duke or Elector's Palace, with other publick Buildings, make a handſome Appearance to the River. Alſo the Collegiate Church of Saint *Martin's* is a handſome Fabrick, where are the Tombs of the antient Dukes of *Berg* and *Juliers*. Their chief Trade is in Corn, but not of their own Product; for they import it from the *Low Counnries*, and export it to *Cologn*, and other Places in *Germany*. The Lordſhip of *Ravenſtein* is a ſmall Barony between *Gelderland* and *Brabant*; it is ſo call'd from the Caſtle of *Ravenſtein*, a Fort on the *Maes*, four or five Miles below *Grave*. *Ravenſtein*

THE Dutchy of *Cleve* lies on both Sides of the *Rhine*, between the *United Provinces* on the North, and the Dutchy of *Juliers* on the South. Chief Rivers are, 1. The *Rhine*, which paſſes through the Middle of it. 2. The *Roer*, which riſes in the County of *Marck*, and falls into the *Rhine* between *Duysburg* and *Rohroot*. 3. The *Lippe*, which riſes in *Weſtphalia*, and falls into the *Rhine* near *Weſel*. And, 4. The *Nierſe*, which riſes in the Dukedom of *Juliers*, and falls into the *Maes* near *Genep*. Chief Towns are,

1. *Cleve*, between the *Rhine* and the *Maes*, about twelve Miles South Eaſt of *Nimeguen*, and ſixty North Weſt of *Cologn*. It is not a large City, but is well peopled. On the Weſt Side of this Town lies the Park of Prince *Maurice* of *Naſſau*, ſo much admired for the Water-works, Canals, and Grottoes in it; above which is a high Hill call'd *Sternburgh*, from whence *Utrecht* may be ſeen, tho' at fifty Miles Diſtance, beſides forty more Cities and great Towns. But what is moſt worth Obſervation is, that from the ſaid Hill proceed twelve Viſtoes, at the End of each of which there is a fine City. The Elector of *Brandenburg* (the preſent King of *Pruſſia*) is Sovereign of this Country, and the Religion that he encourages is *Calviniſm*; but moſt of the Churches are poſſeſs'd by Roman Catholicks.

2. *Embrick*, on the Eaſt Side of the *Rhine*, to the Northward of *Cleve*, now but a poor Place.

3. *Gennep*, at the Conflux of the *Nierſe* and *Maes*, ten Miles South of *Cleve*, near the Borders of *Gelderland*. It was a large fortify'd Town, but now much declin'd in Trade, Strength, and Beauty.

4. *Weſel*, on the Eaſtern Bank of the *Rhine*, near the Mouth of the River *Lippe*, twenty five Miles South Eaſterly from *Cleve*. It was one of the largeſt and moſt populous Towns in the Dutchy, till it was ſo harraſs'd by the *French* in the late Wars.

5. *Duisburg*, on the Borders of *Cleve* and *Berg*, fifteen Miles North Weſt of *Duſſeldorp*; it had formerly a great Trade, which is now chiefly removed to *Frankfort*.

THE County of *Marck* belongs alſo to the Elector of *Brandenburg*; it is the largeſt County in *Weſtphalia*, ſituate between the Rivers *Lippe* and *Ruer*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Hamm*, twenty five Miles South of *Munſter*. It produces Plenty of Corn and Flax; but its chief Trade, or rather Buſineſs at preſent, is the Entertainment of Travellers; it being a common Stage for Travellers from *Cleve* and the *Netherlands*, to *Brandenburg* and *Brunſwick*. 2. *Werden*, on the River *Roer*, ten Miles North Eaſt of *Duſſeldorp*, remarkable only for curing and tranſporting great Quantities of Bacon. 3. *Soeſt*, an *Imperial* City, and the largeſt in *Weſtphalia* except *Munſter*. It contains ten Pariſhes, and is under the Juriſdiction of the Archbiſhop of *Cologn*. *Dortmond* is ſaid by ſome to be the Capital of *Marck*. It is a ſmall but populous City on the River *Empſter*, thirty five Miles to the Southward of *Munſter*. The King of *Pruſſia* claims the Sovereignty of it. *Marck*.

THE County of *Ravenſburg* lies between *Oſnaburg* on the North, and *Lippe* on the South. It be- *Ravenſburg*

belongs to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, as does alſo the Dutchy of *Minden*, which was given him with *Halberſtat*, and ſome other Territories, by the Treaty of *Munſter*, *Anno* 1648. Chief Town is, 1. *Minden* the Capital, ſituate on the Weſt Banks of the *Weſer*, thirty five Miles Eaſt of *Oſnaburg*. It was a large rich City and a Biſhop's See at the Reformation, but ſecular'd at the Treaty of *Munſter*, and the Revenues of the Biſhoprick appropriated to the Uſe of the Elector of *Brandenburg* its Sovereign, under the Title of Duke of *Minden*.

Minden.

Lippe.

Lippe, is a little County betwcen the Dutchy of *Weſtphalia* and the County of *Ravensburg*. Chief Towns are, 1. *Diethmond*, where the eldeſt Branch of the Family reſides. It is but a ſmall Place, and has little Trade, but what is occaſion'd by the Reſidence of the Court. 2. *Lippe* upon the River *Lippe*, twenty Miles Weſt of *Paderborn*. Its chief Trade is in Timber and Plank, for building Ships and Barges on the *Rhine*. 3. *Lemgow*, on the River *Pega*, fifteen Miles North of *Paderborn*. It is in a plentiful Country abounding with Corn.

Pyrmont

The County of *Pyrmont*, whoſe chief Town is of the ſame Name, ſixteen Miles to the Eaſtward of *Lemgow*, is famous only for its Mineral Waters, which cauſe a great Reſort thither, and are exported to moſt Parts of *Europe*. The County of *Ritburg* is now annex'd to that of *Lippe*.

Schawenburg

The County of *Schawenburg* is ſurrounded on all Sides, except the Weſt, by the Dominions of *Brunſwick*. It affords Plenty of Corn and Paſture; and is well water'd with the *Weſer*, the *Hammel*, the *Awe*, the *Caſpaw*, and the *Exter*, and *Stenhuddeſee* Lake, of five Miles long and two broad; yields Plenty of Fiſh, eſpecially Perch. They have Plenty of Salt, Timber, Coals, Allum, Chalk, Veniſon, and Free-ſtone ſo good, and ſo plenty, that it is exported to *Holland*, *Flanders*, and other Places. The chief Place is *Schawenburg*, on the Eaſt Side of the River *Weſer*, ſixteen Miles Eaſt of *Minden*. The County of *Hoy* on the North Side of *Minden*, belongs to His preſent Majeſty of *Great Britain*, as Duke of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*; as does alſo the County of *Diepholt* on the Eaſt Side of the County of *Munſter*. The Counties of *Oldenburg* and *Delmonhorſt*, lie Weſt and South Weſt from *Bremen*; but they do not contain any Thing worth particular Notice.

Oldenburg and Delmonhorſt

The County of *Embden*, by ſome call'd Eaſt *Friſland*, has *Oldenburg* on the Eaſt, and the *German* Ocean on the North. It was made a Province of *Germany* by *Charles* the Great. Chief Towns are, *Embden* the Capital, near the Mouth of the River *Ems* or *Ems* in *Dollart* Bay, about ſixty Miles to the Weſtward of *Bremen*. It is a populous City, and has a commodious Harbour, and a good Trade. And here the *Engliſh* had a Mart for Cloth, till upon ſome Diſguſt it was remov'd to *Hamburg*. 2. *Aurich*, ten Miles North Eaſt of *Embden*. Here are annually ſeven great Fairs for Cattle. Here is held the ſupreme Court of Judicature for the whole County.

Bentheim

The County of *Bentheim*, lies between the *United Provinces* on the North, and *Steinfort* on the South. The chief, or rather the only Town of any Note, is *Bentheim*, the Seat of their Counts, about thirty Miles North Weſt of *Munſter*. The County of *Steinfort* lies to the Southward of *Bentheim*. Chief Town is *Bechſtenfort* on the River *Aa*, fifteen Miles North Weſt of *Munſter*.

Lingen

The County of *Lingen* lies on the Eaſt of *Bentheim*. The chief Town is *Lingen* on the River *Ems*, forty Miles North of *Munſter*. The County of *Tecklenburg* lies on the Weſt of *Oſnaburg*, but is ſubject to the Counts of *Bentheim*. The Capital of the ſame Name with the County is a large open Town, about ten Miles to the Weſtward of *Oſnaburg*.

Tecklenburg

The Abbacy of *Corbey*, lies between *Paderborn* on the Weſt, and the River *Weſer* on the Eaſt. The Town of *Corbey* where the Abbey is, ſtands on the Bank of the *Weſer*, twenty five Miles to the Eaſtward of *Paderborn*. This with the whole Territory is ſubject to the Abbot, who is a Prince of the Empire.

Corbey

The Circle of *Burgundy*, containing the ſeventeen Provinces of the *Netherlands* and the *Franche County*, being no ſubject to other Princes, and independant of the Empire, ſhall be ſpoke of in its Place hereafter; and yet as it was one of the ten Circles of the Empire, I ſhall inſert it in the following Abſtract of the Matriculation, to ſhow what it amongſt the Reſt contributed in Forces, or Money in Lieu of them, towards the Defence or Support of the Empire.

The Matriculation-Book is a Regiſter kept by the Chancellor of the Empire, the Elector of *Mentz*, containing the Names of all the Princes and States who are Members of the Empire, with the Time of their Inveſtiture, the Forces and Treaſure every one is obliged to contribute for the Defence or Support of it, as alſo the Admiſſion of all Perſons into Honours or Offices, or any Thing elſe material, relating to the Affairs of the Empire.

An Account of what Forces, or Money in Lieu of them, every Circle was obliged to contribute towards the Defence and Support of the Empire; wherein obſerve, That every *German* Florin is forty Pence Sterling, which is double the *French* Florin or Livre.

	Horſe.	*Foot.*		*Flor.*
The Circle of *Auſtria*	174	907	or	5714
Of *Bavaria*	231	1060		6934
Of *Franconia*	249	1219		8100
Of *Upper Saxony*	278	1167		7972
Of *Lower Saxony*	321½	1053½		8992
Of *Suabia.*	341	2100½		12623
Of the *Upper Rhine*	433	1950		12280
Of the *Lower Rhine*	190½	885½		5828
Of *Weſtphalia*	309	2019		8964
Of *Burgundy*	180	831		5484
	2707.	13192½.		82891.

Of the Forces which the ſeveral Princes of the Empire are able to maintain and pay, by a moderate Computation made by the Author of the Atlas Hiſtorique; *and firſt of the Eccleſiaſtical Princes:*

	Men.
The Elector of *Mentz*	6000
The Elector of *Treves*	6000
The Elector of *Cologn*	6000
The Biſhop of *Munſter*	8000
The Biſhop of *Liege*	8000
The Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*	8000
The Biſhop of *Wirtzburg*	2000
The Biſhop of *Bamburg*	5000
The Biſhop of *Paderborn*	3000
The Biſhop of *Oſnaburg*	2500
The Abbot of *Fulda*	6000
The other Biſhopricks of the Empire	6000
The Abbies and Provoſtſhips of the Empire	8000
Total of the Eccleſiaſtical Princes	74500

The

The Temporal Princes of the Empire.

	Men.
The Emperor for *Hungary*	30000
—— For *Bohemia*, *Silesia*, and *Moravia*	30000
—— For *Austria* and his other Dominions	30000
The King of *Prussia*	40000
The Elector of *Saxony*	25000
The Elector *Palatine*	15000
The Duke of *Wirtemburg*	15000
The Landgrave of *Hesse Cassel*	15000
The Prince of *Baden*	10000
The Elector of *Brunswick*	30000
The Duke of *Holstein*	12000
Carried over	252000

	Men.
Brought over	252000
The Duke of *Mecklenburg*	15000
The Prince of *Anhalt*	6000
The Prince of *Lawenburg*	6000
The Elector of *Bavaria*	30000
The Duke of *Saxony*	10000
The Prince of *Nassau*	10000
The other Princes and Imperiat Towns	50000
The Secular Princes	379000
Eccleſiaſtical Princes as above	74500
Total	453500

A DESCRIPTION OF THE *NETHERLANDS.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Netherlands *in general; with an Account how the seven* United Provinces *were first form'd into a distinct State separate from the other ten.*

THE next that falls under our Consideration in our Progress to the Westward, is the seventeen Provinces of the *Netherlands*, or *Low Countries*, so call'd from their low Situation at the Mouths of several great Rivers: The Maritime Provinces of which, were like one continu'd Morass, till drain'd of late Years by those numerous People who retir'd hither for Shelter from their oppressing and persecuting Princes.

Boundaries

THESE Provinces are bounded on the North by the *German* Ocean; and on the East by the Circle of *Westphalia*, the Bishopricks of *Triers* and *Liege*, and the Dutchies of *Cleves* and *Juliers*; by *France* and *Lorrain* on the South, and by the *British* Seas and Part of *France* on the West and South-west. This Country in its full Extent, reaches from the Borders of *Picardy* on the South, to the Mouth of the River *Emes* on the North, all along that Sea Coast.

Belgia.

THIS is the antient *Belgia*, so call'd from the *Bellovaci*, who it is supposed were the most considerable People here when *Cæsar* wrote, and probably had the Dominion of the Rest of those Provinces; but they were afterwards divided between *Gaul* and *Germany*. Those on the South West of the *Rhine* to the former, and those on the North East to the latter; but those on the South West of the *Rhine*, were with the Rest of *Gaul* subdu'd to the Obedience of the Roman Empire by *Julius Cæsar*; and afterwards the *Batavi*, the *Hollanders* and *Zealanders*, submitted also in Form, but were look'd upon rather as Allies than Subjects. When the *Franks* in *Germany* establish'd a new Kingdom in *Gaul*, these Provinces were united to it at first; but when *France* and *Germany* were separated, most of them fell to *Germany*.

THE Northern Nations having broke in upon the *Roman* Empire, and extended themselves beyond the *Rhine*, they by their Marches and Counter-marches so walled that Tract of Land now called the *Low Countries*, in their Passage through them to greater Conquests, that the Inhabitants neglected the Cultivation of their Ground, and supported themselves by Hunting and Violence rather than by Labour and Industry; which indeed was in vain, when the Fruits of their Endeavours were either destroy'd upon the Ground, or reap'd by others before they could have any Benefit of it themselves. And by this Means in Process of Time, their low Ground became Marshes, and the higher Ground Forests or wild Commons; insomuch that *Flanders*, which included most of the Provinces belonging to *Gaul*, was for many Years before *Charles* the Great, one continu'd Forest; and *Holland*, then call'd *Batavia*, being an Island made by the Branches of the *Rhine*, was then only a great Marsh or Fen, and reckoned to belong to *Germany*, because it was first planted by the *Catti*, an antient People of *Germany*. But this Island in all Probability chang'd its Inhabitants and Customs by the Incursions of the Northern Nations, but chiefly of the *Danes* and *Normans*; from whose Countries, Language, and Manners, the Names and Customs of *Holland* and *Zealand* seem to be deriv'd.

WHEN the *Franks* had conquer'd *Gaul*, they gave most of the Lands among the Generals and other Officers; upon one of whom they bestow'd a great Part of the *Low Countries*, and gave him the Title of *Forester* of *Flanders*. This Office continuing through several Descents, they in a great Measure suppress'd the Robbers and Banditti, who infested the Country, and brought the Inhabitants to some Measure of Civility. After this, *Flanders* was made a County, and the Title of *Forester* was chang'd to that of *Count* or *Earl*; the Succession still continuing in the same Line as when they were call'd *Foresters*.

ANOTHER Constitution which those Northern People establish'd wherever they gain'd Dominion, was erecting three Estates or Orders, *viz.* Nobility, Clergy, and common People, under the limited Sovereignty of one Person, with the Title of King, Prince, Duke, or Count; which Government continued till the *Spaniards* endeavour'd to subvert it. Several other Privileges were granted to the Cities and inferior Districts of this Country by their Princes; such as the Choice of their Magistrates, civil Judicature, and Exclusion of all Foreigners from Places of Trust or Profit, an Exemption from all Taxes and Impositions but what were agreed to by the States, and their Princes also agreed amongst themselves never to introduce foreign Troops among them.

THE Provinces which enjoy'd these great Privileges and Immunities, were, 1. *Brabant*. 2. *Limburg*. 3. *Luxemburg*. 4. *Guelderland*, every one of these was a Dukedom. 5. *Flanders*. 6. *Artois*. 7. *Hai-*

7 *Hainault.* 8. *Holland.* 9. *Zealand.* 10. *Namur.* 11. *Zutphen.* These were Earldoms. 12. *Friezland.* 13. *Mechlin.* 14. *Utrecht.* 15. *Overyssel.* 16. *Groningen.* These were call'd Lordships. And, 17. *Antwerp*, was call'd a Marquisate of the *Holy Roman Empire.* These in Processes of Time, by Deaths, Conquests, Inter-marriages, Contracts, or the like, became all united under one Head; and were from thence, as at this Day, call'd the seventeen *United Provinces.*

They were first united in the House of *Burgundy*, under *Philip* surnam'd the Good, about the Year 1430. He enjoy'd the Provinces with his respective Titles to them, of Duke of *Brabant*, Earl of *Flanders*, &c. as above recited. He was succeeded by his Son *Charles Anno* 1467. on whom devolv'd the Dutchies of *Guelderland* and *Zutphen*; but *Charles* being kill'd in a Battle against the *Switzers Anno* 1475. left Issue only one Daughter, *Mary*, who was married to *Maximilian* of *Austria*, Son to the Emperor *Frederick* III. to whom he succeeded *Anno* 1482. *Maximilian* and *Mary* had *Philip*, who married *Joan*, the Daughter and Heiress of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, King and Queen of *Spain.* Their Son *Charles* succeeded to the Dutchy of *Burgundy* (of which the *Low Countries* were a Part) in the Right of his Father, *Anno* 1506. He afterwards, *Anno* 1516. succeeded to the Kingdom of *Spain* in the Right of his Mother, and to the Empire *Anno* 1519. by the Name of *Charles* V. [*See* Germany, *Chap.* IV. *Pag.* 481.] making the abovemention'd Countries an additional Circle, by the Name of the Circle of *Burgundy*; which with the Circles of *Franconia*, *Bavaria*, *Suabia*, the *Upper Rhine*, *Westphalia*, *Lower Saxony*, *Upper Saxony*, *Austria*, and the *Lower Rhine*, before mention'd, may be call'd the ten Circles of the Empire.

These Provinces being extremely well situate for Trade, increas'd their Correspondence, and extended their Commerce far and near; insomuch that by Degrees, *Bruges*, *Ghent*, and *Antwerp*, became the great Marts of *Europe.* But in Time their Prosperity was in some Measure eclips'd; as by *Charles* the Hardy, when engag'd in a War against *France.* He brought his auxiliary *Switzers* among them, who demanding larger Taxes than they had paid formerly or were willing to pay, occasion'd Murmuring and Discontent among them. The Emperor *Maximilian* also brought *German* Troops among them into the *Low Countries*, on Pretence of defending them, or rather securing them against *France*; as did the Emperor *Charles* V. with his *Spaniards*, *Germans*, and *Italians*, on the like Pretence; but he being well belov'd for his generous Temper, and being a Native, and vers'd in their Customs, *&c.* they did not express much Dislike either at the Number of foreign Troops kept up in the *Low Countries*, or at the Taxes which were levy'd to maintain them.

In this contented Situation he resign'd his Dominions, leaving the *Low Countries* to his Son *Philip* II. But *Philip* soon determin'd to retire to *Spain*, and leave the *Low Countries* to the Care of a Vice-Roy, though it had till the Time of *Charles* V. been the constant Residence of their Princes. But *Philip* being a *Spaniard* born, would not lose an Inch of his Height or Pride; and although he could not reach arbitrary Power, yet even when in *Flanders*, he took none but only *Spaniards* into his Council, and continued his *Spanish* and *Italian* Forces on Foot, and insisted upon Supplies for their Maintenance, after the Peace was concluded with *France*, in the same Manner as when the Wars continued; by which Means he soon ceas'd to be belov'd by his Subjects, whilst he on the other Hand thinking himself above taking notice of the Grievances of so inconsiderable a People, which created in them so great a Dislike against his Person and Administration, as rendred them ripe for a Revolt from his Government.

William the (then) Prince of *Orange*, finding King *Philip* inclin'd, or rather resolv'd, to go to *Spain*, and trust the Government of the *Netherlands* with a Regent, immediately propos'd to King *Philip*, to have *Christiana* Dutchess of *Lorrain* advanc'd to that great Trust; he hoping to marry her Daughter, and by that Means to procure himself to have the Direction of the Government: But he miscarried in both; for King *Philip* constituted the Dutchess of *Parma*, who was his Sister, Regent of the *Netherlands*; and as to the Match, he never could be prevail'd upon to consent to the Match of the Prince of *Orange* with the Dutchess of *Lorrain's* Daughter; and these Disappointments so irritated him, that his Mind was set upon nothing so much as meditating Revenge.

On the other hand, the Counts *Egmont* and *Hoorn*, and many of the Nobility, were very much disturb'd to see the *Spaniards* promoted to the most profitable Posts, and influencing all his Councils; as were his Clergy, for his taking away the Revenues of the Abbeys, and endowing fourteen new Bishopricks of his own erecting with their Revenues. Another Occasion of Disturbance, was many of the *Flemings* renouncing the Popish Religion; some of them embracing *Luther's* Doctrine, some *Calvin's*, some the *Anabaptists*, &c. which *Charles* V. first, and his Son *Philip* after him, endeavour'd to extirpate under the Name of Heresies; in order to which he propos'd the setting up a Court of Justice like that of the *Spanish* Inquisition; wherein the Reputation, Estates, and Lives, were in the Hands of merciless and mercenary Priests, who could punish any upon Suspicion, without letting them know either the Crime that they were to suffer for, or the Person by whom they were accused.

About this Time a religious War broke out in *France*, and at this same Time was the bloody Persecution of the Protestants in *England* in Queen *Mary's* Reign; upon both which Occasions, Numbers of Protestants from both Places fled to the *Netherlands* for Shelter, and carrying their Fortunes along with them, they found an agreeable Welcome and gain'd many Proselytes; which so nettled the Judges of the Inquisition, that they exerted their utmost Authority to suppress the Growth of Protestantism by the severest Punishments. And this the more terrify'd the *Flemings*, because in this Court none of their Privileges could protect them, nor could the Intercession of the Grandees, or even the Indulgence of the King, stand them in any Stead.

Philip II. being gone into *Spain*, the Regency and Council play'd their Severities against the Heretics as they call'd the Protestants; which being complain'd of to the King, he would not remit any Thing of the Rigour he had order'd to be exercis'd against them. And it was suppos'd that he and *Charles* IX. of *France* had agreed between themselves to extirpate all Protestants out of their Dominions.

When the *Flemings* and the other Protestants among them found their Case thus desperate, they came to a Resolution to oppose the *Spanish* Court to the utmost of their Power; in order to which they enter'd into an Association which they called a Compromise, in which they engag'd themselves to suppress the Inquisition, and to stand by each other in the Defence of their Religion. The Heads of them met at *Brussels*, and deliver'd a Petition to the Regent; praying that the Proclamation against their Religion might be recall'd:

An Insurrection.

She

She courteously promis'd them to know the King's Pleasure in the Affair, but in the mean time they were represented to her by some of her Parasites as *Gueses*, or Beggars; but they finding the King inexorable in Point of Religion, would not be put off any longer, but assembled in a tumultous Manner, and plunder'd the Churches, broke down the Images, &c. But the Regent having rais'd some Troops, she partly by Threats, and partly by fair Words, perswaded some of them to make their Submission to the King; and those that refus'd, were either exemplarily punish'd or forc'd totly into foreign Countries.

The Regent endeavour'd to perswade his Catholick Majesty to come in Person into the *Netherlands*, as supposing that his Presence might bring them to Obedience; but instead of fair Means or any Redress of their Grievances, he sent the Duke *D'Alva* with a Body of veteran Troops from *Italy* to the *Netherlands*, where he took the Earls of *Egmont* and *Hoorn* into Custody as Ring-leaders of the late Insurrection, and as such charg'd them with high Treason. He then erected a Court of Justice, consisting of twelve Judges for the Trial of those Criminals, as they were call'd; amongst which, the Prince of *Orange* and some other Lords were summon'd; who not appearing, they were declar'd Traytors, and their Estates confiscated; which so terrify'd the Inhabitants, that many of them were glad to escape into foreign Countries.

In the mean Time, the Prince of *Orange* had rais'd a considerable Force in *Germany*, with which he dispatch'd his Brother *Lewis* into *Friezland*, where he defeated the Governor of that Province; but *D' Alva* having secur'd the Earls of *Hoorn* and *Egmont* by beheading them, he march'd against *Lewis*; and having routed his Troops, fell upon the Prince of *Orange*, who had invaded *Brabant*, and entirely dispers'd his Forces, and levy'd unreasonable Taxes upon the Inhabitants; which while he was doing, he receiv'd Advice that the exil'd *Flemings* had turn'd Privateers; and with twenty four Ships, commanded by the Earl of *March*, had taken the City of *Brill* in *Holland*, and that many other Towns in *Holland* had revolted from the *Spaniards*; for notwithstanding *D' Alva's* Success by Land, he had made no Provision for the Security of the Sea Coast.

The revolted Towns chose the Prince of *Orange* for their General, and swore Allegiance to him as Stadtholder, who was assisted by Privateers from *England* and *France*; insomuch, that in four Months Time they made up a Fleet of an hundred and fifty Sail, who had their Rendezvouz at *Flushing*, and distress'd the *Spaniards* more than all the Forces by Land.

About this Time the Earl of *Bergh* took several Places in *Guelderland*, *Friesland*, and *Overyssel*; and *Lewis* of *Nassau*, with the Help of the *French*, surpriz'd the City of *Mons*. *D' Alva* re-took *Mechlin* and *Zutphen*; he also took *Naerden* and *Haerlem*, but used the poor Victims with such Barbarity, that the *Spanish* Court thought fit to call him home about the Year 1573.

Lewis Requesens was then entrusted with the Government of the *Netherlands*, and found the City of *Middleburgh* besieg'd by the Prince of *Orange*. *Requesens* sent a Fleet to its Relief, but they were soon destroy'd, and the City surrendred to the Prince of *Orange*.

In this Confusion and Disorder those Provinces of the *Netherlands* continu'd, till the Duke of *Parma* was made Regent, and confirm'd therein by the King of *Spain*. He took *Maestricht*, and by Treaty, brought the Provinces of *Artois*, *Hainault*, and the *Walloon Flanders*, to a Submission to the King of *Spain*. Whereupon the Prince of *Orange*, who perceiv'd so much Difference in Points of Religion, that he despair'd of ever uniting all the Provinces of the *Netherlands* in one Confederacy) apply'd himself chiefly to the Provinces of *Holland*, *Freizland*, *Zealand*, *Guelderland*, and *Utrecht*, over whom he had the greatest Influence; and having procur'd an Assembly of their Deputies or Representatives at *Utrecht*, in the Year 1579. they form'd an Alliance or Confederacy among them, which afterwards obtain'd the Name of the Union of *Utrecht*, and was the Foundation of that State, which is at present known by the Name of the *United Provinces*; and in this Union were afterwards included the Provinces of *Overyssel* and *Groningen*.

The Terms upon which the Union was founded were, That these seven Provinces should be so united, as never to be separated or divided by Testament, Donation, Exchange, Sale, or Agreement; but yet to reserve every one their respective Rights, Liberties, and Customs. And if any Differences should arise in any one of the Provinces, the Rest should not interfere any farther than as Mediators to an Agreement. They also bound themselves to assist one another with their Lives and Fortunes against any Attempts that might be made by any one of the Provinces upon any of the Rest, on Account of Sovereignty, Religion, &c. It was also agreed, that all the frontier Towns included in the Union should be fortify'd at the Charge of the Province in which they were situated; but where new Fortresses were to be erected, it should be done at the publick Charge of all the *United Provinces*; and that the Royal Revenues should be employ'd in their common Defence. That all the Inhabitants of the Provinces, from eighteen to sixty, should be muster'd and disciplin'd; and that neither Peace or War should be concluded, or any Taxes levy'd, without the Consent of all the Provinces. And that all Differences that should arise on any such Occasion, should be submitted to the Stadtholder, to be determin'd. And as to Religion, a free Toleration was to be allow'd, and no Person to be call'd to Account as to his Perswasion. It was also agreed, that the *States* should assemble as usual; and if they should differ in the Interpretation of those Articles, the final Determination should be referr'd to the Stadtholder.

But notwithstanding all this Precaution, in order to an unshaken Establishment, these *United Provinces* were reduc'd to such Distress, that the miserable Condition of their State was represented on a Medal, by a Ship without Sails or Rudder, left to the Mercy of the Waves, with this Inscription, *Incertum quo fata ferant.* Their Epithet then, was not Hogen Mogen, *but the poor distressed States of* Holland.

The Original of the United Provinces

At the same Time the Emperor was mediating a general Peace in a Treaty at *Cologn*, which the Prince of *Orange* endeavour'd to destroy in the *Embryo*; assuring himself, that if that Peace should be effected, the *Spaniards* would meditate, and sooner or later execute, Revenge upon him and his Party. The preventing of which, wholly depended upon the confirming and establishing the Union above-mention'd. In order to which, he prevail'd with the *United Provinces* to renounce all Allegiance to his Catholick Majesty; and as an Inducement to this Revolt, he reminded them how the King of *Spain* had violated the Privileges which he had sworn to grant and continue to them. And further observ'd to them, a Stratagem which the King of *Spain* had endeavour'd to put in Execution, which was to perswade them to chuse the Duke of *Alenson* for their Sovereign; he having first made a secret Treaty with the said Duke, That if he could bring him into Possession, they were to share the *Netherlands* between them

them. And this perfidious Deſign of the King of *Spain* to betray the *Netherlands*, ſo exaſperated the States of *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Utrecht*, that they agreed to make the Prince of *Orange* their Soveriegn; and had certainly affected it, if his Death had not prevented it.

THE Duke of *Alenſon* having now little leſs than regal Dignity confer'd upon him, and the *Spaniards* having now beſieg'd *Cambray*, in the Year 1581 he rais'd the Siege, and fluſh'd with this Succeſs, he caus'd himſelf to be proclaim'd Duke of *Brabant* and Earl of *Flanders* at their reſpective Capitals of *Antwerp* and *Ghent*: But this being little better than bare Titles, he reſolved, by the Help of ſome of his *French* Troops, to ſurprize *Antwerp*; but they were expell'd with conſiderable Loſs, as they were in the like raſh and ill-concerted Attempts at ſeveral other Places, though they had better Succeſs at *Dunkirk* and ſome other Places, which amounted to nothing conſiderable. Theſe Diſappointments threw the Duke of *Alenſon* into ſuch Confuſion, that he return'd to *France*, and dy'd in a little time afterwards, and the Duke of *Parma* retook the Towns of *Dunkirk*, *Newport*, and ſeveral other Places, which had declared for the Confederates, and *Ypres* and *Bruges* ſurrender'd, and ſubmitted to him without giving him the Trouble of ſtriking one Stroke.

BUT in the Year 1584 the United Provinces receiv'd a fatal Blow, by the Death of the Prince of *Orange*, who was aſſaſſinated in his Palace at *Delft* by *Balthazar Gerhard*, a *Burgundian*; whereupon the States of *Holland* made his younger Son Prince *Maurice* their Stadtholder, though he was but ſeventeen Years of Age, and the Earl of *Hohenloe* was conſtituted his Lieutenant; but ſo wretchedly were the States of *Holland*, &c. reduced, that they offer'd their Sovereignty of their Provinces to the King of *France*; but he being involv'd in a Civil War, could not aſſiſt them, much leſs defend them; ſo that the Duke of *Parma* taking the Advantage of their Diſtreſs and Weakneſs, reduc'd *Antwerp*, *Ghent*, *Bruſſels*, and ſeveral other Places, to Obedience to King *Philip*, which ſo terrified the United States, that they ſent to implore Help of Queen *Elizabeth* Queen of *England*, in the moſt ſubmiſſive Terms, and offer'd her the Sovereignty of the *Netherlands*, in Lieu of her Protection.

THE Queen would not ſo far engage with them as to accept of the Sovereignty of the *Netherlands*, but ſhe agreed to aſſiſt them with Five Thouſand Foot and a Thouſand Horſe, provided that they, together with the Forces of the States, ſhould be commanded by an *Engliſh* General: Alſo that ſhe would pay her own Forces in Time of War, but ſhe would be repaid in Time of Peace in the following Manner, *viz.* that the Expence of the firſt Year's War, ſhould be repaid in the firſt Year's Peace, and the reſt in four Years afterwards; and that in the mean Time *Fluſhing*, the Iſland of the *Brill*, with the Caſtle of *Ramekin* and the *Halberen*, ſhould be deliver'd up by Way of Security, as cautionary Towns, to be reſtor'd to the States again as ſoon as the Money ſhould be repaid; that equal Number of Ships for their common Defence ſhould be fitted out by both Nations, but be commanded by the Admiral of *England*, with ſome other Articles leſs material.

PURSUANT to this Stipulation, the Queen ſent ſome Troops over to the *Low Countries* under the Command of Sir *John Norris*; but her Favourite the Earl of *Leiceſter* ſoon got that Commiſſion countermanded, and that Command conferr'd upon himſelf, under the Title of *General of the Queen of* England's *Auxiliary Forces*. The *Dutch* receiv'd him with all Marks of Honour and Eſteem, and gave him the Title of his *Excellency*, which encourag'd his Ambition ſo far, that he hop'd ſoon to have the Command and ſole Government of their State, and began to act as if that had really been the Caſe; but he ſoon found himſelf deceiv'd, for in every thing that they diſlik'd, he was contradicted by a Deputation of the States, which when he reſented, they complain'd to the Queen of *England*, alledging that he acted as if he intended to be abſolute, and uſurp the Dominion of their Country.

NOTWITHSTANDING the ſmall Difference and Jealouſies between *Leiceſter* and the States, our *Engliſh* Auxiliaries, being ſent over for their Defence and Aſſiſtance, deliver'd them in a great Meaſure from any Apprehenſions of being ſubdu'd by the *Spaniards*, and conſequently gave them an Opportunity to improve their Foreign Trade, and to encreaſe their Shipping at Home, as well as to extend their Commerce Abroad; and now they begun to retrieve themſelves from their Indigence, and to have Ambition enough to change their Character from *Poor Diſtreſſed* to *High and Mighty States of Holland*.

THESE Complaints coming frequently to her Majeſty, ſhe check'd *Leiceſter* for aſſuming a Power ſhe never intended him, *viz.* the Sovereignty, which ſhe herſelf had refus'd when offer'd her; however, ſhe continued to aſſiſt the States with Men and Money againſt the *Spaniards*, who were ſo diſturb'd at her aſſiſting and ſupplying the States as above, that they reſolv'd to invade her Dominions, and in the Year 1588 they provided a Fleet ſo formidable, that like their wonted Ambition, they call'd it the *Invincible Armada*; but Queen *Elizabeth*, being appriz'd of their Deſign, was the rather willing to aſſiſt the States, that they might do the ſame by her, in Caſe the intended Deſcent of the *Spaniards* ſhould be put in Execution, which accordingly was done, and her Caution prov'd of great Uſe; for when the *Spaniſh* Fleet came upon the *Engliſh* Coaſt, the *Dutch* Ships join'd the *Engliſh* Fleet, and aſſiſted in deſtroying their Grand Fleet, which had been the Care and Expence of many Years. As for the Earl of *Leiceſter*, he was ſo diſturb'd that he could not gain his intended Authority over the *Dutch*, but muſt be contradicted by a clownish People, that he had no Reſpect for, that he reſigned his Command and return'd Home to *England*.

WHEN *Leiceſter* had reſign'd, and was return'd Home, the States created Prince *Maurice*, Son to the late Prince of *Orange*, their Generaliſſimo; and he being entirely confided in by the *Dutch*, and ſupply'd with Money and Recruits by the *Engliſh*, he begun to act with Succeſs againſt the *Spaniards*, and in the Year 1590 he took *Breda* by Stratagem, and in the next Year he reduc'd ſeveral other Places. In the Year 1592 that great *Spaniſh* General, the Duke of *Parma* dy'd; whereupon the *Spaniſh* Forces grew mutinous, and the *Dutch* taking the Advantage of their Diviſions, advanc'd their Conqueſts, with little Oppoſition, taking ſeveral Places; and in the ſame Year 1592 they reduc'd *Groningen*, which made the *United Provinces* more entire and ſecure from the Attacks of Enemies from that Quarter.

IN the Year 1596 King *Philip* made *Albert* Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, Governor of the *Netherlands*, and gave him his Daughter *Iſabella Clara Eugenia* in Marriage, and with her, as a Dowry, he gave *Burgundy* and the *Low Countries*, thinking by this Means to draw the *Hollanders* and the other Confederate Powers over to their Allegiance; but the *Hollanders* having taſted the Sweets of Sovereignty, as well as the Advantage of Trade, and from diſtreſs'd Subjects, being become a High and Mighty State, were not to be allured by an Artifice to loſe the Dominion and Freedom they had

with so much Difficulty acquir'd; and they were the more resolute in maintaining themselves in this free State, from the vast Success they began to meet with in their Attacks of the *Spanish* and *Portuguese* Settlements in the *Indies*; where they found so immense a Treasure, that they grew exceeding rich, though at War with one of the most powerful Monarchs in *Europe*.

The *Spaniard* finding them grow so rich and powerful, and fearing they might grow mischievous in Proportion, they propos'd a Treaty of Peace; but the *Dutch* rejected it, and would scarce hearken to any Terms except the Arch-Duke would first declare that he acknowledg'd them a free independant State; and then he was obliged to condescend to send his Plenipotentiaries to the *Hague*, where they were receiv'd with vast Coolness and Indifferency; for they were not at all inclin'd to treat about Peace, when they had enrich'd themselves so much by plundering their Neighbours; and by their Acquisitions especially in the East, in Times of War; though indeed, War was but an Excuse for them to plunder, with a better Pretence of Authority; for rather than not gratify their voracious Temper, they could plunder as well those that were at Peace with them, and their best Benefactors too: Witness, their Usage of the *ENGLISH* at *AMBOYNA* and other Places, when entirely at Peace with them. [*See the History of the* Oriental Islands, *Chap.* XV. *Pag.* 117.]

But notwithstanding their Haughtiness, there was one Consideration or two help'd to humble them, and one was the growing Greatness of the *French* King; who, if he should make a Conquest of the *Spanish Netherlands*, might next be a troublesome Neighbour to them. And the *Hollanders* being at War with the *Spaniards*, made the *Spaniards* less able to defend the *Spanish Netherlands*; which, if conquer'd, open'd a Way for the *French*, like an Inundation, to flow in upon the *Dutch*. The other was, that Prince *Maurice*, who was their Generalissimo, and exceedingly belov'd, and whose Father was assassinated for his Services to the *States*, might probably, under these Considerations, aspire to the Sovereignty of the Country. These Considerations of continuing the *Spaniard* in a Capacity to defend their own Dominions in the *Netherlands*, and the reducing of Prince *Maurice* from that exalted Pitch of Dignity which he had acquired easily, induced the *Dutch* to make a Truce with the *Spaniards* for twelve Years, and the rather, because neither Party lost by it; for the *Dutch* were to be treated as a free State, and each Party was to remain in the Possession of what Territories they had already taken.

Thus we have seen the Original and Progress of this State, which at first was, in Comparison, like confused Atoms form'd into regular Matter; and yet even then, continued for some Time poor, distressed, and despised; but in the Space of fifty Years, arriv'd to that Pitch of Grandeur, as to rival some of the most formidable Powers in *Europe*, and to dispute the Dominion of the Sea even with *Britain* itself, which first rais'd them from deep Obscurity, and defended them from Destruction by their Enemies. When this is consider'd, together with their barbarous Usage of the *English* at *Amboyna* and other Places in the *East Indies* as above mention'd; and if to this we add their Pyratical Manner of dealing with the *English* at the first Beginning of the *Greenland* Fishery; where they made a Property of the *English* Discoveries and Trade by plain Force; [*See the History of* Greenland, *Chap.* III. *Pag.* 443.] I say, when these Things are rightly consider'd, we may speak of the late acquir'd Grandeur of the *Dutch*, without having much Occasion to boast either of their Gratitude or Justice to their best Benefactors.

CHAP. II.

Of the Situation and Extent of the United Provinces *of the* Netherlands. *Also of their Seas, Harbours, Lakes, Rivers, Dikes, and Canals; and of the Air, Wind, Seasons; and of the Distempers incident to the Inhabitants.*

THE seven *United Provinces* are, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Friezland*, *Groningen*, *Overyssel*, *Gelderland*, and *Zutphen*, together with *Utrecht*. They are bounded on the North and West by the *German* Ocean, and on the East by *Westphalia*; and by *Flanders*, *Brabant*, and the Dutchy of *Cleves* on the South. The Breadth and Length are near equal, *viz.* an hundred and fifty Miles, but this is not all Land; for in this Space is contain'd the *Zuydersee*, which lies between *North Holland* and *Overyssel*; which, with other Seas and Lakes, takes off a considerable Quantity of the Land contain'd in that Space.

The Rivers in *Holland*, and the Sea upon its Coast are in many Places higher than the Land within, and kept off only by Banks made for that Purpose. But the Original of that prepostrous Appearance is uncertain; some say that *Holland*, excluding the Lakes and Rivers, was all marshy Ground, and gain'd by calling up Banks, draining, &c. but others think it has been formerly all firm Land, and by Earthquakes, Inundations, and the like, have been overflow'd and lost, and again by Industry, regain'd; and by banking, preserv'd in the Condition as they appear at this Day. And as it is observ'd that the *Zuyderzee* was never mention'd by the *Romans*, it is supposed that in their Time it was low, marshy Land, like the Rest; and has since by the Violence of the Waves been wash'd away and overflow'd, and so became a Sea, as it now is; and that the Islands ranging before the *Texel*, were once a Part of the main Continent, till the violent Waves prevailing over the lower Parts of the Land, and washing it away, left the higher Land standing, which by the Sea breaking in between, became the Islands that we now see.

The chief Rivers in *Holland* are, 1. The *Rhine*, which has been described as far as *Skenkenschans*, where it enters this Country. [*See* Germany, *Chap.* I. *Pag.* 473.] Here it is divided into two Branches, one of which is still call'd the *Rhine*; and running by *Arnheim*, it meets. 2. The *Leck*, and continues its Course to *Schoonhoven*, and joins the *Maes* a little above *Rotterdam*. 3. The *Waal*, another Branch of the *Rhine*, where it parts at *Skenkenschans*. It runs by *Nimiguen* and *Bommel* to *Gorcum*; and joining the *New Maes*, it passes Rivers.

by

by *Dort*, and joining the *Leck* and the ſmall *Iſſel*, runs down to *Rotterdam*, and is afterwards call'd, 4. The *Maes*, and falls into the Ocean near the *Brill*. 5. The *Yſſel*, which riſes in *Weſtphalia*, and running by *Deventer*; it parts *Gelderland* from *Overyſſel*, and falls into the *Zuyderſee* near *Campen*. 6. The *Scheld* riſes in *Picardy*, runs by *Cambray*, *Valenciennis*, and *Oudenard*, to *Ghent*; where it joins the *Lis*, and falls down to *Dendermond* and *Antwerp*; a little below which, *viz.* at *Santoliet*, it is divided into two Branches, the Eaſtern and Weſtern *Scheld*, or *Hont*, which divides *Flanders* from *Zealand*, and falls into the Sea at *Fluſhing*. The other is the Eaſtern *Scheld*; it runs by *Bergenopzoom*, and falls into the Sea with a rapid Torrent between *Tolen* and South *Beverland*.

The *Zuyderſee* is bounded with the Land on all Sides but the North, upon which are the Iſlands of the *Fly*, the *Schelling*, and the *Ameland*. On the Eaſt of it are the Provinces of *Friezland* and *Gelderland*; and on the South is *Utrecht* and Part of *Holland*; on the Weſt is the *Texel*, and the Reſt of *Holland*. It is about ſeventy Miles long, and between thirty and forty broad, but ſhallow; and the Navigation thereof extremely difficult.

The Dikes or Banks to keep out the Sea, are generally ſeventeen Ells thick at the Bottom, and about ſeven Ells high, (accounting three Quarters of a Yard to an Ell.) The Side towards the Land is made as ſtrong as Wood and Stone can make them, and that Side towards the Sea is cover'd with Matts, Ruſhes, and Sea-Weeds; and ſometimes with Canvas or Sail-Cloth, to prevent the Sea waſhing away the Earth, with which they are fill'd up; and yet notwithſtanding all their Care, they ſometimes ſuffer ſeverely by Inundations, occaſion'd by the breaking of their Banks, as in the Year 1530 a great Part of *Zealand* was overflow'd; and in the Year 1568 it flow'd ſo high as to cover ſome of the Iſlands of *Zealand*, drown'd a great Part of the Coaſt of *Holland*, and almoſt all *Friezland*; ſwallow'd up ſeventy two Villages, and deſtroy'd twenty thouſand People in *Friezland* only; and the Reſt were ſaved by getting up to the Tops of Trees, Houſes, or high Hills. And the like happen'd in the Years 1655 and 1665 at which laſt the Gates and Fortifications of *Naerden* were demoliſh'd, and a ſtrong Rampart of Stone, call'd the *Aſs's Back*, was driven away in a Moment, and a Hole, thirty ſix Feet deep left in the Place where it ſtood. It would be needleſs to repeat the innumerable Inundations which have happen'd there; but it may be well worth while to obſerve, in how ſhort a Time they repair their Dikes, and drain their floating Country by the Help of Wind-Mills; of which they have great Plenty for that Purpoſe. And indeed it is very ſurprizing to ſee, how after the greateſt Floods, when Part of the Coaſt and Country ſeems irrecoverably loſt, they do with incredible Expedition throw out the Water, and repair their Dikes, and make the Country recover much the ſame Face as it had before.

There are but very few good Harbours in *Holland*, in Compariſon to the vaſt Trade they have, and the Plenty of Ships of their own, as well as the great Reſort of Shipping from other Places. The beſt Harbours indeed are *Fluſſing*, *Helvoetſluys*, and *Rotterdam*: For *Amſterdam*, although it may be ſaid to be one of the greateſt trading Ports in *Europe*, yet it is one of the moſt incommodious Havens; and upon ſuch, ſhallow Water, that Ships of any great Burthen cannot come at it but at high Water; nor can Veſſels of great Burthen come up to it at all without diſcharging all, or a great Part of their Loading.

But notwithſtanding their great Art in draining, there are many and very conſiderable Lakes in the *United Provinces*; the chief of which is *Harlem Meer*, which extends almoſt from *Amſterdam* to *Leyden*, being ſixteen or eighteen Miles long, and eight or nine broad. This Lake continually gains and encroaches upon the Land that encloſes it, which has occaſion'd a Propoſal for the draining of it, but it has not yet appear'd practicable; and the rather, becauſe the Ground lies ſo low, that it is much eaſier to cut Canals, and make new Conveyances by Water, than it is to drain the Ground, or remove the Lakes and Canals that Nature has originally form'd; theſe being now ſo common, eſpecially with a little Improvement, that there is ſcarce a Town or Village, nay, a good Farm-houſe, but what has a Canal cut up to it, upon which Boats or ſmall Veſſels ſail to their reſpective Places; and the white Sails of the Veſſels appear at a ſmall Diſtance, as if they were ſailing through the Woods, or upon the Land, (the Canals lying ſo low, and being ſo narrow, as not to be ſeen till you come very near them) which affords a very agreeable Proſpect.

The Seas, Rivers, and Canals, afford Plenty of Fiſh of their reſpective Kinds; but as for Herrings, Oyſters, and many other Sorts of Shell-Fiſh, they are obliged to the Seas upon the *Britiſh* Coaſt for; and, like their wonted Behaviour in the *Eaſt Indies*, *Greenland*, &c. already treated of in this Book, they make no Conſcience as to whoſe Property it is, if they can but engroſs the Benefit.

It may be thought ſurprizing, that the Froſts ſhould be ſo much more ſevere and of longer Continuance in *Holland* than in *England*, though much in the ſame Latitude, and the Eaſt and North Eaſt Winds more cold and pinching there than here; but this is eaſily accounted for when we conſider, that thoſe Winds come over a long Tract of frozen Continent directly to *Holland*; but is moiſtened and ſoftened by the Vapours of the Sea before it arrives at us in *England*. And this is the Reaſon that their Harbous are commonly ſhut up by the Froſt in the Winter Time when ours are open.

It is not ſo much imputed to Induſtry as to Neceſſity, that they keep their Houſes and Streets ſo clean; for if they did not, the Moiſtneſs and Fogginеſs of the Air, occaſion'd by their marſhy Situation, would cauſe [illegible] breathe to corrupt and become infectious, as appears by the Rotting and Corruption which their Metals contract, and the ſudden Mouldineſs of their wooden Veſſels, &c. if not almoſt perpetually rubb'd and kept clean. And yet notwithſtanding this Care, it is generally obſerved that they are not a long-liv'd People, which doubtleſs is in a great Meaſure owing to the Groſſneſs of the Air, as abovemention'd. But ſome add as another Reaſon, the little Care they take of their Sick; and this ſome impute to their abſolute Belief of Predeſtination, and that *if the Perſon be ordain'd to die, it is in vain to uſe any Means to preſerve or prolong Life.* I might add indeed, that if their Belief of Predeſtination be ſo abſolute as to exclude all Means for Preſervation of Life, Victuals and Drink would in this Caſe be rendred as uſeleſs as Phyſick; but if their Opinion of Predeſtination allow of Means proper to be uſed to attain the End or Deſign appointed, it becomes conditional, and conſequently cannot be abſolute. But another Reaſon which ſome aſſign for the Neglect of their Sick, is their eager Purſuit of Trade and Buſineſs; as if that was to be preferr'd to every Thing, and even Life itſelf. And another Thing that may probably contribute to the Shortneſs of their Lives, may be their eating ſo much ſalted and dry'd Fleſh and Fiſh, and drinking ſo much Brandy and Geneva; to which if we add their un-

unactive Way of travelling, which is moſt commonly perform'd without walking, or riding on Horſe-back, *viz.* by being drawn upon the Canals by Water in cover'd Boats in the Summer, and upon the Ice in Winter; either of which Motions gives but little Exerciſe to the Body; and doubtleſs theſe Circumſtances of Situation, Eating, Drinking, Exerciſe, *&c.* muſt contribute to the filling them full of groſs Humours. But let whatever be the Cauſe of it, the natural Shortneſs of their Lives may be eaſily inferr'd from the Remarks of Sir *William Temple*, who endeavouring to prove that the *Hague* is the beſt Air in *Holland*, aſſigns as a Reaſon for his Opinion, that he never ſaw two Men above ſeventy Age; which by his Way of expreſſing it, intimates that few there arrive at that Age.

CHAP. III.

Of the particular Provinces and chief Towns; and of their Buildings, Furniture, &c.

THE Province of *Holland* is the chief of all the ſeven, and in ſome Reſpects equal to the other ſix. It extends from the *Texel* on the North, to *Brabant* and *Zealand* on the South; and from the *Zuyderſee* and *Utrecht* on the Eaſt, to the *German* Ocean on the Weſt; but it is divided into South *Holland* and North *Holland* by the River *Y* or *Ty*. Chief Towns in South *Holland* are,

1. *Amſterdam*, the Capital of *Holland* and the ſeven Provinces. It is more properly call'd *Amſteldam*, as ſtanding upon the River *Amſtel*, which runs North through *Amſterdam*, and falls into the River, or rather Arm of the Sea call'd *Ty*, which is on the North Side of *Amſterdam*; and for a large, but not very deep or commodious Harbour, the Place where it ſtands is a Moraſs or Bog, and the Foundation is laid upon Piles of Timber drove into the Ground. The firſt authentick Account that we meet with in Hiſtory, is, that about the Year 1300 it was a poor Fiſher's Village, and that in little more than forty Years, it was increas'd to a conſiderable Town on the Eaſt Side of the *Amſtel*; and about the Year 1400 there began to be Buildings alſo on the Weſt Side of the *Amſtel*; and in the Year 1482 it was become ſuch a conſiderable Place, that Princeſs *Mary* of *Burgundy* encompaſs'd it with a ſtrong Wall. In the Year 1585 it was further enlarged, and became the chief Town of Trade in thoſe Provinces. And in 1656 it was ſurrounded with a new Wall, and it is now ſuppoſed to ſtand upon about half as much Ground as *London* and *Weſtminſter*. The Houſes are generally of Brick or Stone, the Streets neatly pav'd, with Canals in the Middle of many of them, with handſome Rows of Trees on the Sides of them, and Stone Bridges over them.

THERE are ſometimes fifteen or ſixteen hundred Veſſels in the Harbour intended for the *Baltick* only, beſides all others bound to, or come from other Places; and yet notwithſtanding the Place is ſo populous, there is not above thirteen Churches belonging to the *Calviniſts*, which is the eſtabliſh'd Religion there. There is alſo one *Engliſh* Church, two *French*, and one *High Dutch*, but all Presbyterians, and their Preachers maintain'd by the Government. The Papiſts have private Chapels or Meeting-houſes. They have alſo a Square in the Town inhabited by Nuns, but they may leave their Cloiſters and marry when they pleaſe. The Roman Catholick Religion is of all others the leaſt encourag'd here, inſomuch that their Chapels are ſometimes ſhut up. It is ſuppos'd by Computation, that the *Jews*, *Armenians*, *Lutherans*, Anabaptiſts, Quakers, and *Engliſh* Independants, make up a third Part of the Town; the Roman Catholicks another, and the Presbyterians (the eſtabliſh'd Religion) the other third Part of the Town.

THEIR Churches are for the moſt Part handſome Buildings, eſpecially that of St. *Catherine*'s, which though burnt down in the Year 1645, yet is ſince rebuilt, and is now a magnificent Structure. The Painting of the Windows is excellently fine; the Pulpit, for Carving and other Workmanſhip, is accounted a Maſter-piece of its Kind; and the Organ is ſaid to be the largeſt and beſt in *Europe*, and is ſupported by marble Pillars. The Partition between the Church and the Chancel is all of poliſh'd Braſs kept very clean and bright.

THE Stadt-houſe is an oblong Building of free Stone; the Front extends two hundred and eighty two Feet, and the Breadth and Depth is two hundred and thirty Feet. There is above thirteen thouſand vaſt Piles of Wood drove into the Ground to make a ſolid Foundation. There is abundance of fine carv'd Work about it, eſpecially that in the Middle of the Front over the Cornice, which is of fine Marble, eighty two Feet long, and eighteen Feet high; where the City of *Amſterdam* is repreſented by a Woman with *Neptune* on her Right Hand, and two Sea Nymphs offering her the Fruits of the Earth; on her Left, are two *Nayades* preſenting her with Laurels and Palms; and before her, two Tritons dancing and ſounding their Horns. There are other curious Embelliſhments; one in particular is an *Atlas*, bearing a Globe of ten Feet Diameter, and ſeveral other Emblematical Figures. In the Middle of the Building is a handſome round Tower, which riſes fifty Feet above the Roof; and in it there is a fine Chime of Bells, for they cannot be call'd a Ring of Bells, becauſe in any Part of the *Low Countries* they never ring their Bells out as in *England*, but chime all Manner of Tunes on their Feſtivals and rejoicing Days.

THE Burghers Hall in the Stadt-houſe is an hundred and twenty Feet long, fifty ſeven broad, and ninety eight high, and is pav'd with fine Marble; and on the Top of the Houſe are eight large Ciſterns of Water, with Pipes laid from them to every Room in the Houſe in Caſe of Fire; to prevent which, the Chimneys are lin'd with Copper. There is upon a Pedeſtal a Latin Inſcription, importing, that the firſt Stone of this Building was laid *October* 28. 1648. but ſome obſerve that it is not yet finiſh'd, and impute that Delay to their Belief of an old Prophely, that when their Stadt-houſe ſhall be finiſh'd their State ſhall begin to decline; but let every Reader regard that as he pleaſes.

THERE are many other publick Buildings in *Amſterdam*, as the Admiralty-Office, the Exchange, the *Eaſt India* Houſe; alſo Hoſpitals for Widows, Orphans, and even Baſtards too; and for Sick, Aged, and Mad-men; the Houſe of Correction, Work-houſe, *&c.* that it is ſaid, that in

their

their Hospitals, and Buildings of that Kind, there are not less than twenty thousand People maintain'd; and most of their Buildings of that Kind are very grand, as it is indeed in many Cases in *London*; witness, *Bethlem*, St. *Thomas*'s, &c. and for the Maintenance, they oblige the Play-houses to pay half their Gains; also Rope-dancers, Puppet-players, Juglers, &c. pay one third of their Income to the Poor; also every Person that passes through a Gate after Candle-light pays a Penny to that Fund. They have also Poors-Boxes hung at almost every House in the City, which every one as they are dispos'd put Money in; but especially upon a great Sale of Goods, or a good Bargain, or the like, they express their Gratitude by putting Money into one or other of these Boxes; and the Deacons go about once a Quarter to take the Money out of them and deposit it in a proper Place. There are also, twice a Week, Men deputed to go round the City with a Bell to ask Charity for the Maintenance of those Hospitals; and if all this falls short, the Defect is supply'd out of the publick Revenue.

The next is *Haerlem*, twelve Miles to the Westward of *Amsterdam*; between it and the Sea from it is about four Miles to the Eastward. The Buildings are of Brick, the Streets wide and straight, and Canals in the Middle of many of them as at *Amsterdam*. The Cathedral Church is now esteem'd the largest and most beautiful in *Holland*. Their chief Manufactures are Silk, Velvet, and Linen, in which last they excel. Here dwelt *Laurence Coster*, to whom the *Dutch* would gladly ascribe the Invention of *Printing*; but the Citizens of *Mentz* in *Germany* dispute it with them. [*See Chap.* III. *of* Germany.] To the Southward of this Town lies the Lake call'd *Haerlem Mer*, which extends almost as far East as *Amsterdam*, and South as *Leyden*; but it is shallow and dangerous for the Passage-Boats, which was the Occasion of their cutting Canals from *Haerlem* to *Amsterdam* and *Leyden*; by way of which, People can travel with all the Ease and Safety imaginable.

Rotterdam is accounted the chief Town for Trade next to *Amsterdam*. It stands on the North Side of the *Maes*, about thirty Miles to the Southward of *Amsterdam*. It is a large populous City, and commodious for Trade, the Canals bringing the Ships up to their very Doors. And, which is another great Advantage, the River *Maes*, by which the Ships come up from the *Brel* to *Rotterdam*, is much sooner open and free from Ice than the River *I* that leads to *Amsterdam*; for which Reason, the *British* Merchants frequent this Port much more than that; insomuch, that when the Frost has been over, and the River open, there has been above three hundred *British* Vessels sailing out of the *Maes* in one Fleet.

The Town is built mostly of Brick; the Streets are broad and well pav'd. There are four *Dutch* Churches, one *English*, (where the Service is perform'd according to the Church of *England*) and one Kirk of *Scotland*. There are great Numbers of *British* Subjects residing at *Rotterdam*; and here is also a Stadt-house, Exchange, Admiralty-Office, *East India* House, &c. all very handsome Buildings. From the Top of the great Church may be seen the *Hague*, *Delft*, *Leyden*, *Dort*, and most of the great Towns in *South Holland*; the Ground being generally low, and the Sight not intercepted by Hills and Mountains as in most other Countries.

Leyden, four Miles East of the Ocean, and eighteen Miles South of *Amsterdam*. It is a large, neat, and pleasant Town; the Buildings beautiful and magnificent, the Streets broad and clean, with Canals in the Middle of them planted with Trees. The City is surrounded by a Wall, and regularly fortify'd. In the Middle of the Town is a round Stone Tower six hundred and ten Feet in Circumference, and ascended by fifty Steps. It is observ'd that *Leyden* hath eight Gates. It is divided into twenty three Wards, which are subdivided into ninety lesser Parts. It stands upon thirty Islands. It has twenty four Canals, an hundred and eighty Streets, ninety five Bridges; and upon the Walls are forty handsome Towers.

They have many large Hospitals; that of the Orphans only, maintains no less than nine hundred Children. The three principal Churches are, St. *Peter*'s, *Pancras*, and the New Church. The *States General* founded an University here in the Year 1575. The Schools are in a large Brick Building of three Story high; in the uppermost of which, was the Printing-House of Elzevir, so famous for Printing, that his Name is frequently made use of to this Day with respect to Printing, that is done upon extraordinary good Letter. There are about two thousand Students belonging to this University, but they board mostly in the Town. They are no way distinguish'd by their Habits, but only at Lectures, and when they preside in publick Disputations, and then they wear Gowns. They have excellent Manuscripts in their Library; and their Anatomy-Theatre is said to exceed that at *Padua*, having Skeletons of all Sizes and Kinds, and Variety of Mummies, particularly one of an *Egyptian* Prince eighteen hundred Years old, with Pagan Idols, and Relicks, and Habits of People of the most distant Countries. The principal Manufactures of *Leyden* are woollen Cloth and Camblet. Their Garden-Stuff is so much valu'd, that it is carried as far as *Amsterdam*, and the Ground so rich, that their Gardens yield four or five Crops in a Year, and are reckon'd worth two hundred and fifty or three hundred Pounds an Acre. They have an Officer call'd the *Dikegrave* in the *Reinland House*, whose Business it is (with the Assistance and Advice of his Associates) to take care of the Repairs of the Banks, Dykes, and Canals in the District of *Rhineland*, of which *Leyden* is the Capital.

The *Hague* comes next under our Consideration, which some call a Village, because it has no Walls; but if it is a Village, it may with good Reason be call'd the most considerable of that Denomination. It is nine Miles South West of *Leyden*, fourteen North West of *Rotterdam*, and two Miles from the Sea. It is encompass'd with fine Meadows and Groves, amongst which, is a fine Seat call'd *The House in the Wood*, belonging to the Prince of *Orange*. The *Hague* is govern'd by its own Magistrates, and has all the Privileges of a City of *Holland*, except that of sending Representatives to the *States*. Here the *States General*, and the Council of State, always assemble; and here are held the supreme Courts of Judicature. Foreign Ministers reside here and have their Audience; and here all publick Affairs are transacted, which draws Multitudes of People hither, and creates a vast Trade.

The Palace is a handsome Building of Brick, making two Angles of a Square; in the Middle is a spacious Hall, and in this Place was an Apartment for the late Princes of *Orange*, the Chambers of the *States General* and Provincial, and of the Council of State. On the West Side of the Palace is a large Plain regularly planted with Trees, which some, not without Reason, compare to St. *James*'s Park at *London*. This Plain is surrounded with magnificent Houses; one of which every City of the *United Provinces* have for their respective Deputies. But what is something remarkable, there are but two Churches in the

Hague, one call'd the Old Church, being an handſome antique Building; the other a new round Building, a Faſhion pretty much in Vogue of late with the *Dutch*; they having lately built other Temples in the ſame Form. On the North Side of the *Hague* is a Walk from the *Hague* to *Scheveling* by the Sea Side, where King *Charles* II. embark'd for *England* at his Reſtoration. About ten Miles to the Southward of the *Hague* is *Houſlaerdyke*, a Palace of the late Prince of *Orange*. Two Miles from the *Hague* is the Village of *Ryſwick*, where the Prince had another Palace: Here was the Treaty of Peace between the Confederates and the *French*, *Anno* 1697. call'd therefore the Treaty of *Ryſwick*.

Delf. *Delf*, or *Delft*, is ſix Miles South-Eaſt of the *Hague*, and eight Miles North-Weſt of *Rotterdam*. The Streets of this Place are ſpacious, with Canals running along the Middle of them, and Trees planted on each Side of them; the Town is about two Miles in Circumference, and is encompaſs'd by an old Wall. This Place is famous for Earthen Ware, call'd therefore Delf-Ware, and is eſteem'd the beſt, next to *China*-Ware: But the Town is in general, more remarkable for Silence and Quietneſs, than for Hurry of Buſineſs, and is rather a fit Retirement for wealthy Gentlemen, than a Place of Concourſe for Merchants and Trading People. Here is a Stadt-Houſe, and an Arſenal, the Magazine of which blew up in the Year 1654, but it has ſince been rebuilt, and made more magnificent than it was before it was burnt. There are but two Churches in it, the old and the new; in the new Church is the Tomb of *William*, the firſt Prince of *Orange*, who was aſſaſſinated in this City. *Delfs Haven* lies between this City and *Rotterdam*, having a Communication with both by a Canal cut for that Purpoſe; it is ſtrongly fortify'd, and has three Banks to defend it againſt Inundations.

Dort. *Dort*, the Capital of the *Bailiwick* of *Dort*, is fourteen Miles South-Eaſt of *Rotterdam*. This City, with it's Diſtrict, became an Iſland by an Inundation, in the Year 1421, which demoliſh'd the Banks of the *Maes* and *Merwve*, and deſtroy'd fourſcore Villages, and twenty or thirty thouſand People, beſides drowning a large Tract of Land between *Dort* and *Brabant*; but the Water that deſtroy'd the Land about it is it's greateſt Security; for it ſtands between the *Maes* and the *Merwve*, and the Lake *Biesbos* encloſes it on the South and Eaſt. It is a large populous City; the Houſes high, and built of Brick; the Streets broad, and well pav'd: Here in the Year 1619 was held a Synod, call'd therefore the Synod of *Dort*. The *Britiſh* Merchants have two Churches in this City it being the Staple for their Cloth, as well as for *Rheniſh* Wines, and other Commodities brought down the *Rhine* and the *Maes*.

Gertrudenburg ſtands on the South Side of the Lake *Biesbos*, twelve Miles South-Eaſt of *Dort*, and ten Miles North of *Breda*: It belongs to the Houſe of *Orange*. It is naturally ſtrong, having Marſh on one Side, and on the other the River *Merwve*, which is here of a vaſt Breadth.

Gertrudenburg.

Gouda. *Gouda*, or *Tergow*, is ſituate at the Conflux of the Rivers *Gow* and *Iſſel*, twelve Miles North-Eaſt of *Rotterdam*. It is a handſome, large, ſtrong City; and the rather, becauſe the Ground about it lies ſo low, that they can lay all under Water if they ſhould be attempted by an Enemy.

Naerden. *Naerden*, twelve Miles Eaſt of *Amſterdam*, and fifteen North of *Utrecht*. It was taken by the *Spaniards* in the Year 1572, and after the Inhabitants had ſurrendred, the *Spaniards* ſummon'd them to the Market Place, and cut them to pieces in cold Blood; which inhuman Uſage the *Dutch* ſo reſented, that they irreconcileably meditate Revenge to this Day.

Williamſtadt, ſo called becauſe it was built by *William* I. Prince of *Orange*, and now belongs to the Family of that Houſe: It ſtands on the Water, call'd the *Roodvaert*, which ſeparates the Iſland *Voorn* from the Continent, and ſecures the Communication between *Holland* and *Zealand*. This *Voorn* is one of the principal Iſlands at the Mouth of the *Maes*, and on the South Side of it ſtands the City call'd

The Briel. The *Briel*, a fortify'd Town; twelve Miles Weſt of *Rotterdam*, and near the Sea, at the Entrance of the *Maes*. It is an old, but regular Building; a pretty good Harbour, and has a tolerable Trade; but it is here, as in moſt other Harbours that lie at the Entrance of a navigable River, the Towns higher up, on the ſame River, have the greater Trade, as being ſituate more in the Heart of the Country, and conſequently having a Communication with the Country round them; whereas Towns upon the Sea Coaſt have the Country but on one Side of them, and the Sea on the other; thus it may be obſerv'd, that *Newcaſtle*, upon the River *Tine*, ſome Miles up in the Country, is the chief Town for Trade upon that River; and *Stockton* upon the River *Tees*, ſeven or eight Miles up in the Country, is a Town of much more Trade and Shipping, than the now decaying Town of *Hartlepool* by the Sea Side near the *Tees* Mouth; and for the ſame Reaſon *Rotterdam* and *Dort*, lying higher up in the Country, have a much better Trade than the *Briel*. This was the firſt Town which revolted from the *Spaniards*, ſome of the Reſt following their Example. This was one of the cautionary Towns which the *States* deliver'd into the Hands of Queen *Elizabeth*, in Lieu of the Expence ſhe was at to defend them againſt the *Spaniards*. However, the peaceable King *James* I. kindly reſtor'd it to them again, for what Reaſon I know not, or what Obligation he found himſelf under to do it, if we read their Behaviour to the *Engliſh* in the *Eaſt Indies*. [*See Chap.* XV. *of the Deſcription of the* Oriental Iſlands, *eſpecially Pag.* 122, 123, and 124.] The Iſland upon which the *Briel* ſtands is call'd the *Voorn*. It is a fruitful Iſland, eſpecially for Corn, and is about twenty Miles in Length, and ſix in Breadth.

Helvoetſluys ſtands on the ſame Iſland of *Voorn* that the *Briel* is upon, and about four Miles to the Southward of it. It is reckon'd as ſafe a Harbour as any in the Country; the largeſt of the *Dutch* Men of War come up into the Middle of the Town; and here the *Engliſh* Packet generally takes in the *Holland* Mail; but it is a Place of no great Trade, for the Reaſons above-mention'd, with Reſpect to the *Briel*, the Merchants chuſing rather to have the Ships come higher up into the Country to load and unload, to ſave the Trouble of putting the Goods into other Veſſels.

Helvoetſluys.

Sommerſdyke is the Capital of the Iſland of *Overflackee*, which is to the Southward of the *Voorn*, and the next Iſland to it; but it is but a declining Town. This, as well as ſome other decaying Towns or Places of ſmaller Note, are ſcarce worth a particular Deſcription.

Sommerſdyke.

NORTH-HOLLAND.

THE Part of the Province call'd *North-Holland*, is that to the Northward of the River *Y* or *I*. The chief Towns are,

1. *Hoorne*, about twenty Miles North of *Amſterdam*, on the Coaſt of the *Zuyderſee*. The Product of this Part of the Country is chiefly Butter and Cheeſe, which they export to ſeveral Parts of *Europe*.

2. *Enck-*

2. *Enckhuyſen*, ten Miles North East of *Hoorn*, a Town of great Building and Shipping, and has a great Trade to the *Baltick* and in the Herring Fishery. There are other Towns, as *Medemblick*, *Alcmaer*, *Saanredam*, *Edam*, and *Purmer*; which two laſt Places, with the Country about them, was gain'd out of a large Lake, and is now call'd the *Purmerent*, as was the *Beemſter*, a Plot of Ground of ſeven or eight thouſand Acres, beſides other large Tracts of Land; and alſo all the Northermoſt Part of this Province is defended, from the Sea by a vaſt Mole, form'd by Beams of Timber driven into the Ground, and the Spaces between them fill'd up with vaſt large Stones and Cement.

Between the Ocean and the *Zuyderzee* lie ſeveral Iſlands; as the *Texel*, the *Ulie*, and the *Schelling*. Theſe Iſlands help very much to break the Violence of the Ocean, which would otherwiſe be very boiſterous, eſpecially when the Wind is at Northweſt.

Zealand. The ſecond of the ſeven Provinces is *Zealand*, or *Sealand*, ſuppos'd to be ſo call'd, as being ſo many Iſlands encompaſs'd by the Sea; as is the Caſe with an Iſland in the *Baltick* of the ſame Name, where *Copenhagen* ſtands. This Province contains eight Iſlands, *viz. Walcheren*, *South Beveland*, *North Beveland*, and *Wolferdyke*; on the Weſtern, *Scheld*, and *Schowen*, *Duvelland*, *Tolen* and *Oreſand*; on the Eaſtern, *Scheld*. This whole Province, including the Seas and Channels that ſeparate the Iſlands, lies between the Ocean on the Weſt, and *Brabant* on the Eaſt, and has the Iſlands of *Holland* on the North, and *Flanders* on the South. The principal of thoſe Iſlands is *Walcheren*, at the Mouth of the *Scheld*. Its North and Weſt Coaſt is waſh'd by the *German* Ocean. The chief Town is,

Middleburgh. 1. *Middleburgh*, ſo call'd as being near the Middle of the Iſland. It is a rich and populous City, and a Sea-port, having a Canal, by which good Merchant Ships can come up into the Middle of the Town. The Streets are broad and well pav'd, the *Stadt-houſe* and other publick Buildings are magnificent; and the Churches, of which are no leſs than twenty, are beautiful Fabricks. The Town is encompaſs'd with a Moat, a Wall, and other Fortifications. It was once a Biſhop's See, but has now loſt that Dignity, and the Palace with the Revenues are now converted to ſecular Uſes.

Rammekin. 2. *Rammekin*, at the Mouth of the Harbour of *Middleburgh*, once a conſiderable Place, but has undergone the Fate of the *Briel*, &c. before-mention'd, *viz.* has declined, as *Middleburgh*, that lies higher up towards the Middle of the Iſland, has improv'd.

3. *Flaſhing*, a good Harbour on the South Side of the Iſland, five Miles South of *Middleburgh*; it is a good Harbour, and a Place of good Trade, and well defended. 4. *Ter Vere*, three Miles North of *Middleburgh*, and *Armuyden* at the Entrance of *Middleburgh* River, which is now a decay'd Harbour.

The next Iſland on the Eaſt of *Walcheren* is South *Beveland*, about fifteen Miles long, and ſeven or eight Miles broad. The chief Town is *Ter Goes*, on the North Part of the Iſland. To the Northward of South *Beveland*, between it and North *Beveland*, is the Iſland of *Wolferdyke*; it is a ſmall Iſland, and has only a few inconſiderable ſmall Villages upon it. To the Northward of *Wolferdyke* is the Iſland of *North Beveland*, now in a great meaſure laid deſolate by Inundations. To the Northward of *North Beveland* is the Iſland of *Schowen*, fifteen Miles long, and ſix broad; but it was much larger till it was waſh'd away by the Sea. The chief Town is *Zurikzee*, a tolerable Harbour, and a Place of ſome Trade; alſo *Brouwerſhaven*, on the North Part of the Iſland, five Miles North of *Zirikzee*. The chief Subſiſtance depends upon Fiſhing and Husbandry. There is alſo *Bomence*, a ſtrong Fortreſs, two Miles to the Eaſtward of *Brouwerſhaven*, and over againſt *Goree*. There are alſo the Iſlands of *Duvelland*, *Tolen*, and *Oreſand*, but no Towns of Note upon them. Theſe Iſlands of the Province of *Zealand* are generally fruitful in Corn and Paſture; the Natives are chiefly employ'd in the Fiſheries, and though they have little or no Manufacture among them, yet they are a wealthy People; but their low Situation with Reſpect to the Sea, makes the maintaining of their Banks very chargeable, and the Air unwholſome.

Friezland. The third of the *United Provinces* is *Friezland*, bounded on the North by the Ocean, and on the Eaſt by *Groningen*; by *Overyſſel* and Part of *Zuyderzee* on the South, and by the other Part of the *Zuyderzee* on the Weſt. This Province is ſubdivided into *Weſtergo*, *Oſtergo*, and ſeven Wolden Towns. In *Weſtergo* are, 1. *Franaeker*, four Miles Eaſt of the *Zuyderzee*, and eight Weſt of *Leewarden*, a handſome ſmall Place, but not of any great Trade. 2. *Harlingen*, about five Miles Weſt of *Franaeker*; it ſtands upon the Coaſt of the *Zuyderzee*; it is pretty ſafe from the Attacks of Enemies, it being eaſily laid under Water upon Occaſion.

3 *Leuwarden* is a fortify'd Town, eight Miles to the Eaſtward of *Franaeker*; it is the beſt City in the Province, and the Reſidence of the Stadt-holder (when they have one,) and of the ſovereign Council, and is now the Reſidence of the preſent Prince of *Orange*, and his Conſort the Princeſs Royal of *England*; it is a Place of Trade, but what it is chiefly admir'd for, is it's fine ſumptuous Buildings, handſome Streets and Bridges, and the fine Gardens about it.

4. *Doccum*, ten Miles North-Eaſt of *Leewarden*, a Place of ſome Strength and Trade; but what is chiefly taken Notice of in it, is a fine Bridge, under which a Veſſel may paſs with her Maſts up. There is alſo *Bolſwaert*, *Staveren*, and the Iſlands of *Ameland* and *Shiermonikoge*, in the Ocean North of *Friezland*, but no good Harbour, or any thing worth noting in any of them.

This Country is ſo immerged in the Water in Winter Time, that they are forced to go from Town to Town by Cauſeways or Banks; but either by their Induſtry, or the Heat of the Sun, it is generally dry in Summer, and a great deal of good Arable and Paſture Land appears. Their Firing is chiefly Turf or Peat, which is either the Surface of their morally Ground, or dug out of Pits in it, and is ſo impregnated with a ſort of bituminous Matter, that it often takes Fire without any viſible Cauſe but the Heat of the Sun, and has burnt for ſeveral Leagues, till ſome Canal or Lake has interpos'd, and ſtopp'd it's Progreſs.

Groningen. The Province of *Groningen* and the *Omlands* is bounded by the *German* Ocean on the North by *Embden*, or Eaſt *Friezland* in *Germany* on the Eaſt; on the South by *Overyſſel*, and on the Weſt by *Friezland*, now deſcribed. Chief Towns are, 1 *Groningen*, at the Confluence of the two Rivers *Aha* and *Huneſus*, thirty Miles Eaſt of *Leuwarden*, and twenty South-Weſt of *Embden*; it is a large fortify'd Town, and by Canals cut they have a Communication with the Ocean and the Neighbouring Countries, and by that Means drive a briſk Trade with *Germany*; it is but two Miles in Circumference, but the Ground within the Walls is not all built upon, there being ſeveral large Gardens, Orchards, and Canals, which interſpers'd with Streets and ſumptuous Buildings, render the whole exceeding pleaſant.

2 *Dam*, the Capital of the *Omlands*, twelve Miles

Miles North-Eaſt of *Groninger*, a large Town but not wall'd; and 3. *Winſboten* a Fortreſs near the *Dollart* Bay; it is ſeventeen Miles Eaſt of *Groningen*, and twelve South of *Dam*, with ſeveral other Forts which lie on the Frontiers, which ſecure the *United Provinces* from any Attack on the *German* ſide.

Over Yſſel The next in order is the Province of *Over Yſſel*, which is bounded on the North by *Groningen* and *Friezland*, and on the Eaſt by *Munſter* in *Germany*; it has *Zutphen* on the South, and the *Zuyderſee* on the Weſt; it is divided into *Iſſeland*, *Twente*, and *Drente*. Chief Towns are.

1 *Deventer*, on the River *Yſſel*, ſeven Miles North of *Zutphen*, a large and populous City, and a Place of pretty good Trade; it was a Biſhop's See, but the *Dutch* aboliſh'd the Biſhoprick, and ſequeſter'd the Revenues to ſecular Uſes. What is moſt remarkable here is the Tower of *Norembug*; it is round in Form, the Walls ſeventeen Foot thick, and ſo large as to contain a a Garriſon of ſeveral thouſand Men; there are alſo the Towns of *Swoll*, *Campen*, and *Haſſalt* in *Iſeland*, and in *Twente* are the Towns of *Oldenſail* *Otmerſan*, and *Enſbeden*; and in *Drente* are the following Towns, of which the Capital is *Coverden*; it ſtands on the Confines of *Benthem* in *Germany*; it is naturally ſtrong, being ſituate upon an unpaſſable Moraſs, and commands the Paſs from *Munſter* in *Germany* into *Groningen* and *Friezland*, by which Means it is a Place of great Importance; the other Towns in *Drente* are *Mepple*, *Vollenhaven*, *Steenwick*, *Swarte*, *Sluce*, and *Blockzyl*.

Gelderland, The Province of *Gelderland* has formerly been divided into *Dutch* and *Spaniſh Gelderland*; the firſt of which is bounded by the *Zuyderſee* and *Overyſſel* on the North, the Biſhoprick of *Munſter* on the Eaſt, on the South by *Brabant* and the Dutchy of *Cleves*, and on the Weſt by the Provinces of *Holland* and *Utrecht*; it is divided into three Diſtricts, *Veluwe*, *Betuwe* (or *Batavia*) and the County of *Zutphen*.

The Veluwe The *Veluwe* is the Northermoſt Part of this Province, and is ſituate between the *Yſſel*, the *Zuyderſee*, and the *Rhine*. Chief Towns are 1 *Arnheim*, on the Banks of the *Rhine*, about thirty Miles South from the *Zuyderſee*; it is a large fortify'd Town, and in a wholeſome Air (when compar'd with other mooriſh Places in *Holland*) and is therefore inhabited by the beſt of Quality; and the Order and Neatneſs of the Buildings add very much to the Agreeableneſs of the Place. Ten Miles North-Eaſt of *Arnheim* is the Palace of *Dieren*, belonging to the late King *William*; and about ſeven Miles to the Northward is the Palace of *Loo*, in the middle of the *Welwe*, which being in a pleaſant Situation, was the Place of Retirement for that Prince, when publick Affairs would permit. 2. *Harderwicke*, on the South Eaſt Coaſt of the *Zuyderſee*, now a very declining Place, becauſe of the Sea waſhing it away. 3. *Nimguen*, on the River *Waal*, a Branch of the *Rhine*, Ten Miles South of *Arnheim*; it is a populous Place, with wide Streets, neat Houſes, with ten Churches, a handſome Stadthouſe, and two Hoſpitals in it. In the Year 1608 a navigable Canal was dug from hence to *Arnheim*, each of the two Cities contributing equally to it. 4. *Schenſkenſonce*, a ſtrong Fortreſs, at the parting of the *Rhine* and the *Waal*. This Fort commands both the Rivers, and is one of the principal Paſſes between *Germany* and the *United Netherlands*. There are other Places of leſs Note as *Tiel*, *Bommel*, &c. on the South Side of the *Waal*: Theſe are the chief Towns of *Betuwe* or *Batavia*, the Seat of the ancient *Batavi*, ſo often mention'd in *Roman* Hiſtory.

Zutphen. In the County of *Zutphen* is the City of the ſame Name, and Capital of the County; this City is on the River *Yſſel*, fifteen Miles North of *Arnheim*; the River *Berkel* runs through the Town, and divides it into the Old and New Town, between which there is a Communication maintain'd by two Bridges over the *Berkel*. The great Church is a ſumptuous Building, in which there is a brazen Font of curious Workmanſhip. There are the Remainders of an old Palace, and near it a high Brick Tower, of a Pyramidical Form, one of the greateſt Oraments of the City. In this County of *Zutphen* are alſo the Towns of *Doesburg*, *Groll*, &c. which laſt is a conſiderable Paſs from *Germany* to the *Low Countries*. *Zutphen* has good Meadow and Paſture Ground, where they feed plenty of lean black Cattle, brought from *Denmark* and the North of *Germany*, and fat them for a Market; other Parts afford good Corn.

Spaniſh Gelderland (now call'd *Auſtrian* and *Pruſſian Gelderland*) is bounded on the North by the Dutchy of *Cleves*, and by the Electorate of *Cologne* on the Eaſt; on the South by the Dutchy of *Juliers*, and on the Weſt by the Biſhoprick of *Liege*. The chief Towns are *Gelder*, *Raremond*, *Venlo*, *Wachtendonck*, *Stralen*, and *Stevenſwaert*. Having thus given a brief Deſcription of ſix of the *United Provinces*, viz. *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Friezland*, *Groningen*, *Overyſſel*, and *Gelderland*, I come to the ſeventh and laſt, which is

Utrecht, bounded on the North by *Holland* and Part of the *Zuyderſee*, and by *Gelderland* on the Eaſt and South, and on the Weſt by the South Part of *Holland*; it's Length and Breadth is nearly equal, viz. about twenty five Miles. Chief Towns, or I may rather ſay the chief Town, is *Utrecht*, the ancient *Antonina*, ſuppos'd to have been a *Roman* Colony; it ſtands on the Channel of the *Old Rhine*, twenty five Miles South-Eaſt of *Amſterdam*, and about as many North-Eaſt of *Rotterdam*; it is a large, populous, well built City, with Canals in the principal Streets, and is a Place of vaſt Reſort by Perſons of Diſtinction: There are two principal Canals, the *Vaert* and *Gracht*, which run the Length of the whole City, and over them are no leſs than thirty five Bridges. The Buildings on the Banks of the new *Gracht* are very magnificent; the Market-place is large and beautiful, and ſeveral handſome Streets center in it; and without the Town are beautiful Walks adorn'd with Rows of Trees, which the *Engliſh* call the Mall, in alluſion to thoſe in St. *James*'s Park *London*. The great Church, which was formerly a Cathedral, has a Tower of four hundred and ſixty Steps in height; from whence there is noble Proſpect of the adjacent Country, there being no leſs than fifty wall'd Towns to be ſeen from thence. Their Univerſity is in a flouriſhing Condition, abundance of Foreigners, *Engliſh* amongſt the reſt, reſorting thither for Education, and to take up their Degrees, which are more eaſily obtain'd here than at home; but Degrees taken up in *Holland* are not in ſo great Repute as thoſe taken up in *England*. The Students wear their ordinary Habits, and board in Town at private Lodgings; there being but few, if any, endow'd Colleges, as in our Univerſities of *Oxford* and *Cambridge*.

There are alſo the Towns of *Amersfort*, *Wick de Duerſtede*, *Rhenen*, and *Montfort*, but of no great Signification at preſent; only about *Amersfort* is ſuch good arable and Paſture Ground, that the chief Employment of the Inhabitants is Husbandry, Grazing, and Tillage; and to the Southward of the Town is *Soeſdyke*, a fine Hunting Seat belonging to the late King *William*, in a Foreſt of Ten Miles long and five broad, and abounding with great Variety of Game.

The Province of *Utrecht* is one of the moſt beautiful and healthful Provinces of the *United Netherlands*,

Netherlands, it being upon natural firm Ground, and not a Quagmire borrow'd, and gain'd out of the Sea, as a great Part of the *United Provinces* is. The Province of *Utrecht* was entirely subject to the *French*, and *Lewis* XIV. kept his Court in the Capital in the Years 1672 and 1673; but the *Germans* coming to the Assistance of the *Dutch*, expell'd the *French*, and made him glad to withdraw his Garrisons from the Towns he had taken, to defend his own Frontiers against the Attacks of the *Dutch*.

Buildings. I SHALL finish this Chapter with this general Account of their Buildings in *Holland* and the other *United Provinces*. Their Buildings are mostly of Brick, and differ little from those in *England*, only the Ground Floor bears the largest Dimensions, and every Story less and less; probably because at best their Foundation is marshy and rotten, and will not bear a weighty Superstructure. Their Kitchens and ordinary Rooms are frequently lin'd with *Dutch* Tiles instead of Wainscot, which notwithstanding looks exceedingly neat. They adorn their Rooms more with Pictures than Hangings; they often use Stoves instead of Chimnies, so that in the coldest Weather a Man may be as hot as in a Bagnio, and yet no Fire to be seen. In their ordinary Lodgings they have Cupboards, or Cabbins, in the Sides of the Room, like those in the Sides of a Ship, and so high from the Ground or Floor, that they require little Ladders or Steps to get up to them. And in their Inns, or Places of publick Entertainment, there are often six or more of these Cabbins together, where the Travellers must all tumble in Hand over Head; for a Person must either be of extraordinary Quality, or pay an extravagant Price, to have a Room to himself. But yet some of the best and most fashionable Places of Entertainment have Lodging and Furniture much the same as with us in *England*, and their Kitchen Utensils of Brass, Iron, *&c.* are kept extraordinary bright, and sometimes muffled up in Woollen, to preserve them from rusting; and their *China* and earthen Ware are rank'd in most exact Order in their Houses. Their Children's Cradles are slung by four Ropes like a weighing Scale, and hung at the End of a Pole like a Turner's Pole; by which Means, and the Help of a Nurse, they dance up and down, and rock the Children to sleep, without that hobbling Noise that is made by our Cradles here in *England*.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Persons and Habits of the Dutch; *also of their* Genius *and Tempers, Vices and Virtues; and of their Diet, Entertainment, Diversions, Roads, Carriages, and Way of Travelling.*

IT might be thought needless to give any Description of the Persons of the *Dutch*, by reason of their Vicinity to us, and being of the same Species with our selves; and yet as there is some thing in their Persons or Shape different from us, and peculiar to themselves, I should not do Justice to this History, if I did not give them their true Description.

THE *Dutch*, both Men and Women, are generally tall and strong; but have a gross Shape, nor is their Motion less disagreeable, for they move so heavily and aukwardly, that they are easily distinguish'd from the airy Motion of the *English*, *French*, *Spaniards*, or indeed from the Inhabitants of almost any other Nation. The Features and Complexions of the better Sort are tolerable, but as the generality of the labouring Part are mostly employ'd at Sea, or upon the Water, they are very much tann'd, which, added to their ordinary Shape, makes them make but a very indifferent Figure. They affect a plain Dress, except some of their Officers, who, as near as they can, endeavour to imitate the *French* Fashions. The Coats of the common Men have neither Shape nor Plaits, and their long Pockets are set as high as their Ribs; but the Women's Coats are so short, that they come no lower than the middle of their Legs, a Dress which would scarce be deem'd modest in *England*. They have no Curiosity in their Head-dresses, some only tying up their Hair with two or three black Knots, and when they go out, throw a Hood over them and then they are dress't; but some of them of late affect a *French* Dress, which in Time may probably prevail as much there as it does in *England*. They have their Musick-houses, and Ladies of Pleasure to frequent them, and these are commonly dress't in a Sort of Waistcoat and Jacket, something like the Riding-habits worn by the Women in *England*; but that Dress, added to a *Dutch* Shape, reduces the Women to an odd Sort of a Figure.

Genius. As to their Genius, Sir *William Temple*, before he falls upon that Subject in general, divides them into five Classes; 1. Boors, Husbandmen, or Labourers; 2. Watermen and Seamen; 3. Merchants and Tradesmen; 4. Renteneers, who live on the Rents and Incomes of the Estates left them by their Ancestors; and, 5. Gentlemen, and Officers of the Army. The Boors are industrious; but slow, both in Motion and Understanding; not to be ruffled, but rather perswaded: They are generally plain and honest, seldom aspiring much higher than their present Acquisitions in the World, and hence content to feed upon Roots, Herbs, Milk, *&c.* making what they have been brought up to, the Rule of their Living.

Seamen. THE Seamen that have seen more of the World, are (instead of being more polite) more surly and unmannerly; and our Author adds, that *as for their Valour, it is rather passive than active, they not being a very enterprizing People*; but as for this last Description of them, I must crave my Author's Pardon, if I suspend my Belief of it till I find some Reason to fall in with it; for I think their Acquisitions and extensive Trade in almost all Parts of the known World, proves them to be (or at least to have been) not only attempting, but prevailing People; but whether to impute it to their *Valour*, or rather to their *Baseness* and *Cruelty*, let the Affair of *Amboyna*, the *Banday* Islands, *&c.* be perpetual Testimonies.

THEIR trading People, whether Merchants or Mechanicks, are a little sharper in their way of Dealing; but they may rather be call'd crafty than polite, being cunning to take Advantage of the Oversight or Ignorance of those they deal with,

with, and thinking every Thing lawfully their own, that they can engross to themselves by any Artifice without downright Violence, or even with it rather than fail, as has been instanc'd above.

THE Rentencers live frugally, but delight in good Education, and chiefly in studying the civil Law, which they go to study at the Universities of *Leyden* and *Utrecht*, after they come from the Schools; and when they have finish'd their Studies, and if their Parents are able, they are sent abroad to *England*, *France*, &c. not often to *Italy*, and less to *Spain*, because they chiefly study their own Laws, to qualify them for their own Magistracy, the civil Officers of State being generally compos'd of such.

THEIR Gentry and Nobility are not very numerous in these Provinces, especially in *Holland*, having been much extinguish'd by their War with *Spain*; but the Nobility and Gentry that yet remain, generally affect the *French* Air and Dress, their Talk, Diet, and, as far as they can, their Gallantry, but mimick it very awkwardly, which is doubtless in some Measure owing to their Frugality, as being willing to initiate the most airy Fashions, but not prodigal enough to be at the unnecessary Expence of them, because they have such excessive Taxes laid upon them; and besides, they take more Delight in the Beauty and Convenience of their Canals, Bridges, Buildings, the Strength of their Towns, Commodiousness of Travelling, &c. than in the Fopperies of those, who, to the last Penny of Money or Credit, would act the Part of a Courtier without either the Credit, Principle, or Pocket of a good honest Country Farmer; and in this indeed, their Calculations are admirably exact, for no Person undertakes any Building or Contrivance, whether Canals, Causways, Bridges, &c. till he is first sure that he is prepar'd with both Men and Materials to finish the whole at the Time appointed; only to this general Rule there is this one Exception that I know of, and that is, that the *Stadt-house* of *Amsterdam* is not yet finish'd; but this, some merrily compare to St. *Paul*'s Church at *London*, as being design'd to be so magnificent a Building, that it may be improv'd by every Age or Fancy; but there are others as wise as the rest, who think that the Trade of *Amsterdam* will decline as soon as the *Stadt-house* is finish'd, as was the Case at *Antwerp*; and if so, it is to be suppos'd, that the *Dutch*, who upon other Occasions, have pursu'd their own Interest without any Regard to other People's Properties, will always leave that last Stone unlaid, which is so ominous as to their future Interest.

THEY are generally reckon'd a neat, clean People, of which Sir *William Temple* gives us this Proof from his own Experience. I shall give it in his own Words. He being at *Amsterdam*, and entertain'd at one of the chief Burgo-Master's Houses, he being then Ambassador in *Holland*, had contracted a great Cold, which occasion'd his spitting very much; which a good handsome Girl observing, attended in the Room with a clean Cloth in her Hand to wipe the Floor and clean it after him; at which, Sir *William* express'd some Uneasiness at the Trouble he gave; whereupon the Master of the House told him, that if his Wife had been at home he would not have escap'd so well, for she would probably have turn'd him out of Doors for daubing her House, and that without any Regard to his Dignity as an Ambassador; and told him moreover, that there were two Rooms in the House kept so clean, that he himself never set Foot in them, nor he believ'd never any Body else, except now and then to clean them.

THERE are other Instances of the extraordinary Cleanliness of the *Dutch*; of which although to instance in a great Number, would be too large a Digression, yet one may be proper instead of many. It was an Observation of the Secretary of *Amsterdam*, who being in a House, and looking out at the Window, saw one of the Magistrates come to the Door of the House over against him, to pay a Visit to the Mistress of the House. Upon knocking at the Door, a lusty Maid Servant came to open it; and he telling her his Business, and finding that the Mistriss was at home, offer'd to step in; but the Maid observing that his Shoes were not very clean, repuls'd him, to prevent his dirtying the Rooms; but not being willing to prevent the intended Visit, she turn'd her Back towards him; and taking his Arms over her Shoulders, took him upon her Back, and carried him cross two Rooms to the Foot of the Stairs that went up to her Mistress's Chamber, where she set him down, and made him stay till she fetch'd him a Pair of Slippers; which he having put on, she told him he might walk up to her Mistriss, for she was in her Chamber. *An Instance of the Dutch Cleanliness*

THE common labouring People, or poorer Sort of Husbandmen, live mostly upon Roots, Herbs, Milk, Pulse, and the like; but the middling, or rather better Sort, when compar'd with the meanest, live something better; for about *November* they purchase Beef for the Winter, being one Ox, or more, for a Family, or perhaps two Families an Ox between them, according to the Number of People and the Masters Ability. Some Part of this they salt and smoak-dry, as in some Places in *England*, and eat it with Bread and Butter, and Sallad. Some they pickle, (or corn as we call it) and put it down in a powdering-Tub in large Pieces; one of which is generally dress'd on a *Sunday*, and what is left on that Day, comes to the Table every Day the Week following as long as it lasts, with some additional Dishes of Greens or other Garden-Stuff that the Season affords, which is generally very plenty with them. *Bologna* Sausages, pickled Herrings, and such relishing Victuals, are much admired by them; and when they eat fresh Fish, they chuse to have their Butter oyl'd; and some of our *English* residing there, affirm, that after having been us'd to that Sort of Cookery, they think it preferable to well melted Butter. They seldom use Anchovies in their Sauce, notwithstanding that they so much admire Things salt and relishing. Their Cheese and Butter are extremly good, and the latter they so much admire, that they scarce move from home without a Box of Butter in their Pockets. They use great Numbers of Oysters, which they with their wonted Modesty fetch from our *Kentish* Coast without any Regard to Liberty or Property. They have Plenty of good Beer, Wine, and Brandy; and as for Geneva, it is so much in Request among them, that half a Pint of Geneva and a Roll, is reckon'd a delicious Breakfast for a strong labouring Man. *Diet.*

THEY Use the common Diversions of Billiards, Chess, and Tennis, as with us; but they are not so much for Games of Chance as they are for more profitable Diversions, as the Shooting of Wild-Geese and Ducks in Winter, and Angling in Summer; and in the Severity of the Frost, their Sledges and Skates are both their Diversion and their Exercise, both to recreate themselves and to keep themselves warm. The Swiftness of their Skating is incredible, no running Horse being able to keep pace with them. And the Women come not short of the Men, for they not only skate for Pleasure, but skate to Market with their Baskets and Bags of Goods. Brandy is another

other Play much uſed when the Earth is cover'd with Ice and Snow, and they ſeldom play for any Thing but Drink; and in Summer, Multitudes of People are continually walking along the Banks of fine Canals well planted with Trees; and at the End of every Walk is a Tavern, embelliſh'd with all tempting Varieties, as Summer-houſes, Grottos, Muſick, *&c.* Theſe, with good Wine, Fruits, and Cakes, make the Entertainment ſo diverting, that ordinary working People will ſtrain very hard for an Opportunity to regale themſelves now and then with thoſe Entertainments.

As it has been obſerv'd, that ſome Part of the Country abounds much more with Canals than with good Roads, I ſhall now obſerve, that their Way of travelling is moſtly in cover'd Boats drawn by Horſes, which go along by the Edge of the Canal at the Rate of about three Miles an Hour, and at the Pay of a Penny a Mile, with the Liberty to carry a Portmantua or Proviſions along with him. You are in theſe Veſſels ſecur'd from the Weather, nor do they undergo any ſenſible Motion, ſo that one may read or converſe in them as well as in a Houſe aſhore, and may go to almoſt any Town any Day, and to ſome Towns oftener than once a Day. There is a Bell rings at certain Times, juſt when they take Paſſengers in, and after that they will not wait a Minute, though they ſee a Paſſenger a coming. They always pay for their Paſſage beforehand; for as ſoon as ever the Paſſengers are ſet down in the Boat, there is a Man comes to collect the Fare; and if an Accident happens that he cannot carry you to your Journey's End, you muſt procure your Paſſage ſome other Way, and be at a freſh Charge.

Their Canals and Bridges are kept in extraordinary Repair, as are alſo their Highways, which makes Carriage cheap, and conſequently their Goods can be afforded cheaper, which is a great Encouragement to Trade, and to Foreigners to come to furniſh themſelves at their Markets.

CHAP. V.

Of the Government of the United Provinces, *and of the* States General *and* Provincial, *with the Government of their Cities, as ſo many diſtinct Republicks.*

THE *United Provinces* are a Confederacy of many independent States; for not only every Province is abſolute in itſelf, and independant of any other Province or Power of any kind, but there are in each Province ſeveral Republicks independant of each other, and which are not bound by the Decrees or Acts of the States of the Province, except ſuch Acts be firſt ratify'd by each particular City or Republick, which ſends Deputies or Repreſentatives to the Provincial Aſſembly.

But then as thoſe Provinces or Republicks having no Dependance upon one another, makes them more abſolute within themſelves, this Power veſted in ſo many particular Bodies, makes the Power of the States General leſs abſolute; for they of themſelves can neither make Peace nor War, enter into new Alliances, nor raiſe Money, without the Conſent of every Province; nor can any of thoſe Provinces do the ſame without the Unanimous Conſent of every City or Republick in that Province which hath a Voice in that Aſſembly. In civil Caſes indeed there ſometimes lies an Appeal from the Courts of Juſtice in the City to the Provincial Courts of Juſtice, but in criminal Matters there lies no Appeal, nor can the States of the Provinces themſelves puniſh or pardon an Offender, or any way exerciſe Juriſdiction within any of the Cities or Republicks of the Province, but by the Courts and Officers of the Place where the Thing is to be put in Execution.

But although, as above, every Province, as alſo every City or Republick, is independant of the reſt, yet as their ſeveral Forms of Government are ſo nearly alike, it will be needleſs to trouble the Reader with particulars of them all, but I ſhall rather inſtance in ſome of the chief of them, from whence may be form'd a tolerable Judgment of the reſt; and firſt of the Province of *Holland*, which may not only be deem'd the Principal, but in point of Trade, Riches, Forces, and great Towns, may be eſteem'd equal to all the reſt taken together.

The Voices of the States of *Holland* are now nineteen, which may be divided into three Claſſes; the firſt is that of the Nobility and Gentry, which is altogether look'd upon as but one Voice, and that the firſt in order; the next in the ſix Cities, which at firſt were the only ones that had Voices, *viz. Dort*, *Haerlem*, *Delft*, *Leyden*, *Amſterdam*, and *Tergow*, ſix Voices. Laſtly, the twelve Cities, which *William* of *Naſſaw*, their firſt Stadtholder, added, *viz. Rotterdam*, *Gorcum*, *Schiedam*, *Schonhoven*, *Briel*, *Alcmaer*, *Horne*, *Enchuyſen*, *Edam*, *Monnikdam*, *Medenblick*, and *Permeren*; which make in all nineteen Voices: The laſt eighteen are deem'd of equal Force or Authority; ſo that the little Town of *Permeren*, as to the Voice of it's Repreſentatives, is of as much Validity as that of *Amſterdam*, though *Amſterdam* is ſaid to contribute almoſt as much to the Publick Expence as all the reſt of the Cities of the Province.

The Nobility ſubſtitute eight or nine of their Number to repreſent the whole; and when one of thoſe Repreſentatives dies, they chuſe a Succeſſor, to keep up their Number; and tho' all their Voices is but as one of the nineteen, yet they are in great Power with Reſpect to Civil, Military, and Eccleſiaſtical Poſts and Power; and this gives them ſuch an Influence over the reſt, that though they have but one Voice, yet that being the firſt, it ſtrongly byaſſes the reſt, inſomuch that having heard their Voice, one may very often give a great Gueſs at the Reſult of the whole. The Grand Penſionary (like the Speaker of the Houſe of Commons in *England*) ſits with them, and delivers their Sentiments; and although it is not in his Power to determine any thing againſt a Majority, yet if that Majority do not fall in with him, he has a Power to poſtpone an Affair of the utmoſt Importance, and perhaps ſometimes by that Means worry the oppoſite Party into a Compliance.

The States of *Holland* generally aſſemble at the *Hague* four times in a Year, *viz.* in *February*, *June*, *September*, and *November*, in the three firſt

first of which they fill up vacant Offices, renew the Farming of the Taxes, regulate Differences between Towns, &c. and in *November* they consider of the Charge, Forces, &c. allotted by the States General as the Proportion of this Province for the ensuing Year.

The Chamber of Accounts manages the Revenues of the Province, and disposes of the Demesne Lands of the States of the Province; but their Revenue is seldom apply'd to publick Use, except upon urgent Necessity, the original Design of it being to relieve superannuated Officers and Magistrates, that those who have spent their Time in the Service of the Publick may have an honourable Retreat, and a comfortable Subsistance in their old Age; and this they observe so strictly, that I never heard of any Gentleman's Footman, or favourite Servant, that was reduc'd to participate of the Benefit.

Friezland. The Governmen of the Province of *Friezland* differs very much from that of *Holland*; it consists of four Members, *viz.* the Quarter of *Ostergo*, *Westergo*, *Seven Wolden*, and the Towns of the Province. The Quarter of *Ostergo* contains eleven Bailages, that of *Westergo* nine, and that of *Seven Wolden* ten, each Bailage containing twelve or fifteen Villages, or little more or less. The Towns which send Members are eleven, and every Bailage sends two, and these compose the Assembly of the States Provincial, which disposeth of all vacant Offices, chuses the nine Members who compose their Council of State, and the twelve Judges, *viz.* three for every one of the four Quarters, to determine civil Cases or Appeals; as also criminal Causes, this being the only Court in *Friezland* authoriz'd for that Purpose, tho' in *Holland* every Town has the Determination of criminal Matters vested in their own Magistrates.

Groningen &c. The Government of *Groningen* and *Overyssel* is much like that of *Friezland*; and that of *Gelderland*, *Zealand*, and *Utrecht*, like that of *Holland*, or at least without any material Difference.

The Nobility of *Zealand* having been much impaired in their War with *Spain*, and the (then) Prince of *Orange* being Proprietor of the Marquisates of *Flushing* and *Terveer*, this Prince alone represents that Part of the States of the Province, and as such bears the Title of sole Noble of *Zealand*, by virtue of which he has the first Place and Voice in the Assembly of the States there, as also in their Council of State, and Chamber of Accounts; and as Sovereign of *Flushing* and *Terveer*, he constitutes the Magistrates; and it may be said disposes of the Votes of these two Towns as well as of those of the Nobility, and there are but six Towns which send Deputies to the Assembly of the Province of *Zealand*.

States General The Body of the States General themselves are compos'd of the Representatives of the seven Provinces, and were compos'd of about eight hundred Persons; but this great Number made their Debates tedious and confus'd, and therefore they assembled but seldom, and substituted the Council of State to act in their stead when absent, and only summon'd a new Assembly of the States upon extraordinary Occasions, till the Earl of *Leicester* resign'd the Government of these Provinces; ever since which the Provincial States, by their Representatives, assemble, under the Name of the *States General*, and all the Members of the State have seldom, if ever, been assembled since that Time. The States General assemble and sit at the *Hague*, where they give Audience to Ambassadors, and exercise all other Acts of Sovereignty as one Man; but subordinate to them, are the Council of State, the Admiralty, and the Treasury; every one of which act in their proper Spheres in Matters of less Moment.

No Stadtholder, Governor, or Military Officer, can sit and vote among the States General; and to do justice to every Province, they change the President of the Assembly once a Week, and every Province severally takes it's Turn to appoint a new President. The States sit at a Table sufficient to hold about thirty Persons, (the Number of the Members when all present;) the President sits at the Middle of the Table, on one Side; the Ambassador that is to have an Audience, sits over against him on the other Side; and the Secretary at one end of the Table. Matters of less Moment are determin'd by a Majority, but if Peace or War, Foreign Alliances, or coining of Money, or the Priviledges of any Province, or the like, is propos'd in these Assemblies, every Province must concur before any thing can be determined.

The Council of State consists of Representatives from the several Provinces; of which *Holland* sends three; *Gelderland*, *Zealand*, and *Utrecht*, each of them two; and *Friezland*, *Groningen*, and *Overyssel*, each of them one; which is twelve in all, every one presiding in their Turns; and the Stadtholder, or Governor of the *United Provinces*, (when there is one) gives the decisive Voice in Matters of great Consequence.

At the Expiration of every Year, the Council of State delivers to the States General an Estimate of the Expences for the ensuing Year, which is demanded of the States Provincial, paying their respective Shares in the following Proportion, *viz.*

For every hundred Pound Sterling that is to be raised, there is paid by the Province of

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
Gelderland	7	0	0
Holland	42	0	0
Zealand	13	0	0
Utrecht	8	0	0
Friezland	17	0	0
Overyssel	5	0	0
Groningen and the *Omlands*	8	0	0
	100	0	0

The next Office of Dignity is the Court of Admiralty, which, when the States General and Council of State have concluded what Number of Ships, and what Force, is necessary to be fitted out, have the sole disposing of all Maritime Affairs, as to the Choice and Equipment of Ships, appointing Officers, manning and victualing the Ships; they have also the Recognizance of Piracies and all other Crimes committed at Sea; but in most other Cases it being much the same with our Admiralty in *England*, I shall not enlarge any further upon it. *Admiralty.*

The Princes of *Orange* have, since the seven Provinces were united, borne a great Share in the Government of them, and had indeed the most essential Part in framing and constituting the Government. Prince *William* I. of *Nassaw* was Governor of *Holland* and *Zealand* in the Time of *Charles* V. and his Son *Philip* II. of *Spain*, and was universally esteem'd by all the other Provinces, who unanimously elected him their Stadtholder, ever since which they have always had a Head under some Title or other, their Power being always made subservient to their Laws. This Prince had the Command of all their Forces by Sea and Land, as Admiral and Captain General, &c. and thus it continued till the Time of the Death of the late King *William*'s Father, when the Province of *Holland* influenc'd the rest of the Provinces so far as entirely to suppress the Office of Stadtholder, sharing that Authority among the several Magistrates of the State, as it continues to this Day.

CHAP. VI.

The Modern History of the United Provinces, *commencing with the Year* 1609 *when a Truce was concluded with* Spain; *with a brief Account of the Princes of* Orange *which were their Stadtholders.*

MONARCHY and a Republican Form of Government, have been severally espous'd and contended for by People of different Opinions ever since the Foundation of the *Dutch* State. *William* Prince of *Orange*, who was their first Stadtholder and Captain General of the *United Provinces*, notwithstanding that he contributed so faithfully and successfully towards the rescuing them from *Spanish* Tyranny, had privately form'd a considerable Party, who were ready to compliment him with the Sovereignty of these Provinces, if he had not been basely cut off by Assassination; [*See* Chap. I.] which when *Barnevelt* Pensioner of *Amsterdam* saw, he prevail'd upon the *States* to chuse *Maurice* the second Son of the deceas'd Prince their Stadtholder, (his eldest being disqualified by his being bred a *Roman* Catholick;) but *Maurice* had not long enjoy'd his Dignity, till some of the Creatures about him, envying the Intimacy that was between him and *Barnevelt*, began to insinuate to him that *Barnevelt* was the most likely Person of any to defeat his Designs of Sovereignty, which induced Prince *Maurice* to look upon *Barnevelt* as a dangerous Enemy, and to endeavour to suppress him accordingly; in order to which, he endeavour'd to dissolve and invalidate the last Treaty with *Spain*, which *Barnevelt* had taken so much Pains to bring to a Conclusion, which still increas'd their mutual Animosity.

ABOUT this Time, viz. about the Year 1608, some Religious Disputes arose between *Arminius* and *Gomar*, both Professors of Divinity at *Leyden*, the former asserting the Doctrine of Free-will, as the latter did that of Predestination; they both gain'd abundance of *Proselytes*, and both Opinions were so strenuously defended by their respective Advocates, that it became not only the Subject of common Conversation, but the Discourse of Schools and Pulpits; whereupon the *States* appointed a Conference to be held at the *Hague* between *Arminius* and *Gomar*; but after a few hot Arguments they parted, without coming to any Determination in favour of either Opinion, at which the common People were still more rigorously divided into Parties, the Magistrates and principal Burghers siding with *Arminius*, and the Soldiers, Clergy, and Common People (who were all generally in the Interest of Prince *Maurice*) adhering to *Gomar*.

Arminius dy'd in the Year 1609; whereupon his Disciples drew up an Account of their Tenets, and presented it to the *States General*, therein calling themselves *Remonstrants*, the contrary Party then assuming the Character of *Contra Remonstrants*: *Barnevelt* was a Follower and Espouser of the former; so that now their Dispute was not only religious (if such Disputes may be call'd so) but national too. Prince *Maurice* did not with any heat espouse either Party, but yet observing that *Barnevelt* had join'd the Magistrates and Burghers attended with the *Arminians*, and observing at the same Time that the Soldiers, Common People, and Clergy, took Part with *Gomar*, he join'd his Interest with theirs and became a *Gomarist*; and for the Sake of raising an Interest against *Barnevelt*, he became a *Contra Remonstrant*, and charg'd *Barnevelt*, that as a *Remonstrant* he was likewise in the *Spanish* Interest, and that he was endeavouring to introduce Popery and Slavery again; upon which *Barnevelt* was himself under a Necessity to publish Papers in Vindication of his own Reputation and Character. These Disturbances, under Pretence of Religion, so exasperated the *States General*, that they forbid the Clergy to treat of the Doctrine of Predestination in publick, which was a very great Mortification to Pr. *Maurice* and his Adherents.

ABOUT the Time of this Disturbance the *Dutch* sent to *James* I. King of *England*, offering to pay him part of the Money due to *England*, for the Auxiliary Troops lent them in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, and for which they had given the *English* the Possession of the Cautionary Towns, by way of Security; but this Moiety of Money they offer'd to pay only upon Condition that King *James* would evacuate the said Cautionary Towns, (the whole Security for a Part of the Debt,) and the cunning *Barnevelt*, not ignorant of King *James*'s flexible Temper, follow'd his Argument till he got him persuaded, or surpriz'd, into a Promise of delivering them up. This some impute partly to an easy Temper in King *James*; but the Truth is, he was then but in ill Terms with his Parliament, which the cunning *Dutch* being not quite ignorant of, took the Advantage of his Want of Money, the easier to draw him to this pernicious Bargain, whereby, to the great Joy of the *Dutch*, the *United Provinces* were quite disengaged from all Obligations to the *English*, notwithstanding the Service we had done them, when they were not able to defend themselves; and however inadvertently King *James* might be drawn into this Bargain, his Ministry was very much blam'd for it, and he himself so much repented his suffering himself to be drawn into it by *Barnevelt*, that he meditated his Ruin, and combined with Prince *Maurice*, jointly to put that Design in Execution; which was a Design very acceptable to Prince *Maurice*.

THE Differences about Religion between the *Arminians* and the *Gomarists* still increasing, Pr. *Maurice* with a strong Force of his own Party march'd through the Provinces, banish'd the *Arminian* Preachers, and displac'd their Magistrates, and fill'd up the Vacancies with those of his own Party. Thus he reform'd (as he call'd it) the Cities of *Nimeguen* and *Zutphen*, they having declar'd for the *Arminians*, as had also the Cities of *Campen* and *Arnhem*; but he reform'd them by Force, or (as a certain Author says) dragoon'd them into better Manners, and restor'd the Preachers of the *Calvinists* to their Pulpits. Thus Prince *Maurice* march'd to pursue his Conquest against the *Arminians*, still going towards *Utrecht*, he receiv'd the News of the Death of his elder Brother *Philip William* Prince of *Orange* by Birth. This obliged Prince *Maurice* to return with all Speed to the *Hague* to settle the Affairs of the Deceas'd, who dying without Issue, left *Maurice*

the Principality of *Orange* and the Reſt of his large Poſſeſſions.

In the mean Time, *Barnevelt* finding the contrary Party increaſe and grow too ſtrong for him, eſpecially now when their Leader was advanc'd to be Prince of *Orange*, he publiſh'd an Apology for himſelf, repreſenting to them the Services he had done the Republick and the like, which had ſuch Influence upon them, that they took him into their Protection, while the Prince of *Orange* purſu'd his Reformation both in the Church and in the Magiſtracy, disbanding the *Arminian* Garriſons, depoſing their Magiſtrates, and on ſome, inflicting Impriſonment, Baniſhment, *&c.*

The Prince of *Orange*, reſolving to ſtrike while the Iron was hot, proceeded next to ſeize ſuch Perſons as had been moſt active to oppoſe his Sovereignty; and here his Eye was chiefly fix'd upon *Barnevelt*, amongſt many others, charging them with inciting Commotions at *Utrecht*, entering into Conſpiracies againſt the *States General*, and being Popiſhly affected, and the like.

The King of *France* endeavour'd to reconcile thoſe Differences, but the Prince of *Orange* oppos'd, and found Means to diſappoint his Endeavours; and like an arbitrary Prince, continued to diſplace the Magiſtrates, *&c.* that were not of his Party. In *Rotterdam*, where the *Arminians* prevail'd moſt, he took from them their three Churches, and gave them to the *Gomariſts*, his own Party, and baniſh'd the moſt conſiderable of the *Arminian* Preachers, without any Regard to *John Wytenbogart* himſelf, though formerly one of Prince *Maurice*'s chief Favourites.

Upon this the *States* of *Holland* demanded the Releaſe of *Barnevelt* and others of his Party, but in vain; and *Ledenberg* of *Utrecht*, then in Cuſtody, expecting no Quarter, laid violent Hands upon himſelf in Priſon, and thereby prevented his being expos'd to a publick Execution. The *French* King continu'd to uſe his Intereſt in favour of *Barnevelt*, but to no purpoſe; for the King of *England* joining Prince *Maurice*, render'd all Attempts againſt him ineffectual. And now moſt of that Party, who had been the chief Sticklers againſt a National Synod, being baniſh'd, confin'd, or otherwiſe ſuppreſs'd, a Convocation was aſſembled at *Dort*, to which they invited the Divines of the reform'd Churches in *Europe* to ſend their Deputies; and in the mean Time, Provincial Synods were held to agree upon Points to be diſputed in the National Synod, and to appoint Deputies to repreſent them there. The *Arminians* obſerving ſome Practices uſed in the Provincial Synods, which by ſome partial Arguments therein uſed, ſeem'd to tend only to the excluding them from the National Synod, the *Gomariſts* proteſted againſt it; and by the Influence of the Prince of *Orange*, they procur'd the Baniſhment of many more of the *Arminian* Preachers; and at the ſame Time, the *States General* diſpatch'd Letters to the King of *Great Britain*, the *French Huguenots*, the *Swiſs Cantons*, *Geneva*, &c. to ſend their reſpective Deputies to the National Synod; and they all repair'd thither accordingly, except the *Brandenburghers*, and the *French Huguenots*. The chief Reaſon of the Abſence of the latter, is imputed to the *French* having eſpous'd the Cauſe of *Barnevelt*, and of the *Arminians* in general.

The Synod being open'd, (which was in *November* 1618.) the Members were given to underſtand, that they were not to be treated with by way of Conference, but muſt look upon themſelves as being ſummon'd before their Judges; and for that Reaſon, they were to withdraw as ſoon as they had propos'd Reaſons for their Tenets, and Arguments in Defence of them. The *Arminians* thought this a Piece of Partiality, and a Hardſhip upon themſelves, and declar'd that they could not acknowledge this Synod to be a legal Aſſembly, the Judges themſelves being of a Party. And thus with religious Bickerings on both Sides, they ſpent ſome Time to little Purpoſe. However, at laſt they ſettled their Canons relating to the Doctrines of Predeſtination, Election and Reprobation, Free-will, Grace, Perſeverance, *&c.* and having condemn'd the *Arminian* Doctrine of Free-will, *&c.* ſet up their Opinion as a Rule of Faith in all the *Calviniſt* Churches in *Europe*; and from this Time, the other Extream of abſolute Predeſtination prevail'd.

The *Gomariſts* having thus gain'd the Aſcendant, began to conſider what Judgment they ſhould paſs upon the Perſons of the *Arminians*; but that Propoſal was rejected, it being thought ſufficient, that the *Arminian* Tenets ſhould be publickly renounc'd, and their Preachers depos'd, and render'd incapable of any Eccleſiaſtical Functions or Benefices. And they being thus ſuppreſs'd, the unwearied Prince of *Orange* took the utmoſt Advantage of this Opportunity to compleat the Deſtruction of *Barnevelt* and his Party; in Order to which, he procur'd twenty ſix Judges to be appointed by the *States General*, all of them being Perſons previouſly devoted to his Service, who paſs'd Sentence of Death upon *Barnevelt*, for his having defended, and afterwards attempted, to tolerate the *Arminian* Doctrine. This Sentence occaſion'd great Diſcontents and Murmurings, and made ſuch a Noiſe in the World, that the *French* Ambaſſador deſir'd inſtantly an Audience of the *States*; but being deny'd it, he ſent a Letter to them to demand in his Maſter's Name, that they ſhould not ſhorten the Life of that antient Miniſter; but that avail'd nothing; for *Barnevelt* was beheaded next Day in the Court of the *Hague*, over againſt the Prince of *Orange*'s Apartment, the Prince himſelf being a Spectator to this Tragedy, which himſelf had been at ſo much Pains to bring about. *Fame de la.*

The People ſo much blam'd the Prince's Severity in this Execution, that he thought it prudent to mitigate the Sentence of *Hoogebert* and *Grotius*, who were condemn'd to perpetual Impriſonment, the latter of which eſcaped by a Stratagem; for he having obtain'd Leave to have a Trunk of Books brought to him and carry'd back as he ſaw Occaſion, when the Frequency of its Paſſage by the Centry had worn off all Suſpicion, his Wife lock'd him in the Trunk, and he was carried off to *Gorcum*, and from thence to *Antwerp*, from whence he eſcap'd to *Paris*, where the *French* King allow'd him a Penſion of a thouſand Crowns a Year. And to make his Eſcape the leſs ſuſpected, and prevent his being purſued, his Lady ſtaid behind in his Apartment, lying upon her Husband's Bed, and in his Night-Gown and Cap, under a Pretence of its being *Grotius*, and that he was ſick; this ſhe continu'd ſome few Days without any Suſpicion of a Fraud, till her Husband was eſcap'd quite out of Danger, and then ſhe follow'd him to *France*, where they both, and many of their Party met with a kind Receprion, and were allow'd Liberty of Conſcience.

On *March* 27. in the Year 1625. K. *James* I. dy'd; and on *April* 23. the ſame Year, dy'd Pr. *Maurice*; upon whoſe Decaſe, the Provinces of *Gueldres*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Utrecht*, and *Overyſſel*, choſe his Brother *Frederick Henry* their Stadtholder, Captain General, and Admiral; but the Province of *Gronningen* conſidering that *Ernſt Caſimir* had been Stadtholder of *Friesland*, and Lieutenant to Prince *Maurice*, they choſe him for their Stadtholder.

At the ſame Time that Prince *Frederick Henry* was advanc'd to the Sovereign Dignity, the *Spaniards* were maintaining the Siege of *Breda*; and he willing to ſignalize himſelf in an Attempt to relieve the Town, miſcarried; and inſtead of having the Satisfaction to raiſe the Siege, had the Mortification to ſee it ſurrender'd to the *Spaniards* the firſt *June* after his Acceſſion.

This new Prince of *Orange* was not ſo inveterate againſt the *Arminians* as Prince *Maurice* had been, but put a Stop to the Perſecution againſt them, and declared himſelf favourably in reſpect of *Grotius*, then in *France*, as above obſerv'd. And as a further Inſtance of Encouragement, the Kings of *Denmark* and *Sweden* invited the *Arminians* to ſettle in their reſpective Dominions. Thoſe who fix'd in *Sweden*, ſettled at *Gottemburg*; and thoſe who went to *Denmark*, fix'd at *Gluckſtat* on the North Bank of the *Elbe* below *Hamburg*; *Frederick*, Duke of *Holſtein*, aſſign'd them a Tract of Land on the Banks of the River *Eyder*, upon which they built a City, and call'd it after the Donor, *Fredericksburg*.

In the Year 1629. the Prince of *Orange* took *Herlogensboch* and *Boiſleduc* from the *Spaniards*; and in 1632. he took *Venlo*, *Ruremond*, and *Maeſtricht*; and afterwards *Limburg*, and *Orſay*; and in 1633. he reduc'd the Fortreſs of *Rhimberg*. The *Spaniards* upon this prepar'd to reſiſt the *Dutch*, and if poſſible to retake the Places they had loſt; whereupon the *Dutch* enter'd into an Alliance with *France* in the Year 1634, jointly to purſue the Conqueſt of the *Netherlands*, with an Agreement, that when that Country ſhould be conquer'd, the Provinces of *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, *Hainault*, *Cambray*, and Part of *Artois*, ſhould belong to the *French*, and the reſt of the *Spaniſh Netherlands* to the *Dutch*; purſuant to this, the *French* King order'd Marſhal *Chatillon* to join the Prince of *Orange* in *Brabant*, with twenty thouſand Foot, and ſeven thouſand Horſe; which the *Spaniards* hearing of, march'd to prevent their Conjunction, but were utterly defeated; whereupon *Chatillon* march'd to *Maeſtricht*, and join'd the *Dutch* Army, which together made an Army of fifty thouſand Men, over all of whom the Prince of *Orange* was to be Generaliſſimo by Contract; but here a Demur intervened, for the *Dutch* conſider'd that if any ſuch Conqueſt ſhould be made, and the *French* ſhould have Poſſeſſion of the ſtipulated Part of the Conqueſt, the *French* might be more troubleſome Neighbours than the *Spaniards* had been; and this Suſpicion was rather confirm'd, becauſe *Chatillon*, the Commander of the *French* Forces, was Brother-in-Law to Cardinal *Richlieu*, Prime Miniſter of *France*, who had before endeavour'd to ſurprize the City of *Orange*. The Prince of *Orange* and the *States*, reſolv'd neither to fall out with the *French* General, nor do any thing in conjunction with him; whereupon the Prince of *Orange*, as Generaliſſimo, led the *French* Forces a Wild-goole Chace; and by Marches and counter Marches, and Want of neceſſary Proviſions, he ſo harraſs'd and tir'd the *French* Troops, that after a Seaſon ſpent, and nothing done, of about thirty thouſand *French* which came out of *France* for the *Netherlands*, not above four thouſand return'd to carry the News of the Loſs of ſo many without any Conqueſt made, or ſo much as a Blow ſtruck.

But Cardinal *Richlieu* being ſurrounded with domeſtick Enemies, and afraid that he might need the Aſſiſtance of the *States General*, was forced to ſtifle his Reſentment, and renew his Alliance with the *Dutch*; and in order to ingratiate himſelf further into the Prince of *Orange*'s Favour, order'd the *French* Ambaſſador to give him the Title of Highneſs whenever he addreſs'd him; which Title became ſo cuſtomary, that he and his Succeſſors have retain'd it ever ſince. And upon this new Alliance, they rejoin'd their Forces, and enter'd upon a new Expedition; and in the Year 1637. the Prince retook the City of *Breda*; but the *Spaniards* took *Venlo* and *Ruremond* which the *Dutch* made little or no Advantage of. The Year 1638. their Succeſs againſt the *Spaniards* was very conſiderable; as follows.

The *Swedes* having for ſome Time harraſs'd the Empire, and ſtill continuing to do ſo, the Emperor *Ferdinand* the third, prevail'd upon the *Spaniards* to fit out a powerful Fleet, to join the *Danes* againſt the *Swedes*, hoping thereby to divert the *Swedes* from any further Depredations in the Empire, and lay them under a Neceſſity of withdrawing their Forces from thence to employ them in their own Defence; and the Fleet being equipp'd accordingly, they reſolv'd firſt to touch upon the Coaſt of *Zealand*, to encourage their Forces in the *Spaniſh Netherlands*; and accordingly the *Spaniſh* Admiral *Don Antonio Oquendo*, ſail'd from the *Groyn* with ſixty ſeven Men of War, and twenty thouſand Men, in *July*, and was to be join'd by fourteen Sail more from *Dunkirk*; of which the *Dutch* getting Intelligence, and imagining, by the extraordinary Preparations that were making at *Dunkirk*, that the chief Deſign of the *Spaniards* was againſt them, they order'd Vice-Admiral *Tromp* to obſerve their Motions; who, on the ſixteenth of *September* at Night, fell upon one of their Squadrons, which was ſeparated from the reſt, near *Dunkirk*, and entirely diſperſed them; but the *Spaniſh* Admiral bearing down to their Aſſiſtance the next Morning, boarded the *Dutch* Admiral, but was ſo warmly receiv'd by *Tromp*, that he was forced to quit him again, and would have been glad to ſave himſelf if he could; but *Tromp* purſuing him, ſunk him, with a thouſand Men aboard, after which the Fleets were ſeparated by a Fog, but the *Dutch* being join'd by eleven Men of War, fell upon the *Spaniards*, in the middle of the Night, and drove them into the *Downs* for ſhelter, and there being thirty *Engliſh* Men of War riding there, they protected the *Spaniſh* Fleet from the Fury of the *Dutch*; but the *Dutch* look'd upon this as an Infringement of the Peace between *England* and *Holland*, for the *Engliſh* to protect the Enemies of the *Dutch*. *Tromp* complain'd to King *Charles* the firſt, then King of *England*, who having enough upon his Hands in his own Civil Wars between him and his Subjects, and expecting no leſs than an Inſurrection in his own Dominions, did not think fit to break with the *Dutch*, nor yet with the *Spaniards*, but keep his Friends about him, as not knowing which he might have Occaſion for firſt, and ſo ordered his Admiral in the *Downs* to ſtand neuter, and to forbear all Hoſtilities againſt the *Dutch*.

Tromp having thus Succeſs, receiv'd a powerful Reinforcement from the *Dutch*, with an Order to attack not only the *Spaniards* but the *Engliſh* alſo, in caſe they ſhould attempt to aſſiſt the *Spaniards*; and when the *Spaniards* were thus aſſur'd to be depriv'd of all Aſſiſtance from the *Engliſh*, they took the Advantage of a thick Fog, thinking by that Opportunity to make their Eſcape; but *Tromp* hearing of it, overtook them with near a hundred Men of War, and burnt, ſunk, or took, moſt of the *Spaniſh* Fleet, amongſt which was a *Portugueſe* Galleon of fourteen hundred Tons, eighty Guns, and eight hundred Men. Twenty of the *Spaniſh* Men of War were alſo run aſhore in the *Downs*, and in ſhort their whole Fleet was ſo ſcatter'd, that only eight of them eſcap'd to *Dunkirk*. The *Dutch*

in all this Engagement loſt but two Ships, and about fourſcore Men.

THE *French* and the *Dutch* were now united both in one Intereſt and Deſign, though they acted in ſeparate Bodies againſt the *Spaniards*, by whom Count *Henry Erneſt* of *Naſſaw*, Governor of *Friezland*, was kill'd in an Engagement, and ſucceeded in his Government by his Brother *William Frederick*; but the Prince of *Orange*, who was Stadtholder of the other Provinces, was Governor of *Groningen* and the *Omlands*; and in the Year 1641. he married his Son *William* to the Princeſs *Mary*, Daughter of King *Charles* I. the young Prince coming over into *England* to conſummate the Marriage.

IN the Year 1642. died Cardinal *Richlieu*, who, during his Adminiſtration, had been a good Friend to the *Dutch* in aſſiſting them againſt the *Spaniards*, but that did not make any Alteration as to the Affairs between the *French* and the *Dutch*; but their Alliance was continu'd and ſtrengthen'd, and the *French* agreed to give them the Title of *High and Mighty*, and to furniſh them with twelve hundred thouſand Livres, and to attack ſome conſiderable Places in *Flanders*; and in Conſideration thereof, the *Dutch* engaged to have forty Men of War on the Coaſt, to ſupport their Land Force, and not to make Peace, or to come to any Terms with *Spain*, without the Concurrence of the *French*.

THE Succeſs of the *French* and *Dutch* was ſo great, that Admiral *Tromp* by Sea, and the Troops by Land, took *Gravelin*, *Sas Van Ghent*, &c. Thus the *French* went on, enlarging their reſpective Frontiers at the Expence of the poor *Spaniards*; and in the Campaign in 1645, the *French* took *Mardike*, *Bourbourg*, *Bethune*, and *Armentiers*; but the Prince of *Orange*, though he miſcarried in an Attempt againſt *Antwerp*, yet, before the Year was at an End, he took *Hulſt* in *Flanders*, the Capital of the Country of *Waes*.

IN the mean Time the *French* attack'd *Dunkirk* by Land, while the *Dutch* Fleet block'd it up by Sea, and they ſoon took it; and in *March* 1647, the Prince of *Orange* dy'd, and his Son *William* II. ſucceeded him as Stadtholder; but he began to be jealous of the *French*, leſt their Succeſs in conjunction with the *Dutch*, might terminate in the *French* Intereſt; whereupon, notwithſtanding their Engagements to the *French*, they made a ſeparate Peace with *Spain* at *Munſter*, in the Year 1648, which was therefore call'd the Peace of *Munſter*.

Prince of *Orange* dies. *William* II. ſucceeds.

THE *United Provinces* now enjoying a profound Peace, propoſed to reduce their Forces, which ought certainly to be the Conſequence of a ſettled Peace; but the very Reaſon that induced them to reduce their Forces, (*viz.* a Time of Peace) induced him to keep up a *Standing Army*; which they apprehending, to be a Sign of his aiming at Arbitrary Power, they, as a free People, oppoſ'd it the more; as remembring the Attempts that his Uncle Prince *Maurice* had made to obtain an abſolute Sovereignty. They therefore made an Act of State, for diſbanding Part of the Army, which the Prince and his Party oppoſed; but thoſe who were for it immediately quitted the *Hague*, and then the Act of State for diſbanding a Part of the Army paſs'd in the affirmative, becauſe there was no Body to hear thoſe who oppoſ'd it. Whereupon he apply'd himſelf to the ſeveral Cities in *Holland* for their Intereſt to keep up a ſtanding Army; but all in vain, they looking upon it as an Encroachment upon their Liberties; and the City of *Amſterdam* forbad him to come there with any ſuch Propoſal, which ſo exaſperated him, that he meditated Revenge, and order'd a Body of Troops to inveſt the City privately; but when the Project was to be put in Execution, which was to be by Night, the Rain and Darkneſs interfered; by which Means, ſome of them loſt their Way, and the whole Body of them were ſeparated; and the Town being appriz'd of the Deſign, open'd their Sluices, and drowned the circumjacent Country, and by that Means put an End to his Deſign of attacking them, and made it impracticable.

WHILE the Prince was contriving which way to retrieve the Honour he had loſt by this Diſappointment, he was taken ill at the *Hague*; his Sickneſs prov'd the Small Pox, of which he dy'd *November* 6. 1650; and the Liberty that he had taken to have a Standing Army maintain'd in a Time of Peace, and that contrary to the Reaſon, Inclination, or Intereſt of the Republick, made his Death leſs regretted, and even ſome of the Clergy in their Pulpits did not ſtick to aſcribe his Death to the juſt Judgment of God, and look'd upon it as a Deliverance to themſelves from the Apprehenſions they were under.

ABOUT a Week after the Death of *William* II. his Son *William* III. was born, who afterwards was firſt Stadtholder of the *United Provinces*, and then *William* III. King of *Great Britain*. When the Prince of *Orange* dy'd, the *States General* ſeem'd reſolv'd not to have any Stadtholder, from a Conſideration, that the late Attempts of the Princes of *Orange* for abſolute Sovereignty, was a Sort of an Encroachment upon their Liberties and Properties; and as a Teſtimony of their Abhorrence of Arbitrary Power, they diſbanded a conſiderable Part of the Army.

DURING the Inter-Regnum, if it may be ſo call'd, between the Murder of King *Charles* the firſt, and the Reſtoration of King *Charles* the ſecond, *England* was a ſort of a Common-Wealth, King *Charles* and his Brother *James*, Duke of *York*, being then driven into *Holland*; and though they were well receiv'd by their Brother and Siſter the Prince and Princeſs of *Orange*, yet the *States* took ſome Umbrage at it, intimating that their reſiding in *Holland* would be very inconvenient in the preſent Situation of Affairs; and ſo intent were the *States* upon ſending them out of their Territories, that the Prince of *Orange* had much ado to prevent it; and what yet contributed more to exaſperate the Faction, Dr. *Doriſlaus*, one of the Regicides, was ſent Envoy to the *Hague*, to propoſe an Alliance between the two Republicks. (One would think indeed that a Nation ſo populous as *England* might have found ſome one Perſon more proper to have ſent as an Envoy to the *States*, than one that had embru'd his Hands in the Blood of his Sovereign.) However, he being at Supper with ſome Company, ſome Gentlemen enter'd the Room with their Swords drawn, and one of them dragg'd *Doriſlaus* from the Table, ſtabb'd him to the Heart, ſaying, *Thus dies one of the* **Regicides**; which done the Gentlemen put up their Swords, and quietly withdrew, (no Perſon attempting to detain them) and left the Company to ruminate upon the whole Affair, and give their various Sentiments upon it.

THIS Accident made the *Dutch* very uneaſy, and the rather leſt *Cromwel* ſhould demand Satisfaction for the Murder of his Envoy, and ſhould magnify that Difference to make it amount to a Breach of the Law of Nations, and occaſion a Demand of King *Charles* being remov'd from the *Hague*, which accordingly happen'd ſoon after; and the Prince of *Orange* dying much about the ſame Time, all this contributed but very little or nothing from that Quarter towards King *Charles*'s Reſtauration, but rather increas'd the intending Animoſities.

But in the Year 1651 *Oliver* ſent two Ambaſſadors over to the *States*, to propoſe an offenſive and defenſive Alliance between *England* and *Holland*: The *States* receiv'd the Ambaſſadors with all Marks of Reſpect, but the Populace abuſed them, by pelting their Servants with Stones and Dirt, and crying *Long live King* Charles *and the Prince of* Orange. St. *John*, one of the Ambaſſadors from *England*, had ſo little Regard for King *Charles*, that meeting his Brother the Duke of *York*, (afterwards King *James* II.) in the Walks of the *Voerhout* at the *Hague*, he refuſed to give him the way, or ſalute him; whereupon the Duke pull'd off his Hat to him, but told him he ought to pay more Reſpect to the King's Brother. St. *John* anſwer'd, that he knew no Sovereign but the Parliament of *England*, and reflected groſly on the Royal Family; whereupon the Duke's Attendants attack'd the Ambaſſador and his Servants Sword in Hand, and by the Aſſiſtance of moſt of the Gentlemen then in the Walks, made the Ambaſſador St. *John* glad to eſcape, and take Shelter in his own Houſe.

The *States* of *Holland*, who both then and ſince have been willing to ſtand neuter to ſave Charges, when any other would do the Work for them, and conſidering what might be the Conſequence of their harbouring the Duke of *York* at the *Hague*, deſired him to retire to *Hounſlaerdike*, a Seat belonging to his Siſter the Princeſs *Dowager* of *Orange*; and he being retired they ſent to St. *John*, the *Engliſh* Ambaſſador, to expreſs their Concern for the Affront given him; but he on the other Hand continued ſo highly to reſent it, and repreſented it in ſuch Terms to his Maſters in *England*, that he and his Fellow Ambaſſador were ſoon recall'd.

Upon this Reſentment, the *Engliſh* Parliament began to conſider how to ſuppreſs the *Dutch* Trade, and advance their own; and in order to this, they made an Act call'd the *Act of Navigation*, whereby all Foreigners were prohibited from importing any Merchandize into *England*, except what every Perſon brought to *England* was the Product of his own Nation. This touch'd the *Dutch* more ſenſibly than any other Part of *Europe*, becauſe the Country naturally and originally produces little or nothing, and conſequently their Trade with *England* was quite cut off, their Buſineſs at Sea having rather been to be the common Carriers of *Europe*, than to trade with any Part of their own Product; and ſo ſtrict were the *Engliſh* in the Execution of this Law, that they took all Opportunities of ſearching the *Dutch* Ships, and making Prizes of them, when they found thoſe prohibited Goods aboard.

The *Dutch*, ſeeing the Severity of the *Engliſh*, ſent four Ambaſſadors to capitulate with the *Engliſh*, but were peremptorily anſwered with the following Demands.

1. That they ſhould pay the Arrears of Tribute due for Fiſhing on the *Engliſh* Coaſt.

2. That they ſhould reſtore the Spice Iſlands taken in the *Eaſt-Indies*.

3. That thoſe who had aſſiſted in the Murder of the *Engliſh* at *Amboyna* and *Banda*, ſhould be brought to Juſtice.

4. That Satisfaction ſhould be made for the Murder of *Doriſlaus*, the *Engliſh* Envoy at the *Hague*. And

5. That Reparation ſhould be made for the Damages ſuſtain'd by the *Engliſh*, in *Ruſſia*, *Greenland*, &c. by the Encroachments of the *Dutch*, which would amount to an immenſe Sum, and which the *Dutch* readily conjectur'd was more than they were willing, if not more than they were able to pay, made them apprehend that a War with *England* was unavoidable, and accordingly gave Orders for fitting out a large Fleet of Men of War, to be ready upon any Occaſion.

War with the *Dutch*.

The *Engliſh* not apprehending that the *Dutch* durſt engage in a War with them, they only fitted out a ſmall Squadron, with common Orders, to guard the Coaſt, without any particular Inſtructions in caſe of a Rupture. But the *Dutch* Admiral *Van Tromp* with a Fleet of forty two Men of War, had Orders to ſail to the Coaſt of *England*, and not to ſtrike to the *Engliſh* as uſual; and accordingly he came into *Dover* Road in *May* 1652. Admiral *Blake* being there with twenty ſix Men of War under his Command, and perceiving the *Dutch* did not ſtrike to the *Engliſh* as uſual, gave him three Guns; whereupon *Tromp* hung out a red Flag, and bearing down directly upon the *Engliſh* Admiral, gave him a Broadſide; upon which an obſtinate Fight enſued, and laſted till Night parted them: One of the *Dutch* Ships were taken, and another ſunk, but the *Engliſh* loſt neither Ship nor Officer; however Admiral *Blake* did not think fit to renew the Fight the next Morning at ſo great a Diſadvantage, but withdrew to refit and reinforce his Squadron, that he might be able to give his Enemies a warmer Reception.

The firſt Fight.

After this the *States* ſent to the Parliament of *England* to make them believe that Admiral *Tromp* had attack'd the *Engliſh* contrary to their Knowledge or Orders, and pretended to make Propoſals for compromiſing the Difference; but the *Engliſh* would not hearken to them, as concluding that the *Dutch* muſt have ſome Deſigns in View, when they had fitted out a Fleet of a hundred and fifty Men of War, without any viſible Neceſſity, and had attacked our Fleet in our own Seas, and upon our own Coaſt, without paying the uſual Acknowledgement of ſtriking to them. This gave the *Engliſh* Reaſon to believe that the *Dutch* had a Deſign to uſurp from the *Engliſh* the Dominion of the Sea, which the *Engliſh* ſeeing, were reſolv'd to guard againſt it.

Upon this Reſolution the *Engliſh* order'd Admiral *Blake* to ſail to the Northward, and attack the *Holland* Fiſhing-Buſſes, and the twelve Men of War, their Convoy; moſt of which they took and made Prizes of, and return'd Home; and Sir *George Aſcough* being ſent with another Squadron to the Southward, met a Fleet of *Dutch* Merchant-men between *Dover* and *Calais*, and took or deſtroy'd moſt of them; and proceeding from thence down the Channel to the Weſtward, he met ſixty *Dutch* Men of War, and about thirty Merchant-men, off of *Plymouth*, where he attack'd them, though he had but thirty Ships of the Line. They fought till Night parted them, and then the *Dutch* made off by the Favour of the Night; and the *Engliſh* Admiral having receiv'd Damage in his Rigging, could not carry Sail to purſue them, as he would otherwiſe have done.

These Succeſſes of the *Engliſh* ſo terrify'd the *Dutch*, that they were not only afraid to attack the *Engliſh*, but glad to go North about to eſcape them, rather than run the Hazard of meeting an *Engliſh* Squadron in the Channel; and yet notwithſtanding all their Precaution, they loſt ſix *Eaſt-India* Ships, valued at four Millions of Livres; alſo thirty five of their *Portugal* Fleet, and many other Veſſels. King *Charles* the Second being now at *Paris*, and finding the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* were come to an open Rupture, made an offer to the *Dutch* Ambaſſador to join what Intereſt he had with theirs, and to go in

Perſon on Board their Fleet; but the *Dutch* at the ſame Time inclining to make Peace with the *Engliſh*, and ſuppoſing that their entertaining King *Charles* aboard of their Fleet might at that Juncture be look'd upon as a ſort of Hoſtility, and might hinder the Progreſs of the intended Accomodation, they refuſed his Offer, and declin'd taking him aboard.

Van Tromp about this Time, upon ſome Diſguſt taken, reſign'd his Command, and *De Witte* ſucceeded him in the Command of the Grand Fleet, who attack'd Admiral *Blake* on the Coaſt of *Kent*, *October* the 28; but Admiral *Blake*'s Forces attack'd the *Dutch* Rear Admiral, boarded and took him, ſunk two more of their Men of War, and one they blew up; whereupon the *Dutch* retir'd, and the *Engliſh* purſu'd them to their own Coaſt.

Another Fight.

In this War the *Swedes* declar'd for the *Engliſh*, and the *Danes* for the *Dutch*. The latter agreed to ſend twenty Men of War to the Aſſiſtance of the *Dutch*, provided they would reſtore *Van Tromp* to his Command, as Admiral; which being readily comply'd with, he was ſent out with eighty Men of War, and two Fire-Ships, and met with Admiral *Blake* in the *Downs*, with between forty and fifty Sail, and a terrible Engagement enſued, on the 29 of *November* 1652; and the *Dutch* took two of the *Engliſh* Men of War, ſunk three, and burnt one; and on the other Side one of the *Dutch* Flag-Ships was blown up. This Odds in the Loſs encouraged the *Dutch* ſo much, that *Tromp* put a Broom at his Topmaſt Head, intending to have it underſtood thereby, that he could ſweep the *Engliſh* out of the Sea whenever he pleas'd.

A third Fight.

But before this Triumph had continued a Quarter of a Year, it was ſoon eclips'd; for Admirals *Blake*, *Dean*, and *Monk*, with eighty Sail of Men of War, lay extended croſs the Channel over againſt *Portland*, to wait for *Tromp*, who was ſent with ſeventy ſix Men of War to convoy three hundred Sail of Merchant Ships; and on the Eighteenth of *February* 1653 *Blake* accordingly diſcovered the *Dutch* Ships; whereupon a bloody Battle commenced, which held three Days; in which Time *Van Tromp* working his Squadron in between his Merchant Ships and the *Engliſh* Men of War, they made a running Fight towards the Coaſt of *Holland*, but loſt eleven of their Men of War and thirty Merchant Ships, the *Engliſh* loſing only one of their Ships in all the Engagement.

A fourth Sea Fight

On the Second of *June* 1653 the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Fleets met again, between *Dover* and *Calais*; the *Engliſh* conſiſted of a hundred Sail, commanded by *Dean* and *Monk*, both on Board one Ship, and the *Dutch* were equal, or rather ſuperior, in Number to the *Engliſh*, and commanded by *Van Tromp*, *De Witte*, &c. They engag'd about Noon, and at the firſt Broadſide Admiral *Dean* was ſhot in two by a Cannon Ball; but *Monk* notwithſtanding continued the Fight ſo vigorouſly, that before the Evening the *Dutch* bore away; but next Morning the *Engliſh* came up with them again, which drove the *Dutch* into ſuch a Confuſion, that when *Tromp* made a Signal for the Line, their Diſorder made them uncapable of regarding it; whereupon *Tromp* fired at ſome to compel them, and ſent his Boat aboard of others to perſuade them, to Courage and Order, but all in vain; ſo that they were forced to retire to their own Flats, the *Engliſh* having taken eleven of their Ships, ſunk ſix, and blown up two, themſelves at the ſame Time having ſuffer'd very little Damage.

Fifth Sea Fight

The *Dutch* not yet quite caſt down, fitted out a Fleet of a hundred and twenty five Sail in leſs than a Months Time, commanded by *Tromp*; and on the Twenty-ninth of *July* he met with the *Engliſh* Fleet upon the Coaſt of *Holland*, under the Command of Admiral *Monk*; upon which a fierce Engagement enſued, wherein the reſolute *Monk* order'd his Officers neither to give nor take Quarters, which made the Battle extremely bloody, and ſo it prov'd to *Van Tromp*; for he was kill'd by a Muſket Ball as he walk'd the Quarter-Deck with his Sword drawn; and as he dropp'd, *De Witte* aſſum'd the Command as Admiral, and maintain'd the Fight till the Evening; in which Time ſeven and twenty *Dutch* Men of War were burnt and ſunk; none being taken, by reaſon of the *Engliſh* Admiral's Orders not to give or take Quarters; for which Reaſon thoſe that would have ſurrender'd, and become advantageous Prizes, were burnt or ſunk. The *Engliſh* loſt a great many Men, but loſt only one Ship, and had two or three more diſabled.

The *Dutch* were now very much embarraſs'd, not only with this bad Succeſs at Sea, but alſo with the loſs of Foreign Trade, and the Vexation of inteſtine Broils at Home; for as to the former, the *Engliſh* had taken no leſs than ſeven hundred Sail of their Ships; and as to the latter, the *Orange* Party, to induce them to have a Stadtholder, inſinuated that all their Confuſion and ill Succeſs was owing to their not having a Governor or Supreme at the Head of them. In this Diſtraction, they ſent to their Plenipotentiaries at *London*, to make up a Peace with *England*, almoſt upon any Terms; and *Cromwel* having now as it were beat them into a Compliance with his own Mind, he ſeem'd at a Diſtance to condeſcend to their Propoſal of Peace, with this private View, that if he had brought them to court his Friendſhip, they might be aſſiſting to him to maintain his uſurp'd Government; and both Parties inclining to Peace, they concluded a Treaty in the Year 1654, in which the *Dutch* engag'd themſelves,

1. To renounce King *Charles* the Second's Intereſt.

2. To ſtrike to the *Engliſh* at Sea.

3. To bring ſuch of their Subjects to Juſtice as had been concerned in the Barbariaics at *Amboyna*, if any of them were living, and to make Reſtitution for all the Damages the *Engliſh* had ſuſtain'd by their Means, in their Foreign Trade, for thirty Years paſt.

But, beſides theſe Articles, *Cromwel* demanded that the *States* ſhould exclude the Prince of *Orange*, (who was Grandſon to King *Charles* the firſt) and all his Poſterity, from being Stadtholders, Governors, Admirals, or even Captains of Men of War; to which the *States* agreed, ſo far as this Excluſion related to the Deſcendants from the Daughter of King *Charles* the firſt, and no further; however moſt of the Superior Military Officers were ſuppreſt, only the Lieutenant General, and the Major General of the Horſe, and if a Body of Troops were to be aſſembled on any Occaſion it was to be commanded by the eldeſt Colonel.

Cromwel thinking he could now perſuade the *Dutch* almoſt to what he pleas'd, propoſed a Union, and to reduce both the Common-Wealths under one Form of Government; but the *Hollanders* were as cunning as he, and readily apprehended that he intended to have himſelf plac'd at the Head of this new United Government. He then offer'd to join with them in a League, offenſive and defenſive, againſt the Church of *Rome*; but this his Cloak of Religion was alſo ſo thin that the *Dutch* could eaſily ſee through it, and concluded, that this his Pretence of promoting the Intereſt of *Chriſt*, was only with a View

The ſixth Sea Fight.

at

at the Bottom to enlarge his own Dominions, and eſtabliſh his own Intereſt abroad. The *Dutch* were the wrong People for him to endeavour to delude with the ſame Bait, with which they had often, and ſometimes in vain, attempted to catch others.

In the Year 1658. the *Engliſh*, in conjunction with the *French*, laid Siege to *Dunkirk* and took it, the *Engliſh* keeping the Poſſeſſion of it. This was a ſad Mortification to the *Dutch*, to ſee the *Engliſh* (whom they lov'd juſt as far as it anſwer'd their own Intereſt, and no farther) become Maſters of both Sides the Channel between *England* and *France*; but on the Third of *September* this ſame Year 1658, *Cromwel* dy'd, and left *England* in ſuch Confuſion, that the *Dutch* had little to fear from that Quarter.

In this Confuſion, the *Engliſh* Subjects began to wiſh for the Reſtoration of King *Charles* II. and though the *Dutch* had entred into a Confederacy with *Cromwel* againſt the *Stuarts* Family, yet finding it out of their Power to prevent his Return to *England*, they choſe to approve of it rather than provoke the Propoſers of it: Whereupon, as ſoon as his Majeſty was arrived at *Breda*, they ſent a Deputation of the *States* to compliment him, and to invite him to take up his Reſidence at the *Hague*, till he ſhould embark for *England*; and accordingly he came to the *Hague* *May* 16. 1660. where he was magnificently entertain'd, and had Preſents made to him to the Amount of above an hundred thouſand Pounds; and in ſhort, he was careſs'd with the higheſt Compliments by thoſe very Perſons, who a little before had entred into an Alliance againſt him with *Cromwel*, his mortal Enemy, to exclude all his Blood from the Stadtholderſhip, or any high Station in the *United Provinces*. And after they had careſs'd him with more florid Compliments than ſincere and hearty good Wiſhes, he embark'd at *Schevelling*, where a Squadron of Men of War, under the Command of Admiral *Montague*, conducted him to *England*, where he arriv'd on the Twenty-ninth of *May* 1660.

Some time after King *Charles*'s Reſtauration, a Miſunderſtanding happen'd between the *Engliſh* and the *Dutch*, which amounted to a Rupture; and though different Reaſons for it are given by different Perſons and Parties, yet the following are aſſign'd as three of the moſt ſubſtantial.

1. They detain'd the Iſland of *Poloroon* in the *Eaſt-Indies*, contrary to ſeveral ſolemn Treaties and Engagements to deliver it up; whereby we were entirely deprived of the Spice Trade, at leaſt of the Nutmegs and Mace, the moſt valuable Branch of it. 2. They had ſeiz'd ſeveral Ships and their Cargoes, and made the Men Priſoners. 3. They kept Guard-ſhips upon the Coaſt of *India* and *Africa*, to prevent other *European* Nations trading there; and by theſe Methods, had endeavour'd to monopolize the Trade of thoſe Places to themſelves, and exclude the *Engliſh*.

Upon this Provocation, the *Engliſh* commiſſion'd a Fleet under the Command of the Duke of *York*, as Lord High Admiral, which rendezvous'd at *Spit-head* in *November* 1664. The *Dutch* upon this, kept cloſe in their Ports; whereupon the *Engliſh* intercepted an hundred and thirty of their Merchant-Ships in the Channel, and made them Prizes; but this was done by way of Reprizal for the *Dutch* taking the *Engliſh* Ships and Forts upon the Coaſt of *Africa*, there being as yet no open War between the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*. However, the *Engliſh* Merchants ſo reſented the Uſurpations of the *Dutch*, that they advanc'd his Majeſty an hundred thouſand Pounds, and afterwards repeated the ſame Sum at his Majeſty's Requeſt; which the Parliament took ſo well, that they voted the King five and twenty hundred thouſand Pounds, to be rais'd in three Years Time, to carry on the War againſt the *Dutch* with the utmoſt Vigour. And accordingly the War between *England* and *Holland* was proclaim'd, *March* 4. 1664-5. Whereupon the *French* not only adviſed, but aſſiſted the *Dutch* againſt the *Engliſh*; but the unanimous and undaunted *Engliſh*, regardleſs of the united Threats of their Enemies, aſſembled their Grand Fleet, conſiſting of an hundred and eight Men of War and fourteen Fire-ſhips, which they divided into three Squadrons. The Red, commanded by the Duke of *York*, Lord High Admiral; the White, by Prince *Rupert*; and the Blue, by the Earl of *Sandwich*. They ſtood over to the Coaſt of *Holland*; but the *Dutch* not daring to face them, the *Engliſh* took a great Number of rich *Dutch* Merchant-Ships, and ſo return'd to their own Coaſt.

The *Dutch* having waited for the Abſence of the *Engliſh*, took this Opportunity to join their *Amſterdam* and *Zealand* Fleets; which, all together, amounted to an hundred and three Men of War and eleven Fire-ſhips, commanded by the *Dutch* Admiral *Opdam*, and under him *Cortenaer*, Vice-Admiral of the *Maeſe*, *Evertſon*, Vice-Admiral of *Zealand*, and *Van Tromp*, (Son of the famous *Van Tromp*) Vice-Admiral of *Amſterdam*. On the Second of *June* 1665. the *Dutch* and *Engliſh* Fleets came within Sight of one another; but the *Dutch* (remembring what ill Succeſs they had that Day twelve Years, *viz.* on the Second of *June* 1653. as before obſerv'd) declin'd fighting till next Day, *June* the third; when about four in the Morning, the Duke of *York* engaged Admiral *Opdam* ſo cloſe, that (by what Means is not certainly known) the *Dutch* Admiral was blown up, and himſelf and all the Ship's Company loſt; and at the ſame Time three *Dutch* Ships which ſeconded their Admiral, were, in the Confuſion caſt foul of one another; and ſo entangled together by their Maſts, Yards, and Rigging, that before they could get clear, an *Engliſh* Fire-ſhip burnt them all. There was in this Engagement eighteen *Dutch* Men of War taken, and fourteen burnt or ſunk, and eight thouſand of their Men kill'd or taken Priſoners. The *Engliſh* loſt but one Ship, and about a thouſand Men; but among them were ſeveral Perſons of Diſtinction, as the Earls of *Falmouth*, *Marlbrough*, and *Portland*; the Lord *Muskerry*, Mr. *Boyle*, Rear Admiral *Sanſon*, and Sir *John Lawſon*, with others of leſs Note.

The *Engliſh* Fleet put to Sea again on the Fifth of *July*, but the *Dutch* Fleet kept out of the way; however, in their way home, they took eight *Dutch* Men of War, with two *Eaſt-India* Men, which were valu'd at a Million Sterling, beſides twenty other Merchant-Ships; and a few Days after, the *Engliſh* fell in with fourteen *Dutch* Merchants, moſt of which they took, as they did alſo four Men of War their Convoy.

At the ſame Time, the Biſhop of *Munſter* (encouraged by the *Engliſh*) fell upon the *Dutch* by Land, and took moſt of the Towns on the River *Yſel*; but by the Aſſiſtance of the *French*, they expell'd him out of their Territories, and made him ſubmit to a ſeparate Peace without conſulting his Ally, the King of *Great Britain*, tho' he had ſupply'd him with large Sums of Money to carry on his War againſt the *Dutch*.

This happen'd in the Year 1665. when the Plague was fatal to *England*; and at the ſame Time both the *French* and the *Danes* engaged in the *Dutch* Intereſt againſt *England*; and to this we may add, that *England* was not true to itſelf, for there was a Party, that not only kept up a Correſpondence

pondence with the *Dutch*, but actually enter'd into their Service; but all these Misfortunes did not deter the *English* from maintaining their War against the *Dutch*.

THE *English* Fleet put to Sea again, under the Command of Prince *Rupert*, and General *Monk*; and on the First of *June* 1666 the *Dutch* with above ninety Sail were at Anchor near *Newport*; which the *English* perceiving, attack'd them, though inferior in Number, and after a smart Engagement for three or four Days, they retired each to their own Coast, the *Dutch* having lost fifteen Men of War, and the *English* ten; the rest of the Ships on both Sides were miserably shatter'd.

BEFORE the End of *July* both Fleets were recruited and augmented to about a hundred Sail on a Side, and the next Engagement the *English* destroy'd twenty Sail of the *Dutch* Men of War, and pursuing them to their own Coast, burnt a hundred and fifty Sail of their Merchant Ships in their own Harbours, and burnt the Town of *Brandaris*, in the Island of *Schelling*; upon which the *Dutch* Populace grew very mutinous, as finding that all their Charges, and Taxes, and fitting out Fleets, amounted to nothing against such an invincible Enemy as the *English*. However, the Admiralty, to keep up the Spirits of the People, fitted out a Fleet the latter End of *August* to join the *French*; but Prince *Rupert* intercepted it, and not only prevented their joining, but in their Attempt so to do, he took a *French* Ship of a thousand Ton, which Loss and Disappointment made the rest glad to retire to their respective Harbours.

THE *Dutch* Commonalty were so enraged to be at such a perpetual Charge to no Purpose, that they were ready to break out into a Rebellion, and five of the seven *United Provinces*, now *united*, to cry out for Peace, declar'd they would no longer contribute to such an unsuccessful War. The *Dutch* to satisfy the enraged Populace, executed some of the Sea Captains for Cowardice or Breach of Orders; but in the Middle of this Combustion, *viz.* the second of *September* 1666, and a Day or two following, the greatest Part of the City of *London* was burnt to the Ground; and if we consider the tender Mercies of the *Dutch*, which at *Amboyna*, *Poloroon*, and other Places where they got us in their Power, were severe Cruelties; and if we further consider that they were then at War with, and never strong enough to obtain an honourable Satisfaction of us; I say when these Things are consider'd, we may leave the Reader to conjecture who were the Authors of that fatal Conflagration, without any Necessity of the *Papists*, or any Denomination of *Protestants* falling out about it.

THE *Dutch* having in some Measure gain'd their Point, first by the Desolation occasion'd by the Plague in 1665, and then by the Fire in 1666, took this Opportunity to make Propofals of Peace to the *English*, which were accordingly agreed upon; and upon this, the *English* supposing they had no Enemies to fear, were remiss in fitting out their Fleet as they had done before; but the *Dutch* continuing to regard their usual self Interest more than Honour or Honesty, sail'd with a Fleet of seventy Men of War to the *Nore*, took *Sheerness*, and detach'd a Squadron up the River *Medway* as high as *Chatham*, and burnt three or four first and second Rate Men of War, which were lying there unrigg'd, and brought off the *Hall* of the Royal *Charles*; but in this Expedition they lost two or three of their own Men of War, which being pilotted by *English* Renegadoes who where not acquainted with the River *Medway*, ran a-ground, and the *Dutch* not daring to stay to attempt to get them off, set them on Fire to prevent the *English* making Prizes of them. In the mean Time the Citizens of *London*, under Apprehensions that the *Dutch* might make the same Progress in the *Thames* as they had in the *Medway*, sunk fourteen or fifteen Ships in the River, to block up the Channel, and erected Batteries upon the Banks, to prevent their sailing up; and thus they continued in Acts of Hostility offensive, and defensive, till the Peace concluded at *Breda* put an End to the Dispute.

English Men of War burnt at *Chatham*.

BUT the Insolence of the *Dutch* continued to that Degree, that they attempted to be Lords of the Ocean, and as such, they in a very unmannerly way, insulted the Subjects of *Great Britain*, *France*, and *Portugal*, in their *East-India*-Trade, as if they had a right to engross it all to themselves; which the *French* King perceiving, endeavour'd to dissolve the Alliance between *England* and *Holland*, which he not only brought about, but managed a further Project that he had in View, which was to form an Alliance with *England* against *Holland*, in order to over-ballance the Power, and suppress the Insolence, of that usurping State.

PURSUANT to this Treaty with *France*, both Kingdoms declar'd War against *Holland* in *March* 1672. and in *April* following the Duke of *Monmouth* join'd the *French* with six thousand *British* Troops in the *Low-Countries*; and with this Army, consisting of an hundred and twenty thousand Men, divided into three Bodies, attack'd the *United Provinces* in three different Places, while the Bishops of *Munster* and *Cologn* attack'd them in a fourth; and they in two Months Time over-run the three Provinces, *Gelderland*, *Overyssel*, and *Utrecht*, with their great Towns, some of which were deem'd impregnable. Thus notwithstanding the Vanity of the *Dutch*, and their ambitious Inscriptions stamp'd on their Medals, as if all the Sea and Land had been their own, yet when attack'd, they made but a miserable Defence, and submitted so entirely to their Enemies, that the *French* King kept his Court at *Utrecht* this Summer.

AT the same Time, the *Dutch* Admiral *Ruyter*, with above an hundred Sail of Men of War, attack'd the united Fleet of *England* and *France* in *Solbay* on the Coast of *Suffolk*; but the Duke of *York*, with the *English* Fleet under his Command, gave the *Dutch* such a hot Breakfast, that they were glad to retire to their own Coast.

THE common People enraged at this ill Success, arraign'd the Conduct of their Magistrates, and unanimously imputed their ill Success to the Want of a Stadtholder; and in this they went so far, that they threatned the State if they were not redress'd, and their Proposal of having a Stadtholder comply'd with; whereupon the two *De-Wits*, *Cornelius* and *John*, notwithstanding their late Grandeur, were forc'd to submit and resign the Power they had so artfully assum'd, and suffer the Repeal of their late Edict, in which they had excluded the Prince of *Orange* from being Stadtholder, or indeed from having any Share in the Government; but by the Repeal of this Edict, he was restor'd to his former Dignity.

AND now the Designs of the aspiring Ministers the *De-Wits* began to appear in their proper Colours, and they were charg'd with betraying their Country to the Enemy, and one of them was stabb'd in the Street by some of the enrag'd Multitude, but not mortally, so that he escap'd at that Time; but *Cornelius* being charg'd afterwards with a Conspiracy against the Prince of *Orange*'s Life, he was sentenced to be banish'd, and his Brother the Pensioner going with a grander Equipage than the Populace thought was proper

proper to be allow'd to fetch a State Criminal from Prison to Banishment, they arose and knock'd down both the Pensioner and his Brother the Prisoner, as they came down Stairs, and afterwards tore them to Pieces, and taking out their Hearts cut them in small Morsels, and distributed them up and down among their Friends. The Actions of the exasperated Multitude were so much approv'd of, that they were never call'd to account for what they had done.

The *Dutch* now began to sue for Peace, tho' at the same Time they maintain'd a War by Sea, as if they had the Vanity to think that they could bring the *English* to Terms with Sword in Hand; and three more Sea-Fights happen'd between the *English* and *Dutch* that Summer, *viz. May* 28. *June* 4. and *August* 11. in all which the *English* beat the *Dutch*, and made them glad to escape to their own Coast. During this War, the *English* took the Island of *Tobago* in the *West Indies* from the *Dutch*.

In the Year 1673. the *French* King finding the Charge of maintaining his Acquisitions in the *United Provinces*, he extorted large Sums of the Inhabitants of the great Towns, and so retreated with his Army out of the *Dutch* Territories; and the three Provinces of *Gelderland*, *Overyssel*, and *Utrecht*, were re-united to the rest, and the Dignity of Stadtholder and Captain General, was confirm'd to the Prince of *Orange*, and settled upon his Heirs male.

About this Time a Peace was concluded between *England* and the *United Provinces*, wherein the *Dutch*, rather than undergo any more of the *English* Discipline, agreed to acknowledge to the *English* the Right of the Flag at Sea, and to pay to his *British* Majesty eight hundred thousand Patacoons, which is near two hundred thousand Pounds; which by the way, seems to me to be a plain Proof, that they had suffered severely by the War, or else they would scarce have bought a Peace so dear of those whom they had so little Respect for.

When the *Dutch* had thus settled Affairs with *England*, and thought they had nothing to fear from that Quarter, they thought themselves strong enough to engage the *French* both by Sea and Land, and accordingly fitted out a Squadron under the Command of their Admiral *Ruyter*, to attack *Martinico* and other *French* Settlements in the *West Indies*, while *Van Tromp* made a Descent upon *Normandy* in *France*: But both these Attempts prov'd abortive, and they return'd without Success; and, to add to their Misfortunes, they suffer'd very much this Year by Storms and Inundations.

In the Year 1675 the *French* took *Liege*, *Dinant*, and *Huy*, from the *Dutch*; and in 1676 they took *Condé*, and put all the Inhabitants to the Sword except about twelve hundred. They also took *Bouchain* that Year; and although the Prince of *Orange* laid Siege to *Maestricht*, then in Possession of the *French*, he was forc'd to raise the Siege, after he had continu'd it two Months. The *French* also in the Year 1677. took *Valenciennes*, *Cambray*, and St. *Omars*; and these made the *States* weary of the War and of their ill Success.

After the Campaign in 1677 was ended, the Prince of *Orange*, afterwards K. *William* III. of *England*, made his Court to the Princess *Mary*, Daughter of *James* Duke of *York*; to which Match King *Charles* agreed, the Prince being his Sister's Son, and the Princess his Brother's Daughter. And on *November* 4. the Marriage Ceremony was perform'd at St. *James*'s by the Bishop of *London*. The P. of *Orange* married

This Affair being compleated, the Prince of *Orange* represented to King *Charles* the weak Condition of the *Spanish Netherlands*, and Danger of their falling into the Hands of the *French*; whereupon King *Charles* agreed, that unless *France* would restore to the Emperor and the Duke of *Lorrain* what they had taken from them, and to the *Spaniards*, the Towns of *Aeth*, *Charleroy*, *Oudenard*, *Courtray*, *Tournay*, *Condé*, and *Valenciennes*, he would join the Confederates, and compel *France* to come into his Measures; and he rais'd an Army accordingly. But the *Dutch*, according to their wonted Integrity and publick Spirit, having got the Allies set to work, made a separate Peace for themselves, which very much damp'd the Success of the next Campaign; and the *French* King at the Head of a great Army march'd into the *Low Countries*, and took *Ghent* and *Ypres* in a Months Time; but King *Charles* sent twenty thousand Men into *Flanders*, and put a Stop to his Progress. And had the *Dutch* continu'd the War in conjunction with their Allies, they might all have had ample Satisfaction for their Losses; but the *Dutch* made separate Terms advantageous to themselves, without any Regard to the Interest of their Allies who had assisted them in their greatest Distress.

CHAP. VII.

Treats of Monmouth's *and* Argyle's *Rebellion and Defeat, and the Continuation of the Life of* William *Prince of* Orange; *his Expedition to* England, *his Landing at* Torbay. *Of King* James's *Abdication; and of the Declaring and Crowning the Prince and Princess of* Orange, *King and Queen of* England.

THE Peace of *Nimeguen* was sign'd in the Year 1678. soon after which, the *States General* sent an Embassy to the Court of *France*, insisting, that their Ambassadors should be receiv'd with the same Marks of Honour as those from Crown'd Heads; whereupon they were for some Time not only deny'd the Honour, but refus'd Audience too; but the *French* King, upon a second Consideration, comply'd with their Demand, probably for politick Reasons; for he still having his Eye upon the *Spanish Netherlands* and *Alsace*, thought he might well afford them such a Compliment if that would induce them to stand Neuter, while he pursu'd his Conquests in those Territories.

The *French* King, in the Year 1680. propos'd to the *States*, that they should enter into a Defensive Alliance with him, which the *States* did not seem to be much against; but the *British* Minister at the *Hague* declar'd, that if that was

brought about, his Master could not look upon it as any other than intended against him, and used Arguments against it, that the *States* entirely declin'd it.

The *French* made perpetually such Encroachments upon the *Rhine*, that the Emperor, for the Security of his Frontiers, entred into an Alliance with the *States* and *Sweden*; at which the *French* King was so exasperated, that he seiz'd the Principality of *Orange* in *France*, and detain'd it in his own Possession, notwithstanding the Remonstrances of the *English* as well as the *Dutch* to the contrary.

While the *English*, jointly with the *Dutch*, were disputing with the *French* King, as to the Illegality of his new Acquisitions, and *England* was using its utmost Interest in Defence of the *Dutch*, and their Property in *Europe*; those, our grateful and dear Allies, were at the same Time robbing and plundering us in *Asia*, and seizing our Settlements and Factories in *India*. They cunningly waiting an Opportunity in a Time of Peace, which doubtless they were sensible was the Time to find us the least guarded. This Time they took the Advantage of to seize our Port of *Bantam* in *Java*, though they were at the same Time imploring our Assistance and Protection against their Enemies in the Western Parts of *Europe*.

The *Dutch* seize *Bantam*.

In the Year 1684. the Duke of *Monmouth*, natural Son of King *Charles* II. and the Earl of *Argyle*, being fled into the *Low Countries*, and hearing of the Death of King *Charles*, and the Accession of King *James* II. they jointly contrived to raise an Insurrection, one in *Scotland* and the other in the West of *England*; and for that End, bought up great Quantities of Arms and Ammunition in *Holland*. But King *James* being appriz'd of the Design, requir'd the *States* to deliver them up; whereupon the Duke of *Monmouth* retired to *Brussels*; but he returning afterwards to *Holland*, he and *Argyle* prepar'd for their intended Expedition. *Argyle* being first ready embark'd on *May* 2. 1685. for *Scotland* and the *Orkneys*, and there met with a cold, or rather a warm Reception; for his Secretary and Surgeon being ashore, were both seiz'd and sent to *Edinburgh*, and *Argyle* finding himself pursu'd by the King's Forces, fled towards *Glasgow*; but despairing of an Escape, he run into a Bog up to the Neck, and was there knock'd down and taken Prisoner on the Seventeenth of *June*, and was beheaded the thirtieth of the same Month at *Edinburgh*, where *Rumbald* was also executed by the Halter for being concern'd with others in the *Rye-House* Plot.

Monmouth and *Argyle*.

But notwithstanding, *Argyle*'s Miscarriage, the Duke of *Monmouth* hired a Man of War of thirty two Guns, with three small Vessels, and Arms for five thousand Men, for his intended Expedition against *England*. The Prince of *Orange* begining to have a distant View of the Crown of *England*, both he and the *States* were very averse to *Monmouth*'s Design, not so much for *England*'s Safety, as from a Supposition, that if *Monmouth* should succeed, it might for ever destroy the Hopes of the Prince of *Orange* mounting the Throne of *England*. Whereupon the *States* sent over the six *English* Regiments which had been in their Service, to the Assistance of King *James* and the Defence of his Kingdoms.

Monmouth's Landing.

On the Eleventh of *June*, he with his small Squadron appear'd before *Lyme* in *Dorsetshire*, where he landed with not above an hundred Men, and set up his Standard in the Market-place at *Lyme*, and caused his Declaration to be read, in which he charged King *James* (to whom he gave only the Title of Duke of *York*) with Usurpation and Tyranny, with assassinating the Earl of *Essex*, and even with poisoning his Brother the late King *Charles*. He declared, he would pursue the said Duke of *York* as a mortal Enemy, and endeavour to have Justice executed upon him, *&c.* at which, Numbers of the Populace came over to him, and his small Army increas'd from less than an hundred to a considerable Number.

On the other hand, King *James* acquainted both Houses of Parliament with the Duke's Landing, and they attended his Majesty with an Address, promising to stand by him with their Lives and Fortunes. They then pass'd a Bill of Attainder of High-Treason against the Duke, and desired his Majesty to set a Reward of five thousand Pounds upon his Head. In the mean Time, the Duke marching from *Lyme* to *Taunton Dean*, by the Way his Army was increas'd to five or six thousand Men. And here he assum'd the Title of King, and was proclaim'd accordingly.

On the Twenty First of *June* he advanc'd to *Bridgwater*, the Militia generally either flying before him or coming over to him, but few or none opposing him; and those that would, durst not, the Country seeming more enclined to the Duke than the King, till his Majesty sent down a Body of regular Troops, commanded by the E. of *Feversham* and L. *Churchill*, who totally defeated the Duke on the Sixth of *July* 1685. The Duke himself made his Escape; but on the Eighth of *July* he was found in a Ditch, hid under some Fern in a very disconsolate Condition; and being taken, was brought Prisoner to *London*; and that Day Week that he was taken, he was beheaded on *Great Tower Hill*.

This Scene being thus closed, and no Insurrection in *England* now to be feared, the *English* Ambassador at the *Hague*, presented repeated Memorials to the *States*, to complain of their taking *Bantam*, and to solicit the Restitution of it; but all in vain; the Honourable *Dutch* considering more what Advantage it was of to them than what just Property they had in it. He demanded also, that Dr. *Burnet*, and some other Conspirators against K. *James*, should be deliver'd up to Justice, they being then shelter'd in *Holland*. But the *Dutch* being now concerting Measures for an Insurrection in *England*, and the Doctor being in this Case a fit Tool for their Purpose, the *States* would not comply with the Demand, probably, lest he should make some Discovery of their Intrigues; only the six *British* Regiments that had been lent to the *States*, they sent back upon Demand.

But on the other hand, King *James*'s Male-Administration in *England* gave the *Dutch* still more Encouragement to hope to succeed in an Invasion of *England*; for King *James* had alienated the Hearts of his Protestant Subjects from him, by introducing Popish Officers in to Places of Trust and Profit, both in Ecclesiastical, Civil, and Military Employments. This Management of King *James*, laid the People of *England* under dreadful Apprehensions that Popery and Slavery were approaching; and so many of King *James*'s Schemes tending that way, they began to be confirm'd in a Belief of the Prince of *Wales*'s Illegitimacy, and that it was only a Contrivance to keep *Mary* Princess of *Orange* from any View of succeeding to the Crown of *England*.

But it is to be suppos'd, that the cunning *Dutch* had still further Views; for being conscious how barbarously they had used the *English* at *Amboyna*, *Banda*, &c. as has been largely treated of in the former Part of this Book, it was to be supposed King *James* would endeavour to make Reprisals, and recover in the several Parts of the *East Indies*, what the voracious *Dutch* had so unjustly taken from the *English*. Whereas the *Dutch* thought it

if they could give us a King, it was to be hop'd they ſhould never more be reproach'd with their Encroachments upon the *Britiſh* Trade and Property in the *Eaſt-Indies*. And indeed had King *James* been faithful to his Coronation Oath, and the Intereſt of the Proteſtant Religion in *England*, there had been no Occaſion for his Abdication, or for us to diſpenſe with the Loſs of any Part of our Trade, Property, or Intereſt, for the Security of our Religion.

ANOTHER View that the *Dutch* might have in taking the Advantage of King *James*'s Male-Adminiſtration, (for I never affirm'd that all their Attempts were grounded ſincerely upon the Intereſt of the true *Proteſtant* Religion) might be that if the Prince of *Orange* was once plac'd at the Head of the *Britiſh* Forces, he would doubtleſs endeavour to defend their Frontiers againſt *France*, and perhaps enlarge them too, at whoſe Expence ſoever it might happen.

KING *James* beginning to be apprehenſive of an Invaſion from *Holland*, (and the *Engliſh* at the ſame time being apprehenſive of the precarious Condition of their Religion and Liberties,) he began to impoſe illegal and unpopular Things upon his Subjects, and they in return, grew Malecontents, and ready to reach forth their Hands to the firſt Competitor. This Diſcontent amounted to ſuch a height that the Soldiers and Sailors began to deſert, and in ſhort the Prime Miniſter and others of the Council, many of the Biſhops, Nobility, and Gentry, as alſo the Generals and Admirals, join'd in an Invitation to the Prince of *Orange* to come over to defend them from Popery and Slavery, and ſecure their Religion and Liberty.

IN this great Undertaking, the Emperor and moſt of the *German* Princes, with the Kings of *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Spain*, and even the Pope himſelf, were ready to ſupport him; an apprehending that as King *James* ſhew'd ſo many Marks of Favour to the *Roman Catholicks*, he might be inclined to unite his Forces with thoſe of *France*, and then the next Attempt would be to reduce all the Powers of *Europe* to the Mercy of *Lewis* XIV. To prevent which, the Prince of *Orange* and the *States* reſolv'd to attempt a Revolution in *England*, and in order thereto, fitted out fifty Men of War, and five hundred Tranſports, for the Expedition; and beſides the Compliment of Sailors, embark'd fourteen or fifteen thouſand of their beſt Troops aboard the ſaid Fleet; and leſt the King of *France* ſhould take the Advantage of the Abſence of the ſaid Troops, they were ſupply'd by Forces from *Sweden*.

KING *James*, who did not want Intelligence of all thoſe Preparations againſt him, began to think how he might retrieve the Affections of his Subjects; which he by his Male-Adminiſtration had loſt, and the firſt Step that he took, was was to reſtore the Biſhops to their Authority and Privileges: He alſo reſtor'd the Charter of *London*, and ſeveral Corporations, which he had taken from them; he diſplac'd moſt of the *Popiſh* Officers and Magiſtrates that he had advanc'd, and degraded the Prime Miniſter, by whoſe Advice he had been precipitated into thoſe deſtructive Meaſures.

BUT all this formal Reſtitution came too late, and the concurrent Circumſtances proved it be the Effect of Neceſſity rather than Choice, and made no Alteration either in the Affections of the *Engliſh* Subjects, or in the Prince of *Orange*'s Reſolution; for he embark'd his Forces, and publiſh'd a Declaration, dated *October* the tenth, 1688; charging King *James* with Male-Adminiſtration, and impoſing a pretended Prince of *Wales* upon the Nation, &c. and declaring, on the other hand, that his Expedition was intended to procure a free Parliament, to whom he would refer the Enquiry into the Legitimacy of the pretended Prince of *Wales*, to reſtore the Conſtitution of the Government to its antient legal State, and to ſecure the People againſt Popery and Arbitrary Power.

THE Prince having aſſembled a Fleet of fifty Line-of-Battle Ships, twenty five Frigates, and as many Fire-Ships, and between four and five hundred Tranſports, on board of which he embark'd ten thouſand Horſe, and four thouſand Foot, on the Nineteenth of *October* he ſet ſail from the *Briel*, being accompany'd by ſeveral Noblemen and Perſons of Quality. The Prince himſelf was in a thirty Gun Frigate, ſtation'd in the Center of the Fleet; his Flag at the main Top-maſt Head was the Arms of the Prince and Princeſs, the Motto, *The Proteſtant Religion and Liberties of* England. They had been but a few Hours at Sea, till a Storm drove them back to *Helvoetſluys*; but on the Firſt of *November* they put to Sea again, and the Prince, with the greateſt Part of his Troops, landed in *Torbay Nov.* 5. 1688. Prince of Orange lands.

THE Prince being ſafely landed, advanc'd on the Eighth of *November* to *Exeter*, but the People were a little ſhye of joining him, (the Duke of *Monmouth*'s late Miſcarriage making them ſo cautious,) that he did not think proper to proceed any further, till he had fully uted Means to find how the Country ſtood affected; and ſuch cool Returns of Intelligence were brought him, that it began to be a private Debate whether he and his Forces ſhould not reimbark and return to *Holland*.

BUT a Week's time alter'd the Face of Affairs; for on the Fifteenth of *November* great Numbers of the neighbouring Gentry came in, who propos'd to enter into an Aſſociation with the Prince, never to ſeparate till their Religion and Liberties were ſecured to them by a free Parliament, &c. This Inſtrument being drawn up, and ſign'd by the Nobility and Gentry about the Prince, it was ſent to *Oxford*, and ſeveral other Places, where it was ſign'd, and at the ſame time there were Inſurrections in moſt Parts of the Kingdom in the Prince's Favour.

KING *James* obſerving this general Defection, or Revolt, through the whole Kingdom, went down to *Salisbury*, to try if his Preſence would animate his Troops againſt the Prince of *Orange*; but to his great Surprize, the Earl of *Faverſham* his General acquainted his Majeſty, that although they would have ſtood by him to the laſt of their Blood and Fortunes upon any other Occaſion, they could not in Conſcience ſerve againſt the Prince, who was come to procure a free Parliament for the Security of their Religion and Liberties. The next Day the Lord *Churchil*, the King's chief Favourite, with the Duke of *Grafton*, and many of his Officers and Soldiers, went over to the Prince. The King finding himſelf thus deſerted, return'd to *London*, accompany'd by *George* Prince of *Denmark*, the Duke of *Ormond*, and others of the firſt Quality as far as *Andover*; but there they alſo forſook him; and when he arriv'd at *White-Hall*, which was *November* 26. he found his Daughter, *Anne* Princeſs of *Denmark*, had alſo withdrawn herſelf; all which griev'd him ſo much, that he was heard to ſay at the Entering of his Apartment, *God help me, my own Children have forſaken me.*

IN this Diſtreſs he ſummon'd a Parliament, and by the Advice of what Members were then preſent, he granted a Pardon to all who had join'd the Prince, either before or ſince his Landing; adding, that he would depute ſome Lords to treat with the Prince about an Accommodation, with a Promiſe, that he would immediately diſ-

charge

charge all *Roman Catholicks* from all Places of Profit or Truſt; and the Marqueſs of *Haliſax*, the Earl of *Rocheſter*, and the Lord *Godolphin*, were commiſſion'd to treat with the Prince of *Orange* accordingly; and when this Affair came to be debated, the Prince demanded,

1. That all Papiſts ſhould be diſarm'd, and remov'd out of all Employments or Places of Truſt.

2. That all Proclamations againſt him or his Adherents ſhould be recall'd.

3. That the Tower of *London*, and *Tilbury Fort*, ſhould be put into the Hands of the City of *London*.

4. That if his Majeſty remain in *London* during the Sitting of Parliament, the Prince may alſo be there with an equal Number of Troops, *&c.* and that Part of the publick Revenue be apply'd for the Subſiſtance of the Troops.

The Popiſh Party dreaded the Meeting of a Proteſtant Parliament, as concluding that Reprisals would be made upon them for paſt Miſcarriages; and the King apprehending that ſuch Reſtrictions would be laid upon him that he would be little more than a Cypher in the Government, and relying on the *French* King to reſtore him to his former Dignity, he choſe to retire to *France*, in hopes to recover his Fortune, and return again with Honour. And in Purſuit of this Scheme, he ſent his Queen, and his ſuppos'd Son, an Infant, about half a Year old, (being ſaid to be born the Tenth of *June* before) to *Calais*, and the following Night, the King took water at *White-Hall*; and in croſſing the *Thames*, he threw the Broad Seal into the River, which ſome afterwards took as an Evidence of his Abdication.

The Prince of *Orange* being in the Weſt of *England* when King *James* went away, the Officers of the Army then in Town met at *Whitehall*, and ſent an Expreſs to the Prince of *Orange* to invite him up, and to aſſure him they would aſſiſt the Lord-Mayor in keeping the City quiet till his Arrival. At the ſame Time the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, with ſeveral Lords, Spiritual and Temporal, aſſembled at *Guildhall*, and ſignified to the Lord Mayor, that they had agreed to apply to the Prince of *Orange*, and to aſſiſt him in obtaining a Free Parliament; and that they would, in the mean Time, endeavour to preſerve the Peace of the City, by diſ-arming Papiſts, and otherwiſe ſuppreſſing the contrary Party; they alſo took the Keys of the Tower from Colonel *Skelton*, and gave them to the Lord *Lucas*, (one of the Prince's Party) at which the Prince was pleas'd extremely.

At the ſame time the Mob aſſembled, and demoliſh'd the Maſs-Houſes, and plunder'd the Houſes of *Roman* Catholick Perſons of Quality, particularly thoſe of the *Spaniſh* and *Florentine* Ambaſſadors, where many rich *Roman* Catholicks had lodg'd their beſt Effects; they alſo fell upon Lord Chancellor *Jefferies*, and had pull'd him to Pieces, had not he been ſecured in the Tower, at his own Requeſt.

The Earl of *Feverſham* being now at *Uxbridge* with the Army, and hearing of King *James*'s withdrawing, diſbanded the Army, and turn'd them out of Pay on a ſudden; by which they became deſtitute of proper means of Subſiſtance, and committed many Irregularities to procure neceſſary Supplies.

The King by this time being got as far as *Feverſham*, on the Coaſt of *Kent*, was there detain'd by contrary Winds, or ſome other Accident. The Officers, Seamen, and even Fiſhermen too, ſearch'd the Veſſels that came that way; and under a Pretence of ſearching for Popiſh Prieſts, they pillaged the Paſſengers; and the Veſſel that King *James* was in happen'd to fall into their Hands, and they plunder'd him of four hundred Guineas, and ſome Seals and Jewels that he put a greater Value upon than ordinary: But when they found who he was they return'd him all the Plunder again. However, the King diſtributed the Gold among them, and thank'd them for the Jewels, *&c.* that they had return'd to him. After this they conducted him to an Inn in the Town, where he ſent for the Earl of *Winchelſea*, who was then at his Seat in that Neighbourhood; who coming to him, prevail'd upon the King not to proceed on his Voyage, but to return to *London*; and the Privy Council, hearing where he was, ſent for him to return; whereupon he return'd to *London*, and was receiv'd with Illuminations, Ringing of Bells, and other Demonſtrations of Joy, as if he had return'd from ſome glorious Expedition; which kind Reception of the King was doubtleſs very ſurpriſing to the Prince of *Orange*, and what might increaſe the Surprize, was, that the King ſent the Earl of *Feverſham* to invite him to St. *James*'s Palace; which the Prince reſented, as thinking that he could go to St. *James*'s without the King's Invitation, and thereupon he made the Earl of *Feverſham* Priſoner, and ſign'd an Order for King *James* to remove out of the Palace at *Whitehall* the Seventeenth Inſtant, and order'd the *Dutch* Guards to take Poſſeſſion of the Poſts about *Whitehall* that Night by Force, if the King's Guards did not reſign without making the leaſt Reſiſtance; and they reſign'd accordingly.

When the *Dutch* Guards had thus taken Poſſeſſion of *Whitehall*, (though the King himſelf had not quitted it) three Lords were ſent by the Prince to the King, with a poſitive Order to leave *Whitehall*, and retire to *Ham*; the King readily comply'd as to quitting *Whitehall*, but deſired that *Rocheſter* might be the Place aſſign'd for his Retirement, to which the Prince agreed, but deny'd the King his own Guards or Coaches to convey him by Land, but compell'd him to go by Water to *Graveſend*, notwithſtanding the Rigour of the Seaſon, it being in the Winter 1688; all which the King ſubmitted to.

At the ſame Time, and ſome ſay on the ſame Day, that the King left *London*, the Prince appear'd in publick, and receiv'd the Compliments of the Nobility, Gentry, and City, and of the whole Populace; who, as a Teſtimony of their Zeal for the Prince, plunder'd the Houſes of all Papiſts in general, both Gentry, Nobility, and foreign Miniſters; and the King finding no hopes of retrieving his declining Fortune, took the Opportunity of a dark Night, and went on board of a Ship provided for him on the Morning of the twenty third of *December*, and was ſoon landed in *France*, to the great Joy of both Parties, both his own Friends, who were glad of his Safety, and of the Party of the Prince, who, on the other Hand, were as glad to be rid of him.

The Prince of *Orange* began now to act as ſupreme, and, by the Advice of about ſixty Lords and a hundred and fifty Commoners, beſides *Scotch* Nobility and Gentry, he ſent Letters to the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and to the ſeveral Counties, Univerſities, Cities, Boroughs, *&c.* directing them to chuſe Members to repreſent them in Parliament; the Notice of the Elections to be publiſh'd in Churches, and the Parliament to meet at *Weſtminſter January* the twenty ſecond 1688-9.

King *James*, after his Arrival in *France*, ſtill expreſs'd a Deſire of being recall'd, as appear'd by his writing to the Privy Council, and intimating to them, that he had taken away all Cauſes of

of Diſcontent, and redreſs'd the Grievances which the Prince of *Orange* had alledged as the Cauſe of his Invaſion. That he deſired nothing more than a Free Parliament, and, in ſhort, he propoſed, or at leaſt pretended, to conform to what they ſhould deſire for the Liberty and Security of the Religion and Properties of his People; and with theſe Promiſes he likewiſe ask'd their Advice concerning his Return to *England*; but all his Promiſes and Propoſals were now too late, the burnt Child dreads the Fire, and not much Regard is paid either to his Propoſals or Promiſes.

THE Prince of *Orange* having thus got Footing, he attempted to aſſume the ſole Government to himſelf, excluſive of his Conſort, *Mary* Princeſs of *Orange*, but that the Parliament would not agree to; but on the Thirteenth of *February*, 1668-9, they declar'd *the Prince and Princeſs of* Orange *to be King and Queen of* England *during their Lives, and the Life of the longer Liver of them, but that the ſole Exerciſe of the Regal Power be only in, and executed by, the ſaid Prince of* Orange; and after their Deceaſe to the Heirs of the ſaid Princeſs of *Orange*; but in Default of ſuch Iſſue to Princeſs *Ann* of *Denmark* and her Heirs; and in Default of ſuch Iſſue to the Heirs of the ſaid Prince of *Orange*; and, purſuant to this Declaration, the Prince took upon him the Title and Authority of King.

BUT all the Diſpute was not yet over; for the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, with the Biſhops of *Glouceſter*, *Ely*, *Norwich*, *Bath and Wells*, and *Peterborough*, refuſed to take the Oaths to King *William*; and about the Middle of *March* the Royal *Scotch* Regiment of Horſe, and a great Part of *Dunbarton's* Regiment, declared for King *James*, and march'd towards *Scotland*; but a Detatchment of the *Dutch* being ſent after them, they brought them back Priſoners to *London*; and the Malecontents being thus ſuppreſs'd, and all Things tollerably quiet, on the Eleventh of *April*, 1689, the Prince and Princeſs of *Orange* were crown'd King and Queen of *England*, &c. but it it was ſome Months before they were ſo generally own'd in *Scotland*, till King *James's* Intereſt declined, and his Party was routed, and King *William* and Queen *Mary* continued in the peaceable Poſſeſſion of the Throne; where we will leave them till we come to treat of *England*, the Remainder of their Hiſtory being moſt proper to be handled under the Denomination of their being King and Queen of *England*.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Nature of the Soil, and the Produce of the Country, as to their Plants and Animals; with an Account of their Fiſhery, &c.

IT has been obſerv'd before, that the Land of *Holland* is upon a low flat, and has numberleſs Canals cut for Conveniency of a Communication by Water; only the Weſtern Coaſt next the Sea, is high ſandy Banks, as if Nature had ordain'd it for the Defence of the Country; but this ſandy Soil produces little but Herbage for the Rabbits, and ſerves them to make Burrows for their ſhelter; and as they are not very ſteep towards the Sea, there are very pleaſant Tracks, which afford an exceeding pleaſant Proſpect towards the Sea, and the Ships ſailing along the Coaſt.

THE Country within theſe barren ſandy Coaſts is either arable or rich Paſture, except where it is marſhy rotten Ground, where they dig up a ſort of a Turf, call'd in the North of *England* Peat, which is excellent Firing when dry; their Meadow or Paſture is generally drown'd, or overflow'd in the Winter Time; but when, by the Approach of the Sun in the beginning of Summer, aſſiſted by Windmils, and other Machines for draining the Ground, it begins to dry, the Water leaves a fat Slime behind it, which makes it exceeding fruitful; which gives them an Opportunity of making vaſt Quantities of as good Cheeſe and Butter as any in *Europe*. They have pretty good Plantations of Hemp and Flax, but they have ſo much Shipping, that they are nevertheleſs fore'd to fetch Supplies of Hemp from *Germany* and the *Baltick*. They have ſcarce any Timber, except in the Provinces of *Utrecht* and *Gelderland*, where high and low Lands, Woods, and Champaign, are interſpers'd as in *England*.

THEY delight in Gardens, Orchards, and Flowers; they have no Minerals; their common Grain is common Wheat, Buck-Wheat, Rye, Peaſe, Barley and Beans. Their Cattle are very large, and thoſe that give Milk afford great Quantities. They have tame Fowls as in *England*, and of Wild-Fowls the Stork is the moſt familiar, like our Swallows, for it builds on the Tops of their Chimneys, but is about the bigneſs of our Heron; and they are as tender of hurting or abuſing them as we in *England* are of the Swallows or Robin-red-breaſts, as thinking it ominous to do them any Damage; when their young Brood is able to fly, they, along with the old ones, take their Flight about the beginning of *Auguſt*, (as ſome think to *Africa*, or ſome warmer Country,) and return again in *February*. There are likewiſe Geeſe, Ducks, and other Water Fowls; as alſo Patridges, Snipes, Quails, Pigeons, &c. Their River Fiſh is Salmon, Perch, Trout, Jack, and Eels. Their Sea-Fiſh Haddocks, Soles, Haberdine, Sturgeon, Mackerel, Smelts, Crabs, and other Shell-Fiſh; but Oyſters are ſcarce upon this Coaſt.

The three great Fiſheries.

THE three grand Fiſheries of *Holland*, are the Herring-Fiſhery, the Whale-Fiſhery, and the Cod-Fiſhery; in which laſt Branch, the Herring-Fiſhery alone, the *Dutch* in *De Witte's* Time employ'd no leſs than a thouſand Sail, from twenty four to thirty Ton; and ſince that they employ ſtill larger Veſſels, *viz.* from thirty to fifty Ton, and as many of them. The Number of Sailors employ'd in the Fiſhing Trade, and in the Buſſes and other Veſſels that are employ'd to carry and diſperſe them to moſt Parts of *Europe*, in this Trade, amongſt the reſt, makes thoſe maritime Provinces become ſuch Nurſeries for Seamen; of which Faculty it is now reckon'd, by a moderate Computation, that there are no leſs than fourſcore thouſand Hands employ'd.

The Manner of their fiſhing for Herrings.

AS to their Manner of fiſhing for Herrings, the Buſſes are ſent out three times a Year, of which the firſt is begun on Midſummer Day, when they begin their fiſhing on the Coaſt of *Scotland*

of Diſcontent, and redreſs'd the Grievances which the Prince of *Orange* had alledged as the Cauſe of his Invaſion. That he deſired nothing more than a Free Parliament, and, in ſhort, he propoſed, or at leaſt pretended, to conform to what they ſhould deſire for the Liberty and Security of the Religion and Properties of his People; and with theſe Promiſes he likewiſe ask'd their Advice concerning his Return to *England*; but all his Promiſes and Propoſals were now too late, the burnt Child dreads the Fire, and not much Regard is paid either to his Propoſals or Promiſes.

The Prince of *Orange* having thus got Footing, he attempted to aſſume the ſole Government to himſelf, excluſive of his Conſort, *Mary* Princeſs of *Orange*, but that the Parliament would not agree to; but on the Thirteenth of *February*, 1668-9, they declar'd *the Prince and Princeſs of* Orange *to be King and Queen of* England *during their Lives, and the Life of the longer Liver of them, but that the ſole Exerciſe of the Regal Power be only in, and executed by, the ſaid Prince of* Orange; and after their Deceaſe to the Heirs of the ſaid Princeſs of *Orange*; but in Default of ſuch Iſſue to Princeſs *Ann* of *Denmark* and her Heirs; and in Default of ſuch Iſſue to the Heirs of the ſaid Prince of *Orange*; and, purſuant to this Declaration, the Prince took upon him the Title and Authority of King.

But all the Diſpute was not yet over; for the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, with the Biſhops of *Glouceſter*, *Ely*, *Norwich*, *Bath and Wells*, and *Peterborough*, refuſed to take the Oaths to King *William*; and about the Middle of *March* the Royal *Scotch* Regiment of Horſe, and a great Part of *Dunbarton*'s Regiment, declared for King *James*, and march'd towards *Scotland*; but a Detatchment of the *Dutch* being ſent after them, they brought them back Priſoners to *London*; and the Malecontents being thus ſuppreſs'd, and all Things tollerably quiet, on the Eleventh of *April*, 1689, the Prince and Princeſs of *Orange* were crown'd King and Queen of *England*, &c. but it it was ſome Months before they were ſo generally own'd in *Scotland*, till King *James*'s Intereſt declined, and his Party was routed, and King *William* and Queen *Mary* continued in the peaceable Poſſeſſion of the Throne; where we will leave them till we come to treat of *England*, the Remainder of their Hiſtory being moſt proper to be handled under the Denomination of their being King and Queen of *England*.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Nature of the Soil, and the Produce of the Country, as to their Plants and Animals; with an Account of their Fiſhery, &c.

It has been obſerv'd before, that the Land of *Holland* is upon a low flat, and has numberleſs Canals cut for Convenieney of a Communication by Water; only the Weſtern Coaſt next the Sea, is high ſandy Banks, as if Nature had ordain'd it for the Defence of the Country; but this ſandy Soil produces little but Herbage for the Rabbits, and ſerves them to make Burrows for their ſhelter; and as they are not very ſteep towards the Sea, there are very pleaſant Tracks, which afford an exceeding pleaſant Proſpect towards the Sea, and the Ships ſailing along the Coaſt.

The Country within theſe barren ſandy Coaſts is either arable or rich Paſture, except where it is marſhy rotten Ground, where they dig up a ſort of a Turf, call'd in the North of *England* Peat, which is excellent Firing when dry; their Meadow or Paſture is generally drown'd, or overflow'd in the Winter Time; but when, by the Approach of the Sun in the beginning of Summer, aſſiſted by Windmils, and other Machines for draining the Ground, it begins to dry, the Water leaves a fat Slime behind it, which makes it exceeding fruitful; which gives them an Opportunity of making vaſt Quantities of as good Cheeſe and Butter as any in *Europe*. They have pretty good Plantations of Hemp and Flax, but they have ſo much Shipping, that they are nevertheleſs fore'd to fetch Supplies of Hemp from *Germany* and the *Baltick*. They have ſcarce any Timber, except in the Provinces of *Utrecht* and *Gelderland*, where high and low Lands, Woods, and Champaign, are interſpers'd as in *England*.

They delight in Gardens, Orchards, and Flowers; they have no Minerals; their common Grain is common Wheat, Buck-Wheat, Rye, Peaſe, Barley and Beans. Their Cattle are very large, and thoſe that give Milk afford great Quantities. They have tame Fowls as in *England*, and of Wild-Fowls the Stork is the moſt familiar, like our Swallows, for it builds on the Tops of their Chimneys, but is about the bigneſs of our Heron; and they are as tender of hurting or abuſing them as we in *England* are of the Swallows or Robin-red-breaſts, as thinking it ominous to do them any Damage; when their young Brood is able to fly, they, along with the old ones, take their Flight about the beginning of *Auguſt*, (as ſome think to *Africa*, or ſome warmer Country,) and return again in *February*. There are likewiſe Geeſe, Ducks, and other Water Fowls; as alſo Patridges, Snipes, Quails, Pigeons, &c. Their River Fiſh is Salmon, Perch, Trout, Jack, and Eels. Their Sea-Fiſh Haddocks, Soles, Haberdine, Sturgeon, Mackerel, Smelts, Crabs, and other Shell-Fiſh; but Oyſters are ſcarce upon this Coaſt.

The three great Fiſheries.

The three grand Fiſheries of *Holland*, are the Herring-Fiſhery, the Whale-Fiſhery, and the Cod-Fiſhery; in which laſt Branch, the Herring-Fiſhery alone, the *Dutch* in *De Witt*'s Time employ'd no leſs than a thouſand Sail, from twenty four to thirty Ton; and ſince that they employ ſtill larger Veſſels, *viz.* from thirty to fifty Ton, and as many of them. The Number of Sailors employ'd in the Fiſhing Trade, and in the Buſſes and other Veſſels that are employ'd to carry and diſperſe them to moſt Parts of *Europe*, in this Trade, amongſt the reſt, makes thoſe maritime Provinces become ſuch Nurſeries for Seamen; of which Faculty it is now reckon'd, by a moderate Computation, that there are no leſs than fourſcore thouſand Hands employ'd.

The Manner of their fiſhing for Herrings.

As to their Manner of fiſhing for Herrings, the Buſſes are ſent out three times a Year, of which the firſt is begun on Midſummer Day, when they begin their fiſhing on the Coaſt of *Scotland*

Scotland and *Shetland*, and this Trade they hold till *September*, when the Busses come home to *Holland* to unload; and then come over to the Coast of *England*, and, without regard to Right or Property, fall in with our *Yarmouth* Fishery, upon the Coast of *Norfolk* and *Lincolnshire*, and near the Mouth of the *Humber*, and here they can frequently make two Trips a Year, the Season not being over till about *November*.

I SHALL not enter into a particular Calculation of the annual Profit the *Dutch* make by the Herring Fishery, because the best of what can be done of that kind, is but grounded upon a probable Supposition; however, those who have undertaken to make a just Calculation, tell us, that they make two Millions Sterling a Year, clear of all Expences, besides the Advantage to the Mechanicks employ'd in making Nets and Casks, and also in salting, curing, and packing the Herrings, *&c.* added to that grand Article of building and making Rigging for the Ships employ'd in that Trade, and their cunning, but just, Method of employing their own Natives in all their own Business, without a new-fangled Way of employing Foreigners, and letting their own Natives suffer for want of Employment. These Things are doubtless an infinite Advantage to *Holland*, in employing their own Natives, and keeping their Cash to circulate amongst themselves; and this may doubtless give some less cautious Nations reason to envy the Prosperity of the *Dutch*.

BUT it may be objected, that if the *Dutch* make such a prodigious Advantage of the Herring Fishery, why cannot the *English* do the same, or more? Their Situation is as near, and they seem in all Respects to have as good an Opportunity as the *Dutch*, or rather better, to make an Advantage of this Trade. But what is commonly answer'd to this is, that *we do not understand the right Method of curing Herrings so well as they do, and that therefore ours cannot come to a Market till theirs are all sold.* But, by way of Reply, I must beg leave to think that, except we affect this Ignorance, or for *political*, or other Reasons, indulge ourselves in it, we have little Reason to think that this grand Secret is so peculiar to them, as if it was beyond the Reach of an *English-man* to comprehend it. Indeed if we have not Ambition enough to equal, or exceed them, though it was in our Power, we may resign the Honour to them, and own ourselves oblig'd to them; as might probably be the Case in our late Whale Fishery; where a Ship was not thought well fitted out without *Dutch* Harponiers, *&c.* which was, in other Words, putting our Success into the Hands of the *Dutch*. And I think our late *Greenland* Trade in the Whale Fishery, as carried on by the South-Sea-Company, has proved the fatal Consequence of it. I hope the few that now use the Trade will employ *English-men*, (Harponiers and others) and not give both our Interest and Reputation away.

SOME add indeed, that, considering their Industry and Ingenuity in first importing Timber from *Germany*, and then cutting it with their Saw-Mills, *&c.* they can build Ships cheaper than we. I would answer, I humbly conceive that *England* affords as good Timber, or better, than any in *Holland*, and this Island has so many navigable Rivers, that the Conveyance of it from Place to Place cannot be so dear as in a main Continent, where Water-Carriage cannot be had. Our Plenty of Brooks for Water-Mills, and our Ascents and rising Grounds for Wind-Mills, give us as good, if not a better, Opportunity for sawing of Timber by those Machines than they have in *Holland*; and if they find so great an Advantage in it as is suggested, I am surpriz'd that the *English* do not follow their Example, since they were not before them in the Invention.

BUT I allow that our Plenty of Timber, and their Scarcity of it, may be a great Reason for their Herring Trade in the *Baltick* exceeding ours, and that very much; for when they carry Herrings there they can load back with Corn and Timber; both which Articles come to a good Market there, as being scarce; but these Goods, being the native Product of *England*, would not turn to any Account if brought from abroad. So that if the *English* should carry Herrings to the *Baltick* they would have no Advantage but what the Freight of Herrings produced, which would not answer the Charge.

BUT what I account one of the best Articles in their Herring Trade is the Rivers *Rhine* and *Maes*, by which they supply all the Country at some Distance, on each Side of both; for they run through the *United Provinces*, and maintain a compleat Communication between the Sea and the Land, on, or at some Distance from, the Banks of both these Rivers by way of *Holland*: And what still further encourages the Herring Trade there, is, their taking the product Merchandize and Manufactures of those Countries in return; and hence it is that many Toys and Curiosities are had so cheap at *Holland*; for were they to sell them at prime Cost they would be equal to ready Money in the Herring Trade, and what they get more is an additional Advantage.

THE next Branch is the Whale Fishery. These Water Animals afford Oil and Whale-bone, which turns out to such Advantage, that if a Ship catch but one Whale they do not think it a losing Voyage. The Whale-bone grows in the Mouth of the Whale, under the Tongue, and on each Side of it; but I shall not enlarge here upon the Whale-Fishery, that having been largely treated of in the History of *Greenland*. The Whale Fishery.

THE third Branch of their Fishery is that for Cod, which they take chiefly upon a Sand-Bank between *England* and *Holland*; where they employ yearly about three hundred Vessels, from forty to sixty Tuns Burthen, call'd Doggers, from whence the Bank upon which they fish is call'd *Dogger's Bank*. But in this the *English* participate with them, so that, strictly speaking, it cannot properly, or in a peculiar Manner, be call'd the *Dutch* Fishery. Cod Fishery.

THE fourth and last, as well as least, Branch of their Fishery, is their Inland or River Fishery. This consists of all Sorts of Fresh-water Fish, great Quantities of which, besides their own Consumption, they salt up and send abroad: And however inconsiderable this Branch may seem to be, yet Sir *Walter Raleigh*, so long ago as his Time, computed, that of pickled and salted Fish the *Dutch* did not export less than three hundred Thousand Tun a Year; and Monsr. *De Witt* afterwards computed this Exportation at four hundred Thousand Tun a Year. This not only amounts to a considerable yearly Income of itself, but as they are exchanged for foreign Merchandize, the Fish is not only sold, but it serves instead of ready Money, and (like their Spices) may be look'd upon as so much Treasure: And some will further add, that these two Articles alone are of as great Advantage to the *Dutch* as the Mines of *Potosi* are to the *Spaniards*.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Manufactures and Foreign Trade of the Dutch.

THE *Dutch* are at preſent reckon'd a very ingenious induſtrious People, but it is not only, or chiefly to this, that their great Proficiency in a great many Manufactures is to be aſcribed; for although they have made themſelves Maſters of ſeveral Branches, formerly peculiar to other Places, ſome to one and ſome to another, yet the general Reaſon is, that when the Mechanicks of ſeveral Neighbouring Countries, as *Flanders*, *France*, and *England*, were driven from thence by their bigotted Princes, they retired to *Holland*, and ſet up their reſpective Trades and Callings, which the *Dutch* readily agreed to, as foreſeeing that, by ſuch a Collection of ingenious Men in different Faculties, they might improve themſelves as much as if they had travell'd into thoſe Countries, and rather more, becauſe in this Caſe the Improvements were brought among them, and made common; whereas, had ſome of them travell'd for it, none but the Perſon, or Perſons, that travell'd, could have been immediately advantaged. And the *Dutch* granted this general Aſylum to thoſe diſtreſs'd People, that they might by that Means ſtrengthen their Hands againſt their formidable Enemies the *Spaniards*; and, in order thus to encourage Strangers, they proclaim'd Liberty of Conſcience, and made it the fundamental Article of their Union; the People upon this Encouragement, flying to *Holland* for Shelter from their tyrannical Princes, and the *Dutch* receiving them, that they might upon Occaſion aſſiſt them againſt the *Spaniards*. And by this Collection of ingenious People from all Parts, and not by the Ingenuity of the *Dutch* themſelves, Arts and Manufactures were cultivated in *Holland* to the Pitch they are now arriv'd at.

EVERY Province or great Town, *&c.* has generally ſome Manufacture in ſome Meaſure peculiar to it, or at leaſt, in which they excell their Neighbours; as for Inſtance, *Harlem* excells other Places for the fine white Linnen, which we commonly call *Holland*, *Harlem* being in that Province. This Place is alſo ſo noted for whitening Linnen, that they have great Quantities ſent from *Germany* and other Places to be bleach'd. This Place is alſo noted for its Manufactures of fine Silks and Gauzes, flower'd Velvets, Gold and Silver Brocades, and other rich Stuffs.

Leyden is famous for the woolen Manufacture; here they make the fineſt broad and narrow Cloths, Serges and Cambletts: But when I ſay *Leyden* is famous for the woolen Trade, I only mean when compar'd with other Places in *Holland*; for their woolen Manufacture is far inferior to that of *England*. They have their Wool from *Spain*, *Germany*, and *Turky*, and ſome from *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, but that is clandeſtinely.

IN *Delft* is made that fine Earthen Ware in imitation of *China* Ware, which is call'd *Delft* Ware from the Name of the Place where it is made.

Sardam, three Miles from *Amſterdam*, is the moſt noted Place in *Holland* (ſome ſay in the known World) for Ship-building, and prodigious Quantities of Timber are lodg'd there for that purpoſe. *Enchuyſen* is noted for Herrings; *Hoorne* for the beſt Cheeſe in *North Holland*, and for it's Refineries of Salt.

BUT in *Amſterdam* almoſt all theſe Manufactures are carried on; for here they weave Broad Cloth, Woolen and Hair Stuffs, Silks, Gold and Silver Stuffs, and all ſorts of Ribbon. Here they make Morocco, Shammy, and gilt Leather, and many other Sorts. Dying is none of the leaſt of their Manufactures, if I may give it that Name. Here are Refineries for Sulphur, Salt, Sugar, yellow Wax, *&c.* They have Mills for ſawing Timber, poliſhing Marble; alſo Rape Mills, Fulling Mills, *&c.* as in *England*.

IN making Sail-Cloth, they out-do *England* and all the reſt of their Neighbours; inſomuch, that according to the Sailors Phraſe, it wears like a Board; and while it is new, it is ſo ſtiff and hard, eſpecially when wet, that it is very hard Work for the Mariners to furl the Sails. As for Printing and Letter-Founding, moſt Hiſtorians give them very much the Preference to *England*, and ſeem to aſſign ſome Reaſons for it; but I muſt own I can give no Reaſon for their ſaying ſo, except it is becauſe they writ before Printing and Letter-Founding was brought to that Perfection in *England* that it is now. Indeed, the Time was, when there was no ſuch good Letter or Types to be had in *England* as was in *Holland*; and then Neceſſity drove our Printers to *Holland* to buy Types, if they would have them fine and good; but I am of Opinion, that that is not the Caſe at preſent, having Reaſon to think, that within theſe few Years, there has been as good Letter or Types caſt in *London* as any in *Holland*. I do not know indeed what may be the Sentiments of thoſe who prefer Foreigners before their own Countrymen, or *Dutch* Performances before *Engliſh*, purely becauſe they are *Dutch*, when otherwiſe our own Money might circulate amongſt ourſelves.

Letter Founding.

AS to their Foreign Trade, it conſiſts of ſeveral Branches; and briefly, firſt, from *Norway* they import vaſt Quantities of Fir, both Deals, Timber, Maſts, and Yards; alſo Pitch, Tar, Stock-Fiſh, Furs, Skins, Pot-Aſhes, and dry'd Fiſh: And although their Exports come not near the Value of their Imports, yet they carry to *Norway* great Quantities of Wine, Brandy, Vinegar, Tobacco, Spices, Salt, Cheeſe, Drapery, both Linnen and Woolen, and Haberdaſhery Wares. As to their Way of diſpoſing of their Goods imported from *Norway*, they have ſuch a Vent for their Fir, Timber, *&c.* to the Southern Countries of *Europe*, and that at ſuch a conſiderable Profit, that they commonly employ every Year two or three hundred Ships, of four or five hundred Ton each, in their *Norway* Navigation.

Foreign Trade of the *Dutch*. *Norway*

THE Trade they had with *Ruſſia* was formerly carried on pretty much by the Ports of *Livonia*, as *Riga*, *Revel*, and *Narva*; but when the *Engliſh* diſcover'd the Paſſage into the White Sea, the Trade was remov'd to *Archangel*, till the late Czar remov'd the chief Part of the *Ruſſia* Trade to *Peterſburg*, at the Bottom of the Gulf of *Finland*; but after his Death the Trade to *Archangel* was open'd again, and is now carried on at all the Ports above mention'd. As the *Engliſh* were the firſt that diſcover'd the Way to *Archangel*, the *Ruſſian* Princes granted them large-

Trade with *Ruſſia*.

large Privileges peculiar to themselves, exclusive of all other Nations; but the *Dutch*, by bribing the *Russian* Minister, and the false and scandalous Representation they made of the *English* Nation at the *Russian* Court, soon work'd us out of our Privileges, and sent thither ten Ships to our one.

THE Goods they import from *Russia*, are Flax, Hemp, Pitch, Tar, Linseed, Honey, Bees-Wax, Furs, Skins, *Russia*-Leather, Fir, Timber, Tallow, Pot-Ashes, Caviere, and Linnen; and to *Russia* they export Spices, Pickled-Herrings, Tobacco, Drugs for Dying, and for Physick; Wine, Brandy, Oil, Vinegar, Fruit, Sugar, and Woollen Manufactures; Gold and Silver Stuffs, Silks, Ribbons, Haberdashery, Hard-Ware, Toys, Hats, Soap, and Paper; but the *Moscovites* having a more intimate Communication than formerly with *Persia*, *India*, and *China*, they can furnish themselves cheaper with Silk and Hard-Ware from thence than the *Dutch* can afford it; so that that Trade is almost dropp'd, as is the Iron Trade, since the *Czar* establish'd Foundaries and Forges of his own, and got Workmen to make Swords and small Arms, and to cast great Guns, Bombs, *&c.* of his own.

Trade with *Denmark* and *Sweden.*

From *Denmark* the *Dutch* have little, except their large lean Cattle, which they feed in their rich Pastures: But from *Sweden* they import a deal of Iron, Steel, and Copper, with some Fir, Pitch, and Tar; and carry in Exchange, Spices, Drugs, Salt, Fruit, Sugar, Wine, Brandy, Silk, Linnen and Woolen Manufactures, but not so many Herrings as to *Russia*.

Trade with *Pomerania*, &c.

FROM *Pomerania* and *Mechlenburg* the *Dutch* import all kind of Grain, coarse Wool, Timber, *Silesia* Linnen, Skins, Leather, Honey, Wax, and Flax. From *Dantzick*, *Konngsburgh*, and *Memel*, (which are the chief Ports for shipping Goods from *Poland* and *Livonia*) the *Dutch* import Corn, Leather, Furrs, Timber, Pipe-staves, Pot-ashes, Wax, Hemp, Flax, Amber, Quicksilver, Saltpetre, Sulphur, Pitch, and Tar. And from *Libaw*, the chief Port in *Courland*, they import Grain, Timber, and Linseed, and carry their own Manufactures, before described, in Exchange. But the *Prussians* have of late so much improv'd their own Manufactures, especially those of Linnen and Woolen, as have also the *German* and other Northern Princes, that the *Dutch* fall far short of the Call for those Goods which they formerly had.

BUT I shall not enlarge upon the Trade of the *Dutch* with other Nations, as to their Imports and Exports, for what they import must of Necessity be the Produce of some other Countries, and will be (or has already been) treated of under that Head, in speaking of that respective Country. And as most of their Exports are first imported by them, it can be but the same, or only differ according to the different Call of different Countries for the respective Commodities that the *Dutch* Warehouse can supply them with. I shall only observe that in their Trade with *Germany*, the Ballance runs much in favour of the *Dutch*; who bring a great deal more Specie from *Germany* than they carry thither. They have lost much of their Trade with *Flanders*; and in *France* the Ballance of Trade runs against them, their Importations thence being much more than their Exportations thither, and they are forced to pay the Ballance in Treasure.

THE *Dutch* have a great Trade to *Smyrna* and some other Ports in *Turkey*, from whence they bring raw and spun Silk, and several Kinds of *Turkey* Leather, *&c.* and carry in Exchange *Russia* Leather, and their Spices, which they have made themselves Masters of in the *East-Indies*, and their Cochineal, *&c.* which they have elsewhere. No wonder if the *Dutch* are call'd the common Carriers of *Europe*, or rather of the World, when they make a Trade out of so many Branches of foreign Commodities, and have so little of their own Produce; making a Trade of carrying other Countries Goods from Place to Place, and what they want from other Countries, besides the small Matter their Country produces, they pay for in ready Specie.

THEY import from *England* Woolen, Coals, Lead, *&c.* of which more when we come to speak of *England* and its Exportations; and we receive from them Sail-Cloth, fine Hollands, *&c.* And though their importing much more from us than we do from them, makes the Ballance of Trade fall much in our Favour, yet it is to be hoped it will do much more so when our Colonies are brought to greater Perfection, either in the Linnen, Hempen, or Silk Trade, our Poor employ'd by the Produce of our Dominions, and our Coin, or Specie, more closely confin'd to circulate amongst ourselves.

THE *Dutch East-India* Trade is managed by a Company, and it is observed that so many of the States of *Holland* being also Members of the *East-India* Company, they prefer their Relations and Friends to the most important Posts and Places of Trust in that Part of the World, and in the Fleets they send thither, which gives them a great Opportunity of advancing themselves and Families. It is not long ago that one of these *Dutch* Governors in *India* was, for some Fraud or Misdemeanor, fined a hundred thousand Pounds, and yet it was thought that he came well off, and saved a vast deal of Money by the Bargain. What may those save then who are never call'd to account at all, but when they have enriched themselves by private Trading, or other clandestine Dealings, come home to their own Country, and spend the Remainder of their Days in Ease and Plenty.

CHAP. X.

Of the Revenues of the Dutch, *and how they are rais'd; of their Taxes, ordinary and extraordinary; and of their Forces by Sea and Land; also of their Coin, Weights, and Measures.*

IN Order to settle the Taxes that are to be levy'd, the Council of State draw up every Winter an Estimate of the Expences of the ensuing Year, and present it to the States General, who signify to the several Provinces their respective Shares in it; the annual Amount is generally between two and three Millions Sterling in Times of Peace. Their Land Forces consist of twenty five thousand Men, *Switzers*, *Scots*, and other Foreigners, as well as national Troops.

And

And they have commonly about fifty Men of War in Commiſſion, to anſwer any Occaſion; whether to protect their Fiſhery, or their Merchants Trade, *&c.* and there are commonly fifty or ſixty Sail unrigg'd; and all theſe as Occaſion requires, are repair'd and maintain'd out of that publick Money, and the reſt is employ'd in paying the Salaries of the Officers of State, Ambaſſadors, and publick Miniſters, and in entertaining Foreign Princes, and their Miniſters and Attendants, and other accidental Charges.

But beſides the Forces above mention'd, they are oblig'd to keep Troops in the Barrier Towns of the *Auſtrian Netherlands*, it having been ſtipulated in a Treaty, concluded *November* 15 1715 between the Emperor and the *Dutch*, that they ſhall jointly maintain, in the ſaid *Netherlands*, thirty, or at leaſt twenty five thouſand Men; whereof the Emperor to have three fifths, and the *Dutch* two, and upon any Appearance of a War, the ſaid Body to be augmented to forty thouſand Men, and maintain'd and ſupported in the above mention'd Proportion; and that if it broke out into a real War the Force ſhould be increas'd, in the ſame Proportion, to what Number both Parties ſhould agree upon; and, in conſideration of the Expence of the *States* in maintaining their Troops in the Barrier Towns, the Emperor agreed, that the *States* ſhould have out of the Revenues of the *Auſtrian Netherlands* five hundred thouſand Crowns *per Annum*.

Taxes. As to the Taxes, whereby the ſeveral Provinces raiſe their reſpective Quotaes, they are divided into ordinary and extraordinary; the ordinary are common in Times of Peace or War; as 1. A Duty upon Salt, levy'd upon every Family, in proportion to the Salt they are ſuppos'd to conſume. 2. A Duty upon Beer, of twenty Pence a Barrel, but here ſmall Beer is excluded, and pays nothing; but *Engliſh*, *German*, or Foreign ſtrong Beer imported, pays a much higher Duty; and the Retailers of Beer alſo pay an additional Exciſe of twenty Pence a Barrel. The other Taxes are rais'd as follows:

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
French Wine by the Stoop (our Gallon or thereabouts)	0	0	6
Vinegar by the Barrel,	0	9	0
Spaniſh Wine by the Gallon,	0	1	0
Spaniſh Brandies by the Gallon,	0	0	10
Butter by the Barrel of 320 Pounds,	0	6	0
Eating-Oil by the Pipe,	0	8	0
Fiſh-Oil by the Pipe,	0	4	0
Wax and Tallow Candles 100 Weight,	0	0	8
Turf for Firing by the Tun,	0	0	1½
Coals from *Engl.* or *Scotl.* by the Tun,	1	10	0
Lead by the hundred,	0	0	5
Wood one Shilling in eight,			
Silver and Gold Stuffs, by the Yard or Ell,	0	1	0
Engliſh Cloth, one third the Value.			
Tapeſtry-Hangings, and other Houſhold Goods, one ninth the Value.			
Wheat ground in *Holland*, by the Laſt	6	6	0
Rye,	3	3	0
Barley or Oats,	1	15	0
For all Cattle, Sheep, or Hogs, that are kill'd, one ſeventh of the Value			
For every Horned Beaſt above three Years old, by the Month	0	0	3
For every Horſe	0	0	2
Herrings and Salt-fiſh, (if ſold to private Citizens) each Panier	0	1	8
Every Retale Fiſhmonger, for Salmon and Sturgeon, one ninth the Value.			
Tobacco by the Pound	0	0	10
Soap by the Barrel	0	11	0
Every Cart or little Boat pays by the Year	0	1	8
Every Coach by the Year	0	10	0
All Farms and Lands 1 *l.* in ſixteen.			
Land ſown or planted, pays by the Month while the Crop is upon it for every Acre	0	0	4
Every Houſe Yearly pays one Eighth of its Rent.			
Every Servant by the Head	0	1	8

All Immoveables, as Eſtates in Land and Houſes, and under which they (for a Reaſon not eaſily underſtood) include Ships, to pay a fortieth Part of the Price when ſold or alienated.

A Duty upon Stamp-Paper according to what is written thereon.

And many other Taxes, which indeed include ſo much, that there is ſcarce any Thing in the Country but what there is a Duty upon.

But beſides theſe common Charges, they have additional ones in Time of War, as

1. Poll-Money, twenty Pence a Head.
2. Chimney-Money, twenty Pence a Hearth.
3. The Land-Tax, the two hundredth Penny, or ten Shillings every hundred Pound.

And upon Inundations, or additional Repairs of the Dykes, *&c.* when neceſſary, but eſpecially the draining of the Country when overflow'd, there are additional Taxes impoſed in proportion to the Charge. Thus in *Rhinland* for Inſtance, though it has but little Communication with the Sea, yet it lying ſo low that even their own Lakes are Receptacles of Water ſufficient to overflow the Country if not drain'd or exhauſted in Time, to prevent this, every Acre pays two Shillings a Year, which they call Acredge-Money, beſides an additional fifteen Pence an Acre more, in, or after the Winter, towards draining the Snow or Rain-Water off their Lands, which had deſcended from the Mountains. They alſo pay a Shilling an Acre towards High-ways, Cauſways, Foot-paths, *&c.*

But we muſt not forget the *Dutch* Forces in the *Eaſt-Indies*, whereby they maintain that uſurp'd Right or Property which they have now made themſelves Maſters of. It is ſaid that they can fit out a Fleet of forty Men of War at *Batavia*, and muſter an Army of thirty or forty thouſand Men there. Some indeed queſtion the Truth of this, and ſpeak very diminutively of both their Naval and Military Force there; but what Inducement we have to ſay ſo I know not; for we neither found them too weak to inſult us in our own Poſſeſſions, nor now to maintain them when they have got them from us. They have now the Satisfaction of enjoying what was once ours; and I think we ſhould never inſult them upon the Account of Weakneſs of their Force, when contrary to all Juſtice, they have left us no Satisfaction, except that of complaining of their barbarous Uſage.

But to wave this Subject, and fall more immediately upon that of their Forces in *Holland*. When the *Dutch* were apprehenſive of a Rupture with the Emperor, they increas'd their ſtanding Forces to near fifty four thouſand Men, *viz.* four thouſand ſix hundred and twelve Horſe, two thouſand four hundred Dragoons, and forty ſix thouſand nine hundred and fourteen Foot; which with their Militia, compoſe a very formidable Army. And their Fleet is now conſiderably augmented; and in order to keep their Sailors from Deſertion, they have made it Death for them to enter into foreign Service.

Besides this the *Dutch* are much ſtrengthen'd by their Alliances, and by the ſtrong Towns they are poſſeſs'd of in the *Auſtrian Netherlands*, which makes their preſent Situation of Affairs much more agreeable than in any of the preceding Times. They have not only an Army of between fifty and ſixty thouſand Men in their own Pay, but it was ſtipulated by the Treaty of *Hanover*, that *Great Britain* and *France* ſhould aſſiſt them with their Forces if there ſhould happen to be a Rupture with the Emperor.

Coins. As to their Coins, they have Gold Ducats, Gold Ducatoons, and Half-Ducatoons, Rix-dollars, Half and Quarter Rix-dollars, Florins, Schillings, Four-Penny, Two-Penny, and Penny Pieces; alſo Dents, or Doits, and Pennings, of which ſix make a Stiver, or Penny, and three Doits make one Stiver; twenty Stivers make one Florin, or Guilder; fifty Stivers make one Rix-dollar, ſixty three Stivers make one Ducatoon; fifteen Guilders is a Gold Ducatoon, and five Florins five Stivers make a Gold Ducat. The Coins of *England*, *France*, and *Germany* paſs here for their original Value. The *French* Lewis-d'Or goes for about nine Guilders, or a hundred and eighty Stivers, and the *French* Crown for about fifty Stivers; but the *Dutch* Stiver is more than an *Engliſh* Penny, five Stivers being about Six-pence *Engliſh*, and twenty Stivers, or a Guilder, being worth two Shillings *Engliſh*.

Amſterdam is the chief Bank of *Holland*; but Bank. there are ſeveral Mints or Places of coining Money, as, *Arnheim* in *Gelderland*, and *Dort* in *Holland*; alſo *Hoorn*, *Enckuyſen*, *Middleburg*, *Utrecht*, *Lewarden*, *Deventer*, *Compen*, &c.

Their Weights are the Pound, a hundred of Weights. which make a Quintal, which is near our hundred Weight, but more exactly a hundred and eleven Pounds *Engliſh*, or, according to ſome, a hundred and eight Pounds.

Their uſual Meaſure is the Ell, one hundred Meaſure. and thirty four of which make a hundred Yards *Engliſh*; ſo that their Ell is near our twenty ſeven Inches, or three Quarters of a Yard.

The Shepel, or *Dutch* Buſhel, by which they ſell their Corn, *&c.* a hundred and three of them make fourſcore *Engliſh* Buſhels, which Quantity is call'd a Laſt with them as well as with us.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Language, Learning, and Univerſities of the Dutch; *alſo of their Liberal and Mechanick Arts; and of their Religion, Marriages, and Funerals.*

Language. The Language of *Holland*, and other Parts of the *United Provinces*, is a Dialect of the *German*, or *High Dutch*; and this Language has been treated of in the Deſcription of *Germany*; but the *French* has prevail'd ſo much, that it is become the current Language amongſt the *Dutch* Quality as well as in other Courts of *Europe*.

Learning. As to the State of Learning, it is generally obſerv'd that Mechanicks are preferr'd to Liberal Arts; and the Wonder is not great, if we conſider that moſt of their Country was firſt gain'd, and is now preſerv'd, by mechanical Induſtry. They have two Univerſities, which ſome of our own Natives are ſo generous in the Paiſe of, as to prefer them to our own in *England*; but I ſhall leave the impartial Reader to judge whether this Opinion ariſes from the Excellency of their Univerſities beyond ours, or from an Affectation that we have to foreign Novelties, without firſt being acquainted with the Excellency of our own; or, perhaps, the Cheapneſs of living, and the little trouble there is in taking up Degrees may be a great Inducement to ſpeak in their Paiſe.

University of *Leyden*. The Univerſity of *Leyden* was founded by the States in the Year 1674. The Schools are one Pile of Brick Buildings, three Story high, and two Rooms on a Floor, the Uppermoſt of which was *Elzevir*'s Printing-Office. The Number of Scholars in this Univerſity is about two thouſand; but there are but two Colleges in the Univerſity, the Students living in private Lodgings in the Town. None but Profeſſors wear Gowns, and that only when they read Lectures, or preſide at Diſputations, others performing their Exerciſes in Cloaks; the Auditory ſit cover'd at Lectures and Diſputations. The States allow every Profeſſor two or three hundred Pounds a Year, beſides what he has from his Auditors, who in this Caſe are look'd upon as Pupils, and pay him accordingly for being amitted to Lectures and Diſputes. There are no Degrees conferr'd in the Liberal Arts but Maſter and Doctor in each Faculty, and thoſe that are matriculated, or enter'd in the Regiſter of the Univerſity, enjoy large Privileges. The Rector is choſen by the States annually, on the Eighth of *February*, New-Stile, that being the Anniverſary of the Dedication of the Univerſity; and he only enjoys the Title of *Magnificus*. There are three Curators, aſſiſted by the four City Conſuls, who have the Cyndick, or Recorder, for their Council. The Senate is compoſed of twelve Profeſſors, viz. three in each Faculty, Divinity, Law, Phyſick, and Hiſtory; but they are ſometimes augmented under divers Limitations. All Cauſes between the Scholars, whether Civil or Criminal, are determin'd by the Rector and Aſſiſtors. In the Anatomy Theatre are abundance of Skeletons of all Sizes, Mummies, Minerals, alſo Habits of ſeveral Countries. They ſhew here a Man's Bladder containing two Gallons, and the Mummy of an *Egyptian* Prince, ſaid to be eighteen hundred Years old.

University of *Leyden*. The Univerſity of *Utrecht* was found by *David* Biſhop and Prince of *Burgundy*, who firſt Univerſity of *Utrecht*. erected a publick School about the Year 1459, which might be ſaid to be the Beginning of its being a Nurſery of Literature; but it was not erected into an Univerſity till the Year 1636. It is ſtill under the Government of the Civil Magiſtrates, who determine all Cauſes among both Profeſſors and Students, and puniſh Offenders according to their Demerit. This Library has more printed Books than that of *Leyden*, but *Leyden* excells in the Number of Manuſcripts.

There is good Painting, Engraving, Carving, and Muſical-Inſtrument-making perform'd here; but impartial Travellers tell us, that the beſt of their Performances is upon Work of which they have a Copy, or Specimen, from ſome

other Nation, or, in other Words, if they excell in any Thing it is in Imitation rather than Invention.

Religion

UPON the first Establishment of the Protestant Religion in the *Low Countries* it was agreed, that the publick Profession should be *Lutheranism*, but with a Toleration, however, for those of a different Opinion; but by the Union of *Utrecht*, 1579, each Province was impower'd to establish such a Religion in their respective Limits as should be thought most conducive to the Welfare of the said Province, but still provided that there should be no Compulsion in Matters of Conscience. But in the Year 1583 the States General agreed that *Calvinism* should be the establish'd Religion, for the following political Reasons: *First*, Because their chief Supporters in *England*, *France*, and *Germany*, were *Calvinists*; *Secondly*, Because the *Calvinists*, of all other Protestants, were the most inveterate against the *Spaniards*, the grand Enemies of the *Dutch*; and, *Thirdly*, Because by establishing *Calvinism* the Power and Jurisdiction of the Clergy would be suppress'd, and there would be no Ecclesiastical Authority to clog and fetter the Civil Power. These might have been three material Articles if they had concurr'd or been foreseen in the Choice of a Stadtholder, or Civil Magistrate; but if these Considerations directed their Choice, it would seem, that any other Religion, that would best have answer'd those political Ends, would have serv'd as well. But this was not the only Advantage; for their seizing the Goods and Possessions of the Churches and Abbeys, and applying their Income to the publick Revenue, gave it a vast Increase, and prov'd very useful in their Infant Government, which now only excepted *Roman* Catholicks from the Protection of their Laws; and yet even these are in a Manner tolerated by the Connivance of their Officers, who upon certain Payments from every Family, allow the Exercise of the *Roman* Catholick Religion in their respective Jurisdictions.

BUT the Bulk of the People are yet *Calvinists*, and the Power is lodg'd in their Hands. How far that Power may be exercised in allowing the *Roman* Catholicks the Exercise of their Religion I know not; but this we may observe from authentick History, that the Deputies of the General Synod complain'd to the States General, in the Year 1725, that the Number of *Roman* Catholicks was increas'd to three hundred and fifty thousand since the Year 1650.

THE *Calvinists* being now the establish'd Church, are govern'd by a Presbytery, among which there is an Equality, except in those who by the common Consent, or by a Majority, are chosen to preside. Particular Congregations are under the Direction of their Ministers, Elders, and Deacons; but all Censures and Degradations, and what concerns Religion in general, is determin'd in their Synods, Provincial or General. The Ministers receive their Stipends from the Magistrates of the City or Town where their Cure lies, and are seldom, if at all, allow'd a Plurality of Livings. As the Tythes and Church Lands have been seiz'd by the States, the *Dutch* Clergy depend entirely on the Magistracy, and if their Preaching gives them any Offence the Way they use to shew their Resentment, is, by sending the Preacher a Pair of Shoes and a Staff; which is something like a Ceremony we use in *England*, when we find a Person troublesome, *Sir, if you please, the Door is open*; each of them intimating, that the Person to whom the Compliment is offer'd, is desired to march off, and indeed, in *Holland*, the Ceremony is a Command to march off, and they dare not dispute it.

IN the great Churches in *Holland* they very much affect Organs and Singing of Psalms. Collections for the Poor are usually made in Sermon-time; a Purse and a Bell being fasned to the End of a Pole, and carried about by the Deacon, who is a kind of an Overseer for the Poor. They fall very far short of the Presbyterian Dissenters in *England* for keeping the Sabbath, for they make no Conscience of travelling on that Day by Boat or Waggon, or of buying or selling, only with this Difference, that they confine themselves to smaller Matters in the way of buying and selling, but never restrain themselves from any Diversion on the Sabbath-Day.

Marriages.

WHEN a Marriage is proposed, and both Parties with their Friends agreed and determin'd about the Choice, that Agreement is deem'd so sacred, that it is not to be receded from, and is accounted equal to Marriage itself, except the very Ceremony; and such a Stress do they lay upon this Agreement, which they call the Espousal, that they scarce make any Scruple of living together as Man and Wife afterwards, and it is not thought any Surprise to see the Women pregnant before the Marriage is solemniz'd. But there are in some of the great Towns, Commissaries for Matrimonial Cases, who take the Names of the Persons to be married, and see that they have the Consent of their Parents or Guardians; and, lest any Thing should be managed clandestinely, the Banns are publish'd three Times before the Marriage, as is yet done in *England*, except where, by Virtue of a little Money for a Licence, this commendable Custom is dispens'd with.

Burials.

THE *Calvinists* do not practise the reading of any Funeral Ceremony at the Grave of the Deceas'd, or ring any Bell, either at the Death or Interment; only there is a Person, like a Beadle or Sexton, who gives notice to the Neighbourhood to attend the Corpse to the Grave, which is sometimes three or four Days after the Party's Decease; and, in some Places, there is a Penalty upon those that neglect to perform this last Office to their deceas'd Friends.

THERE is in some Places a certain Time of the Day appointed for the Weddings to be perform'd, as also for the Burials, but not at all Places at the same Time of the Day, but some in the Forenoon, and some in the Afternoon, and at different Hours. But at a Funeral, if the Corpse is not brought at or before the Hour proposed, they forfeit a certain Sum for every Hour afterwards, which is apply'd to the Use of the Poor. And for this Reason a great many, that are not only willing to be charitable, but ambitious that the World should know it too, chuse to trespass upon the Time limitted, that they may not only distribute but display their Charity.

THE Papists and *Lutherans* think it not right if they have not a Bell rung at the Death and Interment of their deceas'd Friends, and put a great Value upon having them buried in consecrated Ground, if not in the Churches themselves; and the Government make the best Advantage of this their Inclination, and make them pay dear for it; and, in short, the *Dutch* will tolerate any Rites, how superstitious soever they are reckon'd, if they are but paid for their Indulgence.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE AUSTRIAN and FRENCH *NETHERLANDS.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation and Extent of the Auſtrian *and* French Netherlands; *containing the Ten Provinces, the Remainder of the Seventeen, which were not included in the Union of* Utrecht; *with a Deſcription of their Seas, Harbours, Rivers, Canals, Air, Climate,* &c.

The Ten Provinces

THOSE Ten Provinces which were ſeparated from the Seven, now call'd the *United Provinces*, are now ſubject to the Houſes of *Auſtria* and *France*; and are,

1. The Dutchy of *Brabant.*
2. The County of *Flanders.*
3. The County of *Artois.*
4. The County of *Hainault.*
5. The County of *Cambreſis.*
6. The County of *Namur.*
7. The Dutchy of *Luxemburg.*
8. The Dutchy of *Limburg.*
9. The Marquiſate of *Antwerp*, or of the Holy Empire.
10. The Lordſhip of *Malines*, or *Mechlin.*

THESE Ten Provinces as ſeparated from the other Seven, call'd the *United Provinces*, are bounded on the North by the Sea, and the ſaid ſeven *United Provinces*; by *Germany* on the Eaſt; on the South, by *Lorain*, and Part of *France*; and on the Weſt, by another Part of *France* and the *Britiſh* Ocean.

Harbours

ALL their Sea Coaſt lies between *Graveling* and *Sluys*; and their only Ports are *Gravelin*g, *Dunkirk*, *Newport*, *Oſtend*, and *Sluys*; the two laſt are the beſt Harbours, but none of them are fit to receive Ships of any great Burthen.

THE chief Rivers that run through theſe ten Provinces are, the *Maes*, the *Scheld*, the *Lys*, the *Lieue*, the *Aa*, the *Sambre*, the *Dyle*, the *Demer*, the *Scarpe*, and the *Deudre*; and not to mention thoſe that have been already deſcribed, the *Lieue* riſes near *Middleburg* in *Flanders*, and falls into the *Scheld* at *Ghent.* The *Aa* riſes in *Artois*, and paſſing by St. *Omars*, becomes two Branches; and re-uniting itſelf again near *Graveling*, it falls into the Sea a little below. The *Sambre* riſes in *Hainault*, and joins the *Maes* at *Namur.* The *Dyle* riſes in *Brabant*, and in its Paſſage receives the *Demer*, which riſes from two Springs in the County of *Liege.* The *Scarp* riſes from two Springs in the Province of *Artois*, which uniting near *Arras*, flows to *Douay* and *Marchiennes*, and falls into the *Scheld* a little below *Amand.* The *Dender* riſes in *Hainalt*, not far from *Condé*, and falls into the *Scheld* at *Dendermond.* The chief Canals in this Country are thoſe of *Bruſſels*, *Ghent*, and *Middleburg.*

THERE are few or no Springs in this flat Country, eſpecially in that Part near the Sea, though in the Hilly Part, and Places further up in the Country, there are Springs as in other Countries.

Foreſts

THIS Country was formerly famous for fine Woods and Foreſts, of which there is yet ſomething to be ſeen, but they are generally now alter'd for the better; being generally clear'd, and converted into populous Towns, Villages, and Fields of arable Lands and Paſture. Of theſe Foreſts the chief is that of *Ardenne*; which, in *Ceſar*'s Time, was the largeſt in all *Gaul*, it beginning at the *Rhine*, and extending through the Country of *Triers* to the Territories of *Tournay*, on the one Side, and, on the other Side, as far as *Rheims* in *Champaign*, being about five hundred Miles in Length; the thickeſt Part of what is now left of it, is between *Thionville*, on the Eaſt Borders of *Luxemberg*, and the City of *Liege*, which is about thirty Leagues; which Tract contains ſeveral Villages, the chief of which is *St. Hubert*, which ſtands about the Middle of it.

2. THE Foreſt of *Mormant*, in *Hainault*, which begins near *Quefnoy* and reaches ſeveral Leagues towards *Vermand*; but here are ſeveral Towns and Villages interſpers'd and great Quantities of Charcoal made.

3. THE Woods of *St. Amand* and *Hainault*, extending from the Limits of *French Flanders*, near *St. Amand*, to *Valenciennes*; but this was cut down by Order of the *French* King.

4. THE Foreſt of *Faigne*, beginning near *Avelnes*, in *Hainault*, and extending as far as *Mezieres*, in *Champaign*, which is about ſixteen Leagues.

5. THE Foreſt of *Soigny*, near the City of *Bruſſels*, ſaid to contain fourſcore thouſand Acres

6. MORE

6. MEERDALE, near *Louvain*; alſo *Zaventerloo*, between *Louvain*, *Bruſſels*, *Vilvord*, and *Grootenhaut*, near *Tournhoot* in *Brabant*; and to theſe we may add *Marlaigne* near *Namur*; alſo *Niepe*, which begins near the Confines of *Artois*, and extends to the River *Lys*, and is the principal Foreſt in *Flanders*: There is alſo the Foreſt of *Nonna*, which begins near *Ypres*, and extends to the Northward. *Poodsberg*, on the Confines of *Flanders* and *Hainault*; a large Foreſt, and was formerly a Part of the Foreſt of *Ardenne*. And laſtly, *Williams's Wood*, in *Artois*, near *Renty*.

CHAP. II.

Of the particular Provinces in the Auſtrian *and* French Netherlands; *and of the chief Towns therein contain'd.*

Boundaries.

IN my further Progreſs toward the South-weſt, into the *Auſtrian Netherlands*, the Dutchy of *Brabant* falls next in my Way; and in this is included *Antwerp*, or the Marquiſate of the Holy Empire, which is bounded by *Holland* on the North; by *Guelderland*, and the Biſhoprick of *Liege* on the Eaſt; on the South by *Hainault* and *Namur*; and on the Weſt by *Flanders*; and contains about ſeventy Miles from North to South, and ſixty from Eaſt to Weſt. The Air is generally healthful, and the Country fruitful, except the Northern Part of it; and as to their Soil and Husbandry take the following Account.

Soil and Husbandry.

Brabant is for the moſt part good, but *Flanders* is better; in which the richeſt Land lies between *Dunkirk* and *Bruges*, and continues about forty *Engliſh* Miles in length, and contains rich Meadows, and Plenty of as fine Wheat and Barley as any in *Europe*: But between *Bruges* and *Ghent*, which is about twenty four Miles, the Soil is not ſo good; and between *Ghent* and *Antwerp*, is only a gravelly, barren Soil, producing little but Heath and Broom, and the like, if not cultivated; and between *Antwerp* and *Holland*, the Soil is much the ſame; except, that though it is barren for Grain and Graſs, it is excellent Ground for Flax; inſomuch that one Acre of their Flax is worth four Acres of others; and not only ſo, but after the Flax is pull'd, it produces a Crop of Turnips; and in *April* following, they ſow the ſame Land with Oats and Clover-ſeed, and harrow it ſoftly only with a Buſh dragg'd over it; and while the Oats grow and ripen, the Graſs grows; and when the Oats are cut down, the Graſs makes good Paſture till *Chriſtmas*; and in the following Year they have three Crops of Clover; the firſt at the Beginning, and the ſecond at the latter End of *June*, and the laſt in *Auguſt*; and for other Parts of their Heath-Ground, they plant ſome with Hops, Fruit-Trees, and other Trees, which they have brought to great Perfection in this Soil, otherwiſe naturally barren.

Divided.

Brabant is divided into four Quarters, *viz.* the Quarters of *Louvain*, *Antwerp*, *Bruſſels*, and *Boſſeduc*. Chief Towns in the Quarter of *Louvain* are, 1. *Louvain*, the Capital. 2. *Tilmont*. 3. St. *Tron*. 4. *Leuve*. 5. *Dieſt*. 6. *Gemblours*. 7. *Halen*. 8. *Sichen*. 9. *Judoigne*. 10. *Hannue*. 11. *Landen*. 12. *Ramellies*.

Louvain.

1. *Louvain* is ſituate on the River *Dyle*, about fifty Miles North Eaſt of *Bruſſels*, and twelve South Eaſt of *Mechlin*; the Walls are ſix or ſeven Miles in Circumference, but ſcarce one third of the Ground within them is built upon, but is planted with Vineyards, or cultivated for Graſs or Corn. It ſurrendred to the Confederates in the Year 1706, after the Battle of *Ramellies*, without making any Defence. The Caſtle ſtands on the Top of a Hill, ſurrounded with fine Gardens and Vineyards, and has a beautiful Proſpect over a pleaſant Country, and ſtands in fine Air, which was the Reaſon of its being the Reſidence of their antient Earls.

WITH Reſpect to Manufactures, it is ſaid, the Weaving-Trade is the chief; it having been ſo popular, that there was not leſs than four thouſand Maſter-Weavers in the City at once; but their Trade declines very much of late, but yet they deal in fine Linnen, *&c.*

THE Univerſity was founded about the Year 926. The Students in Divinity do conſtantly wear Gowns and Caps, but the other Students wear them only at the publick Exerciſes. There are forty three Colleges; four for the Education of Youth, and the reſt for thoſe of riper Years. The Degrees taken up here, are thoſe of Maſter, Licentiate, and Doctor; the Licentiate is allow'd to chuſe his own Coat of Arms, and immediately commences Gentleman. The Governor of the Univerſity is ſtiled Rector, and is choſe every half Year, and has full Juriſdiction over the Scholars. There is another Officer call'd the Promoter, who inflicts Puniſhments upon Offenders, and gives Judgment in criminal Caſes, and ſometimes in Death itſelf; but theſe Sentences are often bought off. The Faculties in which they take up Degrees here are, 1. Divinity. 2. Canon-Law. 3. Civil-Law. 4. Phyſick. And, 5. Of Arts.

THE Town-Houſe of *Louvain* is an antient magnificent Building, as is alſo the *Jeſuits* Church, whoſe Library is ſaid to be the beſt in the *Auſtrian Netherlands*, on account of the great Number of valuable Manuſcripts it contains. About two Miles from *Louvain* is the Duke of *Arſcot*'s Palace of *Heverly*; the Walks that lead to it are much admired by Travellers, being delightfully ſhaded with Lime-Trees and the like; but the Palace itſelf is in a decaying Condition, and more valued for Antiquity than Beauty. In the Chapel here, they ſhew a Piece of Money, which is ſaid to be one of the thirty Pieces which *Judas* had for betraying our Saviour: And indeed ſome Circumſtances prove the Probability of it; for it is about the Weight of an *Engliſh* Shilling, and has *Tiberius*'s Effigie on one Side, and on the Reverſe, a Flower reſembling a Lilly.

THE other Places are not ſo remarkable as to deſerve a Deſcription in this Hiſtory, except *Landen*, about five Miles from *Leuve*, remarkable for a Victory gain'd by the *French* over the Allies in the Year 1693. And *Ramellies*, eleven Miles North of *Namur*, famous for the Victory obtain'd over the *French* by the Allies in the Year 1706.

Antwerp.

THE ſecond Quarter of *Brabant* is *Antwerp*, whoſe chief Town is *Antwerp*, or the Marquiſate of the Empire, ſituate on the Eaſt Bank of the *Scheld*, twenty five Miles North of *Bruſſels*, and thirty North Weſt of *Louvain*. The Town lies in Form of a Creſcent or half Moon, in low, fen-

ny Ground. The *Scheld* here is twenty Feet deep; and the *Ude*, at the new and full of the Moon, flows and ebbs above twelve Feet, and Ships of Burthen can lade and unlade at the Keys. The City is about seven Miles in Circumference, encompass'd with a beautiful Wall; the Top of which is said to be an hundred Feet broad, and well planted with Trees. There are thirteen strong Gates, eight of which stand towards the Water, and have their respective Keys or Wharfs, where Vessels lade and unlade. The Citadel is a Pentagon of five Royal Bastions, and is on the South Side of the City on the Banks of the *Scheld*; it is about a Mile in Compass, and stands at some small Distance from the City. The Streets of *Antwerp* are broad and regular, the Buildings magnificent, and the whole, beautiful and uniform. The Cathedral is a handsome Structure; in it there are sixty six Chapels and Altars, and the Steeple is deem'd an exquisite Piece of Architecture; from which may be seen in a clear Day, the Cities of *Ghent*, *Mechlin*, and *Louvain*; as also the Island of *Zealand*. The Stadthouse is a fine Building; the *English* had once an Exchange here peculiar to themselves; but there is now one common to all Nations, as ours at *London* is, which stands at the Concourse or Meeting of four principal Streets. The Printing-House is said to be the best in *Europe*, furnish'd with an hundred different Sorts or Founts of Letters; whereof amongst the rest, two are *Syriac*, ten *Hebrew*, nine *Greek*, forty seven *Roman*, &c.

About the Year 1568, *Antwerp* was supposed to contain about two hundred thousand Inhabitants; but the *Dutch* afterwards making themselves Masters of the Island of *Zealand*, which lies at the Mouth of the *Scheld*, they turn'd the Course of Trade to *Amsterdam* and other Places in *Holland*; and that, with their Civil Wars, and the Oppressions of the King of *Spain*, all contributed to lessen the Trade of *Antwerp*.

Antwerp was made a Bishop's See by Pope *Paul* IV. who lived in the Time of *Mary* Queen of *England*; it and was done at the Request of *Philip* King of *Spain*. He assign'd to it seven Towns, and an hundred and forty four Villages for the Verge of its See.

Breda. *Breda* is the next Town in Dignity. It is about thirty Miles North Easterly from *Antwerp*, and as many to the Southward of *Rotterdam*. It is a large and populous City, and regularly fortified. It is a Barony, comprehending seventeen Villages, the Inheritance of the Princes of *Orange*. The great Church is a magnificent Structure, and is the only Building that I find taken notice of in our modern History.

Brussels. The third Quarter of *Brabant* is *Brussels*, whose chief Town is of the same Name, and is the Capital of *Brabant* and of the *Austrian Netherlands*. It stands on the River *Senne*, twenty five Miles South of *Antwerp*, and thirty South East of *Ghent*, in a pleasant fruitful Country. It is about six Miles in Circumference, and surrounded with a Wall and other Fortifications, but not strong, which was the Reason that it surrender'd to the Allies in the Year 1706. immediately after the Battle of *Ramellies* without any Resistance; and indeed, the Fortification is too large to make it strong, except it had a vast Number of Men in proportion.

In the Year 1696. the Marshal *Villeroy* came before it with a very numerous Army, while K. *William* was at the Siege of *Namur*; and though Prince *Vaudemont* lay within the Walls with thirty thousand Men to defend it, yet the Stadthouse, and above two thousand other Houses were demolish'd, as also several Churches, by the Enemies Bombs, and their firing red hot Bullets into the Heart of the Town; and the City lying upon the Declivity of a Hill, it was the more expos'd to the Fire of the Enemy that lay before it; so that in about forty eight Hours, it was reduc'd to a Heap of Rubbish. It was afterwards rebuilt with great Advantage; but in the Year 1708. the Duke of *Bavaria* attack'd it, while the Confederates were employ'd at the Siege of *Lisle*; but the Duke of *Marlborough* marching immediately to its Relief, the Enemy found themselves under a Necessity to withdraw with Precipitation.

In this Town are several Abbeys, Monasteries, and other Buildings. The Country brings forth Abundance of Fruit, and Timber-Trees, and is well supply'd with Water by Fountains, Canals, and Rivulets. The River *Senne* runs through the City and falls into the *Scheld*, but there is a navigable Canal of near twenty Miles in Length, by which a Communication is maintain'd with *Antwerp* and other Places: This Canal was a Work of incredible Labour, they being obliged to level a Mountain to effect it. *Brussels* is a populous City, has large handsome Streets, spacious Market-places, and elegant uniform Buildings, and especially since the Bombardment, more than before.

Brussels is commonly the Residence of the Regent of the *Austrian Netherlands*, and of the Nobility and People of Distinction. Here is also held the High Court of Chancery, and the Assembly of the States of all the Provinces. The Palace is an antient Building in the highest Part of the Town. Whatever Stews or Baudy-houses may be allow'd, yet they seem to have some Sense of the Sin; for amongst other religious Houses, there is one for penitent Whores. There are Hospitals for the Sick, and some for the Entertainment of Strangers and Travellers, who are allow'd all Necessaries for three Days *gratis*. There is one also for foundling Children. Near the Palace is a Piece of Ground wall'd in, containing a Park, Aviary, Grotto, Canals, Water-Works, and Flower-Gardens; in which last, the Natives of *Brussels* are very curious. The Stadthouse is a noble Building, and has over it a Brazen Statue of St. *Michael* the Guardian Angel of the City, being fifteen Feet high. Fountains and Gardens of Flowers are common amongst the poorest People in *Brussels*.

The fourth Division of *Brabant* is *Bois-le-duc*. The chief Town of the same Name is situate on the Banks of the *Dromele*, about thirty five Miles North East of *Antwerp*. The Town stands on a rising Ground in the Middle of a large Marsh, which in Winter time is so full of Water, that the Town cannot be approach'd but by Causeways; and upon them are built Forts and Redoubts to secure those Passes or Avenues which lead to the Town. It lies in the Way from *Breda* to *Grave*. There are several fine navigable Canals run through the Town. Their Houses are generally Timber. They have Canals in all the principal Streets, over which are fifty Stone Bridges. Ten of the principal Streets lie in Form of a Star, and terminate in the Market-place. The chief publick Buildings are the Stadthouse and St. *John*'s Church, the former built after the Model of that at *Amsterdam*.

Their chief Manufactures are Linnen, Woollen, Cutlery-ware, and Needles. The Magistrates are two Prætors or Burgo-masters, who take cognisance of Civil and Criminal Cases; but there is a supreme Tribunal at the *Hague*, to which there lies an Appeal from this and all other Cities in *Brabant* subject to the *Dutch*.

Maestricht is on the West Side of the *Maes*, having a Suburb on the other Side call'd the *Wick*. It

It is about twelve Miles to the Northward of *Liege*, and thirty East of *Louvain*. It is call'd *Maestricht* from its being a Ferry over the *Maes*; the Word *Tricht*, signifying a Boat or Ferry in the *Dutch* Language. The Town is about four Miles in Circumference, but not very populous. The Stadthouse is after the Model of that at *Amsterdam*. There are three *Dutch* Churches, but the greatest Part of the Inhabitants are *Roman Catholicks*, who have a Convent of Monks, and another of Nuns, in the Place. It is now in Possession of the *Dutch*, to whom it was restored at the Peace of *Nimeguen*, in the Year 1679.

Mechlin

The little Province of *Mechlin*, lies in the middle of *Brabant*, and is surrounded by it on every Side; it is not above ten Miles long, and five broad; the only Place of any Note is the City of *Mechlin*, which lies between *Antwerp*, *Louvain*, and *Brussels*, from each of which, it is distant about twelve Miles; it is a handsome City, the Streets spacious and neat; the Town is divided into several Islands, by the Branches of the River *Dyle*, or artificial Canals that run through it, over which are abundance of Bridges: It surrendred to the Allies after the Battle of *Ramellies*, without making any Defence; there are seven Parishes in the Town, and as many beautiful Churches. The Cathedral is a sumptuous old Building; Pope *Paul* IV. erected this Place into a Bishoprick, in the Year 1559. Here is held a great Council, consisting of a President and sixteen Senators, to which high Court, all Appeals are brought from those Provinces, which continue under the Dominion of the House of *Austria*.

Tanners and Weavers are the chief Handicraft Trades in this Place. They are also famous for making Guns and casting Bells; but they are most admired for their fine Lace, known to us by the Name of *Mechlin* Lace.

Flanders

The Province of *Flanders* is bounded on the North by the Sea and the River *Scheld*, and on the East by *Brabant* and Part of *Hainault*, and on the South by another Part of *Hainault* and *Artois*, and on the West by another Part of *Artois* and the Ocean; being about seventy Miles from East to West, and sixty from North to South. This Province is generally flat and level, but is reckon'd the most fruitful Spot of Ground in all *Europe*; and what renders it still more delectable, is, the fine Canals, regular Plantations of Trees, the many beautiful Cloysters, Towns, and Villages, which stand so thick, that we no sooner leave one but we are at another; but this Country does not afford any Plenty of good Wine. The Country breeds large Cattle, especially Horses, which our Nobility use, and distinguish by the Name of *Flanders* Horses. The chief Towns in *Dutch Flanders* are

1. *Sluys*, one, and the most commodious, of the five Ports in *Flanders*; it is about ten Miles North-East from *Bruges*. The *Dutch* being Masters of *Sluys*, *Bruges* could have no Communication with the Sea without their Leave, till the *Spaniards* cut a navigable Canal from *Bruges* to *Ostend*. *Sluys* is but a small Town, not above a Mile in Circumference, and a Place of little Trade at present. 2. *Sas van Ghent*, or the Port of *Ghent*, about twelve Miles North of *Ghent*; it is in Possession of the *Dutch*, who can cut off the Communication between *Ghent* and the Sea when they please. 3. *Cadsandt*, an Island at the Mouth of the *Scheld*, over against the *Walcheren*, about nine Miles long, and four Miles broad, on which is a Fort of the same Name, by which the *Dutch* secure their Communication between *Zealand* and *Flanders*. There are some other Places of less Moment, but none of any great Consequence in the Hands of the *Dutch*, except what relates to their Barrier.

Austrian Flanders

The most noted Places in *Austrian Flanders* are, 1. *Ghent*, the Capital of that Province; it stands on four navigable Rivers, *viz.* the *Scheld*, the *Lys*, the *Lyene*, and the *Mourwater*; it is about thirty Miles North-West from *Brussels*; it is surrounded by a Wall and other Fortifications, ten or twelve Miles in Circumference; but though the Town is large, yet not one half of the Ground within the Walls is built upon, there being many Gardens, and Fields too, within the Walls. The Town is divided into six and twenty Islands, by Canals and Branches of Rivers that pass through it, over which there are in all near a hundred Bridges; the Streets are wide, and well pav'd, the Market-Places spacious, and the Houses are mostly of Brick, and well built.

The publick Buildings are the Stadthouse and the Cathedral, both handsome Buildings; in the latter of which is an Image of white Marble, with one Head and three Faces. There are seven Parish Churches, and fifty five Monasteries and Nunneries; amongst which there is one *English* Nunnery: Here was born that famous *John* Duke of *Lancaster*, call'd therefore *John* of *Gaunt*. There are on the Bridge, call'd *Dogebrack*, two Images, representing a Son beheading his Father, the Occasion of which is, A Father and his Son were both condemn'd to dye, but it was granted to them, that if they could so agree between themselves, he that would execute the other should be pardon'd; and the Father being advanc'd in Years, and not having long to live by the Course of Nature, he prevail'd with his Son to be the Executioner, and save his own Life; to which his Son with Reluctancy agreed; but as he was going to give the fatal Stroak, the Sword broke in his Hand, which being look'd upon as a Miracle, to forbid the Execution, they were both pardon'd, and those Images set upon the Bridge in Memory of the Miracle.

Manufactures

The Silk and Woolen Manufactures flourish in this Place as well as the Linnen, and they have a great Trade in Corn. *Ghent* is a Bishop's See, under the Archbishop of *Mechlin*, and the Provincial Court is held here; but there is Appeal to that of *Mechlin*. The *French* took Possession of *Ghent* and other Towns in *Flanders* on the Death of *Charles* II. of *Spain*, but it surrendred to the Allies upon the Defeat of the *French* at *Ramellies*, in the Year 1706; and in the Year 1708 the *French* surpriz'd it, and threw in an Army to defend it; but the Allies invested it near *Christmas*, and notwithstanding the advanc'd Season, compell'd them to surrender and quit it.

Bruges

Bruges is twenty four Miles North-West of *Ghent*; it is about four or five Miles in Circumference, surrounded by a Wall and other Fortifications; it has a spacious Market-Place, in which six of the Principal Streets center; there is a Cathedral, seven Parish Churches, six Monasteries and Nunneries; amongst which last one for *English* Nuns, and a College of Jesuits; it is said to have been once a Place of the greatest Trade of any in *Europe*, most Countries that had any Trade or Commerce having Agents or Factors here, particularly the *English*, who made it their Staple for Wool; and as it has a Communication with the Sea by a Canal to *Ostend*, it has still a good Trade. Their Manufactures are chiefly Woolen Cloath and Stuffs, Linnen, and Tapestry, and the like.

Ostend is ten Miles to the Westward of *Bruges*,

ges; it is the beſt Harbour in *Flanders*, except *Sluys*; it ſtands on a Moraſs, which Situation, with it's Fortifications, render it one of the ſtrongeſt Towns in *Flanders*; the Place is not very large, but it is regularly built, and the Streets well pav'd. *Oſtend* was but a ſmall Village; it's firſt beginning to become famous was in the Year 1601, when it was defended by the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* againſt the *Spaniards*, and in the Year 1604. The *Spaniards* had in that three Years loſt ſeventy thouſand Men before it. The *French* got Poſſeſſion of it, upon the Death of *Charles* II. King of *Spain*, but the Confederates took it after the Battle of *Ramellies*, and it is now ſubject to the Houſe of *Auſtria*.

Newport *Newport*, another of the five Ports of *Flanders*, lies by the Sea ſide, eight Miles South-Weſt of *Oſtend*, and fifteen Weſt of *Bruges*; it is at the Mouth of a ſmall River, and is a good Harbour for ſmall Veſſels, but it is a Place of no great Trade; the Houſes are generally built of Wood, and for a Subſiſtance, they depend chiefly upon the Fiſhing Trade.

Dendermond. *Dendermond* ſtands where the River *Dender* falls into the *Scheld*, as the Name *Dendermond* implies; it is twelve Miles Eaſtward of *Ghent*; it is a ſtrong Fortreſs, and the more ſo, becauſe they can lay all the Country about them under Water when they pleaſe; it is one of the Barrier Towns; the Garriſons conſiſt of an equal Number of *Dutch* and *Germans*; it ſurrendred to the Allies in the Year 1706, after the Battle of *Ramellies*.

Audenard. *Audenard* is ſituate on the River *Scheld*, fourteen Miles South of *Ghent*. 'Tis a large, well fortify'd Town; the River runs through it, and divides it in two Parts; it is ſurrounded by plain pleaſant Meadows, except a Hill on the South ſide, which commands the Town; the Streets are wide and handſome, and the Buildings good, and ſeveral fine Churches and Monaſteries are in the Place; it has a good Trade in Tapeſtry and fine Linnen, and is the Capital of a Chatellany, which contains three and thirty Villages; the *French* laid Siege to it in the Year 1708, but the Allies gave them Battle, gain'd a compleat Victory, and beat the French from the Place.

Courtray *Courtray*, on the River *Lys*, twenty ſix Miles South-Weſt of *Ghent*; it is ſtrong by Art and Nature; it is defended by a good Citadel, is a populous Place, and both Linnen and woolen Manufactures flouriſh here.

Menin. *Menin*, a little but well fortify'd Town on the River *Lys*, five Miles to the Southward of *Courtray*; it was taken by the Allies in the Year 1706; and is now one of the Towns Barrier againſt *France*.

Tournay. *Tournay* is on the River *Scheld*, which runs through the Town, and divides it in two Parts; it is about the middle between *Ghent* and *Cambray*, and about thirty Miles from each; it is a large, populous, well built City, and a Place of good Trade; and while it was in the Hands of the *French*, they put it's Fortifications in a good Condition; but what contributed to the Strength of the Place was, the Mines, which, when the Allies were before it in the Year 1709, blew up hundreds, or rather thouſands, of them at a Blaſt; for when they had with the utmoſt Difficulty and Hazard made themſelves Maſters of as ſtrong Works as ever were contriv'd, and the *French* could not maintain them any longer, they ſet fire to the Mines, and blow'd up whole Regiments of brave Fellows at a Time, who fell again in a Shower of broken Limbs and ſhatter'd Carcaſes. Theſe Mines conſiſt of vaſt ſubterraneous Vaults, more like Terras Walks than Mines. In the Center of the Citadel there is a Well, the Surface of whoſe Water is fifty Foot below the Mouth of the Well, and juſt above the Water, are the beautiful Balconies that lead to thoſe deſtructive Caverns above mention'd. (This Deſcription of thoſe Mines, we had from a *Britiſh* Gentleman that view'd them.)

The City contains ten Pariſhes, and as many beautiful Churches, beſides fine Convents, and Cloyſters; there is a magnificent Cathedral adorn'd with Braſs and Marble Monuments, beſides other Antiquities, which they think very valuable; as for Inſtance, there is an excellent Piece of Painting, of the crowning of our Saviour, done by the famous *Rubens*, ſaid to be of ineſtimable Value; there is alſo another Picture of the Nativity, and other fine Paintings.

King *Henry* VIII of *England* beſieg'd *Tournay* in the Year 1513, and built the old Citadel; but upon a Treaty of Marriage, between the Dauphin, and the Princeſs *Mary*, it was deliver'd up to the *French* again. The *Spaniards* made themſelves Maſters of it in the Year 1581, and the *French* again ſurpriz'd it in the Year 1667; but the Allies took it from them in the Year 1709, and it is now one of the *Dutch* Barrier Towns. This Town was famous for the woolen Manufacture; but at preſent the Linnen only prevails, and engroſſes the chief Buſineſs of the Place.

Beſides theſe, there is *Ypres*, on the River *Ypre*, ten Miles Weſt of *Menin*. *Fort Knoque* on the River *Iſſer*, fifteen Miles to the Northward of *Ypres*; and *Furnes* on the River *Colus*, about ten Miles Eaſt of *Dunkirk*; but they are not remarkable, only for being the Barrier Towns between the *Dutch* and *French*.

In *French Flanders*, the chief Towns are, *Liſle*, or *L'Iſle*, *Dunkirk*, *Mardyke*, *Graveling*, *Doway*, and ſome others of leſs Note, of which in Order. *French Flanders*

L'Iſle is ſo call'd, becauſe it ſtands on a Moraſs, and was once ſurrounded with Water, which is now drain'd off; it ſtands on the River *Deule*, twelve Miles Weſt of *Tournay*; it is a large, populous, well built City, defended by a Citadel, and ſo well fortify'd, that it coſt the Allies more Men to take it than any one Town in *Flanders* the laſt War; it is the Capital of *French Flanders*, and, from it's flouriſhing Trade, and fine Buildings, is call'd little *Paris*. The Citadel is a Maſter-Piece in Fortification; and the Stadthouſe, and Church of St. *Peter*, are elegant Buildings. The Silken and Linnen Manufactures are arriv'd at great Perfection here, and they are become famous for Camblets. The *French* took it in the Year 1667, and built the Citadel, enlarg'd it's Fortifications, and made it the Center of the Trade of *French Flanders*; it was taken by the Allies on the twenty ſecond of of *October* 1708, and the Citadel on the eleventh of *December* following; but was ſurrendred up to the *French* at the Treaty of *Utrecht*, on the Account of their demoliſhing *Dunkirk*; becauſe from that Port they uſed to infeſt the *Engliſh* Seas in Time of War, both with their Privateers, and their Men of War. *Liſle*

Dunkirk is a Harbour on the Sea Shore, twenty five Miles North-Eaſt of *Calais*, and twenty five South-Weſt from *Oſtend*. The Harbour and Fortifications of the Place ſerv'd for a Neſt of Pirates in the late Wars, in the Time of *Lewis* XIV. which was the Occaſion of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* inſiſting upon having its Fortifications demoliſh'd, at the Treaty of *Utrecht*; and both the Harbour and Walls of the City were entirely raz'd, and made like the Ruins of a good Harbour, rather than a Harbour itſelf. *Dunk*

Mardyke, a little Town upon the Coaſt, about a League South-Weſt of *Dunkirk*; this *Mar*

Place the *French* thought to fortify, to anſwer the End of *Dunkirk*, alledging, that if they were oblig'd to demoliſh *Dunkirk*, yet they were not thereby forbid to fortify another Place; but upon the Threats of the *Engliſh* Court, they were oblig'd to lay that Project aſide, after they had made ſome conſiderable Progreſs in it.

Gravelin is at the Mouth of the River *Aa*, ten Miles South-Weſt of *Dunkirk*; it is one of the five Ports of *Flanders*, but not capable of receiving Ships of great Burthen.

Gravelin.

Doway ſtands on the River *Scharpe*, twenty Miles South of *L'Iſle*; it is a large populous Town; the Allies took it from the *French* in the Year 1710, but the *French* retook it in the Year 1712, when the *Britiſh* Troops were ſeparated from thoſe of the Allies, when they refuſed to accept of a Peace upon the Terms propoſed by *England*. The chief Manufacture of this Place is Worſted Camblets.

Doway.

The Province of *Artois*, or *Arras*, is bounded by a Part of *Flanders* on the North, and by *Hainault*, and another Part of *Flanders*, on the Eaſt; and by *Picardy* on the South, and Weſt. Their Manners, Habit, and Language is moſtly *French*, the Province having been conquer'd by that King, and confirm'd to him by the *Spaniards*, at the *Pyrenean* Treaty, *Anno* 1659. Chief Towns in *Arras* or *Artois*, are,

Province of Artois.

1. *Arras*, the Capital of the Province, called antiently *Atrebatum*; it ſtands on the River *Scharpe*, twenty five Miles South-Weſt of *L'Iſle*, and twenty South-Weſt of *Doway*; it conſiſts of two Parts, of which one is the City, and the other the Town, but both ſurrounded by the ſame Wall, and fortify'd after the modern Way. It is a Biſhop's See, and the Cathedral a magnificent Structure. In a Chapel here the Prieſts ſhew a Wax Taper burning, which they pretend was ſent from Heaven, and does not conſume; they have alſo a Pot of Manna, which, they pretend, came the ſame Way as the Taper did; and this is expos'd in a dry Seaſon when they pray for Rain. It is a handſome Town, and famous for the beſt Tapeſtry, thence call'd *Arras*; it belongs to the *French* ever ſince the Year 1640.

Arras.

2. St. *Omar*, fifteen Miles South-Eaſt of *Calais*, and twenty South of *Dunkirk*. The Trade of this Place is much improv'd, by Means of a navigable River or Canal, from it to *Gravelin*, by which it has a Communication with the Sea.

St. Omar.

The Province of *Cambray*, is bounded by *Hainault* on the North and Eaſt, by *Picardy* on the South, and by *Artois* on the Weſt. Chief Town is

Province of Cambray.

Cambray, a large well built City, on the River *Scheld*, not far from the Head of it; about ſixteen Miles South-Weſt of *Valenciennes*; it's regular Fortifications, and the Opportunity of laying it under Water upon Occaſion, renders it one of the ſtrongeſt Places in thoſe Parts: Here are nine Parith Churches, three Abbies, and ſeveral other religious Houſes and Hoſpitals. The Stadthouſe ſtands in a ſpacious Market-Place, where moſt of the Streets center; the chief Manufacture of this Place, is a fine *Cambray* Linnen, called Cambrick, from the Name of the Place; it has been an Archbiſhoprick ever ſince the Year 1559. The *Spaniards* were Maſters of it, till the Year 1667, and then it was taken by the *French*, and confirm'd to them by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

Cambray.

There is alſo the Town of *Chateau Cambreſis*, and *Crevecaur*, but they are not now worth particular Deſcription.

Chateau Cambreſis. Crevecaur.

The Province of *Hainault* is bounded on the North by *Flanders* and part of *Brabant*, and by another part of *Brabant* and the County of *Namur* on the Eaſt. On the South by *Cambreſis*, *Picardy*, and *Champaign*, and on the Weſt by the River *Scheld*, which ſeparates it from the Province of *Artois*; the chief Rivers are the *Scheld*, the *Sambre*, the *Dender*, and the *Haine*; in this Province are Mines of Lead and Iron, and ſeveral Quarries of Marble; the chief Towns are in two claſſes, firſt thoſe in poſſeſſion of the *French*, and ſecondly thoſe that are in the hand of the Emperor.

Province of Hainault.

And firſt of thoſe belonging to the *French*. The chief are,

1. *Valenciennes*, the Capital of *Hainault*, ſituate on the River *Scheld*, which runs in ſeveral Canals through the ſeveral parts of the Town, and the principal Streets of it. It is about ſixteen Miles North Eaſt from *Cambray*, and eighteen South Weſt from *Mons*; it is a large well built and ſtrongly fortify'd Town, and (what adds to its ſtrength) it may be overflow'd at Pleaſure; and as the Land is ſo low and ſubject to be overflow'd, the late *French* King cauſed a noble Cauſeway to be thrown up from *Valenciennes* to *L'Iſle*, and ſo to *Ypres*, near fifty Miles in length. Their Houſes are moſtly built of Wood, their chief Manufactures are Silk and Linnen; it belongs to the *French*, being firſt taken by them in the Year 1677. and afterwards confirm'd to them at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

Valenciennes.

2. *Bouchain* is alſo on the River *Scheld*, ten Miles South-Weſt of *Valenciennes*. The *French* took it from the *Spaniards* in the Year 1676, and it was confirm'd to the *French* by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. The Allies took it from the *French* in the Year 1711, but the *French* retook it in 1712, after the *Britiſh* Troops had ſeparated from thoſe of the Allies.

Bouchain.

3. *Condé*, where the River *Haine* falls into the *Scheld*, about ſix Miles North-Eaſt from *Valenciennes*, not remarkable for any Thing, but that of giving Title to a Prince of the Houſe of *Bourbon*.

These three are in the Hands of the *French*; thoſe that follow, are in the Poſſeſſion of the Emperor.

4. *Mons*, twenty ſix Miles South-Weſt of *Bruſſels*, and thirty ſix Weſt of *Namur*; it is a ſtrong handſome Town, the Capital of the *Spaniſh Hainault*; with ſpacious Streets and Market-Places. This is a Biſhop's See, and here the Parliament, or Provincial Council aſſembles, and receives Appeals from the reſt of the Towns of *Brabant*, under the Emperor's Dominion: The Allies took it from the *French* in the Year 1709, after the Battle of *Malplaquet*; and it was afterwards confirm'd to the Emperor by the Treaty of *Utrecht*.

5. *Ath*, ſituate on the *Dendre*, twelve Miles North-Weſt of *Mons*; it is but a little Town, but ſo well fortify'd, that it has more than once endured a long Siege againſt an Army of a hundred thouſand Men; it was confirm'd to the Emperor by the Treaty of *Utrecht*, and now remains in his Poſſeſſion.

6. *Halle*, on the utmoſt Confines of this Province, eight Miles South of *Bruſſels*, and twenty North of *Mons*; it is pleaſantly ſituated upon the River *Saine*, or *Sin*, but it is a Place of no great Importance at preſent.

The Province, or County of *Namur*, has *Brabant* on the North, the Biſhoprick of *Liege* on the Eaſt, and *Hainault* on the South and Weſt; there are in this County ſome good Mines of Lead, Iron, and Coals, with Veins of Marble, and great Store of foſſile Nitre, and they have plenty of Wood for the uſe of their Iron Works.—Chief Towns are

Province of Namur.

Namur. 1. *Namur*, ſituate at the Confluence of the *Maes* and the *Sambre*; it is thirty ſix Miles Eaſt of *Mons*; it is of a circular Form, and lies in a Bottom, between two Hills; the greateſt Part of the Town is on the North Side of the *Sambre*, and on the other Side is a ſteep Mountain, on which the Caſtle ſtands, which is a magnificent Building, and reckon'd one of the ſtrongeſt Forts in *Europe*; for though the Rock on which it ſtands be not very ſteep, yet its Approaches are fortify'd with the greateſt Art, and at the Top are ſeveral good Springs of Water. It is a Biſhoprick under the Archbiſhop of *Cambray*; there are beſides the Cathedral, nine or ten handſome Churches: The Jeſuits College exceeds that at *Antwerp* for Magnitude, Structure, and Beauty, being ſupported by wreath'd Columns of red Marble of the *Doric* Order finely vein'd, and near a Yard and a half Diameter, with fine Baſes and Corniſhes in Proportion. The Allies took it from the *French* in the Year 1695, and it is at preſent one of the *Dutch* Barrier Towns; the States of the Province aſſemble here; but there lies an Appeal from thence to the ſupreme Court at *Mechlin*.

Charleroy 2. *Charleroy* ſtands near the *Sambre*, fifteen Miles Weſt of *Namur*; it is a ſtrong Fortreſs, and is now in the Emperor's Poſſeſſion.

Charlemont. 3. *Charlemont*, a ſtrong Place on the top of a high Hill, at the bottom of which runs the River *Maes* or *Meuſe*. It is about twenty Miles to the Southward of *Namur*, fortify'd by the Emperor *Charles V. Anno* 1555.

Province of Luxemburg The Province or Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, is bounded on the North by the Dutchy of *Limburg*, and Biſhoprick of *Liege*; by the River *Moſelle*, which ſeparates it from the Archbiſhoprick of *Treves* or *Triers* on the Eaſt; on the South, by the Dutchy of *Lorrain*; and on the Weſt, by the River *Maes*, which divides it from the Counties of *Namur* and *Champaign*. This Province is divided into two Parts, *Famenne*, and *Ardenne*. *Famenne*, which is the Northermoſt, is a fruitful Soil, yielding Plenty of Corn and Wine; but *Ardenne*, which is next to *France*, is a more barren Soil; the lower Ground produces Woods abounding with Game, and the Mountains produces Mines of Iron and Copper. The Language and Manners of the *French* are the moſt prevailing here, as laying contiguous to that Kingdom; but the *Dutch* is pretty much ſpoke in the Northern Parts of it. It was confirm'd to the Emperor at the Treaty of *Utrecht*, in the Year 1713. Chief Towns of the Dutchy of *Luxemburg* are,

1. *Luxemburg*, the Capital of the Province, twenty Miles South Weſt of *Treves*, and an hundred South Eaſt of *Bruſſels*. The Town is ſtrong, but not large, or well built. There is a Monaſtery of *Franciſcans* here; and in the great Church are the Tombs of *John* of *Luxemburg* King of *Bohemia*, and of Count *Mansfield*, Governor of the *Spaniſh Netherlands*; but there is no publick Building worth a Traveller's Notice. *Luxemburg*

2. *Thionville*, on the North Side of the *Moſelle*, fourteen Miles to the Southward of *Luxemburg*. It is a ſtrong, well built Town, but has been often alternately in the Hands of the *French* and *Spaniards*.

The Province of *Limburg* is bounded on the North and Eaſt by the Dutchy of *Juliers*, and on the South by *Luxemburg*, and on the Weſt by the Biſhoprick of *Liege*. It is about thirty Miles from North to South, and twenty five from Eaſt to Weſt. Here is good Arable and Paſture-Ground, Plenty of Wood, good Iron-Mines, but no Wine in the Province. The chief Town is *Limburg*, on the River *Vſe*, fifteen Miles South Eaſt of *Liege*, and twelve to the Southward of *Aix la Chapelle*. It is a ſmall Town of only one broad Street; and as it ſtands upon a ſteep Rock, and has but one Paſſage to it, it is almoſt inacceſſible by an Enemy. This is the only Town of Note in the Province belonging to the *Imperialiſts*; the other three, viz. *Dalem*, *Roldue*, and *Fauquemont*, or *Falkenburg*, are now in Poſſeſſion of the *Dutch*; but as they are now in Ruins, and of little Note, I cannot think them worth a particular Deſcription.

CHAP. III.

Of the Trade, Manufactures, and Navigation, of the Auſtrian Netherlands; *with an Account of their Religion, Government, Forces, and Revenues; and the Order of their Nobility, Gentry, &c.*

HAVING already hinted of the Trade and Manufacture of each Province in the Deſcription of its reſpective Province, I ſhall only obſerve in general upon that Subject, that before the Revolt and Union of the ſeven Provinces, the woollen Manufactures were in great Eſteem as a beneficial Branch of Trade; for hither the *Engliſh* ſent moſt, if not all, their Woollen to be made into Cloth; the Reaſon indeed was, becauſe at that Time of Day, we could not manufacture that Commodity ſo well as they. But as Divine Providence can bring Good out of Evil, ſo their ſuperſtitious Bigotry to Popery, and their barbarous Uſage of the poor Proteſtants, (a natural Conſequence of the former) occaſion'd ſome of their beſt Mechanicks to fly for Shelter to *England* for the Sake of their Religion; and not only willing, but glad, and thankful, to be employ'd in our woolen Manufactures for the Sake of Bread and the free Exerciſe of their Religion; by which Means the manufacturing of Wool into Cloth, &c. was as it were brought into our Mouths at a ſmall Expence, and our Charity to thoſe diſtreſs'd Proteſtants ſoon became our Advantage as well as theirs; and in this Caſe our Gain was their Loſs; for when by that Means we had got the way of manufacturing our own Wool, they by that means loſt all that Buſineſs; whereupon they ſow'd vaſt Quantities of Flax, and the Soil of the *Low Countries* being extremely proper for that Commodity, and being an ingenious People, they ſoon became great Proficients in the making of Linnen and Lace, in which they excel all Nations in *Europe*; as witneſs their *Holland* and *Cambray* Linnen, call'd after the Names of their reſpective Places, Holland and Cambrick; alſo their *Flanders* Lace, *Mechlin* Lace, *Bruſſels* Lace; of all which Linnens and Lace, *England* in ſelf makes a great Conſumption; and paying for them generally in Treaſure, they turn out to them to a very good Account. And though we might formerly exchange our *India* Goods for their Manufactures, which might be of ſome Advantage to us, yet that

that Branch of our Trade is now block'd up, ſince they have fallen into ſuch a large Share of the *Eaſt India* Trade themſelves. But what not only creates, but highly increaſes the Surprize, is, that when they have ſerv'd us as they have done, not only in the *Eaſt Indies*, and eſpecially the Spice Trade, but alſo in the Fiſhery as before treated of, that they ſhould require our Defence and Protection in their extravagant Pretences, while they ſtand by as idle Spectators in the Quarrel, and ſuck in Money by their continual Trade with all the Nations at Variance.

INDEED, if we look upon them in a proper Light, *viz.* as the common Carriers of *Europe*, (the chief Employment of their Shipping being not to export their own Goods, but to trade with thoſe of foreign Nations) we may then obſerve, that our Affectation of Novelty is a good Article in their Favour. For if to promote our own Trade and home Manufactures, we thought it proper to prohibit the wearing of *India* Silks and Calicoes, might it not equally tend to the promoting our own Manufactures, to prohibit *Cambray* Linnen, commonly known by the Name of Cambrick; as alſo *Mechlin*, *Bruſſels*, or any *Flanders* Lace? Is not the Linnen of *Scotland*, and of late of *Ireland* too, ſo near that of *Holland*, and in ſuch a fair way of improving if encourag'd, as to be ſufficient to induce us to encourage the Manufactures of thoſe our own Dominions rather than affect thoſe abroad, which ſo little, if at all exceed ours, and probably would not at all exceed it if we encourag'd our own as much as we do ſome foreign Manufactures? But if nothing but foreign Manufactures will go down with the Ladies and Perſons of Quality, (and as it is at preſent, nothing will go down with the Chamber-maids and common Women-ſervants but ſuch as their Ladies or Miſtreſſes wear,) no Wonder if our own Manufactures, however induſtriouſly improv'd, are ſtagnated and diſcourag'd; and it is to little purpoſe to complain of a Decay of Trade while we ſend our Money abroad to encourage the Trade of other Nations, though our own Manufactures, eſpecially that of Silk, equals if not exceeds any Nation in the World; and the chief Argument that our Mercers have to recommend their Silks to ſome Sorts of Appetites, is to aſſert them *to be of foreign Make*. What an immenſe Treaſure at this time iſſues out of *England* for Hollands, Cambricks, Lace, and clandeſtinely foreign wrought Silks, while the general Complaint at home is Want of Employment.

BUT to break off from this Article of Trade, the Religion of the *Auſtrian Netherlands* falls next under our Conſideration, which being generally *Roman Catholick*, we ſhall not need to ſpend time about a Deſcription of it here; only I ſhall obſerve that their Adminiſtration of Eccleſiaſtical Government is much milder here than in ſome other Popiſh Countries. The Inquiſition does not exert its Authority here ſo much as in *Spain* and *Portugal*, and the Proteſtants live very eaſy amongſt them.

AFTER the Peace of *Utrecht*, the Emperor by Conſent of all the Princes and States concern'd in the laſt War, was acknowledg'd Sovereign of all thoſe Provinces; and in him (or his Viceroy) and the Convention of the States of the reſpective Provinces, is the Legiſlative Power lodg'd; and by that Authority, Laws are enacted, Money levy'd, &c. but nothing of that kind can be done without the unanimous Conſent of the whole Aſſembly, which conſiſts of, 1. The Biſhops and dignify'd Clergy. 2. The Nobility and Gentry. 3. The Deputies or Repreſentatives of the chief Towns. Theſe meet at *Bruſſels*, except thoſe of *Luxemburg* and *Guelders*, who have an antient Priviledge, that they cannot be ſummon'd out of their reſpective Provinces; nor do the States of the ſeveral Provinces which meet at *Bruſſels*, aſſemble in one Houſe, but each apart, and make diſtinct Laws for their reſpective Provinces, as well as general Laws for the whole.

THE Regent or Viceroy of the *Auſtrian Netherlands* is aſſiſted by three Councils; the firſt is call'd the Council of State, where War, Peace, and foreign Alliances, are conſider'd; alſo Ambaſſadors receive their Inſtructions and diſpatches. 2. The Privy Council, whoſe Members are appointed by the Regent. The Preſident of this Council is the Keeper of the Great Seal. 3. The Council of Finances, which ſuper-intends the publick Revenue.

BUT beſides this Regent or Viceroy, every Province hath its peculiar Governor, (but all ſubject to the Regent,) and every Province has a Court of Juſtice for civil Cauſes; but from thoſe civil Courts in each Province, there lies an Appeal to the Grand Council at *Mechlin*, and in criminal Caſes, the Provoſt of each Province with his Aſſociate, has the Determination of them, with this Reſtriction, however, that he is accountable to the Grand Provoſt who reſides at *Bruſſels*, the Capital of the *Auſtrian Netherlands*.

As for the Forces of the *Netherlands*, I ſhall refer the Reader to the Account of the Forces of the *United Provinces*, and the Stipulation between the Emperor and the *Dutch*, for maintaining them. [*See Chap.* X. *of the* United Provinces.] Forces.

AFTER the Revolt of the ſeven Provinces from the reſt, the Revenues of the other ten were not ſufficient to defray the Charges of the civil Government; but ſince their Trade has been reviv'd, and they have had ſuch a vaſt Demand for their fine Linnen and Lace, they are not now ſo burthenſome to the Emperor as they were to *Spain*. Moſt of their Revenues ariſe either from the Demeſne Lands or the Cuſtoms; and if there be an extraordinary Tax to be rais'd, it is demanded of the States of the reſpective Provinces. And although Denials in this Caſe are not frequent, yet there muſt be the unanimous Conſent of every Member before thoſe Supplies can be granted.

WHAT Advantage the Emperor has obtain'd by the Conqueſt of the *Netherlands*, conſiſts rather in Strength than Riches; for the Forces jointly maintain'd by the *Imperialiſts* and the *Dutch* in this Country, and the many ſtrong Fortreſſes they are poſſeſs'd of, will enable them at any time to give *France* a conſiderable Diverſion on this Side, and will in all Probability keep *France* within due Bounds.

THE Nobility and Gentry of the *Auſtrian Netherlands*, eſpecially in *Luxemburg*, are much more numerous than in the *United Provinces*; they moſt of them have Palaces in or near the capital City, and their Country Seats are generally Caſtles wall'd and moated round, and thence call'd *Chateaus*. The principal Order of Knighthood is that of the *Golden Fleece*, of which there are fifty Knights, who generally are Perſons of the firſt Rank and Quality. Nobility.

HAVING thus finiſh'd the Seventeen Provinces, it would fall naturally in my way to take *Switzerland* in my Progreſs to *Italy*; but as *Italy* is now the Scene of ſo much Action, and the Subject of People's Expectation, I think it may be more entertaining and agreeable to the Reader to paſs over directly to *Italy*, and give a Deſcription of it full, and take *Switzerland* in my way back to *France*, *Spain*, &c.

A DESCRIPTION

Of the Several

PROVINCES

OF

ITALY.

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation and Extent of Italy; *alſo of the Air, Seas, Lakes, Rivers, Springs, Mountains, and Woods; with ſome general Remarks on the Genius, Temper,* &c. *of the modern Inhabitants.*

ITALY was known of old by the Names of *Heſperia*, *Saturnia*, *Latium*, *Auſonia*, *OEnotria*, and *Janicula*; but I don't find that Authors agree as to the Original of it's preſent Name, *Italy*; but as it is univerſally known by that Name, the moſt probable Conjecture as to it's Original, is, that it was ſo call'd from *Italus*, an antient King of the *Siculi*, who leaving their Iſland, came into this Country, and poſſeſſing themſelves of the middle Part of it, they call'd the whole after the Name of their Prince, *Italia* or *Italy*.

It is obſerv'd, that *Italy* very much reſembles a Boot, or Leg, with Part of the Thigh, and extends in Length North-Weſt and South-Eaſt; *viz.* from the Foot of Mount St. *Barnard*, one of the *Alps*, to the City of *Otranto*, on the South-Eaſtermoſt Point, or Extremity of the Heel of the Boot, ſix hundred Miles in a direct Line, not regarding Aſcents, Deſcents, or winding and curving Roads, *&c.* *Italy* including all the Provinces, which will hereafter be deſcrib'd as belonging to it, is bounded on the North and North-Weſt by the *Alps*, which ſeparates it from *France*, *Germany* and *Switzerland*; on the Eaſt by the Gulf of *Venice* or the *Adriatick* Sea; by the *Ionian* Sea and *Faro* of *Meſſina* on the South, and by the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrhenean* Sea, and Part of *France*, on the Weſt.

Air. The Air in *Italy* is various, not only with reſpect to the Climates or different Latitudes, but according to the different Face of the Country; for upon the *Apennine* Mountains it is exceeding cold, but upon the South Side of them it is exceeding hot, by Reaſon of the Heat of the Sun, and it's refracted Rays, which increaſe the Heat to Exceſs: The North Side of the *Apennine* Mountains are cooler and more healthful than the Provinces on the South, but not ſo univerſally but that the Rule admits of ſome Exception, there being ſome Provinces there, that have their Turns of being unhealthful, as will be ſeen hereafter.

Seas. The Seas that waſh the Banks of *Italy*, are, the *Adriatick* or Gulf of *Venice*, on the Eaſt, or North Eaſt; the *Ionian* Sea on the South, or South-Eaſt; and the *Tyrhenean* Sea on the Weſt; but that has been ſpoke of before in the Boundaries of *Italy*.

Lakes. The principal Lakes are, *Major*, *Lugano*, *Como*, *Iſeo*, and *Garda*, all in the Dutchy of *Milan*, and *Perugia*, *Vulſin*, and *Bracciano* in *Tuſcany*; and thoſe of *Fucin*, *Fundi*, *Caſtello*, *Gandolpho* and *Calano*, in the *Campania* of *Rome*.

Rivers. Of their Rivers the chief are, 1. the *Po*; this is the antient and famous *Eridanus* of the Poets, ſo much taken notice of by them for the Fall of *Phaeton* into it. The *Po* riſes in the *Alps*, and having croſs'd *Piedmont*, the *Montferrat*, the *Milaneſe*, and *Mantuan*, &c. it falls into the Sea in the Gulf of *Venice*, by ſeveral Mouths between *Venice* and *Ravenna*. 2. The *Teſin* riſes in Mount *Adula* one of the *Alps*, and having paſs'd through the Lake of *Major*, it falls into the *Po* near *Pavia*. 3. The *Adda*, which having croſs'd the Lake *Como*, falls into the *Po* at *Cremona*. 4. The *Oglio*, which riſes in the Lake *Iſeo*, and joins the *Po* near *Mantua*. 5. The *Mincio*, which running through the Lake *Garda*, paſſeth by *Mantua*, and afterwards falls into the *Po*. 6. *Tanaro* riſes in the *Piedmont*, and falls into the *Po*, at *Baſſignano*. 7. The *Adige*, which riſes in the Mountains of *Tyrol*, runs by *Trent* and *Verona*, and falls into the *Adriatick* Sea, to the Southward of *Venice*. 8. The *Arno*, which riſes in the *Apennine* Hills, paſſes by *Florence*, and *Piſa*, and falls into the *Tuſcan* Sea near *Leghorn*. 9. The laſt, and not the

the leaſt remarkable River, is the *Tiber*; which alſo riſes in the *Appenine* Mountains, paſſeth by *Rome*, and falls into the Sea at *Oſtia*.

BESIDES thoſe Rivers, there are abundance of ſmall Springs, which riſe in the *Appenine* Hills, and collecting themſelves by Degrees, in the Valleys, they form ſmall Brooks, and ſome fall into the *Tuſcan*, others into the *Adriatick* Sea; and ſome of them are convey'd by Aqueducts of Brick or Stone to *Rome*, at a vaſt Expence; as muſt be the Caſe, if we conſider at what a vaſt Diſtance from it they riſe.

Mountains. THE chief Mountains of *Italy* are, the *Alps*, the *Apenine*, and the noted *Volcano Veſuvius*. The *Alps* are the Northern Boundary of *Italy*, and is a long Chain, or Ridge of Mountains; which, though exceeding high, and cover'd with Snow in Winter Time, yet in Summer they afford good Paſture to the very Top, and in other Places there is good arable Land, upon ſuch Declivities and Precipices, where one would think it impoſſible for a Plough to go.

THE *Apennine* are a Chain of Mountains, which run the whole Length of the Country, from *Provence* in *France*, to *Modena* and *Florence*, and ſo towards *Urbino*, and near the *Adriatick* Sea.

THESE Mountains are generally well cover'd with Woods, and pleaſant Groves; of which we have the following Remark, elegantly expreſs'd in *Lucan*, and tranſlated into *Engliſh* Verſe, by the celebrated Mr. *Addiſon*, as follows:

In Pomp the ſhady Apennines *ariſe,*
And lift th' aſpiring Nation to the Skies.
No Land like Italy, *erects the Sight,*
By ſuch a vaſt Aſcent, or ſwells to ſuch a Height.
Her num'rous States the tow'ring Hills divide,
And ſee the Billows riſe on either Side.
At Piſa *here the Range of Mountains ends,*
And here to high Ancona's *Shore extends:*
In their dark Womb a thouſand Rivers lie,
That with contin'd Streams the doubled Seas ſupply.

THE Southermoſt Part of *Italy* is alſo very mountainous, and thoſe ſome of them exceeding high. I happen'd in my Travels, to be at *Regio*, in the Southermoſt Part of *Italy*, on the Eaſt Shore of the *Fare* of *Meſſina*, on the twenty ninth of *Auguſt*, in the Year 1718, and knowing that the Moon was that Evening to be totally eclips'd, with a Continuance of above an hour and a half total, the whole Eclipſe continuing above three Hours and three Quarters; and as I knew the Moon would riſe in *Italy*, (though not in *England*) before the Eclipſe begun, my Curioſity led me to go, with two or three more in Company, to the Top of the neareſt high Mountain to ſee the Moon riſe, and the Eclipſe begin, as thinking that the Top we ſaw was the Summit of the whole; but when we had with Difficulty attain'd the Top of that Mountain, there was another appear'd beyond it, as high above us as that which we had aſcended appear'd firſt; ſo that it prov'd a very laborious Task to aſcend the Top of one of the higheſt Mountains, much more of ſo many as they appear'd one after or behind another. The Aſcent was the Work of a whole Afternoon, and the Deſcent was the Work of the greateſt Part of the Night, which put me in Mind of the Relation which *Silius Italicus* gives of *Hannibal*'s March over the *Apennine* Mountains, and which may not unjuſtly be apply'd in this Place.

From Steep to Steep we did advance with Pain,
In Hopes at laſt the topmoſt Cliff to gain;
But ſtill by new Aſcents the Mountain grew,
And a freſh Tott preſented to our View.

BUT not to forget the famous Mount *Veſuvius*, it is about ſix Miles to the South-Eaſtward of *Naples*, famous for it's fiery ſulphurous Eruptions. and although it is ſix Miles diſtant from *Naples*, yet the Mountain is ſo high, and the *Volcano* ſo near the Top of it, that in a dark Night, and eſpecially in rainy Weather, (for then it burns with the moſt Fury) it caſts a Light into the City of *Naples* ſufficient to read a large Print, and ſeems as if it was not above half a Mile or a Mile off. I have ſeen it from *Naples* in a ſtormy dark Night, ſometimes almoſt quite dark, as if the Fire was almoſt extinguiſh'd; and on a ſudden, like the breaking of a Bubble, or as if the Fire had been pent or confin'd, break out with a terrible light Flame, to a ſurprizing and even incredible Height.

AS to the Manners of the *Italians*, they are generally complaiſant and obliging, obſerving a Medium between the *French* Air and Lightneſs, and the *Spaniſh* ſtarch'd affected Gravity; and indeed this Remark is made upon the *Italians*, that although they have the choiceſt of Wines and that in a great Plenty, yet they are *the ſobereſt People that are to be found in the Chriſtian World*; *nor is there any thing like Luxury to be ſeen at the Tables even of the Great*, &c. This Remark I had from an eminent Author; but as I have made my Remarks upon thoſe Parts of *Italy* where I my ſelf have been, I am oblig'd in Juſtice to confirm his Report; and whether their abſtemious Way of Living, may contribute to the Excellency of their Genius, and perhaps their Voice too, yet this we know, that the very Name of an *Italian Singer*, is a vaſt Step at this Time of the Day to give a Sanction to his Performances. But be that how it will, all Travellers allow them to be Men of great Wit, and to have a vaſt Genius, for Arts and Sciences; Muſick, Poetry, Painting, Sculpture, Architect, &c. are their favourite Studies; and at this Time of the Day, it is generally agreed, that no Nation upon the Face of the Earth excells them.

THE Nobility and Gentry very much affect magnificent Buildings, and fine Furniture; of which not the leaſt Part is their Collections of Pictures, Statues, Hangings, and Ornaments; and they are equally fond of ſplendid Equipages, and a great Train of Servants, that may equal, if not exceed their Ability. They make ſuch a Diſtinction between City and Country, that they think it derogates from the Dignity of the Family, if a Perſon is born in the Country; and therefore thoſe even of the beſt Rank, that have their Seats and Habitations in the Country, commonly ſend their Wives into ſome conſiderable City to lie-in. There are Academies or Societies of Virtuoſi in almoſt every Town; who at their publick Meetings, entertain each other with Rhethorical, Moral, or Philoſophical Diſcourſes.

THE Deſcription of their Perſons and Features ought not to be omitted, as being both very agreeable; and ſo much Pains do the Females take to render themſelves very engaging, that let Heaven give them a good Shape and Features, they will take care to give themſelves good Complexions. Their Hair is generally inclin'd to black, which Colour they ſeem to like, but towards *Genoa* they affect yellow Hair, that being the favourite Colour at *Genoa*; and as for their Dreſs, they commonly affect the *French* or *Spaniſh* promiſcuouſly, according to what Kingdom they are in the Intereſt of, but Black is generally their favourite Colour.

CHAP. II.

Of the ſeveral Diviſions of Italy *in general, and it's Subdiviſions in particular; beginning with Upper or Northern* Italy, *and firſt of* Savoy.

ITALY is comprehended under three Diviſions, *viz. Upper Italy, Middle Italy*, and *Lower Italy*.

Upper Italy is the Northermoſt, and contains, 1. The Principality of *Piedmont* and *Savoy*. 2. The Dutchy of *Montſerrat*. 3. The Territories of *Genoa*. 4. The Dutchy of *Milan*. 5. The Dutchy of *Parma*. 6. The Dutchy of *Modena*. 7. The Dutchy of *Mantua*; and, 8. The Territories of *Venice*.

Middle Italy contains the Territories belonging immediately to the Pope, and is, for that Reaſon, ſometimes call'd the *Lands of the Church*.

Lower Italy contains the Southermoſt Part of *Italy*, or Kingdom of *Naples*; in which is included *Calabria*, as bounded by the *Ionian* Sea, and the *Fare* of *Meſſina*.

I SHALL firſt begin with the King of *Sardinia*'s Dominions, *Upper Italy*; which extends in Length from the Lake of *Geneva*, to the Port of *Nice*, beyond *Marſeilles* in the *Mediterranean*; being about a hundred and eighty Miles from North to South, but of uncertain Breadth; in ſome Places a hundred Miles over, in others not above forty; this includes *Piedmont* and *Savoy*, of which I ſhall firſt treat of.

SAVOY.

THIS Province on the *French* Side of the *Alps*, is by ſome reckon'd to be out of *Italy*, but as it is contiguous to *Piedmont*, and the reſt of the King of *Sardinia*'s Dominions in *Italy*, this is the moſt proper Place to give a Deſcription of it. It is bounded on the North by the Lake and Territories of *Geneva*, and on the Eaſt and South by *Piedmont*, from which it is ſeparated by the *Alps*, and by *Dauphiné* in *France* on the Weſt.

Savoy contains ſeven Provinces; 1. The Dutchy of *Savoy*, or *Savoy Proper*. 2. The County of *Geneva*. 3. The Dutchy of *Chablais*. 4. The Barony of *Feſſigny*. 5. The County of *Tarantaiſe*. 6. The County of *Maurienne*. And, 7. The Dutchy of *Aouſt* or *Aoſta*.

Chief Towns.

CHIEF Towns in the Dutchy of *Savoy*, or *Savoy Proper*, are, *Chambery*, and *Montmelian*; the former was antiently the Reſidence of the Dukes of *Savoy*, and is the Place where the Parliament of the Province ſtill aſſembles, but it has loſt much of its antient Grandeur; and *Montmelian* is a little, but now inconſiderable Town, on the River *Iſere*, twelve Miles South-Eaſt of *Chambery*, but not worth any particular Deſcription.

Geneva.

THE County of *Geneva*, lies to the Weſtward of *Savoy Proper*; its chief Town is *Annecy*; it is thirty Miles North of *Chambery*, and is a large neat Town, and has been the Reſidence of the Biſhop of *Geneva*, ſince the Proteſtants expell'd him from that City.

Chablais.

THE Dutchy of *Chablais* is on the South Side of the Lake of *Geneva*: Chief Towns are *Thonon*, *Ripaille*, and *Evian*; but there is little remarkable in them, except that in *Ripaille* there is a Convent of *Carthuſians*, who have a large Foreſt cut out into Walks, extremely thick and gloomy, and, as Mr. *Addiſon* obſerves, very ſuitable to the Genius of thoſe for whom it is intended; the *Viſtoes* are of a great Length, and terminate upon the Lake of *Geneva*. One Side of the Walk there is a near Proſpect to the *Alps*, which from thence ſhow themſelves broken into ſo many Steps and Precipices, that they poſſeſs the Mind with a pleaſant Horror, and form an irregular, miſhapen, frightful Proſpect, which at that Diſtance is much more entertaining (I mean to have the Proſpect at a Diſtance without Danger) than to be in the Danger without the Proſpect.

THIS Convent belong'd formerly to the Hermits of St. *Maurice*, and in their canonical Hiſtory, (if I may ſo call it) is famous for the Retreat of *Amadeus* Duke of *Savoy*, afterwards *Felix* the Fifth; who, after a glorious Reign, took upon him the Habit of an Hermit, and retired to this ſolitary Spot of his Dominions; where he had not been half a Year, till he was choſen Pope by the Council of *Baſil*; but his Election being diſputed he reſign'd his Intereſt, and retired to his Hermitage. It would ſeem the Popes had not then attain'd to Infallibility, for if they had, he would ſcarce have been ſo eaſily expell'd; and if Infallibility made ſuch a Figure in the World at that Time of the Day, what muſt become of it now, when People know better.

BESIDES what has been already deſcribed, there are the Barony of *Feſſigny*, the County of *Tarantaiſe*, the County of *Maurienne*, and the Dutchy of *Aouſt*; but the Manners, Cuſtoms, Products *&c.* are ſo much like what follows, in the general Deſcription of the Country, that to fill up Time and Room with a particular Deſcription of each, would be altogether needleſs.

Air.

THE Air of *Savoy* is colder than that of *Italy*, as being upon the *Alps*, or on the North Side of them. Their chief Rivers are the *Iſere*, the *Arche*, and the *Arve*; and the Lakes, thoſe of *Bourget*, and *Annecy*. The principal Mountain is Mount *Cennis*, which though reckon'd the higheſt of all the *Alps*, has a Road over it, and divides *Savoy* from *Piedmont*. The Aſcent of this Hill, or rather Chain of Hills, is both troubleſome and dangerous, on account of the narrow Paſſages on the Brinks of high Precipices; where if the Beaſt the Traveller rides upon ſhould happen to ſtumble, he falls at leaſt half a Mile before he reaches the Bottom. And in this Caſe, all they have to truſt to, is the Mules they ride upon, who being uſed to thoſe tickliſh Paths, are commonly very ſure footed. On the Top of this Mountain is a Plain about two Leagues over, at the End whereof (which is at the Frontiers of *Piedmont* and *Savoy*, where they join) is an Inn, and a little Chapel, where they bury People that are frozen to Death, or ſmother'd in the Snow.

Tem

THE general Deſcription of the Temper of the People in *Italy*, may ſerve for thoſe of *Savoy*; but the moſt induſtrious People here in a plentiful Country, are nevertheleſs miſerably

poor, owing only to the deſpotick Power of their Princes and great Lords, whoſe Vaſſals, rather than Tenants or Subjects, the common People are; they not being allow'd a Subſiſtance out of the Lands they cultivate. And ſo ſcarce is Corn, that Travellers are glad upon the Road to put up with a Glaſs of Wine and a few Cheſnuts; and from this their Poverty it is, that we ſee ſo many *Savoyards* become Travellers, and in other Countries ſubmit to be Chimney-ſweepers, Raree-ſhow-men, *&c.* almoſt all over *Europe*; and yet they travel with this Advantage, that having been uſed to ſuch miſerable Living at home, if they can put up with the ſame Sort of Living in their Travels in a plentiful Country, they may ſave Money in their Travels to carry home; and a ſmall matter will make them rich among thoſe who live ſo miſerably poor. One of them, as a modern Traveller informs us, ſet up a Shop and lived grand with three hundred Guineas that he got in *England*, by going about with a Raree-ſhow: That three hundred Guineas was a vaſt Eſtate there.

Product. THE Country produces Wine, Apples, Pears, and other Fruit, but little Corn; but they have large Herds of black Cattle, Goats, Hogs, Veniſon; and their Woods and Mountains abound with wild Fowl, as does their Lakes and Rivers with Fiſh. The Bears, Foxes, Hares, and Patridges, on the Top of the *Alps*, are white, as in *Ruſſia* and *Greenland*. Here are large Woods of Fir-trees, which afford Maſts, Pitch, and Tar for Shipping; and they have ſome Oak-timber. There are Plenty of Walnuts and Cheſnuts, which is a great Part of the Food for poor People, as well as Hogs. Here are ſome Marble and Stone Quarries, and Coal-pits; and in ſeveral Places, Mineral Waters, and Hot Baths, of which thoſe at *Aix*, near *Chambery*, are moſt frequented. There are alſo Salt-pits near *Tarantaiſe*, and ſome Salt-fountains which afford good white Salt. In *Foſſigny* there are good Allum-mines; and in the Valley of *Aouſt*, there is a good Sort of Sand for making Chryſtal Glaſſes.

CHAP. III.

A Deſcription of PIEDMONT.

Situation and Extent. *PIEDMONT* is ſo call'd from its Situation at the Foot of the Mountains call'd the *Alps*. It is bounded on the North by the Valley of *Aouſt*, and Part of the Dutchy of *Milan*; and on the Eaſt by *Montferrat*, and another Part of *Milan*; by the County of *Nice*, and Territories of *Geneva*, on the South; and by *Dauphiné* and *Savoy* on the Weſt. It extends about a hundred Miles from North to South, and ſeventy Miles from Eaſt to Weſt.

Diviſion. IT is divided into eight Provinces. 1. *Piedmont proper*. 2. The Marquiſate of *Suza*. 3. The Marquiſate of *Saluzza*. 4. The County of *Aſti*. 5. The Lordſhip of *Vercel*. 6. The Principality of *Maſerano*. 7. The Marquiſate of *Ivrea*. And, 8. The Valleys of the *Vaudois*.

IN *Piedmont* proper, the chief Towns are,

1. *Turin*, the Capital of the King of *Sardinia*'s Dominions in *Italy*, and is ſaid to be the *Auguſta Taurinum* of the Antients. It ſtands near the Confluence of the Rivers *Doria* and *Po*. The Town is about three Miles in Circumference, and is indeed admir'd for its ſpacious Squares, Piazzas, broad Streets, and magnificent Buildings, but chiefly the King's Palace; which for the Beauty of the ſeveral Apartments, the Richneſs of the Furniture, the Paintings, the Cabinet of Curioſities, and the Library, is ſaid to be almoſt beyond Parallel. The Palace of the Prince of *Carignan*, the Cathedral, and the Jeſuits Chapel, are much admir'd. There is likewiſe a pretty Building of black Marble, call'd the *Chapel of the Holy Handkerchief*, which, according to Tradition, was built in Memory of a compaſſionate Virgin, who ſeeing our Saviour carrying the Croſs, upon which he was to be Crucify'd, ſhe reach'd him her Handkerchief; with which having wip'd his Face, he return'd it to her again; which when ſhe receiv'd, ſhe found his Picture Imprinted upon it in the moſt lively Colours; and in Memory of this Relick this Chapel was built, and call'd by the Name of the *Chapel of the Holy Handkerchief*.

THE Fortifications of *Turin* are fine. The Citadel is a regular Pentagon, and ſo ſtrong that the *French* in the Year 1706. after a Siege of ten Weeks found themſelves obliged to retire with only that poor Revenge, that when they could not gain the Town they deſtroy'd the Olives, Vines, and all the circumjacent Groves, Viſtoes and Walks, and the Avenues to the Town, which ſtands in one of the moſt pleaſant Plains in *Europe*.

Turin is an Archbiſhop's See, and here an Univerſity was erected in the Year 1405. and it is ſaid to be as polite a Court as any in *Europe* for Dancing, Riding, and Martial Exerciſe. Our *Engliſh* Travellers give a very good Account of the Generoſity and Hoſpitality of the Inhabitants of *Turin*, even beyond moſt Places in *Italy*; but this Report is to be believ'd at Diſcretion; for it is not always juſt, to give a good, or an evil Report of a Town or Country in general, purely upon the particular good or bad Uſage, or the Prejudice of ſome particular Perſon.

THERE is one valuable Conveniency, and that is a Rivulet which paſſes along by the upper Side of the City, and can upon any Occaſion be let down by Sluices into the Town to clean the Streets, and lay the Duſt; but the Cleanneſs of the Town, and Magnificence of its Building, can ſcarce compenſate for their ſhatter'd Windows, where Paper commonly ſupplies the Place of Glaſs; and that ſo frequently breaks with the Concurrence of Wind and Moiſture, that the ragged Papers in their Windows ſpoil the Beauty of the whole Fabrick.

UPON a pleaſant Mount without the Town is the *Capuchin* Cloyſter, from whence there is a moſt agreeable Proſpect of the Town and the adjacent Country. The Royal Palace of *La Venerie* is about three Miles out of the Town, and that of the *Valentin* upon the Banks of the *Po*, is about a Mile from the Town. However the *French* and the King of *Sardinia* may at preſent have patch'd up a Confederacy, yet it is certain, that in the two laſt Wars, the barbarous Ravages of the *French*, has inſpired that People with ſuch an Abhorrence and Deteſtation of them, as is not eaſily forgot.

Mondovi

Moudovi is esteem'd the second City of *Piedmont*, and next in Dignity to *Turin*. It stands upon an Eminence, at the Foot of the *Apennine* Mountains, about forty Miles South of *Turin*. It is a large, beautiful, populous City, and a Bishop's See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Turin*.

Chivazzo is a strong Place, situate on the River *Po*, about twelve Miles North of *Turin*. It was taken by the *French* in the Year 1705, but surrendred to the Duke of *Savoy* the next Year on the raising the Siege of *Turin*.

Pignerol stands on the River *Chiese*, about sixteen Miles South West of *Turin*. It is upon the Frontiers of *France*, and was once in their Possession, and reckon'd a Part of that Kingdom; but the King of *France* being obliged to restore it to the Duke of *Savoy* in the Year 1696, he to make it of as little Value as possible, demolish'd the Fortification; but the Duke of *Savoy* has since put it in a good Posture of Defence.

Susa. The Marquisate of *Susa* lies at the Foot of the Mount *Cenis*, and is bounded by *Dauphiné* in *France* on the West, and by *Piedmont proper* on the East. The only Town of Note is *Susa* on the River *Doira*, twenty Miles North West of *Turin*. It is a Place of great Importance to the King of *Sardinia*, as being a Pass out of *France* into his Country. When the *French* took it in the Year 1704. they demolish'd the Citadel; but it being given up to the Duke of *Savoy* at the Treaty of *Utrecht*, he repair'd its Fortifications, as he did those of his other frontier Garrisons.

Saluzza. The Marquisate of *Saluzza* lies between *Piedmont proper* and *Dauphiné*. It contains about thirty Miles from East to West, and twenty from North to South. In this Province the River *Po* rises at the Foot of Mount *Vesul*. The chief Town is *Saluzzo*, which stands upon an Eminence at the Foot of the *Alps*, about a Mile from the Banks of the *Po*, and twenty Miles South West from *Turin*. It is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Turin*. There is a magnificent Cathedral. There is also a Castle, but it is old and decay'd, and of little Importance at present.

The County of *Asti* lies on the East Side of *Piedmont proper*, and is about thirty Miles from North to South, and twenty from East to West. The chief Town is *Asti*. It stands on the River *Tanaro*, about twenty five Miles to the Eastward of *Turin*. It is a large, strong, populous Place. It has a Citadel and a Castle, and is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Milan*.

The Lordship of *Vercil* lies to the Northward of *Montferrat*. The chief Town is *Vercil*, situate on the River *Sessa*, near the Frontiers of *Milan*, and about forty Miles North East of *Turin*. It is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Milan*. It was taken by the *French* in the Year 1705; but they being obliged to restore it again upon the raising of the Siege of *Turin*, demolish'd the Fortifications and quitted the Place.

The Valley of *Vaudois* is bounded on the East, North, and West, by *Piedmont proper*. The chief Town of Note is *Lucern*, about six Miles to the Southward of *Pignerol*. *Perusa* is the Capital of another fruitful Valley. It is about four Miles to the Northward of *Pignerol*. The Natives are call'd *Waldenses*, from one *Peter Waldo*, a Merchant of *Lyons*; who about the Year 1160, began to exclaim against the Errors of the Church of *Rome*, and gain'd abundance of Proselytes, for which he was expell'd the Territories of *France*; and with great Numbers of his Opinion, settled in these Valleys, where they remain'd undisturb'd for some Years. But the late Princes of the House of *Savoy*, have since endeavour'd, both by fair Means and foul, to bring them over to the Church of *Rome*: And in order thereunto, persecuted them so vigorously, that many of them fled for Refuge into *Switzerland*; where about four thousand of them took up Arms, and form'd themselves into Regiments, and ventur'd to return to their own Country in a hostile Manner, under the Command of one *Arnaud* a celebrated Preacher, and one *Turel* a Mason, who defeated several Troops of the *French* and *Savoyards*; and by the Intercession of K. *William*, they had Liberty to return and enjoy the free Exercise of their Religion. But the Duke of *Savoy* making a separate Treaty with *France* in the Year 1696, the *French* insisted upon the banishing of those of them who would not conform to the Superstition of the Church of *Rome*, and this occasion'd a fresh Persecution; but the Duke of *Savoy* breaking with *France* in the Year 1703, took the *Waldenses* again into his Favour, and employ'd them in Defence of his Country against *France*, which had the desired Success, and was a lucky Turn of Favour both to them and to their Prince.

Rivers. The principal Rivers of *Piedmont* are the *Po*, the *Tanaro*, the *Stura*, and the *Duria*. This Country lies between the *Alps* and the *Apennine* Hills, but is not so mountainous as *Savoy* and *Genoa*. It is a pleasant, fruitful Province. It abounds in Corn, Wine, Fruit, Rice, Cattle, and all Kind of Fowls, wild and tame; also Cheese, Silk, Flax, Hemp, and Minerals; but the Hail is sometimes so violent there, that their Crops are in a great measure destroy'd when ready to be gather'd in. But in plentiful Years, they export such Quantities of Corn, Rice, Cattle, Silk, &c. that it raises a greater Revenue to its Prince than any Country in that Part of the World of its Dimensions.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Counties of Nice, Tende, Broglio; *and the Principalities of* Oneglia, Barceloneta, *with the Dutchy of* Montferrat.

I SHALL next proceed to what may properly be call'd the King of *Sardinia's* Dominions, exclusive of the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and shall first begin with the County of *Nice*; which lies between *Saluzzo* on the North, and the *Mediterranean* Sea on the South, and between *Genoa* on the East, and *Broglio* and *Provence* on the West. The Country is mountainous, and produces but little Corn, but Plenty of Wine and Oil. The chief Towns are *Nice* and *Villa Franca*.

Nice stands on the North Shore of the *Mediterranean*, on a pleasant Plain, at the Foot of the *Alps*, ten Miles to the Northward of *Antibes*, and sixty to the Southward of *Pignerol*. It has a strong Castle, standing upon a Rock, which

which commands both the Town and the Harbour; the Prince's Palace, the Jesuits Chapel, and the Cathedral are handsome Buildings; the common Houses are generally lofty, and the Streets regular; but it suffer'd very much in the late War, and at last, when the *French* found they could not hold it any longer, they demolish'd the Fortifications; but when it was yielded to the King of *Sardinia*, at the Treaty of *Utrecht*, he was allow'd to repair the Fortifications.

Villa Franca. *Villa Franca* is on the same Shore, and only about five Miles Eastward from *Nice*. It is a good Harbour, and defended by two Forts. This Town was also taken by the *French* in the late Wars, but was yielded to the Duke of *Savoy* (being King of *Sardinia*,) at the ensuing Peace.

Tende. The County of *Tende* lies between *Genoa* on the East, and *Nice* on the West. The chief Town is *Tende*, at the Foot of the *Apennine* Mountains; it is about thirty Miles to the Eastward of *Villa Franca*; it hath a Castle for its Defence.

Broglio. Some reckon the County of *Broglio* a Part of *Nice*; it has *Barcelonetta* on the North, *Nice* on the East, and *Provence* in *France* on the South and West. The chief Town is *Broglio*, on the Frontiers of *Provence*, about thirty Miles to the Northward of *Nice*.

Oneglia. The Principality of *Oneglia* is encompass'd by the Territories of *Genoa*, except on the South Side, which is bounded by the *Mediterranean*. The chief Town is *Oneglia*; it stands by the Sea Side, about seventy Miles South-East of *Turin*: It is a populous Place of good Trade, and the Country about it abounds in Oil and Fruit.

The Valley of *Barcelonetta* lies between *Nice* on the East, and *Provence* on the West. The chief Town is of the same Name with the Province, and is about fifty Miles North-West of *Nice*: This Province was restor'd to the *French* King at the Peace of *Utrecht*, by which Treaty, the King of *France* transferr'd to the Duke of *Savoy*, (King of *Sardinia*) the Valley of *Pragenas*, with the Forts of *Exilles*, and *Fenestrelles*, and the Valley of *Oulx*, *Sezane*, *Bardonache*, and *Chatteau Dauphiné*, and all about the Water which comes from the *Alps*, on the Side of *Piedmont*, which he had possess'd himself of during the War; and, in Answer to that, the Duke of *Savoy* yielded to the *French* King, the Valley of *Barcelonetta* and its Dependencies: So that the Summit of the *Alps* and the Mountain were to be Boundaries between *France*, *Piedmont*, and the County of *Nice*, with this Condition, that the Plains upon those Mountains should be divided; and that Side of the River towards *Dauphiné* and *Provence*, should belong to *France*, and that Side towards *Piedmont* and *Nice* should belong to the Duke of *Savoy*, then King of *Sardinia*.

The King of *Sardinia*'s Dominions, which lie to the Eastward of *Piedmont*, are the Dutchy of *Montserrat*, the *Alexandrin*, the *Vigevano*, the *Lomeline*, and the *Milanese*; of which briefly in Order,

Montserrat. The Dutchy of *Montserrat* has *Verceil* on the North, *Alexandrin* on the East, *Genoa* on the South, and the County of *Asti*, on the West. The Capital of *Montserrat* is *Casal*, or *St. Yas*; it stands on the Banks of the *Po*, in a fine Plain about thirty Miles to the Eastward of *Turin*; it is a strong and populous Town, and a Bishop's See, suffragan to the Archbishop of *Milan*.

Alexandrin. The *Alexandrin* has *Genoa* and *Milan* on the South and East, and *Montserrat* on the North-West. The chief Town is *Alexandria*, ten Miles South-East of *Casal*, and forty South-West of *Milan*; the River *Tanaro* runs through it; it is a Bishop's See, under the Archbishop of *Milan*.

Vigevano. *Vigevano* is to the Westward of *Milan*; and the chief Town, of the same Name, is situate on the River *Tesin*, about twenty Miles South-West of *Milan*; it is a Bishop's See, suffragan to *Milan*.

Lomelin. The *Lomelin* lies to the Southward of *Vigevano*. The chief Town is *Valenza*, near the *Po*, on the Confines of *Montserrat*; it is a little fortify'd Town, but not so material as to deserve a particular Description.

These four last are pleasant fruitful Countries, water'd by the River *Po*; they produce Corn, Wine, and Oil, and are a valuable Addition to the King of *Sardinia*'s Dominions.

Government. The Administration of the Government, in the King of *Sardinia*'s Dominions, is in the Hand of a Council of State, in which the King presides, and next to him are the Princes of the Blood, and below them six Counsellors of State, the principal Secretary, the Clerk of the Council, and other Officers. There is also a Council of Finances, or Court of Exchequer, for each Province, consisting of two Presidents, a Comptroller, a Secretary, and other Officers: There is likewise a Chamber of Accounts, to which belong three Presidents, three Chevaliers of Accounts, sixteen Masters of Accounts, a Treasurer General, two Secretaries, a Comptroller, *&c.*

There are three Senates; one for *Savoy*, which sits at *Chamberry*; the Senate of *Piedmont* sit at *Turin*; and the Senate for *Nice* is held at that Capital; but as the King of *Sardinia* is absolute, they are subject to his Controul, and though common Matters are referr'd to them, yet in weighty Affairs, or where the Goverment is concern'd, they are not empower'd to make Decrees and Edicts, but only serve to record those made by the Prince.

CHAP. V.

An Abstract of the History of Savoy *and* Piedmont; *with an Account of the King of* Sardinia's *Family, Revenues, Forces, Titles, Interest, and Pretensions.*

THE antient Inhabitants of *Savoy*, were the *Allobroges*, the *Centrones*, the *Nantuates*, *Caroelli*, and other barbarous People; for so the *Romans* call'd them, till they were reduced to their Obedience by *Tiberius Varro*, and *Augustus*, who form'd them into a Province; but when the Empire was over-run by the Northern Nations, *Savoy* participated of the common Fate, and was subject sometimes to one, sometimes to another. The *Burgundians* incorpo-

rated it with the Kingdom; they eſtabliſh'd themſelves in Part of *Gallia*, *Celtica*, and *Gallia Narbonenſis*; but after the Diſſolution of the *Burgundian* Kingdom, it came into the Hands of *Berold*, the Son of *Hugh*, Duke of *Saxony*, who going into *Italy* with his Uncle the Emperor *Otho* III. about the Year 999. was made Governor of this Country, and at laſt obtain'd the Sovereignty of it, and was ſucceeded by the Perſons, and in the Order following:

Humbert, the Son of *Berold*, ſucceeded his Father *Anno* 1027.

Amadeus, the Son of *Humbert Anno* 1048.

Odo, Brother of *Amadeus*, 1050.

Amadeus II. Son of *Odo*, 1080.

Humbert II. Son of *Amadeus*, 1095.

Amadeus III. Son of *Humbert* 1103.

Humbert III. Son of *Amadeus*, 1149.

Thomas, Son of *Humbert*, 1186.

Amadeus IV. Son of *Thomas*, 1233.

Boniface, Son of *Amadeus*, 1253.

Peter VII. Son of Count *Thomas*, ſucceeded 1263.

Philip his younger Brother, the eighth Son of Count *Thomas*, 1276.

Amadeus V. the Son of *Thomas*, ſucceeded to the Prejudice of his Brother *Philip*'s Children, 1284.

Edward, Son of *Amadeus*, 1323.

Aimon his Brother, 1329.

Amadeus VI. Son of *Aimon*, 1343.

Amadeus VII. his Son, 1383.

Amadeus VIII. his Son, was made a Duke by the Emperor *Sigiſmund*; and *Lewis* of *Savoy*, who was alſo Prince of *Piedmont*, dying without Iſſue, the ſaid *Amadeus* ſucceeded, 1391.

Lewis, his Son ſucceeded upon his Father's Reſignation. This *Amadeus* VIII. is the ſame that was ſpoke of Chap II. in the Deſcription of *Repaille*; who retir'd from his Palace, and took upon him the Habit of an Hermit, and was choſen *Pope*, &c. He reſign'd the *Popedom*, and was ſucceeded by this Son *Lewis*, 1434.

Amadeus IX. Son of *Lewis*, 1465.

Philibert, Son of *Amadeus*, 1477.

Charles his Brother ſucceeded his Aunt, Queen *Charlotte*, in the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, 1482.

Charles-John Amadeus, Son of *Charles*, ſucceeded, 1490.

Philip II. Son of *Lewis*, 1496.

Philibert II. the Son of *Philip*, ſucceeded, 1497.

Charles III. Son to *Philip* II. 1504.

Emanuel Philibert, his Son, 1553.

Charles Emanuel, his Son, 1580.

Victor Amadeus I. his Son, 1630.

Francis Hyacynthus, his Son, 1637.

Charles Emanuel II. his Brother, 1638.

Victor Amadeus II. his Son, ſucceeded his Father in *June* 1675. being then but nine Years old.

Charles Emanuel III. Duke of *Savoy* and King of *Sardinia*, was born *April* 27. 1701.

In the Year 1717. the King of *Spain*, ſent the Marquiſs *de Lede* with ſix or ſeven thouſand Men to make a Deſcent upon *Sardinia*, though it had been yielded up to the Emperor by the Treaty of *Utrecht*. The following Year the ſame General invaded *Sicily*, with ſeventeen or eighteen thouſand Men, and moſt of the great Towns open'd their Gates to him, and ſubmitted to King *Philip* of *Spain*; whereupon the Emperor, *Great Britain*, and *France*, entred into an Alliance, which the *States General* coming into, obtain'd the Name of the *Quadruple Alliance*, engaging themſelves to ſee all the Articles of the Peace of *Utrecht* perform'd, except in what they ſhould agree to alter; and upon this Admiral *Byng* was ſent to the *Mediterranean* with a Fleet of twenty two Men of War; and indeed this one Thing the *Dutch* did, they added one to the *Tripple Alliance*, and ſo procur'd it the Name of the *Quadruple Alliance*. But when our Forces expected to be join'd by fourteen *Dutch* Men of War, they were in no Haſte to come near us, but took care to keep out of the way, and leave us to try our Fortune without them; and yet no Thanks to our *Dear Allies*, we took twelve of the *Spaniſh* Men of War, and burnt three, without the Loſs of one Ship to the *Engliſh*.

In one of the Articles of the Treaty of *Utrecht*, it was ſtipulated, That whereas the Ceſſion of *Sicily* to the Houſe of *Savoy* was made only for rendring the Peace more laſting and ſolid, and not on the account of any Right the King of *Sicily* had thereto; therefore the Princes who made the ſaid Treaty for the Repoſe of *Italy*, thought fit to annul that Article of the ſaid Treaty that related to *Sicily*, and to demand, that the King of *Sicily* ſhould reſtore the ſaid Iſland and all its Dependencies to his Imperial Majeſty; who in Return, was to yield to the King of *Sicily*, the Iſland and Kingdom of *Sardinia*, but with this Reſerve, that the Reverſion of the ſaid Kingdom of *Sardinia* ſhould devolve upon the Crown of *Spain* upon Default of Heirs male in the Houſe of *Savoy*. The Emperor alſo acknowledg'd the Right of the ſaid King of *Sicily* to ſucceed to the Crown of *Spain*, whenever King *Philip* or his Poſterity ſhould fail of male Iſſue; but ſtill with Condition, that no Prince of the Houſe of *Savoy* ſucceeding to the Crown of *Spain*, ſhould at the ſame Time poſſeſs any Part of the Continent of *Italy*.

The King of *Spain*, not able to hold out againſt the Allies, agreed to evacuate *Sicily* and *Sardinia*, and allow the Emperor's Title to one, and the King of *Sardinia*'s to the other; and in ſhort, he agreed to accede to the *Quadruple Alliance*, though neither the Kings of *Spain* or *Sardinia* were over and above ſatisfy'd with the Terms of it.

The Revenues of the King of *Sardinia*, is computed at about five hundred thouſand Pounds Sterling a Year; and is ſo abſolute in his Dominions, that he can augment them at his Pleaſure.

He is obliged to have a good Body of Forces even in Times of Peace, to garriſon his frontier Towns againſt the *French* and *Milaneſe*. He is always very cautious how he is drawn into a War, either with *France* or the Emperor; but when he muſt declare for one or the other, he takes care to make a ſafe Bargain, and to have ſuch Sums and Penſions advanc'd, that he does not much burthen his Kingdom or his Subjects.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Territories and Coaſt of GENOA.

THIS Country was antiently call'd *Liguria*, but now *Genoa*, and may properly be call'd the Coaſt of *Genoa*, it being a long Slip by the Sea Side, in Length from the River *Var* to the *Magra*, about an hundred and fifty Miles, and not above twenty, or in ſome Places not above ten, in Breadth, from the *Mediterranean*; on the South to the *Alps* and *Apennine Hills*; on the North it has the *Milaneſe*, and *Parma* on the Weſt, North, and North Eaſt; and by the Dutchy of *Florence* on the Eaſt. The *Alps* and *Apennine* Hills ſeparate the *Genoeſe* from the Countries of *Nice*, *Piedmont*, and *Montſerrat*.

THESE Hills lying to the Northward of it, and the Sea to the Southward, makes the Air much warmer than in the neighbouring Countries on the North Side of the Mountains. The Coldneſs of the Weather in Winter, and the Heat and Draught in Summer, makes the Tops of the Mountains perfectly bare, without either Wood or Herbage; but the Bottoms and South Sides are well planted with Vines, Olives, Mulberries, and other Fruit-trees, but little Corn; nor do their Seas produce much Fiſh.

Manners. THE Character that Mr. *Addiſon* gives of the *Genoeſe* is, that they are a cunning, induſtrious People, and more inured to Hardſhip than the reſt of the *Italians*. This Mr. *Addiſon* imputes to the Barrenneſs of their Country; for he ſays, nothing makes Men's Wits ſharper than Want; but that does not ſeem to be the only, nor the chief Reaſon, but the rather, becauſe People of all Capacities, nay, even the Nobility and Gentry, apply themſelves to Trade; ſo that it is downright Practice that makes them ſharp in Converſation and Bargaining; and indeed as the poorer Sort have the moſt immediate Need to be ſharp, in this Caſe it may be ſaid, that nothing makes a Man ſharper than Want.

THE Quality and better Sort of People in *Genoa*, generally wear black. There are but few that wear Swords. But notwithſtanding the Heat of the Country, yet they generally wear Cloaks when they go out, and then they are ready dreſt. But the poor Sort of People, what by Poverty and the Heat of the Weather, eſpecially in Summer, almoſt make a ſhift without any Cloaths at all. The middling People affect ſome the *French*, ſome the *Spaniſh* Modes; the Women who affect the *Spaniſh* Dreſs, wear large Farthingales, the Men broad Hats, Hanging-ſleeve-Doublets, ſtrait Breeches, and Leathern Belts.

Moſt of the Cheif Towns. THOSE of the Cheif Towns in the *Genoeſe* that are worth the Reader's Notice, I ſhall deſcribe in the following Order:

1. *Genoa*, a fine Sea-Port upon the Sea Side, in Form like a Creſcent, about ninety Miles North Weſt of *Legborn*. The Houſes are lofty, and beautifully painted on the Out-ſide, which afford a very agreeable Proſpect to thoſe who approach them from the Sea. The Harbour is large and deep, but lies much expoſed to the South Weſt Wind, though they have built a little Mold which ſecures their Galleys and ſmall Veſſels from the Violence of the Weather, as well as from Enemies; but if the large ones cannot defend themſelves, they lie expos'd to both; of which the *French* took the Advantage when their Fleet came before it in the Year 1684. when they deſtroy'd a great Part of the Heart of the Town; but the Out-ſide, or back Part did not receive much Damage. Moſt of the Streets and the Houſes being generally ſix or ſeven Story high, incommodes the Streets very much both for Air and Light, eſpecially the lower Rooms. Although the Buildings are generally of Brick or Stone, yet the Walls are generally plaiſter'd over and painted, and the Roofs Fret-work. Mr. *Addiſon* tells us that the new Street is a double Range of Palaces from one End to the other, built with an excellent Fancy, and fit for the greateſt Princes to inhabit. They are generally richly adorn'd with Marble, and of four or five of them, all the Front is intirely Marble; and theſe contriv'd to ſuch Advantage for a Proſpect, that a Stranger would think the Town all built of Marble. There are five or ſix Streets of great Breadth, with very magnificent Houſes, as they alſo are in ſome of the Suburbs. There is a Continuance of beautiful Palaces along the Shore fronting the Sea, which as the Ships approach, make the Town appear much larger than it is. It is ſurrounded by a Wall and other Fortifications. The Streets being moſtly too narrow for Coaches, the Quality chiefly uſe Chairs and Litters to ſupply the Place of them.

THERE are in *Genoa* about thirty Pariſh Churches, twenty Colleges, beſides a Number of Convents and religious Houſes; the Towers, Steeples, and Turrets of which, add a great Ornament to the Town as it appears from the Sea. They delight much in having fine Gardens upon the flat Roofs of their Houſes and in their Balconies. The Cathedral is a large Building, but many of the Churches in *Italy* are much more beautiful; but the Church of the *Annunciation* is the fineſt in *Genoa*, built at the ſole Charge of the Family of *Lomellini*: The Roof is finely gilded, the Pillars are Marble, and the Walls moſt exquiſitely painted. The Altars are magnificent, and adorn'd with fine Pictures. There are three other handſome Churches, thoſe of St. *Cyr*, St. *Matthew*, and St. *Mary* of *Carignan*.

OF the Duke of *Doria*'s Palace, take the following Deſcription from Mr. *Addiſon*. It takes up all the Ground from the Sea Side to the Top of the Hills. In the lower Part of it is a magnificent Gallery, an hundred and twenty Paces long. The Pillars and Pavement are both of black and white Marble; and beyond this, is a fine Garden adorn'd with Mountains and Statues. The higher up the Hill, the Rooms of the Palace are more magnificent; and as for the Furniture, the Bedſteads are Silver, the Tables Jaſper, Alabaſter, Agate, or Silver; of which there is one of Silver weighs twenty four thouſand Crowns. There is one Room hung with Tapeſtry, in which are wrought the Figures of the Great Perſons the *Doriam* Family has produc'd. Nor can any Houſe in *Europe* ſhew a longer Line of Heroes, who have preferr'd the Good of their Country to all other Views. In ſhort, the Palace of *Doria* is fill'd with Statues, Buſts, Baſs Reliefs, and the moſt exquiſite Paintings. The firſt Hall is in Form of a Portico, and the Wall all

cover'd

cover'd with Pictures; and beyond this is a fine Garden on the Top of the Hill, upon which is a beautiful Summer-House; also Fountains, Grottoes, Statues, *&c.*

THERE are also the Palaces of *Durazzo*, *Palavicino*, *Spinola*, *Baldi*, *Grimaldi*, *Lomellini*, and *Turfis*; but the *Villa Imperiale* excels them all. Also the *Doge*'s Palace for Magnificence, Beauty, and Materials, is a famous Building; and if the *French* Author is to be credited, it is not to be conceiv'd how many Beauties may be discover'd with one single Cast of an Eye in the new Street at *Genoa*, and with Admiration cries out all, *All is enchanting! All Astonishing!* When we have view'd one of these Palaces, we think nothing can excel it; and yet the Beauty of the next will make us forget what we before so justly admired; but with this I must conclude the Description of the Beauty of the Buildings of *Genoa*, and leave the Reader to admire what I have not room to express.

Genoa has been an Archbishop's See ever since the Year 1132. though it is not a University; but there is an Academy of Wits, where young People improve themselves in composing Orations, Poems, *&c.* They encourage and trust Judicial Astrology so much, that *Veryard* relates, that being at *Genoa*, he saw a Woman have a Stage in one of the great Streets like a Mountebank's-Stage, hung round with Globes, Spheres, Schemes, and Mathematical Instruments. She made a Speech in Favour of her Skill in telling Fortunes, inviting them to come to her House to be satisfy'd of the Truth of it; and in the mean time, as a Specimen of her Skill, had a Speaking Trumpet about twelve Feet long, the broad End of which was fitted to her Mouth, and the other End fitted to be clapp'd to a Person's Ear; and with this she whisper'd to several of the Spectators, who affirm'd, that what she said was wonderfully true; but as no body could tell what she said but those to whom she whisper'd, and they might be Confederates too, it could scarce induce any Person of Sense to give Credit to such Pretenders.

THERE are some other Towns, but of much less Note; I shall only give a Hint of what is most remarkable, and worth the Reader's Notice in any of them, as follows:

Sarzana — *Sarzana* is by the Sea Side, about thirty Miles South West of *Genoa*. It is one of the largest Towns in those Territories. It is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Milan*, and remarkable for the Birth of three Popes, viz. *Gregory* VII. *Julius* II. and *Sixtus* IV.

Final — *Final* is about forty Miles South West of *Genoa*; it is the Capital of a Marquisate, and stands by the Sea Side. The *Imperialists* sold it to the Republick of *Genoa*, who now have it in Possession. It is defended by a Castle and two Forts, and may be reckon'd a tolerable good Harbour amongst so many indifferent ones.

Albenga — *Albenga* is on the same Coast, about twenty Miles South West of *Final*; a decaying Place, but a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Genoa*.

Oneglia — *Oneglia*, Capital of the Territory of the same Name, about sixty Miles South West of *Genoa*. This belongs to the King of *Sardinia*.

St Remo — St. *Remo*, fifteen Miles to the Westward of *Oneglia*. It stands partly on a Plain by the Sea Side, and partly upon a rising Ground further from the Sea. Here grows abundance of Oranges and Lemons, and other delicious Fruit; as also several Plantations of Palm-trees, a Thing very scarce in other Parts of *Italy*.

Vintimilia — *Vintimilia*, above thirty Miles to the Westward of *Oneglia*. It has an antient Castle, and is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Milan*, but a decaying Place, and not in any Thing else considerable.

Monaco is upon the same Coast, about ten Miles South West of *Vintimiglia*. It is the Capital of a little Principality belonging to the Family of *Grimaldi*, about ten Miles long, and three broad. It is supposed to be the *Herculis Monaci Portus* of the Antients. It is a Harbour, and defended by a Castle. It belongs to the *French*, and the Prince is a Peer of that Realm. *Mona.*

To the Eastward of *Genoa* is *Repallo*, in a little Bay about sixteen Miles from *Genoa*, famous for the excellent Oil the Country about it produces. *Repallo*

TWENTY five Miles South East from *Genoa* is *Lavagne*, a Town of small Note at present. *Lavagn*

Sarzana is about sixty Miles South East of *Genoa*, and about three Miles from the Mouth of the River *Magra*. It is the Eastern Boundary of the State of *Genoa*. It is a populous Town, of good Trade, and a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Rome*. *Sarzana*

Porto Venere is about seven Miles from *Sarzana*. It is a good Harbour, and defended by a Fort. *Porto*

THE Legislative Power of the Republick of *Genoa* is lodg'd in the great Council or Senate. The Administration of Government is committed to the *Doge* or *Duke* for the Time being, with the following Councils.

1. The Council call'd the *Seigniory*. 2. That call'd the *College*. 3. An Assembly stil'd the *Council*. 4. An Assembly compos'd of *Seigniory* and *College* together.

THE Great Council call'd the Senate, consists of *Seigniory* and *College*, and four hundred Noblemen and principal Citizens, annually elected out of the Freemen. They must not be less than twenty five Years of Age, and must be such as have been register'd four Years at least, and lastly, not have been of this Council before; and of such select Members, three hundred, with the Members of the *Seigniory* and *College*, make a *Quorum*. If four Parts in five of this Senate agree to the enacting of any new Laws, it has the same Force as if they were all unanimous; and also in the levying of Taxes, and disposing of some of the principal Offices.

THE *Seigniory* consists of the Duke and twelve other Members, such as have been five twelve Years, and then they can hold that Place but two Years; which being expired, they cannot be re-elected till five Years be expired after their quitting. By this *Seigniory* Ambassadors have their Audience, Dispatches sent to, and receiv'd from, foreign Courts, *&c.* And sometimes when they cannot agree in their Sentiments, they call the *College* to their Assistance, and sometimes the *Council* also; and then the Matter (which is commonly in Affairs of the highest Importance) is determin'd by a Majority of Voices.

THE *College* consists of eight Members, who hold that Place and Title two Years; but those who have enjoy'd the Office of Duke, are afterwards Procurators for Life. These manage the Revenue, farm out the Lands of the State, and buy and sell for the Republick.

THE *Doge* is oblig'd to reside in the Palace the two Years that he holds his Office; he must be an Inhabitant of the City fifty Years, no Bastard, and one that has an Estate sufficient to support his own Dignity. His Business is to propose Matters to be debated by the Senate and Council. When his two Years are expired, he retires to his own House, and remains private for eight Days, till they have examin'd into his Conduct during his Administration; and if it is approved, he is made a Procurator during Life; but if not, he is look'd upon and proceeded against as a Criminal. *The*

THE

THE Doge is complimented with the Title of *His Serenity*; the Senators are entitled their *Excellencies*, the Nobility *Illuſtrious*. The Nobility have their Titles from ſuch Lands or Seigniories as they poſſeſs, or have purchas'd.

THEIR Naval Strength is very inconſiderable at preſent. Their Fleet, which was formerly ſo ſucceſsful over the *Venetians*, *Turks*, &c. and ſettled Colonies in *Aſia*, is now reduc'd to ſix Gallies; they thought indeed to have added four more, but the *French* King forbid them at their Peril, and accordingly they were oblig'd to deſiſt. Their Land Forces, in Times of Peace, is not above four or five thouſand, and in Time of War about twenty thouſand. The ordinary Revenue is not above two hundred thouſand Pounds a Year; but if that will not anſwer, the Great Men are nevertheleſs tax'd according to their Wealth; what they poſſeſs in the Emperor's Dominions, in *Naples* and *Milan*, is commonly tax'd higher than the Natives. There is a Bank at *Genoa*, whoſe Fund is a Part of the publick Duties, which are appropriated to pay the Debts of the Republick.

THE Crown of *Spain* is vaſtly indebted to this Republick, for Money borrow'd by *Philip* II. to fit out the great Armada againſt *England*, and other Sums taken up ſince, for which they continue to pay Intereſt. The *Genoeſe*, in Conſideration of the Barrenneſs of their own Country, in plentiful Years buy up, and lay in a Stock for three or four Years, to live upon in a bad Year, and then live upon the old Store, and by this means the Neceſſaries of Life are never dear.

THE chief Manufactures in *Genoa* are Silks, Taffataes, Velvets, Brocades, and other rich Stuffs; alſo Wine, Oil, Citrons, Lemons, Anchovies, dry'd Sweetmeats, *Parmeſan* Cheeſe, and ſeveral Kinds of Drugs uſed in Phyſick; and Paintings are ſent from hence to other Parts of *Europe*.

THIS Country, the antient *Liguria*, with the reſt of *Italy*, fell ſubject to the *Romans*; and *Mago*, the Brother of *Hannibal*, having taken and deſtroy'd their Capital of *Genoa*, the *Romans* ſent *Lucretius* to rebuild it, during the Conſulate of *Scipio* and *Nepos*. Upon the Fall of the *Roman* Empire, *Genoa* became ſubject to the *Lombards*; afterwards they erected a Government of their own, but were ſo unſteady in their Choice of a Form of Government, that they rendered themſelves obnoxious to frequent Revolutions. Sometimes the People choſe a Head, and inveſted him with ſovereign Power. Immediately the Nobles would depoſe him, and form a Republican Government of their own; and when weary of that, they would put themſelves under the Protection of ſome neighbouring Prince; and by-and-by renounce his Authority. And thus they were ſucceſſively ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Milan*, the *French*, the Marquis of *Montſerrat*, the Duke of *Milan*, and again to the *French*; and in the Intervals they choſe Counts, Conſuls, and Captains of their own. At length *Andrew Doria*, about the Year 1528, ſettled their Republick in the Form it now is, which was thus brought about.

THE *Genoeſe* putting themſelves ſometimes under the *French*, and ſometimes under the *Spaniard*, as their Safety or Intereſt lay, *Andrew Doria*, a Native of this Republick, and one of the greateſt Admirals and Generals of his Time, who had alternately ſerv'd both the *French* and *Spaniſh* Armies, had the Policy to play one of theſe Powers againſt the other, and that with ſuch Succeſs, that he involv'd them in ſuch Differences between themſelves, that he quite diſentangled the *Genoeſe* from any Obligation to, or Dependance upon, either of them, and then erected a Free State, according to the Model above-mention'd. They, as it were in Point of Gratitude, offer'd to make him their abſolute hereditary Prince, without any Limitation; but he, more tender of their Liberties than his own Dignity, not only refus'd it, but procur'd an Act of State, that neither he, nor any of his Deſcendants, nor any other Family, that ſhould grow rich and powerful in the Commonwealth, ſhould ever be admitted to any Office or Share in the Government, leſt they ſhould uſurp ſovereign Power. But in the Midſt of all *Doria*'s, it happen'd, about the Year 1547, a popular Citizen, but a politic deſigning Man, did, by his charitable Benevolences to the Poor, and a pretended Zeal for the publick Good, ſo influence the People, and inſinuate himſelf into their Favour, that he carried all before him; he prevail'd with the Citizens to impriſon the principal Senators, under a Pretence of Male-Adminiſtration; and as *Doria* was the only Perſon that could prevent his Deſign, he, by fair Promiſes and ſome Performances, got the People ſet againſt him, and then ſoon made himſelf Maſter of the Capital of *Genoa*; and then going to take Poſſeſſion of the Fleet in the Harbour, he thought his Work would be done; and indeed ſo it prov'd, but in a Way contrary to his Expectation; for walking along a Plank, from one Ship to another, and being loaded with his Armour, which he had on, he ſlipp'd off the Plank, dropp'd into the Sea, and ſunk downright; which put his Party into the utmoſt Confuſion, and of which *Doria* took the Advantage, ſet upon the Rebels, and diſpers'd them, and ſo fix'd the Commonwealth again upon the Foundation he had ſet it upon when he firſt undertook it.

Fieſco's Body being afterwards found, the Senate order'd it to be carried ſeveral Leagues to Sea, and with the utmoſt Ignominy and Contempt thrown into it; that his Eſtate ſhould be confiſcated, his Palace demoliſh'd, and that no Houſe ſhould ever be built upon that Spot of Ground, that its Ruins may remain a Monument of his Treachery, as it is to be ſeen to this Day. But, on the other Hand, the fine Marble Statues of *Doria*, and of his Nephew, who was kill'd in oppoſing the Uſurper *Fieſco*, ſtand one on each Side of the Stairs going up to the Senate-Houſe, to keep up the Memory of their generous Actions in Defence of the Liberties of the *Genoeſe*.

AFTER this ſecond Deliverance by Prince *Doria*, they made a Regiſter of all the free Citizens, and found five hundred and twenty-four antient Families of noble Extraction, and four hundred and eighty-ſeven other Families of conſiderable Citizens. And theſe two Sorts only are term'd free Citizens; and 'tis only them, and their Deſcendants, that have a right to be regiſtred as Freemen; and that with this Limitation, that they muſt be ſuch as have not been any way infamous, or exerciſed any mechanick Trade within three Years of their Election. All the reſt of the Inhabitants, either of the City, or in the Territories belonging to the Republick, are ſtill not free, and have no Share in the Government. But though a free Citizen is not to follow any mechanick Employment, yet they may buy, ſell, or go to Sea as Merchants, or negociate any other Buſineſs, only not work upon mechanick Buſineſs, or keep open Shop. And this we are to add, that this Seignory, the College, and Council in Conjunction, have a Power of electing annually, in *January*, of the Citizens that are not free, any Number not exceeding ten, to be regiſtred and added to the Number of free Citizens; and the Inhabitants who are not free, are not excluded from ſerving in ſome of the Places of Profit and Truſt in the Commonwealth.

CHAP. VII.

Contains a Description of the Dutchy of MILAN.

Situation and Extent.

THE Dutchy of *Milan* is bounded on the North by *Switzerland* and the Country of the *Grisons*, and on the East by the Territories of *Venice*, and the Dutchies of *Mantua* and *Parma*; by the *Appenine Hills* on the South, and by *Montserrat* and the King of *Sardinia*'s Dominions on the West. Its longest Way is from North to South, about eighty Miles, and its Breath about sixty, from East to West. It is well water'd with fine Rivers, as the *Po*, the *Tesin*, the *Adda*, and the *Sessia*. The chief Lakes are those of *Maggiore*, *Lugano*, and *Como*.

Rivers. Lakes.

THE Air and Climate are very agreeable, and the whole Country is one fruitful Plain, interspersed with Towns, Palaces, Convents, *&c.* which makes it a most desirable Place, but more of that in the Description of the several Parts or Divisions of it, under their respective Names; which are as follow: 1. *Milanese Proper*; 2. the *Pavese*; 3. the *Lodesan*; 4. the *Cremonese*; 5. the *Comasco*; 6. the County of *Anghiera*; 7. the Valleys of *Sessia*; 8. the *Novarese*; 9. the *Vigevanois*; 10. the *Lomelline*; 11. the *Alexandrin*; 12. the *Tortonese*; and, 13. the Territories of *Bobbio*.

Milanese Proper.

1. OF *Milanese Proper*; the chief Town is *Milan*, or, as some call it, *Milan the Great*, from its large Dimensions, Multitude of Inhabitants, Magnificence of its Temples and Palaces, the Valuableness of its Manufactures, and the Extensiveness of its Commerce; it stands about fifty Miles North from *Genoa*, sixty five West from *Mantua*, and about two hundred and fifty North-West from *Rome*. The City is of a round Form, encompass'd with a Wall about ten Miles in Circumference, in which are ten Gates. The Cittadel is a large Hexagon, that commands the Place, and is look'd upon as one of the strongest Fortifications in *Italy*. The Streets of the Town are broad and clean, the Squares spacious, and the Houses lofty. It contains two hundred and thirty Churches; there are also forty Convents of Men, and fifty of Women. Dr. *Burnet* infers, from the Vastness of the Town, the Noblenes of the Buildings, and the surprizing Richnes of the Churches and Convents, that it is a very wealthy Place. It is supposed to contain about three hundred thousand Souls.

THEIR principal Manufactures are those of Silk Brocade, and other rich Stuffs. They are very much admired for their Steel and Iron Ware, and fine Chrystal Works, but especially the last; and their Artificers of all kinds are such fine Artists, that they have engross'd the Trade of *Italy*. The Women go abroad, and have more Liberty to enjoy themselves than in many other Countries.

Buildings.

THE publick Buildings most taken notice of are, 1. The Cathedral, a magnificent *Gothick* Structure, about five hundred Foot in Length, and two hundred in Breadth. Dr. *Burnet* observes, that the Pavements and the Walls, inside and outside, and the Roof, are all of Marble. The Roof is supported by a hundred and sixty Marble Pillars, each of them three Fathom in Compass; they stand in ten Rows. There are in the Church two noble brazen Pulpits, each of them running round a large Pillar like a Gallery, and supported by huge Figures of the same Metal. Just under the Cupola lies the Body of St. *Carlo*, or *Charles Borromeo*, once Archbishop of this See, in a great Chrystal Case, of an immense Value. The Plate and other Presents made to this Saint are of a prodigious Value; some Services for the Altar are all of massy Gold, and set with Jewels; others are so finely wrought, that the Fashion is said to be equal to the Value of the Metal. The Account of some of the Antiquities of the Church of St. *Ambrose* we shall suspend our Belief of; they look too much with an Air of Superstition to gain Credit among the Generality on this Side the Water. Of other Buildings, the great Hospital is best worth Notice; it is a magnificent Structure; in it are entertain'd four thousand infirm People, having a Revenue of seventy thousand Crowns a Year. About two Miles from *Milan* stands a Building, which gives such an Eccho, that, as Mr. *Addison* says, he discharg'd a Pistol in the Place, and the Sound was return'd fifty-six Times, the first Repetitions follow'd very thick, but as the Sound decay'd, it follow'd more slow in Proportion.

Govern ment.

THE Civil Government of *Milan* is lodg'd in the Senate, consisting of Prelates, Doctors of Law, and Gentlemen of the Country, but they are controul'd by Prince *Eugene* of *Savoy*, the Emperor's Vicar-General, to whom the Viceroys of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and other Territories in *Italy*, when in the Emperor's Hand, are accountable. The Vicar-General also appoints the President of the Senate, Magistrates, Commissaries, Officers of the Treasury, *&c.* The Governor of the Town of *Milan*, and that of the Cittadel, are different Persons, and independant of each other. *Milan* is an Archbishop's See, and they have a Tradition that their first Prelate was St. *Barnabas*. Here, as in other Towns, is an Academy of Wits, who at their publick Meetings entertain each other with Rhetorical, Moral, or Philosophical Discourses, and sometimes with Politicks, especially where something of a witty Turn is requir'd in the Answer. The ill Treatment they had from the *French* in the last War has confirm'd their Aversion to that Nation, and induced them so readily to submit to the *Austrian* Government after the Victory at *Turin* in the Year 1706.

Pavese.

BUT the second Subdivision of the *Milanese* is the *Pavese*, which lies to the Southward of *Milanese Proper*. It affords plenty of Corn, Wine, and the most delicious Fruit. The chief Town is *Pavia*, on the Banks of the River *Tesin*, four Miles North of the *Po*, and twenty South of *Milan*; it was the Capital of the *Lombards* Kingdom till that Monarchy was destroy'd by the Emperor *Charlemain*. There is nothing extraordinary in the Buildings of this Place; the Church of St. *Peter*, with the Monastery adjoining, are handsome Structures, but not remarkable for any thing, except that in this Monastry the Corpse of St. *Austin* is said to be interr'd, in a Tomb of white Marble, and is visited to this Day with abundance of Devotion. The Cathedral is a heavy old *Gothick* Building; however, *Pavia* is a Bishop's See, and said to be one of the richest in *Italy*, and depends immediately upon the Pope.

THE

Lodesan. The third Subdivision of *Milan* is the *Lodesan*; it abounds in rich Pasture, and Herds of Cattle, and is famous for its fine Cheese. The chief Town is *Lodi*, near the River *Adda*, twenty Miles South-East of *Milan*, but not taken notice of by Travellers, any further than as it is a large and well-built Town, and a Bishop's See.

Cremonese. The *Cremonese*, the fourth Subdivision, is to the Eastward of the *Lodesan*, and is separated from it by the River *Adda*. It abounds in Corn, Wine, Flax, and Fruit. The chief Town is *Cremona*, on the North Side of the *Po*; it is about forty-five Miles South-East of *Milan*; it is five Miles in Circumference, and well built, with spacious Squares and wide Streets, but neither populous nor rich; it is defended by a Castle and other Fortifications; but in the Year 1702, it being then in the Possession of the *French*, Prince *Eugene* penetrated into it by a subterraneous Passage, and surprized the Commander of the *French* Garrison, the Marshal *Villeroy*, in his Bed, and retired with his Prisoner, but did no other Execution, the *Irish* Regiments in the Garrison making a brave Defence, and the *German* Forces of Prince *Eugene*'s Party losing their Way, could not come up in Time to his Assistance; however, this, and other Successes of the brave Prince *Eugene*, so mortify'd the *French*, that they quitted the *Milanese* in the Year 1707.

Comasco. The fifth Subdivision is *Comasco*, to the Northward of *Milanese Proper*. The chief Town is *Como*, at the South End of the Lake *Como*, about twenty-five Miles to the Northward of *Milan*; it is a populous strong Town, and a Bishop's See. The Lake *Como* is about thirty Miles long, and three broad; the River *Adda* runs through it.

Anghiera. *Anghiera* is the sixth Subdivision, situate on each Side the Lake *Maggiore*. The chief Town *Anghiera* stands on the East Side of the said Lake, about thirty Miles North-West of *Milan*, but Geographers have not thought it worth a particular Description.

Novarese. The *Novarese* lies to the Westward of *Milanese Proper*: The chief Town is *Novara*, about thirty Miles to the Westward of *Milan*, a small fortify'd Town, and a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Milan*.

Tortonese. The *Tortonese* lies to the Southward of *Milan*; the chief Town is *Tortona*, about thirty Miles South-West of *Milan*; it is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Milan*.

Bobbio. The District of *Bobbio* lies to the Southward of the *Pavese*: The chief Town is *Bobbio*, a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Genoa*, but for nothing else remarkable.

The Valleys of *Sessia*, the *Lomellina*, and the *Alexandrin* having been yielded to the King of *Sardinia*, and treated of in the Description of his Territories, I shall forbear to say any more of them here.

Abstract of the History of *Milan.*

The Dutchy of *Milan* was inhabited by the *Insubres*, till it fell under the Dominion of the *Romans*, but upon the Decline of the *Roman* Empire it was possess'd by the *Goths*, till they were expell'd by the *Lombards*, a People of *Germany*, about the Year 572. *Milan* was the greatest Part of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, which continued about two hundred Years; but *Didier*, the last King, being taken Prisoner, and the Monarchy destroy'd by *Charlemain*, the Emperors of *Germany* afterwards appointed the Governors of the *Milanese*, who, in process of time, assum'd so much Authority, as to call themselves Lords of *Milan*. About the Year 1395, *John Galeas* was the first that was honour'd with the Title of Duke, and being succeeded by his two Sons, who dy'd without any Lgitimate Issue, several Princes laid Claim to the Dutchy of *Milan*, among the rest, the Emperor *Frederick* IV. *Alphonsus* King of *Naples*, *Lewis* Duke of *Savoy*, *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, and the Republick of *Venice*; whereupon the *Milanoise* for some Time took the Government into their own Hands, and about the Year 1468 put themselves under the Government of *Francis Sforza*, one of the greatest Generals of his Time, who had married the base Daughter of their last Duke. *Lewis* XII. King of *France*, Son to the Duke of *Orleans*, and Great-Grandson of *John Galeas*, the first Duke of *Milan*, abovemention'd, reviving his Pretensions to the *Milanese*, march'd an Army thither, and in less than a Month reduc'd it to his Obedience, obliging the then Duke, surnamed *Lewis the Black*, to fly for Refuge into *Germany*; but the *Milanoise*, weary of *French* Tyranny, soon recall'd him; but he was betray'd by a *Swiss* Soldier in his Service, taken Prisoner by the Enemy, and dy'd in Captivity; but *Maximilian*, the Son of the said *Lewis*, assisted by the *Swiss*, drove the *French* out of the Country; but *Francis* I. reinforcing his Troops, obtain'd a signal Victory over the *Milanoise* and *Swiss*, and oblig'd *Maximilian* to quit the Government. *Francis Sforza*, the Son of *Maximilian*, assisted by the Emperor and the Pope, was restor'd to his Dutchy about the Year 1521, and at the Treaty of *Cambray*, 1529, the *French* King relinquish'd his Claim to the *Milanese*. Upon the Death of *Francis Sforza* II. Duke of *Milan*, *Anno* 1536, the Emperor *Charles* V. granted the Investiture of the Dutchy to his Son *Philip* II. King of *Spain*, whose Successors enjoy'd it from his Death till the Year 1706, when the *French* and *Spaniards* evacuated the *Milanese*, and the rest of the *Spanish* Dominions in *Italy*, which by the following Treaty of Peace, in the Year 1714, were yielded to the Emperor.

Revenues and Forces.

The Revenues of the Dutchy of *Milan* are computed at three hundred thousand Pounds a Year; and their Forces about thirty thousand Men.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Contains a Description of the Dutchy of Mantua; *also of the Dutchy of* Modena, *with* Mirandola, Reggio, *and other small States, dependant on* Modena; *also of the Dutchy of* Parma, Placenza, *&c.*

Boundaries.

THE Dutchy of *Mantua* is bounded on the North by the *Bresian* and *Veronese*, and Part of the Territories of *Venice*; and on the East by another Part of the Territories of *Venice* and the *Ferrarese*; by *Modena* and *Mirandola* on the South; and by the *Cremonese* on the West; this Dutchy is about fifty Miles in Length, but at most not above thirty in Breadth, and in some Places not a quarter so much. The chief Towns are,

Mantua.

1. *Mantua*; it stands in the Middle of a Lake, or Morass, form'd by the River *Mincio*, about fourscore Miles East of *Milan*, and not much more South-West of *Venice*; it is in a very unhealthy Situation, especially in a hot Season, as lying in the Middle of such a Quagmire; that on the Side of *Cremona* there is a Causey, of three hundred Paces long, over the Morass, before you can arrive at the firm Land; and on the North Side of it there are two Causeys of five or six hundred Paces each, with Forts and Draw-Bridges upon them to prevent the Attacks of Enemies, it being impossible to approach it but by those Causeys, by Reason of it's boggy Situation. The Town is between four and five Miles in Circumference, and is suppos'd to contain fifty thousand Inhabitants; it has but poor Walls and Fortifications, they trusting to the impassible circumjacent Bog for their Defence; there are large Streets and spacious Squares. Eighteen Parish Churches there are in the Town, but we do not find any thing to be admired in the Buildings; it has, however, a good Trade, especially the Silk Manufacture bears a great Character, by the Name of *Mantua Silk*, which Silk being first wrought into those Female Dresses call'd Mantua's, might probably give the first Rise to those Names for those Womens Garments call'd Mantua's. It is said any foreign Silk is easier imitated than that of *Mantua*. This Bishoprick is independant of any but the Holy See, and owns no other Superior.

Luzara.

Luzara is fifteen Miles South of *Mantua*, but not remarkable for any thing, except a Battle fought near it between the *French* and *Spaniards* on the one Part, and the *Imperialists* on the other, in the Year 1702, and then the Success was so equal, that both Sides claim'd the Honour of the Victory.

Guastalla.

Guastalla is about twenty Miles South of *Mantua*; it is the Capital of a Dutchy of that Name.

History of *Mantua.*

THE Dutchy of *Mantua*, about the eleventh Century, erected a Government of their own, but afterwards losing the Liberty they had once been Masters of, they were subject to several Tyrants, as they, and others too, stil'd them; till *Lewis de Gonzaga*, from whom the late Duke deriv'd his Pedigree, depos'd the last Tyrant in the Year 1328, and became Vicar of the Empire, and as such had the Sovereignty of the *Mantuan* confer'd upon him: His Successors enjoy'd the Titles of Lords of *Mantua* till the Year 1435, when the Emperor gave them the Title of Marquis; and afterwards *Charles* V. confer'd the Title of Duke on *Frederick* II. This Branch held the Dutchy till the Year 1627, when *Vincent* II. dying without Issue, his Cousin, *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers* in *France*, by the Assistance of *Lewis* XIII. obtain'd the Sovereignty of this Dutchy. His Grandson, *Ferdinand Charles* IV. the last Duke, adhering to the *French* King in the late War, was proscrib'd by the Emperor, who seiz'd the Dutchy as a Forfeit, and the Duke dying in the Year 1708, and leaving no Issue, the Emperor still keeps it in Possession.

THE Country of *Mantua* abounds in Corn, Fruits, Flax, Silk, and excellent Pasture, but it does not produce much Wine. The annual Revenue of the late Duke was computed at three hundred thousand Crowns and upwards, besides what he drew from *Montserrat*. The other Branches of the Family of *Gonzaga* are, the Princes of *Guastalla*, *Bozola*, *Castiglione*, and the Earl of *Novellara*, but they are at present content with the Emperor's Government, and have not yet thought fit to lay Claim to the Dutchy of *Mantua*.

MODENA.

UNDER this Head of *Modena* I include the Dutchies of *Mirandola* and *Reggio*, with the Marquisate of *Scandiano*, the Principalities of *Corregio* and *Carpi*; and these, taken together, are bounded on the North by the *Mantuan*, and on the East by *Bologna*; by the *Appenine Hills*, which separate it from *Tuscany*, on the South; and by the *Parmesan* on the West; it is about sixty Miles from North to South, and fifty from East to West. The chief Town is *Modena*; it stands upon a Canal, in a pleasant Plain, about forty Miles to the Southward of *Mantua*, and twenty North-West of *Bologna*. The antient *Mutina* stood near this Place, and some say *Modena* was built out of the Ruins of it, and indeed I think the Similitude of Names contributes pretty much to the Credit of the Assertion; it is not a strong Place, nor are the Buildings so fine as in many other Places in *Italy*, the Streets are narrow and dark, and indeed nothing there is much to be admired.

Soil

THE Soil about *Modena* is rich, but the Taxes and Impositions are so exorbitant, to support a splendid Court, that the industrious Inhabitants are poor in the Midst of Plenty; for it abounds in Corn, Wine, Pasture, Cattle, and all manner of delicious Fruit. *Modena* is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to *Bologna*, and is the Residence of the present Duke *Reginald*, Duke of *Modena*, *Reggio*, and *Mirandola*.

Mir

Mirandola is the Capital of the Dutchy of the same Name, about twenty Miles to the Northward of *Modena*. It, with *Concordia*, was purchas'd by the Emperor about the Year 1711. The Revenues of this Dutchy is about two thousand Pounds a Year.

Re

Reggio is the Capital of the Dutchy of *Reggio*; it stands about fifteen Miles North-West of *Modena*;

Modena; it is a populous trading Town, handsomer and better built than *Modena*, and subject to the same Prince. Their Buildings are not to be admired, when compar'd with others in *Italy*. It is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Bologna*.

Corregio. *Corregio* and *Carpi* are Capitals of their respective Principalities, but not worth a Description in History.

History of Modena. *Modena* was a *Roman* Colony, but destroy'd by *Marcus Antonius*. The *Lombards* re-built the City, and made it a Part of their Kingdom. It was afterwards a free State under the Emperor, but is now possess'd by *D'Este*. The present Duke *Reginald* above mention'd, was born 1655. and made Cardinal Deacon in 1686. but after his Brother's Death he threw off the Purple; and about the Year 1696. married *Charlotte*, the Daughter of *John Frederick* Duke of *Hannover*, by whom he had *Benedicta-Ernestina-Mary*. She was born in the Year 1697. and married to Prince *Anthony* of *Parma*. Also 2. *Francis Mary*, Hereditary Prince of *Modena*, born in the Year 1698. he married the second Daughter of the late Duke of *Orleans*, and had two Sons by her. 3. *Amalia Josepha*; and 4. *John-Frederick-Ernest*. The Duke of *Modena* is absolute in his Dominions; and though the Governors or Judges determine criminal and civil Affairs, yet the last Appeal, if it come to an Appeal, is submitted to the Judge himself.

The Duke of *Modena*'s Revenues are about an hundred thousand Pounds a Year. *Mary* the late Queen of *England*, Wife to King *James* II. was Sister to the Duke of *Modena*; and consequently if the Chevalier *de St. George*, commonly call'd the *Pretender*, was the legitimate Son of the said Queen *Mary*, he was Nephew to the Duke of *Modena*; but these Enquiries do not fall under our Observation.

P A R M A.

THE Dutchy of *Parma*, including *Piacenza*, with the States of *Bassetto*, and *Laudi*, all which are under the same Prince, lies between the *Cremonese* on the North, and *Genoa* on the South; and between *Reggio* on the East, and the *Pavesan* on the West; it is about sixty Miles long, and thirty Miles broad. The chief Town is *Parma*, the Capital of the Dutchy, situate on the River *Parma*, which divides the Town in two Parts, as *London* and *Southwark*. But there is a Communication maintain'd by three Bridges; and indeed it is common when we hear of a Capital City, where a large River runs through it, the next Thing spoke in Honour of that Place, is to speak of the Number of Bridges, by which the Communication between both Sides of the Water is carried on. Thus it was spoke to the Honour of *Rome*, that it once had eight Bridges over the *Tyber*; and at *Leyden* in *Holland*, there are at this Day ninety five Bridges, *&c.* Such Numbers of Bridges, where a City stands upon Islands, as is the Case of *Leyden*, or where a River runs through the City as at *Rome*, and several other Places, renders the Communication between one Part and another much more commodious. Indeed, to this general Rule there is an Exception in the famous City of *London*, where there is but one Bridge; and the Inhabitants seem rather to make Use of the *Thames* as a Defence to keep People from them, than otherwise, by their being so afraid to have another Bridge, when there is but one already for the Communication between the great Cities of *London* and *Westminster* on one Side, and the Borough of *Southwark*, and Counties of *Surry*, &c. on the other. Indeed if it is in Favour of the Watermen, and to make Work for them, it is a Wonder that that Argument did not prevail to prevent the Building of the present *London* Bridge. But I can only let it end in a Surprize to consider, that there is but one Bridge belonging to two such populous trading Cities, as those of *London* and *Westminster*. But to return to *Parma*.

Parma. THE City is of a circular Form, about three Miles in Circumference. It is a strong Place, defended by a Citadel and other Fortifications. The Buildings are regular, and the Streets broad and straight; it is about thirty Miles North West of *Modena*, and sixty North East of *Genoa*. The Cathedral is a magnificent Building, surrounded on the Outside by several Ranges of Pillars, and the Cupola finely painted. St. *John*'s Church is a fine Piece of Architecture, as is the Duke's Palace, much admir'd for its Theatre and fine Gallery, which Mr. *Addison* affirms to be the most spacious in *Europe*; and so admirably contriv'd, that from the Depth of the Stage, the Words may be distinctly heard to the furthest Part of the Audience; and if the Voice be elevated never so much, there is no Echo to cause any Confusion, or disturb the articulate Sound. There are no Boxes in it, only Benches riling gradually as in an Amphitheatre; and the Pit between the Benches and the Stage is sometimes three Feet deep with Water, which doubtless is a vast Help towards conveying the Voice from the Stage to the Auditory, by its being reflected up from the Surface of the Water to the People. And what makes it more agreeable, is the little gilded Boats; that with the Lights and Glasses that are about, form a very agreeable Scene. The Gallery is hung round with fine Pictures; and on the Inside, are Tables, Cabinets, and Works of Amber and Chrystal, and other Pieces, admired for their Contrivance and Value And next to this Room is another, furnish'd with Inscriptions, Medals, Busts, and other Pieces of Antiquity. The Gardens are admired for the fine Walks, Grottoes, Fountains, Cascades, Statues, *&c.*

THE University was founded in the Year 1509. where they learn all Manner of Exercises as well as Sciences. *Parma* is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to *Bologna*; it is a Place of good Trade, especially in Cheese, which they dispose of to almost all Parts of *Europe*.

Piacenza or *Placentia*, is about thirty Miles North West from *Parma*; it stands in a fruitful Plain, water'd with Rivulets, and is about half a Mile from the *Po*. It is larger than *Parma*; it is defended by a Wall, a Citadel, and other Fortifications. The Duke of *Parma* has a Palace here; the Buildings are handsome and regular, and the Squares large, but all exceeded by many in *Italy*. It is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Bologna*. Their Trade consists chiefly in Cheese, as at *Parma*; the Country about them consisting of as rich Pasture-Ground as any in *Italy*.

BESIDES these, there are *Bassetta*, sixteen Miles North East of *Piacenza*, and *Borgo St. Domino*, the same Distance South East of the same Place; but Travellers have not thought them worth a particular Description.

THE Dutchies of *Parma* and *Piacenza* are in a fine Air and a fruitful Soil; they abound in Cattle of all Kinds, and the Wool of their Sheep is as good as any in *Italy*. And besides the best of Cheese, they have good Oil, Wine, Corn, Rice, and Fruit. They have a delicious kind of Mushrooms, call'd *Truffles*, without Stem or Root, that grows within the Ground. They have also some Mines of Silver and Copper, but not very rich.

As to the History of this Country, the *Tuscans* were the first Inhabitants of it that we hear of.

The *Romans* settled a Colony here above an hundred Years before our Saviour's Time; but when the *Roman* Empire began to decay, this Country fell under the Power of those who invaded *Italy*, and became a free State, when it was deliver'd from the *Roman* Yoke. It was successively govern'd by the Western Emperors, the *Pope*, the *Venetians*, *Milanois*, and *French*. Pope *Julius* II. who began in the Year 1503. reduc'd it again to the See of *Rome*; and afterwards Pope *Paul* III. created his natural Son *Peter-Lewis-Farnese* Duke of *Parma* and *Piacenza* about the Year 1545. But the Emperor disputed his Title till the Emperor's natural Daughter was married to *Octavio Farnese*, the Son of *Peter-Lewis Farnese*; and this confirm'd the Dutchy in that Family, but with this Limitation, that the Emperor looks upon it as a Fief of the Empire, and revertible to him on Failure of Male-Issue. Whereas on the other Hand, the *Pope* claims it as a Fee of the *Holy See*; and as such, extorts ten thousand Crowns a Year of the Duke of *Piacenza*.

But in the present Situation of Affairs, it may not be amiss to give a Genealogical Abstract of the Succession of the *Farnesian* Family; and to go no further back, *Edward Farnese*, Duke of *Parma*, in the Year 1690. married *Dorothy-Sophia* of *Newburg*, Sister to the Elector *Palatine*, and the Empress Mother, and to the Queen Dowager of *Spain*. He died in the Year 1693. having had Issue by his Princess, a Son named *Alexander*, who died in his Infancy, and a Daughter named *Elizabeth*, born in the Year 1692. and married to *Philip* V. King of *Spain* in 1714. Prince *Francis Farnese* succeeded his Brother *Edward* in the Dutchy of *Parma*, and in the Year 1695. married his Widow the Princess *Dorothy-Sophia*, Mother to the Queen of *Spain*.

In the Year 1718. the *Quadruple Alliance* was form'd, and so call'd, because it was compos'd of four Powers, *viz. Great Britain*, the Emperor, the *French*, and the *States General*. It was therein stipulated, that to prevent a War in *Italy*, in Case the Great Duke of *Tuscany*, or the Duke of *Parma* and *Placentia*, or their Successors, should die without Male-Issue, the States and Dutchies, possess'd by the Great Duke of *Tuscany*, and the Duke of *Parma*, (they being Fiefs of the Empire) should descend to the Queen of *Spain*'s first-born Son, and to his Male-Issue, &c. provided that none of the said Dominions should ever be in the Possession of a Prince, who should be at the same Time King of *Spain*; nor should the King of *Spain* be Guardian to any that should be put in Possession of the said Dominions.

The Great Duke of *Tuscany* died in the Year 1723. and was succeeded by his Son; but more of this in the Description of *Tuscany*. In the Year 1725. there was a Treaty between the Emperor and the King of *Spain*, in which the Dutchies of *Parma* and *Tuscany* are confirm'd to the eldest Son of the Queen of *Spain* in Case of Defect of Male-Heirs in the Families of *Parma* and *Tuscany*.

The annual Revenue of this Dutchy is about Rec
an hundred thousand Pounds; and as for his Forces, he finds not much Occasion for vast Numbers; for the Jealousies his Neighbours entertain of one another, gives every one of them enough to do, without attempting to invade his Property.

CHAP. IX.

Contains a Description of the Dutchy of Tuscany *or* Florence; *and of the Republick of* Luca *or* Lucca.

THE Dutchy of *Florence* or *Tuscany*, is bounded by the Territories of the *Pope* on the North, the East, and South East, and by the *Tuscan* Sea on the South West; and on the North West by the Territories of *Genoa* and *Modena*; it is near a square Form, the Length and Breadth about an hundred Miles each. But though it is such a large Tract of Ground, and the Dominions of his *Holiness*, yet it is so much of it among the *Apennine* Hills, and that even the barrenest Part of them too, it cannot be said to be either fruitful or pleasant. The Air is very sharp on these Hills, and but few Inhabitants are to be found upon them; but between them are large and fruitful Valleys, which, as they are interspers'd with Towns and Villages; and these view'd from the Tops of the barren Mountains, afford a most beautiful Prospect. And the Fruits ripen much sooner here, and come to greater Perfection than on the North Side of the *Apennine* Hills. Here is a fruitful Plain, which runs quite cross the Country, from *Arezzo* on the East, to *Pisa* at the Sea Side on the West, fourscore Miles. It is water'd by the River *Arno*, and abounds with Corn, Wine, Oil, Oranges, Citrons, Figs, and all manner of delicious Fruit; also Chesnuts are very plenty; and for Mulberries for their Silk-worms, no Country is better stor'd. Chief Rivers are the *Arno* and the *Ombro*, both which runs South West into the *Tuscan* Sea. This Country is divided into the *Pisan*, the *Florentin*, and the *Sienese*.

The *Pisan* is bounded by the *Florentin*, and Pis
the Republick of *Lucca* on the North and East, and by the *Tuscan* Sea on the South West. The chief Towns, *Pisa*, *Legborn*, and *Volterra*.

The City of *Pisa* stands on the River *Arno*, thirty six Miles West of *Florence*, and about six from the *Tuscan* Sea; it is the largest Town in *Tuscany* except *Florence*, and is well fortify'd. The Town is divided in two Parts by the River which runs through it, and it being pretty broad, there are three good Bridges over it, one of which is Marble. There is a commodious Key, but the Mouth of the River is so choak'd up, that it is only navigable for smaller Vessels. The Streets are broad, straight, and well pav'd. The Cathedral is a fine Building, the Roof is supported by seventy six Marble Pillars of different Colours, and the Brazen Doors are exquisitely wrought; and though some have made the unwary Travellers believe those Doors did belong to *Solomon*'s Temple, yet the Work upon them seem to intimate the contrary, it representing the Annunciation, Birth, and Passion of our Saviour. Here is a leaning Tower in a Cylindrical Form, an hundred and eighty five Feet high; some say it is the Height of it makes it seem to lean, but Mr. *Misson* tells us it is Fact, for that he try'd it with a Line and Plummet; but still they differ about

about the Cauſe of its leaning, ſome aſſerting that the Architect did it of purpoſe, as a Proof of his Skill and Art, but the above-mention'd Gentleman tells us, that the Foundation is ſunk on one Side more than on the other, which makes it lie along.

Piſa is an Archbiſhoprick and an Univerſity; it was once ſuch a flouriſhing Republick, that it diſputed the Sovereignty of thoſe Seas with the *Venetians* and *Genoeſe*; they reduc'd the City of *Carthage*, and aſſiſted the Chriſtian Princes againſt the Infidels in the *Holy Land*; but being ſubdu'd by the *Florentines*, and the Seat of the Government remov'd, their Trade went to decay, the Harbour went to ruin, their Buildings out of repair, the Town depopulated in Compariſon to its antient Grandeur, and the Trade transferr'd to

Leghorn, or *Livorno*. This was but an inconſiderable Village till the Great Duke, *Ferdinand* I. enlarg'd and beautify'd it, and endow'd it with ſuch Immunities and Privileges as invited foreign Merchants from all Parts to trade and ſettle there. It is ſixteen Miles to the Southward of *Piſa*, and is one of the beſt Harbours in *Italy*, and very ſtrong; but they are at a great Charge to cleanſe the Harbour, and keep it from choaking up, which is done by the Help of Engines that are always at work, and would be very chargeable, if many of the Great Duke's Slaves were not employ'd; and they have this Advantage alſo, that with the Sand and Soil which they take up in the Harbour, they fill and dry the marſhy Ground about them, and at once find the Benefit of firmer Land, as well as a more wholſome Air. As to the Town itſelf it is not large, but the Streets are broad and ſtrait; the Great Square is one of the largeſt and moſt beautiful in all *Tuſcany*; the Buildings are generally regular, and painted on the Outſide.

The Duke of *Tuſcany* reaps a vaſt Advantage by this ſingle Town; for though it is call'd a free Port, and may well be reckon'd ſo with reſpect to ſome others, for the Duties that Foreigners pay are inconſiderable, only out of what they purchaſe there goes a proportionable Gabel, as it is call'd there, or Tax to the Government, and ſo out of what is ſold; as for Inſtance, the very Ice-Merchant here pays above a thouſand Crowns a Year to the Government, for his Privilege of ſelling Ice, and the Tobacco Merchant ten thouſand; the Great Duke has alſo a Privilege of ſelling the Ground to build upon, that has not been built upon before, which brings him in great Sums of Money. The foreign Merchandize landed at *Leghorn*, and from thence diſpers'd up into the Country, are tax'd highly as ſoon as they leave *Leghorn*; and thoſe Country Goods ſent down to *Leghorn*, as Wines, Oils, and Silks, wade through abundance of Duties and Impoſitions before they arrive at *Leghorn*, in Order for Exportation; but this enhances the Price to the Merchant, and he advances the Price in proportion to his Cuſtomers; ſo that in ſhort, the Advantage goes into the Great Duke's Coffers, and comes out of the Pockets of the Conſumers of the Goods, and does not any other way effect Trade at all. But one Thing I muſt not forget in the Trade of *Leghorn*, and that is, That the Ships of *England*, *Holland*, &c. frequently touch at *Leghorn*, both in their outward and homeward bound Paſſage, and barter the Goods which they brought for a Market, for the Goods which they can have there; as for Inſtance, the *French* Barks come loaden with Wine from *Languedoc*, &c. to *Leghorn* for a Market, and the Homeward bound Ships from *Turkey*, at the ſame Time, call at *Leghorn* to be ſupply'd with thoſe Neceſſaries; and as it is a free Port, they pay no Duty, except they land the Goods, and to prevent that, they do not land them at all, but make Warehouſes, or rather Retale-Shops, of their Barks, and when they have ſold their Cargoes, go home for more.

There is upon the Key a Marble Statue of *Ferdinand* I. with four brazen Figures at his Feet, repreſenting ſo many *Turkiſh* Slaves attempting to run away with a Galley, and were for that Crime executed in this Place. There are two Sorts of Slaves here; the firſt are *Turks* or *Moors*, taken at Sea, or elſe Criminals condemned to the Galleys for Miſdemeanors; the other are voluntary Slaves, who, rather than work, will be Slaves for a Maintenance, but ſuch commonly make themſelves Slaves for a limitted Time, which being expired they have their Liberty; and even thoſe who are in the Time of their Slavery, when the Galleys are laid up, follow their reſpective Trades; and thoſe who have no Trades, ſell Wine and other Proviſions; ſome of them advance their Fortunes by that Means ſo much, that they would not quit their Slavery if any Friend would purchaſe their Liberty, for when they once get a little above the World, and can advance a little Money to the Captain, he will find means to excuſe them.

Volterra is the See of a Biſhop, Suffragan to *Rome*; but I do not find any thing remarkable as to its Buildings, &c. but what is common; but about ſixteen Miles to the Weſtward of this Place are the Lakes called *Il Bagno al Morbo*; they are ſmall Lakes of a prodigious Depth, from which the Water bubbles as if it boil'd, and ſends forth ſtrong ſulphureous Streams, (ſome ſay ſo ſtrong as to kill the Birds that fly over it,) ſo hot, as to boil Meat ſooner than in a Cook's Copper when boiling. *Volterra.*

The Dutchy of *Florence*, ſometimes call'd the *Florentine*, lies between the *Bolognois* North, and the *Sienneſe* South, and between *Ancona* on the Eaſt, and the *Piſan* on the Weſt. The chief Town is

Florence, thirty ſix Miles to the Eaſtward of *Piſa*, and a hundred and twenty North of *Rome*. It is in a moſt deſirable Situation, having beautiful Hills on three Sides of it, full of Villages, Country-Seats, Gardens, Groves, &c. till the Woods of Olives, riſing gradually to the Northward, ſeems as it were loſt in the *Appenine Hills*; and towards the Weſt lies that rich Valley, water'd by the River *Arno*, which extends as far as *Piſa* at the Sea-ſide. This Valley abounds in Corn, Wine, and all Manner of delicious Fruit. *Florence*

The City of *Florence* is of a circular Form, about ſix Miles in Circumference, and well defended by three Citadels, and other Fortifications. The River *Arno* runs through the City, but the Communication is maintain'd by four Bridges; the Streets are ſtrait, and well-pav'd; and it is little, if at all, inferior, to the City of *Rome* as to its Buildings, whether publick Palaces or private Buildings; and in general, the Place is ſo agreeable, that it has acquir'd the Epithet of *Florence the Fair*; but it is not without its Defects, and material ones too. One is, that they have no Glaſs in their Windows, and the ſhatter'd Paper, which ſupplies its Place, makes a very dull Appearance in their lofty, and otherwiſe beautiful Palaces, and other Buildings. Another Fault is, their Streets and Squares are too narrow, in Proportion to their lofty Edifices; but this latter may be diſpens'd with better than ſeeing the ragged Paper hang out at the Windows of a Palace.

The

Palace. THE Great Duke's Palace is a noble Pile, adorn'd with Statues and Busts of excellent Workmanship; and the Cathedral is a magnificent Structure, being not only cover'd on the Outside, but pav'd too with Marble of divers Colours. The Church is four hundred and eighty Feet long, and three hundred and eighty Feet high to the Top of the Cross, after the Model of St. *Peter's Rome*, or St. *Paul's London*.

THE Product of this Place is Wine, Oil, Fruits. Their Manufactures, are wrought Silks, Gold and Silver Stuffs. The Diversions used here, are, among the rest, the Combat of wild Beasts; as Lions, Leopards, Tygers, wild Boars, Bears, and Wolves, which are let out of their Dens into a spacious Court, surrounded by high Walls, where the Spectators sit to see the Sport; which, when over, they drive the fierce Animals back into their Dens by a terrible wooden Machine, in the Form of a green Dragon, roll'd in upon Wheels, with two lighted Torches through the two Eyes; which at the first Appearance, soon sends them to their respective Dens. Another Sport is Horse-racing, but without Riders; but the Means they use to make them run, is by throwing a broad Piece of Leather over each Horse, stuck with sharp-pointed Irons, like the Rowels of a Spur, which, as the Horse moves, claps against his Side; and either through Use, or the Fright, makes him push forwards as our Race-Horses, with the best of Riders upon their Backs. But besides this way of Racing, they have on the twenty fourth of *June* every Year, the *Roman* Races in the Piazza *di Sancta Maria Novella*, with fine open Chariots, drawn by a Pair of Horses each. The Great Duke assists at this Diversion. There are two fine Marble Obelisks in the Square; they drive four times round them with all the Speed they are capable of; and he that performs the Course soonest, gains the Prize, which is commonly a Piece of fine Brocade.

Pratolini. *Pratolini* is five Miles North of *Florence*; here the Great Duke has a magnificent Palace; in the Gardens of which, not to enumerate all other Curiosities, there are certain Statues playing upon Musical Instruments; others working at a Forge, Organs playing, Birds chirping, Frogs croaking, Statues walking, and all put in Motion by Water: And to add to the Diversion, there is conceal'd, Spouts, by which, when the Curiosity of Strangers lead them to see the Gardens, they can, by turning a Cock, half drown the inquisitive Spectators for their Diversion.

THERE are other Places whose Names are mention'd in Geographical History, but not being noted either for Situation, Trade, or any thing else that is worth Observation, I shall proceed to

Siennese. THE *Siennese*; it lies between *Florence* on the North, and the Pope's Territories on the South, and has the *Tuscan* Sea on the South West. Its Length and Breadth are near equal, *viz.* about sixty Miles. The chief Town is

Sienna, it stands six Miles to the Southward of *Florence*, upon an Eminence in a fruitful Country; it is of a triangular Form, about four Miles in Circumference, surrounded by an old Wall, and commanded by a Citadel; it is in a decaying Condition, but the Streets are neatly pav'd with Bricks. The great Square in the middle of the City is surrounded with a Piazza, where they run Races as at *Florence*, with Machines drawn by Horses. They have also Horse-Races every Year on the second of *July*, run by fourteen Horses, which are brought from as many Parishes, by Riders richly dress'd in different Colours, with the Arms of their respective Parishes on their Habits; the Horses dress'd up with the utmost Splendour, and their Hoofs gilt; they run for a Piece of rich Brocade, which is purchas'd at the joint Charge of the Parishes whose Horses run; and the Horse that comes in first, gains the Prize.

THERE is a very fine Cathedral, adorn'd with several Statues, particularly of the three Popes born in this Place, *viz. Alexander* III. *Pius* II. and *Alexander* VII. The other Buildings are the great Hospital, the House of *Pius* II. the Pillar with the brazen Wolf upon it; some say in Memory of the Wolf, which as some say suckled *Romulus* and *Remus*, the Founders of this City. *Sienna* is an Archbishop's See, and an University, both for Sciences and Manly Exercises. It is the common Residence of Foreigners, who desire to learn *Italian*, not only for the pleasant Situation, but for the Purity of the Language as spoke here.

Castiglione is a small Town on the Frontiers of the Pope's Territories. It stands on a Lake of the same Name, forty five Miles South East of *Sienna*, and fifty North of *Rome*.

Tuscany, or the antient *Tyrhennia*, was formerly divided into twelve small Principalities, each of them govern'd by its respective Sovereign, till it fell under the Dominion of the *Romans* with the rest of *Italy*; and afterwards participated of the Fortune of that Empire, being over-run by the *Goths* and other Northern People. The City of *Florence* in particular, was destroy'd by them, and re-built about two hundred and fifty Years afterwards by *Charles* the Great. It remain'd for some Time under the Jurisdiction of the Emperors of the West; but during the Struggles between them and the Pope of *Rome* for Dominion, the principal Cities of *Italy*, as *Florence*, *Pisa*, and *Sienna*, threw off their Subjection to both, and erected such Governments in their respective Territories as they thought fit, or could agree upon: But those Forms of Government being in so many Hands, were liable to many Mutations, till some of the most popular Men in *Florence* assum'd the Government of that City. These were frequently depos'd by other aspiring Citizens, who would admit of no Superior, till at last the House of *Medicis* got the Government fix'd in their Family, and now continues Sovereigns of most Part of *Tuscany*, and have reduc'd the Republicks of *Pisa* and *Sienna* under their Dominions.

THE first Rise of the Family of *Medicis*, was by the Means of *John* of that Name, who about the Year 1410. by flattering the Populace, and pretending to defend them against the Oppressions of the Nobility, procured the sovereign Power to be put into his Hands; but the absolute Power was attain'd by Degrees, and with a Mixture of Policy; for Pope *Pius* V. first conferr'd the Title of *Great Duke* on *Cosmo de Medicis*, in the Year 1570. and crown'd him with his own Hands at *Rome*; ever since which Time, the Pontifs have look'd upon the Dukes of *Tuscany* as their Vassals; though at the same Time, the Emperor claims *Tuscany* as a Fee of the Empire, with a Power of disposing of it in Default of Male-Issue in the *Medicean* Family, which occasion'd the Treaties mention'd in the History of *Parma*, for preventing a War in *Italy*. The Pope resented this Proceeding of the other Powers of *Europe*, in taking upon them to dispose of the Territories of *Tuscany*; but they insisted upon it, that *Don Carlos*, the Son of the Queen of *Spain*, should succeed to *Tuscany* in Case the present Grand Duke should die without Issue.

Note,

Note, Don Carlos *is (at the writing hereof) upon his Attempt of reducing* Sicily, *and has made some Progress therein; but the Result being yet precarious, as well as the Determination of the Affair of the Rival Kings of* Poland, *the Reader shall be furnish'd with a farther Account of both, as well as of other depending Affairs, in a Supplement to this whole History, as soon as Time shall give us the Opportunity.*

THE Great Duke is so arbitrary, that he hath not so much as a Privy-Council, but his own Will is a Law, and is sufficient to give Authority to any Act himself pleases; and Governors, or any other Officers, are appointed or degraded at his Pleasure entirely. His Revenues are computed at five hundred thousand Pounds a Year, besides his Treasure in Bank, and the Benefit of trafficking with it as a Merchant. To this we may add, his frugal way of living as another Article to make him a wealthy Prince. Indeed, if he may be said to be extravagant in any thing, it is in his Buildings, Furniture, Gardens, Collections of Antiquities, and other Curiosities of Art and Nature.

BESIDES the Territories above-mention'd, belonging to the Grand Duke of *Tuscany*, that Prince is possess'd of Part of the Island of *Elba*, the Marquisate of *Scansano*, the *Città del Sole* in *Romania*, and some other Places.

THE other Parts of *Tuscany* contain, 1. The Territories of the Republick of *Lucca*. 2. The State *Delli Presidii*, possess'd by the *Spaniards*. 3. The Principality of *Piombino*. 4. The *Domain* of the House of *Cibo*. And, lastly, the Marquisate *de Fos di Nova*.

THE Territories of *Lucca* lie upon the Coast of the *Tuscan* Sea, to the Northward of *Pica* and *Leghorn*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Lucca*. 2. *Via Reggio*. 3. *Correglia*. And, lastly, *Castiglione*.

THE City of *Lucca* stands near the River *Secchia*, ten Miles to the Northward of *Pisa*, and twelve Miles to the Eastward of the *Tuscan* Sea. It is of an oblong Form, about three Miles in Circumference, encompass'd by a Wall, and defended by eleven Bastions. The Walls are planted with Trees so high, or the Buildings so low, that the Town is all hid by the Trees, except the Steeple of the Cathedral, as we approach the Place. This Cathedral is a large, handsome Fabrick; in it, there is a Crucifix of Cedar, richly cloath'd, with a Crown upon its Head, enrich'd with precious Stones and other curious Ornaments.

THE Legislative Power is lodg'd in the Senate, which is compos'd of about two hundred and twenty of what they call Noblemen; but why they call them so is uncertain, for they have no Honours or Benefits annex'd to them, and they generally follow their respective Trades. This Senate is divided into two Parts, who sit alternately six Months.

THE Revenues of *Lucca* are about thirty thousand Pounds a Year; and as to their Forces, it is said they can raise ten or twelve thousand Men upon Occasion. No Traveller is admitted into the City but at one particular Port; and there they take their Arms from them before they enter the City, not suffering so much as any Man to wear a Sword in the Street. This is a Bishop's See, subject immediately to the Pope. Their Manufactures consist chiefly in Gold and Silver Stuffs. Their Olives and Oil are very much esteem'd. They have Plenty of Wine; but Corn is so scarce that the common People generally eat Chesnuts instead of Bread, as they do in many Parts of *Italy*. *Viareggio* is a small Port, ten or twelve Miles to the Westward of *Lucca*, and maintains the Communication between that Country and the *Tuscan* Sea.

Delli Presidii is subject to the *Spaniards*; it lies to the Southward of *Lucca*, and upon the *Tuscan* Shore. The chief Towns are *Orbitello*, and *Porto Hercole*; the first is situate on the *Tuscan* Coast, at the Foot of the Mount *Argentaro*, thirty Miles North West of *Civita Vecchia*, and about as many to the Eastward of the Island of *Elba*: The latter, *viz. Porto Hercole*, is a large Town and Harbour on the *Tuscan* Sea, six Miles to the Southward of *Orbitello*. It is defended by a strong Castle, but there is nothing else belonging to it that is worth a particular Description. *Delli Presidii.*

THE Principality of *Piombino* lies along the Coast of the *Tuscan* Sea, between *Orbitello* and *Leghorn*. The chief Town is *Piombino*, about thirty five Miles South East of *Leghorn*. It is a strong Fortress and Harbour, subject to the *Spaniards*.

THE *Domain* of the House of *Cibo* lies between *Genoa* on the West, and *Val de Maire* on the East. It is now subject to *Tuscany*. Chief Towns are *Massa* and *Carara*.

Massa stands on the little River *Lavenza*, about twenty Miles North West of *Lucca*, and four Miles from the *Tuscan* Sea. It is a little well built Town, and was formerly the Residence of a Prince.

Carara is five Miles North West of *Massa*; it is near this Place that the fine white Marble is dug up, which is reckon'd the best in *Europe*; but I do not find that the Place is noted for any thing else.

THE Marquisate *de Fos di Nova* is a small Territory North West of *Massa*; it belongs to the Family of *Malespina*. The chief Town is also call'd *Malespina*, and situate about eight Miles to the Northward of *Carara*.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE REPUBLICK OF *VENICE.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation and Extent of the Territories of the Republick of Venice; *as also of the Air, Climate, Seas, Rivers, Soil, and Product.*

ALTHOUGH the Republick of *Venice*, and the Pope's Dominions, are all in *Italy*, yet I shall speak of them under their distinct and proper Heads or Divisions; and in that respect shall first treat of the *Venetian* Dominions in *Italy*, which are bounded on the North by the Country of the *Grisons*, *Trent*, and *Tyrol*; by *Carniola* and the Gulf of *Venice* on the East; on the South, by *Mantua* and *Ferrara*; and on the West, by the Dutchy of *Milan*: Those Dominions contain about an hundred and eighty Miles from East to West, and an hundred Miles from North to South at the East End, but far short of that Breadth at the West End.

The Territories of *Venice* are a Part of the antient *Lombardy*; in the In-land part of which, is as healthy an Air, and as happy a Climate, as any in *Europe*, but not so upon the Sea-Coast. There is no Sea washes the *Venetian* Shore but the *Adriatick*, call'd therefore the Gulf of *Venice*; which is an Arm of the Sea, which comes up from the *Ionian* Sea, between *Otranto* in *Italy*, and the Island of *Corfu* on the Coast of *Turky*, and extends itself between four and five hundred Miles to *Venice*; which therefore gives Name to it as above observ'd.

Some Authors tell us, there is a regular Tide in the Gulf of *Venice*, and that it ebbs and flows twice in twenty four Hours; that the perpendicular Height between the high and low Water Mark at *Venice* is about four Feet; and that it is govern'd by the Moon as in *England*. I must own I cannot contradict the Assertion, nor prove a Negative where the Affirmative is asserted; and the rather, because I never was at *Venice*, or any where in the *Adriatick* Sea; but it is the common Sentiments of most Mariners that trade to the *Mediterranean*, that there is no regular Tide any where in the *Mediterranean*. And although I never was in the Gulf of *Venice*, yet I have been at *Naples*, *Reggio*, and other Places upon the West Coast of *Italy*, for several Weeks together; as also upon the Coast of *Sicily*; and have made it my Business to observe diligently whether there was any regular Tide, but could never observe any. Dr. *Burnet* and several other Travellers intimate, as if *Venice*, which is situate upon several Islands, were in Danger of being join'd to the Continent, by reason of the Canals which lie between those Islands and the Shore, as also between one and another, being in process of Time choak'd up, and the Sea abandoning those Shores. But Mr. *Addison*, who was curiously inquisitive into that Particular at *Venice*, tells us, they are not at all apprehensive of any such Thing. But more of this in the Description of *Venice*.

Of all the Seas that water the Coast of *Italy*, there is none abounds with such Plenty of Fish as the Gulf of *Venice*.

The chief Rivers are the *Po*, the *Piava*, the *Adige*, the *Sile*, the *Lavenza*, the *Taglimento*, and the *Brenta*, all which fall into the *Adriatick* Sea; and besides these, the Country is well water'd with Lakes, of which the principal is the *Garda*, which is about thirty Miles long, and twelve broad; and the *Isea*, fifteen Miles long and three broad.

It is as pleasant, level, and fruitful a Country, as any in *Italy*. It abounds both in good arable and [illegible] Land, with Vineyards, and Plantations of Mulberries, &c. but especially upon the Road between *Verona* and *Padua*, which is planted thick with White Mulberry-Trees in Squares, which do not only furnish great Quantities of Food for Silk-worms with their Leaves, but are so plenty, that they feed the Swine and Poultry with their Fruit; and these Trees also serve to make Stays for the Vines, which with their Bunches of

of Grapes, hang all along like Garlands from Tree to Tree; and within the several Squares enclosed by those rich and beautiful Hedges are Fields of Corn, which in these hot Countries ripens much better in the Shade of Mulberry Trees, than if it was expos'd to the open Sun; but yet it is too cold for their Oranges and Citrons in the Winter Time; for which Reason they are forced to cover them; but to the Southward of the *Apennine* Mountains there is no Occasion to use those Precautions.

In the *Venetian* Territories they have plenty of Cattle of all kinds, which are mostly either grey or white; but their Hogs are generally black, and better Meat than in *France* or *England*; which is imputed to their living much upon a delicious Root call'd Truffles, as also on the Husks of the press'd Grapes, Mulberries, &c. The Sheep of the *Paduan* afford a good Sort of Wool, little inferior to ours in *England*; they have as great Plenty of Fish and Fowl, and all Manner of Game, as any where in *Italy*; and yet Travellers complain much of their ill Diet; but as Strangers do not taste the Victuals till they are dress't, the Meanness of their Victuals may rather be imputed to their Way of Dressing, than to the Ingredients of which they are compos'd; and farther, this Report of their ill Diet; may rather proceed from the Ordinariness of the Victuals eaten upon the Road, than from that eaten at Entertainments in Gentlemen's Houses; the former doubtless toss'd up at as cheap a Rate as possible, that the Inn-Keeper, whose Dependance it is, may get the more by it; and that is the very Case in the Inns upon the Road in *England*; but the Gentry I suppose there, as well as here, having no such View of Advantage, but only of Honour and Reputation to their Country and Families, think the Charge well bestow'd, if it answers that noble and generous End; and I cannot help observing here, that when Travellers intend to give an impartial Account of a Country, they should be cautious from what Sort of Peoples Actions or Report they take this Account, for it would be as unjust and partial to decry the Character of a whole Country, for the unmannerly Behaviour of the Vulgar in it, as it would be to cry up a Country, and make it an Earthly Paradise, because the Traveller had been generously receiv'd, and handsomely accomodated by some of the most polite of the Inhabitants, and had never given himself an Opportunity of conversing with, or sounding the Temper of the Vulgar: But whatever may happen at the little Caravanseraes upon the Road, yet at the Inns and Places of Entertainment in the great Towns, every Person of what Country soever, whether *French*, *English*, or any other Nation, may have their Victuals dress't in their own Way; and therefore out of such good Materials, they can make better Victuals than the Inn-Keepers upon the Road can afford to make of the same at the common Prices of Travellers. The Husbandmen and poor People eat a coarse Sort of Bread in *Italy*, as in almost any Part of *Europe*, but People of Condition have fine Flower, and keep their own Cooks, and can have their Provisions dress't, and made up with what Ingredients and in what Forms they please.

CHAP. II.

A Description of the Provinces, and Chief Towns subject to the Venetians *in* Italy.

THESE Provinces are thirteen. 1. *Dogado*, or the Dutchy of *Venice Proper*. 2. The *Padonano*. 3. The *Polesino de Rovigo*. 4. The *Veronese*. 5. The *Brescian*. 6. The *Bergamasco*. 7. The *Cremasco*. 8. The *Vicentin*. 9. The *Trevisana*. 10. The *Feltrino*. 11. The *Bellunese*. 12. The *Cadorino*, and 13. Part of *Friuli*.

The *Dogado*, or Dutchy of *Venice*, properly so called, contains most of the Sea Coasts in the East Part of *Italy*, with the Islands, Lakes and Marshes of *Venice*; it extends from the Mouth of the River *Adige* in the South, to the Province of *Friuli* on the North; it is a narrow Tract of Land, almost fourscore Miles in length, but not extending any where above ten or twelve Miles in Breadth from the Sea Westward. The Capital is the famous City of *Venice*, of which take the following Description.

Venice described. *Venice* is situate near the Bottom or North-West Part of the *Adriatick* Sea, call'd therefore the Gulph of *Venice*, as has been before observ'd; the Ground upon which it stands, is called the *Lagunes*, a Sort of a Marshy Ground upon the Coast of *Italy*; which by the Encroachment of the Sea, was by several Channels divided into Islands, upon which the Fishermen of *Padua* built their Hutts, and by drawing their Business thither made it their Habitation; but in the fifth Century, when the *Goths* and *Vandals* overran *Italy*, several considerable Families of *Padua*, *Aquileia*, and other neighbouring People, observing the advantageous Situation of these Islands, and that no Enemy could approach them, either by Sea or Land, they retired hither with their Effects and settled here, and becoming a Community, they at last began to form this great City of *Venice*, which as to its present Situation, may be thus described.

The *Lagunes* abovemention'd are divided into Islands by small Channels, the deepest of which are too shallow for Vessels of any considerable Burthen; and those small Channels are so narrow, that they are forced to mark them out with Stakes, to direct to the deepest Water; and yet they are so apt to choak and fill up, that the Government is at a great Charge to keep those Channels open, and navigable, by Mills and other Engines. On the East Side of *Venice*, between it and the *Adriatick* Sea, there is a Bank called the *Lido*, about forty or fifty Miles in Length, which breaks the Fury of the Easterly Winds from *Venice*; but there are some small Channels through that Bank out of the *Adriatick* Sea to *Venice*, but so difficult and shallow, that if they had not Buoys and other Sea-Marks, for Direction, their own Pilots could scarce find the Way into them; and so this may impute, in a great Measure, the Strength and Safety of *Venice*. It is true the Islands are so situate before *Venice*, that if the Channels between them were navigable, yet the Islands on each

Side

Side of thoſe Channels might be eaſily put in ſuch a Poſture of Defence, as to withſtand a very ſtrong Naval Force; and they have likewiſe this Advantage of an Enemy by Land, that the *Lagunes*, upon which *Venice* ſtands, though ſurrounded with Moraſs and Water, yet it is never ſo hard frozen as to bear any Weight; ſo that in ſhort, if any Place in *Europe* can be ſaid to be ſo, *Venice* may be ſaid to be impregnable by Sea and Land, and it would be as difficult to ſtarve them as to take the Town, becauſe among the many Channels, which run between the Iſlands upon which *Venice* ſtands, the Fiſh come up in Shoals to their Doors, or up the Streets in the Canals, which paſs by their Houſes.

Deſcription of the City.

But this natural Strength of *Venice* is not more to be admired than its preſent Beauty, and the Contrivance of its Situation; and as it is in that, and other Reſpects, the Wonder of *Europe*, the Reader will excuſe me, if I intrude a little upon his Patience, to give this Place a particular Deſcription; for when ſuppos'd to be ſeen at a Diſtance, it may be ſaid to be one of the fineſt Towns in the Univerſe, riſing out of the Water; and as it is not ſurrounded with Woods or Mountains, its magnificent Palaces and lofty Towers appear in full View, on which Side ſoever you approach it; for there are not only no Trees, but there is no Wall, either to encompaſs it, or to intercept the Sight; for their being ſurrounded by Sea, is what they have to truſt to for their Defence; nor have they any Need of a Wall, any farther than as high as the waſhing of the Sea, to ſave themſelves and their Houſes from the Fury of the Waves.

It is commonly reported, that *Venice* ſtands upon ſeventy two Iſlands; but they that have been more curious and exact in the Survey of the Place, affirm, that it ſtands not upon leſs than two hundred Iſlands, if according to the common Acceptation of the Word, every Piece of Land may be call'd ſo, that is ſurrounded and ſeparated from all other Land by Canals of Water. The Figure of the Town is irregular, divided into two Parts by the Grand Canal, which runs thro' the Town in Form of an S. The Town is ſaid to be eight Miles in Circumference, if taken by the Corners and Windings of the Buildings; and as for the Number of Inhabitants, it is as much diſputed, ſome making three hundred thouſand, and others, not above an hundred and thirty thouſand.

Canals.

The Canals are ſo numerous, and the Iſlands upon which the Town ſtands are ſo ſmall, that a Perſon may go almoſt to any Part of the Town by Water as well as by Land; but then the great Number of Canals would deſtroy the Communication between one Part of the Town and another, if that Inconvenience was not remedy'd by a vaſt Number of Bridges, of which there are no leſs than four hundred and fifty, all built of Stone, by which the Communication is maintain'd between all Parts of the Town. The chief Bridge is call'd the *Rialto*; it is over the Middle of the grand Canal; it has but one Arch, which is a Segment of a Circle, about one third of the whole Circle. The Abutments of the Bridge, or the Extremities of the Ends of the Arch, are ninety Feet aſunder, and conſequently the Middle of the Arch is twenty ſix Feet high; it is built of a coarſe Sort of white Marble; it has Rails on each Side, and two Rows of Houſes along the Middle, whereby it forms three Streets, one between the two Rows of Houſes, and one on each Side, between the Houſes and the Rails; the middle Street is the broadeſt, and has Shops facing one another, as upon *London* Bridge; the two Streets between the Backſide of the Shops and the Rails being narrower, or rather like Galleries for a Proſpect upon the Water, than Streets. The reſt of the Bridges have no Rails or Battlements, and being pav'd with hard, ſlippery Stones, it makes the Paſſage over them a little dangerous.

The Piazza of St. *Mark* is the fineſt Building in *Venice*, both for Extent and Magnificence of the Buildings about it. The fine Church of St. *Mark*, fronts one Part of the Piazza, and that of St. *Gemiman*; the other, and the Procuratories, which are ſtately Fabricks, run on each Side of it. This Square is four hundred and ſixty ſix Feet in Length, and an hundred eighty three Feet in Breadth. And on the right Hand going up to St. *Mark's*, is another Square, called the *Broglio*, extending as far as the Sea; it is four hundred and ſixteen Yards long, and one hundred and thirty three Yards broad. The *Doge's* Palace ſtands on one Side of it, and the Procuratories on the other. Here the Nobility and Senators walk every Day, before they aſſemble in their reſpective Councils. Theſe Piazzas ſerve for an Exchange, where the Merchants of ſeveral Nations meet, and tranſact their Affairs. Their moſt beautiful Houſes ſtand upon the grand Canal, but none of them have Conveniencies within, bearing any Proportion to the handſome Outſide. Their Furniture is not rich, except their Pictures, which are here in greater Eſteem than in any other Place in *Europe*. Their Rooms are commonly hang'd about, or lin'd with gilt Leather, which upon extraordinary Occaſions, they hang with Tapeſtry, or other valuable Hangings. Their Bedſteads are Iron, to prevent Buggs, or other Vermin lodging in them; and the Bottoms are of Board, like the Floor of a Chamber, upon which they lay ſo many Mattrices for Softneſs, that it may be ſaid to require a Ladder rather than a Step to get upon them. The Streets are pav'd with Brick, or Free-ſtone, and kept very neat, there being no Horſes, Carriages, or ſo much as a Chair, or any thing elſe but People on Foot, that paſs along the Streets, becauſe the Canals are ſo frequent all over the City, and they have Gondolaes, or Boats, commodiouſly fitted up for carrying Paſſengers from one Place to another. This Veſſel is ſo contriv'd, that the Paſſengers ſit in the Middle of it, cover'd as in a Coach, with Glaſſes on each Side; the Gondolier or Boat-Man rows ſtanding and looking forwards, or the ſame Way he rows. It is computed that there are not leſs than ten or twelve thouſand of them, plying at *Venice*; and whereas in *London Hackney* Coaches are as common for conveying ſmall Parcels and Paſſengers by Land, as the Wherries are by Water; (and I may add, that here we have not only Hackney Coaches, but alſo Gentlemen's Coaches, Noblemens Coaches, State Coaches, &c.) theſe Conveyances in *Venice* are all perform'd upon the Water in the ſame different Degrees of Gondolaes; the State Gondolaes, or thoſe of Foreign Ambaſſadors and the like, being diſtinguiſhed for their Magnitude and Grandeur, as our Coaches of thoſe different Ranks are in *England*.

Venice contains ſeventy Pariſhes, and two hundred Palaces fit for the Entertainment of Princes. Their Water is generally bad, except what they have from the Main Continent, or what Rain Water they ſave in their Ciſterns.

Some of the chief Buildings, are the Church of St. *Mark*, ſpoke of before; and next to it the Treaſury, in which they ſhow abundance of real Treaſure; great Part of which was brought from *Conſtantinople*, when the *Venetians* were Maſters of that City; as the Crown, &c.

Cyprus, ſet thick with precious Stones: Armour of beaten Gold, enriched with Jewels of a prodigious Value, Veſſels of Agat, Chryſtal, and entire Emeralds; four Carbuncles, the leaſt weighing ſix Ounces, and a Saphire of ten Ounces, with ſo many other Curioſities, and ſo valuable, that Dr. *Burnet* ſays, he never ſaw ſo great a Treaſure amaſs'd together in any one Place beſides this at *Venice*.

THE Doge's Palace has a beautiful Front, adorned with Marble Pillars of the ſeveral Orders; but the other three Sides have but a mean Appearance. The Chamber of the College is finely painted on the Roof, and in another Room are fine Hiſtory Paintings, but the Repreſentation of Paradiſe in the great Council-Chamber exceeds them all. The Patriarchal Church of St. *peter di Caſtello* is a fine Building, but the Arſenal is a great Curioſity in it; there are Arms for an hundred thouſand Foot, and twenty five thouſand Horſe, with all proper Accoutrements, and two thouſand four hundred Pieces of Cannon; but Mr. *Addiſon* upon a narrower Inſpection, thinks the firſt Account too large, but gives the following Account of it. He ſays the Arſenal is an Iſland of three Miles in Circumference; it contains all the Stores and Proviſions, which are not actually employ'd, and here are the Docks for their Gallies and Men of War, and moſt of them full, as are alſo the Work-Houſes, for both Land and Naval Preparations, but Abundance of their Arms, are ſo old faſhion'd and clumſy, that they are now of little Uſe.

Perſons, and Habits.

THE Nobility and Gentry of *Venice* are admired for both their Perſons and Behaviour; they are proper, wiſe, and grave, any of them fit to act the Part of an Ambaſſador. The Women are well ſhaped, beautiful, and witty, and alſo of an agreeable Converſation; but they endeavour to heighten and enforce their Complexion, by waſhing and painting; and it is deem'd ſo great an Ornament to be tall, that they add as much as poſſible to their Height by the Heels of their Shoes. The Quality are commonly veil'd, when they are in the Gondola's or Boats; and thoſe of an inferior Rank, when in the Street, are cover'd with a Veil, or Scarf, having no more open than juſt to ſee their Way; but withal, they have this Advantage, that they have not much Occaſion to expoſe themſelves, it being deemed the Husband's Buſineſs there to buy in all Proviſion, and do whatever elſe is to be done without Doors. The Females are ſent to the Nunneries in their Infancy, and never come out till they are married, or take the Veil; and if they are to be married, the Match is commonly made by Friends, or Guardians, the Woman ſeldom ſeeing the Man ſhe is to have till the Hour they are to be married.

THE Uſe of Concubines is ſo generally allowed here, that the Wife generally contents herſelf to allow them, and holds up a good agreeable Correſpondence with them. And ſo tender are they of their Sons, that as ſoon as they obſerve in them any Inclination to the Females, they give ſome of their poor Neighbours ſomething, as they can agree, to let one of their Daughters be his Bed-Fellow; and this they do, as they call it, by Way of Precaution, to prevent his being married in a Hurry, and to a Diſadvantage, or running the Hazard of contracting any nauſeous Diſtemper, by cohabiting with common Women. And when a Marriage Contract, if I may ſo call it, is to be debated by the Friends of the Parties, one of the Articles is, how long they contract for; for even Marriage Contracts are not for Life there, as in *England*, but for ſome Years, and ſometimes for a Month or two, as they can agree. And a late Writer adds, that the lower Claſs of Men, that cannot afford to keep each of them a Woman for their own Uſe, do two or three of them join, and purchaſe, or contract with a Woman in common amongſt them; and there are abundance of Women, ſome ſay whole Streets of common Women, who will receive all Comers, and are ſo willing to be known, that they dreſs in the gayeſt Colours, to diſtinguiſh themſelves from the Dreſs of ſober modeſt People, and to diſtinguiſh what Buſineſs they are of, and ſtand by Dozens at the Doors, to encourage their Cuſtomers.

THE Account which Dr. *Burnet* gives of the Wives of *Venice*, ſeems inconſiſtent with the Account given by other Authors; he ſays, they are bred up in ſo much Ignorance, and converſe ſo little, that they know nothing, but the dull Superſtition of Holidays, and when, like School-Boys, they have got a Holiday, to go to Church, they improve thoſe Days to the beſt Advantage, and tarry out as long as they can form any Pretence for Abſence, and that, in few Words, they are the moſt inſipid Creatures imaginable, *&c.* perhaps Dr. *Burnet* might give himſelf the Opportunity of converſing with ſome ſuch, but I conclude, as above obſerved, that we ought not to give a partial Account of a Country by the Character of either the beſt or the worſt, choſe out to ſerve a Purpoſe, and from thence to form a Character of the whole; for we are told by other Travellers, of undoubted Credit, that the *Venetian* Women are witty, and of ſprightly Converſation; but the Doctor proceeds to tell us, that the firſt Step to Marriage among the *Venetians* is downright Conſummation, without any Preamble, or Preparative; how far the Doctor may have begun to marry, and experienced the Truth of this Aſſertion, himſelf knew beſt.

Diverſions.

THEIR chief Diverſion is at the Carnival, and in that the Entertainment of Maſquerading bears the Bell; in which, beſides thoſe Parts of it, for ſuch Diverſions as are ſcarce worth naming, they are furniſhed with Gaming Tables, *&c.* but if the married Women come there, the Huſband often watches, or ſends his faithful Servants as Spies; but if the Ladies are found out in receiving thoſe amorous Addreſſes, the injured Husbands often employ their Bravo's, or Aſſaſſins; whoſe Buſineſs it is to revenge thoſe Injuries, and procure Satisfaction, if the Life of the Offender can be call'd ſuch; but bleſſed be God, we in *England*, that are Chriſtians, look upon Marriage as an Inſtitution too ſacred to be proſtituted at any ſuch Rate. But, beſides the Maſquerades and Bull-baitings, there is one very agreeable Diverſion, and that is the Races of Gondolaes, or the Barges, rowing for Wagers; the Men improving themſelves in their own Art, in a Manner agreeable to all, and offenſive to none.

BUT there are Inconveniencies attend *Venice*, as the Want of good Cellars for their Wine, occaſions its turning ſour. They have no good Water in the City of *Venice*; but forced to fetch all their Water from the Continent, except what Rain Water they can collect and ſave. A third Inconvenience is the ſtinking of the Canals, in the Heat of Summer, and the unwholeſome Air occaſion'd thereby: Another is the Scarcity of Firing, there being no Room for Wood to grow upon thoſe Iſlands where *Venice* ſtands; they being all built upon, that it creates another Inconvenience, that they have ſcarce Room to bury their Dead; and therefore fine ſpacious Gardens are not to be expected here, nor have they ſuch

ſpacious Courts, Squares, and the like, as is accounted a very great Ornament to moſt other Cities in *Europe*.

Murano. THE Iſland *Murano*, is about two Miles to the Northward of *Venice:* It was in this Iſland, that they improved the Glaſs Manufacture to that Degree, that by Way of Eminency, it was diſtinguiſhed by the Name of *Venice* Glaſs; which while it was a Secret to all but themſelves, brought a conſiderable Profit to the Republick; but declines now the ſame, being equall'd, if not excell'd in *England*.

THE Iſland of *Malamocco*, is two Miles Eaſtward of *Venice*; it has a conſiderable Harbour upon one of the narrow Channels, that leads from the *Adriatick* Sea to *Venice*. There is a Town upon the Iſland of the ſame Name; which was formerly a Biſhop's See, but being ruin'd by Earthquakes and Inundations, the See is removed to

Chiozza. *Chiozza*, a Town which ſtands upon a little Iſland of the ſame Name; about fourteen Miles to the Southward of *Venice*.

THERE are alſo *Torcello*, *Caorle*, and *Grado*, ſmall decaying Places and yet Biſhop's Sees, which only keep up their Names in Hiſtory. *Fuſina* is a little Town on the Continent, to the Weſtward of *Venice*, and about five Miles from it: Here the *Venetians* fetch their freſh Water, that they have from the Shore.

Paduan. THE ſecond Province is the *Paduan*, or *Padonano*, to the Weſtward of the *Dogado*, and of the City of *Venice*; it lies between *Trevijan* on the North, and *Poleſin* on the South; this Country is for its Fruitfulneſs, call'd the Garden of *Italy*, and by ſome the Terreſtrial Paradiſe. The chief Town is the renowned *Padua*, which ſtands on a pleaſant Plain by the River *Brent*, about two and twenty Miles to the Weſtward of *Venice*; it is of a circular Form, and about ſeven Miles in Circumference; it is a Town of great Antiquity, ſaid to be built above four hundred Years before the building of *Rome*: It has been one of the moſt flouriſhing Cities in *Italy*, but ſo much upon the decline at preſent, that not one half of the Ground within the Walls are built upon, and the Houſes now ſtanding are but thinly inhabited; though it is ſaid that in the Time of the *Romans*, this City alone, was able to raiſe a hundred thouſand Men; but now all the Souls in the Place, of all Ages, and of both Sexes, do not amount to thirty thouſand. The Air is good, and there is great Plenty of all Neceſſaries of Life, and the remaining Ruins of ſo many ſtately Palaces, are evident Proofs of the antient Grandeur and Magnificence of the Place.

AS to the City of *Padua*, or I may rather ſay as to what is left of it, the Streets are narrow, and the Houſes high, which makes the low Rooms dark; a double Piazza runs along moſt of the Streets; there are abundance of Palaces in tolerable Repair, inhabited by half ruin'd Nobility, and the Univerſity is ſo fallen to Decay, that of ten Colleges that it conſiſted of, there is but one left, the other being appropriated to other Uſes; however, this has leſſen'd the Number of Scholars, who when numerous, made walking the Streets dangerous; but their Numbers being reduc'd, that Danger is in a great Meaſure over.

Manufacture. THE Manufacture of Cloth, formerly brought a great Revenue to the State; but ſince the *Engliſh* have found Means to furniſh them with that Commodity, their own Trade in it is very inconſiderable. The Fields about *Padua* afford the beſt of Corn, and the Hills the beſt Wine, and Oil, and great Variety of delicious Fruit; the Air and Water are equally good, and nothing makes them unhappy but a Tyrannical Government.

THERE is about five Miles South Weſt of *Padua*, a Village call'd *Albino*, famous for its Medicinal Waters, which are ſo hot, that the Natives ſcald their Hogs in them; there are not any other Towns in the *Paduan* worth a particular Deſcription.

ON the South Side of the *Paduan* lies the *Poleſin de Rovigo*; it is about fifty Miles from Eaſt to Weſt, and twenty from North to South; it is a fruitful Country for Corn and Graſs; it is water'd by the Rivers *Adige* and *Adigeſto*. The chief Towns are *Rovigo*, and *Adria*; the former of which is a well built little Town, twenty Miles to the Southward of *Padua*; and the other, *viz. Adria*, is twelve Miles Eaſt of *Rovigo*, and as many Weſt of the *Adriatick* Sea, which it is ſaid, takes its Name from this Town of *Adria*, which was once a conſiderable City, and a *Tuſcan* Colony, but is now only a poor fiſhing Village.

THE *Veroneſe* lies to the Weſtward of the *Paduan*, and is bounded by the *Mantuan* on the South; it is well water'd by the River *Adige*, and the Lake *de Garda*, which furniſh it with excellent Fiſh; and the Country abounds with Corn, Wine, Oil, Silk, Wool, and Cattle; here is alſo good Marble taken up. The chief Town is *Verona*. *Veroneſe.*

Verona is pleaſantly ſituate on the River *Adige*, which runs through the Town; it is fifty Miles to the Weſtward of *Padua*, and twenty five to the Northward of *Mantua*; it is about ſix Miles in Circumference within the Walls, beſides large Suburbs. The Communication between both Parts of the Town, is maintain'd by four Stone Bridges over the *Adige*; one of which is much admired for its Beauty and Workmanſhip. There are ſeveral noble Palaces, publick Buildings, and Antiquities of Value; but the Houſes are generally low, and the Streets not well pav'd or clean, nor is the Town rich, or populous, or of any great Trade. The Amphitheatre is the moſt curious Piece of Antiquity, the Seats being ſtill entire; but the high Walls and Corriders that went round it, are in a ruinous Condition, and the Area is quite fill'd up to the lower Seat, which was formerly deep enough to let the Spectators ſtand in Safety to ſee the Combats of the Gladiators and wild Beaſts. There are in all, forty four Benches; in the higheſt Round of which, Mr. *Miſſon* counted five hundred and thirty of his Paces, and in the loweſt two hundred and fifty; it would in all have held twenty four thouſand Spectators. The longeſt Diameter of the Area or *Arena* (as they call it) is two hundred thirty three *French* Feet, and the ſhorteſt, above an hundred and thirty ſix Feet; every Step is near a Foot and an half high, and twenty ſix Inches broad. Dr. *Brown* obſerves, that when this Work was entire, the Outſide was as ſplendid as the Inſide, being all of Marble, an hundred and twenty Feet high, and conſiſted of three Rows of Pillars and Arches one above another, which open'd into ſpacious Walks and Porticoes within quite round the Building; and above the three Rows of Arches, there was a handſome Wall with Windows over each Arch, and Pilaſters, over every Pillar beneath; each Row conſiſted of ſeventy two Arches and as many Pillars of a great Height, the upper Row adorn'd with Statues. *Verona.* *Amphitheatre.*

I SHALL conclude this Account of *Verona*, with only obſerving theſe Pieces of Antiquity more, *viz.* the Remains of a Triumphal Arch, which was erected in Honour of *Marius*, on his Victory over the *Cimbri*, in the Territories of *Verona*; and the Ruins of a magnificent Temple dedicated

to

to *Jupiter*; but the moſt valuable of them is, the Cabinet of Count *Moſcardo*, conſiſting of a Gallery and ſix other Rooms, all fill'd with Antiquities, and the greateſt Curioſities in Art and Nature, as Pagan Idols, with the Inſtruments and Utenſils for their Sacrifices; Sepulchral Urns, Buſts, Lamps, Inſcriptions, the Barks of ſeveral Trees which the Antients uſed to write upon before Paper was invented. There are two Trees of black Coral, Pearls, Amethyſts, Saphyres, and a great Variety of other precious Stones; alſo Foſſils, Plants, Fruits, Minerals, and monſtrous Productions, with innumerable Medals and antient Coins, and a vaſt Collection of the fineſt Paintings by the beſt Hands.

When the *Roman* Empire declin'd, *Verona* underwent the common Fate of other Cities in *Italy*; it was taken by the *Goths* and *Lombards*, and afterwards by the Emperors of the Weſt. The *Venetians* took it about the Year 1403. The *Imperialiſts* took it from them in the Year 1509. but the *Venetians* re-took it in the Year 1516, and have kept it ever ſince. *Verona* was famous for being the Birth-place of the Poet *Catullus*, *Pliny* the Hiſtorian, and *Pliny* the Naturaliſt; alſo of *Cornelius Nepos*, and *Vitruvius* the famous Architect.

Lake of Garda. There is alſo a ſmall City call'd *Garda*, but not noted for any Thing except its Situation upon the Coaſt of the great Lake *Garda*, and giving Name to it. This Lake is about thirty Miles in Length, but narrow, eſpecially towards the North End; it is as rough as the Sea itſelf when a hard Gale of Wind happens, which is very frequent here, occaſion'd by the Guſts that come off from the neighbouring Mountains.

Breſcian. The next Province is the *Breſcian*; it lies to the Weſtward of the *Veroneſe* and adjoining to it, between the Country of the *Griſons* on the North, and the *Cremoneſe* on the South; it abounds in Corn, Wine, and Oil, but is remarkable for its Iron-Mines and Works, and for its Plantations of Flax, and its Linnen-Manufacture. It extends to the Side of the *Alps*, and therefore is not ſo level as the reſt of *Lombardy*.

The City of *Breſcia* or *Brixia* ſtands upon the two Rivers, *Mela* and *Garzo*; and although it lies between the Channels of the two Rivers, yet the Branches of them run through the Streets of the Town. It is about thirty Miles to the Weſtward of *Verona*, and thirty five North Weſt of *Mantua*. It is a populous trading Town about three Miles in Circumference, and has a Citadel built upon a Rock to defend it. Their Trade conſiſts moſtly in Linnen, Cheeſe, and Iron-work, particularly Swords and Fire-Arms; the making of which employs abundance of Hands, and they are reckon'd the beſt Armourers in *Italy*. The Women have more Liberty here than in ſome other Parts of *Italy*, for they appear publickly in the Streets and Shops. The People here are better uſed by the *Venetians* than the reſt of the Subjects are, perhaps to prevent their revolting to the *Milaneſe*, of which they were once a Part, and are now a frontier Province.

The *Iſeo* is ſituate on the Eaſt Bank of a Lake of the ſame Name, through which the River *Oglio* runs. The Lake is about fifteen Miles long, and three broad. There are other Towns, but none worth a particular Deſcription.

The *Bergamaſco* lies adjoining on the Weſt of the *Breſcian*, between the *Griſons* on the North, and the *Milaneſe* on the South; it is a rocky Country in general, but lying to the Southward of the *Alps* in a warm Climate, it is tolerably fruitful where the Soil will admit of it. The chief Town is,

Bergamo, is a large City ſituated on a Hill, and ſtrongly defended by a Caſtle. It is thirty Miles to the Weſtward of *Breſcia*, and as many to the Northward of *Milan*. It is a populous Town; and a Place of good Trade; the Merchants of *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and *Italy*, reſorting thither with their Goods at the Annual Fair. The Natives are the moſt clowniſh, and their Dialect the worſt of any in the *Venetian* Dominions; but if they are poliſh'd with good Education, they are as bright as their Neighbours. *Bergamo.*

As to the Government of this Place, it was a Republick, till the Year 1300, about which Time ſome of their leading Men aſſum'd the Government, and it became a Monarchy. In the Year 1419 it was taken by the Duke of *Milan*, and in the Year 1447 they put themſelves under the Protection of the *Venetians*, who kept Poſſeſſion of this Town and Province ever ſince, except about ſeven Years in the Time of *Lewis* XII. that the *French* had it in their Hands. It is obſerv'd, that here, as in other Mountainous Places near the *Alps*, the Natives are much afflicted with Swellings in their Throats, occaſion'd by drinking the Snow-water that deſcends from the Mountains.

Cremaſco joins upon the South Frontiers of the *Breſcian*; it is a well water'd fruitful Country. The chief, and indeed the only Town of Note, is *Crema*, on the River *Serio*, about twenty Miles South Weſt of *Breſcia*, and as much North Weſt of *Cremona*. It is a populous, well built Town, and a Biſhop's See, Suffragan to *Bologna*. The principal Manufacture is that of fine Linnen. *Cremaſco.*

The *Vicentin* is contiguous to the *Paduan*, on the North Eaſt Side of it; and the Soil, Climate, and Product, is much the ſame. The chief Town of this Province is, *Vicentin.*

Vicenza ſtands at the Confluence of ſeveral ſmall Rivers, of which, the chief are the *Bacchiglione*, and the *Rerone*; it is about twenty Miles North Weſt of *Padua*. It is a populous, trading City, about four Miles in Circumference; it contains fifteen Pariſhes. The Buildings are beautiful, and the Squares and Piazzas ſpacious. There is a Theatre in Imitation of the *Roman* Theatres, built by the famous *Palladio*, who alſo built a Triumphal Arch. There is alſo a magnificent Town-Hall, and alſo the Ruins of an antient Theatre, and ſome other eminent Pieces of Antiquity, which are ſufficient Proofs of its antient Grandeur. This Town ſurrender'd to the *Venetians* without any Attempt of a Conqueſt, and for that Reaſon enjoys greater Privileges than many other Cities. The chief Manufacture of this Place is Silk. It is a Biſhop's See, Suffragan to *Aquileia*.

The Marquiſate of *Treviſana* lies on the North Side of the *Paduan*. The chief Town is, *Treviſana.*

Treviſo or *Trevigno*; it ſtands near the River's Side, fifteen Miles North Weſt of *Venice*. It is a well built populous Place, and was the Reſidence of the Marquiſes of *Lombardy*, and is from thence call'd a Marquiſate.

There are alſo other ſmall Provinces, as the *Feltrin*, the *Belluneſe*, the *Cadorin*, &c. but they are ſo inconſiderable that they are not worth a particular Deſcription. I ſhall conclude this Chapter with,

The Province of *Friuli*; it lies between the *Alps* on the North, and the Gulf of *Venice* on the South, and between *Carniola*, a Province of *Germany* on the Eaſt, and another Part of the *Alps* upon the Weſt. What Towns are moſt remarkable are, *Friuli.*

1. *Aquileia*, ſituate on a ſmall River which runs into the Gulf of *Trieſte*, in the North Part of the *Adria-*

Adriatick Sea, about fifty Miles North East of *Venice*; it was formerly a City of great Strength and Fame. It was made the Metropolis of *Italy* by the Western Emperors, but it is now dwindled to a poor Village, inhabited only by Fishermen. It is under the Dominions of the House of *Austria*.

2. *Palma Nova* is a large fortify'd Town, twelve Miles North West of *Aquileia*; it was built by the *Venetians* as a Frontier against *Germany* about the Year 1594. and is yet in the Hands of the *Venetians*.

3. *Udina* is a large and populous Town, four Miles in Circumference, sixteen Miles to the Northward of *Palma Nova*, and subject to the *Venetians*.

4. *Cividad de Friuli* is about ten Miles North of *Palma Nova*, subject to the *Venetians*.

5. *Pontafell* is about twenty Miles North West of *Cividad de Fruili*, a frontier Town, between the Emperor and the *Venetians*, but now subject to the latter.

CHAP. III.

Of the Dominions subject to the Venetians *in* Istria, Morlachia, *and* Dalmatia; *with some Account of the* Venetian *Government*, &c.

Istria. *ISTRIA* is a Sort of a Peninsula, lying on the East, or North East Side of the *Adriatick* Sea; it is bounded by *Carmola*, a Province in the South Part of *Germany* on the North, and on all the other three Sides by the Sea or Gulf of *Venice*; it is about sixty Miles in Length, and fifty in Breadth. It is a woody, mountainous Country, and as such, it is of Value to the *Venetians* upon the Account of the Stone and Timber which they bring from hence, for Timber is very scarce at *Venice*. Chief Towns are,

1. *Capo D'Istria*, situate on a small Island in the Gulf of *Trieste*, but it has a Communication with the Continent by a Bridge for that Purpose. It is about ten or twelve Miles South East of *Trieste*; it is a Bishop's See, Suffragan of *Aquileia*, and is the Seat of the *Venetian* Governor. This is the antient *Egida*, and by some, *Justinopolis*, having been built by the Emperor *Justin*.

2. *Cita Nova*, the antient *Æmonia*; it stands at the Mouth of the River *Quatto*, about twenty Miles South East of *Capo D'Istria*; it is but a poor Place, and thinly inhabited, and yet it is a Harbour and a Bishop's See.

3. *Parenzo* is six Miles to the Southward of *Cita Nova*; but though it hath a good Harbour, it is but thinly inhabited.

4. *Pola*, or the antient *Pata*, almost upon the Southermost Point of *Stiria*; it is a strong Town, and has a good Harbour.

Trieste and *St. Veits* were treated of in the Description of their respective Provinces of *Carinthia* and *Carniola*. *See* Germany.

Morlachia. *MORLACHIA* lies on the East Shore of the Gulf of *Venice*, between *Istria* and *Dalmatia*; it is a Part of the antient *Liburnia*. The *Turks* claim'd it as a Dependant on *Hungary*, but the Inhabitants put themselves under the Emperor's Protection, and so it remains at present, only some Towns on the Coast are subject to the *Venetians*. The chief whereof are *Zeny* and *Novigrad*.

Zeny or *Segna*, is situate on the Sea-Coast, about forty Miles South East of *St. Veit*; it is a pretty Town, with a Castle and Harbour, and is a Bishop's See, subject to the Archbishop of *Spalatto*.

Novigrad stands near a Bay of the Sea, about sixty Miles South East of *Segna*; but Authors and Travellers have not thought it worth any farther Description.

Dalmatia. *DALMATIA* is the Eastern Part of the antient *Illyricum*; it stretches along the Coast of the *Adriatick* Sea near two hundred Miles in Length, and is about thirty in Breadth. It is bounded on the North by *Bosnia* and *Servia*, and on the East by *Albania*; by the Gulf of *Venice* on the South West, and by *Morlachia* on the North West. The Sea Coast belongs to the *Venetians* (except those in the Territories of *Ragusa*) and the Inland Country to the *Turks*. The *Venetian Dalmatia* may be divided into Continent and Islands. On the Continent, the chief Towns are,

Zara, the antient *Jadera*; it is on the East Coast of the *Adriatick* Sea, near two hundred Miles South East of *Venice*. It was formerly the Capital of *Liburnia*, a Province of *Illyricum*; the *Venetians* purchas'd it and *Novigrad*, of *Ladislaus* King of *Hungary*, about the Year 1409, and it is now the Capital of the *Venetian Dalmatia*. It is an Archbishop's See. It is an Island, being quite separated from the Land, but yet so near the Continent, that it is join'd to it by a Bridge; and there is a Castle for its Defence.

Nona or *Ænona*, is about eighteen Miles North West of *Zara*, upon a Promontory that forms a Peninsula. It is a fortify'd Town.

Scardone is thirty five Miles South East of *Zara*, at the Mouth of the River *Kirka*; it is defended by a Castle and other Fortifications, but has been frequently taken and re-taken alternately by the *Venetians* and *Turks*.

Sebenica is a Fortress upon the same Coast, about forty Miles South East of *Zara*; the Castle stands on a steep Rock near the Mouth of the River *Kirka*.

Trau, the antient *Tragurium*, a little Town and Harbour, about thirty Miles South East of *Sebenico*. It is encompass'd by the Sea, and join'd to the Continent by the Bridge.

Spalatto is upon the same Coast, about sixty Miles South East of *Zara*, and ten to the Eastward of *Trau*; it is a strong and populous Town, one of the best Harbours on the Coast, and an Archbishop's See. The Emperor *Diocletian* retir'd hither when he was driven from his Throne.

Those hitherto mention'd in *Dalmatia*, are Bishop's Sees, as are *Catara* and *Badua*; but not farther worth a Description any more than those Towns in *Dalmatia* belonging to the *Turks*, and consequently now in Ruins as to their Trade or Grandeur.

Of the Venetian *Islands.*

CHERSO lies in the Gulf between *Istria* and *Croatia*, ten Miles to the Southward of *St. Veit*; it is a large Island of an hundred and twenty Miles in Circumference, but nothing else in it worth a Description, any more than in the Islands of *Osera*, *Veglia*, *Pago*, *Arbe*, *Gressa*, *Lezina*, *Curzola*, &c. though mostly dignify'd with the empty Name of being a Bishop's See.

But

But the *Venetian* Islands in the *Ionian* Sea, without, and to the Southward of the *Adriatick*, are more worth Notice, as

Corfu. *Corfu*, the antient *Corcyra*; it lies on the West Coast of *Epirus*, and about East of the Gulf of *Taranto* in *Italy*. It is about fifty Miles long, and twelve broad. It is a populous Island, containing two Cities, and near a hundred Villages, and produces Oil, Honey, Wax, Oranges, Lemons, and a great Variety of other Fruits. The chief Towns or Cities above-mention'd are *Corfu*, and *Cassiope*, of which the former lies about the Middle of the East Side of the Island, and is strongly fortified, and a good Harbour. *Cassiope* is also on the same Side of the Island fifteen Miles North-West of *Corfu*. It is a little trading Town, with a good Harbour, about six Miles from the main Continent of *Epirus*.

Maura. The Island of St. *Maura*, the antient *Leucadia*, is almost of a circular Figure, and lies about forty five Miles South East of *Corfu*. It lies upon the Coast of *Achaia*, and separated from it by a Channel, not above half a League broad. It is near a circular Form, and about twenty Miles over; the chief Town of the same Name, stands on the North-East Part of the Island.

Cephalonia. *Cephalonia* is about seven or eight Miles to the Southward of St. *Maura*. It lies off of the Gulf of *Lepanto*, at about twenty Miles Distance. It is about fifty Miles in Length, and twenty five in Breadth. It produces Wine, Oil, Silk, Wool, Honey, and Wax, which the Natives send Abroad, and make a considerable Trade of. The chief Town is of the same Name, in a Bay, on the West Side of the Island.

Zant. The Island of *Zant*, the antient *Zacynthus*, or by some *Illyra*, is about twelve Miles to the Southward of *Cephalonia* and as much to the Westward of the Continent of the *Morea*. It is twenty four Miles in Length, and twelve in Breadth. The most considerable Commodity that this Island affords, is their small Grapes, like our white or green Currants, which when cured and dried, as Raisins are they are frequently mix'd with them in *England* under the general Name of Fruit, but the Original of the Name of what we now call Currants, is Corinths, from the Name of *Corinth* in the *Morea*, the Place where these sort of Grapes were first thus cured, though now few of these sort of Grapes are cultivated any where in the Neighbourhood of *Corinth*; but that sort of Product and Trade increases in this Island, insomuch that *France*, *England*, and a great many other Countries in *Europe*, are supplied with Currants from *Zant*, which amounts to a considerable Trade to that Island. The chief Town is *Zant*. It stands on the East Side of the Island. It is fortified and defended by a Castle, and is of the last Importance to the *Venetians*. There are other Islands, but none of such Consequence as the four mention'd.

Morea. The *Morea* is a Peninsula, and formerly belong'd to the *Venetians*, but was taken from them in the Year 1715. by the *Turks*; and notwithstanding all the Attempts of the *Venetians* to make Reprisals, (as they did indeed, by taking the Towns of *Prevesa* and *Vonima*) they are far short of having got an Equivalent for the Loss of that fine Country the *Morea*.

Of the Government of VENICE.

Before the Islands upon which *Venice* now stands were cultivated and improved, to bear such a famous and populous City as *Venice* now is, they were only inhabited by Fishermen, as has been observ'd before, and then they were under the Jurisdiction of *Padua*, and had a Governor and other Officers from thence; but when the *Goths* and others over-run *Italy*, the Inhabitants fled with their Effects to these Islands, and laid the Foundation of this now great and flourishing City of *Venice*. They were first under the Government of the Consuls or Magistrates of *Padua*, to whom the Soil belong'd; but when by virtue of this Retirement their Wealth increas'd in proportion to their Security, great Numbers of Refugees from all Parts of *Italy* flock'd in to them, whereupon the *Paduans* demanded a Deputy or Representative from every Island, wherein they lodg'd the legislative Power of that Island; but this did not hold long, for one of the most powerful and popular Men of the Islands, or Republick, procur'd the sovereign Power to be conferr'd on him, with the Title of Duke or Doge of *Venice*, as the Title now stands, and has done since that Time; and the Power he assum'd was such, that they who were Representatives, or as it were, Members of Parliament, were divested of all legislative Power, and were only look'd upon as being of his Council; he took or rejected their Advice, as he thought fit, reserving to himself the Privilege of being total and ultimate Lawgiver to the Republick.

But in Process of Time the leading Men of the Republick thinking themselves impos'd upon by the arbitrary Power of the Doge, they endeavour'd to retrieve themselves from this absolute Power of Government, and at last procur'd the sovereign Power to be lodg'd in the most substantial Citizens, and the Government became a Commonwealth, the Doge then retaining no more than the meer Shadow of his antient Authority; and accordingly about the Year 1325. the great Council pass'd an Act for reducing their Number, and vesting the sovereign Power in certain select Families, and their Male Issue, who upon a sufficient Proof of Legitimacy were after the Age of five and twenty introduc'd into this Assembly without any previous Election; and this Body of Men have since their Establishment assum'd the Title of *Noble Venetians*; and their Dignity is now look'd upon as so great, that they think themselves equal, if not above the Electors of the Empire.

The Government consists, 1. of the Doge, or Great Duke. 2. The great Council. 3. The Signory. 4. The Senate. 5. The Council of *Savi*. 6. The Council of the College.

The Doge represents a Monarch in Habit and State, having a purple Robe, and a Cap in the Form of a Mitre, which he never takes off but when the Host is elevated. He cannot go out of the City without leave of the Senate, or if he will go, his Authority ceases as soon as ever his Foot is set upon the Continent, and he is then accounted no more than a *Noble Venetian*; but otherwise he holds his Place for Life, except he commits some Offence against the State, or is superannuated. He presides in the great Council, and other Courts, and sees that the Magistrates perform their Duty, or summons them before the College in case of Neglect.

But besides the Nobility, there are three orders of Knighthood; 1. The Knights of the Golden Star. 2. The Knights of St. *Mark*, a Dignity conferr'd upon those who by Sea or Land have behav'd well, and they have a thousand Ducats a Year annex'd to their Titles; and, 3. The Doge's Knights; they are created by the Doge himself, and it is a Dignity bestow'd upon foreign Officers in their Service.

As to their ecclesiastical Government, the Patriarchs of *Aquileia* and *Venice* share it between

them. The Pope is look'd upon at *Venice* as little more than a temporal Prince, and the Patriarch of *Rome* as a Cypher. The Patriarch of *Venice* is always a *Noble Venetian*, nominated by the State, and confirm'd by the Pope.

Italy is famous for Musick, both vocal and instrumental, as well in their Churches as elsewhere. Vocal Musick is commonly perform'd by Eunuchs, which they castrate in their Youth for that Purpose; for they think a good Voice is a Portion for a Son, because he may get his Bread by singing; and yet even those castrated Persons, when grown up, are as readily admitted into Priests Orders as others; and though their Order is like that of the *Jews*, to have a perfect Man to administer in holy Things, yet it is thought sufficient if he can any way produce Testimonials of his being of the male Sex; and for that Reason the Parents save the Members after Separation, and dry them; and if the Person to whom they belong'd can but produce them, though dry'd in his Pocket, that is sufficient to entitle him, as a Man, to be qualified for that great Office, to be one of their Priests.

Revenue. THE public Revenue of the State, or Republick of *Venice*, is accounted at twelve hundred thousand Pound Sterling a Year, and is liable to be increas'd in Time of War, or any Exigency, when the Government may require it. Their Forces by Sea and Land are computed at twenty four thousand; but they can upon occasion advance very much above that Number. There are none allow'd to be Generalissimo at Sea, but *Noble Venetians*, and they have the Command of the Islands, Ports, and other maritime Places, as well as of the Fleet.

THERE is one particular Officer, call'd the General of the Gulf, that commands the Galleasses and Gallies, and clears the Sea of Pirates, and takes care that the Customs be duly paid, *&c.*

Trade. THE Trade of *Venice* consisted formerly, and even to this Day, in transporting the Merchandize of *Asia* from *Alexandria*, and other Parts of *Turky*, to the several Kingdoms of *Europe*; but that Trade has declin'd very much since the Navigation about the *Cape of Good Hope* was found out, and practis'd. The Manufactures rais'd from their own Produce furnish them with Merchandize to traffick with other Countries; as their raw and wrought Silks of various kinds, Brocades, Gold and Silver Stuffs, Velvets, Damasks, Wine, Oil, Fruit, chiefly Currants, or Corinths, almost peculiar to the Island of *Zant*, as above observ'd; also Allum, Sulphur, *Venetian* Steel, Iron, Copper, woollen Cloth, Glass, Marble, Soap, Rice, Essences, Turpentine, Creme-Tartar, Snuff, and many other valuable, though small Articles. They have used to furnish the *Germans* with their Goods imported from *Turky*; but if the Emperor succeeds in his Project of establishing a Trade in the Gulf of *Venice*, this Trade will be no Branch of Trade to the *Venetians*.

I shall conclude this Chapter, with an Account of the Ceremony of the Doge's espousing the Sea every Year upon *Ascension-Day*, when he is attended by three or four hundred of the Nobility aboard of a *Bucentaur*, which is a noble Galleass, follow'd by a vast Number of Gallies, Barges, and Gondolaes, magnificently adorn'd, with Trumpets, and other Musick. The Captain of the *Bucentaur* always takes an Oath, that he will bring the Vessel back safe and sound, in spite of Wind, Waves, and Tempest; and indeed he does not much expose himself; for if it be never so calm, he never goes above a Mile or two to Sea; and if the Wind blows but very little, the Ceremony is deferr'd; but if the Weather will permit, and they come to a proper Place, the Doge receives a Gold Ring from the Master of the Ceremonies, which he throws into the Sea, over the Stern, saying, *We espouse thee O Sea, as a Mark of our true and perpetual Dominion over thee.* This Ceremony was first begun about the Year 1174. when Pope *Alexander* III. conferr'd the Dominion of the *Adriatick* Sea upon the Republick, and instituted this annual Ceremony of espousing it by a Ring.

A DE-

A DESCRIPTION OF THE Pope's DOMINIONS IN *ITALY.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation and Extent of the Pope's *Dominions, and of its ſeveral Diviſions or Provinces; with a particular Deſcription of the City of* Rome.

THE Dominions of the *Pope*, are bounded on the North by the Territories of *Venice*; and on the North Eaſt, by the Gulf of *Venice*, or the *Adriatick* Sea; by the Kingdom of *Naples* on the South Eaſt, and by the *Tuſcan* Sea on the South Weſt; and by the Dutchy of *Tuſcany* on the North Weſt. It is about two hundred and forty Miles from the North Weſt to the South Eaſt; and its general Breadth, is an hundred and forty Miles. The *Pope*'s Dominions are uſually divided into ſeven Provinces. 1. The *Campania* of *Rome*. 2. The Patrimony of St. *Peter*. 3. The Province of *Sabina*. 4. *Umbria*, or the Dutchy of *Spoletta*. 5. The Marquiſate of *Ancona*. 6. The Dutchy of *Urbino*. And, 7. *Romania*, comprehending *Romania Proper*, the *Bologneſe*, and the Dutchy of *Ferrara*.

THE *Campania* of *Rome* is about ſeventy Miles in Length from the North Weſt to the South Eaſt, and forty five in Breadth, from the North Eaſt to the South Weſt; on which Side it is bounded by the *Tuſcan* Sea, and lies between *Tuſcany* on the North Weſt, and *Naples* on the South Eaſt. Of the many conſiderable Places, the chief is the Capital City of *Rome*.

The City of Rome.

AS to the Original of the City of *Rome*, as well as the Time of its firſt Foundation, Authors differ ſo much, and ſo many Fables are entertain'd about both, that the Certainty is loſt, and the Diſputes not worth repeating; however, this we are ſure of, that it is ſituated upon the River *Tiber*, about ſixteen Miles from the *Tuſcan* Sea, in the forty ſecond Degree of North Latitude, and about the thirteenth Degree of Longitude, Eaſt from *London*. It ſtood firſt upon ſeven Hills or Mounts; but it was in Time ſo enlarged, that it extended itſelf over thirteen Hills, but of an eaſy Aſcent. It was of a ſquare Figure, but by degrees ſpread itſelf into an irregular Form; the Walls, including all the Turnings and Windings, were about twelve Miles in Circumference; and ſome account, that if all the Skirts and Irregularities of the Suburbs were taken in, it was not leſs than fifty Miles about; and indeed it would ſeem to require ſuch a large Extent to contain the Number of Inhabitants which ſome have computed to be in it. But as *Rome*, as well as the Capitals of *Greece* and other Countries, have been deſcribed by Hiſtorians, but eſpecially by Poets, in ſuch a romantick and hyperbolical Manner, I ſhall give a Deſcription of *Rome* as it now ſtands.

NOTWITHSTANDING what has been ſaid as to the Circumference of the City within the Walls, it is obſerv'd, that not above one third of the Ground ſo wall'd in is built upon; the reſt being taken up with Vineyards, Gardens, and the like; and what is built upon, is but thinly inhabited. The Natives at this Time are computed at an hundred and twenty thouſand. The chief Part of the Town ſtands on the Eaſt Side of the *Tiber*, but there is about a ſixth Part of the City ſtands on the Weſt, or North Weſt Side of the *Tiber*, and that is call'd the *Traſtevere*. The Courſe of the River where it runs through the Town is nearly North and South. There are five Bridges over the River, twenty Gates in the Walls, and three hundred Towers ſtill remaining.

IT is computed that the preſent *Rome* ſtands fourteen or fifteen Feet higher than the old *Rome*, as being built upon its Ruins. The Town is generally well built, the Streets ſtraight, and adorn'd with abundance of beautiful Palaces, Monaſteries, and Churches, of which laſt, there not leſs than three hundred. The Triumphal Arches, Pillars, Obeliſks, Statues, and Fountains, are of ſuch excellent Workmanſhip, that they add a great Beauty to the whole. Dr. *Burnet* obſerves, that as he enter'd *Rome* by the Gate *del Populo*, he obſerv'd on each Hand a long Viſ-

to

to, or continued Street of Houſes. But here it is to be obſerv'd, that although their publick Buildings be ſumptuous and magnificent, yet their common Buildings are all very poor and ordinary to be in ſo famous a Place.

Rome is well ſupply'd with Proviſions of the beſt, as Veal, and Beef, which is not inferiour to ours in *England*, except the Fleſh of the Buffalo, and that is eat only by poor People and *Jews*, and they hunt or bait it as we do our Bulls before they kill it. Their Pork is excellent, but their Mutton is tough and dry. Their Domeſtick Fowls are plenty, and as good as Turkeys, Hens, Capons, Pidgeons, *&c.* only Geeſe, are ſcarce, but that Defect is ſupply'd with Plenty of the beſt of Wild-fowl and cheap, as Partridges, Woodcocks, Snipes, and alſo all Manner of ſmall Birds; they alſo eat Kites, Buzzards, and ſeveral other Fowls that are not eat in *England*. They have tolerable Plenty of both Sea and River-fiſh, but not ſo cheap as Fleſh. Their Markets afford wild Boar and other Veniſon, but their Deer is much inferior to it. Their Bread is good and cheap, and light, though they uſe no Barm or Yeſt. They have as great Variety of good Wines here as at any Place in *Italy*; but the *Albano* Wine is the moſt uſually drank, and is ſo ſtrong, that it will bear a Mixture of half Water for ordinary drinking. They have abundance of good Wall-fruit, and which is one great Happineſs, they are ſupply'd with Plenty of good Water by their Aqueducts, though ſome of them bring the Water from Springs that riſe thirty or forty Miles from *Rome*; but more of that when we ſpeak of their Aqueducts.

Rome affords ſuch an agreeable Diverſity of Objects and Curioſities, as Theatres, Amphitheatres, Pagan Temples, Triumphal Arches, *&c.* that a complete Deſcription of *Rome* in all its Varieties and Curioſities, would take up ſo large a Space in this our Univerſal Hiſtory of the World, that we cannot expatiate upon them all as to every minute Circumſtance of their Deſcription; but however to make this *A Complete Hiſtory of the World* according to its Title, I ſhall give a brief Deſcription of every Thing material, and yet avoid Prolixity in one to make room for what is neceſſary in the reſt: And firſt, I ſhall begin with,

Theatres. THE Theatres and Amphitheatres that were in the antient *Rome*, of which only the Ruins are now to be ſeen; and (not to mention thoſe entirely in Ruins, of which only the Rubbiſh now remains, and that in ſuch Confuſion, that hardly any Conjecture can be made as to the Shape of them) the *Coliſeo* or Amphitheatre of *Titus* is moſt worth Obſervation: It appears to have been of a round Form without, and an oval within, and was capable of holding eighty five thouſand Perſons. This was formerly a famous Building, not only for its Beauty, but for the Martyrdom of many thouſand *Chriſtians*, who in Times of Perſecution, inſtead of being immediately executed, were reſerved to fight the wild Beaſts in the Amphitheatre to divert the Spectators; where if they overcame, they ſav'd their Lives, or rather poſtpon'd their Death for ſome Time; but if they were overcome they dy'd Victims to their perſecuting Enemies; but ſometimes upon overcoming, they had a free Pardon. Probably the ſame Laws and Cuſtoms might be exercis'd at *Epheſus*, to which St. *Paul* may allude when he ſays 1 *Cor.* xv. 32. *If after the Manner of Men I have fought with Beaſts at* Epheſus *&c.*

Pagan Temples *Pagan* Temples are 1. The *Pantheon*, or Temple of all the Gods, ſo called by thoſe, who are juſtly ſtil'd *Propbane Poets*. It is now dedicated to the Virgin *Mary* and *All Saints*, and is of a circular Form, an hundred and forty four Feet in Height, and as many in Breadth. The vaulted Roof is in the Form of a Cupola, and receives all its Light from a Hole in the Top of about nine Feet Diameter. Its Portico has ſixteen ſmall Pillars of ſpotted or ſpeckled Marble, called *Oriental Granite*, each Pillar being but one Stone; they are all of the *Corinthian* Order, about fifteen *Engliſh* Feet in Circumference. The Door is forty Feet high, and about twenty five broad. This Temple was cover'd with Copper, till Pope *Urban* VIII. took it away to make the four wreath'd Pillars, which ſupport the Canopy of the high Altar in St. *Peter*'s Church; [*He did not rob* Peter *to pay* Paul, *but he robb'd the Virgin* Mary *and all Saints to ſupply* Peter.] and ſo many, or ſo heavy, were the Nails which faſtned the Copper-plates of the Portico, that of them he caſt a great Cannon of two thouſand eight hundred Weight, which ſtill remains in the Caſtle of *St. Angelo* with this Inſcription; *Ex Clavis trabalibus Porticus Agrippæ.* It is obſervable, that this Temple had formerly an Aſcent to it of ſeven Steps, and now there is a Deſcent to it of eleven Steps; from whence it may be juſtly obſerv'd, that *Old Rome* is buried in the Rubbiſh, and that *New Rome* is built upon Ground higher than the *Old* by eleven Steps, or elſe we muſt conclude that this Temple, Foundation and all, is ſunk ſo much.

THERE are alſo other Temples, or rather the Ruins of them, and the Ground where they ſtood; as 2. the Temple of Fortune; 3. the Temple of the Sun, or of *Veſta*; 4. the Temple of *Diana*; 5. the Temple of *Hercules*; 6. the Temple of *Janus*; 7. the Temple of Concord; 8. the Temple of *Saturn*; 9. the Temple of *Antonine* and *Fauſtina*; 10. the Temple of *Romulus* and *Remus*; 11. the Temple of the Sun and Moon (now *New St. Mary's*;) 12. the Temple of Peace, in which was laid up the rich Spoils found in the *Jews* Temple at the Taking of *Jeruſalem*; 13. the Temple of *Jupiter Stator*; but of it there remains only three Marble Pillars; 14. the Temple of *Jupiter Tonans*, or the Thunderer; but of this remains only three Pillars, and thoſe half buried in the Ruins; 15. the Temple of *Faunus* (now a Chriſtian Church;) 16. the Temple of *Hercules Gallaicus*; 17. the Temple of *Bacchus*; and laſtly, another Temple of *Romulus* and *Remus*, dedicated to St. *Theodore*, with a Deſcent of ſeveral Steps, as into the *Pantheon*; but theſe Temples I only name firſt becauſe they are originally Pagan Temples, and ſecondly, there is little appears at this Day but the Remains or Ruins of them.

THE Triumphal Arches ſtill remaining are five, *viz.* 1. that of *Septimus Severus*; 2. that of *Conſtantine the Great*; 3. that in the *Via Sacra*, erected to the Honour of *Veſpaſian* and his Son *Titus*; 4. that of *Galienus*; and 5. another to the Honour of *Septimus Severus* and his Son. Theſe have each of them *Latin* Inſcriptions, generally in *Roman* Capitals, expreſſing the Name of the Perſon to whoſe Honour and Memory they were erected, and ſome of their valiant or otherwiſe excellent Performances or Qualifications. Tri phal And

THE Baths of antient *Rome* have been beautiful Buildings; but no Proofs now remain of them except their Ruins; of which the chief is *Antonine*'s Bath at the Foot of Mount *Aventine*, which though now out of Repair, yet the preſent Walls are vaſtly thick and high; it contain'd ſixteen hundred Seats of poliſh'd Marble for the ſame Number of Perſons to ſit and bathe in ſeparately. Some of theſe Bathing Places were floor'd with Silver; of which Metal the Pipes are made that convey Water to them. Ba

Bur

But the Baths of *Dioclesian* are the moſt famous, as having convenient Room for three thouſand People to bathe at a Time without ſeeing one another. There is alſo to be ſeen, the Remains of the Baths of *Conſtantine*; as alſo thoſe of *Nero*, *Paulus Emilius*, *Agrippa*, &c.

Columns. Of Columns there now remain four:

1. The *Columna Trajana*; it is an hundred and twenty Feet high beſides the Pedeſtal, which is twelve; in all, an hundred and thirty two. It is compos'd of twenty four entire Pieces of white Marble, hollow within, and ſet one upon another, ſo as to form a Concave Pillar with little Windows to let in the Light; and in the whole, it is aſcended by an hundred and twenty three Steps.

2. The Column of *Antoninus Pius*, is an hundred and forty five Feet high *Engliſh* Meaſure, and is aſcended by two hundred and ſix Steps, and enlight'ned by fifty ſix ſmall Windows; it is compos'd of twenty eight entire Pieces of Marble, the Statue of St. *Paul* is now upon the Top of it.

3. The *Columna Roſtrata* is plac'd upon the Wall, at the Foot of the Stairs aſcending to the Rooms of the Capitol; it is not above twelve Feet high, and has no legible Inſcription.

4. The *Columna Miliaria*, ſaid to be the Mark where they began to reckon the Miles from *Rome*, to any other Part of *Italy*; it is a Column of white Marble eight Feet and an half high; and on the Chapiter, there is a Braſs Globe of about two Feet Diameter.

Aque-ducts. But what is as well worth our Notice as any Thing yet mention'd, is their Aqueducts, Fountains, and Reſervoirs, in almoſt every Corner of the City. The old Aqueduct which *Paul* V. reſtor'd, comes from a Collection of Sources, five and thirty Miles from *Rome*, and runs all the way through a vaulted Channel like a River under Ground; and when it comes to the City, it breaks out into five ſeveral Fountains, and ſupplies thoſe ſeveral Parts of the City. The *Aqua Felice* of *Sixtus* V. is brought twenty Miles from *Rome*. There is alſo the Fountain in the *Piazza de Spagna*, another in the *Piazza de Novano*, and others; which furniſh *Rome* ſo plentifully with Water, that almoſt every Houſe has a Fountain which runs continually.

Cata-combs. But amongſt other Antiquities of *Rome*, the *Catacombs* are not to be forgot; they are narrow, ſubterraneous Vaults, with a Variety of Windings and Turnings, like a Maze, or Labyrinth; and run ſo far as to undermine a great Part of the Suburbs of antient *Rome*: They were about the Heighth of an ordinary Man of five Feet and an half, and of Breadth, for two Men to walk abreaſt; not but ſome are of larger Dimenſions. On each Side, are Rows of Graves, with a ſquare Stone or Tile at the Mouth of each of them, with an Inſcription upon the Stone, to ſhew what Martyr, or Confeſſor, &c. was interr'd there. There are yet, Bones found in ſome of them, but the Bodies have generally been remov'd to the Churches as precious Relicks. It is generally believ'd, that the Original of thoſe Caverns proceeded from the Perſecution of the *Chriſtians*; who not being allow'd to exerciſe Divine Worſhip publickly, dug thoſe Caverns for the more free Exerciſe of their Religion, and for celebrating Divine Service; and that they were alſo reſerv'd as Burying-places for Chriſtians, for the ſame Reaſon of Privacy, that they ſhould not be dug up by their Perſecutors.

Tombs. Of the antient Tombs, or Mauſolea in *Rome*, there is yet to be ſeen the Remains of theſe four.

1. The Mauſoleum of the Emperor *Adrian*, in the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*; it was at firſt beautify'd with Statues and Marble Pillars, but they were taken away to adorn ſome of the modern Churches and Palaces; and Pope *Boniface* converted it into a Fortreſs, and ſucceeding Popes have yet further improv'd it. *Alexander* VI. built a long, cloſe Gallery, from the *Vatican* to this Caſtle, through which he might retire on any Inſurrection in the City; becauſe in this Caſtle, is the Magazine of Arms, Ammunition, and Stores of War; and indeed here is the Pope's Treaſury, and here the Priſoners of State are confin'd till further Trial.

2. The Mauſoleum of *Auguſtus*: It may be diſcern'd by its Ruins to have been a famous Structure; but as there is nothing of it remains but the Ruins, it is impoſſible to give any Deſcription of it.

3. The Tomb of *Caius Ceſtius*, which ſtands in the Wall near St. *Paul*'s Gate; it is a ſquare Pyramid, its Baſe is ninety four Feet ſquare, and it is an hundred and twenty Feet high, ending in a Point.

4. The Tomb of *Metella*, the Wife of *Craſſus*, ſtands in the *Via Appia* near St. *Sebaſtian*; it is called alſo *Capo de Bove*, from the Heads of Oxen carved on the Wall; it is a round Building like an old Tower; the Walls are twenty four Feet thick. There were two hundred Oxen ſacrific'd at her funeral Obſequies, which probably might be the Reaſon of ſo many Heads of Oxen being carv'd upon the Wall.

Obelisks. Of Obelisks, the fineſt now in *Rome* ſtands in the Piazza before St. *Peter*'s Church; it is one entire Piece of *Granite*, ſeventy two Feet high, twelve Feet ſquare at the Baſe, and eight at the Top; it weigh'd nine hundred and fifty ſix thouſand, one hundred and forty eight Pounds, and is now above four thouſand Years old. It ſtands upon a Pedeſtal thirty eight Feet high, but conſidering its Weight as above, and the Height of the Pedeſtal, the Thing itſelf is not ſo ſurprizing, as the Difficulty of elevating ſuch a ponderous Body to ſuch a vaſt Height above the Ground.

The Obelisk of St. *John de Lateran*, is the higheſt, and largeſt in *Rome*; it is an hundred and eight Feet high, beſides the Height of the Pedeſtal and Croſs; its Baſe is nine Feet and an half one way and eight the other. There are other Obelisks, as that in the Piazza *del Populo*, that near St. *Mary Maggiore*, &c. and ſome of them of a ſmaller Size, but none of them are now worth a particular Deſcription.

Cirques. The Cirques were ſpacious Structures, in the Form of an half Oval or Semicircle, from whence it is ſuppos'd they took their Names; their Areas were ſo large, that the *Romans* run Races in them in their Chariots or on Horſe-back, round a Meta which ſtood in the Middle. It is ſaid of the *Circus Maximus*, that it would hold an hundred and ſixty thouſand Spectators, all commodiouſly ſeated; doubtleſs it was very large, nor will what is here affirm'd ſeem extraordinary to thoſe who are acquainted with the *Roman* Magnificence.

Bridges. The *Tiber* had formerly eight Bridges over it, but there are now only five remaining, *viz. Ponte di St. Angelo.* 2. *Ponte St. Bartolomeo.* 3. *Ponte Siſto.* 4. *Ponte di Santta Maria.* And, 5. *Ponte di quatro Capi.*

Churches. But the Churches of *Rome* muſt not be forgot, ſo long as St. *Peter*'s continues to be ſuch a magnificent Structure; and the beſt way to communicate an Idea of it to the Inhabitants of this great Metropolis of *London*, is to let them know, that allowing ſome few Exceptions, St. *Paul*'s Church is a lively Repreſentation of St. *Peter*'s at *Rome*, as having been built after its Model; though the Dimenſions are not the ſame, and therefore take the Dimenſions of St. *Peter*'s as follows in Feet and Inches. St. *Peter*'s.

	Feet.	*In.*
The Length of the Outside including the Portico	722	0
The Length within, exclusive of the Portico or Thickness of the Wall	594	0
The Breadth from the North Door to the South Door without,	490	0
The same Breadth within is	438	0
The Breadth of the Body of the Church	86	8
The Height of the Body of the Church	144	0
The outward Circumference of the Dome or Cupola	620	0
The Diameter of the Dome within	143	0
The Breadth of the Front of the Church	400	0
The Height from the Pavement to the Top of the Cross which is over the Ball	432	0
Diameter of the Ball	8	4
The Height of the Statues which are on the Cornice of the Front	18	0
The Height of the Altar	90	0

THE Body of the Church as well as the Cupola, is supported by substantial Pillars like those in St. *Paul's*; but so tarnish'd with the Smoak of the Lamps and Candles, that it does not come up to the Neatness and clean Appearance of it.

OTHER Churches are, the Church of St. *John de Lateran*, built by *Constantine*, after his Conversion to the Christian Faith. Also the Church of St. *Mary Maggiore*, a very beautiful Church; the Back of it is one entire Piece of *Lapis Lazuli*, sixteen Feet high, and twelve broad, with a Space in the Middle: In this Church (if we believe the *Romish* Legends) is a Picture of the Virgin *Mary*, almost cover'd with Jewels, which was painted by St. *Luke* himself.

THERE are other Churches; as the Church of St. *Paul*, about a Mile out of the City; it is in the Form of a Cross, about seven hundred and eighty Feet long, and two hundred and sixty in Breadth, and supported by an hundred stately Marble Pillars. The Doors of this Church are of Brass, of extraordinary Workmanship, containing several Pieces of sacred History finely done in Bass Relief. There is also the Church of St. *Lawrence*, the Church of St. *Sebastian*, the Church of St. *Croce*; these are the chief Churches in *Rome*, that are noted abroad, and visited by Pilgrims.

Hospitals. THERE are in *Rome*, no less than forty Hospitals, some for the Old and Infirm, others for Orphans; some for Fools and Mad-men, like our *Bethlem* in *London*. Some for Pilgrims, some for Women unhappily married, others for decay'd Gentlemen. Some for lewd Women, who having left off their wicked Courses, and being abandon'd by sober People, are left destitute; and there is a very large Hospital for foundling and destitute Children. This last was erected by Pope *Innocent* III. The Occasion of his building this Hospital, was the many Carcasses of dead Children being found in the Bottom of the River *Tiber*, which it was suppos'd was owing to the indigent Circumstances of their Parents. This Hospital has been enlarg'd of late, insomuch that it appears like a little Town. The Dropping of Children is allow'd of here, and the Method is, when any Parents are willing to drop a Child, one, or both of them, or any that they appoint, carry them to a back Wall of the Hospital, where there is a Place made to leave them in; but this they do not do clandestinely, but they ring a Bell, and a Servant comes and takes the Child, asking no Questions, but whether it has been baptiz'd. The Boys are educated by Monks, and the Girls by Nuns, in their different Apartments, till they come to Years of Discretion, and then they are provided for.

EVERY Nation in *Europe*, where the Roman Catholick Religion is profess'd, have their Hospitals for Pilgrims in *Rome*; but besides them, there is that of the *Trinity*, which entertains all indifferently, insomuch that they have sometimes fed fifteen thousand at a Time besides their ordinary Quota.

Their Method of receiving and treating of Pilgrims is thus: Every Evening, those who are newly arriv'd, present themselves before the Officers of the House, and producing their Certificates, are enter'd on the Register, each Person receiving a Medal or Ticket of his Admission. After this they are led into a large Room, where a Priest having read Prayers, washes all their Feet, and dresses those that are hurt with travelling; after which, they are brought into the Refectory, or Dining-room, where having refresh'd themselves, they are conducted to the Dormitory, where every Man has his Bed assign'd him; and the Priest who goes along with them, after Exhortations and Prayers, leaves them to take their Rest.

OF Palaces, the *Vatican* near St. *Paul's* Church comes first under our Consideration. Here the Pope usually resides in the Winter; it is a large, but not regular Building; or as a late Writer says, it is a Heap of good Pieces ill join'd together; and indeed we ourselves need not go far abroad to see a Composition of regular Buildings ill put together and call'd a Palace. But not to insist upon that, the *Vatican* Library is worth our Observation; it is so beautiful a Fabrick, that it is said, it is not capable to admit of any Addition. Palaces

BUT the second of the Pope's Palaces, is the *Quirinal*, where the Pope usually resides in the Heat of Summer. This Palace, though less than the *Vatican*, contains about seventeen hundred Rooms, and is fit to receive the greatest Monarch in the World. Belonging to this Palace, are admirable fine Gardens, where the Walks are planted with Myrtle, Lawrel, and Orange-Trees, and adorn'd with near two hundred Fountains, which perpetually discharge large Quantities of Water. Here is also a Grotto where Organs play, not only to Church Musick, but like an Aviary, with the common Notes of Birds, their Bellows being moved and acted by Water. *Quirinal*

BESIDES these, there is the Palace of the *Apostolick Chancery*, which is by some call'd one of the finest Palaces in *Rome*; but as we find several Authors give superlative Epithets to what themselves admire, I shall content my self with letting the Reader know, that it is a Place of fine Architecture, and furnish'd with Painting, approv'd of by the best Judges.

BESIDES, these are the following Palaces, *viz.* that of *Farnese*, belonging to the Duk of *Parma*; also that of *Giustiniani* near the *Pantheon*. The Palace of *Barbarini*, &c. but though these are adorn'd with fine Embellishments, yet to describe them, would be only repeating what has been said before. I shall therefore pass over to

THE Piazzaes in *Rome*, call'd by the *French* Places, and by the *English*, Squares: are, 1. The *Forum Romanum*, the Place where *Cicero* first made his eloquent Orations, and where afterwards, his Head was set upon a Pike by the Command of *Mark Anthony*. 2. The Piazza *di Pasquina*, so call'd from an old broken Statue, standing against the Wall at the Corner of one of the Streets which opens into this Square, on which are fix'd all the Lampoons and Libels, which we Pi.

in

in *England* call Poſting. And there is another Place call'd *Marphorio*, where the Anſwers to thoſe Lampoons are put up, if they are thought worth anſwering. There are other Piazzaes, but of little Note, except barely for the Name of them.

Roman Ways.

THE Roman High-ways (of which there are a great many in *England* yet to be ſeen) are common there, and were laid every where from City to City; and were ſo well pav'd, that Carriages might go Winter and Summer. The chief of them were the *Via Flaminia*, and the *Via Appia*; the firſt is ſo call'd from a noble Roman that projected it. It was begun to be pav'd in the Year of *Rome* 533, and was afterwards carried by *Veſpaſian* over the *Apennines* to the *Adriatick* Sea, above two hundred Miles. The *Via Appia* led from *Appia* to *Capua* and *Brunduſium*, three hundred and fifty Miles and upwards; from thence ſeveral Ways branch'd out to the South Eaſt Parts of *Italy*. The *Via Appia* goes from *Rome* to *Naples*; it is twelve Feet broad, and made of large Stones; this Cauſway appears by the Date of it, to have laſted above eighteen hundred Years, and is yet in many Places as firm as when firſt made.

CHAP. II.

The Hiſtory of ANCIENT ROME.

I SHALL in this Place endeavour to omit the ſuperſtitious, romantick, poetical, and fictitious Stories and Legends about *Rome*, with which our School-books now abound ſo much, that a Boy can ſcarce be admitted to enter into *Latin* or *Greek*, till he firſt promiſe to believe thoſe ſilly Fables; or that *Rome* or *Athens* were either in another World, or in ſome more than ordinary ſacred Part of this. But not to entertain the Reader with ſuch low and unwarrantable Fictions, I ſhall keep to what we have authentick Hiſtory for; and in the Genealogy of the Kings of *Rome*, ſhall begin with

Romulus, who is ſaid to have begun his Reign about the Year of the World 3300. and having reign'd between thirty ſeven and thirty eight Years, was ſucceeded by *Numa Pompilius*; who after a Reign of three and forty Years, was ſucceeded by *Tullus Hoſtilius* in the Year 3381. who after a Reign of thirty one Years, was ſucceeded by *Ancus Martius Anno* 3412. and although he was firſt advanc'd as a Guardian to *Hoſtilius*'s Children, yet he procur'd himſelf to be declar'd King; and then built the Port of *Oſtia*, at the Mouth of the River *Tiber*; and in the Year 3437. he was ſucceeded by *Tarquinius Priſcus*, who is ſaid to be the firſt *Roman* that ever wore a Crown. He ſubdu'd Part of *Tuſcany*, beautify'd *Rome*, and increas'd the Number of the Senate to an hundred, and the *Roman* Knights to three hundred. In his Reign, the *Gauls* took the Parts of *Italy* on both Sides the *Po*, which is now call'd *Lombardy*; and he dying in the Year of the World 3475. was ſucceeded by *Servius Tullus*, who enlarg'd the City of *Rome*, and order'd that none ſhould bear Arms but wealthy Citizens, which was the Reaſon that the *Roman* Soldiers grew ſo famous; becauſe they fought for their own private Intereſt as well as that of the Publick. This Prince was kill'd by *Tarquin*, ſurnam'd the *Proud*, *Anno* 3521. and by him ſucceeded; but *Tarquin* committed ſuch Acts of Violence and Oppreſſion, that the People hated him, and were willing to embrace the firſt Opportunity of an Advantage againſt him, which they did not long want; for his Son *Sextus* raviſhing *Lucretia*, they endeavour'd to drive *Tarquin* out of the City, and elect *Brutus* and *Colatinus* for their Conſuls or chief Magiſtrates; and the rather, becauſe *Colatinus* was the injur'd Huſband of the raviſh'd *Lucretia*; and in this they ſucceeded, and thus ended the Kingly Power of *Rome*, and the Conſular began, about the Year of the World 3545.

But *Tarquin* was not quite abandon'd, but had many Friends in the City who attempted his Reſtoration, and among the reſt, the two Sons of *Brutus*; but that being timely diſcover'd, they were brought before the Conſuls in order to be try'd, and *Brutus* ſternly demanded of his Sons, what they had to ſay in their own Defence; but they remaining ſilent, he immediately order'd them to be beheaded; and only ſtaying to ſee the Execution done, he left the reſt of the Conſpirators to the Mercy of his Colleague.

But *Tarquin* ſtill found ſome Friends who inceſſantly aim'd at his Reſtoration, and levy'd Forces in order thereto; and with them he laid Siege to the City of *Rome*. The chief of thoſe Beſiegers was *Porſenna*, the King of *Hetruria*, now *Tuſcany*, who had ſuch Succeſs againſt them, that though he did not take the City, yet he reduc'd them ſo far, that they were glad to buy their own Property of him with a Sum of Money, and ſo procur'd the Siege to be rais'd; and beſides paying the Money, he compell'd them to give Hoſtages, not to forge any Arms or Iron-work but what was uſeful in Husbandry. But after all this Succeſs, he (for Reaſons beſt known to himſelf, and now diſputed by Authors) withdrew his Forces and retir'd into *Tuſcany*; and when he was gone, the *Sabines* and *Latins* enter'd into a Confederacy againſt the *Romans*, and waged War againſt them.

But in this War with the *Romans*, the *Latins* and *Sabines* were extremely weaken'd by their own Diviſions, particularly when *Appius* and *Claudius* deſerted to the *Romans*, and carried over with them five thouſand Families at once; and ſoon after this, the *Latins* receiv'd a remarkable Defeat from *Valerius Publicola*. The *Equi* and *Volſci* the braveſt of the *Latins*, ſtill carried on the War with various Succeſs for ſeveral Years; but at Length they were entirely ſubdu'd by *Lucius Quinctius* the Celebrated Dictator, who was taken from the Plow but a little before he obtain'd that ſignal Victory over the *Equi* and *Volſci*.

But the *Veji*, who inhabited the Capital City of *Tuſcany*, contended many Years with the *Romans* for the Empire, till loſing ſeveral Battles in the open Field, they were forc'd to ſhut themſelves up within their own Walls; and after a Siege of ten Years, ſurrender'd to *Camillus* the *Roman* General.

While the *Romans* were thus extending their Conqueſts on one Side of *Tuſcany*, the *Gauls* made an Irruption on the other, laying Siege to the

the City of *Clucium*; whereupon the Inhabitants sent to the *Romans* to interpose in their Behalf. The *Romans* accordingly dispatch'd the three *Fabii*, Persons of the highest Rank, to the *Gauls* as Ambassadors; but though the *Gauls* receiv'd them with the utmost Civility, yet they could not be prevail'd upon to raise the Siege. The Ambassadors thereupon retired into the Town, and encourag'd the Besieged to make a Sally; one of them was afterwards personally engag'd in the Action, which being look'd upon as a Breach of the Law of Nations, was resented in such a Manner by the *Gauls*, that rising from before *Clusium*, they march'd directly towards *Rome*; and in their way, entirely defeated the *Roman* Army about eleven Miles from the City; which put the Inhabitants in such a Consternation, that most of them left the City and retired to the Capitol. The *Gauls* thereupon plunder'd the Town, and set Fire to it, and laid Siege to the Capitol; but being discover'd by the cackling of some Geese, and the brave *Manlius* making a Sally from the Fort, while *Camillus* attack'd them in the Rear with an Army of twenty thousand Men, the *Gauls* were entirely defeated, and most of the Straglers cut off by the Country. *Thus far the* Roman *History*. Some indeed say, that the Capitol was reduc'd to the greatest Extremity by Famine; and that the *Romans* purchas'd their Peace with a great Sum of Money. And certain it is, by the Consent of all History, that the *Romans* had a very narrow Escape; and the City was so miserably demolish'd, that upon the Return of the Inhabitants, it was propos'd to remove to *Veii*, which was ready built, and was provided with all Things to their Hands; but they were diverted from this Design by an Omen, which put them with so much Diligence upon re-building their City, that it was finish'd within the Year.

Soon after this, the *Equi*, the *Volsci*, and other States of *Latium*, enter'd into a new Confederacy against *Rome*, but were defeated by *Camillus*. After this, the *Samnites* being apprehensive of the growing Power of this City, engag'd in a War with the *Romans*, which they maintain'd with precarious Success for fifty Years; but they were then entirely subdu'd by *Papirius Cursor*.

The next Attack was made by the Citizens of *Tarentum* or *Taranto*, on the *Italian* Coast, in the *Adriatick* Sea; and they being not only encouraged, but assisted and supported by *Pyrrhus* King of *Epyrus* and other foreign Powers, frequently defeated the *Romans*, and once in a general Battle, when their Horse were drove into Confusion by the Elephants which *Pyrrhus* brought with him; for they being the first that had been seen in *Italy*, they did not at first know how to encounter them; but a little Practice making them better acquainted with the Manner of dealing with them, they found Means in the next Battle to wound some of them in the Beginning of the Engagement; and when those cumbersome Animals found themselves wounded, they retired in Confusion among their own Troops, and trod their own Forces under Foot, by which Means the *Romans* gain'd an easy Conquest of the Southern Parts of *Italy*, and indeed of all of it, except what was possess'd by the *Gauls*. This happen'd about the Year of the World 3777. and after the building of *Rome*, about four hundred and fifty Years, or as some say, four hundred and seventy six Years.

This War upon the Continent of *Italy* being over, the City of *Messina* in *Sicily* implor'd the Assistance of the *Romans* against the *Carthaginians*, who had invaded the Island, and conquer'd a great Part of it; but the *Romans* sent such a Supply of Assistance, that in the Space of two Years or little more, they drove the *Carthaginians* quite out of *Sicily*; and in further Pursuit of their Conquests, made themselves Masters of *Sardinia* and *Corsica*. This was call'd the first *Punick War*, and happen'd in the Year of the World 3789. and after the building of *Rome* 488.

After this, the *Romans* under the Command of *Regulus* and *Manlius* their (then) Consuls, transported their Forces into *Africa*, and made that the Seat of War; whereupon the *Carthaginians* apply'd themselves to *Xantippus* King of *Lacedemonia* for Assistance, who sent them such a Reinforcement, that they were able to meet the *Romans* in a general Battle; and in the Engagement, kill'd thirty thousand *Romans*, and took fifteen thousand Prisoners, amongst which, was the above mention'd *Regulus* the Consul. But notwithstanding this, the *Romans* recruited and carried on the War in *Africa*; and the better to accomplish their intended Conquests, they fitted out a strong Fleet to intercept the foreign Trade of the *Carthaginians*, and thereby to impoverish, weaken, and deprive them of the Supplies they had from abroad. The *Romans* fitted out a strong Fleet, and though they were not much skill'd in Navigation or Maritime Affairs, yet they entirely defeated the Grand Fleet of the *Carthaginians*, destroying above an hundred of their Ships, and taking almost an hundred more. Thirty two thousand of the *Carthaginians* were kill'd, and thirteen thousand taken Prisoners, which obliged *Carthage* to accept of a Peace upon what Terms the *Romans* pleas'd to prescribe.

Second Punick War. Year of Rome 537. Of the World, 3832.

But notwithstanding this, the *Carthaginians* soon assembled an Army of an hundred and fifty thousand Foot, and twenty thousand Horse, in *Spain*, under the Command of the famous *Hannibal*, who march'd with them through *France* into *Italy*, passing the *Alps* and *Pyrennean* Mountains, which till that Time were thought impassible, especially for so great a Body of Forces. And having defeated the *Romans* in four set Battles; in the last of which, *viz.* at *Cannæ*, the *Romans* lost above thirty thousand Men; with this Success he was so elevated, that he penetrated almost to the very Gates of *Rome*. But the *Carthagenians* being jealous of the Fidelity of their General *Hannibal*, and afraid that his Ambition prompted him to make himself famous and great at their Expence, neglected to send him any Recruits or Supplies, till the *Romans* reinforced their Army, who then grew so strong, that they straitned *Hannibal*'s Quarters, cutting off all Supplies of Provisions, so that his Army was in Danger of famishing.

The *Romans* resolving to follow their Blow, dispatch'd their General, the famous *Scipio*, into *Africa*, to make a Descent upon the *Carthaginians* and give them a Diversion; which obliged them to call *Hannibal* home; and this put an End to the Wars in *Italy*; and the two Generals, *Hannibal* and *Scipio*, meeting (with all their Forces) in *Africa*, came to a general Engagement; in which, *Hannibal* being defeated, the Victory fell to the *Romans*, and *Carthage* was again obliged to make a Peace upon what Terms the *Romans* pleas'd to prescribe.

The State of the *Romans* thus increasing they were courted from abroad by the *Athenians*, and several other *Grecian* Cities that had been reduc'd to the Subjection of *Philip*, the great King of *Macedon*, imploring the Assistance of the *Romans* for the Recovery of their Liberties; which the *Romans* did so effectually, that *Philip* was obliged to abandon all his Conquests and become Tributary to *Rome*.

This

This increaſing Grandeur of the *Romans* ſo irritated *Hannibal*, that he ſued to *Antiochus* King of *Syria* for a Reinforcement, and prevail'd; but thoſe united Forces, tho' under *Hannibal*, both by Sea and Land were defeated by the *Romans*, and *Antiochus* obliged to purchaſe his Peace with the Commonwealth.

The growing Power of the *Romans* now becoming ſo formidable, and *Philip* King of *Macedon* being dead; his Son *Perſeus* confederating with the neighbouring States, they aſſembled a very numerous Army and march'd againſt the *Romans*; but the Conſul *Emilius* quite defeated *Perſeus* and his Party, and took *Perſeus* Priſoner. And now leaſt *Carthage* ſhould recover itſelf and be a Thorn in the *Romans* Sides, and contend for Empire, they under a ſlight Pretence laid Siege to it; and having made themſelves Maſters of it, after it had bravely maintain'd a Defence for three Years, they level'd it with the Ground.

After this, the *Romans* purſu'd their Conqueſts in *Africa* with ſuch Succeſs, that they defeated King *Jugurtha*, and brought him Priſoner to *Rome*. They repulſed the *Teutones* and *Cimbri* in their Attempts upon *Italy*, and obliged them to retire.

But notwithſtanding this Series of Succeſs of the *Romans*, they began to be uneaſy among themſelves, and divided themſelves into Parties and Factions; *Marius* at the Head of one Party, and *Sylla* at the Head of the other. *Sylla* was afterwards conſtituted General againſt *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, when he encroach'd upon the *Roman* Territories in *Aſia* and *Greece*, and reduc'd ſeveral Towns and Provinces to his Obedience; for *Sylla* had not march'd out of *Italy*, before *Sulpicius* the Tribune, who was of a contrary Faction, propoſed a Law to recal *Sylla*, and confer the Command upon his Antagoniſt *Marius*; of which *Sylla* having Intelligence, march'd back with his Army, defeated *Marius* and *Sulpicius* in a pitch'd Battle, baniſh'd all his Enemies from *Rome*, and then turn'd his Arms againſt the common Enemy *Mithridates*; and having defeated him in two ſet Battles, *Mithridates* was forced to beg a Truce. In the mean Time, new Conſuls being choſen, *Marius* and *Sulpicius* was recall'd from Baniſhment, and exercis'd all manner of Cruelties on *Sylla*'s Party; who thereupon (as ſoon as he had ſign'd the Treaty with *Mithridates*) march'd back with Part of his Army to *Rome*, where though he found that *Marius* was dead, yet he was oppoſed by *Marius*'s two Sons and the Conſuls; but he overcoming, entred the City, reſtor'd his Friends to their Dignity, and procured for himſelf the Title of *Perpetual Dictator*; and conſequently was inveſted with Sovereign Power, and not liable to any Controul from the Senate or People. But though he was *Perpetual Dictator*, yet having ſettled the Government, he reſign'd his Authority, and retiring from Buſineſs, ended his Days in Peace.

But about the Year of *Rome* 685. *Mithridates* broke the Truce, and fell upon the *Roman* Provinces in *Aſia*, but was oppos'd by *Lucullus*, and both his Fleet and Army defeated. But *Lucullus* was recall'd, and ſucceeded in his Command by *Pompey*, who defeated another Army rais'd by *Mithridates*, drove him out of his Dominions, and compel'd him to fly for Refuge to his Father-in-law, *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*; but *Pompey* following him thither, *Tigranes* was ſo terrify'd at his Approach, that he immediately ſubmitted himſelf and his Kingdom to the Diſpoſal of the *Romans*.

But the Senate of *Rome*, inſtead of congratulating *Pompey* upon his Succeſs, began to be jealous of his entertaining ambitiouss Views of his own Preferment; but when he convinced them that he had no ſuch Deſign, and as a Proof thereof diſmiſs'd his Army as ſoon as he landed in *Italy*, and return'd to *Rome* with his ordinary Attendants, they receiv'd him with all poſſible Expreſſions of Joy, and decree'd him a Triumph upon his Entrance into the City.

Note, it was in the Time of *Pompey*'s Expedition into *Armenia* that *Cataline*'s Conſpiracy was diſcover'd.

The *Roman* State was at this Time under the Influence of thoſe three great and memorable Men, *viz. Pompey*, *Cæſar*, and *Craſſus*, yet in ſeparate Intereſts, and with ſelfiſh Views: *Pompey* was lov'd by the Senate, which one would think was a good Step towards a general Intereſt; but *Cæſar* was the Darling of the Soldiers and the People, a much greater Step than the former; but if the old Phraſe, *Pecunia obediunt omnia* was as much in force then as it is now, then *Craſſus* had the beſt of the Argument; for his Wealth had procur'd him a conſiderable Intereſt. Theſe three, while *Cæſar* was Conſul, enter'd into a Confederacy to ſupport their own and each other's Intereſt, and from hence it was that they were call'd the Triumvirate; and as ſuch, they procur'd to themſelves the Government of three of the beſt Provinces of the Empire, and divided them amongſt themſelves, agreeing that *Pompey* ſhould have *Spain*, *Cæſar Gaul*, and *Craſſus Aſia*; but *Craſſus* ſoon after was kill'd in an Expedition againſt the *Parthians*. *Cæſar* had great Succeſs in ſubduing the *Gauls*; but *Pompey* willing to maintain his Authority in the Senate, reſided at *Rome*, and appointed a Deputy, to whom he committed the Adminiſtration of the Government of his Dominions in *Spain*.

Cæſar by his repeated Victories in *Gaul* and *Britain* for nine Years together became exceeding popular, while the Senate on the other Hand were ſo jealous of his ambitious Deſigns, that when he petition'd for a ſecond Conſulſhip, they commanded him to disband his Army, and appear as a private Perſon at the Election; but he being at the Head of the beſt veteran Troops in the Empire, march'd directly to *Rome*, in order to obtain by Force what he deſpair'd of ever obtaining by the Conſent of the Senate; and they being appriz'd of his Intentions, and of his Power to put them in Execution, the greateſt Part of them left *Rome* and retir'd to *Greece*, which made *Cæſar*'s Entrance into *Rome* very eaſy, and gave him a Power to oblige thoſe who were left behind to declare him Conſul and *Perpetual Dictator* of the *Roman* Empire.

When he had gain'd this Point, his next Step in order to maintain his Ground, was to fall upon *Pompey*'s Forces in *Spain*; and they in general, either laying down their Arms, or coming over to him, he purſu'd *Pompey* into *Greece*, where he and the Senate had aſſembled a numerous Army to oppoſe him; and in the firſt Engagement, *Cæſar*'s Troops ſuffer'd ſeverely. But both Parties afterwards aſſembing their whole Force upon the Plains of *Pharſalia*, *Cæſar* obtain'd a compleat Victory; and marching into *Egypt* in Purſuit of *Pompey*, found that he had been kill'd by King *Ptolomy*. This happen'd in the Year of *Rome* 704. *Pompey* kill'd.

Cæſar then proceeded with his Wars in *Egypt*, and took *Alexandria* the Capital, and committed the Governmnt of *Egypt* to *Cleopatra* the Siſter of *Ptolomy*; who though ſhe had enſnared his Heart, yet not ſo much, but that he purſu'd his Conqueſts in other Parts of *Africa*; reduc'd *Sci-*

pio, *Cato*, and *Juba*, the Friends of the Senate, and afterwards *Pompey*'s two Sons in *Spain*, which Successes occasion'd his being receiv'd in *Rome* with a great Applause; insomuch that he was thereupon stil'd *the Father of his Country*. But this was only an outside Show; for the Senate observing, that if his aspiring Designs should prevail, and he be invested with Sovereign Authority, their Dignity would decline; to prevent this, they stabb'd him in the Senate-House before he had reign'd five Months; of which Tragedy, his Intimates, *Brutus* and *Cassius*, were the principal Actors.

Cæsar kill'd.

Upon this, two Parties were form'd in *Rome*; one in Defence of *Brutus* and his Party who had kill'd *Cæsar*, and the other to revenge his Death; which last was headed by *Mark Anthony* the Consul, who intended to follow *Cæsar*'s Steps and assume Sovereign Authority; which the Senate were so apprehensive of, that they declar'd him an Enemy to the State, and rais'd an Army under the Command of *Hirtius* and *Pansa* the new Consuls, and young *Octavius*, *Cæsar*'s Heir, to oppose him; but *Anthony* being defeated, they plainly shew'd that they never intended that young *Octavius* should succeed his Uncle; for they decreed *Brutus* and *Cassius* the two Heads of the late Conspiracy against *Cæsar*, the two Provinces of *Syria* and *Macedonia*, whether they had retired after *Cæsar*'s Death, to avoid the Fury of the Populace.

Octavius judging from hence, that the Senate had made use of him only as a Tool to defeat *Mark Anthony*'s ambitious Designs, and not to promote his Interest; he upon this Resentment, revolted to *Mark Anthony*; and they two, with *Lepidus* another General, form'd a second Triumvirate; and *Octavius* returning to *Rome*, was by their united Interest chosen Consul, though under twenty Years of Age; and all the Members of the Senate, whom they thought to be in a contrary Interest, were banish'd; and then they procur'd a Law, that all who were concern'd in the Death of *Cæsar*, should be deem'd Enemies to the Commonwealth.

Octavius and *Anthony* march'd at the Head of an Army into *Macedonia*, and at *Philippi* defeated *Brutus* and *Cassius*, who for Vexation kill'd themselves with their own Hands. The *Roman* Affairs continu'd still to be managed by the Triumvirate, as it was for ten Years after this Battle, when *Lepidus* attempting to render himself independant of his Colleagues in *Sicily*, was defeated by *Octavius*, and compel'd to relinquish his Share in the Government.

The three were now reduc'd to two, there being now only *Octavius* and *Anthony*; and they disagreeing, *Octavius* procur'd *Anthony* to be declar'd an Enemy to the State; and defeating him by Sea and Land, reduc'd him to such a Degree of Despair, that he laid violent Hands upon himself. And now *Octavius* succeeded as Supreme, and gaining the Affections of the Senate and People, he rejected the Titles of King and Dictator, and yet prov'd arbitrary in his Administration. He reign'd 41 Years, during which Time, he had such good Success in *Aquitania*, *Panonia*, *Illyricum*, and *Germany*, as very much contributed to the Establishment of the Empire.

Augustus Cæsar came to the Empire about twenty seven Years before the Birth of our Saviour, and reigning about one and forty Years, our Saviour was born in his Reign. And in the Year of our Lord 14. *Tiberius* succeeded; he was an indolent, indulgent Prince, noted for his Cowardize and Effeminacy; an Instance of which, was his Retirement to the little Island of *Capreæ* in the Bay of *Naples*, where he indulg'd himself in all Manner of Voluptuousness; abandoning the Affairs of the Government, and suffering his frontier Provinces to be insulted and over-run by other barbarous Nations.

Augustus.

Christ born.

Caligula began in the Year of Christ 37; and to redress the Abuses of his Predecessor, he was not only equally effeminate, but much more cruel; and is chiefly noted for a silly Expedition pretended against *Britain*; wherein being arriv'd on the opposite Shore, he, instead of embarking his Troops, order'd them to fill their Helmets with Cockle-shells, which he call'd the Spoils of the Ocean; and returning to *Rome*, demanded a Triumph for his Success; but they justly denying him the Applause he demanded, he became so horribly cruel, that his own Servants conspired to kill him in the fourth Year of his Reign. *Caligula*

Upon this, the Senate were aiming to return to their old Form of Government, but the Army set up *Claudius*, the Uncle of *Caligula*, to be Emperor, and compel'd the Senate to confirm the Election. He conquer'd *Britain*, which was the most remarkable Atchievement of his Life. *Claudius.*

Nero began in the Year of Christ 54. and held out a cruel Reign of fourteen Years; and after all, exercis'd his last Act of Cruelty upon himself, and dy'd by his own Hands. *Nero.*

Galba succeeded *Anno* 68. but had not reign'd many Months till he was murder'd by *Galba.*

Otho, who after a still shorter and less noted Reign, was succeeded by *Otho.*

Vitellius, *Anno* 69; but he for his Voluptuousness and Cruelty, was torn in Pieces by the Soldiers before he had reign'd eight Months, and *Vitellius.*

Vespasian was proclaim'd Emperor in the Year 69. He reformed the Abuses of the State, and added several Provinces to the *Roman* Empire, and was succeeded in the Empire by his Son *Vespasian.*

Titus, who was stil'd *The Delight of Mankind*. He reign'd but three Years, but made himself famous, not only for the Conquest of *Jerusalem*, but for his mild Behaviour in so brave an Action; of which, one grand Instance, was his shedding Tears at the burning of the Temple when he could not help it. *Titus.*

Domitian succeeded *Titus* in the Year of our Lord 81. He was a fortunate Prince, but so cruel, that he was murder'd by some of his nearest Relations; and so detested by the Senate, that they demolished his Statues, and raz'd all the pompous Inscriptions which he and his Creatures had set up in his Favour, and flatter'd him with Divine Attributes. This was the last of the Blood of the *Cæsars*. *Domitian.*

Nerva succeeded next to the Empire; he was elected by the Senate as having been an old General, who had successfully commanded the Army in *Gaul*; but he dy'd within two Years, and was succeeded by his adopted Son *Ner.* *96*

Trajan: He extended the Limits of the Empire; he reduc'd into Provinces, the large Countries of *Dacia*, *Assyria*, *Armenia*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Arabia*; and after he had reign'd about twenty Years, he was succeeded by *Tra.* *98*

Adrian, or *Hadrian*, a *Spaniard*: He built the Wall call'd the *Roman Wall*, from *Newcastle* to *Carlisle*, to keep the *Scots* out of *England*, and to set them their Bounds; but after a Reign of above twenty Years, he was succeeded by his adopted Son *Ad.* *11*

Antoninus Pius, a Man of excellent Morals and sweet Temper. He reigned twenty three Years, and was succeeded by his adopted Son *Ant. Pius*

Marcus Aurelius, a learned Man, and a great Philosopher, and successful in his Wars. He reigned about twenty Years, and was succeeded by his Son *Marc. Au.*

Com-

Commodus, 181.

Commodus, a vicious, extravagant Man; and one of his Miſtreſſes ſuſpecting that he had a Deſign to murder her, ſhe was reſolv'd to be beforehand with him, and murder'd him to ſave herſelf; whereupon

Pertinax, 194.

Pertinax was elected Emperor. He was a Man of mean Extraction, but obtain'd the Favour of the People by his Merit; but endeavouring to reform ſome Abuſes in his Army, was murder'd by the *Prætorian* Guards in the Palace, before he had reigu'd three Months.

Didius, *Severus*, 193.

The next was *Didius*; but before he had reign'd two Months, the Senate ſet up *Severus* againſt him, who was ſucceſsful againſt the *Parthians*, and defended the *Britains* againſt the Incurſions of the *Picts* and *Scots*. He dy'd at *York* in the eighteenth Year of his Reign.

Caracalla.

Caracalla and *Geta*, the Sons of *Severus*, ſucceeded; but *Caracalla* ſoon murder'd *Geta*, and getting the Government into his Hands, became one of the greateſt Tyrants that ever govern'd. He was murder'd by a Captain of his Guards after he had reign'd ſix Years, and was ſucceeded by

Opilius, 217.

Opilius Macrinus; but he being murder'd by his Soldiers in the ſecond Year of his Reign, was ſucceeded by

Heliogabalus, 219.

Heliogabalus, one of the moſt cruel, and voluptuous of all the *Roman* Emperors. He was the Baſtard-Son of the Emperor *Caracalla*; but he was murder'd by his Soldiers, and ſucceeded by his adopted Son

Alexander Severus, 223.

Alexander Severus, who notwithſtanding that he reſtor'd Juſtice to the Empire, and was ſucceſsful againſt the *Perſians*, yet was murder'd by his own Soldiers in the fourteenth Year of his Reign.

Maximinus Caius Julius, 236.

The next that ſucceeded, was *Maximinus Caius Julius*, a Man admired for his Stature, above eight Feet high, and every way proportionable; he was a *Goth* by Extraction, and at firſt but a common Soldier; but being inveſted with that Dignity, march'd into *Italy* to revenge himſelf of his Enemies; but laying Siege to *Aquileia*, which made an obſtinate Defence, he and his Son were both murder'd by the Soldiers before he had ſeen the City of *Rome*.

Pupienus, 238.

Pupienus and *Balbinus* then ſucceeded; but before they had reign'd a Year, they were murder'd by the Soldiers, and

Gordianus, 239.

Gordianus was elected; but he being fourſcore Years of Age, another Part of the Army oppos'd him, and kill'd his Son in the Field of Battle; upon which he laid violent Hands upon himſelf, and was ſucceeded by his Grandſon

Gordianus junior, 239.

Gordianus junior; but he was murder'd in the ſeventh Year of his Reign by his Co-partner *Philip*, the *Arabian*, and was ſucceeded by

Decius, 249.

Decius, who engaging againſt the *Scythians*, was kill'd in an Engagement in the ſecond Year of his Reign.

Gallus, 251.

Gallus, who was General of *Decius*'s Army, was next elected, and afterwards confirm'd by the Senate; but meanly ſubmitting to the Humour of the *Goths* or *Scythians*, he was murder'd by his own Party in the ſecond Year of his Reign.

Æmilianus, 253.

Æmilianus, another General, was next elected; he defeated the *Scythians*, and made a terrible Slaughter of them, but himſelf was kill'd by his Soldiers, and was ſucceeded by

Valerian, 254.

Valerian, who was betray'd by *Macrinus*, his General, in an Expedition againſt the *Perſians*, and was taken Priſoner by King *Sapor*, who firſt uſed him as a Foot-ſtool to mount his Horſe upon, and then flea'd him alive.

Gallienus, 261.

Gallienus his Son ſucceeded him; but by his Indolence and Voluptuouſneſs he became the Contempt of Mankind, and dy'd as he liv'd; he, his Brothers, and Children, being murder'd by

Claud II. 269.

Claudius II. and he dying in the ſecond Year of his Reign, was ſucceeded by

Aurelianus 271.

Aurelianus; who though a private Man, yet by his Merit, was advanc'd from Poſt to Poſt in the Army, till he was elected to the Empire. He was ſucceſsful in his War againſt the *Barbarians*, and conquer'd the famous *Zenobia*, (then call'd the *Queen of the Eaſt*) and took her Capital City *Palmyra*; but in the ſeventh Year of his Reign, he was murder'd in an Expedition againſt the *Perſians*, and was ſucceeded by

Tacitus, 276.

Tacitus, who was cut off by his Soldiers before he had reign'd ſeven Months, and was ſucceeded by

Probus, 276.

Probus; he was a Gardener, and rais'd himſelf by his Merit to the Command of the Army; and in that Capacity had great Succeſs againſt the *Germans*, *Goths*, and *Perſians*; but was murder'd in the ſeventh Year of his Reign in an Expedition to *Perſia*, and

Carus, 282.

Carus ſucceeded him, who was very ſucceſsful againſt the *Perſians*, but was found dead in his Tent in the ſecond Year of his Reign, ſuppoſed ſtruck dead by Lightning.

Dioclesian, 284.

Dioclesian ſucceeded him; he was ſucceſsful in *Egypt*, *Perſia*, and *Armenia*, but rais'd a very ſevere Perſecution againſt the Chriſtians; but he dying, and his Aſſociates in the Empire, *Maximinian* and *Severus* making but an obſcure Figure, there was no Notice taken of them; but he was ſucceeded by

Chlorus, 304.

Conſtantius Chlorus, who after good Succeſs againſt the *Germans*, dy'd in Peace at *York*; and his next Succeſſor was

Conſtantine, 306.

Conſtantine the Great, who was the Son of *Conſtantius Chlorus*, by *Helena*, who was with his Father at *York* when he dy'd; but though the *Britiſh* Army proclaim'd him Emperor at *York*, yet the Pretorian Guards at *Rome* ſet up *Maxentius*, the Son of the above mention'd *Maximinian* againſt him; and *Conſtantine* to avoid a Civil War, offer'd to aſſociate *Maxentius* with him in the Government: But the *Romans* refus'd to accept of a Share, or to compound for *Maxentius*, but inſiſted upon the whole; whereupon *Conſtantine* march'd his Army towards *Italy*, repuls'd the Forces of *Maxentius* ſeveral Times; but the laſt and deciſive Battle was at *Ponte Melle*, within a Mile of *Rome*; and the Victory falling upon *Conſtantine*'s Side, that great Triumphal Arch at *Rome*, ſome Part of which is yet to be ſeen, was dedicated to the Honour of the Conqueror *Conſtantine*, his Adverſary *Maxentius* being entiraly defeated, and drown'd in the River *Tiber*, *September* 24. 312.

Conſtantine II. *Conſtans*, *Conſtantius*, &c. 337.

Immediately after his Acceſſion to the Empire, he publiſh'd ſeveral Edicts in Favour of the Chriſtians. He erected ſeveral Churches in *Rome*, and ſettled Revenues on the Clergy; and when he remov'd the Seat of the Empire to *Conſtantinople*, he conferr'd the Government of not only the City of *Rome*, but a conſiderable Territory in *Italy*, on *Sylveſter*, then Pope, or Biſhop of that See, and his Succeſſors; and divided his Empire among his three Sons, *Conſtantine*, *Conſtantius*, and *Conſtans*. To *Conſtantine* he gave *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Britain*. To *Conſtans*, *Italy*, *Illyricum*, and *Africa*. And to *Conſtantius*, *Greece*, *Thrace*, *Egypt*, and all the Eaſtern Provinces; but the three Brothers, each diſcontented with his Share, endeavour'd to deſtroy one another, till the two former Brothers were kill'd; then *Conſtantius* remain'd ſole Emperor, till *Magnentius* made a Head againſt him to uſurp the Empire; and *Conſtantius* appearing to defend his Empire, dy'd in his March againſt *Magnentius*, aged 45. and of his Reign 25.

Julian

Julian, 361. *Julian*, the Nephew of *Conſtantine* the Great, ſucceeded; he was ſurnamed the Apoſtate, becauſe he endeavour'd to reſtore Paganiſm. He was ſlain by the *Perſians* in the ſecond Year of his Reign, and was ſucceeded by

Jovian, 363. *Jovian* a Chriſtian, but he dy'd before he had reign'd eight Months.

Valentinian, 364. *Valentinian* ſucceeded him; he was accounted an excellent Prince, but was only the Son of a Rope-maker. He remain'd in the Weſtern Part of the Empire himſelf, and aſſign'd the Eaſtern Part to his Brother *Valens*; but *Valens* dying, *Valentinian* was ſucceeded by

Gratian, 375. *Gratian*, who aſſociated with him *Theodoſius*, who ſurviving *Gratian*, ſucceeded him in the Empire, and attain'd the Name of

Theodoſius, 379. *Theodoſius the Great*. He was a Native of *Spain*. He bravely defended the Empire againſt the barbarous Nations in its declining State; but he dy'd in the ſixteenth Year of his Reign, and left the Weſtern Empire to his Son

Honorius, 395. *Honorius*. In this Prince's Time, the *Goths* attack'd the Empire, ravaged *Italy*, and ſet Fire to *Rome* itſelf, and plunder'd the City, while the Emperor remain'd at *Ravenna* unable to relieve it.

Valentinian, 424. *Valentinian* next ſucceeded. In his Time *Attila* the *Hun* invaded *Italy*, but was repuls'd by *Ætius* the famous *Roman* General; but *Valentinian* the Emperor, having put *Ætius* to Death, the barbarous Nations over-run *Italy* as they pleas'd; and in this their Diſtreſs, *Maximus*, in order to make himſelf Maſter of the Empire, firſt procur'd the Murder of *Valentinian*, and then compell'd his Queen *Eudoxia* to marry him; tho' ſo much againſt her Will, that ſhe invited *Genſerick* the *Vandal* into *Italy* to deliver her from her Husband, which he promis'd to do; but contrary to his Oath, he came with a large Army, plunder'd the City of *Rome*, and carried thouſands of the Inhabitants into Slavery in *Africa*.

Avitus, 455. *Avitus* the *Gauliſh* General, next aſſum'd the Title of Emperor, but he held it but about eight Months, and reſign'd to

Majorianus, 457. *Majorianus*; he was very ſucceſsful againſt the *Goths* and *Vandals*; but after a Reign of near four Years, was ſucceeded by

Severus. *Severus*, and he by

Anthemius. *Anthemius*; but they were both depos'd and murder'd by *Ricimir*.

Olybrius. *Olybrius* was then ſent from *Conſtantinople* with Imperial Power, but did not live above ſeven Months; and after him

Glycerius. *Glycerius* was elected by the Soldiers, but depoſed by

Nepos. *Julius Nepos*, who was depoſed ſoon after by

Oreſtes. *Oreſtes*, who left the Empire to his Son

Auguſtulus. *Auguſtulus*; but he had not reign'd a Year till he was depos'd by *Odacer* King of the *Heruli*, a People near the Mouth of the *Danube*, which put a Period to the *Roman* Empire in the Weſt, about 475.

Theoderick. *Theoderick*, the Eaſtern Emperor, or King of the *Oſtrogoths*, inhabited *Dacia*, or *Mœsia* (now included under the Names of *Servia*, *Bulgaria*, *Walachia*, and *Moldavia*) and he having been ſerviceable to the Eaſtern Emperor *Zeno*, in ſuppreſſing a Rebellion, and being a Chriſtian, the Emperor adopted him for his Son; and about the Year 491. ſent him into *Italy* againſt *Odacer*; whom having defeated in ſeveral Engagements, *Odacer* ſubmitted to let *Theoderick* ſhare half of *Italy* with him; but the two Competitors differing, and a War enſuing, *Odacer* was kill'd, and *Theoderick* became ſole Sovereign of *Italy*; and at his Death, left the Kingdom to his Grandſon

Athalrick an Infant; but he dying in the eighth Year of his Reign, was ſucceeded by *Theobat*, the Nephew of *Theoderick*; but he being murder'd by his Subjects, *Athalr.*

Witiges, one of his Generals, ſucceeded; but *Juſtinian*, Emperor of the Eaſt, taking the Advantage of the Diviſions of the *Goths* in *Italy*, ſent an Army thither, who defeated *Witiges*, and ſent him Priſoner to *Conſtantinople*, and reunited Part of *Italy* to the Empire, while the other Part of *Italy* under the *Goths*, ſet up *Witig.*

Theobald and *Alarick*; but they did not both reign two Years, and were ſucceeded by *Theobal.*

Totilla; he made Progreſs in reſtoring the declining State of the *Goths*; he took and plunder'd *Rome*, but was ſlain by *Narſes*, one of *Juſtinian*'s Generals; and after him the *Goths* ſet up *Totilla.*

Tejas, who retook the City of *Rome*; but before he had reign'd a Year, he was defeated by *Narſes*, which put an end to the *Oſtrogoths*, or Eaſtern Kingdom of *Italy*. *Tejas.*

Narſes the Imperial General, notwithſtanding all theſe Services, was recall'd, and ſlighted by the Empreſs; upon which he was ſo provok'd, that he out of Revenge, invited the *Lombards* into *Italy*, who made themſelves Maſters of the North Weſt Part of that Country, and held it near two hundred Years. But the Eaſtern Emperors kept Poſſeſſion of ſome Part of it, and plac'd a Viceroy at *Ravenna*, the then Capital of that Part of *Italy*. *Narſes.*

To proceed now to the ſhort Race of the *Lombard* Kings, the firſt was

Alboin, who began his Reign in the Year 568. but after a Succeſſion of above twenty Princes, of which ſome were Orthodox Chriſtians, ſome Hereticks, ſome Papiſts, ſome Arians, *&c.* *Alboin*, 568.

Aſtulphus, the laſt King of the *Lombards* but one, took *Ravenna*, and put an end to the Eaſtern Emperor's Dominions in *Italy*, *Anno* 755. and proceeded to beſiege *Rome*; whereupon the Pope call'd *Pepin*, King of *France*, to his Aſſiſtance; and by his Help, compell'd *Aſtulphus* to ſurrender the Victory of *Ravenna*, and the Patrimony of the Church to the Pope; but *Aſtulphus* being kill'd by a Fall from his Horſe, *Aſtulph* 755

Didier ſucceeded as King of *Lombardy*; but he ſeizing on Part of the Pope's Patrimony, *Charlemain* the Son of King *Pepin* of *France*, march'd into *Italy* to the Pope's Aſſiſtance, and taking *Didier* Priſoner, confin'd him at *Liege*, which put an end to the Kingdom of the *Lombards*.

When the Regal Power of the *Lombards* was thus demoliſh'd, the Pope began to aſſume Sovereign Power over the City of *Rome*, and Territories thereunto belonging, which he holds to this Day, under the Name of *The Pope's Dominions*, or *The Eccleſiaſtical State*; or as ſome of our Geographers call it, much to the ſame Purpoſe, *The Land of the Church*, *or Papacy*.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

An Abſtract of the Hiſtory of the Popes of Rome, *with a Chronological Hiſtory of their reſpective Reigns.*

The original of the Pope.

THE Word Pope or *Papa*, [Father] was formerly common to Biſhops and all Eccleſiaſticks; but that Title was never given to Biſhop's of *Rome* more than to other Eccleſiaſticks, till near the end of the eleventh Century, when Pope *Gregory* held a Council at *Rome*; in which he order'd, that the Name of Pope, ſhould be peculiar to the Biſhop of *Rome* only.

THE Pope's Juriſdiction extended at firſt, no further than the ten Provinces of the *Roman* Dioceſs, *viz.* 1. *Campania*. 2. *Tuſcia* and *Umbria*. 3. *Picenum Suburbicarium*. 4. *Valeria*. 5. *Samnium*. 6. *Apulia* and *Calabria*. 7. *Lucania* and *Brutii*. 8. *Sicilia*. 9. *Sardinia*. And, 10. *Corſica*; and ſome Authors ſtick not to ſay that *Germany*, *France*, *Spain*, and even *Britain*, and *Africa*, &c. were not ſubject to the Pope at the firſt Beginning of the Papacy.

Puffendorf aſſigns ſeveral Reaſons for the Increaſe of the Pope's Authority, as 1. The Barbarity and Ignorance, which as the *Roman* Empire declin'd, over-ſpread the Weſtern Part of the World; for its juſtly obſerv'd, that the ignorant are the moſt eaſily impos'd upon by ſuperſtitious and ridiculous Stories; and when they found the ignorant apt to receive the Impreſſion, they multiply'd the Number of Monks, Friars, and other intereſted Emiſſaries, to purſue and forward the Deſign. They ſoon found it began to ſucceed, and as thoſe Caterpillars encreas'd, they not only grew ſtronger themſelves, but by their Impoſitions, drain'd the Purſes of the Laity, and made them leſs able to reſiſt or defend themſelves; for doubtleſs, where there is a Deſign to reduce People to Slavery, the ready way is to over-burthen them with Impoſitions; and then as one Party grows ſtronger, the other grows weaker in the ſame Proportion, which is a ready way to turn the Scale. Take a Pound out of one Scale and put it into another, and it will make two Pounds difference.

BUT the chief Thing that contributed to the eſtabliſhing of the Pope's Authority, was the Doctrine of his Infallibility, ſo induſtriouſly propagated, and by ſome ſo implicitly believ'd, notwithſtanding their Schiſms and double Elections, their having two or three Popes at a time of different Intereſts, and different Opinions too, *and yet all infallible*; their being obliged to ſubmit their Opinions to thoſe Princes whoſe Help they implor'd; and laſtly, their being defeated, impriſon'd, depos'd, *&c.* and other ſuch like Teſtimonies of their *Infallibility*. But their ſham Miracles, their ſcandalous Practices of ſelling Indulgences to thoſe who had Money to purchaſe them; and thereby tolerate the Purchaſers to be as wicked as they pleas'd: Theſe and the like were ſuch bare-fac'd Impoſitions, as made them at laſt become the Contempt of Chriſtendom; and inſtead of being deem'd *Infallible*, it was held, that a Council might depoſe them for Male-Adminiſtration. And yet notwithſtanding this, they ſtill gain'd Ground, and at laſt got themſelves rank'd into the following Liſt. And here it may be obſerv'd, that about ſixty of them acquired and retain'd the Epithet of St. or Saint, till Reaſon was found by judicious People to leave out the additional Character of *Saint*, and call them either by their own Names like Chriſtians, or by aſſum'd Names like Popes; however to give a Sanction to the Order, they begin with *St. Peter*, and proceed as in the following Liſt, with the Year of Chriſt, and the time they reign'd.

A. D.		*Reign'd Years.*
43	St. Peter	24
67	Linus	11
78	Cletus	12
91	Clement I.	9
101	Anacletus	9
110	Euariſtus	9
119	Alexander	10
13[illegible]	Sixtus I.	9
140	Telesphorus	11
152	Higinus	3
	This Pope was the firſt that order'd the Conſecration of Churches, and Godfathers and Godmothers in Baptiſm.	
156	Pius I. *He was the firſt that ſettled the Feaſt of* Eaſter *to be govern'd by the full Moon, in, or after* March.	
165	Aniceetus.	7
173	Soter	3
177	Eleutherus	15
192	Victor I.	9
	He excommunicated the Biſhops of Aſia *for celebrating* Eaſter, *on the ſame Day the* Jews *did; but ſeveral Biſhops reprehended him for ſo doing.*	
201	Zepherinus	18
219	Calixtus I.	5
224	Urban I.	6
231	Pontianus	4
235	Anterus —— *A few Months.*	
236	Fabian	16
251	Cornelius	2
	In his Time was the firſt Schiſm in the Church, by the Inſtigation of Novatian, *a Prieſt, call'd therefore the* Novatian Hereſy.	
253	Lucius	2
255	Stephen	2
257	Sixtus II.	1
258	Dennis	12
270	Felix	4
275	Eutychianus	8
283	Caius	12
296	Marcellinus	7
	He apoſtatiz'd in Dioclefian's *Perſecution, but repenting, reprehended* Dioclefian *for his Cruelties, and was for that put to Death.*	
304	Marcellus	4
309	Euſebius	2
311	Melchiades	2
314	Sylveſter	22
	He was compell'd by Maxentius *to leave* Rome, *but reſtor'd by* Conſtantine the Great. *In his Time the Council of* Nice *was held.*	

A. D.		*Reign'd Years.*
336	Mark, *Eight Months.*	
336	Julius	15
352	Liberius	13
365	Damasus	20
385	Siricius	13
398	Anastasius	4
402	Innocent	15
417	Zozimus	1
418	Bonifacc	5
423	Celestine	9
	This Pope took part with Augustine *against* Nestorius.	
432	Sixtus III.	8
440	Leo	21
461	Hilary	6
	Hilary *confirm'd the Councils of* Nice, Ephesus, *and* Chalcedon.	
467	Simplicius	16
	It is remarkable in this Pope, that he order'd the Church Benefices to be divided into four Parts, one for the Incumbant, one for other Ecclesiasticks, one for the Repairs of the Church, and one for the Poor.	
483	Felix III.	9
492	Gelasius	4
496	Anastasius II.	2
498	Symmachus	16
514	Hormisdus	9
523	John	3
526	Felix IV.	4
	He was the first that order'd Extream Unction.	
530	Boniface II.	2
532	John II.	3
535	Agapetus	1
536	Silverus	4
	He was baniſh'd by the Procurement of the Empress Theodora, *and ſtarv'd to Death.*	
540	Vigilius	15
555	Pelagius	4
559	John, *or* Catelinus	12
571	Benedict	6
577	Pelagius II.	13
590	Gregory	14
	He was the first that introduc'd the Doctrine of Purgatory, Invocation of Saints, &c. *and prohibited the eating of Fleſh, Milk, or Eggs, on Faſt-Days; and it is ſaid, that he was the firſt that forbid the Prieſts to marry, and obliged thoſe of them that were married, to put away their Wives; but upon finding ſeveral Infant's Skulls in the* Tiber, *and imputing thoſe Murders to the Reſtraint that he had laid upon the Clergy from marrying, he revok'd that Decree.*	
604	Sabinus *reign'd ſive Months, in which time he introduc'd the burning of Lamps in Churches.*	
605	Boniface III.	2
607	Boniface IV.	7
614	Deus Dedit	3
617	Boniface V.	9
626	Honorius	13
639	Severinus *Two Months.*	
639	John IV. Lent *was firſt begun to be obſerv'd in his Pontificate.*	2
641	Theodorus	8
649	Martin	6
655	Eugenius *Five Months.*	
655	Vitalianus	14
	He was the firſt that introduc'd Organs into the Churches.	
669	Adeodatus	7
676	Donus	2
678	Agatho	5
683	Leo II. *Ten Months.*	
684	Benedict *Eight Months.*	
685	John V.	1

A. D.		*Reign'd Years.*
686	Conon	1
687	Sergius	14
	He introduc'd the Cuſtom of the Popes changing their Names on an Election.	
701	John VI.	4
705	John VII.	3
708	Siſinius *Twenty Days.*	
708	Conſtantine	6
714	Gregory II.	17
731	Gregory III.	10
741	Zachary	13
754	Stephen II. *Four Days.*	
754	Stephen III.	3
757	Paul	11
	He began to build the Church of St. Peter's *at* Rome.	
768	Stephen IV.	4
772	Adrian	23
795	Leo III.	21
816	Stephen V.	1
817	Paſchal	7
824	Eugenius II.	3
827	Gregory IV.	19
844	Sergius II.	3
847	Leo IV.	5
852	Pope Joan, *though to hide the Sex as being unfit for an Eccleſiaſtick, they call'd her* John VIII. *but being deliver'd of a Child as ſhe went to the Church of* St. John de Lateran, *ſpoil'd her Infallibility, and ſhe was ſucceeded by*	
855	Benedict III.	3
858	Nicholas I. *Surnam'd the Great*	9
867	Adrian II.	5
	He was choſen without the Conſent of the Emperor, and being inveſted with that independent Authority, order'd, that neither the Emperor, nor any Lay-man, ſhould from that time have any hand in electing the Pope.	
872	John VIII.	10
882	Martin II.	2
884	Adrian III.	1
885	Stephen VI.	5
	He firſt appointed the Sign of the Croſs in Baptiſm, and other Parts of Worſhip.	
890	Formoſus	7
897	Stephen VII.	4
901	Theodorus II. *Twenty Days.*	
901	John IX.	4
905	Benedict IV. *Leſs than a Year.*	
906	Leo V. *Forty Days.*	
906	Chriſtopher *Seven Months.*	
907	Sergius III.	3
910	Anaſtaſius III.	2
912	Lando *Not a Year.*	
913	John X.	15
928	Leo VI. *Six Months.*	
929	Stephen VIII.	2
931	John XI.	4
936	Leo VII.	3
939	Stephen IX.	4
943	Martin III.	6
949	Agapetus III.	6
955	John XII.	7
962	Leo VIII. *The Uſurper*	2
964	Benedict V.	1
965	John XIII.	7
972	Donus II. *Two Months.*	
972	Benedict VI.	3
975	Benedict VII.	9
984	John XIV.	1
985	John XV.	11
996	Gregory V.	3
999	Sylveſter II.	4
1003	John XVII. *A few Months.*	
1003	John XVIII.	6
1009	Sergius IV.	3

A. D.		*Reign'd Years.*
1012	Benedict VIII.	12
1024	John XIX.	10
1034	Benedict IX.	10
1044	Gregory VI.	2
1046	Clement II. *Nine Months.*	
1047	Damasus II. *Twenty three Days.*	
1049	Leo XI.	5
1054	Victor II.	3
1057	Stephen X.	1
1058	Nicholas II.	3
1061	Alexander II.	12
1073	Gregory VII.	13
1086	Victor III.	1
1087	Urban II.	12
1099	Paschal II.	19
1118	Gelasius II.	1
1119	Calixtus II.	5
1124	Honorius II.	6
1130	Innocent II.	13
1143	Celestine II. *Five Months.*	
1143	Lucius II.	1
1145	Eugenius III.	8
1153	Anastasius IV.	1
1154	Adrian IV.	5
1159	Alexander III.	22
1181	Lucius III.	4
1185	Urban III.	2
1187	Gregory VIII. *Not a Year.*	
1188	Clement III.	3
1191	Celestine III.	8
	He took Part with Richard III. *King of* England *against the Barons.*	
1199	Innocent III.	17
	He first appointed Auricular Confession.	
1216	Honorius III.	11
	He first order'd Kneeling at the Elevation of the Host.	
1227	Gregory IX.	14
1241	Celestine IV. *Poison'd in twenty eight Days.*	
1241	Innocent IV.	13
	He was the first that order'd the Cardinals to wear Red Hats.	
1254	Alexander IV.	7
1261	Urban IV.	4
1265	Clement IV.	6
1271	Gregory X.	5
1276	Innocent V.	
1276	Adrian V.	
1276	John XXI.	1
1277	Nicholas III.	4
1281	Martin IV.	4
1285	Honorius IV.	2
1287	Nicholas IV.	4
	After him there was an Inter-regnum of near three Years.	
1294	Celestine V. *He was chosen out of an Hermitage; and after he had reign'd five Months, he resign'd, and return'd to his Hermitage again.*	
1295	Boniface VIII.	8
1303	Benedict X. *Nine Months.*	
	In this Pope's time the See was remov'd to Avignon, *and the Reigns of the respective Popes there were as follow.*	
1305	Clement V. *He was elected after an Inter-regnum; after which, he and his Successors resided at* Avignon *for seventy Years: which because the See was then remov'd from* Rome, *was by the* Romans *call'd the* Babilonish Captivity. *He reign'd*	11
1316	John XXII.	18
1334	Benedict XI.	8
1342	Clement VI.	10
	He order'd the Jubilee *to be held once in fifty Years.*	
1352	Innocent VI.	12
	He was a Frenchman, *and burnt* Joannes de Rupe, *because in his Interpretation of the Apocalypse, he call'd the Pope Antichrist.*	
1364	Urban V.	6
	He first order'd, and wore the Triple Crown.	
1370	Gregory XI.	8
	He left Avignon, *and remov'd the See to* Rome.	
	After the See was re-settled at Rome,	
1378	Urban VI.	11
1389	Boniface	15
1404	Innocent VII.	2
1406	Gregory XII.	3
1409	Alexander V.	1
1416	John XXIII.	7
1417	Martin V.	14
1431	Eugene IV.	16
1455	Calixtus III.	3
1458	Pius II.	6
1464	Paul III.	7
1471	Sixtus IV.	13
1484	Innocent VIII.	8
1492	Alexander VI.	11
1503	Pius III. *Twenty six Days.*	
1503	Julius II.	10
1513	Leo X.	9
	He gave King Henry VIII. *the Title of* Defender of the Faith *for writing against* Luther.	
1522	Adrian VI.	1
1523	Clement VII,	11
	It is remarkable, that in this Pontificate, King Henry VIII. *of* England, *divorc'd his Queen without consulting the Pope, whereupon the Pope excommunicated him; but the King was so far from being affrighted at his Anathema's, that he threw off the Pope's Supremacy; and in Contempt of the Papal Dignity, began the Reformation in* England.	
1534	Paul III.	16
	He cited King Henry VIII. *to appear at* Rome, *and charg'd him with Adultery, and absolved his Subjects from their Allegiance; but they look'd upon this as only an usurp'd Power, and only confirm'd them in their Aversion to the See of* Rome.	
1550	Julius III.	5
1555	Marcellus II. *Twenty one Days.*	
1555	Paul IV.	4
	He upon his Death Bed recommended the Inquisition as the only Support of Popery.	
1559	Pius IV.	7
1566	Pius V.	6
1572	Gregory XIII.	13
1585	Sixtus V.	5
	He encouraged the Attempt against England *with the* Armada *in the Year* 1588.	
1590	Urban VI. *Thirteen Days.*	
1590	Gregory XIV. *Not one Year.*	
1592	Clement VIII.	13
1605	Leo XI. *Twenty five Days.*	
1605	Paul V.	16
1621	Gregory XV.	2
1623	Urban VIII.	21
1644	Innocent X.	11
1655	Alexander VII.	12
1667	Clement IX.	3
1670	Clement X.	6
1676	Innocent XI.	14
1690	Alexander VIII.	1
1691	Innocent XII.	9
1700	Clement XI.	21
1721	Innocent XIII.	3
1724	Benedict XIII.	
	This Benedict *is the present Pope.*	

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Ceremony obſerv'd at the Death of the POPE, *and at the Election of his Succeſſor.*

UPON the Death of a Pope, Notice is immediately given to the Sacred College, the Nobility, and Courts of Juſtice; and the ſame Day or the next, the Cardinal Chamberlain, dreſs'd in Purple, and attended by the Clerks of the Chamber, and ſome Members of the Council comes and views the Corps, and calls aloud by his Chriſtian Name, to ask him if he is dead; but the Queſtion is ask'd in *Italian*, as for Inſtance: If the Pope's Name was *Calixtus*, they cry *Calixtus, ſei morto? Or*, Calixtus, *Art thou dead?* And after a Pauſe, as if they waited for the dead Pope's Anſwer, and he not regarding them; he that ask'd the Queſtion, proceeds to give an Anſwer himſelf, and ſays, *Calixtus e Morto*, Calixtus *is dead.* He then takes the Seal, call'd *L' annello del Piſcatore*, or, the Fiſherman's Ring, he breaks it, and thereupon the great Bell in the Capital is immediately rung to give Notice to the Citizens of the Death of the Pope, that Bell never being mov'd but upon that Occaſion; and immediately Expreſſes are ſent to all the abſent Cardinals, and to all Roman-Catholick Princes and States, to ſummon them to the Election of another Pope.

DURING the Inter-regnum, the Cardinal-Chamberlain has the Adminiſtration of the Government, even as far as the Article of Coining Money, with his own Arms on one Side, and the Croſs-Keys on the reverſe. When the Corps is waſh'd and embalm'd, it is carried to St. *Paul's* Chapel in the *Vatican*, and dreſs'd in the Pontifical Habit, and from thence attended to St. *Peter's*, and plac'd in the Chapel of *Sixtus* V. on a Magnificent Bed of State, ſurrounded by a vaſt Number of Wax Lights, which burn Night and Day, the Prieſts in the mean time praying for the Repoſe of the Deceaſed's Soul. The Feet of the deceas'd Pope are ſet cloſe to the Iron Baluſtrade, which opens into the Chapel, where Multitudes of People crowd to kiſs them, eſpecially Women; imagining their paying this Veneration to God's Vicar on Earth, will be of great Advantage to them hereafter. On the Ninth Day, the Corps is put into a Coffin or Coffins, the firſt of Cedar, the ſecond of Lead, with ſixty of the deceas'd Pope's Coronation Medals; twenty of Gold, twenty of Silver, and twenty of Braſs; after which, the Funeral being ſolemniz'd, the Corps is convey'd to a little old Church, and depoſited there till he be removed to the Monument, which is commonly erected for the Deceas'd during his Life time; and there is commonly a magnificent Cavalcade at the Funeral.

THE Election of the Pope is perform'd in the Conclave, and is now manag'd by the Cardinals alone, without being confin'd to the Opinion of any other Power, excepting ſo far as receiving Addreſſes or Recommendations. And here the Word Conclave is underſtood in a two-fold Senſe; either as the Place where the Cardinals meet, or as the Cardinals ſo met, as we in *England* underſtand the Word Church; but they are not confin'd to any one Place, for the Conclave, only to have a Place large enough to receive and contain them, which of late has been a large Gallery in the Palace of the *Vatican*; where upon that Occaſion, there are prepar'd as many Apartments (ſeparated by Deal Boards) as there are Cardinals, with Lodgings, and Conveniencies for Servants, of which no Cardinal is allow'd above two at moſt, except in Caſe of Sickneſs; or if he be a Prince, he is allow'd three.

THE Day after the Pope's Funeral, (which is always celebrated the ninth Day after his Death) the Cardinals meet at the Cathedral, and celebrate high Maſs of the Holy Ghoſt; and then they go in Proceſſion to the high Palace of the *Vatican*, and having ſung the *Veni Creator*, and heard the uſual Prayers in St. *Paul's* Chapel, and ſworn to obſerve certain Articles for the better Government of the Church, they retire to their Cells, when every Body is order'd to quit the Place except the Members of the Conclave, the two Maſters of the Ceremonies, a Secretary, a Confeſſor, a Phyſician, and a Surgeon; and the Marſhal locks up all the Doors and Paſſages into the *Vatican*, which are guarded by the Militia of *Rome*, to prevent all Communication with the People without Doors; and further to prevent any ſuch Intercourſe, there is one appointed to inſpect into every Diſh that is brought in, to take Care no Letters of Intelligence ſhould be hid in the Meat; and that nothing may be convey'd clandeſtinely, all the Victuals is deliver'd in thro' a Hole left in the Wall for that Purpoſe; ſo that it is impoſſible it ſhould eſcape the Inſpector's Obſervation, except himſelf ſhould connive at what he ſees.

THERE are three ways of electing a Pope, or rather four; as firſt by Scrutiny, when every Cardinal writes in a Paper, the Name of the Perſon he votes for; or by Acceſs, when the Cardinals ariſe from their Places, and addreſs themſelves perſonally to the Perſon they intend to chuſe; or by Adoration, when their Deſign of voting for the Perſon intended is expreſs'd by a profound Veneration or Reverence; and the fourth way of chuſing a Pope is, when Differences run very high, they refer the Matter to three, or five (for it muſt be an odd Number) of them to determine the Election.

WHEN the Election is determin'd, the new Pope is cloath'd in his Pontifical Habit; and being placed before the Altar, he receives the Adoration of the Cardinals, who kiſs his Feet, Hands, and Mouth, and then the Doors of the Conclave are thrown open; and the Pope being led to the Lodge of Benediction, and ſhewing himſelf to the People, the firſt Cardinal-Deacon cries with a loud Voice, *I declare you Tydings of great Joy, the Reverend Cardinal* [Here he calls the new Pope by his Name] *is elected Pope, and has chosen the Name of* [Here he mentions his new aſſum'd Name, as *Benedict*, *Innocent*, &c.] and to this is added a great deal of Ceremony at his Inauguration.

SOME Days after this, they perform the Ceremony of his Coronation before St. *Peter's* Church, where a Throne is erected, and he being plac'd thereon, his Mitre is taken off, and the Triple Crown, embelliſh'd with rich Jewels, is plac'd upon

upon his Head; which is ſaid to be in that Form, to repreſent his Spiritual Dignity, his Temporal Dignity, or Authority, and his being ſupreme Judge and Legiſlator of all Chriſtians.

THERE is a great Ceremony perform'd in the new Pope's taking Poſſeſſion of the Church of St. *John de Lateran*, which is his Cathedral, as Biſhop of *Rome*. The Cardinals march in Order before him, and he is attended by all the foreign Ambaſſadors, Nobility, and Perſons of Diſtinction, Eccleſiaſtical and Secular, in and about *Rome*. When he comes at the Church, he knocks three times at the Door, which the Arch-Prieſt immediately opens, and preſents him with two Keys, one of Gold, and the other of Silver; which done, the reſt of the Canons kiſs his Slipper. Then the Pope advances to the high Altar, where he ſits enthron'd, and the Cardinals, and the reſt of the Clergy, are admitted to the Honour of kiſſing his Slipper. And after ſome other Ceremonies, his Holineſs bleſſes the People, and then returns to his Palace in the ſame State in which he came there.

CHAP. V.

Of the Eccleſiaſtical Power and Government of the Pope, *with an Enquiry into the Principal Points wherein the Church of* Rome *differs from the Church of* England; *with ſome Account of the Court of* Rome, *and of the Pope's Temporal Government.*

THE Pope's Power is diſtinguiſh'd into Eccleſiaſtical and Temporal; the Eccleſiaſtical is allow'd in all Places in the World where the Roman Catholick Religion is profeſs'd; the Temporal, is confin'd to the Pope's Territories in *Italy*. The Pope and his Adherents, the better to draw the World into Obedience to his Eccleſiaſtical Power, give out, that he is Chriſt's Lieutenant, and has Power to diſpenſe the Merits of our Saviour to whom he pleaſes; and that thoſe who refuſe to acknowledge this Prerogative, are incapable of Eternal Salvation: And hence, if they can once draw People into an Opinion, that it is in the Pope's Power to Damn or Save, it is natural to believe, that they will readily conform to his Doctrines, and become Proſelytes, and even throw off their Obedience to their Temporal Princes; and by this Artifice, has the Papal Power increas'd by Degrees, when People knew no better.

Some Remarks, wherein the Church of Rome *differs from the Church of* England.

THE Church of *Rome* maintains ſo many additional Articles to the Primitive Creeds, and eſpecially that one, of the Pope's Infallibility, that the knowing Part of the Chriſtian World begin to deſpiſe her Doctrines. For we find upon the Death of a Pope, the Clergy, or that ſelect Body of them call'd the Conclave, are at a Loſs to know where this Infallibility is lodg'd; and indeed, upon an impartial Enquiry, without any ſtrict Scrutiny, the Truth is found to be, that Infallibility is not lodg'd in any human Being, either amongſt the Roman Catholicks under all their Superſtition, or (which is what we do not pretend to) in the Church of *England*, under the happy Effects of a Reformation.

Infallibility

ANOTHER Doctrine is Purgatory, or the Fire that purges and cleanſes them from the Guilt of all venial involuntary Sins, which they had not time to attone for by Penances, and other meritorious Sufferings and Performances upon Earth; maintain'd by as good Authority as the former.

Purgatory

A THIRD Sort of Doctrine is that of Indulgences; the Pope pretending to have a Power to remit the Puniſhment due to Sinners, to exempt them from the Pains of Hell and Purgatory, and to grant Indulgence or Toleration for Sins hereafter to be committed.

FOURTHLY, *Limbo*, or the Confines of Hell, reſerv'd for thoſe who are too good to go to Hell, or not good enough to go to Heaven; and amongſt theſe, they rank Children that die without being initiated into the Church by Baptiſm. *Limbo*

FIFTHLY, Worſhiping of Saints and Angels, and craving their Interceſſion, and adoring the Images and Relicks of them. Worſhiping of Images.

SIXTHLY, The Sacrifice of the Maſs, which they hold propitiatory, both for the Living and Dead; and to this we may add, Tranſubſtantiation, or the Bread and Wine being changed into the Body and Blood of Chriſt immediately upon the Words of Conſecration; and that in ſuch an abſolute and perfect Manner, that although the Appearances, and Accidents, continue to make the ſame Impreſſion upon the Mind and Senſes, as before the Words were pronounc'd; yet you are obliged to believe, that they are then real Fleſh and Blood, and that the ſole and natural Body of Chriſt, with all its Parts and Blood, is as entire in every ſmall Particle of Bread, as it was upon the Croſs. Tranſubſtantiation.

We might obſerve another Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, and that is Tradition; but the Uſe they make of that Doctrine is, one would think, beyond the Reach of a Chriſtian's Belief: They ſay it is a kind of Errata, or Supplement to the Holy Scriptures, to ſupply whatſoever is imperfect or defective therein; and therefore they ſuppreſs the reading of the Scriptures in common Families. And more effectually to ſuppreſs the reading of the Scriptures, they keep them lock'd up in an unknown Language, and forbid the reading of them in their own Mother's Tongue; and leſt ſome ſhould yet believe the Scripture, or be govern'd by its Dictates, they have ſet up the Inquiſition to put an end to all Diſputes, and to compel them to believe as the Church believes, whatever Scripture or Conſcience dictate to the contrary. Tradition

Of the Court of Rome, *and of the Pope's Temporal Government.*

THE Pope, beſides his Eccleſiaſtical Power, is, as a Temporal Prince, one of the moſt abſolute Monarchs in *Europe*; he holds, indeed, a Conſiſtory of Cardinals, who are his Council in Eccleſiaſtical Affairs, but never meddle in the Civil Government. Theſe Cardinals are elected by the Pope, but he is cautious as to

electing Persons of high Birth, or those that descend from Sovereign Princes, because of the Disturbances that have been occasion'd by the too potent Interest of such: But if any of such a high Rank happens to obtain a Cardinal's Cap, they are seldom, if ever, advanc'd to the Papal Chair, lest they should endeavour to fix it in their Families and make it Hereditary.

The Pope's chief Minister is, the *Cardinal Patron*, commonly a Nephew, or near Relation, to the Pope. The second Minister is the Pope's Vicar, who is always a Cardinal. 3. The Chancellor, who is always a Cardinal. 4. The Cardinal Chamberlain. 5. The Prefect of the Signature of Justice, a Cardinal. 6. The General, who commands the Troops and fortify'd Places. 7. The Penitentiary. 8. The Master of the sacred Palace. 9. The Vestry-keeper. 10. The Pope's Secretary. 11. The Governor of *Rome*, who has the Cognizance of Civil and Criminal Causes in the City. 12. The Treasurer-General. 13. The Marshal of *Rome*, always a Foreigner, and has the Cognizance of Causes between Citizens and Strangers. 14. Four Masters of Ceremonies. 15. The *Major Domo*, or Steward of the Houshold. 16. The Chamberlains of Honour. 17. The Master of the Stables. And, 18. The General of the Pope's Guard.

The Principal Courts of *Rome* are, 1. The Consistory of Cardinals. 2. The Congregation of the Holy Office, or, as they call them, the Supreme Court of Inquisition. 3. The Apostolick Chamber, which manages the Revenues of the Ecclesiastical State. 4. The Court of *Rota*, who have the Cognizance of Canonization of Saints, *&c.* 5. The Court of Datary, who dispose of vacant Benefices. 6. The Court of Penitentiary, who take Cognizance of all Bulls, Dispensations, *&c.*

The *Campania* of *Rome* is under the immediate Government of the Pope; but the other Provinces of the Ecclesiastical State are govern'd by his Legates, or other Deputies. The Pope in those Territories engrosses the Corn to himself, by obliging the Owners of Land, to sell it to his Agents at so low a Price, that some of them had rather let their Land lie fallow, than be at the Pains to cultivate it, when they know they shall get little or nothing by it; but this cannot be always the Case, for then in process of Time, there would be no Corn for the People, nor Money for Duty upon it, to be paid to the Sovereign.

CHAP. VI.

A Description of other remarkable Places in the Campania *of* Rome, *and of other Provinces and Towns in the* Pope's *Dominions.*

THE City of *Tivoli*, or the antient *Tibur*, is situate on the Side of a Hill, near the River *Teverone*, about twenty Miles to the Eastward of *Rome*: This Hill is cover'd with Olive-trees for five or six Miles together, and adorn'd with beautiful Villa's and Palaces; from which Eminency, there is a glorious Prospect over most of the *Campania* as far as *Rome* itself; but *Tivoli* is now reduc'd to a small Village, encompass'd by an old, ordinary Wall, but it is still a Bishop's See.

Palestrina is about ten Miles to the Eastward of *Tivoli*, and thirty Eastward from *Rome*; it stands at the Foot of the same Mountain on which the antient *Prænestæ* stood, famous for the *Temple of Fortune*. The *Granite* Pillars, and other Parts of the Ruins of this antient Temple, yet remain; but what is most valuable, is a beautiful Mosaick Pavement, so well join'd together, that the whole looks like one continued Picture; and the Stones are so disposed, as to represent both Animals and Landscapes in a lively Manner, though the Out-lines and Shadings, are distinguish'd by only the different Colours of the Marble, of which the Pavement is compos'd.

Frescatti is a little Town on the Brow of a Hill, famous for the *Tusculum* of *Cicero*, calld *Grotto Ferrare*, Mr. *Addison* compares it to *Versailles*; as to the Walks and Water-works; though *Misson*, a *Frenchman*, denies the Comparison, and thinks it much interior to *Versailles*; but perhaps this may be imputed to the *Frenchman*'s Ambition rather than real Fact; and I humbly conceive Mr. *Addison*, an indifferent Person, and no Native of either Place, is fittest to be believ'd. *Frescatti.*

Castel Gandolpho is about ten Miles South East from *Rome*, considerable only for a Palace of the Pope, where he sometimes resides for a Season in the Spring and Autumn.

Albano, built out of the Ruins of the antient *Alba Longa*, but twelve Miles South East from *Rome*; it is remarkable for the Prospect from the *Capuchin's* Gardens, which, as Mr. *Addison* tells us, takes in the whole *Campania* of *Rome*, and terminates in a full View of the *Tuscan* Sea. *Albano* is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Rome*, and held by one of the six eldest Cardinals.

Cisternæ is about thirty five Miles South East from *Rome*; near it, is the three Taverns, mention'd by St. *Paul*, in his Journey to *Rome*.

Other Places of less Note are, *Sermoneta*, *Anagni*, *Ferentini*, *Piperno*, *Terracina*, *Nettuno*.

Ostia, it lies at the Mouth of the *Tiber*; but the Harbour being choak'd up, it is a Place of little Note at present, only it is a Bishop's See, united to *Velitry*.

Another Province of the Pope's Dominions, *St Pat.* is St. *Peter's Patrimony*, on the North West of *Patrim.* *Campania*. Chief Towns are,

1. *Viterbo*, the Capital of the Province, formerly call'd *Tetrapolis*, as consisting of three Towns united in one; it is at the Foot of Mount *Cyminus*, about forty Miles to the Northward of *Rome*. It is a Bishop's See.

2. *Montefiascon*, about eight Miles North West of *Viterbo*; remarkable for nothing but the Wine it produces, call'd there, *Muscatella* Wine.

3. *Civita Vecchia*, is a Sea-port on the *Tuscan* Sea, about thirty Miles North West from *Rome*, and is one of the best Harbours upon that Coast.

Other Places, but of less Note in this Province, are *Bracciano*, *Rouciglione*, *Caprarola*, *Castro*, *Orvieto*, and *Aquapendente*.

The Province of *Sabina* lies North East from *Campania*. The chief Towns are, *Magliano*, *Viconaro*, and *Correse*.

The Province of *Umbria* lies to the North- *Umbr.* ward of *Campania*, and Eastward of St. *Peter's Patrimony*; it produces Plenty of Corn, Wine, Oil, and Fruit. Chief Town is *Spoletto*, from whence this Province is sometimes call'd the Dutchy of *Spoletto*. It stands near the Brook *Tissino*,

Teſſino, about forty five Miles North Eaſt from *Rome*; it is but a poor City, and not populous. The moſt remarkable Things here, are the old, but noble Cathedral, and an Aqueduct of three hundred and fifty Paces in Length, which joins the Mountain of *St. Francis*, and that of *Spoletto* together; and lies ſeven hundred Feet above the Middle of the Valley over which it runs. Other Towns are, *Foligne*, *Narni*, *Ceſis*, *Terni*, *Rieti*, *Norcia*, *Perugia*, or *Peruſa*, about ſix Miles from the Lake of *Thraſimene*.

The Marquiſate of *Ancona* lies between the Kingdom of *Naples*, and the Gulf of *Venice*. Chief Towns are,

1. *Ancona*, on a Promontory on the Coaſt of the *Adriatick* Sea, about an hundred and twenty Miles North Eaſt from *Rome*, and ſixty South Eaſt from *Urbino*. It has a good Harbour, and the Citadel commands both the Harbour and the Town; but it is a dear Place, and their Trade at a very low Ebb, notwithſtanding that the Pope has made it a free Port. I meet with a Remark with reſpect to the Gulf of *Venice*, which if true, is difficult to be accounted for; and that is, that at *Venice*, and at the Bottom of the Gulf, the Tide riſes four Feet; that at *Ancona*, above half way up the Gulf, it riſes but two Feet; and that at the Entrance of the Gulf, there is no Tide at all.

2. The City of *Loretto*, ſo call'd from a Grove of Laurel there, ſtands on an Eminence, three Miles from the Gulf of *Venice*, fifteen Miles South of *Ancona*, and an hundred and forty five to the Eaſtward of *Rome*. It is true, it ſtands in a pleaſant, fruitful Soil, but ſuch miſerable Roads to it, that if the Roman Catholicks were to undertake their Pilgrimages purely for a voluntary Puniſhment, they could ſcarce have found a Place to go to that would better have anſwer'd the Purpoſe; and yet it is ſaid, there is not leſs than an hundred thouſand Pilgrims there at a time; and yet the City conſiſts of only one large Street within the Gate, and an another without.

The vaſt Heaps of Wealth hoarded together here, as well as in other religious Places in *Italy*, may be look'd upon as ſo many Magazines or Treaſuries of the Church; but as to the Manner, how *Loretto* became ſo much admir'd by the Pilgrims, there is an Account hung up in the Cathedral of *Loretto* in ſeveral Languages; the Subſtance whereof, is to the following Purpoſe, *viz.* That this was the very Chamber near *Jeruſalem*, in which the Virgin *Mary* was born, and ſaluted by the Angel; and that ſhe conceiv'd, and brought up her Son *Jeſus* here till he was twelve Years of Age; and that after the Aſcenſion of our Saviour, the Apoſtles conſecrated it to the Honour of the Bleſſed Virgin; and that St. *Luke* drew a Picture of her, which is to be ſeen here to this Day; but that the Natives apoſtatizing from Chriſt, and becoming the Diſciples of *Mahomet*, the Angels carried it [this very Chamber, that was once near *Jeruſalem*] into *Dalmatia*, and placed it on a Mountain call'd *Terſatto*, near the Gulf of *Venice*; but the People there, not expreſſing a due Veneration for it, the Angels tranſported it over the *Adriatick* Sea, to a Wood about three Miles from *Loretto*, the Territory being ſo call'd, from its belonging to a Lady, named *Loretto*, from whence it obtain'd the Name of *Our Lady of* Loretto: And after it had remain'd here eight Months, it was upon the Wickedneſs of the Natives removed to the Hill where it now ſtands. But a Controverſy ariſing between the two Brothers to whom the Ground belong'd, it was about four Months after, remov'd a little further into a high Way, where they built a magnificent Church over it, which is the preſent Cathedral; under the Middle of the Cupola of which, this travelling Chamber now remains. This holy Chamber is ſurrounded with four Marble Walls to preſerve it, but there remains no more of it at preſent than the four Walls, compos'd of a reddiſh Stone, which is not to be found any where but near *Nazareth*; but Mr. *Miſſon* (though a *Frenchman*) tells us, that the Pretence of thoſe Stones coming from near *Nazareth*, is a Fiction; and that they have on purpoſe to carry on the Deluſion, made Choice of Bricks of different Shape and Bigneſs, with ſome greyiſh, and reddiſh Stones, which are common there; and that the Cement is common Lime and Sand, as in other ordinary Buildings.

But the further to confirm the Ignorant in their Belief of this wonderful Travelling Chamber, they ſay, that at the firſt Arrival of this Houſe at *Loretto*, the Inhabitants were ſurpriz'd, as not knowing from whence it came, till the Bleſſed Virgin appear'd to a devout Man in his Sleep, and declar'd the Manner of its Removal, and the Time, which was in the Year 1296. who diſcovering it to the Governor, he ſent ſixteen Perſons to *Nazareth*, who meaſured the Foundation from whence it was taken, and found every Dimenſion agree with thoſe of the Houſe of *Loretto*. They alſo ſaw an Inſcription on an adjoining Wall, ſpecifying that it had left that Place. This Concurrence of Teſtimonies, or rather Illuſions, ſo well adapted to confirm one another, has prevail'd with thoſe that were weak enough to believe what is reported concerning this Holy Houſe.

But the further to ſupport this Legend, it is reported that *Paul Silvia*, a Hermit of great Sanctity, declar'd, that going thither to Matins on the eighth of *September* every Year two Hours before Day, he ſaw a Light deſcend from Heaven upon the Holy Houſe; this he concluded was the Bleſſed Virgin, that deſcended every Year upon that Day, being her Birth-Day, according to Tradition.

They bring ſeveral other Articles in Favour of this Opinion of the wonderful Removal, or Flight of this Houſe; but as what I have already mention'd is more than either a Papiſt can maintain or a Proteſtant believe, I ſhall give a little Hint of the Deſcription of this Holy Houſe.

The Holy Houſe is ſituated Eaſt and Weſt; towards the Eaſt, ſtands the Lady of *Loretto* over a Chimney, with a little Jeſus on her right Arm; her Image is of Cedar, and as they give out, is the Workmanſhip of St. *Paul*'s own Hands, and brought hither with the Houſe; it is about four Feet high, with a tripple Crown upon her Head, and adorn'd with Rubies, Pearls, golden Lamps, *&c.* which it is ſaid, abound ſo much there, that it is no Wonder that the Lady of *Loretto* has ſo many Pilgrims to viſit her.

Urbino, the Capital of the Dutchy of *Urbino*, is about twenty Miles from the Gulf of *Venice*, and an hundred North Eaſt from *Rome*. Pope *Urban* VIII. from whoſe Name it is ſaid the City took its Name, being an intimate Friend of the laſt Duke's; and having in Time of Need, made him a Preſent of an hundred thouſand Ducats; he ſo entirely won the Duke's Heart, that he bequeath'd, and annex'd it to the See of *Rome*, about the Year 1630. and it is a Part of the Eccleſiaſtical State ever ſince. *Urbino*

But I ſhall not dwell upon the Deſcription of every inſignificant Biſhop's See in *Italy*; ſome of the Capitals of which, are not bigger than ſome of our Country Market-Towns; therefore to paſs by ſome of the leaſt material of them, I come next to,

Ravenna,

Ravenna. *Ravenna*, ſituate three Miles from the *Adriatick* Sea, and an hundred North Weſt of *Ancona*, and eighty Miles South of *Venice*. It is ſaid, it once ſtood upon certain Iſlands like *Venice*, and then it was a good Harbour; but it is now not only dry, but the Water is retired about three Miles from it; and the Ground that was formerly under Water, is now one of the moſt fruitful Plains in *Italy*. It was the Reſidence of *Honorius* the Emperor, and of many of the *Gothick* Kings; and afterwards the Capital of the Eaſtern Emperor's Dominions in *Italy*, where their Viceroys held their Courts; but ever ſince the Year 1512. it hath been in a declining Condition, and now moſt of the Trade is loſt, and the Town thinly peopled. What is remarkable here, is, Wine is ſo plenty, and good Water ſo ſcarce, that to a good Cuſtomer, they had rather put them off with entire Wine, than be at the Trouble to procure good Water to mix it with; though Wine and Water mix'd, is the ſame Price as Wine alone.

Bologna. THE Province of *Bologna* lies between *Romania* on the Eaſt, and the *Modeneſe* on the Weſt; it is a fruitful Country, abounding in Corn, Wine, Oil, Flax, and Fruit. Chief Town is,

Bologna, or *Bolonia*, or by ſome *Bononia*; it is ſituate upon ſeveral little Rivulets, and a navigable Canal, by which it has a Communication with *Ferrara*, and a Branch of the *Po*. This City is about ſixty Miles North Weſt of *Florence*, and above two hundred Miles North Weſt from *Rome*. The Country between *Florence* and *Bologna* is a Chain of the barren *Appenine* Hills; but the *Italians* imitate the Example of their Anceſtors, being extraordinary induſtrious in making new Roads, and repairing old ones. The City of *Bologna* is of a circular Form, of five or ſix Miles in Circumference, ſurrounded with a ſingle Wall, but of no great Strength. It is computed that the Town contains about ſeventy thouſand Souls; what they are moſt remarkable for is their Sauſages, ſo well known, that moſt Nations in *Europe* endeavour to imitate them; and here in *London* they attempt to imitate them under the corrupt Name of *Polonia* Puddings, or *Polonia* Sauſages ready dreſs'd, and cry them about the Streets.

Ferrara ſtands upon a Branch of the *Po*, about four Miles diſtant from the main Stream, with which it has a Communication. It is about eighty Miles South Weſt of *Venice*; it is about four or five Miles in Circumference; it is but poorly fortify'd, and thinly peopled, and is in a declining Condition. *Ferrara.*

A DESCRIPTION OF THE Kingdom of *NAPLES.*

CHAP. I.

Treats of the Situation, and Extent of the Kingdom of Naples; *the Seas, Ports, Lakes, Rivers, and Mountains; with a Deſcription of the City of* Naples, *and the Rarities to be ſeen in, and near that famous City, and in other Parts of that Kingdom.*

ITALY ſo nearly reſembles a Man's Leg, that the Sight of the Map of it readily diſcovers its Form. The South Eaſt Part of it is the Kingdom of *Naples*, which contains the Foot, and that Part of the Leg below the Calf. The Kingdom of *Naples* thus conſider'd, is bounded on the North Eaſt by the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*; on the South Eaſt, by the *Ionian* Sea; by the *Tuſcan* Sea on the North Weſt; and by the Church Lands, or Pope's Dominions, on the North. Their Seas are, the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tuſcan*; on which, the chief Ports are, *Naples*, *Baia*, *Maremonto*, *Gaieta*, *Trani*, *Brindiſi*, and *Taremo*. The moſt conſiderable Lakes are, *Agnano*, *Averno*, *Lucrino*, *Patria*, *Leſina*, *Varano*, *Focino*, *Andronico*, *Auſanto*, *Vignola*, *Perito*, and *Baccino*. Chief Rivers, the *Volturna*, *Garigliano*, *Tronto*, *Piſcara*, *Sangro*, *Tortore*, *Candeloro*, *Uſente*, *Vaſento*, *Acriſino*, *Sarno*, and *Riofredo*. To theſe we may add ſeveral others which are inconſiderable, becauſe not navigable; and of theſe, they reckon up an hundred and forty ſmall Rivers, whoſe Courſe is ſhort, becauſe their Deſcent is ſteep from the *Apennine* Hills, and flow immediately into ſome of the aforeſaid Seas; but thoſe Rivers in their ſhort Paſſage enrich the Soil, and make it capable of producing the moſt delicious Fruits, Wines, &c. The principal Mountains are, thoſe of the *Apennine*, *Veſuvius*, *Pauſilippo*, and *Falerno*.

Seas.

Lakes.

Rivers.

THE Kingdom of *Naples* is divided into four Parts, *viz. Terra di Lavora*, *Abruzzo*, *Apuglia*, and *Calabria*.

IN *Terra di Lavora*, the chief Towns are,

Naples.

1. *Naples*, the Capital, called *Neapolis*, the antient *Parthenope*; it ſtands on the Declivity of an Hill, and is one of the fineſt Bays that ever the Sea form'd. The Bay is about thirty Miles from Point to Point; the Iſland *Capraæ* ſtanding in the Mouth of the Bay, as if planted there to break off the Waves, and make the Harbour more commodious. On the Eaſt Side of *Naples*, is a large Plain, which extends towards Mount *Veſuvius*. There is ſo bold a Shore at *Naples*, that I have ſeen Veſſels of conſiderable Burthen lie cloſe to the Keys. Wine, and Oil, and all Sorts of Proviſions, are exceeding good, and cheap, and plenty; which might be a great Inducement to any Perſon of Fortune and Opportunity to ſettle there; but the frequent and dreadful Eruptions of Mount *Veſuvius*, deſtroy the Happineſs; and the Earthquakes and Dangers ſo common thereabout, put the Inhabitants in continual Fear, and deſtroy the Sweetneſs of all the other Enjoyments.

IT cannot be an improper Digreſſion, if I here obſerve, that in the Year 1718. when I was School-maſter aboard his Majeſty's Ship the *Barfleur*, under Admiral *Byng*, who hoiſted his Flag on board the ſaid Ship, in his Expedition againſt the *Spaniards*; I had a great Opportunity of making the following Remarks upon *Naples*, Mount *Veſuvius*, and other valuable Curioſities in that, and the neighbouring Country.

NAPLES is ſituate in about 41 Degrees of North Latitude, and 15 Degrees of Long. Eaſt from *London*. It is about ſeven or eight Miles in Circumference within the Walls, excluſive of the Suburbs, and is ſuppoſed to contain about three hundred thouſand Inhabitants. It has three Caſtles, the chief of which ſtands towards the Top of a Hill, above, and to the Northward of the Town; but even that ſerves more to awe the Inhabitants, than to defend it againſt an Enemy, as ſeems evident from the *Spaniſh* Viceroy's quitting it without ſtriking one Stroke, and throwing himſelf into *Gaieta*. The Guns of this Caſtle were fired when Admiral *Byng* arrived with the *Engliſh* Fleet in *Naples* Bay, in the Year 1718. The Streets of *Naples* are wide, and the Houſes high; their Walls thick, built moſtly with Stone; and their Windows but little in Proportion, which makes their Building very ſtrong; and as it ſtands on the Declivity of a rocky Hill, ſome of the Foundations of the Streets are cut to a Level out of the Rock; ſo that although the Houſes on the North Side of the Streets ſeem to be lofty and handſome, yet ſome of the Houſes, when you are within them, have nothing but the Rock for the back Wall, which is ſometimes handſom-

ly polish'd, but more frequently the Rock is left rough, the Water trickling out of it very cool and pleasant into the Houses, where they have proper Cisterns, or Vessels to receive it, and private Sinks to convey the waste away, as with us, with respect to the *New River* Water. The Streets so cut out of the Rock, need no paving; but where paving is necessary, they commonly use Stones about a Foot square, which makes their Pavements very handsome. The Houses have flat Roofs for the Inhabitants to walk upon to take the Air. The Cathedral, dedicated to St. *Januarius*, is a beautiful old Fabrick. Here is St. *Januarius*'s Chappel, where his congeal'd Blood is kept in a Glass, which (as they would have their Followers believe) liquifies upon the Approach of that Saint's Head; and when that happens, it is a Sign of a favourable Answer to what they enquire about.

Mount *Vesuvius*

Mount *Vesuvius* is said to be six, or some say eight Miles from *Naples*; indeed its vast Height makes it seem to appear not above two Miles. The first Part of the Way to it from *Naples*, is upon a fine level Ground, through several good pleasant Villages; after which begins an easy Ascent, till within about a Mile and an half of the Top; after which it grows very steep, and cover'd with such burnt Earth as the Eruption of the Top throws out; and this makes the Ascent impracticable with a Horse, and very difficult on Foot. The Top of it is cover'd on all Sides with a kind of burnt Earth. I never had the Curiosity to go quite to the Top, but two of our Ship's Company went up, and never return'd; from whence we concluded, they were either swallow'd up in the Irruption, or form'd that Pretence, to give themselves an Opportunity to desert the Ship. However, those who have been up, say, that the Top is a wide, naked Plain, smoaking with Sulphur in several Places, and consequently, probably undermin'd with Fire, because of the hollow Sound it made under our Feet. In the Midst of this Plain is a high Hill like a Sugar-Loaf; at the Top of the Hill, there is in the Midst, the Mouth of *Vesuvius*, which goes shelving down to the Depth of about an hundred Yards, and is a round Figure, three or four hundred Yards in Diameter; this Hole is generally full of Smoak, but by standing to Windward, one may see into it: If a Stone be thrown into it, it seems by the Noise, to fall upon firm Ground. I gather'd up some of the Matter that it throws out; it was of a yellowish Colour like Brimstone, but in time it dissolv'd to Water, as Salt or Sugar does when laid in a moist Place.

There is another *Vulcano* to the North Westward from *Naples*, and I have observ'd, that when the Wind was Southerly, or South East, *Vesuvius* burnt furiously, and the other scarce blow'd itself; but when the Wind was Northerly, or North West, the other burnt much more furiously than *Vesuvius*: Their burning thus alternately according to the Wind, gives me Reason to think that there is a subterraneous Communication between the said two *Volcanoes*, by some combustible Cavern; and doubtless, where those Caverns are near the Surface of the Earth, and in process of time burn hollow, if it happens to be where a Town or Village stands, the Earth shrinks, and gives way, whereby the Houses tumble down; and this is what we call an Earthquake: And I am the rather confirm'd in this Opinion, by the fatal Experiment of *Parthenope*, or *Old Naples*, which sunk so deep by an Earthquake in one Night, or rather probably, in one Moment, that the Earth sunk so far beneath the Surface of the Water, that I have been at an Anchor in the *Barsleur* upon the same Spot (if the Term may be allow'd) where *Old Naples* once stood.

These Irruptions have been more frequent of late than formerly, for we do not read of above five of these Sort of Irruptions before the Reign of *Augustus*; but since that time, there has been no less than seven remarkable ones in forty Years, *viz.* in 1688, 1689, 1694, 1696, 1701, 1707, and 1727. The Desolation occasion'd by those Irruptions and Earthquakes, especially those in 1688, was so great, that it would require a Volume to communicate any adequate Ideas of the Ruin and Destruction they occasion'd; and not much inferior were those in 1707, and 1727.

What Coaches they have at *Naples*, are drawn by slow-footed Mules; their Wine at *Naples* is as good as any in *Italy*, if not the best; and of that best Sort of Wine, I have bought twenty two Gallons for the Value of ten Shillings *English* Money, which is not above five pence halfpenny a Gallon; but I bought it off at Sea in the Bay. They preserve Snow in vast Quantities all the Year round, and if you go in to call for a Bombelo [a flat bottom'd Bottle] of Wine, it is brought in a Box made of Cork, or some Sort of Wood, and cover'd to the Neck with Snow, or Ice, which keeps the Wine cool in the hottest Weather.

Without the City, are the Catacombs, or vast long Galleries, cut out of the solid Rock, of three Stories, one above another. These Galleries are about twenty Feet broad, and fifteen Feet high, and the Inhabitants tell us, that they go eight or nine Miles into the Rock; however, those that go a great way into the Rock, see no End of the Galleries on both Sides. There are six or seven Rows of Niches, large and high, into which they put their dead Bodies.

Puzzoli, or, as it is call'd in St. *Paul*'s Journey to *Rome*, *Puteoli*; it stands upon the Sea Coast, about nine Miles to the Westward of *Naples*; and between this Town and *Baia*, the Sea forms a noble Bay, call'd the Bay of *Baia*. The City of *Puteoli* is still a Bishop's See, but dwindled to a decay'd Condition. The Cathedral is built where *Jupiter*'s Temple once stood.

Baia stands on the same Shore, about three Miles to the Westward of *Puzzoli*; it is now but a small Village, and the Castle, its chief Ornament, is but an inconsiderable Building.

These three Places, viz. *Naples*, *Puzzoli*, and *Baia*, afford so great a Variety of Curiosities, that they are visited by all Travellers, who are inquisitive into the Rarities that fall in the way of their Travels. And first,

The Grotto of *Pausilipus*, which is in a little steep Hill, about four Miles to the Westward of *Naples* by the Sea Side. Through this Hill, the *Romans* dug a high Way large enough for Carriages to pass; it goes quite through under the Hill, about half a Mile from the Entrance to the coming out at the other End, and is about eighteen Feet broad; it is highest at each End, and lowest in the Middle, so that at which End soever you enter, it goes with an easy Descent to the Middle, and a soft Ascent to the other End, and towards the Middle, are two large Funnels, quite through from the Roof of the Grotto to the Top of the Mountain, to let in Air and Light; but it is still but a dark Passage through, and the Carriages making a Noise, the Men can hear them before they can see them; and to prevent running foul of one another, they call to one another, *To the Mountain*, or, *To the Sea*, to give Notice on which Side the Road they are.

Over

OVER the Entrance of the Grotto going to *Naples*, is an antient little Monument like a Pyramid, but it is now in a ruinous Condition; it is said to be the Tomb of *Virgil*.

A little beyond the Cave of *Pausilippus*, in the Way to *Puzzoli*, is the Lake of *Agnano*, about a Mile in Circumference; near this Lake is the Grotto *del Cane*, a little Cave at the Foot of a Hill, about ten Feet long, five Feet broad, and five in height. The Nature of the Cave is such, that if a Dog has his Nose held in the Vapours, he lies as dead, and will actually die if held too long; but if taken out with any Life in him, and carried into the open Air, or thrown into the neighbouring Lake, he immediately recovers. This Grotto *del Cane* is of such a moist, poisonous Quality, that a Pistol will not take Fire in it. It is merrily observ'd, that the Dogs in that Neighbourhood have been so frequently made use of to try this Experiment, that when a Stranger comes, they endeavour to get out of the way, as if they were sensible of the Danger of being the Object of so fatal, or at least so dangerous an Experiment. The Viceroy, *Don Pedro de Toledo*, made an Experiment on two Slaves, who both died; and which is more remarkable, one *Tournoil*, a Traveller, stooping down into the Grotto to take up a Stone, was seiz'd with the Vapour, and immediately lost all Signs of Life; and tho' he seem'd to recover a little by being put into the Lake, yet he expired in a few Minutes afterwards, as supposing his Spirits were over-pow-er'd, and suffocated past all Recovery.

As to *Caligula*'s Bridge, let modern Authors say what they please as to its being made of Boats; yet this I am certain of, as having been upon the Spot that the Natives call *Caligula*'s Bridge, that was built from *Puzzoli* to *Baia*, cross the Bay of *Baia*. The Account that Doctor *Burnet* gives us of *Baia* and the Bridge, is the most agreeable to what I observ'd in the Year 1718. His Words are these: "The Remains "of *Caligula*'s Bridge are the most amazing; "for there are yet standing, *Eight or Ten Pil-* "*lars* that supported the Arches, and some of "the Arches are yet half entire, *&c.*"

I must needs subjoin to Dr. *Burnet*'s Account, that in the Year 1718. there were fourteen of those Pillars to be seen, and in calm Weather, fifteen; and of them, *Eight or Ten* Arches were standing; which though large and famous in themselves, yet they bore such a small Proportion to the Breadth of the Bay, and the Length that the whole Bridge had been of from Point to Point, that those who do not know the original of those Pillars and Arches, do not now look upon them with that Curiosity and Admiration that Historians and Antiquarians see in them. But as for the Opinion of a modern Author, that these Arches were made only to support a Mole for the Defence and Conveniency of the Harbour, it is quite contrary to the concurrent Testimony of the Inhabitants, who unanimously affirm, that this was the Bridge of *Baia*, built by *Caligula*, and call'd by his Name.

But besides the Antiquities above-mention'd, we find the Ruins of a Theatre near *Puzzoli*; the Area of which, is an hundred and seventy two Feet long, and eighty two broad; and between this and the City, is the Ruins of the Temple of *Diana*, so much spoke of by the Poets; as is also the *Elysian* Fields, where the Poets feign, that *Charon* the Waterman ferries those People over that dye for Love, or being wrong'd by their Sweet-hearts, according to the Fiction of the Poets. But when you come to the *Elysian* Fields, it is but a small Spot of Ground, about a Mile from *Baia*; and the River *Styx* as some call it, but others more justly the *Stygian* Lake, is only a long Stagnum of Water, producing Moss and long Grass in such abundance, and the Edges of it so muddy and dirty, that it would not only be difficult to get into a Boat, but to row her over when you are in; so that in short, was it not for the Name, the Sight is worth nothing. And I cannot help thinking, that it is a Pity, that those Curiosities arising from such Heathenish Foundations, should gain so much Credit in a Christian Country, and especially in our Schools, as to delude Youth into a Belief of their being something sacred, or as if the *Elysian* Fields were a Sort of a State of Bliss, fix'd upon that Part of this Terrestial Globe. It might serve well enough for those who believe a Purgatory, and I suppose by such, the Delusion has been first form'd, however it may be now encouraged in Christian Schools, and so far instrumental in debauching the Principles of Youth, and making young Christians believe that those Fictions of Heathen Poets are really Fact. But to proceed to the Description of other Places.

Gaieta stands on a Rock near the Sea, about fifty Miles North West of *Naples*, and eighty Miles South East of *Rome*; it is one of the best Harbours in the Kingdom.

Salerno stands at the Bottom of a Bay in the *Tuscan* Sea, twenty seven Miles South East of *Naples*; it is a good Harbour, and an Archbishop's See, but of no great Consequence at present as to Trade.

Manfredonia is a tolerable Harbour and Castle in the *Adriatick* Sea, fourscore Miles to the Eastward of *Naples*.

Otranto is a Peninsula, encompass'd by the *Ionian* and the *Adriatick* Seas; it produceth Olives, Figgs, and other Fruit. The chief Towns are *Brundisi*, and *Gallipoli*.

Brundisi, the antient *Brundusium*, is about thirty Miles to the Northward of *Otranto*; it is a well built Town, and a good Harbour. Here *Cæsar* embark'd his Troops when he pursu'd *Pompey* to the Plains of *Pharsalia*, and here the Celebrated *Virgil* dy'd.

Gallipoli is situate on the *Ionian* Sea, about twenty Miles to the Westward of *Otranto*; it is a Peninsula, being join'd to the Continent by a stone Bridge; it is the See of a Bishop, but Suffragan to *Otranto*, and said to be one of the strongest Towns in the Kingdom of *Naples*.

Reggio, or *Regium*, stands upon the East Coast of the *Fare* of *Messina*, and over-against the City of *Messina*, which is the Capital of *Sicily*. This Strait from *Regium* to *Messina* is about nine Miles over. We in the *Barfleur* lay several Weeks at *Regium* in the Year 1718, while the *Spaniards* were besieging that Place, which gave me a great Opportunity of observing the Motion of Sound; and there I observ'd in a calm Evening, seeing the Guns fire from the *Spanish* Batteries, that the Sound was twenty seven Seconds in passing from *Messina* to *Regium*, there being that Distance of Time between the Flash of the Gun at *Messina*, and the Report of the same when heard at *Regium*.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

An Abstract of the antient and modern History of Naples, *with an Account of their Product, Trade, Manufacture,* &c. *and a Description of the* Italian *Islands, as* Sicily, *&c.*

NOT to take notice of the numerous and reigning Clergy in those Priest-ridden Dominions, the chief Product of the Country is Corn, Oil, Silk, and Fruit. Their Naval Force is but weak, as having but one Man of War or two, and a few armed Gallies; and some few Frigats they have lately built.

THEIR chief Manufacture is Silk; and next to that is Soap, knit Waistcoats, Stockings, Snuff, and Perfumes.

THE publick Revenue is supposed to amount to the Value of near a Million sterling, which arises, 1. From a Tax imposed upon the Barons, *&c.* in Lieu of their personal Services. 2. From a Duty upon Houses, or rather Fire-places, every Hearth paying fifteen Carlines, which, according to some Authors, are worth Sixpence Sterling each; but when I was there, a Carline was reckon'd at Ten-pence Sterling. There is likewise a Duty upon Wine, Oil, Tobacco, and Meal, and every thing else either to be eat or wore, except Fruit, Fowls, and Game; and this being what the common People are very much subsisted by, was the Occasion of *Massinello*'s famous Insurrection, wherein that poor young Man and his Brethren, the Fishermen of *Naples*, assembled in such a powerful Manner, that in about twelve Days, they gave such a Turn to the Government, that there never was since then any Gabel, or Duty upon Game-Fowls or Fruit.

BUT to come next to the *Italian* Islands, of which *Sicily* is the chief. It is the antient *Trinacria*, so call'd, from its Triangular Form; not to mention the Name *Ethinæa*, given it by the Poets, from the famous Mount *Etna*; but it is now call'd *Sicily*, from the *Siculi*, an *Italian* People, that inhabited and planted this Island. It is situated between 36, 30, and 38, 40, of North Latitude, and between 12 and 16 of Longitude East from *London*. It lies in a warm but healthy Air, and is so fruitful, that it was call'd the Granary of *Rome*. There are no navigable Rivers of much Note. Their chief Harbours, are *Syracusa*, and *Messina*, standing upon Bays in the Sea in the East Part of the Island; *Melazzo*, on the North or North East; *Palermo* on the North West; and *Trapano* on the West.

Sicily is divided into three Parts, *viz.* 1. The Valley of *Demona*. 2. The Valley of *Mazara*, and, 3. The Valley of *Nota*.

Messina. 1. THE Valley of *Demona* is the North East Part of *Sicily*; the chief Town is *Messina*, which gives Name to the Vare or Strait, which is the narrow Sea passing between *Italy* and *Sicily*. *Messina* is a fine Bay and a good Harbour; along one Side of which, the Town stretches itself between the Mountains and the Sea. The Town is of a great Length, and makes a fine Appearance to Strangers in the Bay or at Sea, because the Houses are lofty, and standing upon a rising Ground from the Sea, adds very much to the Beauty of the Prospect, though when you are in the Town, the Streets are narrow and dirty.

Melazzo THE next Town of Note to *Messina* is *Melazzo*, on the North Side of the Vare of *Messina*, and on the *Tuscan* Sea. In the Year 1718, when Admiral *Byng* was there with the *English* Fleet, the *Imperialists* look'd upon this Town to be of such Consequence, that they made it a Place of Arms, and thought it one chief Branch of their Business to defend it against the Marquis *de Lede* the *Spanish* General, till the *Imperialists* receiv'd Supplies from *Italy*, and maintain'd their Ground, and recover'd themselves in the Year 1719.

NOT to mention Places not worth Notice, I proceed to the once beautiful *Catanea*, situate in a Bay on the East Coast of *Sicily*, to the Southward of *Messina*; but its unfortunate Situation near the Bottom of Mount *Etna* has been its Ruin; the violent Irruptions of Mount *Etna* vomiting out such heavy Stones and other gross Matter, rowl'd down against the Walls, and in process of time ruin'd both the Walls and the City.

AND as we are now arriv'd at the famous Mount *Etna*, called of late (for I do not know what Reason) Mount *Gibel*, I think the following short Description of it may be worth the Observation of the curious Reader. *Mons Ætna*

FROM *Catanea* to the Top of Mount *Etna*, there are two Ways, the shortest and steepest being twenty Miles; and the other, which is more winding to make the Ascent easier, is about thirty Miles; but they both go one Way for the first ten Miles before the very steep Ascent begins, and that ten Miles is handsomly adorn'd with Villages, Houses, Plantations, and Vineyards, which are rendred more fruitful by the burnt Matter which descends from Mount *Etna*, and is dissolv'd or wash'd to Pieces by the Rain; but ascending higher up, you meet with such dreadful Clefts and Cracks in the Earth, as makes the Passage dangerous; and the rather, because of the Smoak and Stench that issues out of them.

WHEN you ascend above this, the Mountain is on every Side cover'd with Snow till you come to the Grand *Volcano* at the Top, which continually sends forth Fire and Smoak, but the most furious in rainy, stormy Weather. The Top of the Mount, where the *Volcanoes* are, is four or five Miles in Circumference; and at the Grand *Volcano*, issues sometimes pure Flame, and at other times Smoak and Ashes, and both with Noise inconceivably dreadful.

THE next Town of Note is *Palermo*, on the North West of the Island; it is situate in a plentiful Soil, is a good Harbour, and has a brisk Trade. The Town is well built, and is the See of an Archbishop. When the *Spaniards* under the Command of the Marquis *de Lede* invaded *Sicily*, in the Year 1718, Count *Maffey*, Viceroy of *Sicily*, retired to *Messina*; so that the *Spaniards* easily got Possession of *Palermo*; but the *Imperialists* recover'd it in the Year 1720, upon the Treaty of Convention with the *Spaniards* for the Evacuation of *Sicily*. *Pa*

Trapano is a good Sea-port, on the West Part of the Island; it was antiently the most considerable Place in the Island, and long defended against the *Romans* by the *Carthaginians*. Antiently the chief Town was *Nota*. But *Trapano* is situate

ruate on the Top of a Mountain, about ſeven Miles from the Sea, and twenty five Miles to the Southward of *Syracuſa*, and twelve North Weſt of Cape *Paſſaro*. It is a large, populous Place, but not of any great Trade, as being ſo remote from the Sea.

Syracuſa is a fine Bay and Sea-port, on the South Part of the Eaſt Coaſt of *Sicily*, about forty Miles to the Southward of *Catanea*. It was the Capital of a rich, flouriſhing, and populous State; but in the Year 1693, it was demoliſh'd by an Earthquake, which almoſt ruin'd *Catanea*, and ſeveral Towns upon that Coaſt. Here lived that famous Mathematician *Archimedes*, who was kill'd at the ſtorming of the Town, contrary to the Order and Deſign of *Marcellus* the *Roman* General, who had generouſly given Orders to ſave his Life. The Houſe of this great Mechanick and Philoſopher, ſtood upon a Rock at the South End of the Town of *Syracuſa*. This high and ſteep Rock was ſurrounded with Water, but had a Communication with the Town by two Draw-Bridges; by one of which you are obliged to paſs, before you can come at the Rocky Iſland upon which *Archimedes*'s Houſe ſtands.

Here is a great Curioſity, which is a Grotto, cut out of a Rock by the Tyrant *Dionyſius*; it is cut in the Shape of a Man's Ear, and ſo artfully contriv'd, that he could hear the leaſt Whiſper in a Room he had over it: This Place is about forty Feet in Height, and twenty in Length. Here is an excellent Harbour, the Bay being above half a Mile broad at the Entrance, and a Mile and a half in Diameter when in. Here was the Rendezvouz of Admiral *Byng*'s Fleet after the Engagement with the *Spaniards* 1718, and here they brought in the twelve *Spaniſh* Men of War they took in that Engagement.

As to the Produce of *Sicily*, it is much the ſame with that of *Naples*, only Corn, Wine, Oil, Fruits, Silk, *&c.* in greater abundance, in Proportion to the Space of Ground and Number of Inhabitants.

The *Lipari* Iſlands lie on the North of *Sicily*, about thirty or forty Miles from it; the chief are *Strombolo* and *Hiera*, remarkable only for their fiery *Volcanoes* iſſuing out of them, which are ſeen a great way off at Sea.

But as we are now upon a Deſcription of *Sicily*, and the Engagement between Admiral *Byng* and the *Spaniſh* Fleet in the above-mention'd Year 1718, having been the Subject both of Diſcourſe and Diſpute, take the following brief Account of *Sicily*, and of the ſaid Engagement off Cape *Paſſaro*:

Upon the Declenſion of the *Roman* Empire, it follow'd the Fortune of the Kingdom of *Naples*, till the famous *Sicilian Veſpers* in the Year 1282, when it came into the Hands of the *Spaniards*, who enjoy'd almoſt an uninterrupted Poſſeſſion of the Iſland till the Peace of *Utrecht*, *Anno* 1714, when it was agreed by all Parties to that Treaty, that it ſhould be conferr'd on the Duke of *Savoy*, with the Title of King of *Sicily*; but the King of *Spain*, under Pretence that the Emperor had not acknowledged his Title to *Spain* and the *Weſt-Indies*, as the Confederates had engaged he ſhould, firſt invaded *Sardinia*, and made himſelf Maſter of it in the Year 1717, and the next Year invaded *Sicily*, landing ſeventeen thouſand Men near *Palermo*, under the Command of the Marquiſs *de Lede*, on the firſt of *July*; whereupon the Viceroy for the Duke of *Savoy* quitted *Palermo* and retired to *Meſſina*. On the ſeventeenth of the ſame Month, the *Spaniſh* Fleet, with moſt of their Infantry on board, ſail'd from *Palermo*; and appearing before the Fort or Tower of *Faro* on the twenty ſecond, the *Piementois* quitted it, and the *Spaniards* landed and took Poſſeſſion of the Fort; and having joined their Cavalry, advanc'd to *Meſſina*, while their Fleet came into the *Faro* or Channel, and detatch'd ſome Men of War and Gallies to block up the Harbour. The ſame Day the *Piementois* Troops quitted the Town, and retired into the Citadel and Fort of St. *Salvadore*; whereupon the Magiſtrates waited on the Marquiſs *de Lede* the twenty fourth, and deliver'd him the Keys of the Town, of which he immediately took Poſſeſſion.

Upon the firſt of *Auguſt N. S.* the *Britiſh* Fleet under Sir *George Byng* arriv'd at *Naples*, having been detach'd thither, as was given out, in order to ſee the Peace of *Utrecht* preſerved; and the tenth of the ſame Month, or the thirtieth of *July O. S.* the *Britiſh* Admiral came before *Meſſina*, whereupon the *Spaniſh* Fleet made to the Southward, and were purſued and defeated by Sir *George*; of which Action he ſent the following Account to *England* by his Son the Honourable *Pattee Byng*, who came Expreſs with it, which I chuſe to inſert *verbatim*, becauſe ſo great a Streſs ſeems to be laid upon the Circumſtances of the Engagement at this time, ſome affirming that the *Britiſh* Fleet were the Aggreſſors, and others that the *Spaniards* began the Fight.

From on Board the *Barfleur* off *Syracuſa*, 6 *Auguſt O. S.* 1718.

The Sea-Fight between the *Britiſh* and *Spaniſh* Fleets.

EARLY in the Morning on the 30th of *July*, as we were ſtanding in for *Meſſina*, we ſaw two Scouts of the *Spaniſh* Fleet in the *Faro* very near us; and at the ſame time a *Felucca* (a ſmall Veſſel) coming off from the *Calabrian* Shore, aſſur'd us they ſaw from the Hills the *Spaniſh* Fleet lying by; upon which the Admiral ſtood through the *Faro* (or Streight) after the Scouts, judging they would lead us to their Fleet, which they did; for before Noon we had a fair Sight of all their Ships as they were drawing into a Line of Battle, their Fleet conſiſting of twenty ſix Men of War, great and ſmall, two Fire-ſhips, four Bomb-veſſels, ſeven Gallies, and ſeveral Ships with Stores and Proviſions. The Admiral ordered the *Kent*, *Superbe*, *Grafton*, and *Orford*, being the beſt Sailors in the Fleet, to make what Sail they could to come up with the *Spaniards*, and that the Ship which could get headmoſt and neareſt to them, ſhould carry the Lights uſually worn by the Admiral, that he might not loſe ſight of them in the Night, and he made what Sail he could with the reſt of the Fleet to keep up with them. It being little Wind, the *Spaniſh* Gallies tow'd their heavieſt Sailors all Night. The 31ſt in the Morning, as ſoon as it was Day, they finding us pretty near up with their Fleet, the Gallies and ſmaller Ships, with the Fire-ſhips, Bomb-veſſels, and Store-ſhips, ſeparated from the Admiral and bigger Ships, and ſtood in for the Shore; after whom the Admiral ſent Captain *Walton* in the *Canterbury*, with the *Argyle* and ſix Ships more. As thoſe Ships were coming up with them, one of the *Spaniards* fir'd a Broad-ſide at the *Argyle*: The Admiral ſeeing thoſe Ships engaged with the *Spaniſh*, which were making towards the Shore, ſent Orders to Captain *Walton* to rendezvous after the Action at *Syracuſa*, where the Viceroy for the King of *Sicily* was with a Garriſon. The like Orders he diſpatched to the Flags, and to as many Ships as were within his Reach, that Place being defended againſt the *Spaniards*, as being the moſt proper Port on that Coaſt for the Fleet to gather together again. We held on our Chaſe after the *Spaniſh* Admiral, with three of his Rear-Admirals, and the biggeſt Ships, which

ſtaid by their Flags till we came near them. The Captains of the *Kent*, *Superbe*, *Graſton*, and *Orford*, having Orders to make what Sail they could to place themſelves by the four headmoſt Ships, were the firſt that came up with them. The *Spaniards* began by firing their Stern-Chaſe at them, but they having Orders not to fire unleſs the *Spaniſh* Ships repeated their firing, made no Return at firſt; but the *Spaniards* firing again, the *Orford* attack'd the *Santo Roſa*, which ſome time after ſhe took. The St. *Charles* ſtruck next without much Oppoſition, and the *Kent* took Poſſeſſion of her. The *Graſton* attack'd the Prince of *Aſturia*, formerly called the *Cumberland*, in which was Rear-Admiral *Chacon*; but the *Breda* and *Captain* coming up, ſhe left that Ship for them to take, which they ſoon did, and ſtretched a Head after another ſixty Gun Ship, which was on her Starboard-Bow, while ſhe was engaging the Prince of *Aſturia*, and kept firing her Stern-Chace into the *Graſton*. About one o' Clock the *Kent* and *Superbe* engaged the *Spaniſh* Admiral, which with two Ships more fir'd on them, and made a running Fight till about three, when the *Kent* bearing down upon her, and under her Stern gave her a Broad-ſide, and went away to the Leeward of her; then the *Superbe* put for it, and laid the *Spaniſh* Admiral on board, falling on her Weather Quarter; but the *Spaniſh* Admiral ſhifting her Helm and avoiding her, the *Superbe* rang'd up under her Lee Quarter, on which ſhe ſtruck to her. At the ſame time the *Barfleur* being within Shot of the ſaid *Spaniſh* Admiral aſtern, inclining on her Weather Quarter, one of their Rear-Admirals and another ſixty Gun Ship which were to the Windward of the *Barfleur*, bore down and gave her their Broadſides, and clapped upon a Wind, ſtanding in for Land. The Admiral in the *Barfleur* ſtood after them till it was almoſt Night; but it being little Wind, and they galing from him out of reach, he left purſuing them, and ſtood away to the Fleet again, which he join'd two Hours after Night. The *Eſſex* took the *Juno*, the *Montague* and *Rupert* took the *Volante*. Vice-Admiral *Cornwal* follow'd the *Graſton* to ſupport her, but being very little Wind, and the Night coming on, the *Spaniards* galed away from the *Graſton*. Rear-Admiral *Delaval*, with the *Royal Oak*, chaſed two Ships that went away more Leewardly than the reſt, (one of them ſaid to be Rear-Admiral *Cammock*) but we not having ſeen them ſince, know not the Succeſs. The Ship that ſuffer'd moſt with us was the *Graſton*, the Captain of which, though he had not the Fortune to take any particular Ship, yet was engaged with ſeveral, behaved himſelf much like an Officer and a Seaman, and bid fair for ſtopping the way of thoſe four Ships that he purſued, who got away not through his Fault, but Failure of Wind, and his own Sails and Rigging were much ſhatter'd.

A Liſt of the *Spaniſh* Ships taken and deſtroy'd off Cape *Paſſaro*.

	Ships.	Guns.	Men.	Commanders.
1.	*The Royal Philip*	74	650	Vice-Admiral *Caſtagnetta.*
2.	*Prince of Aſturia*	70	550	Rear-Admiral *Chacon.*
3.	*Royal*	60	400	Rear-Adm. Marq; *de Mari.*
4.	*St. Charles*	60	400	Prince *Chalay.*
5.	*St Iſabella*	60	400	*D. And. Rezio.*
6.	*Santa Roſa*	56	400	*D. Ant Gonzales.*
7	*St Iſidro*	46	300	*D. Manuel Villoicentia*
8.	*Anna Volante*	44	300	*D Ant. Eſcudera.*
9.	*Surprize*	44	250	*Mich. Sadoy*, Kt of *Malta.*
10.	*Juno*	36	250	*D. Pedro Moyana.*
11.	*Eagle*	24	240	*D. Lucas Maſnata*
12.	*Tyger*	26	240	*Montier Cavaigne*

Burnt and deſtroy'd.

	Ships.	Guns.	Men.	Commanders.
1.	*Eſperance*	46	300	*D. Juan Delfino & Blandina.*
2.	*Hermione*	44	300	*D. Rodrigo de Torres.*
3.	*Porcupine*	44	250	*A Frenchman.*
4	*Pearl*	30	300	*Don Gabriel Alderete.*

Burnt alſo two Fire-Ships, two Bomb-Veſſels, and one Sattee.

Another Ship of thirty or forty Guns was taken, and twelve eſcaped, beſides a Bomb-Veſſel and ſeven Gallies, of which the *Spaniſh* Fleet was compoſed.

THE *Engliſh* Fleet conſiſted of the *Barfleur*, in which was the Admiral, of ninety Guns and ſeven hundred and thirty Men, nine ſeventy Gun Ships, one eighty Gun Ship, ſeven ſixty Gun Ships, two fifty Gun Ships, and one forty Gun Ship; in all twenty one, beſides two Fire-Ships, four Bomb-Veſſels, an Hoſpital Ship, and a Store-Ship.

AFTER this Engagement the *Engliſh* Admiral ſailed to *Syracuſa*, the Place appointed for the Rendezvous, where he was joined by the reſt of the Fleet, and from thence he went from *Rhegio* into *Calabria*, leaving Admiral *Cornwall* with ten Men of War at *Syracuſa*, to convoy the Ships taken. In the mean time the *Germans* embark'd a thouſand Men at *Rhegio*, and threw them into the Caſtle of *Meſſina*, which could not however prevent its being taken, that Fortreſs ſurrendring to the Marquiſs *de Lede* the 29th of *September*, and the Garriſon was tranſported to *Rhegio*. The *Imperialiſts* and *Piemontois* ſtill kept Poſſeſſion of *Syracuſa* and *Melazzo*, waiting Reinforcements from *Italy* to enable them to act offenſively.

IMMEDIATELY after the Fight, a Captain of the *Engliſh* Squadron came in the Name of Admiral *Byng*, to make a Compliment of Excuſe to the Marquiſs *de Lede*, giving him to underſtand that the *Spaniards* had been the Aggreſſors, and that this Action ought not to be looked upon as a Rupture, becauſe the *Engliſh* did not take it as ſuch. To which it was anſwer'd, That *Spain* on the contrary would reckon it a formal Rupture, and would act againſt the *Engliſh* in an hoſtile Manner, and do them all the Damage imaginable, by giving Orders to make Reprizals, *&c.*

UPON the Arrival of the News of the Defeat of the *Spaniſh* Fleet at *London*, Mr. *Craggs*, Secretary of State, ſent the following Letter to the Marquiſs *de Monteleon*, the *Spaniſh* Ambaſſador here, dated *Auguſt* the 28th.

May it pleaſe Your Excellency,

HIS Majeſty hath commanded me to acquaint you, that he hath received certain Advice of the Defeat of the *Spaniſh* Fleet on the Coaſt of *Italy* by his Admiral Sir *George Byng*. Nothing could have moved his Majeſty to this Step but the ſtrict Regard he bears to Treaties, by which his Majeſty was obliged to preſerve the Peace and Neutrality of *Italy*. I am further commanded to aſſure your Excellency, *That this Proceeding would have been entirely diſagreeable to the Sentiments of his Majeſty, had not the King of* Spain *made it abſolutely neceſſary, by his rejecting all Offers of Accomodation, and committing Hoſtilities on the Dominion of a Prince in Peace with the whole World.* That his Majeſty is firmly determin'd by the Bleſſing of God, and the Aſſiſtance of his Allies, to eſtabliſh the Peace of *Europe* on ſuch a Footing, as to put it out of the Power of any one Prince or Potentate to diſturb it hereafter.

Bur

Capri.

But now to leave *Sicily*, the next Iſland is *Capri*, or *Caprea*, at the Entrance of *Naples* Bay, about twenty Miles Southweſtward of *Naples*; it is remarkable for being the Retirement of *Auguſtus* for ſome time, and the Reſidence of *Tiberius* for ſeveral Years. It is about four Miles in Length, and one in Breadth.

Ischia

The next Iſland worth our Notice is *Ilva*, the antient *Athalia*, lying off of the Coaſt of *Tuſcany*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Porto Longone*, a good Harbour, in Poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*. 2. *Porto Feraio*, on the North Side of the Iſland, where is alſo a good Harbour, ſubject to the Duke of *Tuſcany*.

Charybdis.

The ſo much talk'd of Dangers which go under the Names of *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, and by the Poets feign'd to be in the Vare of *Meſſina*, between the Shores of *Calabria* and *Sicily*, are now by the frequent Experience of the beſt Mariners, found to be nothing at all; ſo much has theſe idle Poetical Fictions prevail'd, tho' originally from a Heathen Foundation; yet not only to take place, but even to be retain'd in our Chriſtian Schools.

Sardinia

Sardinia is an Iſland lying to the Southward of *Corſica*, and conſequently of the Continent of *Genoa*; it is ſeparated from *Italy* by the *Tuſcan* Sea, and lies about forty Leagues North Weſt of *Sicily*; it is about an hundred and forty Miles in Length and ſixty in Breadth. It is a fruitful Iſland where it is well cultivated, producing abundance of Corn, Wine, and Oil; but much of it is loſt for Want of Induſtry, the Vulgar chuſing rather to live upon the Spontaneous Product of the Earth than to be at the Pains to improve it. The Capital City is *Cagliary*, or *Callary*; it is ſituated on the Declivity of a Hill, in the South Part of the Iſland. It is a tolerable Harbour, but of no great Strength, though ſome call it a ſtrong Citadel.

Corſica.

The Iſland of *Corſica* lies in the *Tuſcan* Sea, a little to the Northward of *Sardinia*; the In-land Part is mountainous, but the Plains afforn Plenty of Corn, as the Hills do of Wine, Oil, and Fruit. They have Plenty of black Cattle and Sheep, and ſome ſprightly Horſes. Here are Mines of Iron, and Allom; as alſo ſome Saltpits, *&c.* but they are reckon'd a brutiſh, pilfering People.

Baſtia.

Baſtia the Capital, ſtands on a Bay, at the North Eaſt Part of the Iſland; it is the Seat of the Viceroy, and a good Harbour.

Malta.

The Iſland of *Malta* lies on the South Side of *Sicily*; this is the Iſland of *Melita* mention'd in Scripture, where the Viper faſtned upon St. *Paul*'s Hand. It is about ſixty Miles South Weſtward from Cape *Paſſaro*, which is the South Eaſt Point of the Iſland of *Sicily*. It is about twenty Miles in Length and twelve in Breadth. It is a white Rock cover'd with a thin Cruſt of Earth, which produces ſome Corn and Grapes; but they produce no Wine, but their Cotton and other Plants produce them the moſt Profit; and rather than be at the trouble of cultivating their Land for Corn, they chuſe to ſupply themſelves from *Sicily*; but what Corn they have is generally Barley and Buck-wheat. They have alſo Plenty of Cummin-Seed, Anniſeed, and Cotton; and they have Lemons and Oranges all the Year round: Roſes, Thyme, and Fennel, grow wild in every Part of the Iſland, and their Honey is deem'd the beſt in *Europe*; but there is very little Wood, except Fruit-trees, upon the Iſland.

The chief Town is *Malta*, which ſtands upon ſeveral Peninſulaes, or Iſlands ſeparated by the Sea, and diſtinguiſh'd by the Names of the *Cité*, the *Bourg*, and the *Iſle*, which together form the City; and the Sea lying between them, forms a Harbour, or Harbours, capable of receiving a Fleet of Ships. Their Water (except what Rain Water they ſave) is brought four Miles by an Aqueduct.

The firſt Inhabitants of *Malta*, were the *Carthaginians* and the *Phenicians*, but it ſoon fell into the Hands of the *Romans*; and *Charles* V. gave it to the Knights of St. *John* of *Jeruſalem*, now call'd the Knights of *Malta*, call'd by ſome, Hoſpitallers, whoſe Riſe was from hence. Some time before *Godfrey* of *Bologn*'s Expedition to the *Holy Land*, ſome *Neopolitan* Merchants, who traded in the *Levant*, obtain'd Leave of the *Caliph* of *Egypt*, to build a Houſe there for the Entertainment of thoſe of their Nation, who came in Pilgrimage to *Jeruſalem*, for which they agreed to pay an Annual Tribute; after which, they built two Churches near their Houſe, and entertain'd the Pilgrims with very great Charity. At laſt, they founded a Church in Honour to St. *John Baptiſt*, and an Hoſpital for ſick People; and from thence they were call'd Hoſpitallers. *Godfrey* of *Bologn* having taken *Jeruſalem* about the Year 1099, they were diſtinguiſh'd by black Habits, and a Croſs with eight Points; and beſides what Vows they had already made, they took another to defend Pilgrims; and thus their Order became Military, into which, ſeveral Sons of good Rank and Figure enter; and inſtead of Hoſpitallers, take the Title of *Knights Hoſpitallers*.

After the taking of *Jeruſalem*, theſe retir'd to *Margalt*, and from thence to *Acre* in *Paleſtine*, till the Year 1290, and then they fix'd in *Cyprus*, where they remain'd till the Year 1310; at which time they took the Iſland of *Rhodes*; thoſe of this Order were thence call'd Knights of *Rhodes*; but they were diſpoſſeſs'd of this Iſland in the Year 1522, and retir'd to *Candia*, and from thence to *Sicily*; and in the Year 1530, the Emperor *Charles* V. gave them this Iſland of *Malta* for a Settlement, as looking upon it as a good Frontier againſt the *Turks*; and upon this Settlement it is, that they are to this Day call'd the Knights of *Malta*.

It may be obſerv'd, that in approaching *Italy* in the Courſe of this Hiſtory, I have omitted *Switzerland*, which I did on purpoſe, as intending to take it in my way from *Italy* to *France*, *Spain*, and the finiſhing of *Europe*, with our own *Britiſh* Dominions; and having now finiſh'd *Italy*, and the Iſlands belonging to it, call'd the *Italian* Iſlands, I ſhall proceed to *Switzerland* accordingly.

A DESCRIPTION OF SWITZERLAND.

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation and Extent of Switzerland; *of its Air and Climate; its Mountains, Rivers, Lakes, Springs and Woods; with the Nature and Product of the Soil, and of their Plants and Animals.*

SWITZERLAND, antiently *Helvetia*, if we include the Country of the *Griſons* and their other Allies, is bounded on the North by Part of *Alſace*, the *Black Foreſt*, and Part of the Circle of *Suabia*; and on the Eaſt, by *Tyrol*; by the Dutchies of *Savoy* and *Milan* on the South; and by the *French* Territories of *Burgundy* and *Franche Comté* on the Weſt. It extends about two hundred and ſixty Miles from Eaſt to Weſt, and above an hundred from North to South.

THE Middle of the Country lies in forty ſix, and forty ſeven Degrees of North Latitude; but their Mountains, which are ſaid by ſome Geographers to be the higheſt in *Europe*, are a great Part of the Year cover'd with Snow, which occaſions a ſharper Air than is generally found in Latitudes more remote from the Equinoctial. The Diſtempers they chiefly labour under, are Wens, and ſwell'd Throats, which is imputed to their drinking ſo much Snow-Water that deſcends from the Mountains, that being the chief of the Water with which they are ſupply'd; for Rivers are ſo ſcarce, that inſtead of them, their Cantons are commonly bounded, or ſeparated, by Ridges of Mountains; but the greateſt Part of the Canton of *Bern* is a pleaſant, fruitful Country, and produces Plenty of Corn and other Grain; but it requires a great deal of Labour to produce a good Crop.

BUT although there are but a few large Rivers in this Country, yet ſeveral famous Rivers riſe in it, and deſcend from thence, as the *Rhine*, the *Rhone*, the *Danube*, the *Adda*, the *Ticino*, the *Lintz*, the *Aar*, the *Ruſs*, and the *Jun*, with other leſſer Streams; and hence it is concluded, not without good Reaſon, to be the higheſt Land in *Europe*.

THERE are alſo a great Number of noble Lakes, ſome of which, may for their Largeneſs be call'd Seas, particularly thoſe of *Conſtance*, and *Geneva*, being near ſixty Miles in Length, and twelve in Breadth; and thoſe of *Neufchattel*, *Zurick*, and *Lucern*; and it is remarkable, that there is generally a Lake upon every Mountain. They have abundance of fine Woods, and whole Foreſts of Pine, and Fir-trees, and ſome Oaks, and Elms, but Fir is their chief Timber uſed in Building. Lakes

THE Mountains afford good Paſture, in which they feed vaſt Herds of Cattle. They have alſo arable Land, but the Difficulty of raiſing a Crop, makes Corn very ſcarce, by Reaſon of ſo much Rain and Tempeſt, by which they ſometimes entirely loſe their Harveſt; for which Reaſon, when they happen to have a plentiful Year, they ſtore up Magazines of Corn to prevent a Dearth.

THIS Country produces Wine of ſeveral Sorts, but I do not find that it excells in any; and their Vines very often undergo the Fate of their Corn, as being deſtroy'd by bad Weather. Here are good Cattle of all Kinds, inſomuch that they ſupply their Neighbours with great Plenty. They have Fowl, Veniſon, Deer, wild Hogs, and Goats plenty; the laſt of which, is reckon'd Veniſon; and of their Skins, our fine Shammy Leather is made. Their Lakes abound with excellent Fiſh, particularly Trout, ſome of ſixty Pounds weight or upwards, and in ſuch Plenty, that they ſend great Quantities abroad.

CHAP.

A MAP of ITALY, SWITZERLAND, GERMANY, HOLLAND, FRANCE, SPAIN and PORTUGAL.

Adapted to the compleat Universal History of ye WORLD

By HENRY WILSON

GEOGRAPHER and Teacher of NAVIGATION.

THE WESTERN OCEAN

BAY OF BISCAY

IRELAND

ENGLAND

St George's Channel

English Channel

GERMAN OCEAN

GERMANY

FRANCE

SPAIN

PORTUGAL

SWISSE

SAXONY

BOHEMIA

ITALY

CORSICA

SARDINIA

MEDITERRANEAN SEA

ADRIATICK SEA

PART OF TURKEY IN EUROPE

Part of AFRICA

BALTICK

GOTLAND

MECKLENBURG

LUNENBURG

Gulf of Lyons

Tirhenian Sea

Ionian Sea

SICILY SEA

A Scale of 400 English Miles.

CHAP. II.

Treats of the Provinces or Cantons of Switzerland, *and of their chief Towns and Buildings; and alſo of their Perſons, Habits,* Genius, *and Temper.*

IN *Switzerland* are three Diviſions, *viz.* 1. The thirteen Cantons, or *Switzerland proper*. 2. The Subjects of *Switzerland*, or the conquer'd Countries. And, 3. The Allies, reckon'd alſo by ſome, a Part of *Switzerland*.

THE thirteen Cantons are, 1. *Zurich*. 2. *Berne*. 3. *Lucern*. 4. *Uri*. 5. *Schwitz*. 6. *Underwald*. 7. *Zug*. 8. *Glaris*. 9. *Bazil*. 10. *Friburg*. 11. *Solothurn*. 12. *Schaffhauſen*. 13. *Appenzel*. And of theſe, the Proteſtant Cantons are, *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Bazil*, and *Schaffhauſen*, with the greater Part of *Glaris* and *Appenzel*; all the reſt are Roman Catholicks.

Zurich. THE Canton of *Zurich* is bounded by *Schaffhauſen* on the N. and by *Appenzel* on the E. by *Zug* and *Schwitz*, on the S. and by *Bern* and *Lucern* on the Weſt. The People here apply much to Buſineſs, having eſtabliſh'd ſeveral good Manufactures. The chief of this Canton, beſides other eminent Places and Towns of Note, is,

Chief Town. *Zurich*, ſituate at the North End of the Lake of *Zurich*, about ſixteen Miles South of the Frontiers of *Germany*. The River *Limagus* runs thro' it, but the Communication is maintain'd by three Bridges. It is a ſmall, but populous Town; but the Houſes are generally built of Clay and Timber, and the Streets narrow. It is an antient City, and ſuppos'd to have been the Capital of the antient *Tigurini*, one of the four *Helvetian* People; it was enlarg'd by *Charlemaigne*, who built the great Church there, in which his Statue now remains. The Lake of *Zurich* upon which it ſtands, is four and twenty Miles long, and three broad; the Water is green but not ſalt. The chief Manufacture of *Zurich*, is Crape. This Lake having a Communication with the *Rhine*, gives them a great Opportunity of exporting and importing.

Bern THE Canton of *Bern*, has *Bazil* and *Solothurn* on the North; and *Lucern*, *Underwald*, and *Soleure* on the Eaſt; the Lake of *Geneva* on the South, and *Neufchatel* and *Burgundy* on the Weſt. It is about an hundred and twenty Miles in Length, and half as much in Breadth. It is ſuppoſed not only to make near a third Part of *Switzerland*, but to be the moſt fruitful Canton in it, as well as the moſt powerful.

Chief Town. THE chief Town is *Bern*; it ſtands on a Sort of a Peninſula, being almoſt encompaſs'd by the River *Idda*; it is about forty Miles South of *Bazil*, and as much Weſt of *Lucern*. It ſtands on a riſing Ground, moſt of the Houſes are of Free-ſtone; it is about a Mile in Length, and conſiſts chiefly of three broad Streets, through which run as many fine Rivulets. The Town is defended by a Wall, and other Fortifications after the modern Way.

Lucern. THE Canton of *Lucern* lies between *Soleure* on the North, and *Bern* on the South; it is about fifty Miles long, and thirty broad. It is one of the chief Roman Catholick Cantons. Chief Town is,

Chief Town. *Lucern*, ſituate upon a Lake of the ſame Name; it is about twenty Miles South Weſt of *Zurich*, and forty Eaſt of *Bern*; it is a neat Town with a ſpacious Market-place. Here the Pope's Nuncio, and the *Spaniſh* Ambaſſador, uſually take up their Reſidence. The adjacent Lake is about twenty Miles in Length, and ſeven or eight in Breadth, and hath a Communication with the *Rhine*, by the River *Ruſs*, which is a conſiderable Advantage to it in the way of Trade.

Uri. THE Canton of *Uri* is but inconſiderable, either for Trade, Product, or Manufacture. We ſhall therefore proceed to

Switz Canton. THE *Switz* Canton, has *Zurich* and *Zug* on the North; the Canton of *Glaris* on the Eaſt and South; and *Lucern* and *Underwald* on the Weſt; but as there is nothing remarkable in this, or in the Cantons of *Underwald*, *Zug*, or *Glaris*, I ſhall paſs them by, and proceed to the other Cantons; and firſt of

Bazil. *Bazil*; it is bounded on the North and Eaſt by *Suabia*, and by *Solothurn* on the South, and by Part of *Alſatia* on the Weſt; it is about twenty Miles long, and eighteen broad: This is a rich Canton, they apply themſelves wholly to Trade, and thereby enrich themſelves. The chief Town is,

Chief Town. *Bazil*; it is the moſt beautiful City in *Switzerland*; it ſtands on the River *Rhine*, about ſixty Miles to the Southward of *Strasburgh*, and three Miles South of the Fortreſs of *Huningen*; it is in Latititude 47 Degrees 40 Minutes. The *Rhine* runs through the Town, but the Communication between the Parts of the Town on each Side of the *Rhine*, is maintain'd by a Bridge of Stone of fourteen Arches. The Town is large, the Streets wide and clean, and their Squares ſpacious, adorn'd with three hundred Fountains. It a flouriſhing Univerſity, with proper Profeſſors in Law, Phyſick, and Divinity. The famous *Eraſmus* ſpent the latter Part of his Life here, and dy'd in the Year 1536. in the ſeventy firſt Year of his Age. The Inhabitants of this Place aſſume to themſelves the Invention of making Paper, and tell us that Printing was introduc'd among them in the Year 1478. This is as flouriſhing a Place for Trade as any in *Switzerland*, it lying near the Frontiers of *Germany* and *France*; and by that means has the Opportunity of the *Rhine* to facilitate their Commerce.

Friburg THE Canton of *Friburg* is almoſt ſurrounded by that of *Bern*; it is about twenty five Miles in Length, and twenty in Breadth. The chief Town is *Friburg*, ſituate on a Hill, almoſt ſurrounded by the River *Sana*; it is ſurrounded by a Wall, and defended by other Fortifications.

THE Canton of *Schaffhauſen*, is bounded by *Suabia* in *Germany* on the Eaſt, Weſt, and North, and by *Zurich* on the South; it is about twenty Miles long, and twelve Miles broad. The chief Town is *Schaffhauſen*, the fineſt Town in *Switzerland*, except *Basil*; it ſtands on the *Rhine*, about twenty five Miles North of *Zurich*, and as many to the Weſtward of *Conſtance*. The Streets are broad, and the Houſes built of Stone, and generally painted on the Outſide, as is the Cuſtom in *Switzerland*. All Veſſels that come here are obliged to unload, by reaſon of the neighbouring

T

ing Cataracts of the *Rhine*, and this creates a great deal of Business.

Appenzel. LASTLY, the Canton of *Appenzel*; it is a poor, as well as a small Canton, of so little Business, and such hard Living, that the Inhabitants frequently endeavour to get into foreign Service; which I suppose has occasion'd that Report, that the *Switzers* will fight for Money without any Regard to whose part they take.

Subjects of Switzerland. THE *Subjects of Switzerland*, are those Parts of the Country belonging to them all, of which is first, the County of *Baden*, on the South East Side of *Rhine*. The Capital City is *Baden*, so call'd, from the Hot Baths there. It lies about fourteen Miles North West of *Zurich*, and six to the Southward of the *Rhine*. It is one of the antientest Towns in *Switzerland*, and is still the Place of the General Diet. It is often call'd *Upper Baden*, to distinguish it from *Lower Baden* in *Germany*.

Turgow. THE County of *Turgow* lies on the Southwest Side of the Lake of *Constance*; the Capital is *Frawenfeld*, on the River *Mark*, but a Place of no great Note at present.

As for the other Counties and Bailiages, they are scarce worth our Notice, as having been so confused and mixt in their Wars with one another, that they who one Day were under one Government, became almost the next Day under separate Governments.

As to the Persons of the *Switzers*, they are Persons tall and strong, as living in a cold, mountainous and Country, where hunting upon the high Rocks and Persons Precipices is their chief Diversion. They are of a hardy Complexion, and mostly wear their own Hair, and they that do not wear long Beards, generally affect Whiskers.

THE Women, especially those who border upon *France*, affect the *French* Dress and Language; and those who border upon *Germany*, equally affect that Country's Dress and Language; but both as gay as their Circumstances will admit of.

THE *Switzers* are generally applauded for their Valour, but they are generally charg'd with letting out their Troops for Hire; by which Means the Son is engag'd against the Father, and kill one another in Sport, or as their Business, without Regard to Cause, Kindred, or Religion.

CHAP. III.

An Abstract of the antient and modern History of Switzerland.

THE first Account that we have of the *Helvetians* or *Switzers* being form'd into a Nation, we have from *Julius Cæsar*, who tells us, that this People made an Incursion into *Burgundy* during his Government of *Gaul*, with a Design to transplant themselves into that agreeable Country; and to take away from their People all Thoughts or Desires of returning to their antient Situation, they burnt no less than twelve great Cities, and four hundred Villages, and then began their March with their Families, amounting to about four hundred thousand Souls, whereof above an hundred thousand were able to bear Arms. They first thought to make an Attempt upon *Savoy*; but not daring to cross the *Rhone* in the Face of his Army, they alter'd their March, and enter'd the *Franche Comte*; but he engaging them, and cutting off many of them, the rest return'd home, and submitted to the *Roman* Power; and this Place was annex'd to *Gallia Celtica*.

AFTER this, they remain'd subject to the *Romans*, till the Destruction of that Empire by the Northern Nations; and new Kingdoms or States were erected out of its Ruins. *Switzerland* was comprehended in *Burgundy* about the Beginning of the fifth Century; but this Kingdom not lasting above an hundred Years, *Switzerland* was united to the Crown of *France*, and continued so till the Beginning of the ninth Century. About the Year 1032, *Radolph* III. and last King of *Burgundy*, dying without Issue, transferr'd his Kingdom to the Emperor *Conrad* II. whose Successors enjoy'd it near two hundred Years; but it being neglected by the Emperors, it was divided into several petty Sovereignties.

IN the thirteenth Century, the Counts of *Harpsburg*, from whom the House of *Austria* is descended, began to take the Government of this People upon them, particularly of their Cities, on their voluntary Submission; for their Nobility used them so barbarously, that they were obliged to implore the Assistance of some powerful, neighbouring Prince; and agreed, that *Radolph* should send Governors among them, with a Power to administer Justice in criminal Cases; but *Radolph* having his Hands full, could not sufficiently relieve them; and they resolving not to bear the Tyranny of the Nobility, broke out into open Rebellion, demolish'd the Castles of the Lords, and after twelve Years War, drove several of them out of the Country.

Radolph being now Emperor, the Nobility apply'd to him for Redress against the rebellious *Switzers*; but *Radolph* rather sided with the People, and got their Love by his great Mildness and Goodness to them. But upon his Death, his Son *Albert*, who succeeded him, endeavour'd to be absolute, which he attempted first by Persuasions only; but that failing, he gave Orders to his Governors, &c. to reduce them to his Obedience, by corrupting their leading Men; or if that fail'd, to do it by Force of Arms; which last they put in Execution. Whereupon the People sent to the Emperor to sue for Redress; but he return'd only Threats and Vengeance, in Case they did not conform to an absolute Submission to his arbitrary Demands; and accordingly at their Return home, they found their Governors using them with the utmost Tyranny; till the People wearied out, form'd a Conspiracy against the Goverment, which prov'd fatal to the Sovereign. It was form'd by three Persons at first in the following Manner.

THE three having first enter'd into a strict Friendship, each of them engag'd four more, and these twelve became the chief Managers, and met upon that Account at *Gruth*, where they laid a Scheme for a general Insurrection; and binding themselves to the utmost Secrety, they fix'd the first of *January* 1308, for their rising; but before the appointed Day came, they met with a fresh Provocation, which had like to have brought their Design into Execution sooner than they intended; for the Governor of the Canton of *Ury*, had order'd his Cap to be set upon a Post in the Market place of *Altorf*, the Capital of *Ury*, and required every Man that pass'd by, to pull off his Hat to

it.

it upon Pain of Death; which was mostly comply'd with, till *William Tell*, a bold Fellow, and one of the Conspirators, made it his Business to pass frequently by without paying any Respect to the Cap; whereupon he was brought before the Governor, who commanded him to set an Apple upon his Son's Head, and shoot at it with an Arrow; and that if he miss'd it, he should be hang'd: The Father, rather than run the Hazard of being accessary to his Son's Death, desired they would take away his own Life without further Ceremony; but the Governor would not condescend to that Proposal, declaring, that if he refused to shoot at the Apple immediately, he would hang up his Son before his Face and himself afterwards; whereupon poor *Tell* offer'd to perform the Execution in the Market-place, not so much with a Design of being publickly seen, as in Hopes that his fellow Conspirators would assemble and rescue him from the Experiment; but nothing of this happening, *Tell* took two Arrows out of his Quiver, and charging his Bow with one of them, had the good Luck to hit the Apple, and strike it off his Son's Head without doing any Damage; whereupon a general Acclamation was heard among the People; whereat the Governor being exasperated, ask'd *Tell* what was the Reason of his taking two Arrows out of his Quiver, with a Promise, that whatever his Design was, he should be pardon'd if he would tell the Truth: Whereupon *Tell*, boldly told the Governor, that if he had kill'd his Son with the first Arrow, the second was intended for him; for which bold Reply, the Governor, though he saved his Life according to his Promise, yet he order'd him to be laid in Irons, and transported to the Castle of *Cassenach*, on the Lake *Lucern*, the Governor himself going along with them to prevent his Escape, and see the Sentence put in Execution. But when they came about the Middle of the Lake, a violent Storm arose which endanger'd all their Lives; and *Tell* being the best Pilot, they knock'd off his Irons and gave him the Charge of the Vessel; whereupon he steer'd into smooth Water under the Shore, and took an Opportunity to jump ashore and make his Escape; whereupon the Governor steer'd for the next Town call'd *Brunen*, and propos'd to go to *Cassenach* by Land; of which *Tell* having Notice, he planted himself privately in a Wood, by the Side of a hollow Way, by which he knew the Governor must pass, and when he came, he shot him through the Heart with an Arrow and made off; and in Memory of this noted Escape, there was one Chapel built where *Tell* jump'd a-shore, and another where he kill'd the Governor; both which, or the Remains of them, are still to be seen.

A Conspiracy was form'd, and the Day appointed for its being put in Execution was *Jan.* 1. 1308. when they were prepared for a general Insurrection. Some of the most resolute of them resorted to the Castles, where the Commanders of the Imperial Troops resided under Pretence of carrying the usual Presents; but instead of that, having Arms conceal'd under their Cloaths, they fell upon the Guards, enter'd the Gates, and reduc'd every Fortress they attempted. The Governor of *Landenburg* and his Forces, fled without any Resistance, but were afterwards made Prisoners by the Country People, and compel'd to promise upon Oath, never to return into the Country again; and thereupon they gave them Liberty to retire where they thought fit. And thus was the Foundation of the *Helvetick* Liberty laid by three Men, who had neither Riches nor Parentage to boast of equal to such an Undertaking.

The Emperor *Albert*, hearing of the Defection, assembled an Army to have reduc'd them to Obedience; but being kill'd soon after he had pass'd the River *Russ*, these Cantons took the Opportunity of that Confusion of the Empire to establish themselves, till about seven Years afterwards; when *Leopold*, the Son of *Albert*, march'd into the Canton of *Switz* with twenty thousand Men, threatening utter Destruction to the Confederated Provinces. The *Switzers* made little Resistance, till the *Austrian* Army was advanc'd into a narrow Valley between two Mountains, near a Place call'd *Mortgarten*; where rolling great Stones down the Hill, threw all the *Austrians* into Confusion, and attacking them at the same time in the Front with fifteen hundred Men, they obtain'd a compleat Victory, and drove them entirely out of the Country.

Upon this Victory, the three *Switz* Cantons enter'd into a perpetual League, into which the Canton of *Lucern* came in in the Year 1332, and *Zurich* in the Year 1351. and the same Year *Glaris* came in; and in the following Year 1352, *Zug* and *Bern* came in: These continued in Confederacy above an hundred and twenty Years, and went by the Name of the *Eight old Cantons*; and in the Year 1481, *Friburg* came in, as did *Basil* and *Schaffhausen* in 1501, and *Appenzel* in the Year 1513, having purchas'd their Liberty of the Abbot of St. *Gall* their then Sovereign.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Government of the Switzers.

THE General Diet or *Helvetick* Body, consists of two Deputies; besides which, the Abbot of St. *Gall*, and the Cities of St. *Gall* and *Bienne*, send Deputies as Allies; and a General Diet is usually held at *Baden* annually on the Feast of St. *John Baptist*, and holds only a Month. The first Deputy of the Canton of *Zurich* presides in these Diets, and proposes Matters to be debated, and collects the Votes, and performs all other Offices proper for a President of an Assembly. The Canton of *Zurich* hath also the Power of convoking Diets by circular Letters, expressing the Reasons for calling them; and the Deputies of this Canton also draw up the Result of their Deliberations at the Conclusion of the Diet, which are sent to every Canton; and these are also the Speakers, when they compliment, or treat with a foreign Minister.

Besides those general Diets, the Differences in Religion have since the Reformation, occasion'd particular Diets; as those of the Protestants, held at *Arrow*, and of the Roman Catholicks at *Lucern*; these are summon'd whenever the respective Parties please; but the thirteen united Cantons do not make one Commonwealth or Republick; but are so many independant States, though strictly ally'd for their mutual Defence.

The

The Government in ſome of thoſe Cantons is *Ariſtocratical*, and in ſome *Democratical*; of the former are the Cantons of *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Lucern*, *Bazil*, *Friburg*, *Soleure*, and *Schaffhauſen*; and the reſt are *Democratical*: Each of the firſt Kind have one City, with very ſmall Territories belonging to it, and of Conſequence the Government lodgeth in the Citizens only; but the *Democratical* Cantons have no Cities, but are divided into Communities.

The Canton of Bern

In the Canton of *Bern*, the Legiſlative Power is lodg'd in the great Council, conſiſting of two hundred and ninety nine Perſons; but there ſeldom are above two hundred at a time, the reſt being abſent upon other Avocations; ſo that they are generally ſtil'd, *The Council of two hundred*; and out of them the Senate is choſen, which conſiſts of twenty ſeven Members. The Senate has the executive Power, and meet every Day except Sundays; but the great Council aſſemble but twice a Week except upon extraordinary Occaſions, as about Peace, War, Alliances, &c.

The great Officers of State in this Republick are, The two Avoyers, whoſe Employments are for Life, but they exerciſe them by Turns annually; and he whoſe Turn it is for that Year, is call'd the *Reigning Avoyer*; he preſides in both Councils, propoſes Matters to be debated, keeps the Seals, &c. and the other Avoyer takes place only as firſt Senator for the Year that he is not the Reigning Avoyer; but when that Year is expired, the reigning one reſigns, and the other reſumes his Place and Authority.

Lucern.

The Government in *Lucern*, *Friburg*, and *Soleure*, differs little from that of *Bern*, only the great Council of *Lucern* conſiſts of but an hundred Members, and the Senate of thirty five.

Leſſer Cantons.

As to the Government of the leſſer Cantons of *Switz*, *Underwald*, *Uri*, *Zug*, *Glaris*, and *Appenzel*, it is *Democratical*, the Supreme or Legiſlative Power being lodg'd in Perſons choſe by, and out of, the common People, every Diſtrict a Deputy. They aſſemble, and form a ſtanding Council of the Canton; but ſtill, when Matters in Debate are of great Importance, every Male above ſixteen (the Servant as well as the Maſter) has an equal Share by voting. Theſe Aſſemblies meet once or twice a Year to chuſe Magiſtrates and Repreſentatives for the General Diet.

The firſt Officer in theſe Cantons is call'd *Land-Aman*, who is choſen in full Aſſembly, and their Conſent is expreſs'd by holding up their Hands; he is Preſident both of their ſtanding Council and General Aſſemblies, and hath the chief Direction in publick Affairs, but with the Advice of the Council. The ſecond Officer is the *Stat-Halter*, who is Deputy to the *Land-Aman*, and acts in his Abſence. I ſhall conclude this Chapter with Mr. *Addiſon*'s Remark upon the Poverty of this Country; [*Addiſon's Travels pag.* 384.] who having taken Notice of their penurious Condition, adds,

"It is no Wonder therefore, that the poor "Commonwealth of *Switzerland*, endeavour to "ſuppreſs every thing that may introduce Va"nity and Luxury; that they prohibit Gaming, "Balls, and all Extravagancies of Dreſs; and "that their Magiſtrates in their publick Aſſem"blies, appear in the plaineſt Garb imaginable, "to ſet an Example to the reſt: But Perſons of "different Qualities are diſtinguiſh'd by the "Shape or Faſhion of their Ornaments more "than by the Value of them; for they take Care "to have ſuch as may be purchaſs'd at a mode"rate Price, becauſe they cannot afford dearer: "As for Example, a great Officer is known not "by his Gold Lace, but by the Depth of his "Hat Crown; but if they happen to have a "rich Suit, it commonly goes from Father to "Son, and ſo through three or four Generations, "inſomuch, that it is common to ſee a Man of "Subſtance wear the Breeches or Doublet of his "Great Grand-father; and the common Wear "of the Peaſants, is a coarſe Sort of Canvas, the "Manufacture of the Country."

CHAP. V.

Of the Revenues and Forces of the Switzers; *as alſo of their Trade, Manufacture, and Religion.*

It is not to be expected that a Place of ſuch poor Product and mean Trade, can have large publick Revenues, if compared with other Kingdoms and States; but as they ſuit their Expences to their Income, they may lay by ſomething every Year. The little popular Cantons have ſcarce any publick Revenues, but tax themſelves voluntarily in proportion as their Affairs require; and if they happen to have a Fund, or Stock in the Treaſury, that their preſent Circumſtances do not require to be diſburſs'd upon publick Affairs, they will agree to divide it among the Communities from whom it was collected. But thoſe Commonwealths in *Switzerland* that may be deem'd rich, are thoſe that have Cities for their Capitals, and of thoſe, the Proteſtant Cantons are the richeſt. The two wealthieſt Cantons, are thoſe of *Zurich* and *Bern*, the former of which is the richer in proportion to its Extent; but the latter is the larger by ſo much, that it far exceeds the Revenues of *Zurich*. The two ſmall Cantons of *Bazil* and *Schaffhauſen*, are more wealthy than any of the three Catholick Cantons.

These Republicks have always thought ſtanding Forces inconſiſtent with their Welfare and Safety, but they have a well regulated Militia, and with theſe they have maintain'd their Liberty againſt all the Attempts of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, and alſo of *France*; and during the long Wars they had with theſe Powers, they always found them to be good Soldiers to their Coſt. The Cantons have now been above two hundred Years at Peace, except among themſelves on Account of Religion; the higheſt Diſputes upon that Subject, were in the Years 1531, 1656, and 1712. in the two firſt of which, the Catholick Cantons gain'd Ground of the Proteſtants; but in the laſt, *viz.* 1712, which laſted but four Months, the Proteſtants broke the Power of the Roman Catholick Cantons; and there is no Reaſon to believe that the *Switzers* are more indolent now than formerly, only their new rais'd Forces have not been exerciſ'd in conſtant Wars as their

An-

Anceſtors have been; and therefore require ſome time to be diſciplin'd.

In order to have a powerful Militia, every Male from ſixteen to ſixty is enroll'd; and about one third of them regimented, under the Title of Fuzileers and Electionaries; and as theſe fail, they are recruited out of the other two thirds. The Fuzileers are all ſingle Men of a good Size, and in the Flower of their Age, always ready to march at an Hour's Warning. The Electionaries are married Men, but of a proper Age and Size for Service. Every Regiment of Fuzileers conſiſts of ten Companies, of an hundred and ten Men each; and every Regiment of Electionaries contains twelve Companies, every Company conſiſting of two hundred and eighteen Men Officers included. Every Soldier provides his own Arms, but they are all of one Make and Faſhion, there being a Commiſſioner at Arms to take Care that they all be conformable to the Standard or Patern they are to made by. Their Cloathing is of Grey Cloth, but fac'd up with different Colours for Diſtinction. Their Horſe being of little Uſe to them in this mountainous Country, they have generally converted them into Dragoons, of which there are ten Troops in every Regiment of ſixty Men each, and the Soldiers provide Horſes as well as Arms for themſelves.

In the Magazine of *Bern*, there is always an entire new Set of Arms for all the Militia of the Canton, beſides thoſe in common Uſe. The Canton of *Bern* has alſo a very fine Train of Artillery in their Capital ready to march upon the ſhorteſt Warning. They have alſo a great Number of Cannon in the Caſtles where their Bailiffs reſide, with proper Cannoneers, Bombardiers, *&c.*

Trade. The *Switzers* export very little Merchandize to foreign Countries, except Horſes, Black Cattle, Butter, and Cheeſe. The *French* take off great Numbers of their Horſe to mount their Cavalry in time of War, inſomuch, that a credible Author informs us, that he has known ten thouſand Horſes bought up by the *French* in this Country in a Years time for the Uſe of their Army; and the King of *Sardinia* in the late Wars, had *Switz* Horſe for his Dragoons and Artillery; they alſo ſell great Numbers of Horſe into the *Milaneſe*, and other Parts of *Lombardy*, for their Coaches; they diſpoſe of great Numbers of their black Cattle in *Italy*, and their Cheeſe to many Parts of *Europe*. The chief Towns for Manufacture are *Zurich*, *Bazil*, *Schaffhauſen*, and St. *Gall*. *Zurich* is famous for Crape, St. *Gall* for Linnen, but inferior to that of *Holland*; but ſold at a cheap Rate in Proportion. *Bazil* and *Schafhauſen* lie very commodiouſly for a Trade with *France*, *Italy* and *Germany*. As for Corn, they have not enough for their own Conſumption, but import from *Suabia* and the *Milaneſe*. Their Salt they have from *Tyrol* and *Bavaria*. They have ſcarce any Manufacture of Silk or Wool. What they wear of this kind they have from abroad, except a very coarſe Sort of a woollen Stuff. They are People of ſo little Ingenuity, that their better Sort of People are forc'd to ſend for their Utenſils from abroad. From the whole we may gather, that their Importations are more than their Exportations, which is a Sign of a poor Country. One Teſtimony of which is, that Silver and Gold in Specie is ſeldom ſeen uſed there in publick Commerce; and therefore to adapt their Expences to the Circumſtances of their Country, they have prohibited the wearing of Gold, Silver, Jewels, Silks, and Lace, or whatſoever is more chargeable than uſeful in Dreſs; only the Women that can afford it, are tolerated in wearing Silks at Weddings and Feſtivals.

It has been obſerv'd, that both the Roman Catholick and the Proteſtant Religion are profeſs'd here; and I may add, that both Parties are exceeding zealous in their Way; the Clergy making it their Buſineſs to aggravate one Party againſt the other's Religion. The Proteſtant Cantons are rigid *Calviniſts*; ſeveral Battles were fought on this Occaſion, in one of which *Zuinglius*, one of the Fathers of the Reformation, was kill'd. In the Year 1566, a Synod of the Proteſtant Clergy of *Switzerland* was held, where the Articles of their Faith were drawn up, and entituled, *The Helvetick Profeſſion*, in which they ſtick cloſe to the Doctrine of *Calvin* as to Election, Predeſtination, *&c.* and there is no Toleration in the Cantons, but every one who does not profeſs the eſtabliſh'd Religion is baniſh'd the Country.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Allies and Intereſt of the Switzers.

THE Allies of the *Switzers* are, 1. The *Griſons*. 2. The Town and Country of *Neufchattel*. 3. The Abbot of St. *Gall*. 4. The *Valetians*. 5. The Republick of *Geneva*. And, 6. The Towns of *Mulhauſen* and *Bienne*; but the *Griſons* is the moſt conſiderable; and as their Cuſtoms, Manners, and Government, differ not materially from thoſe of the *Switzers*, I ſhall not repeat the Deſcription of them.

Valteline. The *Valteline* or *Valetians* are ſo call'd, becauſe the Place is a long Valley of about ten Leagues in Length; it abounds in Corn, Wine, and Oil, and the moſt delicious Fruits; and it is commodiouſly ſituated, as being a Paſs between *Italy* and *Germany*, and therefore its Fertility is of greater Advantage: It lies between the County of *Griſons* on the North, and the Territories of *Venice* on the South; and between *Tyrol* on the Eaſt, and *Milan* on the Weſt. The Capital is *Tirano*, the Seat of the Governor, ſituate on the Banks of the River *Adda*, about ſix Miles to the Northward of the Territories of *Venice*. It is a fortify'd Place, and the ſtrongeſt in all the *Valteline*.

Neufchatel. The Counties of *Neufchattel* and *Valengin* are alſo Allies of the *Switzers*; they lie on the Weſt Side of the Lake of *Neufchattel*; their moſt profitable Produce is Wine, which they ſell to Foreigners to great Advantage. They participate with the *French* more than the *Germans*, both for their Language and Manners. *Neufchattel* or *Newburgh* ſtands at the North Eaſt End of the Lake of the ſame Name, fifteen Miles North Weſt of *Friburg*. It is a ſtrong Town, govern'd by a Council of ſixty Burghers, and enjoys large Privileges.

Geneva. THE next Ally of the *Switzers* of any Note is *Geneva*; the City ſtands at the Weſt End of the Lake of the ſame Name. The River *Rhone* runs through it, but the much larger Part is on the South Side; but the two Parts have a Communication maintain'd between them by three Bridges. It is remarkable for two very fine Streets, one of which aſcends the Hill, and the other goes along the Banks of the River and Lake, which makes it exceeding pleaſant; and indeed the fine Walks, and the Proſpect upon the Water, are what it is chiefly to be admired for. The Wall is above two Miles in Circumference; it is guarded both by the *French* and *Savoyards*, it being the Intereſt of one to prevent its falling into the Hands of the other. They have an odd Way of managing their Cattle, which they drive up to the Mountains about *May*, and have Huts, in which they manage their Dairy all the Summer, and return to the Town in Winter. The Counts and Biſhops of *Geneva* had ſome time a mixt Juriſdiction in the Place, but at the Reformation, the Biſhop became Sovereign both in Temporals and Spirituals. Their Church was form'd by *John Calvin* in Perſon about the Year 1535.

THE Lake, as above obſerv'd, is about ſixty Miles in Length, and twelve in Breadth, and produces Plenty of good Fiſh, eſpecially Trout. The City of *Geneva* ſtands upon a riſing Ground, and its Views are bounded on all Sides by ſeveral Ranges of Mountains, but at ſuch a Diſtance, that there are wonderful beautiful Proſpects contain'd within them; and theſe circumjacent Mountains break off the Sharpneſs of the Air. The River *Rhone* falls into the Lake at the Eaſt End of it. There is a noble Proſpect of *Geneva* from the Lake, and it is indeed the politeſt Town in *Switzerland*; it is the chief Place of Education for the Children of the Proteſtant Cantons.

THERE are many very wealthy Gentlemen in *Geneva*, who have a Cuſtom of laying up a great Stock of Corn in their publick Granaries built for that Purpoſe, and retailing it out to the Poor at the common Price when it is ſcarce; three of the little Council being appointed to inſpect into and manage this Affair; but none of theſe three Directors are allow'd to furniſh the Granaries from their own Stock, that they may not be under a Temptation to impoſe upon the Publick, either in the Price or Goodneſs of the Grain; nor are they allow'd to buy any Corn within twelve Miles of *Geneva*, leſt, inſtead of keeping it cheap, they ſhould make it dear, and the Reſult of the Inſtitution ſhould overthrow the original Deſign of it.

THE Situation of the *Switzers* may be ſaid to be almoſt in the Heart of *Europe*, and they are a hardy People, and the Proteſtants are ſufficiently able to deal with the Roman Catholicks if no foreign Power ſhould interpoſe; but the Popiſh Cantons are ſo much inclin'd to the *French* Intereſt, that it is not improbable, but that they may in a few Years become a Province of *France*, whoſe Prince they already look upon as their Protector; for there is no Nation courts them more, or employs more of their Troops than the *French*, which is eſteem'd the greateſt Favour that can be done to a *Swiss* Republick; becauſe it is a Proviſion for moſt of their leading Men, who are at the ſame time train'd up in the Art of War, on which Account they are at their Return more reſpected than any Claſs of Men in the Country.

THE Reaſon of the *French* being ſo fond of employing the *Swiſs* more than any other Nation, is becauſe of the Largeneſs of their Size; the *French* being more ſmall and effeminate, and more addicted to Gallantry than War, makes them unable to withſtand either the *German* or *Dutch* Infantry without the Help of the *Swiſs*.

AND now to cloſe this Deſcription of *Switzerland*, I ſhall take Notice of ſome of Mr. *Addiſon*'s Obſervations on this Country in his Travels through it, and he tells us, That at *Lauſanne*, the largeſt Town upon the Lake except *Geneva* itſelf, he obſerv'd the Crack in the Wall of the Cathedral which was open'd by an Earthquake, and clos'd again ſome Years afterwards by another, and ſo cloſe, that it was but juſt diſcernable when he ſaw it; but ſeveral People then living affirm'd, that between the Times of the two Earthquakes, they had frequently paſs'd through the Breach. The Country between *Lauſanne* and *Geneva* is the moſt fruitful and beſt cultivated of any in the *Alps*. About five Miles from *Nyon*, they ſtill ſhew the Ruins of *Cæſar*'s Wall of eighteen Miles in Length, *viz.* from Mount *Jura* to the Walls of the Banks of *Geneva*, as it is deſcribed by *Cæſar* in the firſt Book of his Commentaries. *Lauſanne.*

THE next Place he gives us a Deſcription of is *Friburg*, the Capital of one of the largeſt Popiſh Cantons, ſituate ſo irregularly amongſt the Rocks and Precipices, that they are forc'd to climb up to it by ſeveral Stair-Caſes of prodigious Aſcent. The College of Jeſuits here, is ſaid to be the fineſt in *Switzerland*, from whence they have ſeveral beautiful Proſpects, and they have a Collection of the Pictures of moſt of the Fathers of their Order; amongſt whom are ſome Natives of *England*, by us ſtill'd Rebels, but by them, Martyrs. The Inſcription under *Henry Garnet* relates, that when the Hereticks could not prevail on him either by Force or Promiſes to change his Religion, they hang'd and quarter'd him. *Friburg.*

THERE is a little Hermitage about two Leagues from *Friburg*, deem'd one of the greateſt Curioſities in *Switzerland*; it is ſituate in a very agreeable Solitude among Woods and Rocks, inſomuch that the very View and Situation of it is enough to incline one to be ſerious. The Hermit that then poſſeſs'd it had liv'd there five and twenty Years; in which Time, he had with his own Hands wrought in the ſolid Rock a pretty Chapel, a Sacriſty, a Chamber, Kitchen, Cellar, and other Conveniencies. His Chimney is carried up through the whole Rock, though the Rooms lie very deep; and he has cut the Sloping of the Side of the Rock level for a Garden; and for Soil, he brings Earth from the neighbouring Parts; and has indeed made it ſuch a delicious Spot of Ground, that it looks rather too luxurious for an Hermit. And for a Supply of Water, he obſerv'd the Drops diſtil from ſeveral Parts of the Rock, and purſuing the Veins from whence they proceeded, he found the Springs, and has cut him out two or three Baſons or Fountains, which both furniſh his Houſe with Water for common Uſe, and alſo ſupply his little Garden with Water. A fine Hermitage.

THE Roads from *Friburg* to *Bern* are very bad, For a great Part of them lie through Woods of Fir-Trees, which are ſo plenty, that they mend their Roads with them inſtead of Stone and Gravel. The publick Walks by the great Church at *Bern* are rais'd extremely high, and afford a noble Summer's Proſpect; for here you have a full View of the huge Range of Mountains in the Country of the *Griſons* all cover'd with Snow. I muſt own indeed, that thoſe who paint Landſcapes, would ſcarce allow Mountains cover'd with Snow to be a ſeaſonable Summer's Proſpect; but when we conſider that thoſe Snowy Mountains are ſeen in the Summer Time, and from a Place where the Weather is actually as hot

hot as can be expected in ſuch a Clime as the forty ſeventh Degree of Latitude, at that Time of the Year it muſt add to the Variety and Excellency of the Proſpect. And what is ſtill more agreeable, though theſe Mountains are fourſcore Miles from *Bern*; yet their prodigious Height and white Colour make them ſeem to be at a much leſs Diſtance. The Cathedral at *Bern* is eſteem'd one of the moſt magnificent Proteſtant Churches in *Europe*.

THE ſaid Mr. *Addiſon* obſerves, that *Zurich*, which is ſituate upon a Lake of the ſame Name, is one of the handſomeſt Towns in the Country, and the Town-Houſe is a fine Pile of Building; but concludes with this Remark, that they have in a Manner ſpoil'd the Beauty of the Walls with abundance of childiſh *Latin* Sentences, which conſiſt of a Gingle of Words; and from thence, and other Inſcriptions in the Country, he concludes, that their Men of Learning are extremely delighted in playing little Tricks with Words and Figures, (and we may add with Letters too) for their Wit conſiſts much in Anagram and Acroſtick.

A

THE HISTORY AND DESCRIPTION OF *FRANCE.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Original of the Kingdom and Government of France; *with an Abſtract of their general Hiſtory, from their firſt attempting to form themſelves into a People to their Eſtabliſhment into a Government.*

Original of *France.*

AS *France* has ſince its Eſtabliſhment into a regular Government, been frequently one of the moſt celebrated Kingdoms in *Europe*, as being the Stage whereon very great Things have been tranſacted both in Peace and War, both in Negotiations and actual Hoſtilities, and both within and without its own Boundaries; we have thought it neceſſary to introduce the particular Hiſtory of it with the following brief Account of its firſt Original.

THE furtheſt that we can go back with Certainty, is, that the *French* deſcended originally from a People that dwelt beyond the *Rhine*; but whether they were the *Aborigines* of that Country, or came from ſome Place more remote, is yet uncertain as to the Reach of Hiſtory. Not to go ſo far back as to take their Deſcent from *Adam* firſt, and afterwards from *Noah*, in common with the reſt of the human Race; this we are aſſured from authentick Hiſtory, that ſince their Settlement in *Gaul*, they have been intermix'd with *Romans*, *Gauls*, and *Germans*. The *Romans* made a conſiderable Part of this Beginning; and it is next to be conſider'd, what the *Gauls* and *Germans* were, and what they did before this Intermixture; and 'tis certain, they were both promiſcuouſly call'd *Celtæ*. But Authors differ about the Derivation and Extent of that Word; ſome apply it in common to the Inhabitants of *Britain*, *Illyricum*, and *Spain*. And as its Derivation does not determine either its Extent or Limitation, it is thought it included all thoſe Places; but was by Degrees reſtrain'd, till at laſt it now includes no more than that Part of *Gaul* which borders upon the *Marne*, the *Seine*, and the *Garonne*.

SOME Authors are of Opinion, that the Name of *Celtæ* remain'd only in thoſe great Countries, ſince call'd *Gaul*, and *Germany*; but *Germany* in this Extent, is ſaid by *Tacitus*, to be bounded by the *Rhine* and the *Danube*, and all the Northern Ocean; ſo that *Denmark*, *Scandinavia*, *Livonia*, and *Pruſſia*, were included therein; and the Limits of *Gaul* were the two Seas, the *Rhine*, the *Pyrenees*, and the *Alps*.

NOT to ſpend Time or Room about the Original or Derivation, either of the Words *Gaul* or *Celtæ*, we ſhall proceed to obſerve, that the moſt remarkable Irruption of the *Gauls*, was about the Year of the World 3416, when *Tarquinius Priſcus* reign'd at *Rome*, and *Ambigatus*, King of the *Berruyans* had the Command of all *Gallia Celtica*. This Prince ſent out *Sigoveſus* and *Bloveſus*, his Siſter's Sons, to ſeek their Fortunes; in Order to which, they aſſembled three hundred thouſand Men, and parted: *Sigoveſus*, went to the *Hyrcinian* Foreſt, and *Beloveſus* paſs'd the *Alps*, and ſeiz'd all the Country between the *Alps*, the *Appennine* Hills, the River *Teſis*, and the River *Jeſi*, which falls into the Sea not far from *Ancona*; and there built *Milan*, *Padua*, *Verona*, *Breſcia*, and ſeveral other fine Cities yet in being; while *Sigoveſus* fought his Way through the *Hyrcinian* Foreſt, and conquer'd ſeveral Countries, particularly that now call'd *Bohemia*.

BUT notwithſtanding thoſe Succeſſes of the *Gauls*, they were at laſt forc'd to ſubmit to the *Romans*, but not without long and bloody Wars, the *Gauls* withſtanding the *Romans* ſo ſtoutly that no Citizen in *Rome* was exempted from liſting himſelf when they were at War with the *Gauls*. The firſt open War they had with the *Romans*, was about the Year of the World 3615, and this War was ſucceeded by fifteen or twenty more, which at laſt tir'd the *Gauls* out, and forc'd them to ſubmit to the Terms of Peace propoſ'd them by the *Romans*; and now thoſe Parts of *Gaul* which are at preſent call'd *Savoy*, *Dauphine*, *Provence*, and *Languedoc*, are made (in a great Meaſure) ſubject to the *Romans*.

Julius

Julius Cæsar was at the same Time Governor of *Gallia Cisalpina*, which the *Romans* had conquer'd on this Side the *Alps*; and he made it his Business to attack the *Gauls*, who remain'd yet unconquer'd, and made War upon them contrary to the Sentiments of *Cato* and the Senate; and the *Gauls* being but a confused Sort of Government, like a Body without a Head, consisting of several petty States of different Interests, each for itself. *Julius Cæsar* took the Advantage of this, and in nine Years time subdu'd all *Gaul*, from the *Alps* to the *Rhine* and the Ocean; after which Conquest, the *Gauls* continu'd subject to the *Roman* Government near five hundred Years, in the Reigns of *Julius Cæsar* and *Augustus Cæsar* and their Successors.

And now to come to our intended Purpose; some, and with the best Reason, believe, that these *Gauls* that we have now derived from their Original, are the same with the *Franks*, from whence we derive *France*, or the *French*, only with this Limitation, that the present *Franks*, or *French*, are the Descent of those *Gauls* who return'd from the other Side of the *Rhine*; and the Reasons seem evident; for in our common Acceptation to this Day, *Gallia* and *France* are synonimous Terms, as are also the Words *Gallick* and *French*.

As to the Derivation of the Word *Franks*, which it is supposed, that either those People assum'd, or some other bestow'd the Epithet upon them, it may easily and without forcing, be deriv'd from a *High Dutch* Word, signifying *free*, or *Love of Liberty*.

But all this Time the *Franks* or *French* continued in their Non-age, and little is said of them till the Reigns of *Valentinian*, *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Valentinian* II. who reign'd in the fourth Century. And if we come as low as *Theodosius* II. we find little said of the *Franks*, but that they were then brought to submit to *Honorius*, and two of their Kings degraded, and others substituted in their Room. But about the Year 409, all *Armorica*, and other Provinces of *Gaul*, endeavour'd to shake off the *Roman* Yoke; and in Order thereto, expell'd the *Roman* Governors and Garrisons. But before we proceed any further, it will be necessary to observe the Situation and Extent of *Armorica*; and first, the Word signifies Maritime or bordering upon the Sea; but that *Armorica* has had its Vicissitudes, and according to the different Success of contending Powers, has contain'd more or less Space. But *Cæsar* in his Commentaries says, the *Gauls* call'd all the Places that border'd upon the Ocean *Armorica*, and that that Name was common to all the Sea Coast, from *Bayonne* in the Bay of *Biscay*, to the Westermost Point of *Bretagne*, and thence to the Mouth of the *Rhine*; and this includes all the Coast of *France*. And here, according to *Zozimus*, the *Franks* or *French* join'd the *Armoricans*, and came into a strict League with them, which continu'd so firm, that it contributed very much to the Ruin of the *Roman* Empire in those Parts, and at last to the Establishment of the Kingdom of *France* under the following Crown'd Heads.

CHAP. II.

An Abstract of the Reigns of the Kings of France, *from* Pharamond *to* Charles I. *or* Charlemain.

PHARAMOND, who was the first King *France*, began his Reign in the Year of our Lord 418. The Manner of his Inaugura- 418

tion was, they set him upon a great Shield, and carried him thereupon into the Field, where the People were assembled and confirm'd their Approbation of the Choice by loud Acclamations. It is supposed he intended to make a Conquest of some Part of *Gaul* but the *Romans* drove the *French* beyond the *Rhine* about the Year 428; about which Time he died, after a Reign of ten Years, having establish'd the Salique Law, appointing, that the Crown shall not be inherited by any Woman.

Clodius, the Hairy, or Long-locks, began in the Year 428. In the Beginning of his Reign he dwelt beyond the *Rhine*, but was beat back by the famous *Roman* General *Aëtius*, when he attempted to make an Irruption into *Gaul*. However he privately retir'd from his Castle at *Dispurg* in *Thuringen*, broke through *Charbonnierre*, and took *Bavoy*, *Cambray*, and some other Places; from whence taking the Advantage of the Confusion of the *Roman* Empire, he pursued his Conquest, but met with *Aëtius* the *Roman* General, who for a Time put a Stop to his Progress, but at length conquer'd *Artois*, and enlarg'd his Dominions as far as the *Soame*, and took *Amiens*, which he made the Place of his Residence. He reigned twenty Years, leaving two Sons behind him, under the Guardianship of his near Relation *Merovæus*; but instead of being a faithful Protector, *Merovæus*, 448

Merovæus assum'd the Royal Dignity himself to the Prejudice of the Children with whom he was intrusted. He was a brave and warlike Prince, and joining his Forces with the *Roman* General *Aëtius*, and *Theoderick*, King of the *Visigoths*, they charg'd *Attila* King of the *Huns*, who had laid Siege to *Orleans* with so much Fury, that they made him quit it with great Slaughter. And at another Attack, they kill'd two hundred thousand of his Men, and made him glad to have Men enough to retreat into his own Country with. *Aëtius* quitted the *Visigoths*, and the *French* King *Merovæus*, who afterwards conquer'd *Mentz* and *Picardy*, a good Part of *Normandy*, and almost all the Isle of *France*; and after a Reign of eleven Years he died.

Childerick succeeded him in the Kingdom, but being a young debauch'd Prince, the People dethron'd him and advanc'd *Egidius* in his Room, *Childerick* at the same Time being glad to withdraw to *Thuringa* to save his Life; but the cunning *Guyeman*, a Friend of *Childerick's*, ingratiated himself so far into the Favour of *Egidius*, intending at the same Time, if possible, to procure the dethroning of him, that he advised him to burthen the People with Taxes; and when they grumbled, he advised him to cut off the principal Men among them as a seeming Example, but at the same Time gave secret Encouragement to the Rest that complain'd, and perswaded them to recal their natural King, which they did, and went as far as *Bar* to meet him; and the Subjects being now exasperated against *Egidius*, he was *Childerick*, 459

fore'd to quit *Cologne*, and *Childerick* took and burnt *Treves*, conquer'd *Lorrain*, and croſſing *Champaigne*, which then remain'd firm to the *Romans*, he took *Beauvais*, *Paris*, and many other Towns upon the *Oiſe*; and the People weary of the *Roman* Exactions, readily ſubmitted to him. He fell ſick of a Fever, and dy'd in the forty ſixth Year of his Age, when he had reign'd about twenty two or twenty three Years. It is ſuppoſed his Royal Reſidence was at *Tournay*, becauſe in digging there, they found a Ring with his Effigies and Name engraven upon it. He left behind him (beſides three Daughters) a Son named

Clovis. *Clovis*, now *Louis* or *Lewis*: He ſucceeded his Father; he early began War againſt *Siagrius* the Son of *Egidius*, who had been ſet up againſt *Childerick*; and defeating him near *Soiſons*, fore'd him out of the Hands of *Alarick*, King of the *Viſigoths*, and fiez'd all that the *Romans* had in *Gaul*, and ſubdu'd a Part of *Thuringia*, and brought it under Tribute. In the Year 491, he married *Clotilda*, the Niece of *Gaudebaud* King of the *Burgundians*.

THE *Almains* of *Germany* entering in a hoſtile Manner into the Territories of *Sigebert* King of *Cologn*, this *Clovis* King of *France*, engag'd in the Quarrel in *Sigebert*'s Intereſt; but his Men loſt Ground, and expos'd him to great Danger; whereupon he pray'd to the God of his Wife, ſhe being a Chriſtian, and made a Vow, that if he had a Deliverance, he would be baptiz'd; whereupon he kill'd Abundance of his Enemies, and the Day became his own; and purſuing his Conqueſt, he expell'd all thoſe that were on that Side the *Rhine*; and at his Return was inſtructed in the Principles of Chriſtianity, and was baptiz'd at *Rhems Dec.* 25. *Anno* 496. and his Example was follow'd by above three thouſand of his *French* Subjects.

Clovis baptiz'd, being the firſt Chriſtian King of *France*

WHEN *Clovis* was at Peace, he endeavour'd to reform the *Salique Law*; and making War upon *Alarick* King of the *Viſigoths* upon the Foot of Religion, he took *Tours*, and defeated *Alarick*'s Army, and kill'd him with his own Hands. He then took *Albigeois*, *Rovergne*, *Quercy*, and *Auvergne*; alſo *Poictiers*, *Saintonge*, *Bourdelois*; and laſtly, *Bourdeaux* itſelf, where he winter'd: And in the Spring, he took *Angouleſme*, and the three *Aquitains*, while his Confederate *Gondebaud* conquer'd the *Narbonnois*, with the City of *Narbonne* itſelf; theſe Succeſſes made *Clovis* famous even unto the Eaſt, whence the Emperor *Anaſtatius* ſent him *Imperial* Ornaments, with the Title of *Auguſt*, which Grandeur of his contributed very much to the bringing the *Gauls* into Subjection, they having a great Veneration for thoſe Titles.

BUT *Theoderick* King of the *Oſtrogoths* envying *Clovis*'s Succeſs, ſent an Army againſt him, and ſlew 30000 of his *French* and *Burgundians*, and afterwards took from them all they had conquer'd in *Provence* and *Languedoc*, except *Thoulouſe* and *Uzez*. *Clovis* fretted at theſe Loſſes, and began to exerciſe Cruelty and Treachery upon the other petty Kings of *France*, but was cut off, and dy'd at *Paris* in *Novemb.* 511. aged 45. after a Reign of thirty Years. In his Reign the *French* entirely freed themſelves from the *Roman* Yoke, and became their Allies upon equal Terms. When he dy'd he left four Sons, *Thierry*, *Clodomir*, *Childebert*, and *Clotair*.

Thierry, &c. *Thierry*, *Clodomir*, *Childebert*, and *Clotair* above mentioned, divided the Kingdom among them; *Thierry* had *Metz*, *Clodomir* had *Orleans*, *Childebert* had *Paris*, and *Clotair* had *Soiſſons*. *France* now began to be divided into *Oſtrich* or the Eaſter Part, and *Weſtrich* or *Neuſtria*; the firſt includes all between the *Meuſe* and the *Rhine*, with *Rheims*, *Chalons*, *Cambray*, and *Leon*.

Gondebaud King of *Burgundy* dying, was ſucceeded by his Son *Sigiſmond*, who was quickly betray'd into the Hands of his Enemies, and with his Wife and Children ſhut up in a Caſtle; but *Gondemar*, *Sigiſmond*'s Friend, with the Remains of his Brother's Army, and what he had of his own, plac'd himſelf upon the Throne; at which *Clodomir* being jealous, made a League with his Brother *Thierry* to expel *Sigiſmond*, which Deſign he not only compleated, but maſſacred *Sigiſmond* with his Wife and Children in ſuch a barbarous Manner, that his Brother *Thierry* forſook him and ſuffer'd him to periſh. However, the *French* revenged his Death by a terrible Slaughter of the *Burgundians*, and a Conqueſt of that Part of the Kingdom which lay next to *Orleans*. *Clodomir* left three Sons behind him.

SOON after, *Thierry*, with his Brother *Clotair*, over-run *Thuringia*, which was made over to *Thierry*. *Childebert* and *Clotair* join'd to expel *Gaudemar*, and put a final End to the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, after it had ſubſiſted about ninety Years, and united it to *France*, though it retains its Name to this Day. *Thierry* was ſlain in beſieging Lord *Munderic* in his Caſtle of *Vitry*, in the twenty third Year of his Reign and the fifty fifth of his Age, leaving only one Son, named *Theodebert*, to ſucceed him; and while his Uncles *Childebert* and *Clotair* prepared to invade his Kingdom, he broke through their Meaſures, and contracted ſo great a Friendſhip with *Childebert*, that he promiſed him the Succeſſion, having no Child of his own. But *Theodebert* being one Day hunting a wild Bull, the Blow of a Branch of a Tree threw him into a Fever and coſt him his Life, in the forty third Year of his Age, and the fourteenth of his Reign, leaving behind him his Son and Succeſſor,

Theobald: In his Time the Kingdom of the *Oſtrogoths* was extinguiſh'd in *Italy*, and the *Saxons* and *Thuringians* revolted; but *Clotair* beat and plunder'd them; and *Childebert* jealous of *Clotair*'s Succeſs, perſwaded his own Son *Chramne* to rebel againſt him, who engaged himſelf by Oath to *Childebert* never to be reconciled to his Father; and now *Childebert* thought himſelf eſtabliſh'd, but did not long enjoy it, for he dy'd in the Year 558. after a Reign of forty ſeven Years.

Clotair ſucceeded, and Prince *Chramne* having loſt *Childebert*'s Protection, was glad to reconcile himſelf to his Father; which done, he retir'd to *Canober*, one of the Princes of *Bretagne*, whither his Father hotly purſu'd him, kill'd *Canober*, and took *Chramne* and his Wife and Children and barbarouſly burnt them; of which Cruelty he repented ſo ſincerely, that he endeavour'd to attone for it by Acts of Devotion and large Donations to the Church. He dy'd in the ſixty firſt Year of his Age, and forty ninth of his Reign. He had four Sons, *Cherebert* King of *Paris*, *Goutran* King of *Orleans* and *Burgundy*, *Sigebert* of *Auſtraſia*, and *Chilperic* of *Soiſſons*.

THIS Diviſion of the Kingdom cauſed great Trouble in the Nation, and they had not been long ſetled in their reſpective Kingdoms, till the *Avares* flying from the Tyranny of the *Turks* into the Emperor *Juſtinian*'s Service, and being after his Death ſlighted by *Juſtin*, they penetrated into the Heart of *Germany*, and ravaged *Thuringia*, which belong'd to *Sigebert*; but undaunted at their Approach, he encounter'd them upon the Banks of the *Elbe*, and ſent them back with Loſs and Shame to the *Danube* whence they came. But while *Sigebert* was expelling his Enemies abroad,

broad, *Chilperic* fell upon his Territories, ravaged the Country of *Rheims*, and took *Theodebert* Priſoner; but they ſoon agreed, and the young Prince was diſcharg'd. The Kingdom of *Lombardy* was erected, and they made frequent Incurſions into *Rhetia* and *Provence*; and in *Anno* 571. march'd againſt King *Goutran*'s Army, defeated it, and ſlew his General *Amat*; but his Succeſſor *Mummole* afterwards hemm'd them in at *Ambrun*, and killed or took moſt of his Army. *Cherebert* dy'd in the forty ninth Year of his Age and the tenth of his Reign.

Cherebert being dead, his three Brothers abovemention'd, *viz. Goutran*, *Sigibert*, and *Chilperic*, re-divided the Kingdom, and even the City of *Paris* alſo; and *Sigibert* ſoon after made War upon *Goutran*, and attempted to take from him the City of *Arles*; but failing in that, he ſtudy'd other Satisfaction; and indeed *Cherebert*'s Kingdom being to be divided among the other three, made room enough for Contention, and the rather, becauſe *Tourain* and *Poictiers* falling to *Sigibert*'s Share, *Chilperic* had a great Deſire to make himſelf Maſter of them, which occaſion'd a cruel War and the Deſolation of many Provinces; and at this Time *Sigibert* was ſlain, about the forty fourth Year of his Age, and in the fourteenth Year of his Reign. He left a Son named *Childebert*, and two Daughters.

Upon the Death of *Sigibert*, the Siege of *Tournay* was raiſed, and the *Neſtrians* return'd to the Obedience of *Chilperic*; but Queen *Brunchaud* ſav'd her Son *Childebert* by lowering him over the Wall in a Basket, from whence he was ſafely convey'd to *Metz*.

Chilperic was aſſaſſinated in an Evening as he alighted from his Horſe, the Aſſaſſin giving him two Stabs with a Knife, one under the Arm-pit, and the other in his Belly, and put an End to his Life and Reign *Anno* 584.

Upon *Chilperic*'s Death, his Son *Clotair* ſucceeded in *Neuſtria*, *Goutran* in *Burgundy*, and *Childebert* in *Auſtraſia*. *Goutran* died in the Year 593, in the thirty ſecond Year of his Reign, and the ſixty eighth of his Age. And *Childebert* being now grown very potent, thought to have made an eaſy Prey of young *Clotair*; but the politick *Fredegonda*, the Mother of *Clotair*, uſed ſuch Artifice, that ſhe engaged thoſe to her Son's Intereſt who had been alienated from him; and by this Means, ſhe obſtructed the Progreſs of *Childebert*'s Army, and defeated them with the Loſs of three thouſand Men; notwithſtanding which, *Childebert* tore from *Clotair* ſome of the remote Towns of his Kingdom; but *Childebert* died *Anno* 595, and was ſucceeded by his two Sons, *Theodebert* in *Auſtraſia*, and *Thierry* in *Burgundy* and *Orleance*.

France was now come into the Hands of three minor Kings, *viz. Clotair*, *Theodebert*, and *Thierry*; the two laſt of which, made an Attempt upon *Paris* and other Places on the *Seine* which *Clotair* had taken from them; and *Clotair* met them, and gave them Battle, but loſt the Day, and thirty thouſand Men, and fled to *Paris*, where he was forc'd for Fear of loſing all, to yield to them the greateſt Part of his Kingdom; giving to *Thierry* all that lay between the *Loire* and the *Seine* as far as the Sea; and to *Theodebert*, he gave the Dutchy of *Deutelen*; but *Theodebert* was ſoon after ſlain by his Brother *Thierry* *Anno* 610, and *Thierry* was poiſon'd in the Year 612. And thus the Kingdom of *France* was again reduc'd to one Government under *Clotair*, who having now ſettled himſelf quietly upon the Throne, ſet himſelf to regulate his Kingdom and eſtabliſh Law and Juſtice. He dy'd near *Paris* in the Year 628, having reign'd alone after *Thierry*'s Death about fourteen Years. He left two Sons, *Dagobert* and *Aribert*; of which as follows:

Dagobert ſucceeded in *Neuſtria*, *Auſtraſia*, &c. and *Aribert* in Part of *Aquitain*, which with *Saintonge*, *Perigord*, *Agenoiſe*, *Thouloufain*, &c. were peaceably given him by *Dagobert*, and he made *Thoulouſe* the Place of his Royal Reſidence. He dy'd in *July* 638, in the thirty eighth Year of his Age. *Dagobert.*

The Royal Power now falling into the Hands of the Mayors of the Palace, and *Pepin* now ſupplying that Office, he preſently gave Notice thereof to Biſhop *Cunibert*, Governor to *Sigibert*, and removed the Court of *Auſtraſia* from *Metz* to *Cologne*; but in about a Year he fell ſick and dy'd, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Grimoald* as Mayor of the Palace, which Office became Hereditary. *Pepin.*

The ſucceeding Reigns produce nothing worth a Place in this Hiſtory, except the private Broils of the rival petty Kings of *France*, whoſe Names we ſhall juſt mention, *viz.*

Clovis II. who began *Anno*	638
Clotair III.	655
Childeric	668
Thierry I.	673
Clovis III.	690
Childebert II.	694
Dagobert II.	711
Chilperic II.	716
Thierry II.	722
Childeric III.	743
Pepin the Little	751

This *Pepin* was ſo call'd from his low Stature, for which his Nobles diſpis'd him; which he perceiving, ſtudied to find Means to convince them, that though his Stature was lower than theirs, his Courage was not ſo; and as an Inſtance of that, at one of their Combats of wild Beaſts, where a furious Lion had grappled a Bull, and held him faſt by the Neck, he bid ſome of his Lords *make him let go his Hold*; which when none of them durſt venture to do, he jump'd from the Stage, and with his Back-Sword, he not only cut off the Lion's Head, but enter'd the Sword a good way into the Bull's Neck; and then leaſt they ſhould not take Notice of this great Atchievement, ask'd them with an Air of Majeſty, *Do you not believe that I am worthy to command you.*

Pepin, as little as he was, conquer'd *Aquitain*, and dy'd immediately at St. *Dennis* in *September* 24. 768. He left four Sons, *Carloman*, *Charles*, *Pepin*, and *Gellis*, which laſt was thruſt into a Monaſtery very young, and *Pepin* dy'd at three Years old, and the Kingdom was divided between the other two, who falling out about their Shares, the Nobility interpos'd and ſettled *Charles* in *Neuſtria*, and the eldeſt, call'd *Carloman*, in *Auſtraſia*.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

An Abstract of the Reigns of all the Kings of France, *from* Charles I. *surnamed* Charlemain, *or* Charles the Great, *to* Philip *the Conqueror; containing the Reigns of* Charlemain, Lewis I. Charles II. Lewis II. Lewis III. Charles III. Eudes, Charles IV. Rodolph, Lewis IV. Lotair, Lewis V. Hugh Capet, Robert, Henry I. Philip I. Lewis VI. *and* Lewis VII.

THE Reign of *Charles the Great* takes Date from the Death of his Father *Pepin*. He compleated the Conquest of *Aquitain*, and erected it into a Kingdom for his Son *Lewis*; but *Carloman* was very troublesome to *Charles* till he dy'd in the Year 770. and all the Lords and Nobility owning *Charles* for King, *Carloman*'s Widow and Children withdrew to *Tassilon*, Duke of *Bavaria*.

Charlemain was now become the sole King of *France*, but this his Greatness exposed him to more Enemies, the *Saxons*, *Huns*, *Lombards*, and *Saracens*; the first of which gave him a great deal of Trouble for thirty Years together; but he always opposed them with Success, and routed them in a great Battle near *Osnaburg*, took the Castle of *Eresburg*, and demolish'd the Temple of *Irmensel*, and broke his Image; and then passing the *Weser*, conquer'd the *Saxons*, rebuilt *Eresburg*, and put a *French* Garrison into it.

THE *Veronese* soon after submitted to *Charles*, and deliver'd up to him the Widow of his Brother *Carloman* and her Children, who were sent to *France*. *Charles* went afterward to *Rome*, where the Pope receiv'd him very graciously, and endow'd him with additional Power to what he had before; which when *Didier*, King of the the *Lombards* perceiv'd, he surrender'd himself with his Wife and Children to *Charles*, which put a Period to the Kingdom of the *Lombards* after it had continued above two hundred Years.

Charles, before his Return to *France*, went again to *Rome*, where the Pope, with an hundred and fifty Bishops whom he had summon'd for his more magnificent Reception, confer'd upon him the Title of *Patrician of Rome*, which was the next Degree to the Empire, and gave him the Investiture of Bishopricks, and even the Nomination of Popes; and upon his Return, he was crown'd King of *Lombardy* at *Modece* near *Milan* with an Iron Crown, though cover'd with a Plate of Gold on the Outside.

THE *Saxons* taking the Advantage of this his Absence, broke out, and put all the Country of *Hesse* to Fire and Sword. And in the Year 775, he went against them in Person, subdu'd their Forces, repair'd the Damages they had done, and drove them cross the *Weser*.

IN *March* 777. they came from all Parts to *Paderborn* to implore his Protection, which he readily granted them, and the *Saracen* Commanders met and tender'd him Hostages and other Assurances of their Fidelity; and thus he freed the Christians on the Frontiers of *Spain* from all Tribute or Subjection to the *Saracens*, and all between the *Pyrennes* and the *Ebre* were brought under his Dominion, and were call'd the *Marches of Spain*. But in his Return, repassing the *Rhine*, the *Saxons* rose against him, and three of his chief Commanders falling rashly upon the Enemy, were cut to Pieces; which so incens'd *Charles*, that he vow'd Revenge if they would not deliver up four thousand of the chief Mutineers; which being done, he caused all their Heads to be cut off upon the Banks of the *Alare*. And in the Year 785. two of their best Leaders, *Albion* and *Vitikind*, submitted to *Charles*, and appearing before the Estates of *Paderborn*, they follow'd him into *France* and were baptiz'd.

Charles having divided his Army into three Parts, sent one into the Valley of *Trent*, the second to the Borders of the *Danube*, and the other under the Walls of *Ausburg*, and so overpower'd the *Germans*, that he reduc'd them to Obedience even as far as the *Baltick*; which when he had done, he retir'd from Hostilities, and devoted himself to Works of Piety and Charity. And in the Year 790, the famous University of *Paris* was founded; and in 796, he reduc'd the *Saxons* to Obedience, though they now and then broke out into a Revolt.

ABOUT the Year 800, the *Danes*, *Normans*, and *Saracens* began their Piracies, and infested the Coast of *France*; but the King, however, went from *Metz* into *Italy*, where he had call'd a Parliament to take Cognizance of some Outrages committed against the Pope, and order'd the Offenders to be punish'd with Death; but the Pope interceded for their Lives, and as a Return for *Charles*'s Favour to the Holy See, he obliged the *Romans* to create him Emperor, and they crown'd him on *Christmas-Day* in St. *Peter*'s Church with the Acclamations of *A long and happy Life, and Victory to* Charles *the Angell, Great, and Peaceable Emperor of the* Romans, *crown'd by God*, &c. and the Ceremony of the Coronation being over, the Pope kneel'd down before the new Emperor and acknowledg'd him for his Sovereign.

BUT *Charlemain*, after a Reign of forty three Years, and the Fatigues of his Government, began to decline, and summon'd the Parliament to meet at *Aix*, and ask'd them if he should give the Title of Emperor to his Son *Lewis*; to which they assenting, he made him his Collegue in the Empire. He dy'd in the seventy second Year of his Age, the forty eighth of his Reign, and the fourteenth of his Empire. He had four Sons, *viz. Charles*, *Pepin*, *Lewis*, and *Lotair*, of whom *Lewis* succeeded to the Crown.

WHEN *Lewis* enter'd upon the Government, he divided his Goods with his Brothers and Sisters, and expell'd the Ladies of Pleasure from the Court, and confin'd those of his Sisters that were lewd and disorderly to the Abbeys that Father had confer'd upon them, and the next Year he employ'd *Bernard* to appease the Troubles at *Rome* occasion'd by Pope *Leo*'s partisans that had conspir'd against him to De-

but *Lewis* turn'd his Mind more to the Church than to the State, and was fitter to be a Bishop than a King. But at this Time he receiv'd Intelligence of the Defection of the *Abrodites*, and the Conspiracy of *Bernard* King of *Italy*, but both were stifled in the *Embrio*, and *Bernard* was put to Death; and *Lewis* apprehending that his own Bastard Brothers might in like Manner conspire against him, he caused them to be shaven and put into Monasteries.

But there being a Conspiracy on Foot to depose the Emperor, *Lewis* and his Empress being privy to it, and Abettors in it, she suffer'd herself to be seiz'd upon; when she, as if reduc'd to a Necessity, promised them to perswade her Husband to be shav'd or depos'd; and in the mean Time his Son *Lotair* arrived from *Italy*, and confirm'd all that was done. And they confin'd the Emperor in the Abbey of St. *Mard* at *Soissons*, but he was afterwards restor'd; and in the Year 833, he was depos'd again, and afterwards a second Time restor'd to his Imperial Dignity; but in the Year 840, he dy'd of an Imposthume in the sixty fourth Year of his Age, and the twenty seventh of his Reign as Emperor. He was succeeded by his Son *Charles*.

Some Time before *Lewis*'s Death, he sent the Scepter, Crown, and Sword (the Ensigns of Empire) to his eldest Son *Lotair*, with Orders to protect *Charles*, and preserve for him that Share which was allotted him, but especially the Imperial Crown and Dignity; but he having got Possession, and being the elder Brother, thought fit to take this Opportunity to secure himself; and marching with his Army to *Frankfort*, his Father *Lewis* came and boldly encamp'd close by him, which so startled him, that he was willing to come to Terms with his Father. *Charles* was then at *Bourges*, and sent to *Lotair* to desire him to remember his Oaths and Promises of Fidelity to him; and though he amused *Charles* with fair Words, yet he at the same Time put all his Engines to work to turn him out of his Dominions, and endeavour'd to stop up the Passages to prevent *Charles* from coming to *Atigni*, where they were to have met the Parliament to compose all Differences; but *Charles* got over the *Seine*, and fought his Way through to *Atigni*, and advanc'd to *Chalons*, where he found the Empress his Mother, and the Forces she had brought him out of *Aquitain*; and at the same Time *Charles*'s Brother *Lewis* had obtain'd a Victory over *Allart* Count *Metz*. They two join'd, and being then too hard for *Lotair*, he put off any Encounter, in Hopes to gain Time till his Brother *Pepin* might come up to him, and then he look'd upon the Conquest to be his own; but they would not be put off, but sent him Word they would fight him the next Morning, which was the twenty fifth of *June*.

In this Battle, all the Powers of *France* were employ'd on one Side and the other, and an hundred thousand Men perish'd in the Action: But however the Victory fell to *Charles* and *Lewis*, who afterwards march'd to *Aquitain*, thinking to drive *Pepin* entirely out of that Country, though they were therein disappointed.

Upon this Success, the two younger Brothers renew'd their Union in the most solemn Manner, reducing all *Charles*'s Subjects to Obedience, and recovering those that had revolted to *Lotair*; and by this Means became so strong, that they drove *Lotair* out of *Austrasia*; and the two Brothers coming to *Aix*, *Lotair* propos'd an Accommodation, and the Island of *Soone* was propos'd for the Place of the Congress, each being attended by forty Lords; and here they agreed to divide the whole Succession of their Father (*Bavaria*, *Lombardy*, and *Aquitain*, excepted) into three equal Parts, of which *Lotair* should take his Choice as being the eldest. To *Lotair* fell the Title of Emperor, with *Italy* and *Provence*, and all the Lands between the *Scheld*, *Rhine*, *Meuse*, and *Soane*. To *Lewis* fell *Germany*; and to *Charles* fell the Western Kingdom of *France*, and from the *British* Ocean to the *Meuse*.

While this was doing, young *Pepin* with the *Normans* surpriz'd *Bourdeaux*, and took *William* Duke of *Gascoign* Prisoner. About this Time *Lotair* and *Charles* had an Interview at *Peronne*, and renew'd their League, while *Charles*, Brother to *Pepin* of *Aquitain*, was seiz'd by Count *Vivian* and carried before *Charles* the then Emperor, who caused him to be shav'd and shut up in a Monastery. The ill Qualities of *Pepin* contributed to the settling of *Charles* the Bald upon the Throne, and to the taking of *Tholouse*, and at last was the Cause of *Pepin*'s being shav'd and confin'd at St. *Mard*.

In the Year 855, *Lotair* stripp'd himself of his Sovereignty, abdicated his Empire, which he had thought was his Right, and became a Monk in the Abbey of *Prom*, and dy'd soon after he had divided his Territories between his Sons; giving to *Lewis*, *Italy*; to *Lotair*, the Kingdom of *Lorrain*; and to *Charles*, *Provence*. This was *Lotair*'s Way of distributing, though at the same Time *Charles* was real Emperor, and young *Lotair* join'd him to recover the Empire; and while these Things happen'd, *Charles* the Bald was gone to make head against the *Britains*; and not being well beloved by his Subjects, they sent a Deputation to *Lewis* the *German*, to offer him the Sovereignty, and *Charles* advanced to fight him; but his Army being treacherous, he abandon'd it, and submitted to his Brother *Lewis*; but the *Germans* repenting the Change, conspired against *Lewis* and *Charles*'s Interest. But *Lewis* dying when he had reign'd near sixty nine Years, it put an End to his Life and Enterprizes, and after him dy'd *Charles* the Bald, *Anno* 877. in the fifty fifth Year of his Age, and thirty eighth of his Reign.

Lewis II. began in the Year 878. but nothing remarkable is recorded of him. He did not reign quite two Years, and was succeeded by, *Lewis* II.

Lewis III. He began in the Year 879. with his Competitor *Carloman*, and they divided the Kingdom between them, and join'd their Forces with *Lewis* the *German*, whole united Forces conquer'd as they went; but *Lewis* the *German* dy'd in the prime of his Years, and in the sixth of his Reign. *Charles* the Fat, in the mean Time laid Siege to *Vienna*, in Concert with his two Brothers. He was also crown'd King of *Lombardy*, and crown'd Emperor on *Christmas-Day* 881. *Lewis* fell sick, and dy'd at St. *Dennis*; and *Carloman* coming from the Siege of *Vienna*, and being hunting in a Forest near *Paris*, he was kill'd by a wild Boar, or as some say, by one of his Gentlemen, who missing the Boar with his Dart, hit *Carloman* and kill'd him. *Lewis* III.

Charles the Fat, then succeeded in the Sovereign Power alone, but was deserted by his Subjects, and depriv'd of all his Revenues, except that of two or three Villages for bare Subsistance; and in this Condition he dy'd with Grief, or as some say, was strangled by his Enemies. *Charles* the Fat.

Eudes Earl of *Paris*, and Duke of *France*, succeeded next to the royal Dignity; who, to shew how worthy he was of being their King, went out against the *Normans* and slew 19000 of them, and shew'd himself brave upon all Occasions. However, another Party in *Campaigne* ravaged the Country as far as *Paris*, while *Alain* and *Judicael*, (tho' the last suffer'd for his Rash- *Eudes*

ness at the Expence of his Life) yet *Alain* attack'd them with such Success, that of fifteen thousand, scarce four hundred escap'd.

The *Normans* would not give out thus, but procured an hundred thousand Men from *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*; and entering the *Meuse* with ninety thousand Men, defeated *Arnold's* General, and slew infinite Numbers of his Nobility; at which *Arnold* being heartily nettled, redoubled his Charge, and forc'd their Camp near the *Meuse*, and left not one of them alive.

But all this while the *Neustrian* Lords did not own *Eudes* for their King; but instead of that, while he was busied in the *Poictou* Wars, they conspired to set *Charles* the Simple upon the Throne; and they succeeding, he was crown'd at *Rheims*, *Jan.* 27. in the Year 893.

Charles and *Eudes* now went to War together: But *Arnold* was sometimes on one Side and sometimes on the other; till at last for Quietness, the People divided the Kingdom between them, giving to *Eudes*, *Burgundy*, *Aquitain*, *Champagne*, and *Picardy*; and to *Charles*, all the rest; but the *Normans* renewing their Incursions, *Eudes* was slain *Anno* 898. and enjoyn'd his Brother and other Lords to own *Charles* for their King. In the Year 899, *Arnold* dy'd. *Charles.*

Lewis, the Son of *Arnold*, was but eight Years old when his Father dy'd; but he was immediately crown'd, and his Dominions soon enlarg'd by the Death of his Brother *Zuendibold*, whom the Lords of *Lorrain* had deserted for his Debaucheries; and he fighting to recover his lost Ground, was slain in *August* 900, after he had reign'd about five Years. He was succeeded by *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy*, who was elected to the Kingdom in *July* 923. *Lewis.*

Rodolph was no sooner elected but every Body deserted *Charles*, who then look'd like what he was call'd, *Charles the Simple*: He was first made a Prisoner, till Death releas'd him from his Captivity in *October* 929; and now *Rodolph* was sole King, and receiv'd Homage accordingly from many of the Lords and others, but he dy'd in *January* 936. *Rodolph.*

In the mean Time *Ogina*, the Widow of *Charles the Simple*, being gone over into *England* with her Son *Lewis*, to whom the *French* had a great Inclination to have him for their King; *Hugh le Blanc*, Earl of *Paris* and *Orleans*, Duke of *France*, and Brother-in-law to the late King *Rodolph*, who had the greatest Authority in the Kingdom, and consequently to assume the Throne himself; thought it more prudent to settle the Kingdom in the Race and Blood of *Charlemain*; and therefore sent to *Ogina* to bring back her Son *Lewis* to accept of the Crown, which he accordingly did, and he was crown'd at *Laon*, though *Hugh* might still be said to keep the Administration in his own Hand; but *Lewis* took it upon himself in the second Year of his Reign, and sent for the Queen his Mother to have the Benefit of her Advice, the better to establish his Authority; and in Order thereto, began first to punish some petty Rebels, especially *Herbert*, who had been treacherous to *Charles the Simple*. This *Herbert* continuing to be a cunning, designing Man, got his Son, though but ten Years of Age, to be nominated Archbishop of *Rheims*, though contrary to the Rules of the Church. But whatever Remorse affected *Herbert's* Conscience, he dy'd at *Peronne* in the Year 943, crying out, *We were twelve of us that betray'd King* Charles. *Lewis* dy'd in the Year 954, by a strange Accident; for as he was riding from *Laon* to *Rheims*, seeing a Wolf in the Way, he spurr'd his Horse to pursue him, and the Horse stumbling, threw him with so much Violence, that he kill'd him with *Lewis.*

the Fall. He left two Sons, *Lotair* and *Charles*; but *Lotair*, the eldest, succeeded to the Crown without any Rival; and from that Time forward the younger Brothers of *France* have never been Competitors to the Crown; and though there are Lands alotted them, yet even these revert to the Crown in Default of male Heirs.

Lotair, the eldest Son of *Lewis*, succeeded his Father as above observ'd, and was crown'd at *Rheims*. He was Co-temporary with *Otho* I. and *Otho* II. [*See* Germany *Chap.* IV. *page* 479.] He married *Emme* the Daughter of *Lotair*, sometime King of *Italy*. *Otho* I. surnamed the Great, dying, he was succeeded by *Otho* II. And *Lotair* expecting that *Otho* II. would have restor'd him some Part of his Country again, but finding himself deceiv'd, he march'd to *Aix la Chapelle*, and was so near to have surpriz'd *Otho*, that he had but just Time to leave his Dinner and his rich Palace, which *Lotair* plunder'd, and committed what Ravages he could in the Country. In the mean Time, *Otho* with 60000 Men made Irruptions into *France*, sack'd *Champagne* and the Isle of *France*, even to the Gates of *Paris*; but *Otho* and *Lotair* proposing a personal Conference together, which was perform'd, they came to an Accommodation, upon Condition that *Lotair* should yield *Lorrain* to be held by *Otho* in Fief of the Crown of *France*; at which the *French* Lords were very much dissatisfy'd; and now *Lotair* was not less than absolute Sovereign. *Lotair.*

But the Emperor *Otho* II. dy'd in the Year 982. and *Lotair* thinking that *Germany* would be in Confusion about the Guardianship of *Otho* III. who was then but ten Years of Age, he enter'd *Lorrain*, took *Verdun*, but soon restor'd it. He caused his Son *Lewis* to be crown'd to reign with him *Anno* 983. and in 987. *Lotair* dy'd in the forty fifth Year of Age, and in the thirty third Year of his Reign, leaving *Lewis* V. to succeed him.

Lewis V. was but a soft Prince, in so much that he was call'd *Lewis the Slothful*; and his Mother *Emme* not caring to trust to him, she carry'd him to his Grandmother *Adeleida*, the Widow of *Otho* I. but he soon ended his Life by the Treachery of his Wife. Some say he gave his Kingdom to *Hugh Capet*, others say he bequeath'd it to his Wife, provided, that after his Death she should marry *Hugh Capet*; but be that as it will, *Hugh Capet* succeeded *Lewis* after he had reign'd about three Years; and in him ended the Succession of *Charlemain*. *Lewis.*

Charles, Duke of *Lorrain*, was the only Person now left of the Race of *Charlemain*; but he being absent, and much out of Favour with the *French*, and *Hugh* being present among them, and much esteem'd, he gain'd the Consent of the People and was crown'd; but being told that his Race should hold the Crown for only seven Generations, he relinquish'd the Crown after his first Coronation, that there might be seven Generations besides himself to keep the Crown longer in the Family; and six Months after his Coronation he procur'd his Son *Robert* to be enthron'd. *Hugh Capet.*

Charles in the mean time, not able to forbear putting in his Claim to the *French* Crown, was betray'd into the Hands of *Hugh Capet*, and sent Prisoner to *Orleans*, where he dy'd *Anno* 994. leaving two Sons, *Otho* and *Lewis*; and *Hugh Capet* liv'd but two Years after him, and dy'd *Anno* 996. in the tenth Year of his Reign, and the sixty sixth of his Age, and was succeeded by his Son,

Robert. He was a very religious Prince; he delighted much to sing in publick Worship, and compos'd some Words and Notes for Songs, and Responses, which are retain'd to this Day. *Rob.*

Day. In the Year 1017. the King cauſed his eldeſt Son *Hugh*, to be crown'd as a Partner with him in the Government, tho' but ten Years of Age; and his Name was uſed in all publick Acts. The *Danes* and *Normans* purſuing their wonted Pyracies, landed in *Poictou*, and carried off ſeveral Priſoners, for whom they had their own Demands for Ranſom.

THE young King *Hugh* dy'd *Anno* 1028. and of three Sons, *Henry*, *Robert*, and *Eudes*, *Henry* was crown'd to ſucceed *Hugh* as a Partner in the Government with his Father *Robert*; but *Robert* dy'd in the Year 1033. and now *Henry* alone reign'd King of *France*.

Henry's Mother had always been his Enemy, in Favour of his Brother *Robert* above-mention'd; but *Henry* by the Aſſiſtance of the Duke of *Normandy* defeated his Mother, and reduc'd her to a quiet Life; but ſhe was no ſooner ſubdu'd, but *Eudes* put in his Claim; but *Henry* took him and ſent him Priſoner to *Orleans*, and ſo put an end to his Projects *Anno* 1041. But *Henry* being afterward defeated by the *Normans*, dy'd in the Year 1060. after having recommended his Son *Philip* to ſucceed him in the Kingdom, tho' he was but ſeven Years old, and under the Guardianſhip of *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, who enter'd upon the Regency as ſoon as King *Henry* dy'd.

CHAP. IV.

Containing the Hiſtory of the Reigns of Philip I. Lewis VI. Lewis VII. Philip II. Lewis VIII. Lewis IX. *and* Philip III. *or The Hardy.*

WHEN *Philip* came to the Crown, every Body approv'd of the Guardianſhip and Regency of Earl *Baldwin* except the *Gaſcoigns*, who apprehended that he would attempt the Deſtruction of his Pupil, to make way for himſelf, to invade the Throne in the Right of his Wife, who was King *Henry*'s Daughter; but he ſoon ſuppreſs'd thoſe Malecontents, and govern'd *France* with great Tranquility all his Life, and dy'd in the Year 1067. And Differences ariſing between his Sons *Baldwin* of *Mons*, and *Robert* the *Friſon*; the eldeſt of them was ſlain, and King *Philip* engaging in the War in Perſon, was defeated and beaten, and fell to Wrangling and Diſcord with his Subjects; upon which the Pope threatned to excommunicate him and every Body that obey'd him.

William Duke of *Normandy* conquers *England*, 66

IN the mean Time, *William* Duke of *Normandy* had fix'd himſelf upon the Throne of *England*, which was in the Year 1066. and has ſince been recorded in *England* by the Name and Title of *William the Conqueror*, who before he went to invade *England*, did in the *French* King's Preſence, make over his Dutchy of *Normandy* to his Son *Robert*, and ſettled him in it accordingly.

Philip King of *France*, taking a Diſlike to his Wife *Bertha*, wanted to be divorc'd from her, under a Pretence of too near a Conſanguinity, notwithſtanding that he had by her a Son nam'd *Lewis*, and a Daughter *Conſtance*. Duke *William* (then King of *England*) was at that Time under a Courſe of Diet at *Roan* to reduce his over Fatneſs, at which, *Philip* King of *France* by way of Ridicule, ſent to him to know, *when he would be up after his lying in*; but Duke *William* ſmartly anſwer'd, *That when he came abroad, he would viſit him with* 10000 *Lances inſtead of Candles*, and he was ſoon after as good as his Word; for he deſtroy'd all the *French Vexin*, and fore'd and and burnt *Mantes*; but he dy'd ſoon after, *viz.* in the Year 1087.

IN the Year 1095. *Urban* II. came for Refuge into *France*, the Emperor having depos'd him in the Council of *Clermont*, where *Peter* the Hermit appear'd with Remonſtrances to excite them to undertake the Croiſade againſt the *Turks*, the Heat whereof laſted above two hundred Years, and proved a great Detriment both to the Nobility and common People; for the Popes and Kings in the mean Time found great Opportunities of taking Steps to make themſelves abſolute; but as it will be a Sort of a Digreſſion to enlarge upon this Subject in a particular Hiſtory of *France*, I ſhall only obſerve that this Affair gave the firſt Riſe to Coats of Arms; for in this mixt Multitude, where ſo many were united in one common Cauſe againſt the *Turks*, they diſtinguiſh'd themſelves by ſome Symbol or Badge in their Enſigns. The *Roman* Legions were diſtinguiſh'd by the different painting of their Shields and Bucklers; others adorn'd them with Devices, denoting their Birth, Parentage, or the Heroick Actions of their Anceſtors; others with Devices of Wit and Humour; and at laſt thoſe Devices became ſo common, Men were diſtinguiſh'd by them as Men are now by Surnames, which were then but little uſed; and hence came the Cuſtom of ſome taking Croſſes in their Shields, ſome Lyons, Leopards, *&c.* which Fancy hath continued from that Time to this Day. *The firſt Riſe of Coats of Arms.*

KING *Philip* dy'd at *Melun Anno* 1108. leaving by his firſt Wife, *Lewis* and *Conſtance*, of which,

Lewis VI. ſucceeded, and was crown'd within five Days of his Father's Deceaſe. He dy'd in the thirtieth Year of his Reign and was ſucceeded by, *Lewis VI.*

Lewis VII. Son of *Lewis* VI. who taking upon him the Croiſade, ſet forward for the *Holy Land*, but he ſoon return'd with no great Succeſs; and *Henry* II. being not only King of *England*, but Duke of *Normandy*, &c. and very great, took upon him to revive the Title his Wife had to the County of *Thoulouſe*, though he never inſiſted upon the Poſſeſſion of it becauſe they were reconciled, though he would not quit his Claim.

THERE was now an entire Peace between the Crowns of *England* and *France*, and *Lewis* King *France*, apply'd himſelf wholly to the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, and ſuppreſſing Diſorders; and not only ſo, but the two Kings, *Lewis* VII. of *France*, and *Henry* II. of *England*, contracted an Alliance, to ſtand by each other; and under this Reſolution, they march'd jointly to *Languedoc* to expel the *Albigenſes*; but *Lewis* grown old, had a Mind to have his Son *Philip* crown'd, which was done *Anno* 1179. and *Lewis* dy'd at *Paris* in *September Anno* 1180. in the ſixty third or ſixty fourth Year of his Age. He was ſucceeded by his Son,

Philip

Philip. *Philip* the Conqueror, or *Augustus*: He publiſhed an Edict againſt Blaſphemy, and expelled Players, Comedians, and Buffoonery, as being perſwaded, that to give to Players was to ſacrifice to Devils. It would be well if we had as good Notions of Religion now, as they ſeemed to have in thoſe Times which we call Times of Ignorance; but ſome of our reformed Chriſtians, under whatever Denomination, ſtick not to ſay, that there is as much to be learned by a Play, as by a Sermon! A wonderful Reformation from Ignorance and Debauchery, and Improvement in Chriſtian Knowledge, were we to repreſent Things ironically, or by the quite contrary.

Philip ſicken'd and dy'd of an Ague in *July*, 1222, at about 48 Years of Age, he left generous Legacies to pious Uſes, and was ſucceeded by his Son.

Lewis VIII. *Lewis*, whom he had not cauſed to be crowned in his own life-time, as his Predeceſſors Cuſtom was; but he was crowned at *Rheims*, with his Wife *Blanche*, *Aug.* 10, 1223, but he dy'd after a fruitleſs Attempt upon *Avignon*, *Tholouſe*, *&c.* his Conſtitution being broke with the Fatigue, or, as ſome ſay, poiſoned by one of his Grandees in the Country of *Avergne*.

Lewis VIII. was ſucceeded by his eldeſt Son *Lewis* IX. *Lewis* IX. ſurnamed *Saint Lewis*; he was married in the Year 1235, to *Margaret*, eldeſt Daughter to *Raymond*, Earl of *Provence*, and at the ſame Time the Earl of *Champagne* made a Defection, which was puniſhed with the Loſs of *Mountereau*, and other Places.

Soon after this Time, the Duke *de Montaine*, or Prince of the *Aſſaſſines*, who were ſettled in the mountainous Cantons of *Syria*, diſpatched two Murderers into *France*, upon no leſs Expedition than to kill the King; but whether his Conſcience pricked him, or he doubted his Succeſs, ſo it was that he countermanded them, and ſent the King a Caution to take care of himſelf.

Iſabella, Wife of *John*, late King of *England*, but ſince married to *Hugh de la March*, would not ſuffer her Husband to do Homage to *Alphonſo* the new Earl of *Poitow*, but the King, to force him to it, took ſeveral of his Towns, and demoliſhed *Fountenay*, where *Alphonſo* was wounded with an Arrow. The King of *England*, and *Richard* his Son, landed at *Bourdeaux*, in hopes of being joined by all *Poitow*, but they being too late, and their Expectations diſappointed, *Lewis* in Perſon attacked and repulſed them.

In the Year 1244, the *Saracens* did a great deal of Miſchief in the holy Land, and being aſſiſted by the *Choraſmins* from *Perſia* and *Arabia*, they quite ruined and laid waſte all the holy Places about *Jeruſalem*; and, as they called it, drowned them in the Blood of the Chriſtians; which *Lewis* hearing of, he vowed that if he lived he would go in Perſon againſt thoſe Heathens; upon which Expedition he ſet out in the Year 1248, conſtituting his Mother the Queen Regent, and embarked at *Languedoc* in *Auguſt*, and in *September* arrived at *Cyprus*, where he wintered to wait the reſt of his Forces and Ammunition, and in the mean Time received the agreeable News, that the great Cham, and a great Number of his chief Officers, had embraced Chriſtianity, and that his Army had deſtroyed the Sultan of *Bagdat*, the moſt powerful of all the *Mahometan* Princes; and the *Armenian* Ambaſſadors alſo confirmed to him at the ſame Time the Truth of their having overcome the Sultan of *Iconium*, to whom they were then tributary.

The King thus equipped, put to Sea, and in *June* arrived before *Damiata* in *Ægypt*, where he beat the *Saracens*, and landed.

In *September* the King's Brother *Alphonſo* came to him with a new Reinforcement; and the King with all this Force advanced towards the *Saracens* Army, drawn up at *Maſſoura*. *Lewis* encamped upon an Arm of the *Nile*, called *Raschit*; and having paſſed the *Raschit*, fell upon the Infidels, and in two Days Time obtained a compleat Victory over them. *Lewis*, like a Hero in Perſon, performing the chief part with his own hand; but the Chriſtian Army being encamped near *Pharamia*, to refreſh themſelves, they were hemmed in by a mighty Army of *Saracens*, that they could no Way contrive an Eſcape, and by Famine and the Scurvy, they were reduced to miſerable Circumſtances, and endeavouring to eſcape to *Damiata*, they were utterly defeated in their March; and *Lewis*, King of *France*, with his Brothers *Alphonſo* and *Charles*, were all taken Priſoners; upon which King *Lewis* fell ſick, but *Melec Sala*, though his Enemy, and a *Saracen* General, took ſuch Care of him, that he not only recovered his Health, but he and *Melech* entered into a Truce for ten Years, which was afterwards confirmed by *Terquenier*, who was then elected Sultan. The Chriſtian Priſoners were now all ſet at Liberty, on Condition they ſurrendered *Damiata*, and releaſed the *Saracen* Slaves, and gave 400,000 Livres to the *Saracens*, in ready Specie, all which was punctually performed.

KING *Lewis*'s Forces, as well as his Money, being now pretty much impaired, he contented himſelf to ſet ſail from *Ægypt*, to *Ptolomais*; but of about 30000 fighting Men that he brought from Home, he had not above 6000 left, which were too few for ſuch an Enterprize. *Lewis*'s Queen, *Blanche*, died *Anno* 1252, and ſhe being Regent or Guardian of the Realm, they deſired him to return home, which he did, and landed at *Marſeilles*, in *July*, 1254. He died in the 75th Year of his Age, and the 44th of his Reign.

Philip III. *Lewis* was ſucceeded by *Philip* III. ſurnamed the *Hardy*, he was crowned at *Rheims*, in *Auguſt* 1271. After he had been a Widower four Years, he took to Wife, *Mary*, the Daughter of *Henry*, and Siſter to *John*, Duke of *Brabant*. *Peter de la Broſs*, being a Court Sycophant, and thinking he had nothing to be afraid of but the young Queen, endeavoured to ruin her; and, in order to that, procured an Incendiary to charge her with the Death of the young Prince, by Poiſoning him; and the Charge was ſo far believed, that ſhe was near to have been burnt alive; but her Brother, the Duke of *Brabant*, ſent a Gentleman, who generouſly offered to prove her Innocency, or loſe his Life in a Duel with *Peter de la Broſs*. And when the Challenge came to perfidious *Peter*, his Heart failed him, and he declined the Duel; which was allowed to be a ſufficient Teſtimony of her Innocency, and his Guilt; and accordingly ſhe was acquitted with Honour, and he was hanged as a villanous Incendiary.

Philip IV. *Philip* died *Anno* 1285, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Philip* IV. He was crowned in *January*, 1286, when *Edward* I. King of *England*, coming to *Amiens* in *France*, *Philip* ſent ſeveral Lords to receive him, and conduct him to *Paris*, where he was handſomely treated, and was preſent in the *French* Parliament held after *Eaſter*, and preſs'd earneſtly that he might have ſome Reparation for *Normandy*, and other Countries, but without any Succeſs; which when he found, he received ſolemn

ſolemn Embaſſies from the Kings of *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, and *Sicily*, all Enemies to *France*, which gave *Philip* great Cauſe of Jealouſy, though at the ſame Time King *Edward* uſed his Intereſt not to aggravate, but to compoſe the Differences between *France* and the Kings of *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, and other Places at Variance with *France*, and in the Year 1290, *Philip* renounced all his Pretenſions to *Caſtile*.

About the Year 1292, a ſmall Spark bred a furious Flame between the two Kingdoms of *England* and *France*; for being at Peace, an *Engliſh* Mariner, and one of *Normandy*, being a-ſhore, upon the Coaſt of *Guienne*, to take in freſh Water, they quarrelled, and the *French* reſenting the Affront, which they imagined their Countryman had received, began to privateer, and make Repriſals upon the *Engliſh*, by which the *Engliſh* were Sufferers; and there being no open Rupture, King *Edward* demanded Satisfaction for the Damage that his Subjects had ſuſtained by the *French* Privateers; but *Philip* was ſo far from that, that he ſummoned King *Edward* to appear in his Parliament, as if he had been a Subject of his. King *Edward* condeſcended to ſend his Brother *Edmund*, but *Philip*, not ſatisfied with that Anſwer, cauſed him to be declared contumacious, and ordered his Lands to be ſeized; and accordingly the Conſtable of *France* ſeized ſeveral Cities in *Guienne*, and even *Bourdeaux*, the Capital; and *France* being thus embroiled, a Commotion happened at *Roan*, but that was ſuppreſt by hanging the chief Ring-leaders, and baniſhing, or otherwiſe ruining the reſt.

King *Edward* of *England*, being nettled for his Loſſes ſuſtained in *Guienne*, ſolicited the Emperor *Adolphus*, and the Earl of *Flanders*, againſt *France*, the firſt of whom ſent a Defiance to *Philip* in a haughty Stile, and *Philip* ſhewed his Contempt of his Threats, by ſending him for Anſwer, a blank Sheet of white Paper, which put an End to the Emperor's Threats; and King *Edward* having upon his Hands the Conqueſt of *Scotland*, as well as the Recovery of what he had loſt in *Guienne*; and thinking that he had pretty well ſecured *Scotland*, he, with the help of Friends and Allies, prepared a powerful Fleet. But *Philip*, to give him a Diverſion, induced the *Scots* to break off with *Edward*, and make an Alliance with *France*; and not reſting here, the *French* made an Inſurrection in *Wales*, and made ſuch Havock in *Pembrokeſhire*, that he was obliged to go in Perſon into that Country, and till that was ſettled, lay aſide his Expedition to *Guienne*.

While theſe Broils were on Foot, the proud Pope *Boniface* ſent his Commands to King *Edward* of *England*, and *Philip* of *France*, to make a Truce, and go to the holy War, upon Pain of Excommunication; but *Philip* deny'd the Pope's Authority any further, than to adviſe, but not to compel, and *Edward* no more regarding the Pope than *Philip* did, he fell upon the *Scots*, and took *John Baliol* (who was then as King of the *Scots*) Priſoner, and determined to keep him ſecure till he had finiſhed his War with *France*; but in the mean Time the Ambaſſadors on both Sides, had continued the Truce between *England* and *France*, to the end of the Year, and therein it was agreed that *Edward* ſhould marry *Margaret*, *Philip*'s Siſter, and his Son *Edward* ſhould marry *Iſabella*, *Philip*'s Daughter. 1298

In the Year 1302, the People of *Flanders*, not able to bear the Impoſt laid upon them, revolted from *France*, whereupon King *Philip* ſent an Army to chaſtiſe and reduce them; but the *Flemings* gained the Victory, with the Loſs of 20,000 *Frenchmen*, of which Number *Artois* the *French* Commander was one, with many great Men more, of which was *Peter Flota*, the buſy Perſon, by whoſe Inſtigations thoſe new Taxes were laid on, which cauſed the Diſturbance.

The Truce with *France* was renewed from Time to Time, till at length it came to a Peace; and *John Baliol* was ſet at Liberty, but the *Scots* would not own him, and ſo he died a private Man in *France*.

King *Edward* died in the Year 1307, and about that Time the Templars grew ſo rich and proud, and made ſo little Account either of temporal or eccleſiaſtical Authority, that King *Philip*, by the Pope's Conſent, cauſed them all to be ſeized throughout the Kingdom, their Eſtates to be confiſcated, their Temple and Treaſure to be applied to his own Uſe; and at the ſame Time the Pope writ to the grand Maſter *Molay*, to come from *Cyprus* (where he was valiantly maintaining a War with the *Turks*) to *Paris*; which he, and ſixteen Knights of his Order, obeyed; but were no ſooner arriv'd, but they were ſeized and proſecuted, and fifty of them burnt alive on a ſlow Fire, denying at their Death, what they had confeſs'd on the Rack, and *Philip* procured the Templars to be thus ſeverely puniſhed, in moſt Parts of *Chriſtendom*: And, after this, at a Council held at *Vienne*, the Pope declared it was convok'd for the Proceſs of the Templars, the Recovery of the holy Land, and for the Extirpation of Hereſy; and accordingly the order of the Templars was condemn'd and aboliſh'd, and their Eſtates left to the Pope's diſpoſing, who gave them to the Knights of *Jeruſalem*, then ſettled at *Rhodes*.

The Grand Maſter *Molay*, and the Dauphin's Brother, retracted, but too late, for they were burnt alive on the 11th of *March*, 1314; but it is reported, that *Molay*, by his wonderful Conſtancy, made ſeveral People believe he was innocent; for he ſummoned the Pope to appear before the Judgment Seat of God in forty Days, and the King in the Compaſs of a Year, and they both died within the Compaſs of that Time, for *Philip* died and finiſhed his Reign on the 24th of *November*, that ſame Year.

Lewis X. ſurnamed *Hutin*, ſucceeded to the Crown; he was the eldeſt Son of *Philip* IV. He was crowned the third of *Auguſt*, but his Reign was but ſhort, for they attempted to make away with him by Sorceries and Enchantments, and by waxen Images, to make him languiſh as long as they pleaſed, and then die: But however they might miſs of that, they ſupply'd it by giving him Poiſon; and he died on the 4th of *June*, 1316, leaving his Wife about four Months gone with Child. *Lewis* X.

Philip, V. ſurnamed the *Long*, came next to the Throne, and he was crown'd at *Rheims*, on the 9th of *January*, 1317; his Taxes and Exactions made him hated by both Clergy and Laity; and, under the Curſes of both, he died, when he had reigned but five Years. *Philip* V.

Charles IV. ſurnamed the *Fair*, ſucceeded, and was crowned at *Rheims*, *Feb.* 11. 1322. His firſt Buſineſs was to enquire into the Adminiſtration of the late Reign, and puniſh corrupt Miniſters and Agents; among which he found *Gerrard de la Guerre*, a Perſon of mean Extraction, had been a chief Manager of the Treaſury, but though there might be thoſe as wicked and as covetous in the Adminiſtration then, as ever has been ſince, yet obſerve how Juſtice purſued them; *Gerrard* was put upon the Rack to be examined, and was ſo ſeverely uſed, that he died *Charles* IV.

died under his Torture. One would think that such Discipline used at this Day, if such Occasions should offer, would deter People from such corrupt Practices. But that was not all, for his dead Body was dragged thro' the Streets, and hanged up on the Gallows at *Paris*. Then they made search for the Farmers of the Revenues, who were mostly *Lombards* and *Italians*, miserable Usurers and Exactors, and their Estates they confiscated, and sent them home to their own Countries, as miserable as they came from thence.

King *Charles* took such a Dislike at *Edward* II. King of *England*, for not assisting at his Coronation, and some other Affronts, that King *Charles* sent *Charles de Valois*, his Uncle, into *Guienne*, to *Edward*, Earl of *Kent*, King *Edward*'s Brother, where he so straitened him, that he compelled him to capitulate, quit the Place, and return to *England*, to perswade King *Edward* to come to an Accommodation; or, if not, that he must, upon Honour, come back and surrender himself as a Prisoner. But while this was doing, the Earl of *Valois* compleated the Conquest of *Guienne*, (except *Bourdeaux*, *St. Severe*, and *Bayonne*;) upon which Queen *Isabel*, *Charles*'s Sister, with her eldest Son Prince *Edward*, came into *France*, and got her Son invested in the Dutchy of *Guienne*, and the Earldom of *Ponthieu*.

At this Time the two *Spencers* had gained such an Ascendency over the King, that they did what they pleased in *England*. (But more of them when we come to treat of our own Country, as hoping that our Constitution is now sufficiently guarded against such monstrous Ministers or Agents; or, however, wishing it may be so.) King *Charles* died the First of *February*, 1327, in the Seventh Year of his Reign, and was succeeded by

Philip VI. 1327. *Philip* VI. who was crowned at *Rheims*, in *May*. He was surnamed the *Fortunate*, because his three Cousins died, and made Way for his coming to the Crown; but King *Edward* III. being now in his full Vigour, and having subdued *Scotland*, attempted to recover *France* by the Sword; and, to break Way, he accused *Philip* to the Pope, for having unjustly taken that Crown from him, during his Minority; and accordingly sent the Bishop of *Lincoln* to defy King *Philip* and his Allies. These Troubles prevented King *Philip*'s making an Expedition to the *Holy Land*, as he intended; and therefore discharging the worst of his Sailors, he kept the *Genoese*, and others the best of them, and sent a Fleet to the Coast of *England*. The Men landed at *Southampton*, plundered it and retired.

The Cities of *Flanders*, of which *Ghent* was the chief, were in a Surprize for some Time, between the Fear of the Power of *France*, and the Distress they were drove to by the *English*, because the latter had prohibited the Exportation of their Wool thither: However, the *Flemings*, in an Assembly held at *Brussels*, were willing to acknowledge *Edward* for King of *France*, provided he would take the Title and Arms upon him, and they promised him their Assistance; and King *Edward* this Year forbid that any should call *Philip* by the 1339. Title of King of *France*.

King *Edward* now besieged *Calais* so closely, 1347. that though *Philip* came to relieve it with 150,000 Men, yet all was in vain, King *Edward*'s Forces were so fortify'd and entrench'd; so that the Besieged being drove to the utmost Necessity, by Famine, without any Prospect of Relief, they surrendered, after a Year's Siege, wanting only eight Days; but King *Edward* not only required the Surrender of the Place, but to have six of their principal Burghers, to do with as he pleased; but they all were timorous, under Apprehension of being cruelly used, so that no Body cared to be one of that Six, till *Eustace du St. Pierre*, a Citizen, freely offered to be one; and, by his Example, the Six were soon compleated. They went out in their Shirts, with Ropes about their Necks, to deliver the Keys to King *Edward*; who, nevertheless, was obstinately bent to sacrifice them, but was prevailed upon to the contrary, by the Importunity of his Wife. However, he turned out all the Citizens and *French* Inhabitants of *Calais*, and peopled the Town with natural-born *English*.

King *Philip* dy'd in *August*, 1350, and was succeeded by

King *John*. He was crowned at *Rheims*, in *September*, the same Year; and, after a bloody and troublesome Reign of almost fourteen Years, he dy'd, and left the Crown to his Son *Charles* V. of whom we shall speak in the next Chapter. King *John*.

CHAP. V.

Of the Reigns of Charles V. Charles VI. Charles VII. Lewis XI. Charles VIII. *and* Lewis XII.

King *Charles* V. was surnamed the Wise, or the Eloquent; he was crowned at *Rheims*, *May* the 19th, 1364. In a few Years of his Reign, the *French* Affairs seemed to succeed better than the *English*; for the Prince of *Wales* having laid a Tax upon *Guienne*, the Lords resented it, and carried a Complaint to the Prince, but he rejected it; upon which they had Recourse to the King of *France*; who, thereupon, formed a Design against the *English*, and declared War against them, and calling a Parliament, they made a Decree, wherein, for Rebellion, Contempt and Disobedience, they declared all the Lands in *France*, held by the King of *England*, to be forfeited and confiscated; and to this King *Charles* added the Force of Religion and Eloquence, enjoining publick Fasts and Processions all over his Kingdom. The Archbishop of *Tholouse*, at the same Time, by his Intrigues, recovered above fifty Cities or Castles in *Guienne*, and amongst others, that of *Cahors*.

The King of *England*, in order to make Reprisals upon *France*, and to gain the *Gascons*, first sent a general Pardon to them, with a Promise upon Oath, that he would raise no more new Taxes; but they were so prejudiced, that all those Promises could not reclaim them. The *French* made Incursions into *Vienne*, as the *English* did into its Neighbourhood; but King *Charles* afraid to have the *English* so near his own Door, endeavoured to divert them, by landing some Troops

Troops in *England* under the Command of his Brother *Philip*; but as they were going aboard at *Harfleur*, News was brought, that *John*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, was landed at *Calais*, and made Incurſions into the *French* Territories; upon which, he quitted his Deſign of the Invaſion, and turned his Hand againſt his Invaders. *Lancaſter* ſeeing him in the Field, poſted himſelf upon the Hill of *Tournham*, between *Ardres* and *Guiſnes*, and *Philip* encamped over againſt him, as though he would attack him, or hem him in; but he grew ſick of the Undertaking, and disbanded his Army, which gave *Lancaſter* an Opportunity to over-run the Country as far as *Harfleur* and *Pontieu*, and took *Hugh de Caſtillon* Priſoner, who was Commander of the Croſs-Bows; and had, in King *Charles*'s Name, ſeiz'd that Country.

At the ſame Time, *Lancaſter*, with Sir *Robert Knolles*, and their Forces, which conſiſted of about thirty thouſand Men, ſtruck a Terror thro' all *France*, and ravaged the Country round *Paris*; and, about the Year 1377, a Conſpiracy was formed againſt King *Charles*, in *France*, and their Deſign was to poiſon him, which they ſo far effected as to give him the Doſe, but by the Diligence of a Phyſician of the Emperor it was prevented performing the intended Execution, by his making an Iſſue in his Arm; but that ſtopping, he dyed in *September* 1381. He had two Sons, *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, and

Charles VI. who ſucceeded his Father; he was a Minor of twelve years of Age when he came to the Crown, but he prov'd weak, and when married, his Queen took the opportunity of being an ill Wife, and when he had Children by her, ſhe was alſo an unnatural Mother, and accordingly the Nobles grew licentious, the Subjects ſeditious; all which hurry'd *France* into an Abyſs of Miſery. But to return to his State of Minority; the Duke of *Anjou*, as Regent, diſpoſed of Offices and Commands as he pleas'd; but the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Bourbon* not willing to ſubmit to ſuch arbitrary Proceedings, inſiſted upon having the King crowned; but the Regent alledg'd that the King ought not to be crowned till he was fourteen years of Age; however, after a hot Diſpute, he was immediately crowned, receiving the Oaths and Homage of his Subjects, and all publick Acts went in his Name.

In the Year 1385, King *Charles* was married to *Iſabella*, Daughter to *Stephen* Duke of *Bavaria*, and being now come to about twenty years of Age, he took the Government upon himſelf, and diſcharged his Uncle from his Regency.

The two Houſes of *Orleans* and *Burgundy*, being now at ſuch Variance, that a Union ſeem'd next to impoſſible, King *Henry* V. of *England* took this advantage to declare his Pretenſions to *France*, as ſuppoſing he had a divided People to deal with, and that they would therefore be the eaſier overcome; accordingly he landed at *Havre de Grace* and took *Harfleur*; and the *French* ſeeing this, reſolved to meet the *Engliſh* and give them Battle, which accordingly they did at *Agin-Court* in the County of St. *Paul*; but though the *French* were forty Thouſand to fifteen Thouſand *Engliſh*, yet of the *French* there were ſix Thouſand ſlain, to ſixteen Hundred *Engliſh*, beſides other fatal Conſequences to the *French*, that attended this Battle. Afterwards King *Henry* took *Roan*, and made his triumphant Entry into it, *Jan.* 19, 1419.

King *Henry*'s Succeſs was ſo great in *France*, that they began to offer him Propoſals of Peace, and it was agreed, that King *Charles* ſhould name and own King *Henry* for his Heir to the Crown of *France*; but that, however, he ſhould not take the Title of King of *France* upon him, as long as *Charles* liv'd, only that he ſhould have the Quality of Regent, and the Government of the Kingdom. That *France* and *England* ſhould be united, and held by *Henry* and his Heirs; but that each ſhould be governed by their own Laws, and the Rights and Privileges of both ſhould be inviolably preſerved. After which King *Henry* reſided ſome Time at *Paris*, and ſent to *England* for a Supply of Men and Money. But, in the midſt of all his Grandeur, he dy'd in the Prime of his Years, in the latter End of *Auguſt*, in the Year 1422; and *Charles*, King of *France*, did not long ſucceed him, but dy'd in the 43d Year of his Reign, and the 55th of his Age, and was ſucceeded in the Kingdom by his 6th Son, but the third then living, which was

Charles VII. He was at the Caſtle of *Eſpailly* when he received the News of his Father's Death. He was crowned at *Poictiers* in *November*, 1422; he was very unfortunate; and, in a Year's Time received melancholy News from all Parts, as of the taking of *Menlane*, *Crotay*, *Compeigne*, and *Baſas*, in *Gaſcoigny*, and, which was the worſt, the Defeat of his Men before *Crevant*, beſieged by the Earl of *Salisbury*, who overthrew the Conſtable *Bouckaine*, and the Marſhal *Severac*, who went to relieve *Crevant*, but loſt a thouſand Men, and about as many were made Priſoners, of which the Conſtable was one; and the next Year was not much better, for the Duke of *Bedford* defeated the *French* at *Verneuil*, and killed four thouſand of their Men, and took the Duke of *Alenſon*, the *Mareſchal de la Fayette*, and about three hundred Gentlemen, Priſoners.

In the Year 1428, the Earl of *Salisbury* beſieged *Orleans*, on the 12th of *October*, but loſt his Life at that Siege by a Cannon Ball; but the Beſiegers ſucceeded ſo well, that the Place was deſtitute of all Hopes of holding out againſt the *Engliſh*, till they recovered freſh Courage by the following Accident.

About the end of *February*, the Governor of *Vaucouleurs* ſent a young Woman of Eighteen or twenty Years of Age, to the King, who affirmed ſhe had a poſitive Commiſſion from God to relieve *Orleans*, and cauſe the King to be crowned at *Rheims*, and that ſhe was frequently importuned to execute this Commiſſion, by the Apparitions of Angels and Saints. Her Name was *Joan*, or *Jane*; ſhe was bred up to keep Sheep; ſhe knew the King amidſt the Throng, and thoſe who examined her, affirmed, that there was ſomething ſupernatural in her Behaviour. She ſent for a Sword that lay in a Knight's Tomb, upon whoſe Blade were ſeveral Croſſes and Flower-de-Luces engraven, and the King openly affirmed, that ſhe had divined a very great Secret, not known to any but himſelf: Upon which they gave her an Army, and an Equipage, with proper Perſons to command under her. She wrote to the *Engliſh* in the Name of God to leave the Kingdom of *France* to the lawful Heir; or, if not, ſhe would expel them by Force; but they detained her Herald Priſoner, with a Deſign to have burnt him as a Confederate of *Joan*'s, whom they reputed to be a Witch. However, he was found in Fetters when the City was relieved. After this, *Joan* proceeds with her Expedition; and, having firſt thrown Proviſions into *Orleans*, ſhe entred the City in Perſon, and the Beſieged believing her to be ſent from Heaven, they reſumed their Courage, and ſally'd out with her at the Head of them, and on the 12th of *May* raiſed the Siege,

Siege, and diſlodged the *Engliſh* from all Places in the Country thereabouts.

The ſecond Part of her Commiſſion was to cauſe the King to be crowned at *Rheims*, which ſhe actually accompliſhed *July* 7. 1429; and the King, as a Recompence for *Joan*'s Services, ennobled her, her Father, and three Brothers, and all their Deſcendants by the Females, as well as the Males, and changed their Names from *de Arc*, to *Lucy*, or *Lily*, giving them a Coat of Arms peculiar to the Family.

Joan burnt

But *Joan* fell ſhort of Infallibility; for ſhe was taken Priſoner at the Siege of *Compeigne*, by a Gentleman of *Picardy*, who ſold her to *John de Luxemberg*, one of the Generals, and he again to the *Engliſh*, for ten thouſand Livres down, and five hundred Livres yearly Penſion; and the *Engliſh*, enraged to have been worſted by a young Woman, procured her to be try'd for a Witch, in the eccleſiaſtical Court, and charged her with being a Seducer, a Heretick, *&c.* and ſhe was accordingly burnt alive in the Market-Place at *Roan*, on the 30th of *May*, 1432.

King *Charles* by ſome means or other got Information, that his Domeſticks conſpired to take away his Life; with which, and his own Conceit and Jealouſy, he continually fancied, that he ſaw nothing but Daggers, Poiſon, and the like, and was afraid to take any Victuals and Drink from any Hand whatſoever; and ſo depray'd his Appetite by faſting, till when he would have eaten he could not, and ſo dy'd with Hunger *July* 22. in the thirty ninth Year of his Reign, and the ſixtieth of his Age, *Anno* 1461.

Lewis XI. *Charles* being dead, he was ſucceeded by his Son *Lewis* XI. He was crown'd at *Rheims* on the 15th of *Auguſt* 1461. and made his publick Entry into *Paris* on the laſt of the ſame Month; but as ſoon as he was fix'd upon the Throne, he turn'd out all the Officers of the King's Houſhold, as alſo thoſe belonging to the War, Judicature, and Treaſury, and took Delight to ruin what his Father had promoted or ſet up. He reſtor'd the Count *Armagnac* to his Eſtate, oppreſs'd the People with Taxes, and ſtripp'd the Nobility.

The King continued to exerciſe his Severities upon his Subjects, but he had a ſubtle projecting Genius. He contriv'd to ſow the Seeds of Diſſention among his Enemies, and to diſ-unite the Duke of *Burgundy* from the reſt of his Confederates in Alliance with him againſt *Lewis*; and in Order thereunto, he propoſed an Interview with the Duke of *Burgundy*; and to find him, he went to *Peronne* without any Guards, but only the Cardinal *de Ballue*, the Duke of *Bourbon*, and two or three other Lords, to ſhew what an entire Confidence he had; but ſoon after came three Princes of the Houſe of *Savoy* thither, and divers Lords, all Enemies to the King, and lodg'd in the Town of *Peronne*; but the King was ſo terrified at the Sight of them, that he deſired to be lodg'd in the Caſtle; and, what made him in more Danger, he had, before this, ſent Ambaſſadors to order the *Liegois* to take up Arms; and, not having ſince countermanded it, they were preſently in Arms, and took *Tongres*, at which the Duke was ſo enraged, that he cauſed the Caſtle Gates to be ſhut, and could ſcarce forbear revenging himſelf upon the King; who, for three Days together, was in the greateſt Agonies imaginable, as knowing himſelf now in the Hands of his juſtly exaſperated Enemies, and People that hated him in the higheſt Degree, and in a Houſe at the Foot of that Tower where the Count *Vermadois* had put *Charles the Simple* to Death: But, being of a cunning inſinuating Genius, he gain'd ſome of the Duke's Domeſticks to himſelf; and, by their Means, got himſelf introduced to a perſonal Conference with the Duke, at the Duke's own Houſe; but, the appointed Time being come, and, the Duke approaching him, *Lewis* was ſo afraid, that he ſaid to the Duke, *Brother, am I ſafe in your Houſe?* To which the Duke reply'd, *Yes Sir, ſo ſafe, that if I ſaw an Arrow come towards you, I would interpoſe myſelf to ſave you:* And, upon this Reconciliation it was agreed, that the *Burgundians* ſhould have the Counties of *Champaign* and *Brie*, and the King was to follow the *Burgundians* to the Deſtruction of the *Liegois*, who bravely defended themſelves for a Time, but the Place was taken one *Sunday* after Dinner, when they were not ſo much upon their Guard.

The *Pariſians* ſtill ridiculing the King's weak Conduct, eſpecially that of his being decoyed to his Confinement at *Peronne*, they taught ſome Birds that were capable of ſpeaking, as Parrots, or the like, to repeat the Word *Peronne*; which the King taking amiſs, he ſent to take away not only all their Birds that could ſpeak, but Cranes, Swans, Cormorants, as alſo Deers, Goats, *&c.*

Lewis thinking cunningly to allure the Greateſt in his Kingdom to come under his Clutches, inſtituted a ſet of Knights, called the Order of St. *Michael*, and limited their Number to 36; but he needed not to have reſtrained it's Number, for he never lived to ſee that Number filled up; for the Duke of *Bretagne* rejected it, and the Duke of *Burgundy* preferr'd the Order of the Garter before it, as more antient and honourable, and wore the Badge to his dying Day.

Edward IV. had an Army in *France*, and was 1475.
ravaging where he found Opportunity, till Propoſals of Peace were offered him by *Lewis* King of *France*, but at firſt King *Edward*'s Plenipotentiaries would not allow *Lewis* any other Title in the Negotiation, but *their Maſter's Couſin*, Lewis *of* France, which he ſubmitted to, and at laſt they agreed to a Truce for nine Years, in which the Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Burgundy* might be included, provided the *French* ſhould pay the *Engliſh* 73000 Crowns ready Money, and that the Dauphin ſhould be married to the King of of *England's* Daughter, for the Maintenance of whom King *Lewis* ſhould allow the Revenue of *Guienne*, for nine Years, or 50000 *l. per Annum*, which ſhould be carried to the Tower of *London*, for the Uſe of the King of *England*.

While the Time was approaching for the Kings to ſign the Treaty, King *Edward* advanced with his Army within half a League of *Amiens*, and *Lewis* ſent him three hundred Waggons laden with the beſt Wines, and order'd, that as many *Engliſh* as deſired it, ſhould go into *Amiens*, where they were plentifully entertained for three or four Days; and it was agreed that the two Kings ſhould have an Interview on the Bridge of *Pequigny*, upon the *Somme*, a Barrier made between them, and there the Peace was ratify'd, on the 29th of *Auguſt*, 1476.

Upon this King *Edward* returned home to *England*, and the Duke of *Burgundy* would not accept of the Truce till *October*; and the Conſtable who ridicul'd the Kings of *England* and *France*, and the Duke of *Burgundy*, found that he had now, when they were agreed, ſet them all againſt him, ſo that he knew not where to ſhelter himſelf ſafely, and which was ſtill worſe, his Wife, who was the Queen's Siſter, died. He, therefore, retired to the Duke of *Burgundy*; but he was no ſooner gone out of his Town of *St. Quintin*, but the King ſeized it, and acquainting the Duke of *Burgundy* with it, demanded the Conſtable to be delivered up as a

Priſoner

Priſoner, which was accordingly done, and he was condemned, and in *December* he was executed at the *Greve*.

The Duke of *Burgundy*, not content with his preſent Dominions, fell upon the *Switzers*, but they received him in the open Field, *April* the 5th, where he loſt his Infantry and rich Equipage; and on the 20th of *June*, he loſt all his Forces of 18000 Men, before *Murat*; and, to compleat his Tragedy, he loſt his Life; and, with it fell the Grandeur of his Houſe, on the 5th of *January* following, before *Nancis*.

He was ſucceeded by his Daughter, Princeſs *Mary*; but ſhe was now left in a poor Condition, though lately the greateſt Fortune in *Europe*, her Father having loſt all in the three laſt Battles; the Commanders and Nobles being almoſt all taken, and every Thing in ſuch a diſtracted Condition, that *Lewis* might eaſily have gained Poſſeſſion of *Burgundy*, if he would have agreed that his Son ſhould have married the Princeſs *Mary*, the Duke's Daughter, to his Son; but he ſo hated the Houſe of *Burgundy*, that he had rather their Territories ſhould fall to ſome *German* Prince, than that he ſhould ſtand in any Relation to the *Burgundian* Family, or have any Affinity with them.

But, notwithſtanding the King of *France*'s Hatred to the Houſe of *Burgundy*, the Princeſs *Mary* was belov'd elſewhere, and was married to *Maximilian*, Son of the Emperor *Frederick*, but he was but a poor Match for her. However, upon this Affinity, *Lewis* granted *Maximilian* a Year's Truce, and reſtored to him *Queſnoy*, *Bouchain*, and *Cambray*, which were ſituate within the Bounds of the Empire.

1478 The Truce being now expired, *Maximilian* ſent ſome Forces into *Burgundy*; who, for the Love of their Princeſs *Mary*, and the Houſe of *Burgundy*, couragiouſly took ſeveral great Places, and went on with ſo much Reſolution, that had the Emperor *Frederick* given him any Aſſiſtance, he had probably over-run the whole Dutchy; but, for want of Men and Money, he was almoſt as eaſily drove out again. Whereupon the Truces were again renewed for a Time.

King *Lewis* returning to *Tours*, fell into one of his old fainting Fits, which amounted to ſuch a Sort of a Melancholy, or Hypo, that he was afraid, or jealous, of every Thing, and eſpecially of his neareſt Relations; and, upon that Account, kept the Queen a Priſoner in the *Savoy*. He bred his Son at *Amboiſe*, as a Captive among his Servants, leſt he ſhould aſſume Majeſty; and *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, the firſt Prince of the Blood, he kept always with him, leſt he ſhould improve by Converſation or Education, and married him to one of his own Daughters, a wife Princeſs 'tis true, but ugly and lame, and ſaid by his Phyſicians to be uncapable of bearing Children, and it was ſuppoſed indeed, that he had cauſed them to uſe ſome Means to prevent it.

He continued under ſuch fearful Apprehenſions of being aſſaſſinated, being drove out of his Kingdom, *&c.* that to divert theſe Thoughts, he cauſed the young Maidens to dance about his Court; the Phyſicians to play on Flagelets, and other antick Diverſions; and growing worſe, Death approaching, he call'd thoſe about him, and adviſed them thus: *Go to my Son your King, and ſerve him faithfully.* Then he ſent for his Son, and adviſed him to eaſe his Subjects, and reduce the Levies of Money, and raiſe none without the Conſent of the People. Perhaps this Advice might be the Effect of Remorſe of Conſcience, for himſelf had increaſed the Taxes to four Million, ſeven hundred Thouſand Livres, and continued it till this time of his Sickneſs, *Aug.* 29, in the Year 1483, in the 23d Year of his Reign.

Charles VIII. ſucceeded, but he being but 1483
about fourteen years of Age, there was a Charles
Diſpute about the Regency between the VIII.
next Princes of the Blood, the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Bourbon*, who both inſiſted that he ought to be treated as a Minor; not only becauſe of his tender Years, but becauſe his Father had ſhut him up at *Amboiſe*, and kept him in ignorance of any thing of Government Affairs; and upon this Diſpute, the Coronation was put off till the Year following, *viz.* 1485. in which Year on the 5th of *June* he was crowned at *Rheims*; notwithſtanding which, the two Rival Dukes of *Orleans* and *Bourbon*, together with the Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Alenſon*, the Earl of *Angouleſme*, and the Prince of *Orange*, with ſeveral others, form'd a Party againſt the Government; and being withdrawn to *Beaugancy*, they demanded an Aſſembly of the States; upon which they immediately carried the King thither, confined him, and forced him to an Accommodation.

The Arch-Duke *Maximilian*, was crowned 1486.
King of the *Romans April* 12, with *Charlemain*'s Crown, but being Poor, his Succeſs was proportioned to his Riches; he therefore retired to *Malines*, where he cauſed his Son to be kept and brought up.

The King being at *Amboiſe*, receiv'd Intelligence that the Count of *Dunois* was forming a League againſt him in favour of the Duke of *Orleans*, and that he had drawn in the Earl of *Angouleſme*, the Duke of *Lorain*, the Lords of *Pents* and *Albret*: The Friends of the Duke of *Orleans* contriv'd to carry the King away, but the Deſign being blown, *Comines* and ſome other of the Managers were ſeiz'd. *Comines* was kept Priſoner near three Years, of which Time he was cloſe ſhut up about eight Months in an Iron Cage, forfeited one fourth of his Eſtate, and confin'd to one of his own Houſes for ten Years.

The Affairs of *Bretagne* were now very much embarraſs'd about diſpoſing of the Dutcheſs *Ann*; however ſhe was married by Proxy to *Maximilian*; but King *Charles* had an Inclination to marry her, either for amorous or politick Ends, and in order thereto, ſent ſome Forces to beſiege her in *Rones*; but they were countermanded, and indeed ſhe could have made but weak Reſiſtance, for *Maximilian* was ſo weak and poor, that he could never ſpare her above two thouſand Men; therefore ſhe preſſed for Aſſiſtance from *England* and *Germany*, but in vain.

In this Diſtreſs of the Dutcheſs, it had been eaſy for King *Charles* to have taken her away by force; but he, inſtead of that, became a Suitor to her, notwithſtanding her Proxy Marriage with *Maximilian*, and of an Enemy, he became her Lover; but ſhe would not break her Faith with her betroth'd Spouſe, and beſtow her Heart upon a Prince that had treated her ſo ill; but the King employed the Duke of *Orleans* in his Intereſt, and he being much in her good Graces, prevail'd ſo far that they were married *December* 16, 1491. It was indeed expected that *Henry* VII. King of *England* would have interpoſed to 1491
prevent the Marriage, but as he did not, *Maximilian* accuſed *Charles* of having forſaken his own Wife, to raviſh the Wife of his Father-in-Law; and now *Henry* VII. ſaw his own Fault, in ſuffering the Dutcheſs, and with her *Bretagne*, to be loſt; but it being now too late, he made Peace with *France*, which was ſoon follow'd

by a Peace between the Houſes of *Auſtria* and *France* in the Year 1493.

KING *Charles* being now at Peace with his moſt potent Enemies, he began to entertain thoughts of reſuming his Title to the Kingdom of *Naples*, which had been talk'd of in that Family above 30 Years; and further to animate his Reſolution of attempting the Conqueſt of that Kingdom, the Earl of *Salerno* and other Gentlemen, who had been baniſh'd from *Naples*, came and took Sanctuary in *France*, and were there handſomly entertained. By their Advice *Lewis* reſolv'd upon the Enterprize; but upon the Rumour of this War, the King of *Naples* offer'd *Charles* Homage, with an annual Tribute of 50000 Crowns, but *Charles* rejecting
1494. the Offer, the King of *Naples* died with Grief, leaving his Son *Alphonſo* to ſucceed him.

KING *Charles* ſubſtituted the Duke of *Bourbon* Regent in his Abſence, and proceeded with only 1600 *Gens d' Arms*, each with his two Armen, three or four hundred Horſe lightly armed, 12000 Foot, with a great many young Gentlemen Volunteers tender and undiſciplin'd; and marching forward to *Tuſcany*, he took a ſmall Caſtle on the Confines of *Florence* by Storm, and then the Fort of *Serazanella*. This firſt Succeſs ſo aſtoniſh'd *Peter de Medicis*, that he deliver'd four Places that were the very Keys of the Country in the King's Hand for a limited Time, and agreed that he ſhould have Liberty, to borrow two hundred thouſand Crowns of Gold in that City.

THE King (*Lewis*) gain'd their Affections by Degrees; *Piſa* cries out for Liberty, and the King grants it; *Florence*, who always inclin'd to the *French*, took this Opportunity of *Lewis*'s Approach to baniſh *Peter de Medicis*, and recover their Liberty; and the King enter'd that City with his Army in battle Array, and himſelf armed in all Points, and the *Florentines* enter'd into a Confederacy with him, which was publickly proclaim'd in *Italy*.

THIS Succeſs of the *French* and their great Train of Artillery, bred ſuch a Terror in all the Country, that young *Ferdinand* retreated from *Aubigny*, where he was, to *Rome*, and his Uncle *Frederick* getting out of *Leghorn*, returned to *Naples*; the Places about *Rome* contended who ſhould ſurrender firſt; the *Urſines* made their Peace with *Lewis*, and the Pope himſelf was forced to let him enter into *Rome*, himſelf being retired to the Caſtle of *St. Angelo*, from whence he capitulated with him, and granted almoſt whatever he deſired, particularly to let him have five or ſix of his beſt Places for a limited Time.

ON the 28th of *January*, King *Charles* left *Rome*, and march'd towards *Naples*, and made his publick Entry into that City the 22d of *February*, and the Caſtles held out but a ſmall Time afterwards, and thus in fifteen Days he conquered the whole Kingdom of *Naples*, except only *Brindes*; but this Series of Succeſs, ſo elevated the Spirits of King *Charles* and his Courtiers, that the Government was neglected; ſeveral Cities that had ſet up *French* Colours, deſerted to the *Arragonians*, for want of ſending proper Perſons to take Poſſeſſion of them for the King; or what Governments he did confer were upon his Minions and Favourites, who were more fit to deſtroy than to defend what he had conquer'd; the King began to have Thoughts of returning home, but firſt he thought fit to make his publick Entry into *Naples* on Horſeback, with a Crown upon his Head, the Globe in his right Hand, and the Scepter in his Left, and in that State he was conducted to the Great Church, and took afreſh their Oaths of Fidelity, leaving 4000 Men to defend the Kingdom; after which he left *Naples* on the 20th of *May*, 1495. 1495

BUT this Power and Grandeur did not laſt long, for, by King *Charles* and his Nobles Neglect, the *French* Affairs declined; *Aubigny* was ſick; *Percy* ſpoil'd his Succeſs by his Pride; the *Germans* muntinied for want of Pay; the Garriſons were unprovided; and, to give the finiſhing Stroke to theſe Misfortunes, *Montpeſier* the *French* Commander ſuffer'd himſelf to be ſhut up by the three Armies of the *Venetians*, *Spaniards*, and *Arragonians*; and for want of Proviſion, capitulated to give up the whole Kingdom, in a Month's Time. The *French* Soldiers being now wore out, and *Montpeſier* himſelf dying at *Puzzoli*, the Confederates puſh'd on their Work into *Calabria*, reduced *Manfredonia* and *Cozenza*; and though they did drive the *French* out of *Daubigny*, yet they beſieged it, and the *French* were thankful for the Honour of being ſuffered to go out with flying Colours, and thus of all this great Conqueſt in *Italy* little was left, except a dangerous and then ſtrange Diſeaſe, brought firſt by the *Spaniards* from *Florida* to *Naples*, and thence call'd the *Neapolitan* Diſeaſe, with which the *French* by Cohabiting with the *Neapolitans* got themſelves affected, or rather infected; and thence it was call'd the *French* Pox, by which Name it is now pretty well known in *England*; and it was ſuppoſed that King *Charles* knew the Effects better than the Cure of it, for he fell under an ill State of Health, and a broken Conſtitution, which continued till his dying Day.

HE finding himſelf decline continually, laid aſide all Thoughts of Conqueſt, and of the ſporting Females wherewith he had pleaſed himſelf, and by whom he had got enough to make him remember them; he now meditated a Reformation, both in himſelf and the Government; he heard Complaints and Cauſes of his Subjects, depoſed corrupt Judges, reſtor'd Juſtice without Bribes, contriv'd to leſſen the Taxes to their Original of 1200,000, and that not to be levy'd without the Conſent of the States; and many other good Things he propos'd, but his Weakneſs increaſing, he lived not to put them in Execution; he dy'd of an Apoplexy on the 6th of *April*, 1498.

LEWIS, Duke of *Orleans*, being next of the Male Line, ſucceeded by the Name of *Lewis* XII. he was crowned at *Rheims* the 27th of *May*, and at *St. Dennis* the firſt of *July*; his firſt Work was to eaſe his People and adminiſter Juſtice; in order to the firſt he leſſen'd the Taxes, and for the other he made moſt excellent Rules for abbreviating and eaſing the Charge of Proceſſes in Law.

HIS firſt Love was *Ann* of *Bretagne*, who was his Predeceſſor's Queen, and ſhe being now a Widow, nothing was in his Way to prevent his Marrying her, but his Wife *Jane*, from whom he therefore ſought to be divorc'd, which he obtain'd by proving that it was not his own Choice, but that he was forc'd to it by *Lewis* XI. and thereupon he married; the Widow *Jane* underwent the Divorce patiently, and retired into a Nunnery, but the *Pariſians* reſented it very highly.

BEFORE *Lewis* undertook any Expedition, he endeavoured to ſecure the Friendſhip of his Neighbours, firſt of the King of *England*, then of *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel*, and of the Arch Duke *Philip*; and now *Lewis* thought fit to ſend his Forces into the *Milaneſe* on one Hand, while the

the *Venetians* attack'd it on the other; the *Venetians* took all beyond the *Adda*, and the *French* ſucceeded as well; *Noverre* and *Alexandria* were ſack'd, *Mortara* capitulated, and *Pavia* ſent them her Keys.

LEWIS was now ſuppoſed to be ſtrong enough of himſelf to conquer the Kingdom of *Naples*, however he went Partner with *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*; and in order to this Conqueſt gave the Command of his Army to *Daubigny*, *Gajazza* and *Borgia*, while *Raveſtein* commanded by Sea; 1500. the Rendezvous was at *Genoa*; *Frederick* having no Aid but from the Conſtable, *Colonna* made little Reſiſtance when the *French* had forc'd *Capua*, and put 7 or 8000 People to the Sword; *Naples* and *Cajeta* were terrified to a Surrender, upon which he came to a Treaty with *Daubigny* and *Nemours*, and agreed to give up all the Towns, in the Partition made to *Lewis*, in ſix Days; they allow'd him to keep the Iſland of *Iſchia* for ſix Months, to retire where he pleaſed, and to take any thing out of the Caſtle of *Naples*, except the Cannon belonging to *Charles* VIII. The poor Prince being thus reduced, and betrayed by his Couſin *Ferdinand*, under pretence of Aſſiſtance, had no other way than to throw himſelf upon the *French* King's Mercy, who gave him ſafe Conduct to *France*, and allowed him a Penſion of 30,000 Crowns, which was continued after the *French* were again driven out of *Naples*.

GONSALVO, on the *Spaniſh* Side, conquer'd the other Part of the Kingdom, while the *French* King was ſeeking an Alliance with *Maximilian*, in order, if poſſible, to obtain the Inveſtiture of the Dutchy of *Milan*. The Cardinal *d'Amboiſe* was ſent to treat about it; the Emperor inſiſted upon the Releaſement of *Storza* his Brother Cardinal; *Aſcaguia* was ſet at liberty, and a mutual Promiſe was made for the Prolongation of the Truce on one Part, and of the Inveſtiture on the Emperor's Part; but with this Limitation, that it ſhould be only for his Daughters, and not for Sons. He cunningly made this Reſerve, becauſe he had a View of having the King's eldeſt Daughter, and that Dutchy in Dowry for *Charles* his Grandſon, which was accordingly agreed upon.

BUT the Limits for the Diviſion of the Kingdom of *Naples* not being intelligibly expreſt, there aroſe a Diſpute about the Country of *Capitinata*; the *French* would have it to be a Part of *Abruzzo*, and the *Spaniards* would have it belong to *Puglia*; the two Generals thought to determine it amicably, but the *Spaniards* ſoon broke out in Acts of Hoſtility, inſomuch that *Lewis* ſent to the Duke of *Nemours* a Command to begin a downright War upon them; for the King was got into *Italy* to take care of *Milan*, and to ſuppreſs the Tyranny of *Borgia*; but he ſoon left *Italy* and return'd home, and notwithſtanding that, yet the *Spaniards* were ſoon driven out of *Capitinata*, *Puglia* and *Calabria*, and *Gonſalvo* found himſelf pent up in *Barletta* without Proviſion or Ammunition; but the *Venetians* ſpeedily ſupply'd him, while the Duke of *Nemours* divided his Army into ſeveral Bodies to beſiege other Towns, which weakened him, and gave *Gonſalvo* an Opportunity to recover himſelf, and put him in a Condition to withſtand *Nemours* and the *French* Forces; and accordingly they engaged at *Cerignola* in *Puglia*, where *Nemours* was ſlain, *Aubigny* eſcap'd to *Angitola*, where he was beſieged, and forced to capitulate that all his Men ſhould quit the Kingdom, and that himſelf ſhould remain a Hoſtage till that were performed.

WITH this Succeſs *Gonſalvo* began to cut a great Figure; *Naples*, *Capua*, and *Averſa* open'd their Gates to him, and *Chaſteau Neuf* ſurrender'd, and the Caſtle *Del Ovo* held out but three Weeks; however the *French* ſtill held ſeveral Places; *Gonſalvo* alſo laid Siege to *Cajeta*, but it being a ſtrong Sea-port, they defended it till the Arrival of the *French* Army.

LEWIS reſolving to ſtrike while the Iron was hot, ſent out four Armies, three at Land, and one for the Sea; the greateſt by Land was commanded by *Trimoville*, conſiſting of 18000 Foot, and 2000 Men at Arms; theſe were to recover the Kingdom of *Naples*; and the other three were to attack *Spain*; the Firſt, commanded by the Lord *Albert*, were to make an Irruption towards *Fontarabia*; the Second, commanded by the Marſhal *de Rieux*, to enter by *Rouſſillon*; while the Fleet was to ſcour the Coaſt of *Catalonia* and *Valencia*.

TRIOMVILLE mov'd ſlowly towards *Italy*, and being arriv'd in the Territories of *Sienna*, fell ſick, and the King ſubſtituted *Charles de Gonzagues* in his Room, who made a Bridge over the *Gariglian*, and under the Cannon paſs'd his Army over in the ſight of *Gonſalvo*, who underſtanding that he had paſs'd the *Gariglian* to attack him, he retreated at *Cajeta*.

HERE *Gonſalvo* immediately beſieged him, and expecting a Famine more than any relief, he capitulated on *New-Year's-Day*, and put an end to all Diſputes between them.

IN the mean Time, *Lewis* was privately forming a Scheme againſt the *Venetians*, which was carried on ſo privately, that they ſooner found it by its Effects than by Intelligence; for the firſt Diſcovery they made of it, was *Lewis* on one Hand making War upon them with 40,000 Men; and the Pope on the other Hand, thundering out Excommunications againſt them; for the King having paſs'd the River *Adda*, came 1509. up with the *Venetian* Army, and fought and defeated them near *Caravaz*, where all their Infantry was cut off, and their General *Alviane* loſt an Eye and was taken Priſoner: The Pope had alſo an Army of upwards of 12000 Men in *Romagnia*, and *Ferdinand* had a ſmall Fleet in the Gulf, and all againſt the poor *Venetians*; which ſo ſtartled them, that deſpairing of Succeſs againſt ſuch a multiplicity of Enemies, they ſhut themſelves up in the Iſlands of their Gulf.

KING *Lewis*, now thinking that he had done all that could be done, retir'd to *Milan*; and upon this the *Venetians* reſum'd freſh Courage, and recover'd the important City of *Padua*; the Emperor, nettled at this, having with his Confederates laid Siege to it: His Army conſiſted of 36,000 Foot, 1800 Men at Arms, and a thouſand light Horſe; but there were 12,000 Foot in the Town, 2000 Horſe, and 200 young noble *Venetian* Volunteers, who every one of them were reſolv'd to be buried in the City in defence of it, rather than loſe their Privilege, becauſe the Preſervation or Loſs of it, would determine the Fate of the Republick, and ſo it prov'd; for they made ſo gallant a Defence, that the Emperor decamp'd on the ſeventeenth Day of the Siege, and diſbanding his Troops, retired in a great Rage againſt thoſe Confederates who diſappointed him.

BUT the Emperor was glad for his own Safety to be reconcil'd to *Lewis*, and their Alliance was renewed as ſtrong as ever; for the Difference between the Emperor and *Ferdinand* of *Spain* being referr'd to *Lewis*, it was not then the Emperor's Intereſt to fall out with *Lewis*; but in the mean Time the Pope was reconcil'd to the *Venetians*, and daily more and more alienated from King *Lewis*, and form'd continual Complaints againſt him, but commonly trifling and groundleſs, and

in

his Design againſt *Lewis* went ſo far, that he animated the King of *England*, *Henry* VIII. againſt him, who was very willing to embarraſs *Lewis*, that he might keep a more peaceable Poſſeſſion of the Kingdom of *Naples*.

1511. Pope *Julius* was eaſily provok'd to come into the Field, for the *Swiſs* being deny'd an Augmentation of their Penſions to 60,000 Livres a Year, grew inſolent, and fell directly in with the Pope, aſſuming jointly with him the Title of *Defender of the Holy See*; and on the other Hand *Lewis*, ſeeing a neceſſity of defending himſelf againſt the Pope, appointed an Aſſembly of the *Gallican Church* at *Tours*, in which he forbid his Subjects applying themſelves to the Pope for Benefices, or to carry any Money out of the Kingdom; and this prevailed ſo far, that an Univerſal Revolution was expected; at which they were ſo alarm'd at *Rome*, that the Cardinals implor'd the Pope to make Peace with *Lewis*; but he being Wife-ridden, his Army dwindled away, and he was forc'd to abandon the *Milaneſe*; and *Sforza*, Duke of *Milan*, was reſtor'd to that Dutchy by the *Swiſs*.

But about this time *Genoa* revolted; and, to add to the Misfortune, *Henry* VIII. King of *England*, ſent a Herald to proclaim War againſt *France*; and at the ſame Time the Emperor forſook *Lewis*, and enter'd into a new Alliance with Pope *Julius*: All theſe Articles ſeem'd to make very much againſt the *French* Intereſt, but upon a Diſguſt that the *Venetians* took againſt the Emperor, they fell in with *France*, by which means he thought he might recover the Dutchy of *Milan*; and accordingly he diſpatched 16000 Foot, 1000 Men at Arms, and 2000 Light Horſe, with whom the *Venetian* Army was to join in Caſe of Need.

This formidable Preparation of *France*, ſpread ſuch a Terror through *Italy*, that every Place ſurrendered to them as they went, except *Coma* and *Noverre*, into the laſt of which Places *Sforza* with 5000 *Swiſs* had retir'd. The *French* Fleet at the ſame Time upon the Coaſt of *Genoa* terrified that Territory to the Subjection of *France*; but their Enjoyment was very ſhort, for the *Swiſs* Army marching out againſt the *French*, took them unaware, and utterly defeated them.

At the ſame Time the Emperor, in Conjunction with the King of *England*, with 50,000 Men laid Siege to *Terovenne*, and the *French* were attack'd and routed near *Guinegaſte*; the Duke *Longueville*, and the Chevalier *Bayard*, being hemm'd in, were made Priſoners by the *Engliſh*; and to them *Terovenne* was ſurrendered about fifteen Days after; but the Emperor and the *Engliſh* not agreeing about the Prey they had taken, order'd it to be diſmantled and burnt, except only the Churches; and *Tournay* was afraid of the ſame Fate; but to prevent that, they ſurrendered to the King of *England*, who built a Citadel to defend it.

Queen *Ann*, Wife of *Lewis* of *France*, dy'd on the 9th of *January* 1514, and the King of *France* having no Son of his own, brought up the Duke of *Valois*, who by the Loſs of the Kingdom had a Right to ſucceed him; and he was married to *Claude* the Queen's Daughter in *May*, this Year 1514; his Name was *Francis*, who ſucceeded to the Crown at *Lewis*'s Death.

This ſame Year, *Lewis* was married to *Mary* the Siſter of King *Henry* VIII. of *England*, by which means a Peace was eſtabliſh'd between the two Crowns of *England* and *France*; but *Lewis* being advanc'd in Years, the young Queen was Amorouſly careſs'd by young *Valois*, and at the ſame Time *Charles Brandon*, Duke of *Suffolk*, was as much inflam'd with her; and *Lewis* drawing near his Grave, he was ſeiz'd with a Fit of Vomiting at *Paris*, and dy'd on the firſt of *January*, 1515.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Reigns of Francis I. *or the Great*, Henry II. Francis II. *and* Charles IX.

Francis I. Francis, as above obſerv'd, ſucceeded *Lewis* XII. His firſt Care was to Cultivate a good Underſtanding with his Neighbours; Queen *Mary* was ſent back to *England*, and married to the Duke of *Suffolk*.

In the mean Time *Ferdinand*, King of *Spain*, together with the Pope, the Emperor, the *Swiſs*, and *Sforza* Duke of *Milan*, laid a Scheme to compel *Francis* to renounce the Dutchy of *Milan*; but *Francis*, reſolute to defend his own Property, drew his Troops together about *Turin*, while his confederate Adverſaries abandon'd one Place after another, which fell eaſily into the King's Hands; and at laſt falling out among themſelves, they ſet up a Treaty by means of the Duke of *Savoy*, and they attack'd the *French* Army at *Marignan* near *Milan*, broke their Camp, and took ſome of their Cannon; but *Francis*, with the beſt of his Forces haſtened thither, and with his Horſe and Artillery broke their Forces, and a great many of them were cut to Pieces in an adjacent Wood, where they thought to ſhelter themſelves; the remainder were glad to retire towards *Milan*.

This brought King *Francis* into ſuch Favour with the Pope, that he took him under his Protection, together with the Eccleſiaſtical State and *Florence*; and to compleat the King's Succeſs, the Duke *Sforza*'s Prime Counſellor capitulated for the Caſtle of *Milan*, and reſign'd all his Right to the Dutchy for the Sake of a little Money to pay his Debts and a Cardinal's Cap; but they did not hold it long, for the *Spaniards* in *November* 1521, attack'd the Suburbs, which the *Venetians* gave up, as the Burghers of the *Gibelline* Faction did the City; which the *Spaniards* ranſack'd for eight Days together.

The *Spaniards* now reſting ſecure, *John de Medicis* began to have a deſign upon *Milan*, and accordingly join'd the *French* Forces with 5000 Men, under the Command of *Lautrec*, late Governor of *Milan*, and beſieged *Milan* in form; but hearing that *Sforza* and his Men were arriv'd at *Piacenza*, and that the Marquis of *Mantua* was to convoy him with his Horſe to *Parma*, and to go from thence by the firſt opportunity to *Milan*, he decamp'd and poſted himſelf upon the *Caſſine* to prevent it, and his Brother *Lefun* taking

taking *Navarre*; all this prolong'd the Time, and by the Favour of this Opportunity, *Sforza* got into poſſeſſion of *Milan*, which greatly pleaſed and encouraged the Inhabitants; and *Francis* being out of all hopes of Succeſs in the *Milaneſe*, this Year countermanded the Forces he was ſending thither.

Pope *Adrian*, who liv'd about this time, endeavoured to procure a Truce or Peace among the Chriſtian Princes, that they might be the better able to oppoſe the *Infidels*; but *Francis* would yield to nothing but a ſhort Truce, which not ſatisfying the Pope, he endeavour'd to compel him to it; and in order to that, engag'd the Emperor, the *Venetians*, and the King of *England*, to bring him to his Meaſures, or to drive him out of *Italy*; but all this would not have deterred the King of *France* from going into *Italy* in Perſon, if *Bourbon*'s Conſpiracy had not given him a Diverſion.

King *Francis*'s Forces of 6000 Men, under the Command of *Trimoville*, beſieg'd the Caſtle of *Milan*; and *Francis* thinking himſelf ſure of *Milan*, went himſelf to attack *Pavia*, and likewiſe made a Detachment of 10,000 Foot, and 600 Men at Arms, with ſome Horſe, to conquer the Kingdom of *Naples*.

At the ſame Time *Charles* of *Bourbon* return'd out of *Germany* with 10,000 Foot and 1000 Horſe, and join'd *Lanoy*'s Army near *Lodi*; with theſe Forces they endeavour'd to put ſome Relief into *Pavia*, which was not yet in ſo much Danger from the Enemy without, as from the Garriſon within, they being ready to mutiny for want of Pay, which made King *Francis* incline to raiſe the Siege; but *Bonnivet* was obſtinate, and having made ſo many florid Speeches, that he would take the Place or die before it, made him more reſolute to continue the Siege.

The Armies by this time drew very near together, and the Enemy obſerving the Confuſion of the *French*, they drew nigh the Park Wall of *Pavia*, and having thrown down about ſixty Fathom of it, march'd directly to *Mirabel* Caſtle, which was the King's Quarters; for it being dark, the King's Cannon could not do much Execution; but as ſoon as it grew light they ſhatter'd their Rear, and broke their Ranks; and at the ſame Time the Duke of *Alenſon* defeated a great Body of the *Spaniards*, and took four Pieces of their Cannon; but *Francis* now thinking the Enemy was quite routed, imprudently went out of his Camp to charge them; at firſt he broke in among their Horſe, but their *Harquebuſiers* having put his Men to a Stop, *Bourbon* and *Lanoy* gave a furious Charge; *Alenſon* fled and dy'd with Grief at *Lyons*; the *Swiſs* lying open made a poor Fight, and withdrew at laſt; but three or four thouſand *German* Foot ſtood it to the laſt, but were all cut to Pieces, ſo that now all the Storm fell upon King *Francis*; and his Horſe being kill'd under him, he among the dead Bodies met *Pomperan*, and knowing him, ſurrender'd to him and became his Priſoner: All the *French* Baggage and Cannon were taken, and 8000 of their Men ſlain upon the Spot; amongſt whom were *Trimoville*, *Police*, and other Great Men, beſides many that were taken Priſoners; and upon this Defeat of the *French*, *Milan* immediately ſubmitted to the *Imperialiſts*, and King *Francis* was carried and confin'd Priſoner in the Caſtle of *Piqueton*.

France was now in a bad Condition, and *England*, as well as other Parts of *Europe*, grew Jealous of the growing Power of the Houſe of *Auſtria*; the Emperor receiv'd the News with a great deal of Fortitude, without ſeeming to be elevated with his Succeſs; and when it was propoſed in Council how King *Francis*, as a Priſoner, ſhould be treated, the Emperor's Confeſſor inſiſted upon his being generouſly diſcharg'd without any Conditions; but the Duke *d'Alva* and other Members alledged that he ought not to be ſet free till they had weaken'd him ſo much, that he ſhould never be able to give them any further Diſturbance, and that the Abatement of the Power of *France* ſhould be made uſe of as a Means of the Re-eſtabliſhment of the antient Empire: The Emperor fell into theſe Sentiments, and propos'd to the King, that he ſhould renounce *Naples* and *Milan*, and ſurrender up *Burgundy* to him, and give *Provence*, *Dauphiné*, and *Lyonnois* to *Bourbon*, to be join'd to his other Land, to make them an Independant Kingdom, and to ſatisfy the King of *England*'s (*Henry* VIII's) Demands; but *Francis* reply'd, *they were things out of his Power, and contrary to the fundamental Laws of his Country.* However King *Francis* offer'd to marry the Emperor's Siſter *Eleonora*, to hold *Burgundy* in Power, and Hereditary to the Children of that Match, to reſtore *Bourbon*, and give him *Margaret* his Siſter, *Alenſon*'s Widow, to ſatisfy the *Engliſh*, to pay a Ranſom, ſuch as King *John*'s was, and to ſend the Emperor a Fleet and Army whenever he ſhould go to *Italy* to receive the Imperial Crown.

The *Spaniards* did not think King *Francis* ſafe at *Piqueton*, nor indeed at any other Part of *Italy*; *Lanoy* perſuaded him to go to *Spain*, which he agreed to, and was carried to *Madrid*, where he had more Liberty, and was allow'd to take the Air when he pleas'd.

The King's Siſter *Margaret* went to *Madrid*, where ſhe form'd an Intrigue for the King's Eſcape; and in order to that ſhe ſcattered Money amongſt the Council and Guards; but the Project getting Vent, the King was more cloſely confined, which he took ſo much to Heart that he fell Sick; the Emperor paid him a ſhort Viſit, and gave him hopes of Liberty; but the King recovering, the Emperor forgot his Promiſes, but came to this Agreement with him, *viz.* that the King ſhould marry *Eleonora* the Emperor's Siſter, with 200,000 Crowns for her Portion, and that the Daughter of that Princeſs ſhould be marry'd to the Dauphin when ſhe came to Age, that he ſhould be ſet at Liberty the 10th of *March*, and give Hoſtages for what he ſtipulated; to wit, that he ſhould ſurrender the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, with *Noyers*, *Chaſtel*, *Chinon*, the County of *Carolois*, the Viſcounty of *Auſonne*, and the Provoſtſhip of St. *Laurence*, all in intire Sovereignty to the Emperor; as alſo the Homage for *Flanders* and *Artois*, and his Pretenſions to *Naples*, *Milan*, *Genoa*, *Aſt*, *Tournay*, *Liſle*, and *Heſden*; to reſtore the Duke of *Bourbon* and his Family their Eſtates; and many other Articles beſides: He was at his Death to procure his Cities, to return to the Emperor, to pay the King of *England*'s Arrears of Penſion, which was 500,000 Crowns; and if the Emperor ſhould go to receive the Imperial Crown of *Italy*, that *Francis* ſhould lend him twelve Galleys and four great Ships, and to pay him 200,000 Crowns in lieu of the Land Army he promis'd him; and laſtly, that if after *Francis* had gone home, he found he could not perform theſe Conditions, he ſhould voluntarily return and ſurrender himſelf a Priſoner as before theſe Conditions were made; upon this he was ſet at Liberty, and his two Sons ſent as Hoſtages into *Spain*.

Treaty of Madrid 1526.

France ſet at Liberty.

In the mean Time the Duke of *Bourbon* undertook a ſecret Expedition into *Italy*, he firſt entered into *Tuſcany*, but not daring to attack *Florence*, as it was thought he intended, he made towards *Rome*, the Pope being ſtartled at his Approach,

proach, left his Temporal Affairs to the Conduct of *Rance de Cere*, who not being able to raise any regular Forces, *Bourbon* made bold to encamp in a Meadow near *Rome*, and being next Morning deny'd a Passage through that City, he made an Assault upon a Breach in the Wall, and though *Bourbon* himself was shot dead in the Attack, his Men continu'd resolute, gain'd their Passage into the City, and plunder'd where-ever they came, and used the Citizens with uncommon Barbarities, the Pope and thirteen Cardinals having at the same Time shut themselves up in the Castle of *St. Angelo*; immediately after which the Pope surrendered himself Prisoner to the Imperialists, and remain'd a Prisoner for full six Months.

The Pope a Prisoner.

The King of *France* having now strengthen'd his Interest by a new Alliance with the King of *England*, he not only refused to return to surrender himself Prisoner to the Emperor, but made a demand of his two Sons, who were sent as Hostages to secure his Performance of the Conditions he had agreed to; but on the other Hand, the Emperor would neither deliver up the King's Children, nor the Pope himself from their Confinement. *Francis* was very willing to treat with the Emperor about the Releasement of his Children, and offer'd his Council to go back to *Germany*, and resign himself to release them; but they told him it was not in his Power, nor was he at his own Disposal, that his Person was the Kingdom's, and not his own; but at the same Time they offer'd to advance him two Millions of Gold towards the ransom of his Children, or that if a War with *Germany* was unavoidable, they would not fail to stand by him with their Lives and Fortunes.

Lantrec, being General of the *French* and Confederate Army against the Emperor, soon took the Castles of *Bosco Alexandria*, and *Pavia*; the Duke of *Ferrara* also revolted from the Emperor and embrac'd the *French* Interest, and the rather, because *Francis* had promised him his Queen's Sister in Marriage; these Successes animated *Francis* to challenge the Emperor at a single Combat, and for that purpose he caused a Scaffold or Stage to be erected in his great Hall, and there, in the Presence of the *Spanish* Ambassador and others, caused a Challenge to be read, requiring the Emperor to fight him; and he required the Emperor's Ambassador to convey the News to his Master, which he refusing, it was sent by a Herald; and the King of *England* did the like by a Messenger of his own; but the Emperor neither accepted them, nor resented them, but indolently went on, and upon some hard Conditions set the Pope at Liberty. *Lantrec*'s Army lay before *Naples*; but they being sickly, had no Success, and *Lantrec* himself died *August* 16, 1529.

The Pope set at Liberty

1532. About this time the Reformation was on Foot in the Church of *England*, it being in the Time of King *Henry* VIII. And *John Calvin* preach'd in *France*, and the *French* King's Sister *Margaret*, Queen of *Navarre*, became a Proselyte to the Gospel Doctrine; by which Encouragement the Reform'd posted up Papers against the Popish Doctrine of Transubstantiation; whereupon King *Francis* made search after the Authors of these Papers, and finding some of them out, six of them were burnt for *Heretics*.

The first Motion made to the Reformation.

The Emperor in the mean Time march'd into *France*, and took *Cambray*, and sent to the King of *England* to acquaint him that he was marching towards *Paris*, but *Henry* VIII. had put on a Resolution not to move till he had taken *Boulogne* and *Montreuille*: The Emperor therefore came to Conditions of Peace with *France*. The *English* at the same Time lying before *Boulogne*, they attack'd it so close, that after a vigorous Resistance they surrendered, which it was supposed might have been prevented if the Dauphin had relieved it in Time; but as it was now too late, he was resolv'd to attempt a Reprisal, and knowing that the lower Town was enclosed only with a Ditch without a Wall, he fell upon it and easily gain'd it, though the *English* had entrusted their Cannon and Baggage there; but the *French* were soon drove out without the Plunder they expected, and with the Loss of 4 or 500 Men.

The Fr. Hist. of Bologne.

The *French* King *Francis*, being nettled at the loss of *Boulogne*, and not knowing which way to make himself Satisfaction, he thought the best Way would be to attack the King of *England* in his own Dominions; and sent *Annebaut* with a Fleet, who seiz'd the Isle of *White*, but neither had Time to fortify it, nor to keep it in Possession, till he could make any advantage of it; and so he bravely return'd home.

The King of France, *with forty thousand Men,*
Went up a Hill, and so came down again.

The Affairs of *Francis* bearing now but a dull Character, and his Health declining, he easily agreed to come to an Accommodation with the King of *England*, which was agreed upon *June* 8, 1546. whereby King *Henry* promised to restore *Boulogne* within eight Years; and *Francis* promis'd to pay to King *Henry* 800,000 Crowns of Gold, at 100,000 Crowns a Year till paid; but the two Kings did not long survive this Contract, for King *Henry* dy'd *Jan.* 28, 1547. and *Francis* dy'd the 31st of *March* following.

Francis was succeeded by his Son *Henry* II. 1547. Cotemporary with King *Edward* VI. of *England*, Henry II. who was at that time vigorously carrying on the Reformation in *England*; and at the same Time the Emperor publish'd an Edict call'd the Interim, concerning Religion; and King *Henry* of *France* not caring to contradict or disoblige the Emperor, or the King of *England*, under pretence of making a Progress through his Kingdom, went to visit *Champagne*, *Burgundy*, and *Lyonnois*, and so to *Piedmont*, securing his Frontiers, which was his chief Design.

During the King's Absence, a furious Flame of Sedition was kindled all over *Guyenne*, on Account of the Gabels and Garners of Salt, that had been set up among them by *Francis* late King of *France*, and the Violences committed upon that Account by the Officers upon the poor People. This Gabel was an Excise upon Salt, and these Officers were Excisemen, in extorting or collecting this Duty from the common People; and as they had got Authority from the Government for so doing, they committed abundance of Brutish Villanies where-ever they went; as indeed what better could be expected from such a Set of People, when protected by Authority in such Practices; and, which was worse, they being receiv'd into *Bourdeaux*, forc'd the Governor and Magistrates to march at the Head of them in Seamen's Habits, and inhumanly massacred *Monens* the Governor's Lieutenant; but the Parliament of *Bourdeaux* return'd their Authority, and by the help of an Army under the Constable and the Duke of *Aumal*, they soon suppress'd those riotous Promoters of Gabel or Excise, and punish'd *Bourdeaux* for admitting and encouraging them, by condemning them to maintain two Gallies; for the Governor to furnish two Castles with Ammunition, and to pay a Fine of 200,000 Livres, besides several other Penalties inflicted

inflicted upon them, which pretty well ſtay'd their Stomachs, as to Gabel or Exciſe.

But K. *Henry*, upon his being crown'd, gave way to exceſſive Diverſions, and all the Debaucheries that even Idleneſs could invent, and amongſt others of his cruel Diverſions, he cauſed a great many poor Proteſtants to be executed for their Religion, and the King took delight to indulge himſelf with the ſight of ſuch miſerable Spectacles.

1558. In *January* 1558, the Duke of *Guiſe* took *Calice*, whoſe Governor with fifty Perſons of Note were detain'd Priſoners; but the reſt, both Soldiers and Inhabitants, were ſet at Liberty, and the taking of *Calice* was of ſuch fatal Conſequence to *England*, that Queen *Mary* took it to Heart ſo much, that it was reported ſhe ſaid upon her Death-bed, that if they ſhould open her, they ſhould find CALICE *writ upon her Heart*; however, it may be ſuppoſed that this Loſs did the reform'd Religion ſome Service, becauſe it contributed to the Death of Queen *Mary*, whoſe Popiſh Principles when alive very much retarded the Reformation.

At this time a Reformation was begun in *France*, and eſpouſed by a great number of *French* Subjects; but the King order'd a ſevere Edict againſt them to be put in Execution; but like Queen *Mary*, or indeed any other crown'd Head, the Expiration of whoſe Life kept equal Date with the Commencement of their intended Severities, his Deſign was fruſtrated; for at the Tournaments inſtituted upon Occaſion of the Marriage of the King's Daughter, the King would needs tilt againſt the Earl of *Montgomery*, which the latter would have excus'd, but the King would not admit of it, and thereupon the Earl hit the King above the right Eye-brow with his Truncheon, wherewith he fell backwards to the Ground, and though he languiſh'd ſeveral Days, yet he never ſpoke more, but dy'd on the 10th of *July*, in the 13th Year of his Reign.

He had ten Children, five Sons and five Daughters: Three of his Sons reign'd Succeſſively; of whom the firſt was

Francis II. who was crown'd at *Rheims Sept.* 21, 1559. In his Time the Factions form'd in the late Reign began to appear, which with the Differences in Religion, created a great deal of Trouble, and occaſion'd Parties; on one ſide were the Princes of the Blood, and the Conſtable, and on the other ſide was the Family of the *Guiſes*; and the Conſtable, by the Advice of his Wife, came over to the *Guiſian* Faction, as perceiving the Queen to fall in with them, and that the oppoſite Party declin'd; the Conſtable would have perſuaded the King of *Navarre* to have come over, but he ſtanding his Ground, the *Guiſes* ſoon found Means to remove him, with a ſpecial Commiſſion, to carry the new Queen of *Spain* to the Frontiers, which he did, and deliver'd her at *Roncevaux* in *Navarre*.

The Reformation now gaining ground in *France*, and the King being averſe to it, there was in each Parliament a Court erected, which only took Cognizance of Affairs of Religion, and by whoſe Orders they without Mercy burnt almoſt all that were convicted of Hereſy, as they call'd the Reformation; theſe were remov'd from all Places of Truſt, and the moſt profligate Catholicks encourag'd.

The King had a *Quartan Ague*, which afterwards turn'd to a Leproſy, not to ſay worſe; his Face turn'd black, and Puſtles broke out of it; whereupon he was carry'd to *Blois* for Change of Air, and for a cruel Cure; for People were employ'd to procure Infants Blood to bathe him in; and to this Cruelty he added that of perſecuting the Proteſtants by Impriſonment, Baniſhment, Death, *&c.* And now the hot-headed Catholicks begun to be ſo pious, that they put up Images in the Corners of the Streets, and mobb'd and abus'd thoſe that paſs'd by without paying the due Veneration to them; at the ſame Time the *French* ſent 3000 Men to *Scotland* to aſſiſt the Queen of *Scots* againſt the Reformation; but Q. *Elizabeth* ſent ſome Forces into *Scotland*, who with the Proteſtants there, forc'd the *French* into *Leith*, and beſieg'd them there, and kept them there till it was agreed between *France* and *England*, that all Differences ſhould be determined by the *Scotch* Parliament, that the *French* Forces ſhould return home, and that both the *French* King and Queen ſhould quit both the Arms and Title of *England*.

The Perſecution of the Proteſtants continued 1560
more cruel than before; the Reform'd were till about this time call'd *Lutherans*, but this Year they diſtinguiſh'd them by the Name of *Hugonots*; ſome ſay from a Gate in *Tours* call'd *Hugon*, where they uſed to aſſemble in the Night; for ſo far had the perſecuting Power of the *Guiſes* prevail'd, that the Reform'd durſt not meet publickly; however Queen *Catherine*, ſeeing how things went on, form'd a political, as well as a religious View, and in order to eſtabliſh herſelf more firmly in the Government, tacitly encourag'd both Factions, that one might be a Check upon the others, and prevent either of them from being capable of forming any thing againſt her; and to ſuppreſs the exorbitant Power of the *Guiſes*, ſhe encouraged the *Hugonots*, and gave an Ear to ſome of their Writings, addreſs'd to her for their Juſtification.

But the Queen Mother and the *Guiſes* having the King's Authority to ſupport them, went to *Orleans* and diſarm'd the City, as being *Hugonots*, and ſuppoſed to have a Deſign to deliver it up to the Prince of *Conde*; who upon his Arrival with his Brother was ſeiz'd, confin'd, and condemn'd to loſe his Head; but the Sentence was not executed, and the King was then near his End, and dy'd at the Age of ſixteen Years and ſomething more than ten Months, having then reign'd about a Year and a Half.

Charles IX. 1560. Charles IX. ſucceeded to the Crown of *France*, and the Prince of *Conde* being then admitted into Council, he ask'd the Chancellor if there were any Proofs againſt him, who anſwered No, and all the Princes and Lords confirm'd the ſame; and thereupon the King commanded him to take his Seat in Parliament; and hereupon the King was crowned at *Rheims* the 15th of *May*, 1561. And now *Conde* had a leading Hand in the Government; and accordingly haſted with 2000 Horſe to *Orleans*, where he took an Oath of all the Party, and wrote to the *German* Princes, aſſigning a Cauſe for his taking up Arms; and having a pretty many of the military Powers on his ſide, the Parliament declared all thoſe Perſons Rebels, and guilty of Treaſon, who had ſeiz'd any Cities, *&c.* *Conde only excepted*: And *Conde* being now much in Favour, he was eaſily prevail'd upon by the Queen to deſiſt and diſarm; upon which his Party growing cool, the Enemies of the Reformation began to be uppermoſt, and 5000 Men being raiſed for *Conde*, were cut to Pieces in *Guyenne*, under the Command of *Montluc*, who, as Opportunity offer'd, us'd the *Hugonots* with the utmoſt Severity.

But the Prince of *Conde*'s Forces increaſing, by the Aſſiſtance of *Dandelot* and others, till his Army became 12000 ſtrong, he took the Field, reſolving

reſolving to march to *Paris*; but being diſappointed and beat back, he decamp'd and march'd for *Normandy* to join the *Engliſh*; but was ſo cloſely purſu'd, that the Armies met and engaged near *Dreux*, and *Conde* was taken Priſoner.

1563. THE Admiral having left *Dandelot* with 2000 Men in *Orleans*, march'd into *Normandy*, where he receiv'd Money from *England*, and muſter'd his Forces; but was forced to quit the Siege of *Caen*, upon the News of *Guiſe* having inveſted *Orleans*, the Suburbs of which were quickly loſt, and 800 of the Beſieged; but *John Paltrot Mere*, watching an Opportunity when *Guiſe* went out to meet his Wife, ſhot him in the Shoulder and kill'd him, for which the Duke's Children took the moſt bloody Revenge ever recorded in Hiſtory.

Havre de Grace taken from the *Engliſh*.

QUEEN *Elizabeth* of *England* refuſing to ſurrender *Havre de Grace* then in her Poſſeſſion, *Briſac* form'd the Siege of it, and took it from the *Engliſh*, which was a ſad Mortification to the Earl of *Warwick* the Governor; and the rather, becauſe the next Day after he had ſurrendred, a Reinforcement of 1800 Men arriv'd within Sight of the Port, as did in a few Days a great Fleet under Admiral *Clinton*; who were ſo enraged at the Port's being ſurrendred, that they did vaſt Miſchief by Sea to the *French* Merchants. But in the Year 1564, a Peace was agreed upon, wherein the Claim of the *Engliſh* to the City of *Calais* was own'd and juſtify'd.

1564 A Peace.

KING *Charles* being now arrived at the fourteenth Year of his Age, he was carried to *Roan*, and there declar'd Major; but the Edict was not without Difficulty regiſter'd in the Parliament of *Paris*, who would ſtill inſiſt that the King was a Minor; but he deny'd that they were now his Guardians or Tutors, Defenders of the Kingdom, Keepers of the City of *Paris*, &c. and at laſt the Edict paſs'd.

1565. THE Court the next Year took a Progreſs into *Champagne*, the Counties of *Bar*, *Burgundy*, *Lyons*, *Provence*, *Languedoc*, and *Bayonne*; but during the King's Abſence, the Cardinal of *Lorain* and *Montmerancy* Governor of *Paris*, had like to have created a new War: The Grudge was, becauſe the Cardinal's Men were allowed to wear Arms and the other's not; for upon his Return from *Trent*, the Cardinal enter'd *Paris* with an armed Guard, contrary to the Governor's Order, for which he was charg'd by the Governor, and had much ado to eſcape; upon which, both Parties arm'd in ſuch a Heat, that nothing but the King's expreſs Order could have made them lay down their Arms.

DURING the Reſidence of the Court at *Bayonne*, a ſecret Confederacy was carried on between the Kings of *France* and *Spain*, for extirpating the reform'd Proteſtant Religion, and reeſtabliſhing Popery; and the Court returning
1566 next Year to *Moulins*, the *Guiſe*'s Family and Admiral *Caligny* were reconcil'd, as was alſo the Cardinal of *Lorain* and the Mareſchal *de Montmerancy*.

Battle between the *Catholicks* and *Hugonots*.

THE King and the Catholicks ſtill continued more and more to oppreſs the *Hugonots*, who, not willing to bear it, aſſembled, and ſeiz'd the Bridges of *Poiſſy*, and *Argentual*, and a great many ſmall Caſtles on the other Side of the *Seine*, ſo that they commanded all the Roads to *Normandy*, *Maine*, and *Anjou*, and ſtopp'd Proviſions from coming to *Paris*; but they being but 3000, and the King's Forces 20000, the Conſtable at the Head of the latter fell upon them; but they were routed; and the Conſtable, after ſeveral Wounds, at laſt receiv'd a mortal one, and Night coming on, put an End to the Conflict. But *Dandelot* the Day after arriv'd from *Poiſſy*, and the *Hugonots* by his Advice rallying again, and with wonderful Reſolution, beat the Enemy to the Walls of *Paris*. The Conſtable dy'd next Day of his Wounds, and the Queen, glad to be rid of him, made her young Son, who was Duke of *Aujou*, General of the Army, but did not immediately fill up the Office of Conſtable. The *Hugonots* reſolving to follow their Stroke while the Iron was hot, march'd to *Montereau*, where they were join'd by a Body of *Germans*, under *Caſimir* the Elector *Palatine*'s Son, and ſtaid there fifteen Days to wait for the Troops that were raiſing for them in other Provinces; *Rochel* alſo declar'd in their Favour, and their Arms alſo prevail'd in *Languedoc*, and about *Avignon*. From *Montereau* they march'd to *Orleans*, and ſecur'd the Princeſs of *Conde*, and the Wives of the other chief Commanders, from the Danger they were in of being taken by the Enemy, there being but few Soldiers in the Place. Many other Succeſſes alſo attended the Arms of the Proteſtants at this Time, till at laſt it was a- 15
greed, That the King of *France* ſhould reſtore and confirm to them what had been enacted in their Favour for five Years laſt paſt without any Exception.

THE *Hugonots* were now in Poſſeſſion of *Sancerre*, *Vizelay*, *Montauban*, *Caſtres*, *Milaud*, and *Rochel*, which they fortify'd, keeping at the ſame Time a Correſpondence with Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, and with the *German* Princes, while the Admiral kept up a Communication with the Prince of *Orange*. While on the other Hand the Catholicks, notwithſtanding what was paſt, waited for all Opportunities againſt the Proteſtants, denying them as they found it in their Power, that very Peace and Liberty of Conſcience they had juſt now confirm'd to them; or, if they inſiſted upon it, Maſſacrees and cruel Deaths were their Portions, as at *Ligny* in *Barrois*; where a *Hugonot* on a Holiday refuſing to comply with ſome of their ſuperſtitious Ceremonies, the Mobb dragg'd him out of his Houſe, and afterwards burnt him upon a Pile of Wood, which they fetch'd from his own Houſe.

THE Prince of *Conde* being now at *Noyers* in *Burgundy*, the Queen reſolved if poſſible to take him by Force, ſince ſhe could not take him by Craft, and ſent thoſe Forces to take him that were deſign'd for the Siege of *Rochel*; but he having News brought him that ſome ſecret Forces were drawn about *Noyers* to ſurround him, and *Coligny* coming to *Noyers* to him, they went from thence with only 150 Horſe, and amongſt them their Wives and Children, ſome of the latter being very young. The Prince the better to Ca
conceal his Retreat, wrote a long Letter to the Co
King, complaining of ſome Grievances, and petitioning for Redreſs, ſubjoining, that he would wait for the King's Anſwer, which clear'd them of all Suſpicion of his Deſign to make off, which made his abovemention'd Eſcape the eaſier. They paſs'd the *Loire* over-againſt *Sancerre*; but had ſcarce got aſhore, till they ſaw their Enemies Troops on the other Side of the River in Purſuit of them; and, which was very remarkable, though the River was fordable the Day they croſs'd it, yet it was ſo ſwell'd the next Day as to be impaſſable. And though natural Cauſes may be aſſign'd for the ſudden Swelling of the River, ſuch as Rains, Freſhes, &c. yet that it ſhould happen to be fordable when *Conde* paſs'd it, and impaſſable when his Purſuers attempted it, may better be deem'd a Miracle than ſome that the Popiſh Legends furniſh us with in favour of their Superſtitions. The Prince of *Conde* after this Deliverance, uſed ſuch Diligence in his March, that he ſoon arriv'd at *Rochel*, where the

Queen

King's Forces

Queen of *Navarre* join'd him with four thousand Men, and the *Protestant* Commanders flock'd to him from all Parts: *Dandelot* had also got a Body of Men together out of *Normandy*, *Maine*, and *Anjou*, and was join'd by *Montgomery la Noue* in *Bretagne*, which now made them again appear powerful; whereupon the King publish'd an Edict to prohibit the Exercise of any Religion, but the *Roman Catholick*; and further, that no Person should be admitted into any Office that did not first take an Oath to live and die in that Religion. But though it might seem to be an imposition upon the poor *Protestants* then, yet the Wonder ceases, if we consider that at this Day, many freeborn *Protestant* Subjects, who have approv'd themselves as sincere and hearty in the true *Protestant* Interest as ever those did, and yet are deny'd the Privilege of enjoying Places that themselves contribute to the Maintenance of, as well as to the Support of the *Protestant* Interest which they profess.

1567. The Prince of *Condé* was supported with Money by Queen *Elizabeth* and the *Rochellers*, who took a great many Ships belonging to *France* and *Flanders*; and now the Frost being over, both Armies took the Field, and the Prince of *Condé* being surrounded by the Enemy, was taken Prisoner, and his Leg being broke, he could no way help himself, *Montesquiou*, Captain of the Duke of *Anjou*'s Guard, barbarously shot him Dead with a Pistol, and in derision, carried his Corps upon a She-Ass to *Jarnac*.

The Protestant Interest now again declin'd, and nothing would now go down with the *Roman Catholicks* but a downright Massacree of the *Hugonots*, or *Protestants*; and the chief Consultations were about hastning it too; and it was intended to be Universal, only the King of *Navarre*, and the Prince of *Condé* were to be excepted from this general Sentence; and the Conducting of it, was wholly left to the Duke of *Guise*, a fit Person to manage such an intended Piece of Barbarity. The Signal for his butcherly Mobb to assemble, to go to work, was the Ringing the great Bell at the Palace. It was on a *Bartholomew-Day*, being *Sunday*. *The Cruel Massacree.*

The Signal was no sooner given, but the Admiral and *Feligni* were soon dispatch'd; and in the seven Days that it held, it was computed that no less than 5000 Persons perish'd by popish Cruelty. They spar'd neither Age nor Sex, nor even Women big with Child; but their Throats were cut one after another, and their naked Bodies expos'd in Publick; the Queen Mother at the Window feasting her Eyes with this cruel Spectacle. It was computed that through the whole Kingdom no less than 25000 perish'd by their Cruelty.

The *Hugonots* had many Struggles for their Religion and Liberty in King *Charles*'s Reign, but in vain; but the King's Death put an end to all his cruel Projects on the 13th of *May*, when he had reigned about thirteen Years and a Half. 1573

CHAP. VII.

Of the Reign of Henry *the Third.*

Henry III. crown'd 1575.

KING *Henry* the Third was crown'd at *Rheims* on the 12th of *February*, 1575. and soon after he was crown'd he married *Louisa* the Earl of *Vaudemont*'s Daughter; after which he made his publick Entry into *Paris*: But the King falling sick, they endeavour'd to make him believe that his Brother the Duke of *Alençon* had poison'd him; and though he recover'd, yet the Duke of *Alençon* and his Friends were order'd to be seiz'd and confin'd upon suspicion of the suppos'd intended Murder; but they were soon releas'd, and the King giving himself up to Pastime and Gallantry, *Alençon* got away to *Dreux*, where *Buffy*, who had left the Court, brought him a great deal of Company; he was also join'd by a great many Noblemen from several Quarters; *Condé* had finish'd his Treaty with the Palatine Prince *Casimir*, who agreed to raise 8000 Horse and 6000 *Swiss*, provided no Peace should be made without his Consent, and that he should have the Government of *Metz*, *Toul* and *Verdun*; other Supplies and Reinforcements were likewise sent to *Alençon*, but *Guise* defeated them, and *Alençon* made his Escape.

But the Prince of *Condé*'s Army join'd *Alençon* near *Moulins*, where *Casimir* offer'd to resign the Command of his Army of 30,000 Men to him; but means were found to draw *Alençon* to an Accommodation, and lest *Casimir* should oppose the Design, they stopp'd his Mouth with a Sum of Money, and so a Treaty was sign'd the tenth of *May*, whereby the *Hugonots* were allowed the free Exercise of their Religion, and had the Liberty granted them of being admitted into all Colleges, &c. and their Children, in their way of marrying, were allow'd to be legitimate, and all other Sentences against them were revok'd.

Notwithstanding the Money that *Casimir* was to have, it was with some Difficulty that he would express any Satisfaction; *Alençon* (now Duke of *Anjou*) was prevail'd with to go to Court, and was kindly receiv'd; and after many turns of Affairs, *Anjou*'s drawing from the *Hugonots* to the Court Party, unhing'd the intended Pacification, and the King forbid the Exercise of any Religion but that of the *Roman Catholick*.

The *Hugonots* thus wore out and dis-spirited, there were hardly any People of Figure or Character left among them (but only the common People and Consistorians) that had any Zeal for Religion, only the Prince of *Condé* remain'd firm to his Principles.

It falls naturally in the Way to observe, 1582 that in the Year 1582, the Calendar was re- *Calendar reform'd* form'd by Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth, which was thence call'd the *Gregorian* Account, in which Correction he retrenched ten Days out of *October*, 1582. and order'd that from that Time there should be three *Bissextile* or *Leap-Days* cut off in every four hundred Years; the First to be cut off from the Year 1700, which is the Reason that the *Roman* or *Gregorian* Account, which was ten Days before the *Julian* or *English*, till the Year 1700, has been eleven Days before it ever since, and the foreign Account is in that respect the truest; for the true tropical Year is but 365 Days, 5 Hours, 49 Minutes,

(not to regard a few Seconds:) but the *English*, for Evenness of Numbers, reckon the Year 365 Days, 6 Hours, without regarding the odd 11 Minutes that every Year wants, which has been the Occasion of our differing from the corrected Calendar; and I cannot help thinking it a Pity, that as we have reform'd our Religion, we should not reform our Account of Time too, and bring it to, or near the Truth. It is true, this Correction of the Calendar was perform'd by a Pope, but I hope Truth is no less Truth for a *Roman Catholick*'s embracing and establishing it.

Anjou dies 1584

But to proceed, the Duke of *Anjou* (the late Duke of *Alençon*) dy'd in the Year 1584, and his Death changed the whole Scene of Affairs at Court; and there being no Probability of the King ever having any Children, the Succession became matter of Dispute; some would have had the Duke of *Lorain*'s Children to succeed, but others were for the Cardinal of *Bourbon*, and that it should be enacted that all Heretical Princes should be excluded, and all Hereticks banished, and that the Council of *Trent* should be strictly observ'd.

This League, as it was call'd, was to the Prejudice, not only of the *Hugonots*, but of the States of *Holland*, whereby Civil Wars and Broils ensued; the Consequence of which was, that the *Protestants* in a great Assembly held at *Lunenburg*, resolv'd powerfully to assist the *Hugonots*, and upon a Review near *Strasburg*, they found they had drawn together 6000 Horse, 5000 Pikemen, and 16000 *Swiss*, and a great many more. This Inundation of Strangers made the King extremely uneasy, but he divided his Forces into three Armies, one commanded by *Montpesier*, another by the Duke of *Guise*, and the Third he kept near his own Person; the Confederate *German* Army broke into *Lorain* through the Straits of the Mountains of *Vosge*, and having ravaged that Country for a Month, they pass'd the *Loire*, and advancing towards the Head of the *Seine*, they pass'd it at *Mailly*, and descended to *Beausse*, where was the best Forage; the King in the mean Time lining the Banks of the *Loire*, to prevent their repassing that Way.

The King of *Navarre* having obtain'd a great Victory, return'd to *Guyenne*, and was thence by the King's Order pursued by *Joyeuse*, who was re-inforc'd with 10000 Men, and *Matignon* was likewise order'd to join him with all his Troops; but *Joyeuse* was so eager to overtake the King, that he had not patience to wait the coming of his other Forces, and accordingly came up with him, in a Plain near *Contras*, where they furiously engaged for about half an Hour; but *Joyeuse* was defeated, and himself fell into the Hands of two Captains of the Enemy, who kill'd him in cold Blood; though they were offer'd a Ransom for him of 100,000 Crowns; his Baggage was taken, and 5000 Men (of which were 400 Gentlemen and Officers) were kill'd upon the Spot; the King of *Navarre* did not lose above 25 or 30 Men; *Conde* was unhors'd and forc'd to surrender himself a Prisoner, but he did not long survive it, for on the fifth of *March* he was basely poisoned by his own Domesticks.

The King, who had all along an entire confidence in the Duke of *Guise*, began to grow cool upon him, and by Degrees entertain'd such a Prejudice against him, and Suspicion of him, that nothing but his Death would satisfy him: Some would have had him try'd, but the King would have him dispatch'd by Assassination and no otherwise; so full of Revenge was he against him; and accordingly the King sent for him in the Morning to speak with him in his Chamber, but in his Passage he was beset by nine of the *Gascoign* Guards set there for that purpose, and by them wounded and unmercifully slain, which done, the Cardinal and the Archbishop were seiz'd, as was also the Old Cardinal of *Bourbon*, the Dutchess of *Nemours*, the Prince of *Joinville*, the Dukes of *Nemours* and *Elbeuf*, and many others; and the Enemies of the *Guises* having thus far gain'd their End, they never would let the King rest till the Cardinal was also dispatch'd, and as if that was not enough, that his and his Brother's Body should be burnt to Ashes.

Death of Guise.

1588.

When the King and his Party had thus reveng'd themselves on the *Guisian* Party, they took fresh Courage, and made several Attempts, but did little Execution; upon which *Aumale* (an Enemy of the King's) made an attempt upon *Paris*; but the Duke of *Longueville*, with 10000 Men, attack'd *Aumale*'s Camp, and defeated him with the Loss of 2000 of his Men upon the Spot, and many more were knock'd o'the Head in the Woods of *Chantallon*, besides 1000 Prisoners taken with their Baggage and Artillery.

There was now a Design carrying on to murder King *Henry*, and a *Jacobin* Friar was employ'd to perpetrate that piece of Villany, and in order to that, he obtain'd a Passport from Count de *Brienne*, and counterfeit credential Letters from the President *Harlay*, to go to the King; and being met on the Road by Solicitor General *La Guesle*, and pretending Business of Importance with the King, *La Guesle* introduc'd him accordingly; and as the King was reading the Letters he deliver'd him, he thrust a Knife into the King's Belly; the King pull'd the Knife out himself, but dy'd the next Day, being the second of *August*, 1589. The Murderer was soon dispatch'd by two or three of the Guards. *Henry* dy'd in the 39th Year of his Age, and the 16th of his Reign.

King murder'd 1589

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

The Reign of King Henry *the Fourth.*

HENRY the Fourth was a very diſtant Relation to his Predeceſſor, but being the next in the Male Line, he ſucceeded to the Throne; but it was obſerv'd that the Night the late King was in his dying Agonies, the Succeſſor held tumultuous Councils, as if regardleſs of, and impatient for his Predeceſſor's Death; and as he behav'd with ſo little reſpect to the late King, ſo the Princes of the Blood, and Lords of the late King's Court, as little reſpected him, nor did the *Hugonots* care to truſt him, ſo that he did not know with whom to adviſe, or what to do: However, an Aſſembly of the Nobility ſent the Duke of *Longueville*, to deſire him to aſſume the Title of *Moſt Chriſtian*, as being peculiarly eſſential to the Kings of *France*; they alſo made it a Condition of his being crown'd, that he ſhould forbid the Exerciſe of the new Religion, as they call'd the *Proteſtants*, and that he ſhould not admit any to Places of Power or Truſt that profeſt it, with ſome other Articles; to moſt of which the King agreed, but not to all, as being willing to remit ſome of thoſe Severities that were in force againſt the *Proteſtants*, for which ſome of them call'd him a *Heretick*, and unfit to reign.

THE Duke of *Maine*, in this Confuſion, reſolved to proclaim *Charles*, Duke of *Bourbon*, King; whereupon King *Henry* march'd for *Normandy*, to receive the *Engliſh* Succours; and now the King and *Maine* became two Parties, the King ſummoned his Party to meet at *Tours*, and *Maine* his at *Paris*, and each made as many Friends as they could: The two Princes were both much alike, both for Age and Courage, but the King was the better belov'd of the Two.

As for the two Parties, that of the League, headed by the Duke of *Maine*, and the other by the King, the Duke of *Maine*'s was the ſtrongeſt, having on their ſide the beſt Cities, and all the Parliament, except *Rennes* and *Bourdeaux*; they had alſo the Eccleſiaſticks, with the Aſſiſtance of *Spain*, the Encouragement of *Rome* and all the *Catholick* Princes, *Florence* and *Vienna* only excepted. The Royal Party had moſt of the Common Gentry, the late King's Officers, all the *Proteſtant* Princes, and the *Hugonots* with their old Soldiers, who did the King ſignal Service; however, the King had at preſent but 3000 *French* Foot, two Regiments of *Swiſs*, and 1200 Horſe, with which he march'd into *Normandy*, and making himſelf ſure of *Diepe* and *Caen*, he went to beſiege *Roan*; but *Maine* haſtening thither with 4000 Horſe, and 13,000 Foot, the King decamp'd, and went and took the City of *Eu*; but in the mean Time *Maine* paſs'd the *Seine* at *Vernon*, which made the King retire under the Cannon of *Diepe*, and *Maine* thinking he had now got him faſt, ſent Word of it every where to his own Party, upon which the Parliament of *Tours* ſent Deputies to propoſe to the King, to admit the old Cardinal *Bourbon* as an Aſſociate to the Crown; the King thought to have gone over for *England*, but *Biron* diſſuaded him from it: The King's Quarters were at *Arques*, and *Maine* was poſted upon a Hill at the right Hand, and attempted the King's Retrenchments, but loſt 500 Men, and ſo march'd off for good and all towards *Picardy*.

MAINE having thus expoſed his Weakneſs, ſo elevated the Royaliſts, that they now found no difficulty in ſtanding their Ground any where, and not only ſo, but even purſu'd and chas'd them, and with inferior Numbers too. And thus ſucceſsful, King *Henry* with 4000 *Engliſh*, came to force the great Retrenchments of St. *James*'s and St. *Germains* (Suburbs of *Paris*) and then the Suburbs themſelves, which was manag'd with ſo much Vigour, that he might have enter'd the City, had his Cannon come up in Time; but *Maine* hearing of the King's Approach to *Paris*, diſpatch'd *Nemours* thither, and arriv'd the next Day himſelf with the Body of his Army, whereupon the King withdrew to *Vendoſme*, which he took with little Trouble, and order'd the Governor to be beheaded.

IN the mean Time Pope *Sixtus* ſent a Legate into *France*, where he publiſh'd a Brief, containing the Subſtance of his Commiſſion; but there being no mention made of the Cardinal of *Bourbon*, *Maine* was afraid, leſt the Pope and the *Spaniards* had agreed to make ſome other Perſon King, and conſequently that he ſhould loſe the Power he was inveſted with by *Bourbon*'s Authority, and therefore before the Legate's Arrival at *Paris*, he haſted thither to have *Bourbon* proclaim'd King, by the Name of *Charles* X. *Maine* ſtill retaining the Dignity of Lieutenant General.

NOR to name the ſeveral Factions now broke out at *Paris*, the King reduc'd almoſt all the chief Places in *Normandy*; but the Duke attacking *Menlane*, the King haſted to its Relief, and the better to divert the Duke, he attack'd *Pariſy*, and took *Eſcalado*, and began to batter the Bridge; the Duke haſting to defend the Place, could no way ſtop their Progreſs but by breaking down two Arches of the Bridge; but the King having gain'd his Point, went and laid Siege to *Dreux*; but the Duke with his Forces march'd to the Relief of it, whereupon the King poſted himſelf at *Nonancour*, and gave the Duke Battle in the Plains of *Ivry*, and utterly defeated the League, (as the Duke's Forces were then call'd.) However, the King ſhew'd himſelf very generous, by reſtoring their Pikes and Colours, and by writing a Civil Letter to him upon this Occaſion: *Maine* with the broken Remnant of his Army eſcap'd to *Mantes*, while *Nemours*, *Aumale*, and other Commanders, retired to *Chartres*; and in the mean Time the King being advanced to *Roſny*, *Maine* retired to St. *Denns*, ſo that *Mantes* and *Vernon* declined the Duke's Intereſt.

THE King in the mean Time having taken *Provence* and ſeveral other Places, and his Army growing ſtrong, he block'd up *Paris* when they had no Proviſion of Corn, or other Neceſſaries to anſwer ſuch an Occaſion, and ſeveral Princeſſes, Ladies, the Pope's Legate, the *Spaniſh* Ambaſſador and others, were hemm'd in, in that Blocade: The *Pariſians* did all they could for their own Defence, but the King made himſelf Maſter of all the Bridges, poſted Garriſons in all the ſtrong Places for 7 or 8 Leagues round, to obſtruct all Supplies coming to *Paris*, and ſo to reduce them by Famine.

MAINE

MAINE was now gone to *Flanders*, to desire Assistance from thence, which the *Spaniards* were not very willing to grant; and the old Cardinal *Bourbon* dying at this Juncture, left *Maine* in a confus'd Condition, lest the *Spaniards* should press him to chuse a New King; but he got Matters so contriv'd, that no great Alteration was occasion'd by his Death.

SOME of the King's Commanders were for Assaulting the City, but he declined it, as supposing they might yet carry the point by Famine; and depending upon that, he grew indolent, as supposing that under this Necessity they would surrender of themselves; but *Maine* hearing that the King and his Party were so remiss, rais'd five or six thousand Men to relieve *Paris*, and sent them an Account of his Design in their Favour, adding, that he hoped the Duke of *Parma* would soon arrive at *Meaux*, which he did with the Forces above-mention'd and more, for he brought 12000 Foot, 3500 Horse, and 1600 Waggons; upon which the King rais'd the Siege in order to fight the Duke, but the Duke not being prepar'd to meet him, intrench'd himself; upon which the King sent a Herald to challenge him, but yet he would not stir, but in a few Days afterwards the Duke, by the Advantage of a Fog, so suddenly attack'd *Leguy*, that he gain'd it before *Aumont* could come to succour it; by which means the Tables were turn'd, *Paris* supply'd with all Necessaries, and the King's Army so reduc'd, that for some Days they wanted Ammunition, and even Bread.

DURING this Variety of Affairs, the *Spaniards* observ'd the Interest of the League to decline, and therefore in a Council held with *Maine*, they declar'd the Duke of *Guise* King; he declin'd it, and at last desir'd eight Days to give notice of it to his Master the Duke of *Lorain*, who answer'd that he thank'd his *Catholick* Majesty for the Offer, and thankfully accepted of the Choice they had made. *Maine* was now willing to treat with the King for a Truce; but King *Henry*, after a Conference with some Popish Divines, had his Confession of Faith drawn up, and the following *Sunday* was appointed for him to declare it publickly in St. *Dennis*'s Church, at which the *Parisians* rejoic'd exceedingly; *Maine* seem'd also mightily pleased with it, as supposing that he had now gain'd even the King himself to his Interest, or at least from being an Enemy.

K. *Henry* turns Papist.

KING *Henry* now took a Tour to *Calais*, where he expected Agents from *Elizabeth*, Queen of *England*; but instead of that, he found nothing but severe Messages and bitter Reproaches, for apostatizing from the reform'd Religion he lately profest, and severe Threatnings that she would recal her Forces out of *Bretagne*; he had much ado to pacify her, and more to endure the Remonstrances from other reform'd Churches, tho' he offer'd them Satisfaction.

THE King now began to purchase Interest where it did not come voluntarily; he gave *Vitry*, afterwards Governor of *Meaux*, 20000 Crowns, with the Office of Bailiff, and Governor of the City, to come over to him, and many other Governors bargain'd for more or less to surrender to him, amongst which were the Cities of *Aix*, *Lyons*, &c.

1594 K. *Henry* crown'd

BUT all this while King *Henry* remain'd uncrown'd, though at his Desire they agreed to have it done; but he not having the holy Oil yet in Possession, nor being at the City of *Rheims*, he was crown'd at *Chartres*; which *Maine*'s Party seeing, they fell off daily and revolted to the King; and now all Matters grew ripe for the King's Reception into *Paris*, and the rather, because the King had given assurance beforehand, that in Case of a quiet Admission, no Violence should be offer'd to any in *Paris*, and that he would give a general Indemnity, both as to Body and Goods, to all without Exception.

THE Scheme being thus laid, the People were prepar'd to receive him, and the Night between the 21*st* and 22*d* of *March*, was the Time appointed to seize the Ramparts and Gates: The King's Troops march'd from St. *Dennis* to *Montartre*, and enter'd in half an Hour, some by *Port Neuf* and *Port St. Dennis*, and some by the great *Chastelet*, where they cut a Guard of *German* Foot to pieces, for not crying *Vive-le-Roy*, which the Citizens now cry'd round the Town, with a Bill of General Pardon in their Hand, which they distributed to every one they met; upon this, *Brisac* went to the King and deliver'd him the Keys, and about Ten in the Morning he enter'd the City by the New Gate nobly attended, and went to the Church of *Nostre Dame* to hear *Mass*; and *Te-Deum* was Sung upon that Occasion, and by Noon all Things were in profound Peace; the King dined at the *Louvre*, and all the House was as free from Tumult as if he had resided there a long Time.

PARIS being thus reduc'd, if I may so call it, other Cities seem'd to strive who should come in first, as *Rhone*, *Havre*, *Montevulliers*, and *Pont-Audemur*; also the City of *Vernueil*, besides many others, as *La Chappelle*, *Laon*, *Amiens*, *Beauvais* and *Peronne*; also *Noyon* after a short Siege surrendered, so that no part of *Picardy* now stood out, but *Soissons*, *Ham* and *La-fere*.

THE aspiring Cardinal of *Bourbon* ended his Hopes with his Life in *July*, 1594. and the King of *France*, from several Inducements, propos'd to make War with *Spain*; but approaching the Frontiers, the Severity of the Winter oblig'd him to return back to *Paris*, where a Design was form'd to put an End to his Life, and accordingly on the very Day that he arriv'd, which was *December* 27, as he stepp'd forward to embrace *Montigni*, one *John Chastel*, a young Fellow, struck him on the Lip with a Knife, and broke one of his Teeth; *Chastel* was seiz'd, and own'd, that he was so loaden with unpardonable Sins, that he thought it impossible to avoid the Torments of Hell, but thought they might be mitigated by his making Expiation by this meritorious Act as he suppos'd it, because the King not being perfectly reconcil'd to the Church, he could be nothing but a Tyrant; and this Opinion was first propagated by the Jesuits, who behind the Curtain were in the *Spanish* Interest; but that being discover'd, a Decree was made to punish *Chastel* as a Parricide, and to banish all the *Jesuits* out of the Kingdom in fifteen Days, which was accordingly executed.

THIS did not put a stop to *Henry*'s Expedition against *Spain*, but in the mean time *Velasco*, Constable of *Castile*, made a Descent into *Franche Comté* in *April*, with 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horse; King *Henry* went thither in Person with but a few Troops, depending upon the Forces of *Bouillon*, St. *Paul*, and *Villars*, to secure the Frontiers of *Picardy*, and gave the Command of these Forces to the Duke of *Nevers*, and made the Prince of *Conti* chief of the Council at *Paris*, at which *Soissons* was so disgusted, that the Army was divided into Factions, and did but little Execution.

THE Constable of *Castile* having drove the *Loraners* from their Possessions in *Franche Comte*, and forc'd *Vesoul* to capitulate in *Vesoul*, and attempting afterwards to build over the

Soame

Soame at *Gray*, to facilitate their Paſſage into *Burgundy*; the King and *Biron* advanced to retard that Undertaking, and being at *Fontane Francois*, he diſcover'd the Enemies whole Army coming from the *Seine*, and at the ſame Time found himſelf charg'd with *Maine's French* Troops; and *Biron* being repuls'd, the King nevertheleſs ſtood it out with about two hundred Horſe only, and making ſeveral brave Charges, drove four or five Squadrons of them back almoſt to *Maine*'s Army, who on his Part ſent thrice, and at laſt went himſelf to intreat the Conſtable to march; but he not ſtirring, anſwer'd he knew what he had to do. This brave Action of the King mightily advanc'd his Reputation, and drew the *French* quite off from the *Spaniſh* Intereſt; for *Maine* had retired upon an Aſſurance of the King's Favour to *Chalons*, and began to offer Terms of Peace.

When King *Henry* had ſettled the Affairs of *Burgundy*, he enter'd *French Compté* to fight the Conſtable of *Caſtile*, and to recover that Province; but the *Swiſs Cantons* interpoſing againſt him, his Army being very much harraſs'd, he took his Journey to *Lyons*, to treat with the Duke of *Savoy*, and if poſſible to ſettle the Affairs of *Provence* and *Dauphine*, and ſeveral Places made their Submiſſion to him, on account of his having now imbrac'd the *Roman Catholick* Religion, who had revolted from him before, on Account of his being a *Proteſtant*.

But in the midſt of King *Henry*'s Succeſs in one part of *France*, the *Spaniards* made bloody Work in another, to wit, in *Picardy*, where *Dariullers* took upon him the Command of the *French* Forces, and call'd *Humieres* to his Aſſiſtance. *Humieres* bravely charging the *Spaniards*, he was ſlain. The Parliament were ſo incens'd againſt *Aumale* for the Loſs of *Humieres*, that they made a Decree, pronouncing *Aumale* guilty of High-Treaſon, and the Parricide of *Henry* III. The *Spaniards* went on now with Succeſs againſt the *French*; the *Mareſchal* having the worſt, retreated, and the Admiral who ſtaid to make another Charge was taken Priſoner, kill'd in cold Blood, and all his Foot Forces cut to Pieces.

The *Spaniards* took other Places, and march'd towards *Cambray* as if they would take that; at which the King was very much caſt down; but it was ſome Conſolation to him, that he was inform'd his Affairs went on ſucceſsfully at *Rome*; and chuſing to drive the Nail that would go, he in this proper Conjuncture apply'd by his Deputies to the Pope, about the Terms of Abſolution, and if granted to receive it in his Name; the Perſons pitch'd upon, were *Perron* and *d'Oſſat*. This Deſign of the King's ſending to the Pope upon this Occaſion, ſoon reach'd the Pope's Ear; but the Multiplicity of Affairs in the King's Council, retarded *Perron*'s Journey ſome Months, which the *Spaniſh* Faction made a Handle of, to make the Pope believe that the King only made a Scoff of him, by which means when *Perron* and *d'Oſſat* arriv'd at *Rome*, it was with much Difficulty that they were admitted to an Audience, but that being obtain'd, the Conſiſtory were for allowing the King *Abſolution*, but it was upon Condition that the King would ſubmit both himſelf and his Kingdom to the Pope; but the Matter was compounded, and when the Articles were agreed upon, the Pope appointed a Day to declare publick Abſolution to the King, which was accordingly done on a Scaffold, at the Porch of St. *Peter*'s Church at *Rome*; and as ſoon as the News reach'd the King, he order'd publick Thanks all the Kingdom over, and ſent to the Parliament to take off the Prohibition he had made of ſending to *Rome*.

In the mean Time the *Spaniards* laid Siege to *Cambray*, whoſe Governor *Balagny* having uſed the Inhabitants with barbarous Severities, they were reſolv'd to take this opportunity to ſhake off the Yoke, and ſo ſent Guns, Money, Ammunition and Proviſion to the Beſiegers; and then it is an eaſy Matter to gueſs what a cool Defence the Beſieged would make, and accordingly upon the firſt Breach the Town ſurrendered, without ſo much as conſulting *Balagny* the Governor. *Cambray* taken.

The Duke of *Maine* having proteſted never to be reconcil'd to the King, ſo long as he was without the Pales of the Church, (as they deem all Proteſtants,) was now upon his Abſolution very willing to own him for his Sovereign: And accordingly *Maine* made his Peace with the King, and now the King growing more powerful, *Marſeilles* ſurrender'd to him; after which the Duke of *Guiſe* beat *Eſpernon*, and brought him to Terms; the Duke firſt accepted of a Truce, and then preſcrib'd Conditions, to which *Eſpernon* agreed. 1596

In the mean Time the *Spaniards* had an Eye upon *Calais*, upon which they fell ſuddenly, it being weakened by it's having been inveſted before by *Rhoſne*; the firſt Thing they did, was to force the Suburbs of *Courquet*; and then having made a Breach in the Rampart, the Beſieged capitulated to ſurrender the Town in eight Days, and the Citadel in ſix more, if they were not reliev'd in that Time, which by Reaſon of the high and contrary Winds was then impracticable. King *Henry* depended much upon *Elizabeth* Queen of *England* for Relief, but ſhe was quite out of Conceit with him, for relinquiſhing the *Proteſtant* Religion, and inſtead of ſending him help to relieve *Calais*, ſhe demanded *Calais* for her ſelf.

King *Henry* endeavour'd to unite all the *Proteſtant* Powers in Alliance with him in one League againſt the Houſe of *Auſtria*; but by Reaſon of the Diſcontent of the *Hugonots*, the *German* Princes excuſed themſelves, except the Count *Palatine* and Duke of *Wirtemburg*; but at length the Queen of *England* came in with *France*, obliging themſelves mutually to aſſiſt each other with 4000 Men in either's Country if attack'd, and that they ſhould make no Peace or Truce with the *Spaniards*, but by joint Conſent: The *Dutch* alſo came into it, and oblig'd themſelves to bring ten thouſand Foot, and fifteen hundred Horſe, upon Occaſion, to the Frontiers of *Picardy*.

At this Time *Tello*, Governor of *Dourlens*, form'd a ſtrange Deſign or Stratagem to ſurprize *Amiens*, in order to which, on the 10th of *March* in the Forenoon, when the People were at Church, ſixteen Soldiers in Country Habits entered the Gate of *Montrefat*, ſome carrying Nuts, others Apples, &c. while ſome of the reſt drove a Cart of Straw: One of the Firſt let fall a Bag of Nuts, and at the ſame Time the Cart advanc'd upon the Bridge of the ſecond Gate, and there ſtopp'd to hinder the Port-Cullis from Barring up the Way. The Signal being given by the Firing of a Piſtol, theſe Soldiers briskly charg'd the Court of Guards, upon which a Body of 200 Foot conceal'd in a Chapel, and after theſe another body of a Thouſand more, and after them a Body of Horſe that waited about a Quarter of a League from thence, advanc'd to ſecond the Foot, and ſoon took the City without much Reſiſtance. 1597 The *Spaniards* ſurprize *Amiens* by Stratagem

The King, ſtruck with Conſternation at the Loſs of *Amiens*, in ſuch a ſurprizing Manner,

forthwith ſent *Biron* to inveſt it with four thouſand Horſe. From near the Concluſion of *March*, *Biron* was ſcouring the Country round towards *Dourlens*, to prevent the *Spaniards* conveying Ammunition or Proviſion to *Amiens*. *Biron* maintain'd the Siege, and Queen *Elizabeth* ſent *Henry* 4000 Men according to Agreement. There were but five hundred Garriſon Soldiers in the Town, but having ſixty Cannon mounted, they ſo bravely defended themſelves, that it was three Months before the Beſiegers got to the Ditch; however *Tzilo* was ſo much ſtraitned, that he ſent to deſire the Arch-Duke to come to his Relief.

The Arch-Duke accordingly drew up 18000 Foot, and 4000 Horſe; but before he arriv'd *Tzilo* was ſlain with a Muſquet Ball, and the Marquis of *Montenegro* was made Governor in his room; and upon the Approach of the *French* the Beſieged capitulated to ſurrender in ſix Days, if not reliev'd in that Time, and it was ſurrender'd accordingly, and ſo return'd to the Poſſeſſion of its firſt Owners the *French*; the King taking care to re-people it, and re-eſtabliſh them in all their Privileges.

Edict of *Nantes*

While the King was at *Nantes*, he granted to the *Hugonots* the Edict, call'd therefore the Edict of *Nantes*: It contain'd ninety-two Articles, by which they were allow'd to be Officers of Judicature and of the Finances; there were alſo ſifty-ſix more added, call'd ſecret Articles, in the moſt Important of which they had ſeveral Places of Security left them beſides what they already held, but it was not confirm'd in the Parliament of *Paris* till ſome time afterwards.

Biron conſpires againſt the King.

By this Time *Biron*, who had reign'd a long time in Power, was not able to bear any Equal or Rival, and began rather to command than petition the King for any Favour he wanted, and to expreſs a Reſentment rather than a bare Diſappointment if deny'd, as in the two following evident Inſtances: The firſt was, becauſe he had not the ſole and abſolute Command of the War, but had *Leſdiguieres* as a Partner or Equal in Command, or indeed rather above him, though he was a *Hugonot*, and no Friend of *Biron's*; the other was, becauſe the King refuſed the Government of the Citadel of *Bourg* to a Friend of his at his Requeſt. It may eaſily be learn'd from the Sequel, what will be the Effect of unlimited Ambition if not curb'd in time: *Biron*, in Revenge for theſe Diſappointments, conceiv'd an Enterprize againſt the King's Perſon; but was aſham'd, or rather afraid to put it in Execution: But not reſting here, he ſet other Engines to work, and for the Management of this, he engag'd with the Duke of *Savoy* and *Fuentes*, but *Laſin* was a main Agent; their Agreement was to weaken the Kingdom, by dividing it into many Sovereignties, and to ſhelter all of them under the Protection of *Spain*, and they went ſo far as to divide them too among themſelves: Thus *Savoy's* Share was to be the *Lionnois*, *Dauphine*, and *Provence*, and *Biron* was to have the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, &c. But this Project came to the King's Ear, who call'd *Biron* to an Account, and he generouſly own'd he had ſome ſuch thoughts, but promis'd never to attempt to put them in Execution, whereupon the King pardon'd him, and promiſed him great Tokens of his Affection.

K. *Henry* married

The King was married to *Mary de Medicis* at *Lyons*, *Dec.* 18, 1600.

But notwithſtanding *Biron's* Cunning and Diſſimulation, his Villany in proceſs of Time diſcover'd itſelf; for the King, jealous of the Intrigues of the *Spaniards*, and of *Biron's* Honeſty, order'd *Laſin* to be brought before him, as gueſſing him to be in the Plot, and privy to the Secret. We ſhould have told you before, that *Biron* with his own Hand had drawn up a Scheme of the Conſpiracy, and given it to *Laſin* to copy in his Preſence; which being done, *Biron* wrap'd up the Original in a rough Manner like a Ball, and threw it in the Fire, turning his Foot without minding any more what become of it; but it not immediately taking Fire, *Laſin* ſnatch'd it up and ſecur'd it unknown to *Biron*.

Whether *Biron* found ſome Reaſon to be Jealous of *Laſin* is not certain, but he endeavoured to diſſuade him from going to Court; but finding that would not do, he requir'd him to burn all his Papers before he went; but neither did he regard that, but went and diſcover'd all to the King, and gave him all his Papers of the whole Scheme, with the Names of the Conſpirators, *&c.* But there being many Perſons of the higheſt Rank engaged, the King did not think fit to take notice of any Thing he had found, any further than it related to *Biron*, at leaſt for the preſent. A Noble Lord, a Friend of *Biron's*, ſeeing what Clouds hung over his Head, adviſed him to make off into *Franche Comte*, he being no longer ſafe in *Burgundy*; but being obſtinate, or whether it may be ſaid that divine Providence hurry'd him to his Fate, however he went *Fontainbleau*: His Siſter, the Counteſs of *Rouſſy*, adviſed him to make his Eſcape, but in vain; he continu'd obſtinate; he was therefore ſeized and examin'd before the King, with ſolemn Promiſes of Pardon, if he would diſcover the Truth, but all to no purpoſe. The King therefore reſolv'd to abandon him to Juſtice, and accordingly he was ſent next Day to *Paris*, and the Parliament order'd to proſecute him, and he was accordingly declar'd Guilty of High-Treaſon, and on the 31*ſt* of *July*, 1602. he was beheaded. The *Baron* of *Fontenelles*, and *Montbarot* Governor of *Rennes*, were apprehended as Confederate with *Biron*; the firſt was broke alive upon the Wheel, and ſeveral others ſuffer'd upon this Occaſion.

Biron executed

Elizabeth, Queen of *England*, dy'd *March* 24, 1602. and was ſucceeded by *James* VI. of *Scotland*, but the firſt of *England*, whereupon King *Henry* diſpatch'd *Rhoſny*, a *Proteſtant*, as Ambaſſador to King *James*, to aſſure of that Prince the Continuation of his Friendſhip; and another Deſign was to ſound King *James's* Temper with reſpect to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, and to ſecure an Alliance with him and his two Kingdoms of *England* and *Scotland*, and to confirm and continue the Alliance made between the late Queen *Elizabeth* and him, in which among other things, it was agreed that if *Spain* ſhould attack either *England* or *France*, the other Party ſhould aſſiſt with Forces, to the Number of 6000 Men, by Sea or Land, as the Party aſſaulted ſhould think proper, and that if they were both attack'd, they ſhould make a joint Defence.

The preſent eaſy Poſture of Affairs in *France*, gave the King an Opportunity to employ his Thoughts for the good of Trade, and the Circulation and Improvement of Money; and not being powerful enough at Sea, he ſet up divers Manufactures, as Tapeſtry, gilt Leather, Hangings, Glaſs, *&c.* but above all, he was intent upon the Silken Manufacture, ſending to *Spain* for the Eggs, and planting plenty of Mulberry Trees, whoſe Leaves ſerve the Silk-worms for Food.

Henrietta *Charlotte*, Daughter to the Conſtable of *Montmorency*, came to Court, and the

King;

King upon ſight of her, was ſo captivated with her Charms, that he put his Wits to work to have the Enjoyment of her, which he thought might be done more ſafely, by firſt marrying her to the Prince of *Conde*, to which, both *Conde* and ſhe agreed; but when the King made further Attempts upon her, ſhe repulſed him with the utmoſt Indignation, and acquainting the Prince her Husband with it, they fled to *Bruſſels*. The King enraged at his being thus both diſappointed and expos'd, ſent to the Arch-Duke to ſurrender them up, but he refuſed; the King therefore ſent again the ſame Meſſage, and to no purpoſe; whereupon he reſolv'd to ſteal her away; but ſhe was ſo well belov'd and ſo carefully guarded, that he found this alſo impracticable.

The King, after this Time of Peace, began to think himſelf a Match for the Houſe of *Auſtria*, he now having 30,000 Foot, and 6000 Horſe, all marching towards *Compeigne*; *Leſdeguieres*, a Mareſchal of *France*, had 12000 Foot and 2000 Horſe, and the Duke of *Savoy* and the *Venetians* were to join him with 30,000 more; the Princes of *Germany* had not much leſs, and the United Provinces had 16000, beſides their naval Force, and all in the *French* King's Pay; ſo that it was computed that this War would coſt the King 12,5000 Crowns a Month. While theſe Preparations were making, one *Ann Comans* gave out that there was a horrid Conſpiracy carrying on againſt the King, but ſhe was look'd upon as a Mad-woman and confin'd; however there were ſo many Deſigns againſt him, that it was next to impoſſible that he ſhould eſcape, and his Death was ſo much expected, that it was currently reported in Foreign Countries before it was Fact.

The King himſelf was at the ſame Time overwhelm'd with Melancholy and dreadful Conceits, for which he could aſſign no real Reaſon, but ſtill concluded them to be Preſages of his approaching Deſtiny; and to this we may add another Thing that was deem'd ominous, which was that the *May* Greens or Flowers that had been planted in the Court-yard of the *Louvre*, fell down and dy'd of themſelves. In 1608 a Comet appear'd, and in 1609 a Star appear'd at Noon Day; the *Loire* overflow'd exceſſively, as it had done before the Death of the two preceding *Henries*; and if what follows do not ſmell too ſtrong of Superſtition, I may add that the Inhabitants of *Angoulmois* ſaw an Army of 8 or 10000 Men, with a Commander at the Head, which made a grand Appearance, who having march'd a League or more upon the Earth, were loſt and vaniſh'd in a Wood. It was alſo reported that two Years before that, there was a Note found upon the Altar, intimating the King ſhould be aſſaſſinated; and this I ſhould readily believe, it being very conſiſtent with the Cruelty, as well as the Prieſtcraft of the *Jeſuits*, to invent and put in execution ſuch a piece of Barbarity.

But to leave off theſe Omens, and to come to Fact, this Scheme for Aſſaſſinating the King had been form'd a long Time before, by *Francis Ravaillac*. He was a whimſical Solicitor, and ſo prejudic'd againſt the *Hugonots*, that he could not hear the Name mention'd without being enrag'd; he was very oddly encouraged by the bigotted Popiſh Clergy to perpetrate this Villany, and at laſt went to *Paris* for that purpoſe, which was thus executed. It was appointed that the Day after the Queen's Entry, the King ſhould ſolemnize the Marriage of *Madamoiſelle de Vendoſme*, and next Day the Feaſt, and that next Morning he would go to the Army; but on the Evening of the Day of Entry, going to the *Arſenal* without Guards, the great Number of Carts block'd up the Road, that he could not get along; whether this was done for the purpoſe is not certain, but the Villain took this Opportunity to ſtep upon one of the Spokes of the hind Wheel of his Coach, and gave him two Stabs in the Breaſt, by the laſt of which he cut the arterial Vein above the Ventricle of the Heart, whereof he dy'd in a Moment. This Tragical Action occaſion'd ſuch a Conſternation, that on one Side *Ravaillac* had not power or preſence of Mind to drop his Knife, nor on the other Hand, had the People Courage immediately to ſeize him, though he was at laſt taken, but ſo little confin'd, that any Body might ſpeak to him.

The Gentlemen that were in the Coach with him ſent for a Surgeon and ſome Wine, to make it be believ'd that he was not dead; but afterwards, he was publickly, and even indecently, expos'd to any that would ſee him; he dy'd in the fifty-ſeventh Year of his Age, and the twenty-ſecond of his Reign, leaving three Sons; the eldeſt, named *Lewis*, ſucceeded him; the Second died before he was four Years Old; and the Third was *John Baptiſta Gaſton*, Duke of *Orleans*. There were alſo three Daughters; *Elizabeth* married to *Philip* IV. of *Spain*; *Chriſtiana* married to *Victor Amadeus*, Duke of *Savoy*, and *Henrietta Maria*, married to *Charles* I. King of *England*; theſe ſix by his Wife *Mary de Medices*.

Whatever other Failings he might be guilty of, it is obſerv'd that there were two Excellencies ſo juſtly poiz'd in him, that it was hard to determine whether he conquer'd by the Power of Fighting or the Clemency of Pardoning.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

The Reign of Lewis *the Thirteenth.*

LEWIS XIII. was the eldeſt Son of *Henry* IV. and *Mary de Medicis*, who, by the Conſent of both the Parliament and the young King himſelf, was choſe Regent that very Day the King was ſlain. The firſt three Things the Queen Regent propoſed, were, Firſt, the Security of the Kingdom: Second, the Puniſhment of the Aſſaſſin: Thirdly, the Funeral Obſequies of the King, her deceas'd Husband: And accordingly the firſt Act of State was the Reviving the Edict of *Nantes*, for the Encouragement of the *Proteſtants*, and to attach them more firmly to the Intereſt of the Crown.

Ravaillac executed. 1611

THE next was the Affair of *Ravaillac*, and his Puniſhment for his bold and barbarous Murder. He had firſt his Hand piere'd with the Knife, with which he perpetrated the Murder, and then the Places ſo piere'd were burnt with Fire of Sulphur publickly upon the Stage; in the next Place, he had Buskins of boiling Oil apply'd to him, and boiling Lead pour'd into Holes made in his Breaſt, Thighs, and Legs; and laſtly, his Body was torn to pieces by Horſes; and as an additional Puniſhment to his Family, his Father and Mother were order'd to depart the Kingdom, within fifteen Days after the Publication, or after the Execution of the Sentence, and never to return, and all the reſt of the Family were forbid ever to bear the Name of *Ravaillac*, upon pain of Death.

THERE need not be much ſaid upon the Funeral Obſequies of King *Henry*, only that they were perform'd with the utmoſt Pomp, &c. but before he was interr'd, a Debate aroſe in Council, about the Charge of maintaining the Armies he had raiſed, which they thought was needleſs, becauſe it was not now thought a proper Time to give any Umbrage to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. The King of *Spain* propos'd a double Marriage with *France*, viz. the Infanta to the Dauphin, and the Prince of *Spain* to the eldeſt Daughter of *France*; upon which the Council of *France* were for diſbanding thoſe of their Troops, that might give any Umbrage to *Spain*, and reſume the Negotiation of the two Marriages, in order to make a firm Alliance; but one of them ſaid, *Shall we make the World believe that we ſtand in awe of* Spain; *let us keep our Army at leaſt till the Return of the Prince of* Conde, *and till we have certain Information of the Diſpoſition of the Court of* Spain, *and till the King and Queen Regent be well eſtabliſh'd*, which laſt Advice was approv'd.

IN the mean Time the Prince of *Conde* returned from *Milan* to *Bruſſels*, and went from thence into *France*, where a ſtrong Party appeared for him, and the Duke of *Bouillon* would, for the further ſtrengthening it, have perſuaded him to embrace the *Proteſtant* Religion; but finding his Efforts unſucceſsful, the Duke was willing to undertake to manage the Prince, if the other would treat with *Soiſſons*, who at laſt conſenting, the Queen, to whom he had communicated the Accommodation propos'd, ſeem'd to be well ſatisfy'd with it; but that was only underhand, for ſhe knew that if the two Princes of the Blood, the Conſtable of *Montmorancy*, the Dukes of *Guiſe* and *Epernon*, the *Mareſchal de Bouillon*, and the Cardinal of *Joyeuſe*, were once agreed, it would ſhock her Authority. *Bouillon*'s Religion not permitting him to attend at the King's Coronation, he reſolv'd to retire to *Sedan*; but reſolv'd likewiſe to keep a powerful Friend near the Queen Regent, and pitch'd upon *Cochini*, a Confident of her's, to anſwer that purpoſe.

COCHINI being now firſt Gentleman of the Chamber, had a Diſpute with *Bellegarde*, Grand Eſquire, about Precedency at the King's publick Entry into *Paris*, after his Return from Inauguration; whereupon *Eſpernon*, a Kinſman of *Bellegarde*'s, declar'd againſt *Cochini*, and their Quarrel continuing, *Soiſſons* notwithſtanding his having previouſly engaged himſelf in the Intereſt of *Cochini*, reviv'd his Friendſhip with *Bellegarde*, and eſpouſed his Cauſe and Intereſt; but theſe Matters were ſoon made up again, and *Cochini* promiſ'd to do every thing that *Soiſſons* had deſired of him. 1616

THE Queen Regent of *France*, began now to be deſirous of having her ſecond Daughter *Chriſtina* married to the brave *Henry* Prince of *Wales*, which the *Engliſh* Ambaſſador ſoon gave King *James* to underſtand, who thereupon order'd the Lord *Rocheſter* to acquaint the Prince with it, who was then at *Richmond*; but the Prince having got Notice that the Lady was not yet nine years Old, and that her Eldeſt Siſter's Portion was but 500,000 Crowns of Gold, the Match came to nothing.

THE Prince of *Conde*, who was already powerful on the other ſide of the *Marn*, was making preparations to paſs the *Loire* alſo, and to advance towards *Poictou* and *Guienne*, where *Roan* and *Soubize* intended to join him with their Forces: The Prince immediately march'd towards *Paris*, with about five thouſand Foot, and half that Number of Horſe, and rendezvous'd at *Noyon* in *Picardy*: The *Pariſians* were much affrighted at the Prince's March, being afraid he was coming to attack *Paris*. At *Mori* upon the *Seine*, the Prince put forth a Declaration, contrary to that given by the King at *Poictiers*, and that iſſued out at *Paris* by the Parliament; he wholly juſtified himſelf, and charg'd all the Cauſe of his taking up Arms, upon his Enemies and the Court. 1616

WHEN the Prince with his Army had paſs'd the *Seine*, they advanc'd towards *Sens*, which the Prince deſign'd to have ſurpriz'd; but he was ſtrangely diſappointed, and his Meaſures broke; for *Piney Luxembourg* having join'd the Prince with three hundred Horſe, refuſed to accept of the Quarters aſſign'd him by *Bouillon*, who was chief Commander, next to the Prince himſelf: *Bois Dauphin* took the Advantage of this Difference, and took him and all his Men Priſoners, and might, doubtleſs with Succeſs, have fought the Prince and his Army, but was too faint-hearted; which the Prince and *Bouillon* ſeeing, made the beſt of their Way over the *Loire*, where being join'd by *Count Germains*, they march'd with all poſſible Speed to the Frontiers of *Tourayne* and *Poitou*.

THERE having been a double Marriage agreed upon between the Courts of *France* and *Spain*, one between the Princeſs *Elizabeth* and the Prin-

Prince of *Spain*, the other between the Infanta of *Spain* and a Prince of *France*; the Celebration of both, was appointed to be on one Day, *viz. October* 18; one at *Bourdeaux* in *Guienne*, and the other at *Burgos* in *Caſtile*; but their Mirth was damp'd by the Motions of the Prince of *Conde*'s Army, though they were but in a poor Condition; and what ſtill added to their Concern, was, that *Soubize* the great *Roan*'s Brother, as well as *Roan* himſelf, had declar'd for the Prince of *Conde*, as did the Duke of *Sully*, and the Town of *Rochel*; and ſo ſincere were the Reform'd to the Prince's Intereſt, that they mov'd to have a Treaty of Union between themſelves and him, which was made and ſolicited by the Duke of *Roan*: And this Treaty was concluded at the Camp at *Sauzai* in *Poictou*, *Nov.* 27, 1615. Amongſt others, were theſe Articles, *viz.* To endeavour jointly the Safety of the King's Perſon and Authority: To oppoſe the Publiſhing the Council of *Trent*: To prevent the Miſchievous Conſequences of the double Marriage with *Spain*: To inſiſt upon the Eſtabliſhment of a good Council: To adviſe his Majeſty to procure an exact Obſervance of the Edict of *Nantes*; and To inſiſt upon it, that the Reform'd might be maintain'd in the Poſſeſſion of all the Rights and Privileges granted them by the late King, *&c.* and that both Parties ſhould ſtand inſeparably united, and never make any Treaty of Peace without the mutual Conſent of each other.

1615.

The Queen Mother ſeeing *Conde*'s Intereſt flouriſh at this Rate, ſhe ſet her Engines to Work, to ſee if ſhe could make a Diviſion between the Prince and his Party, but in vain. In the mean Time King *James* I. of *England* offer'd his Mediation for adjuſting thoſe Differences, fearing they would otherwiſe break out into a Civil War. Both Parties (both the King and *Conde*) were diſpos'd for an Accommodation, and on the firſt Day of the Year, King *Lewis* ſent to *Conde*, that both he and the Queen his Mother, were both inclin'd to reform the Council, *&c.* according to the Tenor of the above-mention'd Articles. The Prince acquainted the Aſſembly at *Niſmes* with the Steps they took, and they agreed to preſent ſome Articles to the King, in the Name of the Prince and themſelves; which was accordingly done, and the King gave leave for the Prince and the Deputies of the Aſſembly to have a Place of Conference nearer the Court, and that the *Engliſh* Ambaſſador ſhould be allow'd to be preſent to take Cognizance of whatever Debates might happen.

London was the Place, and the Tenth of *February* the Time appointed for opening the Conference; the Deputies of *Niſmes* being to be admitted. *Conde* promiſed that as ſoon as the Conference was open'd, he would convince *France*, that he had no other Deſign but the Good of his Country; *Conde* preſented 30 Articles, ſome of which paſs'd without, and ſome with Amendments, and ſome were rejected or poſtpon'd; his firſt Article was, that an exact and ſpeedy Enquiry ſhould be made after thoſe who had been any way concern'd in the Murder of the late King, with ſeveral other Articles of the Treaty, which was ſign'd by both Parties and confirm'd by King *Lewis*, adding alſo a general Pardon for all what was paſt ſince the Prince of *Conde* had taken up Arms. Things being thus ſettled, *Conde* went to his Government of *Berry*; *Longueville* retired Home; *Roan* and *Sully* went to *Rochel*, and *Mayenne* and *Boullon* went to Court.

Conde's Articles.

Treaty ſign'd

The Queen Mother now began to contrive to gain *Conde* to her Intereſt, for which Purpoſe ſhe ſent *Richlieu*, Biſhop of *Luſſon*, twice to him: and *Conde* finding the Queen was ſo importunate, began to make his own Terms, and the Queen and *Conchini* agreed that he ſhould have the ſole Share in the Government, excluſive of all the Lords of his Party, and that he ſhould likewiſe be Head of the Council, or firſt Lord of the Treaſury, *&c.* Theſe Terms agreed upon, *Conde* went to Court, arriving at *Paris* the 20*th* of *June*, and was graciouſly receiv'd by both King and Queen.

Conde goes to Court.

Conde had not been long at Court, till the Dukes of *Guiſe* and *Mayenne*, with the *Mareſchal de Boüillon* (outwardly at leaſt) endeavour'd to draw *Conde* in, to conſpire the Ruin of *Conchini*; and after different Methods propos'd, the Prince thought the beſt Expedient would be to get the Queen turn'd out from the Head of Affairs, not doubting but *Conchini* would ſoon be expelled of Courſe. About this time the Lord *Haye* being come as Ambaſſador extraordinary from *England* to *France*, *Conde*, reſolv'd amongſt the reſt, to give him a Treat; and whether deſign'd or accidentally, *Conchini* made a viſit to *Conde* the ſame Day; and when *Conchini*'s Enemies heard it, they propoſed to murder him directly; but he being under *Conde*'s Roof, no Violence was allow'd to be uſed at that Time, and ſoon after he ſent the *Mareſchal Conchini* an Account of what was deſign'd againſt him; whereupon he retir'd to *Caen* in *Normandy*, but was ſo ungrateful as afterwards to ſignify to the Prince himſelf, that he was ſtill in a Capacity not only to withſtand all their Power, but if he ſet himſelf about it to overthrow all their Projects.

The Queen began to obſerve this Deſign to ſap her Foundation, and overturn her Authority, which ſhe already perceiv'd to ſink and decline, and that *Conde*'s Intereſt increas'd daily ſince *Conchini* had withdrawn from Court; of which the Duke of *Sully* gave her undeniable Intimation; whereupon ſhe procured *Conde* to be arreſted and impriſon'd; and being afraid that it would create great Diſturbance, ſhe took all poſſible precaution to prevent it.

On the other Hand, the diſcontented Lords were taking Meaſures for raiſing a powerful Army, which it was at laſt agreed ſhould rendezvous at *Noyon*; and the King, ſuppoſing that he ſhould be call'd to an Account for arreſting the firſt Prince of the Blood, reſolv'd that it was not conſiſtent with the Majeſty of a Sovereign, to anſwer any otherwiſe than by a Publick and ſolemn Declaration.

But not to dwell too long upon Particulars, let us return to *Conchini*, whom the King had conſented ſhould be aſſaſſinated, which was effected thus: He being come in the Morning of *April* 24, to the *Louvre*, the great Gate was open'd to him, but immediately ſhut after him; a Man plac'd upon the Gate for that purpoſe, gave three Flouriſhes with his Hat upon his Entrance, which was a Signal to *Vitri*, the chief Aſſaſſin, that he was enter'd. *Vitri* not knowing him perfectly, enquir'd in the Croud for him, and was anſwer'd, *There he is reading a Letter*, at the ſame Time pointing to him. Then ſeizing him by the right Arm, he ſaid, *I arreſt you Sir, by the King's Order*, and holding him by the Arm, beckon'd to *du Hallier*, *Perſan*, and others that were appointed to be the Murderers, who diſcharging their Piſtols cloſe at him, he dropp'd down dead upon the Ground, and as if that was not enough, they run him through with their Swords, kick'd him with their Feet, and expos'd him, by laying him at full Length upon the Ground, and then, as if they had done ſome great Exploit, cry'd, *God ſave the King*.

Conchini murdered.

When *Conchini* was thus diſpatch'd, the King ſaid to *Vitri*, *Now I am a King, I thank you.* But their Cruelty was not yet over with *Conchini*, for they hang'd his dead Body on a Gallows, pluck'd out his Eyes, cut off his Noſe, Ears, Privities, and then his Head and Arms, and then the Mob divided themſelves into ſeveral Bands, and every one dragg'd ſome part of his Body through the Streets; one took his Heart and broil'd it upon burning Coals, and eat it dipped in Vinegar; and when they had ſeemed to have had their Satisfaction, they burnt the reſt of the Body, and ſome out of a curious Revenge bought the Aſhes at ſo much per Ounce.

While the dreadful Murder was executing, the Queen Mother being ſurprized at hearing the Piſtols diſcharg'd, bid one of her Maids of Honour enquire what was the Matter; and a Captain of the Guards walking in the Court, ſhe enquir'd of him; but *Vitri* hearing her, he anſwered without any Concern, *Conchini is kill'd:* The Queen ask'd who was his Murderer. *My ſelf*, anſwered *Vitri*, void of Concern as before. The Maid returning the Anſwer to the Queen, ſhe ſeem'd concerned even to Diſtraction, but coming to herſelf, ſhe ſent to the King to deſire leave to come to ſee him; but he repuls'd her, and would not give her any Encouragement or Admittance, though ſhe contriv'd many Ways for it, but in vain; and when ſhe was thus in Diſgrace, *Vitri* diſarmed her Guards, and ſucceeded *Conchini* as Mareſchal of *France*.

But this did not do *Conde* any Service as to his Liberty; nor did he receive any Advantage by either the Death of *Conchini*, or the Diſgrace of the Queen; only his Confinement was leſs ſevere, and his Priſon was allow'd to be in the Priſon with him, and they were at laſt remov'd from the *Baſtile* to the *Tower* of *Vincennes*, where we leave them and return to the Affair of the King and Queen Mother.

The Q Eſcape.

The Queen being now confin'd, ſhe began to meditate an Eſcape, and the Duke of *Eſpernon* being at *Metz*, he ſent a Letter to the King not to take it ill, that he was going to his Government of *Angoulmois* and *Santoigne*, where being arriv'd, he was very uneaſy that he could hear no News from the Queen Mother; therefore he diſpatch'd *du Pleſſis* to *Blois*, to know how it far'd with her; and withal he ordered him to go by way of *Loches*, to bid *la Hiere*, who commanded there, to put every Thing in good order for a Reception upon occaſion. Some Lords, to whom the Queen had communicated her Deſign of Eſcaping, diſſuaded her very much from putting herſelf in the Power of ſuch a haughty Man as *Eſpernon*; but this was already determin'd, and *du Pleſſis* diſpos'd the Count of *Brienne*, her Maſter of the Horſe, to contribute to her Eſcape; he ſent to the Archbiſhop of *Thoulouſe*, who was advanc'd as far as *Loches* with the Duke his Father, to deſire him to come to *Montrichard*, that the Road might be ſecured, or at leaſt her Paſſage leſs dangerous.

The Queen, to avoid Diſcovery, got out at a Cloſet Window in the dead of the Night, being accompanied by a Maid, the Count of *Brienne*, and three or four other faſe Confidents. She had the height of two Ladders to deſcend, and when ſhe had got down the firſt, ſhe was ſo affrighted with it, that ſhe durſt not venture upon the Second, but they wrapp'd her up in a Cloak, and carefully convey'd her down, and *Brienne* and *Preſſis* ſupported her in walking beyond the Bridge of *Blois*, where her Coach waited for her, and carried her to *Montrichard*, whence they made all the haſte they could to get betimes to *Loches*; from whence ſhe ſent a Letter to the King, but did not ſtay there to receive an Anſwer, but after two Days Stay went to *Angouleſme*.

Luines adviſed the King forthwith to raiſe an Army, but the Queen being appriſed of it, wrote to the Chancellor and Keeper of the Seals, *&c.* deſiring them to acquaint the King that he would be guilty of the greateſt Error in the World if he march'd at the Head of his Troops, againſt an innocent unfortunate Woman; this mild Anſwer of the Queen, which was made publick, exaſperated the People againſt *Luines*, who put the King upon raiſing an Army againſt his own Mother: Upon this the King order'd the Count of *Bethune* to carry the Queen his Anſwer to her firſt Letter to him, and to aſſure her that he was willing to give her Satisfaction, and that ſhe ſhould have the Liberty of being in ſome other City than that of *Blois*; and furthermore, *Bethune* had private verbal Orders to adviſe and preſs the Queen to ſeparate from *Eſpernon*, and to offer her more advantageous Conditions in Caſe ſhe would abandon him to the King's juſt Reſentments; but ſhe rejected this laſt Article with Indignation, affirming that her Heart was not capable of ſo horrid a piece of Ingratitude.

Bethune made the beſt of this reſolute Anſwer, and did not tell the King the worſt, but adviſed him to deſiſt from his new Levies and warlike Preparations, as it would give the Queen too much Umbrage in a Time of Treaty; but however the King went on with his Preparations, but willing to gain his Mother rather than uſe Violence, he ſent to her by Father *Berulle*, Superior General of the Oratory, who was much eſteem'd for his Prudence and Sweetneſs of Temper; but little good was done that Way, for though ſhe was a Bigot to the Church of *Rome*, yet now in her Diſgrace ſhe was glad to ſue to the *Proteſtants* for Relief.

Notwithstanding the Preparations for War, both on the King and Queen's Part, yet neither Party was eager to go to War, but both willing to come to an Accommodation; and *Richlieu* being allow'd to return to the Queen, and the Pope's Nuncio to be Moderator, at laſt, Articles were agreed upon, and the Queen had liberty to go where ſhe pleas'd, and even to the King's Preſence. The Duke of *Eſpernon*, and others that had ſerv'd her, were to be reſtored to all their Offices, and to the King's Favour; the Queen was diſcharg'd from all the Debts ſhe had contracted ſince her Eſcape from *Blois*, and all her Revenues confirm'd to her, and beſides the Government of *Anjou*, the City and Caſtle of *Angers*, the Bridge of *Ce*, the King gave his Mother alſo the Caſtle of *Chinon* in *Touraine*.

Arti of A con dation

The Accommodation being thus far advanced, the next Thing to be done, was to procure an Interview between the Royal Son and the Mother; and in order to this, the Duke of *Savoy* went to make a Viſit to the Queen Mother at *Angouleſme*, in order to perſuade her to go to the King at *Tours*, who was advanc'd ſo far to receive her; ſhe made many Scruples and Excuſes upon it, but ſhe at laſt left *Angouleſme* on the 29*th* of *Auguſt*, and being attended by ten Coaches and ſix, and 500 Horſe, ſhe was conducted by *Eſpernon*, to the Frontiers of his Government of *Angoulmois*, where all parting, ſhe made him a preſent of a rich Diamond, and deſired him always to wear it as a Teſtimony of the Acknowledgment of a Princeſs who was beholding to him for her Liberty; ſhe was accompanied as far as *Poictiers* by her Ladies of Honour, the Duke of *Montbazon*, the Biſhop of *Lucon*, and other

Perſons

Perſons of Quality, where ſhe was receiv'd by the King's Coaches; and the Cardinal *de Retz*, and *Arnoux* the King's Confeſſor, accompany'd by a great Number of Gentlemen, were adorned to go and meet her; *Luines* alſo went to wait upon her, and ſhe proceeded to the King at *Tours*, where ſhe met with a kind Reception.

As *Conde* had been promiſed his Liberty as ſoon as Matters were accommodated with the Queen, he now impatiently expected it, and *Luines* purſued the ſame Deſign, not for the Reſpect he had for *Conde*, but becauſe he thought he ſhould not be able without the Aſſiſtance of the firſt Prince of the Blood to withſtand the Queen and her Intereſt: Some of the Great ones were diſpoſed to fall in with her againſt *Luines*, and ſome again would have perſuaded her to contribute her Intereſt for the Prince's Liberty; but as ſhe would not adhere to that, *Luines* purſued his Deſign, and at laſt going to *Paris*, carried the Prince a very obliging Letter from the King, who invited him to *Chantilli*, where he ſhould ſee him, and the King receiv'd him very kindly, and ſent a Declaration to the Parliament of *Paris* in his Favour.

But the Queen did not like either this Declaration, or the Prince's Liberty; which the King and *Luines* readily perceived; and that *Eſpernon* and other diſcontented Lords were concerting new Meaſures with the Queen againſt their Intereſt: And they might well be ſtartled, for the general Aſſembly now held at *London* by the King's Authority, ſent Deputies to the Queen to congratulate her upon her Arrival in the Neighbourhood, and to communicate to her the Demands the Reform'd made to the King; ſhe receiv'd them kindly, but told them ſhe did not care to meddle with the Propoſals, becauſe they belong'd to the King and his Council, and that ſhe would not engage in the King's Affairs.

In the mean Time ſhe engaged in a new Affair, for obtaining the Eaſe of the People, and the Reformation of the State, as ſhe call'd it. In this Party or League that ſhe form'd, there were no leſs than the ſecond Prince of the Blood, ſeventeen great Lords, Officers of the Crown, and Governors of Provinces that took her Part. *Longueville* the Grand Prior, and the Count *Torigny*, held all *Normandy*: *Soiſſons* took care of *Perche* and part of *Mayenne*: *Vendoſme* was Maſter of all the Cities upon the *Loire*; *Bos Daphin* held thoſe between the *Satre* and the *Mayenne*; the Queen had *Angers* and *Pont de Ce*; the Dukes of *Tremoville* and *Retz* had all the Places in *Poictou* and *Bretagne*; *Roan* commanded in *St. John de Angeli*; *Eſpernon* in *Angoulmois* and *Saintogne*. The City and Parliament of *Bourdeaux*, and all *Guyenne* were for the Duke of *Mayenne*, and his Intereſt; and in ſhort the Queen Mother had two hundred Leagues of the maritime Provinces of *France*, from *Diepe* to the Mouth of the *Garonne*, beſides a great many other Places within the Land; ſhe had able Generals, brave experienc'd Officers, and Lords very expert in Civil and Military Affairs. They did not pretend to attack any one particular Place, but to march in a Body towards *Paris*, to engage the People to fall in with them, in demanding a Redreſs of Grievances, and indeed the Scheme was ſo far very well concerted.

The Court was very much alarm'd at this Defection of the Coaſt and part of the Country, and the Queen's Succeſs in raiſing Forces for the redreſſing of Grievances; however the King ſent *Monthaſon*, and *Bellegarde*, Archbiſhop of *Sens*, to the Queen at *Angers*, with Propoſals of Peace. The Pope's Nuncio had ſeveral Times offered the good Offices of his Maſter the Pope, for reconciling the King and his Mother, and offered his Service to go himſelf to her; but the Prince of *Conde* not approving of that, he only deſired him to write to her by the Arch-biſhop of *Sens*; but when ſhe once underſtood that the King was reſolv'd upon an Expedition into *Normandy*, all this Talk of a Negotiation was dropp'd, and the Queen betook herſelf to adviſe, as to what was beſt to be done. The Duke of *Roan* adviſed her to go to *Bourdeaux* to the Duke of *Mayenne*, who had with him an Army of 18000 Men, and this, doubtleſs, had been the beſt Way, but the crafty and treacherous *Richlieu* oppos'd it, his Deſign being to betray the Queen without her perceiving it, and to bring all the Lords of her Party over to the King, under a Pretence of his Favour, or that of his *Minion Luines*.

The Reaſon of *Richlieu*'s acting thus, was becauſe he knew that if the Queen went to *Bourdeaux*, ſhe muſt be influenc'd by *Mayenne* and *Eſpernon*, and could not call herſelf Miſtreſs of her own Sentiments without their Concurrence; and therefore for him to diſſuade her from conſulting them, was to give himſelf the better Opportunity of forcing her to a Peace; and *Richlieu* purſued this the cloſer, becauſe *Luines* had promiſed him a Share in his Authority at Court, and that he would demand a Cardinal's Cap for him; and *Richlieu* thought if he once got to be a Cardinal, (the Queen deſirous to have her own Creatures in the Council,) he might come to be a further Favourite, by being uſeful to her, in aſſiſting to promote her Favourites.

The King in the mean Time, bent upon his Expedition to *Normandy*, acquainted the Magiſtrates of *Paris* with his Deſign, and recommended to them the Preſervation of the Peace of his Capital of *Paris*, where the Queen, (the King's Wife,) with the Chancellor, and part of the Council, ſhould be left for the Diſpatch of publick Affairs.

The King was receiv'd at *Roan* with extraordinary Acclamations of Joy, and went next Day to Parliament, where the Keeper of the Seals told him all that had been paſt ſince the Retreat of the Queen Mother to *Angouleſme*, of the Care that had been taken to content her; and the tender Sentiments yet retain'd for her, which done, he acquainted the King, that the Duke of *Longueville*, whom the King had order'd to meet him at his publick Entry into the Province, refuſed it; for which the Duke was immediately ſuſpended from being Governor of *Normandy*, as were ſeveral other Officers from their Places of Profit and Truſt, who had taken part with the Duke.

The Queen Mother, ſtartled at the Progreſs her Son's Arms made towards her, reſolv'd nevertheleſs to ſtand upon her own Defence, and to ſeize *Mens* and other Cities that lay in the King's Way to *Angers*; and in order to that, ſhe took the Field with 6000 Foot, and 1200 Horſe, ſeiz'd the Town of *La Fleche*, and advanc'd towards *Mans*; but ſhe loſt more than ſhe gain'd by this Expedition, and therefore retired immediately to *Angers*.

The King at the ſame Time having receiv'd new Inforcements, *Luines* began to be lifted up, and immediately adviſed the King to publiſh a Declaration againſt the Queen Mother, for taking up Arms againſt him; but ſtill the Blame therein was rather charg'd upon her evil Council, than upon herſelf; and the Grandees of her Party, ſuch as *Soiſſons*, *Vendoſme*, the Grand Prior, *Mayenne*, *Nemours*, *Longueville*, *Roan*, *Tremoville*, *Eſpernon*, *Retz*, *Roannes*, *Bois-Dau-phin*, King's Declaration.

phin, *Candale*, *La Valette*, the Arch-bishop of *Tholouse*, were all declared Rebels, and Guilty of High-Treason, especially if they did not quit their Arms in a Month's Time, and quit all Leagues and Associations, both within and without the Kingdom.

The Queen finding her Son march against her with such a Force, and so much Resolution, advised with her Council, whether she had better wait his coming with the 8000 Foot, and 1500 Horse, she had with her, till she could be further re-inforc'd, or that she should leave some Troops for the Defence of *Angers* and *Pont de Ce*, and go to join *Mayenne* and *Espernon*, who could make up 30,000 Men. This last was certainly the safest Way, and therefore the vile *Richlieu* dissuaded her from it, and in the mean Time took care that there should be neither Powder nor Ball in *Pont de Ce*, and got his Creatures into Place, to command her Troops, and by this means got into such Authority, that it was in his Power to deliver her up if he pleased.

The Queen began now to see what Condition she was in, and not much less than betray'd; she therefore sent to the King to desire to treat with him; but his Grand Preliminary Article was, that although he was willing to pardon the Count and Countess of *Soissons*, yet all the rest should be left to his Mercy; and the King's Troops having by this Time taken *Pont de Ce*, the Queen resolved to pass the *Loire*, and go to throw herself upon *Mayenne* and *Espernon*; which *Richlieu* perceiving, gave immediate Notice to the King's Minion, *Luines*, and he to the King, who dispatch'd a Body of Horse, to prevent the Queen's intended Passage; which when she found nothing but Treaty would then do, she dispatch'd *Bellegarde*, the Cardinal of *Sourdis*, the Archbishop of *Sens*, President *Jeannin*, *Richlieu*, and *Borrulle* to the King. They soon agreed upon Articles, whereby the Treaty of *Angoulesme* was confirm'd; King *Lewis* promised to testify his Mother's Innocence by a Declaration put forth according to Law, and to grant a general Pardon to all that took her Part, provided they return'd to their Duty in eight Days Time after the Accommodation was sign'd; but those whose Places and Employments the King had bestow'd upon others, were excepted, which struck particularly at the Grand Prior. *Richlieu*, by a secret Article, was promised a Cardinal's Cap; he gain'd his Ends, and all this vast Bustle terminated in a bare Interview between the King and Queen, and the Ceremony of *Espernon*, being the first that laid down his Arms.

After this the King besieged *Montauban* his Minion, *Luines* commanding the Army, and the King being present in Person; but he made a sorrowful piece of Work of it, for *Luines* was no Soldier, and tho' he might, like some others, even at this Day, serve well enough to make a Politician at home, yet when he came to be try'd, he made nothing on't; the Duke of *Mayne* was kill'd; *Luines* was despised and reproached for his Conduct, or rather Mis-conduct, and took it to Heart, and after all his Greatness, dy'd unlamented on the 14th of *December*, 1622. 1622.

Cardinal *Richlieu* being now such a Favourite, that he was introduc'd by the Queen into the Council of State, he thought it was his Business to manage every Thing, and amongst the Rest, the Match with *England*, *viz.* between the Prince of *Wales*, and Madam *Henrietta Maria*, which was concluded and agreed upon in the Year 1625.

To pursue *Richlieu* yet further, he was preferr'd by the King of *France* to be Lieutenant General of all the King's Armies in *Poitou*, *Saintogne*, *Angoulmois* and *Aunis*, with a full Power over all other Officers in the Army.

The King and *Richlieu* his General being now upon the Siege of *Rochel*, they endeavour'd to block it up; but that Attempt was vain, except they could have block'd it up by Sea too, which was the only Way the *English* had an Opportunity to relieve it; but the *English* failing in that, the *Rochellers* were very much exasperated against the Earl of *Denbigh* the *English* Governor there, and an Insurrection had like to have happen'd; and *Richlieu* seeing their Distress and Divisions, advis'd them to submit, but they stood it out, waiting still in Expectation of the *English* relieving them.

Another Accident contributed to the Misery of the *Rochellers*; for when the Duke of *Buckingham* was going aboard at *Portsmouth* to the Relief of *Rochel*, he was stabb'd by *Felton*; which as soon as *Richlieu* heard, he made fresh Proposals to them, as thinking that his Death might bring them to Terms; but all in vain, though they were reduced to such Extremity, that they had nothing to eat but Cockles and Roots, and the like, and these very scarce: Nay, they were reduc'd to that Distress, that they drove all useless People, as old Men, Women, and Children, out of the Town, to the Mercy of the Besiegers, where they lay in the Meadows, and liv'd upon Herbs, till the Besiegers by Musquet, shot and forc'd them to retire into the City.

The King aggravated by their Obstinacy, threatened that he would give them no Quarter, if they did not surrender immediately; and the *Rochellers* on the other Hand offer'd to beg Pardon with Ropes about their Necks, provided that upon Surrender they might have their Privileges, both in Relation to Religion and Magistracy continued to them; but amongst other Things, they required that Peace should be made with *England*; but that last was deny'd them, it not being allow'd for them to prescribe to the King what he had to do, and that they ought to be thankful that they were not punish'd for having drawn *France* into a War. The Siege was therefore continued, and the Besieged continued miserable, till at last the *English* Succours, under the Command of the Earl of *Lindsey*, appear'd in Sight of the Isle of *Rhee*, consisting of seventy Vessels, which next Day were follow'd by thirty more. The whole *French* Army was 20000 Foot and 3000 Horse, and not to enumerate Circumstances, *Rochel* surrendered on the 28*th* of *October*, 1628.

Queen *Ann* of *Austria* was deliver'd of a Son on the 5th of *September*, who became the famous *Lewis* XIV. of *France*, of whom more in his Place. *Lewis XIV. born.*

But now to pursue *Richlieu* towards his final Exit, (for both his Health, and that of the King, began sensibly to impair;) towards the End of *November* he was seiz'd with an exceeding Pain in his Side, and a high Fever; he lingered till the 4th of *December*, and then dy'd, in the 58th Year of his Age. *Richlieu dies.*

The King did not live long after him, and finding his Health decline, he made his Will, and settled his Affairs, leaving his Wife Regent; but he left the chief Power in the Hand of the Ministry. He committed the Lieutenancy of the Crown to his Brother, and to *Conde* the chief Place in Council, only subordinate to *Orleans*. He made *Mazarine* Prime Minister, and added to the Council *Seguier*, *Bettillier*, and *Chavigny*, and by this Council, the most weighty Affairs were to be determin'd; and the King having settled all his Affairs, he dy'd on the 10th of *May*, 1643. in the 43d year of his Age, and upon the very Day that he finish'd the 33d Year of his Reign.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

The Reign of Lewis *the Fourteenth.*

1643. LEWIS XIV. began his Reign before he was five years of Age, and he was ſcarce ſooner fix'd upon the Throne, but *Melo* the *Spaniſh* General appear'd on the Frontiers with an Army of 17000 Foot, and 7 or 8000 Horſe, to ſee if any affecting Novelty would join him, and reſolved to invade *France*, as concluding that he ſhould find little Reſiſtance. The firſt Place that he attempted was *Rocroy*, a ſmall Town on the Frontiers of *Champagne*; as ſuppoſing that if he ſucceeded againſt that Place, it might facilitate his Approach to *Paris*, to join thoſe that were of his Party there, and to put the reſt in Confuſion; but he was diſappointed in the grand Deſign of taking *Rocroy*, and his Projects, that were to be the Conſequences of it, withered with it.

ory be ged.

THE Duke of *Enguien*, *Conde*'s Son, and but even a Minor, commanded the *French* Army, aſſiſted by the Mareſchal *de la Hoſpital* and M. *Gaſſion*; and upon News of the Siege, they aſſembled Troops to the Number of about 14000 Foot and 6000 Horſe. *Melo* preſuming he could take the Place without much Trouble, made very weak Proviſion, had a ſcanty Garriſon, and no Line of Circumvallation; which gave *Gaſſion* an opportunity of throwing Reinforcements into the Town, and enabled them to ſally upon the Beſiegers; and recovering the Half-Moon, gave time for the Body of the Army to come up; which was done with ſo much Reſolution, that *Enguien* was reſolved to ſee *Melo* out, not being afraid to meet him in the open Field, which he accordingly did.

...ſpa-...de-...ed

MELO, being ſuperior in Number of Forces, aſſured himſelf of a compleat Victory; and upon this Preſumption drew his Forces from the Siege to meet *Enguien* in a ſet Battle; but did not care to engage till a Reinforcement joined him, which was 4000 Men under General *Beck*. But on the other Hand, the *French*, by this Night's Delay of *Melo*, re-united themſelves, and *Gaſſion* with the right Wing, could now conveniently attack the *Spaniards* in Flank. Upon this *Melo* being now forced to beſtir himſelf, engaged and took from the *French* eight Pieces of Cannon; he alſo took *Sennetere* Priſoner, and wounded the Mareſchal *de la Hoſpital*: But *Enguien* would not deſiſt upon this Diſcouragement, but rallied again, and headed thoſe of the *French* who were yet moſt entire; while *Gaſſion* ſo ſhattered the left Wing of the *Spaniards*, that they were forced to give way. The General *Albequerque* was the firſt that betook to Flight, and he was eaſily and naturally followed by the reſt, and *Melo* himſelf fled at laſt; and the reſt of the *Spaniards* being hemmed in on all ſides by the *French*, who brought up their Cannon to force them if they would not otherwiſe ſubmit, they gave up their Arms, and were made Priſoners, to the Number of 6000 taken by the *French*, with Cannon, Baggage, and a great Number of Colours; the *French* not miſſing above 2000 of their Forces. This Succeſs encouraged *Enguien* to fall upon the Enemies Country, where burning and deſtroying wherever he went, he laid ſiege to *Thionville* and *Sirck*, which both ſoon ſurrendered.

The Queen Regent (the late King's Widow, and the preſent King's Mother) went with her two Sons from St. *Germains* to *Paris*, and entering with the new King into the Parliament, where *Orleans* and *Conde* aſſiſted, ſhe there delivered her mind; and ſhewing her Sons as Pledges of her Affection and the Kingdom's Felicity, reſigned herſelf to the late King's Diſpoſition of the Regency: Upon which *Orleans* and *Conde*, and after them all the reſt of the Members in Parliament, agreed to confirm her in the Regency, with an abſolute Power; only with this Condition, that the Queen Regent ſhould confirm *Orleans* and *Conde* in the Charges the King had conferred upon them, and that the ſame Miniſters ſhould be continued in Council; all which ſhe agreed to, and as a further Act of Generoſity, recalled the Exiled, and ſet the *Baſtile* open, and publickly expreſſed that her Intention was during her Regency to put in exerciſe all the Vertues, but none of the Defects, of the paſt Government.

Mazarine made Prime Miniſter.

THIS new Regency, or rather Confirmation of the old Regency, put a new Face upon ſeveral Affairs, which gave *Mazarine* an Opportunity of advancing himſelf to the Prime Miniſtry, tho' he was a Stranger, and none of the brighteſt Capacity, both which one would think would have been Arguments againſt his being admitted to a Place of ſuch Truſt. But his being a Stranger he uſed as an Argument in his own Favour, alledging that his being a Stranger was rather to be judged commodious for the Publick Good, for that Natives had Kindred to prefer, and Parties and Acquaintance to eſpouſe the Intereſt of. They had alſo great ones to excuſe their Overſights, or procure Pardon for their ſmaller Faults: But that he had no View but the Publick Good, nor any other Buſineſs or Intereſt to fill his Hands or employ his Thoughts, nor any thing to ſupport him, but his own Innocency. And indeed this Argument of his being a Stranger prevailed; to whom the Generality rather inclined, than to have their Equals, which were Neighbours, advanced.

Orleans, not very eaſy under the yet unſettled Poſture of Affairs, and the aſpiring Temper of *Mazarine*, nor yet knowing how to help himſelf, made himſelf as contented as he could; and chuſing to be imployed in the Army, he ſubmitted to *Mazarine*'s diſpoſing, becauſe he ſupply'd him with Money, and promiſed him that next Year he ſhould command the Army in *Flanders*. *Conde*, doubtful of the Regency, grew ſedate and inactive, while his brave Son *Enguien*, inſpired with a Martial Spirit, corroborated by his late Succeſs againſt *Spain*, fell in with *Mazarine* as a Favourite, who likewiſe ſupply'd him with what his Father's Patrimony fell ſhort of, and kept up his Heroick Spirit with a Promiſe of giving him the Command of an Army. And according to *Mazarine*'s Promiſe, the Duke of *Orleans*, and his Son, and the Duke of *Enguien*, with the Forces of *France* on the ſide of *Flanders* under their Command, beſieged and took *Courtray* in *June* 1646. in the Sight of the Duke of *Lorrain* and *Piccolomini*, who were come to re-

1646.

lieve it; and this was followed by their taking *Langue St. Vinock* the 24th of *August*, and *Furnes* the 6th of *September*; and lastly, by the *French* taking *Dunkirk* in *October*; *Enguien* besieging it by Land while the *Dutch* Admiral *Trump* blocked it up by Sea: So that the *Spaniards* this Year lost a great deal of footing in *France*. When these Transactions were finished, the Prince of *Conde* dy'd, and *Enguien* his Son succeeded to his Title and Dignity.

But after these Successes of the *French*, their intestine Broils sour'd their Enjoyments; for the Parliament became three Parties: The first, called *Frondeurs*, opposed the Court, and the Prime Minister *Mazarine*; not approving of his being invested with un-limited Power: The second were called *Mazarinians*, or such as were of the Court Party, and espoused the Prime Minister's Cause and Interest: The third were not bigotted for him, nor against him. The first were much the strongest Party, and so inveterate against *Mazarine*'s Administration, that the Court confined some of them: But this was so resented, that the Party sent a solemn Invitation to *Orleans*, *Conde*, and *Conti*, to join them, to redress the Grievances of the State. The Court was so much surprized at this Broil, that the King, Queen, *Orleans*, *Conde*, *Mazarine*, the Secretary of State, and others, thought fit to retire to St. *Germains*; which occasioned great Confusion in People's Minds, and discontented Persons began not only to mutiny, but actually to prepare for War, and the Siege of *Paris* was actually resolved upon; but it did not amount to a formal Siege, but a Treaty went on, and a Peace was concluded in *March* 1649. The Articles were, that all Hostilities should cease; That the Passages should be opened; That the Parliament should go to St. *Germains*; and that the King being seated on his Throne, the Declaration and Articles agreed upon should be verified and confirmed; and that then they would return to *Paris*, to perform their respective Functions, as before the Commotion happened.

1649. Siege of *Paris*.

But notwithstanding that things were seemingly amicably adjusted, there was not a hearty Understanding between the Court and Parliament of *Paris*, or rather between the *Mazarinians* and the *Anti-Mazarinians* in Parliament: So that the Court continued still some time in *Compagne*, but went at last to *Paris*. But this did not settle the Peace of the Kingdom; for *Provence*, *Guienne*, *&c.* were continually embroiled, if not by publick Differences, yet by private Piques; one of the Chief of which was, that *Conde* pretended the Cardinal *Mazarine* had promised the Government of *Pont l'Arche* to his Brother in Law the Duke of *Longueville*, and *Mazarine* denying it, *Conde* resolved never to come more to Court as long as *Mazarine* was Prime Minister; and accordingly he joined the *Frondeurs*, or Members that were against *Mazarine*; but soon recanted, and came over to the Court, at which he so much lost the Respect and Esteem of his Party, that it was privately reported that there was a Design to assassinate him. Several Complaints were exhibited, not only against him, but against all the three Princes, *Conde*, *Conti*, and *Longueville*, though it scarce was known from what Hand; but the Report run, that they were all to be committed. Upon these Apprehensions, they agreed never to appear all together at Court, but only one at a Time; that if any thing happened to one, the other two might be apprized of it, and avoid the Danger. But the 18th of *January* the Council being

1650.

to meet, and the Queen Regent and *Mazarine* pretending Business of Importance to be then tranlacted, *Conde*, *Conti*, and *Longueville*, were desired to be present at Court; and notwithstanding their former Resolution to the Contrary, they all appeared at once, and going up the great Stairs, which led into the Hall, the Door was clapt too, and their Attendants, which followed them, were shut out: The Princes were seized, and carried Prisoners to *Vincennes* Castle, and there confined till further Orders. Princes seized.

The Dutchess of *Longueville*, surpriz'd at the Confinement of her Husband, came to *Stenay*, where a Treaty was concluded with the Arch-Duke on the Part of *Spain*, importing that they should unite their Forces under the Protection of *Spain*, and employ them for obtaining a just and equal Peace between the two Crowns, and for obtaining the Liberty of the confined Princes, and that they should not lay down their Arms till both were done: That the *Spaniards* should pay 20000 Crowns to the Dutchess of *Turenne* (*Longueville*) and that the said Dutchess and Province of *Turenne* should pay for the Maintenance of their Troops 40000 Crowns a Month, and 60000 Crowns yearly beside for their own Expences. The *Spaniard* was also to add 2000 Foot and 3000 Horse, and all necessary Ammunition for the Army, that was to be commanded by *Turenne*, and to march into *France* to force *Mazarine* to a Compliance.

The Articles being settled, the Princess of *Conde* made the best of her way for *Bourdeaux*, where she was not only well received, but the Parliament resolv'd to take the Princes under their Protection, and to continue the War against the Duke of *Espernon*, who quickly had notice given him to draw together what Force he was able; and *Meilleray*, then in *Poictou* was also commanded to draw his Men towards *Bourdeaux*. *Espernon* quickly surpriz'd the Isle of St. *George*, about three Leagues from *Bourdeaux*; but the Citizens with a little Trouble soon bravely recovered it.

In the mean Time the King's Resolution of going to *Guienne* being divulged, *Orleans* and the *Frondeurs* were dissatisfy'd with *Mazarine* about it; but the Parliament of *Bourdeaux*, the better to strengthen their Interest, wrote to that of *Paris*, the Reasons upon which they would vindicate their Conduct. This gave some Perplexity to the Court, which was increased by the Agents of the *Swiss Cantons* coming to solicit the Payments of their Troops in the King's Pay, which came to a considerable Sum; and they were the more pressing, because many of the Officers and Soldiers had laid down their Arms for want of their Pay: But this Affair was accommodated by such Payments as the King offered, and they accepted.

Affairs being thus settled, the King pursued his Journey to *Guienne*; and the *French* Army under *Meilleray* having attack'd, and with much Opposition carried, part of the Suburbs of *Bourdeaux*, two Batteries were erected against the Dauphin's Gate, but to little Purpose; so that they at last came to Articles, *viz.* that a general Amnesty should be granted to all the Inhabitants and others in the City; that the Princess of *Conde* might retire with her Son to one of his or her Houses in *Anjou*, where she might enjoy all her Estate; with several other Articles then concluded upon.

Matters being thus accommodated, the King and Court entred *Bourdeaux October* 5. in great State, and from thence returned in a short

Time

Time to *Orleans*, and from thence to *Fountainbleau*. The Princes were removed on the 15th of *November* to *Havre de Grace*, and there kept close Prisoners.

Mazarine's ill Behaviour had incurr'd the Displeasure and Dislike of the Generality; his Domestick Enemies grew daily stronger against him, and the Parliament of *Paris* was much exasperated against him, by *Orleans*, the *Frondeurs*, and the *Malecontents*, and especially the imprison'd Princes, whose Friends had petitioned again and again for their Redress: And what was more than all, he began now to be affrighted at the Resentments of an enraged People, who ran storming in great Numbers to publick Places, after they had made humble Remonstrances to the Queen for the Liberty of the Princes, and the Removal of *Mazarine* from his exalted Station.

Mazarine's ...ices ...n ...ourt.

The People being thus exasperated, and the Cardinal hunted to this Degree, it was thought advisable for him to retire to *Havre de Grace*; and this was no sooner known in the City, but the *Frondeurs*, and their Party in Parliament, ordered humble Thanks to be returned to the Queen, and that she should be further petitioned to set the Princes at Liberty, and to make a Declaration that all Foreigners should be excluded from the King's Council. The Queen put them off with a favourable Answer; but that not satisfying them, a strict Guard was forced to be kept about the Court, and Troops of armed Men employ'd every Night to keep the Streets clear. But in the mean Time a more severe Decree was pass'd against *Mazarine*, strictly commanding that he and all his Kindred and foreign Domesticks should in fifteen Days leave the Kingdom, and all other Places within the King's Obedience; and failing therein, the Disobedient should be in an extraordinary Manner proceeded against; and that it should be lawful for all Men to fall upon them, and every Body was forbid to entertain them. This Decree was approv'd and confirm'd by most of the Parliaments of *France*.

Mazarine ...ished.

...e Prin... ...der- ...aged ...ast.

The next Thing now was the actual Releasment of the three Prisoners, *Conde*, *Conti*, and *Longueville*, without any Conditions. It has been observed before, that the last Place of Confinement of the Princes was *Havre de Grace*, and likewise that *Mazarine*'s Retirement when expell'd the Court was to *Havre de Grace*. Whether it was designed as a Mortification to *Mazarine* I shall not determine, but it was so order'd, that he was with his own Mouth to deliver the Message of Releasment to the three Princes themselves, which he did in these Words to each of the three Princes respectively: *I bring your Highness Orders from the Queen for your own Liberty, and the Liberty of your Brother and Brother in Law, freely, without any Terms: Yet her Majesty desires you to love the State, her, and me also.* *Mazarine* having delivered his Charge, was obliged, pursuant to his Sentence, to quit the Kingdom of *France*, and thought fit to hasten to *Sedan*, and thence, to compleat his Disgrace, to *Berles* in *Germany*. But the Princes returned with Glory to *Paris*, and they, with the Dutchess of *Longueville* and *Turenne*, were restored to Court in their full Splendor, while the Parliament increased their Severities against *Mazarine* and his Adherents.

After this the King and Court went to *Berry*, and so to *Guienne*; and the Prince, then at *Bourdeaux*, confirmed the Treaty of *Stenay* abovementioned, between the Arch-Duke, the Dutchess of *Longueville*, and *Turenne*. When the King left *Paris*, the Nation was embroiled, and *Conti*, *Nemours*, the Dutchess of *Longueville*, and others, being in the Castle of *Montraud*, were afraid it might prove rather a Trap to catch them in than a Place to defend them: They therefore made the best of their way to *Bourdeaux*, while the King being come to *Burges*, a Place belonging to *Conde*, and permitting the Demolishing the Tower, it was look'd upon as a Breach or Trespass upon *Conde*. On the other Hand, *Conde* secured *Dardoguia*, *St. Bergerack*, *St. Foy*, *Libourn*, and *Perigreu*; he also secured all the Towns upon the *Garonne*, as far as *Agen*; and then treating with *Ognone*, Governor of *Rochel*, *Brouage*, and the Isles of *Oleron* and *Rhee*, he brought him to his Party, and then he thought he had provided against all Emergencies.

When the Prince had thus strengthened himself, it created great Jealousies in the *French* Court; and the Queen, fearing the worst, thought it was best to recall *Mazarine*, and restore him to his Place in the Administration at the Head of Affairs as before. Then the King with the Court, and the Forces, marched towards *Poictiers*, from whence he wrote to the Duke of *Orleans*, complaining of *Conde*'s Proceedings [illegible] at the same Time secured *Agen*, *St. Lau...* *Montauban*, and *Cahors*, and then went to *Bourdeaux*, to settle Affairs with the *Spaniards* and *Ognone*, more particularly about securing *Rochel*; but the King found a Way to secure that City to himself.

Mazarine restored.

The King seeing *Conde* persist in strengthening himself against him, published a Declaration on the 16th of *November*, that the Prince was Guilty of High-Treason, for having taken up Arms against his Sovereign; and that he confederated with the *Spaniards*, to the Disturbance of the Peace of the Kingdom. And his Adherents as *Conti*, the Dutchess of *Longueville* *Nemours*, *Rochefoucault*, *&c.* were contained in the said Declaration. In the mean Time *Conde* being deny'd the Assistance of *Turenne*, gave the Command of his Forces in *Flanders* to *Nemours* while the King and Council of State confirmed *Mazarine* in Favour, annulling the Decree of the Parliament of *Paris*, and forbiding all Persons whatsoever to attempt any thing against him upon pain of Death.

France was now all embroil'd; *Conde*'s Interest declin'd; Armies were in the Field against each other; *Paris* was full of Parties, Libels, and Satires; the Princes were extolled in *Paris*, and there *Mazarine* and his Party were again as much lampooned: Whereupon the Parliament sent to the King, then at *Sully*, to acquaint him how necessary it was again to put *Mazarine* out of the Council; and they insisted the more upon it as the King had promised it. And a general Assembly met, that the sending the Cardinal away and the general Peace might be resolv'd on, and that in the mean Time all the Decrees in Force against him might be fully executed.

These Differences in *France* made out for the Advantage of *Spain*, who by the *French* thus busying and employing themselves against one another, besieged and took *Barcelona* and *Casal*, till then in the Possession of the *French*. The *Spaniards* afterwards laid siege to *Dunkirk*; and though the *French* attempted to relieve it from *Calice*, the Besiegers prevented them, and the Governor being wounded, the Town-Major sick, the King's Lieutenant dead, the Town sickly, and the Soldiers mutinous, they capitulated on the 10th of *September* 1652. though at the same Time the Duke of *Mercur* had got 18 Men

Barcelona, Casal, and Dunkirk, taken.

1652.

18 Men of War, 4 Fire-Ships, with 3000 Landmen for their Relief; but coming near the *Downs*, the *Engliſh* Admiral *Blake*, with ſeven *Engliſh* Men of War, took ten of theirs, and the *Spaniards* took four more of them; ſo that they left but four of the *French* Men of War to carry home the News.

1658. After this the Mareſchal *d'Aumont*, who thought to have taken *Oſtend* by Treachery, was himſelf betray'd and taken Priſoner, with all that accompanied him in an ill concerted and worſe executed Plot, wherein *Cromwell* and *Mazarine* were jointly concern'd, but were outwitted by the *Spaniards*. But a Repriſal was ſoon made: for *Dunkirk*, then in Poſſeſſion of the *Spaniards*, was ſoon inveſted by the *French* and *Engliſh* under *Turenne*, at which *Don John* being alarmed, he, with the Duke of *York*, and the *Engliſh* that follow'd his and his Brother's Fortune, reſolved at all adventures to relieve it; and having for that purpoſe drawn up 20000 Men, they march'd and encamp'd near the Enemy: Whereupon the *Engliſh* and *French* jointly reſolved to give them Battle next Morning. *Don John* the *Spaniard*, having the Advantage of the Ground, kept his Men upon the defenſive; but the *Engliſh* bravely advancing, ſoon gain'd the Hill, and put the *Spaniſh* Foot to Flight.

The *French* Horſe, who had as yet done nothing, ſeeing the Succeſs of the *Engliſh*, charg'd the *Spaniſh* Cavalry, who being diſpirited at the Flight of their Infantry, fled, while the *French* hotly purſu'd them, ſlew about 1000, and took 3000 Priſoners of War, beſides 800 Officers, with all their Artillery and Baggage. The *French* refuſed a Ranſom for their Priſoners, becauſe the Number of Officers were ſo great that *Don John* would be at Loſs to recruit his Army. After this Victory the *Engliſh* and *French* return'd to *Dunkirk*, which Town immediately capitulated, and was put into the Poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*.

Upon this Succeſs againſt *Dunkirk*, other Places follow'd the Example. *Gravelin* ſurrendered, as did *Furnes*, *Bergue St. Vinock*, *Dixmuyde*, and *Ypres*, and this Year they continued to have the ſame Succeſs in *Italy*.

Lewis XIV married 1660. There was by this Time a Marriage propoſed between the *French* King and the Infanta of *Spain*, which gave *Philip* King of *Spain* an Opportunity of ſeeing his only Siſter, the Queen Mother of *France*. The Marriage was ſolemnized *Auguſt* 9, 1660.

Mazarine dies. The next Year after this Marriage *Mazarine* dy'd, and the People run into Parties and Confuſion, as ſcarce thinking that a Prince of two and twenty would take upon him the ſole Adminiſtration. But *Lewis* XIV. began now to exerciſe his Talent, call'd his Miniſters to account for every particular Tranſaction, and gave audience himſelf. His Son the young Dauphin was born *November* 1, 1661.

Dauphin born. 1661. Dunkirk being now in poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*, as above obſerved, was, by the Fortifications added to it by *Oliver Cromwell*, become a Place of very great Conſequence; and (to proceed in my Author's own Words) "ſo weak was "our Government in *England* as to ſell it to "the *French* for four hundred thouſand Pound, "whereof one Moiety was detained for the Por-"tion of our King's Siſter the Lady *Henrietta* "*Maria*, married to the Duke of *Orleans*. In "Juſtification of our th n * King and Miniſtry, "I have heard it confidently aſſerted, that the "Thing was very juſt in King *Charles* II. ſince "it was an Agreement between *Cromwell* and "*Mazarine*, that the *French* ſhould have it up-"on paying of ſo much Money; but I don't find "the *French* pretend to any ſuch thing, but "plainly ſay it was a preſent Bargain, that had "no regard to any previous Conditions, &c."

* King *Charles* the II

The *French* King having thus gained his Point in the Recovery of *Dunkirk*, he vaſtly improv'd it's Fortifications, new diſciplin'd his Army, and augmented the Number of his well choſen Men; and the better to exerciſe them, he every Year ordered Encampments, where they repreſented Sieges, Battles, &c. The King now began to inſpect narrowly into the Courts of Judicature, and gave particular Marks of his Favour and Eſteem to thoſe Judges and others who were proof againſt Bribery and Corruption. He alſo encouraged Arts and Sciences, and drew into *France* the moſt excellent Hands in all Profeſſions from all Parts of *Europe*. The *Louvre* is a Specimen of his Encouraging of Architecture, the Front of which is reckon'd one of the beſt Pieces of Workmanſhip that the World can produce.

After the King's Example, the Subjects, eſpecially the Citizens of *Paris*, improv'd their Building; the Streets were wider, the Houſes were ſumptuous; Fountains, Canals, and the like, abounded; and, which was moſt commendable, foreign Trade, Manufactures, and Mechanicks, were encouraged. This occaſioned the Improvement of *France*, where if a Foreigner had a Talent that a Citizen was not Maſter of, he was encouraged in proportion to his Ingenuity, and not kick'd out by a Parcel of ignorant Freemen, for no other Reaſon but becauſe he was an ingenious Foreigner. Now it was the Encouragement of the Ingenious, whether Natives or Foreigners, that contributed to the Improvement of *France*, and I think we may ſay the ſame by our own Improvements in *England*: Witneſs our Silk Manufactures, as improv'd at this Time of Day in the City and Suburbs of *London*; a Branch of Trade which we had originally from Foreigners, from other Nations, though ſome People have now-a-days got ſuch narrow Conceptions of Freedom, as to call all People Foreigners who have not ſerv'd an Apprenticeſhip, or have been otherways made free of the ſame City or Town-Corporate with themſelves. I confeſs, I cannot help being ſurpriz'd, that People born in the ſame Nation, under the ſame Government, of the ſame Religion, Maſters of the ſame Buſineſs, whether Merchandize, Handicraft, &c. all ſubject to and protected by the ſame crown'd Head, and equally loyal, ſhould call one another Foreigners. Sure ſuch Perſons form very limited Ideas of Freedom.

But not to paſs by the Expedition againſt *Gigery* in *Barbary*, The Duke of *Beaufort*, Admiral of *France*, had a Fleet fitted out at *Marſeilles* and *Toulon*, conſiſting of fourteen Men of War, eight Gallies, five Fire-Ships, twenty Brigantines, and other ſmall Veſſels, and thirty Barks laden with Proviſion and Ammunition, with Lime, Bricks, and other Materials for Building, with fifteen hundred Seamen and five thouſand Land Soldiers, beſides five hundred Volunteers of Quality. The Admiral waited at *Port Mahon* till the *Malteſe* Gallies join'd him *July* 17, and then they ſailed together for the Coaſt of *Barbary*, and *July* 22 anchor'd before *Gigery*, about ſixty Leagues to the Eaſtward of *Algier*. The ſame Day they landed their Men, and at Night thirty Pieces of Cannon; which done they raiſed three Batteries, and played them upon the Place ſeven Days and Nights inceſſantly,

1664

geſſantly, in which Time they made themſelves Maſters of the Place, loſing only three hundred Men.

But alas! this Succeſs of theirs was owing more to the Surprize they gave the *Algerines* than to any Courage or Conduct of theirs. A naked Man is eaſily beat, as was at firſt the Caſe here. But this Place belonging to the *Algerines*, and the adjacent Country producing plenty of Cattle, they would not loſe it ſo ſillily; for having recover'd their Surprize, they drew twenty thouſand Men together, with which they appear'd before the Town *October* 20, and that very Night attack'd a Redoubt of the Caſtle. They were at firſt repuls'd by the Fire from the Ships and the Works, with the Loſs of a thouſand Men: Notwithſtanding which, the *Algerines* rally'd again, and with forty thouſand Men gave a third Attack *October* 27, and poſſeſſing themſelves of the Redoubt, they ſoon made themſelves Maſters of the Lines and Outworks, and the Duke of *Beaufort* finding it impoſſible to keep his new Conqueſt, if it might be call'd a Conqueſt, ſhipp'd off his Men the 30th of *October*, and return'd to *France*.

As to the reform'd Religion in *France* at this Time, it labour'd under great Oppreſſions, and was not ſo firmly eſtabliſh'd but that the neighbouring Proteſtant Princes were very ſenſible of the Grievances of its Profeſſors. But the *French* King made a Pretence in their Favour, and writ to the Marquiſs of *Brandenburg*, that he would take Care to maintain the Reform'd in all their Privileges, and that they ſhould live upon an equal Foot with the reſt of his Subjects; adding, that he was engaged by his Royal Word ſo to do, and by the Teſtimonies they had given him of their Fidelity during the late Commotions.

But notwithſtanding theſe Pretences, the Reform'd ſuffer'd by Reſtraints upon their Schools and Civil Offices; and even the more powerful Churches were not allow'd to aſſiſt the weaker. Theſe intolerable Grievances put the Reform'd under a Neceſſity to draw up a pathetick Petition to the King. But by this Time the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* were at open War againſt each other, and the States ſolicited the *French* King for Succour, or at leaſt for his Mediation, towards a Reconciliation between them: Whereupon he ſent an Embaſſy to *London*, to offer his Mediation upon that Occaſion, and the ſame being accepted by King *Charles* II. the Conferences were begun; but King *Charles* in the mean Time ſent his Fleet out in queſt of the *Dutch*, purſuing them to their own Coaſt, and even into their own Harbours.

The *French* King at the ſame Time march'd in Perſon, at the Head of thirty-five thouſand Men, into *Flanders*, giving the Command of them to the Mareſchal *de Turenne*, ordering two flying Camps, one to obſerve the Motions of the *Germans* on the Side of *Luxemburg*, the other to march along the Sea-Coaſt, under the Mareſchal *d'Aumont*, who took *Courtray* in two Days, *Dixmuyde* in one Day, and *Furnes* in one Day: *Armentiers* ſurrender'd as ſoon as they ſaw them before it. *Turenne*'s Army went on with the ſame Succeſs: *Charleroy* was demoliſh'd, *Ath* and *Alth* ſurrender'd immediately, *Tournay* did not hold out two Days, neither did *Douay*, and its Citadel: *Oudenard* did not hold out one Day, and *Aloſt* but a few Hours; and, in ſhort, in leſs than four Month's Time, they made themſelves Maſters of thirteen or fourteen Places of conſiderable Strength: But *Liſle* held out near a Fortnight after the Trenches were open'd. At the ſame Time a *French* Army, under the Prince of *Conde*, took *Dole*, *Bezanſon*, *Salines*, *Gray*, the Caſtle of *Joux*, and the Fort of *St. Anne*, and ſoon became Maſters of the whole Province of *Franche Comte*. The *Swiſs* Cantons hereupon recall'd their Subjects out of the *French* Service, and order'd ſixty thouſand Men to expel them out of *Burgundy*; ſo that *Dole* and *Bezanſon* were ſoon reſtored to the *Spaniards*.

This Succeſs of the *French* put the *Swiſs* and other neighbouring Powers upon their Guard, eſpecially the *Spaniſh Netherlands*. The States therefore concerted Meaſures with *England* and *Sweden*, and the three Parties agree to furniſh each fifteen thouſand Men for the Defence of *Flanders*. It was therefore call'd the Triple Alliance; and the *French*, fearing to bring three ſuch potent Enemies upon their Backs, agreed to the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle* on the Second of *May*, 1668, whereby *Franche Comte* was reſtor'd to the *Spaniard*, as hinted above. Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*.

The Peace being thus ſettled, and the King's Hands ſo far eaſed from other Incumbrances, they began afreſh to apply for a Redreſs of their Grievances, by *du Boſc* their then Spokeſman, to the King; and he repreſented their Sufferings to the King in the moſt affecting Terms in their Favour; but all his and their Efforts prov'd abortive, the Chambers of the Edict were aboliſh'd and ſuppreſt, and they left quite deſtitute of all future Hopes; and yet, even then, upon ſome Conſideration or other, the King put forth an Edict or Declaration, which contained ſome Articles in their Favour. But how far ſoever they might reap Benefit by it, the *French* King had another View; for he was in the mean Time conſulting and contriving the Ruin of the States of *Holland*, whoſe Power, and Succeſs in Trade, he looked upon as the only Obſtacle that hinder'd the Trade of *France*; and among other Things, the Triple League above-mention'd ſtuck moſt upon his Stomach.

But before we quit the Reform'd for the preſent, it muſt be obſerv'd, that the Court, under all Pretences in their Favour, were privately diſguſted at them, eſpecially about the Negociations of one *Marcelli*, whoſe Story, in a few Words, is this.

Marcelli was of the reform'd Religion, and was accuſed of having endeavoured to ſtir up all *Europe* againſt *France*, and particularly to make it known to the Proteſtants, that the *French* King had ſworn the Ruin of their Religion; and that, beſides the Negociations he had every where carried on among the Reform'd, chiefly in his own Country, he undertook alone, without any Accomplice or Council, to carry his Complaints to all the reformed States, or thoſe who had ſeparated from the Church of *Rome*, againſt the Violences which the *French* King authoriz'd under his Name, and to inſpire them with a Deſign of humbling that Power, which muſt be fatal to Religion and Liberty. He had traverſed the North with good Succeſs, and it was ſaid induced the *Swede* to enter into the Triple League. He uſed the ſame Artifice in *England*, and gave King *Charles* a Light into many things that had been kept under a Diſguiſe, either by the Agents of *France*, or the Infidelity of his Miniſters. The Marquiſs *Bacquoy*, the Procurator-General of the Reform'd, was then the *French* King's Envoy in *England*, whither he was ſent to take away the Umbrage that might be taken at the Conduct of the Council of *France*, he being choſen on purpoſe, not only on the Account of his Capacity, but alſo of his Religion, which render'd him a fitter Perſon than another to convince the *Engliſh* that his Maſter had no Deſign upon the Proteſtant 1669. *Marcelli's* remarkable Story

Protestant Religion, and consequently that he did Justice to his own reform'd Subjects. Indeed *Ruvigny* did his Business effectually, and prov'd so unserviceable to the Reform'd upon this Occasion, that he drew some Reproaches upon himself, even from the reform'd Churches, who were not satisfied with his Complaisance. However, he not only found King *Charles* possess'd of *Marcelli*'s Notions, but also got out of that Prince some secret Intrigues which had been communicated, not only to him, but to several Members of Parliament. But King *Charles* did not secure *Marcelli* in his own Dominions, but gave him Leave to depart the Kingdom, and provide elsewhere for his own Security.

Ruvigny giving the *French* King an Account of his Negociations in *England*, acquainted him also with the Discovery he had made of the Intrigue of *Marcelli*, and also that he was retired into *Switzerland* to carry on the same Design. Hereupon *Lewis* acquainted Mareschal *Turenne* with the Affair, and order'd him to pick out some resolute Fellows to go and bring him off if possible, without the least Noise. *Turenne* entrusted three Officers of the reform'd Religion, himself still professing the same, and these three cunningly got *Marcelli* into a Place where he could not be succour'd, and carried him off into *France*, where he was proceeded against, and cast; and tho' he deny'd all he was charg'd with, and justify'd himself to the very last, yet he was condemn'd, and broke alive upon the Wheel: Soon after which *Turenne*, notwithstanding his pretended Zeal, forsook the reform'd Religion, and turned Roman Catholick at last; and many following his Example, attempted the total Subversion and Destruction of the Reform'd Protestant Religion.

1671. The *French* King this Year prevailed upon King *Charles* to send Mr. *Coventry* into *Sweden* to dissolve the Triple League; which when done at *Lewis*'s Instigation, he thought he had brought King *Charles* to his Purpose and Interest; and the farther to involve King *Charles*, and keep himself clear, he declared that the Quarrel against the *Dutch* was none of his Concern, any farther than with respect to King *Charles* himself, and that *England* ought to break the Peace by falling upon the *Smyrna* Fleet.

The *Dutch* finding these Clouds hang over their Heads, would have been glad to have made it up both with the *English* and *French*; but all would not do, both Nations declared War against them; the *French* King charg'd them with acting in Diminution of his Glory, and King *Charles* charg'd them with not having yielded him the Honour due to his Flag. This heavy Charge falling upon them, when thus unprovided, they laid *Bois-le-duc* and *Lisle* all under Water, which was needless, for the *French* advanced towards *Maestricht*, and dividing their Forces into four Bodies, came to *Orsoy*, *Wesel*, *Rhimberg*, and *Burick*, in four or five Days Time; and besides, *Rees*, *Emmerick*, and *Doesburg*, with five or six Places more, opened their Gates upon the first Approach of the Enemy.

The next Step the *French* intended to take, was to cross the *Rhine*, it being then but low, by Reason of the hot and dry Weather; and they accordingly crossed it by the Direction of two Gentlemen, but some of them were drown'd in the Attempt. The *French* now began to make their Cannon play upon the Enemy, so that the *Dutch* could not come up to them, but halted and encamped at so great a Distance, that they did little or no Execution; which gave the *French* an Opportunity to form their Squadrons, and have further Reinforcements from the other Side. The *Dutch* Foot demanded Quarters, which *Conde* granted them; but the young Duke of *Longueville*, not knowing any Thing of it, advanced to the Brink of the *Dutch* Retrenchments, and fired his Pistol; at which the *Dutch* being surpriz'd after Quarters was granted, they fired a whole Volley of Shot upon the *French*, and killed a considerable Number of them, of whom the young Duke of *Longueville* was one. The *French* on the other Side, not suddenly knowing the Affair, or Cause of that Firing after Quarters granted, fell on and storm'd the *Dutch* Intrenchments, and put all to the Sword, except those who escaped by Flight, plunder'd the Castle of *Tolhuis*, and put *Below* under Contribution.

But this was not all the Misfortune of the *Dutch*; for their Forces which guarded the *Issel*, fearing the Enemy would fall upon them behind, abandon'd their Posts and the Passage to the Mercy of the *French*, who took *Doesburg*, *Arnheim*, *Shenkenschans*, *Wesel*, and *St. Andrew*. The City of *Utrecht* sent their Keys to the Enemy, while yet a good Distance off. All the Places of Note in the *Betuwe* did the same; so did most of the Cities upon the *Rhine*, *Waal*, *Meuse*, and the *Issel*: Nay, in the Province of *Holland* itself, the Cities of *Oudewater*, *Woerden*, *Naarden*, and *Amsterdam*, were very near coming to Terms of Capitulation. They also took *Deventer*, *Swoll*, *Campen*, and most of the capital Places in the Province of *Overyssel*.

While the Allies were concerting Measures against the common Enemy, *Lewis* was privately laying a Design to recover *Franche Comte*, to cover his Frontiers; and accordingly the King ordered his Troops to march into *Franche Comte*, who, though in *February*, made themselves Masters of *Gray* and *Vesel*, and several important Places. They also took *Besançon*, *Dole*, *Salins*, *St. Ann*, and other Places, which completed the Conquest of *Franche Comte*.

This done, *Lewis* divided his Army, sending one Part into *Germany* to reinforce *Turenne*, and the greatest Part into *Flanders* to join the Prince of *Conde*; *Lewis* himself returning into *France*, to suppress some Broils that had happened there.

The Confederate Army in *Flanders*, under the Command of the Prince of *Orange*, encamped towards the Prince of *Conde*'s Army, which was so advantageously posted, that they durst not continue to engage them. But the *Imperialists* finding means to come up to their Relief, they rally'd, and the Prince of *Orange* with the other Generals, having dextrously drawn their several Bodies into good Order, upon an Eminency, the Fight was renewed with more Vigour than before, and lasted from Noon till Moon-light, and near Midnight, when both Sides claimed the Victory. It was doubted who lost most, but it was allowed by a modest Computation that on both Sides there fell that Day above 20000 Men. The Confederates, about a Month afterwards, besieged *Oudenard*, but raised the Siege as soon as *Conde* approached.

The *Dutch* Forces, join'd by some *Lunenburghers*, laid Siege to *Grave*, a strong Place that might in some Respects be called the Storehouse or Magazine of the *French*. They had but little Success in attacking it, till the Prince of *Orange*, resolving to carry it whatever it cost him, joined the *Dutch* with 10000 Foot to reinforce the Besiegers, and took it, which in a manner totally expelled the *French* out of the *United Provinces*.

During

During this time Mareſchal *Turenne* commanded for the *French* in *Germany*; and after he had prevented the Duke of *Lorain*'s paſſing the *Rhine*, his next Buſineſs was to hinder his joining the 67? *Imperialiſts*: In order to which, he march'd three Days and Nights, and on the fourth came within ſight of the Enemy, who were drawn up on a riſing Ground that had a ſmall Town in front. *Turenne* ſoon took the Town, and then attack'd the Duke of *Lorain* with ſuch Fury, that in about eight Hours *Lorain* found himſelf obliged to retreat; and about three Weeks after *Bourneville*, the Imperial General, join'd the confederate Army with 7 or 8000 Men; but *Turenne* paſs'd the *Neckar* near *Ladenburg*, fell upon their Rear, routed their Foot, and diſpers'd them as far as *Frankford*.

The Confederate Army was afterwards reinforc'd to the Number of about 35000 Men; but being commanded by five Generals, independant of each other, they agreed ſo ill, and were ſo irreſolute in every thing except oppoſing one another, that they gave *Turenne* time enough not only to reinforce himſelf, but to attack them; which he accordingly did, and defeated them at *Sutsheimon* the fourth of *October*, and drove them out of the Field, with the Loſs of 3000 Men, ten pieces of Cannon, and thirty Colours and Standards.

But the *Brandenburg* and *Lunenburg* Troops joining the Confederates, they again became a conſiderable Army, and march'd into *Upper Alſatia* to winter; thinking in the Spring to go into *Lorain*, or *Franche Comte*, there to live at Diſcretion: But *Turenne* being re-inforc'd in *December*, march'd through *Lorain*, travers'd the Mountains, and enter'd the Plains, and quickly routed the Enemies Cavalry, with little Reſiſtance; ſo that when the Confederate Forces paſs'd the *Rhine* to return home, they found they had done nothing except one way or other loſing above half their Men. The Mareſchal commanded the *French* Army, and paſs'd the *Rhine* almoſt in ſight of the Confederate Army; but not ſatisfied with that, he drew ſo near and ſettled his Poſts ſo well, that it would be difficult for him to march off without Blows; in order to which he went out of the Camp to view a certain piece of Ground, where he intended to raiſe a Battery, the better to annoy the Enemy: But they being aware of it, planted ſome Cannon to bear directly upon that Ground, and when *Turenne* came there, the Gunner hit him with a Ball full upon the Breaſt, and laid him dead upon the Ground.

me
67

The *Dutch* and the *Spaniard* being now in Alliance, and their Fleet commanded by the famous *de Ruyter*, they engaged the *French* Fleet commanded by *du Queſne* near *Sicily*, and a terrible Fight follow'd: But the *Dutch* gave way, and retired to *Melazzo*, while the *French* went into *Meſſina*. After this the Confederate Fleet went to block up *Auguſta*; but *du Queſne* ſail'd to ſuccour the Place, and after a ſmart Engagement they were forced to retire to *Syracuſe*, where *Ruyter* died of a Fever occaſion'd by Wounds in his Legs. After this *du Queſne* ſail'd out of *Meſſina* with thirty Men of War, twenty-five Gallies, and nine Fireſhips; and off of *Palermo* he encounter'd the combin'd Fleet, burnt twelve Men of War and ſix Gallies: In the mean Time the Duke *de Noailles* ravaged *Catalonia*, and made the Viceroy *Serallo* retire with his Army into the Towns.

of

But not to dwell upon Particulars, the continued Succeſs of the *French* againſt the *Dutch*, put the Prince of *Orange* upon propoſing to the States the Levying of 16000 Men, and to bring all the Troops in the Country into the Field, to awe the *French*, and deter them from any farther Attempts: But this was oppoſed and utterly rejected by the City of *Amſterdam*. However, the Prince took the Field, and the *French* brought a great Army before *Luxemburg*, and took the Place *June* the 10th, 1684; and the *French* having now got what they deſired, they propoſed a Truce both with *Holland* and *Spain* for twenty Years. 1684

The *French* being thus clear of all Apprehenſions from the *Spaniards* and *Dutch*, they ſent a Fleet up the *Mediterranean* to bombard the City of *Genoa*, and lying before it, the Fort ſaluted them with eleven Guns. The Admiral anſwered with nine; the Fort then ſaluted them with twenty Chambers, and ten Guns. The Admiral returned ſeven. But the Governor not yet knowing what to think of theſe *French* Compliments, ſent ſix Deputies aboard the Admiral, to know the Occaſion of the Fleet's coming thither. His Anſwer was, that the King of *France* was very much diſſatisfy'd with the Conduct of the Republick, and that his Demands were, that they ſhould quit the Protection of *Spain*, and, amongſt ſeveral other Articles, that they ſhould ſend four Senators aboard, to beg the *French* King's Pardon for what they had already done. Bombardment of *Genoa*.

The Senate rejecting the Demand, with the utmoſt Reſentment, ſent the Admiral Word, that if he did not withdraw further off with his Fleet, they would look upon the *French* as Enemies; but the *French*, who were then within reach of the Guns of the Fort, did not regard them: Whereupon the Fort that Afternoon fired towards the Admiral, but without Ball; but he not regarding that, the ſeveral Forts in about an Hour afterwards fired Shot upon him, which made him withdraw his Men of War out of their reach. Ten Galliots however, were left in a Row, to fire on one Part of the City, who accordingly threw in their Bombs with ſo great Fury, that on the 21ſt of *May* the Doge's Palace was quite demoliſhed, and he and the Senate were forc'd to remove to *Albergho*, out of the Reach of the *French* Bombs. Next Morning (the 22d) the *French* ſent to let the Senate know, that rather than ruin ſo fine a City, they would give them 24 Hours more to conſider about complying with the King's Demands. But the Senate rejected their Offer, and the *Genoeſe* took courage and reſolved to reſiſt. The *French*, hereupon, renewed their Fire againſt the Town, and on the 23d their Ships and Gallies approaching very near, not only batter'd it for ſeven Hours together, but landed 500 Men to the Weſtward, and another Body to the Eaſtward of the City: But they were ſo warmly receiv'd, that they all eſcap'd to their Gallies except thoſe who were kill'd or taken Priſoners, and the *French* Fleet weigh'd from before *Genoa*. The *Genoeſe*, however, being dreadfully apprehenſive of a ſecond and more fatal Blow, ſent their Doge and four Senators to the *French* Court, to make Submiſſion for themſelves and the City of *Genoa*.

As to the Reform'd, they continu'd to live miſerable as to the Affairs of Religion, and at laſt, by the Inſtigation of the Clergy, the Edict of *Nantz* was finally revok'd, and the Chancellor *Tellier* being near his Exit, and eager to do the Church of *Rome* ſuch a ſignal Piece of Service, fix'd the Seal to the Revocation; which 1685, Edict of *Nantz* revok'd.

was

was the laſt Diſpatch that ever he ſeal'd, he dying ſoon after.

HERE is an Occurrence intervenes, that ought not to be forgot In the Year 1687 the famous *Lewis* II. Prince of *Conde* dy'd, *September* 11, in the 66th year of his Age. He was a brave Soldier, and a valiant Prince, as ſome particular Hints we have already given of his Life and Actions may ſufficiently evince.

KING *James* II. being now on the Throne of *England*, and deeply engaged in the *French* Intereſt, the Electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburgh*, the and grave of *Heſs-Caſſel*, the Princes of the Houſe of *Lunenburg*, and the then Prince of *Orange*, (afterwards King *William*) perceived a Storm hanging over *Great Britain*, which could not well be diverted without diſjoining King *James* II. from the *French* Intereſt, and ſecuring the Religion and Liberties of *England*, and confining *France* to the Bounds ſet to it by former Stipulations and Treaties. In order to this, great Preparations were made in *Holland* by Sea and Land, but for what Expedition it was not known. This gave great Umbrage to the *French* King, who ſent a Memorial to the States of *Holland* by *d'Avaux*, intimating, *That the ſincere Deſire that the King his Maſter had to maintain the Tranquility of* Europe, *would not ſuffer him to ſee the great Preparations for War both by Sea and Land made by their Lordſhips, without taking the Meaſures that Prudence inſpired him with to prevent the Miſchiefs theſe warlike Preparations would certainly draw after them; and his Maſter believing that theſe Preparations threatened* England, *his Majeſty had commanded him to declare, that the Bands of Friendſhip and Alliance between him and the King of* Great Britain, *would oblige him to look upon the firſt Act of Hoſtility committed by the* Dutch *Fleet or Troops againſt the King of* England *as a manifeſt Rupture of the Peace, and a Breach with his Crown; and adviſed their Lordſhips to conſider what might be the Conſequence of ſuch an Expedition, or Breach of the Peace.*

But the Prince of *Orange*, without any regard to the Memorial, purſued the Deſign in the intended Expedition, which the Irruption made by the *French* on the Side of *Germany*, whither they had drawn moſt of their Troops, gave him a fair Opportunity for; and King *James* refuſing the Succours, both of Men and Ships, that the King of *France* offered him, ſoon after the Prince of *Orange* landed. Of this Expedition and Succeſs, with the crowning of him and his Princeſs King and Queen of *England*, I ſhall not engage in any farther Account here, but refer the Reader to the Hiſtory of the *Netherlands*, *Chap. VII. page 545 of this Book*; where you have all the Steps from the Prince of *Orange*'s embarking in *Holland* to his being crowned King of *England*, which was *April* 11. 1689. in which Year, *May* the 7th, he proclaimed War againſt *France*. Prince of Orange lands in England

Having thus brought down the Hiſtory of France *to the Reign of King* William *and the Wars with* France, *which continued about nine Years in his Reign, and afterwards eleven Years in Queen* Anne's *Reign, I ſhall not proſecute this Hiſtory any farther here, but continue and compleat the Account of the Battles, Seiges,* &c. *of* Liſle, Doway, *and other Places, which were the Scenes of Action in* France *or* Flanders, *and the War as carried on by thoſe two crown'd Heads, when we come to their Lives and Actions in the Hiſtory of* England; *ſo that that part of the Hiſtory of* France *will, to avoid Repetition, be included in that ſame Part of the Hiſtory of* England *where the above-mentioned Tranſactions are included.*

CHAP. XI.

Of the Antient and Preſent State of France.

THE Kings of *France* are entitled *Moſt Chriſtian* from the ſignal Services they have done to the See of *Rome*; for which Reaſon alſo they are called the eldeſt Sons of the Church, and as ſuch they have claimed the Precedency of all the Kings of Chriſtendom.

The eldeſt Son of the King of *France* is ſtiled *Dauphin*, and the ſecond *Monſieur*, if they have no Quality: But otherwiſe the younger Brothers of *France* are Dukes of *Burgundy*, *Orleans*, *Anjou*, *Alenſon*, *Valois*, *Touraine*, *Berry*. Theſe are Peers of *France*, and have other Appenages. They ſign by writing their own proper Names. If there is no Son, the Couſin ſucceeds, provided he be deſcended in a Male Line from him to whom the Appenage was given: And if there be any Daughters remaining, the King gives them Portions out of his own Eſtate, and marries them as he pleaſes.

Of Dukes or Peers of *France* there are five or ſix ſorts, or Degrees, 1. Six antient Eccleſiaſtical Dukes and Peers. They hold the firſt Rank. 2. Dukes and Peers verify'd in Parliament as ſuch. 3. Dukes barely verify'd as ſuch in the Parliament of *Paris*. 4. Dukes and Peers verify'd as ſuch in other Parliaments than that of *Paris*. 5. Dukes and Peers by Letters Patent under the Great Seal. 6. Dukes and Peers by *Brevet*. The ſix antient Eccleſiaſtical Peers are, 1. The Archbiſhop and Duke of *Rheims*. 2. The Duke of *Laon*. 3. The Biſhop and Duke of *Langres*. 4. The Biſhop and Count of *Beauvois*. 5. The Biſhop and Count of *Chalons*. 6. The Biſhop and Count of *Noyon*. The ſix ſecular Peers are the Dukes of *Burgundy*, *Normandy*, and *Guyenne*, and the Counts of *Tholouſe*, *Flanders*, and *Champagne*. The Biſhop of *Rheims* has the Primacy of the Eccleſiaſtical Peers, and crowns their Kings; and the Offices of the reſt at the Coronation are as follows: The Biſhop of *Laon* carries the holy Bottle: The Biſhop of *Langres* the Scepter: The Biſhop of *Beauvois* the Royal Mantle: The Biſhop of *Chalons* the Ring: The Biſhop of *Noyon* the Girdle: The Duke of *Burgundy* carries the Royal Crown, and puts the King's Sword on. The Duke of *Guyenne* carries the firſt ſquare Banner: The Duke of *Normandy* the ſecond: The Count of *Tholouſe* the Spurs: The Count of *Champagne* the Royal Banner, or Standard: And the Earl of *Flanders*, the King's Sword. On the Day of the King's Coronation, and during the Ceremony, theſe Peers have a Golden Of the King's Coronation

Golden Wreath upon their Heads, in the Form of a Crown: But becauſe the ſix Lay-Peerages are re-united to the Crown, except part of *Flanders*, they make choice of ſix Princes or Lords to execute their Function, and repreſent the Peers.

Of the French *King's ſeveral Orders of Knighthood.*

THE Dignity of the ſeveral Orders of Knighthood were generally beſtowed upon People for their Merit, as Rewards for Services done to their King. There are at preſent three Orders of Knights, *viz.* thoſe of *St. Michael*, the *Holy Ghoſt*, and *St. Lewis*. The firſt was inſtituted by *Lewis* XI. *Anno* 1469. There are thirty ſix Knights of this Order. The Order of the *Holy Ghoſt* was inſtituted by *Henry* III. *Anno* 1597, as an Acknowledgment of the Divine Favours he received on the Day of the Miſſion of the Holy Ghoſt, as being elected King of *Poland*, and ſucceeding his Brother *Charles* IX. to the Crown of *France*. When the *French* King confers this Order, it is always done in ſome Church or Chapel, where the King ſeats himſelf near the Altar, in the midſt of the Officers of the Orders; when the Grand Maſter of the Ceremonies of the Order, accompanied by the Uſher and Herald, goes to give Notice to the Princes or Lords that are to receive the Order, who going two after two, kneel down to take the Oath, placing both their Hands upon the Goſpels, held by the Chancellor; and then they ſign the Oath; which done, the Provoſt and Great Maſter of the Ceremonies of the Order gives the King a Robe and Mantlet, to cloath the Knights with. Then the High Treaſurer gives the King the Collar of the Order, who puts it about the Knight's Neck, ſaying, *Receive from our Hands the Collar of the Order of the Bleſſed Holy Ghoſt*, &c. *in the Name of the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit.* The Number of Knights of this Order are an hundred, and the Officers belonging to it are the Chancellor, the Provoſt, the Maſter of the Ceremonies, the Great Treaſurer, the Secretary, the Herald, and the Uſher of the Order.

The third is called the King's Order, or the Order of *St. Lewis*, being inſtituted by *Lewis* XIV. in the Year 1693. The King himſelf is the Sovereign and Grand Maſter; and the Dauphin, the preſumptive Heirs to the Crown, the Princes of the Blood, Mareſchals of *France*, the General of the Gallies, &c. are the only Perſons admitted into this Order, which is purely military. All the Knights of this Order wait on the King on the Feaſt of St. *Lewis*, attending him to Maſs; and in the Afternoon is held the Chapter of the Order.

Of the Conſtable, Mareſchals, Colonel General of France, *Maſter of the Ordnance, Admiral.*

THE Conſtable of *France* has of late been accounted the principal Officer of the Crown, and next to the King the chief Commander of the Armies of *France*. He takes Place, and has his Seat in Parliament, immediately after the Princes of the Blood. It was formerly no more than what the Maſter of the Horſe is at preſent, as appears by the Etymology of the Word *Comes Stabuli*.

As to the Antiquity or Original of the Office of Mareſchal of *France*, it is diſputed by Authors. However, according to their primitive Inſtitution, they were but two in Number: But the Neceſſity of Affairs cauſed a Neceſſity of encreaſing their Number; and at other Times they were encreaſed or diminiſhed as Occaſion required. *Lewis* XIV. had a greater Number than ever had been before his Time.

Colonel-General.

As for the Colonel-Generals, that of the Infantry was ſuppreſt at the Death of M. *d'Eſpernon*: But the Offices of Colonel-General of the Light *French* Horſe ſtill continue, as do thoſe of the *Swiſs* and *Griſons*, and alſo of the Dragoons.

Maſter of the Ordnance.

The Maſter of the Ordnance has been of different kinds, according to the different Circumſtances of Time: For before the Invention of Guns, there was a Grand Maſter of the Bows, and battering Inſtruments, whoſe Buſineſs it was to manage and direct the Officers belonging to theſe Machines of War. Theſe Things they called Cranequiers. With them they could beat down the Walls and Gates of Towns and Cities. It is ſaid this Command was inſtituted by St. *Lewis*, who began about the Year 1226; and that *Du Hangeſt* was Maſter of the Croſs-Bows *Anno* 1411, in the Reign of *Charles* VI. But ſince Guns came in Uſe, that Office is changed to Maſter of the Ordnance, who has under him the Maſter of the Artillery, the Maſter of the Bombardiers, &c.

Admiral

The next Grand Officer is the Admiral of *France*. But this Office has undergone many Mutations, according to the arbitrary Pleaſure of the Kings of *France*. This Office was inveſted with an extenſive Power by *Henry* III. in Favour of the Duke of *Joyeuſe*, one of his Minions, then in that Office: But *Lewis* XIII. in the Year 1626 ſuppreſſed both the Offices of Conſtable and Admiral. But in 1669, the Office of Admiral was reſtored, with the additional Epithet of being an Officer of the Crown: But ſtill the King retrenched its ancient Power, and reſerved to himſelf the Power of chuſing all Officers Civil and Military employ'd therein; as Vice-Admirals, Lieutenant-Generals, &c. The King alſo furniſhes the Navy with all Manner of Neceſſaries, and builds the Men of War, and keeps the Management of moſt of the Naval Affairs in his own Hand.

Arſenal.

There are five chief Arſenals in *France*, *viz.* at *Breſt*, *Rochefort*, *Dunkirk*, *Havre-De-Grace*, and *Toulon*. In each of theſe there is an Intendant of Juſtice, whoſe Buſineſs it is to manage and order the Funds, and provide all the Materials for building, repairing, and fitting out the King's Ships. There are alſo inferior Officers; as one Inſpector, one Secretary; alſo proper Perſons to inſtruct Youth in the Art of Navigation.

Court of Admiralty

The Court of Admiralty takes Cognizance of Affairs relating to the Sea, as Wrecks, Commerce, the Abuſe and Management of Officers in their Stations, &c. Appeals may be made to this Court from *Rochel*, *Olonne*, *Marans*, *Calais*, *Boulogne*, *Montreuille*, *Abbeville*, *St. Vallery*, *Eu*, and *Hault* in *Picardy*.

Gallies

I SHALL conclude with a Word or two about the *French* Gallies, who generally ſerve in the *Mediterranean*, and are laid up at *Marſeilles*. The General of the Gallies, and Lieutenant General of the *Levant*, is the Duke of *Vendoſme*, under whom there is one Lieutenant General, who is the Bailiff of *Noailles*, three Chiefs of the Galley-Squadrons, an Intendant that reſides at *Marſeilles*, a Captain of the Port, a Major of the Gallies, forty Captains, two Treaſurers General, and other Officers of leſs Note.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Government of the Provinces of France, *their Arch-biſhopricks, Biſhopricks, &c. Of the Inſtitution of their Parliaments. The Chamber of Accounts at* Paris. *The Court of* Aids. *The* Taillon, *Entries, Gabelle, and other Taxes. Concluding with a Word or two concerning the Royal Treaſury of* France.

THE King's preſent Governors and Lieutenants in the Provinces were formerly entitled Dukes, and the Governors of Cities were called Counts. There were twelve Counts under every Duke, and one Duke over all the reſt, called *The Duke of France.* He was Mayor of the Palace. But this Office was ſuppreſſed by *Hugh Capet,* who afterwards governed the Provinces and Cities by Bailiffs; and the Power of Governors and Lieutenant Generals of the Provinces, is the ſame as the antient Dukes and Counts.

The Government of the ſeveral Provinces and Towns of *France* are diſpoſed of as follows.

Note, G. *ſtands for Governor.*

1. *Paris.* G. Duke of *Greves.* One Lieutetenant under him.

2. *Iſle of France.* G. Duke *d'Eſtrees.* One Lieutenant under him.

3. *Picardy.* G. Duke of *Elbeuf.* He has three Lieutenant-Generals under him, *viz.* thoſe *Lower Picardy, Higher Picardy,* and *Artois.*

4. *Champagne* and *Brie.* G. Prince of *Soubize.* He has four Lieutenant-Generals under him; *viz.* in the Bailiwick of *Rheims*; of *Vitri* and *Chaumont*; of *Langres, Troyes,* and *Sens*; and the Bailiwick of *Brie.*

5. *Burgundy.* G. The Prince of *Conde*: The Survivorſhip to his Son the Duke of *Bourbon.* Under him are five Lieutenancies. 1. *Dijon* and *Chantillon,* with the Bailiwick of *Bar* upon the *Seine.* 2. *Chaalons.* 3. *Macon.* 4. *Auxerrois*; and 5. *Breſs, Bengey, Valromoy,* and Bailiwick of *Gex.*

6. *Dauphine.* G. the Duke of *Feuillade.* Only one Lieutenant-General under him.

7. *Provence.* G. Duke of *Vendoſme.* Only one Lieutenant-General under him.

8. *Languedoc.* G. is the Duke of *Main.* Three Lieutenant-Generals under him; *viz. Higher Languedoc, Lower Languedoc,* and *Sevennes.*

9. The County of *Foix, Donezan,* and *Andere.* G. the Marquefs of *Mirepoix.*

10. The *Lower Navarre* and *Bearne.* G. the Duke of *Grammont,* who is alſo Lieutenant-General of the Kingdom of *Navarre,* and Principality of *Bearne.*

11. *Guyenne* and *Gaſcoigne.* G. the Duke of *Chevreuſe.* There are two Lieutenant-Generals in *Guyenne.*

12. *Saintonge* and *Angoumois.* G. the Duke of *Uſes.* He has but one Lieutenant-General under him.

13. The Country of *Aunis, Rochel, Bourage*; the Iſles of *Rhee, Oleron,* and the adjacent Iſlands. G. is the Count *de Grace Matignon.*

14. *Poitou.* G. the Marquefs *de Vieuville.*

15. *Bretagne.* G. the Count *Tholouſe.*

16. *Normandy.* G. the Duke of *Luxemberg.*

17. *Havre de-Grace,* as comprehending the moſt Weſterly Part of the Country of *Caux,* in *Higher Normandy.* G. the Duke of *Beauvillier.*

18. *Main, Perche,* and the Country of *Laval.* G. Marquefs of *Bullion.*

19. *Orleannois,* as comprehending *Bauſſe,* or the Country of *Chartrain, Orleanoiſe,* with the Country of *Sologne,* the greateſt Part of *Galinois, Biaſois, Vendmoiſe, Dunois,* and *Perche-Gouet.* G. the Marquefs of *Sourdois.* Under him are divers Lieutenant-Generals.

20. *Nivernois.* G. the Duke of *Nevers.* Under him one Lieutenant-General.

21. *Bourbonois.* G. Marquefs of *Valiere.*

22. *Lionnois, Forets,* and *Beaujolois.* G. the Mareſchal *Villeroy.* His Lieutenant-General is his Son, the Duke of *Villeroy.*

23. *Avergne.* G. the Duke of *Bouillon,* with two Lieutenant-Generals.

24. *Limoſin.* G. Count *de Auvergne,* with one Lieutenant-General.

25. *Marche.* G. Marquefs of St. *German Beaupre,* with one Lieutenant-General.

26. *Berry.* G. the Count *d'Aubigny,* with one Lieutenant-General.

27. *Touraine.* G. Marquefs of *Dangeau,* with one Lieutenant-General.

28. *Anjou.* G. the Count of *Armanac,* with one Lieutenant-General.

29. *Saumurois* comprehends Part of the Province of *Anjou* about *Saumur,* above and to the South of the *Loire,* with the Country of *Mirebalais* in the *Higher Poiſtou.* G. is Count of *Cominges,* with one Lieutenant-General.

30. *French Flanders.* G. is the Mareſchal and Duke *Boufflers.* Under him only one Lieutenant-General.

31. *Dunkirk,* the City, Fortreſſes, and Dependencies thereof. G. is the Count *de Medavid de Grancey.*

32. The Province *La Serre,* which comprehends *Montmeddy, Bouillon,* and the Dutchy of *Bar,* the Town and Cittadel of *Stenay, Longwy, Sarlovis,* and *Marſal,* with each a particular Governor.

33. *Metz* and *Verdun.* G. the Duke of *Laferte Senneterre.*

34. *Toul.* G. the Marquefs *del Hoſpital.*

35. *Alſatia.* G. the Duke of *Mazarine,* with one Lieutenant-General.

36. *Franche Comte.* G. Mareſchal *de Duras:* Under him one Lieutenant-General.

37. The County of *Rouſſillon,* of which the Duke *de Noailles* is both Governor and Lieutenant-General.

Beſides theſe Governors and Lieutenant-Generals, and ſeveral Petty-Officers, there is one Perſon entitled the King's Lieutenant. He is a Man in great Power, and ſeems to be a Check upon, rather than an Aſſiſtant to, any of the above-mentioned Governors; and as ſuch there is one choſe who is rather an Enemy than a Friend to the Governor.

Of

Of the Archbiſhopricks and Biſhopricks of France.

IN *France* are eighteen Archbiſhopricks, and a hundred and nineteen Biſhopricks, near 750 Monaſteries, and 200 Nunneries. Of the Archbiſhopricks in Order:

1. The Archbiſhoprick of *Paris*, whoſe Archbiſhop is a Peer of *France*. It comprehends four Biſhopricks, *viz. Chartres*, *Meaux*, *Orleans*, and *Blois*.

2. The Archbiſhoprick of *Lyons*: Under it are four Biſhopricks, *viz.* of *Autun*, *Langres*, *Chaalons*, and *Macon*.

3. The Archbiſhoprick of *Roan*. The Archbiſhop is Primate of *Normandy*, and has ſix Suffragans, *viz. Bayeux*, *Auvraches*, *d' Evreux*, *de Sais*, *Lizieux*, and *Contances*.

4. The Archbiſhoprick of *Tours*, under which are eleven Biſhopricks, *viz. Mans*, *Angers*, *Rennes*, *Nantes*, *Comonaille*, *Vannes*, St. *Paul*, *de Leon*, *de Tregier*, St. *Brieu*, and St. *Malo*.

5. The Archbiſhop of *Sens* has only three Biſhops under him, *viz.* thoſe of *Troyes*, *Auxerre*, and *Nevers*.

6. The Archbiſhoprick of *Triers*: Under it are the Biſhopricks of *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*. They are ſituate in *Germany*, though ſubject to the Crown of *France*.

7. The Archbiſhoprick of *Rheims*, whoſe Archbiſhop is the firſt Peer of the Realm. He has ſeven Suffragans under him, *viz.* the Biſhops of *Soiſſons*, *Chalons* upon the *Maine*, *Laon*, *Senlis*, *Beauvais*, *Amiens*, and *Noyon*.

. *Cambray* was erected into an Archbiſhoprick in the Year 1558, and has under it four Biſhopricks, *viz. Arras*, *Tournay*, St. *Omer*, and *Ipres*.

9. The Archbiſhoprick of *Beſançon*, in *Franche Comte*, under which is only the Biſhoprick of *Bellay*.

10. Under the Archbiſhoprick of *Vienne*, are five Biſhopricks, *viz. Geneva* (but the Nomination is in the Duke of *Savoy* and the See at *Anecy*) alſo St. *Paul*, *Trois*, *Chateaux*, and the joint Biſhoprick of *Toulon* and *Orange*.

11. The Archbiſhop of *Bourges* is Patriarch and Primate of *Aquitain*; he has under him the five Biſhopricks of *Clermont*, *Limoges*, *du Roy*, *de Tulles*, and St. *Flour*.

12. Under the Archbiſhop of *Alby*, are the Biſhopricks of *Rodes*, *Caſtres*, *Cahors*, *de Vabres*, *de Mande*.

13. The Archbiſhop of *Bourdeaux*, whoſe Archbiſhop is Primate of *Aquitain*, has nine Biſhopricks under it, *viz.* thoſe of *Agen*, *Angouleſme*, *de Saintes*, *de Poictiers*, *Perigueux*, *Condon*, *Rochelle*, *Lacon*, and *Sarlat*.

14. The Archbiſhoprick of *Auch* has ten Suffragans under it, *viz. Dax*, *Lautoure*, *Comminges*, *Conserans*, *de Aire*, *Bazar*, *Tarbes*, *Oleron*, *Leſtor*, and *Bayonne*.

15. The Archbiſhop of *Narbonne* has under him the Biſhopricks of *Beziers*, *Ayde*, *Carcaſſon*, *Niſmes*, *Montpelier*, *Lodeve*, *de St. Pous*, *de Tomieres* and *Alet*; and as for the Biſhopricks of *Perpignan*, and that of *Urgel* in the County of *Rouſſillon*, which ſome would have to belong to the Archbiſhoprick of *Terragone*, they alſo belong to that of *Narbonne*.

16. *Tholouſe* is an Archbiſhoprick that has in its Province the Biſhopricks of *Pamiers*, *Montauban*, *Mirepoix*, *Lavoure*, *Rieux*, *Lombes*, and *de St. Papoul*.

17. Under the Archbiſhoprick of *Aix*, are the Biſhops of *d' Apte*, *Ries*, *Frejus*, *Cap*, and *Caſteron*.

18. Under the Archbiſhoprick of *Ambrun* are the Biſhopricks of *Digue*, *Grace*, *Vence*, *Glandeve*, *Senes*, *Nice*. *Strasburg* is an independant Biſhoprick of itſelf.

Of the Inſtitution of the Parliament of France.

JUSTICE was formerly adminiſter'd by the Kings themſelves; but that being a Buſineſs too extenſive for one Perſon, they began to content themſelves with only taking cognizance of the Affairs of State and for the Adminiſtration of Juſtice they eſtabliſh'd a certain Council, which they then call'd a Parliament, which finally decided both civil and criminal Matters, and amongſt them all the Peers of *France* both Spiritual and Temporal ſate. The Parliament of *France* were wont to follow the King wherever he went, till King *Philip* the Fair fix'd them at *Paris*. This Auguſt Aſſembly, by the Integrity of their Decrees, acquir'd ſo much Reputation in all Parts, that Popes, Emperors, Kings, and foreign Princes, have had their Differences determin'd by them, as was the caſe between the Emperor *Frederick* and Pope *Innocent* IV, whoſe Difference was accommodated by the Parliament of *Paris*; as was alſo the Difference between the King of *Portugal* and the King of *Caſtile*.

Philip the Fourth, ſirnamed the *Fair*, who began about the Year 1216, reduc'd the Parliament to two regular annual Meetings, *viz.* at *Eaſter* and *All-Saints*. He divided them into two Houſes, or Bodies; one call'd the Grand Chamber, and the other the Chamber of Inqueſt. And now we are to obſerve, that when there was but this one Parliament in *France*, all the Kingdom had recourſe to them for Deciſion and Determination of all weighty Affairs, according to their reſpective Chambers.

THE Court of Parliament of *Paris* conſiſts of ten Chambers, *viz.* the Grand Chamber, the *Tournelle* Civil, the *Tournelle* Criminal, five Chambers of Inqueſts, and two of Requeſts. The Archbiſhop of *Paris* and the Abbot of St. *Dennis* are Counſellors in Parliament, where they have their proper Seats and Votes; as have alſo all the Counſellors of Honour, and Maſters of the Requeſts, to the Number of four. Chambers Ten.

THE *Tournelle* Civil was conſtituted *Anno* 1667 and 1669. It takes Cognizance of Appeals in civil Matters to the Sum of 2000 Livres, or 100 Livres Rent. It conſiſts of a Preſident, four Counſellors of the Grand Chamber, and four Counſellors of each Chamber of Inqueſt, who take it by turns each three Months. *Tournelle* Civil.

THE *Tournelle* Criminal takes Cognizance of Criminal Appeals, and Prieſts, Gentlemen, and Perſons of Fortune have the Privilege of being judg'd there. It conſiſts of five Preſidents, nine Lay-Counſellors of the Grand Chamber, who take turns each ſix Months, and two Counſellors of each Chamber of Inqueſt, who take their turns each three Months. Juſtice was anciently adminiſtered by the Bailiff and Seneſchals, whom the King ſent into the Country for that purpoſe in former Times, when the Parliament was in Motion with the King as mention'd above: But when the Parliament became ſedentary, there was an Appeal to them from the Sentence of the Bailiffs and Seneſchals paſs'd before. *Tournelle* Criminal.

AFTER the Parliament of *France* was ſettled at *Paris*, there was another Parliament in *France* for ſome ſmall Time, when the ſame *Philip* the Fair inſtituted the Parliament of *Tholouſe* in the Year 1302, and it was made ſedentary in the Several

Year

Year 1443 by *Charles* VII. The Countries under its Jurisdiction are *Languedoc*, the *Sevennes*, which comprehends the Countries of *Vavarais*, *Velay*, *Gevandan*, and *Rovergue*; almost all *Quercy*, Part of *Condomois*, *Armagnac*, *Bigorn*, *Cominges*, the Country of *Couserans*, and the Country of *Foix*.

Roan. THE Parliament of *Roan*, the Sovereign Court of *Normandy*, was instituted in the Year 1302 by *Philip* the Fair, under the Name of the *Exchequer*. It was made perpetual by *Lewis* XII. *Anno* 1499; but it did not bear the Name of a Parliament till the Reign of *Francis* I. *Anno* 1515. All *Normandy* is under its Jurisdiction.

Grenoble. THE Parliament of *Grenoble* was instituted and made sedentary by *Charles* VII. *Anno* 1453: It comprehends all *Dauphine*.

Bourdeaux. THE Parliament of *Bourdeaux* was instituted and made sedentary *Anno* 1462 by *Lewis* XI. The Countries subject to it are *Saintonge*, *Perigord*, *Limosin*, Part of *La Marche*, *Agenois*, *Bazadois*, Part of *Condomois*, the right *Gascony*, the Countries of *Labourt*, *Landes*, and *Guyenne* in particular.

Dijon. The Parliament of *Dijon* was instituted and made sedentary by *Lewis* XI. in the Year 1476: It comprehends most of the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, *la Bresse*, *Beugey*, *Vabromey*, and the Bailiwick of *Gex*.

Aix. THE Parliament of *Aix* was instituted and made sedentary by *Lewis* XII. *Anno* 1505: All *Provence* is subject to it.

Rennes. The Parliament of *Rennes* was set up and made sedentary by *Henry* II. *Anno* 1553. The Parliament has all *Bretagne* under its Jurisdiction. One half of the Presidents and Counsellors serve one half Year, and the other half the other.

Pau. THE Parliament of *Pau* was instituted and made sedentary by *Henry* I. King of *Navarre* *Anno* 1510: It takes in the Province of *Bearn*, the County of *Soule*, and the lower *Navarre*.

Metz. THE Parliament of *Metz* was instituted and made sedentary by *Lewis* XIII. *Anno* 1663. It was intended for the Dutchy of *Lorain*, the three Bishopricks of *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, and the *Netherlands*, &c. but by several Treaties and Concessions it is now reduced to a narrow Compass.

LEWIS XIV. established a Parliament for *Burgundy* at *Dole*, *Anno* 1674; but it is now remov'd to *Bezanson*. There is also a Parliament at *Tournay* for *French Flanders*; and lastly, there are some Sovereign Councils, from whence there is no Appeal, especially that noted one for *Rousillon*, or *French Catalonia*, held at *Perpignan*.

Bezanson. *Tournay*

Of the Chamber Accounts at Paris.

THIS Chamber was establish'd at *Paris* in the Reign of St. *Lewis* IX. and afterwards confirm'd by *Philip* the Fair, when he made the Parliament sedentary at *Paris*. This Chamber had at first two Presidents, and one being to be a Clergyman, was usually an Archbishop, or at least a Bishop: The other was generally a Layman, tho' sometimes they were both Clergymen. There were eight Clerks; two to keep the Accounts, one the Journal or Register, and the rest to examine the Accounts. 'Till the Reign of *Francis* I. the Chamber of Accounts consisted but of three Presidents, twelve Masters, and sixteen Clerks, who have since been call'd Auditors, and were by *Henry* II. advanc'd to the Dignity of being the King's Counsellors: But since that Time the Number of Officers are much increas'd; so that now it consists of a first President, with twelve others, seventy-four Masters, thirty-four Correctors, seventy-eight Auditors, the King's Advocate and Procurator General, and four of his Substitutes, a Comptroller General, two principal Secretaries, two Keepers of the Books, and a chief Usher, besides one and thirty Proctors, a Commissary, Receivers, and others.

IN this Chamber the most important Affairs of the Government have been debated, and upon Occasion the principal Officers of the Crown and the Parliament have been called hither, and it had not only a Power of judging Matters finally, relating to the Finances, as well Civil as Criminal, but also to the Policy, as the ordering Bridges, High-ways, Causeys, *&c.*

HERE they register the Oaths of Fidelity, taken by the Archbishops, Bishops, and Royal Abbots: Here they examine the Accounts of the Royal Treasury, those of the King's Houshold, and all the Officers that are accountable for Money: Here they receive the Fealty and Homage of the Vassals of Principalities, Dutchies, Peerages, Marquisates, Counties, Viscounties, Baronies, *&c.* Here they register Declarations of War, Treaties of Peace, and other Affairs of the Government; the Creation of Dutchies, Peerages, Principalities, *&c.*

THERE are other Chambers of Accounts in *France*, kept at *Dijon*, *Grenoble*, *Aix*, *Montpelier*, *Pau*, *Nantes*, and *Roan*.

Of the Court of Aids in France.

THIS Court is of longer standing than any Parliament in *France*, except *Paris* and *Tholouse*. It was set up about the Year 1315 by *Charles* V. then Dauphin, and by a peculiar Prerogative the Estates of the Royal Family and first Princes of the Blood are register'd in this Court. The Jurisdiction of the Court of Aids is to take Cognizance of, and finally to decide, Matters relating to the Tailles, Aid, Gabels, Impositions, and all Forms and Rights belonging to the King, and all Decrees made in reference to the Effects of such as are accountable to this Court.

THERE are other Courts of this kind in *France*, besides this at *Paris*; as at *Dijon*, which is united to the Parliament there; and the like at *Grenoble*, *Montpelier*, *Aix*, *Montauban*, and *Pau*, all united to their respective Parliaments.

BUT to make the word *Aids*, or the *French* word *les Aides*, more intelligible, you are to understand, that *Aids* is a particular Excise upon Wine, but different according to the different Parts of *France*. At *Bourdeaux* they have that call'd a *Tonneau*; but in *Paris*, and the Parts adjacent, they have *Muyds*, which is a third Part of a *Tonneau*, and contains about 280 Pints *Paris* Measure, which is near as many Quarts at *London*. Now when the Proprietors of the Vineyards about *Paris* have sold their Wines, they are obliged to declare it at a certain Office appointed for that purpose, and to tell the Officer at what Price they sold it by the *Muyd*, and to pay one Penny *per* Livre, which is about Eighteen-pence Sterling, besides an additional Duty of Six-pence Half-penny *per Muyd*. And the Wine-Coopers, or others, when they carry Wine to *Paris*, are obliged to make the like Declaration, and pay the like Sum at the Gates of *Paris*: Nay here they put what Price they please upon the Wine, which sometimes enhances the Duty very much; and there are other Duties payable to the King for Lodging, or selling Wine in *Paris*.

THESE

THESE Duties and Imports are not confin'd to *Paris* only, but extended all over the Kingdom, except in the Province of *Languedoc*, *Guienne*, *Limoſin*, and *Bretagne*. The Province of *Normandy*, inſtead of the eighth, pays Exciſe to the Value of the fourth Part of all the Liquor drank in the publick Houſes, whether Wine, Beer, Cyder, Aqua Vitæ, *&c.* In the Province of *Bretagne* there is an Exciſe call'd the great and little Duties of the States, which comes to 100 Livres *per Tonneau*, *Bourdeaux* Meaſure. This is laid upon Wine ſold only in publick Houſes; yet this Income of the Wine a dozen Years ago was farm'd at three Millions of Livres, of which the King had two Millions and five hundred Thouſand. There is alſo another Impoſt call'd the Billot paid to the King only, which alone brings him in 500000 Livres yearly. He hath alſo a Duty upon Wines brought to *Bretagne* by Sea, and ſeveral other Duties; to which in all it is allow'd by a modeſt Computation, that every Ton of Wine in *France* pays nine Pound four Shillings and Six-pence Duty.

Of the Taille, or Taillon, and how raiſed.

LEWIS XI. was the Firſt that openly invaded the Liberties of his Subjects; he was alſo the Firſt that impoſed this Tax without the Conſent of the three Eſtates, and alſo made it ſucceſſive. The *Taille* is threefold; Real, Perſonal, or Mix'd. *Real*, is when it is impos'd upon the Lands, where the Perſon pays ſo much to the King for every Acre of Land he is poſſeſs'd of. *Perſonal*, is when it is aſſeſſed upon any perſonal Eſtate; that is, among the *French*, the Money that a Man is ſuppoſed to have in his own Hand, or to be worth in Land or Houſes purchaſed. Laſtly, the *Mix'd* is ſo call'd, becauſe in ſome Parts of the Kingdom the Lands are not only aſſeſſed ſo much an Acre, but the Proprietor is alſo taxed for his Money, or his Art or Ability to get it.

THE real Taille is the leaſt burthenſome, becauſe a Man never pays for any thing but what he has; whereas the perſonal and mix'd may cauſe a Man to pay for what he has not as well as what he has. It is not certainly known what this Taille brings in Yearly to the Crown; but it has been known to raiſe forty Millions of Livres, which is about three Millions Sterling yearly; and that in a Time of profound Peace. It muſt be allow'd to bring in much more in a Time of War.

AS to the Way of levying this Tax, the King in Council firſt reſolves what Sum he will have raiſed upon his Subjects; then Commiſſions are iſſu'd out to the General Treaſurers of the Generalities of the Kingdom, to give them Power to levy the Money; in purſuance of which they make a Diviſion of the ſame, proportionable to the Extent of the ſeveral Elections under them. This Diviſion is ſent to the King, who thereupon ſends Commiſſioners to the Officers of each Election, by which they are empower'd to raiſe ſuch a Sum in their reſpective Diſtricts. Theſe meet and make the Regiſters of Taxes, wherein each Town, Borough, Hamlet, or Pariſh, is aſſeſſed; and each Pariſh has one of theſe Regiſters ſent to it; whereupon the Inhabitants make one of them the Collector to raiſe the Money, by taxing each Inhabitant according to his Eſtate, though, as obſerv'd above, in the perſonal or mix'd Taille, either Favour or Prejudice may govern; and yet they are very ſevere in Caſe their abſolute Demands are not ſtrictly and immediately comply'd with.

THE *Taillon* is an additional Tax, which was firſt rais'd by *Henry* II. *Anno* 1549, towards the Pay of his *Gens d' Arms*, who then lay billoted upon the Villages; but though that Cuſtom of billoting them be now laid aſide, the *Taillon* is ſtill continued.

Of the Tax call'd Entries.

THIS Tax is an Exciſe upon all cloven-footed Beaſts. The Cuſtom was, and I ſuppoſe is ſtill, if not more, for every Ox nine Shillings, for a Cow ſeven Shillings and Six-pence, for a Calf or Hog three Shillings and Four-pence, for a Sheep Half a Crown, for a Lamb Twenty-pence. Fowls pay Four-pence out of every Livre they ſell for. This Duty alone has been let to Farm at 20000 Pounds a Year. The Duty upon Timber, or Wood for Service, has been let for 15384 Pounds a Year; and Wood for Fuel pays Fifteen-pence a Load Duty; beſides Duties on Hay, Charcoal, Fiſh, Salt, freſh Eggs, Butter, and Cheeſe; and all manner of Herbs pay four Shillings in the Pound; nay, at *Paris* even the Aſhes and old Lees of Wine pay Duty.

AND theſe Entries are not confin'd to *Paris* only, but are impoſed upon other Places; but not to all alike; as for Inſtance, at *Caen* in *Normandy* they pay for every Pound of Butter one Half-penny, for a Load of Wood Fuel Ten-pence, for a Load of Timber Thirteen and Four-pence, for a Load of Hay one Shilling and Eight-pence, for a Horſe Load of Wood Two-pence Half-penny, for a Horſe Load of Fiſh Three and Five-pence, for a Man or Woman's Load of Fiſh Eight-pence, and for a Horſe Load of Corn one Shilling.

Of the Tax call'd the Gabelle.

GABELLE is the Right the King aſſumes in Salt. The Time of its firſt Impoſition is not known, but we find, as far back as *Philip the Long*, *Anno* 1318, that he took a Piece of Money call'd a Double, as Duty upon every Pound of Salt. But the Gabelle, as it now is, is not ſo much a Duty laid by the *French* King upon his Subjects, as it is engroſſing their Trade to himſelf; whereby his Subjects are oblig'd to buy their Salt of him, and at his own Price.

WE are next to conſider the vaſt Profits he makes of it. This Salt is chiefly produc'd in the Salt Marſhes of the Country of *Aunis* and *Xaintonge*; where a certain Meaſure, call'd *un Muyds de Boſs*, which weighs 5200 Pounds, is ſometimes bought for Three and Six-pence, but ſcarce ever exceeds to Four and Six pence *Engliſh* Money: And here the *French* King buys it, to ſell to his Subjects. He ſells it them by a Meaſure call'd the *Minot*, fifty-two of which make one *Muyds de Boſs*; and he ſells it to them at *Paris* as ſixty-four Livres the *Minot*, which is 3328 Livres the *Muyds de Boſs*: And if we reckon the *French* Livre at Eighteen-pence, 3328 Livres amount to above two hundred forty-nine Pounds Sterling the *Muyds de Boſs* of Salt, which coſt him but four Shillings and Six-pence at moſt; and though it does not bear that Price in ſome other Provinces, yet it falls but little ſhort of it; and it is often one third dearer in Times of War than in Times of Peace.

Of the Treaſury Royal.

THE Treaſury Royal, or *l'Eſpargne*, in *France* is the ſame which the *Romans* call'd *Ærarium Populi*. Into this Office are diſcharg'd

all the publick Receipts of all Duties of *Taille*, *Taillon*, and in short of all the King's Revenue; and therein also all the Treasurers, fix'd for distributing the King's Money, come to receive the Sums necessary for the Administration and Execution of their Places of Office or Trust. The Treasurer was put in the Place of the antient Receiver-General by *Francis* I. and after many Mutations, that Place is now managed by two Officers, under the Title of Keepers of the Royal Treasury; and they are honoured with the additional Dignity of Counsellors in his Council.

CHAP. XIII.

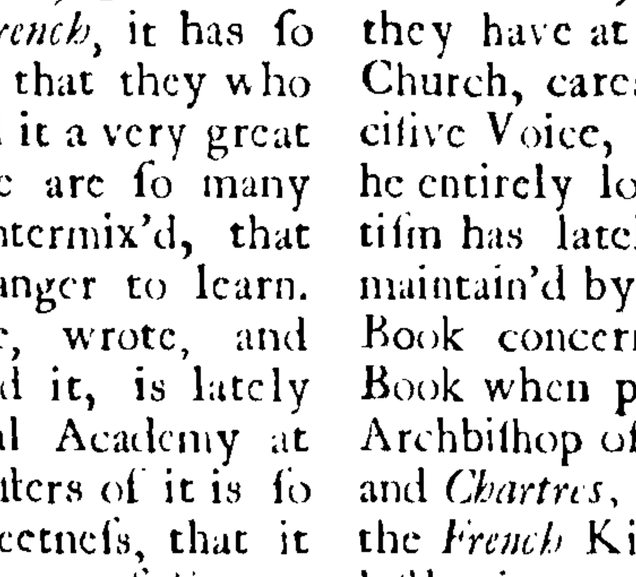
Of the Soil, Product, Language, and Religion of France.

Soil. THE Soil of *France* is generally extraordinary fruitful, not only in Corn and Fruit, but also in Hemp and Flax; which last is not only produc'd in great Quantities, but curiously manufactur'd; as witness the fine Linnen made at *Cambray*, call'd therefore Cambraick, or more commonly Cambrick; also the fine Lace made at *Mechlin*, *Brussels*, &c. which are so well known, that they are no otherwise distinguished than by the Names of the respective Places where they are made. But we must not forget the fine *French* Wines, so well known in *England*, that the best Way to get a true Description of them is to go to the Places where they are sold without Adulteration, if such a Place can be found, and let the impartial and undepray'd Taste be Judge.

But besides what has been already mention'd, *France* affords plenty of Salt; also Fish, Almonds Oade, Canvas, Coral, Paper, Skin, Verdigrise, and Cream-Tartar; and of Silks, Alamode, Lutestrings, and rich flower'd Silks, &c.

Language As to the Language of the *French*, it has so near an Affinity with the *Latin*, that they who are Masters of the Latter will find it a very great help to the Former. But there are so many *German* and *Gothick* Words intermix'd, that makes it more difficult for a Stranger to learn. But the *French*, as now spoke, wrote, and taught, by those that understand it, is lately very much refin'd by the Royal Academy at *Paris*; and by those that are Masters of it is so admir'd for its Elegancy and Sweetness, that it has now gain'd Ground in most Courts of *Europe*, so that a Person, however other-ways embellish'd with the Ornaments of Nature or Art, without the *French* Language is far from being qualify'd for a Traveller; whereas with it, and a few other necessary Endowments, he is fit to appear at any Court in *Europe*.

Rel. THE establish'd Religion of *France* is that of the Roman Catholicks; but the reform'd Protestants, commonly call'd *Hugonots*, were tolerated till the Reign of *Lewis* XIV, who by his Declaration in the Year 168; abolish'd the Edict of *Nantz*, extirpated the reform'd Religion, and enjoin'd the Profession of the Roman Catholick Religion under the severest Penalties. This caused great Confusion and Destruction in the Protestant Churches in the Dominions of *France*; Multitudes being driven from their Habitations, upon the Account of their Religion, and forc'd to seek for shelter amongst Strangers in Foreign Countries. But notwithstanding that their great Eye-sore the Protestants are so far suppress'd amongst them, yet they cannot agree amongst themselves; their Differences in some Points amounting so high, and in such weighty Points of Doctrine, that Infallibility itself, if such they have at the Head of the Roman Catholick Church, cares not to interfere, to give his decisive Voice, lest gaining a Friend of one Party, he entirely lose the other. The Sect of Quietism has lately crept in amongst them, and is maintain'd by the Archbishop of *Cambray* in his Book concerning the *Internal Life*; but that Book when publish'd was first censured by the Archbishop of *Paris*, and the Bishops of *Meaux* and *Chartres*, and next it was complain'd of by the *French* King in his Letter to the Pope; and lastly it was condemn'd, though the Author offer'd to maintain his Doctrine before the infallible Head of the Church at *Rome*, if he might have been suffered to appear before him.



A DE-

A DESCRIPTION

OF THE

Kingdom of *SPAIN*.

CHAP. I.

The Situation, Bounds, and Extent of Spain; *with an Account of it's Government, and Succession of Kings, from its first Peopling to the Birth of our Blessed Saviour.*

SPAIN was call'd *Iberia* and *Hesperia*, and by some *Spania*; most likely from the Name of some of their Kings, as I shall have Occasion to give some probable Conjectures in the Course and Succession of their Names.

SPAIN is bounded on the North with the Bay of *Biscay*; on the East with the *Mediterranean*; on the South with *Gibraltar*, and the *Straits-Mouth*; and on the West with *Portugal* and the *Atlantick* Ocean. It lies between Latitude 36 Degrees and 44 Degrees North; and the Easternmost Part of *Spain* being nearly under the Meridian of *London*, the Westermost extends to about 19 Degrees of Longitude West from *London*. It is something of a square Form, about 480 Miles from North to South, and 320 from East to West.

BECAUSE I would avoid both the Extreams, (*viz.* imposing Fiction upon the Belief of the Credulous on one Hand, or omitting the Relation of necessary Facts on the other,) I would premise, that it is evident *Spain*, as well as other Kingdoms of the World, were peopled by *Noah*, and consequently by some of his three Sons at first; and to come a little nearer, we have it in authentick History, that some part of *Asia*, and all *Europe*, was given to *Japhet*; and though it can scarce be suppos'd to be given him under that Name of *Europe*, with due Limits and Bounds affixed to it, as is the Case in Kingdoms and Principalities in this populous Age of the World, (there being but a small Part of the World then known,) yet his Inheritance being appointed to the Westward, it is natural to believe, that as his Family and Succession increas'd and grew populous, it would be an easy Matter for them to spread themselves still further, to the Westward to make more Room; and much more so as there were no Inhabitants to the Westward of them to obstruct their Progress; so that they might be said to make Acquisitions, not Conquests, as meeting with no body in Possession to refill them.

SOME, and not without good Reason, corroborate this Opinion from *Gen.* x. 5. Speaking of *Japhet* and his Sons, it is said, *By these were the Isles of the* Gentiles *divided in their Lands*, &c. Now all will allow that those remote Western Parts, or if they had any Knowledge of our Islands now call'd *England* and *Ireland*, they and the Continents upon which they border, are more likely than any other the *Isles and Gentiles*, said to be divided and possess'd by *Japhet* and those who descended from him; and as it is certain these, as well as all other Parts of the Earth, were peopled from *Shem*, *Ham*, or *Japhet*, those small Hints above may with the utmost Probability fix it upon *Japhet*.

NOT to enter into a detail of *Japhet*'s Progeny, I shall keep close to the Succession, as it relates to *Spain*. It is said *Japhet* had seven Sons, (some say Eight, but the Number is not material:) His Son *Tubal*, with his Wife *Noga*, were the first that began to people *Spain* in the Year before *Christ* 163, as in the Margin. He gave the *Spaniards* Laws written in Verse, in the *Chaldean* Tongue; and first calculated the Year to consist of 365 Days six Hours; but that Account was afterwards diluted, till *Julius Cæsar* renewed the Institution, which is since call'd the *Julian* Account. *Tubal* dy'd in the Year before *Christ* 2008. *Tubal.* B. C. 2163.

Note, the Years mention'd in the Margin, till we come to the Time of our Saviour's Birth, are the Year before Christ; *but those after that Time, will be the Year of* Christ, *as in other Christian Dates.*

The Second King of *Spain* was *Iberus*. From him *Spain* was called *Iberia*: The River *Ibro* also takes its Name from him. *Iberus.* 2008.

3. *Idubeda* gave Name to a Mountain in *Spain* of the same Name. 1971.

4. *Brigus*, who, it is said, was the first that made use of Coat Armory in *Spain*. 1917.

5. *Tagus*, Son of *Brigus*: He gave Name to the River *Tagus*, which runs by *Lisbon* into the *Atlantick* Ocean. In his time the People began to be much increas'd, and advance'd further into the Country. 1855.

6. *Betus* the Son of *Tagus*. 1825.

7. *Gerion*,

1764. 7. *Gerion*, or *Stranger*: He was rich, and the first that found Treasures of Gold and Silver in *Spain*. *Osiris* the *Ægyptian* came into *Spain*, vanquish'd *Gerion* in a Battle, and introduc'd into *Spain* the Lunary Calculation of the Year. He taught them the Use of Corn and Grain, and further improv'd them in cultivating the Earth. He invented the Plow, and the Pruning of Vines. The Battle above-mention'd, where *Osiris* kill'd *Gerion*, was fought near the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and *Gerion*'s three Sons buried him upon a Rock. He is said to be the first ever buried in *Spain*; their Custom having been to hang the dead Bodies upon Trees, or cast them into the Sea.

1759. 8, 9, 10. The three Sons of *Gerion* reign'd jointly, and the conquering *Hercules* coming to *Spain* at the same Time, they fought him, and he kill'd them all three.

1717. 11. *Hispalus*, the Son of *Hercules*, to whom *Hercules* gave the Kingdom, compleated the Conquest of it. From him the City of *Seville* was call'd *Hispalus*.

1700. 12. *Hispanus*, the Son of *Hispalus*: He gave this Kingdom its antient Name of *Hispania*, by which it is well known to this Day,

1668. 13. *Hercules*, call'd also *Orus Libicus*, was Grandson of *Hispanus* and Son of *Osiris*.

1649. 14. *Hesperus*, one of *Hercules*'s Captains, succeeded: It was from him that *Spain* was call'd *Hesperia*

1629. 15. *Atlas Palus*, Brother of *Hesperus*.

1628. 16. *Sicorus*, or *Orus*: It is said *Moses* was born in his Reign.

1583. 17. *Sicanus* Son of *Sicorus*.

1552. 18. *Siceleus* Son of *Sicanus*.

1508. 19. *Lusus* Son of *Siceleus*.

14[illegible]. 20. *Siculus* Son of *Lusus*.

1416 21. *Testa* the *African*: In his time the *Zacynthians* came into *Spain*, and built the City of *Saguntum*.

1442 22. *Romus* Son of *Testa*: He founded the City of *Valence*.

1309. 23. *Palatuus* Son of *Romus*: He had a peaceable Reign, till *Lucinius* a *Spaniard*, surnamed *Cacus*, a Robber, rebelled against him; and *Cacus* being follow'd by the Vulgar, he fought *Palatuus* and vanquish'd him; and

1291. 24. *Cacus* succeeded in the Kingdom. He first taught the *Spaniards* the Art of Casting, Founding, and Forging, and to make offensive Arms, &c but there yet remaining a Party of *Palatuus*'s Friends in *Spain*, he rais'd a strong Force, and drove *Cacus* out; and

1255. *Palatuus* recovered his Kingdom, and held it six Years and then he dy'd. In his time *Hercules* the *Theban* came into *Spain*, and plunder'd it of great Riches in Gold and Silver.

1249. 25. *Erithreus*, a Relation of *Palatuus*, succeeded. It is said *Troy* was destroy'd in his Time.

1182. 26. *Gargoris*,

1105. 27. *Abidis* the Grandson of *Gargoris*, being the natural Son of his Daughter; but being a Bastard, *Gargoris* was resolv'd to make him away; and in order to that, he expos'd him to Wild-Beasts, then to Mastif Dogs; but neither of these prevailing, he caused him to be thrown into the Sea: He escap'd that also, but he durst not appear where he was known, and so became Wild in the Woods, and happen'd to be taken in a Net like a Savage Beast, and brought to *Gargoris*, who knew him by some Marks, took him home, and caused him to be instructed; and he succeeding, was accounted one of the best of their Kings.

The Account we have of *Spain* is now for some time very uncertain; but I shall keep to what is most authentick and probable. After *Abidis* the *Celtæ Braccati* came into *Spain* from *France*; and as they were *Celtæ*, and the *Spaniards Iberians*, they call'd themselves *Celtiberians*, a People famous in After-Ages, and who inhabited chiefly near the River *Ebro*, between *Navarre* and old *Castile*.

But here to do Justice to the History, we find others of no less Authority than the former, who are of Opinion that *Spain* was not peopled by *Tubal*; and we would hence infer the Difficulty, if not Impossibility, of reconciling these two seeming inconsistent Accounts. First, say they who espouse the latter Opinion, *Tubal* could not reasonably be supposed to come to *Spain* by Sea, because Navigation (except bare Coasting) was not then known: But this I look upon as no Argument at all; for you see in the Beginning of this Chapter, the Probability of *Japhet*'s Progeny coming to *Spain* by Land. But Secondly, as *Spain* and *France* are both upon one Continent, and contiguous, and as *France* lies to the North-Eastward from *Spain*, or nearer the Scene or Place of Creation, from whence the first Inhabitants must of Course proceed, it is very probable they might in their Peregrination reach *France* before they reach'd *Spain*, or perhaps near the same Time; which is a plain Proof that as *Spain* was certainly peopled by the Progeny of *Noah*, so it might, for Reasons abovementioned, as probably be by the Race of *Japhet* and *Tubal* in their Progress to the Westward, which is no way inconsistent with their being peopled by way of *France*, since there was no other way of coming at *Spain* by Land, and we find in those times of the Infancy of Navigation so very little Probability of their arriving at *Spain* by Sea.

But to return to a farther Account of *Spain*: Horse-mills & Money. Some Years after the Reign of *Abidis*, the *Rodians* came into *Spain*, and built the City of *Roses*, in the Gulf of *Lyons*, near the *Pyrenian* Mountains: They brought in the Use of Horse-mills and Money. After them came the *Phenicians*, who understood Sea-Affairs much better than the *Rhodians*, and at that time of Day better than any other People; and they frequenting the Coast of *Spain* and *Portugal*, and finding it very rich, advanc'd as far as the antient *Erithrea*, now *Cadiz* or *Cales*, near the *Straits-mouth*. Here they establish'd a Colony, and then extended themselves further along the Coast of *Andalusia*, and there settled themselves about 822 Years before *Christ*, and continued there with little Opposition about 200 Years. But about the Year before *Christ* 622, the *Tartassians* (the Inhabitants of *Andalusia* and the South-west Parts of *Spain*,) drove the *Phenicians* from the Continent, when some that were expell'd remain'd in the Isle of *Cadiz*. B C 822 621

About the Year before *Christ* 547, the *Phocians* came in great Numbers from *Greece* to *Spain*, and in *Catalonia* built the City of *Emporia* or *Emporia*. The *Phenicians* were still troublesome to the *Andalusians*, and the better to execute their Design, call'd to their Assistance the *Athenians*, who (the latter especially) fitted out a great Fleet of Ships, as it might be call'd at that Day, under the Command of *Mavelal*, who landed in *Andalusia*, and pillaged the Coast, and built many Forts. The *Carthaginians* now growing strong, and having got good Footing in *Andalusia*, they began to contrive to get rid of their Masters the *Phenicians*, who sent for them, and to whose Assistance they came to *Spain*, and quarrelling with them accordingly, the *Carthaginians* drove the *Phenicians* quite out of *Spain*, and made 54 4

themselves

themſelves Maſters of the Iſland of *Cadiz*. *Sapho* was then Chief or Commander of the *Carthaginians*, after *Marerbel*, and *Sapho* was ſucceeded by *Hanno* and *Hamilco*, who going upon Diſcoveries, one upon the *Spaniſh*, and the other upon the *African* Coaſt, left *Giſco* to govern *Spain*. His chief Care was to extort Riches from the Subjects for himſelf, which when he had got to his Mind, he was making off towards *Carthage*; but in his Paſſage was caſt away and loſt all.

Hannibal ſucceeded. He built the City of *Alvor*, near *Cape St. Vincent*, in the Kingdom of *Algarve*. The *Spaniards* of *Andaluſia* being at that time at variance with the *Portugueſe*, (call'd then the *Luſitanians*) *Hannibal* himſelf engaging in the Battle in the *Portugueſe*'s Intereſt, was ſlain, abundance being kill'd on both Sides.

B C. 428. *Mago* the *Carthaginian* ſucceeded. He was in the Iſland of *Majorca*, when he heard of the Death of *Hannibal*; but haſting to the Relief of his Country-Men, he govern'd three Years.

Hanno ſucceeded him in the Government of *Spain*; but he was ſo covetous and cruel, that his Subjects aroſe againſt him. But he calling for Succour from *Carthage*, uſed the *Spaniards* worſe than before, whereupon he was recall'd.

263. About 263 Years before *Chriſt*, the firſt War between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians* began; in which the latter having ſuffered very much, made Peace, and to repair their Loſs by the *Romans*, reſolv'd upon an abſolute Conqueſt of *Spain*: To effect which, they ſent *Hamilcar*, with a powerful Army, and abſolute Authority, into *Spain*. He took with him his Son *Hannibal*,

B C. 236 yet but nine Years of Age. He built a City on the Banks of the River *Ibro*, which he call'd *Carthage*; and having made an Alliance with his Neighbours, he built *Barcelona*; but he was kill'd in a Battle with the *Edetans*, a People of

228. *Catalonia*, in the Year before *Chriſt* 228.

Aſdrubal, Son in Law to *Hamilcar*, ſucceeded. He was well belov'd, and conſequently powerful. In the Year *B. C.* 225. he laid the Foundation of the City which he then call'd *New Carthage*, but is now call'd *Carthagena*, on the South-Eaſt Coaſt of *Spain*. The *Romans*, jealous of the Progreſs of the *Carthaginians* in *Spain*, ſent to *Aſdrubal* to deſire him not to diſturb the *Saguntines*, or any other their Confederates, nor to croſs the River *Ibro*; to all which he ſwore: But ſpent the three following Years in Preparations for War, without any regard to his Oath. But he having cauſed a Perſon of Character to be aſſaſſinated, one of the murder'd Perſon's

220 Slaves kill'd *Aſdrubal B. C.* 220.

Hannibal then ſucceeded to the Government of *Spain*; and as he mortally hated the *Romans*, he was glad of this firſt Opportunity to make War upon them; but it prov'd the Ruin of him and his Country. His firſt Work was to ſubdue the *Carpetans*, or People of the Kingdom of *Toledo*; and he puſhed his Conqueſt to the City of *Toledo* the Capital. He then laid Siege to *Saguntum*, took it, and demoliſh'd it to the Ground; and then paſs'd the *Alps* towards *Rome*; where we muſt leave him, his Tranſactions at *Rome* not belonging to the Hiſtory of *Spain*: But ſhall refer the Reader to the former Part of this Book, the Deſcription of the Pope's Dominions in *Italy*, where Chap II. is the Hiſtory of antient *Rome*, and in Page 596 is the ſecond *Punick* War under *Hannibal*, that we are now ſpeaking of.

Cneus Scipio was then ſent from *Rome*, by way of *France*, to *Spain*. He made himſelf Maſter of all the Coaſt as far as the River *Ebro*. He afterwards defeated *Hanno*, and deſtroy'd the Fleet of *Carthage* ravaging the Coaſt as far as *Cadiz*, and taking an incredible Number of Places.

Cornelius Scipio, Brother to the aforeſaid *Cneius Scipio*, join'd his Brother with Recruits, and took the *Spaniſh* Hoſtages, which the *Carthaginians* kept at *Saguntum*, and generouſly return'd them to their Friends, which very much gain'd the Affection of the People.

Scipio. The two *Scipio's*, elevated with their Succeſs, attack'd and beat *Aſdrubal*, who was on his March for *France*. They beat him alſo a ſecond Time at *Iturtugam*; a third at *Jucibiles*, or *Traguera*; and fourthly, at *Auriga*: But notwithſtanding their great Succeſs, they were both kill'd near the River *Segura*, in the Kingdom of *Murcia*.

Lucius Marcius. *Lucius Marcius* ſucceeded: He was a *Roman Tribune*, and gather'd together the diſconſolate Remnants of the *Roman* Army, with which he repuls'd the *Carthaginian* Forces, and cut down the Troops of *Aſdrubal* in their Retrenchments; by which the *Carthaginians* loſt above thirty-ſeven thouſand Men.

Claudius Nero. Upon this the Senate ſent *Claudius Nero*, with ten thouſand Infantry, and a thouſand Horſe; and the Year following, *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, in Quality of Pro-conſul, with a Number equal to that of *Claudius Nero*, took the City of *Carthagena*, defeated *Aſdrubal*, and engaging the *Africans* to his Side, made himſelf Maſter of *Spain*.

Cato. *Cato* the Cenſor came to *Spain*, in the Quality of Conſul: He was the firſt that ever *Rome* ſent thither inveſted with that Dignity; he took two Places, *Roſes* and *Empurias* in *Catalonia*, ſubdu'd the *Spaniards*, and then return'd to *Rome*, and left *Spain* to be govern'd by *Prætors*, which held many Years.

Pompey. *Numantia* having revolted, *Pompey* beſieged it; but his Succeſſor *Pompilius* was routed, and *Mancinus* concluded a ſhameful Peace. *Lepidus* and *Piſo* were afterwards beaten: But, at laſt, *Scipio Africanus* compleated the Ruin of this Kingdom.

Thus *Spain* was reduc'd under the Power of the *Romans*; and *Sertorius*, who had ſeveral Times beat the *Romans*, was at laſt vanquiſh'd by *Pompey* and *Metellus*: And *Pompey*, after he had ſettled his Affairs in *Spain*, return'd to *Rome*.

Soon after this *Julius Cæſar* came into *Spain*, in Quality of Queſtor; but not liking that Poſt, he return'd to *Rome*. He came back, however, with the Title of *Prætor*, and having done ſomething in Feats of Arms that added to his Honour, he return'd to *Rome* to make Intereſt for the Conſulſhip. In his Abſence fifty thouſand *Spaniards* paſs'd the *Pyrenians*, to aſſiſt the *Gauls*; but *Craſſus* routed them, and *Cecilius* Pro-conſul of *Spain* being defeated by the *Vaces*, the Senate gave the Government to *Pompey* for five Years; in which time *Pompey*'s Wife, Siſter to *Cæſar*, dy'd, which diſſolv'd the Union, and created a Civil War between them, inſomuch that when *Cæſar* had ſettled the Affairs of *Rome*, he came to *Spain* and ſubdu'd *Pompey*'s Lieutenants or Deputy-Governors, and took the Government upon himſelf.

Julius Cæſar alſo ſubdu'd *Varro*, another of *Pompey*'s Generals, and after all this Succeſs he return'd to *Rome*; and, in ſhort, *Pompey* being thus defeated, was treacherouſly kill'd in *Egypt*: But his Sons coming into *Spain*, became ſo formidable, that *Cæſar* found himſelf under a Neceſſity to return to *Spain* to ſuppreſs them, and

accordingly they had a great Battle at *Munda* in *Granada*, where *Cæsar* gain'd a compleat Victory, and then return'd to *Rome*, where he assum'd Sovereign Authority, and was call'd the *Roman* Emperor, and Sovereign of *Spain*. But this great *Cæsar* was afterwards assassinated in the Senate-House by *Brutus* and *Cassius*, forty-two Years before the Birth of *Christ*.

After him *Sextus Pompey* renew'd the War in *Spain*, and took possession of *Andalusia*; but *Augustus Cæsar*, having made himself so famous as to be deem'd Master of the known World, went to *Spain* in the Year before *Christ* 25, and reducing the Country to his Obedience, left it in perfect Peace, and return'd to *Rome*.

CHAP. II.

This brings us down in the History of Spain *to the Birth of* Jesus Christ, *and from thence to the Arrival of the Barbarous Nations in* Spain, *which was about the Beginning of the fifth Century.*

IN the Time of *Augustus Cæsar*, *Jesus Christ*, the Lord of Life, and Prince of Peace, was born of the *Virgin Mary*. The Emperor *Augustus Cæsar* was Nephew to *Julius Cæsar*, and Son of *Octavius*, who had been *Prætor* in *Macedonia*: He reign'd 56 Years, and died in the Year of our blessed Saviour 15.

Tiberius Nero, Son in-Law to *Augustus*, succeeded: He was a cruel avaritious Prince. In his Reign *Christ* was crucified: He died *Anno Christi* 38.

Caius Caligula succeeded, but he reign'd not four Years, and was succeeded in the Year 42 by *Caius Claudius*, Uncle to *Caligula*: In his Time St. *James* the Great came into *Spain*, and preached the Gospel at *Sarragossa*, which is to this Day call'd the Church of the Pillar. *Claudius* died *Anno Christi* 55.

Nero Son of *Agrippina* succeeded: He caused his own Mother to be put to Death, as also two of his Wives, and his Preceptor *Seneca*. He excited the first Persecution against the Christians, for which, and other Enormities, the Senate declar'd him an Enemy to his Country; and when he found himself abandon'd by every Body, he kill'd himself, when he was but about 32 years of Age.

Galba succeeded, but he enjoy'd the Empire but about seven Months, and was assassinated by the Prætorian Bands; and

Otho, who murder'd *Galba*, succeeded him, but he did not hold it half a Year; for being defeated by *Vitellius*, he kill'd himself, and the said *Vitellius* was rais'd to the Empire: But he being very vicious, held it but nine Months, till he was assassinated at *Rome*, and

Flavius Vespasian succeeded him. He was a virtuous Prince, and after the Destruction of *Jerusalem* sent *Jews* into *Spain*, who built the City of *Merida* upon the River *Guadiana*. He dy'd at *Rome* in the Year 80.

Titus, surnamed *Vespasian*, succeeded his Father, and inherited his Virtues; but he reign'd but little more than two Years, and was succeeded by his Brother,

Domitian, who persecuted the Christians, and was kill'd in his Palace for his Cruelty.

Caius Nerva succeeded, and held it not above 16 Months; and then *Marcus Ulpius Trajanus*, a *Spaniard*, who had before been adopted by *Nerva*, reign'd 19 Years. He was a great Persecutor of the Christians, and dy'd *Anno* 118 in *Cilicia*.

Ælius Adrianus succeeded *Trajan*: He divided *Spain* into six Provinces, *viz. Betica*, *Lusitania*, *Carthaginia*, *Tarragonia*, *Gallicia*, and *Mauritania*.

Ælius Antoninus succeeded *Adrian*, *Anno* 139. There was a general Peace through the whole Empire during his whole Reign, which was above 22 Years. He forbid the *Spaniards* to use their own Language, and order'd them to learn the *Latin*. He dy'd in the Year 162.

Two joint Emperors succeeded him at one Time, and both upon the Throne together, *viz. M. Aurelius Antoninus*, and *Antoninus Verus*. They were not the only joint Emperors ever known. The latter mention'd liv'd but nine Years, but *Marcus Antoninus* liv'd above nineteen Years, and dy'd *Anno* 181.

Commodus, the Son of *Antoninus*, succeeded, a Man remarkable for nothing but his Vices, some of which were too abominable to be named. He was so detested that he was poison'd by one of his Concubines, in the Year 193.

It is scarce worth the while to mention *Helvius Pertinax*, and *Didius Julianus*; but after them came *Septimus Severus*, who in the ninth Year of his Reign caused the Christians to be persecuted. He reign'd near eighteen Years, and dy'd at *York*. He built the Wall between *England* and *Scotland*, the Ruins of which are yet to be seen in *Northumberland*, and now go by the Name of the *Roman* Wall.

Aurelius Antoninus Caracalla succeeded him. He was his Eldest Son, and was to have succeeded a Co-partner in the Empire with his Brother *Geta*, but he caus'd him to be murder'd, which so exasperated the People, that he was assassinated by a Soldier after a Reign of little more than six Years.

Opilius Macrinus succeeded; but he did not hold it quite four Months, till he was kill'd by his Soldiers in the Year 219, and was succeeded by

Heliogabalus, Priest of the Sun, whose Vices were summ'd up in this one short Character, That he was the greatest Monster upon Earth for all Crimes, tho' Lust was, if possible, his predominant Vice. He was so hated, that after a Reign of about four Years, he was assassinated by his Guards, *Anno* 223.

Alexander Severus succeeded, and reigned 13 Years; but though a good Emperor, he was assassinated *Anno* 236.

Maximi-

Maximinus firſt, and
Balbinus and *Pupianus* after him, were elected Emperors; but all aſſaſſinated in their firſt Year.

Gordian, a young Prince of about 15 Years old, ſucceeded to the Empire; but he had not reign'd above ſix Years before he was aſſaſſinated by *Philip* the Captain of his Guards, and was ſucceeded by

Philip, who obtain'd the Empire by Treaſon, but after five Years War was murder'd by his Soldiers, and ſucceeded by

Decius, a cruel Perſecutor of the Chriſtians: He perſecuted the Chriſtians *Anno* 250, but was kill'd after a Reign of about two Years.

Trebonius Gallus, who had cut *Decius* off, aſſum'd the Empire; but he had not had it above a Year and a Half when he was kill'd by

Emilian: He enjoy'd the Empire but four Months, and was kill'd by his Soldiers, and ſucceeded by

Lucius Valerian, who, after he had reign'd ſeven Years, was taken Priſoner by the *Perſians*; and next came

Gallienus. But all theſe of late, who were both *Roman* Emperors and Sovereigns of *Spain*, had ſo little Care of the Affairs of *Spain*, that one *Tetricus* ſeiz'd it; and calling the *Germans* to his Aſſiſtance, they put all to Fire and Sword as they came through *France*. *Gallienus* was kill'd by his Soldiers, *Anno* 269.

Flavius Claudius reign'd almoſt two Years, and, what was a Wonder at that Time, he dy'd a natural Death.

Quintilus was next elected; but in leſs than a Month kill'd himſelf, becauſe the Legions had choſen

Lucius Domitius Aurelian: He was a bitter Enemy to the Chriſtians, but reign'd only about five Years, and then was murder'd by his favourite *Mneſtheus*.

Claudius Tacitus was next elected, but he reign'd not quite ſeven Months, and his Brother

Florian ſucceeded by Uſurpation; for which his Conſcience checking him, he caus'd himſelf to have his Veins open'd, which was the Occaſion of his Death.

Probus reign'd near ſix Years, and was then kill'd by thoſe who choſe him; and

Carus ſucceeded in the Year 282. He took in his two Sons as Partners with him in the Government; but *Carus* was ſlain by a Thunderbolt, and *Numerianus* was murder'd, and all in two years Time.

Diocleſian having obtain'd the Empire, defeated and kill'd *Carus*: and being eſtabliſh'd, he vigorouſly perſecuted the Chriſtians; and ſo inveterate was he againſt them, that when he could not gratify his Malice in totally extirpating them, he abdicated the Empire, and perſuaded *Maximian* to do the ſame.

All theſe mention'd from the Beginning of this Chapter which have been rank'd under the Denomination of Kings of Spain, *were alſo Emperors of* Rome; Spain *being at this Time, and ſome Time afterwards, a Part of, and ſubject to, the* Roman *Monarchy*.

Galerius and *Conſtantius*, having married the Daughters of the two laſt perſecuting Emperors, jointly ſucceeded in the Empire; but not ſatisfy'd with equal Authority, they agreed to divide it. *Conſtantius* had for his Share *France*, *Spain*, and *Britain*; and as it is *Spain* that we are to purſue in this Hiſtory, we are to follow the Race of *Conſtantius* as Kings of *Spain*, without any regard to their being Emperors of *Rome*. *Conſtantius* dy'd at *York* in the Year 306.

Conſtantine the Great was the Son of *Conſtantius*, by *Helena* Daughter of a King of *England*. He ſoon made himſelf Maſter of the whole Empire, and was the firſt Chriſtian Emperor. But it was in his Time that the *Arian* Hereſy was firſt broach'd; to ſuppreſs which *Conſtantine* call'd the Council of *Nice*, where it was condemn'd, and the *Nicene* Creed eſtabliſh'd. This Emperor tranſlated the Seat of the *Roman* Empire to *Byzantium*, which he call'd after his own Name *Conſtantinople*, by which Name it is known to this Day. He reign'd above thirty Years.

Conſtantine, *Conſtantius*, and *Conſtans*, ſucceeded jointly to the Empire: They were the Sons of *Conſtantine* the Great, but the Firſt and Laſt being ſhort-liv'd, *Conſtantius* remain'd ſole Monarch, and dy'd *Anno* 361.

Julian the Apoſtate was named by his Predeceſſor *Conſtantius* to ſucceed; but he abandon'd the Chriſtian Religion: He was kill'd by an Arrow in a War againſt the *Perſians*. After him came,

Jovinian, or *Jovian*; but he did not reign a Year before he was ſuffocated, and was ſucceeded by

Valentinian, who aſſociated his Brother *Valens* in the Empire. He was a bitter *Arian*, but reign'd till the Year 379.

Gratian ſucceeded next: In his Time was held the Council of *Conſtantinople*, when all Hereſies, then deem'd ſo, were condemn'd.

Theodoſius, a *Spaniard*, next ſucceeded, and dy'd in the Year 395.

Honorius ſucceeded in the Weſtern Part of the Empire, and he encouraged the *Goths* ſo much, that we may well lay the *Roman* Empire in *Spain* ceas'd from that Day. It was at laſt totally ſubdu'd by the *Goths*, whoſe Race of Kings have made ſo little a Figure in Hiſtory, that I ſhall little more than name them. They came in the following Order.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of the Names and Order of the Gothick *Kings that reigned in* Spain, *until they were ſubdued by the* Moors.

WHETHER the Reader pleaſe to call it an Introduction, or a Digreſſion, I think it proper to obſerve, that when the *Saxons* ſeiz'd *England*, the *French* *Gaul*, and the *Lombards Italy*, the *Goths* ſeiz'd *Spain*, whoſe Inhabitants before had different Kings, as the ſeveral Provinces of *Spain*, which ſtill bear the Names of Kingdoms, do ſtill teſtify; but theſe being all Contemporaries, like the *Saxon* Heptarchy in *England*, I ſhall paſs them by, and proceed to the *Gothick* Kings that governed *Spain*, of which the firſt was,

First *Gothick* King of *Spain*. *Ataulphus*, who married *Placida*, Siſter to the Emperor *Honorius*, (the laſt mentioned in the laſt Chapter) and by that Settlement, the Neighbourhood of the *Pyrenians* were given to *Ataulphus*. He was a peaceable Prince, but his People not liking his mild Diſpoſition, murdered him at *Barcelona*, *Anno* 417.

Second. *Sigeric*, the ſecond *Gothick* King of *Spain*, came to the Throne by Election; but he was likewiſe of too peaceable a Diſpoſition for the Temper of his Subjects: He was aſſaſſinated by thoſe who elected him, and buried at *Barcelona*; and all his Sons were aſſaſſinated with him. He reigned not one Year.

Third. *Walia*, or *Urbalia*, was the 3d *Gothick* King of *Spain*. He began in the Year 417. Being a turbulent Man, he ſent a powerful Army into *Africa* againſt the *Romans*; but they were moſtly ſhip-wreck'd in their Paſſage, which ſo weakned him, that he was obliged to make Peace with the Emperor *Honorius*, who compell'd him to ſend back his Siſter *Placida*, whom *Ataulphus* had married, and to join *Honorius*'s General *Conſtance* againſt the *Vandals*, whom they ſubdued; for which Service *Honorius* gave *Walia* the City of *Thoulouſe*, and all *Guyenne*; whereupon he reſided in *France* till he dy'd, which was *Anno* 420.

Fourth *Theodored* was the fourth *Gothick* King, as being the neareſt of Kin to *Ataulphus*, who was the firſt *Gothick* King. He reign'd thirty Years with great Succeſs; but *Attila* the *Hun* having conquered *Italy*, and a great Part of *France*, *Theodored* join'd his Forces to the *Romans* and *French*, who defeated *Attila* with the Loſs of 180,000 Men. However, *Theodored* was thrown down in the Action, and trod to Death by his own Men, in the Year 451. He left three Sons, *Toriſmond*, *Theodoric*, and *Euric*, who reign'd after him ſucceſſively.

Fifth. *Toriſmond*, the fifth *Gothick* King of *Spain* ſucceeded. He join'd the famous *Roman* General *Aëtius*, and they together defeated *Attila* the ſecond Time, and drove him out of *France*: But his Succeſs did not ſave his Life; for he was murdered at the Inſtigation of his two Brothers, in the Year 454.

Sixth. *Theodoric* the 6th *Gothick* King, ſucceeded. He largely extended his Dominions in *Spain* but was aſſaſſinated by his Brother *Euric*, *Anno* 467, having reign'd thirteen Years.

Seventh. *Euric* was the 7th. He extended his Dominions in *France* and *Spain*. This Prince gave the firſt written Laws to the *Goths*, and drove the *Romans* out of *Spain*, where they had maintained their Ground near 700 Years. He died *Anno* 483.

Alaric, the 8th *Gothick* King, ſucceeded his Father. He had bloody Wars with the *French*, and was kill'd in a Battle, *Anno* 506. Eight.

Geſalic, Son of *Alaric*, ſucceeded, becauſe his Brother *Amalaric* was but a Child. *Geſalic* went into *Africa*, to deſire Succours of *Trasimond*, King of the *Vandals*; which having obtained, he returned to *France* and attacked *Ilba*, near *Barcelona*; but was defeated; whereupon he withdrew to *France*, and dy'd *Anno* 510. Nine.

Amalaric, Son of *Alaric*, ſucceeded, and making Peace with the *French*, married *Clotilda*, Daughter of King *Clovis*; but he treated her with ſo much Inhumanity, that ſhe complained to her Brothers, *Childebert* King of *Paris*, *Clotair* of *Soiſſons*, *Clodamir* of *Orleans*, and *Thierri* of *Metz*, who join'd their Forces, and marched againſt *Amalaric*, and kill'd him at *Barcelona*, *Anno* 531. Ten.

Theudis govern'd the State in the Minority of *Amalaric*, and behaved ſo well, that he gained the Affection of the Nobility; and the Royal Line being extinct in *Amalaric*, he was elected to the Throne; but was aſſaſſinated by a Man who counterfeited a Mad-man, in the Year 548. Elev.

Theodegeſilus ſucceeded: He had been a General under *Theudis*, and was choſe for his Valour: But no ſooner came he upon the Throne, but he abandoned himſelf to Vice and Senſuality, putting ſeveral Men to death, that he might more freely enjoy their Wives. He reign'd, however, but one Year, and then was murdered by his Subjects, *Anno* 549. Twe

Agilus was next elected, a Man of an obſcure Family. Beſieging *Cordula*, they made a vigorous Sally upon him, and defeated his Army; and he, to ſave himſelf, fled to *Merida*, which made him contemptible in the Eyes of his Subjects, who murdered him in the Year 554. Thi tee

Athanagildus aſcended the Throne without Oppoſition, by the Aſſiſtance of the *Romans*. But ſetting aſide all Obligations to them, he endeavoured to drive them out of *Spain*. Tho' we ſcarce read of any one particular Action done by him, yet he is reported to be the Original of the Houſe of *Auſtria*. He dy'd *Anno* 567, leaving no Son, but two Daughters; *Galaſuinda* the Eldeſt, and *Brunehaut* the Younger; which laſt was married to *Sigebert*, King of *Lorrain*. Fou tee

From Sigebert *and* Brunehaut, *the Royal Family of* Spain *deſcended, as low as* Philip *the fifth, in the following Order.*

SIGEBERT and *Brunehaut* had *Childebert*, *Ingonda*, and *Chlodoſinnda*. *Childebert* ſucceeded as King of *Lorrain*, and had *Theodebert* who ſucceeded him. *Theodebert* married *Baſtilda* and by her had *Sigebert*, who was Father of *Optaris*, firſt Earl of *Harpsbourg*. *Optaris* had *Rodus* the ſecond

ſecond Earl: *Rebus* had *Robert* the third Earl: *Robert* had *Amphitrus* the Fourth: *Amphitrus* had *Guritramus* the Fifth; and he had *Lubardus* the Sixth, and he had *Betrus* the Seventh. *Betrus* had *Roptus* the Eighth, and he had *Berengarius* the Ninth, and he again had *Otho* the Tenth. *Otho* had *Wemberus* the Eleventh: *Wemberus* had *Albert* the Twelfth. *Albert* had a Son, *Albert* the Second, who was the thirteenth Earl, and his Son *Rodulphus* was in an uninterrupted Succeſſion the fourteenth Earl of *Habsbourg*, and afterwards Emperor. He married *Anne* Countess of *Hohenbourg*, and had by her *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, who married *Elizabeth* of *Corinthia*, and had *Albert* the ſecond Duke of *Auſtria*, whoſe Son was *Leopold* the third Duke, who had *Ernestus* the fourth Duke, and he *Frederick* the fifth Duke. *Frederick* was alſo Emperor. He married the Infanta *Eleonora*, Daughter of *Edward* King of *Portugal*, and had by her the Emperor *Maximilian* the ſixth Duke, who marrying the Empreſs *Mary*, Dutcheſs of *Brabant* and *Burgundy*, and Countess of *Flanders*, had by her *Philip* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, Duke of *Brabant* and *Burgundy*, Earl of *Flanders*, and King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*. This Prince was Father of the invincible *Charles* V. Emperor of *Germany*, who had *Philip* the Second King of *Spain*, Father of *Philip* the Third, who had *Philip* the Fourth, Father of *Mary Thereſa*, married to *Lewis* the fourteenth King of *France*, and Mother of the Dauphin, Father of *Philip* the Fifth King of *Spain* above-mentioned. ——— But to return to the *Gothick* Race.

Leuva, who had been Vice-roy of *Gothick Gaul*, was proclaim'd King at *Narbonne*; but it is not certain that he was of the Family of *Athanagildus*, for he obtain'd the Crown by Election. He took his Brother *Leuvigildus* in Partnerſhip upon the Throne, and dy'd in the Year 572.

Leuvigildus above-mention'd ſucceeded as ſole Monarch. He was the Firſt of the *Goths* who wore a Crown, Scepter, or particular Robes, or uſed Royal Standards. He beat the *Romans* near *Baza*, driving them almoſt quite out of *Spain*. His Predeceſſors uſed to keep their Court at *Seuil*, but he remov'd his to *Toledo* near *Madrid*, where he dy'd *Anno* 586.

Recaredus the Son of *Leuvigildus* mounted the Throne after him. He beat the *French* in *Gothick Gaul* twice, and dy'd at *Toledo Anno* 601.

Leuva the Son of *Recaredus* ſucceeded. He was a Religious Prince, but was murder'd in his Youth, *Anno* 603, by

Witeric, who was not of the Royal Family. He totally routed the *Romans* that remain'd in *Spain*; but a Report being ſpread that he deſign'd to eſtabliſh Arianiſm, the People broke into his Palace, and murder'd him in the Year 610.

Gundemar ſucceeded. He was a religious Prince, and ſucceſsful in his War againſt *Navarre*. He dy'd at *Toledo Anno* 612.

Sigebut came next to the Throne. He was both a religious and learned Prince: He conquered the *Iſturians*, and brought them to Obedience; he defeated the *Romans*, baniſh'd the *Jews*, and at laſt dy'd at *Toledo Anno* 621.

Recaredus the Second, the Son of *Sigebut*, ſucceeded. He reign'd but three Months, and dy'd *Anno* 621.

Sanctila, Son of *Recaredus* the Firſt, was choſen for his Courage, Conduct, Charity, and other Virtues. He drove the *Romans* quite out of *Spain*, and reduc'd the revolting *Navarrians* to Obedience; and being willing to ſecure the Crown to his Family, he took his Son *Reduimirus* as Partner on the Throne with him; at which the *Goths* were ſo diſguſted, as being depriv'd of chuſing a Succeſſor themſelves, that calling the *French* to their Aid, they drove *Sanctila* and his Son away, or rather murder'd them, in the Year 631.

Sizenand, after having compleated the Ruin, or rather Murder, of *Sanctila*, as above, aſcended the Throne; and to confirm himſelf the better, he appear'd very religious, till he had got a Confirmation of the Power he had ſo wickedly acquir'd; but his Reign was ſhort, for he dy'd in the Year 635.

Chintila ſucceeded, by Election of the Nobility and Prelates; which was confirm'd by two Synods, one of twenty-two Biſhops, the other of Fifty: But he reign'd only four Years, and dy'd in the Year 639.

Tuga ſucceeded alſo by Election. He was young, and reign'd but two Years; dying in the Year 641.

Chindaſuintus ſucceeded without Oppoſition, becauſe the Gentlemen who pretended to the Right of Election durſt not oppoſe him. He conven'd a Council of Biſhops, and eſtabliſh'd many good Laws. He took his Son *Recaſuintus* with him in Partnerſhip, or rather reſign'd the Royalty to him, in the Year 648, and from that Time is computed the Reign of

Recaſuintus. This Prince was religious; he corrected the Laws of the *Goths*, and gain'd a famous Victory over the *Gaſcoigns*, who had made an Inroad into *Spain*. He conven'd the 8th, 9th, and 10th Synods of *Toledo*. He reign'd 24 Years after his Father advanc'd him, and reſign'd the Power to him. He dy'd in the Year 672.

Wamba was elected by the Nobility, but would not be crown'd till threaten'd to it, ſo great was his Modeſty: He rebuilt the Walls of *Toledo*, and conven'd the 11th Synod; but was poiſon'd by *Ervigius*, of which Poiſon though he did not immediately die, yet it ſo incapacitated him that he was depoſ'd in the Year 680.

Ervigius ſucceeded, which doubtleſs was his deſign in poiſoning *Wamba*. He put on a Shew of Religion to ſtrengthen his ill got Power, but dy'd at *Toledo* in the Year 687.

Egica, who had married *Cixilona* the Daughter of *Ervigius*, came next to the Throne; but he no ſooner ſecured Poſſeſſion, but he divorc'd his Wife on account of the Hatred he bore her Father for his Cruelty to *Wamba*. Thus one Barbarity in one was puniſh'd by a Barbarity to another. His Army was three times beaten by the *French*. He held three Synods at *Toledo*, dy'd in the Year 701, and was ſucceeded by a Son which he had by *Cixilona*, whoſe Name was

Witeric, a cruel impious Man. He entertain'd Concubines like Queens, perſecuted *Pelagius* and *Roderic*, but dy'd, or rather was murder'd, in the Year 711. He left two Sons, *Iewin* and *Sifibut*, who fearing to fall into the Hands of *Roderic*, fled to *Africa*.

Roderic, the laſt *Gothic* King of *Spain*, ſucceeded *Witeric*. He was thought a wiſe and virtuous Prince before he came to the Crown, but afterwards he abandon'd himſelf to all ſorts of Vice and Debaucheries. Earl *Julian* being a Favourite, he gave him the Government of all the Neighbourhood of *Gibraltar*, and all the Territories the *Goths* had in *Africa*; and *Julian*'s being inveſted with ſo great Power by *Roderic*, gave him the Opportunity of betraying his Country. For *Florinda* Earl *Julian*'s Daughter, being at Court, King *Roderic* fell deeply in Love

with her, or rather was determined to have his Luſt ſatisfied upon her; which ſhe conſtantly refuſing, he violated her Chaſtity by Force; at which Earl *Culian* was ſo enraged, that he abandoned Religion itſelf for the Sake of Revenge, and invited the *Moors* into *Spain*; promiſing them all the Aſſiſtance he was capable of to deſtroy the Country, and reduce *Roderic* to the laſt Extremity.

PURSUANT to this Propoſal, *Tarif Abenmarca* came from *Africa*, and attack'd *Spain* with 12000 Men, defeated *Roderic*, ravaged the whole Country, and took *Seville*, once the Capital of *Spain*, in the Year 713.

THE *Moors*, elevated with this Succeſs, crowded over to *Spain*; in the mean Time *Roderic*, having raiſed an Army of 100,000 ill arm'd and undiſciplin'd Men, at the Head of them march'd to *Xeres* in *Andaluſia*, where the two Armies joyn'd: But inſtead of a favourable Iſſue, *Oppas*, the Son of *Ejica* above-mention'd, went over to the Moors with his Body of Troops, and attack'd the Chriſtians, who were defeated and left the Field; which *Roderic* ſeeing, he fled alſo, and it is not known what became of him: However it put an end to his Reign over the Chriſtians, in the Year 714.

THE *Moors* now ſpread themſelves all over *Spain*, made an entire Conqueſt of it, prophan'd the Churches, and made the Country deſolate; and the Chriſtian Inhabitants that remain'd, laboured under a heavy Yoke of Bondage. *Spain* may now be ſaid to be entirely reduc'd to the Subjection of a Heathen Nation, by means of one Act of Debauchery, which was that of *Rotheric* with Earl *Julian*'s Daughter above-mentioned, the true Occaſion of all the Deſolation that follow'd.

CHAP. IV.

Contains the Spaniſh *Hiſtory from the Year* 718, *when* Spain *was conquer'd by the* Moors, *till the* 1027, *when the two Kingdoms of* Caſtile *and* Leon *were United under one King.*

PELAGIUS was the firſt King of *Spain* after it was conquer'd by the *Moors*; but not one of their Nation or People, but one of the *Gothic* Line. Struggling to ſupport and maintain the *Spaniards* in their Rights, Privileges and Religion, and being well belov'd, he rais'd a ſmall Body of Troops to ſuppreſs the *Moors*; but they overcame him, and he retired with 1000 Men into a Cave for Safety. They purſuing him, he defeated them by a Miracle, and deſtroy'd 20000 of their Men; which Succeſs ſo animated the poor Chriſtians, that they reinforc'd him from all Parts, and gain'd many Victories, and took many Cities from the *Moors*, of which *Leon* was one, which was afterwards for ſome time the Seat of the Chriſtian Kings. He dy'd in an advanc'd Age at *Cangas*, in the Year 737.

Favila, the Son of *Pelagius*, aſcended the Throne by Succeſſion; but little is ſaid of him: Nor could there be much done in a Reign of two Years, for he dy'd *Anno* 739, leaving no Children behind him.

Alphonſo, who married *Ermeſenda*, Daughter of *Pelagius*, and Siſter of *Favila*, ſucceeded by default of Male Heirs of the Line of *Favila*. He was a religious and ſucceſsful Prince; he defeated the *Moors* in thirty-four Battles, recovered good Part of old *Seville*, and many Places in *Galicia* and *Portugal*, and dy'd *Anno* 757, aged 64.

Fruela Son of *Alphonſo* ſucceeded: He built the City of *Oviedo* in *Spain*, and obtain'd a great Victory over the *Moors*, in which he put 45000 of them to the Sword; but he was kill'd by his Brother *Aurelio Anno* 768, and the ſame

Aurelio ſucceeded to the Government, but dy'd without any thing remarkable at *Cangas* in the Year 774, leaving no Iſſue.

Silon came next to the Throne, in the Right of his Wife *Adoſinda*, the Daughter of *Alphonſo*. He made Peace with the *Moors*, and reduc'd the People of *Galicia* to Obedience, who had revolted from him. He dy'd *Anno* 783.

Mauregat ſucceeded: He was the Son of King *Alphonſo*, but a Baſtard, and one that uſurped the Crown, which was the Right of his legitimate Brother *Alphonſo* the Second. *Mauregat* did nothing remarkable, except his buying the Aſſiſtance of the *Moors* with his Subjects Money, to ſupport himſelf on his Throne. He died without Iſſue, in the Year 788.

Bermudus was the next, call'd alſo the Deacon, he having entred into holy Orders. His Parentage or Original is uncertain: He was a virtuous quiet Prince, and declar'd *Alphonſo* (afterwards *Alphonſo* II.) his Heir; and accordingly when *Bermudus* dy'd, which was in the Year 795, he was ſucceeded by the ſaid

Alphonſo II. who was the firſt King of *Oviedo*. He many times vanquiſh'd the *Moors*, and took from them the City of *Lisbon*, and ſeveral other Places. He dy'd *Anno* 843.

Ramirus, Son of *Bermudus*, ſucceeded. He gain'd a Victory over the *Moors*, and kill'd 60000 of them: He alſo freed the Chriſtians from the yearly Tribute of 100 young Virgins, which the *Spaniſh* Chriſtians were every Year oblig'd to pay. *Ramirus* won many other great Victories, and particularly he defeated the *Normans*, who invaded *Spain*. He dy'd at *Oviedo Anno* 850.

Ordonius came next to the Crown: He was the Son of *Ramirus*; he brought the *Mooriſh* Kings of *Maul*, *Toledo*, *Saragoſſa*, and *Hueſca*, under Tribute. He dy'd *Anno* 862, at *Oviedo*, and was ſucceeded by his Son,

Alphonſo III. who was a valiant, virtuous, and juſt Prince. He gain'd ſeveral ſignal Victories over the *Moors*, in one of which they loſt 40000 Men. He reduc'd his rebellious Subjects, after three ſucceſſive Attempts againſt him. He reſign'd the Crown to his Son *Garcias*; and yet a Year after that, he, with the Approbation of his Son, made a ſucceſsful Expedition againſt the *Moors*. He dy'd at *Zamora Anno* 910.

Garcias, eldeſt Son of *Alphonſo*, ſucceeding, he took *Ayola* King of the *Moors* Priſoner, and had other great Succeſſes againſt them. He dy'd at *Zamora*

Zamora in the Year 913, leaving no Iſſue, and was ſucceeded by

Ordonius II. This Prince invaded the *Moors*; and they, to be revenged, invaded the Chriſtian Territories: But *Ordonius* defeated them and impoveriſh'd their Country, ſo that they were glad of a Peace. King *Ordonius* made his Reſidence at *Leon*, and not having yet been crown'd, that Ceremony was perform'd in the great Church there; ſo that *Oviedo* muſt decline of Courſe. He dy'd at *Zamora* in the Year 923.

Frucla II, another Son of *Alphonſo*, got the Crown next; but he was a Tyrant. He reign'd but fourteen Months, and dy'd at *Leon*, *Anno* 924.

Alphonſo IV, the Son of *Ordonius* II, mounted the Throne: But ſo remarkable was he for his Vice, that he became odious to his Subjects; whereupon calling his Brother *Ramirus* to him, he put the Crown upon his Head with his own Hand, and retired into a Monaſtery in the Year 930. But recanting his Reſignation, he endeavoured to recover the Crown; for which his Brother cauſed his Eyes to be put out. He dy'd *Anno* 933.

Ramirus II, was the ſecond Son of *Ordonius* II, and Brother to *Alphonſo* IV. Soon after his Acceſſion a Rebellion broke out in the *Aſturias*; but he quickly ſuppreſt it, and then turn'd his Force againſt the *Moors*, and took from them the City of *Madrid*, kill'd 80000 of the *Moriſh* King of *Sarragoſſa*'s Men, and brought him under Tribute. He defeated the King of *Corduba*, and gain'd many other Victories, and dy'd *Anno* 950; when his Son

Ordonius III, ſucceeded. He was a powerful Prince; but his ſhort Reign diſappointed the Expectation People had from him: However, in his five Years Reign he ravaged the *Moors* even to *Lisbon*, and gain'd ſeveral Victories over his rebellious Subjects; after which he dy'd at *Zamora*, in the Year 955, and was ſucceeded by

Sancho the Son of *Ramirus* II. But *Ordonius* the Naughty, the Son of King *Alphonſo* IV, drove him from his Kingdom. However, by the Aſſiſtance of *Abderamus* King of the *Moors*, he was reſtor'd to it again. He was poiſon'd by an Apple, *Anno* 976, and was ſucceeded by his Son

Ramirus III, who being but ſix years of Age, was left to the Guardianſhip of his Mother and his Aunt: But as little could be expected from two Women and a Child, the *Normans* ſoon inſulted them, and ravaged the Coaſt of *Galicia*; but the General of the young King's Forces cut them to pieces, loaded his Men with Plunder, and then ſet Fire to their Ships. As King *Ramirus* grew up, he gave himſelf to Idleneſs and Debauchery, and dy'd in the Year 982. He was ſucceeded by

Bermudus II, Son of *Ordonius* III, who reviv'd and confirm'd the antient Laws of the *Goths*. The Earl of *Caſtile* attempting now to be abſolute, the King oppoſed it, and this Civil Breach gave the *Moors*, as they thought, an Opportunity to deſtroy them both when thus divided; in order to which they join'd ſome fugitive Chriſtians, and paſs'd the River *Duero*, which had till now been the Boundary of the two Nations. The King muſter'd up a Force to oppoſe them, and went to attack them, but was defeated, and moſt of his Men kill'd; and the next Year the *Moors* finding little Oppoſition, ruin'd the City of *Leon*, and ſeveral Places in *Portugal* and *Galicia*, while other of their Forces took *Barcelona* itſelf. In the Year 983, *Almanzor* King of *Corduba* ravaged the whole Country as far as *Compoſtella*, deſtroying that City amongſt the Reſt. *Bermudus* having loſt *Leon*, made *Oviedo* his Reſidence, and he adviſing the King of *Navarre* and the Earl of *Caſtile* to join him, they entirely defeated the *Moors*, near *Calacanamor*. *Bermudus* dy'd of the Gout in the Year 999.

Alphonſo VI. Son of *Bermudus*, ſucceeded. He was but five years of Age when his Father dy'd, but he was left under the Guardianſhip of the Earl of *Galicia* and his Wife, who faithfully diſcharg'd their Truſt; and when *Alphonſo* came to Maturity, he requited them by marrying their Daughter *Elvira*. He repair'd the City of *Leon*, and kept his Court there; and then thinking to enlarge his Dominions, he beſieged the City of *Viſeo* in *Portugal*, but was kill'd by an Arrow from thence *Anno* 1028, having reign'd 29 Years. He was ſucceeded by

Bermudus III, who was very young. This Prince ſettled good Laws, and gain'd the Love of his Subjects. But this Peace was interrupted by *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, who had married *Nuna* the Eldeſt of the two Siſters of *Garcias* Earl of *Caſtile*, who having been traiterouſly murdered, *Sancho* inherited *Caſtile* in the right of his Wife; but not content with this, he form'd a Deſign to add the Crown of *Leon* to his other Dominions; but not being able to accompliſh this by fair Means, he invaded the Kingdom of *Leon*, and made himſelf Maſter of all the Country beyond the River *Cea*. *Bermudus*, not being in a Condition to ſtop his Progreſs, gave his Siſter *Sancha* in Marriage to his Son *Ferdinand*, and ſettled on her as a Dowry the conquer'd Countries, and all the reſt of his Kingdom after his Death; whereupon the King of *Navarre* gave *Caſtile* to his Son *Ferdinand*, and erected it into a Kingdom. But the Nobility of *Leon*, not contented with *Ferdinand*, the new King of *Caſtile* urged *Bermudus* to declare War againſt him, which indeed he did, and they fought a bloody Battle near the River *Carrion*, which turn'd to the Ruin of *Bermudus*; for advancing too far amongſt his Enemies, in the Heat of the Engagement he was mortally wounded by a Lance, and dy'd on the Spot. This happened in the Year 1037, and in him his Race and Succeſſion was extinct, and the two Kingdoms of *Caſtile* and *Leon* were now united under one crown'd Head, *viz. Ferdinand*, as will appear in the next Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Contains the History of Spain, *from the Union of the two Kingdoms of* Caſtile *and* Leon, *to the Erecting of* Portugal *into an independent Kingdom, and from thence to the Death of King* Alphonſo X, *taking up the Space of two Hundred Forty Seven Years.*

FErdinand having kill'd his Brother-in-law, and routed his Army, as above, marched towards *Leon*, and making himſelf Maſter of it, he cauſed himſelf to be crowned in the right of *Sancha* his Wife; who, as ſhe was Siſter to the deceaſed King, and Daughter of *Alphonſo*, was lawful Heireſs to both. He was a pious Prince, but being perplex'd with the Incurſions of the *Moors* on the Side of *Eſtramadura*, he marched his Forces thither, routed them, retook their Body, and ſeized their Lands. He deſtroyed the Country about *Merida* and *Badajox*, and other Places of Importance, and went afterwards into *Portugal*, where he made himſelf Maſter of *Viſeo*, and taking the *Moor* who had kill'd King *Alphonſo*, he had his Eyes put out, and both his Hands and one Foot cut off. He had ſo much Succeſs, that he ſcarce ever failed in any Attempt. The *Moors* rebell'd twice, and he as oft overcame and ſuppreſt them, and reduced them to Obedience and Tribute; but being advanced in Years he dy'd *Anno* 1067. He had three Sons and two Daughters, and alotted

To *Sancho*, his eldeſt Son, the Kingdom of *Caſtile*.

To *Alphonſo*, his ſecond, that of *Leon*.

To *Garcias*, the third, that of *Gallicia*.

To *Ouraqua*, his eldeſt Daughter, the City of *Zamora*.

To *Elvira*, the youngeſt, *Toro*.

Sancho II. the eldeſt Son, ſucceeded, who looked upon it as a Piece of Injuſtice to be confined to *Caſtile* only; but *Leon* being his Mother's Inheritance, ſhe would not admit of any Rival during her Life. *Sancho* therefore attempted the Siege of *Zamora*, his eldeſt Siſter's Dowry; which having undertaken, a Deſerter, as he pretended to be, came to the King, under Pretence of ſhewing him a weak Place in the Wall: But the King ſtepping along with him, the Wretch ſtabb'd him, and made his Eſcape to the City. This happened *Anno* 1073.

Alphonſo VI. of *Leon*, and firſt of *Caſtile*, ſucceeded. He was the Second Son of *Ferdinand*. *Caſtile* made Conditions, as to receiving him; the chief of which was, That he ſhould ſwear that he was not directly nor indirectly concerned in the Murder of King *Sancho*, which he having done, they received him without any further Scruple; and having lived ſeventy nine Years, of which he reigned thirty five, he dy'd *Anno* 1108. He left a Daughter named *Ouraqua*, who being Heireſs of all the Eſtates of the King her Father, and marrying, *Alphonſo* King of *Aragon*, the Iſſue

Alphonſo VII. King of *Aragon*, in the right of his Wife, ſucceeded. King *Alphonſo*, though his Queen *Ouraqua* was a diſſolute Woman, in his own Perſon behaved ſo well, that he gained the Affection of all his Subjects. But as for the Queen, he not ſuiting her laſcivious Temper, ſhe required a Divorce; alledging as a Reaſon, that he was her Couſin in the third Degree. But the Pope rejected her Requeſt, and the King impriſoned her for her Inſolence; and though ſhe made her Eſcape, the Nobles of *Caſtile* ſent her back to her Husband. But the People of *Gallicia* not liking this Diſtraction, proclaimed her Son *Alphonſo* King, which ſhe had by her firſt Husband *Raimond* Earl of *Burgundy*, King *Alphonſo* being but her ſecond Husband; and now began a Civil, or rather Family War; for the King divorced his Queen *Ouraqua*, and likewiſe diſcharged her from Priſon. But ſhe raiſed a Force againſt him, commanded by her Miniſters *Gomez* and *Lara*, whom the King defeated in *Caſtile*; whence marching into *Leon*, he defeated them a ſecond Time; and the Queen being drove into the Caſtle of *Leon*, young *Alphonſo* her Son beſieged her there, and obliged her to ſettle the Crown upon him, in the Year 1123. But her Husband the King of *Aragon*, lived till the Year 1134, when the Succeſſion came to *Alphonſo*, Son of Queen *Ouraqua*, by her Husband *Raimond* Earl of *Burgundy*, by the Name of

Alphonſo VIII. He was inaugurated at *Toledo*, took the Title of Emperor, and confirmed to that City the Name of imperial. He reigned thirty four Years, accounting from the Time that his Mother ſettled the Crown upon him, and dy'd *Anno* 1157.

Sancho III ſucceeded. He inſtituted the military Order of *Calatrava*, in the Year 1158. He reigned but one Year, and dy'd at *Toledo*, *Anno* 1158.

Alphonſo IX. ſucceeded his Father *Sancho* at four Years of Age; and tho' he had Tutors aſſigned him, yet diſcontented Perſons took the Advantage of his Minority, and created great Diſturbances and Diſtractions, which the Subjects being weary of, deſired him to take the Adminiſtration into his own Hand, in order to which he went from *Seville* with about one hundred and fifty Horſe, and ſeveral Places joyfully receiv'd him, eſpecially the City of *Toledo*, and his Power increaſed daily: And when he arrived, the Parliament made an Act to declare all Traytors that refuſed to put into his Poſſeſſion the Cities they had been entruſted with, according to the Will of the King his Father. He married *Eleonora*, Daughter of King *Henry* the Second of *England*; and not chuſing to be idle, he employed his Forces againſt the Infidels, and took ſeveral Places from them, in the Year 1177. In 1195, *Miramolin* came from *Africa* into *Spain*, with a prodigious Number of *Moors*, and paſſing the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, encamped near *Alarcos*. King *Alphonſo* raſhly attacked them, without ſtaying for the Succours that were coming up to his Aſſiſtance, and

and by that Means he was entirely defeated; and the Infidels, upon this, deſtroy'd all the Country to within ſix Leagues of *Toledo*. King *Alphonſo* reſenting this Loſs, made Peace with all the Chriſtian Powers in *Spain*, and prevailed upon them to join him againſt the Infidels; and many Strangers alſo joined in this holy War. The Kings of *Arragon* and *Navarre* came in Perſon, and advanced together towards the Mountains near *Toloſa*, of which the Infidels had ſecured the Paſſages: But a Shepherd ſhewing the Chriſtians another Way, they attack'd the *Moors*, and quite defeated them, and kill'd not leſs than 200000 of them; and after this Battle the Chriſtians took many of the moſt conſiderable Cities. *Alphonſo* reign'd 56 Years, and dy'd *Anno* 1214. He was ſucceeded by his Son,

Henry, whom he had by *Eleonora* Daughter of *Henry* the Second King of *England*. He was but eleven years of Age when he came to the Crown; and his Mother Queen *Eleonora*, in whoſe Hand the Adminiſtration was left, dying a few Months after her Husband *Alphonſo*, ſhe left the Tutorſhip of *Henry* to her Daughter *Berengaria*, who had been Queen of *Leon*, but divorc'd. She govern'd with great Mildneſs and Prudence; but as ſhe lov'd Tranquility and Retirement, the Houſe of *Lara* corrupted one of her chief Favourites to perſuade her to put the King's Perſon and the Government of Affairs into their Hands, which when they had obtain'd, they oppreſs'd the Nobility, and not only ſeiz'd the Queen's Lands, but oblig'd her to quit the Kingdom; whereupon the young King endeavour'd to eſcape from his *Laran* Tutors, but they watch'd him too cloſe, and diverted him with Companions, Play, and a Propoſal of Marriage with the King of *Portugal*'s Siſter. But being at Play with ſome of the Lords of his Age, a Tile fell from the Houſe, and kill'd him in the fourteenth year of his Age, and the third of his Reign, in the Year 1217. He was ſucceeded by

Ferdinand II, Eldeſt Son of *Alphonſo* VIII, who had War with the King of *Portugal* for the frontier Town of *Badajox*. He fought two Battles, in the firſt of which he took *Sancho* Prince of *Portugal* Priſoner, and in the next he took the King of *Portugal* himſelf. He dy'd, and left neither Child nor Brother.

Ferdinand III came next, but we do not find in his long Reign any thing of Moment tranſacted. He dy'd *Anno* 1252; his Succeſſor was

Alphonſo X, the Son of *Ferdinand*, who was a great Maſter of *Aſtronomy*, and compos'd the *Aſtronomical* Tables call'd to this Day the *Alphonſine* Tables. The Originals are preſerv'd in the Cathedral Church at *Seville*. He was famous for his Knowledge in *Aſtrology*; but, as my Author juſtly obſerves, *all his Knowledge and* Aſtrology *was of no Uſe to him, either in the Foreſeeing or Prevention of the Misfortunes which happen'd to him*; as is indeed the Caſe with moſt of thoſe otherwiſe call'd cunning Men. He took from the *Moors* many Places of Note; but the Rebellion of his Subjects put a ſtop to his Conqueſts abroad. He dy'd in the midſt of the Diviſions and Confuſion of his Kingdom, in the Year 1284. He declared by his Will his Grandſon *Alphonſo* to be his Succeſſor; but without any regard to right of Succeſſion.

Sancho IV uſurp'd the Crown, and ſucceeded in the Throne, contrary to all Juſtice and Equity. He made himſelf odious to his Subjects; and as he liv'd ſo he dy'd, in the Year 1295, and was ſucceeded by his Son.

Ferdinand IV ſucceeded his Father *Sancho*; but his Minority occaſion'd great Confuſion in the Kingdom. *Dennis* King of *Portugal* declar'd for Prince *John*, Uncle of the young King. The King of *Arragon* promiſed *Alphonſo de la Cerda* to ſet him upon the Throne, he being the only ſurviving lawful Heir; and Prince *John* join'd them, who was afterwards proclaim'd King of *Leon* and *Galicia*. The *Arragonians*, who were to have the Kingdom of *Murcia*, entered it, and took its Capital of the ſame Name. The King of *Portugal* advanced as far as *Salamanca*; but the Nobility of *Caſtile* deſerting him, he return'd without Succeſs. The following Year 1298, a Peace was concluded between *Caſtile* and *Portugal*, whereupon King *Ferdinand* married *Conſtance* the Daughter of *Dennis* King of *Portugal*, and Prince *Alphonſo* Son of *Dennis* married *Blanche* Siſter to *Ferdinand*. The City of *Bilboa* in *Biſcay* was built *Anno* 1300. King *Ferdinand* having appeaſed the Diſturbances of his Kingdom, march'd at the Head of a powerful Army againſt the *Moors*; but was found dead in his Bed, *Anno* 1312, and was ſucceeded by his Son,

Alphonſo XI, who being but eleven Months old, his tender Age cauſed great Diviſions among the Nobility, as to who ſhould have the Tutorage and Government of the young King; and conſequently, as they thought, of the Kingdom. *Conſtantia* Mother to the King, and *Mary* his Grandmother, pretended to it; as did Prince *Peter* his Uncle, and Prince *John* his great Uncle, and many others: But in the Year 1314 the Parliament order'd, that the principal Management of Affairs ſhould be in the Hands of a Council of State, and the Reſt in the Hands of the Princes *John* and *Peter*; and the Education of the King ſhould be at the Care of the Queen his Mother. But ſtill the Government being in ſo many Hands, every one ſtriving to be uppermoſt, cauſed great Confuſion; to put an End to which the King, at the Age of fifteen, took the Adminiſtration of the Government upon himſelf, and wiſely diſappointed the Expectation of ſome of the mercenary Nobles, who every one, if poſſible, wanted to be King, or act as ſuch. Notwithſtanding this, *Don John Manuel*, and *Don John* Lord of *Biſcay*, jointly rebelled; to appeaſe which Commotion the King married *Don John Manuel*'s Daughter, by which means *Don John* was eaſily and naturally drawn over to the King's Party; and *Biſcay* being left alone could do nothing, ſo that now all was quiet: And the better to ſecure this Tranquility, he beheaded *Biſcay*. But this Sunſhine was ſoon beclouded; for *Alphonſo* ſoon divorced *Don John Manuel*'s Daughter, and married *Maria* Daughter of the King of *Portugal*; which *Don John* ſo much reſented, that he join'd the *Moors*, and brought in the *Arragonians* to his Aſſiſtance. Several Cities join'd *Don John*'s Forces againſt the King; but *Alphonſo* offering his Siſter *Eleonora* in Marriage to the King of *Arragon*, made him quit *Don John*'s Party, and King *Alphonſo*, with the Kings of *Portugal* and *Arragon*, entered into an Alliance againſt the *Moors*: And now the Province of *Alava* in *Biſcay* ſent Deputies to the King, to offer their Submiſſion to him; whereupon he went, and was receiv'd as their Sovereign, and gave them ſpecial Privileges. But the *Moors* advancing from *Africa* to *Spain* with a great Force, took *Gibraltar*; which *Alphonſo* had no Opportunity to retake, becauſe the *Spaniſh* Lords again rebelled, and brought the *Arragonians* into *Caſtile* to their Aſſiſtance. *Alphonſo* now concluded a Truce with the *Moors*, and turning all his Force againſt his rebellious Subjects, took the greateſt Part of their Cities, obliged *Biſcay* to take the Oath of Fealty to him, and cauſed *Don John* the Lord of it to be beheaded as a Traitor. *Don John*

Manuel, frighted at this Example of Justice, submitted to the King. After this all the Christian Kings in *Spain* quarrelled; but a Peace being made among them, they turned their Force once more against the *Moors*, whom they beat, and killed 1000 of their Men; which the *African* General resolving to revenge, came into *Spain* with the greatest Army that ever attack'd *Spain*, *viz.* 70000 Horse, and 300000 Foot. The Admiral *Tenorco* was blamed for suffering them to pass the *Straits*, though he could no way prevent it; wherefore he so lightly resented those Reflections upon his Conduct, that he desperately attack'd the *Moorish* Fleet, much superior to his own in Number, and lost all except five Galleys, which sav'd themselves by Flight. This terrible Overthrow made all the Christian Powers unite against the common Enemy, and go to relieve *Tarifa*, which the *Moors* had then besieged; and though the whole Christian Army was but 14000 Horse and 25000 Foot, they routed that prodigious Army, and kill'd above 200000 of them. The *Moorish* Kings sav'd themselves by Flight. Such vast Riches were found in the *Moors* Camp, chiefly in Gold and Silver, that it lessen'd the Value of the Specie: This Victory was gained in the Year 1340, and *Anno* 1342 their Fleet was totally destroy'd.

Alphonso dies.

After this, King *Alphonso* besieged *Algier*, and took it, in the Year 1344, and in the Year 1349, he laid Siege to *Gibraltar*; but the Plague raging there, it affected *Alphonso*, and cost him his Life. He died *March* the 26, 1350, in the 39th Year of his Age. He married *Maria* Daughter of *Alphonso* IV. King of *Portugal*, and had by her his Successor,

Peter

Peter, whom some call *the Cruel*; but what Blood he shed was chiefly to punish his unruly Subjects: He ascended the Throne at the Age of Fifteen, but was suddenly seiz'd with a Sickness so dangerous, that they began to look out for a Successor; but he deceived them all, and recovered, and united *Biscay* to the Crown of *Castile*. But in the midst of this Success, he found himself surrounded with Traitors; and not knowing in whom to trust, he embarqu'd at *Seville* for *Portugal*, and from thence to *Galicia*, where he got twenty two Vessels, and sailed with them to *Bayonne*, then in Possession of the *English*. But upon his Absence all *Castile* received *Henry* his Bastard Brother as King, in the Year 1366. At this Time *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, surnamed the *Black-Prince*, governed *Guienne* for his Father, King of *England*, and made an Alliance with King *Peter*, to re-establish *Peter* on the Throne: Whereupon the Prince of *Wales* met *Henry*, at *Najara* in *Castile*, where he beat him on the 13th of *April*, 1367; so that he was never able to rally again; and by this Means, King *Peter* was re-placed upon the Throne, and punished many of the Rebels with Death: But after a Reign of nineteen Years, attended with various Success, he was assassinated by *Henry*, by stabbing him to Death upon the Ground; and after this inhuman Murder, the said

Henry.

Henry, the Bastard Son of *Alphonso*, succeeded to the Kingdom of *Castile*; but he was rejected and disowned by the Foreign Princes, as being illegitimate; and they severally, for themselves, form'd Pretensions to the Crown, and especially the Kings of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, pretended a Lawful Right. The King of *Portugal* demanded the Crown, in Right of his Grandmother *Beatrix*. *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*, having married *Constance*, the Daughter of King *Peter*, claim'd the Crown in the Right of his Wife. *Henry* seeing all these impending Storms, endeavoured to secure the Affection of his Nobility, by distributing Sums of Money amongst them; and amongst the rest, *Bertrand du Guesclin* had 120000 Doubloons for betraying King *Peter*. *Carmona* refusing to receive King *Henry*, he besieged and took it, and caused the Governor to be murdered: Here *Henry* found and seiz'd all *Peter's* Treasure, and some of his poor Children, which were kept in Prison as long as they liv'd. *Henry* also besieged *Bayonne*, then in Possession of the *English*, but in vain, for he was forc'd to raise the Siege and retire: He dy'd in the Year 1379, aged 46, and was succeeded by his Son.

John

John was crown'd at *Burgos* 1379; but the King of *Castile* assuming a greater Power than was his Due, the King of *Portugal* prepar'd a Fleet to meet the Fleet of *Castile* at Sea; but was beat, and the *Castile* Fleet took twenty of the *Portuguese* Gallies. The *English* Fleet, however, immediately arriving at *Lisbon* with Forces, reliev'd them; but Winter approaching, no Execution was done. But next Year, as soon as the Season permitted, they took to the Field again, when the Difference was soon adjusted by betrothing *Beatrix*, then Heiress to the Crown of *Portugal*, to Prince *Ferdinand*, youngest Son to the King of *Castile*. In the Year 1390 King *John* died by a Fall from his Horse, and was succeeded by his Son,

Henry

Henry the Third, who married the Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*. She was also Grand-Daughter to *Peter* King of *Castile*. He died when he had reigned sixteen Years, and was succeeded by his Son,

John

John the Second, who was not two Years old when his Father died. The Nobility thinking to take the Advantage of his Youth, attempted to reject him without any Regard to Succession, and have a King of their own chusing, and fix'd upon Prince *Ferdinand*, the deceas'd King's Brother, for that Purpose: But he having more Regard to Justice and Honour than to his own private Interest, refused it, and calling an Assembly, they confirm'd King *John* the Second upon the Throne: *Ferdinand* was content with being General of the Army against the *Moors*, over whom he had great Success. King *John* died in the forty ninth Year of his Reign at *Valladolid*, in the Year 1454. He was succeeded by his Son,

Henry

Henry the Fourth, in the Beginning of whose Reign the *Moors* or Infidels, taking the Advantage of his Clemency and tender Disposition, raised an Army of 5000 Horse, and a very great Number of Foot, who burnt and ravaged the Country as far as the very Gates of *Granada* and *Malaga*. King *Henry*, though he had an Army of 14000 Horse and 40000 Foot, would not move to give them Battle; pretending to destroy them by Famine, in ravaging his own Country to starve his Enemies; at which weak Action his Army mutiny'd, and conspired against him; whereupon he discharged his Army, and gave the Commissions of his Officers to other Persons, some of mean Extraction: Upon which the discarded Commissioners, and the new promoted ones, became Parties, raised Forces, and fought a Battle near *Olmedo*: But the Victory was uncertain. King *Henry* went to *Madrid*, and meeting with some Provocation, he besieged *Buenaventura*. But being indisposed before, and his Illness increasing, he made his Will, making his Daughter *Jane* his Heiress. But she was depriv'd of that Dignity, and after *Henry* died, which was in the Year 1474, the next Successor (instead of *Jane* the rightful Heiress) was

Ferdinand

Ferdinand V

Ferdinand V, Son of *John* the Second King of *Arragon*. He obtained the Crown of *Castile* in the Right of his Wife *Elizabeth*, Daughter of King *John* the Second. There was at this Time so great a Corruption in *Spain*, occasioned by the Mixture of Christians, *Jews*, *Moors*, *Infidels*, &c. that was the first Occasion of the Inquisition, which began in the Year 1478. For though it is not lik'd by the Protestants, it was then thought necessary to suppress the Infidelity and Heresy which then prevailed there, and such enormous Crimes as Blasphemy, Sodomy, Polygamy, Witchcraft, &c.

The Inquisition.

Union of *Castile* and *Arragon*.

As to the Union of the Kingdom of *Arragon* and *Castile*, King *John* of *Arragon* died in the Year 1479, and by his Death *Ferdinand* King of *Castile* inherited the Crown of *Arragon*; by which Means these two Kingdoms, which contain the most considerable Part of *Spain*, were united, and have continued so ever since.

King *Ferdinand*'s Queen *Elizabeth*, in whose Right he held the Crown, died in the Year 1504; and though *Ferdinand* surviv'd, yet her Death put an End to his Reign, and he was succeeded by

Philip, who succeeded to the Crown in the Right of his Wife *Jane*, who was the Daughter of *Ferdinand* V, and his Wife *Elizabeth*; who falling weak, and disordered in her Senses, *Ferdinand*, who was loth to lose his Kingdom for no other Reason but because he had lost his Wife, strove hard for the Guardianship of the Kingdom, and to be made Regent in the Name of his indisposed Daughter, and in opposition to her Husband. But *Philip* having Possession, had the best Interest, and maintained it; though *Ferdinand*, whose Pretensions were founded upon his Wife's last Will and Testament, had a powerful Interest in the State. *Philip*, and his Father *Maximilian*, the Emperor, that they might more powerfully oppose *Ferdinand*, made a Peace with *France*; and though *Ferdinand* employed his Politicks to draw *France* from *Philip*'s Interest, by marrying *Germaine de Foix* Niece to the King of *France*, it avail'd not; but in the midst of all these Broils and Contrivances for Interest, King *Philip* died, after a Reign of only two Years, in the twenty-eighth Year of his Age, and in the Year of our Lord 1506.

King *Philip* is

Queen *Jane*.

Queen *Jane*, Daughter of the late *Ferdinand*, by whose Title only *Philip* had reigned, assumed the Regal Title and Dignity at his Decease, though in the midst of abundance of Heats and Divisions: But it was so brought about by her Party, that her Father *Ferdinand* was made Regent of the Kingdom, and continued so till he died, which was in the Year 1516, when he left Queen *Jane* his Daughter Heiress of all his Estates, and Prince *Charles* his Grandson was made Regent. *Ferdinand* was no sooner dead, but (though his Daughter Queen *Jane* was alive) Prince *Charles* was immediately proclaimed King, and the rather because of his Mother's Incapacity, as abovementioned; so that the next King was

Charles, Son of King *Philip* and Queen *Jane*. He was born at *Ghent*, and upon the News of the Death of his Grandfather *Ferdinand*, he passed into *Spain*, and was proclaimed King, in the Year 1517; and in the Year 1519 the Electors of the Empire unanimously chose the same *Charles*, who was now King of *Spain*, to be Emperor of *Germany*, by the Name and Title of *Charles* V Emperor of *Germany*. He was the greatest Prince that ever had then enjoyed the Imperial Dignity. He was crown'd at *Aix la Chapelle*, in *May*, 1520; and in the Year 1548 the three States assembled at *Madrid*, and declared Prince *Philip* the Emperor's Son, Heir to the Crown.

On the twenty fifth of *July* 1553, Prince *Philip*, to whom the Emperor had given the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, was married at *Winchester* to *Mary* Queen of *England*; and now the Emperor, tired with the Fatigues of Government, and the Vanities of the World, chose to retire from Business, and resigned his Kingdom of *Spain* to his Son *Philip*; and, the Year after, the Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*. And passing into *Spain*, chose for his Retirement the Monastery of St. *Just*, where he lived two Years, and then died, leaving Issue *Philip* his Successor; *Ferdinand* and *John*, who died young; *Mary*, who espoused the Emperor *Maximilian*, her Cousin *German*, Son of the Emperor *Ferdinand*; and *Jane*, married to Prince *John* of *Portugal*. The next Successor was his Son,

Philip II.

Philip the Second, who began his Reign in the Year 1556; and this Year he concluded a Truce with *France*, for five Years; but it did not continue; for that Prince resolving, in Conjunction with *France*, to protect the House of *Colonna* against the Pope, sent an Army to *Naples*, the greatest Part of which perished by the Plague. Soon after this a War broke out between the two late United Allies, *France* and *Spain*, and was carried on with various Success to the respective Parties; one besieging and taking, and the other making Reprisals. The *Spaniards* besieged *St. Quintin* in *Flanders*; and the *French* hastening to relieve it, were defeated by *Philibert* Duke of *Savoy*, General of the *Spanish* Army, who destroyed a great Number of his Men. But King *Philip* soon after coming in Person to the Siege, carried the Town by Assault, and took the Governor *Coligni*, Admiral of *France*, who became afterwards the Chief of the Reformed of the Kingdom. However, in 1559 a Peace was concluded between *France* and *Spain*. In the Year 1566 King *Philip* put to Death his eldest Son *Charles*, upon a Suspicion that the Prince had an unlawful Love for the Queen his Mother-in-law, with a Design thereby to aspire to his Crown as well as his Bed.

Sebastian King of *Portugal* having been killed in *Africa*, Cardinal *Henry* his Great Uncle, aged eighty, succeeded to the Crown. But he being very old, all the Princes that had any Pretence to the Crown of *Portugal*, exhibited their respective Claims; and amongst the rest, *Philip* King of *Spain*, in the Right of his Mother *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, sent the Duke of *Alva* his General, at the Head of 1500 Cavalry and 12000 Infantry, who entered *Portugal*, and taking their Rout towards *Lisbon*, met *Anthony the Bastard*, who stiled himself King, and routed him, by which Means *Portugal* was easily reduced to King *Philip*'s Obedience.

In the Year 1588 King *Philip* caused a formidable Fleet or *Armada* to be equipp'd in *Lisbon* River, under the Command of *Medina Sidonia*, the *Spanish* Admiral. They put to Sea in *June* the same Year, and had no sooner doubled *Cape Finisterre*, but they met a violent Tempest off the Bay of *Biscay*, which dispersed the Fleet, and so disabled them, that they were forced to return to re-fit, and could not set sail till *September* following. But he arriv'd at last in the *English* Channel, where the *English* Fleet met him, took many of his Ships, and burnt others; and the rest endeavouring to make their Escape, by that tedious Trip of sailing North about to *Spain*, were so shattered with a Tempest, that but very few escaped home to tell the ill Success of their Adventure.

Spanish Armada.

In

In 1598 King *Philip* gave all the *Low-Countries* to the Princeſs *Elizabeth*, his eldeſt Daughter; ſoon after which he made Peace with *France*, and died *September* the thirteenth, aged ſeventy one, and having reigned forty two Years. He had four Wives; the firſt was *Mary* Daughter of *John* IV King of *Portugal*; the ſecond was *Mary* Queen of *England*, Daughter of King *Henry* the Eighth; the third *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Henry* II; and the fourth *Anne*, Daughter of the Emperor *Maximilian* II, by whom he had his Succeſſor,

Philip III. *Philip* III. He was declared Heir to the Crown of *Portugal* in the Year 1583; to thoſe of *Caſtile* and *Leon* in the Year 1584; of *Arragon*, *Catalonia*, and *Valence*, 1585; and of *Navarre* 1586. He was the firſt abſolute King of *Spain*, or to whom all the Kingdoms and States of *Spain* took the Oaths of Fealty. He married *Margaret*, Daughter of the Arch-duke *Charles*. The Marriage was conſummated at *Valence*, in the Year 1599.

King *Philip* finding *Spain* infeſted by the *Moors*, like ſo many Snakes in his Boſom, reſolved to expel them Root and Branch; and in order thereto cauſed an Edict to be publiſhed, commanding all *Moors* without Exception to leave his Dominions on a certain Day therein mentioned. They were allowed to carry off their perſonal Eſtates; but their Lands were to eſcheat to the Crown, or to the Lords in whoſe Juriſdiction they were ſituate.

King *Philip* reſolving to viſit his Kingdom of *Portugal*, ſet forward to that Kingdom in *April* 1619, accompanied by his Son Prince *Philip*, and the Princeſſes *Elizabeth* and *Mary*. He made his publick Entry into *Lisbon* on St *Peter*'s Day, and his Reception was the moſt grand and magnificent that had ever been ſeen in that Country. He ſpent ſeven Months upon this Expedition.

But after all this Pomp and Grandeur, King *Philip* died *March* the fifteenth, 1621. He had but one Wife, *Margaret* above-mentioned, by whom he had his Succeſſor,

Philip IV. *Philip* IV. Though this King was but ſixteen Years of Age, yet the firſt Thing he did was to order that every Miniſter of State ſhould give an Account of his Eſtate at his firſt Entrance upon his Office, that he might not afterwards enrich himſelf, and get the Reins into his Hand by the Plunder of his Country. This was a very proper Method to prevent himſelf or his Subjects being rid by any Miniſtry or Miniſter whatſoever; and when he had ſecured that Point, he conven'd the Parliament in *June* following.

The *Spaniards* now reſolved to follow their Blow againſt the *Moors*; and having a Fleet at Sea, ſunk nine and took two of the Infidels Ships; out of thirteen the other two only eſcaping.

Brazil conquer'd by the *Dutch*. The *Dutch*, always cunning enough to take all Advantages, and hearing that *Brazil* was not in a Condition to defend itſelf, reſolved to attack it; and for that Expedition equipp'd thirty five Ships, under the Command of *John Van Dort* Admiral. They had 3000 Land Soldiers on Board, and a good Train of Artillery. They ſet Sail in *December* 1624; and being entered to ſteer for *Todos Santos*, or *All Saints*, in *Brazil*, they ſteered to that Place accordingly, with Orders to ſeize the City of St. *Salvador*, the Capital of that Country: And accordingly the Fleet having entered the Bay, began to batter the Place; and landing 1000 Men, ſeized one of the Suburbs; upon which the Inhabitants quitted the City in the Night, and the *Dutch* entered it next Day, and found an inexpreſſible Booty.

But had the *Dutch* had ſuch juſt Repriſals made upon them in the *Eaſt-Indies*, for their Cruelties at *Amboyna*, &c. [*See the Deſcription of the* Phillipine Iſlands] as they had here, the *Engliſh* had not been ſuch Sufferers by them; for as ſoon as the News of this *Dutch* Expedition came to *Spain*, the *Portugueſe* equipped a Fleet of twenty ſix Ships, with 4000 Land Soldiers; and the *Spaniſh* Fleet, which was more formidable, carried 8000 Land Forces: But not being ſo ſoon ready, the two Squadrons could not join till *January* 1626, when they all ſet ſail together, under the Command of *Frederic de Toledo*, and arrived in the Bay of *Todos Santos* on *Good-Friday*, and landed 4000 Men under the Command of *Peter Roiz*, who advanced towards the City of *St. Salvador*, while the Fleet in the Bay ranged itſelf into a Creſcent, or Half Moon, to prevent the Eſcape of the *Dutch* Conquerors (or rather Invaders) of the Place. The *Spaniſh* Cannon being planted, fired furiouſly upon the Place; and a Battery, which they erected on Shore, ſunk ſeveral *Dutch* Ships; which the *Dutch* Soldiers ſeeing, they mutiny'd againſt their Officers, and ſurrender'd *Nolens Volens*; making only this Condition for themſelves, That their Lives ſhould be ſpared, and they ſent Home; which was accordingly done. When the *Dutch* quitted the Town, the Booty which the *Spaniards* found in the Town (beſides ready Money which amounted to 300000 Ducats) was eſtimated at three Millions. They found likewiſe 2000 Quintals of Powder, Plenty of Bullets, 230 Pieces of Cannon, 3000 Muskets, 800 Corſlets, as many Saddles, 600 *Moors*, 6000 Buſhels of Flower, 50000 Ox Hides, and 2000 Bariques of Wine, each ſomewhat bigger than our Barrel in *England*. And thus the voracious *Dutch* were paid in their own Coin, for thinking to plunder the *Spaniards* of their juſt Property. They had only Time to take Poſſeſſion, and lay in a freſh Supply, before the *Spaniards* made Repriſals, and not only recovered what they had loſt, but plundered their new Invaders the *Dutch*, and ſent them Home by the way of *weeping Croſs*. But the *Dutch* reſolving to have the other Bruſh, fitted out another Fleet in the Year 1632; and as they had rather play at ſmall Game than ſtand out, they took *Pernambuco*.

Maſſaniello. In the Year 1647 was the memorable Rebellion in *Naples*, under *Thomas Amello*, or *Maſſaniello*, a poor Fellow who ſold Fiſh in the Market. He excited the People to a Rebellion on account of the Taxes, and had ſo much Succeſs, that the firſt Day he had collected 50000 Men; upon which the Viceroy thought it neceſſary to make his Eſcape; and the next Day the Rebels, to the Number of 100000, declared *Maſſaniello* their General, and inveſted him with abſolute Power. Upon this he immediately ordered them to arm, and then he put a Price upon Corn, and upon every Thing ſold in the Market. He alſo burnt all the Places appointed for Taxgatherers, and the Goods and Houſes of the Farmers of the King's Revenues. The Viceroy, who had ſhut himſelf up in the Caſtle, was in Danger of ſtarving, *Maſſaniello* having cut off both his Proviſion and Water. Archbiſhop *Piſlomarin* offering *Maſſaniello* whatever he deſired to relieve him, *Maſſaniello* demanded the Reſtoration of the Antient Charters, and the Abolition of the New Taxes, and would not lay down his Arms till the Ratification of this Treaty ſhould arrive from *Spain*. But whether by his ſudden and extravagant Succeſs, or by too much Liquor, or want of Sleep &c. he became frantick, and conſequently not only uſeleſs, but odious to his

his Followers; and the Rabble, who four Days before had given him Regal Honour, now ſtuck his Head upon a Pole, and dragged his Body about the Streets: And thus, with little more Trouble, this Rebellion was ſuppreſſed.

King *Philip* died *September* the ſeventeenth, 1665, and left the Crown to his Son,

Charles the Second, who was proclaimed *October* the eighth, 1665; and in 1668 a Peace was concluded between the Crowns of *Spain* and *Portugal*.

Many being jealous of the growing Greatneſs of *France*, *Lewis* the Fourteenth, to keep himſelf in a Poſture of Defence againſt all Aſſaults, concluded a Peace at *Aix la Chapelle*, by which he agreed to give back *Franche Compte*, but was to retain what he had taken in *Flanders*.

Spain being now in perfect Peace, the Queen Mother, who governed the young King and State, willing to gratify the aſpiring Spirit of Don *John* of *Auſtria*, made him Viceroy and Captain General of *Arragon*, with more other grand Titles than had ever been beſtowed upon any one Man at the ſame Time. But this, inſtead of ſatisfying his Ambition, only increaſed it, and he now began to think himſelf in a fair Way to the Crown itſelf: And as a Step thereto, he brought up the young King in the moſt profound Ignorance as to any Affairs of State. The Court Paraſites managed all at Court; and Father *Nard*, a Jeſuit and a Foreigner, provided for himſelf and his Friends as he pleaſed; which great Power made Don *John* jealous of a Rival, inſomuch that he never let the Queen reſt till ſhe diſcarded him. Don *John* having got this Miniſter removed, he began to think himſelf a Match for the Queen, and accordingly perſuaded her to entruſt the Government in his Hands alone, which ſhe did. He then ſeized the King's Perſon, and carried him to *Arragon*; but many Lords, jealous of Don *John*'s Deſign, combined together, and made a Party againſt him, and took away his Power; and his Life did not long ſurvive. Upon his Death the Council took the Government into their own Hands, and ſo kept it till the King came at Age.

But not to ſtand longer upon Particulars, we come now down to the famous Year 1688, which gave Riſe to the long and expenſive War in King *William*'s Time.

A Project had been long concerted of a powerful Alliance againſt *France*, which was at laſt concluded at *Auxburg*; and the Emperor, the King of *Spain*, the States of *Holland*, and the *German* Princes, joined their Forces, to reduce to Reaſon ſuch a powerful and formidable Enemy.

The Prince of *Orange* (afterward King *William* the Third) whom the People of *England* had called to their Aſſiſtance againſt King *James*, becauſe he refuſed to come into the Alliance above-mentioned, went into *England* at the Head of an Army, and was there proclaimed King in the Beginning of the Year 1689, and ſwayed the *Engliſh* Scepter the Remainder of his Life.

France on one Part, and the Confederates on the other Part, being thus embroiled, the combined Fleets of *England* and *Holland*, under the Command of Admiral *Ruſſel*, deſtroyed the *French* Fleet, or at leaſt burnt all their capital Ships; amongſt which the *Riſing Sun*, aboard of which the *French* Admiral had his Flag, was one, and the chief.

In the Year 1694 the *French* Marſhal *de Noailles* defeated the *Spaniſh* Troops, and then paſſed the River *Ter*, and made himſelf Maſter of *Palamas*, *Girone*, and *Oſtalric*: But Admiral *Ruſſel* coming into the *Mediterranean*, with the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Fleets under his Command, ſoon put a Stop to his Progreſs.

Barcelona beſieged.

In the Year 1697, the Duke *de Vendoſme* laid Siege to *Barcelona*, with a Body of 35000 Men; and the Duke of *Vendoſme* being informed that the Beſieged were reſolved to make a Sally, and that at the ſame Time the Viceroy's two little Camps were to attack him, he put himſelf upon his Guard, and got before-hand with them; for inſtead of being ſurpriz'd, he ſurpriz'd the two *Spaniſh* Camps, and routed them, killing great Numbers of them, beſides a great many that were drowned in making their Eſcape through the River *Lobregat*. He ſeized all their Baggage; and on the fifteenth, the Town of *Barcelona* capitulated and ſurrendered.

This Year came on the Treaty of *Ryſwick*, in which the King of *France* agreed to ſurrender to the King of *Spain* the City and Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and ſeveral other Places therein mentioned, and then in Poſſeſſion of the *French*: The Priſoners on both Sides to be releaſed without Ranſom, and *Spain* to reſtore to the Duke of *Parma* the Iſle of *Ponza* in the *Mediterranean*.

After this Treaty of *Ryſwick Anno* 1697, all being quiet and eaſy, nothing material occurred in *Spain*; only King *Charles*, of whom we are now writing, began to be of a very weak Conſtitution, and had ſuch dangerous Fits that he was often reported for Dead. His Death at laſt happened at *Madrid Nov.* 1, 1700, in the thirty ninth Year of his Age, and thirty fifth of his Reign. He, though twice married, left no Child, but declared *Philip* Duke of *Anjou*, ſecond Son of the Dauphin of *France*, his full and ſole Heir, and he was accordingly proclaimed King of *Spain*, and of all the Dominions pertaining to that Monarchy in *Europe*, under the Titles of *Philip* V, by the Grace of God King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, *Arragon*, *the two Sicilies*, *Jeruſalem*, *Portugal*, *Navarre*, *Granada*, *Toledo*, *Valencia*, *Galicia*, *Majorca*, *Seville*, *Sardinia*, *Cordoba*, *Corſica*, *Murcia*, *Jaen*, *the Algarves*, *Algazira*, *Gibraltar*, *the Canaries*, *the Eaſt and Weſt-Indies*, &c. (obſerve how they pleaſed themſelves with the empty Titles of the *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Indies*,) with ſeveral other Titles of little more than a bare Name.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Soil, Product, Language, Government, and Religion of Spain; *concluding with an Account of the Extent of the* Spaniſh *Dominions.*

Soil. THE Mountainous Parts of *Spain* are either ſandy and rocky, or elſe covered with Woods; not but that the Soil in ſome Parts is ſuch that it might be cultivated, to bring Plenty of good Corn, if it was not for the wretched Lazineſs of the Inhabitants, who will not be at the Pains; and they are the more preſumptuous, becauſe they find this Defect of Corn, and other Grain, ſupplied by a Plenty of excellent Fruits and Wines, produced in a Way conſiſtent with the proud, lazy Temper of the *Spaniards*, *viz.* with little Art, and leſs Labour.

Produce. The chief Product of this Country are Wines, Oils, Sugars, Metals, Honey, Liquorice, Silk, Rice, Saffron, Flax, Anniſeed, Lemons, Oranges, Raiſons, Almonds, Cork, Anchovies, Soap, Sumach, Wool, Tobacco, and Lamb-Skins.

THE general Character of the *Spaniards*, as to their Complexion, Manners, and Behaviour, is given us by Doctor *Heylen*, in a Manner the moſt agreeable to what the *Engliſh* and other Travellers have obſerv'd of them, *viz.* That they are of a ſwarthy Complexion, well-proportioned, and generally with black Hair; but remarkable for a majeſtick Gait and Deportment, and very obſtinate in their Opinions. As to their Language, it is not only derived from the *Latin*, but comes neareſt the Original of any Language in [illegible]. The *Spaniſh* is ſpoke in *New Caſtile*, [illegible] moſt corrupt in *Valencia* and *Catalonia*.

THE Kingdom of *Spain*, as it now ſtands, has taken in fourteen different Kingdoms: But they are all now compriſed in three, *viz.* thoſe of *Arragon*, *Caſtile*, and *Portugal*. The two former were united in the Year 1474, by the Marriage of *Ferdinand* of *Arragon* with *Iſabel* Heireſs of *Caſtile*; and *Portugal* was afterwards annexed to the Kingdom of *Spain* by Conqueſt in the Year 1578; when the whole Continent of *Spain* was united under one King. The *Portugueſe*, however, revolted, in leſs than a Century. The King of *Spain* is called his Catholick Majeſty. The *Spaniards* fail not to give out, that, as they lay claim to Part of *Europe*, *Aſia*, *Africa*, and *America*, the Sun always ſhines upon ſome of their Dominions.

Government. THERE are in *Spain* fifteen different Councils: 1. The Council of State; 2. The Council Royal; 3. The Council of War; 4. The Council of *Arragon*; 5. The Council of *Italy*; 6. The Council of the *Indies*; 7. The Council of Orders; 8. The Council of the Treaſury; 9. The Council of the Chamber; 10. The Council of Croſade; 11. The Council of Diſcharges; 12. The Council of Inquiſition; 13. The Council of *Navarre*; 14. The Council of Conſcience; and, laſtly, the Council of Policy.

Religion. THE *Spaniards* are great Bigots to the *Roman* Catholick Religion, and follow it ſo ſtrictly, that there are no Errors too hard for them to ſwallow; though indeed of late the King of *Spain* has called the Infallibility of his Holineſs into Queſtion, and brought him to Terms that he is willing to comply with, ſince Don *Carlos* was ſettled in *Italy*. But ſtill the King of *Spain* is ſo tenacious, that he will not ſuffer any to live in his Dominions, who do not entirely believe the Doctrine of the *Romiſh* Church; as a Reward for which Care, it is, that the Pope has dignified him with the Title of Catholick Majeſty; and the Edge of the Inquiſition is now chiefly turned againſt the Proteſtants, by them called Hereticks.

Extent of the Spaniſh Dominions. AS to the Extent of its Dominion, it poſſeſſeth a Part of every Quarter of the World: And firſt, to begin with *America*: The Parts of *America* which belong to *Spain*, are *Mexico*, or *New-Spain*, which contains the Provinces of *Flaxcala*, *Guaxaca*, *Mechoacan*, *Zacatula*, *Coluna*, *Yutacan*, *Tabaſco*, *Tuteperque*, and *Zapotecas*. On the Weſt of *Mexico*, or *New-Spain*, are ſeveral Provinces; and towards the North they have *New-Mexico*, bounded by the Weſt by the Iſland of *Califernia*, the weſtermoſt Land in all *North America*.

ON the South of *Yutacan* lie *Honduras*, *Nicaragua*, and ſeveral other Provinces, extending as far as the *Iſthmus* of *Panama*, which joins the two *Peninſula*'s of *North* and *South America* together. *South America* contains the Provinces of *Cartagena* and *St. Martha*, or *New-Granada*, *Venezula*, the *New-Andaluzia*, *Guaiana* &c. To the Southward of them lies *Peru*, which gives Title to all *South America* as a Kingdom, as *Mexico* doth to *North-America*. To this is annexed the Kingdom of *Chili*, to the Eaſtward of which lies the great River *Plata*, which empties itſelf into the *Ethiopic* Ocean on the Eaſt Coaſt of *South America*. In theſe Weſtern Countries are ſix Archbiſhopricks, and thirty one Biſhopricks: But our Room will not permit a further Enlargement about them.

Europe. THE *Spaniſh* Dominions in *Europe*, or at leaſt what that Crown claims a Title to, are as follows: 1*ſt*, The Kingdom of *Spain*, as conſiſting of the Provinces of *Caſtile*, *Leon*, *Arragon*, *Navarre*, *Catalonia*, *Gallicia*, *Valencia*, *Murcia*, *Biſcay*, *Granada*, *Andaluſia*, and *Eſtramadura*; which contain 16700 Towns, eleven Archbiſhopricks, forty ſeven Biſhopricks, and fourteen Univerſities. The Revenue of the Crown amounts yearly to 2800000 Ducats: That of the Archbiſhops and Biſhops, to 1900000.

2. THIS Crown poſſeſſeth in the *Mediterranean* forty four inhabited Iſlands; the Chief is *Sicily*, which brings to the Crown 1000000 of Ducats yearly. In *Sicily* are three Archbiſhopricks and nine Biſhopricks. And beſides this, there are the Iſlands of *Sardinia*, *Majorca*, &c. and on the Continent the Kingdom of *Naples*, the State of *Milan*, the *Low-Countries*; but theſe are ſometimes in a fluctuating Condition in the Time of an *European* War.

ON the North Coaſt of *Africa*, in the *Mediterranean*, they have the Ports of *Oran*, *Marzalquiver*, *Penon*, *Melilla*, and *Ceuta*. On the Weſt Continent of *Africa* are the nine *Canary-Iſlands*; *viz.* *Ferro*, *Palmo*, *Gomero*, *Tenariff*, *Madera*, *Porto Sancto*, *Conaria*, *Fortaventura*, and *Lancerota*.

IN *Aſia* the *Philippine* Iſlands: The Chief of which is called *Luzon*, two hundred Leagues in Length, but not broad. The chief Town is *Manila*. Theſe Iſlands produce Gold, Cinnamon, and other valuable Commodities.

A BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE KINGDOM OF *PORTUGAL.*

CHAP. I.

Of the first establishing Portugal *into a Kingdom, and of the Reign of* Alphonso I. *the first King of* Portugal; *and of his Successors the Kings of* Portugal.

WHEN the *Roman* Empire began to decline, they with-held their Protection from *Portugal*, as well as from other Parts of their decaying Empire: The *Portugueſe* were ſubject to all the Misfortunes of their Mother Empire, before they were ſettled under a Prince of their own. The firſt that Hiſtory gives Account of that attacked them, were the *Alani*; but they had ſcarce begun to do ſo, till themſelves were driven out by the *Sweuans*, and conſtrained to go ſeek another Habitation. Theſe for ſome Time enjoyed it peaceably, making *Braga* their imperial City; till in the general Inundation of the *Goths* and *Vandals*, they, with the reſt of that Part of the Continent, which is circumſcribed by the Sea, and the *Pyrenian* Mountains, became Vaſſals to theſe irreſiſtible Conquerors, who living a long Time in quiet, enjoyed their Conqueſt, and were the firſt that in theſe Parts entertained the Chriſtian Religion, till the *Moors*, like a more violent Flood, fell in upon them, and with the greateſt Part of *Spain*, poſſeſſed themſelves likewiſe of that Kingdom.

But ſome Parts of *Spain*, after many Years Slavery, ſtruggling for their Liberty, this Kingdom was in Part recovered by the Kings of *Caſtile*, and by them enjoyed; till at length it gained a King of its own; the Manner thus:

Henry the ſecond Duke of *Lorrain*, whom ſome affirm to be Nephew to *Godfrey* of *Bullogne*, flying from the Fury of *Henry* the fifth Emperor, came into *Spain*, where (moved with a generous Emulation of his Uncle, who was gone to the Conqueſt of *Jeruſalem*) he offered his Service for the Subjection of the *Moors*; and in ſhort Time, by his valorous Atchievements againſt thoſe Enemies of the Chriſtian Religion, grew into ſo much Repute with *Alphonſo* the VIth, King of *Caſtile*, that he gave him his baſe Daughter *Teraſia* in Marriage, with his whole Acquiſts in *Portugal* for her Dower; though with no other Title than that of Count, or Earl. Some further Addition he made to his Dominions, and in the Year 1094 had a Son, who, after his Grandfather, was named *Alphonſo*. At laſt, overborn with the Burden of ſeventy ſeven Years, he died in the Year 1112, and left the Government of *Portugal* to his ſaid Son,

Alphonſo I. the firſt King of *Portugal*. He had been from his Childhood brought up under his Father in military Exerciſes, after whoſe Death he proſecuted the Victory over the *Moors*, and againſt the Kings of *Leon*. He alſo fought ſeveral Battles againſt his Grandfather *Alphonſo* VI, King of *Caſtile*, and in one Battle took him Priſoner, and would not releaſe him till his ſaid Grandfather had conferred upon him the Title of Duke of *Portugal*; which was one further Confirmation in his Kingdom. But King *Iſmaurus*, the moſt powerful of the *Mauritanians*, called other four Kings to his Aſſiſtance, and with a large Army invaded *Alphonſo*, and his Kingdom of *Portugal*; but he overcame the five Kings, and ſlew or took them Priſoners: Upon which great Victory his Soldiers and Officers thinking the Title of Duke too mean for ſo great a Conqueror, conferr'd on him, and he accepted, the Title of *King of* Portugal, he being the firſt of that Title. Then returning home, enriched with Spoils, and ſtudying to requite his Soldiers and People, for his Advancement to a new-erected Throne, he exerted his Regal Power for the publick Advantage, and called a general Council of the three Eſtates, the Nobility, Clergy, and Commons, who immediately, with one Voice, voted for his being their King; and not only ſo, but that after his Deceaſe his Progeny ſhould ſucceed to the Crown. Upon which they gave him the Royal Enſigns in the Name of *Alphonſo* I.

God

God, and therewithal the Archbishop of *Braga* placed the Crown upon the King's Head, and put the Scepter into his Hand; which done his Majesty rose up, and drawing his Sword, said, *Blessed be God that hath been my Helper. With this Sword I have delivered you, and overcome our Enemies; and now that you have made me your King, let us make Laws for the Government of the Kingdom.* To which they answered in the Affirmative, for themselves, and their Children, and Posterity.

As this was the first King, and Laws were made in his Reign to regulate the Succession of the Crown for future Ages, I shall insert the particular Articles, then solemnly concluded, and agreed upon, which were as follow,

1. *That King* Alphonso *should be Master of the Kingdom; and that after him there might be no Trouble in the chusing a King, his Son should reign after him, and his Grandchild, and so from Father to Son in* secula seculorum.

2. *That if the eldest Son should die during the Life of the Father, the next Brother should be King, and so forward.*

3. *That if the King should die without Issue, having a Brother, that Brother should succeed, but not his Sons without Consent of the Estates.*

4. *That if the King should have only Daughters, the eldest should be Queen after her Father, upon condition that she be married to a Native of the Kingdom, and that he be a Nobleman, who should not have the Power to take upon him the Name of King, until he had a Son born, nor should be till then wear a Crown on his Head, or take the Right-hand of his Wife.*

5. *That it should be forever held for a Law among the* Portuguese, *that the King's eldest Daughter should marry a Native of the Country, that so the Crown might never descend to Foreigners; and that in case she should marry a foreign Prince, she should be excluded from her Right of Succession; for they would not have that Kingdom, which themselves, by their own Valour, and by the Effusion of their own Blood, without the Aid or Assistance of any Strangers, had made so, to go out of the Race of the* Portuguese.

These Statutes, thus confirmed, increased *Alphonso*'s Power and Dignity; which putting him upon higher Enterprizes, he undertook the Siege of *Lisbon*, and in five Months Time annexed it to the Crown of *Portugal*. This was the first Time of its belonging to that Kingdom, though now its Capital. He gained likewise many other Conquests on both Sides the *Tagus*: But at length, having been wounded in a Battle, and being worn out with Age, he relinquished the Wars, and gave himself up entirely to Works of Piety and Devotion. He died in *December* 1185, aged ninety-one, and was succeeded by his Son,

Sancho *Sancho*, the second King of *Portugal*, the only legitimate surviving Son of *Alphonso*. He was above thirty Years of Age when he came to the Crown, which was in the Year 1185; and being now freed from the Incursions of the *Moors*, he applied himself wholly to the improving of the present Peace of the Kingdom, to the common Advantage of his Subjects. He employed vast Numbers of otherwise idle, useless People, in tilling and cultivating great Quantities of Ground, otherwise useless as well as the People that till'd it; and by that Means, in some Measure, banished the wild Beasts from their Habitations.

He also applied himself with the same Assiduity to repair the Castles and other publick Edifices, and restored all the Cities and Towns to their pristine Splendor. As he was doing this, a Fleet of thirteen Men of War, belonging all to Christian Princes, were drove into *Lisbon* by a Storm, as they were going to the Holy War. *Sancho* agreed with their Commanders, that if they would go with his Forces to invade the Kingdom of *Algarve*, then in possession of the *Moors*, if they succeeded, they should have all the Plunder, and whatever they found upon the Spot; only leaving him the plundered Kingdom, and Cities, Towns, &c. to his Share. The *Moors* strongly resisted, and had probably been too hard for him and his united Forces, had not a raging Pestilence swept off above 200000 of their Forces; which made the rest glad to get home. After which *Sancho*, following his Blow, assaulted the *Moors* with so much Fury, when they least expected it, that he expelled them out of *Portugal* and *Algarve*.

Sancho had nine Children; three Sons and five Daughters surviv'd the Father, who died in the fifty-ninth Year of his Age, and was succeeded in the Kingdom by his Son,

Alphonso II. This King of *Portugal* was crown'd at twenty seven Years of Age; but so envied by his Brothers, though younger than himself, that they would not come within the Bounds of Allegiance: Nor indeed were they without sufficient Provocation; for *Alphonso* detained from them a great Part of the Legacies left them by his Father; and indeed *Sancho*, in his Life Time, perceiving something of this in *Alphonso*'s Temper, provided against it, and left some Cities and Castles, and 500000 Crowns, to his younger Sons. *Sancho* was no sooner dead, but the Brothers accordingly retired to their respective Castles: But *Alphonso*, pretending these Estates should not be alienated from the Crown, sent an Army and dispossessed them, they not being in the least able to resist nor defend themselves. *Alphonso* II.

When his Brothers were thus drove out of the Kingdom, they sued to the Pope for Redress; who commanded *Alphonso* to settle the Affair, by remitting the Decision to indifferent Judges. After which he engaged against the *Moors*, and very much weakened them; and this continued till he grew to exceeding fat, that he could scarce move his Body. However, he applied himself with all Diligence to the Affairs of State. He married *Uracca* Daughter of *Alphonso* VIII or IX, King of *Castile*. He also married *Eleanor* Daughter of *Henry* II, of *England*, and had by her divers Children; of whom the first was *Sancho*: His second Son was *Alphonso*; his third was *Ferdinand*; the last was a Daughter, *Leonora*, married to the King of *Dacia*. In the Year 1233 *Alphonso* died, in the fortieth Year of his Age, and the one and twentieth of his Reign; and was succeeded in his Kingdom by his above-mentioned eldest Son,

Sancho II, who took the Administration of the Government upon him at twenty six Years of Age. *Sancho* II. But he so weakened himself with hot Baths and Bagnio's, that he impaired both his Health and his Senses; insomuch that he resigned the Government of both his Kingdom and himself to his Ministers, who governed as they pleased, and left him nothing but the bare Name of a King.

He married *Mecia Lopez*, the Widow of *Alfonso de Castra*, of an antient royal Family, but inferior to that of *Portugal*. The Court Minions by

by Means of the new Queen, and of the King's Weakneſs, ſtudied Means to oppreſs the Subjects, to the Prejudice of Juſtice, and the Deſtruction of the State; which the Nobles ſeeing, repreſented the Caſe to the King; adding, that if he did not put a Stop to this Inundation of Oppreſſion, it would entail incurable Miſery and Ruin upon his whole Dominion. The King, extremely moved by this, promiſed Redreſs; but the Queen and the Court Sycophants, ſoon overturned his well-intended Schemes, by making him believe that all thoſe Complaints were only the Effect of Malice and Prejudice.

THE Nobles, reſolving not to let it reſt here, complained to the Pope of the Weakneſs of the King, and the Plots of the Queen; and added, that the Marriage was unlawful by reaſon of too near a Conſanguinity; and the more ſo, becauſe they did not ſeek for a Diſpenſation from the Pope for that unlawful Marriage. Whereupon the Pope, then *Gregory* IX, ordered the Biſhop of *Sabina* to diſcharge King *Sancho* from his Wife; which he at firſt ſeemed to obey, while the Biſhop was preſent; but as ſoon as he was gone, they lived together in every Reſpect as formerly: The Queen's Favourites were reſtored, and every Thing was upon the ſame corrupt Foundation as before; and the Cruelty of the Queen's Favourites as much turned to the Ruin of the Subjects as it had ever before.

THE Commonalty, not able longer to bear this, went another Way to work; and, with one *Rannondo Viego* at their Head, took up Arms, and coming in a full Body to the Palace, let the Queen know, that notwithſtanding what Steps ſhe had taken to rule abſolute, to the Detriment or rather Ruin of the Subjects, it ſhould not be in her Power; and therefore they ſeized her, and carried her away Priſoner to a Caſtle on the Confines of the Kingdom, where they did not fear either the Authority or Force of the King; eſpecially as he was ſo uncapable of governing, and ſhewed his Weakneſs ſo much in the ſuffering the Reins of Government to be lodged in the Queen's Hands.

THE Nobility, obſerving that all this Diſturbance was occaſioned by the Licentiouſneſs of the Queen, and the weak Spirit of the King, they had Recourſe again to the Pope; who, upon mature Conſideration of the dangerous Conſequences of an ambitious Queen and a weak King, did, with the unanimous Conſent of a Synod then ſitting, agree, that *Sancho* ſhould be depoſed, and that his Brother *Alphonſo* ſhould be called from *Bologna* to take upon him the Government, and remedy the Diſorders the Nation laboured under. Whereupon *Sancho*, ſenſible of his own Weakneſs, and ſeeing himſelf abandoned, retired to *Toledo*, where he ſeemed entirely ſatisfied with his private Life. He died in the Year 1245, aged thirty nine, and in the thirteenth Year of his Reign, (ſetting aſide the unfortunate Part of the latter End of it.) He left

Alphonſo III, who married at the Age of twenty ſeven. He was ſtrong, large of Stature, and of an invincible Courage; and at his firſt aſcending the Throne, he appeaſed the Tumults which the Populace were provoked into by the Wickedneſs of thoſe Miniſters, who taking the Advantage of his Brother's Weakneſs, perverted and corrupted the Government. He married *Beatrice*, the illegitimate Daughter of *Alphonſo* IX, King of *Caſtile*; who being crowned Queen, and the Succeſſion confirmed by the Birth of two Children, *Alphonſo* was willing at all Opportunities to purſue the Wars againſt the *Moors*, and drove them from the Confines of his Kingdom, to the Increaſe of his Dominions, and of his own Reputation.

HE had three Sons by *Beatrice*, (not to mention baſe Children, which he had pretty Plenty.) The youngeſt died in his Infancy, and was named *Ferdinand*; *Alphonſo* was the ſecond Son; but his eldeſt, who ſucceeded him, was

Dioniſio, born in the Year 1260. He took Education very well, and could ſpeak many foreign Languages. When he was about twenty Years old, his Father died, and his Mother put up for Queen Regent; pretending, that by her Intereſt and Induſtry, ſhe had united ſeveral Cities to the Crown of *Portugal*, and alſo that ſhe was afraid that her Son, for want of Experience and Fortitude, might be perſuaded or drawn away by Courtiers, or conſume his Subſtance and the Riches of his Kingdom: But all her Attempts and Pretences were vain; he would not allow her any Share in the Government, holding it as a Maxim, that *That Man was blame-worthy, who being above eleven Years of Age, could not moderate himſelf without the Help of others; but that of all Things it was moſt baſe to deſire the Aſſiſtance of a Woman.* *Dioniſio*

Dioniſio was a liberal Prince: He commanded that the waſte Ground ſhould be diſtributed amongſt the poor Country People, clear from all Taxes; ſo that if they could but work, and cultivate their Lands, or if their Children or young Relations would join with them in doing it, there was a Certainty of a Livelihood. But thoſe who were ſo ſick or aged, that Land could not be of any Uſe to them, the King maintained them at his own Charge. He never oppreſt his Subjects with Taxes, and yet left his Heirs a full Exchequer. He made many wholſome Laws, amongſt which was one to prevent tedious and vexatious Law-Suits; aſſigning certain Days to have them determined, without the Expence that formerly attended them. He firſt inſtituted the Univerſity at *Conimbria*, and planted in it the moſt learned Men of the Age.

Dioniſio married *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Peter* King of *Arragon*, by whom he had *Alphonſo* his Succeſſor, and *Conſtance*, who was married to *Ferdinand* King of *Caſtile*. He died *Anno* 1325, when he had reign'd forty ſix Years. He left by his Will a very large Sum to be diſtributed amongſt religious Men and Orphans, or Children unprovided for. He left alſo a Maintenance for five hundred Cavaliers, thereby enjoining them to be ready to fight againſt the *Turks*, whenever Occaſion ſhould offer. He was ſucceeded by his Son

Alphonſo IV, who married *Beatrice*, Daughter to *Sancho* the fourth King of *Caſtile*: He at firſt was much addicted to Hunting, even to the Neglect of his Government; but being told that it was better to be called a juſt prudent Prince, than to have it ſaid, that he had taken 10000 Stags or wild Boars, he accepted the Advice, and preferred them as his beſt Friends who had given it him. *Alphonſo* IV

ABOUT the Beginning of this Reign Don *Juan Emanuel*, Son to the Prince *Emanuel*, the Nephew of *Ferdinando the Holy*, was famous amongſt the *Spaniards*, both for his noble Birth and his Riches. He had a Daughter called *Conſtance*, who though yet in her Minority, was betrothed to King *Alphonſo* XI of *Caſtile*, but he went from the Contract, and eſpouſed *Mary* Daughter of *Alphonſo* King of *Portugal*: Upon which the King of *Portugal* thinking *Conſtance* to be a fit Match for his Son Prince *Pedro*,

firſt writ to his Son-in-law *Alphonſo*, and afterwards began to treat with *Juan Emanuel*. They both returned Anſwers, the King of *Caſtile* with Diſſimulation, and *Emanuel* with Sincerity offering his Daughter.

The King of *Caſtile*, vexed that *Conſtance*, whom he had ſo deſpiſed and ſlighted, ſhould ſtill be a Queen, and envying Don *Piedro* the Enjoyment of ſo worthy a Woman, after many Artifices to hinder the Marriage, fell to Violence, and put himſelf in Arms to hinder the Paſſage of *Conſtance* into *Portugal*. This War occaſioned the Effuſion of much Blood; but *Benedict* XII put an End to it, and *Conſtance* was married to Prince *Piedro*.

About the Year 1340, *Alboacen*, that potent *Miramamolin* of *Morocco* and *Granata*, with a mighty Army of 470000 Men, came againſt *Alphonſo* King of *Caſtile*, threatening indeed the Ruin of all *Spain*; when *Alphonſo*, by the Advice of his Council, ſent to deſire Aſſiſtance of his Father-in-Law the King of *Portugal*; and that he might the better ſpeed, he made his Wife, the Daughter of *Alphonſo*, the Meſſenger; who willingly heard and liſtened to the Embaſſy, and not only promiſed Aſſiſtance of Men to further this Expedition, but to go himſelf in Perſon.

Being arrived according to his Promiſe, it was determined that they ſhould on both Sides aſſault the *Moors*, which accordingly they did, and that with ſo proſperous Succeſs to the Chriſtians, that after an innumerable Slaughter of the *Saracens*, they gained one of the moſt rich and moſt glorious Victories that has been in the Memory of Man. So great Quantities of Silver and Gold they found in the *Mooriſh* Tents, that one would have imagined all the Riches of *Africa* had been tranſported into *Spain*.

The Reaſon of the Barbarians tranſporting over ſo great Treaſure, was ſuppoſed to be out of the Aſſurance of Victory, which they flattered themſelves withal: They had deſigned *Spain* for their Country, and thereupon all thoſe who had Thoughts of planting there, brought over all that could either better, or conſerve their Fortune.

King *Alphonſo* had ſix Children by his Wife *Beatrice*: Four Sons, three of whom died in their Infancy; a Daughter named *Maria*, who was married to *Alphonſo* King of *Caſtile*; and *Eleanora*, married to *Piedro*, the fourth King of *Arragon*. But his Son

Piedro. *Piedro* ſucceeded in the Kingdom. He was born at *Liſbon Anno* 1325, and was crowned about the Age of thirty three. He was very ſickly till he was about eighteen, and about twenty one he married *Conſtance*, the Daughter of Don *Juan Emanuel*, by whom he had only one Son, *Ferdinand*, who ſucceeded in the Kingdom; and ſhe, as if ſhe had been ſent into the World only to bring him in, as ſoon as ſhe had performed that Task, died.

After her Death Don *Piedro* married *Agneſa de Caſtro*, a moſt beautiful Woman, and deſcended of the Blood Royal; by her he had many Children, amongſt whom one was *John*, who afterward was the firſt of that Name King of *Portugal*. This Lady being accuſed to King *Alphonſo*, at his Return from his great Victory over the *Moors* nigh the River *Saledo*, was by him (for what Crimes is unknown) put to Death; which ſo incenſed *Piedro*, that he took up Arms againſt his Father, which he laid not down till his Death.

As ſoon as he was come to the Crown, he brought to condign Puniſhment thoſe who had wrongfully accuſed and counſelled the Lady *Agneſa*'s Death: He afterwards renewed the old War betwixt his Father and the King of *Caſtile*, about the ſtopping of his eſpouſed Wife *Conſtance*.

But becauſe the Pope had before made up this Breach, he by his Letters commands *Piedro* to deſiſt from further proſecuting the War, which he for the preſent obeys: But ſoon after, upon a ſlight Pretence, again enters into *Caſtile* with his Army; whereupon an Excommunication was thundered out againſt him, which forced him to retire; and to gain his Pardon, turn his Army upon the *Moors*, from whom he took the ſtrong Port Town of *Pharo*, in the Kingdom of *Algarve*.

At his Return Home he fell ſick, and in the tenth Year of his Kingdom, and about the three and fortieth of his Age, in *September* 1367, he died.

Ferdinand, the firſt of that Name, ſucceeded his Father *Piedro*, in the Kingdoms of *Portugal* and *Algarve*. He was born at *Liſbon*, in the Year 1347, and was the only Child of *Conſtance*, Daughter of Don *Juan Emanuel*: He arrived at the Crown at the Age of about two and twenty Years, in the Year 1369. As ſoon as he had finiſhed the Ceremonies of his Coronation, he proſecuted the War his Father had begun againſt the *Moors*, and in ſeveral Battles drove them quite out of *Algarve*; he built a Monaſtery upon a Promontory of Land, called *Cape St. Vincent*, now by us the *Southern Cape*, which ſtretcheth itſelf out into the *Atlantic* Sea. *Ferdinand*

He addicted himſelf to the planting and peopling of that Kingdom, diſtributing the waſte Lands amongſt the Inhabitants; he repaired many Cities, Towns and Caſtles, which had been deſtroyed by the Fury of the War; he built ſeveral Churches and Monaſteries in that Kingdom, all which he enriched with great Revenues; but particularly a Monaſtery for *Franciſcan* Friars, erected in *Silva*, the chief City of that Territory.

About this Time it was that *Piedro*, Son of *Alphonſo*, the eleventh King of *Caſtile*, having committed ſeveral tyrannical Outrages, intolerable to his Subjects, oppreſſing and deſtroying them, putting away and after murdering his Wife, Daughter to *Peter* Duke of *Bourbon*, was by his Baſtard Brother *Henry*, chaſed out of his Kingdom, and forced to live an Exile.

He at firſt ſeeked for Aid to *Ferdinand* King of *Portugal*, but in vain; he next addreſſed himſelf to *Edward the Black Prince*, of *Wales*, who was then at *Bourdeaux* with an Army of 30000 Men; he conſents to aſſiſt him, and encountring *Henry* on the Borders of *Caſtile* with near 100000 Men, utterly diſcomfits him, and eſtabliſh'd *Piedro* in the Throne, who ſhortly after falling again to his former tyrannical Courſes, is deſerted by his Subjects, taken by his Brother *Henry*, and put to Death.

Ferdinand had but one only Daughter that ſurvived, named *Beatrice*, who was married to *Henry* King of *Caſtile*, and thereby excluded from the Right of Succeſſion, according to the Law made in the firſt Aſſembly Eſtates held at *Lamego*, in the Reign of *Alphonſo* the firſt King; ſo that in this King ended the legitimate Line of *Henry* Duke of *Lorrain*.

This King had now reigned eighteen Years, and lived forty, when ſeized by a violent Sickneſs, he gave up the Ghoſt, in the Year of our Lord God, 1387, and was buried by his Anceſtors in the Cathedral Church of *Liſbon*; he was ſucceeded by

John the Firſt, Baſtard Son to *Piedro* the Firſt, by *Agneſa de Caſtro*, who ſucceeded *Ferdinand* in the

the Kingdom; he was born in *Lisbon* in the Year 1356; he was in his Minority educated in the famous *Conimbricenſe* Univerſity, where he addicted himſelf to all thoſe Studies which became a Prince, though it is to be ſuppoſed at that Time he thought not to have arrived at ſo great a Height as to be King of *Portugal*.

When he was grown to the Age of about three and twenty Years, he was by his Brother made Chief Commander of his Armies, in which Military Employment he behaved himſelf with ſo much Courage and Magnanimity, as was admirable; his Valour ſoon gained the Love of the Soldiers, and his Courteſy and Affability the Affection of the People; the very *Moors* his Enemies would applaud him, as both a perfect Soldier and a Courtier.

His Brother being dead, and his Nephew *Beatrice* uncapable of Succeſſion, by reaſon of her having married a foreign Prince, he claimed the Crown, as next of the Blood; but his Claim was at firſt made void, by reaſon of his being illegitimate; when afterwards the Council of Eſtates, finding that if they ſhould refuſe him, they might perchance chuſe one leſs deſerving, conferred the Crown upon him, yet ſo as he ſhould receive it not as his indubitable Right by Birth, but as given him by Election; becauſe he was at the Time of his Brother's Death General of the Armies in *Algarve*; and having gained ſo much upon the Soldiers and People, preſuming upon their Affection, and his Deſert, laid claim to the Crown, which they being no way able to reſiſt, were forced to reſt content, and permit him to enjoy what was likewiſe willingly conferred upon him by the People, ſo that he came to the Crowu partly by Force, and partly by Election.

But howſoever he came by it, enjoy it he did, and entered into his Government about the two and thirtieth Year of his Age, and in the Beginning of the Year 1388 received with great Applauſes the whole Kingdom, as a Prince from whom they expected great and good Things, having already had ſo large Experience of him.

Soon after his Coronation, he married *Philippa*, Daughter to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, which Match he the rather inclined to, becauſe *Henry* the Baſtard King of *Caſtile*, in right of his Wife *Beatrice*, pretended a Title to the Crown of *Portugal*, which he hoped he might the better oppoſe by matching into that Family, which had equal, if not more, indubitable Right to the Kingdom of *Caſtile*.

For *John* Duke of *Lancaſter* having married *Conſtance*, the eldeſt Daughter to *Peter*, the depoſed and murthered King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, claimed a Right to, and was a great Stickler for, thoſe Kingdoms, yet never enjoyed any other but the bare Title.

King *John* having ſettled his Kingdom, applied himſelf to the proſecuting the War againſt the *Moors*, who being quite driven out of his Confines, he reſolves to follow into their own Country, and be the firſt King of his Nation that ever paſt the Sea: To this Purpoſe he mans out a potent Fleet, and having freighted it with a ſufficient Army, puts to Sea, and lands in *Mauritania*, where in ſeveral Battles he diſcomfits the Barbarians, waſtes their Country, burns their Villages, and poſſeſſes himſelf of a Sea-Port Town, called *Ceuta*, whereby he gained both a retiring Place, and an Inlet into the Country when he pleaſed.

By his Queen *Philippa*, King *John* had a noble and numerous Iſſue; firſt *Edward* (ſo named from King *Edward* the third of *England*, his Godfather) who ſucceeded in the Kingdom; ſecondly, *Ferdinand*, a Man of ſo great Abſtinence, and ſo devoutly religious, that the *Portugueſe* added him to the Calendar of their Saints; he was in the Wars againſt the *Moors* taken Priſoner, and during his Captivity behaved himſelf with ſuch an admirable Patience, as worthily deſerves our Wonder, never murmuring to be linked together with one of his meaneſt Servants, and with him forced for his Living to grind in a Mill; though ſuch was the Piety of the Servant, that he would willingly have performed the Task himſelf, and excuſed his Lord from the Toil, if it had been poſſible: At length he was ranſomed, and returning, ended his Days in a Recluſe; the third Son of King *John* was named after his own Name; the fourth *Piedro*; but the fifth, who moſt worthily deſerves to be recorded, was the Infant *Henry*.

This Prince, whether emulating the great Actions of his Father, or out of a natural Inclination in himſelf, was the firſt that encouraged the *Portugueſe* to affect foreign Voyages; he firſt ſet out with a great Fleet in or about the Year 1425, and made Diſcovery of the Iſlands in the *Atlantic* Sea, which at firſt were called from their being newly found out, *Inſulæ Novæ*, or the *New Iſlands*, afterwards, and now vulgarly called the *Azores*; he likewiſe in many other Voyages made Diſcovery of the Iſlands of *Madeira*, *Holy Port*, and *Cape Verde*; and ſailing farther along the Coaſt of *Africa*, was the firſt that found out the Way by Sea to *Guinea*: At length wearied with Travel, and over-preſſed with Age, he retired, and lived upon Cape *St. Vincent*, which Place he choſe, becauſe of the conſtant Sereneneſs of the Air, being a great Lover of Aſtrology, and the Mathematicks; he died about the Year 1465, and was buried in the Chapel of that Monaſtery, built by *Ferdinand* the Firſt.

King *John* reigned in all forty ſeven Years, having from the King of *England* received the Honour of being Knight of the Garter; as likewiſe did his two Sons Prince *Edward*, and the Infant *Henry*. He died in the Year 1436, in the eightieth Year of his Age, and was ſucceeded by

Edward; the firſt of that Name, King of *Portugal*, who was born at the City of *Braga*, in or about the Year of our Lord 1392; he was educated during his Youth in all thoſe Exerciſes befitting a Prince under the Tutorage of the Archbiſhop of *Lisbon*, in which he profited ſo, that in his moſt tender Years, his great Judgment was deſervedly wondered at: After he had paſſed his Minority in Studies, he ſeveral Times accompanied his Father in the Wars of *Africa*, where he ſhewed great Proofs of his Magnanimity and Courage.

He came to the Crown at the Age of forty four Years, or thereabouts, but was married long before he came to the Crown, and had four Children, to wit, two Males, *Ferdinand*, who died an Infant; *Alphonſo*, who ſucceeded him in the Kingdom; and two Females, *Joan*, married to the King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*; and *Leonora*, married to the Emperor *Ferdinand*, and Mother to the Emperor *Maximilian*.

He died after he had reigned five Years, and thoſe with ſuch bad Succeſs, that it was thought by many to have accelerated his End. He was ſucceeded by

Alphonſo V, his Son, and the twelfth King of *Portugal*; he was born at *Lisbon*, in or about the Year of our Lord 1420; a Prince in whom appeared evident Tokens of Courage, Greatneſs, and Magnanimity, even in his youngeſt Years; he came to the Crown about the Age of one and twenty, in the Year of our Lord 1441, and was

no ſooner ſettled in the Kingdom, but rigging out a potent Fleet, with an Army of about thirty thouſand Men, he paſſed into *Barbary*, to prove if by his better Fortune, he could regain that Honour which his Father moſt unfortunately had loſt.

Nor was his Succeſs leſs than his Deſires, or than what his Valour merited; for having in ſeveral Battles overthrown the *Moors*, he at length took from them the ſtrong Towns of *Tangier*, *Alcazar*, and *Arzilla*, which he ſtrongly fortified, and engariſoned with *Portugueſe* Forces.

During his Reign, ſeveral Voyages were made to the *New Iſlands*, or *Azores*, where the *Portugueſe* now began to fortify, and inhabit, as they did likewiſe in the Iſlands of *Madeira*, *Holy-Port*, and *Cape Verde*. Thus began this Nation by Degrees to grow famous at Sea, by reaſon of their new Diſcoveries, and of the great Trafic they began to have.

King *Alphonſo* left behind him ſeveral Children, two of which came to be Kings after him, to wit, *John* his eldeſt Son, who ſucceeded him, and *Emannel* his ſecond, who reigned after his Brother.

He died at *Lisbon* in the forty third Year of his Reign, and ſixty fourth of his Life, in the Year of our Lord 1484, and was ſucceeded by his Son

John the Second, who was born about the Year 1456, and entered into the Government of his Kingdom at the Age of about twenty eight Years; a Prince who being educated under his Father's Arms, could not but be Partaker of ſome of his Virtues; an honourable Emulation of which he ſhewed in his firſt coming to the Crown, by a proſperous Expedition againſt the *Moors*.

At his Return from *Barbary*, crowned with Victory, he ſent out two *Armada's* to Sea, the gallanteſt and beſt accounted that ever *Portugal* had before that Day ſeen; the one directed its Courſe to the *Azores*, which Iſlands were then indifferently well peopled, and began to afford a Trafic to the *Portugueſe* Nation; from thence this Fleet was to go and touch at the other Iſlands diſcovered by the Infant Don *Henry*, in the *Atlantic* Sea, and ſupply them with Neceſſaries.

The other Fleet, more warlikely fitted and ſupplied with all Sorts of Neceſſaries, both for War and Peace, as deſigned both for a Conqueſt and Plantation, ſteered its Courſe along the Coaſt of *Africa* to *Guinea*, where landing the Soldiers and Planters, they ſoon drove away the heathen Inhabitants, fortified themſelves, and made an abſolute Conqueſt of the Realms of *Congo*. The Fleet afterwards made Diſcovery of that Coaſt, as far as the Cape of *Good-Hope*, and planting and fortifying as they went.

King *John* having now reigned fourteen Years, with happy Succeſs in all the Enterprizes he undertook, by an unfortunate Accident came by his End; for he very much delighting in Hunting, which Sport he was very eager at, purſuing a Stag, his Horſe leaping over a Ditch, gave him a violent Fall, of which in three Days he died, in the forty ſecond Year of his Age, and fourteenth of his Reign, leaving his Kingdom, by reaſon of his dying without any legitimate Iſſue, to his Brother,

Emanuel, who was born in or about the Year 1462. He took Poſſeſſion of the Crown of *Portugal* at the Age of about thirty two Years; a Prince who had been bred up in all Sorts of Learning, that might make him either a Divine or a Stateſman.

At his firſt Entrance in the Government, he addicted himſelf ſo wholly to Religion, that he took little care of the Management of the Kingdom's Affairs, ſo that whilſt he was never from Church Duties, both Church and State were likely to go to Ruin by the evil Adminiſtration of thoſe Miniſters whom he had entruſted.

The Archbiſhop of *Lisbon*, who foreſaw the Ruin which approached to the Kingdom by the Tyranny of the Officers of State, preſumed freely to tell the King, that though he could not blame his Zeal and Devotion, yet he muſt needs adviſe him, that God had placed him as King and Governor over his People; that the divine Majeſty would be better pleaſed if he would with his Prayers to the Almighty for their Welfare, add his Care for their Protection; that it was a Duty incumbent upon him to provide for his Subjects Felicity, as of Parents for their Children, whilſt according to the Apoſtle, *He that does not take Care for his Family, was worſe than an Infidel*; that for want of his Superintendency, the Kingdom was going into the Road of Deſtruction, by reaſon of the ill Adminiſtration of his Miniſters; that according to his Duty he could not but adviſe him to free them from Oppreſſion, &c.

These Speeches of the Archbiſhop extremely ſtirred up the King's Affections to his People, becauſe he was ſenſible of the great Love the Archbiſhop bore him, and becauſe he knew what he had ſpoken was Truth; he therefore takes the Helm of State into his own Hands, calls thoſe unjuſt Stewards to account, frees the People from their Oppreſſions, where he finds Cauſe puniſhes them ſeverely, and finally, makes ſeveral Laws for the Good and Benefit of the People, whoſe Affections he in a ſhort Time ſo far gained, that they ſurnamed him *the Good*.

And having thus ſettled his Kingdom to the Content of his Subjects at Home, he next applied his Mind to the aggrandizing of it; to which Purpoſe in the Year 1500 he fitted out a great Number of Ships, which he divided into three Fleets, ſending one towards the Eaſt, the ſecond towards the Weſt, and the third towards the South, to make Diſcoveries.

That which ſteered their Courſe towards the Eaſt, were the firſt Chriſtian Fleet that ever paſſed the Cape of *Good Hope*, and found out the Paſſage by Sea into the *Eaſt-Indies*; that towards the Weſt, made Diſcovery and took Poſſeſſion of *Brazil* in *America*; that towards the South, re-inforced and added to their former Conqueſts in the Kingdoms of *Conga* and *Angola*.

These happy Diſcoveries thus made at the Return of the Fleet from the *Eaſt-Indies*, a more potent was ſent out with a convenient Land Army, to take Poſſeſſion of ſome Places in the Country; theſe diſcomfitted the great Armies of the *Turks* and Sultan of *Egypt*, poſſeſſed themſelves of the Iſland of *Ormus* in the *Perſian* Gulf, an Iſland ſo rich and well ſituated, that the *Arabians* uſed to ſay, that if the whole World were a Ring, that would be like the Diamond in it; many other Forts and Places upon the Sea Coaſt they likewiſe ſubjected, and fortified, and returned Home richly laden.

Thus the Riches of *India*, which before had been brought over the vaſt *Arabian* Deſarts upon the Backs of Camels, to *Grand Cairo* in *Egypt*, and from thence by Sea tranſported to *Venice*, and ſo diſperſed over theſe Parts of the World, were now brought home by Sea, a longer, but leſs chargeable, and far quicker Way.

Emanuel, while his Fleets were performing theſe glorious Services abroad, governed his Kingdoms in Peace and Proſperity at home, Hedle

blessed with a noble and numerous Issue, to wit, six Sons and two Daughters; the Sons were, first, Prince *John*, who succeeded him in the Kingdom; secondly, the Infant D. *Lewis*; thirdly, the Infant D. *Alphonso*, who was after a Cardinal, Archbishop of *Lisbon*, and Abbot of *Alcobaza*; fourthly, the Infant D. *Henry*, Cardinal and Archbishop of *Braga*; fifthly, the Infant D. *Fernando*; sixthly, the Infant D. *Edward*. The Daughters were, first, the Infant *Isabella*, who was married to *Charles* the Fifth, that famous Emperor, and King of *Spain*; and secondly, the Infant *Beatrice*, married to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*.

Emanuel having long governed this Nation to his great Glory and Renown, at last, in the seventy third Year of his Life, and forty first of his Empire, yielded to Fate at *Lisbon*, in, or about the Year 1435, and was buried in the Cathedral of that City amongst many of his Ancestors, and was succeeded by

John III. *John*, the third of that Name, who was born in the Year 1504, and educated in the University of *Conimbria*, in all those Sciences befitting a Prince; he arrived to the Crown at the Age of one and thirty Years, Heir as well to his Father's Virtues, as Kingdoms.

He prosecuted those Discoveries made by the Fleets of his Father in the *East* and *West-Indies*, in the first of which he took and possessed many Islands and Towns; his Armies encountered and overthrew the potent and formidable Kings of *Bengala*, *Pegu*, and *Siam*, and likewise obtained many signal Victories over the *Moors* of *Malacca*, *Sumatra*, and *Morocco*, who were as well provided of Artillery as any Princes of *Europe*: His Armies in *West-Indies* had no worse Success, taking and fortifying divers Places, nor was Fortune less favourable to him in *Guinea*.

During his Father's Life time, being about the Age of three and twenty Years, he was married to *Catherine*, Sister to *Charles* the Fifth Emperor, and King of *Spain*, by whom he had Issue Prince *John*, who died during his Reign, but left behind him a Son named *Sebastian*, who succeeded this *John* his Grandfather in the Kingdom.

John the Third reigned in all eight and thirty Years, making many Laws for the increasing and Encouragement of Traffic, to the great enriching of his Subjects; he died in the sixty ninth Year of his Reign, and in the Year of our Lord 1573; being buried in the Cathedral at *Lisbon*.

Sebastian, Grandchild of King *John* the Third, was his Successor in the Kingdom, which he entered into at about three and twenty Years of Age.

Scarce was he well seated in his Throne, or had sat in it much above a Year and a half, when he was by Ambassadors from *Muly Mahamet*, then turned out of his Kingdoms of *Fesse*, and *Morocco*, by his Uncle *Abdemelech*, implored him to aid him in the Recovery of his Kingdom, with Promise that if by his Means he could drive out *Abdemelech*, he would freely resign to *Sebastian* the Kingdom of *Morocco*, and content himself with that of *Fesse*.

Ambition of Glory, and Hopes to propagate the Christian Religion, makes *Sebastian* readily undertake the Enterprize, and to that Purpose makes all possible Speed to levy Men and Arms; he sends to *Philip* the Second King of *Spain*, who promises him the Assistance of 10000 Men, but fails; yet *Sebastian*, not discouraged, resolves with his own Forces to proceed, to which by an Accident he got some Addition, for he was almost ready to go, *Stukely* an *Englishman*, created by the Pope Marquis of *Ireland*, as he was going with a small Fleet of Ships, and about six thousand *Italian* Soldiers, to assist the *Irish* Rebels against the Queen of *England*, was by Tempest driven into *Lisbon*, who with much Entreaty he persuades to desist from his intended Design, and accompany him into *Barbary*.

Thus set forth, he arrives at *Tangier* with an Army of about 30000 Men; here he meets *Muly Mahamet*, with a very small Addition of Forces, and much less than he expected; yet he marches forwards towards *Abdemelech*, who by Letters would have advised him to have returned in Peace, but in vain; so the two Armies meet in the Plains of *Alcazar*, where *Sebastian* is utterly discomfitted, himself, *Muly Mahamet*, *Stukely*, and several Persons of Quality, slain: Three Kings fell in this Field, for *Abdemelech* was killed in the hottest of the Battle: This was fought in *August* 1578.

Henry, the Cardinal, third Son to *Emanuel* the First, succeeded *Sebastian* in the Kingdom, being both by reason of his Age, to wit, sixty seven Years old, and his Function (being a Churchman) deprived of all Means to give the People any Hopes of Issue: It was during his short Reign of two Years, the whole Discourse and Debate, not only of *Portugal*, but of all *Christendom*, who of Right ought, and who probably might, succeed King *Henry* in that Crown and Kingdom; several Pretenders there were, whose several Titles the ensuing Account will make clear. *Henry*

Emanuel the First, had eight Children:

1. *John* King of *Portugal*, who had Issue *John*, Prince of *Portugal*, Father to *Sebastian* King of *Portugal*.

2. *Lewis*, Infant, who had Issue D. *Alphonso* the Bastard; *Christopher*, and others.

3. Infant D. *Alphonso*, who died without Issue.

4. *Henry*, the Cardinal, King of *Portugal*, who died without Issue.

5. *Fernando*, Infant, who died without Issue.

6. *Edward*, Infant, who had Issue, 1. *Mary*, who married *Alexander Farnese*, Prince of *Parma*, a Foreigner; 2. *Katherine*, who married *John*, Duke of *Bragance*, and afterwards *Reinuce*, Prince of *Parma*.

7. *Mary*, married to *Charles* V, King of *Castile*, and Emperor, who had Issue *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*.

8. *Beatrix*, married to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*, who had Issue *Philbert* Duke of *Savoy*.

The several Claims to the Crown were in all eight, and all the Pretenders endeavoured, by the most weighty Arguments they could, to justify their several Titles; first, the People claimed *Jure Regni*, a Privilege to elect their own Kings; but it was soon answered, that until the Royal Line of a Kingdom were quite extinct, they could claim no Right in the Election; for if they could, they might by the same Reason at any Time depose the lawful Heir. The Pope's Challenge to be *Jure Divino* Arbitrator (if not Donor) in all Controversies for Crowns, but especially in this, because *Alphonso* the first King, to obtain that Title, became tributary to the See of *Rome*, was slighted and disregarded. The third Claim was that of *Antonio*, the Bastard Son of *Lewis*, Infant, who alledged, that his Mother was lawfully wedded to his Father, and endeavoured by all Means to clear the Aspersion of his being illegitimate; some Strugglings he made for the Crown, as hereafter shall be spoken more at large. *Katherina de Medices*, the Widow of *Henry*, the second King of *France*, was the fourth that pretended a Right and Title to the Crown, as being descended legitimately from *Alphonso*,

phonso, the third King of *Portugal*, charging all that had reigned since to be Usurpers: To this it was readily answered, that all Lawyers had ever allowed one hundred Years sufficient to clear and make firm the Title of any Kingdom, and that there being the Prescription of 300 Years against her, her Claim was utterly void. The fifth that pretended to this Crown was *Philibert* Duke of *Savoy*, as Son to *Beatrice*, the younger Daughter of *Emanuel*, though it is to be supposed that he laid not his Claim out of any Hopes to prevail, whilst he was descended but of the youngest Daughter, and *Philip* II of *Spain* of the eldest: But it is rather to be thought that he was incited to put in his Claim by the rest of the Pretenders, who knew that of the Claimers who were not Natives, he was the fittest Person of all others to resist and annoy King *Philip*, not only by reason of his personal Valour, but also because of his Countries bordering upon the Dutchy of *Milan*, which, with the Assistance of the *French*, his Neighbours on the other Side, and Pretenders to that Dukedom, he might with Ease at all Times invade.

The sixth who presumed a Right to this Kingdom, was *Reinuce*, the young Prince of *Parma*, who demanded it in Right of his Mother, the eldest Daughter to the Infant *Edward*, alledging, that *Jure Primogenituræ*, the Male Line was to be served before the Female; so that until the Line of his Grandfather Prince *Edward*, were wholly extinct, neither *Philip* the Second, nor the Duke of *Savoy*, could have any Pretence to that Kingdom.

Katherine, Dutchess of *Braganza*, and youngest Daughter to the Infant Don *Edward*, was the seventh that laid Claim to this Crown, who alledged, that in all Successions whatsoever, these four Qualities were to be considered, *viz.* the *Line*, the *Degree*, the *Sex*, and the *Age*; that the better Line ought in Justice first to take Place, although others should have Advantage in the other three Qualities; that in all Successions of Crowns, the last Possessor was to be succeeded *Jure Hereditatis*, which allowed the Benefit of Representation; that she representing the Infant Don *Edward*, the better Line did by Representation precede *Reinuce* (the Law never allowing a Grandchild that Benefit,) and that by her better Line she did exclude King *Philip*, who descended of a Daughter, but especially by the prime and fundamental Laws of the Kingdom, (put in Execution against *Beatrice*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* the ninth King of *Portugal*, who having married out of the Kingdom to the King of *Castile*, her Right of succeeding was utterly lost, and King *John* chosen in her stead) she was to be preferred before all other Claimers whatsoever, in regard of her both being born and married within the Kingdom.

But *Philip* II, King of *Spain*, who was the eighth Pretender, having employed all the best Wits in *Christendom*, to confute and disprove all other Claims, and prove and maintain his, wanted not some Objections against this; alledging, That the Successions of Crowns were to be decided by the Law of Nations, not of the Empire, upon which only her *Jus representandi Patrem* was grounded; that the nearest Male in Degree to the late Possessor ought to succeed; that the Infant Don *Edward* being deceased before his Brother *Henry* was King, could have no Right in himself, and therefore could derive none to his Posterity, for *nemo dat quod in se non habet*; that it was very unreasonable that *Katherine* should be less prejudiced in herself for her Sex, than King *Philip* should be for his Mother.

But it was no Arguments could confute, or annul the certain and indubitable Right of the Dutchess of *Braganza*, which was clear to the World, both by her Descent, and by the fundamental Laws of the Nation, and this King *Philip* knew well; and therefore, though he carried on his Affairs very candidly to the Eyes of Men, and seemed unbiassed with proper Interest, by offering to submit his Title to a Disputation, professing that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him, than the Laws of *Castile*, and openly acknowledging, that if he should chance to die before King *Henry*, his eldest Son, being a Degree farther off, would come behind some of the Pretenders, of whom himself had the Precedence. Though he carried himself thus fair to the World, yet he clandestinely wrought with Father *Leon Henrices*, a Jesuit, and Confessor to King *Henry*, and *Ferdinando Castillo*, a Dominican, and of the King's Bosom Counsel, to endeavour by all Means possible to divert all Designs in Prejudice of his Claims, and especially that *Katherine* Dutchess of *Braganza* might not by *Henry* be declared to be the next Heir apparent; which he, conscious of the Justice of the Title, was very willing to have done.

And whilst these two Fathers prosecuted his Interest there with the old, and almost doting King *Henry*, the vigilant *Philip* provided an Army in Readiness, with which he resolved to enter into *Portugal*, and with his Sword make good his disputable Title, as soon as that old King's Death should give him the Warning-Piece to fall on.

Yet when that was given, and *Philip* ready to march with an Army of 20000 Men into *Portugal*, he had like to have been prevented; for Pope *Gregory* the Thirteenth pretending still his Right to dispose, or at least to arbitrate all Difference concerning that Crown, had sent Cardinal *Riario*, Legate Apostolick, with Order to dissuade the Catholick King from raising Arms, and that done, to pass into *Portugal*, and in his Holiness's Name and Behalf, to arbitrate the Right between all Pretenders; which Designs of the Pope, this crafty *Spanish* Fox circumvented; for having Pre-advice of it, and resolving to pursue his own Intentions of assuring to himself the Kingdom of *Portugal*, and yet approve himself an obedient Son of the Church, he gave Order in all Places where the Legate was to pass, he should be most magnificently entertained; so that by such sumptuous Treatments, the Time might be dexterously protracted, and he possessed of that Kingdom before the Legate arrived at Court; which was accordingly done, and the Legate returned Thanks for his magnificent Entertainments, though he was displeased at the ill Success of his Negotiation.

But to proceed to the Manner of his possessing himself of this Kingdom: No sooner did the News arrive at the *Spanish* Court of the Death of King *Henry*, but *Ferdinand de Toledo*, Duke *D'Alva*, was commanded, with an Army of 20000 Men, to march toward *Lisbon*, and in the Name and Right of his Catholick Majesty, to make Conquest of the Kingdom, if he found Opposition.

But all the Appearance of Oppositon which he found, was made by Don *Antonio*, the Ballard Son of *Lewis* the Infant, who having got into *Lisbon* at the Head of a tumultuary Rabble, rather than a well-formed Army, endeavoured at first to make some Resistance, but was soon discomfitted, and the Suburbs of *Lisbon* being sacked to satisfy the Soldiers, the City was surrendered to him, whither soon after the King came, and

and ſo by a mixt Title of Deſcent and Arms, took Poſſeſſion of the Kingdom, *Anno* 1510. *Katherine*, Dutcheſs of *Braganza*, being forced to ſurrender to him all her Intereſt and Pretenſions.

THE Nobility and People of *Portugal* were without doubt extremely amazed to ſee themſelves ſo ſuddenly ſurprized, and made ſubject to a foreign Prince, and eſpecially to a Prince of that Nation againſt whom they had a natural Antipathy; but finding themſelves in a Condition not able to make any Reſiſtance, they thought they ſhould gain more by ſubmitting freely to that King, than by being forced to it; and therefore they made their humble Submiſſion, which *Philip* met as it were half-way, and condeſcended in the General Aſſembly of Eſtates to be ſworn to theſe Articles or Capitulations following:

1. *That the ſaid* Philip, *King of* Spain, *&c. ſhould obſerve all the Laws, Liberties, Privileges, granted to the People by the former Kings of* Portugal.

2. *That the Vice-King, or Governor, ſhould be always the Son, Brother, Uncle, or Nephew of the King, or elſe a Native of* Portugal.

3. *That all Chief Offices of the Church, or State, ſhould be beſtowed upon the Natives of* Portugal, *and not upon Strangers; likewiſe the Governments of all Towns and Places.*

4. *That all Countries now belonging to the* Portugueſe, *ſhould ſo continue, to the Commodity and Benefit of the Nation.*

4. *That the* Portugueſe *Nation ſhould be admitted to all Offices in the King's Houſe, as well as the* Caſtilians.

6. *That becauſe the King could not conveniently be always in* Portugal, *he ſhould ſend the Prince to be bred up amongſt them.*

THESE Articles were concluded, with a Bleſſing upon ſuch Kings as ſhould obſerve and keep them, and a Curſe on thoſe who ſhould break or violate them.

THOUGH theſe Articles were thus ſworn to, and the Cardinal *Albertus*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, Son to the Emperor, and Nephew to the King of *Spain*, appointed Vice-King of *Portugal*, *Philip* the Second durſt not in Perſon yet leave the Kingdom; for he perceived by their Murmurs and viſible Diſcontents, that their Submiſſion to him proceeded more out of Fear than Love, and that as he had in a Moment gained that Kingdom, ſo he ſhould as ſoon loſe it, if he ſhould but give them the leaſt Opportunity.

FOR that the People were highly diſcontented, might eaſily appear by their attentive liſtening after old Prophecies, which put them in hopes of a Deliverance; and many of them flattered themſelves that Don *Sebaſtian* was yet alive, and would come and deliver them; nay, ſo fooliſh were ſome of them, that though they believed him ſlain at the Battle of *Alcazar* in *Barbary*, yet they thought he ſhould live again, and miraculouſly come to redeem them.

BUT that which moſt of all expreſſed the People's Diſcontents, was what was publickly ſpoken by the Mouths of their Orators the Prieſts, in their Pulpits, who would ordinarily in their Sermons utter Speeches much in prejudice of the *Spaniards* Title, and in favour of the Dutcheſs of *Braganza*; nor were they ſparing to do ſo in the Preſence of the King himſelf, who would therefore often ſay, *That the* Portugueſe *Clergy had made the ſharpeſt War with him.*

FATHER *Lewis Alvarez* a Jeſuit, preaching one Day before the Viceroy, took his Text, *Surge, tolle Grabatum tuum, & ambula*; and turning himſelf to the Duke, ſaid, Sir, the Meaning of that is, *Ariſe, take up your Pack, and be gone home.* But above all this, might the Diſcontents be perceived in the Noblemen's Chapels, eſpecially in the Duke of *Braganza's*, where they were wont to ſing the *Lamentations of* Jeremy, applying all the Scorn and Reproach of the *Iſraelites* to themſelves, as *Aquam noſtram pecunia bibimus*, becauſe of the Exciſe put by the *Spaniards* upon Wine, and other Neceſſaries: And that, *Servi Dominati ſunt in nos*; and that, *Cecidit Corona Capitis noſtri*, moſt commonly ending with this Invocation, *Recordare Domine; quid acciderit nobis intuere, & reſpice opprobrium noſtrum: Hereditas noſtra verſa eſt ad alienos.*

YET did King *Philip* bear all theſe Affronts with an incomparable Patience, diſſembling with an admirable Prudence his Paſſion (if he had any) for theſe Diſcontents; for he knew the only Way to win this Nation to an Obedience and Compliance, muſt be Lenity at firſt, whatever he intended to practiſe afterwards, and that he had by his exact keeping of his Word and Oath, won much upon this People, appears, in that during his whole Reign, and the Reign of his Succeſſor *Philip* the Third, who followed his Father's Foot-ſteps, though not with that Craft and Diſſimulation, they made no Attempts, nor were inclinable to a Revolt, which the enſuing Story will evince.

DON *Antonio*, Prior of *Crato*, the baſe born Son of *Lewis* the Infant, who had by the tumultuary Rabble, on the Death of King *Henry*, been elected King, being expulſed *Lisbon* by the Forces of the Duke *D'Alva*, fled from thence into *France*, to the Protection of that Queen, who (in regard that her Claim was exploded both by the *Spaniards* and the *Portugueſe*, as an worn-out Title, and injurious to all the Kings of *Portugal* ever ſince, as unjuſt Poſſeſſors) had long endeavoured to excite Queen *Elizabeth* of *England* againſt the *Spaniard*, and to forewarn her and other Princes to beware of his increaſing Power, who, now enriched with the Addition of *Portugal*, *Eaſt-India*, and many Iſles in the *Atlantic* Sea, might in Time overſhadow all his neighbouring Princes, and therefore adviſed that it behoved them to think of ſome Way to curb his Ambition betimes, and reſtrain his too far extending Power into ſome reaſonable Limits.

WHICH Advice of her's Queen *Elizabeth* eaſily liſtned to, being always providently careful of her own, and her Subjects Safety, foreſeeing how dangerous the over-ſwelling Power of that Prince would be, both to her and her Dominions, and therefore though ſhe then entered not into a preſent War with him, yet when Don *Antonio* came over to her with Recommendations from the *French* Queen, ſhe bountifully relieved him, which ſhe then thought ſhe might do without Offence, conſidering that ſhe acknowledged him her Kinſman, deſcended of the Blood Royal of *England*, and of the Houſe of *Lancaſter*; nor was there ever any Promiſe made in any League between the *Engliſh* and the *Spaniards*, that the *Portugueſe* ſhould not be received into *England*.

HERE then Don *Antonio* reſided, till (the Wars breaking forth between *Spain* and *England*) after the *Spaniard* had received that notable Overthrow of his *Invincible Armada*, to whoſe Power and Puiſſance the whole World thought *England* would have been but a Morſel. Queen *Elizabeth*

judging

judging it more honourable to assail her Enemy, than again to be assailed by him, sent out a Fleet against *Spain*, which Sir *John Norris*, and Sir *Francis Drake*, with some other private Persons, to their eternal Honour, rigged and set out at their own Charge, requiring nothing of the Queen but some few Ships of War; and she granted to them, that the Ships and Spoils taken should be divided amongst them. The *Hollanders* likewise to this Fleet joined some Ships, so that the Number of the whole Fleet was about eleven thousand Soldiers, and fifteen hundred Mariners.

With this Fleet Don *Antonio*, with some few *Portuguese*, set sail out of *England*, having before loaden the *English* with great Promises of the Recovery of this Kingdom, assuring them that the *Portuguese* would be ready upon his Appearance to revolt from the *Spaniard*, and that *Muley Hamet*, King of *Morocco*, would assist him with twenty thousand Men.

The first Place that the *English* Fleet put into, was the *Groyne* in *Gallicia*, the lower Town of which they easily took, but attempting the higher Town, were twice repulsed, and forced to raise their Siege, upon Advice, that the *Conde di Andrada* had gathered Forces at *Bruges Bridge*, and that the *Conde di Altemira* was coming with more, purposing to besiege them in the lower Town, and so cut off their Way to the Ships; which *Norris* resolved to prevent, and therefore, with a sufficient Force, marched against them, overthrew them, and had the Slaughter of them for three Miles together; and two Days after, having burnt and pillaged the Villages, they put to Sea, steering their Course towards *Portugal*.

But whilst they laboured with contrary Winds, plying to and fro at Sea, *Robert* Earl of *Essex* fell in amongst them, who being very young, had, out of the Heat of military Glory, his Hatred of the *Spaniards*, and Commiseration of Don *Antonio*, declined the Pleasures of the Court, and committed himself to Sea, without the Knowledge, and absolutely against the Queen's Mind, in hopes, by Reason of the Influence he had over most of the Commanders of the Land Forces, to be made their General.

Two Days after his being joined with them, they with much Trouble arrived in *Penicha*, a Town of *Portugal*, which, with the Loss of some drowned in landing, they became Masters of; the Castle being likewise immediately surrendered to Don *Antonio*.

Hence the Land-Forces under the Command of Sir *John Norris* marched directly, and with all possible Speed, towards *Lisbon*, about sixty Miles distant; *Drake* promising to follow with the Fleet by the Way of the River *Tagus*. The Army being arrived at *Lisbon*, though they had before, at a Council of War, determined to encamp on the East Side of the Town, the better to bar Succours from coming out of *Spain*, now contrary to their own Resolutions, sat down before *St. Katharine*'s Suburbs on the West Side, whereas, at first, they found no Resistance, so they found little Help, but what the Prayers of some few disarmed Men gave them, who now and then cried out, *God save the King* Antonio: And indeed other Help they could not afford him, *Albertus* Archduke of *Austria*, the Viceroy, having before disarmed the *Portuguese*.

The next Day, when the *English*, weary with their long March, betook themselves to their Rest, the *Spanish* Garrison sallied out upon them, who were at first resisted by *Bret* and his Companies, till more coming up to their Assistance, forced the *Spaniards* to give back, the valiant Earl of *Essex* chasing them to the very Gates; but the *English* had several Commanders of Note, and no small Quantity of private Soldiers, slain.

In fine, when they had now stayed two Days before the Town, and perceived that the *Portuguese*, notwithstanding the great Brags and fair Promises of Don *Antonio*, did not at all incline to a Revolt, and that no Advice came of any Assistance from *Muley Hamet* King of *Morocco*; but that, instead of them, fresh Forces flocked in great Numbers from the East Parts into the City, whilst their Army was lessened by a violent Sickness, their Provision and Amunition failed, and their great Guns for Battery arrived not, they raised their Siege, and took their Way towards *Cascais*, a small Town at the Mouth of the River, the *Spaniards* following them at a Distance, but not ever daring to fall into their Rear. The Town of *Cascais* they took, blew up the Castle, and so, notwithstanding all the Intreaties of Don *Antonio*, set sail for *England*, firing in their Way *Vigo*, a Port-Town deserted of its Inhabitants.

This, and some small Bustles with one or two counterfeit *Sebastians*, not worth mentioning, were the only Storms that happened in this Kingdom, during the Reigns of *Philip* the Second and Third; for they keeping their Words in most Things, though some of their Privileges they had infringed, had almost brought the People to a Willingness to be their Slaves; whereas *Philip* the Fourth committing the whole Charge of the Government to Count *Olivarez*, lost the whole Kingdom, and all its Territories.

For such were the new rigorous Ways which he would prescribe in the Government of *Catalonia* and *Portugal*, both People very tender of their Privileges, that the least Breach of them should have been seconded by a potent Force to have suppressed them, in case they should attempt an Insurrection; when, instead of having such Power in Readiness, the *Catalonians* had rather Opportunity given them to rebel, and Spurs to provoke them to make use of the Opportunity; for some Soldiers being scatteringly quartered among them, but too few to curb them, they looked upon that as a greater Intrenchment upon their Liberties than any before, and a Design utterly to enslave them; wherefore converting their Patience into Fury, they took up Arms, massacred those Soldiers, slew their Viceroy, and put themselves under the *French* Protection.

This Revolt of the *Catalonians* was a Precedent to the *Portuguese*, who had extremely suffered under the Breach of their Privileges: For, contrary to the second Article sworn to by King *Philip* the Second, which said, *That the Viceroy, or Governor, should be either Son, Brother, Uncle, or Nephew to the King of* Spain; the *Infanta Margarita di Mantoua*, who had no Relation at all to the Kings of *Castile*, was made Governess; which they might, and perhaps would have borne, had they not been incensed by a more feeling Injury *Anno* 1636. when the Tax of a fifth Part was imposed upon all the Subjects of that Kingdom: an intolerable Grievance, and thought so insufferable by the Southern Parts of the Nation, that they rose in Arms to oppose it, and had set the whole Kingdom in a Combustion, had it not been timely quenched by the Care and Industry of the then Governess, the *Infanta Margarita* of *Mantoua*.

Yet this small Stir gave an Item to the Court of *Spain*, of the Readiness of the People to revolt, which made *Olivarez* endeavour by all Ways possible to cut off the Means of their being able to do it; but whilst he endeavoured to prevent them, he gave them the Means to do it, though he failed not to make use of those Courses which in probability might entire that Kingdom; the chief

chief of which was, the endeavouring to allure from thence the Duke of *Braganza*, whom the People of *Portugal* look'd upon as the Perſon who of right ought to be their King, and who was the only Native of the Kingdom who might reſtore again the Line of *Alphonſo*; beſides, he was a Prince, who for Power, Riches, and Number of Tenants, not only exceeded all the Nobles of *Portugal*, but even of *Spain* itſelf.

And indeed the Duke of *Braganza* was one of the moſt glorious Subjects in *Europe*, being allied to moſt Kings in *Chriſtendom*; which made the King of *Spain*, though they were Competitors for the Crown of *Portugal*, treat this Family with more Honour than any other of his Grandees, receiving them almoſt with as much Reſpect, as if they were ſovereign Princes; which appeared in *Philip* the Second, who moſt of all deſired to abaſe this Family, yet would always, when the Duke of *Braganza* came to viſit him, meet him in the Middle of the Room, and not permitting him to kiſs his Hand, ſeat him with himſelf under the Canopy of State.

To draw him therefore out of that Kingdom, *Olivarez* firſt politickly offered him the Government of *Milan*, a Place of great Truſt and Honour; but he modeſtly refuſed it, as not in a Condition at that preſent to undertake ſo great a Command, and indeed expreſſing an Unwillingneſs to go out of *Portugal*.

But his Unwillingneſs to go from thence, made the King of *Spain* and Count *Olivarez* the more willing to draw him from thence; it was therefore given out, That the King himſelf was reſolved to go in Perſon, to reduce the revolted *Catalonians*, and that therefore all the Nobility ſhould be in a Readineſs in four Months Time to attend his Majeſty in that Expedition. But the Duke of *Braganza*, being ſuſpicious of the *Spaniards*, becauſe he knew himſelf ſuſpected by them, and likely to be, whilſt the *Portugueſe* ſo much affected him; to aſſure himſelf of the one's Love, and to avoid, if poſſible, the other's Suſpicion, retires himſelf to his Country-Houſe, at *Villa Vitioſa*, and there follows his Sports of Hunting, *&c.* not at all regarding Matters of State; withal ſending an Excuſe to Count *Olivarez*, that his Affairs at preſent were in ſo low and mean a Condition, that he could not appear to attend his Majeſty in that Pomp and Splendor that became a Perſon of his Quality; and that therefore he ſhould do his Majeſty more Service in ſtaying at home, when the other Nobles were abroad, than he could poſſibly do by attending him.

This Plot thus failing, made the Court of *Spain* more ſuſpicious of the Duke than ever before: Count *Olivarez* therefore reſolved to employ his utmoſt Art of Diſſimulation to entrap him, which he ſet upon by a Fetch ſo far about, that to the Eye of Reaſon it might put the Duke into ambitious Thoughts of endeavouring to aſſume the Throne, and in a Way to accompliſh thoſe Thoughts, rather than any Way to prejudice him; But it appeared afterwards that *Olivarez*'s Deſign, in ſo far truſting the Duke, was only becauſe the Duke ſhould truſt him.

In anſwer to *Braganza*'s Letter of Excuſe, the *Conde* aſſures him, that his Majeſty was very well ſatisfied with his Reaſons of not attending him in the intended Expedition againſt *Catalonia*, and that he was very ſenſible of his good Inclinations to his Service; that for his own Part, he was very ſorry that his Affairs were in ſo low a Condition, for he could not but commiſerate his Intereſt as his own: That his Majeſty, to let him know how great Confidence he repoſed in his Fidelity, had appointed him General of the Militia of that Kingdom, and had for his preſent Supply ſent him ſixty thouſand Crowns, leaving it to his Choice to reſide in what Place near *Lisbon* he pleaſed.

This ſtrange Confidence put in the Duke by the King of *Spain*, much amazed the greateſt Politicians, who thought it reaſonable that the *Spaniard* ſhould have permitted the Duke ſtill to have kept retired in the Country, rather than have given him ſuch a Command, and called him to *Lisbon*, into the continual View of the People, who looking upon him as the Heir of that Houſe which had been ever repreſented to have the only Right to the Crown, might eaſily be enflamed with a Deſire to have a King of their own.

And theſe Things was the Princeſs of *Mantua* very ſenſible of, and therefore continually ſolicited the King to know his Reaſon, or to deſire him to remove thoſe apparent Opportunities which he had given the Duke of *Braganza* to effect a Revolt. But ſhe not only received intricate and enigmatical Anſwers from the King and Count *Olivarez*, but likewiſe had the former Actions ſeconded with one, which made her of Opinion that his Catholick Majeſty had a Mind to toſs the Kingdom into *Braganza*'s Hands, whether he would or no; for on a ſudden, without any Notice given to her, all the *Spaniſh* Garriſon in St. *John*'s Caſtle, which commanded the City of *Lisbon*, and indeed upon the Strength of which the whole Safety and Security of the Kingdom depended, were ſuddenly drawn forth, and the Caſtle left to the Diſpoſure of Don *John* of *Braganza*.

But this was the laſt Act of Count *Olivarez*'s Confidence in the Duke; for by truſting him ſo much, he now thought that he could not but reciprocally repoſe Confidence in him; and therefore next Summer, *Anno* 1640, he again, by Letters, ſolicites him to leave *Portugal*, and come to *Madrid*, firſt telling him, that his Catholick Majeſty gave him many Thanks, and greatly applauded his Loyalty in the Exerciſe of the Office of General, and was very ſenſible of the good Effects which his Authority had wrought over the *Portugueſe*: Next he repreſented unto him the preſent declining Condition of the *Spaniſh* Monarchy, not only by Reaſon of the Diſorders in *Flanders* and *Italy*, and the Preparations of the *Turk*, but more eſpecially for that their moſt potent Enemies, the *French*, were now, in Aſſiſtance of the revolted *Catalonians*, entered into *Spain*: That it highly concerned his Catholick Majeſty to drive theſe out of his Territories, which could not be effected but by a powerful Force; that he being one of the prime Grandees of the Kingdom, might by his Preſence, in the Head of a good Number of his Tenants, encourage others to a ſuitable Aſſiſtance: That to that Purpoſe his Catholick Majeſty expected him every Moment, having deſigned for him great Honours, Privileges, and Dignities ſuitable to his Merit.

But as cunning an Angler as *Olivarez* was, yet he failed of his Mark; the Bait would not yet hook in the Fiſh; for though the Duke of *Braganza* was accounted no very great Politician, yet his own Safety taught him to know that all theſe Truſts, and fair Promiſes, were but gilded Allurements to draw him to his Deſtruction: Having therefore ſupplied the King with a conſiderable Number of his Tenants and Friends, he found Excuſes for his own not going in Perſon; and to take off all Suſpicion of Jealouſy, or Thoughts that he had any Deſign againſt the State, he retired again to his Country-Houſe. Thus did theſe two great Perſonages, by Craft and Diſſimulation, endeavour to ſupplant each

other; only the one ſtrove the other's Deſtruction; the other only ſtudied his own Safety and Preſervation.

DURING all theſe Paſſages, the Vice-Queen *Margarita* of *Mantua* was very vigilant in her Government, and foreſeeing what in reaſon might be the Iſſue of theſe Proceedings, wrote very importunately to the King, aſſuring him, that if it were not ſuddenly prevented, the Kingdom would infallibly be loſt. To which his Majeſty returned no Anſwer; and *Olivarez*, in his Anſwer (ſlighting her Judgment, as fitter to govern a private Houſe than a Kingdom,) deſired her, that if her, Capacity would not reach to the Height and Drift of thoſe Myſteries of State, yet that her Wiſdom would prompt her not to diſcover them.

YET without doubt *Olivarez* was inwardly perplexed to ſee all his Plots thus fail; and foul Means he durſt not openly attempt, ſuch was both the Duke's Potency, and the great Love the People bore him: He therefore at laſt has recourſe to Treachery, and to that Intent gives ſecret Advice to Don *Lopez d'Oſſis*, and Don *Antonio D'Oquendo*, that when they had relieved *Flanders* with Men and Money, they ſhould with the whole Fleet put into *Portugal*; and then, as ſoon as the Duke, ſhould according to the Duty of his new Place and Office, come aboard, they ſhould immediately ſet ſail, and bring him away to *Calais*; but this Plot was by a ſtrange divine Providence prevented, for that Fleet was totally routed by the *Hollanders* upon the Coaſt of *England*.

John IV ſucceeded next to the Crown of *Portugal*; and now was the Time come wherein, according to St. *Bernard*'s Prophecy, the Kingdom of *Portugal* was to be releaſed from the Tyranny of Strangers, and reſtored again to the Government of its native King, to which all Things ſeemed ſo well to quadrate, that we cannot imagine there was a leſs than a divine Hand in it; for though (all Plots failing againſt the Duke of *Braganza*,) the *Spaniards* beginning to fear ſomewhat, drew as many of the native Soldiers out of the Kingdom as conveniently they could, thinking thereby to leſſen the ill Humours which began now to appear, yet they did thereby only the more ſtir up and enflame thoſe Diſcontents, which were taken at *Vaſconſellos* managing all Affairs of State.

FOR although the moſt illuſtrious *Infanta Margarita* of *Mantua* was a Princeſs of great Judgment and Knowledge in State Affairs, yet ſhe permitted herſelf to be ſo much over ruled by *Vaſconſellos* Secretary of State, or at leaſt was ſo much over-ruled by him whether ſhe would or no, that he either by ſome ſecret Conſent of his Catholick Majeſty, or led on by his own ambitious Spirit, confiding in the great Favour he had at Court, never permitted the *Infanta* to enjoy any other Title than Vice-Queen.

AND inſufferable was the Government of *Vaſconſellos* to the *Portugueſe*, who as much hated his obſcure Birth, as they did his evil Cuſtoms: He was a Man wholly compoſed of Pride, Cruelty, and Avarice, that knew no Moderation, but ran wholly into Exceſſes: Small Lapſes were by him made capital Crimes; chaſtiſing with all Severity thoſe whom he did but ſuppoſe diſſatisfied with his Government; and exerciſing with all Rigour the *Spaniſh* Inquiſition, puniſhed not only the Actions, but the very Thoughts of Men. The infringing of the greateſt Privileges of the *Portugal* Nation ſeemed to him but a Trifle; which continued Oppreſſions, in the End ſo exaſperated the whole People, that animated by the Knowledge of their own Strength, by the many Diverſions of the *Spaniſh* Nation, by the late Example of the *Catalonians*, and incited by the abſolute Ruin which they ſaw hung over their Heads, whilſt ſix thouſand of them were yearly liſted and forced to ſerve the *Spaniard* in his foreign Wars, they reſolved to looſe his Yoke from off their Necks, and to diſclaim his Obedience, by the Election of a King of their own; as follows:

ON *Saturday* the firſt of *February*, *Anno* 1640, (and *Saturdays* have been often obſerved to be propitious to the *Portugal* Nation,) all the Nobility of the Kingdom, led on by the Marquiſs of *Ferreira*, and the Count of *Vimioſo*, took Arms, and accompanied with a great Multitude of the Inhabitants of *Lisbon*, and ſome *Portugueſe* Soldiers, came to the Caſtle, which, being ſituate in the midſt of *Lisbon*, ſerves both for a Palace and a Caſtle: This was the Reſidence of the Vice-Queen, and hither aſſembled all the Magiſtrates for governing of the Kingdom. The Guards, which were two Companies of *Spaniards* and two of High *Dutch*, either before gained by ſecret Intelligence, or frighted with the great Numbers of the *Portugueſe*, or Deſire of Novelty, or elſe perhaps unwilling to make Reſiſtance againſt thoſe to whom they were moſt of them joined by Friendſhip or Marriage, without the leaſt Oppoſition, abandoning their Poſt, gave them free Admittance.

WHILST theſe Things had happened, the Secretary *Vaſconſellos* was in the Chambers of his Office (upon ſome Reaſons he had, by the Diſcontents of the People, to ſuſpect an Inſurrection) at that Inſtant writing into *Spain*, of the Alienation of the Minds of the Nobility from the *Spaniſh* Government, and earneſtly preſſing that ſome rigorous Reſolution might be taken to prevent it; which Letters, afterwards taken, did ſufficiently demonſtrate his ill Will to the *Portugueſe* Nation.

WHILST he was thus buſied, the confuſed Noiſe of the Soldiers pierced his Ears; at which, wondering not ſo much at the Tumult as at what ſhould be the Cauſe of it, being accompanied only with a *Dutch* Man, and another of the Guard, he would have gone down, but was hindered by the *Portugueſe*, who came running up, and crying, *Kill the Traytor, Kill the Enemy of our Blood:* Whereupon not knowing where to ſave himſelf, he fled, with thoſe two accompanying him, into an inner Chamber, and there with his Sword in his Hand, aſſiſted by thoſe two that were with him, diſpoſed himſelf to ſell his Life at the deareſt Rate he could: But his Valour ſtood him in no Stead, for thoſe two who endeavoured to defend him, being ſlain with two Muſquet-Shot, he ſeeing it vain to defend himſelf there longer, leaped deſperately out of the Window, rather to ſeek his Death, than out of any Hopes to ſave his Life; for no ſooner was he down, but numberleſs Swords were embrued in his Blood, the very Women and Children running to tear in Pieces his dead Body, with the ſame Alacrity as he uſed to torment them, when alive.

IN the mean Time the Marquiſs of *Ferrera* was gone to ſecure the Vice-Queen; whom having committed to the Guard of 200 Muſqueteers, he calls a Council, and in a ſhort Diſcourſe ſets forth the Miſeries the Kingdom had endured whilſt it lay ſubject to the *Spaniſh* Government, who had fought no other End but their Deſtruction: Then putting them in Mind of the Valour and Merits of their Nation, he exhorts them to proceed to the Election of a new King; nominating to them the Duke of *Braganza*, as the moſt worthy of the Crown, not ſo much for his

Power,

Power, Riches, or the Greatneſs of his Houſe; as becauſe the Kingdom was his indubitable Right; he being the only Perſon left of that Stock, which for ſo many Years had glorioufly governed *Portugal.*

A long Diſcourſe was ſuperfluous to thoſe who were before perſuaded. A publick Shout interrupted the Marquiſs's Speech, all of them crying with a loud Voice, *That they would have* John *Duke of* Braganza *for their King.* In the whole Multitude there was not a Face, much leſs a Voice, that did gainſay this general Vote; either becauſe they did all really rejoice to ſee that they ſhould again have a King of their own Nation, or becauſe none could without Danger oppoſe themſelves to the Torrent of ſo publick a Will.

The Duke was at this Time at his Country Houſe at *Villa Vitioſa*, whether by Accident, or becauſe he would always have had Occaſion to excuſe himſelf, if the Buſineſs ſhould not have ſucceeded, I cannot gueſs; but by reaſon of his Abſence they thought fit to make Choice of two Governors, whom, to avoid the Pretences of others, they nominated to be the Archbiſhops of *Lisbon* and *Braganza.*

These began immediately to exerciſe their Command, and were obeyed with ſo much Quiet, that in all that great and populous City of *Lisbon* there was none ſlain, but only thoſe beforementioned; the Priſons were opened, nor were there any that ſuffered any Wrong, either in their Goods or Life: All the Shops were opened, as if there had not happened any Change of Government.

Only the Houſe of *Vaſconſellos* was ſacked, with ſo much Anger and Deſpite, that they did not pardon the very Doors and Windows; nay, ſuch was the Fury of the People, that had they not been hindered by the Soldiers of the Guard, they had levelled it with the Ground. As for his Carcaſs, it ſuffered all thoſe Diſgraces which a People wronged both in their Liberties and Eſtates, could inflict: They ran like mad Men to expreſs living Sentiments of Revenge upon his dead and ſenſeleſs Corpſe, vaunting who could invent the neweſt Ways of Diſgrace and Scorn; till at length, almoſt wearied with their inhuman Sport, they left it in the Street ſo mangled, that it did not ſeem to have the leaſt Reſemblance of a Man; from whence it was the next Day carried by the Fraternity *Della Miſericordia*, and thrown into the Burying-Place of the *Moors.*

The Marquiſs of *Alemquer*, after he had by Command from the Governor aſſured the ſtrongeſt Poſts of the City, ſent ſeveral Soldiers into the Streets, crying, *Long live King* John *the Fourth*; which the People hearing, diſtracted as it were with very Joy, leaving their Trades, run up and down proclaiming him with Voices of *Jubilee*; the greateſt Part, through Exceſs of Paſſion, not being able to refrain from Tears.

The Meſſengers did not run, but fly to the Duke of *Braganza*, to give him Notice of his Promotion to the Crown: The firſt arrived on *Sunday* Morning before Day. He feigned a great Alteration at this Advice; whereupon ſome have preſumed to ſay, that he had not any Knowledge of the Deſign. He ſeemed at firſt not to believe it, but told the Meſſengers, that though he might have Deſert, and a Spirit fit for the Crown of *Portugal*, yet he had neither Will nor Ambition to deſire it: That his Enemies wronged him, by tempting him with Stratagems as far from his Genius as his Faith. But at the Arrival of the Count of *Monte Santo*, who came to accompany him to *Lisbon*, he ſeemed of another Mind; and having been with him in private Diſcourſe for the Space of about two Hours, without any further Delay, than what the relating the Buſineſs to his Wife, and to the Prince his Son, made, he departed with the Count from *Villa Vitioſa*, accompanied with about 500 Perſons.

Yet others there are that affirm, that he was not only acquainted with the Deſign of the Revolt, but of Council about it, and that ſome Time before the Nobility having had a private Meeting at *Lisbon*, it was at firſt propounded, That they ſhould reduce the Kingdom into the Form of a Commonwealth; but that not being approved of by the major Part, the Archbiſhop of *Lisbon* ſtood up, and in a moſt eloquent Speech having laid before them the Miſeries they had endured under the *Spaniſh* Yoke, recommended unto them *John* Duke of *Braganza*, as the indubitable Heir of the Crown, and their rightful Sovereign.

This Motion needed not to be ſeconded with many Arguments, to induce a general Conſent; they all moſt willingly aſſented to it, and concluded to ſend *Gaſton Cotigno*, a Man of fluent and voluble Tongue, to acquaint the Duke with their Intentions, and perſuade him to accept the Crown, and free his Country.

Gaſton being arived, with many well-couched Words acquaints him, That there was now a pregnant Opportunity offered, to recover the indubitable Right of his Anceſtors to the Crown of *Portugal:* That the Nobility and Clergy were wholly inclined to redeem themſelves from the Tyranny of the *Caſtilians*, by ſecuring the Crown upon his Head: That the univerſal Odium of the whole People to the *Spaniſh* Government, the preſent low Condition of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, diſtracted on every Side with War, the aſſured Aſſiſtance that *France* and other Nations, emulating the Greatneſs of *Spain*, would lend, were as ſo many Motives to perſuade them not to let ſlip ſo fair an Opportunity to regain their Liberty: That if he, by Refuſal, ſhould be the ſole Enemy to his Country's Freedom, they would effect it themſelves, and reduce it into a Commonwealth. Many other Arguments uſed he, which his Love to the Houſe of *Braganza*, his Hatred to the *Caſtilians*, or his own Ingenuity, prompted to him.

The Duke's Amazement permitted him not to return a ſudden Anſwer; but after a little Pauſe, he replied, That he was highly obliged both to him and all the Nobility, for their Affections to him; but that this was a Buſineſs which required great Deliberation: That there was no *Medium* between a Throne and a Chair of Execution; that therefore he would firſt adviſe with himſelf, and not raſhly attempt ſo hazardous a Buſineſs.

He therefore communicates the whole Buſineſs to his Dutcheſs *Donna Luiza*, Siſter to the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, a Woman of a noble, heroic, and maſculine Spirit; with her he conſults, whether he were beſt accept of the Propoſitions of the Nobility, or, to prevent all Hazards, go to *Madrid:* And being anxious what Courſe to take, his Wife nobly told him: *My Friend, if thou goeſt to* Madrid, *thou doſt incur the Danger of loſing thy Life; and if thou accepteſt the Crown, thou doſt no more; conſider then whether it be not better to die nobly at home, than baſely abroad.*

These Words of his Lady animated him to a Reſolution to accept the Crown; ſo he returned *Gaſton* this Anſwer, That he would conform

form himself to the Counsel of the Nobility, resolving to live and run all Hazards whatever with them, for the Regaining of his Country's Liberty.

In the mean Time the Marquis of *Ferreira* used his utmost Endeavours for the reducing of those Castles which still held out for his Catholick Majesty. The first Day the Castle of *Colline* was surrender'd, which for its Situation was judged impregnable; yet the Captain of it no sooner saw it besieged, but, moved either with Gold or Fear, he delivered it up on Articles. The Tower of *Belem*, and that of *De la Cabera*, were suddenly surprized, before they within had any Notice of what was done. The strong Fortress of *St. Gulliano*, a modern Fortification, and built to defend the Mouth of the River, was ready to surrender, when a *Castellane*, who was there a Prisoner, and under Sentence of Death, for the Surrender of a Fort in *Brazil*, shut out the Captain, who was gone to parly with the *Portuguese*, and resolved to defend it many Days: He might have held out the Siege, but found neither Ammunition nor Provision; which were consumed, as was believed, on Purpose by the Captain; who, unwilling to have the Blot of a Traytor cast upon him, for so suddenly a Delivery, thought it fitter to be forced by Necessity to open the Gates to the Marquis.

After the Surrender of Fort *San Giliano*, the Marquis of *Ferreira*, in the Name of the King, gave the Sacrament of Fidelity, or an Oath of Allegiance, to all the Orders, *viz.* to the Clergy, Nobility, and Commons; which was received with so much Readiness, that had not the Marquis seen the necessary Orders observed, the People had run into certain Inconveniences, so much they strived to prevent one another in Willingness to perform this Duty.

On *Thursday* the Sixth of *February*, his Majesty made his Entrance into *Lisbon*, with all the Applauses that a beloved King can expect from his most loving Subjects. The rich Liveries given by the Nobles, the Triumphal Arches, the Streets hung with Tapestry, the Multitudes of People flocking to see him, made a beautiful Appearance; and so great was the Concourse to see their new King, that, though his Majesty entered into the City by Noon, he could not, through the Throng, arrive at the Palace till two Hours after Sun-set: Curiosity and Love, which usually have the Force to stir up all Affections, made this People flock so fast to the Sight of their Prince; and even those who, either for Envy, or some other Cause, hated the House of *Braganza*, did not cease to make some Demonstration of Reverence and Mirth.

His Majesty being arrived at the Palace, instead of reposing himself, addicted himself wholly to consult about carrying on the War; knowing well that only Labour produces true Rest. The first Consultations were concerning the Expugnation of the Tower of St. *John*, which, of all the Forts of the Kingdom, only held out for the Catholick King: To reduce this Citadel, the Marquis of *Ferreira* was sent in Person with a numerous Army, though for the most Part tumultuary and ill ordered; but what they wanted in Discipline they supplied in Affection, not refusing to engage themselves in the extremest Dangers: For two Days the Marquis found strong Resistance, but on the third Day it yielded, as it is supposed, forced rather by Bullets of Gold than of Iron. Don *Antonio de Mascarendas*, with a *Portuguese* Garrison, was appointed Commander of this Fortress, which he very diligently repaired, not only of the Damages now received by Battery, but with other necessary Fortifications, to bring it to greater Perfection.

The Kingdom thus suddenly reduced to the Devotion of King *John* the Fourth, the several Governors were commanded to their Countries to levy Forces, who listed the Inhabitants indifferently, from the Age of Eighteen to Sixty; in whom they found so much Disposition, that many offered their Estates, and their Lives, and would follow the Colours, although they had Licence to depart.

On the Twenty-fifth of the same Month followed the Coronation of his Majesty, accompanied with all those Applauses and Demonstrations of Joy, which could proceed from a People of infinite Riches, who weary of the Command of Strangers, were consequently ambitious of a King of their own Nation.

In the publick Place before the Palace, upon a most sumptuous Theatre, was erected a great Stage, and upon that a less: upon the Top of which, but three Steps higher, stood a Chair of State, under a Canopy, all covered over with Cloth of Gold. About Noon his Majesty came forth from his Palace Royal, in a Suit of Chesnut-colour'd Velvet, embroidered with Gold, and Buttons richly set with Diamonds; about his Neck was a Collar of great Value, whereunto hung the Badge of the chief Order of Knighthood, called *El Ordine di Christo*; he was girded with a gilt Sword; his Robe was Cloth of Gold, lined with white, wrought with Gold and Flowers; the Sword was borne before him by Don *Francisco De Alello*, Marquis of *Ferreira*, High Constable of the Kingdom; and before him was the King's Banner displayed by *Fernando Telles de Menesses*, Earl Marshal; before him went Don *Manrique de Siva*, Marquis of *Govea*, Steward of the King's Houshold; and so in Order the Nobles and Grandees of his Realm, one before another; before all went *Portugal* King at Arms, with the Heralds, Pursuivants, *&c.*

His Majesty being ascended the Stage, and having placed himself in the Chair of State, had the Crown set upon his Head, and the Sceptre delivered to him, with the accustomed Ceremonies, by the Archbishop of *Lisbon*. After which *Lucia*, then Queen of *Portugal*, Sister to the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, with her Son the Prince *Theodosio*, arrived at *Lisbon*, who were received with all imaginable Expressions of Joy: The Queen was soon after solemnly crowned, and the Prince installed at *Lisbon*.

Thus was this Kingdom utterly lost to the *Spanish* Monarchy, and with it all that they enjoyed by that Kingdom in the *East-Indies*, the *Tercera Islands*, and other Islands in the *Atlantick Sea*, the Kingdom of *Algarve*, *Brazil*, together with all they had in *Africa*, except the Town of *Ceuta*, which was the whole of what remained to the *Spanish* Nation of all those great Dominions.

But that all Men might know the Greatness of their Loss, and what the Crown of *Portugal* enjoys abroad, take here a brief Narration.

First, those Islands of the *Tercera*, *Madeira*, and *St. Michael*, so long Time possessed by the *Portugal* Nation; which though inconsiderable to their other Dominions, yet deserve to be mentioned. Next those many strong Places of which they have made themselves Masters in *Africa*; as in *Guinea*, in the Kingdoms of *Congo* and *Angola*, the great Island of *St. Laurence*, of *Soffola*, and *Mozambique*. On the Continent thence passing the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, they have settled a Trade with *Socatra* and *Calaite*: Thence passing the Bay of *Persia*, to the Mouth of the River *Indus*, they subdued *Calecute*, *Coetum*, &c. the Island of *Goa*, *Craul*, *Daman*, &c. Thence toward the River

Ganges,

Ganges, they poſſeſſed *Ceilan*, *Malacca*, *Sumatra*, *Solon*, *Larantuca*, &c. Thence farther they were entered into the Kingdom of *Pegu*, into *Java Major*, and *Minor*, into the Kingdom of *China*, where they fortified *Macoa*. In ſhort, the Kingdoms, Iſlands, and Cities, that the *Portugueſe* Nation had conquered, and were poſſeſſed of abroad, may, in ſome Meaſure, be compared to the antient *Roman* Empire; nor was their Valour much inferior to the *Romans*, if we conſider the War they made with the King of *Cambaia*, who for Puiſſance and military Courage, or Numbers of Men of War, did exceed *Xerxes*, *Darius*, or *Pyrrhus*; the Battles they had with *Iſmalucco*, and *Idaliam*, in the Kingdom of *Decam*, both equal to mighty Kings and their Armies, conſiſting of the beſt Warriors of the Eaſt; the War they have waged with the *Moors* of *Malacca*, *Sumatra*, and *Moluccо*; as alſo with the Kings of *Bengala*, *Pegu*, and *Siam*, &c. with many other formidable Powers. Many of thoſe Places, moſt certain it is, were loſt whilſt the Catholick King had Poſſeſſion of *Portugal*; but with it he likewiſe loſt, and King *John* IV. had Poſſeſſion of, above fifty Towns and Forts, accounted impregnable; ſuch were, *Mozambique*, *Cuama*, *Monomotaſia*, *Mombaza*, *Maſiala*, *Dui*, *Damam*, *Bazaine*, *Chaul*, *Onor*, *Barcelor*, *Mangalor*, *Cananor*, *Cranganor*, *Cochim Coulan*, *Negapatan*, *Meliapor*, the Iſle of *Ceilan*, the Kingdom of *Jaſanapalan*, the Cities of *Manac* and *Nombre de Jeſu*; then more Northward, *Azarim*, *Danuc Agazim*, *Maim Trapor*, and many other Places, in all which were maintained Governors and Soldiers, and a Viceroy, reſiding at *Goa*, with Courts of Juſtice, &c. Hither many Kings of the Eaſt uſed to ſend Ambaſſadors, to maintain Amity with the King of *Portugal*, and to bring Tribute to him. Thus the *Portugal* Trade in the Eaſt extended itſelf no leſs than four thouſand Leagues, by which Trade all the Garriſons are maintained, and all the Ships, (whereof there are oftentimes two or three Fleets) and much Wealth ſent home every Year. Beſides thoſe afore-mentioned, the Crown of *Portugal* has ſeveral Towns on the Coaſt of *Africa*, ſo ſtrongly fortified, that the *Moors* of the Country could never yet recover them; ſuch as *Tangier*, &c.

In *America* they poſſeſs the famous Country of *Brazil*, which ſtretcheth itſelf one thouſand four hundred Leagues upon the Sea-Coaſt, containing fourteen Governments, and many principal Cities, *St. Salvador*, *Penambuco*, &c.

Thus great a Loſs did the *Spaniſh* Monarchy ſuffer by the Revolt of *Portugal*, which the Catholick King, *Philip* the Fourth, was very ſolicitous to recover; and to that End and Purpoſe did not only conſult with the greateſt Statesmen at Home, but likewiſe with thoſe abroad.

The Grand Aſſembly of the States of *Portugal* reſolved to diſpatch Ambaſſadors to all the States of Chriſtendom, to enter into Confederacies, for the better Defence and Eſtabliſhment of the Kingdom, and for the Glory and Reputation of the King.

In the firſt Place the Father *Ignatius Maſcarenas*, a Jeſuit, with another Father of the ſame Order, was ſent into *Catalonia*, to offer them all Aſſiſtance and Supplies for their Maintenance and Defence againſt the Catholick King; for very well did the King of *Portugal* know, that it highly did import his Intereſt to correſpond with them, that ſo they might jointly, not only defend, but alſo offend the King of *Spain*, whoſe Country lying between them both, they might at Pleaſure invade or moleſt it, either by Sea or Land.

This Embaſſy of King *John*'s ſo rejoiced and encouraged the *Catalonians*, that the very next Day after the Ambaſſadors had Audience, they obtained a moſt ſignal Victory in their own Defence againſt the *Spaniards*, who had aſſaulted them with an Army of twenty-five thouſand Men, under the Command of the Marquis *De los Veles*.

Shortly after the Father *Ignatius Maſcarenas* was diſpatched to the *Catalonians*, *D. Franciſco de Mello*, and Don *Antonio Caelle Carravallio*, (Perſons both of excellent and admired Abilities, the one for his great Experience and Judgment in State Affairs, and the other for his noble Spirit, and eminent Knowledge of the Civil Law) were ſent on a ſolemn Embaſſy to the moſt Chriſtian King, *Lewis* the Thirteenth of *France*.

These, attended with a ſtately and moſt magnificent Train, landed ſoon after at *Rochelle*, and on the Fifteenth of *March* 1641, made a ſolemn Entrance into *Paris*, being met and conducted in by a great Number of Coaches, filled with the Grandees of the Kingdom, beſides Numbers of *French* Nobility, who came to attend them on Horſeback.

Thus accompanied, they were conducted to the Palace appointed for the Entertainment of the Extraordinary Ambaſſadors, where they were, in a ſumptuous and magnificent Manner, feaſted at the King's Charges.

From thence they were, by the Duke of *Chevereux* and the Count *de Brulon*, conducted in the King's Coaches unto his Majeſty, then at *St. Germains*, to receive the firſt Audience; which was performed with extraordinary Shews of Love and Reſpect; for upon the Entrance of the Ambaſſadors into the Place appointed for their Audience, the King roſe out of his Chair of State, and went forward three Steps to receive them; nor would he permit them to deliver their Embaſſy with their Hats off, or to deſcend ſo low as to kiſs his Hands at their Departure; but inſtead of that Ceremony, he affectionately embraced them in his Arms, promiſing them the greateſt Aſſiſtance his Power was able to give.

They were from the King's Preſence conducted to a ſumptuous Dinner, provided for them; and after that brought to the Queen's Lodging, who was ſet to expect their coming: At their Entrance ſhe likewiſe roſe, and advanced three Steps to meet them, receiving them with a cheerful and courteous Countenance, and not permitting them to be uncovered.

Amongst other Diſcourſes which they had with her, Don *Franciſco de Mello* told her, That he feared his Embaſſy might not be acceptable, becauſe the King his Maſter had deprived her Brother of one of his Kingdoms: Whereunto ſhe readily replied, *That though ſhe was Siſter to the King of* Spain, *yet ſhe was Wife to the King of* France.

After ſome Diſcourſe in *French*, her Majeſty began to ſpeak to them in *Spaniſh*; which they obſerving, deſired to know wherefore her Majeſty had not vouchſafed them that Favour ſooner, it being a Language by them better underſtood? To which the Queen jeſtingly anſwered, *For fear they ſhould be frighted to hear her ſpeak* Spaniſh; and the Ambaſſador, to improve the Jeſt, replied, *Como a tam Grand Signora ſi, pero como a Caſtillana no*; *That it was true, conſidering her Greatneſs, but not her Country*: The Queen ſmilingly went on, promiſing them all Aſſiſtance poſſible, and wiſhing all Proſperity to King *John* and his Queen; and ſo they having delivered her Majeſty a Letter from the Queen of *Portugal*, took their Leave.

FROM her Majesty they went to visit his Eminence the Cardinal *Richlieu*, who being advertised of their coming, came forward to the third Chamber to meet them, where he received them with Expressions of great Affection, and Promises and Proffers of Services, and from thence conducted them to his own Chamber.

BEING all three sate, the Cardinal (who was the most experienced and greatest Statesman of his Time) discoursed with them of divers Affairs of great Importance, and they endeavoured to explain to his Eminence what was before his Sentiment, that it very much imported the two Crowns of *France* and *Portugal* to be united by an indissoluble League, considering that it was the chief and principal End and Aim of the House of *Austria*, (whose Branches were spread over almost all *Europe*) not only to establish the greatest, but the sole and only Monarchy of *Christendom*: That to effect those ambitious Desires, they had never made scruple to usurp and seize upon Kingdoms and States, upon the least Pretences imaginable, as had appeared in the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, *Navarre*, the Dutchy of *Milan*, and lately several States in *Germany*, and seizing upon the *Valtoline*, whereby they had a Passage open to lead an Army of *Germans* into *Italy* at Pleasure.

THAT considering the vast Power and Interest that this Family had, not only in *Europe*, but also in *America*, it could not but be confessed that they had a large Foundation of their imaginary universal Monarchy; but that nothing gave them so great Hopes, as the Possession of *Portugal*.

FOR by the Addition of that Kingdom to the Crown of *Castile*, they became absolute Masters not only of all *Spain*, but of all the *East-Indies*, of all the Eastern Trade of *Ethiopia*, *Persia*, *Arabia*, *China*, *Japan*, and all that incredible Wealth that was raised out of the *Portuguese* Traffic; whereby the *Austrian* Greatness (if not their Monarchy) was principally sustained: That therefore it concerned all States whatsoever, not only to put a Stop to the raving Tyranny of this devouring Monster, but to suppress and lessen his Power by all Means possible.

THAT to do this, none was more concerned, or more able, than the Kingdom of *France* united with that of *Portugal*: That this having been called the right Arm (as *Catalonia* the Left) of that great *Austrian Colossus*, now both being separated from it, and united to *France*, will be able to do greater Service against it, than they were ever forced to do for it, not only by assaulting the *Spaniard* within his own Doors, but by intercepting the *Plate-Fleet*; which in its Return from the *West-Indies*, it being necessarily forced to pass by the *Tercera* Islands, must run in Danger of the *Portuguese* Fleet, or be forced to be at the Charge of an extraordinary Convoy.

THESE were the Sum of the Ambassadors Discourses to the Cardinal: In answer to which, his Eminence made Offer, not only of all the Assistance of the most Christian King his Master, but that he would disburse himself for the Service of the King of *Portugal*, promising that he would presently send thither a Fleet of twenty Sail, with his Nephew, Admiral and Ambassador Extraordinary.

THIS Treatment thus ended, the Ambassadors took their Leaves, his Eminence waiting upon them as far as the Stairs; which when they endeavoured to hinder, he replied, That the Ambassadors of the King of *Portugal* were to be treated with as much Respect as those of the Emperor or Pope.

FEW Days after, a *Junto* of the King of *France*'s Council, were appointed to treat with the Ambassadors in the House of the Lord High Chancellor of the Kingdom, where a Peace was fully concluded between the two Kingdoms of *France* and *Portugal*.

OTHER Ambassadors were (about the same Time that the afore-mentioned were sent into *France*) dispatched into *England*; for it very much concerned the Kingdom of *Portugal* to maintain a good Correspondence with the Crown of *England*, both in regard of the Navigation and Commerce of both States, and also the better to break that Amity and good Understanding which was now held between the Crown of *Spain* and that State. Hither therefore were sent Don *Antonio D'Almado*, and Don *Francisco D'Averado Leilon*, both Persons of exquisite Parts; who, notwithstanding that the *Dunkirkers* chased them, arrived safe in *England*.

AND for all the sturdy Endeavours of the *Spanish* Ambassadors, they were received on Shore with Abundance of Respect: But his Majesty of *England* would not give them Audience, or accept of the Embassy from the King of *Portugal*; so tender was he of his Honour and Conscience, till Don *Antonio de Sosa*, their Secretary, had drawn up a Paper, to satisfy him of the Right and Title of the Duke of *Braganza* to the Crown of *Portugal*. The Contents of which was:

Upon the Death of King Henry *the Cardinal, without Issue, many pretended (together with the* Infanta Donna Katherina *Dutchess of* Braganza, *and Grandmother to this present King) to the Crown of* Portugal; *but all their Pretences wanting Foundation, soon fell, except that of* Philip *the Second, King of* Spain, *who maintained his by Force.*

King Henry *was Uncle, equally near to both, but with this Difference*; Katherine *was the Daughter of a Son named* Edward, *and* Philip *was the Son of a Daughter named* Isabella, *Brother and Sister to King* Henry.

King Philip *pleaded, That he being in equal Degree with* Katherine, *was to be preferred for his Sex.*

Katherine *replied, That the Constitution of that Kingdom allowing Females to succeed, and with all the Benefit of Representation in all Inheritances, she representing* Edward, *must exclude* Philip *by the very same Right that her Father (if he were living) would exclude* Philip's *Mother.*

This Conclusion is infallible in Jure: *Whereto* Philip *answered, That Succession of Kingdoms descending* Jure Sanguinis, *there was allowed no Representation.*

Katherine *destroyed that Foundation, alledging, That the Succession by the Death of the last King, was derived* Jure Hæreditatis, & non Sanguinis, *because the Succession of Kingdoms was to be regulated by that antient Way, whereby all Things descended by Inheritance; the other Way of Succession being not known until later Ages, nor ever practised either in* Spain *or* Portugal *in such Cases.*

Briefly, in Behalf of Katherine *it was urged, (which by the* Castilians *can never be denied, or answered) That she was no Stranger, but a Native of the Kingdom, to whom alone (according to the Laws of* Lamego) *the Crown of* Portugal *can appertain.*

THE King having perused and deliberated upon this Paper, gave immediate Order they should be presently conducted to *London*, which was done with all convenient Solemnity, and they lodged in a Palace ready prepared for them: Soon after with great Ceremony they received Audience of his Majesty, in a fair and stately Hall prepared for that Purpose, where his Majesty sat upon a Throne raised two Steps; and at the

the Entrance off the Ambaſſadors he pulled of his Hat, nor would be covered till they were ſo too.

To the Propoſitions made in the Speech of Don *Antonio D'Almoda*, concerning a Peace between *Portugal* and *England*, his Majeſty replied, That he ſhould be very glad if an Expedient might be found out to renew the antient Leagues of Friendſhip between the two Crowns, without the breaking with *Spain*.

Some few Days after, the Ambaſſadors were conducted to give a Viſit to the Queen of *England*, who ſat in a Chair of State ready to entertain them: When they came into her Preſence, ſhe roſe out of the Chair, and came as far as the Carpeting, making low Reverence as the Ambaſſadors bowed; when they came near, her Majeſty made them be covered, but afterwards they ſpoke with their Hats off. In Concluſion the Queen told them, that ſhe much deſired to hold Correſpondence with her Majeſty of *Portugal*.

In fine, on the thirteenth of *June* 1641, a Peace was abſolutely concluded with the *Portugueſe*, notwithſtanding the earneſt Endeavours of Don *Alonzo Cardenas*, Legier Ambaſſador for *Spain*, who by Gifts and Promiſes, even as far as the Reſtitution of the *Palatinate*, endeavoured to hinder it.

The Ambaſſadors that were ſent to the King of *Denmark* (notwithſtanding the great Traffic and Commerce that had formerly been held between that Kingdom and *Portugal*) were not, by reaſon of the great Intereſt the Houſe of *Auſtria* had with thoſe Kings, received; yet the King gave all poſſible Reſpect otherwiſe to them. From thence they paſſed into *Sweden*, and were magnificently entertained at the young Queen's Court at *Stockholm*, where a League was ſoon concluded, and the Ambaſſadors diſmiſſed, according to the Cuſtom of that Nation, with gold Chains, and the Queen's Portraiture in a Medal of Gold.

The Ambaſſador Don *Triſtano de Mendoza Hurtada*, that was ſent to the States of the *United Provinces*, was received with the like Magnificence and ſeeming Affection, and a Truce concluded with the Kingdom of *Portugal* for ten Years; for a Peace the States would not aſſent to, becauſe they having conquered many Places in *Braſil*, *Angola*, &c. which belonged to the Crown and Kingdom of *Portugal*, could not make Reſtitution of them, by reaſon they now belonged to the *Weſt-India* Company; nor could the King of *Portugal* allow the Conqueſt, as Things of Right belonging to his Crown, and depending on it.

But now we come to treat of a more ſolemn Embaſſy, to wit, that to the Pope: Long was it debated in the Aſſembly of Eſtates, whether an Ambaſſador ſhould be ſent to *Rome* immediately, or a more opportune Conjuncture of Time be expected. Some were of the Opinion, that the ſending an Ambaſſador without further Delay, would be a Teſtification of their Duty, and incline the Pope's Holineſs to acknowledge Don *John* the lawful Heir, and rightful King of *Portugal*, which would extremely further and advance the Affairs of the Kingdom.

But others there were who conceived thoſe Things rather deſirable than feaſible, and were of the Opinion they ſhould rather ſtay till a fitter Opportunity; alledging, That the King of *Spain*'s preſent Power at *Rome*, might probably oppoſe the Reception of their Ambaſſador: That altho' the Pope never was in his Heart a *Spaniard*, yet he would never yield to ſhew himſelf an Enemy to the Catholick King: That the *Spaniards* cunningly fomenting the Opinion which all the World had entertained, that his Holineſs did in all Things favour the *French* Intereſt, would, from ſuch a Reception, draw as much as ever they could ask or deſire. That for this Cauſe the Pope (that he might not ſeem their Enemy) had always granted them whatever they deſired; that therefore they thought it convenient firſt to ſound his Holineſs, before they run the Hazard of the Diſgrace and Affront which might fall upon his Majeſty, and the whole Kingdom; that in caſe the Pope ſhould decline the Reception of the Ambaſſador, to whom could they repair or appeal to vindicate the Injury done to the Crown? That many Popes had been ſo faſcinated to the Intereſt of their own Family, that the World had very great Occaſion to believe, that their Deſigns tended rather to what was beſt for themſelves, than to what was beſt indeed: That the *Portugal* Nation had as much Reaſon to diſtruſt the See of *Rome* as any, whilſt they had to their Coſt had Examples how they only purſued their own Ends; as particularly *Gregory* the Thirteenth, who at firſt ſeemed ſo affectionate to the Kingdom of *Portugal*, that he employed the utmoſt of his Power for the Intereſt of his own Family, and approved of all that King had done: That there were none who had more to give, or at leaſt who had more to promiſe, than the Catholick King, ſo that in any Buſineſs of Competition he muſt neceſſarily gain the better.

But notwithſtanding all theſe Arguments to the contrary, upon the Promiſes of the Kings of *France*, to be a Mediator at the See of *Rome* for the Reception of their Ambaſſadors, by the Suffrage of ſome few Voices to make the major Part, it was concluded, that Ambaſſadors ſhould immediately be ſent to *Rome*.

And in purſuance of this Vote, the King immediately made choice of two reverend and able Perſons, to wit, *Michael de Portogallo*, Son to the Count *Vimioſo* of the Blood Royal, Biſhop of *Lamego*, and Don *Patablcone Rodriguez*, Biſhop of *Eluas*: No ſooner was the News arrived at *Rome* of their being landed in *Italy*, but the *Spaniards* in *Rome* muſtered themſelves together, with Reſolution either to oppoſe their Entrance, or at leaſt hinder their Reception; whilſt on the other Side the *French*, *Portugueſe*, and *Catalonians*, aſſembled themſelves together, reſolving to hazard their deareſt Blood in their Cauſe.

His Holineſs ſeeing theſe Preparations on both Sides, feared leſt his Country ſhould be made the Seat of a petty War; and conſidering that in any Caſe the Diſhonour would accrue to him, if whilſt under his Command and Protection, the Perſon of an Ambaſſador ſhould be violated, ſtrictly commanded all his Guards to take ſpecial Care to prevent the Violences intended.

The *Spaniards* by this Order being hindered from what they purpoſed, their Ambaſſadors openly proteſted, that if his Holineſs did receive the *Portugueſe* Ambaſſadors, they would immediately leave *Rome*. But notwithſtanding theſe Proteſtations, and all other Oppoſition they could poſſibly make, in *November* 1641 the *Portugal* Ambaſſadors, being met by divers Cardinals, Princes, and Cavaliers, well armed, entered into *Rome*, and were conducted to the Palace of the *French* Ambaſſador, who received them with all Reſpect poſſible, ſtill giving them the Precedence.

Hereupon ſeveral Manifeſto's were ſcattered abroad by the two *Spaniſh* Ambaſſadors, the Marquis *De los Veles*, and Don *John Chumarrero*, labouring to prove that his Holineſs ought not to receive the Ambaſſadors of the Duke of *Braganza*, as they ſtiled him: Firſt becauſe he was a Tyrant, and Uſurper of that Kingdom, which

had

had been in the quiet Poſſeſſion of the Catholick King theſe ſixty Years. Secondly, becauſe he was a Rebel, and a perjured Perſon, having ſworn Allegiance to the Catholick King. Thirdly, that the Reception of theſe Ambaſſadors would animate other Subjects of the Catholick King to Rebellion.

But whilſt the *Spaniſh* Ambaſſadors were violently ſhooting ſuch Paper Bullets, the *Portugueſe* uſed all their Endeavours, both by themſelves and the *French* Ambaſſador, (who had expreſs Order from the moſt Chriſtian King his Maſter to that Purpoſe,) to prevail with the Pope to give them Audience, and admit their Embaſſy: But his Holineſs was ſo fearful to diſpleaſe the *Spaniard*, leſt he ſhould afterwards take Occaſion to revenge himſelf upon his Nephews, that he utterly declined their Reception; yet not out of regard to any of the *Spaniards* Allegations, but upon Pretence that certain of the Church Rites had been violated in *Portugal*; the Archbiſhop of *Braga*, and other eccleſiaſtical Perſons, being kept in Durance, though it was for very good Reaſons, as hereafter ſhall appear.

Yet the *Spaniards* were not content with this Reſolution of his Holineſs, but (whilſt the *Portugueſe* were endeavouring to prove their Cauſe, by both Political and Legal Declarations, Allegations, and Arguments,) fearing leſt the Pope might chance to alter his Mind, reſolved to make a quick Diſpatch of the Buſineſs; and to that Purpoſe two hundred Banditti were hired, to ſeize upon the Biſhop of *Lamego*, and carry him to *Naples*, as the Prince of *Sans* had been before ſerved by them, and there put to Death.

But this Deſign themſelves at Length could not agree upon; for the Marquis *De Los Velos* thought it would be better, and leſs dangerous, to give the *Portugueſe* a publick Affront in the City; which was concluded to be put in Effect, and to that Purpoſe it was communicated to the reſt of the Nation, (whereof, upon ſeveral Occaſions, there are always many in *Rome*,) who aſſembled together well armed, at the Ambaſſador's Palace; and ſo great is the Power of Revenge, that to the End they might the better effect their Deſign, and yet not appear as Soldiers, though there were many Gentlemen of Quality amongſt them, they condeſcended to go under the Name of Footmen to the Marquis.

The Pope's Holineſs hearing of the great Preparations of the *Spaniards*, ſent to them, to let them know, that he could not but be very much diſtaſted, to ſee ſuch Diſorders attempted in a peaceable City; and therefore deſiring them, for his Honour's Sake, to deſiſt; and withal ſent a a Meſſenger to the Biſhop of *Lamego*, to aſſure him that he need not fear any Thing, for upon the Word of his Holineſs, he ſhould walk the Streets undiſturbed.

But do the Pope what he could, either by Threats, Deſires, or Perſuations, the *Spaniards* were reſolved to proſecute their Deſign; which they put in Execution to their own Coſt, on the Twentieth of *Auguſt*, 1642. On which Day the Biſhop of *Lamego* going to viſit the *French* Ambaſſador, one of his Retinue obſerved, that he was dog'd by a *Spaniſh* Spy; whereupon a Counterſpy was ſent to the Marquis's, to bring Intelligence what they were doing there; who brought Word to the *French* Ambaſſador's, that there was great Preparations of Coaches and Men; whereupon the *French*, *Portugueſe*, and *Catalonians*, aſſembled, and armed themſelves with Piſtols and Fireloks, to convoy home the Biſhop.

By the Way they were met by the *Spaniſh* Ambaſſador, accompanied with about eight Coaches, full of Captains and Officers come from *Naples*, and guarded with about ſixty Footmen, beſides divers others of that Nation. No ſooner came they in Sight of the Biſhop's Coach, but they cried aloud, *That they ſhould ſtop for the Ambaſſador of* Spain; but the *Portugueſe* driving on, anſwered, *That they ſhould ſtop themſelves.*

Hereupon both Sides, with their Swords drawn, leap'd out of the Coaches, and making a Stand, one Gun was firſt fired by the *Spaniards* Side, and immediately ſeconded with a brave Volley on both Sides. They then fell in to cloſe Quarter, the Biſhop's Side ſoon getting the better of it: Yet there was ſlain a Knight of *Malta*, an *Italian*, and a *French* and *Portugal* Page; but on the *Spaniſh* Marquis's Side, there were eight killed upon the Place, and above twenty wounded. The Marquis, leaving his Coach-Horſes dead, eſcaped out of the Back of the Coach, which ſtood upon the Place till next Day, and got into the next Shop, without his Hat, and trembling for Fear, from whence he was carried to the *Spaniſh* Cardinal *Albornoz*'s Palace. The *Portugueſe* Ambaſſador returned firſt to the *French* Palace, and from thence went ſafely home.

His Holineſs the Pope was extremely perplexed at theſe Diſturbances, and therefore, to prevent the like for the future, commanded a Guard of Soldiers to be put upon the Houſes, both of the Biſhop and the Marquis. But ſhortly after, when the Biſhop of *Lamego* had again preſſed the Pope, by a large Memorial of the Reaſons why he ſhould be received, and was abſolutely refuſed, he was by his Maſter, the King of *Portugal*, called home.

Whilst theſe Things were acting abroad, the *Caſtilians* began to make continual Inroads into the Borders of *Portugal*, which made King *John* look more narrowly into the Defence of his Kingdom, fortify all the Frontiers, and train up his Subjects to military Exerciſes.

The *Spaniards*, in one Inroad which they made into *Portugal*; laid waſte all before them, ſparing neither Sex nor Age whereſoever they came; which made the *Portugueſe*, in Revenge, commit the like Outrages, in an Inroad they made into *Galicia*.

These were publick Enmities, and therefore more eaſy to be oppoſed; but there was a private Serpent that lay lurking at Home, which was ſo much the likelier to do Miſchief, by how much it was more ſecretly hidden. Some few there were who thought themſelves ſo highly obliged to the Catholick King, as to endeavour the re-uniting of the Crown of *Portugal* to his vaſt Dominions, and again inſlave their Country to Foreigners.

The Principal of theſe was the Archbiſhop of *Braga*, always a great Creature and Favourite of the Count *Olivarez*; who had, at the Beginning of the Revolt, ſhew'd himſelf ſo oppoſite to the Freedom of his Country, that many Gentlemen were once reſolved to make him ſuffer the ſame Fate with *Vaſconſellos* the Secretary; nor had he ceaſed ever ſince to ſhew viſible Signs of his Diſcontentment at the Government.

In this Archbiſhop's Head was the whole Conſpiracy firſt hatch'd, and by him communicated to Don *Lewis de Meneſes*, Marquis of *Villa Reale*, and the Duke of *Camigna* his Son; two Perſons ſufficiently ambitious, and both diſcontented, as not thinking themſelves ſufficiently rewarded according to their Merit: Theſe the Archbiſhop tampered with, perſuading them, That it was a low and unworthy Thing, much beneath their Birth and Greatneſs, to ſuffer themſelves to be ſubject to a Fellow-Subject; that it would be much

much more noble and generous in them, to return to their Allegiance to the King of *Spain* their antient Sovereign, who was able to beſtow more upon a Perſon deſerving in one Day, than the Duke of *Braganza* could in a hundred Years. Theſe and few other Arguments were ſufficient to draw thoſe, who before, out of their Envy to the Houſe of *Braganza*, were inclinable to a Change.

THESE made ſure, the Archbiſhop next draws into this Plot a Gentleman of noble Blood, named, Don *Auguſtine Manuele*, a Man of excellent Parts, but ſomewhat neceſſitated, nor had ever been looked upon, or put into any Employment, which without any other Incentives, were Motives ſufficient to move a Man to any deſperate Deſign. Next him was added to this Conſpiracy, *Pietro Baeza*, a lately converted *Jew*, whom the *Portugueſe* call New Chriſtians: He was famous for nothing, but his vaſt Riches; being a great Creature of the Count *Olivarez*, whoſe Favour, he uſed often to ſay, would one Day advance him to high Honour, or to a high Pair of Gallows, which laſt proved very true.

MANY private Meetings had theſe, and ſome few other Conſpirators, where they debated to bring their Deſigns to effect: Some were of Opinion that before they could bring it to Perfection, more ſhould be acquainted with it, for it was impoſſible that ſo few ſhould ever be able to compaſs it: But in this Courſe there aroſe many Fears and Doubts, leſt too many being acquainted with it, ſome ſhould diſcover it, as had often happened in Deſigns of that high Nature: Yet at length it was found neceſſary to draw more into the Plot, for whilſt they were ſo few, the Buſineſs only reſted in Imagination, but could never be put in Execution.

HAVING therefore added ſome more to the Number, their next Debates were of the Manner how to bring it to Effect; ſome adviſed that a Power of the Catholick King's was to be got in a Readineſs, but they then thought that the King of *Portugal* would raiſe as great a Force, and ſo prevent a ſudden Invaſion: Yet in anſwer to that Objection, it was by ſome alledged, that the *Spaniard* by way of Intelligence might be let in, which ſeemed again as difficult, the Militia being in the Hands of Perſons moſt loyal and truſty to the King: Others propoſed, that the only Way to effect it was by ſudden and violent making away of the King; but this Advice was oppoſed by moſt, who inclined to a Mediocrity, and would rather have found out a Way to make his Majeſty renounce his own Right and Title to the Crown, and retire himſelf from the Dangers which ſhould be preſented unto him.

BUT whilſt they thus wavered in Opinions, and inclined to that Moderation, which is the Ruin of all Deſigns of this Nature, they gave the King Time and Occaſion to ſearch out their Plots; for his Majeſty having always had a ſuſpicious Eye upon the Archbiſhop of *Braga*, and the Marquiſs of *Villa Real*, and having received now private Notice, that they had ſundry Meetings, and were obſerved daily to converſe with Perſons as diſcontented as themſelves, endeavoured by all Means poſſible to know the Depth of their Counſel, and at length intercepted ſome of their Letters to *Madrid*, which diſcovered not only the whole Plot, but even the Names of all the Conſpirators.

THE Act of holding Correſpondence with the *Spaniard* was Treaſon in itſelf, ſufficient to take away their Lives, being contrary to his Majeſty's expreſs Command; it being to this Intent, made it but ſo much the more heinous: His Majeſty therefore, not knowing how far it might have proceeded, made no Delays, but preſently by the Sound of Drum and Trumpet (as the Cuſtom is) cauſed to be proclaimed, That he intended to go forth of the City; upon which all the Nobles and Gentry, according to the uſual Manner, aſſembled at the Palace, to accompany his Majeſty; who when he ſaw them all ready, commanded firſt that a Council of State ſhould be called; which was done, many of the Conſpirators being aſſiſtant in it, who being ſate, his Majeſty without any Noiſe cauſed them to be arreſted one by one, which without the taking of this Courſe, he could never have effected; for if the Conſpiracy had been detected before their Perſons had been ſeized, they had either been torn in Pieces by the Fury of the People, or elſe ſome of them had eſcaped.

IT was very ſtrange that of all the Plotters in this Conſpiracy, not one ſhould, either by Accident, or otherwiſe, eſcape; for the Perſons of theſe now taken, were no ſooner impriſoned, but his Majeſty publiſhed a Proclamation, declaring a free Pardon to all the Accomplices in this Conſpiracy, that ſhould within four Days come and beg it, acknowledging their Fault; but the King's Diligence had been ſuch before, that there was not one left to accept of this Grace.

SHORTLY after, thoſe who had been taken, were arraigned according to Law, found guilty of High Treaſon, and in Manner following executed.

ON the laſt Day of *Auguſt*, 1641, the Marquiſs of *Villa Reale*, the Duke of *Camigna*, his Son, the Count *De Armamac*, and Don *Auguſtine Manuele*, were led along a Gallery to a Scaffold erected for the Purpoſe, with two Stories, on the uppermoſt of which ſtood two Chairs, on the next one, and on the Scaffold itſelf the fourth.

THE firſt that was conducted forth to Execution, was the Marquiſs of *Villa Reale*, who was clothed in a long black Bayes Cloak, and his Servants attending him in Mourning; being mounted to the uppermoſt Part of the Scaffold, he prayed for a good Space upon his Knees, and then riſing up, asked, If there were no Hopes of Pardon? Which made the People with one Voice cry out, *No, let him die, let him die for a Traytor.*

THE next Part of the Ceremony of his Execution, was the Proclamation, which according to the uſual Manner was made by the Executioner, in theſe Words; *This is the Juſtice that the King, our Sovereign Lord, commands to be executed upon the Perſon of Don* Lewis de Meneſes, *ſome time Marquiſs of* Villa Reale, *that his Throat be cut, as a Traytor to his Majeſty, the Nobility and People of this Kingdom, that for his Crime his Goods be confiſcated, and his Memory baniſhed out of the World.* Whereat all the People cried out, *Juſtice, Juſtice.*

THE Marquiſs thereupon ſeeing no Hopes of any Reprieve, with a ſober and becoming Gravity demanded Pardon of all the Spectators, deſiring them to aſſiſt him with their Prayers to God for the Pardon of this, and all his other Sins; then turning to a Father Jeſuit his Confeſſor, he prayed him in his Behalf to preſent himſelf at his Majeſty's Feet, and beſeech him, out of his wonted Goodneſs, to forgive him that heinous Offence committed againſt him and the whole Kingdom.

HAVING ended this Speech, he very patiently sat down in the Chair, and the Executioner having tied his Arms and Legs, to the Arms and Legs of the Chair, he leaned his Neck over the back of the Chair, and the Executioner with his Knife cut his Throat, covering him afterwards with a black Scarf.

IN the same Manner his Son the Duke of *Camigna* came to the Scaffold, his Servants all attending him in Mourning; as he came to his Father's Corps he kneeled down, and several Times kissed his Feet, begging of the People the Suffrage of one *Pater noster* for his Father's Soul; then after some Prayers, and Proclamation made by the Executioner, he received the same Punishment.

THE next that suffered was the Count of *Armamac*, in the Chair seated upon the lower Story; and after him Don *Augustin Manuel*, upon the Scaffold itself. The Judges would have had all their Necks cut behind, but his Majesty would not consent thereto, as a Punishment too ignominous for Persons of their Quality.

THE same Day *Pietro de Baeza*, and *Melchior Correa de Franca*, were drawn at a Horse Tail to an extraordinary high Gallows, and there hanged; whilst *Diego de Brito Nabo*, and *Antonio Valente*, were executed upon a lower; the Quarters of these four were set up at the Gates of the City, and their Heads placed upon several Frontier Towns.

IN the Month of *September* following, for the same Offence *Antonio*, *Cogamine*, and *Antonio Correa*, were likewise executed; the first of which during the whole Time of his Imprisonment, was an Example of Penitence, feeding only upon Bread and Water, and whipping himself very often, with continual Prayers to God for Pardon of that, and all his other Sins.

AS for the Archbishop of *Braga*, and the Bishops of *Martiria* and *Malacca*, and Fryar *Emanuel de Macedo*, though they were the Persons that had the greatest Hand in the Conspiracy; yet in regard they were ecclesiastical Persons, they suffered not Death, according to their Deserts, but was kept in Prison, till the Pope's Pleasure were known concerning them.

HERE must not be forgot a great Example of Humility and Repentance in the Archbishop of *Braga*, not only in his Life-time (when he often writ to the King, that he might suffer, and others be spared, who were rather drawn in, in Compliance and Obedience to him, than out of any Ill-will to the King and Kingdom) but also at his Death (which happened about three Years after his Imprisonment) when he gave Order that as soon as he was dead, his last Will and Testament should be carried to the King, wherein he humbly intreated his Majesty to pardon the Treason committed against him, and his Native Country, and that he would permit his Body to be buried without the Church of any Parish in *Lisbon*, and that without any Inscription or Tomb-Stone, that there might remain no Memory of a Man who had been a Traytor to his King and Country.

THIS exemplary Punishment and rigorous Execution of Justice upon the fore-mentioned traiterous Delinquents, established the King in his Kingdom, struck a Terror into his Enemies, increased his Subjects Love and Care of him, and engaged them more diligently to watch his royal Family, and the Kingdom's Safety.

BUT in the mean Time daily Incursions were made upon the Frontiers between the *Castilians* and *Portuguese*, with the same Violence, Cruelty, and Animosity, as formerly.

BUT now we come to relate the most shameful Piece of Treachery ever yet heard of, acted upon that most noble and gallant Prince the Infante Don *Duarte*, Brother to the King of *Portugal*, who had served the Emperor in his Wars, with much Gallantry, and no less Success, long before his Brother Don *John* had any Thoughts of a Crown; nor did he shew any Endeavours to desert the Emperor's Service, after the News arrived of the Revolt of *Portugal*; but seemed resolved to continue there, till he was betrayed by *Francisco de Mello* a *Portuguese*, at that Time Ambassador to the Catholick King in the Imperial Court.

THIS *Mello*, notwithstanding he was bound by many strong Obligations to the House of *Braganza*, yet like an ungrateful Villian, having Opportunity offered, now resolves to build his Fortunes upon their Ruin, or at least Displeasure; he therefore earnestly solicits the Emperor to seize upon the Person of Don *Duarte*, and deliver him up to the King of *Spain*; alledging, of what great Concernment the securing of his Person would be to the Catholick King; that it much behoved his Imperial Majesty to shew his Affection to his Brother the Catholick King in this Particular, which would not only prove of Interest to *Spain*, but the whole House of *Austria*: That this Prince was the only Prop of the House of *Braganza*; that this was the only Means God had left in the Hands of the House of *Austria* to recover the Kingdom of *Portugal*; that it would be a great Error both in Prudence and Policy to let slip so fair an Occasion, for that if he should escape out of their Hands, and get to the Assistance of his Brother, both his personal Valour, and Experience in warlike Affairs, would very much infest the Catholick King.

THE Emperor was not only not perswaded by this Discourse of *Mello*'s, but extremely offended at it; returning him in Answer, that he did abhor and detest so great a Breach of publick Faith, and Violation of all Laws of Hospitality; that it would be both against the Liberty of the Empire, and against his own Honour, to imprison a Prince who had committed no Fault to the Empire, but rather had laid innumerable Obligations both upon it, and himself.

NOR was the Detestation of the Arch-Duke *Leopold* to an Act so foul and shameful, less than that of his Brother's the Emperor; notwithstanding all which, *Mello* was not at all discouraged, but still prosecutes his villainous Design, by corrupting with great Sums of Money the Count of *Tratsmandorf*, and several other Pensioners of the Crown of *Spain*; but they were soon weary of so base and shameful an Employment; which made *Mello* think of a more cunning Artifice, which was to perswade the Emperor to hearken to the Allurements of one *Diego di Quiroga*, who of a Soldier was turned Monk, and was now Confessor to the Empress: This Father, who had often been called to give his Judgment in Affairs of State, endeavoured by all Means possible to perswade the Emperor that he might not only with a good Conscience secure the Infante, but that according to the best Rules of Interest of State, he ought to do it.

HIS Imperial Majesty, notwithstanding all these Perswasions, was very much unsatisfied in the Action, and once fully resolved not to do it; but at length, overcome by *Mello*'s Importunities, and the ghostly Perswasions of *Quiroga*, he was as it were constrained to alter his Resolution, and to give Order to Don *Lewis Gonzaga*, to go to the Prince's Quarters at *Leipen*, and summon him to *Ratisbone*.

IN

In the mean time, to endeavour to prevent all ill Impreſſions, which an Action ſo heinouſly wicked might ſtrike into all Boſoms that had either Honour and Honeſty; it was given out abroad, that the Infante Don *Duarte* was ſecretly fled for ſome Miſdemeanor from *Leipen*, (when he, confident of his own Innocency, was in his Journey to *Ratisbone*, according to the Summons;) and thereupon a Propoſal made of 16000 Crowns, as a Reward to any Man that could bring him either dead or alive; ſo that the Prince being ignorant of any ſuch Thing, very hardly eſcaped their Hands, who out of Hopes of the Money, had gone in Search of him; but miſſing them, he came to *Ratisbone*; where he was no ſooner arrived, but, without any Reaſon given, he was caſt into a common Goal, and all his Servants impriſoned.

Don *Franciſco de Mello* having thus far brought his Deſires to Effect, ſtops not here, but afreſh ſolicits the Emperor, that the Prince might be delivered into the *Spaniards* Hands, and ſent Priſoner to *Milan*; but inſtead of aſſenting to this, he ſends a Meſſenger to the Infante, aſſuring him upon his Word, that he would not deliver him into the Hands of the *Spaniards*, but would ſpeedily procure his Liberty and Intranchiſement.

Yet notwithſtanding theſe fair Promiſes of the Emperor, Don *Duarte*'s ill Uſage in Priſon daily and hourly increaſed, nor could he by any Means poſſible get Audience of the Emperor; not without any Reaſon, for, *No Face is more terrible to the Offender than the Face offended*; which made the Prince make this Proteſtation, calling God and Man to witneſs of the Injury done him by the Emperor, to whom he was neither ſubject by Obligation, nor Birth; that when his Brother was made King of *Portugal*, he was in the Emperor's Service, and wholly ignorant of any Deſign of his Brother's; that if the King of *Spain* were offended, he ſhould revenge himſelf upon the Perſon offending; that the Buſineſs no way concerned the Emperor, &c.

All theſe Allegations the Emperor confeſſed to be true, by a Meſſenger ſent to the Infante in Priſon, again aſſuring him that he would not deliver him up to his Enemies, but that he could not releaſe him for ſome Reaſon of State: Which made Don *Franciſco de Soſa Contigno*, Ambaſſador Extraordinary from *Portugal* to the King of *Sweden*, in the Name of the King his Maſter, repreſent at large to the Diet at *Ratiſbon* the whole Proceedings, requiring Juſtice and Liberty for the Infante: But it is in vain to plead againſt Intereſt; all the Manifeſto's, Proteſtations, Petitions, and Intereſſions made, produced no other Effect than the Removal of the Infante from Place to Place, that ſtill, as he was farther off, he might have the harder Uſage.

But hitherto the Emperor ſeemed immoveable in his Reſolution of not delivering up the Infante into the Hands of the *Spaniards*, till tempted with what made *Judas* betray his Maſter, and our bleſſed Saviour, to Death, Money, he conſented to the Breach of his Reſolve; for upon the Promiſe of 40000 Crowns (contrary to the Immunities of the Empire, to the Privileges of free Princes, to the Law of Nations, and to his Word and Promiſe ſo often reiterated) he conſented that that noble and innocent Prince ſhould be ſent whither the Catholick King ſhould think fit; to away he was hurried towards the Caſtle of *Milan*, there to remain a Priſoner.

By the Way, as he entered into the *Spaniſh* Territories, he was received by the Count *de Siruela*, Governor of that Dukedom, where the Emperor's Commiſſary took Leave to return; to whom Don *Duarte* openly ſaid, *Tell thy Maſter that I am more ſorry I have ſerved ſo unworthy a Prince, than to ſee myſelf ſold a Priſoner into the Hands of my Enemies; but the juſt Judge of the World will one Day ſuffer the like Dealing towards his Children, who are no more privileged for being of the Houſe of* Auſtria, *than myſelf that am of the Blood Royal of* Portugal; *and Poſterity will judge of him and me.*

The Emperor had given Inſtruction to thoſe that convoyed the Infante, that in caſe their Priſoner made an Attempt to eſcape, they ſhould kill him upon the Place: Being arrived in *Milan* he was clapped in the common Gate, with all the Rogues and Banditti, having a Guard lodged with him in his Chamber, ſo rude that they would ſcarce admit him to take his Reſt.

Thus was this generous, but unfortunate Prince, rewarded; for having, at his own proper Coſt and Charges, ſerved the Empire eight Years; for having always, and upon all Occaſions, ventured his Life with the moſt Daring, and yet expecting no other Pay but Thanks, nor other Recompence but Honour.

King *John* was extremely perplexed at this inhuman Barbariſm uſed to his Brother, which he vowed fully to revenge with Arms; but he could for the preſent do it no otherwiſe than defenſively, by reaſon of the continual Inroads the *Caſtilians* made into *Portugal*.

About the Beginning of the Year 1642, (notwithſtanding the Truce that had been concluded between *Portugal* and *Holland*, and that a great Fleet of *Hollanders* had been ſent to aſſiſt the *Portugueſe* againſt the *Spaniard*) there paſſed very high Acts of Hoſtility between the two Nations in *Africa* and *America*, beyond the Line; for the *Hollanders* ſeeing the Diſ-union of *Portugal* from *Caſtile*, made all Speed poſſible to perfect the Conqueſt of thoſe Parts before a perfect Peace ſhould be concluded with *Portugal*, that ſo in the Treaty they might pretend Reaſon, that all Things ſhould continue in the State they were then found.

To this Purpoſe, that is, the expediting their Conqueſt, the *Hollanders* treacherouſly whilſt there was all quiet and peaceable Commerce held between the two Nations in the Kingdom of *Angola*, ſurprized the *Portugueſe* that were Governors of the Place, killed divers, and robbed all of the great Wealth they there found; of which Perfidiouſneſs, as alſo of the barbarous Uſage of the Priſoners there taken, Complaints were made to the States General at the *Hague*, but no Redreſs granted; nor was the King of *Portugal* of Ability to force it.

In the mean time the Affairs in *Portugal* were a little diſcompoſed by the general Diſcontent and Diſtaſte taken at the Secretary of State Don *Francisco de Lucena*: This Man had lived a long Time in the Court of *Spain*, till he was by *Olivares* made Under-Secretary to *Vaſconſellos*; his Readineſs to proclaim King *John*, and his Abilities in the Place, made the King continue him in it, repoſing in him ſo great a Confidence, that though ſome had advertiſed his Majeſty that he kept Correſpondence with the Court at *Madrid*, yet the King would not ſuſpect him, nor permit him to be brought to a Trial.

But about the middle of the Year 1643, the urgent Affairs of the Kingdom requiring a Convention of the three Eſtates, they openly refuſed all Acts that ſhould paſs the Hands of Secretary *Lucena*, poſitively telling his Majeſty, that unleſs he were brought to a Trial, no Act ſhould paſs in

the

the Aſſembly of Eſtates, nor any farther Proceedings be made.

His Majeſty was very much grieved hereat, yet prudently reſolved to give his Subjects Satisfaction, by delivering up his Secretary to Juſtice; yet reſolving he ſhould have a fair Trial, and to that Purpoſe ſitting himſelf to hear the Witneſſes examined. Whilſt Proceſs was framed againſt the Secretary, ſome ſecret Advice came to his Majeſty, which cauſed the Impriſonment of the Brother, and three Servants of the Secretary, together with an *Engliſh* Monk, and a Cavalier of the Habit: Not long after the Secretary was arraigned and condemned for betraying his Truth, in holding Correſpondence with the Enemy, and in neglecting timely to advertiſe the Infante *Duarte* to retire out of *Germany*, &c. and according to his Sentence executed in a public Place in *Lisbon*, where at his Death he proteſted his Innocency touching any Treachery towards his Majeſty.

The Death of the Secretary both pleaſed the People, and ſatisfied the Aſſembly of Eſtates, who now according to his Majeſty's Command met on *September* the eighteenth 1643, and being all ſate, and his Majeſty ſeated in his Throne, Don *Emanuel D'Acugna* Dean of his Majeſty's Chapel, roſe up, and after Reverence made to the King, harangu'd them with ſo much Eloquence and Affection, that he ſtirred up and encouraged the States readily to give all Aſſiſtance imaginable, both for redreſſing of Grievances, and for the levying Arms; ſo that within a ſmall Time after, the King was at the Head of 20,000 Foot, and 3000 Horſe, marching towards the Frontiers of *Caſtile*.

Whilst theſe great Preparations for Hoſtility were made, the Queen brought forth into the World a ſecond Son to his Majeſty; but the firſt Child after he came to the Crown, which added to the Magnificence of his Chriſtening: He was named *Alphonſo*, and his Brother *Theodoſio* dying before his Father, ſucceeded in the Kingdom.

Many Skirmiſhes had paſſed between the *Caſtilians* and *Portugueſe*, many Towns had been ſurpriſed, many Lands waſted, but never happened a ſet Battle between them, till in the Year 1644, when both Armies met upon the Border of *Portugal* in a Field called *Campo-Major*. The *Spaniſh* Army, which for the moſt Part conſiſted of Strangers, was under the Command of the Marquiſs of *Torrecuſa*; and the *Portugueſe* Army, conſiſting of Natives, and ſome few *Hollanders*, were commanded by *Matthias de Albuquerque*. This Fight was maintained with all poſſible Courage and Reſolution on both Sides; but the *Spaniards* being more numerous, eſpecially in Horſe, at length put the whole *Portugueſe* Army into Diſorder, ſeized on their whole Artillery and Baggage, and flew *Albuquerque*'s Horſe under him, took many Priſoners, and aſſured themſelves of an abſolute Victory. But Fortune, which had thus favourably ſmiled upon them in the Beginning of the Day, frowned as harſhly upon them in the Concluſion; for *Albuquerque* being remounted, rallied again his ſcattered Forces, and recharging the purſuing *Spaniards*, put them to a total Rout, and purſued the Chaſe for above three Miles.

In this Battle the *Caſtilians* loſt 1600 Men upon the Place, amongſt which were the Lieutenant General, the General of the Horſe, the General of the Artillery, the Count *de Alontixo*, three Camp-Maſters, two Adjutants of Horſe, three Serjeant-Majors, three and twenty Cornets, together with many Knights of the Order of St. *James*, *Calatrava*, and *Alcantara*: There were taken about 4000 Arms, and 1000 Horſe.

On the *Portugueſe* Side there were not above 300 ſlain, among which were two Camp-Maſters, one Serjeant-Major, a Captain of Horſe, and eight of Foot; but many Noblemen, Commanders, and Officers, taken Priſoners in the firſt Encounter, were carried away by the *Spaniards* in their Flight.

It was not long after this Battle, that the Marquiſs *De Montalban*, Don *George Maſcarenas* Lord-Treaſurer, Preſident of the Council of the *Indies*, and Counſellor of Eſtate, with ſome others, were impriſoned upon Suſpicion of a Conſpiracy againſt the King of *Portugal*: But it being upon Examination found that the Suſpicion was by the *Spaniards* cunningly raiſed, to deprive King *John* of his moſt able Miniſters, and to make the World believe the *Portugueſe* Nobility were diſcontented with their King, they were ſet at Liberty, and their Honours fully repaired by a Proclamation of the King's.

For the *Spaniards* ceaſed not by all Means and Devices, which the Will and Policy of the moſt wicked Statesmen could invent, not only to weaken the *Portugueſe* Nation within itſelf, by breeding Diſcontents (if poſſible) between the King and the other Eſtates, but likewiſe to undervalue them, and make their Credit be ſlighted and diſregarded by other Kingdoms and States, their Confederates and Allies.

Yet beſides theſe ſubtile Ambages, the King of *Caſtile* did not deſiſt the endeavouring to oppreſs this Kingdom by Force of Arms; but not only the reſolved and immutable Unity of the *Portugueſe* Nation, was a ſtrong Tower and invincible Fortreſs againſt the *Spaniſh* Power, but ſo extremely was the Houſe of *Auſtria* involved in Wars and Diſaſters on every Side, that that vaſt Body was rather in a Condition to crave Help and Aſſiſtance from others, than indeed to oppreſs them. For beſides the Wars in *Catalonia*, which had put itſelf under the Protection of the moſt potent King of *France*; in the *Low-Countries*, which had proved ſo tedious and ſo chargeable a War to *Spain*; in *Italy*, in this Kingdom, and in *Germany*; there happened ſeveral Commotions and popular Tumults in ſome of the King of *Spain*'s Dominions, which not only robbed the King of a preſent Supply of Treaſure, but were otherwiſe Retardments to the Proſecution of his Wars in other Places.

The firſt of theſe Commotions began in the Iſland of *Sicily*, where the People gathering together in a tumultuous Manner, forced the Vice-roy to take off all new Impoſts and Taxes which the King's preſent Neceſſities had enforced him to lay upon them. This encouraged their Neighbours on the adjacent Continent, the Inhabitants of the famous City of *Naples*, in hopes to rid themſelves of their Oppreſſions, to riſe in like Manner in Arms; which they did, encouraged and commanded by one *Thomas Aniello*, or vulgarly *Maſaniello*; who though of ſo mean and obſcure a Birth as a poor Fiſher Boy, yet to the Wonder of the World for ten Days commanded this mighty City, and freed it from all Gabels; ſo that ever ſince theſe two Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* have rather been a great Charge, than any Benefit to the *Spaniſh* Monarchy.

These Troubles, and the *Auſtrian* Family's being every where encompaſſed and embroiled in Wars, together with the earneſt Deſire of the King of *Caſtile* to proſecute a vigorous War againſt *Catalonia* and *Portugal*, were, I ſuppoſe, the Motives which perſuaded the Catholick King to end thoſe Wars, which had laſted in the *Low-Countries* for above ninety Years, by owning now at laſt (what he had ſo long refuſed) the United Provinces free States: So an abſolute Peace

Peace was concluded on, and proclaimed at all the chief Towns in the *Netherlands*, on the fifth of *June* 1648; a Peace no less advantageous to the *Spaniards*, than disadvantageous to the *Portugueſe*, by reaſon of the Pretences the *Dutch* had to *Brazil*, and other Places in the *Weſt-Indies*. King *John* of *Portugal* about the Beginning of the Year 1649 thought his Son the Prince *Theodoſio* arrived at an Age fitting to keep a Court of himſelf, Lodgings were therefore appointed for him, divided from the Royal Palace, and Officers of his Houſhold nominated and appointed by the King, amongſt whom the Counts of *Villa-Nova*, of *Miranda*, of *Valdereis*, and *Fernando Tellez de Menezez*, (who had formerly been Governor of the City of *Port*,) were entruſted as the principal Gentlemen of his Chamber.

The King likewiſe thought fit to add a third to the two former Superintendents of his Revenue, whom he nominated and appointed to be Don *Rey de Mour de Tellez*, whoſe former Office of Steward to the Queen, was at the ſame Time conferred on Don *Antonio de Silva* Lord of *Bilas*.

Notwithſtanding the Truce, the *Hollanders* ſtill continued their Outrages in the other Side the Line, but principally in *Brazil*, where they ſeized upon many of the *Portugueſe* Forts, impeded the Traffic, abuſed and murdered the Subjects; which made his Majeſty reſolve to call the Count of *Caſt e-Mellor* from his Charge of being General of the *Portugueſe* Forces upon the Frontiers of *Gallicia*, and commit that to the young Viſcount *de Villa Nova de Servera*, that the Count might be imployed as Viceroy to *Brazil*: And to curb the *Flemmings* Inſolencies, and to ſecure the *Portugueſe* Merchants Ships from their Piracies, the King appointed a Fleet of forty Ships of War, and 6000 Men, to attend that Service as Convoys.

His Holineſs the Pope's Anger as yet continued towards the Kingdom of *Portugal*; for he had not only hitherto refuſed to receive Ambaſſadors from thence, but to ſupply thoſe Archbiſhopricks, Biſhopricks, and other eccleſiaſtical Offices of the Kingdom, which by the Death of the former Poſſeſſors were vacant: This the King found a great Inconvenience, and therefore thought fit once more to attempt his Holineſs; and to preſent him the Names of ſuch of his own Subjects, whoſe Piety, Learning, or other Sufficiencies, he thought might make them capable of ſuch Dignities; as firſt, for the Archbiſhoprick of *Braga*, (formerly acknowledged to be the Primacy of all *Spain*, notwithſtanding the Pretenſions of *Toledo*) he nominated *Don Pedro de Lamaſtro*, Preſident of the Juſtice of the Palace of the Houſe of *Aveiro*, and deſcended from *John* the Second, King of *Portugal*. For the Archbiſhoprick of *Evora*, his Majeſty nominated Don *Franciſco Barrez* Biſhop of the *Algarves*, whoſe Biſhoprick he beſtowed upon the Father *Dennis de Agnes* an *Auguſtine* Monk, and Confeſſor to his Majeſty. For the Biſhoprick of *Guarda*, was appointed Don *Antonio Pobo*, great Prior of the military Order of St. *James*; for the Biſhoprick of *Lamego* Don *Antonio de Mendoza*, Commiſſary of the *Bulla de la Croiſada*; for the Biſhoprick of *Lerida*, Don *Diego de Souza* Inquiſitor of the Holy Office; for that of *Coimbria*, Don *Sebaſtian Caſar de Menezes*, who was before nominated for the Biſhoprick of *Porto*, but that was given by his Majeſty to Don *Pedro de Menezes*, once named Biſhop of *Miranda*; of which laſt Place Don *Pedro de Porros*, Tutor of the Prince Don *Theodoſio*, was now named Biſhop. Theſe Choices of his Majeſty, the Pope, after ſome Time, confirmed. Don *Franciſco de Souza*, who was ſent as extraordinary Ambaſſador, notwithſtanding the Oppoſition of the *Spaniards*, was received; not unlikely out of a Fear that they would officiate without his Confirmation, and ſo in a Manner renounce the Power of the See of *Rome*.

But in the midſt of this ſettling eccleſiaſtical Affairs, Arms were not ſilent; for upon the Borders, there happened a Skirmiſh between the *Caſtilians* and *Portugueſe* about the latter End of *April*, 1649. The Lord of *Themiricourt*, Lieutenant-General of the *Portugueſe* Horſe, and Monſieur *Du Queſne* the Commiſſary-General, gained a Victory over a ſmall Army of the *Spaniards*, defeating 700 of them, and taking divers Priſoners, among whom was the Nephew of the Marquiſs of *Mejiguen*, Lieutenant-General of the *Caſtilian* Army at *Badajox*; who was after exchanged for the Count *Frieſque Lavagna*, who for ſome Years paſt had been Priſoner in *Caſtile*: In this Conflict the *Portugueſe* loſt but twenty five Men, the Chief of whom was *Sieur de la Touche*, a *French* Captain, who had behaved himſelf moſt valourouſly.

The Commotions of the *Pariſians* againſt the King of *France*, had given the *Spaniard* great Hopes of better Succeſs than they had many Years had; but the middle of the Year 1649, happily concluding them, the News of their Pacification, and that a great Victory was gained by the *Portugueſe* againſt the *Hollanders* in *Brazil*, cauſed a general Joy over all *Portugal*; for the King appointed public Thanks to be given, and *Te Deum* to be ſung in all Churches.

Hopes to revenge the late Defeat given by the Lord *Themiricourt*, and Deſire to do ſome valiant Act before he departed from his Government, made the Marquiſs of *Leganez*, Governor of the *Spaniſh* Forces at *Eſtramadura*, give an Alarum to the *Portugueſe* Frontiers, and enter into the Country, with 2000 Horſe, and 6000 Foot; but the valiant Count of St. *Laurence* aſſaulting him, forced him to retire with Shame, and excuſe himſelf that he marched out only to meet the Marquiſs of *Mortare*, who was appointed to ſucceed him in the Government.

Yet this ſmall and worthleſs Alarum, made the King of *Portugal*, who knew that too much Care could not be had of the Safety of his Kingdom, to ſend Orders to the Governors to look more exactly to the Countries committed to their Charges than formerly, and ſtrictly to give Charge to Don *Juan de Menezes* Governor of *Porto*, to the Viſcount *Ponte de Lima* Governor of the Countries between *Douro* and *Minho*, to the Count of *Arogna* Governor of *Traſmontes*, and Don *Roderigo de Caſtro* Governor of *Beira*, to repair with all Expedition to their ſeveral Commands.

Nor was his Majeſty leſs careful of his Dominions abroad than of thoſe near Home, which made him diſpatch the Baron of *Alvito* to be Governor of *Tangier*, and Don *Franciſco de Noragna* to *Mazagan*, both ſtrong Forts in *Africa*; the laſt of which had been near ſurprized by the *Moors* of *Barbary*, but the Commander of that Party which aſſaulted it being ſlain by a valiant *Frenchman*, they were beaten off with Loſs; for which Service the King beſtowed upon the *Frenchman* a Penſion of 600 Crowns *per Annum*.

And whilſt his Majeſty was diſtributing his Bounties, he could not forget the Lady *Donna Maria Manuele*, Widow to the ſome-time before deceaſed Don *Antonio Coello Caravallio*, who had ever ſince his Majeſty's coming to the Crown, been one of his Privy-Councellors, and was one of the chief Perſons that went Ambaſſa-

dors into *France*, to renew the Alliance, and conclude a firm League between the King of *Portugal*, and *Lewis* the Thirteenth King of *France*: His Majesty therefore, in consideration of his Services, bestowed a valuable Pension on his aforesaid Widow.

THERE was almost daily Inroads made upon the Frontiers in some Places or other; among the rest the Baron of *Themiricourt* entered with a strong Party into the *Spanish* Territories, surprised the Suburbs of the City of *Albuquerque*, and brought away a very rich Booty, without the Loss of so much as one Soldier upon the Place, and not above twenty wounded.

THE Succour of the distressed Subjects of the more distressed King of *England*, about the Year 1650, gave Occasion to the King of *Portugal* to manifest his Affection to the *English* Nation; which he did, by giving Assistance to the gallant Prince *Rupert*; who being by his Majesty of *England* made Admiral of those few Ships which in the Year 1648, returned to their Allegiance, had ever since been pursued by the more potent Fleets of the *English* Rebels, and was now by them driven to seek the Protection of his *Portuguese* Majesty; who, notwithstanding that the Fleet of the Rebels, with threatning Bravado's, demanded the said King's Leave, either to assault them in his Port, or to force them to come out bravely, protected them under his Castles.

IN revenge of which the Rebels of *England*, who stiled themselves a Parliament, proclaimed an open War with the *Portuguese* Nation; which his Majesty, notwithstanding his great Engagement at that present, both against the *Spaniards* at Home, and the *Hollanders* on the other Side the Line, resolved to endure, rather than deliver up the faithful Subjects of *England* into the Hands of Murder, Tyranny, and Treason; and therefore, in part to cry Quittance with the *English*, who had taken several Ships belonging to this Nation, he made Seizure of all the *English* Ships and Goods within his whole Dominions, but only those he had before protected.

BUT at length, Prince *Rupert* finding a clear Passage from out his Ports, where he had for many Months been blocked up, the King, by reason of his other large Expences in Defence of his Kingdom, finding himself unable to maintain a War against the *English*, resolved, more moved out of Necessity than Inclination, to send an Agent into *England* to conclude a Peace.

THE Person deputed to go on this unpleasant Employment, (*viz.* to court Rebels) was Don *Suarez de Gimeraines*, who had for his Assistance an Interpreter, Mr. *Myles* an *English* Merchant: These two embarked upon a *Hamburgher*, hired for that Purpose by the King of *Portugal*, and arrived in *England* in *January* 1650. About the Beginning of *February*, Don *Suarez* had Audience, before a Committee of the pretended Parliament, to whom he made a Speech in *Latin*, setting forth his Master's Desire of living in Amity with the Commonwealth of *England*: To which the Rebels answered with a large Harangue of the Injuries they supposed done them by the Protection of Prince *Rupert*'s Fleet, and Seizure of the *English* Merchants Ships and Goods; concluding that they must have Reparation made for the publick Damage of the Commonwealth, which they would be willing to accept of in any honourable Manner, and were willing to that Purpose, if the Ambassador had sufficient Power, to treat with him to that Effect.

IN fine, after some Time the Count *Del Sa* Lord Chamberlain of the Kingdom of *Portugal*, arrived in *England*, in the Quality of an Ambassador Extraordinary, who after many Conferences, Addresses, and large Offers made, obtained a Peace, upon Condition to repay great Sums of Money towards the Satisfaction of the Losses of the *English* Merchants.

DURING the Stay of this Ambassador, his Brother Don *Pantaleon Sa*, Knight of *Malta*, led by I know not what frantick Humour, made a great Uproar upon the *New-Exchange* in *London*, where some *English* were by him and his Followers murdered; for which several of his Retinue were hanged, and himself, notwithstanding the earnest Sollicitations of his Brother, afterwards beheaded upon *Tower-Hill*, when the Government of *England* was changed from a strange Kind of Commonwealth to a stranger Kind of Monarchy, under a Protector.

BUT to return back again to the Affairs of the Kingdom of *Portugal*. The Earl of *Castle-Melhor*, who had been sent Viceroy into *Brazil*, had so good Success, that with the Assistance of those *Portuguese* before in the Kingdom, he expulsed the *Hollanders* out of all their Garrisons there, except the strong Fortress of *Recif*, which was built upon a Rock wholly environed by the Sea. This animated the United States of the *Netherlands*, to endeavour a Revenge and Recovery of that Country; and to that End, a potent Fleet was set out; and notwithstanding the earnest Endeavours, and large Offers of the *Portuguese* Ambassador at the *Hague*, set sail to conquer that Kingdom; but the Expedition proved wholly fruitless, and after so great an Expence, the States were so highly discontented, that the Admiral *Whittison* was arrested at the *Hague*, to answer such Things as should be objected against him concerning that Voyage.

ABOUT the Beginning of the Year 1655, Don *Francisco de Ferrara Rebella* arrived in *England*, with Commission from the King of *Portugal* as Agent to *Oliver Cromwel*, who then swayed here under the Title of Protector, to make a more firm Confirmation of the Peace with *England*, and to advise, I suppose, about carrying on the War with *Spain*. *Cromwel* had given some Reasons to make the World believe he would commence a War against the *Catholick* Monarch; and how much such a War was for the Interest of *Portugal*, none will doubt who have read the foregoing Story. This made King *John* court *Oliver*, with more Submissnes and Complacency, by both harbouring his Fleets, and sending Presents to his Generals, than otherwise his Genius would have permitted him to have done, any Way in prejudice of *England*'s lawful King. In the mean Time the Death of Pope *Innocent* the Tenth, made Don *Francisco de Souza*, Ambassador at *Rome* for the King of *Portugal*, make new Addresses to *Alexander* the Seventh his Successor, for Confirmation of the Church-Officers in that Kingdom; for he had never had any full Grant from *Innocent*: But now the *Spanish* Ambassadors opposed themselves more than ever, and by Means of the Queen of *Sweden*, who wholly imployed her Interest for the Benefit of that Nation, endeavoured to frustrate even the *Portuguese* Hopes: Nay so desperate was the *Spaniards* Malice, that they laid several Designs to murder the *Portuguese* Ambassador; but all proved ineffectual. In fine, after Don *Francisco de Sousa* had spent some Years in the Court of *Rome* to very little Purpose, he was, upon the Death of King *John* the Fourth, called Home to be Governor of the young King *Alphonso*.

THE proffered interchangeable Match with *Savoy* not taking Effect, Father *Du Rosaire*, a *Dominican*, and Archbishop of *Goa*, was sent Agent to *France*, to treat about a Marriage between that King, and the Infanta *Donna Catharina*, with Propolals of 3,000,000 of Gold for her Portion,

Portion, and that the King of *Portugal* would for ſeven Years maintain eighteen Men of War at Sea, for the Defence and Service of the *French* Crown.

Long was this Buſineſs in Negotiation, and by many thought likely to have taken Effect, the Agent being very highly careſſed both by the King and Queen-Mother of *France*; but whether by Reaſon of Cardinal *Mazarine*'s Diſlike of it, or other Reaſons of State, it was prolonged by continual Demurs, till after the King of *Portugal*'s Death, and then wholly broken off.

For King *John*, being now arrived to about fifty Years of Age, in the ſixteenth Year of his Reign, and in the Year of our Lord 1656. on the Sixth of *November*, N. S. paid his laſt Debt to Nature, having a long Time been troubled with an Obſtruction in the Kidneys, occaſioned by the Stone and Gravel, which was ſo ſharp all the Time of his Sickneſs, that he ſeldom urined, and when he did, in ſo little Quantity, that it did ſcarce at all caſe him. This violent Pain put him into a Burning-Fever, which in ten Days overpreſſed his Vitals.

Before his Death, he appointed *Donna Lucia* his Queen, to be Regent of the Kingdom during the Minority of Don *Alphonſo* her Son; recommending to her, for Aſſiſtants in the Management of ſo great a Burden as a Crown, the Reverend Don *Emanuel* Archbiſhop of *Liſbon*, Don *Runlio* Marquis of *Niſa*, the Earl of *Canvandake*, and ſome others, whoſe Abilities, Love, and Fidelity he had Experience of.

He had by his Queen *Donna Lucia*, Daughter of the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, four Children; the eldeſt Son, *Alphonſo*, ſucceeded in the Kingdom, as King of *Portugal*.

When King *John* IV. died, his Son *Alphonſo*, the Sixth of that Name, ſucceeded, who was about the Age of fourteen Years; his Mother, during his Minority, adminiſtered the Affairs of the Kingdom, and cauſed him to be crowned on the Fourteenth of *November*, eight Days after his Father's Death.

The Queen, being ſenſible, that upon this Occaſion of the King's Death, ſhe ſhould have moſt Occaſion to uſe the Soldiery, by the Advice of her Council, ordered that all the Infantry of the Kingdom ſhould have half a Year's Pay, the better to encourage them, who were of themſelves ready enough to fight againſt their common and inveterate Enemy, the *Caſtilians*.

And becauſe ſhe knew that the King of *Spain* would loſe no Opportunity to oppreſs the Kingdom of *Portugal*, ſhe thought it imprudent to let any Occaſion ſlip where any Advantage might be gained upon him; and therefore, all the *Spaniſh* Forces being drawn out of *Andaluzia* to oppoſe the *Engliſh*, in caſe they ſhould attempt to land at *Cadiz*, (for they then blocked up that Port with a potent Fleet;) ſhe commanded four thouſand Horſe to make an Inroad into that Country, who plunder'd and laid waſte all before them, bringing away between forty and fifty thouſand Head of Cattle, and leaving the whole Soil in a Manner deſolate.

This ſo exaſperated the *Spaniards*, that draining moſt of the Garriſons of his Kingdom, he raiſed a potent Army, and with ten thouſand Foot, and five thouſand Horſe, enter'd *Portugal*, and laid Siege to the ſtrong City of *Olivenza*, which at length they reduced to that Neceſſity that the Defendants were willing to capitulate, and ſounded a Parly; but when they came to treat, the *Spaniards* would not admit the King of *Portugal* any other Title than that of Duke of *Braganza*, which made the *Portugueſe* renounce any farther treating.

But at length the *Spaniards* condeſcending to treat, the Town was deliver'd upon Articles; but ſo much did the Queen Regent and Council of *Portugal* reſent it, that they immediately gave Orders to arreſt the Perſon of Don *Mandiol de Saldagna* the Governor, who (with ſeveral of his chief Officers,) was by the Count *de St. Lorenze*, General of the *Portugueſe* Forces in thoſe Parts, ſent Priſoner to *Liſbon*, there to anſwer their ill defending of that Town; it appearing that, at the ſurrendering of it, there marched out two thouſand two hundred well armed Foot, and one hundred Horſe; nor were they reduced to that Neceſſity that was pretended, there remaining in Stores of Ammunition and Proviſion, ſufficient to have defended the Town a great while longer.

The Loſs of this Place was a great Blow to the *Portugueſe*, it being a ſtrong Frontier Town, and giving the *Spaniards* abſolute Command a great Way into the Country: But this the King of *Spain* reſolved ſhould be but a Beginning of his Conqueſt (if poſſible) of this Kingdom; for he ſtill made all Preparations he could to aſſault it with a greater Force, and not only endeavoured this, with might and main to oppreſs it himſelf, but, by his Ambaſſadors, ſolicited the States-General of the United Provinces to ſend their Vice-Admiral *Opdam*, with the Fleet he then had before *Dantzick*, into *Portugal*, to demand Satisfaction for the Damage the *Portugueſe* had done to the *Weſt-India* Company in *Brazil*, and in Caſe the King of *Portugal* ſhould deny to comply with their Deſires, to force them to a Compoſition.

The High and Mighty States eaſily liſtened to this Counſel, and Vice-Admiral *Opdam* with a potent Fleet was ſent to *Liſbon*, carrying with him ſome Commiſſioners from the States to make their Demands, which the Queen-Regent and Council thought ſo unreaſonable, that they could not return any ſatisfactory Anſwer to them, whereupon the Commiſſioners departed. But *Opdam* ſtill ſtay'd with his Fleet, to wait an Opportunity of catching the *Brazil* Fleet in their Return home; many of which, notwithſtanding the Care and Endeavours of the *Portugueſe* to prevent it, he made Prize of, and ſent into *Holland*.

By this Means was the War, which for many Years had been maintained between the *Hollanders* and *Portugueſe* on the other Side of the Line, transferred to this Side; which the King of *France* endeavoured by all Means poſſible, before its Eruption, to prevent, and afterwards to compoſe by his Ambaſſadors, Monſieur *de Thou* in *Holland*, and the Sieur *de Comings* in *Portugal*, but to no Effect.

Thus aſſaulted by two potent Nations, both by Sea and Land, were the *Portugueſe*, which yet made them not at all falter in their Courage and Reſolution; the Queen-Regent cauſing all poſſible Levies to be made to oppoſe the *Caſtilians*, ſending into *Barbary* to buy Horſes, and by Leagues abroad endeavouring to ſtrengthen the Intereſt of the Kingdom: An Ambaſſador was ſent to that Purpoſe into *England*, to renew and confirm the Amity before concluded on; and many Conferences there were between the Archbiſhop of *Ora*, who had before been Ambaſſador into *France*, and the Sieur *de Comings*, ſo that many were in Hopes that the Match between the King of *France* and the Infanta would have gone forward, and an indiſſoluble League, both defenſive and offenſive, been concluded between the two Nations.

And to join Force to Policy, a gallant Army of about 16000 Foot, and 3000 Horſe, all *Portugueſe*, took the Field, and in Revenge for the Loſs of *Olivenza*, laid Siege to *Mouron*, which in three or four Days they took by Storm, putting

1500 *Spaniards* to the Sword, and resolved to proceed to the regaining of *Badajox*, and *Olivenza*; and to that Purpose marching without Opposition by *Caya*, (which they left fortified) they came to the Fort of St. *Christopher*, the strongest Hold of the City of *Badajox*, which they several Days battered, and thrice stormed, but were beaten off; yet at length they took it, and so securely entrenched themselves about the whole City.

The Duke of *Ossima* General of the *Castilian* Horse, having Notice of this streight Siege of the City, endeavoured with 1600 Horse to cut off their Convoys and Provisions; but the Count *del Prado* Governor of *Elvas*, receiving Advice of his Design, sallied out of the City with three Companies of Horse, and all the Foot he had, to prevent him, by which Means *Ossima* was encompassed on both Sides, for at the same Time he was on the other Part charged by Don *Andrea D'Albuquerque*, General of the *Portuguese* Horse, and that with so much Gallantry that they presently discomfitted their Enemies, slew 400 upon the Place, took 300 Prisoners, and forced the Duke of *Ossima* to save himself by swimming.

This happy Success encouraged them to return with more Alacrity to the Siege, which they prosecuted with all Vigour possible, and on the three and twentieth of *June*, stormed and took a Redoubt which was palisado'd; but at length when they had spent much Time, Blood, and Treasure, they were forced by the powerful Army of Don *Lewis de Haro* to raise their Siege.

For the King of *Spain* exasperated with the Loss of *Mouron*, and fearing likewise to lose *Badajox*, had rallied a great Army, which he committed to the Care of his Favourite Don *Lewis de Haro*, who not only with it raised the Siege from before *Badajox*, but likewise so streightly besieged *Elvas*, one of the *Portuguese* strongest Frontier Towns, (the taking of which might have endangered the whole Kingdom,) and reduced it to such Necessity, that it was even upon the Point of yielding.

But the *Portuguese*, who knew of how much Importance it was to them, had ever been anxious for its Relief; and therefore having at length bravely recruited their Army, they advanced with full Resolution to drive the *Spaniards* out of their Trenches, nor did they effect it less bravely than they had resolved it, for they totally routed them, their General Don *Lewis de Haro* very hardly escaping; but in this Battle the *Portuguese* lost the worthy *Albuquerque*, General of the Horse.

And to counterpoise this Victory, the strong Fortress of *Mounson* upon the Borders of *Gallicia*, was surrendered to the *Spaniards*; and a Party of the *Portuguese*, not having Advice that it was already possessed by the *Castilians*, going to relieve it, were surprised and forced shamefully to retreat, with the Loss of some Hundreds; and this Success encouraged the *Spaniards* under the Command of the Marquis of *Vienna*, to besiege the only City the *Portuguese* were possest of on the River *Minho*, but it was relieved by the *Portuguese*. The *Spaniards* likewise gained a signal Victory over a Party of the *Portuguese* Horse nigh *Alcantara*; for Advice being brought to the Governor of that Town, that the *Portuguese* with a Party of 400 Horse were entering upon the Frontiers in two Bodies, he taking 500 Horse, and a select Party of Foot, went to meet them, and so handsomly managed his Business, that he surprised one whole Body, scarce a Man escaping; a Commissary-General, five Captains, and several other Officers, being taken Prisoners.

But these Things were inconsiderable Disadvantages to the Interest of *Portugal*, in respect of what it was like to feel by the Peace which was treating of between those two mighty Monarchs of *France* and *Spain*: This the Queen Regent and Council were sensible of, and therefore dispatched Don *John D'Acosta* Ambassador Extraordinary to the *French* Court, to represent unto his most Christian Majesty the State of the Kingdom of *Portugal*, and to insist that there might be a due Consideration had of the Interest of his Master in the concluding of the Peace with *Spain*, seeing he had formerly approved himself so good an Ally to the Crown of *France*. But this Embassy could produce no other Effect, than a Promise to endeavour a Mediation for them with the King of *Spain*, and procure them good Terms upon Submission, which by the magnanimous *Portuguese* was rejected with Indignation.

Nor were they at all daunted with the great Power of the *Spaniard*, which he intended to employ against them, but manfully resolved to endure all Hazards; yet would they willingly have concluded a Peace with the *Hollanders*, and to that Purpose Don *Fernando Tellez de Faro*, Duke of *Alvero*, was sent Ambassador to the States-General; but he, like a treacherous Villain, revolted from them to the King of *Spain*, carrying along with him the Papers of his Embassy; for which, according to his Desert, his Effigies was executed at *Lisbon* as a Traytor, his Goods confiscated, his House razed to the Ground, and his Children banished and degraded of Nobility. His Brother Don *Diego de Silva*, who had served the King of *Portugal* in the Quality of General at Sea, was likewise upon this Occasion commanded to retire to one of his Houses, and deprived of all publick Employment.

After him was sent Don *Henry de Susa*, Count of *Miranda*, to negotiate an Accomodation with the *Netherland* States; yet he prevailed little; for the pertinacious *Hollanders* were still resolute in their unreasonable Demands, computing their Losses in *Brazil* (where they had no Right to be) to amount to no less then thirty Millions.

The *Spaniards* in the mean Time were forced to give the *Portuguese* some Respite in the Summer, 1659; but Preparations were made to assault them, with the whole Power of that Monarchy in the Spring, 1660. Don *John D'Austria* being called out of *Flanders* to be Generalissimo of the *Spanish* Forces, and having Orders given him in *April*, 1660, to march directly to *Merida*, on the Frontiers of *Portugal*, though he went not that Summer.

But the *Portuguese* resolved not to be behindhand with their Enemies, and therefore made several Inroads into the *Spanish* Territories, depopulating all before them; which made the *Spaniards*, to be revenged, resolve to do the like to them: Order was therefore given to fall into the Kingdom on all Sides; the Marquis of *Vienna*, Governor of *Gallicia*, marching in that Way with eight thousand Foot, and eight hundred Horse; and the Governor of *Caceara* invading that Part which was adjacent to his Government.

In this Condition was the Kingdom of *Portugal* when his Majesty *Charles* II. King of *England* was restored to his Crowns and Kingdoms, welcomed by his Subjects with all gratulatory and submissive Obedience; the News of which was no sooner, by Advice from Don *Francisco de Mello*, Ambassador from the King of *Portugal* to *England*, convey'd to the Ears of his Master, but he caused all the Guns of the Town, Castle, and Ships in the Road to be fired, and for three Days and Nights kept solemn and magnificent Rejoicings: The *Portuguese* Nation, as well by this their Joy at the

Restora-

Reſtoration of the King of *England*, as by their ſteady Obſervance of the Treaties ſubſiſting between the two Kingdoms, proved, that they conſidered the State of this Nation as a Matter of the utmoſt Conſequence to themſelves. And a very few Years after ſhewed that they were much in the Right; for being aſſiſted by the King of *England*, who had married the Princeſs *Katherine*, and by the *French* King under-hand, notwithſtanding he had ſtipulated by the *Pyrenean* Treaty not to afford them any Aſſiſtance, they defeated their Enemies in ſeveral Engagements, the moſt important Victory being that of *Villa Vicioſa*. This Train of ill Succeſs, with their Loſſes in the *Low Countries*, induced the *Spaniards* to make a Peace with *Portugal*, and renounce all their Pretenſions to that Crown.

KING *Alphonſo* coming to Age, the Queen Dowager, who did not approve of his Conduct, retir'd into a Cloyſter, where ſhe died. *Alphonſo* afterwards married the Princeſs of *Nemours*, of the Houſe of *Savoy*, who upon Pretence of her Husband's Impotence, retired alſo into a Convent, and obtained a Divorce from him; while Don *Pedro*, his younger Brother, was ſo fortunate to perſuade the People that Don *Alphonſo* was a weak Man, and incapable of governing the Kingdom, and procur'd him to be depoſed by an Aſſembly of the States, and baniſhed to the Iſlands of *Tercera*, *Anno* 1668; from whence he was brought back ſome time after, and died in the Caſtle of *Cintra* on the twelfth of *December* 1683; till when Don *Pedro* took upon him only the Title of Regent of the Kingdom, but upon the Death of *Alphonſo* he was proclaimed King. Bro- ther Whether Don *Alphonſo* was really that weak Prince the Friends of Don *Pedro* gave out, when they procured him to be depoſed, is not eaſy to determine; but when we ſee the Wife and Brother in a Confederacy againſt him, and even contracting Marriage in his Life-time, and making Intereſt to deprive him of the Regal Power, it is very natural to ſuſpect that the late King had foul Play.

SOME Writers however, I find, give Don *Pedro* a fine Character. They relate, that he was a Prince of excellent Parts, and applied himſelf with all imaginable Diligence to render his Subjects eaſy and happy: And it is indeed become a Proverb, *The worſe Title, the better King*: Abundance of popular Acts muſt be done to take off the People's Attention, and keep them quiet. But the Sum of their Policy, both here and in *Spain*, ſeems to be the bribing the Nobility and leading Men, who willingly contribute to the Slavery and Oppreſſion of their Fellow-Subjects, that they may ſhare the Plunder with the Tyrant.

TO return, as the Revenues of the Crown of *Portugal* are not the largeſt, and the greateſt Part of them is employed in Penſions among the Grandees and Nobility, and conſequently the Court in no Condition to maintain a foreign War, it has been the Wiſdom of their Princes, and particularly of Don *Pedro*, to promote Peace with all Chriſtian Princes and States: Accordingly, in the firſt long War between the Allies and *Lewis* the Fourteenth, we find the *Portugueſe* ſtood Neuters; nor did they come into the laſt War in Queen *Ann*'s Reign till the Year 1703, and then it is evident the whole Weight of the War on that Side was borne by their Allies.

THE cautious *Portugueſe*, before they entered into the Grand Alliance, inſiſted, That the Archduke *Charles*, who was to be proclaimed King of *Spain*, ſhould be ſent to *Portugal* with an Army of 12000 *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Troops; that the Allies alſo ſhould take into their Pay 13000 of the Troops of *Portugal*; and that a large Fleet ſhould be fitted out to protect their Coaſts and Trade againſt the Inſults of the *French*. Accordingly Sir *Cloudeſly Shovel*, with thirty five *Engliſh* Men of War and fourteen *Dutch*, arrived at the Mouth of the *Tagus* the latter End of *July*, from whence the Confederate Fleet ſailed into the *Streights*, and having alarmed the Coaſt of *Spain*, made a Deſcent with two or three thouſand Men near *Altea* in *Valencia*, inviting the *Spaniards* to join them, declaring they were coming to protect them from the Tyranny of the *French*, and aſſiſt them in ſetting their lawful Sovereign the Archduke *Charles* upon the Throne. Nor did the People ſeem averſe to the Propoſal, but brought in Proviſions to the Fleet, and many of them drank the Archduke's Health. However, Things not being yet ripe for a general Revolt, the Troops reimbarked, and the Fleet having in vain endeavoured to relieve the *Cevenoiſe* in *Languedoc*, and cruiſed in the *Mediterranean* till the latter End of the Year, the Admiral viſited the Coaſt of *Portugal* again, and afterwards returned to *England*, not having been able to meet with the *French* Fleet, which kept cloſe in their Harbours this Year.

1703. The Terms on which the *Portugueſe* came into the Grand Alliance.

ON the twelfth of *September* the Emperor and the King of the *Romans* ſign'd an Act, whereby they relinquiſhed all their Right to the *Spaniſh* Monarchy in Favour of the Archduke *Charles*: The Emperor at the ſame Time declaring, that the Male Branch of the Houſe of *Auſtria* being extinct in *Spain*, that Monarchy with the Dominions thereto belonging, was devolv'd upon him; and being importuned by his Illuſtrious Confederates, particularly the King of *Portugal*, to provide a Succeſſor to that Monarchy, he thought proper to ſend over his ſecond Son, the Archduke *Charles*, to *Spain*, in order to put him in Poſſeſſion of that Kingdom. Then the Archduke was proclaimed King of *Spain*, and received the Compliments of the Court thereupon. The Emperor afterwards wrote a Letter to the King of *Portugal*, notifying his proclaiming the Archduke King of *Spain*, and that he deſigned he ſhould ſhortly viſit *Portugal*. Another Letter was wrote to the Queen of *England*, recommending the new-made King to her Protection: Upon the Receipt thereof the Queen wrote to King *Charles*, aſſuring him ſhe would employ all the Strength of her Arms in his Favour.

The Archduke declared King of *Spain*.

THE Archduke, now ſtiled King *Charles* the Third, ſoon after ſet out from *Vienna* for *Holland*, where he arrived the ſecond of *November*; and having continued at the *Hague* till the twenty third of *December*, embarked for *England*. He arrived at *Spithead* the twenty ſixth of the ſame Month, where the Duke of *Somerſet*, Maſter of the Horſe to the Queen of *England*, waited on him on Ship-board, with a Letter and a Compliment from her Majeſty, inviting him to *Windſor*. His Catholick Majeſty thereupon came on Shore, and went to *Petworth*, the Duke of *Somerſet*'s Seat in *Suſſex*; where the Prince of *Denmark*, her Majeſty's Conſort, was come to receive him. On the twenty ninth his Catholick Majeſty, with the Prince, came to *Windſor*; the Queen received him at the Head of the Stairs, and after ſome Compliments of Courſe, he thanked her for her generous Aſſiſtance towards ſetting him on the Throne of *Spain*. His Majeſty ſupped with the Queen and Prince of *Denmark* that Evening; her Majeſty giving the King the

He comes to *England*

Right-Hand at Table, and the Prince ſitting at the End. His Catholick Majeſty lay but two Nights at *Windſor*, where the *Engliſh* Court appeared in all its Luſtre; nothing was wanting that might render the Entertainment agreeable or magnificent: The King took the Napkin from the Dutcheſs of *Marlborough*, and would hold it while the Queen waſh'd; after which he returned it to her Grace with his Diamond Ring wrapped up in it; but the reſt of the Queen's Servants were ſtrictly prohibited to take any thing of the King, who did not abound in Treaſure at this Time.

His Majeſty having taken Leave of the Queen, returned to *Petworth* the thirty-firſt of *December*, and the next Day went on Board to Admiral *Rook* in the *Royal Katherine* at *Spithead*. The *Dutch* Squadron having joined the Fleet, they ſet Sail the fifth of *January*; but meeting with a terrible Storm in the Latitude of 46, they returned to *St. Hellens* the twentieth to refit. The twelfth of *February* the Fleet ſet Sail again, and on the twenty-fifth arrived in the River of *Lisbon*, where the King of *Portugal* with his two eldeſt Sons came on Board the *Royal Katherine*, and after a ſhort Stay the two Kings went on Shore, where *Te Deum* was ſung for his Majeſty's ſafe Arrival; and in the Beginning of *March* all the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* auxiliary Troops arrived in *Portugal*, being commanded by Duke *Schomberg*. Whereupon the Marquiſs of *Chateaunauf*, Ambaſſador of *France* to the King of *Portugal*, retired from thence.

He arrives at *Portugal* with a Detachment of *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Forces.

But the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, who had promiſed themſelves ſuch mighty Advantages from the King of *Portugal*'s coming into the Grand Alliance, found themſelves miſerably diſappointed: Not a third Part of the Horſes were provided for remounting their Cavalry that had been promiſed them, and thoſe under Size, and not fit for Service. Then the *Portugueſe* Generals, and every Governor of a Province who had the ſupreme military Command lodged in him, inſiſted on commanding the Confederate Generals, and that their Troops ſhould take the Right upon all Occaſions; nor would they ſuffer the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* to march in a Body, but diſtributed them into their little ragged Frontier Towns that were not tenable, where many of them were made Priſoners by the Duke of *Anjou*, who invaded
1704 *Portugal* this Year with an Army of 22000 Men. The Marquiſs *das Minas* pretended indeed to give a Diverſion by marching into *Caſtile*; but the Duke of *Berwick*, who commanded the *Spaniſh* Army, perfectly contemned him, and having ſat down before *Caſtle David*, made the Garriſon Priſoners of War. Duke *Schomberg*, who commanded the *Engliſh*, being weary of his Command in ſuch Circumſtances, deſired to be recalled; and the Earl of *Galway*, a *French* Refugee, commanded on that Side in his Room.

In the mean time the *Engliſh* Admiral Sir *George Rook*, having diſembarked the Confederate Troops, ſailed from the River of *Lisbon* and cruiſed off of *Cape St. Vincent*, for the Security of the *Turky* and *Levant* Fleets, and then returned to *Lisbon*. He ſet Sail again the latter End of *April*, with forty Ships of the Line, and ſome Land Forces on Board, commanded by the Prince of *Heſſe*, for *Barcelona*; where they ſummoned the Governor: But he paying no Regard to their Summons, and ſome *Catalans* aſſuring the Admiral and the Prince that there were five to one in the City for King *Charles*, they landed ſome Forces and ſent a ſecond Summons, but with no better Succeſs. Whereupon having thrown about threeſcore Bombs into the City, the Forces were reimbarked, and the Fleet ſailed towards *Toulon*; near which Place the Admiral received Advice from *Lisbon* that the Count *de Tholouſe* was come into the *Mediterranean* with the *Breſt* Squadron, in order to join that of *Toulon*; and on the ſeventh of *June* the Scouts made the Signal of ſeeing the *French* Fleet. The Admiral thereupon ſtood after them, but could not bring them to an Engagement. Having loſt Sight of the *French* Fleet, he made the beſt of his Way to the *Streights*, where he was joined by another Squadron of *Engliſh* Men of War, commanded by Sir *Cloudeſly Shovel*, and it was reſolved to attack *Gibraltar* with their united Force. The Fleet got into the Bay the twenty-firſt of *July*, and at three in the Afternoon the Marines, to the Number of 1800, with the Prince of *Heſſe* at the Head of them, were put on Shore on the Neck of Land to the Northward of the Town, to cut off any Communication with the Country. The Admiral on the twenty-ſecond in the Morning ordered ſome Ships, to cannonade the Town, under the Command of Rear-Admiral *Byng* and Rear-Admiral *Vanderduſſen*; and Captain *Hicks* in the *Yarmouth* with ſome other Ships were to batter the South Mole-Head: But the Wind blowing contrary, it was put off till the twenty-third, when the Ships being all in their Places by Break of Day, the Cannonade begun, and was performed with great Fury, above 15000 Shot being made in five or ſix Hours Time againſt the Town. The Enemy being beat from their Guns, eſpecially at the South Mole-Head, and the Admiral conſidering that the gaining that Work would probably reduce the Town, ordered Captain *Whitacre* with all the Boats armed to poſſeſs himſelf of it, which was performed with great Expedition: Whereupon the Enemy ſprung a Mine, that blew up the Fortifications upon the Mole, killed two Lieutenants and forty Men, and wounded ſixty more. However, they kept Poſſeſſion of the great Platform, and advancing to a Redoubt between the Mole and the Town, made themſelves Maſters of it, with a great many of the Enemy's Cannon. Then they ſent the Governor a peremptory Summons, who on the twenty-fourth in the Morning deſired to capitulate. Hoſtages therefore being exchanged, and the Treaty concluded, the Prince of *Heſſe* took Poſſeſſion of the Town the ſame Evening.

Gibraltar taken.

Soon after the taking *Gibraltar*, the *Breſt* and *Toulon* Squadrons being joined, and amounting to two and fifty Ships of the Line of Battle, and twenty-four Gallies, commanded by the Count *de Tholouſe*, encountered the Confederate Fleet, conſiſting of fifty three Ships of the Line, commanded by Sir *George Rook*, on the thirteenth of *Auguſt*, N. S. off of *Malaga*. The *French* Ships were generally much larger, and being but juſt come out of Harbour, much cleaner, than thoſe of the Confederates. The Fight continued till Night, and the Fleets remained in Sight of each other a Day or two afterwards; but neither Side, it is evident, cared to renew the Engagement.

The Confederate Fleet being returned to their Ports, the *French* and *Spaniards* the following Winter laid Siege to *Gibraltar* by Land, while Admiral *Pointi*, with a Squadron of thirteen *French* Men of War, blocked it up by Sea; of which Admiral *Leak*, who commanded the *Engliſh* Squadron left for the Protection of the *Portugueſe* at *Lisbon*, having Intelligence, ſet Sail for the *Streights*, and ſurprizing *Pointi* with his Squadron in the Bay of *Gibraltar*, took three Men of War, and ran two of the largeſt on

Shore,

Shore, which the Enemy immediately quitted and ſet Fire to. Whereupon the Beſiegers, after they had lain ſix Months before the Place, and ruined the beſt Part of their Army, thought fit to draw off their Batteries and raiſe the Siege.

1705. King Charles ails to Barcelona with the Confederate Fleets

THE Confederates receiving repeated Intelligence that the *Spaniards*, and particularly the *Catalans*, were ready to revolt on the Appearance of King *Charles* with a Body of Troops on their Coaſt, the Grand Fleet, commanded by Sir *Cloudeſly Shovel*, with a Detachment of Land Forces under the Command of the Earl of *Peterborough*, ſet Sail from *Spithead* to *Lisbon*, where they arrived the twentieth of *June*; and his Catholick Majeſty coming on Board them, they ſailed to *Gibraltar*, where they took up the Prince of *Heſſe Darmſtadt*; and watering afterwards at the Bay of *Altea* in *Valencia*, they found the People of that Kingdom generally diſpoſed to declare for King *Charles* III. From thence the Fleet ſteered for *Barcelona*, where they did not arrive till the twenty-ſecond of *Auguſt*, having been hindered by Calms, contrary Winds, and other Accidents.

THE Earl of *Peterborough* ordered the Trenches to be opened againſt the City, which was begun on the nineteenth of *September*, and the Fleet bombarded it from the Sea, ſetting Fire to the Town in ſeveral Places, which put the People into a great Conſternation: Whereupon Don *Velaſco* the Governor, gave Leave to the Friars and the reſt of the Clergy, with the Women and Nuns, to retire out of the Place, and they were kindly received by King *Charles*.

WHILE the Confederates lay before the Place, the *Catalans* came and offered their Service to his Catholick Majeſty; of whom 2000 were mounted and armed, the reſt brought in Proviſions and Neceſſaries, and contributed very much towards taking the Town, which ſurrendered on the fourteenth of *October*, N. S. and the next Day the Shops in *Barcelona* were opened as in Time of Peace, and all was in a profound Tranquility. Not only *Barcelona*, but *Terragona*, *Lerida*, *Tortoſa*, and all the Towns in *Catalonia*, except *Roſes*, immediately ſurrendered to the Allies.

Barcelona taken

THE *Catalans* upon theſe Succeſſes raiſed ſix Regiments for King *Charles*, beſides a Regiment of 500 Dragoons which his Majeſty formed out of the late Garriſon of *Barcelona* that took Service under him, and conſtituted his Guard; theſe were commanded by Count *Zinzendorf*. At the ſame Time Don *Raphael Nebot*, a *Catalan*, came over to the King with his whole Regiment, conſiſting of 500 Horſe, who were joined by 150 other Horſe on the Way. And a Declaration being publiſhed, inviting all good *Spaniards* to aſſiſt his Majeſty in the Recovery of his Throne, Deputies came from ſeveral Towns in *Valencia* to make their Submiſſion. Whereupon the Earl of *Peterborough* with 1000 Horſe, 500 Foot, and a Body of Miquelets, marched to the Capital City of *Valencia*, and by the Aſſiſtance of the Inhabitants made himſelf Maſter of it, making the Viceroy and the Archbiſhop Priſoners; and thereupon the whole Kingdom of *Valencia*, except *Alicant* and *Peniſcola*, revolted to King *Charles*: And had the *Portugueſe* made any Diverſion, as they promiſed, or but permitted their Allies the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* to advance to the Frontiers of *Spain* at this Time, it is not improbable but all *Spain* had ſubmitted to King *Charles*: But notwithſtanding the moſt preſſing Inſtances of the Confederate Generals, the *Portugueſe* could not be drawn out of their Quarters till the Beginning of *October*, when they laid Siege to *Badajox*, and one would think only with a Deſign to raiſe it, for they ſuffered themſelves to be ſurprized by Marſhal *Theſſe*, who drew a Supply of Troops and Proviſions into the Town, after ſome Progreſs had been made in the Siege; whereupon the *Portugueſe* retired, and marched into Winter Quarters.

Badajox beſieged.

THE *Portugueſe* being retreated into their own Country, the Earl of *Peterborough* marched with 1500 Men to *Valencia*, and the City of *Barcelona* drain'd of Soldiers, by ſending Detachments to *Tartoſa*, *Lerida*, *Gironne*, &c. King *Philip* on a ſudden drew all the Troops he could together, both *French* and *Spaniards*, and inveſted *Barcelona* on the ſecond of *April* N.S. 1706, before that City had any Notice of his Motions, or the Breaches were well repaired: But the Lord *Peterborough* having found Means to reinforce the Garriſon, and harraſſing the Enemies Camp with perpetual Alarms, the Town held out till the ſecond of *May*, when the Confederate Fleet approaching, the Earl joined it off *Tarragona* with ſeveral Barks, and 1400 Land Forces in them, and went on Board the *Prince George*, hoiſting the Union Flag; and on the eighth the Fleet came to an Anchor in *Barcelona* Bay, to the inexpreſſible Joy of the Garriſon and Inhabitants; who no longer apprehended themſelves in any Danger; and on the twelfth of *May*, N. S. King *Philip* raiſed the Siege with the utmoſt Precipitation, leaving behind him 106 Braſs Cannon, twenty-three Mortars, all his Sick and Wounded, and prodigious Quantities of Proviſion and Ammunition; and it was obſerved, that the ſame Morning about nine there was a great Eclipſe of the Sun, which being the *French* Device, ſuperſtitious People imagined portended no Good to their Nation. King *Philip* with his Army retired into *France*, and the *French* Fleet commanded by the Count *de Tholouſe* had retired before, on Notice of the Arrival of the Confederates on the Coaſt of *Catalonia*.

Barcelona beſieged by King *Philip*.

Barcelona relieved

WHILE King *Philip* was beſieging *Barcelona*, and had withdrawn moſt of his Forces from the Side of *Portugal*, the *Portugueſe* with the Confederate Troops ventured to enter *Caſtile*, and lay Siege to *Alcantara* the tenth of *April*, which being a Place of no great Strength, capitulated the fourteenth, when it was expected the *Portugueſe* would have marched directly to *Madrid*, where King *Philip*'s Queen and Court were in the utmoſt Conſternation; but notwithſtanding all the Remonſtrances of the *Britiſh* and *Dutch* Generals for marching to *Madrid*, the *Portugueſe* abſolutely refuſed to leave their own Frontiers till they ſaw the Fate of *Barcelona* determined: However, on the Intelligence that the Confederate Fleet had entered the *Streights* in their Way to *Barcelona*, they laid Siege to *Ciudad Rodrigo* the twenty-firſt of *May*, which Place ſurrendered the twenty-ſixth; and on the twenty-ſeventh the News of the raiſing the Siege of *Barcelona* was brought into their Camp, where upon it was unanimouſly agreed by the *Portugueſe* and the reſt of the Confederate Generals to march to *Madrid*, from which they were not fifty Miles diſtant. On the eighteenth of *June* they came to *Eſpinal*, where Deputies from the *Eſcurial* came to make their Submiſſion. Here they had Advice of the Victory obtained by the Allies at *Ramillies* in *Flanders* the twelfth Inſtant, and underſtood that the *Spaniards* generally looked upon King *Philip*'s Affairs as deſperate. That Prince however, after his Diſgrace at *Barcelona*, arrived at *Madrid* by the Way of *France*, and finding the *Portugueſe* bent their March towards that Capital, he retired again, and joined his Troops that were returning through *Navarre*,

Alcantara taken.

Ciudad Rodrigo taken.

com-

commanding the reſt of his Forces that were diſperſed through *Spain* to follow him.

Before he left *Madrid*, he propoſed it to the Grandees and the reſt of the Nobility, that they would take the Field with him; but they deſired to be excuſed, and moſt of them retired to their Country Seats. The *Spaniards* ſeemed very indifferent which Party ſucceeded, at leaſt they did not think it worth their while to hazard any thing for either Prince. They did not approve of *French* Councils, but were made to believe their Religion was in Danger from thoſe Armies of Hereticks in Confederacy with King *Charles*.

The Allies take Poſſeſſion of Madrid.

The Allies being encamped at *Nueſtra Signora de Ratamal*, on the twenty-fourth of *June* a Detachment of Horſe was ſent to take Poſſeſſion of *Madrid*, from whence there came a Deputation the next Day to make their Submiſſion in Form, and moſt of the Nobility and Perſons of Diſtinction came into the Camp, to expreſs their Devotions for the Houſe of *Auſtria*. The Army moving nearer to *Madrid*, the twenty-ſeventh King *Charles* was proclaimed in that City; whereupon *Toledo* and many other conſiderable Towns, declared for him; and even Cardinal *Portocarero* wrote to the *Portugueſe* General, the Marquiſs *das Minas*, offering his Submiſſion to King *Charles*, in whoſe Name Juſtice was adminiſtred in all Courts of Judicature at *Madrid*.

Toledo, &c. declare for King Charles.

The Confederate Generals upon this Succeſs, ſent Courier after Courier to King *Charles*, to haſten his March to *Madrid*, which at firſt he ſeemed enclined to; but the Kingdom of *Arragon* declaring for him at the ſame Time, he marched to the Capital City of that Province, under Pretence of receiving the Submiſſion of that People, where he triſled away ſo much Time, that the Duke of *Berwick* being reinforced, appeared in Sight of the Allies, and on the third of *Auguſt* ſent a Detachment to take Poſſeſſion of *Madrid* again, which the Confederates had quitted a little before, and withdrawn to a more advantagious Camp, for they were now obliged to be upon the Defenſive. But at length, on the ſixth of *Auguſt*, King *Charles* and the Lord *Peterborough* arrived in the Camp of the Allies at *Guadalaxara*, bringing with them no more than five Battalions and thirteen Squadrons, which though it did not put them in a Capacity of acting offenſively, enabled them to make a handſome Retreat.

Madrid loſt again.

The Duke of *Berwick* having poſſeſſed himſelf of *Madrid* again, *Toledo*, *Salamanca*, and all the Towns almoſt that had declared for the Allies in *Caſtile*, eſpouſed the Part of King *Philip* again; whereby the Retreat of the *Portugueſe* to their own Country was cut off, and it was thereupon agreed to retreat into *Valencia*, to ſecure that Country, *Arragon*, and *Catalonia*, in the Intereſt of King *Charles*, and preſerve a Communication with the Sea Coaſts: The Army accordingly made their Retreat in good Order, paſſing the *Tagus* at *Fuente Duenas*, without any conſiderable Loſs, though the Duke of *Berwick* attended their Rear during the whole March.

The Allies retire out of Caſtile

Whilst King *Charles* was retreating from *Caſtile* towards *Valencia*, a Body of 10000 *Engliſh* and *Dutch* arrived in the River of *Lisbon*, commanded by the Earl of *Rivers*. Theſe Troops were at firſt deſigned to have made a Deſcent in *France* the preceding Summer, but having been detained ſeveral Months by contrary Winds, the Enterprize was laid aſide, and they were ſent to reinforce the Allies in *Spain*. The Court of *Portugal* on their Arrival at *Lisbon*, propoſed to join a Body of their national Troops with them, and that they ſhould march directly to *Madrid* through their Country; but the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* having been on Board ſix Months, ſuffered incredible Hardſhips in the Voyage, and loſt moſt of their Horſes, were in no Condition to undertake ſuch an Enterprize: Nor had the *Portugueſe* any ſuch Troops as they mentioned ready to join them, or Artillery or Ammunition provided for ſuch an Undertaking. The Earl of *Rivers* however thought fit to land his Men, as well to refreſh them as to encourage the *Portugueſe*, whoſe Frontiers lay pretty much expoſed on the Retreat of the Allies towards *Valencia*.

But to return to King *Charles*. His Army having gained the Frontiers of *Valencia* and *Murcia*, he put Garriſons into *Cuenca*, *Requena*, and *Cefuentes*, ſent a Detachment of his Troops to *Arragon*, and diſpoſed the reſt in ſuch a Manner, as to protect thoſe Countries which continued in his Intereſt.

We find the Conduct both of King *Charles*, and the Confederate Generals that took Poſſeſſion of *Madrid*, exceedingly blamed by ſome Writers. Thoſe about him who were for his going thither by the Way of *Arragon*, alledged, That it was not for his Majeſty's Honour to go to *Madrid* in a Hurry, without his Equipage and Retinue. To which, they ſay, Mr. *Stanhope* replied, That King *William*, when he made his Deſcent on *England*, went to *London* in a Hackney, attended with a few Dragoons, otherwiſe he had loſt the Crown. However, the other Councils prevailed, and King *Charles* purſued their Advice, of going by the Way of *Arragon*. When the Earl of *Peterborough* heard of theſe Meaſures, he ſent ſeveral Letters with the unanimous Opinion of his Councils of War, that it would be beſt for his Majeſty to return and go by the Way of *Valencia*: But his Lordſhip's Letters, and the Opinion of the Councils of War, had no Effect; his Majeſty went on to *Saragoſſa*, where the great Expectations of thoſe who adviſed him to that Road, terminated in being complimented with a *Torridore*, or Bull-Feaſt. When they ſaw too late that Danger approached, and that the direct Way from thence to *Madrid* was not practicable, then they altered their Meaſures again, took the Road towards *Valencia*, and ſent to deſire that the Earl of *Peterborough* would meet them with all poſſible Haſte.

The Confederate Army then in *Caſtile* ſeemed at the ſame Time to have been under a ſtrange Reſtraint. The Duke of *Anjou* had no more than 6000 Horſe, and ſcarce any regular Foot on that Side, when the Confederate Army came to *Madrid*; ſo that it was thought they might have forced the Enemy to repaſs the *Ebro*, where they would ſoon have been in Want of Proviſions; or the Confederate Troops might have encamped and fortified themſelves, ſo as to have covered *Madrid*, and laid up Magazines of Corn: But inſtead of doing either of theſe, they marched and encamped at *Guadalaxara*, where in leſs than a Month they were reduced to Want of Proviſions. And it ſeems their Intelligence was not very good, ſince one Morning they were ſurprized to ſee an Army of 20000 Men encamped on the other Side of the River over-againſt them, though they were informed that there was no Enemy within thirty Miles of them; and all this while, the *French* Troops that retired from before *Barcelona* had Time to march round through *France* into *Spain*, ſo that they were ſuperior to the Confederates in Horſe, and well nigh a Match to them in Foot. Perceiving this Advantage, they detached a Body of Horſe to poſſeſs themſelves of *Madrid*, where they killed many of the *Germans* and others of King *Charles*'s Party: Upon this *Segovia*, *Toledo*, *Salamanca*,

Jamaica, and other Places which had ſubmitted to his Catholick Majeſty, revolted again to the Duke of *Anjou*, and our Communication with *Portugal* was cut off.

When Matters came to this Paſs, moſt of the Generals were for fighting, in order to recover that Advantage which had been ſo unhappily loſt; but of forty five General Officers, the Earl of *Peterborough* alone was againſt running ſuch a Riſque: His Lordſhip gave his Opinion in Writing againſt it, and convinced them that it was not ſafe to venture upon the Iſſue of a Battle; ſince in caſe we ſhould be worſted, there could be no Hopes of a Retreat in a Country where we had ſo many Enemies.

This was the State of Affairs when the Earl of *Peterborough* came to *Guadalaxara*. His Lordſhip was for retaking *Alcala*, as a proper Place for covering *Madrid*, and offered to attempt it with 5000 Men, by poſſeſſing himſelf of the Paſs of *Henarez*, and either to fight ſuch of the Enemy as oppoſed him, or to make a good Retreat. His Propoſal was approved by every one; but by the Delays laid in his Way, the Opportunity was loſt, ſo that the Confederate Army was forced to break up, and to march higher into the Country towards *Madrid*, for the Convenience of Proviſions. His Lordſhip's Baggage was taken by the Enemy at *Huet*: The Town offered to make good the Damage, which he was too generous to accept of; yet he impoſed it upon them by way of Puniſhment, to bring in all the Corn of that Diſtrict to the Army; which was ſo conſiderable, that it ſerved them for Bread for ſix Weeks.

The *Engliſh* Admiral *Leak* it ſeems was no leſs ſucceſsful in the *Mediterranean* than the Confederate Generals had been by Land; for after he had relieved *Barcelona*, he attacked *Carthagena*, which ſurrendered to him about the middle of *June*; and on the eighth of *Auguſt* he took *Alicant* by Storm, after which the Caſtle ſurrendered. About the middle of *September* he reduced the Iſlands of *Majorca* and *Ivica* to the Obedience of King *Charles* III. But the Confederate Army being retired out of *Caſtile*, *Carthagena* was retaken by King *Philip*'s Forces the following Winter; and the Duke of *Berwick* alſo retook *Cuenca* on the Confines of *Caſtile*, being a conſiderable Frontier Town in the Poſſeſſion of the Allies, and made the Garriſon, conſiſting of 2000 Men, Priſoners of War.

Whilst Affairs were in this Situation, and Sir *Cloudſly Shovel* and the Earl of *Rivers* remained at *Lisbon* with the Troops abovementioned, Don *Pedro* King of *Portugal* died, *viz*, on the eleventh of *December* 1706, in the fifty-eighth Year of his Age. He had been married three Times: His firſt Wife was the Princeſs *Louiſa de Guſman*, Daughter to the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, who died *Anno* 1666. He had by her the Infanta *Iſabella*, who was declared Heireſs of the Kingdom in 1674, and contracted to the Duke of *Savoy* in 1680, but died unmarried on the twenty-firſt of *October* 1690. His ſecond Wife was *Mary Frances Iſabella* of *Savoy*, Daughter of the Duke of *Nemours*, who had been divorced from his Brother the late King *Alphonſo*. He married her the ſecond of *April* 1668, and ſhe died the ſeventeenth of *December* 1683. His third Wife was *Maria Sophia Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Philip William* Elector *Palatine*. He married her in 1687, and ſhe died in 1699, by whom he had Iſſue, 1. A Son born the thirtieth of *Auguſt* 1688, who died a few Days after. 2. Don *John Francis Joſeph Antonio*, &c. his preſent Majeſty, born the twenty ſecond of *October* 1689, and declared Heir apparent to the Crown by the three Eſtates aſſembled at *Lisbon* the firſt of *December* 1697. 3. *Francis Xavier Antonio Urban*, *May* the twenty-fifth 1691. 4. *Anthony Francis*, born *March* the fifteenth 1695. 5. *Tereſa Frances Joſepha*, born *February* the twenty fourth 1696: She was contracted to the preſent Emperor, but died in 1704. 6. *Emanuel*, born *Auguſt* the third, 1697. And, 7. *Franciſca Xaviera Joſepha*, born *January* the thirtieth, 1699. And beſides theſe he had a natural Daughter, married to the eldeſt Son of the Duke of *Cadaval*, *Anno* 1695.

Peter, and his Death by Don *John*.

As to the Infanta, the Princeſs *Catharine*, Siſter of King *Peter*, born the fourteenth of *November* 1638, ſhe was married, as hath been intimated already, to *Charles* II. King of *England*, by a Treaty concluded the twelfth of *May* 1662; the Marriage being firſt magnificently ſolemnized by Proxy at *Lisbon*, and afterwards conſummated at *Portſmouth* in *England*, whither the King went to meet her. The Queen Regent of *Portugal*, her Mother, gave her as a Dower *Tangier* in *Africa*, and the Iſland of *Bombay* in the *Eaſt-Indies*: The firſt of which was kept for ſome Years at a great Expence; but the Miniſtry of *England* being of Opinion the Advantages they ſhould reap by it would not countervail the Charge of maintaining it, thought fit to demoliſh the Works and leave it, *Anno* 1684; and King *Charles* conferred the Iſland of *Bombay* on the *Engliſh Eaſt-India* Company, which they ſtill retain, it being the Seat of the principal Governor they have in *India*. Beſides theſe Places the Infanta had a Fortune of 3,000,000 of Livres, or 300000 Pounds, according to ſome Writers, but according to others 250,000 Pounds. She continued in *England* about ſeven or eight Years after the Death of King *Charles*, but in 1692 retired to *Portugal*, where ſhe died on the thirty-firſt of *December* 1705.

On the Death of King *Peter*, his eldeſt Son Don *John* ſucceeded to the Crown, as has been intimated already. The *French* had great Hopes on this Event to have withdrawn *Portugal* from the Grand Alliance, and Things were carried ſo far that ſome Acts of Hoſtility paſſed between the Royal Navy of *England* and the Forts in the River of *Lisbon*, which were ordered to fire on the Cruiſers Admiral *Shovel* ſent out of that River. But partly by the Influence of the *Engliſh* Fleet and Forces, and partly by *Engliſh* Treaſure, the *Portugueſe* were kept ſteady to the Allies; they were pleaſed to ſuffer the *Engliſh* to continue the War on that Side at their own Expence.

Earl Rivers's Memorial on his leaving *Lisbon* with the *Britiſh* Troops.

The Men of War and Tranſports being provided with Water and other Neceſſaries to continue their Voyage, the Troops under the Command of the Earl *Rivers* were imbarked and deſigned to ſail the ſecond of *January* for *Alicant*, according to the Deſire of the King of *Spain*; but the Night before the General received Orders from *England* to the contrary. His Excellency held a Council of War, and therein it was reſolved that my Lord ſhould preſent a Memorial to acquaint him with the conditional Orders he had received. His Excellency had accordingly Audience the 4th of his *Portugueſe* Majeſty, who received him with all poſſible Marks of Eſteem, and delivered his Memorial, which the Court of *Portugal* not thinking fit to comply with, Sir *Cloudſly Shovel* and the Earl, with the *Engliſh* Troops abroad, ſailed from *Lisbon* the eighteenth of *January*, and arrived at *Alicant* the eighth of *February*. The Earl of *Rivers* having landed theſe Forces, and left them under the Command of the Earl of *Galway*, returned to *England*, together with the Earl of *Peterborough* and Brigadier *Gorges*, who were embarked in the firſt Deſign, but for Reaſons beſt known to themſelves, declined remaining in

Valencia. King *Charles* also not approving the Conduct of the Generals the Marquis *das Minas* and the Earl of *Galway*, thought fit the latter End of *February* to declare his Resolution of leaving the Army and retiring into *Catalonia*; which he did soon after, taking with him a Regiment of Dragoons and another of *Dutch* Foot. It was reported however that the Army of the Allies still amounted to 30000 Men, though it appears that at the Battle of *Almanza*, which happened but a very little while afterwards, they were not 18000 effective Men. Nor was the Deficiency in Point of Troops their only Misfortune; it is evident there were great Misunderstandings between King *Charles*'s Court and the Generals, which gave but a melancholy Prospect of the following Campaign.

The Marquis *das Minas* and the Earl of *Galway* took the Field the sixth of *April* N. S. and having destroyed some of the Enemy's Magazines on the Frontiers of *Castile*, laid Siege to the Castle of *Villena*. Before the Breach was accessible, they received Intelligence that the Duke of *Berwick* was advanced as far as the Plains of *Almanza*, with seventy-six Squadrons of Horse, and fifty-four Batalions of Foot, and that the Duke of *Orleans* was on the March to join him with seven or eight thousand *French*, while the Allies had no Prospect of being reinforced by the Troops from *Catalonia*. However, it was agreed in a Council of War to march and attack the Enemy, who waited for them in the Plains of *Almanza*, the most advantageous Ground they could have chosen, on Account of their Superiority in Horse: But the Earl of *Galway* having supplied his Want of Cavalry, as he thought, by interlining a Brigade of Foot with each Wing of Horse, ventured to engage the Enemy on the twenty fifth of *April* N. S. about three in the Afternoon. The Earl posted himself at the Head of the *English* Dragoons on the Left, and marched to attack the Enemy's Right Wing of Horse; the *Portuguese* being ordered to take the Charge, as it should come to them gradually from the Left.

Battle of Almanza.

The Enemy observing that the *Portuguese* Cavalry on the Right did not advance with the Left Wing, detach'd some Squadrons to attack them, their Line following slowly to sustain them; but the *Portuguese* did not stay to receive them, for upon the first Charge of the detached Squadrons the whole Right Wing of the *Portuguese* Cavalry run away and abandoned their Infantry, who were most of them either killed or made Prisoners.

Neither of the Generals, the Marquis *das Minas* or the Earl of *Galway*, staid to see the End of the Engagement, but left their Men to the Mercy of the Enemy. The Colonels *Dormer*, *Roper*, *Lawrence*, *Green*, and *de Loche*, were killed at the Head of their Squadrons, after having behaved with the utmost Gallantry; and Colonel *Pierce*, and Mr. *Hara*, Son to the Lord *Tyrawley*, were wounded. Of the Foot, the Colonels *Hamilton*, *Woollet*, and *Neal*, who commanded Regiments, were killed, and the Lord *Mark Kerr* and Colonel *Clayton* wounded.

The Day after the Battle the Duke of *Orleans* joined the Duke of *Berwick* with a Reinforcement of eight or ten thousand Men; and the Enemy having taken *Xativa*, *Alcyra*, and some other Places which the Allies had garrisoned on the Frontiers of *Valencia*, the Cities of *Saragossa* and *Valencia*, with the rest of the Towns in *Arragon* and *Valencia*, submitted to the Conquerors, were obliged to pay large Sums for their Revolt, deprived of their Privileges, disarmed and treated in a very barbarous Manner, and the Town of *Xativa* in particular, was burnt and razed to the Ground, and many of the Inhabitants massacred for their Disaffection to King *Philip*. The *Spanish* Generals on the Side of *Portugal* took *Serpa* and *Moura* this Campaign, and nothing remaining in the Hands of the Allies but *Alicant* and *Denia* in *Valencia*, the Duke of *Orleans* marched to the Frontiers of *Catalonia*, where the Confederate Generals having thrown their Troops into the strong Towns, burnt the Country that the Enemy might find no Subsistance. The Campaign ended on the Side of *Catalonia* with the taking of *Lerida* by the Duke of *Orleans*; and on the Frontiers of *Portugal* King *Philip*'s Forces took *Cividad Rodrigo* by Storm. And the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Noailles* had probably made an entire Conquest of *Catalonia*, if they had not been obliged to detach Part of their Troops to *France* upon the Duke of *Savoy*'s laying Siege to *Toulon*.

Lerida taken by the D. of *Orleans*.

The following Year, 1708, the Duke of *Orleans* made himself Master of *Tortosa*, in *Catalonia*, and of *Denia* in *Valencia*. But the Imperialists having sent Count *Staremberg* to *Spain* from *Italy* with a Reinforcement of eight or ten thousand Men, the Forces of *France* and King *Philip* were content to be upon the Defensive afterwards in that Country. With these Forces Sir *John Leake*, the *English* Admiral, convoyed the Queen of *Spain*, the late Princess of *Wolfembuttle*, from *Vado* in *Italy* to *Catalonia*, where the Marriage was consummated between her and King *Charles*. After which Sir *John Leake* taking some Land Forces on Board, reduced the Island of *Sardinia* to the Obedience of King *Charles*: And before the End of *September* the Island of *Minorca*, with the fine Harbour of *Port-Mahon*, surrendered to that Admiral and General *Stanhope*. In the mean time a Contract of Marriage was made between the King of *Portugal* and the Archdutchess *Mary Anne* of *Austria*, second Sister to the Emperor and King *Charles*; and her Majesty arriving from *Holland* at *Spithead* the twenty fourth of *September*, was convoyed to *Lisbon* by Admiral *Byng*, where she arrived the sixteenth of *October*, N. S. And though King *Charles*'s Forces as well as the King of *Portugal*'s had been considerably recruited and augmented this Campaign, yet those Courts were so taken up with the Preparations for solemnizing these Marriages, and Rejoicings afterwards, that the military Operations in these Countries seemed to be at a Stand.

D. of *Orleans* retires.

K. *Charles* goes on board the Fleet at *Lisbon*.

The Campaign of 1709 begun unfortunately for the Allies on the Side of *Portugal*: For the *Portuguese* and *Spanish* Armies being encamped on the Banks of the River *Caya* opposite to each other, and the Marquis *de Bay* making a Motion towards *Campo Mayor*, the *Portuguese* Generals resolved to attack him, contrary to the Opinion of the Earl of *Galway*. But the *Spanish* Cavalry no sooner charged the *Portuguese* Horse but they fled and abandoned their Foot, as they had done at the Battle of *Almanza*. Brigadier *Pierce*'s *English* Brigade was ordered to march and favour the Retreat of the *Portuguese* Foot. The *Portuguese* Generals however were so far from supporting them, that they quitted the Field, leaving this fine Brigade to be surrounded by the Enemy's whole Army, and made Prisoners, together with Major General *Sankey*, the Earl of *Barrymore*, and Brigadier *Pierce* himself. The Earl of *Galway* had a Horse shot under him, but he made a Shift to escape out of the Field with the *Portuguese* Generals, as he had done at *Almanza*. The Marquis *de Bay* afterwards pursued the

Portu-

Portuguese Army; but they retreated beyond *Elvas*.

Balaguer taken by King Charles.

In *Catalonia* King *Charles*'s Army being superior to that of his Rival's, passed the *Segra*, and made themselves Masters of *Balaguer*. There happened no farther Action in *Spain* or *Portugal* this Year, unless the Siege of the Castle of *Alicant*, which continued, with some Intermissions, from the Time the Town was taken last Year, till the middle of *April* 1709. The *Spaniards* finding it impossible to reduce it any other Way, were resolved to blow it up by a great Mine, in which they lodged 12000 Barrels of Powder. They summoned the Governor and acquainted him with his Danger, and proposed that two of his Officers should come out and view the Mine, which they did accordingly. It was resolved not to surrender, and the *French* sprang their Mine, which made an incredible Noise, but had no great Effect upon the Castle, only the Governor Major General *Richards*, and Colonel *Syburgh*, were unfortunately buried in the Ruins, with several other Officers. On the fifteenth of *April* Sir *George Byng* and Major General *Stanhope* appeared before *Alicant* with a Squadron of Men of War and 4000 Land-men on Board; but the *Spanish* Army being reinforced, and the Coast very tempestuous, it was not thought advisable to land, and they contented themselves with sending a Flag of Truce on Shore, and capitulating to withdraw the Garrison from the Castle and deliver it up, which the *Spaniards* agreed to.

Alicant surrendred by the English.

1710. A further Reinforcement of Troops being sent from *Italy* to *Catalonia* in the Year 1710, King *Charles* advanced with his Army to attack King *Philip*, who was then also at the Head of his Troops in *Arragon*; and coming up with the Enemy on the twenty-seventh of *July* in the Evening near *Almenara*, he gained a considerable Advantage over King *Philip*'s Horse, but the Foot retired by Favour of the Night.

Battle of Almenara.

King *Philip* after this Defeat retired under the Cannon of *Lerida*, where not being able to subsist his Army, he retreated to *Saragossa*, and being pursued thither by King *Charles*, he could not avoid coming to an Engagement. At break of Day both Armies play'd their Cannon; and at twelve o' Clock at Noon our Signal of Battle was made, and our whole Army being drawn up in two Lines, marched at once to attack the Enemy in full Front, except four Battalions which General *Stanhope* had interlined with the Horse, whom he ordered to advance and take Post on the Brow of the Hill, by which Means he gained Time for his Wing of Horse to form after they were got up. Our Left Wing from their Situation coming first to the Enemy begun the Battle, which increased towards the Center, and so continued to the Right till the whole was ingaged. But notwithstanding a Disposition so properly made, and the Goodness of our Troops, the Enemies with their superior Numbers and Advantage of Ground seemed at first to have the better of the Day, which probably they would have maintained if all our Generals commanding on the Left had not seasonably led on fresh Troops to support, and rally such as they saw pushed or disordered, by which the Advantage soon began to incline to the Arms of his Catholick Majesty. While the Affair was obstinately disputed on the Left, our Foot being deeply engaged, made a great Slaughter of the Enemy: And at the same Time their Left Wing of Horse making little Resistance, within the Space of two Hours we gained a compleat and glorious Victory. We took all their Cannon and most of their Colours; so that out of forty Battalions not above 4000 escaped, and of sixty Squadrons about the like Number; all the rest being killed or taken Prisoners. The King during the whole Action gave the necessary Orders, and with his Royal Presence continued to encourage the Troops. His Majesty entered the Town of *Saragossa* the same Night, where he was received with the Acclamations of the People, and all imaginable Expressions of Joy. The same Night the Citadel of *Saragossa* capitulated, and the Garrison surrendered themselves Prisoners of War.

Battle of Saragossa.

This Victory cost the Allies 2000 Men, and the Enemy at least 3000, as was given out, besides five or six thousand that were made Prisoners. The Allies also took seventy-two Colours and Standards, two and twenty Pieces of Cannon, and Part of the Enemy's Baggage. King *Philip* made all the Haste he could to *Madrid*, where he arrived the twenty-fourth of *August*; and notwithstanding this Misfortune, the *Castilians* gave him still fresh Proofs of their Loyalty and Affection. But apprehending the Allies would bend their March that Way, he thought fit to send the Queen and the Prince of the *Asturia's* to *Valladolid*, whither all the Grandees and Officers of State attended them, though he offered to dispense with their Attendance.

The Affection of the Castilians for King Philip.

After the Battle of *Saragossa*, the *Portuguese* General the Count *de Villaverde* was ordered to take the Field, which he did, and in his March wrote to the Army of his Catholick Majesty that he would move to join them by the Way of *Alcala* and *Truxillo*. He marched first to *Barcarota*, and then to *Xeres de los Cavelleros*, the last of which Places being of no Defence he possessed himself of it; but without attempting any thing further retired to the Frontiers of *Portugal*. At the same Time came Letters from the Counts of *Assumar* and *Attalaya*, soliciting that the *Portuguese* Army might advance to the Bridge of *Almaraz*. And these Letters were accompanied by others from General *Stanhope* to the Earl of *Galway*, pressing to be joined by him at *Almaraz*, where he would be with 4000 Horse. Upon the Arrival of these Sollicitations, all the Ministers met together, and agreed to make their joint Application to the King, that he would be pleased forthwith to cause his Army to march and join that of his Catholick Majesty. But the Ministers of this Court answered them, that the Junction propos'd was utterly impracticable, not only because of the Perplexity given them by the Enemies 4000 Horse on the Frontiers, but likewise because the *Portuguese* Cavalry was in no Condition for Service, wanting all Necessaries. Another Letter came from General *Stanhope*. Whereupon the Ministers of the Allies renewed their Sollicitations; and to procure the speedier Answer, went all in a Body to the Secretary of State, and had a Conference with him and other of the *Portuguese* Ministers; but notwithstanding all the Arguments they could use, the *Portuguese* Ministry refused absolutely to comply with their Desires.

They refuse to join King Charles

King *Charles* however having staid some Time at *Saragossa* to refresh his Troops, set out for *Madrid*, and on the twentieth of *September* arrived in the Neighbourhood of *Alcalade Henares*, and the next Day General *Stanhope*, with a Detachment of the Army, took Possession of *Madrid*. On the twenty eighth King *Charles* made his triumphant Entry into that City, and having performed his Devotions at the Church of *Nuestra Signora d'Atocha*, his Majesty took up his Quarters at a Country-Seat belonging to the *Conde d'Aguilar*. The City of *Madrid* having agreed to furnish his Majesty with a Subsidy of 40000 Crowns a Month for the Subsistence of his Army, a Detachment was sent to take Possession

The Allies take Possession of Madrid.

of

of *Toledo*, which lying upon the *Tagus*, was looked upon as an advantageous Post for facilitating the intended Conjunction with the *Portugueſe*.

In the mean time King *Philip* having ſent a Detachment of his Troops to take Poſſeſſion of *Almaraz*, and thereby rendered the Conjunction of the *Portugueſe* and the Confederates impracticable, General *Stanhope* rejoined the Confederate Army that had been employed in fortifying *Toledo*, deſigning to have taken up Winter Quarters in *Caſtile*; but King *Philip*'s Army being reinforced from all Parts, and become ſuperior to that of the Allies, it was thought adviſable to retreat to *Arragon*; and King *Charles* taking with him a Regiment of Dragoons and another of Foot, marched away to *Barcelona*, in order to obſerve the Motions of the *French* on the Side of *Rouſſillon*. His Majeſty arrived at *Barcelona* the ſixteenth of *December*, and a few Days after he underſtood that the Duke *de Noailles* had laid Siege to *Gironne*.

King Charles retiresagain to *Barcelona*.

The Army of the Allies in their March from *Caſtile* towards *Arragon*, divided themſelves into two Bodies, the better to ſubſiſt the Troops in their March, as is generally ſaid; but others impute it to *Stanhope*'s Pride, who did not care to be commanded by *Staremberg*. The eighth Inſtant, General *Stanhope* with the *Britiſh* Troops, conſiſting of eight Battalions and as many Squadrons, halted at *Brihuega*, where he was ſurpriz'd the ninth by King *Philip*'s Army, which ſurrounded the Place: The *Engliſh* defended themſelves with great Obſtinacy till the tenth in the Morning, and then having ſpent all their Ammunition, were forced to ſurrender Priſoners of War.

Battle of Brihuega.

Count *Staremberg* having Advice of the Diſtreſs the *Britiſh* Troops were in at *Brihuega*, marched to their Relief; but was met by King *Philip* and the Duke of *Vendoſme* at *Villa Viciosa*, about a League from *Brihuega*, the tenth Inſtant in the Evening, whereupon a Battle was fought, and General *Staremberg* gave ſufficient Demonſtration of his Military Skill, by defeating the *Spaniards* when he was not half the Number. However, underſtanding that the *Britiſh* Troops in *Brihuega* were made Priſoners of War that Morning before, and not being in a Condition with the ſmall Body of Troops he had with him to proſecute his Victory, he continued his March towards *Arragon*, and having withdrawn the Confederate Troops out of the Garriſons in that Kingdom, he marched afterwards into *Catalonia*, and arrived at *Barcelona* the Beginning of *February*, with about 11000 effective Men. A little after, Advice came that *Gironne* had ſurrendered to the Duke of *Noailles*; and the Garriſon Count *Staremberg* had left in *Balaguer*, conſiſting of two Battalions and an hundred Horſe, abandoned that Place alſo upon the Approach of the Enemy, and retired to *Barcelona*; ſo that King *Charles*, who a little before was Maſter of the greateſt Part of the Kingdom of *Spain*, had now no more in his Poſſeſſion than the Province of *Catalonia*, and that not entire.

Gironne ſurrendered to the *French* and *Balaguer*.

This was the laſt conſiderable Action that happened in *Spain* during the late War; for the Duke of *Savoy*, (now King of *Sardinia*) having ſome Diſputes with the Emperor concerning the Extent of his Dominions in *Italy*, refuſed to make any Diverſion on that Side: The States General never recruited or re-eſtabliſhed the Troops they had agreed to maintain in *Spain* and *Portugal* in Conjunction with *Britain*; and neither the Imperialiſts or *Portugueſe* had any Troops ſcarce on Foot in either of thoſe Kingdoms, but what were maintained by the Queen of *England*; ſo that the War was become an inſupportable Burden to *Great Britain*, and the fixing King *Charles* upon the *Spaniſh* Throne in theſe Circumſtances, altogether impracticable. Add to this, that King *Charles* was ſoon after elected Emperor, which very much altered the State of Affairs; for it is evident from the Grand Alliance, and all our Treaties with the late Emperors on this Subject, that it never was intended the Empire and *Spain* ſhould be united under one Head. Upon all theſe Conſiderations therefore, the Queen of *England* was induced to liſten to Propoſals of Peace made her by the *French* King, and to enter into a Treaty for the Evacuation of *Catalonia* and the reſt of *Spain*.

By the Treaty of Peace concluded at *Utrecht* the thirty-firſt of *March* O. S. or the eleventh of *April* N. S. 1713, between the Allies and *France*, the moſt material Articles relating to *Portugal* were, That the *French* King ſhould relinquiſh both Sides of the River of *Amazons* in *South America* to his *Portugueſe* Majeſty, and quit all Claim to the Navigation of the ſaid River, and never ſuffer any *French* Miſſionaries to come into the ſaid Territories, or any other belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*; and the Queen of *Great Britain* was by both Parties accepted as Guarantee of the ſaid Articles. And by another Treaty made between *Spain* and *Portugal* in *February* 1714-15, the *Spaniards* and *Portugueſe* mutually agreed to relinquiſh all Places that had been taken by the Forces on either Side during the War; but as to Prizes, each Party was to remain in Poſſeſſion of what they had reſpectively acquired; which Treaty was in like Manner guaranted by the Crown of *Great Britain*.

1713 Peace of Utrecht.

1714

The War between the Confederates and the *French* was ſcarce ended, when another was begun between the *Turks* and *Venetians*, in which the latter loſt the *Morea*. The *Portugueſe* aſſiſted the Pope and the *Venetians* with a Squadron of Men of War, and the *Spaniards* promiſed another Squadron, but employed them afterwards in the Reduction of *Sardinia*; ſo that the *Turks* were Maſters at Sea during the whole Courſe of the War, and were very near making themſelves Maſters of the Iſland of *Corfu*; but the Emperor gaining two conſiderable Victories over the Infidels by Land, and taking *Temeſwaer* and *Belgrade*, the *Turks* were glad to accept of Peace, being permitted however to retain their Conqueſt in the *Morea*, whereby the *Venetians* loſt great Part of their Territories on the *Terra Firma*, while the Imperialiſts kept Poſſeſſion of their Conqueſts, which they had extended upwards of 100 Miles into the Enemies Country.

1715 The *Turks* attack the *Venetians*.

The Readineſs the *Portugueſe* had ſhewn in reinforcing the *Venetian* Fleet, and defending the Coaſts of *Italy* in the late War with the *Turks*, probably induced his Holineſs to oblige his *Portugueſe* Majeſty in dividing the Archbiſhoprick of *Liſbon*, and erecting the Chapel Royal into a Patriarchal and Metropolitical Church; ever ſince which the City of *Liſbon* has been divided into two grand Diſtricts, the one called *Eaſt*, and the other *Weſt Liſbon*.

A Pa

Don *Emanuel*, Brother to the King of *Portugal*, having privately withdrawn himſelf from that Court about this Time, went on Board a Ship and ſailed to *Holland*. He afterwards entered into the Emperor's Service againſt the *Turks*; nor did he return again to *Liſbon* till the Year 1726. His *Portugueſe* Majeſty ſo ſoon as he had Notice that Don *Manuel* was gone, prevailed on the Captain of an *Engliſh* Man of War to

Don and a Kn Boo kno

to purſue the Ship he was in; but the Veſſel being two Days Sail before the *Engliſh* Captain, he was obliged to return back without him. The Reaſon of this Prince's leaving the Court ſo abruptly, was ſaid to be to prevent his being forc'd to enter into Orders; for it was uſual formerly, both in the Courts of *Spain* and *Portugal*, to procure ſome eccleſiaſtical Preferment for the Princes of the Blood, whereby they were eaſily maintained at the Charge of the Church, and rendered in a great Meaſure incapable of forming Deſigns againſt the State.

Academies of Sciences eſtabliſhed

Portugal now remaining in a profound Peace, the King, in Imitation of *France* and other polite Nations, thought fit to eſtabliſh Academies for the Improvement of Arts and Sciences, having a particular Regard to Hiſtory, in which that People have made great Advances of late Years, though the Court of Inquiſition, which dreads nothing more than the reſcuing the Nation from Ignorance and Superſtition, has been a great Obſtacle in their Way: Truth is an Hereſy which thoſe pious Fathers ever proſecute with the greateſt Rage.

1722. Engliſh Merchants condemned for exporting Gold.

I don't meet with any thing elſe remarkable in *Portugal* till the Year 1722, unleſs it be the Arrival of their Fleets from *India* and *Brazil* annually, with vaſt Treaſures of Gold and Silver on Board, beſides other rich Merchandizes; but this Year I find two *Britiſh* Merchants, Mr. *Wingfield* and Mr. *Roberts*, proſecuted at *Lisbon*, and condemned to die for exporting Gold to *England*, which it ſeems is Capital by the Laws of *Portugal*: However, upon the Interpoſition of Mr. *Worſely*, the *Britiſh* Envoy, and the Court of *Great Britain*, they were pardoned, and their Effects reſtored them. But ſince it is ſo very hazardous to export Gold from *Portugal* to *England*, it is ſomething ſtrange that we meet with ſo much *Portugueſe* Gold here as we do.

1723. Earthquake.

In the Month of *December* 1723, there happened a terrible Earthquake in the Province or Kingdom of *Algarves*, which though it laſted but three Minutes, did incredible Miſchief: They relate, that ſeveral Towns were demoliſhed, and a River entirely ſwallowed up for ſome Hours by the gaping of the Earth.

1724. A Company for ſupplying Brazil with Slaves

A Company was erected in *Portugal* in the Year 1724, compoſed of Men of Quality and Fortunes, for ſupplying their Settlements in *Brazil* with Negroes; to whom his Majeſty granted the Space of 200 Miles and upwards on the Coaſt of *Africa*, for the purchaſing of Slaves, prohibiting the *Portugueſe*, or any other Nation, to trade within thoſe Limits.

The ſame Year Don *Miguel* and Don *Joſeph*, two baſe Sons of his late *Portugueſe* Majeſty, whom he had naturalized, croſſing the River of *Lisbon* with their Attendants in a Boat, were overſet by a ſudden Guſt of Wind: Don *Joſeph* had the good Fortune to ſave himſelf by getting upon the Keel, but his Brother and moſt of the Servants were drowned.

A great Storm.

In the ſame River on the nineteenth of *November* this Year, aroſe ſuch a violent Storm about ſix in the Evening, that before eight, ſixty Ships were driven on Shore, of which twenty were rendered unfit for the Sea; all the Wharfs of *Lisbon* were damaged by the Storm, and the Cuſtom-Houſe Key, with the Goods upon it, was waſhed away: The Houſes of *Lisbon* ſuffered very much, and moſt of the Churches loſt their Steeples or Towers: The Havock in the neighbouring Country was inexpreſſible; many Houſes were blown down, and almoſt all the Trees that ſtood expoſed to the Wind torn up by the Roots.

1725. Priſoners of the Inquiſition allowed Council.

The Court of *Rome*, to the Surprize of the Inquiſitors in *Portugal*, was about this Time pleaſed to order, that the Priſoners in the Inquiſition ſhould be allowed Council and Solicitors to defend them, as in other Courts; whereupon thoſe Fathers had the Aſſurance to libel his Holineſs moſt unmercifully.

A Diſpute of another Nature happened about the ſame Time, between the Courts of *France* and *Lisbon*. It ſeems the Abbot *de Livry*, the *French* Ambaſſador at *Lisbon*, inſiſted that the Secretary of State, who is uſually Prime Miniſter in that Kingdom, ſhould pay his Excellency the firſt Viſit; which the Secretary refuſing to comply with, the Ambaſſador was ordered to leave *Lisbon*, without having an Audience of his *Portugueſe* Majeſty.

Double Marriage between *Spain* and *Portugal*

In *December* 1727, a Contract of Marriage was ſigned between Don *Joſeph*, Prince of *Brazil*, and the eldeſt Infanta of *Spain*, *Donna Maria Anna Victoria*, (formerly contracted to *Lewis* XV of *France*;) and a few Days after another Contract of Marriage was concluded between Don *Ferdinand*, Prince of the *Aſturias*, and Donna *Maria*, Infanta of *Portugal*; and on the twenty-ſeventh of *January* following the Ceremony of the Eſpouſals of the laſt Couple was performed at *Madrid*, the King of *Spain* repreſenting the Prince of *Brazil* here, as the King of *Portugal* did the Prince of the *Aſturias* in the other that was celebrated at *Lisbon* the ſixth of the ſame Month.

1728. Diſputes between the Courts of *Rome* and *Portugal*.

About the ſame Time there aroſe warm Diſputes between the Courts of *Rome* and *Portugal*, on the Pope's refuſing to give a Cap to Monſieur *Bichi*, who had reſided ſome Time as a Nuncio in *Portugal*, and ſhewn more Complaiſance for his *Portugueſe* Majeſty than for his Holineſs; and the Contention grew ſo hot at length, that it was expected the King of *Portugal* would have thrown off the Pope's Supremacy; for he actually prohibited all the Clergy of his Dominions, to apply any more to the Datary of *Rome* for their Bulls of Confirmation, *&c.* The Patriarch of *Lisbon* gave Diſpenſations for Marriages, and final Judgment in all eccleſiaſtical Cauſes which were brought before him by way of Appeal. The King ſet many of the Priſoners in the Inquiſition at Liberty, and prohibited the Inquiſitors to proceed in any Cauſe without the Concurrence of Commiſſioners appointed by his Majeſty: Which Steps ſo alarmed the Court of *Rome*, that I am informed Means have been found to ſoften his *Portugueſe* Majeſty's Reſentment, and prevent his throwing off the Pope's Supremacy.

1729. The Double Marriages ſolemnized in Perſon.

About the middle of *January* 1728-9, the Exchange of the contracted Princeſſes above-named being agreed on, the King and Queen of *Spain*, with the Royal Family and a vaſt Retinue, came to *Badajox*, as the King and Queen of *Portugal*, with their Court, did to *Elvas*. Theſe Cities are on the Confines of the two Kingdoms, which are ſeparated by the little River *Caya*, that runs from North to South, and falls into the *Guadiana* near *Badajox*. A Building was erected on the *Caya*, having one large Door on the Side of *Spain*, and another on the Side of *Portugal*. At one and the ſame Inſtant the King of *Spain* entered the Eaſtern Door, as the King of *Portugal* did that on the Weſt, with their reſpective Royal Families. After reciprocal Compliments, and hearing the Articles of both Marriages read, the King of *Portugal* and his Party took the Princeſs of *Brazil*, and returned to *Elvas*, where the Prince and Princeſs of *Brazil* ſolemnized their Marriage in Perſon the ſame Evening. The King of *Spain* alſo having received the Prince of the *Aſturias* of her

Father, returned to *Badajox*, where the Prince and Princeſs of *Aſturias* celebrated their Marriage alſo in Perſon that Evening.

The two Kings, their Queens, the Princes and Princeſſes, had two Interviews afterwards at the Houſe of Exchange, *viz.* on the twenty-third and twenty-fifth of *January*, at the laſt of which they took Leave of each other, and returned to their reſpective Capitals, where Rejoicings were made ſuitable to the Occaſion. At the Return of the King and Royal Family to *Lisbon*, all the Streets through which they paſſed were hung with Tapeſtry, and there were no leſs than twenty Triumphal Arches erected there, five of which were prepared at the Expence of the *Engliſh*, *French*, *Dutch* and *Hamburgh* Merchants, the other fifteen being erected at the Charges of the ſeveral Companies of Tradeſmen, and the King's Officers. That of the *Engliſh* was far the moſt magnificent, in which they laid out above 2000 Pounds Sterling. The Coaches, moſt of which belonged to the Nobility, were eighty-four in Number, the greateſt Part of them covered with embroidered Velvet, trimmed with Gold Fringe; and one of them was of maſſy Silver, adorned with Jewels. The Rejoicings continued three Days ſucceſſively; and every Evening Fireworks were play'd off, and the Houſes illuminated; and ſome Days after the People were entertained with a Bull-Feaſt. And here we ſhall have an Opportunity of giving ſome Account of the Royal Family of *Portugal*.

The preſent Royal Family.

His preſent Majeſty, King *John* V, was born the twenty-ſecond of *October* 1689, and ſucceeded his Father in *January* 1707. He married *Mary Anne* of *Auſtria*, the Daughter of the late Emperor *Leopold*, and Siſter of the preſent Emperor *Charles*, on the twenty-ſeventh of *October* 1708; by whom he had Iſſue, 1. *Mary Magdalen Joſepha Tereſa Barba*, born the fourth of *December* 1711, and married to the Prince of *Aſturias* as above related. 2. Don *Pedro*, born the nineteenth of *October* 1712, who died the twenty-ninth of *October* 1714. 3. Don *Joſeph Pedro John Lewis*, the preſent Prince of *Brazil*, born the ninth of *June* 1715, and married to the Infanta of *Spain Anno* 1729, as above. 4. Don *Carlos*, born the ſecond of *May* 1716. 5. Don———born the fifth of *July* 1717. 6. Don *Alexander*, born *Anno* 1724, who died in 1728: And another Infanta ſtill living, the Time of whoſe Birth I do not meet with. His *Portugueſe* Majeſty has ſtill three Brothers living, *viz.* Don *Antonio*, Don *Franciſco* and Don *Emanuel*, the laſt of whom loſt the King's Favour on his retiring out of the Kingdom without his Conſent, as has been related above. Notwithſtanding which, he ventured to leave the Court again, this preſent Year, 1736.

CHAP. II.

Of the Civil and Eccleſiaſtical Government of Portugal.

The Court of *Portugal* as well as *Spain* became abſolute by purchaſing the leading Men in the Cortes, or three Eſtates.

THE King of *Portugal*, as well as the King of *Spain*, is looked upon to be an abſolute Prince. The Cortes or three Eſtates have long ſince ſold their Part in the Legiſlature to the Crown, and only ſerve to confirm or record ſuch Acts of States as the Court reſolves upon, to declare the next Heir to the Crown when the King is pleaſed to nominate him, or to ratify Treaties with foreign Princes who ſtill eſteem their Conſent of any Weight. The Courts of *Spain* and *Portugal* for many Years have kept their People in Subjection by purchaſing their Leaders; which was the Reaſon that tho' the Revenues of each Crown were very conſiderable, the State in both Nations was very poor. But ſince King *Philip* the Fifth aſcended the Throne of *Spain*, and the Court has been governed by *French* Councils, the Salaries of Abundance of Officers, and a Multitude of Penſions, have been ſtruck off; and that Prince, in Imitation of his Grandfather *Lewis* XIV, has of late Years tyrannized over the Nobility as well as the Commons by the Aſſiſtance of a ſtanding Army, and entirely deprived every Province in that Kingdom of their Liberties and Privileges. This Reformation, as it is ſtiled in the Court of *Spain*, has not yet been imitated in that of *Portugal*; great Part of the Revenues of this Crown are ſtill diſtributed among the Nobility and Grandees, which renders the Government as well as the People exceeding poor and neceſſitous, though the King, conſidered in his private Capacity, may be very rich.

A rich Court, but a poor State.

The publick Revenues.

Cuſtoms very high.

The Cuſtoms and Duties on Goods exported and imported, are a conſiderable Part of the publick Revenues, and are uſually farmed out by the Crown from three Years to three Years. Theſe Duties are very high in *Portugal*, and could not be advanced without the utter Ruin of the People. Foreign Merchandizes pay twenty-three *per Cent.* on Importation, and Fiſh from *Newfoundland* twenty-five *per Cent.* Fiſh taken in the neighbouring Seas and Rivers pay forty-ſeven *per Cent.* and the Tax upon Lands and Cattle that are ſold is ten *per Cent.* The Duty on Snuff alone amounts to 5000 Crowns. Beſides the King draws a conſiderable Revenue from the ſeveral Orders of Knighthood, of which he is Grand Maſter. And the Pope, in Conſideration of the large Sums he draws out of this Kingdom on other Accounts, gives the King the Money ariſing by ſeveral Bulls from the Holy See, as thoſe for granting Indulgences, Licenſes to eat Fleſh at Times prohibited, *&c.* And it is computed that the Royal Revenues, clear of all Penſions and Salaries, may amount to 3,500,000 Crowns. The Nobility are not taxed but upon extraordinary Emergencies, and then not very high. From all which it may very well be preſumed, that the *Portugueſe* are not able to raiſe great Fleets and Armies: If they have five and twenty Men of War of the Line, they are ſcarce able to man or pay them, and a Squadron of *Engliſh* or *Dutch* of half the Number would not be afraid to engage them. They ſerve chiefly for Convoys to their *Brazil* Fleets, and are very often uſed as Merchant Ships to import Goods or Treaſure from thence. As to their Troops on Shore, that ſerve to garriſon their wretched Frontier Towns, they may amount to fourteen or fifteen thouſand Men; but ſuch a miſerable Militia ſure were never ſeen, half ſtarved and not half cloathed: In the late War you might ſee them begging an Alms of a common Soldier belonging to their Confederates the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*; and yet ſo intolerably proud were theſe poor deſpicable

Creatures

Creatures, that they inſiſted on taking the Right Hand of the *Engliſh*, and commanding their Generals: Such bleſſed Confederates they did prove in the late War; nor were the *Spaniards* much better Troops, till a *French* Prince aſcended the Throne; but they have of late been ſo well diſciplin'd, clothed and paid, that they are not only much ſuperior to thoſe of *Portugal*, but perhaps at preſent equal to any Soldiers in *Europe*. It ſeems therefore to be the Intereſt of *Portugal* always to remain in Peace with *Spain*. Should the *French* or the maritime Powers engage in their Behalf, it might be difficult to prevent their being made a Province to *Spain* again, in caſe a War ſhould break out between thoſe two Crowns; the *Spaniards* being ſo much improved of late Years, and the *Portugueſe* ſo much ſunk in their Courage, Diſcipline, and Conduct. And they will certainly avoid falling out with the *French* and the Maritime Powers, who might any of them cut off their Communication with *Brazil*, *Africa*, and the *Indies*, from whence their Gold and other rich Merchandizes are imported. On the other hand, it can never be to the Advantage of *England*, *France*, or the States General to be in a State of War either with *Spain* or *Portugal*, which take off ſo much of the Manufactures of their reſpective Countries. It is indeed the Intereſt of each of theſe Powers that the other ſhould be in no good Terms with *Spain* and *Portugal*, for what the one loſes in this Commerce, the other gains. If the *Engliſh* do not ſerve the *Spaniards* and *Portugueſe* with Woollen Manufactures, the *Dutch* and *French* will, though perhaps much worſe, or at a dearer Rate; nay, theſe Nations will buy our Goods, and get a larger Gain by ſelling them to *Spain* and *Portugal*, and their *American* Plantations and Settlements, than we do by the firſt Sale of them. But tho' it ſeems neceſſary that we ſhould be cautious not to quarrel with theſe two Nations, yet it is alſo our Intereſt to prevent the Weaker of them from being ſwallowed up by the Greater, as we are thought to have done lately by ſending our Fleet into their Seas.

Intereſt of Portugal to live at Peace with all Nations

The Intereſt of the Maritime Powers and the Inability of both at Peace with Spain and Portugal.

It ought to be conſidered further, that the *French* having of late taken Poſſeſſion of *Florida*, to which they have given the Name of *Louiſiana*, and being before Maſters of *Canada* or *New France*, they now lie on the Back of all our *American* Plantations and Settlements from *Carolina* in the South to *Nova Scotia* on the North, and by the Aſſiſtance of the *Spaniards* and the *Indians*, their Friends, may, and probably will, in time deprive us of our Settlements there, and ruin our Plantation Trade, if we have not our Eyes about us.

Danger to Britain from the Union of the French and Spaniards in America.

The great Officers of State being the ſame as in *Spain*, I ſhall not trouble the Reader with a tedious Account of them; or of the ſeveral Degrees of Nobility, in which the Kingdom of *Portugal* exactly reſembles that of *Spain*.

They have ſeveral Councils or Courts eſtabliſhed for ſeveral Branches of Buſineſs; as the Council of State, which takes Cognizance of all Matters foreign and domeſtic which relate to the State. 2. The Council called the *Deſembargo de Paco*, which receives Appeals from all inferior Courts, and has alſo a Power of enacting, repealing, and altering the Laws. 3. The Court of Treaſury, or *Da Fazenda*. 4. The Council for foreign Affairs, which determines all Matters relating to the foreign Plantations. 5. The Council of War, which takes Cognizance of all military Affairs and Operations by Sea or Land. 6. The *Caſa dos Contos*, which Court has the Juriſdiction of all Officers and others concerned in collecting or farming the publick Revenues. Beſides theſe they have two ſupreme Courts for Civil Affairs, the one eſtabliſhed at *Lisbon* and the other at *Porto*. Though as the Kingdom is divided into twenty-four *Comarca's* or Diſtricts, each *Comarca* has its peculiar Judges for civil and criminal Cauſes, and every conſiderable Town its Regidor, Corregidor, or Alcaid, as in *Spain*. But the Viceroy or Governor of each Province preſides in all the Courts within his Juriſdiction, and is the ſupreme Civil as well in Military Officer there. There is alſo a Viceroy of *Goa* in the *Eaſt-Indies*, and another of *Brazil* in *America*, who are inveſted with almoſt Regal Power.

Eccleſiaſtical Government.

The Eccleſiaſtical Government here, does not differ much from that of other *Roman Catholick* Countries. The Kings of *Portugal*, by a Grant of the Popes, nominate to all Archbiſhopricks and Biſhopricks; of which there are in *Portugal* three Archbiſhopricks and ten Biſhopricks, as appears by the Table at the End of this Chapter.

Inquiſition

The Inquiſition reigns here, it muſt be confeſſed, with a more uncontroulable Power than in any other Kingdom or State. It was firſt inſtituted in the Thirteenth Century, for ſuppreſſing the Hereſy of the *Vaudois* and *Albigenſes*, as it was called; and was received in *Portugal* for the ſame End about the Year 1523, in the Reign of King *John* III. It is called, *The Holy Office*, and *The Holy Houſe*; and conſiſts of an Inquiſitor-General, the ſupreme Council, Inquiſitors, Aſſeſſors, Qualificators, a Secretary, an Advocate-Fiſcal, a Treaſurer, Familiars, and Goalers.

All Men ſubject to it.

The Inquiſitor-General is named by the King, and confirmed by the Pope, acting as his Delegate: His Juriſdiction is ſo abſolute and extenſive, that no Subject is exempted from it: The Members of the ſupreme Court or Council are all named by him, but approved by the King before they can act, and are uſually ſecular Prieſts; and their Aſſeſſors, Divines, Civilians, and Canoniſts, with whom they adviſe. The Qualificators are employed in reviling and altering Books that are publiſhed, and are uſually *Dominican* Friars. The Secretary is properly the Regiſter; and the Advocate Fiſcal the Attorney or Proſecutor. The Treaſurer takes into his Cuſtody all the Priſoner's Goods and perſonal Eſtate when he is apprehended; and the Familiars are properly the Serjeants and Bailiffs belonging to this Office; though the Nobility and Perſons of the beſt Quality uſually enter themſelves of the Number of Familiars, as it is a Protection againſt the Civil Magiſtrate, and entitles them to the ſame plenary Indulgences as Perſons engaged in a Cruſade againſt Infidels and Enemies of the Chriſtian Name. As to the *Alguazils* or Goalers, they are forbidden to permit their Priſoners to ſend to their Friends, or receive any Manner of Support or Intelligence from them, or indeed to converſe with any Mortal but their Tormentors. The Inquiſitors and their Officers take an Oath never to diſcover any Thing tranſacted in that Court, and puniſh nothing more ſeverely than the Breach of that Oath.

The Manner of proceeding with thoſe who are apprehended by the Inquiſition.

This Court proceeds in a ſummary Way, on an Information brought by any Perſon whatever: If the Informer names any Witneſſes beſides himſelf, they are ſent for privately, and before they are examined, take an Oath not to diſcover to any their having been with the Inquiſitors, nor to ſpeak of any Thing they ſaid, ſaw, or heard, within that Court.

All People, though never ſo infamous, and though they ſtand convicted of Perjury, are, in Favour of the Faith, and in Deteſtation of Heretics,

ticks, admitted by the Inquiſition to be Witneſſes; mortal Enemies only excepted.

This Exception is of little Benefit to the Priſoner, by Reaſon of his not knowing who they are that have informed and witneſſed againſt him.

The Depoſitions of the Informer and Witneſſes, if there be any, being thus privately taken, a Familiar is ſent for; and being come, he has the following Order put into his Hands.

"By the Command of the Reverend Father *N.* an Inquiſitor of Heretical Pravity, let *N.* be apprehended and committed to the Priſons of this Holy Office, and out of which he ſhall not be releaſed, but by the expreſs Order of the ſaid Reverend Inquiſitor."

If ſeveral Perſons are taken up at the ſame Time, the Familiars are commanded ſo to order Things, that they may know nothing of one another's being apprehended; and at this the Familiars are ſo expert, that a Father, and his three Sons, and three Daughters, who lived together at the ſame Houſe, were all carried Priſoners to the Inquiſition, without knowing any thing of one another's being there, until ſeven Years afterwards, when they that were alive came forth in an Act of Faith.

The Priſons of the Inquiſition are little dark Rooms, and which have no other Furniture but a hard Quilt and a uſeful Pot. The Priſoners are not ſuffered to ſee any Perſon beſides their Keeper, who brings them their Diet, and with it a lighted Lamp, which burns about half an Hour; neither muſt their Keeper, without Leave from the Inquiſitors, entertain any Diſcourſe with them.

After the Priſoner has ſpent two or three Days and Nights in this melancholy Apartment, he is carried by the Keeper before the Inquiſitors, who before they ask him a Queſtion, make him take an Oath to return true Anſwers to all their Interrogatories; and if he has been ever guilty of any Hereſy, to confeſs it to them.

The firſt Queſtion the Priſoner is asked, is, Whether he knows why he was taken up by the Inquiſition? And if he anſwers that he does not know, he is then asked, Whether he knows for what Crimes the Inquiſition uſed to impriſon People? If he anſwers for Hereſy, he is admoniſhed, upon the Oath he has taken, to confeſs all his Hereſies, and to diſcover all his Teachers and Accomplices. If the Priſoner denies he ever held any Hereſy, or had ever any Communication with any Hereticks, he is gravely told, That the Holy Office does not uſe to impriſon People raſhly, or without any good Grounds for what they do; and that therefore he would do well to confeſs his Guilt; and that the rather, becauſe the Holy Office, contrary to the Cuſtom of all other Courts, is ſevere to thoſe that deny, and merciful to all thoſe that confeſs their Guilt.

If the Priſoner perſiſts in denying that he ever held any Hereſies, his Goaler is called in, and commanded to carry him back to the Place from whence he came; and the Priſoner is admoniſhed ſtrictly to examine his own Conſcience, that the next Time they ſend for him he may be prepared to make a true and full Confeſſion of all his Hereſies, Teachers, and Accomplices. The Priſoner having been allowed two or three Days more to do this in, he is brought before the Inquiſitors a ſecond Time, and is asked whether he comes prepared to confeſs, and if he anſwers that he cannot, without accuſing himſelf or others falſly, make any ſuch Confeſſion as they deſire of him; they do then ask him where he was born, and what his Parents were, and where he went to School, and who were his School-Maſters, and where he has lived all this Time, and with whom he has converſed moſt, and who has been his Confeſſor, and when he was laſt at Confeſſion, and at the Sacrament, with twenty more ſuch Queſtions. And being told, that they have ſufficient Proof of his being a Heretick, they command him, ſince he cannot repent of his Hereſies unleſs he confeſſeth them all, to go back to his Priſon, and there pray to God for Grace to diſpoſe him to make a true and full Confeſſion, to the ſaving of his Soul, which is all they ſeek after.

And being again allowed two or three Days to pray and conſider on what the Inquiſitors have ſaid to him, he is brought before them a third Time; and in caſe he perſiſts in pleading Not Guilty, he is then asked ſome Queſtions concerning the Heretical Doctrines he ſtands charged withal; for Example, Whether he believes *Chriſt* to be bodily preſent in the Sacrament, and that it is lawful to adore Images, and to pray to Saints and Angels? And if he affirms that he did always firmly believe theſe and all the other Doctrines of the *Romiſh* Church, he is asked, If he always believed theſe Doctrines, how came he to ſpeak againſt them? and if he denies that he ever did, he is then told, That ſince he is ſo obſtinate in his Hereſies, of which they have a ſufficient Proof before them, they will order their Advocate-Fiſcal to form his Proceſs and convict him of them.

But in caſe the Inquiſitors have not ſufficient Evidence, to draw a Confeſſion from the Priſoner, notwithſtanding they have told him oftner than once that they had, they then fall a Note lower, and tell the Priſoner, That though they may not have ſufficient Proof of his heretical Words and Actions to convict him of them, that they have ſufficient to put him to the Rack to make him confeſs them. And having fixed the Day when he is to undergo the Tortures, he, when that diſmal Day comes, if he does not prevent it by ſuch a Confeſſion as is expected from him, is led to the Place where the Rack is, attended by an Inquiſitor and a Publick Notary, who is to write down the Anſwers the Priſoner returns to the Queſtions which ſhall be put to him by the Inquiſitor while he is upon the Rack: During the Time the Executioner is preparing that Engine of unſpeakable Cruelty, and is taking off the Priſoner's Clothes to his Shirt and Drawers, the Inquiſitor is ſtill exhorting the Priſoner to have Compaſſion both on his Body and Soul, and by making a true and full Confeſſion of all his Hereſies to prevent his being tortured; but if the Priſoner ſaith, that he will ſuffer any thing rather than accuſe himſelf or others falſly, the Inquiſitor commands the Executioner to do his Duty, and to begin the Torture; which in the Inquiſition is given by twiſting a ſmall Cord hard about the Priſoner's naked Arms and hoiſting him up from the Ground by an Engine to which the Cord is faſtened; and, as if the miſerable Priſoner's hanging in the Air by his Arms were not Torment enough, he has ſeveral Quaſſations or Shakes given him, which is done by ſcrewing up his Body higher, and letting it down again with a Jirk; which diſjoints his Arms, and after that the Torture is much more exquiſite than it was before.

When the Priſoner is firſt hoiſted from the Ground, an Hour-Glaſs is turned up, and which, if he does not prevent it, by making ſuch a Confeſſion

ſeſſion of his Hereſies as the Inquiſitor that is preſent all the while, and is continually asking him Queſtions, expects from him, muſt run out before hs is taken down; to promiſe to make ſuch a Confeſſion if they will take him off the Rack not being ſufficient to procure him that Mercy, no more than his crying out that he ſhall expire immediately, if they do not give him ſome Eaſe; that, as the Inquiſitors tell us, being no more than all that are upon the Rack do think they are ready to do.

If the Priſoner endures the Rack without confeſſing any Thing, which few or none, though never ſo innocent, are able to do, ſo ſoon as the Hour-Glaſs is out he is taken down, and carried back to his Priſon, where there is a Surgeon ready to put his Bones in Joint. And though in all other Courts the Priſoner's having endured the Rack without confeſſing the Crimes for which he was tortured, clears him, and makes void all the Evidence that was againſt him; yet in the Inquiſition, where whatſoever Humanity and right Reaſon have eſtabliſhed in Favour of the Priſoner is left to the Diſcretion of the Judge, it is commonly otherwiſe; the Priſoners that will not confeſs any thing being uſually racked twice, and if they ſtand it out, though few of them can do that, thrice.

But if the Priſoner makes the Confeſſion the Inquiſitor expects he ſhould on the Rack, it is writ down Word for Word by the Notary, and is, after the Priſoner has had a Day or two's Reſt, carried to him to ſet his Hand to it; which if the Priſoner does, it puts an End to his Proceſs, the Want of ſufficient Evidence to have convicted him, being abundantly ſupplied by this extorted Confeſſion thus ſigned by him. But in Caſe the Priſoner when it is brought to him refuſeth to ſign it, affirming it to be falſe, and to have been extorted from him by the Extremity of the Torture, he is then carried to the Rack a ſecond Time, to oblige him to repeat and ſign the ſame Confeſſion.

It is a very hard Matter for any one that is a Priſoner in the Inquiſition for Herely to eſcape the Rack, ſince neither the profeſſing and maintaining the Doctrines to be true wherewith he is charged, nor the denying of them, can ſecure him from it; the firſt being commonly racked to make them diſcover their Teachers and Accomplices, and the ſecond to oblige them to confeſs their own Guilt; and if a Priſoner does confeſs his having ſpoke ſome heretical Words, but to ſave his Eſtate ſtands in his having ſpoken them rathly and in a Paſſion, without an heretical Mind, he is racked to make him diſcover whether it was ſo or not, or whether his Thoughts were not the ſame with his Words. If a Priſoner either makes no Confeſſion at all, or does not confeſs the particular heretical Words or Facts wherewith he ſtands charged, and with which the Inquiſitors will never acquaint him, he is asked, whether he has any thing beſides his Denial to offer in his own Defence, and if he has, to make uſe of it: For now the Advocate-Fiſcal, upon their having Evidence enough againſt him, is ordered to form his Proceſs. Here if the Priſoner alledgeth, that unleſs they will be pleaſed to let him know the particular Words or Facts he ſtands charged withal, and who the Perſons are that have informed and witneſſed againſt him, that it will not be poſſible for him to make any Defence; he is told, that cannot be done, becauſe to let him know the particular heretical Words or Facts might lead him to the Knowledge of the Informers and Witneſſes, who by the fundamental Laws of the Inquiſition muſt never directly or indirectly be diſcovered to him.

The Priſoner being thus denied the Knowledge of the Things and Perſons, without which it is ſcarce poſſible for him, though never ſo innocent, to make any Defence, he is, notwithſtanding that, graciouſly asked by the Inquiſitors, whether he deſires to have an Advocate and Proctor to help him to make it? If he ſaith he would, he is not to name them, but muſt take thoſe the Inquiſitors ſhall appoint, and who before they have ſeen their Client, muſt take an Oath to defend and maintain the Cauſe of *N.* a Priſoner in the Priſons of this Holy Office; but ſo as not to uſe any Trick or Cavil, or to inſtruct his ſaid Client to conceal the Truth in Judgment: That if he ſhall by any Way diſcover his ſaid Client to be guilty of the Crime or Crimes wherewith he ſtands charged, will thereupon immediately diſmiſs his Cauſe: And if by having ſearched narrowly into his Caſe he ſhall diſcover that he has had Accomplices in his Hereſies, that he will inform againſt them to the Holy Office.

The ſame Oath is taken by the Priſoner's Proctor, as the Inquiſitors call him; though in Truth both he and the Advocate are the Inquiſitors Engines, made uſe of to fiſh what they can out of the Priſoner, againſt himſelf and his Friends, rather than any thing elſe.

The Priſoner being thus fitted with an Advocate and Proctor, and who are not ſuffered to know any thing more of his Accuſers, and of the Witneſſes againſt him than he himſelf knows; he is asked by them whether he would have any Queſtions put by the Inquiſitors to thoſe that have informed and witneſſed againſt him, or would have them examined upon any Points. And in caſe the Priſoner furniſheth his Advocate with any ſuch Queſtions or Points, they are put by him into Form and delivered to the Inquiſitors.

The Priſoner is asked whether he has any Witneſſes of his Orthodoxy; and if he names any, they are ſent for, and heard by the Inquiſitors. And as theſe Witneſſes do go to the Inquiſition with trembling Hearts, ſo they are extremely cautious not to ſay any Thing of the Priſoner that ſhall imply their having lived in any Intimacy with him, for Fear of bringing themſelves under a Suſpicion of Herely; and by the Laws of the Inquiſition no Relation of the Priſoner's within the fourth Degree can be a Witneſs for him. When the Priſoner's Advocate and Proctor are diſmiſſed, they take an Oath that they have no Copy of the Defence the Priſoner made for himſelf, and that they ſhall never ſpeak of it to any Perſon whatſoever; neither is the Priſoner ever ſuffered to ſee the Depoſitions of his own fearful Witneſſes, no more than the Depoſitions of thoſe that are againſt him.

Beside the forementioned, there is another common Proceſs in the Inquiſition, which is againſt thoſe that have murdered themſelves, or died a natural Death in their Priſons. The Proceſs againſt the firſt is ſhort, his having murdered himſelf being judged ſuch an Evidence of his Guilt as is ſufficient to convict him of the Hereſies wherewith he was charged. The Proceſs againſt the ſecond is carried on by the Advocate-Fiſcal in the ſame Manner as it would have been had the Priſoner been alive; and the Priſoner's Relations and Friends, or any other that have any thing to offer in Defence of the Deceaſed, are by a publick Edict ſummoned to appear before the Inquiſitors within forty Days to give their Evidence; and if upon this Summons none do appear to offer any thing in Vindication of the Deceaſed, the Deceaſed after the Expiration of that Term of Days, is acquitted or condemned in the

ſame Manner that he would have been had he been alive; and if he is condemned, his whole Eſtate is forfeited, and his Body and Effigies are burnt at the next Act of the Faith, as are the Body and Effigies of thoſe that had murdered themſelves.

But the Power of the Inquiſition extends not only to thoſe that died in the Priſons, but to the Bodies, Eſtates, and good Names, of all that after their Deceaſe ſhall be convicted of having died Hereticks: And though as to the Eſtates of thoſe that are convicted of having died Hereticks, they can go no farther than forty Years; as to the taking their Bones out of the Grave and burning them, and depriving them of their good Name, there is no Limitation of Time.

When a competent Number of Priſoners are convicted of Hereſy, either by their own voluntary or extorted Confeſſion, or upon the Evidence of certain Witneſſes, a Day is fixed by their chief Inquiſitor for a Goal Delivery, which is called by them an *Act of the Faith*, and which is always upon a *Sunday*. In the Morning of the Day the Priſoners are all brought into a great Hall, where they have the Habits put on they are to wear in the Proceſſion, which begins to come out of the Inquiſition about nine of the Clock in the Morning.

Auto de Fe. The firſt in the Proceſſion are the *Dominican* Friars, who carry the Standard of the Inquiſition, which on the one Side hath their Founder *Dominic*'s Picture, and on the other Side a Croſs betwixt an Olive-Tree and a Sword, with this Motto, *Juſtitia & Miſericordia*. Next after the *Dominicans* come the Penitents, ſome with Benitoes and ſome without, according to the Nature of their Crimes; they are all in black Coats without Sleeves, and bare-footed, with a Wax Candle in their Hands. Next come the Penitents who have narrowly eſcaped being burnt, who over their black Coats have Flames painted with their Points turned downward, to ſignify their having been ſaved but ſo as by Fire. This Habit is called by the *Portugueſe*, *Fuego revolto*, or Flames turned up-ſide-down. Next come the Negative and Relapſed, that are to be burnt, with Flames upon their Habit pointing upwards: And next come thoſe who profeſs Doctrines contrary to the Faith of the *Roman* Church, and who beſides Flames on their Habit pointing upward, have their Picture, which is drawn two or three Days before, upon their Breaſts, with Dogs, Serpents, and Devils, all with open Mouths painted about it.

The Priſoners that are to be burnt alive, beſides a Familiar, which all the reſt have, have a Jeſuit on each Hand of them, who are continually preaching to them to abjure their Hereſies; but if they offer to ſpeak any Thing in Defence of the Doctrines they are going to ſuffer Death for profeſſing, they are immediately gagged, and not ſuffered to ſpeak a Word more.

After the Priſoners come a Troop of Familiars on Horſeback; and after them the Inquiſitors and other Officers of the Court upon Mules; and laſt of all comes the Inquiſitor-General upon a white Horſe led by two Men, with a black Hat and a green Hatband, and attended by all the Nobles that are not employed as Familiars in the Proceſſion.

In the *Terreiro de Paco*, which may be as far from the Inquiſition as *White-Hall* is from *Temple-Bar*, there is a Scaffold erected, which may hold two or three thouſand People. At the one End ſits the Inquiſitors, and at the other End the Priſoners, and in the ſame Order as they walked in the Proceſſion; thoſe that are to be burnt being ſeated on the higheſt Benches behind the reſt, and which may be ten Foot above the Floor of the Scaffold.

After ſome Prayers and a Sermon, which is made up of Encomiums on the Inquiſition, and Invectives againſt Hereticks, a ſecular Prieſt aſcends a Desk, which ſtands near the middle of the Scaffold; who having firſt taken all the Abjurations of the Penitents, who kneel before him one by one in the ſame Order they walked in the Proceſſion, at laſt recites the final Sentence of the Inquiſition upon thoſe that are to be put to Death, in the Words following.

We the Inquiſitors of heretical Pravity, having with the Concurrence of the moſt illuſtrious N. *Lord Archbiſhop of* Lisbon, *or of his Deputy* N. *called on the Name of the Lord* Jeſus Chriſt, *and of his glorious Mother the Virgin* Mary, *and ſitting on our Tribunal, and judging with the holy Goſpels lying before us, that ſo our Judgment may be in the Sight of God, and our Eyes might behold what is juſt, in all Matters between the magnifick Doctor* N. *Advocate-Fiſcal, on the one Part, and you* N. *now before us, on the other, we have ordained, that in this Place and on this Day you ſhould receive your definitive Sentence.*

We do therefore by this our Sentence put in Writing, define, pronounce, declare, and ſentence, Thee N. *of the City of* Lisbon, *to be a Convicted, Confeſſing, Affirmative, and Profeſſed Heretick, and to be delivered and left by us as ſuch, to the Secular Arm, and we by this our Sentence do caſt thee out of the Eccleſiaſtical Court, as a Convicted, Confeſſing, Affirmative, and Profeſs'd Heretick, and we do leave and deliver thee to the Secular Arm, and to the Power of the Secular Court; but at the ſame Time do moſt earneſtly beſeech that Court ſo to moderate its Sentence, as not to touch thy Blood, or to put thy Life in any Danger.*

The Priſoners are no ſooner in the Hands of the Civil Magiſtrate, than they are loaded with Chains before the Eyes of the Inquiſitors, and being firſt carried to the ſecular Goals, are within an Hour or two brought from thence before the Lord Chief Juſtice, who without knowing any thing of their particular Crimes, or of the Evidence that was againſt them, asks them one by one in what Religion they do intend to die. If they anſwer that they will die in the Communion of the *Roman* Church, they are condemned by him to be carried forthwith to the Place of Execution, and there to be firſt ſtrangled, and afterwards burnt to Aſhes: But if they ſay they will die in the Proteſtant, or in any other Faith that is contrary to the *Roman*, they are then ſentenced by him to be carried forthwith to the Place of Execution, and there to be burnt alive.

At the Place of Execution, which at *Lisbon* is the *Ribera*, there are ſo many Stakes ſet up as there are Priſoners to be burnt, with a good Quantity of dry Furz about them: The Stakes of the Profeſs'd, as the Inquiſitors call them, may be about four Yards high, and have a ſmall Board, whereon the Priſoner is to be ſeated, within half a Yard of the Top. The Negative and Relapſed being firſt ſtrangled and burnt, the Profeſt go up a Ladder betwixt the two Jeſuits that have attended them all Day, and when they are come even with the forementioned Board, they turn about to the People, and the Jeſuits ſpend near a quarter of an Hour in exhorting the Profeſt to be reconciled to the *Church of Rome*; which if the Profeſt refuſe to be, the Jeſuits come down, and the Executioner aſcends, and having turned the Profeſt off the Ladder upon the Seat, and chained their Bodies cloſe to the Stake, he leaves them, and the Jeſuits go up to them a ſecond Time, to renew their Exhortation to them, and at parting tell them, *How they*

ſuf-

leave them to the Devil, who is ſtanding at their Elbows, to receive their Souls, and carry them with him into the Flames of Hell-Fire, ſo ſoon as they are out of their Bodies. Upon this a great Shout is raiſed; and as ſoon as the Jeſuits are off the Ladders, the Cry is, *Let the Dogs Beards be made, Let the Dogs Beards be made.* Which is done by thruſting flaming Furzes faſtened to a long Pole againſt their Faces. And this Inhumanity is commonly continued until their Faces are burnt to a Coal, and is always accompanied with ſuch loud Acclamations of Joy, as are not to be heard upon any other Occaſion; a Bull-Feaſt or a Farce being dull Entertainments to the uſing a Profeſſed Heretick thus inhumanly.

THE Beards of the Profeſt having been thus made, as they call it in Jollity, Fire is ſet to the Furz which are at the bottom of the Stake, and above which the Profeſt are chained ſo high, that the Top of the Flame ſeldom reacheth higher than the Seat they ſit upon; and if there happen to be a Wind, to which that Place is much expoſed, it ſeldom reacheth ſo high as their Knees; ſo that though there be a Calm, the Profeſt are commonly dead in about half an Hour after the Furz is ſet on Fire; yet if the Weather prove windy, they are not after that dead in an Hour and a half, or two Hours, and ſo are really roaſted, and not burnt to Death. But though out of Hell there cannot poſſibly be a more lamentable Spectacle than this, yet it is beheld by People of both Sexes, and of all Ages, with ſuch Tranſports of Joy and Satisfaction, as are not on any other Occaſion to be met with.

AND that the Reader may not think that this inhuman Joy may be the Effect of a natural Cruelty that is in thoſe People's Diſpoſitions, and not of the Spirit of their Religion, he may reſt aſſured, that all publick Malefactors beſides Hereticks, have their violent Deaths no where more tenderly lamented than among the ſame People, and even when there is nothing in the Manner of their Deaths that appears inhuman or cruel.

WITHIN a few Days after the Execution, the Pictures of all that have been burnt, and which were taken off their Breaſts when they were brought to the Stake, are hung up in St. *Domingo's* Church, whoſe Weſt End, though very high, is all covered over with theſe Trophies of the Inquiſition, hung up there in Honour to *Dominic*, who to fulfil his Mother's Dream, was the firſt Inventor of that Court: *Dominic's* Mother, when ſhe was ready to be brought to Bed of him, having dreamed, that ſhe was delivered, not of a human Creature, but of a fierce Dog, with a burning Torch in his Mouth.

I proceed next to enumerate the ſeveral Archbiſhopricks and Biſhopricks in *Portugal*, and enquire into their reſpective Revenues.

1. THE Archbiſhoprick of *Liſbon*; the Revenue whereof is 40,000 Cruſadoes. The Suffragans are, 1. *Miranda*, the Revenue whereof is 10,000 Cruſadoes *per Annum*. 2. *Portalegre*, the Revenue whereof is 500 Pounds *per Annum*. But the late Patriarchate eſtabliſhed at *Liſbon* has made a great Alteration in the Eccleſiaſtical Government of this Archbiſhoprick.

2. THE Archbiſhoprick of *Braga*; the Revenue whereof is 40,000 Cruſadoes *per Annum*. The Suffragans are, 1. *Coimbra*, the Revenue whereof is 40,000 Cruſadoes *per Annum*. 2. *Lamego*, the Revenue whereof is 18,000 Cruſadoes *per Annum*. 3. *Viſeu*, the Revenue whereof is 16,000 Cruſadoes *per Annum*. 4. *Porto*, the Revenue whereof is 15,000 Cruſadoes *per Annum*.

3. THE Archbiſhoprick of *Evora*; the Revenue whereof is 60,000 Cruſadoes *per Annum*. The Suffragans are, 1. *Elvas*, the Revenue whereof is 10,000 Cruſadoes *per Annum*. 2. *Leira*, the Revenue whereof is 18,000 Cruſadoes *per Annum*. 3. *Faro*, the Revenue whereof is 5000 Cruſadoes *per Annum*. And, 4. *Tavira*, the Revenue whereof I have not met with.

THE Univerſity of *Coimbra* is much the moſt conſiderable in *Portugal*, ſaid to conſiſt of 5000 Students: But then they admit Children before they can well read; ſo that our Grammar Schools may be reckoned equal to any of their Colleges.

THEY do not apply themſelves ſo much to Philoſophy, Divinity, or Phyſick, in theſe Univerſities, as to the Civil and Canon Law, which prevails very much in theſe Countries. And beſides theſe, every one ſtudies the Cuſtoms of his particular Province, by which the Magiſtrates are often govern'd in their Deciſions.

CHAP. III.

A brief Geographical Deſcription of all the Dominions of Portugal.

THAT Part of the Dominions of the King of *Portugal*, which are upon the Continent of *Europe*, contain *Firſt*, the Kingdom of *Portugal*, and, *Secondly*, the Kingdom of *Algarve*, or *Regnum Algarbiorum*. The Kingdom of *Portugal* is bounded on the North, with the Rivers *Minho* and *Leyra*, which part it from *Gallicia*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Algarve*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; and on the Eaſt, with the two *Caſtiles* and *Eſtramadura*; from which it is deduced by a Line drawn from *Ribadonia*, ſtanding on the *Avia* to *Badajos* on the *Anas* or *Guadiana*; it extendeth on the Sea Coaſt from North to South, 400 Miles; the Breadth of it in the broadeſt Place, is 100 Miles, in the narroweſt, eighty; the whole Circumference is about 879 Miles; in which Compaſs it containeth about 1460 Pariſhes.

IT was firſt called *Luſitania*, from the *Luſitans* its Inhabitants; and had the Name of *Portugal* either from the Port of *Cale*, now called *Cata*, ſometimes a rich Empory or Mart-Town, or more likely from the Haven of *Porto*, a Town ſtanding on the Mouth of the River *Duero*, where the *Gauls*, or *French*, uſed to land their Merchandize, and ſo was called *Portus Gallorum*, and by Contraction *Portugal*. This Town was given in Dower to *Henry* Duke of *Lorrain*, with *Tereſa* baſe Daughter to *Alphonſo* the Sixth, King of *Caſtile*, with the Title of *Earl of* Portugal, whoſe Succeſſors coming to be Kings, called all thoſe Countries they gained from the *Moors*, by the ſame Name.

THE Air of the Country is healthy, the Country is hilly, and bare of Corn, with which it is ſupplied from *France*, and other Northern Parts; yet that which they have is as good, if not better, than any *Europe* affords. The Soil and Peo-

ple

ple are in all Parts not rich alike; for where the Soil is richeſt, the People are pooreſt, not benefited by the Trade of the too far diſtant *Lisbon*; and where the Soil is pooreſt, the People are richeſt, helped by Traffic and Manufactures, the chief of which are making Salt and Silk, which they export in great Abundance; and where there is Want of Corn, that Defect is ſupplied with Abundance of Honey, Wine, Oil, Alum, Fruit, Fiſh, Salt, white Marble, and ſome Mines of Silver, *&c.*

The People are of a more plain, ſimple Behaviour than the reſt of *Spain*, and (if we may believe the *Spaniſh* Proverb) neither numerous, nor wiſe; but they have found them both. They have a Kind of natural Animoſity, if not Antipathy, againſt the *Caſtilians*, for depriving them of their native Government and Liberties, although they have now recovered both. They were always accounted good Sea-faring Men, and fortunate in the Diſcovery of foreign Countries.

It aboundeth with Rivers of all Sorts, having near 200 great and ſmall. The chief are, 1. *Minius*, full of red Lead, (thence called *Minium* by the *Latins*,) navigable with ſmall Veſſels near 100 Miles. 2. *Lethes*, now *Lavada*. 3. *Mulnadas*, now *Mondego*. 4. *Tagus*. 5. *Duero*. And 6. *Anas*. Theſe three laſt, common to all the reſt of *Spain*; *Anas* or *Guadiana* paſſing by *Portugal* only for ſeven Leagues, *Tagus* for eighteen, and *Duero* for eighty: None of theſe are navigable for any long Space, by Ships of any great Burthen; all the Rivers of *Spain* being generally ſwift of Courſe, reſtrained within narrow Channels between ſharp Rocks, and therefore incommodious for Navigation: But that Want is ſupplied by three excellent Havens, 1. That of *Lisbon* upon *Tagus*. 2. *Porto* upon *Duero*, to the North of *Liſbon*. 3. That of *Setaval*, South of *Lisbon*, ſituate on a Gulf, twenty Miles in Length, and three in Breadth, a Place of great Importance.

The principal Cities of this Country are, 1. *Lisbon*, ſeated upon *Tagus*, a City famous for Commerce, called by the *Latins Ulyſippo*, or *Ulyſippo*, and, as ſome have fabulouſly imagined, built by *Ulyſſes* in his ten Years Travel. It is in Compaſs ſeven Miles, and contains upwards of thirty Pariſhes, in which are at leaſt 20000 Houſes, neat and comely Fabricks: There are on the Walls ſeventy ſix Turrets and Towers, and twenty two Gates to the Sea Side. Towards the Continent it is ſituate upon five ſmall Hills, betwixt which is a Valley which runs down to the River. On the higheſt Hill ſtands an antient Caſtle, not ſtrong; but by Reaſon of its Vicinity to the Palace, ſerving now only for a Priſon for great Men. The Entrance of the River is defended by the Caſtle of *Caſtus*, and nearer the City by the Fort of St. *Julian's*, and the *Rock of* Belem, munitioned by twenty Pieces of Ordnance: This is the Chamber of the Kings of *Portugal*, the See of an Archbiſhop, the Staple of Commodities for all the Kingdom, and thought more worth than all the Realm beſides.

2. The ſecond City of Note is *Santaren*, ſeated on the *Tagus*, ſo called from *Santta Irene*, a Nun of *Tomar* (a Monaſtery wherein the old Kings of *Portugal* uſed to be crowned) martyred here by the *Moors*: This City is called by *Ptolomy Scarabiſcus*, then a *Roman* Colony. 3. *Sintra*, upon the main *Atlantick*, at the End of high Mountains, called *Montes Lunæ*: Hither by reaſon of the cool Refreſhings of the Sea, and Pleaſure of the Woods adjoining, the Kings of *Portugal* uſe to retire in the Heat of Summer. 4. *Coimbra*, ſeated on both Sides the River *Mondego*, a pleaſant Situation, among the Vineyards and Woods of Olives; a Biſhop's See, an Univerſity, and ſome time the Reſidence of the Kings. 5. On the North Side of the River *Duero*, betwixt that and *Minio*, is placed the City of *Braga*, once the Royal Seat of the *Swevian* Kings, now the See of an Archbiſhop, contending for the Supremacy with *Toledo*. 6. *Porto*, the Haven of the *Gauls* before-mentioned, ſtanding on the Mouth of *Duero*, now vulgarly called *Porto-port*. 7. *Miranda*, a Biſhop's See, ſeated alſo on the *Duero*. 8. *Braganza*, the Dukes whereof, now Kings of *Portugal*, were accounted ſo great Princes, that it was thought one third Part of *Portugal* were their Vaſſals, and lived on their Lands: They are originally deſcended from *Alphonſo*, natural Son to *John* the Firſt, who was firſt by his Father created Earl of *Borcellos*, and after Duke of *Braganza*; they after came to have Right to the Crown by the Marriage of *Katherine*, Daughter to *Emanuel*. 9. On the South of *Tagus*, and betwixt it and *Algarve*, is ſeated in the midſt of a large and ſpacious Plain, the City of *Evora*, the See of an Archbiſhop, and an Univerſity, the laſt founded by King *Henry* the Cardinal. 10. Is *Portolegre*, a Biſhop's See. 11. *Olivenza*, on the *Guadiana*. 12. *Beja*, called by *Pliny* antiently *Pax Julia*, now mean, not very well inhabited, but antiently a *Roman* Colony, and one of the three Juridicial Reſorts of *Luſitania*.

The Kingdom of *Algarve* lieth South of *Portugal*, from which it is divided by a Line drawn from *Aſchorin*, on the Weſtern Sea, to *Odochere*, a Caſtle on the *Guadiana*; on the Eaſt bounded by *Andaluſia*, on the Weſt and South by the main *Atlantick*. More wild and barren it is than the Kingdom of *Portugal*, peopled with few Towns, and thoſe not very populous; hilly and mountainous, but by the Benefit of the Sea, yielding a great Trade of Fiſhing, eſpecially of Tunny, of which there is Abundance caught. The Kingdom of Algarve

It took its Name from its Weſtern Situation, for ſo *Algarve* ſignifieth in the *Arabick*. The utmoſt End of it was antiently called *Promontorium Sacrum*, now *Cape St. Vincent*; becauſe the Bones of St. *Vincent*, religiouſly preſerved by the Chriſtians, were here burnt, and ſcattered by the *Moors*; but it is vulgarly by Mariners called the *Southern Cape*: The Places of moſt Importance in this Kingdom, are 1. *Nubla*, the Seat of *Albed Meſad*, once King of this Country. 2. *Silvia*, an Inland City, the Seat of a Biſhop. 3. *Villa Maona*, ſituate beyond the Cape. 4. *Tavila*. 5. *Faro*. 6. *Lagos*. All Haven Towns.

This Country, conquered by the *Moors*, with the reſt of *Spain*, in the Diſtractions of their Power, was for a Time under the Sovereignty and Command of the Kings of *Seval* by the Kings of *Morocco*: It became ſubject unto them till they left this Country, and was after parcelled among many Kings, one of which was *Aben Meſad*, reigning in *Niebla*, and the Parts adjoining. He being diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by *Alphonſo the Wiſe*, moſt of the other Towns and Princes ſubmitted unto him, and became his Vaſſals, *Anno* 1257. It was more abſolutely ſubdued, and made ſubject to the Crown of *Portugal* by *Alphonſo* the Third, *Anno* 1260; to whom the ſaid *Alphonſo*, the Tenth of that Name in *Leon*, and Seventh in *Caſtile*, had given the ſame in Dowry with *Beatrix* his Daughter.

The *Azores*, or *Tercera* Iſlands, are certain Iſlands belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*, ſeated in the *Atlantick* Ocean, directly oppoſite to *Lisbon*, and diſtant from it 250 Leagues, firſt found

tude, and one of them in the first Longitude, which is commonly reckoned from these Islands, being the most Western Parts of the World, before the Discovery of *America*.

They were called *Azores*, from the Multitude of *Gosshawks*, at first found there, (*Azor* in the *Spanish* Tongue, signifying a *Gosshawk*) tho' at this Time there are few or none found: They were called also the *Flemish* Islands, because first discovered by them; and in the Isle of *Fial*, one of the Chief, there are some Families still resemble *Flemings*, both in Complexion and Habit; and not far from their Abode is a Torrent, call'd by the *Portuguese*, *Ribera dos Flemingos*, or the River of *Flemings*; they were also called *Tercera's*, from *Tercera* the Chief of them.

The Air here is healthful, subject to few Diseases; they all abound with Flesh, Fish, and other Necessaries; except Salt and Oil, supplied from *Portugal*. Wines they have for their own Use, but not fit for Exportation, by reason of their Weakness; of like Nature is their Wheat, and also their Fruits, which seldom hold good above Twelve Months. They are subject to Earthquakes; and their chief Commodities for Exportation, are Canary-birds, Wood for Dyers, Joiners-Work, *&c.* and Beeves for such Ships as come to be victualled.

The Inhabitants are generally laborious, excellent Husbands of their Grounds; insomuch, that they make Vines grow out of the Rocks; much given to Joinery-work, making pretty Knacks: In Customs, they conform to the *Portuguese*, having some smattering of the *Flemings*, which Nation they seem to affect. The Islands are Nine in Number, whose Names are as follow, *viz.*

1. *Tercera*, the Chief of all the rest; 18 Miles in Compass, well stored with Peaches, Apples, Lemons, and Oranges; and for the Kitchen, Turnips, Cabbages, with Plenty of Pot-herbs, and the best Potatoes in the World, being the principal Food of the Inhabitants. They have great Quantities of the best Woad, called hence, *Island Woad*, used by Dyers; they have Fowl for the Use of Man, but no Birds of Prey: The whole Island is begirt with sharp Rocks; the Places of most Importance, are, 1. *Praye*, on the Sea-side, well wall'd, but not very populous. 2. *Santa Barbara*. 3. *St. Sebastian*. 4. *Ghalue*. And 5. *Villa Nova:* All Towns of good Note. 6. *Angra*, the Chief, not only of this Island, but of all the Nine; the Residence of the Governor, and an Archbishop's See, who hath in it his Cathedral: 'Tis fortified with two Castles; the Town is likewise well wall'd, the only Port Town of the Island, and secured rather by Art than Nature.

2. St. *Mary's*, so call'd, from that Saint (as St. *George's*, and St. *Michael's* are) unto whom it is dedicated; the most Southern of the Isles, and next to *Spain*, twelve Miles in Circuit, inhabited only by *Spaniards*, and those much given to making Earthen Ware; this Island is so well fortify'd by Nature with Rocks, that it requires no other Defence; the chief Town is likewise call'd St. *Mary's*, giving to, or taking it's Name from the Island.

3. St. *Michael's*, lying directly North from St. *Mary's*, and little distant, is the largest of the Nine, being 20 Miles in Length, but not answerable in Breadth; very subject to Earthquakes and fiery Eruptions: 'Tis particularly remarkable among Modern *Geographers*, who have taken their first Meridian (by which they divide the World into East and West) from the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Islands*, where it was fix'd by *Ptolomy* and other ancient Writers. The chief Town hereof, besides many Boroughs and lesser Hamlets, is call'd *Punta del Gada*; seated upon a dangerous Sea, and without any Port; yet more frequented by Strangers than the Port of *Angra*, because here they may go in and out as they please, but cannot do so in the other with Safety.

4. *Fial*, which is 17 or 18 Miles in Length; provided with all Things necessary for the Use of Man; and well furnished with Woad, for which Commodity, it is much frequented by the Merchants of *England*. The chief Town of it is *Dorta*, defended with a Castle; both Town and Island were taken by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1597, in the famous Action called the *Island Voyage*.

5. *Gratiosa*, not above 5 or 6 Leagues in Circumference; but so well furnished with Fruits, that they send much yearly to *Tercera*; inhabited by *Portuguese* only; but so poor, that they are not able to bear the Charge of a Garrison: The chief Town is called *la Plaia*.

6. St. *George's*, 12 Miles in Length, and about 3 in Breadth; mountainous and full of Forests, but those Forests are well stored with Cedars; they use them many times for Shipping, and sometimes for Fuel; the chief Town is also called St. *George's*.

7. *Pico*, which lies on the South of the Isle St. *George*, and took it's Name from a high Hill in the Form of a Pyramid, which the *Portuguese* generally call a *Pike* or *Pico*; replenished with Fruits, some Cedars, and a Tree called *Teixo*, of great Bulk, and much Beauty; the Wood exceeding hard within, and so very curiously veined, that it is allowed only to the King's Officers, the other Subjects being forbidden the Use of it, but upon special License, by a publick Edict. It is in Bigness second only to the Island of St. *Michael*, if not equal to it; being scarcely so long, tho' somewhat broader; the chief Towns of it are, 1. St. *Sebastian's*. 2. *Callota de Nesquin*; both upon the Sea, and in the East Parts of the Island.

8. *Flores*, directly East from *Fial*; so called from its Abundance of Flowers, as is *Gratiosa* for it's flourishing Verdure; it is about 8 Miles in Circumference, plentifully furnished with Cattle, and good Pasturage for feeding; the chief Town is *Santa Cruz*.

9. *Corvo*, the least of the Nine, and scarcely half so large as *Flores*; from which it is situate to the North, and but a little distant; and is thus called from it's Abundance of Crows; it is very unsafe, and miserably poor, by reason of the many Pirates which lie between the Islands, and intercept such Ships as trade to *America*: These Islands were the last of the *Portuguese* Dominions, which held out for Don *Antonio* the Bastard, against *Philip* II. King of *Spain*; against whom the Island of *Tercera* was for a while gallantly defended by *Emanuel De Sylva*, with the Help of the *French*; but was taken at last by the Marquis of *Santa Cruz*; and the *French*, after a Promise of Life, cruelly murder'd him in cold Blood.

The Portuguese Possessions in Asia.

So many are the Forts and Places possessed by the *Portuguese* in *Asia*, but especially in *India*, that to give a Description of them all, would be impossible; it will be sufficient to mention some few of the chiefest; and 1. *Diu*, a Peninsula, in the Province of *Guzurate*, in the Kingdom of *Cambaia*; looking towards *Persia*, but on the East Side thereof near the Mouth of the *Indus*: Here the *Portuguese* built an impregnable Citadel, by the Leave and Consent of King *Bacurines*, thereby to gain their Aid against *Mahommed* the *Mogul*, who had newly vanquished him: A Matter of such Consequence to the Crown of *Portugal*, that *John Bottelmes*, confined to *India* for some Crimes by him committed, undertook, in hopes by the Merit of that Service to obtain his Pardon, to carry the first News of it in a small Vessel not above 18 Foot long, and but six Foot broad, (the best which for

the present could be provided) which with great Courage he performed; and thro' that large, wide, and tempestuous Ocean, came in Safety with his News to *Lisbon*, to the great Joy of the King, but greater Admiration of all Sorts of People. Scarce was it settled in their new Possession, when besieged by *Solyman Bassa*, Admiral to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, with a Fleet of 80 Ships and Gallies, *Anno* 1537. offended with the *Portuguese* for aiding the King of *Persia*, but rather for diverting the Spice-trade from *Alexandria*; in which he had such ill Success, that having assaulted it in vain with his Land-forces, he was fain to raise his Siege in such Haste and Tumult, that he left his great Ordnance behind him.

2. Over against *Diu* upon the Sea-side, they are possessed of *Daman*, a beautiful and pleasant Town, fortified with a strong Castle at the North End of it, with white chalky Stone, well planted with Ordnance; opposite whereunto, on the South-side of the Town, is a goodly Church, edged on the Top with white; which with the Houses, for the most part of the same Colour also, affords a pleasant Prospect to the Sailors passing by.

3. The next Place of Consequence which they possess, and, indeed, the chief of all their Possessions in *India*, is, the City of *Goa*, in the Kingdom of *Decan*; a Sea-port Town, situate in a little, but most pleasant Island, call'd *Tickvarinum*; 15 Miles in Compass, opposite to the Mouth or Outlet of the River *Mundavo*, a noted Market, and one of the Keys which unlock the *Indies*; for Number of Inhabitants, Pleasantness of Situation, and magnificent Buildings, the chiefest of the Country. Here the *Portuguese* have their Arsenals, and Harbour for the *Indian* Fleet; by which they command these Seas; and it is so strongly fortify'd, that tho' beleaguer'd by the Great *Idalcan*, with 35,000 Horse, 6000 Elephants, and 250 Pieces of Cannon, yet he could not force it. In regard of the convenient Situation and Strength of the Place, it was made the ordinary Residence of the *Portugal* Vice-Roy; who hath here his Council, Chancellor, and other Officers, for the Government of such Parts of *India* as belong to that Crown. It is also the Seat of the Archbishop or Primate of the *Indian* Church, planted by that Nation, who is hence called the Archbishop of *Goa*.

4. To this, we may add *Chiaul*, a Sea-port, in the Possession of the *Portuguese* also, and by them well fortify'd; insomuch, as a *Nizamalocco* having assaulted it with a numerous Army, was forc'd to leave it as he found it.

5. *Solsette*, with a Peninsula about 20 Miles in Circumference, possess'd likewise by the *Portuguese*; about 9 Miles distant from *Goa*; the whole containing 30 Villages, and 80,000 Inhabitants; this stands in the Province of *Canara*.

6. We may add, the Citadel the *Portuguese* have built and fortify'd by Consent of the King, near the great City of *Canamar*, with many other Fortresses and Places; among the rest, the City of *Macao* in *China* deserves mention, a famous and known Mart of Trade.

The *Portuguese* Possessions in *Africa*.

The *Portuguese* had large Possessions in the Kingdoms of *Congo* and *Angola* in *Africa*; which were first discovered under the Conduct of Don *Diego Cam* in the Year 1486; and had fortify'd themselves in the Kingdom of *Angola*, from whence and *Congo*, they used yearly to transport 28,000 Slaves into *Brazil*, till by the Treachery of the *Hollanders*, they were *Anno* 1641, or thereabout, dispossessed thereof; for the *Portuguese* having cast off the *Spanish* Yoke, a Cessation from Hostility with them was proclaimed in *Holland*; and not long after a firm Peace made between the two Nations: In the Articles whereof it was conditioned, That this Peace should not begin in the *East-Indies* till the End of a Year,; nor in *Brazil*, till the End of half a Year from the making thereof; which being observed, they gave Orders to their Fleets and Forces which were Abroad, to make themselves Masters of any Thing belonging to the *Portuguese*, which they could lay hold of; who following their Instructions, and anchoring near the Fort of *Angola*, were by the *Portuguese* received with Joy into their Castle, as their special Friends; which presently they possessed themselves of, turning the poor *Portuguese* in a weak Bark to seek new Adventures. Nor were they less kind to them in the Island of St. *Thomas* and *Princes Island*. The Islands of *Cape de Verd* are still possessed by the *Portuguese*; and so called, because situate just opposite to *Promontorium Capitis Viridis*, in the Land of *Negroes*: They are Nine in Number, *viz.* 1. St. *Anthony*. 2. St. *Vincent*. 3. *Bueno Vista*. 4. St. *Lucies*. 5. *Insula Salis*, or the *Isle of Salt*. 6. *Del Fogo*, or the *Isle of Fire*. 7. St. *Nicholas*. 8. *Maggio*, or *Majo*. 9. St. *Jago*. But some have added a Tenth, called *Brava*. Of these only Three are inhabited, *viz.* *Majo*, *Del Fogo*, and St. *Jago*; of which the last is the Chief; yet but 7 Miles long, rocky and mountainous; but full of very pleasant Vallies, and well peopled; the chief Town of it, called *Ribiero*, or *Ribiera la Grande*, a Colony of *Portuguese*, situate on a fine River, and a beautiful Haven: It was taken and plunder'd by Sir *Francis Drake*, in the Year 1585; and after by Sir *Anthony Shirly*, *Anno* 1596.

The Provinces and Possessions in *Brazil*.

Brazil is bounded on the East with *Mare del Nort*, or the *Atlantick Sea*; on the West, with *Terra Incognita*, lying betwixt it and the *Andes*; on the North with *Guiana*, from which it is parted by the great River *Maragnon*; on the South with *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. It takes its Name from the great Abundance of *Brazil Wood*, with which this Country is plentifully stor'd; as the Island of *Cyprus* from its Plenty of *Cypress Trees*.

It reaches from the 29th to the 39th Degree of South Latitude; containing 1500 Miles from North to South; and 500 Miles from East to West, or from the Sea to the *Andes*; which must be understood with Reference to the whole Extent of it; for otherwise, all that which is possessed by the *Portuguese*, is so far short of taking up the whole Breadth thereof, that they possess nothing but the Sea Coasts, and some few Leagues comparatively within the Land; the greatest Part of it being conquered, that it hath not hitherto been discovered.

The Country is full of Mountains, Rivers, and Forests; diversify'd into Hills and Plains, always pleasant and green. The Air for the most part sweet and wholesome, by reason of the fresh Winds which reign amongst them; yet in regard of its Moisture, it is reckon'd more healthful to old Men than Young. The Soil exceeding fruitful, were it not for their great Rains; however it produces Sugar-Canes in such liberal Quantities, that they yearly export from *Brazil* to *Portugal*, 150,000 Arrobes of Sugar, every Arrobe containing twenty five Bushels of our *English* Measure. There is also infinite Quantities of that Red-wood used for dying, called *Brazil* Wood; the Trees whereof are of that incredible Greatness, that whole Families live on an Arm of them, every Tree being as populous, as the most of our Villages.

The People are endowed with a pretty natural Understanding, yet generally barbarous; the Men and Women go stark naked, and on high Festival Days, hang Jewels in their Lips. Those Festival Days are, when a Company of good Neighbours come to be merry over the roasted Body of a fat

Man,

Man, which they cut in Collops, called *Boucon*, and eat with Greedineſs and Delectation. They have two vile Qualities, as being mindful of Injuries, and forgetful of Benefits. They cannot pronounce the Letters *L*, *F*, *R*; the Reaſon of which, one, being demanded, made Anſwer, was becauſe they had amongſt them, neither *Law*, *Faith*, nor *Reaſon*.

THE Country is not divided into Provinces or Counties, as in other Places; but into Prefectures, or Captainſhips, as the *Portugueſe* call them; of which there are Thirteen in Number, from the Province of *Rio de la Plata*, to that of *Guiana*; viz.

1. THE Captainſhip of St. *Vincent*, bordering on *Rio de la Plata*, inhabited by the moſt civil People of all *Brazil*; the chief Towns of which are, 1. *Santo*, at the Bottom of an Arm of the Sea, whoſe Harbour is capable of receiving Ships of Burthen; but diſtant from the Main three Leagues; a Town of no more than 120 Houſes; yet the beſt of this Prefecture is, its being beautified with a Pariſh Church, and two Convents of Friars. It was taken and held two Months by Sir *Thomas Cavendiſh*, in the Year 1695; ſince which, the *Portugueſe* have built a Wall round it, and fortified it with two Caſtles. 2. St *Vincent's*, better built, but not ſo well accommodated with a good Haven; it contains about ſeventy Houſes, and 100 Inhabitants. 3. *Iſange*. 4. *Canarea*, containing two open Boroughs, but a Harbour for ſmall Veſſels only. 5. St. *Paul*, ſituated upon a little Mountain, at the Foot whereof run two pleaſant Rivers, which empty themſelves into an adjacent River called *Iniambis*; this is furniſh'd with about 100 Houſes, a Church, two Convents, and a College of Jeſuits; nearly adjacent to which, are Mines of Gold, found in the Mountains of *Pernabiacaba*. 6. St. *Philip's*, a ſmall Town, ſeated on the Banks of the River *Iniambis*, which there begins to enlarge itſelf, and paſſing thence, falleth at laſt into the River *Parana*, one of the greateſt Tributaries to *Rio de la Plata*.

2. OF *Rio de Janeiro*, or the River of *January*; ſo called, becauſe it was poſſeſſed that Month, in the Year 1555, by *John Diaz de Solis*; but being neglected by the *Portugueſe*, it was ſeiſed on by the *French*, under the Conduct of *Villagagnone*, employed herein by Admiral *Chaſtillon*, a great Friend of the *Hugonots*, to whom it was intended as a Place of Refuge (as *New England* afterwards for the like); but within three Years after their firſt coming thither, *viz. Anno* 1558, it was regained by the *Portugueſe*, and the *French* put to the Sword. The Places of moſt Conſideration in it, are, 1. *Coligna*, the Fort and Colony of the *French*; ſo named in Honour of *Caſpar Coligni*, commonly called *Chaſtillon*, by whoſe Encouragement it was founded; ſituated on the Bay of the River *Janeiro*, which the *French* called *Ganabara*. 2. St. *Sebaſtian's*, built at the Mouth of the ſame Bay, by the *Portugueſe*, and fortified with four ſtrong Bulwarks. 3. *Angra des Reyes*, diſtant twelve Leagues Weſtward from the Mouth of the Bay, not long ſince made a *Portugueſe* Colony; beſides theſe, there are two great Boroughs of the natural *Brazilians*, in which are ſaid to be 2000 Inhabitants.

3. OF the *Holy Ghoſt*, (*del Spiritu Santo*,) one of the moſt fertile Provinces of all *Brazil*; well ſtored with Cotton, Wool, and watered with the River *Parayba*, large and full of Fiſh. The only Town of Note in it, is *Spiritu Santo*, inhabited by about 200 *Portugueſe*; the chief Buildings are a Church, dedicated to St. *Francis*, a Monaſtery of *Benedictines*, and a College of Jeſuits; the chief Conveniency, a ſafe and commodious Haven, capable of the largeſt Veſſels.

4. OF *Porto Seguro*, the ſecure Haven; ſo called by *Capralis*, who firſt diſcovered it, when being toſs'd at Sea by a terrible Tempeſt, he had here refreſhed himſelf: The chief Towns hereof, are, 1. *Porto Seguro*, built on the Top of a white Cliff which commands the Haven; of more Antiquity than Fame; of more Fame than Bigneſs; as not containing fully 200 Families. 2. *Santa Cruz*, three Leagues from the other; a poor Town, with as poor an Harbour: The Patrimony and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Aveiro*, in the Kingdom of *Portugal*. 3. *Santa Amaro*, or St. *Omers*, once of great Note for making Sugars, for which Uſe here were five *Ingenios*, or Sugar-Engines. It was deſerted by the *Portugueſe* for fear of the Natives, againſt whom they had not Power ſufficient to defend the Place; and the Sugars were purpoſely deſtroyed, that they might not come into the Hands of the barbarous People.

5. OF *Des Ilees*, or the Iſles; ſo named from certain Iſlands lying againſt the Bay, on which the principal Town is ſeated; called alſo *Itheos*, or the Iſle; the Town conſiſting of about 150 or 200 Families, contiguous to a great Lake of 12 Leagues in Compaſs, out of which that River doth ariſe, full of great, but wholſome Fiſh, which they call *Monatos*, ſome of which are affirmed to weigh 28 Pounds: This Colony was much endangered by the *Guaymuri*, a Race of Savages, more rapacious than any of their Fellows; who being driven out of their own Country, fell into this Prefecture, and had utterly deſtroyed it, if ſome of St. *George's* Relicks (as the Jeſuits ſay) ſent by their General from *Rome*, in the Year 1581, had not ſtayed their Fury, and given the *Portugueſe* the better.

6. OF *Todos los Santos*, or all Saints; ſo called from a large Bay of that Name, upon which it hath in Breadth two Leagues and a half; eighteen Fathom deep, and full of many little Iſlands, but flouriſhing and pleaſant, and well ſtored with Cotton Wool: The chief Towns hereof are, 1. *San Salvador*, built on a little Hill, on the North-ſide of the Bay, by *Thomas de Souza*: adorned with many Churches, and fortified, beſides the Wall, with three ſtrong Caſtles, the one called St. *Anthony*, the other St. *Philip*, and the third *Topoſippe*. 2. *Paripe*, which lies farther within Land, four Leagues from S. *Saviours*. 3. *Sergippe del Rey*, a ſmall Town, and ſeated on as ſmall a River; but amongſt many rich Paſtures, and ſome Veins of Silver.

7. OF *Pernambuco*, one of the richeſt Prefectures for Tobacco, Sugar, and the great Quantities of Brazil Wood, which is brought hence yearly for the Dyers, in all this Country; but deſtitute of Corn, and moſt other Neceſſaries, with which it is ſupplied from *Portugal*. The chief Towns hereof, are, 1. *Olinda*, the largeſt and beſt peopled of all *Brazil*, containing above 2000 Perſons, not reckoning Eccleſiaſticks, nor taking in the Number of Slaves, which they keep for their Sugar-works, in this Account; there are in it eight Parochial Churches, five religious Houſes, and ſome Hoſpitals; ſituate near the Sea, but on ſo uneven a Piece of Ground, as makes it not capable of a regular Fortification; the Haven being little, and not very commodious; but defended at the Entrance by a well built Caſtle, and that well planted with Pieces of Braſs Cannon. 2. *Amatta di Brazil*, ten Miles from *Olinda*; the Inhabitants whereof live by ſelling *Brazil* Wood. 3. *San Lorenzo*, a well frequented Village, but as yet unwalled. 4. *Ponair*, built on the Side of a River ſo named. 5. *Antonio de Cabo*, near the Cape of St. *Anthony*; both of good Note for the great Quantity of Sugars which are made in each. 6. *Garaſu*, about five Miles from *Olinda*; inhabited

inhabited for the moſt part by poor and mechanical People.

8. Of *Tamaraca*, ſo called from an Iſland of that Name, about five Miles Diſtance from *Olinda*; of no great Note, but for the Haven, and an impregnable Caſtle, built on the Top of a Hill for the Defence thereof: This is the leaſt Prefecture in *Brazil*, but withal the ancienteſt, extending three Leagues only in Length, and but two in Breadth.

9. Of *Paraiba*, ſo called from a River of that Name, on whoſe Banks ſtands *Paraiba* the chief Town, inhabited by about 500 *Portugueſe*, beſides Slaves and Negros; the Town is not walled, but ſecured by a ſtrong Caſtle on the Promontory called *Capo Delo*, which the *Hollanders* often in vain attempted.

10. Of *Rio Grande*, ſo called likewiſe from a River, but lately made a Prefecture, to exclude firſt the *French*, and alſo the Savages from poſſeſſing it; it is ſtrongly fortified by an impregnable Caſtle.

11. Of *Siarra*, ſo called from the Haven of *Siarra* adjoining; of no great Note, being alſo but lately made a Prefecture; the *Portugueſe* enjoying no more here but a Caſtle, and about a dozen Houſes.

12. Of *Maragnon*, an Iſland lying in the Mouth of the River ſo called; a Prefecture not inferior to any in *Brazil*, if it were well manured, the Soil being very fruitful, and well inhabited both by Natives and *Portugueſe*.

13. Of *Para*, the moſt Northern Prefecture of *Brazil*, towards *Guiana*; ſo called from the River of *Para*, ſuppoſed a Branch of the River of *Amazons*, which runneth through it; the River at the Mouth of it being two Miles in Breadth, and in the Midle of the Channel fifteen Fathoms deep: On the Banks thereof, but on an higher Ground than the reſt, the *Portugueſe* have built the Caſtle of *Para*, of a quadrangular Form, and well walled, except towards the River; the Country thereabouts is inhabited by 300 *Portugueſe*, beſides the Garriſon.

Thus much for the particular Governments of this Country; for itſelf, in general it has ſuffered the ſame Fortune with Countries of more antient Diſcovery, *viz.* to have many Maſters; the *Spaniſh*, *Dutch* and *Portugueſe*, all claiming Right to it; but the laſt however, worried by the other Two, have hitherto kept the ſureſt Foot in it, and are ſtill like to continue it in their Poſſeſſion.

THE

A DESCRIPTION OF *AFRICA*;

Containing its

Antient and Modern HISTORY:

WITH

Its Diviſions and Sub-Diviſions; the Perſons and Habits of the People; their Buildings, Manners, Laws, and Cuſtoms; their Religion and Policy: Alſo their Arts and Sciences; Trades, Manufactures, and Husbandry; with their Plants Animals, Minerals, *&c.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Situation, Extent, and Boundaries of Africa, *with the antient Hiſtory thereof; the Building of* Carthage, *and the ſeverai Mutations of that State,* &c. *Deſigned for the better underſtanding of the modern Hiſtory of* Africa, *which follows.*

AFRICA is bounded by the *Mediterranean* Sea, which ſeparates it from *Europe* on the North; by the great *Atlantick* Ocean, which ſeparates it from *America* on the Weſt: On the Eaſt it is ſeparated from *Aſia* by the *Iſthmus* of *Suez*, the *Red Sea*, and the *Eaſt-Indian* Ocean; and its Southern Boundary, is the Southern Ocean; the South Cape, called *Cape Bona Eſperanza*, or, in *Engliſh*, *The Cape of Good Hope*, being the ſouthermoſt Point of Land in *Africa*.

Africa is a *Peninſula*, the Sea waſhing on every Side, and all round it, except at that ſmall Piece of Land called the *Iſthmus* of *Suez*: For if that was cut, and a Communication by Sea made between the *Red Sea* and the *Mediterranean*, *Africa* would be entirely an Iſland.

As for the Situation of *Africa*, it extends in Latitude from *Cape Bona* near *Tunis*, in Latitude thirty-ſeven Degrees and five Minutes North, to *Cape Bona Eſperanza*, in Latitude thirty four Degrees and twenty-five Minutes South; which makes in all ſeventy-one Degrees and thirty Minutes in Latitude; which at ſixty Miles to a Degree, makes 4,290 Miles from North to South. The greateſt Dimention of *Africa* from Eaſt to Weſt, is from *Cape de Verd* to *Cape Gardefoy*, near the Streights of *Babel-Mandel*; whoſe Difference of Longitude is near ſixty-nine Degrees, and the middle Latitude between them is thirteen Degrees and ten Minutes; where there is fifty-eight Miles to a Degree of Longitude, and this brings out the Breadth of *Africa* to 4,140 Miles from Eaſt to Weſt.

Africa was once eminent for Kingdoms and States, of Wealth, Power, and extenſive Commerce; as *Egypt*, *Ethiopia*, the rich and powerful State of *Carthage*; to which we may add the Kingdoms of *Numidia* and *Mauritania*, then ſubject to *Carthage*; for the Sake of whoſe Power, Wars, and Trade, it may not be amiſs to give an Abſtract of the antient Hiſtory of *Africa*, as a proper Introduction to give Light to the reſt.

The antient Hiſtory of AFRICA.

Note. *As for the Hiſtory of* Egypt, *which is the North-Eaſt Part of* Africa, *it is touched upon in the Deſcription of the* Turkiſh *Empire, where the Pyramids, and other Curioſities and Antiquities, are deſcribed, and for the Deſcription of which I ſhall refer the Reader to Chap.* I. *and* II. *of the* Turkiſh *Empire in* Africa, *Page* 319. *I ſhall now proceed to the Weſtward, and furniſh the antient Hiſtory of* Africa.

AFTER the *Egyptians*, the next People that made any Figure in *Africa*, were the *Phœnicians* or *Canaanites*. The North Coaſt, next

to the *Mediterranean*, was at first all peopled by the *Egyptians*, all the Way to the *Streights* Mouth, and to the *Atlantick* Ocean: And when the *Phœnicians* arrived upon that Coast, after they were driven out of their own Country by *Joshua* and the *Israelites*, they found those *Egyptian* Inhabitants in Possession: Whereupon, by fair Means, they obtained an Opportunity to traffick, and at last to settle, where *Carthage* afterwards stood; which is now the Kingdom of *Tunis*, or, according to the *Romans*, *Africa Proper*. To that Place where *Carthage* since stood, the *Phœnicians* sent a Colony that built the Town of *Utica*; and afterwards another Colony of them laid the Foundation of *Carthage*, about 883 Years before *Christ*: But *Carthage* was built and finished by *Dido*, a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Princess, and Sister to *Pigmalion* King of *Tyre*. It is said, and indeed with good Probability, that the first Occasion of her going to settle in *Africa*, was as follows.

Queen *Dido*

Dido married a very rich Relation, named *Acerbas*; and *Pigmalion* King of *Tyre*, who was her Brother, caused him to be assassinated, thinking to seize his great Wealth: But *Dido* was too sharp for him; for perceiving what he aimed at by what he had done, she privately and expeditiously got some Ships, and transported herself and her Husband's Effects to *Africa*, and disappointed *Pygmalion* of his wicked Design; and being settled here among her Country People, she built the once famous City of *Carthage*. She called it *Carthada*, or the New Town, in Opposition to *Utica*, or the Old Town, built before by her Countrymen.

Builds *Carthage*

We have different Accounts of Queen *Dido*'s Death. One is, that *Iarbas* King of *Getulia* made Love to her; but she, having made a Vow never to marry, hated his Addresses, and prepared her Funeral Pile; and when *Iarbas* came next to visit her, she ascended the Pile with a Poniard, and so concluded his Courtship with her own Life.

Kills herself

I dare not assert this for Fact; for these extravagant heroick Actions taste so high-seasoned of Heathen Poetry, that they will not relish in every thinking Person's Palate. It is pity that our Histories, which should set us to Rights in real Facts, should have their genuine Sense so murdered by the Adulteration of Heathen Poetry, that the Truth must either be lost, or if Truth happens to be interspersed you do not know it from Falshood. But no Wonder at this, when even our School Books, which should be the Path-way to sound and wholesome Literature, are so deeply allayed with heathenish Notions, that he would be a School Atheist, that should not profess to believe that *Mars* is the God of War, *Apollo* the God of Wisdom, *&c.* Not to mention others of those Fictions, so much more ridiculous that they are not fit to be mentioned here, or in any Book where only Fact is the grand Subject.

Wars.

The first War that we hear *Carthage* was ingaged in, was with the *Africans*, who fought them for refusing to pay the annual Tribute, which they agreed to pay for Leave to build *Carthage*: But, by Supplies and Reinforcements from *Tyre*, they were soon able, not only to dispute the Tribute, but to spread their Arms and Conquests further in *Africa*.

The next War was with the City of *Cyrene*, which stood in *Barca*, between *Carthage* and *Egypt*: They differed about the Limits of their respective Territories, and to determine that, two Men set out, one from *Carthage* to *Cyrene*, the other from *Cyrene* to *Carthage*, both at the same Moment of Time, and where they met was to determine the Bounds that Way. Some, by I do not know what superstitious Argument, alledged that the two young Men, each as a Testimony of his Fidelity in walking, agreed to be buried alive where they met: But I shall suspend my Belief of this last Part of the Story, as to their being buried alive, and rank it amongst the Heathen Poetry or *Romish* Legends, and think it sufficient to observe, that there were two Altars erected at these Boundaries, which stood many Years; and it is not improbable that they might be upon the Graves of those two young Men too, if they were buried there upon the said Occasion of bounding the two Empires.

When they had subdued *Barca*, they extended their Conquests further to the Westward, as far as the *Atlantick* Ocean; and some say as far as *Cape de Verd* to the Southward. They also subdued *Majorca*, *Minorca*, and *Ivica*; and thence found themselves an easy Passage to *Spain*. Here they first settled at *Cadiz*, an antient Colony of their old Countrymen the *Tyrians*. *Cadiz* was then at War with *Spain*, and not being able to maintain their Ground, called the *Carthaginians* to their Assistance; who not only defended *Cadiz*, but carried on an offensive War in the *Spanish* Dominions against *Spain*. The *Spaniards* being divided, South *Spain* became an easy Conquest to them; and even *Cadiz*, that called them in, was now forced to submit to their Laws and Government. But this is not the first, nor probably will it be the last Instance of a People being subdued, by introducing Crowds and Armies of Foreigners into their Country. It is fresh in History how the antient *Britons*, being overpowered by the *Picts* and *Scots*, sent for the *Saxons to their Aid*: But they, seeing the Fatness of their Land, took Possession of it for themselves, and sent the antient *Britons*, the first Possessors, to seek Shelter elsewhere.

About 484 Years before *Christ*, the *Carthaginians* entered into an Alliance with *Xerxes* King of *Persia*, against *Greece*; and while he marched with a very powerful Army to attack *Greece* upon the Continent, the *Carthaginians* transported an Army of (some say) 300,000 Men into *Sicily*, thinking to reduce all the *Grecian* Cities in that Island: But this Attempt miscarried, the Army being cut to Pieces; as did another Attempt afterwards upon the said *Grecian* Cities in *Sicily*, when the *Carthaginian* Army having attacked *Syracuse*, and were in Hopes to carry all before them, a Plague broke out in the Army, and destroyed a great Part of them. They that escaped the Plague, died mostly by the Sword of the *Syracusians*. This caused an Insurrection in *Africa*, and the Malecontents laid Siege to *Carthage* itself: But being destitute of Provision, and contending about Superiority, they soon dispersed, and the Cloud that hung over *Carthage* immediately disappeared: But a darker and more threatning one soon sprung up; for *Agathocles* the *Syracusan* General, in Confederacy with some of the *African* Princes, laid so hot a Siege to *Carthage*, that they bid fair for the total Subversion of the State and Government.

Carthage besieged

The *Carthaginians*, in this Distress, began to conclude that all this Affliction came upon them for the Neglect of some of their diabolical Pieces of Worship; especially in their not sacrificing a certain Number of Children, and those of the best Rank, to *Saturn*: Therefore, to atone for this Omission, they at once sacrificed 200 Children to the inraged Deity. But even here was enough to deter them from such bloody Sacrifices for the future; for notwithstanding their pretended Atonement, the Affairs of the *Carthaginians* grew still more desperate. *Bomilcar* then General thought

thought, by taking Advantage of their Diſtreſs, to get himſelf inveſted with Sovereign Power over them; in order to which he fomented an Inſurrection to weaken them within the City, while the Enemy kept them employed from without: But he was ſoon deſerted, and crucified for his Villany, which by this Means was brought to an End.

Soon after this, *Agathocles* the *Grecian* General happened to have a Miſunderſtanding between him and his *African* Allies, and in a Rage, luckily for *Carthage*, raiſed the Siege, and went over into *Sicily*; giving the *Carthaginians* an Opportunity to recover the Places they had loſt, and to eſtabliſh their Empire again in *Africa*.

But at this Time both *Italy* and *Sicily* were threatned with an Invaſion by *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*: The *Carthaginians* therefore renewed their Confederacy with the *Romans*, for the Security of their Territories in *Sicily*. But *Pyrrhus* made a Deſcent there with his Forces, and reduced all the *Carthaginian* Towns, except *Lilybæum*, which made a vigorous Defence. At laſt the *Romans* gaining Advantage of *Pyrrhus* in *Italy*, he was forced to abandon all his Conqueſts in *Sicily*, to go and ſecure thoſe on the Continent. But after eight Times being defeated by the *Romans* in *Italy*, he was forced to quit his Attempts in that Country alſo.

The *Romans* having now expelled all their Enemies out of *Italy*, they began to think of inlarging their Empire by new Conqueſts; and firſt they thought of invading *Sicily*, which was ſeparated from them only by the *Fare of Meſſina*, about three Miles over; and to forward his Deſign, ſome *Sicilian* Malecontents ſeized *Meſſina*, and offered to deliver it to the *Romans*; which they thankfully, though villainouſly, accepted, and ſent Forces to ſupport thoſe Rebels. This occaſioned that War between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, called the firſt *Punick* War, begun in the Year before *Chriſt* 266, and after the building of *Rome* 488.

The *Sicilians* were not able to ſtand before the *Romans*, who were ſuch expert Soldiers, nor to meet them in the Field, but retired into the ſtrong Towns near the Sea, where they could be relieved by their Fleets, the *Romans* as yet having no Shipping to oppoſe them. The *Carthaginians'* Navigation flouriſhing, they enriched themſelves by this War, while the *Romans* grew poor, exhauſting both Men and Money, and being deſtitute of all freſh Supplies of either by Sea.

The *Romans* thus hemmed in, and confined to the Land, plucked up their Spirits, and reſolved to diſpute the Dominion of the Sea with the *Carthaginians*; and in order thereto, collected naval Stores and Ship-Builders from all Quarters, and Foreign Mariners alſo; ſo that in a few Months Time, they built, rigged, and manned, a Fleet bold enough to meet the *Carthaginians*: which accordingly they did, and, to the great Surprize of the *Carthaginians*, the *Roman* Galleys had Machines or Engines, by which they could grapple the Enemies Ships, and deprive them of all the Advantage of their Sails. The Machine it was a great Piece of Timber armed with Hooks and Chains, which when the Enemy's Ship approached them they let down into her with Pullies; and it grappled her ſo faſt, that it was impoſſible for the Veſſel ſo grappled to diſengage herſelf, till the firſt beat the Enemy's Crew.

Thus equipped, the *Roman* new Fleet put to Sea, under the Command of their Admiral *Duilius*, with 120 Gallies. The *Carthaginian* Fleet of 130 Veſſels, commanded by *Hannibal*, waited their Motion, longing to meet thoſe raw undiſciplined *Romans*, as they thought them. In a Word, both Sides being eagerly willing, they ſoon came to an Engagement. The *Carthaginians* at firſt looked upon the *Romans* with the utmoſt Contempt: But ſoon, to their great Surprize, they found themſelves ſo grappled and entangled, that they could neither fight nor run away: Only the two Ships that were faſt together, could fight as upon firm Land. In the mean time the *Romans*, the firſt Inventors of this new Way of fighting, ſo provided for ſuch very cloſe Quarters, gained an entire Victory, took four-ſcore Sail of *Hannibal's* Gallies, of which his own was one, only he himſelf narrowly eſcaped with his Boat.

The *Carthaginians* were ſo diſcouraged by this Defeat, that they could not help ſuffering the *Romans* to lord it in the *Mediterranean* for two Years without Oppoſition; but awaking out of their Lethargy, they fitted out a Fleet of 150 Gallies, full and well-manned; and with them they met the *Roman* Fleet of 130 Gallies: And although one would think the *Carthaginians* might, by their firſt late Experiment, have been ſufficiently provided againſt the *Roman* grappling Irons; yet the *Romans* had got more Experience in maritime Affairs, or had more *Grecians* in their Service; for in this Engagement they took no leſs than ſixty of the *Carthaginian* Gallies. But in this Fight twenty-four *Roman* Galleys were deſtroyed, which takes off ſomething of the vaſt Glory of the Victory.

The *Romans*, elevated with this Succeſs, invaded *Africa* by Land with a ſtrong Army, under the Command of *M. Atilius Regulus* and *L. Manlius*, their Conſuls; and the *Carthaginians* quiting the Field, and retiring to their ſtrong Towns, the *Romans* took *Clypea*, a Sea Port; ravaged the Country; took 20,000 Priſoners; beſides large Flocks and Herds: Whereupon *Manlius* was ordered Home, and *Regulus* to remain in *Africa*, with 15,000 Men and 500 Horſe, alſo forty Gallies to attend his Motion by Sea. Theſe ſmall Numbers were now thought ſufficient, in the preſent low State of *Carthage*, to make Head againſt what Force they could procure.

Regulus now took *Adis*, a ſtrong fortified Town in *Africa*, and 200 Towns more; of which *Tunis* was one, a Place near *Carthage*. And offering Terms to *Carthage*, he would allow them no other than that they ſhould abſolutely ſurrender themſelves to be a Province of *Rome*. But they rejected his Offer, and prepared for a vigorous Defence; and by Help of ſome Reinforcements from *Greece*, they entirely defeated the *Romans*; whole General *Regulus*, with 500 more were taken Priſoners, and only 2,000 eſcaped to *Clypea*, all the reſt of the *Romans* being killed upon the Spot.

In the mean time the *Romans* obtained a great Victory over the *Carthaginians* in *Sicily*, and took from them above 120 Elephants. In ſhort, finding the *Romans* too ſtrong for them, *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian* General was ordered to make it up with them upon the beſt Terms he could; Which were, 1. That the *Carthaginians* ſhould evacuate *Sicily*, and never more make War with the *Syracuſans* or their Allies. 2. That they ſhould releaſe all the *Roman* Priſoners, without Ranſom, and pay them 3,200 *Euboic* Talents (more than half a Million Sterling) within ten Years. And this concluded the firſt *Punick* War, after a Continuation of more than twenty-four Years.

The *Carthaginians* being poor, and ſtill obliged to pay great Sums to the *Romans*, they could not well pay off and diſband the mercenary Troops in their Service; but only, on their Re-

turn

turn from *Sicily*, put them into Quarters of Refreshment, and desired them for the present to accept of a bare Subsistence, till they could pay them off. This so incensed the Soldiers, that it caused a Mutiny, and 20,000 of them assembled at *Tunis*, inviting the rest to meet them there and join them. The *Carthaginians*, seeing the Soldiers thus exasperated for Want of their Wages, deputed *Gisgo* their General to treat with the chief Mutineers, and to offer them Terms: But two of the chief of them, *Spendius* and *Matho*, thinking they had offended beyond the Reach of Pardon or Reconciliation, dissuaded all the rest from submitting; insinuating, that as they were deemed open Rebels, they had nothing now to expect but Victory or Death, and that they had better die like brave Men, Sword in Hand, than to be disarmed like Sheep, and throw themselves at the Feet of an incensed Government, from whom no Mercy could be expected.

This Speech spirited up the Rebels, insomuch that they resolved to form themselves into a Body, and accordingly they chose the above-mentioned *Spendius* and *Matho* for their Generals, who immediately seized all the Money that *Gisgo* brought to compound with the Army, and pay them in Part, to make them easy: And having thus plundered *Gisgo*, they made him and his Attendants Prisoners. The Taxes in *Africa* being now very heavy, and no Hopes of Redress, all the great Towns, except *Utica* and *Hippacra*, declare for the Rebels.

But the *Carthaginians* Treasure not being quite exhausted, they armed all their Citizens, and took other Mercenaries into their Pay: And creating *Amilcar* their General, he soon raised the Siege that the Rebels had laid to *Carthage*, and defeated a great Body of their Forces. Then cutting off their Provisions, they were reduced to the Necessity of eating one another. But continuing still obstinate, they resolved to make the best of their Lives, and fight it out; and consequently a Battle ensued, in which most of the Rebels were cut to Pieces, or trod to Death with Elephants. Part of them, however, escaped to *Tunis*, resolving to defend it to the last Extremity; the two grand Rebels, *Spendius* and *Matho*, being also then in *Tunis*, amongst their own Party.

Spendius *and* Matho *executed.*

Amilcar having this Opportunity, invested *Tunis*, and soon found Means to fetch *Spendius* out of his Sanctuary, and caused him, with several other Rebels whom he had taken, to be crucified in Sight of the Town. This Sight so inraged *Matho*, the other grand Rebel, that he, resolute and impatient of Revenge at any Price, made a Sally, surprized *Hannibal*, one of the *Carthaginian* Generals, took several of his Men, and caused them to be crucified upon the Walls, in Return for the Death of *Spendius*, and before *Amilcar* and his Army. But *Matho*'s Triumph was but short; for *Amilcar*'s Forces took *Tunis*, and in it *Matho*; where they first put him to the most exquisite Torments, and then executed him, and put an End to his miserable Life. This finished the *African* War, the most cruel that ever was known in any Age, and which continued between three and four Years.

The *Carthaginians* still laboured under the Injustice and Oppression of the *Romans*; always, but hitherto in vain, struggling to extricate themselves; in order to which, they first secured their Territories in *Spain*, and formed Alliances with the Princes of *Gaul* as well as *Spain*, before they would pretend to attack the *Romans*. At this Time *Amilcar* was made Viceroy of all their *European* Dominions, and had great Success against the Allies of *Rome*, and in bringing others to the Interest of *Carthage*: But here a sudden Stop was put to his Progress, he being killed in an Engagement with the Enemy. *Anno Mundi*

Asdrubal succeeded his Father-in-Law; and not only defended, but enlarged his Predecessor's Acquisitions in *Spain*. He built *New Carthage*, now called *Carthagena*, in *Spain*; the *Spaniards* all the while endeavouring to subvert his Designs, and destroy his Interest, but in vain: And as they found themselves pretty equally matched, the two States, *Rome* and *Carthage*, to prevent more Blood-shed, came to the following Agreement, *viz.* That the River *Iberus*, or *Ebro* in *Spain*, should be the Boundary between the *Carthaginians* and *Romans*, and their respective Allies; only the City of *Saguntum*, on the West Side of the *Ebro*, being in Alliance with the *Romans*, was included on their Part in the Treaty.

Asdrubal having been General in *Spain* eight Years, was assassinated; and *Hannibal* the Son of *Amilcar*, being now about three and twenty Years of Age, and having served in *Spain* some Years under *Asdrubal*, was made General on that Side, and his first Work was to reduce such *Spanish* Princes as he thought necessary; which done, he besieged *Saguntum*, who sent to the *Romans* for Succour; but they only sent Orders to *Hannibal* to raise the Siege; but he, eager for his Prey, took the Town, and divided the Plunder among his Soldiers.

The *Romans*, thinking this a Violation of the Peace then subsisting between them and the *Carthaginians*, demanded that *Hannibal* might be delivered up to them: But so far from that, that the Senate of *Carthage* justified what he had done; which so irritated the *Romans*, that they declared War against them; and thus began the second *Punic* War, in the Year before *Christ* 201. *Of which see more in the former Part of this Book, Page* 596.

CHAP

CHAP. II.

Of the modern History and present State of Africa, *as to its grand Divisions and Subdivisions; with the Customs, Manners, and Dress of the several Inhabitants: And first, of* Ethiopia Superior, *and* Zanguebar.

BY what has been said, we find that *Africa*, even in its antient State, was a populous Country; especially the North Part of it, where *Carthage* stood, whose Commerce was extended to most Part of the then known World: But that State declining, the *Carthaginians* not only neglected their Trade, but even the Cultivation of their Land; not from a Principle of Slothfulness as knowing that they were become a Province of *Rome*, they were liable to be plundered at the Pleasure of the voracious Viceroys, sent from *Rome* and set over them. Therefore they improved no more Land than for present Subsistance; and thus the Decay of Trade, and Neglect of improving their Land, was one of the first Steps to their Ruin.

From decline.

BUT that was not all; for in the fifth Century, in the Decline of the *Roman* Empire, the North of *Africa* was over-run with the *Vandals*, a rude Northern People, who destroyed Arts and Sciences wherever they came: And, as if Ruin and Destruction still attended this Country, the *Saracens* in the seventh Century made an easy and sudden Conquest of *Egypt* and *Barbary*: And, lastly, these were succeeded by the *Turks*, by whom we may say the Ruin of that once flourishing Part of the World was compleated.

BUT all this did not alter the natural Fruitfulness of the Soil, which is not that barren desart Part of the World that People take it to be; but the Idleness of the wretched Inhabitants hath got it that Character, who not cultivating their Land, live upon the Plunder of one another, or of them who have most Industry, for which there is at this Rate no Encouragement. This alone makes the Country lie in Ruins; for not only the North Part is fruitful, where improved, but the South Part also produceth good Corn and Wine, and Herds of fine Cattle; and even between the Tropicks, there are Multitudes of People, fine Rivers, and a rich Soil; and here it is that we meet with the best Gold and Ivory, besides above 200,000 Negro Slaves sent yearly from hence to *America*; which is a sufficient Proof that *Africa*, between the Tropicks, is very populous, as well as rich. Their Trade by Sea is but of little Consequence; and their Men of War, or rather Pirates, from *Sallee*, *Algier*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoli*, are so inconsiderable, that, taken all together, they would not be able to resist a Squadron of five *English* Men of War; though singly meeting the *European* Merchant Ships, they often do us considerable Damage.

Divided into ten.

Africa, according to the present Geography, falls under these ten grand Divisions. 1. *Egypt*, 2. *Ethiopia Superior*. 3. *Zanguebar*. (These in the East Part of *Africa*.) 4. The lower *Ethiopia*, consisting of *Monomugi*, *Monomopotapa*, and *Caffraria* (the South Part of *Africa*.) 5. *Congo* and *Guinea*, on the South-West. 6. *Negroland*, or *Nigritia*, the middle of *Africa*, between North and South, but extending almost quite cross the Country from East to West, on both Sides the great River *Niger*. 7. *Zaara*, or the Desart North of *Nigritia*. 8. *Biledulegrid* (the antient *Numidia*) on the North of *Zaara*. 9. The Empire of *Fez* and *Morocco*, being the North-West Part of *Africa*, extending to the *Mediterranean* on the North, and to the *Atlantick* Ocean on the West. And, 10. *Barbary*, East of *Fez* and *Morocco*, extending North to the *Mediterranean*, including the Country of *Algier*, *Tunis*, *Tripoli*, and *Barca*.

1. *Egypt* has been already described. (*See the* Turkish *Empire in* Africa, *Chap.* I & II, *Page* 319 *of this History.*) *Egypt.*

2. *Ethiopia Superior*, as comprehending *Abyssina*, and in it *Nubia*, *Abex*, and *Aian*, is bounded on the North by *Egypt* and the Desart of *Barca*, and on the East by the *Red-Sea* and the Eastern Ocean; by *Zanguebar* and Part of *Nigritia* on the South, and by *Zaara* and another Part of *Nigritia* on the West; extending from Latitude 5 to 20 North, and from the Eastern Ocean to *Nigritia* East and West. Some think, and not without good Probability, that this is the Kingdom antiently governed by the Queen of *Sheba*, called the Queen of the South; and afterwards by Queen *Candace*, whose Eunuch was converted and baptized by *Philip*.

Abyssina, thus considered, is a Country of near 1,000 Miles Extent, and mostly to the Northward of the Equinoctial. The River *Nile* rises near the Middle of this Country, and after various Courses, enriching the Soil of the Country as it goes by its overflowing, as also being very commodious for their Inland Commerce by Water-Carriage (though after its entring *Egypt*, there are so many Cataracts, or steep Falls, that no Water-Carriage can be performed upon it; it runs through *Grand Cairo*, and falls by several Mouths into the *Mediterranean*, one of the Westermost Branches falling into the Sea at *Alexandria*. There is another great River, called the *Hauache*, which rises in this Country, and falls into the *Red-Sea*. The great Rivers *Morabi* and *Albara* rise also in this Country, and running to the Northward fall into the *Nile* in the Province of *Semar*. Head of *Nile*.

THIS Country, especially where the fruitful Moisture of the overflowing *Nile* bestows its Influence, produceth Plenty of Dates, Corn, Rice, Millet, Grapes, Flax, Cotton, Sugar, Salt, and Sulphur. Their Flax is deemed the best in the World, as is very probable; because when the fine Linnen spoke of in Scripture, was to have a proper Epithet annexed to express its Excellency, it was called *the fine Linnen of* Egypt.

HERE is Plenty of Mines of Silver and Copper; the last of which they work, and have Abundance of the Metal. They have the largest Emeralds in the World. They have Plenty of very large Oxen, Sheep, and Cattle; as also of wild Beasts, Crocodiles, &c. But above all, the Country abounds in such fine Horses, that it is thought those fine Horses, distinguished by the Name of *Arabian* Horses, are really bred in *Abyssina*. Mines.

Ethiopia was a mighty Empire under one Sovereign, who then commanded the Sea Coast as

well as the Inland Country; but since their Territories are divided into so little Principalities, and they seldom united, the *Turks* govern them as they please, and confine them from trading with other Parts of the World.

Division. THE Kingdom of *Abissina* is divided into Provinces: I shall just name them. *Ambara*, whose chief Town *Ambara* is the Capital of *Abissina*. 2. *Bagamedri*. 3. *Dambea*. 4. *Shoa*. 5. *Gojam*. 6. *Bugna*. 7. *Samen*. 8. *Gonga*. 9. *Walaka*. The King of *Abissina* doth not keep his Court in any of those great Towns, but in the Camp: But he is follow'd by so many Nobility, Officers, Tradesmen, Suttlers, &c. that the Camp is like a Market Town, dispos'd in Streets, and well supply'd with Provisions and Necessaries of all Kinds. The King's Tent is in the midst of the Camp, and all the rest nearer or more remote, according to their Dignity or Rank.

Stature and Complexion. THE *Ethiopians* are of a good Stature, a deep black Complexion; but have not such thick Lips and flat Noses as the *Guinea* Negroes. The better Sort of them wear Vests of Silk, Stuffs, or Cotton; but the Poor make shift with a Piece of Skin, or any coarse Stuff, to throw about their Middle. Their Bread is thin Cakes, bak'd upon the Hearth. They eat all Sorts of Flesh, but that of Swine, and the others that were prohibited the *Jews*. The common People live mostly upon Milk, Butter, Cheese, Roots, Herbs, and what their Flocks and Herds produce. They seldom roast their Meat, but boil or stew it; being very fond of the Broth or Soup. Honey being very plenty, they drink Abundance of Mead, or Metheglin; but they have also Liquors made of Wheat and Rice, and the Quality drink some Wine.

Mechanicks THE *Jews* are the only Weavers and Smiths amongst them: But as for Carpenters and Taylors, and other Handicrafts, they are always of the the same Trade as their Fathers; and every Trade forms a Sort of a separate Colony or Neighbourhood, and mixes not with any other Trade or Tribe, either by Marriage or otherwise.

Buildings THEIR Buildings are mostly poor Huts, built of Clay and Splinters. They are the less ambitious of stately Houses, because, as above observ'd, most of the People of Rank and Dignity, follow the King in the Camp. Their Furniture is of Silk, Stuff, Callicoes, and Linnen for Cloathing, and Carpets which they have from the *Turks* by the *Red-Sea*, who take in Exchange the Gold, Emeralds, and fine Horses of *Abissina*; which confirms the former Conjecture, of the *Arabian* fine Horses coming from thence.

IN travelling they ride upon Mules or Camels; the former being the fittest to climb the Mountains, and the latter to travel their sandy hot Plains. But in fighting they use Horses. The Troopers however in their Marches, ride on Mules, to keep their Horses vigorous against the Day of Battle. Their Arms are Bows, Arrows, Launces, and Swords, and some few Fire Arms. The Wars of the King of *Abissina* are chiefly with the *Ethiopian* Princes, whom the *Turks* have assisted to suppress that Prince's Power: And indeed while they weakened one another, the *Turks* encroached upon both, and possessed themselves of that Part of the Country bordering upon the *Red-Sea*, thereby gaining and securing a Trade with *Abissina*, and restraining that King from Trade or Communication with that, or any other Part of the World, but what they pleased.

Titles of the Prince THE King of *Abissina*, according to the *Portuguese*, who visited this Country in the 16th Century, was then call'd *Presser John*, and the Kingdom, *Presser John's* Land. Some of the *Europeans* stile him Emperor. The *Persians* stile him *Padsha*, the Dispoter of Kingdoms, which is the highest Title in *Asia*.

THE King's Revenues are paid in Kind, Revenue not in Money; that being very scarce: But they have pure Gold, which is cast up in the Sands of the Rivers, or washed out of the Sides of the Mountains: For *though they have Gold Mines, yet they do not work one. The King also lays a Duty upon all Merchandize, brought from *Turkey* by the *Red-Sea*; the Farmers give a thirtieth Part of all the Produce of their Land, as Grain, Cattle, &c. which plentifully furnishes his Table, and that of his Court and Guards; every Weaver, and other Mechanick, presents him with Part of his Manufacture; which furnishes his Officers and Servants with Cloaths, and other Necessaries. To this we may add, his creating Knights of the Order of St. *Anthony*, every one of whom pays him a Fine upon his being knighted; and it is said, he has no less than 12,000 Knights of that Order in his Army.

THIS Emperor is crown'd with a Coronet, set with glittering Stones. It is plac'd upon his Head by the Primate, or Metropolitan, in Presence of the Nobility and Clergy, with proper Rejoicing upon the Occasion; but his intended Successor is kept in Prison, in the most profound Ignorance, till he is sent for from thence to be advanced to the Imperial Dignity. They have no written Laws, but certain Customs which they Laws. remember; by which, and the Standard of their own Reason, they determine Causes, and punish Offenders. But in the latter Case, sometimes the King grants, or some great Lord procures, a Reprieve; Capital Criminals are beheaded, hang'd, stoned, or sometimes drubb'd to Death with Clubs: But Murderers are deliver'd into the Hand of the Relations of the murder'd Persons, to torture or make a Slave of him, or execute him by what Death they think fit. For Theft the Offender is whipp'd; but Adultery is punish'd with Death. In Civil Cases, every Man may plead his own Cause before their respective Lords. There are no Lawyers there, to wrest a Cause in Favour of him that has got the most Money, and ruin the poor Man who has Justice on his Side. But Justice, as impartially influenced by Merit or Demerit, determines the final Sentence.

THEIR Religion is a Mixture of Christianity Religion and Judaism; for they keep both Sabbaths. As *Jews* they circumcise their Children, and as Christians they baptize them; and when such come to Years of Maturity, they receive the holy Communion. If a Person is not baptis'd till he is an Adult, he is brought to some River or Pond, and plunged three Times in the Water by two Deacons, and *baptis'd in the Name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost*, &c. And when the Ceremony of Baptism is over, he is introduc'd to the Church, and receives the holy Communion, which they give in both Kinds; only instead of Wine they use Water, in which the bruis'd Stones of Raisons have been infus'd, which, after the Bread, the Deacon delivers to both Laity and Clergy, with a Spoon to each Person singly. They acknowledge the same Books of Scripture for a Rule of Faith, as we do; they use the *Nicene Creed*, but not the *Apostles' Creed*.

THEY formerly acknowledg'd the Bishop of *Rome* to be first Patriarch, but deny'd his Supremacy over the Church: But when the *Portuguese* Missionaries came there, under a Pretence of converting them to Christianity, they had almost made good Catholicks of them, and perswaded their Emperors to acknowledge the Pope's Supremacy; to admit a Patriarch from *Rome*, to abolish their ancient religious Rites and Ceremonies, and to conform intirely to those of the Church of *Rome*. This was the Way of the Popish Missionaries making Converts; and such is their Way yet, where their Emissaries find Opportunity to delude the

Ignorant,

Ignorant, and to exerciſe their Power to draw them over to their corrupt Principles; but the People were ſo well grounded in their religious Principles, that with the utmoſt Abhorrence of Popery, they roſe in Arms againſt the Emperor, which occaſion'd a long Civil War: But the Emperors ſtill ſucceſſively profeſſing the Popiſh Religion, the Jeſuits thought they had gain'd their Point, and thereupon, under Pretence of maintaining the Pope's Eccleſiaſtical Supremacy, took upon them to direct almoſt all ſecular Affairs, and began to look upon the King as Viceroy to his Holineſs, rather than as Sovereign of the Country: And they having erected and garriſon'd ſeveral Fortreſſes, ſent for *European* Forces to maintain their uſurp'd Power. This thoroughly awak'd the Emperor, and ſo open'd his Eyes, as well as thoſe of the Nobility, *&c.* that they reſolv'd one and all to aboliſh Popery, and reſtore their ancient Religion; and to put this Reſolution in immediate Execution, the Romiſh Prieſts were ſacrificed to the People's Fury, and the Patriarch himſelf narrowly eſcap'd with his Life. And the Emperor continu'd ſo incens'd, that afterwards, when three Capuchins came as far as *Squaquena*, upon the *Red-Sea*, and ſent Letters to the Emperor to deſire Leave to come into his Country again, he, without any Anſwer to them, ſent to the *Turkiſh* Baſſa, who commanded on that Coaſt, to ſend him the Heads of thoſe Capuchins; which he not only did, but ſtuff'd their Skins, and ſent them alſo; that he might ſee they were *Franks* by their Colour, and might by their ſhav'd Crowns know them to be Prieſts, or Fryars. Such Contempt they were held in, when the Deſigns of thoſe pretended Reformers were diſcover'd,

Marriages

THE Law forbids any more Wives than one; and ſeveral poor People are excommunicated that are guilty of Polygamy: But the Emperor diſpenſes with it, and allows himſelf a Hundred at leaſt. Their Marriages are only Contracts before Friends, bleſs'd afterwards by the Prieſt. When any one dies, the Corpſe is wrapp'd up in a Cloth, and carried upon a Bier to the Burying-place, by ſome of the Clergy, who read ſome Paſſages in the *Pſalms* upon that Occaſion. The Relations and Friends appear for ſome Time afterwards in Rags and torn Cloaths, that being a Way whereby they think they beſt expreſs their Sorrow for their deceaſed Friends; and this indeed ſeems to conform to the Cuſtom of the Ancients, who upon any Surpriſe of exceſſive Grief, *Rent their Cloaths*, &c.

Language.

THE *Arabick* Language is that wherein the Scriptures, Liturgy, and Acts of State are written; the Nobility uſe a Language call'd the *Amarick*, from its being ſpoken chiefly in *Amara*: The common People ſpeak the *Ethiopick*. Both theſe are compos'd of a Mixture of *Arabick*, *Hebrew*, and *Chaldee*.

Nubia

Nubia is an inland Country, bounded on the North by *Egypt* and the Deſarts of *Barca*; and on the Eaſt by *Abyſſina*: By the lower *Ethiopia* on the South, and by *Zaara* on the Weſt. But this, as well as *Abex* and *Aian*, are inland Countries, and conſequently we can have but very imperfect Accounts of them: Beſides, they being Parts of *Ethiopia*, need not any particular Deſcription.

Zanguebar

Zanguebar includes all the Eaſt Coaſt of *Africa*, from 5 Degrees North, to 28 South. It is bounded on the Eaſt, by the Eaſtern Ocean; by *Aian* on the North; on the Weſt by the unknown Countries call'd *Ethiopia Inferior*; and by *Caffraria* on the South. It contains the Countries of *Magadoxa*, *Melinda*, *Quiloa*, *Mozambique*, and *Zofala*.

Magadoxa

THE Country of *Magadoxa* lies to the Northward of the Equator. The chief Town, of the ſame Name, ſtands upon the Mouth of a River, which falls into the Eaſtern Ocean in 3 Degrees North Latitude. The People here, eſpecially upon this Coaſt, are ſubject to the *Portugueſe*. This Country affords very little Merchandize or Cattle, except a Breed of fine Horſes, which the *Portugueſe* deal in, and ſell to the *Arabs*; whence, as above obſerv'd, they are call'd *Arabian* Horſes. The People are Blacks, with flat Noſes and thick Lips, like the Negroes in *Guinea*.

Melinda.

THE Country of *Melinda* lies on the South of the Line. Its chief Town is of the ſame Name, on an Iſland at the Mouth of the River *Melinda*, in near 3 Degrees South Latitude. It is the Capital of the *Portugueſe* Dominions in *Africa*, and is a large populous City; has a good Harbour, and is defended by a ſtrong Citadel. It has ſeventeen Churches, and Plenty of Ware-houſes, ſtock'd with *European* Goods; with which they trade with the Natives for Gold, Elephants Teeth, Slaves, Oſtrich Feathers, Wax, and Drugs; ſuch as Senna, Aloes, Malegetta, Civet, Ambergreaſe and Frankincenſe; alſo Rice, Millet, Sugar and Fruit. The City of *Melinda* and the Iſland on which it ſtands, are ſaid to contain 200,000 Soul.

Religion.

THEIR King is a *Mahometan*; but the People moſtly *Pagans*, except thoſe deſcended of the *Portugueſe*. All the Inhabitants here, as in *Magadoxa*, are ſubject to the *Portugueſe*: The chief publick Buildings are the Churches and Monaſteries, the Governor's Palace, the Town-Hall, *&c.* all which are ſumptuouſly built, conſidering the Country they are in; and though we are not comparing them with *Engliſh* Buildings, yet they exceed any that are to be found elſewhere in *Africa*.

Quiloa.

THE Country of *Quiloa* lies Southward of *Melinda*, contiguous to it, and on the ſame Coaſt. The *Portugueſe* have it in Poſſeſſion, but make little of it, by reaſon of its unwholſom Air and Situation: Only they hold the King tributary to them, as the reſt of the Princes upon this Coaſt are; he paying them a Tribute in Gold, to the Value of 100,000 Cruſadoes yearly. Here are excellent Sugar Canes; but the *Portugueſe* will not be at the Pains to improve them, becauſe they have great Quantities of Sugar brought over every Year from *Brazil*, by their Countrymen who come hither for Slaves.

Mozambique

Mozambique lies on the ſame Eaſt Coaſt, and next Southward of *Quiloa*. The chief Town, and the River on whoſe Mouth it ſtands, are both of the ſame Name with the Province; the Town is ſituated in 15 Degrees South Latitude. Here is a good Harbour, a ſtrong Citadel, the Town regularly fortified. The Iſland on which it ſtands, is 30 Miles in Circumference, and, as well as the Town, extremely populous, having ſix Churches, and ſeveral Monaſteries. Here the *Portugueſe*, as at *Melinda*, barter *European* Goods for Gold, Elephants Teeth, *&c.* but this Place likewiſe produces Plenty of Cattle, which creates a great Trade; the Ships to and from *India*, calling here for Beef, and other Proviſions.

Mongale

Mongale in this Country is the chief Staple for *European* Goods; for which they return Gold, which they find near the Surface of the Earth, or in the Sands in the Rivers; for there are no Gold Mines wrought here, or indeed any where in *Africa*.

IN *Zofala*, to the Southward of *Mozambique*, the *Portugueſe* have ſome little Settlements; as indeed they have the Trade of the whole Coaſt moſtly to themſelves, as far to the Southward as the Tropick of *Capricorn*.

CHAP. III.

A Description of Caffraria ; *especially, the South Part of it, the Country of the* Hottentots.

Caffraria

CAFFRARIA is the Southermoſt Land of *Africa*. It contains the Eaſt, South, and Weſt Coaſts of the South Part of *Africa*, and incloſes the Inland Country of *Monomotopa* ; being therefore bounded by the Ocean on the Eaſt, South, and Weſt, as *Monomotopa* is by it. This Country extends from the Tropick of *Capricorn* on the Eaſt Coaſt, to Cape *Lagullas*, in the 36th Degeee of South Latitude; and thence to Cape *Bona Eſperance*, and all the Southermoſt Land of *Africa*; and ſo along the Weſt Coaſt, to the Northward of the Tropick of *Capricorn*.

THE Country of the *Hottentots* is the Southermoſt Part of *Caffraria*, beginning about Latitude 28 Degrees South, and including all the Land of *Africa* to the Southward of that Parallel; *Cape Bona Eſperance* lying in 34, 25 South, and Longitude Eaſt from *London*, 17 Degrees 25 Minutes.

THIS Country was firſt diſcover'd by the *Portugueſe* Admiral *Diaz*, in his Attempt to find a Way to the *Eaſt-Indies* by going round the South Part of *Africa* ; but attempting to ſettle there, the Inhabitants fell upon him and his Companions, and cut them to Pieces. But the *Dutch*, who never fail to watch for the Hare, when another Man has beat the Buſh, ſeeing it a plentiful Country, ſettled themſelves there, in the Year 1651, as thinking it a uſeful Place to ſupply them with Proviſions, as they go to and from the *Eaſt-Indies* : And there they have not only kept Poſſeſſion ever ſince, but enlarg'd their Territories for above 200 Miles along the Coaſt, having good Settlements, well planted and cultivated, of which more hereafter.

THE Country of the *Hottentots* is mountainous, yet generally fruitful both in the Hills and Valleys. On approaching the *Cape of Good Hope*, you diſcover three remarkable Hills, *viz. Table-Hill*, the *Lion's-Hill*, and the *Devil's-Hill*, which may be ſeen 40 or 50 Miles at Sea. There is a Flag on *Lion's-Hill*, kept by *Dutch* Soldiers, who thereby give notice of the Approach of Shipping, and ſignify their Number by ſo often hoiſting and lowering the Flag.

THE *Dutch* are acquainted with theſe ſixteen Nations or Provinces of the *Hottentots* : 1. The *Gongeman* Nation. 2. The *Kochaqua*. 3. The *Suſſaqua*. 4. The *Odiqua*. 5. *Chirigriqua*. 6. *Namaqua*. 7. The *Attaqua*. 8. The *Koopman*. 9. The *Heſſaqua*. 10. The *Sonqua*. 11. The *Danqua*. 12. The *Damaqua*. 13. The *Gauros*. 14. *Houteniqua*. 15. The *Chametour* : And, 16. The *Heykom*.

1. The *Gongemans* were the firſt that traffick'd with the *Dutch* : But when they ſaw the *Dutch* erecting a Fortreſs, and encloſing the beſt of their Land before their Faces, and excluding them from the Benefit of it, the poor Natives reſented it, but in vain ; for the *Dutch* grew ſo ſtrong, and were naturally ſo voraciouſly covetous, that when the poor Natives complain'd of their Encroachments, all the Redreſs they had was, that the *Dutch* generouſly offer'd them Liberty to graze their Cattle upon that worſt out-caſt Land, which they (the *Dutch*) had not encloſed, nor thought it worth their while to take the Trouble of encloſing.

2. THE *Kochoqua* Nation lies to the Northward of the *Gongemans*. Here is alſo good Paſture, but the beſt of it encloſ'd by the *Dutch*. ——3. The *Suſſaqua's*, a poor Country, ſcarce habitable for want of Water.——4. The *Odiqua's*, remarkable for nothing but being always in Confederacy with the *Suſſaqua's*, againſt——5. The *Chirigriqua's*, a numerous and dextrous People, who inhabit a mountainous Country upon the Sea Coaſt, but which produces good Paſture. Thro' the Middle of it runs the large River, call'd the *Elephant River*, which takes it's Name from the vaſt Number of Elephants reſorting to it. Here are large Woods, which harbour Lions, Tygers, and other wild Beaſts in Abundance.

6. *Greater* and *Leſſer Namaqua* : The *Leſſer* extends along the Sea Coaſt, and the other contiguous to it on the Eaſt. This is the moſt polite (if I may be allow'd ſo high an Expreſſion) of any of the *Hottentot Nations*. They can produce an Army of 20,000 Men in the Field ; but their Country is barren, and has no Water, except one Spring, and the *Elephant River*, which runs thro' one Part of it.——7. The *Attaqua's* lie to the Northward of the *Namaqua's*, and inhabit a poor barren Place not worth any further Account. ——8. The *Koopman's* are Eaſt of the *Gongeman's* and the *Cape Towns*. Here the *Dutch* have a great many Settlements and Plantations, and a rich Tract of Land encloſed ; and here, as in the *Gongeman's*, the Natives are ſuffer'd to occupy the Land, the *Dutch* have no Occaſion for. This Country is well wooded and water'd. Here is alſo a Hot Bath, and ſeveral Salt-pits.

9. THE *Heſſaqua's* join alſo to the *Gongeman's*. They abound in Cattle above all the *Hottentot* Nations, and trade more with the *Dutch* for Brandy, Tobacco, Coral, &c. giving their Cattle in Exchange.——10. The *Souqua's* lie to the Eaſtward of the *Koopman's*. They have a mountainous Country, but are dextrous People at Arms, and, like the *Swiſs* in *Europe*, are hir'd to fight for Bread.

11. THE *Danqua's* lie next to the *Sonqua's*, in a level Country, which affords good Cattle, Paſturage, and Game.——12. The *Damaqua's*, who have ſome Salt-pits; but being far from the *Dutch*, and the *Hottentots* eating no Salt, they are but of little Uſe.——13. The next are the *Gauro's*, they lie next the *Damaqua's* ; it is a ſmall but rich and populous Country, well ſupply'd with Wood and Water, Plenty of Cattle, and no leſs of Wild-Beaſts, at the taking of which they are ſo dextrous, that they are moſtly cloth'd in Skins of Tygers and other Wild-beaſts of their Country's Breed, and of their own killing.

14. THE *Houteniqua's*, a Sea Coaſt, but of little Note.——15. The *Chametours* are next ; They have a plentiful Country for Proviſions, Wood, Water, Fiſh, and Game. —— 16. North-Eaſt from them are the *Heykoms*. It is a poor Country, and is the Northermoſt of the *Hottentots*, on the Eaſt Coaſt of *Africa*.

As to the Derivation of the Name of the *Hottentots*, as well as the Deſcent of the People, Authors equally differ in their Opinions ; but Mr. *Colben* draws a pretty fair Concluſion as to

their

their Descent, he says, the Name of their Male Ancestor was *N'oh*; *this he looks upon as a certain Evidence of their being descended from* Noah: This Discovery might naturally have been made, without any great Knowledge in Genealogy; for who knows not that all the human Race now existing, descended not only from *Adam*, but were again reduced to one Original in *Noah* also.

Religion. They resemble the *Jews* in their Offerings, in observing the new Moons, and abstaining from several Sorts of Food, especially Swines Flesh, undergoing a Sort of Circumcision, *&c.* But they have a cruel Custom of exposing their Parents when superannuated, leaving them without Food, and so by starving put an End to their Lives, for no other Reason, but because they are become so old that they are useless.

Persons. As to their Persons, there is nothing remarkable, being from five to six Foot high, as in *England*, and scarce any crooked or deformed among them; only they have thick Lips, black Hair, white Teeth, tawny Complexions, which they darken with Grease and Soot, as liking the black Colour best; but one painful Ornament they give their Children when in their Infancy, for they break the Griffles of their Noses, thinking it adds to their Beauty to have broad flat Noses like the Negroes.

They wear flat Caps of Cat-Skin, or Lamb-Skin half dried, and tie them with a Thong of the same under their Chins. The Men wear a Mantle of Sheep-Skins, Tyger Skins, *&c.* and longer or shorter according to their Ability; and this serves them for a Day Garment, a Bed, and a winding Sheet, one after another, in their Turns, as there is Occasion.

They wear a greasy Pouch, and in it several Trinkets, as Pipes and Tobacco, and *Dacha*, which intoxicates like Tobacco, and three Ivory Rings on their Left Arm, to which they fasten their Bag of Provisions when they travel; but the principal Ornaments of both Sexes are Brass and Glass Beads, with thin Plates of the same, and of Mother of Pearl, which they wear about their Hair, Ears, Necks, and Arms; these they have of the *Dutch*, and give them their Cattle in Return for them.

To make Butter they put the Milk into a hairy Skin, made up like a Soldiers Knapsack, the hairy Side inward; and two of them, one at each End, roll and toss it till the Butter comes; and then, hairy as it is, they put it up for their own Use in anointing; they eat none, but the *Dutch* eat it. The Butter-Milk serve the *Hottentots* for Drink; but they more commonly drink Cows Milk, Water, or Ewes Milk, especially the Women: For the Men, since the Arrival of the *Dutch*, are very fond of Wine, Brandy, and other strong Liquors; for which they give their Cattle in Exchange; they seldom eating any of them themselves, but what die a natural Death, or for Age, their Food being chiefly Herbs, Fruits, or Milk.

They have Tents rather than Houses, and Camps rather than Towns; which they remove as Conveniency of Water, and fresh Pasture requires: And these Rows or Clusters of Tents they call *Kraals*. Their Tents are of slender Poles, like Hoop-Sticks bent in an Arch, with both Ends in the Ground, in the Form of a half Cask, when cut down the Middle from End to End, each Head being cut in two equal Parts: For a Cask so cut, and the open Side set upon the Ground, would resemble two of their Tents; the half Heads of the Cask representing the Doors of the Tent, and the Middle of the Cask the Middle of the Tent, which is likewise broader and higher than the Ends or Doors, and some, but not all, have a Hole in the Middle to let out the Smoak, which may be fitly represented by the Bung of the Cask. The middle Diameter of the Tent is about twelve or fourteen Foot, but the Ends or Doors are not above three Foot high: They are covered with Matts, or Skins, or sometimes both. The People are lazy, and would as soon starve as work, or hunt for Victuals themselves; and yet they are so hospitable, that when they have a Dram, or a nice Dish of Fish, they had rather call in their Neighbours to participate than enjoy it alone.

Govern-ment. As for their Government, every Nation has its King, or Chief, called *Konquer*. He presides in all their Councils, and Courts of Justice, and has the Power of making Peace and War. The Captain of every *Kraal* is a Leader in Time of War, and Chief Magistrate of his *Kraal* in Time of Peace. He, with the Head of every Family in the *Kraal*, determines all Causes both Civil and Criminal in it; but the Differences between one *Kraal* and another, and Matters of State, are determined by the King and Senate. But the Dignity of their Kings or Chiefs consists in only their Authority; for they have no Revenue, but their own Stock of Cattle, or what they get by Hunting.

They punish Murder, Adultery, and Robbery, with Death; but upon the Trial, the Offender is allowed to plead for himself, and the Captain collects the Opinions of the Judges: If he is condemned by a Majority, he is executed upon the Spot, in this rude Manner. The Captain first strikes him with his Truncheon, and then the rest of the Judges fall on, and drub him to Death: Which done, he is wrapped up in his Mantle as a winding Sheet, which is the last Office it performs, and is so carried to be buried. As for a particular Property in Lands, no Man has any; for their whole Country is common to them all, and they feed their Cattle promiscuously, and move as fresh Pasture, and Water makes it become necessary.

Arms. The Arms of a *Hottentot* are his Launce and his Bow, with Arrows bearded and poisoned; as is the Head of his Launce, if intended against an Enemy, or a wild Beast not intended for Food. Their Bows are made of Iron, or Olive Wood; and the Strings are made of the Guts of some Animal. They throw Stones with Dexterity and Success, when Darts and Arrows fail; all which Time they skip from Side to Side, probably to break the Aims, and miss the Stones and Darts of the Enemy. They have Plenty of large Elephants, but have none disciplined for the War, as in the *East-Indies*. Their Officers and Soldiers have no Pay; their Ambition after Honour, and publick Service to their Country, being the chief Inducement upon which they venture.

Hunting. Hunting of wild Beasts is a great Exercise with them in Companies, but more are taken by the Stratagem of digging Holes in the beaten Path, by which they go to Water; in which they fix sharp Stakes pointed with Iron, and the Points upwards, and then cover the Pit with Sticks or Turf, that it cannot be discovered; and when they come upon their old Road, the Pit breaks, and the first Animal falls in; where not missing of being stabbed upon the Stake, he becomes an easy Prey to those who prepared the Pit, and are upon the Watch for his Life: And this is the most frequent Way of taking the Elephant, the Elk, and the Rhinoceros: But when any Person kills a Lion, Leopard, or Tyger, singly, he is honoured with great Compliments and Ceremonies; and, as a visible Badge of his memorable Victory, has the Bladder of the furious

rious Beast he killed fixed to his Hair, and is thought a brave Man, and a Benefactor to his Country. But the killing of a Tyger is thought the best Piece of Service; not only because they are such a dangerous and destructive Species, but because their Flesh is a more delicious Morsel to them than that of any other Animal whatsoever.

Not to mention some Articles of less Credit, if not quite fictitious, let us next consider their Weddings; in which we are to observe, that the young Man that inclines to marry, must first consult his Father, if alive, even before he proposes any Thing to the Woman; and if the Father approves the Match, he goes with his Son to the Girl's Father, and opens the Matter to him; who consults his Wife, and then the final Answer is immediately given. If it be rejected, there is no Solicitation used, nor scarce a Word more said about it: But if the old People approve it, the Girl must submit to the following odd Determination; which is, the two Lovers are put into a Room together, and no other Company; and if she loves him it is an easy Conquest, for the Condition is, that he must at that Time get her Maidenhead; and if upon Sight she does not like him, she resists with the utmost Hatred, because it determines her Fate during one of their Lives; he struggles, she resists, and scratching, pinching, or any Thing but Blows are allow'd, during this amorous conjugal Quarrel; and if at last he indeed overcomes her, and gains that Battle, she is his own for ever; and good Reason, for Nobody else will have her; and there is no other Ceremony used in marrying them, but they and their Friends feast and rejoice together, according to their Ability, as other People do on the like Occasions. The *Hottentots* allow of Polygamy, but not to exceed three Wives at a Time; and 'tis Death to marry, or lie with a first or second Cousin, or any nearer Relation.

When a Woman lies in, if she have Twins, and both Girls, the Man proposes to the *Kraal*, that he may expose one of them, either under Pretence of Poverty, or that the Wife has not Milk for both; and if they have a Boy and a Girl, they commonly save the Boy and expose the Girl; which is thus: They carry it some Distance from the *Kraal*, till they can find some Hole or Cave, made by some Wild-Beast, and put the Child alive into it; and stopping up the Mouth of the Hole, they leave the Child to starve; but if they have two Sons at a Birth, they kill as many Bullocks, and invite their Neighbours to great Feasting, Merriment, and Entertainment upon that Occasion.

Sometimes the *Dutch* find their expos'd Females before they are dead, probably by seeing them going about the Ceremony, and following them at a Distance: When this happens, they take Care of them, and bring them up as Christians: But so innate are their *Hottentot* Principles, if they may be call'd Principles, that they no sooner find out their own Extraction, but they renounce their Christianity, cast off their *European* Habit, and running to some *Hottentots* Camp, conform to the Dress, Customs, &c. of those from whom they descended.

Religion. As to their Religion, they believe that there is one God, who is the supreme Being, and commands all inferior Deities; that he made Heaven and Earth, and all Things therein, &c. but they pay no divine Worship to him (though they do to the subordinate Deities); the Reason they give for it is, that their first Parents grievously offended the supreme God, whereupon he cursed them and all their Posterity with Hardness of Heart, so that now they know little of him, and consequently do not care to pay divine Worship to him; but they adore the Moon, and at the Appearance of her, they assemble in great Numbers, crying, raving and dancing, and crossing their Foreheads with a red Stone, which those who have seen them take to be all Acts of Religion. They salute the Moon, and pray to her for Pasture for the Cattle, and Plenty of Milk, with other Prayers, dancing and clapping their Hands all the while.

There is a Fly, about as big as a Hornet, which they adore; and when they see it approach the *Kraal*, they all assemble about it, and sing and dance round it, while it is there. They also sacrifice two Sheep upon the Fly's Approach, assuring themselves they shall prosper upon this Visit; and if the Fly happens to light upon a Tent, the Master of that Tent is ever after reputed a Saint, and wears a Badge of Distinction some Time afterwards. If the Fly alights upon a Woman, she is dignify'd and distinguish'd in the same Manner. The *Hottentots* express the most dreadful Agonies if a Christian offers to kill one of these Insects; and will sometimes collect a Shilling or two to give the Person to save his Life.

They have one Ceremony, which some think, is a Part of their Religion; they deprive the Male Children of their Left Testicle, at eight or nine Years of Age; which some think they do in Imitation of Circumcision, or to supply the Place of it, and they scarce ever miscarry under this Operation.

There is a great Ceremony at removing the *Kraal*, which they always do when any in it die, or when their Pasture is spent and eat up. When they remove, they kill a Sheep by Way of rejoicing; but the Men eat it all, and allow the Wives only the Soup: But when they come to the new Camp, the Wives come even with the Men; for they serve them the same Sauce, killing a Sheep, and eating all the Meat, and leaving the Men nothing but the Soup.

But what is most barbarous, is, that when the Father of a Family becomes so superannuated, that he is perfectly useless, he is obliged to resign his Stock of Cattle, which is commonly all his Substance. If he has any thing else, it is the same, he must resign all to his eldest Son, or if he have no Son, to the next Male Heir: Which done, the said Heir erects a Tent a good Distance from the *Kraal* he belongs to, and calling the Men of the *Kraal* together, he acquaints them with the weak Condition of his superannuated Father, and desires their Consent to have him expos'd in the distant Tent that he has made for that Purpose; and they commonly set so little Value upon the poor old Man's Life, that they readily allow him to be expos'd, rather than contribute any Thing to support him alive.

When all are agreed that the poor old Man shall be expos'd, a Day is appointed for the Execution; and when it comes, the Heir kills an Ox, and two or three Sheep, and invites the Neighbourhood to feast and be merry with him; (one would think the poor Old Man could not be very merry amongst them). When they have eat and drank plentifully, they come severally and take a formal Leave of him; and he is immediately laid upon one of the Carriage Oxen, and carried to the Tent or Pit, his Neighbours accompanying him, and there he is shut up, and never sees a human Face more. A superannuated Woman is the same, only that as she has nothing that she can call her own, she has no Trouble of disposing her Effects.

As to their Manner of burying; When a Man dies, he is immediately bundled up Neck and Heels in his Mantle; (commonly of Sheep skin, as observed before): Then the Captain, with some of

of the Seniors, ſearch the neighbouring Country for ſome Hole in a Rock, or the Den of a Wild-Beaſt, to bury it in; for if they can find one of theſe Conveniencies, they never dig a Grave; and being thus provided, all the *Kraal*, Men and Women, aſſemble at the Door of the Deceas'd, to attend the Corpſe to the Grave, if I may ſo call it; and when they have put the Corpſe into it, they fill it up with Earth and Stones, *&c.* But they would fill it up with Ants-Hills, if they could have enough of them, as ſuppoſing the Ants will feed on the Corpſe, and ſoon conſume it.

As to the ridiculous Stories we have about their Prieſts, and Phyſicians, *&c.* I ſhall not think them worth relating; but proceed to the Management of their Cattle, which is their chief Riches. It has been obſerv'd, that they have no Encloſures belonging to one particular Perſon, but the whole Country is one great Common; and between ſix and ſeven every Morning, after the Women have milk'd the Cows, four or five Men of the *Kraal* drive the Cattle to the beſt Paſture they can find in the Neighbourhood; and there guard them all Day, againſt the Attacks of Wild-Beaſts, bringing them Home in the Evening. The whole *Kraal*, as conſiſting of ſo many Tents, forms a round Figure; and the Tents are join'd cloſe to one another quite round, except only in one Place, which ſerves as a Gate or Paſſage for them into the *Kraal*, and to drive the Cattle in at Night and out in the Morning; for they always ſecure their Cattle in the Area of the *Kraal* all Night; but have no other Shelter or Houſing for them, except only a Hut in the Middle of the *Kraal* for young Calves and Lambs.

For the Security of the Cattle from the Wild-Beaſts, that are without the *Kraal*, and only ty'd to the Tents, they can pretty well truſt to the Warning given by the Cattle themſelves; for the Approach of the Wild-Beaſt is but ſlow, dreading at once to attack them, as being ſo near the *Kraal*; and the Cattle ſeeing him, whether Lion, Tiger, or Leopard, long before he comes at them, make ſuch a lowing and bellowing, that the Maſter has generally Time enough to call his Neighbours, and all arm'd run and plant themſelves between the Wild-Beaſt and the Cattle: But if the Wild-Beaſt has got any of their Cattle away, they all purſue, and ſeldom give up the Chaſe, till the Blood of the Wild-Beaſt has made an Atonement for the Robbery and Murder he has committed.

Though the *Hottentots* Riches conſiſt chiefly in their Cattle, yet they do not bewail much the Death of a Cow or an Ox; they look upon Cattle that die of themſelves, as more choice eating than what are kill'd by a Butcher. But he whoſe Beaſt dies of itſelf, makes no Store of it, but invites all the *Kraal*, and makes only one Feaſt of it, (for he has as many as will eat it up). But, though he has but one Meal out of his own Ox or Cow, in this Caſe; yet he has a Meal out of every Neighbour's Ox or Cow that dies, which makes him Amends.

Their Smiths not only faſhion the Iron, but melt it from the Ore; for having Plenty of Iron Stones, they put a great Quantity of them into a Hole in the Ground, which is firſt heated and prepared for the Purpoſe; then they make a Fire over the Stones, and keep it up to an intenſe Heat till the Iron melts, and runs into another Hole or Receiver, a little lower than the firſt. When it is cold the firſt Time, it is brittle like Ice or Glaſs, and they break it in Pieces; which being again heated, they make Heads of Launces, Arrows, Darts, *&c.* of them. Their Anvil is only a flat Stone, and a round Stone ſerves them for a Hammer. When they have brought it to the Form propoſed, they poliſh it upon the flat Stone as finely (ſays my Author) as any *European* Artificer can do with his Tools. However true this Aſſertion may be, it is certain they are not altogether thoſe ignorant unhandy Creatures, that a great many *Engliſh* would repreſent moſt remote Nations to be; as appears by their Butchers, Taylors, Potters, and eſpecially the Makers of Ivory Toys; ſuch as Rings, Tobacco-Stoppers, *&c.* which they cut out of an Elephant's Tooth, and form and poliſh to Admiration, without any other Tool but a common Knife.

Their Trade is very inconſiderable; for having no Money, they can only truck one Thing for another. The Poor make Bows, Arrows, *&c.* and give them to the Rich in Exchange for their Cattle; and by this Means get a little Stock, which they improve by Induſtry. Trade

The Natives that are able, all travel on Foot; but the Weak and Aged are carried on their Bagage Oxen: And as there are no Inns, the Traveller calls at the *Kraals*, where he generally receives hoſpitable Entertainment, whether he be of their own Country or *Europe*. Travelling.

Having given a Deſcription of the People, Manufactures, *&c.* I ſhall proceed to give an Account of ſome of the *Dutch* Colonies and Settlements, eſpecially at the *Cape*, where the chief Town is call'd the *Cape Town*. It extends by the Sea-ſhore, along the Table Valley, to the Company's Gardens, and contains between 2 and 300 handſome Houſes, regularly diſpoſed in handſome Streets, with Courts before, and large Gardens behind the Houſes. The Houſes are of Stone, but thatch'd, and ſeldom exceed one Story high, that the high Winds, which are frequent there, may not have ſo much Power over them: And for the ſame Reaſon they thatch them, becauſe the Tiles ſhould not blow off, and kill the People in the Streets as they go along.

A little from the Town is a noble Fort, with about 200 Men in Garriſon. It contains alſo Storehouſes, *&c.* belonging to the Government, with proper Officers and Servants.

Their Church at the *Cape* is ſpacious and handſome, but plain within and without, and both Church and Steeple are thatch'd. There are no Seats in it, only Forms, and a large Table before the Pulpit, where they ſit round to receive the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper.

They have a very convenient handſome Hoſpital, where they put their ſick Seamen aſhore, going to or coming from the *Indies*. This, and ſupplying other Ships as well as their own with freſh Proviſions, are the chief Advantages the *Dutch* reap by having Poſſeſſion of the *Cape*; for here is ſcarce a good Harbour, nor any Merchandize, except we allow Proviſions to be Merchandize. Hoſpital

The Company's Gardens are a beautiful Sight, producing at the proper Seaſon almoſt all Kinds of Flowers and Fruits, that *Europe*, *Aſia*, or *Africa* affords, and moſt of them improv'd beyond what they are in the Countries they originally came from, both in Beauty and Deliciouſneſs. Here are Lemons, Oranges, Citrons, Figs, *&c.* and vaſt Plenty of other the moſt excellent Fruits. The Gardens are water'd by Springs, deſcending from the Table Mountains, and artfully divided into ſmall Streams, which are convey'd to the ſeveral Parts of the Gardens, as they reſpectively want Water. Gardens.

The Government of the *Cape* is manag'd by Eight Councils. 1. The Grand Council, which has the Direction of Trade and Navigation, making Peace and War with the *Hottentots*, and managing every Thing upon which the Security and Intereſt of the Settlement depends. 2. The Court Govern-ment.

Court of Justice for Criminal Cases. 3. An inferior Court of Justice, for Assaults, Trespasses, *&c.* 4. The Court of Marriages; which examines into every Marriage Contract before it be celebrated; as whether it be by the Consent of Parents or Guardians, and whether there be no Pre-contract; and in all other Cases, to prevent unlawful and clandestine Marriages. There is no *Fleet* allow'd there, to tie People together for a Frolick, without any regard to the Authority of Parents, or the real Welfare of the Parties so inadvertently contracted. But if no just Objection to a Marriage is found, then the Banns are publish'd, and a proper Time is fixed for its Celebration. There are no Licenses, to enable a Man for the Charge of thirty or forty Shillings, clandestinely to marry an Heiress of 5 or 600*l.* a Year, if any such could be found there: The Bride and Bridegroom must go in Person themselves, and express their Willingness to the Contract, or there can be no Wedding. 5. The Court of Orphans, without whose Consent no Orphan can marry under Five and twenty. 6. The Ecclesiastical Court, for the Government of the reform'd Churches; for here is a Colony of *French* Protestants, which the *Dutch* brought over to the *Cape*, not upon the Account of Religion, but to assist in cultivating their Vines, and other hard Labour, which the *Dutch* themselves never delighted in. 7. The Common Council, which has but little Business. 8. The Board of Militia, to muster and review the Militia once a Year, both Horse and Foot; for they have now Plenty of fine Horses from *Persia*.

So much for the Description of the *Cape* and *Town*; come we now to the Soil about the *Cape*, which is exceeding fruitful: One Bushel of Wheat brings thirty or forty; one of Barley, fifty or sixty; and other Corn in proportion to the Size of the Grain.

Vineyards. IT was a great while before they produc'd any considerable Vineyards or good Wine, but the first Rise of their Plenty of Wine came by a *German*, who advised them to take the Prunings of Vines about a Foot long, and sow them in a plough'd Field; which they did, and they naturally sent out a Shoot at every Knot, by which means they were soon furnished with a sufficient Quantity of Vine Stocks, or Plants, which they transplanted into other Fields plough'd and prepar'd for that Purpose. They planted them in Rows, every Vine two Foot and a half asunder, and every Row three Foot or three Foot and a half; and this Method has furnish'd almost every Cottage about the *Cape*'s Settlements with Vineyards, so that every Family generally has Wine enough for their own Use, and some to sell. They have both Red and White Wine, but they have the greatest Plenty of the White.

EVERY House has generally a Kitchen Garden to furnish them with Roots and Herbs, as in *Europe*, and mostly of the same Sort. They have scarce any Fruit-trees that the *Europeans* care to taste the Fruit of; but Trees brought from *Europe* or *Asia*, commonly produce better Fruit than they did where they were fetch'd from. The *Hottentots* Country produces the *Aloe* of various Kinds upon the Rocks, some of which blossom all the Year.

BUT not to dwell upon Plants peculiar to that Country, (which no *Englishmen* have seen grow, but those who have been there;) there are Plenty of Lions, Tigers, Elephants, and wild Dogs, almost like *English* Hounds; also Wolves and very large Buffaloes; likewise Elks, wild Asses, Porcupines, Monkeys, and Sea-Cows: But what is most surprising is the Stinkhingsem: It is peculiar to this Country, and has this strange nauseous Quality, that if it is pursu'd, it sends such a Stink from its Posteriors, that neither Man nor Beast can bear it, or be able to follow him. This is his best Defence when pursued; for as soon as ever he emits this Stink, no Dogs are able to hold the Chase, but rub their Noses and howl when he gives them this stinking Salute. If they shoot it, No-Body dare take it up; or if they do but touch it, all the washing in the World will not sweeten the Person for a long Time, nor can any living Man bear him in his Company. The Stinkhingsem.

FROM this stinking Quadruped, we proceed to the Fowls; and First of the Eagle, of which one Sort is call'd the Dung-bird; because if these Eagles find an Ox or a Cow laid down, they fall upon the Beast in great Numbers, make a Hole in his Belly with their Bills and Talons, and perfectly scoop out all the Guts and Entrails clean, leaving only the Carcass and the Hide. These Eagles fly in such Numbers, that when they see an Animal that they think worth making a Prey of, they drop down upon it, and destroy even one of the largest Cattle in a Moment.

THERE is another Sort of an Eagle, that preys most upon the Land Tortoise; but their Shells being beyond his Strength to break, he supplies that Defect with Policy; for he soars aloft with them into the Air over some hard Rock, and letting them fall upon it, their own Weight from such a Height breaks them open, and the Eagle descends and enjoys his Prey.

NEAR the *Cape* are Abundance of Ostriches: They are the largest Fowl we know of; their Feathers are of great Value in *Europe*. When she lays her Eggs, she covers them in the Sand till she has got a sufficient Number to sit upon; and then the Cock and Hen take it by Turns to sit upon the Eggs, and not only attend them till they are hatch'd, but take care to feed them till they can provide for themselves; contrary to the weak Notion of those who report that they bury their Eggs in the Sand as they lay them, and never look more after them.

THEY have other Fowls, such as are common in *England*, as Ducks, Larks, *&c.* which we need not mention here; also Reptiles and Insects, as Serpents, Flies, Grashoppers, Scorpions, *&c.* but they being scarce worth mentioning, except for the Mischief and Danger of them, I shall say no more about them.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

A Description of the Kingdom of Congo, *including* Angola, Congo Proper, *and* Loango.

Congo.

CONGO is on the West Coast of *Africa*, under the Line, and extends from four Degrees and a half to sixteen South Latitude. Its Length from North to South is above 1200 Miles along the Coast: But it is not above 200 Miles East and West from the Sea into the Land where it is broadest. It has *Benin* and *Nigritia* on the North; the Inland, and to us unknown, Countries in the middle of *Africa* on the East; *Matapan* on the South; and the *Atlantick* Ocean on the West.

Angola.

THE Kingdom of *Angola* is the first Division, and continues from Latitude sixteen to eight South. The Chief Town is *Loando*, upon a small Island near the Continent, about Latitude twelve South. From hence the *English* transport Abundance of Slaves to *America* every Year.

Congo Proper.

Congo Proper is to the Northward of *Angola*. Its chief Town is *St. Salvadore*, in Latitude six Degrees, upon the River *Congo*, but 150 Miles up from the Sea. This is a very large Town, or rather it possesseth a great Space of Ground; for the Houses are not regular nor contiguous. The Negro King has a sumptuous Palace in the Middle of the Town; but he is tributary to the King of *Portugal*. There are also three Christian Churches in it, besides a very sumptuous Cathedral; and there are twelve Churches in the Suburbs. 'Tis said the Inhabitants amount to 100,000.

Loango.

THE next Division is *Loango*: The chief Town, of the same Name, is in two Degrees South Latitude. The noted *Cape Lopaz* is about thirty Miles to the Southward of the *Equator*. The Town of *Loango* is situate at the Mouth of the River *Congo*; and further to the Southward is *Fort St. Philip*, near which the *Dutch* have a Factory. Most of the rest are Negro Towns, consisting of Huts built with Clay, and Reeds; very irregular for their Order, and poorly built: But it is observed, that most of these Towns, or rather Clusters of Houses, are among, or near, Groves of Trees: And these are Palms, Cocoa-Trees, Oranges, Lemons, and other delicious Fruit-trees, that retain their Verdure all the Year. These Negro Towns are very populous, and the Negroes that inhabit them are so civilized, that they clothe themselves like Christians, and consequently take off great Quantities of the *European* Manufactures.

THE chief Trade here is for Slaves, Elephants Teeth, Wax, Peltry, which is the Skins of Buffaloes and other Beasts, and for which they give the Natives, in Return, Clothing of Cotton, Linnen, or slight Stuff; also Tools, Tobacco, Brandy, *&c.* and there being no Gold found in *Congo*, the *Portuguese* purchase Slaves and Teeth with Gold they bring from *Brazil*, to which Place they do not send less than 100,000 Slaves yearly. The *English* and *Dutch* also drive the same Trade with those Natives, to purchase Slaves there to carry to *America*, where in their Passage they stow them to the best Advantage, seven or eight hundred of them in a small Ship; and in carrying such vast Numbers, their Profit must be very great; for one that costs but three or four Pounds at *Angola*, will fetch twenty or twenty-five Pounds in *America*.

CHAP. V.

A Description of Guinea.

GUINEA extends from Latitude four Degrees and a half South, to Latitude ten Degrees and a half North, or 360 Miles North and South; and from East to West it is reckoned 1800 Miles. It is bounded with *Nigritia* or *Negroland* on the North; by the undiscovered Inland Countries in *Africa* on the East; by *Congo*, and partly by the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the South; and by the same Ocean on the West. This large Tract of Sea-Coast (for that is the chief that we know of the Country) is known under these several Names: The Coast of *Benin*, The *Gold Coast*, The *Ivory Coast*, and The *Grain Coast*.

We shall not trouble the Reader with the original Derivation of the Name; these Attempts when made, and the Matter disputed, being generally obliged to be determined, or at least concluded, with a Conjecture at last.

The first Subdivision of this Country is *Benin*, in which is included the Slave Coast. It is bounded by *Nigritia* on the North; by the unknown inland Parts of *Africa* on the East; by *Congo* and the Bight of *Guinea* on the South; and by the *Gold Coast* on the West. The River *Camarone* bounds it on the South-East. The other chief Rivers are, *Del Rey*, or *King's River*, the Rivers *Forcados*, *Formosa*, and *Lagos*, as you proceed to the Westward, till the great River *Volta* comes as in the Westermost Boundary of this Province.

Benin.

The Chief Towns are, first *Benin*, on the River *Formosa*, in seven and a half North Latitude. It is eleven Miles in Circumference, and contains 100,000 Negro Inhabitants; but the Houses are but Clay Walls and Thatched Roofs. 2. *Awerri*, at the Mouth of the River *Forcados*, subject to the *Portuguese*, who also have Settlements 150 Miles up the River *Formosa*. 3. *Arebo*, on the East Side of the Mouth of *Formosa*, a good Place to trade for Slaves. 4, and 5. *Great* and *Little Ardra*, near the River *Lagos*, on the Slave Coast; the former extremely large and populous, but both inhabited by Negroes. 6. *Whidah*, on the Slave Coast, between the Rivers *Lagos* and *Volta*. This is a populous Town, but consists of

poor Buildings. 7. *Alampo*, where the *Engliſh* have a Factory; as alſo another at *Whidah*; where the *Portugueſe*, *French* and *Dutch* have likewiſe each a Settlement: But no *European* Nation has any Colony or Settlement in *Benin Proper*, except the *Portugueſe*.

Gold Coaſt. THE *Gold Coaſt*, ſo called from the Plenty of Gold taken up there, lies between the *Slave Coaſt* on the Eaſt, and the *Tooth* or *Ivory Coaſt* on the Weſt: The chief River is *Cobra*, or *Gold River*, which falls into the Sea a little to the Weſtward of *Cape Three Points*. On this Coaſt are ſeveral *European* Forts and Settlements: The Eaſtermoſt is *Chriſtianburg*, belonging to the *Danes*; the next Weſtward is *Crevecæ*, which belongs to the *Dutch*; and the Weſtermoſt is *Acra*, belonging to the *Engliſh*. Other Forts on that Coaſt are as follows: In *Agonna* is *Fort Simpas*, belonging to the *Engliſh*; in *Acra*, *Fort Patience*, to the *Dutch*; in *Fantim*, *Amaboa*, to the *Engliſh*; and *Amſterdam*, to the *Dutch*: In *Saboe*, *Fort Naſſau*, to the *Dutch*; in *Fetu Conradsburg*, to the *Dutch*; and *Carolsburg*, to the *Engliſh*; in *Commany Vredenburg* and *Delmina*, to the *Dutch*: In *Hante*, *Fort Inſuma* to the *Engliſh*; and *Batenſtern*, *Orange*, and *St. Sebaſtian*, to the *Dutch*: In *Axim*, *Fort Axim* and *St. Anthony*, to the *Dutch*; and *Fort Fredericksburg* and *Dorothea*, to the *Pruſſians*: And this is the Weſtermoſt *European* Settlement on all the *Gold Coaſt*.

Ivory Coaſt. THE next Diviſion to the Weſtward is the *Ivory* or *Tooth Coaſt*; ſo called from the Number of Elephants Teeth found here. The moſt remarkable Places on this Coaſt are *Jaque*, *Cape Lahoe*, *Cape Palmas*, *Seſtre*, and *Bottowa*. The chief Rivers are *Rio de Suemo*, and *Rio Eſcrovos*. We find no other Rivers of any Note on this Coaſt.

Grain or Pepper Coaſt. THE moſt Weſterly Diviſion of *Guinea* is the *Grain* or *Pepper Coaſt*, next Weſt of the *Ivory Coaſt*. The principal Rivers are *Seſtro*, St. *Paul*, and *Sierra de Leon*. The chief Towns are *Baſſo*, *Sanguin*, *Seſtro*, *Gorco*, *Buga*, and *Tomba*. On this Coaſt are two *Engliſh* Settlements, *viz. St. Anne*, at the Mouth of the River *Sierra de Leon*; and *Sherbo Fort*, on the Eaſt of it.

UPON the *Guinea* Coaſt their Winter or rainy Seaſon is from *April* to *September* inclusive: The reſt is called Summer, as being the hotteſt, as well as the drieſt Weather, though the Sun is then furtheſt from them. Yet thoſe Seaſons do not begin always exactly at the Times abovementioned, but ſometimes a Month or ſix Weeks ſooner or later. In general however they have the exceſſive Rains between the Vernal and the Autumnal *Equinox*, and thoſe Rains are attended with Storms of Wind, Thunder, and Lightning; which, as the Wind blows from the Southward, do always a great deal of Damage to the Shipping upon that Coaſt, except they can reach *Sierra de Leon*, when they perceive them coming on. Theſe Storms are reckoned the moſt violent in *July* and *Auguſt*.

THE Face of the Country is diverſified with Mountains, Valleys, Woods, and open Fields; and the Country is exceeding populous, eſpecially about *Whidah*; yet unhealthy to *European* Conſtitutions. Here is likewiſe a great deal of barren deſart Ground; and ſome ſo overflowed in the wet Seaſons, that it will produce little, except Rice: But the Fertility of *Whidah* in a great Meaſure ſupplies the Defect of the reſt.

THE *Guinea* Negroes, or Blacks, are ſo well known to us, that they need no Deſcription: Only they differ remarkably from the *Indian* Blacks; the former having curled Hair, like Wool; and the *Indians'* Hair being only wavingly curled, like the *Engliſh*, but black. The Molattoes are a Breed proceeding originally from the mixed Propagation of *Europeans* and *Negroes*. They are of a tawny Complexion, and dreſs like the *Portugueſe*. The Men are drunken, lewd, and thieviſh to the laſt Degree; and the Women the greateſt Proſtitutes in the Univerſe, both publickly and privately.

THEIR Quadrupedes, Fowls, and Reptiles, are much of the ſame Sort with thoſe of other Parts of *Africa*. Here is a Sort of Monkey ſo large, that Mr. *Boſman* affirms he ſaw one five Feet high. That Sort are ſo bold, that they will attack a Man. There is another Sort about two Feet high, Coal-black, only with white Beards. Theſe will plunder Gardens and Corn Fields; but they chuſe only the beſt of every Grain and Fruit. Here is the Camelion, between the Bigneſs of a Rat and a Mouſe. It will live ſeveral Months, ſome ſay Years, without Food, except for ſome little Flies it catches; and even they muſt come and light upon his Tongue, or elſe he cannot catch them, his Motion is ſo ſlow.

As for Vegetables, the Palm-tree is remarkable. Its Body, at full Growth, is about as thick as a Man, and about ſix Foot high: But from the Trunk its Branches ſhoot upwards above twenty Foot. The Leaves are an Ell long, and about two Inches broad. But ſome Palm-trees are not ſo thick; and the Liquor drawn from theſe differ from the other both in Strength and Flavour. When a Tree is old enough to yield a Quantity of Wine, they cut off its Branches, and make a Hole in the thickeſt Part of the Trunk; and therein putting a Reed, or Pipe, the Wine ouzes out into a Pot ſet to receive it; but it does not afford above two Quarts in twenty-four Hours. However, it will continue to run for twenty or thirty Days ſucceſſively, or more or leſs according to the Richneſs of the Plant; and when it has almoſt done running, ſome make a Fire at the Bottom of the Tree, to force out more Wine, even to the laſt Drop: Whereas if they content themſelves with what comes naturally, it will produce Wine next Seaſon again; but thoſe that are forced by Fire die, and are fit for no other Uſe than to be burnt. The Palm is in its Prime at ten or twelve Years Growth, and will then yield ten or twenty Gallons of Wine. *Palm-tree*

WHAT *Guinea* is moſt famous for is the *Guinea* Pepper. It is produced chiefly on the Grain or Pepper Coaſt, on a Shrub, in long, ſlender, red Shells, or Pods. There is alſo another Sort of it, which we call *Spaniſh* Pepper, that likewiſe grows on Shrubs like Gooſeberry-Buſhes, and is hotter than common Pepper. There are very fine Timber Trees on this Coaſt, ſo large that they cut large Canoes out of their Bodies, and uſe them as we uſe Boats. *Gui* *Pep*

THEY have ſeveral Sorts of Minerals; as Iron, Copper, Silver, and Gold; but they work none of their Mines; which gives ſome Reaſon to queſtion whether there be any Silver in the Country. But as to Gold, it certainly contains more than any other Part of the World, as is evident from ſuch vaſt Quantities being waſhed out of the Country, and brought by the Rivers to the Sand near the Sea: And this happens eſpecially in the rainy Seaſons, when the Water falls in Torrents from the Hills, and ſometimes undermines the Earth, and great Lumps thereof roll down the Stream; for the Earth being thus removed, the Gold is diſcovered in great Quantities; and large Pieces of Metal are often picked out of the Holes in the Rock; but much more waſhed down like Sand. The former is called Rock Gold, the other Gold Duſt. *Gol*

THE chief Articles in which their Trade with other Nations conſiſts, are; 1. Gold; 2. Slaves; 3. Elephant's Teeth; and, 4. Drugs, Wax, and Red-wood. It is hard to get pure Gold among them,

them, they have got such a dextrous Way of adulterating it; and for this the *English* may thank themselves, some of whom, for a Trifle of private Interest or Reward, taught them this Piece of Artifice. The Gold is chiefly found on that Part of the Coast called *Guinea Proper*; and is also found on the *Tooth Coast* and *Slave Coast*, and more or less from one End of the Coast to the other.

Gold.

The Factors have a Way to distinguish the pure Gold from the adulterated; for if it be in large Pieces they cut it through, and so they can see if it be all alike, or if the Outside only be pure Gold and the Inside baser Metal; but if it be Gold Dust, they winnow it, and blow it, and the like; and the false Gold, being lightest, flies away, and leaves the pure Gold behind.

In the Slave Trade, the Negro Factors and Merchants bring their Slaves down to the Coast, where they agree with the *Europeans* for a Price. As *Guinea* has a multitude of Petty Sovereigns, there are frequently Civil Wars among them; and then one Party taking Slaves, and the other making Reprizals, they take Slaves on both Sides, and bring all to Market. Some sell Wives and Children, if they offend. There are also Slaves for Debt and Misdemeanors, in which Cases not only themselves, but sometimes their Descendants and Relations, are made Slaves, and sold to attone for the Offence, or satisfy the Debt: And some sell their Families, or Part of them, under Pretence they shall not be able to maintain them; and in great Scarcity they sell themselves to one another for Bread; but any Defect, even the Want of a Tooth, renders them unfit for Sale.

Slave Trade.

The next Article is Elephants' Teeth, or Ivory, got chiefly on the Tooth Coast. Some think the Elephants shed them at a certain Age: Others, that they are the Teeth of Elephants that die naturally, or are killed by Travellers, that know not the Value of their Teeth. They will live to a great Age, as appears by some of their tame Elephants, who have been known to continue in some Families, for several Generations, the present Proprietors only knowing that they belong'd to the Family in their Fathers and Grandfathers Time.

Ivory.

The last Article is Drugs; and these come chiefly from the Grain Coast. It is computed, that the *English*, *Dutch*, *French*, *Danes*, and *Brandenburghers*, import from *Africa* in Gold, Slaves, Ivory, Pepper, and Drugs, to the Value of three Millions Sterling yearly. The *Portuguese* have such vast Tracts of Lands, both on the East and West Coast of *Africa*, that they trade for more Slaves and Teeth, than all the Nations in *Europe* put together; and the *Europeans* in Return for what they purchase, barter Calicoes, Linnens, Cottons; also Tools, as Swords, Knives, Hatchets, Nails, Hammers, and other Things of that Kind.

It is observed, that every Tribe or Family make their own Tools and Instruments. They may be said to be all Smiths, Carpenters, or Masons. They build and thatch their own Houses; they make their own Arms, such as Darts, Arrows, Launces, and broad Swords; only Fire-Arms, Gun-powder, and Bullets, they purchase of the *Europeans*. It is surprizing to see how dextrously they make and polish their Swords, and Heads of Darts. Their Anvil was only a flat Stone, and their Hammer another Stone, till they were better instructed by the *Europeans*: But their Bellows are an Invention of their own, and will blow a Fire very quick.

Their Watermen and Fishermen are all of one Tribe: They have Canoes of thirty Foot long, and six broad, all of a Piece, cut out of a large Tree. These they use to carry Merchants Goods: But they have a lesser Sort for Fishing. They are row'd, the largest of them by fifteen Watermen, the smallest only by three; and so according to their Size. They have always an odd Man to steer. As they look forward in rowing, they cross our *English* Proverb, of *looking one Way and rowing another.*

Their Women dig, sow, plant, and manage most of the Husbandry. The Men manage the Fishery. They sell their Rice and Millet without the Foresight of leaving enough till next Season; so that they are sometimes forced to sell Wives and Families to supply themselves, though they have had large Crops.

Not to make a long Detail of the first Rise of the Trade of *Africa*, it is sufficient to observe, that the *Portuguese* soon got the Substance of it by a Grant from the Pope about the Year 1442: Whereupon they erected Forts, and improv'd their Trade: But *England* and *Holland*, paying no sacred Regard to the Pope's Authority, after the Reformation, they sent out several Ships to partake of the Gold Trade in *Africa*, exchanging Toys and Trifles for the Gold, and making very advantageous Returns. But the *Portuguese* being now the most powerful, obstructed their Trade with the *English*; whereupon the Negroes invited the *English* to settle among them, and assigned them Places to erect Forts and Factories upon, to defend themselves from the Insults of the *Portuguese*; the *Dutch* at the same Time weakning the *Portuguese*, by first falling upon them, and taking away their Capital of *Elmina*; and then driving them from their Settlement on the Gold Coast. The *Portuguese*, upon this, removed further East, and gained a vast Tract of Land; but there was little or no Gold there.

The *Dutch* and *English* thus prevailed over the *Portuguese* for a joint Advantage, as the *English* intended: But the voracious *Dutch* had other Views, and cunningly endeavoured to engross to themselves the joint Acquisitions of both: In order to which, they spirited up the Natives against the *English*, and took several of them aboard of their Squadron, which was then come to join the *English*, to suppress the *Portuguese*. And the *Dutch* Admiral pretending to an Order to separate from the *English* Fleet, went upon the Coast of *Guinea*, and took several of the *English* Forts, and then sail'd to their Islands in the *West-Indies*, which, agreeable to their old *Dutch* Generosity, they ransack'd and plunder'd; and all this in a Time of perfect Peace between the two Nations; but the *English* made Reprisals of a Fleet of *Dutch* Ships in the Channel, and paid them home for their Villainy and Ingratitude: For doubtless they intended to have brought a Force exclusive of us, and all other *European* Nations, to open those Gold Mines, and engross them entirely to themselves. The Gold Weights made use of on the *Guinea* Coast, are 1. the Peso, 2. The Angel. 3. The Bendo. 4. The Ounce. 5. The Mark. And 6. the Pound. The Peso is four Angels, the Bendo two Ounces; four Bendoes make one Mark, which is eight Ounces; and two Marks is one Pound.

Weights.

In Numbring, they go but to Ten, and then lay down a Finger; and when all their ten Fingers are down, it makes a Hundred; and so they begin again.

Numbers.

Some of the *Guinea* Princes are powerful and arbitrary; and to come in particular to the Prince of *Whidah*, he is fear'd as a Demi-God, by those who come before him. They always, in approaching his Presence, either kneel, or prostrate themselves to the Ground. He has Viceroys, Governors, Generals, *&c.* as *European* Princes have; but his Wives are, as it were, his

Sovereigns.

Late-

Life-Guards, and his Executioners, where a Number is required. When the Punishment due to a Crime is demolishing the Criminal's House, an undisciplin'd Posse of the King's Wives are sent to execute the Sentence; as was once the Case of a Negro Officer, who, upon Charge, at least of a Misdemeanor, was condemn'd to have his House pull'd down; and accordingly the King's Mob of Female Executioners, alias his Wives, were sent to do the Execution: But upon their Approach they found the Criminal sitting in a Heap of Gun-powder, with a lighted Match in his Hand. He insisted upon his Innocence, but at the same Time threatned to blow up himself, and whoever should approach to hurt him, or his House: Whereupon they desisted, and the Sentence was revers'd for that Time.

When the King goes abroad, five or six Hundred of his Wives run before him; but not a Man in his whole Train. However he goes but little abroad, but stays at home to attend the Service of the Government; conversing with the *European* Merchants and Factors, and making himself Master of the Nature of the Trade of his own Country.

The King's Chief Magistrates are the Cabiceroes, a Sort of Council whom the King consults in Affairs of Importance, as Peace and War, &c. The King wears no Crown; nor is there any Ceremony at the Inauguration of a new King, but only that of shewing him to the People. The succeeding Son possesseth his Father's Wives. His Revenues are very great; for there is scarce any thing but what is tax'd. Though there be no written Laws in *Guinea*, yet they have Punishments very proportionably adapted to each Kind of Crime. Murder is punish'd with Death, if the Person kill'd was a Freeman; but if a Slave, the Murderer is only fin'd. Adultery with one of the King's Wives, or the Wife of a great Man, is Death. Theft is punish'd by a heavy Fine, and Restitution of the stolen Goods: But if the Offender has nothing, he either dies for it, or is made a Slave to the injur'd Person: And the same in Case of Debt; for if a Man is insolvent himself, his Wife and Children are liable to be sold, to make Satisfaction to his Creditors.

Before the *Europeans* arriv'd in *Africa*, the Natives knew nothing of Fire-Arms, Bows, Arrows, &c. But as soon as they got any Notion of them, they took to forging them themselves, with only a Stone for their Anvil, and another for a Hammer. In some Parts of the Country they use their Shields chiefly for Defence; which Office they perform very well against Swords, Launces, and Darts, but not against Musket-Balls. They are of an oval Form, four Foot long, and three broad, made of light Basket-Work, and cover'd with the Skin of a Tyger, or some thick Leather gilt. It has been thought very wrong in the *Dutch* to furnish the Negroes with Fire-Arms and Powder. But it is the Principle of those our Neighbours, (if they have any Principle at all) to set aside all publick Common Interest, if they can any way promote their own private Advantage by it: Witness their sweet Trade with our *English* Butter, Lead, and Corn, in the Wars with *France*, in Queen *Anne*'s time; we and the *French* being Agents in that War, as Enemies, the *English* must not supply the *French* with their Product, but the cunning *Dutch* warily kept their Trade going with both Nations, and thereby gave themselves the Opportunity of furnishing the *French* with our Goods at extravagant Prices. Indeed this Trade of Fire-Arms and Ammunition is one of the best Articles depending between *Europe* and *Guinea*; and for *England*, in particular, to stand off, while the *Dutch* are gratifying their avaritious Temper, and at the same Time laughing at our squeamish Honour, would be indeed ridiculous, especially as our Fire-Arms are now become so common among the Negroes, that they are as good Marks-men as most *Europeans*.

As to the Dress or Habit of their Soldiers, in their March to the Wars, they stick their Sword in the Cloth wrapp'd about them. Every Soldier has a Belt of Bandaleers for his Musket, and a Pouch for his Bullets; a Cap on his Head, made of the Skin of a Crocodile, or some wild frightful Animal, adorn'd with red Shells; a Bunch of Horse-Hair, and a bright Chain bound about his Head like a Coronet: His Body is painted white; and all this being done to him, he makes a very awful terrible Figure.

Every able body'd Man is oblig'd to take the Field, if the Safety of his Prince or his Country requires it: But some there are indeed who make Arms their Profession, and let themselves out for Hire. Their chief Motive to War is the Hopes of Plunder and Prisoners; upon both which they set an excessive Value; and to this we may add, extending their Territories; which must be the Consequence, when the poor Sufferer's Ability falls short of the Captor's Demand.

It seems evident from the Practice of the *Dutch*, that they intended to have open'd the Mines of *Guinea*, exclusive of any other Nation; for they actually attempted to open a Mine in the Year 1695, in a Mountain near the *Dutch* Fort of *Vredenburgh*, in the Kingdom of *Commany*. But the Negroes let the Miners know, that this Hill was dedicated to one of their Gods, and must not be touched; and, that they had only given the *Dutch* leave to erect Forts for the Security of their Effects, not to take Possession of the Country, and carry away their Gold. The Miners still persisting, the Natives rose on them, wounding some, and making Prisoners of others. Of this the *Hollanders* complained to the King of *Commany*, but received no Redress; whereupon they marched a Party of Soldiers into his Country, who were driven back by the Natives. The *Commanians* now entred into a Confederacy with the *English*, who had a Fort about a Mile from the *Dutch*. The *English*, indeed, concerned themselves no farther than to influence some other Negro Powers to join the King of *Commany*; at the same Time that the *Dutch* hired two Nations on their Side. They soon proceeded to Action, and the *Dutch* received two of the most memorable Defeats that ever were known in that Country; after which they drop'd their Design of monopolizing the golden Mountains, and made Peace with the Natives.

The *Guinea* Negroes generally acknowledge [illegible] one Supreme Almighty Being, and yet pay him no manner of Worship. As they believe him too exalted to take any notice of poor Mortals, they pray and sacrifice to a great Number of inferior Deities. Every Man has one God, or more, of his own chusing; tho' some are in common to whole Nations. The chief Deity of *Whidah*, is a Serpent of a particular Species, whose Bite is not mortal. To this Animal they address themselves for seasonable Weather, the Preservation of the State, and on other important Occasions: A grand Temple is dedicated to him at *Ardra*, and a lesser in almost every Village, with Priests and Priestesses to officiate in them. In the great Temple, they always keep a Serpent, of a monstrous Size, worshipping the Creature in Person, and not in Effigy. The King annually sends hither Presents and Offerings of many valuable Thing-

Things. He used formerly to go in Person every Year, with his whole Court, to adore this Serpent; but of late deputes a certain Number of his Wives to perform that Ceremony in his stead. Once every Year, it is pretended, the young Women of the Country are seiz'd by this Species of Serpents, and work'd up to a Kind of Frenzy: Upon which they are carried to the Temples in their respective Villages, and kept there till they return to their Senses. That this is merely a pious Fraud to draw Money from the People, is evident; because these frantic Women are usually the Wives or Daughters of their principal Men, who pay largely for their keeping in the Temples; and because the Women are not allow'd to divulge what happens during their Confinement. Indeed there is not much Occasion for this Restriction, because, as the Women take greater Freedoms in these Temples than they dare out of them, it would not be much to their Credit were they to tell. A Man that should refuse to let his Wife or Daughter go to the Temple on these Occasions, would, however, be treated as an Enemy to Religion. The King, it seems, shares the Profit of these Pretensions, and therefore countenances the Fraud. As to the idolized Serpents, they are held so sacred, that a Person would be condemn'd to the Flames who should hurt one of them, or even touch it with a Stick. In a Word, the whole Country is ready to rise, when one of these Idols is attack'd either by Man or Beast. The largest of these Creatures are about two Yards long, of the Bigness of a Man's Arm, and adorned with white, brown, and yellow Streaks. The Natives will not so much as hear any thing spoken in Derision of them. A Proclamation was once issued for destroying all the Hogs in the Country, because a Hog happen'd to devour one of them: And so many of those Creatures were slaughter'd on this Occasion, that Swine's Flesh became very dear.

Lofty Trees ador'd.

The *Fidaians* also pay Divine Honours to fine lofty Trees and Groves. To these they apply in their Sickness, or on any private Misfortune; and all the Serpents Temples are in some Grove, or under some spreading Tree.

And the Sea.

The Sea is another of the principal Gods, to whom they sacrifice when their Winds and Waves are tempestous, which usually happens in *July* or *August*.

Besides these publick Objects of Adoration, every Man has a Set of Gods, of his own chusing, at *Fida*. Every thing they meet with on going abroad, animate or inanimate, they introduce into the Number, after it has undergone the following Trial: They pray to it for something they stand in need of; and, if they obtain their Desire by any means, they ascribe their Success to the Influence of this new God; but, if they are disappointed, they conclude that it cannot or will not help them, and treat it with Contempt, addressing to it no more.

Both Priests and Priestesses have an uncommon Respect shewn them in *Fida*: Their Persons, and all that belongs to them, are held sacred and inviolable; and tho' the Wives of other Men are little better than Slaves to their Husbands, the Husband of a Priestess is obliged to be all Obedience at his Peril: This makes the Natives very cautious of marrying a Priestess: Nor would they ever consent that their Wives should be admitted into the Order of Priesthood, if they could help it.

They have imperfect and confus'd Notions of Heaven and a future State; and some of them mention a local Hell for the Punishment of the Wicked, but seem to regard it as little as Christians do.

Religion of the *Negroes* on the *Gold Coast*.

The People of the *Gold Coast* also believe in one Supreme, Almighty Being; but look upon him to be too much above them, to regard their Affairs; and therefore address their Prayers to some inferior Deities or Demi-gods, as the *Greeks* usually did of old: Some of them believe, that Men were created by the Supreme God; while others ascribe the Creation to a great Spider they call *Ananse*. Every thing relating to Religion they denominate *Fetiche*; but to the Idol of their Hearts, or Favourite God, they give the Title of *Bossum*; and to this God the beloved Wife is always dedicated.

Every Priest hath a different God, to whom the People under his Care apply. When they are debating on War and Peace, they bring Sacrifices, and consult the God by their Priest, who throws up some Nuts or small Pieces of Leather, and, as they fall nearer or further from each other, he foretells good or bad Success to the Undertaking. They take every solemn Oath also before an Idol, drinking a Draught after it, and praying that their God may strike them dead, or the Liquor may burst them, if they do not perform their Engagements, or if the Thing be not true which they attest: However, it seems, the Priest has Power to absolve them from these Oaths: To prevent which, upon great Occasions, they make the Priest swear, that he will not absolve the Party, or dispense with his Oath.

When the Weather is unseasonable, the whole Town, or Country, consult their Priest, how the Vengeance of Heaven may be appeas'd; and he generally advises them to offer certain Sacrifices. Every Village has a sacred Grove set apart, where the Sacrifices are killed, and Divine Worship perform'd: But, besides the Idol that belongs to the Priest, every Person has his particular Houshold-God, before which he constantly performs his Devotions on the Day of the Week he was born. They drink no Wine or strong Liquor on that Day, before Sun-set: They are also then habited in White, or their Skins colour'd with a whitish Earth or Paint. There is another Day of the Week set apart for Divine Worship; when the Poor sacrifice Poultry, and the Rich a Sheep, without the Assistance of a Priest. There are few Families in *Guinea*, but what are obliged, by ancient Custom, to abstain from certain Kinds of Meat; and their respective Children and Posterity never deviate from the Rules prescrib'd by their Ancestors. At *Acra*, on the *Gold Coast*, Circumcision is one of their Customs; but from whence they received it, or how long they have used this Rite, none amongst them know; nor is it used by any other Nation of *Guinea*.

They look upon their Deities, as Beings vested with great Power, and that reward and punish them in this Life, according to their Demerits. They have not any great Expectations, or Dread of Futurity. The Rewards they expect, are a Multitude of Wives and Slaves, Health and Wealth, and other prosperous Circumstances in this World; and the Punishments they apprehend, are a Deprivation of these. The greatest Calamity that can befal them, and what they dread most, is Death. Murder, Adultery, and Theft, are venial Crimes, and may be aton'd for with Gold: But their eating forbidden Meats, and drinking prohibited Liquors, and a Neglect of their Holidays, they think can never be pardon'd. Some few of them talk of a Paradise, not unlike the *Elysian* Fields, whither good Spirits are sent; that is, such as have kept their Holidays, inviolably abstain'd from forbidden Meats, and observed their Oaths: And those that

have been deficient in any of these Particulars, are drown'd in a certain River, and a Period put to their Existence.

Tho' all the *Negroes* worship some Creature or other, yet they have not all Idols or Images in their Houses: Some of the Natives of the mountainous inland Country worship a living Man, as the *Tartars* near *China* do; of whom they relate ten thousand Miracles, and believe he dooms them to Happiness or Misery after Death, according to their Deserts. They are charged also with worshipping the Devil, and keeping a solemn Festival, of eight Days Continuance, annually to his Honour. This, however, is a Mistake; for tho' they hold such a Festival, it is not to the Devil's Honour, but in order to drive him out of their Country. They have no other annual Festivals but this, and another after Harvest, when they sacrifice to their Gods for affording them the Fruits of the Earth. As to their Weekly Sabbath, some keep it on a *Tuesday*, and others on a *Friday*, when no Person is permitted to go a fishing, or to drink any Wine.

They certainly believe, that their Souls survive after Death; which appears by the numerous Stories they entertain the *Europeans* with of Apparitions or Spirits: Nay, they seem to believe Spectres and Apparitions more firmly than any Article of their Religion, terrifying themselves and others with an Apprehension of them. Never any Person dies, especially if he be a Man of Figure, but they believe he appears for several Nights about the Place where he died; and they ascribe a great Power to such unimbodied Spirits. One of their Kings happening to be killed, who was a profess'd Enemy to the *Dutch*, and the chief Factor of the *Hollanders* Fort dying some few Days after, they concluded he had been snatch'd away by their deceas'd King, who had a Power of punishing him in the other World, tho' he could not subdue the *Dutch* while he was in this mortal State. They seem to have a great deal of Faith in Magick or Witchcraft, or something like it. Their Priests act in a triple Capacity, as Prophets, Conjurers, and Physicians; and, when Medicine does not answer their Expectations, they have recourse to Sacrifices and Charms; and the People have so good an Opinion of them, that, if the Priest does not recover the Patient, they impute it to some Defect in the Sacrifice, or themselves, or to any thing, rather than the Inability of the Priest.

The Diet of the *Negroes*.

They eat but poorly upon the *Gold Coast*. Millet, boil'd to the Consistence of Bread, is their common Food; or Potatoes, Yams, and other Roots in the room of it, well drench'd in Palm Oil; and, if to this they add a few boil'd Herbs and stinking Fish, the common People think they live luxuriously that Day: Nor do their Superiors eat better, only they allow themselves a greater Quantity of Fish and Herbs than the Poor can afford. They have also a Mixture of Corn, Paste, and Palm Oil boil'd together, to which they give the Name of *Malaget*, and which is in some Esteem with the *Dutch*, possibly because it may resemble their own Grout. They have also Variety of Garden Beans and Pulse, with Banana's and other Fruits, that serve them for Food.

At *Benin* and the *Slave Coast*, the better sort of People eat Beef, Mutton, and Fowls; and are so good to their Poor, that they are always welcome to their Tables when they want Employment, and cannot provide for themselves. They are also extremely hospitable to Strangers, being proud of nothing more than the Character of generous free-hearted People. Dried Fish and Roots are the principal Food of the common People at *Benin*: But, there is no Part of the *Guinea* Coast where they don't drink Drams in the Morning, and Palm Wine in the Afternoon; and their petty Kings will meet the meanest of their Subjects in the Market-place of an Evening, and, forming a Circle upon the Ground, drink to a very great Excess, being attended by their Women, who are no less addicted to drinking than the Men. The Conversation is usually smutty, which does not at all offend the Modesty of the *Negro* Females, who maintain their Ground, and sit drinking and smoaking with the Men frequently till Morning. Besides Wine, they have a Sort of Beer made of Millet, some of it very strong: Few of them drink Water, it being esteem'd very unwholesome here: And they have also the Milk of young Cocoa-Nuts, which is an exceeding cooling and refreshing Liquor; but, as for Cows Milk, they never drink of it.

Diseases of the *Negroes*.

Notwithstanding this Country is so unhealthful for *European* Constitutions, the Natives have but very few Distempers: The Small-Pox is the most fatal to them of any. This, indeed, sweeps them away like the Plague; as it generally does all other People in *warm* Climates. Another epidemical Distemper is that of Worms, which are found between the Skin and the Flesh, and give the Patient inexpressible Torment till they are drawn out.

When the Head of the Worm is come a little Way out of itself, they draw it further, winding it about a Stick, a little at a Time: When they find it come hard, they desist, for fear of breaking it; and then try at it again another Day; and so on till they have got it quite out, and then the Patient is at ease: But, if the Worm breaks, he endures a great deal of Pain; for it either rots in the Flesh, or breaks out at another Place: Some of the *Negroes* have nine or ten of these Worms in them at once, and the *Europeans* are not entirely free from them. They are a Yard long, and sometimes as much more: Nor is this the Distemper of *Guinea* only: Our People, as well as the Natives, are afflicted with it in the *East-Indies*. A greedy ravenous Appetite is also reckon'd among the Diseases of the *Guinea Negroes*, which proceeds, as some imagine, from drinking Palm Wine to Excess. The *Venereal* Distemper is also fatal to many of them, and few of them escape it amidst such Numbers of common Women. They can cure nothing but ordinary Flesh Wounds, which they do by applying Pultesses of some salutary Herbs to them. Tho' the *Negroes* are generally healthful, they seldom live to a great Age; one of Fifty is esteemed an old Man in this Country. The Distempers *Europeans* are most subject to here, are Fevers, Dysenteries, and the Colick; which are ascribed to the excessive Heat of the Day, and the Coldness of the Night; and also to the thick stinking Fogs, that arise from the Valleys between the Hills, and from the Salt-Marshes near the Sea, and at the Mouths of the Rivers where their Factories are usually situated: Nor does the stinking Fish, which the Natives lay to rot upon the Shore, contribute a little to infect the Air: It is a Matter of Fact not to be contested, that few arrive here, but are immediately seiz'd with a Fit of Sickness, of which abundance die. But this is due, in a great measure, to the Want of good Kitchen Physick and good Medicines. The *Portuguese*, who come from a warmer Climate, and are used to another sort of Diet than the *English* and *Dutch*, have their Health on all the Coasts of *Africa* almost as well as the Natives. But, among other

Diseases of the *Europeans* there

Cattle

Cauſes aſſign'd for the ill Health of the *Europeans*, is the Plague of Flies: Such Swarms of Gnats or Musketo's are perpetually buzzing about and ſtinging them, that they can get no Reſt Night or Day: And this is the Caſe of all Countries that are hot and moiſt. Theſe and a thouſand other Inſects are perpetually feaſting upon the Blood and Fleſh of Foreigners, who are ſo ſwelled up at their Arrival, that they can ſcarce be known by their Friends: It is obſerved alſo, that warm woody Countries, where the Winds have not a free Paſſage, are much the worſt.

As to their Marriage-Ceremonies, the Lover or his Friends contract with the Father of the Virgin, frequently before either Party is capable of making any Choice. No Son or Daughter ever pretends to diſpute the Authority of the Father in this Matter, when they grow up. As ſoon as the Bride is deemed capable of Marriage-Joys, ſhe is taken home by her Husband, without any other Fortune to recommend her, than her native Charms: For the Husband preſents her with her very Clothes and Ornaments; of which, if ſhe misbehaves herſelf, ſhe is ſtripp'd, and returned naked to her Friends; but, if the Man divorces her without any Fault of her's, ſhe carries off her Wedding Clothes and Jewels. There is an Entertainment for the Friends and Relations when the Wife is taken home, and ſhe is ſuffered to dreſs and live at Eaſe for ſome few Days; but then ſhe is forced to work amongſt the reſt of his Wives, to dig, plant, and ſow the Ground; for the Men leave the Husbandry, as well as the Buſineſs of the Houſe, entirely to the Women. Thoſe that live the eaſieſt amongſt them, are the Wives of the Merchants, the Dealers in Wine, and the Fiſhermen, who have no Lands to manure; for the Men of Eſtates, the more Wives they have, the greater is their Stock of Corn, Rice, and Plants, which makes them multiply their Wives as faſt as they can. In the Kingdom of *Whidah*, they take ſome hundreds, and the King ſeveral thouſands, who are no more exempted from Drudgeries, than thoſe of private Men, except ſome few of his Favourites. They have alſo one Wife they call their *Boſſum*, dedicated to their Houſhold-God, who is exempted from working; but it is expected ſhe ſhould follow her Lord into the other World, like ſome *Indian* Wives; but this is not much practiſed of late. There is alſo another Wife, to whom the Affairs of the Houſe are entruſted, and the Government of the reſt is committed, who is exempted from Labour: And theſe two the *Negroes* are very jealous of; but, for the reſt, they are not ſo much concerned. The common People will, 'tis ſaid, contrive with their Wives how to draw young Fellows into the Snare, for the Sake of the Damages they are entitled to, when another invades their Property.

Upon the *Gold Coaſt*, the Goods the Man leaves, go to his eldeſt Brother and his Children; and thoſe of the Women to her eldeſt Brother and his Iſſue: Their reſpective Children do not inherit the Goods of either Father or Mother. However, if the Father be a Sovereign Prince, the eldeſt Son ſucceeds his Father in his Commands, tho' he has none of his Effects, but his Arms: But at *Whidah*, and other Parts of *Guinea*, the eldeſt Son ſucceeds to his Father's Eſtate and Effects, as well as in the Governments he held. Tho' the *Negroes* uſe their Concubines and Female-Slaves frequently, as well as their Wives by Contract; yet are their Children illegitimate, and Slaves to the Heir. The multitude of Wives, Concubines, and Slaves theſe People keep, is for the State and Grandeur of the Matter, as well as on account of the Profit of them. There is one Inconvenience in a Man's having a large Family, and numerous Dependants, in *Guinea*: That he is anſwerable for all the Miſchief and Damage they do any one, and obliged to make it good: Nor do the People here wait till they can have Juſtice done them in Courts of Law; but, where a Man's Slave has done them an Injury, they immediately make Reprifals on the Maſter.

The *Negroes* of the inland Country, if any one is familiar with their Wives, are content with nothing leſs than his Ruin: If the Offender be a Slave, his Death muſt attone for the Crime, and his Maſter is obliged to pay a conſiderable Fine beſides. The Woman alſo pays for her Wantonneſs with the Forfeit of her Life, unleſs her Relations will redeem her; and where ſhe has committed the Crime with a Slave, no Money will purchaſe her Peace: She is put to Death without Mercy, and the Maſter of the Slave obliged to pay the Husband very conſiderable Damages: There have been Inſtances of thoſe, who have been obliged to pay two or three thouſand Pounds for the Offence of a Slave, where a Prince or great Man is injur'd. But, if the Man goes aſtray, the Wife has no Redreſs; ſhe muſt not murmur whenever he ranges.

They have a great Regard to their Women when they are with Child, and make Sacrifices and Offerings to their Gods when a Woman is firſt found pregnant. At the Birth of the Child, the Prieſt binds up the Head, puts on ſome Rings and Spells to protect the Infant againſt Enchantments, and performs ſome religious Ceremonies upon the Occaſion. There are two Names beſtowed upon it, the Day of the Week on which it is born; the Grandfather's Name if a Boy, and the Grandmother's if a Girl; and, as they grow up, they gain a third by their Employment, or ſome great Action they perform. In ſome Places they circumciſe their Children; but this is not perform'd till they are five or ſix Years of Age, or more. They alſo oblige their Women to live ſeparately from them at certain Times; and, in ſome Parts of *Guinea*, make it a Forfeiture of their Liberties to come into any Man's Houſe in ſuch Circumſtances.

The inferior Women that are unmarried, take very great Liberties, which is no Reproach to them upon this Coaſt; and, as theſe ſell their Favours as dear as they can, there are others purchas'd by every Townſhip almoſt, to ſupply the Neceſſities of unmarried Men: Theſe are obliged to admit of the Mens Company, whether Slaves or others, for the Value of a Farthing. They have Huts by the Way-ſides, where they entertain thoſe that are diſpoſed to become their Gallants: The *Dutch* tell us, that, when they would bring any of the neighbouring Towns to their Terms, they ſeize theſe Ladies of Pleaſure, and carry them to their Forts, being aſſured the Natives will ſubmit to any thing to obtain their Liberty. People here look upon it as an Act of Charity to purchaſe ſuch young Female-Slaves, to relieve the Neceſſities of the Publick; and the rich *Negroe* Women frequently leave ſome Legacies of this kind when they die.

When a Perſon of any Figure dies, his Wives, Relations, Slaves, and Dependants, immediately ſet up a dismal Howl: His Wives ſhave their Heads, clothe ſuch Parts of their Bodies with Rags, as are uſually clothed; and, for the reſt, colour their black Skins with a white Paint or Clay; running about the Streets, and bewailing themſelves like ſo many diſtracted Creatures: As the People of *Guinea* ſcarce look upon Death

Their Funerals

to

to be natural, but that it is always a Puniſhment inflicted on them by their Gods: The Prieſt is therefore ſent for, and a very ſtrict Enquiry is made into the Life of the Deceas'd; as Whether he was ever perjur'd? Whether he was guilty of eating prohibited Meats? Whether he obſerved their Sabbaths and Holidays, or the like? There is, however, another Way they uſually imagine he may have been taken off; and that is, by the Charms or Spells of his Enemies: And accordingly, if any of his Enemies have been ſuſpected of practiſing Magick, they make no ſcruple of charging him with the Death of their Friend, and perhaps endeavour to revenge it.

While the Corpſe remains unburied, all the Relations, Friends, and Neighbours, attend it, and join in the Lamentations of the Family: It is cuſtomary alſo to bring Preſents with them of Gold, Linnen, Good Liquors, Fruits, and other Eatables. At length the Corpſe, being richly habited, is put into a Coffin, with a conſiderable Quantity of valuable Effects, ſuitable to the Circumſtances of the Deceas'd: He is carried to the Burying-place, preceded by great Numbers of Musketeers, who fire their Guns all the Way; and the reſt of the People follow the Corpſe, making the Air ring with their Lamentations, but obſerve no manner of Order in the Proceſſion.

So ſoon as the Corpſe is interr'd, moſt of the Company return to the Houſe of the Deceas'd, where they drink and feaſt for ſeveral Days ſucceſſively, congratulating the Heir on his coming to the Poſſeſſion of his Eſtate.

Slaves ſacrificed on the Death of a King.

When a King is buried, ſeveral of his Slaves are ſacrificed, in order to ſerve him in the other World; as are his *Boſſums*, or Wives dedicated to his Gods. What is more to be lamented than the putting theſe miſerable Wretches to Death, is the Pain they endure in the Execution. They pierce and cut them, as in ſport, for ſeveral Hours. *Boſman* ſays, he ſaw one, who had endured the moſt exquiſite Torture, deliver'd to a little Child to cut off his Head, which he was an Hour a doing.

Inſtead of a Tomb, the *Negroes* uſually build a Houſe, or plant a Garden over the Grave; and, at *Axim*, they ſet Images of Clay upon it, which they waſh and clean every Year on the Anniverſary of the Funeral.

They are not leſs deſirous of being interr'd among their Anceſtors, than the People of *Europe*; and, when they die at too great a Diſtance from home to be removed thither, their Relations will bring home their Friend's Head, and ſome of his Limbs.

Language. Their Language is ſuch a very diſagreeable, brutal Sound, that tho' the *Europeans* have often endeavour'd to expreſs their Words in Writing, they have never been able to do it. However, of this Sort of Language there are many Dialects, ſo different from each other, that, in the Space of ſixty Miles, there are ſix or ſeven People that don't underſtand one another: As for Learning, nothing of that Kind can be expected from them: They are perfectly ignorant when their Country was firſt peopled, and from what Nation they derive their Original; but ſeem to have a pretty general Tradition, that both black and white Men were created ſo at firſt by God. To which ſome add, that God, ſoon after the Creation, gave them their Choice of Wiſdom or Wealth; and that their Anceſtors choſe the latter: Whereupon God placed them in *Africa*; but doomed them to be Slaves to the white Men, on whom he beſtowed Wiſdom, Learning, Arts, and Sciences, and gave the *Blacks* the Treaſures of Gold. They believe, that there is no Gold to be had out of their Country, nor any Learning among thoſe who inhabit it. A *Popiſh* Prieſt once uſed great Endeavours to ſet theſe People right in their Notions, and, at laſt, threatened them with the Flames of Hell for perſiſting in their Superſtitions: To which they anſwer'd, that they ſhould be in as good a Condition as their Anceſtors, who had, for Time immemorial, worſhipped the ſame Gods, and obſerved the ſame Cuſtoms.

Their muſical Inſtruments at *Axim* are Trumpets, made of Elephants Teeth bor'd through, with which they make a loud, but diſagreeable Noiſe. They have alſo a kind of Drum, made of a wooden Bowl, with a Sheep-skin ſtretch'd over it in the Form of a Kettle-drum, having two wooden Hammers for Drum-ſticks, which afford no great Harmony neither, in the Opinion of any but *Negroes*; nor is the hollow Iron Bell they beat upon at the ſame time much more agreeable: The leaſt ſhocking of any part of their Muſick, is an Inſtrument made in the Shape of a Harp, which makes a Noiſe that may be borne with Patience. They ſing and dance to their Muſick, ſuch as it is; and ſeem to be as much charmed with it, as *Europeans* are with the beſt Voices and Inſtruments.

Some Tribes of the *Negroes* are mightily given to Gaming, and will ſtake all they have upon the Event of a Game: But their only Game was Draughts, or ſomething like it, in which they uſed large Beans, till the *Europeans* taught them to play with Cards and Dice: Their rural Sports are either Hunting, Shooting, or Fiſhing; at either of which a Man may load himſelf in a few Hours. They have no Dogs to hunt or ſpring the Game for them, or Horſes to ride after it, as with us. Guns, Nets, and Snares, are what they uſe on theſe Occaſions: But, in Fiſhing, they want no Tackle that the *Europeans* uſe: And, indeed, Fiſhing is the principal Employment, as well as Diverſion, of thoſe Tribes that lie near the Coaſt.

CHAP

CHAP. VI.

A Deſcription of Nigritia, Zaara *and* Biledulgerid.

Negroeland.

NIGRITIA, or *Negroeland*, receives its Name from the dark Complexion of the Natives, or from the River *Niger*, that runs through the middle of it. It extends from ten Degrees to twenty North; and, in Longitude, about three thouſand Miles. All the Deſcriptions we have of this Country, above three hundred Miles to the Weſtward of Cape *Verd* and the *Atlantick* Ocean, are imperfect. There may be forty Kingdoms and Nations of different People, for aught we know, comprehended in that vaſt Tract aſſign'd to *Negroeland*, which our Geographers continue under that Name, for no other Reaſon, than that they are very much in the dark, as to all beyond the Mouths of the *Niger*.

The River

This mighty River empties itſelf into the *Atlantick* Ocean by ſeveral Mouths, of which the three largeſt are, 1. The *Rio Grande*, or *Great River*; 2. The *Gambia*; and, 3. The *Senegal*: It is upwards of three hundred Miles between the two moſt diſtant Mouths of this River; and all the Country between, except the riſing Grounds, are annually overflow'd, as the *Delta* in *Egypt* is by the *Nile*, and much about the ſame time. The *Portugueſe*, on the firſt Diſcovery of Cape *Verd*, fix'd ſeveral Colonies and Settlements on the River *Niger*; of which they ſtill retain thoſe of *Cathaco* and *Biſſeo*, on the River *Grande*: The *Engliſh* have, at this Day, two Settlements, one on *Charles* Iſland, and another on *James* Iſland, in the Mouth of the River *Gambia*: The *French* have two Settlements, one on the South, and the other on the North of Cape *Verd*, near the Mouth of the *Senega*, or *Senegal*: The *Dutch* alſo have ſome Settlements: All which formerly belong'd to the *Portugueſe*.

Forts and Settlements on the Mouth of the River.

Chief Town of Negroeland, its Situation.

The chief *Negroe* Town is *Tombut*, ſituate in fifteen Degrees North Latitude, ſix Degrees and a Half to the Weſtward of *London*: It conſiſts of no better Buildings than our ordinary Cottages, having clay Walls and thatch'd Roofs. Such Towns or Villages as thoſe, ſtand pretty thick in that part of the Country which the *Europeans* are acquainted with: And, 'tis thought, if their Lands were as well cultivated, they would yield as good Crops of Grain, as thoſe of *Egypt* do, which have the like Advantage of being annually overflow'd. However, as it is, the Soil of *Negroeland* yields great Plenty of Rice and Millet, Palm-trees, Cocoa-nuts, and other Fruits, Herbs, and Roots, with Fleſh, Fiſh, and Fowl; ſo that the Natives live very plentifully.

Fruitful Country.

Perſons of the Natives.

As to their Perſons, they are generally of a good Stature, and of hail, robuſt Conſtitutions; their Complexions the deepeſt black; their Hair black, ſhort, and curl'd like Wool; their Noſes flat; their Lips thick; and ſcarce differing in any thing from thoſe of their Neighbours in *Guinea*; only, as they are much leſs verſ'd in Traffick, they are a plainer honeſter People. There are ſome *Mahometans*, and a few Chriſtians, which the *Portugueſe* have made Proſelytes of, upon the Coaſt, and near the Mouths of the River: But all the inland *Negroes* are ſtill Pagans, as thoſe of *Guinea* are; and probably their Cuſtoms, Rites, and Ceremonies not very different from theirs.

Trade.

The *European* Nations, that are ſettled on this Coaſt, deal with the Natives chiefly for Slaves; tho' they may ſometimes meet with Gold, Elephants Teeth, and Drugs.

Cape Verd.

Cape *Verd*, which lies near the River *Senega*, is the moſt weſterly Promontory of *Africa*, and obtained the Name of *Verd*, from the Verdure of its Groves of Palm-trees, and other Ever-Greens.

An Enquiry into the Reaſon of different Complexions and Features.

It was long the Opinion of Chriſtians in general, and perhaps of the *Jews* before them, that all Men were White till after the Flood; but that *Ham*, the ſecond Son of *Noah*, was converted from a white Man, to a black Man, by his Father's Curſing him; and that *Africa*, falling to the Lot of this Son, all his Poſterity, who poſſeſs'd this part of the World, have remained black ever ſince.

But that this Curſe of *Noah*'s was not the Occaſion of ſuch a Change of Complexion is pretty evident: For firſt, the Poſterity of *Ham*, if they poſſeſs'd *Africa*, are not all black: The entire Northern Coaſt, and Southward, as far as the Tropick of *Cancer*, are not black, any more than thoſe who inhabit to the Southward of the Tropick of *Capricorn*.

2. The People in ſome parts of *Aſia*, particularly in the Peninſula of *India*, on this Side the River *Ganges*, and who are ſuppoſed to be the Poſterity of *Seth*, the favourite Son, are full as black within the Tropick of *Cancer*, as any of the *Negroes* in *Africa*: Nor is there, in the inland Country of *India*, at a Diſtance from the Coaſt, a ſingle Perſon to be found, that is not black. Indeed, the *Indian Blacks* have not the flat Noſes, and thick Lips, or the ſhort frizzled Hair of the *Negroes*. But theſe have never been reckon'd part of *Noah*'s Curſe.

Another Reaſon aſſign'd for the Blackneſs of the *Negroes*, is the Heat of the Climate; their Country being ſituated within the *Torrid Zone*. But neither can this be admitted as the *ſole* Reaſon of it: For great part of the Continent of *America* alſo lies within the *Torrid Zone*; and yet there never was a black Man there, till the *Europeans* tranſported them thither from *Africa*.

Others have ſuggeſted, that the People of *Africa*, being of tawny Complexion, between black and white originally, and not able to make themſelves as white as their Northern Neighbours, took great Pains to make themſelves black, as a more deſirable Colour than the Olive. It is obſerved by all Travellers, that the *Negroes* greaſe or anoint themſelves, and their Children, continually from the Hour they are born; and that many of them mix black Ingredients with the Ointment: That the *Hottentots*, who are not naturally of ſo dark a Complexion as the *Negroes*, do actually darken their Skins pretty much, by rubbing them with Fat and Soot.

Others obſerve, that not only the Complexion, but the very Features, Hair, Make, and Stature of People differ, as the Country and Climate differs, wherein they were ſeverally born: And as to the *Negroes* in particular; their Hair, their Lips and Noſes, are not at all like thoſe of *Aſia* or *Europe*, or even thoſe who live in the North of *Africa*. The *Scythians* of old, and the *Tar-*

tars and *Laplanders* at present, are of a very different Make from the People of the Southern Parts of *Europe* and *Asia*. And not only the Persons, but the very Genius and Temper of Men differ, as the Soil and Climate differ where they were born. The *Spaniard* is grave and sedate, mighty slow and circumspect in his Actions; while the *French* are gay and airy, perpetually dancing and singing: But if the *Spaniards* and *French* were to change Countries, they would, in a few Generations, alter their Persons and Humours; the *French* would be *Spaniards*, and the *Spaniards French*.

Does not every body see a remarkable Difference between the *French* and the *English*, when the *French* first come over hither? And yet, in two or three Generations, 'tis impossible to distinguish the one from the other. It is the same in Complexion, as in Features and Humours: *Blacks*, in a few Generations, would become white, if brought over hither; and white Men might become black, or very near it, if they were planted a few Generations in the Heart of *Africa*; especially if Pains were taken to make them so, by rubbing their Children with Grease and Soot from the Time they were born.

In fine, The Sun, no doubt, goes a great way towards the darkening the Complexion of the People that inhabit the *Torrid Zone*; but then the Soil they live upon, the Pains they take to make their Children blacker, and their Women converting altogether with black Men, may all contribute something towards making them so exceeding black. As to the Effect of the Soil, we may remember, that the *Turks*, *Persians*, *Indians*, and *Chinese*, all come originally from *Tartary*, and yet they do not at all resemble the *Tartars*, from whence they descended, but the People of those Countries they respectively possess, which must be admitted to amount to a Demonstration of what has been advanc'd.

Zaara and Biledulgerid.

Zaara and *Biledulgerid*, are supposed to extend from the *Atlantick* Ocean, as far as *Ethiopia Superior*; to run all along parallel to *Nigritia*; and to lie between the 20th and 28th Degrees of North Latitude; being bounded by the Territories of the Emperor of *Morocco* and *Barbary*, on the North; by *Ethiopia*, on the East; by *Nigritia*, on the South; and by the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the West. The North-Division of this Country, call'd *Biledulgerid* in our Maps, the Sailors denominate the Country of *Gualata*; and to the South-Division, which in our Maps has the Name of *Zaara*, our Mariners give the Name of *Arguin*, from a Town that lies near the Mouth of the River of *St. John*'s: However, both *Biledulgerid* and *Zaara*, are barren desart Countries at this Day, with scarce any Towns in them; for which Reason, we have thrown them together.

The principal River is that which the *Portuguese* have given the Name of *Dorada* to. There are some few lesser Streams here, but none of them navigable; and the Country is so far from being well water'd, that, when the Caravans cross it from *Morocco* to *Nigritia*, they do not meet with Water in several Days.

The People of this Country are most of them tawny: Tho' *Nigritia* lies contiguous to them, there are few *Negroes* here; neither do the Inhabitants agree with the *Negroes* in their Religion, Manners, or Customs. Like the *Arabs*, they live in Tents, moving from Place to Place, as they can meet with Pasture and Water for their Cattle; and, like the *Arabs* also, they live chiefly by Plunder and Rapine: They are generally *Mahometans*; and probably the Descendants of those *Arabs*, or *Saracens*, who over-ran all the North of *Africa* in the seventh Century. *Biledulgerid*, that now lies almost uninhabited, was once the celebrated Kingdom of *Numidia*, then well peopled and fruitful; and there are still the Ruins of ancient Palaces and Temples to be met with here: But every Country is the worse for being possess'd by the *Mahometans*; who neither regard Building, or the Cultivation of the Soil.

The Nature of a different Complexion, from the Air.

Of a different Religion, &c.

CHAP. VII.

A Description of the Empire of Morocco, *comprehending the Kingdoms or Provinces of* Fez, Morocco, *and* Suz.

Situation and Extent of the Empire of Morocco

THE Empire of *Morocco* lies between 28 and 36 Degrees of North Latitude; and between four and nine Degrees of Western Longitude. It is bounded by the *Mediterranean*, on the North; by the River *Fulvia*, which separates it from *Algiers*, on the East; by *Biledulgerid*, on the South; and by the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the West; being upwards of five hundred Miles in Length from the North-east to the South-west, and about two hundred Miles in Breadth. All the Tract of Land from the Province of *Suz* to *Nigritia*, being a barren Desart inhabited by *Arabs*, who wander from Place to Place, is very improperly, by some, comprehended in the Empire of *Morocco*.

Anciently Mauritania Tingitana.

This Empire was the *Mauritania Tingitana* of the *Romans*, and so denominated from the City of *Tingis*, now *Tangier*, lying on the South-side of the Streights of *Gibraltar*.

Face of the Country.

The Country is finely diversified with Mountains and vast extended Plains, most of them very fruitful, and pretty well inhabited. The principal Mountains are those of *Atlas*, which lie almost in the Form of a Crescent between the Kingdoms of *Morocco* and *Suz*, and extend from the Kingdom of *Algier* to the *Atlantick* Ocean. There are not many Woods in it, and those are destitute of Timber.

Rivers and Towns.

The chief Rivers are, the River *Suz*, in the Kingdom of *Suz*, at the Mouth whereof stands the City of *Santa Cruz*; the River *Rabata*, at the Mouth whereof is the Piratical Town of *Sallee*; the River *Ceba*, at the Mouth whereof lies the Piratical Town of *Alamora*; the River *Lecus*, on which stands the Port Town of *Larrach*. None of these Rivers are navigable for Ships; nor will the Ports at the Mouths of them admit of large Vessels. *Arzilla*, to the Northwards of *Larrach*, is another inconsiderable Port Town; and the *Portuguese* are yet in Possession of *Massigan*, on the same Coast to the Southward. There are also the Bays of *Tangier* and *Tetuan* in the *Mediterranean*, where Ships may ride during some Winds, but are very unsafe in others: And the *Spaniards* are yet in Possession of *Ceuta* over-against

againſt *Gibraltar*, and of *Penon de Veloz* further to the Eaſtward: But in none of theſe is there any ſafe Harbour.

Sallee, a Piratical Port.

Sallee, on the Weſt Coaſt of the Kingdom of *Fez*, is eſteemed the beſt Port the Emperor of *Morocco* hath: And, tho' this appears to be a pretty good Harbour when a Ship is got into it; yet, at a full Tide, there is not above twelve Foot of Water; and the Bar, at the Mouth of it, is ſeldom to be paſs'd by any thing, but Boats and very ſmall Veſſels: And yet from this Place, and *Mamora*, a little to the Northward of it, do the Pirates of this Country perpetually infeſt theſe Seas. Even our *Eaſt-India* men and ſtouteſt Ships are under great Apprehenſions of them; for, tho' they have no Quarrel with us, they will ſeize and carry in our Ships upon very frivolous Pretences.

The Air of the Country.

The Air of this Country is generally temperate, eſpecially on the Mountains, and near the Sea-Coaſts, where they oftner complain of Cold than Heat: It freezes ſometimes in the Winter very hard, and the Tops of the Mountains are cover'd with Snow great part of the Year. However, in the Valleys, their Winter is but ſhort; and, when it freezes in the Morning, the middle of the Day is generally warm. It freezes hardeſt in *January*, as with us. *February* is more moderate, and the Weather variable, changing ſeveral times the ſame Day.

Seaſons.

In *March* the North and Weſt Winds blow furiouſly; in which Month their Trees begin to bloſſom: Towards the End of *April* they have ripe Cherries; in *May*, Figs; and, in the latter End of *June*, all manner of Fruit is ripe, except their latter Figs, which are not ripe till *September*. The Spring, when the Weather is temperate, is reckon'd to begin the latter end of *February*, and end the latter end of *May*: Then their Summer begins, and laſts to the middle of *Auguſt*. This is a pretty hot Seaſon. The Air all the while wonderful clear and ſerene; and it is uſually very unhealthful, if it happens to rain in the Summer. The Sun then is parching hot, and occaſions malignant Fevers. Their Harveſt begins in the middle of *Auguſt*, and laſts till the middle of *November*; when their Winter begins, and continues to the middle of *February*. During this time, and the Beginning of the Spring, they have hard Gales of Wind and Storm, with Snow, Hail, and Thunder; and the Eaſt and South-eaſt Winds frequently blaſt their Fruits in the Spring. Their rainy Weather begins in *October*, when they ſow their Lands upon the Hills; but, in their Valleys, their Seed-time does not begin till *February*.

The Kingdom of *Fez*, the firſt of the three Diviſions of this Empire, is bounded by the *Mediterranean*, on the North; by the Territories of *Tangier*, on the Eaſt; by *Morocco*, on the South; and the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the Weſt. The chief Towns are, 1. *Fez*, the Metropolis of the Empire, ſituated in a Plain on a Branch of the River *Celat* or *Fez*, Latitude 33, Longitude 4 Weſt of *London*. This City is rather two Cities join'd, the one call'd *Old Fez*, and the other *New Fez*. *Old Fez* is ſituated the loweſt, and has a ſmall River running through it: The Town is of a round Figure, and about three Miles in Circumference: There are between fifty and ſixty Moſques, or *Mahometan* Temples, in it: The Houſes of their great Men here, as in other Places, contain ſeveral Squares: Thoſe of the common People are very mean, and the Shops like ſo many Pedlars Stalls: The Streets narrow and unpav'd, miſerably dirty in Winter, and duſty in Summer: Their Inns, that have been ſo much cry'd up, are built in Form of a Square alſo, with Lodging-Rooms on the Inſide: The Traveller buys his own Proviſion, and dreſſes it, and has the Convenience of feeding his Horſes and Cattle before the Door of his Lodging in the Square. So that they pretty much reſemble the Caravanſera's, on the Roads in *Perſia* and *Turkey*.

The Town of *Old Fez* is defended by a double Wall, and a Caſtle on each Side of it, ſituated upon an Eminence; but lies very much expos'd, being commanded by ſome riſing Grounds in the Neighbourhood: Their beſt Defence lies in their Numbers, being able to arm forty thouſand Men.

The new Town is ſeparated from the other only by a ſmall River, and has a double Wall round it, with ſquare Towers, like thoſe of *Old Fez*: There is alſo one tolerable Baſtion on the Walls of the new Town, built by an *Engliſh* Renegado. This Town was deſign'd as a Citadel to command the old Town; and here the King always keeps a good Body of Horſe for that end, whoſe principal Buſineſs it is to collect the Corn of the neighbouring Country, and lay it up in the Magazines for grinding; for which they have ſeveral Water-mills on the Rivers that run by the Town. Here are ſome Palaces of the Kings and great Men, but run to Ruin ſince the Court remov'd to *Mequinez*. The new Town is about a Mile and a Half in Circumference, and very populous: The Gates magnificent, and make a grand Appearance at a Diſtance; but a Traveller is diſappointed when he comes into it, to find little elſe but thatch'd Cottages, beſides the Moſques, the Magazines, and ſome few ruinous Palaces. However, *Old Fez* is a Town of the greateſt Trade in the Empire.

Mequinez.

2. *Mequinez* is ſituated in a delightful Plain, about a Day's Journey to the Weſtward of *Fez*, and two to the Eaſtward of *Sallee*, on the ſame River that *Sallee* ſtands: The Palace and the Olive Parks about it make a very beautiful Appearance at a Diſtance; but neither does *Mequinez* anſwer the Expectations of the Traveller when he comes into it. It is of an irregular Form, about two Miles in Circumference, and ſaid to contain three hundred thouſand Souls: The Streets, like thoſe of *Fez*, are dirty in Winter, and duſty in Summer, meanly built, and their Tradeſmen have Stalls on ſome of the higheſt Ground in the Town, where they ſell their Goods. *Mequinez* is ſurrounded by an ordinary Wall, and parted by a Road from the *Negroe* Town, which is inhabited by the King's black Troops, and their Families.

The Palace lies on the South-ſide of the City, and indeed is another City interſpers'd with Parks, Fields, Canals, and Gardens: In one Quarter whereof is the *Haram*, aſſign'd ſolely to the Uſe of the King's Women and their Guard of Eunuchs: A ſecond contains the Rooms of State and Audience: In a third Quarter are the King's Handicrafts, Workmen, and Armoury: In a fourth his Guards are lodg'd, where are the Artillery and Magazines: And in a fifth the Stables: Every part divided into large Squares; being in the whole about three Miles in Circumference. And here the Walks and Pavements are kept exceeding neat, and the Galleries frequently adorn'd with *Moſaic* Work.

The Emperor *Muley Hamet Dubebby*, who reign'd in 1727, when Mr. *Ruſſel* went Embaſſador to this Court, was upwards of ſix Foot high, about fifty Years of Age, of a fierce Countenance, and much pitted with the Small-Pox; his Face bloated, and his fore Teeth out; and, being a Mulatto of a tawny Complexion, made a very

very indifferent Figure. It being cold Weather, when he receiv'd Mr. *Ruſſel*, he had a black Cloak over a white Alhague or Veſt. His Turbant was a green ſilk Saſh, which hung careleſly about his Head, and ſhewed he was drunk. All he had about him worth admiring was a fine Scymitar, in a gold Scabbard, richly ſet with precious Stones. It was uſual with him, it ſeems, to drink with his Miniſters, till he fell down dead drunk; and then he was carried to Bed by his Eunuchs: And, when he waked again, he was ſure to give ſome Examples of his cruel and fierce Diſpoſition; inſomuch, that his Servants fled, and dreaded to come near him; and happy was the Miniſter who could make an Excuſe to be abſent.

Some Character of the Emperor.

While the *Engliſh* Ambaſſador was at *Mequinez*, he ſhot two Men that waited on him: And he endeavoured to kill his Prime Miniſter with his own Hand; but this Courtier, keeping out of the Way till his Fury was over, was then taken into Favour again. He commanded two young *Jewiſh* Women to be brought to his Bed; and, when he ſent them home again, hearing that their Husbands had preſum'd to go to Bed to them, he order'd the poor Men to be put to Death. Another of his Miſtreſſes diſobliging him, he order'd all her Teeth to be drawn out; and, enquiring for her afterward, and being told ſhe was not recover'd from the Illneſs that Operation had occaſion'd, he order'd the Man's Teeth, who drew them, to be pull'd out, and ſent her by way of Satisfaction. For any trifling Offence, or for his Humour, would he order a Man to be toſs'd, that is, thrown up into the Air by four luſty Slaves, as high as they could, and then let fall again; whereby ſometimes the Perſon was kill'd, and at others made a Cripple of: And ſuch Feats as theſe, it ſeems, were his Sport and Diverſion.

He murders ſeveral People.

The ſeveral Quarters of the City of Mequinez.

But to return to the Deſcription of *Mequinez*: This City, as has been obſerv'd, is divided into ſeveral Quarters, or rather is ſeveral Cities united: The Palace is a diſtinct Town: The Quarter of the *Moors* is another: The *Negroe* Town a third; and the *Jews* have a Quarter to themſelves, in which there does not leſs than fifteen Thouſand of them inhabit, being allowed a Shiek, or Governor, of their own Nation: And, tho' the Princes and great Men inſult them ſometimes, yet the Government takes a particular Care of their Protection; for they are ſo uſeful here, that the Government cannot do without them.

Jews the only Merchants.

All Money Affairs, and all foreign Trade, are negociated and carried on in this Country by the *Jews*; their principal Employment at *Mequinez*, is working in Gold and Silver, changing of Money, and lending it upon Uſury: And not only the *Jews*, but the Chriſtian Slaves, have their Alcaide, who is a Chriſtian, and their Protector; and they are allowed to carry on any Buſineſs almoſt. Several Chriſtian Slaves get Money here, and are allowed a Property in it; in which reſpect their Condition is to be preferr'd to that of the *Moors* themſelves.

A Convent at Mequinez.

Here alſo is a Convent of *Spaniſh* Fryars allow'd, that is endow'd with a Revenue of five hundred Piſtoles a Year, for the Relief of Captives, both with Food and Phyſick. Theſe alſo are under the Emperor's Protection, on account of their taking Care of his ſick Slaves, and the Preſents they annually make him: They have an Infirmary capable of Entertaining an hundred Perſons.

The Condition of Chriſtian Slaves here.

The late Emperor, *Muley Iſmael*, employed many of the Chriſtian Slaves in his Buildings; However, their Work was not harder than that of our Day-labourers. And he gave ſeveral of them Licences to keep Taverns, on condition of ſubſiſting their poor Brethren; to whom he alſo order'd a daily Allowance of Bread: Nor were Maſters of Ships, or thoſe who had a little Money to bribe the Alcaide, forc'd to work at all. But further, the Canute, where the Captives are lodg'd, is a much better Place than any of our common Priſons: Here every Nation has a diſtinct Apartment, in which are Taverns, and a Market of all manner of Fruits and Eatables: Nor are any of the *Moors* ſuffer'd to diſturb them, or indeed to come into their Houſe but upon Permiſſion. Several Captives at *Mequinez*, live much better than ever they did in their own Country; for they have not only the *Spaniſh* Convent to go to in their Diſtreſs, but whatever Money their Friends ſend over for their Subſiſtance, is faithfully deliver'd them, unleſs they defraud one another. Nay, ſeveral Captives have grown rich here, and carried Money out of the Country; and ſome of them, when Mr. *Ruſſel* was there, kept their Mules and their Servants. It is not therefore ſo inſupportable a Slavery as has been repreſented.

The moſt wretched and abandon'd People at *Mequinez*, are the Renegadoes, who have renounced Chriſtianity, and turn'd *Mahometans*: Theſe are deſpis'd by the *Moors* to the laſt Degree, and uſually prove the moſt vicious, treacherous, diſſolute Mortals that the Country affords. They are generally entertain'd in the Army, where they are half naked and half ſtarv'd; unleſs ſome few of them, who underſtand Engineering or Gunnery, or ſuch as can be uſeful to the *Moors* in fitting out their piratical Veſſels at *Sallee*.

3. *Tetuan* is ſituated on the Aſcent of a Rock, about eight Miles from a Bay of the *Mediterranean* Sea, called from this Place *Tetuan Bay*; and is between twenty and thirty Miles South of *Ceuta*, and about fifty South-eaſt of *Tangier*. The Town is about a Mile long, and half a Mile broad, and has a fine Proſpect of the Sea, and the Country beneath it: The Streets are narrow, unpav'd, and full of Dunghills, which makes it a filthy Place in Winter; and yet this is one of the beſt Towns in the Country. Their Houſes are uſually built about a little open Square, with Piazza's ſupporting Galleries about them; and in the Middle of the Square, People of Subſtance always have a Fountain. There are commonly four Rooms on a Floor, one on every Side of the Square, which have no other Light than what they receive from the Folding-doors, that open into the Piazza.

The Town of *Tetuan* contains about thirty thouſand Inhabitants, of which five thouſand at leaſt are *Jews*, who have ſeven Synagogues, but not two hundred Houſes amongſt them, ſeveral Families living under the ſame Roof. They are very poor, tho' all the Trade of the Place paſſes through their Hands; for they are only Brokers between Chriſtians and *Moors*. One Thing particular to this Town is, that the People walk on the Tops of the Houſes, and viſit one another from thence, more than by the Streets. The Town is ſurrounded with an ordinary Wall, and defended by an old Caſtle, conſiſting of two Squares. They have a Burying-place, on a Hill above the Town, adorn'd with ſuch Numbers of Cupola's and Pyramids, that it looks like a Town itſelf.

The Entrance into the Baſſaw's Palace is by a Cloiſter, which leads to a ſpacious Square, ſurrounded by a Piazza, and in the Middle is a marble Fountain; the Pavement of the Area and the Piazza

Piazza being of a *Mosaic* Work: On each Side the Square is one large Room, and in each of the Angles a square Tower of a considerable Height above the Building; in two of which are Stair-cases, that lead to the grand Apartment above: In the third is a Door that leads to a Mosque; and in the fourth another, through which we go into the Gardens. On each Side of the Galleries above, which run over the Piazza, are fine Apartments for the Bassaw's four Wives; each Apartment consisting of five Rooms, namely, one large Room, cover'd with a Cupola, in the Center of four lesser's Room; and through these are Doors, that lead to the Bagnio's of the Women, and the Lodgings of the Female Slaves: But the inner Rooms have no other Light, than what they receive by the Door of the great outward Room: Both the Doors and the Cielings of the House are very lofty; and over the Womens Apartment are four noble Terrace Walks, that overlook the Town, a frightful Vale beneath it, the River, and Part of the *Mediterranean* Sea; and at the End of each Terrace, is a Turret with Lattices, where the Women sit to work, and can see all that passes without being seen: In the Evening the Ladies usually walk in the Garden, where several of the Walks are shaded with Vines turn'd over Arches; the Walls of the Garden being so high, that they cannot be overlook'd from any part of the Town. This Description of the Bassaw's Palace, may serve as a Model of all other Houses of the *Moors* of any Quality; for they scarce ever vary in their Form. The *Moors* of Quality have scarce any Pleasures, but what they take in their Women, their Houses, Gardens, and Horses: Conversation with Men is what they do not relish at all; the Reason of which is supposed to be, that their Law prohibits them Wine, without which, good Humour, and a sprightly Conversation, cannot be long kept up.

4. *Tangier* is situated on a Bay of the Sea near Cape *Spartel*, just at the Entrance of the Streights of *Gibraltar*, on the *African* Side: It is built on the Declivity of a Hill, which makes it excessive hot in Summer, the Afternoon Sun lying full upon it. When the *English* had it, the Walls were upwards of a Mile in Circumference, and they had Lines and Redoubts that took in the neighbouring Hills, with two Castles for its Defence: And there was a Mole built for the Security of Shipping, the Heads whereof run out three hundred Fathom into the Sea; but these and most of the Works were blown up, or demolish'd by the *English*, when they abandon'd the Place; and it is now not very strong. This Place, *Alphonsus* the Fifth, King of *Portugal*, took from the *Moors*, in the Year 1463; and, in 1662, the Court of *Portugal* transferr'd it to *Charles* II. King of *England*, on his Marriage with the Princess *Catharine*, Infanta of *Portugal*. The *English* kept it twenty two Years; but the Parliament refusing to let the King have Money to maintain the Garrison, he found himself oblig'd to quit the Place.

The Kingdom of *Morocco*, the next Division of this Empire, is bounded by *Fez*, towards the North; by the Mountains of *Atlas*, on the East; and by the same Mountains, which separate it from the Province of *Suz*, on the South. The chief Town is *Morocco*, a large old City, situated in a fine Plain about the Center of the Kingdom, Latitude 31 and a Half, West Longitude 7 Degrees. This, in some of our old Writers, is said to be one of the greatest Cities in the World; to contain an hundred thousand Families; to be elegantly built, especially their Mosques and Palaces: But all these Matters appear to have been wonderfully magnified; and, since the Seat of the Empire has been removed from thence, the Town is extremely declin'd. As to the Fortifications, they would not be able to hold out twenty four Hours against an Army prepared for a Siege. The rest of the Towns mention'd by Geographers in this Province are, *Elgiamba*, *Imegiagen*, *Imizimzi*, *Delgumba*, *Agmet*, *Teneſſa*, which have little in them that deserve a particular Description.

The Province of *Suz*, comprehending that of *Tafilet*, is bounded by *Morocco*, on the North; by *Biledulgerid*, on the East and South; and by the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the West. The chief Town of *Suz* is *Taradant*. The rest of the Towns in this Province are, *Messa*, *Guargesen*, *Tejeat*, *Garet*, *Tagoost*, *Tedsi*, *Santa Cruz* (a Sea-port,) and *Illec*. But the only Town Travellers mention in *Tafilet*, is the Capital, of the same Name, situated in Latitude twenty six and a half, Longitude two Degrees West of *London*. *Muley Ismael*, the late Emperor, was of *Tafilet*, which, lying the farthest South of any of this Empire, and the Emperor's Mother being a *Negree*, the Complexion of the Royal Family is exceeding dark; for the Inhabitants of this Empire differ much in their Complexions, according to their Situation. As to the *Blacks*, that compose their best Cavalry, these being brought from *Negroeland*, differ very little from the *Guinea Negroes*. *Suz.* The Complexion of the Natives.

The Habit of a *Moor* is a Linen Shirt, or Frock, next his Skin; a pair of Drawers; a Sash; and over all a loose Coat, or Vest, of Silk or Cloth, with small Buttons of Gold, Silver, or other Metal: Their Arms are bare to the Elbow, as well as their Legs; but People of Distinction sometimes wear *Turkey* Leather Buskins, and most of them Sandals or Slippers. They shave their Heads, all but one single Lock upon the Middle of the Crown, and wear a Turbant, which is never pull'd off. They express their Reverence, both to God and Man, by putting off their Slippers, which they leave at the Door of the Mosque or Palace, when they enter either: And when they attend their Prince in the City, they run barefoot after him, if the Streets are never so dirty: Their Turbants are of Silk, or fine Linen, some of them five or six Ells long; and in their Sash or Girdle, under their outward Garment, they usually carry three fine Knives, in a silver Scabbard about a Foot long, adorn'd with precious Stones: Their Handkerchiefs, and such Things as we carry in our Pockets, they have in their Bosoms: They never shave their Beards, but clip them into Form, and keep them very neat. Habits.

The Habit of a Woman is not very different from that of a Man, except that she wears a fine Linen Cloth, or Caul, on her Head, instead of a Turbant, and her Drawers are much larger and longer than the Mens. The Women also, when they go abroad, have a Linen Cloth over their Faces, with Holes in it for their Eyes like a Mask. Those of Quality wear Pendants in their Ears, and Bracelets on their Arms: But wrap themselves up in white Cloth, several Ells in length, when they walk in the Streets; so that little of them is seen. They paint and colour their Hair and Eye-brows with burnt Antimony, endeavouring to make them look as black as possible; and the Ends of their Fingers are painted blue. The Furniture of the *Moors*, is but mean: They have neither Wainscot nor Hangings; neither Beds, Chairs, Stools, Tables, or Pictures. They sleep upon a Mattress on the Floor, which, in the Houses of Persons of Quality, is cover'd with Carpets; and the meaner Furniture

People have Mats: On these they sit cross-legg'd also at their Meals, having Pillows and Cushions to lean on. They wash always before and after they eat, wiping on their Handkerchief. Rice seems to be a great part of their Food; tho' they eat also Bread, Beef, Mutton, Veal, Fish, and Fowls: Their favourite Dish is *Cuscusou*, which is fine Flower grain'd as large as Hemp-seed, and stew'd with Mutton, Fowls, and Roots. Their Meat is all so much boil'd or roasted to Rags, that they can pull it to pieces with their Fingers. They use neither Knives nor Forks; but, every Man putting his Hand into the Dish, takes up and squeezes together a good Handful of all the Ingredients, as much as his Mouth will hold. Their Cups and Dishes are of Brass, Pewter, Earth, or Tin, the Law prohibiting their using Gold or Silver Vessels. They drink nothing but Water, sometimes mixing it with Honey, Soup, or other Liquids; they eat with a great wooden Spoon, which is handed round to the Company. Their Desert usually consists of the Fruits of the Country, such as Grapes, Oranges, Figs, Pomegranates, and Melons.

Diet.

They smoke pretty much, and play at Draughts and Chess; but never for Money. They are as scrupulous of eating Blood as the *Jews*; and therefore cut the Throat quite through of every Beast they kill. Companies are sometimes entertain'd with Musick and Dancing; but People of any Fashion never dance themselves.

Diversions.

The *Moors* are a covetous, unhospitable People, intent upon heaping up Riches; to obtain which they will stick at no manner of Fraud; and, as they know themselves to be such Wretches, they are very suspicious of Foreigners. The *Arabs* also have the Character of a thievish, pilfering Generation, that will even rob and destroy one another, when they have no body else to prey upon. They are of a more tawny Complexion, and much thinner and leaner than the *Moors*. The People, who inhabit the Hills, are the plainest, honestest People amongst them, and still retain a good Share of Liberty and Freedom. But the *Moors*, with all their bad Qualities, are very dutiful to their Parents, their Princes, and every Superior. They are to be commended for their Reverence for God and Religion, and whatever is esteem'd sacred amongst them, which they will not suffer to be burlesqu'd. Tho' 'tis acknowledg'd they do not want Courage; yet their Quarrels rarely proceed to Blows, and scarce ever to the taking away each others Lives. They have not, however, the same Tenderness for Jews and Christians, as for one another. The Cheating, Robbing, and even Killing of these, they esteem meritorious. The *Alcoran*, and their Comments upon it, are their only written Laws; and their Cadies, and other Ecclesiasticks, their only Civil Magistrates.

Genius and Temper of the *Moors*.

The *Arabs*.

Laws and Government.

The late Emperor *Muley Ismael*, who sat upon the Throne sixty Years, appointed *Muley Hamet*, his Son by his favourite Wife, to succeed him; tho' he had an elder Son by a former Wife, named *Abdelmelech*. This latter, being Governor of *Suz* at the Death of *Muley Ismael*, disputed the Title of *Muley Hamet*, and, obtaining a Victory over an Army of his *Negroes*, possess'd himself of the Province of *Morocco*, as well as that of *Suz*; but impolitickly declaring, that he would extirpate all the *Blacks*, they united against him as one Man, and involved the Country in a Civil War; the *Blacks* adhering to *Muley Hamet*, and the *Moors* to *Abdelmelech*.

Succession of the Crown.

As their Cadies are Judges of all Religious and Civil Affairs; so are their Bashaws, Governors, Alcaides, and Military Officers, of what concerns the State of the Army. If a *Moor* should turn Christian, or a Renegado apostatize from Mahometanism, he is burnt. Murder, Theft, and Adultery, are punish'd with Death. For Crimes against the State, they have impaling, dragging the Prisoner through the Streets at a Mule's Heels, throwing him from a Tower upon Iron Hooks, hanging him upon Hooks till he dies, crucifying him against a Wall. The Emperor, or his Bassaws, frequently turn Executioners, or have Execution done in their Presence.

It is computed, that the *Black* Cavalry and Infantry amount to forty thousand Men, and the *Moorish* Horse and Foot may be as many. The *Blacks* are esteemed their best Horse, and the *Europeans* have been sensible of their Bravery and Skill, both at *Oran* and *Ceuta*: They have Fire-Arms, as well as Swords and Launces. Their Stirrup Irons are shap'd to the Foot, so that they can stand up and strike when they make their Blow. Their Horses are very swift and beautiful, but not so strong as ours.

Land Forces.

It is their Cavalry they chiefly rely upon. Their Infantry indeed are numerous, and carry Fire-Arms; but are not disciplin'd, and know not how to defend themselves against Horse; nor how to attack, or defend a Town. They seem very ignorant in the Management of great Guns and Bombs, which are altogether left to the Renegado Christians, of whom there are some thousands in their Armies. They have an hundred and fifty brass Guns in the Palace of *Mequinez*, besides several Mortars.

In 1727, their whole Naval Force consisted but of two Twenty Gun Ships, the biggest not above two hundred Tuns, and a *French* Brigantine, with some few Row-Boats; and yet with these, being full of Men, do they make Prizes of great Numbers of Christian Merchant-ships, carrying their Crews into Captivity. The Charge of these Piratical Cruisers is borne entirely by private Adventures; tho' the Emperor has a Tenth of all the Prizes they make, and all the Captives that are taken.

Sea Forces.

The Emperor has also a Tenth of all Corn, Cattle, Fruits, and Produce of the Soil. The Port Charges of Ships, that trade to his Dominions, are one Barrel of Powder for Entrance, twelve Ounces for Loading and Anchorage, and twelve to the Captain of the Port. Vessels, trading to and from *Gibraltar*, pay but half this Duty. The Duties on Goods exported are taken chiefly in kind: His whole Revenue being estimated at 165,000*l. Sterling*.

Revenue.

The Coins of this Empire are, A Fluce, a small Copper Coin; twenty whereof make a Blanquil; a little Silver Coin, of the value of Two-pence. Their Gold Coin is a Ducat, worth about nine Shillings *Sterling*; and they usually give three of them for a Moidore. Merchants Accounts are kept in Ounces, an imaginary Coin, ten of which make a Ducat; but, in Payments to the Government, they will reckon seventeen Ounces and a Half for a Ducat.

Coins.

The Animals of this Part of *Africa*, are much the same we meet with to the Southward, except the Elk, the Elephant, and Rhinoceros; and, as they want these, so they have four others, that are not to be found in the South of *Africa*, particularly Camels, Dromedaries, and that fine Breed of Horses call'd *Barbs*. As to Buffaloes, Cows, Oxen, Sheep, Goats, Deer, and Hares, they have great Plenty of them: Their Desarts also are very much infested with Lions, Tygers, Leopards, and Serpents, of a prodigious Magnitude. They have also great

Animals.

Numbers

Numbers of Oſtriches, Pheaſants, Partridges, Turkeys, and other Fowls wild and tame; and their Seas and Rivers abound with Fiſh. They keep the greateſt Number of Dogs of any People; but Hogs are left entirely to the Chriſtians. 'Tis ſaid, they will eat the Fleſh of Camels, and of many other Animals which we refuſe.

Camels, their Uſe and Uſefulneſs.

The Camels will carry a Burthen of a thouſand Weight, and travel eight or nine Days without Water, and with very little Food. Theſe Animals are extremely proper for their ſandy Plains, ſeveral of which are many Days Journeys over, and not a Drop of Water to be met with. But they are very ill made for going up Hill or down; nor does ſtony or ſlippery Ways ſuit with their ſoft tender Feet. Their Horſes are to be admir'd not only for their Beauty and Speed, but their Uſe in the Wars; being extremely ready to obey their Riders, upon the leaſt Sign, in charging, wheeling, or retiring. The *Roman* Hiſtorians relate, that the *Numidians* and *Mauritanians*, who poſſeſs'd the Coaſt of *Barbary* formerly, made no Uſe of Bridles, even in an Engagement. In their Husbandry they plow with Oxen: The Camels and Mules are the Beaſts of Burthen; and they have Mules to draw their Carriages.

Produce of the Soil.

They have, or might have, vaſt Quantities of Corn, Wine, and Oil: No Country affords better Wheat, Barley, or Rice; both the *French* and *Spaniards* fetch theſe from the *Barbary* Coaſt, when they have a Scarcity at Home: And our Garriſons of *Gibraltar* and *Port-Mahon* have been ſupplied with Proviſions from the *African* Coaſt. The Plains of *Fez* and *Morocco* are well planted with the fineſt Olives, that yield delicious Oil; and there are no better Grapes for making Wine in the World, tho' the Cultivation of Vines is not encouraged, Wine being prohibited them: However, ſome of their great Men will drink Wine when they can get it, and that pretty openly. The *Jews* alſo diſtil Spirits in *Barbary*, for which they meet with a quick Market, even among the *Mahometans*. However the leſs a Man drinks, the more he is eſteem'd; and therefore moſt of them, when they have a mind to intoxicate themſelves, do it with Opium. Beſides the Fruits already mention'd, they have Dates, Figs, Raiſins, Almonds, Apples, Pears, Cherries, Plums, Citrons, Lemons, Oranges, Pomegranates, with plenty of Roots and Herbs, and excellent Hemp and Flax: As to Foreſt Trees, they have but few, and ſcarce any good Timber. Here are ſome Mines of very fine Copper, but it is not very plentiful.

Trade by Land

They have no Shipping to carry on a Trade by Sea: But the *Europeans* bring them whatever they want from Abroad. Their Trade by Land, is either with *Arabia* or *Negroeland*: To *Mecca* they ſend Caravans, conſiſting of ſeveral thouſand Camels, Horſes, and Mules, twice every Year, partly for Traffick, and partly upon a religious Account. The Goods they carry to the Eaſt, are Woollen Manufactures, *Morocco* Skins, Indigo, Cochineal, and *Oſtrich* Feathers: And they bring back from thence, Silks, Muſlins, and Drugs. By their Caravans to *Negroeland*, they ſend Salt, Silk, and Woollen Manufactures; and bring back Gold and Ivory in return, but chiefly *Negroes*, who firſt carry a Musket and ſerve on Foot, and after ſome Time are preferr'd to be Cavaliers. As theſe have no other Dependance but the Favour of the Emperor, they prove much the moſt dutiful and obſequious of all his Subjects; and, indeed, ſupport him in his Tyranny over the reſt. Their Caravans always go ſtrong enough to defend themſelves againſt the wild *Arabs*; tho', notwithſtanding all their Vigilance, ſome of the Stragglers and Baggage often fall into their Hands: They are alſo forc'd to load one half of their Camels with Water, to prevent periſhing with Drought and Thirſt over theſe extenſive Deſarts. When the Winds riſe, the Caravan is perfectly blinded with the Duſt; and there have been Inſtances, both in *Africa* and *Aſia*, where whole Caravans, and even Armies, have been buried alive in the Sands. There is no doubt alſo, but both Men and Cattle are ſometimes ſurpriz'd by wild Beaſts. The hot Winds likewiſe, blowing over a long Tract of burning Sand, are equal almoſt to the Heat of an Oven, and have deſtroy'd abundance of Merchants and Pilgrims. In ſhort, if it was not for Devotion, or in Expectation of very great Gains, no Man would undertake a Journey in theſe Deſarts.

Religion.

As to the Religion of this County, they are of a different Sect from the *Mahometans* of *Turkey* and *Algiers*, and have alſo a Mufti or High-prieſt of their own, who reſides at *Maquinez*: And under him are Prieſts and Eccleſiaſticks in every City and Town, who determine Civil as well as Eccleſiaſtical Cauſes, and officiate in their Moſques. Beſides theſe, they have their Saints or Marabouts, that live in unfrequented Places; for whom they have ſuch a Veneration, that, if a Criminal can eſcape to their Abodes, the Officers of Juſtice dare not ſeize him, and he frequently procures the Offender's Pardon. Some of theſe are Temporal, as well as Spiritual Lords, having whole Towns and Countries that are their Vaſſals; indulging themſelves in a reaſonable Number of Wives and Concubines, and all the Pleaſures that the World affords. But there are others that live the Life of Hermits, and uſe great Auſterities, going about in Rags and a neglected Dreſs. The People proſtrate themſelves before theſe Marabouts, eſteeming it a great Favour to kiſs their Feet, or but the Hem of their Garments. It is much eaſier for a Proteſtant to live under the Government of *Morocco*, in one reſpect, than in any Popiſh Kingdom or State; for they compel no Man to be of their Religion, but allow every one the free and open Exerciſe of divine Service, according to their reſpective Forms of Worſhip. It is impoſſible for the People of *Barbary* to forget how their Anceſtors were uſed in *Spain*; and conſidering theſe Things, we cannot but admire the Moderation of thoſe *Mahometans*, in ſuffering the *Spaniards* and other Chriſtians to profeſs the Chriſtian Religion in that Country, when nothing leſs than a total Extirpation of *Mahometans* would ſatisfy the Catholicks of *Spain*.

Marriages.

Their Marriages are celebrated in the ſame Manner as in other *Mahometan* Countries. The Parties and their Friends having agreed upon Terms, they come before the Cadi, who records the Contract; after which, an Entertainment is made, and the Bride carried home in great State; which is the whole of the Ceremony. Whether it be part of the Contract, that the Man ſhall let every Wife take her Turn in his Bed, or whether the Law requires this of him, we can't tell? But it is held a great Piece of Injuſtice to defraud any of his Wives of their Due. A Divorce is not difficult to obtain on either Side: Only, if the Fault be in the Man, the Wife is ſuffer'd to go off with her Clothes and Jewels; and, if the Woman goes aſtray, ſhe is turned out naked, and indeed ſeldom eſcapes with her Life.

Funerals,

Their Funerals alſo are ſolemniz'd here, as in other *Mahometan* Countries: Women are hir'd to lament over the Corpſe, who tear off their Hair, and cut themſelves till the Blood follows. After ſome time, the Corpſe is carried to the

Burying-

Burying-Place, with the Head firſt, in the uſual Dreſs, the Prieſts ſinging as they go, *God is a great God, and* Mahomet *his Prophet*; and, having ſet the Corpſe upright in the Tomb, with the Face towards *Mecca*, they leave it in that Poſture.

As to their Burying-Places: Every Perſon purchaſes a Piece of Ground, a little out of Town, which they encloſe with a Wall, and make a Kind of Flower-Garden of it, erecting a Dome, or a Spire, over the Graves of their deceaſed Friends. Thoſe who can do no more, place a Stone at the Head, and another at the Feet, as in our Church-Yards. The Women piouſly viſit the Tombs of their Husbands, or other Relations, every *Friday* carrying thither Meat and Fruits, which the Poor eat when they are gone: And here, or at Home, the Women perform their Devotions on that Day; for they are never ſuffered to enter into a Moſque; nor are they viſited by their Prieſts.

CHAP. VIII.

A Deſcription of Algiers, *containing the Preſent State of that Kingdom.*

The Situation and Extent of the Kingdom of *Algiers.*

THE Kingdom of *Algiers* is bounded by the *Mediterranean* Sea, on the North; by *Tunis* on the Eaſt; by the Mountains of *Atlas*, on the South; and by the River *Zea*, or *Mulvia*, on the Weſt; extending along the Coaſt of the *Mediterranean* about ſix hundred Miles from Weſt to Eaſt; the Breadth various, and very uncertain; though our Geographers place it between the 30th and 37th Degrees of North Latitude.

Rivers. The principal Rivers, which riſe in Mount *Atlas*, and run Northward into the *Mediterranean*, are, 1. *Areſgola*, or *Hartegol*. 2. *Aſſafran*. 3. *Chelef*. 4. *Sofaya*. 5. *Sef Gomar*. 6. *Zinganor*, or *Major*; and, 7. *Mira*. None of theſe have a very long Courſe, nor is there any Navigation upon them; though ſome of them would probably be made navigable, if any other People but the *Turks* were poſſeſſed of them. They have not one Bridge, or Ferry, over any River in the Country, but go about frequently ſome Miles to find a Ford.

Provinces. This Kingdom is uſually divided into five Provinces, *viz.* 1. *Tremeſen*, or *Telenſin*; 2. *Tenez*; 3. *Algiers*; 4. *Bugia*; and, 5. *Conſtantina*.

Tremeſen. The Province of *Tremeſen* is bounded by the *Mediterranean*, on the North; by *Tenez*, on the Eaſt; by *Biledulgerid* on the South; and by the Kingdom of *Fez* on the Weſt: The chief Towns whereof, are, 1. *Tremeſen*, ſituated in 34 Degrees North Latitude, under the ſame Meridian that *London* lies, and about ſixty Miles to the Southward of the *Mediterranean* Sea. It has been under the Dominion of the *Turks* of *Algiers* theſe hundred Years and more: Hiſtorians deſcribe it to have been a moſt magnificent City, large, rich, and populous, while it was in its Glory, and governed by its native Princes. But there ſeems to be ſcarce any thing in it remarkable at preſent.

Towns.

Marſalquivir. 2. *Marſalquivir*, or *Almarſa*, lies on a Bay of the *Mediterranean* Sea, three or four Miles South-weſt of *Oran*, and is one of the ſafeſt Roads on this Coaſt. It was poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, till the *Algerines* took *Oran* from them; but ſurrendered to the *Spaniards* again, immediately after retaking *Oran*, in the Year 1732.

Oran. *Oran* is ſituated on another Bay of the *Mediterranean* Sea, Latitude 36 Degrees, Eaſt Longitude one, about two hundred and fifty Miles Weſt of *Algiers*. It lies partly in a Plain, and partly upon the Aſcent of a Hill, and is about a Mile and a half in Circumference, as well fortified as the Ground about it will permit; but, being commanded by ſome of the neighbouring Hills, if there be not a Garriſon of ten or twelve thouſand Men to defend the Avenues, diſtant Caſtles, and Redoubts, as well as the Town itſelf, it cannot ſuſtain a long Siege.

The *Spaniſh* Coaſts and Merchant Ships ſuffering much from the Corſairs of this Town, *Ferdinand* King of *Spain*, ſent over an Army, under the Command of Cardinal *Ximenes*, in the Year 1509, to beſiege it; who, having a Correſpondence with ſome of the Inhabitants, when the *Moors* ſallied out with the beſt Part of the Garriſon, their Friends in the Town ſhut the Gates againſt them, and the Cardinal obtained an eaſy Conqueſt, killing above four thouſand *Moors*, and delivering twenty thouſand Chriſtian Slaves out of Captivity: The *Turks* of *Algiers* made ſeveral Attempts to recover this Town, but were always repulſed till the Year 1708, when they made themſelves Maſters of it, and remained in Poſſeſſion till the Year 1732. But King *Philip* having a fine Army of veteran Troops that had no other Employment, embarked a good Body of them, at this Time, under the Command of the *Conde de Montemar*, who landed with very little Oppoſition; and, having afterwards gained the Height of the Mountains above *Oran*, the Garriſon abandoned the Place, without waiting to be beſieged in Form: Of which Tranſaction we received repeated Advice in our common News-Papers.

The next Province to the Eaſtward, is that of *Tenez*, bounded on the North, by the *Mediterranean*; on the Eaſt, by the Province of *Algiers Proper*; on the South, by the Mountains of *Atlas*; and on the Weſt, by *Tremeſen*; extending about an hundred Miles from Weſt to Eaſt: The chief Towns are, 1. *Muſtagan*, ſituated at the Mouth of a River that falls into the *Mediterranean*, in the Midway between *Oran* and *Tenez*. 2. *Tenez*, the Capital of the Province, ſituated alſo on the Sea-Coaſt, about an hundred Miles to the Eaſtward of *Oran*; ſuppoſed to be the *Julia Cæſarea* of the Antients. 3. *Sercelli*, or *Serſela*, near the Sea, between *Tenez* and *Algiers*; anciently a large populous City, but not very conſiderable at preſent.

The Province of *Algiers Proper* is bounded by the *Mediterranean* on the North, by the Province of *Bugia* on the Eaſt, by *Biledulgerid* on the South, and by *Tenez* on the Weſt; extending along the Coaſt of the *Mediterranean*, upwards of two hundred Miles, and about four hundred Miles from the ſame Sea to the Southward: The chief Towns whereof are *Algiers* the Capital, and *Mitigiſa*, or *Temendfuſt*.

Algiers

giers.

Algiers is situated in Latitude 37, West Longitude three and a half, on a Bay of the *Mediterranean* Sea, a little to the Eastward of the River *Safran*: It is built on the Side of a Mountain; the Houses flat-rooſed, terraſſed, and white-waſhed; and, riſing gradually from the Sea Shore up the Hill, forms a Kind of Amphitheatre, and appears very beautiful on the approaching it by Sea; but as the Streets are extremely narrow, and the private Houſes but mean, our Expectations are not anſwered when we come to examine it cloſely. However, the Inhabitants can viſit each other from the Tops of the Houſes, without going into the Streets. The Walls are about a League in Circumference, defended by ſome Baſtions, and ſquare Towers between them: The Port is ſecured by a Pier or Mole, in Length about five hundred Paces. On a ſmall rocky Iſland ſtands a Caſtle called the *Lantern*, with three Tier of Braſs Cannon, beſides other Fortifications. The Town has five Gates; and in it are ten great Moſques, fifty leſſer Moſques, three Colleges, and Abundance of Schools. It is computed, there are about an hundred thouſand Souls in the Town.

On the Side of the Bay, oppoſite to the Mole, is a Fort defended by about twenty great Guns, called *Fort Metaſuz*. There are alſo two other Forts on that Side, well furniſhed with Cannon. On the Land Side there is a Fortreſs at the very Top of the Hill, above the Town, called *Al Caſabha*; and without *Bebahweyd-Gate* are three other Forts; and a little farther a fourth, called the *Emperor's-Caſtle*, where the Emperor *Charles* V. had his Head-Quarters when he beſieged *Algiers*: But the greateſt Strength is the Numbers and Reſolution of the Natives, brought up to hazardous Enterprizes, being in perpetual War with all Mankind.

Metaſuz.

The Town of *Metaſuz* lies upon the Sea, about four Leagues to the Eaſtward of *Algiers*, and is not remarkable for any Thing, but being the Place where the Emperor *Charles* V. embarked, when he was forced to raiſe the Siege of *Algiers*, and the giving Name to a certain Promontory on that Coaſt.

Province of Bugia

The next Province to the Eaſtward of *Algiers*, is *Bogia*, extending about thirty Miles along the *Mediterranean*, and upwards of an hundred to the Southward of that Sea; the chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Gigeri*, ſituated fourteen or fifteen Leagues North-Eaſt of *Algiers*, upon the *Mediterranean* Sea, remarkable for little but an old Caſtle, that ſtands upon a Mountain of very difficult Acceſs. 2. *Bugia*, now the Capital of the Province, and formerly of a Kingdom of the ſame Name, ſituated at the Mouth of the River *Major*, about twenty Leagues to the Eaſtward of *Algiers*. It lies upon the Side of a Hill, and is defended by a Caſtle that ſtands above it, but not able to protect Ships in the River.

Gigeri

Bugia.

Near the Mouth of the River *Major*, lies the little Iſland of *Tabaria*, in the Poſſeſſion of the *Genoeſe*; and which they have ſo well fortified, as to bid Defiance to all the Power of the *Algerines*.

Conſtantina is the moſt Eaſtern Province of the Kingdom of *Algiers*, being bounded by the *Mediterranean* on the North; by the River *Guadilbar*, which divides it from *Tunis*, on the Eaſt; by *Biledulgerid*, on the South; and by the Province of *Bugia* on the Weſt: The chief Towns whereof, are, 1. *Conſtantina*, ſituated on a River, about ninety Miles South-Eaſt of *Bugia*, Latitude 35. There are ſome noble Ruins found in and about this Town. 2. *Bona*, or *Hippon*, on the *Mediterranean*, Latitude 37, about ninety Miles North-Eaſt of *Conſtantina*, and near a coral Fiſhery. This Town, among others, was taken by *Charles* V. but recovered by the *Turks* not long afterwards.

Face of the Country.

Mount *Atlas* runs through the South Part of the Kingdom of *Algiers*, quite from Eaſt to Weſt. It is alſo very mountainous towards the *Mediterranean* Sea: But both Hills and Valleys are exceeding fruitful where they are cultivated, abounding in Corn and Fruits: Such as Dates, Olives, Figs, Grapes, and Almonds. They have alſo good Store of Wax and Honey, and their Coaſts afford great Quantities of Salt.

Government of *Algiers*.

The Government of *Algiers* is an abſolute Monarchy; though it has ſome Appearance of a mixt Government; becauſe the Dey, or Sovereign, ſometimes aſſembles a Divan, and demands their Advice. But this is only to ſkreen him againſt popular Diſcontents; for he acts by his ſole Authority, whenever he pleaſes. The Dey is indeed elective, and this Election is by the *Turkiſh* Army: There are ſeveral Candidates named upon a Vacancy; and, when they have fixed upon one, they all cry out, *God proſper you, and ſhower down his Bleſſings upon you.* He is immediately inveſted with the Robe of Sovereignty: And then the Cadi is called, who declares, that God has vouchſafed to call him to the Government of that Kingdom; and that he is to maintain the Subjects in their Liberties and Properties. He ſits daily, adminiſtring Juſtice, from five in the Morning till Noon, and from one till four, hearing and determining all Cauſes, without any Aſſiſtants but four Secretaries. However, Matters relating to Inheritance, to Religion, or the Civil Laws, are determined by the Eccleſiaſtical Judges: So that thoſe determined by the Dey, relate chiefly to the Government of the State, and the Militia; or to perſonal Debts, and other controverted Matters. His Judgments are arbitrary, not regulated by Laws; nor is there any Appeal from his Tribunal. But, as the military Men do not only elect their Sovereign, but depoſe, or put him to Death, whenever they pleaſe; he is obliged to be very cautious in his Decrees.

Land Forces.

The Militia, who elect their Dey, are all natural *Turks*, or Renegado Chriſtians, generally denominated Janizaries, and amount to about twelve thouſand Men: Theſe are, by ſome, ſtiled the Nobility of *Algiers*; and certain it is, that the frequent Revolutions that happen at *Algiers*, are brought about by this Claſs of People chiefly: They are but few in Number indeed, compared with the native *Moors*; and yet do they tyrannize over the Natives in a moſt inſolent Manner. And, it is certain, the native *Moors* have as great a Dread of theſe Pirates by Land, as our defenceleſs Merchants have of them at Sea, and tremble at the very Name of an *Algier Turk*.

Though this Kingdom conſiſted at firſt of little more than the Lands within View of the City, by what they have taken from the Kings of *Tunis* and *Bogia*, and the Emperor of *Morocco*, we ſee it extended ſix hundred Miles and upwards in Length, and three or four hundred in Breadth. In theſe extenſive Territories the Dey has three Viceroys or Beys; one in the Eaſt, another in the Weſt, and a third in the South; who, in the latter End of the Summer, aſſemble each of them a ſmall Army, with which they make the Tour of their reſpective Governments, to gather in ſuch Taxes as the Dey is pleaſed to put upon the People; and, in caſe any of them refuſe the Payment, the Bey ſeizes, or deſtroys, their whole Crops of Grain or Fruits. Whatever the whole Country can raiſe, is brought to *Algiers* for the Support of the Government, and particularly the Payment of the Janizaries. As Money is pretty

Three Beys or Viceroys.

ſcarce in this Country, great Part of the Taxes are taken in Kind; and the Prizes they make at Sea, ſome Years, equal the Revenues they exact from the Natives at Land. Theſe Pirates ſeem to look upon the whole World as their Tributaries: *Chriſtians*, *Jews*, and *Moors*, (who are of the ſame Faith) are all treated by them with Inſolence. The meaneſt *Turkiſh* Soldier will make the wealthieſt *Moor* give him the Way: They have their Quarters in ſpacious Squares, where they are maintained, and ſerved by Slaves, at the publick Expence: They are duly paid every Moon, and buy their Proviſions one third cheaper than any other of the Inhabitants. Beſides the Janizaries, the Dey has ſeveral thouſand *Moors* in his Service, Horſe and Foot; but theſe are not entitled to any of the Privileges the *Turkiſh* Soldiers enjoy.

Force of the *Algerines* at Sea.

The *Algerines* have no leſs than five and twenty Ships of War, from eighteen to ſixty Guns, beſides a Multitude of ſmaller cruizing Veſſels. As they have very little Timber in the Country, nor any naval Stores whatever, their Ships are either thoſe they take as Prizes, or built and rigged out of the Materials of ſuch Ships as are taken: However, they never ſuffer the Number of their Ships of War to be diminiſhed.

The *Engliſh* have been at Peace with the *Algerines* ever ſince the Year 1682: But the *Dutch* could not obtain a ſettled Peace till very lately; in negotiating which, their good Friends the *Engliſh* aſſiſted them. Whether the *Dutch* will ever make any Returns for ſo ſignal a Favour, we ſhall ſee, if we live long enough.

They have little Dependance on the Grand Signior.

Though it has been already obſerved, that the Dey is an abſolute Sovereign, yet the Grand Signior ſtill ſtiles him his Lieutenant, and the People, under his Juriſdiction, Subjects to the Porte. And it appears, that the *Algerines* have indeed a great Veneration for the Grand Signior, as the Head of their Religion; but have a ſtill greater for their own Intereſt, and are not to be moved by any Threats of the Porte, when it pretends to debar them from exerciſing their piratical War with the *European* Nations, which is the Foundation of all their Wealth and Grandeur.

The Grand Signior had, till very lately, a Baſha always reſiding at *Algiers*, to whom he expected the Dey and his Subject ſhould pay a great Regard; but, finding his Authority ſlighted, and that they would not permit his Baſha to intermeddle in their Affairs, or even allow him a Vote in their Divan, he was pleaſed to conſtitute the Dey himſelf his Baſha, that he might ſeem ſtill to retain ſome Authority over the *Algerines*.

The Aga of the Janizaries the next Officer to the Dey.

The next temporal Officer to the Dey, is the Aga, or General of the *Turkiſh* Militia. This is the oldeſt Officer in the Army, who continues in the Poſt but two Months, and then is ſucceeded by the next Senior Officer. While he remains Aga of the Militia, the Keys of the City are in his Cuſtody, all military Orders are given out in his Name, and in his Palace only the *Turks* are puniſhed.

The Mufti, Cadi, &c.

The three chief Eccleſiaſticks are the Muſti, the Cadi, and the Grand Marabout: The firſt, the High Prieſt of their Religion: The ſecond, the ſupreme Judge in eccleſiaſtical and civil Matters: And the third, the General of that Order, who profeſs themſelves Hermits or Marabouts. Theſe three Eccleſiaſticks may be diſtinguiſhed by the Largeneſs of their Turbants: They ſit in the Divan, a little below the Dey, on his Right-Hand, and, when they enter the Aſſembly, he riſes up, and embraces them; but though they are adviſed with on important Occaſions, they have no Vote here.

In the Adminiſtration of Juſtice before the Dey, the Plaintiff always makes his Complaint in Perſon; and the Defendant is immediately ſummoned to anſwer the Complaint. Upon his Appearance, both Parties are examined upon Oath, as well as the Witneſſes; and, if either of them appear guilty of Perjury, he immediately receives three hundred Baſtinadoes with a Cudgel, and is obliged to make Satisfaction forthwith. If a Perſon is indebted to another, he is decreed to pay the Debt in ſuch Time as the Dey awards: In which, if he fails, an Officer ſells his Effects by Auction, and makes the Creditor Satisfaction; and this is done without any Manner of Charges. If the Debtor have no Effects, he is impriſoned: If he have a real Eſtate, the Matter is referred to the Cadi, who only can determine Matters in relation to Lands and Inheritances, which always deſcend to the eldeſt Son: But where a Perſon leaves no Heirs, all his Lands and Effects are poſſeſſed by the Government.

Adminiſtration of Juſtice.

Defect of Effects.

Puniſhments.

The uſual Puniſhment for Offences not Capital, is the Baſtinado, which conſiſts of Blows over the Soles of the Feet, the Calves of the Legs, the Buttocks, or Belly, with an unmerciful Cudgel. In Capital Caſes, the *Turks* are ſtrangled with a Bow-String: But the various Deaths the poor Chriſtian Slaves are put to, are almoſt innumerable; impaling and burning are but too frequent, on their attempting to make an Eſcape: But the worſt of all Deaths, is the throwing them off the Walls of the Town upon Iron Hooks, on which they are catched by the Jaws, by the Ribs, or ſome other Part of the Body, and hang in the moſt exquiſite Torture till they expire.

Captives.

The Corſair, or Pirate, no ſooner takes a Prize, but he examines into the Quality and Circumſtances of all his Priſoners. If he imagines they do not give him a juſt Account, he orders them to be baſtinado'd till they do. Having got what Information he can, he brings them on Shore, and carries them to the Dey's Houſe, whither the *European* Conſuls immediately repair, to ſee if any of the Priſoners belong to their reſpective Nations, who are at Peace with *Algiers*: In that Caſe, they reclaim them, provided they were only Paſſengers: But if they ſerved for Pay on Board the Ships of a Nation at War with this Government, there is no Way to get them releaſed, but by paying the full Ranſom.

The Matter being ſettled between the Dey and the Conſuls, the Dey has his Choice of every eighth Slave, and generally takes the moſt uſeful Men: Beſides whom, he lays Claim to all ſuch Priſoners as are of any Quality. The reſt are left to the Captor and their Owners, and uſually carried to the *Slave-Market*, where the Crier proclaims the Quality, the Profeſſion, and Circumſtances, of each of the Captives, and the reſpective Prizes ſet upon them. They are led afterwards to the Court before the Dey's Palace, and ſold by Auction, in his Preſence, to the beſt Bidder; but whatever is given beyond the firſt Price ſet upon them, belongs to the Government.

Thoſe Slaves which belong to the Dey and the Publick, and have no particular Profeſſion, are put to the moſt laborious Employments; as drawing Carriages, removing Rubbiſh, cleaning the Streets and Houſes, carrying the Soldiers Baggage; and are locked up at Night in the Priſons belonging to the State: They have each of them a Ring of Iron on one Ancle; and thoſe they apprehend inclined to make their Eſcape, are loaden with Chains, in which they are forced to work all Day. However, there are others, who, when they have got a little Money from their Friends, are permitted to keep Taverns, paying a certain Duty to

to the Dey, in proportion to the Wine they vend: And these are oblig'd to contribute towards the Maintenance of their Brethren in Servitude, and to the Christian Chapels that are allow'd in these Prisons. There have been Instances of some, in this Way, that have got enough to purchase their Liberties, and carry Money away with them; for the Government allow them a Property in what they get, and protect them in it. These Taverns are no better than Cellars, and dark Ware-houses, whither *Turks*, *Moors*, and *Christians* resort promiscuously. Very little Regard is paid to their Great Prophet's Prohibition in *Algiers*; only the good Musulman has so much Respect for the *Alcoran* even here, that he will not keep a Tavern, and distribute the forbidden Liquor to others, tho' he makes little Scruple in drinking it. The Man that keeps a Tavern, tho' a Slave, is empower'd to strip any of his Guests, even the *Turks* themselves, if they refuse to pay their Reckoning. Every Slave belonging to the Government is allowed three Loaves a Day, about the Bigness of a Penny Loaf, besides what he earns himself; for, when the Government have no Employment for them, they are allowed to work in any Manufacture they are Masters of, and take the Profit of it. Every *Friday*, particularly, they are allowed to work for themselves.

Slaves to private Men

Those who are Slaves to private Men, are employed in the Business of the House, in Trade, Husbandry, or Gardening, according to their Qualifications, and the Business the Master has for them to do: Ship and House-Carpenters, Sail-makers. Smiths, and the like, are very useful, and much encourag'd; and a *European* Surgeon is a notable Physician among them. Notwithstanding the Dread our People are in of being taken by *Turkish* Rovers, many of them live better in their Masters Houses at *Algiers*, than ever they did in their own Countries, being entertain'd rather as Companions than Servants, where they happen to be good for any thing: Tho', 'tis true, some barbarous Masters use their Slaves ill, giving them harsh Language, and beating them unmercifully, that they may oblige them to redeem themselves at an extravagant Price, especially where they are inform'd they are People of Substance. As to Female Slaves, unless their Masters expect a considerable Ransom for them, they make them their Concubines, or sell them to those who want to purchase such Conveniencies, if they are young. The Popish Priests, who are employ'd for the Redemption of Captives, entertain their Readers with abundance of Tragical Stories upon this Head.

Female Slaves

Courts of Justice and Judges

The *Moors*, *Jews*, and *Christians*, who are Free-men, have respective Judges of their several Nations assign'd them, who are permitted to administer Justice among their People, according to their several Laws. Traytors, House-breakers, and Highway-men, are put to the most cruel Deaths here, tho' their State is supported by Robbery. A *Moor*, who has been guilty of Theft, has his right Hand cut off; which, being hung about his Neck, he is set upon an Ass, with his Face to the Beast's Tail, and led about the Streets, a Cryer going before him and proclaiming his Offence. Adultery and Robbery are always punish'd with Death. Apostates from the establish'd Religion are burnt here, as in other *Mahometan* Countries: And tho' the Popish Priests, that are Slaves at *Algiers*, are used better than other Captives, their Brethren taking care to remit Money to their several Masters, to excuse them from Labour; yet, if any Christian Nation is at War with *Algiers*, the Priests are always made the first Sacrifice. When the *French* bombarded the City in the Year 1688, the *Turks* fir'd no less than forty *Frenchmen* at the Fleet, from the Mouths of their great Guns or Mortars; among whom were the *French* Consul, and the Apostolical Vicar: But the *French* Admiral set them an Example, by firing several *Turkish* Slaves from his Mortars into the Town: However, these are extraordinary Cases; for generally Christian Slaves are treated very well at *Algiers*. They neither tempt, or force them to change their Religion; for then they lose the Benefit of their Ransom; neither can they sell them to others. Indeed, when a Christian Slave deserves Death, the Dey will sometimes offer him his Life, if he turns *Mahometan*. And Slaves under twelve Years of Age, the rich Musulmen will bring up in their Superstition, and even adopt them for their Children: But, as for those that are grown up, they never attempt to make them change their Religion. For the most part, Christian Slaves are used better than those Christians that are at Liberty: The latter are insulted and abus'd both by *Turks* and *Moors*; but they take care how they meddle with Slaves, as their Masters will resent the Affront.

French Consul and Apostolical Vicar fir'd out of Mortars. The *Turks* do not force their Slaves to turn *Mahometans*.

There is more Danger of falling into the Hands of the Mountaineers, than of the *Algerines*; for the former make them serve with Rigour, frequently taking away the Life of a Christian Prisoner. But even here, the People are much more inclin'd to preserve their Prisoners, where a good Ransom may be expected, than to destroy them.

The *French* and *Spanish* Slaves have each of them their Priests and Chapels at *Algiers*, where Divine Service is perform'd after the Mode of their respective Countries: The *Jews* also, who are computed to be five thousand Families, have their Synagogues and their Priests; but *Britain*, and the several Protestant Nations of *Europe*, have neither Chapels or Ecclesiasticks to perform Divine Service, tho' they have Consuls here to transact their Affairs: But one Reason the *English* have no Chapel or Priest here, may be, that there are not many *English* Slaves in the Place, on Account of our having been at Peace with *Algiers* these fifty or threescore Years.

No Protestant Ecclesiastick at *Algiers*.

Trade of *Algiers*.

The Trade of the *Algerines*, by which they principally subsist, is Piracy and Man-stealing. In their Prizes they find all the Merchandize of *Europe*; and this, as well as the Prisoners, the Captain of the Pirate and his Crew divide equally with the Owners, after the Dey has taken his eighth Share. The *Jews* are the principal Merchants at *Algiers*, as they are in every Town upon the *Barbary* Coast; tho' there are some *Moorish* Merchants also. The *Turks* are all Men of the Sword, and look upon Traffick to be beneath them. The *Jews* buy the Goods found in the Prizes, and retail them at home, or export them again to foreign Markets. *European* Ships, that come to *Algiers* on Account of Trade, meet with little Encouragement, unless there have been no Prizes made in a great while; for the Pirates must certainly be able to afford better Penny-worths than the Merchant.

They take all foreign Ships into their Protection, when they have enter'd any of their Ports, whether they are at Peace with them, or not; but, if they meet with the same Ships at Sea, even in their Return from *Algiers*, they look upon them as lawful Prize.

Port Duties

The Duties on all Merchandize, imported by *Turks*, *Moors*, or *Jews*, are twelve and a half *per Cent*; and the Duties on Exportation two and a half *per Cent*. The *English*, by Treaty, are to pay but five *per Cent*. on Goods imported, and

two

two *per Cent.* on thoſe they export; and, 'tis ſaid, the *French* have had the ſame Favour ſhewn them: They make even Money pay five *per Cent.* on Importation, except that which is ſent for the Redemption of Captives; and this pays but three *per Cent.*

Goods imported.

The Merchandizes imported, are wrought Silks, Gold and Silver Stuffs, Damasks, Linnen and Woollen Clothes, Spices, Copper, Braſs and Tin Ware, Quickſilver, Arms, Powder, and other Ammunition; Sails and Naval Stores, Cochineal, Copperas, Sugar, Cotton, Galls, Brazil Wood, Red Wood, Alum, Vermillion, Wine, Brandy, Spirits, Opium, Gums, Paper, dried Fruit, and other leſs conſiderable Articles.

Goods exported.

In return for which, the *Europeans* receive Wax, fine Wool, Oſtrich Feathers, Skins of wild Beaſts, Dates, and Chriſtian Slaves: Nor is there any kind of Merchandize, but what may be met with here ſometimes, when they bring in rich Prizes.

The *Engliſh* furniſh them with Ammunition and Naval Stores.

The *Engliſh* Conſul is the only Merchant of that Nation at *Algiers*, and carries on a more advantageous Trade than any other Perſon; for he furniſhes the Dey with Powder, Bullets, *Bombs*, Arms, Anchors, Cordage, and all manner of Naval Stores, and takes in return Corn and Oil, which are of great Service to the *Britiſh* Garriſons of *Port-Mahon* and *Gibraltar*; and, 'tis ſaid, no other Nation is ſuffer'd to carry any Corn out of the Country; but there is more than one Reaſon for their keeping fair with the *Engliſh*; for if there ſhould happen to be another Rupture with *England*, the *Algerines* would not be able to ſtir out of their Ports for our Cruiſers from *Port-Mahon* and *Gibraltar*.

The Foundation of the *Turkiſh* Government at *Algiers*.

That infamous Pirate *Barbaroſſa*, laid the Foundation of the *Turkiſh* Dominions at *Algiers*, and was the firſt that ſtyl'd himſelf King of it. The *Moors* of *Spain*, having been driven from that Country in the Year 1492, and tranſported to *Barbary*, took all Opportunities of revenging themſelves on the *Spaniards*, by taking their Merchant-ſhips, and plundering the Towns on their Coaſts; which they were very ſucceſsful in for ſome Years, carrying Multitudes of People into Captivity: Whereupon Cardinal *Ximenes*, Prime Miniſter to *Ferdinand* V. King of *Arragon*, fitted out a Fleet in the Year 1505; on which having embark'd a Body of Land-Forces, under the Command of *Peter* Count of *Navarre*, he beſieg'd and took the Town of *Oran*, then inhabited by *Moors* who had been driven from *Grenada* and *Valencia*. The Count afterwards made himſelf Maſter of ſeveral other Towns upon the ſame Coaſt, together with the little Iſland that lies before the Bay of *Algiers*; whereby he gave the Town Apprehenſions of falling ſuddenly under the Dominion of the *Spaniards*.

In this Diſtreſs Prince *Selim*, Sovereign of *Algiers*, having heard of the Fame of *Barbaroſſa*, the *Turkiſh* Corſair, ſent to deſire his Aſſiſtance againſt the *Spaniards*: The Pirate, glad of the Opportunity, ſent away eighteen Gallies, and thirty ſmall Barks to *Algiers*, marching thither by Land himſelf. The *Algerines* march'd out of Town with Prince *Selim* at their Head, to welcome their Deliverer; and, having conducted him to *Algiers*, he was lodg'd in the Prince's Palace. But the Pirate, who made no Scruple of ſeizing whatever came in his Way, immediately found Means to aſſaſſinate Prince *Selim* privately, and cauſed himſelf to be proclaim'd King. Whereupon moſt of the Natives abandon'd the Place, and left the Uſurper in Poſſeſſion of the City; but, upon his promiſing them the Enjoyment of their ancient Liberties, they returned, and acknowledged him their Soveraign. They found themſelves however under the Dominion of a Tyrant, who, after he had ſecur'd his Poſſeſſion, treated them no better than Slaves.

This Revolution happened in the Year 1516; and the Son of Prince *Selim*, flying to *Oran* for Protection, prevail'd on the *Spaniards* the Year following to fit out a ſtrong Fleet, with an Army of ten thouſand Land-men on Board, to aſſiſt him to recover his Right, promiſing to acknowledge the King of *Spain* for his Sovereign. But the *Spaniſh* Fleet was diſpers'd in a violent Storm, and moſt of their Forces drown'd, cut in pieces, or made Slaves by the *Turks*. *Barbaroſſa*, puff'd up with this Succeſs, continued to treat the *Moors* with greater Inſolence than ever; which induced the reſt of the *Mooriſh* Princes to enter into a Confederacy againſt the Uſurper, under the King of *Tenez* their General. *Barbaroſſa* march'd out to meet them with a ſmall Company, and had the good Fortune to defeat the numerous Forces of his Enemies. After which, the Conqueror enter'd the City of *Tenez*, and cauſed the Inhabitants to proclaim him their King.

There happen'd, about the ſame time, an Inſurrection in the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*, and the Rebels, hearing of the Succeſſes of *Barbaroſſa*, invited him to come and deliver them from the Oppreſſions of their Sovereign. The ambitious *Turk* having ſent for a Reinforcement of Troops, and his Artillery, advanc'd towards *Tremeſen*, and obtained a compleat Victory, to which his Artillery and ſmall Arms very much contributed. The King of *Tremeſen* eſcaped out of the Battle, but his Subjects afterwards murder'd him, and ſent his Head to the Conqueror; who enter'd the City of *Tremeſen* in Triumph, and was proclaim'd King. *Barbaroſſa* now ſaw himſelf Maſter of three Kingdoms within the Space of a Year, which he had acquir'd with the Aſſiſtance of a handful of Men. As *Tremeſen* was in the Neighbourhood of *Oran*, he enter'd into an Alliance againſt *Spain*, with *Muley Hamet*, King of *Fez*, no leſs an Enemy to *Spain* than himſelf; and thus ſupported, did not doubt but he ſhould defend the Territories he had conquer'd againſt the Chriſtians. But *Charles* the Fifth, being implor'd by the Prince of *Tremeſen*, to aſſiſt him in the Recovery of his Father's Kingdom, ſent over ten thouſand Men from *Spain*, under the Governor of *Oran*, who being join'd by a good Body of *Moors* and *Arabs*, march'd towards *Tremeſen*. *Barbaroſſa* immediately march'd in Perſon, with fifteen hundred *Turkiſh* Musketeers, and five thouſand *Mooriſh* Horſe, to attend the Motions of the Governor of *Oran*; but, being hemm'd in by the *Spaniards*, and endeavouring to break through them in the Night time, he was cut in pieces, with all his *Turkiſh* Infantry. Whereupon the Governor of *Oran* continued his March to *Tremeſen*, and the young Prince was reſtor'd to his Throne. The *Spaniards* had now an Opportunity of recovering both *Tenez* and *Algiers*, if they had followed their Blow; but the Governor ſent back the Forces to *Spain*, at a Time when the *Turks* of *Algiers* had given themſelves over for loſt. But finding the *Spaniards* made no Preparations to attack them, they proclaim'd *Cheredin*, the Brother of *Barbaroſſa*, their King, who, in the Year 1619, underſtanding there was a general Conſpiracy of the *Moors* and *Arabs*, to free themſelves from the *Turkiſh* Yoke, diſpatch'd an expreſs to *Selim*, the then Grand Signior, deſiring he would ſend him a ſtrong Reinforcement of Troops, promiſing that he would act for the future, as Baſha, or Viceroy to the Grand Signior.

The

The *Ottoman* Emperor ſent two thouſand *Janizaries* to his Aſſiſtance; publiſhing a Proclamation at the ſame time, That all *Turks* who ſhould reſort to *Algiers*, ſhould enjoy the ſame Privileges there, as the *Janizaries* did at *Conſtantinople*: Whereupon all People of deſperate Fortunes, immediately enter'd themſelves into the Service of *Cheredin Barbaroſſa*; who, with theſe Reinforcements, was ſoon in a Condition to defeat all the Conſpiracies of the *Moors*, and render himſelf abſolute Maſter of that Part of *Barbary*: He alſo ſubdu'd the Iſland the *Spaniards* had poſſeſs'd themſelves of at the Mouth of the Bay of *Algiers*, and by a Mole join'd it to the Continent; and having erected a ſtrong Fortreſs on the Iſland, he enlarg'd his Piratical Fleet, and ſo infeſted the Coaſts of *Spain* and *Italy*, that a Merchant-ſhip could not ſtir out of any Port without falling into the Hands of his Corſairs. And this at the time when *Charles* the Fifth was at the Height of his Glory.

This Prince, incens'd to ſee his Dominions inſulted, and his Subjects daily carried into Slavery, and being incited by Pope *Paul* III, in the Year 1541, having aſſembled a Fleet of five hundred Sail, embark'd with an Army of twenty thouſand Men and upwards, in *Spain*; and, arriving before the Bay of *Algiers*, landed about two thirds of his Army, and ſummon'd the Place; which was upon the Point of ſurrendring to him, when a ſudden Storm happen'd, in which great part of his Fleet was ſhipwreck'd, his Proviſions all deſtroy'd, and ſuch heavy Rains at the ſame time fell on the Shore, that his Forces could no longer keep the Field: Whereupon he found himſelf oblig'd to abandon the Enterprize, and reimbark what Force he had left.

Some little time before this memorable Enterprize, the Grand Signior had preferr'd *Cheredin Barbaroſſa* to the Poſt of Captain Baſha, the Commander in Chief of all the Territories of *Algiers*; but thought fit to appoint *Haſſan* Aga Baſha of the Town of *Algiers*, probably to be a Check upon *Cheredin*, and prevent his ſetting up again for himſelf. After the Death of *Barbaroſſa* II, the Porte govern'd the Kingdom of *Algiers* by their Baſhas till the 17th Century, when the *Janizaries* of *Algiers*, repreſented to the Grand Signior, that his Baſhas tyranniz'd over the Country, and render'd the Government of the *Turks* ſo odious there, that the *Spaniards* and *Moors* would infallibly drive them from the Coaſt of *Barbary*, if that Government was not better regulated: They deſired therefore, that they might elect one of their Officers, with the Title of Dey, to be their Governour; promiſing to raiſe Supplies ſufficient to maintain their Forces, and that they would always acknowledge the Grand Signior for their Sovereign; in which Propoſal, the Porte acquieſced. Under the Government of ſuch Magiſtrates of their own electing, they remain at preſent; but in no part of the World are there ſuch frequent Inſtances of the People's depoſing and murdering their Princes, ſcarce any of them dying a natural Death. They reign with abſolute Authority for a few Years, Months, or Weeks; and ſometimes a few Hours puts an end to their Dominion, and their Lives.

It is amazing that this large Kingdom ſhould be kept under the moſt ſlaviſh Subjection by twelve thouſand *Turks* only, compoſed of the vileſt Wretches on the Face of the Earth; none of the better Sorts of *Turks* ever reſorting hither. And when the uſual Number of their Militia happens to be leſſen'd by Mortality, they ſend to the *Levant*, to pick up all the Banditti and Deſperadoes they can meet with, to recruit their Piratical Troops; taking alſo the Renegado Chriſtians, and the Sons of the Soldiery, which they have by *Mooriſh* or *Arabian* Wives, into that Body; for no *Turkiſh* Women ever come to *Algiers*. Neither *Moors* or *Arabs*, are ever admitted into this Militia, leſt they ſhould endeavour to free their Country. And tho' the Son of a *Turk* and a *Mooriſh* and *Arabian* Wife is admitted into their Militia, theſe are never ſuffer'd to enjoy any Preferment or Poſt in the Government.

To every private Soldier of this Body, they give the Title of *Effendi*, or Lords; and, indeed, theſe Lordains demand a Reſpect from the Natives equal to that of Princes. *Moors*, *Arabs*, *Chriſtians*, or *Jews*, are forced to ſubmit to all manner of Injuries and Affronts from them. They fly the Streets, if they ſee a *Janizary* coming, or ſtand cloſe up to the Wall in the moſt reſpectful Poſture, till thoſe High and Mighty Robbers paſs by them.

Thoſe *Janizaries* who are unmarried, have much the greater Privileges: They are lodg'd in ſpacious Houſes provided by the Government, attended by Slaves, and have the Privilege of buying their Proviſions one third under the Market Price, and a great Allowance of Bread every Day, beſides their Pay; but the married Men are excluded from all theſe Advantages. One Reaſon for diſcouraging the Soldiers marrying is, becauſe the Government is intitled to all the Effects of thoſe that die without Children: But the principal is, that the married Men are ſuppos'd to have more Regard to the Natives with whom they intermarry, than the unmarried Soldiers; and for the ſame Reaſon, the Sons of the married *Janizaries* are not allow'd the Privileges of natural *Turks*, as has been obſerv'd already; which are ſuch Diſcouragements to their taking Wives, that ſcarce any *Janizaries* marry: However, all of them are allow'd to purchaſe Female Slaves, and keep as many Concubines as they pleaſe.

The greateſt Crime here, next to Treaſon, is the expreſſing any Compaſſion for the Natives. But notwithſtanding the Tyranny the *Turks* exerciſe over the *Moors* and *Arabs*; yet if any *Chriſtian* Power makes an Attempt againſt their Country, they ſeem ready to unite their Forces againſt ſuch Invaders, as dreading the Government of *Chriſtians* more than the Uſurpations of thoſe of the ſame Faith.

The Election of the Dey, further treated of.

The Dey ought, by their Conſtitution, to be choſen by the *Turkiſh* Militia, without one diſſenting Voice. When the Throne is vacant, they aſſemble at the Palace, and the Aga of the Soldiery demands who ſhall be their Dey: Whereupon every one calls out for the Perſon he is beſt affected to; but till all agree in the Choice, they are directed to name others, till they pitch upon one who is univerſally approv'd. It is not uncommon for them to draw their Sabres, and for the Strongeſt to force the reſt to agree with them. And there are Inſtances of a powerful Faction electing another Dey, while the former has been living, and murdering the reigning Dey as he ſat upon his Tribunal. When the Dey happens to be kill'd, his Women are plunder'd of all they have, and reduc'd to their primitive State; and his Children have nothing more allow'd them than the Pay of a private Soldier, and are excluded from all Preferment in the State: But if the Dey dies a natural Death, they ſuffer his Women to remain poſſeſs'd of what he leaves them. *Haly* Dey had the good Fortune to reign from 1710 to 1718, and died in his Bed at laſt: However, he was no ſooner given over by the Phyſicians, but a powerful Faction made choice privately of a Succeſſor before he was dead; and the Moment

Haly expir'd, proclaim'd *Mahomet* Dey, who was before High Treaſurer, and he was immediately inveſted with the Royal Robes. And thereupon, all the Officers of State and the Soldiery congratulated him on his Acceſſion, knowing it would have been fatal to them to have inſiſted on another Election; tho' it has happen'd, that a Dey has been no ſooner plac'd upon the Throne, but he has been murder'd there by the oppoſite Party. There were, it ſeems, ſome few Years ſince, no leſs than ſix Deys aſſaſſinated in four and twenty Hours, whoſe Tombs ſtill form a Circle without one of the Gates of *Algiers*.

The War between the *Engliſh* and the *Algerines*.

The *Engliſh* Merchants, as well as thoſe of other Nations, have ſuffer'd very much by the Depredations of the *Algerines*. Sir *William Monſon*, in the Reign of King *James* I, burnt ſome few of their Ships; Admiral *Blake* more in the Year 1655; and Sir *Thomas Allen*, in 1668, lay before their Town, till he compell'd them to make Peace; but they broke it again the following Year. In 1670, Captain *Beach* forced ſeven of their Frigates on Shore, and burnt them. Sir *Edward Spragge*, in 1671, took and deſtroy'd nine of their Ships of War; and at ſeveral times, 'tis computed, the *Engliſh* may have deſtroyed forty or fifty of theſe Rovers; but one Ship is no ſooner loſt, than they fit out another; and, 'tis ſaid, not leſs than three or four hundred *Engliſh* Veſſels fell into their Hands in a few Years. The *Engliſh* and *Dutch* had agreed, a little after the Reſtoration, to fall upon the *Algerines* with their united Fleets; and a Squadron of each Nation ſailed to the *Streights* for that Purpoſe: But, when they arrived there, the *Dutch* Admiral treacherouſly ſeparated from the *Engliſh*, and went and deſtroyed their Settlements on the Coaſt of *Guinea*, and in the *Weſt-Indies*, without any Provocation. In 1682, the *Algerines* were ſo harraſs'd by the Squadrons the *Engliſh* ſent from time to time into the *Mediterranean*, that they thought fit to make Peace with us, which they have kept pretty well ever ſince: While the treacherous *Hollander* ſuffer'd ſufficiently many Years after, by the Depredations of the *Algerines*, who never kept any Peace they made with the *Dutch* two Years together, till very lately.

Articles of Peace concluded with *Algiers*, *Anno* 1682.

The Subſtance of the principal Articles of Peace, made by Admiral *Herbert*, *Anno* 1682, with the Baſha and Dey of *Algiers*, were: That the Ships, belonging to *Great-Britain*, might come to any Port in the Kingdom of *Algiers*, and traffick there, paying the uſual Cuſtom; and for Ammunition, and Naval Stores, no Duty was to be paid: That the Ships belonging to *Great-Britain*, and thoſe of *Algiers*, might freely paſs the Seas, without any Search, Hindrance, or Moleſtation from each other: That any *Britiſh* Merchant-ſhips out of the Seas belonging to his Majeſty's Dominions, upon producing a Paſs under the Seal of the Admiralty of *England* or *Scotland*, ſhould be permitted to proceed freely on his Voyage: That no *Algerine* Commander ſhould take out of any *Britiſh* Ship any Perſons whatever, to carry them to be examin'd, on any Pretence: That no *Britiſh* Ship, wreck'd on the Coaſt of the Kingdom of *Algiers*, ſhould be ſeiz'd, or its Crew made Slaves: That no Ship of *Algiers* ſhould ſerve the Corſairs of *Sallee*, or any other Power at War with *Great-Britain*: That no Ship of *Algiers* ſhould cruiſe in Sight of any Country or Place belonging to *Great-Britain*: That any Ships or Goods, belonging to his Majeſty's Subjects, brought into the Territories of *Algiers*, ſhould not be permitted to be ſold there: That when any *Britiſh* Man of War ſhould appear before *Algiers*, Proclamation ſhould be made to ſecure all Chriſtian Captives; after which, if any Chriſtian ſhould eſcape to ſuch Ship of War, they ſhould not be requir'd: That no *Britiſh* Subject ſhould be bought or ſold, or made a Slave in *Algiers*, on any Pretence: That if any Subject of *Britain* dies at *Algiers*, the Government ſhall not ſeize his Money or Effects, but ſuffer his Heirs or Executors to enjoy them: That no *Britiſh* Subject, in the Territories of *Algiers*, ſhall be liable to any other Juriſdiction, but that of the Dey, or Divan, except in Differences between themſelves, which ſhall be determin'd by the Conſul only: That if any *Britiſh* Subject happen to kill, wound, or ſtrike a *Turk* or *Moor*, he ſhall be puniſh'd in the ſame Manner as a *Turk* ought to be, guilty of the ſame Offence: That the *Engliſh* Conſul ſhall enjoy entire Freedom and Safety in his Perſon and Eſtate; and if any War ſhould happen between the King of *Great-Britain*, and the Kingdom of *Algiers*, the *Engliſh* Conſul, and all his Majeſty's Subjects reſiding there, ſhall, at all times, have Liberty to depart to their own Country, or to any other: That when any *Britiſh* Man of War, with his Majeſty's Flag at the Main-top-maſt-head, ſhall come to an Anchor in the Road of *Algiers*, the Dey and Regency ſhall cauſe a Salute of twenty one Cannon, and ſuch Ship ſhall anſwer it with the ſame Number, *&c.*

This Treaty has been renew'd ſeveral times; in *April* 1686, by Sir *William Soame*, Bart. in his Voyage to *Conſtantinople*, whither he went Ambaſſador, from King *James* II. to the Grand Signior. It was renew'd again, in 1691, by *Thomas Baker*, Eſq; and, in 1700, by Captain *Munden*, and *Robert Cole*, Eſq; then Conſul of *Algiers*, jointly with ſome Additional Articles. In the Reign of Queen *Anne*, *Anno* 1703, Admiral *Byng*, the late Lord Viſcount *Torrington*, renew'd the ſaid Peace with *Muſtafa* Dey, and the two following Articles were added: That, whereas the Subjects of *England* were to pay ten *per Cent*. Cuſtom for ſuch Goods as they ſhall ſell at *Algiers*, from thenceforwards they ſhall pay but five *per Cent*: That all Prizes taken by any Subject of *Britain*, and all Ships built and fitted out in her Majeſty's Plantations in *America*, that have not been in *England*, ſhall not be moleſted, tho' they have no Paſſes.

In the Year 1716, the Treaties with *Algiers*, were ratified, and, among others, the following Article added:

That as the Iſland of *Minorca* and City of *Gibraltar* have been yielded and annex'd to the Crown of *Great-Britain*; from this time the ſaid Iſland and City ſhall be deem'd, by the Government of *Algiers*, part of the *Britiſh* Dominions, and the Inhabitants thereof look'd upon as his Majeſty's natural Subjects.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

A Description of Tunis *and* Tripoli.

situation of Tunis.

THE Kingdom of *Tunis* is bounded by the *Mediterranean* Sea, on the North; by the same Sea and *Tripoli*, on the East; by Mount *Atlas*, on the South; and by the River *Guadilbarbar*, which separates it from the Kingdom of *Algiers*, on the West; lying between 30 and 37 Degrees and a Half North Latitude, and extending about two hundred Miles from West to East.

Rivers.

The chief Rivers are, 1. The *Guadilbarbar* already mention'd. 2. The Capes, or *Capsa*. 3 *Megereda*: All which rise in Mount *Atlas*, and fall into the *Mediterranean*.

Chief Towns.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Cairoan*, situated on the River *Megereda*, most remakable for being the Burying-place of the *Mahometan* Princes and great Men. 2. *Urbs*, situated in a fine Plain, on a River that falls into the *Guadilbarbar*, about an hundred and fifty Miles South-west of *Tunis*; chiefly remarkable for the Marble Pillars, Images, and other *Roman* Antiquities found here. 3. *Africa* or *El Melidia*, situated on the *Mediterranean*, ninety Miles South-east of *Tunis*. 4. *Susa* or *Ruspina*, situated partly on the *Mediterranean*, twenty-five Miles to the Eastward of *Tunis*: It contains more Antiquities than any Town in the Kingdom: Here is also a small Harbour.

The City.

5. *Tunis*, the Capital of the Kingdom, situated on a fine Plain, near a spacious Lake, in 36 Degrees and a Half North Latitude, almost over-against the Island of *Sicily*, but a few Miles from the Place where the famous City of *Carthage* stood, and about three or four Leagues distant from the *Mediterranean*. It is a large, populous City, and a Place of some Trade; the Walls about a League in Circumference, but of no great Strength. The Basha's Palace, the Mosques and Bagnio's, are the most remarkable Things in it. The Houses of the better sort of People are built about little Squares, adorn'd with Pillars, Galleries, and Fountains; and the Roofs are flat and terrass'd, as in other *Mahometan* Countries. When *Charles* V. took it in the Year 1535, it is said to have contain'd an hundred thousand Men, besides Women and Children; but certain it is, the Numbers are not near so great at present. 6. *Goletta*, situate on a little Island of the same Name, three or four Leagues to the Eastward of *Tunis*, and the Port Town to that Capital. It is defended by two Castles; one of them built by *Charles* V. It was held by the Christians till 1574, and was of great Use for restraining the Excursions of the *Turkish* Corsairs. 7. *Carthage*, now a small Village, situate near Cape *Carthage*, suppos'd on part of the Ground whereon the City of *Carthage* stood, and three or four Leagues North-east of *Tunis*. Here are still some Ruins of Marble and other Stones, and several Arches of the Aqueduct that convey'd Water to *Old Carthage* from a Hill thirty Miles distant. 8. *Byserta*, said to be the *Utica* of the Antients, situated on a fine Lake near the Sea, about thirty Miles to the Northward of *Carthage*; said to be one of the best Harbours the *Tunisians* have for their Gallies. 9. *Porto Farina*, situated on the *Mediterranean*, about the Midway between *Byserta* and *Carthage*.

Tripoli.

The Kingdom of *Tripoli*, in which we shall include *Barca*, is bounded by the *Mediterranean* on the North, by *Egypt* on the East, by *Nubia* and *Biledulgerid* on the South, and by the Kingdom of *Tunis* on the West; extending along the *Mediterranean* from *Tunis* to *Egypt*, at least a thousand Miles; and about two hundred Miles broad, where broadest; but in others scarce one hundred; lying between Latitude thirty and thirty-three and a half.

There are no Rivers in this Country worth mentioning. That Part of it contiguous to *Tunis* is tolerably fruitful; but all the rest to the Eastward, as far as *Egypt*, is only a parch'd barren Desart. The chief Towns taken notice of by Geographers are, 1. *Old Tripoli*; 2. *New Tripoli*; 3. *Zaara*; 4. *Tachore*; 5. *Mecellat*; 6. *Elhama*; and 7. *Mahara*. *New Tripoli*, however, is the only Town of any Note; which is situated in a sandy Plain near the *Mediterranean* Sea, Latitude thirty-three, about sixty Leagues South-east of *Tunis*. It is a populous Town, and surrounded with a Wall and Outworks; but the Fortifications very mean. Its greatest Strength are in the desperate Pirates that inhabit it; consisting of the same sort of People as inhabit *Algiers* and *Tunis*. The Government of the Country resembles that of *Tunis*; the Dey of both being very much under the Influence of the Bashas the Grand Signior sends thither, who levy annually a very considerable Tribute on the Natives, which is remitted to the Porte. The Government of *Tunis* and *Tripoli* is the same with that of *Algiers*, only in that one Instance, That the Dey in the two former, is under some Subjection to the Basha; whereas the Dey of *Algiers* acknowledges no Superiour. The Religion, Laws, and Customs of the People of *Tunis* and *Tripoli*, are also the same with those of *Algiers*. The governing Part are *Turks*, Natives of the *Levant*, and Renegadoes, cloth'd like other *Turks*, in Vests and Turbants; their Vests frequently made of *English* Cloth, and their Turbants of Silk or Linen: Nor is the Clothing of the *Moors*, who live in Towns, very different from theirs. But the *Arabs* have scarce any Clothing, more than a Cloth about their Waists, and ramble from Place to Place perpetually, to find Herbage and Water for their Cattle.

Chief Towns.

Tripoli City.

Bagnio's in *Tunis*, *Tripoli*, and *Algiers*.

There are in *Tunis*, *Algiers*, and *Tripoli*, a great Number of Bagnios, mightily frequented by the *Turks*, as well upon a Religious Account, as for Health and Pleasure: And to these Bagnios Foreigners also resort, where they are well accommodated, for a very moderate Consideration. A Gentleman is first brought into a handsome large Room, where he is undress'd, and a Towel ty'd about him; from thence, he is led into another Room, moderately warm, and, after some little time, into the Grand Hall, cover'd with a Cupola, in the Middle whereof is the Bath. The Floor is pav'd with white Marble, as are the little Rooms or Closets in the Sides of it, where People are wash'd and rubb'd: The Person is first set down upon a Marble Bench that runs round the Hall, and is soon sensible of an extraordinary

ordinary Heat, which makes him ſweat plentifully: Then he is carried into one of the Side Rooms of a moderate Heat, where a Linen Cloth being ſpread upon the Floor, and his Towel taken off, he lies down at his full Length, perfectly naked: Then two luſty Slaves, as naked as the Patient, come in, and kneeling down, waſh and rub his Arms, Legs, and every Part of him with a Fleſh-Bruſh, taking off all the Scurf and Roughneſs of the Skin: Then they waſh him all over again; and after that dry him with clean Towels. They alſo rub the hairy Parts, if they are not directed otherwiſe, with the Powder of a certain Earth, which immediately fetches off all the Hair. Then they waſh and dry the Party again, pair his Nails, ſqueeze and mould his Fleſh, and ſtretch and pull his Limbs with that Violence, that his Bones crack again; and thoſe who are not uſed to it, would be apt to think them all diſlocated: But if a Gentleman does not like this rough Management, he may be more gently dealt with. The Women have their ſeveral Baths, where they are attended by She Slaves, and no Man is permitted to enter theſe. Perſons of Diſtinction always have Bagnios for themſelves and their Women, in their own Houſes.

Produce and Traffick of the Country.

Tunis and *Tripoli* breed Abundance of Camels and fine Horſes, and produce Corn and Olives plentifully. In *Tripoli* they have exceeding fine Wool, and in *Tunis* a good Manufacture of Soap; and as Mulberry Trees thrive prodigiouſly in both Kingdoms, no Country is more proper for Silk, though very little cultivated. The *Europeans* trade with the People of *Tunis* and *Tripoli* for Corn, Oil, Wool, Soap, Dates, Oſtrich Feathers, Skins of wild and tame Beaſts; but one of the beſt Branches of their Commerce here, is the *European* Chriſtians, taken by their piratical Ships, whom they ſet very high Ranſoms upon. Their Camels they uſually ſell in *Egypt*, and their fine Horſes to the *French*: But they get much more by their Piracies, than by Trade.

Modern Hiſtory of *Tunis* and *Tripoli*.

The *Turks* have been Maſters of *Tunis* ever ſince the Year 1532, when *Heyradin Barbaroſſa*, Dey of *Algiers*, a Brother and Succeſſor of *Barbaroſſa* I. obtained the Dominion of this Kingdom in much the ſame Manner as his Brother acquired that of *Algiers*. The People of *Tunis* invited him thither, to deliver them from the Oppreſſion they ſuffered under the Adminiſtration of their Prince: Whereupon *Heyradin* having made a Voyage to the Porte, and procured a large Fleet and a ſtrong Reinforcement of Janizaries; from thence made a Deſcent near *Goletta*, the Port Town to *Tunis*, and advancing towards the City, *Muley Haſſan*, their King, thought fit to quit his Capital without ſtriking a Stroke, and ſuffer *Barbaroſſa* to take Poſſeſſion of it. The Uſurper remained pretty quiet for about three Years: But the depoſed Prince applying himſelf to the Emperor *Charles* V. his Imperial Majeſty embarked in Perſon, in the Year 1535, with a conſiderable Army, and made a Deſcent on the Coaſt of *Tunis*, where he took the Caſtle of *Goletta* by Storm, and the City of *Tunis* thereupon opened her Gates to him. Before the Uſurper left *Tunis*, he ordered ſome Renegadoes to ſet Fire to the Gunpowder, and blow up all the Chriſtian Slaves which were lodged near that Magazine; but in this he was not obeyed; and the Emperor, on the taking of the City, ſet at Liberty no leſs than 20,000 Chriſtian Slaves.

His Imperial Majeſty having reſtor'd *Muley Haſſan* to his Throne, reimbark'd his Troops, leaving only a ſtrong Garriſon of Chriſtians in the Caſtle of *Goletta*: But *Muley* was again depoſed by his rebellious Subjects, and forc'd to take Refuge a ſecond Time in the Emperor's Court. Some few Years after, the *Turks* retook both *Goletta* and *Tunis*, and ſtill remain poſſeſſed of them, the *Tuniſeens* being always in a State of War with *Spain* and *Italy*. They are alſo frequently at War with the reſt of the Nations of *Europe*, and make Prize of all they meet with; but the *Engliſh* had the good Fortune to clap up a Peace with them in the Year 1682, which has been renew'd from Time to Time; and, in the Year 1716, the following Articles, with a few others, were agreed on. *viz.* That free Trade and Commerce ſhall continue between the Subjects of *Great Britain* and the People of the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and the Dominions thereunto belonging. That the Ships of either Party ſhall have free Liberty to enter into any Port or River belonging to the Dominions of either Party, paying the Duties only for what they ſhall ſell: That for Prevention of all Inconveniences, the Ships of *Tunis* are to have a Certificate, under the Hand and Seal of the *Britiſh* Conſul, that they belong to *Tunis*; which being produc'd, the *Engliſh* Ship ſhall admit two Men to come on Board them, peaceably to ſatisfy themſelves they are *Engliſh*; and, although they have Paſſengers of other Nations on Board, they ſhall be free: That if an *Engliſh* Ship ſhall receive on Board any Goods or Paſſengers, belonging to the Kingdom of *Tunis*, they ſhall be bound to defend them and their Goods, ſo far as lies in their Power, and not deliver them unto their Enemies: That if any Ships of either Party ſhall be caſt away upon any Coaſt belonging to the other Party, the Perſons ſhall be free, and the Goods delivered to their lawful Proprietors: That the *Engliſh*, which do at preſent, or ſhall at any Time hereafter, inhabit the Kingdom of *Tunis*, ſhall have free Liberty, when they pleaſe, to tranſport themſelves, with their Families and Children, though born in the Country: That any of the *Engliſh* Nation reſiding in *Tunis*, ſhall not be forced to make their Addreſſes, in any Difference, unto any Court of Juſtice, but to the Dey himſelf, unleſs the Difference be between any two of his *Britannick* Majeſty's Subjects, then it is to be decided by the *Britiſh* Conſul only: That the Iſland of *Minorca*, and the City of *Gibraltar*, ſhall be eſteemed, in every Reſpect, by the Government of *Tunis*, to be Part of his *Britannick* Majeſty's own Dominions, and the Inhabitants thereof to be looked upon as his Majeſty's natural Subjects; and none of the Ships or Veſſels belonging to *Tunis*, or the Dominions thereof, ſhall be permitted to cruize in Sight of the aforeſaid City of *Gibraltar*, or any of the Ports of the Iſland of *Minorca*: That all the Ships of War belonging to either Party's Dominions, ſhall have free Liberty to uſe each other's Ports for waſhing, cleaning, or repairing any of their Defects, and to buy and to ſhip off any Sort of Victuals, alive or dead, or any other Neceſſaries, at the Price the Natives buy at in the Market, without paying Cuſtom to any Officer: That in caſe any Ships of War, belonging to the Kingdom of *Tunis*, ſhall take in any of their Enemies Ships, *Engliſhmen* ſerving for Wages, they are to be made Slaves; but, if Merchants or Paſſengers, they are to enjoy their Liberties and Effects unmoleſted: That whenever any Flag Officer of *Great Britain* ſhall arrive in the Bay of *Tunis*, in any of his Majeſty's Ships of War, there ſhall be five and twenty Cannon fir'd from the Caſtles of *Goletta*, or other the neareſt Fortification belonging to *Tunis*, and the ſame Number ſhall be return'd in Anſwer thereto by his Majeſty's Ships: That all Ceremonies of Honour ſhall be allowed to the *Britiſh* Conſul, who

who reſides here, to repreſent, in every Reſpect, his Majeſty's Perſon, and no other Conſul to be admitted before him in Precedency: That the Subjects of *Great Britain*, either reſiding in or trading to the Dominions of *Tunis*, ſhall not pay any more than three *per Cent.* Cuſtom, on the Value of Goods or Merchandize, which they ſhall either bring into, or carry out of the ſaid Kingdom; and whenever the Government of *Tunis* ſhall reduce the Cuſtoms of the *French* Nation to leſs than they pay at preſent, it ſhall always be obſerv'd, that the *Britiſh* Cuſtoms ſhall be two *per Cent.* leſs than ſhall be paid by the Subjects of *France*: That in caſe any *Britiſh* Ship ſhall import at any Port of the Kingdom of *Tunis*, any warlike Stores, or Proviſions, for the ſaid Kind of Merchandize they ſhall not pay any Duty whatever.

CHAP. X.

A Deſcription of the African *Iſlands.*

Iſlands of Africa.

THE principal Iſlands of *Africa*, are, 1. *Babmandel*; 2. *Zocotara*; 3. The Iſlands of *Comorro*; 4. Prince *Maurice*'s Iſland, or the *Mauritius*; 5. The Iſland of *Bourbon*; and, 6. *Madagaſcar*; all which lie in the *Indian* Ocean, Eaſtward of the Continent. On the South-weſt lie, 1. The Iſland of *St. Helena*; 2. *Aſcenſion*; 3. *St. Matthew*; 4. *Annabona*; 5. *St. Thomas*; 6. *Princes Iſland*; and, 7. The Iſland of *Fernando Po*. On the North-Weſt lie, 1. The Iſlands of *Cape Verd*; 2. The *Canary Iſlands*; 3. The Iſlands of *Madera*; and, 4. The *Azores*.

Babmandel *Bab*, or *Babel-mandel*, lies at the Entrance into the *Red-Sea*, and forms one Side of the famous *Streight* of *Babel*, or *Babmandel*: It is ſituated in thirteen Degrees North Latitude, and is about five Miles in Circumference. The *Ethiopians* and *Arabians* formerly contended with great Fury for the Poſſeſſion of it, being a Place of the laſt Importance, as it commanded the Entrance into the *Red-Sea*; but, ſince the *Turks* have poſſeſſed themſelves of both Shores, the Iſland is in a Manner deſerted.

Zocotora. *Zocotora*, or *Socotra*, is ſituated in the Eaſtern Ocean, in twelve Degrees North Latitude, thirty Leagues to the Eaſtward of *Cape Gardeſoy*, being about twenty-five Leagues long, and eighteen broad. There is but one Town in the Iſland, where the Shiek or Sovereign reſides; the reſt of the Inhabitants live in Cottages, diſperſed about the Country. There are two pretty good Harbours on the Coaſt, where *European* Ships formerly uſed to put in; but this ſeldom happens now. The People are a Mixture of *Pagans* and *Mahometans*. Their uſual Food is Milk, Dates, Roots, and ſome Fleſh: The Country affords ſcarce any Merchandize fit for Exportation, unleſs it be Frankincenſe, Aloes, and the Gum called *Dragon's-Blood*.

morro ands. The Iſlands of *Comorro* are five in Number, and lie between the Coaſt of *Zanguebar*, and the North End of the Iſland of *Madagaſcar*, from ten to fifteen Degrees of South Latitude: That which is beſt known to the *Europeans*, is the Iſland of *Johanna*, where Ships touch for Refreſhments in their Paſſage to *Bombay*, and the *Malabar* Coaſts of *India*: This Iſland lies in twelve Degrees and a half North Latitude, and is thirty Miles long, and fifteen broad. The People are Negroes of the *Mahometan* Religion, extremely hoſpitable, eſpecially to the *Engliſh*. They live under a Monarchical Form of Government; from which, it ſeems, the Females are not excluded. They have great Plenty of black Cattle and Goats; of Fowls, Rice, Potatoes, Yams, Honey, Wax, Bananoes, Tamarinds, Lemons, Oranges, Pine-Apples, Cocoa Nuts, and other Fruits. And the Women, as in other Parts of *Africa*, are employed in Husbandry, and other laborious Works, while the Men indulge their Eaſe. They are a very plain inoffenſive People; but do not abound in Wealth, and ſcarce know the Uſe of Arms, or what War means. Their Kings converſe familiarly both with their Subjects and Foreigners. They have but two Towns; to one whereof our Mariners have given the Name of *King's-Town*, and to the other of *Queen's-Town*. Theſe Towns are built with Stone and Timber; but the reſt of their Houſes are only mean Cottages, diſperſed all over the Country: Their uſual Food is Rice boiled, Meat, Milk, Roots, and Cocoa-Nuts; and the Milk of the young Cocoa-Nuts ſerves them for Drink, as the Shells do for Cups. They are under ſtrange Apprehenſions of Miſchief from the Devil, and burn him in Effigy once a Year: They alſo abhor the Place where any one happens to die; either out of a Dread of departed Spirits, or becauſe they look upon the Place where any Man dies to be polluted. The reſt of the Iſlands of *Comorro* are much about the ſame Dimenſions, inhabited by the ſame Kind of People, and produce the like Plants and Fruits.

The Iſland of Prince *Maurice*; or, the *Mauritius*.

The next Iſland is that of Prince *Maurice*, or the *Mauritius*, belonging to the *Dutch*, who gave it this Name in Honour of their Statdholder Prince *Maurice*. It is ſituated in twenty Degrees South Latitude, an hundred Leagues Eaſt of *Madagaſcar*; being of an oval Form, and about fifty Leagues in Circumference, abounding in Woods of various Kinds, particularly Ebony. There are alſo Abundance of very high Mountains, from whence their Rivers fall in Torrents. The *Dutch* have a Fort, and a Garriſon of fifty Men, in the Iſland; beſides which, there may be three or fourſcore Families of *Hollanders*, who keep Abundance of Negroe Slaves, that are employed in Husbandry, and other laborious Work. The *Dutch* found this Iſland uninhabited, and conſequently uncultivated: Nor was there any other Cattle upon it, but Deer and Goats. They have now introduced almoſt all the Plants of *Aſia* and *Europe*, and well ſtocked it with Cattle and Poultry: Rice and Pulſe, Sugar-Canes and Tobacco, are alſo raiſed here, but in no great Quantities; nor does the Soil ſeem proper for Corn or Wine: The *Hollanders* touch here in their Paſſage from the Cape to *Batavia*.

Bourbon Iſland The Iſland of *Bourbon* is ſituated in twenty-one Degrees South Latitude, about forty Leagues South-Weſt of *Mauritius*. It is of an oval Figure, and about thirty Leagues in Circumference; finely diverſified with Mountains and Plains, Foreſts and Champain Fields; has Plenty of Wood and Water, and a fruitful Soil, except one Part of it, which has been burnt up by ſubterraneous Fires. The *Portugueſe* firſt diſcovered it, *Anno* 1545, and ſtocked it with Hogs and Goats, as if they intended to have made Settlement here; but afterwards deſerted it again.

Captain *Castleton*, an *English* Commander, touched here in the Year 1613, and was so taken with the Beauty of the Island, that he gave it the Name of *The English Forest*: But our *East-India* Company did not think it worth while to fix a Colony here. The *French* afterwards took Possession of it in the Year 1654, gave it the Name of *Bourbon*, and left some few People there, who afterwards came away in an *English* Ship. The *French* still lay claim to the Island, tho' they make little or no use of it, there being no Harbour upon the Coast, or any Thing to induce them to visit it, but the fresh Provisions they meet with on their Voyage to and from *India*.

Madagascar.

The largest of the *African* Islands, and indeed of the whole World, except *Borneo*, is that of *Madagascar*. It is call'd by the *Portuguese St. Laurence*; but *Madagasc*, or *Madagascar*, is the Name by which it is most commonly known. It is situated between the 12th and 26th Degrees of South Latitude, forty Leagues East of the Continent of *Africa*, being about a thousand Miles in Length from North to South, and generally between two and three hundred Miles broad; only towards the North it grows much narrower, and terminates in a Point: It is a fruitful Country, abounding in Cattle, Corn, Fish, Fowls, Herbs, Roots, and Flowers; and almost all manner of Animals and Vegetables, that are to be found on the neighbouring Continent of *Africa*, may be met with here; and there are scarce any Plants of *Asia* or *Europe*, except the fine Spices, but will flourish here. As to the Face of the Country, it is universally agreed, that it affords a pleasing Variety of Hills and Valleys, Woods and Champain, and is well water'd with Springs and Rivers; and that there are several good Harbours upon the Coast: But still it is found not to produce any kind of Merchandize, which, for Quantity or Quality, can induce any one *European* Nation to fix any considerable Colonies here. The *Portuguese*, *English*, *Dutch*, and *French*, have successively endeavour'd to discover something that might turn to Account: They were long amus'd with Hopes, that there were Gold and Silver Mines in the Island; but there seems now to be little Hopes of finding those tempting Minerals. We purchase scarce any Thing here but *Negroe* Slaves, which the Natives barter for Clothing, Hard-Ware, Tools or Toys: The Shipping, bound to and from *India*, sometimes furnish themselves here with Water, fresh Provisions, and Fruit: The Natives are generally *Negroes*; but there are both white Men and Malatto's upon the Coast, who are supposed to come from *Arabia*. Their Religion is a Mixture of *Mahometanism*, *Judaism*, and *Paganism*: But, tho' they retain Circumcision, and some other *Mahometan* Rites, they have no Mosques or Temples, nor any regular publick Worship.

The Country is divided amongst several petty Monarchs, which would make it an easy Conquest, did their Soil produce any Thing to incite the Avarice of the *European* Powers. The Natives do not wear any other Clothing than a Piece of Cotton, Calicoe, or Linen Cloth about their Waists, adorning their Arms with Bracelets, their Necks with Necklaces, and their Hair with some glittering Trifles. Their Arms are Bows and Arrows, Darts and Launces, with a Shield for their Defence: They seem terribly afraid of Fire Arms: Their Houses are only round little Huts, thirty or forty of which form a Village; there is not any thing that can be call'd a Town in the whole Country. They go a fishing in their Seas and Rivers in Canoes, made of the Bodies of large Trees hollow'd; and they have also larger Boats, of Boards sew'd together, with Cordage made of the Cocoa Nut-Tree, but no Ships.

The *Europeans* have attempted to establish Settlements in *Madagascar*, both at the Bay of *St. Austin's*, on the South-West Part of the Island, and at Fort *Dauphin*, on the South-east Part of the Island. The *Portuguese*, *English*, and *Dutch*, have successively sent Detachments to the Bay of *St. Austin's*; and the *French* built Fort *Dauphin*, placed a Garrison there, and proposed to make themselves Masters of the Navigation of the *Indian* Seas; but they seem convinc'd, that their Project was impracticable.

Some Account of the Pirates at Madagascar.

The Court of *England*, about the Year 1700, sent a Squadron of four Men of War, commanded by Commodore *Warren*, to drive away the Pirates, who were settled here under Captain *Avery*. But the Commodore, finding it impossible to come at them, publish'd a Proclamation in Pursuance of his Instructions, offering a Pardon to all that would come in, except *Avery* their Leader: However, not a Man came over to him. The Commodore afterwards proceeded to Fort *St. George* in the *East-Indies*, where he used the utmost Diligence to meet the Pirates in the Seas of *India*, but to no Purpose: So that, having left one or two of his Ships on the Shoals near *Malacca*, he returned with the rest to *England*. However, his Expedition had this good Effect, that the Pirates durst not stir out from *Madagascar*; and, finding they were so narrowly watch'd, they agreed to divide what they had got, and disperse themselves.

Islands South-west of Africa. St. Helen.

We shall now take a View of the Islands on the South-west Part of *Africa*; and the first we meet with in the *Atlantick Ocean*, in sailing from the *Cape of Good Hope*, is *St. Helena*, so named by the *Portuguese*, who discover'd it on St. *Helen*'s Day, in the Year 1502. This Island is situate in sixteen Degrees South Latitude, about six hundred Leagues North-west of the *Cape of Good Hope*, almost in the Mid-way between the Continents of *Africa* and *America*, but nearer to that of *Africa*, from whence it is distant about twelve hundred Miles: The Winds blowing always from the South-east a moderate Gale, it is an exceeding pleasant Voyage from the *Cape* to *St. Helena*, and perform'd in less than three Weeks, without giving the least Trouble to the Seamen. But there is no sailing to this Island directly Northward. When a Ship therefore is sent from *England* to *St. Helena*, it first sails as far Southward as the *Cape of Good Hope*, and then returns to *St. Helena*. The Island is about one and twenty Miles in Circumference, and may be discern'd at Sea above twenty Leagues Distance: It consists of one vast Rock, and looks like a Castle in the Middle of the Ocean, whose natural Walls are of that Height, that there is no scaling them, or indeed any landing, but at a small Valley, call'd *Chappel-Valley*, in a Bay on the East Side of it, which is defended by a Battery of forty or fifty great Guns, planted even with the Water: And the Waves dashing perpetually on the Shore, it is at all Times difficult landing even here. There is one little Creek besides, where two or three Men may land at a Time; but this is now defended by a Battery of five or six Guns, and render'd inaccessible: There is no Anchorage any where about the Island, but at *Chappel-Valley Bay*: And, as the Wind always sits from the South-east, if a Ship over-shoots the Island ever so little, she cannot recover it again.

A little beyond the Landing-place is a Fort, where the Governor resides with a Garrison; and

in

in the ſame Valley there is a pretty Town, conſiſting of forty or fifty Houſes built after the *Engliſh* Way, whither the People of the Iſland reſort when any Shipping appears. For the Governor has always Centinels on the higheſt Part of the Iſland to the Windward, who give Notice of the Approach of all Shipping, and Guns are thereupon fir'd, that every Man may reſort to his Poſt.

Notwithſtanding the Iſland, on every Side, appears to be a hard barren Rock, yet on the Top it is cover'd with a fine Staple of Earth, which produces all Manner of Grain, Graſs, Fruits, Herbs, Roots, and Garden-Stuff: And the Country, after we have aſcended the Rock, is prettily diverſified with riſing Hills and Plains, adorn'd with Plantations of Fruit-Trees, and Kitchen-Gardens, among which the Houſes of the Natives are interſperſed; and in the open Fields are Herds of Cattle always grazing, ſome of which are fatted to ſupply the Shipping that touches here, and the reſt furniſh their Dairies with Milk, Butter, and Cheeſe: They abound alſo in Hogs, Goats, Turkeys, and all Manner of Poultry; and their Seas are well ſtor'd with Fiſh. But amidſt all this Affluence of other Things, they have neither Bread nor Wine of their own Growth; for the Rats, which harbour in the Rocks, and cannot be deſtroy'd, eat up all the Seed before the Grain is well out of the Ground: And the Latitude is too hot for making Wine. There is no Country within the *Torrid Zone*, where good Wine is produc'd; neither cold nor very hot Countries agreeing with this Liquor. All the Wine they ſpend therefore, they have from the *Canaries*, the *Maderas*, or the *Cape*, which is brought them in *European* Shipping, as well as their Flour and Malt: And their Houſes are ſome of them brought ready fram'd from *England*. Beſides Grapes, they have Plantains, *Banana*-Figs, Lemons, and ſuch other Fruits as hot Countries uſually produce: And, to ſupply the Want of Bread, they eat Potatoes and Yams.

There were upon the Iſland, in the Year 1701, about two hundred Families, moſt of them *Engliſh*, or deſcended from *Engliſh* Parents; tho' there were ſome *French* Refugees amongſt them, brought thither to cultivate their Vines. Every Family has its Houſe and Plantation on the higher Part of the Iſland, where they look after their Cattle, their Hogs, Goats, Poultry, Fruits, and Kitchin-Gardens: They ſcarce ever come down to the Town, unleſs it be once a Week to Church, or when the Shipping arrives, when moſt of the Houſes in the Valley are converted into Punch-Houſes, or Lodgings for their Gueſts. The Inhabitants are not ſuffered to purchaſe any Merchandize of the Ships that touch here: Whatever they want of foreign Growth or Manufacture, they are oblig'd to buy at the Company's Ware-houſe. The Coin chiefly current here, is *Spaniſh* Dollars, or *Engliſh* Money.

There is no Place out of *England*, where the Natives have ſuch freſh ruddy Complexions, and robuſt Conſtitutions, as we meet with here; which may be aſcrib'd to the following Cauſes. They live on the Top of a Mountain, always open to the Sea-Breezes; they are uſually employ'd in the moſt healthful Exerciſes of Gardening and Husbandry; their Iſland is frequently refreſhed with moderate cooling Showers, and there are no Fens or Salt-marſhes about it to annoy them. The Hill between the Town and their Plantation, is ſo deep, that they are forced to have a Ladder in the Middle of it, from thence call'd *Ladder Hill*. The Natives ſeem an honeſt, inoffenſive, and hoſpitable People. They enjoy all the Neceſſaries of Life in great Plenty; they are neither parch'd with exceſſive Heat, or pinch'd with Cold; they live in perfect Security, and are happy in a continued State of Health. As there are no Men worth more than a thouſand Dollars, ſo there is no Man worth leſs than four hundred Dollars. There is but one Inconvenience, that the Natives of *St. Helena* are liable to; and that is, the Oppreſſion of their Governor, which has ſometimes been their Caſe, and is not eaſy to be redreſs'd, as the Inhabitants have no Opportunity of making their Grievances known to thoſe who are able to relieve them. However, they are generally govern'd with an equal and impartial Hand; and while they are ſo, *St. Helena* is a Paradiſe, compar'd with any other Part of the World. In a Word, there is hardly any Town, either in *England* or out of it, where there are fewer Diſorders and Outrages committed, than at *St. Helena*. For tho' the People appear with an Air of Freedom not known in other Governments, yet an exact Order and Diſcipline is obſerv'd, and an univerſal Quiet and Satisfaction ſeems to reign in this Fortunate Iſland.

The *Engliſh Eaſt-India* Company took Poſſeſſion of the Iſland (the *Portugueſe* having deſerted it) in the Year 1600, and held it till 1673 without Interruption, when the *Dutch* took it by Surprize. However, the *Engliſh*, commanded by Captain *Munden*, recover'd it again within the Space of a Year, and took three *Dutch Eaſt-India* Ships that lay in the Road at the ſame time. The *Hollanders* had fortified the Landing-place, and planted Batteries of great Guns there to prevent a Deſcent; but the *Engliſh* being acquainted with the ſmall Creek beforementioned, climb'd up to the Top of the Rocks in the Night-time, and, appearing the next Morning at the Backs of the *Dutch*, they threw down their Arms, and ſurrendred the Iſland without ſtriking a Stroke.

Aſcenſion Iſland.

The Iſland of *Aſcenſion* lies in eight Degrees South Latitude, two hundred Leagues and upwards North-weſt of *St. Helena*. This alſo was diſcover'd by the *Portugueſe*, on *Aſcenſion*-Day: But neither they, or any other Nation, have yet thought it worth the planting. The Iſland is eight or ten Leagues in Circumference; ſome of it pretty high Land, but very barren. There is ſcarce any Wood, Fruit-Trees, Plants, or Herbage upon it: However, the *European* Shipping uſually call here in their Way from *India*, and refreſh their half-ſtarv'd Crew with the Fleſh of Tortoiſes. Theſe Tortoiſes have Fins inſtead of Feet, and are three Times as big as a Land Tortoiſe. Abundance of them frequent that Iſland, and the Sailors going on Shore in the Night-time, will turn two or three hundred of them on their Backs before Morning. The Fleſh is white, and looks like Veal, being a very great Refreſhment to our Seamen after they have ſed a Year or two upon ſalt Meat, and perhaps have little or none of that left by that time they arrive here.

St. Matthew.

The Iſland of St. *Matthew* is ſituated in two Degrees of South Latitude, an hundred Leagues North eaſt of *Aſcenſion*; and is about eight Leagues in Circumference. This Iſland alſo was diſcovered by the *Portugueſe*, who planted it and kept Poſſeſſion of it for ſome time; but it now remains uninhabited, having very little to invite other Nations to ſettle there.

Iſlands in the Gulph of Guinea.

The four Iſlands in the Gulph of *Guinea*, between *Congo* and *Benin*, having been all diſcover'd by the *Portugueſe*, are ſtill in Poſſeſſion of that Nation.

Annabon Iſland.

1. *Annabon* is ſituated in two Degrees of South Latitude, two hundred Miles to the Weſtward of *Congo*, being about ten Leagues in Circumference, and mountainous. The Name of *Annabon*,

or

or happy Year, was given it when diſcover'd on *New-Year's-Day*, 1571. Moſt of the Inhabitants are *Negroes*, brought hither from the Continent of *Africa*, and their Deſcendants. There are alſo a mingled Breed, call'd *Malottoes*, and ſome *Portugueſe:* The Iſland abounds in Cattle, Hogs, Poultry, Oranges, and Cocoa-nuts, with *Indian* Corn and Rice; and has a convenient Road for Ships.

St *Thomas's* Iſland.

The Iſland of St. *Thomas* is ſituated juſt under the *Equator*, between forty and fifty Leagues to the Weſtward of the Continent of *Africa*, and thirty North-eaſt of *Annabon*, being of a round Figure, and about forty Leagues in Circumference; diſcover'd alſo in 1571, on St. *Thomas*'s Day. This is the moſt conſiderable Iſland in the *Gulph* of *Guinea:* It is well ſupply'd with Wood and Water, and there is a high Mountain in the Middle of it, almoſt always cover'd with Clouds. The Heat and Moiſture of the Air render it extremely unhealthful to Northern Conſtitutions; but the *Portugueſe*, *Negroes*, and *Malottoes*, who inhabit it, live to a good old Age: They have plenty of *Indian* Corn, Rice, and Fruits, and make a good deal of Sugar. The *Portugueſe* have introduced here the Cinnamon-tree; but are afraid of planting this, and the other fine Spices, in any Quantity, leſt the *Dutch* ſhould come and take their Country from them. For the *Hollanders* would make the World believe, that no Nation can have a Right to the fine Spices but themſelves. The chief Town upon the Iſland, is called St. *Thomas*, and ſometimes *Pavoſan*; containing five or ſix hundred Houſes, and is the See of a Biſhop.

Princes Iſland.

Princes Iſland is ſituated in two Degrees of North Latitude, about forty Leagues North-eaſt of St. *Thomas*, and as much to the Weſtward of the Continent of *Africa*, and is the leaſt of the Iſlands in the Gulph of *Guinea*. It affords Rice, *Indian* Corn, plenty of Fruits, Roots, and Herbs. They have no want of Cattle, Hogs, or Goats; but what they abound in moſt, is, Sugar-canes.

Fernando Iſland.

The Iſland of *Fernando Po*, is ſituated in three Degrees and an half of North Latitude, ten Leagues to the Weſtward of the Continent, being about thirty Miles long and twenty broad; and as it is inhabited by the ſame Sort of People, ſo the Soil produces much the ſame Kind of Plants, Corn, and Fruits, as the reſt of the Iſlands in the Gulph of *Guinea* do. The *Portugueſe* uſually call at ſome of theſe Iſlands for Refreſhments in their Voyages to and from *India*, and in their Paſſage from *Brazil* to *Africa*.

Cape Verd Iſlands.

The Iſlands of *Cape Verd*, ſo nam'd from their being ſituated over-againſt that *Cape* in *Negroeland*, tho' they lie upwards of an hundred and twenty Leagues to the Weſtward of it, were diſcover'd by *Anthony Noel*, a *Genoeſe*, in the Service of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1460, and are about twenty in Number; but ſome of them only barren Rocks uninhabited. The chief of them are, *Bravo*, *Fogo*, St. *Jago*, *Mayo*, *Bonaviſta*, *Sal*, St. *Nicholas*, St. *Lucia*, St. *Vincent*, St. *Cruz*, and St. *Antonio*, ſituated between fourteen and nineteen Degrees of North Latitude. The largeſt of them,

St. *Jago*, the chief of the *Cape Verd* Iſlands

St. *Jago*, is of a triangular Figure, fifty or ſixty Leagues in Circumference, rocky and mountainous; but the Valleys produce *Indian* Corn, Cocoa-nuts, Oranges, and ſuch other Fruits, Plants, and Roots, as are common to hot Countries. And here we are ſupply'd, in our Voyages to *India*, with Hogs, Goats, and Poultry in great Abundance. Their Seas alſo abound with Fiſh. The *Engliſh* Shipping, in their Voyages outward-bound to the *Eaſt-Indies*, uſually come to an Anchor within a Bay beneath a ruinous Fort, ſituate on a high Rock, near which there is a pretty large Village of *Portugueſe*, *Malottoes*, and *Negroes*; but the chief Town, which is a Biſhop's See, and the Reſidence of the Governor, is three or four Leagues from thence. None of their Towns or Forts are of any great Strength. The *Portugueſe*, who reſide here, are ſuch as Neceſſity or Poverty has driven hither, and live a lazy indolent Life, ſubſiſting on the Fruits and other Produce of the Country. Some have repreſented them as a treacherous and thieviſh Generation; but they do not ſeem to deſerve that Character in general. Indeed, it behoves every Man to be very much upon his Guard, that viſits diſtant Countries. We may eſcape nineteen times, and miſcarry the twentieth. We don't know in what Light their Prieſts, or other deſigning People, may have repreſented us Proteſtants. We know there are *Mahometans*, that think they do Honour to their Prophet, by inſulting and murdering of Chriſtians: And there are *Roman* Catholick Prieſts that teach their Votaries we are Infidels, and deſerve to be extirpated from off the Face of the Earth.

W. Ind. Ships raile in Salt at *Sal* and *Mayo*

It may be proper to obſerve, that abundance of *Engliſh* Ships call at the Iſlands of *Sal* and *Mayo*, in their Way to our Plantations in *America*, for Salt. A great Number of Grampus's, a Species of Whales, are met with here, ſeventy or eighty Foot in Length.

Gra mpus's or Whales

The *Canaries*, antiently call'd *The Fortunate Iſlands*, being ſeven in Number, are ſituated between the 27th and 29th Degrees of Northern Latitude, and between the 12th and 21ſt Degree of Weſtern Longitude, reckoning from the Meridian of *London*; the moſt Eaſterly of theſe Iſlands lying about fifty Leagues Weſt of *Cape Non*, in the Empire of *Morocco*.

The *Canary* Iſlands.

They are ſaid, by ſome, to be call'd *Canes*, or *Canaries*, from the great Number of Dogs found here when they were diſcover'd: Others derive the Name from the *Canaanites*, the Anceſtors of the *Carthaginians*, who are ſuppos'd to have firſt planted them; but whether either of theſe ought to be accepted, is much to be doubted. *Ferro*, the moſt Weſterly of the *Canaries*, is ſituate in twenty ſeven Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude, and, till lately, was made the firſt Meridian by moſt Nations. It is about ſeven or eight Leagues in Circumference, and high Land; but has ſome fruitful Vallies, that afford Plenty of Corn, good Paſture, Sugar-canes, and Fruits. But there are no Springs or Rivers; all the freſh Water the Natives have is preſerv'd in Ciſterns, or fetch'd from the neighbouring Iſlands. 2. The Iſland of *Palma* is ſituated ten or twelve Leagues North-eaſt of *Ferro*, and about the ſame Dimenſions, remarkable for affording large Quantities of the beſt Wine of all the *Canaries*, uſually call'd *Palm Sack*. 3. *Gomera*, another ſmall Iſland, is about ten Leagues from the Eaſtward of *Ferro*, ſaid to abound in Corn and delicious Fruits, but affords very little Wine. 4. *Teneriffe* is ſituate in twenty eight Degrees North Latitude, about twenty Leagues to the Eaſtward of *Ferro*, and is about forty Leagues in Circumference. This Iſland affords Corn, Wine, and Fruits, in great Abundance, tho' 'tis pretty much encumber'd with Rocks and Mountains; of which the moſt remarkable is the famous *Pico* of *Teneriffe*, ſuppoſed to be one of the higheſt Mountains in the World: Some Writers have made it fifteen Miles, others five Miles high perpendicular; but thoſe, who make it about two Miles in perpendicular Height, ſeem to come neareſt the Truth. Certain it is, that the upper

Ferro.

Palma

Gomera

Teneriffe

The Height of the

Part

Part of it, which is in the Form of a Sugar-loaf, and white, may be seen plainly above the Clouds, at an hundred and twenty Miles Distance.

Some *English* Gentlemen, that had the Curiosity to visit this amazing Mountain, relate, That having ascended the Mountain about a Mile, they were obliged to quit their Horses, and climb up the Hill on Foot; and, having travers'd a steep black Rock about a Mile, they found the Top of the Rock as flat as a Pavement; and here the Air was so cold, that they were forced to keep great Fires all Night. The next Morning they travelled from the black Rocks up that Part of the Mountain call'd the *Sugar-Loaf*, which is exceeding steep, and the Soil a deep white Sand, which made it very difficult travelling: That when they came near the Top of the Pike, the Wind was very high, and a continual Breathing of a hot sulphureous Vapour issued from the Hill, which scorch'd their Faces, and made them sore: That on the Top of the Pike was a large Bason or Caldron, about a Musket-shot over, and four Yards deep; the Brim whereof, on which they stood, not above a Yard broad: That within this Vase were small loose Stones, mixed with Sulphur and Sand, that sent out a hot suffocating Steam: That from the Pike, they had a clear View of the *Grand Canary*, *Palma*, *Gomera*, and even of *Ferro*, which is twenty Leagues distant from the Pike. They relate, that there was a great deal of Snow and Ice about two thirds of the Way up, but at the very Top none at all; which is ascrib'd to the Heat that issues from the Caldron and the adjacent Earth. They met with no Trees, Shrubs, or Bushes, in their Passage, only some few Pines.

A Physician, who had lived upon this Island twenty Years, declared it as his Opinion, That the whole Island, being mightily impregnated with Brimstone, did formerly take Fire, and blow up most Part of it, there appearing several Mountains of hugh Stones, calcin'd and burn'd, about the Island, especially in the South-west Part of it: That the greatest Quantity of Sulphur, lying about the Centre of the Island, occasioned the raising of the Pike to the present Height; for these calcin'd Rocks lie three or four Miles round the Bottom of it: That from the Pike, to the South-west, almost as far as the Shore, are still the Tracks of the Rivers of Brimstone and melted Oar that ran that Way, and have so ruined the Soil where they flowed, that it will produce nothing but Broom: That some of the calcin'd Rocks resemble Iron Oar, some Silver, and others Copper Oar: That in the South-west Part of the Island are high Mountains of a bluish Earth, and Stones which have a yellow Rust on them, like that of Copper and Vitriol; and that there are several Springs of vitriolate Water here.

Certain it is, that about *Christmas* 1704, several Vulcano's burst out in this Island of *Teneriffe*, which did not only occasion a most terrible Earthquake, but whole Towns were swallowed up, or overturn'd, with many thousands of People in them, by those Torrents of Sulphur and metallick Oar that issued from those Vulcanoes; and the finest Country in the World, great Part of it by that Means converted into a barren Desart.

The chief Towns in *Teneriffe* are, 1. St. *Christoval de la Laguna*; or, St. *Christophers of the Lake*; by some stil'd the Capital of the *Canary Islands*, and the Seat of the Viceroy. It stands partly on the Side of a Hill, and partly on a Plain, and is a pretty large compact Town, having two Parish-Churches, and several Convents, Hospitals, and Chapels: On one Side of the Town is a fine Plain of three or four Leagues in Length; and on the East a Lake, from whence it receives its Name. 2. *Oratava* is a Port Town on the North-west Part of the Island, the Residence of the foreign Consuls and Merchants: It has one Parish-Church, and several Convents and Chapels, and is a Town of the best Trade in the Island. *Oratava.* 3. *Santa Cruz* is a little Town, situated in a Bay on the East-side of the Island, defended by two Forts, and several Batteries of great Guns; which could not, however, prevent Admiral *Blake*'s destroying sixteen *Spanish* Galleons, lying here in the Year 1657. *Santa Cruz.*

5. The Island call'd *The Grand Canary*, lies about thirteen or fourteen Leagues South-east of *Teneriffe*, between 27 and 28 Degrees of North Latitude, and is about fifty Leagues in Circumference, being a more level and a more fruitful Country than that of *Teneriffe*. The chief Town, call'd *Palma*, and by some *Canaria*, is situated a little Distance from the Sea, in the North Part of the Island; said to be a large clean pleasant Town, and to enjoy a serene temperate Air: It is the Residence of the Governor, the See of a Bishop, and has a beautiful Cathedral, richly adorn'd, besides several other Churches and Convents. Their Groves echo with the Musick of those Birds we so much admire here, and from this Island call'd *Canary* Birds, being preferable to those of the same kind in *Germany*. *The Grand Canary.* Chief Town *Palma.*

6. *Forte Ventura*, or the Island of *Good Fortune*, situated between the *Grand Canary*, and the Continent of *Africa*, a long Island, stretching from West to East, but very narrow. It abounds in Corn, Fruits, Cattle, Fish and Fowl, but chiefly in Goats, which serve them for Food, and they drive a great Trade with their Skins. *Forte Ventura.*

7. *Lancerota* lies a little to the Northward of *Forte Ventura*, and is said to produce Plenty of all Things but Wine: It is one of the least in the *Canaries*, and has no Town of any Note in it: That which is the most considerable, bears the same Name with the Island.—Besides these, there are some other small Islands in these Seas; but Travellers have not thought them worth a particular Description. *Lancerota.*

These Islands were very properly call'd *The Fortunate Islands* by the Ancients; for, by the concurrent Testimony of Travellers, there never was a richer Soil, or a more agreeable Situation: There is nothing desirable in Life, but what is to be met with in this terrestrial Paradise. Corn, Wine and Oil, Flesh, Fish and Fowl, abound in them, and that the most exquisite in every kind: As to the Richness of their Wines, they are not to be parallel'd, as every one can testify, who has ever tasted of the genuine Canary and Palm Sack; and of these, 'tis computed, they do not send less than ten thousand Hogsheads annually to *Great Britain*. These Islands a perfect Paradise.

The Natives of these Islands generally enjoy a serene Sky and temperate Air; for, tho' they lie in a warm Climate, they are so constantly refreshed with Breezes from the Sea, that they are never sensible of pinching Cold, or rigorous Seasons. The poorest People here know no Want of Clothing, Firing, Fruits, or Wine: And if Fields, cover'd with a Variety of beautiful and fragrant Flowers, and the musical Notes of those Birds, which all the World admire, affords an agreeable Pleasure; these are what every Native of the *Canaries* enjoy. But still it must be confess'd, that they who have seen or heard of those terrible Vulcanoes and Earthquakes, those Rivers of Brimstone and melted Oar, that have swallow'd so many Towns and Villages, must ever live in Dread of the direful Catastrophe.

The first Discovery of these Islands.

These Islands, it is generally believ'd, were first discover'd and planted by the *Carthaginians*; and it is held by some, that the *Romans* also were well acquainted with them: But of this there is some Doubt; for the People of these Islands had no manner of Communication with the Continent for many hundred Years; and it is evident the *Romans* either despis'd Traffick, or had no Genius for it. The distant Parts of the World had not so long remain'd Strangers to each other, if the *Romans* had not unfortunately destroy'd the *Carthaginian* State, and discouraged all remote Discoveries. It is a strong Argument, that the *Romans* were never acquainted with the *Canary* Islands, that they lay unknown to the rest of the World for several Centuries after the Decline of the *Roman* Empire; and, on their being discover'd again in the 15th Century, there were found no *Roman* Antiquities: Nor had the Customs and Manners, or Language of the Inhabitants, any Resemblance to those of the *Romans*; but would much rather incline us to believe them descended from the *Egyptians*, or some other People of *Africk*. However that be, *John* King of *Castile*, having Intelligence that there were such Islands, employed *John de Betancour*, a *French* Gentleman in his Service, to take Possession of them, about the Year 1405; who succeeding in this Expedition, the Propriety of three of them was conferred on *Betancour* by that King, and he resided there all his Life-time as Sovereign of the *Canaries*; but the Posterity of *Betancour* afterwards reconvey'd them to the Crown of *Castile*, and the *Spaniards* remain in Possession of them to this Day.

The *Madera* Islands.

The *Madera* Islands are situated between 32 and 33 Degrees of North Latitude, and in 16 Degrees of Western Longitude, about an hundred Leagues North of the *Canaries*, and as many to the Westward of *Sallee*, in the Kingdom of *Fez*. The largest of them, call'd *Madera* from its being cover'd with Wood, is about forty Leagues in Circumference, consisting of fine rising Hills and fruitful Valleys, well watered by the Rivulets that fall from the Mountains; tho' abounding much more in Wine than Corn. They make several Sorts of Wine; one call'd Malmsey, a very rich Wine; a white Sort; and a third like Tent, not fit to be drank unmix'd; but of these they have no great Quantities. The *Madera* Wine we usually drink, and which this Island yields most of, is not very strong. The Climate here is more temparate than that of the *Canaries*; but they do not enjoy so clear a Sky, or that Plenty of Corn and Fruits: However, in one respect they are to be preferr'd to the *Canaries*, that they are not so subject to Vulcanoes and Earthquakes; and, 'tis said, no venomous Animal will live here. The chief Towns are *Funchal*, *Santa Cruz*, and *Manchico*. *Funchal*, the Capital, is situated in a Bay, at the South-east Part of the Island: It is the Seat of the Governor, a Bishoprick, and has a Cathedral and three Parish Churches it in, besides several Convents and Chapels. So bigotted are the *Roman* Catholicks here, that they will not allow a Protestant any Burial, without paying very dear for the Permission. And however pleasant the *Canary* Islands and *Madera* may be, the Inquisition, that reigns in both, must make them no very desirable Residence for any, but those who can resign their Consciences and Understandings entirely to the Direction of the *Jesuits*. The Town of *Santa Cruz*, is situated on the North-east Part of the Island; and that of *Manchico* on the South-west. The rest of the Natives live at their Plantations and Vineyards, that are dispers'd all over the Country, and make it look like one continued Garden.

Chief Towns. *Funchal*. *Santa Cruz*.

This desirable Island, according to most of our *English* Writers, was discovered by one *Robert Manchin*, or *Masham*, a Native of *Bristol*, and Captain of a Merchant-ship of that Port, in the Year 1344; but the Story is told so many different Ways, and has so much the Air of a Romance, that we cannot give much Credit to it. However that was, it seems to be agreed, that the *Portuguese* did not plant this Island, or send any Colonies thither, till the Year 1425, and that when they came thither, they found the Island covered with thick Woods, and without Inhabitants; but burning down the Woods, the Ashes render'd the Soil exceeding fruitful and proper for Vineyards, which have been cultivated with great Care and Industry ever since: Corn also yielded at first an Increase of sixty or seventy Bushels for one; but after the Virtue of the Ashes, with which the Ground was at first improv'd, was spent, it yielded but indifferent Crops of Grain.

The next in Magnitude of the *Madera Islands*, is that of *Porto Santo*, situate six or eight Leagues North-east of *Madera Proper*. It is about five or six Leagues in Circumference, and abounds in the same Kind of Wine and Fruits as the former.

The *Azores*, or *Western Islands*, are not properly *African*, but rather *European Islands*; but, lying in the same Sea with the *Madera's*, are sometimes described with them. However, as we have given an Account of them already in our Description of the Dominions of *Portugal*, [pag. 725, of this Work,] we shall not repeat any thing there said, but pass by them to the Continent of *America*, with which we shall next begin.

A Di-

A DESCRIPTION OF AMERICA:

CONTAINING,

Conjectures on its firſt Peopling; the Hiſtory of its Diſcovery by *Columbus*; the Conqueſt of the ſeveral Countries by the *Europeans*; the Perſons, Genius, Habits, Buildings, Manners, Laws, Cuſtoms, Religion, Policy, Arts, Manufactures, *&c.* of the Natives; with an Account of the preſent Diviſions and Sub-Diviſions of this New World; and the Vegetables, Animals, and Minerals that are to be found in each Province.

CHAP. I.

Of the firſt Peopling of America, *and of the Diſcovery of its ſeveral Countries by* Columbus, *and others.*

THE Continent of *America*, 'tis probable, extends as far as the Pole on the North; and is bounded by the *Atlantic* Ocean, which divides it from *Europe* and *Africa*, on the Eaſt; by another anonymous Ocean on the South; and by the vaſt *Pacific* Ocean, uſually call'd the *South-Sea*, which ſeparates it from *Aſia*, on the Weſt.

The Length of *America*, if we extend it but from eighty Degrees North to *Cape Horn*, which lies in fifty-ſeven and a half South, takes up one hundred thirty-ſeven and a half Degrees of Latitude; which, reckoning ſixty Miles to a Degree, makes the Length of *America* to be eight thouſand two hundred and fifty Miles; but if we allow ſeventy Miles to a Degree, which comes near the Truth, nine thouſand ſix hundred and twenty five Miles. The Breadth is not anſwerable to the Length; for what is diſcover'd of *North America*, is ſcarce four thouſand Miles broad; and *South America*, which is of a triangular Figure, is not ſo broad in any Place.

The North and South Parts are joined by the narrow *Iſthmus of Darien*, which divides the North from the *South Sea*, and is about ſixty Miles over in the narrowſt Place, between *Porto Bello* and *Panama*. So that when we thus divide *America* into North and South, it muſt not be underſtood, that the Equator makes this Diviſion; for what is denominated *South America*, extends twelve Degrees odd Minutes to the Northward of the Equator.

The *Spaniards*, on their Arrival in *America*, finding one great Empire eſtabliſhed in *North America*, which went under the Name of *Mexico*, and another in the South, ſtiled the Empire of *Peru*, they gave the Name of *Mexico* to their Northern Conqueſts, and the Name of *Peru* to their Southern Conqueſts.

The Sea which ſeparates *North America* from *Europe*, is generally about four or five thouſand Miles broad; the Sea which ſeparates *South America* from *Africa*, about two or three thouſand Miles over; and the Sea which ſeparates *America* from *Aſia*, generally about eight or nine thouſand Miles over.

The Antients Opinion of the Form of the Heavens and Earth.

The Antients generally imagin'd, that the Heavens conſtituted but one Hemiſphere, and that the Earth was flat and round as a Table, ſerving as a Baſis or Foundation to ſupport the fine vaulted Roof over their Heads. The Fathers laughed at thoſe few Philoſophers who believed the Earth to be globular, and ſurrounded by the Heavens equally on every Side; and nothing was more exploded by them, than the Notion of *Antipodes*. And even thoſe of the Antients, who believed both the Heavens and Earth to be globular, and that there might be another Continent; yet look'd upon it to be divided from us by ſuch vaſt Seas, that we could have no Communication with it; and

and that all about the *Equator*, whether in this, or any other Continent, was not habitable, on Account of the excessive Heats. In a Word, the Antients in general, were so far from knowing any thing of *America*, that they knew nothing even of *Africa*, or the *East-Indies*, to the Southward of the *Equator*.

The Antients never sailed round *Africa*.

Pliny indeed reports, that *Hanno* the *Carthaginian* sailed round *Africa*; but this evidently contradicts what he had said before, that the Countries under the *Equator* were not habitable.

Plato speaks of a vast Island beyond the *Atlantic* Ocean, equal in Dimensions to *Asia* and *Africa*, and of several intermediate Islands, which rendered the Passage short and easy thither; but then he tells us, those Islands were long since sunk, and covered with the Ocean. If we take his Testimony therefore intire, there was no such Land as *America* known in his Days: And indeed his whole Relation appears to be no more than a poetical Fiction, and his *Atlantic* Islands to have no other Existence than *More's Utopia*.

An Enquiry how *America* was first peopled.

All that we know certainly concerning the peopling of *America*, is, that it has been planted many hundreds, or rather thousands, of Years, from the Numbers of People found there in the Beginning of the fifteenth Century. But the Resemblance there is between the People of that Continent and this, and the Religion and Customs of the one and the other, demonstrate that we proceeded from one common Stock. The Stature, Form, and Features of the *Americans*, do not differ from ours; the Frame and Turn of their Minds are the same; and they retained a Tradition, that their Continent was gradually peopled from a small Number. They used Arms of the Form also as the Men of our Continent did, *viz.* Swords, Spears, Launces, Bows, Arrows, Slings, and Darts; only, as they had lost the Use of Iron, their wooden Swords were edged with sharp Flints, and their Spears, Arrows, and Darts, pointed with the Bones of Fish, or other Animals. However, they seemed Strangers to almost every Art and Science when the *Spaniards* came amongst them.

Probably Men first arrived there in *Carthaginian* Ships.

Part of the Western Coasts of *Africa*, and the *Canary* Islands, over-against, and not far from *America*, were planted by the *Carthaginians*, four or five hundred Years before our Saviour; and, it is probable, when they sent Ships to plant Colonies, they were crouded with Men, Women, and Children, as ours are that we send to the Plantations at this Day. Is it strange then, that some of these Ships should be driven to *America*, by the Winds which constantly blow from the Eastward, when it is not more than three Weeks Sail from *Africa*, or the *Canaries*, to that Continent? If such Planters were once driven from their intended Port, far to the Westward, and found it impossible for them to return, what could be more rational, than to run before the Wind, in Hopes of making some other Land? And, as we suppose them victualled, in order to plant and recruit some Colony, such Adventurers could not have less than three Weeks or a Month's Provisions on Board, which was sufficient to support them in such a Voyage.

If it be demanded how it happened, that no Shipping was ever driven thither, since the *Carthaginian* State flourished? It may very truly be answered, that no People have ever navigated those Seas, since the *Carthaginians*, till very lately; all the Discoveries and Plantations of the *Carthaginians* upon the West Coast of *Africa*, and in the *Canaries*, were lost and ruined upon the Conquest the *Romans* made of *Carthage*; neither did the *Romans* ever revive that Branch of their Navigation.

Another Circumstance to induce us to believe they are descended from the *Phœnicians*, or *Carthaginians*, is their imitating them in such of their religious Rites, as Nature or Reason could never have taught them. The offering human Sacrifices seems to have been almost peculiar to those Nations. The *Americans* also adored Mountains, Woods, Seas, and Rivers, and almost every Animal, as the *Africans* once did, and some of them actually do at this Day. And if we suppose that *America* was first peopled by Sea, it could be by no other Nation but the *Phœnicians* or *Carthaginians*, no other People having Fleets and Colonies on the Western Coasts of *Europe* and *Africa* in those early Ages.

It could not be peopled from *Asia*.

As to the peopling *America* from any Part of *Asia*; in the first Place, the Breadth of the *Pacific* Ocean is not less than eight or nine thousand Miles, twice the Breadth of the *Atlantic* Ocean. 2*dly*, The Winds, within the Latitude of thirty North and South, constantly blow from East to West, and in higher Latitudes are variable. 3*dly*, The *Chinese*, the only People furnished with Shipping in the *Eastern* Parts of the World, never affected to make long Voyages, or visit remote Regions; and it is very unlikely, that any of their Ships should be driven by Accident to *America*, because the Sea, that separates them, is so very wide, and the Winds always against those that would sail from *Asia* to *America*.

It could not be peopled by Land from North or South.

As for that Notion, That the People of the Continent went North about to *America* by Land, it scarce deserves mentioning; for we know that the Sea extends more than eighty Degrees to the Northward; and consequently, if *America* was peopled that Way, those who went thither must travel within ten Degrees of the Pole, which Parts are neither passable nor habitable. To the Southward also, our Mariners have sailed to near seventy Degrees; and consequently, if the two Continents are united in that Part of the Globe, it must be in too rigorous a Latitude for Men to travel that Way by Land.

Should it be admitted, that there was a Passage by Land from the Old to the New World, it is strange, that no Man ever returned again that Way from *America* to us. If it be objected, that the same Argument held good against those who suppose *America* was peopled by Sea; this is evidently a Mistake, because the Wind always sits fair for sailing from *Africa* to *America*, and contrary to those that would return from thence. As well as we understand Navigation at this Day, we find it very difficult to come back from *America* without sailing pretty far North or South, where we meet with variable Winds, and for the most Part Westerly.

Objection answered.

But there remains an Objection against the peopling of *America* by the *Carthaginians*; and that is, that they were destitute of almost all Arts and Sciences; nay, that they knew nothing of Ship-building, or the Use of Iron. To this it may be answered, that as the first Generation was probably worn out before any Iron Mines were discovered, and it is possible that none of those that arrived there might understand the digging, melting, or separating the Metals, if such Mines had been discovered; it is no Wonder, that in an Age or two, the Use of Iron was forgot, and consequently all Manufactures that depended on the Use of Iron; though the Arts of Spinning and Weaving, for which the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* were famous, were retained.

Another Circumstance which inclines us to think, that *America* was peopled by the *Africans* by Sea, is, that we found it better peopled in the Middle, between the Tropicks, than it was towards

wards the North or South; whereas, in our Continent, the most populous Places are, and the most considerable Empires have been, within the *Temperate Zone*, to the Northward of the Tropick of *Cancer*. Had the *Europeans* or *Asiaticks* gone North about to *America*, they would have first planted those Countries that lay neareſt the North, or at leaſt thoſe within the *Temperate Zone*, and not have choſen to fix the two great Empires of *Mexico* and *Peru* within the *Torrid Zone*, and in a Manner deſert the reſt of the Country.

The Objection that Animals could not paſs by Sea conſider'd.

Still it may be objected, that though Men might paſs firſt to *America* in Ships, it can never be ſuppoſed, that every Species of Beaſts, Birds, and Inſects, paſſed thither the ſame Way. To which we anſwer, it is equally improbable they ſhould travel thither by the Extremities of the North or South Pole: For it cannot be ſuppoſed, that Animals bred in hot Countries, would ever wander into frozen Regions; nay, it is a Queſtion, whether many of them would live in a cold Climate, if they were carried thither. Beſides, many of the hardieſt Animals, and the fitteſt for ſuch Journies, ſuch as Oxen, Mules, and Horſes, were none of them to be found in *America*. On the other Hand, ſeveral Species of Animals we find in *America*, never appeared in our Continent. If theſe at firſt paſſed from us to them, how comes it that none of the ſame Species are left here? The Difficulty remains equal, whether we ſuppoſe Animals paſſed from the one Continent to the other, by Sea or by Land; and our being ignorant how the *Americans* came to have ſome of the ſame Animals we have, can be no Objection to the Notion that *America* was peopled by Sea.

Of the Diſcovery of *America* by *Columbus*.

We proceed, in the next Place, to give an Account of our modern Diſcoveries to the Weſtward. *Chriſtopher Columbus*, or *Colon*, was a Native of ſome obſcure Village in the State of *Genoa*. He was put to School at *Pavia*, where he was taught Arithmetick, Navigation, Aſtronomy, Drawing, and Painting. From School he went to Sea, and was in ſeveral Engagements with the *Turks*, the *Venetians*, and other Nations; in one of which, the Ship he was in being burnt near the Coaſt of *Portugal*, he had the good Fortune to eſcape to Shore upon a Plank, and come to *Lisbon*; and afterwards made ſeveral Voyages with the *Portugueſe* to the North and South, and particularly to *Guinea*. While he was in the Service of the *Portugueſe*, he married a Wife of ſome Quality and Fortune, whoſe Father had been concerned in ſeveral naval Enterprizes, and was Governor of one of the *Madera* Iſlands. *Columbus* came into the Poſſeſſion of all his Father-in-Law's Charts, Maps, and Journals, which gave him the firſt Hint of making Diſcoveries to the Weſtward: From his Youth, indeed, he applied himſelf to the Study of Coſmography, Aſtronomy, and Geometry; and appeared to have a more than ordinary Paſſion to underſtand the State of all Countries, and to make new Diſcoveries; and was perpetually drawing Maps and Charts, in which he received great Encouragement.

Columbus had three Inducements to believe, that there lay a Continent in the *Atlantick* Ocean, not far to the Weſtward, and that this Continent was contiguous to, or rather Part of the *Eaſt-Indies*. 1. He obſerved, that *Marinus* had placed the *Eaſt-Indies* fifteen Hours to the Eaſtward of the Weſt Coaſt of *Africa* and *Europe*, (which was however a very groſs Miſtake;) and that as there could remain but nine Hours more between this Continent and that, in ſailing Weſtward, ſuppoſing that Space to be all Sea, which he hoped was a great Part of it Land, he concluded it would be no very long Voyage to the *Eaſt-Indies* by the Weſt. 2. It was the Opinions of ſeveral learned Men, both Antients and Moderns, that there was another Continent beyond the Weſtern Ocean, either very near or contiguous to the *Eaſt-Indies*, and that it was not very far diſtant from our's. Signior *Paul*, a Phyſician of *Florence*, with whom he held a conſtant Correſpondence, in one of his Letters, relates how rich and populous a Country *China* or *Cathay* was, and aſſures him, that the Voyage thither, through the *Atlantic* Ocean, could not be farther than the Voyage from *Portugal* to *Guinea*. In ſhort, *Columbus* computes the Diſtance between *Lisbon* and *China* to be about five thouſand Miles, in which he was out two Thirds: However, ſo far he was accidentally in the right, that he met with Land five or ſix thouſand Miles to the Weſtward. 3. A third Inducement was the Reports of ſome ſea-faring Men, who had uſed thoſe Weſtern Seas. A *Portugueſe* Pilot informed him, that being 450 Leagues to the Weſtward of *Cape St. Vincent*, he took up a Piece of carved Wood, which he gueſſed came from ſome Iſland to the Weſtward, the Wind having long ſat that Way: Another aſſured him, that he ſaw a Piece of carv'd Wood, drove by the Weſterly Winds on *Porto Santto*, one of the *Madera* Iſlands; and that there had been thick Canes driven upon thoſe Shores, ſuch as did not grow in this Part of the World. Others, that had ſailed to the Weſtward of the *Azores*, affirmed they had ſeen an Iſland in thoſe Seas. But his principal Encouragement to this Undertaking, was ſome Sea Charts and Journals of a Pilot that died at his Houſe in *Lisbon*, that appeared to have diſcovered ſome Land far to the Weſtward. His Son indeed rejects this Story of the Pilot's leaving him thoſe Intimations, as derogatory to his Father's Honour, who, he inſiſts, was the firſt Diſcoverer of that new World; and no Doubt he was the firſt that diſcovered it to any Purpoſe, which is an Honour that might ſatisfy his Deſcendants. However, it is not improbable, that a Ship ſhould have been driven a Fortnight or three Weeks' Sail to the Weſtward of its deſigned Courſe, and have diſcovered either the Iſlands or Continent of *America*, as it is ſaid this Pilot did.

But to proceed: *Columbus*, having ſailed a great while in the *Portugueſe* Service, firſt propoſed the finding out a Way to the *Eaſt-Indies* by the Weſtern Ocean, to King *John* of *Portugal*; and gave ſuch ſubſtantial Reaſons for the Attempt, that the King ſeemed to be convinced the Thing was feaſible; and, while the Affair was negotiating, privately diſpatched a Ship to the Weſtward, with Orders to find out if there was any ſuch Lands as *Columbus* ſuppoſed. But, whether the Commander wanted Courage or Capacity for ſuch an Undertaking, he returned without meeting any Thing to his Purpoſe, and laughed at the Conjectures of *Columbus*: At which he was ſo incenſed, that he went to *Spain*, diſpatching at the ſame Time his Brother *Bartholomew Columbus* to *Henry* VII. King of *England*. But his Brother being taken by Pirates, and not making the Diſpatch that was expected, *Columbus* opened his Deſign to *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella*, King and Queen of *Caſtile* and *Arragon*: And though his Brother *Bartholomew* afterwards reached *England*, and his Propoſals were accepted by King *Henry* VII. yet *Columbus* having concluded an Agreement with the Court of *Spain* before he was advertiſed of his Brother's Succeſs, *England* loſt the Honour and Profit of this important Diſcovery.

It appears from our own Hiſtories, that his Brother *Bartholomew* was at the Court of *England* in the Year 1480, and that he had before treated

with the King of *Portugal*, if not with *Spain*: For it is likely that his Propoſals were rejected by the *Spaniſh* Court at firſt, which occaſioned his applying to *England* and *France*; but Queen *Iſabella* encouraging the Scheme, about the Year 1484, he ſeems from that Time to have applied himſelf wholly to the *Spaniſh* Court. However, *Ferdinand* and *Iſabella* being engaged in the Wars with the *Moors*, he was put off till the Year 1492, when a Supply of Money was provided, and *Columbus* entruſted with three ſmall Ships for the Expedition. He alſo obtained a Grant to be Admiral of the *Weſtern* Seas, with the ſame Privileges as the Admirals of *Caſtille* and *Leon* enjoyed; that all civil Employments, as well as Governments, in the World to be diſcovered, ſhould be wholly at his Diſpoſal; and beſides the Revenues of the Poſts of Admiral and Viceroy, he ſhould enjoy a Tenth of all the Profits ariſing by future Conqueſts.

And now *Columbus*, whom for the future we ſhall ſtile Admiral, having equipped and victualled his Ships, of which the chief, called the *St. Mary*, he commanded in Perſon; this little Squadron, manned only with ninety Men, ſet Sail from *Palos* for the *Canaries*, the third of *Auguſt* 1492, and arrived at thoſe Iſlands the twelfth. One of the Ships having received ſome Damage, the Admiral remained there till the firſt of *September*, when he ſet Sail upon his grand Deſign. He had not ſailed a Fortnight in this wide Ocean, before his Men began to murmur at the Enterprize; for they obſerved the Wind conſtantly ſat from Eaſt to Weſt, and apprehended there would be no Poſſibility of returning, if they miſſed of the Land they were made to expect: But on the 19th, obſerving ſome Birds fly over their Ships, and on the 22d, Abundance of Weeds driving by them, they began to be better ſatisfied. However, continuing their Courſe ſtill ſeveral Days farther, and meeting with no Land, they mutiny'd again to that Degree, that they had almoſt agreed to throw their Admiral overboard, and return Home without him; when, fortunately for him, they ſaw more Birds, Weeds, Pieces of Board, Canes, and a Shrub with the Berries upon it, alſo ſwim by them. It was on *Thurſday* the 11th of *October*, 1492, about ten at Night, that the Admiral firſt diſcovered a Light upon the Iſland of *Guanahani*. About two in the Morning, the Ship called the *Pinta*, the beſt Sailor of the three, gave the Signal of Land, which was firſt ſeen when they were ſcarce two Leagues from the Shore, by one of the common Seamen; who had not, however, the Reward that was promiſed to the firſt Diſcoverer, becauſe the Admiral ſaw a Light on the Iſland the Night before.

The Day appearing, the Ships came to an Anchor near the Iſland, which they found to be populous, well planted, and watered with a great Lake. The Natives came down crouding to the Shore, and ſeemed aſtoniſhed at the Sight of the Ships; and the Admiral went on Shore in his Boat, with the Royal Standard; as did the other two Captains in their Boats, with their Colours flying. They no ſooner came on Shore but they kneeled down, and gave God Thanks for their Succeſs: After which, the Admiral ſtood up, and having rear'd the Royal Standard, called the Iſland by the Name of *St. Salvador*, taking Poſſeſſion of it in the Name of their Catholick Majeſties: After which, his People recognized him their Admiral and Viceroy, ſwore to obey him, and begged Pardon for their untractable Behaviour during the Voyage.

The *Indians* ſtood gazing at the *Spaniards*, without attempting to oppoſe them, while they were thus taking Poſſeſſion of their Country; and the Admiral ordered ſome Strings of Glaſs Beads, Caps, and Toys of ſmall Value, to be diſtributed amongſt them; at which they ſeemed infinitely pleaſed, and immediately hung the Beads about their Necks, teſtifying, by Signs, the Value they ſet upon theſe Preſents. They were all perfectly naked, of a middle Stature, and Olive Complexion. The principal Ornament about them, was a thin Gold Plate, in the Form of a Creſcent, which hung from the Noſe over the upper Lip: And the Admiral demanding by Signs, from whence they had their Gold, they pointed to the South and South-Weſt, where they gave him to underſtand, there were ſeveral large Countries repleniſhed with that Metal. The Admiral rowed in his Boats about the Iſland, to diſcover if there was any thing worth his ſettling there, being followed by the Iſlanders every where, who ſeemed to adore him and his People. From this Iſland, he ſailed to another of the *Bahama* Iſlands, which he called *St. Mary of Conception*; and, having viewed this, and ſeveral more of theſe Iſlands, he took ſeven of the Natives with him, and ſet Sail for the great Iſland of *Cuba*. Here they found ſome Houſes on the Shore, but the People all fled up into the Mountains on their Approach: Whereupon two *Spaniards* and two *Indians* were ſent up into the Country, who travelled about twelve Leagues within the Land, and came to a Town conſiſting of fifty large Timber Houſes, which contained about a thouſand People, who came with great Reſpect, and kiſſed the two *Spaniards* Feet, giving them boiled Roots to eat: Several other Towns they ſaw in their Journey, where they were hoſpitably entertained; but demanding of the Natives, if they had any Gold or precious Stones, they pointed towards the Eaſt, intimating, that in a great Country, called *Bohio*, there was Plenty of theſe Things. Whereupon the Captain taking twelve of the Natives of *Cuba* with him, ſet Sail the fifth of *December*, and arrived the next Day at the Iſland of *Bohio*, about ſixteen Leagues to the Eaſtward of *Cuba*; and obſerving the Country to reſemble that of *Spain* in ſeveral Particulars, he gave it the Name of *Hiſpaniola*, which it retains to this Day. Having ſent ſome *Indians* and *Spaniards* on Shore for Intelligence, the People at firſt abandoned their Houſes; but the *Indians* informing the Natives, that there was nothing to be feared from the *Spaniards*, they returned, and ſhewed them all imaginable Reſpect, offering them ſuch Food as the Country afforded. But what the *Spaniards* were moſt inquiſitive after, was the Place where they had their Gold from; and the People directing them farther Eaſtward, the Admiral made no long Stay at the Weſt End of the Iſland, but ſailed again along the North Coaſt, in Search of that precious Mineral. In which Voyage one of their petty Kings came on Board the Admiral, with two or three hundred Men, and they made mutual Preſents to each other: The *Indians* gave the *Spaniards* chiefly thin Gold Plates; and the Admiral returned them Beads, Toys, Carpets, and little Bells. A Night or two afterwards, the Admiral's Ship had the Misfortune to run a-ground, and could not be got off. The *Spaniards* had the good Fortune to ſave all their Goods, by the Aſſiſtance of the Cacique and his *Indians*. And to compenſate for the Loſs of his Ship, the *Indians* brought the Admiral a pretty deal of Gold, made into thin Plates, and informed him he would meet with a great deal more at *Cibao*, in the inland Country: Whereupon he built a Fort within a Harbour, which he called the *Port of the Nativity*, with the Timber of his wrecked Ship;

Ship; and leaving in it a Garriſon of thirty-nine Men, with Cannon, ſmall Arms, Ammunition, and other Neceſſaries, he determined to return to *Spain*, and give an Account of his Voyage.

The Admiral departed towards *Spain* the 16th of *January*; and meeting with a Storm the 14th of *February*, he loſt the Company of the other Ship, commanded by *Martin Pinzon*, about one hundred and fifty Leagues Weſt of the *Azores*: They all expected to have periſhed in this Storm, and went to their Prayers. In the Account *Columbus* gave of it to their Catholick Majeſties, he ſays, "I meditated on your Highneſſes good "Fortune, and conſidered, that though I were "dead, you might ſome Way reap the Fruits of "this Enterprize: As briefly as I could, there-"fore, I wrote a Narrative in Parchment of what "I had diſcovered, and that your Majeſties Sub-"jects were left in Poſſeſſion of it; which Writ-"ing, folded up and ſealed, I addreſſed to your "Highneſſes, promiſing a Reward of a thouſand "Ducats to him that ſhould deliver it to you "ſealed: Then I wrapped the Writing in an "oiled Cloth, and incloſed that in a Ball of Wax, "which I put into an empty Cask; and, having "bung'd the Cask up cloſe, threw it into the "Sea. Another Cask, with a Copy of the ſame "Writing incloſed in like Manner, I placed on "the higheſt Part of the Ship; ſo that if the Ship "ſunk, the Cask might ſtill remain above Water."

The Admiral, however, had the good Fortune to weather this Storm, and, on the 15th of *February*, made the Iſlands of *Azores*. Here finding an Hermitage dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, he ſent one half of the Ship's Crew, to perform their Devotions there; determining on their Return to go himſelf thither, with the reſt of the Company: And having waited a whole Day in Expectation of his Men, he underſtood that they were made Priſoners in the Iſland. But giving the *Portugueſe* to underſtand, that this Outrage would occaſion a War between their *Catholick* and *Portugueſe* Majeſties; and that he would make Repriſals, and carry double their Number off the Iſlands, they conſented to releaſe the *Spaniards*; who reported, that the King of *Portugal* had ſent Orders to all Places under his Dominion, that they ſhould ſecure the Perſon of the Admiral by any Means whatever.

The Admiral ſetting Sail from the *Azores*, ſoon after met with another terrible Storm, not inferior to the former, which drove him, much againſt his Will, into the River of *Lisbon* in *Portugal*: However, he was received here, contrary to his Expectations, very hoſpitably. The King of *Portugal* ordered him to be furniſhed with all Manner of freſh Proviſions *gratis*, and wrote to him, congratulating his Arrival, and inviting him to Court. On his coming on Shore, the Nobility and Officers of State were ordered to attend him, and he was admitted to ſit covered in his Majeſty's Preſence. But the King intimated, he thought the Diſcovery belonged to him, as the Admiral had reſided moſt of his Life in that Kingdom: To which the Admiral anſwered, His Majeſty did not think fit to liſten to the Overtures he had made him; that he went out with the King of *Spain*'s Commiſſion, and had punctually obſerved his Orders, not to go to the *Portugueſe* Mines in *Guinea*. After two Days, his Majeſty diſmiſſed him with great Civility, and he arrived at *Palos* in *Andaluſia*, on the 13th of *March* 1492 3, making his Voyage to the New World, and back again, in ſeven Months and eleven Days. Here the People received him with a ſolemn Proceſſion and Thankſgiving for his Return, moſt of his Seamen belonging to this Port.

Their Catholick Majeſties being at *Barcelona* at this Time, when the Admiral drew near that City, all the Court went out to meet him, and he was received with the Honours due to a Sovereign Prince. Their Majeſties confirmed to him the Viceroyſhip of all the Iſlands and Continent to the Weſtward of the *Azores* and the *Cape Verd* Iſlands, which he either had, or ſhould diſcover and conquer; empowering him to appoint all Governors, civil and military, in theſe new diſcovered *Indies*; and Orders were given for the fitting out a Fleet immediately to plant and take Poſſeſſion of thoſe Countries; in which ſuch Diligence was uſed, that the Admiral ſet Sail again, with ſeventeen Ships and fifteen hundred Men, from *Cadiz*, the twenty-fifth of *September* 1493. He touched at the *Canaries* as in the firſt Voyage; and departing from thoſe Iſlands, made one of the *Caribbee* Iſlands, when they were between ſeven hundred and fifty and eight hundred Leagues from the *Canaries*. This Iſland he named *St. Dominica*, from its being diſcovered on a *Sunday*. He then ſailed to another Iſland, which he called *Marigalante*, which was the Name of his Ship; and then to another, which he called *St. Mary of Guadalupe*, at the Requeſt of ſome Friars, who belonged to a Monaſtery of that Name in *Spain*. He found a little Town here; but the Inhabitants were all fled into the Woods, except ſome Children. The next Day his People brought off two young *Indians*, who ſaid they were not Inhabitants of that Iſland, but of another called *Boriquen*: That the Natives of *Guadalupe* were *Caribbees*, or *Canibals*, and had taken them Priſoners. The ſame Day, ſix *Indian* Women fled to the *Spaniards*, for Fear of the *Caribbees*; but the Admiral cauſed them to be ſet on Shore again, giving them Glaſs Beads, Bells, and other Things, which he thought would ſtrike the Fancies of their Maſters. They were no ſooner landed, but the *Spaniards* ſaw the *Caribbees* take theſe Toys from them. After which, the Captives came running again to their Ships Boats, begging that the *Spaniards* would take them on Board, for the *Caribbees* would eat them. And accordingly the Admiral ordered them to be brought to the Fleet, with another young Man, and two Children, that made their Eſcape alſo from the *Caribbees*. At laſt the Admiral landed, and took a particular View of their Town, and found a great deal of Cotton, ſpun and unſpun, Looms to weave Cotton-Net-Hammocks, Abundance of Men's Skulls hung up, and Baskets of Bones. Theſe were better Houſes, and more plentifully furniſhed with Proviſions, than any he ſaw in his firſt Voyage.

Weighing Anchor, he ſail'd toward the Northweſt, and came to another Iſland, to which he gave the Name of *Montſerrat*, becauſe of its great Height; and the *Indians* that were with him, informed him, that it was depopulated by the *Caribbees*, who had devoured the Inhabitants. Sailing on further Weſtward, he ſaw abundance of other Iſlands; and met with a Canoo, having four Men and a Woman in it, who fought his Boat's Crew with their Bows and Arrows; and the Boat overſetting the Canoo, one of the *Indians* ſhot ſeveral Arrows as he ſwam in the Water. The *Spaniards* obſerved that the Men were caſtrated; and were told it was uſual for the *Caribbees* to geld their Captives, that their Fleſh might reliſh the better.

Before we proceed, let us conſider a little the Account theſe Diſcoverers give us of the *Caribbees*, whom they will have to be Canibals, or Devourers of human Fleſh. From the Beginning of the World, every People almoſt has look'd upon thoſe, who were ſituated at a Di-

ſtance

ſtance from them, as *Barbarians*; and, upon the firſt Diſcovery of them, aſcrib'd abundance of unnatural Cuſtoms to them, and amongſt the reſt, frequently that of being Devourers of human Fleſh. There are ſome Iſlands that lie in the Bay of *Bengal*, which we were aſſured were inhabited by Canibals, by the firſt Adventurers to the *Eaſt-Indies*; but, upon our better Acquaintance with them, they appear to be ſo far from eating human Fleſh, that they eat no Fleſh at all. Theſe People had as barbarous Notions of us, as we could have of them, or of any others we knew but little of. On the Coaſt of *Guinea*, the unhappy Captives have a Notion we buy them up to fatten, and then feed on them. On the firſt Diſcovery of *America*, there was ſcarce a Country or Iſland in that Part of the World, but we were told was repleniſhed with Man-eaters; but, now we are perfectly well acquainted with them, it is very certain there are no Canibals to be found, any more than *Amazons*, *Giants*, or other *Monſters*, which our firſt Voyage-writers deſcribe.

Beſides, no Traveller, or Writer of Credit, will take upon him to ſay he has ever ſeen that People, that made human Fleſh their ordinary Food. It might be true enough, that the *Caribbees* ſacrificed the Men they took from other Iſlands: They might fat them too, to make the Victims the more acceptable, as we find the beſt and fatteſt Animals were always made choice of for Sacrifice. But as to the *Indians eating* theſe human Sacrifices, or *making human Fleſh their common Food*; this might be an Addition of the unhappy Captives, who look'd upon their Maſters as capable of any Barbarity, after they had ſeen them ſacrificing Men. It was from the Report and Apprehenſions of theſe Slaves, that we received the Notion of the *Caribbees* being Canibals.

To return to our Hiſtory: The Admiral arriving at *Hiſpaniola*, found that all the People he had left in the Fort were dead: That ſome of them died a natural Death; others parted from their Company, and were deſtroyed by the *Indians*; and the reſt were defeated and ſlain by a Cacique who came down from the Mountains, notwithſtanding the Cacique the Admiral had enter'd into Alliance with in the firſt Voyage, did all he could to protect them. He underſtood alſo, that the Garriſon ſoon fell into Parties and Diviſions, and had led moſt abandon'd Lives, taking four or five Women a-piece, and ſome of them by Force; which, with their Attempts to diſcover the Gold the *Indians* were poſſeſs'd of, probably haſten'd their Ruin. The Admiral going to viſit the Cacique *Guacanagari*, the *Spaniards* Ally, was preſented by him with a String of Gold Beads, a Regal Crown of Gold, and three Calabaſhes full of Gold Duſt, amounting to about Two Pound Weight of Gold; in return for which, the Admiral gave him ſome Toys, and and glittering Trifles, which the *Indians* eſteemed much more valuable.

Having obſerved other Parts of the Iſland more convenient for ſettling a Colony, than that where he built the firſt Fort, he returned with his Fleet farther Eaſtward; and, near a Mountain he had named *Monte Chriſto*, finding a commodious Harbour near the Mouth of a River, and a Rock that was a good natural Fortification, he laid out the Plan of a Town, to which he gave the Name of *Iſabella*, in honour of the Queen of *Caſtile*: And, while one Part of his Men were buſied in building this Town, another Detachment was ſent to diſcover the Country of *Ciboa*, about three or fourſcore Miles to the Southward of it, where the greateſt Plenty of Gold was to be found, according to the Information of the Natives. Receiving Advice that *Ciboa* was generally a rocky Country, pretty well repleniſh'd with Rivers, in whoſe Sands were found a pretty deal of Gold Duſt; the Admiral went thither in Perſon, in order to build a Fort there that might command the Natives; having firſt ſent twelve of his Ships back to *Spain*, and ſo diſpoſed of the reſt as to prevent a Mutiny in his Abſence: For the Adventurers, when they found there was a great deal of Labour to be undergone, before they muſt expect to accompliſh their Ends, form'd a Conſpiracy againſt the Admiral, and had even laid a Deſign to run away with the remaining Ships, and return to *Spain*.

In the Expedition to *Ciboa*, the Admiral obſerves, that the Natives were under the greateſt Conſternation when they ſaw their Horſes. They did not think themſelves ſecure, even when there was a River between them and the Horſe; for they imagin'd the Creature could fly; and, perhaps, they took the Horſe and the Rider for one Animal.

Having put the Town of *Iſabella*, and the Fort of St. *Thomas*, which he had built in *Ciboa*, in a Poſture of Defence, and left a ſufficient Body of Troops in the Country, the Admiral determin'd to go upon new Diſcoveries: Whereupon he nominated a Council of his principal Officers, in which his Brother *James Columbus* was to preſide, in his Abſence, and then ſet ſail to the Weſtward for *Cuba*. In this Voyage he met with ſeveral good Harbours and Rivers, and found the Country to be very fruitful. He alſo diſcover'd the Iſland of *Jamaica*, to the Southward of *Cuba*; which he commends as a more populous, pleaſant, and fruitful Country, than either *Cuba* or *Hiſpaniola*; and relates, that it was inhabited by a warlike People, who attack'd his Men with their Bows and Arrows, and would not permit him to make a Settlement on the Iſland: Whereupon he return'd to *Cuba*, and thence to the Town of *Iſabella* in *Hiſpaniola*, without knowing whether *Cuba* was an Iſland or Continent.

While the Admiral was abſent, Don *Peter Margarette*, to whom he had given the Command of the Flying-Army, aſpiring after the ſole Command of the Iſland, and refuſing to obey the Council; finding he could not obtain his Ends, left the Country, and tranſported himſelf to *Spain*: Whereupon his Troops diſpers'd themſelves, and, committing great Outrages, ſeveral of the Caciques aſſembled their Forces in their Defence, and cut off a great many of the *Spaniards*; but the Admiral being return'd, aſſembled his ſcatter'd Forces, and, with the Aſſiſtance of the Cacique *Guacanagari*, ſubdued all the Country under the Obedience of his Catholick Majeſty; tho', 'tis ſaid, one of the *Indian* Armies that oppoſed him conſiſted of an hundred thouſand Men; and all the Admiral's Troops, that took the Field, amounted to no more than two hundred Foot, twenty Horſe, and twenty great Dogs. Having taken *Caunabo*, the moſt powerful Cacique of the Iſland, Priſoner, he ſent him to *Spain*. This Cacique acknowledg'd, that it was he that deſtroy'd the firſt *Spaniſh* Fort, call'd *The Nativity*, and put to the Sword above twenty of the Garriſon.

The Tribute the Natives of *Ciboa* agreed to pay the *Spaniards*, was a large Horſe-Bell full of Gold Duſt, for every Head above fourteen Years of Age, once a Quarter; and the reſt were to pay twenty-five Pounds of Cotten *per* Head every three Months. And now the *Spaniards* had no Enemies remaining in the Iſland; but ſuffer'd very much from the Unhealthfulneſs of the Cli-

mate,

mate, and their frequent Mutinies againſt the Admiral were ſtill more fatal to them, and retarded their making farther Diſcoveries for ſome time. And here it may be proper to take ſome notice of the Religion and Cuſtoms of the Natives, when the *Spaniards* firſt arrived at *Hiſpaniola*.

The Religion of the Natives of *Hiſpaniola* when Columbus arrived there.

Every one of their Kings, or Caciques, (who were very numerous) had a Houſe ſet apart for their Images, which they call'd *Cemi*'s: Theſe Images were either of carv'd Wood or Stone, and the Natives pray'd to them, and perform'd ſuch Acts of Worſhip and Adorarion as the Catholicks did to their Images in their Churches: Theſe Images bore the Name of their Fathers, Grandfathers, or other more remote Anceſtors: They ſhew'd more Devotion and Reverence to ſome than they did to others, and addreſs'd themſelves to different Images on different Occaſions. But all theſe they worſhipp'd as inferior Deities, and had a much greater Veneration for the Sun, of which Planet however they made no Image.

The Cacique ſeem'd to be Chief Prieſt of his Temple, as well as Sovereign of his People; and made uſe of many holy Cheats to keep his People in Awe, and draw Money from them; cauſing Anſwers to be given as from the Mouth of the Image addreſs to.

They had various Ways of diſpoſing of their Dead: Some they buried in Caves; others they burnt in the Houſes where they died; but their Caciques and great Men were embowel'd and dry'd.

After Death, they apprehended they ſhould paſs to ſome delightful Plains, where they ſhould meet with their Anceſtors, Kindred, and Friends, and enjoy all the Pleaſures that Food, Women, or the moſt charming Situation could afford. And, laſtly, they had Phyſicians amongſt them that adminiſter'd medicinal Herbs, Roots, and Plants to their Patients; but pretended to effect the Cure chiefly by Magick, or the Aſſiſtance of Demons.

Columbus, having ſettled the Government of the Iſland, and built three New Fortreſſes, to preſerve his Conqueſt, thought fit to return to *Spain*; for he found ſo many Ill Offices had been done him by his Enemies, that the Court of *Spain* neglected to ſend him any farther Reinforcements, to enable him to extend his Diſcoveries. He ſet Sail on the 10th of *March*, the Wind being directly againſt him, and made it the 9th of *June* before he came upon the Coaſt of *Spain*, being near three Months after his leaving the Town of *Iſabella*.

The Admiral, attending their Catholick Majeſties at *Burgos*, preſented them with ſuch Foreign Plants and Animals as he judg'd would be moſt acceptable to them, and with ſome Gold plate, and Gold-duſt, but in no great Quantities. He was in Appearance graciouſly received: But the Court were much diſappointed that they received little more than Trifles for all the Expence they had been at; they expected to have entered immediately on Mountains of Gold, and to have loaden their Ships home with it; whereas they could not yet hear of any Mines that were opened, and met only with ſmall Quantities of the Duſt that was waſhed down from the Mountains, or in the Sands of the Rivers. This, with the Practices of the Admiral's Enemies, who inſinuated that he was not equal to the great Work he had undertaken, very much abated the Zeal of the *Spaniſh* Court for ſupporting and enlarging their Diſcoveries in the New World.

The Admiral, after near two Year's Attendance at the Court of *Spain*, having, at length, procured ſix Ships, ſet ſail on the 30th of *May* 1498, for *America* again, and in his Way touch'd at the *Maderas*. He afterwards made the Iſland of *Fero*, the moſt Weſterly of the *Canaries*, from whence he bent his Courſe toward the Iſlands of *Cape Verd*. Here he touch'd again; and, having taken in ſome Refreſhments, held on his Courſe to the South-weſt, till he came into five Degrees North Latitude; but meeting here with Calms, and abundance of Thunder and Lightening, he was deterred from ſailing any further to the South, and bent his Courſe to the North-weſt till he came into ſeven Degrees North Latitude, and then he ſteer'd due Weſt; which Courſe having continued ſome Days, he diſcovered a large Iſland on the firſt of *Auguſt*, to which he gave the Name of *The Trinity*, which lies near the Mouth of the River *Oroonoko* in *South America*; and in a Day or two after, he made the Continent of *Paria* or *Guiana*, now called *Nue-Andaluſia*, lying about ſeven Degrees South of *Barbadoes*.

The Admiral going on Shore on the 5th of *Auguſt*, bartered away ſome Trifles with the Natives of *Paria*, and obſerved they were whiter than thoſe of *Hiſpaniola*; that the Men wore their Hair long, and had little Aprons and Caps of Cotton-Linen; that the Women wore little Gold-plates and Chains of Pearl about their Necks, but had no Aprons or Covering for their Nudities; and that they were generally a harmleſs inoffenſive People.

Having ſpent about a Fortnight upon the Coaſt of *Paria*, he ſet ſail directly for *Hiſpaniola*, and arrived at St. *Domingo*, a Town that his Brother had built, and ſo named in memory of their Father *Dominick*. The continual Labour and Watchings the Admiral had endured, made the Sight of *Hiſpaniola* very acceptable to him, where he hoped to have enjoyed ſome Eaſe and Satisfaction; but to his great Mortification he found the Iſland in the utmoſt Diſtraction: He had left his Brother his Lieutenant, and one *Francis Roldan*, a *Spaniard*, in the Quality of Chief Juſtice, who agreed pretty well for the firſt Year after the Admiral's Return to *Spain*; but there being no News what was become of him, and generally believed he was loſt, *Roldan* began to entertain Thoughts of ſetting up for himſelf, and expelling the Admiral's Brothers from the Iſland. He had made ſuch a Party among the *Spaniards* and *Indians*, as had very near occaſioned a general Revolt. It was with a great deal of Difficulty, therefore, that *James Columbus* preſerved Part of the Iſland under his Obedience, till the Admiral returned: Nor could he himſelf accommodate the Matter, till he conſented to confirm *Roldan* perpetual Chief Juſtice of the Iſland.

And now applying himſelf to the digging of the Gold Mines, he found ſuch Plenty of that Metal, that one Man frequently got five Marks of Gold in a Day's time. But in the mean time his Enemies appeared too hard for him in the Court of *Spain*, by the malicious Stories they tranſmitted thither. They repreſented him to the King, as ambitious, covetous, and tyrannical; that he had no true Notions of Government, and uſed both *Spaniards* and *Indians* as Slaves; that he poſſeſs'd himſelf of vaſt Treaſures, while he conceal'd the richeſt Mines from the King's Officers: His Majeſty therefore ſent over *Francis Bovadilla*, a *Spaniſh* Knight, to *Hiſpaniola*, to enquire into the Admiral's Conduct, giving him Authority to apprehend him, and ſend him to *Spain*, if he thought fit. He ſent a

Letter alſo to the Admiral himſelf, commanding him to obey this new Governor.

Columbus, on the Arrival of *Bovadilla*, ſurrendered himſelf upon the firſt Summons, believing that on his repreſenting his Caſe to the King and Queen of *Spain*, he ſhould be reſtored to his Command. But the inſolent *Bovadilla* made the moſt of his Commiſſion. He immediately took Poſſeſſion of the Admiral's Palaces, and all his Effects, and clapping him and his Brother in Irons, ſent them both Priſoners to *Spain*. However, their Majeſties no ſooner heard of the Admiral's Arrival, but they ſent Orders to releaſe him, and invite him to Court; aſſuring him that his Eſtate ſhould be reſtored, and he ſhould be continued in the Command of all he had diſcovered. But notwithſtanding *Columbus* had the Titles of Admiral and Viceroy of the *Indies* continued to him, he appears to have been actually deprived of his Government of *Hiſpaniola*, and another was ſent thither in his room; which the Admiral ſo much reſented, that he had determined to retire, and lead a private Life. But the King conſidering what Diſhonour the laying the Admiral aſide might reflect upon him, perſuaded *Columbus* to put to Sea again, veſted with the like Power he had conferred on him in his former Voyages.

Accordingly the Admiral ſet ſail from *Cadiz* with four Ships, from 50 to 70 Tun, and 140 Men, on the 9th of *May*, 1502. He arriv'd at *Martinico*, the 15th of *June*, and the latter End of the ſame Month came before St. *Domingo*, in *Hiſpaniola*, but was not ſuffered to enter that Port, tho' moſt of his Eſtate and Effects lay thereabouts, and he had repreſented to the Governor, that one of his Ships was much damaged, and he apprehended a Storm. However, he had the good Fortune to get into a little Creek in the Iſland, where he weather'd a very terrible Storm, in which *Bovadilla*, his great Enemy, and fourteen Ships loaden with Treaſure, and bound for *Spain*, periſhed.

Columbus, after the Storm was over, left the Coaſt of *Hiſpaniola*, and ſailing to the Weſtward, arriv'd at the Iſland of *Guayana*, in the Gulph of *Honduras*, where he met with a Canoo as long as a Galley, and eight Foot wide, made of one Tree; which being loaden with Merchandize, and having twenty-five Men, and ſeveral Women and Children on board, bound for the Coaſt of *Mexico*, he made them Priſoners: He found on board the Canoo ſeveral large Pieces of Cotton-Linen, Quilts, and quilted Waiſtcoats, without Sleeves, finely wrought, and dyed of ſeveral Colours. The Women wrapp'd themſelves up in Pieces of Cotton-Linen, or had Cloths of the Bigneſs of Handkerchiefs to cover their Nudities: There were found alſo on board the Canoo, wooden Swords, edg'd with Flints, and Hatchets made of Copper: They had alſo Bells, Plates, and Crucibles of Copper to melt their Metal in. Their Proviſions were Maize, or *Indian* Corn, ſeveral Sorts of Roots, and Cocoa-Nuts.

The Admiral having taken out of the Canoo ſuch Things as he lik'd, and given the *Indians* *European* Goods in return, he diſmiſs'd the Canoo, and all the People in it, except one old Man, whom he detained to inform him of the State of the neighbouring Continent, and to ſerve him for an Interpreter among the Natives. He learn'd, that to the South-eaſt of *Honduras* was a narrow Strait, that led to a vaſt Ocean, which the Admiral determined to ſearch out, that over that Sea he might find a Way to the *Eaſt-Indies*: But the Misfortune was, that the ſame Word which ſignified a Strait by Sea, ought to have been, on that Occaſion, interpreted an Iſthmus by Land. This Miſtake cauſed the Admiral an infinite deal of Trouble and Fatigue; for upon this Intelligence he returned to the Eaſtward, labouring againſt the Trade-winds and Currents, which conſtantly ſit to the Weſtward in the North Sea. The People of this Coaſt adorn'd their Necks, Ears, and Noſes, with thin Gold-plates; and thoſe hung at their Ears ſtretched them to ſuch a prodigious Size, that the Admiral gave the Coaſt of *Honduras* the Name of *De las Orejas*, or, *The Country of Ears*.

Sailing along this Coaſt to the Eaſtward, he came to a *Cape*, which he named *Gracias a Dios*; or, *Thanks be to God*; becauſe he was no longer obliged to ſtruggle againſt the Winds and Currents; for here the Coaſt bending to the South, he continued his Voyage without any Difficulty, by the Aſſiſtance of the Eaſterly Trade-winds. The People here were very jealous, that the *Spaniards* had ſome Deſign upon their Country, and came down armed, in great Numbers, as if they intended to diſpute their Landing: But afterwards, finding the *Spaniards* only wanted to trade with them, they became more tractable, and exchanged Cotton-Linen, and Plates of Gold, for ſome *European* Toys. But one of the Admiral's People taking out a Pen and Ink, and beginning to write down his Obſervations on the People and Country, the Natives immediately fled, and left all the Things behind them they had received of the *Spaniards*. It is remarkable alſo, that here the *Spaniards* met with ſeveral dead Bodies enbalm'd, and wrapp'd in Cotton Sheets, and ſo perfectly dry, that they had no manner of ill Scent.

The Admiral continuing his Voyage to the Eaſtward, came to a large commodious Harbour, to which he gave the Name of *Porto Bello*, which it retains to this Day. Here he met with a great many *Indian* Houſes well inhabited; and, on the Iſlands near the Shore, he found a great deal of *Indian* Corn, and other Refreſhments, from whence he gave thoſe Iſlands the Name of the *Baſtimento's*, or, *The Iſlands of Proviſion*. Here underſtanding that there were Gold Mines in the Province of *Veragua*, which lies to the Weſtward of *Terra-Firma*, he returned again to that Coaſt, where he met with ſuch ſtormy Weather, that it almoſt deſtroyed his Ships, and reduced his Men to Deſpair: But the Weather favouring him at length, he ſent ſome Men aſhore in Search of the Gold he had heard ſo much of, and they had the Satisfaction of gathering ſome Gold, at the Roots of Trees, and near the Surface of the Earth; which made the Admiral determine to ſettle a Colony in *Veragua*, and leave his Brother Governor of it.

Accordingly he built a little Town and Fort, in which he left his Brother, and a Garriſon of eighty Men, ſupplying them with Arms, Ammunition, and Proviſions: But before he ſet Sail, he ordered his Brother to make the Cacique of that Part of the Country, with his Family, and the principal Natives, Priſoners; which he did, and ſent them on Board the *Spaniſh* Ships: But moſt of the Priſoners jumping into the Sea, and making their Eſcapes, raiſed the whole Country upon the *Spaniards*; and killing ſome, and wounding others, obliged them to quit their new Settlement. After this unfortunate Rencounter, the Admiral ſet Sail in a miſerable ſhattered Condition, and arrived again at *Porto Bello*. From *Porto Bello*, he directed his North Courſe, and on *Midſummer-Day* arrived at *Jamaica*, his two remaining Ships ſo leaky, that they found it almoſt impoſſible to keep them above Water till they got

to

to Shore: Whereupon they run them both aground, in a small Creek, close together, about a Musket-Shot from Land, where they shored them up with Timber, and lived on Board them above a Year, trafficking with the Country People for Provisions.

In the mean time, the Admiral sent some of his Crew to *Hispaniola*, in open Canoes, to get Ships to carry him and his Company off. But the Governor, who was an Enemy to the Admiral, delayed sending Ships so long, that his People mutiny'd, and one Half of them went on Shore in the Island, where they committed great Outrages, till the Admiral fought them, and reduced them to their Duty by Force, many of the *Spaniards* being killed on both Sides in the Engagement. At length, the Admiral's People having fitted out a Ship, at his Charge, in the Island of *Hispaniola*, they came back to *Jamaica*, and brought the Admiral off, after he had spent above a Year there, in great Distress, and lain most of the Time Bed rid with the Gout. The Admiral arrived at *St. Domingo*, in *Hispaniola*, the thirteenth of *August*, 1504; and, having settled his Affairs in this Island, returned to *Spain*, where his Catholick Majesty received him, in Appearance, very graciously; but was contriving, at the same Time, to deprive him of most of the Advantages he had stipulated to allow him: For his great Patroness, Queen *Isabella*, was now dead, and most of the Court envied him the Wealth and Honour he had acquired. But, notwithstanding the strictest Scrutiny his Enemies could make, it does not appear that any thing was fixed upon him, that could sully his Character, unless it was his too great Zeal to serve the ungrateful *Spaniard*. But he, as well as the rest of the Popish World, it seems, was then of Opinion, that all Infidel Nations ought of Right to become Slaves to the Christians. These Notions he certainly went upon, or he could not, with any Colour of Justice, have subdued *Hispaniola*, and made the *Indians* Captives, who received him as a Friend.

And what was the End of all this mighty Discovery in Regard to himself? He was indeed, at first, highly caressed and honoured, his Family ennobled, and vastly enriched: But if we consider the infinite Hazards and Labours he underwent, and that he saw himself at last about to be deprived of the Reward of so many Years Toil; we cannot wonder it had an Effect upon his Health, which the numerous Hardships he had suffered had already greatly impaired: It is rather to be admired he struggled so long under a Train of Calamities, of which the Ingratitude of the *Spaniards* was not the least. This, it appears, sat heavy upon him; and being retired to the City of *Valadolid*, we find he there left this Life for a better, on the 20th of *May*, 1506. After his Death, indeed, his Catholick Majesty was so just to this great Man, as to bury him magnificently in the Cathedral of *Seville*, and to erect a Tomb to his Memory, with this Inscription: THAT COLUMBUS HAD GIVEN A NEW WORLD TO CASTILE AND LEON.

From this Relation it appears, that the Admiral in Person discovered the *Lucayo's* or *Bahama* Islands; the great Islands of *Cuba*, *Hispaniola*, and *Porto Rico*, with several of the *Caribbee* Islands; the Countries of *Paria*, and *Guiana*, in *South America*; and the Island of *Trinity*: That he also discovered *Yucatana*, the Province of *Mexico*, the Bay of *Honduras*, and all that Coast which runs South-East from thence, as far as *Porto Bello*, and the River or Gulph of *Darien*, and received Intelligence of that vast Ocean, which has since obtained the Name of the *South-Sea*: So that all who afterwards extended the Discoveries of the *Spaniards* in the New World, only improved what the great *Columbus* had begun; and yet one of them, *Americus Vesputius*, had the good Fortune to give his Name to that vast Continent.

Americus Vesputius the second Discoverer.

The Enemies of *Columbus* having given the Court of *Spain* an ill Opinion of him, they employed this *Americus Vesputius*, a *Florentine*, in the Year 1497, to improve and enlarge the Discoveries begun by that great Man: But however fortunate this Gentleman might be in making Discoveries, he gives the lamest Account of them, of any Man that ever was employed in such an Undertaking. He says, he touched at the *Canaries* in this Voyage, and, having sailed a thousand Leagues to the Westward, arrived at a Country situated in sixteen Degrees of North Latitude, which must be some of the *Caribbee* Islands: He sailed near nine hundred Leagues further Westward afterwards, and came to a Country, which, by the Latitude and Distance to the Westward, seems to be Part of *Mexico*. He did not attempt to make Settlements any where, but satisfied himself with having trafficked with some of the *Indians* for Trifles, and fought with others.

He made another Voyage in the following Year 1498; and sailing to the South-West, passed the *Equator*, and came to a Country in five Degrees of South Latitude; which, in all Likelihood, was *Surinam*, in the Province of *Guiana*. Here he traded with the Natives for Pearl, and some Gold, which they exchanged for Glass and Toys, and returned Home by *Antegoa*, one of the Leeward Islands.

Emanuel, King of *Portugal*, afterwards entertained *Americus Vesputius* in his Service; and, in *May* 1501, he sailed from *Lisbon* with three Ships; and, coming again upon the Eastern Continent of *America*, in five Degrees of South Latitude, he sailed afterwards along that Coast to the Southward, till he came into fifty-two Degrees of South Latitude, when the cold and tempestuous Weather obliged him to return Home. Thus having discovered a Continent in the New World, little inferior in Dimensions to that of the Old, he was so happy as to give his Name to the whole, which, from him, has ever since gone under the Name of *America*.

The next, or rather a Contemporary Discoverer with *Americus Vesputius*, was *Cabot*, an *Italian* also, or at least of *Italian* Extraction. This Gentleman was employed by King *Henry* VII. to find out a Passage to *China*, and the *East-Indies* by the North-West; and accordingly he set out from *England*, in the Year 1498, and sailed along the Continent of *America*, to 67 Degrees of Northern Latitude; but his Men murmuring at the Hardships they underwent in that cold Climate, he returned Home, bringing with him only some of the Savage Natives of those frozen Regions.

Thus have we seen the vast Continent of *America* discovered, from 67 Degrees North Latitude to 52 South, within the Compass of about ten Years; but the *Spaniards* did not penetrate far into the Inland Country, till some Years afterwards.

Vasco Nunnes Discoveries.

The next considerable Discoverer, was *Vasco Nunnes de Balboa*, who made an entire Conquest of *Cuba*, and found it to be an Island: Then he sailed to the River of *Darien*, on the Isthmus of *America*, where *Columbus* had attempted to make a Settlement, but was driven from it. Here *Vasco* built a Fort and Town, which he named *Sancta Maria del Antigua*, or *Old St. Mary's*; and cultivating a Correspondence with the Caciques thereabouts, they shewed him the Way to the *South-Sea*; and though it was not more than three or fourscore Miles from the one Sea to the other,

other, yet their Way lay over such craggy Precipices, and was incumbered with such thick Woods, that they travelled twenty-five Days before they came in Sight of the *South-Sea*: And there *Vasco*, upon the highest Mountain, erected Crosses, and took Possession of the Country for their Catholick Majesties; as he did soon after of the *South-Sea* itself, and of all its Coasts and Bays, for the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*, in the Year 1513: He afterwards erected the Fortress of *Panama* on the *South-Sea*, and fitted out a Fleet to make further Discoveries on that Ocean; for which Services the Court of *Spain* made him Governor of *Cuba* and *Panama*, and Admiral of the *South-Seas*. But the King of *Spain* sending over *Pedrarias*, Viceroy of *Darien* and the Continent, with a superior Command to that of *Vasco Nunnes*, the Viceroy took an Opportunity to pick a Quarrel with *Vasco*, and caused him to be put to Death under a Colour of Law.

The next great Discoverer and Conqueror, was *Fernando Cortez*, who began the Conquest of *Mexico* in the Year 1518; of which we shall give an Account in this Work. *Fernando Cortez's Discoveries and Conquest of Mexico.*

The famous *Magellan*, in 1520, discovered the *Streights*, to which he gave his Name, in *South America*; from whence he sailed through the *South-Sea* to the *East-Indies*, being the first Commander that attempted that Passage: His Ship surrounded the Globe, and returned safe Home, though he had the Misfortune to be killed in an Island of the *East-Indies*. *Magellan's Discoveries.*

The last Discoverers I shall mention in this Introduction, are *Francis Pizarro*, *Don Diego de Almargo*, and *Fernando de Luque*, who, in Confederacy or Partnership, undertook the Discovery of *Peru*, from *Panama* by Sea, in the Year 1525, and afterwards made a Conquest of great Part of that extensive Empire: Of all which Discoveries and Conquests, the Reader will meet with a proper Account in the following History. *Pizarro and his Discoveries and Conquests.*

CHAP. II.

A Description of Mexico; *its Situation and Extent; the Face of the Country; its Seas, Gulphs, Capes, Lakes, Rivers, Winds, Tides, Air, and Seasons.*

The Name.

THE Natives of this New World had no general Name for their Country when the *Spaniards* arrived amongst them; but the most considerable Empire in *North America*, went under the Name of *Mexico*, and that in the South, under the Name of *Peru*. *Americus Vesputius* had the Honour first of communicating his Name to the whole Continent, as has been observed already.

The Situation and Extent of *Mexico*.

Mexico, the first Country in *America* we shall describe, is bounded by *New Mexico* or *Granada*, and *Florida*, on the North; by the Gulph of *Mexico*, and the North Sea, on the North East; by *Terra Firma Proper*, in *South America*, on the South-East; and by the *Pacifick* Ocean, or *South-Sea*, on the South-West; and lies between seven Degrees and twenty-eight Degrees of North Latitude; and between the eighty-third and 116th Degrees of Western Longitude, stretching along the *South-Sea* two thousand Miles and upwards; and on the North Sea, and the Gulph of *Mexico*, more than fifteen hundred Miles: But the Breadth is very unequal; for upon the Continent of *New Mexico*, it is upwards of six hundred Miles broad; and in the Province of *Veragua*, at the narrowest Part of the Isthmus, it is very little more than sixty Miles broad; and the Form is so irregular, that it can only be comprehended by the View of a Map.

The Face of the Country.

Mexico is much incumbered with Mountains, for the most Part covered with Woods: A Chain of Hills, higher than usual, run almost the whole Length of it, from the South-East to the North-West: From these we descend to other Hills, on either Side considerably lower; and between the Hills, are many fine fruitful Valleys, but scarce any Plains of a considerable Extent. Which Way soever we turn our Eyes, the Prospect is bounded by Hills and Woods, till we come near the Seas: But the Lands near the Sea Coast, especially on the North Sea, are so flat and low, that they lie under Water great Part of the rainy Season. And upon these Morasses and Bogs, are Thickets of *Bambou* Canes, Mangroves, Thorns and Briars, so closely knit and interwoven, that it is almost impossible to penetrate them, without cutting a Way through with a Hatchet. There are, indeed, some sandy Bays, where it is tolerable landing; but there is much more of the Mangrove Land, where a Man must wade up to the Middle in Mud, before he can get to dry Ground. Beyond the Mangroves, indeed, we meet with fine Meadows, lying between little rising Hills; and near the Gulph of *California*, the Mountains come almost close to the Shore, and there is none of those Morasses or Mangrove Lands. The Mountains on the West Side of *Mexico* are most of them Vulcanoes, from whence Fire and Smoke are perpetually issuing. Upon these Mountains there is a great Variety of fine large Timber, and little or no Underwood; a Man may ride through them without any Difficulty.

The Seas of *Mexico*, are, either the Gulph of *Mexico* and the North Sea, or the *Pacific* Sea. In the Gulph of *Mexico*, lies the famous Bay of *Campeachy*, where the greatest Quantities of Logwood are cut. And between *Jucatan* and *Honduras*, is the Gulph of *Honduras*. The chief Capes in these Seas, are, 1. *Cape Condecaco*. 2. *Cape Catoch*. 3. *Cape Honduras*. 4. *Cape Cameron*; and, 5. *Cape Gratia Dios*. In the *Pacific Ocean*, are the Gulph of *Salinas*, or *Nicoya*, and the Gulph of *Amapalla*; and the Capes are, *Cape Blanco*, and *Cape Corientes*. *The Bay of Campeachy and the Gulphs of Honduras and Amapalla.*

The chief Lakes are, 1. that of *Nicaragua*, which has a Communication with the North Sea, and extends almost to the *South-Sea*: And, 2. the Lake of *Mexico*, in which the Metropolis stands. The principal Rivers, are, those which fall into the North Sea, and those which fall into the South Sea: Of the first are, 1. The North River. 2. The River of *Panuco*, or *Tompeque*. 3. The River *Alvarado*. 4. *Tobasco* River. 5. The River *Xagua*, and, 6. The River *Dara*. These Rivers are moderately large, and would be navigable for great Ships, if they were not choaked up with Bars of Sand at their Entrance. However, Boats and *The Lakes and Rivers.*

and small Vessels may enter them. The chief Rivers which fall into the *South-Sea*, are, 1. *Rosario*. 2. The River *Teguantipique*; and, 3. The River *Lempa*. As to hot Baths and medicinal Springs, *Mexico* abounds with them; especially those Places which lie near the burning Mountains.

In every Ocean, the Wind continually blows from East to West, between the Latitudes of thirty North and South; only to the Northward of the *Equator*, it inclines North-East, and to the Southward of the *Equator*, South-East; to which Rule there is only this Exception, That under the Line, and for two or three Degrees on each Side, the Winds are variable, and perpetually changing; and sometimes there is so little Wind, and such Calms, under the Line, that a Ship shall not sail a League in a Month's Time. However, upon every Coast almost, within the Latitude of thirty North or South, there are other periodical Winds and Storms, that return at certain Seasons of the Year, called *Munsoons:* And there are, during the fair Season, Land and Sea Breezes, which constantly take their Turns at stated Hours every Day, and particularly upon the North and South Coast of *Mexico*.

Munsoons, Sea and Land Breezes.

The Land Breezes begin here late in the Evening, and blow till six or seven the next Morning, when they die away insensibly; and from that Time, till near Noon, it is generally calm: About Noon, the Sea Breeze rises, and refreshes the Inhabitants, who would, otherwise, faint with Heat. The Forenoon therefore is much the hottest Time of the Day within the Tropicks. But the Land Winds are not hot in *Mexico*, as they are in the *East-Indies*, where they blow over a long Tract of burning Sand: On the contrary, the Winds which blow from the Middle of the Country, are colder than those that come from the Sea.

The rainy Season, which begins usually in *May*, and lasts till *September*, is introduced with Thunder and Lightening, Tornadoes and Hurricanes, when the Wind blows almost from every Point of the Compass: But the worst Weather is in *June* and *July*. There are also strong North Winds that blow in the Gulph of *Mexico*, and in the Bays of *Campeachy* and *Honduras*, between the Months of *October* and *March*, about the Full and Change of the Moon, and are most violent in *December* and *January*.

Storms.

As to Tides, there are no Places in the Ocean without them; but they rise highest, and run strongest, in narrow Channels, Bays, and Creeks, or up the Mouths of Rivers; and that on such Coasts as have no Bays or Rivers, the Tides are but weak, and scarce perceptible. As the Sun approaches either of the Tropicks, it carries wet Weather so far with it; and when it is farthest from either Tropick, then the Weather is fair under that Tropick. On the contrary, those People who live without the Tropicks, have their fair fair Weather when the Sun is nearest them, and wet Weather when it is at the greatest Distance from them. These Rains, which overflow all the flat Country, the Land and Sea Breezes, that blow alternately, and their numerous Lakes, render the Air cool, and make even the *Torrid Zone* habitable and pleasant. The coolest Part of the Year is in the Months of *July* and *August*, when the Natives really complain of Cold Morning and Evening, as they do in the succeeding Months till *February*; though the Weather then seems very moderate to a *European* Constitution. The hottest Time of the Year is in *February*, *March*, and the Beginning of *April*; for then the Sun is seldom obscured by Clouds, the Waters are dry'd up, and it is very difficult to meet with fresh Water in some Places.

Tides.

Wet and dry Seasons.

Temperature of the Air.

The chief Season for sowing, or rather planting, their *Indian* Corn, though it will grow and come to Maturity at any Time almost, is in *May* and *June*; and they reap it in *October*, when the Rains are over. Their Trees are ever green, and their Fruits blossom and ripen almost all the Year round.

Seed-Time and Harvest.

CHAP. III.

Of the Provinces Mexico *is divided into, its Subdivisions, and chief Towns, with their publick and private Buildings and Furniture.*

Provinces.

MEXICO, or *New Spain*, is divided into three Audiences. 1. the Audience of *Guadalajara*, or *New Galicia*. 2. the Audience of *Mexico*: And, 3. the Audience of *Guatimala*.

Guadalajara Audience.

The Audience of *Guadalajara*, is bounded by *New Mexico* on the North-West, by the Gulph of *Mexico* on the East, by the Audience of *Mexico* on the South-East, and by the *South-Sea* and the Gulph of *California* on the South-West; and is subdivided into the following seven Provinces; *viz.* The Province of *Guadalajara Proper*; which is a plentiful Country, and hath several Silver Mines in it. The chief Town is *Guadalajara*, situated on a River of the same Name. It is the Capital of the whole Audience, the Seat of their Courts of Justice, and a Bishop's See. There are several Churches in it besides the Cathedral, and some Monasteries and Nunneries. 2. The Province of *Zacatecas*: The chief Towns whereof are, *Zacatecas*, situated about fourscore Leagues North-West of the City of *Mexico*; a Town in which the *Spaniards* keep a good Garrison: *Nombre de Dios*, a large, populous Town; and *Durango*, situated at the Conflux of several Rivers. The East Part of this Province has Plenty of Corn and Fruit, and the West is no less famous for its Silver Mines. 3. The Province of *New Biscay*: The chief Towns whereof are, *St. Barbara*, and *St. John's*: This Province also is rich in Silver Mines. 4. The Province of *Cinoloa*: The chief Town whereof, is *Cinoloa*. In this Province are rich Pasture Grounds, well watered, and great Plenty of Cotton. 5. The Province of *Culiacan*: The chief Town whereof is *Culiacan*. 6. The Province of *Chametlan*: The chief Town whereof is *St. Sebastian*, situated on a River of the same Name. This Province hath both Gold and Silver Mines in it. 7. The Province of *Xalisco*: The chief Towns whereof are, *Xalisco*, situated near the *South Sea*; *Compostella*, situated also near the *South-Sea*, and a rich Town; and *Santa Peaque*, where the *Spaniards* of *Compostella* keep a great many Hundreds of Slaves, that work in their Silver Mines.

Guadalajara Province.

Zacatecas Province.

New Biscay Province.

Cinoloa Province.

Culiacan Province.

Chametlan Province.

Xalisco Province.

Mexico Audience

The Audience of *Mexico* is bounded by that of *Guadalajara* on the North-West, by the Gulph of *Mexico* on the East, by the Audience of *Guatimala* on the South-East, and by the *South-Sea* on the South-West: And contains nine Provinces, *viz.*

Mexico Proper.

1. The Province of *Mexico Proper*; which is said to exceed all the Provinces of *America*, in spacious Valleys, arable Lands, Pasturage, Variety of Fruits, Plenty of excellent Fish, and Trade, both Foreign and Domestick. The chief Towns

Mexico City.

are, 1. *Mexico*, the Metropolis of the whole Viceroyalty now, and anciently of the Empire of *Mexico*, situated in a spacious Lake, that lies on the East Side of a Valley, about fourteen *Spanish* Leagues in Length, seven in Breadth, and upwards of forty in Compass; being surrounded by very high Mountains on all Sides.

The Town is a perfect Square, each Side half a League. There is a great Square in the Middle of it, from whence the Streets run quite through the Town in a direct Line, crossing each other at Right Angles. They are all wide, and well paved, but generally dirty. The Town stands, great Part of it, upon a Bog or Morass; and there are so many Rivers that fall from the Mountains into the Lake, that the Town is often in Danger of being overflowed, many of the Houses and Inhabitants having been actually swept away by Floods. By Reason of this Situation, the natural Strength of the City is great, there being no approaching it but by five Causeys that have been made between the City and the main Land. The Churches and Houses are built of Stone or Brick, three Stories high, where the Ground will bear it. *Mexico* is an Archbishoprick; and there are in it, besides the Cathedral and Parochial Churches, twenty-nine Monasteries, and two and twenty Nunneries; and it contains, as is computed, about one hundred thousand Inhabitants. But the *Spaniards* do not make a tenth Part of the Inhabitants; the Bulk of the People being Blacks or Mulattoes: For there having been Abundance of Black Slaves brought thither, who, by one Means or other, obtained their Freedom, and married with the Natives, their Descendants are very numerous. There is also a strange Mixture of *Spanish* and *Indian* Blood. Their Churches and Monasteries are proportionably rich and splendid, and their Revenues surprisingly great. The Cathedral is built in Form of a Cross, lofty and spacious; the Painting, Gilding, and Carving exquisite; and it contains Abundance of fine Altars and Chapels on each Side, the High Altar standing in the Middle of the Choir. The Revenues belonging to it are equal to the Beauty and Magnificence of the Buildings. The Archbishop's constant annual Revenue, (besides casual Fines, which amount to near as much) is near fifteen thousand Pounds Sterling *per Annum*; and the inferior Ecclesiasticks, Officers, and Attendants, have in Proportion. All the Ecclesiasticks belonging to this Church are three hundred in Number; and the entire annual Revenue of this Cathedral amounts to three hundred thousand Pieces of Eight, each Piece four Shillings and six Pence *English*.

What is most remarkable besides in *Mexico*, is the spacious Market Place, or Square in the Middle of the Town; on one Side whereof runs a Cloister, under which are some of the richest Shops in the World; and on the other, stands the magnificent Palace of the Viceroy, built about a large Square; the principal Front not inferior to that of *Naples*, in which the Courts of Justice are held. The Palace of the Marquis *de Valle*, the Successor of *Cortez* who conquered *Mexico* is built on the Ground where one of the Palaces of the Emperor *Montezuma* stood, and admired for its Dimensions and Structure.

There are in *Mexico* several Hospitals richly endowed; one for young Maids that are Orphans, who are maintained handsomely while they live single, and allowed five hundred Pieces of Eight each when they marry; another for those who have been unfortunate in venereal Encounters, which is a royal Foundation; and there is a third Hospital only for sick Priests. In this rich City there are a Multitude of wretched Objects; but none poorer than the *Spaniards* themselves, who are above working, though not above thieving.

The several Trades have their respective Streets or Quarters. There is a spacious Street, where the Goldsmiths expose their Goods to Sale; and here are to be seen the Value of many Millions in Gold, Silver, and Jewels. The Street where the Mercers expose their Silks, has a very grand Appearance; and the Street where those Tradesmen reside that deal in Brass, Steel, and Iron Ware, is very long and spacious: But the Street inhabited by the Nobility, Gentry, and great Lawyers, excels all the rest in Magnificence. Here are no Tradesmen's Shops intermixed, and here stands the Marquis *de Valle*'s fine Palace.

There is also a pleasant Park, well planted, and adorned with Fountains and Water-Works; whither the Quality of both Sexes, and the gay Part of the Town, resort every Evening. Several Hundreds of Coaches are frequently seen here, with numerous Retinues of black Slaves, in the richest Liveries. Another Diversion of the Citizens is fishing in Boats upon the Lake, whither they carry Wine and cold Provisions to regale themselves. This Lake is about five Leagues in Length, from North to South; but the Breadth is very unequal; the greatest something more than four Leagues; but the North End scarce half so broad. North of this Lake there are three others, which have a Communication with it by Rivers or Canals; and on the South there are two other Lakes, divided from it only by a Causey. The Waters of these Lakes are not fit for all Uses; one of them is so salt, that they make Salt of the Waters: And the Water they drink is brought from a Mountain that lies a good Distance from the Town, by a spacious Aqueduct. The Neighbourhood of *Mexico* is rendered extremely pleasant, by the numerous Palaces, Country-Seats, Monasteries, and Villages, either on the Islands, or on the Banks of the several Lakes.

The Lakes of Mexico.

Acapulco, a Sea Port Town

The second Town in *Mexico Proper* is *Acapulco*, a celebrated Port, about two hundred and forty Miles to the Southward of *Mexico*. At this Port all the Merchandize of *Europe* and *America* is ship'd for *China*, the *East-Indies*, and *Peru*; and here the Ships annually arrive with the Merchandize of those Countries; which makes the Fair that is held here at that Time one of the greatest in the World. But though it is then crowded with wealthy Merchants, it has at other Times the Appearance of a mean Village. Except the Castle and the Harbour, there is little worth Notice; the Town consisting of only two or three hundred thatched Houses, inhabited by Blacks and Mulattoes; a religious Cloister or two, and an Hospital. The *Spaniards* therefore, and even the Governor himself, desert the Place as soon as the Fair is over. The Harbour indeed is an excellent one, very secure and spacious. The Governor of the Castle, who is the chief Civil Magistrate in this Part of the Country, makes his Post worth twenty thousand Pieces of Eight *per Annum*, arising chiefly from the Profits of the Fair. The Comptroller of the Customs makes little less; and the Parson of the Place, whose stated Revenue is no more than one hundred and

eighty

eighty Pieces of Eight, makes fourteen thousand frequently; for he extorts most extravagant Fees from the Friends of such rich Merchants as die there. Two Leagues to the Southward of this Place is another Port, called *Port Marquis*, where Shipping sometimes puts in. At *Pachuca* the Silver is refined, and cast into Pigs or Bars, fit for Transportation.

choacan 2. The Province of *Mechoacan* hath Mines of *ovince.* Gold, Silver, and Copper; and produces Cotton and Cocao Nuts, good Corn and Pasturage; and, being well water'd, is esteem'd one of the most pleasant and healthful Provinces in the Audience of *Mexico*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Mechoacan, the Capital*, about an hundred and fifty Miles to the Westward of *Mexico*; a Bishop's See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Mexico*. 2. *Colima*, said to be rich and spacious, and to stand upon a River in one of the most pleasant and fruitful Valleys of this Province. 3. *Navidad*, or the *Port of Nativity*, situate a little to the Westward of *Colima*, where the *Spaniards* build some of the largest Ships they have in the *South* Sea.

nuco 3. The Province of *Panuco* has some Silver *ovince.* Mines; is tolerably fertile on the South; and the *Spaniards* used to make a great deal of Salt in it. The chief Towns are, 1. St. *Lewis de Tampice*. 2. St. *Estevan Puerto*, the Capital of the Province. 3. St. *Jago de los Valles*, situated five Leagues South-west of St. *Estevan*, which is taken notice of for the Salt-works near it, and the Garrison the *Spaniards* have there to awe the Natives. 4. St. *Lewis de Potosi*, an Inland Place, probably named *Potosi* from a Silver Mine near it, resembling that of *Potosi* in *Peru*.

laxcala 4. The Province of *Tlascala*, or *Los Angelos*, is *rovince.* the best peopled by *Indians* of any in *Mexico*; the Natives having been well used by the *Spaniards*, on account of their joining *Cortez* in his Conquest of *Mexico*. It is a plentiful Country, abounding in Sugar, Corn, Cattle, rich Pastures, Venison, and Wild-Fowl: Here are also some Silver Mines, Copperas, Allum, Liquid Amber, and fragrant Gums; with abundance of Cochineal. The Province is also well water'd with Rivers, the chief whereof is that of *Zahmah*, or *Zacadula*. The chief Towns are, 1. *Tlascala*, situate twenty Leagues to the Eastward of *Mexico*: Once a large populous Place, Capital of the Province; but now dwindled to a Village. 2. *Puebla de los Angelos*, or the *City of Angels*, situate in a fine Valley, twenty-five Leagues to the Eastward of *Mexico*. The Buildings chiefly of Stone, and the Form like that of other *Spanish* Towns: A spacious Square in the Middle, from whence run the principal Streets in a direct Line. The great Square is encompassed on three Sides with a stately Piazza, under which are the Shops of the principal Tradesmen; and on the fourth Side of the Square is the Cathedral, with a most beautiful Front. This is, in every Respect, a finer Square than that of *Mexico*. The Streets also are much cleaner; and there are a great many beautiful and magnificent Parochial and Conventual Churches, with several rich Monasteries and Nunneries. This fine Town is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Mexico*. The People of it in general are exceeding wealthy; tho' the Laity, in this Part of the World, cannot pretend to vie with the Clergy, either in Estates or Influence. 3. *Vera Cruz*, or *Ulua*, situate about sixty-five or seventy Leagues South-east of *Mexico*, in a barren sandy Plain; but considerable upon account of an excellent Harbour, and also on account of the *Flotilla*'s resorting hither to receive the Gold and Silver found in the Mines of *Mexico*; and its being a Mart for all manner of Merchandize and rich Goods that are brought hither from *China*, the *East-Indies*, *Peru*, and *Europe*. It extends itself from East to West, being much longer than broad; but not more than half a League in Circumference. The Place is very poor, being inhabited by *Blacks* and *Malottoes*, and some few *Spaniards*; unless when the *Flota* is there, and then vast Multitudes resort thither from all Parts. It was near this Place, at *Old Vera Cruz*, that *Cortez* landed, when he enter'd on the Conquest of *Mexico*; but the old Town, not having so commodious an Harbour, was deserted.

5. The Province of *Guaxaca*, or *Guaxata*: The chief Towns of which are, 1. *Spirito Sancto*, situate at the Foot of certain Mountains near the *South* Sea. 2. *Guaxata*, the Capital, situate in a fine Valley; a Bishop's See, and a rich well-built Town. 3. *Guatulco*, or *Aquatulco*, once a good *Spanish* Town; but, having been frequently plunder'd by Pirates, totally deserted now; and only mention'd for its excellent Harbour. And 4. *Tecoantipeque*, a well-built Town; but which has been plunder'd more than once by the Buccaneers. The Air of the Province is good, and the Lands fruitful: They have great Numbers of Horses, Mules, Sheep, and Oxen; and, abounding in Mulberry-trees, make more Silk than any Part of *Mexico*. Here are also rich Mines of Gold and Silver, and Gold Sands in several of their Rivers. It produces Cassia, Cochineal, Corn, Cotton, Sugar, Cocoa-Nuts, Plaintains, and a Variety of other Fruits. The Province has several fine Valleys in it, particularly that of *Guaxaca*, which is sixteen Leagues in Length, and full of Villages. *Guaxaca* Province.

6. The Province of *Tabasco* was heretofore deem'd a Part of *Jucatan*. As most Part of this Province lies on the Bay of *Campeachy*, where the Logwood grows, the Land is generally so flat and low, that it remains under Water great Part of the Year. The Logwood-cutters work in the Water usually up to their Knees, when they fell those Trees; and they can scarce find a dry Piece of Ground to build their Huts on. However, farther up in the Country are fine Meadow-Grounds; then gentle rising Hills; and higher Hills beyond them, on which grow Cedar, Brazil-Wood, and other good Timber. In the Valleys between the Hills, they have *Indian* Corn, Rice, Barley, and all manner of Garden Stuff; and the *Spaniards* have introduced Grapes, Figs, Lemons, Oranges, and other *European* Fruits: Here are also found Deer, and a Species of wild Hogs, proper to *America*, and almost all Sorts of *European* Cattle. There is not so much as an *Indian* Village, much less a *Spanish* Town, within four or five Leagues of the Coast, in the Bay of *Campeachy*, for several hundred Miles. It is, however, very pleasant sailing up the River *Tabasco*, the Banks being planted with Cabbage-trees an hundred Foot high, and with the largest Cotton and other Timber-trees, that are to be met with anywhere. Eight Leagues up the River, the *Spaniards* have a Breast-work, and a small Guard to watch the Buccaneers, who sometimes venture up, and have actually plunder'd the Town call'd *Villa de Mosi*, which lies four Leagues higher than the Breast-work, and seems to be the chief Town in the Country. Thus far the Ships come up with *European* Goods in the Months of *November* or *December*, and stay here till *June* or *July*, taking Cocoa and other native Commodities in return. All the Merchants and Tradesmen in the Country resort hither at *Christmas*, which very much enriches the Place. Here is also the Town of *Istape*, lying four Leagues beyond *Villa de Mosi*; and *Tabasco* Province.

said to be a Town of pretty good Trade; and a flourishing Town call'd *Halpo*, also higher up the River of *Tabasco*.

Yucatan Province.

7. The Province of *Yucatan*, or *Yucatan*, is a Peninsula, situated in the Gulph of *Mexico*, between the Bays of *Campeachy* and *Honduras*: It is generally flat low Land, and has scarce any Hills, unless in the Western Part of it, near the Isthmus: It is now thinly inhabited, especially near the Coasts; tho' it was very full of People before the *Spaniards* destroy'd the Natives. The Country is not agreeable to *European* Constitutions, the Air being excessive hot, and the Lands near the Coast frequently under Water. The chief Produce of the Country is Cotton, Salt, and Logwood; and the *Indians* employ themselves pretty much in Fishing. The only *Spanish* Town on this extensive Coast is *Campeachy*, situate in a Bending of the Land, but open to the Sea; and, being built of Stone, and surrounded with a good Wall, makes a fine Appearance: It has a Citadel for its Defence; notwithstanding which, it has been twice taken by the Buccaneers. There are two Inland *Spanish* Towns of some Note in *Yucatan*, namely, *Merida* and *Valladolid*.

Chiapa Province.

8. The Province of *Chiapa* is an Inland Country, mountainous, but well wooded and water'd, and has several fruitful Valleys, where they feed great Herds of Cattle; and they have a pretty brisk Trade with the neighbouring Provinces. The chief Town is *Chiapa*, or *Cividad Real*, a Bishop's See, and the Seat of their Courts of Justice. There is another Town called *Chiapa de los Indos*, because it is inhabited by the Natives, the largest *Indian* Town in the Country.

Soconusco Province.

9. The Province of *Soconusco* lies along the Coast of the *South* Sea for above an hundred Miles; and is not a very fruitful Country; neither do they seem to have much Trade. It is very mountainous; and the highest Mountain, which is a Vulcano, goes by the Name of *Soconusco*: To the South-east of this Vulcano runs a River, on the Banks whereof is situated a large *Indian* Town; and both the Town and the River take their Names from the Vulcano.

Guatimala Audience.

The Audience of *Guatimala* is bounded by that of *Mexico* on the North-west; by the *North* Sea on the North-east; by the Province of *Darien*, or *Terra-Firma Proper*, in *South America*, on the South east; and by the *South* Sea on the South-west; being about a thousand Miles in Length from the North-west to the South-east; but scarce half so broad in any Part, and in some not an hundred Miles broad. This Audience is subdivided into six Provinces, *viz.* 1. The Province of

Vera Paz. Province.

Vera Paz, said to have had that Name, signifying *True Peace*, given it by the *Spaniards*, because the Natives submitted, and made Peace with them voluntarily. It is a woody mountainous Country, subject to Earthquakes, and neither fruitful nor populous. The *Spaniards* mention two Towns, *Vera Paz*, or *Coban*, and St. *Peter's*; but Travellers have not thought them worth a particular Description.

Guatimala Province.

2. The Province of *Guatimala Proper* is a mountainous Country, every Mountain always a Vulcano, and subject to Earthquakes and fiery Eruptions. There are, however, many fruitful Valleys, abounding in Corn and Pasturage, rich Drugs for Dying, great Herds of Cattle, Sugar Plantations, some Silver Mines, and Fish. The chief Towns are, 1. *Guatimala*, or St. *Jago de Guatimala*, the Capital. There is a famous Mountain, with two Tops, two or three Leagues from this City; out of one of which, issues Water, and out of the other, Fire. At the Bottom of this Mountain stood the old Town of *Guatimala*, once destroy'd by a fiery Eruption, and a second time by Water issuing from the other Head; which induced the *Spaniards* to build the new City three Leagues from thence: However, at this Distance, the Town is sometimes cover'd with Ashes from the fiery Vulcano, which throws out Stones and Pieces of Rocks as big as a House, and is observed to burn most fiercely during the rainy Season. The new Town lies on a River, in a fine Valley, and is one of the largest Cities in *Spanish America*, containing upwards of eight thousand Families. It is the Seat of the President, and of the Courts of Justice of this Audience; a Bishop's See; a University; and has several fine Monasteries: The Cathedral and Parochial Churches also are exceeding rich. 2. *Trinidad*, or *Sonsonate*, a Port-Town, that consists of four or five hundred *Spanish* Families, besides *Mulattoes* and *Indians*, and has five Churches. 3. St. *Michael's*, another Port-Town, having seven or eight hundred Houses, and several Churches; and near it is a great Vulcano, call'd *The Vulcano of St. Michael*; beyond which is a large Lake, the Banks whereof are well inhabited by *Spaniards*, *Mulattoes*, and *Indians*. 4. *Amapalla*, in which are above an hundred *Spanish* Families, who have a brisk Trade for their Cochineal, Cocoa, Hides, Indico, *&c.*

Honduras Province.

3. The Province of *Honduras*, or *Comaiagua*, is said to have generally a good Air, and abounds in Corn and Pasturage. It was exceedingly populous, till the Natives were destroy'd by the *Spaniards*, who tortured many of them to death, and killed many more by obliging them to work in the Mines. It is even said, that the *Spaniards* murdered two Millions of People in this Province; but this Account must certainly be very extravagant. The chief Towns are, 1. *Valladolid*, or *Comaiagua*, situate in a pleasant Valley, on the West-side of a River. Here the Silver is refin'd, which is dug in the adjacent Mountains. It is the Residence of the Governor of the Province, and a Bishop's See. 2. *Truxillo*, situate on an Eminence between two Rivers, the Mouths whereof, and some Islands that lie before it, form an Harbour, which is defended by a Castle; but the Place has been plundered several times by the Buccaneers. 3. *Gracias a Dios*, situated on a Mountain near a fine fruitful Valley, and hath some Gold Mines in the Neighbourhood of it.

Nicaragua Province.

4. The Province of *Nicaragua* consists of Mountains, Valleys, and spacious Lakes, with fine Meadows, in which feed numerous Herds of Cattle. They have also Sugar Plantations, and a Variety of pleasant Fruits. And their constant Sea and Land-Breezes, with that extensive Lake, that runs quite cross it, renders this Province cool and healthful. But the Vulcanoes in their Mountains, and the Earthquakes occasion'd by them, too often disturb their Repose. The West End of *Nicaragua* Lake lies within four or five Leagues of the South Sea, and stretching to the Westward falls into the North Sea by a narrow Channel, usually called the River of *Nicaragua*; but this Channel is so obstructed by Rocks, and the River falls down such Precipices, that the Navigation is scarce practicable: Nor do the *Spaniards* care to move these Obstructions, lest some other Nations should find a Way through this Lake to their Settlements on the South Sea. The Lake is of a good Depth after passing the narrow Channel, upwards of an hundred Miles in Length, and thirty or forty in Breadth. It ebbs and flows like the Sea, and the Banks of it are pretty well inhabited, but are infested by Crocodiles and Alligators. The chief Towns in this Province are, 1. The City of *Leon*, situate in a Plain,

at

at the Foot of a piqued Mountain, call'd, *The Vulcano of Leon.* It is a Bishop's See, and, besides the Cathedral, has several Churches and Monasteries, and about a thousand Houses, most of them low built, on account of Earthquakes. The Riches of the Place has tempted the Buccaneers to plunder it several times. 2. *Rica Lexa*, or *Rica Lejo*, the Port-Town to the City of *Leon*, stands in a Plain on a small River, is pretty large, and has three Churches and an Hospital; but is a very sickly Place, on account of the Creeks and Salt-marshes, that lie about it. 3. *Granada*, a good trading Town, with some Fortifications about it. 4. St. *John's*.

Costa Rica Province. 5. The Province of *Costa Rica*, or the *Rich Coast*, is a mountainous barren Country; but inexpressibly rich in Gold and Silver Mines, from whence it obtain'd its Name. The chief Towns are, 1. *Nicoya*, having a Bay much frequented by the *Spanish* Shipping, and a Pearl-Fishery which yields a considerable Profit. Near this Coast, are *The Crown Mountains*, which are five or six Ridges of Hills, gradually surmounting each other, and resembling a Crown at a Distance. 2. The second Town is *Carthage*, the Capital, situated thirty or forty Miles within the Land. As it is a barren Country, there are few Towns in it, and those are not very considerable.

Veragua Province. 6. The Province of *Veragua* is a mountainous barren Country; but then their Mountains are well cloth'd with Timber. They have Mines of Gold and Silver, not inferior to those of *Costa Rica*; and in their Rivers is frequently found Gold Dust. The chief Towns are, 1. *Santa Fé*, or St. *Faith's*, where the *Spaniards* melt their Gold into Bars. 2. The Town of *Conception*, their Capital. 3. *Puebla Nova*, or *New Town*, a large Place, but of no Force. 4. *Chiriqui*. And 5. *La Villia*, where the Buccaneers surpriz'd three hundred *Spaniards* at High-Mass, and possessed themselves of a vast Treasure in Bullion and rich Merchandize.

Having given a Description of modern *Mexico*, and some of the chief *Spanish* Towns; we proceed to describe the Towns and Villages of the *Indians*, both ancient and modern, with the Form of their Houses, and the Materials of which they were, or are built, and their Furniture.

Old Mexico described. And first I shall treat of the City of *Old Mexico*: Which, as it stood on the same Ground the present City stands on, there is Reason to believe was square, as modern *Mexico* is, or pretty near that Figure; and the Dimensions may be gather'd from the Number of Families that resided in it, which the Histories of that Conquest make to be about sixty thousand. There was a vast Square in the Middle of the City, which, in the Time of their great Fair, contained an hundred thousand People, that resorted thither with their Goods and Merchandizes, and lodged in Booths and Tents. The Town was divided into two Parts; the one inhabited by the Court, the Nobility, and Persons of Distinctions; and the other by Tradesmen, and People of inferior Rank: The former was much the largest Part; where the Streets were spacious, the Houses of white hewn Stone, one Story high; and they had flat Roofs, adorn'd with Battlements: Their Ceilings were of Cedar, Cypress, or other odoriferous Wood; and their Hangings either of Furs and beautiful Feathers, or painted Cotton Linen, with a Variety of Figures of Birds, Beasts, or Plants. Their Beds were no better than Mats, and their Chairs of Wood; nor were any of the Nobility served in Plate; which was the Prerogative only of the Emperor.

The Palace where *Montezuma*, the last Emperor, resided, was so very large, that it open'd with thirty Gates, into as many different Streets; the principal Front making one Side of the great Square above-mention'd. The Materials of this Building were polish'd Jasper, black, red, and white; and over each Gate, in a large Shield, were the Arms of *Montezuma*, being a Griffin, with the Wings extended, and a Tiger in his Talons. This Palace consisted of several square Courts, so vastly extensive, that here were Apartments for three thousand of his Women, and a proportionable Number of other Domesticks. The Palace assign'd to *Cortez* and his Army was vastly large, containing commodious Rooms and Apartments for his five hundred *Spaniards*, and for several thousand *Tlascalans*; the whole being surrounded with a thick Stone-Wall, and flank'd with stately Towers, at convenient Distances. In several of the Streets of *Mexico* were Canals, with Bridges over them, and many thousand Boats ply'd upon the Water to bring in Provisions. There were two vast Aqueducts also made by the Emperor *Montezuma*, which brought in fresh Water from a Mountain three Miles distance. And, besides the two Palaces already mention'd, *Montezuma* had several Pleasure-houses in and about the City: In one of which were great Galleries, supported by Pillars of Jasper, in which were kept every Species of Land-Fowls and Birds that *Mexico* produced. The Sea-Fowls were preserved in Reservoirs of Salt Water; and those that were bred in Lakes and Rivers, in others of fresh Water: And so numerous were they of all Kinds, that it is said to have been the Business of three hundred Men to feed and look after them. In another Square of the same Palace, were kept all manner of wild Beasts, in their respective Dens and Cages, in a most regular Order. And in another Part of this Palace were Apartments for Dwarfs and Monsters, Fools and Naturals, of the human Species, kept for the Sport or Service of the Court. Here were also Armories, well replenish'd with Armour, and all manner of *Indian* Weapons. And in the same Quarter were the Artificers at work, that form'd and clean'd these Arms.

All these Palaces had spacious and elegant Gardens, laid out in fine shady Walks, Beds of fragrant and medicinal Herbs, and Parterres of beautiful Flowers; with magnificent Summer-houses, Bagnio's, Arbours, and Fountains. But there was a Building, in the most solitary Part of these Gardens, which surprized the *Spaniards* more than any thing they met with; and that was an Edifice call'd *The House of Sorrow*; to which the Emperor used to retire on the Death of his near Relations, or on any Calamity, publick or private. It was so contrived, as to inspire those that approached it with gloomy melancholy Thoughts; the Roof, the Cieling, and Sides were black; and only Light enough let in to discover the dismal Obscurity. Here he used to remain till the Time of Mourning and Humiliation were over; and here, if we may credit the *Spanish* Authors, *Montezuma* used to converse familiarly with the Prince of Darkness.

Temples. The Principal of the *Mexican* Temples was dedicated to *Vitzliputzli*, *the God of War*. This stood on a spacious Square, surrounded by a Wall of hewn Stone, wrought on the Outside with Knots of twisted Serpents: At a little Distance from the principal Gate was a Place of Worship, built of Stone, and ascended on the Outside by thirty Steps; on the Top whereof was a long flat Roof, and the Front of it adorn'd with the

Sculls of Men that had been ſacrificed. On each Side of the grand Square was a magnificent Gate, and over every one of them four Statues, ſuppoſed to repreſent ſome ſubordinate Deities. Under the Wall, on the Inſide, were the Apartments of the Prieſts, and of their Officers and Servants; and yet there was Room left for eight or ten thouſand Perſons to dance on their ſolemn Feſtivals. In the Middle of the Square was an Edifice of a pyramidal Form; three Sides whereof were ſmooth, and the fourth contain'd an hundred and twenty Stone-Steps, by which they aſcended to the Top, that was a Flat of forty Foot ſquare, laid with Jaſper of all Colours. The Rails that ſurrounded this, were of a ſerpentine Form, cover'd with a Stone as black as Jet, and join'd with a red and white Cement. On each Side, within the Rails, was a marble Statue, ſupporting a vaſt Candleſtick, and between them a green Stone, five Spans high from the Floor, which terminated in a Point; and on this they extended the human Victims they ſacrificed, throwing them on their Backs, and ripping them open with Knives made of Flint; after which, they tore out their Hearts, and offer'd them to their Idols. For on the farther Side, oppoſite to the Stairs, ſtood a Chapel of exquiſite Materials and Architecture, where the Idol was placed on an Altar. This Image was of human Form, and ſet on a Throne, ſuſtained by an Azure Globe, which they called Heaven; from the Sides whereof iſſued four Rods, their Ends reſembling the Heads of Serpents: On the Head of the Image was a Helmet, adorn'd with Plumes of various Colours. Its Countenance was ſevere and terrible, and much deformed by two blue Bands, which bound the Forehead and the Noſe. In the Right Hand it held a twining Serpent, that ſerved for a Staff; and in the Left four Arrows, which were revered as the Gift of Heaven. It bore a Shield alſo, adorn'd with fine white Plumes in the Form of a Croſs. On the Left Hand was another Chapel of the ſame Form, in which was the Image of *Vitzlock*, another of their Gods, reſembling the former in every reſpect. They were eſteemed ſo intimately united, that they aſcribed to them the ſame Attributes, and paid them the ſame Honours. The Walls and Altars of theſe Chapels were immenſely rich, cover'd with Jewels and precious Stones, ſet on Feathers of various Colours. There were eight of theſe Temples in *Mexico*, of the like Architecture and equal Wealth; beſides two thouſand ſmall ones, dedicated to as many different Gods; every Street having its tutelary Deity, every Diſtreſs or Calamity its particular Altar.

Some other ancient Towns deſcribed.

Thoſe, who have written of the Conqueſt of *Mexico*, have given us an Account of ſeveral other noble Cities and Towns in that Empire. *Iztacpalapa* was ſituated on an Iſland in the Lake, about two Leagues from *Mexico*, and had a Communication with it by a ſpacious Stone Cauſey. It conſiſted of ten thouſand Houſes, many of which were built like thoſe of *Mexico*. The Rooms of the Cacique's Palace were hung with Cotton Linen finely painted. Among other Curioſities in his Garden, he had a ſquare Reſervoir of Stone, with Stairs on every Side going down to the Bottom, each Side containing four hundred Paces. Another City, call'd *Cholula*, was for Beauty like *Valladolid* in *Spain*, containing twenty thouſand Souls, and having a Suburbs of equal Dimenſions.

The City of *Tlaſcala* alſo was built with Stone and Brick, and the Houſes like thoſe of *Mexico*: It was ſituated on four Eminences, which were united and defended by a Stone-Wall: So well were theſe People vers'd in Architecture in thoſe Days. And yet there are not any Towns in the Country now built of Brick or Stone, except thoſe in Poſſeſſion of the *Spaniards*.

Even thoſe *Indians*, that have ſubmitted to the *Spaniards*, and embraced their Religion, live in thatch'd Cottages, and obſerve very little Regularity in laying out their Streets: Their Houſes neither ſtand contiguous, nor in any Order; only they have one common Guard-houſe, ſituate on an Eminence, whither they reſort on the Approach of an Enemy, or when they aſſemble in Council. They never lay any deep Foundations. They ſet up ſmall Poſts, ſeven or eight Foot high, two or three Foot aſunder; and, having ſplinter'd up the Intervals, cover them with Clay: The Roof is made like that of an ordinary Barn, and cover'd uſually with Palmeto Leaves: The Length of the Building is about four and twenty Foot, and half as broad as it is long: The Fire-hearth is in the Middle of the Houſe, and they have a Hole over it to let out the Smoke. They build but one Floor, and have no Partitions. Inſtead of Beds they uſe Hammocks, which are hung up on the principal Beam, from one End to the other of the Houſe; nor have they any other Seats or Tables, but Blocks of Wood: Their Furniture conſiſts of Pots, Pans, and other Kitchen Utenſils, with Calabaſhes or Gourds of an uncommon Size to hold their Liquor; and their Arms and Tools, are hung round the Cottage as Ornaments. Their Guard-houſe is about an hundred and thirty Foot long, and five and twenty broad; the Walls nine or ten Foot high, and the Top of the Roof about twenty Foot in Height, and thatch'd with Palmeto Leaves. They have narrow Loopholes on the Sides, from whence they can annoy an Enemy with their Arrows. The Ground is clear'd of Wood and Shrubs for a good Space about them, that an Enemy may find no Shelter from their Arrows. They have ſtrong Doors to theſe Houſes; but the *Spaniards* eaſily burn them down, by ſhooting flaming Arrows into the Thatch.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Perſons and Habits of the Mexicans; *of their Genius and Temper; Arts, Manufactures, Diet, Exerciſes, and Diverſions.*

The various Inhabitants of *Mexico*

THERE is at preſent in *Mexico*, 1. The native *Indians*; 2. The *Spaniards*, and other *Europeans*; 3. The Deſcendants of the *Spaniards* unmix'd, who are called *Creols*; 4. The *Meſtices*, or *Meſties*, the Iſſue of a *Spaniard* and an *American*; 5. The *Fine Meſties*, the Iſſue of ſuch Iſſue; 6. *Terceroons des Indies*, the Children of the laſt, intermarried with pure *Spaniards*; 7. The *Quarteroons des Indies*, whoſe Poſterity are allowed the ſame Privileges as pure *Spaniards*.

Spaniards. The Blacks also are pretty numerous, having been carried over to the *Indies* from *Africa*, and, by one Means or other, obtained their Freedom. The Issue of a *European* by one of the Female Negroes, is called a Mulattoe; the Descendants of these also are called Mulattoes, though as white as the *Spaniards* themselves; and can never enjoy the Privileges of *Spaniards*, unless they can conceal their Descent, which they frequently do. And there is also a mingled Breed of *Negroes* and *Indians*, whose Descendants are ever excluded from the Privileges of *Spaniards*. Beside these, there are some Commonwealths of Blacks, that own no Subjection to the *Spaniards*, constituted out of the Negroes that run away from their Masters into the Woods and Mountains; who, at length, became so formidable, that the *Spaniards* were forced to enter into Treaties with them, and grant them their Liberties.

Negro Commonwealths.

The Persons of the Indians

The *Indians* are generally of a middle Stature, and their Complexions of a deep Olive, darker than that of a *Portuguese*. The Men have strait clean Limbs, are big-boned, and well-shaped; scarce a deformed Person to be found among them: They are nimble and active, and run very swiftly. The Women are moderately fat, and well-shaped; and the Faces, both of Men and Women, are round: Their Eyes large, either black or grey, lively and sparkling; their Foreheads are high, their Noses short, their Mouths of a moderate Size, their Lips thin, their Cheeks and Chin well proportioned; and all of them have fine Sets of Teeth: The Features both of Men and Women are generally good.

Their Hair, which is always black, in some Places the Men wear short, and the Women long, and in others it is just the Reverse: But all agree in suffering no Hair to remain upon them, unless the Hair of their Heads, and over their Eyes; the rest is pulled off with Tweezers as soon as ever it appears, which is the Business of the old Women. There are some Nations of the *Indians* that take Abundance of Pains to render their Countenances deformed; they do not only flat the Noses of their new-born Infants, but so press and squeeze their Heads between two Boards, that they make them perfectly flat; while others endeavour to mould their tender Skulls into the Shape of a Sugar-Loaf: And there are scarce any of them but disfigure their Faces and Bodies with Paint, and rub themselves over with Oil or Fat. The Colours they chiefly affect are a lively red, blue, or yellow; and sometimes they make the Figures of Men, Beasts, Birds, or Plants, on every Part of the Body, but chiefly on the Face: They draw these Figures on the Skin with wooden Pencils, gnawed at the End to the Softness of a Brush; renewing the Paint from Time to Time, till the Colours are fixed. But the Way they take to render the Figures indelible, is by pricking the Skin with a Thorn till the Blood follows, and then rubbing the Paint in with their Hands. Some Nations of *Mexicans*, when they go to the Wars, paint their Faces red, and their Bodies with other Colours, but this is usually washed off at Night, and renewed every Morning.

The Habits of the Indians

Most of the *Mexican* Nations wear some Habit or other; but there are *Indians* that go perfectly naked. Some were found with no Part of their Bodies covered, but their Nudities; others had their Faces streaked with black Lines, made by pricking the Skin, and rubbing in black Liquor; some wore Stags Sculls on their Heads with the Horns on; others had a Lion's, a Tyger's, or a Wolf's Head, upon their own, fastened about their Necks with Part of the Beast's Skin: These are Triumphs of their Victories over those Animals. But they are ambitious of nothing so much as of killing a *Spaniard*, that they may thus triumph in the Destruction of their most dreaded Enemy.

There is a Nation in *Veragua*, where the Men clothe nothing but the *Penis*, which the inferior People wrap up in a Leaf, and those of better Quality enclose it in a Case of Gold or Silver, of the Fashion of a Cone or Extinguisher, and adorn it with Jewels, letting the *Scrotum* hang uncovered: But even these People, on solemn Occasions, have a white or black Cotton Garment, like a Plowman's Frock, that reaches down to their Heels. They seldom want Ornaments for the Face, Ears, and Neck, besides the painting of the Skin, already mentioned. The Men have always a thin Plate of Gold or Silver, hanging over their Lips, almost of the Form of a Crescent, the Points whereof gently pinch the Bridle of the Nose. The Women, instead of a Plate, wear a Ring, which goes through the Bridle of the Nose, and by its Weight sometimes draws it down to the Mouth. Their great Men also wear two Gold Plates, of the Shape of an Heart, at each Ear, which stretches the Ear to an immoderate Size. They also wear a Bandage of Gold or Silver about their Heads, eight or nine Inches broad, and indented on the upper Side; others have only a Bandage of Cane painted red, stuck round with beautiful Feathers standing upright. Almost all the *Indians*, of both Sexes, wear Strings of Beads, Teeth, Shells, and other Toys, hanging from the Neck down to their Breasts: Every Person almost has three or four hundred of these Chains on, and the larger and heavier they are, the more ornamental; the meanest Woman when she is dressed, has fifteen or twenty Pounds Weight of these Strings; some carry thirty, and the Men as much more: But these are only worn at Festivals, and on solemn Occasions. The Women carry the Mens Ornaments in Baskets to their Assemblies, where they put them on, and will dance with that Weight about them: The Women, besides their Earings and Necklaces, have some of them Bracelets of the same Materials on their Arms.

Ornaments.

The Habits of the antient *Mexicans*.

The *Mexicans* that lived in Towns, when the *Spaniards* arrived there, had most of them some Clothing, although those that inhabited the Country had little or none, any more than they have at this Day. The *Spaniards* tell us, that *Montezuma* the Emperor, when he met *Cortez* at his Entrance into *Mexico*, had on a Robe of fine painted Cotton Linen, that trailed upon the Ground, and was covered with glittering Jewels and precious Stones; that he wore a Crown of Gold, in Form of a Mitre; had Shoes of hammer'd Gold, and a Kind of *Roman* Buskin about his Legs. They also relate, that the High-Priest wore on his Head a Crown of beautiful Feathers, with golden Pendants, enriched with Emeralds at his Ears; and that he was clothed in a Vest, and a fine Scarlet Robe over it. In the Pictures they have given us of the Priests, it appears, they had Sandals on their Feet, but their Legs were bare; which makes it reasonable to believe, that the Generality of the People wore neither Stockings nor Shoes, if the rest of their Bodies were clothed; and in other Pictures they have given us the upper Part of the Body naked.

The Habits of the *Spanish Indians*

The *Indians* that live in *Spanish* Towns, or are under their Government, wear a short Waistcoat and wide Breeches, with a short Cloke of various Colours over all; and some of them have Sandals on their Feet, but go bare legg'd: The Women wear a Waistcoat of Cotton Linen, over which they have a Frock or Shift, and a strait Petticoat of various Colours; and when they go Abroad,

have

have another Cloth wrapped about them. The *Meſtize*, *Mulatto*, and *Black* Women, not being allowed to clothe themſelves after the *Spaniſh* Faſhion, and deſpiſing the *Indian* Habit, go in an extravagant Dreſs, wearing a Kind of Petticoat about their Shoulders, like a Cloke. The Country *Indians*, who are civilized, in ſome Provinces wear a ſhort Waiſtcoat and Breeches, and have a Palm Leaf for a Hat, which is their Holiday Dreſs: They have no Shoes or Stockings, nor do they wear ſo much as a Waiſtcoat on working Days: The Women have a Cotton Linen Petticoat, and a Kind of Frock, that reaches down to their Knees, the Boſom whereof is open, and finely worked: They tie their Hair up in a Knot behind.

The Genius of the *Mexicans*.

As to the Genius and Temper of the *Mexicans*, there is a wide Difference between what they were when the *Spaniards* arrived amongſt them, and what we find them to be at this Day: They are far from being improved either in Arts or Morals. The firſt Adventurers inform us, that they were a wonderful ingenious People, inoffenſive and hoſpitable; and, except in the Matter of human Sacrifices, and what their idolatrous Worſhip required, there was very little Reformation wanting; nay, that the Generality of the People deteſted theſe Sacrifices, and were weary of their Superſtition. It appears, they were no mean Artificers in Painting, Statuary, and Building: That they uſed both the Pencil, and the beautiful Feathers of Birds, in drawing and forming of Pictures; and, without any Manner of Iron Tool, hewed vaſt Pillars and Slabs of Marble out of the Rock, and poliſhed them; as they did ſeveral precious Stones and Jewels: That they made Arms, defenſive and offenſive; wrought Mines of Gold, Silver, and Copper; melted and ſeparated theſe Metals, and afterwards wrought them into Plates and Veſſels. We find alſo, that they built great Towns, removed Stones of prodigious Size, from Place to Place; and yet had no Horſes, Oxen, or other Cattle for Draught, but all their Carriages were drawn by Men. They had alſo Images of Gold and Silver, Wood and Stone, and yet not an Iron Tool to work with: And how they did carve and engrave, paint and build, remains very much a Secret to us. For the *Spaniards* were ſo intent upon plundering their Gold and Silver, that they neglected to make proper Obſervations on theſe Articles; at leaſt, they did not think fit to tranſmit theſe Matters to Poſterity. We know, indeed, that ſharp Flints ſerved them inſtead of Axes, Knives, and Swords: That with theſe they formed the Edges of theſe Tools; but it ſhews a vaſt Genius and uncommon Application, that they were able, in ſuch Circumſtances, and with no better Inſtruments, to perform any Thing curious.

Good Artificers

Tho' the *Indians* were ſuch ingenious Artiſts two or three hundred Years ago, there are ſufficient Reaſons to be given for the Neglect and Diſuſe of theſe Arts at this Day. The *Spaniards*, under Pretence of Zeal for deſtroying the Pagan Temples and Idols, but, in Reality, that none of the Treaſures of the *Mexicans* might be concealed from them, pulled down every Town where theſe Arts flouriſhed. They alſo reduced the Natives to the moſt abject Slavery, compelling them to work in the Mines, and ſupply the Place of Beaſts of Burthen. And beſides, the *Europeans* being provided with Tools and Inſtruments to perform Things in a better Manner than the *Indians* could do under ſo many Diſadvantages; it is no Wonder, that the Natives threw away their Country Implements.

The antient *Mexicans* do not ſeem to have been defective either in Point of Temperance, Fortitude, or military Skill: Both their Policy and Stratagems were admirable, conſidering the Diſadvantages under which they laboured; and that they had an Enemy to oppoſe, verſed in the modern Arts of War, poſſeſſed of Gunpowder, Artillery, Arms, Armour, and Horſes, which the *Indians* had never ſeen or heard of till then.

Manufacture.

The principal Manufacture of the antient *Mexicans*, was Cotton-Linen, which they ſpun and wove, and afterwards painted with the Figures of Men, Animals, Trees, Flowers, &c. They made every Piece for the Uſe they deſigned it, and never cut any of their Linen. They uſed the Sinews of Animals inſtead of Thread, and Bones inſtead of Needles. The Feather Manufacture alſo was very great: They ſtripped every feathered Animal, to make their Pictures, and adorn their Houſes or their Perſons. Architecture was another of their Arts; and almoſt every Man made his own Arms. They had no other Veſſels upon the Water, but Canoes or Periagoes, which only differ in their Dimenſions. Theſe Kind of Veſſels are found very uſeful to this Day; and they have now an eaſier Way of framing them than formerly, by the Help of *European* Tools. The modern *Mexicans* are degenerated from their Anceſtors, and are reputed cowardly and cruel: They have no Senſe of Honour, are drowned in Vice, and die without any Apprehenſions of Futurity; but the hard Uſage of the *Spaniards* is the Occaſion of this Change. And the Mulattoes in *Mexico* are ſtill worſe than the *Indians*, there not being one honeſt, fair-dealing Man in an hundred amongſt them: Nor do the *Spaniards* themſelves, that reſide in that City, deſerve a better Character; four hundred of whom have been brought before a Court of Juſtice there, for Theft, at one Time. Whether the Meſtizes, or mixed Breed, have better Morals, we are not informed; but ſurely there muſt be ſome of better Principles amongſt them, or it would be impoſſible for the Government to ſubſiſt.

The *Indians* in the open Country, that have ſtill preſerved their Liberties, (of which there are great Numbers) are People of great Humanity, ſtill brave, generous, active, and unacquainted with the ſordid Vices of thoſe that live in Towns, whom the *Europeans* have corrupted. They are kind to Strangers, and even to the *Spaniards*, who uſe them worſe than Slaves, when they get them into their Power. Thoſe of the open Country ſpend great Part of their Time in Hunting, Shooting, or Fiſhing, as the Antients did: Every Man builds his own Houſe, and makes his own Arms, Tools and Implements of Husbandry. They cultivate but little Ground, planting juſt enough *Indian* Corn, Roots, and Fruit, to ſerve the Neceſſities of the Family; and theſe Plantations are the Buſineſs of the Women altogether, after the Men have cleared the Ground. The Women alſo ſpin, weave their Cotton-Linen, do all the Houſhold Buſineſs, ſerve their Husbands inſtead of Porters and Pack-Horſes; and all with Cheerfulneſs and Alacrity. The principal Food of theſe Natives is either *Indian* Corn, parched and ground into Flour, and made into thin Cakes; Fruits, particularly Plantains; and Roots; and ſometimes Fiſh, wild Hogs, Deer, or other Veniſon. They go a Hunting and Shooting frequently in Companies, a Week or a Fortnight together, every Man carrying with him his Bow and Arrows, or a Gun, if he can procure one, a Spear, a Hatchet, and a long Knife. Each Man alſo takes a Dog or two with him to beat for Game. Some Women alſo go with them to carry their Proviſions, with Calabathes or Gourds for their Drink, and Pipkins to dreſs their Food. The Beaſts they hunt, are chiefly

chiefly *Pecary* or *Warree*, two Sorts of wild Hogs peculiar to *America*, and they meet with great Variety of Fowls. They lodge at Night wherever they happen to be at Sun-set. They hang up their Hammocks between the Trees, and have scarce any other Covering, but a Plantain Leaf; only they make a Fire near their Hammocks. The Pecary or Warree are not swift of Foot, and usually go together in Droves of two or three hundred; but sometimes they hunt a whole Day without meeting any: When the Beast is tired or wounded, he will stand at Bay with the Dogs, till the Master comes up and shoots him; after which, the *Indians* let out the Blood, embowel and cut the Beast in two Pieces, carry them to the Place where they have appointed their Women to meet them: Here they cut off the Head of the Hog, quarter and flea it. What they intend to preserve, they dry upon a wooden Grate, (which is called a *Barbacue*) making a Fire of Wood-Coals under it. As to their Cookery, whether their Flesh be dried or fresh killed, they cut it into small Pieces, and throw it into a Pipkin, adding some Roots, green Plantains, or other Fruits, with a great deal of Pepper, stewing them together seven or eight Hours, which reduces all the Ingredients to a Pulp or Hotchpotch. When it is poured out into an earthen Dish or a Calabath, and set upon a wooden Block, they sit round it on lesser Blocks, every one having a Calabash of Water standing by him on the Ground, into which they frequently dip their Fingers while they are eating. They have seldom more than one Set Meal; but they eat Plantains and other Fruit almost all Day long. There is scarce any Flesh, Fish, or Fowl, but what they eat at their Meals, either stewed or barbacued. They use neither Knives, Forks, or Spoons, in eating; but take up the stewed Hotchpoth with their Right-hand, and fill their Mouths with it; and the broiled Flesh they tear off the Bones with their Teeth, unless those that conform themselves to *Spanish* Customs. Every thing they eat is high-seasoned with Pepper; and Salt too, if they can get it.

Chocolate serves both for Meat and Drink, in almost every Province of *Mexico*, both among the civiliz'd and barbarous *Indians*. They have also a great Variety of Liquors. The readiest and most ordinary Drink is Water, with the Flour of *Indian* Corn infused in it, and drunk off presently. Against an Entertainment, they frequently steep twenty or thirty Baskets of *Indian* Corn; and after the Water is impregnated, the Women chew more of the same Corn and spit into it, which ferments the Liquor like Yeast; and, when it has done working, they draw it clear off, and it proves very intoxicating, but tastes like sour Small-Beer.

Mistaw is another Liquor; and of this they have two Sorts; one made of Plantains fresh gathered, and the other of dried ones. Green and half ripe Plantains they also eat instead of Bread, boiling or roasting them first; as they do also Yams and Potatoes. The *Cassavi* Root, of which they make Bread, is first boiled and squeezed; then dried, ground, and made into Paste for Biscuit: For before it is boiled, and the Juice squeezed from it, it is rank Poison. As Pine-Apples are one of the most delicious Fruits of *America*, an Infusion of these is one of their beloved Liquors; and indeed they make Drink of all Manner of Fruits almost, as well as Grain, adding Honey to them at their Entertainments. But as to Wine, their Country affords none.

The *Indians* scarce undertake any Business of Consequence, without making an Entertainment. If they propose entering into War, their Chiefs are summoned to a Consultation, where they eat and drink plentifully, before they enter on their Debates. A Hunting Match, which lasts usually some Weeks, is preceded also by a Drunken-Bout. At Weddings, and other joyful Occasions, they have their Feasts, where they continue drinking two or three Days, till all the Liquor is out. They usually get exceeding drunk, insomuch that they can neither stand nor go; and, having slept till they have recovered their Senses, they move off. The Men drink to one another at Meals, as the *Europeans* do; but never to the Women, who always stand by, and wait upon their Husbands. But the Females feast, and are as merry as the Men among themselves. They are not afraid of being very drunk neither: However, till their Husbands are recovered, they take Care to keep sober.

Nothing is more universally drank in the City of *Mexico*, and in such Towns as are under the Dominion of the *Spaniards*, than Chocolate. To every Pound of the Cocoa-Nut the *Europeans* add a Pound of Sugar, an Ounce of Cinnamon, and two Ounces of the Flour of *Indian* Corn, to make it froth. They distil a Spirit also from a Plant called *Magey*, which is very intoxicating. The *Indians* once committed such Outrages when they were drunk with this Liquor, that it was prohibited for a Time; but both *Europeans* and *Indians* now drink it again.

We must not forget, that the *Indians* smoak as well as drink, since it was from them we first learnt the Use of Tobacco; but what the Natives plant is not so good as that the *English* plant and cure in *Virginia*. If they taught us to take Tobacco, we taught them to improve it, and the Use of Pipes; for the Way they smoaked it, was by lighting one End of a Roll they made with a Leaf, and holding the other End of the Roll in their Mouths; and, when it was half burnt out, they threw the Remainder away.

Their principal Exercises, or rather Employments, are Hunting, Shooting, and Fishing; which they are in a Manner forced into, in order to make Provision for their Families. Every Man breeds up his Son to these Exercises; and they are so dextrous at them while they are Children, that a Boy of eight Years of Age will split a Cane set up at twenty Yards Distance with his Bow and Arrow, and hit a Bird flying. But the most dextrous People are the *Mosquito Indians*, Natives of the Province of *Honduras*. These People are tall, well made, strong and nimble, long visag'd, have lank black Hair, a stern Look, are hard favour'd, and of a dark Copper Complexion: They are bred to throw the Lance, Harpoon, and Dart, and draw the Bow, from their Infancy; and they will parry any of these missive Weapons with a small Cane, not bigger than a Gun-stick, though the Arrows and Darts fly very thick. The *English* Privateers that cruise on the *Mexican* Coast, have usually one or two of these *Mosquito* Men on Board, to strike Manatee, Tortoise, and other Fish; and they will kill Fish enough to maintain a Crew of an hundred Men. When they learn the Use of Guns, they are exceeding good Marksmen. They are also very brave and daring in Fight. They have conversed so long with the *English*, that they frequently declare they will have no other Sovereign, but the King of *England*; nor have the *Spaniards* ever been able to subdue these, and many other Nations, that inhabit *Mexico*.

Exercises and Diversions.

Mosquito Indians.

The *Indians* have their Dances, and their Musick too, such as wooden Drums of the Form of a Kettle Drum, and a Kind of Pipes or Flagelets, made of a Cane or Reed. They love every thing that makes a Noise, how disagreeable soever the Sound is; they will also hum over some-

thing like a Tune, when they dance. They dance thirty or forty in a Circle, ſtretching out their Hands, and laying them on each other's Shoulders: They ſtamp, and jump, and uſe the moſt antick Geſtures for ſeveral Hours, till they are heartily weary; and one or two of the Company ſometimes ſtep out of the Ring to make Sport for the reſt, ſhewing Tricks and Feats of Activity; and, when they are in a moſt violent Sweat, will frequently jump into the Water, without taking any manner of Cold. We ſhould have remembred among their Exerciſes, that no Men ſwim or dive better than the native *Indians*. The Women have their Dances and Muſick too, by themſelves.

CHAP. V.

Of the Conqueſt of Mexico *by the* Spaniards.

The *Spaniards* firſt Attempt on *Jucatan* defeated.

IN the Year 1515, or 1516, *Francis Fernandez de Cordoua*, embarking at *Cuba* with an hundred and twenty Men, ſet ſail for *Jucatan*, a Province of *Mexico*, where he made a Deſcent, and was about to have erected a Fort. But he ſuffer'd himſelf to be ſurpriz'd by the *Indians*; and, having twenty Men kill'd, thirty more wounded, and two made Priſoners, the reſt retired to their Ships, and returned to *Cuba*. However, thoſe that eſcaped reporting that they ſaw great Plenty of Gold among the Natives, and offering to make a farther Attempt on the Continent of *Mexico*, the *Spaniards* of *Cuba* appeared impatient to make another Experiment. *Diego Velaſquez*, at this Time Governor of *Cuba*, obſerving the Ardour his Soldiers expreſſed to engage in a freſh Enterprize, fitted out three Ships and a Brigantine, giving the Command of them to *John de Grijalva*, who ſet Sail from *Cuba* on the 8th of *April* 1518; and arriving in *Jucatan*, where *Fernandez de Cordoua* had been defeated, took a ſevere Revenge on the Natives, and then ſtood Weſtward to the Mouth of the River *Tobaſco*, where he landed, and formally took Poſſeſſion of the Country for the Emperor *Charles* V. then King of *Caſtile*, offering the Natives Peace, if they would ſubmit to his Dominion. To which one of the Chiefs of the *Indians* anſwer'd, that they would conſult their Superiors on the Offer of Peace; but as to their becoming Vaſſals to a Prince they had never before heard of, it was not in their Power.

Grijalva ſent from *Cuba* to make farther Diſcoveries on the Continent.

Takes Poſſeſſion of the Country for the King of *Spain*

Some little time after, the ſame *Indians* returned, and acquainted the *Spaniards*, that their Caciques accepted their Offers of Peace. One of their principal Caciques alſo brought *Grijalva* a conſiderable Preſent: For which *Grijalva* returned ſuch *European* Toys and Utenſils as were moſt acceptable to them. Afterwards he viſited the Port of St. *John de Ulva*; and from thence ſailed as high as *Panuco*, the moſt northern Province of *Mexico* on that Side, trading with the People as he went; and underſtood from them that they were ſubject to a Monarch called *Montezuma*, a Prince poſſeſs'd of a vaſt Empire, abounding in Gold, Silver, and rich Merchandize; with which Intelligence he returned to *Cuba*.

Offers the Natives Peace, who accept it.

Learns the Greatneſs of the *Mexican* Empire

Returns to *Cuba*.

Diego Velaſquez immediately ſent over to the Admiral, the Son of the celebrated *Columbus*, at *Hiſpaniola*, and to the Court of *Spain*, to acquaint them with the Succeſs of the Expedition. But, notwithſtanding the great Service *John de Grijalva* had done, *Velaſquez* pitch'd upon the celebrated *Hernando* or *Fernando Cortez*, to command the ſmall Army, with which he propoſed to make an entire Conqueſt of that Continent. This *Hernando Cortez* was born at *Medellin* in *Eſtramadura*. He was bred a Scholar; but affecting a more active Way of Life, he embarked, in the Year 1504, for the Iſland of *Hiſpaniola*; and went from thence to *Cuba*, where he was very inſtrumental in the Conqueſt of that Iſland, and was, for his Services, made *Alcaide*, or chief Magiſtrate of St. *Jago*, the principal Town there. He married *Donna Catalina Suarez*, a young Lady of a noble Family.

Cortez made Captain General againſt *Mexico*

Some Account of him

His Rivals.

The Relations of *Velaſquez* envying *Cortez* the Command in an Expedition that was like to be attended with a vaſt Acquiſition of Wealth, as well as Glory, ſo far prevail'd on the Governor, that tho' he had attended *Cortez* to the Sea-ſide, when he embarked, with all the Marks of Reſpect, the Fleet was no ſooner ſailed, but he ſent Orders to the *Havannah*, where they were to touch, that the Fleet ſhould not proceed in the Voyage till farther Orders; and that *Cortez* ſhould return to him to St. *Jago*. But the Governor's Orders were not obey'd: The Soldiers were ſo tranſported with Expectation, and had ſuch an Opinion of their General, that they would not conſent to the changing of him, or to the Delay of the Enterprize, but agreed immediately to ſet Sail; which they did, with a Fleet of ten Ships, the 10th of *February* 1518-19, and arrived at the Iſland of *Cozumel*, where, muſtering his Forces, he found them to conſiſt of five hundred and eight Foot Soldiers, ſixteen Horſe, and one hundred and nine Seamen and Mechanicks; beſides his two Chaplains. The General made a Speech to his Forces at this Muſter; which was received with the loud Acclamations of his Troops, who deſired he would immediatly lead them on to Action.

Cortez recalled by the Governor.

He arrives at the Iſland *Cozumel*. His Force.

A Spaniard and three Indians found with the Forces.

While *Cortez* remained in this Iſland, he was inform'd, that there were ſome Men in *Jucatan*, who had been Priſoners there ſeveral Years, that much reſembled the *Spaniards*. Whereupon *Cortez* ſent ſome of the *Indians* with a Letter to thoſe Priſoners, and a Preſent to the Prince in whoſe Power they were, for their Ranſom. The *Indians* returned to *Cozumel*, bringing with them *Jeronimo de Aguilar*, a Native of *Spain*, in Deacon's Orders. This Eccleſiaſtick related, that he had been near eight Years in *Jucatan*, whither he eſcaped in a Boat with ſeveral more, after they had been ſhipwreck'd in their Paſſage form *Darien* to *Hiſpaniola*: That by his Skill in military Affairs, he had gain'd a great Reputation in *Jucatan*: And, that the *Indians*, he believed, had ſacrificed the reſt of his Company to their Gods.

This *Spaniard* was of infinite Service to *Cortez* in this Expedition; for he was perfectly acquainted with their Strength, their Way of making War, and their Language. *Cortez* had two or three Slaves alſo preſented to him by the Cacique of *Cozumel*, whom he order'd to be inſtructed in

the

He demolishes the Images of Mexitrans.

the *Spanish* Tongue. Before he left the Island, he expressed his Zeal against the Idolatry of the Natives, by breaking down their Idols; which does not seem very complaisant, after the hospitable Reception he met with from the Islanders.

He sets Sail from Cozumel

The Forces being reimbarked, *Cortez* continued his Voyage to the Mouth of the River *Tobasco*, in the Bay of *Campeachy*; where, when the Natives persisted to oppose his Descent, he fired upon them with his Artillery and small Arms: Whereupon they turn'd their Backs, and fled, and he landed his Men without Opposition. Being obliged to pass through some Woods, a Body of the Enemy, who had concealed themselves therein, surprized and wounded some of the *Spaniards* with their Arrows. Continuing his March till he came to the Town of *Tobasco*, he found it fortified with a Kind of wooden Wall, formed with the Bodies of Trees fixed like Palisadoes, through the Intervals whereof they shot their Darts and Arrows: But his Men no sooner came up to the Works, and fired their Muskets though the Pallisadoes, than the Enemy retired to a large Square in the Middle of the Town, where they made some Shew of defending themselves; but, upon the Approach of the *Spaniards*, they retired from thence also, and fled to their Friends in the Woods.

Cortez lands at Tabasco, and gains a Victory over the Natives.

He takes the City.

He obtains a second Victory.

The Day after the taking of *Tobasco*, the *Mexicans* assembled an Army of forty thousand Men, with which they attack'd the *Spaniards*. The Battle seem'd doubtful, till *Cortez* sallied out of a Wood, and charged them in Flank with his Horse; by which he obtained another complete Victory. The *Indians* are represented in this Battle as a very formidable Enemy, with a View to magnify the Courage and Conduct of *Cortez* and the *Christians*. They relate also, that St. *James* the Apostle appeared in the Battle, on a white Horse, and fought for the *Spaniards*. Whereas every one knows, that the *Indians* durst never stand a regular Body of *Europeans*, with Fire-Arms or Horse, and especially when the Artillery thunder'd upon them; believing that the People they engaged were Gods; and consequently, there was very little Occasion for a Miracle, or indeed for much millitary Skill or Courage, to defeat an Enemy, when they had such Advantages on their Side.

The Indians of Tobasco sue for Peace.

The Day after the Battle, the Cacique of *Tobasco* sent a solemn Embassy to *Cortez*, to implore Peace, attended with a Present. The Ambassadors approach'd *Cortez* as they used to do their Gods, with Golden Pans or Censers, in which they burnt Aromatick Gums and other Incense: The Cacique afterwards came in Person, and made his Submission, bringing with him twenty beautiful *Indian* Virgins, which he made *Cortez* a Present of. One of these, whom the General caused to be baptized by the Name of *Donna Marina*, served him, during the whole Expedition, in the double Capacity of Concubine and Interpreter. She was a Native of *Mexico*, of a ready Wit, and understood the Customs of the Country and the Language perfectly well; and to her Merit and Address the *Spaniards* ascribe the Success of their Arms in a great Measure. *Cortez* let the Cacique know, that he came from a powerful Prince; and that his View was to make them happy in this World and the next, by making them Subjects of the same Sovereign, and converting them to the true Religion. To which the Cacique answer'd, that he and his People should think themselves happy in obeying a King, whose Power and Greatness appeared with such an Advantage in his Subjects. But as to the Point of Religion, they gave little Hopes of their Conversion.

Cortez embarks his Forces again. He arrives at the Port of St. *John de Ulva*

Cortez, having compelled the Natives of *Tobasco* to acknowledge the King of *Spain* for their Sovereign, embarked his Forces, and sailed to the Port of St. *John de Ulva*. When the *Spaniards* were coming into this Port, two Periaguacs full of *Indians* came into the Fleet, and address'd themselves to the General in a submissive Manner; but were not understood by his Interpreter: Which *Donna Marina*, the General's Concubine, observing, offer'd to become Interpreter between the *Christians* and her Countrymen the *Mexicans*. The General was now informed by the *Mexicans*, that their Emperor *Montezuma* had sent two of his Ministers, *Pilpotoe*, Governor of that Province, and *Tentile*, one of his Generals, to know with what Intention the *Spaniards* visited his Dominions, and to offer them such Provisions and Accommodations as his Country afforded. To which the General answer'd, that he came as a Friend, and to treat of Matters of great Importance; desiring a Conference with the Officers *Montezuma* had sent to receive his Proposals: And, landing with his Troops, he laid out a Camp on an advantageous Situation, fortifying it with Trenches and Redoubts, and planting his Artillery in such a Manner as to command the Country round him.

He lands, and fortifies his Camp.

An Embassy from *Montezuma*.

On *Easter-Day* 1519, *Montezuma*'s Ambassadors came to the Camp of the *Spaniards*, and were admitted to the Presence of *Cortez*, who received them in great State, and entertain'd them at Dinner in a very splendid Manner: After which, he informed them, that he was come from *Don Carlos* of *Austria*, the great Monarch of the East, to propose Matters of great Importance to their Emperor *Montezuma*, and his Subjects; but that it was necessary he should deliver his Message personally to the Emperor, according to the Usage of all Nations; and hoped he should be received with the Respect due to his Character.

To this the *Mexican* Ministers answered, That they had Orders from their Sovereign, the great *Montezuma*, hospitably to receive and entertain all Strangers that arrived on their Coasts, and had brought him a Present of such Things as their Country afforded. But they gave him to understand, at the same time, that their Emperor never admitted Foreigners to his Presence; and therefore he must not think of approaching his Court. *Cortez* replied, That never any Ambassadors were refused an Audience, unless it were with a Design to affront the Prince they came from; and that he was determined not to leave the Country till he had delivered his Embassy to their Emperor himself. Whereupon the *Mexican* Ministers desired, That he would, however, remain in his Camp till they had acquainted their Emperor with the Proposal, and received his Commands; and they would, in the mean time, supply his People with Provisions, and every thing they wanted.

During this Conference, some of the *Mexicans* were very busy in drawing, upon Cotton Cloth, the Pictures of the principal *Spaniards*, and whatever they thought remarkable; as their Ships, Arms, Artillery, and Horses; which were designed to be sent to *Montezuma*, to acquaint him what kind of People, and of what Force, the *Spaniards* were. Of which *Cortez* being inform'd, desired they would not finish their Piece till he had given them a Taste of his military Operations: Whereupon he order'd his Forces to be drawn up in Order of Battle, and to exhibit a mock Engagement: He order'd also his Horse to mount, and shew their Activity and Horsemanship

in

thing like a Tune, when they dance. They dance thirty or forty in a Circle, ſtretching out their Hands, and laying them on each other's Shoulders: They ſtamp, and jump, and uſe the moſt antick Geſtures for ſeveral Hours, till they are heartily weary; and one or two of the Company ſometimes ſtep out of the Ring to make Sport for the reſt, ſhewing Tricks and Feats of Activity; and, when they are in a moſt violent Sweat, will frequently jump into the Water, without taking any manner of Cold. We ſhould have remembred among their Exerciſes, that no Men ſwim or dive better than the native *Indians*. The Women have their Dances and Muſick too, by themſelves.

CHAP. V.

Of the Conqueſt of Mexico *by the* Spaniards.

The *Spaniards* firſt Attempt on *Jucatan* defeated.

IN the Year 1515, or 1516, *Francis Fernandez de Cordoua*, embarking at *Cuba* with an hundred and twenty Men, ſet ſail for *Jucatan*, a Province of *Mexico*, where he made a Deſcent, and was about to have erected a Fort. But he ſuffer'd himſelf to be ſurpriz'd by the *Indians*; and, having twenty Men kill'd, thirty more wounded, and two made Priſoners, the reſt retired to their Ships, and returned to *Cuba*. However, thoſe that eſcaped reporting that they ſaw great Plenty of Gold among the Natives, and offering to make a farther Attempt on the Continent of *Mexico*, the *Spaniards* of *Cuba* appeared impatient to make another Experiment.

Grijalva ſent from *Cuba* to make farther Diſcoveries on the Continent.

Diego Velaſquez, at this Time Governor of *Cuba*, obſerving the Ardour his Soldiers expreſſed to engage in a freſh Enterprize, fitted out three Ships and a Brigantine, giving the Command of them to *John de Grijalva*, who ſet Sail from *Cuba* on the 8th of *April* 1518; and arriving in *Jucatan*, where *Fernandez de Cordoua* had been defeated, took a ſevere Revenge on the Natives, and then ſtood Weſtward to the Mouth of the River *Tobaſco*, where he landed, and formally took Poſſeſſion of the Country for the Emperor *Charles* V. then King of *Caſtile*, offering the Natives Peace, if they would ſubmit to his Dominion. To which one of the Chiefs of the *Indians* anſwer'd, that they would conſult their Superiors on the Offer of Peace; but as to their becoming Vaſſals to a Prince they had never before heard of, it was not in their Power.

Takes Poſſeſſion of the Country for the King of *Spain*.

Offers the Natives Peace, who accept it.

Some little time after, the ſame *Indians* returned, and acquainted the *Spaniards*, that their Caciques accepted their Offers of Peace. One of their principal Caciques alſo brought *Grijalva* a conſiderable Preſent: For which *Grijalva* returned ſuch *European* Toys and Utenſils as were moſt acceptable to them. Afterwards he viſited the Port of St. *John de Ulva*; and from thence ſailed as high as *Panuco*, the moſt northern Province of *Mexico* on that Side, trading with the People as he went; and underſtood from them that they were ſubject to a Monarch called *Montezuma*, a Prince poſſeſs'd of a vaſt Empire, abounding in Gold, Silver, and rich Merchandize; with which Intelligence he returned to *Cuba*.

Learns the Greatneſs of the *Mexican* Empire.

Returns to *Cuba*.

Diego Velaſquez immediately ſent over to the Admiral, the Son of the celebrated *Columbus*, at *Hiſpaniola*, and to the Court of *Spain*, to acquaint them with the Succeſs of the Expedition. But, notwithſtanding the great Service *John de Grijalva* had done, *Velaſquez* pitch'd upon the celebrated *Hernando* or *Fernando Cortez*, to command the ſmall Army, with which he propoſed to make an entire Conqueſt of that Continent. This *Hernando Cortez* was born at *Medellin* in *Eſtramadura*. He was bred a Scholar; but affecting a more active Way of Life, he embarked, in the Year 1504, for the Iſland of *Hiſpaniola*; and went from thence to *Cuba*, where he was very inſtrumental in the Conqueſt of that Iſland, and was, for his Services, made *Alcaide*, or chief Magiſtrate of St. *Jago*, the principal Town there. He married *Donna Catalina Suarez*, a young Lady of a noble Family.

Cortez made Captain General againſt *Mexico*. Some Account of him.

His Rivals.

The Relations of *Velaſquez* envying *Cortez* the Command in an Expedition that was like to be attended with a vaſt Acquiſition of Wealth, as well as Glory, ſo far prevail'd on the Governor, that tho' he had attended *Cortez* to the Sea-ſide, when he embarked, with all the Marks of Reſpect, the Fleet was no ſooner ſailed, but he ſent Orders to the *Havannah*, where they were to touch, that the Fleet ſhould not proceed in the Voyage till farther Orders; and that *Cortez* ſhould return to him to St. *Jago*. But the Governor's Orders were not obey'd: The Soldiers were ſo tranſported with Expectation, and had ſuch an Opinion of their General, that they would not conſent to the changing of him, or to the Delay of the Enterprize, but agreed immediately to ſet Sail; which they did, with a Fleet of ten Ships, the 10th of *February* 1518-19, and arrived at the Iſland of *Cozumel*, where, muſtering his Forces, he found them to conſiſt of five hundred and eight Foot Soldiers, ſixteen Horſe, and one hundred and nine Seamen and Mechanicks; beſides his two Chaplains. The General made a Speech to his Forces at this Muſter; which was received with the loud Acclamations of his Troops, who deſired he would immediatly lead them on to Action.

Cortez recalled by the Governor.

Hears at the Iſland *Cozumel* The Number of Forces.

While *Cortez* remained in this Iſland, he was inform'd, that there were ſome Men in *Jucatan*, who had been Priſoners there ſeveral Years, that much reſembled the *Spaniards*. Whereupon *Cortez* ſent ſome of the *Indians* with a Letter to thoſe Priſoners, and a Preſent to the Prince in whoſe Power they were, for their Ranſom. The *Indians* returned to *Cozumel*, bringing with them *Jeronimo de Aguilar*, a Native of *Spain*, in Deacon's Orders. This Eccleſiaſtick related, that he had been near eight Years in *Jucatan*, whither he eſcaped in a Boat with ſeveral more, after they had been ſhipwreck'd in their Paſſage form *Darien* to *Hiſpaniola*: That by his Skill in military Affairs, he had gain'd a great Reputation in *Jucatan*: And, that the *Indians*, he believed, had ſacrificed the reſt of his Company to their Gods.

A *Spaniard* found was Priſoner *Jucatan*.

This *Spaniard* was of infinite Service to *Cortez* in this Expedition; for he was perfectly acquainted with their Strength, their Way of making War, and their Language. *Cortez* had two or three Slaves alſo preſented to him by the Cacique of *Cozumel*, whom he order'd to be inſtructed in

the

demo-
es the
ges of
frdians.

s Sail
m Co-
ast

rez
ps at
Bay,
gains
ictory
er the
dives.

e takes
e City.

t ob-
ins a fe-
ond Vic-
ory

The Indi-
ans of To-
basco sue
for Peace.

the *Spaniſh* Tongue. Before he left the Iſland, he expreſſed his Zeal againſt the Idolatry of the Natives, by breaking down their Idols; which does not ſeem very complaiſant, after the hoſpitable Reception he met with from the Iſlanders.

The Forces being reimbarked, *Cortez* continued his Voyage to the Mouth of the River *Tobaſco*, in the Bay of *Campeachy*; where, when the Natives perſiſted to oppoſe his Deſcent, he fired upon them with his Artillery and ſmall Arms: Whereupon they turn'd their Backs, and fled, and he landed his Men without Oppoſition. Being obliged to paſs through ſome Woods, a Body of the Enemy, who had concealed themſelves therein, ſurprized and wounded ſome of the *Spaniards* with their Arrows. Continuing his March till he came to the Town of *Tobaſco*, he found it fortified with a Kind of wooden Wall, formed with the Bodies of Trees fixed like Paliſadoes, through the Intervals whereof they ſhot their Darts and Arrows: But his Men no ſooner came up to the Works, and fired their Muskets though the Palliſadoes, than the Enemy retired to a large Square in the Middle of the Town, where they made ſome Shew of defending themſelves; but, upon the Approach of the *Spaniards*, they retired from thence alſo, and fled to their Friends in the Woods.

The Day after the taking of *Tobaſco*, the *Mexicans* aſſembled an Army of forty thouſand Men, with which they attack'd the *Spaniards*. The Battle ſeem'd doubtful, till *Cortez* ſallied out of a Wood, and charged them in Flank with his Horſe; by which he obtained another complete Victory. The *Indians* are repreſented in this Battle as a very formidable Enemy, with a View to magnify the Courage and Conduct of *Cortez* and the *Chriſtians*. They relate alſo, that St. *James* the Apoſtle appeared in the Battle, on a white Horſe, and fought for the *Spaniards*. Whereas every one knows, that the *Indians* durſt never ſtand a regular Body of *Europeans*, with Fire-Arms or Horſe, and eſpecially when the Artillery thunder'd upon them; believing that the People they engaged were Gods; and conſequently, there was very little Occaſion for a Miracle, or indeed for much millitary Skill or Courage, to defeat an Enemy, when they had ſuch Advantages on their Side.

The Day after the Battle, the Cacique of *Tobaſco* ſent a ſolemn Embaſſy to *Cortez*, to implore Peace, attended with a Preſent. The Ambaſſadors approach'd *Cortez* as they uſed to do their Gods, with Golden Pans or Cenſers, in which they burnt Aromatick Gums and other Incenſe: The Cacique afterwards came in Perſon, and made his Submiſſion, bringing with him twenty beautiful *Indian* Virgins, which he made *Cortez* a Preſent of. One of theſe, whom the General cauſed to be baptized by the Name of *Donna Marina*, ſerved him, during the whole Expedition, in the double Capacity of Concubine and Interpreter. She was a Native of *Mexico*, of a ready Wit, and underſtood the Cuſtoms of the Country and the Language perfectly well; and to her Merit and Addreſs the *Spaniards* aſcribe the Succeſs of their Arms in a great Meaſure. *Cortez* let the Cacique know, that he came from a powerful Prince; and that his View was to make them happy in this World and the next, by making them Subjects of the ſame Sovereign, and converting them to the true Religion. To which the Cacique anſwer'd, that he and his People ſhould think themſelves happy in obeying a King, whoſe Power and Greatneſs appeared with ſuch an Advantage in his Subjects. But as to the Point of Religion, they gave little Hopes of their Converſion.

Cortez, having compelled the Natives of *Tobaſco* to acknowledge the King of *Spain* for their Sovereign, embarked his Forces, and ſailed to the Port of St. *John de Ulva*. When the *Spaniards* were coming into this Port, two Periaguacs full of *Indians* came into the Fleet, and addreſs'd themſelves to the General in a ſubmiſſive Manner; but were not underſtood by his Interpreter: Which *Donna Marina*, the General's Concubine, obſerving, offer'd to become Interpreter between the *Chriſtians* and her Countrymen the *Mexicans*. The General was now informed by the *Mexicans*, that their Emperor *Montezuma* had ſent two of his Miniſters, *Pilpotoe*, Governor of that Province, and *Tentile*, one of his Generals, to know with what Intention the *Spaniards* viſited his Dominions, and to offer them ſuch Proviſions and Accommodations as his Country afforded. To which the General anſwer'd, that he came as a Friend, and to treat of Matters of great Importance; deſiring a Conference with the Officers *Montezuma* had ſent to receive his Propoſals: And, landing with his Troops, he laid out a Camp on an advantageous Situation, fortifying it with Trenches and Redoubts, and planting his Artillery in ſuch a Manner as to command the Country round him.

Cortez embarks his Forces again. He arrives at the Port of St. *John de Ulva*.

He lands, and fortifies his Camp.

On *Eaſter-Day* 1519, *Montezuma*'s Ambaſſadors came to the Camp of the *Spaniards*, and were admitted to the Preſence of *Cortez*, who received them in great State, and entertain'd them at Dinner in a very ſplendid Manner: After which, he informed them, that he was come from *Don Carlos* of *Auſtria*, the great Monarch of the Eaſt, to propoſe Matters of great Importance to their Emperor *Montezuma*, and his Subjects; but that it was neceſſary he ſhould deliver his Meſſage perſonally to the Emperor, according to the Uſage of all Nations; and hoped he ſhould be received with the Reſpect due to his Character.

An Embaſſy from *Montezuma*.

To this the *Mexican* Miniſters anſwered, That they had Orders from their Sovereign, the great *Montezuma*, hoſpitably to receive and entertain all Strangers that arrived on their Coaſts, and had brought him a Preſent of ſuch Things as their Country afforded. But they gave him to underſtand, at the ſame time, that their Emperor never admitted Foreigners to his Preſence; and therefore he muſt not think of approaching his Court. *Cortez* replied, That never any Ambaſſadors were refuſed an Audience, unleſs it were with a Deſign to affront the Prince they came from; and that he was determined not to leave the Country till he had delivered his Embaſſy to their Emperor himſelf. Whereupon the *Mexican* Miniſters deſired, That he would, however, remain in his Camp till they had acquainted their Emperor with the Propoſal, and received his Commands; and they would, in the mean time, ſupply his People with Proviſions, and every thing they wanted.

During this Conference, ſome of the *Mexicans* were very buſy in drawing, upon Cotton Cloth, the Pictures of the principal *Spaniards*, and whatever they thought remarkable; as their Ships, Arms, Artillery, and Horſes; which were deſigned to be ſent to *Montezuma*, to acquaint him what kind of People, and of what Force, the *Spaniards* were. Of which *Cortez* being inform'd, deſired they would not finiſh their Piece till he had given them a Taſte of his military Operations: Whereupon he order'd his Forces to be drawn up in Order of Battle, and to exhibit a mock Engagement: He order'd alſo his Horſe to mount, and ſhew their Activity and Horſemanſhip

in

in charging, wheeling, and retiring, as in a Battle: Then the ſmall Arms were ordered to fire, and afterwards the Artillery: At which the *Mexicans* were aſtoniſhed; ſome of them actually fled, and others fell down with the Fright, apprehending they ſhould be deſtroyed by this artificial Thunder; but, being a little recovered from their Conſternation, they made ſeveral Additions to the Piece they were painting: And, having finiſhed it, the Ambaſſadors carried the Picture, with a Preſent *Cortez* had provided for the Emperor, to the Court of *Mexico*. They returned again ſeven Days after, and brought another magnificent Preſent from *Montezuma*; but ſaid, he could not admit of the *Spaniards* reſorting to his Court. To which *Cortez* anſwered, He durſt not return to his Prince, till he had delivered the Meſſage he was ſent upon to the Emperor *Montezuma*.

The *Mexicans* aſtoniſhed at the Artillery and ſmall Arms.

While *Cortez* remained in his Camp, he order'd his Fleet to ſail along the *Mexican* Coaſt, and ſent out Parties by Land to gain farther Intelligence of the State of the *Mexican* Empire; and, in the mean time, received a Meſſage from *Montezuma*, requiring him to depart his Dominions, or he ſhould look upon the *Spaniards* as his Enemies, and treat them as ſuch. This occaſioned a Mutiny among his Men; ſome of them repreſenting, that it was the higheſt Raſhneſs to attempt the Conqueſt of ſo great an Empire with ſo ſmall a Force: Whereupon *Cortez* pretended he would return to *Cuba*, and get a farther Reinforcement of Troops; but finding a Majority of his Soldiers deſirous of proſecuting immediately what they had ſo fortunately begun, he determined to continue his March towards the Capital City of the Empire: In which Reſolution he was confirmed by the Cacique of *Zempoala*, who offered to enter into an Alliance with the *Spaniards*, againſt *Montezuma*.

The Cacique of *Zempoala* joins *Cortez*.

The General began his March to the City of *Zempoala*, the Capital of his new Ally; where, arriving in two or three Days, he was received by the Cacique with the greateſt Marks of Eſteem and Affection. He continued his March the next Day to the Town of *Quibiſlan*, where he ordered his Fleet to meet him. Here above thirty Caciques of the Mountains came and deſired his Alliance, offering to reinforce his Troops with an hundred thouſand Men, if he would aſſiſt them in throwing off the Yoke of *Montezuma*. This *Cortez* readily conſented to; and, as the *Indians* ſeemed to believe the *Spaniards* invincible, *Cortez* was not backward to encourage the Notion, looking upon it as a very likely Means to facilitate the Reduction of that Empire; of which he ſeemed to have ſuch an Aſſurance at this Time, that he took upon him to demoliſh the Temples and Images of the *Zempoalans*, who ſacrificed ſome of their Priſoners; telling them, that the God of the Chriſtians abominated ſuch Sacrifices: Nor was he content with this; but he converted one of the Temples into a Chriſtian Church, and erected an Altar in it, on which he placed an Image of the Bleſſed Virgin, and celebrated Maſs with great Solemnity.

The *Spaniards* march to *Zempoala*.

After this Execution on the Idols at *Zempoala*, *Cortez* returned to *Quibiſlan*, to which he gave the Name of *Vera Cruz*, where he found a Veſſel juſt arrived from *Cuba*, with ten Soldiers and two Horſes. By theſe he underſtood, that *Diego Velaſquez* continued to threaten him; and had ſent to the Court of *Spain* for the King's Commiſſion, to be Viceroy of that Iſland, and Captain-General on the Continent, that he might reap the Glory and Advantage of the Conqueſt of the Empire of *Montezuma*. Upon this Intelligence, *Cortez* drew up a Letter to the Court of *Spain*, in the Name of his principal Officers; giving an Account of the Succeſs of their Expedition, the Wealth and Fertility of the Country, the ſeveral Princes and Provinces that had already entered into an Alliance with the *Spaniards*, &c. Which Letter, with all the Gold, Jewels, and valuable Curioſities they had obtained by Preſents from *Montezuma*, or by Traffick with his Subjects, were ſent to *Spain*, as a Specimen of the Wealth of the Country. In this Diſpatch alſo was incloſed a Petition, that *Cortez* might ſtill continue to be the General and Conductor of the Enterprize.

New Adventurers arrive

Cortez ſends to *Spain* for a Commiſſion

But there was ſtill a conſiderable Party in the Intereſt of *Diego Velaſquez*, and amongſt them ſome of the principal Officers, his near Relations. And when the diſaffected Party found they were not able to carry their Point, they entered into a Conſpiracy to ſeize one of the Ships, and return to *Cuba*; which was diſcovered the Night before it was to have been executed; and *Cortez*, to deter his People from ſuch Attempts, cauſed two of the Conſpirators to be put to Death, two more to be whipped, and one to have his Foot cut off. The General and Officers of his Party alſo agreed to ſet Fire to the Fleet, after they had brought the Tackling, Iron Work, and Planks on Shore; whereby they rendered it impoſſible for any of their People to deſert him for the future, and added an hundred Seamen to their Army.

A Mutiny amongſt the *Spaniards*

Soon after the burning of the Fleet, appeared three *Spaniſh* Ships upon the Coaſt, that came from Don *Francisco de Garray*, Governor of *Jamaica*; who landed a Notary, attended by three Witneſſes, that were ſent to declare that the Governor of *Jamaica* laid Claim to that Part of the Coaſt where *Cortez* was, and intended to ſettle a Colony there; requiring him to remove from thence: But *Cortez*, inſtead of complying with the Demand, made the Notary, and ſix *Spaniards* more, Priſoners; and the Ships that brought them thereupon ſtood off to Sea again. After which, the General, having finiſhed the Fortifications of *Vera Cruz*, and left in it a Garriſon of an hundred and fifty *Spaniſh* Foot, two Troopers with their Horſes, and a good Number of Confederate *Indians*; began his March towards the City of *Mexico*, with the reſt of his Forces, conſiſting of five hundred *Spaniſh* Foot, fifteen Horſe, and ſix Field-Pieces, which were drawn by the Natives. He was attended alſo in this March by his Allies the neighbouring Caciques, and a numerous Army of *Indians*; and, having paſſed ſome high barren Mountains, he arrrived at the City of *Zocotblan*; the Cacique whereof commanded a great Extent of the Country, and received the *Spaniards* with a great Shew of Reſpect; but did not ſeem ſincere in the Friendſhip he profeſſed. Here, being adviſed to march through the Territories of *Tlaſcala*, an *Indian* Republick, that ever was at War with *Montezuma*; *Cortez* ſent four of the Chiefs of the *Zempoalans*, his Allies, as Ambaſſadors, to offer them Peace, and to demand a Paſſage through their Country. Which Propoſal being debated in the Senate of *Tlaſcala*, they determined to oppoſe the Paſſage of the *Spaniards* through their Country, till they had made an Experiment of their Strength. Indeed, they durſt not meet this terrible Enemy, whoſe Arms they reſembled to Thunder and Lightening, in a fair Field; but they frequently laid Ambuſcades in the Woods and Mountains, and, ſurrounding the Stragglers, killed and wounded ſome of the *Spaniards*; by which they learnt they were neither invulnerable nor immortal, as they had been repreſented. However, ſuch was the Advantage the *Spaniards* had in their Artillery and Horſes, that the *Tlaſcalans*, finding it in vain to continue

Cortez begins his March to *Mexico*

Arrives at *Zocotblan*

An Embaſſy to *Tlaſcala*

the

the War, were contented, at length, to accept of Peace, and become moſt faithful Allies to *Cortez*.

When *Montezuma* received Advice, that the *Spaniards* had ſubdued the *Tlaſcalans*, and were about to incorporate them in the Number of their Allies, he was under the utmoſt Conſternation; for he knew them to be the braveſt of the *Indian* Nations, and the moſt inveterate Enemies to his Empire. He ſent another Embaſſy therefore to *Cortez*, to repreſent the *Tlaſcalans* as a treacherous and barbarous People, who had no Regard to their Treaties, and who would take the firſt Opportunity that preſented itſelf of deſtroying thoſe that confided in them: But the *Spaniards* eaſily ſaw through the Deſign of *Montezuma*, and concluded their Treaty with *Tlaſcala* the ſooner, becauſe they found that Prince ſo much dreaded the Confederacy they were negotiating.

Montezuma made ſtill another Effort to divide the *Spaniards* and the *Tlaſcalans*: He even offered to pay a yearly Tribute to the *Spaniards*, conſiſting of half his Revenues, provided they would break with their new Allies, and lay aſide their Deſign of marching to *Mexico*: But *Cortez* would not conſent to either of theſe Propoſitions; and, receiving an Invitation from the Senate of *Tlaſcala*, to take up his Quarters in their Capital, he enter'd that City in Triumph, and had a Palace aſſign'd him, conſiſting of ſeveral Courts, large enough to accommodate his whole Army; and was entertain'd here at the Expence of that Republick, who readily conſented to become Fellow Subjects of the ſame mighty Prince the *Spaniards* were.

Cortez, having remained at *Tlaſcala* about 20 Days, received another Embaſſy from *Montezuma*, inviting him to advance to the Capital City of *Mexico*; for, finding the *Spaniards* were now become ſo powerful, by their Alliance with the *Tlaſcalans*, and other States, that it was in vain to oppoſe their March, he thought it the leaſt Evil of the two to receive them as Friends. And there is no doubt, but at this Time, *Montezuma* and the *Mexicans* were ſo terrified with the Artillery of the *Chriſtians*, and the formidable Alliances they had enter'd into with the Natives, that they might have made that Emperor tributary to *Spain*, and put almoſt any Terms upon him: But *Cortez*, who affected to make himſelf rather feared than loved, pretended that this ſudden Change in *Montezuma* could ariſe from no other Motive than Treachery; and was done with a View of ſurprizing and cutting off the *Spaniards*, when he ſhould have them in his Power.

However, tho' he knew of a Plot to cut off the *Spaniards* at *Cholula*, we are told, he continued his March thither; which was certainly very imprudent, if he really believed there was ſuch a Conſpiracy. But, as a Precaution, he took ſix or ſeven thouſand of the *Tlaſcalans* with him, beſides the *Zempoalans*, and the Forces of his other Confederates. Being arrived at the City of *Cholula*, he was received with all imaginable Marks of Eſteem and Affection. Hiſtorians relate, that ſuch were the joyful Acclamations of the *Mexicans*, on the *Spaniards* entering into this City, that they themſelves, tho' they had entertained a Jealouſy of a Conſpiracy before, were inclined to think them ſincere: That the Quarters the Magiſtrates aſſign'd the *Spaniards*, were four large Houſes, contiguous to each other, ſpacious enough to contain the *Chriſtians*, and all their Allies, except the *Tlaſcalans*, who were poſted as to have a Communication with their Friends; and that the *Spaniards*, having fortified their Quarters, were in no Danger of being ſurprized. But, whatever there was in the Conſpiracy of the *Indians* againſt the *Spaniards*, all agree, that *Cortez* and the *Tlaſcalans* fell upon the poor defenceleſs Citizens of *Cholula*, and cut the Throats of many Thouſands of them, without the Loſs of any of their own People: That he even ſet Fire to their Temples, which he burnt, with great Numbers of Prieſts and others, who had retired thither, either to invoke the Protection of their Gods, or as to Sanctuaries, which they thought none would be ſo barbarous as to violate.

Cortez murders ſeven thouſand *Mexicans* at *Cholula*.

This terrible Execution had ſuch an Effect on *Montezuma*, that he immediatly ſent another rich Preſent to *Cortez*, with farther Offers of Submiſſion and Reſignation to his Pleaſure: And there is little room to doubt, but *Cortez* expected this Maſſacre would be attended with ſome ſuch Conſequences.

Having remained ſome Days at *Cholula* after this Maſſacre, the General made the neceſſary Preparations for his March, and advanced, by eaſy Stages, towards the Court of *Mexico*, in order to gain farther Intelligence, and ſtrengthen himſelf by Alliances with the Caciques, or *Mexican* Princes, great Numbers of them reſorting to him, and complaining of the Tyranny and Oppreſſion of *Montezuma*. Nor was *Cortez* ſorry to ſee theſe Humours prevail in the Heart of the Country. Indeed the Diſaffection of the *Mexicans* was ſo univerſal, that *Montezuma* could not, without Difficulty, have prevented the Revolt of his Subjects, and a Confederacy of the *Indian* Caciques againſt him, if the *Spaniards* had not come to their Aſſiſtance. And, conſequently, the mighty Actions pretended to be done by theſe Adventurers, had very little to be admired in them.

Cortez enters into new Alliances, and advances towards *Mexico*.

It is pretended, that *Montezuma* had laid another Plot to deſtroy the *Spaniards*, by leading them into a deſart Country, full of Defiles and difficult Paſſes, where he propoſed either to cut them off, or ſtarve them; but their *Indian* Allies adviſed *Cortez* to take a different Road, whereby he preſerved his Army: That the Stratagem failing, *Montezuma* commanded his Magicians to aſſemble, and diſtreſs his Enemies by their Enchantments, on Pain of Death: That thereupon the Magicians took their Poſt on a Mountain, in View of the *Spaniſh* Army; where, beginning to draw Circles, and invoke the Devil, the Prince of Darkneſs appeared to them, in the Form of one of their Idols, of a moſt terrible Countenance; and, with an angry Look, exceeding the Fierceneſs of the Idol, ſeem'd to threaten them: Whereupon they proſtrated themſelves before the infernal Spirit; but he, regardleſs of their Devotion, in a diſmal Tone, bid them *tell* Montezuma, *that, for his Tyranny and Cruelty, Heaven has decreed his Ruin*, with more of the like Nature. And when this Viſion was related to *Montezuma*, 'tis ſaid, he was aſtoniſh'd, and for ſome time remained ſpeechleſs; but, at length, broke out in a piteous Exclamation, and ſeem'd ready to diſſolve in Tears: And now, finding it in vain to oppoſe the March of the *Spaniards* any longer, he began to make Preparations for their Reception.

The Magicians employ'd by *Montezuma* to diſtreſs the *Spaniards*.

A pretended Viſion.

The *Spaniards*, continuing their March, were attended by ſeveral other Caciques, and Lords of the Country, and, drawing near to *Mexico*, in order to ſtrike the greater Terror into their Natives, he cauſed ſeveral *Indians* to be ſhot, that approached too near his Quarters, while he lay encamp'd at *Amemeca*, on the Borders of the *Mexican* Lake.

Here Prince *Cacamatzin*, the Nephew of *Montezuma*, attended by the *Mexican* Nobility, came to the General, and bid him welcome; assuring him, that he would meet with a very kind and honourable Reception from the Emperor; but intimated, that there having lately been a great Scarcity of Provisions in the City of *Mexico*, occasion'd by unseasonable Weather, they could not accomodate him as they desired; and therefore entreated he would defer his Entrance into that Capital, if he did not think fit entirely to decline going thither: But, *Cortez* appearing determined to advance, the Prince seemed to acquiesce; and the Preparations for the Reception of the *Spaniards* were continued.

Cortez arrived next at *Quitlavaca*, a City situated on an Island in the great Lake, five or six Leagues from *Mexico*; and the last Town the *Spaniards* came to, before they arrived at *Mexico*, was *Iztapalapa*, which stands upon the great Causey leading to that Capital, and is about two Leagues from thence; where he was received, with all imaginable Honours, by the Cacique and the neighbouring Princes. And having remained here one Night, he began his March early the next Morning, being the 19th of *November* 1519, in order to make his Entry into the Metropolis of the Empire. Being come within a League of the City, they were met by four thousand of the Nobility and great Officers of State, who, having paid their Compliments, advanced before them to the Gates of *Mexico*, and then made a Lane for the Army to march through; which consisted at this time of four hundred and fifty *Spaniards*, and six thousand *Tlascalans* and *Indians*. They had no sooner enter'd the Streets of *Mexico*, but they were met by two hundred Noblemen of the Emperor's Houshold, clothed in one Livery, with large Plumes of Feathers on their Heads, all of the same Fashion and Colour. These, after meeting and complimenting the General, fell back also, and, dividing themselves, made a Lane for the *Spaniards*: Then came another Body of the Nobility, of a superior Dignity, who made a more splendid Appearance; and, in the midst of them was the Emperor *Montezuma*, carried in a Chair of beaten Gold, on the Shoulders of his favourite Courtiers, four more of them sustaining a Canopy over his Head; the whole adorned with beautiful Feathers, through which the glittering Gold appeared: He was preceded by three Officers, with Rods of Gold, the Harbingers of the Emperor's Approach, on whose Appearance the People prostrated themselves, none daring to look up.

Cortez entered Mexico.

Cortez dismounting when the Emperor drew near, the *Mexican* Monarch alighted from his Chair, and Carpets were spread in the Street for him to tread on: He advanc'd, according to the *Spanish* Historians, with a slow solemn Pace, leaning on the Arms of two Princes, his Relations; and was met by *Cortez* with a becoming Haste, and a most profound Reverence; which *Montezuma* answer'd, by touching the Ground with his Hand, and afterwards raising it to his Lips; a Condescention which added to the Esteem and Veneration his Subjects already had of the *Spaniards*. The Conference between the Emperor and the General was short. After which the Emperor commanded one of the Princes, his Relations, to conduct the General to the Palace assign'd for his Residence; and then returned to his own Palace.

The first Interview with *Montezuma*.

The Royal House appointed for the *Spaniards* Reception, was so spacious as to contain all the *Europeans* and their Auxiliaries: It had thick Stone-Walls, flank'd with Towers: The Roof of the Palace was flat, and defended by Battlements and Breast-works; insomuch, that when the General had planted his Artillery, and placed his Guards, it had very much the Appearance of a Fortress. Hither *Montezuma* came the same Evening, and was received by *Cortez* in the principal Square of the Palace; and that Monarch, having entered the Room of State, and seated himself, order'd a Chair for *Cortez*; and a Signal was made for his Courtiers to retire to the Wall: Whereupon the *Spanish* Officers did the same; and *Cortez*, being about to begin a Speech by his Intrepreters, *Montezuma*, as is said, prevented him. The Speech of the Emperor, the Answer of *Cortez*, and the Emperor's Reply, are all related by the *Spaniards*.

Montezuma entertained by *Cortez*.

In the first of these Speeches, the *Spanish* Historians have made *Montezuma* speak what they on this Occasion; and have sufficiently discover'd that Submission *Montezuma* was then disposed to pay them: They shew, that the *Spaniards* were then so high in the Opinion of the *Mexicans*, that they might have imposed what Terms they pleased upon them, if they had not struck upon the only String that could have prevented it; namely, the demanding a sudden and total Change in their Religion, even at this first Conference. Whether the Answer said to be made by *Cortez* be genuine, or not, is not very material; but it is evident, from this first Speech their Writers have put into his Mouth, and many other Passages, as also from his demolishing their Temples and Images at *Cozumel* and *Zempoala*, that he began so early to prejudice the *Indians* against the *Spaniards*, by insisting on a Change of Religion before he had established his Authority.

Remarks on this Speech.

The *Spanish* General, attended by some of his Officers and Soldiers, went the next Day to the Palace of *Montezuma*, and was admitted to an Audience. And here again, their Historians relate, that *Cortez* entertained that Prince chiefly on the Subject of Religion: That he endeavoured to give him an Opinion of the Rites and Ceremonies of the *Christians*, exclaimed against human Sacrifices, and how unnatural it was to devour their own Species thus sacrificed. But *Montezuma* still insisted, *That his Gods were as good in his Country, as the God of the* Christians *was in theirs*: Nor could he dissemble his Resentment, when he was press'd so closely on this Subject.

The first Audience of *Cortez*.

At another time, *Montezuma* carried *Cortez*, and some of the principal *Spanish* Officers, to take a View of the great Temple; explained to them their Rites and Ceremonies, the Deities the Images represented, and the Use of the sacred Vessels and Utensils; and this with great Reverence and Seriousness: At which the *Spaniards* were so rude and impolitic, as to laugh and make a Jest of them. *Montezuma* thereupon admonish'd them to keep within the Bounds of Decency. But *Cortez*, transported with great Zeal, said to the Emperor, *Permit me, Sir, to fix the Cross of Christ before these Images of the Devil, and you will see whether they deserve Adoration or Contempt.* At which the Priests were enraged, and *Montezuma* himself in Confusion; and said to the *Spaniards*, *You might, at least, have shewn this Place the Respect you owe to my Person*: And immediately led them out of the Temple; but returned thither again himself, telling them, he must ask Pardon of his Gods for having suffered them to proceed so far.

The first Audience of *Cortez*.

Still there continued a great Intimacy between *Montezuma* and *Cortez*. The *Mexicans* still treated the *Spaniards* with a Respect that favour'd of Submission. *Montezuma* spoke of their King with the

the ſame Veneration he mention'd his own Gods; his Nobility paid a profound Reſpect to the *Spaniſh* Officers, and the People bow'd the Knee to the meaneſt *Spaniſh* Soldier: But in the mean Time, one of the Emperor's Generals, levying the annual Tax impoſed on that Part of the Country which lay in the Neighbourhood of *Vera Cruz*; theſe Caciques, who had thrown off their Subjection to the *Mexican* Empire, applied themſelves to *John de Eſcalante*, Governor of *Vera Cruz*, for Protection; who thereupon march'd out of that Fortreſs, with forty *Spaniards*, and three or four thouſand Confederate *Indians*, to their Aſſiſtance; and, tho' he had the good Fortune to defeat the *Mexican* General, yet one of the *Spaniards* was killed, and his Head ſent up to Court; and the Governor, with five or ſix more of his Garriſon, were mortally wounded. Which News being brought to *Cortez*, gave him great Uneaſineſs; and the more, becauſe he was inform'd that the *Mexicans* were conſulting how to drive him out of their Territories, which they did not now apprehend impracticable. Finding it impoſſible therefore to maintain his Authority among the *Indians* any longer, without entering on ſome Action that might give them freſh Cauſe of Aſtoniſhment, he reſolved to ſeize the Perſon of *Montezuma*, and bring him Priſoner to his Quarters: And accordingly, having given Orders to his Men to arm themſelves without Noiſe, and poſſeſs themſelves of all the Avenues leading to the Palace; he went to the *Mexican* Court, attended by ſeveral of his Officers, and thirty of his Soldiers; and, being admitted to the Emperor's Preſence, complained of the Violation of the Peace between them, by the *Mexican* General falling upon his Confederates, and afterwards killing a *Spaniard* in cold Blood. To which *Montezuma* anſwer'd, That if any thing of that Nature had been done, it was without his Orders; and he was ready to make Satisfaction. But *Cortez* gave him to underſtand, that nothing would ſatisfy them but his ſurrendering himſelf into their Hands, and reſiding with them in the Palace aſſign'd to the *Spaniards* for their Quarters.

Montezuma refuſing to put himſelf into their Hands, was informed, that, if he would not, they would carry him off by Force, or murder him if they were oppos'd: Whereupon he gave Orders to his Officers to prepare for his Removal to the *Spaniſh* Quarters, whither he went in the uſual State, and in all Appearance voluntarily, unleſs that he was attended by a Company of *Spaniards*. They alſo obliged him to take with him ſome of his Children, with the principal Officers of State, whom they detain'd as Hoſtages; all which could not be effected, without a Suſpicion, that they were in reality Captives to the *Spaniards*. But *Cortez* obliged *Montezuma* to declare, that his Removal was voluntary. This unfortunate Prince was allow'd to live in the ſame State he had done in his own Palace for ſome Time, and to iſſue his Orders, as if he had been under no manner of Reſtraint; only the *Spaniards* us'd not to admit too many of the *Mexicans* to enter their Quarters at a Time. His Table alſo, during his Confinement, was ſerv'd with greater Plenty than uſual, and what was left, was diſtributed amongſt the *Spaniſh* Soldiers. He ſpent moſt of his Time, when he was diſengaged from Affairs of State, among the *Spaniards*; and the Reſpect they paid him in return, gave him great Satisfaction. He would ſometimes play with *Cortez* at a *Mexican* Game, call'd *Tolaque*, wherein they bowl'd at certain golden Pins, and he us'd to diſtribute his Winnings amongſt the *Spaniards*: And he preſerv'd the Sentiments of a Prince, even at play. But ſometimes *Cortez* entertain'd him with more ſerious Subjects; pretending that his Zeal would not permit him to loſe any Opportunity of making the Emperor his Convert. Nor did the *Spaniards* only teize this unfortunate Prince, on the Point of Religion; but they compelled him to iſſue out his Orders for apprehending his General *Qualpopoca*, who had engag'd the *Spaniards* near *Vera Cruz*; and this Gentleman, the *Spaniſh* Officers, at a Court-martial, condemn'd to be burnt before the Gates of the Palace, with the reſt of the Captains, that were concern'd in that Enterprize. And leſt this ſhould occaſion an Inſurrection, and an Attempt be made to reſcue *Montezuma*, *Cortez* cauſed him to be laid in Irons that Morning the Execution was to be performed. But *Cortez* having ſeen the Execution perform'd, immediately return'd to *Montezuma*'s Apartment, and order'd his Fetters to be taken off. The *Spaniſh* Hiſtorians add, that *Montezuma* had now Leave to go whither he pleas'd; which is ſcarce credible: For when that Prince only deſired to perform his Devotions in one of his Temples, it was granted only upon Condition that he ſhould return to the *Spaniſh* Quarters again, and from that Day aboliſh human Sacrifices. A Body of *Spaniards* alſo attended him to the Temple, which they could do with no other View than ſecuring their Priſoner. Nor did he ever go abroad without a *Spaniſh* Guard, or without asking Leave of *Cortez*, or ever lay one Night out of their Quarters by their own Confeſſion. All Poſts of Honour or Profit were diſpoſed of by *Cortez* and his principal Officers, who were courted by the *Mexican* Nobility, when they ſaw that no Preferments could be had but by their Intereſt.

Montezuma in Irons

The moſt fatal of all the Errors *Cortez* committed, were his repeated Attempts, from the very time he landed, to deſtroy the Temples and Images of the *Mexicans*, and force them to receive a new Religion before they knew any thing of it, and before he was in a Condition to force their Compliance. And when the Emperor and his Subjects appeared to be all Submiſſion, and had in a Manner given the Reins of Government into the Hands of the *Spaniards*, they attempted, at once, without demanding Leave, or giving any Reaſon for it, to demoliſh all the Images of their Gods, and convert the principal Temples in *Mexico* into *Chriſtian* Churches; which occaſion'd, as might reaſonably be expected, a general Inſurrection; and the *Spaniards* were at length convinced, by the Oppoſition they met with, that it was expedient to admit their Idols to remain, for the preſent, where they ſtood. However, they perſiſted in erecting a *Chriſtian* Chapel in one of the Temples, and placing in it the Croſs, and an Image of the Bleſſed Virgin; and actually ſung Maſs in it with great Solemnity: Which the *Indian* Prieſts agreed not to oppoſe, provided their own Idols might be permitted to remain in their Temples: And thus the Matter was accommodated between them, and the Tumult appeas'd. However, the falſe Politicks or Bigotry of *Cortez*, in endeavouring to deſtroy the *Indian* Superſtition, and introduce his own thus precipitately, prejudiced that People againſt him to ſuch a Degree, that we hear of nothing but Plots and Conſpiracies on the one Side, and cruel Butcheries and Oppreſſion on the other, till the *Spaniards* eſtabliſhed themſelves by pure Force, and had in a Manner extirpated the Natives, inſtead of converting them to the *Chriſtian* Faith.

Montezuma receiving Advice, that his Subjects were unanimous in their Reſolution of reſtoring

him

him to his Liberty and Empire, ſummoned the vaſſal Princes to *Mexico*, who came thither attended with formidable Bodies; and, in this Situation, he had the Courage to let *Cortez* know, 'That, having acknowledged his Maſter, the King of *Spain*, the Heir of his Empire, and that he held his Dominions of him, and having prepared a rich Preſent for that King, to teſtify his Submiſſion and Dependance on him; he expected *Cortez* ſhould withdraw from *Mexico*, and return to the Prince that ſent him, to give him an Account of the Succeſs of his Embaſſy. And *Cortez*, it ſeems, was under ſuch Apprehenſions, that he ſhould ſuddenly be attack'd by the Forces of the whole Empire, if he refuſed to comply with this reaſonable Demand, that he did not think fit to object any thing againſt it: Only deſired Time to build a Fleet to tranſport his Troops to *Spain*, the Fleet which brought him thither being deſtroy'd: To which the *Mexicans* agreed, and immediatly aſſign'd him Timber, Work-men, and Labourers, to rebuild his Ships; which furniſh'd him with a Pretence to ſtay ſome time longer; and he gave Directions to the Work-men not to make too much haſte, expecting that a Reinforcement of Troops might in a ſhort time arrive from *Spain*, and enable him to maintain his Ground againſt all the Powers of *Mexico*.

Montezuma requires *Cortez* to return to *Spain*

The Anſwer of *Cortez* to this Overture.

But, while *Cortez* lived in Expectation of a friendly Squadron, Advice was brought, that eleven tall Ships, and ſeven ſmaller Veſſels, with eight hundred *Spaniſh* Foot, fourſcore Horſe, and twelve Pieces of Artillery on board, were arrived on the *Mexican* Coaſt, near *Vera Cruz*; and that they were ſent by *Diego Velaſquez*, Governor of *Cuba*, to proſecute the Conqueſt of *Mexico*, and to make *Cortez* and all his Men Priſoners, that refuſed to ſubmit to his Authority, and obey *Pamphilio de Narvaez*, who had the Command of the Fleet and Army employ'd in this Expedition. For ſo good was the Intereſt of *Diego Velaſquez* in the Court of *Spain*, that he received the Commiſſion he deſired, and which we before mentioned his Petitioning for. And, being informed of the Succeſs of the *Spaniards* under *Cortez*, and ſupported by the Commiſſion he had obtained, he propoſed, by this ſecond Embarkation, to reap all the Glory and Advantages he at firſt propoſed to himſelf by that Conqueſt.

Narvaez ſent from *Cuba*, with a Body of *Spaniards*, to reduce *Cortez*.

Pamphilio de Narvaez, arriving with his Fleet near *Vera Cruz*, ſummoned *Gonzalo de Sandoval*, who had been appointed Governor of that Fortreſs by *Cortez*, to ſurrender: But *Gonzalo* was ſo far from complying with the Summons, that he ſent thoſe that came on that Errand Priſoners to *Cortez* at *Mexico*. However, *Narvaez* landed his Forces, and march'd directly to *Zempoala*; of which *Cortez* receiving Advice, at firſt ſeem'd Thunder-ſtruck; but recovering from his Surprize, reſolved to make *Narvaez* Offers of Peace, and propoſe the uniting their Forces in the Service of their Prince. Having aſſign'd fourſcore *Spaniards* therefore, under the Command of *Pedro de Alvarado*, to keep Garriſon in *Mexico*; and charged *Alvarado* to have a ſtrict Eye over *Montezuma*, and not ſuffer too great Numbers of the *Mexicans* to reſort to him, or any long Conferences between them; and extorted a Promiſe from the Royal Priſoner, that he would not attempt an Eſcape in his Abſence; telling him, he ſhould ſoon return to *Mexico*, in much better Circumſtances; *Cortez* proceeded towards *Zempoala*, taking an advantageous Poſt in the Neighbourhood of that City, where he could either treat or defend himſelf. And firſt, he made Overtures to *Narvaez*, for accommodating the Differences between them, and uniting their Forces in the Service of their Country; and even offered to relinquiſh the Advantages of that Conqueſt, and go upon ſome other Enterprize with his Adherents, rather than the King's Service ſhould ſuffer. And tho' *Narvaez* refuſed to give him any other Terms than thoſe of ſurrendering at Diſcretion; yet the Conceſſions *Cortez* made, had ſuch an Effect on the Officers and Soldiers, which *Narvaez* commanded, that *Cortez* was ſenſible, he ſhould meet with but a faint Reſiſtance from them: And underſtanding that *Narvaez* kept but a very negligent Guard, he reſolv'd to attempt to ſurprize his Enemy in the Night-time. Accordingly, in a very dark tempeſtuous Night, when *Narvaez* leaſt expected ſuch a Viſit, *Cortez* fell upon his Quarters, and made him and his principal Officers Priſoners, before they were well awake: Whereupon the reſt of his Troops flung down their Arms, and moſt of them enter'd into the Service of *Cortez*.

Cortez makes Overtures of Peace to *Narvaez*.

Cortez ſurprizes *Narvaez*, and makes him Priſoner.

While *Cortez* was engaged in this Expedition *Pedro de Alvarado*, who was left to command the *Spaniards* in *Mexico*, behaved himſelf with that Inſolence and Cruelty, and diſcover'd ſuch an inſatiable Temper, as united the whole City againſt him: The People became deſperate, when they found that they were daily plunder'd and murder'd for their Wealth; their Religion derided, and their very Gods defaced and demoliſh'd. But the principal Occaſion of this Inſurrection, was *Alvarado's* falling upon the *Mexican* Nobility at a Religious Feſtival, when they were moſt of them aſſembled and engaged with the common People in a ſolemn Dance called *Atotes*; wherein all Diſtinction is laid aſide, and the whole City, Noblemen and Plebeians, join annually in celebrating the Day. *Alvarado*, obſerving they had put on their Jewels and richeſt Ornaments on this Occaſion, aſſembled his Soldiers, and fell upon them, putting above two thouſand of the *Mexican* Nobility to the Sword, and plunder'd whatever was valuable about them. Whereupon the *Mexicans*, expecting they ſhould all be maſſacred if *Cortez* returned with a Reinforcement of Troops, aſſembled from all Parts, and attack'd the *Spaniſh* Quarters on every Side. And, altho' they were beaten off by the Artillery and Fire-Arms of the Beſieged; yet, as they had cut off their Proviſions, the *Mexicans* would probably have ſtarved *Alvarado*, if *Cortez* had not returned ſuddenly to his Relief: He ſent therefore Expreſs after Expreſs to *Cortez*, to haſten his March; letting him know, that he ſhould be obliged to ſurrender, if he was not ſpeedily ſupplied and reinforced.

The Troops of *Narvaez* ſerve under *Cortez*.

The Inſolence of the *Spaniards* in *Mexico*.

Alvarado maſſacres and plunders the Nobility.

Cortez had juſt finiſh'd the Defeat of *Narvaez*, when he received Advice of the Diſtreſs his People were in at *Mexico*; and, having incorporated all the Troops *Narvaez* brought over with his own, began his March towards *Mexico*, with a thouſand *Spaniſh* Foot, an hundred Horſe, and ſeveral thouſand Confederate *Indians*; leaving at the ſame time Garriſons in the Towns of *Zempoala* and *Vera Cruz*. *Montezuma*, 'tis ſaid, met him at his Return, and congratulated his Succeſs: But that haughty General turned from the Emperor with all the Contempt imaginable; not ſo much as vouchſafing to ſpeak to him. He now looked upon himſelf to be powerful enough to ſubdue the *Mexican* Empire, without courting *Montezuma* or his Subjects; and therefore carried every thing with a high Hand. He had found a Garriſon of fourſcore *Spaniards* able to repel the whole Force of *Mexico*; and he did not doubt, now he ſaw himſelf at the Head of ele-

Cortez returns to *Mexico*.

Hiſtory of *Montezuma*.

Cortez treats *Montezuma* with Contempt.

ven People

ven hundred *Spaniſh* Horſe and Foot, with a multitude of Confederate *Indians*, he ſhould be able by Force to reduce the *Mexicans*, and make them Slaves: But he was near paying very dear for his Preſumption; for ſending out a Detachment of four hundred *Spaniards* and *Tlaſcalans*, in ſearch of the Enemy, they were ſurrounded, and in danger of having their Retreat cut off; and he himſelf, with the reſt of his Troops, eſcaped very narrowly being ſtarved, or cut in Pieces: For the *Mexicans*, render'd brave by their Deſpair, were not afraid to attack *Cortez* in his Quarters, tho' defended by a numerous Garriſon, and a Train of Artillery: And, when at any Time he made a Sally, he found Intrenchments in the Streets, and the Bridges broken down, which render'd his Cavalry in a manner uſeleſs; and, tho' he uſually came off victorious, he found he had committed a very great Error in ſhutting himſelf up in *Mexico*, from whence it was almoſt impoſſible to make his Retreat, and where he found it impracticable to fetch in Proviſions: So that if his People were not deſtroy'd by the continual Attacks of the Enemy, they muſt certainly in Time be reduced by Famine.

Revives the Hoſtilities with them.

They attack his Quarters.

In this Diſtreſs, *Cortez* thought fit to endeavour a Reconciliation with *Montezuma*, and make uſe of the Authority he ſtill retained among his Subjects, to induce them to lay down their Arms, and permit the *Spaniards* to march out of *Mexico*. But whatever the Emperor ſaid on this Occaſion, it is evident the *Mexicans* had little Regard to it. His Words, they knew, were put into his Mouth by the *Spaniards*, whoſe Priſoner he was, and tended only to procure them a ſafe Retreat; and they were ſenſible, if they loſt the Advantage they had, they muſt never expect ſuch another. The *Mexicans* reſolved therefore not to conſent to a Ceſſation of Arms, but rejected the Propoſal with Diſdain: And ſome Hiſtorians ſay, they were ſo enraged at the Overture, that they ſhot at their Emperor for making it, and mortally wounded him.

He propoſes to treat with them.

The *Mexicans* refuſe to let *Cortez* retire.

Cortez, finding the *Mexicans* were not to be amuſed with inſidious Propoſals, and that it would be impracticable to make his Retreat in the Day-time, reſolved to attempt it in a dark Night. Having divided the Treaſure therefore amongſt his Men, which amounted to the Value of a Million of Crowns, he iſſued out of his Quarters at Midnight, the Weather being extremely tempeſtuous: But he had not advanced a Mile upon the Cauſey, before he found himſelf attack'd on every Side by the *Mexicans*, both by Land and Water, the Lake being filled with their Canoes or Boats; and, as they had broke down the Bridges, and cut the Cauſey through in ſeveral Places, the *Spaniards* were in great Danger of being entirely cut off. *Cortez* indeed had foreſeen this, and provided a portable Bridge to paſs the Breaches in the Cauſey, which was of great Uſe to him in ſeveral Places: But the *Indians* found Means to deſtroy this Bridge before they were all paſs'd over, and their Rear guard, conſiſting of two or three hundred *Spaniards*, and a thouſand *Tlaſcalans*, was cut in Pieces. They loſt all their Artillery, Priſoners, Baggage, and Treaſure, with ſix and forty Horſes. However, *Cortez*, with the beſt part of his Forces, broke through the *Indians*, and eſcaped to the other Side of the Lake; and he and his Army thought themſelves very happy that there was no Army to oppoſe them there, and that they were purſued no farther, till they had Time to form and recover themſelves from their Conſternation.

He marches away in the Night.

He is attack'd by the *Mexicans*, and his Rear cut off.

Recover. He farther ide of the ake.

This good Fortune, it ſeems, was owing to the Compaſſion the *Mexicans* expreſs'd for the two Sons of *Montezuma*, and ſeveral Princes of the Royal Blood, whom they found ſlaughter'd among the *Spaniards*, when the Day-light appear'd. The *Mexicans* relate, that *Montezuma* himſelf was of this Number, and that the *Spaniards* murder'd both him and his Sons. The *Spaniards*, on the other hand, ſay, that *Montezuma* was killed before, by the Arrows of the *Mexicans*; and that the Princes alſo were accidentally killed in this Engagement, while it was dark. But however that was, the Princes were found dead, pierced through with many Wounds; and the *Mexicans* deferr'd the Purſuit of the *Spaniards*, to ſolemnize their Exequies. To which Piece of Piety *Cortez*, and the *Spaniards* who were left alive, in a great meaſure ow'd their Safety.

Montezuma and his Sons ſaid to be murder'd in this Retreat

The *Mexicans* ſolemnize their Funeral.

The *Spaniards*, having halted ſome Time to refreſh themſelves, continued their March towards *Tlaſcala*: But they had not advanced many Leagues before they were overtaken by the *Mexicans*, at a Time when they were ſo fatigued, that had not *Cortez* taken Poſſeſſion of a Temple, ſurrounded by a Wall of a large Extent, he would have found it difficult to have repulſed the Enemy. But the *Mexicans*, finding they could make no Impreſſion on the *Spaniards*, as they lay entrench'd within thoſe Walls, thought fit to ſound a Retreat. However, *Cortez*, apprehending he ſhould be diſtreſs'd here for want of Proviſions, began his March again at Midnight, in hopes to have got the Start of the Enemy: But being arrived on the Top of a very high Mountain, he diſcover'd the whole Forces of the *Mexicans*, conſiſting of two hundred thouſand Men, drawn up in *Battalia*, in the Valley of *Otumba*, through which it was neceſſary to paſs, in his Way to *Tlaſcala*. Whereupon *Cortez* made only this ſhort Speech to his Officers: WE MUST EITHER DIE, OR CONQUER; THE CAUSE OF OUR GOD FIGHT FOR US. And, finding an uncommon Ardour in his Soldiers to engage, immediately led them on. The Fight was for ſome Time bloody and obſtinate; and *Cortez* gave a ſurpriſing Turn to the Battle, by attacking the Imperial Standard carried by the *Mexican* General: For having killed the General, and taken the Standard, the reſt of the Troops fled, and were purſued with incredible Slaughter.

They continue the Purſuit

The Battle of *Otumba*.

The *Spaniards* victorious.

The *Spaniards* had not remained long at *Tlaſcala*, before an Embaſſy came to that Republick from the new-elected Emperor *Quetlavaca*, to negotiate a Peace between the two Nations of *Mexico* and *Tlaſcala*, and propoſe the uniting their Forces againſt their common Enemy the *Spaniard*. But the *Mexicans* were more dreaded by this Republick than the *Spaniards*; and the Generality of that People ſtill looked upon the *Spaniards* to be ſent from Heaven to their Aſſiſtance. The Ambaſſadors from *Mexico* therefore were diſmiſs'd, with Marks of Contempt, and Preparations made to carry on the War againſt that Empire, in Confederacy with the *Spaniards*.

An Embaſſy from the *Mexicans* to the *Tlaſcalans*.

The *Tlaſcalans* reſolve to quit the Party of *Cortez*.

The *Mexicans* were more ſucceſsful in their Negotiations with the City and Territory of *Tepeaca*, that lay between *Tlaſcala* and the *Spaniſh* Fort of *Vera Cruz*. They incited this People to take up Arms againſt the *Spaniards*; and the *Tepeacans* actually cut off ſome ſmall Parties that *Cortez* ſent from *Tlaſcala* to *Vera Cruz*; inſomuch that the General found it abſolutely neceſſary to reduce *Tepeaca*, in order to keep open his Communication with the Sea: And accordingly both the *Spaniards* and the *Tlaſcalans* made Preparations to invade *Tepeaca*. The *Mexicans*, on the other hand, ſent them a Reinforcement of Troops; and a general Battle enſued; wherein *Cortez* was ſo fortunate as to defeat their united Forces. After

A Confederacy between *Mexico* and *Tepeaca*

Tepeaca subdued by *Cortez*.

ter which, the City and Territory of *Tepeaca* submitted to the Conqueror, who took a severe Revenge on that unhappy People, murdering great Numbers of them in cold Blood, and selling the rest for Slaves. And a *Spanish* Fortress was erected at *Tepeaca*, to which they gave the Name of *Segura de la Frontera*, or *The Security of the Frontier*. *Cortez* also reduced the City of *Guacachula*, and several other Towns, by the Assistance of his *Indian* Confederates; of whom he had not less than one hundred thousand in his Army at this Time.

Vessels built for the Siege of *Mexico*.

Having taken a particular Survey of the Country, *Cortez* made himself Master of all such Posts as might be of Advantage to him in reducing the City of *Mexico*, which was ever his principal View: And, as he was sensible there was no approaching that City by Land but on the Causeys, which might be broken down, he order'd thirteen Brigantines and Sloops to be built, which would make him Master of the Navigation of the Lake, and enable him to attack the Town on every Side by Water as well as Land. While these Vessels were building, *Cortez* assembled an Army of two hundred thousand Confederate *Indians*, and made himself Master of *Tezcuco*, and several other considerable Towns upon the Lake; where he laid up Magazines of Ammunition and Provision, to carry on the intended Siege of the Capital. He was so fortunate also, before he enter'd upon this grand Enterprize, to be joined by near three hundred *Spaniards* from *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, who chose to follow his Fortunes, tho' they were sent out by those who were no Friends to *Cortez*, and with a View of depriving him of the Advantage of this Conquest; and with these he received a Supply of Arms and Ammunition, and some Recruits of Horses.

Cortez possesses himself of the Posts about that City.

Receives a Reinforcement of *Spaniards*.

Thus prepared and reinforced, *Cortez* commanded a Captain, five and twenty *Spaniards*, and twelve Rowers, to go on board each of the thirteen Brigantines. He also placed one of his Field-pieces on board every one of the Vessels; and, while his Fleet sailed to take a View of the City, he possessed himself of the three principal Causeys leading thither, in order to carry on as many Attacks by Land. All the *Europeans Cortez* had in his Army at this Time amounted to no more than nine hundred; of which about two hundred were Musketteers and Cross-bows, eighty-six were Horse, and the rest Pikemen; and his Train of Artillery consisted of eighteen Field-pieces, fifty whereof were Brass.

The Siege of *Mexico* commences.

The first Engagement with the *Mexicans* happen'd upon the Water: For when the *Spaniards* approach'd the City with their Brigantines, an innumerable Swarm of Canoes and Periguaes came out of the Canals of the City to oppose them: But the Brigantines, having the Advantage of the Wind, run in among the Canoes, sunk and overset them at Pleasure, having scarce any Occasion to make use of their Arms. Whereupon those Canoes that escaped the first Shock, fled, with the utmost Precipitation, back to the City, whither they were follow'd by the Brigantines, and several great Shot fired into the Town, to terrify the Inhabitants. After which the Brigantines retired; and the next Day some Progress was made at the three Attacks by Land: But the Enemy had made such Breaches and Intrenchments on the Causeys, as render'd the Approaches very difficult: And whenever the *Spaniards* advanced to attack them, Canoes full of armed *Indians* issued from the Town, and charged them in the Flank; which obliged *Cortez* to order some of the Brigantines to support his Land Forces, and beat off the Canoes. He also caused some thousand Canoes to be made, and mann'd by his Confederates, that might follow the *Mexicans* into the Shallows and Creeks. But, notwithstanding all these Precautions, the *Mexicans*, by their Stratagems, gained several Advantages of *Cortez*. At one Time they broke down one of the Causeys, cut off his Retreat, and took him Prisoner: But he was rescued out of their Hands as they were carrying him away. However, there were about sixty *Spaniards* and a thousand *Tlascalans* killed or taken in this Action, and many more wounded; and he was forced to leave one of his great Guns behind him.

Cortez repulsed in one of his Attacks, and taken.

At last, the wounded Men being recover'd, and the Army of the Confederate *Indians* recruited again to two hundred thousand Men, *Cortez* resolved to give a general Assault to the City; and accordingly they filled up the Breaches that had been made in the Causeys, and drove the Enemy back into the Town: Each Body made a Lodgment within the City, and fortified it; but could not advance far that Night. But the next Day the *Spaniards* got more Ground, and on the third repulsed the Enemy on every Side, and advanced to the great Square in the Middle of the Town, where *Cortez* drew up his united Forces; the Enemy retiring to the farther Part of the Town, and fortifying themselves there. Whereupon *Cortez* thought fit to offer them Terms; and they agreed to treat, with a View of amusing him, till the Emperor and his Nobility made their Escape; of which *Cortez* being apprized, renew'd the Hostilities, and the Emperor, with the principal *Mexican* Nobility, were taken by the Brigantines in the Lake, as they were endeavouring to get away. Whereupon all the rest of their Forces flung down their Arms, and submitted to Mercy; and *Cortez* took Possession of that Capital on the 13th of *August* 1521.

A general Assault.

Mexico taken.

The Emperor taken.

The *Spanish* Historians relate, that no less than one hundred thousand *Mexicans* fell by the Sword in the Defence of this City, besides great Numbers that perish'd by Famine, and other Calamities; and that this Conquest was attended with the Submission of most of the neighbouring Provinces, who consented to acknowledge themselves Subjects of the King of *Spain*.

The Slaughter of the *Mexicans* at this Siege.

The City of *Mexico* being thus reduced, *Cortez* distributed the Plunder among his Soldiers, reserving only a Fifth, with the most remarkable Curiosities, for the King; which he sent to *Spain* by some of his principal Officers, together with an Account of his Conquest, and the State of that Country; desiring his Majesty would confirm the Magistrates he had appointed to govern that Country, with the Grants of the conquer'd Lands and *Indian* Slaves he had made, to his Soldiers; and that his Imperial Majesty would send over Persons qualified to survey the Country, that it might be improved to the best Advantage; with Priests and Missionaries, for the Conversion of the People; as also Cattle, Seeds, and Plants, to improve the Lands: But 'tis said he provided particularly against the sending over Physicians or Lawyers.

The Spoil divided.

Part sent to the Emperor.

The Provinces that depended on *Mexico* having submitted to the *Spaniards*, *Cortez* summon'd the more distant *Indian* Princes to come and acknowledge the King of *Spain* for their Sovereign; of whom one of the chief was the King of *Mechoacan*. To this Prince *Cortez* sent *Montano*, and three other *Spaniards*, attended by twenty *Mexican* Chiefs, with a Present of *European* Utensils and Toys. The King himself came to the *Spanish* Quarters, soon after their Arrival; demanded, who they were? whence they came? and what brought them from so remote a Country? Whether

He has submit

ther they had nothing to eat at home, that they prey'd upon Strangers? And what the *Mexicans* had done, that they had deſtroy'd their City? Demanding if they deſign'd to do the like by him? If they did, he ſaid he ſhould not tamely ſubmit to it, but oppoſe Force to Force. To which the *Spaniards* anſwer'd, They came from the Emperor of the *Chriſtians*, to cultivate a Friendſhip with him, to traffick with his People, and to inſtruct them in the Worſhip of the true God.

The King of *Mechoacan* was at this Time determined to have ſacrificed the *Spaniſh* Ambaſſadors; but the *Mexicans*, who accompanied them, aſſured that Prince, if he offer'd any Violence to their Perſons, their General would infallibly take a ſevere Revenge on him and his Kingdom; giving an Account of the Wonders he had done in their Country with his Fire-Arms, Horſes, and Artillery. At which the King was ſo aſtoniſh'd, that he order'd the *Spaniards* to be treated with the utmoſt Reſpect; and ſoon after ſent in as much Gold and Silver as amounted to an hundred thouſand Dollars, beſides a great Quantity of Cloathing, Jewels and Ornaments, for the General, and a Preſent for each of the Ambaſſadors; with which they return'd to *Mexico*, attended by ſome *Mechoacan* Noblemen, who were ſent Ambaſſadors to *Cortez*. Before theſe *Cortez* order'd his Troops to be drawn up, to exerciſe and skirmiſh, making ſeveral Diſcharges of his Artillery and ſmall Arms, to their great Amazement.

The Ambaſſadors returning, and making their Report to their Prince of what they had been Witneſſes of at *Mexico*, he reſolved to pay *Cortez* a Viſit in Perſon; and, being arrived in that City, acquainted him, he was come to make his Submiſſion perſonally, and acknowledge his Subjection to the King of *Spain*. Whereupon *Cortez* acquainted him how happy he would be in becoming ſubject to ſo great an Emperor, who deſired nothing more than his Converſion, and to have him inſtructed in the Religion of the *Chriſtians*. But *Cortez* ſoon let the King of *Mechoacan* know, that he had a farther View than to make him acknowledge the King of *Spain* for his Sovereign; for he commanded *Chriſtopher Olid* to march into *Mechoacan*, with an hundred *Spaniſh* Foot, forty Horſe, and ſeveral thouſand Confederate *Indians*, to take Poſſeſſion of his chief Towns, and treat his Subjects as a conquer'd People. Whereupon he began to ſtand upon his Defence; for which great Numbers of his People were maſſacred in cold Blood. And *Cortez* having, through this Country, penetrated to the *South Sea*, erected Forts, and built Ships there, for farther Diſcoveries on that Side. *Gonzalo de Sandoval* alſo was ſent to ſubdue the Countries near *Tobaſco* and *Tecoantepec*, on the *North Sea*; and *Pedro de Alvarado* was detach'd to take Poſſeſſion of the Countries bordering upon the Vale of *Guaxaca*, to the Eaſtward of *Mexico*; who all ſubmitted to the Conqueror. And *Cortez* march'd in Perſon to the Province of *Panuco*, which he obliged alſo to ſubmit.

Notwithſtanding his barbarous Uſage of the Natives, and his refuſing to reſign his Government to thoſe who were ſent to ſucceed him in his Command, *Cortez* was declared Captain-General and Governor of *New Spain* by the Emperor. The Governors of *Hiſpaniola* and *Cuba* were commanded to re-inforce him, and give him all poſſible Aſſiſtance. Whereupon, finding himſelf eſtabliſhed in his Command, he ſet about rebuilding the City of *Mexico*, which he had burnt and demoliſh'd. He aſſign'd Places for building Churches, and other publick Edifices; laid out Market-places; divided Part of the Ground among the *Spaniards*, and the reſt among the Natives, giving them Encouragement to build and people the Place again. He aſſign'd one Quarter particularly to *Montezuma*, a Son of the late Emperor, and another to one of the moſt popular *Indian* Generals; and they ſoon erected a much finer Town than that which had been deſtroy'd. But nothing could be more magnificent than the Palace *Cortez* erected for himſelf, upon the Ground where *Montezuma*'s Palace formerly ſtood; about which he uſed ſeven thouſand Beams of Cedars, ſome of them an hundred and twenty Foot in Length. He alſo provided himſelf with a numerous Train of Artillery, which gave the *Indians* a vaſt Opinion of his Power. But that which was his real Strength, and did him moſt Service, was the prodigious Wealth he acquired by Plunder.

His own Palace.

Cortez was generally fortunate in the Choice of Commanders; but he appears to have been miſtaken in *Chriſtopher Olid*; for this Officer threw off his Dependance on *Cortez*, and was about to ſet up for himſelf: However, he was ſoon aſſaſſinated by ſome of the General's Creatures. In the mean time, Commiſſioners came over from *Spain*, to enquire into the Conduct of *Cortez* and his Fellow-Conquerors, repeated Complaints having been ſent to *Europe* of their Cruelties and Oppreſſions; which were found to be ſo many, and ſo manifeſt, that *Cortez* was removed from his Government for a Time, and threaten'd with Capital Puniſhment. To avoid which, he march'd againſt the large Provinces of *Honduras* and *Jucatan*; of which he made an entire Conqueſt, and, in the end, ſo cunningly managed his Affairs, by his Agents in the Court of *Spain*, that for two hundred thouſand Pieces of Eight he was reſtored to the Government of *Mexico*, with the Titles of *Don* and *Adelantado*, or Lord-Lieutenant, and was allowed to bear the ſame Arms as the Emperor of *Mexico* had borne. And now he acted more deſpotically than ever; and, to ſhew himſelf impartially cruel, he hanged the Emperor *Quatemoc*, who was elected after the Death of *Montezuma*, with two other tributary Kings, under pretence they were forming a Conſpiracy againſt him.

Commiſſioners appointed to enquire into his Oppreſſions.

Honduras and *Jucatan* conquer'd by *Cortez*.

He purchaſes a Pardon of the Court of *Spain*.

He hangs the *Mexican* Emperor.

In the Year 1527, the Complaints againſt *Cortez* being revived, he obtained Leave to go over to *Spain*, and make his Defence before the Emperor. He carried with him ſuch a prodigious Treaſure, that all his Faults ſeem'd to be entirely forgot. His Imperial Majeſty made him a Grant of the whole Valley of *Ariſto* in *Mexico*, with all the Towns and Villages belonging to it; in which he had twenty four thouſand Vaſſals. He created him Marquis of the Valley of *Guaxaca*, and conſtituted him Generaliſſimo of all the Forces in *New Spain*; tho' it was thought fit to exclude him abſolutely from the Civil Government: And ſeveral ſtrict Orders were made for the better Uſage of the Natives for the future. And, that theſe Orders might be the better obſerved, the Biſhop of *Mexico*, and the Superiors of the *Dominicans* and *Franciſcans*, were made Protectors of the *Indians*. From theſe intended Regulations, we may gather what the Grievances of the *Indians* were; namely, their being obliged to carry Burdens beyond their Strength; to work in the Mines, Fortifications, and Buildings, with ſuch Rigour, that they periſh'd in the Service; that their Women, Wives, and Daughters were taken from them, and abuſed by the luſtful *Spaniards*; that they made Slaves of the Natives without Diſtinction, and tranſported them to diſtant Countries. And it was many Years before theſe Abuſes were fully redreſs'd, even in thoſe Countries that peaceably ſubmitted to their Dominion.

He goes over to *Spain*, and buys his Peace again.

Orders in Favour of the Natives

Their Grievances.

Before

Before *Cortez* let *Old Spain*, he procured all the Grants of the Lands and Territories of the *Indians*, which he had given to his Soldiers, to be confirm'd; and himself to be constituted Governor of all the Continent and Islands he should discover in the *South* Sea; and a twelfth Part of such Discoveries to be granted to him and his Heirs. Returning to *America*, and not being suffer'd to go to the City of *Mexico*, he took up his Residence at *Tezcuco*, some few Leagues distant from it, where he had a very great Court.

Cortez attempts new Discoveries.

Before his going to *Old Spain*, he had sent three Ships through the *South* Sea to the *Spice Islands*, in the *East-Indies*; where, his People encountering the *Portuguese*, his Ships and most of the Men were destroy'd, some few only returning to *Old Spain*, with an Account of their Misfortune. Before *Cortez* received Advice of this Accident, he fitted out two other Ships on the *South* Sea, to make Discoveries towards the North-west; but these met with no better Success than the Fleet he had

He is unsuccessful.

sent to the *East-Indies*. He again fitted out two Ships more, to make Discoveries to the North-west; but these also were as unfortunate as the former. Whereupon he embarked on the *South* Sea himself, but did not meet with better Success than those he had sent before him. In the Year 1539, however, he fitted out three Ships more in the *South* Sea, and his People landed in *California* on the opposite Continent, but made

He goes to *Spain*, and is not suffer'd to return to *Mexico*.

no Settlement. And having been at a vast Expence in these Naval Expeditions, he went over to *Old Spain* again, in hopes of prevailing on that Court to reimburse him his Charges. But the Ministry expecting to have received an Increase, rather than a Diminution of their Treasure, from these Expeditions; he did not meet with so favourable a Reception as formerly. He was never suffer'd to return to *Mexico* again; and remained a kind of Prisoner at large in the Emperor's Court, where he died on the 2d Day of

His Death

December 1545, in the 62d Year of his Age; and his Body was afterwards transported to *Mexico*, and inter'd in the Cathedral of that City.

How the *Spaniards* behaved themselves towards the Natives, on the Conquest of this new World, will appear from the Bishop of *Chiapa*, who resided there at the Time of the Conquest.

The Bishop of *Chiapa*'s Narrative of the *Spanish* Cruelties.

This Prelate affirms, That *Hispaniola* and the neighbouring Islands were full of People, as well as the Continent, when the *Spaniards* first discover'd *America*: That the *Spaniards* did not cease for forty Years (from the Year 1492, when *America* was first discover'd, to the Time our Author wrote, *Anno* 1532) to torture, murder, and destroy them, by a variety of strange and unaccountable Cruelties; insomuch, that of three Millions of Souls they found in the Island of

The Islands depopulated.

Hispaniola, there were not two hundred Native *Indians* upon that Island; and the neighbouring Island of *Cuba*, equally populous, was in a Manner depopulated: That those of *Porto Rico* and *Jamaica*, abounding with People, when the *Spaniards* came thither, were become perfect Deserts: That the *Bahama* Islands, which contain'd five hundred thousand Souls, had not one human Creature left upon them; and the *Antilles*, or *Caribbee*

On the Continent

Islands, had been destroy'd in like Manner: That on the Continent, the *Spaniards*, by their Cruelties, had depopulated ten Realms larger than *Spain*: That he was able to give a certain and particular Account of twelve Millions of Souls, Men, Women, and Children, that, within the said Space of forty Years, had been unjustly put to Death by the *Spaniards* on the Continent; and,

Fifteen Millions destroy'd.

he verily believed, more than fifteen Millions of Souls had perish'd by their Hands within that Time. That he himself saw four or five of the *Indian* Princes, or great Lords, broiled at one time on Gridirons, over a slow Fire; and others roasted: Many more he saw torn in Pieces with Dogs: That they massacred whole Towns, sparing neither Women nor Children; ripped up Women with Child; beat out the Brains of some Infants, and drowned others; and that they would, in Sport, lay Wagers which would kill the poor *Indians* soonest, cutting off their Heads, or piercing their Breasts: That the Soldiers being about to burn one of the *Indian* Princes, whose Name was *Hathway*, a Priest was sent to him, to persuade him to turn *Christian* before he died; and the Priest telling him he would go to Heaven, a Place of Happiness, if he embrac'd Christianity; otherwise he must expect eternal Torments in Hell; *Hathway* demanded, If the *Spaniards* went to Heaven? And being answer'd, Yes; the *Indian* Prince reply'd, *Then let me go to Hell, where there will be no* Spaniards. If the *Spaniards* had Intelligence, that any Town was rich in Gold, or other Treasure; it was an ordinary Thing to send a Party of Men to summon them to turn *Christians*, and acknowledge themselves Subjects of *Spain*; which if they refused, they thought they had sufficient Authority to plunder the Place, and massacre the Inhabitants. But many of their Parties went farther; they would make Proclamation, a Mile or two before they came at the Town they had destin'd to Destruction, *That the Inhabitants should immediately come and do Homage to the King of* Spain; which the poor People knowing nothing of, were attack'd without any Notice, and put to the Sword. And that, in such Expeditions, the Governor of the Province of *Terra-Firma* only, destroy'd eight hundred thousand Souls between the Years 1514 and 1522.

Variety of Torture.

These Facts well attested.

This Prelate, in his Narrative, descends to Particulars, and gives an Account of the several Depopulations of different Countries, by different Commanders. His Relations are, indeed, so shocking, that it cannot be supposed they should easily gain Credit: But if we consider, that their Author was Bishop of *Chiapa* during the Administration of *Cortez*; that he came over to *Spain* to obtain a Redress of these Grievances; that he met with a very great Opposition from *Cortez* and his Friends, and yet procured that General to be displaced, and obtained an Order that the *Indians* should be no more treated as a conquer'd People; that *Cortez* was actually prosecuted for these Outrages, and not suffer'd to return to *Mexico* to his dying Day, notwithstanding the pretended Services he had done; we must believe, that the Charge was in a great Measure true; especially when we find some great *Spanish* Ecclesiasticks endeavouring to maintain, *That it was lawful to massacre and enslave any People, who refused, upon their Summons, to turn Christians, and submit to the Pope in Spirituals, and to the Emperor in Temporals.*

Give us Leave to add a Paragraph out of the same Prelate's Apology for the poor *Indians*.

Part of the Bishop's Apology for the poor *Indians*. They did not sacrifice such Number as was pretended.

" It is not true, says he, that the *Indians* did " annually sacrifice twenty thousand Persons, or " one hundred, or even fifty; but the Tyrants " have invented such Stories to justify their own " Barbarity, and that they might have a Pre- " tence to detain those miserable People in Sla- " very. But it may very truely be said, *That* " *the* Spaniards, *since their Arrival in the* Indies, " *have annually sacrificed to their adored Goddess,* " *Avarice, more People than the* Indians *sacrificed in* " *an hundred Years.* We have, in little more than " forty Years, depopulated and destroyed more " Countries than *Europe* contains: We have not " only plunder'd and usurp'd the Dominion of them, " but have murder'd twenty Millions of Souls."

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Mexican *Animals, Vegetables, and Minerals.*

nimals at were t found *Ame-ca.*

WHEN the *Spaniards* first arrived in this new World, they found neither Horſes, Oxen, Camels, Aſſes, Goats, Sheep, Elephants, Hogs, or Dogs, of the *European* Species. They had indeed, ſome little dumb Dogs, with which they beat for Game; but no other kind. The *Indians* were as much afraid of the great Dogs the *Spaniards* carried over, as of Lions or Tygers: For their cruel Conquerors hunted this unhappy People in the Woods and Mountains with their Dogs, as they would hunt wild Beaſts, and tore Men, Women, and Children, in Pieces. Nor were Horſes leſs terrible to the *Indians*, than the *European* Dogs.

nimals at were und ere.

There were great Numbers of Wolves and Bears towards the North, and ſome Lions and Tygers in the warmer Climates; and there were alſo ſome few Elks. But whatever the *Indians* wanted of our Animals, the *Spaniards* ſoon ſupply'd them with, particularly Horſes, Oxen, Sheep, and Hogs; which increaſed ſo prodigiouſly, that upwards of an hundred Years ago, it was an ordinary thing for a *Spaniſh* Grazier to be poſſeſs'd of ten or twenty thouſand Sheep. And the Horſes and black Cattle are increaſed as much as the Sheep; ſo that great Numbers of Bulls and Cows are found wild in their Foreſts; and the *Spaniards* hunt them. The wild Cattle of *Mexico* are the fatteſt in the dry Seaſon, that is, in *February*, *March*, and *April*.

ropean ars le ſtly in-eaſed.

Beſides the Beaſts already mention'd, which the *Americans* had in common with us, they had alſo ſeveral kinds of red and fallow Deer, Hares, Rabbets, Foxes, Otters, Wild-Cats, Pole-Cats, Squirrels, Porcupines, Monkeys, and Jackalls. But the Beaſts peculiar to *America*, and particularly found in *Mexico*, are, their *Pecaree* and *Warree*, the *Opoſſum*, the *Mooſe*, the *Guanoe*, the *Flying Squirrel*, the *Sloth*, the *Armadillo*, the *Rackoon*, the *Ounce*; and ſome amphibious Animals. The *Pecaree* is a little, black, ſhort-legg'd Animal, that has ſome Reſemblance of a Hog: The Navel grows upon its Back, and, if it be not cut off as ſoon as the Creature is kill'd, it immediately corrupts the whole Carcaſs.

ther eaſts ey had com-on with a. eaſts pe liar to *merica.*

The *Warree* is leſs than the *Pecaree*, and has its Navel in the uſual Place; but the Shape is much like the former. The *Opoſſum* is about the Size of a Fox, and grey; remarkable for its falſe Belly, in which ſhe preſerves her young Ones when ſhe is purſued. The *Mooſe* is ſomething like a red Deer in his Head and Neck: He has Horns alſo like a Deer, near two Yards wide; but is as big as an Ox, and ſlow of Foot. The *Guanoe* is ſhap'd like a Lizard; the Body as big as a Man's Leg, but grows tapering towards the Tail, which is very ſmall: They have four ſhort Feet and Claws; and are of various Colours. The *Flying Squirrel* has a very ſmall Body, and looſe Skin; which he extends like Wings, and is borne up by the Wind. The *Sloth* is about the Bigneſs of a large Spaniel; has a round Head, ſmall Eyes, and very ſharp Teeth and Claws: He feeds on the Leaves of Trees, and frequently kills them; but is ſo many Days in getting down one Tree, and climbing another, that tho' he be fat when he comes down, he grows lean before he gets to the Top of another. The *Armadillo* is as big as a ſucking Pig, and has a long Body incloſed in a thick Shell, which is join'd under the Belly: This Shell opens, and it puts out its Head and Legs when it walks. The *Rackoons*, are only a Species of Rats, but four times as large, and burrow in the Earth like Rabbets. They have Rabbets alſo of a different Species from ours, as large as Hares, and without Tails. The *Ounce*, or *Tyger-Cat*, ſeems to be only a ſmall Species of Tygers: They are ſaid to be fiercer than thoſe of a larger Size, and more miſchievous. The *Sea Cow* and *River-Horſe*, called by the Ancients *Hippopotamus*, are the ſame Animals; and are variouſly deſcribed by *American* Travellers. The *Manatee* is of a different Species: For the firſt is an amphibious Creature, with four Legs, that feeds on Shore; the other a pure Fiſh, without Legs. Their *Alligators* are a Species of *Crocodiles*. Theſe are numerous, and have done much Miſchief in *America*. They are amphibious Animals, accuſtom'd both to Land and Water; ſhap'd like a Lizard, twenty or thirty Feet in Length: They have four ſhort Feet, or rather Claws, on which they crawl: Their Head is flat, their Eyes large, and their Back cover'd with broad Scales, reſembling Armour, and as impenetrable. Some of them are ſo large, 'tis ſaid, that they have actually ſwallow'd Men whole. But tho' they are of that prodigious Bulk, they proceed from an Egg no bigger than a Turkey's, which is hatch'd in the warm Sand.

There is an Animal, which *Dampier* calls a *Squaſh*, bigger than a Cat, and its Head like that of a Fox, with ſhort Ears and a long Noſe; the Legs ſhort, and runs up Trees like a Cat; the Body is cover'd with a fine yellow Hair, and the Fleſh very good Meat. The *Monkeys* of *Campeachy*, the ſame Writer relates, are the ugliеſt he ever ſaw: They are much larger than a Hare, and have great Tails two Foot and a Half long; the Body and upper Part of the Tail cover'd with coarſe long black Hair: They keep together twenty or thirty in Company, and ramble over the Woods, leaping from Tree to Tree; and if they meet with a ſingle Perſon, he is in danger of being torn in Pieces by them.

As to the feather'd Race, we find in *Mexico*, *Parrots*, *Parrokites*, *Macaws*, *Quams*, *Curaſoes*, *Cockrecoes*, *Bill-Birds*, *Humming-Birds*, *Eagles*, *Vultures*, *Doves*, *Pigeons*, *Subtil-Jacks*, *Black-Birds*, *Turkeys*, and tame Poultry; *Pelicans*, *Cormorants*, *Bats*, and a Multitude of other Fowls and Birds, which are not found in this Part of the World. The *Macaw* is ſhap'd much like a *Parrot*, but twice as big; the Feathers of the Body are of ſeveral bright and lively Colours: It has a buſhy Tail, with two or three long ſtraggling Feathers, red or blue. They make a great Noiſe in the Morning reſembling a hoarſe Voice; but they will imitate the Voices of the *Indians*, and their Way of Singing; as alſo the Voice of any Bird or Animal almoſt. The *Quam* Birds and Fowls.

is a wild Land-Fowl of the Bigneſs of a Hen-Turkey, and has a Bill like that Fowl; the Feathers of a Dun Colour. The *Curaſoe* is larger than the *Quam*, but much of the ſame Shape: The Bones are ſo noxious, that the Natives bury them, and will not ſuffer a Dog to eat them; for a Dog runs mad if he eats one of them. The *Carrion-Crow* is black, and as big as a Raven; has a bald Head, and reddiſh Neck like a Turkey, and lives altogether on Carrion. The *Subtil-Jack* is as big as a Pigeon, the Feathers generally black, but the Tips of the Wings yellow: Its Neſt is always hung by a String, at the Extremity of the Bough of ſome Tree that ſtands alone. There are alſo ſeveral Sorts of Birds to which the *Engliſh* have given the Name of *Bill-Birds*, from their Bills being almoſt as big as their Bodies. The *Cockrecoes* are of the Colour of a Partridge; but ſomething leſs, and their Legs longer. The *Cardinal* is about the Bigneſs of a Wood-Lark; of a Scarlet Colour, has a beautiful Tuft of Feathers on the Head, and ſings ſweetly.

Dunghill Fowls.

Their Poultry, or Dunghill-Fowls, differ little from ours, but are ſomething leſs. Their *Quails* are of the ſame Colour as thoſe of *Europe*, but their Fleſh is not ſo good. The *Guiachichil*, or *Suck-Flower*, is always ſeen flying with a Flower in its Mouth. It is never known to reſt on the Ground, but will ſtick its Beak into the Bough of a Tree, and remain there ſeveral Months. The *Humming-Bird* is a little feather'd Animal, not much bigger than a large Waſp. It has a black Bill, like the Point of a Needle; and its Legs and Feet are proportionable to its Body.

Birds of Prey.

Water-Fowl.

Their Birds of Prey are *Eagles*, *Vultures*, *Hawks*, and the *Carrion-Crow*, already mention'd. Their Water-Fowl, *Geeſe*, *Ducks*, *Curlews*, *Herons*, *Crab-Catchers*, *Pelicans*, *Cormorants*, and *Fiſhing-Hawks*. The *Crab-Catcher* is of the ſame Shape and Colour as the *Heron*, and has its Name from feeding on ſmall Crabs. The *Pelican* is a web-footed Fowl, almoſt as big as a Gooſe, and of a grey Colour. Its Legs are ſhort, the Neck long, the Bill ſeventeen or eighteen Inches long, and two Inches broad. It is remarkable for a Bag or Purſe in the Neck, in which it keeps a Reſerve of Prey after the Appetite is ſatisfied. The *Cormorant* is of the Shape and Size of a Duck, and the Bill and Feet like a Duck's; the Feathers on the Body black, only white on the Breaſt: They live on ſmall Fiſh. The *Fiſhing-Hawk* is of the Size and Shape of an *Engliſh* Sparrow-Hawk, and ſits by the Sea or River Side; from whence he flies at the ſmall Fiſh, and ſnatches them out of the Water without wetting his Wings. The *Bats* of this Country are as large as Pigeons.

Inſects and Vermin.

In all hot Countries there are abundance of poiſonous and troubleſome Inſects and Vermin, and *Mexico* has its Share of them; ſuch as *Snakes*, *Scorpions*, *Centipees*, *Spiders*, *Toads*, *Flies*, *Muſketoes*, and *Piſmires*. There is in *Mexico* a yellow *Snake*, as big as the Small of a Man's Leg, ſix or ſeven Foot long, that takes little Pains to hunt for its Prey; but lies conceal'd, and ſurprizes the ſmall Animals as they paſs by. There is alſo a green *Snake*, about the Bigneſs of a ſmall Cane, and four or five Foot in Length: And a dun-colour'd *Snake*, about two Foot long, that frequents Houſes, and kills Mice and other Vermin. Their *Scorpions* and *Centipees* do not differ from thoſe of other Countries. Their *Spiders* are of a monſtrous Size; particularly one, that is near as big as a Man's Fiſt, has long Legs, and two black Teeth, or Horns, two Inches in Length, and as ſharp as a Thorn. Here are great black *Ants*, whoſe Bite is almoſt as painful as the Sting of a Scorpion: Nor are their ſmall yellow *Ants* leſs dreaded, which come in ſuch Swarms ſometimes, that a Man ſhall be cover'd with them in an inſtant. There are another ſort of black *Ants*, with long Legs, that come into Houſes, run over their Cheſts and Beds, and ſearch every Place. The *Muſketoes*, or *Gnats*, are another ſort of Inſects that ſufficiently try the Patience of the Natives, and are much more miſchievous to Strangers in hot Countries. There is alſo in *Mexico* an Inſect, called by the *Spaniards Mixa*, which is ſo ſmall that it can ſcarce be diſcerned. This Creature uſually ſtrikes into the Feet or Legs of a Man, but ſeldom into the Hands, or any Part of the Body. They make the Part they ſtrike into burn and itch, and at firſt they may be eaſily pick'd out; but if they are let alone, they get farther into the Fleſh, and lay a great many Nits, which itch intolerably; and if the Part be rubb'd or ſcratch'd, it immediately feſters. *Dampier* alſo mentions *Leg-worms*, that he met with in the Bay of *Campeachy*, of the Bigneſs of a Hen's Quill, and three Quarters of an Inch long; each of them having three Rows of black, ſhort, ſtiff Hair, running quite round them.

The *Shining-Fly* is an Inſect common to the *Eaſt* and *Weſt Indies*: Theſe, in the Night-time, appear like ſo many Stars, at a little Diſtance. As to *Bees*, they have ſeveral Sorts; from whom the Natives get a great deal of Honey. But the Inſect called *Cochineal* is ſtill more profitable to the *Mexicans* and *Spaniards* than the *Bee*: It is bred in a Fruit that grows on a Shrub about five Foot high, and full of Thorns: There is a red Flower on the Top of the Fruit, which covers the Fruit when it begins to open; but being ſcorch'd away in a Day or two, the Fruit opens as wide as the Mouth of a Pint Pot, and the Inſide is full of theſe ſmall red Inſects, which have curious thin Wings. When the *Indians* perceive the Fruit open, they ſpread Sheets under the Trees, and ſhake them; whereupon theſe Inſects take Wing, and hover for a little while over the Tree, and then fall down dead into the Sheets. When they fly up, they appear red; but when they fall down, they are black. However, they are uſed in dying the fineſt Scarlet. The *Locuſt* is an Inſect that brings Deſtruction with it wherever it comes, and is found in almoſt every hot Country at one Time or other.

Fiſh.

The Sorts of Fiſh that Travellers have taken notice of in the *American* Seas, Lakes, and Rivers, are chiefly theſe following: The *Paracood* is about three Foot and a half long, and eight or ten Inches round, and haunts the Lakes, Iſlands, and Places near the Shore. The *Gar-fiſh* is of the Shape of the former, but leſs; and has a long ſharp Bone in his Snout, like the *Sword-fiſh*; only as the *Sword-fiſh*'s Bone is flat, and indented like a Saw, this of the *Gar-fiſh* is faſhion'd like a Spear, round, ſmooth, ſharp at the End, and about a Foot long. *Mullets* and *Snooks* are plentiful in this Part of the World; and the *Ten-pounder*, in Form much like a *Mullet*, but ſo full of Bones there is ſcarce any eating them. The *Spaniſh Mackerel* are in Shape and Colour like thoſe of *Europe*; but a Yard long and more, and nine or ten Inches about. There are three Sorts of Flat-fiſh, called the *Stingray*, the *Raſpray*, and the *Whipray*. They are all of them about a Foot and a half broad. The *Old Wife* alſo is a flat Fiſh, and very good Meat; as is the *Cavally*, a ſmall ſlender Fiſh. The *Tarpom* is a good firm Fiſh, of fifty or ſixty Pound Weight. The *Sculpin* is a Fiſh ſurrounded with little ſharp Bones. The *Manatee* is the beſt Fiſh on the Coaſt, but

has

has been already described among the amphibious Animals. He is generally taken in the Sea, and sometimes in Creeks and the Mouths of Rivers.

Of *Tortoise*, or *Turtle*, there are several Sorts: Some are Sea-Tortoise, and have Fins; these seldom come on Shore, but to lay: Others live, for the most part, on the Land; have Claws, and will run a good Pace. Some weigh upwards of three hundred Pound, and others not five. Every Species of Turtle lay their Eggs in the Sand, three times in the Season; at every Time fourscore or an hundred Eggs, about the Bigness of an Hen's Egg, but round, and cover'd only with a white Membrane. Those that make it their Business to catch Tortoise, wait for them when they come on Shore to lay, and turning them on their Backs with Poles, the Creature can never get up again. The Male always accompanies the Female when she goes to lay, and never leaves her till she returns. They are nine or ten Days in the Act of Generation in the Water, the Male on the Female's Back; nor is the Male to be frighten'd away at these Times: She, indeed, endeavours to get away if a Boat approaches when they rise to take Breath; but the Male grasps her with his two Fore-Fins, and holds her fast; and a very bad Striker may strike them both at such Times. It seems, a Sea-Tortoise cannot remain in the Deep, without coming up to the Surface of the Water to take Breath, once within eight or ten Minutes. These Animals live to a very great Age; at least we are sure the Land-Tortoises do so: For Archbishop *Laud* put one into his Garden at *Lambeth* an hundred Years ago, which is living there still, at least was very lately. This Creature makes a Hole in the Ground about *Michaelmas* every Year, where it lies all the Winter, and appears again about *Easter*; and is supposed to eat nothing while under Ground.

In the *American* Seas they have *Oysters* and *Muscles* of a prodigious Size. Some *Rock Oysters* are said to be so large, that one of them would dine several Men: But the most valuable is the *Pearl Oyster*, found in several Parts of the *Mexican* Coast. These are about the Size of our middling Oysters, but flatter and thinner: The Pearl is found at the Head of the Oyster, between the Meat and the Shell. Some will have twenty or thirty small Seed Pearls about them, and others none at all. The Shell of the Oyster is more beautiful on the Inside than the Pearl itself; the Flesh, however, is scarce eatable. The *Indians* dive for these Oysters in five, six, seven, or eight Fathom Water, and bring up ten or twelve at a Time; and those on board the Vessel open them as they are brought up. The *Spaniards* destroy'd a great many Thousand of the *Indians* soon after the Conquest, by compelling them to dive and drudge for Oysters beyond their Strength. And thus the Natives of the *Bahama* Islands in particular, who were esteem'd excellent Divers, were destroy'd. The *Conch* is another large Shell-fish, form'd like a Snail: The Colour of the Shell within is like Mother of Pearl, but the Outside of it rough. *Lobsters*, *Crabs*, *Prawns*, *Shrimps*, and other Shell fish, they have in common with us: Also in their Lakes and Rivers Fish like our *Jacks* and *Carp*, and Plenty of others. But we proceed to their Vegetables; and first to their Forest Trees.

The *Cotton-Tree* is one of the most remarkable in this Country: Of these there are two Sorts; the white and the red: The white *Cotton-Tree* grows like the Oak, but is much larger and taller; the Body is straight, and clear from Knots or Boughs to the Head, where it spreads out its great Limbs horizontally. The Bodies of these Trees are some of them three or fourscore Foot high, and ten or twelve in Diameter: The Bark is grey and smooth; the Leaves are like those of the Plumb-tree: It bears a Pod as big as a small Wallnut, which bursts when it is ripe, and then the Cotton falls, or is blown away. The red *Cotton-Tree* is not so large as the white, and bears no Cotton. The Wood of both is very soft, spongy, light, and easily wrought; but the red is the hardest. Their Periguaes, which hold three or fourscore Men the largest of them, are made out of the Body of one single *Cotton-Tree*. Their *Cedar-Trees* are exceeding tall and large; the Wood is very red, of a fine Grain and fragrant Smell; and this Timber is so plentiful in *Mexico*, that whole Towns are built with it. This Wood also makes the most durable Canoes, tho' not so large as the *Cotton-Tree*. *Logwood* is much like our *White-Thorn*, but a great deal bigger; the Rind of the young Branches is white and smooth, and set with Thorns; but the Body and old Branches are blackish, and the Rind rough. The Heart, which is red, is only used in Dying; and this will tinge the Water it lies in like Ink. Some Trees are five or six Foot in Circumference; and these they cut into Logs fit for a Man's Burden. There is another kind of Wood called *Bloodwood*, used in dying Reds, more valuable than *Logwood*, and grows in the Gulph of *Nicaragua*. There are three Sorts of *Mangrove-Trees*; black, red, and white. The black is the largest, growing to the Bigness of a moderate Oak. It is very serviceable Timber, but extraordinary weighty. The red *Mangrove* grows from several Roots of the Bigness of a Man's Leg, which, about six or eight Foot above Ground, join in one Body. Where this Sort of Tree grows, it is extremely difficult to march; for these Roots are so interwoven, that the Traveller is often forced to cut his Way through. The white *Mangrove* is the least of the three, and of no great Service; and neither the black or white proceed from such Stakes as the red does, but grows from their Roots like other Trees. There is another Tree, if it may be called such, that grows on the same kind of Land. Amongst the red *Mangroves* grows the *Bamboe*, a large, knotted, hollow Cane, that grows to the Thickness of a Man's Leg. These *Bamboes* serve for Measures, and hold their Liquors, when saw'd off at the Joint. The *Maho-Tree* is of the Bigness of an Ash; the Bark will strip off in Strings from the Top to the Bottom; and of this they make Ropes, and even Cables. The *Lightwood-Tree* is of the Size of an Elm, straight and well-bodied, and somewhat resembles Cork. It is so exceeding light in the Water, that three or four Blocks of it, of the Thickness of a Man's Thigh, will make a Rafter on which three Men may go out to Sea. The *Whitewood-Tree*, so called from its Whiteness, is about as thick as a large Ninepin, and eighteen or twenty Foot high.

We proceed to the Description of their Fruit-Trees and Fruits, among which we range the *Cabbage*. This is a tall slender Tree, often ninety or an hundred Foot in Height. There are no Boughs on it but at the Head; and there the Branches are of the Bigness of a Man's Arm, and twelve or fourteen Foot long. The Fruit is found at the Top of the Tree, amidst the Branches. It is about a Foot long, and six Inches round; of the Form of an ordinary Cabbage, and surrounded with young Leaves. It is as white as Milk, and as sweet as a Nut, if eaten raw; and is very good boil'd. They usually cut down the Tree for the *Cabbage*; for the gathering the Fruit kills it, if they let it stand. The *Calabash-Tree* is short and thick, and the Fruit grows among the Boughs, as Apples do. There are two Sorts of them; of the

Fruit-Trees and Fruit

the one the Fruit is ſweet; of the other bitter. The *Indians* eat the ſweet *Calabaſh* frequently, but it is not very palatable: What this Fruit is moſt valued for, is its Shell, which will hold from two to five Quarts. Of this the *Indians* make Bottles, Bowls, Drinking-cups, and all kind of Veſſels for their Meat and Drink. The *Cacao-Tree*, full grown, and of the largeſt Sort, is ſeven or eight Foot high to the Branches, and a Foot and a Half thick: The Boughs ſpread horizontally, and have dark green Leaves, and the Nuts are incloſed in Cods, which hang down from the Body of the Tree, and from the larger Branches. The Cod is almoſt half an Inch thick, neither ſpungy nor woody, but of Subſtance between both. They neither ripen, nor are gather'd at once; but, while the Seaſon laſts, the Overſeers of the Plantations go every Day to ſee which are turn'd yellow, not cutting more than one or two from a Tree in a Day. When the Cods are gather'd, they are laid in Heaps to ſweat; after which, they break the Shell, and take out the Nuts, which ſtick cloſe together in regular Rows, like the Grain in an Ear of *Maiz*. There are fourſcore or an hundred Nuts in a Cod, about the Bigneſs of an Almond. The *Venella*, or *Bainilla*, which is uſually mix'd with the *Cacao-Nut* to make Chocolate, is a Sort of Cane, which twines about the Orange-tree, or any other, like Ivy: It produces a long green Cod, which, when gather'd and dry'd in the Sun, is hard and blackiſh. *Plantains* and *Bananoes* are Fruits very common here, as well as in *Africa* and the *Eaſt-Indies*. The *Plantain* Fruit is of the Size and Shape of a *Bologna* Sauſage. The *Bananoe* is much the ſame kind of Fruit, but leſs. The *Pine-Apple* alſo is common to the *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Indies*. It is of the Shape of one of our Pine-Apples, but much larger, and is generally ſaid to have the Taſte of every delicious Fruit. The *Sapadillo* reſembles the Pear-tree in its Size and Figure, and the Fruit appears to the View like that of the Bergamot-pear. It is generally eſteemed, and excellent cooling Fruit. The *Avogato* Pear-tree is of the Size of the former, and not unlike it in Shape; the Fruit as large as a Lemon. It is the more eſteemed by the *Spaniards*, as it inſpires them with freſh Vigour for *Venereal* Encounters. The *Mammee-Tree* is a large, tall, ſtrait-bodied Tree, without Knots or Branches for ſixty or ſeventy Foot in Height. The Fruit is round, and of the Size of a *French* Pippin. It has a fine fragrant Smell, and the Taſte is anſwerable. The *Mammee-Sappota-Tree* is not ſo large or tall as the former: The Fruit is extremely well reliſh'd, and wholeſome. The *Wild Mammee-Tree* bears no Fruit; but the Timber, being very ſtrait and tall, ſerves for Maſts for Ships. The *Grape-Tree* is ſeven or eight Foot high, and two or three in Circumference; the Fruit about the Bigneſs of a common Grape, grows in Cluſters, and is well taſted. The *Guava* grows upon a Shrub; the Fruit green on the Outſide, perfectly round, and of the Size of a Crab-apple. It has both a tart and ſweetiſh Flavour, very agreeable to the Palate; but moſt valuable for being of ſuch an aſtringent Nature, that it will either prevent or cure a *Bloody Flux*, if the Patient has not neglected himſelf too long: And the Pomegranate has much the ſame Effect. The *Prickle-Pear* is a Shrub about five Foot high: It is ſo full of large ſtrong Thorns, that nothing makes a ſecurer Fence. The Fruit is as big as a large Plumb, pleaſant to the Taſte, and very cooling and refreſhing. The *Bibby-Tree* has a ſtrait ſlender Body, naked of Leaves, but full of Thorns; ſixty or ſeventy Foot high: At the Top it is full of Branches, among which grows the Fruit, being white Berries, of the Bigneſs of a Nutmeg: They are very oily: The *Indians* tap the *Bibby-Tree*, and it affords them a tart Liquor, of the Colour of Whey.

Beſides the Fruits proper to *Mexico*, the *Spaniards* have introduced *Oranges*, *Lemons*, *Grapes*, *Figs*, and almoſt all manner of *European* Fruits, except *Nuts* and *Cherries*: But the Grapes of this Country will not make Wine. Their *Gourds* grow to a very large Size, and either run upon the Ground, or up the Trees; the Pulp of ſome of them ſerving for Food, and others for Medicine: But, like the Calabaſh, valued moſt by the Natives for their Shells, which ſerve them for Pails, Bowls, and Buckets. *Melons*, *Cucumbers*, and *Onions*, they have in much greater Perfection here, and in all hot Countries, than in colder Climates. There is alſo a very uſeful Plant here, to which the *Engliſh* have given the Name of *Silk-graſs*. The Leaves are as thick as a Man's Hand in the Middle, and thin at the Edges; a Yard or two in Length, and indented like a Saw. The *Indians* cut them at a proper Growth; then dry and beat them, and no Flax affords a better Thread. Of theſe they make Cordage and Fiſhing-nets, Stockings, and Hammocks. The *Manchanel-Tree* bears a Fruit, in Smell, Taſte, and Colour, like a lovely Apple, but leſs, and of ſuch a poiſonous Nature, that if any Animal has been feeding on it, the Fleſh of the Creature will poiſon the Perſon that eats it. They have alſo *Tamarinds*, *Locuſt-Trees* and a *Ballard Cinnamon*, in *Mexico*. The *Granadilla de China* grows like Ivy, winding about ſome neighbouring Tree till it perfectly covers it: The Fruit is as big as a Hen's Egg, white and yellow without, and white within; and has Seeds like the Grape; There is a pretty Mixture of Sweet and Sour in the Taſte. But there is not a Plant of more general Uſe than the *Maghey*; for the Leaves furniſh the Natives with Thread for Linen and Cordage: It alſo yields Balſam, and a Liquor as ſweet as Honey; into which the *Indians* infuſe a Root that makes it ferment like Wine, and it is of equal Strength. They diſtill a Spirit from it alſo as ſtrong as Brandy.

European Fruits here. *No Wine.*

We proceed to the moſt remarkable *Balms*, *Gums* and *Gums*, and *Drugs*, that are found in *Mexico*; among which are the *Copal* and *Anime*; both of them a kind of Roſin, and not much unlike. The *Copal* is very white and clear, and has a very good Scent: Of this the *Indians* made Incenſe and Perfumes for their Sacrifices in their Temples. The *Anime* alſo is a white Gum, diſtilling from a great Tree, and more oily than *Copal*: It has an exceeding pleaſant Smell, when burnt. This, as well as the former, is uſed by Phyſicians for Pains in the Head, and in Plaiſters and Sear-cloths applied to the Stomach. The *Gum Tacamahaca* has a very fine Scent, and is of great Uſe to diſſolve Swellings, and remove Pains in the Limbs. And the *Gum Coranna* hath much the ſame Effects. The *Liquid Amber* is obtained by making Inciſions in a fine fair Tree. The Bark of this Tree, as well as the Liquor diſtilling from it, has an exceeding ſweet Smell, but more when it is burnt. The *Oil of Amber* is drawn from *Liquid Amber*. The *Balm*, or *Balſam*, uſually called the *Balſam of Peru*, is alſo found in *Mexico*. The Tree that yields it, is of the Size and Figure of the Pomegranate tree.

Drugs

There are three ſorts of Wood found in *Mexico*, of great Uſe in Medicine, *Guaiacum*, *China Root*, and *Sarſaparilla*. 1. The *Guaiacum* is a Tree as large as an Oak; the Bark dry, but full of Gum; the Heart of the Tree almoſt black, very hard,

Medicinal Woods

and

and ponderous: It has a small Leaf, and yields a yellow Flower; out of which proceeds a round Fruit, of the Size of a Crab-apple, with small Kernels. 2. The *China Root*, received first from *China*: But which is also a *Mexican* Plant. 3. The *Sarsaparilla*, chiefly remarkable for its Roots, which are very long and large. To these we may add, The Rood *Mechoacan*, which takes its Name from a Province of *Mexico*, where it is found.

The Roots which serve the *Indians* chiefly for Food, are the *Cassava Root*, *Yams*, and *Potatoes*. The *Cassava Root* something resembles a Parsnip. There are two Sorts of them; the one sweet and innocent, the other poisonous: The sweet Sort they roast, and eat as they do Potatoes: Of the poisonous Sort they first boil and press out all the Juice, then dry and grind it to Powder, and make Biscuit of it. As to *Yams*, *Potatoes*, *Rhadishes*, *&c.* they need no Description: We shall only observe, that all manner of *European* Roots and Fruits grow much larger, and come to much greater Perfection, there than here.

The *Spaniards* have carried over Wheat and Barley, Peas and Beans, and other *European* Grain, which thrive very well in some Places; but their principal Grain is *Maiz*, or *Indian* Corn, which is the Food of Men, of Horses, Mules, and Oxen. This they plant in little Hillocks, like those in our Hop-grounds, at the Beginning of the rainy Season, in *May* or *June*; and reap in *October*, when the fair Weather returns. This Corn we see frequently brought to *England*, and therefore need not describe it. The *Spaniards* of *Mexico*, beside their Arable, have large Grazing-Farms, in which one Grazier shall have several hundred Head of black Cattle, and a great many thousand Sheep. During the rainy Season, they never want good Pasture. When the Meadows and low Grounds are overflow'd, their Hills produce Plenty of Grass. They are most put to it for Fodder in *February*, *March*, and *April*, when their Grounds are burnt up. As to the *Indians*, who have hitherto preserved their Liberties, they have only small Plantations among the Woods, at a Distance from the *Spanish* Towns; where they plant a little *Maiz*, *Yams*, and *Potatoes*, with some few *Plantains*, and other Fruits. And, as these unconquer'd *Indians* subsist chiefly by Hunting and Fishing, many of them plant little or nothing, but rob the *Spanish* Plantations, of which they look upon themselves the true Proprietors. The *Spaniards*, beside their *European* Grain, sow some *Rice*; for which this Country is extremely proper. They have also large Plantations of *Sugar*, *Tobacco*, and *Indico*. They are pretty much employ'd also in cutting *Logwood* in their *Cochineel* Plantations, and looking after the *Silvester*, *Otta*, and other Dying Plants and Herbs; in cultivating and dressing their *Cotton*; in the making of *Salt*; and in their *Fisheries*, which are very considerable.

As to Flowers, the *Indians* are extremely fond of them, and have great Variety, which they make up into Nosegays, and present to their Superiors. Their great Men are seldom seen without a Nosegay in their Hands; and they always present them to their Guests at Entertainments, expressing a great deal of Art in the matching and disposing of the Flowers. *European* Flowers come to great Perfection there; namely, *Roses*, *Jasemine*, *Violets*, *Gilliflowers*, and several others that have been transported from *Spain*. The *Indian* Flowers, however, do not smell very sweet, unless they be the Blossoms that grow upon Trees. The Tree *Floripondro* bears no Fruit, but the Flowers are larger than a Lilly, and remain upon the Tree all the Year round; the Scent whereof is exceeding sweet and agreeable. And the Tree *Granadilla*, the Superstitious imagine, has the Portraiture of the Instruments of our Saviour's Passion.

A Zeal for the Propagation of Christianity, Mineral. which the *Spaniards* pretended, was certainly a very laudable Motive for their passing the *Atlantic* Ocean; but had there been no Gold, Silver, or precious Stones to be found there, possibly the Adventurers had not been very numerous. The Gold and Silver Mines of *Mexico* are in the rocky, mountainous, and barren Parts of the Country; and, indeed, neither these, or any other Metals, are found in a fruitful Soil.

Gold is found here either in Grains, in Dust, Gold Mines. in the Sands of Rivers, or in Stone in the Mines. The Grains are small Pieces of Gold, like the Seeds or Kernels of Fruit, which are found without the Mixture of any other Metal, and have no need of refining. But much the greatest Quantity of Gold is found in Dust in the Sands of Rivers and Torrents, after the Rains have fallen. As to the Gold which is found in the Mines, it is intermix'd with great hard Stones. It runs in Veins like Silver, and is exceeding hard to dig and separate: This Gold is usually mix'd with Silver or Copper; and that which is incorporated with Copper is the best. The Gold seems to lie much nearer the Surface than Silver, it being found in large Pieces at the Roots of Trees on the Mountains, and wash'd into the River by the Rains; and if they do not find it pretty near the Surface in the Mines, they never dig so deep for it as they do for Silver.

The Silver Mines, tho' usually found in barren Silver Rocks and Mountains, are sometimes met with Mines. in plain and champain Fields. There are two Sorts of them; the one straggling here and there in Spots, the other more continuous and fix'd. It is the fix'd Mine that has the greatest Depth and Length; and these resemble the Ramifications of Trees and Plants; and where they find one, they usually meet with a great many in the same Place. The *Indians* knew how to purify Silver by Fire, and to separate it from Lead and other Metals, before the *Spaniards* came amongst them; but they knew nothing of the Art of refining it by Quicksilver, which the *Spaniards* use at this Day. There are some Sorts of Silver Oar, which cannot be purified and refined without Quicksilver. The Veins where they find Silver run between two Rocks; the one commonly hard as Flint, and the other softer and easy to break. The Oar is very unequal. The richest Oar is of an Amber Colour, and the second Sort that which inclines to black; a third is red, and a fourth of an Ash Colour, and some of the Oar is scarce to be distinguish'd from common Stone. It is usual to draw from one Quintal or five hundred Weight of Oar, thirty, forty, and fifty Peso's of Silver, of the Value of six Shillings and Six-pence.

The manner of refining Silver, is thus: They Refining first grind the Oar to Powder, and then sift it of Silver. through a fine Sieve: After which, they put the Powder into Vessels, and set it over Furnaces, putting to every fifty Quintals of Oar five Quintals of Salt, the Salt separating the Earth and Drofs from the Silver, and making Way for the Quicksilver to operate more effectually: Then they strain the Quicksilver through a Piece of fine Linen into the Oar, stirring it about, so that it may the better incorporate with the Oar. When the Mercury has done its Part, and assembled all the Silver, leaving nothing behind, but is filled as a Sponge with Water (which is usually in five or six Days) they put the Oar into Coppers

and Veſſels full of Water, turning it about with Wheels, and waſhing of it: Whereupon the Earth and Droſs go off with the Water that runs away, and the Silver and Quickſilver remain at Bottom. Then they take it out, and waſh it again in other Tubs and Veſſels, until they have cleanſed away all the Droſs: After which, they ſtrain it through Cloths, and make it into the Form of Sugar-Loaves, of about an hundred Pound Weight each; on which they put Earthen Caps of the ſame Shape; and, ſetting theſe over a violent Fire, the Quickſilver exhales in Smoak, which, ſtriking againſt the Earthen Cap, thickens and diſtils like the Smoak of a Pot cover'd; and by a Pipe, like that of a Limbeck, they receive the Quickſilver, the Silver remaining without changing its Form; but its Weight is diminiſh'd five Parts in ſix, and is light and porous like a Sponge. Of two of theſe Loaves they make one Bar of Silver, of ſixty five or ſixty ſix Marks Weight, eight Ounces in every Mark, and then carry them to be touch'd and mark'd.

Any one may open a Mine

Any Perſon, who diſcovers a Mine of Gold or Silver in *Mexico*, may work it, paying the King's Tenth of the Product; and the King's Officers aſſign the Diſcoverer ſixty Yards round about the Place he chuſes to dig; beyond which Space another may open a Mine, leaving five Yards between them for a Partition: And, as they ſink under Ground, one may work into another's Diviſion, till he meets with his Workmen; but then he muſt deſiſt, and retire into his own Part.

How All the Silver dug in the Mines of *Mexico*, is brought to the King's Exchequer in the Capital City, and enter'd there; except what is run and concealed, which amounts to a great deal: And it is related, that there are two Millions of Marks, of eight Ounces each, enter'd in one Year; out of which they coin annually, in that Mint, ſeven hundred thouſand Marks. There are five Sorts of Silver Money coin'd in the Mint of *Mexico*; Pieces of Eight (of the Value of four Shillings and Six-pence each) Half Pieces of Eight, Quarter Pieces, Single Ryals (about the Value of Six-pence *Engliſh*, and Half-Ryals. There being ſome Gold frequently mixed with the Silver, they are ſeparated with *Aqua-fortis*. The Gold is afterwards run in a Furnace, and caſt firſt into round Pieces, and then into Bars; as is alſo the Silver ſeparated from it: And the Gold is coin'd into Pieces of Sixteen, Eight, Four, or two Pieces of Eight; which are call'd Crowns of Gold.

Officers of the Mint at *Mexico*

All the chief Officers of the Mint at *Mexico*, are appointed by the King; and all the inferior Officers by the Treaſurer. The principal Officers purchaſe their Places, and have the Privilege of aſſigning them to whom they pleaſe; but then the Officer that reſigns muſt live twenty Days after his Reſignation; and he, to whom the Reſignation is made, muſt acquaint the Viceroy with it within ſixty Days, and pay a third Part of the Value of his Place to the King. The Treaſurer's Place is worth between fifty and ſixty thouſand Pieces of Eight *per Annum*; thoſe of Aſſayer and Founder, fifteen or ſixteen thouſand Pieces of Eight *per Annum*. The reſt of the chief Officers have three thouſand five hundred, and none of them leſs than eight hundred Pieces of Eight *per Annum*. The Maſters of the eight Furnaces, and twenty Coiners, have each of them eight hundred or a thouſand Pieces of Eight *per Annum*, and the meaneſt Servant earns a Piece of Eight a Day. Their Salaries.

The *Indians* had no Coin when the *Spaniards* first came amongſt them; Gold and Silver ſerved them only for Ornament: Their Traffick conſiſted in bartering and exchanging one Thing for another; only the Cocao-Nuts ſerved them to purchaſe Things of ſmall Value; as they do now in the Markets of *Mexico*, neither the *Spaniards* or *Indians* having any Copper Coin. Weights and Meaſures the *Indians* had none; but they had both dry and liquid Meaſures, made either of *Calabaſſes*, *Palmiboe Canes*, or Woods. And they had their Numbers and Characters, by which they adjuſted the Value of Goods, and the Taxes impoſed upon them.

As to Stones for building, there are in *Mexico* Quarries of *Jaſper*, *Porphyry*, and all Kinds of excellent Marble; for of ſuch Stones, the Palaces and Temples of *Mexico* were built before the Conqueſt. We are told of a great many precious Stones and Jewels in the Ornaments of *Montezuma*; but the Relaters have not ſpecified what they were, unleſs Emeralds and Pearls, and of theſe the World is furniſh'd with great Quantities from *Mexico*. The Emerald is a green Stone, and grows in a Stone like Cryſtal; and they ſeem by little and little to harden and refine: Some of them are as big as a Nut, and others larger. And with theſe we may well range their Pearls; of which there are great Quantities found on the Coaſts of *Mexico*, as well as in the Seas of *South America*. Multitudes of *Indians* and other Slaves have been deſtroy'd for the *Spaniards* in this Part of the World, in fiſhing up the Oyſters that contain them. The Pearls differ much in their Size, Figure, Colour, and Luſtre; and it is very rare to find two of the ſame Size, Form, and Colour; but when they do find two alike in all Reſpects, it much increaſes the Value of both, eſpecially for Pendants.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Traffick of Mexico; *their Carriages, Inns, and Way of Travelling.*

Traffick with Foreigners prohibited

THE People of *Mexico*, and the reſt of the *Spaniſh Weſt-Indies*, are prohibited trading with any but the Subjects of *Spain*; nor are Foreigners ſuffer'd to viſit their Coaſts, unleſs the *Aſſientiſts*, who furniſh them with Slaves, and that under ſeveral Reſtrictions, as will be related hereafter. Notwithſtanding which, the Traffick of *Mexico* is one of the moſt and moſt extenſive in the World: For the trade with the *Philippine* Iſlands near the Coaſt of *China*, through the *South Sea*; with *Peru* and *Chile*, through the ſame Sea; and with *Old Spain* and the *Spaniſh* Iſlands, through the *North Sea* and *Atlantic Ocean*. There is alſo a very conſiderable

smuggling

smuggling or clandestine Trade, carried on between the *Mexicans* and *Indians* on the one Side, and the *English*, *French*, and *Dutch* on the other.

Their Trade with the Philippines and China.

The *Philippine* Islands, which are under the Dominion of *Spain*, lie 140 Degrees of Longitude from *Mexico*; which, reckoning sixty Miles to a Degree, makes it eight thousand four hundred Miles from *Mexico* to *Manila*, the Capital of the *Philippine* Lands; and these the *Spaniards* sail in ten Weeks, or three Months, in going from *Mexico* to *Manila*, having a constant Trade-Wind from the North-East, and serene Weather in 10 or 12 Degrees of North-Latitude, which they get into as soon as they can. But it is not so in their Return from *Manila*, in the *Philippine* Islands, to the Port of *Acapulco* in *Mexico*. This is a Voyage of incredible Hazards and Hardships, which no Gain or Advantages would induce a wise Man to undertake twice; for, when they leave the *Philippines*, they are forced to stand away to the North, till they come into 35, or perhaps 40 Degrees, before they can meet with westerly, or even variable Winds: And here they are toss'd with frequent Storms, and their Patience try'd by inconstant Weather.

In this Voyage, they always take Advantage of the southerly Monsoon, which sets in, in *May* or *June*, on the Coast of *China*, and blows till *September* or *October*; this carrying them as high as the Latitude of 30 North. When they have sailed into this Latitude, the Weather becomes very tempestuous and cold; and several Galeons have been cast away in that vast Ocean, between the 30th and 40th Degrees of North Latitude: The Wind is oftner contrary than fair, and they are very seldom free from Storms. And the Voyage before they arrive at their desired Port of *Acapulco* in *Mexico*, is generally about seven Months after they set Sail from *Manila*. Thus much it was necessary to observe to shew the Length and Difficulty of the Passage from *Asia* to *America* at this Day: From whence we may infer, how impracticable, and even impossible, it was for the *Chinese*, or any other *Asiatic* Nation, to send Colonies to *America* by Sea; when Navigation was in its Infancy, and the Use of the Compass was not known.

Manage of the Spanish Ships.

The *Spaniards* employ but two Ships annually in this rich Trade; but then they are Ships of good Force, and usually eight hundred or a thousand Tons Burden. One of them sets out from *Acapulco* the latter End of *March*, or the Beginning of *April*, and arrives at *Manila* some time in *June*; when the other is ready to sail from *Manila* to *Acapulco*, where she usually arrives about *Christmas*. The Cargo of this Ship consists of Diamonds, Rubies, Saphires, and other precious Stones, found in the *East-Indies*; of Cinnamon, Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs, and Pepper; of the rich Carpets of *Persia*; the Camphire of *Borneo*; the Benjamin and Ivory of *Pegu* and *Cambaia*; the Silks, Muslins, and Calicoes of *East-India*; the Gold Dust, Tea, China-Ware, Silk, Cabinets, &c. of *China* and *Japan*. The Merchants get an hundred and fifty, or two hundred *per Cent.* by this Voyage. It was computed, that the Pilot of the Ship that returned in 1697, would make twenty thousand Pieces of Eight; his Mates nine thousand each; the Captain of the Galeon forty thousand: The Boatswain, who has the Privilege of taking several Bales of Goods on Board, gets an Estate in one Voyage; the Wages of every Sailor is three hundred and seventy Pieces of Eight; and the King's Duties of this one Ship amounted to fourscore thousand Pieces of Eight.

Trade between *Mexico* and *Peru*.

At the Time this Ship arrives at *Acapulco* from *Manila*, there comes in two or three Ships from *Lima* and *Peru*, very little inferior to the former in Value, being laden with Silver, Quicksilver, Cacao Nuts, and other rich Merchandize of *South America*; with which they purchase the Merchandize of *Europe* and the *East-Indies*: For, in the Months of *January* and *February*, at the great Fair, there are such Crowds of People at *Acapulco*, that all Provisions are excessive dear, and a Negro-Porter will earn fourteen or fifteen Shillings a Day. The Galeon from *Manila*, having sold all her Effects, takes in a new Cargo, chiefly of Silver, and returns in *April*. In the mean time, the Ships of *Peru*, having furnish'd themselves with the Merchandize of *China*, the *East-Indies*, and *Europe*, return to *Lima*. There is very little Traffick carried on by Sea on the Coast of *Mexico*; all Goods are carried from *Acapulco* to the City of *Mexico* by Mules and Pack-horses; and from thence to *Vera Cruz* on the *North* Sea, in like manner, in order to be shipped for *Europe*; which brings us to the Trade between *Old* and *New Spain*.

The Trade between *Old Spain* and *Mexico*.

Thirty or forty Ships carry on all the Trade between *Old Spain* and the *Spanish* Dominions in *America*; and these are almost all their own Vessels, no Trade being carried on in Foreign Bottoms, except that of the *Assientists*. The Vessels used by the *Spaniards*, in transporting Merchandize from *Old Spain* to *America*, are generally large and of good Force, and called Galeons: They sail in Fleets annually from *Cadiz*, laden with the Goods of almost every Country on this Side the *Atlantick*: The Woollen Cloth and Stuffs of *England*; the Linen and Lace of *Holland* and *Flanders*; the Silks of *Italy* and *France*; the Muslins, Silks, and Calicoes of the *East-Indies*; with the Merchandize of *China*, *Turkey*, and *Persia*, make up their Cargoes. The *English*, *Dutch*, *Italians*, and *French*, are Proprietors of great Part of their Cargo; and the *Spaniards*, in a great Measure, their Factors: For when the Galeons return from *America*, with the Treasure for which these Effects have been sold, it is most of it distributed amongst the Merchants and Factors of the four Nations last mention'd. The Government of *Spain* is very well apprized that this Trade is carried on by Foreigners, and, for very good Reasons, connive at it: They know their own People are not able to freight these Fleets; and, if they were not enabled to do it by Foreigners, their *Indian* Dominions must want all manner of Necessaries almost for Cloathing and Furniture.

The greatest Part of the Galeons sail to *Carthagena* and *Porto Bello*, and are called the *Fleet*; the other Part, called the *Flotilla*, or *Little Fleet*, sail to *Vera Cruz* in *Mexico*. The former sell their Merchandize chiefly at the Fair of *Porto Bello*, where they take on Board the Gold and Silver, and other rich Treasures, of *Peru* and *Chili*, in return for their Merchandize. The latter sell their Cargoes at the Fair of *Vera Cruz*; to which Place is brought the Gold and Silver of *Mexico*, with the Gold Dust, precious Stones, and other Treasures of *China* and the *East Indies*; and with these the *Flotilla* is freighted, on its Return to *Europe*.

The Galeons, on their going out, sail to the South-West, and get into the Way of the Trade-Wind, which carries them into 11 or 12 Degrees of North Latitude; then, bending their Course directly West, they leave the *Caribbee* Islands on their Right, and continue their Course till they arrive at *Rio de la Hacha*, where they send Ex-

press

preſſes to *Carthagena*, *Panama*, *Porto Bello*, *Vera Cruz*, &c. to prepare the King's Treaſure for the Galeons to take on Board. After which, the greateſt Part of the Fleet ſails to *Carthagena* and *Porto Bello*, and the reſt to *Vera Cruz*. The whole joining together uſually, in their Return, at the *Havanna*, in the Iſland of *Cuba*; and, ſailing from thence to *Spain* in Company, take a very different Courſe from that by which they came from *Europe*: For in their Return they ſail North through the Gulph of *Florida*, and continue their Courſe to the North-Eaſt till they come into the Latitude of 36 or 40, where they meet with variable Winds: They then ſhape their Courſe as near to the Eaſt as the Winds will permit them, till they come upon the Coaſt of *Spain*; and are uſually ſix or eight Weeks in their Paſſage. Theſe Fleets have ſometimes brought home the Value of twelve or fifteen Millions *Sterling* in Gold and Silver only; of which the King has a Fifth; and great Part of the Remainder is diſtributed among the Factors of the Nations above-mention'd; the leaſt Share, perhaps, coming to the Subjects of *Spain*.

Trade between the Continent and Iſlands by the *Barlavento* Fleet.

There is a Trade carried on alſo between *Mexico* and the *Spaniſh* Iſlands of *Cuba*, *Hiſpaniola*, and *Porto Rico*; as alſo between *Mexico* and *Terra-Firma* in *South America*, by the *Barlavento* Fleet, ſo called from its ſurrounding the *Barlavento*, or *Leeward* Iſlands, annually. This Fleet comes to *Vera Cruz* in *October* or *November*, and remains there till *March*. It conſiſts of ſix or ſeven Sail of Ships, of good Burden and Force, that ſerve both as Men of War and Merchant-men; for they viſit all the *Spaniſh* Sea-ports in the *North* Sea every Year, as well to ſupply one Place with what another wants, as to prevent Foreigners trading in their Ports, and to clear the Sea of Buccaneers or Pirates. From *Vera Cruz* this Fleet ſails to the *Havanna*, where they diſpoſe of the Merchandize they bring from *Mexico*: After which, they ſtand to the Northward, through the Gulph of *Florida*, till they come into the Latitude of 30 or 40; then they ſtretch away to the South-Eaſt, till they make the Iſland of *Porto Rico*; and, having diſpatch'd their Buſineſs there, they continue their Courſe to the Southward, till they arrive at the Iſland of the *Trinity*, near the Mouth of the River *Oroonoko*: From thence the Fleet ſails to *Margarita*; coaſting along to *Cumana*, and ſo to *Caracos*. Then they double *Cape La Vela*, and coaſt along by *Rio de la Hacha*, *St. Martha*, and *Carthagena*; on which Coaſt they frequently meet with *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Trading-Sloops, and make Prize of them: And, having ſtaid ſome time at *Carthagena*, they proceed to *Porto Bello*; and, having viſited the Bay of *Campeachy*, they return at length to *Vera Cruz* again.

A clandeſtine or ſmuggling Trade.

As the *Spaniards* do not ſend more than thirty or forty Ships annually from *Old Spain* to *America*, with the Produce and Merchandize of *Europe*; they are far from being ſufficient to ſupply their extenſive Dominions in that new World. Moſt Part of the Merchandize carried over in the Galeons, is ſold at the Fair of *Porto Bello*, and bought up at extravagant Rates, to be tranſported again by the *South* Sea to *Peru*: So that many of the *Spaniſh* Provinces upon the *North* Sea would be deſtitute of neceſſary Clothing and Furniture, and even Proviſions for their Tables, if they were not ſupplied with them by Foreigners. The *Engliſh* therefore from *New-England*, *New York*, *Jamaica*, &c. the *French* from *Hiſpaniola*, and the *Dutch* from *Curaſſaw*, fit out Sloops, with all manner of Proviſions and Neceſſaries, which they know are wanting, on the Coaſt of *Mexico*, in order to trade with the *Mexican Spaniards*, who are no leſs ready to receive the Goods of theſe Foreigners, than they are to ſell them, giving Pieces of Eight for what they buy; which makes this a very beneficial Trade to the *Engliſh*, *French*, and *Dutch*. But then, if the *Barlavento* Fleet, or the *Spaniſh Guarda de Coſta's*, meet with ſuch Trading-Sloops and Veſſels, they never fail to make them all Prizes; and ſometimes ſeize on Ships that have never been concerned in this clandeſtine Trade, on Suſpicion: Which has been the Occaſion of thoſe many Complaints our Merchants have made of the *Spaniſh Guarda de Coſta's*, to the Parliament and Board of Trade.

Logwood Trade.

There has been another Trade or Buſineſs carried on by the *Engliſh* in *North America*, which has occaſion'd many Diſputes between the two Nations of *Britain* and *Spain*, and is not yet adjuſted; and that is, the Buſineſs of Logwood-cutting in the Bay of *Campeachy*. This the *Engliſh* had follow'd, in a Part of the Country deſtitute of *Spaniſh* or *Indian* Inhabitants, for a great many Years; and look'd upon it, that their long Poſſeſſion had given them as good a Right to that Part of the Country, as the *Spaniards* had to any of the reſt: And in ſome Treaties the *Spaniards* ſeem to have yielded this Buſineſs to the *Engliſh*. However, they have thought fit, of late Years, to fall upon our Logwood-cutters, killed many of them, and carried the reſt into perpetual Impriſonment, not ſuffering them to be exchanged or ranſomed. And thus have we been driven violently and unjuſtly from a very valuable Branch of Buſineſs, under Pretence that becauſe the *Spaniards* had forcibly ſettled themſelves in one Part of the Continent, no other Nation had any Right to ſettle in another Part of it: A Rule, that the *French* are too wiſe and too brave to ſubmit to.

The Aſſiento Trade.

We proceed now to that Branch of Trade, which the *Engliſh* are entitled to carry on with the *Spaniſh* Dominions in *America*, by virtue of the *Aſſiento* Contract made between the two Nations in the Year 1713, and entitled, *The* Assiento, *adjuſted between their* Britannick *and* Catholick *Majeſties, for the* Engliſh *Company's obliging itſelf to ſupply the* Spaniſh Weſt-Indies *with black Slaves for the Term of thirty Years, to commence on the 1ſt Day of* May 1713, *and to end the 1ſt of* May 1743. The Preamble of this Contract recites, that the *French Guinea* Company had formerly enjoy'd the Benefit of the *Aſſiento*; and that their Term being expired, his *Catholick* Majeſty had determined to grant the ſame to the *Engliſh* Company. The Subſtance of the principal Articles is as follows, That the *Aſſientiſts* ſhall export to the *Spaniſh Weſt-Indies*, within the ſaid Space of thirty Years, one hundred forty-four thouſand Negroes, that is, four thouſand eight hundred Negroes in each of the ſaid thirty Years: That for each Negro, of the Standard of ſeven Quarters, neither old or defective, the *Aſſientiſts* ſhall pay to the Crown of *Spain* thirty-three Pieces of Eight, and one Third of a Piece of Eight: That the *Aſſientiſts* ſhall advance to his Catholick Majeſty two hundred thouſand Pieces of Eight, which ſhall not be reimburſed before the End of twenty Years; and then it may be deducted, by equal Portions, in the ten laſt remaining Years, after the Rate of twenty thouſand Pieces of Eight yearly, out of the Produce of the Duty on Negroes: That the *Aſſientiſts* ſhall not pay the ſaid Duties for more than four thouſand Negroes yearly; the Duties payable for the remaining eight hundred being given to them as Intereſt for the Money to be advanced as aforeſaid: That the *Aſſientiſts*, if they find a Demand for more Negroes, may import a greater Number than four thouſand eight hundred during the

the first twenty-five Years; for which supernumerary Negroes they shall pay but half the abovementioned Duty: That the *Assientists* may import and vend the said Negroes in all the Ports of the *North* Sea, and that of *Buenos Ayres*, where there are Royal Officers to search the Ships and their Cargoes: That the Negroes which are carried to the Windward Coast, shall not be sold for more than three hundred Pieces of Eight each; but as to the other Ports of *New Spain*, its Islands, and *Terra Firma*, for the best Prices they can get: That the *Assientists* may hold some Parcels of Land, to be assign'd them by his Catholick Majesty, in the River *Plata*, sufficient to plant, cultivate, and breed Cattle upon, for the Subsistence of the Persons belonging to the *Assiento* and their Negroes; and may build Houses of Timber only; but not throw up the Earth, or make the slightest Fortification; and his Catholick Majesty shall appoint an Officer to reside there, who shall have the Command of all Things relating to such Lands: That in order to the carrying of black Slaves into the Provinces of the *South* Sea, the *Assientists* may freight, either at *Panama*, or any other Port of the *South* Sea, Ships of about four hundred Tons each, on Board of which they may ship Negroes to all the other Ports of *Peru*, and to bring back the Produce of their Sale to the said Port of *Panama*, without being obliged to pay any Duties for such Produce: That the *Assientists* may employ *English* or *Spaniards* for the Management of this *Assiento*, and the *English* shall be treated as the Subjects of *Spain*, provided there do not reside in any one Port more than four or six *Englishmen*: That the *Assientists* may nominate Judges Conservators of the *Assiento*, in all the Ports and chief Places of *America*, provided they nominate some of his Catholick Majesty's Ministers; which said Judges are to have Cognizance of all Causes relating to the *Assiento*, and no Appeal to lie from them, but to the supreme Council of the *Indies*: That during this *Assiento*, neither the *French Guinea* Company, nor any other Persons, shall transport Negroes to *Spanish America*, but the *Assientists*, on pain of forfeiting such Negroes to the *Assientists*: That if any Merchandize be found in the *Assiento* Ships, besides the Negroes, and Provisions for them, it shall be confiscated, and the Officers importing it shall be disabled to serve in the *Assiento*: That the Ships of the *Assientists* may sail either from *Great-Britain* or *Spain*; but an Account shall be given to his Catholick Majesty of what Ships they dispatch yearly, and the Ports for which they are design'd: That all Prizes taken in Time of War by the *Assientists*, on the Coasts of *Spanish America*, be carried to *Carthagena*, or *Porto Bello*, and the Goods sold by the King's Officers at the Fair of *Porto Bello*; three Fourths of the Produce whereof, after Duties paid, to be enjoy'd by the Captors, and the other Fourth by his Catholick Majesty: That their *British* and Catholick Majesties shall each of them have a fourth Part of the Profits arising by this Contract: That the *Assientists* shall give in an Account of their Profits and Gain, upon Oath, at the End of the first five Years; which Accounts shall be examined in the respective Courts of *Great-Britain* and *Spain*; and the said *Assientists* shall pay his Catholick Majesty's Share of the said Profits regularly and punctually: And this they shall do every five Years during the Term: That the *Assientists* shall be allow'd three Years, after the Expiration of their Term of thirty Years, to adjust their Accompts, and gather in their Effects in the *Spanish West-Indies*: That in case of a War between *Britain* and *Spain*, the *Assiento* shall be suspended: However, the *Assientists* shall be allow'd a Year and a Half to remove their Effects.

An annual Ship granted to the *Assientists*.

His Catholick Majesty also, on condition that the *Assientists* shall not carry on any unlawful or clandestine Trade, grants them the Privilege of sending out a Ship of five hundred Tons annually, to trade to the *Indies*; provided they give his Majesty a fourth Part of the Gain, and five *per Cent.* out of the Gain of the other three Parts.

The late Queen *Anne* afterwards transferred to the *South* Sea Company the Benefit of the *Assiento* Contract, and granted them her fourth Share of the Profits arising by that Commerce; and yet such are the Misfortunes they have undergone in the Course of that Commerce, their Effects in the *Indies* having been twice seiz'd on account of those Misunderstandings with *Spain* in the Years 1718 and 1727, that they have gain'd little by it, tho' they were not out of Pocket. Indeed, such have been the Misunderstandings between *Great-Britain* and *Spain*, ever since the Peace of *Utrecht*, whereby the *Spaniards* yielded *Gibraltar* and *Port Mahon* to this Crown, and let us into the Traffick of the *Spanish West-Indies*, that we have been great Sufferers in our Commerce in general with that Nation of late, and seem in a Manner to have lost the Affections of that People.

There is no doubt, but the *Assiento*, consider'd in itself, would be very advantageous to *Britain*: We send little, besides our own Manufactures, to *Guinea*, to purchase those Negroes which we exchange with the *Spaniards* for Gold and Silver: The annual Ship also goes to *Porto Bello* laden chiefly with *British* Merchandize, for which she receives the Treasures of *Peru* and *Mexico* in return. But still, if the *French* and other Nations run away with the other Branches of the *Spanish* Trade, and we must ever remain in a State of Hostility with that Nation, whose Friendship is of such Importance to us, perhaps it were better we had never insisted too strictly on the Articles of the Treaty of *Utrecht*.

The *Mexican* Carriages and Way of Travelling.

We shall conclude this Head with the *Mexican* Carriages and Way of Travelling. The Country is so mountainous, that in their Inland Traffick they use scarce any Waggons or Wheel-Carriages; but all Merchandize is carried on Mules or Pack horses from one Province to another; and, before the *Spaniards* transported Mules and Horses thither, all Burdens were carried to the most distant Places on the Backs of *Tamenes*, or Porters. Their Princes and great Men were carried also on Men's Shoulders, lying or sitting on a kind of Couch, with a Canopy over it, not much unlike the *Palankins* in the *East-Indies*. Indeed Coaches are in Use at *Mexico*, and in some other great Towns, at present; but it is impracticable to travel long Journeys over their Mountains in Coaches. They have some few Inns upon their Roads, but usually miserable Houses, and destitute of tolerable Provisions; and they are such a Distance from each other in some Places, that Travellers are glad to take up their Lodging under Trees, and in poor Huts, where they suffer pretty much from the Snows and excessive Cold on the Mountains, and from the sultry Heat and Dust in their Valleys.

Their Inns.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the History and Government of Mexico, *antient and modern.*

The firſt Inhabitants of *Mexico.*

ACCORDING to the Traditions of the *Mexicans*, that Country was firſt inhabited by a wild and barbarous People, who went perfectly naked, lived on the Game they took in Hunting, and on Fruits and Roots; never planting and manuring the Ground: They dwelt in Caves of the Rocks and Mountains, or under Trees; building no Houſes, nor aſſociating together in Communities, having ſcarce any Religion or Government amongſt them: And there were ſome ſuch People that inhabited the Mountains of *Mexico*, even when the *Spaniards* conquered it.

The ſecond Nation that poſſeſs'd *Mexico*, conſiſting of ſeven Tribes.

The next People that poſſeſs'd this Country were the *Navatlacas*, who give no other Account of their Original, but that they came out of ſeven Caves. Theſe were ſeven Nations, or rather Tribes, that antiently dwelt between the 30th and 40th Degrees of Northern Latitude; but, about the Year 820, began to remove to the Southward, and poſſeſs themſelves of that Country, now denominated *Mexico*, which they did very gradually; for they did not move all together, but only one Tribe at a Time. The firſt Tribe, was called the *Suchimilcans*, or *Gardiners of Flowers*. The ſecond Tribe were the *Chalci*. The third Tribe were the *Taſeneca's*, or *People of the Bridge*. The fourth Tribe were called *Culhua*, or the *People of the Bending Mountains*. The fifth Tribe were the *Tlatelvica's*. And the ſixth Tribe were called the *Tlaſcalteca's*.

The *Mexicans.*

Three hundred and two Years after the Peregrination of the firſt Tribe, the ſeventh Tribe, called *Mexicans*, from their Leader *Mexi*, ſet forward towards the South, to find new Seats; being told by their God *Vitziliputzli* (or his Prieſts) that they ſhould obtain the Dominion of all the Tribes that went before them, and poſſeſs a Country abounding in Gold, Silver, precious Stones, Feathers, and rich Mantles. To which Prophecy they give ſuch Credit, that they began their March, carrying the Image of their God with them in a Cheſt, or Ark, on the Shoulders of four of their chief Prieſts. Theſe Prieſts gave them Laws in the Name of their God, and inſtructed them how they ſhould offer Sacrifices to him. The Prieſts alſo directed when they ſhould decamp, and how long they ſhould remain in any Place. And the firſt thing they did, wherever they came, was to erect a Tabernacle in the midſt of their Camp, for the Ark to reſt in upon an Altar: And they continued their Wandrings for many Years, before they came to the promis'd Land. Thus did theſe People imitate the Children of *Iſrael*, in their March from *Egypt* to the Land of *Canaan*.

When they came to *Mechoacan*, or the *Land of Fiſh*, they would have ſet up their reſt; but their God killed many of them in one Night, for preſuming to ſtay here: Whereupon they proceeded to the Lake of *Mexico*, and partly by Force, and partly by Treaty, obtained Leave to ſettle on ſome Iſlands in the Lake, agreeing to pay a certain Tribute for what they were to poſſeſs. Soon after, the *Mexican* Prieſts inform'd their People, that their God had appeared to them in a Dream, and commanded the *Mexicans* to fix themſelves in that Part of the Lake where they ſhould find an Eagle perching on a Fig-tree that was rooted in a Rock; which they immediately went in Search of, and found a Fig-tree growing out of a Rock, and on it a moſt beautiful Eagle, looking at the Sun, with her Wings diſplay'd, and holding a little Bird in her Talons: Upon the Sight of which, they all fell down, and worſhipped the Eagle; and afterwards built a City on the very Spot, to which they gave the Name of *Tenochtitlan*, or the *Fig-tree on a Rock*; and the Arms of the City (which afterwards obtained the Name of *Mexico*, from their firſt Leader) were an Eagle, with her Wings diſplay'd, looking on the Sun, holding a Snake in her Talons, and ſtanding with one Foot on the Branch of an *Indian* Fig-tree.

Mexico built.

The *Mexican* Chiefs afterwards falling into Factions, and being inſulted by the other Tribes, reſolved to elect a King, that might have the Government of their State; and, not being able to agree upon any one of their own Tribe, they made Choice of *Acamapixtli*, the Grandſon of the King of *Culuacan*, under whoſe Adminiſtration they ſoon began to make a conſiderable Figure; which drew upon them the Envy of the neighbouring Tribes. He reigned forty Years, and very much improved the City, by Buildings, Canals, Aquaducts, and Bridges: He left his Subjects at Liberty to chuſe whom they pleaſed to ſucceed him. And this generous Confidence had the Effect he foreſaw; for they made Choice of one of his Sons for their King, whoſe Name was *Vitzilovitli*, or the *Rich Feather*. *Vitzilovitli* dying, the *Mexicans* choſe his Son *Chimalpopoca* their King, tho' the young Prince was but ten Years of Age: But ſoon after, the *Tapanecans*, his Subjects, treacherouſly murder'd the minor King of *Mexico*, which occaſion'd a War between the two Nations; for the Management whereof the *Mexicans* choſe *Izcoalt* their fourth King, the Son of *Acamapixtli*, by his Concubine. This Prince perfectly ſubdued his Enemies, and divided their Country among his *Mexicans*: After which, he made a Conqueſt of *Tacuba*, *Cuyoacan*, the *Suchimilca's*, and all the Tribes that inhabited the Banks of the Lake. He died after a proſperous Reign of twelve Years. Hitherto the *Mexicans* in General had all of them a Voice in the Election of their Kings; but *Tlacaellec* the General perſuaded them to transfer their Right of electing a Sovereign to the Kings of *Tezcuco* and *Tacuba*, and four Princes of the Royal Blood; which the People conſented to. Theſe Electors, by the Direction of the General, choſe his Nephew *Montezuma* their fifth Monarch, who firſt inſtituted the Cuſtom of the elected King's ſacrificing ſome of his Enemies, taken in War by himſelf, at his Coronation. *Montezuma* made an entire Conqueſt of the Territories of the *Chalci*; and his General *Tlacaellec* ſoon after ſubdued all the Nations bordering on the *North* and *South* Seas, except the *Tlaſcalans*. *Montezuma* alſo applied himſelf to regulate the Civil Government and the Officers of his Houſhold, and built that celebrated Temple in *Mexico* that was dedicated to their God *Vitziliputzli*. He died after he had reigned

reigned twenty-eight Years. The Electors, assembling on this Demise, chose *Ticocic*, one of the Sons of the deceased King, who was recommended to them by the General; but he, proving an unfortunate Prince, was poison'd by his Subjects, after he had reigned four Years: Whereupon the Electors, by the Advice of the same General, chose *Axayaca*, another of the Sons of *Montezuma*, for their Soveraign; and the General *Tlacaellec* dying soon after, *Axayaca* constituted his eldest Son General of the *Mexican* Armies. *Axayaca* subdued the Provinces of *Tecoantipique* and *Guatulco*; from whence he brought several Captives, whom he sacrificed at his Coronation. He died after he had reigned eleven Years; and the Electors thought fit to chuse *Autzol*, one of their Number, his Successor; who added *Guatimala*, and several other large Provinces, to his Dominions: He also rebuilt and beautified the City of *Mexico*; but, endeavouring to bring a River of fresh Water into the Town, drowned great Part of it: However, he found Means to draw off the Water again, and repair the Damage. *Autzol*, having reigned eleven Years, died; and *Montezuma* the second was elected King, being the same Prince that sat upon the Throne when the *Spaniards* first invaded *Mexico*. This Prince was, or appeared to be, the best qualified for that high Dignity, of any of the Royal Family; wise, valiant, generous, affable, and endow'd with every other Royal Virtue. He refused the Crown when it was offer'd him, and was in a Manner forced to accept it: But he no sooner ascended the Throne, than he gave his Subjects good Reason to believe his Humility and Condescention were counterfeited, only to render himself popular. However, he caused Justice to be duly administer'd throughout his Empire, was a great General, and added several Provinces to his Dominions. It was in the fourteenth Year of his Reign, *Anno* 1517, when the *Spaniards* first appeared upon his Coasts. In the following Year, 1518, *Cortez* arrived. *Montezuma* the second is looked upon as the last of the *Mexican* Emperors; tho' there were two elected afterwards.

The Learning of the antient *Mexicans*

The *Mexicans* had neither Letters or Characters, to express their Meaning by; Statuary and Painting were the only Ways they had to record what was past: An Image or Picture, with a Crown on its Head, signified a King; and an Image, habited like a Priest, a Priest. There were some few Things indeed that represented others, and may be stiled Hieroglyphicks; as the painted Wheel, that distinguish'd their Age; and lesser Circles, their Years: And this brings us to speak of their Kalendar. This they regulated by the Motion of the Sun, making his Altitude and Declination the Measure of Times and Seasons. Their Year consisted of three hundred sixty-five Days, and was divided into eighteen Months, to each of which was assign'd twenty Days, which made three hundred and sixty; but then there were five intercalary Days, which they added at the End of every Year; during which they gave themselves up entirely to Pleasure. At the End of the five Days, the new Year began, which happen'd on the 26th of our *February*. Their Weeks consisted of 13 Days each, distinguish'd in their Kalendar by different Figures; and their Age consisted of 52 Years, or four Weeks of Years; for the describing whereof they made a large Circle, which they divided into 52 Degrees, allowing a Year for every Degree: In the Center of the Circle, the Sun was painted, from whose Rays proceeded four Lines of different Colours, which equally divided the Circumference, leaving thirteen Degrees to each Semidiameter. In a larger Circle, inclosing the other, they mark'd, with the Figures of Animals, Plants, Weapons, or other Instruments, the most remarkable Occurrences that happen'd; which, however, they seem'd conscious, could not be perfectly understood by Posterity; and therefore Schools were instituted, wherein the Youth were taught to celebrate the great Actions of their antient Heroes, and to repeat the most memorable Transactions of the preceding Ages; on which they relied much more than on their Hieroglyphicks.

The Kalendar.

The End of the World expected at the Conclusion of every Age.

At the End of every Age, the *Mexicans* expected the End of the World. On the last Night they extinguish'd their Fires, abandon'd themselves to Sorrow, and remained with their Eyes fixed towards the East, till they saw the Dawn of the succeeding Day appear. Then they congratulated each other that a new Age was begun, and they should no more be in Danger of the like Calamity for two and fifty Years.

Government of the antient *Mexicans*.

The Government of the antient *Mexicans*, was at first Popular or Republican, till they elected *Acamapixtli*, their first King. The King Elect, after the Reign of *Montezuma* the first, was obliged to invade some neighbouring Nation, and to bring home a certain Number of Captives, to be sacrificed at his Coronation. On his Return in Triumph, he was met by the Nobility, and chief Priests, and conducted to the Temple of the God of War; where, after the Sacrifice, he was clothed by the Electors in the Imperial Robes; a Golden Sword, edg'd with Flints, was put into his Right Hand; and into his Left, a Bow and Arrows. After which, the King of *Tezcuco* set the Crown upon his Head, as first Elector of the Empire: Then one of the Ministers made a Speech, in the Name of all the *Mexicans*, congratulating him upon his Accession, and putting him in Mind of the Duties incumbent on those who were raised to sovereign Power. Then the High Priest anointed him with a thick Balm or Oil, as black as Ink; blessed him, and four times sprinkled him with a consecrated Water; putting a Mantle over his Shoulders, painted with Skulls and human Bones, to put him in Mind that Princes were subject to Mortality. They also used some Drugs at the Coronation, to preserve him from Diseases and Enchantments. After which, he offered Incense to the God *Vit zliputzli*, and took an Oath to maintain the Religion and Customs of his Ancestors.

Ceremonies of the Coronation.

The Courts of their antient Kings. Their Women.

Montezuma the second, who lived in the greatest Splendor of any of their Monarchs, had two Sorts of Guards; one of Soldiers, and the other of two hundred Noblemen, who daily attended in their Turns. He had also no less than three thousand Women in his Palace, being the most beautiful young Ladies the Governors of the several Provinces could pick out. These were taken from their Relations, either with or without their Consent, as a Tribute due to their Prince. There was a perpetual Succession of them in the Palace; for the King frequently gave them to his Courtiers and Favourites in Marriage, and supplied their Places with others. This Prince appeared but seldom in publick; and when he admitted any to petition him, they were not suffer'd to look him in the Face. He eat alone, having above two hundred Dishes at his Table. Tables were kept for all who resided in the Palace, or whose Business brought them thither. The King sat at Table on a little Stool, and the Room was divided in the Middle to keep off the Crowd. The Dishes were brought in by young Ladies richly dress'd. The Dishes and the Table-Linen, were every Day distributed among the Servants, being never used twice. He drank

out

out of Golden Cups frequently, a Privilege never allow'd to his Subjects. There were generally attending at his Table three or four Buffoons, who frequently acquainted him with Things that others durſt not name. Having repoſed himſelf a little after Dinner, he was entertain'd with ſuch Vocal and Inſtrumental Muſick as his Country afforded.

Courts of Juſtice.

There was one ſupreme Tribunal in *Mexico*, conſiſting of twelve Judges, who determined all Appeals from the reſpective Provinces; and both the Town and Country had their proper Judges and Officers, who heard the Parties, and determined Cauſes in a ſummary Way. Treaſon, Murder, Sodomy, and Adultery, were puniſh'd with Death. The firſt Theft was only puniſh'd with Loſs of Liberty. Corruption in the Judges and Magiſtrates was puniſh'd capitally; and Bribery in an Officer or Miniſter was never pardon'd. There was a Council of War at *Mexico*, which regulated all Things relating to the Militia; for the Soldiery were more favoured than any Set of Men in the Empire; and more raiſed their Fortunes, and acquired Poſts and Titles of Honour, in this Profeſſion than any other. It is ſaid, that *Montezuma* had thirty vaſſal Princes in his Dominions, that could each of them bring an hundred thouſand Men into the Field. Theſe Princes commanded their reſpective Troops in Perſon, but received their Orders from the Generaliſſimo. There were ſeveral military Honours: Some were created Knights of the *Eagle*, ſome of the *Tyger*, and others of the *Lion*, who bore the Device of their reſpective Orders on their Habits. There was ſtill a ſuperior Order of Knighthood, to which none but Princes, and thoſe of the Blood-Royal, were admitted; which the Emperor himſelf was of. There was a Court, or Council, which had the Management of the Royal Revenues, which were greatly encreaſed in the Reign of *Montezuma* the Second, who compelled his Subjects to yield him one third Part of their Profits; and the pooreſt People were obliged to work in the publick Buildings, without any other Wages than their Food, when required. The laſt Council was the Council of State, to which all others were ſubject. This was compoſed of the ſix Electors of the Empire, and uſually held in the Preſence of the Emperor himſelf.

Government of modern *Mexico*.

Modern *Mexico* is govern'd by a Viceroy, and each of the largeſt Diviſions of that Vice-royalty has its Court of Audience, to which all the leſſer Provinces and Diſtricts are ſubject. The Viceroy, or Governor, is Preſident of each Court of Audience; and the Alcaid-Majors, Fiſcals, and Counſellors of State, are Members of it. Theſe take Cognizance of all Cauſes, Criminal or Civil, within a certain Circuit round the City where the reſpective Courts are held, in the firſt Inſtance; and by way of Appeal from the Courts of the reſpective Alcaids, Rigidors, and Corrigidors of the reſpective Towns and Diſtricts. In the Viceroy is veſted the ſupreme military Power, and he has the Nomination to many Civil and Military Employments; but moſt of the principal Poſts are filled up by the King, or the Council of the *Indies* in *Old Spain*; to whom alſo there lies an Appeal from the Courts of Audience in *Mexico*: And the *Spaniards* make it an inviolable Rule never to prefer any *Mexican*, tho' born of *Spaniſh* Parents, to any conſiderable Poſt in the *Indies*. The Term of the Viceroy's Adminiſtration is uſually limited to five Years; but ſometimes he amaſſes Wealth enough in that Time, to purchaſe a Continuance in his Office for another five Years. They uſually ſell all the Poſts they have to diſpoſe of, without regard to the Qualification or Merit of the Perſon preferred; ſo that there is a Train of Bribery, Corruption, and Oppreſſion, that runs through the whole Adminiſtration. In the Towns that are purely *Indian*, the *Spaniards* conſtitute the ſame Sort of Magiſtrates, and the Government is adminiſter'd in the ſame Manner by *Indians*, as it is in the *Spaniſh* Towns by *Spaniſh* Magiſtrates: But there are ſome Tribes of *Indians* that are rather in Alliance with the *Spaniards* than ſubject to them. However, moſt of the *Indians* acknowledge the King of *Spain* for their Sovereign; and their Chiefs accept a Staff with a Silver Head, which is in a Manner a *Spaniſh* Commiſſion to govern their own People. This Chief they obey as their Prince, who acts the Part of a General when they take the Field, and that of a Judge in time of Peace; and, in his Determinations, is govern'd by antient Cuſtom.

The Forces of *Mexico*.

The regular Forces in *Mexico* are very inconſiderable: In the Metropolis there are ſcarce five hundred Soldiers; and at *Vera Cruz*, they have not half that Number; and their Fortifications are as contemptible as their Garriſons. There is ſcarce a Town, of any Name, near the Coaſt of the *North* Sea, but has been taken and plunder'd by the Buccaneers more than once, tho' theſe Rovers ſeldom conſiſt of more than a thouſand or fifteen hundred Men. The ſame Buccaneers have fought their Royal Fleets on the *South* Sea, taken ſome of their ſtouteſt Ships, and ſeldom been unſucceſsful in their Encounters with the *Spaniards*, by Sea or Land. What then might not an *Engliſh* or *French* Squadron of fifteen or twenty Men of War, and five or ſix thouſand Land-Forces, effect in the *Spaniſh Weſt-Indies*. It is not the Want of Power, but the Want of Inclination, that has prevented the *Engliſh* fixing themſelves in the richeſt Parts of the *Spaniſh Weſt-Indies*.

The Revenues of *Mexico*.

The Revenues of *Mexico* are very conſiderable, and ariſe principally from, 1. The King's Fifth or Tenth of the Treaſure dug out of their Mines; 2. From the Duties of Exciſe and Cuſtom; and, 3. From the Rents and Services by which they hold their Eſtates, and the Produce of their Husbandry and Manufactures. The King has but a Tenth of the Silver in *Mexico*, tho' he has a Fifth of the Silver of *Peru*, becauſe the *Mexicans* are at a very great Charge in purchaſing Quickſilver to refine their Silver; whereas the *Peruvians* have Mines of Quickſilver in their Country. Gold, however, pays a Fifth to the King, both in *Mexico* and *Peru*. In the Year 1698, the King's Part for that Year came to twelve hundred thouſand Pounds *Sterling* of our Money; and to ſixteen hundred thouſand Pounds *Sterling*, in the Year 1691. The Cuſtoms and Exciſe alſo muſt raiſe a great deal of Money; for the Exciſe on a ſpirituous Liquor, drawn from the Plant *Maghey* only, amounts to about eleven hundred thouſand Pieces of Eight *per Annum* in the City of *Mexico*. The Rents and Services due to the Crown, muſt be equal, if not ſuperior, to either of the former Branches; for the pooreſt married *Indian* pays four, ſix, and, in ſome Places, eight Ryals *per Ann.* to the Crown; and others in Proportion to their Eſtates. All Lands there, as with us, hold mediately or immediately of the Crown, and the Owners of them contribute to the Support of the Government.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Religion of the Mexicans, *Antient and Modern; their Marriages, Education, and Funerals.*

Religion of the Chichimecas.

THE People that inhabited this Country before the *Mexicans*, were the *Chichimeca's*, who are represented by the *Mexicans* as a very brutish Generation, without Religion: But, notwithstanding, the *Spanish* Historians, most of them, agree, that this savage People worshipped the Sun and Moon, and sacrificed Fowls and other Animals to them. At the Village of *Teotiguacan*, about a Day's Journey from *Mexico* City, are two Pyramids of Earth, with Steps from the Bottom to the Top, like those of *Egypt*; the one being the Pyramid of the Moon, and the other of the Sun. There once stood on the Top of the first Pyramid a vast Idol of the Moon, made of a hard coarse Stone, which the first Bishop of *Mexico*, out of a Religous Zeal, caused to be broke in Pieces. Within the Pyramid were several Vaults, where Kings had been buried: For which Reason the Road to it was called the *Highway of the Dead*. The Pyramid of the Sun, two Sides of it, are three hundred *Spanish* Yards in Length, and the other two about two hundred. It is about eighty *Spanish* Yards high, and a fourth Part larger than that of the Moon: The Statue on the Top of it is broken; but the best Part of it remains there, being too large to be easily removed. According to their Traditions, these Pyramids were built by the *Olmeco's*, a People which came by Sea from the East; which gives Reason to conjecture, that they were Colonies of the *Egyptians* and *Carthaginians*. The *Mexicans* do not pretend to know when these Pyramids were erected: But certain it is, there was formerly a great City where they stand, as appears by the vast Ruins about them.

Religion of the *Mexicans*.

The *Mexican* Tribes, who succeeded the *Chichimeca's*, according to the *Spanish* Writers, acknowledg'd one supreme God as well as the *Peruvians*, and worshipped the Idol *Vitziliputzli* as the Image of this great God: But they contradict themselves in other Parts of their Histories; telling us, that *Vitziliputzli* was their *Mars*, or *God of War*; and that he had a Brother, named *Tlalock, of equal Power*; and that the like Prayers and Sacrifices were made before each of them. Besides, the same Writers acknowledge, that there was not one *Indian* Nation that had a Word in their Language, or any Term, that signified God. If the *Mexicans* had any God which they imagined presided over the rest, it was the Sun. But they had no Image of the Sun or Moon in the Temples of *Mexico*, as the former Inhabitants of the Country had: The Idols *Vitziliputzli* and *Tlalock*, the Reader will find already described. The third Idol was *Tescalipuca*, called the *God of Penance*. It was an Image of human Form, carved out of a black shining Stone, and represented sitting on a Chair in the Middle of the Altar. The fourth Image was the *Mercury* of the *Mexicans*, represented under a human Shape, and called *Quitzalcoalt*. They had also a Goddess called *Toci*, or *Our Great Grandmother*; a Deity of their own framing. Another Idol was formed of a Paste, composed of the Flour of several Sorts of Grain, mixed with Honey; which they obliged their Prisoners to adore that were destined to be sacrificed. We have before taken notice, that the Story of their offering human Sacrifices, has been greatly magnified: And that of their eating human Flesh is not at all to be relied on.

A Resemblance between the *Mexican* and *Christian* Rites.

It is said, that they imitated both *Jews* and *Christians* in the Worship and Service of their Idols: That they had their Temples, Priests, Sacrifices, Sacraments, Prophets, and Ministers, as the People of God had: Their Chief Priest, or *Pope*, was vested with sovereign Authority, and held his Office by Inheritance, as the rest of the Priests of *Vitziliputzli* did: But the other Priests were elected or dedicated to that Office in their Infancy. The daily Employment of their Priests was to offer Incense to their Idols: This they did at Break of Day, at Noon, at Sun-set, and at Midnight; when they sounded their Drums and Trumpets: The Chief Priest in waiting, being clothed in a Kind of Surplice, took Fire from the Altar at Midnight; and, having incensed the Idol, was followed into a Chapel by the rest of the Priests and Officers of the Temple; where they perform'd a very rigorous Penance, lashing and cutting themselves till the Blood follow'd, and then besmearing their Faces with their own Blood. The Priests and Religious also fasted five or ten Days before their grand Festivals; and some of them cut and disabled themselves in such a Manner, as to render them incapable of enjoying Women: Neither did they drink strong Liquor, or indulge themselves in Sleep, most of their Penances being perform'd in the Night-time.

At some of their Festivals, they flea'd a Captive, and clothed another Man in his Skin, who went through the Streets begging the Charity of the People, the Money being applied to the Service of the Temple. A Captive was annually given to the Priests, to be the Representative of their God. This Man they clothed with all the Robes and Ornaments of the Idol he was to personate, and gave him the same Name; and he was adored all that Year as the Idol was, lodged in the best Apartment in the Temple, entertained by those of the first Rank, and, when he went through the Streets, was attended by their Princes and Nobility: But at the End of the Year he was sacrificed, and sent to increase the Number of their Gods. The Priests put both the King and People upon these barbarous Sacrifices; who were weary of them when the *Spaniards* arrived amongst them, and were determined to have left them off themselves.

Festival of *Vitziliputzli*.

In their great Feast of *Vitziliputzli*, which was held the Beginning of *May*, their Nuns made an Image of their God in Paste, which having dress'd up, and seated on an Azure Throne, they carried it in Procession to the Area before the Temple, where a Set of young Friars received it, and carried it to the Steps of the Altar, where the People came and worshipped. They afterwards went in Procession with the Image to a Mountain, a League distant from *Mexico*, taking a Tour thro' several of the neighbouring Villages: After

which they returned to the Temple in a triumphant Manner. And then the Nuns took Paſte, and made it into the Form of human Bones, which were laid at the Feet of the Idol, and, being conſecrated by the Prieſts, were called, *The Fleſh and Bones of* Vitziliputzli. After which, the Prieſts ſtripped the Idol of Paſte of its Ornaments, broke that and the Bones in Pieces, which they diſtributed to the People, bidding them *eat the Fleſh of their God*; the whole Ceremony concluding with a Sermon or Exhortation of the Prieſts.

Their Communion.

On the 19th of the ſame Month of *May*, was annually celebrated the Feaſt of *Teſcalipuca*, when the Prieſts abſolved the People from their Sins. The Temple Gates being open'd, one of the Prieſts appeared, and blew a Horn, turning himſelf to the four Winds: After which, he took up Duſt and put in his Mouth, pointing to the Heavens; in which he was imitated by the People, who ſigh'd, wept, and mourn'd for their Offences; and, proſtrating themſelves on the Ground, implored the Divine Mercy. The Horn was blown for ten Days ſucceſſively, from the 9th to the 19th of *May*; all which Time was ſpent in weeping and mourning; and, on the laſt Day, the Image of the God *Teſcalipuca* was carried in Proceſſion, two Prieſts walking before it with Cenſors in their Hands; and, every Time they cens'd the People, they lifted up their Hands to Heaven, adoring the Sun and their Idol: And, during the Ceremony, the Penitents ſcourg'd themſelves with Whips and knotted Cords. After the Proceſſion, the People made their Oblations, conſiſting of Gold, Silver, the Fruits of the Earth, or of their Labour. They alſo ſet all Manner of delicious Meats before the Idol, which were afterwards carried by the Servants of the Temple to the Apartments of the Prieſts; the whole Ceremony concluding with the Sacrifice of the Perſon who had been the living Image of the God of Penance the preceding Year, and the uſual Songs and Dances at ſuch Solemnities.

Feaſt of *Teſcalipuca*

The next Feſtival is that of *Quitzalcoalt*, the *God of Trade*. Forty Days before this Feaſt, the Merchants purchaſed a beautiful young Slave, without any Manner of Defect, to be the living Repreſentative of this God; and, having waſh'd and purified him, they clothed him with the ſame Robes and Ornaments with which the Idol was adorn'd he was to repreſent: They danced, ſung, and adored him; furniſhing him with every thing that could render Life deſirable: But, on the Night of the Feaſt-day, about Twelve o'Clock, they ſacrificed the unhappy Wretch in the uſual Manner.

Feaſt of *Quitzalcoalt*.

The *Mexicans* adored alſo the *God of Hunting*; and, at certain Seaſons of the Year, uſed to ſurround the Woods and Mountains, where they expected to meet with wild Beaſts, or Game: And, having lighted Fires on all Sides, and driven the Beaſts to the Centre, there they uſed to kill, and offer them to this God, who was placed on an Altar on the Top of the Mountain thus invaded.

Feaſt to the *God of Hunting*.

The Inhabitants of *Honduras*, *Yucatan*, *Nicaragua*, and the reſt of the Provinces, had Idols of different Figures, that were worſhip'd with different Rites. The Iſland of *Cozumel*, on the Coaſt of *Yucatan*, was famous for its Oracles. The Prieſts here, as well as the Pagan Prieſts of old, uſed to abuſe the People with pretended Anſwers from their Idols, which they themſelves pronounced unſeen from a hollow Place, where they ſtood concealed.

Within the Bounds of every Temple there were two Convents, the one of Nuns, and the other of Friars: The Nuns were clothed in white, and called the *Daughters of Penance*, being admitted into the Cloiſter at twelve or thirteen Years of Age, when their Heads were ſhaved. Their Buſineſs was to keep the Temple clean, and dreſs the ſacred Meats preſented to the Idols, and afterwards eaten by the Prieſts; and they made the Furniture and Ornaments for the Temple, and the Idols it contain'd: They roſe at Midnight to attend the Service of the Temple, and perform the Penances impoſed on them; and it was Death to ſuffer their Chaſtity to be violated while they remained in the Cloiſter; but then they were to continue here but a few Years; after which, they were allowed to leave their Cells, and marry. The young Friars were admitted at eight or nine Years of Age, had their Crowns ſhaved, and attended the Service of the Temple alſo: They were obliged to live abſtemiouſly, and practiſe great Auſterities; but were, however, at twenty Years of Age, allowed to go into the World, and marry.

Convents and Nunneries.

Circumciſion and Baptiſm.

The *Spaniſh* Writers alſo relate, that the *Mexicans* had the Rites of Baptiſm and Circumciſion amongſt them; by which they initiated young Children, eſpecially thoſe of noble Extraction, into their Religion. Their Prieſts alſo obliged their People to come to Confeſſion, and enjoin'd them Penance, after the Manner of the *Roman* Catholicks.

Confeſſion.

Cortez, and his Companions, ſtudied nothing leſs than the Converſion of the *Indians*, whatever they pretended: They only ſummoned the *Indians* to ſubmit to the Pope and the Emperor; and, on their Refuſal, to become Chriſtians, they ſeiz'd their Country murder'd many Millions of them, and enſlaved the reſt: And afterwards, when Miſſionaries were ſent over, they perfectly dragoon'd the *Indians* that were left alive into Chriſtianity, driving them by Hundreds and Thouſands into the Rivers to be baptized, on Pain of having their Throats cut. One of the Miſſionaries boaſted, that he had baptized above thirty thouſand *Indians* himſelf.

The Chriſtian Religion introduced.

It is very ſeldom that any conſiderable Dignity in the Church of *Mexico* is conferred on a Native of that Country, tho' born of *Spaniſh* Anceſtors; which has created an implacable Enmity between the Clergy that are Natives of *Mexico*, and thoſe that are Natives of *Old Spain*. The Miſſionaries ſent from *Spain*, are frequently Monks of very little Merit, and of lewd Lives. The principal Motives that draw the *Spaniſh* Clergy over to *America*, are a View of gaining great Riches, to free themſelves from the Confinement of their Cloiſters, and enjoy an unreſtrained Liberty; for it is frequent for a Prieſt to lay up ten or twelve thouſand Crowns in ten Years time, who has but an ordinary Cure in *Mexico*, and to live plentifully and luxuriouſly all the Time. Both the Monks in the Cloiſters, and the Parochial Clergy, rival the Quality in their Dreſs and luxurious Way of Life: They drink, they game, they ſwear, they wench, and made a Jeſt of their Vows of Poverty; getting Money enough, many of them, to return to *Old Spain*, and purchaſe Biſhopricks. And as to the Laity here, there is not a more bigotted, or a lewder People, upon the Face of the whole Earth: A preſent to the Church wipes off the Odium of the greateſt Crimes; and the Way the People are inſtructed in their Religion here, as in *Old Spain*, is by Plays and Theatrical Entertainments in their Churches. There is ſcarce any Part of the Hiſtory of the Goſpel but is the Subject of a Play, which the loweſt of the People are taught to act; one perſonating our Saviour, another *Pilate*, a third

Herod,

Herod, and so on: And as their Churches are exquisitely fine, so is their Musick, both Vocal and Instrumental. In their Cloisters they have Masks, Dances, and all manner of Entertainments the Laity in this Part of the World indulge themselves in: And yet have they their Seasons for Penance and Mortification, particularly in *Lent*, and in case of an Earthquake, Famine, or other general Calamity.

Marriages

The *Mexicans* were married by their Priests in the Temple: The Bride and Bridegroom standing before him, he took each of them by the Hand, and demanded, if they were agreed to marry; and, on their answering in the Affirmative, he tied a Corner of the Woman's Veil to a Corner of the Man's Mantle; and, leading them in this manner from the Temple to the Bridegroom's House, he made the Bride surround the Fire (that was kindled in the Middle of the House for that purpose) seven times: After which, the Man and Woman sat down by the Fire; and thus the Marriage was concluded without farther Ceremony, and consummated the same Night. But if the Man did not find his Bride a Virgin, she was returned the next Day to her Friends. On the contrary, if he had no Objections to her Virtue, he gave a handsome Entertainment to her Friends the next Day, and Sacrifices were offered to the Gods on the joyful Occasion. A Schedule was afterwards made of all the Jewels, Cloaths, and Goods the Wife brought with her, which her Father kept; and, in case of a Divorce, all the Effects mention'd in the Schedule were return'd with the Wife, to her Friends: And, People once divorced, were prohibited coming together again.

Polygamy was allowed amongst them; but the common People had more Wives than one, because they were so far from being a Charge to a Man, that they might well be reckon'd Part of his Stock, as well as his Slaves: Whether they brought Fortunes with them or not, they improved and increased his Estate every Day.

Of bad Women.

In the Country of *Darien*, a Woman is no sooner deliver'd of a Child, but she and the Infant are immediately wash'd in some River: After which, the Child is swathed or tied to a Board, and the Mother suckles it with the Board at its Back: It also sleeps in a Hammock thus fasten'd to a Board. And, when they grow up, the Boys are bred to their Father's Exercises, namely, Shooting, Fishing, or Hunting; while the Girls are taught Husbandry as well as Housewifery, and to spin and weave.

Of Indians subject to the Spaniards.

As to the *Indians* that are subject to the *Spaniards*, and obliged to profess themselves Christians, their Priests compel them to marry when the Lads are fourteen, and the Girls twelve: And if they are not then provided with a Spouse, the Priests find one for them. A Wife and Children are the surest Pledges of a Man's Fidelity. An *Indian* seldom retires to his untamed Countrymen in the Mountains, after he is married; but becomes a profitable Member of the Commonwealth, paying Duties both to the Church and his Civil Governors. The marrying them so young also renders the Country the more populous, which was impolitickly deprived of its Inhabitants by the first Adventurers. Nor do the *Spaniards* only take care to see the young *Indians* married to each other, but they encourage, or at least suffer, the native *Spaniards*, and the *Criolli* their Descendants, to marry with the *Indians*. The like Policy the *French* observes in their *American* Plantations; while the *English* prohibit their People marrying with the *Indians*, and consequently lose many Advantages in planting and establishing themselves, which other *European* Nations have.

Mexican Education.

The antient *Mexicans* were exceeding careful of the Education of their Children: They had publick Schools and Academies belonging to almost every great Temple, where their Masters studied the Genius of the Children under their Care, and qualified them for the Church, the State, or the Army, according as they were inclined: They suffer'd them to take but little Sleep, obliged them to live abstemiously, to carry Burdens, and perform the roughest Exercises; and those design'd for the Army were oblig'd to attend the Camp, and give Proofs of their Courage, before they were admitted to be enrolled among the Soldiery, which was esteemed the most honourable Employment of all others. The young Ladies also were educated in Convents, instructed in the Principles of Religion and Virtue, taught to paint and match beautiful Feathers, and such other Works as might render them useful and agreeable when they enter'd on the married State. Both Sexes were taught to sing and dance, and to repeat the heroick Actions of their Ancestors, and other remarkable Occurrences in their History.

Funerals.

The *Mexicans* sometimes burnt, and at others, buried their Dead: Their Princes and great Men were generally burnt, and their Ashes, being afterwards collected, and put into an Urn, were then buried: The Funeral Solemnity was perform'd by their Priests; and the Places of Interment were usually their Gardens or Court-yards; tho' some were buried within the Walls of their Temples, and others in the Fields or Woods, some distance from *Mexico*.

Soon after the Party died, the Corpse was wash'd; and, being dress'd in the Mantles the Deceased usually wore in his Life-time, and set upright, all his Friends and Relations came and took a solemn Leave of him. The Corpse was carried to the Place of Interment, attended by the Priests, who sung mournful Funeral Songs, and play'd upon their Wind-Musick. And where a Prince was to be inter'd, the Nobility and Officers of State attended the Procession. They were buried with their Arms, and their Habits.

The State of departed Souls.

The *Mexicans* believed that the Soul was Immortal, and that there was another State, where every one was to be rewarded according to his Works; but they had no Notion of the Resurrection of the Body. They held also, that there were nine different Places to which departed Souls were sent, according to the Time of their respective Ages, and the different Lives they had led; but that the Place of the greatest Happiness was near the Sun: This was to be the Portion of the Brave who died in Battle, and of such as had been sacrificed to their Gods. Some of the latter were canonized, and even deified; which might be some Excuse for their sacrificing Men: They imagin'd, they did them no Injury, when they deprived them of a Life of Care and Anxiety, and sent them to share the Joys of Paradise, or, rather, to be number'd with the Gods.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

A Description of New Mexico *and* California.

New Mexico Situation and Extent.

NEW MEXICO, or *Granada*, is bounded by unknown Lands on the North; by *Florida* on the East; by *Mexico*, or *New Spain*, on the South; and by the Bay of *California*, which separates it from *California*, on the West; lying between the 28th and 45th Degrees of Nothern Latitude, and between 100 and 130 Degrees of Western Longitude, from the Meridian of *London*.

Gold and Silver Mines in *New Mexico*.

We know little more of this Country, than that it abounds in rich Silver Mines, and has some of Gold: That it is an exceeding fruitful Country, well water'd with Rivers, and abounding with the same Plants and Animals as our Plantations of *Virginia* and *Carolina* do; and, according to the *Spanish* Accounts, is very thinly inhabited by scatter'd Clans of savage People, who live chiefly by what they take in Hunting, and on the Fruits of the Earth that grow spontaneously; neither building Towns, or clothing themselves, or being acquainted with any Art or Science.

The Natives.

Gemelli's Account of *New Mexico*.

Gemelli Careri, who was at *New Mexico* in the Year 1698, gives us the following Account of that Country. He says, Part of it is newly conquer'd, and there remains still much more to conquer. As to the Natives, they were such skilful Archers, that they would hit a Six-pence thrown up into the Air, and shake all the Grain out of an Ear of Corn without breaking it off: That they are great Lovers of Mule's Flesh; for which reason they often robbed Travellers, and carried away only the Beasts, leaving behind the Chests of Silver, which they do not value: That they paint their Bodies, and pricking the Skin, render the Colours indelible. The King of *Spain* maintains six hundred Horse in *New Mexico*. These Soldiers are arm'd with a Shield, Musket, and Half-pike, or Spear; not to fight, but to hunt them out like wild Beasts: They are order'd by the Government not to kill this savage People, but to bring them in, that they may be instructed in their Religion, and civilized: Thus an hundred and fifty Leagues have been conquer'd to the Westward, tho' the People endeavour'd to defend themselves with their Bows and Arrows. The worst is, that, being five hundred Leagues from the City of *Mexico*, those Barbarians quickly revolt, knowing there cannot be Supplies of Soldiers sent against them suddenly. The Country is plain, and convenient for Carriages for some Months every Year; but the King's Forces are obliged to pass such wide Deserts, that they usually intrench every Night, and keep Guard, for fear of being surprized by the Savages. The *Franciscans* have the Charge of the Conversion of these People, called *Chichimeca's*, who are rather Atheists than Idolaters, and have brought a great Number of them to live like Men; but their wild Nature always inclines them to Solitude. The Country is so thinly peopled, that they travel several Days Journey without meeting with a Village; for which Reason the Viceroy has sent several Families thither of late Years to people it, the Soil plentifully producing all Things that are sowed or planted in it, even of the Fruits of *Europe*: And there are, besides, rich Mines of Gold and Silver. The Length of the Way not allowing Travellers to carry their Quilts to lie on, the Jesuits that go to their Millions in this Country have learnt of the *Indians* to carry before them, on their Saddles, Mattresses and Pillows made of Leather, which at Night they blow full of Wind, and they are as soft as a Feather-Bed.

Some Writers have subdivided *New Mexico* into twenty or five and twenty Provinces, and furnish'd us with the Names of as many Towns, the Capitals of the respective Provinces: But, as they have not given us the Situation, Boundaries, or Description of any of these Provinces, and most Authors agree, that not one twentieth Part of the Country is yet inhabited or cultivated; we shall be content with observing, that *Santa Fé*, the Capital Town of *New Mexico*, is situated in 36 Degrees odd Minutes North Latitude, a little to the Westward of the *North River*; and that it is a Bishop's See, and the Residence of the Governor; and said to be regularly built of Stone.

California described.

We shall conclude our Description of the *Spanish* Dominions in *North America*, with an Account of *California*, which may well be look'd upon as a Part of *New Mexico*, since it is joined to it by a narrow Isthmus, or only separated from it by the Bay or Gulph of *California*; and, if not under the same Governor, is subject in a great measure to the *Spanish* Influence.

Peninsular Situation.

This Country, formerly deemed an Island, is laid down in our latest Charts and Maps as a Peninsula, adjoining to the Continent of *New Mexico*. It is bounded by unknown Lands on the North; by the Bay or Gulph of *California*, and a narrow Isthmus, which separate it from *Old* and *New Mexico*, towards the West; and by the *South* Sea on the South and West; stretching in Length from the Tropic of *Cancer* to the 45th Degree of North Latitude; and lies between the 115th and 136th Degrees of Western Longitude, from the Meridian of *London*. It is of an unequal Breadth, narrow in the South, and growing broader towards the North; indented by many considerable Bays and Gulphs of the Sea; said to be about fifteen hundred Miles in Length, and three hundred in Breadth in the broadest Part.

This Country was first discovered by *Cortez*, in the Year 1535; but the *Spaniards* did not, till very lately, penetrate far into it, contenting themselves with the rich Pearl-Fishery on the Coast. Sir *Francis Drake* touched upon this Coast in the Year 1578, and took Possession of it in the Name of the then Queen of *England*, calling it *New Albion*; but the *British* Government has never thought fit to attempt any farther Discoveries in *California*; and it is at this Day, or will be in a very short time, in the Power of *Spain*, and annex'd to their *Mexican* Dominions.

The Heats in Summer are very great along the Sea-Coasts of *California*, and it seldom rains; but the Air of the Inland Country is more temperate, and the Heats not so excessive: It is the same in Winter in Proportion. In the rainy Season there are Floods; but, when that is over, instead of Rain, the Dews fall in such Plenty every Morning, that one would think it had rained; which renders the Earth very fruitful. In the Months of *April*, *May*, and *June*, there falls with the Dew

Dew a Sort of Manna, which congeals and hardens upon the Leaves of Reeds, from whence they gather it: It is as ſweet as Sugar, but not altogether ſo white.

There are in *California* large Plains, pleaſant Valleys, excellent Paſtures at all Times for great and ſmall Cattle, fine Springs of running Water, Brooks, and Rivers, with their Banks cover'd with Willows, Reeds, and wild Vines. In their Rivers they have Plenty of Fiſh, eſpecially Cray-fiſh, which they keep in Reſervoirs till they have Occaſion for them. There is alſo Plenty of *Xicames*, of a better Taſte than thoſe of *Mexico*. On the Mountains there are, all the Year long, *Meſcales*, a Fruit peculiar to this Country; and, in moſt Seaſons, large *Piſtachio's* of ſeveral Sorts, and Figs of different Colours. The Trees are very beautiful; and, amongſt others, that which the Natives of the Country call *Palo Santo*, bears a great deal of Fruit: From this they draw excellent Frankincenſe.

As this Country abounds in Fruits, it does no leſs in Grain, of which there are fourteen Sorts, that the People feed on. They uſe the Fruits of Trees and Plants, and among others, thoſe of the *Yuca*, or *Caſſavy*, to make Bread of. There are excellent *Skirrets*, a Sort of red Strawberries, of which they eat plentifully: *Citrons* and *Water-Melons* of an extraordinary Size. The Land is ſo good, that moſt Plants bear Fruit three Times a Year; ſo that, with ſome Labour in cultivating it, and Skill in managing the Water, they render the Country extremely fertile. Nor is there any Sort of Fruit or Grain, but what they gather in great Abundance.

Beſides ſeveral Sorts of Animals that we know, which are here in Plenty, as Deer, Hares, Rabbets, they have two Sorts of Deer that we know nothing of. The firſt Sort is as large as a Calf of one or two Years old: Its Head is much like that of a Stag, and its Horns, which are very large, like thoſe of a Ram: Its Tail and Hair are ſpeckled, and ſhorter than a Stag's; but its Hoof is large, round, and cleft like that of an Ox. The other Sort, ſome of which are white, and others black, are larger, and have a great deal more Wool, which is very good, and eaſy to be ſpun and wrought. Beſides theſe Animals, that ſerve for Food, there are Lions, wild Cats, and many others, like thoſe in *New Spain*. As for Fowls, there are in *California* all that are in *New* and *Old Mexico*; as Pigeons, Turtle-doves, Larks, Partridges, of an exquiſite Taſte, and in great Quantities; Geeſe, Ducks, and many other Sorts, both of River and Sea Fowls. The Sea affords Plenty of very good Fiſh: They take Pilchards, Anchovies, and Tunnies; which laſt they catch with their Hands on the Shore. They often ſee Whales, and all Sorts of Torroiſes. The Shores are filled with Heaps of Shells, larger than thoſe of Mother of Pearl. The Salt they have is not from the Sea, but out of Pits: It is as bright as Chryſtal, and ſo hard, that they are often forced to break it with Hammers: It is a very good Commodity in *New Spain*, where Salt is ſcarce.

Tho' Heaven has been ſo bountiful to the *Californians*, yet they make no Eſteem of the Plenty and Riches of their Country, contenting themſelves with what is only neceſſary for Life. The Inland Parts of the Country are very populous, eſpecially towards the North: They have no Houſes, but defend themſelves from the Heat of the Sun in the Day-time under the Shade of the Trees; and of their Leaves and Branches make a Sort of Roof, againſt the Inclemency of the Night. In the Winter they ſhut themſelves up in Caves in the Earth, and live there together little better than ſo many Beaſts. The Men go naked. They wear about their Head a fine Linen Fillet, or ſort of Net-work; and about their Neck, and ſometimes about their Arms, for Ornament, Mother of Pearl, in divers Figures, very finely wrought, and prettily intermix'd with little round Fruits. They have no other Arms than Bows and Arrows, and a Sort of Spear or Lance, which they always carry in their Hands, either to kill Game, or defend themſelves; for they are frequently at War with each other. The Women wear, from their Waiſt down to their Knees, a kind of Apron made of Reeds, very neatly wrought, and platted together: They cover their Shoulders with the Skins of Beaſts, and wear about their Heads, like the Men, a very curious Kind of Net-work. They, as well as the Men, have Necklaces of Mother of Pearl, mixed with the Stones of ſome Sorts of Fruit and Sea-ſhells, hanging down to their Waiſt; and Bracelets of the ſame. The common Employment both of Men and Women is ſpinning: They make their Thread of long Plants, which ſerve them inſtead of Hemp and Flax, or elſe of a Cotton-like Subſtance found in the Shell of ſome Sorts of Fruit. Of the finer Thread they make the Ornaments above-mention'd, and of the coarſer, Fiſhing-nets and Sacks, or Bags for ſeveral Uſes. The Men moreover, of certain Plants, whoſe Fibres are very cloſe and thick ſet, and which they are well ſkilled in working, employ themſelves in making Diſhes and other Kitchen Neceſſaries, of all Fathions and Sizes.

The *Californians* have a great deal of Vivacity, and are naturally addicted to Raillery. When the Miſſionaries were among them, if they committed any Error in their Language, they jeſted and made Sport with them. And if at any Time they explained any Myſtery or Point of Morality, not conformable to their Prejudices, they waited for the Preacher after Sermon, and diſputed againſt him with a great deal of Force and Wit. They have not amongſt them any Form of Religion or regular Worſhip, only they adore the Moon, and cut their Hair in her Decreaſe, in Honour of their Deity, which they give to their Prieſts, who employ it to ſeveral ſuperſtitious Uſes. Every Family is a diſtinct State, and hath different Laws and Cuſtoms, which is the Reaſon that they are ſo often at War with one another.

CHAP. XI.

A Description of Terra-Firma.

Terra-Firma. Its Situation and Extent.

THE Countries, comprehended under the general Name of *Terra-Firma*, are bounded by the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the North and East; by *Peru* and the Country of the *Amazons*, on the South; and by the *South* Sea, and the Province of *Veragua* in *Mexico*, on the West; being upwards of two thousand Miles in Length from East to West, and generally about five hundred Miles in Breadth from North to South.

Terra Firma Proper described.

1. The first Province of *Terra-Firma*, is *Terra-Firma Proper*, which frequently goes under the Name of *Darien*. It lies in the Form of a Crescent, about that noble Bay of *Panama*, being about 300 Miles in Length, and 60 in Breadth, from Sea to Sea. This Province is, in Proportion, the richest, and of most Importance to the *Spaniards*, and has been the Scene of more Action, than any Province in *America*. Its Situation, both on the *North* and *South* Seas, and on the Confines of *North* and *South America*, and the Gold Mines, Gold Sands, and Pearls, with which it is replenished, render it invaluable, and make it the darling Object of all enterprizing People.

The Face of *Terra-Firma Proper.*

The Surface of the Country is very unequal, consisting of exceeding high Hills, and long deep Valleys: The Valleys are watered with Rivers, Brooks, and perennial Springs, most of them having their Sources in a Ridge of Mountains that over-top the other Hills, running the whole Length of the Isthmus parallel to the Coasts, bending as the Isthmus bends. This vast Ridge of Hills is nearest the Coast of the *North* Sea, seldom more than ten or fifteen Miles distant from it. The Hills between this Ridge and the *South* Sea, are covered with fine tall Woods, with little or no Under-wood to interrupt the Passage: But those on the North-side are full of Bushes, Bamboes, and Mangroves, near the Shore, that render them almost impenetrable.

The Rivers.

The Rivers on the North Side, have generally a very short Course, running precipitately into the Sea, tho' there are Exceptions to this Rule. The chief Rivers are, 1. The River or Gulph of *Darien*, the Eastern Boundary of this Province, six or seven Leagues wide at the Mouth, and navigable fourscore or an hundred Miles. 2. The River of *Conception*, which is pretty broad, and makes a good Appearance at the Mouth. 3. The River *Chargre*, the most navigated of any of this Province. Upon this River is embarked all the Merchandize that is sent from *Panama* to *Porto Bello* for the Galleons, except the Gold and Silver, which are carried over Land upon the Backs of Mules. 4. The River *St. Mary's*, pretty large, navigable, and considerable on account of its lying in the Neighbourhood of the Gold Mines, and for the Rivulets which fall into it; in whose Sands are found abundance of Gold. From one of these, called the *Golden River*, 'tis said, they carry off eighteen or twenty thousand Pound Weight of pure Gold in a Season. 5. The River *Cupo*, large, and navigable for great Vessels within the Bar, but so shallow at the Mouth, that it is very difficult entring. 6. The River of *Darpo* is a considerable navigable River, and runs a long Course; but has the same Misfortune as the rest in this Country, to have a Bar at the Mouth, that large Ship cannot enter it.

Air and Seasons.

This Province being very narrow, and lying between two great Oceans, is observed to have more wet Weather, than any other Place within the *Torrid Zone*. The Rains usually begin here in *April* or *May*: In *June*, *July*, and *August* they are very heavy; and it is extreme hot at this time, whenever the Sun shines out: There are then no Breezes to cool the Air. In *September*, the Rains begin to abate; but it is *November* or *December*, and sometimes *January*, before the fair Season returns: So that the Country is very wet for two Thirds, if not three Quarters of the Year. But in the wettest Season, there are some fair Days, with only a Thunder-Shower now and then. The coolest Time of the Year, is after the Rains, about *Christmas*, when the fair Weather approaches.

Chief Towns. *Panama* City.

The chief Towns in *Terra-Firma Proper*, are, 1. *Panama*, situated in 9 Degrees of North Latitude, and 82 Degrees of Western Longitude. It stands upon the finest Bay in the *South* Sea, and is built with Brick and Stone, being surrounded by a Stone Wall, fortified with Bastions and other Works. It lies in the Form of a Half-moon upon the Bay, affording a most beautiful Prospect. There are no large Woods or Marshes near *Panama*, but a fine, dry, Champaign Land, not subject to Fogs. The Island of *Perica*, three Miles distant, is the Port to *Panama*: For the Water is so shallow near the Town, that great Ships cannot come up to it. This Town contains upwards of six thousand Houses, eight Parish Churches, besides the Cathedral, thirty Chapels, and several Monasteries and Nunneries. It is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Lima* in *Peru*; the Seat of the Governor, and of the Courts of Justice of this Province. *Old Panama* stood about four Miles to the Eastward of this City, and was destroyed by the Buccaneers commanded by Captain *Harry Morgan*, in the Year 1670; which remarkable Occurrence shews how easily the *Spaniards* might be dispossess'd of this important Town and Province, if we should be compelled to fall out with them. The Captain and his Buccaneers brought away with them four hundred thousand Pieces of Eight, and the Captain was not only knighted by King *Charles* II, for his Bravery and Conduct, but was made one of the Commissioners of the Admiralty in *Jamaica*, and, in the Year 1680, left Deputy-Governor there.

Old Panama stood, and was destroyed by Sir *Henry Morgan*.

Porto Bello is situated on a Bay of the *North* Sea, in 10 Degrees of North Latitude, and 80 Degrees of Western Longitude, about seventy Miles North of *Panama*. It has a very fair, large, and commodious Harbour, affording good Anchorage and Shelter for Ships, having a narrow Entrance, and spreading wider within. At the Bottom of the Harbour lies the Town, bending with the Shore like a Half-moon. The Town lies open towards the Country, and at the East-end is a long Stable for the King's Mules. The Governor's House stands upon an Eminence near a great Fort at the West-end of the Town. It is an unhealthful Place, and no People ever experienced

experienced it more than the *Engliſh*, when the Squadron under Admiral *Hoſier* lay before it, without being ſuffered to enter upon Action, in the Year 1727: For here we did not only loſe Admiral *Hoſier*, but the Seamen twice over, without acquiring the leaſt Advantage to our ſelves.

3. *Venta de Cruz* is ſituated on the River *Chagre*, about thirty Mile[s] to the Northward of *Panama*: And here the M[er]chandize brought is embark'd for *Porto Bello*, in order to be ſent to *Europe*. 4. *Cheapo* is about twenty-five Miles North-eaſt of *Panama*, and but a ſmall Place. 5. *Nata* is about ſeventy Miles South-weſt of the City of *Panama*. Its chief Dependance is on Cattle, Hogs, and Poultry, with which they ſerve the Markets of *Panama*. 6. The Town of *Conception*, ſituated near the Mouth of the River *Conception*. 7. *Santa Maria*, ſituated about thirty Leagues South-eaſt of *Panama*, and conſiderable on account of the Gold Mines in the Neighbourhood of it. 8. *Scuchadero*, a ſmall Town, refreſh'd by the Sea Breezes, and eſteemed a healthful Place.

The laſt Place we ſhall mention in this Province, is *New Edinburgh*, or the Place which the *Scots* gave this Name to, when they attempted to make a Settlement on the Coaſt of *Darien*, and denominate the Country about it *New Caledonia*. This Fortreſs was ſituated on the Continent, near the North-weſt Point of the Gulph of *Darien*, on a moſt excellent Harbour, large enough to contain five hundred Sail of Ships untouch'd from any Wind. The Forts ſtood upon a Peninſula, almoſt ſurrounded by the Harbour and the *North* Sea, and the Acceſs to the Peninſula was ſo defended by Rocks and Precipices, that a very little Art would have render'd it impregnable. The Soil was rich, the Air temperate, and the Water ſweet; every thing contributing to render it healthful and convenient: The Land abounding in Veniſon and Poultry, and the Seas with the beſt Fiſh; and, what were ſtill greater Advantages, it ſtood in the Neighbourhood of the richeſt Gold Mines in *America*. The *Scots* thought themſelves extremely fortunate in happening upon this agreeable Situation, which the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *French*, never once diſcover'd, and the *Spaniards* themſelves were Strangers to it. Here it was the *Scots* arrived in the Month of *November* 1699, in order to fix a Colony of their Countrymen on the Continent, in Conſequence of an Act paſſed by the Parliament of *Scotland*, for erecting a Company to trade to *Africa* and the *Indies*: By which they were authorized to plant Colonies and Settlements in the *Eaſt* and *Weſt-Indies*, under his Majeſty's Letters-Patent, which they alſo obtained. The *Indian* Princes within theſe Limits, received the *Scots* into their Country with a great deal of Joy, in Hopes of their Aſſiſtance againſt their antient Enemies the *Spaniards*. The Settlement went on proſperouſly at firſt: But the *Spaniards* complaining to the Court of *England*, and declaring that they ſhould look upon this as an Act of Hoſtility; the *Engliſh Eaſt-India* Company alſo complaining of this Settlement at the ſame time, the *Engliſh* Parliament thought fit to interpoſe, and addreſs King *William* to recall his Patent to the *Scots* Company.

Having taken a View of the principal Places upon the Continent of *Darien*, or *Terra-Firma Proper*, we proceed to give ſome Deſcription of the Iſlands near the Coaſts of this Province, which are very numerous. On the *North* Sea, at the Entrance of the Gulph *Darien*, lie three Iſlands almoſt in a Triangle, which form a very good Harbour. The Eaſtermoſt of the three, and the ſmalleſt, is called *Golden Iſland*: There is a fair deep Channel between this and the Main; it is naturally ſtrongly fortified, being defended by a ſteep Rock almoſt all round, except the Landing-place, which is a ſmall ſandy Bay on the South ſide. The largeſt of the three Iſlands lies to the Weſt of *Golden Iſland*, being marſhy Ground, and ſo beſet with Mangroves, that it is difficult getting on Shore. It is ſcarce parted from the Main-land, but at high Water, and even then Ships cannot paſs between. The third, called *The Iſle of Pines*, is a ſmall Iſland, North of the other two; and, riſing into Hills, is a good Sea-mark: It is covered with tall Trees fit for building, or any other Uſe, and has a fine Rivulet of freſh Water in it. Three Leagues North-weſt of theſe, lie a Multitude of ſmall Iſlands, extending as far a *Point Samballas*, generally denominated, *The Samballas Iſlands*; ſome of them lie one Mile from the oppoſite Shore of the Continent; ſome two Miles, others two Miles and a Half from the Shore, and about as far from each other; and there are navigable Channels between them: The Sea between this long Range of Iſlands and the Continent, is navigable alſo from one End to the other, and affords every-where good Anchoring in hard ſandy Ground. The *Samballas* are generally low, flat, ſandy Iſlands, but have Variety of Fruit-trees and Foreſt-trees upon them. Their Shores alſo afford good Shell-fiſh; but no People have thought fit to inhabit any of them. From the *Samballas* Iſlands paſſing to the Weſtward by Port *Scrivan*, we arrive at the Iſlands of *Baſtimento*, being four or five in Number, and lying about a Mile from the Continent: They are, for the moſt Part, high Land covered with Wood; and one of them has a Spring of freſh Water in it. A little farther Weſtward, over-againſt *Porto Bello*, are two ſmall flat Iſlands without Wood or Water: They lie ſo near the Continent, that there is but a very narrow Channel between.

In the Bay of *Panama*

The Bay of *Panama* is of a ſemicircular Form, being about an hundred Miles over, and three hundred in Circumference. The *Kings*, or *Pearl* Iſlands, being low, woody Iſlands, and very numerous, lie almoſt in the Middle of this Bay, ſtretching in Length about fourteen Leagues. The Northermoſt of them, called *Pachequ*, lies twelve Leagues South-eaſt of *Panama*; and they are generally about ſeven Leagues from the Main-land of *Darien*. Theſe Iſlands belong to the Citizens of *Panama*, who keep Negroes here to plant and cultivate them. The Iſland of *Chepelo*, ſeven Leagues Eaſt of *Panama*, and a League from the Continent, is the pleaſanteſt Iſland in the Bay of *Panama*. It is about two Miles over either Way, partly high Land, and partly Valleys. The Iſlands of *Perico* are three ſmall Iſlands, which lie before the City of *Panama*, about three Miles from it, and may be called the Port to that City. The Iſland of *Tabago* lies about ſix Leagues South of *Panama*, being about three Miles long, and two broad: A mountainous Iſland, the North-ſide whereof affords a pleaſant Proſpect, appearing like a Garden of Fruit, ſurrounded with high Trees. There is a ſmall Iſland on the North-weſt Side of this, called *Tabogilla*; and another about a Mile from it on the North-eaſt, with a good Channel between them. *Otoque* is an Iſland South-weſt of *Tabago*; in which there are good *Plantain* Walks with Negroes upon them, belonging to the Citizens of *Panama*. The Iſland of *Chuche* is a ſmall, low, woody Iſland, that lies Weſt of the *Pearl* Iſlands, and does not appear to be either inhabited or planted.

The

The Soil and Air of *Terra Firma Proper.*

The Soil of the Isthmus of *Darien*, is good in the Middle of the Province, but both the Shores of the *North* and *South* Seas are generally either a dry barren Sand, or drown'd Mangrove Land, that will scarce produce any kind of Grain. The Sea-Coasts of this Province are generally unhealthful. The Country about *Panama*, the Capital, is so exceeding poor, that their Corn, Flesh, and other Provisions, are brought them by Sea, from Countries at a very great Distance. For tho' the Heart of the Country is said to be fruitful, yet very little of it is cleared of Wood, or cultivated.

Their Persons and Habits.

The *Indians* of *Darien* resemble those in the Eastern Provinces of *Mexico*; only as they approach nearer the Equator, their Complexions are darker. When they are engaged in hunting, fishing, planting, or any laborious Exercise, they usually go naked, having their Skins painted with various Colours and Figures; but they have their Robes of Ceremony, both white and black, that are made of Cotton Linen, and reach down to their Heels; and the Men wear Coronets of Cane on their Heads, adorned with Feathers: Nor do they ever stir abroad without their Arms, their Bows, Arrows, Lances, Daggers, or great Knives; and many of them of late use Fire-arms, which they purchase of the *Europeans*. Both Men and Women are of a round Visage; have short bottle Noses; their Eyes large, generally grey, yet lively and sparkling: They have high Foreheads, white even Teeth, thin Lips, Mouths moderately large, Cheeks and Chins well proportion'd; they are in general finely featur'd, but the Men more so than the Women. Both Sexes have long black Hair, coarse and strong, which they usually wear down to the Middle of their Backs, or lower, only the Women tie it together with a String just behind the Head. They suffer no other Hair to grow, but that on their Heads, their Eye-brows and Eye lids. Their Beards, and all below, are pulled up by the Roots, as soon as any appears. They have the same Custom as the *East-Indians* and *Africans* have, of anointing their Heads and Bodies with Oil or Fat.

A Race of white *Indians.*

There are among these dark complexion'd *Indians*, some that are perfectly white in the Province of *Terra-Firma Proper*. Their Skins are not of such a White, as our fair People in *Europe*, who have some Tincture of Red in their Complexion: Nor is it like that of our paler People; but a pure Milk-white: And there grows upon their Bodies a fine short Milk-white Down, thro' which the Skin appears. The Hair of their Heads and Eye-brows also is white, growing to the Length of six or eight Inches, and inclining to curl. These People are less in Stature than the other *Indians*. Their Eye-lids are also differently form'd, bending like the Horns of the Moon; from whence, and their seeing so well by Moon-light, the Buccaneers call them Moon-ey'd. They cannot see at all in the Sun-shine; and therefore scarce ever go abroad in the Day-time, unless in dark cloudy Weather. They are contemn'd by the Copper-coloured *Indians*, who look upon this white Complexion as monstrous. They are not a distinct Race by themselves, but proceed from tawny Parents on both Sides. Perhaps the Reason of this very white Complexion of the *Darien Indians*, and the very dark Complexion of the *Negroes*, will be found out together. The Men in this Province, like those in *Mexico*, wear Silver and gold Plates in their Noses, which hang down over their Lips; and the Women Rings of the same Metal. They have also Pendants in their Ears, Chains of Beads and Shells about their Necks, and other Ornaments, as the *Mexican Indians* wear. Their Houses also are built in the same Manner, and their Lodging is generally in Hammocks: Nor is their Food or Exercise different from what has been related of the other *Indians*, who have preserved their Liberties.

Their Government.

Wafer informs us, that the Country was govern'd by the Heads of their respective Tribes or Families, in the Year 1681, but that there was a Prince superior to the rest, in the South-part of the Isthmus; and those on the North-side paid him great Respect. *Wafer*, on the other Hand, says, the People, where the *Scots* were about establishing a Colony, were under no formal Government; but every Captain commanded his own River, Bay, or Island, where he resided.

The *Darien Indians* still preserve their Liberty.

The Reason the *Indians* of *Darien* have so long maintained their Independency, notwithstanding it was the first Province on the *Terra-Firma* the *Spaniards* discovered, is, that the Country, in many Places, is inaccessible. The Torrents that fall for two thirds of the Year from the Mountains into the *North* and *South* Seas, are scarce passable by any but the Natives. These, and the thick Woods, cut off all Manner of Communication between *Panama* and *Peru* by Land: There is therefore no Road through the Country; but whoever goes from *Panama* to *Peru*, is forced to go by Sea.

Carthagena Province.

2. *Carthagena*, the second Province of *Terra-Firma*, received its Name from the Capital City. It is said to be about three hundred Miles in Length, from North to South; and about two hundred in Breadth, from East to West. The

Chief Towns.

Chief Towns are, 1. *Carthagena*, situated in a Peninsula, about an hundred Leagues to the Eastward of *Porto Bello*; said to have been so named by the *Spaniards*, either because they were Natives of *Carthagena* in *Old Spain*, or because it resembled that Harbour in the *Mediterranean*. The Town is built of Free-stone, and has several fine Churches and Monasteries in it; but the Jesuits Cloister and Church excel all the rest. As to the Form of it, like others of *Spanish* Foundation, it has a Square in the Middle; from whence most of the Streets run in parallel Lines: It is walled round, and defended by Forts, Block-houses, and other Works; which render it one of the strongest Places in the *West Indies*. This City is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Santa Fe* in *Granada*, and the Seat of the Governor, and of the Courts of Justice of this Province. 2. *Madre de Popa*, situated on a high Mountain, about fifty Miles South east of *Carthagena*, chiefly famous for a Convent and Chapel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, so vastly rich, that it is only exceeded by that of *Loretto*. 3. *Zenu* or *Cenu*, situated upon a River of the same Name, about twenty five Leagues South of *Carthagena*, most remarkable for the Salt that is made here, and its Fisheries. 4. *Tolu*, situated about twenty-five Leagues South-west of *Carthagena*, celebrated for the Balsam found in the Neighbourhood of it, from whence it derives its Name. The principal River of this Province is that of *La Grande de Magdalena*, which, rising to the Southward of *Granada*, runs directly North, and afterwards divides the Province of *Carthagena* from that of *St. Martha*; falling into the *North* Sea, about twenty four Leagues North-east of the City of *Carthagena*.

3. The Province of *St. Martha* is about three hundred Miles in Length, from East to West, and two hundred in Breadth, from North to South. From the Mountains of this Province run a Chain of Hills, quite through *South Ame-*

rica

rica. Thoſe which bound *Peru* on the Eaſt, and are uſually call'd *The* ANDES, are a Part of them. The chief Towns of this Province, are, 1. *St. Martha*, the Capital, which gives Name to the Province. It has a large Harbour form'd by the Continent, and two Iſlands that lie before it. This Town is a Biſhop's See, and the Seat of the Governor and Courts of Juſtice. 2. *Ramada*, ſituated to the Eaſtward of *St. Martha* and remarkable for its Copper Mines. 3. *Taranca*, ſituated South-weſt of *St. Martha*; a Place of great Traffick. 4. *Cividad de los Reyes*, ſituated about a hundred Miles to the Southward of *St. Martha*. 5. *Tamalameque*, ſituated two hundred Miles to the Southward of *St. Martha*, and ſometimes call'd *The City of Palms*.

4. The Province of *Rio de la Hacha*, a ſmall Province, frequently reckon'd a Part of that of *St. Martha*: It abounds in Corn and Cattle, has a Pearl-fiſhery upon the Coaſt, and ſome Salt-works. The chief Towns are, 1. *Rio de la Hacha*, ſituated to the Eaſtward of *St. Martha*. 2. *Rancheria*, ſituated about twenty Leagues North-eaſt of *Rio de la Hacha*, and inhabited chiefly by the Pearl Fiſhermen.

5. The Province of *Venezuela*, including the Diſtrict of *Caracas*, about four hundred Miles in Length, from Eaſt to weſt; and three hundred in Breadth, from North to South. This is the moſt northerly Province of *South America*. In it we find abundance of exceeding high Mountains and deep Valleys. The Top of the Hills are barren; but the lower Part of them, and the Valleys between, have a rich Mould, ſo that here is Plenty of Sugar, Tobacco, Corn, Cattle, and rich Paſtures; and good Store of Veniſon, Fiſh, Fowl, and Fruits. There are alſo ſeveral Gold Mines in this Province. The chief Towns are, 1. *Venezuela*, ſo called from its Situation in the Waters. It is the Capital of the Province, the Reſidence of the Governor and the Courts of Juſtice, and a Biſhop's See. 2. *Caracas*, the Country about which is remarkable for the beſt Cocoa-nut to make Chocolate. 3. *Maracaiba*, pleaſantly ſituated on the Weſt-ſide of a great Lake, ſixty Leagues in Length, and thirty in Breadth. Upon the Coaſts of this Lake the Towns and Villages ſtand very thick; among which is, 4. *New Gibraltar*, a large Town, ſituated in a pleaſant Country.

6. *New Andaluſia*, comprehending the Diſtricts of *Comana* and *Paria*, and extending in Length, from North to South, five hundred Miles and upwards; and in Breadth, from Eaſt to Weſt, between two and three hundred Miles. The pricipal River which waters this Country, is that of *Oronoque*, or *Paria*, which riſes in the Mountains of *Andes*, and runs directly Eaſt for near two thouſand Miles; then turns to the North, and, continuing that Courſe above a thouſand Miles more, falls into the *North* Sea by ſeveral Channels. The Inland Part of this Country is mountainous, and covered with Woods, intermixed with Valleys and Meadows that yield Corn and Paſturage. It is the moſt eaſterly Province the *Spaniards* have in South *America*. The Produce is chiefly Sugar and Tobacco, *Brazil* Wood, and ſome other valuable Timber and Woods for Dying, with ſome Gums and Drugs. The chief Towns are, 1. *Comana*, ſituated on a Bay of the *South* Sea, and ſurrounded with Hills and Woods. It is a Place of great Strength. 2. *Verina*, a ſmall Town, remarkable for the excellent Tobacco that grows in the neighbouring Fields. 3. *St. Thomas*, ſituated on the Eaſt-ſide of the River *Oronoque*, and the only conſiderable Settlement the *Spaniards* have to the Eaſtward of that River.

7. The Province of *Guiana*, or *Caribiana*, extending twelve hundred Miles and upwards along the *Atlantic* Ocean. Several *European* Powers have Settlements on or near the Sea-coaſts of this Country, particularly the *Spaniards*, the *French* and *Dutch*; but the Natives are yet poſſeſſed of much the greateſt part of it, and are not in Subjection to any of them, unleſs upon the Sea-coaſt. The Sea-coaſt is generally low, and ſubject to Inundations, a multitude of Rivers running precipitately from the Mountains in the Inland Country during the rainy Seaſon. The Air is exceſſive hot and unhealthful, eſpecially in ſuch Parts of the Country as are not cleared of the Woods; but there are even here ſome elevated Situations tolerably cool and healthful, where the Air hath a free Paſſage. As for Towns in this Country, the Natives poſſeſs a few ſtraggling Villages, conſiſting of poor Huts, of the form of ordinary Barns. Their Furniture conſiſts of little more than the Hammocks they ſleep in, Baskets, Earthen-Pots and Pans, Gourds and Calabaſhes. The *Engliſh* had formerly ſeveral Settlements on this Coaſt, which were yielded to the *Dutch* by the Treaty of *Breda*, in the Year 1667. The chief *Dutch* Settlement is that of *Surinam*, ſituated five Leagues within the River of the ſame Name. They have given the Name of *Surinam* to all the Country about this Fortreſs for ſeveral hundred Miles; and look upon themſelves as Sovereigns of it. The chief *French* Settlement is that of *Cayenne*, ſituated on an Iſland at the Mouth of a River of the ſame Name. The Iſland is about ſeven Leagues long, and three broad; well wooded and watered with Rivulets; and has ſeveral good *French* Towns upon it, beſides Villages of *Indians*, producing Sugar, Tobacco, *Indian* Corn, and other Grain and Plants, like the neighbouring Continent; and is held to be more healthful, as it lies open to the Sea-breezes.

The Province of *Guiana*, or *Caribiana*.

As to the Perſons of the *Indians* of *Guiana* and *Caribiana*, their Complexion is a dark Copper Colour, but they reſemble their northern Neighbours of *Terra-Firma* in Size and Features. Here are no Tribes of a gigantic or a diminutive Stature, as the firſt Diſcoverers pretended. Thoſe who live in the Neighbourhood of the *Europeans*, wear ſome little Cloathing, but the reſt ſcarce any, either Men or Women: Tho' in Ornaments moſt of the *Americans* ſeem to agree; as in Plates and Rings for their Lips and Noſes; heavy Strings of Beads and Shells about their Necks, that reach almoſt down to their Bellies; and in anointing and painting their Faces and Bodies. And as Giants, Dwarfs, and Monſters ſeem at preſent to be expelled from this Continent, tho' our firſt Diſcoverers met with ſcarce any thing elſe, the Caſe ſeems much the ſame as to Cannibals. Our Buccaneers, who have traverſed the moſt barbarous and uncultivated Parts of *America*, have not been able to give us one Inſtance of their having ſeen any one Man eaten; only they tell us, that one of their Comrades being taken by the *Indians*, they ſuppoſed he was roaſted and eaten; becauſe, the next Day, they came to a Place where a great Fire had been made, and diſcovered human Bones in the Aſhes: Which they might have done, if the *Indians* had only burnt their Friend *in Terrorem*, as well as if they had broiled and eaten him. Nor is it at all improbable, that the Man was burnt; for the Buccaneers have frequently committed ſuch Outrages, both upon the *Spaniards* and *Indians*, as to induce them to retaliate the Injuries they have received, by putting them to the cruelleſt Deaths.

The Perſons of the *Caribees*.

There is nothing the common People in every Country ſeem to have been more univerſally agreed

Of Witchcraft and Magic.

agreed in, than in their Notions of Magick, Witchcraft, and a visible and familiar Conversation that some Pretenders to the Black Art have with the Spirits of Darkness. Every Nation of the *Americans*, and especially the *Caribbees*, pretend to have such Adepts amongst them. But this Office of Pawawer, or Conjurer, is generally assign'd to their Priests; possibly for no other Reason, but because they are something superior to the common People in their Experience and Knowledge of Nature.

Religion of the Caribbees.

As to Religion, we are told, that the *Caribbees* have a great Veneration for the Sun and Moon, as the *Mexicans* have; but pay them no divine Honours, nor apply to them in their Distresses, but to inferior Demons, to which our Travellers have given the Appellation of Devils; tho' 'tis very possible, that the *Indians*, as well as the *Pagans* of old, look upon them as a kind of Mediators to the Supreme Deity, and worship them as such. They may also be apprehensive of Mischief from an evil Spirit, as the *East-Indians* are, and endeavour to appease him, by paying him divine Honours; but most of the Accounts we have yet received of these Things, have very much of the Air of a Fable.

New Granada.

8. *New Granada*, the next Province we are to describe, is about six hundred Miles in Length, from the North-east to the South-west; and five hundred in Breadth. This large Inland Country affords vast Variety of Hills and fruitful Valleys; is well water'd with navigable Rivers, and esteem'd, as healthful as any Part of *Terra-Firma*. Their Mountains have Mines of Gold and Silver in them: They have Cedar-trees, and a great deal of other good Timber; and no want of Horses, Oxen, Hogs, Goats, Venison, Fish, and Fowl; but the Country is not proper for Sheep. Here is also great Plenty of Corn and Fruits, both *Spanish* and *American*, Guaiacum, Balm, and several other valuable Gums and Drugs. The chief

Chief Towns.

Towns are, 1. *Santa Fe de Bagota*, situated in a plentiful Country, that abounds in Corn and Cattle: This is the most considerable Town in all the *Terra-Firma*; the Seat of the Governor and the Courts of Justice, and an Archbishop's See, to whom the Bishops of *St. Martha*, *Carthagena*, and *Popayan*, are Suffragans. 2. *Tocama*, situated a little to the Northward of *Santa Fe*; remarkable for the Salt-springs in the Neighbourhood of it. 3. *Pampeluna*, situated sixty Leagues North of *Santa Fe*, and has some Gold Mines near it. 4. *Velez*, situated near a remarkable Vulcano. 5. *Trinidad*, situated twenty Leagues to the Northward of *Santa Fe*; near which are found Quarries of fine Marble, Rocks of Crystal, Emeralds, and other precious Stones. 6. *Palma*, situated thirty Miles South-east of *Trinidad*. 7. *Tunia*, a Fortress situated fourscore Miles South-east of *Trinidad*. 8. *St. John of the Plains*, situated an hundred and thirty Miles South-east of *Santa Fe*, near which there are Gold Mines.

Popayan Province

9. The last Province we are to describe in the *Terra-Firma*, is that of *Popayan*, extending in Length from North to South four hundred Miles, and in Breadth three hundred. A Chain of barren Mountains, almost impassable, runs through the Country from North to South; some of which are Vulcano's, and in one of them the Load stone is found. Innumerable Rivers and Torrents fall from the Mountains into the *South* Sea, in the Sands whereof is found a great deal of Gold-dust; and there are Mines of the same Metal in the Mountains. The chief Rivers are, 1. *Bonaventura*. 2. *Tomaco*. 3. *St. Jago*. The chief Towns are, 1.

Chief Town.

Popayan, situated at the Foot of the Mountains, the Seat of the Governor and of the Courts of Justice; a large Town, and a Place of good Trade. 2. *St. John de Pasto*, upwards of an hundred Miles South-west of *Popayan*; in the Neighbourhood whereof are many Sugar-farms; and they feed great Herds of Cattle in their Meadows. 3. *Madrigal*, an hundred and forty Miles to the Southward of *Popayan*, in a barren Country, but rich in Gold Mines.

We shall, in the next place, give some Description of the remaining Islands that lie on the Coast of *Terra-Firma* (those near *Terra-Firma Proper* having been already described.) Those that lie in the *South* Sea, on the Coast of *Popayan*, are, 1. *Gorgona*, a pretty high woody Island, producing large tall Trees, and several Springs of good Water, and lies four Leagues West of the Continent: It is about six Miles in Length, and four in Breadth, but uninhabited. 2. The Island of *Gallo* lies twenty five Leagues to the Southward of *Gorgona*, in a deep Bay: This also is pretty high Land, well furnished with good Timber, and has several Springs of fresh Water in it: There are also several fine sandy Bays in this Island, where a Ship may be cleaned. The Islands of *Gorgona* and *Gallo* have been frequently visited by the Buccaneers and other Adventurers, who take in Wood and Water, careen their Ships, and wait for *Spanish* Prizes here; these Islands lying in the Road from *Peru* to *Panama*.

Islands to the South.

The Islands on the Coast of *Terra-Firma* in the *North* Sea, are, 1. *Trinity*, subject to the *Spaniards*; situated near the Mouth of the River *Oronoque*, three Miles from the Continent of *Paria*. The Air is deem'd unhealthful, but the Soil tolerably fertile, producing Sugar, Cotton, *Indian* Corn and Fruits, and the best Tobacco the *Spaniards* are Masters of. The chief Town is named *St. Joseph*, situated on a Bay, over against the Continent. 2. *Tobago* lies a little to the North-east of *Trinity*; but this belonging to *Great-Britain*, will be mention'd among the *British* Islands in *America*. 3. *Margaretta*, situated about forty Leagues to the Westward of *Trinity*, and seven or eight Leagues from the Continent. It is about sixteen Leagues in Length, and eight in Breadth, high Land. The Soil affords *Indian* Corn and Fruits, and the *Spaniards* have introduced many of the Fruits of *Spain*; but they are forced to import all the Water they drink from the Continent; and there is very little Wood or Pasture to be met with on the Island. The chief Town is that of *Montpater*, where the Governor resides. 4. *Salt Tortuga*, fourteen Leagues to the Westward of *Margaretta*: This is a barren desart Island, yielding neither Corn nor Grass, and is not more than ten or twelve Miles in Circumference; only valuable to the *Spaniards*, on account of the Salt they sell to Foreigners. 5. The Islands of *Orchilla*, *Roca*, and *Aves*, are small inconsiderable Islands, situated to the Westward of *Tortuga*, and scarce deserve mentioning. 6. A little to the Westward of *Aves*, lies the Island of *Bonayre*, in Form of a Crescent, about sixteen Leagues in Compass, and situated about twenty Leagues North of the Coast of *Caracos*: This belongs to the *Dutch*, who have seven or eight Soldiers here, and five or six Families of *Indians*. 7. Nine or ten Leagues farther to the Westward, and about as many from the Continent, lies the Island of *Curassow*, or *Querisao*. There is a good Harbour on the South-east Part of the Island, where the *Dutch* have a considerable Town, defended by a strong Fort. The Country is level, and feeds abundance of Cattle; they have also some Sugar-farms, and small Plantations of Fruits and Roots; but it is not so much esteemed for its Produce, as

its Situation for a Trade with the *Spaniſh Weſt-Indies*. 8. The Iſland of *Araba*, or *Oraba*, lies ſeven or eight Leagues to the Weſtward of *Curaſſow*, at the Entrance of the Gulph of *Venezuela*, being about five or ſix Leagues in Compaſs. It is a level Country, except only one Hill, that riſes like a Sugar-loaf in the Middle of it: This Iſland alſo belongs to the *Dutch*, and furniſhes *Curaſſow* with Goats and Sheep; and there are ſome few Sugar Plantations in it.

The Diſcoverers of Terra-firma.

Columbus barely diſcovered this North-coaſt of *South America*, but did not fix one Settlement here. *Vaſco Nunez de Balboa* firſt ſettled a Colony, and built a Fort on the Weſt-ſide of the Gulph of *Darien*, to which he gave the Name of *Old St. Mary's*.

Enciſo, under whom *Vaſco* ſerved in an Enterprize againſt *Darien*, was very unfortunate, loſt a great many Men in ſeveral Engagements with the *Indians*, whereupon thoſe that eſcaped, refuſed to obey him any longer, and elected *Vaſco Nunez* their Commander. And *Enciſo* thereupon returned to *Spain*, to get his Commiſſion confirmed and enlarged. In the mean Time, *Vaſco* applied himſelf to make farther Diſcoveries; and, in order to it, ſurprized the Cacique *Careta* in the Night-time, making him Priſoner, and killing ſome of his People: But *Vaſco* offering to give the Cacique his Liberty, on Condition he would furniſh him with Proviſions, they made an Alliance; and, to cement it the cloſer, the Cacique gave *Vaſco* one of his Daughters, for his Wife. *Vaſco* found two *Spaniards* in the Territories of *Careta*, that eſcaped thither out of a Ship, who were very ſerviceable to him, as Interpreters, in his ſucceeding Enterprizes. *Careta* being engaged in War with *Ponca*, a neighbouring Cacique, at the Arrival of the *Spaniards*; *Ponca* finding himſelf unable to reſiſt his old Enemy, ſupported by theſe Strangers, abandoned his Country, where the *Spaniards* found conſiderable Quantities of Gold. *Comagre*, another Cacique, a Friend of *Careta*, voluntarily ſubmitted to *Vaſco*, and furniſhed him with Gold to a conſiderable Value; and the Son of this Cacique, obſerving the *Spaniards* ready to fight about dividing their Treaſure, told them, he would direct them to a Country where they would find as much Gold and Silver as their Hearts could wiſh, if they thought it worth their while to undergo the Fatigues that were neceſſary to obtain it. *Vaſco Nunez* was overjoyed to hear of Countries thus abounding with Treaſure, and of another Ocean; and made ſuitable Preparations for the Diſcovery of them. He alſo diſpatch'd Expreſſes to *Hiſpaniola*, and to *Spain*, deſiring ſuch a Reinforcement, as might enable him to reduce thoſe Countries. He alſo ſent over to *Spain* the Value of 15000 Pieces of Eight in Gold, as a Specimen of what thoſe Countries produced; and every Man ſent ſome Preſent to his Friends of the ſame Metal.

But *Vaſco* having no other Authority, than what the Troops had conferred upon him, every one expected to have his Advice attended to, and if he was not conſidered as he expected, became a Malecontent; till a Supply of an hundred and fifty Men being ſent him from *Hiſpaniola*, with a Commiſſion to be Captain-General of *Terra-firma*, his Enemies all ſubmitted to him, and he continued his Preparations for the Diſcovery of the *South* Sea. He made Choice of two hundred *Spaniards* and a thouſand *Indians*, whom he embarked on board a Brigantine, and being join'd by the Forces of the Cacique *Careta*, advanced towards the Mountains, through the Dominions of the Cacique *Ponca*, who now returned, and furniſhed the *Spaniards* with ſuch Proviſions as the Country afforded; alſo with Guides to paſs the Mountains, and with Porters to carry their Baggage. On the Mountains another Cacique, nam'd *Quarequa*, aſſembled his Forces, and made ſome Shew of oppoſing their Paſſage: But, upon the firing two or three Muskets, theſe Warriors all turned their Backs and fled: While the *Spaniards*, to increaſe their Terror, killed upwards of ſix hundred of thoſe defenceleſs People, among whom was the Cacique himſelf. After this, they plunder'd the Houſes of the *Indians*, where they found great Quantities of Gold; and caus'd many of the People they found in them to be torn to Pieces by Dogs.

Several hundred *Indians* cut in Pieces by the *Spaniards*.

Spending five and twenty Days in their March, they at laſt arrived at the Hills where the *South* Sea might be diſcerned: Of which *Vaſco* having notice, ordered all his Forces to halt; and going up to the Top of the Hill alone, ſaw that vaſt Ocean; whereupon he fell upon his Knees, and gave Thanks to Heaven, that he was the firſt *European* who had ſeen it: Then an Inſtrument was drawn up, importing, That he took Poſſeſſion of the *South* Sea, and all the Countries bordering upon it, for the Crown of *Caſtile*. Croſſes were erected, and great Heaps of Stones raiſed, and the King of *Spain*'s Name engraved on ſeveral Trees: This was performed on the 25th of *September* 1513. Deſcending from this Mountain, and conquering in their Way the Caciques *Chiapa* and *Cocata*, they arrived at a fine Bay of the Sea, and gave it the Name of *St. Michaels*, which it ſtill retains: And the Caciques informing him, that there were ſome Iſlands not far off, where great Quantities of Pearls were to be had, he and his *Spaniards* very narrowly eſcaped being drowned in attempting to go thither. He afterwards invaded the Territories of a Cacique named *Tumaco*, who being terrified into a Submiſſion, preſented the General with Gold to a very great Value, but much more in large Pearls. *Tumaco* alſo informed *Vaſco*, that the Coaſt extended without End to the Southward, pointing towards *Peru*, where he ſaid there were prodigious Treaſures of Gold and Silver to be found. After which, *Vaſco* took a Circuit through the Territories of ſeveral other Caciques, ſome of whom he ſubdued by Force, and others voluntarily entred into Alliances with him: But the Conditions on which the *Spaniards* afforded them their Friendſhip, were, that the *Indians* ſhould deliver up the Gold they were poſſeſſed of, and afterwards procure what they could more of the ſame precious Metal, and ſend after them.

The General, being returned to *Darien*, was received by his People with Tranſports of Joy, when they underſtood the Diſcoveries he had made, and the vaſt Quantities of Gold and Pearls he had acquired; for he divided the Treaſure equally, as well among thoſe that remained behind, as among the Troops he took with him; firſt deducting the King's Fifth, which he immediately ſent over to *Spain*; together with a full Account of the Situation of his Affairs, deſiring a Reinforcement of a thouſand Men. This News was very acceptable to the Court of *Spain*, and twelve or fifteen hundred Men were embarked immediately for *Darien*, under the Command of *Peter de Arias*, or *Pedrarias*, to whom the Government of that Province alſo was committed; and with him were ſent over Father *John Queve-do*, a *Franciſcan* Friar, as Biſhop of the Place, with ſeveral other Monks of that Order, to inſtruct the Natives in the Chriſtian Religion.

Pedrarias made Governor of *Terra Firma*.

But a more covetuous and barbarous Wretch was never ſent abroad with a Command, than this *Pedrarias*. He was received by *Vaſco* with all

all the Respect due to his Commission; but the Government was no sooner surrendered to him, than he began a Prosecution against the Man who had made all those important Discoveries, that he might have no Rival or Check upon his savage Disposition. Then he ordered his Troops out every Way, and, without any Regard to the Alliances that *Vasco* had made with the neighbouring Caciques, plundered their Countries, and massacred their Subjects without Mercy; and, above all, endeavoured to establish a Communication with the *South* Sea: But the *Indians* finding themselves thus abused, assembled their Forces, and laying Ambuscades, cut off a great many of his Parties, and he was not for some time able to fix Colonies in the Isthmus. In the mean Time, the Friends of *Vasco* having represented the Hardship of his Case to the Court of *Spain*, a Commission was sent him to be Lord-Lieutenant of the Coast of the *South* Sea, that he might prosecute the Discoveries he had begun on that Side. Bishop *Quevedo* interposed his good Offices, and procured a Reconciliation between the two Generals; and, in order to cement their Friendship the stronger, *Vasco* married the Daughter of *Pedrarias*. Soon after which he applied himself to the Building of Brigantines and Vessels, with which he sailed to the Pearl Islands in the Bay of *Panama*, and afterwards as far as *Port-Pinas* in *Peru*. But some malicious Officer informing *Pedrarias*, or rather the Governor pretending to be informed, that *Vasco* was about to renounce all Dependance on the Crown of *Spain*, commanded him to return to *Darien*, and answer the Accusation; which Summons *Vasco* readily obeyed; but *Padrarias* so managed the Matter, that he got him convicted, and caused him to be beheaded.

Vasco discovers *Peru.*

Beheaded by *Pedrarias.*

And now *Pedrarias*, being without a Rival, ravaged the Country as far as the Province of *Veragua*, planting a Colony at *Nata*, and another at *Panama*, on the *South* Sea. *Pedrarias* also founded another Town on the *North* Sea, which was named *Nombre de Dios*, between which and *Panama* all the Trade was carried on from the *North* to the *South* Seas for some time; but the *Spaniards* abandoned it afterwards, and built the Town of *Porto Bello*, removing the Trade thither. *Pedrarias* also reduced the Provinces of *Veragua* and *Nicaragua*, by the Forces he sent thither under *Francis Hernandez*; but entertaining some Suspicion that *Hernandez* had too great a Regard to his own Interest, he served him as he had done *Vasco Nunez*, under Pretence he was about to set up for himself: And expecting to be called to an Account for the Outrages he had committed, he quitted *Darien*, before his Successor arrived there, and removed to his Acquisitions in *Veragua*, where he looked upon himself to be out of the Reach of Justice. What became of him afterwards History does not inform us; only Father *Bartholomew de Casas*, Bishop of *Chiapa*, has given us a very melancholy Relation of the numerous Cruelties and Ravages committed by this Commander, in reducing these Provinces under the Dominion of the Crown of *Spain*: Setting forth, that he and his Successors did not destroy less, in that Government only, than eight hundred thousand People, and plundered the Country of several Millions of Gold, of which they did not send the King more than the Value of three thousand Crowns.

The Cruelties of *Pedrarias*

The rest of *Terra-Firma*, from *Darien* to the River *Oronoque*, was subdued by private Adventurers, at their own Charges. Every one begged a certain Extent of Country of the Court of *Spain*, and used the Natives as they thought fit, ravaging and plundering the several Countries, and murdering or enslaving the miserable Inhabitants, who were able to make but little Resistance to these Tyrants.

The rest of *Terra-Firma* reduced by private Adventurers.

Among the innumerable Instances of Cruelty mentioned by the Bishop, there is one that we must not omit. The greatest Prince of this Country, named *Bogata*, was tortured by the General for several Months, to make him discover his Gold and Emeralds; who, in hopes of being released from his Tormentors, promised to furnish them with a House full of Gold; and dispatching Expresses to every Part of his Dominions, brought in a prodigious Quantity: But the House being not quite filled, he was still racked and tortured to make him produce more; which being impossible, he expired in Torments under the Hands of his merciless Persecutors.

The Prelate adds, That as this great Prince had been used by the *Spanish* General, so his Officers and Soldiers used those of an inferior Rank, torturing and burning them to pieces by Inches, to make them discover their Treasures. It was a common Thing to cut off the Hands and Noses of Men and Women in Sport, and give them to their Dogs. When the poor Natives fled to the Woods and Mountains, to shelter themselves from their Rage, this was called a Rebellion, and they were hunted out by Dogs, torn in Pieces, slaughtered, and thrown from the Tops of the Rocks by hundreds. When any of them had secured themselves in inaccessible Places, the *Spaniards* would offer them their Lives and Liberties, to induce them to surrender, and then cut them in Pieces as soon as they had them in their Power.

It was an ordinary thing to lend a Brother *Spaniard* a Quarter of a Man, as they would lend a Neighbour a Quarter of Pork or Mutton, to feed their Dogs; promising to return it in kind, when they killed a Slave. They would go out a hunting for *Indians*, as they would hunt wild Beasts, and boast of their have killed twenty or thirty in a Day: Which Facts, how monstrous soever, appeared to be true, by the Testimony of Numbers of Witnesses.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Name, Situation, and Extent of Peru; *the Face of the Country; its Seas, Rivers, Lakes, Springs, Winds, Tides, Air, and Seasons.*

Peru described by Name.

THE Natives had not any general Name for this Country; only it was looked upon as the Dominion of the Emperor of *South America*, who was called *The* INCA, as the *East Indies* is called *the Empire of the* Great Mogul. As to the modern Name of *Peru*, we are told that *Vasco Nunez de Balbao* having first discovered the *South* Sea, one of the Ships that he built to go upon Discoveries in that Ocean, stretching Southward beyond the Equinoctial Line, and sailing close by the Shore, discovered an *Indian* Fisherman in the Mouth of a River; who, while he stood staring at the Ship as she was under Sail, they sent out their Boat and surprized the *Indian*, making him their Prisoner; and demanding of him by the *Indians* they carried with them, what Country it was? He mistaking them, and supposing they had asked him his own Name, answered *Beru*; and the *Spaniards* still seeming importunate to know something more, he answered, *Peru*; which was the Name of the River; or, according to some, is a common Name in the Language of those People for any River; however, from both these Words the *Spaniards* formed another, and called the Country *Peru*; and some of their Writers, *Piru*.

The Limits of the Dominions of the Inca's

When the *Spaniards* arrived here, the Country was divided by the *Inca's* into four grand Divisions, the Limits on the North being the River *Passio*, just under the Equinoctial; the Southern Limits were the *Arauco's*, in 40 Degrees of South Latitude; the Eastern Limits were the Mountains of the *Andes*; and the Western Boundary the *Pacifick Ocean*. The Limits of modern *Peru* are much the same now, except on the South; for the *Spaniards* extend it from the Equator to 25 Degrees of South Latitude only; so that as the Land runs from the North west to the South-east, *Peru* must be near two thousand Miles in Length: In Breadth it is generally about two hundred; but in the *South*, it may be four or five hudred Miles broad.

The Limits of Peru

The Face of the Country

The Face of the Country is very different, as it is distant from, or approaches near the Sea. It may be divided into three long narrow Slips, 1. The *Lanos*, which are sandy Plains that run along the Sea-Coast. 2. The *Sierras*, which are Hills beyond those Plains, intermixed with Vallies. 3. The *Andes*, or *Cordelero's*, still further within the Land, which are steep craggy Mountains, far surpassing all the rest in Height. The *Lanos* are about ten Leagues in Breadth; in some Places more, in others, less: The *Sierras* twenty Leagues in Breadth; and the *Andes* something more than twenty Leagues over. The *Andes* and *Sierras* are two Ridges of Mountains that run from North to South, parallel to each other, for above a thousand Leagues: Nor are the *Lanos*, that lie between the *Sierras* and the Sea shore, low Land. *Peru* has generally a high bold Shore, and there is no Landing on it, but at the Ports, or in some particular Bays: However, these Plains may be called low in Comparison of the *Sierras* that surmount them, and of the *Andes* that far surpass both, and are esteemed the highest Land in the known World. Beyond the City of *Cusco*, the two Ridges of Mountains separate themselves to a greater Distance, inclosing a fruitful Plain of a vast Extent, which is called the Province of *Callao*, watered by many Rivers, and by the great Lake *Titiaca*, which is fourscore Leagues in Compass; most of the Rivers falling into the Lake.

The *Lanos* are perfectly barren, except some few Valleys, into which they turn small winding Streams; and that Part of the Coast which lies within three or four Degrees of the Equator, where they have very heavy Rains great Part of the Year. The *Sierras* also are barren Hills; but then there are fine fruitful Valleys between them, that yield all Manner of Grain and Fruits; and these being temperate, are best inhabited; for the *Lanos* are for the most Part excessive hot. The *Andes*, on the contrary, are cold barren Mountains, the Snow lying upon them great Part of the Year. Timber and Wood in general seems to be very scarce here, and in all Parts of *Peru*, unless near the Line, and there they meet with enough.

The Lanos.

The Sierras.

The Andes.

Acosta says, he once mounted one of the highest of these Hills, called *Pariacaca*; that he went prepared according to the best Instructions he could get, with several more who had the like Curiosity; but notwithstanding all his Precaution, when he came near the Top, he was seized with such Pains that he thought he should have fallen to the Ground; and the rest of the Company being under the like Disorder, they all made haste to get down as fast as they could: That they were all taken with Reachings to vomit, and not only green Phlegm and Choler came up, but a great deal of Blood; and that this lasted for three or four Hours, 'till they had descended to the lower Part of the Hill. But generally this Sickness goes off as they come down the Hill, and is attended with no ill Consequences. In short, such is the Height of the *Andes*, that the *Pyrenees* and the *Alps* are but as ordinary Hills in comparison of them; from whence *Acosta* concluded, that the Air here was too pure and subtile for Animals to breathe in, and this he supposed occasioned that Disorder in the Stomach.

This Ridge of Mountains is for the most Part desart, without Villages or Habitations for Men, not so much as to lodge a Night in: Nor are there any Beasts upon them, wild or tame, except their Country Sheep, whose great Excellency lies in their climbing Rocks and Precipices, with Burthens on their Backs, where neither Man nor Beast can follow them. The Grass upon the Mountains is frequently burnt up and black, and these Desarts are five and twenty or thirty Leagues over, and five hundred Leagues long.

There are other mountainous uninhabited Desarts in *Peru*, where a sudden Blast of Air sometimes strikes a Traveller dead in an Instant. The *Spaniards* formerly passed the Mountain in their Way to *Chili*, but now either go by Sea, or by

Desarts in Peru, where a sudden Blast sometimes kills.

the

the Side of the Mountains. Others, that have escaped with their Lives, have lost their Fingers and Toes, and been lamed. General *Castilla*, who lost three or four Toes in passing this Desart to *Chili*, observed that they fell off without any Pain; and that marching over it once before with an Army, great part of his Men suddenly fell down dead, and their Bodies remained there without Stench or Corruption: And some *English* Seamen, who have been ashore in this very Country, assure us, that they have seen great Numbers of Bodies lying dead upon the Sands there: That these Bodies to Appearance seemed as if they had not been dead a Week; but upon handling them, they proved as dry and light as a Spunge or a Piece of Cork. These People were very probably destroyed by such hot Winds as we meet with in *Persia*, and the *East-Indies*, there appearing no Signs of Wounds or Violence upon them.

The Sea of *Peru*.

The only Sea that borders upon *Peru* is the *Pacifick Ocean*, which obtained its Name from the constant serene Weather that reigns here from 4 Degrees to 30 or 35 Degrees South Latitude. If we go farther Southward, this Sea, tho' it still retains the Name of the *Pacifick Ocean*, is as tempestuous as any other; and within 3 or 4 Degrees of the Line they have the like variable Winds and heavy Rains, most part of the Year, as we meet with in other Seas in the same Climate: And to the Northward of the Tropick of *Cancer*, and sometimes within it, they frequently meet with Storms and Hurricanes, tho' this Part of that Sea also bears the Name of the *Pacifick Ocean*. Between the 4th and the 35th Degrees of South Latitude, they have no Rain or dark Clouds, tho' 'tis often so thick as to hinder an Observation of the Sun with a Quadrant; and in the Morning there is hazy Weather frequently, and Mists that wet a little; but there are not in this Sea, any Tempests, Tornadoes, or Hurricanes; tho', North of the Equator, they are met with in this Sea, as well as in the *Atlantick* Ocean: This *Pacifick* Sea, however at the New and Full Moon swells and runs with high long Surges, or Waves; but such as never break at Sea, and so are safe enough. On the contrary, where they fall in and break upon the Shore, they make it very dangerous landing. The Winds in the *Peruvian* Seas, and on all the Western Side of *America*, from 38 Degrees South, to 7 Degrees North, are always Southerly two Points upon the Shore; so that where the Coast runs due North and South, the Wind is at South South-West; and where the Coast runs South South-East, the Wind is due South. The Southerly Winds on the Coast of *Peru* continue to blow 140 or 150 Leagues from the Shore before they alter; but then they may be perceived to come about more Easterly; and about two hundred Leagues to the Westward of that Shore, the true Trade-wind sets in at East South-East, which never alters till they arrive at the *East-Indies*.

Winds in this Ocean.

Weather at Land.

As to the Weather on Shore, it is various, according to the Situation of the Land; the sandy Plains by the Sea-side, never have a Drop of Rain upon them; but frequently thick Mists rise here. On the Hills beyond, the Rains fall when the Sun is in the Southern Signs, as they do in other Countries that lie between the Equator and the Tropick of *Capricorn*. And on the high Mountains that are situated farthest from the Sea, it rains or snows two thirds of the Year, and is excessive cold; and as the Valleys between the Hills, called *Sierras*, are the most fruitful Parts of the Country, their Season for planting and sowing there is at the Beginning of the Rains, and their Harvest at the Return of the dry Weather: Their Vintage also is in the fair Season, and their Vines thrive best in those Vallies near the Sea, where there is little or no Rain, and which are watered by Rivulets that fall from the Hills in the rainy Season: But most part of the *Lanos*, are barren Deserts, bearing neither Trees nor Herbs; and are very little inhabited.

The most considerable Capes, Islands, and Ports on the Coast of *Peru* and *Chili*, from the Equator to 30 Degrees of South Latitude, are, 1. Cape *Passao*, which lies in 8 Minutes South Latitude. It is an high round Cape, with some few Trees upon it. 2. Cape *Lorenzo*, in one Degree South Latitude; near which, Shipping may furnish themselves with fresh Water. Five Leagues West South-West of Cape *Lorenzo*, is a small barren Island called *La Plata*. 3. Cape *St. Helena*, in 2 Degrees 20 Minutes South Latitude; near which is a small Town of *Spaniards* and *Indians*, that keep Store-houses of Provisions, with which they supply the Shipping that touches there in their Passage to and from *Panama*. 4. The Island of *St. Clara*, in 3 Degrees South Latitude; it is pretty high Land, covered with small Trees. 5. Cape *Blanco*, in 3 Degrees 45 Minutes South Latitude, makes the North Point of the Bay of *Guiaquil*. The Town of *Guiaquil*, which gives Name to the Bay, is situated about 6 Leagues up a navigable River, and is the Port to *Quito*. 6. The Port of *Paya*, in 5 Degrees 15 Minutes South Latitude, capable of containing an hundred Sail of Ships; the Town consists of about fourscore Houses, most of them *Spaniards*; and the Bay is seldom without Ships, it lying very convenient for the Ships of *Peru*, in going to and from *Panama*. 7. The Island of *Lobos*, in 6 Degrees 20 Minutes South Latitude, in which is an Harbour on the North-East, but no fresh Water. 8. The Port of *Valdivigo*, in 8 Degrees South Latitude, which is known by a Mountain near it of the same Name. 9. *Guanchaco*, in 8 Degrees 15 Minutes South Latitude, being but an indifferent Harbour, as it lies almost exposed to all Winds; notwithstanding which, *Guanchaco* is a Place of pretty brisk Trade, being the Port Town to the City of *Truxillo*. 10. *Cosma*, a very good Port, in 9 Degrees 50 Minutes South Latitude. 11. *Vermeio* is a very good Port, a little to the Southward of *Cosma*. 12. The Port of *Guara* lies in 11 Degrees South Latitude, and a little to the Northward is the small Port of *Salinas*, from whence they export great Quantities of salt Beef, both to *Lima* and *Panama*. 13. The Island of *Callao*, that has neither fresh Water, Wood, or any green thing upon it; and yet on this barren Spot stands the Port Town to *Lima*. The Port is defended by a strong Castle, that has seventy brass Guns mounted on the Walls, close under which is the usual Place of Anchoring; and here the Ships ride in six Fathom Water, good salt Ground. This Port lies in 12 Degrees 20 Minutes South Latitude, and is about two Leagues distant from *Lima*. The *Armadilla* sails annually from hence to *Arica*, where most of the Silver and Gold of *Peru* is imbarked on board this Fleet. 14. The Port *Ylo* lies in 18 Degrees South Latitude, and is a good Harbour. 15. The Port of *Arica*, situated in 18 Degrees 20 Minutes South Latitude: Here the Treasure brought from the Mines of *Potosi* is constantly embarked every Year for *Lima*. It is a good Harbour, and a large Town, inhabited by *Spaniards*, *Indians*, and *Mulattoes*. 16. The Port of *Copiapo*, a good Harbour, in 21 Degrees South Latitude; the Inhabitants most of them *Indians*, who make good Wine here, and have Plenty of Provisions. 17. *Coquimbo*, situated in 30 Degrees South Latitude, a rich City, driving

The Capes, Islands, and Ports on the Coast of *Peru*.

driving a great Trade with *Lima* and *Panama*, and is a very good Harbour.

Lakes of Peru.

Altho' there is no other Sea borders upon *Peru* but the *Pacifick Ocean*, yet have they some Lakes that may be called Seas, if we regard the Greatness of their Extent. The Lake *Titicaca*, fourscore Leagues in Circumference, is situated in the Province and Valley of *Callao*, the Middle of it being in 15 Degrees South Latitude. Upon this Lake they sail in Ships, and other Vessels, as upon the Ocean; but 'tis subject to Storms sometimes. The Water of it is not so salt as the Sea, but too thick and foul to be drank. There are abundance of large Fish in the Lake, not esteemed wholesome Food. There are also great Shoals of small Fish, very bony, but better Eating than the former: And there are prodigious Flocks of wild Ducks, and other Water-fouls, in it. The Towns and Villages bordering upon the Lake, are esteemed the most agreeable Dwellings in *Peru*. From this Lake issues a large Stream to the Southward, which forms another Lake called *Paria*, not much inferior to the former in its Demensions, and has several Islands in it. On the Banks of these Lakes are rich Meadows, that feed great Herds of Cattle. There are also many Lakes upon the Mountains, which are the Sources of several large Rivers. From one of these issues the River *Aporima*, said to be the principal Stream that forms the celebrated River *Amazon*, esteemed the largest in the World. The Waters of some Lakes in the Valleys are extremely hot, particularly one in the Valley of *Tarpaya* near *Potosi*, the Waters whereof perfectly boil up for more than twenty Foot Square, which is the Spring; but the Heat is so moderate near the Shore, that the Inhabitants frequently bathe in it.

The Springs of Peru.

As to the *Peruvian* Springs, they have great Variety of them in that Part of the Country which is remote from the Sea, but very few on the sandy Plains near the Shore: There is one, near the Quicksilver Mines in *Guancavilica*, that throws out hot Water, which in running a little Way turns into Stone, and forms a Rock; of which Stone the Inhabitants build their Houses, it being soft, light, easily wrought, and yet very durable. There are also Fountains of liquid Matter called *Coppey*, very much resembling Tar, or Pitch, and put to the same Uses by Sea-faring Men, to preserve their Ropes, Planks, and Tackle. At the *Incas* Baths, as they are called, is a Spring of Water that issues out hot and boiling, and near it another as cold as Ice, which those Princes used to temper and mingle together to bathe in. At a Farm near the City of *Cusco* is a Fountain, the Waters whereof in a short Course turn into Salt. The Waters near *Guaiquil* are famous for curing the *French* Disease. These Waters are supposed to receive their Virtue from the Roots of *Sallaparella*, which abound in this Country. From the Top of the Mountain *Balcomotta*, esteemed the highest in *Peru*, there rise two Fountains, which run different Ways, and soon form two large Streams: These Springs, when they first issue from their respective Rocks, are of an Ash-colour, hot and smoaking, and smell of burning Coals; and thus they run a great Way, till mixing with other Streams, they become cool, and lose that burning Smell. There is another Fountain in *Peru*, from whence there runs a Stream as red as blood, and has from thence obtained the Name of the *Red River*.

Rivers that rise in the Mountains of *Peru*, And fall into the *North* Sea.

Most of the Rivers of *South America* rise in the *Peruvian* Mountains, *Andes*. Those which rise on the Eastward of the *Andes*, and fall into the *Atlantic* Ocean, have a very long Course, and are some of them the largest Rivers in the known World. Those that rise on the West-side of the *Andes*, are rather Torrents than Rivers, made by the annual Rains, which fall on the Mountains. The four principal Rivers, that rise on the East-side of the *Andes*, are, 1. The River *Magdalena*, or *Grande*; which rising in the Province of *Quitto*, near the Equator, runs above a thousand Miles directly Northward, falling into the *North* Sea between *Carthagena* and *St. Martha*. 2. The River of *Oronoque*, whose Source is near that of *Magdalena*, takes its Course first to the Eastward for fifteen hundred Miles, and upwards; and then turning directly North, runs almost as far to the Northward, falling into the *North* Sea, against the Island of *Trinity*. 3. The River of *Amazons*, generally held to be the largest River in the World, is formed at first by two Streams, that rise near eleven Degrees asunder. The first near *Quitto*, a little South of the Equator, and runs South-East; the other from the Lake of *Lauricocha*, in 11 Degrees South Latitude; and running first Northward five Degrees, then turns to the Eastward, and unites its Waters with the former: From thence the united Streams run between three and four thousand Miles farther Eastward, being enlarged by a Multitude of other considerable Rivers, and discharges itself into the *Atlantic* Ocean under the Equator, being fifty Leagues wide, at least, at the Mouth. 4. The fourth River, which rises on the East Side of the *Andes*, and is very little inferior to the last, is the River of *Plata*; which rises near the Town of *Plata* in *Peru*, in 20 Degrees of South Latitude; and running first to the Eastward, till join'd and enlarged by many other Streams, then bends its Course directly South, till it comes into 34 Degrees South; then stretches away to the Eastward, falling into the *Athantick* Ocean, in 35 Degrees of South Latitude, near the Town of *Buenos-Aires*, in the Province of *La Plata*, being thirty Leagues broad at the Mouth of it.

Rivers that fall into the *South* Sea.

As to the Rivers that rise on the West Side of the *Andes*, and fall into the *Pacifick Ocean*; the chief of them are, 1. The River *Colanche*, in 2 Degrees South Latitude; 2. The River of *Guaiquil*, in 3 Degrees; 3. The River *Payta*, in 5 Degrees 15 Minutes; 4. The River *Ilo*, in 18 Degrees; 5 The River of *Arica*, in 18 Degrees 20 Minutes: Besides which, there are a great many other small Rivers, that fall into the Sea, within 18 or 20 Degrees of South Latitude, but farther Southward, there is not a River on the Coast of *Peru* or *Chili*, once in a hundred or a hundred and fifty Leagues.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

The Provinces Peru *is divided into; its Sub-divisions, and chief Towns; and their publick and private Buildings, Highways, Magazines, &c.*

Peru divided into three Audiences.

THE Kingdom of *Peru*, like that of *Mexico*, is divided into three Audiences.

Quitto Audience

The Audience of *Quitto*, the moſt Northerly of the three, is about four hundred Miles in Length, from North to South; and two hundred in Breadth, from Eaſt to Weſt; and is ſub divided into three Provinces. 1. *Quitto Proper*, bounded by the *Pacifick Ocean* on the Weſt; about two hundred Miles in Length, from North to South; and upwards of an hundred Miles in Breadth, from Eaſt to Weſt. The chief Towns of *Quitto Proper* are, 1. *Quitto*, the Capital of the whole Audience, ſituated in 30 Minutes South Latitude, at the Foot of the Mountains. It is a rich populous City, built after the *Spaniſh* Model. A Canal runs through the Middle of it, over which are ſeveral Bridges. It is the Seat of the Governor, and of the Courts of Juſtice; a Univerſity, and a Biſhop's See. They have a good Trade in Woollen Cloths, Sugar, Salt, and Cattle; but their greateſt Riches proceed from the Gold that is found in the adjacent Mines and Rivers. There is a *Vulcano* in one of the Mountains near this Town. 2. *St. Jago de Puerto Veijo*, ſituated a little to the Eaſtward of Cape *Lorenzo*; near which, there was formerly a Quarry of Emeralds; but the Quarry being exhauſted, the Town declined with it. 3. *Guiaquil*, ſituated about two hundred Miles to the Southward of *Quitto*. It contains five Churches, and ſeveral Convents, ſome of which are built of Stone; and is defended by three Forts. There being Plenty of Timber in the Neighbourhood of this Place, a great many Ships are built here for the King of *Spain*, and it has a pretty briſk Trade. A Market is held daily in Boats and Barklogs on the River, where Fleſh, Fiſh, Fruits, and other Proviſions, in which the Country abound, are ſold very cheap. The Officers of the Inquiſition act more arbitrarily here, than in *Spain* itſelf. Their Magiſtrates and Officers, all affect pompous Titles. This important Town of *Guiaquil* has been taken and plunder'd, by the Buccaneers, with a Handful of Men, ſeveral Times; which has given Occaſion to think, that the *American Spaniards* are ſo much degenerated from their Anceſtors of *Old Spain*, that they might be driven from the *Weſt-Indies*, as eaſily as they drove out the *Indians* two hundred Years ago.

Quitto Proper.

Chief Towns.

4. *Tombez*, or *Tumbez*, ſituated at the Foot of the Mountains, about twenty Leagues South of *Guiaquil*. Here the *Spaniards* found a Temple dedicated to the Sun, and abundance of Silverſmiths who made Veſſels of Gold and Silver for the Temple, and the Palace the *Inca* had here. The Walls of the Temple were lined with Silver Plate. 5. *Hombamba*, ſituated one hundred and ſixty Miles South of *Quitto*, at the Conflux of two Rivers: Here alſo was a Royal Palace of the *Inca's*, and a Temple dedicated to the Sun; both of them adorned with Gold, and Images made of Touch-ſtone and Jaſper. 6. *Loxa*, ſituated in five Degrees South Latitude; a pretty large Town, has ſeveral Monaſteries. 7. *Zamora*, an hundred Miles to the Eaſtward of *Loxa*, hath very rich Gold Mines in the neighbouring Mountains of the *Andes*. 8. *St. Michael's*, in 5 Degrees South Latitude, two Leagues Eaſt of the Ocean, a large Town, chiefly inhabited by Fiſhermen. 9. *Payta*, deſcrib'd already among the Port Towns.

Quixos Province. Quixos Town.

2. The Province of *Quixos* is bounded by *Quitto Proper* on the Weſt. The only Town of any Note in this Province is that of *Quixos*, ſituate about ſixty Miles South-Eaſt of *Quitto*.

Pacamores Province.

3. The Province of *Pacamores* is alſo bounded by that of *Quitto* on the Weſt. The chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Loyola*; 2. *Valladolid*; 3. *St. Jago*; 4. *St. Franciſco de Borgia*. Of which we meet with no particular Deſcription.

Lima Audience.

The Audience of *Lima*, or *Los Reyes*, is bounded by that of *Quitto* on the North, being about eight hundred Miles in Length from North to South, but the Breadth very unequal, not four hundred Miles in any Part, except on the South.

Chief Town. Lima City.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Lima*, the Capital of the whole Kingdom of *Peru*, ſituated in 12 Degrees and an Half of South Latitude, about ſix Miles from the Sea, and in one of the moſt ſpacious and fruitful Plains of *Peru*: It is built like other *Spaniſh* Cities, having a large Square in the Centre, with Piazza's on every Side; all the principal Streets terminating in the Square: On the Sides whereof ſtand the Cathedral, the Archbiſhop's Palace, the Viceroy's Palace, the Treaſury, the Town-Hall, the Armory, or publick Magazine, and a College of the Jeſuits, where the *Indian* Languages, and Arts and Sciences are taught. There are, beſides the Cathedral, a great many Parochial and Conventual Churches, a Univerſity, abundance of Monaſteries and Nunneries of every Order, and five or ſix large Hoſpitals. The whole City is about four Miles in Length, and two in Breadth; the Air moderately temperate and healthful. It is plentifully ſupply'd with Proviſions, and well watered with Canals. But this great City, thus happily ſituated, is not without its Allays. The Earthquakes they are frequently ſubject to, neceſſarily caſt a Damp on all their Enjoyments; eſpecially when great Part of their Town has been ſeveral times laid in Ruins by them. This City is ſurrounded by a Wall, fortified with Baſtions, but of no great Strength. However, as it is very populous, it may be ſtrong enough to reſiſt any Force that can be brought againſt it in that Part of the World. The Plain of *Lima*, in which it ſtands, produces Plenty of Corn, Wine, Oil, Sugar, Flax, and Fruits. 2. *Guamalca*, ſituated on the great Road of the *Inca's*. This was an antient Town when the *Spaniards* arrived there; well-built, ſurrounded with a Stone Wall, and defended by a Caſtle: On one Side of the City ſtood the Temple of the Sun, and on the other a magnificent Palace of the *Inca Atahalipa*. 3. *Guamico*, ſituated an hundred and fifty Miles North of *Lima*, a well-built Town, and ſtanding in a good Air. Here alſo was a fine Palace of the *Inca's*, and a Temple dedicated

to

to the Sun. 4. *Truxillo*, ſituated in the Valley of *Chimo* ſix Miles from the Ocean. It is a handſome *Spaniſh* Town, conſiſting of five hundred Houſes. 5. *Piſca*, or *Piſco*, a Port-Town ſituated in 14 Degrees South Latitude. 6. *Guamanga*, ſituated on the great Road of the *Inca's*, in a fine Plain, an hundred eighty Miles Eaſt of *Lima*. It is a well-built *Spaniſh* Town, and ſtands in healthful Air. 7. *Cuſco* (the Metropolis of *Peru*, during the Reigns of the *Inca's*) is ſituated in 13 Degrees odd Minutes South Latitude, 350 Miles to the Eaſtward of *Lima*. It is built on the ſide of a Hill, in the midſt of a ſpacious Plain ſurrounded by Mountains, from whence there fall four ſmall Rivers that water the Country, and altogether afford a moſt agreeable Proſpect from the Town, which overlooks the Vale. The City itſelf alſo is watered by one of theſe Rivers, that ſupplies ſeveral Canals cut through the principal Streets. The Climate, here, is exceeding temperate and healthful, and there is very little Difference between Summer and Winter: The Air is dry; inſomuch that Meat hung up will keep without corrupting; and this Dryneſs of the Air preſerves the Natives from Gnats, Flies, and all noxious Inſects, the Plague of other hot Countries. The chief Streets of the old Town pointed to the four Winds: and the Houſes were built with Stone, cover'd with Reeds, or thatch'd. The principal Buildings in it were, the Temple of the Sun, the Palace of the *Inca*, and the Caſtle.

The Form or Dimenſions of the Temple of the Sun, none of their Writers pretend to deſcribe; but relate, that amongſt all their Buildings, none was comparable to this Temple: That it was enrich'd with the greateſt Treaſures that ever the World beheld. That it was built of Freeze-ſtone, and lin'd with Gold Plate, the Cieling being of the ſame Metal; however, the Roof was no better than common Thatch: It was divided into ſeveral Chapels, Cloiſters, or Apartments; in the principal whereof, towards the Eaſt, was placed the Image of the Sun, conſiſting of one Gold Plate that cover'd the whole Breadth of the Chapel, and twice as thick as the Plates that cover'd the other Walls.

This Image, repreſenting the Sun, was of a round Form, with all his Rays and Emiſſions, much in the ſame manner as the *European* Painters draw him: On each ſide of it were placed the Bodies of the deceaſed *Inca's*, ſo embalm'd, that they ſeem'd to be alive. Theſe were ſeated on Thrones of Gold, ſupported by Pedeſtals of the ſame Metal. Upon the Arrival of the *Spaniards*, the *Indians* conceal'd theſe embalmed Bodies, with moſt of the Treaſures of the Temple; only the Image of the Sun was not removed, which falling to the Share of a *Spaniſh* Nobleman, he play'd it away before Sun-riſe the next Morning.

The Temple had ſeveral Gates cover'd with Gold, and round the Top of it, on the Outſide, was a Cornice a Yard deep, conſiſting of Gold Plate. And beſides the Chapel of the Sun, there were five others of a Pyramidical Form. The firſt being dedicated to the Moon, deem'd the Siſter and Wife of the Sun. The Doors and Walls whereof were cover'd with Silver: And here was the Image of the Moon, of a round Form, with a Woman's Face in the Middle of it. On each ſide of this Image, were placed the Bodies of their deceaſed Empreſſes, rang'd in Order. Next to this Chapel was that of *Venus*, called *Chaſca*, the *Pleiades*, and all the other Stars. *Venus* was much eſteem'd, as an Attendant on the Sun, and the reſt were deem'd Maids of Honour to the Moon. This Chapel was plated with Silver, like that of the Moon. The third Chapel was dedicated to Thunder and Lightning; which they eſteem Servants of the Sun: The Chapel was ciel'd and wainſcotted with Gold Plates, like that of the Sun. The fourth Chapel was dedicated to the Rainbow, as owing its Original to the Sun. This Chapel alſo was cover'd with Gold, and a Repreſentation of the Rainbow on one Side of it. The fifth Apartment was for the Uſe of the High-Prieſt, and of the reſt of the Prieſts, who were all of the royal Blood, where they gave Audience to the Sun's Votaries; this alſo was adorn'd with Gold, like the Chapel of the Sun.

Tho' there was no other Image worſhipped in this Temple but that of the Sun, yet had they the Figures of Men, Women, and Children, and of all manner of Birds, Beaſts, and other Animals, of wrought Gold, placed in it for Ornament, as big as the Life; nay, beſides the Figures of Animals for their Temples, they made all ſorts of Veſſels and Utenſils, as Pots, Pans, Bowls, Fire ſhovels, and even Spades and Rakes for their Gardens, of the ſame precious Metal.

The Palaces of the *Inca's* in *Cuſco*, were vaſtly large and magnificent, conſiſting of grand and ſpacious Rooms. There were Galleries, or rather Halls, two hundred Paces in Length, and fifty or ſixty in Breadth; one of which was converted into the Cathedral Church. The *Indians* of *Peru* never raiſed one Story above another in their Buildings; nor did they join one Room to another, but always left ſome Space between the Rooms, unleſs ſometimes in the largeſt Halls they built Cloſets at the Corners. When they had built the four Walls, they erected Pillars in the middle of the Room, to ſupport the Roof. The main Beams they croſs'd with Rafters, and thereon laid a Covering of Thatch or Straw a Yard deep, extending the Eves a Yard beyond the Walls. Beſides their Walls of Stone, they had thoſe of Sun-dry'd Brick, which they formed in Moulds, mixing the Clay with Straw; they were uſed in Building, cemented with the ſame Clay, mix'd with Straw. The Royal Palaces.

Whenever one of the *Inca's* dy'd, they lock'd up the Room where he uſually ſlept, with all the Furniture in it, and none were ever ſuffer'd to enter it afterwards, but they kept it in Repair on the Outſide as long as it would ſtand: Therefore on the Death of the *Inca*, they immediately fell to building a new Apartment for the Succeſſor. The Stones of theſe Buildings were generally ſo well join'd, that they needed no Cement; and if any were uſed, it was a ſlimy Liquor, like Cream, which ſo united the Stones together, that no Seam appear'd: And in many of the royal Palaces and Temples, for the greater Magnificence, they cloſed up the Seams of their Buildings with melted Gold and Silver; which occaſioned the total Deſtruction of moſt of them, the *Spaniards* ſubverting the very Foundations, in hopes of finding Treaſure. The Furniture, or Ornaments of theſe Palaces, like that of their Temples, were the Figures of Men, Beaſts, Birds, and other Animals, caſt in Gold; and on the Walls, inſtead of Tapeſtry, were Plants, and Flowers of the ſame Metal, intermixed with Serpents, Butterflies, and other Inſects.

They had not any Chairs; but the *Inca* himſelf ſat on a Stool made of Gold, without Arms or Back, having a Pedeſtal of the ſame Metal. They had no other Bedding but Blankets, or Carpets, made of the Wool of their Country Sheep, ſpread on the Floor. They had Baſons, and Ciſterns of Gold alſo in their Palaces; and all the Utenſils of their Kitchens, and in them and moſt Offices about the Palace, were of that Metal. But,

amid this Plenty, the *Indians* neither purchased Lands nor Houſes with their Gold, nor eſteemed it the Sinews of War, as the *Europeans* do. They only adorned themſelves, their Houſes and Temples with it while alive, and buried it with them when they died. The royal Gardens of the Palace were not only planted with a great Variety of Trees, Fruits, and Flowers; but the Figures of theſe, and all Manner of Animals, were made of Gold, and placed in the Walks to adorn them.

The Caſtle of *Cuſco*.

As to the Caſtle of *Cuſco*, its Works are incredible to thoſe who have not ſeen it; and thoſe that have, are apt to look upon it as erected by Enchantment. This Fortreſs ſtood upon the Top of the Hill on which the City was built, and towards the Town was defended by a high Rock, perfectly perpendicular. Towards the Country it was defended by triple ſemicircular Walls, of ſuch Thickneſs and Height, that they were proof againſt all the Force that could be brought againſt it. The Stones of theſe Walls were ſo very large, eſpecially the three firſt Rounds, that it was paſt Man's Underſtanding to conceive, how they were hewn out of the Quarry, or brought thither, the *Indians* having no Iron Tools, or Inſtruments to faſten them, or Beaſts to draw them thither; or any Pullies or Engines to lift them into the Places where they were fixed. Theſe Stones were dragg'd by the Strength of Men, ten, twelve, and fifteen Leagues over Hills and Valleys, and the moſt difficult Ways, to that Place: There is one Stone to which the *Indians* give the Name of *Syacuſa*, that is, *the tired or weary*, becauſe it never arrived at the Place it was deſign'd for. This Rock was drawn by twenty thouſand *Indians*, fifteen Leagues, over very rugged and uneven Ways. But notwithſtanding all their Care, it got the better of them; and tumbling down a ſteep Hill, kill'd ſeveral hundred of the *Indians*, who were endeavouring to poiſe the Weight. However, they rais'd it once again, and with incredible Pains dragged it to the Plain in the Neighbourhood of *Cuſco*, and there they were forced to leave it, never being able to get it up the Hill.

Between each Wall of the Caſtle, there was a Space of twenty-five or thirty Foot, which was fill'd up with Earth, and every Wall had a Breaſt-work on the Top of it: Beyond theſe three Walls, were three ſpacious Towers, ſtanding in a Triangle, anſwerable to the Bending of the Walls. The principal of theſe Towers, which ſtood in the Middle, and was called the round Fortreſs, had a Fountain of excellent Water in it, brought by a ſubterraneous Aqueduct; but from whence, the Natives themſelves did not know; for theſe were Secrets communicated to none but the *Inca* or his Council, leſt an Enemy ſhould diſcover the Stream, and cut it off, in caſe of a Siege. In this Fortreſs, the *Inca's* had an Apartment, which was adorned and furniſhed like their other Palaces. The other two Towers on the right and left were both ſquare, and contained Rooms for the lodging and quartering the Garriſon, who were all of the Blood of the *Inca's*. Under the Foundation of theſe Towers was as much Room as above; and they had a Communication with each other by a ſubterraneous Labyrinth, ſo difficult to paſs, that no Stranger could find his Way through without a Guide, or a Line faſtened at the Entrance, by which he might diſcover the Turnings and Windings in his Return. Moſt of the new City of *Cuſco* was built with the Stones found in the Ruins of this Fortreſs.

From the grand Market-place in *Old Cuſco*, iſſued four High-ways to the four Quarters of the Empire: Thoſe to the North and South running upwards of five hundred Leagues each. But theſe will be deſcribed hereafter, in treating of their Roads.

Four great Roads iſſue from the great Square of *Cuſco*.

Every Nation of this extenſive Empire had Quarters aſſign'd for their Reſidence in the royal City of *Cuſco*. The vaſſal Princes of every Province, and eſpecially the Caraca's, or conquer'd Princes, were obliged to ſend their eldeſt Sons to Court, and build them a Palace; about which all the Natives of the ſame Province, reſiding in *Cuſco*, had their Houſes; and every People were obliged to retain the Habits of their reſpective Provinces, being chiefly diſtinguiſhed by their Head-Dreſſes.

The City of *Cuſco* compoſed of all Nations in the Empire.

Theſe Inſtitutions added to the Splendor of the *Inca's* Court. The Sons of the Caraca's, being obliged to wait at the *Inca's* Palace in their turns, contributed much to the Security of the Government; theſe young Lords remaining Pledges of their Fathers Loyalty; though the Reaſons given for their Attendance were, that they might be the better inſtructed in the Laws of the Empire, and prepared for Poſts in the Adminiſtration: But whatever was the Reaſon of the Inſtitution, by this Means the Court Language, and the Manners and Cuſtoms of the capital City, were communicated to the moſt diſtant Provinces; and the Court were juſtly informed of the State of their remoteſt Territories.

The new City.

As for the City of *Cuſco* ſince it has been rebuilt, it is purely *Spaniſh*. As it is divided into the upper and lower Town by the River which runs through it, they have built ſeveral arch'd Stone Bridges on the River, for the more eaſy Communication. Beſides the Cathedral, there are ſeveral Parochial and Conventual Churches, Monaſteries and Nunneries of every Order, and ſome noble Hoſpitals, as well for *Indians* as *Spaniards*. The Biſhop of *Cuſco* is Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Lima*. The Gentlemen and Citizens of *Cuſco*, as the *Indians* had formerly, have moſt of them their Country Houſes in the pleaſant and healthful Valley of *Yucai*, through which there runs a fine River, that makes it one of the moſt fruitful Valleys in *Peru*.

8. *Arequipa*, the laſt of the great Towns in the Audience of *Lima*, is ſituated an hundred Leagues and upwards South Eaſt of *Lima*, and 80 Leagues South Weſt of *Cuſco*. This Town was founded by the Marquis *Pizarro*, one of the firſt Conquerors. It is now a Biſhop's See.

The Audience of *Los Charcas* is bounded by the Audience of *Lima* on the North, being about ſeven hundred Miles from Eaſt to Weſt, in the broadeſt Part, and about the ſame from North to South; but both the Length and Breadth very unequal: The chief Towns in this Audience are,

1. *Potoſi*, which takes its Name from the Mountain at the Bottom of which it ſtands. It is ſituated in 22 Degrees South Latitude, in one of the moſt barren Countries of *America*; there being neither Trees nor Graſs to be found near it, but the richeſt Silver Mines that ever were diſcovered; which has brought Multitudes of People hither, inſomuch that it is one of the largeſt and moſt populous Towns of *Peru*: Nor is it ill ſupply'd with Proviſions; all the Countries round about ſupplying their Markets, where they are ſure to be well paid for what they bring. The Mountain of *Potoſi*, though it be three or four Leagues in Circumference, and one thouſand ſix hundred and twenty four Yards high, is now little

more than a Cruſt or Shell, out of which the *Spaniards* have taken moſt of its internal Riches. They have erected a Chapel on the Top of the Hill, poſſibly more for Oſtentation than Devotion. For however the Religious ſeem to have renounced the World, they are uſually moſt numerous, where Silver moſt abounds.

2. *Porco*, ſituated ten Leagues North-Weſt of *Potoſi*, conſiderable on account of its Silver Mines, before thoſe of *Potoſi* were diſcover'd. 3. *La Plata*, Capital of the Province, receiv'd its Name from the Silver Mines in the Neighbourhood; which were the firſt the *Spaniards* wrought. It is ſituated in 21 Degrees odd Minutes South Latitude, in a fine Plain, and in a much more fruitful Soil than either *Potoſi* or *Porco*. It is the See of an Archbiſhop, and the Reſidence of the Governor and Courts of Juſtice of this Province; the Inhabitants whereof are exceeding rich. 4. *Santa Cruz* of the Mountains, fifty Leagues to the Eaſtward of *La Plata*. 5. *La Paz*, on the great Road of the *Inca's*, an hundred Leagues to the Northward of *La Plata*. It is a ſmall Town, pleaſantly ſituated, and has ſeveral Gold Mines in the adjacent Mountains. 6. *Chinquita*, on the great Lake *Titicaca*, in an exceeding plentiful Country. 7. *Tiguiauaca*, on the South-end of the Lake; beſides which, there are abundance of fine Towns and Villages bordering on the Lake. 8. *Arica*, a Port-town, already deſcribed. 9. *Ylo*, or *Hilo*, another ſmall Port, that has been frequently plundered by the Buccaneers.

Of the Peruvian Towns in general.

Before the Arrival of the *Spaniards*, there was only one great Town in every Province; all the reſt were Villages, conſiſting of little Huts or Cottages: But in the Capital of every Province was a Palace belonging to the Governor, a Temple dedicated to the Sun, and a Convent of ſelect Virgins, reſembling thoſe in the City of *Cuſco*: And upon the High-ways were Magazines and Store-houſes of the *Inca's*, ſufficient to ſupply all the Forces of the Provinces in which they ſtood. The *Indians* had alſo noble Aqueducts, by which they brought Water into their great Towns and Corn-fields many Miles, which render'd the moſt barren Lands fruitful. As to the Convents of ſelect Virgins, thoſe ſeem to have been built like Cloiſters, with Cells for the Virgins on the Sides of them, without any upper Rooms. In the Nunnery of *Cuſco*, there were no leſs than fifteen hundred Virgins, all of the Blood of the *Inca's* or Emperors: And in the Convents of every Province, the Nuns were the Kindred of the vaſſal Princes, or of the Lords of the reſpective Provinces. Theſe Nuns were not intended for the Service of the Temple of the Sun. No Female was ever ſuffer'd to enter into theſe Temples: Nor was any Man admitted to come within the Walls of theſe Nunneries.

Convents of ſelect Virgins.

The *Inca Guaynacava*, marching with his Army from *Cuſco*, to ſubdue the Province of *Quito*, met with great Difficulties in his March; whereupon returning victorious, he cauſed a ſpacious Way to be hewn out through the Rocks; levelling the rough and uneven Ground, by raiſing it in ſome Places fifteen or twenty Fathoms, and in others ſinking it as much; and in this manner carried on the Work for fifteen hundred Miles: And future *Inca's* continued it as far to the Southward. He afterwards cauſed another Way, of equal Extent, to be carried through the plain Country forty Feet wide, which was defended by Walls on each ſide: And along theſe Ways were Houſes at certain Diſtances, ſhady Groves, and Rivulets or Reſervoirs of Water, for the Refreſhment of his Troops, or weary Travellers, upon a March. At the Houſes erected by the *Inca's* on the great Roads, Travellers were ſupplied with Proviſions for their Journey: And in caſe any Traveller fell ſick, he was taken care of: But no Perſon was ſuffer'd to travel for Curioſity, Pleaſure, or private Buſineſs, but only in the Service of the *Inca*, or the Lord of the Province.

Two Royal High-ways deſcribed.

Magazines.

In every Province, there were always two Magazines, or Store-houſes; in one of which they laid up Corn and Proviſions for the Support of the Natives in Years of Scarcity; and in the other, the Proviſions belonging to the Temple of the Sun, and the *Inca*; beſides which, they had ſmaller Store-houſes, built upon the High-ways, three or four Leagues diſtant from each other; which the *Spaniards* make uſe of at this Day, as Inns, when they travel. All the Eſtate of the Sun, and of the *Inca*, within fifty Leagues of the City of *Cuſco*, was brought thither for the Support of the Court; the Overplus whereof the *Inca's* diſtributed among the vaſſal Princes, and great Officers, only a certain Portion was laid up in Magazines for the Uſe of the People of the reſpective Diſtricts. The Revenues ariſing in the Provinces above fifty Leagues from *Cuſco*, were laid up in the King's Store-houſes, and from thence carried to the leſſer Store-houſes, ſtanding on the common Road, from whence the Forces were readily ſupply'd wherever they march'd, and the Soldiery was never quarter'd upon the People. There were Magazines and Store-houſes alſo erected in the Mountains and Plains out of the Road, at the Diſtance of a Day's March or two, near ſome Rivulet; where an Army might, at any time, be ſupply'd with Arms and Proviſions.

Bridges.

From their Roads, we naturally come to their Bridges; and theſe ſeem to have been the meaneſt of all their Works: They neither knew how to erect Arches, nor to fix Piles in the middle of a Stream; and therefore, whenever the Stream was too wide to lay Planks over, they had a kind of floating Bridges faſten'd to each Side, made of Flaggs or Ruſhes: And inſtead of Ferry-boats, they had Floats of Calabaſhes, or Ruſhes, to convey over Travellers. They ſometimes faſtened Ropes croſs their Rivers, and drew themſelves over in Baskets, ſliding along the Ropes.

Carriages, and way of Travelling.

They had no Cattle fit for Draught; every thing was drawn by Men; nor had they any Beaſts of Burthen, but a kind of Sheep, one of which would ſcarce carry an hundred Weight: Moſt of their Baggage therefore, was carried by Porters. Their great Men alſo were carried on Chairs, or Coaches, on the Shoulders of Men; or in Hammocks; which laſt was the uſual way of carrying ſick People.

CHAP

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Persons and Habits of the Peruvians; *of their Genius and Temper; Arts, Manufactures, Food, Exercises, and Diversions; Diseases, and Physicians.*

Persons of the *Peruvians.*

THE *Peruvians* are generally of a middle Stature. There are no Nations of Giants or Pigmies, in that Part of the World, as our first Adventurers related. They are of an Olive Complexion generally; but near the Equator of a perfect Copper-colour; their Hair, as that of all other People between the Tropicks, always black: Most of them had their Heads shav'd; and the Hair of their Beards and other Parts of the Body was pull'd off with Tweezers whenever any appear'd, except on their Eye-Brows, and Eye-Lids.

Habit.

The several Nations were distinguish'd chiefly by their Head-dresses: Some wore whole Pieces of Cotton-Linen, wrapp'd about their Heads like Turbants; others had only a single Piece of Linen tied about their Heads: Some wore a kind of Hats; others, Caps in the Form of a Sugar-Loaf; and a Multitude of other different Fashions there were of their Head-Attire, which they never alter'd. But this is to be understood of the better Sort of People; for the rest went bare-headed. The Head-dress, or Turbant, seems to have been granted to their Chiefs as a Mark of Distinction: Their Heads and Bodies also were anointed with Oil or Grease; and some of them used Paint. Their Holy-day Dress was a Sort of Shirt, and a Vest without Sleeves, and a Mantle: They had also Shoes, or rather Sandals, made of the Skins of Beasts untanned; but the common People usually went naked, except a small Piece of Linen about their Waists. They had scarce any Clothes on when they were at Work, when they went a Hunting, or travelled the Road.

Ornaments.

The principal Ornaments of the *Peruvians* were their Rings and Jewels in their Ears, which they stretch'd to a monstrous Size. They had also Chains of Jewels and Shells about their Necks; no Gold Plates, or Rings in their Noses, like the *Indians* to the Northward of the Equator.

The Habits of the Women.

The Habits of the *Peruvian* Women were not very different from those of the Men; only as the Men shav'd their Heads, and wore Caps or Turbants, the Women dress'd in their Hair, which reached down to the Middle of their Backs, sometimes loose and flowing, and at others, twisted in several Braids: And as the Sun frequently changed their Hair to a ruffet-brown, or red, they were at great Pains to restore it to its original Colour; nothing being esteem'd a greater Beauty among the Women than long flaming black Hair. Both Men and Women, at Festivals, and other solemn Times, frequently adorn'd their Heads with Flowers and beautiful Feathers. But the *Peruvians* now follow the *Spanish* Modes in every thing.

The Genius and Temper of the People.

As to the Genius and Temper of this People, if we were to credit the full Accounts we received of them from the *Spaniards*, they were little better than Brutes in human Shapes. And this has been the general Conduct of Mankind, to represent distant Nations, and those they are to subdue, as Barbarians. The great Conquerors and Heroes of Antiquity among the *Greeks* and *Romans* always represented their Enemies, and those they were pleased to make such, as strange unpolish'd Animals. It is remarkable also, that the *Inca's* of *Peru*, gave much the same Reasons the Antients did, for making War upon their weaker Neighbours, and subjecting all that Part of the World under their Dominion.

Garcilasso de la Vega relates, that he received the following Account of the antient Inhabitants of this Country, from one of his Relations, a Descendant of their *Inca's*, as he himself was: That they were like so many Beasts, without Religion or Government; they neither ploughed or sowed, or clothed themselves; they fed on Herbs, Roots, wild Fruits, and on Man's Flesh; enjoyed their Women, as well as Lands, in common: But that their Father the Sun beholding the savage Disposition of these People, sent a Son and Daughter from Heaven to instruct them in the Worship of himself, to teach them to live in Societies, and reform their barbarous Customs; constituting them, the *Inca's*, Lords and Princes over that People. From whence it appears, that the *Inca's* of *Peru*, like the antient Law-givers, pretended to be descended from some God, who had conferred the Dominion of those Nations upon them. We can never therefore make a just Estimate of the Characters of any People from the Accounts we receive from those who have enslav'd them, or usurp'd the Dominion over them.

De la Vega continues, that the antient *Peruvians*, according to Tradition, sacrificed Men to their Gods; were Canibals; had Shambles of Man's Flesh, and made Sausages of their Guts: But he reflects severely upon those *Spanish* Writers, who relate, that there were any such Sacrifices, or any Canibals in *Peru*, since the *Inca's* reigned there; which was four or five hundred Years before the Invasion of the *Spaniards*. From whence we may conclude, that all the Accounts we have of human Sacrifices and Canibals in *South America* from the *Spanish* Writers are false. And if it be admitted then, that there were no such barbarous People in *Peru*, for four hundred Years before the *Spanish* Conquest, we may take it for granted, there were none there before that time; at least there could be no Certainty of any such.

The Character of the *Peruvians* when the *Spaniards* arrived there.

We proceed now to enquire into the real Character of the *Peruvians* when the *Spaniards* arrived there. They exceeded most Nations in the World in Quickness of Wit and Strength of Judgment; which appears in that, with all the Help of Letters, they attain'd the Knowledge of many Things, which the Learning of the *Egyptians*, *Chaldeans*, and *Greeks*, could never reach. If they had any thing that look'd shocking to the *European*, it did not proceed from the Want of natural Parts, but from the Want of Masters to instruct them in the liberal Sciences: For such of them as had the Advantage of Masters, since the Arrival of the *Spaniards*, became greater Proficients than their *Spanish* Instructors.

And

And as to their Memories, they generally exceeded the *Spaniards*, and would cast up their Accounts, by Knots, with more Expedition than a *European* could by the Help of Cyphers.

Courage and military Skill. As to their military Skill and Conduct, making Allowance for Circumstances, they appear'd also superior to the *Spaniards*. Let us see the bravest Captains of *France* or *Spain* on Foot, without Horses, without Armour, without Spears, Swords, or Fire-Arms; with no other Clothes than their Shirts, no other Head-piece than a Cap of Feathers, or Garland of Flowers; a Shield made of a Piece of a Mat; and let their Diet be only Herbs and Roots of the Field; then let us see how they will be able to oppose Swords, Spears, and Guns.

Hospitality. The first Invaders of *Peru*, found the *Peruvians* extremely hospitable and kind; courteous in Conversation, and friendly to the *Spaniards*: Nor did they offer to commit any Hostilities, till the *Spaniards*, by their Outrages and Cruelties, compelled them to stand upon their Defence.

Amanta's. There were certain among them called *Amanta's*, who were subtle in their Argumentation, and laid down certain *Phœnomena* of natural Things; but in regard they were unacquainted with Letters, they could leave none of those Conceptions to Posterity, unless some few Principles discover'd by the Light of Nature, which they represented

Morality. by rude Figures: However, in Moral Philosophy they attained to a greater Degree of Perfection; for the Doctrine of Good-manners being the Study and Business of the Magistrate, an easy and constant Improvement was made therein.

Natural Philosophy Astronomy. In Natural Philosophy they had studied little, and only knew Things by their Effects. As to their Astronomy, they had observ'd the various Motions of the Planet *Venus*, the Increase and Decrease of the Moon. The *Inca's* also observ'd, that the Sun perform'd his Course in the Space of a Year; tho' the common People divided it only by the Seasons; and the End of their Harvest, with them, was the End of the Year: While the *Inca's* mark'd out the Summer and Winter Solstices by high Towers, which they erected on the East and West of the City of *Cusco*. And as they describ'd their Year by the Course of the Sun, so their Months were distinguish'd by the Moon, and their Weeks were call'd Quarters of the Moon. They were astonish'd at the Eclipses of the Sun and Moon; and when the Sun hid his Face, believ'd it was for their Sins. When the Moon was entering into the Eclipse, they imagin'd she was sick; and when totally obscur'd, that she was dying; and sounded their Trumpets, Kettles, and every Thing that would make a Noise, to rouse her from this Lethargy. They made no Predictions from the Sun or Moon, or the Conjunction of the Stars, but chiefly from their Dreams, or the Intrails of Beasts they offer'd in Sacrifice.

Physick. They had so much Skill in Physick, as to know, that Bleeding and Purging were two necessary Evacuations. Their Lancet was a sharp-pointed Flint set at the End of a small Cane, which cut with less Pain than one of our Lancets. They usually purg'd before the Disease had prevail'd, but afterwards trusted to Nature and a regular Diet. Their principal Ingredient was a white Root resembling a Turnip, which being dry'd and powder'd, they took in Water or their ordinary Drink. In an Hour's Time it began to work upwards and downwards in a violent Manner, bringing away all indigested Matter. They had several Herbs and Roots which they apply'd to Wounds with great Success; but used neither Plaisters nor Ointments, and had no compound, only simple Medicines.

They had only Geometry enough to measure their Lands, and describe the Limits of their Provinces. Geometry.

Their *Amanta's* were Poets also, and invented Comedies and Tragedies, which were acted on their Festivals before the Royal Family; the Actors being the great Lords of the Court. The Subjects of their Tragedies were the great Actions of their Ancestors, which seem to have been the best Means they had of preserving the Memory of what was pass'd. In their Comedies, their Husbandry, their Houshold Affairs, and their Commerce with the World, were represented, and the most remarkable Follies in Life exposed. Poetry.

These *Amanta's* also composed Songs and Ballads; for they had both vocal and instrumental Musick. Musick.

They seem to have been more perfect in Arithmetick than any other Science, and would cast up an Accompt, subtract, multiply, and divide, by certain Lines or Threads of various Colours, tied in Knots; which they call'd *Quippo's*, with more Expedition than a *European* by the Help of Figures. Arithmetick.

Of their Gold and Silver Smiths there were great Numbers, that labour'd constantly at their Trade; yet were they not so skilful as to make an Anvil of Iron, but made use of a certain hard Stone which they smooth'd and polish'd; nor had they learn'd to put Handles to their Hammers; neither had they any Files, graving Tools, or Bellows; but instead of Bellows, Copper-Pipes of a Yard long, with which they blow'd up their Fires. Their Carpenters had no other Tools than Hatches made of Copper or Flint; no Saws, Augers, or Planes; and instead of Nails, they fastned their Timber together with Cords or Withs: Nor had their Stone-Cutters any Tools but sharp Flints or Pebbles, with which they wore out the Stone with perpetual rubbing. Pullies and other Engines also were wanting; all was done by Strength of Hand.

They used a Thorn or fine Bone for a Needle, and their Threads were the Sinews of Animals, the Fibres of some Plant, or the Bark of a certain Tree. Scissars they had none, and their Knives were Flint or Copper. Combs were made of long Thorns, set on each Side a Piece of Cane; and the Razors they shav'd their Heads with were no better than sharp Flints. They had no Looking-Glasses, but the *Peruvian* Ladies made use of a round Plate of polish'd Brass or Copper.

As to ordinary Working Trades, there were no Fraternities, or particular Men, that applied themselves to these; but every Man was his own Carpenter, Shoe-maker, Weaver, Taylor, and Mason: But there were Societies of Poets, Painters, Musicians, Goldsmiths, Engravers, Founders, and Accomptants, who were employ'd in the Service of their Temples, and of their Princes and great Men. Their Woollen and Cotton Clothes, which they wove and dy'd into all Manner of Colours, were their principal Manufactures. But no Man was suffer'd to wear a Garment, Cap, or Turbant, of different Colours, but those of the Royal Blood. Their Carpets and Blankets were made of the Wooll of their Country Sheep, or the fine Hair of their Goats; and their Hammocks of Cotton, or rather Net-work. They had little or no Trade, either with Foreigners, or with one another; every Family having its Plantation, and all Necessaries almost within itself; only they sometimes barter'd Fruits and Eatables with their Neighbours, some Grounds producing what others wanted. Traffick.

The general Food of the *Peruvians*, before the *Spaniards* arriv'd among them, was Maiz, or *Indian* Corn. And in some Countries, that did not Food.

produce Maiz, they had a very small Grain, or Seed, that was produced from a Plant like Spinage. In other Parts, they had the Cassavy-Root. They eat also Potatoes, and other Roots, and almost all Manner of Fruits, raw, roasted, and boil'd. Nor was there scarce an Herb that grew, but what serv'd them for Food; not as Sauce or Sallads, as we use them, but as substantial Dishes. As to Flesh, they eat very little, for their *Inca's* and great Lords were Masters of all the Cattle wild and tame. But there was a general Hunting-bout appointed by their Princes once a Year; wherein a great deal of Venison and Game was taken, and distributed to the People: And this, with the Flesh of the tame Cattle, which was also given them annually, serv'd for the whole Year. They never eat Joints of Meat, as the *Europeans* do, but having cut their dry'd Flesh in Pieces, stew'd, and season'd it high with Pepper, they eat it as Sauce to their other Food, as we eat Anchovies, or Pickles, to relish our Flesh.

The usual Times for eating were between Eight and Nine in the Morning, and about Sun-set in the Evening. They were not altogether so abstemious in Drinking as Eating. Their Gentry and great Men, who had little else to do, sate drinking great Part of the Day: And of the same *Indian* Corn that serv'd them for Bread, they made a Kind of Malt, and brew'd good strong Drink of it. The *Maghey* Tree also afforded them a very intoxicating Liquor; and they made a kind of Wine of almost all Manner of Fruits; but the common People very seldom drank any strong Liquors. The common Beverage here, as well as in *Mexico*, was Water, with a little of the Flower of Maiz infused into it.

Feasts. While we are treating of their Food, it is very natural to speak of their Feasts, of which they had many within the Compass of a Year; particularly four in Honour of the Sun, and one at every new Moon. They had also their Feasts at the Accession of their Princes, and upon every Victory or Conquest; at their Weddings, and the Birth or Weaning of their Children; and almost upon every joyful Occasion. And at these the Guests were entertained with vocal and instrumental Musick, and Dancing, and the Men drank hard: But they always left off early in the Evening, and rising betimes in the Morning, returned to the Feast again; some of these Entertainments lasting several Days.

Exercise of Arms. The Exercising their Arms, the Lance or Spear, the throwing Darts, and shooting Arrows, were Parts of their Recreations and Diversions; to which all the better Sort of People were bred.

Hunting. Hunting was another of their Exercises and Diversions; but this was not permitted to the common People, only once a Year. These hunting Expeditions were after the Breeding-time was over every Year. The *Inca* then assign'd a certain Part of the Country for this Diversion appointing twenty or thirty thousand *Indians* to beat twenty or thirty Leagues round. They march'd along, hooping and hallowing, till the Game came to be so straitened on all Sides that they could not get away, and were easily taken. They consisted chiefly of red and fallow Deer, and of the Country Sheep and Goats, of which there was such Plenty, before the *Spaniards* arriv'd there, that they frequently took thirty or forty thousand at one Hunting-Match. The Female Deer they suffer'd to escape, except the old barren Does, which were kill'd. They releas'd also as many of the Males as were thought necessary to propagate the Species. The rest were divided among the common People. They also shore the Sheep, and divided the Wooll in like Manner. But the fine Hair of the Vicuna's was reserv'd for the *Inca* and the Royal Family.

Every Nobleman learn'd some Trade. Every Nobleman and Gentleman learn'd some mechanick Art, such as making of their Arms, Utensils of Husbandry, Cloathing, and the like, in which they buried themselves when they had nothing else to do. Even their Women of Quality carried their Reels, Spindles, and Needle-work with them, where-ever they visited; nor was the Lady of the Family ever found unemploy'd. They were, like the *Chinese*, courteous and ceremonious even to a Fault in their Visits, always addressing their Superiors, and even their Equals and Inferiors, in the most obliging and complaisant Language.

Races. The being swift of Foot was esteem'd a very great Accomplishment, and Prizes were given to those that excell'd at their Foot-races by publick Authority; for as there was no Writing, every thing of Importance was committed to Memory: And if a distant Viceroy had any thing to communicate to the Emperor, it was done by word of Mouth, and that not by one Express, but perhaps by forty or an hundred: For at every Quarter of a League were little Houses, where seven or eight of the Emperor's Messengers always attended, who were capable of receiving and telling a Message very exactly. One or more of these were dispatch'd upon all Affairs of State; and having deliver'd their Message at the next Stage, some of those ran to the next, and so on till they reach'd the Court: But they all carried their Quippos and Knots with them, which assisted their Memories very much, and prevented Mistakes. And so swiftly did these Expresses run, that the Court received the Intelligence in twenty four Hours, tho' the Governor who sent it was at an hundred and fifty Miles Distance: And in case of a Rebellion or Invasion, they had Beacons on high Hills, at proper Distances, by Means of which they spread an Alarm.

Post and Express

CHAP. XV.

Of the Peruvian *Animals, Vegetables, and Minerals.*

Animals. AS *Peru* and *Mexico* have Animals, for the most Part, of the same Species; we shall not describe those again that have been treated of in *Mexico*, but speak chiefly of such as seem peculiar to *Peru*.

Tame Beasts. The *Peruvian* Sheep are call'd by different Names, as Paco's, Lama's, Huanacu, and Guanacu; and these are distinguish'd again by the tame and the wild, the large and the small kind. The large tame Huanacu is of the Bigness of a Stag, and resembles a Camel the most of any other Beast, only it hath no Bunch on its Back: His Body is cover'd with a coarse Wool, and the Hide makes excellent Leather. They were the only

only Beasts used in carrying of Burdens, when the *Spaniards* arriv'd there. The Flesh of this Creature is tender, and exceeding fine eating, and is preferred before Chickens. Before Horses and Mules were imported, it was common to see eight hundred or a thousand of them in a Caravan. They would carry their Burdens over Rocks and Precipices, where a Man could hardly travel on Foot: Their usual Burden was about three or fourscore Pound Weight, with which they travelled nine or ten Miles a Day. They were no Charge to their Masters, who only took off their Packs, and turn'd them up to graze in the common Fields at the End of every Stage. Nor was there any need of Pack-saddles, the Wooll on their Backs serving instead of them: And as they were cloven-footed, they needed no Shoeing. The lesser Sort of Sheep, or Paco's, carry'd no Burdens, but their Flesh was almost as good Meat as the former, and their Wooll long and much esteem'd. The wild Sheep afforded them Wooll, but not so fine as the tame ones; nor was their Flesh so good Meat.

The *Peruvian* Goats, called *Vicunas*, had that Name given them by the *Spaniards*, because they resembled a *European* Goat more than any other Animal. It is a long-legg'd Creature, bigger than the largest Goat, without Horns; and so swift of Foot, that no Greyhound can take it; and therefore they are usually shot or snar'd. Their Flesh is lean, tough, and ill-tasted, and yet in much Esteem with the *Indians*, on account of some medicinal Qualities it is said to have: And its Wooll is much more esteem'd than the Wooll of their Sheep; for of this they make the finest Garments and Carpets.

Bezoar-Stone. In these, and most of the wild Cattle of *Peru*, the Bezoar-Stone is found in their Stomachs and Bellies, and there are sometimes, two, three, or four together of different Shape, Size, and Colour, some as big as Filberts, others of the Size of Pigeons Eggs, or Wallnuts, and some as large as Hens Eggs. All Beasts that engender it chew the Cud, and usually feed upon the Rocks in the Snow. And as there are many Herbs and venomous Reptiles that poison the Waters and Pastures in this Country, so there is one Herb, which the Beasts which engender the Bezoar-Stone, run to by Instinct, when they find themselves poison'd, and by that Means expel it: And the *Indians* are of Opinion, that of this Herb the Stone in the Stomach of these Animals is compounded; from whence it receives that Virtue against Poisons, and produces many other wonderful Effects.

There are red and fallow Deer in *Peru*, but much less than those of *Europe*. Before the Arrival of the *Spaniards* they came in Droves into the Villages, the common People never attempting to kill or take them. They had also tame and wild Rabbits, and these every Man was at Liberty to keep or take.

Wild Beasts. As to wild Beasts, they had some few Lions, but neither so large or so fierce as those of *Africa*. They had still fewer Bears, and not any Tygers, unless upon some of the highest Mountains of the *Andes*. Nor had they any Wolves: So that People travell'd in great Security, and their tame Cattle were in no Danger of being destroy'd. There is a Beast found on the Mountains of the *Andes* in Shape like a Cow, but less, and without Horns; of whose Hides they make Buff and very strong Leather. There are great Numbers of Monkeys in this Country of various Kinds and Colours, some with Tails, others without, and some four times as large as the ordinary Monkeys. Their Activity and Motion is such, that they seem to have Reason and Discourse: They leap from one Tree to another; and when the Distance is such, that one cannot reach the Place, they hang themselves from the Bough of a Tree, one at the Tail of another, and fetching a long Swing, the lowermost, with the Help of the others, throws himself to the Bough they aim at, and when he is there, helps his Companions after him. These Monkeys, when they are tam'd and taught, seem to equal Men in Understanding. There were not either House Cats or Rats in *Peru* till the *Spaniards* imported them; and the Rats probably were carried thither in Shipping against their Wills; but they multiplied so fast, and grew so large on the Coast of *Peru*, that in the Year 1572 and 1573, they almost occasion'd a Famine, by eating up the Corn as soon as it was sown, and by peeling the Bark of the Fruit-Trees, and knawing the Roots; insomuch that they were forced to publish a Proclamation, that every House should lay Ratsbane to destroy them, and in the mean Time that they should cover their Meat and Drink from the Rats, to prevent Peoples being poison'd. And by this, and some other Means, their Numbers were considerably lessen'd for a Time.

Fowls. The *Peruvians* had no tame Poultry till the *Spaniards* imported them, unless it were a Fowl that something resembled a Duck, and was between the Size of a Goose and a Duck: These the *Indians* called *Nuthna*. But as to wild Fowl and Birds they had great Variety, both on the Land and on the Water: They had Eagles, but not so large as those of *Europe*; Hawks of several kinds, and some sorts that were never seen on this Side the *Atlantick*. The most remarkable Bird of Prey was that which the *Indians* call'd the *Conder*, or *Cuntur*, many of which, with the Wings extended, measured fifteen or sixteen Feet from the Extremity of one Wing to the other: They are a very fierce voracious Fowl, and have Feet like a Hen: They are so strong that two of them will set upon a Bull or a Cow, if they find them lying down, and rip up their Bowels; and some of them have killed Boys of ten or twelve Years of Age, and devoured them. They are black and white like a Magpye, and have Combs on their Heads. There is a kind of large Carrion Crows, which devour Flesh to that degree, that they cannot fly till they have disgorg'd it; and it is one of the Diversions of the Country to pursue them on Horseback, when they spue up the Flesh all the way they run till they are light enough to fly. Upon the Coast of the *Pacifick Ocean*, there are Numbers of Birds which prey upon the Fish. Their Rivers and Lakes also abound in Water-Fowl, such as Herons, wild Ducks, wild Geese, Swans, and many other kinds. They have two Sorts of Partridges, and a pretty great Plenty of them; one Sort as large as Hens, and the other less than *European* Partridges. They have also good Store of Wood-Pigeons, and Turtle-Doves of the Size and Colour of those of *Europe*, and others no bigger than Larks. But they abound more in Parrots than any other, and these are of various Sizes and Colours, the least of the Bigness of Larks, and the largest as big as Pullets.

Fish. The *South-Sea* is well replenish'd with all Manner of Fish, particularly Pilchards, which are a great Part of the Subsistence of the People upon the *Peruvian* Coast; but their Rivers afford scarce any Fish, which is ascrib'd to their Rapidity and the Shallowness of their Channels, most of which are dry at one Season of the Year.

Vegetables. Forest Trees. Forest Trees are very scarce in *Peru*, unless in the Province of *Quito* near the *Equator*; and here they have Cedars, Cotton Trees, Cocoa Trees, Palms,

Palms, Mangroves, Bamboes, the Maho-Tree, Light-wood, and many other Kinds of Wood, which have been deſcrib'd in treating of *Mexico*:

Peruvian Bark.

But none are more valuable than the Tree which furniſhes us with the *Peruvian* Bark, which grows in the Province of *Quitto*, upon the Mountains near the City of *Loxa*. It is the Size of a Cherry Tree, the Leaves round and indented, and bears a long reddiſh Flower, from whence arrives a Kind of Pod, in which is found a Kernel like an Almond, cloth'd with a ſlight Rind. That Bark which comes from the Trees at the Bottom of the Mountains is thickeſt, becauſe it receives moſt Nouriſhment from the Earth. It is ſmooth, of a whitiſh Yellow without, and of a pale Brown within. That which comes from the Trees at the Top of the Mountains is abundantly more delicate: But the Trees which grow in the Middle of the Mountains have a Bark ſtill browner than the other, and more rugged. All theſe Barks are bitter, but that from the Trees at the Bottom of the Mountains leſs than the others. The beſt is, that which grows in the Middle of the Mountains, becauſe it has not too much nor too little Nouriſhment.

Their Husbandry.

Maiz, or *Indian* Corn, has been deſcribed already. As to their Husbandry, the Country for the moſt Part being hot and dry as well as mountainous, they were at great Pains in collecting the Waters, and introducing Rivulets into their Corn-fields, without which this kind of Grain will not grow in that hot Climate. They throw their Fields therefore into level Squares, that they may retain the Water; and where they meet with a Mountain of a tolerable good Soil, they cut it into Squares, one above another, from the Bottom to the Top, ſupporting them with little Stone Walls; ſo that they look like hanging Gardens or Stairs: And if they can meet with a Fountain on the Top of the Hill, from thence they water all the Squares beneath: They uſed alſo to make Aqueducts and Canals, ſeveral hundred Miles in Length, into which they brought all the Streams and Rivulets they could meet with, and from theſe every Man was allow'd to let Water into his Grounds, in his turn, to improve both his Corn and Graſs. By the Sea Coaſt, below *Arequipa*, for two hundred Leagues, they uſed no other Dung but that of Sea-Fowls, of which the Numbers bred on the Iſlands near the Coaſt, lay ſuch Heaps of Dung, that at a Diſtance they appear like Hills of Snow. On other Parts of the Coaſt, more to the Southward, they dung their Lands with a ſmall Fiſh like Pilchards: And it is with infinite Labour here, for ſix or ſeven hundred Leagues, that the Natives find a Subſiſtence; for they have no Springs or Rivers; nor does a Drop of Rain ever fall on thoſe parch'd Sands.

European Grain, &c. ſow'd in Peru.

Wheat and Barley were firſt imported into *Peru* about the Year 1540, by a noble Lady. *Francis de Caravantes*, a Nobleman of *Toledo*, had the Honour of planting the firſt Vines in *Peru*. Olives have been carried over alſo into *Peru*, but they do not thrive there ſo well as other *European* Plants; tho' they are found very agreeable to the Soil of *Chili*. However, *Peru*, at this Day, abounds in Sugar-Canes, Oranges, Lemons, Figs, Cherries, Apples, Pears, Quinces, Nectarines, Peaches, Apricots, Plumbs, and Pomegranates; none of which Fruits were in *Peru* before the *Spaniards* arrived there: But they had Coco-nuts, Cacao-nuts, Pine-apples, Guava's, Plantains, and moſt of the Fruits enumerated in *Mexico*.

Kitchen Gardens.

As to the Kitchen Garden, they had neither Lettice, Radiſhes, Turnips, Garlick, Onions, Beets, Spinage, Aſparagus, Melons, Cucumbers, Peaſe, Beans, or Rice; of all which there is now great Plenty; as there are alſo of Roſes, Jeſſamin, and many odoriferous Flowers they never ſaw before the *Spaniards* imported them. But then they had ſeveral Sorts of Herbs, Flowers, Sallading, and Roots, that we want. And 'tis obſerv'd of the Fruits and Plants that have been carried thither from *Europe*, that they thrive better, and grow much larger, there than they do here.

Balſam of Peru deſcribed.

The Balſam of Peru proceeds from the Trunks and Branches of a little Tree. There are three Sorts of it. The firſt is called the Balſam by Inciſion, and is a white Liquor. The ſecond is called Balſam of the Shell, which drops from the Ends of the Branches that are cut. The third is a black Balſam, which is made by boiling the Bark, Branches, and Leaves of theſe little Trees in Water. And beſides this Balm, the Country produces Anami, Caranna, Storax, Caſſia-fiſtata, Guaiacum, Sarſaparilla, Saſſafras, Copal, Liquid Amber, and ſeveral other Gums and Drugs, mention'd already in the Deſcription of *Mexico*.

Mineral.

Gold and Silver were ſo plentiful in *Peru* in the ſixteenth Century, that there had been exported from thence to *Spain* every Year, for twenty five Years ſucceſſively, the Value of twelve or thirteen Millions of Crowns, beſides what had paſs'd without Account. Gold was found in every Province of *Peru*, more or leſs; ſome on the Surface of the Earth, and waſh'd down by Torrents, which the *Indians* gather'd up in Baskets, and ſeparated from the Sand. In the Year 1556, there was dug out of the Veins of a Rock in the Mines of *Callavia*, a Piece of Gold Ore as big as a Man's Head, having certain Perforations in it from one End to the other; and in all the Holes were little Kernels of Gold, as if melted and drop'd into them. The Owner of this valuable Piece of Ore was carrying it over to *Spain*, but the Ship was caſt away in the Voyage, and he periſh'd with his Treaſure.

Gold.

That Gold which is found in a Lump in the Mines, is call'd Virgin Gold, becauſe it comes pure out of the Mine, and needs no farther Preparation. The ſecond Sort is in Grains, not ſo fine as the firſt. The third is Gold mix'd with other Metals, and the Marcaſite or mineral Stone. This is call'd Gold Ore. And the fourth is Gold Duſt, mix'd with Sand at the Bottoms of Rivulets; and there is ten times more Gold found in ſuch Sands than is acquir'd all the other ways. All Stones which contain any Metal, are called Marcaſite. But the three principal Marcaſites are, thoſe that contain Gold, Silver, or Copper. The two firſt are in little Balls, of the Bigneſs of a Nut, almoſt round, weighty, and browniſh without, but within the firſt is of the Colour of Gold, the other of Silver. Gold is often found mix'd with Silver or Copper.

Marcaſites.

Silver. Potoſi.

There are a great many Silver Mines in ſeveral Parts of *Peru*; but thoſe of *Potoſi* are the richeſt. Theſe were diſcover'd in the Year 1545, about fourteen Years after the *Spaniards* invaded that Country.

An *Indian*, purſuing his Game up the Mountain of *Potoſi*, and being like to fall, laid hold of a Shrub, that grew upon a Vein of Silver, to ſave himſelf; and happening to pull it up by the Roots, thereby diſcover'd the rich Metal underneath. He kept the Thing ſecret till he had drawn from it Silver enough to enrich himſelf and his Family; but at Length it was diſcover'd to the *Spaniards*, who thereupon pareel'd it out among the Adventurers. That which made the Mines of *Potoſi* the more valuable, was, that they

were

were never hinder'd working by Water, though they had ſunk them two hundred Fathom deep. The firſt forty Years theſe Mines of *Potoſi* were wrought, there were regiſter'd *One hundred two thouſand Millions of Crowns*, beſides a great deal that had been carried off without paying Cuſtom; but this muſt needs have been a Miſtake.

Quick-ſilver Mines.

Another Part of the Riches of *Peru* conſiſts in their Quickſilver, of which they have ſeveral Mines in the Audience of *Lima*, particularly in the Mountains of *Oropeza* and *Guancavilca*, near the City of *Guamanga*. It is found in a kind of Stone called *Cinabar*, which likewiſe yields Vermilion. The Native *Indians* had long wrought theſe Mines before the *Spaniards* arrived, without knowing what Quickſilver was. They ſought only for the Cinabar or Vermilion, to paint their Faces and Bodies on Rejoicing-Times, and to beautify the Images of their Gods.

As to the Manner of refining, or ſeparating Quickſilver from the Ore; they take the Stone, in which it is found, and beating it to Powder, put it into the Fire in Earthern Pots, and the Stone being melted, the Quickſilver ſeparates itſelf, and aſcends, till it encounters the Top of the Pot, and there congeals. They unſtop the Pots, and draw out the Metal, when it is cold; for if there remain any Fume or Vapour, it endangers the Lives of the Workmen. They put the Quickſilver, when it is melted, into Skins, for it keeps beſt in Leather; and thus they ſend it to *Potoſi*, where they ſpend above ſeven thouſand Hundred Weight in refining Silver, every Year, beſides what is ſpent at other Mines.

Quickſilver is found ſometimes incloſed in its own Mineral, and ſometimes fluid, and of as changeable a Figure as we ſee it. When it is found liquid in the Ground, the Slaves who gather it have nothing to do but to ſtrain it through Shamois Leather, to cleanſe it from its Impurities: Quickſilver is ſo very weighty, that a ſolid Foot of it weighs nine hundred forty ſeven Pounds; and it is ſo exceeding ſtrong as well as weighty, that an hundred and fourſcore Pounds of Quickſilver will bear up an Iron Weight of fifty Pounds.

The Properties of it are ſo great, that into whatever Shape you metamorphoſe it, you may make it return to its firſt State, with a very little Diminution. As it is a very fluid Body, ſo it is more difficult to be found than other Metals; for it inſinuates itſelf into Earths, and into the Cleſts of Stones, ſo that you often loſe the Sight of it, when you think you are juſt going to take it up.

Cinabar. Cinabar is of two Sorts; the one natural, called *Mineral Cinabar*; the other artificial, called ſimple *Cinabar*: The natural is found formed in Stones that are red, ſhining, and weighty, in the Quickſilver Mines. The artificial Cinabar is made with three Parts crude Mercury, and one Part Sulphur mix'd, and put into ſubliming Veſſels over a gradual Fire. Vermilion is Cinabar in Stone, ground with Urine, or *Aqua Vitæ*. As to the precious Stones of *Peru*, they have great Plenty of Emeralds here as well as in *Mexico*. They have alſo Turquoiſes, which are of a blue, or azure Colour, as the Emeralds are green. Chryſtal is alſo found here: And Pearls they had in greater Plenty in *South*, than in *North America*; but thoſe Fiſheries ſeem to be almoſt exhauſted.

Vermilion. Precious Stones. Pearls.

CHAP. XVI.

The Hiſtory, Religion, and Government, of the Peruvians, *before the* Spaniſh *Conqueſt.*

Ancient History, Religion, Government.

GARCILIASSO *De la Vega* has attempted to give us the Hiſtory of *Peru*, even before the *Inca's* founded that Empire, and was as well qualified for ſuch an Undertaking, as any Man could be in ſuch Circumſtances, being deſcended from the Royal Family of the *Inca's*, and bred up among his Relations before they had received the *Spaniſh* Cuſtoms. This Gentleman made it his Buſineſs for ſeveral Years to inform himſelf, from his Relations and Acquaintance, of the Hiſtory and Cuſtoms of their Anceſtors; and afterwards came over to *Spain*, where that Court put him upon digeſting his Obſervations, and making them publick; which he did, under the Title of, *The Royal Commentaries of Peru*. But the *Spaniards* took Care that this Hiſtory ſhould be ſo model'd, as to caſt as little Reflection on their Conduct in ſubduing *Peru* as poſſible; and the Hiſtorian himſelf had a ſtrong Bias towards the Family of the *Inca's*, from whom he was deſcended, aſcribing the Civilizing of that People to them. And that he may reflect the greater Honour on the *Inca's*, he repreſents the People of *Peru*, before the Foundation of that Empire, as more ſavage than the Brutes themſelves. He ſays, every Tribe and Family had its particular God; that they ador'd Trees, Mountains, and Rivers, and worſhipped Lions, and Tygers, and all manner of Animals: Others made Stocks and Stones the Objects of their Adoration; and ſacrificed not only their Enemies, but their Children to them, and eat them in great Feſtivity when they had done. But ſure ſuch monſtrous Relations need no Confutation; the very repeating them is ſufficient to diſcredit them. However, from ſuch Stories as theſe, which the *Peruvians* ſeem to have been very full of, the *Spaniards* firſt took the Hint, and repreſented the *Peruvians* themſelves to be addicted to the ſame barbarous Cuſtoms, and made this a Pretence for oppreſſing and enſlaving them: And when both *Spaniards* and *Indians* contributed to ſupport the Truth of ſuch Relations, no wonder they were ſoon propagated all over *Europe*.

The Reformation of the *Peruvians* by the *Inca's*.

De la Vega tells us, that all theſe barbarous Cuſtoms were aboliſh'd by the *Inca's*, when they laid the Foundation of their Monarchy; of which they had in their Family the following Tradition.

That their Father, the Sun, beholding Mankind in that ſavage State above related, ſent a Son and Daughter of his own from Heaven to Earth, to give them Laws and Precepts to govern themſelves by, that they might live like Men, and enjoy the Fruits of the Earth. With ſuch Inſtructions, their Father placed his two Children in the great Lake of *Titicaca*, from whence they were to begin their Labours, giving them a little Wedge of Gold, which they were to ſtrike into the Ground at every Place they

reſted; and where-ever this Wedge ſhould ſink out of their Sight, in that Place they were to make their Reſidence, and the People ſhould reſort to them to be inſtructed, their Father conſtituting them Lords and Sovereigns over all Men. That travelling Northward from the Lake of *Titicaca*, and ſtriking the Golden Wedge into the Earth in the Valley of *Cuſco*, there it diſappear'd; and thereupon they agreed to aſſemble the People there, in order to inſtruct them in the Doctrines committed to them: Accordingly the Man and the Woman ſeparated, the one going North, and the other South, declaring to all they met, that their Father, the Sun, had ſent them to be their Teachers and Benefactors, to draw them from that ſavage Way, and inſtruct them in all ſuch Arts as might render their Lives comfortable. That the Savages, obſerving theſe two Perſons cloth'd and adorn'd, and that by the Gentleneſs of their Words, and the Grace of their Countenances, they manifeſted themſelves to be the Children of the Sun, they were ſtruck with Admiration, gave them entire Credit, and obey'd them as their Princes.

Great Multitudes being aſſembled, they led them to that Spot of Ground where *Cuſco* now ſtands, laid out the Plan of the City, and inſtructed the People how to prepare Materials for building it. In the next Place, the *Inca* ſhewed the Men how to cultivate their Lands, and bring the Streams of Water into them; while his Queen taught the Women to ſpin, and weave their Cotton into Garments; to dreſs their Meat, and other Parts of Houſewifry. This Colony flouriſhing extremely, drew in the Neighbouring Tribes to join them. And now the *Inca*, finding himſelf in a Condition to enlarge his Territories by Force, taught the People the Uſe of Arms; and thoſe, who refuſed to ſubmit themſelves voluntarily, were compell'd by Force to relinquiſh their former vagrant Life, and be obedient to the Laws of Society. This firſt *Inca* was named *Manco Capac*, and his Queen *Coya Mama*.

Manco Capac, firſt *Inca*.

His Laws.

Manco Capac did not only teach all his Subjects to adore his Father, the Sun, but inſtructed them alſo in the Rules of Morality and Civility, directing them to lay aſide their Prejudices to each other, *and to do as they would be done by*. He ordain'd, that Murder, Adultery, and Robbery, ſhould be puniſh'd with Death: That a Man ſhould have but one Wife; and that in Marriages they ſhould confine themſelves to their reſpective Tribes: And over every Colony, he placed a Caracas, or Prince; who govern'd the People under them, as their Subjects. He alſo built a Temple to the Sun, taught the People to offer Sacrifices, and other Religious Rites, and erected a Cloyſter for a certain Number of ſelect Virgins, who were all to be of the Blood Royal, and dedicated to the Sun.

Religious Rites.

Among other Inſtitutions, this *Inca* commanded, that all the Males of his Family ſhould have their Heads ſhav'd. He alſo order'd them to bore their Ears, which they did with a Thorn, and afterwards ſtretch'd the Orifice to ſuch a Degree, that it would hold the Wheel of a ſmall Pulley. They were alſo order'd to wrap a Wreath, or Cloth of various Colours, four or five times about their Heads, in Form of a Turbant. Which three Things were to diſtinguiſh the Royal Family of the *Inca's* from other People. Laſtly, having reign'd many Years, he adopted his chief Miniſters for his Children, conferring on them his own Title of *Inca*, which they and their Poſterity retain'd ever afterwards.

Sinchi Roca, ſecond *Inca*.

The *Inca* being dead, was ſucceeded by his eldeſt Son *Sinchi Roca*, whom he had by his Wife *Coya Mama* his Siſter. He alſo, after the Example of his Father, married his eldeſt Siſter by the ſame Mother; and this was the Practice of all ſucceeding *Inca's* in their Marriages, tho' they did not ſuffer their Subjects to marry their Siſters, or near Relations. The Corps of *Manco Capac* was afterwards embalm'd, and placed in the Temple of the Sun, where he was worſhip'd as a God; as were all the ſucceeding *Inca's*: But both the Sun and the *Inca's* ſeem to have been worſhipped as inferior Deities; for the *Peruvians* acknowledg'd one Almighty God, Maker of Heaven and Earth, whom they call'd *Pacha Camac*, *Paca* in their Language ſignifying, *the Univerſe*, and *Camac*, *the Soul*: *Pacha Camac* therefore ſignified him who animated the World. They never took this Name into their Mouths, but with the greateſt Veneration, and Signs of Devotion: But becauſe they did not ſee this Supreme Deity, they therefore ſeldom erected Temples, or offered Sacrifices to him, but worſhipped him in their Hearts as the *Unknown God*. The Name by which the *Peruvians* called the Devil, was *Capay*, which they never pronounced but they ſpit, and ſhewed other Signs of Deteſtation. Their principal Sacrifices to the Sun were Lambs; but they offered alſo all Sorts of Cattle, Fowls, and Corn, and even their beſt and fineſt Clothes; all which they burnt in the Place of Incenſe. They had alſo their Drink-Offerings, made of their Maiz, or *Indian* Corn, ſteep'd in Water; and when they firſt drank after their Meals, they dipp'd the Tip of their Finger into the Cup; and lifting up their Eyes with great Reverence to Heaven, gave the Sun Thanks for their Liquor, before they preſumed to take a Draught of it.

The Peruvians acknowledg'd one God, Maker of Heaven and Earth.

All the Prieſts of the Sun that officiated in the City of *Cuſco*, were of the Royal Blood; tho' the inferior Officers were taken out of thoſe who had been adopted into the Privileges of the *Inca's*: The High Prieſt was either the Brother, or Uncle of the King, or one of his neareſt Relations. In other Provinces, Perſons of Diſtinction among the Natives were made Prieſts, but the High Prieſt was always an *Inca*. Beſides the Worſhip of the Sun, they paid ſome kind of Adoration to the Images of ſeveral Animals and Vegetables, that had a Place in their Temples. Theſe were the Images brought from the conquer'd Countries, where the People ador'd all manner of Creatures, animate or inanimate; for whenever a Province was ſubdu'd, their Gods were immediately remov'd to the Temple of the Sun at *Cuſco*, where the conquer'd People were permitted to pay their Devotions to them, for ſome time at leaſt.

The People were divided into Decurions, or Tythings, of which an exact Regiſter was kept: Over every Decurion, or ten Families, the Maſter of one of the Ten was appointed to preſide. Over every five of theſe Diviſions was another Decurion, who had the Command of fifty Families: Another Officer was placed over an Hundred, another commanded five Hundred, and the chief Officer a Thouſand; but no Man was ſuffered to govern more than a thouſand Families. The loweſt Decurion was to ſee that thoſe under his Command wanted none of the Neceſſaries of Life; to deliver out to them Corn to ſow their Lands, Wooll for their Clothing, and Materials to build their Houſes, and to take care of ſuch as were ſick and infirm: He was alſo to be the Cenſor of their Actions, and inform his Superiors of any Crimes, or Immoralities, committed by thoſe under his Care, which were to be puniſh'd by them; but as for trivial Offences, he had

had the Correction of them himſelf, and the Deciſion of Controverſies of ſmall Moment. Where Differences aroſe between two Provinces, theſe were decided by Commiſſioners appoined by the *Inca* himſelf; and there was a General Cenſor appointed to inſpect the Conduct of the chief Officers, and Miniſters of State, who were puniſh'd capitally, if ever they oppreſs'd the Subjects, or betray'd their Truſts.

The Conduct of Parents and Maſters of Families was nicely inſpected; and the Decurion was anſwerable for the Faults of the Children of thoſe under their Care: Like the *Chineſe*, they inculcated nothing more than a moſt reſign'd Submiſſion of Children to their Parents, and the utmoſt Reſpect in ſpeaking to their Superiors. As every Family was regiſtred, ſo the Decurions took care to intimate ſuch Alterations as happened in them by Births, Marriages, or Deaths; ſo that the *Inca's* were always apprized of the State and Condition of their Provinces, the Numbers of their Subjects, and the Forces and Revenues proper to be required of them upon all Occaſions. They were inform'd alſo of ſuch Calamities and Misfortunes as befel them, and the *Inca's* thereupon immediately ſupplied them with whatever was wanting; ſo that they might juſtly be ſtil'd, Fathers and Guardians of their People; and one of the *Inca's* Titles was, *A Lover of the Poor:* And ſo dutiful were their Subjects, that in this vaſt Empire, it was rare to find one Perſon convicted of a Crime within the Space of a Year.

Sinchi Roca, the ſecond *Inca*, anſwered the Name that had been given him, the Word *Sinchi* ſignifying *Wiſe*, and that of *Roca*, *Valiant*. This Prince having ſolemnized his Father's Funeral, inſtead of being crown'd, had a Wreath of various Colours bound about his Temples, ſuch as the ſupreme *Inca's* wear. He propoſed to the *Caraca's*, the making an Expedition to the South, to ſummon the neighbouring Nations to acknowledge the Sun for their God, and the *Inca* for their Sovereign. The *Caraca's* expreſſing their Readineſs to attend their Prince, he ſet forward at the Head of a numerous Army, employing Heralds to march before him, and declare the Intent of his Approach: And the People were ſo alarm'd with the Gentleneſs of his Adminiſtration, that they immediately ſubmitted to him, without Compulſion; and during his whole Reign, he never engag'd in War, or compelled any People to ſubmit to him by Force, though he conſiderably enlarged his Empire.

Sinchi Roca having reigned many Years, in Imitation of his Predeceſſor, declared he was going to repoſe himſelf with his Father the Sun; and dying ſoon after, was ſucceeded by *Loque Yupanqui*, his Son by his Wife and Siſter *Mama Cora*. This *Inca* was not altogether ſo peaceable as his Predeceſſor; for thoſe Nations that refuſed to obey him on his firſt Summons, were treated in a hoſtile Manner, till they made their Submiſſion; and were contented to forſake their former Laws and Cuſtoms. He extended his Conqueſts to the Southward of the Lake *Titicaca*, and taught the ſubdu'd People how to cultivate their Grounds, to introduce Rivulets into them, to make Aqueducts, to build, to plant, and clothe themſelves decently. *Mayta Capac*, the fourth *Inca*, enlarg'd his Dominions by the Conqueſt of ſeveral other Nations lying to the Southward of the Lake of *Titicaca*. There is little elſe remarkable in this Reign, unleſs it be the *Inca's* making a great Float of Oziers, on which he tranſported his Army over great Rivers, and invaded his Enemies, who thought themſelves ſecur'd by thoſe Waters from all Invaſions: And that this ſo aſtoniſh'd thoſe People, that they ſubmitted to the *Inca* without ſtriking a Stroke. *Capac Yupanqui*, the eldeſt Son of *Mayta Capac*, ſucceeded his Father, and ſeems to have been an unactive Prince. *Inca Roca*, eldeſt Son of the former Emperor, ſucceeded him. The *Spaniſh* Writers make this *Inca* one of the principal *Peruvian* Law-givers, and have given us ſome of his moſt celebrated Sayings. *Inca Roca* was ſucceeded by his eldeſt Son *Yahncor Huacac*; in whoſe Reign there was a great Rebellion of the *Chanca's*, inſomuch that the *Inca* abandon'd the capital City, leaving it to be defended by his Son *Viracocha*, who gave the *Chanca's* a great Defeat. After this Victory, *Viracocha* became extremely popular; and it was agreed to depoſe the old *Inca*, and advance his Son to the Imperial Dignity; which the Son very readily accepted, and the Father was afterwards content to lead a private Life in one of his Palaces. This *Viracocha* is repreſented as one of their moſt victorious Princes, and ſaid to be worſhipped as a God. It is reported alſo, that the *Inca Viracocha* foretold, that, after the Succeſſion of a certain Number of Kings, a People ſhould arrive from far diſtant Countries cloth'd like Angels, who ſhould ſubvert their Religion and Empire: Which they held to be fulfill'd at the *Spaniſh* Conqueſt.

Fifth *Inca*. Sixth *Inca*. Seventh *Inca*. Eighth *Inca*.

The *Inca Viracocha* dying, was ſucceeded by his eldeſt Son *Pachacutec*, who is ſaid to have ſubdu'd many Nations by the Conduct of his Brother *Capac Yupanqui*; for this Emperor ſeldom took the Field in Perſon, but ſpent his Time in erecting magnificent Temples and Palaces, regulating his civil Government, planting Colonies, and making Improvements in ſeveral Parts of his Empire. *Yupanqui* his eldeſt Son ſucceeded him, and extended his Empire beyond the Mountains of the *Andes* two hundred Leagues and upwards. This *Inca* was unfortunate in an Expedition againſt the Nation of the *Chirihuana's*, which inhabited another Branch of the Mountains of *Andes*. But turning his Arms to the Southward, he reduced ſeveral Nations in the Country of *Chili*; inſomuch that in his Time the *Peruvian* Empire is ſaid to have been of a thouſand Leagues Extent from North to South. This Prince erected ſeveral ſtately Edifices, and among the reſt the celebrated Caſtle of *Cuſco*, already deſcribed. He left alſo between two and three hundred Children, more legitimate (whoſe Mothers were of the *Inca* Family) than illegitimate (who were born of other Women.) Moſt of the *Inca's* had as many Children, looking upon it as a Duty incumbent on them to increaſe the Blood Royal, and render them as numerous as poſſible: It being for the Honour of their God and Father the Sun to have a numerous Progeny, as they pretended. But the Privilege of a Plurality of Women, was never indulg'd to the Vulgar.

Ninth *Inca*. Tenth *Inca*.

Inca Tupac Yupanqui carried his Arms to the North, as far as the Equator, and ſubdued Part of the Kingdom of *Quito*, and having ſpent two Years in this War, ſent for his Son *Huana Capac*, to whom he committed the Care of finiſhing that Conqueſt, and return'd to *Cuſco*. *Tupac Yupanqui* dying, was ſucceeded by *Huana Capac*, who ſpent the firſt Year of his Reign in mourning and ſolemnizing his Father's Funeral, as their Laws required, and then viſited the ſeveral Provinces of his Empire. At a Feſtival, when his eldeſt Son was to receive his Name, he cauſed a Chain of Gold to be made of two hundred Yards in Length, and of the Thickneſs of a Man's Wriſt, which was carried by thoſe that danced at that Solemnity: For the Cuſtom was, for an hundred Men, and

Eleventh *Inca*. Twelfth *Inca*.

and ſometimes two hundred or more, to take Hands and dance in a Ring together; and inſtead of joining Hands the *Inca* ordered, that every one of the Company ſhould take a Link of this Chain in his Hands, and dance as uſual, with Muſick of all Kinds: The *Spaniards* arriving not many Years after, made ſtrict Enquiry after this invaluable Chain, but it was conceal'd from them by the *Mexicans*, which might be one Occaſion of the *Spaniards* uſing them ſo cruelly. But however that was, the young Prince receiv'd the Name of *Huaſcar*, or *The Chain*, from this rich Utenſil. *Huana Capac* proceeded to enlarge his Territories by his Arms, and conquer'd the famous Valleys of *Tumpez* and *Pachacamac*, with the Iſland of *Puna*, at the Mouth of the River *Guiaquil*. A Rebellion breaking out in the great Province of *Chachapayas*, he was ſo fortunate as to ſuppreſs it with very little Loſs: After which, he turn'd his Arms towards the Country of *Manta*, on the Sea Coaſt, in which lies that Port to which the *Spaniards* afterwards gave the Name of *Porto Veio*. From *Porto Veio*, the *Inca* advanced as far as Cape *Paſſao*, reducing all the Nations on that Coaſt to his Obedience; which was not very difficult, the Country being divided into ſmall Tribes, that had no common Chief or any Dependance on each other. Having conquer'd this Province of *Paſſao*, which lies under the Equator, he determin'd to make this the Limits of the Empire towards the North. He left Garriſons behind him therefore to preſerve his Conqueſts, and return'd to his Capital City of *Cuſco*.

Huana Capac, after the Completion of the Conqueſt of *Quitto*, having taken the Daughter of that King to his Bed, had by her a Son, whom he named *Atahualpa*, or *Atabilipa*; and is ſaid to have been fonder of him than of any of his Children: But as none of the Sons or Daughters of the *Inca's* were held legitimate, but thoſe who were born of their Siſters, or ſome near Relation, and *Huaſcar* was the eldeſt legitimate Son of this *Inca*, he appear'd much diſquieted that his beloved Son ſhould become a Vaſſal to his eldeſt Brother, and that he could not leave him the Dominion of any one Province: But his Son *Huaſcar*, being acquainted with the Reaſon of his Father's Uneaſineſs, generouſly conſented he ſhould ſettle what Part of his Territories he pleaſed upon his beloved Son. Whereupon *Huana Capac* conſtituted *Atahualpa* King of *Quitto* in his Life-time.

It was in the Reign of *Huana Capac*, that the *Spaniards* firſt appeared with their Ships upon the Coaſt of *Paſſao* in *Peru*, which is ſituated under the Equator. They were commanded by the celebrated *Vaſco Nunez de Balbao*, who firſt diſcover'd the *South-Sea*. Three Years before the *Spaniards* appeared on the Coaſt of *Peru*, 'tis ſaid a Prodigy happen'd, which alarm'd and aſtoniſh'd the Court and all the Empire: At their grand annual Feſtival of the Sun, a Royal Eagle, call'd in their Language *Inca*, appeared ſoaring in the Air, and purſued by Hawks of all Sizes, which attack'd the Royal Bird with that Fury, that he fell down among the *Inca's* as they march'd in Proceſſion to the Temple of the Sun, through the great Market-Place of *Cuſco*: That they nouriſh'd this Eagle with all the Tenderneſs imaginable; but notwithſtanding their Care, the Bird died in a few Days; which the *Inca*, his Prieſts and Diviners, interpreted to preſage the total Ruin of the Empire and of their Religion, eſpecially as it was followed by violent Earthquakes, that over-turned ſome of the neighbouring Mountains. Upon the Sea-Coaſt alſo, the *Indians* obſerved the Tides, in their Ebbings and Flowings, did not keep their uſual Courſe; and Comets and Apparitions were ſeen in the Air. The Moon, in the midſt of a bright Night, was obſerved to be encompaſs'd with three large Haloes or Circles, the firſt of the Colour of Blood, the ſecond black, and the third like a Fog or Smoak; which one of their Adepts in Magick obſerving, came weeping into the Preſence of the Emperor *Huana Capac*, and declared, that his Mother the Moon, like a tender Parent, by this *Phænomena* made known to him, that PACHA CAMAC threatened his Royal Family and Empire with grievous Judgments. And all the Magicians and Aſtrologers of his Court, confirmed the Interpretation their Brother had made of theſe Signs in the Heavens. *Huana Capac*, however, endeavoured ſtill to conceal his Fears, and told the Magicians, that unleſs PACHA CAMAC himſelf reveal'd this to him, he would not believe it; and then diſmiſs'd them from his Preſence. Reflecting, however, on what had been ſaid, and conſidering how it agreed with the Predictions of an antient Oracle; That after the Reign of twelve *Inca's*, the Empire ſhould be diſſolved; and being informed at the ſame Time, that a prodigious Wooden Float, with tall Maſts and Sails, from whence iſſued terrible Thunders, Fire, and Smoak, was ſeen upon the Coaſt; and that the People on Board differed in their Perſons and Habits from all that had hitherto appeared in that Part of the World, he was in a Manner confounded. However, he did not neglect the Defence of his People, but aſſembled an Army, and marched them to the Sea Coaſt; but the Ship diſappearing, and nothing of that kind being ſeen again in ſeveral Years, their Apprehenſions began to wear off. Every Thing remain'd quiet, and *Huana Capac* died in Peace, and a good old Age, having reigned forty Years in great Splendor. Their Fears, however, began to revive, when the Emperor, upon his Death-bed, put his Subjects in mind of the old Prophecy, already mention'd, which he conjectur'd would be fulfilled not many Years after his Death: And adviſed his Subjects to ſubmit and ſerve that People, who were in every Reſpect ſuperior to them; their Laws better; and their Forces and military Skill rendering them invincible.

We meet with the like Omens recorded by Hiſtorians, before every conſiderable Revolution almoſt that has happened in *Europe*, whether antient or modern, and therefore we leave every one to paſs what Judgment he pleaſes on them. *Huana Capac* being dead, *Huaſcar*, his eldeſt legitimate Son, reigned in Peace at *Cuſco* ſix four or five Years after his Father's Death, without giving his Brother, the King of *Quitto*, any Moleſtation; but then conſidering the Loſs he had ſuſtained by yielding up one of the richeſt Provinces of the Empire to *Atahualpa*, and reflecting alſo, that his Brother might one Day rival him in the reſt of his Territories, he determined to reſume what he had too eaſily parted from: He ſent an Ambaſſador therefore to his Brother, to inform him, that, by the Laws of the Empire, the Territories of the *Inca* could not be divided. However, ſince it was the Will of his Father, he was ready to confirm the Ceſſion upon two Conditions: 1. That he ſhould not endeavour to make any Addition to his Territories; and, 2. That he ſhould hold them as a Vaſſal and Feudatary of his Empire. To both which Demands, *Atahualpa* ſeemed readily to conſent, and promiſed in a ſhort Time to attend on him at *Cuſco*, to do him Homage in Perſon. With which Anſwer *Huaſcar* was entirely ſatisfied, and diſmiſſed the Troops he had raiſed to

recover

recover *Quitto* by Force; while the ſubtle *Atahualpa* increaſed his Forces, under Pretence of doing his Homage with the greater Splendor.

Huaſcar being informed, when it was too late, that his Brother had levied an Army of 30,000 regular Troops, which were advanced within forty Leagues of *Cuſco*, found he had been deceived, and immediately iſſued his Orders to the Governors of the ſeveral Provinces, to rendezvous with their reſpective Forces at *Cuſco*, and form an Army for the Defence of that Capital. But *Atahualpa* had corrupted ſeveral of the Caraca's, who join'd his Forces in their March; and the reſt that obey'd the Summons of *Huaſcar* being new undiſciplin'd Troops, were not much to be depended on. However, being attacked by *Atahualpa*'s Army, they behaved in Defence of their *Inca* as bravely as could be expected, and the Battle laſted a whole Day. The Emperor's Guards, conſiſting of a thouſand Men, defended their Prince till they were almoſt all cut in Pieces; and at Length *Huaſcar* was taken Priſoner, and carried in Triumph to his Brother, who did not march with his Army in Perſon, but continued at a Diſtance, till he ſaw what Succeſs his Generals would have.

Huaſcar being thus unhappily made Priſoner, *Atahualpa* gave out, that he had no Intention to depoſe his Brother, but to defend his own Dominions, and to limit *Huaſcar*'s Prerogative, ſo as to make the Condition of his Subjects eaſy and happy: And thereupon ſummoned all the *Inca's* of the Empire to appear at *Cuſco*, that all things might be ſettled to the mutual Advantage of Prince and People. And having, on ſuch Pretences, got moſt of them into his Power, he cauſed a Body of his Forces to ſurround them and cut them in Pieces. Nor did his Rage ſtop here; he murdered all the Caraca's and Officers that appeared faithful to *Huaſcar*; and afterwards the Women and Children of the Family of the *Inca's*, whom he put to Death by various Tortures. However, between five and ſix hundred of the Blood of the *Inca's* did eſcape, by one Means or other.

Farther Enquiry into the Religion of the Incas.

It is generally ſaid, that the *Inca's* of *Peru* acknowledged no other God but the Sun, whoſe Offspring they pretended to be: And this poſſibly may be true of the firſt *Inca's*; but ſome of them afterwards invading that Part of the Country where *Lima* ſtands, and meeting with a notable Oppoſition, they were obliged to indulge that People in the Profeſſion of their antient Religion, and the Worſhip of the Almighty Inviſible God, and to promiſe not to demoliſh their Temple, before they would ſubmit to their Dominion. This Temple ſtood in a fine Valley, a little Diſtance from *Lima*, and was dedicated to PACHA CAMAC, the inviſible or unknown God, who created and ſuſtains all Things, and was ſtanding when the *Spaniards* arrived in *Peru*; and here they found an inconceiveable Treaſure, that had been dedicated to the God PACHA CAMAC, whoſe Name was communicated to the Valley wherein the Temple ſtood, which is ſtill called *The Valley of Pacha Camac*.

The Temple of Pacha Camac.

The *Inca's* did not only permit this People ſtill to adore their God PACHA CAMAC, but ſeem to have been convinced, from the Time of this Conqueſt, that there was one Almighty Inviſible Being, that created Heaven and Earth; and that the Sun was his Vice roy or Lieutenant. Others made two Gods of them; the one viſible, and the other inviſible. And ſome of the *Inca's*, particularly *Huana Capac*, looked upon the Sun as a mere Creature, directed and governed in all his Motions by the Supreme God. From whence it is natural to infer, that the *Inca's*, notwithſtanding the Reformation they pretended to have effected in the Provinces they conquered, did in ſome Parts of their Conqueſts introduce their own Idolatry, in the Room of the Worſhip of the one only God, or, at leaſt, obliged the People to worſhip the Sun as well as God, and conſequently adulterated rather than reformed their Religion. And 'tis very poſſible, that many of the People they ſubdued might equal, if not ſurpaſs them, in the Innocence and Regularity of their Lives, as well as in the Purity of their Religion.

The principal Feſtivals of the Inca's.

The *Inca's* had four grand Feſtivals annually, beſides thoſe they celebrated every Moon. The firſt of their great Feaſts, called *Raymi*, was held immediately after the Summer Solſtice, which they did not only keep in Honour of the Sun, but in Commemoration of their firſt *Inca*, and his Wife and Siſter. At this Feſtival all the Vice-roys, Generals, Governors, Caraca's, and Nobility, were aſſembled at the Capital City of *Cuſco*. The Emperor officiated at this Feſtival as High-prieſt. The Nobility, at this time, were crown'd with Garlands or Coronets of Gold, adorned with Flowers and beautiful Feathers, and their Garments were in a Manner plated with Gold. The Governors of Provinces carried the Enſigns and Colours of their ſeveral Countries, and marched at the Head of their reſpective People. They faſted three Days, as a Preparative to this Feaſt, eating nothing but unbaked Maiz and Herbs, and drinking Water. The Faſt being ended, on the Eve of the Feaſt, the Prieſts prepared the Offerings, while the Virgins were employed in kneading Dough, and making Bread for the *Inca's*.

The Ceremony of adoring the Riſing Sun.

The Morning being come, the *Inca*, accompany'd by his near Relations, went in Proceſſion at Break of Day to the Market-place bare-footed, where they remained in Expectation of the Riſing Sun, which no ſooner appeared but they fell down and adored the glorious Planet, acknowledging him to be their God and Father. The Caraca's, vaſſal Princes, and Nobility, aſſembled ſeparately in another Square, and perform'd the like Ceremony. After which, the King riſing upon his Feet (while the reſt remain'd in a Poſture of Devotion) took two great Gold Cups in his Hands, fill'd with their common Beverage, and invited all his Relations to partake with him, and pledge him in that Liquor. Then he poured the Drink out of the Bowl in his Right-hand into a ſmall Stone Channel, which convey'd it to the Temple: After which, having drank of the Bowl in his Left-hand, he diſtributed the Remainder to his Kindred *Inca's*, who waited with little Gold and Silver Cups to receive the Liquor. The Caraca's and Nobility drank of another Cup of the ſame kind of Liquor, prepared by the Wives of the Sun.

Sacrifices.

This Ceremony being ended, the whole Company advanced bare-foot to the Gate of the Temple, and the *Inca* and his Relations entering the Doors, adored the Image of the Sun, while the Caraca's worſhipped in the great Court before the Gate of the Temple. The *Inca* now offered the Vaſes with which he performed the Ceremony of Drinking, and the reſt of the Royal Family delivered theirs into the Hands of the Prieſts. Then the Prieſts went out into the Court, and received from the Caraca's their Offerings.

Theſe Offerings being made, great Droves of Sheep and Lambs were brought; out of which the Prieſts choſe a black Lamb, and having kill'd and open'd it, made their Prognoſticks and Divinations thereupon relating to Peace and War,

and other Events, from the Intrails of the Beast; always turning the Head of the Animal towards the East, when they killed it. After the first Lamb, the rest of the Cattle provided were sacrificed, and their Hearts offered to the Sun. Their Carcasses were flea'd and burnt, with Fire lighted by the Sun's Rays. Some of this Fire was carried to the Temple of the Sun, and to the Cloister of the Select Virgins, to be preserv'd till the following Year.

The Sacrifices being over, they returned to the Market-place, where the rest of the Cattle and Provisions were dress'd and eaten by the Guests; and after they had done eating, great Quantities of Liquor were brought in. Then the Emperor, being seated on a Golden Throne, ordered his Relations the *Inca's* to drink in his Name with the most celebrated Generals, Governors, and Nobility of the respective Provinces. The *Inca's* thereupon carried Bowls of Liquor to the Persons thus distinguished, telling them the supreme *Inca*, invited them to drink with him, and they were come to drink with them in his Name; whereupon the Generals, each of them taking a Cup, lifted up their Eyes to the Sun, and having drank, returned the Bowl back to the *Inca's*, with the profoundest Adoration. Bowls of Liquor also were carried by the *Inca's* to the rest of the Lords, but to these they drank in their own Names, and not in the Name of the Emperor. In return of this Compliment, the principal Lords filling their own Bowls, approached the Throne with the greatest Reverence, and in their Order drank to the Emperor, who received it of them, and it was reckoned a peculiar Mark of Respect where the Emperor pledg'd any one of them heartily. The rest of the Caraca's and Noblemen drank to the Royal Family of the *Inca's*, who first drank to them in their own Names; and then retiring to their respective Stations, the Musick play'd; and their Dances, Masquerades, and all other Diversions, were practised, which were in use among the several Nations of *Peru*. This Festival was continued in the same Manner nine Days successively, only there were no Offerings or Sacrifices after the first.

Second Festival. A second Festival was kept every Year on the conferring Military Honours, great Regard being had to those who behaved well in their Country's Service.

Third Festival. Their third Festival was in the Spring, when their Corn first appeared, on which Occasion Sheep and Lambs were sacrificed.

Fourth Festival. The fourth was celebrated on the New Moon, after the Equinox in *September*, when they ador'd the Sun as it rose, as at their grand Festival, and pray'd him to avert all Calamities.

Monthly Feasts. Their monthly Feasts were celebrated by the Priests within the Temple, at which times Sacrifices of Sheep, Lambs, Fowls, and other Animals, were made to the Sun, but no publick Processions.

The Posture of Adoration. We should have observed, that the People fell down on their Knees and Elbows when they adored the Sun, covering their Faces with their Hands; and that the *Peruvians* expressed their Veneration for the Temple, and other holy Places, by putting off their Shoes, as the *Chinese*, the People of the *East-Indies*, and other *Asiaticks* do, and not by uncovering their Heads, as the *Europeans* do at Divine Service.

Their Notions of a future State. The *Peruvians*, it is evident, believed the Soul survived the Body: But when the *Spanish* Missionaries add, that they believed a Resurrection of the very same Bodies, we doubt they impose upon us; for the Resurrection of the same Body, is surely a Doctrine peculiar to Christians. What View the *Spanish* Missionaries had in suggesting, that there was not a Doctrine, Rite, or Ceremony, practised by the *Romish* Church, but were found among the *Peruvians*, is not easy to conceive.

Oracles. We must not dismiss the Head of Religion, without taking some Notice of the *Peruvian* Oracles, and particularly the Oracle of *Rimac*, now *Lima*. The Valley of *Rimac* lies four Leagues to the Northward of *Pacha Camac*, and received its Name from a certain Figure of a Man, that answered Questions like the Oracle of *Apollo* at *Delphos*. This Idol was seated in a magnificent Temple, to which the great Lords of *Peru* either went in Person, or enquired by their Ambassadors, of all the Important Affairs relating to their Provinces. And the *Inca's* themselves held this Image in high Veneration, and consulted it after they conquered that Part of the Country.

Rimac.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Invasion and Conquest of Peru *by the* Spaniards.

The Conquest of *Peru*. VASCO *Nunez de Balboa*, being recalled and put to Death by *Pedrarias*, Governor of *Terra-Firma*; *Pedrarias* afterwards employ'd several Pilots and Adventurers to plant Colonies in *Peru*: But so extremely difficult was that coasting Voyage, before they were acquainted with the Winds and Currents, that all the People he employ'd were discouraged from prosecuting the Discovery of that Country. Whereupon *Pedrarias* desisted from that Enterprize, despairing to overcome the Difficulties that had been represented to him. However, three bold Adventurers, *Pizarro*, *Almagro*, and *De Luque*, who then resided in his new Town of *Panama*, desired his Leave to attempt the further Discovery of *Peru* at their own Charges, which he readily granted, being of Opinion it would come to nothing.

The three principal Adventurers assemble Council.

Some Account of *Peru*. *Francis Pizarro*, who makes the greatest Figure in this Triumvirate, was a Native of *Truxillo* in *Spain*, of a noble Family. He served first in the Wars in the Islands of *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*, and afterwards accompany'd *Alonzo de Ojeda*, to the Gulph of *Darien*, to settle a *Spanish* Colony there. *Ojeda*, returning to *Hispaniola* for Recruits, left *Francis Pizarro* his Lieutenant in *Darien*, which very much raised the Reputation of this Captain. He afterwards attended *Vasco Nunez*, when he discovered the *South-Sea*; served under *Pedrarias* when he fixed a Colony at *Panama*; and was employed by that General in the subduing the Province of *Veragua*; in which Expeditions he acquired the Reputation of a good Officer, and a Fortune sufficient to have satisfied any reasonable Man; but when he might have spent the Remainder of his Days in Ease and Plenty,

Plenty, he chose, in the Decline of Life, being upwards of fifty, to enter upon the Discovery of unknown Regions.

Some Account of *Almagro*.

Diego de Almagro, was born at *Almagro* in *Spain*, of a mean Original, but of a Genius equally enterprizing as the former, and who, in several Expeditions in the *West-Indies*, had amass'd a great deal of Wealth. These two residing at *Panama*,

Of *De Luque*.

associated themselves with *Ferdinand de Luque*, an Ecclesiastick of that Town, richer than either of them, and who was Proprietor of the Island of *Tabago*, in that Bay. This Gentleman had been acquainted with *Vasco Nunez* as well as the other two, and was pretty well assured that the Voyage would answer their Expectations, if they could overcome those Difficulties of contrary Winds and Currents, that had discouraged others. These three Gentlemen entered into Articles, never to abandon each other for any Hazards they might meet with in the Enterprize, till they had made a Conquest of *Peru*: And solemnly took their Oaths in publick, for the Confirmation of these Articles.

The Contract of the Adventurers.

Francis Pizarro was to command the first Party that went upon the Discovery; *Almagro* was to carry him Recruits from time to time, and *Ferdinand de Luque* was to remain at *Panama*, and lay-in Provisions to support the Enterprize. And whatever Effects should be acquired, after the Charges, and the Emperor's Fifth were paid, were to be divided equally amongst them.

Pizarro sails to *Peru*.

The three Partners having bought a Ship, victualled and equipped her, *Pizarro* embarked about the Middle of *November* 1525, with fourscore Men and four Horses, and setting Sail from *Panama*, sailed to Port *Pinas*, on the South-East Side of the Bay of *Panama*. Here *Pizarro* endeavoured to penetrate into the Country; but meeting with nothing but Bogs, or Mountains, over-run with Wood and Deluges of Rain, and the People having fled from their Habitations, so that no Provisions were to be had; he ran further down to the Southward, and then landing again, found the Country no better. Whereupon he sent the Ship to the Isles of *Pearls* for Provisions, and in the mean Time was followed by *Almagro* with two other Ships, and a Recruit of sixty Men and upwards. These two Captains meeting upon this wretched Coast, and landing their united Forces, had some Skirmishes with the Natives, in which *Almagro* lost an Eye; but happening to meet with a Parcel of Gold of the Value of 14 or 15000 Crowns, they resolved to persist in the Enterprize; in which they were the more encouraged by the Pilot *De Ruyes*, who, while *Pizarro* remained on Shore, ran down as far as Cape *Passao*, and making some Prisoners, was assured by them, that the Treasures of *Peru* were much beyond any Thing that had hitherto been reported of them. Whereupon he returned to *Pizarro* with the agreeable News. In the mean Time, *Almagro* returned to *Panama* with the Gold they had got, to procure another Re-inforcement, and found *Pedrarias* removed from his Government, and succeeded by *Peter de los Rios*, who permitted him to raise what Men he could. Whereupon he embarked again with forty Soldiers more, some Horses, Provisions, and Medicines, and returned to *Pizarro*, whom he found in a very miserable Condition, great Part of his Men being sick or dead. They removed therefore from that unhealthful Part of the Continent, and put on Shore in the Island of *Gallo*, where they remained fifteen Days, and then run along the Coast further to the Southward; however, they still met with such a drowned Country, and bad Weather, that even *Pizarro*'s Heart failed him, and the two Commanders were upon the Point of drawing their Swords, so hot was the Contest for and against proceeding in the Enterprize; but at length it was agreed, that they should go to the Island of *Gallo* again, where *Pizarro* should remain till *Almagro* went to *Panama* for Recruits: And great Care was taken, that none of the Men should write home, and discover their wretched Condition. But notwithstanding all the Care their Commanders took, one of them found Means to send a Paper, subscribed by most of the Men, desiring to be recalled, which was inclosed in a Bottom of Cotton Yarn, and thereby concealed from the Notice of their Officers. This Paper coming to the Hands of the Governor of *Panama*, he was so far from suffering *Almagro* to levy any more Recruits, that he sent a Ship, with a Commissary on Board, to the Island of *Gallo*, on purpose to bring back all the Men that survived. The Commissary arriving, *Pizarro* begged of him, that he would however suffer as many of the Men to remain with him as were willing to proceed in the Enterprize; which the Commissary consenting to, *Pizarro* drew a Line with the Point of his Sword, and haranguing his Men, told them they were at Liberty to return to *Panama*, if they thought fit; but it grieved him that they should now abandon the Enterprize, when they were upon the Point of reaping the Reward of all their Sufferings. But such were the Sufferings of these poor Wretches, that only thirteen Men and a *Mulatto* came over the Line; the rest embarked and returned to *Panama* with the Commissary.

The Commanders fall out

Pizarro deserted by all his Men, but thirteen and a Slave.

Pizarro, being thus left, removed to the neighbouring Islands of *Gorgona*, for the Benefit of fresh Water, and remained there till *Almagro* and *Ruyes* came to him with Refreshments, and some few Volunteers; on whose Arrival it was agreed to sail Southward; and having pass'd the Equator, they came to an Anchor in 3 Degrees South Latitude, and going on Shore in the Island of *St. Clara*, they found several Vessels and Utensils of Silver Plate, with Garments made of Cotton and fine Wooll, which were Offerings made to some Idols in this Island, where the Natives of *Puna* came at certain Seasons to worship them; but there were no constant Inhabitants on the Island. They spent two whole Years in this Voyage from the Island of *Gorgona*, in 3 Degrees of North Latitude, to the Bay of *Guiaquil* in 3 Degrees of Southern Latitude; a Voyage that may be performed in less than a Month, now we are acquainted with the Currents, Winds, and Seasons, upon the Coasts of *Popayan* and *Peru*.

While *Pizarro* and *Almagro* lay in the Bay of *Guiaquil*, they took several great Floats, with armed *Indians* on Board, that were going from *Tumbez*, to invade the Island of *Puna*, with which they were at War. From these *Indians* they learn'd, that there was a great Town and Castle at *Tumbez*, a magnificent Temple, a Convent of Select Virgins, and abundance of Gold and Silver Vessels, and that the Country abounded with Corn and Fruits. Whereupon *Pizarro* treated the *Indians* with great Civility, and gave them their Liberty to return to the Continent with their Floats; and let them know, that they came as Friends, and did not design any manner of Hurt or Damage to the Natives. These *Indians* acquainting their Lord, the Cacique of *Tumbez*, with the Wonders they had seen, and informing him, that the *Spaniards* came to visit that Coast in a friendly Manner, the Cacique sent a Noble-man, or Orejon, on Board, with several Barks loaden with Provisions; and to invite the *Spaniards* to come on Shore. Whereupon one of the Sailors

Tumbez Town and Province.

They are hospitably received by the Peruvians.

was

was sent on Shore with the *Indians*, and brought twenty Butts of Water on Board with their Floats: The Orejon enquired of *Pizarro* in the mean time, what it was he went in search of? *Pizarro* answered, They came from the most potent King of *Spain*, to require them to submit to his Dominion, and be instructed in the true Religion; at which Answer, the *Peruvian* appeared a little astonished. However, *Pizarro* sent one of his Company on Shore with the *Peruvian* Nobleman, and a present of *European* Animals, an Ax, and some glittering Trifles, with which the Cacique was extremely pleased: And as the *Indians* were surprized to see so strange a People, and such Animals and Instruments as they brought with them, the *Spaniards* were no less surprized to find a fine Palace, and a magnificent Temple, and all manner of Vessels and Utensils form'd of Gold or Silver; and when the Man returned on Board, he seemed unable to declare the vast Treasures he had seen, and the Strength and Beauty of the Castle where the Cacique resided.

Peter de Candia goes on Shore alone, and takes a View of Tumbez.

Pizarro, desirous to be better acquainted with the Truth of what the Sailor related, *Peter de Candia*, a Man of good Judgment, offered to go on Shore, and take a particular View of the Place: And as he was of a Stature beyond the common Size, it was thought his Person would be the more admired: And to add to the Astonishment of the Natives, *Pizarro* made him put on a complete Suit of shining Armour, a Shield on his Left-arm, a broad Sword by his Side, and take a Fuzee in his Hands. The *Indians* were amazed to see a Man so tall, and of proportionable Bulk, his Body covered with glittering Steel, and a long Beard on his Chin, and immediately fled from the Shore to the Castle on his landing. *Peter* thereupon advanced towards the Gates, and giving them to understand that he had no hostile Intentions, was conducted to the Presence of the Cacique, and received with great Civility. The Cacique shew'd him the *Inca's* Palace, the Temple of the Sun, and the House of consecrated Virgins; and afterwards sent him on Board with a handsome Present of *Indian* Corn, Sheep, and Fruits. *Peter de Candia*, at his Return, related that every thing exceeded what the Sailor had reported; at which the *Spaniards* were transported with Joy; but not being prepared to make themselves Masters of these Treasures at this time, *Pizarro* run further down to the Latitude of 7 Degrees South, and discovered a pleasant fruitful Country; but then at the Importunity of his Men he returned back to *Panama*, in order to make Preparations for the entire Conquest of *Peru*.

Pizarro returns to Panama for more Forces.

Pizarro having succeeded at last, and brought from thence Specimens of the Wealth that abounded in *Peru*, the People were very ready to list in his Service; but the Governor of *Panama* opposed it. Whereupon the three principal Adventurers came to a Resolution, that *Pizarro* should go over to *Spain*, and procure an Authority and Recruits equal to so great an Undertaking. *Pizarro* accordingly set sail, and arriving in *Spain*, met with a very gracious Reception, on his presenting his Imperial Majesty with some *Peruvians* in their proper Habits, two or three *Peruvian* Sheep, and several Gold and Silver Vessels and Utensils of the Fashion of that Country. The Emperor recommended the Overtures he made to the Council of the *Indies*, who, having made their Report, *Pizarro* was authorized to proceed in the Conquest of *Peru*. He procured also the Title of Governor and Captain-General to be conferred on him for Life, with the Offices of Lord-Lieutenant, and Chief Justice.

Pizarro goes to Spain for a Commission and Recruits.

He was also empowered to erect four Castles in *Peru* where he thought proper, and retain the Government of them to him and his Posterity: He obtained for *Ferdinando de Lugne*, that he should be made Bishop of *Tumbez*; and constituted Protector-General of the *Peruvians*. *Almagro* was constituted Governor of *Tumbez*; and a twentieth Part of all the Revenues of the Country, when conquered, were to go to *Pizarro* and *Almagro*, two Thirds thereof to the former, and one Third to the latter; and *Almagro* was made a Gentleman, and his Bastard Son legitimate: The thirteen Men that remained with *Pizarro* in his Distress, on the Island of *Gallo*, were made Gentlemen, if they were not so before; and those that were Gentlemen then, were ordered to be knighted. Six *Dominican* Friars were also ordered to go over with *Pizarro*, as Missionaries to assist in the Conversion of the *Peruvians*.

Pizarro, repairing to his native Town of *Truxillo*, spent some Months in raising Men, and making Provisions for his Voyage, which having effected, he embarked at *Seville* with his four Brothers, *Ferdinand*, *John*, *Gonzalo*, and *Francis*, and arrived at *Nombre de Dios*, from whence he marched with his People to the City of *Panama*; but his ingrossing all the Honours to himself so disgusted *Almagro*, that he refused to assist in the intended Expedition, till *Pizarro* promised to relinquish the Title of Adelantado, and to give him an equal Share in whatever they should acquire: And upon these Concessions *Almagro* promised to assist him as formerly, and smothered his Resentment for the present, that the Service might not suffer.

Pizarro embarks again for Peru, in the Year 1531.

At length *Pizarro* embarked at *Panama* in three Ships, taking with him one hundred and eighty five Soldiers, thirty seven Horses, and such Quantities of Arms, Ammunition, and Stores, as might enable him to fix Colonies on the *Peruvian* Coast; but meeting with like contrary Winds he had done in the first Voyage, he was obliged to land above an hundred Leagues to the Northward of *Tumbez*: And now thinking himself strong enough to drive the naked *Indians* before him, he fell upon them, plundered their Towns, and made many of them Prisoners, without any manner of Provocation. But was afterwards so distressed, that his Forces were exceedingly diminished, and he perceived his Error, in not courting the Natives, being in no Condition to make a Conquest of *Peru* with the Forces he had left. He took most of the Treasures therefore he had plundered the *Indians* of, and sent his Ships with it to *Panama* to raise more Recruits, inviting at the same time some Adventurers from *Nicaragua*, and other Parts of *North-America*, to come and join him. And having, with infinite Labour, marched as far as *Tumbez*, he very fortunately found the *Peruvians* engaged in a Civil War, one Part of them adhering to their lawful Prince *Huascar*, and the other to *Atabalipa*, the Bastard Son of the preceding Emperor *Huana Capac*, as has been already related. In this War, the Inhabitants of the Vale of *Tumbez* adhered to their lawful Prince *Huascar*; and those of the Isle of *Puna*, took Part with the Bastard *Atabalipa*, as their Interest led them. *Pizarro*, finding himself not able, at this time, to attempt the Conquest of the whole Empire, took Part with the *Tumbezenes*, and joining their Forces, invaded the Island of *Puna*, which became an easy Conquest; and having taken all the Caciques of the Island Prisoners, he delivered them into the Hands of the *Tumbez* Generals, who immediately cut off their Heads. In the mean time, *Almagro* having sent *Pizarro* a considerable Re-

Finds Peru in a Civil War.

Pizarro joins the Party of the Bastard Atabalipa.

inforcement

forcement from *Panama*, and *Ferdinando de Soto* and other Adventurers arriving from *Nicaragua*, he thought himſelf in a Condition to carry on the War upon the Continent. Accordingly, having provided a ſufficient Number of Floats, he tranſported the Troops to *Tumbez*, where ſome of his People were attacked and cut off by the Natives; which was a Surprize to him, as he took them to be his Friends. The *Spaniſh* Writers give various Reaſons for this Alteration in the Conduct of the Natives of *Tumbez*. But whatever was the true Reaſon, it is evident, that they were put in ſuch Confuſion by the *Spaniſh* Horſe and Artillery, that they fled as the *Spaniards* advanced, and after the Slaughter of ſome Thouſands of them, were forced to abandon the Town and Caſtle, and even the whole Valley of *Tumbez*, leaving behind them all the Gold and Silver Plate, Emeralds, Pearls, and other rich Spoils, which lay heaped up in the Temple of the Sun, and the *Inca's* Palace; being ſo vaſt a Treaſure, that the *Spaniards* could ſcarce believe their Eyes, when they found themſelves ſo ſuddenly poſſeſſed of it: And ſuch was the Conſternation of *Atabilipa*, and his whole Court, when the Fugitives related what Slaughter the Thunderer's Ordnance made among them, and how impoſſible it was to eſcape the *Spaniſh* Horſes, that they concluded, if the *Spaniards* were not Gods, they were certainly Devils, and that it was not poſſible for any human Force to defend their Country againſt them. Of which *Pizarro* receiving Intelligence, reſolved to take Advantage of the Terror they were in, and march immediately to find out *Atabilipa*, whilſt he remained under that Deluſion; but he found it neceſſary to defer his March, till he had erected a ſlight Fortreſs on the Sea Coaſt, to which he gave the Name of *St. Michael's*. This was the firſt *Spaniſh* Colony planted in *Peru*, and here the firſt *Chriſtian* Church was erected in the Year 1531.

Pizarro reſolves to go to *Tumbez*, and poſſeſſes himſelf of a great Treaſure.

St. Michael's the firſt *Spaniſh* Colony and Church in *Peru*.

Pizarro, whoſe Buſineſs it was to prevent the *Peruvians* uniting againſt him, gave out that he was come in the Name of the great King of *Spain* to relieve the Oppreſſed, and do juſtice to thoſe that were injured; which he ſoon found had the Effect he expected; for the Emperor *Huaſcar*, having been depoſed and impriſoned by *Atabilipa*, his Friends immediately ſent an Embaſſy to *Pizarro*, that he would aſſiſt them in delivering their Prince from his Captivity; to whom the *Spaniſh* General returned a favourable Anſwer. And *Atabilipa*, who was yet ſcarce ſettled in the Throne, apprehending he ſhould ſoon be driven from it again, if the *Spaniards* joined with the Loyal Party, endeavoured by all poſſible Ways to gain the Favour of *Pizarro*. The *Spaniſh* Generals, finding they were like to meet with little Oppoſition from either Side, concluded they ſhould now ſoon be Maſters of thoſe immenſe Treaſures they underſtood were heaped up in the City of *Cuſco*, and of the Gold and Silver Mines from whence they were drawn. They began their March therefore to *Caxamalca*, where they underſtood the *Inca* then was, and carrying with them a Train of Artillery, which was drawn by the *Indians* preſs'd into their Service, advanced by ſlow Marches, ſending out Parties to diſcover the Country as they went along.

Pizarro marches to *Caxamalca*.

The Conſternation increaſing among the *Peruvians*, and the *Spaniards* approaching *Caxamalca*, *Atabilipa* apprehended there was no Safety for him but in his Submiſſion; and therefore ſent a ſolemn Embaſſy to *Pizarro*, by his Brother *Atahalipa*; together with rich Preſents of Gold and Silver Plate, and whatever his Country afforded. *Atahalipa* being admitted to the Preſence of *Pizarro*, told him, he was ſent by the *Inca Atabilipa*, to welcome him, and the reſt of the Sons of their common God and Father, the Sun; deſiring he would accept the ſmall Preſent he brought with him for the Refreſhment of his Troops in their March; telling him, that the *Inca* was impatient to ſee his Kindred, whom he underſtood to be of the like heavenly Extraction, and to whom he promiſed all Obedience. The Subſtance of *Pizarro's* Anſwer was, that the *Spaniards* were authorized by their High-Prieſt, the Pope, to convert the *Peruvians* to the *Chriſtian* Religion; and that the great Emperor of the *Chriſtians*, *Charles* V. had empowered them to enter into a League of Friendſhip with the *Inca*, if theſe Overtures were accepted.

The *Peruvian* Ambaſſador being diſmiſſed, *Pizarro* diſpatched his Brother *Hernando Pizarro*, and *Hernando de Soto*, attended by about thirty Horſe, and *Philip* the Interpreter, as Ambaſſadors to the *Inca Atabilipa*, who was then in the Neighbourhood of *Caxamalca*. The *Inca* being informed of their Approach, ordered a Detachment of his Army to advance, and conduct them to his Preſence. This Body of *Peruvians* attended the Ambaſſadors to the Palace; where they were conducted to the *Inca*, whom they found ſitting on a Chair of Gold, in the Midſt of his Officers and Courtiers. The Emperor aroſe from his Seat to receive them, and Golden Chairs were brought for the Ambaſſadors. After they were ſeated, the *Inca*, looking ſtedfaſtly on them, ſaid to his Courtiers, Behold the very Countenance, and Habit, of our God *Viracoche*, in the ſame Manner as our Anceſtor the *Inca Viracoche* deſcribed him in his Viſion. Immediately two Royal Virgins brought in each of them two golden Cups, filled with the Liquor uſually drank by the *Inca*, and bowing, delivered one of the Cups into the Hand of *Atabilipa*, and another to *Hernando Pizarro*. Whereupon the *Inca* and *Hernando* drank, and gave away their Cups. Then the other Virgin delivered one of her Cups into the Hands of the *Inca*, and the other to *Hernando Soto*, who had the Honour alſo to drink in like Manner with the Emperor. Then ſix Boys and as many Girls brought in green and dry Fruits; and one of the Virgins, addreſſing herſelf to the Ambaſſadors, ſaid, Ye Sons of *Capac Inca Viracoche*, take of theſe Things we offer, and it will extremely oblige us: Whereupon the *Spaniards* taſting of their Fruits, were amazed to find ſo much Civility and Politeneſs among a People they had been taught to look upon as barbarous.

The Collation being over, *Hernando de Soto* made a Speech to the Emperor; to which Speech the *Inca* returned an Anſwer; neither of which we ſhall inſert, becauſe it is unlikely the Copies preſerved of them ſhould be entirely genuine. The Ambaſſadors were afterwards diſmiſſed with large Preſents of Gold and Silver Plate; the *Inca* telling them, he would ſpeedily go to *Caxamalca*, and viſit the Sons of his God VIRACOCHE, and Meſſengers of the PACHA CAMAC. And accordingly, the next Morning, the *Inca* began his March towards the *Chriſtians*. Of which *Pizarro* having Notice, made Preparations to receive him; but far different from what the *Inca* expected: For he choſe out a large Square in *Caxamalca* for this Interview, ſurrounded by a Wall, in which there were but two Gates, and ordered his Horſe to divide themſelves, and draw up in three Squadrons behind ſome ruinous Buildings out of View. Then he planted his Artillery, ſo as it might do the greateſt Execution: And on an Eminence in the Middle of the Square he ſtood, at the Head of his Infantry, where he

Atabilipa marches to meet the *Chriſtians*.

propoſed to meet the *Inca*; commanding his Men, that as ſoon as ſeven or eight Thouſand of the *Inca's* Forces were entered the Square, they ſhould ſhut the Gates, and ſuffer no more to come in; and that they ſhould all be ready to fall on when he gave the Signal.

The *Inca* ſeem'd to have ſome Suſpicion of the Miſchief that was intended him, and halted a League before he came to *Caxamalca*, ordering his Generals to encamp there. Whereupon *Pizarro* ſent ſeveral Meſſengers, to deſire him to haſten his March: And the *Inca*, yielding to his preſſing Invitations, march'd forward, and entering the Gates of the Square, put himſelf into the Power of his treacherous Enemies. As the *Inca* was advancing to the Eminence where the *Spaniſh* Foot was drawn up, *Pizarro* ſent Father *Vincent Valverde* to meet him, and ſummon him to ſubmit himſelf and his Dominions to the Pope and the Emperor: Whereupon that Father went up to the Chair or Couch on which the *Inca* was carried, with a Croſs in one Hand, and a Breviary in the other, and made a long Speech; In which, it is ſaid, he gave an Account of the Trinity, the Creation, the Fall of Man, his Redemption, the Virginity of *Mary*, the Authority of the Pope, the Power and Magnificence of the Emperor *Charles*, and his Commiſſion to convert the *Peruvians* to *Chriſtianity*; requiring the *Inca* to renounce his own Religion, and ſubmit to the *Chriſtian*, and to the Authority of the Pope and the Emperor.

The *Spaniſh* Writers ſeem to diſapprove this Speech of the Friar's, as too imperious and aſſuming. They lament alſo that it was ill interpreted by *Philip* the *Peruvian*, who had no Notion himſelf of the *Chriſtian* Religion: Inſomuch, that when he came to ſpeak of the Trinity, as *that God was three, and yet one*, he ſaid, *God was three and one, that was four.* And when he came to mention the Generation of Mankind, and Original Sin by *Adam's* Fall, inſtead of ſaying, *That all the World ſinned in* Adam, he ſaid, *All the World heaped their Sins upon* Adam. Speaking of the Divinity of Chriſt, he ſaid he was a great Perſon, who died for Mankind; nor could he find Words to expreſs the Purity of the bleſſed Virgin. Speaking of the Power of the Emperor, and his ſending his Forces to conquer the World, he expreſs'd it ſo as if he had been Superior to all the Powers in Heaven and in Earth.

The Emperor apprehending, by the Concluſion of the Friar's Speech, that he was, by fair Means or Force, to renounce his Sovereignty, and become a tributary Prince by the Commands of the Pope and the Emperor, was extremely dejected, believing that the *Spaniards*, as God's Inſtruments, were come to take Vengeance on him and his People; and fetching a deep Sigh, repeated the Word *Altar*, which is as much as if he ſaid, *Moſt unhappy Man!* However, recollecting himſelf, he gave an Anſwer to Father *Vincent's* Speech; intimating, That he did not ſufficiently underſtand their Interpreter, but by what he could apprehend, their Demands were unreaſonable: That he imagined the great God they ſpoke of, was the ſame that the *Peruvians* called *Pacha Camac*: That he wondered at their requiring him to pay tribute to the Emperor only, ſince if it was due to any Body, it muſt, according to what they had ſaid, be to the Pope: Concluding, That he deſired to be informed, whether the Five which they highly honoured, (meaning the Trinity, the Pope, and the Emperor) were adored by them for Gods: "For if it be ſo, (ſaid he) you hold "more for Gods than we, who acknowledge no "other than PACHA CAMAC, who is the Supreme, and the Sun, who is inferior to him, "and the Moon, who is his Siſter and Wife."

The Speech ill interpreted

But after all, it is plain that theſe Speeches and Summons's of the *Spaniards* to the *Indians* to change their Religion, were but mere Grimace. *Pizarro's* Eyes were altogether fixed upon the Plunder, and he was prepared to cut the *Peruvians* in Pieces, before he knew what Anſwer would be given the Miſſionaries. This was manifeſt from the Event; for the *Spaniards*, weary of this long Diſcourſe, began to attack the *Indians*, and plunder them of their Gold, Silver, and Jewels; for they had put on their richeſt Ornaments that Day, to receive the Embaſſy ſent them (as they believed) from the univerſal Monarch of the World. In a Word, the Conference between the *Inca* and the Friar was ſcarce ended, before *Pizarro* made the appointed Signal for the great Guns to fire among the thickeſt of the *Indians*, and his Horſe to attack and trample them under their Feet, and the Dogs to be let looſe at them; while he, at the Head of the Infantry, march'd up to the Golden Chair, or Throne, on which *Atabilipa* was carried, and made him Priſoner. The poor *Indians*, when they ſaw what the Chriſtians chiefly aim'd at, threw themſelves between the *Spaniards* and their Prince, to prevent his being taken; but not a Man of them offered to lift up a Weapon to defend himſelf, their Emperor having commanded the contrary. But *Pizarro*, having made his Way over Heaps of the Slain, pulled down the Emperor from his Chair with his own Hands, in which Action he received a ſlight Wound from one of his own Soldiers, that ſtruck at the *Inca*; and the General was the only *Spaniard* that was hurt, tho' five thouſand *Peruvians* were killed that Day, with their Arms in their Hands.

The Spoils of the Field

Pizarro having ſeized the *Inca*, and conveyed him to his own Quarters, directed the Spoils of the Field to be collected and brought to him; conſiſting of large Gold and Silver Veſſels and Utenſils, fine Garments of various Colours, Jewels and Ornaments belonging to the *Inca*, the Royal Family, and great Officers. There were taken alſo ſeveral Ladies, Wives of the Caciques and Orejons, and ſome of the *Mamacona's*, or conſecrated Virgins: And *Pizarro* had the Confidence to command a ſolemn Thankſgiving to God to be obſerved that very Day, and in that very Field where the Ground was covered with the dead Bodies of the *Indians* they had thus murdered and plundered. Next Day he ſent out a Detachment of his Forces to plunder the *Inca's* Camp, where he met with another rich Booty; tho' 'tis ſaid the *Peruvian* Generals had carried off three thouſand Porters Burdens of Gold and Silver before the *Spaniards* arrived there: Therefore, in order to induce the *Indians* not to carry off any more of their Treaſures, he cauſed it to be proclaim'd that their *Inca* was alive, and that they were at liberty to come and attend him. Whereupon ſeveral of the great Officers returned to *Caxamalca*, to attend their captive Sovereign. He alſo cauſed the *Inca's* Women to be brought to him, tho' he ſtill kept him in Fetters; which made the *Inca* apprehenſive they would take away his Life in the End, unleſs he could obtain his Liberty: Having obſerved, therefore, the inſatiable Thirſt of the *Spaniards* after Gold and Silver, he promiſed to give them as much of thoſe as a great Room in the Caſtle of *Caxamalca* would hold, for his Freedom; and propoſed their ſending ſome *Spaniſh* Officers with his People to *Cuſco*, to the Temple of PACHA CAMAC, and other Places, to bring the Treaſures repoſited there to *Caxamalca*.

The Inca offers a Treaſure for his Liberty

In

Almagro brings a great Reinforcement to *Peru.*

In the mean time, *James de Almagro* having liſted an hundred and fifty Men in his Service at *Panama*, arrived at the new *Spaniſh* Colony of *St. Michael's*, and there he underſtood that *Pizarro* had made the Emperor *Atabilipa* Priſoner, and poſſeſs'd himſelf of a vaſt Treaſure. Whereupon *Almagro* conſulted with his Officers, whether they ſhould join *Pizarro*, or go upon ſome further Diſcoveries independent of him. But *Pizarro* ſent very obliging Meſſages to *Almagro*, inviting him to advance and join him. And *Almagro* thereupon immediately began his March towards *Caxamalca*.

The *Inca Atabilipa* receiving Advice that another Body of *Spaniards* was arrived upon the Coaſt, began to reflect that this would not probably be to his Advantage. He haſtened therefore the bringing in the Treaſure he had offered for his Ranſom, that he might obtain his Liberty before *Pizarro* was joined by *Almagro*. Mean while the three *Spaniſh* Officers that were ſent to *Cuſco*, happening to paſs through the Town where *Huaſcar*, the lawful Emperor, was Priſoner, went to ſee him; and that Prince acquainted them how unjuſtly he had been depoſed by *Atabilipa*, who had no Right to the Empire, or the Treaſures he had promiſed: And as he underſtood one principal Deſign of this Expedition was *to relieve the Diſtreſſed*, he did not doubt but they would reſtore him to his Throne; which he ſhould gratefully acknowledge, and furniſh them with much more Treaſure than the Uſurper could poſſibly do; for his Loyal Subjects had buried moſt of their Plate after the Battle wherein he was made Priſoner, and would readily produce it again, and pay it to the *Spaniards* for his Ranſom. *Pizarro*'s Meſſengers promiſed *Huaſcar* that Juſtice ſhould be done him; but left that Prince however in Priſon, and continued their Journey to *Cuſco*. And Advice being carried to *Atabilipa* of this Conference, he ſoon ſaw that he ſhould be undone unleſs *Huaſcar* was diſpatched, knowing that the greateſt Part of the Empire were ſtill in his Intereſt; and as they would be ſupported by the *Spaniards*, to whom his Brother had diſcovered his Treachery, and promiſed ſuch Mountains of Gold and Silver, they would certainly ſacrifice him to their Avarice. But then reflecting, if he ſhould order his Brother to be put to Death, the *Spaniards* might make this a Pretence for taking away his own Life, he firſt ſounded how *Pizarro* ſtood affected towards *Huaſcar*, by feigning he had received Intelligence that the Officers had put him to death without his Knowledge: But finding *Pizarro* was not moved at the Relation, *Atabilipa* diſpatched an Expreſs for putting *Huaſcar* to death, and his Orders were immediately executed. But the *Peruvians* made great Lamentations for him, and entreated the *Spaniards* to revenge it on *Atabilipa*.

The *Inca Huaſcar* put to death by *Atabilipa*'s Orders.

In the mean Time, the three Officers that were ſent to *Cuſco*, were adored as the true Deſcendants of the Sun; but the *Spaniards* knew not how to preſerve that Reſpect the *Peruvians* had conceived of them, which was then ſo neceſſary to facilitate their future Attempts. The *Indians* ſoon perceived, they muſt deduce the Original of the *Spaniards* from ſome baſer Fountain than that of the Sun, and the Eſteem and Affection they at firſt entertained for the Chriſtians, was, on a ſudden, converted into Dread and Averſion. However, they durſt not diſobey the Commands of their *Inca Atabilipa*, but having amaſs'd a conſiderable Quantity of Treaſure, they loaded it on the Backs of their *Yanacones*, or Porters, and conveyed it to *Caxamalca*. But the moſt valuable Treaſure being lodg'd in the Temple of PACHA CAMAC, *Pizarro* diſpatched his three Brothers thither. But the Prieſts of PACHA CAMAC ſent away four hundred Loads of Gold, Silver, and Jewels, before the *Pizarro's* arrived. However, *Ferdinand Pizarro* found as much Plate in this Temple as amounted to 90,000 Crowns, beſides what the Soldiers embezzled.

The *Peruvians* bid their Eſteem for the *Spaniards.*

Almagro being advanced into the Neighbourhood of *Caxamalca*, *Pizarro* went out to congratulate his Arrival, and offered him ſuch a Share of the Spoils as made him perfectly eaſy: But his Soldiers, who expected to divide the Booty with thoſe that ſerved under *Pizarro*, were told, they were entitled to no Part of it; which was near creating a Mutiny amongſt them; but they were appeaſed when *Pizarro* agreed to diſtribute an hundred thouſand Ducats amongſt them. The reſt of the Plunder, after the Emperor's Fifth was deducted, was divided by *Pizarro* in ſuch Proportions as he ſaw fit: And 'tis ſaid, he at this time, after he had reſerved the *Inca's* Golden Chair to himſelf, diſtributed as much Gold and Silver Plate amongſt the Soldiers, as, conſidering the Value of Gold and Silver at that time, was more than fifteen Millions at this Day.

The Soldiers, being poſſeſs'd of this prodigious Wealth, fell into all manner of Exceſſes; which their Officers encouraged, that the Soldiers, having loſt their Money, and becoming dependant on them again, might be more under Command. And now *Pizarro* thought it a proper time to ſend over the fifth Part of the Treaſure to the Emperor, and with it his Brother *Ferdinando Pizarro*, to ſolicit for Reinforcements, and to petition that his Government might be extended ſtill further to Southwards. *Almagro* alſo employed his Agents, to deſire that all that Part of *South America* which lay to the Southward of the Lands granted to *Pizarro*, might be put under his Government: And with theſe Agents returned ſeveral Adventurers, who having obtained thirty or forty thouſand Ducats a Piece for their Shares of the Spoils, choſe to enjoy what they had got in their own Country, rather than undergo more Difficulties to increaſe their Fortunes.

A formal Proceſs drawn up againſt *Atabilipa.*

Atabilipa having actually paid great Part, if not all of the Treaſure he had offered, *Pizarro*, notwithſtanding, determined to take away his Life, pretending that he encouraged the *Indians* to attempt his Reſcue and cut off the *Spaniards*: And that he might juſtify his Conduct in this Proceeding, he cauſed a formal Proceſs to be drawn up againſt him. The *Inca* abſolutely deny'd the Charge, complained of the Treachery of *Pizarro*, and deſired he might be ſent over to *Spain*, and try'd before the Emperor. However, the *Spaniards* proceeded to examine Witneſſes againſt him, and *Pizarro* and *Almagro* ſitting as his Judges, they made no Difficulty to condemn him to be burnt; and Friar *Vincent Valverde* approved the Sentence under his Hand, that it might give the greater Satisfaction to the Court of *Spain*: The Friar alſo took great Pains to induce the *Inca* to turn Chriſtian before he died, which he conſented to, upon Condition that the Execution might be changed from burning to ſtrangling; and he was accordingly ſtrangled, the Friar having firſt given him Abſolution.

Atabilipa is condemn'd to be burnt

Pizarro, however, did not carry his Reſentment ſo far, but he thought fit to treat the Corpſe of the *Inca* with the Reſpect due to a Sovereign Prince: He celebrated the *Inca's* Funeral with great Solemnity, and went into Mourning for him: But he ſoon diſcovered how deteſtable this Murder rendered him among the Natives. The two Factions immediately united againſt him, under *Illiana Capac*, the Brother and Heir of *Huaſcar*,

Huascar, whom they proclaim'd Emperor of *Cusco*: Whereupon *Pizarro* proclaim'd *Toparpa*, a Son of *Atabilipa*, Emperor, caused him to wear the Imperial Coronet, and to be treated with the same Honours his Father had been; issuing such Orders in his Name, as might best serve the Interest of the *Spaniards*; but this *Inca* died soon after. And now *Pizarro*, conjecturing that nothing could tend to establish the *Spanish Dominion* in *Peru*, more than his possessing himself of the Capital City of *Cusco*, he began his March thither with all his Forces, consisting of near four hundred Men, besides confederate *Indians*.

Pizarro proclaims another *Inca*.

Marches towards *Cusco*.

In the mean time *Atauchy*, Brother to *Atabilipa*, having collected a great Quantity of Treasure to purchase his Brother's Ransom, brought it to *Caxamalca*; but finding *Atabilipa* murder'd, and the *Spaniards* marched from thence, determined to be revenged of them; and joining his Forces with some other *Peruvian* Generals, surprised the *Spaniards* upon their March to *Cusco*, killed some of them, and made several Prisoners. But understanding that some of their Prisoners had protested against the *Inca's* Death, they resolved to give them their Lives and Liberties, entring into Articles of Peace and Friendship with the captive *Spaniards*, before they dismiss'd them. But *Pizarro* and *Almagro* positively refused to ratify the Articles, and would hear of nothing but an absolute Submission, which occasioned long and bloody Wars afterwards: Whereas the *Spanish* Historians admit, they might have established Christianity in *Peru* without spilling a Drop of Blood, if the Ambition and Avarice of the Adventurers had not prevented it.

Some of his Men cut off, and made Prisoners.

A Treaty between the *Spaniards* and *Indians*.

Pizarro, continuing his March towards *Cusco*, was again attacked by several Parties of the *Indians*, at some difficult Passes in the Mountains; but finding themselves unable to resist the Fire-Arms and Horses of the *Christians*, they fled, after a faint Resistance, to the Capital City; declaring, that it was in vain for any human Force to oppose the *Spaniards*, who were armed with Thunder and Lightning. Whereupon the People of *Cusco*, without offering to defend their Walls, fled with their Wives and Children, and what was most valuable to them, to the Woods and Mountains; and *Pizarro* entered the City without Opposition in the Month of *October* 1532, where he met with a prodigious Booty, notwithstanding the Citizens had so much Time to carry off their Treasure.

Cusco abandoned by the *Indians*.

The *Spaniards* enter *Cusco*.

Pizarro having thus possess'd himself of the Capital City of *Peru*, from whence the *Inca* and the greatest Part of the Inhabitants were fled, thought fit to invite them to return to their Dwellings. The *Indians* accepted *Pizarro's* Invitation, and even the *Inca* made some Overtures to him, intimating that he should be content to embrace the *Christian* Religion, and hold his Dominions of the Emperor of the *Romans*, provided that neither he nor his Subjects should be molested in their Persons and Estates: And being encouraged by *Pizarro* to believe he should have the Terms he demanded, the *Inca* came in Person to *Cusco*, and had an Interview with the *Spanish* General, who caused him to be invested in the Empire, in the same Manner his Successors used to be inaugurated into that Dignity, and assured the *Inca* he would strictly observe the Capitulation made by the *Spanish* Prisoners with his People.

A Peace between *Pizarro* and the *Inca Manco Capac*.

These pacific Measures the *Spaniards* found themselves under a Necessity of taking, not only because they saw all the Southern Provinces of *Peru* assembling against them, but because *Ruminavi*, *Quisquiz*, and other *Peruvian* Generals, had assembled a very great Army in the Northern Provinces, and possessed themselves of *Quitto*, which obliged him to send a Detachment of his Forces under the Command of *Sebastian Belalcazar*, to make Head against the *Peruvian* Generals in *Quitto*. *Belalcazar* thereupon marching into *Quitto*, made himself Master of the Capital City, and was in a fair Way of reducing the rest, when Advice was brought, that *Don Pedro de Alvarado* was come upon the Coast of *Peru*, with a considerable Fleet, and had landed seven or eight hundred Men, intending to take the Government of *Peru* upon him, and expel *Pizarro* and *Almagro* from thence; at which News these two Adventurers were Thunder-struck, apprehending they should be dispossessed of all the Spoils they had taken, and perhaps sent Prisoners to *Spain*, to give an Account of their Conduct in murdering the late *Inca Atabilipa*, and massacreing his People: They continued therefore to cultivate a good Understanding with the *Indians* of the Southern Provinces, and treated the *Inca* and his Subjects as their Friends and Allies.

Don Pedro de Alvarado was one of the principal Generals that accompany'd *Cortez* in the Conquest of *Mexico*, and obtained the Government of *Guatimala*, one of the most considerable Provinces of that Empire. This Gentleman was become vastly rich by the Spoils of the *Mexicans*, and his Government in Extent was little inferior to that of *Spain*; but understanding that there was greater Plenty of Gold and Silver in *Peru* than was to be found in *North America*, and believing that as he was an elder General, *Pizarro* and *Almagro* would have submitted to him, on his allowing them to share that Country with him; he equipped a good Fleet in the Harbours of *Guatimala*, where he embarked seven or eight hundred Men, most of them Cavalry, and among them several Persons of Quality and old Officers. With these he set sail in the Year 1535; and arrived, at length, near the *Spanish* Colony of *St. Michael's*, having got a much greater Body of Troops than were under the Command of *Pizarro* and *Almagro* in *Peru*.

Don Pedro de Alvarado lands in *Peru*.

Alvarado one of the Conquerors of *Mexico*.

Almagro being detached to watch the Motions of *Alvarado*, was in a terrible Consternation upon the Advices he received of his Approach, especially when he understood he had surprized a Party of Horse that were sent out to get Intelligence, and made them Prisoners: But the Men returning to his Camp, and telling him that *Alvarado* treated them handsomly; he began to entertain Hopes that their respective Pretensions would be adjusted by a Treaty. And this he was confirmed in, when *Alvarado* was pleased to invite him to a Conference; which *Almagro* accepting, the following Articles were agreed on between them: That *Pizarro* and *Almagro* should pay *Alvarado* an hundred thousand Nobles: That such of the Officers and Soldiers who came with *Alvarado* as desired it, should serve under *Pizarro* in *Peru*, and be provided for as their own Troops were: And that thereupon *Alvarado* should return to his Government of *Guatimala* in *Mexico*. But being obliged to wait some time to receive the Treasure promised him, *Alvarado* proposed to visit *Pizarro* at *Cusco*, who apprehending that *Alvarado* might alter his Mind upon seeing that rich City, sent him a Compliment, that he would meet him in the Valley of *Pacha Camac*, and bring the Sum with him. *Almagro* had promised; and accordingly he set out with a Party of Horse, and a Detachment of *Indians*, and arrived at the Valley of *Pacha Camac*, where he met with *Alvarado* and *Almagro*; and to ingratiate himself with the former, gave him the Com-

Articles between *Alvarado* and *Almagro*.

mand

mand of all the Troops while he remained there, and paid him twenty thousand Nobles more than he had stipulated for the Expences of his Journey. Whereupon *Alvarado* returned to *Mexico*, entirely satisfied with his Reception, and the Treasure he had acquired.

Soon after the signing the Treaty between *Pizarro* and *Alvarado*, *Almagro* was detached with Part of the Troops that arrived with *Alvarado* to *Cusco*, whilst *Pizarro* applied himself to the building of Towns, and settling Colonies upon the Coast: Particularly he founded the Capital City of *Lima*, to which he gave the Name of *Cividad de les Reyes*, or, *the City of Kings*; because on that Day, the Kings of the East made their Presents to our Saviour: but this Name is now disus'd, and the City is called by the Name of *Lima*, from the Valley wherein it stands. However, to commemorate the Day, *Pizarro* ordered the Arms of the City to be Three Crowns, with a Star shining over them. The City being laid out, *Pizarro* divided the Country about it among his Officers and Soldiers, and other *Spanish* Adventurers that came to reside in it, with the Native *Indians* upon those Lands, who held what the *Spaniards* were pleased to allow them by the basest Tenures of Villainage. And when any *Spaniard* purchased any of these Lands, of another, the *Indians* upon such Lands were transferred with them, as Trees, Deer, and Fish, are with us, upon the conveying away an Estate. *Pizarro* having built the City of *Lima*, he advanced further Northward, and founded another City on a good Harbour, which he named *Truxillo*, from the City of that Name in *Spain*, of which he was a Native. While *Pizarro* remain'd at *Truxillo*, Advice came from *Spain*, that the Emperor had conferred on him the Title of Marquis of that Province, and enlarged his Government considerably to the Southward: And as to *Almagro*, the Title of Marshal of *Peru* was confirmed to him, and a Government of two hundred Leagues Extent of Country conferred on him, to the Southward of the Country assigned to the Marquis *Pizarro*.

Lima founded.

Truxillo founded.

Almagro residing at *Cusco* at this time, and observing that *Cusco* was not within the Limits assigned to *Pizarro*, he immediately took upon him the Title of Governor of *Cusco*, and the District belonging to it, in his own Name. On the other Hand, *John* and *Gonzalo Pizarro*, Brothers to the Marquis, opposed this Usurpation of *Almagro*; and their Differences arose to that Height, that they entered into a formal War with *Almagro*, and several were killed on both Sides; of which the Marquis receiving Intelligence, caused himself to be carried to *Cusco* with such Expedition, that he arrived there before he was expected by either Side: And representing to *Almagro*, that the Country which lay to the Southward of the District of *Cusco* was richer in Gold and Silver than any that had been yet discovered, of which he was contented *Don Almagro* should take the Government upon him; *Almagro* and his Party were then pretty well satisfied, and immediately made Preparations for an Expedition to the Southward.

Almagro upon his the Government of *Cusco*.

Which occasions a War with the *Pizarro's*.

Almagro, at the Head of five hundred *Spaniards* and fifteen thousand *Indians*, advanced as far as the Province of *Charcas*, without meeting with any thing to obstruct his Designs; but finding the *Charcas* a wretched Country, and being ignorant of the rich Mines it contained, he resolved to proceed forward to the Kingdom of *Chili*. The *Indians* informed *Almagro* that there were two Ways to approach the Kingdom of *Chili*, both extremely hazardous: *Almagro* took the Way of the Mountains, as being the shortest, and more agreeable to the Constitutions of *Europeans*; but had not advanced far before he found the Snows so deep, that they were forced to dig their Way through them, the *Indians* dying by Hundreds with the intense Cold; the *Spaniards* also were almost starved, and many of them perished on those Mountains either by Cold or Want. However, *Almagro* himself, with between three and four hundred *Spaniards*, the *Inca Paulla*, the High-priest, and about five thousand *Indians*, reached the other Side of the Mountains, and came into a fine, temperate and plentiful Country. The People of *Chili* being informed that the *Spaniards* were *Viracocha's*, descended from their God the Sun, they presented them with Gold and Silver Vessels to the Value of two hundred thousand Ducats; and not many Days after, collected the Value of three hundred thousand more, and presented to *Almagro*.

Almagro having refreshed his weary Troops, proposed to the *Inca Paulla* the subduing those Parts that were not subject to the *Inca*: To which he consented; and assembling several thousand *Indians* to reinforce the Marshal, they marched against the Natives of the more Southern Parts of *Chili*, and had the good Fortune to reduce those Provinces under their Subjection: And being joined about this time by *Ruis Dias* and *John de Hereda*, with upwards of an hundred *Spaniards* more, they would have extended their Conquests much farther, if *Almagro* had not taken a Resolution of returning to *Peru*, to take Possession of his Government of *Cusco*, which he was now assured belonged to him by Virtue of the Emperor's Commission, which *John de Hereda* brought him. The Resolution being taken of returning to *Peru*, the next thing to be considered was, which Way they should march; and it was unanimously determined to take the Way of the Plain, by the Sea Side. However, the Hardships the *Spaniards* suffered in this scorching Desart, were little inferior to what they sustained on the frozen Mountains.

Almagro resolves to return to *Cusco*.

Ferdinando Pizarro returning from *Spain* with his Brother's new Commission, and the Patent for the Title of Marquis, brought some Orders with him, that were not acceptable to the Marquis or his People; particularly, that the Emperor expected they should be accountable for all the Treasure they had received as the Ransom of *Atabilipa*, his Imperial Majesty alone being entitled to it; or at least that they should raise a good round Sum, and send over to *Spain* in lieu of it. But the Marquis and his Officers reply'd, This was neither reasonable nor possible. *Ferdinando*, however, desired his Brother would confer on him the Government of *Cusco*; which the Marquis consenting to, *Ferdinando* applied himself to the *Inca*, giving him to understand that he would be restored to his Dominions, if he could procure a considerable Sum for the Court of *Spain*. Whereupon the *Inca* sent Expresses to several Parts of his Dominions, directing them to bring him their usual Tribute of Gold and Silver Plate, as the most probable Means of delivering him out of the Hands of the *Spaniards*. Accordingly a great deal of Treasure was brought in, which the *Inca* presented to *Ferdinando Pizarro*. But the *Inca* finding he was still a Prisoner, and not suffered to stir out without a Guard of *Spaniards*, concluded they intended him no Good. He was perpetually meditating therefore, how he might get out of the Hands of his treacherous Keepers; and at last hit upon the following Stratagem. He informed *Ferdinando Pizarro*, that in the Valley of *Yuca*, where the *Inca's* Bowels used to be interred, there were several rich Tombs, and in

The Emperor demands great Sums of the *Pizarro's*.

one of them a Statue of solid Gold of one of his Anceſtors, as big as the Life, which he believed he could find if he might be permitted to go thither with his uſual Guard of *Spaniards*. This being a Prize which *Ferdinando* had ſet his Heart upon, he conſented: But *Manco Inca* having ordered ſeveral thouſand *Indians* to rendezvous on the adjacent Mountains, and having obtained Leave of the Governor to reſort to the Valley of *Yuca*, he found Means to eſcape from his Guard, and get to his Forces in the Mountains; and the Night coming on, before Morning he was conducted beyond the Reach of the *Spaniards*.

The Inca eſcapes from the Spaniards

The *Inca* being now at Liberty, and having ſummoned a Council of his Nobility, repreſented the Treachery of the *Spaniards*, who performed none of their Articles, but had, on the contrary, laid him in Irons in the Caſtle of *Cuſco*. And an Inſurrection being hereupon reſolved on, Expreſſes were diſpatched to every Province of the Empire, and three great Armies were aſſembled in an Inſtant; one whereof was intended to cut off *Almagro* and his Forces in *Chili*; a ſecond inveſted the City of *Lima*; and the third, conſiſting of two hundred thouſand Men, commanded by *Manco Inca* in Perſon, attacked the City of *Cuſco*, took the Caſtle, and drove the *Spaniards* into the grand Square in the Middle of the Town. The *Spaniards* muſt now have been reduced in a ſhort Time, if they had not been joined by great Numbers of the common People of *Peru*, who being Slaves to the reſt, adhered to the *Spaniards* in theſe Wars; whereby they did not only gain the Superiority of their Maſters, but ſhared the Plunder of their Eſtates with the Chriſtians. But Liberty being proclaimed to all the Vaſſal *Indians* that would join the *Spaniards*, they reſorted to the Aſſiſtance of the Beſieged in ſuch Numbers, that the *Inca's* Troops were entirely driven out of *Cuſco* again, and even out of the Caſtle; in the Storming of which, however, *John Pizarro*, Brother to the Marquis, loſt his Life.

A general Inſurrection of the Indians.

Cuſco beſieg'd.

The Indians Slaves join the Spaniards.

John Pizarro ſlain

The Marquis *Pizarro*, who was at his new City of *Lima*, finding all Intercourſe cut off with the City of *Cuſco*, ſuſpected there was ſome Miſchief intended, and was ſoon after informed by the *Indian* Slaves, that *Cuſco* was actually inveſted, and that the *Indian* Generals were marching with another Army to beſiege *Lima*. Whereupon he immediately diſpatch'd Expreſſes to *Panama*, *Mexico*, *Nicaragua* and *Hiſpaniola*, for Reinforcements of Troops to prevent the Loſs of *Peru*: He commanded alſo all the Detachments he had ſent out to extend his Conqueſts, to return and join him; and at the ſame Time ordered a Body of an hundred Foot, under the Command of his Couſin *Diego Pizarro*, to march towards *Cuſco*. The *Indians* permitted this Detachment to march unmoleſted, till they had advanced ſixty or ſeventy Leagues in their Way; but having drawn them into a narrow Paſſage between the Rocks and Mountains, they rolled down great Stones upon them, which ſo diſorder'd the *Spaniards*, that they were all killed or made Priſoners by the *Indians*. Two or three Parties more, that were ſent out ſucceſſively to get Intelligence, met with the like Misfortune: Nor did the *Indians* only defend the Paſſes in the Mountains, but advanced to the very Walls of *Lima*, which they block'd up for a conſiderable Time; where we ſhall leave them at preſent, and enquire after *Almagro*, whom we left in the ſandy Deſart of *Atacama*.

Lima beſieged.

Almagro on his Return from *Chili*

Manco Inca had diſpatch'd Expreſſes as far as *Chili*, to acquaint his Subjects with his Deſign of throwing off the *Spaniſh* Yoke. He acquainted alſo his Brother *Paulla*, the High Prieſt, and the reſt of the *Indians*, who march'd with *Almagro* into *Chili*, with his Intentions; whereupon the High-Prieſt left *Almagro's* Camp privately, and returned to the *Inca Manco Capac*, who was then encamp'd before *Cuſco*. As to *Paulla*, *Almagro* no ſooner heard of the Revolt of *Manco Inca*, but he proclaim'd *Paulla* Emperor of *Peru*, and cauſ'd his Head to be bound with the Imperial Wreath: Whereupon *Paulla* and the confederate *Indians* continued to eſpouſe *Almagro's* Cauſe. And when *Manco Inca* heard of the Approach of *Almagro*, he thought fit to quit the Siege of *Cuſco*, and retire with a ſmall Part of his Troops to the Mountains of the *Andes*, ordering the reſt of his Forces to diſperſe, and return to their Dwellings.

And now *Almagro* being arriv'd before the Walls of *Cuſco*, and finding the *Indians* drawn off, ſent a Summons to *Don Ferdinando Pizarro*, to deliver up that Capital to him. But *Ferdinando* anſwer'd, he held that City by Virtue of a Commiſſion from his Brother the Marquis, and ſhould not deliver it up to any Man without his Orders, and immediately proceeded to put the Place in a Poſture of Defence; but Part of the Garriſon being Friends to *Almagro*, introduced his Forces into the Town at Midnight; and *Ferdinando* and *Gonzalo Pizarro* were ſurpriz'd in their Beds, and made Priſoners. In the mean Time the Marquis *Pizarro*, having aſſembled five hundred *Spaniſh* Horſe and Foot, gave the Command of them to *Don Alonzo de Alvarado*, with Orders to march with all Expedition to *Cuſco*.

Almagro ſurpriſes *Cuſco*, and makes *Ferdinando Pizarro* Priſoner

Whereupon *Almagro* took the Field, conſtituting *Don Orgonnez* his Lieutenant-General, and advanced as far as the Bridge of *Abancay*, on the other Side whereof *Alvarado* lay encamp'd: Here *Orgonnez*, fording the River at the Head of *Almagro's* Horſe, put *Alvarado's* Forces into great Confuſion, and made that General his Priſoner, with whom he return'd in Triumph to *Cuſco*.

The Marquis *de Pizarro* hearing no News from *Alvarado*, and imagining the *Indians* might have cut off his Communication with that General, march'd in Perſon at the Head of three or four hundred *Spaniards*, to gain Intelligence: And after ſome Days March, receiv'd Advice that the *Indians* had rais'd the Siege of *Cuſco*; that *Almagro* was return'd from *Chili*, and had poſſeſs'd himſelf of that Capital, and made his Brothers *Ferdinando* and *Alonzo* Priſoners; and that his other Brother *John Pizarro* was kill'd during the Siege of *Cuſco*; and a Day or two after, had News brought him of the Defeat of *Alvarado*. Whereupon he thought fit to retire again to *Lima*, and fortify himſelf there, till he ſhould receive Reinforcement from *North-America*; and to divert *Almagro* from taking Advantage of his preſent Weakneſs, he diſpatch'd ſeveral *Spaniards* of Quality to attend him, and offer him any Terms he ſhould inſiſt upon to procure his Brothers' Liberty; but had no Intention to obſerve any Terms with *Almagro*, any longer than he ſhould be in a Condition to break them with Advantage.

It ſeems, the Biſhop of *Panama* had been appointed in the Year 1536, by the Emperor, to go to *Lima*, and ſettle the Limits between *Pizarro's* and *Almagro's* Governments. But *Pizarro* apprehending then that *Cuſco* belong'd to the Diviſion which was allotted to *Almagro*, kept him ignorant of the Emperor's Grant, and perſuaded him to undertake the Expedition to *Chili* above-mention'd; and when the Biſhop arriv'd at *Lima*, diſſuaded him from taking that tedious Journey to *Cuſco* to execute his Commiſſion: Whereupon the Biſhop return'd to *Panama* without doing any thing: But *Almagro*, on his Return from *Chili*, finding how he had been abuſed by the *Pizarros*, ſurpriz'd the City and Caſtle of *Cuſco*, and made

Ferdi-

Ferdinando and *Gonzalo Pizarro* Prisoners, as has been related already.

Arbitrators being again chosen to settle the Limits between the two Generals, and not being able to come to any Agreement, the Marquis, in order to procure his Brother *Ferdinando*'s Liberty, pretended he was content that both Parties should keep what they were possess'd of, till the Court of *Spain* should determine otherwise; and that he would furnish *Almagro* with a Ship, by which he might send over his Commissioners to *Spain*, to manage his Cause there: And upon these Terms *Almagro* consented to set *Ferdinando* and *Gonzalo Pizarro* at Liberty.

But the Marquis having obtain'd his Brothers' Liberty, and a great Supply of Troops from *North America*, sent a Herald to *Almagro*, requiring him to deliver up *Cusco* to him, and all his Conquests in *Peru*. And upon *Almagro*'s refusing to resign his Government, immediately declar'd War against him, sending his Brothers *Ferdinando* and *Gonzalo*, at the Head of seven hundred *Spanish* Horse and Foot, to surprise the City of *Cusco* in the Absence of *Almagro*; who being better acquainted with the Country than the *Pizarro's*, and his Troops more used to that Climate, got between the Enemy and *Cusco*. And 'tis highly propable, that the *Pizarro's* would never have been able to have taken that Capital, if *Almagro* had remain'd within the Walls upon the Defensive. But the Officers under *Almagro* confiding in the Bravery of their Forces, no sooner heard the Enemy approach'd, but they prevail'd on their old General *Almagro*, to suffer them to march out and give the *Pizarrists* Battle, in which they were entirely routed.

Almagro himself fled to the Castle of *Cusco*, and the *Pizarrists* entering the City pell-mell with the Fugitives, the Slaughter was very great. *Orgonnez* and *Pedro de Lerma* being cover'd with Wounds, were kill'd after Quarter given them, and a great many Officers more upon private Pique and Resentment; but poor old *Almagro* was reserv'd to be murder'd by the Forms of Law. After he had remained Prisoner some Months in *Cusco*, the Lawyers were employed to draw up Articles against this old General, and his Enemies sitting in Judgment on him, he was capitally convicted, and condemned to die. And the *Pizarrists*, having ordered him to be strangled privately in Prison, afterwards caused his Head to be cut off on a Scaffold in the great Square of *Cusco*. His Body lay all Day expos'd on the Scaffold, his Friends not daring to bury him; but towards the Evening, a poor *Negro*, who had been Slave to the Deceased, brought a coarse Sheet, and wrapped up the Corpse, and carried it to the Church of the *Mercads*, where the Friars buried him under the High Altar. *Almagro* had one Son by an *Indian* Woman, to whom he gave his own Name, and made him joint Heir of his Fortunes with the Emperor his Sovereign *Charles* V, constituting *James de Alvarado* Guardian to his Son: But notwithstanding all these Precautions, the Marquis detained the young *Almagro* Prisoner at *Lima*, and seized the Father's Treasure, together with his Government.

But the *Pizarro*'s observing that this tyrannical Conduct created them many Enemies, and rendered them generally detested among the Soldiery; in order to support their Interest at the Court of *Spain*, it was resolved that *Ferdinando Pizarro* should resort thither, and carry a vast Treasure with him, to be apply'd as he should judge most for their Advantage; for *James de Alvarado* was already gone over to *Spain*, to petition the Emperor to do Justice to his Ward. And notwithstanding *Ferdinando Pizarro* bribed almost every Grandee in the Court of *Spain*, yet so notorious were the Outrages, that he and his Brothers had committed, that his Friends could not save him from being condemned and imprisoned: And had not *Alvarado* died suddenly, *Ferdinando* had probably lost his Head: As it was, he remained three and twenty Years a Prisoner in the City of *Medina del Campo*. *Ferdinando Pizarro* imprisoned in *Spain*.

The *Indians* observing the Divisions among the *Spanish* Generals, had recourse to Arms again. They had learned of the *Spaniards* to ride and handle their Arms pretty dextrously; and having taken some Horses, were not afraid to fight the *Spaniards* at their own Weapons: Nor did there want Instances of some Parties of *Spaniards* being defeated by them: And had not the *Indian* Slaves stuck close to the *Spaniards*, probably *Pizarro* would have been obliged to abandon his Conquest at last. The *Indians* rise in Arms again.

The most considerable Acquisition the *Pizarro*'s made after the Death of *Almagro*, was the Conquest of the *Charcas*, in which lay the invaluable Mines of *Potosi*. Here the Marquis founded the Town of *La Plata*, and divided the City and Country about it, with the *Indians* that inhabited it, among the Conquerors. This Division of the Country was made in the Year 1538, and 1539. And now the Marquis found himself possessed of a Territory seven or eight hundred Leagues in Length, in which were more rich Mines than in all the World besides; and yet was not his Ambition or Avarice satisfied. His Brother *Gonzalo*, who was now Governor of the Northern Provinces of *Peru*, was commanded to undertake an Expedition to the Eastward, the Marquis being informed that those Countries not only afforded Plenty of Gold, but yielded Spice very much resembling Cinnamon. *Gonzalo Pizarro* had not marched many Miles, before he arrived at the Country of *Canela*: He also met with some Gold in the Rivulets, but reaped very little Benefit from this Expedition, unless the Discovery of the great River *Amazon*; on which having built a Sloop, and put all his Treasure and Baggage on Board, he sent one of his Officers, named *Orellana*, with sixty Men down the River, to make further Discoveries, and then return to him: But *Orellana*, having sailed two hundred Leagues farther down this River, and finding it very difficult to return against the Stream, sailed to the Mouth of it, and then coasting along to the Northward, came to the *Spanish* Island of the *Trinity*, from whence he embarked for *Spain*. As to *Gonzalo Pizarro*, having been compelled by Famine to eat up his Horses, lost most of his Men, and endured incredible Hardships for two Years and upwards; he returned at length to *Quitto*, where he received Advice of the Misfortunes of his Brother the Marquis, which we come in the next Place to relate. The Mines of *Potosi* reduced. *Orellana*'s Voyage down the River *Amazon*.

The Marquis, in the Absence of his Brother, seemed more intent on suppressing the Party of *Almagro* than any thing else. He would not suffer any of the Officers or Soldiers, that shewed any Affection to the Family of *Almagro*, to enjoy either Lands or Offices in *Peru*. And as to young *Almagro*, he remained a Prisoner at large in the City of *Lima*, but was never suffered to stir from thence. Thus the *Almagrians* being neither permitted to return to *Spain*, nor to enjoy any thing in the *Indies*, they were dispersed all over the Country to get a poor Subsistence, till the cruel *Pizarro* published an Edict that no body should relieve them; which soon put them upon desperate Measures to preserve themselves from starving; which they could think of no better Way The Marquis oppresses the *Almagrians*.

to

to prevent, than by cutting off the Tyrant. They resorted privately therefore, either singly, or two or three at a time, to *Lima*, where they did not want Friends, who concealed them in their Houses, till they amounted to two or three hundred Men, all brave veteran Soldiers, who resolved to attack the Marquis as he came to the great Church on *Midsummer-day*, 1541. But he having some Intelligence of the Design, did not go out of his Palace that Day; and the *Almagrians* being informed that their Plot was discovered, and that they would suddenly be sacrificed, if they did not prevent it by some bold Attempt, twelve of them met at the House of young *Almagro*, and with their Swords drawn marched cross the Market-place to the Palace of *Pizarro*, crying out, *Long live the King, but let the Tyrant die!* Nor were they opposed by any Man, though there were not less than a thousand People assembled in the Square; nay, not a Man stirred to give the Marquis Intelligence of it; insomuch that the Conspirators found the Gates of the Palace and all the Doors open; and rushing forward, the Servants and all the Company that were with the Marquis fled, except his Brother-in-law *Don Francis de Alcantara*, and two of his Pages, who defended the Door-way of the Drawing-room, whither the Marquis was retired; but at length the Conspirators broke through, and killed the Marquis, his Brother, and the two Pages, who behaved themselves however very bravely, and desperately wounded four of the *Almagrians* before they fell. Then the Conspirators went out into the Market-place again, declared the Tyrant was dead, and proclaimed the young *Almagro* Governor of *Peru*. They also plundered the Houses of the Marquis, of his Brother *Francis de Alcantara*, of his Secretary *Pizado*, and some others of the principal *Pizarrists*, wherein they found an immense Treasure. In the Marquis's Palace alone, they found to the Value of a Million of Crowns in Gold and Silver; but did not meddle with the rest of the Furniture, leaving it standing for the Use of the young *Almagro*. Thus fell *Don Francis Pizarro* in the Capital City of *Lima*, which he had founded ten or eleven Years before, and was privately buried by his Servants, by the young *Almagro*'s Permission, no Person of any Figure daring to attend his Funeral, lest it should give Offence to the prevailing Party.

The *Almagrians* form a Conspiracy against the Marquis.

The Marquis is assassinated.

Young *Almagro* proclaimed.

The Marquis was no sooner dead, but *Lima*, *Cusco*, and most of the principal Towns, declared for *Don Diego de Almagro*. Some Places however refused to acknowledge *Almagro*'s Authority, but expected the coming of *Vaca de Castro* with the Emperor's Commission. *Pedro Alvarez Holguin*, and other Friends to the *Pizarrists*, assembled a great Body of Troops, took Possession of *Cusco* again, and declared War against *Almagro*. *Alonzo de Alvarado* assembled another Body of Troops between *Lima* and *Quitto*; and these two Generals preparing to unite their Forces, *Almagro* marched out of *Lima* at the Head of six hundred Horse and Foot, with an Intent to retake *Cusco*. But in the mean time, *Vaca de Castro* arriving in *Quitto*, and finding the Marquis was dead, declared himself Governor of *Peru*, by virtue of the Emperor's Commission. He soon after arrived in Person at *Lima*, and was proclaimed Governor of *Peru*, having been joined in his March from *Quitto* by *Alonzo de Alvarado* and *Holguin*, with their Forces.

The *Pizarrists* declare War against young *Almagro*.

Vaca de Castro the Governor arrives in *Peru*.

Almagro continuing his March to *Cusco*, took Possession of that City, and new modelled the Magistracy there: His next Business was to furnish himself with a Train of Artillery. He also made great Quantities of excellent Gunpowder; and the famous *Manco Inca* joined the *Almagrians* with several thousands of his *Indians*. But *Almagro* was unfortunate in the Loss of his General *John de Rada*, who died on the March to *Cusco*. *Almagro* afterwards constituted *John Balsa* the General of his Forces, and *Peter de Onate* his Lieutenant-General; and receiving Advice that *Vaca de Castro* was advancing towards *Cusco*, he marched out of the Capital at the Head of seven hundred *Spaniards* and several thousand *Indians*, with a good Train of Artillery, in order to give the Governor Battle, if he could not obtain equitable Conditions for himself and his Friends. He dispatched *Lopez de Vdiaquez* and *James Nunez* to treat with the Governor; who, instead of treating above-board with *Almagro*, endeavoured privately to corrupt his Officers, and induce them to desert him: Which *Almagro* discovering, both Parties prepared for Battle, and drew up their Troops in the Vale of *Chupas*. These little Armies were both composed of Veteran Officers and Soldiers: The Governor had the Advantage in Point of Numbers, but then *Almagro* had the Advantage of a Train of Artillery and of the Ground. However, to his Amazement, when the great Guns were fired, they did no manner of Execution, and the Enemy advanced as if they had nothing to fear from the Artillery: Whereupon *Almagro* rode up to *Pedro de Candia*, who commanded the great Guns, and killed him with his own Hands; and levelling one of the Cannon himself, cut off a whole Rank of the Governor's Troops. But the Enemy were now too near his Artillery to suffer from them, and his Men had quitted the Ground, where they were so advantageously drawn up, which occasioned the Loss of the Battle, though it was fought with great Obstinacy till two Hours within Night; when *Almagro* finding his Troops overpowered, retired out of the Field with *Manco Inca*, and three or four *Spanish* Officers, intending to have taken Refuge in the Mountains with the *Inca* and the *Indians*; but taking *Cusco* in his Way, with a Design to carry off his Treasure, the very Men in whose Hands he had put the Government of that City, apprehended him, and delivered him up to the victorious Governor; and young *Almagro*, who was not much above twenty Years of Age, was formally try'd, condemn'd, and executed in the same Place, and much in the same Manner his Father had been; and was afterwards buried by the Friars of the Convent of *Merced*, in the same Grave with his Father.

Almagro defeated at *Chupas*.

Taken and beheaded.

Almagro possesses himself of *Cusco*.

The Governor now dismiss'd most of his Forces, and applied himself to the regulating the Civil Government; and particularly he ordered the Magazines upon the great Roads to be stored with Provisions for the Conveniency of Travellers, prohibiting the *Spaniards* to quarter upon the *Indians*, to the Ruin of the Natives where they came. He also endeavoured the Conversion of the *Indians* to the Christian Faith, and prevailed with the *Inca Paulla* to be baptized, giving him the Name of *Christopher*. He also erected Schools in several Towns, ordering the Sons of the Caciques and Caraca's to be educated there, and instructed in the Principles of the Christian Religion. He commanded the *Spaniards* to use their *Indian* Servants with Humanity, and not to oppress or abuse any *Indian* whatever. Whereupon the *Indians*, who had fled to the Mountains many of them, returned and dwelt in *Cusco*, *Lima*, and other *Spanish* Towns, under the Protection of the Government. He also regulated the Distribution of the Lands and *Indians*, which had been made very extravagantly, and restored many

Vaca de Castro regulates the Government.

of

of the *Indian* Lords their Lands and Vaſſals, checking the Licentiouſneſs of the Soldiery, and adviſing them to marry, and apply themſelves to Traffick, or ſome honeſt Employments, and not ſpend their whole Time in Gaming and Exceſſes, and oppreſſing the poor *Indians*; by which he engaged the Affections of the *Indians*, but made himſelf a great many Enemies among the Adventurers, and military Men, who came into *Peru* with no other View but to advance their Fortunes, and live at Diſcretion among the Natives. He alſo enquired into the Conduct of the King's Officers, who he obſerved had amaſs'd together monſtrous Eſtates, by oppreſſing the *Indians*, and defrauding the Crown.

But ſtill grievous Complaints daily came over to *Spain*, of the *Indians* being deſtroyed in the Mines, and other rigorous Services. And thereupon the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth cauſed certain Orders to be drawn up, which he required ſhould be ſtrictly obſerved in *America* under ſevere Penalties: The Emperor alſo reſolved to ſend over a Governor to *Peru*, who ſhould ſee theſe Orders duly executed, and accordingly he made choice of *Blaſco Nunez Vela*. But the *Spaniards* immediately took a Prejudice againſt the Vice-roy, and began to grow very mutinous, pretending their *Indians* were their Property as much as any other Part of their Eſtates, and they might uſe them as they pleas'd; which they repreſented to the new Vice-roy, and deſired he would ſuſpend the Execution of his Ordinances; but the Vice-roy anſwered, they muſt petition the Court of *Spain*, if they expected any Alteration in them; and in the mean time, he was reſolved to ſee them put in Execution. This Conduct ſo enraged the *Spaniards*, that moſt of the great Towns appeared ripe for an Inſurrection. In a Word, theſe Diſcontents were fermented into a Conſpiracy againſt the Vice-roy.

Gonzalo Pizarro appeared at the Head of the Malecontents. *Manco Inca* was killed about this time, as he was playing at Bowls. The Vice-roy was impriſoned, but eſcaped; and *Pizarro* uſurped the Government of *Peru*. *Pizarro*'s Admiral inſulted *Panama*, and took all the Ships in that Bay; mean while *Pizarro* himſelf defeated and killed the Vice-roy, his General defeated the Royaliſts near *La Plata*, and his Admiral, in a ſhort Time after, poſſeſſed himſelf of *Panama* and *Nombre de Dios*.

Pizarro then applied to the Court of *Spain*, that he might be continued in the Government of *Peru*: Whereupon the *Spaniſh* Court ſent *Gaſca*, a ſubtil Lawyer, to *Peru*, with the Title only of Preſident of the Royal Court, but with Power to act as he ſaw convenient. The Court of *Spain* all this while wheedled *Pizarro*, whoſe Admiral and Fleet revolted to *Gaſca*.

Gaſca now employ'd an Agent to prepare the Citizens of *Lima* for a Revolt, and *Pizarro* was deſerted by great Numbers: Whereupon he prepared to defend his Uſurpation: But failing, he abandoned *Lima*, and *Laurence de Aldana* took Poſſeſſion of it for the Preſident. *Pizarro* then marched towards *Cuſco*, defeated *Centeno*, and ſeized the King's Treaſure at the Mines: But being deſerted by all his Forces, he ſurrendered himſelf a Priſoner, and was condemned, and beheaded.

The *Spaniſh* Soldiers now began to be diſcontented: Whereupon ſeveral Commanders were ſent upon new Conqueſts; and *Gaſca* returned to *Panama* with a vaſt Treaſure, which was ſeiz'd by the Rebels at *Panama*. But he recovered the Treaſure again, and arrived with it in *Spain*. Another Inſurrection in *Cuſco* was ſuppreſs'd, and *Mendoza* was made Vice-roy. There was then an Inſurrection at the Silver Mines, where the Rebels aſſaſſinated *Hinojoſa*, the Governor of the *Charcas*, and made *Don Sebaſtian* their General; but afterwards murdered him, and made *Vaſco Godinez* their Chief, who murdered a great many People. But General *Alvarado* ſurprized *Godinez*, and put him to death, with many more of the Diſaffected.

Another Rebellion, after theſe, was headed by *Hernandez Giron*, who defeated General *Alvarado*, and converted the Bells of *Cuſco* into great Guns, with which he attacked the Camp of the Royaliſts; but was forced to retire, and, being deſerted, fled to the Mountains, where he was taken, and carried to *Lima*, and executed. The Rebellion was now entirely ſuppreſſed; and from the Month of *November* 1554, in the Reign of *Philip* II. the *Spaniards* may be ſaid to have been in the peaceable Poſſeſſion of *Peru*; the ſubduing the firſt Adventurers, who endeavoured to render themſelves independant of the Crown of *Spain*, having proved a much more difficult Task than the Conqueſt of the defenceleſs *Indians*.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of their Marriages, Children, Slaves, and Funerals; and of the Navigation and Shipping of the Peruvians.

THE Laws of *Peru* did not only permit, but command the Emperor to marry his eldeſt Siſter of the whole Blood; tho' it prohibited all other Brothers and Siſters to marry: However, they were all obliged to marry in their reſpective Tribes or Families, and their Marriages were ſolemnized by the chief Magiſtrate of the Province. Thoſe of the Tribe of their *Inca's* were married by the King himſelf. Once in two Years, at moſt, the King's Officers were commanded to make a Liſt of all the young Men of his Family above twenty Years of Age, and of all the Virgins above eighteen, when he match'd them as he ſaw fit, the Ceremony being no more than this: The *Inca*, ſtanding between the Couple that were to be married, called each of them by their Names, and then joining their Hands, ſent them Home to the Bridegroom's Father's, where the Wedding was kept for ſeveral Days. And in the Provinces of the Empire at a Diſtance from *Cuſco*, the Vaſſal Princes performed the Ceremony, as the *Inca* did in the Capital City; but as to the King himſelf, and the Princes of the ſeveral Provinces, they took what Women they pleaſed for their Wives and Concubines. And if the common People were not allowed more Wives than one, they had a Liberty however to entertain a Commerce with other Women,

Common Women

to K who

who lived in poor Huts in the Fields, or in the Suburbs of great Towns, but were never suffered to dwell among honest People, and were generally esteemed infamous. When any of the Royal Family married, the Vassal *Indians* of that Province immediately built Houses for the new-married People, which were furnished by the Fathers of the Bride and Bridegroom, and their Relations. And when any of the common People married, their Neighbours were obliged to assist in the building their Houses, and raising a little Plantation of Fruits, Roots, and Herbs: And every married Man had a Portion of Food and Cloathing assign'd him every Year out of the Royal Magazines and Store-houses, in Proportion to the Bigness of his Family.

The Laws of Descent and Inheritances.

As the Emperor was obliged to marry his eldest Sister; and if he had no Issue by her, the next, and so on; and if he had Issue by none of his Sisters, to marry his next nearest Relation; so none but the eldest Son of such Marriages could inherit the Throne. If the Emperor had no Son, he was succeeded by his eldest Brother, or his next Male Relation. The Laws of Inheritance were not the same in every Province. In some, the eldest Son did not inherit, unless he was the most deserving; for the Vassals had the Choice of the Succession, provided they elected him out of the Family of the *Caraca's*. But in others the eldest Son inherited, as with us; and if there were no Sons, the Estate went to the eldest Uncle.

Widows and Orphans provided for.

The *Peruvians* seem to have had a particular Regard for Widows and Orphans: Their Lands were cultivated at the Charge of the Publick, and preferred to the Lands belonging to the Temple of the Sun and those of the *Inca*; but it was look'd upon as infamous for a Widow to marry a second Husband, especially if she had Children, and as infamous for a Man to marry such a Widow. Their Children were weaned at two Years of Age, when they shaved their Heads and gave them their Names, and the Relations all made Presents to the Infant. All their Children were bred up very hardily, washed with cold Water as soon as born, and the Mother bath'd in some cool Stream as soon as she was brought to bed; and they continued to wash their Children every Day with cold Water, till they were grown up and able to bathe themselves. They never took their Children into their Laps or Arms, unless it were to dress them, but stooped down to the Cradle to give them the Breast, and this only three times a Day. The Ladies of the first Quality always suckled their own Children; and tho' the ordinary Time of their sucking was two Years, the Women never came near their Husbands Beds till that Time was expired, nor had the Child any other Food till it was wean'd, if the Mother's Milk did not fail. When the Child could stand alone, it was taken out of its wooden Cradle, to which it used to be bound down hard with Filleting, and set in a little Pit, made in the Middle of the Floor, which reached to the Breast of the Child, and was lined with Linen or Woollen, and the Play-things set about the Verge of the Pit. The *Peruvian* Women had never any Occasion for Midwives, but there was usually an old Hag that attended the Labour, who muttering over some Charms, was supposed to facilitate the Birth.

The Management of their Children.

Their Funerals.

As to their Funerals, the Bodies of their Emperors were embalm'd, and placed in the Temple of the Sun, where divine Honours were paid them. And at the Death of the *Inca's* and *Caraca's*, or great Lords, their principal Wives, Favourites, and Servants, either kill'd themselves, or made Interest to be buried alive with them in the same Tomb. There was no manner of Occasion for any Force to compel them to follow their Benefactors or Masters to the other World; for when they were dead, they crouded after them so fast, that the Magistrates were forced sometimes to interpose, and put a Stop to these Self-murders. However, it is evident from hence, that the *Peruvians* believed another State after this, where they were to live and enjoy their Friends to all Eternity.

Their Belief of another State.

The first Month after the Death of the Prince, the whole City of *Cusco* bewail'd their Loss with loud Cries and Lamentations, and every Ward or Division of the City assembled and march'd out into the Fields in Procession, carrying the Trophies of their late Sovereign with them, and in Songs repeated his heroick Actions in the Wars, the most remarkable Instances of his Justice, and other Virtues. After the first Month they commemorated the Death of the *Inca* at every new and full Moon till the End of the Year, the last Day whereof was observed with more Solemnity than any of the former. Nor was this done only in the Capital City of the Empire, but in the chief Town of every Province, how far distant soever. They went out in Procession to all Places, where they remembred their *Inca* had ever been in a Journey, or upon any other Occasion, and there in mournful Songs recited his great Actions, and bewailed their Loss. And the Vassal Princes, or Noblemen, had much the same Honours paid them on their Decease, in their respective Provinces and Lordships, by their Vassals.

Mourning

The *Inca's* were absolute Sovereigns, restrain'd by no Laws or Compacts, but valued themselves most in being the Protectors and Fathers of their People. Every Province had its Caracas or Prince, as absolute in his Territories as the *Inca* in the Empire, and only accountable to him; and in every Province were a great many Caciques or Lords, who had the Command of their Vassals, as the Caraca's had of them: And as for the common People, they were all Slaves to their Lords, both their Persons and Estates being in their Power.

The State of the *Peruvians* when the *Spaniards* arrived there.

Whenever the Emperor had any particular Service to do, he commanded the Vassal Prince of the Province to see it done, and he again issued his Orders to the Nobility under his Government, who sent their Tenants to perform what was required, or marched at the Head of them in Person, if they were commanded to the Wars. The Generality of the People therefore were in a State of Slavery before the *Spaniards* arrived; all the Difference was, that during the Government of the *Inca's*, their Service was extremely easy and gentle; whereas the *Spaniards* destroyed thousands of them by exacting a too rigorous Service.

Peru is now possessed by a very different Set of People than it was at the Time of the *Spanish* Conquest. Besides the native *Indians*, there have been transported vast Multitudes of *Europeans*, and *African Negroes* of both Sexes, from whose mix'd Embraces have sprung another Race. Only those that were born in *Spain* are called *Spaniards*. If any Person is born of a *Spanish* Father and Mother in *America*, he is called a *Criole*. The Children born between a *Spaniard* and an *Indian* are called *Mestizo's*, and so are the Children of a *Spaniard* and a *Negroe*. Those born of a *Negroe* and an *Indian* are called *Mulata's*, or *Molata's*; and to the Children of these *Mulata's* the *Spaniards* give the Name of *Cholo*, which signifies a Dog of a mongrel Breed. The Children of a *Spaniard* and a *Mestizo* they call *Quartralvo's*, by

which

which they would ſignify they are three Parts *Spaniſh* and one *Indian*; but the Children of a *Meſtizo* with an *Indian* Woman, they call *Treſalas*, or three Parts *Indian*. The Deſcendants of all theſe have different Names and different Privileges, as was intimated in the Hiſtory of *Mexico*, where the Reader may look for other Particulars.

The Navigation of the *Peruvians*.

The *Peruvians* ſeem to have been provided with the moſt improper Veſſels and Vehicles for Tranſportation or Fiſhing of any Nation in the World. They had neither Ship, Boat, nor Canoe upon their Coaſt, when the *Spaniards* arrived there: They croſs'd over their Rivers on Floats of Reeds or Ruſhes, and at Sea had no other Way of Fiſhing, or tranſporting their Goods along the Bark-logs Coaſt, but on Bark-logs, made of many round Logs of Wood, in manner of a Raft, and very different according to the Uſe that they were deſign'd for, or the Humour of the People that made them. They always went before the Wind, being unable to ply againſt it; and therefore are fit only for theſe Seas. The Rafts that are now made for long Voyages, will carry ſixty or ſeventy Tons of Goods, and upwards. The Float is managed uſually by three or four Men, who when they come to *Panama*, diſpoſe of the Goods and Bottom together, getting a Paſſage back again for themſelves in ſome Ship or Boat.

The preſent Shipping of *Peru*.

As to the preſent State of their Navigation, the *Spaniards* have ſcarce any Ships on this Sea but Coaſting-Veſſels, and the King's Ships of War, which may be ten or twelve in Number, and ſerve to protect the Trade againſt the Buccaneers and Privateers, who are however very often too hard for them. The *Peruvian*, or *Spaniſh* Inhabitants, have yet no other foreign Commerce but with the reſt of the *Spaniſh* Colonies, either in *Chili* to the Southward, or with thoſe of *Mexico* to the Northward: They ſail every Year from *Peru* to the Fairs of *Acapulco* and *Panama*, carrying the Product and Manufactures of *Peru* thither, and at thoſe Fairs they furniſh themſelves with the Product of *China* and the *Eaſt-Indies* from the Weſt, and thoſe of *Europe* from the Eaſt; and in this rich Traffick there are not more than ſeven or eight Ships employ'd within the Space of a Year, tho' they export and import the Value of many Millions.

CHAP. XIX.

A Deſcription of Chili, *treating of its Name, Situation, and Extent, and of the Face of the Country; its Springs, Lakes, Rivers, Ports, Seas, Winds, Tides, and Seaſons; its Provinces and Subdiviſions, Towns and Fortreſſes; the Perſons, Habits, Genius, Arts, Food, and Exerciſes of its Inhabitants; its Animals, Vegetables, and Minerals.*

Name.

THIS Country was named *Chili* by the firſt *Spaniſh* Adventurers, from a famous River and Valley of that Name, where

Situation. they obtained a Victory over the Natives. *Chili*, comprehending *Patagonia*, the *Terra-Magellanica*, and *Terra del Fogo*, is bounded by *Peru* on the North, by *La Plata* and the *Atlantick Ocean* on the Eaſt, and by the great *South-Sea* on the South and Weſt, extending in Length from 25 to 57 Degrees, 30 Minutes, South Latitude: But the Breadth is very unequal, being about 400 Leagues broad in the North, and leſſening gradually till it is not 100 broad in the South. The Face of

Face of the Country this Country very much reſembles that of *Peru*; for the Coaſt of *Chili* is a high bold Shore, and further within the Land there ariſe other Hills, which the *Spaniards* call *Sierra's*, and above them the *Andes*, the higheſt Mountains in the known World, which extend from *Santa Martha* in *Terra-Firma*, to the Straights of *Magellan*, running 65 Degrees from North to South. The Rainbow, which in the Valleys we ſee croſſing the Heavens, we obſerve from theſe Hills extended under our Feet; nor is it leſs admirable, that while we travel over theſe Hills, and ſee Tempeſts and Storms falling into the Valleys beneath, the Serenity over our Heads exceeds that of the fineſt Summer's Evening. Theſe Mountains are

Mines of the *Andes* ſuppoſed to be very rich in Mines, but there may be two Cauſes aſſign'd why their Riches do not manifeſt themſelves more. The firſt is that inviolable Maxim among the *Indians*, not to diſcover them to any other Nation. For if any one among them diſcovers any thing of this Kind, his Death is infallible. The other Reaſon is, the great Plenty of every thing neceſſary for Life; ſo that Hunger being wanting, there are few that care to run Hazards in ſearch of hidden Treaſure. One would think Heaven had placed theſe Mountains here, to keep off from the Weſt all the Storms and ill Weather of the Eaſt. Any one that travels to the Top of them diſcovers both Horizons; and when he looks to the Eaſt, all is covered with groſs Vapours; and at the ſame time looking Weſt, the Heavens are ſo bright that it cauſes Pleaſure and Joy to look on them. A curious Obſerver contemplating once this remarkable Difference, ſaid, That Nature, in the Fabrick of this Part of the World, ſeem'd to have turn'd her Back upon the Eaſtern Provinces, and looked with her Face only upon *Chili*. 'Tis neceſſary to obſerve, that it is of the Cold of theſe Mountains that Authors ſpeak, when they ſay, that the Cold of *Chili* is ſo ſevere, that the Rivers are frozen up, and Men frozen to death in the Fields. For this is true only of thoſe uninhabited Mountains.

Springs and Rivers

Numerous are the Springs, Lakes, and Rivers on the Mountains of *Chili*; and 'tis obſerved, that Springs and Rivers abound much more in the low Lands of *Chili*, than they do in *Peru*. There are Rivers that precipitate themſelves from the Tops of the high Mountains, forming the moſt beautiful natural Caſcades that ever the Eye beheld; while others tumble from ſo vaſt a Height, that their Waters diſperſe, and fall upon the Valleys beneath in Drops like Showers of Rain; and when the Sun ſhines upon them, afford a moſt agreeable Proſpect as they deſcend.

The

The Fountains called *Los Oyos de Aqua*, in a Valley of about a Mile diameter, adorned with Ever-greens and Flowers, make it the very Picture of Paradiſe. This Valley is ſurrounded with prodigious high Rocks, and in the Middle of it theſe Fountains ſpring up, throwing themſelves with great Force into the Air, and falling down again from two large Streams, running in a winding ſerpentine Courſe through the Valley, till they unite at length in one Channel, and form a conſiderable River, the Water whereof is as clear as Chryſtal, and ſo extremely cold, that 'tis impoſſible to drink a Draught of it. There are many ſalutary Fountains alſo in the Plains and Valleys of *Chili*, particularly one that riſes at the Foot of the Vulcano of *Villarica*, and runs into a neighbouring Lake. There are two more which riſe near each other, and form the River *Chico*, one of them hot, the other cold. The Baths of *Rancagua*, near the Town of *St. Jago*, are celebrated alſo for the Cure of many Diſtempers; thoſe of *Mayten*, *Majocho*, and *Conchially*, have the like healing Virtues; but thoſe Fountains are the beſt that are fartheſt from the *Andes*.

Baths.

Lakes.

The moſt conſiderable freſh Water Lakes, are thoſe of *Tagatagua*, near *St. Jago*, and that of *Puren*, in which the *Chileſians* had an impregnable Fortreſs, from whence the *Spaniards* could never drive them. They have alſo ſeveral ſalt Water Lakes, which have a Communication with the Sea, part of the Year. In ſtormy Weather the Sea forces a Way into them, and leaves them full of Fiſh; and when the Communication with the Sea ceaſes, and the hot Weather comes on, the Water congeals, and leaves a Cruſt of fine white Salt a Foot thick. Among the Rivers of *Chili*, there are fifty large ones, riſing in the *Andes*, and running Weſtward into the *South-Sea*; and theſe are join'd by many other leſſer Streams that fall into them in their Courſe, none of them running more than 30 or 40 Leagues before they reach the Sea, and that ſo precipitately, that they are not navigable for a Veſſel of any Burthen much beyond their Mouths. The chief of theſe Rivers is, the River of *Salado*, a ſalt River on the South Confines of *Peru*, the Waters whereof are ſo hot that they cannot be drank.

Rivers.

Ports.

The chief Ports of *Chili* upon the *South-Sea* are, the Ports of *Copiapo*, *Coquimbo*, *Governadore*, *Valpariſo*, *Itata*, *Conception*, *Santa Maria*, *La Mouche*, *Valvidia*, *Brewers-haven*, *Carelmepo*, and *Caſtro* in the Iſland of *Chilve*. The Seas that border upon *Chili*, if we include *Patagonia*, are the *Atlantick* on the Eaſt, and the *South-Sea*, or *Pacifick Ocean*, on the Weſt: But this *Pacifick* Name is only proper to that Part of the South Sea which lies within 30, or at moſt 35 Degrees of South Latitude; for all that lies South of 35 is as ſubject to Storms as any other Sea, and the Winds as variable as in other Places. The Tides on this Coaſt riſe but nine or ten Foot, it being an open bold Shore, with very few Bays or Harbours in it.

Seas and Winds.

Tides.

In *Chile Proper* the Spring begins in the Middle of *Auguſt*, and laſts to the Middle of *November*, when the Summer begins, and laſts till the Middle of *February*; and then follows the Autumn, which laſts till the Middle of *May*, when they enter upon their Winter. Neither the Heat or the Cold are ſo great here as in other Countries of the ſame Latitude. In the Province of *Cuyo* the Winter is extremely cold, and the Heats are equally intolerable in Summer: *Terra Magellenica* and *Patagonia* is an uncomfortable Country, and the Cold is more intenſe here than in other Countries in the ſame Latitude, in our Northern Hemiſphere.

Seaſons.

The Province of *Chili Proper* is about fourteen hundred Miles in Length from North to South, and ſcarce an hundred in Breadth from Eaſt to Weſt. The chief Towns in *Chili Proper* are, 1. *St. Jago*, ſituated in 34 Degrees South Latitude, on a ſmall River at the Foot of a Hill, in a pleaſant and fruitful Valley, called *The Valley of Maypocho*. Before it was deſtroyed by the Natives, it was the largeſt and beſt built City in the Country, and according to the uſual *Spaniſh* Model. It was founded by *Peter de Valdivia*, who conquered this Part of *Chili* in the Year 1541. *Valparizo* is the Port Town to it. 2. The City of *Conception*, ſituated on a fine Bay of the *South-Sea*, in form of a Creſcent, and forming a good Harbour. 3. *Coquimbo*, or *La Serena*, ſituated on a ſmall River, in a fine Valley, in full View of a Bay of the Sea, from which 'tis about two Miles diſtant. The Place is of a pretty large Extent. 4. The Town of *Baldivia*, or *Valdivia*, ſituated on an Eminence, at the Point of a Peninſula, the ſecureſt and moſt ſpacious Harbour on the Coaſt of *Chili*. What this Place is moſt conſiderable for, beſides the Harbour, is, the rich Gold Mines in the Neighbourhood, in the working of which *Peter Valdivia* employed twenty thouſand *Indians*, who finding themſelves cruelly oppreſſed, roſe upon the *Spaniards*, re-took moſt of the Towns they had built, and making *Valdivia* Priſoner, poured melted Gold down his Throat, reproaching him, that his Avarice was not to be ſatisfied otherwiſe. 5. The Town of *Imperial* ſituated on an Eminence, at the Confluence of two Rivers. 6. The Town of *Villarica*, ſituated on a Lake near the Foot of the *Andes*. This Place obtained its Name from the vaſt Quantities of Gold found in the adjacent Country. 7. *Oſorno*, ſituated on a Bay of the Sea, about 20 Leagues South of *Baldivia*. 8. *Caſtro*, ſituated on the Weſt Side of the Iſland of *Chilve*, a fruitful Iſland, that bears good Wheat; and both here, and at *Oſorno*, over-againſt it, there is great Plenty of Gold, which the *Spaniards* purchaſe of the Natives. 9. *Copiapo*, ſituated at the Mouth of a River of the ſame Name, which, with an Iſland that lies before it, forms a tolerable Harbour in the *South-Sea*. 10. *Guaſco*, ſituated on a Bay of the ſame Sea. 11. *Angol*, ſituated in a fine fruitful Plain, 8 Leagues Weſt of the *Andes*. 12. *Arauco*, ſituated about 5 Leagues North of *Angol*, which gives Name to a Valley inhabited by the braveſt People of *Chili*.

Chief Towns in *Chili Proper*.

2*dly*, the Province of *Cuyo*, or *Cuto*, is about a thouſand Miles in Breadth generally from Eaſt to Weſt, and extending from the 35th to the 45th Degree of South Latitude. We find but three *Spaniſh* Towns mentioned in the Province of *Cuyo*; 1. *Mendoza*. 2. *St. John de Frontera*; and 3. *Oromante*, or *St. Lewis of Loyala*; all of them upon the Northern Confines, the *Spaniards* poſſeſſing very little of this Country on the South and Eaſt.

Cuyo.

Chief Towns in *Cuyo*.

3*dly*, The Province of *Patagonia*, or *Terra Magellenica*, is bounded by a Line drawn from the *Atlantick* to the *Pacifick Ocean*, in 45 Degrees of South Latitude, on the North; by the *Atlantick Ocean* on the Eaſt; and by the *South-Sea*, or *Pacifick Ocean*, on the South and Weſt. In this Part of the World we meet with no Towns, either of Natives or *Europeans*. The *Chileſians*, indeed, do not live in Towns, but every Tribe extends itſelf on the Bank of ſome River in the Valleys between the Mountains, their Houſes ſtanding regularly, and at a Diſtance from each other,

Patagonia, or *Terra Magellenica*.

other; neither do they remain long in one Place, but remove for the Conveniency of Pasture, and as the Season of the Year requires: In which they do not find much Difficulty, for their Houses are all upon a Floor, slightly built of Wood, and consist of three or four Rooms only, which are so contriv'd that they can be taken asunder and removed one after another. Their Beds are the Skins of Beasts laid upon the Floor; a Block or a Stone serves them for a Pillow, and they lay a Coverlet or two over them, made of the Wooll of their Country Sheep. Their Dishes are of Wood, or made of some Calabash, or Goad, which serve them also instead of Pails and Pitchers: Earthen Pots they have to boil and stew their Meat in; a rough unhewn Block serves for a Seat, and another of the same Kind for a Table; and their Lances, Swords, and other Arms, are the principal Ornaments of their Houses. Those who inhabit *Cuyo*, and the Plains on the East Side of the Mountains of *Andes*, are still less polish'd. Some of them live in Caves, and others, after the *Arabian* Way, are ever roving from one Part of the Country to another; and that they may do this with the greater Ease, they have no Houses at all, only a slight Tent made of the Skins of Beasts. As to *Patagonia*, or *Terra Magellanica*, we could never learn there was a single Town in the Country, and scarce any thing that looks like a House; nothing but poor Huts of a pyramidical Form, just to screen the miserable Inhabitants from the Rigour of the Weather. The Fortresses of the *Chilesians*, seem to resemble those of the antient *Britons*. They were usually situated in Woods, surrounded by Lakes, or Morasses, and the Trees cut down and laid across served them instead of Walls. Where they had no Water or Marshes to defend them, they made broad Ditches, and planted sharp Stakes at the Bottom of them.

The *Chilesians* are of the middle Size, and strong limb'd; of a tawny Complexion, and have long black Hair exceeding harsh; their Features tolerably good, their Teeth white and sound; active of Body, but of a dejected Countenance. Their Women are moderately tall, slender, and well-shap'd. Those *Chilesians* who inhabit the Province of *Cuyo*, and the Plains of *Pampas*, are People of a larger Stature than those of *Chili Proper*, and of a darker Complexion, and the Women paint their Faces, or some Part of them, green. *Patagonia*, is the Country which our first Discoverers peopled with Giants, Dwarfs, and Monsters: But none that have visited these Coasts the last hundred Years have seen any thing of this Kind.

The Men of *Chili Proper* wear a loose Garment, made of the Wooll of their Country Sheep, pretty full, and reaching down to their Knees or lower; not open before, or on the Sides, and has no Sleeves. They have a Kind of open Drawers and Doublets, but no Shirts, any more than Shoes and Stockings; but wear a Kind of Buskin on their Legs; and on their Heads a stiff Cap, the Crown of which is sometimes adorned with Feathers, dy'd Wooll, or Flowers. The Habits of the Women differ little from those of the Men, only they have no Covering on their Heads, but a Kind of Coronet of Wooll of several Colours binds their Temples. Their Hair is Part of it curled and braided, and the rest flows down their Backs. They have also a Kind of Sash, with which they swathe their Bodies from the Middle upwards; and when they go abroad, throw a Mantle over all. On Festivals their Clothes are of the same Form, but finer, and their Necks are covered with Chains of beautiful Shells, or precious Stones. The *Indians* in the Province of *Cuyo* and the Plains of *Pampas*, are not near so well clothed as those on the West. They are contented with Leaves to hide their Nudities, and the Skins of Beasts serve them for Cloaks. The People of *Patagonia* go like the antient *Britons*, perfectly naked, tho' they live in an exceeding cold Climate.

The *Chilesians* are the bravest People of the new World, and to this Day remain unconquered, for the most Part. The *Peruvian* Emperors formerly made some Impression on their Northern Frontiers, but were repulsed. The *Spaniards* also subdued several of their Provinces; but when the *Chilesians* had learned the Use of Fire-Arms, and to manage Horses, they revolted and drove the *Spaniards* out of their Country. Nor were these People less remarkable for their Wit than their Courage; they did not only learn the Art of War of the *Spaniards*, but excelled them soon in warlike Stratagems, and their Generals became superior to the *Spaniards*. The *Chilesians* are remarkable also for their Patience and Fortitude, being bred up to Hardships from their Infancy. In Temperance only they are deficient. In eating, drinking, and venereal Encounters, they know no Bounds; particularly at their Festivals and Entertainments. They are very little Meat, except Venison, before the *Spaniards* stocked their Country with Beef and Mutton, Hogs and Goats. Their usual Diet is Maiz, boil'd, parch'd, or ground, and made into Paste, with Pulse, Roots, Fruit, and Herbs: Their Drink is either made of their *Indian* Corn dry'd and steep'd, or of their Fruits, and is very strong and palatable; and in the Southern Provinces the *Spaniards* have introduced Grapes. They dance, sing, and play upon Instruments at their Festivals, tho' they make but dull Musick with their wooden Drums and Flutes; and if their Wind Instruments are made of the Bones of their Enemies, as some relate, it cannot be very harmonious. They dance round a Kind of Maypole, but lodge several Bottles of strong Liquor about the Pole, and drink round in the Intervals of their Dances, till they are exceeding merry.

Their Children are bred up from their Infancy to endure Hardships, to manly Sports, and the Exercise of Arms; and even their Women are not exempted from them. The whole Nation is so addicted to War, that it seems to be both their Business and their Pleasure. Since the *Spaniards* arrived, they have been in a perpetual State of War with those Invaders. This Genius for War, possibly, may be one Reason they have made so little Improvement in other Arts and Sciences. They had no Books, Letters, or Writings, among them, any more than the rest of the *Americans*, but assisted their Memories by *Quippo's*, or Knots, as the *Peruvians* did, and would cast up an Account by them with great Exactness. The Skill the Natives of *Chili* had in Physick and Surgery was very mean. But the Natives are said to be of such strong, hale Constitutions, and use so much Exercise, that they have very little Occasion for Physick, and live frequently to an hundred Years of Age. So averse are they to Slavery, that there is no keeping them Prisoners long. They will run any Hazard to make their Escape, and sometimes die by their own Hands, so much do they dread the Cruelty of the *Spaniards*, who send the captive *Chilesians* to the most distant Countries.

In this Country we meet with such Quadrupedes as have been described in *Peru*. The *Chilesians* can now bring a Body of ten or twelve thousand Horse into the Field at a short Warning: and they carry on a very great Trade with

Cle-

Gen. and Par. Her

Their Food.

Their Diversions

Exercises

Few Artificers.

Learning.

Physick.

Their Aversion to Servitude

Animals

the Hides of their black Cattle, as well as the Flesh.

Their Birds and Fowls also are much the same that are found in *Peru*. The Parrots fly screaming in such numerous Flocks, that they obscure the Light of the Sun. At the time when they slaughter their Beef, there comes down another voracious Fowl, larger than a Duck, which gorges itself with the Carcasses that are left in the Fields. The Ostrich is another Bird the Natives hunt. They have another long-legg'd Fowl, bigger than a Turkey, that wades through Ponds and Rivers, and lives upon Fish. They abound also in Singing-Birds of various Kinds, many of them unknown to this Part of the World; and they have several the same as ours, such as Linnets, Nightingales, Blackbirds, and Finches. Of tame Fowls they had but one Sort, between a Duck and a Hen, when the *Spaniards* arrived here. Their Lakes and Rivers abound in good Fish, as well as their Seas. Whales and Grampusses are frequently found on the Coast of *Chili*, and there is Plenty of Albecores, Boneta's, Flat-Fish, and Shell-Fish.

Forest Trees. Among the Forest Trees of this Country, the principal are the Cypress Tree, the Cedar, the Oak, the Pareguay, and the Cinamon Tree, so called from some Resemblance it may have to the true Cinamon in its Colour. They have also the Sandal, the Palm, the Pine Tree, and the Guayac, which is a Wood as hard and as heavy as Iron almost. There is another Tree called the Thorn-Bush, that grows in Clusters, or Groves, which is their ordinary Fuel near *St. Jago*. The Mustard Plant, grows vastly large here.

Flowers. As soon as the first Rains fall in the Spring, the Fields are cloathed with green, and within a Month there is good Grass, with which Nature produces yellow Flowers in great Abundance, and after these, a vast Variety of other Flowers, red, blue, green, yellow. They have also Physical Herbs of great Virtue. A Plant called Quinchamali they take up and boil with the Roots, and the Liquor being drank hot, dissolves any coagulated Blood in the Body. Another of these healing Herbs is called Albaquilla, the Juice whereof applied to green Wounds, is a present Cure. A third healing Herb grows like a Lock of fine Hair, and cures Fevers and Pleurisies. There are Herbs that cure the Sciatica, others that dissolve the Stone in the Bladder, and some that cure almost every Malady.

Medicinal Herbs.

Fruits. The Fruits peculiar to the Country are, the Pengu, a red Fruit, which they boil and eat with their Meat. The Magne, whose Fruit is black and well tasted. They have many other Fruits, of which they make good Liquor; but the most admired is the Myrtilla, which is the common Food of the Natives beyond 37 Degrees. They have also a Seed called Madi, which affords a very good Oil. As to their Fruits in general, they have scarce any of those that grow in the Countries between the Tropicks. But then they have this Advantage, that whatever Fruits are carried thither from *Europe*, thrive prodigiously. The Fruit that thrives most is the Apple of every Kind, of which they have prodigious Orchards. Of Maiz, or *Indian* Corn, they had great Plenty before the *Spaniards* arrived; but they had neither Wheat, Barley, Oats, Annis, Cummin, Coriander-Seed, Linseed, Flax, Hemp, Peas, Cabbage, Lettice, Raddishes, Cardoons, Chicory, Endive, Cucumbers, Pursly, Garlick, nor Onions, all which they have now in Abundance, and in greater Perfection than they are to be met with here; and their Roots, particularly Turnips, grow to a prodigious Size.

Corn.

There are Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, Quicksilver, and Lead in *Chili*; but the *Spaniards* seem to slight all of them but the Gold. *Valdivia* employed no less than fifty thousand *Indians* in working the Gold Mines; at which the Natives were so provoked, that they have made a general Revolt, defeated and killed *Valdivia*, and drove the *Spaniards* out of most of the Towns they had built. After which they made a Law, that it should be Capital to discover a Mine to the *Spaniards*, or any other Foreigners. Both the *English* and *Dutch* have endeavoured to cultivate an Understanding with the Natives of *Chili*, in order to traffick with them for their Gold; but could never succeed. The foreign Trade of *Chili* consists altogether in exporting their Produce to *Peru* and *Mexico*; namely, Gold, Copper, and other Metals; Hides, Tallow, dry'd Flesh, Fish, Corn, Fruits, Wine, Oil, Salt, Hemp, Flax, Cordage, Leather, Timber for Shipping, and other Uses, Medicinal Herbs and Drugs. Their naval Stores are another great Article, which the *Peruvians* receive entirely from thence; as also the Copper. And the *Spaniards* of *Chili* take in return, the Merchandise of *China*, *East-India*, and *Europe*.

Mines.

Foreign Trade.

What has been said hitherto relates to the Province of *Chili Proper*: As to that of *Cuyo*, we have not so perfect an Account as could be wish'd, nor indeed of any of the Inland Provinces. They abound in Corn and Wine, and their Fruits are said to have a better Flavour than those of *Chili*; and of this there is such Plenty, that they supply the Province of *La Plata*, and even *Buenos Ayres*, on the *Atlantick Ocean*, with dry'd Grapes, dry'd Peaches, Apples, Oil, and excellent Wine. But then this must be understood of that Part of the Province that lies next the Mountains, for the Desarts of *Pampas* extend six or seven hundred Miles further Eastwards, over which they are forced to pass in their Way to *Buenos Ayres*. These are vast Plains, which afford an unbounded Prospect, but produce neither Trees nor Herbage. They travel here in covered Carts and Waggons, made as commodious almost as an House, with Doors to shut, and Windows on each Side to let in the Air; and they lay Beds, or Mattresses, on the Floor, on which they sleep great part of the Journey. These Waggons are drawn by Oxen, and they set out about two Hours before Sun-set, travelling all Night, and till the Sun is an Hour high the next Morning.

Cuyo.

The Desarts of *Pampas*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

The History of Chili, *containing the antient and present State of that Country.*

The History of Chili.

ALL we can learn of the antient *Chilesians* from the *Peruvians* is, that they worshipped a great many Creatures animate and inanimate, and were very unpolish'd: That they had no other Form of Government than the Patriarchal: And when they had Wars with their Neighbours, they made Choice of the Man most famous for Courage and military Skill for their General. As to that Part of the Country that was conquered by the *Inca's*, the *Chilesians* were obliged to conform themselves to the Religion and Manners of the *Peruvians*.

Expeditions to Chili.

Almagro was the first of the *Spanish* Generals, who undertook an Expedition against *Chili*, in which he was introduced by the *Inca Paulla*, as before related. *Valdivia* was the next *Spanish* Commander that attempted to extend their Conquests in *Chili*. He entered upon this Service in the Year 1540, and met with little Opposition from that Part of *Chili* which was subject to the *Inca's*; but on his advancing further, he was frequently encounter'd by the confederated Caciques. However, he penetrated as far as the Valley of *Mapocho*, which he found extremely fruitful and well peopled. In this Valley he founded the City of *St. Jago*, in the Year 1541, and built a Castle for the Defence of the Gold Mines in the Neighbourhood, which he compelled the conquer'd *Indians* to work in: At which the *Chilesians* were so exasperated, that they attack'd the Castle before it was well finish'd, and were very near carrying it: However, they were at length repuls'd. But the *Indians* giving out that there were very rich Gold Mines in a certain Part of the Country not far from *St. Jago*, drew a Detachment of his Forces into an Ambuscade, and cut off every Man of them, except their Commander and a *Negro*, who escaped to *St. Jago* by the Swiftness of their Horses.

The Civil Wars breaking out in *Peru*, *Valdivia* was commanded thither with some of his Soldiers, and left *Chili* to the Care of *Francisco de Villagra*: But the Rebels being defeated in *Peru*, *Valdivia* returned with a good Body of veteran Soldiers. During the Absence of *Valdivia*, there happened a Misunderstanding between his Lieutenant and *Pedro Sanchez de Hoz*, to whom the King of *Spain* had granted the Government of the further Part of *Peru* and *Chili*, and who with Reason therefore expected the Command of the Forces in the Absence of *Valdivia*. This *Valdivia* had agreed to; but his Lieutenant *Villagra*, taking an Opportunity to quarrel with *Sanchez* in the Absence of *Valdivia*, made him Prisoner and cut off his Head. While the *Spaniards* were thus engaged in Civil Broils, the *Chilesians* made their Advantage of them, surprized the Garrisons of *Copiapo* and *Coquimbo*, and putting them to the Sword, demolished both those Towns: And it was with Difficulty *Villagra* defended himself in *St. Jago* itself till the Return of *Valdivia*, who bringing a good Army with him, drove the *Chilesians* from the Valleys again, and rebuilt the Towns the *Indians* had destroyed there; after which he passed the River *Maypo*, and subdued the *Promoca's*, a warlike Nation. Afterwards observing an advantageous Situation in 37 Degrees South Latitude, he founded a City there, giving it the Name of *Conception*. But the *Chilesians*, enraged to see themselves thus bridled and restrained, assembled in great Numbers, and harrassed the new City with repeated Attacks, endangering the Loss of the whole Army. *Valdivia*, however, finished the Fortifications of that Town, and in the Year 1551, founded the City of *Imperial* at the Confluence of two Rivers, in 39 Degrees South Latitude. From hence he marched towards the *Andes*, and 16 Leagues to the Eastward of *Imperial* laid the Foundation of *Villa Rica*.

The *Chilesians* revolt.

The *Chilesians* at length finding their Enemies to be but Men like themselves, notwithstanding the Disadvantage they had in the Want of Horses, Artillery, and Armour, resolved to make another bold Push for the Recovery of their Liberties, being persuaded they should be able, by their Numbers and Courage, to expel these Strangers out of their Country. *Valdivia* receiving Intelligence of the intended Insurrection, made some haste to the Valley of *Arauca*, where he found thirteen or fourteen thousand of the Natives assembled in Arms, whom he charged with his Horse, and obliged them to retire into the Woods and Inclosures; but was not in a Condition to disperse them entirely; they frequently rallied and attacked his Troops, and continued to encounter him for several Days in a Sort of Running-fight.

Caupolican General of the *Chilesians*.

And now *Caupolican*, the brave *Chilesian* General, observing that his engaging the *Spaniards* with such Numbers only occasioned Confusion among his People, divided his Army into Battalions of a thousand each, ordering them to charge the Enemy by turns. In Pursuance of these Orders, the first Battalion engaged the *Spanish* Horse with great Resolution, and, having held them in play some time, leisurely retired, being succeeded by the second, and that by the third, and so on, till the *Spaniards*, both Men and Horse, began to faint with the Labours of the Day; which *Valdivia* too late observing, made a precipitate Retreat, ordering his Troops to take Possession of a Pass, about a Mile from the Field of Battle. But a *Chilesian*, Page of *Valdivia*, hearing his Master give Orders for their Retreat, deserted at that Instant to his Countrymen, and directed them to take Possession of the Pass before the *Spaniards* could arrive there. And taking up a Spear, charged his late Lord, *Valdivia*, at the Head of a Company of *Chilesians*, while another Detachment of the *Indians* secured the Pass, as he directed them. And now the *Chilesians*, seeing the *Spaniards* unable to resist their Attack, prest

The *Spaniards* routed.

them on every Side, and cut them all in Pieces on the Spot, except *Valdivia* himself, who was taken Prisoner making his Confession to a Priest, whom they killed immediately, but brought *Valdivia* before *Caupolican*, who ordering him to be ty'd to a Tree, *Valdivia* meanly begged his Life of the Conquerors. But the General pronounced his Doom, though Authors differ

about

and executed

about the Manner of his Execution. Some affirm, they poured melted Gold down his Throat, bidding him satisfy himself with that Metal he so violently thirsted after: Others relate, that one of the *Indian* Caciques beat out his Brains with a Club, without asking the General's Leave; and all the *Spanish* Writers agree, that they made Trumpets and Flutes of his Bones, and preserved his Skull as a Memorial of that important Victory. *Caupolican* constituted *Lautaro*, who had been *Valdivia*'s Man, his Lieutenant-General, finding him every way qualified for that Post.

Lautaro Lieutenant General

The News of *Valdivia*'s Misfortune arriving at *Conception*, *Francisco de Villagra* assembled the *Spaniards* that were dispersed in *Chili*, and being joined with several thousand *Indian* Allies, marched to give Battle to *Caupolican*. But that General retired before him, till he found the *Spaniards* so far engaged in the Woods that their Horse could be of little use to them: And then sending out Detachments to possess the Passes in their Rear, he boldly faced about and attacked them in Front; ordering his Men not to stand to be shot at, but immediately advance and come to a close Engagement; and being much more numerous than the *Spaniards* and their Allies, by this Stratagem they gained another memorable Victory, killing no less than two thousand five hundred *Spaniards* and *Indians* on the Spot. After which, *Lautaro* marched towards the City of *Conception*, and finding it abandon'd by the *Spaniards*, set fire to the Town and demolish'd it. *Lautaro* afterwards laid Seige to the City of *Imperial*, but the Winter coming on, was obliged to raise it, by the great Rains which fall at that Season.

The *Spaniards* afterwards rebuilt *Conception*; but *Lautaro* drove them from thence a second Time; and assembling a great Army, laid Siege to the Capital of *St. Jago*, where being killed with an Arrow, the Siege was raised. However, the Governor of *Peru*, apprehending all *Chili* would be lost, sent his Son *Don Garcia de Mendoza* with a powerful Reinforcement, to suppress the *Araucans*; who was so fortunate, after several Encounters, to make *Caupolican* Prisoner, whom he put to death after he had persuaded him to declare himself a Christian. But the *Chilesians* were determined to perish rather than become Slaves to the *Spaniards*, and raising fresh Forces, attacked all their Colonies at once, some of which were taken and retaken several times; and thus the War continued with great Obstinacy for upwards of fifty Years, when the *Spaniards* were driven with great Slaughter from most of their Settlements. In 1599, five thousand *Indians*, whereof three thousand were Horse, and the rest Foot, seventy of them carrying Fire-Arms, and two hundred of them in Armour, took the City *Imperial* by Surprize, burnt and destroyed the whole Town, killing and taking four hundred *Spaniards*. In short, of the thirteen Cities which were established in this Kingdom of *Chili*, the *Indians*, before the Year 1604, entirely destroyed seven, namely, *Valdivia*, *Imperial*, *Angol*, *Santa Cruz*, *Castro* in *Chiloe*, *Villarica*, and *Conception*. They also besieged and took the City of *Osorno*, but lost it again. They afterwards recovered several Places from the *Spaniards*, and almost expell'd them their Country; of which the *Hollanders* receiving Intelligence, their *West-India* Company, in the Year 1642, fitted out a Squadron of Men of War under the Command of Captain *Brewer*, and having put some Land Forces on Board, order'd them to sail to the Coast of *Chili*, and settle Colonies there. *Brewer* and his Fleet arrived on the Coast of *Chili* in 1643, where they engaged and defeated a Party of *Spaniards*. They afterwards landed at *Castro* in the Island of *Chiloe*, and made several Attempts to settle themselves in *Chili*: But General *Brewer* dying, and the *Chilesians* discovering, that the chief Matter in View with the *Dutch*, as well as the *Spaniards*, was to get Possession of their Mines, this Expedition came to nothing. About six and twenty Years afterwards, Captain *Narborough* was sent to *Chili* by King *Charles* II. at the Instigation of a *Spaniard* who had resided there; but very little Advantage was made of his Voyage, other than the Discovery of some Particulars relating to that Country which were unknown here before, and which prove that the Accounts which we have received from the *Spaniards* concerning *America* are not agreeable to Truth, but founded upon the Plan of Interest, Bigotry, or Vanity.

Spanish Forts on the Streight of *Magellan*.

Before the Passage round *Cape Horn*, the most Southern Land of *Terra del Fogo*, was discovered by *La Maire*, the *Spaniards*, imagining there was no other Way into the *South-Sea* but through the Streights of *Magellan*, built Forts on the narrowest Part of that Streight, and garrison'd them with several hundred Men, in order to exclude all other Nations from the *South-Sea*; but Sir *Thomas Cavendish* passing the Streights of *Magellan* in 1586, and coming to the first *Spanish* Fort, found no more than twenty-four alive of four hundred that were left there, and these almost starv'd. He arrived afterwards at another Fort in the Streight, to which the *Spaniards* had given the Name of Fort *St. Philip*, and found it in Ruins, most of the Garrison thereof having perish'd for want of Food; whereupon Sir *Thomas* gave it the Name of Port *Famine*, and proceeding in his Voyage, passed happily into the *South-Sea*. Several other Commanders also passed these Streights successfully, but many however have been disappointed, drove back, and lost by Tempests. Among the successful Voyagers of our own Countrymen, were Captain *Cowley*, Captain *Dampier*, Captain *Rogers*, and Captain *Sharp*.

The Islands of *Patagonia* and *Chili* described.

And here we shall give some Description of those three considerable Islands on the Coast of *Patagonia* and *Chili*, of which all Seamen, who visit the *Pacifick Ocean*, take so much Notice.

Terra del Fogo.

1. The Island of *Terra del Fogo* is bounded by the Streights of *Magellan* on the North, by the *Atlantick Ocean* on the East, and by the great *South-Sea* on the South and West, being of a triangular Figure, the Base whereof is the Streight of *Magellan*, three hundred Miles in Length from East to West; and it is about the same Extent from the Streights of *Magellan* to Cape *Horn*, the Point or Summit of the Pyramid, which lies in 57 Degrees 30 Minutes South Latitude. This Island is mountainous and woody, the Tops of the Mountains almost always covered with Snow; but it has several good Bays and Harbours, and does not want Rivulets of fresh Water. As to the Natives, Travellers agree that they are a brave and hardy People, but not very numerous: That they paint both their Faces and Bodies, and have no other Clothes but a Cloke made of raw Hides. The Women have nothing on their Heads, but wear Pieces of Penguins Skins before their Nudities. They live in Huts made of the Boughs of Trees, and eat Seals, Penguins, Venison, and other Game. Their Arms are Clubs, Bows, and Arrows pointed with sharp Flint or Bones. Their Boats are Canoes, and they make their Nets of Guts and Sinews, Fibres of the Bark of Trees, or such other Materials as the Country affords.

Chiloe.

2. The Island of *Chiloe*, situated on a great Bay of the *South-Sea*, over-against the Country of the

of *Chili* is computed to be about 140 Miles in Length, and twenty in Breadth. The Face of the Country is various, conſiſting of Mountains, Valleys, Woods, champaign and marſhy Grounds, and has in it ſome Springs and Rivulets of freſh Water. The only Town in it is that of *Caſtro*, built by the *Spaniards*, ſituated in 42 Degrees odd Minutes South Latitude. The Country abounding in Corn, Cattle, and Fruit, both *European* and *Indian*.

3. The Iſle of *Juan*, or *John Fernando*, lies in Latitude 34 Degrees 45 Minutes: Its Circuit may be about forty *Engliſh* Miles, and its Diſtance from the Continent four hundred. Its Soil is indifferent upon the Hills; but its Valleys are fine, fruitful, and pleaſant, interſperſed with natural Meadows. Theſe Valleys therefore are capable of great Improvement, ſince there need be no Queſtion of their producing every thing which is agreeable to this Climate. Ships which paſs the Streights of *Magellan*, or by Cape *Horn*, conſtantly touch here, by Reaſon that their Crew having by this time contracted an Epidemick Scurvy, the Captain's miſſing the Iſland might occaſion a Mutiny. Never any Iſland was more capable of being fortified, ſo as to reſiſt any Enemy who could attack it in that Part of the World. There are in it but two Bays capable of receiving Ships, which are both at the Eaſt End, and a ſmall Charge would build ſuch Works as would render it impracticable for any to land there againſt the Will of its Inhabitants. The Weſt End is of ſuch natural Strength, that a ſmall Body of Men might defend it.

Seals are found here in the greateſt Plenty of any Part of the World, and their Skins are of an extraordinary Value from the Fineneſs of the Furs: Their Fat makes very good Train Oil; and much better ſtill is made of the Sea-Lion, a Creature bigger than the Seal, amphibious, yet without a Fur. To theſe Advantages may be added the great Abundance of Goats, which have been produced by three or four that were left here by its firſt Diſcoverer.

John Fernando diſcovered this Iſle in the Voyage he was making from *Lima* to *Baldivia*, and being pleaſed with its Situation, Soil, and Climate, reſolved to ſettle it. On his Return to *Lima*, he endeavoured to procure a Patent for that Purpoſe: But whether his Propoſal claſhed with the private Intereſt of the *Spaniſh* Viceroy, or with any Maxim in the *Spaniſh* Policy; it has continued uninhabited ever ſince, except now and then ſome body has been left when the Ships watered there.

CHAP. XXI.

A Deſcription of La Plata; *treating of its Name, Situation, and Extent; its Waters and Seaſons, Provinces and Chief Towns; the Perſons, Habits, Genius, Arts, and Exerciſes, of its Natives; their Husbandry, Plants, Animals, and Minerals; with an Abſtract of their civil and religious Hiſtory.*

La Plata, its Name.

THE Province of *La Plata*, or *Paragua*, received its Name from the River *Plata*, which riſing in *Peru*, runs through this Country. It is bounded by the Country of the *Amazons* on the North, by *Brazil* on the Eaſt, by *Patagonia* on the South, and by *Peru* and *Chili* on the Weſt, lying between the 12th and 37th Degrees of South Latitude, and between the 50th and 75th Degrees of Weſtern Longitude. That Part of this Country which lies Weſt of the great River *Paraqua* conſiſts of large Plains, extending two or three hundred Leagues in Length, without any thing that looks like Timber, and ſcarce a Hill or a Stone to be ſeen in them; but in the Country to the Eaſtward of that River, there is a Variety of Hills and Valleys, Woods and Champaign.

Face of the Country.

This is for the moſt Part an Inland Country, and borders upon the *Atlantick Ocean* on the South Side of the Mouth of the River *La Plata*. Lakes they have in great Abundance, and ſome of them very large, particularly that of *Xarayes*. There is another called the Lake of *Ibera*, and a third called *Caracares*. The Sources of their Rivers are ſome of them in the Mountains of *Andes*: Thoſe that riſe run to the South-Eaſt, and fall into the great River *Paraqua*: Others riſe in the Hills which ſeparate this Province from *Brazil*, and running South Weſt, fall into the ſame River *Paragua*, which riſes out of the Lake *Xarayes*, and running South, unites with the *Uraqua*; after which it is called the River of *Plata* till it reaches the *Atlantick Ocean*. Other Rivers of Note are, 1. of *La Plata*, which riſes near *La Plata* in *Peru*, and running to the South-Eaſt, falls into the *Paraqua*, after which it loſes the Name of *Plata*, till it meets with the *Uraqua*, and then it reſumes the Name of *Plata* again. 2. The *Uraqua*, which, riſing in the Mountains that divide *Brazil* from this Province, runs South till it unites with the *Paragua*. 3. The *Parana*, another very large Stream. 4. The *Salado*, ſo named from the Saltneſs of its Waters. 5. The *Tercero*, which riſes in the *Andes*, and running almoſt due Eaſt, falls into the *Paragua* in 34 Degrees, not far from the Town of *Sprcto Sancto*.

There are a Multitude of other Rivers both on the Eaſt and Weſt of this Province, which fall into the great River *Paragua*, and ſo fertilize the Plains, that they abound in good Meadow and Paſture Grounds.

Seaſons.

As to the Seaſons, the North Part of this Country has in *November* and *December* annually very heavy Rains, Storms, and Tempeſts: And at this time all the flat Country is over-flow'd, and their Reſervoirs of Water are repleniſh'd. Their Lands are made capable of Tillage; and whenever theſe Rains fail, it occaſions a Famine. The Beginning of the rainy Seaſon is the Time of ſowing and planting, and the fair Seaſon, which follows, is their Harveſt. But in that Part of the the Country which lies South of the Tropick of Capricorn, it is their Summer in *November*, *December*, and *January*: And thoſe Rivers which riſe within the Tropicks, after the Rains are fallen within the Tropicks, overflow their Banks

as they paſs through the South Part of this Country, rendering it as fruitful as the *Nile* does *Egypt*.

Provinces. *La Plata* may be thrown into two grand Diviſions, *viz.* The Provinces on the Eaſt Side of the River *Paragua*; and thoſe that lie Weſt of the ſaid River. The Provinces on the Eaſt Side of the *Paragua*, are thoſe of, 1. *Paragua Proper*, a perfect *Terra Incognita*. No Author or Traveller pretends to give any Deſcription of it, or to know the Extent of it. 2. *Guayra*, bounded by *Paragua Proper* on the North. The chief Towns whereof are, *Guayra*, *Xavier*, and *Conception*. 3. The Province of *Parana*, bounded by that of *Guayra* on the North. The chief Towns whereof are, *Acarai*, *Ignatio*, and *Itapua*. 4. The Province of *Uragua*, bounded by *Guayra* on the North. The chief Towns whereof are, *Purification*, and *La Capia*, or *Yapua*. All theſe Provinces have *Brazil*, on their Eaſt. On the Weſt of *Paraguа* are, 1. The Province of *Tucuman*, bounded by *Peru* on the North. The chief Towns whereof are, 1ſt, *St. Jago de Iſtero*, ſituate almoſt in the Middle of the Province; a Biſhop's See and Univerſity, the Capital of *Tucuman*, and lies in the Midway between *Potoſi* and *Buenos Ayres*, being 250 Leagues from each. The Plate is brought from *Potoſi* hither on the Backs of Mules, but from *St. Jago* to *Buenos Ayres* it is carried in Waggons. 2*dly*, *Cordua*, about an hundred Leagues South of *St. Jago*, on the Road to *Buenos Ayres*. It is a Biſhop's See, and Univerſity, and has ſeveral fine Convents in it. The Inhabitants are vaſtly rich, and the Clergy ſtill richer than the Laity. 3*dly*, *Santa*, on the Road from *St. Jago* to *Potoſi*, almoſt in the Midway. 2. The Province of *La Plata Proper*. The chief Towns whereof are, 1ſt, *Buenos Ayres*, ſo named from its healthful Situation. It ſtands on the South Side of the River *La Plata*, 50 Leagues from the Mouth of it; is a Biſhop's See, having five Churches beſides the Cathedral, and ſeveral Convents. It is a very great Mart, for hither all *European* Merchandize is brought, and ſent from hence to *Peru* and *Chili*; and hither great Numbers of *Negroes* alſo are brought, and ſold to *Peru* and *Chili*; which Traffick the *Engliſh* have the Advantage of, by Virtue of the *Aſſiento Contract*. 2*dly*, *Santa Fe*, a well-built Town, ſituate at the Conflux of the Rivers *Salado* and *Paragua*, between two and three hundred Miles North-Weſt from *Buenos Ayres*. 3*dly*, *Aſſumption*, ſituate at the Conflux of the Rivers *La Plata* and *Paragua*, between four and five hundred Miles North of *Santa Fe*. A well-built populous Town, and the Sea of a Biſhop.

Buenos Ayres. *Santa Fe* *Aſſumption Town*

The Jeſuits, who are in a Manner Sovereigns of that Part of the Country which lies between *Brazil* on the Eaſt, and the great River *Paraguа* on the Weſt, boaſt of their having reduced theſe ſavage Nations to Civility, and made Chriſtians of them, purely by their Preaching. Certain it is, they govern them abſolutely both in Spirituals and Temporals. For the building of a Town here, the Fathers uſually pitch upon ſome Eminence on the Side of a Lake or River, where they have Plenty of Wood, and here they firſt form a Square, on the Side of which uſually ſtands a handſome Church, their Schools, the Father's Houſe who preſides in the Canton, and the Halls and Offices of their Courts of Juſtice, and from the Square run broad handſome Streets of a great Length. They have twenty ſix of theſe Cantons on the Banks of the Rivers *Uragua* and *Parana*, each of them containing eight hundred or a thouſand Houſes, and ſeven or eight thouſand Souls, under the Government of two Miſſionaries. The Church of each Canton is uſually built of Brick or Stone, and has a lofty Steeple, containing four or five Bells. It is as richly furniſh'd and adorn'd as the *Spaniſh* Churches in *Europe*. But notwithſtanding the advantageous Situation of theſe *Indian* Towns, and the Beauty of their publick Buildings, the common Houſes were generally mean at firſt. The Materials were uſually Earth and Clay, and one Room ſerved the whole Family: Here they lay promiſcuouſly, ſome on the Skins of Beaſts on the Floor, and others in Hammocks of Net-work; their Kitchin Utenſils being only ſome few Pots, Pans, and Calabaſhes, with Wooden Spits, and Gridirons. But they begin to improve both in their Buildings, and Furniture, ſince the Jeſuits have taught them to make Tiles and inſtructed them in other mechanick Arts.

Building. *Furniture.*

As to the Perſons of the Natives, they are not ſo tall as the *Europeans*. However, they are big-boned, ſtrong, well-ſet Men, and their Legs uſually pretty thick: Their Faces are flat, and rather round than oval, and their Complexion olive: They have black Hair as ſtrong as Horſe-hair, which they wear very long before they are converted. Thoſe who have not conformed to the *Spaniſh* Cuſtoms, wear only the Skin of ſome Beaſt about the Middle of their Bodies; and the better Sort have another Skin which ſerves for a Mantle. The ordinary Women have their Arms, Shoulders, and Breaſts bare, and no Covering on their Heads but their Hair, which they wear of an immoderate Length. Their Ornaments are glittering Fiſh Bones, which they wear in their Ears, and about their Necks and Arms, in Chains; and their Chiefs have a Kind of tripple Crown upon their Heads. Boys and Girls go perfectly naked. They ſeem to be a brave People, having defeated ſeveral Bodies of *Spaniards* when they firſt invaded their Country. It was a great many Years before the *Spaniards* could fix themſelves even in the Plains: But in the Woods and Mountains, to the Eaſtward of the River *Paraguа*, the Natives were never ſubdued, till the Jeſuits found Means to inſinuate themſelves into their good Opinion. Their principal Food is *Indian* Corn, which they beat to Flour in a Mortar, and bake with Fleſh, or make Cakes of it on the Hearth: They eat all manner of Fiſh, Fleſh, and Fowl, and are the greateſt Gluttons in the World: They are extreme lazy and indolent, and dull at Invention, but will imitate almoſt any thing you give them a Pattern of: Several of them are become ſuch excellent Mechanicks, that they make Organs and other muſical Inſtruments as good as thoſe that are brought from *Europe*: Others are Watch-makers, Painters, and Muſicians, in all which Arts they have been inſtructed by the Jeſuit Miſſionaries. Their Exerciſes and Diverſions are at preſent either rural Sports, ſuch as Hunting, Fiſhing, and Fowling, or Dancing and Feaſting, as in other Countries: But their principal Diverſion, or rather Buſineſs, before the *Spaniards* brought them into fix'd Habitations, was to rove about the Country from Place to Place.

Perſons. *Habits.* *Food.*

They have a wooden Plow, which does not enter the Ground above three Inches deep, and yet they have uſually a very plentiful Crop of *Turkey* or *Indian* Corn. The Miſſionary of every Canton has commonly forty or fifty Acres ſown with *European* Wheat. Theſe *Indians* are ſo voracious, that the Mother will hatch the Meat from her Child, and eat all that comes in ſight of them: For which Reaſon each Miſſionary has a great Barn, into which he forces them to lay up a certain Proportion of Corn, which he gives them back at Seed-time: Notwithſtanding which they ſometimes deceive the Miſſionary, or rather themſelves. At their Seed time, in *June* or *July*, the

the Miſſionary allots each *Indian* two or three Oxen to plow withal. On Default of Induſtry, theſe People are corrected in the ſame Manner as our Children, only that inſtead of Birch they make uſe of a Scourge: This is perform'd by ſome *Indian* or other, who gives the Delinquent twenty four or more Strokes, according to the Miſſionary's Order. In the Kitchen Gardens here, grow all the Year round divers Sorts of Sallad, Herbs, Endive, Cichory-Roots, Parſnips, Turnips, Spinage, Radiſhes, Cabbages, Carrots, Beet-Roots, Parſley, Aniſeed, Fennel-Seed, Coriander-Seed, Melons, Cucumbers, and divers Sorts of *Indian* Roots: In the Phyſick-Garden, Mint, Rue, Roſemary, Pimpernel, ſweet Marjoram, *&c.* The Flower-Garden produces white Lillies, *Indian* Lillies, yellow and blue Violets, Poppies, and many Sorts of *Indian* Flowers. In the Orchard are Apple and Pear Trees, and Hazel nut Trees; (but theſe two laſt will bear no Fruit here, tho' they grow very lofty;) Peaches, Pomegranates, ſweet and ſower Lemons, ſweet and ſower Citrons, Vanilleeys, and divers other *Indian* Fruits. A Vineyard ſometimes will produce five hundred large Casks of Wine in one Year. A Cask of Wine is ſold ſometimes for twenty or thirty Crowns; a great Price for ſuch an unwholſome Wine as this. In the Plains on the Weſt Side of the *Uraqua*, there is not a native Tree to be ſeen fit for Timber or Fuel; but the *Spaniards* have of late Years planted ſuch Abundance of Peaches, Almonds, and Figs, that there are now vaſt Woods of them. On the contrary, the Country to the Eaſtward of the River *Paraqua*, has naturally large Woods and Foreſts, well replenifhed with Timber. They have the fineſt Paſtures and Meadows in the World, both in the Eaſt and Weſtern Parts of *La Plata*; however, there is no mowing of Graſs, or making of Hay here. They have whole Fields of Cotton, but no Hemp or Flax growing in the Country.

Cattle. They had no great Stock of Cattle before the *Spaniards* imported *European* Animals; the principal were *Indian* Sheep, Goats, Swine, and Deer. But the *European* Cattle are ſo vaſtly increaſed of late Years, that there is ſcarce a Canton which has leſs than three or four thouſand Horſes and Mules, with black Cattle in Proportion, and thirty or forty thouſand *European* Sheep in ſome of them: They abound alſo in Hogs, Goats, and Poultry; and have Plenty of Fiſh in their Rivers. They ſee ſometimes fourteen or fifteen thouſand Cattle feeding together, that have no particular Owner, but any one ſends and takes what he pleaſes. One Sheep is more valued there than three Horſes, on account of their Wooll; for a good Horſe may be purchaſed for a Knife of the Value of Six pence; and a Bridle is of more Value than three Horſes, and a Horſe-ſhoe is worth ſix Horſes. As to Minerals, there are few or none in the flat Country; and tho' 'tis reported the Jeſuits have diſcovered ſome Gold Mines in the Mountains, thoſe Fathers do not acknowledge there are any.

As the Natives of *La Plata* were divided into a Multitude of Tribes, they knew nothing of the general Hiſtory of their Country when the *Spaniards* arrived: And what they received by Tradition relating to their particular Clans, could be very little relied on, as they were not acquainted with Letters. All that we know of them is, that thoſe on the Weſt Side of the River *Paraqua* lived a wandering Life like the *Tartars*, and thoſe on the Eaſt Side of that River in Caves: That the *Spaniards* and *Portugueſe* made ſeveral Attempts in vain to ſubdue them from *Brazil* and the River *La Plata*, before the *Spaniſh* Governors of *Peru* and *Chili* attacked them from the Weſt, and made a complete Conqueſt of that Country.

The firſt Adventurer that penetrated into this Country was *Alexius Garcia*, a *Portugueſe*, who in the Year 1524, march'd quite cro' *La Plata*, as far as the Borders of *Peru*, where having amaſs'd a vaſt Quantity of Plate, he was cut off in his Return with moſt Part of his Men; and *George Sedenho*, with ſixty *Portugueſe*, having been ſent out to ſupport him, was alſo cut in Pieces with all his Party. In the Year 1526, *Sebaſtian Cabot* entered the Mouth of the River *La Plata*, and ſailing up that River as far as where *Garcia* was kill'd, there met with the Plate he had got on the Confines of *Peru*, which he purchaſed of the Natives for a Trifle; and imagining it to be the Product of that Country, concluded he had made a very important Diſcovery. Whereupon he erected a Fort on the North Side of the River, near where the Town of *Aſſumption* now ſtands: He alſo detach'd *Alvaro Ramon* up the River *Uraqua*, to get further Intelligence of the ſuppoſed Mines; but *Ramon*'s Ship run a-ground, and he and his People were cut off by the Natives. After which, *Cabot* removed from that Shore, and built another Fort on the South of the River *Plata*, where *Eſpiritu Santo* now ſtands, and leaving a Garriſon in it, returned to *Spain* for a Reinforcement. But the Natives ſurpriz'd the Fort ſoon after he was gone, and put the Garriſon to the Sword.

However, *Cabot* repreſenting to the Court of *Spain* that *La Plata* was one of the richeſt Countries in the World, ſeveral of the beſt Families of that Kingdom made Intereſt to be ſent on an Expedition thither. Whereupon a Body of two and twenty hundred Landmen, beſides Mariners, were imbark'd for the River of *Plata*, the whole being commanded by *Don Peter de Mendoza*, the Emperor's Sewer; who arriving at the Mouth of the River *La Plata*, founded the Town of *Puenos Ayres*, in the Year 1535, but not without great Oppoſition from the Natives; and Proviſions ſoon growing ſcarce, the Governor thought fit to return to *Spain*, leaving *Ojeda* his Deputy-Governor. But *Ojeda* thought fit to abandon *Buenos Ayres*, and built the Fort of *Aſſumption*, whither he removed with his half-ſtarv'd Garriſon. The Governor *Alvaro Nunez Cabeca de Vaca* afterwards made further Diſcoveries, planting Colonies as far as the North of *Tucuman*, and he and his Succeſſor rebuilt *Buenos Ayres*, and ſome other Towns near the Mouth of the River *La Plata*: And in 1553, *Diamos de Iguiz* being, detach'd from *Chili*, built the City of *St. Jago*, the Metropolis of *La Plata*; and two Years afterwards *John Gomez Zarita* was ſent from *Chili* to *La Plata*, who built the Town of *Cordua*, and made an entire Conqueſt of the Country as far as the River *Paraqua*. But the Provinces to the Eaſtward of that River were never conquer'd by Force, but reduced by the Addreſs of the Jeſuits under the Dominion of the Crown of *Spain*; and that Court, in return for that Service, confer'd the Property of that Country on thoſe Fathers.

Religion of the Natives. As to the antient Religion of the Natives of *La Plata*, they worſhipped the Sun, Moon, and Stars, and Thunder and Lightning, as the *Peruvians* did, and in ſome Parts of the Country, Trees, Stones, Rivers, Animals, and almoſt every Thing, animate and inanimate. As to a great Serpent the Jeſuits tell us of, that was as big, about as an Ox, and one of the Objects of their Adoration, we may without Offence ſuſpend our Belief of ſuch Relations.

In

In their modern Religion, the People are as good Catholicks as the Jesuits can make them, and the most obedient Vassals to that Order.

Marriages. These *Indians* anciently allow'd both of Poligamy and Concubinage, and the greatest Objection they have to Christianity is, its confining them to one Woman. The Jesuits, when a Virgin is fourteen, and a Lad sixteen, do not suffer them to remain longer unmarry'd, for fear of worse Consequences. Upon the Marriage, it is the Missionary that provides the Hutt, and the Wedding Clothes; a Bed they never want, Bull-Hides being cheap enough; and the Wedding Dinner is made with a fat Cow, which is likewise presented by the Missionary. Their Marriage Agreement consists only in two Articles: The Woman promises to fetch what Water the Husband wants from the River, in lieu of which he engages to furnish the Kitchen with Fuel. There is one Thing peculiar in their Marriages, that here the Man does not woe the Woman, but the Woman the Man: In this Case the Maid comes to the Missionary, and says, Father, I have an Inclination to marry such or such a one, if you will give your Consent. Whereupon the Missionary sending for the Person, says, My Son, such or such a one is desirous to be marry'd to you; are you contented she should? Unto which if he replies *Yes*, then the Match is made, and wants nothing but the Priest's Blessing.

CHAP. XXII.

A Description of the Country of the Amazons; *treating of its Name, Extent, and Discovery; its River, Air, Seasons, Vegetables, and Animals; the Genius, Habits, &c. of the Natives.*

Name of the Country.

THE Country of the *Amazons* obtained its Name from a supposed Nation of Female Warriours, that were said to inhabit the Banks of one of the greatest Rivers in the World, which runs through this Country from West to East. There is not a Circumstance related by the Antients of the *Asiatick Amazons*, which has not been applied to these by the Moderns; tho' all the Ground there was for these Fictions seems to have been, that there were seen some Women mingled with the Men that came to gaze on the *Spaniards*, when they first invaded this Country; which is bounded by the Equator, which separates it from *Terra Firma*, on the North; by *Brazil* and the *Atlantick Ocean* on the East; by *Brazil* and *La Plata* towards the South; and by *Peru* on the South West; lying between the Equator and the 15th Degree of South Latitude, and between 50 and 75 Degrees of Western Longitude.

The Situation and Extent.

The River *Amazon* discover'd by *Gonsalo Pizarro*.

Gonsalo Pizarro, Brother to the Marquis, was the first that discovered this mighty River, in the Year 1540, when he was Governor of *Quitto*; which Expedition of his we have mentioned in the History of *Peru*. The Hardships which he, and the four hundred and fifty veteran *Spaniards* underwent therein, are almost unexpressible. Only Fourscore of the returned to *Peru*, and these almost without Clothes, and so sun burnt and emaciated with Fatigue and Want of Food, that their nearest Friends scarce knew them. Such Hazards did the first *Spanish* Adventurers struggle with in Search of Gold, even when they had before acquired enough. It is a Question whether *Gonsalo Pizarro*, who was one of the Proprietors of the Mines of *Potosi*, had not amass'd more than a Million of Crowns before he entered upon this Expedition.

Peter de Orsua attempts to discover the Country.

Peter de Orsua, who obtained a Commission in the Year 1550, to subdue the Provinces bordering on the River *Amazon*, embarked on the River *Napa* with seven hundred armed *Spaniards* and two thousand *Indians*, and sailed down the Stream two or three hundred Leagues, till he came to the Confluence of the two Rivers *Amazon* and *Napa*, and continuing his Voyage two hundred Leagues further, was killed in a Mutiny of his Men. Several other Adventurers made the like Attempts afterwards, but most of them prov'd unfortunate, till two Monks and some Soldiers Two Friars set out from *Quitto* in *Peru*, in the Year 1635, and embarking on the River *Amazon*, sailed the whole Length of it till they arrived at *Para* in *Brazil*. These Friars having given an Account of their Voyage to the Governor of *Brazil*, he embark'd seventy *Portuguese* and two thousand *Indians*, and ordered them to sail up the River, under the Command of *Texeira*, who, by the Help of the Easterly Wind, sailed up against the Current till he arrived at *Los Reyes*, a Town of *Quitto* in *Peru*. The River not being navigable higher for his Vessels, he went by Land to the City of *Quitto*, where he was kindly received by the *Spanish* Governor; and the Governor sent Father *De Acuna*, and another *Spanish* Jesuit, down the River with him, ordering them to embark for *Spain* when they arrived at *Brazil*, and communicate the Observations they should make in this Voyage to his Catholick Majesty. From the Relations they published, we learn that the River *Amazon* rises in *Quitto*, almost under the Equator, and running South East till it unites with the River *Napa* continues its Course almost due East for 26 Degrees of Longitude, and then returning to the North, by many Mouths discharges itself into the *Atlantick Ocean*, almost under the Equator. They compute, that, with all its Turnings and Windings, it does not run less than 1800 Leagues; and observe that it is ordinarily 2 or 3 Leagues broad; and at the Mouth fifty or sixty Leagues broad; that there is one Streight where it is not above a Quarter of a Mile over, and that there are near two hundred Rivers which fall into it.

The Air of the Country about it is cooler than could be expected so near the Equator, which proceeds from the heavy Rains, that occasion the Rivers to over flow their Banks one half of the Year; from the cloudy Weather, from the Shortness of the Days, and from a brisk Easterly Wind that blows frequently quite through the Country. Travellers also observe, that they have most terrible Thunder and Lightning great Part of the Year: And it may properly be said they have two Summers and two Winters every Year.

The

The Trees here are Ever-greens, and they have Fruits, Flowers, and Herbage all the Year round. Their Fruits are Cocoa-nuts, Anana's, or Pine-apples, Guava's, Banana's, and such other Fruits as are usually found between the Tropicks. Their Forest and Timber Trees are Cedar, *Brazil* Wood, Oak, Ebony, Logwood, Iron-wood, the Canela, or Cinamon, and several Sorts of dying Wood. They have also *Indian* Corn, and the Cassavi Root, of which they make Flower and Bread; Tobacco, Cotton, Sugar, Yams, Potatoes, Sarsaparilla, and other Roots. They have also Plenty of Venison, Fish, and Fowl; among which they mention Deer, *Indian* Sheep and Goats, Guano's, Manatee, Armadillo's, Tortoise, and vast Flocks of Parrots of all Colours.

The Natives are of the ordinary Stature of Men: They have good Features, long black Hair, and black Eyes, and their Complexion is a Copper Colour; whereas the Natives of *Africa*, in the same Latitude, are all *Negroes*. As to the Nation of *Amazons*, they are now no where to be found, any more than the Giants and Canibals the first Adventurers mentioned. The People have as much Humanity or more than the *Europeans* who invaded them, and a Genius for Painting and some mechanick Arts; particularly they make good Joyners Work, tho' they have no other Tools than such as are edged with sharp Stones. They spin and weave themselves Cotton Garments, and are pretty decently cloth'd: Their Earthen-Ware is much admir'd: But they have not learnt to make Bricks, or build with Stone, the Materials of their Houses being of Wood, Thatch, and Clay, but one Floor, and usually on some Eminence near the River Side.

The Banks of every River are inhabited by a distinct People, commanded by their respective Sovereigns, who are distinguish'd by Coronets of beautiful Feathers. Their Arms are Bows, Arrows, and Spears, and they make War on each other by Water as well as Land. Whatever their Pretensions are for War, their principal End in it is to make Slaves; however, they use their Slaves with great Humanity, and never sell them to Foreigners.

They worship Images, and carry them with them in their Expeditions; but have no Temples dedicated to any God, or any Order of Priests. They countenance both Polygamy and Concubinage. As to Gold and Silver Mines, the *Spaniards* have not yet met with any here, tho' they find some Gold in the Rivulets, that fall into the River *Amazon* near its Sources. The *Spaniards* made great Efforts from *Peru* to subdue this Country while they had a Notion it abounded in Gold, but seem to have neglected the Discovery ever since they were undeceiv'd in this Particular.

CHAP. XXIII.

A Description of the Spanish *Islands, particularly*, Cuba, Hispaniola, *and* Porto Rico.

THE three principal *Spanish* Islands that remain to be described, are *Cuba*, *Hispaniola*, and *Porto Rico*.

The Island of *Cuba* is situated between the 20th Degree of Northern Latitude and the Tropick of *Cancer*, and between the 74th and 87th Degrees of Western Longitude, 30 Leagues North of *Jamaica*, and about as many South of Cape *Florida*, being near 250 Leagues in Length, and generally between 20 and 30 Leagues broad. A Ridge of Mountains runs almost through the Island from East to West, well replenish'd with Timber and other Trees; but the Land near the Shore is generally a plain champaign Country. There are Abundance of Rivulets which run from the Mountains North and South, but none of them large. No Place in the World has better Harbours, the chief of which are *St. Jago*, and that of the *Havana*. They have no Winters here, but great Rains and Tempests usually when the Sun is vertical, which renders the Climate tolerable. The driest Season is when the Sun is at the greatest Distance from them; and then the Morning is much the hottest Part of the Day; for towards Noon the Sea Breeze begins to blow pretty briskly, and continues to do so till the Evening. From *October* to *April* they have brisk North or North West Winds at the Full and Change of the Moon; and in *December* and *January* they frequently increase into Storms, tho' that be their fair Season.

The chief Towns in the Island are, 1. *St. Jago*, situated at the Bottom of a fine Bay, in the South-East Part of the Island, which, with some small Islands, form a commodious Harbour: It was built by General *James Velasquez*, about the Year 1514: And it may still be stiled the Capital of *Cuba*, being the only Bishop's See in it, but is very much upon the Decline, both the Bishop and Civil Governor residing at the *Havana*, for the most Part. 2. The *Havana*, situate at the North-West Part of the Island, about five hundred Miles to the Westward of *St. Jago*. It is a little City, about half a League in Compass, seated in a Plain. It is almost round, inclosed with low Walls on the Land Side, and defended on the other Part by Water. The Inhabitants are about four thousand Souls, *Spaniards*, *Mulattoes*, and *Blacks*, who live most of them in low Houses. The Women are beautiful, and the Men ingenious. The Governor hath the Title of Captain-General of the Island, and administers Justice with the Assistance of a Lieutenant, who is appointed by the Council of the *Indies*. The Inhabitants are poor, having no Trade but Tobacco and Sugar; and all the Labour falls upon the *Blacks*. The City is encompassed on two Sides by its Harbour, which is so deep that the Ships anchor within a few Steps of the Shore. It is defended by three Castles, the chief of them called *Del Morro*, the second *De la Punta*, and the third only *The Fort*. 3. *Puerto*, situated at the North-East Part of the Island, upon a good Harbour for small Vessels. 4. *Porto del Principe*, situated on the North Side of the Island. 5. *Santa Cruz*, situated also on the North Side of the Island, upon a very good Harbour. 6. *Trinidad*, situate at the Bottom of a Bay on the South Side of the Island. 7. *Spirito Sancto*, situate also on the South Side of the Island.

This Island produces the same Animals as the neighbouring Continent; but there is no Place Animals.

to be

where the Seas and Rivers abound more with Crocodiles, from whence several small Islands upon this Coast have obtained the Name of *The Crocodile Islands*. Tortoises and Manatee are also exceeding plentiful here; and the *European* Cattle are so vastly increased that they run wild, and are killed chiefly for their Hides and Tallow; and their Horses are said to be the best Breed in *America*. Their Timber Trees are Cedar, Cotton, Oaks, Pines, Palms, Cocoa nut Trees, and such others as are usually found between the Tropicks. Their Fruits are Plaintains, Banana's, Ananas's, Guava's, Oranges, Lemons, Grapes, and other Fruits introduced by the *Spaniards*; but their Wine turns sour and will not keep. They have also Ginger, Cassia, Fistula, Aloes, and long Pepper; but as to Cinamon, and other fine Spices, they are only to be found in the *East-Indies*. There are bituminous Fountains in the Island, which produce a Substance that serves instead of Pitch: And there is a Stone Quarry where vast Quantities of Flints are found, of the Shape and Size of Cannon Balls. Travellers mention also Gold Mines in this Island; but if there were any they are exhausted, tho' there are some of Copper not far from *St. Jago*.

Trees and Fruits. Bitumen. Stones. Mines.

Columbus first discovered this Island, as related in the first Chapter of *America*; but the *Spaniards* fixing first at *Hispaniola* on account of the Gold Mines there, *Cuba* was not entirely conquered till the Year 1512, or 1514; *Don James Velasquez* having the Honour of reducing it. The *Spaniards* have frequently been disturb'd in the Possession of it by their Enemies, and the Buccaneers; particularly Captain *Cliff* took the Capital City of *St. Jago* in the Year 1601, and Captain *Morgan* the Town of *Porto del Principe*, in the Year 1699.

History.

2. The Island of *Hispaniola* is situated between 15 and 20 Degrees of North Latitude, and between 66 and 75 Degrees of Western Longitude, being about eighty Leagues in Length, and about forty Leagues broad, and lies fifteen Leagues to the Eastward of *Cuba*, twenty Leagues East of *Jamaica*, and upwards of an hundred Leagues North of *Terra-Firma*. The Name the *Indians* gave it antiently was *Bohio*, but *Columbus* called it *Hispaniola*, or *Little Spain*, and it was frequently called *Dominica*, or *Domingo*, from its Capital.

Hispaniola. Name.

As to the Face of the Country, there are Mountains in the Middle of it well planted with Forest Trees, and other Mountains more barren, in which formerly were Gold Mines, that seem to be entirely exhausted at this Day. On the North and South are fine fruitful Plains, watered with abundance of pleasant Rivers, of which those on the South Side of the Island are the largest. There are also several Woods and Groves of Timber and Fruit Trees: And no Island hath more secure and commodious Ports. The Air and Seasons are much the same here as in the Island of *Cuba*. The Island may be thrown into two grand Divisions, The South-East Part, which is subject to the *Spaniards*, and The North-West, now subject to the *French*.

Face of the Country. Division.

The chief Towns under the Dominion of the *Spaniards* are, 1. *St. Domingo*, situated on a commodious Harbour on the South Side of the Island. This Town is built after the *Spanish* Model, so often described. It is most delightfully situated, having a fine fruitful Country on the North and East, a large navigable River on the West, and the Ocean on the South, and is the See of an Archbishop. It is also a Royal Audience, the most antient in *America*, and the Seat of the Governor of the Island. There are in it several fine Churches and Monasteries, and it is well fortified. The Inhabitants are *Spaniards*, *Mestices*, *Mulattoes*, and *Albatraces*, a sixth Part of which may be *Spaniards*: And in its flourishing State, it might contain about two thousand Houses; but is very much declin'd of late Years. It was founded by *Bartholomew Columbus*, Brother to the Admiral, in the Year 1494. 2. *Hiney*, 30 Leagues East of *Domingo*, most considerable for its Sugar-works. 3. *Xibo*. 4. *Cotuy*, near the East End of the Island, formerly a rich Town, but now an inconsiderable Place. 5. *Azua*, or *Asso*, a good Port Town, eight Leagues West of *Domingo*. 6. *Conception de la Vega*, 25 Leagues North of *Domingo*, in which is a Cathedral and several parochial Churches, founded by *Columbus*, who from this Town had the Title of Duke *De la Vega*. The Towns subject to the *French* are, 1. *Petit Guaves*, a Port situated in a great Bay at the West End of the Island. 2. *Leogane*, another Port in the same Bay. 3. *Port Louis*, a good Harbour on the South-West. 4. *Cape St. Nicholas*, the most Easterly Settlement the *French* have on the North, near which they have the Fort *De Paix*.

Chief Towns of the *Spanish*. Hispaniola. *French*.

As the South-East Part is under the *Spaniards*, and the North-West subject to the *French*, consequently the *Spaniards* and *French* are Lords of their respective Districts; but the *Criols*, *Mestices*, *Negroes*, and *Albatraces*, are much more numerous than their *European* Lords, tho' their Slavery is as intolerable here as upon the Continent; but there is this Difference between the *French* and the *Spanish* Settlements, that the *French* apply themselves to Planting sometimes, whereas the *Spaniards* live a lazy Life, depending on their Slaves entirely for their Subsistence. The Stature and Complexion of the Natives are the same as in the like Climates on the Continent. There may be observed a great Variety of Features and Complexions here, and in all the *European* Colonies in *America*.

When the *Spaniards* first discovered *Hispaniola* and the neighbouring Islands, there was not one four-footed Animal upon them, unless some little Dogs that could not bark: But the *Spaniards* importing Horses, Oxen, Asses, Mules, Sheep, Hogs, Dogs, and Cats, they multiply'd prodigiously; and the *Spaniards* afterwards deserted this Island, having first destroyed the Natives, the black Cattle ran wild in the Mountains and Forests, and for many Years were killed by the Hunters and Buccaneers for their Hides and Tallow, of which incredible Quantities were exported to *Europe*: And here the Buccaneers used to victual their Ships with Beef and Pork, and sell the same Kind of Provisions to the Shipping that touch'd there; but since the *French* became Masters of the North West Part of the Island, and the Number of Cattle is decreased, they have apply'd themselves to planting Sugar, Tobacco, &c. As to the feather'd Kind, there is a Sort of Fowls in their Woods equal to our Poultry, which the *Spaniards* call Pintado's, and great Numbers of Parrots of various Colours. Here is also the Carpenter-Bird, the Cabrero, Men-of-War Birds, Ravens, Crows, Swallows, Ducks, Teal, &c. As to Reptiles and Insects, there are Serpents of various Kinds, but none of them venomous, Chego's, Musketo's, Fire-Flies, Crickets, and Millipedes. The Crocodiles and Tortoises also are as numerous here, as in any Place of the World, and they have Plenty of Fish in their Seas and Rivers. The principal Forest Trees on *Hispaniola* are the Cedar, the Oak, the Pine, the Mahoe-Tree, the Acoma-Tree, Brasil, and other dying Woods, and the Manchinil, the Fruit of which last is poisonous. They have also several Sorts of Palms, with several Kinds of Fruit-Trees, such

Animals.

ſuch as Banana's, Plantains, Guava's, Anana's, Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, Limes, Grapes, Apricots, Caramite-Trees, the Genipa-Tree, and the Abelcoſe. But the principal Produce of the Iſland at this Day is Sugar, of which the *French* as well as the *Spaniards* have very large Plantations: And the great Frugality of the *French*, enables them to ſell this Merchandize cheaper than the *Britiſh* Colonies can do, which conſequently muſt diminiſh our Trade in that Particular. They plant Tobacco alſo in *Hiſpaniola*, and have ſeveral Gums and Drugs that are uſed in Medicine, ſuch as Gum-Elema, Guaiacum, Aloes, Caſſia, and China-Root.

The Hiſtory.

The firſt Diſcoverer of this Iſland, and Part of its Hiſtory, have been already treated of. We ſhall add in this Place, that the *Spaniards*, after they had made an entire Conqueſt of it, lived in great Splendor here for many Years, till they had exhauſted the Gold Mines, and worn out the Natives in the working of them. After which the *Spaniards* deſerted the Iſland themſelves, and went over to the Continent, moſt of them to *Peru* and *Chili*. Whereupon this Iſland became the Habitation of wild Beaſts, till Outlaws, Buccaneers, and Pirates of all Nations began to make Settlements here, and maintain themſelves by hunting the wild Cattle on Shore, and the Prizes they made at Sea, or by plundering the maritime Towns in thoſe Seas. The *Spaniards* finding their Commerce interrupted by theſe Free-booters, thought fit to ſend Colonies thither, and repoſſeſs themſelves of the South-Eaſt Part of the Iſland again, but could not drive the Buccaneers from the North Weſt Coaſt: And theſe being moſt of them *French*, his moſt Chriſtian Majeſty ſent a Governor thither, and obliged theſe diſorderly People to build Towns, cultivate their Lands, and live in ſubjection to the Laws of *France*, ſince which time they have made prodigious Improvements.

Sir *Francis Drake*, in 1586, took *St. Domingo* by Storm with twelve hundred Men, and then quitted it again. It ſeems to have been a Maxim then in *England*, to humble the Pride of the *Spaniards*, but not abſolutely to drive them from their Settlements. But *Cromwell* and his Miniſtry were of a different Mind. He ſent the Admirals *Penn* and *Venables* thither in 1654, with a fine Fleet and ten thouſand Land-men, who had infallibly made themſelves Maſters of the Iſland, if ſome that envied *Cromwell* that glorious Conqueſt had not defeated the Deſign by unneceſſary Delays. However, theſe Forces did the Nation the next beſt Service they could poſſibly have performed, in making a Conqueſt of *Jamaica*, which the *Engliſh* have kept Poſſeſſion of to this Day.

Cromwell ſends the Forces to Conqueſt of *Hiſpaniola*.

The Forces ſent to *Jamaica*.

Iſlands on the Coaſt of *Hiſpaniola*.

There are ſeveral ſmall Iſlands near the Coaſt of *Hiſpaniola*, of which the Chief are *Savona*, *St. Catalina*, *Navaſſa*, *Gonaibo*, and *Tortuga*.

Porto Rico. Situation and Extent.

3. The Iſland of *Porto Rico* is ſituated in 18 Degrees of Northern Latitude, and between 64 and 66 Degrees of Weſtern Longitude, being about forty Leagues in Length from Eaſt to Weſt, and twenty in Breadth from North to South, and lies about twenty Leagues Eaſt of *Hiſpaniola*. The *Indian* Name was *Boriquen*, and *Columbus* called it *St. John*, but the chief Town being afterwards built upon a commodious Harbour called *Porto Rico*, the Iſland loſt both its former Names. The whole Iſland is pleaſantly diverſified with Woods, Hills and Valleys, and is well watered with Springs and Rivers; only on the little Iſland, on which the City of *Porto Rico* ſtands, they have neither Spring or Brook, but fetch their freſh Water from the main Iſland, or preſerve it in the Time of Rain in Ciſterns and Reſervoirs.

Name.

Face of the Country.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Porto Rico*, or *St. John's*, ſituated on a ſmall Iſland about two Miles in Length, and joined to the main Iſland by a narrow Cauſey. The Town ſtands upon an Eminence, and is about half a League in Circumference, and being a Biſhop's See, has a handſome Cathedral, and ſix or ſeven parochial and conventual Churches. The Entrance of the Harbour is very narrow, and defended by ſtrong Forts and Batteries, which render the Town inacceſſible by Sea. Nor is the Place leſs pleaſant than it is ſtrong. 2. *St. Germains*, ſituated at the Weſt-End of the Iſland of *Porto Rico*, about four Miles from the Sea. Towns.

Their rainy and tempeſtuous Seaſon is in the Months of *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, when the Sun is near them; and then the Winds in theſe Seas are at South-Eaſt, tho' they are North-Eaſt at other times. It is very fortunate that it rains here in thoſe Months, which would otherwiſe be the hotteſt: And the Sea Breezes are another great Relief; for about eight in the Morning there riſes a freſh Gale of Wind, and blows till four in the Afternoon. The Time of the Rains is uſually unhealthful. Seaſons. Winds.

St. John de Porto Rico was diſcovered by *Columbus* in 1493, but he being employed in Diſcoveries on the Continent afterwards, it was not reduced under the *Spaniards* till the Year 1510; when *John Ponce de Leon*, Deputy-Governor of *Hiſpaniola*, embarking with ſome few *Spaniards*, arrived at *Boriquen*, where pretending he only came to eſtabliſh a friendly Commerce with the Natives, the chief Cacique made an Alliance with the *Spaniards*, ſhewing them two Rivers wherein were ſome Gold Sands. Whereupon *Ponce de Leon* introducing a good Number of *Spaniards*, and building ſeveral Forts in the Iſland, uſurp'd the Dominion of it: And not content with taking the Country from the Natives, he obtained a Commiſſion to be Governor of the Iſland, under Colour whereof he made all the People Slaves, dividing them among his Captains and Followers, who employed thoſe poor People in all manner of Drudgery, uſing them as unmercifully as the *Spaniards* had done the Natives of *Hiſpaniola*. Whereupon ſome of the *Indians* run away to the Woods and Mountains, and others ſtood upon their Defence; but not being in a Condition to reſiſt the Fire Arms, Horſes, and Dogs of the *Spaniards*, they were at length moſt of them compelled to ſubmit to that cruel Bondage, and thoſe that would not, were tortured or torn in Pieces with Dogs. And when repeated Orders came from *Spain* to uſe the People better, thoſe Adventurers repreſented to his Catholick Majeſty that they were Canibals, and procured Leave to make Slaves of all they were pleaſed to denominate ſuch. Hiſtory of this Iſland.

The City of *St. John de Porto Rico* was founded in the Year 1514, and continued in a flouriſhing Condition for many Years. Sir *Francis Drake* gave ſeveral Aſſaults to the Town in the Year 1595, but was beaten from it. The Earl of *Cumberland* had better Succeſs; for he made himſelf Maſter of the Place the next Year, with a Fleet ſet out at his own Expence, aſſiſted by two Regiments of the Queen's. But it was with great Hazard and Difficulty the Earl carry'd the Town: For in an Aſſault he fell from a Rock into the Sea in his Armour, and remained ſo long under Water, that he was almoſt dead. The Earl had determin'd to keep Poſſeſſion of *Porto Rico*, and from thence to have attack'd the other *Spaniſh* Settlements, but loſing more than half his Men by the Bloody-flux in a very ſhort time, he was compelled to ſet ſail for *England* with much leſs Treaſure than he expected to have met with *Porto Rico* founded. The Earl of *Cumberland* takes the Town.

with here; for the *Spaniards* had carried off or concealed all that was valuable. The beſt Prize he met was eighty Pieces of Braſs Cannon.

Produce of Porto Rico

The Soil of *Porto Rico* is rich, producing long coarſe Graſs, which they feed their Cattle with, but never make into Hay. They have good Timber fit for the building of Ships, and Variety of Fruit-Trees. The Country alſo produces Rice and *Indian* Corn, but they make more Bread of the Caſſavi-Root than of Corn. The principal Produce for Exportation is Ginger, Sugar, and Hides. They have more Goats and Hogs than *European* Sheep, and the Mutton they have is poor dry Food: Their Pork is excellent, and their Kids are pretty good Meat: They have alſo all manner of *European* Poultry, and Plenty of Fiſh. Parrots are as common as Crows in *England*, and they are well ſtocked with Wood-Pidgeons and Guanoes. They have alſo Land-Crabs, which burrow in the Ground like Rabbets; but theſe are the Food of Dogs more than of Men. As to Gold Mines, there are none wrought at this Day; nor was there ever any that were very conſiderable; but poſſibly there might be ſome little Gold found in their Rivulets formerly, which invited the *Spaniards* to take Poſſeſſion of the Iſland.

Their Dogs feed on Land-Crabs. Gold none here.

The *Virgins Iſlands* are a Cluſter of barren Rocks, a little to the Eaſtward of the Iſland of *Porto Rico*, through which the Paſſage is ſomething difficult. They are ſcarce worth claiming by the *Spaniards*, or any other Nation.

The Virgins Iſlands.

CHAP. XXIV.

A Deſcription of Brazil; *treating of its Situation, and Extent; its Name, the Face of the Country, Springs, Rivers, Lakes, Seas, Air, Winds, and Seaſons; its Provinces and Chief Towns; the Perſons, Habits, Genius, Arts, &c. of the Natives; its Animals and Vegetables; its Hiſtory and Cuſtoms, civil and religious.*

Brazil ſituation.

BRAZIL, under the Dominion of the King of *Portugal*, is ſituated between the Mouth of the great River *Amazons*, under the Equator, and the Mouth of the River *La Plata*, in 35 Degrees of South Latitude, being bounded by the *Atlantick Ocean* on the North and Eaſt, by the River *La Plata* on the South, and by the Province of *La Plata* and the Country of the *Amazons* on the Weſt; being two thouſand four hundred Miles in Length from North to South in a direct Line, and near four thouſand if we take in all the Turnings and Windings of the Coaſt, but not in many Places more than two hundred Miles broad, tho' in ſome the *Portugueſe* may have penetrated four or five hundred Miles.

Name

The *Portugueſe*, who firſt diſcovered this Country, gave it the Name of *The Holy Croſs*, but it afterwards obtain'd the Name of *Brazil* from the great Abundance of *Brazil* Wood which grows here.

Face of the Country

The Land is rather low than high near the Coaſt, but exceeding pleaſant, being chequer'd with Woods and Meadow Grounds, and the Trees, for the moſt Part, Ever-greens: But on the Weſt Side of it, far within Land, are high Mountains, which ſeparate it from *La Plata*, and in theſe are innumerable Springs and Lakes, from whence iſſue abundance of Rivers that fall into the Rivers *Amazon* and *La Plata*, or run croſs the Country from Weſt to Eaſt into the *Atlantick Ocean*, which laſt are of great Uſe to the *Portugueſe* in turning their Sugar Mills, and meliorating their Lands, which they over flow annually. Through every Province of *Brazil* there runs a great River, which communicates its Name to the Province.

Springs, Lakes, and Rivers

The Sea.

The only Sea that borders upon *Brazil* is, the *Atlantick Ocean*, which waſhing its Coaſts for three thouſand Miles and upwards, forms ſeveral fine Harbours, Bays, Capes, and Promontories; the principal whereof are, Cape *Roque*, the Harbour of *Pernambuco*, or *Recife*, Cape *St. Auguſtin*, the Harbour or Bay of *All Saints*, the Harbour of *Porto Seguro*, the Port and Bay of *Rio Janeiro*, Cape *Frio*, the Port of *St. Vincent*, Cape *St. Mary*, the Port of *St. Catharine*, and, the Port of *St. Salvador*.

Harbours and Capes.

The Seaſons, Air, and Winds throughout this extenſive Country, vary with the ſeveral Situations. The North of *Brazil*, like other Countries in the ſame Situation, is ſubject to great Rains and variable Winds, particularly in the Months of *March* and *September*, when they have Deluges of Rain, with Storms and Tornadoes; but this Part is very little inhabited. The *Portugueſe* only keep Poſſeſſion of the Coaſts, to keep Foreigners out. The Air, Winds, and Seaſons in that Part of *Brazil* which lies between 5 Degrees South Latitude, and the Tropick of *Capricorn*, are the very reverſe to what they are in other Parts of the World in the ſame Latitudes; for here the wet Seaſon begins in *April*, when the South-Eaſt Winds ſet in, with violent Tornadoes, Thunder, and Lightning: And in *September*, when the Wind ſhifts to Eaſt North-Eaſt, it brings with it fair Weather; and this is the Time of their Sugar Harveſt. But two Winds blow upon this Coaſt, the South-Eaſt from *April* to *September*, and the North-Eaſt from *September* to *April* again: But thirty or forty Leagues out at Sea they meet with the conſtant Trade Wind, which blows in the *Atlantick Ocean* all the Year round from the Eaſtward with very little Variation. There is no Country between the Tropicks where the Heats are more tolerable than this. The moſt Southerly Part of *Brazil*, which lies without the Tropick of *Capricorn*, appears to be like other Countries in the ſame Climate, one of the moſt deſirable Parts of the World, having a greater Share of fair Weather, and a more temperate Air than thoſe Countries that are nearer, or thoſe that are removed further from the Equator, and are generally bleſſed with a moſt fruitful Soil. The Winds here are variable, and the little Winter they have, is when the Sun is in the Northern Signs.

Air, Winds, and Seaſons.

Brazil is uſually divided into fifteen Provinces or Captainſhips. 1. The Captainſhip of *Para*, or *Para*. The principal River, which gives Name to the Province, runs through it from South to North, and falls into the Mouth of the River *Amazon*; and the chief Town, called alſo *Para*, or *Pelem*,

Parts of Brazil

Belem, is ſituated at the Mouth of the River *Amazon*. 2. The Captainſhip of *Maragnan*, bounded by *Paria* on the Weſt. The chief Towns whereof are, *St. Lewis de Maragnan*, ſituated in an Iſland made by the Mouths of their three principal Rivers, *Maragnan*, *Tapucary*, and *Mony*: And the Town and Iſland of *St. Lewis* formerly poſſeſs'd by the *French*, and then by the *Dutch*. 3. The Captainſhip of *Siara*. The River *Siara* runs from the South-Weſt to the North-Eaſt, at the Mouth whereof ſtands the Town of *Siara*, and about twenty Leagues to the Eaſtward of it the Fort of *St. Luke*. 4. The Captainſhip of *Potigi*, or *Rio Grande*. The River of *Rio Grande* runs from Weſt to Eaſt, on which ſtands the Town of *Tiguares*, the only one in the Province. 5. The Captainſhip of *Payraba*. The River *Payraba*, running from Weſt to Eaſt, divides this Province in two equal Parts. The Town of *Payraba* lies on the South Side of this River, about five Leagues from the Sea. 6. The Captainſhip of *Tamara*, or *Tamaraca*. The chief River is *Tamara*, in the Mouth whereof lies the Iſland and Town of *Tamaraca*. There is another Town called *Guia*, or *Goyana*, ſituate on the *Goyana*, about three Leagues from the Sea. 7. The Captainſhip of *Pernambuco*, extending two hundred Miles along the Coaſt from North to South, and an hundred and fifty Miles in Breadth from Eaſt to Weſt, and was the principal Province belonging to the *Dutch* when they were in Poſſeſſion of *North-Brazil*. The chief Town whereof was *Pernambuco*, or *The Reciefe*. This Harbour was called *Pernambuco*, or rather *Infernibuco*, the Mouth of Hell, by the *Portugueſe*, on account of the Rocks and Shoals under Water at the Entrance of it. It is compoſed partly of a Peninſula on the Continent, and partly of ſeveral ſmall Iſlands which were built upon and fortify'd in the Time of the *Dutch*. The Peninſula is called *The Reciefe*, and lies a little to the North of Cape *St. Auguſtin*. South of *The Reciefe*, and juſt oppoſite to it, is an Iſland built upon, and called *Maurice-Town*, from the Palace of Prince *Maurice*, which was ſituated on it, and hath a Communication with *The Reciefe* by a Bridge. It was ſurrendered by the *Dutch* to the *Portugueſe*, in the Year 1647, for want of Ammunition and Proviſions. The City of *Olinda* is ſituated on ſome ſmall Hills on the Sea-Coaſt, a very little North of *The Reciefe*, and before the *Dutch* took it from the *Portugueſe*, was the principal Port in *Brazil*, and contained two thouſand Inhabitants, beſides religious People and Slaves. *Porto Calvo* lies at the Conflux of four Rivers, about thirty Miles South of *The Reciefe*. Cape *St. Auguſtin* Harbour is ſituated near the moſt Eaſterly Promontory of *Brazil* of the ſame Name, about twenty five Miles North of the little Iſland of *St. Alexio*. The Entrance of the Harbour is dangerous, on account of the Rocks which lie under Water. 8 and 9. The Captainſhip of the Bay of *All Saints*, in which we include *Serigippe*, is bounded by the great River *St. Francis* on the North, being about two hundred and forty Miles in Length from North to South. It is eſteemed the richeſt and moſt populous Province in *Brazil*. The chief Towns whereof are, 1*ſt*, *Serigippe*, or *St. Chriſtophers*, ſituated on a Bay between the Rivers of *St. Francis* and *Real*. 2*dly*, *Baha*, or *St. Salvador*, ſituated on a Hill above the Harbour; the moſt conſiderable Town in *Brazil*, whether we regard the Beauty of its Buildings, its Magnitude, or its Trade and Revenue. The Harbour is capable of receiving Ships of the greateſt Burthen: The Entrance whereof is guarded by a ſtrong Fort, called *St. Antom*; and there are other ſmall Forts which command the Harbour. The Town itſelf conſiſts of about two thouſand Houſes, the major Part of which cannot be ſeen from the Harbour; but ſo many as appear in Sight, with a Mixture of Trees between them, and all placed on a riſing Hill, make a very pleaſant Proſpect. There are in the Town thirteen Churches, Chapels, Hoſpitals, and Monaſteries, and one Nunnery. Here lives an Archbiſhop, who has a fine Palace; and the Governor's Palace is a fair Stone Building, and looks handſome to the Sea, tho' but indifferently furniſhed within. The Houſes of the Town are two or three Stories high; the Walls thick and ſtrong, being built with Stone, with a Covering of Pan-tile, and many of them have Balconies. The principal Streets are large, and all of them pav'd with ſmall Stones. There are alſo Parades in the moſt eminent Places of the Town, and many Gardens, as well within the Town as in the Out-parts of it. Here are about four hundred Soldiers in Garriſon. They commonly exerciſe in a large Parade before the Governor's Houſe, and many of them attend him when he goes abroad. The Soldiers are decent-clad in brown Linen; and beſide thoſe in Pay, he can ſoon have ſome thouſands of Men up in Arms upon Occaſion. The Magazine is on the Skirts of the Town. 'Tis big enough to hold two or three thouſand Barrels of Powder, but ſeldom has more than an hundred.

A great many Merchants always reſide at *Baha*, for 'tis a Place of great Trade. The Merchants that live here are ſaid to be rich, and to have many *Negroe* Slaves in their Houſes, both Men and Women. They are chiefly *Portugueſe*, Foreigners having but little Commerce with them: There is a Cuſtom-houſe by the Sea-ſide, where all Goods imported or exported are enter'd. The chief Commodities that the *European* Ships bring hither, are Linen Clothes, and ſome Woollens, Hats, Stockings, Biſcuit-Bread, Wheat-Flower, Wine, Oil, Olive, Butter, Cheeſe, &c. They bring hither alſo Iron, and all Sorts of Iron Tools, Pewter Veſſels of all Sorts, &c. Looking-glaſſes, Beads, and other Toys; and the Ships that touch at *St. Jago* bring thence Cotton Cloth. The *European* Ships carry from thence Sugar and Tobacco. Theſe are the Staple Commodities; beſides which here are Dye-woods, with Woods for other Uſes. They alſo carry home raw Hides, Tallow, Train Oil, &c. Here are alſo tame Monkeys, Parrots, Parroquets, &c. The Sugar of this Country is much better than that which we bring from our Plantations: For all the Sugar that is made here is clay'd, which makes it whiter and finer than our unrefin'd Sugar. Our Planters ſeldom refine any with Clay, unleſs to ſend home as Preſents to their Friends in *England*. Their Way of doing it is by taking ſome of the whiteſt Clay, and mixing it with Water till 'tis like Cream; with this they fill up the Pans, in which the Sugar is ſunk two or three Inches below the Brim by draining the Molaſſes out of it, juſt ſcraping off the thin Cruſt of the Sugar that lies at the Top, and would hinder the Water of the Clay from ſoaking thro' the Sugar of the Pan. The Refining is made by this Percolation: For ten or twelve Days time, that the clayiſh Liquor lies ſoaking down the Pan, the Water whitens the Sugar as it paſſes through it, and the Clay itſelf grows hard on the Top, and may be taken off at Pleaſure; when ſcraping off the upper Part of the Sugar, that which is underneath will be white almoſt to the Bottom: And ſuch as is called *Brown* Sugar is thus whiten'd.

Trade.

Clayin of Sugar

The *European* Ships commonly arrive here in *February* or *March*, and they have generally quick

Paſſages. They commonly return from hence about the latter End of *May*, or in *June*. The Ships that uſe the *Guinea* Trade are ſmall Veſſels: They carry out from hence Rum, Sugar, Cotton-Cloths, Beads, &c. and bring in return, Gold, Ivory, and Slaves. The ſmall Craft that belong to this Town are chiefly employed in carrying *European* Goods from *Bahia*, the Center of the *Braziliun* Trade, to other Places on this Coaſt, bringing back hither Sugar, Tobacco, &c. About *Chriſtmas* theſe are moſtly employed in Whale-killing; for about that Time a Sort of Whales, as they call them, are very thick on this Coaſt. They come alſo into the Harbours and inland Lakes, where the Seamen go out and kill them. The Fat of them is boiled to Oil; the Lean is eaten by the Slaves and poor People. Theſe are but ſmall Whales, yet here are ſo many, and ſo eaſily kill'd, that they get a great deal of Money by it. All the ſmall Veſſels that uſe this coaſting Traffick are built here, and ſo are ſome Men of War alſo for the King's Service: And the Timber of this Country is very good and proper for this Purpoſe. Beſides Merchants, here are other pretty wealthy Men, and ſeveral Artificers and Tradeſmen, who maintain themſelves very well, eſpecially ſuch as can purchaſe a *Negroe* or two. The richer Sort, beſides the Slaves whom they keep in their Houſes, have Men Slaves who wait on them abroad for State, either running by their Horſes Sides, or to carry them to and fro on their Shoulders, in a Cotton Hammock of the *Weſt-India* Faſhion, moſtly dy'd blue, with large Fringes hanging down on each Side. This is carried on the *Negroes* Shoulders by the Help of a Bambo about twelve or fourteen Foot long, to which the Hammock is hung, and a Covering comes over the Pole, hanging down on each Side like a Curtain, ſo that the Perſon ſo carry'd cannot be ſeen unleſs he pleaſes. There is ſcarce a Man or Woman of any Faſhion, that will paſs the Streets but ſo carry'd in a Hammock.

Artificers.

The chief mechanick Trades here are Smiths, Hatters, Shoe-makers, Tanners, Sawyers, Carpenters, Coopers, Taylors, Butchers, &c. All theſe Tradeſmen buy *Negroes*, and train them up to their ſeveral Employments: And having ſo frequent a Trade to *Guinea*, they have ſo conſtant a Supply of them, that the *Negroe* Slaves make up the greateſt Part of the Inhabitants: Every Houſe having ſome, both Men and Women, of them. Many of the *Portugueſe* Batchelors, keep of theſe black Women for Miſtreſs, tho' they know the Danger they are in of being poiſon'd by them, if ever they give them any Occaſion of Jealouſy.

Slaves.

The Captainſhip of *Ilheos*.

10. The Captainſhip of *Ilheos*. There are two conſiderable Rivers in this Province, *St. Antonio*, which ſeparates it from the Province of *Seguro*, and the River *Ilheos*, which falls into the Sea about twenty Leagues to the North of *St. Antonio*. The chief Town, named *Ilheos*, ſtands on a Promontory near the Mouth of the ſaid River, and is remarkable for its Sugar-Mills. 11. The Captainſhip of *Porto Seguro*. The River of *Dolce*, is the largeſt in this Province: Beſides which there are three other Rivers, *viz.* the River of *Crocodiles*, the *Ilequa*, and the River of *St. Michael*. The chief Towns are, *Porto Seguro*, *Sancta Cruz*, and *Sancta Amaria*. 12. The Captainſhip of *Spirito Sancto*. The principal River of this Province is that of *Paraiba*, or *Parina*. The only Town is *Spirito Sancto*, ſituate on the Banks of a River of the ſame Name. 13. The Captainſhip of *Rio Janeiro*, ſo called from a celebrated Bay and River of that Name, diſcovered in the Month of *January*, in the Year 1515. This Bay and River are now reſorted to by the *Portugueſe* as much as any Part of *Brazil*, on account of the rich Gold Mines that have been diſcovered in the Mountains to the Weſtward of this, and the Province of *St. Vincent*: Theſe have occaſioned the peopling the Banks of the River *Janeiro* more than any other Part of *Brazil*. The chief City of *St. Sebaſtian* is ſituated on the Weſt Side of this River, about two Leagues from the Sea, and defended by ſeveral ſtrong Forts. It is the See of a Biſhop, Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *St. Salvador*. *Los Reyes*, or *Angra de Los Reyes*, is ſituate about twelve Miles Weſt of the Bay of *Rio Janeiro*. The Town and Harbour of *St. Salvador*, lies over-againſt Cape *Frio*. 14. The Captainſhip of *St. Vincent*. The chief Towns are, *1ſt*, *St. Vincent*, ſituated at the Confluence of three Rivers, on a fine Bay, and defended by ſeveral Forts. This Harbour is in a flouriſhing Condition on account of the Gold Mines; but the Town which has the moſt immediate Advantage by them is, *2dly*, that of *St. Paul*, built on purpoſe for their Security, about an hundred Miles North-Weſt of *St. Vincent*. *3dly*, The Town of *Santos*, by ſome reckoned the chief Town in the Province. 15. The fifteenth and laſt Province of *Brazil* is that of *Del Rey*. This Province has been pretty much neglected by the *Portugueſe* till of late Years. But ſince they have found Gold in the Province of *St. Vincent*, they have built ſeveral Forts on the North Side of the River *La Plata*, and on the Iſlands at the Mouth of it, to prevent the *Spaniards* ſettling there again. This has occaſioned ſome Hoſtilities between the *Spaniards* and *Portugueſe*, and poſſibly may occaſion a War between them one time or other. But no doubt the *Portugueſe* conceal the Place as well as they can from the *Spaniards*, and all other *European* Nations, as they do their Mines of Diamonds and other precious Stones which they have diſcovered in *Brazil* of late Years.

The Captainſhip of *Porto Seguro*.

The Captainſhip of *Spirito Sancto*.

The Captainſhip of *Rio Janeiro*.

Before the *Portugueſe* planted *Brazil*, the Country was all one great Common, every Family inhabiting what Part of it they ſaw fit, and removing their Dwellings whenever they pleaſed; only every Man was looked upon as the Proprietor of what he poſſeſſed, till he removed and left that Part of the Country for another he liked better. Their Towns conſiſted uſually of five or ſix great Barns, each of which contained two or three hundred, and ſometimes a thouſand People; and over theſe the Head of the Tribe or Family preſided. The Materials of their Houſes were only long Poles, and Reeds, or *Palmeto* Leaves for a Covering. Their Furniture conſiſted of Hammocks of Cotton Net-work, faſtened to Poles, in which they ſlept; ſome earthen Pots and Pans, and their Gourds and Calabaſhes. Beſides which they had Baskets, in which they carried their Proviſions; and the Ornaments of their Houſes were their Bows, Arrows, Spears, and other Arms. There were ſome Nations alſo that had no ſettled Abode, but living in Tents, were continually removing from Place to Place; and both the one and the other often tied their Hammocks on the Boughs of Trees, and ſlept without Doors, but uſed to make Fires near their Lodging, to prevent the ill Effects of the cold Dews that fell in the Night-time.

The *Portugueſe* and *Dutch* Writers give the Name of *Tapuyers*, to the Natives which inhabit the North Part of *Brazil*, and the Name of *Tapuimbes*, or *Tapuimaboys*, to thoſe who dwell in the South of *Brazil*; but divide theſe again into ſeveral petty Nations. The *Tapuyes* are Men of a good Stature, and as they inhabit a hot Climate, are of a dark Copper Colour, then Hair black,

black, and hanging over their Shoulders; but they ſuffer no Hair on their Bodies or Faces, and go almoſt naked, the Men only incloſing the *Pans* in a Caſe, and the Women concealing their Nudities with Leaves. The Man has alſo a Coronet of Feathers, but the Women have not any Covering on their Heads. Their Ornaments are glittering Stones hung upon their Lips and Noſtrils, and Bracelets of Feathers about their Arms. Some of them paint their Bodies; whereas others rubbing their Bodies with Gums, ſtick beautiful Feathers upon them, which make them look more like Fowls than human Creatures at a Diſtance. The *Tupinambes* are of a moderate Stature, and not ſo dark a Complexion as their Northern Neighbours: Neither the one or the other are ſo black as the *Africans* are, who lie in the ſame Latitude: The *Tupinambes*, however, reſemble the *Africans* in their flat Noſes, which are not natural, but made ſo in their Infancy. They have alſo black curl'd Hair on their Heads, but ſuffer no Hair to grow on their Bodies or Faces, and paint themſelves like the Northern *Brazilians*.

The general Food of the *Brazilians* was the Caſſavi, or Mandioka Root, dry'd and ground to Powder, of which they made Cakes, like our Sea-Biſcuit. They carry'd this Flower with them on Journeys, and it ſerved them, infus'd in Water, both as Meat and Drink. They uſed alſo to feed on other Roots, Fruits, and Herbs, and ſuch Veniſon as they could take in Hunting, as alſo on Fiſh and Fowl; and with every thing eat a great deal of Pepper. The general Liquor the Natives drink is Spring-Water, of which they have the beſt and the greateſt Variety in the World; but there are other kinds of Liquors made of their Fruits preſs'd and infus'd, or of Honey, with which they ſometimes get very drunk. They are charged alſo with being a very lazy Generation: And as to Arts and Sciences, they were Maſters of ſcarce any, unleſs the Art of Spinning and Weaving, and forming their Arms, and the Art of Building, which was but mean. As for Letters, Characters, and Arithmetick, they were perfectly ignorant of them. They had ſome Knowledge of the Virtues of ſeveral Herbs and Drugs, which they frequently adminiſtered with Succeſs to the Sick. Hunting, Fiſhing, and Fowling, were rather their Buſineſs than Diverſion: Drinking, Singing, and Dancing, were more properly their Diverſions. They are great Smokers, and take the ſtrongeſt Tobacco: Their Pipes are a hollow Reed or Cane, and the Bowl a large Nut-ſhell that holds almoſt a Handful of Tobacco. They are a tractable and ingenious People, ready to learn any Art or Science, and take nothing ſo kindly of the Jeſuits as the inſtructing their Children; which has given the Fathers an Opportunity of making abundance of Converts.

The Beaſts that were found in this Country were the ſame with thoſe already deſcribed in *Mexico* and *Peru*, particularly the *Peruvian* Sheep, the Peccari, the Sloth, the Armadillo, the Opoſſum, the Guanoe, the Racoon, and Flying-Squirrel, with great Variety of Monkeys, Deer, Hares and Rabbets; the Ant, Bear, and ſome Lions, Tygers, and Porcupines. Their Fowls are Macaws, Parrots, Parequets, the Quam, the Curaſoe, the Bill-Bird, the Cockrecoe, the Partridge, the Wood Pidgeon, the Heron, the Pelican, the Crab catcher, the Fiſhing-Hawk, the Oſtrich, the Cormorant, the Curlieu, the Carrion-Crow, and the Humming-Bird. They have alſo great Variety of Singing Birds, ſeveral Species of Wild Ducks, Wild-Geeſe, and Dunghil-Fowls, and there is not any Sort of Poultry in *Europe*, but what has been carry'd thither by the *Portugueſe*: However, Fowls of all Kinds are but dry Meat in theſe hot Climates; nor is there Mutton very good; Pork is the beſt Fleſh we eat between the Tropicks. The moſt ſurprizing Relations Travellers entertain us with, are concerning the Multitude and monſtrous Size of their Serpents. We are told of ſome that are thirty Foot long and upwards, as big about as an Hogſhead, and which will ſwallow a whole Buck, or a Man; and that they eaſily take either by throwing their Tails about them. The ſame Writers have furniſhed us with a Dragon that has Wings and Feet. Mr. *Harris* tells us of a Water-Snake in *Brazil* near forty Foot long, and every Way proportionable, in whoſe Body were found two whole wild Boars he had ſwallow'd. As for the Amphisbena, or Snake with two Heads, 'tis agreed now that he really has but one; only ſome ſhort-ſighted People miſtook his Tail for a Head. Here is alſo found the Rattle-Snake, and ſeveral other Species of Snakes. They have alſo Scorpions, Centepees, Spiders, and other venomous Inſects of an extraordinary Size: And their Ants are almoſt as troubleſome here as in *Africa*. Here alſo is the Fire-Fly, which ſeems to differ but little from the Glow-Worm, only in its Wings. Of Bees they reckon up twelve ſeveral Sorts, ſome of which have vaſt Neſts that yield them great Quantities of Honey and Wax; and the Honey makes a Liquor that has ſome Reſemblance of Mead. Their Seas, Lakes, and Rivers, are full of excellent Fiſh, and the lean Fleſh of the Whales is eaten by the poor People at *Brazil*: But the beſt Fiſh on their Coaſt is the Manatee. They have alſo the Sword-Fiſh, Thraſher, Paracood, Old-wife, Cavally, Gar-fiſh, Mullets, Snooks, Herrings, Mackerel, Turpoons, Oyſters, Crabs, Shrimps, Prawns, and other Shell-fiſh. Their beſt River Fiſh has a Reſemblance of our Perch, and they have others not unlike Jacks and Carp. Of amphibious Animals they have Tortoiſes of three Kinds; Crocodiles, but not ſo large as thoſe of *Africa*; and a Creature, which the *Portugueſe* call the Water-Dog, as big as a Maſtiff, and hairy from Head to Tail.

The Soil of *Brazil* is generally good, producing very large Trees of divers Sorts. Their Paſtures are loaden with Graſs and Herbs, and, being cultivated, produce every thing that is proper for ſuch Countries as lie between the Tropicks. Of their Foreſt Trees the chief are, the Sapiera, the Vermiatico, the Commeſſerie, the Guiteba, and the Serrie; the ſpeckled Wood, the Fuſtick, and other dying Woods; three Kinds of Mangrove-Trees, and the Manchinele Tree. There grows alſo in *Brazil* a wild Cocoa-nut Tree, neither ſo tall or ſo large as thoſe in the *Eaſt* or *Weſt-Indies*. There are alſo in *Brazil* three Sorts of Cotton Trees, but very little of the right *Weſt-India* Cotton Shrub. As to Fruits, they have ſeveral Kinds of Oranges and Limes, Pomegranates, Pomecitrons, and *European* Grapes; but all theſe have been tranſported thither by the *Portugueſe*. They have alſo Plantains, Banana's, Guava's, the true Cocoa-nut, Cabbage-Trees, Cuſtard-Apples, Sourſops, Caſhews, Paphas, and Jempabas. Beſides theſe, here are many Sorts of Fruits which are not met with any where elſe, as Anſah's, Mericatah's, Petango's, Petumbo's, Mungaroo's, Muckiſhaws, Ingwa's, Otee's, Muſteran de Ova's, Palm-Berries, and Phyſick-Nuts. They have likewiſe Plenty of Callavances, Pine-Apples, Pumpkins, Water-melons, Muſk-melons, and Cucumbers; alſo Roots,

Roots, as Yams, Potatoes, Caſſava's, &c. Garden Herbs alſo good Store, as Cabbages, Turnips, Onions, Leeks, and abundance of Salladings; and for the Pot, Drugs of ſeveral Sorts; beſides Wood for Dying and other Uſes, as Fuſtick, ſpeckled Wood, &c. The Jeſuits have introduced the Cinamon-Tree into their Garden at *St. Salvador*, but the Bark is not ſo fine as that of the *Ceylon* Cinamon. The Jeſuits have Mango's alſo in their Garden at *St. Salvador*. As to their Corn. Corn, there is no Sort that thrives in *Brazil* like Maiz, or *Indian* Corn. Wheat and Rye grow too rank, and run up into Straw. Their Seed-time is at the Beginning of the rainy Seaſon, and their Harveſt immediately after it. Their own Trees and Shrubs bear leaves, Bloſſoms, and Fruit all the Year round; and the ſame is obſerved of their Oranges, Limes, and ſome other Fruits that have been carried thither. Here we muſt caution the Reader to underſtand what is ſaid only of that Part of *Brazil*, which lies within the Tropick of *Capricorn*, which is the beſt peopled of any Part of *Brazil*. As the Air and Seaſons are very different, ſo are their Grain, Fruits, and Plants generally; tho' there are ſome will thrive on either Side the Tropick. The Ants in *Brazil* are great Enemies to the Corn, Fruits, and other Produce of the Earth. As to Minerals. their Minerals, there is no doubt but they have diſcovered very rich Gold Mines of late Years; and 'tis ſaid there are ſome Silver Mines in the Country. They have alſo diſcovered very rich Diamond Mines, Jaſper, Emeralds, Chryſtal, and other precious Stones.

History. The firſt Adventurer that diſcovered *Brazil* was *Americus Veſputius*, in the Year 1498. Afterwards, in the Year 1500, he ſailed again to *Brazil*: But he does not give us any Account of the Country. The ſame Year, 1500, *Emanuel* King of *Portugal* ſending a Fleet to the *Eaſt-Indies*, they were driven upon the Coaſt of *Brazil*, where meeting with pretty good Harbour, they gave it the Name of *Porto Seguro*, and to the Country the Name of *Santa Cruz*; tho' it ſoon after loſt it, and obtained the Name of *Brazil*. The Admiral of this Fleet ſent one of his Ships back to *Portugal*, with an Account of the Country, and then continued his Voyage to the *Eaſt-Indies*. Several private Adventurers upon this Intelligence went over to *Brazil*, but were moſt of them deſtroyed by the Natives, and no Settlement was made to any Purpoſe till the Year 1549, when *John* III. King of *Portugal*, ſent a great Fleet thither. This Fleet arriving at the Bay of *All-Saints*, General *Soſa* there built the City of *St. Salvador*. The *Portugueſe* finding the *Brazilians* at War among themſelves, and joining with one Nation againſt another, by this Means ſubdu'd firſt their Enemies, and then their Allies, making Slaves of all without Diſtinction. The *French* alſo made ſeveral Attempts to ſettle Colonies on the Coaſt of *Brazil*, but were driven from thence by the *Portugueſe*, who at length poſſeſs'd themſelves of all the Coaſt from the River *Amazon* to the River of *Plata*.

Religion. As to Religion, the *Portugueſe* will not allow the *Brazilians* any, and yet they tell us they have Prieſts, and allow a State of Rewards and Puniſhments; that the Brave go to *Elyſium*, or Paradiſe, and mean and cowardly Souls to a Place of Torment. The ſame Authors admit, that their Prieſts direct them to bring their Offerings to them, and aſſure them, on their doing this, that thoſe inviſible Beings who give them all the good Things they enjoy, will proſper their Affairs, and if they neglect this, they muſt expect ſome dreadful Calamities will overtake them; and that accordingly the People bring them ſuch Fruits as they apprehend will be moſt acceptable. They inform us alſo, that they believe their Souls ſurvive their Bodies, and are converted into Demons or Spirits, after Death. And that they comfort themſelves, that they ſhould after Death viſit their Anceſtors beyond certain Mountains. From all which it is evident that this People were not entirely without Religion. And tho' the idolatrous *Portugueſe* make their having no Images an Argument that they have no Religion, we preſume that will be of little Weight with Proteſtants. But further, we meet with Writers that tell us ſome of the *Brazilians* worſhip the new Moon, and that others worſhip the Conſtellation called the *Great Bear*. As to their having no Temples, perhaps they look upon the Heaven to be the only proper Temple to adore the great Creator in, or at leaſt, the Sun, Moon, and Stars, if they worſhip them as Gods. Nor do theſe People live without Government. They have Kings in their reſpective Territories, who adminiſter Juſtice according to the Cuſtom of their ſeveral Countries, tho' they have no written Laws. And no People are more hoſpitable to Strangers than the *Brazilians* are.

In their Marriages they are not confin'd to one Woman, but enter into a Contract to uſe them well, in which they are uſually as good as their Words; and when a Man takes home his Wife, there is great Feaſting and Rejoicing, but no other Ceremony. The Women, however, ſeem to have much the greater Share in the Care of providing for the Family. The Man is only employ'd in making his Arms, or in Hunting or Fiſhing.

Upon the Death of any Perſon, the Friends and Relations aſſemble and ſet up a Howl, repeating by Turns the Praiſes of the Deceaſed, admiring his Wealth, his Strength, Beauty, and excellent Parts, the Multitude of his Friends, Servants, and Cattle, concluding with Words of the following Tenour: *He is dead; we ſhall ſee him no more until we dance with him beyond the Mountains.* Theſe Lamentations having continued ſix Hours, they bury the Deceaſed, digging a Grave like the Mouth of a Well, in which they place the Corpſe in a ſitting Poſture; and building a little Tomb of the Form of a Dome over him, they leave at the Place all Manner of Meat and Drink, his Arms, and whatever was uſeful to him while alive, coming every Day with freſh Supplies to the Grave for a Month, making the ſame Lamentations they did the firſt Day.

Theſe People had no other Arms but Bows, and Arrows, and wooden Swords or Clubs, and in ſome Places Shields; and when they charg'd an Enemy, it was never in Rank and File. They would march Day and Night with great Expedition; and, lying in Woods, fall upon their Enemies when they were unprepar'd to receive them, carrying away Men, Women, and Children into Slavery.

In the Year 1623, the *Dutch Weſt India* Company fitted out a ſtrong Fleet, and ſent them to *Brazil*, where they took the City of *St. Salvador*, with very little Loſs: But the King of *Spain* ſending a great Fleet thither in the Year 162[illegible] recovered the City again. However, the *Hollanders* continued to ſend ſtrong Squadrons to *Brazil* every Year, where they harraſs'd the *Portugueſe* Settlements, and made abundance of rich Prizes; and making a Deſcent near *Olinda*, in the Year 16[illegible]9, took that City, with the Fortreſs of *The Reef*; and, being join'd by ſome Nations of the *Indians*, at length poſſeſs'd themſelves of the entire Province of *Pernambuco*, where they

they erected a great many Forts, and compelled the *Portugueſe* who reſided there to obey them as Sovereigns. Count *Maurice* of *Naſſau* was pleaſed to accept the Government of the *Dutch* Territories in *Brazil*, and remained in that Capacity from 1637 to 1644, during all which Time the *Dutch* and *Portugueſe* remained in a State of War. Prince *Maurice* recovered from the *Portugueſe* three more of their Northern Provinces: Nor did he content himſelf with taking Places from the *Portugueſe* in *Brazil*, but detach'd from thence a Squadron to *Africa*, and took from them the Fort of *Del Mina*, the ſtrongeſt Fortreſs on the *Guinea* Coaſt, which the *Hollanders* are in Poſſeſſion of at this Day. But the *Dutch Weſt-India* Company not ſupplying the Count with ſuch a Number of Forces as he apprehended neceſſary to ſecure their Conqueſts againſt the *Portugueſe*, he returned to *Holland* in Diſguſt, in 1644, after which the Affairs of the *Dutch* in *Brazil* declin'd apace; for the *Portugueſe*, under the Government of the *Hollanders*, joining their Countrymen, by degrees recovered all the Towns which the *Hollanders* were in Poſſeſſion of, and drove them entirely out of *Brazil* again, in 1654. However, the *Dutch* ſtill continuing their Pretenſions to *Brazil*, the *Portugueſe* agreed, at a Treaty of Peace made by the Mediation of *England*, in 1661, to pay the *Dutch* eighty Tuns of Gold to relinquiſh their Intereſt in that Country; which was accepted, and the *Portugueſe* have remained in the peaceable Poſſeſſion of all *Brazil* from that Day to this.

Count Maurice Governor of Dutch Brazil.

The preſent Inhabitants of *Brazil* are, *Portugueſe*, *Crioli*, *Meſtiſe*, *Negroes*, and *Braziliians*. The *Portugueſe* of *Europe*, who are the Governors, are the feweſt in Number; the *Crioli* are more numerous, and the *Meſtiſe* ſtill more numerous than either: But whether the *Negroes* do not exceed all the reſt we much queſtion. The *Dutch*, when they were poſſeſs'd of the Northern Provinces of *Brazil* (not a Third of the Whole) employ'd forty thouſand *Negroes* in their Sugar-Works and Husbandry: And as the *Portugueſe* employed a proportionable Number, which have been increaſing for upwards of an hundred Years, and ſo many thouſand annually imported all the while, they muſt of Neceſſity ſwarm upon the *Brazil* Coaſt. There are ſome *Portugueſe* Planters that have ſeveral hundreds of *Negroe* Slaves, and when they have not Employment for them, they ſuffer them to work for themſelves, paying their Maſters ſomething weekly: And thoſe *Negroes* who are bred up to any Trade, bring in their Maſters a handſome Income. The native *Braziliians* are partly Freemen, and partly Slaves; but the *Negroe* Slaves are much more valued than the *Braziliians*, being of more robuſt Conſtitutions. Nor are the latter now very numerous; for the *Portugueſe*, like the *Spaniards*, in their Conqueſts, deſtroy'd the unfortunate Natives by all the cruel Ways they could invent.

The preſent Inhabitants of Brazil.

The Strength of the *Portugueſe* in *Brazil* is ſufficient at this Day to maintain the Dominion of that Country againſt any other Power. The *Engliſh* and *Dutch* may diſturb their Navigation, and now and then ſurprize their maritime Places, but ſcarce any of them would be able to take this Country from them, if they ſhould attempt it. For that Mixture of People, *Portugueſe*, *Crioli*, Natives, *Meſtiſe*, and *Negroes*, are now in a Manner one People, their Religion the ſame, and their Blood intermix'd by Marriages: They would infallibly unite therefore againſt all the reſt of the World, however they may diſagree among themſelves while they have no Enemy to contend with. And this is an Advantage that the *Spaniards*, *Portugueſe*, and *French*, have over the *Engliſh* in *America*.

The Force of the Portugueſe in Brazil.

CHAP. XXV.

A Deſcription of the Britiſh *Dominions in* America, *more particularly of the Provinces of* Carolina, Virginia, *and* Maryland; *treating of their Situation, Name, Extent, Inhabitants, Towns, Productions, Hiſtory,* &c.

Britiſh Plantations.

HAVING gone thro' the Dominions of *Spain* and *Portugal*, the *Britiſh* Dominions in *America* come next to be conſider'd; and theſe are divided into thoſe that are ſituated on the Continent, and the Iſlands. The Territories on the Continent (except *Hudſon's Bay*) lie contiguous, and are extended along the Eaſtern Coaſt of *North-America* from 31 Degrees of Northern Latitude to 50 and upwards, lying between the 63d and 83d Degrees of Weſtern Longitude: And the Coaſt runs from the South-Weſt to the North Eaſt. They are about fifteen hundred Miles in Length, and generally under two hundred Miles broad, but in no Place four hundred, unleſs we take in the *Indian* Nations under our Protection, and then they may be extended farther Weſtward.

Their Situation and Extent.

Sir *Walter Raleigh* was the firſt *Engliſh* Adventurer who attempted to ſettle Colonies on this Coaſt, and gave it the Name of *Virginia*, in Honour of his Sovereign, the Virgin Queen *Elizabeth*. It was afterwards divided into *North* and *South Virginia*: But at this Day we find it ſubdivided into the eight following Provinces, 1. *Carolina*, in which *Georgia* is comprehended. 2. *Virginia Proper*. 3. *Maryland*. 4. *Penſilvania*. 5. *New-Jerſey*. 6. *New-York*. 7. *New-England*; and 8. *New-Scotland*, called alſo *Acadia* and *Acady*. There is ſtill a ninth Province, called *New-Britain*, or the *Terra de Labarador*, which is in a great Meaſure the ſame with *Hudſon's Bay* and *Streights*, and is ſeparated from the reſt of the *Britiſh* Territories by the River of *St. Laurence*, and part of the *French Canada*.

The Name

Subdiviſion.

Carolina, including *Georgia*, is the moſt Southerly of the *Britiſh* Provinces on the Continent. It extends from Latitude 29 to 36 North, about 400 Miles; but its Breadth is uncertain. This Tract of Land is the moſt fertile and pleaſant of all that was formerly called *Florida*, being that Part of it that was named *French Florida*. The Name of *Carolina* was given it in Honour of King *Charles the Second*, who in 1663, granted it, by Letters Patent, in Propriety to *Edward*, Earl of *Clarendon*; *George*, Duke of *Albemarle*; *William*, Earl of *Craven*; *John*, Lord *Berkley*; *Anthony*,

Carolina. Its Situation and Extent.

Name

Lord *Ashley*; Sir *George Carteret*, Sir *John Coleton*, and Sir *William Berkley*: By which Letters Patents, the Laws of *England* were always to be in Force in *Carolina*; only the Lords Proprietors had Power, with the Consent of the Inhabitants, to make such By-laws as might be thought necessary for the better Government of the Province. So that no Money could be raised, or Law made, without the Consent of the Inhabitants or their Representatives. The Proprietors were likewise indued with a Right to appoint and impower Governors and other Magistrates, to grant Liberty of Conscience, make Constitutions, with many other great Privileges. And by their Care and Endeavours, two Colonies were soon settled in that Province, one at *Albemarle*, in the most Northerly Part, and the other at *Ashley*-River, in the Latitude of thirty two Degrees and some odd Minutes.

Albemarle Colony.

Albemarle Colony, which borders upon *Virginia*, and excels it in Health, Fertility, and Mildness of Winter, is, in its Productions, much of the same Nature with it. This Colony was first settled in *April* 1670, by the Lords Proprietors, who, at their sole Charge, furnished out three Ships with a considerable Number of able Men, and whatsoever was thought necessary for this new Settlement; and who continued for several Years after to supply the Place with all Things necessary, until the Inhabitants were able to live of themselves; in which Condition they soon arrived to a very great Degree of Plenty, so that most Sorts of Provisions were cheaper there than in any other of the *English* Colonies.

Ashley-River Colony.

Ashley-River, about seven Miles from the Sea, divides itself into two Branches; the Southermost still retains the Name of *Ashley*, but the North Branch is called *Cooper*-River. Upon the Point of Land, which divides those two Rivers, the Proprietors, in the Year 1680, ordered the Port-Town, that should serve for them both, to be built, calling it *Charles*-Town. This has ever since been the Capital of the whole Province, and the only free Port there. It is fortified with six Bastions, and has a Line round it. It has a considerable Trade, but no Ship of above 200 Tons can pass the Bar into the River. At this Town, as soon as its Foundations were well laid, there rode, at one Time, sixteen Sail of Ships, that came from divers Parts of the *British* Dominions, to traffick there.

Temperature.

This Part of *Carolina* is blessed with a temperate and wholesome Air, neither the Heat in Summer, nor the Cold in Winter, being troublesome, the latter being so moderate, that it doth not check the Growth of the Trees and Plants. *December* and *January*, which are the coldest Months, are much of the same Temperature as the latter End of *March*, or Beginning of *April*, in *England*, which small Winter helps the Production of all the Grains and Fruits that grow with us in *England*; so that the Apple, the Pear, the Plumb, the Quince, the Abricot, the Peach, the Walnut, the Mulberry, and the Chesnut, thrive very well in the same Garden with the Orange, the Lemon, the Pomegranate, the Fig, and the Almond. Nor is the Winter subject to Clouds and Fogs, but the Rain, though it fall often in the Winter Months, usually comes in quick Showers, which are no sooner past, but the Sun presently shines out again. The Summer is not so hot as in *Virginia*, which is chiefly occasioned from the Breezes, which rise about Eight in the Morning, and blow from the East, till about Four in the Afternoon; about which Time a North Wind riseth, which blowing all Night, keeps the Air exceeding fresh. People who live near Marshy Places, are somewhat inclined to *Agues*; but in other Places, 'tis so exceeding healthy, that in the first nine Years there died but one of those Masters of Families that went over, and he was seventy five Years of Age before he came thither.

Fertility.

The Soil is generally very fruitful, and, besides what is proper to the Climate, produces good Wheat, Rye, Barley, Oats and Peale, Turnips, Carrots, Parsnips and Potatoes, and near twenty Sorts of Pulse which we have not in *England*.

Trees.

Near the Sea, the Trees are not very large, but further up they are bigger, grow further asunder, and are free from Under-wood. There grow (besides the Cedar, Cypress, and the like) the Oak, Ash, Elm, Poplar, Beech, and all other useful Timber.

Beasts and Birds.

Their Woods likewise abound with Hares, Squirrels, Racoons, Conies, and Deer, which last are so plentiful, that an *Indian* Hunter will kill several of them in a Day, and the considerable Planters have one of these *Indian* Hunters for less than twenty Shillings a Year, who will find the Family with as much Venison and Fowl as they can well eat; their Woods and Fields being likewise stored with great Plenty of wild Turkeys, Partridges, Doves, Parroquets, Pigeons, Cranes, and divers other Birds whose Flesh is delicate Meat. They have likewise plenty of Sheep and Hogs, both which increase wonderfully there.

Rivers.

Carolina so abounds with Rivers, that within fifty Miles of the Sea, you can scarcely place your self seven Miles from one that is navigable; and some of them are navigable three hundred Miles up into the Country. Their Rivers and Brooks abound with great Variety of excellent Fish, and near the Sea with good Oysters, in some whereof Pearls are often found.

The Natives.

The Natives are a People of a ready Wit, and, tho' illiterate, are generally found to be of a good Understanding. For their keeping an Account of Time, they make use of Hieroglyphicks, and to instruct their Children in such Matters as relate to their Family and Country, which are so preserved from one Generation to another. Where a Battle hath been fought, or a Colony settled, they raise a small Pyramid of Stone, consisting of the Number of the Slain, or those settled at the Colony: And for religious Rights, as Sacrifices, Burials, and the like, they make round Circles with Straws or Reeds, by the different placing whereof, it is known for what they are intended; and to meddle with any of those Circles, is accounted by them Sacrilege. As to their Persons, they are generally well proportioned. They are no ways addicted to any Extravagancies, and always content themselves with a mean Diet and Apparel for the present, without taking much care for the Time to come. They are addicted to Mirth and Dancing, and to Acts of Courage and Valour, which they prefer above all other Virtues. Their Governments generally are of no great Extent; and that Side which Fortune crowns with Victory in their Wars, rejoice with great Triumph.

Their Worship.

They worship one God, as the Creator of all Things, whom they call *Okee*, and to whom their High Priest offers Sacrifice, but believes he hath something else to do than to mind human Affairs; which they fancy he commits to the Government of inferior Deities, to whom their inferior Priests make their Devotions and Sacrifices. They believe the Transmigration of Souls; and when any of them die, their Friends inter with their Corps Provisions and Houshold-Furniture. They are very superstitious in their Marriages, and from a Belief which is entertained amongst them, that from four

Women

Women only all Mankind ſprang, they divide themſelves into the like Number of Tribes, and have four Burying-places; believing it to be a wicked Thing to mingle their Bodies even when dead.

The Commodities which this Country produceth, are ſeveral Sorts of Wines; five Sorts of Grapes growing naturally there; and there is Care taken to plant the *Rheniſh*, *Canary*, *Claret*, *Muſcat*, *Madera*, and *Spaniſh* Grapes; of all which are Wines made, which prove very good both in Colour and Taſte: Oyl Olives, which being carried thither from *Portugal* and *Bermudas*, flouriſh and increaſe exceedingly: Cotton, Indigo, Silk, Ginger, Tobacco, Flax, Hemp, Pitch, Tar, Jallop, Saſſaparilla, Turmerick, Saſſafras, Snake-root, and the like. There are in this Country likewiſe ſeveral Sorts of wild Creatures. Their wild Cat is ſomewhat larger than a Fox, of a kind of a reddiſh gray Colour, and in Figure every Way like an ordinary Cat, but exceeding fierce, and ſo cunning, that knowing the Deer, upon which they chiefly prey, to be too ſwift for them, they lurk upon Branches of Trees, and as the Deer walk and feed under them, ſuddenly jump down upon their Backs. Their Fur is greatly eſteemed, and their Fleſh is eaten by the *Indians*. The Wolves here are exceeding ravenous. The Woods are likewiſe full of Bears, Otters, and gray Foxes.

The Parts of *Carolina* about *Aſhley* River are at this Day the beſt inhabited of any in the Country. South of this, about an hundred Miles, is the New Colony of *Georgia*, upon the River *Savanna*, eſtabliſhed ſince the Crown purchaſed *South Carolina* of the Proprietors, and called *Georgia* in Honour of his preſent Majeſty King *George* the Second. Here they have built a new Town, which from the River on which it ſtands is called *Savanna*; and great Numbers of People, eſpecially the perſecuted *Saltzburghers* and the diſtreſſed *Irish*, have tranſported themſelves hither with their Families. All we ſhall ſay farther of this new Colony, is, That from the Accounts tranſmitted thence from Time to Time, it appears to be in a flouriſhing Condition: That in *February* 1735-6, two hundred Houſes were regularly built in the Town of *Savanna*, ſome of which were let at 30*l.* Sterling *per* Year: That, beſides this, there were at the ſame Time ſeveral regular *Engliſh* Settlements, to which the Adventurers had given the Names of *Benzet*, *Thunderbolt*, *Hartargile*, *Weſtbrook*, &c. and which were likely to riſe into Towns: And, finally, That theſe, and many other valuable Improvements in *Georgia*, are chiefly owing to the great Humanity and indefatigable Induſtry of *James Oglethorpe*, Eſq; now Captain-General of all his Majeſty's Forces in theſe Parts.

The whole Province of *Carolina* was divided into ſeveral Counties by the firſt Planters, namely, *Albemarle* County, where two Colonies are now ſubſiſting; *Bath* County; *Clarendon* County, in which there is another *Charles*-Town; *Berkley* County; *Craven* County; *Colleton's* County, and *Granville* County. The Towns of Note are few, and ſcarce any of them worth deſcribing, except *Charles* Town on *Aſhley* River, of which we have ſpoken already.

Virginia Proper, the ſecond Province we ſhall deſcribe, is bounded on the South by *Carolina*, on the Eaſt by the *Atlantick Ocean*, on the North by *Maryland*, and on the Weſt by that vaſt Tract of Land that extends to the *South Sea*. It is divided into North and South *Virginia*, both together about 260 Miles long.

As to the Diviſion of the Country, the Planters follow pretty much the *Engliſh* Manner here, and in all the Provinces under the Dominion of the Crown of *Great-Britain*. We ſhall endeavour to give ſome ſhort Idea of it in this Place, and only name the Counties and principal Towns in ſpeaking of the other Provinces, which are all form'd on the ſame Model. Provinces and chief Towns.

Virginia then, is at preſent divided into twenty five Counties, 1. *James County*, which lies on both Sides of *James River*, and contains five Pariſhes, *viz. James Town*, *Williamsburg*, and *Wallingford*, on the North Side of *James River*, and *Merchants Hundred*, and *Bruton*, on the South Side of the River. *James Town*, the Capital of the whole Province, is ſituated in a Peninſula on the North Side of *James River*, about forty Miles from the Mouth of it, the River being at this Place about a Mile broad. There are not above three or fourſcore Houſes at preſent in it, and thoſe moſt of them publick Houſes, kept for the Entertainment of Sea-faring People who reſort hither; for it is not agreeable to the Humour or Buſineſs of the *Virginian* Planters to live in Towns. Another Reaſon which makes *James Town* now ſo inconſiderable is, the removing the Courts of Juſtice and the Seat of Government to *Williamsburgh*: And laſtly, *James Town* ſuffered very much in the Rebellion during the Reign of King *Charles* II. when it was almoſt entirely burnt to the Ground. Before that Misfortune happen'd, 'tis ſaid, there were ſeveral ſpacious Streets and handſome Buildings in *James Town*. Few Towns are capable of being made ſtronger than *James Town*, as it is ſituated on a Peninſula, which, at high Water, is a perfect Iſland. *James Town*. The Town of *Williamsburgh* is ſituated about ſeven Miles from *James Town*, further within Land; and this, tho' the Seat of the Government, is but a very ſmall Place, conſiſting only of thirty or forty Houſes that are not contiguous. Governor *Nicholſon* did all that lay in his Power to increaſe the Buildings, in the Year 1689, particularly he built a Town-houſe, to which he gave the Name of *The Capitol*. A fine College alſo was erected here, and a good Revenue ſettled upon it; but this was unfortunately burnt down. There are ſome Redoubts and Batteries of Guns erected for the Defence of the Place, but of no great Conſequence. *Williamsburgh*. 2. *Henrico* County, the moſt Weſterly of thoſe on the South of *James River*, contains the two Pariſhes of *Henrico* and *Briſtol*. 3 and 4. *Prince George* and *Charles* Counties are ſituated over-againſt *Henrico* County, in which are the three Pariſhes of *Martin Brandon*, *Wyanoke*, and *Weſtover*; and twenty Miles higher, is the *Monacan* Town, where the *French* Refugees are ſettled. 5. *Surrey* County, over-againſt *James* County, contain the two Pariſhes of *Southwark* and *Lyons Creek*. 6. *Iſle of Wight* County, South-Eaſt of *Surrey* County, contains the two Pariſhes of *Warwick-Squeak* and *New-Port*. 7. *Nanſamund* County, South of the *Iſle of Wight* County, contains the three Pariſhes of *Upper-Pariſh*, *Lower-Pariſh*, and *Chukatuck*. In this County riſes the River of *Nanſamund*. 8. *Norfolk* County, South Eaſt of *Nanſamund* County, extends, to the Borders of *Carolina*, and contains only the Pariſh of *Elizabeth*. In this County riſes the River *Elizabeth*. 9. *Princeſs Anne* County, North-Eaſt of *Norfolk*, having the Bay of *Cheſapeak* on the North, and the Ocean on the Eaſt, contains only the Pariſh of *Lynhaven*. 10. *York* County, between *York* and *James* River, contains the three Pariſhes of *York*, *Hampton*, and *New-Pokoſon*. 11. *Warwick* County lies contiguous to *York* County, in which are the two Pariſhes of *Denby* and *Mulberry Iſland*. In this County riſes the River of *Pokoſon*. 12. *Elizabeth* County

County lies contiguous to *Warwick* County: It hath but one Parish, called *Elizabeth*, in which was a City of the same Name, but of late Years dwindled to a Village. 13. *New-Kent* lies North of *James* County, and contains the two Parishes of *Blissland* and *St. Peters*, being one of the largest and most populous Counties in *Virginia*. In the West Part of this County are some Hills of glittering Sand, which the first Adventurers mistook for Gold. 14. *King William* County is contiguous to *New-Kent* to the Westward, the River *Pamunky* running through it. It contains only the Parish of *St. John's*. 15. *King and Queen* County lies on the South of *King William* County, and contains the two Parishes of *Straton Major* and *St. Stephen's*. In this County rises the River *Chicohomony*. 16. *Glocester* County is situated between the Mouth of *York River* and *Prankitank River*, and contains the four Parishes of *Perso*, *Abington*, *Ware*, and *Kingston*. 17. *Middlesex* County lies North of *Glocester*, containing only the Parish of *Christ-Church*. 18. The County of *Essex* lies North-West of *Middlesex*, containing the three Parishes of *South-Farnham*, *Sittingburn*, and *St. Mary's*. Upon the Confines of this Country and *Middlesex* there is a great Bog almost sixty Miles in Length, called *Dragons Swamp*, covered with Bushes and Flags, in which harbour wild Beasts and Game in abundance. 19 and 20. *Richmond* and *Stafford* Counties lie North-West of *Essex*, and contain the three Parishes of *North-Farnham*, *St. Paul's*, and *Overworton*. 21. *Westmorland* County lies Eastward of the last. 22. *Lancaster* County lies on the North of the River *Rapahanock*, and contains the two Parishes of *Christ-Church* and *St. Mary White-Chapel*. 23. *Northumberland* County is bounded by *Patowmack River* on the North, and the Bay of *Chesapeak* on the East, containing the two Parishes of *Fairfield-Bawtry*, and *Wicomoco*. 24. *Acomac* County lies in the Peninsula on the opposite Side of the Bay of *Chesapeak*, having Part of *Maryland* on the North, in which is the Parish of *Acomac* only; but it is, however, the largest County of *Virginia*. 25. *Northampton* County lies South of that of *Acomac*, and forms the South Part of the Peninsula on which the Promontory called Cape *Charles* is situated. In all these Counties, it is computed there may be at this Day about an hundred thousand Souls, besides Servants and Slaves, which are above three times that Number.

Numbers of People.

Indian Villages and Buildings.

The *Indians* had not any Thing that deserved the Name of a Town, even in their greatest Prosperity, before the *English* came among them. They lived dispers'd in small Villages of ten or twelve Huts a Piece, either in the Woods, or on the Banks of Rivers, where they had little Plantations of *Indian* Corn and Roots, scarce sufficient to supply their Families half the Year, subsisting the Remainder of it by Hunting, Fishing, and Fowling, and the Fruits of the Earth, which grow spontaneously in great Plenty there.

Its Discovery.

This Country was first discovered in the Year 1497, by *Sebastian Cabot*, a *Portuguese*, but whose Mariners were all *English*. But it was more fully discovered by Sir *Francis Drake*, and was called *Virginia* by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in Honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, as before observed. In the Year 1603, divers Persons, who obtained the Propriety of it from Sir *Walter*, made a Voyage thither, and discovered *Watson-Bay* in forty one Degrees. There being much Time spent in this Discovery, at length, in the Year 1607, Sir *John Popham*, and others, settled a Plantation at the Mouth of the River *Sagbadoc*. And about this Time, by the Industry of Captain *Smith*, *James-Town* began to be built; the *Indians* supplying

James Town built.

their Necessities, which were sometimes very extream. But the Winter approaching, the Rivers afforded them very great Plenty of Cranes, Swans, Geese, Ducks, wherewith they had Feast, and wild Beasts. In the Discovery of *Chickahamine-River*, one *George Cassion* was surprized; and *Smith*, with two others, beset with two hundred *Savages*, his Men slain, and himself taken Prisoner: However, in about a Month's Time, *Smith* procured not only his Liberty, but was in great Favour among them, they being extraordinary well pleased with his Discourses of God, Nature, and Art; so that he had a most noble Entertainment from *Powhatan*, one of their Emperors, who sate in State upon his Bed of Mats and Pillow of Leather, imbroidered with Pearl and white Beads, attired with Robes of Skins, as large as an *Irish* Mantle. At his Head sate a handsome young Woman, and another at his Feet; and on each Side the Room twenty others; their Heads and Shoulders painted red, with a great Chain of white Beads about their Necks, and a Robe of Skins like an *Irish* Mantle. Before these sate his chief Men, in their Orders. In his Palace, or Arbour, one *Newport*, who accompanied Captain *Smith*, gave the Emperor a Boy; in requital whereof *Powhatan* bestowed upon him *Namontack* his Servant, who was afterwards brought into *England*: Yet after this *Powhatan* contrived the Murder of sixteen of our Men, which was happily prevented by Captain *Smith*, who seized another of their Kings, and thereby obtained Peace with them upon his own Terms.

This Emperor had about thirty inferior Kings, or Captains, under him; his chief Treasure consisting of Skins, Copper, Pearls, Beads, and the like, all which were kept in Store against his Burial. his House was fifty or sixty Yards long, and frequented chiefly by Priests. He had as many Women as he pleased, whom, after he was grown weary of them, he bestowed upon his Favorites. His Will, with the Custom of the Country, were his Laws, punishing the Malefactors by broiling them to death, and with several other Tortures. About ten Miles from *James Town* one of their Kings made a Feast in the Woods, the People being most monstrously painted, with their Hair loose. They continued two Days dancing in a Circle of a Quarter of a Mile about, four in a Rank, in two Companies, the King leading the Dance. They think these and other extravagant Ceremonies so necessary, that if omitted, they believe *Okee*, and their other Gods, would hinder them from having any Deer, Turkeys, Corn, or Fish, and would likewise make a great Slaughter among them. They imagine their Priests, after Death, go beyond the Mountains towards the Sun setting, and remain there continually, having their Heads painted with Oil, and finely trimmed with Feathers; and, being furnished with Beads, Hatchets, Copper, and Tobacco, never cease to dance and sing with their Predecessors. By Break of Day, before they eat or drink, the Men, Women, and Children, above ten Years old, run into the Water, and there wash a good Space, till the Sun arise: Then they offer Sacrifice to it, strewing Tobacco on the Land and Water, repeating the same Ceremony at Sun-set. *George Cassion*, aforementioned, was bound to two Stakes, with his Back against a great Fire; after which they ript up his Belly, and burnt his Bowels, drying his Flesh to the Bones, which they kept above Ground in a Room: Many other *Englishmen* were cruelly executed by them, though perhaps not sacrificed, and none had escaped if their Ambush had succeeded.

Powhatan

Powhatan invited one Captain *Ratcliff* and thirty others to trade for Corn, and having brought them within his Ambush, murdered them all.

Virginia, after its Discovery, cost no small Pains before it was brought to Perfection, with the Loss of many *Englishmen's* Lives. In the Reign of King *James* the First, a Patent was granted to several Persons as a Corporation, and called the Company of Adventurers of *Virginia*. But upon several Misdemeanors and Miscarriages in 1623, the Patent was made null; after which it became free for all Subjects of *England* to trade into these Parts.

Temperature. This Country is blest with a sweet and wholesome Air, and the Climate so agreeable to the *English*, since the clearing it from Woods, that few die of the Country Disease, called Seasoning.

Fertility. It is every where interlaced with delectable Hills and rich Valleys, and of a Soil so fertile, that an Acre of Ground commonly yieldeth 200 Bushels of Corn, and produceth readily the Grain, Fruits, Plants, Seeds, and Roots, which are brought from *England*, besides those that are natural to this Country and the rest of *America*.

Fruits. Here are excellent Fruits in great Abundance, which may be compared to those of *Italy* or *Spain*; as, Arbicots, Peaches, Melons, Apples, Pears, Plums, Cherries, Figs, Quinces, Marrocks, Puchamins, Chesnuts, Walnuts, Olives, Strawberries, Rasberries, Gooseberries, and Mulberries in great Abundance. Of their Apples they make Cyder, of their Pears Perry, and of their Grapes

Roots. Wine. They have also several Sorts of Roots; as Potatoes, Carrots, Turnips, Artichokes, Onions, Cabbages, Colliflowers, Asparagus, &c. with most Sorts of Garden Herbs known to us, in great Plenty.

Fowls. They have great Plenty of Fowl; as wild Turkeys, which usually weigh about six Stone, or forty eight Pounds; Partridges, Swans, Geese, Ducks, Teal, Wigeons, Dotterels, Heathcocks, Oxeyes, Brants, Pigeons, Cranes, Herons, and several Sorts of Hawks; and for small Birds, innumerable Quantities of sundry Sorts; as Blackbirds, Thrushes, Red-birds, and, above all, the Mock-bird, which counterfeits the Noise of all

Beasts Birds. They have likewise great Store of wild Beasts; as Lions, Bears, Leopards, Tygers, Wolves, and Dogs like Wolves, that bark not; Buffaloes, Elks, whose Flesh is as good as Beef; Roscomes, Utchunquois, Deer, Hares, Bevers, Otters, Foxes, Martins, Polecats, Wesels, Musk-Rats, Flying Squirrels, &c. And for the tame Cattle, Cows, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, and Horses

Fish. in great Plenty. Great Plenty of excellent Fish is also to be found, as well in the Sea, and Bay of *Chesapeak*, as in the Rivers, *viz.* Cods, Thornback, Sturgeon, Grampusses, Porpusses, Drums, Cat-Fish, Basses, Sheeps-heads (which make Broth like that of Mutton) Coney-fish, Rock-fish, Cray-fish, white Salmons, Soals, Plaice, Mullets, Mackerel, Trouts, Perches, Conger-Eels, Herrings, Oisters, Shrimps, Cockles, Muscles, &c.

Commodities. The Commodities which the Country doth, or may produce, are Hemp, Flax, Hops, Rape-seed, Annise-seed, Woad, Madder, Pot-Ashes, Honey, Wax; and also Silk if they would make it, since Mulberry Leaves grow in so great Plenty: Here are several sweet Gums, and excellent Balsams of sovereign Virtues; several Sorts of Plants and Woods used by Dyers. Here are also Veins of Allum, Iron, and Copper, together with sundry Sorts of rich Furs, Elk Skins which make excellent Buff, and other Hides; Pitch, Tar, Rosin, Turpentine, Butter, Cheese, salted Fish and Flesh, which find vent at *Barbadoes* and other *Caribbee-Islands*; but, above all, Tobacco, which is their principal Commodity, and the Standard whereby all the rest are prized. There grows likewise a Kind of Flax, called *Silk-Grass*, of which the *Indians* make Thread and Strings; and it is good to make Linnen Cloth and Shifts, and would make excellent strong Cables.

Here all Tradesmen, especially Handicrafts, find good Encouragement; and for the Commodities aforesaid, the *English*, (who have the sole Trade,) bring them all Sorts of Apparel, all Manner of Utensils belonging to Houshold-Stuff, or necessary for their Plantations, or otherwise; also Wine, Brandy, and other strong Drinks; likewise all Silks, Stuff, and Cloth, both Linnen and Woollen, which they convert to several Uses according to their Fancies, being sufficiently supplied with Taylors.

Here groweth likewise sundry Sorts of Trees; Trees. as the red and white Oak, black Walnut, Cedar, Pine, Cypress, Chesnut, Poplar, Ash, Elm, &c. many of which are very good for the building of Ships, and other Uses.

This Country is well watered with several Rivers. great and swift Rivers, which lose themselves in the Bay of *Chesapeak*, which gives Entrance for Shipping into this Country, and also to *Maryland*, next adjoining; which Bay is very large, capacious, and commodious for Shipping, being said to run up into the Country Northwards seventy-five Leagues; in Breadth in many Places being five or six or seven Leagues, and sometimes more, and six or seven Fathom deep; and at its Opening to the South, between *Cape Henry*, which beginneth *Virginia*, and *Cape Charles* on the other Side opposite, it is about 10 or 12 Leagues wide. The principal of the Rivers, beginning at *Cape Henry*, is *Pawhonan*, now called *James's River*, being found navigable about fifty Leagues. *Pamaunke*, now *York River*, is also large, and navigable about twenty Leagues. *Rapahanock*, or *Topahanock*, is likewise a good River, and navigable about forty Leagues, which is the last River of *Virginia* northwardly, that falls into the Bay of *Chesapeak*. Upon, or near these Rivers, for the Conveniency of Shipping, the *English* are seated, and have several little Towns; the chief amongst which is *James-Town*, commodiously seated on *James-River*, and already described.

The Governor is sent over by his Majesty; and the Country is governed by Laws agreeable with those of *England*, for the Decision of all Causes both Civil and Criminal; which Laws are made by the Governor, with the Consent of the General Assembly, which consists of his Council, and the Burgesses chosen by the Freeholders. And for the better Government, the Country possessed by the *English* is divided as aforesaid into several Counties, in each of which are Sheriffs, Justices of the Peace, and other Officers, who are from Time to Time appointed by the Governor.

Complexion. The *Virginians* are not born of so dark a Complexion as they appear. Their Hair is generally black and flaggy, which they wear long: Few Men have Beards, because they pluck out the Hairs that would grow. Their Ointments and smoaky Houses do in a great measure cause their Colour, and make them look like Bacon. They are of a ready Wit, very subtle and treacherous, not much addicted to Labour, but much given to Hunting. They have one Wife, many Concubines, and are said likewise to be *Sodomites*. The antient Women are used for Cooks, Barbers, and other Services, and the younger for Dalliance. They are modest in their Carriage, and seldom quarrel. In entertaining a Stranger, they spread a Mat for him to sit down, and then dance before him; they wear their Nails long, to flea their Deer; and put Bows and Arrows into the Hands of their Children, before they are six Years old.

In each Ear they have generally three great Holes, wherein they commonly hang Chains, Bracelets, or Copper. Some wear a Snake therein, coloured green and yellow, near half a Yard long, which crawls about their Necks; others have a dead Rat tied by the Tail. The Women mark their Bodies, Legs, and Thighs, with an Iron, in curious Knots, and Shapes of Fowls, Fishes, and Beasts, and rub a Painting therein which will never come out. The Queen of *Apomatica* was attired with a Coronet, beset with many white Bones; with Copper in her Ears, and a Chain of the same, six times encompassing her Neck. The *Sasquehanocks* are frequently a Giant-like People, very monstrous in Proportion: It is said, their Voice sounds as out of a Cave. Their Garments are Bear-skins, hung with Bears Paws, a Wolf's Head, and such odd Ornaments. Their Tobacco-pipes are three Quarters of a Yard long, with the Head of some Beast at the End, very weighty. They have several ridiculous Conceits concerning their Original; as that a Hare came into their Country, and made the first Men, and after preserved them from a great Serpent; and two other Hares coming thither, the first killed a Deer for their Entertainment, which was then the only Deer in the World, and strewing the Hairs of that Deer, every Hair became a Deer.

In the Reign of King *James* the First, one *Tomocomo*, an *Indian*, and Counsellor to one of their Kings, came into *England*; who landing in the West, was much surprised at our Plenty of Corn and Trees, which he thought we had wanted, imagining, we ventured into their Country to supply their Defects: He began then to number the Men he met with, but his Arithmetick soon failed him. The Natives think it a Disgrace to fear Death; and therefore, when they must die, they do it resolutely; as it happened to one that robbed an *Englishman*, and was by *Powhatan* (upon Complaint made against him) fetched sixty Miles from the Place where he lay concealed, and by this *Tomocomo* executed in the Presence of the *English*; his Brains being knocked out, without the least Shew of Fear or Terror.

Apparel. Their Apparel is but mean, they contenting themselves with only something to cover their Nakedness; and for the better defending themselves from the Weather, they anoint their Bodies with certain Oils mixed with Bears-Grease.

Houses. Their Houses are no better than our *English* Hogsties, being made of Boughs, and covered with Barks of Trees; and in the Midst thereof is

Diet. placed their Chimney, or Fire-place. Their Diet is mean, and answerable to their Houses; not endeavouring to please their Palates with curious Sauces, or pampering their Bodies with provocative Meats.

Maryland. Situation. The Province of *Maryland*, the next in Order, is situated between the Degrees of thirty-eight, or thereabouts, and forty Degrees of Northern Latitude. It is bounded on the North with the Province of *Pensilvania*; on the East, by the *Atlantick* Ocean, and *Delaware Bay*; on the South, by *Virginia*; from whence it is parted by the River *Patowmack*. The Bay of *Chesapeak*, gives Entrance to Ships, both into this Country and *Virginia*, passing through the

Rivers. Heart of this Province, and receiving into it several considerable Rivers; as *Patowmack*, *Patuxon*, *Inn-Arundel*, and *Susquesahanough*, lying on the West Side of the Bay; and to the East of the said Bay, those of the *Choptanke*, *Nantcopa*, *Pocomack*, and several other Rivers and Rivulets, to the great Improvement of the Soil, and Beauty of the Province.

Climate. The Climate of late is very agreeable to the *English* Constitution, especially since the Felling of the Woods; and the People accustoming themselves to the *English* Diet, it is very healthful and agreeable to the Constitution of the *English*, few now dying, at their first coming, of the Country Disease, or Seasoning. The Heat is not extreme in Summer, being much qualified by the cool and gentle Breezes from the Sea, and refreshing Showers of Rain; and the Cold in Winter is of so little Durance, that the Inhabitants cannot be said to suffer by that neither. The Country is generally plain and even, yet rising in some Places into small and pleasant Hills, which heighten the Beauty of the adjacent Vallies. The Soil is rich and fertile, naturally producing all such Commodities as are particularly set down to its neighbouring Colony, *Virginia*; as all Sorts of Beasts and Fowl, both tame and wild; Fish, Fruits, Plants, Roots, Herbs, Gums, Trees, Balsams, *&c.* and likewise all Commodities produced by Industry, are here found in very great Plenty and Perfection. But the chief Trade of *Maryland* depends upon *Tobacco*, which is esteemed better for a foreign Market than that of *Virginia*, and finds greater Vent Abroad; the Trade of which is not inconsiderable. There is a competent Stock of ready Money in this Province, both of *English* and Foreign, and of the Proprietor's own Coin; yet their chief Way of Commerce is by Way of Barter, or Exchange of Commodities.

Natives. The Natives, as to their Complexion, Stature, Customs, Dispositions, Laws, Religion, Apparel, Diet, Houses, *&c.* are much the same with those of *Virginia*, already treated of; being divided likewise into many different Tribes, and each governed by their particular King. There are

Relig. many strange Rites and Ceremonies used by these native *Indians*: They believe there are several Gods, which they call *Mantaac*, but of different Sorts and Degrees; yet there is but one absolute God from all Eternity who, when he made the World, created other Gods, to be as Instruments in the Creation; and that the Sun, Moon, and Stars, are petty Gods. Out of the Waters they affirm, all the Variety of Creatures were made. As to Mankind, that Woman was made first, who, by the Assistance of one of the Gods, conceived, and brought forth Children; but they pretend not to know how long it is since this was done, having no Arithmetick, nor Records, but only Tradition from Father to Son. They make the Images of their Gods in the Shape of Men, placing one at least in their Houses or Temples, where they worship, sing, pray, and make Offerings. They believe that after this Life, the Soul shall be disposed of according to its Works here, either to the Habitation of the Gods, to enjoy perpetual Happiness, or to a great Pit or Hole in the furthest Part of their Country toward Sun-set, (which they count the furthermost Part of the World) there to burn continually; which Place they call *Popoguffo*. Whatever Tricks or Subtilty the Priests use, the Vulgar are hereby very respectful to their Governors, and careful of their Actions; though in criminal Causes they inflict Punishments according to the Quality of the Offence. They were at first esteemed great Necromancers, which is very unlikely, because they account our Fireworks, Guns, and Writing, to be the Works of God rather than Men. When one of their Kings was sick, he sent to the *English* to pray for him. Some of them imagine that we are not mortal Men, nor born of Women; but say we are an old Generation revived, and believe that there are more of us yet to come, to kill their Nation, and take their Places, who are at present invisible in the Air without Bodies, and that at their Intercession

sion they cause those of their Nation to die who wrong the *English*.

Their Idol they place in the innermost Room of the House, of whom they relate incredible Stories: They carry it with them to the Wars, and ask Counsel thereof, as the *Romans* did of their Oracles. They sing Songs as they march towards Battle, instead of using Drums and Trumpets. Their Wars are exceeding bloody, and have wasted the People very much. Once a Year they hold a great Festival, meeting together out of several Villages, each having a certain Mark or Character on his Back, whereby it may be discerned whose Subject he is. The Place where they meet is spacious, and round about are Posts, carved on the Top like a Nun's Head. In the Midst are three of the fairest Virgins, lovingly embracing and clasping each other. About this living Image, and artificial Circle, they dance in their savage Manner. Their chief Idol, called *Kiwasa*, is made of Wood four Feet high, the Face resembling the Inhabitants of *Florida*, painted with Flesh-Colour; the Breast white; the other Parts black; the Legs only spotted with white, with Chains and Strings of Beads about his Neck. This Idol is the Keeper of the dead Bodies of their Kings, which are advanced on Scaffolds nine or ten Feet high, this *Kiwasa* or Guardian being placed near them; and underneath liveth a Priest, who there mumbles his Devotions Night and Day.

Wars.

This Province of *Maryland*, King *Charles* the First, in *Anno* 1632. granted by a Patent to the Right Honourable *Cecilius Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, and to his Heirs and Assigns, and by that Patent created him and them the true and absolute Lords and Proprietors of the same (saving the Allegiance and sovereign Dominion due to his Majesty, his Heirs and Successors;) thereby likewise granting to them all royal Jurisdictions, both military and civil; as Power of enacting civil and martial Laws, making of War and Peace, pardoning Offences, conferring of Honours, coining of Money, &c. In Acknowledgment whereof they were to yield and pay yearly to his Majesty, his Heirs and Successors, two *Indian* Arrows at *Windsor* Castle, on *Easter* Tuesday, together with the fifth Part of all the Gold and Silver Ore that shall be found there.

Political.

The Lord *Baltimore* fixed his Residence at *Mattapany*, about eight Miles Distance from *St. Mary's*, where he built a pleasant Seat, though the general Assemblies and Provincial Courts were kept at *St. Mary's*: And for the better inviting of People to settle here, his Lordship, by the Advice of the General Assembly of that Province, established a System of good and wholsome Laws, for the Ease and Benefit of the Inhabitants, with Toleration of Religion to all Sorts that profess the Faith of *Christ*; which hath been a principal Motive to many to settle under that Government, rather than in another, where Liberty of Conscience was denied them.

This Province, where it is peopled with *English*, is divided into ten Counties; five Eastwards of *Chesapeak* Bay, namely *Cecil*, *Dorchester*, *Kent*, *Somerset*, and *Talbot*; and five Westwards of the said Bay, *viz. Ann-Arundel*, *Baltimore*, *Calvert*, *Charles*, and *St. Mary's*. Here are likewise certain Magistrates appointed by his Lordship in each County, as Sheriffs, Justices of the Peace, &c.

Counties.

The Inhabitants, being very numerous, have since built several Towns, which in few Years, came to some Perfection; as *Calverton*, *Herrington*, *Harvey-Town*, *Baltimore*, *Oxford*, and *Arundel*, all commodiously seated for the Benefit of Trade, and Convenience of Shipping. The principal Town was formerly esteemed *St. Mary's*, seated on *St. George*'s River, being beautified with divers well-built Houses, and the chief Scale of Trade for the Province. But *Annapolis* now bears away the chief Dignity, being noted for the Seat of the Governor, two Markets a Week, a State-House, a Free-School, and the only Church built of Bricks in the whole Province. It is also now the chief Seat of Justice for *Maryland*, and in 1694 was made a Port Town.

Towns.

CHAP. XXVI.

A Description of Pensilvania, New-Jersey, *and* New-York; *treating of their Situation and Extent, Climates, Seasons, Rivers, Productions, Trade, Inhabitants both Natives and Planters, Animals, Towns*, &c.

Political.

IT is the Law of Nations, that whatever uncultivated Country is the Discovery of any Prince, it is the Right of that Prince. *Pensilvania* is a Member of that Part of *America*, which the King of *England*'s Ancestors have been at the Charge of discovering; and King *Charles* the Second, upon the Petition of *William Penn*, Esq; was pleased to make a Grant to the said *William Penn*, of that Tract of Land in *America*, as was expressed in a Declaration made for that Purpose.

The Description of the Province cannot better be given than by *William Penn* himself, who sent an Account of it from off the Place; of which we shall insert as much as necessary. The Land contains divers Sorts of Earth; as Sand, yellow and black, both poor and rich: Also Gravel, both loomy and dusty; and in some Places a tall, fat Earth, like our Left Vales in *England*, especially by Inland Brooks and Rivers. We have much of another Soil, and that is a black, hazel Mould, upon a stony or rocky Bottom. The Air is sweet and clear, the Heavens serene, and as the Woods come to be more cleared, that itself will refine. The Waters are generally good, for the Rivers and Brooks have mostly gravel and stony Bottoms. We have also Mineral Waters. For the Seasons of the Year, from the Middle of *October*, to the Beginning of *December*, it is like an *English* mild Spring. From *December* to the Beginning of *March*, we have usually sharp, frosty Weather; and the Air dry, cold, piercing, and hungry. From that Month to *June*, usually a sweet Spring, no Gusts, but gentle Showers and a fine Sky. The Winds here are more inconstant, Spring and Fall, than in Summer or Winter. From thence to the End of the Summer, they have extraordinary Heats, yet mitigated sometimes by cold Breezes. The Wind that rules the Summer Season, is the South-West; but Spring, Fall, and Winter, 'tis rare to want the North-Western seven Days together; and whatever

Soil.

Climate

whatever Miſts, Fogs, or Vapours, foul the Heavens, in two Hours Time are blown away.

Trees. The natural Trees of moſt Note, are, the Black Walnut, Cedar, Cyprus, Cheſnut, Poplar, Gum-wood, Hickery, Saſſafras, Aſh, Beech, and Oak of divers Sorts, as red, white, and black; *Spaniſh* Cheſnut and Swamp. The Fruits are the white and black Mulberry, Cheſnuts, Walnuts, Plumbs, Strawberries, Cranberries, Hurtleberries, and Grapes of divers Sorts. The great red Grape is in itſelf an extraordinary Grape, and by Art may be cultivated to an excellent Wine, little inferior to the *Frontiniac*, as it is not much unlike it in Taſte. There is a white Kind of Muskadel, and a little black Grape, like the Cluſter of Grapes in *England*. Here are alſo Peaches, very good, and in great Quantities. They make a pleaſant Drink, and are not inferior to any Peach in *England*, except the true *Newington*.

Product. The artificial Product of the Country, is Wheat, Barley, Oats, Rye, Peaſe, Beans, Squaſhes, Pumkins, Water-Melons, Musk-Melons, and all Herbs and Roots that our Gardens in *England* uſually bring forth.

Animals Of living Creatures, as Fiſh, Fowl, and the Beaſts of the Woods, here are divers Sorts: Some for Food as well as Profit; as the Elk, as big as a ſmall Ox, Deer bigger than ours, Beaver, Racoon, Rabbits, Squirrels, and young Bear. Of Fowls of the Land, there is the Turkey, which is very great; Pheaſants, Heath-Birds, Pigeons, and Partridges in Abundance: Of the Water, the Swan, Gooſe white and grey, Ducks, Teal, the Snipe and Curlew, and that in great Numbers; but the Duck and Teal exceed. Of Fiſh, there is the Sturgeon, Herring, Rock, Shad, Cats-head, Eel, Smelt, Perch, Roch; and in Inland Rivers, Trout, ſome ſay Salmon, above the Falls. Of Shell-Fiſh, Oiſters, Crabs, Cockles, Concks, Muſeta's; ſome Oiſters ſix Inches long; and one Sort of Cockles, as big as the ſtewing Oiſter. The Creatures for Profit only, by Skin or Furr, and that are natural to thoſe Parts, are the Wild-Cat, Panther, Otter, Wolf, Fox, Fiſher, Minx, Musk-Rat: And of the Water, the Whale for Oil. They have no Want of Horſes, and ſome are very good, and ſhapely enough: Here is alſo Plenty of Cows, and ſome Sheep. The People plow

Plants. moſtly with Oxen. There are divers Plants that are of great Virtue, ſuddenly curing the Patient; and for Smell, I have obſerved the wild Myrtle. The Woods are adorned with lovely Flowers.

Perſons. The Natives for their Perſons are generally tall, ſtrait, and well-built, and of good Proportion: They tread ſtrong, and moſtly walk with a lofty Chin; of Complexion black, but by Deſign, as the Gypſies in *England*: They greaſe themſelves with Bear's Fat clarified, and uſing no Defence againſt Sun or Weather, their Skins muſt needs be ſwarthy. Their Eyes are little and black; the thick Lip and flat Noſe, ſo frequent to the *Eaſt-Indians* and *Blacks*, are not common to

Lan guage. them. Their Language is lofty, yet barren, like the *Hebrew*; in Signification full, like Short-Hand in Writing: One Word ſerveth in the Place of three, and the reſt are ſupplied by the Underſtanding of the Hearer; imperfect in their Tenſes, wanting in their Moods, Participles, Ad-

Cuſtoms verbs, Conjunctions, and Interjections. For their Children, ſo ſoon as they are born, they waſh them in Water; and while very young, they plunge them in the Rivers to harden them: Having wrapped them in a Clout, they lay them on a ſtrait thin Board, a little more than the Length and Breadth of the Child, and ſwaddle it faſt on the Board, to make it ſtrait. The Children will go very young, at nine Months commonly: They wear only a ſmall Clout round their Waiſt, till big. If Boys, they go a Fiſhing till ripe for the Woods, which is about fifteen: Then they hunt, and having given ſome Proofs of their Manhood, by a good Return of Skins, they may marry. The Girls ſtay with their Mothers, and help to hough the Ground, plant Corn, and carry Burthens; and they do well to uſe them to that young, which they muſt do when they are old; for the Wives are the true Servants of their Husbands; otherwiſe the Men are very affectionate to them. When the young Women are fit for Marriage, they wear ſomething upon their Heads for an Advertiſement, but ſo as their Faces are hardly to be ſeen, but when they pleaſe. The Age they marry at, if Women, is about 13 or 14, if Men, 17 or 18. Their Houſes are Mats, or Barks of Trees, ſet on Poles, in the Faſhion of an *Engliſh* Barn: They lie on Reeds or Graſs. In Travel they lodge in the Woods about a great Fire, with the Mantle-Duffils they wear by Day, wrapped about them, and a few Boughs ſtuck round them. Their Diet is Maiz or *Indian* Corn, divers Ways prepared. They have likewiſe ſeveral Sorts of Beans and Peas, that are good Nouriſhment; and the Woods and Rivers are their Larder.

Entertainment. If an *European* comes to ſee them, or calls for Lodging at their *Wigwam*, they give him the beſt Place and firſt Cut. If they come to viſit us, they ſalute us with an *It ah*, which is as much as to ſay, *Good be to you*, and ſet them down, which is moſtly on the Ground, cloſe to their Heels, their Legs upright. May be they ſpeak not a Word more, but obſerve all Paſſages: If you give them any Thing to eat or drink, it is well, for they will not ask; and be it little or much, if it be with Kindneſs, they are well pleaſed; elſe they go away ſullen, but ſay nothing. They are great Concealers of their own Reſentments; brought to it, by the Revenge that hath been practiſed among them. Some of the young Women are ſaid to take undue Liberty before Marriage, for a Portion; but when married, they are chaſte: When with Child, they know their Huſbands no more, till delivered; and, during their Month, they touch no Meat they eat, but with a Stick, leſt they ſhould defile it; nor do their Husbands frequent them, till that Time be expired.

Their liberality. In Liberality the Natives excel; nothing is too good for their Friend. They are light of Heart, and ſtrong in Affections; the moſt merry Creatures that live, feaſting and dancing perpetually. They never have much, nor want much: Wealth circulateth like the Blood, all Parts partake; and though none ſhall want what another hath, yet are they exact Obſervers of Property.

On ſuch Occaſions as their Feſtivals, or at their common Meals, the Kings diſtribute, and to themſelves laſt: They care for little, and the Reaſon is, a little contents them: In this they are ſufficiently revenged on us; if they are ignorant of our Pleaſures, they are alſo free from our Pains. They eat twice a Day, Morning and Evening: Their Seats and Tables are the Ground. Since the *Europeans* came into thoſe Parts, they are grown great Lovers of ſtrong Liquors, Rum eſpecially; and for it they exchange the richeſt of their Skins and Furs. If they are heated with Liquors, they are reſtleſs till they have enough to ſleep; and this is their Cry, *Some more, and I will go to Sleep*; but, when drunk, one of the moſt wretcheſt Spectacles in the World. In Sickneſs, impatient to be cured. They drink at thoſe Times a Decoction of ſome Roots in Spring-Water; and if they eat any Fleſh, it muſt be of the Female of any Creature.

If they die, they bury them with their Apparel, be they Men or Women, and the neareſt of Kin flings in ſomething precious with them, as a Token of their Love. Their Mourning is blacking of their Faces, which they continue for a Year: They are careful of the Graves of their Dead; for, leſt they ſhould be loſt by Time, and fall to common Uſe, they pick off the Graſs that grows upon them, and heap up the fallen Earth with great Exactneſs.

Religion of the Natives.

Theſe poor People believe a God and Immortality, without the Help of Metaphyſicks; for they ſay there is a great King that made them, who dwells in a glorious Country to the Southward of them, and that the Souls of the Good ſhall go thither, where they ſhall live again. Their Worſhip conſiſts of two Parts, Sacrifice and Rejoicing. Their Sacrifice is their firſt Fruits: the firſt and fatteſt Buck they kill, goes to the Fire, where it is burnt with a mournful Ditty of him that performs the Ceremony, but with ſuch Fervency that he will even ſweat to a Foam. The other Part is performed by round Dances, ſometimes Words, ſometimes Songs, then Shouts; their Poſtures in the Dance are very antick and differing, but all keep Meaſure. In the Fall, when the Corn comes in, they begin to feaſt one another.

Government and Laws.

Their Government is by Kings, which they call *Sachema*; and thoſe by Succeſſion, but always of the Mother's Side; for Inſtance, the Children of him that is now King, will not ſucceed, but his Brother by the Mother, or the Children of his Siſter, whoſe Sons, and after them the Children of her Daughters, will reign; for no Woman inherits. The Reaſon they render for this Way of Deſcent, is, that their Iſſue may not be ſpurious. Every King hath his Council, and that conſiſts of all the old and wiſe Men of his Nation. Nothing of Moment is undertaken without adviſing with them; and, which is more, with the young Men too. 'Tis admirable to conſider, how powerful the Kings are, and how they move by the Breath of the People. Their Order is thus: The King ſits in the Middle of a half-Moon, and hath his Council, the Old and Wiſe, on each Hand: Behind them, or at a little Diſtance, ſit the younger Men in the ſame Figure. During the Time that one of them ſpeaks, not a Man whiſpers or ſmiles. The Old are grave, the Young are reverent in their Deportment: They ſpeak little, but fervently, and with Elegancy.

Their Juſtice.

The Juſtice they have is pecuniary: In caſe of any Wrong or evil Fact, be it Murder itſelf, they atone by Preſents and Preſents of their *Wampum*, which is proportioned to the Quality of the Offence, or Perſon injured, or of the Sex they are of: For in caſe they kill a Woman, they pay double; and the Reaſon they render, is, That ſhe breedeth Children, which Men cannot do. 'Tis rare that they fall out, if ſober; and if drunk, they forgive it; ſaying, it was the Drink, and not the Man that abuſed them. Do not abuſe them, but let them have Juſtice, and you win them. Their Children are of ſo lively Reſemblance to the *Jews*, that a Man would think himſelf in *Duke's-Place*, or *Berry-Street*, in *London*, when he ſeeth them. But this is not all; they agree in Rites; they reckon by Moons; they offer their firſt Fruits; they have a Kind of Feaſt of Tabernacles; they are ſaid to lay their Altar upon twelve Stones; they mourn a Year; the Cuſtoms of the Women, with many Things that do not now occur, are much like the *Jews*.

The firſt Planters in theſe Parts, were the *Dutch*, and ſoon after them the *Swedes* and *Finns*. The *Dutch* apply'd themſelves to Traffick, the *Swedes* and *Finns* to Husbandry. There were ſome Deputies between them ſome Years. The *Dutch* looked upon the *Finns* as Intruders upon their Purchaſe and Poſſeſſion; which was finally ended in the Surrender made by *John Rizeing*, the *Swedes* Governor, to *Peter Styreſant*, Governor for the States of *Holland*, *Anno* 1655. The *Dutch* inhabit moſtly thoſe Parts of the Province that lie upon or near the Bay, and the *Swedes* the Freſhes of the River *Delaware*. They are both a plain, ſtrong, induſtrious People, yet have made no great Progreſs in Culture, or Propagation of Fruit-trees. But the *Indians* make them more careleſs, by furniſhing them with the Means of Profit, ſuch as Skins and Furs, for Rum, and ſuch ſtrong Liquors. As they are ſtrong of Body, ſo they have fine Children, and almoſt every Houſe full. The *Dutch* have a Meeting-Place for religious Worſhip, at *Newcaſtle*; and the *Swedes* three, one at *Chriſtiana*, one at *Tenecum*, and one at *Wicoco*.

Situation.

The Country lieth bounded on the Eaſt, by the River, the Bay of *Delaware*, and the Eaſtern Sea. It hath the Advantage of many Creeks, or Rivers, that run into the main River or Bay; ſome navigable for great Ships, ſome for ſmall Craft: Thoſe of moſt Eminency, are, *Chriſtiana*, *Brandy-Wine*, *Skulpot*, and *Skulkil*; any one of which have Room to lay up the Royal Navy of *England*. The leſſer Creeks or Rivers, convenient for Sloops of good Burthen, are, *Lewis*, *Meſpilon*, *Cedar*, *Dover*, *Cranbrook*, *Feverſham*, and *George's* below; and *Chicheſter*, *Cheſter*, *Toacawry*, *Pemmapecka*, *Fortqueſſin*, *Neſhimene*, and *Pemberry* in the Freſhes. Our People are moſtly ſettled upon the upper Rivers, which are pleaſant and ſweet, and generally bounded with good Land. The planted Part of the Province and Territories is caſt into ſix Counties, *Philadelphia*, *Buckingham*, *Cheſter*, *Newcaſtle*, *Kent*, and *Suſſex*. For the well Government of the ſaid Counties, Courts of Juſtice are eſtabliſhed in every County, with Juſtices, Sheriffs, Clerks, Conſtables, &c. Which Courts are held every two Months. But to prevent Law Suits there are three Peace-makers choſen by each County-Court, in the Nature of common Arbitrators, to hear and end Differences between Man and Man; and Spring and Fall there is an Orphan's Court in each County, to inſpect and regulate the Affairs of Orphans and Widows.

Its Rivers.

Counties.

Courts of Juſtice erected.

Philadelphia deſcribed.

The City of *Philadelphia*, extends in Length, from River to River, two Miles, and in Breadth near a Mile. And as it is thus placed, between two Navigable Rivers upon a Neck of Land, and that Ships may ride in good Anchorage, in ſix or eight Fathom Water in both Rivers, cloſe to the City, and the Land of the City level, dry, and wholeſome; ſuch a Situation is ſcarce to be parallell'd. The Ground on which it ſtands is high and dry, yet replenished with running Streams. Beſides the *High-Street* that runs in the Middle, from River to River, and is an hundred Foot broad, it has eight Streets more, that run the ſame Courſe, the leaſt of which is fifty Foot in Breadth; and, beſides *Broad-Street*, which croſſeth the Town in the Middle, and is alſo an hundred Foot wide, there are twenty Streets more, that run the ſame Courſe, and are alſo fifty Foot broad. Within a few Weeks after the Ground was Laid out, this Town advanced to 357 Houſes, divers of them large, well-built, with good Cellars, three Stories, and ſome Balconies. There is a fair Key, of about three hundred Foot ſquare. There inhabit moſt Sorts of uſeful Tradeſmen; as Carpenters, Joiners, Bricklayers, Maſons, Plaſterers, Plumbers, Smiths, Glaziers, Tailors, Shoemakers, Butchers, Bakers, Brewers,

A fair Key.

Brewers, Glovers, Tanners, Felmongers, Wheelwrights, Mill-wrights, Ship-wrights, Boat-wrights, Rope-makers, Sailmakers, Block-makers, Turners, &c. There are two Markets every Week, and two Fairs every Year. In other Places are Markets also, as at *Chester* and *Newcastle*. The Town is well furnished with convenient Mills; and what with their Garden-Plots, the Fish of the River, and their Labour, the Inhabitants live comfortably.

Markets and Fairs.

Mills.

The Planters settle in the Way of Townships or Villages, each of which contains 5000 Acres Square, and at least ten Families, the Regulation of the Country being a Family to each 500 Acres. Some Townships have more, where the Interest of the People is less than that Quantity, which often falls out. These Townships lie square, generally the Village in the Centre: The Houses either opposite, or else opposite to the Middle, betwixt two Houses over the Way, for nearer Neighbourhood. Five hundred Acres are alotted for the Village, which, among ten Families, comes to fifty Acres each: This lies square, and on the Outside of the Square stands the Houses, and their fifty Acres running back, whose Ends meeting, make the Centre of the five hundred Acres as they are to the whole. Before the Doors of the Houses lies the Highway, and cross it every Man's four hundred and fifty Acres of Land, that make up his Compliment of five hundred.

Their Settlements.

The Corn and Roots that grow in *England*, thrive very well there; as Wheat, Barley, Rye, Oats, Buck-Wheat, Pease, Beans, Cabbages, Turnips, Carrots, Parsneps, Colliflowers, Asparagus, Onions, Charlots, Garlick, and *Irish* Potatoes. They have also *Spanish* Potatoes, and very good Rice, which do not grow here. The Low Lands are excellent for Rape, and Hemp, and Flax. The Weeds of the Woods feed their Cattle for the Market as well as the Dairy. Their Swamps or Marshes yield them coarse Hay for the Winter. *English* Grass Seeds take well; which gives them fatting Hay. All Sorts of *English* Fruits take mighty well; the Peach is excellent, and in great Quantities. They Sundry them, and lay them up in Lofts, as we do Roots here, and stew them with Meat in Winter Time. Musk-Melons and Water-Melons are raised here, with as little Care as Pumkins in *England*: The Vine especially prevails, which grows every where; and upon Experience of some *French* People from *Rochel* and the Isle of *Rhee*, good Wine may be made there, especially when the Earth and Stem are tined and civilized by Culture.

Mighty Whales rowl upon the Coast, near the Mouth of the Bay of *Delaware*. Sturgeons play continually in the Rivers in Summer. Alloes, as they call them, are excellent Fish, and of the Bigness of our largest Carp: They are so plentiful that six hundred and odd have been drawn at one Draught: Three hundred is no Wonder, and one hundred familiar: They are excellent pickled or smoaked, as well as boiled fresh. Rocks are somewhat rounder and larger: They have also a whiter Fish, little inferior in Relish to our Mallet. These are often barrelled like Cod, and not much inferior for their spending. Of both these, the Inhabitants lay up their Winter Store. The Sheeps-head, so called from the Resemblance of its Mouth and Nose to a Sheep, is a Fish much preferred by some: They keep in Salt Water, are like a Roch in Fashion, as thick as a Salmon, but not so long. They have also the Drum, a large and noble Fish, commended equal to the Sheeps-head. 'Tis so called from a Noise it makes in its Belly when it is taken, resembling a Drum. There are Abundance of lesser Fish to be caught at Pleasure, but they quit not Cost, except the Herring, which swarms in such Shoals, that it is hardly credible: In little Creeks, they almost shovel them up in Tubs. There is the Cat-fish, or Flat-head, Lamprey, Eel, Trout, Perch, black and white Smelt, Sun-fish, &c. Also Oisters, Cockles, Concks, Crabs, Muscles, Mananoses.

Waters.

Fish.

Their Drink is Beer and Punch, made of Rum and Water: Their Beer was made mostly of Molosses, which well boiled, with Sassafras or Pine infused into it, makes very tolerable Drink: But now they make Malt, and Malt Drink grows common, especially at Ordinaries, and the Houses of substantial People.

Drink.

New-Jersey is subdivided into *East* and *West-Jersey*. *East-Jersey* lies between forty-one, and forty four Degrees of North Latitude, its South being about ten Degrees nearer the Line than *London*. It is bounded on the South-East by the main Sea; East, by *Hudson's-River*; West, by a Line which separates it from *West-Jersey*; and North by the main Land. The Proprietors of this Province in 1682, published an Account of it, for the Information and Encouragement of all Persons who were inclined to settle themselves, Families, and Servants, in that Country; from which Account we shall extract what is for our Purpose, and add a few Particulars.

New-Jersey.

"The Conveniency of Situation, Temperature of Air, and Fertility of Soil, is such, that there were no less than seven considerable Towns, in a short Time, *viz. Shrewsbury*, *Middle-Town*, *Burgin*, *Newark*, *Elizabeth-Town*, *Woodbridge*, and *Piscataway*: Which were all inhabited by a sober and industrious People, who had necessary Provisions for themselves and Families, and for the comfortable Entertainment of Strangers and Travellers. But the principal Towns at this Day are *Perth-Amboy* and *Elizabeth's*, neither of which are far distant from *New-York*. This Colony was soon found generally to agree well with *English* Constitutions. For Navigation it hath the Advantages, not only to be situate along the navigable Part of *Hudson's-River*, but to lie also fifty Miles on the main Sea. And near the Midst of this Province is a Bay for Ships, within *Sandy-Hook*, not inferior to any in *America*, where Ships not only harbour in the greatest Storms, but ride safe with all Winds, and sail in and out thence, as well in Winter as Summer.

Chief Towns.

Its Advantages for Navigation

For Fishery, the Sea Banks there are stored with Variety of Fish, not only such as are profitable for Transportation, but fit for Food there; as Whales, Cod-fish, Cole, Hake-fish, large Mackarel, and many other Sorts of flat and small Fish. The Bay also, and *Hudson's-River*, are plentifully stored with Sturgeon, *Great Basse*, and other Scale-fish; Eels and Shell-fish, as Oisters, &c. in great Plenty, and easy to take. This Country is likewise plentifully supplied with Springs, Rivulets, Inland Rivers, and Creeks which fall into the Sea, besides *Hudson's-River*, in which is much Variety of fresh Fish and Water Fowl. There is also great Plenty of Oak-Timber, fit for Shipping, and Masts for Ships, and other Variety of Wood, like the adjacent Colonies; as Chesnut, Walnut, Poplar, Cedar, Ash, Fir, &c. fit for building, within the Country.

Fish.

Wate

The Soil varies in Goodness and Richness, but is generally fertil, and, with much smaller Labour than in *England*, produceth plentiful Crops of all Sorts of *English* Grain, besides *Indian* Corn. It also produceth good Flax and Hemp, which they manufacture into Linnen Cloth. There is sufficient

Fer

ſufficient Meadow and Mariſh to their Up-lands; and the very Barrens there, are not like ſome in *England*, but produce Graſs fit for grazing Cattle in the Summer Seaſon.

Fowl and Fruits. The Country is well ſtored with wild Deer, Conies, and wild Fowl of ſeveral Sorts; as Turkeys, Pigeons, Partridges, Plover, Quails, wild Swans, Geeſe, Ducks, &c. in great Plenty. It produceth Variety of good delicious Fruits, as Grapes, Plumbs, Mulberries, Abricots, Peaches, Pears, Apples, Quinces, Water-Melons, &c. which are in *England* planted in Orchards and Gardens. Theſe, as alſo many other Fruits which come not to Perfection in *England*, are the Cattle natural Product of this Country. There are alſo great Store of Horſes, Cows, Hogs, and ſome Sheep, which may be bought at reaſonable Prices, with *Engliſh* Money, or *Engliſh* Commodities, or Man's Labour, where Money and Goods are wanting. What Sort of Minerals are in the Bowels of the Earth, After-Time muſt produce. But there is already a Melting Furnace and Forge ſet up in this Colony, where is made good Iron, Harbours which is of great Benefit to the Country. It is exceedingly well furniſhed with ſafe and convenient Harbours for Shipping; which is of great Advantage to the Country, and affords already great Plenty of Horſes; and alſo Beef, Pork, Pipe-ſtaves, Boards, Bread, Flour, Wheat, Barley, Rye, *Indian* Corn, Butter and Cheeſe, which they export for *Barbadoes*, *Jamaica*, *Nevis*, and other adjacent Iſlands; as alſo to *Portugal*, *Spain*, the *Canaries*, &c. Their Whale-Oil and Whale-Fins, Bever, Monkey, Racoon, and Martin-Skins, they tranſport for *England*.

The Natives. The *Indian* Natives are but few, comparative to the neighbouring Colonies; and thoſe that are there, are ſo far from being formidable to the Planters, that they are really ſerviceable to the *Engliſh*; not only in taking the Deer, and other wild Creatures, and catching of Fiſh and Fowl in their Seaſons, but in the deſtroying of Bears, Wolves, and Foxes, and divers Sorts of Vermin and Poultry, whoſe Skins and Furs they bring the *Engliſh*, and ſell at leſs Price than the Value of Time an *Engliſhman* muſt ſpend to take them. As for the Conſtitutions of the Country, there are ſuch Proviſion in them for Liberty in Matters of Religion, and Property in their Eſtates, that the Colony has been conſiderably peopled from the adjacent Countries, and the Inhabitants here have not only for many Years enjoyed their Eſtates according to the Conceſſions, but alſo an uninterrupted Exerciſe of their particular Perſuaſions in Religion.

Our Purpoſe is, with all convenient Expedition, to erect our principal Town; which, by Reaſon of Situation, muſt in all Probability be the moſt conſiderable for Merchandize, Trade, and Fiſhery, in thoſe Parts. It is deſigned to be placed upon a Point of rich Land, called *Ambo-Point*, lying on *Raritor-River*, and pointing to *Sandy-Hook-Bay*, and near the Place where Ships in that Harbour commonly ride at Anchor." The Town erected according to this Scheme, is that which is now call'd *Perth-Amboy*, the Capital of the Province.

Jerſey The South and Weſt Part of *New-Jerſey*, lying on the Sea and *Delaware-River*, is called *Weſt-Jerſey*. It hath all the Conveniencies and Excellencies of the other Part afore-mentioned, and may be made one of the beſt Colonies in *America*, the Situation, Air, and Soil, the Ports, Creeks, good Harbours and Havens, being not inferior to any in that Part of the World, having no leſs than thirty navigable Creeks, ranging themſelves at a convenient Diſtance upon the Sea, and the River of *Delaware*, the Shores thereof are generally very deep and bold.

Buying of Lands. The *Engliſh* that are ſettled here, buy the Lands of the Natives, and give them real Satisfaction for the ſame, whereby they are aſſured of their Love and Friendſhip for ever; and the poor Creatures are never the worſe, but much the better, as they themſelves confeſs; being now ſupplied, by Way of Trade, with all they want, hunting and fiſhing as they did before, except in incloſed or planted Ground. There is a Town called *Burlington* here, which is the Capital, and looked upon as a Place of conſiderable Trade. Their Orchards about *Burlington* are ſo laden with Fruit, that the very Branches have been torn away with the Weight thereof: Peaches are in ſuch Plenty, that they bring them Home in Carts. They receive forty Buſhels of good *Engliſh* Wheat, for one Buſhel ſown. Cherries they have in Abundance, and Fowl and Fiſh great Plenty, with ſeveral Sorts that are unknown in *England*. There are likewiſe Bears, Wolves, Foxes, Rattle-Snakes, and ſeveral other Creatures. We are not troubled with the *Muſketto-Fly* in this Place, our Land lying generally high and healthy, and they being commonly in boggy Ground. By the Care and Induſtry of the Inhabitants, this Country is furniſhed with Horſes, Beef, Pork, Flour, Biſcuit and Peaſe to ſpare. It alſo produces Honey, Wax, Silk, Hemp, Flax, Hops, Woad, Rapeſeed, Madder, Pot-aſhes, Anniſeed, Salt, Hides, raw or tanned; and there is a very large Creature, called a Mooſe, of whoſe Skins are made excellent Buff; beſides the natural Product of Pitch, Tar, Roſin, Turpentine, &c. As for Furs, they have Bever, black Fox, and Otter, with divers other Sorts. The Tobacco is excellent upon the River *Delaware*. There may be very good fiſhing for Cod and Cuſh, as ſeveral have found by Experience. Upon the whole Matter, this Province affords all that is either for the Neceſſity, Conveniency, Profit, or Pleaſure of human Life.

New York. Adjoining to *New-Jerſey* Eaſtwards, is the Colony of *New-York*, ſo called from the late King *James* the Second when Duke of *York*. It was formerly all that Part of *New-England* which the *Dutch* once poſſeſſed; and which is now divided into *Penſilvania*, *New-Jerſey*, and *New-York*. It Its Diſcovery. was firſt diſcovered by Mr. *Hudſon*, and ſold preſently by him to the *Dutch*, without Authority from his Sovereign the King of *England*, in 1608. The *Hollanders* in 1614, began to plant there, and called it *New-Netherland*; but Sir *Samuel Argal*, Governor of *Virginia*, routed them: After which, they got Leave of King *James* to put in there for freſh Water, in their Paſſage to *Brazil*, and did not offer to plant till a good while after the *Engliſh* were ſettled in the Country. In 1664 King *Charles* the Second ſent over four Commiſſioners to reduce the Colony into Bounds, that had been encroached upon by each other; who marched with three hundred Soldiers, to *Manhadees*, and took from the *Dutch* the chief Town, then called *New-Amſterdam*, now *New-York*: And *Auguſt* the 29th they turned out their Governor, and all the reſt, but thoſe who acknowledged Subjection to the King of *England*; ſuffering thoſe to enjoy their Houſes and Eſtates as before. Thirteen Days after, Sir *Robert Carr* took the Fort and Town of *Aurania*, now called *Albany*; and twelve Days after that, the Fort and Town of *Araſapha*, then *Delaware-Caſtle*, manned with *Dutch* and *Swedes*: So that now the *Engliſh* were immediately Maſters of three handſome Towns, three ſtrong Forts and a Caſtle, without the Loſs of one Man; and have ſince been in quiet Poſſeſſion of the whole Province

The.

The firſt Governor of theſe Parts for the King of *England* was Colonel *Nicols*, one of the Commiſſioners.

It is a Country of a rich and fertil Soil, well watered with Rivers; and is found to produce the ſame Beaſts, Birds, Fiſh, Fruits, Commodities, Trees, &c. as *Virginia* and *Maryland*, and in as great Plenty; and it is reported that one Buſhel of *European* Wheat, has yielded an hundred in one Year.

New York City. The moſt conſiderable Town is that of *New-York*; being well ſeated both for Trade, Security, and Pleaſure, in a ſmall Iſle called *Manahatan*, regarding the Sea, made ſo by *Hudſon's-River*, which ſevereth it from *Long-Iſland*; which River is very commodious for Shipping, being about two Leagues broad. The Town is large, well built, conſiſting of handſome Houſes, built with *Dutch* Brick. To the Landward it is encompaſſed with a Wall of good Thickneſs; and fortified at the Entrance of the River, ſo as to command any Ship which paſſeth that Way, by a Fort, called *James Fort*: And for Civil Government, it hath a Mayor, Aldermen, Sheriff, and Juſtices of the Peace, for their Magiſtrates. The Inhabitants are moſtly *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, who have a very conſiderable Trade with the *Indians*, for the Skins of Elks, Deer, Bears, &c. alſo for thoſe of Beaver, Otter, Racoon, with other rich Furs; and are ſupplied with Veniſon and Fowl in Winter, and Fiſh in the Summer, by the *Indians*, at an eaſy Price.

This Province, as we took notice, formerly contained all that Land which is ſeated in the North Part of *America*, betwixt *New-England* and *Maryland*, the Length towards the North being not fully known; the Breadth is about two hundred Miles: The chief Rivers are *Hudſon-River*, *Raritan-River*, and *Delaware-Bay*; and the principal Iſlands are the *Manahatan-Iſland*, *Long-Iſland*, and *Stater-Iſland*. *Manahatan-Iſland*, ſo called by the *Indians*, lieth within Land, betwixt forty-one and forty-two Degrees of North Latitude, and is in Length about fourteen Miles, and two broad. *New-York* is ſeated on the Weſt End of this Iſland, having a ſmall Arm of the Sea, which divides it from *Long-Iſland* on the South. *Long Iſland* runs in Length about a hundred Miles, and is in ſome Places eight, twelve, and fourteen Miles broad; inhabited from one End to the other, having a rich Soil for all *Engliſh* Grain; the Fruits, Trees, and Herbs very good. In *May* you may ſee the Woods and Fields ſo richly bedecked with Roſes, and Variety of other delightful Flowers, as equal, if not excel, many Gardens in *England*.

Inhabitants. This Country is alſo poſſeſſed by ſundry Sorts of People, not much unlike the *Indians* of *Virginia*; being well proportioned, of an Olive Colour, black haired, very expert in their Bow and Arrows, which are the chief Weapons of War. They are very ſerviceable and courteous to the *Engliſh*, being of a ready Wit, and very apt to receive Inſtruction from them: But there are now but few *Indians* upon the Iſland, being ſtrangely decreaſed ſince the *Engliſh* firſt ſettled there; for not eighty Years ago there were ſix Towns full of them, which were ſoon reduced to two Villages, the reſt being cut off by Wars among themſelves, or ſome raging mortal Diſeaſes. They live principally by Hunting, Fowling, and Fiſhing; their Wives tilling the Land, and planting the Corn. They feed on Fiſh, Fowl, and Veniſon; likewiſe Pol-cats, Turtles, Racoon, and the like. They build ſmall moveable Tents, which they remove three Times a Year, chiefly quartering where they plant their Corn, beſides their Hunting and Fiſhing-Quarters. Their principal Recreations are Foot-ball and Cards, at which they will play away all they have, except a Flap to cover their Nakedneſs. They are very great Lovers of ſtrong Drink; ſo that without they have enough to be drunk, they care not to drink at all. If their Company be ſo great, that they have not enough to make them all drunk, they uſually chuſe ſo many as are proportionable to that Quantity, and the reſt muſt be Spectators. If any happen to be drunk before he has taken his Share, which is ordinarily a Quart of Brandy, Rum, or Strong Waters; to ſhew their Juſtice, they will pour the reſt down his Throat: In which Debauches they often kill one another; which the Friends of the Dead revenge upon the Murderer, unleſs he purchaſe his Life with Money; which is made of Periwinkle-Shell, both black and white, ſtrung like Beads.

Religion. They obſerve ſeveral Ceremonies in their religious Rites, and were ſaid by the firſt Adventurers to worſhip the Devil. They uſually perform their ſolemn Devotions once or twice a Year, unleſs upon ſome extraordinary Occaſion, as the making of War, or the like. The Day being appointed by their Chief Prieſt, or *Pawaw*, moſt of them go a Hunting for Veniſon. When they are all aſſembled, if the Prieſt wants Money, he then tells them, their God will accept no Offering but Money; which the People believing, every one gives according to his Ability. The Prieſt takes the Money, and putting it into ſome Diſhes, ſets them upon the Top of their low, flat-rooſed Houſes, and ſo falls a calling upon their God, to come and receive it; which Invocation, with many loud Hollows and Outcries, ſtriking the Ground with Sticks, and beating themſelves, is performed by the Prieſt, and ſeconded by the People. After being thus wearied, a Devil, they tell us, (but more likely a Perſon appointed by the *Pawaw*) appears amongſt them, which ſo amazeth the People, that they dare not ſtir. The Prieſt improves the Opportunity, and ſtepping out, makes ſure of the Money, and then returns to lay the Spirit, who is often gone before he comes back. If at ſuch Times any *Engliſh* come among them, it puts a Period to their Proceedings, and they will deſire his Abſence, ſaying, *Their God will not come, till they are departed*, which is a pretty good Proof that Prieſtcraft is not wanting among them. They are much addicted to go to War againſt one another: However, they fight no pitched Battle, but upon their Enemy's Approach, (having firſt ſecured their Wives and Children in ſome Iſland or thick Swamp) armed with Guns and Hatchets, they way-lay their Enemy. They ſeldom give Quarter to any, but the Women and Children, whom they reſerve, and make uſe of for increaſing their Strength.

Burials. When an *Indian* dies, they bury him upright, ſitting upon a Seat, with his Gun, Money, and Goods, to furniſh him in the other World; which they believe to be weſtward, where they ſhall have great Store of Game for Hunting, and live at Eaſe. At his Funeral, his Relations paint their Faces black; making, at his Grave, once or twice every Day, ſad Lamentations; thus continuing till the Blackneſs is worn off their Faces; and after that, once a Year they mourn afreſh for him, viſiting and trimming up the Grave, and covering it with Mats for a Shelter from the Rain. Notwithſtanding all this Buſtle, when an *Indian* is dead, his Name dies with him, none daring ever after to mention his Name, not only becauſe it is a Breach of their Law, but an Affront to his Friends and Relations, as it done on Purpoſe to renew their Grief. And e-

very

very Perſon, bearing the ſame Name, inſtantly changes it for another, which every one invents for himſelf: Some call themſelves Rattleſnakes; others Buckſhorn, or the like. It is ſaid moreover, that if a Perſon die, whoſe Name is ſome Word uſed in common Speech, they change that Word, and invent a new one, which makes their Language very troubleſome. When any one is ſick, after his Friends have uſed all poſſible Means, and all prove ineffectual, they ſend for a *Pawaw*, or Prieſt, who, ſitting down by the ſick Perſon, without the leaſt enquiring after the Diſtemper, expects a Fee, according to which he proportions his Work; beginning with a low Voice to call ſometimes upon one God, and then on another, ſtill raiſing his Voice; beating his naked Breaſts and Sides till the Sweat runs down, and his Breath is almoſt gone; and what remains, he breathes upon the Face of the ſick Perſon three or four Times together, and ſo takes his Leave.

Marriages. Their Weddings are performed without any Ceremony, the Match being firſt made by Money; which being agreed on, and given to the Woman, makes a Conſummation of the Marriage; after which, the Husband keeps her during Pleaſure, and, upon the leaſt Diſlike, turns her away, and takes another. It is no Offence for their married Women to lie with another Man, provided ſhe acquaint her Husband, or ſome of her neareſt Relations therewith; but if not, they account it ſuch a Fault, as is ſometimes puniſhable by Death. When any Woman finds herſelf quick with Child, ſhe keeps herſelf untouched by any Man, until her Delivery: The like ſhe obſerveth in her giving ſuck. An *Indian* may have two, or three, or more Wives, if he pleaſe: But this is not now ſo much uſed, as before the *Engliſh* came, they being inclined to imitate them in Things both good and bad. Any Maid, before ſhe is married, lies with whom ſhe pleaſes for Money, without the leaſt Scandal or Aſperſion, it being not only cuſtomary, but lawful. They are extremely charitable to one another; for if any one has to ſpare, he freely imparts to his Friends; and whatever they get by gaming, or otherwiſe, they ſhare one with another, leaving commonly the leaſt Part to themſelves.

Government. When their King or *Sachem* ſits in Council, he hath a Company of armed Men to guard his Perſon, great Reſpect being ſhewed him by the People, which chiefly appears by their Silence. After he has declared the Cauſe of their Convention, he demands their Opinions, ordering who ſhall firſt begin; who, having delivered his Mind, tells them, he hath done; for no Man interrupts him, though he makes never ſo many long Stops, till he hath no more to ſay. The Council having all delivered their Opinions, the King, after ſome Pauſe, gives the definitive Sentence, which is commonly ſeconded by a Shout from the People. If any Perſon be condemned to die, which is ſeldom, but for Murder, or Inceſt, the King himſelf goes out in Perſon, to ſeek him, and having found him, the King ſhoots firſt, and then happy is the Man that can ſhoot him down, he being, for his Pains, made ſome military Officer.

Apparel. Their modern Clothing is a Yard and an half of Broad-Cloth, which they hang on their Shoulders; and half a Yard of the ſame being put between their Legs, is tied up before and behind, faſtened with a Girdle about their Middle, and hangs with a Flap on each Side. They wear no Hats, but commonly tie a Snake's-Skin about their Heads. They wear alſo a Belt of their Money, or a Kind of Ruff, made with Deer's Hair, and dyed of a Scarlet-Colour, which they eſteem very rich. They greaſe their Bodies and Hair very often, and paint their Faces with divers Colours, which they take great Pride in, every one being painted in a ſeveral Manner.

New-Albany. *Hudſon's-River* runs by *New-York*, Northward, into the Country, towards the Head of which is ſeated a Country called by the *Engliſh New-Albany*, but by the *French* eſteemed a Part of *Canada*; a Place of a very conſiderable Trade with the Natives; betwixt which and *New-York*, being above an hundred Miles Diſtance, is as good Corn Land as the World affords. It was reduced to the *Engliſh* Obedience by Colonel *Nicols*, and a League of Friendſhip concluded between the Inhabitants and the *Indians*, by whom they have never been ſince diſturbed.

CHAP. XXVII.

A Deſcription of New-England, New-Scotland, Newfoundland, Hudſon's-Bay, *&c. treating of their Situation and Extent, Climates, Seaſons, Rivers, Productions, Trade, Inhabitants both Natives and Planters, Animals, Towns,* &c.

New England Diſcovery. NEW-*England* was firſt diſcovered, as well as the other Northern Coaſts of *America*, by *Sebaſtian Cabot*. Mr. *Philip Amadas*, and Mr. *Arthur Barlow*, were the firſt Chriſtians that took Poſſeſſion thereof for Queen *Elizabeth*. The Year following Sir *Richard Greenvile* conveyed an *Engliſh* Colony thither, under the Government of Mr. *Ralph Lane*, who continued there till the next Year; but, upon ſome extraordinary Occaſion, returned with Sir *Francis Drake* into *England*, who on that Account was called the Firſt Diſcoverer.

Situation. It is ſeated on the Eaſt of *New-York*, and lies between about forty-two and forty-five Degrees of North Latitude. It has a long Extent of Sea Coaſt, where are found divers good Havens, ſeveral of which are capable to harbour five hundred Sail of Ships, by reaſon of the Interpoſition of ſeveral Iſles which lie along the Coaſt. And

Temperature. although this Country is ſeated in the Midſt of the *Temperate Zone*, yet is the Clime more uncertain, as to the Heat and Cold, than thoſe *European* Kingdoms which lie parallel with it; and, as to *Virginia*, this may be compared as *Scotland* is to *England*. The Air is found, very healthful Air. and agreeable to the *Engliſh*, which makes them poſſeſs many potent Colonies, being very numerous and powerful.

Religion of the Natives. The Natives, when they deſign to make War, firſt conſult with their Prieſts, no People being ſo barbarous almoſt, but they have their Gods, Prieſts, and Religion. They adore as it were all Things that they think may hurt them; as Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder, our great Guns, Muskets, and Horſes. Some of them once ſeeing an *Engliſh* Boar, were ſtruck with Terror, becauſe he briſtled up his Hairs and gnaſhed his Teeth, be-

lieving him to be the God of the Swine, who was offended with them. The chief God they worship is *Okee*. In their Temples they have his Image ill-favouredly carved, painted, and adorned with Chains, Copper, and Beads, and covered with a Skin. The Sepulchre of their Kings is commonly near them, whose Bodies are first imbowelled, dried on a Hurdle, adorned with Chains and Beads, and then wrapped in white Skins, over which are Mats. They are afterwards intombed orderly in Arches made of Mats, their Wealth being placed at their Feet. But for their common Burials, they dig a Hole in the Earth with sharp Stakes, and the Corps, being wrapped in Skins and Mats, they lay them in the Ground, placing them upon Sticks, and then cover them with Earth. The Burial ended, the Women, having their Faces painted black with Coal and Oil, sit mourning in the House twenty-four Hours together, howling and yelling by Turns.

Burials.

Cloaths.

The Natives are clothed with loose Mantles made of Deers Skins, and Aprons of the same round their Middle, all else being naked: They are of Stature like to us in *England*. They paint themselves and their Children, and he is most gallant who is most deformed. The Women imbroider their Legs, Hands, and other Parts, with several Works, as Serpents, and the like, making black Spots in their Flesh. Their Houses are made of small Poles, round, and fastened at the Top in a Circle like our Arbours, covered with Mats twice as long as broad. They are exact Archers, and with their Arrows will kill Birds flying, or Beasts running full Speed. Their Bows are of tough Hazel, and their Strings of Leather; their Arrows of Cane or Hazel, headed with Stones or Horn, and feathered artificially. They soon grow heartless, if they find their Arrows do not do Execution.

New England planted.

Though the planting of this Country was designed by several of the *English*, yet it lay much neglected, 'till a small Company of Planters, under the Command of Captain *George Popham*, and Captain *Gilbert*, was sent over at the Charge of Sir *John Popham*, 1606, to begin a Colony upon a Tract of Land about *Saga de hoch*, the most northerly Part of *New-England*; but that Design, within two Years, expired with its Founder. Soon after, some honourable Persons of the West of *England*, commonly called the Council of *Plymouth*, being more certainly informed of several navigable Rivers, and commodious Havens, with other Places fit either for Planting or Traffick, newly discovered by many Navigators, obtained of King *James* the First, a Patent under the Great Seal, of all that Part of *North-America*, called *New-England*. This Tract of Land, was in 1612 cantoned, and divided by Grant into many lesser Parcels, according as Adventurers presented; which Grants being founded upon uncertain and false Descriptions, and Reports of some that travelled thither, did much interfere one with another, to the great Disturbance of the first Planters; so that little Profit was reaped from thence: Nor was any greater Improvement made of those Portions of Land, save the erecting some few Cottages for Fishermen, and a few inconsiderable Buildings for the Planters.

This was the beginning of *New-England*, when, in the Year 1610 one Mr. *Robinson*, a Presbyterian, or rather Independant Preacher, and several other *English* then at *Leyden* in *Holland*, foreseeing that they could not well provide for their Posterity, under the Government of a foreign Nation, resolved to intreat so much Favour of King *James*, as to grant them Liberty, under the Protection of his Authority, to place themselves in some Place of *New-England*. Having therefore obtained a Patent for some Place about *Hudson's-River*, they set Sail from *Plymouth*, in *September*, for the Southern Parts of *New-England*: But, as they intended their Course thither-ward, they were thro' many Dangers, at last, about *November* the 11th, cast upon a Bosom of the South Cape of the *Massachusets* Bay, called *Cape Cod*. When Winter approached so fast, that they had no Opportunity to remove, and finding some Encouragement from the Hopefulness of the Soil, they resolved there to make their Abode, laying the Foundation of a new Colony, which, from the last Town they sailed from in *England*, they called *New-Plymouth*.

From this Time, to the Year 1636, Things were very prosperously and successfully carried on in *New-England*. At which Time, the *Naraganset Indians*, who are much dreaded by all the rest, committed divers Outrages upon several of them, and likewise upon the *English* and *Dutch*, barbarously murdering Captain *Stone*, Captain *Oldham*, with several others: Whereupon, the Inhabitants of all the Colonies unanimously falling upon them, in 1637 they were easily suppressed, about seven hundred of them being destroyed. Upon which, *Miantonimoh*, the chief of the *Mageshins*, expecting to be sole Ruler over all the *Indians*, committed many Insolencies upon some others, who were in Confederacy with the *English* as well as himself; and he being sent for to the *Massachusetts* Court, at *Boston*, endeavoured to clear himself, but was clearly convicted by one of his Fellows, named *Uncas*: In Revenge of which, after his Return Home, he made War upon *Uncas*, by whom being taken Prisoner, by the Advice and Counsel of the *English*, he cut off his Head. This happened in 1643, from whence, to 1675, there was always an Appearance of Amity on all Sides; only in 1671, one *Matoonas*, being vexed that an intended Design against the *English* did not take Effect, out of mere Malice against them, slew an *Englishman* on the Road. The Murderer was a *Nipnet Indian*, and, under the Command of the *Sachem* of *Mount-Hope*, the Author of all the Mischief against the *English* in 1675.

Upon a due Enquiry of all the Transactions between the *Indians* and the *English*, there will appear no Ground of Quarrel or Provocation given by the *English*. For when *Plymouth* Colony was first planted, in 1620, within three Months after, *Massasoit*, the chief *Sachem* or Commander of all that Side of the Country, repaired thither to the *English*, and entered solemnly into a League with them. This League the same *Sachem* confirmed a little before his Death, in 1630, coming with his two Sons, *Alexander* and *Philip*, to *Plymouth*, and renewing the same for himself, his Heirs and Successors: Yet *Massasoit* never loved the *English*, and would have engaged them never to have attempted to draw away any of his People from their Superstition to the Christian Religion: But finding they would make no Treaty with him upon such Conditions, he urged it no further. After the Death of *Massasoit*, his eldest Son *Alexander* succeeded, who, notwithstanding the League he had entered into with the *English*, in Conjunction with his Father, had no Affection to them nor their Religion, but was plotting to rise against them: Whereupon a Gentleman was sent to bring him before the Council of *Plymouth*, who found him and eight more in a Hunting House, where they were just come in from hunting, leaving all their Guns without Doors; which being seized by the *English*, they then entered the *Wigwam*, and demanded *Alexander* to go along with

with them before the Governor. At which Meſſage he was much ſtartled; but being told that if he ſtirred, or refuſed to go, he was a dead Man, he was perſuaded to go; but his very Indignation for this Surprizal caſt him into a Fever, whereof he ſoon after died. After his Death, *Philip*, his Brother, came with *Sauſaman* his chief Secretary, to renew the former League betwixt them, for the next ſeven Years, as had been in former Times; and yet, without any Kind of Provocation, this treacherous Man plotted a general Inſurrection in all the *Engliſh* Colonies, all the *Indians* being to riſe as one Man againſt the Plantations which were next them. Which being diſcovered by *Sauſaman*, *Philip* thereupon cauſed him to be murdered. The Murderers being apprehended, were executed, and *Philip* fearing his own Head, got openly into Arms, killing, burning, and deſtroying the *Engliſh*, and their Habitations, with all manner of Cruelty. Which Troubles continued almoſt two Years, 'till at length, after ſeveral Defeats given to *Philip* and his Forces, Divine Vengeance, (ſay our *Engliſh* Writers,) overtook him for cauſeleſly breaking his League. For having been Hunting through the Woods, he was driven to his own Den upon Mount *Hope*, which proved a Priſon to ſecure him 'till the Meſſenger of Death came.

After this Digreſſion concerning the Eſtabliſhment of the *Engliſh* here, we proceed to give ſome Account of the Country. It was poſſeſſed by divers Sorts of People, who are judged by ſome to be of the *Tartars*, called *Samoids*, bordering upon *Muſcovia*, being divided into Tribes. Thoſe to the Eaſt and North-Eaſt are called *Chaudiers*, *Tarentines*, and *Menbegans*: To the South are the *Pequets*, and *Naraganſets*: Weſtwards, *Connecticuts* and *Mowhocks*: To the North, *Aborigines*, which conſiſt of *Mattachuſets*, *Wippanaps*, and *Tarentines*: The *Pocanets* live to the Weſtward of *Plymouth*. Not long before the *Engliſh* came into the Country, happened a great Mortality among them, eſpecially where the *Engliſh* afterwards planted. The Eaſt and Northern Parts were ſmitten, firſt by the Plague, after, when the *Engliſh* came, by the Small-Pox. The three Kingdoms of the *Mattachuſets*, being before very populous, having under them ſeven petty *Saganmoſhips*, were now by the Plague reduced from 30,000 to 500. There are now many People to the Eaſtward. The *Pequods* were deſtroyed by the *Engliſh*. The *Mowhacks* are few in Number. Their Speech is thought to be a Dialect of the *Tartars*. They are of Perſon tall, and well limb'd; of a pale and lean Viſage, black ey'd, and black hair'd, both ſmooth and curl'd, generally wearing it long. They have ſeldom any Beards; their Teeth are very white, ſhort, and even, which they account the moſt neceſſary Part of Man: And as the *Auſtrians* are known by their great Lips, the *Bavarians* by their Pokes under their Chins, the *Jews* by their goggle Eyes, ſo the *Indians* are remarkable for their flat Noſes. The *Indeſſes*, or young Women, are ſome of them very comely, with round plump Faces, and generally plump of their Bodies, as well as the Men; ſoft and ſmooth like a Mole Skin, of a reaſonable good Complexion, but that they dye themſelves tawny: Yet many pretty Laſſes are found amongſt them. The old Women are lean and ugly; yet all of a modeſt Demeanour, conſidering their ſavage Breeding; and indeed they ſhame our *Engliſh* Ruffians, whoſe Rudeneſs in many Things exceeds theirs. The Natives in general, are of a very inconſtant, crafty, and timorous Diſpoſition; but are very ingenious and quick of Apprehenſion; ſoon angry, and ſo malicious, that they ſeldom forget an Injury; prone to Violence and Slaughter, both Men and Women being very theeviſh, and great Haters of Strangers.

Wives they have two or three, according to their Ability and Strength of Body. The Women are ſaid to have the eaſieſt Labour of any in the World; for when their time is come, they go out alone, carrying a Board with them two Foot along, and a Foot and an half broad, bored full of Holes on each Side, having a Foot beneath, and on the Top a broad Strap of Leather, which they put over their Forehead, the Board hanging at their Back. When they come to a convenient Buſh or Tree, they lay them down, and are delivered without ſo much as one Groan. They wrap the Child up in a young Beaver Skin, with his Heels cloſe to his Buttocks, and laced down to the Board upon his Back, his Knees reſting upon the Foot beneath: Then they put the Strap of Leather upon their Forehead, with the Infant hanging at their Back, and home they trudge. They dye the Child with a Liquor of boil'd Hemlock-Bark, and the Men throw him into the Water, if they ſuſpect it gotten by any other Nation: But if it will ſwim, they acknowledge it for their own. They give them Names when they are Men grown, and love thoſe of the *Engliſh*, as *Robbin*, *Harry*, *Philip*, and the like. They are very indulgent to their Children, as well as Parents: But if the latter live ſo long as to be burthenſome, they are reported either to ſtarve or bury them alive. Their Apparel, before the *Engliſh* came among them, was the Skins of wild Beaſts, with the Hair on; *Buskins* of Deer Skins, or Mooſe, dreſt, and drawn with Lines into ſeveral Works; the Lines being coloured with yellow, blue, or red. Pumps too they have, made of tough Skins, without Soles. In the Winter, when Snow will bear them, they faſten to their Feet Snow Shoes, made like a large Racket for Tennis Play, laced on before; and behind they wear a ſquare Piece of Leather, tied about their Middle with a String, to hide their Secrets. But ſince they have had to do with the *Engliſh*, they buy of them a Cloth, of which they make Mantles, Coats with ſhort Sleeves, and Caps for their Heads; but the Men keep their old Faſhion.

Women and Children. Their Apparel.

This Country is well watered with Rivers, the chief among which, are, *Agamentico*, *Connecticut*, *Kenebequy*, *Merrimick*, *Miſhum*, *Miſtick*, *Norragenſat*, *Piſcataway*, *Pemmaquid*, *Tachobacco*, &c. And in theſe Rivers, together with the Sea, are taken excellent Fiſh, as Cod, Thornback, Sturgeon, Porpuſſes, Haddock, Salmons, Herrings, Mackarel, Oyſters, Crab fiſh, Tortoiſe, Cockles, Muſcles, Clams, Smelts, Eels, Lamprons, Alewives, Baſſes, Hallibuts, Shacks, Scales, Grampuſſes, and Whales. Here are alſo great Variety of Fowls, as Pheaſants, Partridges, Heath Cocks, Turkeys, Geeſe, Ducks, Herons, Cranes, Cormorants, Swans, Widgeons, Sheldrakes, Snipes, Doppers, Black birds, the Humbird, Loor, &c. The wild Beaſts of chief Note, are Lions, Bears, Foxes, Racoons, Mooſes, Muſquathes, Otters, Beavers, Deer, Hares, Coneys, &c. and for tame Beaſts, Cows, Sheep, Goats, Swine, and Horſes. Amongſt the hurtful Things in this Country, the Rattle Snake is moſt dangerous. Here are alſo ſeveral Sorts of ſtinging Flies, which are found very troubleſome to the Inhabitants. Here are ſeveral Sorts of Trees, as the Oak, Cypreſs, Pine, Chefnut, Cedar, Walnut, Fir, Aſh, Aſp, Elm, Alder, Maple, Birch, Saſſafras, Sumach; ſeveral Fruit-Trees, as Apples, Pears, Plumbs, with ſeveral others that are growing in *Virginia* and *Maryland*, which have already been mentioned.

Rivers. Animals. Trees and Fruit.

This

Produce. This Country affordeth ſeveral Sorts of rich Furs, Flax, Linen, Amber, Iron, Pitch, Tar, Cables, Maſts, and Timber, to build Ships; alſo ſeveral Sorts of Grain, wherewith they drive a conſiderable Trade to *Barbadoes*, and other *Engliſh* Plantations in *America*, ſupplying them with Flour, Biſcuit, Salt, Fleſh, and Fiſh, *&c.* and in return, bring Sugars, and other Commodities. They alſo drive a conſiderable Trade with *England* for wearing Apparel, Stuffs, Cloth, Iron, Braſs, and other Utenſils for their Houſes. As to the Coins, Weights, and Meaſures of *New-England*, and the reſt of the *American* Plantations belonging to his Majeſty, they are the ſame with thoſe of *England*; but as to Coins, they are not much made uſe of in Trade, their Way being to uſe Paper for it, or barter one Commodity for another, *&c.*

The *Engliſh*, now inhabiting in *New-England*, are very numerous and powerful, poſſeſſing many potent Colonies, and are governed by Laws of their own making, having ſeveral Courts of Judicature, where they aſſemble together, as well for the making of new Laws, aboliſhing of old, hearing and determining of Cauſes, as for the Electing of Magiſtrates, each County Electing ſuch like Officers. The Government, both Civil and Eccleſiaſtical, is in the Hands of Independants or Presbyterians. The Military Part of their Government, is by one Major-General and three Serjeant-Majors, to whom belong the four Counties of *Suffolk*, *Middleſex*, *Eſſex*, and *Norfolk*.

Towns. *Boſton.* Here are ſeveral fine Towns; as *Boſton*, the Metropolis of *New-England*, and indeed of all the *Britiſh* Dominions in *America*; commodiouſly ſeated for Traffick on the Sea-Shore. It is at preſent a very large and ſpacious City, compoſed of ſeveral well-ordered Streets, and graced with ſeveral fair and beautiful Houſes, which are well Inhabited by Merchants and Tradeſmen, who drive a conſiderable Trade for ſuch Commodities as the Country affordeth, to *Barbadoes* and other *Caribbee* Iſles; as alſo to *England* and *Ireland*; taking in exchange ſuch Commodities as each Place affordeth, or are found uſeful to them. It has ſeveral Churches, and a greater Number of Meeting-houſes, and is a Place of good Strength; having two or three Hills adjoining, on which are raiſed Fortifications, with great Pieces mounted thereon, which are well guarded. 2. *Charles-Town*, ſeated on and between the Rivers *Charles* and *Miſtick*: It is beautified with a large and well-built Church, and near the River-ſide is the Market-place, from which runneth two Streets, in which are ſeveral good Houſes. 3. *Dorcheſter*, ſituated near the Sea, where there falls in two Rivulets; an indifferent Town. 4. *Cambridge*, formerly *New-Town*, ſeated on the River *Merrimick*: This Town conſiſts of ſeveral Streets, and is beautified with two Colleges, and divers fair and well-built Houſes. 5. *St. George's Fort*, ſeated on the Mouth of the River *Sagadebock*. 6. *New-Plymouth*, ſeated on that large Bay of *Patuxet*. 7. *Reading*, commodiouſly ſeated above a great Lake, and well watered and inhabited. In this Town are two Mills, one for Corn, and the other for Timber. 8. *Salem*, pleaſantly ſeated between two Rivers. Other Towns are *Berwick*, *Braintree*, *Briſtol*, *Concord*, *Dartmouth*, *Dedham*, *Dover*, *Exeter*, *Falmouth*, *Glouceſter*, *Green's-Harbour*, *Hampton*, *Hartford*, *Haverhil*, *Hingham*, *Hull*, *Ipſwich*, *Lynn*, *London*, *Malden*, *Newbury*, *New-Haven*, *Northam*, *Norwich*, *Oxford*, *Rowley*, *Roxbury*, *Salisbury*, *Sandwich*, *Southampton*, *Springfield*, *Sudbury*, *Warwick*, *Wenham*, *Weymouth*, *Woſtanne*, and *Yarmouth*; the particular Deſcription of which would carry us to too great a Length. Moſt of theſe have their Names from ſome Towns in *England*; many of them being of good Account, and commodiouſly ſeated, either on the Sea-Shore, or on Navigable Rivers, and are well inhabited. And moſt of theſe Towns are known to the *Indians* by other Names.

New-Scotland, or *Acadia*, the moſt Northerly of thoſe *Britiſh* Provinces in *America* that are contiguous, extends from *Kenebretri*, one of the Frontiers of *New-England*, to the Mouth of the River of *St. Laurence*. It is bounded by the *Atlantick Ocean* on the North, by Cape *Breton* Iſland on the Eaſt, by *Canada* on the Weſt, and by *New-England* on the South, having in all near three hundred Leagues of Sea-Coaſt. It abounds in Corn, Pulſe, and Fruits, and the Coaſt of it in Fiſh. The *Europeans* have made no great Progreſs in planting it, there being but one Town of any Conſideration in the whole Country, the Name of which is *Port-Royal*, or *Annapolis-Royal*. It belonged formerly to the *French*, but was taken by the *Engliſh* in the War of 1689, and yielded up to them by the Peace of *Utrecht*. It lies in Latitude 44 Degrees 40 Minutes, upon a fine Bay, called the Bay of *Fundy*. Little can be ſaid of the natural Produce of this Province, either Animal or Vegetable, that has not been mentioned in treating of the neighbouring Countries; and therefore we ſhall proceed to a Country that affords us more Matter to expatiate on, tho' indeed not ſo much as the Plantations we have already paſs'd thro'. *New-Scotland.*

Newfoundland is an Iſland over-againſt the Mouth of *St. Laurence-River*, in Extent equal to *England*, from whence it is diſtant little above ſix hundred Leagues, lying near half Way between *Ireland* and *Virginia*. We ſhall deſcribe it in this Place, becauſe it falls here more naturally in our Way, than it will do in ſpeaking of the other *Britiſh* Iſlands in *America*. It is ſituated between 46 and 53 Degrees North Latitude; the North Part being better inhabited than the South, tho' the latter be fitter for Habitation; and it is only ſevered from the Continent of *America* by an Arm of the Sea, like that which ſeparates *England* from *France*. It is famous for many excellent Bays and Harbours, and for the Variety of freſh Springs, whoſe Waters are exceeding delicious. *Newfoundland.* Its Extent. Its Situation.

It is enriched by Nature with Plenty of Fiſh and Fowl, with Deer, Hares, Otters, Foxes, Squirrels, and other Beaſts, which yield good Furs. Cod-Fiſh, Herrings, Salmons, Thornbacks, Oiſters, Muſcles, *&c.* they have in Abundance. And though the Country is not over-run generally with Woods, it affords abundance of Trees fit for Timber, Maſts, Planks, and other Uſes. The Soil in moſt Places is fertile, the Climate wholſome, though the Rigour of the Winter Seaſon, and the Exceſs of Heats in Summer, detracts ſomething from its Praiſe. Animals. Its Fertility.

The Iſland of *Newfoundland* is ſaid to be firſt diſcovered by *Sebaſtian Cabot*: But *Fabian* gives an Account, that in the Time of *Henry* the Seventh, three Men being taken in *Newfoundland*, were brought to the King: And one *Robert Thorn* writes, that his Father, and one Mr. *Elliot*, were the Diſcoverers of *Newfoundland*, in 1530. Mr. *Hore* ſet out for a further Diſcovery, but was brought to ſuch Extremity by Famine, that many of his Company were killed and eaten by their Fellows. After the firſt Diſcovery, the Buſineſs of Trading thither was laid aſide for many Years. In the mean Time, the *Normans*, *Portugueſe*, and *Britons* of *France*, reſorted to it, and changed the Names which had been given by the *Engliſh* to the Bays and Promontories; but the *Engliſh* would The firſt Diſcove

not

not ſo ſoon relinquiſh their Pretenſions: And therefore, in 1583, Sir *Humphry Gilbert* took Poſſeſſion thereof, in the Name, and by the Commiſſion, of Queen *Elizabeth*, forbidding all other Nations to uſe Fiſhing, and intending to have ſettled an *Engliſh* Colony there: But Sir *Humphry* being wreck'd in his Return, the ſettling of the Colony was diſcontinued till 1608, and then undertook by *John Guy*, a Merchant of *Briſtol*, who in twenty three Days ſailed from thence to *Conception Bay* in *Newfoundland*. In 1611, they had ſcarce ſix Days of Froſt in *October* and *November*, which preſently thawed, the reſt of the Months being warmer and drier than in *England*; neither were the Brooks frozen up three Nights together, with Ice able to bear a Dog. They had Filberds, Fiſh, Mackerel, and Foxes, in the Winter; White Partridges in the Summer, larger than ours, who are much afraid of *Ravens*. They kill a Wolf with a Maſtiff and a Greyhound.

In 1612, they found ſome Houſes of the Natives, which were nothing but Poles ſet round, and meeting on the Top, ten Foot broad, the Fire in the midſt, and covered with Deer-Skins. The People are of a reaſonable Stature, Beardleſs, broad-faced, and have their Faces covered with Oker: Some of them went naked, only their Privities covered with a Skin. They believe in one God, who created all Things, but have many whimſical Notions, and ridiculous Opinions: For they ſay, *That after God had made all Things, he took a Number of Arrows, and ſtruck them in the Ground, from whence Men and Women firſt ſprung up, and have multiplied ever ſince.* A *Sa ance*, or Governor, being asked concerning the Trinity, anſwered, *There was only one God, one Son, one Mother, and the Sun, which were four; yet God was above all.* Being queſtioned if they or their Anceſtors had heard that God was come into the World, he ſaid, *That he had not ſeen him.* When a Maid among them is fourteen or fifteen Years of Age, ſhe hath many Lovers, and uſes her Pleaſure with as many of them as ſhe pleaſes, for five or ſix Years, and then takes whom ſhe likes for a Huſband, provided he be a good Hunter, living chaſtly with him all her Life after, except for Barrenneſs he forſakes her. When any one dies, they make a Pit, and therein put all his Goods with the Corps, covering it over with Earth, and ſetting many Pieces of Wood over it, and a Stake painted red. They believe the Immortality of the Soul, and that the Dead go into a far Country, to make merry with their Friends.

In 1613, fifty four *Engliſhmen*, ſix Women, and two Children, wintered there: They killed Bears, Otters, and Sables; ſowed Wheat, Rye, Turnips, and Coleworts. Their Winter was dry and clear, with ſome Froſt and Snow. Several had the Scurvy, againſt which, their Turnips proved a ſoveraign Remedy. There are Muſk Cats and Muſk-Rats; and near the Coaſts, is great killing of Maſes, or Sea-Oxen. A ſmall Ship, in a ſmall Time, ſlew fifteen hundred of them. They are bigger than an Ox; the Hide, dreſſed, is as thick again as a Bull's; they have Teeth like Elephants, but about a Foot longer, growing downward out of the upper Jaw, and therefore leſs dangerous: This Tooth is ſold dearer than Ivory. The young Maſes eat like Veal, which the Old will defend to the utmoſt, holding them in their Arms or fore-feet. Out of the Bellies of five of theſe Fiſhes (which live both on the Land and Water) they make an Hogſhead of Train Oil. They ſkip in great Companies, and have one Centinel to wake the reſt upon Occaſion. Their Skins are ſhort haired like Seals; their Faces reſemble a Lion's, and may therefore more juſtly be called Sea-Lions than Sea-Oxen or Horſes.

Eaſt of *Newfoundland*, over-againſt *Cape-Ray*, at the Diſtance of about 70 Miles from the Shore, lies a Bank or Ridge of Ground, extending about 300 Miles in Length, and not above 75 in Breadth, where broadeſt. This great Bank is covered with Water when the Sea is high, and dry at the Ebb, on all Sides whereof the Sea is 200 fathom deep, ſo that Ships of a conſiderable Burthen may ride over it. And about this Bank lie diſperſed ſeveral ſmall Iſles, called by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, *Los Bacalaos*, or the Iſles of *Cod-fiſh*, from that prodigious Quantity of Cod Fiſh there found, which were ſaid to obſtruct the Paſſage of his Veſſels.

It is almoſt incredible how many Nations yearly Trade thither, amounting to between three or four hundred Sail of Ships, that are aſſured to find ſufficient Freight of Cod and Poor John. They fiſh with Hooks, which are never thrown into the Sea, but the Fiſh ſnapping the Bait, is taken, and drawn a Ship-board, where they lay him on a Plank. One cutting off its Head, another guts and takes out its biggeſt Bones, and another ſalts and barrels it: Which being thus ordered, is tranſported to all Parts of *Chriſtendom*, and through moſt other Parts of the World. They fiſh only in the Day, the Cod not biting in the Night; nor do'th the Fiſhing laſt all Seaſons, but begins towards Spring, and ends in *September*; for in Winter they retire to the Bottom of the Sea, where Storms and Tempeſts have no Power.

Near theſe Coaſts is another Kind of Fiſhing for Cod, which they called Dried, as the other Green Fiſh. The Fiſhermen retire into ſome Harbour, and every Morning ſend out their Shallops two or three Leagues into the Sea, who fail not of their Lead by Noon, or ſoon after. After this Fiſh has lain ſome Days in Salt, they take it out, and dry it in the Wind, laying it again in Heaps, and expoſing it daily to the open Air, till it be dry. The Air ought to be good and temperate, to make the Fiſh freſhable; for Miſt moiſten it, and make it rot, and the Sun cauſes Yellowneſs. At this their Fiſhing, the Mariners have likewiſe the Pleaſure of taking Fowl, without going out of their Veſſels; for baiting their Hook with Cod's Livers, theſe Fowls are ſo greedy that they come by Flocks, and fight who ſhall get the Bait firſt; and one being taken, the Hook is no ſooner thrown out, but another is inſtantly catch'd.

In the Year 1623 Sir *George Calvert*, Principal Secretary of State, and afterwards Lord *Baltimore*, obtained a Patent of Part of *Newfoundland*, which was erected into a Province, and called *Avalon*; where he cauſed a Plantation to be attempted, and a ſtately Houſe and Fort to be built at *Ferryland*, and afterwards tranſported himſelf and Family thither, and continued the Plantation by his Deputy, till by Deſcent it came to his Son and Heir, the Right Honourable *Cecilius* Lord *Baltimore*, who, by Deputies from Time to Time, was no leſs careful to preſerve his Intereſt there: And though during the laſt Troubles in *England*, it was, by Sir *David Kirk*'s Means, for ſome Years diſcontinued; he was ſoon re-inveſted in the ſame, by King *Charles* the Second's Reſtoration.

The chief Town of *Newfoundland* is *Placentia*, or *Plaiſance*. There are other Iſland hereabouts, the chief of which are *Cape Breton* Iſlands, *Aſſumption*, or *Anticoſti*, *St. John's*, and the Iſlands of *Madalena*. Theſe, as well as *Newfoundland*, are famous for the Cod Fiſhery. They are all ſi-

tu-

ject to the *English* and *French*, the former of which did great Damage to the other there in 1702. *Placentia* is under the *French* Dominion.

Hudson's Bay.

Hudson's-Bay, and the Countries about it, come last in Order, among the Northern Dominions of *Great-Britain* in *America*. The Bay lies between the Artick Circle, and about 51 Degrees of North Latitude. It received its Name from Captain *Hudson*, its Discoverer, as did the Streights that lead to it on the North of *New-Britain*. The Extremity of this Bay on the South, that borders on *Canada*, is called *James's* Bay, and the Northern Point of it has the Name of *Button's* Bay. The principal Countries about it are these. 1. *New South Wales*, on the South-West of the Bay; a Country but little known, and probably of no great Importance. 2. *New-Britain*, on the East, between the River of *St. Laurence* and the Bay, a very large Tract of Land, but not much better known than the former. It is divided into the Provinces of *Estoitland* and *Terra de Laborador*; but we do not find any one Town, either in this Country, or in *New South Wales*: For which Reason we shall not detain the Reader with any farther Account of them, but proceed to the Islands in the Great Western Gulph, which are commonly known by the Name of the *West-Indies*. With these, which perhaps are the most valuable of our Acquisitions in *America*, we shall conclude our Account of the *British* Dominions in this Part of the World.

However, that we may not be thought to have assign'd this vast Tract of Land about *Hudson's-Bay* to *Great-Britain* without any Foundation, we will here first insert, that Article of the Treaty of *Utrecht*, whereby the *French* resigned this Part of *America* to the *British* Crown. It is to the following Tenour: "The said most *Christian* King shall restore to the Kingdom and Queen of *Great-Britain*, to be possessed in full right forever, the Bay and Streights of *Hudson*, together with all Lands, Seas, Sea-Coasts, Rivers, and Places, situated in the same Bay and Streights, and which belong thereto, no Tracts of Land or Sea being excepted which are at present possess'd by the Subjects of *France*. All which, as well as any Buildings there made, in the Condition they now are, and likewise all Fortresses there erected, either before or since the *French* seized the same, shall, within six Months from the Ratification of the present Treaty, or sooner if possible, be well and truely delivered to the *British* Subjects, having Commission from the Queen of *Great-Britain* to demand and receive the same, entire and undemolished, together with all the Cannon and Cannon Ball, and Powder, &c, which are therein." By which Article the *French* have given us at least all the Right they had in this Country, and excluded themselves from it; but whether that be a sufficient Right with regard to the Natives, is what we will not here determine.

CHAP. XXVIII.

A Description of the British West-Indies, *containing the Islands of* Jamaica, Barbadoes, St. Christopher's, Nevis, Antegoa, St. Vincent, Dominica, Monserrat, Anguilla, *and* Barbuda; *also of* Bermudas, *or the* Summer-Islands; *treating of their Names, Extent, Air, Soil, Product, History, Towns, Inhabitants, Trade,* &c.

Jamaica. Its Situation.

THE Island of *Jamaica* is situate between the *Tropicks*, in seventeen or eighteen Degrees North Latitude, upon the *Mare del Nort*, being about an hundred and forty Leagues North of the main Continent of *America*, fifteen Leagues South from the great Island of *Cuba*, and twenty Leagues Westward from *Hispaniola*: From *Porto Bello*, Northwards, an hundred and sixty; and from *Carthagena* an hundred and forty Leagues. 'Tis of an oval Form, and hath a continued Ridge of lofty Mountains running from East to West, which extend themselves from one End of it to the other, and being full of fresh Springs, furnish the Island with great Plenty of pleasant and useful Rivers. It is exceeding fruitful, being for the most Part a rich fat Soil, the Earth blackish, and mixt with Clay, except in the South-West Parts, where it is generally of a more red and loose Earth. It enjoys a perpetual Spring, and its Plants and Trees are never disrob'd of their Summer-Livery; every Month is to them like *April* or *May* to us. It is in Length about 170 Miles, and about 70 in Breadth, containing between four or five Millions of Acres. There are intermix'd with the Woods and Mountains, many Savanahs or Plains, which are supposed to have formerly been Fields of *Indian* Maiz. But the *Spaniards*, when they made themselves Masters of the Ile, and had destroyed all the Natives, to the Number of about sixty thousand Persons, converted them to Pasture for the Feeding of Horses, Cows, Hogs, and other Cattle. There are now great Herds of Horses and other Cattle running wild in the Woods. These Savanahs are accounted the most barren Parts of the Island, in regard they have lain so long without Tillage; but notwithstanding they produce such vast Quantities of Grass, that the Planters are oftentimes constrained to burn it up.

Its Fertility.

Its Form and Extent.

The Air is very serene and clear, and more temperate than in other Islands in those Parts and in Reference to Heat, it is as mild as in any Place that lieth between the Tropicks, in regard it is continually cooled by fresh Breezes, which generally blow Eastwardly: Beside which, it is refreshed with frequent Showers of Rain, and great Dews which fall in the Night. Its continual Verdure commends it as one of the most delightful Places in the World to live in, especially the South Part of the Isle; the East and West Parts being somewhat more subject to Rains and Winds, and more mountainous and wooded. The Southern Parts are so wholsome, that it gave occasion to the *English* to build *Port Royal* there, it being thought convenient that the chief Port should be upon the best Spot in the Island. Nor doth any Part of this Island necessitate any of its new Inhabitants to any particular Distemper. It hath

hath been obſerved by ſome who live in the Iſland, that the Mountains which run through the Midſt of the Iſle, are much cooler than the other Parts; inſomuch that ſometimes in the Morning early there are ſmall white Froſts. The Weather is leſs certain in *Jamaica* than in the reſt of the Iſlands; but wet Seaſons are moſt expected in *May* and *November*. The Winds which they call Sea Breezes, uſually riſe about nine in the Morning, and blow freſher as the Sun mounts higher; ſo that Labour is tolerable at Mid-day. Theſe Eaſterly Winds blow till about ſix or ſeven in the Afternoon, and then they change to the Weſt; which the Iſlanders call Land Breezes, becauſe they blow off the Shore. There is no apparent Winter, only they have more Rain and Thunder in the Winter Months than at other Times: Nor doth the Length of the Days vary much, but continue almoſt all the Year about fifteen Hours.

The Rivers of this Iſland are none of them navigable up into the Country, in regard the Iſland is very mountainous, and their Original is for the moſt Part in thoſe Hills that run through its Centre; which running Eaſt and Weſt, the Rivers diſembogue themſelves North and South, and falling out of thoſe high Mountains, are very fierce and rapid in their Motion; being likewiſe, in regard of the great Rains, ſubject to ſudden Inundations; at which Times they fall with ſuch Fury, that great Stone Rocks and large Pieces of Timber are borne down by the Violence of the Torrent. Beſides which, there are divers of them which at ſome Times have not one Drop of Water in them, which renders them likewiſe uſeleſs for Navigation. But although the Rivers are thus uſeleſs, yet towards the Sea the Iſland abounds with Plenty of very good Bays, Roads, and Harbours: The principal whereof are, 1. *Port Royal*, which, at its firſt ſetling by the *Engliſh*, received the Name of *Cagaay*; but when the Town began to increaſe, it obtained the Name of *Port-Royal*, in regard of the Excellency of its Harbour. It is ſituated on the extreme End of that long Point of Land that makes the Harbour, running about twelve Miles from the Main Weſterly, having the Sea on its South, and the Harbour on the North: Which Harbour is ſo exceeding ſafe for Shipping, that they are ſecure in all Weathers, and can unload themſelves afloat at the Merchant's Key. The Harbour is about three Leagues broad in moſt Places, and ſo deep, that a Ship of a thouſand Ton may lay her Sides to the Shore of the Point, and load and unload at Pleaſure; nor doth there want good Anchorage in any Part of it. The Point of Land whereon the Town is built, is exceeding narrow, and nothing but a looſe Sand; ſo that it affords neither Graſs, Stone, freſh Water, Trees, nor any Thing elſe which could encourage the building a Town upon it, beſides the Goodneſs of the Harbour. It was at firſt begun by building a few Warehouſes, but afterwards grew exceeding large and populous. But was, however, almoſt ruined by an Earthquake in 1692, and in a Manner deſtroyed by Fire in 1702. 2. *Old Harbour*, about ſeven Miles Weſtward from *St. Jago*, is generally accounted, next to *Port Royal* the beſt Harbour on the South Side. 3. *Port-Morant*, in the Eaſtern Point, is a very fair, capacious, and ſecure Harbour. 5. *Negril*, in the extreme Weſterly Point, is a good Harbour, very convenient, and ſufficiently ſecure to the Windwards. 5. *Port Antonio* is accounted the next beſt Port, being a fair, land-locked Harbour; only the coming in is ſomewhat difficult. But there are divers other good Bays and Harbours along the Coaſt of this Iſland, which are not altogether ſo much frequented; as *Michael's-Hole Macary-Bay*, *Alligator Point*, *Point Pedro*, *Pallate Bay*, *Lewana Bay*, *Blewfield's Bay*, *Cabarita's Bay*: Theſe are on the South Side, and are all very good and commodious. On the North Side, there is *Porto Maria*, *Oro Chaſſa*, *Cold Harbour*, *Rio Nova*, *Montego Bay*, *Orange Bay*, and divers more; at all which there are ſome Houſes.

This Iſland doth not very much abound with Towns. The chief uſed to be thought *St. Jago de la Vega*, ſituated ſix Miles within the Land North-Weſt, upon a large Plain. This Place was, when the *Spaniards* were Maſters of the Iſle, a large City, containing about two thouſand Houſes, two Churches, four Chapels, and an Abby for divine Worſhip. The Houſes, upon the taking the Iſland by the *Engliſh*, were reduced to about fifteen hundred, and the Churches and Chapels to a ſmaller Number than before; nor did thoſe which remained, altogether eſcape, but were ſufficiently ſpoiled. The Capital of the whole Iſland, at this Day, is *Kingſton*.

The next Town of Note is *Port-Royal*; which hath been already deſcribed: And the fourth is known by the Name of *Paſſage*, ſituated on the Mouth of the River, ſix Miles from *St. Jago* by Land, and about as far from *Port-Royal* by Sea. 'Tis the greateſt Paſſage in the whole Iſland, from whence it took its Name; and thoſe who go from *Port-Royal* to *St. Jago*, land here. When the *Spaniards* enjoyed the Place, there were diver other Towns which are now of no Account; the chief whereof, are, 1. *Seville*, ſituated on the North Part of the Iſland, and beautified with a Collegiate Church. 2. *Melilla*. 3. *Oriſa*, ſituated upon the *South-Seas*; in which Seas there are many Rocks, and amongſt their Banks ſome Iſles; as *Serranilla*, *Quitaſueno*, and *Serrana*. But there are in *Jamaica* divers Villages or Pariſhes, which are well inhabited by the *Engliſh*, in every one whereof, they have very good Plantations, well ſituated, and furniſhed with all Things neceſſary; eſpecially all the Southern Part, from *Point Morant* in the Eaſt, to *Point Negril* in the Weſt. Nor are its Northern Parts, eſpecially near the Sea, without Inhabitants, who have ſeated themſelves in good Plantations. The whole Iſland is divided into fourteen Pariſhes, Diviſions, or Precincts. The Names of the Pariſhes on the South Side, are *Port-Royal*, *St. Katharine's*, *St. John's*, *St. Andrew's*, *St. David's*, *St. Thomas*, *Clarendon*. On the North Side are, *St. Mary's*, *St. Anne's*, and *St. James's*. On the Eaſt Side, is *St. Elizabeth*, and two Pariſhes more near adjoining to it. Diviſion

This Iſle abounds with many excellent Commodities; as Sugars, which are ſo good, that they out ſell thoſe that are made in *Barbadoes*. Cocoa, whereof we make Chocolate, is the moſt beneficial and ſtaple Commodity of the Iſland. Indico, which the Iſle produces in great Abundance, is here very good. Cotton is another of their Products, which is very fine. Tobacco, which is here indifferent good. Tortoiſe Shells, which are in ſo much Eſteem with us in *England*. Hides, great Quantities whereof have been yearly made there. Woods for the Uſe of Dyers, whereof there are great Variety, as Fuſtick, Red Wood, &c. Here is likewiſe Cedar, Mahogony, Braſiletto, Lignum Vitæ, Ebony, Granadilla, and divers other excellent, ſweet-ſmelling, and curious Woods. Salt is another of the Products of this Iſland, which might be made here in great Quantities. But, at preſent, they make little more than what is ſpent in the Iſland. Ginger grows better there, than it doth in many of the *Caribee* Iſlands. Cod Pepper likewiſe, a Product

Spice

Spice very much used in all the *West Indies*. Piemento, or Spice which is better known by the Name of *Jamaica-Pepper*, very aromatical, and of a curious Flavour. Drugs, which this Island produces in great Abundance, as Guaiacum, China-Roots, Sarsaparilla, Cassia-Fistula, Tamarinds, Vinello's, and Achiots or Anetto. Gums and Roots, as Aloes, Benjamin, and the like: And there is likewise Cypress, Contrayerva, Adjunctum nigrum, Cucumis Agrestis, Sumach, Acacia, Mistletoe, with many Drugs, Balsams, and Gums, whose Names and Virtues are not known or remembered. Cochineal is likewise produced, by a Plant that grows in this Isle. These, and the like Commodities, are the Product of this Island, which the *long ish* have improved to that Degree, that it is become one of the best and richest Plantations they ever were Masters of.

Cattle. There is in this Island a greater Plenty of Cattle, than in most of the *English* Plantations in *America*. Horses much abound there. Their Cows are very large and numerous. Asinegroes and Mules, both wild and tame, are in great Abundance. Their Sheep are very large and tall, the flesh whereof is very good, but the Wooll long, hairy, and little worth. They have great Plenty of Goats, which thrive and increase there exceedingly. Hogs they have likewise in great Plenty, as well wild in the Mountains, as tame in the Plantations. They have also Plenty of Rabbits; but no Hare nor Deer in all the Island.

Fish. *Jamaica* very much abounds with Variety of excellent Fish, the great Abundance whereof very much contributes to the feeding of the Inhabitants, and others who frequent the Island. 'Tis true indeed, they have none of those common to us, but such vast Variety of those appropriated to the *Indies*, that it would be too tedious to repeat their Names, where they are known or remembered. The principal Sort is the Tortoise. There are in *Jamaica* great Store of tame Hens, Turkeys, some Geese and Ducks, but of wild Fowl such Plenty, that it is almost incredible, viz. Ducks, Teal, Wigeon, Geese, Turkeys, Piggeons, *Guinea* Hens, Plover, Flemingo's, Snipes, Parrots, Paraquets, with Abundance more, whose Names are scarcely known. There

Animals and Vegetables. are here very few obnoxious Beasts, and scarce any venomous Things, either Animal or Vegetable. The most considerable of all the obnoxious Creatures, is the Alligator. There are likewise the Manchonele, a Kind of Crab, common to all the *Caribee* Islands; and Snakes and Guiana's; but they have no poisonous Quality observed in them. There are also Muskettoes, and Merry-wings.

The Dropsy, Fevers, and Agues, are the Maladies most incident to the Inhabitants, which are generally procured by Surfeits, Slothfulness, or excessive Drinking; and although they are found to be more acute there, than with us, yet they seldom prove mortal. The Gardens adjoining to

Gardens. the Planter's Houses, are (besides great Variety of curious and delightful Flowers, and wholsome Medicinal Herbs proper to the Island,) sufficiently stored with all Manner of Summer Garden Herbs and Roots common to us in *England*; as Peas, Beans, Cabbages, Carrots, Turnips, Radishes, Onions, Lettuce, Parsley, Collyflowers, Cucumbers, Melons, Parsley, and other Pot-herbs.

Laws. The Laws of *Jamaica* are, as near as the different Circumstances of the Places will admit, accommodated to those of *England*; and they have their several Courts, Magistrates, and Officers, for executing their Laws, hearing and determining all Causes and Controversies between Party and Party.

Columbus, having in the Year 1492, discovered [illegible] *Hispaniola* and *Cuba*, soon after returned [illegible] *Spain*, to provide himself with Conveniencies for a second Voyage; which he understood [illegible] soon as all Things were ready: And in this Voyage endeavouring to sail round *Cuba*, he discovered the Island of *Jamaica*; where he made some short Stay, and gave it the Name of *St. Jago*. In his third Voyage, he was shipwrecked on this Coast, and driven to great Extremity. But having, after two Months lying in a deplorable Condition, obtained the good Opinion of the Natives, he landed, and finding the Ground fertile, he resolved to fall to planting: In order whereunto, the Town called *Metilla*, was presently begun by the *Spaniards*; but before it was far advanced, they deserted it again, and settled ten Leagues further West; where they met with a better Bay, whereupon they gave the Name of *St. Anne's*. Near this Place they built a handsome Town called *Seville*, which hath been already mentioned. But finding that the South Side was more fruitful and pleasant, about the Year 1509, the *Spaniards* forsook this likewise, and built *St. Jago*; which they enjoyed without any Molestation, till it was about 1638 surprised and taken by one *Jackson*, with a Fleet of *English* Privateers: But having no Design but Pillage, when he had plundered the Town, he surrendered it up again to the *Spaniards* for a thousand Beavers. But more fatal to the *Spaniards* was the next Attempt made on this Island; for *Cromwel*, having made Peace with the *Hollanders*, found himself at Leisure to try his Fortune in the *Indies*, and make his Name terrible in those remoter Parts of the Earth. In order whereunto, having got ready a great Fleet, he sent it under *Penn* and *Venables*. Which having touch'd at *Barbadoes*, sail'd directly towards *Hispaniola*, and had certainly surprised *Domingo*, and consequently the whole Island, had not some strange Councils of his own, ruined the whole Design: For so terrified were the *Spaniards* at the sudden Approach of this mighty Fleet, that they forsook the Town, and left it to those new Invaders: But seeing *Venables* land his Forces at twelve Leagues to the westward of it, they resumed their Courage, and betook themselves again to the Defence of it. The *English*, finding no Opposition at their landing, began in their own Thoughts to share the golden Mines among themselves, which they had peradventure effected, had not *Venables*'s covetous Humour, by forbidding the Soldiers to meddle with any of that rich Booty, together with their tedious and disconsolate March, so damped their Spirits, that they became an easy Prey to the *Spaniards*, who, taking them at that Advantage, destroyed them without Resistance. Having thus frustrated their Expectations, they resolved however not to lose the whole Voyage, and therefore next directed their Course to *Jamaica*. Upon the [illegible] Landing of the *English* Army, the Inhabitants of *St. Jago* forsook the Town, and betook themselves to the Mountains; but after divers Skirmishes and Surprisals on both Sides, several of the most considerable among them got into *Cuba*, but were soon after commanded back again by the Viceroy, with Promises of a speedy Supply. The Viceroy's Promise was long before it was performed; and when the Succour came, it was but five hundred Men, who fortified themselves at a Place called *St. Chereas*, expecting to receive more Recruits. But the *English* marched immediately against them, and defeated them, and so they did about thirty Companies of *Spanish* Soldiers that arrived soon after; which made the *Spaniards* despair of ever regaining the Island. Whereupon the *English* began to form themselves into

into a Colony; ſome ſettling themſelves in Plantations, and others venturing to Sea as Privateers; in which they proved ſo very ſucceſsful, that *Jamaica* began to be much talked of, and had in great Eſteem in *England*, and ſo, by little and little, it came to its preſent Potency.

Barbadoes. *Barbadoes*, the moſt conſiderable Colony the *Engliſh* enjoy amongſt the Iſles called *Caribees*, lies in thirteen Degrees twenty Minutes Northern Latitude; and though it is not above eight Leagues in Length, and five in Breadth, yet it is a Place of great Strength: For beſides its being naturally ſtrong, the Inhabitants are able to bid Defiance to the ſtouteſt Enemy. It was diſcovered for us in the Reign of King *James* the Firſt, by Sir *William Curteen*, who returning homewards from *Pernambuc* in *Brazil*, was driven by a Storm upon this Iſle, which he found ſo overgrown with Woods, that they could find no Ground fit to inhabit, nor any Beaſts but Swine, which the *Portugueſe* having formerly put on Shore here, had multiplied abundantly, the Fruits and Roots that grew there ſerving them for Food. Having made this Diſcovery, he gave notice thereof to his Friends in *England*; from whence divers Ships were diſpatched thither, who, having about the Year 1627, increaſed the Number of its Inhabitants, and Tobacco, Indico, Cotton-wooll, Fuſtick-wood, and the like, beginning to grow there, and afford great Increaſe, the Iſland began to gain Repute, and invited divers Ships to trade with them, exchanging divers Sorts of working Tools, together with Cloth, Shirts, Drawers, Hoſe, Shoes, Hats, Servants, for Tobacco, and other Things which the Iſland produced. After which, they grew wonderfully, both in Number and Wealth; eſpecially when their Sugar-Canes were grown, and they had learned the Art of making Sugar.

Temperature. This Iſle is very hot, eſpecially for eight Months, and would be more inſupportable, were it not for the cool Breezes, which riſe with the Sun, and blow freſher as the Sun mounteth higher. And theſe Breezes blow always from the North-Eaſt, except in the Time of the Turnado, and then, for an Hour or two, it chops into the South; but after returns to the ſame Point again. And it is obſerved, that although the People ſweat much, yet they find not that Faintneſs as with us in *England* in *July* and *Auguſt*; neither are they ſo thirſty, unleſs over-heated by Excels of Labour, or drinking of ſtrong Liquors. The Iſle is not over-plentifully watered with freſh Springs, there being but one Lake, which runs not far into the Land; yet the Inhabitants are not deſtitute of Water, for the Country lying low and level, there are ſeveral Pools or Ponds; and beſides they are ſupplied with Rain Water, by having Wells and Ciſterns in their Houſes. Here is alſo a River, which the Inhabitants call *Tuglo-River*, from the Top of whoſe Water is gathered an Oil, which ſerveth them to burn in their Lamps. This Iſle is exceeding fertile, bearing Crops all the Year long, and its Trees being always clothed in their Summer Livery. The two principal Seaſons of the Year for planting, are in *May* and *November*: But the Sugar Canes are planted all the Year round.

Waters. Fertility.

Commodities. The Commodities this Iſland produceth, are Sugars, Indico, Cotton-Wooll, Ginger, Logwood, Fuſtick, and Lignum Vitæ, in great Abundance: And in Exchange of thoſe Commodities, they take ſuch as are neceſſary for the Uſe of Man, as well for the Back and Belly, as for their Houſes and Plantations; with many of which they are ſupplied from *New-England*, *Virginia*, and the *Bermudas*; together with Servants and Slaves; with Horſes, Camels, Aſſinegroes, Cattle, ſalted Fleſh, and Fiſh of ſeveral Sorts; alſo Butter and Cheeſe. The Air, though hot, is very moiſt, which cauſeth all Iron Tools to ruſt; ſo that without conſtant Uſage, they will ſoon become eaten up. Air.

Here are Abundance of Fruits of all Sorts; as Dates, Oranges ſweet and ſharp, Pomegranates, Citrons, Limes, Lemons, Macows, Grapes, Juniper Apples, Papayers, Momins, Mombains, Acajous, Icacos, Cherries, Raiſins, *Indian* Figs, Cocoas, Plantains, Bononoes, Guavars, Prickle-Apples, Prickle-Pears, Cuſtard-Apples, Melons both Land and Water, and Pine-Apples. Here are great Store of Fiſh in the Sea, as Snappers, Crabs, Lobſters, Terbums, Mackarels, Mullets, Cavalloes, Parrot-Fiſh, Conyfiſh, and green Turtles; with ſeveral other Sorts appropriated to this and the reſt of the *Caribee Iſles*; but the Rivulets or Ponds have few or no Fiſh in them. Here are no Beaſts but what are tame, and brought them; as Camels, Horſes, Aſſinegroes, Oxen, Bulls, Cows, Sheep, Goats, and Hogs. Here grow divers Sorts of *Engliſh* Herbs and Roots; as Roſemary, Lavender, Lavender-Cotton, Marjoram, Winter-Savoury, Thyme, Parſley, Tanſey, Sage, Purſlan, &c. And for Roots, Cabbages, Coleworts, Colliflowers, Turnips, Potatoes, Onions, Garlick, Radiſhes, Lettice, Taragon, Marigolds, &c. Here are ſeveral Sorts of Fowls, as Turkeys, Hens, *Muſcovy* Ducks, Pigeons, Turtle-Doves, &c. And for ſmall Birds great Variety, as Thruſhes, Blackbirds, &c. Here are ſeveral Animals and Inſects, as Snakes a Yard and a half long, Scorpions as big as Rats, but no Way hurtful; Lizards, which are exceeding harmleſs; Muſketoes, Cockroches, and Merriwings, which are very troubleſome in the Night in ſtinging; alſo there are Land-Crabs, which are found good to eat. Here are alſo great Variety of Trees, fit for ſeveral Uſes; as the Locuſt, Maſtick, Red-Wood, the Iron-wood-tree, and Cedar, which are fit for Building. Alſo the Caſſia Fiſtula, Coloquintida, Tamarind, Caſſavy, of which is made their Bread; the Poiſon-Tree, and the Phyſick-Nut. Alſo here are the Calibaſh, the Mangraſs-tree, the Roucou, of whoſe Bark is made Ropes; as alſo Flax, the Lignum Vitæ, the Palmetto, with ſeveral others. In this Iſland are likewiſe divers Caves, ſome of which are very deep, and large enough to hold five hundred Men; and theſe Caves are often the Sanctuary of ſuch Negro Slaves that run away. Fruit. Fiſh. Cattle. Herbs. Fowls. Animals. Trees.

Drink. They have a Drink called *Mobby*, made of Potatoes ſoaked in Water; another named *Prino*, made of Caſſavy Root and Water, which, tho' it is not ſo pleaſant, yet is reckoned much better than the other. They likewiſe drink Crippo, Kill-Devil, Punch, Plumb-drink, Plantain-drink, a ſtrong Drink made of the Skimming of Sugar; Beveridge made of Spring-water, Sugar, and the Juice of Oranges; and Wine of Pines, which is only made of the Juice of the Fruit, which is the beſt of all their Liquors. Their Meat is generally Hogs-Fleſh, ſalted Fleſh or Fiſh. When any of their Cattle die by any Diſtemper, or by Accident, it is given to the Negroes; but they are commonly contented with Potatoes; Loblolly, made of Maiz mixed with Water; Caſſader-Bread, common in all the *Indies*; Bonatill, and ſuch like Food that the Plantation affords; as, Pompions, Plantains, Sugar-Canes, &c. They have here Turkeys, Pullets, *Muſcovy* Ducks, Turtle-Doves, Pigeons, and Rabbits, with Fiſh of divers Kinds. But as for the Maſter-Planters, Merchants Factors, and Strangers, their Fare is far otherwiſe, having Cuſtards, Cheeſe-cakes, Tarts;

Tanſies; alſo Sturgeon, Anchovies, Cavear, Botardo, Neats Tongues; beſides Poultry, Fiſh, Fowl, Mutton, Beef, Kid, Pork, Beans, Peaſe, ſeveral Roots, and other good Diſhes. And beſides the ſeveral Sorts of Liquors already named, Wines, Strong-Waters, Brandy, and *Engliſh* Beer.

The Diviſion of the Iſland.

This Iſland may be divided into Maſters, Servants, and Slaves. The Maſters live in all Affluance of Pleaſure and Delight. The Apparel they allow their Servants yearly is but mean, and not in great Plenty: But for themſelves, they are exceeding profuſe and coſtly. The Lodging of the Slaves is worſt of all; for having laboured all the Day in ſo hot a Country, at Night they muſt be content to lie hard, on nothing but a Board, without any Coverlet, in their Huts: But Chriſtian Servants are ſomething better treated, being allowed Hammocks. Theſe Servants, after five Years, become Freemen of the Iſland, and then employ their Time as may be moſt to their Advantage: But the Negro-Slaves and their Children being in Bondage for ever, are preſerved with greater Care, and uſed with much Severity.

Chief Towns.

The chief Towns of this Iſle are, 1. *St. Michael's*, formerly called the *Bridge-Town*, ſituate at the Bottom of *Carliſle-Bay*, in the Southern Part of the Iſle. The Bay is very capacious, deep, and ſecure for Ships, being large enough to entertain 500 Veſſels at one Time. The Town is long, containing ſeveral Streets, and graced with abundance of well-built Houſes. It is very populous, being the Reſidence of the Governor, or his Deputy, the Place of Judicature, and the Scale of Trade, where moſt of the Merchants and Factors have their Store-Houſes. The Town is ill-ſeated, the Ground being lower than the Banks of the Sea; by which means the Spring-Tides flow over it; and there remaining, make a kind of a Bog, which occaſions it to be more unhealthful than the other Parts of the Iſle. This Town, for its Defence, hath two ſtrong Forts oppoſite to each other, with a Platform in the Midſt, which alſo commands the Road. 2. *Little Briſtol*, formerly *Speight's-Bay*, ſituate about four Leagues Leeward from *St. Michael's*, hath a commodious Road for Ships. 3. *St. James's*, formerly called *The Hall*, ſeated not far from *Briſtol*, hath the Accommodation of a good Road for Ships, and is a Place of a conſiderable Trade. 4. *Charles-Town*, ſeated Windward of *St. Michael's* about two Leagues, an Oyſter-Bay. This Town hath weekly Markets. The other Places of note along the Sea-Coaſt, are as followeth, *viz. Fowl-Bay*, *Auguſtin's-Bay*, *Maxwell's-Bay*, *Black-Rock*, *The Hole*, *Spike's-Bay*, *Baliſe's-Bay*, *Long-Bay*, *Clerk's-Bay*, and *Conſtance-Bay*.

Government

The Government is by Laws agreeable to thoſe in *England*, for which they have Courts of Judicature, Juſtices of Peace, Conſtables, Churchwardens, and the like. And for the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, here are yearly five Seſſions. It is divided into eleven Precincts, wherein are fourteen Churches and Chapels; the whole ſo filled with Houſes, that it may almoſt ſeem one great Town. There is a Fiſh called a Rock-Fiſh taken near this Iſland, which is red, intermixed with ſeveral other Colours, very delightful to the Eye: And a great Fly, called by the *Indians*, *Cucuyes*, which gives a great Light in the Night.

We ſhall be leſs particular in moſt of the other *Caribee Iſlands*, they not being of ſo much Account, and but little different in their Product from the laſt mentioned. The firſt is *St. Chriſtopher's*, ſo named from *Chriſtopher Columbus*, the firſt Diſcoverer thereof. It is ſituated in the Latitude of ſeventeen Degrees and twenty-five Minutes on this Side of the Line; in Circuit about ſeventy-five Miles: The Land lies high in the Midſt, by reaſon of ſome very high Mountains, from which ſpring ſeveral Rivers, which oftentimes, by reaſon of the Rains falling from the Mountains, are overflown to the Detriment of the Inhabitants. The Soil, being light and ſandy, is apt to produce all Sorts of the Country Fruits, Proviſion, and Commodities, as Sugar, Tobacco, Cotton, Ginger, *&c.* This Iſle hath dreadful Rocks, and Springs of ſulphureous Water, with horrid Precipices and thick Woods. There is on the Sea-ſide a Salt-Pit, called *Guldeſac*; and not far from the Salt-Pit there is a ſmall Iſthmus of Land, which reacheth within a Mile and a half of the Iſland of *Nevis*. The Situation is exceeding delightful, for it is divided into ſeveral Stages, from the uppermoſt whereof a Man may take a Proſpect of all the Plantations and Gardens, which gently deſcend to the Sea-ſide; and that which makes the Proſpect more delectable, are the fair Houſes covered with glazed Slate.

St. Chriſtopher's Situation

Diviſion.

The whole Iſland is divided into four Cantons; two whereof are inhabited by the *Engliſh*, and two by the *French*; but ſo ſeparated, that People cannot go from one Quarter to another, without paſſing over the Lands of one of the two Nations. The *Engliſh* have more little Rivers in their Diviſion; the *French* more of the plain Country fit for Tillage. The *Engliſh* exceed the *French* in Number, but the *French* have four Forts; of which one hath regular Works like a Citadel: That of moſt note commands the Haven, and is called *Baſſe-Terre*. The *Engliſh* have only two, one commanding the great Haven, and the other a Deſcent not far from *Pointe de Sable*. The *Engliſh* have erected here ſeveral Churches, which are well furniſhed; one of them is at *Sandy-Point*, one at *Palm-Tree*, another near the *Great Road*, and two at the Inlet of *Cayoune*. They have alſo many fair Structures.

Planting

The *French* and *Engliſh* Colonies had their Beginning at the ſame Time; for in the Year 1625, Monſieur *Deſnambuck*, a *French*, and Sir *Thomas Warner*, and *Engliſh* Gentleman, jointly took Poſſeſſion of *St. Chriſtopher's* on the ſame Day, in the Names of the Kings of *Great Britain* and *France*, their Maſters, that ſo they might have a Place of ſafe Retreat, and a good Haven for the Ships of both Nations bound for *America*.

These Gentlemen ſuſpecting ſome private Intelligence between the *Indians* and *Spaniards*, for deſtroying all the *Engliſh* and *French* in their Abſence, they in one Night rid their Hands of the moſt Factious of that Nation, and ſoon after forced all the reſt to retire to ſome other Iſlands. After this, they returned home, where their Conqueſt and Proceeding being approved of by their Maſters, they returned with Recruits of Men, in the Quality of Lieutenants under the Kings of *Great-Britain* and *France*.

Baſſe Terre

The *French*, beſides their Habitations diſperſed up and down in their Quarters, have at *Baſſe-Terre* a Town of a good Bigneſs, whoſe Houſes are well built, of Brick, Freeſtone, and Timber, where the Merchants have their Store-Houſes, and it is well inhabited by Tradeſmen. Here is a large Church, as alſo a Publick-Hall, for the Adminiſtration of Juſtice. Here is alſo a fair Hoſpital, for ſuch People as cannot get cured at their Houſes: And a ſtately Caſtle, pleaſantly ſeated at the Foot of a Mountain, not far from the Sea, having ſpacious Courts, with delightful Walks and Gardens.

In 1629, a powerful Fleet from *Spain*, under Don *Frederick de Toledo*, put the Inhabitants of this Iſland into great Conſternation. The *French* actually

ally embark'd to find a new Settlement, and the *Engliſh* were about to do the ſame, when the Storm blew over on the Admiral's Departure. After this the *French* returned; and the *Engliſh* Colony, by conſtant Supplies from *London*, grew very powerful, ſending new Plantations from hence to *Barbuda*, *Montſerrat*, *Antegoa*, and *Barbadoes*, which are all grown very famous for the Commodities they are furniſhed with, as well as this Iſland; the chief Trade of them all bring Sugar, Tobacco, Cotton, Ginger, with ſeveral other Sorts of Fruits and Proviſions. The Sovereignty of this Iſland was yielded wholly to the *Engliſh* at the Concluſion of the laſt War, many of the *French* having been expelled during the Times of Hoſtility. The moſt remarkable Animals here are the Roquet, the Eagle of *Orinna*, the Craw-fowl, and the Humming-bird, which latter, tho' no bigger than a Bee, is admirable for Variety of beautiful Feathers.

Commodities.

Animals

The Iſland of *Nevis*, or *Mevis*, lieth not far from *St. Chriſtopher's*, in the Latitude of ſeventeen Degrees and nineteen Minutes North. It is not above eighteen Miles in Circuit; and in the midſt of the Iſle there is one only Mountain, which is of a very great Height, but of an eaſy Acceſs, and clothed with Trees up to the very Top; about which Mountain are the Plantations, which reach to the Sea ſhore. Here are divers Springs of freſh Water, whereof ſome are ſtrong enough to make their way into the Sea: And one Spring is of a hot and mineral Water; not far from whoſe Head are Baths made, found very beneficial for ſeveral Diſeaſes.

Nevis. *Its Situation.* *Its Extent.*

The *Engliſh* planted themſelves in this Iſle in 1628, and are ſtill Poſſeſſors thereof. They drive a very handſome Trade for ſuch Things as they have Occaſion for, by exchanging ſuch Commodities as the Iſle produceth, as Sugar, Cotton, Ginger, Tobacco, *&c.*

Inhabitants. *Trade.*

Of all the *Caribee-Iſlands*, none is better governed than this; Juſtice being adminiſter'd with Impartiality, by a Council of the moſt eminent and antient Inhabitants. For the Service of God there are ſeveral Churches erected; and, for its further Security, it hath a Fort, whereon are mounted ſeveral great Guns, that command at a great Diſtance. The Iſle is indifferent fruitful, and hath great Store of Deer, with ſeveral other Sorts of Game. This, as the reſt of the *Caribee-Iſlands*, is troubled with Muſketoes, Chigoes, and Murigoins. There are Lizards five Foot in Length, and a Foot about; their Skins of divers Colours, according to the different Soil they are bred in. The Annelis is another Creature very common in all the Plantations, about the Bigneſs of a Lizard, but the Head longer, and the Skin yellowiſh. A Land-Pike is another ſtrange Reptile, ſo called from its likeneſs to that Fiſh. It hath four Feet, which are ſo weak, that they only crawl on the Ground, and wind their Bodies like Pikes newly taken out of the Water. Some of the longeſt are about fifteen Inches, and proportionably big. The Flying-Tyger here is very obſervable, whoſe Body is chequered with Spots of ſeveral Colours, as the Tyger's is. It is about the Bigneſs of an horned Beetle; the Head ſharp, with two great Eyes, and the Mouth armed with two hard and ſharp Hooks. The Horn-Fly is another Inſect, which hath two Snouts like an Elephant, one turning upwards, and the other down, about three Inches long. There is in this Iſland an Inſect ſomewhat like a Snail, called a Soldier, which have no Shells proper to themſelves, but get Shelter in ſuch Shells as they find moſt convenient. There is likewiſe a monſtrous Spider, which, when ſhe ſpreads her Legs, is ſo large, that ſhe takes up above the Breadth of a Man's Hand. There is alſo a very lovely Animal, called a Fly-catcher. It hath four Legs, and is of a very ſmall Size; ſome of them ſeeming to be covered with Gold or Silver Brocade. He generally lies down where he expects the Fly to come, keeping his Eye always fixed thereon. If one come near him, and make never ſo great a Noiſe, it will not diſturb him; and at laſt he ſprings direct on his Prey, very rarely miſſing it. It may be counted a Sort of Camelion, partaking of the Colour of thoſe Things on which he makes his Reſidence. The Palm-worm is remarkable for its infinite Number of Feet, which are like Briſtles under his Body, and help him to creep with incredible Swiftneſs.

Government.

Churches.

Its Fertile Annals.

The Iſland of *Antegoa* is ſeated in the Latitude of ſixteen Degrees, and eleven Minutes. It is in Length about ſix or ſeven Leagues, and of the ſame Breadth in ſeveral Places. The Acceſs is very dangerous for Shipping, by reaſon of the Rocks which encompaſs it. It was conceived heretofore, that *Antegoa* was not to be inhabited, upon Preſumption there was no freſh Water in it. But the *Engliſh* Inhabitants have made ſeveral Ponds and Ciſterns, for the preſerving of Rain-water. Beſides the Commodities of Sugar, Indico, Ginger, and Tobacco, this Iſle abounds with Fiſh of all Sorts, amongſt which the Shark-Fiſh, well known to our Sailors, deſerves to be mentioned. There is another Sea-Monſter, called the Becune, in Shape like a Pike, being about ſeven or eight Foot long: He lives by Prey, and furiouſly faſtens on the Men he perceives in the Water. Another Fiſh found about theſe Iſlands, is called the Sea-Urchin, or Hedge-Hog. It is as round as a Ball, and full of exceeding ſharp Prickles. There is great Plenty of moſt Sorts of Wild Fowl, and no Want of Veniſon and Tame Cattle. The Sea-Parrots are very admirable, having extraordinary beautiful Eyes, the Ball as clear as Chriſtal, incloſed within a Circle as green as an Emerald, of which Colour are the Scales on their Backs. They are excellent Fiſh to eat, and ſome of them weigh upward of twenty Pounds. The Dorado, Sea Bream, or Amber-Fiſh, is alſo common in theſe Parts; ſo called, becauſe in the Water the Head ſeems to be of a Green gilt, and the reſt of the Body as yellow as Gold. He is as good Meat as a Trout or Salmon.

Antegoa. *Its Situation.* *Extent.*

Animals.

Among the Birds, ſome count the Canades the moſt beautiful Bird in the World, being under the Belly and Wings of a waving *Aurora* Colour; the Back and one half of the Wings of a very bright Sky-Colour; the Tail and great Feathers mixed with a ſparkling Carnation, diverſified with a Sky. Upon the Back it is Graſs-green, with ſhining black. But the moſt beautiful Part is the Head, covered with a Kind of Murrey Down, checkered with green, yellow, and a pale blew, which reaches waving down to his Back. It hath upon the Head a Tuft, or Cap of Feathers, of a Vermillion red and ſparkling. It is about the Bigneſs of a Pheaſant. The Flamet is a beautiful Bird, about the Bigneſs of a wild Goſe: His Beak is like a Spoon, his Legs and Neck very long, ſo that his Body is three Foot from the Ground.

The Iſland of *St. Vincent* lies in the Latitude of ſixteen Degrees North, and is about twenty-four Miles in Length, and eighteen in Breadth. In it are ſeveral high Mountains, having between them exceeding fruitful Plains, yielding good Store of Sugar Canes, which grow naturally without planting: It is well watered with Rivers, and hath ſeveral convenient Harbours and Bays for Shipping. The *Engliſh* have here ſome Settlements, but are not very powerful.

St. Vincent. *Situation.*

The Iſland of *Dominica* is ſeated in the Latitude

St. Dom. *of the*

Situation. of fifteen Degrees thirty Minutes, and about twelve Leagues in Length, and eight in Breadth. On the Weſt Side is a very convenient Harbour for Ships. It is very mountainous in the Midſt, which encompaſſes an inacceſſible Bottom, where, from the Tops of certain Rocks, may be ſeen an infinite Number of Vipers, and other venemous and dreadful Creatures, whom none dares come near. Yet there are many fertile Villages, producing ſeveral Commodities, but chiefly Tobacco. The Natives are very populous in it, and have a long Time entertained thoſe who come to viſit them, with a Story of a monſtrous Serpent that frequented that Bottom. They are generally very friendly with the *French*; but to the *Engliſh* they are ſaid to have a great Averſion, conceived, as it is reported, upon this Occaſion: Some *Engliſhmen*, under the Flags of other Nations, having, by little Gifts, gotten divers of them on Board of their Ships, and made them merry with *Aqua Vitæ*, which they love extremely, they ſuddenly hoiſted up Sail, and carried away thoſe poor innocent People, who expected no ſuch Treachery. And although the *Engliſh* have endeavoured to ſatisfy them, yet ſo implacable is their Temper, that they cannot be perſuaded to forgive the Injury.

Montſerrat *Montſerrat* is of a ſmall Extent, being not above ten Miles long, and nine broad. It was ſo called by the *Spaniards*, at their Diſcovery of it, from a Mountain therein, which reſembles that Situation. of *Montſerrat*, near *Barcelona*, in *Spain*. It is ſituated in the Latitude of ſeventeen Degrees on this Side of the Line. 'Tis very much inclined to Mountains, which for the moſt Part are very well clothed with Cedar and other uſeful Trees; the Valleys and Plains being likewiſe very pleaſant and fruitful. 'Tis chiefly inhabited by *Iriſh*, Inhabitants. intermixed with ſome *Engliſh*. There is in it a Church of a delightful Structure, built by the liberal Contributions of the Governor and Inhabitants.

Fiſh. There is ſometimes taken upon the Coaſt of this Iſland, a Monſter about four Foot long, and proportionable in Bulk, having on its Head a great Bunch like an Hedgehog; his Skin hard and rough, of a black Colour; his Head flat, having on the upper Part of it many little Riſings, and among them two ſmall black Eyes: His Mouth is very wide, his Teeth ſharp, and two of them crooked like a Boar's; he has two Finns, and a broad, forked Tail; all which renders him of ſo terrible a Look, that they call him the Sea Devil. He hath two little Horns, growing above the Eyes, and turning towards his Back like a Ram's. The Sea-Unicorn is no leſs wonderful; ſome of them being eighteen Foot long, of a Vermillion Colour; the Body covered with blue Scales, about the Bigneſs of a Crown piece. It hath ſix large Fins, like the Ends of Galley Oars; a Head like a Horſe, and a ſtrait Horn, about nine Foot long, iſſuing out of the Forepart of it. Upon this Coaſt likewiſe are often ſeen great Numbers of Fiſhes, which fly fifteen or twenty Foot above Water, and near an hundred Paces in Length, but no more, in regard their Wings are dried by the Sun. They are ſomewhat like Herrings, but of a rounder Head, and broader Back. Their Wings are like a Bat's. The Sword-Fiſh is alſo worth obſerving. It has at the End of the upper Jaw a defenſive Weapon, about the Breadth of a great broad Sword, which hath ſharp hard Teeth on both Sides. Several of theſe Swords are five Foot long, and about ſix Inches broad towards the lower End.

The Iſle of *Anguilla*, or *Snake-Iſland*, ſo called *Anguilla.* from its Shape, is ſeated in the Latitude of eighSituation. teen Degrees and twenty-one Minutes on this Side the Equinoctial. It is a long Tract of Land, and extendeth itſelf in Length about ten Leagues, and in Breadth about three. The Inhabitants are Inhabi*Engliſh*: They plant Tobacco, which is highly tants. eſteemed by thoſe who are good Judges in that Commodity. The Animals here, both Land and Water, are much the ſame as in the other Iſlands already deſcribed, and in the neighbouring Continent.

Barbuda is ſituated in about ſeventeen Degrees *Barbuda.* of Northern Latitude; of about fifteen Miles in Situation. Length, and of no great Account to the *Engliſh*, who are the Poſſeſſors of it: Yet it is found to be of a fertile Soil, well ſtored with Cattle and Sheep, and might produce ſeveral good Commodities, were it well managed, to the Advantage of the Inhabitants.

The *Caribeans*, who inhabit theſe Iſlands, are Natives of the Caribee Iſlands. generally thought to have been formerly driven by their Enemies from the Continent of *America*, and forced to take Shelter here, having amongſt themſelves various and very different Opinions, Cuſtoms, and Ceremonies. Such as live near, and converſe with the Chriſtians, have relinquiſhed many of their antient barbarous Uſages, and have very much civilized their Converſations. They are handſome, well-proportioned, and of a ſmiling Countenance; their Eyes and Hair are black; their Foreheads and Noſes flat, being cruſhed down by their Mothers, at the Time of their Birth, and all the Time of their ſucking, becauſe they imagine that Flatneſs to be a Kind of Beauty. Their Feet are large and thick, and exceeding hard. You ſhall not ſee any of them blind, lame, crook-backed, bald, or having any other natural Infirmity. Such Scars and Deformities as they get in the Wars, they glory in, as evident Demonſtrations of their Valour. Their Hair is ſtrait and long, the Women attributing the higheſt Excellency to that which exceeds in Blackneſs. Both Men and Women tie up their Hair behind, which they bind ſo hard, that it ſtands up upon their Heads like a Horn, but hanging looſe at the Top, it falls down again on each Side of their Heads. The Men, ſo ſoon as their Beards begin to grow, pluck them up by the Roots. Both Men and Women go naked, and they generally ſay, they came naked into the World, and it would be a Madneſs for them to hide the Bodies Nature has beſtowed upon them: Notwithſtanding which, they change the natural Colour of their Skins, by dying them with a red Compoſition. And many Times, to make themſelves appear the more gallant, they draw black Circles about their Eyes, with the Juice of Juniper-Apples. And when they would appear more gallant than ordinary, they put on a Crown of Feathers of different Colours, and hang Fiſh-Bones, or Toys, made of Gold, Silver, or Tin, in their Ears. Some of them make Holes through their Lips, or in the Space between their Noſtrils, wherein they hang Rings, Fiſh-Bones, or ſome ſuch Toys; and many of the better Sort wear Necklaces of Amber, Coral, Cryſtal, or ſome ſuch Kind of glittering Stuff.

There grow in theſe Iſlands (and particularly Fruits. in the laſt mentioned) great Store of excellent Fruits, *viz.* Oranges, Pomegranates, Citrons, Ratins, *Indian* Figs, and Cocoa Nuts. Beſides which, there are divers excellent Trees and Woods, as Brazil, Ebony, and the like. Caſſia, Cinamon, Cotton, Pepper, Tobacco, Indico, Ginger, Potatoes, Pine-Apples, and Sugar-Cane.

Canes, grow likewise there in great Plenty; and a certain sensitive Plant, esteemed one of the greatest Rarities in the World, which, as soon as touched with the Hand, falls down, and the Leaves run together, as if they were suddenly withered: But, so soon as the Hand is removed, and the Party gone, it presently rises up and flourisheth again.

Bermudas Islands. East of *Virginia* and *Carolina*, lie the Isles of *Bermudas*, (so called from *John Bermudas*, by whom they were first discovered;) or the *Summer-Islands*, as they are likewise sometimes called, from the Shipwreck which Sir *George Summers*, an *English* man, suffered upon that Coast. They are a great Multitude of Isles, being no less than four hundred in Number, as some affirm, that lie distant 1600 Leagues from *England*, from *Madera* 1000, from *Hispaniola* 400, and from *Carolina*, which is the nearest Land, about 300 Leagues.

St. George's. The biggest of these Isles is called *St. George's*, and is about five or six Leagues long, but in the broadest Place not a League broad. All the rest are much less. The whole Cluster do altogether form a Body much like a Crescent, and include several very good Ports, the chief whereof are those of the *Great Sound*, *Harrington's Inlet*, *Southampton*, and *Pagets*; which, with the Forts of *Dover* and *Warwick*, take their Names from the several Noblemen that have been concerned as Adventurers.

Fertility. The Earth in these Isles is exceeding fertile, yielding two Crops every Year, which they generally gather in about the Months of *July* and *December*. They have several Sorts of excellent Fruits, as Oranges, Dates, Mulberries, both white and red, (in the Trees whereof breed Abundance of Silkworms, which produce great Plenty of that Commodity) and Tobacco. There has been found some Pearl and Ambergrise. They have likewise there Plenty of Tortoise, their Flesh being counted very delicious. They have good Store of Hogs, and great Variety of Fowls and Birds; amongst which are Cranes, and a Sort of Sea Fowl, which breeds in Holes, like our Rabbits. And such is the Fruitfulness and delightful Verdure wherein these Isles always appear, that *Summers* seemed to take Pleasure in his Shipwreck, and, neglecting his Return for *England*, endeavoured, with the Assistance of Sir *Thomas Gates*, to settle a Plantation there. At their first coming ashore, they found themselves supplied by a vast Variety of Fowl, which were taken without Difficulty; no less than one thousand of one Kind, somewhat bigger than a Pigeon, being caught by them in two or three Hours Space. This Sort of Fowl lay speckled Eggs, as large as Hens, on the Sand; and this they do every Day, without being frighted, tho' Men sit down by them. The greatest Inconveniency that attends the Place, is their Want of fresh Water: There is none for their Occasions, but what is to be found in Wells or Pits, there being neither Fountain nor Stream in all these Isles. On all other Accounts, it is one of the most delightful Situations in the World.

Air. The Sky is almost continually serene and clear, and the Air so exceeding temperate and healthy, that it is rare to hear of a Man's dying of any other Distemper than that of Old Age; which has occasioned many to remove from *England* thither, barely for the Enjoyment of a long and healthful Life. However, when the Sky is at any Time darkened with Clouds, it thunders and lightens, and the Weather proves exceeding tempestuous, the Wind sometimes rather thundering than blowing from every Quarter, for forty-eight Hours together. The North and North-West Winds cause Winter in *December*, *January*, and *February*; which is however so very moderate, that young Birds and Fruits, and other Concomitants of the Spring, are seen there in those Months. The Isle of *St. George's*, to which the Name of *Bermudas* is more generally given, is situated in thirty-two Degrees, and thirty Minutes of North Latitude.

Beasts. No venomous Beasts are to be found in this Island, neither will they live, if brought thither. Their Spiders are no Way poisonous, but are of sundry and various Colours, and in hot Weather make their Webs so exceeding strong, that the small Birds are sometimes entangled and caught therein.

Trees. There grows in this Island a Sort of Cedar-Trees, which differ from all other in the World, in several Respects: The Wood whereof is very sweet and well scented.

Proprietors. The *English*, who settled themselves upon this Isle in the Year 1612, are the only Proprietors thereof, having established a powerful Colony there. The Island is exceeding strong, and defended with a kind of natural Fortification, being so fenced about with Rocks, that without Knowledge of the Passages, a Boat of ten Ton cannot be brought into the Haven; although, by the Assistance of a skilful Pilot, there is Entrance for Ships of the greatest Burden. And, besides the natural Strength of those Islands, the *English* have, since their settling there, added such artificial Helps, and so strongly fortified the Approaches, by Block-houses and Forts, as renders it impregnable.

In the Year 1616, four Years after the first settling there, Captain *Tucker* was sent over with a new Supply; whereupon they applied themselves to the planting of Corn, Tobacco, and other Commodities; so that, in about three Years, those Isles began to gain so much Repute in *England*, that the improving them became a publick Business, many Persons of Quality interesting themselves therein, as Adventurers. Captain *Butler* was afterwards dispatched thither with a new Supply of five hundred Men; and about that Time the Isle was divided into Tribes or Counties, and the whole reduced to settled Government, both in Church and State. After which, Things succeeded so well, that it has been ever since growing to greater Perfection.

CHAP. XXIX.

A Deſcription of the French *Dominions in* America, *known by the Names of* Canada, Florida, *&c. wherein the Juſtice of their Claim to thoſe Countries is particularly conſidered, and the Right of the* Engliſh, *&c. aſſerted.*

WE come now to the fourth Grand Diviſion of *America*, which we ſhall diſpatch in a ſingle Chapter, and that not very long; this Diviſion being more thinly planted, and conſequently leſs known, than the Parts we have already treated of. It is that which the *French* pretend is ſubject to them; and, according to their Maps, extends from the North Side of the Gulph of *Mexico* or *Florida*, to the North of *Canada*, that is, from the Latitude of twenty-eight to fifty-two Degrees and upwards of Northern Latitude; ſo that they would have us believe, their Territories extend near ſeventeen hundred Miles in Length from North to South, and are little leſs in Breadth from Eaſt to Weſt; for their Maps lay them down between the *Britiſh* Dominions on the Eaſt, and *New Mexico* on the Weſt, comprehending moſt Part of *Florida* and *Canada*, to which their Geographers have given the Name of *Louiſiana* and *New France*.

The Territories claim'd by *France*.

But *Florida* and *Canada*, may with much more Propriety be aſſigned to the *Spaniards* and the *Engliſh*, than to the *French*; for the *Spaniards* firſt diſcovered and made Settlements in *South Florida*, ſome of which they poſſeſs at this Day, as they do the entire Weſt Side of *Florida* and *Canada*: The *Engliſh*, on the other hand, have been long poſſeſſed of *Virginia* and *Carolina*, which were originally Part of *Florida*, and of ſeveral Places in *Canada*; while the *French* have only two or three little Settlements on the Gulph of *Florida* or *Mexico*, near the Mouth of the River *Miſſiſſippi*, to entitle them to *Florida*; and a Man may travel ſome hundreds of Miles, both in *Florida* and *Canada*, without meeting with a *French* Settlement, or even with a ſingle *Frenchman*. To ſay the Truth, very few of the *Indians* of *Florida* or *Canada* are yet ſubject to any *European* Power; and a very ſmall Part of their Country the Property of any Foreigner. The only juſt and legal Way of becoming Proprietors of any Part of either, is by Treaty with the Natives, and giving them what they eſteem a valuable Conſideration for it; as our Adventurers in *Georgia* actually do, for whatever they intend to plant or cultivate.

The *Spaniards* and *Engliſh* more Right to *Florida* than the *French*.

We are extremely weak, in aſſigning this fine Country to *France*, which lies on the Back of all the *Britiſh* Settlements; and that for no other Reaſon, than that the *French* have Aſſurance enough to lay Claim to it; eſpecially ſince this Claim, if it be allowed, muſt for ever exclude us from extending our Settlements to the Weſtward: It is hoped therefore, that our *Britiſh* Geographers will be commanded by their Superiors, to blot *Louiſiana* and *New France* out of their Maps, and reſtore the primitive Names of *Florida* and *Canada* to thoſe Countries; and that they ſhall not be ſuffered [illegible] to follow the *French* Geography, [illegible] that People a Colour for their Encroachments on the *Britiſh* Plantations.

The Map of that Country muſt be corrected.

We already looks upon the great Rivers of *Miſſiſſippi* and *St. Laurence* as her own, and will, no doubt, if ever it is in her Power, ſwallow up all thoſe Countries that border upon them, or which lie between the Mouths of thoſe two Rivers, in which Space lie moſt of the *Britiſh* Dominions on the Continent of *America*. Forty Years ago they had ſcarce any Footing in the Country they have denominated *Louiſiana*, and are not at this Day poſſeſſed of more of it than the County of *Middleſex* contains; though the whole Country they lay Claim to, is a fine Square of fifteen hundred Miles of a Side, the moſt temperate, fruitful, and moſt beautiful Spot of Earth upon the Face of the Globe; from whence it obtained its antient Name of *Florida*. If we ſuffer the encroaching *French* to eſtabliſh themſelves there, and drive us from this terreſtrial Paradiſe, when nothing is ſo eaſy as to prevent it, by uniting our Forces with the *Spaniards*; both Nations richly deſerve to enjoy the Fruits of their ſupine Negligence.

Canada, or *New France*, the Northern Part of the Territories claimed by the *French*, is a very large Country, not well diſcovered. Under this Name they comprehend not only the Coaſts of St. *Laurence*'s River, (which is the only Part of it that they have planted to any Purpoſe) but the vaſt Tracts that we have already mentioned under the Names of *New-Britain*, *New-Wales*, *New-Scotland*, and, in ſhort, the whole North of *America*, Iſlands and all, from about forty to upwards of ſixty Degrees of North Latitude: Which Country, taking it in this Extent, is bounded on the South and South-Eaſt, by the *Britiſh* Provinces of *New-England*, *New-York*, &c. and on all the other Sides by Parts unknown, though ſome of them are diſtinguiſhed by imaginary Names. The true Magnitude of this Country cannot therefore be given with any Probability. *Canada*.

The planted Parts of *Canada* were firſt diſcovered by the *French*, to whom they are ſtill ſubject, but can be of no conſiderable Advantage to them. All we know of the reſt, is, that the Natives are diſtributed into ſeveral Nations, under the Government of their Sagamo's or Princes, who are ſaid to be the eldeſt in their ſeveral Tribes. As to the Climate, it cannot but vary much in ſo large an Extent: But the whole muſt be ſomewhat colder than that of *New-England*. The Product, (we mean the negotiable Part of it) is chiefly Bevers, Mouſe Skins, Firs, Stock-fiſh, Whale-Oil, and a Shell-Fiſh called *Eſturgny*. It is a Country full of Woods, which are well repleniſhed with Stags, Rabbits, and other Beaſts. It has alſo Plenty of Fowls, and Fiſh of various Kinds. Natives. Product.

The great River of St. *Laurence* runs through the whole Country, from South-Weſt, to North Eaſt, where it falls into the Sea over-againſt *Newfoundland*. On this River the *French* have ſome Settlement, and a few Towns, the chief of which is *Quebec*. An unfortunate Attempt was made upon this Place in Queen *Anne*'s Time, by a Fleet under the Command of Sir *Hovenden Walker*, who publiſhed an Account of the Affair in his own Vindication. River. Quebec.

Vindication. The City lies in forty-seven Degrees twelve Minutes North Latitude: It is a Bishop's See, and divided into the upper and lower Town. Other Places here are *Tadoussac* and *Brest*, of neither of which we meet with any particular Description.

Louisiana or Florida

Louisiana, as the *French* call it, (but *Florida* as named by us and the *Spaniards*) is a very large and fruitful Country, that lies parallel with *Castile* in *Spain*. It is bounded on the North-East with *Virginia*; on the East by *Carolina* and *Georgia* (both formerly Parts of it) and the *Atlantic* Ocean; on the South, and some Part of the West, by the Gulph of *Mexico*; and on the direct West, and North-West, by *New Mexico* and Parts unknown. On the North they would unite it with *Canada*, but the Bounds of each are not ascertained, nor is any thing known of the Parts where they seem willing to place them. However, according to the best Maps, it extends from the twenty-fifth to about the fortieth Degree of North Latitude. The whole Length, from East to West, is about twelve hundred Miles, and the Breadth from North to South above six hundred.

Extent.

Discovery

It was first discovered by the *English*, under the Conduct of *Sebastian Cabot*, in the Year 1497, but afterwards more fully by the *Spaniards* in 1527. It is still, however, very imperfectly known, and contains few *European* Settlements.

Natives.

The Natives are in Possession of all the Inland Parts, where they live under the Jurisdiction of their Parcultes or Caciques. Their Customs, civil and religious, may be best judged of from what we have said of their Neighbours, in speaking of the Provinces that lie round them. We shall not repeat the Names which Geographers have given us of the several Provinces of *Florida* (to the Number of forty-three) because we look upon them to be chimerical; and if they are not so, they are the only Particulars we can know of many of these Subdivisions. As to the Climate, it is found to be exceeding temperate; the Air healthy; the Soil very rich and fertile; the Woods extraordinary well stored with Venison and Fowl, and all Sorts of excellent Fruits that are found in this Part of the World. In several Places they have rich Furs, and an immense Quantity of Pearls: It is also said to have several Mines of Silver and Gold.

Climate & Product.

River

The principal River of the whole County, is the great River *Mississippi*, whose Head to the Northward is not known, but which falls into the Gulph of *Mexico* in about thirty Degrees of North Latitude. What few Settlements the *French* have in *Florida*, are near the Mouth of this River, and a smaller one called *Mobile*, where their Maps present us with two or three Forts, but not one Town of any Consideration. The *Spaniards*, however, who inhabit the *Peninsula* on the South of our Colony of *Georgia*, have two or three Places of Note. The principal is *St. Augustine*, a City and Seaport, which was taken by the *English* in 1702, but soon after relinquished. Others mentioned by Geographers, are *St. Matthea* and *Vitaracho*.

Towns.

Islands.

The *French*, as well as the *English*, possess several of the Islands called *Caribees*; we shall just mention a few of them, as they lie in Order. 1. *St. Lucia*, North of *St. Vincent*, and North-West of *Barbadoes*, a small Island. 2. *Martinico*, North of *St. Lucia*, about sixteen Leagues long, but unequally broad. The *English* attempted to take it in the late War, but in vain. 3. *Marigalante*, ten or twelve Leagues North of *Dominica*, and six South of *Guardaloupe*. It was taken by the *English* in the late War, as well as *Dominica*. 4. *Guardaloupe*. 5. *Deseada*: Both small. 6. *St. Bartholomeo*: With some others. The *Dutch* have also a few Islands, mingled with the *French* and *English* in these Seas. For an Account of their Climate, Natives, Product, and other Particulars, we refer to the preceding Chapter, where we have treated of the *Caribee* Islands that are subject to the Crown of *Great-Britain*.

A DE-

A DESCRIPTION OF THE *BRITISH ISLES*:

TREATING

Of their Diviſions and Sub-Diviſions; the Soil, Climate, Air, Seaſons, Rivers, Produce, &c. of the ſeveral Parts; the Perſons, Genius, Habits, Buildings, Orders, Laws, Cuſtoms, Religion, Policy, Arts, Manufactures, Trade, Learning, and Languages of the Inhabitants; the Monarchy, Parliament, Courts of Juſtice, and other Particulars.

CHAP. I.

Of Great-Britain *in general, its antient Inhabitants, and principal Diviſions; the Situation, Extent, Air, Rivers, Beauty, Fertility, Curioſities, and Populouſneſs of* England *in particular.*

Extent of Great Britain

BRITAIN was by the Antients accounted the greateſt Iſland of the known World. It extends from North to South about ten Degrees, and near 300 Miles in the Breadth of its moſt extended Angles. It was antiently called *Albion*, from *Alpion*; the Word *Alp*, in the Original Weſtern Languages, ſignifying very high Lands. By the *Romans* it was called *Britannia*; concerning which Name no Agreement has been among the modern Learned: That which ſeems moſt probable, is, That the Strangers who came over from *Gaul* or *Germany*, call'd the Inhabitants *Brith*, from the Cuſtom of painting their Bodies and Shields with an Azure Blue, which by them was called *Brith*; and from this Name, the *Romans* called it *Britannia*. The *Britons* were little known abroad, before the Entrance of the *Romans* into their Iſle. Their Coaſts only, oppoſite to *Gaul* and *Belgium*, were frequented by Merchants: And theſe were the Men from whom *Cæſar* drew his Intelligence concerning the Country he intended to invade. All that we find related of them before the *Romans* entered, is, That the whole Country was fill'd with infinite Numbers of People, abounding in all Sorts of Cattle or Beaſts; their Houſes poorly built, and ſcattered all over the Country, without Obſervance of Order or Diſtance. They lived moſt upon Milk, or Fleſh, which they got by Hunting. What Clothes they wore were uſually of the Skins of Beaſts; but much of their Body was left naked, and in many of them, all. What was naked, was painted with blue. Their Towns were moſt upon their Coaſts, and founded for the Advantage of Havens. Theſe Inhabitants were much more civiliz'd than thoſe of the Inland Country, by the Commerce of other Nations. The Commodities exported out of this Iſle, were chiefly Hides and Tin; which laſt was peculiar to this Country. Some Silver they had, but not in common Uſe: Pearls they had too, but neither clear nor colour'd like thoſe of the *Orient*. But little Iron, and that uſed either for Arms, or for Rings, which was a Sort of Money current among them: The reſt was of Braſs, which was brought from Abroad.

Its Name.

Antient Inhabitants

Their Commodities

In their Religion and Laws they were wholly governed by their *Druids*, as were the antient *Gauls*. Their Language and Cuſtoms were alſo generally the ſame with thoſe of the *Gauls*, before the *Roman* Conqueſts in this Province. Which Affinity made them frequently aſſiſt the *Gauls* in their Wars againſt the *Romans*, and gave the firſt Occaſion of *Cæſar*'s invading *Britain*. Their Government was likewiſe, as that of the *Gauls*, of ſeveral Nations, under ſeveral petty Princes. Whether theſe Principalities deſcended by Succeſſion, or were elective according to the Advantages of Age, Wiſdom, or Valour, is not recorded: But upon great or common Dangers, the chief Commander of all their Forces was choſen by common Conſent, as *Cæſar* relates of *Cassivellaunus* againſt his Invaſion. Women were admitted to their Principalities by the Right of Succeſſion, Nobleſſe of Birth, or Eminence of other Qualities.

Their Religion, Laws and Government

Their

Their Forces conſiſted chiefly in their Foot, and yet they could draw great Numbers of Horſe into the Field: They likewiſe uſed Chariots in Fight, with Scythes faſten'd to the Ends of the Axle-Trees. Their common Arms were ſmall Shields, but very large Swords. They were eſteem'd a very brave and fierce People, till ſoftened by the Luxury, as well as Servitude, which the *Romans* introduced among them. One Cuſtom among the *Britons*, ſeems peculiar to themſelves, which was, a Society of Wives among certain Numbers, by common Conſent. Every Man marry'd a ſingle Woman, who was eſteem'd his only Wife: But it was uſual for Five or Six, Ten or Twelve, or more, to have all their Wives in common. Every Woman's Children were attributed to him that marry'd her, but all had a Share in the Care and Defence of the whole Society. Such were the People and the Cuſtoms of *Britain*, when the *Romans* firſt invaded their Iſland under *Julius Cæſar*, whoſe Forces were compos'd of *Germans*, *Batavians*, and *Gauls*, beſides the beſt of his old *Roman* Legions: Yet in two Expeditions he rather increas'd the Glory than the Dominion of *Rome*; and gave *Britain* the Honour of being the laſt Triumph of that mighty Republick.

The next Expedition into *Britain* was made by the Emperor *Claudius*, under the Conduct of *Plautus*, and purſued under *Oſtorius*, and other *Roman* Commanders, with great Succeſs. *Domitian* finiſh'd what *Claudius* had begun, carrying the *Roman* Colours as far as *Edinburgh* and *Dunbarton* in *Scotland*. Then lived the *Britons* under the *Roman* Empire near 460 Years, *viz.* from the Reign of *Claudius*, to that of *Honorius*; when *Italy* being over-run by the *Goths*, the *Romans* were oblig'd to abandon *Britain*, and take Care of their own Country. Thus the *Britons* recovered their Liberty, but did not enjoy it long; for the *Picts* and *Scots*, who were often repreſs'd by the *Roman* Legions, finding the Country deſtitute of that Force, and exhauſted of their own braveſt Youth, purſued their Invaſions with greater Rage and Fury. The poor *Britons* ſent over to *Aëtius* for Relief; but having no Hopes given them of any Succours from that Side, *Vortigern* made Addreſs for Aid to the *Saxons*, a People poſſeſs'd of all thoſe Tracts of Land in *Germany* that lie between the *Elbe* and the *Lower Rhine*. Theſe People were called *Saxons* from a Weapon uſed among them, made like a Scythe, with the Edge reverſed, which they call'd *Seax*. The *Britons* Offers were ſoon accepted by the *Saxons*, whoſe Aſſiſtance was recompenſed with the Iſle of *Thanet*, and afterwards with the County of *Kent*, one of the moſt conſiderable in *England*. But that would not ſerve their Turn; ſo prodigious was the Succeſs of their Arms, as to drive the *Britons* out of their own Country, and force the greateſt Part of them to take Sanctuary in *Wales*; while the reſt fled, ſome to *Cornwall*, and others to *Cumberland*. The *Saxons*, hearten'd with Succeſs, invited ſtill greater Numbers of their own from Abroad, who being of ſeveral Branches, arrived here under ſeveral Names: Among whom the *Angles* ſwarm'd over in ſuch Numbers, that this Province from them was called *Angle-Land*, and, for eaſier Sound, *England*. The *Saxons* having ſubdued the whole Body of the Province, eſtabliſhed in it ſeven ſeveral Kingdoms (which were ſtiled the *Heptarchy*.) Theſe ſeveral Kingdoms continued for ſome Ages, till *Egbert*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, reduced the *Heptarchy* into a *Monarchy*, and was crowned King of *England* at *Winchester*, the Royal Seat of the *Weſt-Saxons*, in the Year 819. Thus *Britain* came to be divided into three principal Parts, *England*, *Scotland* and *Wales*; all three now happily united into One, under the Name of *Great-Britain*.

The Monarchy of *England* was no ſooner ſettled, but the *Danes* came in to diſturb its Tranquility. During no leſs than two hundred Years, this Kingdom was haraſſed by thoſe fierce Invaders; till at laſt *Canute* their King got Poſſeſſion of the Crown, in the Year 1017. Then the *Saxons* and *Danes* keeping a good Correſpondence, and intermixing together by Marriages, made but one Nation. However, the Reign of the *Danes* was of no long Continuance, there having been but three Kings of that Nation, who reigned but twenty-five Years. For in 1042 the *Saxons* recovered the Throne, in the Perſon of *Edward*, ſirnamed the *Confeſſor*. Next to King *Edward*, and *Harold* his Succeſſor, this Kingdom fell, *Anno* 1066, into the Hands of the *Normans*, under *William* Duke of *Normandy*, ſirnamed the *Conqueror*. Thus this Part of *Great-Britain* was no leſs than four Times conquered by four different Nations, the *Romans*, *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*. But the *Saxon* and *Norman* Blood were united afterwards, in the Perſon of *Henry* the Second, from whom are deſcended all the ſucceeding Kings and Queens to this preſent Time.

England lies South of *Scotland*, North of *France*, Eaſt of *Ireland*, and Weſt of the *Netherlands*. In reference to the Globe, *England* lies between the fiftieth and ſixtieth Degree of Northern Latitude. As the Situation contributes much to its Security, ſo it is moſt convenient for Trade, Nature having furniſhed its Sea Coaſts with many good Ports and Havens: Among which, *Falmouth*, *Plymouth*, *Dartmouth*, *Weymouth*, *Southampton*, and *Portſmouth*, upon the Channel; *Briſtol* near the Mouth of the *Severn*; *London* upon the *Thames*; *Yarmouth* and *Hull* upon the *German* Sea; *Liverpool* and *White-Haven* in *St. George*'s Channel, are the principal. *England* has this Advantage beſides, that its Sea Coaſt is for the moſt Part ſecured with high Cliffs, from the Irruptions of the Sea. As for its Extent, from *Berwick* upon *Tweed* Northward, to the South Parts of the Iſle of *Wight*, it reaches about three hundred and thirty Miles: And from *Sandwich* Eaſt, to the *Land's-End*, Weſt and by South, two hundred and eighty.

The Air of *England* is generally groſs, the Winters moſt commonly rainy and foggy, and the Weather variable. However, People live here to as great an Age, as in any Part of *Europe*. On the other hand, *England* gets great Advantages from the Thickneſs of her Air. It makes the Fields look green almoſt all the Year round. It makes Abundance of Paſture for Cattle. The Summer Heat is the leſs ſcorching, and the Cold in Winter leſs ſevere. It is leſs ſubject to the dreadful Meteors of Hail, Thunder, Lightning, Thunderbolts, Earthquakes, and Hurricanes. And if Nature be ſomewhat too prodigal of Moiſture in this Country, ſhe takes care to cure it: For, after a great Glut of Rain, a Wind does commonly riſe from the Weſt, to dry it up. This is the Wind that predominates in *England*, and is the wholeſomeſt. The Eaſterly Winds are unwholeſome, eſpecially in the Spring. As to the North and North-Weſt Winds, they commonly bring fair Weather: But thoſe oppoſite to them, that blow but ſeldom in *England*, do for the moſt Part bring Rain.

England has no Rivers of a long Courſe, like the *Danube*, the *Rhine*, or the *Volga*. But there is one, the *Thames*, which carries more Wealth in the Space of twenty-five Leagues, than all thoſe three great Rivers in their utmoſt Extent. The *Thames* is made up of two Rivers, *Thame* and *Iſis*, which join together near *Dorcheſter* in

Oxfordſhire; from whence it runs Eaſtward, parting *Buckinghamſhire* from *Berkſhire*, *Middleſex* from *Surry*, and *Eſſex* from *Kent*. For Navigation, *Europe* does not afford a more commodious River. Its Stream is eaſy, its Tides convenient, and the Water wholſome. The *Medway* in *Kent* runs through *Maidſtone*, *Rocheſter*, and *Chatham*, into the *Thames*. This River is made uſe of to lay up the greateſt Ships of War, its Entrance being defended by a ſtrong Fort called *Sheerneſs*. The *Severn* riſes in *North Wales*, and runs from *Montgomery* through *Shropſhire*, *Worceſter*, and *Glouceſterſhire*. In the laſt of theſe Counties it does ſo expatiate itſelf, that the Mouth of it is called the *Severn Sea*. It receives ſeveral Rivers of good Note, particularly the *Avon*, *Wye*, and *Uſk*, abounding with Salmon and Trout. *Humber* is a *Yorkſhire* River, compounded of ſeveral leſſer Rivers, *viz.* the *Trent*, *Ouſe*, *Dun*, and *Darwent*. This River is of a great Breadth, and the Port of *Hull* is at the Mouth of it. The *Trent* riſes in *Staffordſhire*, and runs through the Counties of *Derby*, *Nottingham*, and *Lincoln*, where it falls into the *Humber*. By this River *England* is divided into two Parts. The *Ouſe* begins its Courſe in *Northamptonſhire*, and runs thro' the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, *Huntington*, *Cambridge*, and *Norfolk*. The *Tine*, famous for its Sea-Coal Trade, divides Part of the County of *Durham* from *Northumberland*, and runs by *Newcaſtle upon Tine*. The *Tweed* parts *England* from *Scotland*. The *Ouſe*, another of that Name, parts *Norfolk* from *Suffolk*. The *Avon*, having croſſed the Counties of *Warwick*, *Worceſter*, and *Glouceſter*, falls into the *Severn*. Another of that Name runs through *Bath* and *Briſtol*. A third *Avon* waters *Salisbury*.

Beauty of *England*

Forests.

England is an open level Country, excepting ſome Hills here and there, agreeably diverſified with arable Land, Meadows, and Woods: And its Foreſts ſeem to have been preſerved only for the Pleaſure of Variety, and the Diverſion of Hunting. The principal of them are *Windſor-Foreſt* in *Berkſhire*, *New Foreſt* in *Hampſhire*, the Foreſt of *Dean* in the County of *Glouceſter*, and *Sherwood-Foreſt* in *Nottinghamſhire*.

Verdure

England is alſo to be admired for its Verdure, which continues commonly nine Months together;

Fertility

and the great Number of her Streams makes the Country agreeable. It yields to no Country in Point of Fertility; eſpecially for Corn, Cattle, Fiſh, and Fleſh. As for its Soil, 'tis rank in ſome Places, in others light and ſandy, and elſewhere clayiſh. 'Tis true, there are many Heaths, Downs, and Plains, that yield only Graſs for Sheep; but they cannot be ſaid to be barren. Here is alſo Abundance of Hares, wild Fowl, and Poultry. As for Fruits, and edible Roots and Herbs, no Country goes beyond it: And ſo conſtant is Plenty here, that there has been no Famine in the three laſt Centuries. As for Drink, 'tis true, we have no rich Wines of our own Growth: But by Navigation we have the greateſt Variety that can be got. Our common Drink is Beer or Ale, which is the beſt in *Europe*, eſpecially in the Northern Parts. Beſides this, great Quantities of Cyder, Perry, Mead, Mum, and Punch; Cherry, Gooſeberry, and Currant-Wines, *&c.* are made in *England*.

Commodities.

For Raiment, *Engliſh* Wooll is famous all over the World: Of which is made the beſt and moſt ſerviceable Cloth. Fullers-Earth, ſo neceſſary in the Manufacture of Cloth, is alſo moſt excellent, and plentiful in *England*. As to Linnen, the Soil is very fit for it in many Places, eſpecially in *Lancaſhire*, which yields good Hemp and Flax. But the Land is commonly improved to better Uſes. Leather no Country yields better, nor in greater Quantity. For Building, here is no great Stock of Timber, which for the moſt Part is fetched from Abroad. However, *England* wants neither Stones, Bricks, Tiles, Glaſs, nor Iron. The Firing here is Wood, Turf, and Pit-Coal: But the laſt is the moſt common Fewel, whoſe Heat is greater, and the Fire more laſting than either that of Wood or Turf. For Carriage, and other Uſes, there's no Country better ſtocked with Horſes than *England*. For Hunting and Racing, few can match them: And ſet aſide *Spain* and *Barbary*, no Country can ſhew finer, or of briſker Mettle. Here are alſo Dogs of all Sorts, all of them ſtrong, and full of Mettle. Our Maſtiffs, eſpecially thoſe we call Bull-Dogs, are of unparallel'd Conrage. There is alſo in *England* a Race of Cocks, which ſhew a peculiar Courage not to be found in any other Country. And it is obſervable, that an *Engliſh* Dog or Cock, tranſported beyond Sea, degenerates.

Horſes.

Dogs.

Cocks.

Flowers, Simples.

For Delight and Ornament, *England* yields Abundance of great Variety of Flowers: For Phyſical Uſes, Abundance of Simples, moſt excellent Saffron and Honey, and Plenty of Liquorith. Here are alſo Hot-Baths in the Counties of *Somerſet* and *Derby*, and Abundance of Mineral Waters, about *London* eſpecially; beſides the famed Waters of *Tunbridge*. For other Uſes, *England* is well ſtocked with Metals. *Suſſex* is noted for its Iron Mines, *Derbyſhire* for its Lead, *Cumberland* and *Somerſetſhire* for their Copper, and *Cornwall* for its Tin. *England* has alſo Plenty of Alum and Cryſtal, Coperas, and *Lapis Calaminaris*, beſides Woad for the Uſe of Dyers. Another Thing *England* is happy in, is her being free from dangerous and voracious Beaſts, which are ſo pernicious in many Regions of *Europe*. There are alſo but a few Serpents, and other venomous Creatures. *England* was formerly peſtered with Wolves: But the *Welch* Prince being tributary to *Edgar*, the King changed that Tribute into three thouſand Wolves Skins. Upon which the *Welch* cleared *England* from thoſe ravenous Creatures.

Baths and Mineral Waters.

Metals.

Publick Buildings.

As to Churches, beſides St. *Paul's* in *London*, where ſhall one find finer Cathedrals than at *York*, *Salisbury*, *Winchester*, *Lincoln*, and *Glouceſter*? *England* has alſo many fine Collegiate Churches, particularly at *Weſtminſter*, *Rippon* in *Yorkſhire*, and *Manchester* in *Lancaſhire*. What can be neater than the Pariſh Churches of *London* built ſince the Fire, and eſpecially the moſt modern ones? In the Country there are alſo many, more like Cathedral than Parochial Churches. For Chapels, there is *Henry* the Seventh's Chapel at *Weſtminſter*, the Chapel of *Windſor-Caſtle*, and *King's Chapel* at *Cambridge*. There are alſo a great many Steeples of curious Architecture, particularly thoſe of St. *Bridget*, and *Bow-Church* at *London*; *Salisbury* Steeple, whoſe Spire is the higheſt of any in *England*; thoſe of St. *Nicholas* at *Newcaſtle*, and *Grantham* in *Lincolnſhire*. What Country in *Europe* can ſhew two ſuch Univerſities as *Oxford* and *Cambridge*, adorned with ſo many and richly endow'd Colleges? And, amongſt Lawyers, where ſhall one ſee ſuch Societies as our Inns of Court at *London*? For publick Halls, there is no Country like *England*; witneſs *Weſtminſter-Hall*, the *Middle Temple-Hall*, *Lambeth-Hall*, *Guild-Hall*, and others belonging to the ſeveral Companies of Tradeſmen. If we come to Hoſpitals, few will be found more ſtately than thoſe of *Chelſea* and *Greenwich*, that of St. *Thomas* in *Southwark*, St. *Bartholomew's*, and *Bethlehem* in *London*. *England* is noted beſides for the great Number and Beauty of her Stone-Bridges; particularly thoſe of *London*, *Rocheſter*, *Briſtol*, and *Burton* upon *Trent*. The Kings of *England*, in former Ages, had in moſt Counties a Caſtle, or Royal Houſe, with a Park or Foreſt, for their Entertain-

Entertainment. At this very Day the King has Palaces at *Kenſington*, *Hampton-Court*, and *Windſor-Caſtle*; beſides others inferior to thoſe, at *Richmond*, *Wincheſter*, *Greenwich*, and *Audley-Inn*. No Country in *Europe* is ſo full of ſtately Seats as *England*, conſidering its Extent. But of all the Counties of *England*, none are ſo full of them as *Yorkſhire*, *Cheſhire*, and *Northamptonſhire*.

Curioſities. Amongſt the Curioſities of *England*, we reckon *Salisbury-Plain*, and that of *New-market*; the firſt being of a vaſt Extent, and the other noted for the Horſe-Races. On *Salisbury-Plain* is to be ſeen that remarkable Monument of Antiquity, called the *Stone-henge*. It conſiſts of three Rows of Stones, ſome of them twenty-eight Foot high, and ſeven broad, with others laid croſs on the Top, and framed into them. Near *Witney* in *Oxfordſhire*, is a Trophy called *Roll-rich-Stones*, not much unlike the *Stone-henge*. At *Boskenna*, in *Cornwall*, is to be ſeen another Trophy of eighteen huge Stones in a Circle, with another in the Center over-topping them all. In *Cleer* Pariſh, in the ſame County, there ſtands up in a Plain ſix or eight Stones of a prodigious Bigneſs, artificially ſet together. The *Main-Amber*, near *Mount's-Bay*, is a Rock, which being mounted upon leſſer Rocks with a Counterpoiſe, may be ſtirred, but not removed out of its Place. Near *Salkeld* in *Cumberland*, is a Trophy, vulgarly called *Long Meg and her Daughters*, conſiſting of ſeventy-ſeven Stones. In *Weſtmoreland*, not far from the River *Lowther*, there are Pyramidal Stones, eight or nine Foot high, pitched directly in a Row for a Mile together, at equal Diſtances. At *Rygate* in *Surrey*, is to be ſeen the Ruins of an old Caſtle, with a long Vault under Ground, and a Room at the End of it, where the Barons met in Council during their War againſt King *John*. In *Derbyſhire* is the *Peak*, famous for its Lead Mines, Quarries, and wonderful Caves. Theſe laſt are of a large Extent, and apt to ſtrike with Horror all that come into them.

In *Weſtmoreland* is a Well, or Fountain, which ebbs and flows many Times in a Day. *Oundle*, in *Northamptonſhire*, is noted for its *Drumming-Wells*. The City of *Bath* is noted for its Springs, of a wonderful Virtue for the Cure of the Palſy, Rheumatiſm, Weakneſs of the Nerves, and Scorbutular Diſeaſes, &c. There are four Hot Baths, the *Croſs-Bath*, that called the *Hot-Bath*, and the *King's* and *Queen's-Baths*. The antient *Romans* had a great Value for theſe Waters, and built a Temple dedicated to *Minerva*, in the very Place where the Cathedral now ſtands. At *Buxton-Wells* in *Derbyſhire*, nine Springs iſſue out of a Rock, at a ſmall Diſtance from each other, eight of which are warm, and the ninth exceeding cold. At *Laſſington*, near *Glouceſter*, there are found Stones about the Breadth of a Silver-Penny, and the Thickneſs of a Half-Crown: They are flat, and five-pointed, like a Star; of a greyiſh Colour, and the flat Sides of them naturally engraven in fine Works. At *Whitby* in *Yorkſhire*, there are found Stones naturally as round as a Bullet; which being broken, ſtony Serpents are found in them. *Gotham* in *Nottinghamſhire*, yields a Sort of rugged Stone, but with ſuch delicate Veins, as exceed the Beauty of Marble; *Cornwall* and *Staffordſhire* have Quarries of Marble, and Alabaſter is to be found in *Lincolnſhire*. But *Cornwall* particularly is of Note for its Diamond-like Stones, found in Rocks, ready ſhaped, and poliſhed by Nature, and wanting nothing but Hardneſs to bear the Price of Diamonds. St. *Vincent's* Rock, near *Briſtol*, is alſo noted for yielding Plenty of Cryſtal. The *Picts* Wall is alſo worth our Notice, being a Piece of *Roman* Antiquity. It extended from the *German* to the *Iriſh* Sea, the Space of eighty Miles. It was eight Foot thick, and twelve Foot high from the Ground. Some Part of it is ſtill to be ſeen, both in *Northumberland* and *Cumberland*.

Populouſneſs of *England*. 'Tis doubtleſs a great Advantage for a Country to be populous. The Republick of *Holland* is ſo well convinced of this Truth, that ſhe freely receives all Strangers that come thither to ſettle. 'Tis true, *England* is not altogether ſo populous, but comes little ſhort of it: Though great Numbers of Men, Women, and Children, tranſport themſelves yearly into the Plantations. But then their Loſs is ſupplied by a perpetual Concourſe of Foreigners: Otherwiſe *England* would go near to be unpeopled, in leſs than half an Age. The *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*, all contributed to people the Country. In the Reign of *Henry* III. this Nation ſwarmed with *Poitevins*. In Queen *Elizabeth's* Reign, above 30,000 *Flemings* came to take Sanctuary here. And *James* I. drew hither an infinite Number of *Scots*. From that Time to this, *London* particularly has been conſtantly ſupplied with Foreigners from moſt Parts of *Europe*, but above all with *French*. Which City alone, conſidering it in its whole Extent, does probably contain one Million of Souls. Next to which, *York*, *Norwich*, *Salisbury*, *Exeter*, *Canterbury*, *Briſtol*, *Shrewſbury*, *Glouceſter*, *Worceſter*, *Oxford*, and *Cheſter*, are the moſt conſiderable. As for Market Towns, there are above ſix hundred and fifty; beſide many good Towns in which no Market is kept, and an infinite Number of Villages.

Yearly Rent of Lands and Houſes. The yearly Rent of all the Lands in *England* and *Wales* is computed to be ten Millions Sterling: And that of Houſes not let with the Lands, two Millions: In all twelve *Engliſh* Millions. Beſides her prodigious Wealth in Jewels, Plate, Hoards of Money, rich Moveables, Merchandiſe, &c.

CHAP. II.

A particular Deſcription of each County in England: *Wherein Notice is taken of the Shire-Towns, and of other remarkable Places.*

THE Advantages of *England* over moſt Countries in *Europe*, and her Populouſneſs, cannot be better made out, than by a particular Deſcription of her Counties. And in this we ſhall take notice only of remarkable Places and Things, without enumerating all the Particulars that are to be found in common Tables.

Berkſhire is an Inland and a pleaſant Country, one hundred and twenty Miles in Circumference, where the Air is good, and the Soil fruitful. It yields Plenty of Corn, Cattle, wild Fowl, Wooll, *Berkſhire*

Woodl, and Wood, Oak especially. The *Thames* and *Kennet* are its principal Rivers. *Reading*, the Shire-Town, is seated at the Fall of the *Kennet* into the *Thames*, consists of three Parishes, and is pretty populous. *Abington*, on the *Thames*, is a neat Town, having two Parishes, and a Town-house. *Windsor*, also on the *Thames*, stands upon a Hill; on the Top of which is the Castle of *Windsor*, a Royal Palace, to which belongs a Chapel, wherein are installed the Knights of the Garter; and a magnificent Hall for the Installation-Feast. What is remarkable besides, is the great and spacious Terrass on one Side of the Castle. *Wallingford*, also on the *Thames*, has been a Town of great Note.

Reading. *Abington.* *Windsor* *Windsor* Castle *Wallingford*

Bedfordshire is an Inland County, 73 Miles in Circumference, well stored with Corn and Cattle, especially the North Parts of it. *Bedford*, the Shire-Town, lies upon the *Ouse*, and contains five Parishes. *Dunstable* is noted for its excellent Larks, and *Woburn* for its Fuller's Earth.

Bedfordshire. *Bedford.* *Dunstable.*

Buckinghamshire is another Inland County, 138 Miles in Circumference, very plentiful both in Corn and Pasture, particularly the *Vale* of *Aylesbury*, which feeds an infinite Number of Sheep, yielding excellent Wooll. The *Thame*, *Ouse*, and *Colne*, are its principal Rivers. *Buckingham*, the chief Town, stands upon the *Ouse*, over which it has three Stone Bridges. There is in the County a Place called *Eaton*, situate upon the *Thames*, over-against *Windsor*, noted for its College and and School, founded by King *Henry* VI. In this School there are 70 Scholars, maintained gratis, and sent by Turns to the Universities.

Buckinghamshire. *Buckingham*

Cambridgeshire is an Inland County, 130 Miles in Circumference, and abounds in Corn and Pasture, Fish, Wild Fowl, and Saffron. The North Parts of it, called the Isle of *Ely*, are full of Marshes, which make them unhealthful, and yield but little Corn: But this Defect is supply'd by their Plenty of Cattle, Fish, and Wild-Fowl. In this County, not far from *Cambridge*, are the Hills called *Hog-Magog* Hills, fortified by the *Danes* with three Intrenchments. *Cambridge*, the Shire-Town, upon the *Cam*, 44 Miles North of *London*, is the *Camboritum* of the Antients. In the *Romans* Time, *Cambridge* was one of their Colonies; which Colonies had their Schools of Learning. *Lucius*, a *British* Monarch, and the first *Christian* King, was instructed in the *Christian* Faith by the Doctors of *Cambridge*. Whether it were *Lucius*, or Pope *Eleutherius*, that granted great Privileges to this University; certain it is, that *Cambridge* was counted an University from the latter End of the second Age, when both *Lucius* and *Eleutherius* were living. As a Town, it consists of 14 Parishes. In Point of Situation, and good Air, *Oxford* has the Advantage of *Cambridge*. 'Tis governed by a Mayor, in Subjection to the University: To which he takes a solemn Oath, when he enters upon his Office. As an University, here are twelve Colleges and four Halls, all endowed, which the Halls in *Oxford* are not: And whereas *Oxford* is an University within a Town, *Cambridge*, on the contrary, is a Town within an University; most of its Colleges being seated in the Skirts of the Town, which affords them the more delightful Walks and Gardens. By the Foundations of the Colleges and Halls, a certain Number of Fellows and Scholars are maintained by each College or Hall: And each of these is ruled according to the Statutes of the Founder. Over each College and Hall there is a Head, called Master; except the Head of King's College, who goes by the Name of Provost; and the Head of Queen's College, by that of President. Over the whole University there is, first, a Chancellor, chosen by the University, who is usually one of the prime Nobility. Under the Chancellor there is a Commissary, who holds a Court of Record for all privileged Persons and Scholars under the Degree of Master of Arts, where Causes are determined by the Civil and Statute Law, and by the Custom of the University. Next to the Chancellor, is the Vice-Chancellor, who actually governs the University. He is yearly chosen upon the third of *November*. The Batchelors of Arts here complete their Degree in *Lent*, beginning at *Ash Wednesday*. And the first *Tuesday* of *July* is always the Commencement, wherein the Masters of Arts, and the Doctors of all Faculties, complete their respective Degrees. Here three Years after a Man has taken the Degree of Batchelor, he may take that of Master of Arts; seven Years after which he may commence Batchelor in Divinity; and at the Expiration of three Years more he may go out Doctor. Besides *Cambridge*, there is in this County *Ely*, a Bishop's See, erected by King *Henry* I. The Revenue of this Bishoprick is very considerable. As to the Town, its Situation in an Isle, made by several Rivers, renders it unhealthful. Nor is it considerable, either for Extent or Beauty; and its Cathedral, the Work of several Bishops, is its only Ornament.

Cambridgeshire. *Cambridge.* *Ely.*

Cheshire is a Maritime County, 112 Miles in Circumference. It yields more Pasture than Corn, and is for the most Part level; its greatest Hills being those which part it from *Stafford* and *Derby* Shires. There are in it several Forests, particularly *Delamere* and *Macclesfield* Forests: And so great a Number of Parks, that few Gentlemens Country-Seats are without one. There are also many Heaths, in which both Sheep and Horses feed; and some mossy Plots, the Moss whereof serves to make Turfs. Its principal Rivers are the *Dee*, the *Weaver*, and the *Mersey*. The first has this Singularity in it, that it swells little in a Glut of Rain; but is most apt to overflow, when the Wind is a long Time South. Cheese and Salt are the chief Product of this County, and both in great Request all over *England*. It has the Privilege of being a County Palatine, the Earls whereof antiently lived more like Princes than Subjects. The Prince of *Wales* is now by Birth-right, Earl of *Chester*, as he is Duke of *Cornwal*. However, this County enjoys to this Day its antient Privileges, and the Palatine Courts are still kept at *Chester*, the Shire-Town, which stands upon the *Dee*, 25 Miles from its Fall into the *Irish* Sea. Over the River is a Stone Bridge, with eight Arches, and one Gate at each End of it. The Town is well inhabited, and drives a good Trade with *Ireland*. It contains ten Parishes; and is the most usual Place where People take Shipping for *Dublin*. The principal Streets have the Convenience of dry Walks, that shelter one from the Rain. This is a defensible Place, fortified with good Walls, and a strong Castle. *Nantwich*, *Middlewich*, and *Northwich*, are noted for their Salt Pits.

Cheshire. *Chester.* *Nantwich* &c.

Cornwal, a Maritime County, is the most Western County of *England*, surrounded with the Sea on the North, South, and West, and parted from *Devonshire*, Eastward, by the *Tamar*, so that 'tis a perfect Peninsula, 150 Miles in Circumference. Its Valleys are plentiful of Corn and Pasture, and the Hills famous for their Tin and Copper Mines; and it abounds in Wild-Fowl, Woodcocks especially; and the Seas thereof in Fish. Here is the great Fishing of Pilchards, between *July* and *November*. It yields also Plenty of Samphire, Eringo, fine Slate, and Marble. The People of this County are accounted the strongest in *England*,

Corn-

land, skilful in Wreſtling, and much addicted to that Exerciſe. Here is the *Lizard Point*, and *Land's-End*. Of all the Counties of *England*, *Cornwal*, *Cumberland*, and *Monmouthſhire*, have moſt of *Britiſh* Blood. The firſt was a long Time governed by its own Princes, called Earls of *Cornwal*. *Edward* III. created his eldeſt Son *Edward*, the Black Prince, Duke of *Cornwal*; and ever ſince the eldeſt Son of *England* has borne that Title, without Creation. *Launceſton*, the chief Place in *Cornwal*, is a goodly Town, near the *Tamer*. *Falmouth* is one of the beſt Ports of *England*. This is the Station of our Packet-boats for *Lisbon*. Over-againſt *Falmouth* ſtands the Caſtle of *Pendennis*, built by *Henry* VIII. for the Security of this Coaſt. The Iſles of *Scilly* lie about 60 Miles from the *Land's-End*, and are a Cluſter of ſmall Iſlands, to the Number of 145; one of 'em called *Scilly*, which gave Name to the reſt, was then counted the chief: But *St. Mary* has got ſince the Pre-eminence, as the largeſt and moſt fruitful; yet it is but nine Miles about. But it has a very good Harbour, fortified with a Caſtle, built by Queen *Elizabeth*.

Launceſton *Falmouth.* *Pendennis Caſtle.* *Iſles of Scilly.*

Cumberland is a Maritime County, bounded Northward with *Scotland*, and Weſtward with the *Iriſh* Sea. It is 168 Miles in Circumference. As far North as it lies, 'tis a fruitful Country; whoſe Hills yield good Paſture, and the Valleys plenty of Corn. There is abundance both of Wild-Fowl and Fiſh. For Fewel it yields Pit-Coal; and for other Uſes there are large Mines both of Copper and Lead. Beſides its Rivers, of which *Eden* is the principal, here are ſeveral ſmall Lakes, noted for yielding moſt dainty Fiſh. 'Tis Matter of Wonder, that in ſo Northern a County, more *Roman* Antiquities ſhould be found than in any other. *Carliſle*, the chief Place, is a Biſhop's See; ſurrounded on all Sides, but Southward, with the River *Eden*. This Town has a good Wall, fortified with a great Caſtle, built by *Henry* VIII. *Whitehaven* is a noted Port, eſpecially for its Salt and Coal-Trade. *Penrith* has a great many Tanners, and *Keſwick* abundance of good Lead.

Cumberland. *Carlyle* *Whitehaven.*

The Situation of the Iſle of *Man* is in the *Iriſh* Sea, 10 Leagues from *Cumberland*. It reaches about nine Leagues in Length, and three in Breadth. The Air of it is cold, and the Soil yields abundance of Oats. Here is alſo Plenty of Cattle, Wild-Fowl, and Fiſh. It contains 17 Pariſhes, has five Towns, and two Caſtles. There is a Hill in it of ſpecial Note, for yielding a Proſpect of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*. The Earls of *Derby* were long Lords of the Iſle of *Man*, but that Line being extinct, the Duke of *Athol* now enjoys that Honour. He holds it in Fee of the Crown. There is a Biſhop of *Man*, but he is no Peer of the Realm, becauſe he does not hold his Biſhoprick immediately of the Crown, but of the Lord of the Iſle. He is confirm'd by the King of *Great-Britain*, and conſecrated by the Archbiſhop of *York*.

Iſle of Man.

Derbyſhire is an Inland County, 130 Miles in Circumference; a plentiful Country of Paſture, Corn, and Wood, eſpecially on the Eaſt and South Side. Here are alſo Quarries of Free-Stone and Marble, abundance of Mill, Lime, and Whet-Stones, with Coal, Lead, and Iron-Mines. It yields likewiſe both Cryſtal and Alabaſter. The River *Derwent* divides it into two Parts, one Eaſt, and the other Weſt. *Derby*, the Shire-Town, is populous, and rich by its Trade. It conſiſts of five Pariſhes. The Steeple of one of its Churches is both very beautiful, and extraordinary high. The Hall, wherein the Aſſizes are kept, is a fair Building of Free-Stone. *Wirkſworth* is noted for its great Trade in Lead.

Derbyſhire. *Derby.* *Wirkſworth.*

Devonſhire is a Maritime County, 200 Miles in Circumference. It borders upon *Cornwall*, and is watered on two Sides with the Sea. The Air is very good, and the Soil for the moſt Part fruitful; but there are both Hills and Woods. This Country abounds chiefly in Corn, Paſture, Wooll, Wild-Fowl, and Sea-Fiſh. There are alſo Tin and Lead-Mines. Its chief Manufactures are Kerſeys, Serges, and Lace. The People of this Country are, with the *Corniſh* Men, accounted the ſtrongeſt in *England*. *Exeter*, the Capital, is ſo called from the River *Ex*, upon which it is ſituated, with a fair Stone-Bridge over it. It contains 15 Pariſhes, and is fortified with a good Wall and a Caſtle. *Plimouth* is one of the beſt and moſt famous Ports in *England*, ſeated on the Mouth of the *Plim*. 'Twas from this Town Sir *Francis Drake* ſet Sail in 1577, to ſail round the Terreſtrial Globe. *Dartmouth*, ſo called from the River *Dart*, on which it is ſituate, is a very good Port, defended by two Forts. It contains three Pariſhes. *Topſham* is the Port-Town for *Exeter*, about four Miles from it. *Biddiford* and *Barnſtable* are two Inland Ports, Northward: The firſt on the *Turridge*, and the laſt upon the *Taw*, which meet together three Miles from the Sea. Theſe two Towns drive a pretty Trade, and have fair Stone-Bridges, particularly *Biddiford*. Some Miles North of *Dartmouth* is *Torbay*, upon the Channel; the uſual Rendezvous of the Royal Navy, when ſailing near this Coaſt, and forced back by contrary Winds. The *Star-Point* is not far from it. *Lundy* Iſland lies 50 Miles from *Devonſhire*, North-Weſtward, and is much more remote from any other Continent. 'Tis but five Miles long, and two broad; but ſo ſurrounded with inacceſſible Rocks, that there is but one ſmall Entrance into it, where two Men can ſcarce go a-breaſt. What is moſt ſurprizing, is, that lying ſo far in the Sea, it has the Advantage of ſeveral Springs of freſh Water.

Devonſhire. *Exeter.* *Plimouth.* *Dartmouth.* *Topſham.* *Biddiford.* *Branſtable.* *Torbay.* *Lundy Iſland.*

Dorſetſhire is a Maritime County upon the Channel, Eaſt of *Devonſhire*, 150 Miles in Circumference. 'Tis a pleaſant and fruitful Country, yielding Plenty of Corn, Paſture, Cattle, Wild-Fowl, and Fiſh. It yields alſo abundance of Hemp, and Quarries of Free-Stone and Marble. *Dorcheſter*, the Capital, is pleaſantly ſeated on the *Frome*, 10 Miles from the Mouth of it. But it has been ſo ruined by the *Danes*, and next by the *Normans*, that it feels the Effect of it to this Day. *Weymouth*, between *Dorcheſter* Northward, and the Iſle of *Portland* Southward, is a good Port, at the Mouth of the River *Wey*. *Pool* is another Port, rich and well built, almoſt ſurrounded with an Arm of the Sea, ſo that there is but one Entrance into it on the Land's Side. Here the Tide ebbs and flows four Times in 24 Hours. *Lime*, on the Side of *Devonſhire*, is another Harbour, not much reſorted to, except by Fiſhermen. Here the Duke of *Monmouth* landed, coming from *Holland*, to oppoſe King *James* II. *Bridport*, Eaſt from *Lime*, was the only Place formerly for the twiſting of Ropes for the Royal Navy; and 'tis uſed ſtill for that Purpoſe, the neighbouring Lands yielding Plenty of Hemp. *Shaftesbury*, or *Shafton*, has a fair Proſpect, and was formerly a Place of Importance, when it had ten Pariſhes, now reduced into three. There are in it about 500 Houſes, all built of Stone. *Sherborn* is noted for the fine Structure of its Church. The Iſles of *Portland* and *Purbeck* belong to *Dorſetſhire*. *Portland*, ſome Miles South of *Dorcheſter*, is of no great Extent, but very fruitful, and of chief

Dorſetſhire. *Dorcheſter.* *Weymouth* *Pool.* *Lime.* *Bridport.* *Shaftesbury* *Sherborn.* *Iſles of Portland and Purbeck.*

Note for its Quarries of Free-Stone, almoſt as durable as Marble. There is in it a Caſtle, called *Portland* Caſtle, and on the Land-Side another, called *Sanford* Caſtle. Theſe two Caſtles command all the Ships that paſs into the Road, called the *Race of Portland*. *Purbeck*, Eaſt of *Portland*, is about ten Miles long, and ſix broad. Here is found the Marble, commonly called *Purbeck* Stone; and excellent Clay for making Tobacco-Pipes. In this Iſland is the Town of *Corf*, with a Caſtle upon a Hill.

Durham. *Durham* is a Maritime and a Northern County, commonly called the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, 107 Miles in Circumference. As it lies not far from *Scotland*, ſo the Air of it is cold. The Soil on the Eaſt Side is the beſt; the South full of Marſhes, and the Weſt full of Rocks. The greateſt Advantage this County has, conſiſts in its Coal, Iron, and Lead-Mines. This is a County Palatine, the Biſhop whereof had formerly a Right of Sovereignty, keeping his Courts of Juſtice, both Civil and Criminal: But moſt of thoſe Rights are returned to the Crown. The Biſhop, however, is ſtill Earl of *Sadberg* in this County, and takes Place next to the Biſhop of *London*. *Durham*, the Capital, ſtands upon ſeveral Hills, enjoys a pure Air, and has plenty of Proviſions. Here excellent Bread is made. Its greateſt Ornaments are the Caſtle, in which the Biſhop reſides, and the Cathedral near it, both on the Top of a Hill. *Aukland*, or *Biſhop's-Aukland*, on the *Ware*, as well as *Durham*, is pleaſantly ſituated, in a good Air, upon the Aſcent of a Hill. The Biſhop has here a ſtately Palace, and a fine Chapel. *Sunderland*, at the *Ware*'s Mouth, is ſurrounded with the Sea, at high Water: A Town noted for its Sea-Coal Trade. At the Mouth of the *Tine*, which parts *Durham* from *Northumberland*, is *Sheals*, the Station of the Sea-Coal Fleets. *Jarrow*, the Birth-Place of Venerable *Bede*, ſtands a little higher on the ſame River. And over-againſt *Newcaſtle* is *Gateſhead*, the Receptacle of the Coal-Pit Men in theſe Parts. Between theſe Towns there is a Stone-Bridge upon the River, with an Iron Gate in the Middle, ſerving as a Boundary between the Counties.

Durham. *Aukland.* *Sunderland* *Sheals.* *Jarrow* *Gateſhead.*

Eſſex *Eſſex* is a Maritime County in the Eaſt of *England*, 146 Miles in Circumference. Here the Air is temperate; but near the Sea and the *Thames* very moiſt, and the Inhabitants in thoſe Parts ſubject to Agues. The Soil yields Plenty of Corn, Cattle, and Wood. Here is alſo abundance of Fiſh, and Wild-Fowl. In the North Parts Saffron grows to Admiration. This County is water'd by a great Number of Rivers: Beſides the *Thames* that parts it from *Kent*, the *Stoure* from *Suffolk*, the *Lea* from *Middleſex*, and the little *Stoure* from *Hartfordſhire*; here are the *Coln*, *Chelmer*, *Crouch*, *Roding*, and many others, all yielding Plenty and Variety of Fiſh. *Colcheſter*, the Shire-Town, on the *Coln*, lies ſeven Miles from the Sea. This is a Town of great Antiquity, if the Tradition be true, that it was built by *Coilus*, a *Britiſh* Prince, who reigned in the ſecond Age. 'Tis alſo pretended to be the Birth-place of *Lucius*, the firſt Chriſtian King; of *Conſtantine the Great*, the firſt Chriſtian Emperor; and of *Helena*, the firſt Chriſtian Empreſs. The Town is large and populous, and drives a good Trade in Woollen Manufacture. Its large and excellent Oſters, ſo much in Requeſt among the antient *Romans*, are to this Day accounted the beſt in *England*. Its Walls and Caſtles ſhew it to be antient. This Town was very ſeverely uſed by the Parliament's Forces, in the Reign of King *Charles* the Firſt. *Harwich* is a Sea port Town, at the *Stoure*'s Mouth, upon the Borders of *Suffolk*. This is the Station of our Packet-Boats for *Holland*. Its Situation is very advantageous, being almoſt ſurrounded with the Sea; but the Harbour is not fit for great Ships. *Malden* ſtands upon the *Chelmer*, ten or twelve Miles from *Colcheſter*. *Claudius*, a *Roman* Emperor, took this Town, and made it a *Roman* Colony. At *Chelmsford* the Aſſizes are uſually kept. *Walden* is noted for the Plenty of Saffron that grows in its Neighbourhood. Upon the *Thames*, againſt *Graveſend* in *Kent*, is *Tilbury-Fort*, which commands the River there.

Colcheſter. *Harwich* *Malden.* *Chelmsford* *Walden* *Tilbury-Fort*

Glouceſterſhire, an Inland County, is a fine, fruitful, and delightful County. There are Hills on the Eaſt Side of it, called *Cotſwold*, which feed innumerable Flocks of Sheep, the Wooll whereof is very much eſteemed. The Middle Parts are level, and watered by the *Severn*, which contributes very much to their Fertility. Weſtward it is a woody Country; and there is *Dean-Foreſt*, which formerly was more ſtocked with Wood than at preſent, the Iron Mines having conſumed a good Part of it. Beſides the *Severn*, which croſſes this County from North to South, here is the *Avon* that parts it from *Somerſetſhire*, the *Wye* that partly divides it from *Monmouthſhire*; beſides the *Stroud* and the *Iſis*; all very filthy Rivers, and the *Severn* chiefly yields great Plenty of Salmon. Formerly the Vales of this County were full of Vineyards, which have been ſince converted into Orchards, yielding Plenty of Apples for Cyder. In ſhort, this County abounds chiefly in Corn, Wooll, Wood, Iron and Steel, Cyder and Salmon. Among its Manufactures, the Woollen is the moſt conſiderable. Here is alſo very good Cheeſe made. *Glouceſter*, the Capital, ſtands upon the *Severn*. 'Tis a moſt antient City, large and populous, containing twelve Pariſhes; fortified of old with a good Wall, and a Caſtle of Free-Stone, but ſince fallen to Ruin. The Cathedral is ſtately. *Cirenceſter* is ſeated upon the *Churn*, twelve Miles South-Eaſt of *Glouceſter*. In the Time of the *Romans* this was an important Place, but the *Saxons* and *Danes* defaced it. *Tewksbury* is ſituate at the Influx of the *Avon* into the *Severn*, and drives a conſiderable Trade with its Woollen Manufacture. *Stroud* is a goodly Town, upon the River of that Name, over which it has a Bridge, and on the Banks of it many Fulling-Mills for Scarlet, the *Stroud*-Water having a peculiar Quality to give the right Tincture.

Glouceſterſhire. *Glouceſter.* *Cirenceſter.* *Tewksbury* *Stroud.*

Hampſhire is a maritime County, upon the *Britiſh* Channel, one hundred Miles in Circuit. It is a pleaſant and fruitful Country, yielding Plenty both of Corn and Graſs, Wooll, Wood, and Iron; and particularly noted for the Excellency of its Honey and Bacon. On the Weſt Side it is watered by the *Avon* and the *Stour*, that meet together near the Sea; and on the Eaſt by the *Teſt*, and the *Itchin*. *Southampton*, the Shire-Town, is ſituate at the Mouth of the *Hampton*; that is, the *Teſt* and the *Itchin*, ſo called where they run in one Channel. The Haven is good, and has a fair Key to it, but its Trade very much decayed. It has now five Pariſhes. This is one of thoſe which are called County-Towns, and are independant from the Lord Lieutenant of the County. *Winchеſter* is a Biſhop's See, yielding the greateſt Revenue of any Biſhop in *England*, *viz.* about eight thouſand Pound a Year. It ſtands upon the Banks of the *Itchin*, in a Vale between two Hills. In the *Romans* Time, *Winchеſter* paſſed for one of the chief Cities of *Britain*; and in the Heptarchy was the Royal Seat of the Weſt *Saxons*. This City has now five Pariſhes, and is adorned with a fine Cathedral, dedicated to the Trinity. Here is alſo a fair Hall, wherein the Aſſizes and Seſſions are kept, and

Hampſhire *Southampton.* *Winchеſter*

King

King *Arthur*'s round Table hangs up: A noble College, with a publick School for seventy Scholars, taught here and maintained *gratis*, from whence they are elected to *New-College* in *Oxford*. *Portsmouth* is one of the most famous Ports of the Island, and a Place of great Strength. It stands in the Isle of *Portsey*, which is fourteen Miles about. Though its Air be unhealthful, and fresh Water scarce, this Town is very populous, a Place of good Trade, and a Nursery of Seamen; and *Spithead*, in its Neighbourhood, is the general Rendezvous of the Royal Fleet, sailing Westward or returning Eastward. Here is a Dock for building Men of War, and Storehouses to fit them out.

The Isle of *Wight* makes Part of *Hampshire*, and lies South-West of *Portsmouth*, being sixty Miles about, and containing thirty-six Parishes. 'Tis both a very delightful, and fruitful Isle. It abounds in Corn and Pasture, wild Fowl, Fish, Hares, and Rabbits; and its Wooll is counted almost as fine as that of *Lempster* in *Herefordshire*. There are two Market-Towns in it, both privileged to send Members to Parliament, *viz.* *Newport* and *Yarmouth*. *Newport* is a pretty large Town, and well peopled. *Yarmouth* is built of Free-Stone. Here is a Castle, and other Pieces of Fortification. At the Entrance of *Newport* Haven lies *Cowes*, a noted Place for harbouring of Ships. West of *Newport* there is another Castle, called *Carisbrook Castle*. South-East from this Island is *Sandham*, also fortified with a Castle. Between *Portsmouth* and this Isle is *Spithead*, and two Leagues from thence *St. Helen*.

Hartfordshire is an Inland County, one hundred and thirty Miles in Circumference; a fine and delightful County, bordering upon *Middlesex*. Here the Inhabitants breathe a wholsome Air, and the Soil yields Plenty of Corn, Grass, and Wood. The *Lea* and *Coln* are its principal Rivers; Wheat, Barley, and Malt, its chief Commodities. *Hartford*, the Chief upon the *Lea*, is a very antient but decayed Town, since the Highway was turned thro' *Ware*. There is a Castle in it, and three Parishes. *St. Albans*, on the *Ver*, was raised out of the Ruins of *Verulamium*. It derived its Name from St. *Alban*, a Citizen of *Verulam*, the Protomartyr of *Britain*. 'Twas near this Town that *Richard* Duke of *York* routed *Henry* VI. and took him Prisoner. *Barnet* is noted both for its Mineral Waters, and the Victory gained here by the House of *York*, over that of *Lancaster*; *Berkhamsted*, for its antient Castle, in which the Duke of *Cornwall* did formerly reside; *Hitchin* for its School; and *Ware*, upon the *Lea*, for its artificial River, supplying a good Part of *London* with fresh Water, though at twenty Miles Distance. *Hatfield* and *Hodsdon* are also seated on the *Lea*: The first in a most pleasant Situation, near *Hatfield-House*, once a Royal Palace. *Royston* stands partly in this County, and partly in that of *Cambridge*. The Inhabitants of this Place carry on a great Trade in Malt.

Herefordshire is an Inland County, towards *Wales*, one hundred Miles in Circumference. It abounds in all Things necessary for Life, particularly Corn, Wooll, Salmon, and Cyder. Its Wooll and Cyder are counted the best in *Great-Britain*. *Hereford*, the Shire Town, stands upon the *Wye*, in a very fruitful Soil. It had formerly a Castle, built by the *Normans*, but since fallen to Ruin. *Lempster* is noted for the Goodness of its Bread and Wooll.

Huntingtonshire, is an Inland County, sixty-seven Miles in Circuit, called by some *Wilhuntshire*. It was formerly a very woody Country, and consequently proper for Hunting, whence the Name. Now it is open, mostly on the North-East Side, but plentiful of Pasture. In general, it is a pleasant Country, diversified with Hills, and yielding Plenty both of Corn and Cattle. Amongst its Rivers, the *Ouse* is the principal. *Huntington*, the Capital, upon the *Ouse*, is a pleasant Town, which formerly consisted of fifteen Parishes, now reduced to four. Over the River it has a Stone Bridge, leading to *Godmanchester*, on the other Side of the River. Here is a good Publick School. *St. Ives* and *St. Neots* are noted for their Medicinal Waters. *Ramsey* was famous of old for its rich Abbey.

Kent is a maritime County, at the East Part of the Channel, one hundred and sixty Miles in Circumference. According to the different Nature of the Soil, it is divided into the Downs, which have Health without Wealth; the marshy Parts, that have Wealth without Health; and the Middle, that has Health and Wealth. One Part of this County is woody, another plentiful of Corn, and the third of Pasture. Its Soil yields Plenty of Wheat in some Places, in some Barley, and in others excellent Cherries and Pippins. Besides the *Thames* that parts it from *Essex*, here is the *Medway*, the *Stoure*, and other Rivers. The *Medway* Salmon is excellent, and the Trouts of *Fordwich* are of a prodigious Size. In the Time of the Heptarchy, this County alone made one of the seven Kingdoms. When the *Normans* invaded *England*, *William the Conqueror* confirmed the antient Privileges of the *Kentish* Men, called *Gavelkind*; by which the Heir Males share all the Lands alike, and though the Father be convicted of Treason, yet the Sons enjoy his Inheritance. *Canterbury*, the Capital, upon the *Stour*, is a very antient, and has been a fair and flourishing City; the Beauty and Glory whereof is decayed much. The Cathedral Church is very fine, in which eight Kings of *Kent* lie interred, and *Becket's* Tomb is to be seen. It has the Honour of being the See of the Primate of *England*, as *London* was in the Time of the Christian *Britons*. The Archbishops had a Palace here, which having been ruined, they now reside at *Lambeth-House* on the *Thames*, over-against *Westminster*. *Canterbury* consists of about fourteen Parishes. Here is a Royal School, and several Hospitals. And the City is partly inhabited by *Walloons*, an industrious People. *Rochester*, on the *Medway*, is also an antient City, and an Episcopal See, whose Revenue is but small; and therefore the *Deanry* of *Westminster* is annexed to it. Here is one of the fairest Bridges in *England*. *Maidstone*, on the *Medway*, is one of the best Towns in *Kent*, in which the Assizes are held. *Dover* is a Sea-port Town, over-against *Calais* in *France*, from which it is but seven Leagues distant. This is the Station of the Packet-Boats that are appointed for *France*, which makes *Dover* a great Thorough fare. There is a Mole that has been long repairing; and on the Top of a high and steep Rock stands *Dover-Castle*, commanding this Road, and supposed to have been built by the *Romans*. *Dover* is one of the *Cinque-Ports*, which enjoy great Privileges. *Sandwich* is also one of the *Cinque-Ports*, and was a famous Town in the Time of the *Romans*. In the Reign of Queen *Mary*, the Mouth of its Haven was so choaked up by a Ship of great Burden which sunk in it, that it proved incurable. *Rumney* is also one the *Cinque-Ports*. In *Rumney-Marsh*, as in other Parts of *England*, there are found great Timber Trees lying under Ground, as black as Ebony. *Gravesend*, upon the *Thames*, is a great Thorough fare betwixt *London* and *Dover*. *Tunbridge* is noted for its Mineral Waters, which Place is much resorted unto, in the Summer, by Persons of Quality, and others: *Bromley*, for

Hunting-ton. *St. Ives* *St. Neots.* *Kent.* *Canter-bury* *Rochester.* *Maidstone.* *Dover.* *Sandwich* *Rumney* *Gravesend* *Tunbridge*

for its College, or Hoſpital, for the Maintenance of twenty poor Miniſters Widows: *Woolwich*, upon the *Thames* for its Royal Docks: *Wye*, and *Sevenoke*, for their Grammar-Schoools; this laſt alſo for its Hoſpital. *Chatham*, on the *Medway*, adjoining to *Rocheſter*, hath ſeveral Docks and Store-houſes for Ships of War, and where the biggeſt of them are laid up in Winter. *Deptford*, upon the *Thames*, hath alſo ſeveral Docks, and Store-houſes for the Royal Navy. *Greenwich*, alſo on the *Thames*, is a very delightful Place. Here is an old Royal Houſe, with a fine Park belonging to it. But nothing ſets off this Place with greater Advantage, than the ſtately Hoſpital, built there by the late King *William* and Queen *Mary*, for diſabled Seamen. *Deal*, in the *Downs*, is much reſorted unto by Mariners, and fortified with a Caſtle. *Sheerneſs*, a ſtrong Fortreſs, is ſituate at the Influx of the *Medway* into the *Thames*, and commanding all Ships that go in and out. The Iſles of *Thanet* and *Sheepey* belong to this County, and are much of the ſame Extent; that is, eight Miles in Length, and ſix or ſeven in Breadth. *Thanet* is plentiful both of Corn and Paſture. This is the Place in which the *Saxons* ſet their firſt Footing in *Britain*. *Sheepey* ſeems to be ſo called from the Word *Sheep*, this Iſland feeding a vaſt Multitude of them. *Queenborough*, its chief Place, is privileged to ſend two Members to Parliament.

Woolwich. *Chatham.* *Deptford.* *Greenwich* *Deal* *Sheerneſs.* *Iſles of Thanet and Sheepey.* *Queenborough*

Lancaſhire is a maritime County, one hundred and ſeventy Miles in Circumference; of all maritime Counties the leaſt ſubject to Fogs, and the Inhabitants generally ſtrong-bodied. The Soil is partly upon the Level, yielding Plenty of Wheat and Barley, and the Bottom of the Hills excellent Oats. But the hilly Parts Eaſtward are generally ſtony and barren. In the flat Country there are Marſhes, that yield very good Turfs for Fewel. And there are found ſometimes whole Trees growing under Ground. The *Merſey*, *Ribble*, and *Lon*, are its principal Rivers, all emptying themſelves into the *Iriſh* Sea: The firſt parts this County from *Cheſhire* on the South, the *Ribble* waters the middle Parts of it, and the *Lon* its Northern Parts. This County has alſo ſeveral Meers in it, of which *Minander* and *Merton* are the principal. The firſt is about ten Miles long, and four broad, the biggeſt Standing Water in *England*. It breeds Abundance of Trouts, Pikes, and Perches: And particularly a Fiſh call'd Charr, not to be found elſewhere, except in *Ulles Water*. How barren ſoever ſome Parts of this County be, it abounds in wild Fowl and Fiſh; and the *Lancaſhire* Oxen are of a prodigious Bigneſs. For Fewel, it yields both Turfs and Pit-Coal. For Building, here are ſeveral Quarries: And Flax thrives here to Admiration. Of all the Counties in *England*, none has ſo many *Roman* Catholicks. *Lancaſter*, the chief Town, is ſo call'd from the River *Lon*, on which it is ſituate, and over which there is a Stone Bridge, with five Arches. Upon a Hill, near the River, ſtands a ſmall Caſtle, which is now the County Goal, and wherein are held the Aſſizes. The Town has only one Pariſh; but the Church is fair and ſpacious. *Manchеſter* does much excel *Lancaſter*, it being a rich and populous Place, ſeated upon the *Spelden*, in the Borders of *Cheſhire*. Here is a very fair College, and Market-Place. But its Collegiate Church, with a Chair of excellent Workmanſhip, are the greateſt Ornaments of this Town; which thrives very much by its Manufacture of Woollen, Cottons, and Linnen. *Liverpool* is a Seaport-Town, at the *Merſey's-Mouth*, and a Place of good Trade. On the South Side it is fortified with a Caſtle, and on the Weſt with a ſtrong Tower upon the River. *Preſton*, upon the *Ribble*, is one of the principal Town, both for Extent and Beauty. Therefore it is honoured with the Court of *Chancery*, and the Offices of Juſtice for *Lancaſter*, as a County Palatine. *Warrington*, upon the *Merſey*, is a goodly Town, with a fair Stone Bridge over the River, leading to *Cheſhire*. *Ribcheſter*, not far from *Preſton*, ſuppoſed to be the *Bretenomacum* of the Antients, in its flouriſhing Time, was ſaid to be the richeſt Town in *Chriſtendom*.

Lancaſter. *Manchеſter* *Liverpool* *Preſton* *Warrington.* *Ribcheſter*

Leiceſterſhire, an Inland County, is ninety-ſix Miles in Circuit; enjoys a good Air, and abounds in Corn and Paſture. Peaſe and Beans particularly thrive here to Admiration. It yields alſo Plenty of Sea Coals, and the Wooll of its Sheep is the largeſt in *England*. Its principal Rivers are the *Stoure*, *Reek*, and *Swift*. *Leiceſter*, the Shire-Town, upon the *Stoure*, is pleaſantly ſeated, and adorned with ſeveral fair Buildings. It conſiſts of five Pariſhes. It has been formerly a large, rich, and populous Town; had a Collegiate Church, an Abbey, and a Caſtle: But it was diſmantled by *Henry* the Second. *Abby de la Zouch* is noted for its fine Tower. And *Boſworth* for *Redmore* Battle, fought near it, between *Richard* the Third of the Houſe of *York*, and his Succeſſor *Henry* the Seventh of the Houſe of *Lancaſter*. And *Lutterworth*, for *Wickliff*, Parſon of this Place, who in the fourteenth Century preached againſt the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*.

Leiceſterſhire *Leiceſter* *Abby de la Zouch* *Lutterworth*

Lincolnſhire, a maritime County, is one hundred and eighty Miles in Circuit. The North and Weſt Parts of it are moſt fruitful, but the Eaſt and South marſhy, yet abound in Fiſh and wild Fowl. The *Humber*, that parts it from *Yorkſhire*, and the *Trent* from *Nottinghamſhire*, are its principal Rivers. Beſides which, the *Witham*, *Nen*, and *Weland*, water the Inland Parts. This County is divided into three Parts; *Lindſey* takes up the North, and almoſt half the County; *Holland* lies South-Eaſt, and *Keſteven* Weſt from it. *Lincoln*, the Capital, on the *Witham*, ſtands upon the Aſcent of a Hill. This was a large, populous, and rich City, in *William the Conqueror*'s Time, who built a Caſtle in it; and *Remigius* Biſhop of *Dorcheſter*, removing his See thither, built the Cathedral, one of the fineſt Fabricks in *Chriſtendom*. Though this City has ſuffered much by the Wars, it is to this Day of a conſiderable Extent. *Boſton*, near the *Witham*'s Mouth, is a very good Port. There is a Tower looked upon as the fineſt in *England*. *Grantham*, upon the ſame River, is a good Town, and a great Thorough-fare to ſuch as travel to the North. The Steeple of its Church is ſo high, that it ſeems to ſtand awry. *Bolingbroke*, an Honour of the Crown, was the Birth-place of *Henry* the Fourth. *Gainſborough*, upon the *Trent*, is one of the chief Towns of this County. *Stamford*, ſtands upon the *Weland*, and borders upon *Lincolnſhire*, *Rutland*, and *Northamptonſhire*. It has ſeveral Bridges over the River, and moſt of its Buildings are of Stone. It contains ſix Pariſhes. *Grimsby* and *Kirton*, are of Note for their fair Churches. Here is alſo *Axholm*, an Iſle made by ſeveral Rivers, about ten Miles long, and four broad; yields Alabaſter, and a ſweet Shrub, called Gall.

Lincolnſhire *Lincoln.* *Boſton.* *Grantham* *Bolingbroke.* *Gainſborough* *Stamford* *Grimsby* *Kirton* *Axholm*

Middleſex, an Inland County, is eighty one Miles in Circumference. It has a ſweet and wholſome Air, and fertile Soil, much improved by the Compoſt of *London*. The *Thames*, that ſeparates it from *Surrey*, is its principal River. *London*, the Metropolis, not only of this County, but the whole Kingdom, we ſhall deſcribe by itſelf. Other Towns are, *Brentford* upon the *Thames*, *Staines* alſo upon the *Thames*, and *Uxbridge* on the *Colne*. There are about *London*, both in this County and *Surrey*, many pleaſant Towns and Villages, and in them fair Country-Houſes. In this County, particularly, there is *Iſlington*, *Highgate*, *Hampſtead*,

Middleſex *Brentford* *Staines* *Uxbridge*

Hampſted, *Kentiſh-Town*, *Chelſea*, *Kenſington*, *Fulham*, *Hammerſmith*, *Thiſtleworth*, &c. And the Palaces of *St. James's*, *Kenſington*, and *Hampton-Court*.

Monmouthſhire, formerly counted Part of *Wales*, and now reckoned among the Counties of *England*, lies on the Borders of *Wales*, watered on the South Side by the *Severn*, which falls there into the Sea. It is eighty Miles in Circuit. Here the People ſpeak both *Engliſh* and *Welch*. As woody and hilly as this County is, it is nevertheleſs very plentiful; to which the Rivers *Uſk* and *Wye*, *Monnow*, and *Rumney*, contribute very much. *Monmouth*, the Shire-Town, is pleaſantly ſeated between the *Wye* and *Monnow*, with a Bridge over each River. It was formerly fortified with a ſtately Caſtle, which is fallen to Ruin; but Part of the Wall, and three Gates, are ſtanding. *Abergavenny*, ſo called from the River *Gavenny*, on which it is ſituate, is alſo a goodly Town, well built, and which drives a great Trade in Flannel. It is encompaſſed with a Wall, and fortified with a Caſtle. *Caerleon* ſtands upon the *Uſk*, and was of old a Place of Importance. In the Time of the *Britons*, this was a Kind of Univerſity, and the See of an Archbiſhop, afterwards moved to *St. David's*. *Chepſtow*, ſeated on the *Wye*, over which it has a fair Bridge, was formerly walled about, and defended by a great Caſtle. To this Day, it is one of the beſt Towns of this County.

Norfolk, a maritime County, is one hundred and forty Miles in Circumference. Its Soil is in ſome Places fat, in ſome ſandy, and in others heavy. Towards the Sea it is level, and yields Plenty of Corn. In other Parts you will find Woods and Heaths. Thoſe feed Abundance of Cattle, and theſe infinite Numbers of Sheep and Conies. Its principal Rivers are the *Ouſe*, *Waveney*, *Yare*, and *Thryn*: Its Commodities, Corn, Wooll, Honey, and Saffron; the beſt Saffron growing near *Walſingham*: Its Manufactures, Stuffs and Stockings. The neighbouring Sea ſwarms with Herrings. Jet and Amber are ſometimes found upon the Coaſt. The Inhabitants are accounted a litigious People, and it is ſaid they have among them no leſs than fifteen hundred Attorneys. *Norwich*, the Capital, ſtands in the Middle of the County, where the *Windſor* falls into the *Yare*. In the Time of the *Saxons*, *Norwich* was the principal Seat of the *Eaſt Angles*. The Rebellion raiſed by *Kett*, a Tanner of *Windham*, brought this Town to Ruin: But it was happily reſtored by Queen *Elizabeth*, who ſent hither Part of the *Flemings* that came over for Shelter from Perſecution. Theſe *Flemings* ſettled here the Manufacture of Stuffs; and thus this City became flouriſhing. In ſhort, it is now one of the largeſt and faireſt Cities of *England*. Its principal Buildings are the Cathedral, the Duke of *Norfolk*'s Houſe, the Biſhop's Palace, and the Hoſpital. *Houghton* is noted for the Seat of Sir *Robert Walpole*. *Lyn*, or *Lyn Regis*, is a Sea Port, at the Mouth of the *Ouſe*; large, rich, and well inhabited; fortified with a large Ditch, and two Forts. *Yarmouth* is the beſt Haven in this County, ſeated at the *Yare*'s Mouth. 'Tis called *Great Yarmouth*, in Oppoſition to *Yarmouth* in the *Iſle of Wight*. The Herring Fiſhing in *September* makes this Town flouriſhing. 'Tis pretty large, well built, and fortified both by Nature and Art. But there is but one Church, noted for its lofty Spire. *Thetford*, a moſt antient Town, ſtands upon the leſſer *Ouſe*, which ſeparates *Norfolk* from *Suffolk*. The Epiſcopal See of the *Eaſt Angles* was removed from hence to *Norwich*. *Thetford* was a Loſer by this Change. But to make it ſome Amends, the *Lent* Aſſizes are uſually held here. *Caſſhorſing* is an antient, but decayed Town, near the Sea. *Walſingham*, in the Northern Parts, was a famous Place in the Times of Popery; ſuch was the Concourſe of People to it from all Parts, to worſhip the Bleſſed Virgin, hence called, *Our Lady of Walſingham*.

Northamptonſhire, an Inland County, one hundred and twenty Miles in Circuit, is one of the beſt Counties in *England*, has a healthful Air, a rich fruitful Soil, Abundance of Inhabitants, and more Noblemen's Seats than any other County. It abounds in Corn and Cattle, Wood, and Saltpetre. Its principal Rivers are the *Ouſe*, the *Welland*, and the *Nen*, all riſing in this County. *Northampton*, the Shire-Town, upon the *Nen*, is one of the prettieſt Towns in *England*. In 1675 it had the Misfortune to be reduced to Aſhes; but by a general Contribution, it was ſoon after raiſed up again much finer, and more uniform than before. *Peterborough*, upon the *Nen*, is one of the ſix Biſhopricks erected by *Henry* the Eighth, after the Diſſolution of the Monaſteries. *Brackley*, *Higham-Ferrers*, *Oundle*, and *Wellinborough*, are of Note for their Grammar-Schools. *Oundle*, upon the *Nen*, is of ſome Note beſide for its fair Church, but chiefly for its *Drumming-Wells*. *Toxeceter* was formerly a Place of ſuch Strength, as to baffle the *Danes*. Beſides theſe Towns, we may take notice of *Fotheringhay Caſtle*, in which *Mary* Queen of *Scots* was beheaded: Of *Naſeby*, in the Neighbourhood of which was fought the famous Battle, in which King *Charles* the Firſt loſt the Day; and of the Caſtle of *Holdenby*, where the King was kept Priſoner ſome Months.

Northumberland, a maritime County, is one hundred and forty-three Miles in Circumference. 'Tis none of the moſt fruitful, but there are ſome Parts of it very good, eſpecially towards the Sea Side. Here are ſeveral Lead and Coal Mines. Wild Fowl and Fiſh abound in this County. *Newcaſtle upon the Tine*, the Capital, is built upon the Aſcent of a Hill, with a Key by the River Side, for the Conveniency of Ships. 'Tis a large, populous, rich, trading Town. The Houſes are for the moſt Part built of Stone, and moſt of the Streets very ſteep. The Town-Houſe is not far from a Stone Bridge over the River, with an Iron Gate in the Middle, parting this County from *Durham*. This is a Place of great Trade for Sea Coals, which Commodity is fetched thence for *London* eſpecially. It conſiſts of four large Pariſhes. This Town was formerly fortified with a great Caſtle, the Walls of which are yet ſtanding. It enjoys great Privileges, being one of thoſe called County Towns, or Counties Corporate. *Berwick upon the Tweed* is a Frontier Town, which formerly belonged to *Scotland*. It is ſituate on an Eminence that ſhoots forth into the Sea, and watered Southward by the River, which makes it a Peninſula. The Town is large, well inhabited, and fortified. Heretofore this Town had often changed Maſters, ſometimes falling to the Share of the *Engliſh*, and ſometimes to that of the *Scots*, till the Reign of *Edward* the Fourth, when Sir *Thomas Stanley* retook it the laſt Time from the latter. It is a County Town, independant of the Lord Lieutenant of the County. *Morpeth* is a good Town, ſeated on the *Wensbeck*. *Hexham* was formerly a Biſhop's See. Its Cathedral was ſtately, before it came to be partly ruined by the *Scots*. Near the Coaſt of this County there are three Iſles, the principal of which is called *Holy-Iſland*, and the two others, *Cocket* and *Farn*. *Holy-Iſland* is not far from *Berwick*, and took its Name as a retiring Place for Biſhops, Monks, and others, who being weaned from the World, made this their Sanctuary. It is but a ſmall Iſland, the Air of which is not wholſome, nor the Soil fruitful. It is there

for its College, or Hoſpital, for the Maintenance of twenty poor Miniſters Widows: *Woolwich*, upon the *Thames* for its Royal Docks: *Wye*, and *Sevenoke*, for their Grammar-Schoools; this laſt alſo for its Hoſpital. *Chatham*, on the *Medway*, adjoining to *Rocheſter*, hath ſeveral Docks and Store-houſes for Ships of War, and where the biggeſt of them are laid up in Winter. *Deptford*, upon the *Thames*, hath alſo ſeveral Docks, and Store-houſes for the Royal Navy. *Greenwich*, alſo on the *Thames*, is a very delightful Place. Here is an old Royal Houſe, with a fine Park belonging to it. But nothing ſets off this Place with greater Advantage, than the ſtately Hoſpital, built there by the late King *William* and Queen *Mary*, for diſabled Seamen. *Deal*, in the *Downs*, is much reſorted unto by Mariners, and fortified with a Caſtle. *Sheerneſs*, a ſtrong Fortreſs, is ſituate at the Influx of the *Medway* into the *Thames*, and commanding all Ships that go in and out. The Iſles of *Thanet* and *Sheepey* belong to this County, and are much of the ſame Extent; that is, eight Miles in Length, and ſix or ſeven in Breadth. *Thanet* is plentiful both of Corn and Paſture. This is the Place in which the *Saxons* ſet their firſt Footing in *Britain*. *Sheepey* ſeems to be ſo called from the Word *Sheep*, this Iſland feeding a vaſt Multitude of them. *Queenborough*, its chief Place, is privileged to ſend two Members to Parliament.

Woolwich. *Chatham*. *Deptford*. *Greenwich*. *Deal*. *Sheerneſs*. *Iſles of Thanet and Sheepey*. *Queenborough*.

Lancaſhire is a maritime County, one hundred and ſeventy Miles in Circumference; of all maritime Counties the leaſt ſubject to Fogs, and the Inhabitants generally ſtrong-bodied. The Soil is partly upon the Level, yielding Plenty of Wheat and Barley, and the Bottom of the Hills excellent Oats. But the hilly Parts Eaſtward are generally ſtony and barren. In the flat Country there are Marſhes, that yield very good Turfs for Fewel. And there are found ſometimes whole Trees growing under Ground. The *Merſey*, *Ribble*, and *Lon*, are its principal Rivers, all emptying themſelves into the *Iriſh* Sea: The firſt parts this County from *Cheſhire* on the South, the *Ribble* waters the middle Parts of it, and the *Lon* its Northern Parts. This County has alſo ſeveral Meers in it, of which *Minander* and *Merton* are the principal. The firſt is about ten Miles long, and four broad, the biggeſt Standing Water in *England*. It breeds Abundance of Trouts, Pikes, and Perches: And particularly a Fiſh call'd Charr, not to be found elſewhere, except in *Ulles Water*. How barren ſoever ſome Parts of this County be, it abounds in wild Fowl and Fiſh; and the *Lancaſhire* Oxen are of a prodigious Bigneſs. For Fewel, it yields both Turfs and Pit-Coal. For Building, here are ſeveral Quarries: And Flax thrives here to Admiration. Of all the Counties in *England*, none has ſo many *Roman* Catholicks. *Lancaſter*, the chief Town, is ſo call'd from the River *Lon*, on which it is ſituate, and over which there is a Stone Bridge, with five Arches. Upon a Hill, near the River, ſtands a ſmall Caſtle, which is now the County Goal, and wherein are held the Aſſizes. The Town has only one Pariſh; but the Church is fair and ſpacious. *Manchester* does much excel *Lancaſter*, it being a rich and populous Place, ſeated upon the *Spelden*, in the Borders of *Cheſhire*. Here is a very fair College, and Market-Place. But its Collegiate Church, with a Chair of excellent Workmanſhip, are the greateſt Ornaments of this Town; which thrives very much by its Manufacture of Woollen, Cottons, and Linnen. *Liverpool* is a Seaport-Town, at the *Merſey's-Mouth*, and a Place of good Trade. On the South Side it is fortified with a Caſtle, and on the Weſt with a ſtrong Tower upon the River. *Preſton*, upon the *Ribble*, is one of the principal Town, both for Extent and Beauty. Therefore it is honoured with the Court of *Chancery*, and the Offices of Juſtice for *Lancaſter*, as a County Palatine. *Warrington*, upon the *Merſey*, is a goodly Town, with a fair Stone Bridge over the River, leading to *Cheſhire*. *Ribchester*, not far from *Preſton*, ſuppoſed to be the *Bretenomacum* of the Antients, in its flouriſhing Time, was ſaid to be the richeſt Town in *Chriſtendom*.

Lancaſhire. *Lancaſter*. *Manchester*. *Liverpool*. *Preſton*. *Warrington*. *Ribchester*.

Leiceſterſhire, an Inland County, is ninety-ſix Miles in Circuit; enjoys a good Air, and abounds in Corn and Paſture. Peaſe and Beans particularly thrive here to Admiration. It yields alſo Plenty of Sea Coals, and the Wooll of its Sheep is the largeſt in *England*. Its principal Rivers are the *Stoure*, *Reek*, and *Swift*. *Leiceſter*, the Shire-Town, upon the *Stoure*, is pleaſantly ſeated, and adorned with ſeveral fair Buildings. It conſiſts of five Pariſhes. It has been formerly a large, rich, and populous Town; had a Collegiate Church, an Abbey, and a Caſtle: But it was diſmantled by *Henry* the Second. *Ashby de la Zouch* is noted for its fine Tower. And *Boſworth* for *Redmore* Battle, fought near it, between *Richard* the Third of the Houſe of *York*, and his Succeſſor *Henry* the Seventh of the Houſe of *Lancaſter*. And *Lutterworth*, for *Wickliff*, Parſon of this Place, who in the fourteenth Century preached againſt the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*.

Leiceſterſhire. *Leiceſter*. *Ashby, Zouch*. *Boſworth*. *Lutterworth*.

Lincolnſhire, a maritime County, is one hundred and eighty Miles in Circuit. The North and Weſt Parts of it are moſt fruitful, but the Eaſt and South marſhy, yet abound in Fiſh and wild Fowl. The *Humber*, that parts it from *Yorkſhire*, and the *Trent* from *Nottinghamſhire*, are its principal Rivers. Beſides which, the *Witham*, *Nen*, and *Weland*, water the Inland Parts. This County is divided into three Parts; *Lindſey* takes up the North, and almoſt half the County; *Holland* lies South-Eaſt, and *Keſteven* Weſt from it. *Lincoln*, the Capital, on the *Witham*, ſtands upon the Aſcent of a Hill. This was a large, populous, and rich City, in *William the Conqueror's* Time, who built a Caſtle in it; and *Remigius* Biſhop of *Dorcheſter*, removing his See thither, built the Cathedral, one of the fineſt Fabricks in *Chriſtendom*. Though this City has ſuffered much by the Wars, it is to this Day of a conſiderable Extent. *Boſton*, near the *Witham*'s Mouth, is a very good Port. There is a Tower looked upon as the fineſt in *England*. *Grantham*, upon the ſame River, is a good Town, and a great Thorough-fare to ſuch as travel to the North. The Steeple of its Church is ſo high, that it ſeems to ſtand awry. *Bolingbroke*, an Honour of the Crown, was the Birth-place of *Henry* the Fourth. *Gainſborough*, upon the *Trent*, is one of the chief Towns of this County. *Stamford*, ſtands upon the *Weland*, and borders upon *Lincolnſhire*, *Rutland*, and *Northamptonſhire*. It has ſeveral Bridges over the River, and moſt of its Buildings are of Stone. It contains ſix Pariſhes. *Grimsby* and *Kirton*, are of Note for their fair Churches. Here is alſo *Axholm*, an Iſle made by ſeveral Rivers, about ten Miles long, and four broad; yields Alabaſter, and a ſweet Shrub, called Gall.

Lincolnſhire. *Lincoln*. *Boſton*. *Grantham*. *Bolingbroke*. *Gainſborough*. *Stamford*. *Grimsby*. *Kirton*. *Axholm*.

Middleſex, an Inland County, is eighty one Miles in Circumference. It has a ſweet and wholſome Air, and fertile Soil, much improved by the Compoſt of *London*. The *Thames*, that ſeparates it from *Surrey*, is its principal River. *London*, the Metropolis, not only of this County, but the whole Kingdom, we ſhall deſcribe by itſelf. Other Towns are, *Brentford* upon the *Thames*, *Staines* alſo upon the *Thames*, and *Uxbridge* on the *Colne*. There are about *London*, both in this County and *Surrey*, many pleaſant Towns and Villages, and in them fair Country-Houſes. In this County, particularly, there is *Iſlington*, *Highgate*, *Hampſtead*,

Middleſex. *Brentford*. *Staines*. *Uxbridge*.

Hampſted, *Kentiſh-Town*, *Chelſea*, *Kenſington*, *Fulham*, *Hammerſmith*, *Thiſtleworth*, &c. And the Palaces of *St. James's*, *Kenſington*, and *Hampton-Court*.

Wen and Glam. *Monmouthſhire*, formerly counted Part of *Wales*, and now reckoned among the Counties of *England*, lies on the Borders of *Wales*, watered on the South Side by the *Severn*, which falls there into the Sea. It is eighty Miles in Circuit. Here the People ſpeak both *Engliſh* and *Welch*. As woody and hilly as this County is, it is nevertheleſs very plentiful; to which the Rivers *Uſk* and *Wye*, *Monnow*, and *Rumney*, contribute very much. *Monmouth*, the Shire-Town, is pleaſantly ſeated between the *Wye* and *Monnow*, with a Bridge over each River. It was formerly fortified with a ſtately Caſtle, which is fallen to Ruin; but Part of the Wall, and three Gates, are ſtanding. *Caerleogarvenny*, ſo called from the River *Garvenny*, on which it is ſituate, is alſo a goodly Town, well built, and which drives a great Trade in Flannel. It is encompaſſed with a Wall, and fortified with a Caſtle. *Caerleon* ſtands upon the *Uſk*, and was of old a Place of Importance. In the Time of the *Britons*, this was a Kind of Univerſity, and the See of an Archbiſhop, afterwards moved to *St. David's*. *Chepſtow*, ſeated on the *Wye*, over which it has a fair Bridge, was formerly walled about, and defended by a great Caſtle. To this Day, it is one of the beſt Towns of this County.

Norfolk, a maritime County, is one hundred and forty Miles in Circumference. Its Soil is in ſome Places fat, in ſome ſandy, and in others heavy. Towards the Sea it is level, and yields Plenty of Corn. In other Parts you will find Woods and Heaths. Thoſe feed Abundance of Cattle, and theſe infinite Numbers of Sheep and Conies. Its principal Rivers are the *Ouſe*, *Waveney*, *Yare*, and *Thryn*: Its Commodities, Corn, Wool, Honey, and Saffron; the beſt Saffron growing near *Walſingham*: Its Manufactures, Stuffs and Stockings. The neighbouring Sea ſwarms with Herrings. Jet and Amber are ſometimes found upon the Coaſt. The Inhabitants are accounted a litigious People, and it is ſaid they have among them no leſs than fifteen hundred Attorneys. *Norwich*, the Capital, ſtands in the Middle of the County, where the *Windſor* falls into the *Yare*. In the Time of the *Saxons*, *Norwich* was the principal Seat of the *Eaſt Angles*. The Rebellion raiſed by *Kett*, a Tanner of *Wimdham*, brought this Town to Ruin: But it was happily reſtored by Queen *Elizabeth*, who ſent hither Part of the *Flemings* that came over for a Shelter from Perſecution. Theſe *Flemings* ſettled here the Manufacture of Stuffs; and thus this City became flouriſhing. In ſhort, it is now one of the largeſt and faireſt Cities of *England*. Its principal Buildings are the Cathedral, the Duke of *Norfolk*'s Houſe, the Biſhop's Palace, and the Hoſpital. *Houghton* is noted for the Seat of Sir *Robert Walpole*. *Lyn*, or *Lyn Regis*, is a Sea Port, at the Mouth of the *Ouſe*; large, rich, and well inhabited; fortified with a large Ditch, and two Forts. *Yarmouth* is the beſt Haven in this County, ſeated at the *Yare*'s Mouth. 'Tis called *Great Yarmouth*, in Oppoſition to *Yarmouth* in the *Iſle of Wight*. The Herring Fiſhing in *September* makes this Town flouriſhing. 'Tis pretty large, well built, and fortified both by Nature and Art. But there is but one Church, noted for its lofty Spire. *Thetford*, a moſt antient Town, ſtands upon the leſſer *Ouſe*, which ſeparates *Norfolk* from *Suffolk*. The Epiſcopal See of the *Eaſt Angles* was removed from hence to *Norwich*. *Thetford* was a Loſer by this Change. But to make it ſome Amends, the *Lent* Aſſizes are uſually held here. *Caſſleriſin* is an antient, but decayed Town, near the Sea. *Walſingham*, in the Northern Parts, was a famous Place in the Times of Popery; ſuch was the Concourſe of People to it from all Parts, to worſhip the Bleſſed Virgin, hence called, *Our Lady of Walſingham*.

Northamptonſhire, an Inland County, one hundred and twenty Miles in Circuit, is one of the beſt Counties in *England*, has a healthful Air, a rich fruitful Soil, Abundance of Inhabitants, and more Noblemen's Seats than any other County. It abounds in Corn and Cattle, Wood, and Saltpetre. Its principal Rivers are the *Ouſe*, the *Welland*, and the *Nen*, all riſing in this County. *Northampton*, the Shire-Town, upon the *Nen*, is one of the prettieſt Towns in *England*. In 1675 it had the Misfortune to be reduced to Aſhes; but by a general Contribution, it was ſoon after raiſed up again much finer, and more uniform than before. *Peterborough*, upon the *Nen*, is one of the ſix Biſhopricks erected by *Henry* the Eighth, after the Diſſolution of the Monaſteries. *Brackley*, *Higham-Ferrers*, *Oundle*, and *Wellinborough*, are of Note for their Grammar-Schools. *Oundle*, upon the *Nen*, is of ſome Note beſide for its fair Church, but chiefly for its *Drumming-Wells*. *Towceſter* was formerly a Place of ſuch Strength, as to baffle the *Danes*. Beſides theſe Towns, we may take notice of *Fotheringhay Caſtle*, in which *Mary* Queen of *Scots* was beheaded: Of *Naſeby*, in the Neighbourhood of which was fought the famous Battle, in which King *Charles* the Firſt loſt the Day; and of the Caſtle of *Holdenby*, where the King was kept Priſoner ſome Months.

Northumberland, a maritime County, is one hundred and forty-three Miles in Circumference. 'Tis none of the moſt fruitful, but there are ſome Parts of it very good, eſpecially towards the Sea Side. Here are ſeveral Lead and Coal Mines. Wild Fowl and Fiſh abound in this County. *Newcaſtle upon the Tine*, the Capital, is built upon the Aſcent of a Hill, with a Key by the River Side, for the Convenience of Ships. 'Tis a large, populous, rich, trading Town. The Houſes are for the moſt Part built of Stone, and moſt of the Streets very ſteep. The Town-Houſe is not far from a Stone Bridge over the River, with an Iron Gate in the Middle, parting this County from *Durham*. This is a Place of great Trade for Sea Coals, which Commodity is fetched thence for *London* eſpecially. It conſiſts of four large Pariſhes. This Town was formerly fortified with a great Caſtle, the Walls of which are yet ſtanding. It enjoys great Privileges, being one of thoſe called County Towns, or Counties Corporate. *Berwick upon the Tweed* is a Frontier Town, which formerly belonged to *Scotland*. It is ſituate on an Eminence that ſhoots forth into the Sea, and watered Southward by the River, which makes it a Peninſula. The Town is large, well inhabited, and fortified. Heretofore this Town had often changed Maſters, ſometimes falling to the Share of the *Engliſh*, and ſometimes to that of the *Scots*, till the Reign of *Edward* the Fourth, when Sir *Thomas Stanley* retook it the laſt Time from the latter. It is a County Town, independant of the Lord Lieutenant of the County. *Morpath* is a good Town, ſeated on the *Wensbeck*. *Hexham* was formerly a Biſhop's See. Its Cathedral was ſtately, before it came to be partly ruined by the *Scots*. Near the Coaſt of this County there are three Iſles, the principal of which is called *Holy-Iſland*, and the two others, *Cocket* and *Farn*. *Holy-Iſland* is not far from *Berwick*, and took its Name as a retiring Place for Biſhops, Monks, and others, who being weaned from the World, made this their Sanctuary. It is but a ſmall Iſland, the Air of which is not wholſome, nor the Soil fruitful. It is there-

fore but thinly inhabited, there being but one Town, with a Caſtle and a Church. The Haven is pretty good, and defended with a Fort.

Nottingham-ſhire *Nottinghamſhire*, an Inland County, one hundred and ten Miles in Circuit, has a wholſome Air, and different Sorts of Soil; for the South East Parts are fertile, the Weſtern woody, and yield Abundance of Pit-Coals. Here is the famous Foreſt of *Sherwood*. Beſides the *Trent*, which parts this County from *Lincolnſhire*, here is the *Idle*, &c. *Nottingham* *Nottingham*, the Shire-Town, on the *Leen*, is a pleaſant and well built Town, conſiſting of three Pariſhes, and having one of the fineſt Caſtles in *England*. *Newark* *Newark*, upon the *Trent*, took that Name from a ſtately Caſtle. Its Walls, ſtill to be ſeen, are a plain Demonſtration of its Magnificence. There is in this Town a fair Church, with a Steeple of curious Workmanſhip. *Mansfield* *Mansfield* and *Workſop* *Workſop* are noted for their Malt-Trade, and *Workſop* for its Licoriſh.

Oxfordſhire *Oxfordſhire*, an Inland County, one hundred and thirty Miles in Circumference, has a ſweet healthful Air, and a Soil fertile in Corn and Fruits, and rich in Paſture. Beſides the *Thames*, here's the *Cherwel*, *Windruſh*, *Evenlode*, &c. *Oxford* *Oxford*, the Capital, ſeated at the Influx of the *Cherwel* into the *Iſis*, is both a fair City, and a famous Univerſity. Beſides the Cathedral, here are thirteen Pariſh Churches, ſo that *Oxford* is one of the largeſt Cities in *England*. And in Point of Situation, it has the Advantage of *Cambridge* both for Health and Pleaſure. As a City, it is governed by a Mayor and Aldermen, but in Subjection to the Chancellor, or Vice-Chancellor of the Univerſity. As an Univerſity, except her Siſter *Cambridge*, the World cannot ſhew ſuch another Nurſery of Learning as *Oxford*, nor ſuch ſtately, or ſo well endowed Colleges. Nor is there any where elſe a greater Opportunity for Scholars to improve themſelves, by converſing with Men of Learning, or the Uſe of Libraries. Here are eighteen endowed Colleges, and ſix Halls not endowed; each of them under a Head, called Maſter, Warden, Preſident, Rector, Principal, or Provoſt. There are reckoned in *Oxford* one thouſand Students, that live upon the Revenues of the Colleges; and of other Students, that pay for their Maintenance, about twice as many: Beſides Stewards, Manciples, Butlers, Cooks, Porters, Gardeners, *&c.* Every College and Hall is tied to certain Statutes, for the better Government thereof. And for the Students publick Exerciſes, the Year is here divided, as by Lawyers, into Four Terms. During theſe Terms, the Students have within their own Walls Lectures and Diſputations. And in ſome of them they have publick Lectures for all Comers, with large Degrees Salaries for the Readers. The firſt Degree taken here, is that of Batchelor of Arts, and *Lent* is the proper Time for it. In order to which, the Party muſt perform all Exerciſes during the Space of four Years. The next Degree is that of Maſter of Arts: To attain which, three Years more are required. The proper Time for taking this Degree is when the Act is kept. For the three Faculties of Divinity, Law, and Phyſick, there is a higher Degree, which is that of Doctor.

Libra- For the publick Uſe of this Univerſity, here is ries, The the famous *Bodleian* Library, conſiſting of many Thouſands of choice printed Books, beſides a great Number of Manuſcripts. Here are alſo the *Aſhmolean* and the *Savilian* Libraries, both full of Manuſcripts. Amongſt the private Libraries of Colleges, *Baliol*, *Merton*, *Magdalen*, *New-College*, St. *John*'s, and *Corpus Chriſti*, are the beſt. The Theatre is a curious Piece of Architecture, for ſcholaſtick Exerciſes, with a fair Printing Office, built by the Beneficence of Dr. *Sheldon*, Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*. The *Muſeum*, at the Weſt End of the Theatre, is a ſtately Pile of ſquared Stone, built at the Charge of the Univerſity. It is a Repoſitory of natural Rarities, and of ſeveral *Roman* Antiquities. Here is alſo a Laboratory, furniſhed with all Sorts of Materials for Chymical Practice; a Store Room for Preparations, and another Room with a Chymical Library. The Phyſick Garden, a delightful Place to walk in, is alſo of great Uſe to improve *Botanick* Knowledge. The Magiſtrates of this Univerſity, are the Chancellor, High Steward, Vice-Chancellor, and Proctors. The firſt is uſually one of the prime Nobility, choſen by the Students themſelves in Convocation. The High Steward is nominated by the Chancellor, and approved by the Univerſity. The Vice-Chancellor, who is always the Head of ſome College, and in holy Orders, is yearly elected in Convocation. The Proctors are two Maſters of Arts, yearly choſen by Turns out of the ſeveral Colleges.

Other Market-Towns of *Oxfordſhire*, are *Woodſtock* *Woodſtock*, formerly a Royal Manor, but ſettled by Act of Parliament upon the Duke of *Marborough*, as a publick Acknowledgment of his Grace's Services to the Nation; particularly at the Battle of *Blenheim*; to perpetuate the Memory whereof, here is a ſtately Palace called *Blenheim-Houſe*. Here was formerly a Labyrinth, in which Fair *Roſamond*, a Concubine of *Henry* the Second, was poiſoned. *Banbury* *Banbury*, upon the *Cherwel*, a pleaſant and rich Town, is particularly noted for the Excellency of its Cheeſe: But more for the Battles fought in its Neighbourhood, and the Sieges it has ſuſtained. *Burford* *Burford*, on the *Windruſh*, is a very antient Town. Horſe-Saddles are the chief Manufacture of this Place. *Henley* *Henley* is noted for its Malt Trade; *Tame* *Tame*, for its Grammar-School; *Whitney* *Whitney*, for its Blankets, Free-School, and Library. At the Confluence of the *Tame* and *Iſis* ſtands *Dorceſter* *Dorceſter*, a Town of Note among the antient *Romans*, and ſince that a Biſhop's See.

Rutland *Rutland*, an Inland County, forty Miles in Circuit, yields Plenty both of Corn and Cattle, and feeds an infinite Multitude of Sheep: The Wooll whereof (like the Soil) is reddiſh. From whence this Country is called *Rutland*; *i. e. Red-Land*. Here is Abundance of Wood, and ſeveral ſmall Rivers, the principal of which are the *Welland* and *Waſh*. *Oakham* *Oakham*, the principal Town, ſtands in the rich Valley of *Cathmos*. Here's a Caſtle, in which the Aſſizes are kept, an Hoſpital for the Poor, and a Free-School for the Education of Youth. *Uppingham* *Uppingham* is a neat and well-built Town, that ſtands upon a Hill. There is an Hoſpital, and a Free-School.

Shropſhire *Shropſhire*, an Inland County, is one hundred and thirty-four Miles in Circumference. Here the Inhabitants breathe a good Air, and have the Benefit of a fruitful Soil, though hilly on the South and Weſt. It yields Plenty of Wheat and Barley, of Pit-Coals, Wood, and Iron. Beſides the *Severn*, that runs through this County, here are the *Roden*, *Teme*, &c. *Shrewsbury* *Shrewsbury*, the Shire-Town, has two Bridges over the River *Severn*, which almoſt ſurrounds the Town. In the Reign of *William the Conqueror*, it was an important Place, and to this Day, it makes a pretty good Figure, by its Trade with *Wales*. Here are five Churches, two of them with lofty Spires. *Ludlow* *Ludlow* is alſo a Place of Note, ſurrounded with a Wall, and fortified with a Caſtle; in which was kept the Court of the *Marches of Wales*, till it was ſuppreſſed by Act of Parliament. *Bridgenorth* *Bridgenorth* is ſeated

ed upon the *Severn*, and has a fair Stone Bridge over that River. It consists of two Parishes. This Town was formerly fortify'd with a Wall, a Ditch, and a Castle built upon a Rock, but fallen to Ruin.

Somersetshire, a Maritime County, 204 Miles in Circuit, is plentiful of Corn and Pasture, most pleasant in the Summer, but very troublesome to Travellers in the Winter. Besides the *Severn*, which empties itself here into the Sea, here is the *Avon*, *Frome*, *Parret*, *Tor*, and *Tone*. The Oxon in this County are of as large a Size as those in *Lincolnshire*. This County yields also Lead and Copper, Lapis calaminaris, Crystal, and Woad for Dyers. Its chief Manufactures are Woollen Cloth, and Serges. At *Cheddar* they make the best and the biggest Cheeses in *England*. The whole Milk of the Parish goes for the making of it. *Bristol*, the Capital, upon the *Avon*, stands part in this County, and part in *Glocestershire*. Next to *London*, this is the most trading and flourishing Place in *England*; happily seated both for the *Welch* and *West-India* Trade. 'Tis a fair, large, and populous Place; has a Stone Bridge over the River, with Houses on both Sides, making a Street, as *London* Bridge. It has also a convenient Key, for the loading and unloading of Ships. Ten Miles from hence, the *Avon* falls into the *Severn*'s Mouth. *Bristol* has been formerly a Place of Strength, and there was a Castle, but it was demolished by *Oliver Cromwel*. It is a County Town. *Bath*, also upon the *Avon*, is more famous for its Baths, than its Beauty. It stands in a Bottom, surrounded with Hills, out of which spring its Mineral Waters and Baths, which are much resorted to in the Summer Season. *Wells* is a neat, well-built, and populous Town; called *Wells*, from the many Springs that are about it. This City, in Conjunction with *Bath*, is a Bishop's See. Its Cathedral is a very fine Pile. *Bridgewater*, on the *Parret*, is a goodly Town. *Taunton* for its Antiquity; *Taunton* for its Manufacture of Woollen Cloth, and Serges; *Minehead* for its Harbour; *Bruton* for its Church, School, and Hospital; and *Glastenbury* for having been one of the richest Abbeys in *England*.

Staffordshire is an Inland County, 141 Miles in Circumference. The Air is sharp and healthful; the Soil diverse: For Northward 'tis hilly and barren, Southward it yields Plenty of Corn and Grass, Iron, and Pit-Coals; of which last curious Utensils are made, as black as Jet. The Inland Parts are level, but woody. This County yields also good Stone, Marble, Alabaster, and Lime-Stone for Building. Besides the *Trent*, that waters it Northward, here is the *Dove*, *Churner*, *Blithe*, *Line*, *Sow*, and other small Rivers. The *Dove* makes the neighbouring Lands very fruitful, and the Sheep that feed upon them yield the best Mutton in *England*. But, besides those fresh Waters, here are Salt-Springs, very near as good as the Salt Springs of *Cheshire*. *Stafford*, the Shire Town, upon the *Sow*, is a well-built and agreeable Town, consisting of two Parishes, and having a Free-School. *Litchfield*, and *Coventry* in *Warwickshire*, make jointly a Bishop's See. *Burton*, upon *Trent*, is noted for its Bridge, and of late for its strong Ale. *Wolverhampton* for its Collegiate Church, which is annexed to the Deanery of *Windsor*.

Suffolk is a Maritime Province, 140 Miles in Compass. The Air is wholsome here, except towards the Sea, but the Soil diverse: Sandy and full of Heaths towards the Sea; but yielding Plenty of Rye, Peas, and Hemp, and feeding vast Multitudes of Sheep. Further off from the Sea are the *Woodlands*, otherwise called *High Suffolk*, which feeds abundance of Cattle. But the most fruitful Parts of this County are about St. *Edmondsbury*, and North-West from it. There are above 40 Parks in this County. Its principal Rivers are the *Stoure*, *Breton*, *Deben*, *Orwell*, and *Blithe*, &c. Here is some Cheese made tolerable good, but *Suffolk* Butter is counted excellent. Its Manufactures are Woollen and Linen Cloth. *Ipswich*, the Capital, upon the *Stoure*, was formerly one of the most considerable Towns in *England*, till the *Danes* reduced it, in a Manner, into a Heap of Ruins. In the *Norman*'s Time it began to recover itself, and consists at this Time of 14 Parishes. Here's a College, founded by the famous Cardinal *Woolsey*. St. *Edmondsbury* is a Town most pleasantly seated, and enjoying a very good Air. It took its Name from *Edmund* the Martyr, King of the *East-Angles*. *Canute*, King of *England*, Son of the *Danish* King *Sueno*, the Author of *Edmund*'s Murder, erected here a stately Abbey. *Dunwich*, a Sea-Town, was of old of great Note, and an Episcopal See, which was removed first to *North Elmham*, then to *Thetford*, and afterwards from *Thetford* to *Norwich*. *Sudbury* stands upon the *Stoure*, and is a rich and populous Place, consisting of three Parishes, and having a great Manufacture of Cloth. *Eye* is a good Town, and a Peculiar of the Crown. Here is a fair Church, some Ruins of a Castle, and of an antient Abbey. *Stow-Market*, upon the *Orwell*, is a large and beautiful Town, that drives a great Trade in Stuffs, and is adorned with a spacious Church. *New-Market* borders upon *Cambridgeshire*, and is a noted Place for Horse-Racing, in a Plain near it. *Beccles* on the *Waveney*, and *Buddesdale*, are noted for their publick Schools: *Hadleigh*, *Muldenhall*, and *Lavenham*, for their beautiful Churches.

Ipswich. St. *Edmondsbury*. *Dunwich*. *Sudbury*. *Eye*. *Stow-Market*. *New-Market*. *Beccles*. *Buddesdale*, &c.

Surrey, an Inland County, is 112 Miles in Circuit. 'Tis observed, that the Skirts of this County are the most fruitful, and the Middle Parts barren in Comparison. However, in Point of Health, the middle Parts have the Advantage. Besides the *Thames*, here is the *Wye*, which runs through *Guilford*, the *Mole* through *Darking*, and the *Wandle*, all three emptying themselves into the *Thames*. *Guilford*, the Shire-Town, upon the *Wye*, is a good Town, consisting of three Parishes. *Southwark*, against *London*, on the South-Side of the *Thames*, is partly under the Government of the Lord-Mayor of *London*; but with many Privileges, particularly that of sending two Members of Parliament. 'Tis a Suburb, if it may be so called, of a large Extent. The high Street, leading from *London-Bridge* to St. *George's* Church, deserves a particular Notice, as being the Center of Trade for this County. Besides St. *George's* Church, here are three or four more Churches And in this Borough, you will find St. *Thomas*'s Hospital, and two Prisons for Debt, one called the *King*'s-*Bench* Prison, and the other the *Marshalsea*; besides a County Jail for Criminals, lately built. At *Kingston* upon *Thames*, the Assizes are commonly held. *Croydon*, upon the *Wandle*, is noted for its Steeple, for the Archbishop of *Canterbury*'s Palace, and its Free-School and Hospital, founded by Archbishop *Whitgift*. Near this Town are *Banstead Downs*, famous for Horse-Races. *Ryegate* stands in a Valley, called *Holmes Dale*: Near this Town is abundance of Fuller's Earth. *Epsom* is a delightful Place, noted for its Mineral Waters, and much resorted to, in the Summer. *Richmond* is a pretty large Town, very agreeable in the Summer-Season, and much frequented by the Gentry. His Majesty has a pleasant Seat here. Here is also a noble Park, encompass'd with a Brick-Wall. *Battersea*, *Putney*, *Mortlack*, *Wandsworth*, *Clapham*, *Dulwich*, &

Surrey. *Guilford*. *Southwark*. *Kingston*. *Croydon*. *Epsom*. *Richmond*. *Battersea*, *Putney*, *Mortlack*, *Wandsworth*, *Clapham*, *Dulwich*, &

Malden,

Micham, *Cheam*, and *Stretham*, are alſo delightful Places in the Summer-Seaſon.

Suſſex *Suſſex*, a Maritime County, is 158 Miles in Compaſs. Its *Downs*, near the Sea, are charming, and its Valleys (called the Wilds of *Suſſex*) very plentiful, of Oats eſpecially. The Foreſts are barren, but the Eaſt Parts yield abundance of Iron. Here the Roads are ſo deep in Winter, that in ſome Places the Coaches muſt be drawn with Oxen. This County is well water'd, but with Rivers of no long Courſe. *Arun* is the principal. A *Suſſex* Carp, an *Arundel* Mullet, an *Amerley* Trout, and a *Chicheſter* Lobſter, are much admired: And ſo is the Wheat-Ear, a Bird as good as a *French* Ortelan. Its principal *Chicheſter.* Manufactures are Iron Guns, and Glaſs. *Chicheſter*, the Capital, on the *Levant*, was formerly the Royal Seat of the South *Saxons*. It now conſiſts of five or ſix Pariſhes, four large Streets, and a fair Market-Place. Its greateſt Ornament is the Cathedral, which has been twice burnt down, *Lewes* and as often built up again. *Lewes* ſtands upon an Eminence, and has ſix Pariſhes. Here the Aſſizes are moſt commonly held, and ſometimes at *Haſtings.* *Eaſt-Grinſtead*. *Haſtings*, one of the Cinque-Ports, is a very antient Town, and has two Pa- *Rye.* riſhes. *Rye* is the uſual Landing-Place from *Diepe* into *England*. Here they have excellent Her- *Winchelſea* rings. *Winchelſea* has been formerly a conſiderable Town; but the Sea being gone from it, has contributed very much to its Decay.

Warwickſhire *Warwickſhire*, an Inland County, is 135 Miles in Circuit, and enjoys both a good Air, and a plentiful Soil, eſpecially on the South. Northward, 'tis a woody Country. Among its Rivers, *Avon* is the Chief, which runs through the Midſt of it, and falls into the *Severn*. Cheeſe is its *Warwick* chief Commodity. *Warwick*, the Shire-Town, upon the *Avon*, is a well-built Town, conſiſting of two Pariſhes, with a Free-School, and ſeveral Hoſpitals; but the Caſtle is its greateſt Ornament. *Coventry.* *Coventry*, upon the *Sherburn*, took that Name from a Convent founded here by *Canute*. 'Tis ſituate upon the Aſcent of a Hill, having two Pariſhes, three Churches, and four Steeples. But the greateſt Ornament of *Coventry* is the Croſs in the Middle of the City. The Roads leading to it are well pav'd, for about a Mile out of Town. Here is a free-School, and a fair Library; and *Birmingham* for the Poor, an Hoſpital. *Birmingham* is of *Lary* Note for its Works of Iron and Steel, and *Polleſworth* for its School. Near *Warwick*, there is a *Guy Cliff* Rock called *Guy-Cliff*, from *Guy* of *Warwick*, the *Hercules* of *England*.

Weſtmoreland *Weſtmoreland*, in the North-Weſt Parts of *England*, is 120 Miles in Compaſs, and is a hilly and marſhy Country, but not without fruitful Spots of Ground, eſpecially Southward. The *Eden*, *Ken*, *Lon*, and *Eamon*, are its principal Rivers. *Ulles* Water, and *Alemander-Mere*, border on this County. *Appleby* *Appleby*, the Shire-Town, upon the *Eden*, has been formerly a conſiderable Place. At this Time there is but one Street, and that but thinly peopled. However, the Aſſizes are kept here, and here is a publick School, and an Hoſpital. *Kendal* *Kendal*, the beſt Town in this County, is ſeated upon the *Ken*, in a Valley. 'Tis rich, and well inhabited, driving a good Trade in Woollen Cloths, Druggets, Serges, Cotton-Stockings, and Hats. Over the River there are two Bridges of Stone, and another of Wood. The Church of *Kendal* is both fair and ſpacious, and there are two Chapels of Eaſe beſides. Near the Church-Yard ſtands a publick School, from whence a certain Number of Scholars are ſent from time to time to *Oxford*. *Lonſdale*, or *Kirby Lonſdale*, upon the *Lon*, is a large and well-built Town, noted beſides for its Manufactures of Cloth. Here is a fine Church, and a Stone-Bridge over the River.

Wiltſhire, an Inland County, 140 Miles in Cir- *Wiltſhire.* cuit, is a healthful Country. Northward, 'tis ſomewhat hilly, and woody; but Southward, 'tis pretty level. In the middle Parts of it is *Salisbury* Plain, noted for its large Extent, and for feeding innumerable Flocks of Sheep. Its principal Rivers are the *Iſis*, *Kennet*, *Avon*, *Willy*, and *Nadder*. This County drives a great Manufacture of Wooll. *Salisbury*, the Capital, is one *Salisbury* of the fineſt Cities in *England*, watered chiefly by the *Avon*. Here are large Strees, a fair Market-Place, and a Town-Houſe. But the greateſt Ornament of this City is the Cathedral, that has as many Doors as Months, Windows as Weeks, and Pillars as Days in the Year. Its Steeple is the higheſt of any in *England*. *Hindon* and *Chip-* *Hindon* *penham* are noted for their great Markets; *Cane.* *Chippenham* for the Provincial Synod held here in 997; *Marl-* *Cane.* *borough*, for the Title of a Duke it gave to *John* *Marlborough.* *Churchill*, one of the Heroes of our Days. *Wil-* *John Churchill.* *ton* has been formerly the chief Town of this *Wilton.* County, whence the Name of *Wiltſhire*.

Worceſterſhire, an Inland County, 130 Miles *Worceſterſhire.* in Compaſs, yields Plenty of Corn, Paſture, Cattle, Fiſh, and Fruit. The Vale of *Eveſham* is noted eſpecially for its great Fertility. Here are alſo ſeveral Salt Springs. Its Rivers are the *Severn*, *Avon*, *Salwarp*, *Stoure*, &c. *Worceſter*, the *Worceſter.* Capital, upon the *Severn*, is a large, rich, and populous City, conſiſting of ten Pariſhes. Over the River it has a fair Stone-Bridge, with a Tower, ſaid to be built by the *Romans*. 'Twas under this City Walls the Battle was fought in 1651, which proved ſo fatal to King *Charles* the Second, as to force him to quit the Kingdom. *Worceſter* drives a great Trade in Cloth. *Eveſham*, *Eveſham* on the *Avon*, is a good trading Place. *Droitwich*, *Droitwich* on the *Salwarp*, is noted for its Salt-Pits; *Stur-* *&c.* *bridge*, for its School and Library; and *Kidder-* *minſter* for its Stuffs.

Yorkſhire, a Northern Maritime County, is 320 *Yorkſhire.* Miles in Compaſs. 'Tis divided into the North, Eaſt, and Weſt-Riding; this latter the largeſt. 'Tis generally a moſt fruitful Country, yielding Plenty of Corn, Cattle, Fiſh, and Wild-Fowl. Here are alſo abundance of fine Horſes, Lime-Stone, Jet, and Allum. *Surely* is noted for its Goats, *Sheffield* for Iron, *Richmondſhire* for its Lead, Copper, and Pit Coals. Its principal Rivers are the *Humber*, *Are*, *Calder*, *Don*, *Derwent*, *Nyd*, *Ouſe*, *Swall*, *Toure*, *Warf*, and *Tees*. *York*, the Capital, ſtands upon the *Ouſe*. 'Tis a *York.* fair, large, rich, and populous Place; in which are reckoned 28 Churches and Chapels of Eaſe. *York* was in ſuch Eſteem among the antient *Romans*, that *Severus* the Emperor had a Palace in it, in which he ended his Days. But it has ſuffer'd much by the frequent Revolutions of the State, in the Time of the *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*. The greateſt Ornament of this City is its Cathedral, which deſerves to be put in the firſt Rank of the Cathedrals in *Europe*. The Mayor of *York* bears the Title of Lord, as the Mayor of *London* does, there being but thoſe two Lord Mayors all over *England*. *Hull*, or *King-* *ſton upon Hull*, is a good Port, and a well fortify'd Town. 'Tis a Place of great Trade, and of a large Extent, though there be but two Pariſhes. *Rippon* is a good Town upon the *Toure*, where a *Rippon.* great deal of Cloth, and the beſt Spurs in *England* are made. Here is a Collegiate Church, that has three very lofty Spires. *Scarborough* is a good *Scarborough.* Harbour, fortify'd with a Caſtle, wherein a Garriſon is kept. This Town is almoſt inacceſſible

by

by Land, surrounded with the Sea, and very steep Rocks, except on the West Side, which is fenced with a strong Wall. The Town is not large, but pretty well inhabited, and a good trading Place. It has a commodious Key. Formerly there was a fine Tower, which served as a Land-Mark for Ships, before it fell by our Civil Wars. This Place is noted for its famous Spaw.

Richmond. *Richmond*, upon the *Swale*, in the North-Riding, is the chief Place of a District, hence called *Richmondshire*, a spacious Name for a barren and hilly

Pontefract Country. *Pontefract*, or *Pomfret*, is a neat Town, that had formerly a strong and stately Castle, which fell by the Civil Wars. 'Twas in this Castle

Leeds *Richard* II. was barbarously murdered. *Leeds*, on the *Are*, is one of the best Towns of this County, and was in the Heptarchy the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Northumberland*. Noted besides for

Halifax. its great Manufacture in Cloth. *Halifax*, formerly called *Horton*, is a good large Town, with Stone-built Houses. It stands upon the steep Ascent of a Hill, in a barren Soil. The Woollen Manufacture is the principal here. *Duncaster*, on *Duncaster.* the *Dun*, is a Town in which there was formerly a Castle. Here is a fair Church, with a stately Steeple. Its chief Manufactures are Stockings, Gloves, and knit Waistcoats. *Wakefield*, upon *Wakefield* the *Calder*, is noted for the Battle fought near it, between *Henry* the Sixth, and *Richard* Duke of *York* his Rival. *Sheffield* is noted for its Smiths *Sheffield, &c* Trade; *Knaresborough* for its Licorish, and Medicinal Waters; *Rotheram* for its three Schools, one for Writing, another for Languages, and the third for Musick; *Ripley* for Licorish; *Sherborn* for its Free-School; *Burlington* for its Bay. There are in this County two Boroughs that send Members to Parliament, which are no Market-Towns; *Aldborough* in the *North Riding*, and *Boroughbrigg* in the *West Riding*.

CHAP. III.

A Description of Wales, *general and particular; treating of its Name, Extent, Climate, Divisions, Counties, Inhabitants, History*, &c.

Wales WE subjoin *Wales* to *England*, as being incorporated with it, and living under the same Laws; though the Countries differ very much, and the *Welch* have a very different Language from the *English*. This Country

Face of the Country. is for the most Part mountainous, yet it yields wherewith to subsist its Inhabitants; and some Parts of it are as fruitful as any Part of *England*. The antient *Romans* divided *Britain* into three Parts, *viz. Britannia Prima*, containing the South of *England*; *Britannia Secunda*, containing *Wales*; and *Maxima Cæsariensis*, the North Parts of *Eng-*

Inhabitants *land*. Hither most of the *Britons* fled from the victorious *Saxons*; and their Posterity, the *Welch*,

Name have ever since inhabited that Country. Some Authors are of Opinion, that the Name of *Wales* came from *Idwallo*, Son of *Cadwallader*, the last King of the *Britons*.

Situation. Its Situation is Westward, the Eastern Parts of it bordering upon *Cheshire*, *Shropshire*, *Herefordshire*, and *Monmouthshire*, in *England*; and the

Extent. Western watered by the *Irish* Sea. Its Extent is about a fifth Part of *England*, and does hardly exceed the four Eastern and Maritime Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Essex*, and *Kent*. In which Compass it contains seven hundred and fifty-one Parishes, fifty-eight Market-Towns, and above three hundred thousand People. Its Air is clear

Air and sharp; the Cattle small, but all Provisions good and cheap. Here is particularly Abundance of Goats, which naturally delight in hilly Places: And for Fewel, great Plenty of Wood, Coals, and Turfs. As for Harbours, the World can hardly shew one safer and more capacious than *Milford-Haven*. This Haven consists of many

Rivers. Creeks, Bays, and Roads for Ships. Here are also many Rivers; as the *Dee*, *Wye*, *Usk*, *Conway*, *Clwyd*, *Tivy*, and many others of less Note; beside the *Severn*, that rises in this Country.

Division The Division of *Wales* is into North and South. *North Wales* is subdivided into *Anglesey*, *Caernarvonshire*, *Denbighshire*, *Flintshire*, *Merionethshire*, and *Montgomeryshire*. *South Wales*, into *Brecknockshire*, *Cardiganshire*, *Carmardenshire*, *Glamorganshire*, *Pembrokeshire*, and *Radnorshire*. *South Wales* contained formerly *Monmouth* and *Hereford* Shires, now two *English* Counties, and all *Shropshire*, beyond the *Severn*, with the Town of *Shrewsbury*. Of the aforesaid twelve Counties, all but *Montgomery*, *Radnor*, and *Brecknockshire*, are watered by the Sea. *Pembroke*, *Caermarden*, and *Glamorganshire*, in *South Wales*; *Anglesey*, *Denbighshire*, and *Montgomeryshire*, in *North Wales*; are the most plentiful. There are four Bishopricks in *Wales*, all belonging to the Province of *Canterbury*, *viz. St. David's*, *St. Asaph*, *Bangor*, and *Landaff*.

Among the Counties of *North Wales*, the first *North Wales.* is *Anglesey*, an Island in the North-West Parts, *Anglesey.* about eighty Miles East of *Dublin* in *Ireland*. It is all surrounded by the *Irish* Sea, but South-Eastward, where its parted from *Caernarvonshire* by an Inlet called *Menay*. It is about eighty Miles in Compass. It looks barren, and yet it yields Plenty of Corn and Cattle. Here is also Plenty of Fish and Fowl, and good Store of Millstones for the grinding of Corn. Here are *Beaumaris.* but two Towns, *Beaumaris* and *Newborough*. Before the *Welch* were subdued by *England*, *Aberfraw*, *Newborough.* now but a Village, was the chief Place of the *Aberfraw* Island, and the Royal Seat of *North Wales*. *Holy-Head* *Holy-Head*, the nearest Place to *Ireland*, is the Station for the Packet-Boats for that Kingdom. 2. *Caernarvonshire*, one hundred and ten Miles in Cir- *Caernarvonshire.* cuit; plentiful in Cattle, Fowl, Fish, and Wood. The middle Parts are swelled with Mountains, but the Western Parts are pretty level, and yield Abundance of Barley. *Caernarvon*, the County *Caernarvon.* Town, is but small, and of a circular Form; defended by a Castle, in which was born *Edward* the Second. *Bangor*, antiently *Bonium*, an old *Bangor.* *Roman* Town, stands not far from *Caernarvon*. It was famous of old for its vast Monastery, which entertained about two thousand Monks, but came to Ruin before the *Norman* Conquest. 3. *Den-* *Denbighshire.* *bighshire*, one hundred and sixteen Miles in Compass. The middle Parts of it, watered by the *Clwyd*, are the most fruitful; and the West is improved with the Ashes of burnt Turf. Here is Plenty of Rye, Goats, and Sheep, and some Lead near *Mongliath*. But the best Part of it is

that noble Valley called *Diffryn-Clwyd*, of great Length and Fertility, inhabited by several Gentlemen. *Denbigh*, the County Town, is of good Trade for Tanners and Glovers, and hath a very strong Castle. But being built upon a rocky Ground, full of Lime stone, few of its Inhabitants live to a great Age, which is attributed to the Drink here. *Wrexham* is a good Town, noted for its Market, and its neat Church and lofty Steeple. 4. *Flintshire*, eighty-two Miles in Compass. It is full of Hills, but the Valleys are very fruitful, and the Inhabitants long-lived. Its chief Commodities are small Cattle, Butter, Cheese, Honey, Pit-Coal, Lead, and Millstones. With the Honey good Store of Metheglin is made. *Flint*, though the Shire-Town, is so very small, that it has not a Market; yet there is an old Castle, which shews the Ruins of its former Stateliness. *St. Asaph* is also a mean Town, and but a poor Bishoprick. *Gajervis* is the only Market-Town in the County. We must not omit St. *Winifred's Well* in this County, so famed for curing Aches and Lamenesses, and forwarding Propagation. Over the Head of this Spring is a fine Free Stone Chapel. 5. *Merionethshire*, one hundred and eight Miles in Circuit. It is a very mountainous Country, however not without Sheep, Fish, and Fowl. Here are also Cottons wrought. *Harlech*, the chief Town, was of Note heretofore for its stately Castle. 6. *Montgomeryshire*, 94 Miles in Circumference, is a fruitful though mountainous Country. Here the *Severn* has its Rise. *Montgomery*, the Shire-Town, is pleasantly seated, and has a strong Castle. *Mathravel*, now a poor Village, was of old the Seat of the Princes of *Powis Land*.

Denbigh. *Wrexham.* *Flintshire.* *Flint.* *St. Asaph* *Gajervis.* *St. Winifred's Well* *Merionethshire* *Harlech* *Montgomeryshire* *Montgomery* *Mathravel*

The Counties of South *Wales* are 1. *Brecknockshire*, one hundred and six Miles in Compass, divided into Mountains and Valleys; the first barren, but the last fruitful. Corn, Cattle, Fish, and some Otter Fur, are its chief Commodities. *Brecknock*, the Shire-Town, is seated at the Confluence of the *Hodney* and *Usk*. 'Tis a well-built Town, having a good Trade for Clothing, and being the Place where the Assizes are kept. 2. *Cardiganshire*, ninety-four Miles in Circuit. Here is Plenty of Corn, Cattle, Fish, Fowl, and Lead; and this County is of some Note, for its Silver, Lead, and Copper Mines. *Cardigan*, the Shire-Town, is pleasantly seated upon the *Tivy*. It is a good Town, walled about, and fortified with a Castle, having a fair Church. 3. *Caermarthenshire*, one hundred and two Miles in Circumference, is none of the least mounteinous, and most fruitful Counties of *Wales*. It yields Plenty of Corn, Grass, Cattle, Salmon, Wood, Pit-Coal, and the best Lead. *Caermarden*, or *Caermarthen*, the Shire-Town, upon the River *Towy*, about seven Miles from the Sea, is pleasantly seated between Woods and Meadows. This Town was of old the Seat of the Princes of *South-Wales*, till forced to remove for their Safety to *Dynevour* Castle in this County, where they kept their Court. 4. *Glamorganshire*, one hundred and twelve Miles in Circumference. The North Part is mountainous, but the South so fruitful, that it is called the Garden of *Wales*. *Cardiff*, the chief Town, stands near the Mouth of the River *Taave*, where it has a commodious Haven. *Landaff* stands also upon the *Taave*, a little above *Cardiff*: A City, but so small, that it has not a Market. [illegible] in this County, is a well frequented [illegible]. 5. *Pembrokeshire*, ninety-three Miles [illegible], in most part surrounded with the Sea. The whole County is plentiful, but the East Side most pleasant. It is remarkable for its Fewel, called Culm, which is nothing but the Dust of Pit-Coal, and has this singular Property, that it will never cake or burn well, unless it be mixed with Mud. *Pembroke*, the Shire-Town, stands upon a long and narrow Point of *Milford-Haven* the Sea every Tide flowing up to the Town Wall. It consists of two Parishes, and is fortified with a Castle. *St. David's* stands near the Sea, in the most Western Part of *South-Wales*. It was once a City of good Account, but now so ruined, that there is not so much as Market kept. However, 'tis a Bishop's See, whose Cathedral was eminent for its wonderful Roof, and once the Metropolis of *Wales*. In this Shire also is the Town and County of *Haverford West*. 6. *Radnorshire*, one of the barren Shires of *Wales*, is ninety Miles in Compass. *Radnor* is the Shire-Town. Among the other Market Towns, *Presslain* is a large and well built Town, where the Assizes are held.

Brecknock *Cardiganshire* *Cardigan* *Caermarthenshire* *Caermarden* *Glamorganshire* *Cardiff* *Landaff* *Pembrokeshire* *Pembroke* *St. David's* *Radnorshire* *Radnor* *Presslain*

Having thus run over the Counties of *Wales*, we proceed to the Inhabitants. As to their Original, we have already hinted, that they are an Offspring of the antient *Britons*. Their Language is also the antient *British*, having, perhaps, the least Mixture of Foreign Words of any Tongue in *Europe*. As to their Temper, they are a stout and hardy People, and there goes an old Proverb of them, that they are a People of great Probity, Ebriety, and Volubility. From the Time of the *Romans* downwards, they made many Struggles for Liberty, and never were quiet, till they got a Prince of the *British* Blood, King *Henry* the Seventh, upon the Throne of *England*. To this very Day, the *Welch* are represented as a cholerick People, soon provoked, but quickly appeased. They generally profess the same Religion with the Church of *England*; but there are amongst them, as in *England*, great Numbers of Dissenters. These *Britons*, when all the rest of the Island had relapsed into Heathenism, still retained the Christian Faith: And when *Austin* attempted to draw the *British* Bishops to own the Pope as the Head of the Church, they rejected that Doctrine. Thus the *Britons* of *Wales* kept themselves from Innovations in Matters of Religion, till the greatest Part of *Christendom* had stooped to the See of *Rome*: And upon the Reformation of the Church of *England*, they shook off with her the Errors and Tyranny of that See.

Original

Cadwallader, the last King of *Britain*, went to *Rome*, there to receive the Habit of a religious Order. His Son, *Idwallo*, set up for a King of *Wales*, and was succeeded by *Roderick*, *Cynan*, and *Mervin*; and this by *Roderick* his Son, surnamed the *Great*. This *Roderick* had three Sons, among whom he improvidently divided his Kingdom. His Successors, following his Example, subdivided their small Estates into many Parcels. *North Wales* was enjoyed by several Generations of the eldest Branch of *Roderick*, till *Llewellen* the Second lost it, with his Life, to King *Edward* the First; and in *Llewellen* ended the Line of the *British* Princes, after they had for several Ages struggled with the *English* Power. In short, at the End of the thirteenth Age, King *Edward* the First entirely subdued *Wales*; which he reduced into Counties, after the Manner of *England*, placing over each of them an *English* Lieutenant: But when he expected his Desire to have one over all, the King, perceiving their Dislike, sent for his Queen to *Caernarvon* where she was delivered of a Prince: Upon which, the King sent for the *British* Lords, and offered to name them a Governor born in *Wales*, who could not speak a Word of *English*, and who de facto no Man could tax. They expecting their Readiness to submit to such an one, the King named *Edward*, his new-born Son; since which Time, the King of *England's*

England's eldeſt Son has always borne the Title of Prince of *Wales*, and the Country that of a Principality. In the Reign of *Henry* VIII. the *Welch* were, by Act of Parliament, made one Nation with the *Engliſh*, ſubject to the ſame Laws, capable of the ſame Preferments, and privileged with the ſame Immunities. So that, the Name and Language only excepted, there is now no Difference between the *Engliſh* and *Welch*. Their Noblemen ſit in the Houſe of Peers, and they ſend Repreſentatives to the Houſe of Commons. The ſaid King *Henry* the Eighth, for the Eaſe of his *Welch* Subjects, ſet up a Court at *Ludlow* in *Shropſhire*, for the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, after the Way of the Courts at *Weſtminſter*. And, till of late, there has been a Governor General of *Wales*, with the Title of Lord Preſident.

CHAP. IV.

A New and Exact Deſcription of London.

LONDON is the greateſt, richeſt, and moſt flouriſhing City in *Europe*, if not in the Univerſe. By *London*, we underſtand not only the City properly ſo called, but alſo *Weſtminſter*. This great and populous City lies in fifty-one Degrees thirty Minutes of North Latitude, on the North Side of the *Thames*, which is counted more healthy than the South Side. Except the City of *Weſtminſter*, *London* ſtands on a riſing Bank, and a wholſome Soil, where the River is caſt into a Creſcent, or Half-Moon. The Tide flows here four Hours, and ebbs eight. It is about forty Miles diſtant from the Sea, which makes it leſs in Danger of being ſurpriſed by foreign Enemies, and leſs annoyed by the Vapours of the Sea. On the North Side it is ſheltered from the cold North Wind, by *Hampſtead*, *Highgate*, and the riſing Grounds of *Iſlington*. Its Length, from Eaſt to Weſt, reaches about eight Miles; but its Breadth, from North to South, is not above two Miles and a half, even from the End of St. *Leonard Shoreditch*, to the End of *Blackman-Street* in *Southwark*. Within that Compaſs it contains one hundred and thirty-five Pariſhes, viz. ninety-ſeven within the Walls of *London*, ſixteen without, fifteen Out Pariſhes in *Middleſex* and *Surrey*, and ſeven in the City and Liberties of *Weſtminſter*: For whoſe publick Devotion, there are (beſides St. *Paul*'s Cathedral, the Collegiate Church of *Weſtminſter*, and ſeveral Chapels one hundred and one Pariſh Churches. As for the Diſſenters, it is reckoned they have at leaſt one hundred Meetings. Here are alſo reckoned ſix thouſand Streets, Lanes, Courts, Yards, and Allies, and about one hundred and twenty-four thouſand Dwelling-Houſes; whereas *Paris* has not half the Number. And, allowing eight Souls to each Houſe, one with another, the Number of the Inhabitants will amount at that Rate to nine hundred and ninety-thouſand. The Eaſt Parts of *London*, almoſt as far as the Bridge, are chiefly inhabited by ſeafaring Men, and Tradeſmen relating to the Sea Buſineſs; the main Part of the City, by Merchants and Tradeſmen; the City and Liberties of *Weſtminſter*, by the Nobility, Gentry, and retailing Traders. The Houſes are generally of Brick, except ſuch Timber Houſes as eſcaped the Fire of *London*, and a few built ſince. The new Buildings being much greater, more uniform, and regular than the old, have occaſioned the Fall of many great and ſpacious Noblemen's Houſes, which are now built into Streets and Tenements. The Nobility, and Chief among the Gentry, are, at this Time, much better accommodated, in fine Squares, or Streets, where they breathe a good Air, and have Houſes built after the modern Way. In ſhort, *London* is remarkable for its Multitude of fine Squares: Among which, *Lincoln's-Inn-Fields* is the moſt ſpacious. And, did not moſt of the publick Buildings ſtand in Bye Places, no City perhaps in the World could make a greater Shew. *London* has alſo many fair and ſpacious Streets, as *Cornhill*, *Cheapſide*, *Fleet-Street*, *Hatton-Garden*, *Pall-Mall*, &c. and, for Length, *Thames Street*, the *Strand*, and *Holborn*. The new built Streets are beſt for Foot-Paſſengers, being paved on each Side with broad ſmooth Stones, for a conſiderable Breadth. Fine Squares and Streets.

We come now to the Conveniencies of *London*. Firſt, for freſh Water, no Place in the World is better ſupplied than this is by the *Thames* and *New-River*, beſides ſeveral other Springs. The *New-River* Water is owing to the great Care, Skill, and Coſt of Sir *Hugh Middleton*, a worthy Knight of *Wales*, who for that Service deſerves a Statue in Braſs. For Fewel, this City is abundantly ſerved, both with Sea-Coals and Wood. For Butcher's Meat, there are twelve great Markets, wonderfully ſtocked with all Sorts of Meat; beſides Abundance of private Butchers up and down. *Leadenhall-Market*, amongſt others, is ſo prodigious for Meat, that three ſuch would ſupply the whole City of *Paris*. For Fiſh, there is but one great Market, which is at *Billingſgate*. For all edible Roots and Herbs, Fruits, Flowers, and phyſical Herbs, there are two noted Markets. For all Sorts of Grain, *Queenhithe* and *Parr-Key* are two great Markets. For Meal, there is one near *Fleet-Ditch*, and another in *Bloomsbury*. For Hay and Straw one in *Weſt-Smithfield*, and another called the *Hay-Market* near *Charing-Croſs*. *Smithfield* is alſo a great Market for live Cattle, and Horſes; as is *Leadenhall* for Hides and Leather, and *Blackwell-Hall* for Woollen Cloth. Laſtly, all along the *Thames*, Timber, Stone, Coals, and Wood, are to be ſold. Thoſe that delight in taking the Air, for the Improvement of Health, have a fair Opportunity for it in *Moorfields*, *Iſlington*, and *Red Lion-Fields*; *Mary bone*, and *Tuttle-fields*; as alſo by going to *Chelſea*, *Kenſington*, &c. For Perſons of a genteel Appearance, there are the noble Gardens of the Inns of Court, and ſome of the Companies Halls, beſides the *Charter-Houſe* Garden. The Court Side has the Advantage chiefly of two Parks, one called *St. James's-Park*, and the other *Hide Park*: The firſt only for walking, and the laſt moſt properly for taking the Air on Horſe-back, or in Coaches. For the Conveyance of Letters and ſmall Parcels under one Pound Weight, and ten Pounds in Value, to any Part of *London* and *Weſtminſter*, and ſome Miles out of Town, here is ſuch a Conveniency, as is not to be found in any other great City, namely, the Penny-Poſt. If a Parcel Freſh Water. Fewel. Markets. Places for Exercise. Penny Poſt.

Parcel happens to miſcarry, the Value thereof is to be made good by the Office, provided the Things were ſecurely incloſed.

Vaſt Traffick

But the greateſt Advantage of *London* is its vaſt Traffick, carried on firſt by Merchants, who trade in wholeſale; and next by Tradeſmen, that is, Shop-keepers and Retalers. For the Improvement of Trade, the City Traders are divided into ſixty-two Companies, being ſo many Bodies Politick, that enjoy great Privileges, granted them by former Kings. Each Company has a Maſter yearly choſen from among themſelves; and other ſubordinate Governors, called Wardens and Aſſiſtants. Amongſt other Privileges of the Citizens of *London*, one is, that they are Toll-free throughout *England*. They are alſo privileged to keep out all Artificers and Handicraftſmen not free of the City. This makes the City ſwarm with Apprentices, brought up to all Manner of Trades. Another great Privilege is the City's ſending four Members to Parliament, which is twice the Number of any other City. But the greateſt Privilege of this City, is, that the Citizens chuſe their own Magiſtrates, keep Courts within themſelves, and make what Bye-Laws they think fit for the Government of it, provided they be not repugnant to the Laws of the Land.

Companies of Tradeſmen.

Privileges of the Citizens.

London-Wall is now for the moſt part decayed, and its Gates not ſo beautiful as ſolid. When this Wall was firſt built, the City of *London* was but three Miles in Compaſs. And now the Suburbs are almoſt ſix Times bigger. However, moſt of the Gates of the old Wall ſtill remain. Amongſt which *Ludgate* and *Newgate* were burnt down by the Fire of *London*, but are now rebuilt more magnificent, and ſtronger than before.

Its Wall and Gates.

The principal Churches of this City, are St. *Paul*'s Cathedral, and the Collegiate Church of *Weſtminſter*. St. *Paul*'s being burnt down by the diſmal Fire of *London*, Care was taken, few Years after, for the rebuilding of it, and a Tax laid upon every Chaldron of Sea-Coals towards it, beſides many liberal Contributions, and thirty thouſand Pounds granted by Act of Parliament. This great and ſtately Fabrick is now brought to Perfection, together with a Dome and two Steeples. On the Weſt End there are two preaching Chapels, and over one of them is to be a Library. Its Length from Eaſt to Weſt, the Steps included, is five hundred and ſeventy Foot; the Breadth from North to South, including both Portico's, three hundred and eleven Foot; and the Dome, from the Surface of the Ground level with the Street, three hundred and thirty-eight Foot. Its Choir, adorned with fine carved Work, is all paved with Marble, and all the Doors of Iron, caſt into Figures. The Stone Work is of *Portland* Stone, next to Marble for Durableneſs. The Collegiate Church of *Weſtminſter* was formerly an Abbey Church, and ſince a Cathedral. This Church lies low, as the whole City of *Weſtminſter* does; and yet is ſeen at a great Diſtance, by reaſon of its Height. King *Edward the Confeſſor* was the Founder of it; King *Henry* the Third rebuilt it from the Ground, and King *Henry* the Seventh added a Chapel to it, which is a Maſter-piece of Art. In this Church, the Coronation of our Kings has been uſually performed, ever ſince the *Norman* Conqueſt. Here are alſo to be ſeen the Tombs of moſt of our Kings and Queens, and others of great Men. *London* has alſo many fair Pariſh Churches, eſpecially ſuch as were built ſince the Fire, being generally decent, neat and beautiful. Beſides the Pariſh Churches, Chapels, and Tabernacles, and the Diſſenters Meeting-Houſes, here are alſo near forty Congregations of Foreign Proteſtants, for the moſt Part *French*;

Churches

Meeting-Houſes Foreigners Congregations

moſt of them conforming to the Church of *England*, and others to *Calvin*'s Diſcipline. The *Jews* have alſo a ſtately Synagogue near *Duke's-Place*.

Of all the Palaces belonging to the Crown, that ſtood within the Precincts of *Weſtminſter*, there are but two left entire, *viz.* St. *James's* and *Somerſet-Houſe*. The Situation of the firſt upon the Park, to which it gives its Name, makes it very delightful. *Somerſet-Houſe* in the *Strand*, was the uſual Reſidence of *Katharine*, the Queen Dowager of the late King *Charles*. Near *Weſtminſter-Abbey* is another Palace, Part of which was burnt down in the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth. That Part which eſcaped the Fire, has been employed ſince for the Uſe of the Lords and Commons aſſembled in Parliament. *Whitehall* was unhappily burnt down in the Reign of King *William*, *Jan.* 4, 1698, and there was ſcarce any Part of it left ſtanding beſides the *Banquetting-Houſe*, a ſtately Pile, now converted into a Chapel. In the *Strand*, near *Somerſet-Houſe*, is the *Savoy*, once a Palace, but fallen to Decay many Years ſince. *Kenſington* Palace, *Hampton-Court*, and *Windſor-Caſtle*, three Royal Houſes, are alſo not far from *London*. As to Royal Statues, that of King *Charles* I. at *Charing-Croſs* is the beſt.

Royal Palaces.

Statues.

The *Tower* is remarkable on ſeveral Accounts. 1. As it is a Fortreſs. 2. For its grand Magazine of Arms, and Office of Ordinance. 3. For its *Mint*, wherein all our Coin is milled. 4. For its Jewel-Houſe. 5. For being the Repoſitory of the antient Records of the Nation. 6. And the uſual Place of Confinement for Perſons of Quality, charged with Miſdemeanor, or any Capital Crime. This Fortreſs, called the *Tower*, from its great white ſquare Tower in the Middle, built by *William the Conqueror*, ſtands near the *Thames*, below Bridge, on the Eaſt Side of the City. It is about a Mile in Compaſs, ſurrounded with an old Wall, and this with a very broad and deep Ditch. It commands both the City and the River; and for its Security, has a conſtant Garriſon in it, commonly of eight Companies of Foot. The *Cuſtom-Houſe*, lies between the *Tower* and the *Bridge*. It is a ſtately, uniform, and commodious Building. The Bridge, over the River, conſiſts of nineteen Stone Arches, twenty Foot between each Arch, and has a Draw-Bridge almoſt in the Middle. Here is on each Side a fine Row of Tradeſmen's Houſes, with Shops well ſtocked. The *Monument* was erected in perpetual Memory of the Fire of *London*, which broke out *September* 2, 1666, and continued burning three Days together. During which it conſumed thirteen thouſand and two hundred Houſes, St. *Paul*'s Cathedral, eighty-ſeven Pariſh Churches, ſix Chapels, the *Cuſtom-Houſe*, the *Royal-Exchange*, *Guild-hall*, and many other ſtately Halls; ſeveral Colleges, Schools, and other publick Edifices; and yet, it is ſaid, there were but eight Perſons burned. The Monument is a round Pillar, and is, perhaps, one of the boldeſt Pieces of Architecture that ever was attempted, all built of ſolid *Portland* Stone, two hundred and two Foot high from the Ground, the Diameter fifteen. It ſtands on a Pedeſtal forty Foot high, and twenty-one Foot ſquare, the Front of it being adorned with ingenious Emblems. Within-ſide is a fair winding Stair-Caſe, with Iron Rails up to the Top, and this graced with an Iron Balcony round the Pillar, yielding a pleaſant Proſpect all over the City. The North and South Sides of the Pedeſtal have each a *Latin* Inſcription, one deſcribing the Deſolation of this City laid in Aſhes, and the other its glorious Reſtoration.

Tower.

Cuſtom-Houſe.

Bridge.

Monument.

The *Royal-Exchange* in *Cornhill*, is the nobleſt Building of this Kind in the Univerſe: Founded by

Ex-

by Sir *Thomas Greſham*, a rich Merchant in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign. It is now rebuilt much more ſtately than it was before the Fire, of *Portland* Stone, with curious Architecture. This is the general Place of Meeting for all Merchants, and others, concerned in Trade and Commerce. The *New-Exchange* in the *Strand* has been worth much to the Earls of *Salisbury*, in the flouriſhing Time of its Trade, which of late Years is very much fallen off. Not far from this ſtands *Exeter-Change*, of a late Erection.

New Exchange

Exeter Change.

As no Foreign City can boaſt of ſo many Squares, ſo none can ſhew ſo many fine Halls, amongſt which *Weſtminſter-Hall* has got the Pre-eminency, a Building two hundred and ſeventy Foot in Length, forty-ſeven in Breadth, and the Height proportionable, all paved with Free-Stone, and the Roof ſupported without any Pillar. This Hall is the common Thorough-fare to the Parliament when ſitting. In Term Time, the Courts of *Chancery*, *King's-Bench*, and *Common-Pleas* ſit here. It is in this Hall the Coronation Feaſt is kept, and where a Court is erected for the ſolemn Trial of any Peer charged with a Capital Crime. *Guild-hall*, the Town-Houſe where the City Courts are held, is alſo a ſtately Piece of Building, finely adorned with Pictures. *Blakwell-Hall*, the Storehouſe for all Sorts of Woollen Cloth, is adjoining to *Guild-hall*. The Traders of *London* being divided into ſixty two Companies, every Company has a Hall. Moſt of theſe Halls look like Palaces, with fine Frontiſpieces, ſpacious Courts, and beautiful Rooms. At *Grocer's-Hall*, in the *Poultry*, was kept, till the beautiful New Bank in *Threadneedle Street* was built, the Bank of *England*, erected to ſupply, by Loans, the Exigencies of the State.

Hall's

Weſtminſter Hall

Guild Hall

Blackwell-Hall

Halls of Companies of Tradeſmen.

Bank of *England*

For the common Law and *Chancery*, there are two Societies, called *Serjeants-Inns*, one in *Fleet-ſtreet*, and the other in *Chancery-Lane*; beſides the *Inner* and the *Middle-Temple* in *Fleet-ſtreet*, *Gray's-Inn* in *Holbourn*, and *Lincoln's Inn* in *Chancery-Lane*. In all which Inns the Lawyers live in a Collegiate Manner, having their Chambers, in which they follow their Buſineſs. Such as are arrived to the higheſt Degree in the common Law, are admitted by the Sovereign as Serjeants at Law, which is a Degree anſwerable to that of Doctor in the civil Law. All the Judges of the *King's-Bench*, *Common-Pleas*, and the *Exchequer*, are choſen by the King out of their Number. The Inns of Court have each a Hall to dine in during the Terms, a Church or Chapel for publick Devotion, a Garden, and other convenient Places to walk in. The two Temples were heretofore the Houſe of the *Engliſh* Knight Templars, who being diſſolved above three hundred Years ago, their Houſe was purchaſed by ſome Profeſſors of the common Law. There are, beſides, eight Inns of *Chancery* belonging to the aforeſaid Inns, viz. *Clifford's-Inn* in *Fleet-ſtreet*, *Clement's Inn*, *New-Inn*, and *Lyon's-Inn*, without the Liberties, belonging to the two Temples; *Thavies* and *Furnival's-Inn* in *Holbourn*, to *Lincoln's-Inn*; *Bernard's* and *Staples' Inn* in *Holbourn*, to *Gray's-Inn*. The whole Company of Gentlemen in each Society, conſiſts of Benchers, Outer Barriſters, and Inner-Barriſter.

Serjeants Inns.

Serjeants at Law.

The two Temples

Inns of Chancery

Near St. *Paul's* Cathedral is a Society of *Civilians*, called *Doctors-Commons*, and founded by Dr. *Harvey*, formerly Dean of the *Arches*: There did commonly reſide the Judges of the *Arches*, *Admiralty*, and the *Prerogative Court*, with divers other eminent *Civilians*; from whoſe former Living together in a Collegiate Manner, this Place got the Name of *Doctors Commons*. In the common Hall of *Doctors Commons* are held ſeveral Courts, under the Juriſdiction of the civil Law; particularly the *High Court of Admiralty*, the *Court of Delegates*, and the *Arches Court of Canterbury*. In *Warwick-Lane*, near *Newgate*, is the *College of Phyſicians*, a fine Building, with a ſpacious Court, an Amphitheatre over the Gate for anatomical Lectures, and a good Library of Books. The Number of Phyſicians belonging to this College, ought not to exceed eighty. The chief of them are called Fellows, and the next Candidates, who fill up the Places of Fellows, as they become vacant by Death or otherwiſe. Next to theſe are the Honorary Fellows; and laſtly, the Licentiates, that is, ſuch as being found capable to practiſe Phyſick, are by the College allowed to practiſe. This College has many great Privileges, by Virtue whereof, no Man may, without Licenſe under the College Seal, practiſe Phyſick in *London*, or within ſeven Miles of it. However, *London*, like other populous Cities, ſwarms with Empyricks, Mountebanks, and others that practiſe Phyſick without Authority.

College of Phyſicians

Greſham-College, in *Biſhopſgate-Street*, was founded by Sir *Thomas Greſham*, who built the *Royal-Exchange*, and gave in Truſt one Moiety of the Revenue thereof to the Mayor and Commonalty of *London*, and the other Moiety to the Company of Mercers: The firſt to find four able Perſons to read within this College, Divinity, Aſtronomy, Muſick, and Geometry; and the laſt three able Men to read Rhetorick, civil Law, and Phyſick. For this Service, each Lecturer has fifty Pounds *per Annum*, beſides a fair Lodging in the College. This College was noted for being the Meeting Place of the Royal Society, (now removed to *Crane-Court*, *Fleet-Street*) eſtabliſhed by a Charter of King *Charles* the Second, in *April*, 663, for promoting natural Knowledge, and uſeful Arts, by Experiments. Accordingly, ſeveral Diſcoveries in Nature have been made by this Society; ſome for Uſe or Profit; and others for the Satisfaction of the Curious, which may prove, in Time, of great Uſe and Benefit. In this College is a Library, conſiſting of the choiceſt Books of Philoſophy, and eſpecially ſuch as are moſt proper for the Deſign of this Society. Here is a Repoſitory of many Curioſities of Nature. The Royal Society conſiſts of near two hundred Fellows, moſt *Engliſh*, and the reſt of ſeveral Nations. This Society is governed by a Council conſiſting of twenty-one Members, ten of them going out yearly. The chief of the Council bears the Name of Preſident. *Sion-College*, near *Cripplegate*, was formerly a Religious Houſe, next a Spital, or Hoſpital, and now it is both a College and an Hoſpital: The College, for the Uſe of all the *London* Miniſters of the Church of *England*; and the Hoſpital, for ten poor Men and ten poor Women. The *College of Heralds*, commonly called the *Heralds-Office*, ſtands upon *St. Bennet's-Hill*, near *Doctors-Commons*, and is ſubordinate to the Earl Marſhal of *England*. There are three Degrees of Heralds in *England*: The firſt called Kings of Arms, the ſecond Heralds, and the third Purſuivants. There are three Kings of Arms, the firſt called *Garter*, the ſecond *Clarencieux*, and the third *Norroy*. The Heralds are ſix in Number, beſides one extraordinary, and are diſtinguiſhed by the Names of *Richmond*, *Lancaſter*, *Cheſter*, *Windſor*, *Somerſet*, and *York*. The Purſuivants are four, called *Blue Mantle*, *Rouge Croſs*, *Rouge Dragon*, and *Port Cullice*. They muſt be all Gentlemen born, and the ſix Heralds are, at their Creation, made Eſquires by the King.

Greſham College.

Royal Society.

Sion College.

College of Heralds

For the Education of Youth, there are in *London* and *Weſtminſter* ſeveral famous publick Schools, beſides

School

beſides an infinite Number of private ones. The principal publick Schools are, 1. The Royal School at *Weſtminſter*, founded by Queen *Elizabeth* for forty Scholars, out of which a certain Number is yearly elected, ſome to *Oxford*, and others to *Cambridge*. 2. St. *Paul*'s School, founded by Dr. *Collet*, for one hundred and fifty-three Children to be taught *gratis*. 3. *Merchant Taylor*'s School, founded by Sir *Thomas White*. In this School alone three hundred Scholars are taught, *viz.* one hundred *gratis*, one hundred for two Shillings and Six-pence a Quarter each, and one hundred more for five Shillings a Quarter. 4. A School at *Mercer's-Chapel* in *Cheapſide*, founded by the Company of Mercers. 5. A School, with a publick Library, near the *Mews*, founded by Dr. *Tennyſon*. In and about *London* and *Weſtminſter*, and within ten Miles of the ſame, there are beſides a great Number of Charity-Schools; of which, all but two have been ſet up by charitable Perſons.

Hoſpitals. Beſides a great many Alms-Houſes, or ſmall Hoſpitals, founded by private Men, here are eight great Hoſpitals, including *Greenwich* and *Chelſea*, a little Way out of Town. 1. *Chriſt's Hoſpital* by *Newgate-Street*, formerly a Convent of Gray Friars, converted by *Edward* VI. into an Hoſpital for poor Children, whoſe Number has formerly amounted to above 1000. Here the Boys have a Grammar-School, from which the aptest Scholars are ſent to the Univerſity. 2. St. *Bartholomew's Hoſpital*, at a ſmall Diſtance from the former, belonging to the Gray Friars, now a great Hoſpital for ſick, maimed, or wounded Poor, who reſort hither for Cure, and are well accommodated, and provided with able Phyſicians and Surgeons, careful Nurſes to look after them, and all other Neceſſaries. There are two other Hoſpitals at the Charge of this, one at *Kingſland*, and the other called the *Lock* in *Southwark*. 3. For the Cure and Maintenance of poor Lunaticks, or diſtracted Perſons, there is in *Moorfields* a ſtately Hoſpital, commonly called *Bedlam*; which for Greatneſs, Beauty, and Conveniencies, is not to be matched in *Europe*. 4. St. *Thomas's Hoſpital* in *Southwark*, on the South Side of the River. The Uſe of this Hoſpital is for the Sick, Maimed, or Wounded, as St. *Bartholomew's*. And adjoining to this is *Guy's Hoſpital*, founded by Mr. *Guy* a Bookſeller. 5. But the nobleſt Foundation is *Sutton's* Hoſpital, commonly called the *Charter Houſe*, as having been a Convent of *Carthuſian* Friars, in the Times of Popery. In the Reign of King *James* I. this Houſe was come by Deſcent to *Thomas* Earl of *Suffolk*, and Mr. *Sutton* purchaſed it from him, at the Rate of 13,000 Pounds. To fit it up for this Uſe, it coſt him about 7000 Pounds more, in all 20,000 Pounds. This done, he endowed it with 4,000 Pounds *per Annum*, now improved to near 6,000. This noble Foundation was ſettled for eighty poor Gentlemen, commonly called Penſioners, there to be maintained with a liberal Allowance, and in a Chriſtian Preparation for their latter End. Alſo for forty Boys, to be taught *Latin* and *Greek*, with a Proviſion for ſome to be put out to Trades, and others qualified for Learning to be ſent to *Cambridge*, where they are allowed each twenty Pounds a Year for eight Years together. And whereas there are nine Church Livings belonging to this Hoſpital, ſuch as are beſt qualified have an immediate Right to them. The Governors of this famous Hoſpital are ſixteen in Number, and moſt of them Perſons of the greateſt Quality. The Maſter of the Hoſpital, who reſides in the Houſe, is one of them. 6. At *Hoxton* is another Hoſpital, which looks more like a Palace than an Hoſpital. This was founded by Alderman *Ask*, of the Company of Haberdaſhers, for the Maintenance of twenty poor old Men of that Company, and twenty poor Boys to be there educated. 7. *Chelſea-College*, a Royal Hoſpital, for the Entertainment of diſabled, or ſuperannuated Officers and Soldiers, ſtands about two Miles out of Town, Weſtward. It is a neat and ſtately Edifice, on the River's Side, with a convenient Landing-Place. The Number of Penſioners or private Soldiers maintained by this Hoſpital, is about 400, who all wear red Coats lined with blue, and are provided with all other Clothes, both Linnen and Woollen; beſides their Lodging, Diet, Waſhing and Firing, and one Day's Pay weekly for ſpending Money. As to the Officers, their Annual Money Allowance is in Proportion to their Dignity. If *Chelſea Hoſpital* may be called ſtately, that of *Greenwich* deſerves the Title of magnificent. This Hoſpital was founded for the Encouragement of Seamen, by making Proviſion for them, when they are diſabled from farther Service by Sea, and not in a Condition to maintain themſelves: As alſo, for the Widows or Children of ſuch diſabled Seamen, and others that happen to be ſlain or drowned in the King's Service. The preſent Number of Penſioners in this Hoſpital is very great, they having been much increaſed of late Years. Their Commons is the ſame as in *Chelſea-Hoſpital*, and their Spending-Money one Shilling *per* Week. The common Warrant-Officers have the beſt Cabbins in the Wards, and ſit at the upper End of the Tables. Their weekly Allowance for Spending-Money is one Shilling and ſix Pence.

There are in *London* two Workhouſes of Note: One called *Bridewell*, which ſtands on the Back-Side of *Fleet-Street*. Here are, at this Time, 140 poor Boys provided for, and brought up to Mechanick Trades, under twenty-two Maſters, who have each of them a convenient Houſe *gratis*. The Houſe finds the Boys Clothes and Bedding, and the Maſters Victuals. This is alſo a Houſe of Correction for ſawcy and unruly Servants, Pick-pockets, Night-walkers, Strumpets, and the like. It is governed in chief by a Preſident, who from Time to Time keeps a Court, for the Puniſhment of Offenders. The other Workhouſe is in *Biſhopſgate-Street*, for employing the Poor, Old and Young, and all grown Vagrants, ſturdy Beggars, and other idle and diſorderly Perſons. Here the Boys and Girls are provided with Lodging, Clothes, and Diet. They are alſo taught to ſow, ſpin, and knit, to read and write, and the Principles of Religion. The grown Vagrants are employed in hard Labour.

As for Priſons, *Newgate*, the County Jail, is both for Debtors and Malefactors: Beſides which, there are the two Compters for Debtors, and *Ludgate* particularly for ſuch as are Freemen of *London*. Alſo *Bridewell* and *New-Priſon* in *Clerkenwell*, the *Gatehouſe* for *Weſtminſter*, and *Bridewell* in *Tuttle-Fields*; and the *Marſhalſea* and *Clink* Priſons in *Southwark*. There are moreover two great Priſons for Debt, one called the *King's-Bench* in *Southwark*, from the Court of *King's-Bench* to which it belongs; and the other, the *Fleet*, near *Fleet-Bridge*, belonging to the Courts of *Chancery*, *Common Pleas*, and *Exchequer*. The *Seſſions-Houſe*, the Place appointed for the Trial of Malefactors, ſtands in the *Old-Bailey*, between *Ludgate* and *Newgate*; from which laſt, the Priſoners are brought openly in Fetters.

The Lord Mayor of *London* hath nothing to do with *Weſtminſter*, nor the High Steward of *Weſtminſter* with *London*, except a Street called *St. Martin's Le Grand*, which is under the Juriſdiction of *Weſtminſter*. The Lord Mayor is yearly choſen upon *Michaelmas-Day*, and enters upon his Office with great Solemnity, upon the twenty-ninth of *October* following. The City Govern-

ment is every where answerable to the National: For, as *England* is governed by King, Lords, and Commons, so is *London* by the Lord-Mayor, Aldermen, and Common Council. So great is the Lord-Mayor of *London*'s Magistracy, that of all the Mayors in *England*, none but he, and the Mayor of *York*, bear the Title of Lord. His Authority reaches, not only over the City, and Part of the Suburbs, but also on the *Thames*, as far as the Mouth of it; and Westward, as far as *Staines-Bridge*. He is the chief Judge of *London*, and has a Power to summon and imprison. His House is a Court, and his Table open to all Comers of Quality. He has under him both great and small Officers. For his Diversion, he has a Kennel of Hounds always maintained, and the Privilege to hunt in *Middlesex*, *Surrey*, and *Sussex*. On the King's Coronation Day, he claims to be the chief Butler. When he appears Abroad, it is always in long Robes, sometimes Purple, sometimes Scarlet, with a great Chain of Gold, and a rich Jewel to it, hanging from his Neck downwards; he is also attended by several Officers. But the Greatness of this Magistrate, upon his Installation Day, is beyond any thing of this Nature elsewhere.

Grandeur of the Lord-Mayor.

Offices of the Aldermen.

For the better Government of the City, it is divided into 26 Wards, and there is an Alderman to every Ward. These 26 Aldermen are next to the Lord-Mayor in Power and Dignity, and each has under him a certain Number of Common-Council-Men, one of them his Deputy, besides Under-Officers. The Aldermen that have been Lord-Mayors, and the three eldest next to them, are Justices of the Peace of the City. There is also a Recorder, who is an Assistant to the Lord-Mayor, as to the Laws and Customs of the City, in which he ought to be well versed. The two Sheriffs of *London* and *Middlesex* are also considerable Magistrates, especially in their Power to impannel Juries. Each Sheriff has under him an Under-Sheriff, six Clerks, a certain Number of Serjeants, and every Serjeant a Yeoman. Lastly, There is a Chamberlain, an Officer of great Trust, being intrusted with the City Cash, and the Orphans Money. Part of his Office does also relate to Apprentices, over whom he has a great Authority. None can be bound without his Licence, nor can any Man set up Shop, or follow his Trade, without being sworn before him.

Recorder.

Sheriffs.

Chamberlain

Court of London

As to the City Courts, most of them are held in *Guild-hall*. The Common-Council, which is the City Parliament, consists of two Orders, *viz.* the Lord-Mayor and Aldermen, representing the House of Lords; and the Common-Council-Men, which represent the House of Commons. These last are in all 231, belonging to their respective Wards, of which some have more, some less. In this Court all Bye Laws are made, which bind all the Citizens. The Court of the Lord-Mayor is a Court of Record, held in the Chamber of *Guild-hall*, where all Actions may be entered, and tried by a Jury, as in other Courts, for Debt, Trespass, &c. arising within the Liberties of *London*, and to any Value. The Court of Aldermen is also a Court of Record, held in the Inner Chamber every *Tuesday* and *Thursday*, except Holy-Days, and in the Time of Sessions of Goal Delivery. The *Hustings* is a most antient Court of Record, always held in *Guild-hall*, before the Lord-Mayor and Sheriffs, the Recorder sitting as Judge with them. The Court of Goal-Delivery is usually held eight Times a Year, at the *Old Bayly*, for the Trial of Malefactors in the County of *Middlesex*. The two Sheriffs Courts are held in *Guild-hall*, the one by one Sheriff, every *Wednesday* and *Friday*, for Actions entered at *Woodstreet-Compter*; the other, by the other Sheriff, every *Thursday* and *Saturday*, for Actions entered at the *Poultry-Compter*. The Chamberlain's Court, or Office, is kept in the Chamber of *Guild-hall*, where he attends commonly every Forenoon. The Court of Conscience or Request, for the Relief of poor Debtors, and of poor Persons having small Debts owing to them, sits in *Guild-hall* every *Wednesday* and *Saturday* in the Forenoon, and consists of two Aldermen and four Commoners. The Orphans Court is held before the Lord-Mayor and Aldermen, who are Guardians to the Children of all Freemen of *London*, that are, or shall be under the Age of 21 Years, at the Time of their Father's Decease. This Court meets but once a Year, *viz.* on the *Monday* Morning after *Mid-Lent-Sunday*. The Court for the Conservation of the *Thames*, is held before the Lord-Mayor, at such Times as he appoints, within the adjacent Counties to *London* and *Westminster*. The Pie-Powder-Court, is held every Hour during the first three Days of *Bartholomew-Fair*: Here are tried all Suits for petty Matters, and Offences there committed. Besides the Courts aforesaid, every Alderman keeps a Court in his Ward, called a Wardmote. The Traders Companies have also their Courts, called Hall-motes.

Military Government.

This City being by Charter a County Corporate, the Power of a Lord Lieutenant is in the Lord-Mayor and Aldermen, who order the City Militia with the same Power that other Lord Lieutenants have in their respective Counties. Which Militia consists of 6 Regiments of Foot, making about 9,000 Men, besides 2 Regiments of the Hamlets of the *Tower*, and the Regiment of *Southwark*. But in Case of Necessity, the Auxiliaries are raised, consisting of Apprentices, which make 6 Regiments more. For a Nursery of Commanders there is a Company of 600 choice Men, commanded in chief by a Leader appointed by the Sovereign. This Company, called the Artillery-Company, is exercised in the *Artillery-Ground*, a spacious Place, near *Moorfields*, walled about for that Purpose. In Church Matters, this City is governed in chief by the Bishop of *London*; to whom is committed the Care of the whole Clergy of this Place: For whose Maintenance there is in most Parishes a Parsonage, or a Vicarage-House, with a competent Allowance. But where-ever there is a Lecturer and a Reader, besides the Incumbent, they have their Maintenance by a voluntary Contribution from the Parishioners.

Church Government.

Parish in Westminster

Westminster itself had but one Parish, called St. *Margaret's*, till the new Church of St. *John* was built; but the Liberties consist of six Parishes, *viz.* St. *Martin's in the Fields*, St. *Clement's*, St. *Mary Le Savoy*, St. *Paul's Covent-Garden*, St. *James's*, and St. *Anne's*. As for St. *Giles's* Parish, it belongs neither to *London* nor *Westminster*.

Its Government in Civil Matters.

The Dean and Chapter of *Westminster* are vested with all Manner of Jurisdiction, Civil and Ecclesiastical: But the Management of the Civil Part is left in the Hands of Laymen, confirmed by the Dean and Chapter: The principal of which is the High-Steward, who is usually a Nobleman, and holds his Office during Life. To officiate for him, he chuses an Under-Steward, a Man versed in the Law. He, with the other Magistrates, keeps the Court-Leet, or Town-Court. Next to whom is the Head Bailiff, who is instead of a Sheriff. In the Court Leet he sits next to the Under Steward. There is also a High-Constable, chosen by the Court-Leet, and having all other Constables under his Command. Lastly, here are 14 Burgesses, 7 for the City, and 7 more for the Liberties, each having an Assistant. Their Office is much like that of the Aldermen of the City of *London*, having each a proper Ward under his Jurisdiction.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of the English Britons; *their Original, Language, Complexion, Constitution, Religion, Way of Living, Trade, the Orders and Degrees among them,* &c.

Original of the *English.*

THE *Engliſh Britons* are an aggregate Body of ſeveral Nations: But chiefly of *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*, not without ſome Mixture of *Roman* and *Britiſh* Blood.

Their Language.

Their Speech is likewiſe a Compound of ſeveral Languages, but chiefly the *Saxon*, *Latin*, and *French*; the firſt being properly the Stock in which the others are ingrafted.

Complexion.

Their Complexion anſwers to their Climate: For they are neither Sun burnt, as in hot Countries, nor Weather-beaten, as in cold Regions. No Country in *Europe* can outvie *England*, for Charmingneſs of Youth, comely Stature, and graceful Countenance in Men, or Beautifulneſs in Women.

Conſtitution.

The *Engliſh* are generally of a ſtrong Conſtitution, but it is commonly ſpoiled by Education. When they want their uſual Food, good Bread and Meat eſpecially, they are preſently to ſeek, and cannot make ſuch Shift as other Nations.

Temper.

Their Temper is naturally ſuitable to their Climate; not ſo fiery as the *French*, nor ſo cold as the Northern People. They are for the moſt Part reſerved, and leſs Communicative than the *French*: And as their Friendſhip is not eaſily gained, ſo when once got not eaſily loſt. So great is the Tenderneſs of *Engliſhmen* for the fair Sex in general, that every where they give them the Precedency, and put them the leaſt of any Nation to Hardſhip and Drudgery. Valour is a peculiar Character of the *Engliſh*, who never draw their Sword in vain; and their Conduct anſwers to their Courage.

Genius.

In Genius, they yield to no Nation in *Europe*. None has been more induſtrious to improve the Mechanick Arts; and the World to this Day is obliged to 'em for many of their uſeful Inventions and Diſcoveries. Here are made the beſt Clocks, Watches, Barometers, Thermometers, Air-Pumps, and all Sorts of Mathematical Inſtruments. For building neat and convenient Houſes, upon a little Spot of Ground, they have a ſingular Talent; and in the Art of Scaffolding they ſurpaſs all Nations. As to liberal Arts, where ſhall one find a People ſo generally knowing? Here Experimental Philoſophy is improved to a Wonder, and no foreign Church is better ſtock'd with Divines than *England*, which makes their Works ſo much in requeſt beyond Sea.

Religion of the *Engliſh.*

'Tis the Opinion of the learned Dr. *Stillingfleet*, that St. *Paul* was the firſt Founder of a Church in this Iſland. But by reaſon of Perſecution, or for want of a Supply of Preachers, Chriſtianity did not flouriſh here till the Reign of *Lucius*, towards the End of the ſecond Age: By whoſe Example, and the Diligence of the Preachers, Chriſtianity ſoon ſpread over the Iſland. The *Britons* had Biſhops of their own, without any Dependency on the See of *Rome*. But, when the *Saxons* came to be poſſeſſed of this Iſland, and the Natives were forced to take Shelter amongſt the Mountains of *Wales*, the *Chriſtian* Faith fled with them; 'till, about the Year 596, *Auſtin* the Monk being ſent to preach the Goſpel here, the Work proſpered ſo well, that all the *Saxons* were by degrees converted, and *Auſtin* made the firſt Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, with a Subjection to the Church of *Rome*. Thus the Church of *England* continued ſubject to the *Roman* Church, till the Reign of *Henry* VIII. who, being juſtly diſguſted at the Pope, re-aſſumed the Power of the *Chriſtian Britiſh* Kings, and by that Means laid the Ground for a Reformation: In which a great Progreſs was made in the next Reign, being that of *Edward* VI. Queen *Mary* ſucceeding her Brother, reſtored Popery. But her Siſter, the famous Queen *Elizabeth*, coming next to the Throne, reſtored the Reformed Religion.

The Doctrinal Points of this Religion conſiſt of 39 Articles, being the Confeſſion of Faith of the Church of *England*. Not only the Epiſcopal Government is retained, but alſo ſuch Rites and Ceremonies as are appointed by the Church, both for Decency's Sake, and to invite the Papiſts to come over, are allowable. A great Number of Papiſts nevertheleſs kept to their Religion, and thoſe Extrinſecals proved ſuch a ſtumbling Block to others of the Reformed Party, as made at laſt a Schiſm in the Church: For many, in thoſe Days called Puritans, rather than comply to thoſe Ceremonies, ſeparated themſelves from the Church, keeping her Fundamentals, but renouncing both her Diſcipline and Rites: Therefore called Diſſenters, or Nonconformiſts, or Separatiſts; ſome of them Presbyterians, ſome Independents, and others Anabaptiſts; all which together make no inconſiderable Party. And beſides theſe, there is another particular Sect of thoſe we call Quakers, from their former Way of quaking and groaning at their Meetings, when they waited for the Spirit. To prevent the Growth of Diſſenters, ſevere Laws were made againſt them, that have ſometimes been ſtrictly put into Execution. This created a Feud that laſted till the late happy Revolution; when the Diſſenters joining with the Church, obtained an Indulgence, which ſtands on the Foundation of an Act of Parliament. The *Roman* Catholicks, commonly called Papiſts, and, by the Law, *Popiſh* Recuſants, grew formidable in the Reign of the late King *James*. There are divers Laws in Force againſt them, but ſeldom put in Execution. As for *Jews*, we have many in *London*, where they are tolerated by Royal Permiſſion.

Diſſenters. Quakers. Papiſts. Jews.

Modern Way of Building.

One would think the Men of former Ages were afraid of Light and good Air: But now the Caſe is alter'd, and nothing can be neater than the modern Buildings, with lightſome Staire-Caſes, lofty Cielings, Cloſets in moſt Rooms, and Saſh-Windows as high as the Cieling. The Uſe of Hangings is partly laid aſide, ſince Wainſcotting came into Faſhion; much fitter for a moiſt Country.

Diet.

In Point of Diet, the *Engliſh* live moſt upon Butchers Meat, as the moſt proper Nouriſhment for this Country; and all edible Roots and Herbs are uſed only as a Supplement. *French* Soops and Kickſhaws, Veniſon, &c. are ſeldom eaten but by the better Sort. In Paſtry Work, but chiefly Veniſon-Paſties, they exceed all Nations. Their Variety of Puddings, their rich Plum-

Plumb Porridge, *Chriſtmas*-Pies, and Brawn, are properly *Engliſh* Diſhes, hardly known elſewhere. Tho' Malt-Drink be their uſual Liquor, yet vaſt Quantities of Wines are conſumed here. For Pleaſantneſs of Colour, Strength, and Palatableneſs, they have Beer and Ale, little inferior to Wine; beſides Cyder, Punch, and other Liquors. Coffee and Tea, two ſober Liquors, are of common Uſe in *England*. Punch is alſo much uſed, eſpecially by Sea-faring Men. The Uſe of Tobacco is very Univerſal, and not improper for ſo moiſt a Climate. For Raiment, the common Wear amongſt Men is plain Cloth and Drugget, without any coſtly Ornament. But the fair Sex ſpare for nothing to make the beſt Appearance. *England* is too temperate a Country to uſe Stoves, as in cold Climates. A Chimney-Fire, of Wood, or Pit-Coals, is much better, and apter to cheer up the Spirits. The *Engliſh* Exerciſes and Recreations, common with other Nations, are Hunting, Hawking, Fowling, Fiſhing, Shooting with Bows and Arrows, Dancing, Muſick, Stage-Plays, *&c.* Playing at Mall, ſo frequent in *France*, and playing at Tennis, are much diſuſed in *England*. But Bowling is very much uſed, for which there are Bowling-Greens kept very neat, peculiar to the *Engliſh*. And ſo is the Recreation of Paddock-Courſes, Horſe-Races, Cock-Fighting; and with the common People, Leaping, Wreſtling, Bear-Baiting, Bull-Baiting, Prizes, Cudgels, Foot-Ball in froſty Weather, and Throwing at Cocks in *Lent*. The Art of Ringing Bells is peculiar to the *Engliſh*; but the *Dutch* excel the *Engliſh* in their muſical Chimes. The *Engliſh* Feſtival Days are particularly the Holy-Days at *Chriſtmas*, *Eaſter*, and *Whitſuntide*. They have alſo publick Days of Rejoicing upon a civil Account; particularly the Reigning King's Birth-Day, Proclamation-Day, and Coronation-Day. The fifth of *November* is alſo a Thankſgiving-Day, for the Deliverance of King *James* I. and the Parliament, at the Point of being blown up by Conſpirators; as is alſo *May* 29th, for the Reſtauration of Monarchy. As to Faſting Days, the Church of *England* has, indeed, appointed *Lent*, as a particular Time of Faſting, but not wholly to abſtain from Fleſh at that Time. However, many Members of the Church of *England* abſtain from Fleſh on *Wedneſdays* and *Fridays* in *Lent*; but *Good-Friday*, particularly, is obſerved with Faſting. The 30th of *January*, being the Day when King *Charles* I. was martyr'd, is appointed by Law to be obſerved with Faſting. The ſecond of *September*, being the Day when *London* was burnt, has been obſerved as a Faſt ever ſince, by the Citizens thereof. To deprecate God's Judgments, and implore his Mercy, the Sovereign appoints ſolemn Faſts, when he thinks proper; as he does publick Thankſgivings, for ſignal Bleſſings. The *Engliſh Britons* have a particular Cuſtom on *Valentine*'s Day, *Feb.* 14. which ſometimes introduces a Match, and is grounded upon the Inſtinct of Animals, which about this Time of the Year, begin to couple. Upon *March* 1ſt, being St. *David*'s Day, the *Welſh* wear a Leek on their Hats. The King himſelf wears one. *November* 30. being St. *Andrew*'s Day, the *Scots* wear a Blue Croſs on the Fore-part of their Hats.

Pleaſant Drinks.

Tobacco.

Exerciſes and Recreations.

Feſtival Days.

Faſting Days.

Particular Cuſtoms.

As to the *Engliſh* Computation of Time, the natural Day begins with them, as with moſt Parts of *Europe*, at Midnight. But the Year begins with them properly on *Lady* Day, *March* 25th, and they date accordingly all their publick Writings; tho' they allow the Year, by the Cycles of the Sun and Moon, to begin *January* 1. and commonly call it *New Year's* Day. The *Engliſh* Epoch is from the Time of our Saviour's Birth, but they keep the old *Julian* Stile; whereas all Popiſh, and ſome Proteſtant States, go by the New, otherwiſe called the *Gregorian* Stile. By this New Stile, they go now 11 Days before us.

Computation of Time.

The Diſeaſes the *Engliſh* are moſt ſubject to, are chiefly the Rickets, the Scurvy, and the Conſumption. The firſt incident to Children, the Scurvy to moſt People more or leſs, and the Conſumption to many. There is no Country, perhaps, where Rheums and Coughs are more predominant, eſpecially in the Winter. Agues and Rheumatiſms are alſo very riſe, eſpecially near the Sea: But Fevers are not ſo frequent, as in hot Countries. From the Gout, Stone, Gravel, Cholick, and other Diſeaſes, *England* is no more free than other Nations: But Surfeits are more frequent, the *Engliſh* being too apt to indulge their Appetites. The Plague, formerly ſo frequent in *England*, as to return once in 20 or 30 Years, has not afflicted it ſince the Year 1665 and 1666. In the three Reigns of *Henry* VII. *Henry* VIII. and *Edward* VI. this People was viſited with an odd Kind of Diſeaſe, called the Sweating Sickneſs, which affected the *Engliſh* any where beyond Sea, without touching the Natives. Whence it came to be called in *Latin*, *Sudor Anglicus*, as being peculiar to the *Engliſh*.

Diſeaſes.

The Trade of *England* is carried on two Ways, at Home and Abroad. At Home, by Land and Water. By Land, all Proviſions and Commodities are convey'd in Waggons, and upon Pack-Horſes; by Water, either by Sea, or upon navigable Rivers. This vaſt Tranſport of Proviſions and Commodities, both by Land and Water, employs a World of Waggoners, Seamen, and Watermen. To receive what comes by Land, we may reckon 150 great Inns at *London*, where a vaſt Number of Porters are employ'd to load and unload the Waggons, and to carry the Parcels where they are directed. As to the Conveyance by Water, one may judge of the vaſt Number of Ships, Mariners, and Watermen, employ'd in *England*, by the Sea-Coal Trade only, which takes up conſtantly 500 great Veſſels.

Home Trade.

If the Home Trade be ſo prodigious, we may reaſonably conclude our Foreign Trade to be far beyond it. Not but that *England* may very well ſubſiſt without it. For ſhe yields all Things neceſſary for Life; which cannot be ſaid of *Holland*, her Rival in Point of Trade. But as Foreign Trade is uſeful to employ Artiſts, and improve Manufactures; ſo 'tis an effectual Means to inrich the Nation, and make it formidable. The principal Commodities of the Growth of *England* are her Wooll, of which Cloth and Stuffs are made, to the Sum of two Millions Sterling *per Annum*. Her Tin, Lead, Copper, Pit-Coal, great Guns, Bombs, Carcaſſes, *&c.* for one Million. Moreover, ſhe exports abundance of Corn, Red-Herrings, ſmoak'd Pilchards, and Salmon; beſides abundance of Leather and Saffron. Many other of her Manufactures are alſo in great Requeſt, particularly her Sattin, Damask, Velvet, Plush, Locks, Pendulums, and Watches; and all Sorts of Mathematical Inſtruments, *&c.* great Quantities of which are exported. Beſides the great Conſumption *England* makes of the Products of the New World, particularly Sugar, Indigo, Cocoa Nuts, Tobacco, *&c.* ſhe ſpares to the Sum of half a Million a Year for other Parts of *Europe*. Her Trade with *Ireland*, and Fiſhery with *Newfoundland*, is alſo very beneficial to her. With *Ireland*, by exporting her Wooll, Beef, Hides, Tallow, Butter, and Fiſh.

Foreign Trade.

The foreign Trade is regulated chiefly at *London*, by ſeveral Companies of Merchants, impowered, by Royal Authority, to make ſuch Regu-

Companies of Merchants.

lations for the Improvement of their reſpective Trade, as they ſhall think convenient. The principal are, 1. The *Eaſt-India* Companies, the Old and the New, now united together. Their Trade extends from *Perſia* to *China*. In *Perſia* they have two Factories, one at *Iſpahan*, and the other at *Gambroon*. In *India*, a great many, particularly at Fort *St. George*, and Fort *St. David*; *Achim*, and *York* Forts in the Iſle of *Sumatra*; *Calicut*, *Surat*, and *Pettipolee* on the Coaſt of *Coromandel*; *Rajama* in *Malabar*, and the Iſle of *Bombay*, &c. and in *China*, *Amoy*, *Canton*, and *Tunqueen*. 2. The *Levant*, or *Turkey* Company, ſettled by the famous Queen *Elizabeth*. 3. The Company of Merchant-Adventurers, the moſt antient of all, firſt ſettled by King *Edward* I. now only allowed to export Cloths ready made. 4. The *Ruſſia* Company, eſtabliſhed in the Reign of *Edward* VI. upon the Diſcovery made by the *Engliſh* of the Way to *Archangel*, which formerly was counted impracticable. 5. The Company called the *Eaſt-Land* Company, whoſe Trade is upon the *Baltick*, in *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Poland*. 6. The Royal *African* Company, ſettled by King *Charles* II. who gave them full Power to trade all over the Weſtern Coaſt of *Africk*. This Company has built, at their own Charge, many Forts upon that Coaſt, for the Security of their Trade. 7. The *South-Sea* Company, ſo called from its Trade to the great *South-Sea*, on the Weſt of *America*. We paſs by the *Green-Land* Company for Whale-Fiſhing, *Hudſon*'s Bay Company, and others. 'Tis computed, that what is brought in only by the *Eaſt-India* Company, after we have ſupplied ourſelves, amounts to 500,000 *l. per Annum*. And what is tranſported hither from the *Britiſh* Plantations in *America*, beſides the Fiſh, Pipe-Staves, Maſts, Beaver, &c. from the North Parts of that Continent, 400,000 *l. per Annum*. For promoting the Trade of *Great-Britain*, and for inſpecting and improving his Majeſty's Plantations, there is a Council of Trade eſtabliſhed.

Council of Trade

Coin

The *Britiſh* Coin, now Current, is of two Metals, Gold and Silver. The Gold is either a Guinea, or an Half Guinea. The Silver Coin is of the beſt Silver, called Sterling; of which there have been formerly many Species, now reduced to 4, *viz.* Crowns, Half Crowns, Shillings, and Sixpences. We have likewiſe abundance of Copper Farthings and Half Pence, which have been coined for the Convenience of ſmall Change. What we call a Noble, is 6*s.* 8*d.* a Mark, 13*s.* 4*d.* an Angel, 10*s.* but they are not to be ſeen in Specie. We don't uſe the Word Pound under 3*l.* which is 60*s.* 'Tis preſumed there are in *England* Six Millions of coined Gold, and Ten Millions of Silver; in all, Sixteen Millions. The Office of the Mint, where all our Money is coined, and to which belong ſeveral Officers, is kept in the *Tower* of *London*; but when the hammered Coin was called in to be milled, 5 other Mints were erected, *viz.* at *Briſtol*, *Cheſter*, *Exeter*, *Norwich*, and *York*.

Weights

The Weights and Meaſures are the ſame all over *England*, according to the King's Standard in the *Exchequer*. The Weights are of two Sorts, one called Troy Weight, and the other Averdupois; the firſt containing 12 Ounces, and the other 16, in the Pound. The Ounce Averdupois is lighter than the other; but the Averdupois Pound is more than the Troy Pound, for 14 Pounds of that are equal to 17 Troy. By Troy Weight are weighed Jewels, Gold, Silver, Bread, Corn, and Liquors; and by the other Mercery and Grocery Ware, Wooll, Metals, Tallow, and the like, of which 100 Weight comes to 112 Pounds.

Meaſures

Meaſures are either applicative or receptive; that is, for Things meaſured outwardly or inwardly. Of the firſt Sort we have an Inch, a Foot, a Yard, an Ell, a Geometrical Place, a Fadom, a Rod, and a Pole or Perch. The receptive Meaſure is either for liquid or dry Things. Of the firſt, we have a Pint, a Quart, a Pottle, and a Gallon. Wine Meaſures are ſhorter than thoſe of Ale and Beer, 4 Gallons of theſe making 5 of Wine Meaſure. For dry Things, ſuch as Corn or Grain, the Gallon is of a Size between the Wine and Beer Gallon; above which are the Peck, the Buſhel, the Comb, the Quarter, the Laſt, or Wey.

Beſides the Convenience of Travelling by Sea, or on Rivers, no Nation in the World is better accommodated, either with Horſes or Coaches. The firſt ſo common in *England*, as to be uſed even by the vulgar Sort. If a Man's Occaſions require the utmoſt Speed, he has the Convenience of Poſt-Horſes, to be ſhifted at every Poſt Stage. The Roads are alſo much frequented with Coaches: eſpecially the Neighbourhood of *London*, ſome belonging to Gentlemen, and others being either Hackney or Stage-Coaches. Theſe ſet out from *London* at certain Times for all the noted Towns in *England*, and return from thence with great Speed. As to the Poſt, for Intercourſe of Letters, there is a General Office in *Lombard-Street*, *London*, formerly managed in chief by one Poſt-Maſter-General, and now in the Hands of two, who have under 'em 182 Deputy-Poſt-Maſters in *England* and *Scotland*, moſt of 'em keeping regular Offices in their Stages, and Sub-Poſt-Maſters in their Branches. There is alſo a General Office in *Ireland* for that Kingdom, which is kept in *Dublin*. And ſuch is the Diſpoſition of Poſtages, that there is no conſiderable Market-Town in *England*, but has an eaſy and certain Conveyance for all Letters to and from the ſaid Office, in the due Courſe of the Mails every Poſt. This Conveyance is ſo expeditious, that every 24 Hours the Poſt goes 120 Miles; and in 5 or 6 Days an Anſwer may be had from a Place 300 Miles diſtant from the Writer. The Poſt-Days to ſend Letters from *London* to any Part of *England* and *Scotland*, are *Tueſdays*, *Thurſdays*, and *Saturdays*. And the Returns certain on *Mondays*, *Wedneſdays*, and *Fridays*. But to *Wales* and *Ireland* the Poſt goes only twice a Week, *viz.* *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*; and comes from *Wales* every *Monday* and *Friday*: But from *Ireland* the Return is uncertain, becauſe it depends upon Winds. When the Court is in the Country, the Poſt goes every Day to the Place where it reſides. The ſame it is with *Kent*, the Univerſities, and the uſual Stations of the Royal Fleet, as the *Downs*, *Spithead*, &c. For Foreign Intelligence, in Times of Peace, *Mondays* and *Tueſdays* are the Poſt-Days for *France*, *Spain*, and *Italy*: *Tueſdays* and *Fridays* for *Holland*, *Germany*, *Denmark*, and *Sweden*. On *Mondays* and *Fridays*, the Poſt goes alſo for *Flanders*, and from thence to *Germany*, *Denmark*, and *Sweden*. Queen *Anne* was alſo pleaſed, for the Encouragement of Trade and Commerce, to appoint Boats to convey Letters and Packets from *England* as far as the *Weſt Indies*. One of theſe Boats ſets out from the *Thames* on the laſt *Thurſday* of the Month, particularly for the Iſles of *Barbadoes*, *Montſerrat*, *Nevis*, *St. Chriſtopher*, *Antego*, and *Jamaica*.

Poſt

The People of *England* are generally divided into Laity and Clergy; and the firſt ſub-divided into Nobility, Gentry, and Commonalty. The Law of *England*, indeed, makes no Diſtinction of Laity, but that of Nobles and Commons: So that the Gentry of *England* are, by Law, but the Flower of the Commonality. By the Nobility, we mean only the Temporal Peers of the Realm, being

Degrees of the Laity

No-

ing Lords of Parliament; of whom there are 5 Degrees, diſtinguiſhed by the ſeveral Titles of Duke, Marquis, Earl, Viſcount, and Baron. A Duke is created by Patent, Cincture of Sword, Mantle of State, Impoſition of a Cap and Coronet of Gold on his Head, and a Verge of Gold put into his Hand. He is called his Grace, a Title formerly given to the Kings of *England*. A Duke's eldeſt Son is called Lord Marquis; the younger Sons by their Chriſtian Names, with the Title of Lord prefix'd, and all his Daughters Ladies. A Marquis and an Earl are created as a Duke, but with Difference in their Coronets. All the Sons of a Marquis are Lords by the Courteſy of *England*, and all his Daughters Ladies. And as a Duke's eldeſt Son bears the Title of a Marquis, ſo an Earl's bears that of a Viſcount: But the younger Sons of an Earl are but Eſquires, tho' all his Daughters be Ladies. Viſcounts and Barons are made by Patent, the laſt ſometimes by Writ, when called to the Houſe of Lords. None of their Sons bear the Title of Lord, nor any of their Daughters that of Lady: Therefore the eldeſt Son of the firſt Viſcount, is looked upon as the firſt Gentleman, and his eldeſt Daughter as the firſt Gentlewoman, without a Title, in *England*. All Peers of *England* keep their Rank according to the Date of their Patents. Their Ladies, and their Sons Ladies, keep amongſt them the Rank of their Husbands. A *Scots* Nobleman takes Place next to the *Engliſh* of his Rank; and an *Iriſh* Nobleman, after a *Scots* Peer of his Rank. But there are ſome High Officers, who, by Virtue of their Office, precede even all Dukes that are not of the Royal Blood, whatever be their Quality otherwiſe; *viz.* the Lord Chancellor, or Lord Keeper, the Lord High Treaſurer, the Lord Preſident of the Privy Council, and the Lord Privy Seal. And others that take Place only of all that are of that Degree, particularly the Lord Great Chamberlain of *England*, the Earl Marſhal, the Lord High Admiral, and the Lord Chamberlain of the King's Houſhold. A Secretary of State, being a Baron, takes Place of all Barons, that are not in any of theſe high Stations. But if he be above a Baron, he only keeps the Rank his Quality gives him. The Nobility of *England* enjoy many great Privileges, the Principal of which are theſe that follow: 1. That they are free from all Arreſts for Debts, as being the King's Hereditary Counſellors. But Execution may be taken upon their Lands and Goods. For the ſame Reaſon they are free from all Attendance at Courts-Leet, or Sheriffs-Turns. 2. In Criminal Cauſes, they are only tried by their Peers; who give in their Verdict, not upon Oath, as other Juries, but only upon their Honour. 3. To prevent the ſpreading of any Scandal upon Peers, or any great Officer of the Realm, there is an expreſs Law, called *Scandalum Magnatum*, by which any Man convicted, is condemned to an arbitrary Fine, and to remain in Priſon till the ſame be paid. 4. Upon any great Trial in a Court of Juſtice, a Peer may come into the Court, and ſit there covered.

Of the Knights of the Garter.

Of all the Secular Orders in the Chriſtian World, that of the Garter is the moſt noble and moſt antient; for it was inſtituted in 1350, by *Edward* III. who conquered *France* and *Scotland*, and brought home their Kings Priſoners. 'Tis called, The Order of the Garter, becauſe this was the only Part of the whole Habit of the Order worn at firſt. And this Motto was order'd to be wrought on the Garter, *Honi ſoit qui mal y penſe*, Shame be to him that Evil thinks. This honourable Society conſiſts of the Sovereign, the King or Queen of *Great Britain*, and 25 Companions, called Knights of the Garter. And whereas St. *George* is the Patron of *England*, 'tis upon St. *George*'s Day they are uſuall inſtalled, in the noble Chapel of the Caſtle of *Windſor*, with great Pomp and Magnificence. The Garter is worn by the Knights on the left Leg. The ſame is blue, deck'd with Gold, Pearls, and precious Stones, with a Buckle of Gold. But inſtead of it, they commonly wear but a large blue Ribbon. They alſo wear a broad blue Ribbon hanging over their left Shoulder, with St. *George*'s Picture at the Bottom of it, beſides ſeveral other Ornaments, either conſtant or occaſional. The Biſhop of *Wincheſter* is the Prelate of the Garter, the Biſhop of *Saliſbury* Chancellor, and the Dean of *Windſor* Regiſter. The principal King at Arms, called Garter, is the chief Lay Officer of this Society. There are in the Caſtle of *Windſor* 26 decay'd Gentlemen, commonly called the Poor Knights of *Windſor*, who have a liberal Maintainance at the Charge of the College. There have been of this Order, 8 Emperors, above 20 foreign Kings, and many more inferior Princes.

Gentry

Next to the Peers of the Realm, who properly are the Nobles of *England*, we come to the Gentry, conſiſting of Knights, Eſquires, and Gentlemen without Title. Beſides the Knights of the Garter, here are Knights Baronets, Knights of the Bath, and Knights Batchelors, all diſtinguiſhed from the reſt of the Gentry by the Title of Sir prefix'd to their Chriſtian Names. Baronets are the firſt among the Gentry, and the only Knighthood that is Hereditary. This Honour was firſt inſtituted in the Year 1611, by King *James* I. who limited their Number to 200. But his Succeſſors did not tie themſelves up to that Rule. The Knights of the Bath are ſo called from their Bathing, uſed before they were created. *Henry* IV. was the Founder of this Order; which was reviv'd in the late Reign. They wear a Scarlet Ribbon, belt-wiſe. Knights Batchelors are the moſt common, and therefore the leſs eſteem'd. Formerly this Honour was beſtowed only upon Sword-men for their military Service, or upon Noblemens Sons. But of later Times it has been ſo frequently conferr'd upon Lawyers, Phyſicians, Merchants, Painters, Mathematicians, and others, that the Kingdom ſwarms with this Sort of Knights. All Knights Wives bear the Title of Lady, which gives 'em a Precedency over Eſquires and Gentlemens Wives. Eſquires are properly the younger Sons of Earls, the Sons of Viſcounts and Barons, the eldeſt Sons of the younger Sons of Peers, the eldeſt Sons of Knights, and their eldeſt Sons for ever. There are alſo Eſquires created by the King. And thoſe that are in publick Offices, or in any eminent Station, ſuch as Juſtices of the Peace, Mayors of Towns, Counſellors at Law, Serjeants of the ſeveral Offices in the King's Court, and other noted Officers, are alſo reputed Eſquires. Gentlemen are thoſe properly, who, being deſcended of a good Family, bear a Coat of Arms, without any particular Title. Formerly Trading degraded a Gentleman, and now a thriving Tradeſman becomes a Gentleman by the happy Return of his Trade. As to Merchants, the Founders of Trade, and of the Nation's Wealth, they deſerve indeed to be ranked amongſt Gentlemen: Therefore many Gentlemen born, take upon them this Profeſſion, without any Prejudice or Blemiſh to their Birth. Nay, 'tis common with us, for Gentlemens and Merchants Sons and Daughters to intermarry. In ſhort, the Title of Gentlemen is given in *England* to all that diſtinguiſh themſelves from the common Sort of People, by a good Garb, genteel Air, good Education, Wealth, or Learning. The younger

Sons

Sons of Viſcounts and Barons, are preceded by ſuch Privy-Counſellors as are but Gentlemen, by the Chancellor of the *Exchequer*, the Chancellor of the *Dutchy* of *Lancaſter*, the Lord Chief Juſtice of th *Common-Pleas*, the Lord Chief Baron of the *Exchequer*, and the other Judges.

Inferior Sort of People

By the inferior Sort of People, we mean properly ſuch as get their Livelihood either in a mechanick, or ſervile Way; as ordinary Tradeſmen, Mariners, Husbandmen, inferior Servants, Labourers, &c. But there is a middle Sort, between the Degree of a Gentleman and theſe, *viz.* Yeomen, and Copyholders. Thoſe are called Yeomen, or Freeholders, that have Land of their own to a good Value, and husband it themſelves. The Copyholders are much of the ſame Nature; a Copyhold being a Kind of Inheritance. The meaner Sort of People are the happieſt People in *Europe* of their Rank, and the leaſt liable to Oppreſſion from the Sovereign.

Clergy.

As the Laity of *England* conſiſts of Nobility, Gentry, and Commonalty; ſo the Clergy is divided into Biſhops, Dignitaries, and inferior Clergy.

Of the Biſhops, and their Dioceſes.

England and *Wales* conſiſting of 26 Dioceſſes, there are accordingly 26 Dioceſans, or Biſhops, beſides the Biſhop of *Man*, who is no Peer of the Realm, as the other Biſhops are. Two of thoſe Biſhops having a Super-intendency over the whole Church of *England*, are therefore called Archbiſhops, one of *Canterbury*, and the other of *York*; and their Provinces accordingly. The firſt of which far exceeds the laſt; for of 26 Dioceſſes it takes 22, *viz.* 18 in *England*, and 4 in *Wales*. The Biſhops are the Overſeers of the Clergy and People committed to their Charge.

Their Power and Privileges.

They have in chief the Power of Ordination, tho' they always perform it jointly with ſome other Prieſts. The Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* has a Kind of Super-eminency over the Archbiſhop of *York*: For he has Power to ſummon him to a National Synod, or Convocation. The Archbiſhop of *York* is called Primate of *England*: But the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* is Primate of All *England*. They are both ſtiled Moſt Reverend, in a ſuperlative Manner, and honoured with the Title of Grace. The Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* is the firſt Peer of the Realm, next to the Royal Family, and takes place of the greateſt Officers of the Crown. Nor does any one of theſe, except the Lord-Chancellor, or Lord-Keeper, ſtep between his Grace and the Archbiſhop of *York*. To the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* it properly belongs to crown the King, to conſecrate a new-made Biſhop, and to call Provincial Synods, according to the King's Writ directed to him for that Purpoſe. The Biſhop of *London* is accounted his Provincial Dean, the Biſhop of *Wincheſter* his Chancellor, and the Biſhop of *Rocheſter* his Chaplain. To decide all Differences in Eccleſiaſtick Matters, he holds ſeveral Courts. The Archbiſhop of *York* has alſo many Prerogatives, and holds ſeveral Courts.

The Rank of Biſhops.

Next to them the Biſhops of *London*, *Durham*, and *Wincheſter*, have always the Precedence; and all other Biſhops according to the Priority of their Conſecration. Whereas ſome Biſhopricks have but a ſmall Income, the Biſhop in that Caſe is uſually provided with ſome good Living beſides. The Biſhop of *Rocheſter*, being Dean of *Weſtminſter*, has a much better Revenue from his Deanery, than from his Biſhopprick. All the Biſhops are called Lords Spiritual, Fathers in God, Right Reverend, and have the Title of Lordſhip. Theſe have not only the ſame Privileges as the Temporal Lords, but alſo ſome peculiar Prerogatives, and thoſe of a high Nature.

Dignify'd Clergy.

By the Dignify'd Clergy, we mean, Deans, Arch Deacons, Rural Deans, and Prebendaries, or Canons; who are Aſſiſtant to Biſhops, and for the moſt Part Men above the common Capacity of the Inferior Clergy. In all Cathedral and Collegiate Churches (except at St. *David*'s and *Landaff* in *Wales*) there is a Dean, who is the Head of the Canons or Prebendaries, and with them makes a Chapter. Theſe Dignitaries have each a Dwelling-houſe near the Cathedral or Collegiate Church, and a plentiful Maintenance Both the Dean and Prebendaries ought to preach by Turns upon *Sundays*, and at due times to adminiſter the Lord's Supper. Upon the King's Writ of *Conge d'eſlire*, when the See is vacant, they chuſe their own Biſhop, who is always the Perſon recommended by the King. The Deans of the Chapel Royal, St. *George*'s Chapel at *Windſor*, *Ripon*, and *Guernſey*, are only honourary Deans, without any Juriſdiction. The Deans of *Croydon* in *Surry*, *Battle* in *Suſſex*, and a few others, are Deans without any Chapter, but with a Kind of Juriſdiction. The Arch-Deacons are ſo called from their Charge over the Deacons. There are of theſe 60 in all *England*, each Dioceſe having in it one Arch-Deaconry, or more, for Diſpatch of Eccleſiaſtical Buſineſs: And whereas the Biſhop makes the Viſitation of his Dioceſe once in 3 Years, 'tis the Arch-Deacon's Office to viſit the ſame the other two Years. The Rural Deans having the Overſight of a certain Number of Prieſts, their Office is, upon the Biſhop's Order, to convocate the Clergy, and ſignify to them the Biſhop's Pleaſure. Every Arch-Deaconry is ſub-divided into Rural Deaneries.

Inferior Clergy.

By the Inferior Clergy, we mean ſuch as are not dignify'd, whether Rectors, Vicars, Curates, or ſimple Deacons. We call Rector a Clergyman poſſeſſed of a Living, the predial Tythe whereof is not impropriated; Vicars, that officiate in thoſe Livings which are called Impropriations; Curates, that attend the Service of the Church in the Room of Incumbents diſabled, or of Rectors holding ſeveral Livings; and Deacons, ſuch as are admitted into ſome Part of the Service of the Church, till they be fit for the prieſtly Office.

The three Orders of the Church.

For the Church of *England* has 3 diſtinct Orders, *viz.* Biſhops, Prieſts, and Deacons. By the Canon-Law, to be admitted a Deacon, one muſt be 23 Years of Age; to be a Prieſt, 24; and a Biſhop, 30. The Office of Deacon is but miniſterial to the prieſtly Office, and to fit him for it: He may baptize, read in the Church, and aſſiſt the Prieſt at the Lord's Supper, only by giving the Cup.

Of the Ordination.

To be admitted into Holy Orders, one muſt have a Teſtimonial from the Maſters and Fellows of the College where he laſt reſided; or under the Hands and Seals of at leaſt three Divines of good Repute. The Ordination of Prieſts and Deacons is performed 4 times a Year, *viz.* upon the 4 *Sundays* in the Ember-Week. Theſe 4 Weeks are, by the Laws of the Church, Times of Prayer and Faſting. The Ordination (which it is needleſs to deſcribe) is performed in a moſt ſolemn, grave, and devout Manner, by a Biſhop, aſſiſted by ſome of the Dignify'd Clergy, or others in prieſtly Orders.

The Methods to get Livings.

To get a Benefice, a Clergyman muſt procure a Preſentation from the true Patron of the Church, without any Agreement by himſelf, or any in his Behalf, for any Sum of Money, Reward, Gift, Profit, or Benefit, directly or indirectly, in Hand paid, or yearly to be allowed; which is called Simony. Patrons of Churches are thoſe who, by firſt building of Churches, or firſt endowing them with Lands, have obtained for them, and their Heirs, a Right of Advowſon or Patronage. Within 6 Months after he is inſtituted by the Biſhop, upon ſome Lord's Day, he muſt read in the Church the 39 Articles, and declare aloud his unfeigned

Aſſent

Aſſent and Conſent to all the Contents thereof. And within the ſame Time he muſt alſo read the whole Service of the Church appointed for that Day, and declare his Aſſent and Conſent to all Things contained in the Book of Common-Prayer. Within 3 Months after his Inſtitution, he muſt likewiſe, during divine Service, publickly read his Certificate from the Biſhop of his Subſcription to the Declaration aforeſaid, and at the ſame Time the Declaration itſelf. All which muſt be atteſted by ſome of the moſt intelligent Pariſhioners under their own Hands. And if he fails in any of thoſe Duties, he thereby forfeits his Living.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Government of England; viz. *the Laws, the King, the Royal Family, the Officers of State, the Forces, the Court, the Treaſury, the Privy Council, the Parliament, the High Courts of Judicature, Inferior and Spiritual Courts, Puniſhments*, &c.

Laws. THE Laws of *England* are the Foundation of its Government. The Common Law is a Summary of the Laws of the *Saxons* and *Danes*, to which *William the Conqueror* having added ſome of the Cuſtoms of *Normandy*, he cauſed them all to be written in his own *Norman* Dialect. Beſides the Common Law, we have the Statute Law, that is, the Laws made from Time to Time by King and Parliament, as Occaſion requires: The Martial Law, which concerns only Soldiers and Mariners: The Foreſt Law, concerning Foreſts: The Civil Law, made uſe of in the Court of Admiralty, the two Univerſities, all ſpiritual Courts, the Earl-Marſhal's Court, and in Treaties with Foreign Princes: The Laws of *Rhodes* and *Oleron*, concerning Maritime Affairs: And the Canon Law, which takes Place in Things relating merely to Religion. There are other Laws, called Municipal, or Bye-Laws, proper to Corporations. By the Laws of *England*, the *Engliſh* are a free People, becauſe no Law can be made or abrogated, without their Conſent by their Repreſentatives in Parliament. By the ſame Laws, no *Engliſh* Subject ought to be impriſoned, without Cauſe ſhewn; nor may he be denied a Writ of *Habeas Corpus*, if deſired, to bring him ſpeedily to his Trial. And if upon an *Habeas Corpus*, no Cauſe of Impriſonment be alledged, the Priſoner muſt be ſet at Liberty. No Racks are uſed to force a Confeſſion of Guilt from the Priſoner; and nothing but clear Evidence, upon Oath, can bring him in guilty. None can be tried but by a Jury of his Peers, nor condemned but by the Laws of the Land, or by an Act of Parliament. Nor ought any to be fined for any Offence, but according to the Merit of it. No Taxes, Loans, or Benevolences, can be impoſed upon *Engliſh* Subjects, but with their own Conſent by their Repreſentatives in Parliament. Nor is any one to be preſſed for a Soldier, but ſuch as Acts of Parliament direct. In Time of Peace or War, (unleſs upon an Invaſion) no Soldiers can be quartered in the Houſe of a private Houſe-keeper againſt his Will, though they pay for their Quarters.

Freedom of the *Engliſh*.

Power belongs to Wives

When a Woman marries, ſhe gives herſelf over, and what ſhe brings with her, to her Husband's Power. She parts with her very Sirname, and aſſumes her Husband's. If ſhe has any Tenure, ſhe holds it of, and by her Husband. She can make no Contract, nor give away, nor alienate any Thing, without her Husband's Conſent. If ſhe offends, her Husband may correct her: But if ſhe wrong another by her Tongue, or Treſpaſs, her Husband anſwers for the Fault. If ſhe takes Things upon Truſt, unknown to her Husband, he is liable to pay, unleſs he has cried her down in the Market. A Woman that has killed her Husband, is, by Law, to be burnt alive. If a Wife brings forth a Child begotten before Marriage by another Man, the Husband is bound to own it, and the Child ſhall be his Heir at Law. If ſhe brings forth a Child after a long Abſence of her Husband, and he lived all that while within the four Seas, he muſt father that Child. If a Wife, being an Heireſs, brings to her Husband an Eſtate in Land, that deſcends to her eldeſt Son; and if ſhe has no Son, but only Daughters, it is divided amongſt them. But if ſhe dies without Iſſue, the Land goes to the next Heir at Law: Only the Husband ſhall enjoy the Profit thereof during his Life, provided he had a Child alive of her Body. In ſhort, as the Huſband and Wife are accounted but One, ſo ſhe cannot be produced as a Witneſs for or againſt him. Nor can they be wholly ſeparated by Law, but upon a Nullity of Marriage, Precontract, Conſanguinity within the Degrees forbidden, Impotency, or ſuch like. Noblewomen are ſo by Deſcent, Creation, or Marriage. But the greateſt Part of *Engliſh* Noblewomen are ſo by Marriage. A Noblewoman by Deſcent, or Creation, marrying a Husband not noble, after the Deceaſe of the firſt, keeps her Honour by Law. A Noblewoman by Marriage, who marries a Husband of a lower Eſtate, loſes her Honour.

To Children

The eldeſt Son of a Family, is, by the Cuſtom of *England*, commonly provided for beyond all other Children, and ſucceeds both in the Title and Eſtate; he inherits all Lands, and younger Children the perſonal Eſtate. But if there be no Son, both the real and perſonal Eſtate are equally divided among the Daughters. When the Eſtate is not entailed, the Father may leave it to what Child he pleaſes, or give it away from his Children. A Son at the Age of 14, his Father being dead, may chuſe his Guardian, conſent to Marriage, and by Will diſpoſe of Goods and Chattels. At 21 he is of Age, and then free to make Contracts. A Daughter may conſent to Marriage at 7 Years of Age; and at 12 may retract or confirm it.

To Servants

Servants are commonly hired for 1 Year, at the End whereof they leave their Maſters, after a fair Warning. A Maſter may by Law correct his Servant, when he gives him juſt Cauſe; and Reſiſtance in a Servant is liable to a ſevere Penalty. Apprentices in *England* are bound to ſerve 7 Years, and all that Time bare-headed in open Shops. An Apprentice is bound by his Indenture, not to marry during the Time of his Apprenticeſhip. But if a Maiden-Apprentice do marry, ſhe may go to her Husband. A Foreign Slave, brought over, is, upon Landing, free from Slavery, tho' not from common Service.

The King's Government

The Monarchy of *Great-Britain* is admirably well framed, being limited in such a Manner as secures the People's Liberty, without making the King little. 'Tis a mixed Government of Monarchy in the King, Aristocracy in the Lords, and Democracy in the Commons. The King has all the Ensigns of Royalty: At his Accession to the Crown, he is proclaimed with great Solemnity; and his Coronation is performed with great Pomp and Magnificence. He has likewise all the Marks of Sovereignty, as the Power of making Treaties and Leagues with Foreign States, of making Peace and War, sending and receiving Ambassadors, creating of Magistrates; of calling, adjourning, and proroguing, and dissolving the Parliament; of conferring Titles of Honour; of coining, pardoning of Criminals, &c. He has alone the Choice and Nomination of the superior Officers, the principal Direction and Command of his Armies, of all Magazines and Ammunition, Castles, Forts, Ports, Havens, and Ships of War. The Militia is likewise wholly at his Command, and the publick Monies at his Disposal. Without his Assent, no Bill in Parliament can pass into a Law: And he may increase the Number of Peers, by creating more Barons, or calling to their House whom he thinks fit by Writ. All Counsellors, Officers of State, and Judges, are nominated by him. None but the King has the sovereign Power in the Administration of Justice. In Point of Punishments, he may either pardon the Offence, or alleviate the Punishment, after Sentence given according to Law. The King is the supreme Head of the Church, as he is of the State, and is looked upon as her Guardian and nursing Father: He alone has the Patronage of all Bishopricks, for none can be chosen Bishop but whom he nominates in his *Congé d'Elire*. Nor can a Bishop Elect be consecrated, without the King's special Writ or Assent. So tender is the Law for the Preservation of the King's Person, that the very imagining or intending his Death, proved by any Overt Act, is High-Treason by Law. Such is the Respect paid to the King by his Subjects, that they all stand bare, not only in his Presence, but even in his Absence, where he has a Chair of State. All People at their first Address kneel to him, and he is at all Times served upon the Knee. To support the Honour of the Crown, the Kings of *England* have always kept a great and splendid Court, consisting of a numerous Train of Officers and Servants of all Ranks, with large Salaries, beyond any Court in *Europe*.

Of the King's Minority

When the King is under 12 Years of Age, then a Regent, Protector, or Guardian, is appointed, either by the King his Predecessor, or by the Parliament. But when the King comes to be 14 Years of Age, he may revoke, and utterly annul, what Acts he thinks fit, that have passed during his Minority. In the King's Absence upon any Foreign Expedition, it was usual formerly to appoint a Vicegerent, with the Title of Lord Warden, or Lord Keeper of the Realm, and sometimes that of Protector. In the Reign of King *William*, the Queen took upon her the Administration, by Virtue of an Act made for that Purpose. But, after her Decease, the Nation was yearly governed, during the King's Absence, by Lords Justices; as was the Case in the Reign of King *George* I. In the present King's Reign, her late Majesty has always been constituted Guardian during his Absence.

Of the Queen's Royalty

The Queen Consort is reputed the second Person in the Kingdom, and respected accordingly. She has her Court and Officers apart, with a large Power to maintain her Greatness. She may without Naturalization purchase Lands, make Leases and Grants, and sue in her own Name. To conspire her Death, or violate her Chastity, is High Treason. If she survives the King, she is called Queen Dowager, is still respected as a Queen, and keeps a Court accordingly. If the next King be unmarried, her Rank is next to him; and if married, she is next to the Queen. Nor does she lose her Dignity, though she marries a private Gentleman. The King's Children are to be called the Sons and Daughters of *Great Britain*, because all Subjects thereof have a special Interest in them. The Prince of *Wales* is by Birth Earl of *Chester* and *Flint*, and Duke of *Cornwall*, but Prince of *Wales* by Creation. It is High-Treason to imagine his Death, or violate his Wife. The younger Sons of *England* have no Appenages, but depend altogether upon the King's Favour, for Honour and Revenues. They are, indeed, by Birthright, Counsellors of State. The Daughters are called Princesses, and to attempt their Chastity is High Treason. The Title of Royal Highness is common to all the King's Children. All other Subjects ought to be uncovered in their Presence, and to kneel when they kiss their Hands. They are served on the Knee at Table; unless the King be present. All Persons of the Blood Royal, being lawful Issue, have the Precedency of all others in *England*. The Crown falls from Father to Son, and his Heirs; for want of a Son, to the eldest Daughter, and her Heirs; for want of a Daughter, to the Brother and his Heirs; and for want of a Brother, to the Sister, and her Heirs.

Great Officers of State.

Next to the Princes of the Blood, we commonly reckon the great Officers of State, *viz.* 1. The Lord High Steward, whose Power was so great and exorbitant, that it was thought fit at last to trust it no longer in the Hands of any Subject. *Henry* of *Bollingbrook*, afterwards King *Henry* IV. was the last that had a State of Inheritance in this Office. Since that Time there has been no Lord High Steward made, but only to officiate either at a Coronation, or for the Arraignment of a Peer or Peeress for a Capital Crime. 2. The Lord High Chancellor, or Keeper of the Great Seal, now looked upon as Prime Minister of State, and the highest Person in the Kingdom in Civil Affairs, after the King and Princes of the Blood. 3. The Lord High Treasurer, who has under his Charge all the King's Revenue, which is kept in the *Exchequer*, and the Check of all Officers employed in collecting the same, whose Offices are for the most Part in his Gift. 4. The Lord Privy-Seal, whose Place is also of great Trust. 5. The Lord President, whose Office has been always granted by Letters Patents under the Great Seal. 6. The Lord Great Chamberlain of *England*, an Officer of great Antiquity, and of special Service at the Coronation of our Kings. 7. The Lord High Constable, whose Power and Jurisdiction was anciently so exorbitant, that it was thought too great for any Subject. This Office has been discontinued ever-since the Reign of *Henry* VII. However, upon a Coronation, a Lord High Constable is created *pro illa vice*. 8. The Earl Marshal of *England*, who takes Cognizance of all Matters of War, and Arms, wherein he is commonly guided by the Civil Law. This Office has continued a long Time hereditary in the Duke of *Norfolk*'s Family. 9. The Lord High Admiral, who has the Management of all maritime Affairs, and the Government of the Royal Navy, with Power of Decision in all maritime Cases, both civil and criminal. The Sea being reckoned without the Limits of the common Law, and under the Jurisdiction of the Lord High Admiral, therefore

the

the civil Law is made uſe of in the Court of Admiralty. The Offices of Lord High Admiral and Lord High Treaſurer are now executed by Commiſſion.

Engliſh Hiſtory. The *Engliſh* Hiſtory is ſo full of Variety, of ſuch ſurpriſing Turns and Revolutions, that none can parallel it: But the Bounds of this Work not allowing us to enlarge upon it, we ſhall only give a ſhort View of the *Engliſh* Monarchs, with the Time of their Acceſſion to the Crown; leaving other Particulars to the Hiſtories of their Reigns, which are in almoſt every one's Hand.

Saxon *Kings.*

819 *Egbert.*
836 *Ethelwolf.*
855 *Ethelbald.*
860 *Ethelbert.*
866 *Ethelred.*
872 *Alfred.*
901 *Edward the Elder.*
924 *Ethelſtan.*
940 *Edmund.*
946 *Edred.*
955 *Edwin.*
959 *Edgar.*
975 *Edward the Martyr.*
978 *Ethelred.*
1016 *Edmund Ironſide.*

Daniſh *Kings.*

1017 *Canute.*
1035 *Harold.*
1040 *Hardi-Canute.*

The *Saxons* reinthroned.

1042 *Edward the Confeſſor.*
1066 *Harold.*

Norman *Kings.*

1066 *William the Conqueror.*
1087 *William* II.
1100 *Henry* I.
1135 *Stephen.*

The Saxon *and* Norman *Blood united.*

1154 *Henry* II.
1189 *Richard* I.
1199 *John.*
1216 *Henry* III.
1272 *Edward* I.
1307 *Edward* II.
1327 *Edward* III.
1377 *Richard* II.

The Line of Lancaſter.

1399 *Henry* IV.
1412 *Henry* V.
1422 *Henry* VI.

The Line of York.

1461 *Edward* IV.
1483 *Edward* V.
1483 *Richard* III.

Lancaſter *and* York *united.*

1485 *Henry* VII.
1509 *Henry* VIII.
1547 *Edward* VI.
1553 *Mary* I.
1558 *Elizabeth.*

Kings and Queens of Great-Britain.

1602 *James* I.
1625 *Charles* I.
1648 *Charles* II.
1684 *James* II.
1688 *William* III. and *Mary* II.
1701-2 *Anne.*
1714 *George* I.
1727 *George* II.

Dominions.

In *Europe* the preſent King is poſſeſſed of the two greateſt Iſlands in this Part of the World, *viz. Great-Britain* and *Ireland*, likewiſe of moſt of the North-Weſt Part of *Germany*, including ſeveral ſpacious Territories, which belong to him as Elector of *Hanover*. His Majeſty is alſo in Poſſeſſion of theſe four Iſlands on the Coaſt of *Normandy*, *viz. Jerſey*, *Guernſey*, *Alderney*, and *Sark*; beſides the Iſland of *Minorca* within the *Streights*, and the Town of *Gibraltar* in *Spain*. *Great Britain*, moreover, lays a Claim to the Sovereignty of the Seas, even to the Shores of all neighbouring Nations. In *America*, the King has the greateſt Share next to *Spain*, containing the Countries before deſcribed. In *Africk* and *Aſia* there are ſeveral Forts and Factories belonging to *Great Britain*. Near *Goa*, in the *Eaſt Indies*, this Crown is poſſeſſed of the Iſle of *Bombay*; and between *Africk* and *America*, of St. *Helen*. As for the King's Titles, his Majeſty is only ſtiled, *George* by the Grace of God, King of *Great Britain*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, beſides the Additions, as Elector of *Hanover*. The Title of Majeſty was not uſed in *England* till the Reign of *Henry* VIII. who was firſt called His Highneſs,

The King's Title.

and afterwards His Majeſty. The Title of Madam is uſed to the Queen, as that of Sir to the King. By the Act of Union it is agreed, That as the Arms of *Scotland* are quartered with thoſe of *England*, *France*, and *Ireland* (before borne by our Kings) ſo the Great Seal of the united Kingdoms ſhall be different from the former Great Seals uſed in either Kingdom; and that the quartering of the Arms, as may beſt ſuit to the Union, be left to his Majeſty. Alſo, that the Croſſes of St. *George* and St. *Andrew* be conjoined, when uſed in Flags, Banners, Standards, and Enſigns, both at Sea and Land.

Forces. As the Extent of the *Britiſh* Monarchy is great, ſo is her Power. In our late Wars, under the Conduct of *John* Duke of *Marlborough*, the *Britiſh* Forces amounted to above 80,000 Soldiers, beſides 40,000 Seamen. Theſe have been reduced to 18,000 Land Forces, and Seamen according to the Occaſion. The principal Magazine is the Tower of *London*, which contains a noble Arſenal, to equip at leaſt 60,000 Men, with a Train of Artillery conſiſting of 50 Pieces of Braſs Ordnance, ready mounted, beſides ſeveral Mortars, with all neceſſary Furniture. But there are other Magazines at *Portſmouth*, *Plymouth*, *Woolwich*, *Windſor-Caſtle*, &c. which are all under the Maſter General of the Ordnance, who has under him, 1. The Lieutenant of the Ordnance, 2. the Surveyor, 3. the Clerk of the Ordnance, 4. the Storekeeper, 5. the Clerk of Deliveries, 6. the Treaſurer, or Pay-Maſter, 7. the Maſter-Gunner. Beſides the King's regular Land Forces, his Majeſty's ſtanding Militia, inrolled for the Defence of *England*, upon any Rebellion or Invaſion, are computed to be near 200,000, in *England* and *Wales* only. They are to muſter once or twice a Year. To regulate theſe Forces, the Sovereign appoints Lord Lieutenants of the ſeveral Counties, who are commonly Peers of the Realm, with a Power to give Commiſſion to Colonels, &c. Under the Lord Lieutenants there are Deputy Lieutenants, who, in the Abſence of the Lord Lieutenants, have the ſame Power. To give ſpeedy Notice of an Invaſion, there are Beacons erected upon eminent Places of all Parts of *England*. There were of old many Caſtles, in all Parts of *England*, But to prevent any lingring War in it, moſt of the Inland Caſtles have been demoliſhed, or ſuffered to decay. The Naval Strength of *England*, which is beyond all, conſiſts of about 200 Men of War; beſides Catches, Fire-Ships, Bomb-Veſſels, Advice-Boats, Brigantines, Sloops, Store-Ships, Hulks, and Hoys. In Times of Peace, when the Royal Navy continues in Harbour, the very Charge of keeping it in Repair, amounts to about 13,000 *l.* yealy. For the Sea Service, in Time of War, not only unemploy'd Seamen may be preſſed, but alſo Vagabonds, and Seamen belonging to Merchant's Ships. When the *Britiſh* Fleet is compleat, it is uſually divided into 3 Squadrons, diſtinguiſhed by the Colours of their ſeveral Flags, into Red, White, and Blue. The principal Commanders bear the Title of Admiral, each of his Squadron. But the Admiral of the Red commands in Chief. Each of thoſe Admirals has under him a Vice-Admiral, and a Rear-Admiral, all called Flag Officers. But the ſupreme Command of the Naval Forces is in the Lord High Admiral of *England*, or the Commiſſion of Admiralty. There is alſo a Vice-Admiral, and Rear-Admiral of *Great-Britain*, appointed by his Majeſty. But at the Navy Office the whole Buſineſs concerning the Navy Royal is managed in Chief by theſe four Officers, under the Lord High Admiral, *viz.* A Treaſurer, Comptroller, Surveyor, and Clerk of the Act. There are alſo

Commiſſioners

Maſter of the Ordnance.

Militia.

Naval Strength

Commiſſioners of the Navy, under divers Denominations. For building, repairing, and cleaning his Majeſty's Ships, there are 6 great Yards, *viz. Chatham*, *Deptford*, *Woolwich*, *Sheerneſs*, *Portſmouth*, and *Plymouth*; which are fitted with ſeveral Docks, Wharfs, Lanches, and Graving Places. For a Reſerve, in Time of a great War, there is another Yard at *Harwich*. And to each Yard belong ſeveral Officers, particularly a Clerk of the Cheque, a Store-keeper, 2 Maſter Attendants, a Maſter-Shipwright, 2 Aſſiſtants, and a Clerk of the Survey.

The King's Court.

The Kings of *England*, far from falling ſhort of any other Princes, have always exceeded moſt crowned Heads in the Statelineſs, and Magnificence of their Courts; and few have ſurpaſſed them in a liberal Allowance for that Purpoſe. Though the Court is not what it has been formerly, yet it makes ſtill a Figure beyond moſt Courts of *Europe*; nor can any compare with it in the large Salaries and Perquiſites of its Officers and Servants. It conſiſts of three Orders, *viz.* Civil, Military, and Eccleſiaſtick. The Civil Liſt alone amounts, by Computation, to about 600 Servants, under theſe principal Officers, *viz.* the Lord High Steward, the Lord High Chamberlain, the Groom of the Stole, and the Maſter of the Horſe. The firſt has particularly under his Charge all the Officers and Servants below Stairs; the Lord Chamberlain, the greateſt Part of thoſe above Stairs; the Groom of the Stole, thoſe who belong to the King's Bed-Chamber; the Maſter of the Horſe, all the Officers and Servants belonging to his Majeſty's Stables. It would be tedious to enumerate the ſeveral Parts of their Prerogatives, and the Offices under them.

Principal Officers.

King's Guards.

The Military Part of the Court conſiſts of 3 ſeveral Bodies, *viz.* the Band of Gentlemen Penſioners, the Yeomen of the Guard, and the Troops of the Houſhold. Of which, the 2 firſt guard the King above Stairs. The Band of Gentlemen Penſioners conſiſts of 40 Gentlemen, whoſe Office is to attend the King's Perſon with their Pole-Axes, to and from his Chapel Royal, and receive him in the Preſence Chamber, or coming out of his Privy-Lodgings. The Yeomen of the Guard wait in the firſt Room above Stairs, called the Guard-Chamber. Formerly they were 250; now they are but 100 in daily Waiting, and 70 more not in Waiting; but to ſucceed the former, as they die. The Guards of Horſe, commonly called the Life Guard, conſiſt of 4 Troops, each of 160 private Gentlemen, well mounted, armed, and equipped. Each of theſe Troops is divided into 4 Squadrons. There are alſo belonging to the Horſe-Guards, 2 Troops of Horſe-Grenadiers, conſiſting each of 115 private Gentlemen. The Foot-Guards conſiſt of 3 Regiments, *viz.* the King's, the Cold-Stream, and the *Scots* Regiment. The firſt of 28 Companies, the other 2 of 18 Companies each. There are a great Number of Officers, with different Titles, belonging to theſe 4 Orders of Guards.

King's Chapel.

The Chapel Royal is under the Conduct of a Dean, who is ſtiled Dean of the Chapel, and who owns no Superior but the King in his Station. In this Chapel Prayers are read 3 Times a Day, Sermons preached on *Sundays*, and Holy-Days; the Communion adminiſtered every firſt *Sunday* of the Month, beſides the great Feſtivals. By the Dean (who is generally ſome Biſhop) are choſen all the other Officers of the Chapel, particularly a Sub-Dean, 12 Gentlemen in Holy Orders, to perform Divine Service, in praying and ſinging, *&c.* beſides 8 Clerks, and 10 Children of the Chapel. Upon *Sundays*, Collar Days, and other Holy-Days, a Concert of the King's Muſick is joined to them, to make the Chapel Muſick more complete. For the Preaching Part, there are 48 Chaplains in Ordinary, 4 of them in waiting monthly: Beſides 6 Chaplains appointed to preach at *St. James's*, and 2 Houſhold Chaplains at *White-Hall*. And, whereas *Lent* is a ſolemn Part of the Year, the Preachers for that Seaſon are appointed by the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, and the Lord Chamberlain, thus: Upon *Aſh-Wedneſday*, the Dean of the Chapel is to preach of Courſe; and each *Wedneſday* after, one of the King's ableſt Chaplains. Every *Friday*, a Dean of ſome Cathedral, or Collegiate Church; and on *Good Friday*, the Dean of *Weſtminſter*. On every *Sunday* in *Lent*, a Biſhop; on *Palm-Sunday*, an Archbiſhop; and upon *Eaſter-Day*, the Lord High Almoner. Beſides the Chapel Royal, the King has a Cloſet, or private Oratory, for his more retired Devotion. The Lord High Almoner is uſually a Biſhop; by whom the King's Alms are diſtributed, as he thinks moſt convenient. Under the Lord Almoner, there is a Sub-Almoner, a Yeoman, and 2 Grooms of the Almonry.

King's Revenue.

The Charge of the King's Houſhold, *&c.* commonly called the Civil Liſt, and including the Prince of *Wales's* Allowance, is ſettled at 800,000 *l. per Annum*; raiſed by the Exciſe of Beer, Ale, *&c.* the Subſidies of Tunnage and Poundage; the Revenue of the General Poſt-Office; the Produce of Fines in the Alienation Office; the Produce of the Revenue by Wine Licenſes; Seizures of uncuſtomed and prohibited Goods, and other Particulars of leſs Moment. The Land-Tax, *&c.* for the other Charges of the State, is aſcertained at near 2,000,000, the Cuſtoms at above 1,300,000 *l.* and the Exciſe at near 1,000,000.

Officers of the Revenue.

For managing the Cuſtom Revenue, there are 7 Commiſſioners, having the Overſight of all the Ports of *England*. Many Officers and Servants are employed under them, amounting to about 600. The Exciſe is alſo managed by Commiſſioners. Theſe have likewiſe ſeveral Officers and Servants under them. In the Country there are 50 Collectors, and 140 Superviſors; beſides a vaſt Number of inferior Officers. From the ſaid Commiſſioners there lies an Appeal to 5 others, called Commiſſioners of Appeals. For the Salt Duty, Wine-Licenſes, ſtamped Paper and Vellum, Prizes and *Hackney* Coaches, there are 5 Commiſſioners to each; and for the Duty ariſing from Hawkers, Pedlars, and petty Chapmen, 3 Commiſſioners. The principal Officers who receive the King's Money in his Majeſty's Exchequer or Treaſury, and diſburſe it according to his Order, are, the Lord High Treaſurer of *England*, or the Lords Commiſſioners of the Treaſury, and the Chancellor (or Under-Treaſurer) of the *Exchequer*. Next to the Chancellor are the 2 Chamberlains, the Auditor of the Receipts, the 4 Tellers, and the Clerk of the Pells. It is obſervable,

Uſe of Tallies.

that no Acquittances are uſed in the *Exchequer* upon paying any Monies to the King, but only Tallies, or Sticks, with Words written on them on both Sides, expreſſing what the Money received is for. The Deputy Chamberlains, who cleave the Tallies, and examine each Piece a-part, ſit in the Tally-Court, where the Tally-Cutter attends. Agents for Taxes are Aſſiſtants to the Lord Treaſurer.

The Privy Council is compoſed of eminent Perſons, upon whoſe Wiſdom, Vigilance, and Integrity, depends, in a great Meaſure, the Welfare of his Majeſty's Dominions. They are bound by Oath to adviſe the King, to the beſt of their Judgment, with all the Fidelity and Secreſy that becomes their Station. The Number of them is at the Sovereign's Pleaſure: But it is rare to ſee one half meet in Council. The King

often present to hear their Debates, the lowest Counsellor delivering his Opinion first, and his Majesty at last declaring his Judgment, which terminates the Matter debated. To propose Business to the Privy-Council, and in the King's Absence to make a Report to his Majesty, there is a President. The King may declare or conceal from his Privy-Counsellors whatever he thinks fit, and has a select Council out of their Number, commonly called the Cabinet-Council. A Privy-Counsellor, though but a Gentleman, has Precedence of all Knights, and younger Sons of Barons and Viscounts, and is stiled Right Honourable: But the Council itself is called Most Honourable. To attend the Council, there are 4 Clerks in Ordinary, and 4 Extraordinary: Also 2 Keepers of the Council-Chamber. The principal Secretaries of State, are, by their Office, Members of the Privy-Council, ever-since the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*. As for Domestick Affairs, the 2 Secretaries equally receive and dispatch whatsoever is brought to them, *&c.* except for *Ireland* and the Plantations, which belong to the elder Secretary. But for Foreign Affairs, they have each his Province, one called the Northern, and the other the Southern Province, the last belonging to the elder Secretary. In all the Royal Houses, they have each his Apartment, as well for his own Accommodation, as for his Office, and those that attend upon it. They have each of them 2 Under Secretaries and Clerks attending the Office, and wholly at his own Choice, without any Dependance upon any other. To the Secretaries of State there belong 2 other Offices, one called the Signet, and the other the Paper-Office.

The Secretaries of State.

The Constitution of the *British* Parliament.

The High Court of Parliament is vested with a Legislative Power, and makes 2 of the 3 Estates of the Realm; which 3 are the King, Lords, and Commons. Accordingly this August Body consists of 2 Houses, one called the House of Lords, and the other the House of Commons. Before the Union, the first consisted of all the Spiritual and Temporal Peers of the Realm, qualified to sit in the House, and making up about 170. But the House of Commons consisted of 513 Commoners: Among which we call Knights of the Shire, such as serve for the Counties; Barons, those of the *Cinque Ports*; Citizens, that stand for Cities; and Burgesses, for Towns or Boroughs privileged to send Members to Parliament. By the Union, there is an Accession of 16 Peers of *Scotland* to the House of Lords, and 45 Commoners to the House of Commons. The first to be chosen against a new Parliament, by the Peers of *Scotland*, out of their Body; and the last, being Barons and Burgesses, by the Shires and Boroughs. By which 16 Peers, and 45 Commoners, *Scotland* is to be represented in the Parliament of *Great-Britain*. And the *Scots* Peers sitting in the House of Lords, have the same Privileges as the *English* Peers.

The Election.

The Sitting of the Parliament is appointed by Royal Proclamation, with the Advice of the Privy Council; and the Time appointed for the Parliament to meet, ought to be no less than 50 Days after the Date of such Proclamation. Upon the Proclamation, Writs are issued by the Lord Chancellor, or Lord Keeper, to every Lord Spiritual and Temporal, to appear at the Time and Place appointed, to give their Advice in some weighty Affairs. Also to all the Sheriffs, commanding them to summon the People to elect as many Knights, Citizens, and Burgesses, in their respective Counties, as are to sit in the House of Commons. As for *Scotland*, a Writ is to be directed to the Privy Council there, for summoning the 16 Peers, and for electing the 45 Members, by whom *Scotland* is to be represented in the Parliament of *Great-Britain*. And whereas it happens sometimes, that a Burgess is elected for 2 Boroughs, when the Parliament meets, he must declare for which Place he will serve, that a Writ may be issued out, for a new Election, by the other Place. No Judge of the *King's-Bench*, *Common-Pleas*, or *Exchequer*, can be chosen, because they are Assistants in the Lords House; no Sheriff, because his personal Attendance is required at his Bailiwick; no Clergyman, because of his attending the Convocation; nor is any Gentleman qualified to serve in Parliament, unless he be possessed of 300 *l. per Annum*.

The Solemnity of the Parliament's Meeting.

As the Time for the Parliament's Sitting lies in the Sovereign's Breast, so does the Place of Meeting: Though it is fixed at the antient Palace of *Westminster*; the Lords in a large Room by themselves, and the Commons in a larger, which was of old St. *Stephen*'s Chapel. At the Opening of the Parliament on the Day prefixed, the King comes to the House of Lords, in his Royal Robes, with the Crown on his Head, and the Sword of State borne before him. His Majesty sits under a Canopy, at the upper End of the Room. Then the Temporal Lords appear in their Scarlet Robes of State, every one according to his Degree; and the Spiritual Lords in their Episcopal Habit. Against the Wall, on the King's Right-Hand, the two Archbishops sit by themselves on a Form. Below them, the Bishops of *London*, *Durham*, and *Winchester*; and next to them, all the other Bishops, according to the Priority of their Consecration. On the King's Left-Hand, the Lord Treasurer, Lord President of the Council, and Lord Privy Seal, sit upon Forms, above all Dukes that are not of the Royal Blood. Then the Dukes, Marquisses, and Earls, according to their Creation. Cross the Room are the Wooll-sacks, to put the Peers in Mind of the Advantages the *English* Wooll has brought to the Nation, that the Care of it may never be neglected. The Lord Chancellor, or Lord Keeper, being of Course the Speaker of the House of Lords, sits on the first Wooll-sack, before the Throne, with the Great Seal and Mace lying by him. Below the Wooll-sacks there are Forms cross the Room, first for the Viscounts, and next for the Barons, sitting in Order according to their Creation. As to the other Wooll-sacks, the Judges, the King's Council at Law, and Masters of *Chancery*, sit upon them, when called to give their Advice in Point of Law. But they ought not to sit in the King's Presence, without his Leave. The lower-most Wooll-sack is for the Clerks of the Crown, and Clerk of the Parliament. This latter has two Under-Clerks, who, kneeling behind the Wooll-sack, write upon it.

When the King comes to Parliament, he commands the Usher of the Black Rod to call the House of Commons to the Lords House. The Commons being come, stand without the Bar; and the King commands them, by the Lord Chancellor, to chuse one of their Members for their Speaker, and to present him such a Day. But this is done sometimes without the King, and only by the Lord Chancellor. The Commons being returned to their House, chuse a Speaker, who ought to be a Person of great Experience and Ability, especially in parliamentary Affairs: For the Speaker is in Effect the Mouth of the House, and so necessary a Part thereof, that the Commons can do no Business without him. The Choice being made, by the Majority of Votes, it is a Custom for the Party chosen to decline the Office, and pray the House to proceed to a new Election. But he is commonly answered with a full Content

How the Speaker of the Commons is chosen.

of Voices, upon which two of the principal Members go to him, and lead him to the Speaker's Chair; where being ſet, they return to their Places. At the Day appointed for his Preſentation to the King, his Majeſty being come to the Houſe of Lords, the Commons are called in. Then the new Speaker is brought in between two of their Members, and there preſented to the King, where he makes alſo a Refuſal of that high Office: Which not being allowed of, he makes a Speech to his Majeſty, which generally concludes with theſe Petitions, That *the Commons may, during their Sitting, have free Acceſs to his Majeſty*; That *they may have Freedom of Speech in their Houſe*, and *be free from Arreſts*. Theſe Requeſts being granted, his Majeſty makes a Speech to both Houſes of Parliament, concerning ſuch Matters as he thinks fit to lay before them. This done, he leaves both Houſes to their private Debates, and the Commons return to their own Houſe, the Mace being carried before the Speaker. After this, his Majeſty never comes to the Parliament in State, but to lay freſh important Affairs before them, to give his royal Aſſent to Bills paſſed in both Houſes, or to cloſe the Seſſion. In the King's Abſence, the Lords do always pay a Reverence to the Chair of State, when they come into the Houſe. Though the full Number of the Houſe of Commons is 558, yet if 300 are met, it is reckoned a full Houſe; and 40 make a Houſe. They ſit promiſcuouſly upon Forms, except the Speaker, who ſits upon a Chair in the Middle of the Room, with a Table before him, the Clerk of the Houſe ſitting near him at the Table. Nor does any Member wear a Robe but the Speaker, except the Members for *London*, who at their firſt Meeting appear in Scarlet Robes. Before the Parliament enters upon any Buſineſs, the Members of both Houſes muſt take the Oaths appointed by Act of Parliament. They are alſo to make a ſolemn Declaration againſt the Doctrine of Tranſubſtantiation, the Invocation and Adoration of Saints, and the Sacrifice of the Maſs, by which all Papiſts are incapacitated to ſit in Parliament. They are, moreover, to abjure the Pretender, before they can be admitted to ſit in either Houſe.

Clerk's Office.

The firſt Thing the Commons do after the Choice of their Speaker, is their appointing the ſtanding Grand Committees, for Privileges and Elections, for Grievances, for Trade, and for Religion. The ſtanding Committees being ſettled, a private Committee is generally appointed to draw up an Addreſs of Thanks to the King. The ſame is done in the Houſe of Lords. As the chief Buſineſs of the Parliament is to make new Laws, revive or abrogate old Ones; whatever is propoſed for a Law, is firſt put in Writing, and called a Bill. Any Member of the Houſe may offer a Bill; but he muſt firſt open the Matter of it to the Houſe, and offer Reaſons for the admitting thereof, which is called, Making a Motion. Upon which the Houſe will either admit, or deny it. Subſidy Bills, for impoſing of Taxes, are not to be brought in but by Order of the Houſe: And whereas all other Bills may begin in either Houſe, theſe do always begin in the Houſe of Commons. Before any Bill can paſs into a Law, it muſt be read 3 ſeveral Times in each Houſe, and debated; and then obtain the royal Aſſent. A Bill of Indemnity, coming from the Throne, has but one Reading in each Houſe. The Speaking for, or againſt a Bill, is commonly put off till the ſecond Reading, that the Members may have Time to conſider of it. Whilſt a Bill is under Debate, whoever ſpeaks to it ſtands up uncovered, and directs his Speech to the Speaker. If two riſe at the ſame Time, the Speaker determines which ſhall give Way to the other. None is allowed to ſpeak twice to a Bill in one Day, except it be by Way of Explication, or when the Bill happens to be read twice. The Speaker is not to argue for, or againſt any Side. He is only to hear the Arguments of the Houſe, and collect the Subſtance of them. Neither has he any Voice, but when the Houſe is equally divided, and then he has the caſting Vote. No Member, in his Diſcourſe, ought to mention the Name of any other then preſent, but to deſcribe him by his Title, or Addition, as, That noble Lord, That worthy Knight, or Gentleman: Or by his Office, as Serjeant, Gentleman of the long Robe, *&c.* Or by his Place, as The Gentleman near the Chair, near the Bar, on the other Side, or That Gentleman who ſpoke laſt, or laſt but one, and the like. No reviling or reflecting Expreſſions muſt be uſed: And, though the Freedom of Speech be an undoubted Privilege of the Houſe, yet whatſoever is there ſpoken, is liable to the Cenſure of the Houſe. When a Bill that has been committed (that is, referred to a Committee, which is uſually on the ſecond reading) is reported, the Houſe does commonly agree to the Report in the whole, or in Part only. But when the Matter is of Importance, the Bill is ſometimes re-committed. After the Debate is ended, the Speaker puts the Queſtion for ingroſſing. If the Majority of Voices be againſt it, then the Bill is daſhed. If for it, it is immediately performed. The Bill being ingroſſed, the Speaker offers it ſome Days after to be read the third Time, for the paſſing thereof. When the Bill comes to a third reading, it is done after the ſame Manner as at the firſt and ſecond reading. After it is read, the Speaker tells the Houſe, that it has been read thrice, and with their Favours he will put it to the paſſing. But before he does it, he pauſeth, that the Members may ſpeak to it, if they pleaſe. The Debate, if any happen, being over, the Speaker, holding ſtill the Bill in his Hand, puts it to the paſſing, thus; As many as are of Opinion that this Bill ſhould paſs, ſay Yea; and after the Affirmative, As many as are of the contrary Opinion, ſay No. Upon which the Speaker declares his Opinion, whether the Yea's or Noes have it; and his Opinion is to ſtand as the Judgment of the Houſe, unleſs the Caſe be doubtful. If it be carried in the Affirmative, the Clerk enters it, Reſolved. If in the Negative, thus; The Queſtion being put, *&c.* it paſſed in the Negative. If the Bill paſſed be originally exhibited in the Houſe of Commons, the Clerk writes within it at the Top in *French*, *Let it be ſent to the Lords*. But, if begun in the Lords Houſe, he writes underneath the Subſcription of the Lords, *To this Bill the Commons muſt aſſent*. If either Houſe diſagrees with the other upon a Bill, a Conference is demanded. The Conference is held in the Painted Chamber, to which both Houſes ſend reſpective Deputies, called Managers, to argue upon the Matter. The Manner of Voting in the Houſe of Lords is thus: They begin at the loweſt Baron, and ſo go on *ſeriatim*; every one anſwering apart, Content, or Not Content. If the Voices be equal, the Negative carries it, the Speaker being not allowed a caſting Voice, unleſs he be a Peer of the Realm.

Procedure in Parliament.

Upon the firſt Meeting of a Committee in the Committee-Chamber, they chuſe a Chairman amongſt them, who is much like the Speaker in the Houſe. The Bill they are entruſted with is firſt read over, and then they conſider it by Parts. If there be a Preamble, they conſider it after the Parts of the Bill. The Committee may not raze, interline, or blot the Bill, but muſt mark

Rules of proceeding in Committees

the

the Amendments in a Paper by itſelf. Every Amendment is voted ſingly, and when they are all perfect, they are read, and put to the Queſtion, Whether the ſame ſhall be reported to the Houſe. If the Vote of the Committee paſs in the Affirmative, the Chairman is appointed to make the Report. He firſt acquaints the Houſe, that he has a Report to make from the Committee; which being received by the Houſe, the Chairman reads each of the Amendments, with the Coherence in the Bill; and gives the Reaſons for ſuch Amendments. Whereupon any Member of the Houſe may ſpeak againſt all, or any of the Amendments, and deſire the Coherence to be read. But he muſt make all his Objections at once to all the Amendments. When any great Buſineſs is in Hand, which requires much Debate, the Houſe reſolves itſelf into a Grand Committee, commonly called a Committee of the whole Houſe. The Deſign of it is, to have a greater Freedom of Debate: For in this Committee every Member is free to ſpeak to one Queſtion as often as he ſhall ſee Cauſe. Then the Houſe being reſolved from the Rules of it, the Speaker leaves the Chair, and the Houſe chuſes a Chairman, who ſits in the Clerk's Place, and writes the Votes of the Committee. If the Queſtion be carried in the Affirmative, the Speaker is called again to the Chair; and the Chairman reports what has been reſolved in the Committee, and brings up his Report to the Table: Whereupon the Houſe proceeds as a Houſe, and not as a Committee. The Lords have alſo their Committees, but with this Difference, That the Judges, and other Aſſiſtants there, are ſometimes joined to the Lords of the Committee, though they have no Voice in the Houſe.

The Royal Aſſent to Bills.

When Bills are ready for the Royal Aſſent, the King comes to the Houſe of Lords in the ſame State as before. Being ſeated upon his Throne, and the Commons ſent for up by the Black Rod, the Clerk of the Crown reads the Title of each Bill; and as he reads, the Clerk of the Parliament pronounces the Royal Aſſent: If a publick Bill, the Anſwer is, *Le Roy le veut.* If private, *Soit fait comme il eſt deſiré.* If a Money Bill, *Le Roy remercie ſes loyaux Sujets, accepte leur Benevolence, & auſſi le veut.* If a Bill of Indemnity, the Return is from the Lords and Commons to his Majeſty, *Les Prelats, Seigneurs, & Communes, en ce Parlement aſſemblez, au Nom de tous vos autres Sujets, remercient tres humblement Votre Majeſté, & prient Dieu vous donner en Sante bonne Vie & longue.* If a Bill which the King does not think fit to paſs into a Law, *Le Roy s'avuſera*, i. e. The King will conſider of it. But 'tis obſervable, that the King may, by Commiſſion granted to ſome of the Peers, give his Royal Aſſent to any Bill, without his perſonal Preſence.

The Meaning of Adjourning, Proroguing, and Diſſolving the Parliament.

As each Houſe has an undoubted Privilege to adjourn themſelves for ſome Days, ſo the King may adjourn 'em, in order to a Receſs for ſome Time. And then all Bills already read and debated, in one or both Houſes, remain as they were, and at the next Meeting may be brought to an Iſſue. 'Tis otherwiſe with a Prorogation, which makes a Seſſions. For in this Caſe all Bills that paſſed either Houſe, or both Houſes, and had not the Royal Aſſent, muſt begin a new at the next Meeting, before they can be brought to Perfection. *Laſtly*, The Parliament is ſaid to be diſſolved, when the Houſe of Commons is diſcharged in order to a new Election. Both the Diſſolution, and the Calling a New Parliament, are commonly done by Proclamation, after the laſt Sitting of the Old One. Upon the King's Deceaſe, if there was a Parliament, ſitting, or in being, 'twas *ipſo facto* diſſolved, the King being look'd upon as the Head of Parliament. But, to prevent the Miſchiefs and Confuſions that may be occaſioned in ſuch a Caſe, a providential Act was made in Queen *Anne*'s Reign; by which the Parliament then ſitting, or in being, ſhall continue, and immediately meet, for and during the Time of Six Months, unleſs the ſame ſhall be ſooner prorogued or diſſolved. But in Caſe there ſhall be no Parliament in being, then the laſt preceding Parliament ſhall immediatly meet, ſit, and act.

Courts of Juſtice.

From the High Court of Parliament, we proceed to the Courts of Juſtice ſitting at *Weſtminſter*, and opened 4 Times a Year, called the 4 Terms, *viz. Eaſter*, *Trinity*, *Michaelmas*, and *Hilary* Terms. The ſeveral Courts are the Court of *Chancery*, *King's-Bench*, and *Common-Pleas*; and two concerning the King's Revenue, *viz.* the Court of *Exchequer*, and that of the Dutchy of *Lancaſter*. The *Chancery* has two Courts in one; the equitable Part being inſtituted for the Relief of the Subject, againſt Cheats, Breaches of Truſt, and unfortunate Accidents, to temper the Rigour of the Law, and reſcue Men from Oppreſſion. The Judge is the Lord High Chancellor, or Lord Keeper of the Great Seal. He is the Chief Magiſtrate in the Kingdom, and the prime Miniſter of State. In the other Courts there are 4 Judges to each, but in *Chancery* the Lord Chancellor is the ſole Judge. And, for his Equity, he is ſaid to be the Keeper of the King's Conſcience. But tho' the Lord Chancellor be the ſole Judge here, yet he has 12 Aſſiſtants, called Maſters of *Chancery*. Their chief Buſineſs is to take Affidavits, or Depoſitions upon Oath, or any other Matter to which an Oath is required by the Rules of the Court. The Chancellor does alſo refer to them the Examination of Accounts. In Term-time 3 of them ſit in Court with the Lord Chancellor, and 2 out of Term, when he hears Cauſes at his own Houſe. The firſt of the aforeſaid 12 Maſters is called Maſter of the Rolls, as having the Cuſtody of all Charters, Patents, Commiſſions, Deeds, and Recognizances; which being made in Rolls of Parchment, gave Occaſion for that Name. This is a great Officer, and his Place of great Profit. He is ſo far an Aſſiſtant to the Lord Chancellor, as to hear Cauſes in his Abſence, but does not go ſo far as to make a Decree. By virtue of his Office, he keeps a Court at the Rolls, with two Aſſiſtant Maſters of *Chancery*, where he hears and determines Cauſes that come there before him: But his Decrees are appealable to the Court of *Chancery*. In Parliament, when he ſits in the Houſe of Lords, his Place is next to the Lord Chief Juſtice of *England*. The *Chancery* Court ſwarms with Officers: Amongſt which the Six Clerks are next in Degree to the Maſters of *Chancery*. Next the 6 Clerks is the Clerk of the Crown, the Protbonotary, the Regiſters, 2 Examiners, a Clerk, and a Comptroller of the Hanaper, 3 Clerks of the Petty Bag, 2 Maſters of the Subpæna Office, and 24 Curſitors. The Alienation Office is a Bench of this Court; to which Office there belong 3 Commiſſioners, a Maſter in *Chancery*, a Receiver, a Clerk of the Inrollments, and a Clerk of the Entries. *Laſtly*, Here is the Warden of the *Fleet*, and a Serjeant at Arms.

Chancery

2. The *King's-Bench* Court is the higheſt Court in *England* at Common Law, next to the Houſe of Lords in Parliament. The Pleas between the King and the Subject, all Treaſons, Felonies, Breach of Peace, Oppreſſion, and Miſ-government, are commonly brought before this Court. In this Court all young Lawyers that have been

King's Bench

called

called to the Bar, are allowed to plead and practise. There are 4 Judges belonging to it. The first of these Judges is called Lord Chief Justice of the *King's-Bench*, or else Lord Chief Justice of *England*. 3. The *Common-Pleas* is so called, because the Pleas usually here debated, are between Subject and Subject. None but Serjeants at Law may plead in this Court, and yet they have the Privilege of pleading in all other Courts. This Court has also 4 Judges. The first is called Lord Chief Justice of the *Common-Pleas*. Here is also the Register of the Fine-Office, and a Clerk of the Proclamations; a Clerk of the Treasury, a Clerk of the Inrolments of Fines and Recoveries, a Clerk of the Outlawries, a Clerk of the King's Silver, a Clerk of the Warrant, a Clerk of the *Habeas Corpus*, a Clerk of the Essoines, a Clerk of the Errors, a Clerk of the Supersedeas, also 14 Filazers, and 4 Exigenters. 4. There are 2 Courts held in the *Exchequer*, 1 which tries Causes according to Law, and the other according to Equity. The Court of Equity is held before the Lord Treasurer, the Chancellor of the *Exchequer*, and the Barons: But the judicial Proceedings are only before the Barons. Here are tried all Causes relating to the King's Revenue: For which there are 4 Judges appointed, called Barons of the *Exchequer*; none but Barons sitting here as Judges in former Times. The Title of Lord Chief Baron belongs to the first of them. There is another Baron, called Cursitor-Baron, who sits in the Court with them, but is none of the Judges. The next Officers are, the King's Remembrancer, the Lord Treasurer's Remembrancer, the Clerk of the Pipe, the Comptroller of the Pipe, the Clerk of the Pleas, a Clerk of the Estreats, 2 Auditors of the Impress, 4 Auditors of the Revenue, a Remembrancer of the First-Fruits, and a Chief Usher, who has under him 4 Ushers, and 6 Messengers. 5. The Court of the Dutchy of *Lancaster* is kept at *Westminster*, by the *Lower Exchequer*, to take Cognizance of all Causes that concern the Revenue of this Dutchy. The chief Judge of this Court is the Chancellor of the Dutchy, who is assisted by the Attorney thereof.

Common Pleas

Exchequer

Assizes. The Assizes are Courts kept twice a Year in every County of *England*, for the Ease of the People in the Distribution of Justice; the 12 Judges going for that Purpose by Commission from the King, to do Justice all over *England*. They judge both civil and criminal Causes. The Assizes are distinguished into *Lent* and Summer Assizes, the first falling out presently after *Hilary*-Term, the last after *Trinity* Term. They are usually held at the County-Town, and that with great Attendance and Feasting. The Jury is chosen by the Sheriff of the County, and only directed in Point of Law by the Judges. For every Trial by Assize is referred for the Fact to a Jury, as in most Courts of the Common Law. The Trial of Malefactors in *England* is very singular, and different from other Nations. The Court being met, the Prisoners are brought in 1, 2, or 3 at a Time. The Clerk commands one of them to the Bar, and to hold up his Hand; then he charges him with his Crime, and asks him, Whether he is Guilty, or not Guilty? If he answers Guilty, his Trial is over, and nothing left but the Sentence to be pronounced against him. If he stands mute, his Punishment is to be pressed to Death. But the usual Way is, to answer Not Guilty, though the Prisoner's Crime be ever so apparent, and he has confessed the Fact before his Trial. For the Law of *England* takes no Notice of such Confession, and the Judges proceed only upon Evidence; so that, unless the Witnesses be positive and clear against the Prisoner, the Jury will acquit him. When the Evidence is over, the Judge directs the Jury, and bids them discharge their Conscience. The Jury being agreed on their Verdict, the Prisoner is either condemned or acquitted, for the Verdict is unalterable. If the Verdict be brought in Guilty, the Prisoner, if it be the first Fault, and the Crime be within the Statute, may demand the Benefit of the Clergy, which saves his Life, and makes him liable to be only burnt in the Hand. But where the Benefit of the Clergy is not allowed of, the Sentence of Death runs in these Words: *The Law is, That thou shalt return to the Place from whence thou camest, and from thence to the Place of Execution, where thou shalt hang by the Neck, till thy Body be dead; and the Lord have Mercy on thy Soul:* Whereupon the Sheriff is charged with the Execution.

Jury.

Trial of Malefactors

The Convocation is a general Assembly of the Clergy, to consult of Church Matters. The same is either National or Provincial, and never meets, but in Time of Parliament. It is like the Parliament, divided into 2 Houses, the Upper and the Lower: And all Members thereof have, by Statute, the same Privileges for themselves and Servants, as the Members of Parliament have. The upper House, in the Province of *Canterbury*, consists of 22 Bishops. The Archbishop sits in a Chair at the upper End of the Table, and the Bishops on each Side, all in their Scarlet Robes and Hoods. The Lower House consists of the Deans and Archdeacons, 1 Proctor for every Chapter, and 2 Proctors for the inferior Clergy of the Dioceses. *Henry* the VIIth's Chapel at *Westminster*, is the usual Meeting-place for the Province of *Canterbury*; and *York*, the Place for the Province of *York*. The first Business of the Lower House is to chuse a Prolocutor, who, being chosen, is presented to the Upper House by 2 of the Members; one of them making a Speech in *Latin*, and the Prolocutor elect another. To which the Archbishop answers in the same Language, and approves the Person. The Matter debated by both Houses, are properly Church and religious Matters; first proposed in the Upper, and then communicated to the Lower House, the Majority of Votes prevailing in each House. But whatever is transacted there, can be of no Force without the Concurrence of both Houses of Parliament, and the Royal Assent. The executive Power of Ecclesiastical Laws is lodged in several Courts, provided for that Purpose: Whose proper Matters are Ordinations, Institution of Clerks to Benefices, Celebration of divine Service, Tithes, Oblations, Obventions, Mortuaries, Dilapidations, Reparation of Churches, matrimonial Rights, Divorces, general Bastardy, Probate of Wills, Administrations, Pensions, Procurations, Commutation of Penance, Apostacy, Simony, Heresy, Schism, Blasphemy, Fornications, Adulteries, Incests, *&c.* The Manner of Trials in these Courts differs from those at common Law. The first Step here is a Citation; then a Bill and Answer. Next they proceed to Proofs, Witnesses, and Presumption, the Matter being argued *pro* and *con*, and the Canon and Civil Law quoted. Whereupon the Judges decisive Sentence passeth, without any Jury, and then Execution follows. The Archbishop of *Canterbury* has no less than 3 several Courts, *viz.* the *Court of Arches*, the *Court of Audience*, and the *Court of Peculiars*. We must not omit the *Court of Delegates*, so called, as consisting of Commoners delegated by Royal Commission, to sit upon an Appeal to the King in the Court of *Chancery*. Besides the Courts aforesaid, every Bishop has a Court of his own, which is held in the Cathedral of his Dioces, and is called

Convocation.

Ecclesiastical Courts.

Bishop Court

called *Consistory Court*: Over which he has a Chancellor, who sits as Judge. *Lastly*, Every Archdeacon has his Court, in which small Differences arising within his Jurisdiction are determined.

Punishments

The Punishments inflicted upon Offenders of all Kinds, are much more merciful in *England*, than in any other Part of the known World. For such Criminals as are obstinate at their Trial, *pressing to Death* is the proper Punishment. The most usual Punishment in *England* for Capital Crimes, is *Hanging*. But, in Case of Robbery and Murder, the Malefactor is afterwards hang'd in Chains, till his Body be wasted, or devoured by the Fowls of the Air. Though counterfeiting the Coin be *High Treason* by Law, yet Offenders therein are only hanged. But they are drawn, as Traytors, on a Sledge, to the Place of Execution; and, if Women, they are burnt alive. For *burning alive* is what the Law inflicts upon Women guilty of *High* or *Petty Treason*, and upon *Witches*. But the Criminal is usually strangled, before the Fire takes hold of her at the Stake. *Beheading* is only allowed to Persons of Quality, convicted of any capital Crime. 'Tis true, the Sentence is the same with that of common Persons, but by the Sovereign's Favour, they are commonly beheaded. The Law of *England* includes all capital Crimes in these three, *viz. High Treason*, *Petty Treason*, and *Felony*. The *First* is a Crime of State; *Petty Treason* is, when a Child kills his Father; a Servant, his Master or Mistress; a Wife, her Husband, or a Clergyman his Prelate. And by *Felony*, are meant Thefts, Robberies, Murders, *&c.* *Punishments* not Capital, are *Burning in the Hand*, *Whipping*, *Transportation*, the *Pillory*, the *Stocks*, and Pecuniary Mulcts called *Fines*. The Spiritual Courts have also their *Punishments*; some peculiar to the Clergy, and some common to the Clergy and Laity. Of the first Sort is, *Suspensio ab Officio*, *Suspensio a Beneficio*, and *Deprivatio ab Officio & Beneficio*. The *Spiritual Punishments*, inflicted both upon the Clergy and Laity, are *Excommunication*, or an Exclusion from the Church; which is of two Sorts, *Minor* and *Major*; the Anathema, used only to obstinate Hereticks; and publick Penance, when the Delinquent is compell'd to make a publick Confession of his Fault in the Church.

CHAP. VII.

A Description of Scotland, *treating of its Situation, Extent, Air, Soil, Produce, Trade, Inhabitants,* &c. *Its Counties, principal Towns, and adjacent Islands; also of its* Government, *Civil, Military, and Ecclesiastical.*

Its Situation.

Scotland, the Northern Part of *Great-Britain*, is bounded on the South by *England*, from which it is divided by the River *Tweed* on the East Border, by *Cheviot-Hills* in the Middle Marches, and by the Rivers *Esk* and *Solway* on the Western Border. On the North it is bounded by the *Deucalidon* Sea, on the West by the *Irish* Sea, and on the East by the *German* Ocean. From the *Mull* of *Galloway* to *Dunsbey Head* in *Caithness*, it is 380 *English* Miles in Length; and from *Adermouth Head*, near the Isle of *Mull*, to *Buchanness*, it is 190 Miles in Breadth, and is so frequently cut by Inlets of Sea, that there's scarce a House in the Kingdom above 60 Miles distant from it.

Air.

The Air of the Country in general is wholesome, and though colder than that of *England*, yet, for the most Part, clearer. This contributes much to the Health of the Inhabitants, and not a little to the Clearness of their Understandings. Their longest Day is commonly reckoned about 18 Hours 2 Minutes, and their shortest Nights about 5 Hours and 45 Minutes in the Continent; but in the Isle of *Skye*, about the Summer Solstice, the Night is not above an Hour and a Half; and in *Orkney*, about *June*, one may see to read all Night. The Winter is longer in *Scotland*, and more subject to Storms of Snow, and hard Frosts, than in *England*.

Soil and Produce.

The Soil, though not generally so fruitful as that of *England*, produces all Things necessary for human Life; and not only enough for its Inhabitants, but sufficient for Export, to exchange for such foreign Commodities as they want, and to bring home considerable Sums. Though the Country, for the most Part, be mountainous, and full of Heaths, yet it has many large and fruitful Valleys, abounding with Corn and Grass; and more of the latter they might have, were the Tenants encouraged by long Leases to inclose, as in *England*, and had they any Vent for their Cattle when fatted. In a Word, the Country produces all Sorts of Grain that are found in *England*; and in several Counties they have great Store of good Wheat; and they have Store of Beer, which they distinguish from Barley, and of this Beer they make good Bread and Ale. The most general Grain of the Country is Oats, which exceed those of *England*, and grow in the Highlands, and other mountainous Countries, where other Sorts of Corn will not grow so well; and of this they make good Bread and Drink.

Fruits.

Most of the Fruits that grow in *England*, are also found in *Scotland*; but though they have very good Apples, they have none comparable to the *English* Pippin: Nor is their Climate so proper for Grapes and Wall-Fruit; yet those who are at the Expence, may have very good of both; and the Soil is productive of good Herbs and Roots for Food and Physick.

Timber.

They have the same Sorts of Timber as in *England*, and exceed it much in Forests of Fir, especially in the *North* and *Highlands*, where their Woods afford Masts for the largest Men of War. In most Places of the *Lowlands*, especially on this Side *Forth*, the Country is but ill stor'd with Timber, occasioned by the long Wars betwixt the two Nations, during which it was cut down and destroy'd, as well as in the Northern Provinces of *England*.

Fewel.

For Fewel, many Parts of the Country are well provided of Coal, better for Chambers than that of *England*, though not generally so good for the Forge; yet sufficient for their own Use that Way, as also to boil their Salt; and of this Coal they export great Quantities. In the *North* and *Highlands* they have Store of Timber for Fewel, and in other Places they have Turf, Peat, Heath, Broom, and Furzes: But in some Corn-Countries, they burn much Straw, with which they bake their Oat-Cakes well, and with great Expedition.

Cattle

The Country in general abounds with Flocks of Sheep, and black Cattle, except in Corn-Countries, where they ſeldom keep more of the latter than are neceſſary for domeſtick Uſes. But ſuch as are bred in thoſe Countries, are much larger than thoſe bred in the other Parts of the Country, and equal in Size to thoſe of *England*; yet in general, their white and black Cattle are much ſmaller than thoſe of *England*, but of a more delicious Taſte. They export ſalt Beef and Pork from the Northern Parts; and from thence, and the Highlands, they bring annually great Herds of their ſmall black Cattle into the Lowlands and *England*. In the Highlands and Iſles they have abundance of Deer; but there are few in the Lowlands, except in *Galloway*, and the Parks of ſome Perſons of Quality. The Hides of their black Cattle, are not ſo fit for ſtrong Shoes, Boots, and Coach-Harneſs, *&c.* as thoſe of *England*, but are proper enough for other Uſes. In the Highlands, North and Weſt, and in *Galloway*, they breed great Numbers of Horſes, ſmall indeed, but capable of great Fatigue, and more proper in thoſe Countries, than Horſes of a larger Size, becauſe more hardy, and living well upon what would ſtarve great Horſes; but in the Lowlands, they are capable of breeding and maintaining Horſes fit for Coach, War, and Carriage. They made great Pro-

Wool

fit of the Skins and Wool of their Sheep, by exporting them in Kind, and manufactur'd, before the Union. Their Wool in ſome Places, eſpecially in *Galloway*, *Tweedale*, and ſome of the Iſles, is very good for Stuffs, Serges, Fingrams, Shalloons, Stockings, and Cloth; in making of which they have improv'd much of late. Their Wool affords them not only Cloth and Stuffs for their Home-Conſumption, but for Export. Their greateſt Trade for that, and their other Commodities, has for many Years been with the United *Netherlands*. From this Trade the Town of *Rotterdam* has acquir'd conſiderable Wealth; in Conſideration of which, the *Scots* have been always eſteem'd in thoſe Provinces, and the States allow them Churches, and Maintenance for their Miniſters. The Coun-

Linen.

try produces great Quantities of Hemp and Flax, of which they make Store of Linen, Coarſe and Fine, Holland, Cambrick, Muſlins, Callicoes, Dornick, Damask, *&c.* for their own Uſe and Export. Their greateſt Ladies take Care to have moſt of their Linen and Woollen, for ordinary Uſes, and many Times for their own, and their Huſband's wearing, made in their own Houſes. In

Plaids

this Place it is proper to mention their Plaids, a Manufacture wherein they exceed all Nations both as to Colour and Fineneſs. They have of late been pretty much fancied in *England*, and are very ornamental as well as durable.

Fiſh and Fowl

For Variety and Plenty of Fiſh, Eggs, and Fowl, *Scotland* exceeds any Country in *Europe*; affording, not only Food and Feathers to the Inhabitants, but an inexhauſtible Fund for Exportation; and ſince it is known that the *Dutch* have raiſed themſelves to much of their preſent Grandeur by fiſhing in the *Scots* Seas, it is an unaccountable Neglect, that ſince the *Union*, that Fiſhery is not improved to the general Advantage of the Iſland, ſo as to enable us to out-do all the World in Fiſhing.

Mines.

For Mines, they have thoſe of Gold, Silver, Brafs, Copper, and Lead white and black, as good as any in *Britain*. They abound alſo with Quarries of Free Stone for Building, Slates of a grey Colour, ordinarily made Uſe of for covering Houſes, and thoſe of a blue Colour, which they call Skelley, made Uſe of for covering the Houſes of People of Quality, and thoſe of the richer Sort in Town and elſewhere: They have alſo Quarries, nay, Mountains of Marble; ſome white, with Veins of ſeveral Colours, and ſome green, with Veins of red and other Colours; and they have fine *Greek* Stone, Calmſtone, and Limeſtone. They have alſo Agat, fine blue Amethiſts, and many ſmall Stones about their Rivers, which being cut and poliſh'd, reſemble Diamonds. They have likewiſe Pearl and Coral, and Ambergreaſe is ſometimes found on their Coaſts.

Harbours.

For the Conveniency of Trade and Fiſhing, there are many Inlets of the Sea, which afford many Harbours, and ſeveral of them very good, capable of Men of War, and other Ships of the greateſt Burthen. The principal Rivers of *Scotland* are

Rivers.

Forth, *Tay*, *Clyde*, *Spey*, *Dith*, *Dee*, *Don*, *Nayn*, and *Tweed*. The moſt convenient for Trade are *Forth* and *Clyde*, which, by a Canal of about 30 Miles long, might be join'd, and open a Communication betwixt the Eaſt and Weſt Seas, to the great Advancement of the Commerce of the whole Iſland: Some who have viewed the Country, ſay it is practicable, and it has been pretty much talk'd of ſince the *Union*.

The *Scots* are divided into *Highlanders*, who call themſelves the antient *Scots*, and into *Lowlanders*, who are a Mixture of antient *Scots*, *French*, *Engliſh*, *Danes*, *Germans*, *Hungarians*, and others.

Cuſtoms of the High-landers.

The *Highlanders*, in their Diet, Apparel, and Houſhold Furniture, follow the Parſimony of the Antients; they provide their Diet by Fiſhing and Hunting, and boil their Fleſh in the Paunch or Skin of a Beaſt: While they hunt, they eat it raw, after having ſqueez'd out the Blood. Their Drink is the Broth of boil'd Meat, or Whey. They keep this ſome Years, and drink it plentifully in their Entertainments, but moſt of them drink Water. Their Bread is of *Oats* and *Barley*; they eat a little of it in the Morning, and contenting themſelves with that, hunt, or go about their Buſineſs without eating any more till Night. Their Anceſtors, as do moſt

Hardi-neſs.

of them ſtill, made Uſe of Plaids very much variegated. Being rather wrapped up, than cover'd with thoſe Plaids, they endure all the Rigour of the Seaſon, and ſometimes ſleep cover'd all over with Snow. At Home they lie upon the Ground, having under them Fern or Heath, the latter laid with the Roots undermoſt, ſo as it is almoſt equal to Feathers for Softneſs, but much more healthful. If at any Time they come into other Places of the Country, where there is better Accommodation, they pull the Coverings off the Bed, and lie down upon them wrapped up in their Plaids, leſt they ſhould be ſpoil'd by this barbarous Effeminacy, as they call it. In War, they cover themſelves with Coats of Mail, made up of Iron Rings, for the moſt Part as low as their Ankles. Their Arms are Bows and barbed Arrows, which cannot be taken out of the Body, without making a great Wound; and others of them make Uſe of broad Swords, and Battle-Axes. Their Martial Muſick

Muſick.

is a Bagpipe. They delight much in Muſick, eſpecially Fiddles. Their Songs are artfully enough compos'd, and the Subject of them is generally the Praiſe of brave Men. They make Uſe of a little of the old *Gaulick* Tongue. They take long Journies in the Height of Winter, on Foot, without Inconvenience, and trouble themſelves about no

Iſlands.

other Proviſion, than a little *Aqua vitæ*, and ſome *Cheeſe*. The *Orkney* Mens Language is a Dialect of the old *Gothick*, and living after the old temperate Way, they are not much troubled with Diſtempers of Body or Mind. Their Ignorance of Luxury contributes to their Health, and makes their Stature manly, and their Complection comely. However, their antient Diſcipline begins to grow into Debauchery, by their Commerce with other Nations. The *Shetlanders* have much the ſame Cuſtoms, but them retain ſomewhat more of the antient *Parſimony*.

The

Their Habit is that of the *Germans*, and tolerably decent. They abhor Drunkenneſs, but once a Month entertain one another chearfully for cultivating mutual Friendſhip, without Brawls or Quarrels, the uſual Companions of Exceſs. The Firmneſs of their Conſtitution is extraordinary.

Low-landers. The *Lowlanders* partake much of the Temper of the People, of whom we have mentioned them to be compos'd, but moſt reſemble the *French*, occaſioned by the long League betwixt the two Nations, their mutual Commerce, frequent Intermarriages, and Cuſtom of travelling into *France* to ſtudy the Law, and other Sciences, and by their affecting to ſerve in the *French* Armies. But ſince the Union of the Crowns, the *Engliſh* Cuſtoms and Way of Living have obtained much in the *Lowlands*, where the *Engliſh* Tongue has been their natural Language for above 600 Years, but ſtill retains more of the antient *Saxon*. This being extraordinary, and perhaps ſingular, that a foreign Language ſhould prevail in a Country altogether independent of *England*, and where the Inhabitants were of another Lineage, and maintained ſuch fierce and long Wars to preſerve their diſtinct Sovereignty; the *Scotiſh* Antiquaries and Hiſtorians give ſeveral Reaſons for it. Without enumerating all theſe, we will only obſerve, That a great many *Engliſh* going to *Scotland* after the *Norman* Conqueſt, with *Edgar Atheling*, and his Siſter *Margaret*, who was afterwards marry'd to King *Malcolm*, the *Engliſh* has been gaining Ground upon the old *Scots* Language ever ſince; which is now confin'd to the Highlands, and the Iſles, where thoſe of Note do alſo underſtand *Engliſh*. In a Word, the *Scots* in general are naturally inclin'd to Civility, eſpecially to Strangers; and the Lineaments of their Bodies are as well proportion'd and comely, as any Nation in *Europe*, which, together with their native Courage and Ability to endure Fatigue, makes them valued by all the Princes of *Europe* for Soldiers.

Scotland is uſually divided into two Parts, by the River *Tay*, *viz.* *North* and *South Scotland*. In the latter of theſe, which lies next to *England*, are the following Counties. Counties. *Mers.* 1. *March*, or *Mers*, in the Law-Writings of *Scotland* call'd the Shire of *Berwick*, which was formerly the principal Town of the County, till it was taken by the *Engliſh*. This County is very fruitful in Corn and Graſs, and abounds with the Seats of Perſons of Quality. The principal Rivers in this County are *Tweed*, *Whitader*, *Blackader*, *Leye*, and *Eduem*. The chief Place of Note is the Town and Caſtle of *Dunſ*. It has a good Weekly Market, eſpecially for Cattle, and is the Place of the beſt Trade in the County. Next to this are *Hume*, *Coldingham*, *Eaſtcaſtle*, *Leymouth*, *Coldſtream*, and *Eccles*. *Tweedale.* 2. *Tweedale*, which derives its Name from the River *Tweed*, that runs through it: It is fruitful in Corn and Paſturage, and abounds with Flocks. The chief Places of Note in this County, were the antient Borough and Caſtle of *Roxburgh*, now demoliſh'd, *Jedburgh*, a Royal Borough on the River *Jed*; *Kelſo*, a Town of good Trade, on the River *Tweed*; *Hawick*, a Market Town on the River *Teviot*; the Town, and once famous Abbey of *Melroſſe*, on the River *Tweed*; *Dribugh*, once noted alſo for a ſtately Abbey. There are many Seats of Perſons of Quality in this County. The principal Rivers here are *Tweed*, *Teviot*, *Jed* and *Eal*. Weſt from *Teviotdale*, upon the Borders, lie the ſmall Counties of *Liddeſdale*, *Eskdale*, and *Wachopdale*, ſo called from the Rivers *Liddel*, *Esk*, and *Wachop*. Theſe are uſually reckoned now of *Teviotdale*. 3. *Annandale*, ſo called from the River *Annan*. It has many pleaſant Woods, and fruitful Fields, on both Sides. The principal Places of *Annandale*, are the Town and Caſtle of *Annan*, the Town and Caſtle of *Lochmaben*, and *Moffet*, remarkable for its Medicinal Wells. 4. Next to *Annandale*, lies *Nithiſdale*, which together make up the Shire of *Dumfreis*. The Duke of *Queensberry* is Hereditary Sheriff of this County. It takes its Name from the River of *Nith*. This River receives ſeveral others from *North* and *South*: Near the Head of it lies the Town of *Sanquehar*, and near its Mouth lies *Dumfreis*, a pleaſant, conſiderable, and flouriſhing Town, noted for its Trade, and a famous Bridge. There are many conſiderable Woods in this County. 5. *Lothian*, which, for Cultivation, Gentlemens Seats, and Plenty of all Neceſſaries for Human Life, exceeds any other County in *Scotland*: 'Tis particularly fruitful in Corn, eſpecially Wheat. 'Tis divided into *Eaſt*, *Weſt*, and *Mid-Lothian*. The chief Places of Note in *East-Lothian*, are *Dunbar*, formerly remarkable for a ſtrong Caſtle, now demoliſh'd; *Haddington*, a Market-Town upon the River *Tine*; *Dalkeith*, a Town and Caſtle on the River *Esk*; *Muſſelburgh*, *Tranent*, and *Preſton-pans*.

In *Mid Lothian* lies *Edinburgh*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, where, for ſome Ages, the Kings of *Scotland* had their Reſidence, in the adjoining Palace of *Holyrood-Houſe*. The City has alſo, of a long Time, been the uſual Seat of the Parliament, and the ſupreme Courts of Judicature. It was famous of old for its Caſtle, one of the ſtrongeſt in *Europe*. This City has been built here for the Protection of the Caſtle, from which the principal, and indeed as beautiful and magnificent a Street as is to be ſeen any where, lies on the Ridge of a Hill to the King's Palace; and from this Street on both Sides the Hill, there run a vaſt Number of Lanes, down to the Lake on the North-ſide; and to another Street call'd the *Cowgate*, on the South-ſide; and whence alſo there are many Lanes, which run up the Hill, on the South, towards the Univerſity, and *Herriot*'s-Hoſpital, and the principal Suburbs on that Side. This City, from the Caſtle to the Palace, is a large *Scotch* Mile in Length, and above half a Mile in Breadth, from the North to the South-ſide of the Town. It is accounted as populous, if not more, than any City in *Europe* for its Bounds; the Houſes being very high, large, and contiguous, but rather too cloſe, except in the principal Street. It was naturally fortify'd by a Lake on the North, and by a ſtrong Wall on the other Parts, without which there lie now many fair Suburbs. This City would certainly have been more conſiderable, had it not been for its unhappy Situation for Trade, and its Nearneſs to the Borders; ſo that its Riſe and Subſiſtence did chiefly depend on the Reſidence of the Kings, the Seat of the Parliament, and Courts of Judicature, and the Reſidence of the chief Nobility, many of whom have great Houſes there. The remarkable Edifices, beſides the Caſtle and Palace, are the Parliament Houſe; a ſtately, convenient, and large Structure, with a large Court call'd The Parliament-Cloſe. The Room, for the meeting of the Parliament, has a high Throne for the Sovereign or the Commiſſioner, with Benches on each Side for the Nobility, and Forms conveniently plac'd in the Middle for the Commoners. The Weſt ſide of the Parliament Houſe is incloſ'd by the Council Houſe, where the Town Council aſſembles. The South ſide is bounded by the Seſſions Houſe, where the ſupreme Courts of Judicature are held. In the upper Part of this Edifice are the Apartments for the Lords of the Privy Council, and Exchequer. Near the Council Chamber ſtands the Royal Exchange, and another Exchange inferior to this. On the North ſide ſtands the high Church, now divided into four Churches. The Steeple is very high, and the Summit reſembles an imperial Crown. The Churches of this City, including the

Chapel

Chapel of the Caſtle, are twelve, and the Miniſters twenty-three. *Herriot*'s Hoſpital is a large and ſtately Edifice, which was built at the Charge of *George Herriot*, Goldſmith to King *James* VI. for the Education and Entertainment of 40 Boys. Upon the South-ſide of the Town ſtands the College, which has large Precincts enclos'd with high Walls, and is divided into three Courts. The publick Schools are large and commodious; there is good Accommodation for the Students, handſome Dwellings for the Profeſſors, and fine Gardens for their Recreation. It was founded in 1580, by King *James* VI. They have a very good Library, which was founded by *Clement Little*, in 1635. ſince which it is much increaſed by Donatives. Under the Library is the King's Printing-Houſe, where they are chiefly employed in printing Bibles. The Mint-Houſe hath a large Court, adorn'd with neat and convenient Buildings, for the Accommodation of the Overſeers and Workmen. Near to the Collegiate Church is the Hoſpital of St. *Thomas*, in which decay'd Citizens of both Sexes are very handſomely maintained. Over-againſt that Church is the Correction-houſe, commonly call'd *Paul*'s Work. The common Burial-place of this City is *Gray-friars* Church-yard, where there are abundance of fine Monuments. The City is incloſed with a kind of old *Roman* Wall on every Side, except the North. It has ſix Gates; two to the Eaſt, two to the South, one to the Weſt, and one to the North. The chief Gate is one of thoſe to the Eaſt, called the *Nether Bow*, built in 1616, and adorn'd with Towers on both Sides: This is the Entrance from the Palace, and the principal Suburb call'd the *Cannon-gate*. The Caſtle is ſituated at the Weſt End of the City, where the Rock riſes to a high and large Summit; 'tis inacceſſible on the South, Weſt, and North: The Entrance is from the Town, where the Rock is alſo very high; and the En- is defended by a round Battery, and an Out- it. The Palace conſiſts of Entrance is adorned with great Stone, and a fine Cupola in Form n over it. In the Front, there are four high Towers. The Palace is almoſt ſurrounded with lovely Gardens, and on the South-ſide of it lies the King's Park. In the City there is a College of Phyſicians, where they have a noble *Muſæum*, which contains a vaſt Treaſure of Curioſities of Art and Nature, foreign and domeſtick. In this City there is alſo a noble Library of Books and Manuſcripts, belonging to the College of Juſtice, or Gentlemen of the Law. On the North-ſide, there is an excellent Phyſick-Garden, with ſome thouſands of Plants. This City is governed by a Lord Provoſt, (whoſe Office is much the ſame with that of the Lord-Mayor of *London*); four Bailiffs, who, beſides the Power of Aldermen, have that of Sheriffs; and a Common-Council, which conſiſts of twenty-five Perſons: All theſe are choſen annually; and the Provoſt, Dean of *Gild*, and Treaſurer, are to be Merchants. The 14 incorporated Trades are, Chirurgeons, Goldſmiths, Skinners, Furriers, Hammer-men, Wrights, Maſons, Taylors, Bakers, Butchers, Cord wainers, Weavers, Wakers, *i. e.* Fullers, and Bonnet-makers, *i. e.* Cap-makers. The Magiſtrates are choſen annually upon the *Tueſday* next after *Michaelmas Day*, by 38 Perſons, whereof 20 are to be Merchants, and Tradeſmen, who are to chuſe ſuch as in their Conſcience they think to be beſt qualify'd. The Lord Provoſt, Dean of *Gild*, and Treaſurer, are not to continue longer than one or two Years at a Time; and the Bailiff is to be one Year Bailiff, one Year old Bailiff, and one Year free of Office. The Lord Provoſt for the Time being is always one of the Privy-Council. The Train'd Bands of the City conſiſt of 16 Companies, beſides which, they have a ſtanding Company of Town-Guards. *Leith*, the Port of *Edinburgh*, the beſt frequented Harbour in *Scotland*, and a thriving Town, was noted in Queen *Mary*'s Minority for being fortified. The Shire of *Edinburgh* contains that which is call'd *Mid-Lothian*. *Leith.*

In *Weſt-Lothian*, the moſt conſiderable Place is *Linlithgow*, where there is a ſtately Palace belonging to the Crown. They have alſo a ſtately Town-houſe, and a curious Church built of hewn Stone. There is alſo a fine Park. *Torſichen*, two Miles from *Linlithgow*, is a Borough, formerly the Reſidence of the Knights of *Malta*. The principal Rivers of the *Lothians* are *Tine*, the two *Esks*, *Leith*, and *Almond*. The Country in general abounds with pleaſant Corn-fields, Meadows, green Hills, and others cover'd with Heath. They have plenty of Coals for Fuel and Export; and make great Quantities of Salt. There are ſeveral Iſlands on the Coaſt of this Country, of which the *Baſs* is the moſt remarkable, being an impregnable Fort, and abounding with *Solan Geeſe*. *Weſt-Lothian.*

6. The Shire of *Selkirk*, takes Denomination from *Selkirk*, the principal Town, where the Sheriff keeps his Courts. *Galloſhiells* is another Market Town in this County, which is mountainous and woody, and more fit for Paſturage than Corn. *Selkirk.*

7. *Twedale*, ſo call'd from the River *Tweed*. *Peebles*, the only Borough of the County, is pleaſantly ſituated betwixt the Rivers *Tweed* and *Peebles*, and is remarkable for its three Churches, three Gates, three Streets, and three Bridges. *Twedale.*

8. *Galloway*, ſo call'd becauſe of its antient Inhabitants, deſcended from the *Gauls*. It is divided into two Sheriffalties, call'd the Upper and the Nether. This County produces all Things neceſſary for human Life, and is remarkable for its excellent Wool, and briſk vigorous little Horſes, from hence call'd *Galloways*. It is water'd by 5 Rivers, which all fall into the *Iriſh* Sea. The remarkable Sea-Ports in this County are, *Kircudbright*, *Garvellan*, *Neſſock*, *Loch-Rian*, and Port *Patrick*. The moſt remarkable Towns are *Kircudbright*, excellently ſituated for Trade; *Wigtoun*, very well ſituated alſo; *Whitehorn*, and *Stranraver*. *Galloway.*

9. Next to *Galloway* lies *Carrick*, a County fruitful in Corn and Paſturage, and has all neceſſary Commodities by Land and Sea. Here *Ptolomy* places the Town and Bay of *Rerigonium*, whence the Town of *Bargeny* is ſuppoſed to derive its Name, and to ſtand in its Place. *Carrick.*

10. *Kyle*, or the Shire of *Air*, lies next to *Carrick*. The River of *Air* here is very pleaſant, and beautified with Woods, Caſtles, and Gentlemens Seats. Over this River there is a Bridge near the new Town of *Air*, and South of the Bridge lies the old Town of *Air*, famous for its Antiquity and Priviledges. *Kyle.*

11. *Cunningham*. The chief Town of this County is *Irwin*, upon the Mouth of a River of that Name, where there is a good Port for ſmall Ships, and a Stone Bridge over the River, and the Town is well ſituated for Trade. *Cunningham.*

12. *Renfrew*. The chief Town is *Renfrew*, a Royal Borough on the Left of *Clyde*. But *Paſley*, another Borough in this County, is a much larger Town than *Renfrew*. *Renfrew.*

13. *Clydſdale*, which derives its Name from the River *Clyde*. It is divided into two Wards, called the Upper and Nether, in the latter of which is contained the Barony of *Glaſgow*. The County Town is *Lanerk*, from whence the whole is call'd the Shire of *Lanerk*. The chief City of this County is *Glaſgow*, a large, ſtately, and well-built City, and for its Commerce and Riches, the Second in the Kingdom. It is pleaſantly ſituated upon the Eaſt Bank of the River *Clyde*, which is navigable to the Tower by Ships of conſiderable Burthen, but its Port is *Newport-Glaſgow*, which ſtands on the Mouth of *Clyde*, and is a Harbour for Ships of the *Clydſdale.* *Glaſgow.*

greateſt

greatest Burthen. In the higher Part of the City stands the great Church, formerly a Cathedral, a magnificent and stately Edifice. Near the Church stands the Castle, formerly the Residence of the Archbishop. But the chief Ornament of this City is the College or University, a magnificent and stately Fabrick, consisting of several Courts. The Town of *Hamilton* is pleasant and well-built, and the *Hamilton*-Family have their Burying-place in the Church. *Ruglen* is another Town in this County. 14. *Sterlingshire* derives its Name from the Town of *Sterling*, which in the *Saxon* Tongue signifies a Rock or Mountain on a River, alluding to the Situation of the Town and Castle. This Town is reckoned the Key of the Kingdom, because it opens the Passage from the South to the North, there being no such easy Passage over the *Forth* as by *Sterling-Bridge*. The Earl of *Mar* is Hereditary Governor of the Castle, which is well stor'd with Ordnance for defending the Bridge, and has a competent Garrison for its Security. The City very much resembles *Edinburgh* in its Situation: 'Tis enclosed by a Wall, and on the North-side has the River *Forth*. 16. *Lenox* is also called the Shire of *Dunbarton*, from its head Town. *Dun*, in the old *Scotch* Language signifies a Hill, or a Rock, and *Bar*, a Tower or Castle, from whence 'tis evident the Town took its Name. This County is remarkable for its noble Herring-Fishing, in two Bays which break into it from the Mouth of *Clyde*, call'd *Lochlong* and *Lochfin*. It is also remarkable because of *Lochlomond*, which contains 30 Islands, three of which have Churches, and many of the rest are inhabited; the Chief of 'em is *Inchmurin*. The famous *Grampian* Mountains begin at this Lake, and run Northward near *Aberdeen*. *Dunbarton* was once considerable for its Trade, which is now much decay'd; but is still remarkable for its Castle, one of the strongest by Nature in *Europe*. 17. The Shire of *Bute* contains the Isles of *Bute* and *Arran*. *Bute* is 8 Miles long, and four broad. It has a Royal Borough call'd *Rothsay*, with an antient Castle. This Island is also remarkable for its noble Herring-Fishing; it lies in the Mouth of *Clyde*. The Isle of *Arran* lies also in the Mouth of *Clyde*, 24 Miles in Length, and 16 Broad, fruitful in Corn and Pasturage. It has four Churches, and several Castles, of which that of *Brodick* is the strongest and most remarkable. 18. The Shire of *Argyle* contains the County of that Name, *Knapdale*, *Corral*, *Kintyre* and *Lorn*, with most Part of the Western Isles. *Kintyre* is a Peninsula, which runs 30 Miles out into the *Irish* Sea. *Campbell Town*, a Royal Borough, with a safe Harbour for Ships, lies in this County. *Knapdale* is join'd to *Kintyre* on the North by a Neck of Land, scarce a Mile broad. It abounds with Lakes and Bays, several of which contain Islands and Castles. *Argyle*, properly so called, has *Knapdale* on the South. The whole Shire of *Argyle*, taking in the constituent Parts above mentioned, has seven Bays of the Sea that enter it, which by the Inhabitants are called *Lochs*; the chief of them *Lochfyn*, which is about 60 Miles in Length, and at the narrowest Place above four Miles in Breadth, famous for the Number and Goodness of its Herrings. *Lorn* is the pleasantest and most fruitful Part of the Shire of *Argyle*. The Castle of *Dunstaffage* lies in this County, which was formerly a Seat belonging to the Kings, where many of them are buried. 19. *Perthshire*, so denominated from the City of *Perth*, the chief Town in the County, commonly called St. *Johnstoun*, pleasantly situated upon the South Bank of the River *Tay*, the second Town of the Nation for Dignity. Vessels come up to the Town at full Tide. *Dun*. This on the North side of *Tay*, at the Foot of the *Grampian* Hill. *Scone*, near *Perth*, remarkable for being the Place where the Kings of *Scotland* were formerly crown'd. That Part of the County called *Strathern*, takes its Denomination from the River *Ern*. *Menteith*, another Part of this County, derives its Name from the River *Teith*, upon which lies the Town of *Dumblain*, famous for a Battle in the last Rebellion. The principal River in *Perthshire*, and indeed of the Nation, is *Tay*, which flows from a Lake of that Name 10 Miles long, and one broad, and after a Course of 46 Miles, falls into the *German* Ocean below *Dundee*. There are many lesser Rivers fall into it. That Part of the County call'd *Braidalbin* lies among the *Grampian* Hills. The Word in the old Language signifies the highest Part of *Scotland*; and Part of it call'd, *Drumalbin*, signifies the Ridge or Back of *Scotland*. 20. *Clackmannan*, Part of *Fife*, has good Corn, Pasturage, and store of Coal and Salt. In another Part of *Fife*, call'd the Shire of *Kinross*, lies *Culross*, noted for a Trade in Salt and Coals. East from this lies *Proper Fife*, 32 Miles in Length. The Air of this County is good, both for preserving and recovering Health. The chief Town of *Fife* is St. *Andrews*, pleasantly situated in a Plain, and has a Prospect into the *German* Sea. It has an Harbour on the East Part, but capable only of small Ships. The Town was formerly very considerable, and consists now of several broad Streets, which cross one another; but is particularly famous for its University, founded by Bishop *Wardlaw* in 1412. and endowed with very ample Privileges. It has a good Library, which was founded by Dr. *Sheen*.

We come now to the Counties North of *Tay*, 1. *Angus*, fruitful in Corn and Pasturage, and has many Lakes and Hills. The County-Town is *Forfar*; but *Dundee* is the most noted Town of this County for Strength, Situation, and Trade. *Montross* is also a Town of good Trade, with a Harbour for Ships of considerable Burthen. 2. The *Merns*, called also the Shire of *Kincardin*, from the County-Town, is fruitful in Corn and Pasturage. The Place of chief Note in this County is the strong Castle of *Dunnotter*. 3. *Mar*, or the Shire of *Aberdeen*. The chief Places of this County are *Old* and *New Aberdeen*. *Old Aberdeen* is situated at the Mouth of the River *Don*, remarkable for the Multitude of Salmon and Perches taken in it. The chief Ornament of this Town is the King's College, on the South-side of it, a neat and stately Structure. Close to the Church there is a Library, well furnished with Books. *New Aberdeen* is about a Mile distant; it is the County Town, and exceeds all the other Cities in the North of *Scotland*, for Largeness, Trade, and Beauty. In this City lies the Marshal College, which has a very good Library. 4. *Bamf*, which contains Part of *Buchan*, *Strathdovern*, *Boyne*, *Enzy*, *Strathavon* and *Balveny*. *Bamf*, the chief Town of the County, lies at the Mouth of the *Dovern*, but has no Port, and by consequence little Trade. 5. *Buchan*. The principal Town of this Place is *Peterburgh*, a Sea Port, and *Peterhead*, another. Near the Ruins of the Castle of *Slains*, there are several Springs of petrifying Water, which make very white and excellent Lime. 6. *Garioch*. The principal Place here is *Innerury*. 7. *Murray*. The Climate and Soil of this County, is the best in all the North of *Scotland*. The principal Towns in this County are *Inverness*, conveniently situated for Trade; *Forres*, as pleasantly situated as any in the North; *Elgin*, formerly a Bishop's See. 8. The Shire of *Inverness* contains Part of *Murray Land*, which lies near the Town, with *Badenoch*, *Lochaber*, and the South Part of *Ross*. In this Shire there are Iron Mines, and large Woods of Fir and Oak. *Badenoch* abounds with Deer, and *Lochaber* with Fish. The Place of chief

chief Note here is *Inverlochy*, a Place of great Strength and Trade, now fortified at the Revolution by King *William*'s Order. 9. *Cromarty*, a ſmall County, derives its Name from the little Town of *Cromarty*, which lies on a Bay of the ſame Name. This Shire comprehends Part of *Roſs*. 10. *Roſs*, betwixt the Eaſt and Weſt Sea. It has many Bays, eſpecially on the Weſtern Coaſt, which abound with Fiſh, particularly Herrings. The Peninſula, which lies betwixt the Bay of *Cromarty* and *Murray*, is called *Ardmeanach*, upon the Shore of which ſtands the Town, called the *Chantrie* of *Roſs*, formerly a Biſhop's See. 10. *Southerland*, fruitful in Corn and Paſturage, and abounding with Fiſh, Fowl, Sheep, black Cattle, and Deer. It has 3 remarkable Foreſts, beſides Abundance of other Woods. There are many Rivers here, though but ſmall. There are about 60 Lakes in this County: The greateſt is *Lochskin*. There are Silver Mines alſo in this County, and excellent Iron Mines, Coal Mines, and Quarries of Freeſtone. The Barley of this County is reckoned excellent. 11. *Strathnaver* derives its Name from the River *Navern*, which runs through it. The County abounds with high Mountains, upon which the Snow lies long. There are many Lakes in the Valleys. It abounds with Woods, and has good Harbours. It has little Corn, but abounds with Cattle. The Bays and Rivers are full of Fiſh, from whence the Natives reap great Profit. They have Iron Works alſo in this County. The two Places of moſt Note in it are *Borwe* and *Young*. 12. *Cathneſs*, divided from *Southerland* by the Mountain *Ord*. The Soil on the Coaſt is low, and fruitful in Corn. The Coaſts and Rivers abound with Fiſh, and the Mountains with black Cattle and Sheep. There are many little Towns and Villages in this County, which are very well inhabited.

Cromarty. *Roſs.* *Southerland.* *Strathnaver.* *Cathneſs.*

The Weſtern Iſles of *Scotland* lie in the *Deucaledon* Sea. Beſides *Boot* and *Arran*, which have been already deſcribed, in the Mouth of *Clyde*, are *Ailſa*, *Cumbra* the greater and leſſer, *Flada*, *Mennock*, and *Avona*. In the main Ocean, the moſt remarkable are, 1. *Gigaia*, 6 Miles in Length, and a Mile and a half in Breadth. 2. *Jura*, 12 Miles from *Gigaia*, 24 Miles long, and 6 or 7 broad, reckoned one of the wholſomeſt Places in *Scotland*. 3. *Scarba*. 4. *Liſmore*. 5. *Bernera*. 6. *Ila*, 24 Miles long, in ſome Places 8, and in others 16 broad; it abounds with Corn and Cattle, has Store of Deer and Lead Mines, with Lime-ſtone in vaſt Quantities. 7. *Mull*, 24 Miles in Length, and as much in Breadth. This Iſland in general affords good Paſturage for Cattle of all Sorts. 8. *St. Columbus*, 2 Miles in Length, and above a Mile broad. The Biſhops of the Iſles had formerly their Seat here. Among the Ruins there are ſtill to be ſeen a Burial Place, in which ſeveral Kings of *Scotland*, *Ireland*, and *Norway*, and the Chiefs of the Tribes of the Weſtern Iſles, were buried. This Iſland is famous in Hiſtory for being a Seminary of Eccleſiaſticks, and in a Manner the Mother Church of all the Dominions of the *Scots* and *Picts*. 9. *Tire-ry*, 8 Miles long, and 3 broad, reckoned to be the moſt plentiful of all the Iſlands in Neceſſaries of human Life. 10. *Col*, 15 Miles long, and 2 broad, and very fruitful. 11. *Rum*, 16 Miles long, and 6 broad; mountainous and heathy, but the Coaſt arable and fruitful. 12. *Canney*. 13. *Muſk*. 14. *Egg*. 15. *Skye*, 42 Miles long, and in ſome Places 20, and in others 30 Miles broad: It is ſeparated from the Shire of *Inverneſs*, by a narrow Firth, where a Man may call from one Side to the other. It has a great deal of arable Ground, which yields a good Increaſe. It has many excellent Bays and Harbours, for the Conveniency of Fiſhing and other Trade, and about 30 Rivers, which afford Salmon. There are many large Caves in this Iſland, one of them ſaid to be 7 Miles long. There are Abundance of old Forts on the Coaſt, that ſeem to have been erected by the *Danes*. The Cattle here are Horſes, Cows, Sheep, Goats, and Hogs. This Iſland abounds alſo with Land and Water Fowl of many Sorts. 16. *Sota Britil*. 17. *Oranſa*. 18. *Scalſa*. 19. *Raſay*. 20. *Altvig*. 21. *Pladda*. Theſe 6, and others, are on the Coaſt of *Skye*. The Natives of *Skye*, and the neighbouring Iſlands, have a peculiar Way of curing the Diſtempers they are incident to, by Simples of their own Product. 22. *Vaterſa*. 23. *Barra*, 7 Miles long, noted for Cod-Fiſhing. 24. *Kiſmul*. 25. *South-Viſt*, 21 Miles long; the Eaſt Side mountainous, but the Weſt plain and arable. It abounds with freſh Water Lakes, which have Plenty of Fiſh and Fowl. 26. *Benbecula*. 27. *North-Viſt*, about 30 Miles in Circumference, the Weſt Side plain and arable. This Iſland has ſeveral Bays on the Eaſt Side, where Ships may ride. In one of them, 400 Veſſels have been loaded with Herrings in a Seaſon. 28. *Scalpinſ*. 29. *Borera*. 30. *Lingay*. Theſe 3 and others are between *North-Viſt* and *Lewis*. The Inhabitants of *South* and *North-Viſt* are generally well-proportioned and healthful, and many of them live to a great Age. 31. The Iſle of *Lewis* is 100 Miles in Length, and from 13 to 14 in Breadth; it is reckoned Part of the Shire of *Roſſe*: But that Part which is properly called *Lewis*, is but 36 Miles in Length, the reſt of it being called *Harries*. The Iſland is healthful, eſpecially in the Middle. It is arable on the Weſt Side for about 16 Miles on the Coaſt, and likewiſe in ſeveral Places in the Eaſt. It is fruitful in Corn: Their common Grain is Barley, Oats, and Rye; and they have alſo Flax and Hemp. There are ſeveral convenient Bays and Harbours here; and all the Bays and Coaſts abound with Cod, Ling, Herring, and all other Sorts of Fiſh taken in the Weſtern Seas. Seals and Fowls frequent here in great Numbers. The Inhabitants are well-proportioned, and in general healthful and ſtrong; they are very quick of Apprehenſion, and Lovers of Poeſy and Muſick; they are dexterous at Swimming, Vaulting, and Archery, and make able Seamen. There are many leſſer Iſlands which lie round this; the chief of which are, 32. *Garve*. 33. the 2 *Berneras*. 34. The Iſland of *Pigmies*. 35. *Rona*. 36. *Soulisker*. There are 24 Churches in *Lewis* and *Harries*, and the Iſlands belonging to them. That Part which is called *Harries*, produces the ſame Sorts of Corn, but with a greater Increaſe than *Lewis*. There are other Iſlands of ſmall Extent belonging to *Harries*, the chief of which are 37. *Bernera*. 38. *Pabbay*. 39. *Sellay*. 40. *Taranſay*. 41. *Hermatra*. 42. The Iſlands called *St. Kilda*, or *Hirt*; the moſt remote of all the *Scotch* Iſles to the North-Weſt.

Weſtern Iſles.

We come now to the Iſles of *Orkney* and *Shetland*. The *Orkneys* have the *Caledonian* Ocean on the Weſt, the *German* Ocean on the Eaſt, the Sea that divides them from *Shetland* on the North, and *Pentland Firth*, which divides them from the main Land of *Scotland*, on the South. They are 28 in Number. *Stroma* near the Coaſt of *Cathneſs*, is not reckoned among the *Orcades*. *Pharay* is a ſmall Iſland, but not unfruitful. *Pentland-Firth*, in which *Stroma* is ſituated, is remarkable for its ſwift, violent, and contrary Tides. The beſt of the *Orkney* Iſlands is *South-Ronaldſa*, 6 Miles long and 3 broad, fruitful in Corn, and well-inhabited.

North Iſles.

habited. 2. *Swinna*, a ſmall Iſland, fruitful in Corn. 3. *Wayes* and *Hoy*, which are but one Iſle, 12 Miles long, and full of high Mountains. 4. *Burra*, 3 Miles long, fruitful in Corn and Paſturage. 5. *Flotta*, 5 Miles long, encompaſſed with high Rocks. Near this lie 6. *Fara*, 7. *Cava*, and 8. *Gramſey*, fruitful and pleaſant, though ſmall Iſlands. We paſs by ſeveral Holms, which are left for Paſturage, and come to 9. *Pomona*, the largeſt of the *Orkney* Iſlands. It is 24 Miles long, in ſome Places 9, and in other 6 Miles broad; very fruitful, and well-inhabited. In this Iſland lies *Kirkwal*, the only Town in *Orkney*, a Royal Borough, pleaſantly ſituated upon a Bay near the Middle of the Iſland; it is about a Mile in Length, and is the Seat of Juſtice. It conſiſts of one Street, the Houſes well-built, and moſt of them covered with Slate. There is a ſtately Church here, formerly called by the Name of St. *Magnus*. 10. *Coppinſha*, a ſmall Iſland, but fruitful. 11. *Shapinſha*, 5 or 6 Miles long. 12. *Stronſa*, 6 Miles long, well known becauſe of its good Harbours. 13. *Papa-Stronſa*, very fruitful and well-inhabited. 14. *Sanda*, about 12 Miles long, well-inhabited, and has 2 Harbours. 15. *Eda*, 10 Miles long, and abounds with Fiſh and Fowl. 16. *Damſey*, a ſmall but fruitful Iſland. 17. *Rouſa*, 8 Miles long, and well-inhabited; it abounds with Fowl, Fiſh, and Rabbits. There are ſeveral other Iſlands in the Neighbourhood, which are fruitful enough. 18. *Egliſha*, 3 Miles long, and has a ſafe Road for Ships. 19. *North-Fara*, 3 Miles long, but thinly inhabited. 20. *South-Fara*, much of the ſame Extent. 21. *Weſtra*, 8 Miles long, well-inhabited, and abounds with Corn, Cattle, Fiſh, and Rabbits. 22. *Papa-Weſtra*, 3 Miles long, well-inhabited, and has a good Harbour. The other Iſlands are not worth mentioning. The People of this Country are generally healthful, ſtout, and well-proportioned: They are more numerous than can reaſonably be imagined. They have muſtered 10,000 Men at once, fit to carry Arms, beſides thoſe that were left to cultivate the Ground. The Commodities which they export yearly, are Butter, Tallow, Hides, Barley, Malt, Oatmeal, Fiſh, ſalted Beef, Pork, Rabbit-Skins, Otter-Skins, white Salt, Stuffs, Stockings, Woodl, Hams, Quills, Down, Feathers, *&c.* The Claik Geeſe, or Barnacles, reckoned to breed in the Trunks of Trees, and frequently ſeen about theſe and the neighbouring Iſlands, have occaſioned Abundance of Wrangling among the Learned. This Country had antiently its own Kings, and after it was reduced by the *Scots*, was for ſome Time poſſeſſed by the *Danes* and *Norwegians*; but recovered again by the *Scots*.

Eighty Miles farther North lie the Iſles of *Shetland*; betwixt them lies the *Fair Iſle*, which riſes up in 3 high Promontories, and is ſeen both in *Orkney* and *Shetland*. There are in all 46 of the *Shetland* Iſlands, 40 Holms, or leſſer Iſlands, left for Paſturage, and 30 Rocks, frequented only by Fowl. The firſt of theſe Iſlands is called the Main Land, being 60 Miles long, and in ſome Places 16 broad. It is beſt inhabited and cultivated on the Shore, but the inner Part is mountainous, and full of Lakes or Bogs. The Air is cool and piercing, yet many of the Inhabitants live to a great Age. In the Winter, the Violence of the Tides, and the Tempeſtuouſneſs of the Seas, deprive them of all Foreign Correſpondence from *October* to *April*. They have little Corn of their own Growth, and therefore import great Quantities from *Orkney*. Their common Drink is Whey, which they barrel up and keep in cold Cellars: This makes it very ſtrong, ſo that it quickly turns their Heads. Some of them keep for their Drink Butter-Milk mixed with Water. The better Sort have good Beer and Ale, of which they are very liberal to Strangers. They have Abundance of Fiſh of all Sorts on their Coaſts, for moſt Part of the Year. They abound with all Sorts of Fowl, except Heath-cocks. They have Plenty of little Horſes, very fit for the Husbandman's Uſe. They make coarſe Cloth, Stockings, and knit Gloves, for their own Uſe, and alſo for Sale to *Norwegians*. Their Grain is Oats and Barley, but moſt of the latter. They have Abundance of black Cattle and Sheep. Their Fuel is Turf, Peat, and Heath. Their native Language is old *Gothick*, or *German*, as was alſo that of *Orkney*; but they generally now ſpeak *Engliſh*. In their Cuſtoms and Habit they much reſemble the *Germans*, but the better Sort imitate the *Scots* Lowlanders. Their Religion is Proteſtant, and they are generally, as well as the *Orkney* Men, very devout. There are two little Towns in this Iſland; the firſt and oldeſt is *Scalloway*, on the Weſt Side of the Iſland. The ſecond and largeſt is *Lerwick*, which is increaſed to about 300 Families. There are ſeveral antient Monuments in theſe Iſlands, which we have not Room to inſiſt upon. The moſt remarkable of the other Iſlands here are, 1. *Zeal*, 18 Miles long, and 9 broad. 2. *Vuiſt*, much of the ſame Dimenſions. 3. *Fronda*, 4. *Walſey*, 5. *Great-Rule*, 6. *Foula*, 7. *Braſſa*, 8. *Burray*. *Shetland* is divided into 12 Pariſhes, but there are many more Churches and Chapels in it. This Country, like *Orkney*, has no Wood in it; and they have ſome Fiſh and Fowl peculiar to themſelves.

Iſles of Scotland

In the Mouth of the River *Firth* lie ſeveral Iſlands, the moſt conſiderable of which is the *May*; formerly dedicated to St. *Adrian*, and had a Monaſtery and Chapel. The Monks there gave out, that barren Women, who came to worſhip there annually, would thereby be cured of their Barrenneſs; and it was frequented upon that Account by Women in the Popiſh Times: But whether St. *Adrian* or the Monks had the moſt Influence in curing their Barrenneſs, the Readers may judge. The *Paſs* lies next; and higher up in the *Firth* lie *Inchkeith*, *St. Colms-inch*, and *Inchgarvy*. Eaſtern Iſlands.

The Government of *Scotland*, as that of *England*, is by King and Parliament. The *Scots* Monarchy is juſtly reckoned the oldeſt of the known World; his preſent Majeſty being the 115th Sovereign. The Original of the Monarchy is aſcribed to the Choice of the Chiefains, who governed in an ariſtocratical Manner, till being attacked by the *Picts* and *Britons*, they ſent to *Ireland* for *Fergus*, Son to King *Ferquhard*, to come to their Aſſiſtance with Troops; upon which they made him King, and the Crown has continued in his Poſterity ever-ſince. Civil Government. Monarchy.

The Parliament of *Scotland* conſiſts of 3 Eſtates, *viz.* Lords, Barons, and Boroughs; but this Diſtinction is modern; for all Freeholders in the old Acts, are called Lords of Parliament; but that Denomination came afterwards to be appropriated to the Peers. However, they never ſat in a diſtinct Houſe from thoſe other Members, whom latter Ages called Commons. The leſſer Nobility, called Barons, are very numerous. By the late Act of Union, the Peers of *Scotland* are to name 16 by Plurality of Voices of the Peers preſent, and of the Proxies of the abſent Peers, ſuch Proxies being Peers; and in caſe of the Death or legal Incapacity of any of the ſaid 16 Peers, the Peers ſhall nominate another of their own Number. The Number of the Commons, according to the Act of Union, is 45, one a-piece for the Shires, one for *Edinburgh*, and 14 for the other Parliament

Burghs;

Burghs; ſeveral of which unite in the Choice of each Repreſentative. The Way how they are elected is thus: Each of the Boroughs elect a Commiſſioner in the ſame Manner as they did formerly, and the Commiſſioners ſo elected meet at ſuch Time and Borough within their reſpective Diſtricts, as his Majeſty ſhall appoint, and elect one for each of the Diſtricts; and where the Votes of the Commiſſioners for the ſaid Boroughs ſhall be equal, the Preſident of the Meeting to have a caſting Vote, beſides his Vote for the Borough from which he is ſent. None are capable to elect, or to be elected for any of the 3 Eſtates, but ſuch as are 21 Years of Age complete, and are Proteſtants. This is all we need add to our Account of the Parliament of *England*.

Courts of Juſtice. The Courts of Juſtice in *Scotland*, are, 1. The College of Juſtice, commonly called the Seſſion, before which all Civil Cauſes are tried, at ſtated Times, according to Statute Law, and the Cuſtom of the Country; and, where theſe are defective, according to the Civil Law. There lies no Appeal from this Court, but to the Parliament. 2. The Juſticiary, where are tried all Crimes which reach the Life of the Priſoner, and the Matter is ſubmitted to a Jury of 16 Perſons. 3. The Court of *Exchequer*, of the ſame Nature with the Court of *Exchequer* in *England*. 4. The Commiſſaries Court, which determines Controverſies and Wills, Eccleſiaſtical Benefices, Tithes, Divorces, &c. 5. The Sheriff's Court, in which the Sheriff or his Deputy is Judge, in Matters of Ejection, Intruſion, Damage, and ſmall Debts. 6. The Courts of Regality, in which the Lord of the Regality is Judge. 7. Every one who holds a Barony of the Crown, has the Power of holding a Court within his Barony.

Military Government. It would ſeem, by the *Roman* Hiſtory, that all the Time they invaded the Iſland, the *Scots* Kings were ſcarce known by any other Title but that of General. And ſince that, their Kings were ſo far from having Peace and War at their own Diſpoſal that they could do nothing in either without the Conſent of the Eſtates. But ſince the Union of the Crowns, their Prerogative has been advanced in this, as well as in other Reſpects; ſo that Peace and War, and the naming of military Officers, has been in the Crown. Even the Militia of *Scotland* is not ſubject to Lord-Lieutenants, but all their Officers are named by the Sovereign, as in the Standing-Army. The regular Forces of *Scotland*, are 3 Regiments of Dragoons, 8 of Foot, and 8 independant Companies. The *Scots* never abounded in naval Force, nor ſeem to have affected it.

Heralds The Heralds Office is of an old Standing. The chief of the Heralds is called *Lion* King of Arms, becauſe the Lion is the Royal Arms of *Scotland*. Some learned Men ſay, That the *Scots* and *Picts* were the firſt who wore coloured Shields; but the digeſting of Heraldy into an Art, is aſcribed to the Emperors *Charlemain* and *Frederic Barbaroſſa*. Their antient Orders of Knighthood were thoſe of the Thiſtle, or St. *Andrew*, and Banrents or Bannerets, created under the Royal Standard for gallant Actions in the Field. The Order of the Thiſtle, by reaſon of its great Antiquity and memorable Inſtitution, is, upon all Occaſions, called, *The moſt antient, and moſt noble Order of the Thiſtle*, being founded, as all the *Scots* Hiſtorians aſſert, by *Achius* the 65th King of *Scotland*, after a ſignal Victory obtained over the *Saxons*, *Anno* 819, and dedicated to St. *Andrew*, the Patron, or tutelar Saint of *Scotland*.

Eccleſiaſtical Government. The Government of the Church in this Kingdom is that which latter Ages call Presbyterian, becauſe they allow of no Officer higher than a preaching Presbyter, who, with the Elders, in leſſer and larger Aſſociations, adminiſter the Government of the Church. And that the Church of *Scotland* was reformed from Popery by Preſbyters, without ſettling any Proteſtant Epiſcopacy inſtead of the Popiſh Biſhops, is evident from the Acts of Parliament and General Aſſemblies. According to this Form of Government, the Kingdom is divided into 13 Provincial Synods, 68 Presbyteries, and 938 Pariſhes. The loweſt Eccleſiaſtical Court is the Kirk-Seſſion, or Parochial Conſiſtory, which conſiſts of the Miniſter, or Miniſters, Elders and Deacons, with a Clerk and Beadle. The Elders are choſen from among the moſt ſubſtantial, knowing, and regular People. The Deacons are choſen in the ſame Manner. From this Court there lies an Appeal to the Preſbytery, which conſiſts of ſuch a Number of Miniſters and Elders of neighbouring Pariſhes, as can moſt conveniently meet together. The Miniſters and Elders, when met, chuſe one of the Miniſters to be Chairman: The Perſon ſo choſen is called Moderator, and his Buſineſs is to regulate their Proceedings, according to the Rules of Scripture, and the Conſtitutions of the Church. Before this Court are tried Appeals from Parochial Conſiſtories, and they inſpect into the Behavior of the Miniſters and Elders of their reſpective Bounds. They take Care to ſupply the vacant Churches in their reſpective Diſtricts. They alſo try and licenſe young Men, in order to their Entrance upon the Work of the Miniſtry. This Court does alſo judge of Cauſes for the greater Excommunication, before it be inflicted on any Perſon within their Bounds. The Provincial Synod conſiſts of all the Miniſters of the Province, with a ruling Elder from each Pariſh; their Buſineſs is to determine Appeals from the Presbyteries of their Diſtrict, and to enquire into the Behaviour of the ſeveral Presbyteries. From this Court there lies an Appeal to the general Aſſembly, which is conſtituted of Miniſters and Elders deputed from every Presbytery of the Nation. The ruling Elders to this Aſſembly are many Times of the greateſt Quality. This Court gives a final Determination to all Appeals from inferior Church-Judicatories, and makes Acts and Conſtitutions for the whole Church. Their Moderator is choſen by themſelves, and the Sovereign generally ſends a Commiſſioner, who propoſes what is thought proper on the Part of the Crown; but he has no Vote in the Aſſembly. In all theſe Eccleſiaſtical Courts they begin and end with Prayer: They can inflict no Temporal Puniſhment, but confine themſelves altogether to Eccleſiaſtical Cenſures.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

A Deſcription of Ireland; *its Name, and Inhabitants; their Language, Cuſtoms, Religion; its Soil, Produce, Curioſities; its Diviſions, and principal Towns; its Lakes, Bays, Havens, Rivers, Mountains, &c. its Government, Eccleſiaſtical and Civil Hiſtory, &c.*

Name. THE Name of *Ireland* probably came from *Erinlandi*, which in *Iriſh* ſignifies a Weſtern Land. *Bochart* will have it called *Hibernia* from *Ibernae*, a *Phenician* Word, ſignifying the fartheſt Habitation. It is an Iſland ſubject to the Crown of *Britain*, bounded on the Eaſt with a violent and boiſterous Sea, called *St. George's Channel*, which ſeparates it from *England* and *Wales*, and on the North-Eaſt from *Scotland*; on the Weſt with the *Atlantick*, which parts it from the main Continent of *America*; on the North with the *Deucaledon Sea*; and on the South and South-Weſt with that which is called the *Virginian Ocean*. It is ſituated between the 5th Degree and 58th Minute, and the 10th Degree and 45th Minute of Longitude from *London*; and between the 51ſt Degree and 15 Minutes of North Latitude; by which we may ſee, that it lies under the 9th and 10th Climes, with a little of the 8th, in one of the Temperate Zones, towards the Northern Parts of it. It is of an oblong Form, ſomewhat reſembling an Egg; but if we conſider all the Windings and Turnings, ſcarce any Thing can be imagined to have a more irregular Make: In Length about 285 Miles, in Breadth 160 Miles; the whole Circuit about 1400 Miles.

Old and preſent Inhabitants. 'Tis certain the antient Inhabitants of this Iſland were originally *Britons*; for *Britain* being the neighboureſt Country to it, the People had a ſpeedy Paſſage hither. They were a rude and barbarous People, of whoſe Actions we know but little; this Country not being ever conquered by the *Romans*, thoſe Maſters of Learning and Civility. Towards the Decline of the *Roman* Empire, we find them called by the Name of *Scots*. They ſubdued the Weſtern Iſles, and the neighbouring *Picts* and *Caledonians*, and gave the Name of *Scotland* to the Northern Parts of the *Britiſh* Continent: But not long after they left the Name of *Scot*, and returned to the firſt Name of *Iriſh*. Theſe People at ſeveral Times have been intermixed with *Danes*, *Saxons*, and *Normans*, but at preſent they are only *Engliſh* and *Iriſh*. As for the *Engliſh*, there needs nothing to be ſaid of them, nor the more civiliz'd Sort of *Iriſh*, who are conformable to the Cuſtoms and Laws of our Nation: But as for the *Kerns*, *Rapparees*, &c. thoſe Wild *Iriſh*, they are of a middle Stature, ſtrong of Body, of an hotter and moiſter Nature than any other Nations, of wonderful ſoft Skins, and excel in Nimbleneſs, and the Flexibility of all Parts of the Body. They are reckoned of a quick Wit, prodigal of their Lives, enduring Travel, Cold, and Hunger, given to fleſhly Luſts, light of Belief, kind and courteous to Strangers, conſtant in Love, impatient of Abuſe and Injury, in Enmity implacable, and in all Affections moſt vehement and paſſionate. Their Language is originally *Britiſh*, but now very much degenerated from it, by Reaſon of the Intermixture with Foreigners; but in the main it conſiſts of the *Britiſh* and old *Cantabrian*; but the Names of Waters, Iſles, Mountains, and Places, are ſtill moſtly *Britiſh*. As to the Names of the People, the greateſt Men have often the Letter (*O*) put before them, as *O Neal*, &c. Some of the better Sort alſo carry the Name of *Mac* (which ſignifies Son) as *Mac Decan*, &c. but when they are baptized, they commonly add ſome profane Name, and never give the Name of the Parent, or any of the Kindred then living, for they are perſuaded that their Death is haſten'd thereby; but when the Father is dead, the Son commonly aſſumes his Name. They feed much upon Herbs and Roots, and delight in Butter temper'd with Oatmeal; alſo in Milk, Whey, Beef-Broth, and Fleſh oftentimes, without any Bread at all. Their Corn they lay up for their Horſes. When they are hunger-bitten they diſdain not to eat raw Fleſh, after they have preſſed out the Blood; and drink down large Quantities of Uſquebaugh or Aquavitæ after it. They commonly wear little Woollen Jackets, Breeches cloſe to their Thighs, and over them a Mantle or Shag-Rug deeply fringed. They go for the moſt Part bare-headed, wear their Hair long, and count it the greateſt Ornament. The Women alſo make a great Eſteem of their Hair, eſpecially if it be of a Golden Colour, and long. Their Cows and Cattle are the chief Wealth they have. They count it no Infamy to commit Robberies; and when they go to rob, they make Prayers to God that they may meet with a Booty. They alſo ſuppoſe, that Violence and Murder are no ways diſpleaſing to God; for if it were a Sin, he would not preſent them with that Opportunity. Moreover, they ſay, that this Sort of Life was left to them, and that they only walk in their Fathers Steps; that it would be a Diſgrace to their Nobility to forbear ſuch Facts, and get their Living by Labour. They have fooliſh Credulities, and at every third Word rap out an Oath; and have no great Regard in forſwearing themſelves. Diet

Thoſe that dwell in Towns ſeldom make any Contract of Marriage with them in the Country: They paſs their Promiſe, not for the preſent, but for the future, ſo that a very little Difference parts them aſunder. They are very much given to Inceſt, and nothing is ſo common as Divorces under Pretence of Conſcience. Marriages.

Their Burials are ſingular enough; for when any one lies a dying, Women, hired on purpoſe, ſtand in Croſs-ways, calling on him with great Outcries, and abundance of ridiculous Expoſtulations, why he ſhould depart from ſo many Advantages. After he is dead, they keep a Mourning; with loud Howlings and clapping of Hands together. They follow the Corps with ſuch a Peal of Outcries, that a Man would think the Quick, as well as the Dead, were paſt all Recovery. Neither do they mourn leſs for thoſe that are ſlain in Battle, or by Robbings; tho' they affirm ſuch to have an eaſier Death. They ſuppoſe, that the Souls of the Deceaſed go into the Company of certain Men, famous in thoſe Places; of whom they ſtill retain ſtrange Fables and Songs. Burials.

Their Religion is the *Romiſh*, and attended with more Indecency and Superſtition than uſually in other Countries; for when they firſt ſee the Moon after the Change, they commonly bow the Knee, and lay the Lord's Prayer; Religion.

and then ſpeak to the Moon with a loud Voice, *Leave us as thou haſt found us.* They pray for the Wolves, and with them well, and ſo they are not afraid to be hurt by them. They count it unlawful to rub down or curry their Horſes, or to gather Graſs for their Fodder on *Saturdays*. They hang up the Feet and Legs of a dead Horſe; nay, the very Hoofs are eſteem'd as a ſacred Relict. They count her a wicked Woman, or a Witch, that cometh to fetch Fire from them on *May-Day*.

Air. The Air of *Ireland* is mild and temperate, cooler in Summer, and warmer in Winter, than in *England*, but not ſo clear and pure as here; therefore not ſo good for ripening Corn and Fruits; tho' by the Skill and Induſtry of the *Engliſh* Planters, it ſeems to be much mended. In the Winter it is more ſubject to Wind, Clouds, and Rain, than Froſt and Snow. It is ſo exceſſive moiſt, that many are troubled with Looſneſſes and Rheums, more eſpecially Strangers, who ſeldom eſcape thoſe Diſtempers; for the ſtopping of which they drink Uſquebaugh. Soil. As for its Soil, it is abundantly fruitful, but naturally fitter for Graſs or Paſturage than Corn: In ſome Places the Graſs is ſo long, and withal ſo ſweet, that the Cattle would ſoon graze to ſurfeit, if they were not hindered. Nay, in the County of *Armagh*, the Ground is ſo rank and fertile, that the laying of any Compoſt upon it abates its Fruitfulneſs. It is in many Places incumbred with vaſt Bogs, and unwholſome Marſhes, being full of great Lakes and Sands; and is alſo overgrown with many large Woods: But of late Years thoſe Inconveniencies have been very much corrected. The Wonder of this Country is, that it breeds no venomous Creature, and that no ſuch will live here, brought from any other Places. But tho' *Ireland* is free from all venomous Creatures, as from Worms and Spiders, yet it is ſubject to noxious and voracious Animals, particularly Wolves, that ſtill abound in this Country. It Cattle. Flocks. produces a vaſt Number of good Flocks of Sheep, which they ſhear twice a Year. Here are likewiſe excellent good Horſes, called Hobbies, which have a particular ſoft and round Amble. As for Cattle, here are infinite Numbers, being indeed the principal Wealth of the Inhabitants. For Bees they have ſuch Numbers, that they are found not only in Hives, but alſo in the Bodies of Trees, and Holes of the Earth. You meet here alſo with Roes, Hares, Coneys, and the like Animals. It has a Variety of all Sorts of wild and tame Fowls; and all Quantities of Fiſh, eſpecially Salmons and Herrings. Commodities. The principal Commodities of *Ireland* are Cattle, Hides, Tallow, Suet, and great Store of Butter and Cheeſe; Wood, Salt, Honey, Wax, Fir, Hemp, Linen-Cloth, Pipe-ſtaves, great Quantities of Wool, of which they make Cloth and Frizes; Variety of Fiſh and Fowl, and alſo ſeveral Metals, as Lead, Tin, and Iron; and in a Word, there is nothing wanting, either for Pleaſure or Profit. It is obſerv'd, their Animals are not ſo large as thoſe of *England*, except Men, Women, and Grey-hounds.

Fountains. *Ireland* is very full every where of Springs and Fountains, not only in the mountainous Parts, but even in the flat and champain Country. There are a great Number of Fountains throughout the Land, called *Holy Wells* by the Inhabitants, whoſe Water is no ways differing from that of other Wells, yet is believed to be effectual for the curing of ſeveral Diſeaſes. One of the *Lough* Islands, call'd *Lough Derg*, has been very famous upon the Account of a large Hollow, called, that the Suburbs of Purgatory were there, into which thoſe that had the Courage to enter, lay and liſten'd very ſtrange and terrible things. There is a wonderful Property aſcribed to *Lough*, called *Lough Neagh*, of turning Wood into Stones; which is generally believed. It is very common in *Ireland* to find whole Bodies of Trees in Bogs. There were no Mines diſcovered in *Ireland*, till the Settlement of the *Engliſh* there in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*. Iron Mines are now of three Sorts there; the Bog-mine, the Rock-mine, and the Pin or White-mine. There are alſo Silver and Leaden-mines in *Ireland*, that do not turn to any conſiderable Account. *Ireland* has the Preeminence of *England* upon the Account of its Marble, which is found in many Places of ſeveral Sorts.

Provinces. *Ireland* is divided into four Provinces, and theſe again into ſo many Counties: We ſhall here treat of the Provinces in their Alphabetical Order. And firſt of *Connaught*: This Province is in Length *Connaught.* 130 Miles; in Breadth about 84 Miles. As for Rivers, here are few of conſiderable Note beſides that great one of *Shannon*: The chief are, 1. *May*, 2. *Suck*, 3. *Droſos*, 4 *Gyll*. This Province abounds with many convenient Bays and Creeks, fit for Navigation. The Soil is ſufficiently fruitful, were not the Inhabitants ſo lazy; producing Abundance of Cattle, good Store of Deer and Hawks, and Plenty of Honey. It is the meaneſt of the four Provinces in general, and contains one Archbiſhoprick, *viz. Tuam*, 5 Biſhopricks, 7 Market-Towns, 12 Places that return Parliament Men, 24 Caſtles of old Erection, beſides Fortreſſes raiſed in the latter Troubles. The principal Town of the whole is *Gallway*. This Province was, before the *Engliſh* Conqueſt of it, a Kingdom of itſelf. It is now govern'd by a principal Commiſſioner, under the Lord-Lieutenant. It is at preſent divided into 6 Counties, *viz.* 1. *Letrim*, 2. *Slego*, 3. *Mayo*, 4. *Roſcommon*, 5. *Gallway*, and, 6. *Thomond*, or *Clare* County. Of theſe, 4 border on the Sea, *viz. Slego*, *Mayo*, *Gallway*, and *Thomond*: *Roſcommon* is a midland County, ſo may alſo *Letrim* be counted; and theſe Counties are ſubdivided into 51 Baronies.

Leinſter. The Province of *Leinſter* is in Length about 112 Miles, in Breadth about 70 Miles. The chief Rivers are, 1. the *Barrow*, 2. the *Boyne*, famous for the Battle in 1690; 3. *Liffe*, or *Leffy*, 4. *Nuer*, 5. *Urrin* or *Slane*, 6. *Iuny*. This Province is very fertile and fruitful in Corn and Paſture Ground, and well watered, the Air clear and gentle, mix'd with a temperate Diſpoſition. It is plentiful both in Fiſh and Fleſh, and in other Victuals; as Butter, Cheeſe, and Milk. The Commodities chiefly conſiſt in Cattle, Sea-Fowl, and Fiſh, and it breeds excellent good Horſes. The Inhabitants come neareſt the civil Diſpoſition of the *Engliſh*, from whom they are for the moſt Part deſcended; ſo that this is look'd upon to be the moſt conſiderable Province in *Ireland*. In this Province is one Archbiſhoprick, *viz. Dublin*, and 3 Biſhopricks; 16 Market-Towns, 47 Places that return Parliament-Men, or Boroughs, and 102 Caſtles, well fortified. The chief Place is *Dublin*, alſo the Capital of the Kingdom, of which hereafter. This Province was, before the *Engliſh* Conqueſt of it, divided into two Kingdoms, *viz. Leinſter* and *Meath*, both under their own Kings, till a falling out happened between them, which cauſed King *Henry* II. of *England* to make a Conqueſt of it. *Leinſter* has been inſeparably annexed to *England* ever ſince, but *Meath* was granted in Fee Farm to *Hugh Lacey*, a noble *Engliſhman*: Since which it came wholly under the Kings of *England*, and now the Province of *Meath* is united to *Leinſter*. It is now divided into 12 Counties, *viz.* 1. *Longford*, 2. *Weſt Meath*, 3. *Eaſt Meath*, 4. *Dublin*, 5. *Wicklow*, 6. *Kildare*, 7. *King's County*, 8. *Queen's County*, 9. *Kilkenny*, 10. *Catherlogh*, and 11. *Wexford*; of theſe 4 border on the Sea, *viz. Eaſt Meath*, *Dublin*, *Wicklow*, and *Wexford*; the ſeven others are midland Counties, and theſe Counties are ſubdivided into 90 Baronies.

The

Munster. The Province of *Munster* is in Length about 135 Miles; in Breadth about 120 Miles. The chief Rivers of this Province are, 1. *Shure*. 2. *Awluffe*. 3. *Lee*. 4. *Bande*. 5. *Leane*. 6. *Caffon*. This Province abounds with many excellent Bays and Havens, and many rich Towns; the Air mild and temperate. The Soil in ſome Places hilly, with woody, wild, and ſolitary Mountains; yet the below Vallies are garniſhed with Corn-Fields. The moſt general Commodities are Corn, Cattle, Wood, Wooll, and Fiſh; of the laſt whereof it affords abundance of all Sorts, eſpecially Herrings. It contains one Archbiſhoprick, viz. *Caſhell*, 5 Biſhopricks, 7 Market-Towns, 25 Places that return Parliament-Men, and 66 Caſtles of old Erection. The chief City of the whole is commonly reckoned *Waterford*, but *Limerick* at preſent deſerves the Pre-eminence. This Province, before the *Engliſh* Conqueſt of it, was a Kingdom of itſelf, and governed by its own King. Since the *Engliſh* became Maſters of it, it has been kept cloſe to the Crown, only the *Spaniards* in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth* became Maſters of a little of it, but were ſoon driven out. It is govern'd by a Lord Preſident, who has one Aſſiſtant, two Lawyers, and a Secretary, to keep it in Obedience. The Subdiviſion of it ſtands thus; 1. *Tipperary*, 2. *Waterford*, 3. *Cork*, to which is join'd the County of *Deſmond*. 4. *Limerick*, and 5. *Kerry*: Of theſe, three border on the Sea, viz. *Waterford*, *Cork*, and *Kerry*. *Tipperary* and *Limerick* are Midland Counties. Theſe Counties are again divided into 52 Baronies.

Ulſter. The Province of *Ulſter* is in Length about 116 Miles; in Breadth, nigh 100. The chief Rivers. Rivers of this Province are, 1. The *Banne*, 2. the *Lough-Foyle*, 3. the *Swilly*, 4. *Lagen-Water*, 5. *Newry-Water*. This Country abounds with large Lakes, ſhaded with many and thick Woods; the Soil is fruitful in Corn and Graſs, but in ſome Places a little barren; yet in every Place it is well furniſhed with Horſes, Sheep, and Oxen; and affords great Plenty of Timber and Fruit-Trees. The Waters are deep, and well repleniſh'd with Fiſh. As for Salmons, here are more in ſome Rivers of this Country, than in any other River in *Europe*. In this Province is one Archbiſhoprick, viz. *Armagh*, and 6 Biſhopricks; 10 Market-Towns, 34 Places that return Parliament-Men, and 30 Caſtles for the Defence of the Country. The chief City of all is *Londonderry*. The Province, before the *Engliſh* conquer'd it, was a Kingdom of itſelf, firſt conquer'd by *John Courcy*. Soon after it was ſo neglected by the *Engliſh*, that it was canton'd into Principalities by the natural *Iriſh*. In this Eſtate it continued till *Tir-Owen*'s Rebellion; the Conqueſt of whom brought this Province in full Subjection to *England*, and it has ever ſince continued ſo. It is now divided into 9 Counties, viz. 1. *Antrim*, 2. *Londonderry*, 3. *Donnagal*, 4. *Tyrone*, 5. *Armagh*, 6. *Fermanagh*, 7. *Cavan*, 8. *Monaghan*, 9. *Down*, and 10. *Louth*. Of theſe, 5 border on the Sea, viz. *Louth*, *Down*, *Antrim*, *Londonderry*, and *Donnagal*. *Tyrone*, *Armagh*, *Fermanagh*, *Monaghan*, and *Cavan*, are Midland Counties.

Dublin. *Dublin*, the Capital City of *Ireland* (and the only one that we need particularly deſcribe) is ſituate in a County of the ſame Name, upon the River *Liffy*, which makes a capacious Haven here. There are Hills to the South of it, Weſtward open Champain Ground, and on the Eaſt the Sea at hand. It is the largeſt and beſt built City of *Great-Britain* and *Ireland*, next to *London*, and ſtill very improving. It has a Cathedral of great Antiquity, dedicated to St. *Patrick*, and built at ſeveral Times. There is alſo another Collegiate Church, called *Chriſt-Church*, to which the Lord Lieutenant, or Lords Juſtices, uſually go in State to their Devotion. This City was built in 1012, and has about 13 Parochial Churches. The Soil about *Dublin* is fruitful enough as to every Thing but Wood, ſo that they uſe Sea-Coal brought them from *Wales* and other Parts of *Great-Britain*, and Turf dug up in the adjacent Country. *Dublin* has a very ſtrong Wall fortified with Ramparts. It openeth at 6 Gates, from whence there run out Suburbs, of great Length: It reſembles *London* very much, not only in the Form of Building, but in the Names of the Streets and other Places. Towards the Eaſt ſtands the King's-Caſtle, the uſual Reſidence of the chief Governour of the Kingdom. It is fenced with Ditches and Towers, tho' but of little Strength in Compariſon of the Modern Fortifications. Here is a College for Students, which is an Univerſity of itſelf, founded by Queen *Elizabeth* in the Year 1591. The College is beautiful enough, and richly endowed, and conſecrated to the Name of the Holy Trinity. King *William* III. gave 3000 *l.* to enlarge it by ſome additional Buildings, which are ſince erected. *Dublin*, at the North-Gate, had a Bridge of hewn Stone, built by *John*, King of *England*. In the Year 1676, Sir *Humphry Jervis* began to build *Iſſex*-Bridge in the City. In the Beginning of King *James* II's Reign, the City of *Dublin* built *Ormond* and *Arran* Bridges. This City, much after the ſame Manner as *London*, being the Capital of the Kingdom, as it is the Reſidence of the chief Magiſtrates, ſo it is likewiſe of their Courts of Juſtice, and of their Parliaments; where the Law is practiſ'd and pleaded in the ſame Form as with us. It was in the Year 1683, that what they call the *Tholſel*, or *Exchange* of *Dublin*, was built at the Charge of the City. It is a fair and handſome Piece of Architecture. This City in antient Times was govern'd by a Provoſt, but in 1409, the Citizens had Liberty granted them to chuſe every Year a Mayor and two Bailiffs, which laſt were changed to Sheriffs by *Edward* IV. And that this City might not ſeem Inferior in the Dignity of its Magiſtracy to any in the three Kingdoms, King *Charles* in 1665, was pleaſed to honour the Mayor thereof with the Title of Lord; and there was 500 *l. per Ann.* allowed by the Crown to ſupport the Honour of the Lord Mayor. The Tradeſmen here, as in other Places, are divided into Companies, which are ſo many Corporations. The Lord Mayor, Sheriffs, and Citizens of *Dublin*, in the Year 1703, purchaſed Lands to the Value of 100 *l. per Ann.* beſides a ſpacious Piece of Ground for erecting a Work-houſe, and made Application to the Parliament to have the ſame ſettled for the Uſe of the Poor for ever; which being kindly received by the Parliament, ſeveral additional Funds were ſettled, not only for employing common Beggars, but alſo for the Relief of thoſe who were unable to work. The Citizens of *London* alſo, in Imitation of the Hoſpital of *Chriſt-Church*, *London*, took it into Conſideration to build one in their City for poor Children by Way of voluntary Contribution, in 1668, which they happily effected. As to the Royal Hoſpital of *Kilmainham*, it was, in 1685, built at the Charge of the Army, for aged and maimed Soldiers, who are there maintained to the Number of between 4 and 500. And as *Ireland*, above moſt other Countries, has been liable to domeſtick Troubles and Rebellions, as well as foreign Invaſions, her late Majeſty Queen *Anne* thought fit to order 3000 *l.* Sterling, to be applied for the building and furniſhing an Arſenal near *Dublin*.

Bridges.

Courts of Juſtice.

Hoſpital or Exchange.

Civil Government.

Wood.

In

Islands. In mentioning the Islands of *Ireland*, the usual Way is to begin from the Bay of *Carrickfergus*, and from thence coasting along the Shore, first visit the Eastern Islands, thence proceed to the Southern, thence to the Western, and last to the Northern. But as none of them are of any considerable Magnitude, or of Importance on any particular Account, we chuse to omit the Catalogue of their Names, which is almost all that is recorded concerning them.

Lakes. The principal Lakes of this Kingdom are, 1. *Lough-Erne*, in *Ulster*, nigh 30 Miles long, and 10 broad, and full of inhabited Islands: 2. *Lough-Neah*, or *Sidney*, 20 Miles long, and 12 broad, extremely pleasant. 3. *Lough-Ree*, 15 Miles long and 5 broad. 4. *Lough-Derk*, 18 Miles long, and 4 broad. 5. *Lough-Cerrib*, having in it several Isles abounding with Pine-Trees. Besides these, there are *Lough-Conn*, *Lough-Care*, *Lough-Cilly*, *Lough-Allyn*, *Dercuereagh*, *Lough-Hamel*,

Bays. with several others. The most considerable Bays in this Country, are, 1. The Bay of *Gallaway*, 2. *Dingle-Bay*, 3. *Bantry-Bay*, 4. *Donnegal-Bay*, 5. that of *Londonderry*, 6. *Carrickfergus-Bay*, 7. *Carlingford Bay*, 8. that of *Dublin*, 9. *Wexford-Bay*, 10. *Kingsale-Bay*. *Ireland* has also some considerable Promontories or Capes in it: *viz.* That called *Fairhead*, St. *John's* Point, *Old-Head*, *Mussen-Head*, *Lean*, St. *John's* Cape, and *North-*

Havens. *Cape*. The Havens of this Kingdom are numerous and commodious, and perhaps not to be match'd in any Country in the World. Those of most Note are *Waterford*, *Cork*, *Youghall*, and

Rivers. *Kingsale*. Tho' this Kingdom does not abound with many considerable Rivers, yet it has some very good ones; the largest of all is the *Shannon*, which after a Course of 200 Miles, about 60 of which 'tis navigable, falls into the Western Ocean with a Mouth about 7 Miles in Breadth. The other Rivers are, *Swift*, *Awiduff*, or *Black-Water*, *Paleful*, *Surewoody*, *Barrow*, *Liffe*, *Boyne*, *Lee*, &c.

as mentioned in the Counties. The most memorable Mountains in this Kingdom are reckon'd to be *Knock-Patrick*, or St. *Patrick's-Hill*, *Shiew-Bloom*, *Fragh* and *Mourne*, *Shiew-Gallen*, *Cirlew-Hills*, and the *Gualty* Mountains.

Ecclesiastical Government. The Ecclesiastical Government of *Ireland* is under 4 Archbishopricks; viz. *Armagh*, *Dublin*, *Cashel*, and *Tuam*: The first is entitled Primate of all *Ireland*, the second Primate of *Ireland*, but the other 2 have no distinguished Character. There were under these once a great Number of poor Bishopricks, but since the Reformation they have been reckoned 19. These Bishopricks, tho' they are not generally so good as those of *England*, yet the Livings of the inferior Clergy in this Kingdom are much more upon an Equality. As for the Doctrine and Discipline of the Church of *Ireland*, nothing more need to be said, but that they are conformable to that of *England*.

Civil Government. The civil Government of this Country is by Vice-Roys, first called Keepers or Wardens of *Ireland*, afterwards Justices of *Ireland*, and now Lord Lieutenants and Deputies of *Ireland*. Their Authority is large, ample, and royal; having Power to make War; to conclude Peace; to bestow all Magistracies and Offices, except a very few; to pardon all Crimes, unless they be some of High-Treason; to dub Knights, &c. and there is not in all Christendom any Vice-Roy that comes nigher the Majesty of a King, for his Jurisdiction, Authority, Train, Fortune, and Provision. There are assistant to him in Council the Lord Chancellor of the Realm, the Treasurer, and others of the Earls, Bishops, Barons, and Judges, which are of the Privy-Council, formed much in the same Manner as in *England*. As for the several Degrees of State, this Country has the very same as in *England*; as Dukes, Marquisses, Earls, Viscounts, Barons, Knights, and Esquires. Here are also the same Courts as in *England*; as the High Court of Parliament, the *Chancery*, the *King's-Bench*, the *Common-Pleas*, and the *Exchequer*; likewise 4 Terms in the Year. Here are also Justices of Assizes, *Nisi Prius*, and *Oyer* and *Terminer*, and Justices of the Peace in every County. Also the King hath his Serjeant at Law, his Attorney, Sollicitor, &c. As for the Common Law, *Ireland* is govern'd by the same with *England*.

Strength. The Strength of this Nation consists partly in the Situation, being environed with difficult and dangerous Seas; and partly in the several Fortifications and Castles built by the *English*. Their Forces have never been reckoned very numerous till of late, and then they have either been so ill disciplined, or of such cowardly Dispositions, that an Enemy of no very great Power (were it not for their strong Places) might easily tame them.

Arms. The Arms of this Kingdom are, Azure, an Harp, stringed Argent; which Arms King *James* the First caused to be marshalled with the Royal Arms of *Great-Britain*, and have ever since been set upon our Coins. They have no College of Arms erected on purpose in this Kingdom; but they have Officers of Arms, and they are only two, *viz.* 1. *Ulster*, King of Arms, 2. *Athlone*, Pursuivant.

As to the History of *Ireland*, it being intermixed with that of *England*, we refer for it to the History of the Reigns of our Monarchs, as we did for that of *England*, in our Description of that Kingdom.

FINIS.

A N

I N D E X

Of the PRINCIPAL

Countries, Cities, Rivers, Perſons, Occurrences, &c.

ABERDEEN, a City in *Scotland*, Page 939.
Abubaid, the Great Mogul, 138.
Abyſſinia, deſcribed, 733.
Acapulco, a City in *Mexico*, 782.
Achaia, or *Grecia Proper*, 291.
Acheen, a Kingdom in *India*, 169.
Adin, a City in *Sumatra*, 129.
Adonet, Sultan, his Advancement, 249, &c.
Acre in *Syria*, 258.
Aden, an *Arabian* Port, 221.
Aderbeizan, antiently *Media*, 182.
Adrianople City, 284.
Aolis and *Ionia*, 268.
Africa, its Extent, &c. 729. Antient Hiſtory, *ib.* 732. Modern Hiſtory, 733. Diviſions, *ib.* &c.
Agra, a City in *India*, 154.
Aichſtat, Biſhoprick and City, 500.
Aix la Chapelle, in *Juliers*, 418.
Akbar, the Great Mogul, 138.
Albania, Province of, 291.
Aleppo, in *Syria*, 257.
Alexandria, City of, 319.
Algarve, Kingdom of, 725.
Algerines, their Cuſtoms, 785. Slaves, *ib.* Trade, 799. War and Treaty with *England*, 762.
Algiers, Kingdom of, 756. Provinces, *ib.* *Algiers Proper*, ib. City, 757. Government, *ib.* Forces, *ib.* 758 Courts of Juſtice, 758. *Turkiſh* Power there, how founded, 760.
Almagro, *Diego de*, one of the Conquerors of *Peru*, 843, brings a Reinforcement, 847, aſſumes the Government of *Cuſco*, which occaſions a War, 849, ſurprizes the City, 850. try'd, and put to Death, 851, his Son ſet up, and afterwards beheaded, 852.
Alligators, 106, 801.
Almanza, Battle of, 715.
Almenera, Battle of, 715.
Alphonſo VI. King of *Portugal*, 707, depoſed, 709.
Alſatia Upper and *Lower*, 512.
Alva, Duke *de*, Governor of the *Netherlands*, 524.
Alvarado's Expedition to *Peru*, 848.
Amadabad, an *Indian* Town, 152
Amaſia in *Natolia*, 267.
Amayon, the Great Mogul, 138
Amazons, Country of, its Deſcription, Diſcovery, River, &c. 864. Natives, and Product, 865.
Ambaſſadors, how received at *China*, 40, 41.
Amboyna, Iſland, 113. Maſſacre of the *Engliſh* there, 125
America, its Extent, 771. how firſt peopled, 772. diſcovered by *Columbus*, 773, &c. Other Diſcoveries, 779, 780.
Americus Veſputius ſent to the new World, to which he communicates his Name, 779.
Amorgos, Iſland, 310
Amſterdam, the Capital of *Holland*, 518.
Ancona, Marquiſate and City, 607.
Andes, Mountains of *Peru*, 825.
Andrene, in *Syria*, 260
Andros, Iſland, 313.
Angleſey, Iſle of, 913
Anguilla, Iſle of, its Deſcription, 806.
Anhalt, a Province in Upper *Saxony*, 502
Annapolis in *Maryland*, 877
Anne, Queen of *England*, 483, 489.
Anſpach, Marquiſate and City, 500
Antegoa, Iſland, its Deſcription, 805.
Antients, their Opinion of the Earth, 777. Never ſailed round *Aſrica*, 772.
Antioch in *Syria*, 251
Antiparos, Iſland, 306
Antwerp, Province and City, 557, 558
Appenzel, Canton and Town of, 618.
Arabia, its Extent, Bounds, and Diviſions, 220, 221, 222. Soil and Produce, 225.
Arabians, their Genius, Stature, Habit, Diet, &c. 223, 224. Language, Learning, Weights, Coins, &c. 228, 229.
Arbela, a City of *Aſſyria*, 253.
Archipelago, or *Egæan Sea*, 233.
Archangel deſcribed, 377.
Arek, a *Tonquineſe* Nut, 63.
Argentiere, or *Chimole*, Iſland, 309.
Argyle, Duke of, his Rebellion and Execution, 546.
Armenia, now Part of *Schirvan*, 183.
Armenia Major, or *Turcomania*, 255.
Armenians, their Religion, 216.
Arminius and *Gomar*, their Diſputes, 535.
Arnheim, in *Gelderland*, 532.
Arracan, a Kingdom in *India*, 168.
Arras in *Artois*, 561.
Articles between the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, concerning the *Eaſt-India* Trade, 120.
Artois, Province of, 561.
Aſcenſion Iſland, 767.
Aſia Minor, or *Natolia*, 265.
Aſſafœtida, 193.
Aſoph in *Tartary*, 272.
Aſſiento Treaty, 808.
Aſſyria, or *Curdeſtan*, 182, 253.
Aſſyrian and *Babyloniſh* Monarchy, an Account of it, 341, 342.
Atabilipa, or *Atahualpa*, uſurps the Throne of *Peru*, 841, 842. marches to meet *Pizarro*, 845. makes a Speech, and is taken Priſoner, 846. offers vaſt Sums for his Liberty, *ib* Puts his depoſed Brother to Death, 847. condemned and executed by the *Spaniards*, *ibid.*
Atamadoulet, what, 199
Athens, City, 291.
Ava, a Kingdom and City in *India*, 168.
Auguſtus, King of *Poland*, 359, &c.
Ausburg, an Imperial City, 509.
Aurengzebe, the Great Mogul, 142, 143, &c. inaugurated, 145. dies, 146.
Auſtria deſcribed, 494, 495.
Aynan, an Iſland on the Coaſt of *China*, 47.
Azapes and *Arcanges*, *Turkiſh* Soldiers, 246
Azem Dara, the Great Mogul, 146
Azores, or *Terceira* Iſlands, 724, 725

B.

BABAR, the Great Mogul, 138.
Babel, Tower of, 250 *
Babamanel, Iſland, 765
Babylon deſcribed, 250 *
Bachſerai in *Crim Tartary*, 271.
Baden, Marquiſate and City, 509,
Bagdat deſcribed, 251. *
Bahama Iſlands diſcovered, 774
Bahia, or *St. Salvador*, the Capital of *Brazil*, 867
Balbek in *Syria*, 259.
Bally, one of the *Sunda* Iſlands, 133
Bamberg, Biſhoprick and City, 499
Banda Iſland, 113
Banian tree, 159
Banians, an *Indian* Sect, 160.
Banjar River, in *Borneo*, 125.
Banjareens, 125, 126, &c.
Bantam, *Engliſh* Factory there, 118 deſcribed, 132.
Barbadoes, its Situation and Diſcovery, 803. Product, 1. Towns and Government, 804

INDEX.

Barbaroſſa, the Pirate, founds the *Turkiſh* Government in *Algiers*, 760, 761.
Barbuda Iſland, deſcribed, 896.
Barcelona beſieged, 485. taken by the *Engliſh*, 713.
Barnevelt, Grand Penſioner, his Story, 537.
Baſil, Canton and Town of, 617.
Batavia, a City in *Java*, 132. Inhabitants, 133. Governor of, 135.
Bavaria, Circle of, 498, 499. its Diviſions, 498.
Bears in *Greenland*, 418.
Bedfordſhire, and its Towns, 904.
Belan, in *Syria*, 257.
Belezora, Province and Town, 382.
Belgrade, the Capital of *Servia*, 462. taken by Prince *Eugene*, ibid.
Bells at *Pekin*, 16
Belus, Temple of, 251. *
Bencoelen, a City in *Sumatra*, 129. *Engliſh* expell'd thence, 130.
Bender, City of, 270. Action of the King of *Sweden* there, 273, *&c.*
Bengall, a Province in *India*, 153.
Berlin, the Capital of *Brandenberg*, 503.
Berkſhire, and its Towns, 903.
Berg, Dutchy of, 519.
Bern, Canton and Town of, 617.
Bermudas, or the *Summer-Iſlands*, their Fertility, Product, &c. 897.
Beſſarabia, Province, 273.
Betel, a *Tonquineſe* Leaf, 63.
Bethany deſcribed, 264.
Bethlem deſcribed, 265.
Bethſa, a City of *Aſſyria*, 253.
Bezoar, a Drug, 126, 835.
Bir in *Meſopotamia*, 255.
Bitas produced from Leaves, 107.
Biſnagar, or *Carnate*, a Province of *India Proper*, 148.
Blackenburg and *Renſtein* Counties, 508.
Black-Sea, or *Pontus Euxinus*, 232.
Blake, Admiral, his Exploits, 541, 542.
Blenheim, Battle of, 484.
Boats in *China*, 9. how lifted out of one Canal into another, *ibid*
Bog River, 233.
Bohemia, its Situation, Extent, and Force, 465. Provinces and Chief Towns, *ibid.* Soil and Produce, 467. Hiſtory, 467—470
Bohemians, their Genius, Temper, Cuſtoms, 466. Government, 467. Language and Religion, 470.
Bohemian Princes, their Succeſſion, 467—470.
Bois le duc, Province and City, 558.
Bologna, Province and City, 608.
Bombay, an Iſland and Port in *India*, 151.
Boriſthenes River, 233.
Borneo, one of the *Sunda* Iſlands, its Situation, &c. 125. Inhabitants, *ib* 126. Government, 127. Product, 126, 127.
Boſnia, Province, 252, 279.
Boſſora diſcribed, 252. *
Boſton in *New England*, 888.
Bovadilla ſent to *Hiſpaniola*, 777.
Bourbon Iſland, 765.
Boutan, a Kingdom in *India*, 169.
Brabant, and its Diviſions, 557.
Braganza, *John* Duke of, obtains the Crown of *Portugal*, 696—700.
Brahmins, an Account of them and their Tenets, 165.
Brandenberg, Marquiſate and City, 503 Electors of, 505.
Brazil, its Situation, Extent, &c. 728, 729, 868. Provinces and Towns, *ib* 869, 870. Animals, Vegetables, Minerals, 871, 872. Diſcovery, 872.
Brazilians, their Towns, Food, Arts, Genius, &c. 871. Religion, 872. Rites and Wars, *ib.* Modern *Brazilians*, 874. *
Brecknockſhire, and its Towns, 914.
Breſcia, City and Province, 587.
Britiſh Dominions in *America*, 871—897.
Britiſh Iſles, their Deſcription, 930—944.
Britain, its Extent, Name, and antient Inhabitants, 900. conquered by the *Romans*, the *Saxons*, the *Danes*, and the *Normans*, 901.
Britons, Antient, their Commodities, Government, Language, &c. 900. Forces, and Cuſtoms, 901. See *Engliſh*.
Brunſwick, Dutchy and Town, 507.
Bruges in *Brabant*, 558.
Bremen, Dutchy and Town, 508.
Brill, a Town in *Holland*, 530
Briſſels, Province and City, 558.
Bruges in *Flanders*, 559.
Bulloa, in *Weſtphalia*, 516
Buda, the Capital of *Lower Hungary*, 453.
Buckinghamſhire, and its Towns, 904.
Budiack Tartary, 271.
Bulgaria, Province of, 278
Bulgar, Province and Town, 384.
Burſa, or *Proſa*, in *Natolia*, 269.
Buenos Ayres in *La Plata*, 862.
Byayos, People of *Borneo*, 125, 126, 127.
Bythinia in *Natolia*, 269.

C.

CABBAGE-TREE, 803.
Cabuls, a City and Province in *India*, 153.
Cacoa-tree, 804.
Cachao, a Province in *Tonquin*. 59.
Cachao Town deſcribed, 62.
Caermarthenſhire, and its Towns, 914.
Caernarvonſhire and its Towns, 913.
Caffraria, or *South Africa*, 736. *Dutch* Colonies there, 739, 740.
Calabaſh-tree, 803.
Calicut, a Town in *India*, 150.
California deſcribed, 816, 817.
Calmucks, under *Ruſſia*, 396.
Cambodia deſcribed, 69.
Cambaya, a City in *India*, 153.
Cambray Province and City, 561.
Cambridgeſhire, with its Towns and Univerſity, 904.
Canada, or *New-France*, deſcribed, 898.
Canals in *China*, 9.
Canary Iſlands, 768. The *Grand Canary*, 769. firſt diſcovered, 770
Candia, or *Crete*, Iſland and City of, 296, 297.
Candiſh and *Berar*, Provinces in *India*, 153.
Canobine in *Syria*, 260.
Canorin, an Iſland in *India*, 152.
Canton, a Port in *China*, 16. Further deſcribed, 46.
Cape Verd Iſlands, 768.
Cappadocia, or *Aladuli*, in *Natolia*, 266.
Caramania in *Natolia*, 265.
Caravans of *Arabia*, 224.
Caramania, now *Kerman*, 182.
Caravanſera's, 182.
Caria and *Doris*, in *Natolia*, 268.
Carniola in *Germany*, 496.
Carinthia, in *Germany*, 496.
Cardiganſhire, and its Towns, 914.
Caribbees, the Accounts of them examined, 775. 821, 822.
Carolina, its Situation, &c. 871*. Colonies, Product, Inhabitants, 872*. Commodities, 873.
Carthage, antient, its Hiſtory, 730. &c.
Carthaginians peopled *America*, 772.
Carthagena Province and City, 820.
Caſan, Province and Town, 384.
Caſpian-Sea, 183.
Caſſia deſcribed, 107.
Caſſel Town in *Heſſe*, 511.
Caſſimere, a Town and Province in *India*, 153.
Caupolican, the *Chileſe* General, his Exploits, 859. Put to Death, 860.
Celebes, or *Macaſſar*, an *Oriental* Iſland, deſcribed, 111.
Cephalonia, a *Venetian* Iſland, 589.
Ceylone, an Iſland in *India*, its Deſcription, 170. Inhabitants, 172. Produce, 173, 174. King of, his Court, Forces, &c. 178.
Cha-Jehan, the Great Mogul, 139, 140. &c.
Chaldea deſcribed, 250.*
Chaldean Aſtronomers, 251.*
Cham of *Tartary*, who, 5.
Chans, or *Chan*, Vizirs of *Perſia*, 200.
Charbag, at *Iſpahan*, 185
Charles XII. King of *Sweden*, his Action at *Bender*, 273, &c. His Exploits in *Poland*, 360, &c.
Charlemagne founds the *German* Empire, 478, 479 His Reign in *France*, 629. *Charles* II. 629. IV. 633. V. VI. VII. 634, 635. VIII. 637. IX 643.
Charles, Archduke, declared King of *Spain*, 709, comes to *England*, *ib.* his Wars in *Spain*, 710, &c. elected Emperor, 716.
Charles V. Emperor, 480. King of *Spain*, 683.
Charles VI. Emperor, 488, 489, 490.
Chekiam Province in *China*, 7.
Chelſea College, 918.
Cheſhire, and its Towns, 904.
Chickens hatched in Ovens, 329.
Chiapa, Biſhop of, his Narrative of the *Spaniſh* Cruelties in *America*, 805.
Chilao, a Harbour in *Ceylone*, 171.
Chili, its Situation, &c. 855 Waters, *ib.* 856. Provinces and chief Towns, 856. Animals, 857. Vegetables and Minerals, 858. Hiſtory, antient and modern, 859, 860.
Chili Proper, Province of, 856
Chileſians, their Perſons, Habit, Genius, Food, Learning, Diverſions, &c. 857. revolt from the *Spaniards*, 859.
Chiloe Iſland, 861
China and *Tartary* one Province, 5.
China, its Extent, 5 Name, *ib.* Climate, *ib* Provinces, 6 Rivers, 8. formerly overflowed, 9. Its Canals, *ib.* Fountains, Lakes, Springs, &c. 10 Soil, 30. Product, 31. Animals, 33. Mines, 34. Goods imported thence, 47

Attempts

INDEX.

Attempts to fail thither by the North, 440, 441.
China, Emperor of, his Court, 12. Dignity and Succeſſion, 38. Councils, 39. Women, 12, 41. Forces, 42.
China, Wall of, 14.
China-Ware, an Account of it, 25, 26, &c.
Chineſe, their Character, 17. Vanity, *ib.* Manners, 18. Stature, Shape, Complexion, &c. *ib.* Women, *ib.* Dreſs, *ib.* 19. Diet, 20. Feaſts, *ib.* 21. Salutation and Viſits, 21, 22. great Gameſters, 22. Manner of Travelling, 23. Manufactures and Trade, 24. Navigation, 30. Language, 34. Writing, 35. Printing, *ib.* Learning, *ib.* Aſtronomy, *ib.* Phyſick, 36. Kalendar, *ib.* Degrees of Honour, 37. Hiſtory and Chronology, *ib.* Juſtice and Magiſtrates, 39, 40. Puniſhments, 40. Eſtates, 41. Coin, Weights, and Meaſures, 42. Religion, 42. &c. Marriages and domeſtic Cuſtoms, 44. Funerals, Mourning, &c. 45.
Chira, the Great Mogul, 138.
Chiſtick in *Tartary*, 272.
Cholulans murdered by *Cortez*, 793.
Chriſtians in *China*, 43. in *India*, 166. in *Turkey*, 285, &c.
Cilicia in *Natolia*, 266.
Cilley County in *Germany*, 496.
Cinnabar of *Peru*, 837.
Cinnamon tree, 174.
Claying of Sugar, 869.
Cleve Dutchy and City, 519.
Clove tree, 113.
Coblentz, a City in *Triers*, 515.
Cobra capela, a Serpent in *China*, 33.
Cochin, a Town in *India*, 150.
Cochin-China, Situation, &c. 66. Diviſion, Product, Inhabitants, &c. ib.
Cochineal deſcribed, 852.
Cocoa tree, 158.
Coffee tree, 225
Colen, Archbiſhoprick and City, 515.
Colour Iſland, 313.
Columbus, his Character, and Inducements to ſail for *America*, 773. fitted out by the King of *Spain*, 774. arrives at *St Salvador*, &c. *ib.* returns to *Spain*, 775. honourably received, and fitted out again, *ib.* diſcovers the *Caribbee* Iſlands, *ib.* makes other Diſcoveries, 776. returns, is coldly receiv'd, and ſets out a third Time, 777. diſcovers the Coaſt of *Paria*, *ib.* ſent Priſoner from *Hiſpaniola* to *Spain*, 778 releas'd, makes a fourth Voyage, and diſcovers the Coaſt of *Honduras*, &c. *ib* returns again, 779. his Death and Character, *ib.*
Comibe, a Settlement in *Ceylone*, 170.
Company for diſcovering unknown Land, their Attempts in the North, 440, 441.
Comoro Iſlands, 765
Complexions, why different, 749.
Congo, *Angola*, and *Laongo* in *Africa*, 741.
Connaught, Province of, in *Ireland*, 942
Conſtance, an Imperial City, 511.
Condor, or *Cunter*, a *Peruvian* Fowl, 835
Conſtantia Fort, 136.
Conſtantinople deſcribed, 279, &c.
Coos Iſland, 308.
Copenhagen in *Denmark*, 416.
Corea, *Tonquin*, and *Siam*, tributary to *China*, 8.
Corea deſcribed, 47.
Corſu, a *Venetian* Iſland, 589.
Cornish, City of, 795
Cornwal and its Towns, 904
Corſica, Iſland of, 615.
Cortez, *Fernando*, ſent againſt *Mexico*, 790. lands at *Tobaſco*, and takes the City, 791 treats with *Montezuma*'s Miniſters, *ib* join'd by ſome *Mexicans*, 792 marches towards *Mexico* City, *ib.* enters into Alliance with the *Tlaſcalans*, 793. invited forwards, *ib* his Cruelties, 792, 793. enters *Mexico*, and has an Interview with *Montezuma*, 794 his impolitic Zeal, *ib* ſeizes *Montezuma*, 795 lays him in Irons, *ib.* ſurprizes *Narvaez*, who was ſent againſt him, 796 uſes *Montezuma* and the *Mexicans* with Contempt, *ib* attack'd by the *Mexicans* and in great Danger, 797 beſieges *Mexico*, takes it, and murders Multitudes, 798. confirmed in his Government, rebuilds the City, 799 hangs the Emperor *Guatimozin*, *ib.* buys his Peace, *ib.* unſucceſsful, 800. dies, *ib.*
Cotta City and Territory, 582.
Coſſacks, Account of them, 373, 396
Cotton tree, 159, 803
Courland, Dutchy of, 353.
Courtney, Captain, his Story, 116, 11
Cracow, in *Poland*, 352.
Crangenor, a Town in *India*, 150
Cremona City and Territory, 575
Croatia, Province of, 463 Towns and Natives, *ib.*
Crocodiles, 116, 329
Crotchet, an Iſland of *Ruſſia*, 365
Cuba, Iſland, diſcovered, 781 its Deſcription and Hiſtory, 765
Cullenbach, a Marquiſate and City, 501.
Cumberland, and its Towns, 905
Cuſco, the Capital of *Peru*, 829. its Temple and Palace, *ib* Caſtle, 830. the new City, *ib.*
Cuſiſtan, *Curdeſtan*, or *Aſſyria*, 182, 253.
Cuyo, or *Cuito*, in *Chili*, 856. Inhabitants, 858.
Cyclades Iſlands, 304.
Cynglaſſes, or *Ceyloneſe*, their Stature, Genius, Food, &c. 172. Trade and Manufactures, 173. Language and Learning, 175. Laws and Puniſhments, 178. Religion, Temples, nuptial and funeral Rites, 179.
Cyprus Iſland deſcribed, 298
Cythera, or *Cerigo Iſland*, 307.
Czars of *Moſcovy*, or *Ruſſia*, their Succeſſion, 292—295.

D.

DALMATIA, Province of, 588.
Damaſcus, or *Scham*, in *Syria*, 258, 259.
Damietta, or *Peluſium*, in *Egypt*, 321.
Danes, their Perſons, Habit, Genius, Cuſtoms, &c. 420. Manufactures and Trade, 421. Laws, Puniſhments, &c. 424, 425, 426. Religion, Marriages, and Funerals, 427. War with the *Swedes*, 433, &c. Degrees among them, 435.
Dantzick, in *Pruſſia*, 352. further deſcribed, 398, &c.
Danube River, 233, 473.
Dardanels in *Turkey*, 233.
Date-tree deſcribed, 192.
Dead-Sea deſcribed, 265.
Delf, a City of *Holland*, 530.
Delle Preſidii, Territory of, 581.
Delly, a Province and City in *India Proper*, 154.
Delos Iſland 304.
Delphos City, 293.
Denbighſhire and its Towns, 913.
Denmark, its Situation, Extent, Diviſion, &c. 415. Product, 421. King of, his Forces and Revenues, 422, 423. Antient and preſent State of the Kingdom, 427, 428. Succeſſion of its Kings, 429—434. Dignities, &c. 435
Derbyſhire and its Towns, 905.
Deventer, a City of *Over-yſſel*, 532.
Devonſhire and its Towns, 905.
Deuxponts Dutchy and City, 514.
De Witts, the two, their Tragedy, 544, 545.
Dey of *Algiers*, 757. his Election, 761.
Diamond Mines in *Viſiapour* and *Golconda*, 154.
Diarbeck Province and City, 254.
Diu, a Town and Iſland in *India*, 153.
Domea Bar, in *Tonquin*, 60.
Donawert, in *Bavaria*, 498
Don Coſſacks, their Country, 384.
Doriſlaus, Dr aſſaſſinated, 540.
Dorſetſhire and its Towns, 905.
Dort, a City in *Holland*, 530.
Dreſden, the Capital of *Saxony*, 501.
Dublin, City of, deſcribed, 943.
Dunkirk in *Flanders*, 560.
Durham, Biſhoprick of, and its Towns, 906.
Duſſeldorp, in *Berg* Dutchy, 519.
Dutch, their Policy in *Japan*, 51. Exports thither, 52. Attempts on the *Eaſt India* Trade, 116, &c. Take *Lantor* and *Poleroon*, 122. Cruelties at *Amboyna*, 123 Oppoſe the *Engliſh* in the *Greenland* Fiſhery, 441. Seven of their Men left in *Greenland* a whole Winter, 446, 447.
Dutch, their Perſons, Habits, Genius, Cloaths, 533. Cleanlineſs, 534. Diet and Diverſions, *ib* 535.
Dutch War, the Firſt, 541, 542. the Second, 543, 544.
Duma Province in *Ruſſia*, 377.

E.

EARTHQUAKES, Cauſe of, 103.
Eaſt Indies, Attempts of the *Europeans* to ſettle a Trade there, 114, &c.
Eaſt India Company, the Firſt, 116.
Eaſt Province, in *Tonquin*, 59.
Eden, Garden of, 227.
Edinburg, in *Scotland*, 935.
Eggs kept in *Tonquin*, 65.
Egypt, its Situation, Extent, &c. 319 its Rarities, 322. Government and Hiſtory, 327.
Egyptians, their Religion, Hieroglyphicks, and Pilgrimages, 333, &c.
Elbe River in *Germany*, 473
Elcatiff, an *Arabian* Town, 223.
Elizabeth, Queen of *England*, ſupports the *Dutch*, 525.
Elſenore in *Denmark*, 417.
Embden, County and City, 520.
Emoui, or *Amoy*, a Town in *China*, 17.
Emperors of *Germany*, 479—490
Emperors of *Rome*, a Liſt of them, 146, &c. 598, &c.
England, its Situation and Extent, 901 Air, Ports, Rivers, *ib.* 902 Beauty and Fertility, 902. Commodities, *ib.* Product,

INDEX.

Product, *ib.* Buildings, *ib.* Curiosities, 903. Populousness, *ibid.* Counties and Principal Towns, 903—913.

English Britons, their Original, Language, Constitution, Genius, Religion, Diet, 920. Cloathing, Festivals, Customs, Diseases, Trade at Home and Abroad, 921. Coin, Weights, Measures, Conveniencies, 922. Distinction into Nobility, Gentry, and Commonalty, 923, 924. Bishops and inferior Clergy, 924. Laws, Freedom, &c. 925. King, Court, Forces, 926, 927. Revenue, 928. Parliament, 229, 930. Courts of Justice, 931. Spiritual Courts, and Punishments, 932, 933.

English, their first Discoveries in the *East-Indies*, 115, &c. Murdered by the *Dutch* at *Amboyna*, 123.

Englishmen, eight, the History of their being left all the Winter in *Greenland*, 444, 445.

Ephesus in *Natolia*, 268.

Epirus, Province of, 290.

Erack-Agem, formerly *Parthia*, 182.

Erzerom in *Turcomania*, 255.

Essex, County of, and its Towns, 906.

Ethiopia Superior, its Description, 733 its Emperor, 734.

Ethiopians, their Character, 734. Religion, *ib.*

Etna, Mount, 612.

Eugene, Prince, his Exploits, 482—490.

Eugia, or *Eugina*-Bay, 313.

Euphrates, River, 233.

F.

FERDINAND, the Catholick, patronizes *Columbus*, 774, &c.

Festivals, in *China*, 20, 21.

Fez, Kingdom, and its City, 751.

Fidaians, or *Whidaians*, their Character, 744.

Finland, a Province of *Russia*, 379.

Flanders, Province of, 559.

Flintshire, and its Towns, 914.

Floats of Timber in *China*, 10

Florence, City and Territory, 579.

Florida, its Extent, &c. 898. to whom it belongs, *ib.* described, 899.

Fo, a *Chinese* Idol, 42.

Fokien, a Province in *China*, 8.

Formosa, an Island of the *Chinese*, 47.

Fort St. David's, in *India*, 149.

Fort St. George, in *India*, 149

France, Original of its Kingdom, 624. Kings of, 625—664. A complete Abridgment of its History and Wars, *ib.* Conquer'd by the *English*, 634, 635. Kings of, their Dignity, 664. Officers and Nobility, 665. Provinces, 666. Bishopricks, 667. Parliaments, *ib.* other Courts, 668. Taxes, 669. Soil and Product, 670.

Francis I King of *France*, 641. II. 643.

Franconia, Circle of, 499, 500.

Frankfort on the *Main*, an Imperial City, and its Territories, 500.

Frankfort upon *Oder*, in *Brandenburg*, 503.

Fredericksburg in *Denmark*, 416.

Frederick-Henry, Prince of *Orange*, 539.

Fredburg in *Saxony*, 502

French Dominions in *America*, 898, 899.

French, their Original, 624. Language and Religion, 670.

G.

GALATIA, in *Asia Minor*, 267.

Gallipoli City, 285.

Ganges, Towns on it, 153.

Gaures, their Religion, 216.

Gelderland, Province of, 532. *Spanish*, *ib.*

Genoa, City and Republick, 571. Government, 572. History, 573.

Genoese, their Character, 571

Geneva, City and Republick, 622.

George I. accedes to the *English* Crown, 489.

Georgia, now Part of *Schirvan* in *Persia*, 183.

Georgia, Colony of, in *America*, 873.

Germany, its Extent, Air, Climate, Rivers, &c. 472, 473. Succession of its Emperors from the Year 800 to 1700. 479—483. History during the late War, 483—490.

Germany, Emperor of, his Power, Election, &c. 491.

Germans, their Persons, Temper, Genius, &c. 474. Vices and Virtues, Food, Customs, Sports, *ib* 475. Language, 475. Learning and Universities, 476. Mechanick Arts, History Antient and Modern, 477—490. Customs and Religion of the antient *Germans*, 477, 480. Laws and Government, Civil and Ecclesiastical, 492. Degrees of Dignity, 493 Forces, 520.

Gibraltar taken by the *English*, 485.

Gilan, antiently *Hyrcania*, 182.

Ghent, in *Flanders*, 559.

Ginger described, 32

Ginseng, or the Human Plant, 32, 48.

Glamorganshire, and its Towns, 914.

Glasgow in *Scotland*, 938.

Gloucestershire, and its Towns, 906.

Gnesna, in *Poland*, 351.

Goa, a Town in *India*, described, 151.

Gold, how found, 742, 805.

Golden and Silver Fish in *China*, 10.

Gombroon, in *Persia*, 185.

Goritta, an Imperial District, 497.

Gothland, a *Swedish* Isle, 405.

Great Britain. See *Britain*.

Grecian Monarchy, an Account of it, 344, 345.

Greeks, Modern, Account of them, 285, &c.

Greenland, *East*, its Situation and Extent, 439. Produce Animal and Vegetable, 448.

Greenland, *West*, its Situation, and Extent, 437. Face of the Country, 438. Product, 439.

Greenland Fishery first established, 442.

Greenlanders, Western, their Persons, Temper, Language, Religion, and Government, 438, 439.

Greenwich Hospital, 918.

Grisons, Allies of the *Switzers*, 621.

Groningen, Province and Town, 531.

Grubenhagen, Principality, 507.

Guadalajara, Audience, Province and City, in *Mexico*, 781.

Guam, one of the *Ladrones* Islands, 95.

Guatimala, Audience, Province and City, in *Mexico*, 784.

Guaxaca, Province, and City, in *Mexico*, 783.

Guiana, Province, 821. Natives, *ib.*

Guinea, its Extent, 741. Towns, *ibid.* Coasts, 742. Inhabitants, *ib.* Trade, *ib.* 743. Sovereigns, 743. Religions, 744, 745. Priests, 745. Customs, Diet, &c. 746, 747, Language, 748.

Gunpowder and Guns invented, 476.

Gypsies, or *Egypsies*, Account of them, 331, 332.

H.

HADRAMUT, an *Arabian* Province, 222.

Haerlem, a City in *Holland*, 529.

Hague, a Town of *Holland*, 529.

Hainault, Province of, 561.

Hagiaz, a Province of *Arabia*, 222.

Halberstat, Principality and Town, 504.

Hallen in *Bavaria*, 499.

Hamburg, an Imperial City in *Holstein*, 506.

Hampshire, and its Towns, 906.

Hanover City, 507. Elector of, 508.

Hanse-Towns, what, 494.

Haram, or *Persian* Seraglio, 203.

Hartfordshire, and its Towns, 907.

Harvests in *China*, 30.

Hean, a Town in *Tonquin*, 60.

Heidelburg, in the *Palatinate*, 513.

Helvoetsluys, a *Dutch* Port, 530.

Henneberg County, 500.

Henry I. King of *France*, 631. II. 642. III. 645, 646. IV. 647—651.

Herefordshire, and its Towns, 907.

Hermanstadt, the Capital of *Transylvania*, 459.

Herring Fishery of the *Dutch*, 549, 550.

Hesse, Landgravate, and its Divisions, 511.

Highways in *China*, 22.

Hillaloons, People of *Mindanao*, 96.

Hispaniola, Island, discovered, 774. Natives of, an Account of them, 777. its Description and History, 866.

Hoambo, or *Yellow River*, in *China*, 8.

Holstein Dutchy, adjoining to *Denmark*, 418.

Holstein, Duke of, his Quarrel with the King of *Denmark*, 431.

Holland, Province of, its Description, 528, 529.

Honan Province in *China*, 6.

Honduras Province in *Mexico*, 784.

Hottentots, their Nations, 736. Persons, 737. Government, Arms, and Exercises, *ib.* Religion, and Customs, 738. Riches, and Handicrafts, 739.

Hudson, Captain, his Voyage to the *North*, 441.

Hudson's-Bay described, 890.

Hugh Capet, King of *France*, 630.

Hungary, its Name, Extent, &c. 451. Provinces and Chief Towns, 452.

Hungarians, their Genius and Temper, 453. Persons, Habits, &c. 454 Succession of Princes, and Government, 455, 456. Forces and Revenues, 457. Language, Learning, Religion, Antiquities, &c. 457, 458

Huntingdonshire, and its Towns, 907

Huquam Province in *China*, 7.

Huss, *John*, and *Jerome* of *Prague*, their Story, 470

Hussites, their Troubles, *ib* 471

Hyrcania, now *Gilan*, 182.

I.

JAFFANAPATAN, in *Ceylon*, 171.

Jamaica, its Situation and Extent, 893 Rivers, Harbours,

INDEX.

bours, Towns, &c. 891. Product, *ib.* 892. Diſcovery and Hiſtory, 892.
James, Duke of *York*, commands in the *Dutch* War, 543, 544. King of *England*, 546, 547, 548.
James-Town in *Virginia*, 873.
Janizaries, what, 245.
Japan, its Situation, Extent, &c. 49. whence peopled, *ibid.* Cities, *ibid.* Roads, 51. If it be an Iſland, 56.
Japan, King of, 53. his Forces, *ib.*
Japaneſe, their Buildings and Furniture, 50. Genius and Temper, *ib.* Dreſs, *ib.* Diet, *ib.* Feſtivals and Diverſions, 51. Trade with the *Dutch*, *ib.* Varniſh and Lace, 52. Learning, Arts and Sciences, *ib.* 53. Government, 53. Coins, Meaſures, Laws, &c. *ib.* Religion, Temples, &c. 54. Marriages, Funerals, Domeſtic Cuſtoms, &c. 55.
Java Iſland deſcribed, 132. Inhabitants, 133. Produce, 134.
Java City, 132.
Javans, their Cuſtoms, Religion, &c. 133, 134, 135.
Iceland, a *Daniſh* Iſle, 419, 421.
Jebilee in *Syria*, 257.
Jedo, or *Yedo*, a City of *Japan*, 49.
Jehan Guire rebels againſt his Father, 139.
Jereſlow Province and Town, 382.
Jericho in *Paleſtine*, 265.
Jeruſalem particularly deſcribed, 262, &c.
Jeſſo, Land of, Account of it, 56, 57, 58.
Images of the *Chineſe*, 43.
Imperial Cities, what, 493.
Incas of *Peru*, reform the People, 837. A Liſt of them, 838, 839, 840. their Government, 838.
India Proper. See *Mogul*'s Empire.
Indus River, 148.
Informers in *Siam*, 83.
Ingria, or *Ingermanland*, 379.
Ink of China, or *Indian* Ink, 29.
Inns in *China*, 25.
Inſpruck, an Imperial City, 497.
Joan of Arc, her Hiſtory, 635.
John Fernando Iſland, 861.
Jordan-River, 265.
Joſeph, Emperor of *Germany*, 485—488.
Ireland, its Name and Extent, 941. Air, Soil, Produce, 942. Fountains, Mines, Provinces, *ib.* 943. Capital, 943. Iſlands, Lakes, Bays, Rivers, Mountains, 944. Government, Eccleſiaſtical, Civil, and Military, *ib.*
Iriſh, Antient and Modern, their Language, Diet, Marriages, Burials, Religion, 941.
Iſpahan, its Situation, 182. Deſcription, 184.
Iſraelites, their Paſſage thro' the *Red-Sea*, 221. their Travels in the Wilderneſs, 226.
Iſtria, a Province of the *Venetians*, 588.
Italy, Situation and Extent, 564. Air, Waters, &c. ibid. Mountains, 565. Diviſions, 566—615.
Italians, their Perſons, Genius, &c. 565.
Judea deſcribed, 262.
Jucatan, a Province in *Mexico*, 784.
Juliers, Dutchy and Town, 518.
Julpha in *Perſia*, 185.
Jutland, a Province of *Denmark*, 417.

K.

KARS, or *Sars*, in *Turcomania*, 256
Kent, County of, and its Towns, 907.
Kerman, antiently *Caramania*, 182.
Kiam, a River in *China*, 8.
Kiang ſi, a Province in *China*, 7.
Kiuſiu, an Iſland in *Japan*, where the *Dutch* have a Factory, 51
Knox, Captain, and his Crew, their Story, 177.
Koningſberg, in *Pruſſia*, 353.
Kouli Chan, the *Perſian*, his Exploits, 218, 219.

L.

LACCADIVE, or *Zaberia*, 295.
Ladrones Iſlands, their Diſcovery, 93. A Deſcription of them, 95. Inhabitants, *ib.*
Lahor, a City in *India Proper*, 153.
Lama of the *Tartars*, an Account of him, 43.
Lancaſhire, and its Towns, 908.
Landrecy, in *Hainalt*, 567.
Laos, Kingdom of, 72.
Laſſau, a *Portugueſe* Settlement in the *Sunda* Iſlands, 136.
Lapland, *Ruſſian*, deſcribed, and its Inhabitants, 378. *Swediſh*, 433. Product and Inhabitants, 404. Magick, *ibid.*
La Plata, in *Peru*, 831.
La Plata, or *Paraguai*, Province, its Situation, Waters, Seaſons, &c. 861. Provinces and Towns, 862. Inhabitants, *ibid.* Animals, Mineral, Hiſtory, &c. 863. Religion, *ib.* 864.
Lauenburg, Dutchy and Town, 506.
Lebanon Mountain, 259.
Leghorn in *Tuſcany*, 579.
Leiceſter, Earl of, commands in the *Netherlands*, 525.
Leiceſterſhire, and its Towns, 908.
Leinſter, Province of, in *Ireland*, 942.
Leipſick, a City in *Saxony*, 501.
Lemnos Iſland, 314.
Leopold, Emperor of *Germany*, 481—485.
Leuwarden in *Frieſland*, 531.
Lewis I. King of *France*, 629. II. III. *ib.* IV. V. 630. VI. VII. 631. VIII. 632. IX. *ib.* X. 633. XI. 636. XII. 638. XIII. 652—656. XIV. 657—664.
Leyden, a City in *Holland*, 529.
Liege, Biſhoprick and City, 516.
Lima, Audience and City, in *Peru*, 828.
Limburg, Province and City, 562.
Lincolnſhire, and its Towns, 908.
Lingen, County of, 520.
Lippe, County of, *ib.*
Lisbon, in *Portugal*, 724.
Liſle, in *Flanders*, 560.
Lithuania, Dukedom of, 352.
Livonia, or *Lieffland*, 381.
Log-Wood Trade, 808.
London, its Situation and Extent, 915. Number of Pariſhes and People, *ib.* Publick Buildings, *ib.* 916, 917, 918. Walls, Gates, Tower, Bridge, Monument, 916. Exchange, Halls, Inns of Court, Colleges, Schools, 917. Hoſpitals and Priſons, 918. Government, *ib.* 919
Londoners, their Companies and Privileges, 916.
Long-Iſland, in *New-York*, 882.
Loretto, City of, 607.
Lorrain, Dutchy of, 513.
Los Charcas Audience, 830.
Louiſiana. See *Florida*.
Louvain, Province and City, 557.
Lubeck, an Imperial City in *Holſtein*, 506.
Lucca, City and Republick, 581.
Lunenburg, Dutchy and City, 508.
Luſatia, a Province in *Upper Saxony*, 502.
Luxemburg, Province and City, 562.
Lycaonia in *Natolia*, 266.
Lycia, in *Natolia*, 265.
Lydia in *Natolia*, 267.

M.

MACASSAR, or *Celebes* Iſland, 111.
Macaſſar City, 111. Inhabitants, *ib.* 112.
Macao, an Iſland and Port in *China*, 16.
Macedonia, Province of, 291.
Macroniſi Iſland, 312.
Macullah Bay, 221.
Madera Iſlands, 770.
Maderaſs, or Fort *St. George*, 149. Governor of, *ib.*
Madagaſcar Iſland, 767.
Madrid taken and loſt again, 712.
Madura, one of the *Sunda* Iſlands, 135.
Magadoxa in *Africa*, 735.
Magdeburg, Durchy and City, 504.
Magellan, Streights of, 860.
Mahometans in *China*, 43. In *India*, 166.
Mahomood, the *Perſian* Uſurper, 189.
Mahomet, an Account of his Life and Death, 209—212.
Mahometan Religion, Account of it, 213—216.
Malacca, or *Lower Siam*, 69.
Malacca Town deſcribed, 78.
Maldivia Iſlands deſcribed, 181.
Malplaquet, Battle of, 487
Malta, Iſland of, 615 Knights of, *ib.*
Man, Iſle of, 905.
Manco Capac, the firſt *Inca of Peru*, 838.
Mandarins in *China*, their Dreſs, 19. State, *ib.* 20. Farther Account of them, 39.
Mangrove tree, 803.
Manheim in the *Palatinate*, 514.
Manilla, or *Luconia*, one of the *Philippine* Iſlands, 102. Inhabitants, *ib.* Well ſituated, 105.
Mansfield, a Territory in *Upper-Saxony*, 502.
Mantua Dutchy and City, 576. Hiſtory, *ib.*
Margentheim, a *German* City and Diſtrict, 509
Marck, County of, 519.
Marlborough, Duke of, his Exploits, 483—488.
Maryland, its Situation, Product, &c. 876. Natives, *ib.* 877 Diviſions and Towns, 877.
Maſulipatan, a Town in *India*, 150
Maurice, Prince of *Orange*, 525, 537
Mauritius Iſlands, 765
Mazarine, Cardinal, 657, &c.
Meaco, a City of *Japan*, 50.
Mecca, a City of *Arabia*, 222
Mecklenburg Dutchy, in *Lower Saxony*, 505
Medina, a City of *Arabia*, 222
Meehlin Province and City, 559.
Mechoacan Province and City, in *Mexico*, 783

INDEX.

Aleliapour, an *Indian* Settlement, 149.
Melos Iſland, or *Milo*, 307.
Alentz, Archbiſhoprick and City, 514.
Alequinez, the Capital of *Morocco*, 751.
Alerdin, in *Meſopotamia*, 255.
Alereweys, his Uſurpation and Death, 188, 189.
Alerionethſhire and its Towns, 914.
Meſteens, a Province of *Ruſſia*, 377.
Meſopotamia, or *Diarbeck*, 254.
Meſſina, a City of *Sicily*, 612.
Mexico, Kingdom, its Situation, Extent, &c. 780. Air and Seaſons, 781. Provinces, *ib*, &c. Its Conqueſt by the *Spaniards*, 790—800. Its Animals, Vegetables, and Minerals, 801—806. Traffick, 806—809. Hiſtory, 810, &c. Modern Government, 812.
Mexico Audience and Province, Part of the Kingdom, 783.
Mexico, Lake of, 782.
Mexico City, the New, its Deſcription, 782. The Old City deſcribed, 785. enter'd by *Cortez*, 794. *Cortez* driven thence, 797 taken and deſtroy'd, 798. rebuilt, 799. Mint there, 806 when firſt built, 810. Antient Kings, *ib*. 811. Modern Government, 812.
Mexican Kings, 810, 811.
Mexico New. See *New*.
Mexican Cities, antient, 785, 786.
Mexicans, modern, 786, 787. antient, 787. their Habits, *ib*. Genius and Manufactures, 788. Diet and Exerciſe, *ib*. Feaſts, 789. Struggles with the *Spaniards*, 791—800. attack *Cortez*, 797. Modern, their Trade, 806—809. Antient, their Original, 810, &c. Learning, 811. Calendar, *ib*. Religion, 813. Feſtivals, *ib*. 814. Rites, 814, 815. Convents and Nunneries, 814. 783. Submit to *Cortez*, 799.
Midian, where ſituated, 226.
Middleburg, a City of *Zealand*, 531.
Middleſex and its Towns, 909.
Milan, Dutchy and City of, 574. Government, *ib*. Hiſtory, 575.
Mindanao, one of the *Philippine* Iſlands, 97. Produce, 99.
Mindanao City, deſcribed, 97. Inhabitants, *ib*.
Mindanao, Sultan of, 101.
Mindanayans, Inhabitants of *Mindanao* Iſland, 96. Their Trade, Shipping, Manufactures, &c. 98. Language, Cuſtoms, Arts, Religion, &c. 100. Wars and Arms, 101, 102.
Mindelheim Principality, 510.
Minden Dutchy and Town, 520.
Minorca reduced by the *Engliſh*, 487.
Miracha, the Great Mogul, 137.
Mirandola Dutchy and City, 576.
Miſnia in *Upper-Saxony*, 501.
Miſſionaries in *China*, how dreſs'd, 19.
Mitylene, or *Lesbos* Iſland, 303
Mocha, an *Arabian* Province and Port, 221, 222.
Modena Dutchy and City, 576. Hiſtory, 577.
Mogul Empire, Situation, Name, &c. 137, 147, 148. Rivers, 148. Provinces, *ib*. Soil and Product, 158, 159.
Mogul Emperors, their Succeſſion, 137—147. Court, Officers, Women, &c. 163. Forces, 164.
Moguls, their Building and Furniture, 155. Genius and Temper, 156. Stature, Dreſs, Diet, Ceremonies, and Cuſtoms, *ib*. 157 Trade and Manufactures, 158. Language, Learning, Arts, &c. 162. Laws and Puniſhments, 164. Various Religions, 165. Marriages, Children, and Funeral Rites, 166, 167.
Molucca Iſlands, 113.
Moldavia, its Tribute, 240. Deſcribed, 279.
Monarchies, the Four, an Account of them, 341, &c.
Monkeys of *Peru*, 835,
Mongale in *Africa*, 735.
Monkeys and Baboons, 106.
Monmouthſhire and its Towns, 909.
Monmouth, Duke of, his Invaſion and Execution, 546.
Mons in *Hainault*, 561.
Monſoons, what, 70, 103, 171.
Montezuma, Emperor of *Mexico*, ſends an Embaſſy to *Cortez*, 791 invites him to *Mexico* City, 793. his firſt Interview with him there, 794. ſeiz'd, and laid in Irons, 795. uſed ill, 796 ſlain, 797. his Court, 811.
Montgomeryſhire and its Towns, 914.
Montſerrat, Dutchy of, 569.
Monſerrat, Iſland of, 896.
Moors in *India*, 166.
Moors, their Complexion and Habit, 753. Diet, Genius, &c. 754. Trade, Religion, Rites, 755.
Morawia, Province of, 466.
Morbachia, Province of, 463, 588.
Morocco, Empire of, Extent, 750. Rivers and Ports, *ib*. Provinces, &c. 751 —— *Morocco Proper*, 753. City, *ib*. Emperors of, their Grandeur and Strength, 754. Produce of the Soil, *ib* 755.
Moſcovy See *Ruſſia*
Moſcow Province and Town, 383.
Moſes, his Hiſtory, 227.
Mount of *Moſes*, 226
Mouſal in *Meſopotamia*, 255.
Mozambique in *Africa*, 735.
Mummies and Catacombs of *Egypt*, 325, &c.
Mummy, what, 193.
Munich in *Bavaria*, 498.
Munſter Biſhoprick and Town, 517.
Munſter, Province of, in *Ireland*, 943.
Muſcat, an *Arabian* Province and Port, 221, 222, 223.
Muſtapha, Sultan, an Account of his Depoſition, 248, &c.
Mutang, a *Chineſe* Flower, 33.
Mycone Iſland, 305.
Myſia and *Phrygia Minor*, 268.

N.

NAMUR Province and City, 561, 562.
Nancy in *Lorrain*, 513.
Nankin Province in *China*, 6. City, 7. Particularly deſcribed, 15.
Nantz, Edict of, revoked, 663.
Naples, Kingdom of, its Situation, &c. 609. Antient and modern State, 612.
Naples, City of, 609.
Narſinga, or *Cormandel*, a Province in *India*, 149.
Narva, in *Livonia*, 381.
Naſipore, in *India*, 150.
Naſſaw County and Family, 512.
Natolia, or *Aſia Minor*, 265, &c.
Naxia, or *Naxos* Iſland, 305.
Neiſter-River, 233.
Negropont Iſland, 313.
Negumbo, in *Ceylone*, 171.
Netherlands, a general Hiſtory of them, 522—526. *Dutch*, 524 to 555. *Auſtrian* and *French*, their Air, Harbours, &c. 556. Provinces and Towns, 557—562. Trade, Manufactures, &c. 562, 563. Religion and Government, 563.
Nesbin, in *Meſopotamia*, 255.
Neufchattel and *Valengin* Countries, 621.
Nevis, or *Mevis*, its Deſcription, 895.
New Albany, a Province of *America*, 885
New Andaluſia Province, 821.
New Edinburg, in *Terra Firma*, 819.
New England, its Diſcovery, Situation, &c. 885. Natives, their Religion, Cuſtoms, &c. *ib*. 886. Firſt planted, 886. Perſons of the Natives, and Dreſs, 887. Productions, *ib*. 888. Towns, 888.
Newfoundland, its Situation, Diſcovery, &c. 888. Natives, 889. Preſent Trade, *ib*.
New Granada Province, 822.
New Jerſey, Eaſt, its Situation, Towns, and Product, 880. Natives, 881. Weſt, its Deſcription, *ib*.
New Mexico, its Situation and Extent, 816. Mines, *ib*. Natives, *ib*.
New Scotland deſcribed, 888.
New York Province, its Extent and Diſcovery, 881. Soil, 882. City, *ib*. Natives, their Religion and Cuſtoms, *ib*. 885.
Ngeam, a Province of *Tonquin*, 59.
Nicaria Iſland, 302.
Nice City and County, 568.
Nicouria Iſland, 309.
Niger-River, 749.
Nigritia, or *Negroland*, 749. Inhabitants, *ib*. Trade, *ib*.
Nile, Cauſes of its overflowing, 61. Deſcribed, 233, 321
Nio Iſland, 310.
Nimpo, a Port in *China*, 16
Nineveh deſcribed, 253.
Norfolk, County of, and its Towns, 909.
Northamptonſhire and its Towns, 909.
North Province, in *Tonquin*, 59
Northumberland, County of, and its Towns, 909.
Norway, Kingdom of, deſcribed, 418.
Nottinghamſhire and its Towns, 910.
Novogrod, Great, Province and Town of, 382
Novogrod, *Nice*, or *Little*, Province of, 384.
Nubia, an *African* Country, 735.
Nuremberg, an Imperial City, and its Territories, 509.
Nutmeg tree, 113.

O.

OBSERVATORY, Royal, in *China*, 13.
Ozacca City, 270.
Oeland, a *Swediſh* Iſle, 406.
Olinda, a City of *Brazil*, 869.
Olympus Mount, 269, 290.
Oneglia Principality, 569.
Opdam, the *Dutch* Admiral, blown up, 543
Opium compar'd with Tobacco, 187.
Oranges firſt brought from *China*, 31
Oran Outan, or Man of the Woods, 125.
Orcia Town and Province, 153
Orkney Iſles, North of *Scotland*, 938
Ormond, Duke of, commands the *Engliſh* Army, 458
Oſa in *Meſopotamia*, 254
Oſnaburg Biſhoprick and Town, 518.
Oſtend in *Flanders*, 559, 56

Oſtrich deſcribed, 332.
Over-yſſel, Province of, 532.
Oxfordſhire, and its Univerſity and Towns, 910.

P.

PACHACAMAC, a *Peruvian* Deity, 841.
Pacific Ocean deſcribed, 826.
Paderborn Biſhoprick and Town, 517.
Padua City and Province, 386.
Painting of *China* Ware, 27.
Palatinate of the *Rhine*, 513, 514.
Palermo, a City of *Sicily*, 610.
Paleſtine, or the Holy Land, 261, &c.
Palicate, a Settlement in *India*, 150.
Palmyra, or *Tadmor*, 260.
Palus Meotis, 232.
Pamphylia in *Natolia*, 266.
Panama in *Terra Firma*, 818, its Bay 819.
Paper of the *Chineſe*, 29.
Paphlagonia in *Natolia*, 267.
Paradiſe, its Situation, 227.
Parliament of *Great-Britain*, an Account of it, 929, 930.
Parma, Dutchy and City, 577. Hiſtory, *ib.* 578.
Parnaſſus Mountain, 291.
Paros Iſland, 306.
Parthia, now *Erack Agem*, 182
Parthians, their Exerciſes, 187
Paſſaro, Cape, Sea-Fight there, 613.
Patagonia, a Province of *Chili*, 856. its Inhabitants, *ib.* 857.
Patmos, or *Patina* Iſland, 321
Pavia City and Territory, 574.
Pawaws, *American* Prieſts, 882
Pearl Fiſhery in *Perſia*, 193.
Pedrarias made Governor of *Terra Firma*, 823 his Cruelties, 824.
Pedro King of *Portugal*, 709. dies, 713
Pegu, a Kingdom and City in *India*, 168.
Pekin Province and City, in *China*, 6. the City particularly deſcribed, 11. &c. Imperial Palace there, 12, &c.
Peloponeſus, or *Morea*, Province of, 294.
Pembrokeſhire, and its Towns, 914
Penſylvania, its Soil, 877. Product, 878. Natives, *ib.* 879. Situation, 879. Counties and Towns, *ib.* *Engliſh* Settlements, 880
Pepin King of *France*, 627.
Pernambuco, or The Receif, in *Brazil*, 869. taken by the *Dutch*, 872.
Perſepolis, in *Perſia*, 185.
Perſes, in *India*, 166.
Perſia, its Situation, Extent, Seaſons, &c. 182. principal Towns, 183, 184, 185. Inhabitants, 186. Modern Hiſtory, 188. Soil and Produce, 192, 193. Supplement to its Hiſtory, 218.
Perſia, Kings of, their Prerogative and Succeſſion, 196, 197. Titles, Court, &c, 198. Seraglio, 203. Strength in War, 205 Revenues, 208.
Perſians, their Genius, Temper, Stature, &c. 186. Cuſtoms, *ib* 187. Manufactures and Trade, 190. Weights and Coins, 191. Husbandry, 192 Learning, Language, and Characters, 194, 195. Laws and Puniſhments, 201. Forces, 206, 207 Religion, 213, &c Nuptial and Domeſtic Rites, 216, 217. Funeral Rites, 218.
Perſian Monarchy, an Account of it, 343.
Peru, its Situation, Extent, &c. 825. Seas, Rivers, &c. 826, 827. Provinces and Towns, 828——831. its Animals, Vegetables, and Minerals, 834——837. Hiſtory, &c. 837——842. Invaſion and Conqueſt by the *Spaniards*, 842—853. its Civil Government regulated, 852, 853.
Peruvian Towns, 829, 830, 831 Convents, 831 Highways, Magazines, Bridges, &c *ib*
Peruvian Bark, its Tree, 836. Balſam, *ib*
Peruvians, their Perſons, Habit, Genius, &c. 832. Learning and Arts, 833. Diet, *ib.* Feſtivals, Exerciſes, &c. 834. Husbandry, 836. antient Religion, 837. Reformation by the Incas, *ib* Prieſts, 838. Civil Government, *ib* Religion at the *Spaniſh* Conqueſt, 841 Feſtivals, *ib* 842. hoſpitable to the *Spaniards*, 843 in a civil War, 844 Marriages, Children, Funerals, &c 853, 854 Navigation, 855.
Pharamond King of *France*, 625
Peter Alexowitz, the Czar of *Muſcovy*, 394
Peterſburg, City of, deſcribed, 379.
Philadelphia in *Natolia*, 261.
Philadelphia in *Penſylvania*, 879
Philippopoli City, 284
Philippi City, 291.
Philippine Iſlands, their Diſcovery, 93. Deſcription of them, 94. Nations that inhabit them, and their ſeveral Cuſtoms, 104, 105 Produce, 106 Venemous Creatures, 108 Language, Government, and Forces, 109 Religion, Marriages, &c. 110
Philipſburg City, 514.
Philip II King of *Spain*, his Perſecutions in the *Netherlands*, 523; loſes ſeven of the Provinces, 524 his Reign, 683; *Philip* III and IV 654
Philip I. King of *France*, 631. II. 632. III. *ib.* IV. *ib.* V. 633. VI. 634.
Phrygia in *Natolia* 267.
Piedmont, Province of, 567, 568.
Piſa City and Territory, 578.
Piſidia in *Natolia*, 266.
Pizarro, *Francis*, his Character, 142. embarks for *Peru*, and ſuffers much, 843. recruits, embarks again, and finds the *Peruvians* in a Civil War, 844. reduces *Tumbez*, &c. 845. meets *Atabilipa*, betrays him, and deſtroys his People, 846. puts him to Death, 847. proclaims another Inca, and takes *Cuſco*, 848. agrees with *Alvarado*, *ib* builds *Lima*, &c. 849. embroiled with *Almagro*, *ib.* puts him to Death, and oppreſſes his Party, 851. aſſaſſinated, 852. his Brothers, 850, &c.
Placentia Dutchy and City, 577.
Placentia in *Newfoundland*, 889.
Poland, a Deſcription of it, 351, &c its Soil and Produce, 355, 356. Hiſtory of, 357——360. Kings of, *ib.* Its Revolutions during the Reign of *Auguſtus*, 360—367. King of, his Election, Prerogative, and Revenues, 368, &c. It is proper to add here, according to our Promiſe, p. 367. That after a long Struggle between *Staniſlaus* and *Auguſtus*, the Court of *Ruſſia* engaging on the Part of the latter, and the Court of *France* on that of the former; *Dantzick* being taken by the *Ruſſians* after a long Siege, and amerced in a large Sum; *Auguſtus* was acknowledged Sovereign of *Poland*; *Staniſlaus* being only indulged the empty Title of a King, and left on the Hands of his Son-in-Law the King of *France*; who hath ſince got the Ceſſion of the Dutchy of *Lorrain*, which, it is thought, will be erected into a Sovereignty in Favour of *Staniſlaus*; but whether as a Kingdom, or as a Dutchy only, we muſt leave Time to inform us.
Poles, their Perſons, Habits, Diet, &c. 354. Government, 368, &c. Manner of electing their Kings, *ib.* Forces and Fortifications, 371. Courts of Juſtice and Religion, 372, 373.
Policandro Iſland, 310.
Pomerania, *Swediſh*, 405. *Pruſſian*, 504.
Pontus, the three, in *Natolia*, 266.
Pope's Dominions, Situation, &c. 591. Ceremonies at their Election and Death, 604. Power Eccleſiaſtical and Temporal, 605
Popes, a Liſt of them, 601, &c.
Popayan Province and Town, 822.
Porcelane, or *China*-Ware, 25, &c.
Porphiry, Account of it, 336.
Porto-Bello in *Terra Firma*, 818.
Port-Royal in *Jamaica*, 891
Portugal firſt eſtabliſhed into a Kingdom, 687. the Reigns of all its Kings till ſeized by *Spain*, *ib.*—693. Pretenſions to its Crown, 693, 694. Revolts to the Duke of *Braganza*, 696——700. Dominions, 700, 701. Hiſtory ſince, including the late War in *Spain*, 701——718. Government Civil and Eccleſiaſtical, 718—723. Revenues and Forces, 718. Provinces at Home and Abroad, 723—728. Air and Produce, 723
Portugueſe, their Character, 724.
Porto Rico, Iſland of, its Deſcription and Hiſtory, 867. Town of, *ib.*
Porus Iſland, 313.
Poteſi City and Mountain, 831. Mines, how diſcovered, 836.
Prague, the Capital of *Bohemia*, 465.
Precop, or *Perecop*, 270.
Preſburg, the Capital of *Upper Hungary*, 452.
Printing invented, 476
Propontis, or Sea of *Marmora*, 232.
Pruſſia, Regal and Ducal, 352
Puebla de los Angelos, in *Mexico*, 783.
Pulo Indore, an Iſland, deſcribed, with the erecting and deſtroying of an *Engliſh* Settlement there, 67.
Puzzoli, in *Naples*, 610.
Pyramids of *Egypt*, a particular Account of them, 322, &c.
Pyrmont County, 520

Q

QUAMSI Province in *China*, 1.
Quantum Province in *China*, 1.
Quebec, a Town in *Canada*, 898
Queycheu Province in *China*, 1.
Quickſilver Mines of *Peru*, 837
Quiloa in *Africa*, 735.
Quito Audience, Province, and City, in *Peru*, 828.

R

RADNORSHIRE and its Towns, 914.
Raguſa, the Republick of, 240
Ramillies, Battle of, 486
Ranchon, an Imperial City in *Barma*, 498
Rattan Canes, 32
Ravenna, a City in *Italy*, 608
Rawendhug, County of, 519

Raven

INDEX.

Ravenſtein, County of, 519.
Red ſea, its Deſcription and Name, 220.
Reſſule-tree, 174.
Remonſtrants and Contra-remonſtrants, 537.
Revel, in *Livonia*, 381.
Rezan Province, 384.
Rhine, *Upper*, Circle of, 511, 512. *Lower*, Circle of, 513, 514, 515.
Rhine River, 473.
Rhodes Iſland, and the Coloſſus there, 299.
Richlieu Cardinal, 655, 656.
Riga, in *Livonia*, 382
Rochellers, their Diſtreſs, 656.
Roman Monarchy, an Account of it, 346, &c.
Rome, City of, 591. its Antiquities, 592, &c. Churches, 593. Hoſpitals and Palaces, 594. its antient Hiſtory, 595, &c. Emperors, 598, &c. Popes to the preſent Time, 601, &c.
Romania, formerly *Thrace*, 279.
Romans, King of, what, 491. Antient, their Exploits, 595, &c.
Roſſetto City, in *Egypt*, 320.
Roſtock, an Imperial City, 505.
Rotterdam, a City of *Holland*, 529.
Rugen, a *Swediſh* Iſland, 406, and 504.
Ruſſia, Empire of, its Situation, Extent, &c. 374. Seas and Rivers, 376. Provinces and Towns, 376——384. Soil and Produce, 388, 389.
Ruſſia, Dukes and Emperors of, their Prerogatives and Succeſſion, 392——395. Forces, &c. 396.
Ruſſia, Provinces of, *Old* and *New*, 382.
Ruſſia, Red or Little, 354.
Ruſſians, their Stature, Complexion, Habit, Diet, Genius, &c. 385, &c. Trade, Manufactures, Coins, Weights, &c. 390, &c. Laws and Puniſhments, 397. Language and Learning, *ib.* Religion and Cuſtoms, 398.
Ruſſia Company engage in the *Greenland* Fiſhery, 444, 445.
Rutland, County of, and its Towns, 910.
Ruyter the *Dutch* Admiral, 544.

S.

SACCAI, a City of *Japan*, 50.
St. Chriſtophers, Iſland of, Situation, &c. 894. Commodities, 895.
St. Dominica, Iſland of, its Deſcription, 895.
St. Domingo, the Capital of *Hiſpaniola*, 866.
St. Jago de la Vega, in *Jamaica*, 891.
St. Jago, the Capital of *Cuba*, 865.
St. Jago, the Capital of *Chili*, 856.
St. Martha, Province and City, 820.
St. Michaels in *Barbadoes*, 894.
St. Helena Iſland, 767.
St. Thomas Iſland, 768.
St Vincent, Iſland of, its Deſcription, 895.
St. Peter's Patrimony, 606.
Saltzburg, Archbiſhoprick and Town, 499.
Saluzza, Marquiſate of, 568.
Samaria deſcribed, 261.
Samoieda, a Province of *Ruſſia*, 376.
Samos Iſland, 300.
Samothrace, or *Samondrachi* Iſland, 314.
Sanerats, an Order in *Siam*, 87.
Santorini Iſland, 310.
Santer, a Fruit, 107.
Sardis in *Natolia*, 267.
Scandaroon in *Syria*, 257.
Scarpanto Iſland, 300.
Schiras, in *Perſia*, 185.
Schirvan, a *Perſian* Province, 183.
Scio Iſland, 302.
Schaffhauſen, Canton and Town of, 617.
Sclavonia, Province of, 463. Chief Towns, 464. Natives, *ib.*
Scotland, its Situation, Air, Soil, Produce, 933. Cattle, Wool, Linen, Plaids, Fiſh and Fowl, Minerals, 934. Harbours, Rivers, *ib.* Inhabitants, *Highlanders*, *ib.* *Lowlanders*, 935. Counties on this Side *Tay*, *ib.* 936. North of *Tay*, 937. Weſtern Iſles, 938. Northern Iſles, *ib.* 939. Eaſtern Iſles, 939. Government, Civil, *ib.* Military, 940. Eccleſiaſtical, *ib.*
Scots, their Cuſtoms, 934, 935.
Scutari in *Turkey*, 284
Sea horſe of *Egypt*, 330. of *Greenland*, 449.
Seals deſcribed, 448.
See Omer, the Great Mogul, 138.
Seignior, Grand, ſee *Turks*, Emperor of the,
Serpents in *China*, 33. in the *Philippine* Iſlands, 106.
Serpho, or *Seſphanto* Iſland, 309.
Servants in *Japan* ſacrifice themſelves, 51
Severa, Province of, 219. its Extent, Chief Towns, and Hiſtory, 462, 463.
Shawbay in *Meſopotamia*, 255
Shaw Abbas I. King of *Perſia*, 196.
Shaw Abbas II King of *Perſia*, 197
Shaw Sephi, King of *Perſia*, 191.
Shaw Sultan Hoſſein, King of *Perſia*, his Depoſition, 187, 197.
Shaw Thamas, King of *Perſia*, 197.
Sheraſoul, a City of *Aſſyria*, 253.
Shetland Iſles, North of *Scotland*, 939.
Shropſhire, and its Towns, 910.
Siam, Situation, Extent, and Diviſion, 69. Upper and Lower, *ib.* Towns of, 71, 73. Soil and Produce, 79, 80.
Siam, City, deſcribed, 70, 71.
Siam, King of, his Court, 71, 82. Revenues, 84.
Siam, Queen of, 72.
Siameſe, their Buildings, 74. Genius, Temper, Complexion, Habit, &c. 74, 75. Ceremonies, 75. Diverſions, Religion, Diet, &c. 76. Trade, Manufactures, Arts, Coins, Weights, &c. 77, 78. Travelling, 80. Education and Learning, 81. Dignities, 82 Laws and Puniſhments, 84, 85. Manner of Fighting, 86. Ambaſſadors, *ib.* Religion and Temples, 87. Marriages, Women, Children, Slaves, Funerals, 90, 91.
Sicyon, or *Baſilica*, 295.
Sicily, Kingdom of, 612, &c.
Sienna, City and Territory, 580.
Sigan, a City in *China*, 16.
Sikino, Iſland, 310.
Sileſia, Province of, 467.
Silver Mines of *Mexico*, 805.
Silver, how refined, 805.
Silk-Worms, their Nature, Manner of breeding them, &c. 160.
Skyros Iſland, 314.
Sinai-Mount, 227.
Siphanto Iſland, 309.
Slave Trade in *Guinea*, 743.
Sleſwick, Dutchy, Part of *Denmark*, 417.
Smyrna in *Ionia*, 268.
Smolensko, Province and Town, 382.
Solebay Fight, 544.
Soluges, People of *Mindanao*, 96.
Somerſetſhire, and its Towns, 911.
Sommona Codom, a *Siameſe* Deity, 89.
Souchou, a City in *China*, 17.
South Province, in *Tonquin*, 59.
South-Sea Company engage in the *Greenland* Fiſhery, 443.
Spahis, what, 245.
Spain, its Situation and Extent, 671. antient Kings and Governors, *ib.*—674. *Roman* Emperors there, 674, 675. *Gothic* Kings, 666, 667. under the *Moors*, 668, 669. from the Union of *Caſtile* and *Leon* to the preſent Time, 680—685. Soil and Product, 686. Government, *ib.*
Spaniards, their Language and Religion, 686. Poſſeſſions, *ib.* conquer *Mexico*, 791,—800. *Peru*, 842—853. *Chili*, 859. driven out of *Chili*, 860.
Spaniſh War in Queen *Anne's* Time, 709—716.
Spaw in *Germany*, 517.
Spire, Biſhoprick and Town, 514.
Sphinx, an *Egyptian Coloſſus*, 326.
Staffordſhire, and its Towns, 911.
Stampalia Iſland, 300.
Staniſlaus, King of *Poland*, his Hiſtory, 362, &c.
States of the United Provinces, General and Provincial, 535, 536.
Stetin, in *Pomerania*, 504.
Stenoſe Iſland, 309.
Stockholm City, 403.
Stralſund in *Pomerania*, 405.
Strasburg in *Lower Alſatia*, 512.
Stutgard in *Wirtemburg*, 509.
Styria, Upper and Lower, 496.
Suchuen, a Province in *China*, 7.
Suez, a Port on the *Red Sea*, 221.
Suffolk, County of, and its Towns, 911.
Sumatra-Iſland, deſcribed, 128. Embaſſy thither, *ib.* King of, 129. Inhabitants, 130. Trade, 131 Product, *ibid.* Laws and Puniſhments, 132.
Sunda-Iſlands deſcribed, 125. &c. Inhabitants, 136.
Surrey, County of, and its Towns, 911.
Surrat, a Port in *India*, 152.
Suſa, Marquiſate of, 568.
Suſſex, County of, and its Towns, 912.
Suz, Province of, 753.
Suabia, Circle of, 509, 510.
Sweden, its Situation, Extent, Diviſions, &c. 402. &c Soil and Product, 407. Forces, Strength, Government, 408, 409. Kings, 411, 412.
Swedes, their Genius, Temper, Cuſtoms, &c. 406 Manufactures and Trade, 407. Laws, &c. 412 Religion, Learning, Marriage and Funeral Rites, 413, 414
Switzerland, its Situation, &c. 16. Cantons, 615. Hiſtory, 618. Government, 619.
Switz, Canton of, 617.
Switzers, their Perſons and Tempers, 618, Forces, Trade, Religion, &c. 620. Allies, 621, 622.
Sydon in *Syria*, 258
Syra Iſland, 312.
Syracuſa, a City of *Sicily*, 613
Syria, Province of, 256, &c.
Syrian Kings, *Grecian*, an Account of them, 344, &c.

P. 4

INDEX.

T.

TABASCO, Province and River, in *Mexico*, 783. Natives of, submit to the *Spaniards*, 791.
Tagapatan, a Town in *India*, 150.
Tallipot tree, 174.
Tallow-trees, 31.
Tamarind tree, 107.
Tamerlane founds the Mogul Empire, 137.
Tanjour, a Province in *India Proper*, 149.
Tangier, in *Morocco*, 755.
Tapuyers, a Nation of *Brazil*, 870.
Tartars in *China*, 19.
Tartars, Crim, Account of them, 270. &c.
——— *Nogaian*, 272.
Tartarian Manner of Travelling, 28.
Tartary, Northern, described, 48.
Tartary, Crim, 240, 270. &c.
——— the Cham of, 270.
Tavan, a Sea Fowl, 107.
Tauris, City, 182, 184.
Tea, an Account of it, 31, 32.
Tehama, a Province of *Arabia*, 222
Telapoins, Account of them, 87, 88.
Tenan, a Province of *Tonquin*, 59.
Tenedos Island, 304.
Teneriffe, Pike of, 768, 769.
Tenhoa, a Province of *Tonquin*, 59.
Terra Firma, in *America*, its Situation, 818. *Proper*, ib. 819, 820. Natives of, 821. by whom discovered, and how, 823, 824
Terra del Fuego Island, 860.
Tesdis, in *Persia*, 184.
Tetuan, in the Empire of *Morocco*, 752.
Thales, City of, 294
Therma Island, 312
Thessaly, Province of, 290.
Thorn, Persecution of the Protestants there, 366, 367.
Thrace, or *Romania*, 279.
Thuringia, a Province of *Upper Saxony*, 502.
Thyatira in *Natolia*, 267
Timariots, what, 244, 245.
Timor, one of the *Sunda* Islands, 136. Inhabitants and Produce, *ib.*
Tine Island, 313.
Tipra, a Kingdom in *India*, 168.
Tlascala, Province and City, in *Mexico*, 783. Natives of, join *Cortez* against *Montezuma*, 792, 793.
Tobacco and Opium compared, 187.
Tobago, an *American* Island in the Bay of *Panama*, belonging to the *English*: Which having been omitted in its proper Place, we will just take Notice here, that it is situated in 11 Degrees 30 Minutes North Latitude: That it is very small, and mountainous; but abounds with Plantains, Mammees, Banana's, and Coco Trees.
Tombes, a City in *Peru*, 828.
Tongres in *Liege*, 516
Tonquin, Situation and Extent, 59. Provinces, *ib.* Bays, Rivers, and Ports, 60. Climate, *ib.* Product, 61.
Tonquin, Bay of, 59
Tonquin, King of, 62
Tonquinese, Genius and Temper, 62. Complexion, Habit, and Diet, 63. Festivals, Diversion, and Travelling, 64. Manufactures and Trade, 65. * Learning, Language, Arts, &c. 65. * Forces, *ib.* Magistrates and Punishments, 65. * Religion, Temples, &c. 64. * Women, Marriages, Funerals, *ib.* 65.
Tortese, American, 803
Tor, a Port Town, 221
Tortosa in *Syria*, 258
Tournay in *Flanders*, 560.
Toxcoutis described, 262.
Trancopole City, 280.
Tranquebar, an *Indian* Town, 149.
Transylvania, its Situation, Extent, Face, &c. 459. Provinces, and Chief Towns, *ibid.* 460. Soil and Produce, 460.
Transylvanians, their Person, Habits, &c. 460. History and Government, *ib.* 461. Religion, 462.
Trent, an Imperial County and Town, 497.
Treves, Archbishopick and City, 515
Treves, an Imperial Port, 497.
Trinity Island, 822
Tripoli, Kingdom and City, 763. History, 764.
Tripoli in *Syria*, 258.
Tromp, the *Dutch* Admiral, 539. &c. killed, 542.
Tuffoons, Winds so called, 61.
Tumbez in *Peru*, the *Spaniards* land there, 843. reduce it, 845
Tunis, Kingdom and City, 763. History, 764.
Tupinambes, a Nation of *Brasil*, 870
Turcomania, or *Armenia Major*, 255, 256.
Turenne, Mareschal *de*, 663.
Turin, the Capital of *Piedmont*, 567.
Turkish Empire, its Situation, Extent, and Division into Provinces, 230, 231. &c. Rivers and Seas, 232.
Turks, their Original, Genius, Temper, Persons, Habits, Customs, &c. 233—236. Maxims of Police, 241. Arts of making Proselytes, 242. Forces, 244. &c. Administration of Justice, 251, &c. their Trade, Weights, Coins, &c. 315. Marriage and Funeral Rites, 317. &c.
Turks, Emperor of, his Power, Court, Women, &c. 237—240. Manner of receiving Ambassadors, and negociating, 242, 243. Forces, 244. &c. Revenues and Grandeur, 247, 248. how inaugurated, and deposed, 248, 249.
Tuscany, Great Dutchy of, its Description and History, 575 579.
Tweer, Province and Town, 382.
Tygris River, 233.
Tyre in *Syria*, 258.
Tyrol and *Brixen*, Counties of, 497.

V.

VALACHIA. See *Walachia*.
Valdivia, his Expedition to *Chili*, 859. taken and executed, *ib.* 860.
Valenciennes in *Hainault*, 561.
Valteline, Territory, 621.
Van in *Turcomania*, 256
Varnish of the *Chinese*, 26, 28, 29.
Vasco Nunes de Balboa discovers *Terra Firma*, 823. and *Peru*, 824. beheaded, *ib.*
Venetians, their Persons, Habits, &c. 585.
Venezuela, Province and City, 821.
Venice, Republick, its Situation, Soil, Produce, &c. 582. Provinces, &c. 583. City, *ib.* &c. Government, 589. Trade, 590.
Vera Cruz, or *Ulua*, in *Mexico*, 783.
Verden, Dutchy and Town, 508.
Verona, City and Province, 586.
Vesuvius, Mount, 610.
Vienna, besieged, 282. described, 494, 495.
Villa Viciosa, Battle of, 716.
Virginia, its Situation, Provinces, and Chief Towns, 873. Discovery and History, 874. Product, 875. Natives, *ibid.* 876.
Visiapour, a Province in *India*, 151.
Vitzlipuzli, a *Mexican* God, his Image and Temple, 785. his Festival, 813.
Vkrain in *Poland*, 354. in *Russia*, 384.
Ulm, an Imperial City, 510.
Ulster, Province of, in *Ireland*, 943.
Umbria, Province of, 606.
United Provinces, their Original, 524. Situation and Extent, 526. Seas, Dykes, &c. 527. Buildings, 533. Government, 535. Modern History, 537—545. Nature, Soil, and Produce, 549, 550 Fisheries, *ibid.* Manufactures and Foreign Trade, 551, 552. Revenues, 552, 553. Forces, 553, 554. Coins, Weights, and Measures, 554 Language, Learning, &c 554. Religion, 555. Marriages and Funerals, *ibid.*
Upsal in *Sweden*, 403.
Urbino, Dutchy and City, 607.
Usedom and *Wallin*, *Swedish* Islands, 406.
Utrecht, Province and City, 532.

W

WALACHIA, its Tribute, 240. See also, 279
Wales, its Situation, Extent, Inhabitants, Rivers, &c. 913 Counties, *ib* 914 its History, 914, 915.
Wan, the late, Some Account of it, 483—488
Warnemund, an Imperial City, 505.
Warsaw, or *Warsovia*, in *Poland*, 354.
Warwickshire, and its Towns, 912.
Water Horn Glass in *Siam*, 83
Wax of *China*, 29
Welsh, their Original, 913, 914 Temper and Religion, 914
Western Isles of *Scotland*, 938
Westminster, City of, described, 919.
Westmoreland, County of, and its Towns, 912.
Westphalia, Circle of, 516—520
West Indies, *British*, 890—897.
West Province in *Tonquin*, 59.
Whales in *Greenland*, a Description of them, and the Manner of taking them, 449.
Whidah, in *Guinea*, 742. its Kings, 743, 744
Wight, Isle of, 907.
William I. Prince of *Orange*, his Exploits, 524.
William II Prince of *Orange*, 540.
William III. Prince of *Orange*, afterwards King of *England*, 483, 545. lands in the West, 547. crowned King, 549.

Williamsburg in *Virginia*, 873.
Willoughby, Sir *Hugh*, his Voyage to the North, 440.
Wiltshire, and its Towns, 912.
Windismarch, or *Carniola*, 496.
Wirtemburg, a Dutchy in *Germany*, 509.
Wolfenbuttle in *Brunswick*, 507.
Woolgda, Province and Town, 382.
Wood, Captain, his Voyage to the North, 441.
Worcestershire, and its Towns, 912.
Worms, Bishoprick and Town, 514.
Wurtzburg, Bishoprick and City, 499.

X.

XACA and *Amida*, Gods of *Japan*, 54.
Xanst, Province in *China*, 6.
Xenst, Province in *China*, 6.
Xintum, Province in *China*, 7.

Y.

YAMBO, an *Arabian* Port, 221.
Yedo, a City of *Japan*, 49.
Yorkshire, and its Towns, 912, 913.
Yunam, a Province in *China*, 7.

Z.

ZAARA and *Biledulgerid* in *Africa*, 750.
Zaims, what, 244.
Zanquebar in *Africa*, 735,
Zant, Island and Town, 589.
Zealand, an Island of *Denmark*, 417.
Zell, Dutchy and City, 508.
Zia Island, 312.
Zisca, the *Bohemian* General, his Exploits, 470, 471.
Zocotora Island, 765.
Zurich, Canton and County, 617.
Zutphen, County and City, 532.

N.B. *The Folios having been mistaken in a few Places, where it hath so happened the Numbers have an Asterism* [*thus* *] *put directly after them in this Index. And where a Line* [*thus*—] *is found between two Numbers, it signifies that the Matter referred to is continued from the first to the last of those Numbers.*